European Association of Urology

Guidelines

2012 edition

European
Association
of Urology

Non-muscle-invasive (TaT1 and CIS) Bladder Cancer

Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas

Muscle-Invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer

Prostate Cancer

Renal Cell Carcinoma

Testicular Cancer

Penile Cancer

Management of Male LUTS, incl. benign prostatic obstruction

Male Sexual Dysfunction: Erectile dysfunction and premature ejaculation

Penile Curvature

Male Infertility

Male Hypogonadism

Urological Infections

Urinary Incontinence

Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction

Urolithiasis

Paediatric Urology

Urological Trauma

Pain Management

Chronic Pelvic Pain

Renal Transplantation

Lasers and Technologies

Reporting complications

Guidelines on Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer (TaT1 and CIS)

M. Babjuk, W. Oosterlinck, R. Sylvester,
E. Kaasinen, A. Böhle, J. Palou, M. Rouprêt

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. BACKGROUND

1.1 Publication history

The first European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines on Bladder Cancer were published in 2002 (1). It was later decided to develop separate guidelines for different categories of urothelial tumours:

- TaT1 papillary tumours (non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer);
- Carcinoma *in situ* (CIS);
- Muscle-invasive bladder tumours;
- Upper urinary tract tumours.

Separate guidelines have been published in European Urology for TaT1, CIS, and upper urinary tract tumours (2-4). For logistical reasons, the guidelines group on non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer decided to integrate the guidelines of TaT1 tumours and CIS in one issue. This overview represents the updated EAU guidelines for non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (CIS, Ta, T1).

1.2 Methodology

The systematic literature search for each section of the non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer guidelines was performed by the panel members. For identification of original and review articles, the Medline, Web of Science, and Embase databases were used. For the current upgrade, all articles published between 2008 and 2010 on TaT1 tumours and between 2004 and 2010 on CIS were considered. Focus of the searches was identification of all level 1 scientific papers (systematic reviews and meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials [RCTs]) in accordance with EAU methodology. Panel members rated papers following a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (LE) (5). Additionally, recommendations have been graded to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and a recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (5).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation (GR) is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level of evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence - although a very important factor - has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences, and costs when a grade is assigned (6-8).

The EAU Guidelines Office do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panel will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency that addressed the specific recommendations, including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (5).*

2. EPIDEMIOLOGY

Bladder carcinoma is the most common malignancy of the urinary tract. The worldwide age standardised incidence rate (ASR) is 10.1 per 100,000 for males and 2.5 per 100,000 for females (9). In Europe, the highest incidence has been reported in the Western (23.6 in males and 5.4 in females) and Southern (27.1 in males and 4.1 in females) regions, followed by Northern Europe (16.9 in males and 4.9 in females). The lowest incidence is observed in Eastern European countries (14.7 in males and 2.2 in females) (10).

The global world mortality rate among males is 4 per 100,000 versus 1.1 per 100,000 among females. The ASR (per 100,000) only varies between 5.6 in developed countries and 3.1 in developing countries for males. For females the ASR varies between 1.4 in developed countries and 0.9 in less developed areas (9). In Europe, mortality rates show a substantial decline over the last decade of about 16% in men and about 12% in women (11).

Approximately 75-85% of patients with bladder cancer present with a disease that is confined to the mucosa (stage Ta, CIS) or submucosa (stage T1). These categories are grouped as non-muscle-invasive bladder tumours.

3. RISK FACTORS

Many of the aetiological factors for the development of bladder tumours are known and urologists should be aware of the types of occupational exposure that might be related to urothelial carcinogens (12-14). Aromatic amines were the first to be recognised. At-risk groups include workers in the following industries: printing, iron and aluminium processing, industrial painting, gas and tar manufacturing (LE: 3).

Another prominent risk factor is cigarette smoking, which triples the risk of developing bladder cancer (15-17) (LE: 2a). Smoking leads to a higher mortality rate from bladder cancer during long-term follow-up, even though, in a multivariate analysis, the prognostic effect of smoking was weaker than that of other factors, such as stage, grade, size, and multifocality of the tumour (18).

4. CLASSIFICATION

4.1 Tumour, Node, Metastasis Classification (TNM)

The 2002 TNM classification approved by the Union International Contre le Cancer (UICC) has been widely accepted. This version was updated in 2009, but it has no changes for bladder tumours (Table 3) (19).

Table 3: 2009 TNM classification of urinary bladder cancer

T - Primary tumour	
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed
T0	No evidence of primary tumour
Ta	Non-invasive papillary carcinoma
Tis	Carcinoma *in situ*: 'flat tumour'
T1	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue
T2	Tumour invades muscle
T2a	Tumour invades superficial muscle (inner half)
T2b	Tumour invades deep muscle (outer half)
T3	Tumour invades perivesical tissue:
T3a	Microscopically
T3b	Macroscopically (extravesical mass)
T4	Tumour invades any of the following: prostate, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall
T4a	Tumour invades prostate, uterus or vagina
T4b	Tumour invades pelvic wall or abdominal wall
N - Lymph nodes	
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0	No regional lymph node metastasis
N1	Metastasis in a single lymph node in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)
N2	Metastasis in multiple lymph nodes in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)
N3	Metastasis in common iliac lymph node(s)
M - Distant metastasis	
MX	Distant metastasis cannot be assessed
M0	No distant metastasis
M1	Distant metastasis

4.2 Histological grading of non-muscle-invasive bladder urothelial carcinomas

In 1998, a new classification of non-invasive urothelial tumours was proposed by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) (1998 WHO/ISUP classification) and published by the WHO in 2004 (20,21) (Table 4). Its major contribution is a detailed histological description of the various grades, which uses specific cytological and architectural criteria. A website (www.pathology.jhu.edu/bladder) that illustrates examples of various grades has been developed to improve accuracy further in using the system.

Table 4: WHO grading in 1973 and in 2004 (20,21)

1973 WHO grading
Urothelial papilloma
Grade 1: well differentiated
Grade 2: moderately differentiated
Grade 3: poorly differentiated
2004 WHO grading
Flat lesions
Hyperplasia (flat lesion without atypia or papillary aspects)
Reactive atypia (flat lesion with atypia)
Atypia of unknown significance
Urothelial dysplasia
Urothelial CIS
Papillary lesions
Urothelial papilloma (completely benign lesion)
Papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential (PUNLMP)
Low-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma
High-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma

The 2004 WHO classification of the flat lesions includes urothelial hyperplasia, reactive urothelial atypia, atypia of unknown significance, dysplasia and CIS. Among non-invasive papillary urothelial lesions, the 2004 WHO grading differentiates between PUNLMP and low-grade and high-grade urothelial carcinomas.

Papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potentials are defined as lesions that do not have cytological features of malignancy but show normal urothelial cells in a papillary configuration. Although they have a negligible risk for progression, they are not completely benign and still have a tendency to recur. The intermediate grade (grade 2), which was the subject of controversy in the 1973 WHO classification, has been eliminated (22,23) (Figure 1).

It was shown that the 2004 WHO classification has a better reproducibility than the WHO 1973 classification (24).

The prognostic value of both grading systems (WHO 1973 and 2004) has been confirmed. Attempts to demonstrate better prognostic value of one system over another, however, have yielded controversial results (22-25). The majority of clinical trials published to date on TaT1 bladder tumours have been performed using the 1973 WHO classification, and therefore, the following guidelines are based on this scheme. Until the prognostic role of WHO 2004 is validated by more prospective trials, both classifications can be used.

Figure 1: Stratification of tumours according to grade in the WHO 1973 and 2004 classifications (26)*

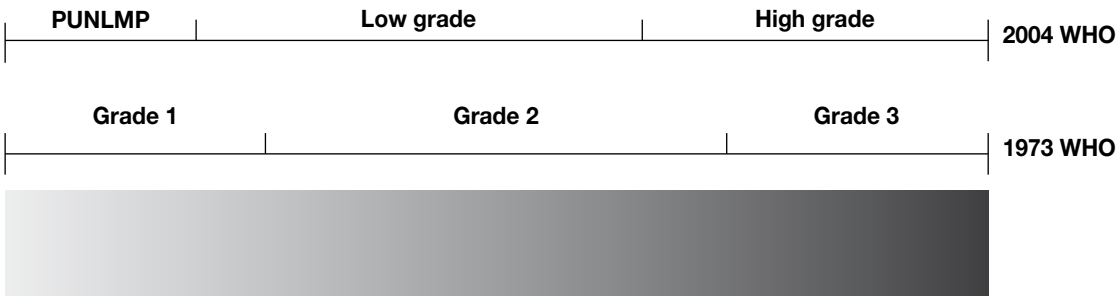


Fig. 1 - Comparison of the 1973 and 2004 WHO grading system. The 1973 WHO grade 1 carcinomas are reassigned, some to the PUNLMP category, and some to the low-grade carcinoma category. Similarly, 1973 WHO grade 2 carcinomas are reassigned, some to the low-grade carcinoma category, and others to the high-grade carcinoma category. All 1973 WHO tumours are assigned to the high-grade carcinoma category. WHO = World Health Organization; PUNLMP = papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential.

**Figure reproduced with permission from MacLennan GT, Kirkali Z, Cheng L. Histologic grading of noninvasive papillary urothelial neoplasms. Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):889-98. Copyright 2007 Elsevier.*

4.3 Controversial definition of non-muscle-invasive ("superficial") tumours

The diagnosis of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer requires consideration of all transurethral resection (TUR) samples.

A papillary tumour confined to the mucosa is classified as stage Ta according to the TNM system. Tumours that have invaded the lamina propria are classified as stage T1. Ta and T1 tumours can be removed by TUR, and therefore, they are grouped under the heading of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer for therapeutic purposes. Also included under this heading are flat, high-grade tumours that are confined to the mucosa, and classified as CIS (Tis). However, molecular biology techniques and clinical experience have demonstrated the highly malignant, invasive potential of CIS and T1 lesions. Therefore, the terms non-muscle-invasive and superficial bladder cancer are suboptimal descriptions.

Some promising prognostic factors that are based on pathological examination of resected tissue have been presented:

- In patients with T1 tumours, the depth of invasion into the lamina propria is considered. The depth of invasion is evaluated in relation to the muscularis mucosae layer. T1 tumours are substaged into T1a (tumours that extend into the lamina propria but above the level of the muscularis mucosae) and T1b (tumours that infiltrate into or below the level of the muscularis mucosae). The prognostic value of T1 substaging has been demonstrated by some retrospective cohort studies (27-29) (LE: 3).
- The presence of lymphovascular invasion has been recognised as an unfavourable prognostic factor in T1 tumours (29,30) (LE: 3).
- Detection of the micropapillary variant of urothelial carcinoma represents a poor prognostic factor (31) (LE: 3).

4.4 Inter- and intra-observer variability in staging and grading

Despite well-defined criteria for the diagnosis of urothelial carcinoma, there is significant variability among pathologists for diagnosis of CIS, for which agreement is achieved in only 70-78% of cases (32,33). There is also important inter-observer variability in classification of stage T1 versus Ta tumours, and grading tumours with general conformity between 50 and 60% (24,32-36). The inter-observer variability is less with the 2004 WHO classification compared to the 1973 classification (23,24). However, a review of slides is recommended particularly in T1, CIS and high-grade lesions.

4.5 Specific character of CIS and its clinical classification

Carcinoma *in situ* is a flat, high-grade, non-invasive urothelial carcinoma. The term CIS might suggest that it is a precursor of cancer. Although it might be a precursor of invasive bladder cancer, the histological and cytological aspects of CIS make this an overtly malignant entity in itself.

Macroscopically, CIS can be missed at cystoscopy or be considered as an inflammatory lesion if it is not biopsied. It is often multifocal and can occur in the upper urinary tract and in the prostatic ducts and urethra (37).

Carcinoma *in situ* is classified into one of three different clinical types (38):

- Primary: isolated CIS with no previous or concurrent exophytic tumours;
- Secondary: CIS detected during the follow-up of patients with a previous tumour;
- Concurrent: CIS in the presence of exophytic tumours.

5. DIAGNOSIS

5.1 Symptoms

Haematuria is the most common finding in non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. TaT1 tumours do not cause bladder pain and rarely present with lower urinary tract symptoms. In patients who do complain of these symptoms, CIS might be suspected.

5.2 Physical examination

Physical examination does not reveal non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer.

5.3 Imaging

5.3.1 Intravenous urography and computed tomography

Intravenous urography (IVU) is used to detect filling defects in the calyces, renal pelvis and ureters, and

hydronephrosis, which can indicate the presence of a ureteral tumour. Large exophytic tumours may be seen as filling defects in the bladder. The necessity to perform routine IVU once a bladder tumour has been detected is now questioned because of the low incidence of significant findings obtained with this method (39-41) (LE: 3). The incidence of upper urinary tract tumours is low (1.8%), but increases to 7.5% in tumours located in the trigone (40). The risk of tumour recurrence in the upper urinary tract during follow-up increases in multiple and high-risk tumours (42).

In many centres, computed tomography (CT) urography is used as an alternative to conventional IVU (43). Especially in muscle-invasive tumours of the bladder and in upper tract tumours, CT urography gives more information than IVU does (including status of lymph nodes and neighbouring organs) (LE: 4). However, CT urography has the disadvantage of higher radiation exposure compared to IVU.

*5.3.2 **Ultrasonography***

Ultrasonography (US) has been used with increasing frequency as the initial tool to assess the urinary tract. This is not only because it avoids the use of contrast agents, but also because sensitive transducers have improved imaging of the upper urinary tract and bladder.

Transabdominal US permits characterisation of renal masses, detection of hydronephrosis and visualisation of intraluminal masses in the bladder. It can be as accurate as IVU for diagnosis of upper urinary tract obstruction (39) (LE: 3). The US is thus a useful tool for investigation in patients with haematuria to detect obstruction, it cannot however exclude the presence of upper tract tumours. Imaging methods (IVU, CT urography or US) have no role in the diagnosis of CIS.

5.4 Urinary cytology

Examination of voided urine or bladder-washing specimens for exfoliated cancer cells has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours but low sensitivity in low-grade tumours (LE: 2b). Due to a loss of cohesion of cells in the epithelial lining of the bladder in CIS, there is a larger number of floating cells in the urine, as well as a high degree of anaplasia. Thanks to these conditions is the sensitivity of cytology in CIS detection > 90%. Cytology is thus useful when a high-grade malignancy or CIS is present. However, urinary cytology often is negative in the presence of low-grade cancer. Positive voided urinary cytology can indicate a urothelial tumour anywhere in the urinary tract, from the calyx to the ureters, bladder and proximal urethra.

Cytological interpretation is user-dependent (44). Evaluation can be hampered by low cellular yield, urinary tract infections, stones or intravesical instillations. In experienced hands however, the specificity exceeds 90% (45) (LE: 2b). Cytology should be performed on fresh urine with adequate fixation. Morning urine is not suitable because of the frequent presence of cytolysis.

5.5 Urinary molecular marker tests

Extensive laboratory research has developed numerous urinary tests for diagnosis of bladder cancer based on detection of soluble or cell-associated markers (45-51).

Numerous reviews of urinary markers have appeared in recent years (45-59). A few of the markers have come into clinical application but none has been accepted as a standard diagnostic procedure in routine urology or in guidelines until now. Three tests are particularly promising: nuclear matrix protein 22 (NMP22), UroVysion®, and ImmunoCyt (49,50,60-64).

The following conclusions can be drawn about the existing tests. The bladder tumour antigen (BTA) test has a very limited role because of its high false-positive rate and low sensitivity for low-grade tumours (65,66). NMP22 similarly suffers from a high false-positive rate but has higher sensitivity than urinary cytology. With careful selection of patients, the specificity of NMP22 can be improved, and because of its high negative predictive volume (NPV), it can potentially be used during follow-up to delay cystoscopy control (60,62,67-69). ImmunoCyt has the highest sensitivity for detection of low-grade tumours and is less affected by other urological diseases. However, with a 60% detection rate for low-grade tumours, the test remains largely inadequate to replace cystoscopy (64,70). UroVysion® adds little to the surveillance of low-grade tumours. However, it can replace cytology for high-grade tumours when experience with urinary cytology is lacking or when its result is inconclusive. Some false-positive results arise because UroVysion® can detect occult disease and thus identify those patients who are more likely to experience recurrence. It might also be useful to predict response to intravesical therapy (63,71,72). Microsatellite analysis is the most promising of the methods listed in Table 5. It can predict recurrence of low-grade tumours in up to 80% of cases, but it still lacks sensitivity (73-75).

The sensitivity of tests can be improved by their combination, as suggested by the International Consensus Panel on Bladder Tumour Markers (45).

Although it is hoped that these tests can soon make the transition from the laboratory to the clinic, it is essential to evaluate their costs to determine whether they can provide a low-cost and reliable alternative to current cystoscopy methods (76).

Table 5 gives an overview of how far the available urinary markers correspond to some of these criteria (52).

Table 5: Summary of main urinary markers

Markers	Overall sensitivity (%)	Overall specificity (%)	Sensitivity for high-grade tumours (%)	Point-of-care test	Interference by BCG instillations and other bladder conditions	Comments
UroVysion®	30-72	63-95	66-70	No	No	Expensive and laborious
Microsatellite analysis	58	73	90	No	No	Expensive and laborious
Gene microarray	80-90	62-65	80	No	No	Expensive and laborious
Immunocyt/ uCyt +™	76-85	63-75	67-92	No	Yes	Good sensitivity in low-grade tumours, affected by BCG
Nuclear matrix protein 22	49-68	85-87.5	75-83	Yes	Yes	Low sensitivity, affected by benign conditions
BTA stat	57-83	68-85	61.5	Yes	Yes	Low sensitivity, affected by benign conditions and BCG
BTA TRAK	53-91	28-83	77	No	Yes	Low sensitivity, affected by benign conditions and BCG
Cytokeratins	12-85	75-97	33-82	No	Yes	Low sensitivity, affected by benign conditions and BCG
Survivin	53-90	88-100	50	No	No	Low sensitivity, expensive and laborious

BCG = Bacillus Calmette-Guérin; BTA = bladder tumour antigen.

5.6 Practical application of urinary cytology and markers

There are specified general requirements for good markers for bladder cancer (45):

- The test must be as simple as possible technically (preferably a point-of-care test, with readily available results, easy to perform, with a short learning curve);
- Low cost;
- Reliable and reproducible results;
- High diagnostic accuracy (high sensitivity and specificity);
- For individual patient populations and clinical situations, the test should have a high positive predictive value to avoid unnecessary workup because of false-positive results, and high NPV to avoid the risk of failing to detect tumours. These parameters vary between populations with different incidences of bladder cancer and cannot be used for general comparison of methods;
- For clinical settings, it is of utmost importance to detect reliably all high-grade tumours before they escape curative treatment.

The following objectives of application of urinary cytology or molecular tests must be considered:

- *Screening of the population at risk of bladder cancer.*
  The application of haematuria dipstick, NMP22 or UroVysion® in bladder cancer screening in high-risk

populations has been reported (60,61). However, concerns about feasibility and cost-effectiveness mean that routine application of screening has not yet been established.

- *Exploration of patients after haematuria or other symptoms that are suggestive of bladder cancer.*
  It is generally accepted that none of the tests can replace cystoscopy. However, urinary cytology or markers can be used as adjunct to cystoscopy to detect invisible tumours, particularly CIS. In this setting, the method should have high sensitivity and specificity for high-grade tumours. Urinary cytology is highly specific and sensitive in this regard. Most commercially available urinary markers are even slightly more sensitive than cytology, the problem is however their lack of specificity.

- *Facilitate surveillance of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer to reduce the number of cystoscopies (48,52,62,65).*
  To reduce the number of cystoscopies, urinary markers should be able to detect recurrence before the tumours are large and numerous. The limitation of urinary cytology is its low sensitivity for low grade recurrences. Several urinary markers are better but still do not detect half of the low-grade tumours that are detected by cystoscopy. Among the commercially available tests, the best performance for detecting recurrence of low-grade tumours is by immunocytology. Large prospective studies on recurrence of low-grade tumours are still lacking, thus, urinary markers cannot safely replace cystoscopy in this setting.

5.7 Cystoscopy

The diagnosis of bladder cancer ultimately depends on cystoscopic examination of the bladder and histological evaluation of the resected tissue. The diagnosis of CIS is made by a combination of cystoscopy, urine cytology, and histological evaluation of multiple bladder biopsies (77).

Cystoscopy is initially performed in the office, using flexible instruments. If a bladder tumour has been visualised in earlier imaging studies, diagnostic cystoscopy can be omitted because the patient will undergo TUR.

A careful description of the findings is necessary. It should include the site, size, number, and appearance (papillary or solid) of the tumours, as well as a description of mucosal abnormalities. Use of a bladder diagram is recommended.

5.8 Transurethral resection (TUR) of TaT1 bladder tumours

The goal of the TUR in TaT1 bladder tumours is to make the correct diagnosis and remove all visible lesions.

The strategy of resection depends on the size of the lesion. Small tumours (< 1 cm) can be resected *en bloc*, the specimen contains the complete tumour plus a part of the underlying bladder wall. Some experts believe that deep resection is not necessary in small, apparently low-grade lesions with a previous history of TaG1 tumour. Larger tumours should be resected separately in fractions, which include the exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall with the detrusor muscle, and the edges of the resection area. The specimens from different fractions must be referred to the pathologist in separate containers to enable him/her to make a correct diagnosis. Cauterisation should be avoided as much as possible during TUR to prevent tissue destruction.

Complete and correct TUR is essential to achieve a good prognosis (78). It has been confirmed that absence of detrusor muscle in the specimen is associated with a significantly higher risk of residual disease and early recurrence (79) (LE: 2).

5.9 Bladder and prostatic urethral biopsies

Carcinoma *in situ* can present as a velvet-like, reddish area that is indistinguishable from inflammation, or it might not be visible at all. It can be present as an isolated lesion without exophytic tumour, or it can accompany TaT1 tumours.

When abnormal areas of urothelium are seen, it is advised to take ‘cold cup’ biopsies or biopsies with a resection loop. Biopsies from normal-looking mucosa, so-called random biopsies (R-biopsies), should be performed in patients with positive urinary cytology and absence of visible tumour in the bladder. It is recommended to take R-biopsies from the trigone, bladder dome and from right, left, anterior and posterior bladder walls.

In patients with TaT1 tumours, R-biopsies are not routinely recommended. The likelihood of detecting CIS, especially in low-risk tumours, is extremely low (< 2%) (80) (LE: 2a). Cold cup biopsies from normal-looking mucosa should be performed when cytology is positive or when exophytic tumour has a non-papillary appearance. Material obtained by random or directed biopsies must be sent for pathological assessment in separate containers. In CIS, the coherence and adherence of epithelial cells is decreased, and this feature often

results in denuded biopsies when taken by cold cup or a resection loop (81).

Involvement of the prostatic urethra and ducts in male patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer has been reported. Although the exact risk of prostatic urethra or ducts involvement is not known, it seems to be higher if the tumour is located on the trigone or bladder neck, in the presence of bladder CIS and multiple tumours (82,83) (LE: 3). In these cases and when cytology is positive, with no evidence of tumour in the bladder, or when abnormalities of prostatic urethra are visible, biopsies of the prostatic urethra are recommended. The biopsy is taken from abnormal areas and from the precollicular area (between 5 and 7 o'clock position) using a resection loop.

5.10 Photodynamic diagnosis (fluorescence cystoscopy)

As a standard procedure, cystoscopy and TUR are performed using white light. However, the use of white light can lead to missing lesions that are present but not visible. Photodynamic diagnosis (PDD) is performed using violet light after intravesical instillation of 5-aminolaevulinic acid (ALA) or hexaminolaevulinic acid (HAL). It has been confirmed that fluorescence-guided biopsy and resection are more sensitive than conventional procedures for detection of malignant tumours, particularly for CIS (84-86) (LE: 2a). The additional detection rate with PDD was 20% for all tumours and 23% for CIS in a cumulative analysis of prospective trials (87). However, false-positivity can be induced by inflammation or recent TUR, and during the first 3 months after BCG instillation (88).

The benefit of ALA fluorescence-guided TUR for recurrence-free survival has been demonstrated in several small, randomised clinical trials (89-91). Cumulative analysis of three trials has shown that the recurrence-free survival was 15.8-27% higher at 12 months and 12-15% higher at 24 months in the fluorescence-guided TUR groups compared to the white light cystoscopy alone groups (87) (LE: 2) However, a large Swedish study could not detect any advantage in using ALA fluorescence-guided TUR routinely in all patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (92). A recent large, multicentre, prospective randomised trial that compared HAL fluorescence-guided TUR with standard TUR reported an absolute reduction of no more than 9% in the recurrence rate within 9 months in the HAL arm (93) (LE: 1b).

The value of fluorescence cystoscopy for improvement of the outcome in relation to progression rate or survival remains to be demonstrated.

Photodynamic diagnosis is most useful for detection of CIS, and therefore it should be restricted to those patients who are suspected of harbouring a high-grade tumour, e.g. for biopsy guidance in patients with positive cytology or with a history of high-grade tumour. Because of conflicting data on recurrence rate this panel restricts the indication for PDD more than experts in a recently published review (94).

The additional costs of the equipment and instillation for PDD should be taken into account.

5.11 Second resection

The significant risk of residual tumour after initial TUR of TaT1 lesions has been demonstrated (78,95) (LE: 2a). Persistent disease after resection of T1 tumours has been observed in 33-53% of patients (95-100).

Moreover, the tumour is often under-staged by initial resection. The likelihood that a T1 tumour has been under-staged and muscle-invasive disease is detected by second resection ranges from 4 to 25%. This risk has increased up to 50% in some cystectomy series, although these studies have only enrolled selected patients (96,101,102) (LE: 2a). Treatment of a TaT1 high-grade tumour and a T2 tumour is completely different; therefore, correct staging is important.

A second TUR should be considered when the initial resection is incomplete, for example, when multiple and/or large tumours are present, or when the pathologist has reported that the specimen contains no muscle tissue (TaG1 excluded). Furthermore, a second TUR should be performed when a high-grade or T1 tumour has been detected at initial TUR (103). It has been demonstrated that a second TUR can increase the recurrence-free survival (98,99,104) (LE: 2a). There is no consensus about the strategy and timing of second TUR. Most authors recommend resection at 2-6 weeks after initial TUR. The procedure should include resection of the primary tumour site.

5.12 Pathological report

Pathological investigation of the specimen obtained by TUR and biopsies is an essential step in the diagnosis of bladder cancer. The pathological report should specify the grade of the lesion(s) and the depth of tumour invasion into the bladder wall, and should give information about whether the lamina propria and sufficient muscle are present in the specimen (104).

Essential for correct pathological assessment is the high quality of resected tissue. The presence of sufficient muscle is necessary for correct assignment of T-category. Close cooperation between urologists and pathologists is recommended.

5.13 Recommendations for primary assessment of non-muscle-invasive bladder tumours

	GR
The renal and bladder US may be used during initial work-up in patients with haematuria.	C
At the time of initial diagnosis of bladder cancer CT urography or IVU should be performed only in selected cases (e.g. tumours located in the trigone).	B
Cystoscopy is recommended in all patients with symptoms suggestive of bladder cancer. It cannot be replaced by cytology nor by any other non-invasive test.	A
Cystoscopy should describe all macroscopic features of the tumour (site, size, number and appearance) and mucosal abnormalities. A bladder diagram is recommended.	C
Voided urine cytology or urinary markers are advocated to predict high grade tumour before TUR.	C
It is recommended to perform TUR in one piece for small papillary tumours (< 1 cm), including part from the underlying bladder wall.	B
It is recommended to perform TUR in fractions (including muscle tissue) for tumours > 1 cm in diameter.	B
It is recommended to take biopsies from abnormal-looking urothelium. Biopsies from normal-looking mucosa (trigone, bladder dome and from right, left, anterior and posterior bladder walls) are recommended only when cytology is positive or when exophytic tumour has a non-papillary appearance.	C
Biopsy of the prostatic urethra is recommended for cases of bladder neck tumour, when bladder CIS is present or suspected, when there is positive cytology without evidence of tumour in the bladder, or when abnormalities of the prostatic urethra are visible. If biopsy is not performed during the initial procedure, it should be completed at the time of the second resection. The biopsy should be taken from the precollicular area between 5 and 7 o'clock using a resection loop.	C
If equipment is available, fluorescence-guided (PDD) biopsy should be performed when bladder CIS is suspected (e.g. positive cytology, recurrent tumour with previous history of a high-grade lesion).	B
A second TUR should be performed at 2-6 weeks after initial resection when the latter is incomplete (in large and multiple tumours, no muscle in the specimen), or when an exophytic high-grade and/or T1 tumour is detected.	A
The pathological report should specify the grade, depth of tumour invasion, and whether the lamina propria and sufficient muscle are present in the specimen.	A

CIS = carcinoma in situ*; CT = computed tomography; IVU = intravenous urography; PDD = photodynamic diagnosis; TUR = transurethral resection; US = ultrasound.*

6. PREDICTING RECURRENCE AND PROGRESSION

6.1 TaT1 tumours

The classic way to categorise patients with TaT1 tumours is to divide them into risk groups based on prognostic factors derived from multivariate analyses. Using such a technique, it has been proposed to divide patients into low-risk, intermediate-risk and high-risk groups (105). When using these risk groups, however, no distinction is usually drawn between the risk of recurrence and progression. Although prognostic factors indicate a high risk for recurrence, the risk of progression might still be low, and other tumours might have a high risk of recurrence and progression.

In order to predict separately the short-term and long-term risks of recurrence and progression in individual patients, the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Genitourinary (GU) group has developed a scoring system and risk tables (106). The basis for these tables is the EORTC database, which provides individual patient data for 2,596 patients diagnosed with TaT1 tumours, who were randomised in seven EORTC-GU group trials. Patients with CIS alone are not included. Seventy-eight percent of patients have received intravesical treatment, mostly chemotherapy. However, they have not undergone a second TUR or received maintenance BCG. The scoring system is based on the six most significant clinical and pathological factors:

- number of tumours;
- tumour size;
- prior recurrence rate;
- T-category;
- presence of concurrent CIS;
- tumour grade.

Table 6 illustrates the weights applied to various factors for calculating the total scores for recurrence and progression. Table 7 shows the total scores stratified, as in the original article (106), into four categories that reflect various probabilities of recurrence and progression at 1 and 5 years. By combination of two of the four categories for recurrence and progression, the EAU working group suggests the use of a three-tier system that defines low-, intermediate- and high-risk groups for recurrence and progression, as shown in the rightmost column in Table 7.

Table 6: Weighting used to calculate recurrence and progression scores

Factor	Recurrence	Progression
Number of tumours		
Single	0	0
2-7	3	3
≥ 8	6	3
Tumour diameter		
< 3 cm	0	0
≥ 3 cm	3	3
Prior recurrence rate		
Primary	0	0
≤ 1 recurrence/year	2	2
> 1 recurrence/year	4	2
Category		
Ta	0	0
T1	1	4
Concurrent CIS		
No	0	0
Yes	1	6
Grade (WHO 1973)		
G1	0	0
G2	1	0
G3	2	5
Total score	0-17	0-23

CIS = carcinoma in situ*; WHO = World Health Organization.*

Table 7: Probability of recurrence and progression according to total score

Recurrence score	Probability of recurrence at 1 year		Probability of recurrence at 5 years		Recurrence risk group
	%	(95% CI)	%	(95% CI)	
0	15	(10-19)	31	(24-37)	Low risk
1-4	24	(21-26)	46	(42-49)	Intermediate risk
5-9	38	(35-41)	62	(58-65)	
10-17	61	(55-67)	78	(73-84)	High risk

Progression score	Probability of progression at 1 year		Probability of progression at 5 years		Progression risk group
	%	(95% CI)	%	(95% CI)	
0	0.2	(0-0.7)	0.8	(0-1.7)	Low risk
2-6	1	(0.4-1.6)	6	(5-8)	Intermediate risk
7-13	5	(4-7)	17	(14-20)	High risk
14-23	17	(10-24)	45	(35-55)	

Note: Electronic calculators for Tables 6 and 7 are available at http://www.eortc.be/tools/bladdercalculator/.

The scoring model for BCG-treated patients that predicts the short- and long-term risks of recurrence and progression has recently been presented by the Club Urológico Español de Tratamiento Oncológico (CUETO) (Spanish Urological Oncology Group). It is based on analysis of 1,062 patients from four CUETO trials that compared different intravesical BCG treatments. Patients received 12 instillations during 5-6 months. No immediate postoperative instillation or second TUR were performed in these patients. The scoring system is based on evaluation of seven prognostic parameters:

- patients' sex;
- patients' age;
- recurrence status;
- number of tumours;
- T-category;
- associated CIS;
- tumour grade.

Using these tables, the calculated risk of recurrence is lower than that obtained by the EORTC tables. For progression probabilities, it is lower only in high-risk patients (107). The lower risks in the CUETO tables may be attributed to using a more effective instillation therapy in the individual studies on which the CUETO tables are based. The validation of the EORTC scoring system in an independent patient population with long-term follow-up has confirmed its prognostic value (108).

6.2 Carcinoma *in situ*

Without any treatment, approximately 54% of patients with CIS progress to muscle-invasive disease (109). Unfortunately, there are no reliable prognostic factors that can be used to predict the course of the disease and specify the most dangerous cases. The publications are based on a retrospective analysis of small series of patients and their conclusions are not homogeneous. Some studies have reported worse prognosis in concurrent CIS and T1 tumours compared to primary CIS (110,111) and in extended CIS (112) (LE: 3).

Various publications have shown that the response to intravesical treatment with BCG or chemotherapy is an important prognostic factor for subsequent progression and death caused by bladder cancer (113-116). Approximately 10-20% of complete responders eventually progress to muscle-invasive disease, compared with 66% of non-responders (113-115) (LE: 2).

7. ADJUVANT TREATMENT

7.1 Intravesical chemotherapy

Although state-of-the-art TUR by itself can eradicate a TaT1 tumour completely, these tumours recur in a high percentage of cases and progress to muscle-invasive bladder cancer in a limited number of cases. The high variability in the 3-month recurrence rate indicates that TUR is incomplete or provokes recurrences in a high percentage of patients (78). It is therefore necessary to consider adjuvant therapy in all patients. The absolute risks of recurrence and progression do not always indicate the risk at which a certain therapy is optimal. The choice of therapy may be considered differently according to what risk is acceptable for the individual patient and the urologist.

*7.1.1 **One, immediate, postoperative intravesical instillation of chemotherapy***

In a meta-analysis of seven randomised trials (1,476 patients with a median follow-up of 3.4 years), one immediate instillation of chemotherapy after TUR significantly reduced recurrence rate compared to TUR alone (LE: 1a) (117). In absolute values, the reduction was 11.7% (from 48.4% to 36.7%), which implies a 24.2%

decrease in the corresponding relative risk. The majority of patients (> 80%) in the meta-analysis had a single tumour, but an almost significant and even greater reduction in recurrence was noted among the limited number of patients with multiple tumours. The efficacy of the single instillation has been confirmed also by two recently published studies (118,119). In one of these (119), the benefit was mainly seen in primary and single tumours and was in these tumour categories even greater than the 11.7%. By stratification according to EORTC recurrence scores, the benefit was observed in patients with scores 0-2, but not with scores ≥ 3. However, the study was not sufficiently powered for subgroup analyses. Despite stratification at randomisation, no separate analysis was made for primary or recurrent tumours in the other study (118).

No prospective data are available showing that the single instillation significantly reduces recurrence rates in patients with recurrent tumours. Nevertheless, there is significant evidence from one subgroup analysis that an immediate instillation might have an impact on the repeat instillation regimen for treatment of patients who are at intermediate- and high risk of recurrence (120) (LE: 2a). There are no statistically relevant data that address the role of immediate chemotherapy instillation in tumours at high risk of progression before further BCG intravesical treatment.

In summary, one immediate instillation significantly reduces the risk of recurrence in TaT1 bladder tumours. Further studies are required, however, to determine the definitive role of immediate chemotherapy before BCG or further chemotherapy instillations in intermediate- and high-risk groups.

The effect of early instillation can be explained by the destruction of circulating tumour cells immediately after TUR, or as an ablative effect (chemoresection) of residual tumour cells at the resection site. Prevention of tumour cell implantation should be initiated within the first hours after cell seeding. Within a few hours, the cells are implanted firmly and are covered by extracellular matrix (121-124). In all single instillation studies, the instillation was administered within 24 h. Subgroup analysis of one study has shown that, if the first instillation was not given on the same day as TUR, there was a twofold increase in the relative risk of recurrence (120) (LE: 2a). Moreover, a study in which the instillation was not given strictly on the same day did not find any advantage (125). To maximise the efficacy of the immediate instillation, every effort should be made to create flexible practices that allow the instillation to be given when necessary and as early as possible, that is, in the recovery room or even in the operating theatre.

There is no single drug that is superior with regard to efficacy. Mitomycin C, epirubicin, and doxorubicin have all shown a beneficial effect (117) (LE: 1a). In one study, gemcitabine plus 24 h bladder irrigation with physiological saline was not superior to irrigation with physiological saline alone (126) (LE: 1b).

The guidelines expert panel recommends immediate instillation in tumours at low risk of progression (single, primary, papillary lesions) as the only intravesical treatment and in those presumably at intermediate risk, for which a single instillation is considered as the initial stage of further intravesical therapy. In tumours that are presumably at high risk of progression (solid lesions, positive urinary cytology), immediate instillation is an option because it can have a positive impact on recurrence rate through prevention of tumour cell implantation. However, there is no doubt that subsequent BCG intravesical immunotherapy is essential treatment in these patients (see lower).

The immediate post-operative chemotherapy instillation should be omitted in any case of overt or suspected intra- or extraperitoneal perforation, which is most likely to appear in extensive TUR procedures, and in situations with bleeding requiring bladder irrigation. Severe complications have been reported in patients in whom extravasation of the drug occurs (127).

Clear instructions should be given to the nursing staff to control the free flow of the bladder catheter at the end of the instillation. It has been demonstrated that administration of instillation is possible in the majority of cases (128).

7.1.2 ***Additional adjuvant intravesical chemotherapy instillations***

The need for further adjuvant intravesical therapy depends on the patients' prognosis. In patients with a low risk of tumour recurrence (see Table 7), a single immediate instillation reduces the risk of recurrence and is considered as the standard treatment (117) (LE: 1a). No further treatment should be given in these patients before subsequent recurrence. For other patients, however, a single immediate instillation remains an incomplete treatment because the likelihood of recurrence and/or progression is considerable.

The effect of the immediate instillation of chemotherapy occurs during the first and second year (129,130) (LE: 1b). It has been calculated from the data of five randomised trials (130) that the reduction of recurrence lasts for a period of approximately 500 days.

The choice between further chemotherapy or immunotherapy largely depends on the risk that needs to be reduced: recurrence or progression. A combined analysis of EORTC and Medical Research Council data, comparing intravesical chemotherapy to TUR alone, has demonstrated that chemotherapy prevents recurrence but not progression (131) (LE: 1a). The efficacy of intravesical chemotherapy in reducing the risk of tumour recurrence has been confirmed by two other meta-analyses in primary (132) and recurrent tumours (133).

It is still controversial how long and how frequently instillations of intravesical chemotherapy have to be given. From a systematic review of the literature of randomised clinical trials, which have compared different schedules of intravesical chemotherapy instillations, one can only conclude that the ideal duration and intensity of the schedule remains undefined because of conflicting data (134). Nevertheless, the available evidence does not support any treatment longer than 1 year.

*7.1.3 **Optimising intravesical chemotherapy***

One randomised trial has demonstrated that adapting urinary pH, decreasing urinary excretion, and buffering the intravesical solution reduce the recurrence rate (135) (LE: 1b).

Another randomised trial has documented that concentration is more important than duration of the treatment (136) (LE: 1b). In view of these data, which need confirmation, it seems advisable to ask the patient not to drink on the morning before instillation, and to dissolve the drug in a buffered solution at optimal pH.

7.2 Intravesical Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) immunotherapy

*7.2.1 **Efficacy of BCG***

Several meta-analyses have addressed important questions concerning the efficacy of BCG in non-muscle-invasive bladder tumours. Four meta-analyses have confirmed that BCG after TUR is superior to TUR alone or TUR and chemotherapy for prevention of recurrence of non-muscle-invasive tumours (137-140) (LE: 1a). Since the publication of these meta-analyses, three randomised studies of intermediate- and high-risk tumours have been presented. In these studies, BCG was compared with the combination of epirubicin and interferon (141), mitomycin C (MMC) (142) or epirubicin (143) alone. All of these studies have confirmed the superiority of BCG for prevention of tumour recurrence. It has been shown that the effect was long lasting (142,143) and was also observed in a separate analysis of patients with tumours at intermediate risk (143).

One recently published meta-analysis (144) has evaluated the individual data from 2,820 patients enrolled in nine randomised studies that have compared MMC versus BCG. In the trials with BCG maintenance, a 32% reduction in the risk of recurrence for BCG compared to MMC was found ($p < 0.0001$), whereas there was a 28% increase in the risk of recurrence ($p = 0.006$) for patients treated with BCG in the trials without BCG maintenance.

Two meta-analyses have demonstrated that BCG therapy prevents, or at least delays, the risk of tumour progression (145,146) (LE: 1a). A meta-analysis carried out by the EORTC-GU group has evaluated data from 4,863 patients enrolled in 24 randomised trials. A total of 3,967 (81.6%) patients had only papillary tumours and 896 (18.4%) had primary or concurrent CIS. Five different BCG strains were used, and in 20 out of the 24 trials, some form of BCG maintenance was used. In four trials only, a 6-week induction course was used. Based on a median follow-up of 2.5 years and a maximum of 15 years, 260 out of 2,658 patients (9.8%) on BCG progressed compared to 304 out of 2,205 (13.8%) in the control groups (TUR alone, TUR plus intravesical chemotherapy, or TUR plus other immunotherapy). This shows a reduction of 27% in the odds of progression with BCG maintenance treatment ($p = 0.0001$). The size of the reduction is similar in patients with TaT1 papillary tumours and in those with CIS (146). A recent randomised study with long-term observation has demonstrated significantly fewer distant metastases and better overall- and disease-specific survival in patients treated with BCG compared to epirubicin (143) (LE: 1b). On the contrary, a meta-analysis of individual patient data was not able to confirm any statistically significant difference between MMC and BCG for progression, survival and cause of death (144). In summary, in spite of these conflicting results, the majority of data was able to show the reduction in the risk of progression in tumours at high and intermediate risk if the BCG including maintenance schedule was used.

Two other meta-analyses have suggested a possible bias in favour of BCG by the inclusion of patients who were previously treated with intravesical chemotherapy (147,148). In the most recent meta-analysis, however, BCG maintenance was more effective than MMC also in patients who were previously treated with chemotherapy (144).

*7.2.2 **Optimal BCG schedule***

For optimal efficacy, BCG must be given in a maintenance schedule (140,144-146) (LE: 1a). In the EORTC-GU group meta-analysis, only patients who received maintenance BCG benefited. In the four trials in which no maintenance was given, no reduction in progression was observed. In the 20 trials in which some form of BCG maintenance was given, a reduction of 37% in the odds of progression was observed ($p = 0.00004$). The meta-analysis was unable to determine which BCG maintenance schedule was the most effective (146). In their meta-analysis, Böhle et al. have concluded that at least 1 year of maintenance BCG is required to obtain the superiority of BCG over MMC for prevention of recurrence or progression (140,145). Although some modifications have been tried, induction BCG instillations are classically given according to the empirical 6-weekly induction schedule that was introduced by Morales in 1976 (149). However, many different maintenance schedules have been used, ranging from a total of 10 instillations given in 18 weeks, to 27

instillations over 3 years (150). The optimal number of induction instillations and the optimal frequency and duration of maintenance instillations remain unknown (151).

7.2.3 ***Optimal dose of BCG***

To reduce BCG toxicity, a number of authors have proposed one-third and one-quarter dose instillations of BCG. Comparing one-third dose to full-dose BCG in 500 patients, CUETO has found no overall difference in efficacy. However, it has been suggested that a full dose of BCG is more effective in multifocal tumours (152,153) (LE: 1b). Although fewer patients have reported toxicity with the reduced dose, the incidence of severe systemic toxicity has been similar in the standard- and reduced-dose groups. The same Spanish group has shown in a prospective randomised trial that one-third of the standard dose of BCG might be the minimum effective dose in intermediate-risk tumours. A further reduction to one-sixth dose resulted in a decrease in efficacy for prevention of recurrence with no decrease in toxicity (154).

7.2.4 ***BCG toxicity***

Assuming that maintenance therapy is necessary for optimal efficacy, the issue of BCG toxicity becomes more relevant. As a result of the more pronounced side effects of BCG compared to intravesical chemotherapy, there is still reluctance about the use of BCG. Deaths due to BCG sepsis and the high frequency of BCG-induced cystitis and allergic reactions have compromised its use (155). However, with increased experience in using BCG, the side effects now appear to be less prominent. Serious side effects are encountered in < 5% of patients and can be effectively treated in virtually all cases (155) (LE: 1b). Major complications can appear after systemic absorption of the drug. Thus, BCG should not be administered during the first 2 weeks after TUR, in patients with macroscopic haematuria or urinary tract infection, or after traumatic catheterisation. It should not be used in immunocompromised patients (immunosuppression, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]) (156).

The management of side-effects after BCG should reflect their type and grade. Recommendations for individual situations were provided by the International Bladder Cancer Group and by a Spanish group (157,158). Before applying intravesical BCG therapy the urologist should be aware how to treat BCG-induced complications.

7.2.5 ***Indications for BCG***

Although BCG is a very effective treatment, there is a consensus that not all patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer should be treated with BCG due to the risk of toxicity. Ultimately, the choice of treatment depends upon the patients' risk of recurrence and progression (*see* Table 7). The use of BCG does not alter the natural course of tumours at low risk of recurrence (*see* Table 7), and could be considered to be over-treatment for this patient category. In patients with tumours at high risk of progression, for whom cystectomy is not carried out, BCG including at least 1 year maintenance is indicated. In patients at intermediate or high risk of recurrence and intermediate risk of progression, BCG with 1 year maintenance is more effective than chemotherapy for prevention of recurrence; however, it has more side effects than chemotherapy. For this reason both BCG with maintenance and intravesical chemotherapy remain an option. The final choice should reflect the individual patients' risk of recurrence and progression as well as efficacy and side effects of each treatment modality.

7.3 Specific aspects of treatment of CIS

7.3.1 ***Treatment strategy***

If concurrent CIS is found in association with muscle-invasive bladder cancer, therapy is determined according to the invasive tumour. The detection of CIS with TaT1 tumours increases the risk of recurrence and progression of TaT1 tumours (106,107) and further treatment is mandatory. The treatment strategy is generally based on the criteria that are summarised in Sections 7.1, 7.2, 7.4 and Chapter 8.

Carcinoma *in situ* cannot be cured by an endoscopic procedure only. Histological diagnosis of CIS must be followed by further treatment, either intravesical BCG instillations or radical cystectomy (LE: 2). No consensus exists about whether conservative therapy (intravesical BCG instillations) or aggressive therapy (cystectomy) should be done, especially when there are concurrent high-grade papillary tumours. There has been a lack of randomised trials of instillation therapy and early cystectomy as immediate primary treatment. Tumour-specific survival rates after early cystectomy for CIS are excellent, but as many as 40-50% of patients might be over-treated (3).

7.3.2 ***Cohort studies***

In retrospective evaluations of patients with CIS, a complete response rate of 48% was achieved with intravesical chemotherapy and 72-93% with BCG (109-112,159) (LE: 2). Up to 50% of complete responders might eventually show recurrence with a risk of invasion and/or extravesical recurrence (112,150,159,160).

*7.3.3 **Prospective randomised trials***

Unfortunately, there have been few randomised trials in patients with CIS alone. Most trials have included patients with either papillary tumours or CIS, which has resulted in only a small number of CIS patients being entered. Thus, the power to detect differences of treatment results has been low and the reliability of the conclusions is limited (3).

A meta-analysis of clinical trials that has compared intravesical BCG to intravesical chemotherapy (MMC, epirubicin, or adriamycin) in patients with CIS has shown a significantly increased response rate after BCG and a reduction of 59% in the odds of treatment failure with BCG (OR = 0.41, p = 0.0001). In trials that have compared BCG with MMC, the long-term benefit of BCG was smaller, but BCG was superior to MMC in trials with BCG maintenance (OR = 0.57, p = 0.04) (161).

In an EORTC-GU group meta-analysis of tumour progression, in a subgroup of 403 patients with CIS, BCG reduced the risk of progression by 35% as compared to intravesical chemotherapy or different immunotherapy (OR = 0.65, 95% CI = 0.36-1.16, p = 0.10) (146) (LE: 1b). There has been no single trial that has demonstrated superiority of combined BCG and MMC over BCG alone (162) (LE: 1).

In summary, as compared to chemotherapy, treatment of patients with CIS using BCG increases the complete response rate, the overall percentage of patients who remain disease free, and reduces the risk of tumour progression (LE: 1a).

*7.3.4 **Treatment of extravesical CIS***

Patients with CIS are at high risk of extravesical involvement: in the upper urinary tract and in the prostatic urethra. Solsona et al. have found that 87 of 138 patients (63%) with CIS developed extravesical involvement initially or during follow-up (163). Patients with extravesical involvement had worse survival than those with bladder CIS alone (163) (LE: 3).

In the prostate, CIS might be present only in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra or in the prostatic ducts (3). These situations should be distinguished from tumour invasion into the stroma of the prostate, which is staged as T4a, and for which immediate cystoprostatectomy is mandatory. Patients with CIS in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra can be treated by intravesical instillations of BCG. Transurethral resection of the prostate can improve the contact of BCG with the prostatic urethra (3,164,165) (LE: 3). In patients with prostatic duct involvement, the data are insufficient to provide clear treatment recommendations. As no conclusive results have been attained with regard to the use of conservative therapy, radical surgery should be considered in these patients (165) (LE: 3).

The treatment of CIS that involves the upper urinary tract is discussed in the upper urinary tract guidelines.

7.4 Treatment of failure of intravesical therapy

*7.4.1 **Failure of intravesical chemotherapy***

Patients with non-muscle-invasive recurrence of urothelial bladder carcinoma after intravesical chemotherapy can profit from BCG instillations (147) (LE: 1a).

*7.4.2 **Failure of intravesical BCG immunotherapy***

Treatment with BCG is considered to have failed in following situations:

a. Whenever muscle-invasive tumour is detected during follow-up.
b. If high-grade, non-muscle-invasive tumour is present at both 3 and 6 months (166). In patients with tumour present at 3 months, an additional BCG course can achieve a complete response in > 50% of cases, both in patients with papillary tumours and CIS (37,166), but with increasing risk of progression (167,168).
c. Any worsening of the disease under BCG treatment, such as a higher number of recurrences, higher T- stage or higher grade, or appearance of CIS, in spite of an initial response (LE: 3).

Changing from BCG to intravesical chemotherapy, device-assisted chemotherapy instillations, or additional interferon α-2b immunotherapy can yield responses in selected cases with non-muscle-invasive BCG treatment failure (169-178). However, experience is limited and these strategies are considered experimental. As a result of the high risk of development of muscle-invasive tumour in these patients (166-168) (LE: 3), cystectomy is strongly advocated upon early BCG failure in fit patients.

Patients with a recurrence at > 1 year after completion of BCG therapy can be treated according to the risk classification (*See Tables 6, 7 and 8*) (169).

Table 8: Treatment recommendations in TaT1 tumours according to risk stratification

Risk category	Low	Intermediate	High
Recurrence	One immediate instillation of chemotherapy	One immediate instillation of chemotherapy, followed by further instillations, either chemotherapy or a minimum 1 year of BCG (the final choice is determined by the risk of tumour progression)	One immediate instillation of chemotherapy, followed by further instillations, either chemotherapy or a minimum of 1 year of BCG (the final choice is determined by the risk of tumour progression)
Progression	One immediate instillation of chemotherapy (it can be followed by further chemotherapy instillations if the patients has at the same time an intermediate risk of recurrence)	One immediate instillation of chemotherapy, followed by a minimum of 1 year of BCG or further chemotherapy instillations	Intravesical BCG for at least 1 year, or immediate cystectomy

BCG = bacillus Calmette-Guérin.

7.5 Recommendations for adjuvant therapy in TaT1 tumours and for therapy of CIS

	GR
The type of intravesical therapy should be based on the risk groups shown in Table 7.	A
In patients with TaT1 tumours at low risk of recurrence and progression, one immediate instillation of chemotherapy is recommended as the complete adjuvant treatment.	A
In patients with TaT1 tumours at intermediate or high risk of recurrence and intermediate risk of progression, one immediate instillation of chemotherapy should be followed by a minimum 1 year of BCG treatment, or by further instillations of chemotherapy.	A
If chemotherapy is given, it is advised to use the drug at its optimal pH and to maintain the concentration of the drug during instillation by reducing fluid intake. The optimal schedule and the duration of the chemotherapy instillations remain unclear, but it should be given no more than 12 months.	B
In patients with TaT1 tumours at high risk of progression, intravesical BCG for at least 1 year is indicated.	A
In patients with bladder CIS, intravesical BCG for at least 1 year is indicated.	A
In patients with CIS in the epithelial lining of the prostatic urethra, TUR of the prostate followed by intravesical instillations of BCG could be an option.	C
Immediate radical cystectomy may be offered to patients at highest risk of tumour progression.	C
In patients with BCG failure, cystectomy is indicated.	B

BCG = bacillus Calmette-Guérin; CIS = carcinoma in situ*; TUR = transurethral resection.*

8. CYSTECTOMY FOR NON-MUSCLE-INVASIVE BLADDER CANCER

Some experts consider it is reasonable to propose immediate cystectomy to those patients with non-muscle-invasive tumour who are at high risk of progression. According to the risk tables of the EORTC (*see* Tables 6 and 7) these are:

- multiple recurrent high-grade tumours;
- high-grade T1 tumours;
- high-grade tumours with concurrent CIS.

With these patients, it is recommended to discuss both treatment options: immediate cystectomy and conservative treatment with BCG instillations. Patients should be informed about the benefits and risks of both approaches.

Cystectomy is advocated in patients with non-muscle-invasive tumours with BCG treatment failure, as mentioned above. Delay of cystectomy in these patients might lead to decreased disease-specific survival (179). In patients in whom cystectomy is performed at the time of pathological non-muscle-invasive disease, the 5-year disease-free survival rate exceeds 80% (180-185).

9. FOLLOW-UP OF PATIENTS WITH NON-MUSCLE-INVASIVE BLADDER TUMOURS

As a result of the risk of recurrence and progression, patients with TaT1 bladder tumours need to be followed; however, the frequency and duration of cystoscopy and imaging should reflect the individual patients' degree of risk. Using risk tables (see Tables 6 and 7), we are able to predict the short-term and long-term risks of recurrence and progression in individual patients, and can adapt the follow-up schedule accordingly (106). By planning the follow-up schedule the following aspects should be considered:

a. *The prompt detection of muscle-invasive and high-grade non-muscle-invasive recurrence is crucial because a delay in diagnosis and therapy can be life-threatening to the patient.*

b. *Tumour recurrence in the low-risk group is nearly always low stage and low grade.*
Small, non-invasive (Ta), low-grade papillary recurrence does not present an immediate danger to the patient, and early detection is not essential for successful therapy (186-193) (LE: 2b). In these patients, fulguration of small papillary recurrences on an outpatient basis could be a safe treatment option that reduces the therapeutic burden (194) (LE: 3). Some authors even defend temporary surveillance (192,193,195).

c. *The result of the first cystoscopy after TUR at 3 months is a very important prognostic indicator for recurrence and progression* (106,168,196,197) (LE: 1a). The first cystoscopy should thus **always** be performed 3 months after TUR in all patients with TaT1 bladder tumour.

d. *The risk of upper urinary tract recurrence increases in patients with multiple and high risk tumours* (42) (LE: 3).

As there has not been presented any non-invasive method that could replace endoscopy, the follow-up is based on regular cystoscopies (see 5.5). There has been a lack of randomised studies that have investigated the possibility of safely reducing frequency of follow-up cystoscopies. The following recommendations are therefore based only on retrospective experience.

9.1 Recommendations for follow-up in patients after TUR of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

	GR
Patients with TaT1 tumours at low risk of recurrence and progression should have a cystoscopy at 3 months. If negative, the following cystoscopy is advised 9 months later, and then yearly for 5 years.	C
Patients with TaT1 tumours at high risk of progression and those with CIS should have a cystoscopy and urinary cytology at 3 months. If negative, the following cystoscopy and cytology should be repeated every 3 months for a period of 2 years, and every 6 months thereafter until 5 years, and then yearly. Yearly imaging of the upper tract is recommended.	C
Patients with TaT1 tumours at intermediate risk of progression (about one-third of all patients) should have an in-between follow-up scheme using cystoscopy and cytology, which is adapted according to personal and subjective factors.	C
During follow-up in patients with positive cytology and no visible tumour in the bladder, R-biopsies or biopsies with PDD (if equipment is available) and investigation of extravesical locations (CT urography, prostatic urethra biopsy) are recommended.	B

CIS = carcinoma in situ*; PDD = photodynamic diagnosis.*

10. REFERENCES

1. Oosterlinck W, Lobel B, Jakse G, et al; European Association of Urology (EAU) Working Group on Oncological Urology. Guidelines on bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2002 Feb;41(2):105-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074395
2. Oosterlinck W, Solsona E, van der Meijden APM, et al; European Association of Urology. EAU guidelines on diagnosis and treatment of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2004 Aug;46(2):147-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15245806
3. Van der Meijden APM, Sylvester R, Oosterlinck W, et al; for the EAU Working Party on Non Muscle Invasive Bladder Cancer. EAU guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of urothelial carcinoma in situ. Eur Urol 2005 Sep;48(3):363-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15994003
4. Babjuk M, Oosterlinck W, Sylvester R, et al. EAU Guidelines on non-muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):303-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18468779
5. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
6. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
7. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
8. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.full
9. Ploeg M, Aben KKH, Kiemeney LA. The present and future burden of urinary bladder cancer in the world. World J Urol 2009 Jun;27(3):289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19219610
10. Ferlay J, Bray F, Pisani P, et al. Globocan 2002, Cancer Incidence, Mortality and Prevalence Worldwide, IARC CancerBase No. 5, version 2.0. Lyon: IARCC Press, 2004.
11. Ferlay J, Randi G, Bosetti C, et al. Declining mortality from bladder cancer in Europe. BJU Int 2008 Jan;101(1):11-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17971176

12. McCahy PJ, Harris CA, Neal E. The accuracy of recording of occupational history in patients with bladder cancer. Br J Urol 1997 Jan;79(1):91-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9043504
13. Zeegers MPA, Swaen GMH, Kant I, et al. Occupational risk factors for male bladder cancer: results from a population-based case cohort study in the Netherlands. Occup Environ Med 2001 Sep;58(9):590-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11511746
14. Samanic CM, Kogevinas M, Silverman DT et al. Occupation and bladder cancer in a hospital-based case-control study in Spain. Occup Environ Med 2008 May;65(5):347-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17951336
15. Zeegers MP, Tan FE, Dorant E, et al. The impact of characteristics of cigarette smoking on urinary tract cancer risk: a meta-analysis of epidemiologic studies. Cancer 2000 Aug;89(3):630-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10931463
16. Bjerregaard BK, Raaschou-Nielsen O, Sørensen M, et al. Tobacco smoke and bladder cancer-in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition. Int J Cancer 2006 Nov;119(10):2412-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16894557
17. Puente D, Harge P, Greiser E et al. A pooled analysis of bladder cancer case-control studies evaluating smoking in men and women. Cancer Causes Contr 2006 Feb;17(1):71-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16411055
18. Aveyard P, Adab P, Cheng KK, et al. Does smoking status influence the prognosis of bladder cancer? A systematic review. BJU Int 2002 Aug;90(3):228-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12133057
19. Sobin LH, Gospodariwicz M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM classification of malignant tumors. UICC International Union Against Cancer. 7th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, 2009 Dec; pp. 262-265. http://www.uicc.org/tnm/
20. Epstein JI, Amin MB, Reuter VR, et al. The World Health Organization/International Society of Urological Pathology consensus classification of urothelial (transitional cell) neoplasms of the urinary bladder. Am J Surg Pathol 1998 Dec;22(12):1435-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9850170
21. Sauter G, Algaba F, Amin M, et al. Tumours of the urinary system: non-invasive urothelial neoplasias. In: Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, Sesterhenn I, eds. *WHO classification of classification of tumours of the urinary system and male genital organs*. Lyon: IARCC Press, 2004, pp. 29-34.
22. Pan CC, Chang YH, Chen KK, et al. Prognostic significance of the 2004 WHO/ISUP classification for prediction of recurrence, progression, and cancer-specific mortality of non-muscle-invasive urothelial tumors of the urinary bladder: a clinicopathologic study of 1,515 cases. Am J Clin Pathol 2010 May;133(5):788-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20395527
23. Burger M, van der Aa MN, van Oers JM, et al. Prediction of Progression of Non Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer by WHO 1973 and 2004 Grading and by FGFR3 Mutation Status: A Prospective Study. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):835-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18166262
24. May M, Brookman-Amissah S, Roigas J, et al. Prognostic accuracy of individual uropathologists in noninvasive urinary bladder carcinoma: a multicentre study comparing the 1973 and 2004 World Health Organisation Classifications. Eur Urol 2010 May;57(5):850-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19346063
25. Otto W, et al. The WHO classification of 1973 is more suitable than the WHO classification of 2004 for predicting survival in pT1 urothelial bladder cancer. BJU Int 2011 Feb;107(3):404-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20707791
26. MacLennan GT, Kirkali Z, Cheng L. Histologic grading of noninvasive papillary urothelial neoplasms. Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):889-98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17095142
27. Orsola A, Trias I, Raventós CX, et al. Initial high-grade T1 urothelial cell carcinoma: feasibility and prognostic significance of lamina propria invasion microstaging (T1a/b/c) in BCG-treated and BCG-non-treated patients. Eur Urol. 2005 Aug;48(2):231-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15963635
28. Andius P, Johansson SL, Holmäng S. Prognostic factors in stage T1 bladder cancer: tumor pattern (solid or papillary) and vascular invasion more important than depth of invasion. Urology 2007 Oct;70(4):758-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17991551

29. Faivre d'Arcier B, et al. T1 bladder carcinoma: prognostic value of the muscularis mucosae invasion (T1a/T1b). A multicenter study by the French Urological Association (CCAFU). Prog Urol. 2010 Jun;20(6):440-9. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20538209
30. Cho KS, Seo HK, Joung JY et al. Lymphovascular Invasion in Transurethral Resection Specimens as Predictor of Progression and Metastasis in Patients With Newly Diagnosed T1 Bladder Urothelial Cancer. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2625-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19836779
31. Kamat AM. The Case for Early Cystectomy in the Treatment of Nonmuscle Invasive Micropapillary Bladder Carcinoma. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3 Pt 1):881-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469571
32. Murphy WM, Takezawa K, Maruniak NA. Interobserver discrepancy using the 1998 WHO/ISUP classification of urothelial neoplasms: practical choices for patient care. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3): 968-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187201
33. Witjes JA, Moonen PMJ, van der Heijden AG. Review pathology in a diagnostic bladder cancer trial. Urology 2006 Apr;67(4):751-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16566990
34. Bol MG, Baak J, Buhr-Wildhagen S, et al. Reproducibility and prognostic variability of grade and lamina propria invasion in stages Ta, T1 urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. J Urol 2003 Apr;169(4):1291-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629345
35. Van der Meijden A, Sylvester R, Collette L, et al. The role and impact of pathology review on stage and grade assessment on stages Ta and T1 bladder tumors: a combined analysis of 5 European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer trials. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1533-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025698
36. Van Rhijn BWG, van der Kwast TH, Kakiashvili DM, et al. Pathological stage review is indicated in primary pT1 bladder cancer. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(2):206-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20002439
37. Sylvester R, van der Meijden A, Witjes JA, et al. High-grade Ta urothelial carcinoma and carcinoma in situ of the bladder. Urology 2005 Dec;66(6 Suppl 1):90-107.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16399418
38. Lamm DL, Herr HW, Jakse G, et al. Updated concepts and treatment of carcinoma in situ. Urol Oncol Jul-Oct 1998;4(4-5):130-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21227218
39. Goessl C, Knispel HH, Millar K, et al. Is routine excretory urography necessary at first diagnosis of bladder cancer? J Urol 1997 Feb;157(2):480-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996338
40. Palou J, Rodriguez-Rubio F, Huguet J, et al. Multivariate analysis of clinical parameters of synchronous primary superficial bladder cancer and upper urinary tract tumours. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):859-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093970
41. Holmang S, Hedelin H, Anderstrom C, et al. Long-term follow-up of a bladder carcinoma cohort: routine followup urography is not necessary. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):45-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628602
42. Millán-Rodríguez F, Chéchile-Toniolo G, Salvador-Bayarri J, et al. Upper urinary tract tumours after primary superficial bladder tumours: prognostic factors and risk groups. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4): 1183-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992362
43. Nolte-Ernsting C, Cowan N. Understanding multislice CT urography techniques: many roads lead to Rome. Eur Radiol 2006 Dec;16(12):2670-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16953373
44. Raitanen M-P, Aine R, Rintala E, et al; FinnBladder Group. Differences between local and review urinary cytology and diagnosis of bladder cancer. An interobserver multicenter analysis. Eur Urol 2002;41(3):284-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12180229
45. Lokeshwar VB, Habuchi T, Grossman HB, et al. Bladder tumour markers beyond cytology: international consensus panel on bladder tumour markers. Urology 2005 Dec;66(6 Suppl 1):35-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16399415

46. Glas AS, Roos D, Deutekom M, et al. Tumour markers in the diagnosis of primary bladder cancer. A systematic review. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):1975-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771702
47. Lotan Y, Roehrborn CG. Sensitivity and specificity of commonly available bladder tumour markers versus cytology: results of a comprehensive literature review and meta-analysis. Urology 2003 Jan;61(1):109-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12559279
48. Van Rhijn BW, van der Poel HG, van der Kwast TH. Urine markers for bladder cancer surveillance: a systematic review. Eur Urol 2005 Jun;47(6):736-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925067
49. Van Rhijn BWG, van der Poel HG, van der Kwast HG. Cytology and urinary markers for the diagnosis of bladder cancer. Eur Urol Suppl 2009;8:536-41.
50. Vrooman OPJ, Witjes JA. Urinary markers in bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):909-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18162285
51. Lotan Y, Shariat SF, Schmitz-Drager BJ, et al. Considerations on implementing diagnostic markers into clinical decision making in bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2010 Jul-Aug;28(4):441-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20610281
52. Yutkin V, Nisman B, Pode D. Can urinary biomarkers replace cystoscopic examination in bladder cancer surveillance? Expert Rev Anticanc 2010 Jun;10(6):787-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20553203
53. Zwarthoff EC. Detection of tumours of the urinary tract in voided urine. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2008 Sep;(218):147-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18815929
54. Shirodkar SP, Lokeshwar VB. Bladder tumor markers: from hematuria to molecular diagnostics - where do we stand? Expert Rev Anticanc 2008 Jul;8(7):1111-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18588456
55. Shariat SF, Karam JA, Lerner SP. Molecular markers in bladder cancer. Curr Opin Urol. 2008 Jan;18(1):1-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18090481
56. Kim WJ, Bae SC. Molecular biomarkers in urothelial bladder cancer. Cancer Sci 2008 Apr;99(4): 646-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18377416
57. Catto JWF. Old and new urinary markers: Which one is the PSA for bladder cancer? Eur Urol Suppl. 2008;7:422-5.
58. Agarwal PK, Black PC, Kamat AM. Considerations on the use of diagnostic markers in management of patients with bladder cancer. World J Urol 2008 Feb;26(1):39-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18092171
59. Kausch I, Böhle A. Bladder cancer II. Molecular aspects and diagnosis. Eur Urol 2001 May;39(5):498-506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11464029
60. Grossman HB, Messing E, Soloway M, et al, Detection of bladder cancer using a point-of-care proteomic assay, JAMA 2005 Feb 293(7);810-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15713770
61. Lotan Y, Svatek RS, Malats N. Screening for bladder cancer: a perspective. World J Urol 2008 Feb;26(1):13-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18030473
62. Grossman HB, Soloway M, Messing E, et al. Surveillance for recurrent bladder cancer using a point-of-care proreomic assay. JAMA 2006 Jan;295(3):299-305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418465
63. Hajdinjak T. UroVysion FISH test for detecting urothelial cancers: Meta-analysis of diagnostic accuracy and comparison with urinary cytology testing. Urol Oncol 2008 Nov-Dec;26(6):645-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18367109
64. Mowatt G, Zhu S, Kilonzo M, et al. Systematic review of the clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of photodynamic diagnosis and urine biomarkers (FISH, ImmunoCyt, NMP22) and cytology for the detection and follow-up of bladder cancer. Health Technol Assess 2010 Jan;14(4):1-331. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20082749
65. Babjuk , M, Soukup, V, Pesl, M. et al. Urinary cytology and quantitative BTA and UBC tests in surveillance of patients with pTapT1 bladder urothelial carcinoma. Urology 2008 Apr;71(4):718-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18387400

66. Raitanen MP. The role of BTA stat Test in follow-up of patients with bladder cancer: results from FinnBladder studies. World J Urol 2008 Feb;26(1):45-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18180926
67. Lotan Y, Shariat SF, Grp NS. Impact of risk factors on the performance of the nuclear matrix protein 22 point-of-care test for bladder cancer detection. BJU Int 2008 Jun;101(11):1362-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18284410
68. Shariat SF, Marberger MJ, Lotan Y, et al. Variability in the performance of nuclear matrix protein 22 for the detection of bladder cancer. J Urology 2006 Sep;176(6):919-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890655
69. Nguyen CT, Jones JS. Defining the role of NMP22 in bladder cancer surveillance. World J Urol 2008 Feb;26(1):51-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18058108
70. Schmitz-Drager BJ, Beiche B, Tirsar LA, et al. Immunocytology in the assessment of patients with asymptomatic microhaematuria. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1582-8; discussion 8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17107748
71. Schlomer BJ, Ho R, Sagalowsky A, et al. Prospective Validation of the Clinical Usefulness of Reflex Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization Assay in Patients With Atypical Cytology for the Detection of Urothelial Carcinoma of the Bladder. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):62-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913822
72. Bergman J, Reznichek RC, Rajfer J. Surveillance of patients with bladder carcinoma using fluorescent in-situ hybridization on bladder washings. BJU Int 2008 Jan;101(1):26-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17850364
73. Van der Aa MN, Zwarthoff EC, Steyerberg EW, et al. Microsatellite Analysis of Voided-Urine Samples for Surveillance of Low-Grade Non-Muscle-Invasive Urothelial Carcinoma: Feasibility and Clinical Utility in a Prospective Multicenter Study (Cost-Effectiveness of Follow-Up of Urinary Bladder Cancer Trial [CEFUB]). Eur Urol 2009 Mar;55(3):659-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18501499
74. De Bekker-Grob EW, van der Aa MN, Zwarthoff EC, et al. Non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer surveillance for which cystoscopy is partly replaced by microsatellite analysis of urine: a cost-effective alternative? BJU Int 2009 Jul;104(1):41-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19500328
75. Rouprêt M, Hupertan V, Yates DR, et al. A comparison of the performance of microsatellite and methylation urine analysis for predicting the recurrence of urothelial cell carcinoma, and definition of a set of markers by Bayesian network analysis. BJU Int 2008 Jun;101(11):1448-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18325051
76. Hong YM, Loughlin KR. Economic Impact of Tumor Markers in Bladder Cancer Surveillance. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):131-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242381
77. Kurth KH, Schellhammer PF, Okajima E, et al. Current methods of assessing and treating carcinoma in situ of the bladder with or without involvement of the prostatic urethra. Int J Urol 1995 Jun;2(Suppl 2):8-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7553309
78. Brausi M, Collette L, Kurth K, et al; EORTC Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Collaborative Group. Variability in the recurrence Rate at first follow-up cystoscopy after TUR in stage Ta T1 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a combined analysis of seven EORTC studies. Eur Urol 2002 May;41(5):523-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074794
79. Mariappan P, Zachou A, Grigor KM. Detrusor muscle in the first, apparently complete transurethral resection of bladder tumour specimen is a surrogate marker of resection quality, predicts risk of early recurrence, and is dependent on operator experience. Eur Urol 2010 May;57(5):843-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19524354
80. Van der Meijden A, Oosterlinck W, Brausi M, et al. Significance of bladder biopsies in Ta,T1 bladder tumours: a report of the EORTC Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group. EORTC-GU Group Superficial Bladder Committee. Eur Urol 1999 Apr;35(4):267-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10419345
81. Levi AW, Potter SR, Schoenberg MP et al. Clinical significance of denuded urothelium in bladder biopsy. J Urol 2001 Aug;166(2):457-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458047

82. Matzkin H, Soloway MS, Hardeman S. Transitional cell carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1991 Nov;146(5):1207-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1942262
83. Mungan MU, Canda AE, Tuzel E, et al. Risk factors for mucosal prostatic urethral involvement in superficial transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2005 Nov;48(5):760-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16005563
84. Schmidbauer J, Witjes F, Schmeller N, et al; Hexvix PCB301/01 Study Group. Improved detection of urothelial carcinoma in situ with hexaminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):135-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665861
85. Jichlinski P, Guillou L, Karlsen SJ, et al. Hexyl aminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy: a new diagnostic tool for photodiagnosis of superficial bladder cancer -a multicenter study. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):226-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796694
86. Hungerhuber E, Stepp H, Kriegmair M, et al. Seven years´ experience with 5-aminolevulinic acid in detection of transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Urology 2007 Feb;69(2):260-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17320660
87. Kausch I, Sommerauer M, Montorsi F, et al. Photodynamic diagnosis in non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer: a systematic review and cumulative analysis of prospective studies. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):595-606.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20004052
88. Draga RO, Grimbergen MC, Kok ET, et al. Photodynamic diagnosis (5 aminolevulinic acid) of transitional cell carcinoma after bacillus Calmette-Gue´rin immunotherapy and mitomycin C intravesical therapy. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):655-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19819064
89. Daniltschenko DI, Riedl CR, Sachs MD, et al. Long-term benefit of 5-aminolevulinic acid fluorescence assisted transurethral resection of superficial bladder cancer: 5-year results of a prospective randomized study. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2129-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280742
90. Babjuk M, Soukup V, Petrik R, et al J. 5-aminolaevulinic acid -induced fluorescence cystoscopy during transurethral resection reduces the risk of recurrence in stage Ta/T1 bladder cancer. BJU Int 2005 Oct;96(6):798-802.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16153204
91. Denziger S, Burger M, Walter B, et al. Clinically relevant risk of reduction in risk of recurrence of superficial bladder cancer using 5-aminolevulinic acid -induced fluorescence diagnosis: 8-years results of prospective randomized study. Urology 2007 Apr;69(4):675-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445650
92. Schumacher MC, Holmäng S, Davidsson T, et al. Transurethral resection of non-muscle-invasive bladder transitional cell cancers with or without 5-aminolevulinic Acid under visible and fluorescent light: results of a prospective, randomised, multicentre study. Eur Urol 2010 Feb;57(2):293-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913351
93. Stenzl A, Burger M, Fradet Y, et al. Hexaminolevulinate guided fluorescence cystoscopy reduces recurrence in patients with nonmuscle invasive bladder cancer. J Urol 2010 Nov;184(5):1907-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20850152
94. Witjes Ja, Redorta JP, Jacqmin D, et al. Hexaminolevulinate-guided fluorescence cystoscopy in the diagnosis and follow-up of patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer: review of the evidence and recommendations. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):607-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20116164
95. Miladi M, Peyromaure M, Zerbib M, et al. The value of a second transurethral resection in evaluating patients with bladder tumours. Eur Urol 2003 Mar;43(3):241-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12600426
96. Brauers A, Buettner R, Jakse G. Second resection and prognosis of primary high risk superficial bladder cancer: is cystectomy often too early? J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):808-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176474
97. Schips L, Augustin H, Zigeuner RE, et al. Is repeated transurethral resection justified in patients with newly diagnosed superficial bladder cancer? Urology 2002 Feb;59(2):220-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834389

98. Grimm M-O, Steinhoff Ch, Simon X, et al. Effect of routine repeat transurethral resection for superficial bladder cancer: a long-term observational study. J Urol 2003 Aug;170(2 Pt 1):433-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12853793
99. Divrik RT, Yildirim Ü, Zorlu F, et al. The effect of repeat transurethral resection on recurrence and progression rates in patients with T1 tumours of the bladder who received intravesical mitomycin: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1641-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600720
100. Jahnson S, Wiklund F, Duchek M, et al. Results of second-look resection after primary resection of T1 tumour of the urinary bladder. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2005;39(3):206-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16127800
101. Dalbagni G, Vora K, Kaag M, et al. Clinical Outcome in a Contemporary Series of Restaged Patients with Clinical T1 Bladder Cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Dec;56(6):903-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19632765
102. Fritsche HM, Burger M, Svatek RS, et al. Characteristics and outcomes of patients with clinical T1 grade 3 urothelial carcinoma treated with radical cystectomy: results from an international cohort. Eur Urol 2010 Feb;57(2):300-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19766384
103. Kulkarni GS, Hakenberg OW, Gschwend JE, et al. An updated critical analysis of the treatment strategy for newly diagnosed high-grade T1 (previously T1G3) bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):60-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19740595
104. Lopez-Beltran A, Bassi P, Pavone-Macaluso M, et al. Handling and pathology reporting of specimens with carcinoma of the urinary bladder, ureter, and renal pelvis. Eur Urol 2004 Mar;45(3):257-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15036668
105. Millan-Rodriguez F, Chechile-Toniolo G, Salvador-Bayarri J, et al. Primary superficial bladder cancer risk groups according to progression, mortality and recurrence. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):680-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10954628
106. Sylvester RJ, van der Meijden AP, Oosterlinck W, et al. Predicting recurrence and progression in individual patients with stage TaT1 bladder cancer using EORTC risk tables: a combined analysis of 2596 patients from seven EORTC trials. Eur Urol 2006 Mar;49(3):466-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16442208
107. Fernandez-Gomez J, Madero R, Solsona E, et al. Predicting nonmuscle invasive bladder cancer recurrence and progression in patients treated with bacillus Calmette-Guerin: the CUETO scoring model. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2195-203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758621
108. Van Rhijn BW, Zuiverloon TC, Vis AN, et al. Molecular grade (FGFR3/MIB-1) and EORTC risk scores are predictive in primary non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2010 Sep;58(3):433-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20646825
109. Lamm DL. Carcinoma in situ. Urol Clin North Am 1992 Aug;19(3):499-508. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1636234
110. Losa A, Hurle R, Lembo A. Low dose bacillus Calmette-Guerin for carcinoma in situ of the bladder: long-term results. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):68-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604316
111. Griffiths TRL, Charlton M, Neal DE, et al. Treatment of carcinoma in situ with intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin without maintenance. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2408-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992047
112. Takenaka A, Yamada Y, Miyake H, et al. Clinical outcomes of bacillus Calmette-Guérin instillation therapy for carcinoma in situ of urinary bladder. Int J Urol 2008 Apr;15(4):309-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18380817
113. Solsona E, Iborra I, Dumont R, et al. The 3-month clinical response to intravesical therapy as a predictive factor for progression in patients with high risk superficial bladder cancer. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):685-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953125
114. Van Gils-Gielen RJ, Witjes WP, Caris CT, et al. Risk factors in carcinoma in situ of the urinary bladder. Urology 1995 Apr;45(4):581-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7716838
115. Hudson MA, Herr HW. Carcinoma in situ of the bladder. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 1):564-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861485

116. Chade DC, Shariat SF, Godoy G, et al. Clinical outcomes of primary bladder carcinoma in situ in a contemporary series. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):74-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/%2020546806
117. Sylvester RJ, Oosterlinck W, van der Meijden AP. A single immediate postoperative instillation of chemotherapy decreases the risk of recurrence in patients with stage Ta T1 bladder cancer: a metaanalysis of published results of randomized clinical trials. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2186-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126782
118. Berrum-Svennung I, Granfors T, Jahnson S, et al. A Single instillation of epirubicin after transurethral resection of bladder tumors prevents only small recurrences. J Urol 2008 Jan;179(1):101-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17997459
119. Gudjonsson S, Adell L, Merdasa F, et al. Should all patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer receive early intravesical chemotherapy after transurethral resection? The results of a prospective randomised multicentre study. Eur Urol 2009 Apr;55(4):773-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19153001
120. Kaasinen E, Rintala E, Hellstrom P, et al; FinnBladder Group. Factors explaining recurrence in patients undergoing chemoimmunotherapy regimens for frequently recurring superficial bladder carcinoma. Eur Urol 2002 Aug;42(2):167-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12160589
121. Pan JS, Slocum HK, Rustum YM, et al. Inhibition of implantation of murine bladder tumor by thiotepa in cauterized bladder. J Urol 1989 Dec;142(6):1589-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2511340
122. Pode D, Alon Y, Horowitz AT, et al. The mechanism of human bladder tumor implantation in an in vitro model. J Urol 1986 Aug;136(2):482-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3525861
123. Günther JH, Jurczok A, Wulf T, et al. Optimizing syngeneic orthotopic murine bladder cancer (MB49). Cancer Res 1999 Jun;59(12):2834-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10383142
124. Böhle A, Jurczok A, Ardelt PU, et al. Inhibition of bladder carcinoma cell adhesion by oligopeptide combinations in vitro and in vivo. J Urol 2002 Jan;167(1):357-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743356
125. Hendricksen K, Witjes WP, Idema JG, et al. Comparison of three schedules of intravesical epirubicin in patients with non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):984-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18248876
126. Böhle A, Leyh H, Frei C, et al. Single postoperative instillation of gemcitabine in patients with non-muscle-invasive transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase III multicentre study. Eur Urol 2009 Sep;56(3):495-503.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19560257
127. Oddens JR, van der Meijden AP, Sylvester R. One immediate postoperative instillation of chemotherapy in low risk Ta, T1 bladder cancer patients. Is it always safe? Eur Urol 2004 Sep;46(3):336-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15306104
128. Engeler DS, Wyler S, Neyer M, et al. Feasibility of early intravesical instillation chemotherapy after transurethral resection of the bladder: a prospective evaluation in a consecutive series of 210 cases. Scan J Urol Nephrol 2008;42(6):522-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18609290
129. Solsona E, Iborra I, Ricos JV, et al. Effectiveness of a single immediate mitomycin C instillation in patients with low risk superficial bladder cancer: short and long-term followup. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1120-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081851
130. Hinotsu S, Akaza H, Ohashi Y, et al. Intravesical chemotherapy for maximum prophylaxis of new early phase superficial bladder carcinoma treated by transurethral resection: a combined analysis of trials by the Japanese Urological Cancer Research Group using smoothed hazard function. Cancer 1999 Nov;86(9):1818-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10547556
131. Pawinski A, Sylvester R, Kurth KH, et al. A combined analysis of European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer, and Medical Research Council randomized clinical trials for the prophylactic treatment of TaT1 bladder cancer. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genitourinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group and the Medical Research Council Working Part on Superficial Bladder Cancer. J Urol 1996 Dec;156(6):1934-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911360

132. Huncharek M, Geschwind J-F, Witherspoon B, et al. Intravesical chemotherapy prophylaxis in primary superficial bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of 3703 patients from 11 randomized trials. J Clin Epidemiol 2000 Jul;53(7):676-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10941943
133. Huncharek M, McGarry R, Kupelnick B. Impact of intravesical chemotherapy on recurrence rate of recurrent superficial transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: results of a meta-analysis. Anticancer Res 2001 Jan-Feb;21(1B):765-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11299841
134. Sylvester RJ, Oosterlinck W, Witjes JA. The schedule and duration of intravesical chemotherapy in patients with non muscle invasive bladder cancer: a systematic review of the published results of randomized clinical trials. Eur Urol 2008 Apr;53(4):709-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207317
135. Au JL, Baladament RA, Wientjes MG, et al; International Mitomycin C Consortium. International Mitomycin C Consortium. Methods to improve efficacy of intravesical mitomycin C: results of a randomized phase III trial. J Natl Cancer Inst 2001 Apr;93(8):597-604.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11309436
136. Kuroda M, Niijima T, Kotake T, et al; 6th Trial of the Japanese Urological Cancer Research Group. Effect of prophylactic treatment with intravesical epirubicin on recurrence of superficial bladder cancer -The 6th Trial of the Japanese Urological Cancer Research Group (JUCRG): a randomized trial of intravesical epirubicin at dose of 20mg/40ml, 30 mg/40 ml, 40 mg/40 ml. Eur Urol 2004 May;45(5): 600-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15082202
137. Shelley MD, Kynaston H, Court J, et al. A systematic review of intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin plus transurethral resection vs transurethral resection alone in Ta and T1 bladder cancer. BJU Int 2001 Aug;88(3):209-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11488731
138. Han RF, Pan JG. Can intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin reduce recurrence in patients with superficial bladder cancer? A meta-analysis of randomized trials. Urology 2006 Jun;67(6):1216-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16765182
139. Shelley MD, Wilt TJ, Court J, et al. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin is superior to mitomycin C in reducing tumour recurrence in high-risk superficial bladder cancer: a metaanalysis of randomized trials. BJU Int 2004 Mar;93(4):485-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15008714
140. Böhle A, Jocham D, Bock PR. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin versus mitomycin C for superficial bladder cancer: a formal meta-analysis of comparative studies on recurrence and toxicity. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):90-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478111
141. Duchek M, Johansson R, Jahnson S, et al. Bacillus Calmette-Guérin Is superior to a combination of epirubicin and interferon-a2b in the intravesical treatment of patients with stage T1 urinary bladder cancer. a prospective, randomized, nordic study. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):25-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19819617
142. Järvinen R, Kaasinen E, Sankila A, et al. Long-term efficacy of maintenance bacillus Calmette-Guérin versus maintenance mitomycin C instillation therapy in frequently recurrent TaT1 tumours without carcinoma in situ: a subgroup analysis of the prospective, randomised FinnBladder I study with a 20-year follow-up. Eur Urol 2009 Aug;56(2):260-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19395154
143. Sylvester RJ, Brausi MA, Kirkels WJ, et al. Long-term efficacy results of EORTC Genito-Urinary Group randomized phase 3 study 30911 comparing intravesical instillations of epirubicin, bacillus Calmette-Guérin, and bacillus Calmette-Guérin plus isoniazid in patients with intermediate- and high-risk stage Ta T1 urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2010 May;57(5):766-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20034729
144. Malmström P-U, Sylvester RJ, Crawford DE, et al. An individual patient data meta-analysis of the long-term outcome of randomised studies comparing intravesical mitomycin C versus bacillus Calmette-Gue´rin for non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Aug;56(2):247-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19409692
145. Böhle A, Bock PR. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin versus mitomycin C in superficial bladder cancer: formal meta-analysis of comparative studies on tumour progression. Urology 2004 Apr;63(4):682-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072879

146. Sylvester RJ, van der Meijden AP, Lamm DL. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin reduces the risk of progression in patients with superficial bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of the published results of randomized clinical trials. J Urol 2002 Nov;168(5):1964-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12394686
147. Huncharek, Kupelnick B. Impact of intravesical chemotherapy versus BCG immunotherapy on recurrence of superficial transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Am J Clin Oncol 2003 Aug;26(4):402-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12902895
148. Huncharek M, Kupelnick B. The influence of intravesical therapy on progression of superficial transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a metaanalytic comparison of chemotherapy versus bacilli Calmette-Guerin immunotherapy. Am J Clin Oncol 2004 Oct;27(5):522-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596924
149. Morales, A, Eidinger D, Bruce AW. Intracavitary bacillus Calmette-Guerin in the treatment of superficial bladder tumors. J Urol 1976 Aug;116(2):180-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/820877
150. Lamm DL, Blumenstein BA, Crissman JD, et al. Maintenance bacillus Calmette-Guerin immunotherapy for recurrent Ta, T1 and carcinoma in situ transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a randomized Southwest Oncology Group Study. J Urol 2000 Apr;163(4):1124-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737480
151. Zlotta AR, van Vooren JP, Huygen K, et al. What is the optimal regimen for BCG intravesical therapy? Are six weekly instillations necessary? Eur Urol 2000 Apr;37(4):470-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10765079
152. Martinez-Pineiro JA, Flores N, Isorna S, et al; for CUETO (Club Urológico Español De Tratamiento Oncológico). Long-term follow-up of a randomized prospective trial comparing a standard 81 mg dose of intravesical bacille Calmette-Guérin with a reduced dose of 27 mg in superficial bladder cancer. BJU Int 2002 May;89(7):671-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11966623
153. Martinez-Pineiro JA, Martinez-Pineiro L, Solsona E, et al; Club Urológico Español De Tratamiento Oncológico (CUETO). Has a 3-fold decreased dose of bacillus Calmette-Guerin the same efficacy against recurrences and progression of T1G3 and Tis bladder tumours than the standard dose? Results of a prospective randomized trial. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1242-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145378
154. Ojea A, Nogueira JL, Solsona E, et al; CUETO Group (Club Urológico Español De Tratamiento Oncológico). A multicentre, randomised prospective trial comparing three intravesical adjuvant therapies for intermediate-risk superficial bladder cancer: low-dose bacillus Calmette-Guerin (27mg) versus very low-dose bacillus Calmette-Guerin (13.5mg) versus mitomycin C. Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5):1398-406.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17485161
155. Van der Meijden AP, Sylvester RJ, Oosterlinck W, et al; EORTC Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Group. Maintenance bacillus Calmette-Guerin for Ta, T1 bladder tumours is not associated with increased toxicity: results from a European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genito-Urinary Group Phase III Trial. Eur Urol 2003 Oct;44(4):429-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499676
156. Lamm DL, van der Meijden PM, Morales A, et al. Incidence and treatment of complications of bacillus Calmette-Guerin intravesical therapy in superficial bladder cancer. J Urol 1992 Mar;147(3):596-600.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538436
157. Witjes JA, Palou J, Soloway M, et al. Clinical practice recommendations for the prevention and management of intravesical therapy-associated adverse events. Eur Urol Suppl 2008 Oct;7(10):667-74.
158. Rodríguez F, Palou J, Martínez R, et al. Practical guideline for the management of adverse events associated with BCG installations. Arch Esp Urol. 2008 Jun;61(5):591-6. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18709813
159. Jakse G, Hall R, Bono A, et al and members of the EORTC GU Group. Intravesical BCG in patients with carcinoma in situ of the urinary bladder: long-term results of EORTC GU Group phase II protocol 30861. Eur Urol 2001 Aug;40(2):144-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11528191
160. Gofrit ON, Pode D, Pizov G, et al. The natural history of bladder carcinoma in situ after initial response to bacillus Calmette-Gúerin immunotherapy. Urol Oncol 2009 May-Jun;27(3):258-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18440839

161. Sylvester RJ, van der Meijden APM, Witjes JA, et al. Bacillus Calmette-Guerin versus chemotherapy in the intravesical treatment of patients with carcinoma in situ of the bladder: a meta-analysis of the published results of randomized clinical trials. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):86-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947584
162. Kaasinen E, Wijkstrom H, Malmstrom PU, et al. Alternating mitomycin C and BCG instillations versus BCG alone in treatment of carcinoma in situ of the urinary bladder: a Nordic study. Eur Urol 2003 Jun;43(6):637-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12767365
163. Solsona E, Iborra I, Ricos JV, et al. Extravesical involvement in patients with bladder carcinoma in situ: biological and therapy implications. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):895-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583601
164. Kurth KH, Schellhammer PF, Okajima E, et al. Current methods of assessing and treating carcinoma in situ of the bladder with or without involvement of the prostatic urethra. Int J Urol 1995 Jun;2 Suppl 2:8-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7553309
165. Palou J, Baniel J, Klotz L, et al. Urothelial carcinoma of the prostate. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):50-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280908
166. Herr HW, Dalbagni G. Defining bacillus Calmette-Guerin refractory superficial bladder tumours. J Urol 2003 May;169(5):1706-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686813
167. Lerner SP, Tangen CM, Sucharew H, et al. Failure to achieve a complete response to induction BCG therapy is associated with increased risk of disease worsening and death in patients with high risk non muscle invasive bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2009 Mar-Apr;27(2):155-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18367117
168. Solsona E, Iborra I, Dumont R, et al. The 3-month clinical response to intravesical therapy as a predictive factor for progression in patients with high risk superficial bladder cancer. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):685-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953125
169. Gallagher BL, Joudi FN, Maymi JL, et al. Impact of previous bacille Calmette-Guérin failure pattern on subsequent response to bacille Calmette-Guérin plus interferon intravesical therapy. Urology 2008 Feb;71(2):297-301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308107
170. Dalbagni G, Russo P, Bochner B, et al. Phase II trial of intravesical gemcitabine in bacille Calmette-Guerin-refractory transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jun;24(18):2729-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782913
171. Mohanty NK, Nayak RL, Vasudeva P, et al. Intravesicle gemcitabine in management of BCG refractory superficial TCC of urinary bladder-our experience. Urol Oncol 2008 Nov-Dec;26(6):616-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18367121
172. Barlow L, McKiernan J, Sawczuk I, et al. A single-institution experience with induction and maintenance intravesical docetaxel in the management of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer refractory to bacilli Calmette-Guerin therapy. BJU Int 2009 Oct;104(8):1098-102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19389012
173. Steinberg G, Bahnson R, Brosman S, et al. Efficacy and safety of valrubicin for the treatment of bacillus Calmette-Guerin refractory carcinoma in situ of the bladder. The Valrubicin Study Group. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):761-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687972
174. Nativ O, Witjes JA, Hendricksen K, et al. Combined thermo-chemotherapy for recurrent bladder cancer after bacillus Calmette-Guerin. J Urol 2009 Oct; 182(4):1313-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19683278
175. Joudi FN, Smith BJ, O'Donnell MA. Final results from a national multicenter phase II trial of combination bacillus Calmette-Guerin plus interferon alpha-2B for reducing recurrence of superficial bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2006 Jul-Aug;24(4):344-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16818189
176. Di Lorenzo G, Perdonà S, Damiano R, et al. Gemcitabine versus bacille Calmette-Guérin after initial bacille Calmette-Guérin failure in non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer: a multicenter prospective randomized trial. Cancer 2010 Apr;116(8):1893-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20162706

177. Yates DR, Rouprêt M. Failure of bacille Calmette-Guérin in patients with high risk non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer unsuitable for radical cystectomy: an update of available treatment options. BJU International 2010 Jul;106(2):162-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201829
178. Zlotta AR, Fleshner NE, Jewett MA. The management of BCG failure in non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer: an update. Can Urol Assoc J 2009 Dec;3(6 Suppl 4):S199-205.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20019985
179. Raj GV, Herr H, Serio AM, et al. Treatment paradigm shift may improve survival of patients with high risk superficial bladder cancer. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1283-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382713
180. Stein JP, Lieskovsky G, Cote R, et al. Radical cystectomy in the treatment of invasive bladder cancer: long-term results in 1,054 patients. J Clin Oncol 2001 Feb;19(3):666-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157016
181. Hautmann RE, Gschwend JE, de Petriconi RC, et al. Cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: results of surgery only series in the neobladder era. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):486-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813874
182. Ghoneim MA, Abdel-Latif M, El-Mekresh M, et al, Radical cystectomy for carcinoma of the bladder: 2,720 consecutive cases 5 year later. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):121-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485392
183. Madersbacher S, Hochreiter W, Burkhard F, et al. Radical cystectomy for bladder cancer today - a homogeneous series without neoadjuvant therapy. J Clin Oncol 2003 Feb;21(4):690-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586807
184. Shariat SF, Karakiewicz PI, Palapattu GS, et al. Outcomes of radical cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a contemporary series from the bladder cancer research consortium. J Urol 2006 Dec;176(6 Pt 1):2414-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085118
185. Shariat SF, Palapattu GS, Amiel GE, et al. Characteristics and outcomes of patients with carcinoma in situ only at radical cystectomy. Urology 2006 Sep;68(3):538-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979748
186. Oge O, Erdem E, Atsu N, et al. Proposal for changes in cystoscopic follow-up of patients with low-grade pTa bladder tumour. Eur Urol 2000 Mar;37(3):271-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10720851
187. Holmäng S, Andius P, Hedelin H, et al. Stage progression in Ta papillary urothelial tumours: relationship to grade, immunohistochemical expression of tumour markers, mitotic frequency and DNA ploidy. J Urol 2001 Apr;165(4);1124-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257652
188. Fujii Y, Kawakami S, Koga F, et al. Long-term outcome of bladder papillary urothelial neoplasms of low malignant potential. BJU Int 2003 Oct;92(6):559-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14511033
189. Leblanc B, Duclos AJ, Bénard F, et al. Long-term follow-up of initial Ta grade 1 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. J Urol 1999 Dec;162(6):1946-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569544
190. Zieger K, Wolf H, Olsen PR, et al. Long-term follow-up of non-invasive bladder tumours (stage Ta): recurrence and progression. BJU Int 2000 May;85(7):824-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10792160
191. Borhan A, Reeder JE, O'Connell MJ, et al. Grade progression and regression in recurrent urothelial cancer. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2106-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771728
192. Soloway M, Bruck DS, Kim SS. Expectant management of small recurrent, non-invasive papillary bladder tumours. J Urol 2003 Aug;170(2 Pt 1):438-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12853794
193. Gofrit ON, Pode D, Lazar A, et al. Watchful waiting policy in recurrent Ta G1 bladder tumours. Eur Urol 2006 Feb;49(2):303-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413659
194. Herr HW, Donat SM, Reuter VE. Management of Low Grade Papillary Bladder Tumors. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 1):2201-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17698090
195. Pruthi RS, Baldwin N, Bhalani V, et al. Conservative Management of Low Risk Superficial Bladder Tumors. J Urol 2008 Jan;179(1):87-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17997444

196. Holmang S, Johansson SL. Stage Ta-T1 bladder cancer: the relationship between findings at first followup cystoscopy and subsequent recurrence and progression. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1634-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912378
197. Mariappan P, Smith G. A surveillance schedule for G1Ta bladder cancer allowing efficient use of check cystoscopy and safe discharge at 5 years based on a 25-year prospective database. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1008-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758711

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

5-ALA	5-aminolaevulinic acid
ASR	age standardised incidence rate
BCG	bacillus Calmette-Guérin
BTA	bladder tumour antigen
CIS	carcinoma *in situ*
CT	computed tomography
CUETO	Club Urológico Español de Tratamiento Oncológico (Spanish Oncology Group)
EAU	European Association of Urology
EORTC	European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer
EORTC-GU	EORTC Genitourinary group
FISH	fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation
GR	grade of recommendation
HAL	hexaminolaevulinic acid
ISUP	International Society of Urological Pathology
IVU	intravenous urography
LE	level of evidence
MMC	mitomycin C
NMIBC	non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer
NVP	negative predictive value
PDD	photodynamic diagnosis
PUNLMP	papillary urothelial neoplasms of low malignant potential
RCT	randomised controlled trial
TCC	transitional cell carcinoma
TNM	tumour, node, metastasis
TUR	transurethral resection
UICC	Union International Contre le Cancer
US	ultrasonography
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest

All members of the Non-Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all the relationships that they have and which might be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the EAU Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas

M. Rouprêt, R. Zigeuner, J. Palou, A. Boehle, E. Kaasinen, R. Sylvester, M. Babjuk, W. Oosterlinck

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

The most recent summary of the European Association of Urology (EAU) guidelines on upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas (UUT-UCCs) was published in 2004 (1). The EAU Guideline working group for UUT-UCCs has prepared current guidelines to provide evidence-based information for the clinical management of these rare tumours and to help clinicians incorporate these recommendations into their practice. The current update is based on a structured literature search.

2. METHODOLOGY

A Medline search was performed on urothelial malignancies and UUT-UCC management using combinations of the following terms: *urinary tract cancer, urothelial carcinomas, upper urinary tract, carcinoma, transitional cell, renal pelvis, ureter, bladder cancer, chemotherapy, nephroureterectomy, adjuvant treatment, neoadjuvant treatment, recurrence, risk factors,* and *survival*. The publications concerning UUT-UCCs were mostly retrospective, including some large multicentre studies. Due to the scarcity of randomised data, articles were selected for these guidelines based on the following criteria: evolution of concepts, intermediate- and long-term clinical outcomes, study quality, and relevance. Older studies were included selectively if they were historically relevant or if data were scarce in recent publications. To facilitate evaluation of the quality of information provided, levels of evidence (LE) and grades of recommendation (GR) were inserted according to general principles of evidence-based medicine (EBM) (2).

3. EVIDENCE SYNTHESIS

3.1 Epidemiology

Urothelial carcinomas are the fourth most common tumours after prostate (or breast) cancer, lung cancer, and colorectal cancer (3,4). They can be located in the lower urinary tract (bladder and urethra) or the upper urinary tract (pyelocaliceal cavities and ureter). Bladder tumours account for 90-95% of urothelial carcinomas (4) and are the most common malignancy of the urinary tract and the second most common malignancy of the urogenital tract after prostate cancer (5,6). However, UUT-UCCs are uncommon and account for only 5-10% of urothelial carcinomas (3,7-9). The estimated annual incidence of UUT-UCCs in Western countries is about one or two new cases per 100,000 inhabitants. Pyelocaliceal tumours are about twice as common as ureteral tumours. In 8-13% of cases, concurrent bladder cancer is present. Recurrence of disease in the bladder occurs in 30-51% of UUT-UCC patients (10,11), whereas recurrences in the contralateral upper tract are observed in 2-6% (12,13).

The natural history of UUT-UCCs differs from that of bladder cancer: 60% of UUT-UCCs are invasive at diagnosis compared with only 15% of bladder tumours (5,7,9). Upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas have a peak incidence in people in their 70s and 80s, and UUT-UCC is three times more prevalent in men than in women.

There are familial/hereditary cases of UUT-UCCs linked to hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal carcinoma (HNPCC) (14). Among patients with UUT-UCCS, these cases can be detected during a medical interview. Indeed, the cancer is likely to be hereditary if the patient is < 60 yr of age and/or has a personal or family history of an HNPCC-type cancer (15,16). These patients should undergo DNA sequencing to identify hereditary cancers that have been misclassified as sporadic cancers by insufficient clinical data. The presence of other HNPCC-associated cancers should also be evaluated. These patients should be closely monitored, and genetic counselling is advocated (15,16).

3.2 Risk factors

Many environmental factors contribute to the development of UUT-UCCs. Some are similar to those associated with bladder cancer, whereas others are more specific for UUT-UCC. Tobacco and occupational exposure remain the principal exogenous risk factors for developing these tumours. Exposure to tobacco increases the relative risk of developing a UUT-UCC from 2.5 to 7 (17,18). UUT-UCC “amino tumours” are related to occupational exposure to certain aromatic amines. These aromatic hydrocarbons are used in many industries (e.g., dyes, textiles, rubber, chemicals, petrochemicals, and coal). They are responsible for the carcinogenicity of certain chemicals, including benzidine and β-naphthalene. These two chemicals have been banned since

the 1960s in most industrialised countries. In most cases, UUT-UCCs are secondary to an amino tumour of the bladder. The average duration of exposure needed to develop a UUT-UCC is approximately 7 yr, with a latency period of about 20 yr following the termination of exposure. The estimated risk (odds ratio) of developing UCC after exposure to aromatic amines is 8.3 (17,19).

Upper urinary tract tumours resulting from phenacetin consumption almost disappeared (17) after the product was banned in the 1970s.

Although the incidence of Balkan endemic nephropathy is also on the decline (20,21), roles have been proposed for aristolochic acid and the consumption of Chinese herbs in the physiopathology and induction, respectively, of this nephropathy (22-24). Several studies have revealed the carcinogenic potential of aristolochic acid contained in *Aristolochia fangchi* and *Aristolochia clematis* (plants endemic to the Balkans). This acid contains a set of highly toxic nitrophenolate derivatives that exhibit a powerful mutagenic action due to their ability to make up covalent links with cell DNA. The aristolochic acid derivative d-aristolactam causes a specific mutation in the p53 gene at codon 139. This mutation is very rare in the nonexposed population and is predominant in patients with nephropathy due to Chinese herbs or Balkan endemic nephropathy who present with UUT-UCC.

A high incidence of UUT-UCC has also been described in Taiwan, especially in the population of the southwest coast of the island, and represents 20-25% of UCCs in the region (16). The association of UUT-UCC with blackfoot disease and arsenic exposure remains unclear in this patient population (25).

Differences in the ability to counteract carcinogens may contribute to host susceptibility and the risk of developing urothelial carcinomas. Because certain genetic polymorphisms are associated with an increased risk of cancer or faster disease progression, there is variability in interindividual susceptibility to the risk factors just mentioned. Only one polymorphism specific to UUT-UCC has been reported so far. A variant allele, SULT1A1*2, which reduces sulfotransferase activity, enhances the risk of developing UUT-UCC (26). Epidermoid carcinoma of the UUT is associated with chronic inflammatory and infectious disease arising from stones in the UUT (27,28).

3.3 Histology and classification

*3.3.1 **Histologic types***

More than 95% of urothelial carcinomas are derived from the urothelium and correspond to UUT-UCCs or bladder tumours (1,5,28). With regard to UUT-UCCs, morphologic variants have been described that are more often observed in urothelial kidney tumours. These variants always correspond to high-grade tumours, and such urothelial carcinomas are associated with one of the following variants: micropapillary, clear cell, neuroendocrine, and lymphoepithelial (9,27). Collecting-duct carcinoma has similar characteristics to UUT-UCCs because of its common embryologic origin (29).

Upper urinary tract tumours with nonurothelial histology are exceptions (30). Epidermoid carcinomas of the upper urinary tract represent < 10% of pyelocaliceal tumours and are even more rare within the ureter. Other histologic subtypes are adenocarcinomas (< 1%), neuroendocrine carcinomas, and sarcomas.

*3.3.2 **Classification***

The classification and morphology of UUT-UCCs are similar to those of bladder carcinomas (5,28). It is possible to distinguish between noninvasive papillary tumours (papillary urothelial tumours of low malignant potential, low-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma, high-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma), flat lesions (carcinoma *in situ* [CIS]), and invasive carcinomas. All variants of urothelial tumours described in the bladder can also be observed in the upper urinary tract.

3.3.2.1 Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) staging

Table 1 presents the Union Internationale Contre le Cancer (UICC) 2009 TNM classification used throughout these guidelines (31). According to the TNM classification, the regional lymph nodes that should be considered are the hilar, abdominal para-aortic, and paracaval nodes, and, for the ureter, the intrapelvic nodes. Laterality does not affect the N-classification.

Table 1: TNM classification 2009 for UUT-UCC (31) *

T - Primary tumour	
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed
T0	No evidence of primary tumour
Ta	Non-invasive papillary carcinoma
Tis	Carcinoma *in situ*
T1	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue
T2	Tumour invades muscle
T3	(Renal pelvis) Tumour invades beyond muscularis into peripelvic fat or renal parenchyma
	(Ureter) Tumour invades beyond muscularis into periureteric fat
T4	Tumour invades adjacent organs or through the kidney into perinephric fat
N - Regional lymph nodes	
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0	No regional lymph node metastasis
N1	Metastasis in a single lymph node 2 cm or less in the greatest dimension
N2	Metastasis in a single lymph node more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in the greatest dimension or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
N3	Metastasis in a lymph node more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
M - Distant metastasis	
M0	No distant metastasis
M1	Distant metastasis

**All EAU guidelines advocate the TNM system of tumour classification.*
UUT-UCC = urethelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract.

3.3.2.2 Tumour grade

Until 2004, the most common classification used was the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of 1973, which distinguished only three grades (G1, G2, and G3) (32). In recent years, molecular biologic data have allowed for further distinction between different tumour groups and the development of a new classification system that better reflects the potential growth of these tumours (33). Thus the 2004 WHO classification now takes histologic data into account to distinguish among three groups of noninvasive tumours: papillary urothelial neoplasia of low malignant potential, low-grade carcinomas, and high-grade carcinomas. There are almost no tumours of low malignant potential in the upper urinary tract (9,27,28).

3.4 Symptoms

The diagnosis of a UUT-UCC may be fortuitous or related to the exploration of symptoms (1,6). The symptoms are generally restricted (34). The most common symptom of UUT-UCC is gross or microscopic haematuria (70-80%). Flank pain occurs in up to 20-40% of cases, and a lumbar mass is present in 10-20% of cases (1,7). However, systemic symptoms (altered health condition including anorexia, weight loss, malaise, fatigue, fever, night sweats, or cough) associated with UUT-UCC should prompt consideration of a more rigorous metastatic evaluation or perioperative chemotherapy regimens (34).

3.5 Diagnosis

*3.5.1 **Imaging***

3.5.1.1 Multidetector computed tomographic urography

Multidetector computed tomographic urography (MDCTU) is the gold standard for exploration of the upper urinary tract and has replaced intravenous excretory urography (35-38). It must be conducted under optimal conditions, particularly with acquisition of an excretory phase. Multiple protocols from two helical computed tomography acquisitions (at least millimetric) are necessary before and after the injection of contrast.

The detection rate of UUT-UCC is satisfactory for this type of imaging: 96% sensitivity and 99% specificity for polypoid lesions between 5 and 10 mm. Sensitivity drops to 89% for polypoid lesions < 5 mm and 40% for polypoid lesions < 3 mm (16,17). Multidetector computed tomographic urography can also detect thickening of the wall of the renal pelvis or ureter as a sign of UUT-UCC. The main difficulty remains identifying

flat lesions that are undetectable until they evolve towards a massive infiltration.

Lastly, it was shown that hydronephrosis on preoperative imaging was associated with advanced pathologic disease and poorer oncologic outcomes (39).

3.5.1.2 Magnetic resonance imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) urography is indicated in patients who cannot be subjected to an MDCTU (40). The detection rate of MRI is 75% after contrast injection for tumours < 2 cm (41). Magnetic resonance urography with contrast injection, however, remains contraindicated in selected patients with severe renal impairment (< 30 ml/min creatinine clearance) due to the risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis. Magnetic resonance urography without contrast is less helpful compared with MDCTU in diagnosing UUT-UCCs.

*3.5.2 **Cystoscopy and urinary cytology***

Positive urine cytology is highly suggestive of UUT-UCC when bladder cystoscopy is normal and if CIS of the bladder or prostatic urethra has been excluded. Cytology is less sensitive for UUT-UCC than for bladder tumours, even for high-grade lesions, and it should ideally be performed *in situ* (i.e. in the renal cavities). A positive cytology may be valuable in staging because it has been associated with muscle-invasive and non-organ-confined disease (42).

The detection of molecular abnormalities by fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation (FISH) is becoming more popular for UCC screening, but results are still preliminary (43,44). The sensitivity of FISH for the identification of UUT-UCCs parallels its performance in bladder cancer; however, the preponderance of low-grade recurrent disease in the population undergoing surveillance and minimally invasive therapy for UUT-UCCs may limit its usefulness (45). In addition, FISH appears to have limited value for upper urinary tract tumour surveillance (46,47).

*3.5.3 **Diagnostic ureteroscopy***

Ureteroscopy is a better approach to diagnose UUT-UCCs (42,48,49). A flexible ureteroscope can explore the ureter macroscopically and reach renal cavities in 95% of cases, and it can assess the aspect of the tumour, obtain tumour biopsy, and determine tumour grade in 90% of cases with a low false-negative rate (50). It also facilitates performing a selective ureteral cytology and a retrograde pyelogram.

Flexible ureteroscopy is especially useful when there is diagnostic uncertainty, when conservative treatment is being considered, or in patients with a solitary kidney. The possible advantages of ureteroscopy should be discussed in the preoperative assessment of any UUT-UCC patient. Combining ureteroscopic biopsy grade, ipsilateral hydronephrosis, and urinary cytology may help decision making on radical nephroureterectomy (RNU) versus endoscopic treatment (42). Table 2 lists the recommendations.

Table 2: Guidelines for the diagnosis of UUT-UCC

Recommendations	GR
Urinary cytology	A
Cystoscopy to rule out a concomitant bladder tumour	A
MDCTU	A

UUT-UCC = urethelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract; MDCTU = multidetector computed tomographic urography.

3.6 Prognostic factors

Upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas that invade the muscle wall usually have a very poor prognosis. The 5-yr specific survival is < 50% for pT2/pT3 and < 10% for pT4 (51,52). This section briefly describes the currently recognised prognostic factors.

*3.6.1 **Tumour stage and grade***

According to the most recent classifications, the primary recognised prognostic factors are tumour stage and grade (8,31,53-55).

*3.6.2 **Age and gender***

The effect of gender on UUT-UCC mortality has been disputed recently and is no longer considered an independent prognostic factor (56-58). Conversely, patient age is still considered an independent prognostic factor because older age at the time of RNU is associated with decreased cancer-specific survival (LE: 3) (59). However, advanced age alone should not be an exclusion criterion for the aggressive treatment of potentially curable UUT-UCC. A large proportion of elderly patients can be cured with RNU (59). This suggests that

chronologic age alone is an inadequate indicator of outcomes in older UUT-UCC patients (59).

*3.6.3 **Tumour location***

According to the most recent findings, the initial location of the tumour within the upper urinary tract (e.g. ureter vs. renal pelvis) is no longer accepted as a prognostic factor (11,60,61), contrary to previously published reports (LE: 3) (62). It seems there is no longer a prognostic impact for tumour location (i.e. ureteral vs. pyelocaliceal tumours) when adjusted for tumour stage (11,63).

*3.6.4 **Lymphovascular invasion***

Lymphovascular invasion is present in approximately 20% of UUT-UCCs and an independent predictor of survival. Lymphovascular invasion status should be included in the pathologic report of RNU specimens (LE: 3) (64-66). However, only in patients with negative lymph nodes does lymphovascular invasion add prognostic information beyond that obtained with standard features (64).

*3.6.5 **Other factors***

Extensive tumour necrosis is an independent predictor of clinical outcomes in patients who undergo RNU. Extensive tumour necrosis can be defined as > 10% of the tumour area (LE: 3) (67,68).
The tumour architecture (e.g., papillary vs. sessile) of UUT-UCCs appears to be associated with prognosis after RNU. A sessile growth pattern is associated with worse outcomes (LE: 3) (8,63,69).

The presence of concomitant CIS in patients with organ-confined UUT-UCC is associated with a higher risk of recurrent disease and cancer-specific mortality (LE: 3) (70). Similar to lower tract urothelial carcinoma, concomitant CIS is an independent predictor of worse outcomes in organ-confined disease (71).

*3.6.6 **Molecular markers***

Several research groups are working on upper urinary tract tumour characteristics and carcinogenesis pathways. Specific markers that could aid in the prognosis of UUT-UCCs have been investigated. Microsatellite instabilities (MSIs) are independent molecular makers used for tumour prognosis (72). In addition, MSIs can help detect germ-line mutations, allowing for the detection of possible hereditary cancers (14,16,72).

E-cadherin has been shown to be a useful independent marker for prognosis, as have hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF)-1α and telomerase RNA component (73). Furthermore, HIF-1α appears to be significantly associated with tumour grade and growth pattern, and the telomerase RNA component could possibly be used for UUT-UCC diagnosis and prognostication. However, to date, none of the markers has been externally validated, and none has fulfilled the clinical and statistical criteria necessary to support its introduction in daily clinical decision making.

3.7 Treatment

*3.7.1 **Localised disease***

3.7.1.1 Radical nephroureterectomy

Radical nephroureterectomy with excision of the bladder cuff is the gold standard treatment for UUT-UCCs, regardless of the location of the tumour in the upper urinary tract (LE: 3) (8). The RNU procedure must comply with oncologic principles, which consist of preventing tumour seeding by avoiding entry into the urinary tract during tumour resection (8,69).

Resection of the distal ureter and its orifice is performed because it is a part of the urinary tract with considerable risk of recurrence. After removal of the proximal part, it is almost impossible to image or approach it by endoscopy during follow-up. Recent publications on survival after nephroureterectomy have concluded that removal of the distal ureter and bladder cuff is beneficial (74-77).

McDonald et al. presented the pluck technique in 1952, but it was not until 1995 (78) that the usefulness of an endoscopic approach to the distal ureter was really emphasised, and then several other alternative techniques were reconsidered to simplify resection of the distal ureter: stripping, transurethral resection of the intramural ureter, and intussusception techniques (12). Apart from ureteral stripping, none of these techniques have demonstrated inferiority to excision of the bladder cuff (LE: 3) (75-77,79). A delay > 45 d between diagnosis and resection of the tumour constitutes a risk for disease progression (LE: 3) (80).

Lymph node dissection associated with RNU is of therapeutic interest and allows for optimal staging of the disease (LE: 3) (81-83). Lymphadenectomy in pN+ allows for reduction of the tumour mass to guide patients towards adjuvant treatments (LE: 3) (82). However, the anatomic sites of lymphadenectomy have not yet been clearly defined. The number of lymph nodes to be removed depends on the tumour location. No trial so far has shown its direct impact on survival (82). Lymphadenectomy appears to be unnecessary in cases of TaT1 UUT-UCCs because it was reported to be retrieved in 2.2% T1 versus 16% pT2-4 tumours (82). In addition, authors have described a continuous increase in the probability of lymph node-positive disease related to pT classification (81). Lastly, lymphadenectomy appears to be a prognostic variable within a model in

patients with histologically confirmed node-negative (pN0) disease (83). However, these data are retrospective; it is not possible to standardise either indication or the extent of lymphadenectomy. Consequently, underreporting of the true rate of node-positive disease is likely.

The safety of laparoscopic RNU has not yet achieved final proof (84,85). In early experience, there were reports of retroperitoneal metastatic dissemination and dissemination along the trocar pathway when large tumours were manipulated in a pneumoperitoneal environment (86,87).

Recent data, however, show a tendency towards equivalent oncologic results between laparoscopic RNU and open surgery. In addition, the laparoscopic approach appears to be superior to open surgery only with regard to functional outcomes (LE: 3) (88-91). Only one prospective randomised study of 80 patients did not provide evidence that laparoscopic RNU is inferior to open RNU for noninvasive UUT-UCC (LE: 2) (92). Several precautions must be taken when operating with a pneumoperitoneum because it may increase tumour spillage:

- Entering the urinary tract should be avoided.
- Direct contact of the instruments with the tumour should be avoided.
- Laparoscopic RNU must take place in a closed system. Morcellation of the tumour should be avoided, and an endobag is necessary to extract the tumour.
- The kidney and ureter must be removed en bloc with the bladder cuff.
- Invasive, large (T3/T4 and/or N+/M+), or multifocal tumours are contraindications for laparoscopic RNU, until proven otherwise.

Recommendations are listed in Table 3.

Table 3: Guidelines for radical management of UUT-UCC: radical nephroureterectomy

Indications for RNU for UUT-UCC	**GR**
Suspicion of infiltrating UUT-UCC on imaging	B
High-grade tumour (urinary cytology)	B
Multifocality (with two functional kidneys)	B
Techniques for RNU in UUT-UCC	
Open and laparoscopic access are equivalent in terms of efficacy	B
Bladder cuff removal is imperative	A
Several techniques for bladder cuff excision are acceptable except stripping	C
Lymphadenectomy is recommended in case of invasive UUT-UCC	C

RNU = radical nephroureterectomy; UUT-UCC = urethelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract.

3.7.1.2 Conservative surgery

Conservative surgery for low-risk UUT-UCCs allows for preservation of the upper urinary renal unit while sparing the patient the morbidity associated with open radical surgery (93,94). Conservative management of UUT-UCCs can be considered in imperative cases (renal insufficiency, solitary functional kidney) or in elective cases (i.e. when the contralateral kidney is functional) for low-grade, low-stage tumours (LE: 3) (76,95). The choice of technique depends on technical constraints, the anatomic location of the tumour, and the experience of the surgeon.

3.7.1.2.1 Ureteroscopy

Endoscopic ablation can be considered in highly selected cases (96,97,98) and in these situations:

- A flexible rather than a rigid ureteroscope, laser generator, and pliers (pluck) for biopsies are available (LE: 3) (96,99).
- The patient is informed of the need for closer, more stringent surveillance.
- A complete resection is advocated.

3.7.1.2.2 Segmental resection

Segmental ureteral resection with wide margins provides adequate pathologic specimens for definitive staging and grade analysis while also preserving the ipsilateral kidney. Segmental resection is possible for the treatment of low- and high-risk tumours of the distal ureter (LE: 3) (100,101). It is necessary, however, to ensure that the area of tissue around the tumour is not invaded. Segmental resection of the iliac and lumbar ureter is associated with a failure rate greater than that for the distal pelvic ureter (100,102).

Open resection of tumours of the renal pelvis or calices has almost disappeared. Resection of

pyelocaliceal tumours is technically difficult, and the recurrence rate is higher than for tumours of the ureter.

3.7.1.2.3 Percutaneous access
Percutaneous management can be considered for low-grade or noninvasive UUT-UCCs in the renal cavities (LE: 3) (97,103,104). This treatment option may be offered to patients with low-grade tumours in the lower caliceal system that are inaccessible or difficult to manage by ureteroscopy. A theoretical risk of seeding exists in the puncture tract and in perforations that may occur during the procedure. This approach, however, is being progressively abandoned due to enhanced materials and advances in distal-tip deflection of recent ureteroscopes.

3.7.1.3 Adjuvant topical agents
The instillation of bacillus Calmette-Guérin or mitomycin C in the urinary tract by percutaneous nephrostomy via a three-valve system open at 20 cm (after complete eradication of the tumour), or even through a ureteric stent (105), is technically feasible after conservative treatment of UUT-UCCs or for the treatment of CIS. The medium-term results are similar to those observed for the treatment of bladder tumours but have not been confirmed in long-term studies (LE: 3) (1,106,107). Table 4 reports the recommendations.

Table 4: Guidelines for conservative management of UUT-UCC

Indications for conservative management of UUT-UCC	**GR**
Unifocal tumour	B
Small tumour	B
Low-grade tumour (cytology or biopsies)	B
No evidence of an infiltrative lesion on MDCTU	B
Understanding of close follow-up	B
Techniques used in conservative management of UUT-UCC	
Laser should be used in case of endoscopic treatment	C
Flexible ureteroscopy is preferable over rigid ureteroscopy	C
Open partial resection is an option for pelvic ureteral tumours	C
A percutaneous approach remains an option in small low-grade caliceal tumours unsuitable for ureteroscopic treatment	C

MDCTU = multidetector computed tomographic urography; UUT-UCC = urethelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract.

3.7.2 ***Advanced disease***
3.7.2.1 Nephroureterectomy
There are no benefits of RNU in metastatic (M+) disease, although it can be considered a palliative option (LE: 3) (8,81).

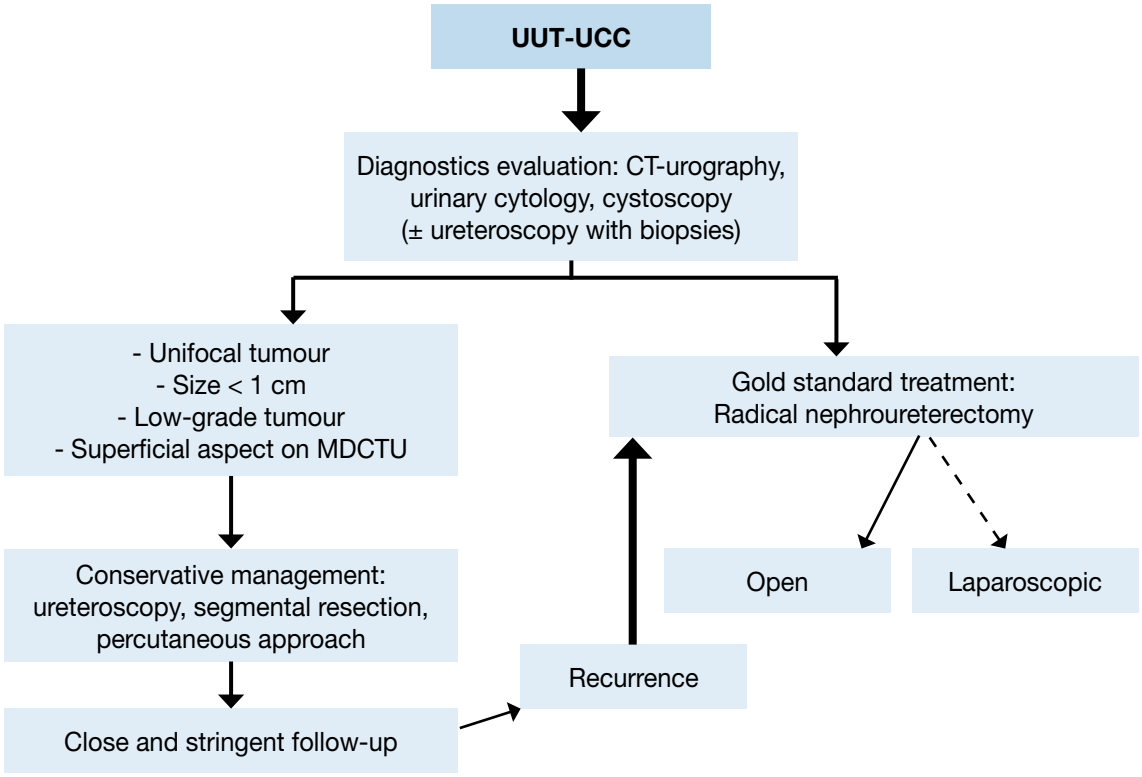
3.7.2.2 Chemotherapy
Because UUT-UCCs are urothelial tumours, platinum-based chemotherapy is expected to produce similar results to those seen in bladder cancer. Several platinum-based chemotherapy regimens have been proposed (108-111).

Only one study has reported the effect of neoadjuvant chemotherapy in contrast to what has been demonstrated in the bladder. While survival data need to mature and longer follow-up is awaited, current preliminary data provide justification for the sustained support of trials using this strategy in UUT-UCCs (112).

Adjuvant chemotherapy achieves a recurrence-free rate of up to 50% but has minimal impact on survival (108-111). Not all the patients receive this treatment because of comorbidities and impaired renal function after radical surgery. Data are currently insufficient to provide any recommendations.

3.7.2.3 Radiation therapy
Adjuvant radiotherapy may improve local control of the disease (113). When given in combination with cisplatinum, it may result in a longer disease-free survival and longer overall survival (114) (LE: 3). Radiation therapy appears to be scarcely relevant nowadays both as a unique therapy and associated with chemotherapy as a tumour adjuvant (Fig. 1).

Fig. 1 Proposed flowchart for the management of UUT-UCC



UUT-UCC = urethelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract; MDCTU = multidetector computed tomographic urography.

3.8 Follow-up

Strict follow-up of UUT-UCC patients after surgical treatment is mandatory to detect metachronous bladder tumours (in all cases), local recurrence, and distant metastases (in the case of invasive tumours).

When RNU is performed, local recurrence is rare, and the risk of distant metastases is directly related to the risk factors listed previously. The reported recurrence rate within the bladder after treatment of a primary UUT-UCC varies considerably from 15% to 50% (10,115,116). Thus the bladder should be observed in all cases. A prior history of bladder cancer and upper tract tumour multifocality are the risk factors most often reported for bladder tumours following UUT-UCCs. The surveillance regimen is based on cystoscopy and urinary cytology for at least 5 yr (10,115,116). A bladder recurrence should not be considered a distant recurrence.

When conservative treatment is performed, the ipsilateral upper urinary tract requires careful follow-up due to the high risk of recurrence. Despite notable improvements in endourologic technology, the follow-up of patients treated with conservative therapy is difficult, and minimally invasive procedures are often necessary (96,98,117,118). Table 5 lists the recommended follow-up schedules.

Table 5: Guidelines for follow-up of UUT-UCC patients after initial treatment

After RNU, over at least 5 yr	**GR**
Noninvasive tumour	
Cystoscopy/urinary cytology at 3 mo and then yearly	C
MDCTU every year	C
Invasive tumour	
Cystoscopy/urinary cytology at 3 mo and then yearly	C
MDCTU every 6 mo over 2 yr and then yearly	C

After conservative management, over at least 5 yr	
Urinary cytology and MDCTU at 3 mo, 6 mo, and then yearly	C
Cystoscopy, ureteroscopy and cytology *in situ* at 3 mo, 6 mo, and then every 6 mo over 2 yr, and then yearly	C

RNU = radical nephroureterectomy; MDCTU = multidetector computed tomographic urography.

4. CONCLUSIONS

These guidelines contain information for the diagnosis and treatment of individual patients according to a current, standardised approach. When determining the optimal treatment regimen for their patients, physicians must take into account each individual patient's specific clinical characteristics with regard to renal function including medical comorbidities; tumour location, grade, and stage; and molecular marker status.

5. REFERENCES

1. Oosterlinck W, Solsona E, van der Meijden AP, et al. EAU guidelines on diagnosis and treatment of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2004 Aug;46(2):147-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15245806
2. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
3. Munoz JJ, Ellison LM. Upper tract urothelial neoplasms: incidence and survival during the last 2 decades. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1523-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025695
4. Ploeg M, Aben KK, Kiemeney LA. The present and future burden of urinary bladder cancer in the world. World J Urol 2009 Jun;27(3):289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19219610
5. Babjuk M, Oosterlinck W, Sylvester R, et al. EAU guidelines on non-muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):303-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18468779
6. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, et al. Cancer statistics, 2009. CA Cancer J Clin 2009 Jul-Aug;59(4):225-49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19474385
7. Hall MC, Womack S, Sagalowsky AI, et al. Prognostic factors, recurrence, and survival in transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract: a 30-year experience in 252 patients. Urology 1998 Oct;52(4):594-601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763077
8. Margulis V, Shariat SF, Matin SF, et al. Outcomes of radical nephroureterectomy: a series from the Upper Tract Urothelial Carcinoma Collaboration. Cancer 2009 Mar;115(6):1224-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19156917
9. Olgac S, Mazumdar M, Dalbagni G, et al. Urothelial carcinoma of the renal pelvis: a clinicopathologic study of 130 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 2004 Dec;28(12):1545-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15577672
10. Azémar MD, et al. Bladder recurrence after surgery for upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma: frequency, risk factors, and surveillance. Urol Oncol. 2011 Mar-Apr;29(2):130-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19762256
11. Raman JD, Ng CK, Scherr DS, et al. Impact of Tumor Location on Prognosis for Patients with Upper Tract Urothelial Carcinoma Managed by Radical Nephroureterectomy. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):1072-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19619934
12. Li WM, Shen JT, Li CC, et al. Oncologic Outcomes Following Three Different Approaches to the Distal Ureter and Bladder Cuff in Nephroureterectomy for Primary Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Carcinoma. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):963-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20079965

13. Novara G, De Marco V, Dalpiaz O, et al. Independent predictors of contralateral metachronous upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma after nephroureterectomy: multi-institutional dataset from three European centers. Int J Urol 2009 Feb;16(2):187-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19054165
14. Rouprêt M, Catto J, Coulet F, et al. Microsatellite instability as indicator of MSH2 gene mutation in patients with upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. J Med Genet 2004 Jul;41(7):e91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15235034
15. Acher P, Kiela G, Thomas K, et al. Towards a rational strategy for the surveillance of patients with Lynch syndrome (hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer) for upper tract transitional cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(3):300-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20553255
16. Rouprêt M, Yates DR, Comperat E, et al. Upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas and other urological malignancies involved in the hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (lynch syndrome) tumor spectrum. Eur Urol 2008 Dec;54(6):1226-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18715695
17. Colin P, Koenig P, Ouzzane A, et al. Environmental factors involved in carcinogenesis of urothelial cell carcinomas of the upper urinary tract. BJU Int 2009 Nov;104(10):1436-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19689473
18. Pommer W, Bronder E, Klimpel A, et al. Urothelial cancer at different tumour sites: role of smoking and habitual intake of analgesics and laxatives. Results of the Berlin Urothelial Cancer Study. Nephrol Dial Transplant 1999 Dec;14(12):2892-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10570093
19. Shinka T, Miyai M, Sawada Y, et al. Factors affecting the occurrence of urothelial tumors in dye workers exposed to aromatic amines. Int J Urol 1995 Sep;2(4):243-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8564742
20. Markovic N, Ignjatovic I, Cukuranovic R, et al. Decreasing incidence of urothelial cancer in a Balkan endemic nephropathy region in Serbia. A surgery based study from 1969 to 1998. Pathol Biol (Paris) 2005 Feb;53(1):26-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15620606
21. Grollman AP, Shibutani S, Moriya M, et al. Aristolochic acid and the etiology of endemic (Balkan) nephropathy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 2007 Jul;104(29):12129-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17620607
22. Arlt VM, Stiborova M, vom Brocke J, et al. Aristolochic acid mutagenesis: molecular clues to the aetiology of Balkan endemic nephropathy-associated urothelial cancer. Carcinogenesis 2007 Nov;28(11):2253-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17434925
23. Laing C, Hamour S, Sheaff M, et al. Chinese herbal uropathy and nephropathy. Lancet 2006 Jul;368(9532):338.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860704
24. Lord GM, Cook T, Arlt VM, et al. Urothelial malignant disease and Chinese herbal nephropathy. Lancet 2001 Nov;358(9292):1515-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11705569
25. Tan LB, Chen KT, Guo HR. Clinical and epidemiological features of patients with genitourinary tract tumour in a blackfoot disease endemic area of Taiwan. BJU Int 2008 Jul;102(1):48-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18445081
26. Rouprêt M, Cancel-Tassin G, Comperat E, et al. Phenol sulfotransferase SULT1A1*2 allele and enhanced risk of upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2007 Nov;16(11):2500-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18006944
27. Perez-Montiel D, Wakely PE, Hes O, et al. High-grade urothelial carcinoma of the renal pelvis: clinicopathologic study of 108 cases with emphasis on unusual morphologic variants. Mod Pathol 2006 Apr;19(4):494-503.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474378
28. Stewart GD, Bariol SV, Grigor KM, et al. A comparison of the pathology of transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder and upper urinary tract. BJU Int 2005 Apr;95(6):791-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15794784
29. Orsola A, Trias I, Raventos CX, et al. Renal collecting (Bellini) duct carcinoma displays similar characteristics to upper tract urothelial cell carcinoma. Urology 2005 Jan;65(1):49-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15667862

30. Busby JE, Brown GA, Tamboli P, et al. Upper urinary tract tumors with nontransitional histology: a single-center experience. Urology 2006 Mar;67(3):518-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16527570
31. Sobin L, Gospodarowicz M, Wittekind C. TNM Classification of Malignant Tumours. Urological Tumours. Renal Pelvis and Ureter. 7th revised edition, Wiley-Blackwell, uicc 2009:258-261. http://www.uicc.org/tnm/
32. Lopez-Beltran A, Bassi P, Pavone-Macaluso M, et al. Handling and pathology reporting of specimens with carcinoma of the urinary bladder, ureter, and renal pelvis. Eur Urol 2004 Mar;45(3):257-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15036668
33. Sauter G, Algaba F, Amin M, et al. Tumors of the urinary system in: World Health Organisation classification of tumors. Pathology and genetics of tumors of the urinary system and male genital organs. Lyon, France: IARC Press; 2004. p. 110-23.
34. Raman JD, Shariat SF, Karakiewicz PI, et al. Does preoperative symptom classification impact prognosis in patients with clinically localized upper-tract urothelial carcinoma managed by radical nephroureterectomy? Urol Oncol 2010 Jan. [Epub ahead of print] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20056458
35. Dillman JR, Caoili EM, Cohan RH, et al. Detection of upper tract urothelial neoplasms: sensitivity of axial, coronal reformatted, and curved-planar reformatted image-types utilizing 16-row multi-detector CT urography. Abdom Imaging 2008 Nov-Dec;33(6):707-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18253780
36. Van Der Molen AJ, Cowan NC, Mueller-Lisse UG, et al. CT urography: definition, indications and techniques. A guideline for clinical practice. Eur Radiol 2008 Jan;18(1):4-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17973110
37. Wang LJ, Wong YC, Chuang CK, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of transitional cell carcinoma on multidetector computerized tomography urography in patients with gross hematuria. J Urol 2009 Feb;181(2):524-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19100576
38. Wang LJ, Wong YC, Huang CC, et al. Multidetector computerized tomography urography is more accurate than excretory urography for diagnosing transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract in adults with hematuria. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):48-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913253
39. Ng CK, Shariat SF, Lucas SM, et al. Does the presence of hydronephrosis on preoperative axial CT imaging predict worse outcomes for patients undergoing nephroureterectomy for upper-tract urothelial carcinoma? Urol Oncol. 2011 Jan-Feb;29(1):27-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19117771
40. Takahashi N, Glockner JF, Hartman RP, et al. Gadolinium enhanced magnetic resonance urography for upper urinary tract malignancy. J Urol. 2010 Apr;183(4):1330-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171676
41. Takahashi N, Kawashima A, Glockner JF, et al. Small (<2-cm) upper-tract urothelial carcinoma: evaluation with gadolinium-enhanced three-dimensional spoiled gradient-recalled echo MR urography. Radiology 2008 May;247(2):451-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18372452
42. Brien JC, Shariat SF, Herman MP, et al. Preoperative hydronephrosis, ureteroscopic biopsy grade and urinary cytology can improve prediction of advanced upper tract urothelial carcinoma. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):69-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20478585
43. Luo B, Li W, Deng CH, et al. Utility of fluorescence in situ hybridization in the diagnosis of upper urinary tract urothelial carcinoma. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 2009 Mar;189(2):93-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19215789
44. Mian C, Mazzoleni G, Vikoler S, et al. Fluorescence In Situ Hybridisation in the Diagnosis of Upper Urinary Tract Tumours. Eur Urol 2010 Aug;58(2):288-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20471154
45. Nieder AM, Soloway MS, Herr HW. Should we abandon the FISH test? Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1469-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17257740
46. Johannes JR, Nelson E, Bibbo M, et al. Voided urine fluorescence in situ hybridization testing for upper tract urothelial carcinoma surveillance. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):879-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20643443

47. Chen AA, Grasso M. Is there a role for FISH in the management and surveillance of patients with upper tract transitional-cell carcinoma? J Endourol 2008 Jun;22(6):1371-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18578665
48. Lee KS, Zeikus E, DeWolf WC, et al. MR urography versus retrograde pyelography/ureteroscopy for the exclusion of upper urinary tract malignancy. Clin Radiol 2010 Mar;65(3):185-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20152273
49. Ishikawa S, Abe T, Shinohara N, et al. Impact of diagnostic ureteroscopy on intravesical recurrence and survival in patients with urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):883-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20643446
50. Tavora F, Fajardo DA, Lee TK, et al. Small endoscopic biopsies of the ureter and renal pelvis: pathologic pitfalls. Am J Surg Pathol 2009 Oct;33(10):1540-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19654502
51. Abouassaly R, Alibhai SM, Shah N, et al. Troubling Outcomes From Population-level Analysis of Surgery for Upper Tract Urothelial Carcinoma. Urology 2010 Oct;76(4):895-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20646743
52. Jeldres C, Sun M, Isbarn H, et al. A population-based assessment of perioperative mortality after nephroureterectomy for upper-tract urothelial carcinoma. Urology 2010 Feb;75(2):315-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19963237
53. Langner C, Hutterer G, Chromecki T, et al. pT classification, grade, and vascular invasion as prognostic indicators in urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract. Mod Pathol 2006 Feb;19(2):272-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424895
54. Lehmann J, Suttmann H, Kovac I, et al. Transitional cell carcinoma of the ureter: prognostic factors influencing progression and survival. Eur Urol 2007 May;51(5):1281-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17125909
55. Li CC, Chang TH, Wu WJ, et al. Significant predictive factors for prognosis of primary upper urinary tract cancer after radical nephroureterectomy in Taiwanese patients. Eur Urol 2008 Nov;54(5):1127-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243511
56. Fernández MI, Shariat SF, Margulis V, et al. Evidence-based sex-related outcomes after radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma: results of large multicenter study. Urology 2009 Jan;73(1):142-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18845322
57. Lughezzani G, Sun M, Perrotte P, et al. Gender-related differences in patients with stage I to III upper tract urothelial carcinoma: results from the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results database. Urology 2010 Feb;75(2):321-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19962727
58. Shariat SF, et al. Gender differences in radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma. World J Urol. 2011 Aug;29(4):481-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20886219
59. Shariat SF, Godoy G, Lotan Y, et al. Advanced patient age is associated with inferior cancer-specific survival after radical nephroureterectomy. BJU Int 2010 Jun;105(12):1672-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912201
60. Favaretto RL, Shariat SF, Chade DC, et al. The Effect of Tumor Location on Prognosis in Patients Treated with Radical Nephroureterectomy at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center. Eur Urol 2010 Oct;58(4):574-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20637540
61. Isbarn H, Jeldres C, Shariat SF, et al. Location of the primary tumor is not an independent predictor of cancer specific mortality in patients with upper urinary tract urothelial carcinoma. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2177-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758662
62. Van der Poel HG, Antonini N, van Tinteren H, et al. Upper urinary tract cancer: location is correlated with prognosis. Eur Urol 2005 Sep;48(3):438-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16115524
63. Margulis V, Youssef RF, Karakiewicz PI, et al. Preoperative multivariable prognostic model for prediction of nonorgan confined urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract. J Urol 2010 Aug;184(2):453-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620397

64. Kikuchi E, Margulis V, Karakiewicz PI, et al. Lymphovascular invasion predicts clinical outcomes in patients with node-negative upper tract urothelial carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb;27(4):612-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19075275
65. Kim DS, Lee YH, Cho KS, et al. Lymphovascular invasion and pT stage are prognostic factors in patients treated with radical nephroureterectomy for localized upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. Urology 2010 Feb;75(2):328-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20018349
66. Novara G, Matsumoto K, Kassouf W, et al. Prognostic Role of Lymphovascular Invasion in Patients with Urothelial Carcinoma of the Upper Urinary Tract: An International Validation Study. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):1064-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20071073
67. Zigeuner R, Shariat SF, Margulis V, et al. Tumour Necrosis Is an Indicator of Aggressive Biology in Patients with Urothelial Carcinoma of the Upper Urinary Tract. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):575-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19959276
68. Seitz C, Gupta A, Shariat SF, et al. Association of tumor necrosis with pathological features and clinical outcome in 754 patients undergoing radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma: an international validation study. J Urol. 2010 Nov;184(5):1895-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20846680
69. Remzi M, Haitel A, Margulis V, et al. Tumour architecture is an independent predictor of outcomes after nephroureterectomy: a multi-institutional analysis of 1363 patients. BJU Int 2009 Feb;103(3): 307-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18990163
70. Wheat JC, Weizer AZ, Wolf JS, Jr., et al. Concomitant carcinoma in situ is a feature of aggressive disease in patients with organ confined urothelial carcinoma following radical nephroureterectomy. Urol Oncol 2010 May. [Epub ahead of print] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20451416
71. Pieras E, Frontera G, Ruiz X, et al. Concomitant carcinoma in situ and tumour size are prognostic factors for bladder recurrence after nephroureterectomy for upper tract transitional cell carcinoma. BJU Int. 2010 Nov;106(9):1319-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20394618
72. Rouprêt M, Fromont G, Azzouzi AR, et al. Microsatellite instability as predictor of survival in patients with invasive upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. Urology 2005 Jun;65(6):1233-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15922421
73. Eltz S, Comperat E, Cussenot O, et al. Molecular and histological markers in urothelial carcinomas of the upper urinary tract. BJU Int 2008 Aug;102(5):532-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18384628
74. Lughezzani G, Sun M, Perrotte P, et al. Should Bladder Cuff Excision Remain the Standard of Care at Nephroureterectomy in Patients with Urothelial Carcinoma of the Renal Pelvis? A Population-based Study. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):956-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20018438
75. Phé V, et al. Does the surgical technique for management of the distal ureter influence the outcome after nephroureterectomy? BJU Int. 2011 Jul;108(1):130-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21070580
76. Zigeuner R, Pummer K. Urothelial carcinoma of the upper urinary tract: surgical approach and prognostic factors. Eur Urol 2008 Apr;53(4):720-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207315
77. Saika T, Nishiguchi J, Tsushima T, et al. Comparative study of ureteral stripping versus open ureterectomy for nephroureterectomy in patients with transitional carcinoma of the renal pelvis. Urology 2004 May;63(5):848-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134963
78. Palou J, Caparros J, Orsola A, et al. Transurethral resection of the intramural ureter as the first step of nephroureterectomy. J Urol 1995 Jul;154(1):43-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7776453
79. Laguna MP, de la Rosette JJ. The endoscopic approach to the distal ureter in nephroureterectomy for upper urinary tract tumor. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2017-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696698
80. Waldert M, Karakiewicz PI, Raman JD, et al. A delay in radical nephroureterectomy can lead to upstaging. BJU Int 2010 Mar;105(6):812-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19732052

81. Lughezzani G, Jeldres C, Isbarn H, et al. A critical appraisal of the value of lymph node dissection at nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):118-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19864000
82. Roscigno M, Shariat SF, Margulis V, et al. Impact of lymph node dissection on cancer specific survival in patients with upper tract urothelial carcinoma treated with radical nephroureterectomy. J Urol 2009 Jun;181(6):2482-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19371878
83. Roscigno M, Shariat SF, Margulis V, et al. The extent of lymphadenectomy seems to be associated with better survival in patients with nonmetastatic upper-tract urothelial carcinoma: how many lymph nodes should be removed? Eur Urol 2009 Sep;56(3):512-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19559518
84. Berger A, Haber GP, Kamoi K, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephroureterectomy for upper tract transitional cell carcinoma: oncological outcomes at 7 years. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):849-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635229
85. Rassweiler JJ, Schulze M, Marrero R, et al. Laparoscopic nephroureterectomy for upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: is it better than open surgery? Eur Urol 2004 Dec;46(6):690-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15548434
86. Ong AM, Bhayani SB, Pavlovich CP. Trocar site recurrence after laparoscopic nephroureterectomy. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501747
87. Rouprêt M, Smyth G, Irani J, et al. Oncological risk of laparoscopic surgery in urothelial carcinomas. World J Urol 2009 Feb;27(1):81-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19020880
88. Capitanio U, Shariat SF, Isbarn H, et al. Comparison of oncologic outcomes for open and laparoscopic nephroureterectomy: a multi-institutional analysis of 1249 cases. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):1-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19361911
89. Favaretto RL, et al. Comparison between laparoscopic and open radical nephroureterectomy in a contemporary group of patients: are recurrence and disease-specific survival associated with surgical technique? Eur Urol. 2010 Nov;58(5):645-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20724065
90. Kamihira O, Hattori R, Yamaguchi A, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephroureterectomy: a multicenter analysis in Japan. Eur Urol 2009 Jun;55(6):1397-407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19299072
91. Rouprêt M, Hupertan V, Sanderson KM, et al. Oncologic control after open or laparoscopic nephroureterectomy for upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: a single center experience. Urology 2007 Apr;69(4):656-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445646
92. Simone G, Papalia R, Guaglianone S, et al. Laparoscopic versus open nephroureterectomy: perioperative and oncologic outcomes from a randomised prospective study. Eur Urol 2009 Sep;56(3):520-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19560259
93. Chen GL, Bagley DH. Ureteroscopic management of upper tract transitional cell carcinoma in patients with normal contralateral kidneys. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4):1173-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992360
94. Gadzinski AJ, Roberts WW, Faerber GJ, et al. Long-term outcomes of nephroureterectomy versus endoscopic management for upper tract urothelial carcinoma. J Urol 2010 Jun;183(6):2148-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20399468
95. Brown GA, Busby JE, Wood CG, et al. Nephroureterectomy for treating upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: Time to change the treatment paradigm? BJU Int 2006 Dec;98(6):1176-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17125474
96. Bagley DH, Grasso M, 3rd. Ureteroscopic laser treatment of upper urinary tract neoplasms. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):143-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20229233
97. Rouprêt M, Hupertan V, Traxer O, et al. Comparison of open nephroureterectomy and ureteroscopic and percutaneous management of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma. Urology 2006 Jun;67(6):1181-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16765178

98. Cornu JN, Rouprêt M, Carpentier X, et al. Oncologic control obtained after exclusive flexible ureteroscopic management of upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma. World J Urol 2010 Apr; 28(2):151-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20044752
99. Rouprêt M, Wallerand H, Traxer O, et al. Checkup and management of upper urinary tract tumours in 2010: An update from the committee of cancer from the French National Association of Urology. Prog Urol 2010 Apr;20(4):260-71. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20380988
100. Jeldres C, Lughezzani G, Sun M, et al. Segmental ureterectomy can safely be performed in patients with transitional cell carcinoma of the ureter. J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1324-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171666
101. Thompson RH, Krambeck AE, Lohse CM, et al. Elective endoscopic management of transitional cell carcinoma first diagnosed in the upper urinary tract. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(9):1107-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18522631
102. Zungri E, Chechile G, Algaba F, et al. Treatment of transitional cell carcinoma of the ureter: is the controversy justified? Eur Urol 1990;17(4):276-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2364964
103. Palou J, Piovesan LF, Huguet J, et al. Percutaneous nephroscopic management of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: recurrence and long-term followup. J Urol 2004 Jul;172(1):66-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201739
104. Rouprêt M, et al. Upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: recurrence rate after percutaneous endoscopic resection. Eur Urol. 2007 Mar;51(3):709-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16911852
105. Irie A, Iwamura M, Kadowaki K, et al. Intravesical instillation of bacille Calmette-Guerin for carcinoma in situ of the urothelium involving the upper urinary tract using vesicoureteral reflux created by a double-pigtail catheter. Urology 2002 Jan;59(1):53-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11796281
106. Nonomura N, et al. Bacillus Calmette-Guérin perfusion therapy for the treatment of transitional cell carcinoma in situ of the upper urinary tract. Eur Urol. 2000 Dec;38(6):701-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11111187
107. Thalmann GN, Markwalder R, Walter B, et al. Long-term experience with bacillus Calmette-Guerin therapy of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma in patients not eligible for surgery. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1381-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352398
108. Audenet F, Yates D, Cussenot O, et al. The role of chemotherapy in the treatment of urothelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract (UUT-UCC). Urol Oncol 2010 Sep. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20884249
109. Hellenthal NJ, Shariat SF, Margulis V, et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy for high risk upper tract urothelial carcinoma: results from the Upper Tract Urothelial Carcinoma Collaboration. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):900-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616245
110. Kaag MG, O'Malley RL, O'Malley P, et al. Changes in Renal Function Following Nephroureterectomy May Affect the Use of Perioperative Chemotherapy. Eur Urol 2010 Oct;58(4):581-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20619530
111. Lane BR, Smith AK, Larson BT, et al. Chronic kidney disease after nephroureterectomy for upper tract urothelial carcinoma and implications for the administration of perioperative chemotherapy. Cancer 2010 Jun;116(12):2967-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20564402
112. Matin SF, Margulis V, Kamat A, et al. Incidence of downstaging and complete remission after neoadjuvant chemotherapy for high-risk upper tract transitional cell carcinoma. Cancer. 2010 Jul 1; 116(13):3127-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20564621
113. Hall MC, Womack JS, Roehrborn CG, et al. Advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract: patterns of failure, survival and impact of postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy. J Urol 1998 Sep;160(3 Pt 1):703-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9720526
114. Czito B, Zietman A, Kaufman D, et al. Adjuvant radiotherapy with and without concurrent chemotherapy for locally advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the renal pelvis and ureter. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1271-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371822

115. Raman JD, Ng CK, Boorjian SA, et al. Bladder cancer after managing upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: predictive factors and pathology. BJU Int 2005 Nov;96(7):1031-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16225523
116. Terakawa T, Miyake H, Muramaki M, et al. Risk factors for intravesical recurrence after surgical management of transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):123-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242379
117. Chen GL, El-Gabry EA, Bagley DH. Surveillance of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: the role of ureteroscopy, retrograde pyelography, cytology and urinalysis. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):1901-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061876
118. Daneshmand S, Quek ML, Huffman JL. Endoscopic management of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: long-term experience. Cancer 2003 Jul;98(1):55-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12833455

6. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

EBM	evidence based medicine
CIS	carcinoma *in situ*
CT	computed tomography
EAU	European Association of Urology
EBM	evidence-based medicine
FISH	fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation
GR	grade of recommendation
HIF	hypoxia-inducible factor
HNPCC	hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal carcinoma
LE	level of evidence
MDCTU	multidetector computed tomographic urography
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MSIs	microsatellite instabilities
RNU	radical nephroureterectomy
TNM	Tumour Node Metastasis
UUT-UCCs	upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest

All members of the Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Bladder Cancer Muscle-invasive and Metastatic

A. Stenzl (chairman), J.A. Witjes (vice-chairman),
E. Compérat, N.C. Cowan, M. De Santis, M. Kuczyk,
T. Lebret, M.J. Ribal, A. Sherif

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 The guideline

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guideline Panel for Muscle-invasive and Metastic Bladder Cancer (MIBC) has prepared these guidelines to help urologists assess the evidence-based management of MIBC and to incorporate guideline recommendations into their clinical practice. The EAU Guidelines Panel comprises an international multidisciplinary group of experts from the fields of urology, pathology, radiology and oncology.

It is evident that optimal treatment strategies for MIBC require the involvement of a specialist multidisciplinary team and a model of integrated care to avoid fragmentation of patient care.

The Muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer guidelines are one of three EAU guidelines documents (EAU Guidelines on Non-muscle-invasive (TaT1 and CIS) Bladder Cancer and EAU Guidelines on Upper urinary tract urothelial call carcinomas) which, together, present a comprehensive overview of the management of urothelial neoplasms (1,2).

1.2 Methodology

*1.2.1 **Data identification***

Comprehensive literature searches were designed for each section of the MIBC guideline with the help of an expert external consultant. Following detailed internal discussion, searches were carried out in the Cochrane Library database of Systematic Reviews, the Cochrane Library of Controlled Clinical Trials, and Medline and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform. The searches used the controlled terminology of the respective databases. Both MesH and EMTREE were analysed for relevant terms; urinary bladder neoplasms (Medline) and bladder cancer (Embase) were the narrowest single terms available.

Extensive use of free text ensured the sensitivity of the searches, although the subsequent concomitant workload for panel members having to assess the substantial body of literature greatly increased.

Search strategies covered the last 10 years for Medline and for Embase in most cases. Randomised controlled trial (RCT) strategies used were based on Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) and Modified McMaster/Health Information Research Unit (HIRU) filters for RCTs, systematic reviews and practice guidelines on the OVID platform. Results of all searches were scan-read by panel members. In many cases there was a high 'numbers needed to read' due to the sensitivity of the search.

There is clearly a need for continuous re-evaluation of the information presented in the current guideline by an expert panel. It must be emphasised that the current guideline contains information for the treatment of an individual patient according to a standardised approach.

The level of evidence (LE) and grade of recommendation (GR) provided in this guideline follow the listings in Tables 1 and 2 (3). The aim of grading the recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

It should be noted, however, that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence - although a very important factor - has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (4-6).

The EAU Guidelines Office, do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

*1.2.2 **Publication history***

The EAU published a first guideline on bladder cancer in 2000. This document covered both superficial (non-muscle-invasive) bladder cancer and MIBC. As different treatment strategies are employed for these conditions it was decided to split these topics up, resulting in a first publication of the MIBC guideline in 2004, with subsequent updates in 2007, 2009, 2010, 2011 and this 2012 update. A quick reference document presenting the main findings is also available alongside several scientific publications (7-9).

All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website:
http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

This document was peer-reviewed prior to publication.

1.3 Summary of updated information

For all Sections, the literature has been assessed and the guideline updated whenever relevant information was available.

Of note are changes in sections:

Chapter 2 “Epidemiology and risk factors”;

- Sections 2.2.5 (Bladder Schistosomiasis) and 2.2.6 (Chronic urinary tract infection) have been updated.

Chapter 3 “Classification”;

- Section 3.3.2 (Pathologist’handling of specimens); has been expanded.

Chapter 4 “Diagnosis and staging”;

- Section 4.2.1.1. (MR imaging for local staging of invasive bladder cancer); literature was revisited, resulting in amended recommendations.

Chapter 8 “Non resectable tumours”;

- A new section 8.3 on Supportive care has been included.

Chapter 10 “Bladder-sparing treatments for localised disease”

- Additional supportive evidence for TURB for selected patients has been added.
- Additional supportive evidence for EBRT monotherapy in highly selected patients
- The multimodality bladder-preserving (10.4) treatment section has been expanded; potential benefit will depend on low stage and complete TUR as important prognostic factors.

Chapter 12 “Metastatic disease”;

- Section 12.9 (Treatment of bone metastases - bisphosphonates); new literature has been added, resulting in amended recommendations.
- The available new evidence on quality-of-life (Chapter 13) has been added.

Chapter 14 “Follow up”;

- Additional data included on recurrences and secondary urethral tumours. Also a new follow-up table has been added.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett, et al. (3).*

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett, et al. (3).*

1.4 References

1. Babjuk M, Oosterlinck W, Sylvester R, et al; members of the EAU Guidelines Panel on Non-muscle invasive bladder cancer. Guidelines on Non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (TaT1 and CIS). Edition presented at the EAU Annual Congress 2011. ISBN 978-90-79754-9601. Arnhem, The Netherlands.

2. Rouprêt M, Zigeuner R, Palou J, et al; members of the EAU Guidelines Panel on Non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Guidelines on upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma. Edition presented at the EAU Annual Congress 2011. ISBN 978-90-79754-9601. Arnhem, The Netherlands.
3. Modified from Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (March 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [access date January 2012]
4. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
5. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
6. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long
7. Stenzl A, Cowan NC, De Santis M, et al.; European Association of Urology (EAU). Treatment of muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer: update of the EAU guidelines. Eur Urol 2011 Jun;59(6):1009-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21454009
8. Stenzl A, Cowan NC, De Santis M, et al.; European Association of Urology. [Update of the Clinical Guidelines of the European Association of Urology on muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder carcinoma]. Actas Urol Esp 2010 Jan;34(1):51-62. [Article in Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20223133
9. Stenzl A, Cowan NC, De Santis M, et al.. The updated EAU guidelines on muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Apr;55(4):815-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19157687

2. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND RISK FACTORS

2.1 Epidemiology

Bladder cancer is the 9th most common cancer diagnosis worldwide, with more than 330,000 new cases each year and more than 130,000 deaths per year, with an estimated male:female ratio of 3.8:1.0 (1). At any point in time 2.7 million people have a history of urinary bladder cancer (1).

At the initial diagnosis of bladder cancer, 70% of cases are diagnosed as non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer (NMIBC) and approximately 30% as muscle-invasive disease. Among patients treated with radical cystectomy because of MIBC, 57% had muscle invasion at presentation, while 43% had been initially diagnosed with NMIBC that progressed despite organ-preserving treatment (2). Approximately one-third of patients diagnosed with MIBC have undetected metastasis at the time of treatment of the primary tumour (3), while 25% of patients subjected to radical cystectomy present with lymph node involvement at the time of surgery.

2.2 Risk factors for bladder cancer

*2.2.1 **Tobacco smoking***

Tobacco smoking is the most well-established risk factor for bladder cancer, causing 50-65% of male cases and 20-30% of female cases (4). A casual relationship has been established between exposure to tobacco and cancer in studies in which chance, bias and confounding can be ruled out with reasonable confidence (5). The alleged carcinogenic constituents of tobacco smoke include arylamines, particularly the potent carcinogen 4-aminobiphenyl (4-ABP), polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), N-nitroso compounds, heterocyclic amines, and various epoxides.

The incidence of bladder cancer is directly related to the duration of smoking and number of cigarettes smoked per day (6). The risk of bladder cancer is also higher in those who start smoking at a young age or who are exposed to environmental tobacco smoke during childhood (7). A recent meta-analysis looked at 216 observational studies on cigarette smoking and cancer from 1961 to 2003, with reported estimates for current and/or former smokers. The pooled risk estimates for bladder cancer demonstrated a significant association for both current and former smokers. In an analysis of 21 studies, the overall relative risk calculated for current smokers was 2.77 (95% confidence interval [CI]: 2.17-3.54), while an analysis of 15 studies showed that the

overall relative risk calculated for former smokers was 1.72 (95% CI: 1.46-2.04) (8). An immediate decrease in the risk of bladder cancer was observed in those who stopped smoking. The reduction was about 40% within 1-4 years of quitting smoking and 60% after 25 years of cessation (6). The promotion of smoking cessation would result in the incidence of bladder cancer decreasing equally in men and women.

2.2.2 ***Occupational exposure to chemicals***

Occupational exposure is the second most important risk factor for bladder cancer. Work-related cases accounted for 20-25% of all bladder cancer cases in several series. The substances involved in chemical exposure have been benzene derivatives and arylamines (2-naphthylamine, 4-ABP, 4,4'-methylenedianiline and o-toluidine), and it is likely to occur in occupations in which dyes, rubbers, textiles, paints, leathers and chemicals are used (9). The risk of bladder cancer due to occupational exposure to carcinogenic aromatic amines is significantly higher after 10 years, or more; the mean latency period usually exceeds 30 years (10,11). These chemicals have contributed minimally to the current incidence of bladder cancer in Western countries because of strict regulations. In fact, there has been a trend towards a decrease in bladder cancer due to occupational exposure, as indicated by a pooled analysis of 11 European case-control studies on bladder cancer between 1976 and 1996 (12).

An example of occupational exposure is that of aromatic amines. These established carcinogens for urothelium can be inactivated by a metabolic acetylation pathway. The presence of an NAT2 slow-acetylation genotype has been associated with a higher risk of bladder cancer (13), suggesting that patients who are slow acetylators may be more susceptible to bladder cancer than rapid acetylators.

Other risk factors include phenacetin, which was included in 1987 among proven human carcinogens by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). Some studies have suggested that the risk of bladder cancer due to phenacetin is dose dependent; however, the data concerning its metabolite acetaminophen are controversial (14).

2.2.3 ***Radiation therapy***

Increased rates of secondary bladder malignancies have been reported after external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) for gynaecological malignancies, with relative risks of 2 to 4 (15). A recent population cohort study identified 243,082 men treated for prostate cancer between 1988 and 2003 in the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results database (SEER) in the USA. The standardised incidence ratios for bladder cancer developing after radical prostatectomy (RP), EBRT, brachytherapy (BT), and EBRT-BT were 0.99, 1.42, 1.10 and 1.39, respectively, compared with the general US population. The increased risk of bladder cancer in patients undergoing ERBT, BT or ERBT-BT should be taken into account during follow-up although the likelihood of mortality was described as very low in a recent study (16). As bladder cancer requires a long time to develop, patients treated with radiation and a long life-expectancy are at highest risk and should be followed up closely (17).

2.2.4 ***Dietary factors***

Several dietary factors had been believed to be related to bladder cancer; however, a link remains controversial. Currently, there is limited evidence of a causal relationship between bladder cancer and dietary factors. A meta-analysis of 38 articles reporting data on diet and bladder cancer supported the hypothesis that vegetable and fruit intake reduced the risk of bladder cancer (18). For bladder cancer, there seems to be no association between dietary transfatty acid (TFA) intake and an increased risk, as observed for prostate cancer (19).

2.2.5 ***Bladder schistosomiasis***

Bladder schistosomiasis (bilharzia) is the second most common parasitic infection after malaria, with about 600 million people exposed to infection in Africa, Asia, South America, and the Caribbean (20). Although there is a well-established relationship between squamous cell carcinoma of the bladder and schistosomiasis, the trends are changing for bladder cancer in endemic zones, such as Egypt. Data from the National Cancer Institute (NCI) Cairo, the largest tertiary cancer hospital in Egypt, showed that patients diagnosed in 2005 had a six-fold higher chance of developing transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) compared with patients diagnosed in 1980 (21). This shift from squamous cell carcinoma to TCC is attributed to a decline in the detection of bilharzia eggs in urine samples, probably due to better control of the disease in rural populations (22,23).

2.2.6 ***Chronic urinary tract infection***

Muscle-invasive bladder cancer, particularly invasive squamous cell carcinoma, has been linked to the presence of chronic urinary tract infection (UTI) different from schistosomiasis. A direct association between bladder cancer and UTIs has been observed in several case–control studies, reporting a twofold increased risk of bladder cancer in patients with recurrent UTIs in some series. However, some of these results may be attributed to recall bias (24). Furthermore, to date, no clear relationship between any bacterial or viral infection

and bladder cancer has been established in prospective studies (25).
However, an increased risk of bladder cancer has been described in patients with long-term indwelling catheters (26).

2.2.7 ***Chemotherapy***

The use of cyclophosphamide, an alkylating agent used for treatment of lymphoproliferative diseases and other non-neoplastic diseases, has been correlated with posterior development of MIBC with a period of latency of 6-13 years. Acrolein is a metabolite of cyclophosphamide and is responsible for the increase in the incidence of bladder cancer. This effect occurs independently of the association of haemorrhagic cystitis with the same treatment (27,28) and was counteracted with concomitant application of mercaptoethanesulfonate (mesna) (29).

2.2.8 ***Synchronous and metachronous upper urinary tract tumours***

In some cases, there is an association between upper urinary tract tumours (UUTT) and bladder cancer. The incidence of UUTT after diagnosis of NMIBC has been reported to be between 1.7% and 26%. Although synchronous UUTT and NMIBC are uncommon, 46% are invasive.

In a retrospective review of 1,529 patients with primary non-muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma who underwent initial examination of the upper urinary tract with excretory urography, those with a tumour in the bladder trigone were almost 6 times more likely to develop a synchronous tumour in the upper urinary tract (30). Examination of the upper urinary tract only in patients with a tumour in the trigone or with multiple bladder tumours could diagnose 41% or 69% of UUTT, respectively. In multiple and high-risk tumours, there is an increased risk of tumour recurrence in the UUT.

In addition, the overall incidence of bladder cancer development after treatment of UUTT has been reported in the literature as 15-50%. No level 1 evidence from prospective randomised trials is available, as yet. Intraluminal tumour seeding and pan-urothelial field change effects have both been proposed to explain intravesical recurrences. In most cases, bladder cancer arises in the first 2 years after upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma (UUT-UCC) management. However the risk is life-long and repeat episodes are common. No variables can be used to predict future bladder cancer recurrence in UUT-UCC patients reliably. A history of bladder cancer prior to UUT-UCC management and upper tract tumour multifocality are the only commonly reported clinical risk factors in the current literature (31).

2.2.9 ***Gender***

In a retrospective study of patients who underwent radical cystectomy, it was demonstrated that women were more likely to be diagnosed with primary muscle-invasive disease than men (85% vs 51%) (2). It has been proposed that women are more likely to be older than men when diagnosed, with a direct effect on their survival. In addition, delayed diagnosis is more likely in women after haematuria is observed, because the differential diagnosis in women includes diseases more prevalent than bladder cancer (32).

Differences in the gender prevalence of bladder cancer may be due to other factors besides tobacco and chemical exposure. In a large prospective cohort study, post-menopausal status was associated with an increase in bladder cancer risk even after adjusting for smoking status. This result suggests that the differences in oestrogen and androgen levels between men and women could be responsible for some of the difference in the gender prevalence of bladder cancer (33-35). Recently a study in Egyptian women was conducted and younger age at menopause (< 45y) was a factor associated with increasing risk of bladder cancer, while multiple pregnancies and use of oral contraceptives were associated with decreased odds of having bladder cancer. The magnitude of associations was higher in the urothelial carcinoma group (36). A recent publication mentions that female gender has a significant negative impact on CSS in patients younger of age and with positive LVI status, possibly suggesting different clinical phenotypes (37).

2.2.10 ***Race and socio-economic status***

Limited data exists on this topic, but a study based on 13,234 cases diagnosed in the SEER database in the period 1979-2003 showed that survival time from diagnosis was significantly decreased among cancer cases in patients with low socioeconomic status (SES) compared with those with higher SES. Hazard ratios for all causes and cancer-specific mortality among blacks compared to whites for eight of the most common types of cancers combined, lost statistical significance after adjusting for SES factors and treatments. But blacks still had unfavourable prognoses compared with whites even after adjustment for SES and treatment for tumours such as breast-, colorectal-, and urinary bladder cancer (38).

2.3 Conclusions and recommendations for epidemiology and risk factors

Conclusions	LE
The incidence of muscle-invasive disease has not changed for 5 years.	
Active and passive tobacco smoking continues to be the main risk factor, while exposure-related incidence is decreasing.	2a
The increased risk of developing bladder cancer in patients submitted to external beam radiation therapy, brachytherapy or a combination of external beam radiation therapy and brachytherapy must be taken into account during patient follow-up. As bladder cancer requires time to develop, patients treated with radiation at a young age are at the greatest risk and should be followed up closely.	3
The estimated male-to-female ratio for bladder cancer is 3.8:1.0. Women are more likely to be diagnosed with primary muscle-invasive disease than men.	
Currently, treatment decisions cannot be based on molecular markers.	

Recommendations	GR
The principle preventable risk factor for muscle-invasive bladder cancer is active and passive smoking.	B
Notwithstanding stricter regulations, workers should be informed about the potential carcinogenic effects of a number of recognised substances, duration of exposure, and latency periods. Protective measures should be recommended.	A

2.4 References

1. Ploeg M, Aben KK, Kiemeney LA. The present and future burden of urinary bladder cancer in the world. World J Urol 2009; 27:289-293.
2. Vaidya A, Soloway MS, Hawke C, et al. De novo muscle invasive bladder cancer: is there a change in trend? J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):47-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125361
3. Prout GR Jr, Griffin PP, Shipley WU. Bladder carcinoma as a systemic disease. Cancer 1979 Jun;43(6):2532-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/455239
4. Freedman ND, Silverman DT, Hollenbeck AR, et al. Association between smoking and risk of bladder cancer among men and women. JAMA 2011 Aug 17;306(7):737-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21846855
5. IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans. Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking. IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum 2004;83:1-1438. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15285078
6. Brennan P, Bogillot O, Cordier S, et al Cigarette smoking and bladder cancer in men: a pooled analysis of 11 case-control studies. Int J Cancer 2000 Apr;86(2):289-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10738259
7. Bjerregaard BK, Raaschou-Nielsen O, Sørensen M, et al. Tobacco smoke and bladder cancer-in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition. Int J Cancer 2006 Nov;119(10):2412-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16894557
8. Gandini S, Botteri E, Iodice S, et al. Tobacco smoking and cancer: a meta-analysis. Int J Cancer 2008 Jan;122(1):155-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17893872
9. Pashos CL, Botteman MF, Laskin BL, et al. Bladder cancer: epidemiology, diagnosis, and management. Cancer Pract 2002 Nov-Dec;10(6):311-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12406054
10. Harling M, Schablon A, Schedlbauer G, et al. Bladder Cancer among hairdressers: a meta analysis. Occup Environ Med 2010 May;67(5):351-8 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20447989
11. Weistenhofer W, Blaszkewicz M, Bolt HM, et al. N-acetyltransferase-2 and medical history in bladder cancer cases with a suspected occupational disease (BK 1301) in Germany. J Toxicol Environ Health A 2008;71(13-14):906-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18569594

12. Kogevinas M, t'Mannetje A, Cordier S, et al. Occupation and bladder cancer among men in Western Europe. Cancer Causes and Control 2003 Dec;14(10):907-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14750529
13. García-Closas M, Malats N, Silverman D, et al. NAT2 slow acetylation, GSTM1 null genotype, and risk of bladder cancer: results from the Spanish Bladder Cancer Study and meta-analyses. Lancet 2005 Aug;366(9486):649-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16112301
14. Castelao JE, Yuan JM, Gago-Dominguez M, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and bladder cancer prevention. Br J Cancer 2000 Apr;82(7):1364-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755416
15. Chrouser K, Leibovich B, Bergstralh E, et al. Bladder cancer risk following primary and adjuvant external beam radiation for prostate cancer. J Urol 2006 Jul;174(1):107-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947588
16. Zelefsky MJ, Housman DM, Pei X, et al. Incidence of Secondary Cancer Development After High-Dose Intensity-Modulated Radiotherapy and Image-Guided Brachytherapy for the Treatment of Localized Prostate Cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2011 Dec 13. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22172904
17. Nieder AM, Porter MP, Soloway MS. Radiation therapy for prostate cancer increases subsequent risk of bladder and rectal cancer: a population based cohort study. J Urol 2008 Nov;180(5): 2005-9;discussion 2009-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18801517
18. Steinmaus CM, Nuñez S, Smith AH. Diet and bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of six dietary variables. Am J Epidemiol 2000 Apr;151(7):693-702.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10752797
19. Hu J, La Vecchia C, de Groh M, et al; Canadian Cancer Registries Epidemiology Research Group. Dietary transfatty acids and cancer risk. Eur J Cancer Prev 2011 Nov;20(6):530-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21701388
20. [No authors listed.] Schistosomes, liver flukes and Helicobacter pylori. IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans. Lyon, 7-14 June, 1994. IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum 1994;61:1-241.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7715068
21. Felix AS, Soliman AS, Khaled H, et al. The changing patterns of bladder cancer in Egypt over the past 26 years. Cancer Causes Control 2008 May;19(4):421-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18188671
22. Gouda I, Mokhtar N, Bilal D, et al. Bilharziasis and bladder cancer: a time trend analysis of 9843 patients. J Egypt Natl Canc Inst 2007 Jun;19(2):158-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19034337
23. Salem HK, Mahfouz S. Changing Patterns (Age, Incidence, and Pathologic Types) of Schistosoma-associated Bladder Cancer in Egypt in the Past Decade. Urology 2011 Nov 21 [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22112287
24. Pelucchi C, Bosetti C, Negri E, et al. Mechanisms of disease: The epidemiology of bladder cancer. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2006 Jun;3(6):327-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16763645
25. Abol-Enein H. Infection: is it a cause of bladder cancer? Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 2008 Sep;(218):79-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18815920
26. Locke JR, Hill DE, Walzer Y.Incidence of squamous cell carcinoma in patients with long-term catheter drainage. J Urol 1985 Jun;133(6):1034-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3999203
27. Kaldor JM, Day NE, Kittelmann B, et al. Bladder tumours following chemotherapy and radiotherapy for ovarian cancer: a case-control study. Int J Cancer 1995 Sept 27;63(1):1-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7558434
28. Travis LB, Curtis RE, Glimelius B, et al. Bladder and kidney cancer following cyclophosphamide therapy for non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 1995 Apr;87(7):524-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7707439
29. Monach PA, Arnold LM, Merkel PA. Incidence and prevention of bladder toxicity from cyclophosphamide in the treatment of rheumatic diseases: a data-driven review. Arthritis Rheum 2010 Jan;62(1):9-21. Review. No abstract available.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20039416

30. Palou J, Rodríguez-Rubio F, Huguet J, et al. Multivariate analysis of clinical parameters of synchronous primary superficial bladder cancer and upper urinary tract tumor. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):859-61;discussion 861.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093970
31. Azémar MD, Comperat E, Richard F, et al. Bladder recurrence after surgery for upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinoma: frequency, risk factors, and surveillance. Urol Oncol 2009 Sep 15. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19762256
32. Cárdenas-Turanzas M, Cooksley C, Pettaway CA, et al. Comparative outcomes of bladder cancer. Obstet Gynecol 2006 Jul;108(1):169-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16816072
33. McGrath M, Michaud DS, De Vivo I. Hormonal and reproductive factors and the risk of bladder cancer in women. Am J Epidemiol 2006 Feb;163(3):236-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16319290
34. Scosyrev E, Noyes K, Feng C, et al. Sex and racial differences in bladder cancer presentation and mortality in the US. Cancer 2009 Jan;115(1):68-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19072984
35. Stenzl A. Words of Wisdom. Re: Sex and racial differences in bladder cancer presentation and mortality in the US. Eur Urol 2010 April;57(4):729.
36. Wolpert BJ, Amr S, Ezzat S., et al. Estrogen exposure and bladder cancer risk in Egyptian women. Wolpert Maturitas 2010 ;67: 353-357.
37. May M, Stief C, Brookman-May S, et al. Gender-dependent cancer-specific survival following radical cystectomy. World J Urol 2011 Oct 9. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21984471
38. Du XL, Lin CC, Johnson NJ, et al. Effects of individual-level socioeconomic factors on racial disparities in cancer treatment and survival: Findings from the National Longitudinal Mortality Study, 1979-2003. Cancer 2011 Jul;117(14):3242-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21264829

3. CLASSIFICATION

3.1 Tumour, Node, Metastasis classification

The Tumour, Node, Metastasis (TNM) Classification of Malignant Tumours is the method most widely used to classify the extent of cancer spread. Recently a seventh edition was published, effective as of 2010 (1). There are no significant modifications to this for bladder cancer compared with the previous (2002) edition.

Table 3: 2009 TNM classification of urinary bladder cancer

T - Primary tumour	
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed
T0	No evidence of primary tumour
Ta	Non-invasive papillary carcinoma
Tis	Carcinoma *in situ*: 'flat tumour'
T1	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue
T2	Tumour invades muscle
T2a	Tumour invades superficial muscle (inner half)
T2b	Tumour invades deep muscle (outer half)
T3	Tumour invades perivesical tissue
T3a	Microscopically
T3b	Macroscopically (extravesical mass)
T4	Tumour invades any of the following: prostate, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall
T4a	Tumour invades prostate, uterus or vagina
T4b	Tumour invades pelvic wall or abdominal wall

N - Lymph nodes	
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0	No regional lymph node metastasis
N1	Metastasis in a single lymph node in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)
N2	Metastasis in multiple lymph nodes in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral)
N3	Metastasis in common iliac lymph node(s)
M - Distant metastasis	
M0	No distant metastasis
M1	Distant metastasis

3.2 Histological grading of non-muscle-invasive bladder tumours

In 1998, a new classification of non-invasive urothelial tumours was proposed by the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP). It was published by the WHO in 2004 (2,3) (Table 4). Its major contribution is a detailed histological description of the various grades using specific cytological and architectural criteria. A website (http://www.pathology.jhu.edu/bladder) illustrating examples of various grades was developed to improve accuracy in using the system.

Table 4: WHO grading in 1973 and 2004 (2,3)

1973 WHO grading	
Urothelial papilloma	
Grade 1:	well differentiated
Grade 2:	moderately differentiated
Grade 3:	poorly differentiated
2004 WHO grading	
Urothelial papilloma	
Papillary urothelial neoplasm of low malignant potential (PUNLMP)	
Low-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma	
High-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma	

*3.2.1 **WHO grading***

The 2004 WHO grading differentiates between papilloma, papillary urothelial neoplasms of low malignant potential (PUNLMP), and low-grade and high-grade urothelial carcinomas.

The papilloma is composed of a delicate fibrovascular core covered by normal urothelium. A PUNLMP is defined as a papillary fibrovascular growth covered by proliferated urothelium exceeding the normal thickness. Although PUNLMPs have a negligible risk of progression, they are not completely benign and have a tendency to recur. The low-grade papillary urothelial carcinoma group includes all former grade 1 (WHO 1973) cases and some former grade 2 cases (if a variation of architectural and cytological features exist at high magnification).

Use of the 2004 WHO classification is recommended as this should result in a uniform diagnosis of tumours better classified according to risk potential. However, until the 2004 WHO classification has been validated by more clinical trials, tumours should be graded using both the 1973 and the 2004 WHO classifications (4).

Most clinical trials published so far on bladder tumours have been performed using the 1973 WHO classification, so this is used in the 2012 edition of the guidelines.

3.3 Pathology

*3.3.1 **Urologist handling of specimens***

In transurethral resection (TUR) specimens, the superficial and deep areas of the tumour must be sent to the pathology laboratory separately. If random biopsies of the flat mucosa have been carried out, each biopsy of the flat mucosa must also be sent separately.

In radical cystectomy the bladder fixation must be carried out as soon as possible. The pathologist must open the specimen from the urethra to the bladder dome and fix the specimen in formalin. In some circumstances this procedure can also be performed by the urologist. In a female cystectomy specimen,

the length of the urethral segment removed en bloc with the specimen should be checked, preferably by the urological surgeon (5).

3.3.2 ***Pathologist handling of specimens***

Specimen handling should follow the general rules as published by a collaborative group of pathologists and urologists (6). It must be stressed that it may be very difficult to confirm the presence of a neoplastic lesion using gross examination of the cystectomy specimen after TUR or chemotherapy, so the entire retracted or ulcerated area must be included.

It is compulsory to study the urethra, the ureter, the prostate in men and the radial margins (7). In urethra-sparing cystectomy, the level of urethral dissection, completeness of the prostate specifically at the apex (in men), and the inclusion of the entire bladder neck and amount of adjacent urethra (in women) should be documented.

All lymph node specimens should be provided in their totality, in clearly labelled containers. In case of doubt, or adipous differentiation of the lymph node, the entire specimen is to be included.

Lymph nodes should be counted and measured on slides, capsular effraction and percentage of lymph node invasion should be reported as well as vascular embols. In case of metastatic spread in the perivesical fat without real lymph node structures (capsule, subcapsular sinus), this localisation should nevertheless be considered as N+.

Fresh frozen sections are helpful to determine treatment strategy. A recent study confirmed reliability of fresh frozen sections of obturator lymph nodes, but similar studies are warranted to confirm these results (8). As yet, the use of fresh frozen section is generally used within a clinical study setting.

3.3.3 ***Pathology of muscle-invasive bladder cancer***

In muscle-invasive bladder cancer there are usually no cases of PUNLMP and low-grade carcinoma. All cases are high-grade urothelial carcinomas (grade II or grade III). For this reason, no more prognostic information can be provided by grading muscle-invasive bladder cancer (9). However, some morphological subtypes can be important for helping with prognosis and treatment decisions. Currently the following differentiation is used:

1. urothelial carcinoma (more than 90% of all cases)
2. urothelial carcinomas with squamous and/or glandular partial differentiation (10,11);
3. micropapillary urothelial carcinoma;
4. small-cell carcinomas (12);
5. some urothelial carcinomas with trophoblastic differentiation;
6. nested carcinoma (13):
7. spindle cell carcinomas.

For staging, TNM 2002/2009 (6^{th} or 7^{th} edition) is recommended (both editions are identical for bladder cancer). The pattern of muscular invasion can provide some prognostic information. Most cases show nodular or cordonal growth, but about 44% have an infiltrative pattern. According to some authors (9), the median survival time of a patient with an infiltrative pattern is lower than that for an individual with other pattern types ($p = 0.06$). Blood vessel invasion and lymph node infiltration have an independent prognostic significance (14). It seems that the pN category is closely related to the number of lymph nodes studied by the pathologist (15). For this reason, some authors have observed that more than nine lymph nodes have to be investigated to reflect pN0 appropriately (16).

New prognostic markers are under study (17). Currently, insufficient evidence exists to recommend the standard use of the prognostic marker p53 in high-risk muscle-invasive disease, as it will not yield sufficient data upon which to base treatment in an individual patient.

3.3.4 ***Recommendations for the assessment of tumour specimens***

Mandatory evaluations
Depth of invasion (categories pT2 vs pT3a, pT3b or pT4);
Margins with special attention paid to the radial margin, prostate, ureter, urethra and peritoneal fat;
Histological subtype, if it has clinical implications;
Extensive lymph node representation (more than nine);
Optional evaluations
Bladder wall blood vessel invasion;
Pattern of muscle invasion.

3.4 References

1. Sobin LH, Gospodariwicz M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM classification of malignant tumors. UICC International Union Against Cancer. 7th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, 2009 Dec; pp. 262-265. http://www.nicc.org/tnm/
2. Epstein JI, Amin MB, Reuter VR, et al. The World Health Organization/International Society of Urological Pathology consensus classification of urothelial (transitional cell) neoplasms of the urinary bladder. Am J Surg Pathol 1998 Dec;22(12):1435-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9850170
3. Sauter G, Algaba F, Amin M, et al. Tumours of the urinary system: non-invasive urothelial neoplasias. In: Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, Sesterhenn I, eds. *WHO classification of classification of tumors of the urinary system and male genital organs*. Lyon: IARCC Press, 2004, pp. 29-34.
4. Lopez-Beltran A, Montironi R. Non-invasive urothelial neoplasms: according to the most recent WHO classification. Eur Urol 2004 Aug;46(2):170-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15245809
5. Stenzl A. Current Concepts for Urinary Diversion in Women. Eur Urol (EAU Update Series 1);2003: 91-9.
6. Varinot J, Camparo P, Roupret M, et al. Full analysis of the prostatic urethra at the time of radical cystoprostatectomy for bladder cancer: impact on final disease stage. Virchows Arch. 2009 Nov;455(5):449-53 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19841937
7. Herr HW. Pathologic evaluation of radical cystectomy specimens. Cancer 2002 Aug;95(3):668-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12209761
8. Baltaci S, Adsan O, Ugurlu O, et al. Reliability of frozen section examination of obturator lymph nodes and impact on lymph node dissection borders during radical cystectomy: results of a prospective multicentre study by the Turkish Society of Urooncology. BJU Int 2011 Feb;107(4):547-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20633004
9. Jimenez RE, Gheiler E, Oskanian P, et al. Grading the invasive component of urothelial carcinoma of the bladder and its relationship with progressionfree survival. Am J Surg Pathol 2000 Jul;24(7):980-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10895820
10. Kapur P, Lotan Y, King E, et al. Primary adenocarcinoma of the urinary bladder: value of cell cycle biomarkers. Am J Clin Pathol 2011 Jun;135(6):822-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21571954
11. Ploeg M, Aben KK, Hulsbergen-van de Kaa CA, et al. Clinical epidemiology of nonurothelial bladder cancer: analysis of the Netherlands Cancer Registry. J Urol 2010 Mar;183(3):915-20 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20083267
12. Mukesh M, Cook N, Hollingdale AE, et al. Small cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder: a 15-year retrospective review of treatment and survival in the Anglian Cancer Network. BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(6):747-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19076139
13. Wasco MJ, Daignault S, Bradley D, et al. Nested variant of urothelial carcinoma: a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study of 30 pure and mixed cases. Hum Pathol 2010 Feb;41(2):163-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19800100
14. Leissner J, Koeppen C, Wolf HK. Prognostic significance of vascular and perineural invasion in urothelial bladder cancer treated with radical cystectomy. J Urol 2003 Mar;169:955-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576821
15. Jensen JB, Høyer S, Jensen KM. Incidence of occult lymph-node metastasis missed by standard pathological examination in patients with bladder cancer undergoing radical cystectomy. Scan J Urol Nephrol 2011 Dec;45(6)419-24. http://informahealthcare.com/doi/abs/10.3109/00365599.2011.599336
16. Shariat SF, Karam JA, Lerner SP. Molecular markers in bladder cancer. Curr Opin Urol 2008 Jan;18(1):1-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18090481
17. Tiguert R, Lessard A, So A, et al. Prognostic markers in muscle invasive bladder cancer. World J Urol 2002 Aug;20:190-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196903

4. DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING

4.1 Primary diagnosis

4.1.1 Symptoms

Painless haematuria is a common finding. In addition, some patients complain of urgency, dysuria, increased frequency and pelvic pain. Pelvic pain and all the symptoms related to urinary tract obstruction are found in more advanced tumours.

4.1.2 Physical examination

Physical examination should include rectal and vaginal bimanual palpation. A palpable pelvic mass can be found in patients with locally advanced tumours. In addition, bimanual examination should be carried out before and after TUR to assess whether there is a palpable mass or if the tumour is fixed to the pelvic wall (1,2).

4.1.3 Bladder imaging

A bladder mass identified by diagnostic imaging such as ultrasonography (US), intravenous urography (IVU), computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance (MR) imaging should be confirmed with cystoscopy and histology.

4.1.4 Urinary cytology and urinary markers

Examination of a voided urine or bladder-washing specimen for exfoliated cancer cells has high sensitivity in high-grade tumours (LE: 3). It is therefore useful when a high-grade malignancy or carcinoma *in situ* (CIS) is suspected.

Positive urinary cytology may indicate a urothelial tumour anywhere in the urinary tract from the calix, through the ureters, into the bladder and proximal urethra. Cytological interpretation is user dependent (3). The evaluation can be hampered by low cellular yield, urinary tract infections, stones or intravesical instillations. In experienced hands, however, specificity exceeds 90% (4) (LE: 2b). Cytology should be performed on fresh urine with adequate fixation. Morning urine is not suitable as cytolysis may often be present. No urinary marker is registered specifically for the diagnosis of invasive bladder cancer. However, as most invasive tumours are of high grade the positive predictive value of markers may be greater in this setting (5).

4.1.5 Cystoscopy

The diagnosis of bladder cancer ultimately depends on cystoscopic examination of the bladder and histological evaluation of the resected tissue. In general, cystoscopy is initially performed in the office, using flexible instruments. If a bladder tumour has been visualised unequivocally in earlier imaging studies, such as CT, MR imaging, or US, a diagnostic cystoscopy may be omitted as the patient will undergo TUR for a histological diagnosis.

A careful description of the finding is necessary. It should include documentation of the site, size, number, and appearance (papillary or solid) of the tumours as well as a description of mucosal abnormalities. Use of a bladder diagram is recommended.

The use of Photodynamic Diagnosis could be considered, especially if a T1 high grade tumour is present, in order to find associated CIS. The additional presence of a CIS could lead to a more aggressive treatment plan (*see* also section 5.1). Photodynamic Diagnosis has proven a great sensitivity for the detection of CIS and in experienced hands the rate of false positives may not be higher than seen in regular white light cystoscopy (6).

4.1.6 Transurethral resection (TUR) of invasive bladder tumours

The goal of TUR is to enable a correct diagnosis by the pathologist, which means including bladder muscle in the adequately sized resection biopsies.

The strategy of resection depends on the size of the lesion. Small tumours (less than 1 cm) can be resected en bloc, where the specimen contains the complete tumour plus a part of the underlying bladder wall including bladder muscle. Larger tumours have to be resected separately in fractions, which include the exophytic part of the tumour, the underlying bladder wall with the detrusor muscle and the edges of the resection area. At least the deeper part of the resection specimen must be referred to the pathologist in a separate labelled container to enable him to make a correct diagnosis. Cauterisation has to be avoided as much as possible during the resection to prevent tissue destruction. In case Photodynamic Diagnosis is used, fluorescing areas should be biopsied in order to detect primary or associated CIS lesions. Fluorescence endoscopy should not be used in the first 6 weeks after any instillation therapy due to a higher rate of false positive results.

*4.1.7 **Random bladder and (prostatic) urethral biopsy***

Bladder tumours are often multifocal. Moreover tumours can be accompanied by CIS or dysplasia. These lesions may present themselves as velvet-like, reddish areas, indistinguishable from inflammation, or may be not visible at all.

The biopsies from normal-looking mucosa in patients with invasive bladder tumours, so-called random biopsies (R-biopsies) show a low yield (7). Fluorescence cystoscopy is performed using filtered blue light after intravesical instillation of a photosensitiser initially experimentally 5-aminolevulinic acid (5-ALA) and lately after approval by the EMA hexaminolaevulinate (HAL). It has been confirmed that fluorescence-guided biopsy and resection are more sensitive than conventional procedures in detecting malignant tumours, particularly CIS (8-11) (LE: 2a). However, false-positive results may be induced by inflammation, recent TUR or intravesical instillation therapy. A recent multicentre, prospective, international trial showed that in experienced hands the rate of false positives is not higher than seen in regular white light cystoscopy (6). Material obtained by random or directed biopsies must be sent for pathological assessment in separate containers.

The involvement of the prostatic urethra and ducts in male patients with bladder tumours has been reported. Although the exact risk is not known, it seems to be higher if the tumour is located on the trigone or bladder neck, in the presence of bladder CIS and in multiple tumours (12,13) (LE: 3). Identification of involvement of the prostatic urethra can be determined either at the time of primary TUR or by frozen section during the cystoprostatectomy procedure. Although a frozen section has a higher negative predictive value and is more accurate, neither technique is 100% sensitive (14-16).

*4.1.8 **Second resection***

There is a significant risk of residual tumour after the initial TUR (17,18) (LE: 1). Persistent disease was observed in 33-53% of patients (18-24). Moreover, the tumour may be understaged by the initial resection. There is a 4-25% probability that tumours initially staged as being of a lower stage are in fact muscle-invasive (19,20). Correct staging is extremely important since it will directly affect the treatment modality. A second TUR should always be performed when the initial resection has been incomplete, e.g. when multiple and/or large tumours are present, or when the pathologist has reported that the specimen contained no muscle tissue. Furthermore, a second TUR should be performed when a high-grade, non-muscle-invasive tumour or a T1 tumour has been detected at the initial TUR. There is no consensus about the strategy and timing of a second TUR. Most authors recommend resection at 2-6 weeks after the initial TUR. The procedure should include a resection of the primary tumour site.

*4.1.9 **Concomitant prostate cancer***

Ruling out progressive prostate cancer should be considered since 25-46% of patients submitted to cystectomy for bladder cancer (25,26) appear to have prostate cancer on final pathology. Unless the entire prostate is to be removed during cystectomy, any type of prostate cancer should be excluded.

*4.1.10 **Specific recommendations for primary assessment of presumably invasive bladder tumours***

(For general information on the assessment of bladder tumours, see EAU Guidelines on Non-muscle-invasive Bladder cancer)

Recommendations	GR
Cystoscopy should describe all macroscopic features of the tumour (site, size, number and appearance) and mucosal abnormalities. A bladder diagram is recommended.	C
Biopsy of the prostatic urethra is recommended for cases of bladder neck tumour, when bladder CIS is present or suspected, when there is positive cytology without evidence of tumour in the bladder, or when abnormalities of the prostatic urethra are visible. If biopsy is not performed during the initial procedure, it should be completed at the time of the second resection.	C
In women undergoing a subsequent orthotopic neobladder, procedure information is required (including a histological evaluation) of the bladder neck and urethral margin, either prior to, or at the time of cystoscopy.	C
The pathological report should specify the grade, the depth of tumour invasion and whether the lamina propria and muscle tissue are present in the specimen.	C

4.2 Imaging for staging in verified bladder tumours

Imaging is indicated only if there is a clinical consequence. The treatment and prognosis for invasive bladder cancer is determined by tumour stage and grade (27). Tumour staging must be accurate for selecting the

correct treatment in clinical practice. The use of CT and MR imaging has largely replaced other imaging modalities for staging of invasive bladder cancer.

The purpose of imaging for staging invasive bladder cancer is to:

- Assess the extent of local tumour invasion;
- Detect tumour spread to lymph nodes;
- Detect tumour spread to the upper urinary tract and other distant organs (liver, lung, bones, peritoneum, pleura, adrenal gland and others).

*4.2.1 **Local staging of invasive bladder cancer***

Both CT and MR imaging may be used for assessment of local invasion but they are unable to detect microscopic invasion of perivesical fat (T3a) (28). The aim of CT and MR imaging is therefore to detect T3b disease, or higher.

4.2.1.1 MR imaging for local staging of invasive bladder cancer

Magnetic resonance imaging has superior soft tissue contrast resolution compared with CT, but poorer spatial resolution. In studies performed before the availability of CT imaging, MR imaging was reported to be more accurate for local assessment. The accuracy of MR imaging for primary tumour staging varies from 73% to 96% (mean 85%). These values were 10-33% (mean 19%) higher than those obtained with CT (29).

Fast dynamic contrast-enhanced MR imaging helps to differentiate bladder tumour from surrounding tissues because enhancement of the tumour occurs earlier than the normal bladder wall due to neovascularisation (30,31). Fast dynamic MR imaging with images acquired at one image per second helps to distinguish tumour from post-biopsy reaction (30).

In 2006 a link between gadolinium-based contrast agents (Gd-CA) and nephrogenic systemic fibrosis (NSF) was established. NSF may result in a fatal or debilitating systemic fibrosis. Patients with impaired renal function are at risk of developing NSF. For this group of patients, non-ionic linear Gd-CAs should be avoided (gadodiamide, gadopentetate dimeglumine, and gadoversetamide) and a stable macrocyclic contrast agent used (gadobutrol, gadoterate meglumine, or gadoteridol). Alternatively, contrast enhanced CT could be performed using iodinated contrast media (32) (LE: 4).

4.2.1.2 CT imaging for local staging of invasive bladder cancer

The advantages of CT include shorter acquisition time, wider coverage in a single breath hold, and lower susceptibility to various patient factors.

Computed tomography imaging is unable to differentiate between stages Ta to T3a, but it is useful clinically for detecting invasion into the perivesical fat (T3b) and adjacent organs. The accuracy of CT in determining extravesical tumour extension varies from 55% to 92% (33) and increases with more advanced disease (34).

*4.2.2 **Imaging of nodal involvement***

The assessment of nodal status based simply on size is limited by the inability of both CT and MR imaging to identify metastases in normal sized or minimally enlarged nodes. Sensitivities for detection of lymph node metastases are low, ranging from 48% to 87%. Specificities are also low as nodal enlargement may be due to benign pathology. Overall, the results of CT and MR imaging for detection of lymph node metastases in a variety of primary pelvic tumours are similar (35-40). Pelvic nodes greater than 8 mm and abdominal nodes greater than 10 mm in maximum short axis diameter (MSAD) should be regarded as enlarged on CT and MR imaging (41,42).

Currently there is no evidence supporting routine use of positron emission tomography (PET) CT in nodal staging of bladder cancer, although the method has been evaluated with varying results in small prospective trials (43,44).

*4.2.3 **Extravesical urothelial carcinoma***

Computed tomography urography is the preferred imaging modality for the diagnosis and staging of upper urinary tract and bladder cancer (45,46). Computed tomography urography has a higher diagnostic accuracy for urothelial cancers compared to IVU (LE: 2b). For UUT-UCC detected by CT urography, a biopsy for histopathological confirmation of diagnosis is recommended to eliminate false-positive results. (47-50).

*4.2.4 **Distant metastases other than lymph nodes***

Prior to any treatment aimed at cure, it is essential to evaluate the presence of distant metastases. CT and

MR imaging are the diagnostic tools of choice to detect metastases to lung and liver. Metastases to bones or brain at presentation of invasive bladder cancer are rare. Bone scan and additional brain imaging are therefore not routinely indicated unless the patient has specific symptoms or signs to suggest bone or brain metastases (51,52. MR imaging is more sensitive and specific for diagnosing bone metastases than bone scintigraphy (53,54) (LE: 2b).

*4.2.5 **Conclusions and recommendations for staging of verified bladder tumour***

Conclusions	**LE**
Imaging is used for formal staging only if it will make a difference to the selection of treatment options.	
Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging has some advantages over computed tomography (CT) for local staging, without being able to guide future treatment in most cases.	
If the patient is evaluated for radical treatment, multidetector computed tomography (CT) due to its higher specificity may be equivalent to magnetic resonance (MR) imaging regarding local staging.	
A positron emission tomography computed tomography (PET/CT) examination does not offer additional information but this is still under investigation.	

Recommendations	**GR**
Computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging is recommended if there is suspicion of locally advanced or metastatic disease precluding radical treatment.	
In patients considered eligible for radical treatment, for optimal T-staging, either MR imaging with fast dynamic contrast-enhancement or multidetector computed tomography (CT) with contrast enhancement are recommended.	B
In patients with confirmed muscle-invasive bladder cancer, computed tomography (CT) of the chest, abdomen and pelvis is the optimal form of staging, including CT urography for complete examination of the upper urinary tracts. If CT is not available, lesser alternatives are excretory urography and a chest X-ray.	B
In patients with a verified muscle invasive lesion (TUR), abdominal pelvis and chest imaging is mandatory. MR imaging and CT are equivalent in diagnosing local and distant abdominal metastases.	C
Computed tomography (CT) is preferred to magnetic resonance (MR) imaging for the detection of pulmonary metastases.	C

4.3 References

1. Fossa SD, Ous S, Berner A. Clinical significance of the ‘palpable mass’ in patients with muscle-infiltrating bladder cancer undergoing cystectomy after pre-operative radiotherapy. Br J Urol 1991 Jan;67(1):54-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1993277
2. Wijkström H, Norming U, Lagerkvist M, et al. Evaluation of clinical staging before cystectomy in transitional cell bladder carcinoma: a long-term follow-up of 276 consecutive patients. Br J Urol 1998 May;81(5):686-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634042
3. Raitanen M-P, Aine R, Rintala E, et al. FinnBladder Group. Differences between local and review urinary cytology and diagnosis of bladder cancer. An interobserver multicenter analysis. Eur Urol 2002 Mar;41(3):284-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12180229
4. Lokeshwar VB, Habuchi T, Grossman HB, et al. Bladder tumor markers beyond cytology: international consensus panel on bladder tumor markers. Urology 2005 Dec;66 (6 Suppl 1):35-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16399415
5. Van Rhijn BW, van der Poel HG, van der Kwast Th. Urine Markers for bladder cancer surveillance: a systematic review. Eur Urol 2005 Jun;47(6):736-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925067
6. Stenzl A, Burger M, Fradet Y, et al. Hexaminolevulinate guided fluorescence cystoscopy reduces recurrence in patients with nonmuscle invasive bladder cancer. J Urol 2010 Nov;184(5):1907-13
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20850152

7. May F, Treiber U, Hartung R, et al. Significance of random bladder biopsies in superficial bladder cancer. Eur Urol. 2003 Jul;44(1):47-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814674
8. Fradet Y, Grossman HB, Gomella L, et al; PC B302/01 Study Group A comparison of hexaminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy and white light cystoscopy for the detection of carcinoma in situ in patients with bladder cancer: a phase III, multicenter study. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):68-73; discussion 73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499291
9. Grossman HB, Gomella L, Fradet Y, et al; PC B302/01 Study Group. A phase III, multicenter comparison of hexaminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy and white light cystoscopy for the detection of superficial papillary lesions in patients with bladder cancer. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):62-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499283
10. Schmidbauer J, Witjes F, Schmeller N, et al. Hexvix PCB301/01 Study Group. Improved detection of urothelial carcinoma in situ with hexaminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):135-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665861
11. Jichlinski P, Guillou L, Karlsen SJ, et al. Hexyl aminolevulinate fluorescence cystoscopy: new diagnostic tool for photodiagnosis of superficial bladder cancer-a multicenter study. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):226-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796694
12. Matzkin H, Soloway MS, Hardeman S. Transitional cell carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1991 Nov;146(5):1207-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1942262
13. Mungan MU, Canda AE, Tuzel E, et al. Risk factors for mucosal prostatic urethral involvement in superficial transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2005 Nov;48(5):760-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16005563
14. Kassouf W, Spiess PE, Brown GA, et al Prostatic urethral biopsy has limited usefulness in counseling patients regarding final urethral margin status during orthotopic neobladder reconstruction. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):164-7; discussion 167.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485384
15. Walsh DL, Chang SS. Dilemmas in the treatment of urothelial cancers of the prostate. Urol Oncol 2009 Jul-Aug;27(4):352-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18439852
16. Lebret T, Herve JM, Barre P, et al. Urethral recurrence of transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Predictive value of preoperative latero-montanal biopsies and urethral frozen sections during prostatocystectomy. Eur Urol 1998;33(2):170-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9519359
17. Brausi M, Collette L, Kurth K, et al. EORTC Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Collaborative Group. Variability in the recurrence rate at first follow-up cystoscopy after TUR in stage Ta T1 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a combined analysis of seven EORTC studies. Eur Urol 2002 May;41(5): 523-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074794
18. Miladi M, Peyromaure M, Zerbib M, et al. The value of a second transurethral resection in evaluating patients with bladder tumours. Eur Urol 2003 Mar;43(3):241-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12600426
19. Jakse G, Algaba F, Malmström PU, et al. A second-look TUR in T1 transitional cell carcinoma: why? Eur Urol 2004 May;45(5):539-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15082193
20. Brauers A, Buettner R, Jakse G. Second resection and prognosis of primary high risk superficial bladder cancer: is cystectomy often too early? J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):808-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176474
21. Schips L, Augustin H, Zigeuner RE, et al. Is repeated transurethral resection justified in patients with newly diagnosed superficial bladder cancer? Urology 2002 Feb;59(2):220-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834389
22. Grimm MO, Steinhoff Ch, Simon X, et al. Effect of routine repeat transurethral resection for superficial bladder cancer: a long-term observational study. J Urol 2003 Aug;170(2 Pt 1):433-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12853793

23. Divrik RT, Yildirim Ü, Zorlu F, et al. The effect of repeat transurethral resection on recurrence and progression rates in patients with T1 tumors of the bladder who received intravesical mitomycin: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1641-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600720
24. Jahnson S, Wiklund F, Duchek M, et al. Results of Second-look resection after primary resection of T1 tumour of the urinary bladder. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2005;39(3):206-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16127800
25. Damiano R, Di Lorenzo G, Cantiello F, et al. Clinicopathologic features of prostate adenocarcinoma incidentally discovered at the time of radical cystectomy: an evidence-based analysis. Eur Urol 2007 Sep;52(3):648-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17600614
26. Gakis G, Schilling D, Bedke J, et al. Incidental prostate cancer at radical cystoprostatectomy: implications for apex-sparing surgery. BJU Int 2010 Feb;105(4):468-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20102366
27. Jewett HJ. Proceedings: Cancer of the bladder. Diagnosis and Staging. Cancer 1973 Nov;32(5): 1072-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4757902
28. Paik ML, Scolieri MJ, Brown SL, et al. Limitations of computerized tomography in staging invasive bladder cancer before radical cystectomy. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1693-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799162
29. Barentsz JO, Jager GJ, Witjes JA, et al. Primary staging of urinary bladder carcinoma: the role of MR imaging and a comparison with CT. Eur Radiol 1996;6(2):129-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8797968
30. Barentsz JO, Jager GJ, van Vierzen PB, et al. Staging urinary bladder cancer after transurethral biopsy: value of fast dynamic contrast-enhanced MR imaging. Radiology 1996 Oct;201(1):185-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8816542
31. Mallampati GK, Siegelman ES. MR imaging of the bladder. Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am 2004 Aug;12(3):545-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15271370
32. Thomsen HS. Nephrogenic systemic fibrosis: history and epidemiology. Radiol Clin North Am 2009 Sep;47(5):827-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19744597
33. Kundra V, Silverman PM. Imaging in oncology from the University of Texas M. D. Anderson Cancer Center. Imaging in the diagnosis, staging, and follow-up of cancer of the urinary bladder. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2003 Apr 180(4):1045-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12646453
34. Kim B, Semelka RC, Ascher SM, et al. Bladder tumor staging: comparison of contrast-enhanced CT, T1- and T2-weighted MR imaging, dynamic gadolinium-enhanced imaging, and late gadolinium-enhanced imaging. Radiology 1994 Oct;193(1):239-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8090898
35. Kim JK, Park SY, Ahn HJ, et al. Bladder cancer: analysis of multi-detector row helical CT enhancement pattern and accuracy in tumor detection and perivesical staging. Radiology 2004 Jun;231(3):725-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15118111
36. Jager GJ, Barentsz JO, Oosterhof GO, et al. Pelvic adenopathy in prostatic and urinary bladder carcinoma: MR imaging with a three-dimensional TI-weighted magnetization-prepared-rapid gradient-echo sequence. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1996 Dec;167(6):1503-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8956585
37. Yang WT, Lam WW, Yu MY, et al. Comparison of dynamic helical CT and dynamic MR imaging in the evaluation of pelvic lymph nodes in cervical carcinoma. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2000 Sep;175(3): 759-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10954463
38. Kim SH, Kim SC, Choi BI, et al. Uterine cervical carcinoma: evaluation of pelvic lymph node metastasis with MR imaging. Radiology 1994 Mar;190(3):807-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8115631
39. Kim SH, Choi BI, Lee HP, et al. Uterine cervical carcinoma: comparison of CT and MR findings. Radiology 1990 Apr;175(1):45-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2315503

40. Oyen RH, Van Poppel HP, Ameye FE, et al. Lymph node staging of localized prostatic carcinoma with CT and CT-guided fine-needle aspiration biopsy: prospective study of 285 patients. Radiology 1994 Feb;190(2):315-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284375
41. Barentsz JO, Engelbrecht MR, Witjes JA, et al. MR imaging of the male pelvis. Eur Radiol 1999;9(9):1722-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10602944
42. Dorfman RE, Alpern MB, Gross BH, et al. Upper abdominal lymph nodes: criteria for normal size determined with CT. Radiology 1991 Aug;180(2):319-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2068292
43. Swinnen G, Maes A, Pottel H, et al. FDG-PET/CT for the Preoperative Lymph Node Staging of Invasive Bladder Cancer. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):641-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19477579
44. Kibel AS, Dehdashti F, Katz MD, et al. Prospective study of [18F]fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography/computed tomography for staging of muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep 10;27(26):4314-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19652070
45. Cowan NC, Turney BW, Taylor NJ, et al. Multidetector computed tomography urography (MDCTU) for diagnosing upper urinary tract urothelial tumour. BJU Int 2007 Jun;99(6):1363-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17428251
46. Van Der Molen AJ, Cowan NC, Mueller-Lisse UG, et al. CT Urography Working Group of the European Society of Urogenital Radiology (ESUR). CT urography: definition, indications and techniques. A guideline for clinical practice. Eur Radiol 2008 Jan;18(1):4-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17973110
47. Cowan NC, Turney BW, Taylor NJ, et al. Multidetector computed tomography urography (MDCTU) for diagnosing upper urinary tract tumour. BJU Int 2007 Jun;99(6):1363-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17428251
48. Albani JM, Ciaschini MW, Streem SB, et al. The role of computerized tomographic urography in the initial evaluation of hematuria. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2):644-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222650
49. Fritz GA, Schoellnast H, Deutschmann HA, et al. Multiphasic multidetectorrow CT (MDCT) in detection and staging of transitional cell carcinomas of the upper urinary tract. Eur Radiol 2006 Jun;16(6):1244-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16404565
50. Gray Sears C, Ward JF, Sears ST, et al. Prospective comparison of computerized tomography and excretory urography in the initial evaluation of asymptomatic microhematuria. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2457-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441939
51. Braendengen M, Winderen M, Fosså SD. Clinical significance of routine pre-cystectomy bone scans in patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Br J Urol 1996 Jan;77(1):36-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8653315
52. Brismar J, Gustafson T. Bone scintigraphy in staging bladder carcinoma. Acta Radiol 1988 Mar-Apr;29(2):251-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2965914
53. Lauenstein TC, Goehde SC, Herborn CU, et al. Whole-body MR imaging: evaluation of patients for metastases. Radiology 2004 Oct;233(1):139-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15317952
54. Schmidt GP, Schoenberg SO, Reiser MF, et al. Whole-body MR imaging of bone marrow. Eur J Radiol 2005 Jul;55(1):33-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15950099

5. TREATMENT FAILURE OF NON-MUSCLE INVASIVE BLADDER CANCER

5.1 High-risk non-muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma

The recurrence and progression rate of NMIBC is strongly associated with tumour grade and invasion into the lamina propria. The progression to T2 tumours varies from 6% to 25% in Ta and from 27% to 48% in T1 tumours of all grades. Inter- and intra-observer varying abilities in grading as well as staging and completeness of TUR are key variables confounding the results of present long-term studies of TUR, with or without intravesical therapy.

The understaging error in TaT1 tumours of 35% to 62% presented in large cystectomy series is due to the presence of recurrent tumours of largely unknown pre-cystectomy therapy and the lack of a second TUR (1-3) (LE: 3). The latter identifies 24% to 49% T2 tumours diagnosed initially as non-muscle-invasive tumours (4,5) (LE: 3). However, in spite of these disadvantages, recent meta-analyses have shown that intravesical therapy with Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) maintenance therapy prevents recurrence (6,7), but not progression. So far, no significant overall- or disease-specific survival advantages have been proven compared to no intravesical therapy (8-10) (LE: 1).

The disease progression rate is low in patients with small tumours (< 3 cm) and without associated CIS. Twenty per cent of patients progress within 5 years, with approximately 90% of patients keeping their intact bladder during follow-up of up to 10 years (11) (LE: 2). However, in a recently published prospective multicentre trial, the progression rate was significantly lower than previously reported, even when the presence of concomitant CIS was considered. This was probably due to the combination of a second resection prior to inclusion in the trial and maintenance treatment as part of the protocol (12) (LE: 1b).

Initial cystectomy can be considered based on tumour multiplicity, size, concomitant *in situ* cancer, and urothelial tumour of the prostatic urethra (13) (GR: C). Although the percentage of patients with primary TaT1 tumours and the indication for cystectomy in TaT1 tumours is not specified in large cystectomy series, the 10-year recurrence-free survival is approximately 80% and similar to TUR and BCG maintenance therapy (1,3,14,15) (LE: 3). In case of recurrent TaT1, mostly associated with CIS, the understaging at time of cystectomy is 34%, but the 10-year survival is not significantly different for patients with pT1 and pT2 tumours (16) (LE: 3). This is in contrast to an earlier report indicating a significant worse outcome for patients with previous TUR(s) (17) (LE: 3).

Undoubtedly, patients with muscle-invasive recurrence are best treated with radical cystectomy. However, the outcome in terms of presence of lymph node metastases and cancer-free survival may be inferior to patients with the same tumour stage, but who receive radical cystectomy at first presentation (18) (LE: 3).

There is uncertainty about the treatment of patients who develop tumour recurrence in spite of BCG therapy because of different BCG therapy schedules and the absence of a uniform definition of BCG failure. It has been indicated that the recurrence (persistence) of tumour at 9 months in spite of BCG therapy is associated with a 30% chance of invasive tumours and death due to metastatic disease (19) (LE: 3). Solsona, et al. demonstrated that 80% of patients who had persistent disease at 3 months progressed to muscle invasive disease (20) (LE: 3). In addition, adequate tissue sampling from the prostatic urethra is an essential factor in considering the outcome of conservative treatment, since urethral tumours are associated with a significant decrease in tumour-free survival (21) (LE: 3). However, with careful selection and surveillance a durable complete response can be achieved also in patients diagnosed with superficial bladder transitional cell carcinoma involving the prostatic urethra (22). Based on these findings, cystectomy should be performed in appropriate patients at least at 9 months, because additional BCG therapy yields a response rate of only 27% to 51% and of unknown duration (23,24) (GR: C). Salvage chemotherapy is associated with limited response and should not be offered (25,26) (LE: 3).

Patients with disease recurring within 2 years of initial TUR plus BCG therapy have a better outcome than patients who already have muscle-invasive disease indicating that cystectomy should be performed at first recurrence, even in case of non-muscle-invasive disease (18) (LE: 3; GR: C).

5.2 Carcinoma *in situ*

Primary CIS confined to the bladder is treated with intravesical BCG, yielding a complete response rate of 83-93% (27,28) (LE: 2). CIS associated with TaT1 is treated according to the overt tumour.

Approximately 50% of patients develop recurrent disease with muscle invasion or extravesical tumour (27,29) (LE: 2). Between 11% and 21% die of the disease within 5-7 years after an initial complete response (27,30) (LE: 2). Non-responders or incomplete responders have a significant risk of tumour progression of 33% to 67% (20,31) (LE: 2).

The current guidelines on non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer define BCG failure as:

a. Whenever muscle-invasive tumour is detected during follow-up.
b. If high-grade, non-muscle-invasive tumour is present at both 3 and 6 months.

In patients with tumour present at 3 months, an additional BCG course can achieve a complete response in > 50% of cases, both in patients with papillary tumours and CIS but with increasing risk of progression.

5.3 Recommendations for treatment failure of non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer

Recommendations	GR
In all T1 tumours at high risk of progression (i.e. high grade, multifocality, carcinoma *in situ*, and tumour size, as outlined in the EAU guidelines for Non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer [32]), immediate radical cystectomy is an option.	B
In all T1 patients failing intravesical therapy, cystectomy should be performed.	B

5.4 References

1. Hautmann RE, Gschwend JE, de Petriconi RC, et al. Cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: results of a surgery only series in the neobladder era. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):486-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813874
2. Madersbacher S, Hochreiter W, Burkhard F, et al. Radical cystectomy for bladder cancer today-a homogeneous series without neoadjuvant therapy. J Clin Oncol 2003 Feb;21(4):690-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586807
3. Stein JP, Lieskovsky G, Cote R, et al. Radical cystectomy in the treatment of invasive bladder cancer: long-term results in 1,054 patients. J Clin Oncol 2001 Feb;19(3):666-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157016
4. Brauers A, Buettner R, Jakse G. Second resection and prognosis of primary high risk superficial bladder cancer: is cystectomy often too early? J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):808-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176474
5. Herr WH. The value of second transurethral resection in evaluating patients with bladder tumors. J Urol 1999 Jul;162(1):74-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10379743
6. Shelley MD, Court JB, Kynaston H, et al. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin versus mitomycin C for Ta and T1 bladder cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2003;(3):CD003231. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12917955
7. Sylvester RJ, Brausi MA, Kirkels WJ, et al. EORTC Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Group. Long-term efficacy results of EORTC Genito-Urinary Group randomized phase 3 study 30911 comparing intravesical instillations of epirubicin, Bacillus Calmette-Guérin, and Bacillus Calmette-Guérin plus isoniazid in patients with intermediate- and high-risk stage Ta T1 urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Eur Urol 2010 May;57(5):766-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20034729
8. Sylvester RJ, van der Meijden AP, Lamm DL. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin reduces the risk of progression in patients with superficial bladder cancer: a meta-analysis of the published results of randomized clinical trials. J Urol 2002 Nov;168(5):1964-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12394686
9. Böhle A, Bock PR. Intravesical bacille Calmette-Guérin versus mitomycin C in superficial bladder cancer: formal meta-analysis of comparative studies on tumour progression. Urology 2004 Apr;63(4):682-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072879
10. Malmström PU, Sylvester RJ, Crawford DE, et al. An individual patient data meta-analysis of the longterm outcome of randomised studies comparing intravesical mitomycin C versus bacillus Calmette- Guérin for non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Aug;56(2):247-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19409692
11. Serretta V, Pavone C, Ingargiola GB, et al. TUR and adjuvant intravesical chemotherapy in T1G3 bladder tumors: recurrence, progression and survival in 137 selected patients followed up to 20 years. Eur Urol 2004 Jun;45(6):730-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15149744

12. Duchek M, Johansson R, Jahnson S, et al. Members of the Urothelial Cancer Group of the Nordic Association of Urology. Bacillus Calmette-Guérin is superior to a combination of epirubicin and interferon-alpha2b in the intravesical treatment of patients with stage T1 urinary bladder cancer. A prospective, randomized, Nordic study. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):25-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19819617
13. Oosterlinck W, Lobel B, Jakse G, et al. European Association of Urology (EAU) Working Group on Oncological Urology. Guidelines on bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2002;41(2):105-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074395
14. Pansadoro V, Emiliozzi P, de Paula F, et al. Long-term follow-up of G3T1 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder treated with intravesical bacille Calmette-Guérin: 18-year experience. Urology 2002 Feb;59(2):227-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834391
15. Margel D, Tal R, Golan S, et al. Long-term follow-up of patients with Stage T1 high-grade transitional cell carcinoma managed by Bacille Calmette-Guérin immunotherapy. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1):78-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17270621
16. Freeman JA, Esrig D, Stein JP, et al. Radical cystectomy for high risk patients with superficial bladder cancer in the era of orthotopic urinary reconstruction. Cancer 1995 Sep;76(5):833-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625187
17. Stöckle M, Alken P, Engelmann U, et al. Radical cystectomy-often too late? Eur Urol 1987;13(6):361-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3428318
18. Herr HW, Sogani PC. Does early cystectomy improve the survival of patients with high risk superficial bladder tumors? J Urol 2001 Oct;166(4):1296-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547061
19. Merz VW, Marth D, Kraft R, et al. Analysis of early failures after intravesical instillation therapy with bacille Calmette-Guerin for carcinoma in situ of the bladder. Br J Urol 1995 Feb;75(2):180-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7850322
20. Solsona E, Iborra I, Rubio J, et al. The optimum timing of radical cystectomy for patients with recurrent high-risk superficial bladder tumour. BJU Int 2004 Dec;94(9):1258-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15610101
21. Huguet J, Crego M, Sabaté S, et al. Cystectomy in patients with high risk superficial bladder tumors who fail intravesical BCG therapy: pre-cystectomy prostate involvement as a prognostic factor. Eur Urol 2005 Jul;48(1):53-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15967252
22. Taylor JH, Davis J, Schellhammer P. Long-term follow-up of intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guérin treatment for superficial transitional-cell carcinoma of the bladder involving the prostatic urethra. Clin Genitourin Cancer 2007 Sep;5(6):386-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17956711
23. Brake M, Loertzer H, Horsch R, et al. Recurrence and progression of stage T1, grade 3 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder following intravesical immunotherapy with bacillus Calmette-Guerin. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1697-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799163
24. Pansadoro V, Emiliozzi P, Defidio L, et al. Bacillus Calmette-Guerin in the treatment of stage T1 grade 3 transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: Long-term results. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):2054-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500457
25. Malmström PU, Wijkström H, Lundholm C, et al. 5-year followup of a randomized prospective study comparing mitomycin C and bacillus Calmette-Guerin in patients with superficial bladder carcinoma. Swedish-Norwegian Bladder Cancer Study Group. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1124-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081852
26. Steinberg G, Bahnson R, Brosman S, et al. Efficacy and safety of valrubicin for the treatment of Bacillus Calmette-Guerin refractory carcinoma in situ of the bladder. The Valrubicin Study Group. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):761-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687972
27. Jakse G, Hall R, Bono A, et al. Intravesical BCG in patients with carcinoma in situ of the urinary bladder: long-term results of EORTC GU Group phase II protocol 30861. Eur Urol 2001 Aug;40(2): 144-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11528191
28. Losa A, Hurle R, Lembo A. Low dose bacillus Calmette-Guerin for carcinoma in situ of the bladder: long-term results. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):68-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604316

29. Lamm DL, Blumenstein BA, Crissman JD, et al. Maintenance bacillus Calmette-Guerin immunotherapy for recurrent TA, T1 and carcinoma in situ transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a randomized Southwest Oncology Group Study. J Urol 2000 Apr;163(4):1124-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737480
30. de Reijke TM, Kurth KH, Sylvester RJ, et al. European Organization for the Research and Treatment of Cancer-Genito-Urinary Group. Bacillus Calmette-Guerin versus epirubicin for primary, secondary or concurrent carcinoma in situ of the bladder: results of a European Organization for the Research and Treatment of Cancer--Genito- Urinary Group Phase III Trial (30906). J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2):405-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643181
31. Hudson MA, Herr WH. Carcinoma in situ of the bladder. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 1):564-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861485
32. Babjuk M, Oosterlinck W, Sylvester R, et al. EAU Guidelines on TaT1 (Non-muscle-invasive Bladder Cancer). In: EAU Guidelines. Edition presented at the 24th EAU Congress, Stockholm, Sweden, 2009. ISBN-978-90-79754-09-0. http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/

6. NEOADJUVANT CHEMOTHERAPY

The standard treatment for patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer is radical cystectomy. However, this 'gold standard' only provides 5-year survival in about 50% of patients (1-5). In order to improve these unsatisfactory results, the use of peri-operative chemotherapy has been explored since the 1980s. There are many advantages of neoadjuvant chemotherapy, i.e. administering chemotherapy to patients with operable urothelial carcinoma of the urinary bladder before the planned definitive surgery (or radiation), including:

- Chemotherapy is delivered at the earliest time-point, when the burden of micrometastatic disease is expected to be low;
- Potential reflection of in vivo chemosensitivity;
- Tolerability of chemotherapy is expected to be better before cystectomy rather than after;
- Hypothetically patients with micrometastatic disease might respond to neoadjuvant therapy and reveal favourable pathological status determined mainly by negative lymph node status and negative surgical margins.

The disadvantages of neoadjuvant chemotherapy include:

- For clinical staging with CT or MR imaging, over- and under-staging is likely to happen with a staging accuracy of only 70% (6,7). Overtreatment is the possible negative consequence;
- Delayed cystectomy might compromise the outcome in patients not sensitive to chemotherapy (8,9).

The side-effects of neoadjuvant chemotherapy affecting outcome of surgical morbidity need to be considered. In one randomised trial (10), the same distribution of post-operative complications grade 3-4 was seen in both trial arms (10). However, generally, pre-operative anaemia and neuropathy was more common in the chemotherapy group. In the combined Nordic trials NCS1+NCS2, (n = 620), neoadjuvant chemotherapy did not have any major adverse effect on the percentage of performable cystectomies. In the intention-to-treat analysis, the cystectomy-frequency was 86% in the experimental arm and 87% in the control arm. Still, in crude figures, 218 of 306 experimental and cystectomised patients received all 3 chemotherapy cycles (71%). Further 23 patients 1 or 2 cycles and 3 patients with greater than 25% dose reduction of cisplatin, translating into 78% receiving any neoadjuvant treatment (11).

Several randomised phase III trials investigated the question of whether or not neoadjuvant chemotherapy improved survival, with conflicting results (12-28). Most patients were ≤ 70 years old, had a performance status (PS) of 0-1 and a creatinine clearance of > 50-60 mL/minute, due to the kind of chemotherapy (single-agent cisplatin or cisplatin combination chemotherapy) scheduled.

Differences in trial design were mainly the type of chemotherapy (i.e. single-agent cisplatin or combination chemotherapy) and the number of cycles planned. From the statistical point of view, the studies differed in size, patient characteristics (e.g. clinical T-stages included), and the kind of definitive treatment allowed (cystectomy or radiotherapy or both).

Because of the lack of clarity, even though a considerable number of randomised trials had been performed, three meta-analyses were undertaken to answer the very important question of whether or not neoadjuvant chemotherapy prolongs survival (29-31).

- The first meta-analysis, published in 2003 (29), included 10 randomised trials (except for results of the INT 0080-study [20]) and showed a 13% reduction in the risk of death, equivalent to 5% absolute benefit at 5 years (increased overall survival from 45% to 50%).
- The second meta-analysis, published in 2004 (30), included 11 of 16 randomised trials with overall survival data of 2,605 patients. A statistically significant decrease in the risk of death (10%) was seen, corresponding to an absolute improvement in overall survival of 5% (from 50% to 55%).
- In the most recent meta-analysis, published in 2005 (32), with updated independent patient data of 11 randomised trials (3,005 patients), a statistically significant survival benefit in favour of neoadjuvant chemotherapy was also seen. The results of this analysis confirmed the previously published data and showed 5% absolute improvement in survival at 5 years. The Nordic combined trial showed an absolute benefit of 8% in survival at 5 years and 11% in the clinical T3 subgroup, translating into nine patients needed to treat (11). Of note, only cisplatin combination chemotherapy with at least one additional chemotherapeutic agent resulted in a meaningful benefit (29,31); the regimens tested were MVA(E)C, CMV, CM, cisplatin/adriamycin, cisplatin/5-fluorouracil (5-FU), and CarboMV. To date, it is unknown if more modern chemotherapy regimens are as effective.

The presence of micrometastases is postulated to be lower in smaller tumours (T2) compared to more extensive tumours (T3b-T4b). T4 stage tumours are prone to a higher degree of clinical understaging because macrometastic nodal deposits are detected more often in post-cystectomy specimens of these extensive tumours (32). Further data is in support of neoadjuvant chemotherapy in the subgroup of T2b-T3b tumours (former classification T3), which has been shown to provide a modest but substantial improvement in long-term survival and significant downstaging.

6.1 Conclusions and recommendations for neoadjuvant chemotherapy

Conclusions	LE
Neoadjuvant cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy improves overall survival, irrespective of the type of definitive treatment used.	1a
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy has its limitations regarding patient selection, current development of surgical technique, and current chemotherapy combinations.	

Recommendations	GR
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy should always be cisplatinum based.	A
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy is not recommended in patients with PS $\geq$ 2 and/or impaired renal function.	B

6.2 References

1. Stein JP, Skinner DG. Radical cystectomy for invasive bladder cancer: long-term results of a standard procedure. World J Urol 2006 Aug;24(3):296-304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16518661
2. Stein JP, Lieskovsky G, Cote R, et al. Radical cystectomy in the treatment of invasive bladder cancer: long-term results in 1,054 patients. J Clin Oncol 2001 Sep;19(3):666-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157016
3. Dalbagni G, Genega E, Hashibe M, et al. Cystectomy for bladder cancer: a contemporary series. J Urol 2001 Apr;165(4):1111-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257649
4. Bassi P, Ferrante GD, Piazza N, et al. Prognostic factors of outcome after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: a retrospective study of a homogeneous patient cohort. J Urol 1999 May;161(5): 1494-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210380
5. Ghoneim MA, el-Mekresh MM, el-Baz MA, et al. Radical cystectomy for carcinoma of the bladder: critical evaluation of the results in 1,026 cases. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):393-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224310
6. Sternberg CN, Pansadoro V, Calabrò F, et al. Can patient selection for bladder preservation be based on response to chemotherapy? Cancer 2003 Apr;97(7):1644-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655521

7. Herr HW, Scher HI. Surgery of invasive bladder cancer: is pathologic staging necessary? Semin Oncol 1990 Oct;17(5):590-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2218571
8. Sánchez-Ortiz RF, Huang WC, Mick R, et al. An interval longer than 12 weeks between the diagnosis of muscle invasion and cystectomy is associated with worse outcome in bladder carcinoma. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):110-5; discussion 115.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478115
9. Stein JP. Contemporary concepts of radical cystectomy and the treatment of bladder cancer. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):116-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478116
10. Grossman HB, Natale RB, Tangen CM, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus cystectomy compared with cystectomy alone for locally advanced bladder cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Aug;349(9):859-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12944571
11. Sherif A, Holmberg L, Rintala E, et al. Nordic Urothelial Cancer Group. Neoadjuvant cisplatinum based combination chemotherapy in patients with invasive bladder cancer: a combined analysis of two Nordic studies. Eur Urol 2004 Mar;45(3):297-303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15036674
12. Wallace DM, Raghavan D, Kelly KA, et al. Neo-adjuvant (pre-emptive) cisplatin therapy in invasive transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Br J Urol 1991Jun;67(6):608-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2070206
13. Font A, Saladie JM, Carles J, et al. Improved survival with induction chemotherapy in bladder cancer: preliminary results of a randomized trial. Ann Oncol 1994;5:71, abstr #355.
14. Martínez-Piñeiro JA, Gonzalez Martin M, Arocena F, et al. Neoadjuvant cisplatin chemotherapy before radical cystectomy in invasive transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a prospective randomized phase III study. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 2):964-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853584
15. Rintala E, Hannisdahl E, Fosså SD, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in bladder cancer: a randomized study. Nordic Cystectomy Trial I. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(3):355-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8290916
16. Malmström PU, Rintala E, Wahlqvist R, et al. Five-year followup of a prospective trial of radical cystectomy and neoadjuvant chemotherapy: Nordic Cystectomy Trial I. The Nordic Cooperative Bladder Cancer Study Group. J Urol 1996 Jun;155(6):1903-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8618283
17. [No authors listed] Neoadjuvant cisplatin, methotrexate, and vinblastine chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer: a randomised controlled trial. International collaboration of trialists. Lancet 1999 Aug;354(9178):533-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10470696
18. Hall R. Updated results of a randomised controlled trial of neoadjuvant cisplatin (C), methotrexate (m) and vinblastin (V) chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2002;21:178A, abstr 710.
19. Bassi P PG, Cosciani S, Lembo A, et al . Neoadjuvant M-VAC chemotherapy of invasive bladder cancer: The G.U.O.N.E. multicenter phase III trial. Eur Urol 1998 (Suppl);33:142,abstr 567.
20. Sherif A, Rintala E, Mestad O, et al. Nordic Urothelial Cancer Group. Neoadjuvant cisplatin-methotrexate chemotherapy for invasive bladder cancer-Nordic cystectomy trial 2. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2002;36(6):419-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12623505
21. Sengeløv L, von der Maase H, Lundbeck F, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy with cisplatin and methotrexate in patients with muscle-invasive bladder tumours. Acta Oncol 2002;41(5):447-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12442921
22. Grossman HB, Natale RB, Tangen CM, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus cystectomy compared with cystectomy alone for locally advanced bladder cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Aug;349(9):859-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12944571
23. Italian Bladder Cancer Study Group (GISTV). Neoadjuvant treatment for locally advanced bladder cancer: a randomized prospective clinical trial. J Chemother 1996;8(suppl 4):345-6.
24. Orsatti M, Curotto A, Canobbio L, et al. Alternating chemo-radiotherapy in bladder cancer: a conservative approach. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1995 Aug;33(1):173-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7642415

25. Shipley WU, Winter KA, Kaufman DS, et al. Phase III trial of neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with invasive bladder cancer treated with selective bladder preservation by combined radiation therapy and chemotherapy: initial results of Radiation Therapy Oncology Group 89-03. J Clin Oncol 1998 Nov;16(11):3576-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817278
26. Marcuello E TJ, Villavicencio H, Algaba F, et al. A phase III trial of neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NCT) in patients (PTS) with invasive bladder cancer (IBC). Preliminary results: NCT improves pathological complete response rate. Eur J Cancer 1995;31A:S241, abstr 1155.
27. Cannobio L CA, Boccardo F, Venturini M, et al. A randomized study between neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (CT-RT) before radical cystectomy and cystectomy alone in bladder cancer. A 6 year follow-up. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 1995;14:245, abstr 654.
28. Abol-Enein H E-MM, El Baz M, Ghoneim MA. Neo-adjuvant chemotherapy in the treatment of invasive transitional bladder cancer. A controlled prospective randomized study. Br J Urol 1997;79 (Suppl 4):174.
29. Advanced Bladder Cancer Meta-analysis Collaboration. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in invasive bladder cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet 2003 Jun;361(9373):1927-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12801735
30. Winquist E, Kirchner TS, Segal R, et al. Genitourinary Cancer Disease Site Group, Cancer Care Ontario Program in Evidence-based Care Practice Guidelines Initiative. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Urol 2004 Feb;171(2 Pt 1):561-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713760
31. Advanced Bladder Cancer (ABC) Meta-analysis Collaboration. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in invasive bladder cancer: update of a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual patient data advanced bladder cancer (ABC) meta-analysis collaboration. Eur Urol 2005 Aug;48(2):202-205; discussion 205-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939524
32. Sherif A HL, Rintala E, Mestad O, et al. Nordic Urothelial Cancer Group. Downstaging and pathoanatomical outcome following neoadjuvant cisplatinum based combination chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma: An analysis of selected patients from two combined randomized prospective Nordic trials. Urology 2006;68(Suppl 1):137, MP-1307.

7. RADICAL SURGERY AND URINARY DIVERSION

7.1 Removal of the tumour-bearing bladder

*7.1.1 **Background***

Radical cystectomy is the standard treatment for localised muscle-invasive bladder cancer in most countries of the Western Hemisphere (1,2). New interest in quality-of-life issues has increased the trend toward bladder preservation treatment modalities, like radio- and/or chemotherapy (*see* Chapters 9 and 10). Performance status and age influence the choice of primary therapy, as well as type of urinary diversion with cystectomy being reserved for younger patients without concomitant disease and better performance status. The value of assessing overall health before recommending and proceeding with surgery was emphasised in a recent multivariate analysis, which demonstrated an association between co-morbid disease and adverse pathological and survival outcome following radical cystectomy (3).

There is still controversy about age, radical cystectomy and the type of urinary diversion. Cystectomy is associated with the greatest risk reduction in disease-related and non-disease related death in patients older than 80 years (3). The largest retrospective single-institution study on cystectomy to date demonstrated that patients above 80 years did have an increased postoperative morbidity but not an increased mortality. Some patients even successfully underwent a neobladder procedure in this group, but the majority of patients were treated with an ileal conduit diversion (4).

*7.1.2 **Timing and delay of cystectomy***

In a retrospective series of 153 patients with a clear indication for radical surgery of locally advanced bladder cancer, a delay of treatment beyond 90 days of primary diagnosis caused a significant increase in extravesical disease (81 vs 52%) (5).

The delay of cystectomy not only affects the outcome but also the type of urinary diversion. In organ-confined urothelial cancer of the bladder the average time from the primary diagnosis to cystectomy was 12.2

months in neobladder and 19.1 months in ileal conduit patients. It was even more striking for those patients who had an organ-confined invasive cancer diagnosed; in neobladder patients the average time to surgery was 3.1 and in ileal conduit patients 15.1 months (6). Similar results have been observed in a series of 247 patients where superior recurrence-free survival and overall survival was significantly better in those treated within the 90 day period compared to others who were treated after a longer period (7).

7.1.3 ***Indications***

Traditionally radical cystectomy is recommended for patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer T2-T4a, N0-Nx, M0 (1). Other indications include high-risk and recurrent superficial tumours, BCG-resistant Tis, T1G3 (*see* Chapter 5), as well as extensive papillary disease that cannot be controlled with TUR and intravesical therapy alone.

Salvage cystectomy is indicated for non-responders to conservative therapy, recurrences after bladder sparing treatments, non-urothelial carcinomas (these tumours respond poorly to chemo- and radiotherapy) and as a purely palliative intervention for e.g. fistula formation, pain or recurrent macrohaematuria (*see* Section 8.1 Palliative cystectomy).

7.1.4 ***Technique and extent***

Radical cystectomy includes the removal of the bladder and adjacent organs, that is prostate and seminal vesicles in men, and uterus and adnexa in women (8). The inclusion of the entire prostate in male patients, and the extent of urethrectomy and vaginal resection in female patients, however, has recently been questioned (9,10).

Various techniques of partial prostate-sparing cystoprostatectomy in male patients with localized tumours have been proposed and results of series with a longer follow-up have been published (11-13). A randomised study comparing patients with and without remnant portions of the prostate is lacking and will be difficult to perform. Autopsy studies as well as studies looking at the unsuspected incidence of prostate cancer in cystoprostatectomy specimens suggest that in approximately 23-54% of patients a prostate cancer is found in the cystoprostatectomy specimen. Up to twenty-nine percent of these cancers may be clinically significant, locally recurrent or even metastatic in patients with prostatic tissue preserving radical cystectomy (14-16).

Furthermore urothelial cancer in the prostate was detected in 32 and 33% (69/240 cases and 77/235 cases, resp.) of patients undergoing radical cystoprostatectomy (15,17). In another study 50/121 of the cystoprostatectomy specimens (41%) removed for urothelial cancer had unsuspected prostate cancer. Twenty-four of these 50 tumours (48%) were clinically significant. In the same study 58/121 patients (48%) had urothelial carcinoma in the prostate of which 19 (33%) had apical involvement (18). Overall in the above mentioned series only 26 to 33% of the patients undergoing cystoprostatectomy for bladder cancer had neither prostate cancer nor prostatic urothelial cancer in the specimen.

However, by individualising the indication to spare seminal vesicles and the prostatic capsule in a group of 31 patients the oncological risk was small with a high probability of preserving potency (19).

Radical cystectomy also includes the dissection of regional lymph nodes. There is substantial data on the extent of lymphadenectomy. However, controversies in evaluating the clinical significant of lymphadenectomy relates to two main aspects of nodal dissection; postulated therapeutic procedure and/or staging instrument.

More recently, it has been attempted to categorize the extent of lymphadenectomy. A standard lymphadenectomy in bladder cancer patients involves the removal of all nodal tissue cranially up to, and including, the common iliac bifurcation with the ureter being the medial border and including the internal iliac, presacral, obturator fossa and external iliac nodes (20). An extended lymphadenectomy includes all lymph nodes in the region of the aortic bifurcation and common iliac vessels medially to the crossing ureters. The lateral boarders are the genitofemoral nerves, caudally the circumflex iliac vein, the ligamentum lacunare and the lymph node of Cloquet in addition to the area described in the standard lymphadenectomy (21-23).

A recent study comparing the results of a high volume centre performing mainly a standard lymphadenectomy vs. a high volume centre performing an extended pelvic lymph node dissection in patients undergoing radical cystectomy revealed that there was no difference with regards to overall survival and recurrence (24) although the mean number of lymph nodes was 22 in one institution and 38 in the other institution. In another study looking at the SEER data did show a survival benefit in patients with the removal of more than 10 lymph nodes in patients with lymph node metastasis (25). It seems clear, however, that a more limited field of lymph node dissection in the pelvis than the standard lymphadenectomy as outlined above is associated with suboptimal staging and also with a poorer outcome for patients both with node positive and node negative disease (26,27).

There are several localisation studies with regards to lymphadenectomy (28-33) which demonstrated both

retrospectively and prospectively that metastatic lymph nodes in bladder cancer patients are not found outside the pelvis if the pelvic lymph nodes are free of tumour.

An accurate anatomic assignment of removed lymph nodes is sometimes difficult and varies with different surgeons.

In the only autopsy investigation yet performed, it was shown that in 215 patients with nodal dissemination, the frequency of metastasis was 92% in regional (perivesical or pelvic), 72% in retroperitoneal, and 35% in abdominal lymph nodes. There was also a significant correlation between nodal metastases and concomitant distant metastases ($p < 0.0001$). Approximately 47% of the patients had both nodal metastases and distant dissemination and only 12% of the patients had nodal dissemination as sole metastatic manifestation (34). It has been suggested that progression free survival as well as overall survival might be correlated with the amount of lymph nodes removed during surgery. Removal of more than 10-15 lymph nodes has been postulated to be both sufficient for the evaluation of the lymph node status as well as being beneficial for overall survival in retrospective studies (25,33,35). No evidence exists of a minimum number of lymph nodes on the contrary to other cancers. Nevertheless the probability of survival increases with the number of dissected lymph nodes (36).

Inter-individual differences in the number of pelvic and retroperitoneal lymph nodes and difficulties in processing of the removed tissue by pathologists were not taken into account in these studies (37-39).

A distal ureteral segment (length not specified) should be resected and in case of bladder CIS a frozen section for evaluation of the surgical margins should be performed (8,40). Urethrectomy is recommended if there are positive margins at the level of urethral dissection, positive margins anywhere on the bladder specimen (in both sexes), if the primary tumour is located at the bladder neck or in the urethra (in women), or if tumour extensively infiltrates the prostate (1,41,42).

*7.1.5 **Laparoscopic/robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy (RALC)***

Laparoscopic cystectomy and RALC have been shown to be feasible both in male and female patients (43,44). Both cystectomy and lymphadenectomy have been done in small series, according to the same principles used in cystectomy and anterior exenteration for several decades now (45). However, these techniques are still experimental because of the limited number of cases reported, an absence of long-term oncological and functional outcome data, and a possible selection bias (46,47).

Laparoscopic intracorporeal construction of urinary diversion with or without robotic assistance has been tested in small series only (46,48,49). It is a challenging and lengthy procedure with the current technical equipment available and must therefore be regarded as experimental. Laparoscopic cystectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy (with or without robotic assistance), with extracorporeal construction of urinary diversion, is an option for surgical treatment (LE: 3).

7.2 Urinary diversion after radical cystectomy

From an anatomical standpoint three alternatives are presently used after cystectomy:

- Abdominal diversion such as uretherocutaneostomy, ileal or colonic conduit, and various forms of a continent pouch.
- Urethral diversion which includes various forms of gastrointestinal pouches attached to the urethra as a continent, orthotopic urinary diversion (neobladder, orthotopic bladder substitution).
- Rectosigmoid diversions, such as uretero(ileo-)rectostomy.

Different types of segments of the intestinal tract have been used to reconstruct the urinary tract, including the stomach, ileum, colon, and the appendix (50). Several studies have compared certain aspects of health-related quality of life, such as sexual function, urinary continence and body image, in patient cohorts with different types of urinary diversion. However, further research is needed on pre-operative tumour stage and functional situation, socio-economic status, time interval to primary surgery, etc.

*7.2.1 **Preparations for surgery***

For cystectomy, general preparations are necessary as for any other major pelvic and abdominal surgery. If the urinary diversion is constructed from gastrointestinal segments, the length or size of the respective segments and their pathophysiology when storing urine must be considered (51). Despite the necessary interruption and re-anastomosis of bowel, a formal bowel preparation may not be necessary (52). Furthermore, bowel recovery time has been reduced by the use of early mobilisation, early oralisation and gastrointestinal stimulation with metoclopramide and chewing gum (53).

Patients undergoing continent urinary diversion have to be motivated both to learn about their diversion and

to be manually skilful in manipulating their diversion. Contra-indications to more complex forms of urinary diversion include:

- Debilitating neurological and psychiatric illnesses.
- Limited life expectancy.
- Impaired liver or renal function.
- Transitional cell carcinoma of the urethral margin or other surgical margins.

Relative contraindications specific for an orthotopic neobladder are high-dose preoperative radiation therapy, complex urethral stricture disease, and severe urethral sphincter-related incontinence (54-56).

7.2.2 ***Ureterocutaneostomy***

Ureteral diversion to the abdominal wall is the simplest form of cutaneous diversion. It is considered as a safe procedure. It is therefore preferred in older, or otherwise compromised, patients, who need a supravesical diversion (57,58). However, others have demonstrated that, in carefully selected elderly patients, all other forms of wet and dry urinary diversions, including orthotopic bladder substitutions, are possible (4).

Technically either one ureter to which the other shorter one is attached end-to-side is connected to the skin (transuretero-ureterocutaneostomy) or both ureters are directly anastomosed to the skin. Due to the smaller diameter of the ureters, stoma stenosis has been observed more often than in intestinal stomas (57).

In a recent retrospective comparison with short or median follow-up of 16 months the diversion-related complication rate was considerably lower for ureterocutaneostomy compared to an ileal or colon conduit (59). Despite the limited comparative data available it has to be taken into consideration however, that older data and clinical experience suggest stricturing on skin level and ascending urinary tract infection are more frequent complications as compared to ileal conduit. In a retrospective study comparing various forms of intestinal diversion, ileal conduits had fewer late complications than continent abdominal pouches or orthotopic neobladders (60).

7.2.3 ***Ileal conduit***

The ileal conduit is still an established option with well-known/predictable results. However, up to 48% of the patients develop early complications including urinary tract infections, pyelonephritis, uretero-ileal leakage and stenosis (60). The main complications in long-term follow-up studies are stomal complications in up to 24% of cases and functional and/or morphological changes of the upper urinary tract in up to 30% (61-63). An increase in complications was seen with increased follow-up in the Berne series of 131 patients followed for a minimum of 5 years (median follow-up 98 months) (61): the rate of complications increased from 45% at 5 years to 94% in those surviving longer than 15 years. In the latter group, 50% and 38% of the patients developed upper urinary tract changes and urolithiasis, respectively.

7.2.4 ***Continent cutaneous urinary diversion***

A low-pressure detubularised ileal reservoir can be used as a continent cutaneous urinary diversion for selfcatheterisation; gastric, ileocecal and sigma pouches have also been described (64-66). Different antireflux techniques can be used (8). Most patients have a well-functioning reservoir with daytime and night time continence approaching 93% (67). A stomal stenosis in 23.5% of patients with appendix stoma and 15% with an efferent intussuscepted ileal nipple was observed in a study reviewing retrospectively the results of more than 800 patients. Stone formation in the pouch occurred in 10% of patients (67-69). In a small series of previously irradiated female patients incontinence and stomal stenosis was 18% (8/44 patients) (70).

7.2.5 ***Ureterocolonic diversion***

The oldest and most common form was primarily a refluxive and later an antirefluxive connection of ureters into the intact rectosigmoideum (uretero[recto]sigmoidostomy) (71,72). Most of the indications for this procedure have become obsolete due to a high incidence of upper urinary tract infections and the long-term risk of developing colon cancer (73,74). Bowel frequency and urge incontinence were additional side-effects of this type of urinary diversion. However, it may be possible to circumvent the above-mentioned problems by interposing a segment of ileum between ureters and rectum or sigmoid in order to augment capacity and to avoid a direct interaction between urothelium, colonic mucosa, together with faeces and urine (75).

7.2.6 ***Orthotopic neobladder***

An orthotopic bladder substitution to the urethra is now commonly used both in men and women. Contemporary reports document the safety and long-term reliability of this procedure. In several large centres, this has become the diversion of choice for most patients undergoing cystectomy (1,56,76). In elderly patients

(> 80 years), however, it is very rarely performed, even in high-volume expert centres (77,78).

The terminal ileum is the gastrointestinal segment most often used for bladder substitution and there is less experience with ascending colon, including caecum, and the sigmoid (1). The emptying of the reservoir anastomosed to the urethra requires abdominal straining, intestinal peristalsis and sphincter relaxation. Early and late morbidity in up to 22% of the patients is reported (79,80). Long-term complications include diurnal (8-10%) and nocturnal incontinence (20-30%), ureterointestinal stenosis (3-18%), urinary retention (4-12%) both in males and female patients, metabolic disorders and vitamin B12 deficiency in series with 1,054 and more than 1,300 patients (56,81). In a recent study, which compared cancer control and patterns of disease recurrence in neobladder and conduit patients, no cancer-specific survival difference could be identified between the two groups when adjusting for pathological stage (82). Urethral recurrence in neobladder patients seems rare (1.5-7% for both male and female patients) (56,83). These results indicate that the choice of a neobladder both in male and female patients does not compromise the oncological outcome of cystectomy. It remains debatable whether a neobladder is better for quality of life compared to a non-continent urinary diversion (84-86).

Various forms of upper tract reflux protection, including a simple isoperistaltic tunnel, an ileal intussusception, a tapered ileal prolongation implanted subserosally, and a direct (sub)mucosal or subserosal ureteral implantation, have been described (69,80). According to the reported long-term results, the upper urinary tract is protected sufficiently by either method.

In conclusion, standard radical cystectomy in male patients with bladder neoplasms includes removal of the entire bladder, prostate, seminal vesicles, distal ureters (length of the segment undefined), and corresponding lymph nodes (extent undefined) (LE: 2b). Currently, it is not possible to recommend a particular type of urinary diversion. However, most institutions will prefer ileal orthotopic neobladders and ileal conduits based on clinical experience (9,87). In selected patients, ureterocutaneostomy is surgically the least-burdensome type of diversion (LE: 3). Recommendations related to radical cystectomy and urinary diversions are listed in section 7.6.2.

7.3 Morbidity and mortality

In a recent comprehensive long-term study (n = 1054), peri-operative mortality was reported in 3% of cases, and early complications, defined as any complication within 3 months of surgery, in 28% (76,81). Late morbidity is usually due to the type of urinary diversion (see above). Early morbidity associated with radical cystectomy for NMIBC (at high risk for disease progression) is similar and not less than that associated with muscle-invasive tumours (88). In general, a lower morbidity and mortality has been observed by surgeons and by hospitals with a higher case load and therefore more experience (89).

7.4 Survival

Research findings have demonstrated good survival outcomes:

- According to a multi-institutional database of 888 consecutive patients undergoing cystectomy and lymphadenectomy for bladder cancer, the outcome at 5 years was 58% for a mean recurrence-free survival and 66% for bladder cancer-specific survival (90).
- The recurrence-free and overall survival in a large single centre study of 1,054 male and female patients was 68% and 66% at 5 years and 60% and 43%, at 10 years, respectively (2).
- In node-positive patients, 10-year disease-specific and overall survival rates in another study have been reported to be 27.7% and 20.9%, respectively (91). In this cohort, 10-year disease-specific and overall survival rates were 72.9% versus 49.1% for organ-confined disease (defined as ≤ pT3a), and 33.3% versus 22.8% for non-organ-confined disease (91).
- In another study, 5-year recurrence-free survival was 76% in patients with pT1 tumours, 74% for pT2, 52% in pT3, and 36% in pT4 tumours (92). Tumour stage and nodal involvement are the only independent predictors of survival (93).

7.5 Conclusions on urinary diversion after radical cystectomy

Conclusions	LE
For muscle-invasive bladder cancer radical cystectomy is the curative treatment of choice.	3
A higher case load reduces morbidity and mortality of cystectomy.	3
Radical cystectomy includes removal of regional lymph nodes, the anatomical extent of which has not been sufficiently defined.	3
Radical cystectomy in both sexes must not include the removal of the entire urethra in all cases, which may then serve as outlet for an orthotopic bladder substitution.	3
Terminal ileum and colon are the intestinal segments of choice for urinary diversion.	3
The type of urinary diversion does not affect oncological outcome.	3
Laparoscopic and robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy is feasible but still investigational.	3
In patients with invasive bladder cancer older than 80 years cystectomy is an option.	3
Co-morbidity, age, previous treatment for bladder cancer or other pelvic diseases, surgeon and hospital volume of cystectomy, and type of urinary diversion influence surgical outcome.	2
Surgical complications of cystectomy and urinary diversion should be reported in a uniform grading system. Currently, the best-adapted, graded system for cystectomy is the Clavien grading system.	2

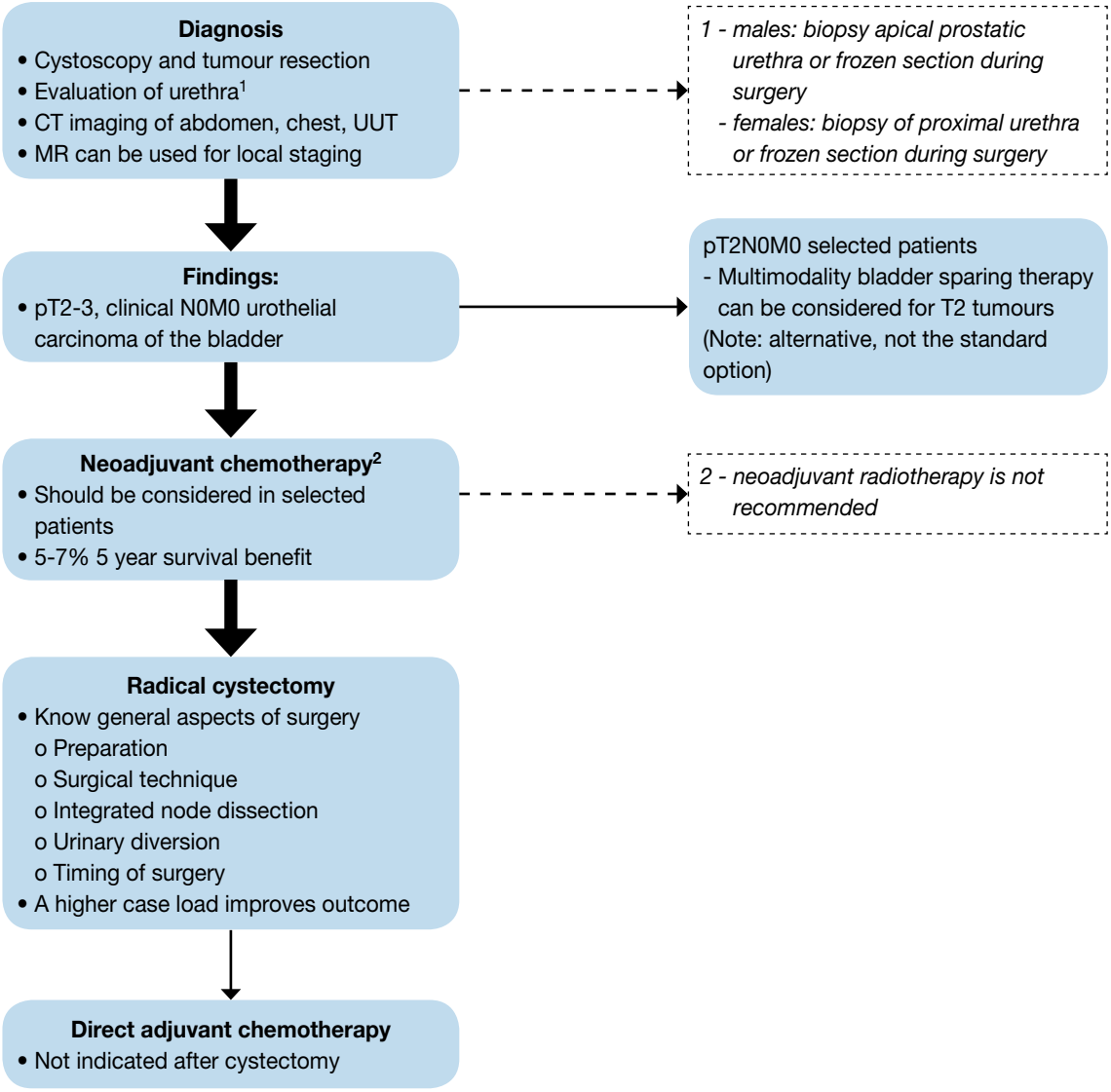
7.6 Recommendations for radical cystectomy and urinary diversion

*7.6.1 **Recommendations for radical cystectomy***

Recommendations	GR
Radical cystectomy is recommended in T2-T4a, N0 M0, and high risk non-muscle-invasive BC (as outlined above).	A*
Do not delay cystectomy more than 3 months since it increases the risk of progression and cancer-specific death.	B
Pre-operative radiotherapy is not recommended in case of subsequent cystectomy with urinary diversion.	A
Lymph node dissection should be an integral part of cystectomy, but the extent of the dissection has not been established.	B
The urethra can be preserved if margins are negative. If no bladder substitution is attached, the urethra must be checked regularly.	B
Laparoscopic and robot-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy are both options. However, current data have not sufficiently proven the advantages or disadvantages for both oncological and functional outcomes of laparoscopic and robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy.	C
Before cystectomy, the patient should be fully informed about the benefits and potential risks of all possible alternatives, and the final decision should be based on a balanced discussion between patient and surgeon.	B
Pre-operative bowel preparation is not mandatory, ‘fast track’ measurements may reduce the time of bowel recovery.	C
An orthotopic bladder substitute should be offered to male and female patients lacking any contraindications and who have no tumour in the urethra and at the level of urethral dissection.	B

**Upgraded following panel consensus*

Figure 1: Flowchart for the management for T2-T4a N0M0 urothelial bladder cancer



7.7 References

1. World Health Organization (WHO) Consensus Conference in Bladder Cancer, Hautmann RE, Abol-Enein H, Hafez K, Haro I, Mansson W, Mills RD, Montie JD, Sagalowsky AI, Stein JP, Stenzl A, Studer UE, Volkmer BG. Urinary diversion. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):17-49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280907
2. Stein JP, Lieskovsky G, Cote R, et al. Radical cystectomy in the treatment of invasive bladder cancer: long-term results in 1,054 patients. J Clin Oncol 2001 Feb;19(3):666-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157016
3. Miller DC, Taub DA, Dunn RL, et al. The impact of co-morbid disease on cancer control and survival following radical cystectomy. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):105-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478114
4. Figueroa AJ, Stein JP, Dickinson M, et al. Radical cystectomy for elderly patients with bladder carcinoma: an updated experience with 404 patients. Cancer 1998 Jul;83(1):141-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9655304
5. Chang SS, Hassan JM, Cookson MS, et al. Delaying radical cystectomy for muscle invasive bladder cancer results in worse pathological stage. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1085-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501697
6. Hautmann RE, Paiss T. Does the option of the ileal neobladder stimulate patient and physician decision toward earlier cystectomy? J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1845-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598473

7. Sánchez-Ortiz RF, Huang WC, Mick R, et al. An interval longer than 12 weeks between the diagnosis of muscle invasion and cystectomy is associated with worse outcome in bladder carcinoma. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):110-5; discussion 115.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478115
8. Stenzl A, Nagele U, Kuczyk M, et al. Cystectomy - Technical Considerations in Male and Female Patients. EAU Update Series 2005;3:138-46.
9. Vallancien G, Abou El Fettouh H, Cathelineau X, et al. Cystectomy with prostate sparing for bladder cancer in 100 patients: 10-year experience. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2413-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441929
10. Muto G, Bardari F, D'Urso L, et al. Seminal sparing cystectomy and ileocapsuloplasty: long-term followup results. J Urol 2004 Jul;172(1):76-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201741
11. Botto H, Sebe P, Molinie V, et al. Prostatic capsule- and seminal-sparing cystectomy for bladder carcinoma: initial results for selected patients. BJU Int 2004 Nov;94(7):1021-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15541120
12. Gakis G, Schilling D, Bedke J, et al. Incidental prostate cancer at radical cystoprostatectomy: implications for apex-sparing surgery. BJU Int 2010 Feb;105(4):468-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20102366
13. Colombo R, Bertini R, Salonia A, et al. Nerve and seminal sparing radical cystectomy with orthotopic urinary diversion for select patients with superficial bladder cancer: an innovative surgical approach. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):51-5; discussion 55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125362
14. Abdelhady M, Abusamra A, Pautler SW, et al. Clinically significant prostate cancer found incidentally in radical cystoprostatectomy specimens. BJU Int 2007 Feb;99(2):326-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17026595
15. Pettus JA, Al-Ahmadie H, Barocas DA, et al. Risk assessment of prostatic pathology in patients undergoing radical cystoprostatectomy. Eur Urol 2008 Feb;53(2):370-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17689003
16. Weizer AZ, Shah RB, Lee CT, et al. Evaluation of the prostate peripheral zone/capsule in patients undergoing radical cystoprostatectomy: defining risk with prostate capsule sparing cystectomy. Urol Oncol 2007 Nov-Dec;25(6):460-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18047952
17. Shen SS, Lerner SP, Muezzinoglu B, et al. Prostatic involvement by transitional cell carcinoma in patients with bladder cancer and its prognostic significance. Hum Pathol 2006 Jun;37(6):726-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16733214
18. Revelo MP, Cookson MS, Chang SS, et al. Incidence and location of prostate and urothelial carcinoma in prostates from cystoprostatectomies: implications for possible apical sparing surgery. J Urol 2004 Feb;171(2 Pt 1):646-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713778
19. Ong CH, Schmitt M, Thalmann GN, et al. Individualized seminal vesicle sparing cystoprostatectomy combined with illeal orthotopic bladder substituition achieves good functional results. J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1337-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171690
20. Mills RD, Fleischmann A, Studer UE. Radical cystectomy with an extended pelvic lymphadenectomy: rationale and results. Surg Oncol Clin N Am 2007 Jan;16(1):233-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17336246
21. Stein JP. The role of lymphadenectomy in patients undergoing radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. Curr Oncol Rep 2007 May;9(3):213-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17430693
22. Schilling D, Horstmann M, Nagele U, et al. Cystectomy in women. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(9 Pt B): 1289-95
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19035894
23. Abol-Enein H, El-Baz M, Abd El-Hameed MA, et al. Lymph node involvement in patients with bladder cancer treated with radical cystectomy: a patho-anatomical study--a single center experience. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1818-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540728
24. Zehnder P, Studer UE, Skinner EC, et al. Super extended versus extended pelvic lymph node dissection in patients undergoing radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: a comparative study. J Urol 2011 Oct;186(4):1261-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21849183

25. Wright JL, Lin DW, Porter MP. The association between extent of lymphadenectomy and survival among patients with lymph node metastases undergoing radical cystectomy. Cancer 2008 Jun;112(11):2401-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18383515
26. Dhar NB, Klein EA, Reuther AM, et al. Outcome after radical cystectomy with limited or extended pelvic lymph node dissection. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):873-8; discussion 878.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18221953
27. Karl A, Carroll PR, Gschwend JE, et al. The impact of lymphadenectomy and lymph node metastasis on the outcomes of radical cystectomy for bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Apr;55(4):826-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19150582
28. Jensen JB, Ulhøi BP, Jensen KM. Lymph node mapping in patients with bladder cancer undergoing radical cystectomy and lymph node dissection to the level of the inferior mesenteric artery. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(2):199-205.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20002670
29. Vazina A, Dugi D, Shariat SF, et al. Stage specific lymph node metastasis mapping in radical cystectomy specimens. J Urol 2004 May;171(5):1830-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076287
30. Leissner J, Ghoneim MA, Abol-Enein H, et al. Extended radical lymphadenectomy in patients with urothelial bladder cancer: results of a prospective multicenter study. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):139-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665862
31. Roth B, Wissmeyer MP, Zehnder P, et al. A new multimodality technique accurately maps the primary lymphatic landing sites of the bladder. Eur Urol 2010 Feb;57(2):205-11
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19879039
32. Ghoneim MA, Abol-Enein H. Lymphadenectomy with cystectomy: is it necessary and what is its extent? Eur Urol 2004 Oct;46(4):457-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15363560
33. Fleischmann A, Thalmann GN, Markwalder R, et al. Extracapsular extension of pelvic lymph node metastases from urothelial carcinoma of the bladder is an independent prognostic factor. J Clin Oncol 2005 Apr;23(10):2358-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15800327
34. Wallmeroth A, Wagner U, Moch H, et al. Patterns of metastasis in muscle-invasive bladder cancer (pT2-4): An autopsy study on 367 patients. Urol Int 1999;62(2):69-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10461106
35. Studer UE, Collette L. Morbidity from pelvic lymphadenectomy in men undergoing radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):887-9; discussion 889-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16956714
36. Koppie TM, Vickers AJ, Vora K, Dalbagni G, Bochner BH: Standardization of pelvic lymphadenectomy performed at radical cystectomy: can we establish a minimum number of lymph nodes that should be removed? Cancer 2006 Nov;107(10):2368-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17041887
37. Bassi P, Ferrante GD, Piazza N, et al. Prognostic factors of outcome after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: a retrospective study of a homogeneous patient cohort. J Urol 1999 May;161(5): 1494-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210380
38. Ghoneim MA, el-Mekresh MM, el-Baz MA, et al. Radical cystectomy for carcinoma of the bladder: critical evaluation of the results in 1,026 cases. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):393-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224310
39. Sternberg CN, Pansadoro V, Calabrò F, et al. Can patient selection for bladder preservation be based on response to chemotherapy? Cancer 2003 Apr;97(7):1644-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655521
40. Stenzl A, Bartsch G, Rogatsch H. The remnant urothelium after reconstructive bladder surgery. Eur Urol 2002 Feb;41(2):124-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074398
41. Stenzl A, Colleselli K, Bartsch G. Update of urethra-sparing approaches in cystectomy in women. World J Urol 1997;15(2):134-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144904
42. Nagele U, Kuczyk M, Anastasiadis AG, et al. Radical cystectomy and orthotopic bladder replacement in females. Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):249-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16806663

43. Chade DC, Laudone VP, Bochner BH, et al. Oncological outcomes after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: open versus minimally invasive approaches. J Urol 2010 Mar;183(3):862-69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20083269
44. Kasraeian A, Barret E, Cathelineau X, et al. Robot-assisted laparoscopic cystoprostatectomy with extended pelvic lymphadenectomy, extracorporeal enterocystoplasty, and intracorporeal enterourethral anastomosis: Initial Montsouris experience. J Endourol 2010 Mar;24(3):409-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20218885
45. Schumacher MC, Jonsson MN, Wiklund NP. Does extended lymphadenectomy preclude laparoscopic or robot-assisted radical cystectomy in advanced bladder cancer? Curr Opin Urol 2009 Sep;19(5): 527-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19553823
46. Hautmann RE. The oncologic results of laparoscopic radical cystectomy are not (yet) equivalent to open cystectomy. Curr Opin Urol 2009 Sep;19(5):522-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19550335
47. Ng CK, Kauffman EC, Lee MM, et al. A comparison of postoperative complications in open versus robotic cystectomy. Eur Urol 2010 Feb;57(2):274-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19560255
48. Pruthi RS, Nix J, McRackan D, et al. Robotic-assisted laparoscopic intracorporeal urinary diversion. Eur Urol 2010;57:1013-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20079567
49. Haber GP, Campbell SC, Colombo JR, et al. Perioperative outcomes with laparoscopic radical cystectomy: “pure laparoscopic” and “open-assisted laparoscopic” approaches. Urology 2007 Nov;70(5):910-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18068447
50. Stenzl A. Bladder substitution. Curr Opin Urol 1999 May;9(3):241-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10726098
51. Madersbacher S, Studer UE. Contemporary cystectomy and urinary diversion. World J Urol 2002 Aug;20(3):151-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12196898
52. Pruthi RS, Nielsen M, Smith A, et al. Fast track program in patients undergoing radical cystectomy: results in 362 consecutive patients. J Am Coll Surg 2010 Jan;210(1):93-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20123338
53. Kouba EJ, Wallen EM, Pruthi RS. Gum chewing stimulates bowel motility in patients undergoing radical cystectomy with urinary diversion. Urology 2007 Dec;70(6):1053-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18158012
54. Tanrikut C, McDougal WS. Acid-base and electrolyte disorders after urinary diversion. World J Urol 2004 Sep;22(3):168-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15290206
55. Farnham SB, Cookson MS. Surgical complications of urinary diversion. World J Urol 2004 Sep;22(3):157-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316737
56. Hautmann RE, Volkmer BG, Schumacher MC, et al. Long-term results of standard procedures in urology: the ileal neobladder. World J Urol 2006 Aug;24(3):305-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16830152
57. Deliveliotis C, Papatsoris A, Chrisofos M, et al. Urinary diversion in high-risk elderly patients: modified cutaneous ureterostomy or ileal conduit? Urology 2005 Aug;66(2):299-304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16040096
58. Kilciler M, Bedir S, Erdemir F, et al. Comparison of ileal conduit and transureteroureterostomy with ureterocutaneostomy urinary diversion. Urol Int 2006;77(3):245-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17033213
59. Pycha A, Comploj E, Martini T, et al. Comparison of complications in three incontinent urinary diversions. Eur Urol 2008;54:825-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502026
60. Nieuwenhuijzen JA, de Vries RR, Bex A, et al. Urinary diversions after cystectomy: the association of clinical factors, complications and functional results of four different diversions. Eur Urol 2008;53: 834-42; discussion 842-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17904276
61. Madersbacher S, Schmidt J, Eberle JM, et al. Long-term outcome of ileal conduit diversion. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):985-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576827

62. Wood DN, Allen SE, Hussain M, et al. Stomal complications of ileal conduits are significantly higher when formed in women with intractable urinary incontinence. J Urol 2004 Dec;172(6 Pt 1):2300-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538253
63. Neal DE. Complications of ileal conduit diversion in adults with cancer followed up for at least five years. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1985 Jun;290(6483):1695-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3924218
64. Benson MC, Olsson CA. Continent urinary diversion. Urol Clin North Am 1999 Feb;26(1):125-47, ix. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10086055
65. Gerharz EW, Köhl UN, Melekos MD, et al. Ten years' experience with the submucosally embedded in situ appendix in continent cutaneous diversion. Eur Urol 2001 Dec;40(6):625-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805408
66. Jonsson O, Olofsson G, Lindholm E, et al. Long-time experience with the Kock ileal reservoir for continent urinary diversion. Eur Urol 2001 Dec;40(6):632-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805409
67. Wiesner C, Bonfig R, Stein R, et al. Continent cutaneous urinary diversion: long-term follow-up of more than 800 patients with ileocecal reservoirs. World J Urol 2006 Aug;24(3):315-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16676186
68. Wiesner C, Stein R, Pahernik S, et al. Long-term followup of the intussuscepted ileal nipple and the in situ, submucosally embedded appendix as continence mechanisms of continent urinary diversion with the cutaneous ileocecal pouch (Mainz pouch I). J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):155-9; discussion 159-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753391
69. Thoeny HC, Sonnenschein MJ, Madersbacher S, et al. Is ileal orthotopic bladder substitution with an afferent tubular segment detrimental to the upper urinary tract in the long term? J Urol 2002 Nov;168(5):2030-4; discussion 2034. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12394702
70. Leissner J, Black P, Fisch M, et al. Colon pouch (Mainz pouch III) for continent urinary diversion after pelvic irradiation. Urology 2000 Nov;56(5):798-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11068305
71. Simon J. Ectopia Vesicae (Absence of the anterior walls of the Bladder and the pubic abdominal parietes) Operation for directing the orifices of the ureteres into the rectum, temporary success. JAMA 1911;56:398.
72. Coffey R. Physiologic implantation of the severed ureter or common bile duct into the intestine. JAMA 1911;56:397.
73. Azimuddin K, Khubchandani IT, Stasik JJ, et al. Neoplasia after ureterosigmoidostomy. Dis Colon Rectum 1999 Dec;42(12):1632-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10613486
74. Gerharz EW, Turner WH, Kälble T, et al. Metabolic and functional consequences of urinary reconstruction with bowel. BJU Int 2003 Jan;91(2):143-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519116
75. Kälble T, Busse K, Amelung F, et al. Tumor induction and prophylaxis following different forms of intestinal urinary diversion in a rat model. Urol Res 1995;23(6):365-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8788273
76. Stein JP, Skinner DG. Radical cystectomy for invasive bladder cancer: long-term results of a standard procedure. World J Urol 2006 Aug;24(3):296-304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16518661
77. Donat SM, Siegrist T, Cronin A, et al. Radical cystectomy in octogenarians—does morbidity outweigh the potential survival benefits? J Urol 2010 Jun;183(6):2171-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20399461
78. Hautmann RE, de Petriconi RC, Volkmer BG. 25 years of experience with 1,000 neobladders: long-term complications. J Urol 2011 Jun:185(6); 2207-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21497841
79. Stein JP, Dunn MD, Quek ML, et al. The orthotopic T pouch ileal neobladder: experience with 209 patients. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):584-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247737
80. Abol-Enein H, Ghoneim MA. Functional results of orthotopic ileal neobladder with serous-lined extramural ureteral reimplantation: experience with 450 patients. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1427-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342891
81. Stein JP, Skinner DG. Results with radical cystectomy for treating bladder cancer: a 'reference standard' for high-grade, invasive bladder cancer. BJU Int 2003 Jul;92(1):12-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12823375

82. Yossepowitch O, Dalbagni G, Golijanin D, et al. Orthotopic urinary diversion after cystectomy for bladder cancer: implications for cancer control and patterns of disease recurrence. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):177-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478130
83. Stein JP, Clark P, Miranda G, et al. Urethral tumor recurrence following cystectomy and urinary diversion: clinical and pathological characteristics in 768 male patients. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1163-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758728
84. Gerharz EW, Månsson A, Hunt S, et al. Quality of life after cystectomy and urinary diversion: an evidence based analysis. J Urol 2005 Nov;174(5):1729-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16217273
85. Hobisch A, Tosun K, Kinzl J, et al. Life after cystectomy and orthotopic neobladder versus ileal conduit urinary diversion. Semin Urol Oncol 2001 Feb;19(1):18-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11246729
86. Porter MP, Penson DF. Health related quality of life after radical cystectomy and urinary diversion for bladder cancer: a systematic review and critical analysis of the literature. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4): 1318-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758789
87. Stenzl A, Sherif H, Kuczyk M. Radical cystectomy with orthotopic neobladder for invasive bladder cancer: a critical analysis of long term oncological, functional and quality of life results. Int Braz J Urol 2010 Sep-Oct;36(5):537-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21044370
88. Cookson MS, Chang SS, Wells N, et al. Complications of radical cystectomy for nonmuscle invasive disease: comparison with muscle invasive disease. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(1):101-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478113
89. Eastham JA. Do high-volume hospitals and surgeons provide better care in urologic oncology? Urol Oncol 2009 Jul-Aug;27(4):417-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19573772
90. Shariat SF, Karakiewicz PI, Palapattu GS, et al. Outcomes of radical cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: a contemporary series from the Bladder Cancer Research Consortium. J Urol 2006 Dec;176(6 Pt 1):2414-22; discussion 2422.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085118
91. Gschwend JE, Dahm P, Fair WR. Disease specific survival as endpoint of outcome for bladder cancer patients following radical cystectomy. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):440-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074817
92. Madersbacher S, Hochreiter W, Burkhard F, et al. Radical cystectomy for bladder cancer today—a homogeneous series without neoadjuvant therapy. J Clin Oncol 2003 Feb;21(4):690-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586807
93. Bassi P, Ferrante GD, Piazza N, et al. Prognostic factors of outcome after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: a retrospective study of a homogeneous patient cohort. J Urol 1999 May;161(5): 1494-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210380

8. NON-RESECTABLE TUMOURS

8.1 Palliative cystectomy for muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma

For patients with inoperable locally advanced tumours (T4b, invading the pelvic or abdominal wall), radical cystectomy is not usually a therapeutic option (1). Treatment of these patients remains a clinical challenge. These patients are candidates for palliative treatments, such as palliative radiotherapy.

Inoperable locally advanced tumours may be accompanied by several debilitating symptoms, including bleeding, pain, dysuria and urinary obstruction. There are several treatment options for patients with these symptoms. In advanced bladder cancer complicated by bleeding, cystectomy with urinary diversion is the most invasive treatment. It carries the greatest morbidity and should be considered only if there are no other options (1).

In patients with locally advanced pelvic cancer and urinary bladder involvement, palliative radical cystectomy with urinary diversion using intestinal segments is usually performed for the relief of symptoms such as pain, recurrent bleeding, urgency and fistula formation (2).

Zebic, et al. (2005) (3) retrospectively analysed patients aged ≥ 75 years, who had received radical

cystectomies with either curative or palliative intent. The indications for palliative cystectomy were advanced pelvic malignancy with severe irritating voiding symptoms, severe pain and recurrent macrohaematuria requiring blood transfusions (3). Zebic, et al. (2005) concluded that elderly people have a greater risk of peri-operative morbidity and mortality, especially those with very advanced pelvic malignancies, who have undergone palliative cystectomy (3).

Advanced MIBC can be associated with ureteral obstruction. In invasive tumours, the mechanism of ureteral obstruction is probably caused by a combination of mechanical blockage by the tumour and invasion of ureteral orifices by tumour cells interfering with ureteral peristalsis. Bilateral ureteral obstruction, or unilateral obstruction to a solitary functioning kidney, can result in uraemia. Treatment of such patients is still a dilemma. El-Tabey et al. retrospectively reviewed the records of patients who presented with bladder cancer and obstructive uraemia (4). Patients with inoperable locally advanced bladder tumours (23 patients, 37.7%) were treated with permanent nephrostomy tubes to relieve obstruction; radical cystectomy was not an option. Ten patients underwent surgery (26.3%); palliative cystectomy without lymphadenectomy was carried out for advanced nodal involvement in four patients and for locally advanced disease infiltrating the pelvic wall in six patients. In all 10 patients, local pelvic recurrence was reported within the first year of follow-up (4).

In another study, post-operative outcome was reported for primary radical cystectomy in 20 T4 bladder cancer patients (of which seven cases were T4b). The authors concluded that primary cystectomy for T4 bladder cancer was technically feasible and had a very tolerable therapy-related morbidity and mortality (5).

8.2 Conclusions and recommendations for non-resectable tumours

Conclusions
Primary radical cystectomy in T4b bladder cancer is not a curative option.
If there are symptoms, radical cystectomy may be a therapeutic/palliative option.
Intestinal or non-intestinal forms of urinary diversion can be used with or without palliative cystectomy.

Recommendations	LE	GR
In patients with inoperable locally advanced tumours (T4b), primary radical cystectomy is a palliatative option and cannot be offered as curative treatment.		B
In patients with symptoms palliative cystectomy may be offered.		
Prior to any further interventions, surgery-related morbidity and quality-of-life should be fully discussed with the patient.	3	B

8.3 Supportive care

Severe, localized problems can occur in patients with invasive, non-operable bladder cancer and those in whom cystectomy has not been performed because of metastatic disease. These problems include pain, bleeding, voiding problems and obstruction of the upper urinary tract (UUT).

Obstruction of the UUT

Unilateral (best kidney) or bilateral nephrostomy tubes provide the easiest solution for UUT obstruction, but patients find the tubes are inconvenient and prefer ureteral stenting. However, stenting can be difficult to achieve and stents must be regularly replaced. There is also the risk of stent obstruction or displacement. Another possible solution is the possibility of a urinary diversion with, or without, a palliative cystectomy.

Bleeding and pain

In the case of bleeding, first screen the patient for coagulation disorders or review the patient's use of anticoagulant drugs. Transurethral (laser) coagulation may be difficult in a bladder full of tumour or with a bleeding tumour. Intravesical rinsing of the bladder with 1% silver nitrate or 1–2% alum can be effective (12), and can usually be done without any form of anaesthesia. The instillation of formalin (2.5–4% during 30 minutes) is a more aggressive and more painful procedure, requiring general or regional anesthesia. Formalin instillation also has a higher risk of side effects, e.g. bladder fibrosis, but is more likely to control the bleeding (13). Vesicoureteral reflux should be excluded to prevent renal complications.

Radiation therapy is another common strategy for control of bleeding, which is also used to control pain. In an older report, haematuria and pain control were 59% and 73%, respectively (14). Irritative bladder and bowel complaints due to irradiation are possible but are usually mild.

Non-conservative options are embolization of specific arteries in the small pelvis, with success rates as high as 90% (15). Radical surgery is a last resort and includes cystectomy and diversion.

8.4 References

1. Ok JH, Meyers FJ, Evans CP. Medical and surgical palliative care of patients with urological malignancies. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1177-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145365
2. Ubrig B, Lazica M, Waldner M, et al. Extraperitoneal bilateral cutaneous ureterostomy with midline stoma for palliation of pelvic cancer. Urology 2004 May;63(5):973-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134993
3. Zebic N, Weinknecht S, Kroepfl D. Radical cystectomy in patients aged > or = 75 years: an updated review of patients treated with curative and palliative intent. BJU Int 2005 Jun;95(9):1211-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15892803
4. El-Tabey NA, Osman Y, Mosbah A, et al. Bladder cancer with obstructive uremia: oncologic outcome after definitive surgical management. Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):531-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140072
5. Nagele U, Anastasiadis AG, Merseburger AS, et al. The rationale for radical cystectomy as primary therapy for T4 bladder cancer. World J Urol 2007 Aug;25(4):401-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17525849
6. von der Maase H, Hansen SW, Roberts JT, et al. Gemcitabine and cisplatin versus methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin,and cisplatin in advanced or metastatic bladder cancer: results of a large, randomized, multinational, multicenter, phase III study. J Clin Oncol 2000 Sep;18(17):3068-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11001674
7. Sternberg CN, de Mulder P, Schornagel JH, et al. EORTC Genito- Urinary Cancer Group. Seven year update of an EORTC phase III trial of high-dose intensity M-VAC chemotherapy and G-CSF versus classic M-VAC in advanced urothelial tract tumours. Eur J Cancer 2006 Jan;42(1):50-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16330205
8. De Santis M, Bellmunt J, Mead G, et al. Randomized phase II/III trial assessing gemcitabine/ carboplatin and methotrexate/ carboplatin/vinblastine in patients with advanced urothelial cancer “unfit” for cisplatin-based chemotherapy: phase II--results of EORTC study 30986. J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 20;27(33):5634-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786668
9. Cara S, Tannock IF. Retreatment of patients with the same chemotherapy: implications for clinical mechanisms of drug resistance. Ann Oncol 2001 Jan;12(1):23-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11249045
10. Han KS, Joung JY, Kim TS, et al. Methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin combination regimen as salvage chemotherapy for patients with advanced or metastatic transitional cell carcinoma after failure of gemcitabine and cisplatin chemotherapy. Br J Cancer 2008 Jan 15;98(1):86-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18087289
11. Bellmunt J, Théodore C, Demkov T, et al. Phase III trial of vinflunine plus best supportive care compared with best supportive care alone after a platinum-containing regimen in patients with advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep 20;27(27):4454-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19687335
12. Goel AK, Rao MS, Bhagwat AG, et al Intravesical irrigation with alum for the control of massive bladder hemorrhage. J Urol 1985 Jun;133(6):956-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3999219
13. Donahue LA, Frank IN. Intravesical formalin for hemorrhagic cystitis: analysis of therapy. J Urol 1989 Apr;141(4):809-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2648027
14. Srinivasan V, Brown CH, Turner AG. A comparison of two radiotherapy regimens for the treatment of symptoms from advanced bladder cancer. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 1994;6(1):11-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513538
15. Ghahestani SM, Shakhssalim N. Palliative treatment of intractable hematuria in context of advanced bladder cancer: a systematic review. Urol J 2009 Summer;6(3):149-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19711266

9. NEOADJUVANT / ADJUVANT RADIOTHERAPY IN MUSCLE-INVASIVE BLADDER CANCER

Contrary to literature addressing radiotherapy prior to surgical intervention for muscle-invasive bladder cancer, data discussing findings for adjuvant radiotherapy after radical cystectomy are extremely scarce and outdated and relate mostly to non-urothelial cancer only (1). Possibly also due to late gastero-intestinal complications, post-operative radiotherapy has never been widely used. With the availability of equipment allowing for more precise targeting resulting in less damage to surrounding tissue, there may be reason to revisit this option in the future (2,3).

9.1 Pre-operative radiotherapy

*9.1.1 **Retrospective studies***

Several retrospective studies have looked at the effect of pre-operative radiotherapy in patients with bladder cancer.

- The largest retrospective series (n = 526) showed that pre-operative radiotherapy at a dose of 50 Gy resulted in down-staging in 73% of cT3 patients versus 29% of patients who were not given preoperative radiotherapy (4,5). Local control improved from 72% to 91% in pT3b patients (n = 91), but not in pT2 or pT3a patients, while overall survival improved from 40% to 52%.
- The results of a non-randomised study comparing 40 Gy versus 5-20 Gy versus no radiotherapy showed that only 40 Gy pre-operative radiotherapy reduced the risk of local recurrence from 27% to 11% and improved survival from 21% to 63% (6).
- Overall, nearly all retrospective studies of pre-operative radiotherapy at doses of 40-50 Gy, followed after 4-6 weeks by cystectomy, showed (4-12):
  - down-staging of the tumour stage (40-65% of patients)
  - lower risk of local recurrence (10-42%)
  - improved survival (11-12%).
- Some studies showed that an improvement in local control was highest for T3b tumours (5-7).
- Other studies showed that achievement of a pathological complete remission (pCR) was a prognostic factor for survival (6-8).
- One retrospective study (8) found no significant increase in toxicity due to pre-operative radiotherapy (10% versus 3%).

*9.1.2 **Randomised studies***

There have been six published randomised studies investigating pre-operative radiotherapy.

- The largest randomised trial (n = 234 evaluable patients) administered pre-operative radiotherapy at a dose of 45 Gy in fractions of 1.8-2.2 Gy in muscle-invasive tumours. The results showed a significant increase in pCR (9% to 34%) in favour of pre-operative radiotherapy and no significant increase in 5-year survival of 33% to 45% (13). In patients not given adjuvant chemotherapy, survival was significantly better than in patients given pre-operative radiotherapy (25-52%). pCR was a prognostic factor for better survival. A major limitation was the exclusion from the analysis of almost 50% of patients because they did not receive the planned treatment.
- The Southwest Oncology Group (SWOG) trial (n = 124), which used a pre-operative dose of 5 x 4 Gy, did not show a survival advantage (14).
- An Egyptian study in patients with bladder cancer caused by bilharzia (predominantly squamous cell carcinoma, n = 92) showed a significant survival advantage for > T3 tumours, but a marginal and nonsignificant difference for the whole group (15).
- A small, randomised study of 44 patients (16) showed a significant increase in pCR (18-55%) and a small increase in 5-year survival (61-72%, not significant), but the results were limited by a small patient population and differing radiotherapy schedules (32-54 Gy).
- In another small, three-armed study (n = 72), patients were randomised between surgery, surgery with pre-operative radiotherapy (45 Gy in 4-5 weeks) and radiotherapy alone (50-60 Gy in 4-6 weeks) (17). Pre-operative radiotherapy resulted in 24% of patients achieving pCR. There were no significant differences in survival or toxicity between the three arms.
- There was no reported increase in toxicity due to pre-operative radiotherapy in any of the above-mentioned studies.
- The effect on the local recurrence rate was not specifically documented in any of the studies.
- Three of the randomised studies looked at down-staging and found an increase in pCR following preoperative radiotherapy from 9% to 34% (10), 0% to 24% (14) and from 18% to 55% (16).
- Local recurrences were not reported (13,17), nor were they similar in any of the randomised studies (16).

- All five randomised studies looked at survival. The largest study found a significant survival advantage from 25% to 52% in those patients who did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy (13). The Egyptian study found a survival advantage only for T3 patients or higher (15). No study found a significant survival advantage for the whole group.
- A meta-analysis of the randomised trials on the value of pre-operative radiotherapy showed an odds ratio for the difference in 5-year survival of 0.71 (95% CI: 0.48-1.06). However, the meta-analysis was potentially biased by the many patients in the largest trial, who did not receive the planned treatment. When the results of the largest trial were excluded, the odds ratio became 0.95 (95% CI: 0.57-1.55), indicating that improved survival with pre-operative radiotherapy had not been proven (18,19).
- The sixth RCT was not included in the meta-analysis (18) since its findings deviated from all the others. Furthermore, the follow-up period was only two years (20).

*9.1.3 **Effect of pre-treating patients with neoadjuvant radiotherapy before cystectomy***

A recent study compared the long-term outcome of pre-treating patients before cystectomy with neoadjuvant radiotherapy (n = 90) versus not pre-treating with radiotherapy (n = 97). The clinical stage of tumours was T1-3. Down-staging to T0 after cystectomy occurred in 7% (7/97) without radiotherapy versus 57% (51/90) with radiotherapy. In cT3 tumours, these results were 0% (0/16) versus 59% (19/34), respectively. Down-staging resulted in a longer PFS. In cT3 tumours, there was also a significant longer disease-specific survival. However, the results are limited by the small patient numbers and the retrospective nature of the study.

Another recent retrospective study on neoadjuvant radiotherapy also found a survival advantage, though the results were also limited (21).

9.2 Conclusions and recommendations for pre-operative radiotherapy

Conclusions	LE
No data exist to support that pre-operative radiotherapy for operable muscle-invasive bladder cancer increases survival.	2
Pre-operative radiotherapy for operable muscle-invasive bladder cancer, using a dose of 45-50 Gy in fractions of 1.8-2 Gy results in down-staging after 4-6 weeks.	2
Pre-operative radiotherapy with a dose of 45-50 Gy in fractions of 1.8-2 Gy does not significantly increase toxicity after surgery.	3
There are suggestions in older literature that pre-operative radiotherapy decreases local recurrence of muscle-invasive bladder cancer.	3

Recommendations	GR
Pre-operative radiotherapy is not recommended to improve survival.	B
Pre-operative radiotherapy for operable muscle-invasive bladder cancer results in tumour downstaging after 4-6 weeks.	C

9.3 References

1. Zaghloul MS, Awwad HK, Akoush HH, Omar S, Soliman O, el Attar I. Postoperative radiotherapy of carcinoma in bilharzial bladder: improved disease free survival through improving local control. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1992;23(3):511-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1612951
2. Zaghloul MS. The need to revisit adjuvant and neoadjuvant radiotherapy in bladder cancer. Expert Rev Anticaner Ther 2010 Oct;10(10):895-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20942623
3. El-Monim HA, El-Baradie MM, Younis A, et al. A prospective randomized trial for postoperative vs. preoperative adjuvant radiotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2011 Feb 24. [Epub ahead of print] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353794
4. Pollack A, Zagars GK, Dinney CP, et al. Preoperative radiotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma. Long term follow-up and prognostic factors for 338 patients. Cancer 1994 Nov;74(10):2819-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7954243

5. Cole CJ, Pollack A, Zagars GK, et al. Local control of muscle-invasive bladder cancer: preoperative radiotherapy and cystectomy versus cystectomy alone. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1995 May;32(2):331-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7751174
6. Spera JA, Whittington R, Littman P, et al. A comparison of preoperative radiotherapy regimens for bladder carcinoma. The University of Pennsylvania experience. Cancer 1988 Jan;61(2):255-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3334959
7. Pollack A, Zagars GK, Cole CJ, et al. Significance of downstaging in muscle-invasive bladder cancer treated with preoperative radiotherapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Jan;37(1):41-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9054875
8. Chougule P, Aygun C, Salazar O, et al. Radiation therapy for transitional cell bladder carcinoma. A tenyear experience. Urology 1988 Aug;32(2):91-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3135646
9. Batata MA, Chu FC, Hilaris BS, et al. Bladder cancer in men and women treated by radiation therapy and/or radical cystectomy. Urology 1981 Jul;18(1);15-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6789529
10. Fosså SD, Ous S, Berner A. Clinical significance of the 'palpable mass' in patients with muscleinfiltrating bladder cancer undergoing cystectomy after pre-operative radiotherapy. Br J Urol 1991 Jan;67(1):54-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1993277
11. Gilloz A, Héritier P. Comparative study of actuarial survival rates in P3 P4 (N+ Mo) transitional cell carcinoma of bladder managed by total cystectomy alone or associated with preoperative radiotherapy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Prog Clin Biol Res 1984;162B:15-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6504893
12. Smith JA, Batata M, Grabstald H, et al. Preoperative irradiation and cystectomy for bladder cancer. Cancer 1982 Mar;49(5):869-973.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6800628
13. Slack NH, Bross ID, Prout GR. Five-year follow-up results of a collaborative study of therapies for carcinoma of the bladder. J Surg Oncol 1977;9(4):393-405.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/330958
14. Smith JA, Crawford ED, Paradelo JC, et al. Treatment of advanced bladder cancer with combined preoperative irradiation and radical cystectomy versus radical cystectomy alone: a phase III intergroup study. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):805-7; discussion 807-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072571
15. Ghoneim MA, Ashamallah AK, Awaad HK, et al. Randomized trial of cystectomy with or without preoperative radiotherapy for carcinoma of the bilharzial bladder. J Urol 1985 Aug;134(2):266-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3894693
16. Anderström C, Johanson S, Nilsson S, et al. A prospective randomized study of preoperative irradiation with cystectomy or cystectomy alone for invasive bladder carcinoma. Eur Urol 1983;9(3):142-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6861819
17. Blackard CE, Byar DP. Results of a clinical trial of surgery and radiation in stages II and III carcinoma of the bladder. J Urol 1972 Dec;108(6):875-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5082739
18. Huncharek M, Muscat J, Geschwind JF. Planned preoperative radiation therapy in muscle invasive bladder cancer; results of a meta-analysis. Anticancer Res 1998 May;18(3b):1931-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9677446
19. Awwad HK, Baki HA, El Bolkainy, et al. Preoperative irradiation of T3 carcinoma in Bilharzial bladder. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1070 Jun;5(6):787-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/500410
16. Widmark A, Flodgren P, Damber JE, et al. A systematic overview of radiation therapy effects in urinary bladder cancer. Acta Oncol 2003;42(5-6):567-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14596515
17. Granfors T, Tomic R, Ljungberg B. Downstaging and survival benefits of neoadjuvant radiotherapy before cystectomy for patients with invasive bladder carcinoma. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2009;43(4): 293-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19363744

10. BLADDER-SPARING TREATMENTS FOR LOCALISED DISEASE

10.1 Transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB)

When patients with an initially invasive bladder cancer, presenting with pT0 or pT1 status at second resection, are selected for transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB) alone, about half of them will have to undergo radical cystectomy for recurrent muscle-invasive cancer, with a disease-specific death rate ranging up to 47% within this group (1,2).

A disease-free status at re-staging TUR appears to be crucial in making the decision not to perform radical cystectomy (3,4). A prospective study by Solsona et al. (3) included 133 patients with a radical TUR and negative biopsies, and recently reported 15 year follow-up (5). Patients had regular cystoscopy and biopsies, and were treated additionally according to their findings. In all, only 6.7% were understaged during the initial TURBT, 30% had recurrent NMIBC and went on to intravesical therapy, and 30% (n=40) progressed, of which 27 died of bladder cancer. This results in a CSS of 81.9%, 79.5% and 76.7%, and a PFS with intact bladder of 75.5%, 64.9%, 57.8%, after 5, 10 and 15 years respectively.

TUR alone is only possible as a therapeutic option if tumour growth is limited to the superficial muscle layer and if re-staging biopsies are negative for residual tumour (6). TUR alone should only be considered as a therapeutic option when the patient is unfit for cystectomy or a multimodality bladder-preserving approach, or refuses open surgery (7).

*10.1.1 **Conclusion and recommendation for TURB***

Conclusion and recommendation	LE	GR
Transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB) alone is not a curative treatment option in most patients.	2a	B

*10.1.2 **References***

1. Barnes RW, Dick AL, Hadley HL, et al. Survival following transurethral resection of bladder carcinoma. Cancer Res 1977 Aug;37(8 Pt 2):2895-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/872119
2. Herr HW. Transurethral resection of muscle-invasive bladder cancer: 10-year outcome. J Clin Oncol 2001 Jan;19(1):89-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11134199
3. Solsona E, Iborra I, Ricós JV, et al. Feasibility of transurethral resection for muscle infiltrating carcinoma of the bladder: long-term follow-up of a prospective study. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):95-8; discussion 98-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400445
4. Holmäng S, Hedelin H, Anderström C, et al. Long-term follow-up of all patients with muscle invasive (stages T2, T3 and T4) bladder carcinoma in a geographical region. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):389-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224309
5. Solsona E, Iborra I, Collado A, et al. Feasibility of radical transurethral resection as monotherapy for selected patients with muscle invasive bladder cancer. J Urol 2010 Aug;184(2):475-80 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620402
6. Herr HW. Conservative management of muscle-infiltrating bladder cancer: prospective experience. J Urol 1987 Nov;138(5):1162-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3669160
7. Whitmore WF Jr, Batata MA, Ghoneim MA, et al. Radical cystectomy with or without prior irradiation in the treatment of bladder cancer. J Urol 1977 Jul:118(1 Pt 2):184-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/875217

10.2 External beam radiotherapy (EBRT)

The target field usually comprises the bladder only, with a safety margin of 1.5-2 cm to allow for unavoidable organ movements (1-4). Any beneficial effect with larger pelvic fields has not been demonstrated. The target dose for curative radiotherapy for bladder cancer is 60-66 Gy, with a subsequent boost using external radiotherapy or interstitial brachytherapy. The daily dose is usually 1.8-2 Gy, and the course of radiotherapy should not extend beyond 6-7 weeks to minimise the repopulation of cancer cells. The use of modern standard

radiotherapy techniques results in major, related, late morbidity of the urinary bladder or bowel in less than 5% of tumour-free patients (5-9). As well as the response to radiotherapy, important prognostic factors for outcome include:

- tumour size;
- hydronephrosis;
- completeness of the initial TURB.

Overall, 5-year survival rates in patients with MIBC range between 30% and 60%, depending on whether they have a complete response (CR) following radiotherapy. Cancer-specific survival rates are between 20% and 50% (10-14).

Prognostic factors for success were investigated in an Italian single institution series of 459 irradiated patients, including approximately 30% of unfit T1 patients, with 4.4 years average follow-up. Significant factors were found in a multivariate survival analysis to be:

- age;
- T category (for all end points);
- tumour dose (only for failure-free survival) (15).

Based on available trials, a Cochrane analysis has demonstrated that radical cystectomy has an overall survival benefit compared to radiotherapy (16).

External radiotherapy can be an alternative treatment in patients unfit for radical surgery, as demonstrated in a group of 92 elderly or disabled patients with T2-4 N0-1 M0 bladder cancer and a median age of 79 years. The total dose given was 55 Gy in 4 weeks. The cystoscopic complete remission rate at 3 months was 78%, 3-year local control rate 56%, and 3-year overall survival 36%. Pre-treatment bladder capacity was demonstrated in 81% of patients (17).

Similar long term results were reported by Chung et al (18). 340 patients with MIBC were treated with EBRT alone, EBRT with concurrent chemotherapy, or neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by EBRT. The overall CR was 55% and the 10 year DSS and OS were 35% and 19% respectively. CR was 64%, 79%, and 52% after EBRT alone, concurrent chemotherapy (n=36), and neoadjuvant chemotherapy (n=57) respectively, although in this last group most patients had T3 and T4 tumours. Younger age, lower tumour stage and absence of CIS were associated with a significant improvement in survival. For example, in the T2 group, 5 year OS was 44% and DSS was 58%. A relapse within 2 to 3 years was a bad prognostic sign. The authors concluded that EBRT monotherapy was an option only in highly selected patients.

10.2.1 ***Conclusions and recommendation for external beam radiotherapy***

Conclusions	**LE**
External beam radiotherapy alone should only be considered as a therapeutic option when the patient is unfit for cystectomy or a multimodality bladder-preserving approach.	3
Radiotherapy can also be used to stop bleeding from the tumour when local control cannot be achieved by transurethral manipulation because of extensive local tumour growth.	3

Recommendation	**GR**
Surgical intervention or multimodality treatment are the preferred curative therapeutic approaches since they are more effective than radiotherapy alone.	B

10.2.2 ***References***

1. Gospodarowicz MK, Blandy JP. Radiation therapy for organ-conservation for invasive bladder carcinoma. In: Vogelzang NJ, Scardino PT, Shipley WU, Coffey DS, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Genitourinary Oncology*. Lippincott: Williams and Wilkins, 2000; pp. 487-496.
2. Duncan W, Quilty PM. The results of a series of 963 patients with transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary bladder primarily treated by radical megavoltage X-ray therapy. Radiother Oncol 1986 Dec;7(4):299-310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3101140

3. Gospodarowicz MK, Hawkins NV, Rawlings GA, et al. Radical radiotherapy for muscle invasive transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: failure analysis. J Urol 1989 Dec;142(6):1448-53; discussion 1453-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2585617
4. Gospodarowicz MK, Quilty PM, Scalliet P, et al. The place of radiation therapy as definitive treatment of bladder cancer. Int J Urol 1995 Jun;2(Suppl 2):41-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7553304
5. Shipley WU, Zietman AL, Kaufman DS, et al. Invasive bladder cancer: treatment strategies using transurethral surgery, chemotherapy and radiation therapy with selection for bladder conservation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Nov;39(4):937-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9369144
6. Maciejewski B, Majewski S. Dose fractionation and tumor repopulation in radiotherapy for bladder cancer. Radiother Oncol 1991 Jul;21(3):163-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1924851
7. De Neve W, Lybeert ML, Goor C, et al. Radiotherapy for T2 and T3 carcinoma of the bladder: the influence of overall treatment time. Radiother Oncol 1995 Sep;36(3):183-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8532904
8. Milosevic M, Gospodarowicz M, Zietman A, et al. Radiotherapy for bladder cancer. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):80-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280910
9. Whitmore WF Jr, Batata MA, Ghoneim MA, et al. Radical cystectomy with or without prior irradiation in the treatment of bladder cancer. J Urol 1977 Jul;118(1 Pt 2):184-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/875217
10. Pollack A, Zagars GZ. Radiotherapy for stage T3b transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Semin Urol Oncol 1996 May;14(2):86-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8734736
11. De Neve W, Lybeert ML, Goor C, et al, Ribot JG. Radiotherapy for T2 and T3 carcinoma of the bladder: the influence of overall treatment time. Radiother Oncol 1995 Sep;36(3):183-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8532904
12. Mameghan H, Fisher R, Mameghan J, et al. Analysis of failure following definitive radiotherapy for invasive transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1995 Jan;31(2):247-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7836076
13. Herskovic A, Martz K, Al-Sarraf M, et al. Combined chemotherapy and radiotherapy compared with radiotherapy alone in patients with cancer of the esophagus. N Engl J Med 1992 Jun;326(24):1593-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1584260
14. Näslund I, Nilsson B, Littbrand B. Hyperfractionated radiotherapy of bladder cancer. A ten-year follow-up of a randomized clinical trial. Acta Oncol 1994;33(4):397-402.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8018372
15. Tonoli S, Bertoni F, De Stefani A, et al. Radical radiotherapy for bladder cancer: retrospective analysis of a series of 459 patients treated in an Italian institution. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2006 Feb;18(1):52-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16477920
16. Shelley MD, Barber J, Wilt T, et al. Surgery versus radiotherapy for muscle invasive bladder cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(1):CD002079.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869621
17. Piet AH, Hulshof MC, Pieters BR, et al. Clinical Results of a concomitant boost radiotherapy technique for muscle-invasive bladder cancer. Strahlenther Onkol 2008 Jun;184(6):313-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18535807
18. Chung PW, Bristow RG, Milosevic MF, et al. Long-term outcome of radiation-based conservation therapy for invasive bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2007 Jul-Aug;25(4):303-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17628296

10.3 Chemotherapy

Chemotherapy alone rarely produces durable complete responses. In general, a clinical complete response rate of up to 56%, as reported in some series, must be weighed against a staging error of > 60% (1-2). Response to chemotherapy is a prognostic factor for treatment outcome and eventual survival (3), though it may be confounded by patient selection.

Several groups have reported the effect of chemotherapy on resectable tumours (neoadjuvant approach), as well as unresectable primary tumours (4-7). Neoadjuvant chemotherapy with 2-3 cycles of methotrexate,

vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin (MVAC) or cisplatin, methotrexate plus vinblastine (CMV) has led to a downstaging of the primary tumour in different prospective series (4-6). Pathological complete responses of bladder primary tumours were reached in 12-50% of patients after MVAC and in 12-22% of patients after gemcitabine/ cisplatin (GC) in phase II and phase III trials (4-6,8-16). Contemporary series with GC followed by radical cystectomy reported inferior pT0 rates, which may have been related to a lack of dose density and inappropriate delay of surgery (17).
As for bladder preservation, response is evaluated by cystoscopy and CT-imaging only, followed by close surveillance. This approach is prone to an imminent staging error, which can put the patient at risk for local recurrence and/or consecutive metastatic disease.

For very selected patients, a bladder-conserving strategy with TUR of the bladder and systemic cisplatin-based chemotherapy, preferably with MVAC, may allow long-term survival with intact bladder (18). However, this approach cannot be recommended for routine use.

10.3.1 ***Conclusion and recommendation for chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder tumours***

Conclusion	**LE**
With cisplatin-based chemotherapy as primary therapy for locally advanced tumours in highly selected patients, complete and partial local responses have been reported.	2b

Recommendation	**GR**
Chemotherapy alone is not recommended as primary therapy for localised bladder cancer.	A

10.3.2 ***References***

1. Scher HI, Yagoda A, Herr HW, et al. Neoadjuvant M-VAC (methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin) effect on the primary bladder lesion. J Urol 1988;139(3):470-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3343728
2. Herr HW, Bajorin DF, Scher HI. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy and bladder-sparing surgery for invasive bladder cancer: ten-year outcome. J Clin Oncol 1998;16(4):1298-301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9552029
3. Sternberg CN, Pansadoro V, Calabrò F, et al. Can patient selection for bladder preservation be based on response to chemotherapy? Cancer 2003 Apr 1;97(7):1644-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655521
4. Grossman HB, Natale RB, Tangen CM, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus cystectomy compared with cystectomy alone for locally advanced bladder cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Aug 28;349(9):859-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12944571
5. [No authors listed] Neoadjuvant cisplatin, methotrexate, and vinblastine chemotherapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer: a randomised controlled trial. International collaboration of trialists. Lancet 1999 Aug 14;354(9178):533-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10470696
6. Kachnic LA, Kaufman DS, Heney NM, et al. Bladder preservation by combined modality therapy for invasive bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 1997 Mar;15(3):1022-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9060542
7. Als AB, Sengelov L, von der Maase H. Long-term survival after gemcitabine and cisplatin in patients with locally advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: focus on supplementary treatment strategies. Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):478-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17383078
8. Sternberg CN, Yagoda A, Scher HI, et al. M-VAC (methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin) for advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. J Urol 1988 Mar;139(3):461-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3343727
9. Logothetis CJ, Dexeus FH, Finn L, Sella A, Amato RJ, Ayala AG, Kilbourn RG. A prospective randomized trial comparing MVAC and CISCA chemotherapy for patients with metastatic urothelial tumors. J Clin Oncol 1990 Jun;8(6):1050-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2189954
10. Loehrer PJ Sr, Einhorn LH, Elson PJ, et al. A randomized comparison of cisplatin alone or in combination with methotrexate, vinblastine, and doxorubicin in patients with metastatic urothelial carcinoma: a cooperative group study. J Clin Oncol 1992 Jul;10(7):1066-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1607913

11. Kaufman D, Raghavan D, Carducci M, et al. Phase II trial of gemcitabine plus cisplatin in patients with metastatic urothelial cancer. J Clin Oncol 2000 May;18(9):1921-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10784633
12. Stadler WM, Hayden A, von der Maase H, et al. Long-term survival in phase II trials of gemcitabine plus cisplatin for advanced transitional cell cancer. Urol Oncol 2002 Jul-Aug;7(4):153-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12474531
13. Moore MJ, Winquist EW, Murray N, et al. Gemcitabine plus cisplatin, an active regimen in advanced urothelial cancer: a phase II trial of the National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group. J Clin Oncol 1999 Sep;17(9):2876-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561365
14. Bajorin DF, Dodd PM, Mazumdar M, et al. Long-term survival in metastatic transitional-cell carcinoma and prognostic factors predicting outcome of therapy. J Clin Oncol 1999 Oct;17(10):3173-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10506615
15. Herr HW, Donat SM, Bajorin DF. Post-chemotherapy surgery in patients with unresectable or regionally metastatic bladder cancer. J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):811-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176475
16. von der Maase H, Andersen L, Crinò L, et al. Weekly gemcitabine and cisplatin combination therapy in patients with transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium: a phase II clinical trial. Ann Oncol 1999 Dec;10(12):1461-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10643537
17. Weight CJ, Garcia JA, Hansel DE, et al. Lack of pathologic down-staging with neoadjuvant chemotherapy for muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma of the bladder: a contemporary series. Cancer 2009 Feb 15;115(4):792-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19127557
18. Sternberg CN, Pansadoro V, Calabrò F, et al. Can patient selection for bladder preservation be based on response to chemotherapy? Cancer 2003 Apr;97(7):1644-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655521

10.4 Multimodality bladder-preserving treatment

Recent organ-preservation strategies combine TURB, chemotherapy and radiation (1,2). The rationale for performing TURB and radiation is to achieve local tumour control. Application of systemic chemotherapy, most commonly as methotrexate, cisplatin and vinblastine (MCV), aims at the eradication of micrometastasis. Many protocols use cisplatin and/or 5-FU and, recently, gemcitabine with radiation, because of their established role as radiosensitisers. Cisplatin-based chemotherapy in combination with radiotherapy, following TURB, results in a complete response rate of 60-80%.

In a recent, small, phase 1-2 study the value of gemcitabine in multimodality treatment was emphasised, with a 5 year OS of 70.1% and DSS of 78.9% (3).

Another recent study with a mean follow up of 42 months compared TURBT + radiochemotherapy (n=331) with TURBT + radiotherapy (n=142) (4). The overall CR was high (70.4%). However, the radiochemotherapy group had a clear survival advantage (median survival 70 months) compared to the radiotherapy group (median survival 28.5 months). Long term results were dependent on stage, lymphatic invasion (LVI), residual tumour status and initial response at restaging TUR.

The importance of the radicality of the initial TUR was also confirmed in a recent Japanese study with 82 patients treated with TURBT and chemoradiotherapy (5). Initial pCR rate was relatively low (39%) in the absence of a radical initial TURBT. Still, clinical CR (84%) and survival data were high (5 year OS 77.7%, 5 year PFS 64.5%), although this included salvage treatment. Primary cT2 patients showed a significant improvement in survival compared to cT3-4 and recurrent cases.

Several other smaller recent series confirm the potential of multimodality protocols (6-9). Five year OS rates around 70% are reported. However, protocols differ for each study, as does patient selection. Recurring patients usually do badly, and so do patients with tumours progressing from NMIBC to MIBC. Low stage and complete TUR remain important prognostic variables.

It is recommended that early cystectomy is performed in individuals who do not achieve a complete response following combination therapy. About 40-45% of these patients may survive with an intact bladder at 4-5 years (2).

A comparable long-term survival rate of 50-60% at 5 year follow-up is reported by both multimodality bladder-

preserving trials and cystectomy series. However, these therapeutic approaches have never been directly compared and patients in multimodality series are highly selected (2,10-12).

A bladder-preserving multimodality strategy requires very close multidisciplinary co-operation and a high level of patient compliance. Even if a patient has shown a complete response to a multimodality bladder-preserving strategy, the bladder remains a potential source of recurrence. About half of patients can be expected to survive with their native bladder intact. A T0 status at repeat TUR after the initial transurethral resection of the primary tumour, followed by chemotherapy in combination with radiotherapy, was identified as a prognostically important variable. However, even the latter patients are at a life-long risk of developing intravesical tumour recurrences and need meticulous surveillance and multiple invasive procedures. It has been postulated that a delay in radical cystectomy due to an initial bladder-preserving approach increases the risk of lymph node metastases to a lymph-node positive rate of 26% when cystectomy becomes necessary due to treatment failure.

*10.4.1 **Conclusions and recommendations for multimodality treatment in muscle-invasive bladder cancer***

Conclusions	**LE**
In a highly selected patient population, long-term survival rates of multimodality treatment are comparable to those of early cystectomy.	3
Delay in surgical therapy can compromise survival rates.	2b

Recommendations	**GR**
Transurethral resection of bladder tumour (TURB) alone cannot be offered as a standard curative treatment option in most patients.	B
Radiotherapy alone is less effective than surgery and is only recommended as a therapeutic option when the patient is unfit for cystectomy or a multimodality bladder-preserving approach.	B
Chemotherapy alone is not recommended as primary therapy for muscle-invasive bladder cancer.	A
Surgical intervention or multimodality treatment are the preferred curative therapeutic approaches since they are more effective than radiotherapy alone.	B
Multimodality treatment could be offered as an alternative in selected, well-informed, well selected and compliant patients, especially for whom cystectomy is not an option.	B

*10.4.2 **References***

1. Weiss C, Wolze C, Engehausen DG, et al. Radiochemotherapy after transurethral resection for high-risk T1 bladder cancer: an alternative to intravesical therapy or early cystectomy? J Clin Oncol 2006 May;24(15):2318-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16710030
2. Rödel C, Grabenbauer GG, Kühn R, et al. Combined-modality treatment and selective organ preservation in invasive bladder cancer: long-term results. J Clin Oncol 2002 Jul;20(14):3061-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12118019
3. Caffo O, Fellin G, Graffer U, et al. Gemcitabine and radiotherapy plus cisplatin after transurethral resection as conservative treatment for infiltrating bladder cancer: Long-term cumulative results of 2 prospective single-institution studies. Cancer 2011 Mar 15;117(6):1190-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20960501
4. Krause FS, Walter B, Ott OJ, et al. 15-year survival rates after transurethral resection and radiochemotherapy or radiation in bladder cancer treatment. Anticancer Res 2011 Mar;31(3):985-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21498726
5. Hara T, Nishijima J, Miyachika Y, et al. Primary cT2 bladder cancer: a good candidate for radiotherapy combined with cisplatin for bladder preservation. Jpn J Clin Oncol 2011 Jul;41(7):902-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21616918
6. Zapatero A, Martin de Vidales C, Arellano R, et al. Updated results of bladder-sparing trimodality approach for invasive bladder cancer. Urol Oncol 2010 Jul-Aug;28(4):368-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19362865
7. Maarouf AM, Khalil S, Salem EA, et al. Bladder preservation multimodality therapy as an alternative to radical cystectomy for treatment of muscle invasive bladder cancer. BJU Int 2011 May;107(10): 1605-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20825396

8. Villavicencio H, Rodriguez Faba O, Palou J, et al. Bladder preservation strategy based on combined therapy in patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer: management and results at long-term follow-up. Urol Int 2010;85(3):281-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20689253
9. Aboziada MA, Hamza HM, Abdlrahem AM. Initial results of bladder preserving approach by chemo-radiotherapy in patients with muscle invading transitional cell carcinoma. J Egypt Natl Canc Inst 2009 Jun;21(2):167-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21057568
10. Zietman AL, Grocela J, Zehr E, et al. Selective bladder conservation using transurethral resection, chemotherapy, and radiation: management and consequences of Ta, T1, and Tis recurrence within the retained bladder. Urology 2001 Sep;58(3):380-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11549485
11. Shipley WU, Kaufman DS, Zehr E, et al. Selective bladder preservation by combined modality protocol treatment: long-term outcomes of 190 patients with invasive bladder cancer. Urology 2002 Jul;60(1):62-7; discussion 67-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12100923
12. Wittlinger M, Rödel CM, Weiss C, et al. Quadrimodal treatment of high-risk T1 and T2 bladder cancer: transurethral tumor resection followed by concurrent radiochemotherapy and regional deep hyperthermia. Radiother Oncol 2009 Nov;93(2):358-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837472

11. ADJUVANT CHEMOTHERAPY

Adjuvant chemotherapy for patients after radical cystectomy with pT3/4 and/or lymph node positive (N+) disease without clinically detectable metastases (M0) is under debate (1,2). The benefits of chemotherapy in the adjuvant setting include:

- Chemotherapy is administered after accurate pathological staging.
- Overtreatment in patients at low risk for micrometastases is avoided.
- No delay in definitive surgical treatment, especially in patients not sensitive to chemotherapy.

The drawbacks of adjuvant chemotherapy are:

- Assessment of in vivo chemosensitivity of the tumour is not possible.
- Delay or intolerability of chemotherapy, due to post-operative morbidity.

There is not enough evidence in favour of the routine use of adjuvant chemotherapy (2,8). To date, there have been only five published randomised trials of adjuvant chemotherapy (3-7) and one meta-analysis (8), with updated individual patient data from six trials and a total of only 491 patients for survival analysis. Furthermore, all these trials were suboptimal with serious deficiencies, including low sample size (underpowered), substandard chemotherapy, early stopping of patient entry, and flaws in design and statistical analysis, including irrelevant endpoints or a lack of recommendations concerning salvage chemotherapy for relapse or metastases (2). The data are not convincing enough to give an unequivocal recommendation for the use of adjuvant chemotherapy.

From the evidence so far available, it is unclear whether immediate adjuvant chemotherapy or chemotherapy at the time of relapse is superior or if the two approaches are equivalent with respect to the endpoint overall survival. In recent trial updates, cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy was able to produce long-term disease-free survival, even in metastatic disease, albeit mainly in patients with lymph node metastases only, and with a good performance status (9-11).

Patients with extravesical and/or node positive disease following cystectomy should be enrolled in clinical trials whenever possible. In non-protocol-eligible patients, adjuvant cisplatin-based chemotherapy is an option provided the patient is well informed about the scarce data available.

Published trials of randomised adjuvant chemotherapy have used three to four cycles of CMV (cisplatin, methotrexate, vinblastine), CISCA (cisplatin, cyclophosphamide, and adriamycine), MVA(E)C (methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycine or epirubicine, and cisplatin) and CM (cisplatin, methotrexate) (12). There is no evidence that more modern or carboplatin-containing chemotherapy combinations are as effective. Patients ineligible for cisplatin should not receive adjuvant chemotherapy.

11.1 Conclusion and recommendation for adjuvant chemotherapy

Conclusion	LE
Adjuvant chemotherapy is under debate. Neither randomised trials nor a meta-analysis have provided sufficient data to support the routine use of adjuvant chemotherapy.	1a

Recommendation	GR
Adjuvant chemotherapy is advised within clinical trials, but not as a routine therapeutic option.	A

11.2 References

1. Cohen SM, Goel A, Phillips J, et al. The role of perioperative chemotherapy in the treatment of urothelial cancer. Oncologist 2006 Jun;11(6):630-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16794242
2. Sylvester R, Sternberg C. The role of adjuvant combination chemotherapy after cystectomy in locally advanced bladder cancer: what we do not know and why. Ann Oncol 2000 Jul;11(7):851-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10997813
3. Bono A, Benvenuti C, Gibba A, et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced bladder cancer. Final analysis of a controlled multicentre study. Acta Urol Ital 1997;11(1):5-8.
4. Freiha F, Reese J, Torti FM. A randomized trial of radical cystectomy versus radical cystectomy plus cisplatin, vinblastine and methotrexate chemotherapy for muscle invasive bladder cancer. J Urol 1996 Feb;155(2):495-9; discussion 499-500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8558644
5. Stöckle M, Meyenburg W, Wellek S, et al. Adjuvant polychemotherapy of nonorgan-confined bladder cancer after radical cystectomy revisited: long-term results of a controlled prospective study and further clinical experience. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):47-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966789
6. Studer UE, Bacchi M, Biedermann C, et al. Adjuvant cisplatin chemotherapy following cystectomy for bladder cancer: results of a prospective randomized trial. J Urol 1994 Jul;152(1):81-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8201695
7. Skinner DG, Daniels JR, Russell CA, et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy following cystectomy benefits patients with deeply invasive bladder cancer. Semin Urol 1990 Nov;8(4):279-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2284533
8. Advanced Bladder Cancer (ABC) Meta-analysis Collaboration. Adjuvant chemotherapy in invasive bladder cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual patient data. Advanced Bladder Cancer (ABC) Meta-analysis Collaboration. Eur Urol 2005 Aug;48(2):189-199; discussion 199-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939530
9. von der Maase H, Sengelov L, Roberts JT, et al. Long-term survival results of a randomized trial comparing gemcitabine plus cisplatin, with methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, plus cisplatin in patients with bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2005 Jul;23(21):4602-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034041
10. Sternberg CN. Perioperative chemotherapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer to enhance survival and/or as a strategy for bladder preservation. Semin Oncol 2007 Apr;34(2):122-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382795
11. Stadler WM, Hayden A, von der Maase H, et al. Long-term survival in phase II trials of gemcitabine plus cisplatin for advanced transitional cell cancer. Urol Oncol 2002 Jul-Aug;7(4):153-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12474531
12. Lehmann J, Retz M, Wiemers C, et al; AUO-AB 05/95. Adjuvant cisplatin plus methotrexate versus methotrexate, vinblastine, epirubicin, and cisplatin in locally advanced bladder cancer: results of a randomized, multicenter, phase III trial (AUO-AB 05/95). J Clin Oncol 2005 Aug;23(22):4963-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15939920

12. METASTATIC DISEASE

Approximately 30% of patients with urothelial cancer present with muscle-invasive disease; about half will relapse after radical cystectomy depending on the pathological stage of the primary tumour and the nodal status. Local recurrence accounts for about 30% of relapses, whereas distant metastases are more common. About 10-15% of patients are already metastatic at diagnosis (1). Before the development of effective chemotherapy, patients with metastatic urothelial cancer rarely exceeded the median survival of 3-6 months (2).

12.1 Prognostic factors and treatment decisions

Bladder cancer is a chemosensitive tumour. Response rates differ with respect to patient-related factors and pre-treatment disease. Prognostic factors for response and survival have been established. In a multivariate analysis, Karnofsky PS of 80% or less and the presence of visceral metastases were independently prognostic of poor survival after treatment with MVAC (methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycine and cisplatin). These so-called 'Bajorin' prognostic factors (3) have also been validated for newer combination chemotherapies (4,5) and are crucial for assessing phase II study results and stratifying phase III trials (6,7). Additional data on the prognostic value of elevated alkaline phosphatase and the number of disease sites (more or less than three) were generated prospectively (8). A retrospective analysis showed that, in elderly patients, an ECOG (Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group) PS 2-3 and a haemoglobin level of < 10 mg/dL were independent predictors of poor survival (9). Age itself has no impact on response or toxic events (9).

For patients refractory to platinum or progressing shortly after platinum based combination chemotherapy, four prognostic groups have been established, based on three adverse factors that had been developed in a vinflunine treated patient population and validated in an independent data set: Hb < 10 g/dL, the presence of liver metastases and ECOG PS >1 (10).

*12.1.1 **Comorbidity in metastatic disease***

Comorbidity is defined as „the presence of one or more diseases in addition to an index disease". Patients with a history of cancer have an average of three co-morbid conditions and co-morbidity is the rule, rather than the exception. Incidence and prevalence of co-morbidity increase with age. However, despite the importance of co-morbidity in clinical practice, it has not gained a considerable role in clinical trials, medical statistics and clinical practice (11). Co-morbidities are an important predictor of clinical outcome (12).

In multiple publications, co-mobidities proved predictive in 1-5 year mortality rates, which was true only in part for age and sex.

Source	N	Comorbidity	Predictive capacity
Charlson[13]	218	+	5-year mortality
Inouye[14]	318	+	2-year mortality
Lee[15]	8009	+	4-year mortality
Walter[16]	1427	+	1-year mortality

Comorbidity increases with age. However, chronologic age does not necessarily correlate with functional impairment. Physiologic impairment varies substantially between individuals. A number of definitions exist trying to establish how to select patients better as potentially "fit" or "unfit" candidates for chemotherapy. Age itself is not among them.

The EORTC conducted the first randomized phase II/III trial for „unfit" urothelial carcinoma patients (17). Their definition of „fit" and „unfit" for cisplatin is:

- „fit": GFR ≥ 60 ml/min and PS 0-1
- „unfit": GFR < 60 ml/min and /or PS 2

Furthermore and based on an expert survey; eligibility criteria for clinical trials enrolling patients with metastastatic UC "unfit" for cisplatin-based chemotherapy are: grade ≥ 2 audiometric loss and peripheral neuropathy and NYHA class III heart failure (18).

For urothelial cancer, more than 50% of patients are not eligible for cisplatin based chemotherapy (19-22).

Patient selection for systemic chemotherapy is key. There are a number of tools, which, so far, have not been able to solve this dilemma. Performance status is not accurate enough, particular in patients > 75 years of age. For measuring functional status, the comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA) has proven to be more sensitive than the mere estimate of the physician (23). The CGA would most likely be helpful but, as yet,

has not been validated for urothelial cancer patients.
As for comorbidity, the Charlson score is not used as a standard. Renal function assessment is of utmost importance in the urothelial cancer population. Calculated creatinine clearance (crcl) with current formulas tends to under-estimate crcl in pts > 65 years compared to measured crcl (19,24).

The CGA includes: functional status, co-morbidities, socio- economic circumstances, cognition, emotional perception, co-medication, nutrition and geriatric syndrome (25).

Notwithstanding the clear advantages of this tool (description of physiologic aging, detection of reversible problems and issues, cognitive function assessment) the drawbacks preventing its widespread use in clinical practice is the fact that it is a resource intensive activity (both for time and staff involvement). This tool could potentially be the basis of a more user-friendly, accurate, questionnaire. However, validation in studies will be needed before standard use can be recommended.

12.2 Single-agent chemotherapy

Varying response rates of single-agent first-line chemotherapy have been reported with only 12% for cisplatin compared to MVAC (7), 12% for carboplatin (26), 42% for paclitaxel (27), 31% for docetaxel (28), 29% for methotrexate, 19% for adriamycin, 15% for epirubicin, 13% for mitomycin C, 35% for 5-FU, 14% for vinblastine, 29% for ifosfamide and 8% for cyclophosphamide (29,30). The most robust single-agent data is a response rate of about 25% for gemcitabine for first- and second-line use in several, larger-sized, phase II trials (31-38).

Responses with single agents are usually short-lived and complete responses are rare. Of note, no long-term disease-free survival has been reported with single-agent chemotherapy. The median survival in such patients is only about 6-9 months. Patients with PS WHO 3-4, with or without additional negative prognostic factors, are not expected to benefit from combination chemotherapy. The most appropriate approach for this patient group is best supportive care or, at most, single-agent chemotherapy.

12.3 Standard first-line chemotherapy for 'fit' patients

Cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy has been the standard of care since the late 1980s. MVAC has been proven superior to cisplatin monotherapy and CISCA (cisplatin, cyclophosphamide and adriamycine) (7,39) and, more recently, to cisplatin/docetaxel (40). MVAC and gemcitabine/cisplatin (GC) have prolonged survival up to 14.8 and 13.8 months, respectively (41-43). The lower toxicity of GC (43), however, has resulted in GC increasingly becoming a new standard regimen (44).

Neither of the two combinations was proven to be superior over the other, but equivalence was not tested, with response rates of 46% and 49% for MVAC and GC, respectively. The long-term survival results confirmed the anticipated equivalence of the two regimens (8). The major difference between the above-mentioned combinations was toxicity, with GC being less toxic (43). MVAC is better tolerated with the use of GCSF (40,44).

High-dose intensity MVAC (HD-MVAC) with GCSF is less toxic and more efficacious than standard MVAC in terms of dose density, complete response and 2-year survival rate. However, there is no significant difference in median survival between the two regimens (45,46).

All disease sites have been shown to respond to cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy, but have been reported most often in lymph nodes. A response rate of 66% and 77% with MVAC and HD-MVAC, respectively, has been reported in retroperitoneal lymph nodes versus 29% and 33% at extranodal sites (45). The sites of disease also have an impact on long-term survival. In lymph-node-only disease, 20.9% of patients were alive at 5 years compared to only 6.8% of patients with visceral metastases (8).

Further intensification of treatment using new triplets, dose-dense schedules or adding targeted therapies is still being investigated. These approaches should be reserved for clinical trials and are not suitable for routine use (47,48).

12.4 Carboplatin-containing chemotherapy in 'fit' patients

Carboplatin-containing chemotherapy is not proven to be equivalent to cisplatin combinations. However, it is probably inferior and therefore should not be considered interchangeable or standard. The only randomised phase III study of carboplatin-containing chemotherapy had a disappointing response rate of only 28.2% in the investigational arm (paclitaxel/carboplatin) compared to MVAC and had to be closed down early because of a low accrual rate. There is therefore no evidence that this doublet might have adequate efficacy for first-line use (49).

Various carboplatin versus cisplatin combination chemotherapies in randomised phase II trials have produced lower complete response rates and a shorter overall survival for the carboplatin arms (50-52).

12.5 Non-platinum combination chemotherapy

Gemcitabine and paclitaxel combinations in different schedules have been studied as both first- and second-line treatments. Apart from severe pulmonary toxicity with a weekly schedule of both drugs, this combination has been well tolerated and produced response rates between 38% and 60% in both lines. As there has not been a randomised comparison to standard cisplatin chemotherapy, non-platinum combination-chemotherapy is not recommended for first-line use in patients who are fit enough (38,53-59).

12.6 Chemotherapy in patients 'unfit' for cisplatin

Up to 50% of patients are ineligible for cisplatin-containing chemotherapy, either because of a poor PS and/or impaired renal function, or because of co-morbidity preventing high-volume hydration (60,61). The first randomised phase II/III trial in this setting was conducted by the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer and compared methotrexate/carboplatin/vinblastine (M-CAVI) and carboplatin/gemcitabine (Carbo/Gem) in patients unfit for cisplatin. Both regimens were active. Severe acute toxicity (SAT) was 13.6% in patients given Carbo/Gem versus 23% on M-CAVI, while the overall response rate was 42% on Carbo/Gem and 30% on M-CAVI. Further analysis showed that in patients with PS 2 and impaired renal function, combination chemotherapy provides limited benefit (62). The overall response rate and SAT were both 26% for the former group, and 20% and 24%, respectively, for the latter group (62). Recent phase III data has confirmed these results (63).

12.7 Second-line treatment

Second-line chemotherapy data are highly variable and prognostic factors are unclear in this setting. Suggested prognostic factors include the choice of first-line chemotherapy (peri-operative/metastatic), prior chemosensitivity, duration of response to first-line treatment, presence of visceral metastases, PS and the 'Bajorin'-prognostic factors. Until recently, there was no defined chemotherapy standard in this setting. A reasonable strategy may be to offer selected patients who initially responded to platinum-containing regimens, another course 12 months, or more, after the initial treatment.

Second-line response rates of paclitaxel (weekly), docetaxel, oxaliplatin, ifosfamide, topotecan, lapatinib, gefitinib and bortezomib range between 0% and 13% in small phase II trials (64-72). Although gemcitabine has also shown excellent response rates in second-line use (31,35-38), most patients already receive this drug as part of their front-line treatment.

In a phase II trial, pemetrexed 500 mg/m^2, given every 3 weeks, showed a promising response rate of 28% and manageable toxicity with the addition of vitamin B12 and folinic acid supplementation and dexamethasone prophylaxis (73). The excellent response rate could not be confirmed by a second, smaller sized trial (74).

Paclitaxel/gemcitabine showed response rates of 38-60%, depending on pre-treatment response and indication of prior chemotherapy. Unfortunately, no adequate randomised phase III trial has been conducted to assess the true value of this second-line combination (2,54,58).

Vinflunine, a novel third-generation vinca alkaloid, has shown objective response rates of 18% and disease control in 67% (75). A phase III trial of vinflunine plus best supportive care (BSC) randomised against BSC alone in patients progressing after first-line treatment with platinum-containing combination chemotherapy for metastatic disease was published recently (763). The results showed modest activity (overall response rate, 8.6%), a clinical benefit with a favourable safety profile and, most importantly, a survival benefit in favour of vinflunine, which was statistically significant in the eligible patient population (not in the ITT population). For second-line treatment in advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer, this trial reached the highest level of evidence ever reported. Currently, vinflunine is the only approved second-line treatment; any other treatment should take place in the context of clinical trials.

12.8 Low-volume disease and post-chemotherapy surgery

With cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy, excellent response rates may be obtained in patients with lymph node metastases only, good PS and an adequate renal function, including a high degree of complete responses, with up to 20% of patients achieving long-term disease-free survival (8,46,77,78). Stage migration may play a role in this positive prognostic development. A retrospective study of post-chemotherapy surgery after a partial or complete response indicated that post-chemotherapy surgery may contribute to long-term disease-free survival in selected patients (79-81).

12.9 Treatment of bone metastases

The prevalence of metastatic bone disease (MBD) in patients with advanced/metastatic urothelial cancer has been reported to be 30-40% (82). Skeletal complications due to MBD have a detrimental effect on pain and quality of life and are also associated with increased mortality (83). Bisphosphonates reduce and delay skeletal-related events (SRE) due to bone metastases by inhibiting bone resorption. In a small pilot study in patients with bladder cancer, SRE of bone metastases could be delayed (84). Denosumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody that binds to, and neutralizes, the receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand (RANKL), thereby inhibiting osteoclast function and preventing generalized bone resorption and local bone destruction. Denosumab was noninferior to zoledronic acid (ZA) in preventing or delaying first on-study SRE in patients with advanced cancer metastatic to bone, including also a few urothelial carcinoma patients (85). Denosumab has been recently approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMA) for the treatment of patients with bone metastases of solid tumors. Patients with MBD, irrespective of the cancer type, should be considered for bone targeted treatment (83).

Patients treated with either zoledronic acid or denosumab should be informed about possible side effects and prophylactic management of osteonecrosis of the jaw and hypocalcemia, which is more common in denosumab treated patients. Aggressive calcium and vitamin D supplementation is recommended. Dosing regimens of ZA should follow respective regulatory recommendations and should be adjusted according to pre-existing medical conditions (86). With the use of denosumab, no follow up of renal function is required because the agent has no potential nephrotoxicity and no dose adjustments are required.

12.10 Conclusions and recommendations for metastatic disease

Conclusion	LE
Performance status and the presence or absence of visceral metastases are independent prognostic factors for survival. These factors are at least as important as the type of chemotherapy administered.	3
Cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy is able to achieve a median survival of up to 14 months, with long-term disease-free survival reported in about 15% of patients with nodal disease and good performance status.	1b
Single-agent chemotherapy provides low response rates of usually short duration.	2a
Carboplatin-combination chemotherapy is less effective than cisplatin-based chemotherapy in terms of complete response and survival.	2a
Non-platinum combination chemotherapy has produced substantial responses in first- and second-line use, but has not been tested against standard chemotherapy in fit patients or in a purely unfit patient group.	2a
To date, there is no defined standard chemotherapy for 'unfit' patients with advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer.	2b
Vinflunine reached the highest level of evidence ever reported for second-line use.	1b
Post-chemotherapy surgery after a partial or complete response may contribute to long-term disease-free survival.	3
Zoledronic acid and denusomab have been studied and approved for all cancer types including urothelial cancer, as they have been shown to reduce and delay skeletal-related events in metastatic bone disease.	1

Recommendations	GR
The selection of treatment should be guided by prognostic factors.	B
First-line treatment for "fit" patients:	
Use cisplatin-containing combination chemotherapy with GC, MVAC, preferably with GCSF, or HD-MVAC with GCSF.	A
Carboplatin and non-platinum combination chemotherapy are not recommended.	B
First-line treatment in patients ineligible ('unfit") for cisplatin:	
Use carboplatin combination chemotherapy or single agents.	C

For cisplatin-ineligible patients ('unfit') with either PS 2 or impaired renal function, or with 0-1 poor Bajorin prognostic factors, first-line treatment is carboplatin-containing combination chemotherapy, preferably with gemcitabine/carboplatin.	A
Second-line treatment:	
In patients progressing after platinum-based combination chemotherapy for metastatic disease, vinflunine should be offered. Alternatively, treatment within a clinical trial setting may be offered.	A*
Zoledronic acid or denosumab, are recommended for the treatment of bone metastases.	B

** Grade A recommendation is weakened by a problem of statistical significance.*
BSC = best supportive care; GC = gemcitabine plus cisplatin; GCSF = granulocyte colony stimulating factor; GFR = glomular filtration rate; MVAC = methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; HD MVAC = high-dose methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; PS = performance status

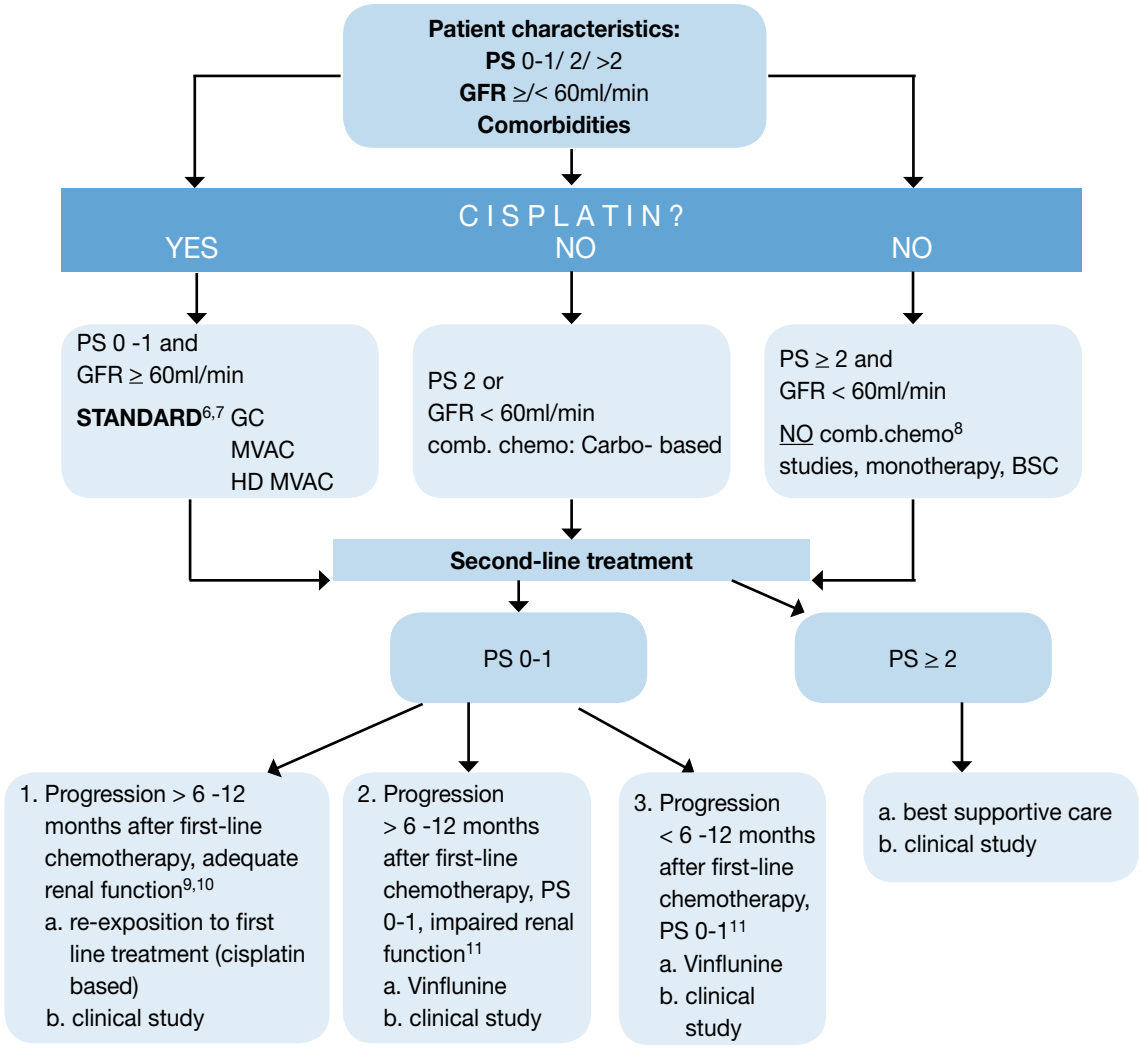
12.11 Biomarkers

Statistically relatively modest, disease control rates, but sporadically, remarkable responses in some patients with urothelial bladder cancer have led to the investigation of biomarkers for the assessment of prognosis after surgery and the potential value of perioperative chemotherapy, and as a predictor for response to chemotherapy or for its monitoring. Most of the biomarkers were associated with tumour angiogenesis. To date, small studies, usually retrospective, have investigated microvessel density, altered p53 tumour expression (87), serum vascular endothelial growth factor (88), urinary and tissue basic fibroblast growth factor (89), urinary (wild type and mutant) and tissue fibroblast growth factor receptor-3 (90), and more recently thrombospondin-1 (91), the detection of circulating tumour cells (92,93) and multi-drug resistance gene expression (94). Although a few biomarkers have shown potential, none has sufficient evidence to support their clinical routine use (LE: 3).

Recommendation on the use of biomarkers	**GR**
Currently, no biomarkers can be recommended in daily clinical practice since they have no impact on predicting outcome, treatment decisions or monitoring therapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer.	A*

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

Figure 2: Flowchart for the management of metastatic urothelial cancer



BSC = best supportive care; GC = gemcitabine plus cisplatin; GFR = glomular filtration rate; MVAC = methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; HD MVAC = high-dose methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin; PS = performance status

12.12 References

1. Rosenberg JE, Carroll PR, Small EJ. Update on chemotherapy for advanced bladder cancer. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):14-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947569
2. Sternberg CN, Vogelzang NJ. Gemcitabine, paclitaxel, pemetrexed and other newer agents in urothelial and kidney cancers. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2003 Jun;46(Suppl):S105-S15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12850531
3. Bajorin DF, Dodd PM, Mazumdar M, et al. Long-term survival in metastatic transitional-cell carcinoma and prognostic factors predicting outcome of therapy. J Clin Oncol 1999 Oct;17(10):3173-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10506615
4. Bellmunt J, Albanell J, Paz-Ares L, et al; Spanish Oncology Genitourinary Group. Pretreatment prognostic factors for survival in patients with advanced urothelial tumors treated in a phase I/II trial with paclitaxel, cisplatin, and gemcitabine. Cancer 2002 Aug;95(4):751-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12209718
5. Sengeløv L, Kamby C, von der Maase H. Metastatic urothelial cancer: evaluation of prognostic factors and change in prognosis during the last twenty years. Eur Urol 2001 Jun;39(6):634-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11464051
6. Bajorin D. The phase III candidate: can we improve the science of selection? J Clin Oncol 2004 Jan;22(2):211-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665614

7. Loehrer PJ Sr, Einhorn LH, Elson PJ, et al. A randomized comparison of cisplatin alone or in combination with methotrexate, vinblastine, and doxorubicin in patients with metastatic urothelial carcinoma: a cooperative group study. J Clin Oncol 1992 Jul;10(7):1066-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1607913
8. von der Maase H, Sengelov L, Roberts JT, et al. Long-term survival results of a randomized trial comparing gemcitabine plus cisplatin, with methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, plus cisplatin in patients with bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2005 Jul;23(21):4602-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034041
9. Bamias A, Efstathiou E, Moulopoulos LA, et al. The outcome of elderly patients with advanced urothelial carcinoma after platinum-based combination chemotherapy. Ann Oncol 2005 Feb;16(2): 307-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15668289
10. Bellmunt J, Choueiri TK, Fougeray R, et al. Prognostic factors in patients with advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract experiencing treatment failure with platinum-containing regimens. J Clin Oncol 2010 Apr 10;28(11):1850-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20231682
11. Feinstein AR. The pre-therapeutic classification of co-morbidity in chronic disease. J Chronic Dis 1970;23:455–69.
12. Pal SK, Hurria A. Impact of age, sex, and comorbidity on cancer therapy and disease progression. J Clin Oncol 2010 Sep 10;28(26):4086-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20644100
13. Charlson M, Szatrowski TP, Peterson J, et al. Validation of a combined comorbidity index. J Clin Epidemiol 1994 Nov;47(11):1245-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7722560
14. Inouye SK, Peduzzi PN, Robison JT, et al. Importance of functional measures in predicting mortality among older hospitalized patients. JAMA 1998 Apr;279(15):1187-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9555758
15. Lee SJ, Lindquist K, Segal MR, et al. Development and validation of a prognostic index for 4-year mortality in older adults. JAMA 2006 Feb;295(7):801-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16478903
16. Walter LC, Brand RJ, Counsell SR, et al. Development and validation of a prognostic index for 1-year mortality in older adults after hospitalization. JAMA 2001 Jun;285(23):2987-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11410097
17. De Santis M, Bellmunt J, Mead G, et al. Randomized phase II/III trial assessing gemcitabine/ carboplatin and methotrexate/carboplatin/vinblastine in patients with advanced urothelial cancer "unfit" for cisplatin-based chemotherapy: phase II--results of EORTC study 30986. J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 20;27(33):5634-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786668
18. Galsky MD, Hahn NM, Rosenberg J, et al. Treatment of patients with metastatic urothelial cancer "unfit" for Cisplatin-based chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 2011 Jun 10;29(17):2432-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21555688
19. Dash A, Galsky MD, vickers AJ, et al. Impact of renal impairment on eligibility for adjuvant cisplatin-based chemotherapy in patients with urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Cancer 2006 Aug ;107(3):506-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16773629
20. Nogue-Aliguer M, Carles J, Arrivi A, et al.. Gemcitabine and carboplatin in advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary tract: an alternative therapy. Cancer 2003 May 1;97(9):2180-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12712469
21. Balducci L, Extermann M. Management of cancer in the older person: a practical approach. Oncologist 2000;5(3):224-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10884501
22. De Santis, Bachner M. New developments in first- and second-line chemotherapy for transitional cell, squamous cell and adenocarcinoma of the bladder. Curr Opin Urol 2007;17(5):363–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17762632
23. Wedding U, Kodding D, Pientka L. Physicians' judgement and comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA) select different patients as fit for chemotherapy. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2007 Oct;64(1):1-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17613243

24. Raj GV, Iasonos A, Herr H, Donat SM. Formulas calculating creatinine clearance are inadequate for determining eligibility for Cisplatin-based chemotherapy in bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jul 1;24(19):3095-100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16809735
25. Balducci L, Yates J. General guidelines for the management of older patients with cancer. Oncology 2000 Nov;14(11A):221-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11195414
26. Bellmunt J, Albanell J, Gallego OS, et al. Carboplatin, methotrexate, and vinblastine in patients with bladder cancer who were ineligible for cisplatin-based chemotherapy. Cancer 1992 Oct;70(7):1974-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1525774
27. Roth BJ, Dreicer R, Einhorn LH, et al. Significant activity of paclitaxel in advanced transitional-cell carcinoma of the urothelium: a phase II trial of the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 1994 Nov;12(11):2264-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7525883
28. de Wit R, Kruit WH, Stoter G, et al. Docetaxel (Taxotere): an active agent in metastatic urothelial cancer; results of a phase II study in non-chemotherapy-pretreated patients. Br J Cancer 1998 Nov;78(10):1342-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823976
29. Yagoda A. Chemotherapy of urothelial tract tumors. Cancer 1987 Aug;60(3 Suppl):574-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3297286
30. Roth BJ, Bajorin DF. Advanced bladder cancer: the need to identify new agents in the post-M-VAC (methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin) world. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 2):894-900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853569
31. von der Maase H. Gemcitabine in transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. Expert Rev Anticancer Ther 2003 Feb;3(1):11-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12597345
32. Moore MJ, Tannock IF, Ernst DS, et al. Gemcitabine: a promising new agent in the treatment of advanced urothelial cancer. J Clin Oncol 1997 Dec;15(12):3441-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9396395
33. Stadler WM, Kuzel T, Roth B, et al. Phase II study of single-agent gemcitabine in previously untreated patients with metastatic urothelial cancer. J Clin Oncol 1997 Nov;15(11):3394-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9363871
34. Marenco D, Castagneto B, Zai S. Gemcitabine monochemotherapy in the elderly patient with advanced bladder cancer. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2002;21:150b (abstr 2414).
35. Pollera CF, Ceribelli A, Crecco M, et al. Weekly gemcitabine in advanced bladder cancer: a preliminary report from a phase I study. Ann Oncol 1994 Feb;5(2):182-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8186164
36. Lorusso V, Pollera CF, Antimi M, et al. A phase II study of gemcitabine in patients with transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary tract previously treated with platinum. Italian Co-operative Group on Bladder Cancer. Eur J Cancer 1998 Jul;34(8):1208-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9849481
37. Gebbia V, Testa A, Borsellino N, et al. Single agent 2',2'-difluorodeoxycytidine in the treatment of metastatic urothelial carcinoma: a phase II study. Clin Ter 1999 Jan-Feb;150(1):11-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367539
38. Albers P, Siener R, Härtlein M, et al; German TCC Study Group of the German Association of Urologic Oncology. Gemcitabine monotherapy as second-line treatment in cisplatin-refractory transitional cell carcinoma - prognostic factors for response and improvement of quality of life. Onkologie 2002 Feb;25(1):47-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11893883
39. Logothetis CJ, Dexeus FH, Finn L, et al. A prospective randomized trial comparing MVAC and CISCA chemotherapy for patients with metastatic urothelial tumors. J Clin Oncol 1990 Jun;8(6):1050-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2189954
40. Bamias A, Aravantinos G, Deliveliotis C, et al; Hellenic Cooperative Oncology Group. Docetaxel and cisplatin with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) versus MVAC with G-CSF in advanced urothelial carcinoma: a multicenter, randomized, phase III study from the Hellenic Cooperative Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 2004 Jan;22(2):220-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665607

41. Sternberg CN, Yagoda A, Scher HI, et al. Methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin for advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. Efficacy and patterns of response and relapse. Cancer 1989 Dec;64(12):2448-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2819654
42. Sternberg CN, Yagoda A, Scher HI, et al. M-VAC (methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin) for advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. J Urol 1988 Mar;139(3):461-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3343727
43. von der Maase H, Hansen SW, Roberts JT, et al. Gemcitabine and cisplatin versus methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin in advanced or metastatic bladder cancer: results of a large, randomized, multinational, multicenter, phase III study. J Clin Oncol 2000 Sep;18(17):3068-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11001674
44. Gabrilove JL, Jakubowski A, Scher H, et al. Effect of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor on neutropenia and associated morbidity due to chemotherapy for transitional-cell carcinoma of the urothelium. N Engl J Med 1988 Jun;318(22):1414-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2452983
45. Sternberg CN, de Mulder PH, Schornagel JH, et al; European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genitourinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group. Randomized phase III trial of high-dose-intensity methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin (MVAC) chemotherapy and recombinant human granulocyte colony-stimulating factor versus classic MVAC in advanced urothelial tract tumors: European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Protocol no. 30924. J Clin Oncol 2001 May;19(10):2638-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11352955
46. Sternberg CN, de Mulder P, Schornagel JH, et al; EORTC Genito-Urinary Cancer Group. Seven year update of an EORTC phase III trial of high-dose intensity M-VAC chemotherapy and G-CSF versus classic M-VAC in advanced urothelial tract tumours. Eur J Cancer 2006 Jan;42(1):50-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16330205
47. Milowsky MI, Nanus DM, Maluf FC, et al. Final results of sequential doxorubicin plus gemcitabine and ifosfamide, paclitaxel, and cisplatin chemotherapy in patients with metastatic or locally advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep 1;27(25):4062-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19636012
48. Hussain MH, MacVicar GR, Petrylak DP, et al; National Cancer Institute. Trastuzumab, paclitaxel, carboplatin, and gemcitabine in advanced human epidermal growth factor receptor-2/neu-positive urothelial carcinoma: results of a multicenter phase II National Cancer Institute trial. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jun 1;25(16):2218-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17538166
49. Dreicer R, Manola J, Roth BJ, et al. Phase III trial of methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin versus carboplatin and paclitaxel in patients with advanced carcinoma of the urothelium. Cancer 2004 Apr;100(8):1639-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15073851
50. Petrioli R, Frediani B, Manganelli A, et al. Comparison between a cisplatin-containing regimen and a carboplatin-containing regimen for recurrent or metastatic bladder cancer patients. A randomized phase II study. Cancer 1996 Jan;77(2):344-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625244
51. Carteni G, Dogliotti L, Crucitta E, et al. Phase II randomised trial of gemcitabine plus cisplatin (GP) and gemcitabine plus carboplatin (GC) in patients (pts) with advanced or metastatic transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium (TCCU). Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2003;22: abstr 1543.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=23&abstractID=102093
52. Bellmunt J, Ribas A, Eres N, et al. Carboplatin-based versus cisplatin-based chemotherapy in the treatment of surgically incurable advanced bladder carcinoma. Cancer 1997 Nov;80(10):1966-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366300
53. Sternberg CN, Calabrò F, Pizzocaro G, et al. Chemotherapy with an every-2-week regimen of gemcitabine and paclitaxel in patients with transitional cell carcinoma who have received prior cisplatin-based therapy. Cancer 2001 Dec;92(12):2993-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11753976
54. Meluch AA, Greco FA, Burris HA 3rd, et al. Paclitaxel and gemcitabine chemotherapy for advanced transitional-cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract: a phase II trial of the Minnie pearl cancer research network. J Clin Oncol 2001 Jun;19(12):3018-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11408496

55. Parameswaran R, Fisch MJ, Ansari RH, et al. A Hoosier Oncology Group phase II study of weekly paclitaxel and gemcitabine in advanced transitional cell (TCC) carcinoma of the bladder. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2001;200:abstr 798.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=10&abstractID=798
56. Guardino AE, Srinivas S. Gemcitabine and paclitaxel as second line chemotherapy for advanced urothelial malignancies. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2002;21: abstr 2413.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=16&abstractID=2413
57. Fechner GH, Siener R, Reimann M, et al. Randomized phase II trial of gemcitabine and paclitaxel with or without maintenance treatment in patients with cisplatin refractory transitional cell carcinoma. J Urol 2002;167(Suppl 4):abstr 284.
58. Kaufman DS, Carducci MA, Kuzel T, et al. Gemcitabine (G) and paclitaxel (P) every two weeks (GP2w): a completed multicenter phase II trial in locally advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer (UC). Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2002;21: abstr 767.
http://www.asco.org/ASCO/Abstracts+&+Virtual+Meeting/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=16&abstractID=767
59. Calabrò F, Lorusso V, Rosati G, et al. Gemcitabine and paclitaxel every 2 weeks in patients with previously untreated urothelial carcinoma. Cancer 2009 Jun 15;115(12):2652-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19396817
60. Nogué-Aliguer M, Carles J, Arrivi A, et al; Spanish Cooperative Group. Gemcitabine and carboplatin in advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urinary tract: an alternative therapy. Cancer 2003 May;97(9):2180-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12712469
61. Balducci L. Evidence-based management of cancer in the elderly. Cancer Control 2000 Jul-Aug;7(4):368-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10895132
62. De Santis M, Bellmunt J, Mead G, et al. Randomized phase II/III trial assessing gemcitabine/carboplatin and methotrexate/carboplatin/vinblastine in patients with advanced urothelial cancer "unfit" for cisplatin-based chemotherapy: phase II--results of EORTC study 30986. J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 20;27(33):5634-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786668
63. De Santis M, Bellmunt J, Mead G, et al. Randomized Phase II/III Trial Assessing Gemcitabine/Carboplatin and Methotrexate/Carboplatin/Vinblastine in Patients With Advanced Urothelial Cancer Who Are Unfit for Cisplatin-Based Chemotherapy: EORTC Study 30986. J Clin Oncol 2011 Dec 12. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22162575
64. Vaughn DJ, Broome CM, Hussain M, et al. Phase II trial of weekly paclitaxel in patients with previously treated advanced urothelial cancer. J Clin Oncol 2002 Feb;20(4):937-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11844814
65. Papamichael D, Gallagher CJ, Oliver RT, et al. Phase II study of paclitaxel in pretreated patients with locally advanced/metastatic cancer of the bladder and ureter. Br J Cancer 1997;75(4):606-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052419
66. McCaffrey JA, Hilton S, Mazumdar M, et al. Phase II trial of docetaxel in patients with advanced or metastatic transitional-cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 1997 May;15(5):1853-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9164195
67. Moore M, Winquist E, Vokes E, et al. Phase II study of oxaliplatin in patients with inoperable, locally advanced or metastatic transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract (TCC) who have received prior chemotherapy. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2003;22: abstr 1638.
http://www.asco.org/ASCO/Abstracts+%26+Virtual+Meeting/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=23&abstractID=100319
68. Witte RS, Manola J, Burch PA, et al. Topotecan in previously treated advanced urothelial carcinoma: an ECOG phase II trial. Invest New Drugs 1998;16(2):191-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9848585
69. Petrylak D, Faulkner J, Van Veldhuizen P, et al. Evaluation of ZD1839 for advanced transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) of the urothelium: a Southwest Oncology Group Trial. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2003;22: abstr 1619.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=23&abstractID=104215

70. Sridhar S, Stadler W, Le L, et al. Phase II study of bortezomib in advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer. A trial of the Princess Margaret Hospital [PMH] Phase II Consortium. J Clin Oncol, 2005 ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings, Vol 23, No 16S Part I of II (June 1 Suppl), 2005:4677. http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=34&abstractID=33648
71. Wulfing C, Machiels J, Richiels D, et al. A single arm, multicenter, open-label, ph II study of lapatinib as 2L treatment of pts with locally advanced/metastatic transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) of the urothelial tract. J Clin Oncol, 2005 ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings, Vol 23, No 16S, Part I of II (June 1 Suppl) 2005:4594. http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=34&abstractID=31739
72. Witte RS, Elson P, Bono B, et al. Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group phase II trial of ifosfamide in the treatment of previously treated advanced urothelial carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 1997 Feb;15(2):589-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053481
73. Sweeney CJ, Roth BJ, Kabbinavar FF, et al. Phase II study of pemetrexed for second-line treatment of transitional cell cancer of the urothelium. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jul;24(21):3451-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16849761
74. Galsky MD, Mironov S, Iasonos A, et al. Phase II trial of pemetrexed as second-line therapy in patients with metastatic urothelial carcinoma. Invest New Drugs 2007 Jun;25(3):265-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17146733
75. Culine S, Theodore C, De Santis M, et al. A phase II study of vinflunine in bladder cancer patients progressing after first-line platinum-containing regimen. Br J Cancer 2006 May;94(10):1395-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622447
76. Bellmunt J, Théodore C, Demkov T, et al. Phase III trial of vinflunine plus best supportive care compared with best supportive care alone after a platinum-containing regimen in patients with advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep 20;27(27):4454-61 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19687335
77. Stadler WM. Gemcitabine doublets in advanced urothelial cancer. Semin Oncol 2002 Feb;29(1 Suppl 3):15-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11894003
78. Hussain M, Vaishampayan U, Du W, et al. Combination paclitaxel, carboplatin, and gemcitabine is an active treatment for advanced urothelial cancer. J Clin Oncol 2001 May;19(9):2527-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11331332
79. Herr HW, Donat SM, Bajorin DF. Post-chemotherapy surgery in patients with unresectable or regionally metastatic bladder cancer. J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):811-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176475
80. Sweeney P, Millikan R, Donat M, et al. Is there a therapeutic role for post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in metastatic transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder? J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2113-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771730
81. Siefker-Radtke AO, Walsh GL, Pisters LL, et al. Is there a role for surgery in the management of metastatic urothelial cancer? The M.D. Anderson experience. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):145-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665863
82. Coleman RE. Metastatic bone disease: clinical features, pathophysiology and treatment strategies. Cancer Treat Rev 2001 Jun;27(3):165-76. Review. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11417967
83. Aapro M, Abrahamsson PA, Body JJ, et al. Guidance on the use of bisphosphonates in solid tumours: recommendations of an international expert panel. Ann Oncol 2008 Mar;19(3):420-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17906299
84. Zaghloul MS, Boutrus R, El-Hossieny H, et al. A prospective, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of zoledronic acid in bony metastatic bladder cancer. Int J Clin Oncol 2010 Aug;15(4):382-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20354750
85. Henry DH, Costa L, Goldwasser F, et al. Randomized, double-blind study of denosumab versus zoledronic acid in the treatment of bone metastases in patients with advanced cancer (excluding breast and prostate cancer) or multiple myeloma. J Clin Oncol 2011 Mar;29(9):1125-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21343556

86. Rosen LS, Gordon D, Tchekmedyian NS, et al. Long-term efficacy and safety of zoledronic acid in the treatment of skeletal metastases in patients with nonsmall cell lung carcinoma and other solid tumors: a randomized, Phase III, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Cancer 2004 Jun 15;100(12):2613-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15197804
87. Youssef RF, Mitra AP, Bartsch G Jr, et al. Molecular targets and targeted therapies in bladder cancer management. World J Urol 2009;27:9-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19039591
88. Shariat SF, Youssef RF, Gupta A, et al. Association of angiogenesis related markers with bladder cancer outcomes and other molecular markers. J Urol 2010;183:1744-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299037
89. Song S, Wientjes MG, Gan Y, et al. Fibroblast growth factors: an epigenetic mechanism of broad spectrum resistance to anticancer drugs. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97:8658-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10890892
90. Gomez-Roman JJ, Saenz P, Molina M, et al. Fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 is overexpressed in urinary tract carcinomas and modulates the neoplastic cell growth. Clin Cancer Res 2005;11 (2 Pt 1):459-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15701828
91. Ioachim E, Michael MC, Salmas M, et al. Thrombospondin-1 expression in urothelial carcinoma: prognostic significance and association with p53 alterations, tumour angiogenesis and extracellular matrix components. BMC Cancer 2006;6:140. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16732887
92. Gallagher DJ, Milowsky MI, Ishill N, et al. Detection of circulating tumor cells in patients with urothelial cancer. Ann Oncol 2009:20:305-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836088
93. Flaig TW, Wilson S, van Bokhoven A, et al. Detection of circulating tumor cells in metastatic and clinically localized urothelial carcinoma. Urology 2011 Oct;78(4):863-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21813167
94. Hoffmann AC, Wild P, Leicht C, et al. Neoplasia 2010 Aug;12(8):628-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20689757

13. QUALITY OF LIFE

13.1 Introduction

The evaluation of health-related quality of life (HRQoL) considers physical, psychological, emotional and social functioning.

Several questionnaires have been validated for assessing HRQoL in patients with bladder cancer, including FACT (Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy)-G (1), EORTC QLQ-C30 (2), EORTC QLQ-BLM (muscle invasive bladder cancer module) (3), and SF (Short Form)-36 (4,5) and recently the BCI questionnaire specifically designed and validated for bladder cancer patients (6).

A psychometric test, such as the FACT-BL, should be used for recording bladder cancer morbidity. New intensive interviewing techniques have added valuable information to our knowledge of HRQoL, which greatly depends on patients' individual preferences in life (7).

Unfortunately, most retrospective studies do not evaluate the association between HRQoL and bladder cancer-specific issues after cystectomy, such as day and night-time incontinence or potency. Furthermore, important co-variables, such as a patient's age, mental status, coping ability and gender, have only rarely been considered (8,9). It remains difficult to predict the impact of post-therapeutic symptoms because of individual differences in symptom tolerance.

13.2 Choice of urinary diversion

There is controversy about which type of urinary diversion is best for a patient's HRQoL (10). Some studies have not demonstrated any difference in HRQoL (9,11,12). Nevertheless, most patients stated that, given a choice, they would still opt for an orthotopic diversion rather than an ileal conduit (13). Another recent study has shown that, although urinary function is better in conduit patients, the urinary bother is the same in both diversion groups, resulting in the same HRQoL evaluation (14).

Due to improved surgical techniques in orthotopic bladder substitution, some recent studies are supportive of continent bladder substitutes (3,15-18). Two studies have shown a statistically significant difference in HRQoL in favour of neo-bladders (18,19). Patients with an orthotopic substitution had significantly better physical function and a more active lifestyle compared to patients with an ileal conduit. It is important to note that HRQoL parameters are independent prognostic factors for overall survival (20). Patients with a continent bladder-substitute generally score more favourably than those with an incontinent diversion, as judged by body image, social activity and physical function (14,15,21).

13.3 Non-curative or metastatic bladder cancer

In non-curative or metastatic bladder cancer, HRQoL is reduced because of associated micturition problems, bleeding, pain and therefore disturbance of social and sexual life (22). There is limited literature describing HRQoL in bladder cancer patients receiving palliative care (23), but there are reports of bladder-related symptoms relieved by palliative surgery (24), radiotherapy (25), and/or chemotherapy (26).

Alternative definitive treatments of muscle-invasive bladder cancer, e.g. trimodality bladder-sparing procedures, have shown similar survival times compared to cystectomy. However, the impact on HRQoL has been controversial (26-31).

13.4 Conclusions and recommendations for health-related quality-of-life (HRQoL)

Conclusions	LE
No randomised, prospective HRQoL study has evaluated the different forms of definitive treatment for muscle-invasive bladder cancer.	
In most patient groups studied, the overall HRQoL after cystectomy remains good, irrespective of the type of urinary diversion used. The suggestion that continent diversions are associated with a higher HRQoL, has not been sufficiently substantiated.	2b
Important determinants of (subjective) quality of life are a patient's personality, coping style and social support.	

Recommendations	GR
The use of validated questionnaires is recommended to assess HRQoL in patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer	B
Unless a patient's co-morbidities, tumour variables and coping abilities present clear contra-indications, a continent urinary diversion should be offered.	C
Pre-operative patient information, patient selection, surgical techniques, and careful post-operative follow-up are the cornerstones for achieving good long-term results.	C
Patient should be encouraged to take active part in the decision-making process. Clear and exhaustive information on all potential benefits and side-effects should be provided, allowing them to make informed decisions.	C

13.5 References

1. Cella DF, Tulsky DS, Gray G, et al. The Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy scale: development and validation of the general measure. J Clin Oncol 1993 Mar;11(3):570-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8445433
2. Aaronson NK, Ahmedzai S, Bergman B, et al. The European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer QLQ-C30: a quality-of-life instrument for use in international clinical trials in oncology. J Natl Cancer Inst 1993 Mar;85(5):365-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8433390
3. Sogni F, Brausi M, Frea B, et al. Morbidity and quality of life in elderly patients receiving ileal conduit or orthotopic neobladder after radical cystectomy for invasive bladder cancer. Urology 2008 May;71(5):919-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18355900
4. Ware JE Jr, Sherbourne CD. The MOS 36-item short-form health survey (SF-36). I. Conceptual framework and item selection. Med Care 1992 Jun;30(6):473-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1593914

5. Ware JE Jr, Keller SD, Gandek B, et al. Evaluating translations of health status questionnaires. Methods from the IQOLA project. International Quality of Life Assessment. Int J Technol Assess Health Care 1995 Summer;11(3):525-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7591551
6. Gilbert SM, Dunn RL, Hollenbeck BK, et al. Development and validation of the Bladder Cancer Index: a comprehensive, disease specific measure of health related quality of life in patients with localized bladder cancer. J Urol 2010 May;183(5):1764-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299056
7. Ramirez A, Perrotte P, Valiquette L, et al. Exploration of health-related quality of life areas that may distinguish between continent diversion and ileal conduit patients. Can J Urol 2005 Feb;12(1):2537-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15777491
8. Månsson A, Caruso A, Capovilla E, et al. Quality of life after radical cystectomy and orthotopic bladder substitution: a comparison between Italian and Swedish men. BJU Int 2000 Jan;85(1):26-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10619940
9. Autorino R, Quarto G, Di Lorenzo G, et al. Health related quality of life after radical cystectomy: comparison of ileal conduit to continent orthotopic neobladder. Eur J Surg Oncol 2009 Aug;35(8): 858-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18824319
10. World Health Organization (WHO) Consensus Conference on Bladder Cancer, Hautmann RE, Abol-Enein H, Hafez K, et al. Urinary diversion. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):17-49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280907
11. Månsson A, Davidsson T, Hunt S, et al. The quality of life in men after radical cystectomy with a continent cutaneous diversion or orthotopic bladder substitution: is there a difference? BJU Int 2002 Sep;90(4):386-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12175394
12. Wright JL, Porter MP. Quality-of-life assessment in patients with bladder cancer. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2007 Mar;4(3):147-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17347659
13. Saika T, Arata R, Tsushima T, et al; Okayama Urological Research Group. Health-related quality of life after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer in elderly patients with an ileal conduit, ureterocutaneostomy, or orthotopic urinary reservoir: a comparative questionnaire survey. Acta Med Okayama 2007 Aug;61(4):199-203.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17853939
14. Hedgepeth RC, Gilbert SM, He C, et al. Body image and bladder cancer specific quality of life in patients with ileal conduit and neobladder urinary diversions. Urology 2010 Sep;76(3):671-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20451964
15. Dutta SC, Chang SC, Coffey CS, et al. Health related quality of life assessment after radical cystectomy: comparison of ileal conduit with continent orthotopic neobladder. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):164-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050514
16. Hara I, Miyake H, Hara S, et al. Health-related quality of life after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer: a comparison of ileal conduit and orthotopic bladder replacement. BJU Int 2002 Jan;89(1): 10-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11849152
17. Stenzl A, Sherif H, Kuczyk M. Radical cystectomy with orthotopic neobladder for invasive bladder cancer: a critical analysis of long term oncological, functional and quality of life results. Int Braz J Urol 2010 Sep-Oct;36(5):537-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21044370
18. Philip J, Manikandan R, Venugopal S, et al. Orthotopic neobladder versus ileal conduit urinary diversion after cystectomy - a quality-of-life based comparison. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 2009 Oct;91(7):565-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19558757
19. Hobisch A, Tosun K, Kinzl J, et al. Life after cystectomy and orthotopic neobladder versus ileal conduit urinary diversion. Semin Urol Oncol 2001 Feb;19(1):18-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11246729
20. Roychowdhury DF, Hayden A, Liepa AM. Health-related quality-of-life parameters as independent prognostic factors in advanced or metastatic bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2003 Feb;21(4):673-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586805

21. Hardt J, Filipas D, Hohenfellner R, et al. Quality of life in patients with bladder carcinoma after cystectomy: first results of a prospective study. Qual Life Res 2000 Feb;9(1):1-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10981202
22. Fosså SD, Aaronson N, Calais da Silva F, et al. Quality of life in patients with muscle-infiltrating bladder cancer and hormone-resistant prostatic cancer. Eur Urol 1989;16(5):335-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2476317
23. Mommsen S, Jakobsen A, Sell A. Quality of life in patients with advanced bladder cancer. A randomized study comparing cystectomy and irradiation-the Danish Bladder Cancer Study Group (DAVECA protocol 8201). Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1989;125:115-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2699072
24. Nagele U, Anastasiadis AG, Merseburger AS, et al. The rationale for radical cystectomy as primary therapy for T4 bladder cancer. World J Urol 2007 Aug;25(4):401-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17525849
25. Fokdal L, Høyer M, von der Maase H. Radical radiotherapy for urinary bladder cancer: treatment outcomes. Expert Rev Anticancer Ther 2006 Feb;6(2):269-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16445379
26. Rödel C, Weiss C, Sauer R. Organ preservation by combined modality treatment in bladder cancer: the European perspective. Semin Radiat Oncol 2005 Jan;15(1):28-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15662604
27. Rödel C, Grabenbauer GG, Kühn R, et al. Combined-modality treatment and selective organ preservation in invasive bladder cancer: long-term results. J Clin Oncol 2002 Jul;20(14):3061-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12118019
28. Merseburger AS, Kuczyk MA. The value of bladder-conserving strategies in muscle-invasive bladder carcinoma compared with radical surgery. Curr Opin Urol 2007 Sep;17(5):358-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17762631
29. Milosevic M, Gospodarowicz M, Zietman A, et al. Radiotherapy for bladder cancer. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):80-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280910
30. Rödel C, Weiss C, Sauer R. Trimodality treatment and selective organ preservation for bladder cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006;24(35):5536-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17158539
31. Zietman AL, Shipley WU, Kaufman DS. Organ-conserving approaches to muscle-invasive bladder cancer: future alternatives to radical cystectomy. Ann Med 2000 Feb;32(1):34-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10711576
32. Lodde M, Palermo S, Comploj E, et al. Four years experience in bladder preserving management for muscle invasive bladder cancer. Eur Urol 2005 Jun;47(6):773-8; discussion 778-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925072

14. FOLLOW-UP

An appropriate schedule for disease monitoring should be based on:
- natural timing of disease recurrence;
- probability of disease recurrence;
- possibilities of treatment of a recurrence (1);
- functional deterioration at particular sites.

Nomograms on cancer-specific survival following radical cystectomy have been developed and externally validated, however, their wider use cannot be recommended prior to the availability of further data (2-4).

Local pelvic recurrences after urothelial bladder cancer occur in 7-12%. For male and female patients, in contemporary series with bladder substitution, secondary and primary urethral tumours are found in 4-6% and 1,4-4%, respectively. Upper tract recurrences vary between 2,4-17% (5-8). Most recurrences manifest during the first 24 months, often within 6-18 months after surgery. However, late recurrences have also occurred up to 5 years after cystectomy. Pelvic recurrence can be predicted by pathological stage of the primary tumour (pTN) and pathological nodal status (pN).

Patients have a poor prognosis after pelvic recurrence. Even with treatment, median survival ranges from 4-8

months following diagnosis. Definitive therapy can sometimes provide prolonged survival, but in most cases provides only palliation of symptoms. Treatment options include systemic chemotherapy, local surgery or radiotherapy.

14.1 Site of recurrence

14.1.1 ***Distant recurrences***

Distant recurrences are seen in up to 50% of patients treated with cystectomy. Most recurrences occur in the first 24 months, although progression has been observed after more than 10 years (9). Again, pT and pN were risk factors (10).

The most likely sites for distant recurrences are the lungs, liver and bones (11). Upper urinary tract recurrence is rarely seen (2-7%). However, when it develops, it usually does so within 22-40 months after cystectomy (1,11-13). Surveillance regimens often fail to detect tumours before symptoms develop. Radical nephro-ureterectomy can provide prolonged survival (12).

The relationship between follow-up, recurrences and outcome in neobladder patients was recently addressed by retrospective studies in two high volume centres (14,15), but their results were inconclusive with respect to the impact of follow-up on patient outcomes or survival. The first reported on 479 patients after neobladder surgery, who were prospectively followed up for a median of 4.3 years. Of 174 patients with a recurrence, 87 were found on routine follow-up (median time to recurrence 1 year), compared to 87 patients found with symptoms (median time to recurrence of 0.7 years) (14). Most patients (> 70%) had distant recurrences. Secondary urothelial tumours were in the UUT (14 patients, 8%) or urethra (24 patients, 13.8%, of which 21 were detected with cytology). Patients with asymptomatic recurrences had higher OS and CSS, suggesting some benefit of surveillance.

The second study reported on 1,207 patients after cystectomy, who were followed up for 59 months (15). Of 444 patients with a tumour recurrence, 154 were found after routine follow-up (mean time to recurrence 20 months), whilst 290 had symptomatic recurrence (mean time to recurrence 17.5 months). Only 12 (2.7%) had a urethral recurrence. One of the most important findings was that no difference in survival was demonstrated between symptomatic and asymptomatic recurrences.

14.1.2 ***Secondary urethral tumours***

The incidence of secondary urethral tumours is 5-17%, and they are most likely to occur 1-3 years after surgery. Prophylactic urethrectomy at the time of cystectomy is no longer justified in most patients. In men, the most important risk factor for development of urethral recurrence is prostatic stromal invasion (21-64%) (16-18).

In women, the main risk factor is disease at the bladder neck (19). Many studies have demonstrated that the risk of urethral recurrence after orthotopic diversion (0.9-4%) (16,20-22) is significantly lower than after non-orthotopic diversion (6.4-11.1%) (16,21).

Recently, Boorjan et al. specifically addressed urethral recurrences after cystectomy (23). This retrospective study included 1,506 patients with a follow-up of 13.5 years. A neobladder was only constructed after negative urethral frozen section. Only 5.6% of patients experienced a recurrence, of which 55% were symptomatic and 45% asymptomatic. The majority of asymptomatic recurrences were detected with cytology. The 5 year CSS of symptomatic patients (41%) was much lower than in asymptomatic patients (80%). Risk variables for urethral recurrence were prostatic urethral involvement (HR 4.89), bladder tumour focality (HR 2.34) and orthotopic neobladder construction (HR 0.34).

Little data or agreement exist about urethral follow-up, with some recommending routine surveillance to include urethral wash cytology and urine cytology (18), and others doubting the need for routine urethral surveillance at all (20, 24-26). Urethral washes and urine cytology do not appear to have any effect on survival (24,27,28).

Treatment is influenced by the local stage and grade of a urethral recurrence:

- In CIS of the urethra, BCG instillations have shown success rates of 83% (20).
- In invasive disease, urethrectomy should be performed if the urethra is the only site of disease.
- In distant disease, systemic chemotherapy is indicated (11).

Table 5: Suggestions for general follow-up based on the stage of initial tumour after cystectomy

Procedure	Months after cystectomy								
<pT1	3	6	12	18	24	30	36	48	60
Ultrasound kidneys	x								
CT/MRI thor/abd plus UUT*			x		x		x	x	x
Lab,** sed, culture and cytology	x	x	x		x		x	x	x
pT2									
Ultrasound kidneys	x								
CT/MRI thor/abd, plus UUT*		X***	x	X***	x		x	x	x
Lab, sed, culture and cytology	x	x	x		x		x	x	x
>PT3 of N+									
Ultrasound kidneys	x								
CT/MRI thor/abd, plus UUT*	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Lab, sed, culture and cytology	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x

CT = computed tomography scan; MRI = magnetic resonance imaging; thor = thoracic; abd = abdominal; lab = laboratory investigations; sed = urine sediment analysis; UUT = upper urinary tract.
** If UUT is abnormal at CT or there is positive cytology, recurrent primary sampling should be performed.*
*** Blood chemistry, including serum creatinine, or renal function and blood gas analysis.*
****T2a,N0M0 tumours and/or Karnofsky <100%.*

14.1.3 Conclusions and recommendations for specific recurrence sites

Site of recurrence	Conclusion	LE	Recommendation	GR
Secondary urethral tumour	Staging and treatment should be done as for primary urethral tumour	3	Local conservative treatment is possible for non-invasive tumour.	C
			In isolated invasive disease, urethrectomy should be performed.	B
			Urethral washes and cytology are not recommended.	A
Pelvic recurrence	Poor prognosis Treatment should be individualised depending on the local extent of tumour	2b	Radiotherapy, chemotherapy and possibly surgery are options for treatment, either alone or in combination.	C
Upper urinary tract			Specific upper urinary tract imaging is only indicated in case of clinical symptoms.	
			Radical nephrectomy can provide prolonged survival.	

Imaging for urothelial carcinoma with, or without, cystectomy*

Radiological procedure	Rating scale[1]	Comments	Relative radiation level*
X-ray chest	4		Minimum
CT urography	8		High
X-ray abdomen loopogram	5	In patients with an ileal loop postcystectomy	Medium
X-ray intravenous urography	5	Utilisation of intravenous urography has continued to decline with the increasingly widespread use of CT urography	Medium
MR imaging abdomen and pelvis without and with contrast	7	See ESUR guidelines on contrast media version 7.0 (29)	None
CT abdomen and pelvis with contrast	1	Appropriate if CT urography is not available. Visceral/nodal status evaluated during CT urography	High
CT chest with contrast	5	Performed if chest X-ray is equivocal	Medium
US pelvis (bladder)	3		None
FDG-PET whole body indicated for suspected or nodal metastasis	2	Indicated for suspected nodal or distant metastasis	High
After 5 years of follow-up, oncological surveillance can be stopped and surveillance continued with functional surveillance			

[1]1 is least appropriate; 9 is most appropriate

** Adapted 2011 from: American College of Radiology. Follow-up Imaging of Bladder Carcinoma. Date of origin: 1996; Last review date: 2009 (30).*

CT = computed tomography; FDG-PET = fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography; MR = magnetic resonance; US = ultrasound

14.2 References

1. Malkowicz SB, van Poppel H, Mickisch G, et al. Muscle-invasive urothelial carcinoma of the bladder. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1 Suppl):3-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280906
2. Karakiewicz PI, Shariat SF, Palapattu GS, et al. Nomogram for predicting disease recurrence after radical cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 1):1354-61; discussion 1361-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952631
3. Shariat SF, Karakiewicz PI, Palapattu GS, et al. Nomograms provide improved accuracy for predicting survival after radical cystectomy. Clin Cancer Res 2006 Nov 15;12(22):6663-76.; http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17121885
4. Zaak D, Burger M, Otto W, et al. Predicting individual outcomes after radical cystectomy: an external validation of current nomograms. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(3):342-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20002664
5. Stenzl A, Sherif H, Kuczyk M. Radical cystectomy with orthotopic neobladder for invasive bladder cancer: a critical analysis of long term oncological, functional and quality of life results. Int Braz J Urol 2010 Sep-Oct;36(5):537-47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21044370
6. Stein JP, Lieskovsky G, Cote R, et al. Radical cystectomy in the treatment of invasive bladder cancer: long-term results in 1,054 patients. J Clin Oncol 2001 Feb;19(3):666-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11157016
7. Madersbacher S, Hochreiter W, Burkhard F, et al. Radical cystectomy for bladder cancer today-a homogeneous series without neoadjuvant therapy. J Clin Oncol 2003 Feb;21(4):690-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12586807

8. Hautmann RE, Gschwend JE, de Petriconi RC, et al. Cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: results of a surgery only series in the neobladder era. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):486-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813874
9. Mathers MJ, Zumbe J, Wyler S, et al. Is there evidence for a multidisciplinary follow-up after urological cancer? An evaluation of subsequent cancers. World J Urol 2008 Jun;26(3):251-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18421461
10. Ghoneim MA, Abdel-Latif M, el-Mekresh M, et al. Radical cystectomy for carcinoma of the bladder: 2,720 consecutive cases 5 years later. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):121-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485392
11. Bochner BH, Montie JE, Lee CT. Follow-up strategies and management of recurrence in urologic oncology bladder cancer: invasive bladder cancer. Urol Clin North Am 2003 Nov;30(4):777-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14680314
12. Sanderson KM, Cai J, Miranda G, et al. Upper tract urothelial recurrence following radical cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder: an analysis of 1,069 patients with 10-year followup. J Urol 2007 Jun;177:2088-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509294
13. Stenzl A, Bartsch G, Rogatsch H. The remnant urothelium after reconstructive bladder surgery. Eur Urol 2002 Feb;41(2):124-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074398
14. Giannarini G, Kessler TM, Thoeny HC, et al. Do patients benefit from routine follow-up to detect recurrences after radical cystectomy and ileal orthotopic bladder substitution? Eur Urol 2010 Oct;58(4):486-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20541311
15. Volkmer BG, Kuefer R, Bartsch GC Jr, et al Oncological followup after radical cystectomy for bladder cancer-is there any benefit? J Urol 2009 Apr;181(4):1587-93 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19233433
16. Freeman JA, Tarter TA, Esrig D, et al. Urethral recurrence in patients with orthotopic ileal neobladders. J Urol 1996 Nov;156(5):1615-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8863551
17. Hardeman SW, Soloway MS. Urethral recurrence following radical cystectomy. J Urol 1990 Sep;144(3):666-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2388323
18. Levinson AK, Johnson DE, Wishnow KI. Indications for urethrectomy in an era of continent urinary diversion. J Urol 1990 Jul;144(1):73-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2359182
19. Stenzl A, Draxl H, Posch B, et al. The risk of urethral tumors in female bladder cancer: can the urethra be used for orthotopic reconstruction of the lower urinary tract?J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 2):950-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853581
20. Huguet J, Palou J, Serrallach M, et al. Management of urethral recurrence in patients with Studer ileal neobladder. Eur Urol 2003 May;43(5):495-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12705993
21. Nieder AM, Sved PD, Gomez P, et al. Urethral recurrence after cystoprostatectomy: implications for urinary diversion and monitoring. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):950-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533484
22. Varol C, Thalmann GN, Burkhard FC, et al. Treatment of urethral recurrence following radical cystectomy and ileal bladder substitution. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):937-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311003
23. Boorjian SA, Kim SP, Weight CJ, et al. Risk factors and outcomes of urethral recurrence following radical cystectomy. Eur Urol 2011 Dec;60(6):1266-72 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21871713
24. Lin DW, Herr HW, Dalbagni G. Value of urethral wash cytology in the retained male urethra after radical cystoprostatectomy. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):961-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576822
25. Sherwood JB, Sagalowsky AI. The diagnosis and treatment of urethral recurrence after radical cystectomy. Urol Oncol 2006 Jul-Aug;24(4):356-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16818191
26. Slaton JW, Swanson DA, Grossman HB, et al. A stage specific approach to tumor surveillance after radical cystectomy for transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):710-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458349

27. Erckert M, Stenzl A, Falk M, et al. Incidence of urethral tumor involvement in 910 men with bladder cancer. World J Urol 1996;14(1):3-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8646239
28. Clark PE, Stein JP, Groshen SG, et al. The management of urethral transitional cell carcinoma after radical cystectomy for invasive bladder cancer. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1342-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371837
29. ESUR Guidelines on Contrast Media. Version 7.0, August 2008. ESUR Contrast Media Safety Committee.
http://www.esur.org/Contrast-media.51.0.html#c251
30. American College of Radiology Appropriateness Criteria® Follow-up Imaging of Bladder Carcinoma.
http://www.acr.org/SecondaryMainMenuCategories/quality_safety/app_criteria/pdf/ExpertPanelonUrologicImaging/FollowUpImagingofBladderCarcinomaDoc4.aspx

15. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

ARCO	accelerated radiotherapy with carbogen
ARCON	accelerated radiotherapy with carbogen nicotinamide
ASCO	American Society of Clinical Oncology
5-ALA	5-aminolaevulinic acid
4-ABP	4-aminobiphenyl
BC	bladder cancer
BT	brachytherapy
BCG	Bacille Calmette-Guérin
CGA	comprehensive geriatric assessment
CI	confidence interval
CIS	carcinoma *in situ*
CISCA	cisplatin, cyclophosphamide plus adriamycin
CM	cisplatin, methotrexate
CMV	cisplatin, methotrexate plus vinblastine
CT	multidetector computed tomography
EAU	European Association of Urology
EBRT	external beam radiation therapy
ECOG	Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group
EORTC	European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer
FACT	Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy
FDG-PET	fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography
5-FU	5-Fluorouracil
GC	gemcitabine plus cisplatin
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GCSF	granulocyte colony stimulating factor
HAL	hexaminolaevulinate
HD-MVAC	high-dose methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin
HIRU	Health Information Research Unit
HRQL	health-related quality of life
IARC	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IPD	independent patient data
ISUP	International Society of Urological Pathology
IVU	Intravenous urography
MCV	methrotrexate, cisplatin and vinblastine
MDCT	multidetector computed tomography
MiM-BC	Muscle-invasive and metastatic bladder cancer
MRC	Medical Research Council (UK)
MR(I)	magnetic resonance (imaging)
MVAC	methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycin plus cisplatin
MVA(E)C	methotrexate, vinblastine, adriamycine or epirubicine, and cisplatin
NAT	N-acetyltransferase
NMIBC	non-muscle-invasive bladder cancer
NSF	nephrogenic systemic fibrosis
OS	overall survival
PAHs	polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
pCR	pathological complete remission
PDD	photodynamic diagnosis
PET	positron emission tomography
PS	performance status
PUNLMP	papillary urothelial neoplasms of low malignant potential
RALC	robotic-assisted laparoscopic cystectomy
R-biopsies	random biopsies
RCT	randomised controlled trial
SEER	Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results
SES	socio-economic status
SF-36	Short Form-36
SIGN	Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network

SWOG	Southwest Oncology Group
TCC	transitional cell carcinoma
TNM	Tumour, Node, Metastasis
TUR	transurethral resection
TURB	transurethral resection of bladder tumour
UICC	Union International Contre le Cancer
UC	urethrocystoscopy
US	ultrasonography
UUTT	upper urinary tract tumours
UUT-UCC	upper urinary tract-urothelial cell carcinoma (UUT-UCC)
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest
All members of the Muscle-Invasive and Metastatic Bladder Cancer guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on
Prostate Cancer

A. Heidenreich (chairman), P.J. Bastian, J. Bellmunt,
M. Bolla, S. Joniau, M.D. Mason, V. Matveev, N. Mottet,
T.H. van der Kwast, T. Wiegel, F. Zattoni

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Introduction

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Group for Prostate Cancer have prepared this guidelines document to assist medical professionals assess the evidence-based management of prostate cancer. The multidisciplinary panel of experts include urologists, radiation oncologists, a medical oncologist, and a pathologist specialized in prostate cancer.

1.2 Data identification and evidence sources

The recommendations provided in the current guidelines are based on a systemic literature search performed by the panel members (1). MedLine, Embase, and Web of Science databases were searched to identify original articles, review articles and editorials addressing “epidemiology”, “risk factors”, “diagnosis”,“staging” and “treatment” of prostate cancer. The controlled vocabulary of the Medical Subject Headings(MeSH) database was used alongside a “free-text” protocol, combining “prostate cancer” with the terms“diagnosis”, “screening”, “staging”, “active surveillance”, “radical prostatectomy”, “external beam radiation”,“brachytherapy”, “androgen deprivation”, “chemotherapy”, “relapse”, “salvage treatment”, and “follow-up” to ensure sensitivity of the searches.

All articles published between January 2010 (previous update) and November 2011 were considered for review. The expert panel reviewed these records to select the articles with the highest evidence, according to a rating schedule adapted from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (1).

Additionally, publications from the major urological (EAU, AUA) and oncological meetings (ASCO, ESMO, ASTRO) have been considered.Where possible, abstracts will be replaced by the full scientific publications when these become available. Also no major recommendations can be based on evidence from abstract only.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available but following the recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, also taking individual circumstances and patient preferences into account.

1.3 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

The level of evidence (LE) and grade of recommendation (GR) provided in this guideline follow the listings in Tables 1 and 2. The aim of grading the recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett, et al. (1).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, there is not an automatic relationship between the level of evidence and the grade of recommendation. The availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation if there are methodological limitations or disparities in the published results. Conversely, an absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations in which corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons. In this case, unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. Whenever this occurs, it has been clearly indicated in the text with an asterisk as ‘upgraded based on panel consensus’. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence is a very important factor, but it has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and costs when a grade is assigned (2-4).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. However, whenever such data are available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett, et al. (1).*

1.4 Publication history

The Prostate Cancer Guidelines were first published in 2001, with partial updates achieved in 2003 and 2007, followed by a full text update in 2009. Also in 2011 a considerable number of sections of the PCa guidelines were revised. This 2012 publication includes updated chapters and sections as detailed below. The literature for all chapters has been revisited and, where available, new literature has been included.

The 2012 PCa guidelines publication underwent a blinded peer-review process before publication.

Standard procedure for EAU publications includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in this field, guiding future updates. An ultra-short reference document is being published alongside this publication. All documents are available with free access through the EAU website Uroweb (http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/).

Summary of updated and new information

Chapter 6 “Diagnosis”:

- All literature has been revisited, new data has been added;
- Most notably in sections 6.2.3 (PCA3 marker), 6.4.8 (Antibiotics prior to biopsy), 6.4.11 (Complications), 6.5 (Pathology of prostate needle biopsies) and 6.6.2.3 (Definition of extraprostatic extension).
- In section 6.4.8 (Antibiotics prior to biopsy), the quinolones resistance related to infectious complications after biopsy.

Chapter 8 “Watchful waiting/active surveillance”:

- Additional data on the impact of radical prostatectomy compared to watchful waiting (WW) has been added.
- Data have been added supporting that comorbidity status is the leading cause of death at ten years, especially for Charlson score ≥ 2, irrespective of age, even for those with an aggressive tumour.
- Active surveillance as appropriate for highly selected, low risk patients only. Early re-biopsy plays as an increasingly important role in the patient’s selection process.
- In general, repeat biopsies are a major tool for patient follow-up.

Chapter 9 “Treatment: Radical prostatectomy”;

- Additional data have been included in section 9.1 (Introduction) on robot-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy (RALP)
- Added emphasis is given to the need for a multidisciplinary approach in the treatment of high-risk localised disease Section 9.4 (High-risk localised PCa).

Chapter 10 “Treatment: Definitive radiation therapy”;

- Additional data has been added on the various hormonal therapy options, section 10.8 (Locally advanced PCa: T3-4, N0M0).

Chapter 11 “Experimental local treatment of prostate cancer”;

- Additional data has been added on oncological outcomes and treatment-associated complications (Section 11.3 -HIFU of the prostate).
- Additional data on salvage radical prostatectomy versus CSAP has been included (Section 16.6.2 - Salvage cryosurgical ablation of the prostate for radiation failures).
- A new section has been added on salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU).

Chapter 12 “Hormonal treatment”;

- Data from the largest randomised controlled trial on PCa patients relapsing after radiotherapy has been incorporated, showing that intermittent androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT) proved to be as effective as continuous ADT.

- Additional data regarding bone protection and the potential role of denosumab in delaying secondary bone metastases. However, denosumab does not impact overall survival or cancer-specific survival.
- Further data on androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) was included. ADT is associated with increased cardiac morbidity, not an increase in cardiac mortality. The presence of a congestive heart failure or myocardial infarction increases the mortality risk

Chapter 15 “Follow up after hormonal treatment”;

- The literature has been revisited. The importance of bone- and testosterone monitoring is reinforced.

Chapter 16 “Treatment of biochemical failure after treatment with curative intent”

- In section 16.4 (Evaluation of PSA progression), additional data has been added on the role of choline PET/CT in the diagnosis of men with rising PSA following radical prostatectomy.

Chapter 17 “Castration resistant prostate cancer”;

- For section 17.4 (Recommendations for assessing therapeutic response), new literature has been incorporated and recommendations have changed;
- 17.8.5.2 (Abiraterone acetate), new information has been added;
- 17.9.10 (Specific bone targets), information from the ENTHUSE study has been included.

New topics included in this 2012 print

- Quality of life of patients with localised prostate cancer
- Chapter 16, A section has been added on salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU)
- Chapter 17, Section 17.10.4 RANK ligand inhibitors

1.5 Potential conflict of interest statement

The expert panel have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.6 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations.BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008 Apr;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049--51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

2. BACKGROUND

Cancer of the prostate (PCa) is now recognised as one of the most important medical problems facing the male population. In Europe, PCa is the most common solid neoplasm, with an incidence rate of 214 cases per 1000 men, outnumbering lung and colorectal cancer (1). Furthermore, PCa is currently the second most common cause of cancer death in men (2). In addition, since 1985, there has been a slight increase in most countries in the number of deaths from PCa, even in countries or regions where PCa is not common (3).

Prostate cancer affects elderly men more often than young men. It is therefore a bigger health concern in developed countries with their greater proportion of elderly men. Thus, about 15% of male cancers are PCa in developed countries compared to 4% of male cancers in undeveloped countries (4). It is worth mentioning that there are large regional differences in incidence rates of PCa. For example, in Sweden, where there is a long life expectancy and mortality from smoking-related diseases is relatively modest, PCa is the most common malignancy in males, accounting for 37% of all new cases of cancer in 2004 (5).

2.1 References

1. Boyle P, Ferlay J. Cancer incidence and mortality in Europe 2004. Ann Oncol 2005 Mar;16(3):481-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15718248
2. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, et al. Cancer statistics, 2008. CA Cancer J Clin 2008 Mar-Apr;58(2):71-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18287387
3. Quinn M, Babb P. Patterns and trends in prostate cancer incidence, survival, prevalence and mortality. Part I: international comparisons. BJU Int 2002 Jul;90(2):162-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12081758
4. Parkin DM, Bray FI, Devesa SS. Cancer burden in the year 2000: the global picture. Eur J Cancer 2001Oct;37(Suppl 8):S4-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602373
5. Persson G, Danielsson M, Rosén M, et al. Health in Sweden: The National Public Health Report 2005. Scand J Public Health 2006; 34(Suppl 67): 3-10 http://sjp.sagepub.com/cgi/reprint/34/67_suppl/3.pdf

3. CLASSIFICATION

The 2009 TNM (Tumour Node Metastasis) classification for PCa is shown in Table 3 (1).

Table 3: Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification of PCa*

T - Primary tumour		
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed	
T0	No evidence of primary tumour	
T1	Clinically inapparent tumour not palpable or visible by imaging	
	T1a	Tumour incidental histological finding in 5% or less of tissue resected
	T1b	Tumour incidental histological finding in more than 5% of tissue resected
	T1c	Tumour identified by needle biopsy (e.g. because of elevated prostate-specific antigen [PSA] level)
T2	Tumour confined within the prostate[1]	
	T2a	Tumour involves one half of one lobe or less
	T2b	Tumour involves more than half of one lobe, but not both lobes
	T2c	Tumour involves both lobes
T3	Tumour extends through the prostatic capsule[2]	
	T3a	Extracapsular extension (unilateral or bilateral) including microscopic bladder neck involvement
	T3b	Tumour invades seminal vesicle(s)
T4	Tumour is fixed or invades adjacent structures other than seminal vesicles: external sphincter, rectum,levator muscles, and/or pelvic wall	
N - Regional lymph nodes[3]		
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed	
N0	No regional lymph node metastasis	
N1	Regional lymph node metastasis	
M - Distant metastasis[4]		
MX	Distant metastasis cannot be assessed	
M0	No distant metastasis	
M1	Distant metastasis	
	M1a	Non-regional lymph node(s)
	M1b	Bone(s)

	M1c	Other site(s)

1 *Tumour found in one or both lobes by needle biopsy, but not palpable or visible by imaging, is classified asT1c.*

2 *Invasion into the prostatic apex, or into (but not beyond) the prostate capsule, is not classified as pT3, but as pT2.*

3 *Metastasis no larger than 0.2 cm can be designated pN1 mi.*

4 *When more than one site of metastasis is present, the most advanced category should be used.*

Prognostic grouping

Group I	T1a-c	N0	M0 PSA < 10	Gleason ≤ 6
	T2a	N0	M0 PSA < 10	Gleason ≤ 6
Group IIA	T1a-c	N0	M0 PSA < 20	Gleason 7
	T1a-c	N0	M0 PSA ≥ 10 < 20	Gleason ≤ 6
	T2a, b	N0	M0 PSA < 20	Gleason ≤ 7
Group IIb	T2c	N0	M0 Any PSA	Any Gleason
	T1-2	N0	M0 PSA ≥ 20	Any Gleason
	T1-2	N0	M0 Any PSA	Gleason ≥ 8
Group III	T3a, b	N0	M0 Any PSA	Any Gleason
Group IV	T4	N0	M0 Any PSA	Any Gleason
	Any T	N1	M0 Any PSA	Any Gleason
	Any T	Any N	M1 Any PSA	Any Gleason

Note: When either PSA or Gleason is not available, grouping should be determined by cT category and whichever of either PSA of Gleason is available. When neither is available prognostic grouping is notpossible, use stage grouping

3.1 Gleason score

The ISUP 2005 Gleason score is the current standard for grading adenocarcinoma of the prostate on core biopsy and operative specimens (2). The Gleason score is the sum of the two most common patterns (grades 1-5) of tumour growth found. The Gleason score ranges between 2 and 10, with 2 being the least aggressive and 10 the most aggressive. In needle biopsies, the worst grade should always be incorporated in the Gleason score, even if comprising < 5% of the cancer (2).

3.2 References

1. Sobin LH, Gospodariwicz M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM classification of malignant tumors. UICC International Union Against Cancer. 7th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, 2009 Dec; pp. 243-248. http://www.uicc.org/tnm/

2 Epstein JI, Allsbrook WC Jr, Amin MB, et al; ISUP grading committee. The 2005 International Society of Urologic Pathology (ISUP) Consensus Conference on Gleason grading of Prostatic Carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2005 Sep;29(9):1228-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16096414

4. RISK FACTORS

The factors that determine the risk of developing clinical PCa are not well known, although a few have been identified. There are three well-established risk factors for PCa:

- increasing age;
- ethnic origin;
- heredity.

If one first-line relative has PCa, the risk is at least doubled. If two or more first-line relatives are affected, the risk increases by 5-11-fold (1,2). A small subpopulation of individuals with PCa (about 9%) has true hereditary PCa. This is defined as three or more affected relatives, or at least two relatives who have developed early-onset disease, i.e. before age 55 (3). Patients with hereditary PCa usually have an onset 6-7 years prior to spontaneous cases, but do not differ in other ways (4).

The frequency of autopsy-detected cancers is roughly the same in different parts of the world (5). This finding is in sharp contrast to the incidence of clinical PCa, which differs widely between different geographical areas, being high in the USA and Northern Europe and low in Southeast Asia (6). However, if Japanese men move from Japan to Hawaii, their risk of PCa increases. If they move to California their risk increases even more, approaching that of American men (7) (LE: 2).

These findings indicate that exogenous factors affect the risk of progression from so-called latent PCa to clinical PCa. Factors such as food consumption, pattern of sexual behaviour, alcohol consumption, exposure to ultraviolet radiation, chronic inflammation (8) and occupational exposure have all been discussed as being aetiologically important (9). Prostate cancer is an ideal candidate for exogenous preventive measures, such as dietary and pharmacological prevention, due to some specific features: high prevalence, long latency, endocrine dependency, availability of serum markers (PSA), and histological precursor lesions (atypical small acinar proliferation [ASAP] or prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia [PIN]) (8). Dietary/nutritional factors that may influence disease development include total energy intake (as reflected by body mass index), dietary fat, cooked meat, micronutrients and vitamins (carotenoids, retinoids, vitamins C, D, and E), fruit and vegetable intake, minerals (calcium, selenium), and phyto-oestrogens (isoflavonoids, flavonoids, lignans), or statins and/or cholesterol intake. Since most studies reported to date are case-control analyses, there remain more questions than evidence-based data available to answer them. Several ongoing large randomised trials are trying to clarify the role of such risk factors and the potential for successful prostate cancer prevention (10).

In summary, hereditary factors are important in determining the risk of developing clinical PCa, while exogenous factors may have an important impact on this risk. The key question is whether there is enough evidence to recommend lifestyle changes (lowered intake of animal fat and increased intake of fruit, cereals, and vegetables) in order to decrease the risk (11). There is some evidence to support such a recommendation and this information can be given to male relatives of PCa patients who ask about the impact of diet (LE: 2-3).

4.1 References

1. Steinberg GD, Carter BS, Beaty TH, et al. Family history and the risk of prostate cancer. Prostate 1990;17(4):337-47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2251225
2. Gronberg H, Damber L, Damber JE. Familial prostate cancer in Sweden. A nationwide register cohort study. Cancer 1996 Jan;77(1):138-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630920
3. Carter BS, Beaty TH, Steinberg GD, et al. Mendelian inheritance of familial prostate cancer. Proc NatlAcad Sci USA 1992 Apr 15;89(8):3367-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1565627
4. Bratt O. Hereditary prostate cancer: clinical aspects. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):906-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187189
5. Breslow N, Chan CW, Dhom G, et al. Latent carcinoma of prostate at autopsy in seven areas. The International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyons, France. Int J Cancer 1977 Nov 15;20(5):680-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/924691
6. Quinn M, Babb P. Patterns and trends in prostate cancer incidence, survival, prevalence and mortality. Part I: international comparisons. BJU Int 2002 Jul;90(2):162-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12081758
7. Zaridze DG, Boyle P, Smans M. International trends in prostatic cancer. Int J Cancer 1984 Feb 15;33(2):223-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6693200
8. Nelson WG, De Marzo AM, Isaacs WB Prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Jul 24;349(4):366-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12878745

9. Kolonel LN, Altshuler D, Henderson BE. The multiethnic cohort study: exploring genes, lifestyle and cancer risk. Nat Rev Cancer 2004 Jul;4(7):519-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15229477
10. Schmid H-P, Engeler DS, Pummer K, et al. Prevention of prostate cancer: more questions than data. Recent Results Cancer Res 2007;174:101-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17302190
11. Schulman CC, Zlotta AR, Denis L, et al. Prevention of prostate cancer. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2000;(205):50-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11144904

5. SCREENING AND EARLY DETECTION

Population or mass screening is defined as the examination of asymptomatic men (at risk). It usually takes place as part of a trial or study and is initiated by the screener. In contrast, early detection or opportunistic screening comprises individual case findings, which are initiated by the person being screened (patient) and/or his physician. The primary endpoint of both types of screening has two aspects:

1. Reduction in mortality from PCa. The goal is not to detect more carcinomas, nor is survival the endpoint because survival is strongly influenced by lead-time from diagnosis.
2. The quality of life is important as expressed by quality-of-life adjusted gain in life years (QUALYs).

Prostate cancer mortality trends range widely from country to country in the industrialised world (1). Decreased mortality rates due to PCa have occurred in the USA, Austria, UK, and France, while in Sweden the 5-year survival rate has increased from 1960 to 1988, probably due to increased diagnostic activity and greater detection of non-lethal tumours (2). However, this trend has not been confirmed in a similar study from the Netherlands (3). The reduced mortality seen recently in the USA is often attributed to the widely adopted aggressive screening policy, but there is still no absolute proof that prostate-specific antigen (PSA) screening reduces mortality due to PCa (4) (LE: 2).

A non-randomised screening project in Tyrol (Austria) may support the hypothesis that screening can be effective in reducing mortality from PCa. An early detection programme and free treatment have been used to explain the 33% decrease in the PCa mortality rate seen in Tyrol compared to the rest of Austria (5) (LE: 2b). In addition, a Canadian study has claimed lower mortality rates in men randomised to active PCa screening (6), though these results have been challenged (7). Positive findings attributed to screening have also been contradicted by a comparative study between the US city of Seattle area (highly screened population) and the US state of Connecticut (seldom screened population) (8). The study found no difference in the reduction in the rate of PCa mortality (LE: 2b), even allowing for the very great diversity in PSA testing and treatment.

In 2009, the long awaited results of two prospective, randomised trials were published. The Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian (PLCO) Cancer Screening Trial randomly assigned 76,693 men at 10 US centres to receive either annual screening with PSA and DRE, or standard care as the control. After 7 years' follow-up, the incidence of PCa per 10,000 person-years was 116 (2,820 cancers) in the screening group and 95 (2,322 cancers) in the control group (rate ratio, 1.22) (9). The incidence of death per 10,000 person-years was 2.0 (50 deaths) in the screened group and 1.7 (44 deaths) in the control group (rate ratio, 1.13). The data at 10 years were 67% complete and consistent with these overall findings. The PLCO project team concluded that PCa-related mortality was very low and not significantly different between the two study groups (LE: 1b).

The European Randomized Study of Screening for Prostate Cancer (ERSPC) included a total of 162,243 men from seven countries aged between 55 and 69 years. The men were randomly assigned to a group offered PSA screening at an average of once every 4 years or to an unscreened control group. During a median follow-up of 9 years, the cumulative incidence of PCa was 8.2% in the screened group and 4.8% in the control group (10). The rate ratio for death from PCa was 0.80 in the screened group compared with the control group. The absolute risk difference was 0.71 deaths per 1,000 men. This means that 1,410 men would need to be screened and 48 additional cases of PCa would need to be treated to prevent one death from PCa. The ERSPC investigators concluded that PSA-based screening reduced the rate of death from PCa by 20%, but was associated with a high risk of over-diagnosis (LE: 1b).

Both trials have received considerable attention and comments. In the PLCO trial, the rate of compliance in the screening arm was 85% for PSA testing and 86% for DRE. However, the rate of contamination in the control arm was as high as 40% in the first year and increased to 52% in the sixth year for PSA testing and ranged from 41% to 46% for DRE. Furthermore, biopsy compliance was only 40-52% versus 86% in the ERSPC. Thus, the PLCO trial will probably never be able to answer whether or not screening can

influence PCa mortality.

In an update of the Gothenburg section of the ERSPC trial, which includes 20,000 men, the authors reported a reduction in PCa mortality of 50% after a median follow-up of 14 years. However, this finding was accompanied by a substantial risk of over-diagnosis (11).

In the complete ERSCP trial, the real benefit will only be evident after 10-15 years of follow-up, especially once the 41% reduction of metastasis in the screening arm has had an impact. A longer follow-up may reduce the number needed to screen and to treat (12).

Based on the results of these two large, randomised trials, most if not all of the major urological societies conclude that at present widespread mass screening for PCa is not appropriate. Rather, early detection (opportunistic screening) should be offered to the well-informed man (*see also* Section 6, Diagnosis). Two key questions remain open:

- At what age should early detection start?
- What is the screening interval for PSA and DRE?

A baseline PSA determination at age 40 years has been suggested, upon which the subsequent screening interval may then be based (13) (GR: B). A screening interval of 8 years might be enough in men with initial PSA levels ≤ 1 ng/mL (14). Further, PSA testing in men older than 75 years is not recommended because its early detection would not have any clinical impact (15).

5.1 References

1. Oliver SE, May MT, Gunnell D. International trends in prostate-cancer mortality in the 'PSA-ERA'. Int J Cancer 2001 Jun;92(6):893-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11351313
2. Helgesen F, Holmberg L, Johansson JE, et al. Trends in prostate cancer survival in Sweden, 1960 through 1988, evidence of increasing diagnosis of non-lethal tumours. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996 Sep;88(17):1216-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8780631
3. Post PN, Kil PJ, Coebergh JW. Trends in survival of prostate cancer in southeastern Netherlands 1971-1989. Int J Cancer 1999 May;81(4):551-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10225443
4. Ilic D, O'Connor D, Green S, et al. Screening for prostate cancer: a Cochrane systematic review. Cancer Causes Control 2007 Apr;18(3):279-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17206534
5. Bartsch G, Horninger W, Klocker H, et al. Tyrol Prostate Cancer Screening Group. Prostate cancer mortality after introduction of prostate specific antigen mass screening in the Federal State of Tyrol, Austria. Urology 2001 Sep;58(3):417-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11549491
6. Labrie F, Candas B, Dupont A, et al. Screening decreases prostate cancer death: first analysis of the1988 Quebec prospective randomized controlled trial. Prostate 1999 Feb;38(2):83-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9973093
7. Boer R, Schroeder FH. Quebec randomized controlled trial on prostate cancer screening shows no evidence of mortality reduction. Prostate 1999 Jul;40(2):130-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10386474
8. Lu-Yao G, Albertsen PC, Stanford JL, et al. Natural experiment examining impact of aggressive screening and treatment on prostate cancer mortality in two fixed cohorts from Seattle area and Connecticut. BMJ 2002 Oct;325(7367):740. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12364300
9. Andriole GL, Crawford ED, Grubb RL 3rd, et al. Mortality results from a randomized prostate-cancer screening trial. N Engl J Med 2009 Mar 26;360(13):1310-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19297565
10. Schröder FH, Hugosson J, Roobol MJ, et al.Screening and prostate-cancer mortality in a randomized European study. N Engl J Med 2009 Mar 26;360(13):1320-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19297566
11. Hugosson J, Carlsson S, Aus G, et al. Mortality results from the Göteborg randomised population-based prostate-cancer screening trial. Lancet Oncol 2010 Aug;11(8):725-32 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20598634
12. Gulati R, Mariotto AB, Chen S, et al. Long-term projections of the harm-benefit trade-off in prostate cancer screening are more favorable than previous short-term estimates. J Clin Epidemiol 2011 Dec;64(12):1412-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22032753

13. Börgermann C, Loertzer H, Hammerer P, et al. [Problems, objective, and substance of early detectionof prostate cancer]. Urologe A 2010 Feb;49(2):181-9. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20180057
14. Roobol MJ, Roobol DW, Schröder FH. Is additional testing necessary in men with prostate-specific antigen levels of 1.0 ng/mL or less in a population-based screening setting? (ERSPC, section Rotterdam). Urology 2005 Feb;65(2):343-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15708050
15. Schaeffer EM, Carter HB, Kettermann A, et al. Prostate specific antigen testing among the elderly; when to stop? J Urol 2009 Apr:181(4):1606-14;discussion 1613-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19246059

6. DIAGNOSIS*

The main diagnostic tools to obtain evidence of PCa include DRE, serum concentration of PSA and transrectal ultrasonography (TRUS). Its definite diagnosis depends on the histopathologic verification of adenocarcinoma in prostate biopsy cores or operative specimens.

6.1 Digital rectal examination (DRE)

Most prostate cancers are located in the peripheral zone of the prostate and may be detected by DRE when the volume is about 0.2 mL or larger. In about 18% of all patients, PCa is detected by a suspect DRE alone, irrespective of the PSA level (1) (LE: 2a). A suspect DRE in patients with a PSA level of up to 2 ng/mL has a positive predictive value of 5-30% (2) (LE: 2a). A suspect DRE is a strong indication for prostate biopsy as it is predictive for more aggressive (Gleason score ≥ 7) prostate cancer (3,4).

6.2 Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)

The measurement of PSA level has revolutionised the diagnosis of PCa (5). PSA is a kallikrein-like serine protease produced almost exclusively by the epithelial cells of the prostate. For practical purposes, it is organ-specific but not cancer-specific. Thus, serum levels may be elevated in the presence of benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH), prostatitis and other non-malignant conditions. The level of PSA as an independent variable is a better predictor of cancer than suspicious findings on DRE or TRUS (6).

There are many different commercial test kits for measuring PSA, but no commonly agreed international standard exists (7). The level of PSA is a continuous parameter: the higher the value, the more likely is the existence of PCa. The finding that many men may harbour PCa, despite low levels of serum PSA, has been underscored by recent results from a US prevention study (8) (LE: 2a). Table 4 gives the rate of PCa in relation to serum PSA for 2,950 men in the placebo-arm and with PSA values ≤ 4 ng / mL.

Table 4: Risk of PCa in relation to low PSA values

PSA level (ng/mL)	Risk of PCa	Risk of Gleason ≥ 7 PCa
0-0.5	6.6%	0.8%
0.6-1	10.1%	1.0%
1.1-2	17.0%	2.0%
2.1-3	23.9%	4.6%
3.1-4	26.9%	6.7%

The findings in Table 4 clearly demonstrate the occurrence of aggressive PCa even at very low PSA levels, precluding an optimal PSA threshold value for detecting non-palpable, but clinically significant, PCa (LE: 3). Use of nomograms may help reducing the number of unnecessary prostate biopsies (9).

Several modifications of serum PSA value have been described, which may improve the specificity of PSA in the early detection of PCa. They include: PSA density, PSA density of the transition zone, age-specific reference ranges, and PSA molecular forms. However, these derivatives and PSA isoforms (cPSA [complex

** Acknowledgment: Section 6.4 is partly based on the Guidelines of the AUO Study Group Urologic Oncology of the AustrianSociety of Urologists and Andrologists (W. Höltl, W. Loidl, M. Rauchenwald, M. Müller, M. Klimpfinger, A. Schratter-Sehn,C. Brössner).*

PSA], proPSA [precursor isoforms of PSA], BPSA [benign PSA], iPSA [intact PSA]) have limited usefulness in the routine clinical setting and have therefore not been considered for inclusion in these guidelines.

*6.2.1 **Free/total PSA ratio (f/t PSA)***

The free/total PSA ratio (f/t PSA) is the concept most extensively investigated and most widely used in clinical practice to discriminate BPH from PCa. The ratio is used to stratify the risk of PCa for men who have total PSA levels between 4 and 10 ng/mL and a negative DRE. In a prospective multicentre trial, PCa was found on biopsy in 56% of men with f/t PSA < 0.10, but in only 8% of men with f/t PSA > 0.25 (10) (LE: 2a). Nevertheless, the concept must be used with caution as several pre-analytical and clinical factors may influence the f/t PSA, e.g. instability of free PSA, variable assay characteristics and very large prostate size (11). For example, free PSA is unstable at both 4°C and at room temperature. In addition, assay characteristics may vary, and concomitant BPH in large prostates may result in a dilution effect (11). Furthermore, f/t PSA is of no clinical use in total serum PSA values > 10 ng/mL or during follow-up of patients with known PCa.

*6.2.2 **PSA velocity (PSAV), PSA doubling time (PSADT)***

There are two methods of measuring PSA over time: (1) PSAV, which is defined as an absolute annual increase in serum PSA (ng/mL/year) (12) (LE: 1b); and (2) PSADT, which measures the exponential increase of serum PSA over time, reflecting a relative change (13). These two concepts may have a prognostic role in patients with treated PCa (14), but they have limited use in the diagnosis of PCa because of background noise (total volume of prostate, BPH), the variations in interval between PSA determinations, and acceleration/deceleration of PSAV and PSADT over time. Prospective studies have shown that these measurements do not provide additional information compared to PSA alone (15-18).

*6.2.3 **PCA3 marker***

An increasingly studied new biomarker is PCA3, detectable in urine sediments obtained after three strokes of prostatic massage during digital rectal examination. The costly Progensa urine test for PCA3 is now commercially available. The amount of the prostate-specific non-coding mRNA marker, PCA3 normalized against PSA mRNA (urine sediment) gives a PCA3 score. The PCA3 score is superior to PSA total, and percent free PSA in detection of PCa in men with elevated PSA as it shows slight but significant increases in the AUC for positive biopsies (19-22). The PCA3 score may be used together with PSA and other clinical risk factors in a nomogram or other risk stratification tools to make a decision with regard to first or repeat biopsy (23). The PCA3 score increases with prostate cancer volume, but there is conflicting data about whether the PCA3 score independently predicts the Gleason score and its use as a monitoring tool in active surveillance has not been confirmed (23). The main current indication of the PCA3 urine test may be to determine whether a man needs a repeat biopsy after an initially negative biopsy outcome, but its cost-effectiveness remains to be shown.

6.3 Transrectal ultrasonography (TRUS)

The classic picture of a hypoechoic area in the peripheral zone of the prostate will not always be seen. Gray-scale TRUS does not detect areas of PCa with adequate reliability (24). It is therefore not useful to replace systematic with targeted biopsies of suspect areas. However, additional biopsies of suspect areas may be useful.

6.4 Prostate biopsy

*6.4.1 **Baseline biopsy***

The need for prostate biopsies should be determined on the basis of the PSA level and/or a suspicious DRE. The patient's biological age, potential co-morbidities (ASA Index and Charlson Comorbidity Index), and the therapeutic consequences should also be considered (25). Risk stratification is becoming an important tool to reduce unnecessary prostate biopsies (25)

The first elevated PSA level should not prompt an immediate biopsy. The PSA level should be verified after a few weeks by the same assay under standardised conditions (i.e. no ejaculation and no manipulations, such as catheterisation, cystoscopy or TUR, and no urinary tract infections) in the same diagnostic laboratory, using the same methods (26,27) (LE: 2a).

It is now considered the standard of care to perform prostate biopsies guided by ultrasound. Although a transrectal approach is used for most prostate biopsies, some urologists prefer to use a perineal approach. The cancer detection rates of perineal prostate biopsies are comparable to those obtained for transrectal biopsies (28,29) (LE: 1b).

The ultrasound-guided perineal approach is a useful alternative in special situations, e.g. after rectal amputation.

6.4.2 ***Repeat biopsy***

The indications for a repeat biopsy are: (1) rising and/or persistently elevated PSA; (2) suspicious DRE (30); (3) atypical small acinar proliferation (ASAP); and (4) extensive (multiple biopsy sites) prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN) (31).

High-grade PIN as an isolated finding is no longer considered an indication for repeat biopsy (32) (LE: 2a). A repeat biopsy should therefore be prompted by other clinical features, such as DRE findings and PSA level. If PIN is extensive (i.e. in multiple biopsy sites), this could be a reason for early repeat biopsy, because the risk of subsequent PCa is slightly increased. If clinical suspicion for PCa persists in spite of negative prostate biopsies, MRI may be used to investigate the possibility of an anterior located PCa, followed by TRUS or MRI-guided biopsies of the suspicious area (33).

6.4.3 ***Saturation biopsy***

The incidence of PCa detected by saturation repeat biopsy (> 20 cores) is between 30% and 43% and depends on the number of cores sampled during earlier biopsies (34) (LE: 2a). In special situations, saturation biopsy may be performed with the transperineal technique. This will detect an additional 38% of PCa. The high rate of urinary retention (10%) is a drawback (35) (LE: 2b).

6.4.4 ***Sampling sites and number of cores***

On baseline biopsies, the sample sites should be as far posterior and lateral as possible in the peripheral gland. Additional cores should be obtained from suspect areas by DRE/TRUS. These should be chosen on an individual basis.

Sextant biopsy is no longer considered adequate. At a glandular volume of 30-40 mL, at least eight cores should be sampled. The British Prostate Testing for Cancer and Treatment Study has recommended 10 core biopsies (36) (LE: 2a) More than 12 cores are not significantly more conclusive (37) (LE: 1a).

6.4.5 ***Diagnostic transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)***

The use of diagnostic TURP instead of repeat biopsies is a poor tool for cancer detection (38) (LE: 2a).

6.4.6 ***Seminal vesicle biopsy***

Indications for seminal vesicle (staging) biopsies are poorly defined. At PSA levels > 15-20 ng/mL, the odds of tumour involvement are 20-25% (39) (LE: 2a), but a biopsy is only useful if the outcome will have a decisive impact on treatment, i.e. if the biopsy result rules out radical removal for tumour involvement or radiotherapy with intent to cure.

6.4.7 ***Transition zone biopsy***

Transition zone (TZ) sampling during baseline biopsies provides a very low detection rate and TZ sampling should therefore be confined to repeat biopsies (40) (LE: 1b).

6.4.8 ***Antibiotics prior to biopsy***

Oral or intravenous antibiotics are state-of-the-art treatment. Optimal dosing and treatment time vary. Quinolones are the drugs of choice, with ciprofloxacin superior to ofloxacin (41) (LE: 1b), but in the last few years increased resistance to quinolones has been reported (42) associated with a rise in severe infectious complications after biopsy (43).

6.4.9 ***Local anaesthesia prior to biopsy***

Ultrasound-guided peri-prostatic block is state-of-the-art (44) (LE: 1b). It does not make any difference whether the depot is apical or basal. Intrarectal instillation of a local anaesthetic is clearly inferior to peri-prostatic infiltration (45) (LE: 1b).

6.4.10 ***Fine-needle aspiration biopsy***

Fine-needle aspiration biopsy is no longer state of the art.

6.4.11 ***Complications***

Complications include macrohaematuria and haematospermia (Table 5) (46). Severe post-procedural infections were initially reported in < 1% of cases, but this rate has increased in the last few years as a consequence of the evolution of antibiotic resistance strains with more post-biopsy hospitalizations for infectious complications while the rate of non-infectious complications has remained stable (43) .

Low-dose aspirin is no longer an absolute contraindication (47) (LE: 1b).

Table 5: Percentage given per biopsy session, irrespective of the number of cores*

Complications	% of biopsies
Haematospermia	37.4
Haematuria > 1 day	14.5
Rectal bleeding < 2 days	2.2
Prostatitis	1.0
Fever > 38.5°C (101.3°F)	0.8
Epididymitis	0.7
Rectal bleeding > 2 days ± requiring surgical intervention	0.7
Urinary retention	0.2
Other complications requiring hospitalization	0.3

** Adapted from NCCN Guidelines Prostate Cancer Early Detection. V.s.2010 (42).*

6.5 Pathology of prostate needle biopsies

*6.5.1 **Grossing and processing***

Prostate core biopsies taken from different sites are usually sent to the pathology laboratory in separate vials and should be processed in separate cassettes. Before processing, number of cores per vial and length of each core should be recorded. There is a significant correlation between the length of prostate biopsy tissue on the histological slide and the detection rate of PCa (48). To achieve optimal flattening and alignment of individual cores, one should embed a maximum of three cores per cassette and use sponges or paper to keep the cores stretched and flat (49,50). To optimise the detection of small lesions, blocks should be cut at three levels (40). It is helpful routinely to mount intervening tissue sections in case additional immunostaining is needed.

*6.5.2 **Microscopy and reporting***

Diagnosis of prostate cancer is based on histological examination. Ancillary staining techniques (e.g. basal cell staining) and additional (deeper) sections should be considered if a suspect lesion is identified (51-53). Diagnostic uncertainty in biopsies may often be resolved by intradepartmental consultation or a second opinion from an external institution (51). Table 6 lists recommended concise terminology to report prostate biopsies (50).

Table 6: Recommended diagnostic terms to report prostate biopsy findings*

Benign/negative for malignancy. If appropriate, include a description (e.g. atrophy).
Active inflammation, negative for malignancy
Atypical adenomatous hyperplasia/adenosis, no evidence of malignancy
Granulomatous inflammation, negative for malignancy
High-grade PIN, negative for adenocarcinoma
High-grade PIN with atypical glands suspicious for adenocarcinoma
Focus of atypical glands/lesion suspicious for adenocarcinoma/atypical small acinar proliferation suspicious for cancer
Adenocarcinoma

**From Van der Kwast, 2003 (49).*
PIN = prostatic intra-epithelial neoplasia.

For each biopsy site, the proportion of biopsies positive for carcinoma and the ISUP 2005 Gleason score should be reported (54). A recent study has demonstrated the improved concordance of pattern and change of prognostic groups for the modified Gleason grading (55). According to current international convention, the (modified) Gleason score of cancers detected in prostate biopsy consists of the Gleason grade of the dominant (most extensive) carcinoma component plus the highest grade, irrespective of its extent (no 5% rule). When the carcinoma largely consists of grade 4/5 carcinoma, identification of a small portion (< 5% of the carcinoma) of Gleason grade 2 or 3 glands should be ignored. A diagnosis of Gleason score 4, or lower, should not be given on prostate biopsies (54). The presence of intraductal carcinoma and extraprostatic extension should be reported. In addition to a report of the carcinoma features for each biopsy site, an overall Gleason score based

on findings in the individual biopsies is commonly provided.

The proportion (%) or length (mm) of tumour involvement per biopsy core correlates with tumour volume, extraprostatic extension, and prognosis after prostatectomy (56-58), and an extent of > 5 mm or > 50% of adenocarcinoma in a single core is used as a cut-off triggering immediate treatment versus active surveillance in patients with Gleason score 6 carcinoma. For these reasons a measure of the extent of cancer involvement (mm or %) should be provided for each core. Length of carcinoma and percentage of carcinoma involvement of the biopsy have equal prognostic impact (59).

The extent of a single, small focus of adenocarcinoma, which is located in only one of the biopsies, should be clearly stated (e.g. < 1 mm or < 1%), as this might be an indication for further diagnostic work-up before selecting therapy as this finding is associated with an increased risk of vanishing cancer (60-62). A prostate biopsy that does not contain glandular prostate tissue should be reported as inadequate for diagnostics, except for staging biopsies.

6.6 Pathohistology of radical prostatectomy (RP) specimens

*6.6.1 **Processing of the RP specimen***

The histopathological examination of RP specimens aims to provide information about the actual pathological stage, grade, and surgical margin status of the prostate cancer. The weight and dimensions of the specimen are recorded before embedding it for histological processing. It is generally recommended that RP specimens are totally embedded to enable the best assessment of location, multifocality, and heterogeneity of the cancer.

However, for cost-effectiveness, partial embedding using a standard method may also be considered, particularly for large prostates (> 60 g). The most acceptable method includes the complete embedding of the posterior (dorsal) part of the prostate in addition to a single mid-anterior left and right section. Compared to total embedding, this method of partial embedding permitted detection of 98% of prostate cancers with a Gleason score ≥ 7 and accurate staging in 96% of cases (63).

Upon receipt in the histopathology laboratory, the entire RP specimen is inked in order to appreciate the surgical margin status. The specimen is fixed by immersion in buffered formalin for a few days, preferably prior to incision of the sample, as incision causes distortion of the tissue. Fixation can be enhanced by injecting formalin using 21-gauge syringes, which provides a more homogeneous fixation and sectioning after 24 hours (64). After fixation, the apex is removed and cut with (para)sagittal or radial sections; the shave method is not recommended (65). Separate removal and sagittal sectioning of the bladder neck is optional. The remainder of the RP specimen is generally cut in transverse sections at 3-4 mm steps, perpendicularly to the posterior surface. The resultant tissue slices can be embedded and processed either as whole-mounts or after quadrant sectioning. Whole-mount processing provides better topographic visualisation of the carcinoma and faster histopathological examination. However, it is a more time-consuming and more expensive technique that requires specialised equipment and personnel. Although whole-mount sectioning may be necessary for research, its advantages do not outweigh its disadvantages for routine sectioning.

6.6.1.1 Recommendations for processing a prostatectomy specimen

Total embedding of a prostatectomy specimen is preferred, either by conventional (quadrant sectioning) or by whole-mount sectioning.
The entire surface of RP specimens should be inked before cutting to evaluate the surgical margin status.
The apex should be separately examined using the cone method with sagittal or radial sectioning.

*6.6.2 **RP specimen report***

The pathology report provides essential information on the prognostic characteristics relevant for making clinical decisions (Table 7). As a result of the complex information provided on each RP specimen, the use of synoptic-(like) or checklist reporting is recommended (Table 8). Synoptic reporting of surgical specimens results in more transparent and complete pathology reporting (66).

Table 7: Information provided by the pathology report

Typing (> 95% of PCa represents conventional (acinar) adenocarcinoma)
Grading according to the Gleason score
(Sub)staging and surgical margin status of the tumour
If appropriate, location and extent of extraprostatic extension, presence of bladder neck invasion, laterality of extraprostatic extension or seminal vesicle invasion, location and extent of positive surgical margins
Additional information may be provided on multifocality, diameter of the dominant tumour and zonal location (transition zone, peripheral zone, anterior horn) of the dominant tumour

Table 8: Example checklist - reporting of prostatectomy specimens

Histological type
Type of carcinoma, e.g. conventional acinar, ductal, etc.
Histological grade
Primary (predominant) grade
Secondary grade
Tertiary grade (if applicable)
Total/global Gleason score
Approximate percentage of Gleason grade 4 or 5 (optional)
Tumour quantitation (optional)
Percentage of prostatic gland involved
Tumour size of dominant nodule (if identified), greatest dimension in mm
Pathological staging (pTNM)
Presence of extraprostatic extension (indicate focal or extensive) • If present, specify site(s) • Presence of seminal vesicle invasion
If applicable, regional lymph nodes • Location • Number of lymph nodes retrieved
• Number of lymph nodes involved
Surgical margins
Presence of carcinoma at margin • If present, specify sites and extra- or intraprostatic involvement
Other
If identified, presence of angioinvasion
Location (site, zone) of dominant tumour (optional)
Perineural invasion (optional) • If present, specify extra- or intraprostatic location

6.6.2.1 Gleason score

Grading of conventional prostatic adenocarcinoma using the (modified) Gleason score system (54) is the single strongest prognostic factor for clinical behaviour and treatment response. The Gleason score is therefore one of the parameters incorporated in nomograms that predict the risk of recurrence after prostatectomy (67).

6.6.2.2 Interpreting the Gleason score

The Gleason score is the sum of the most dominant and second most dominant (in terms of volume) Gleason grade. If only one grade is present, the primary grade is doubled. If a grade comprises ≤ 5% of the cancer volume, this grade is not incorporated in the Gleason score (5% rule). Both the primary and the secondary grade are reported in addition to the Gleason score (e.g. Gleason score 7 [4 + 3]). A global Gleason score is given when there are multiple tumours, but a separate tumour focus with a higher Gleason score should also

be mentioned. A tertiary Gleason grade 4 or 5, particularly if exceeding 5% of the prostate cancer volume, is an unfavourable prognostic indicator for biochemical recurrence. The presence of the tertiary grade and its approximate proportion of the cancer volume should also be reported (68), in addition to the Gleason score.

6.6.2.3 Definition of extraprostatic extension

The TNM staging system of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) is recommended for pathological staging of prostate carcinoma (65,69). Pathologic substaging of pT2 prostate cancer is optional, since 1) it does not correlate with clinical T2 substage and 2) it lacks prognostic significance (70).

Extraprostatic extension is the recommended term for the presence of tumour beyond the confines of the prostate. Extraprostatic extension is defined as carcinoma mixed with periprostatic adipose tissue, or bulging out beyond the contours of the prostate gland, e.g. at the neurovascular bundle or the anterior prostate. Bladder neck invasion is also considered to be an extraprostatic extension.

It is useful to report not only the location, but also the extent of extraprostatic extension because extension is related to the risk of recurrence. There are no well-established and internationally accepted definitions of the terms 'focal' and 'non-focal' or 'extensive extraprostatic extension'. Some authors describe focal as 'a few glands' (71) or extension < 1 high-power field (72), whereas others measure the depth of extent in mm (73). Currently, it is considered clinically useful to report the extent of extraprostatic extension (e.g. less or more than 1 high-power field or 1 mm) (74).

At the apex of the prostate gland, tumour mixed with skeletal muscle does not constitute extraprostatic extension. In the bladder neck, microscopic invasion of small fibres of smooth muscle is not equated to (gross) bladder wall invasion, because it does not carry independent prognostic significance for PSA recurrence (75,76) and should be recorded as extraprostatic extension (pT3a). A positive margin at the bladder neck should be reported as an extraprostatic extension (pT3a) with positive margin and not as pT4 disease. Stage pT4 can only be assigned when tumour invades the muscle wall of the bladder as determined by the urologist (77).

6.6.3 ***Prostate cancer volume***

The independent prognostic value of the volume of PCa in RP specimens has not been established (72,78-81). Nevertheless, a PCa volume cut-off of 0.5 mL continues to be an important parameter to distinguish insignificant from clinically relevant cancer (78). Continued improvement in radioimaging of the prostate gland has allowed more accurate measurement of cancer volume before surgery. Therefore, it may be recommended to assess the greatest dimension of the dominant tumour nodule, if identified, or to provide a rough estimate of the percentage of cancer tissue in the prostate .

6.6.4 ***Surgical margin status***

Surgical margin status is an independent risk factor for biochemical recurrence. Margin status is positive if tumour cells are in touch with the ink on the surface of the specimen. Margin status is negative if tumour cells are very close to the inked surface of the margin (79) or when they are at the surface of the tissue lacking any ink.

If the tissue has severe crush artifacts (usually at the apex), it may not be possible to assign a surgical margin status (82). Surgical margin status is independent of the pathological stage and a positive margin is not evidence of extraprostatic extension (83). There is insufficient evidence to prove a relationship between the extent of positive margin and the risk of recurrence (72). However, some indication must be given of the multifocality and extent of margin positivity, such as the linear extent in millimetres, or number of blocks with positive margin involvement.

6.6.5 ***Other factors***

According to the College of American Pathologists consensus statement (84), additional potential biomarkers have not been sufficiently studied to demonstrate their additional prognostic value and clinical usefulness outside the standard patient care setting (category III), including perineural invasion, neuroendocrine differentiation, microvessel density, nuclear roundness, chromatin texture, other karyometric factors, proliferation markers, prostate-specific antigen derivatives, and other factors (e.g. oncogenes, tumour suppressor genes, or apoptosis genes).

6.7 References

1. Richie JP, Catalona WJ, Ahmann FR, et al. Effect of patient age on early detection of prostate cancer with serum prostate-specific antigen and digital rectal examination. Urology 1993 Oct:42(4):365-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7692657

2. Carvalhal GF, Smith DS, Mager DE, et al. Digital rectal examination for detecting prostate cancer at prostate specific antigen levels of 4 ng/ml or less. J Urol 1999 Mar;161:835-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022696
3. Okotie OT, Roehl KA, Han M, et al Characteristics of prostate cancer detected by digital rectal examination only. Urology 2007 Dec;70(6):1117-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18158030
4. Gosselaar C, Roobol MJ, Roemeling S, et al. The role of the digital rectal examination in subsequent screening visits in the European randomized study of screening for prostate cancer (ERSPC), Rotterdam. Eur Urol 2008 Sep;54(3):581-8. Epub 2008 Apr 8 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423977
5. Stamey TA, Yang N, Hay AR, et al. Prostate-specific antigen as a serum marker for adenocarcinoma of the prostate. N Engl J Med 1987 Oct;317(15):909-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442609
6. Catalona WJ, Richie JP, Ahmann FR, et al. Comparison of digital rectal examination and serum prostate specific antigen in the early detection of prostate cancer: results of a multicenter clinical trial of 6,630 men. J Urol 1994 May;151(5):1283-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512659
7. Semjonow A, Brandt B, Oberpenning F, et al. Discordance of assay methods creates pitfalls for the interpretation of prostate-specific antigen values. Prostate Suppl 1996;7:3-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8950358
8. Thompson IM, Pauler DK, Goodman PJ, et al. Prevalence of prostate cancer among men with a prostate-specific antigen level < or =4.0 ng per milliliter. N Engl J Med 2004 May 27;350(22):2239-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15163773
9. Dong F, Kattan MW, Steyerberg EW, et al. Validation of pretreatment nomograms for predicting indolent prostate cancer: efficacy in contemporary urological practice. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):150-4; discussion 154. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485398
10. Catalona WJ, Partin AW, Slawin KM, et al. Use of the percentage of free prostate-specific antigen to enhance differentiation of prostate cancer from benign prostatic disease: a prospective multicentre clinical trial. JAMA 1998 May 20;279(19):1542-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9605898
11. Stephan C, Lein M, Jung K, et al. The influence of prostate volume on the ratio of free to total prostate specific antigen in serum of patients with prostate carcinoma and benign prostate hyperplasia. Cancer 1997 Jan;79(1):104-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8988733
12. Carter HB, Pearson JD, Metter EJ, et al. Longitudinal evaluation of prostate-specific antigen levels in men with and without prostate disease. JAMA 1992 Apr 22-29;267(16):2215-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1372942
13. Schmid H-P, McNeal JE, Stamey TA. Observations on the doubling time of prostate cancer. The use of serial prostate-specific antigen in patients with untreated disease as a measure of increasing cancer volume. Cancer 1993 Mar 15;71(6):2031-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7680277
14. Arlen PM, Bianco F, Dahut WL, et al; Prostate Specific Antigen Working Group. Prostate Specific Antigen Working Group guidelines on prostate specific antigen doubling time. J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2181-5; discussion 2185-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423743
15. Heidenreich A. Identification of high-risk prostate cancer: role of prostate-specific antigen, PSA doubling time, and PSA velocity. Eur Urol 2008 Nov;54(5):976-7; discussion 978-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18640768
16. Ramirez ML, Nelson EC, Devere White RW, et al. Current applications for prostate-specific antigen doubling time. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):291-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18439749
17. O'Brien MF, Cronin AM, Fearn PA, et al. Pretreatment prostate-specific antigen (PSA) velocity and doubling time are associated with outcome but neither improves prediction of outcome beyond pretreatment PSA alone in patients treated with radical prostatectomy. J Clin Oncol 2009 Aug 1;27(22):3591-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19506163
18. Vickers AJ, Savage C, O'Brien MF, et al. Systematic review of pretreatment prostate-specific antigen velocity and doubling time as predictors for prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jan 20;27(3):398-403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19064972

19. Deras IL, Aubin SM, Blase A, et al. PCA3: a molecular urine assay for predicting prostate biopsy outcome. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1587-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295257
20. Hessels D, Klein Gunnewiek JMT, van Oort I, et al. DD3 (PCA3)-based molecular urine analysis for the diagnosis of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):8-15; discussion 15-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814669
21. Nakanishi H, Groskopf J, Fritsche HA, et al. PCA3 molecular urine assay correlates with prostate cancer tumor volume: implication in selecting candidates for active surveillance. J Urol 2008 May;179(5):1804-9; discussion 1809-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18353398
22. Hessels D, van Gils MP, van Hooij O, et al Predictive value of PCA3 in urinary sediments in determining clinico-pathological characteristics of prostate cancer. Prostate 2010 Jan 1;70(1):10-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19708043
23. Auprich M, Bjartell A, Chun FK, et al. Contemporary role of prostate cancer antigen 3 in the management of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2011 Nov;60(5):1045-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21871709
24. Lee F, Torp-Pedersen ST, Siders DB, et al. Transrectal ultrasound in the diagnosis and staging of prostate cancer. Radiology 1989 Mar;170(3 Pt 1):609-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2644656
25. Roobol MJ, Steyerberg EW, Kranse R, et al. A risk-based strategy improves prostate-specific antigen-driven detection of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):79-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733959
26. Eastham JA, Riedel E, Scardino PT, et al; Polyp Prevention Trial Study Group. Variation of serum prostate-specific antigen levels: an evaluation of year-to-year fluctuations. JAMA 2003 May 28:289(20):2695-700.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771116
27. Stephan C, Klaas M, Muller C, et al. Interchangeability of measurements of total and free prostate-specific antigen in serum with 5 frequently used assay combinations: an update. Clin Chem 2006 Jan;52(1):59-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16391327
28. Hara R, Jo Y, Fujii T, et al. Optimal approach for prostate cancer detection as initial biopsy: prospective randomized study comparing transperineal versus transrectal systematic 12-core biopsy. Urology 2008 Feb;71(2):191-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308081
29. Takenaka A, Hara R, Ishimura T, et al. A prospective randomized comparison of diagnostic efficiency between transperineal and transrectal 12-core prostate biopsy. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2008 June;11:134-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17533394
30. Epstein JI, Herawi M. Prostate needle biopsies containing prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia or atypical foci suspicious for carcinoma: implications for patient care. J Urol 2006 Mar:175(3 Pt 1):820-834.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469560
31. Merrimen JL, Jones G, Walker D, et al. Multifocal high grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia is a significant risk factor for prostatic adenocarcinoma. J Urol 2009 Aug;182(2):485-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19524976
32. Moore CK, Karikehalli S, Nazeer T, et al. Prognostic significance of high grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia and atypical small acinar proliferation in the contemporary era. J Urol 2005 Jan:173(1):70-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592031
33. Lemaitre L, Puech P, Poncelet E, et al. Dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI of anterior prostate cancer: morphometric assessment and correlation with radical prostatectomy findings. Eur Radiol 2009 Feb;19(2):470-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18758786
34. Walz J, Graefen M, Chun FK, et al. High incidence of prostate cancer detected by saturation biopsy after previous negative biopsy series. Eur Urol 2006 Sep:50(3):498-505.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16631303
35. Moran BJ, Braccioforte MH, Conterato DJ. Re-biopsy of the prostate using a stereotactic transperineal technique. J Urol 2006 Oct:176(4 Pt 1):1376-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952636
36. Donovan J, Hamdy F, Neal D, et al; ProtecT Study Group. Prostate Testing for Cancer and Treatment (ProtecT) feasibility study. Health Technol Assess 2003:7(14):1-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12709289

37. Eichler K, Hempel S, Wilby J, et al. Diagnostic value of systematic biopsy methods in the investigation of prostate cancer: a systematic review. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1605-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600713
38. Zigeuner R, Schips L, Lipsky K, et al. Detection of prostate cancer by TURP or open surgery in patients with previously negative transrectal prostate biopsies. Urology 2003 Nov:62(5):883-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14624913
39. Linzer DG, Stock RG, Stone NN, et al. Seminal vesicle biopsy: accuracy and implications for staging of prostate cancer. Urology 1996 Nov:48(5):757-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911521
40. Pelzer AE, Bektic J, Berger AP, et al. Are transition zone biopsies still necessary to improve prostate cancer detection? Results from the Tyrol screening project. Eur Urol 2005 Dec:48(6):916-21; discussion 921. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16126324
41. Aron M, Rajeev TP, Gupta NP. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal needle biopsy of the prostate: a randomized controlled study. BJU Int 2000 Apr:85(6):682-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10759665
42. Cuevas O, Oteo J, Lázaro E, et al; Spanish EARS-Net Study Group. Significant ecological impact on the progression of fluoroquinolone resistance in Escherichia coli with increased community use of moxifloxacin, levofloxacin and amoxicillin/clavulanic acid. J Antimicrob Chemother 2011 Mar;66(3):664-9), http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21172788
43. Loeb S, Carter HB, Berndt SI, et al. Complications after prostate biopsy: data from SEER-medicare. J Urol 2011 Nov;186(5):1830-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21944136
44. von Knobloch R, Weber J, Varga Z, et al. Bilateral fine-needle administered local anaesthetic nerve block for pain control during TRUS-guided multi-core prostate biopsy: a prospective randomised trial. Eur Urol 2002 May;41(5):508-14; discussion 514. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074792
45. Adamakis I, Mitropoulos D, Haritopoulos K, et al. Pain during transrectal ultrasonography guided prostate biopsy: a randomized prospective trial comparing periprostatic infiltration with lidocaine with the intrarectal instillation of lidocaine-prilocain cream. World J Urol 2004 Oct;22(4):281-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14689224
46. NCCN Clinical Practice Guidelines in OncologyTM Prostate Cancer Early Detection, V.2.2010. Page 15. www.nccn.org
47. Giannarini G, Mogorovich A, Valent F, et al. Continuing or discontinuing low-dose aspirin before transrectal prostate biopsy: results of a prospective randomized trial. Urol 2007 Sep;70(3):501-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17688919
48. Iczkowski KA, Casella G, Seppala RJ, et al. Needle core length in sextant biopsy influences prostate cancer detection rate. Urology 2002 May;59(5):698-703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992843
49 Van der Kwast TH, Lopes C, Santonja C, et al; Members of the pathology committee of the European Randomised Study of Screening for Prostate Cancer. Guidelines for processing and reporting of prostatic needle biopsies. J Clin Pathol 2003 May;56(5):336-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12719451
50. Rogatsch H, Moser P, Volgger H, et al. Diagnostic effect of an improved preembedding method of prostate needle biopsy specimens. Hum Pathol 2000 Sep;31(9):1102-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11014578
51. Novis DA, Zarbo RJ, Valenstein PA. Diagnostic uncertainty expressed in prostate needle biopsies. A College of American Pathologists Q-probes Study of 15,753 prostate needle biopsies in 332 institutions. Arch Pathol Lab Med 1999 Aug;123(8):687-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10420224
52. Iczkowski KA. Current prostate biopsy interpretation: criteria for cancer, atypical small acinar proliferation, high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia, and use of immunostains. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2006 Jun;130(6):835-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16740037
53. Reyes AO, Humphrey PA. Diagnostic effect of complete histologic sampling of prostate needle biopsy specimens. Am J Clin Pathol 1998 Apr;109(4):416-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9535395

54. Epstein JI, Allsbrook WC Jr, Amin MB, et al; ISUP grading committee. The 2005 International Society of Urologic Pathology (ISUP) Consensus Conference on Gleason grading of Prostatic Carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2005 Sep;29(9):1228-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16096414
55. Billis A, Guimaraes MS, Freitas LL, et al. The impact of the 2005 international society of urological pathology consensus conference on standard Gleason grading of prostatic carcinoma in needle biopsies. J Urol 2008;180(2):548-52; discussion 552-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18550106
56. Sebo TJ, Cheville JC, Riehle DL, et al. Predicting prostate carcinoma volume and stage at radical prostatectomy by assessing needle biopsy specimens for percent surface area and cores positive for carcinoma, perineural invasion, Gleason score, DNA ploidy and proliferation, and preoperative serum prostate specific antigen: a report of 454 cases. Cancer 2001 Jun;91(11):2196-204.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11391602
57. Grossklaus DJ, Coffey CS, Shappell SB, et al. Percent of cancer in the biopsy set predicts pathological findings after prostatectomy. J Urol 2002 May;167(5):2032-5; discussion 2036.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956432
58. Freedland SJ, Terris MK, Csathy GS, et al; Search Database Study Group. Preoperative model for predicting prostate specific antigen recurrence after radical prostatectomy using percent of biopsy tissue with cancer, biopsy Gleason grade and serum prostate specific antigen. J Urol 2004 Jun; 171(6 Pt 1):2215-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126788
59. Brimo F, Vollmer RT, Corcos J, et al. Prognostic value of various morphometric measurements of tumour extent in prostate needle core tissue. Histopathology 2008 Aug;53(2):177-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18752501
60. Herkommer K, Kuefer R, Gschwend JE, et al. Pathological T0 prostate cancer without neoadjuvant therapy: clinical presentation and follow-up. Eur Urol 2004 Jan;45(1):36-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14667513
61. Postma R, de Vries SH, Roobol MJ, et al. Incidence and follow-up of patients with focal prostate carcinoma in 2 screening rounds after an interval of 4 years. Cancer 2005 Feb 15;103(4):708-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15648082
62. Trpkov K, Gao Y, Hay R, et al. No residual cancer on radical prostatectomy after positive 10-core biopsy: incidence, biopsy findings, and DNA specimen identity analysis. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2006 Jun;130(6):811-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16740032
63. Sehdev AE, Pan CC, Epstein JI. Comparative analysis of sampling methods for grossing radical prostatectomy specimens performed for nonpalpable (stage T1c) prostatic adenocarcinoma. Hum Pathol 2001 May;32(5):494-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11381367
64. Ruijter ET, Miller GJ, Aalders TW, et al. Rapid microwave-stimulated fixation of entire prostatectomy specimens. Biomed-II MPC Study Group. J Pathol 1997 Nov;183(3):369-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9422995
65. Epstein JI, Allsbrook WC Jr, Amin MB, et al; ISUP grading committee. The 2005 International Society of Urologic Pathology (ISUP) Consensus Conference on Gleason grading of Prostatic Carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2005 Sep;29(9):1228-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16096414
66. Chan NG, Duggal A, Weir MM, et al. Pathological reporting of colorectal cancer specimens: a retrospective survey in an academic Canadian pathology department. Can J Surg 2008 Aug;51(4): 284-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18815652
67. Partin AW, Mangold LA, Lamm DM, et al. Contemporary update of the prostate cancer staging nomograms (Partin tables) for the new millennium. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):843-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744442
68. Harnden P, Shelley MD, Coles B, et al. Should the Gleason grading system for prostate cancer be modified to account for high-grade tertiary components? A systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Oncology 2007 May;8(5):411-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17466898
69. Ohori M, Kattan M, Scardino PT, et al. Radical prostatectomy for carcinoma of the prostate. Mod Pathol 2004 Mar;17(3):349-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14765206

70. Van der Kwast TH, Amin MB, Billis A, et al; ISUP Prostate Cancer Group. International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) Consensus Conference on Handling and Staging of Radical Prostatectomy Specimens. Working group 2: T2 substaging and prostate cancer volume. Mod Pathol 2011 Jan;24(1):16-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818340
71. Epstein JI, Carmichael MJ, Pizov G, et al. Influence of capsular penetration on progression following radical prostatectomy: a study of 196 cases with long-term followup. J Urol 1993 Jul;150(1):135-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7685422
72. Marks M, Koch MO, Lopez-Beltran A, et al. The relationship between the extent of surgical margin positivity and prostate specific antigen recurrence in radical prostatectomy specimens. Hum Pathol 2007 Aug;38(8):1207-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17490720
73. Sung MT, Lin H, Koch MO, et al. Radial distance of extraprostatic extension measured by ocular micrometer is an independent predictor of prostate-specific antigen recurrence: A new proposal for the substaging of pT3a prostate cancer. Am J Surg Pathol 2007 Feb;31(2):311-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17255778
74. Magi-Galluzzi C, Evans AJ, Delahunt B, et al; ISUP Prostate Cancer Group. International Society of Urological Pathology (ISUP) Consensus Conference on Handling and Staging of Radical Prostatectomy Specimens. Working group 3: extraprostatic extension, lymphovascular invasion and locally advanced disease. Mod Pathol 2011 Jan;24(1):26-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20802467
75. Aydin H, Tsuzuki T, Hernandez D, et al. Positive proximal (bladder neck) margin at radical prostatectomy confers greater risk of biochemical progression. Urology 2004 Sep;64(3):551-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15351591
76. Ploussard G, Rotondo S, Salomon L. The prognostic significance of bladder neck invasion in prostate cancer: is microscopic involvement truly a T4 disease? BJU Int 2009;105(6):776-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19863529
77. Hoedemaeker RF, Vis AN, Van Der Kwast TH. Staging prostate cancer. Microsc Res Tech 2000 Dec;51(5):423-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11074612
78. Stamey TA, Yemoto CM, McNeal JE, et al. Prostate cancer is highly predictable: a prognostic equation based on all morphological variables in radical prostatectomy specimens. J Urol 2000 Apr;163(4):1155-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737486
79. Epstein JI, Amin M, Boccon-Gibod L, et al. Prognostic factors and reporting of prostate carcinoma in radical prostatectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy specimens. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 2005 May;216:34-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16019758
80. Kikuchi E, Scardino PT, Wheeler TM, et al. Is tumor volume an independent prognostic factor in clinically localized prostate cancer? J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):508-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247716
81. Van Oort IM, Witjes JA, Kok DE, et al. Maximum tumor diameter is not an independent prognostic factor in high-risk localized prostate cancer. World J Urol 2008 Jun;26(3):237-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18265988
82. Evans AJ, Henry PC, Van der Kwast TH, et al. Interobserver variability between expert urologic pathologists for extraprostatic extension and surgical margin status in radical prostatectomy specimens. Am J Surg Pathol 2008 Oct;32(10):1503-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18708939
83. Chuang AY, Epstein JI. Positive surgical margins in areas of capsular incision in otherwise organ-confined disease at radical prostatectomy: histologic features and pitfalls. Am J Surg Pathol 2008 Aug;32(8):1201-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18580493
84. Bostwick DG, Grignon DJ, Hammond ME, et al. Prognostic factors in prostate cancer. College of American Pathologists Consensus Statement 1999. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2000 Jul;124(7):995-1000.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10888774

7. CLINICAL STAGING

The primary extension assessment of prostate cancer (PCa) is usually made by digital rectal examination (DRE), prostate-specific antigen (PSA) measurement, and bone scan, supplemented with computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and chest X-ray in specific situations.

7.1 T-staging

The first level is the assessment of local tumour stage, where the distinction between intracapsular (T1-T2) and extraprostatic (T3-T4) disease has the most profound impact on treatment decisions. DRE often underestimates the tumour extension; a positive correlation between DRE and pathological tumour stage was found in fewer than 50% of cases (1). However, more extensive examinations for adequate T-staging are only recommended in selected cases when more precise staging directly affects the treatment decision, i.e. when curative treatment is an option.

Serum PSA levels increase with advancing stage. Nevertheless, when PSA level is measured in an individual patient, it appears to have a limited ability to predict the final pathological stage accurately. Due to the production of PSA by benign and malignant prostatic tissue, there is no direct relationship between serum PSA concentration and the clinical and pathological tumour stage (2). A combination of serum PSA level, Gleason score on prostate biopsy and clinical T-stage, however, has been proven to be more useful in predicting the final pathological stage than the individual parameters per se (3).

The ability of the molecular forms of PSA to predict T-stage is controversial and their routine measurement is not indicated (4,5). The most commonly used method for viewing the prostate is transrectal ultrasound (TRUS). However, only 60% of tumours are visible with TRUS, and the remainder are not recognised due to their isoechogenicity. In a large multi-institutional study, TRUS was no more accurate at predicting organ-confined disease than was DRE (6). These findings were supported by another large study, which showed that there was no meaningful superiority of TRUS over DRE (7). A combination of DRE and TRUS can detect T3a PCa more accurately than either method alone (8) (LE: 3).

Three-dimensional TRUS (3D-TRUS) claimed to have better staging accuracy than 2-D techniques (9).

Several adjuncts to 3D greyscale TRUS have been investigated. A greater sensitivity for cancer detection has been achieved with the addition of power colour Doppler and contrast agents (10-12). Unfortunately, all TRUS techniques remain largely operator-dependent and are not able to differentiate between T2 and T3 tumours with sufficient accuracy to be recommended for routine use in staging.

Seminal vesicle invasion is predictive of local relapse and distant failure. Seminal vesicle biopsies may be used to increase the accuracy of pre-operative staging (13). This is not recommended as a first-line examination, but should be reserved for patients with a substantial risk of seminal vesicle invasion in whom a positive seminal vesicle biopsy would modify treatment decisions. Patients with a clinical stage greater than T2a and a serum PSA level of more than 10 ng/mL could be candidates for seminal vesicle biopsies (14,15). Patients with any of the basal biopsies positive for cancer are more likely to have positive seminal vesicle biopsies (16).

Of the prostate needle biopsy parameters examined, the percentage of tissue with cancer was the strongest predictor for positive surgical margins, seminal vesicle invasion and non-organ-confined disease (17). An increased number of biopsies involved with tumour independently predicts extraprostatic extension, margin involvement and lymph node invasion (18).

In a multivariate analysis, the best risk predictors of extracapsular extension on one side were the overall average of positive biopsy cores being 15% or greater, and the average from three ipsilateral biopsies being 15% or greater. When used in combination, these two factors yielded a model with a positive predictive value of 37%, and a negative predictive value of 95%. The high negative predictive value of the side-specific model identifies patients who are good candidates for nerve-sparing surgery (19). Furthermore, it may be useful to correlate the bioptic Gleason score with the final pathological stage: about 70% of patients have localized disease when the biopsy Gleason score is ≤ 6 (20).

It has been shown that transperineal three-dimensional prostate mapping biopsy (3D-PMB) provides more accurate determination of the extent and location of tumor compared to ultrasound guided 10-12 core biopsy, with Gleason score upgrading in 27.2% and up-staging in 45.6% of cases (21). The technique improves the differentiation between clinically significant cancers and low risk disease. Unlike transrectal saturation biopsy 3D-PMB has acceptable morbidity.

Both CT and MRI are now of a high technical standard, but neither modality is sufficiently reliable to make their use mandatory in the assessment of local tumour invasion (22,23). Endorectal MRI (e-MRI) may allow for more accurate local staging by complementing the existing clinical variables by improvements in spatial characterisation of the prostatic zonal anatomy and molecular changes (24). Image quality and localisation

improves significantly with e-MRI compared with external coil MRI (25). When compared with DRE and TRUS prostate biopsy findings, e-MRI contributes significant incremental value for local PCa staging (26), particularly in the pre-operative identification of extraprostatic extension (EPE) and seminal vesicle invasion (SVI) when interpreted by dedicated genitourinary radiologists (27,28).

E-MRI could impact on the decision to preserve or resect the neurovascular bundle (NVB) at the time of radical surgery (27,29,30).

When assessed for the ability to predict organ-confined PCa, the contribution of e-MRI to staging nomograms was significant in all risk categories, but the greatest benefit was seen in the intermediate and high risk groups (31). The combination of dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI and T2-weighted MR imaging yields improved assessment of EPE and better results for PCa staging compared with either technique independently (32) (LE: 3).

MR spectroscopic imaging (MRSI) allows for the assessment of tumour metabolism by displaying the relative concentrations of citrate, choline, creatinine and polyamines. Differences in the concentrations of these chemical metabolites between normal and malignant prostate tissues allow for better tumour localization within the peripheral zone, increasing the accuracy of EPE detection among less-experienced readers, and decreasing interobserver variability (33). Furthermore, correlations have been demonstrated between the metabolic signal pattern and a pathological Gleason score, suggesting the potential for a non-invasive assessment of PCa aggressiveness (34).

Despite the proposed accuracy and benefit of e-MRI and MRSI in PCa characterisation and localisation, e-MRI has several limitations that hamper its widespread application in PCa staging, e.g. difficulties in interpreting signal changes related to post-biopsy haemorrhage and inflammatory changes of the prostate, and the unquantifiable but significant inter- and intra-observer variability seen between both non-dedicated and dedicated radiologists that may lead to under- or overestimation of tumour presence and the local extent of disease (LE: 3). The overall accuracy of ^{11}C-choline positron emission tomography (PET) in defining local tumour stage (pT2 and pT3a-4) has been reported to be around 70%. PET tends to understage PCa, and has a limited value for making treatment decisions in patients with clinically localised PCa, especially if a nerve-sparing procedure is being considered (35) (LE: 2b).

7.2 N-staging

N-staging should be performed only when the findings will directly influence a treatment decision. This is usually the case in patients for whom potentially curative treatments are planned. High PSA values, stagesT2b-T3 disease, poor tumour differentiation and peri-neural tumour invasion have been associated with a higher risk of the presence of nodal metastases (3,36,37). The measurement of PSA level alone is unhelpful in predicting the presence of lymph node metastases for an individual patient.

The nomograms could be used to define a group of patients with a low risk of nodal metastasis (< 10%, *see reference number 38*). In such cases, patients with a serum PSA level of less than 20 ng/mL, stage T2a or less, and a Gleason score of 6 or less may be spared N-staging procedures before potentially curative treatment (3).

The extent of the Gleason 4 pattern in sextant biopsies has also been used to define the risk of N1 disease. If any core had a predominant Gleason 4 pattern, or > three cores any Gleason 4 pattern, the risk of nodal metastases was found to be 20-45%. For the remaining patients, the risk was 2.5%, supporting the idea that nodal staging is unnecessary in selected patients (39).

In the current published literature, the results indicate that CT and MRI perform similarly in the detection of pelvic lymph node metastases, although CT seems to be slightly superior (40) (LE: 2a). In either case, the decision about whether nodal involvement is present rests solely on whether there is enlargement of the investigated lymph nodes A threshold of 1 cm in the short axis for the oval nodes, and 0.8 cm for the round nodes, has been recommended as the criteria for the diagnosis of lymph node metastases (41).

A fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB) might provide a decisive answer in cases of positive imaging results. However, the lymph node can be difficult to reach because of the anatomical position. In addition, FNAB is not a highly sensitive staging procedure, and a false-negative rate of 40% has been reported (41).

High-resolution MRI with lymphotrophic ultra-small super-paramagnetic iron oxide particles (USPIO) was more recently suggested in the detection of small and otherwise occult lymph node metastases in patients with PCa (42,43).

In asymptomatic patients with newly diagnosed PCa and a serum PSA level of less than 20 ng/mL, the likelihood of positive findings on CT or MRI is approximately 1% (32).

CT scanning may therefore be warranted in patients with a very high risk of harbouring lymph node metastases, as the specificity of a positive scan is high (93-96%). Radio-immunoscintigraphy and PET have been investigated in order to improve the diagnosis of metastatic disease to the lymph nodes. Both methods are still under investigation, and further evaluation is needed before they can be recommended for routine use in clinical practice, especially as negative results should be interpreted with caution (44). The results obtained

using ^{18}F-choline PET/CT scans for initial N-staging were discouraging, especially in terms of inability to detect small metastases/micrometastases (< 5 mm) (45). Furthermore, ^{11}C-choline PET/CT has quite a low sensitivity for the detection of lymph node metastases, but performed better than clinical nomograms, with equal sensitivity and better specificity (46).

The gold standard for N-staging is operative lymphadenectomy, either by open or laparoscopic techniques. It is worth pointing out that recent studies with more extensive lymphadenectomy have shown that the obturator fossa is not always the primary site for metastatic deposits in the lymph nodes, and pelvic lymph node dissection that is limited to the obturator fossa will therefore miss about 50% of lymph node metastases (47,48). When deciding on pelvic lymph node dissection, extended lymphadenectomy should be considered, despite its disadvantages: it requires surgical experience; it is time-consuming; and it often leads to more complications than the limited procedures. Furthermore, it may fail to identify lymph node metastases, however present, even outside the region of extended dissection (49).

The primary removal of the so-called sentinel lymph node (SLN), defined as the first lymph node that receives lymphatic drainage from PCa, has the main aim of reducing the eventual morbidity associated with an extended pelvic node dissection, while preserving maximal sensitivity for diagnosis of metastatic disease (50) (LE: 3) (*see section 9.7 'Treatment: radical prostatectomy, indication and extent of eLND'*).

7.3 M-staging

The axial skeleton is involved in 85% of patients who die from PCa (51). The presence and extent of bone metastases accurately reflect the prognosis for an individual patient. Elevated skeletal alkaline phosphatase levels may indicate the presence of bony metastasis in 70% of affected patients (52). Furthermore, the measurement of skeletal alkaline phosphatase and PSA at the same time increases clinical effectiveness to approximately 98% (53). In a prospective study, multiple regression analysis showed the extent of bone disease to be the only variable influencing the serum levels of skeletal alkaline phosphatase and PSA. However, in contrast to serum PSA, skeletal alkaline phosphatase demonstrated a statistical correlation with the extent of bone disease (54).

Early detection of bone metastases will alert the clinician to the possible complications inherent in skeletal destruction. Bone scintigraphy remains the most sensitive method of assessing bone metastases, being superior to clinical evaluation, bone radiographs, serum alkaline phosphatase measurement and prostatic acid phosphatase (PAP) determination (55,56). Technetium diphosphonates are the optimum radiopharmaceuticals currently available because of their extremely high bone-to-soft tissue ratio (57).

Increased ^{18}F-fluoride uptake in malignant bone lesions reflects the increase in regional blood flow and bone turnover that characterise these lesions.

Studies have shown that ^{18}F-fluoride PET/CT is a highly sensitive and specific imaging modality for detection of bone metastases (58,59). However, no definitive results have been obtained and therefore no final recommendations can be made (60).

Besides bone, PCa may metastasise to any organ, but most commonly it affects distant lymph nodes, lung, liver, brain and skin. Clinical examination, chest X-ray, ultrasound, CT and MRI scans are appropriate methods of investigation, but only if symptoms suggest the possibility of soft-tissue metastasis.

The need for reliable serum markers to improve the pre-treatment staging of patients with PCa has long been recognised. At present, PSA is the marker of choice. A pre-treatment serum PSA level greater than 100 ng/mL has been found to be the single most important indicator of metastatic disease, with a positive predictive value of 100% (61). Furthermore, it has helped to reduce the number of patients with newly diagnosed PCa who require a bone scan. Patients with a low serum PSA concentration have only rarely been found to harbour detectable skeletal metastases. The correlation between serum PSA and bone scintigraphy in patients with newly diagnosed untreated PCa has been further investigated (62). Results suggest that a staging bone scan may be superfluous if the serum PSA concentration is less than 20 ng/mL in asymptomatic patients with well or moderately (up to 7: 3+4) differentiated tumours. In contrast, in patients with poorly differentiated tumours and locally advanced disease, a staging bone scan should be obtained irrespective of the serum PSA value (63).

7.4 Guidelines for the diagnosis and staging of PCa

Diagnosis of PCa - Conclusions
An abnormal digital rectal examination (DRE) result or elevated serum PSA measurement could indicate PCa. The exact cut-off level of what is considered to be a normal PSA value has yet to be determined, but values of approximately < 2-3 ng/mL are often used for younger men.
The diagnosis of PCa depends on histopathological (or cytological) confirmation.
Staging of PCa - Conclusions
Despite its high specificity in the evaluation of extraprostatic extension (EPE) and seminal vesicle invasion (SVI), TRUS has low sensitivity and a tendency to understage PCa. Even with the advent of colour power Doppler and contrast enhancement the accuracy of TRUS in local staging remains inadequate and largely operator-dependent. In comparison with DRE, TRUS and computed tomography (CT), MRI demonstrates higher accuracy for the assessment of uni- or bi-lobar disease (T2), EPE and SVI (T3), as well as the invasion of adjacent structures (T4).
Currently only sentinel lymph node dissection or extended PLND allow for histological detection of lymph node metastases with high sensitivity.

Diagnosis of PCa - Recommendations		**GR**
Biopsy and further staging investigations are only indicated if they affect the management of the patient.		C
	Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS)-guided systemic biopsy is the recommended method in most cases of suspected PCa. A minimum of 8 systemic, laterally directed, cores are recommended, with perhaps more cores in larger volume prostates.	B
	Transition zone biopsies are not recommended in the first set of biopsies due to low detection rates.	C
	One set of repeat biopsies is warranted in cases with persistent indication for PCa (abnormal DRE, elevated PSA or histopathological findings suggestive of malignancy at the initial biopsy).	B
	Overall recommendations for further (three or more) sets of biopsies cannot be made; the decision must be made based on an individual patient.	C
Transrectal peri-prostatic injection with a local anaesthetic can be offered to patients as effective analgesia when undergoing prostate biopsies.		A
Staging of PCa - Recommendations		
Local staging (T-staging) of PCa should be based on magnetic resonance (MR) imaging. Further information is provided by the number and sites of positive prostate biopsies, the tumour grade and the level of serum PSA.		C
For local staging TRUS should not be used since it has low sensitivity and a tendency to understage PCa.		
	Lymph node status (N-staging) need only be assessed when potentially curative treatment is planned. Patients with stage T2 or less, PSA < 20 ng/mL and a Gleason score ≤ 6 have a lower than 10% likelihood of having node metastases and can be spared nodal evaluation.	B
	In clinically localized PCa, staging must be done by pelvic lymph node dissection since it presents the only reliable staging method, given the significant limitations of pre-operative imaging in the detection of small metastases (< 5 mm),	
Skeletal metastasis (M-staging) is best assessed by bone scan. This may not be indicated in asymptomatic patients if the serum PSA level is < 20 ng/mL in the presence of well or moderately differentiated tumours.		B
In equivocal cases, ^{11}C-choline-, ^{18}F-flouride-PET/CT or whole body MRI are an option.		C

CT = computed tomography; DCE-MRI = dynamic contrast-enhanced MRI; DRE = digital rectal examination; EPE = extraprostatic extension; MRI = magnetic resonance imaging; MRSI = magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging; PCa = prostate cancer; PET = positron emission tomography; PLND = pelvic lymph-node dissection; PSA = prostate-specific antigen; SVI = seminal vesicle invasion; TRUS = transrectal ultrasound.

7.5 References

1. Spigelman SS, McNeal JE, Freiha FS, et al. Rectal examination in volume determination of carcinoma of the prostate: clinical and anatomical correlations. J Urol 1986 Dec;136(6):1228-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3773095
2. Partin AW, Carter HB, Chan DW, et al. Prostate specific antigen in the staging of localized prostate cancer: influence of tumour differentiation, tumour volume and benign hyperplasia. J Urol 1990 Apr;143(4):747-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1690309
3. Partin AW, Mangold LA, Lamm DM, et al. Contemporary update of the prostate cancer staging nomograms (Partin Tables) for the new millennium. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):843-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744442
4. Morote J, Encabo G, de Torres IM. Use of percent free prostate-specific antigen as a predictor of the pathological features of clinically localized prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2000 Aug;38(2):225-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10895016
5. Custovic Z, Kraus O, Tomaskovic I, et al. Serum tPSA, cPSA, related density parameters and chromogranin A as predictors of positive margins after radical prostatectomy. Anticancer Res 2007 Jul-Aug;27(4C):2817-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17695453
6. Smith JA Jr, Scardino PT, Resnick MI, et al. Transrectal ultrasound versus digital rectal examination for the staging of carcinoma of the prostate: results of a prospective multi-institutional trial. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):902-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072596
7. Liebross RH, Pollack A, Lankford SP, et al. Transrectal ultrasound for staging prostate carcinoma prior to radiation therapy: an evaluation based on disease outcome. Cancer 1999 Apr;85(7):1577-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10193949
8. Hsu CY, Joniau S, Oyen R, et al. Detection of clinical unilateral T3a prostate cancer - by digital rectal examination or transrectal ultrasonography? BJU Int 2006 Nov;98(5):982-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945120
9. Mitterberger M, Pinggera GM, Pallwein L, et al. The value of three-dimensional transrectal ultrasonography in staging prostate cancer. BJU Int 2007 Jul;100(1):47-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17433033
10. Sauvain JL, Palascak P, Bourscheid D, et al. Value of power Doppler and 3D vascular sonography as a method for diagnosis and staging of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):21-30; discussion 30-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814671
11. Zalesky M, Urban M, Smerhovský Z, et al. Value of power Doppler sonography with 3D reconstruction in preoperative diagnostics of extraprostatic tumor extension in clinically localized prostate cancer. Int J Urol 2008;15(1):68-75; discussion 75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18184177
12. Smeenge M, Mischi M, Laguna Pes MP, et al. Novel contrast-enhanced ultrasound imaging in prostate cancer.World J Urol. 2011 Oct;29(5):581-7.
13. Saliken JC, Gray RR, Donnelly BJ, et al. Extraprostatic biopsy improves the staging of localized prostate cancer. Can Assoc Radiol J 2000 Apr;51(2):114-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10786920
14. Stone NN, Stock RG, Unger P. Indications for seminal vesicle biopsy and laparoscopic pelvic lymph node dissection in men with localized carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1392-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7658545
15. Allepuz Losa CA, Sans Velez JI, Gil Sanz MJ, et al. Seminal vesicle biopsy in prostate cancer staging. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1407-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7544842
16. Guillonneau B, Debras B, Veillon B, et al. Indications for preoperative seminal vesicle biopsies in staging of clinically localized prostatic cancer. Eur Urol 1997;32(2):160-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286646
17. Freedland SJ, Csathy GS, Dorey F, et al. Percent prostate needle biopsy tissue with cancer is more predictive of biochemical failure or adverse pathology after radical prostatectomy than prostate specific antigen or Gleason score. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 PT 1):516-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792909
18. Quinn DI, Henshall SM, Brenner PC, et al. Prognostic significance of preoperative factors in localized prostate carcinoma treated with radical prostatectomy: importance of percentage of biopsies that contain tumor and the presence of biopsy perineural invasion. Cancer 2003 Apr;97(8):1884-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12673714

19. Elliott SP, Shinohara K, Logan SL, et al. Sextant prostate biopsies predict side and sextant site of extracapsular extension of prostate cancer. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):105-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050501
20. Narayan P, Gajendran V, Taylor SP, et al. The role of transrectal ultrasound-guided biopsy-based staging, preoperative serum prostate-specific antigen, and biopsy Gleason score in prediction of final pathological diagnosis in prostate cancer. Urology 1995 Aug;46(2):205-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542823
21. Barqawi AB, Rove KO, Gholizadeh S, ET AL. The role of 3-dimensional mapping biopsy in decision making for treatment of apparent early stage prostate cancer. J Urol 2011 Jul;186(1):80-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21571335
22. Lee N, Newhouse JH, Olsson CA, Benson MC, et al. Which patients with newly diagnosed prostate cancer need a computed tomography scan of the abdomen and pelvis? An analysis based on 588 patients. Urology 1999 Sep;54(3):490-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10475360
23. Jager GJ, Severens JL, Thornbury JR, et al. Prostate cancer staging: should MR imaging be used? A decision analytic approach. Radiology 2000 May;215(2):445-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796923
24. Masterson TA, Touijer K. The role of endorectal coil MRI in preoperative staging and decision-making for the treatment of clinically localized prostate cancer. MAGMA 2008 Nov;21(6):371-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18751745
25. Heijmink SW, Fütterer JJ, Hambrock T, et al. Prostate cancer: body-array versus endorectal coil MR imaging at 3 T - comparison of image quality, localization, and staging performance. Radiology 2007;244(1):184-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17495178
26. Mullerad M, Hricak H, Kuroiwa K, et al. Comparison of endorectal magnetic resonance imaging, guided prostate biopsy and digital rectal examination in the preoperative anatomical localization of prostate cancer. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6): 2158-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280755
27. Sala E, Akin O, Moskowitz CS, et al. Endorectal MR imaging in the evaluation of seminal vesicle invasion: diagnostic accuracy and multivariate feature analysis. Radiology 2006 Mar;238(3):929-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16424250
28. Wang L, Mullerad M, Chen HN, et al. Prostate cancer: incremental value of endorectal MRI findings for prediction of extracapsular extension. Radiology 2004 Jul;232(1):133-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15166321
29. Hricak H, Wang L, Wei DC, et al. The role of preoperative endorectal MRI in the decision regarding whether to preserve or resect neurovascular bundles during radical retropubic prostatectomy. Cancer 2004 Jun;100(12):2655-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15197809
30. Wang L, Hricak H, Kattan MW, et al. Prediction of seminal vesicle invasion in prostate cancer: incremental value of adding endorectal MRI to the Kattan Nomogram. Radiology 2007 Jan;242(1): 182-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17090712
31. Wang L, Hricak H, Kattan MW, et al. Prediction of organ confined prostate cancer: incremental value of MRI and MRI sprectroscopic imaging to staging nomograms. Radiology 2006;238(2):597-603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16344335
32. Fuchsjager M, Shukla-Dave A, Akin O, et al. Prostate cancer imaging. Acta Radiol 2008;49:107-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18210320
33. Scheidler J, Hricak H, Vigneron DB, et al. Prostate cancer: localization with three-dimensional proton MR spectroscopic imaging - clinicopathologic study. Radiology 1999;213(2):473-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10551229
34. Zakian KL, Sircar K, Hricak H, et al. Correlation of proton MR spectroscopic imaging with Gleason score based on step section pathologic analysis after radical prostatectomy. Radiology 2005;234(3):804-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15734935
35. Rinnab L, Blumstein NM, Mottaghy FM, et al. ^{11}C-choline positron-emission tomography/computed tomography and transrectal ultrasonography for staging localized prostate cancer. BJU Int 2007 Jun;99(6):1421-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17355373

36. Stone NN, Stock RG, Parikh D, et al. Perineural invasion and seminal vesicle involvement predict pelvic lymph node metastasis in men with localized carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1998 Nov;160(5):1722-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9783940
37. Pisansky TM, Zincke H, Suman VJ, et al. Correlation of pretherapy prostate cancer characteristics with histologic findings from pelvic lymphadenectomy specimens. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1996 Jan;34(1):33-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12118563
38. Cagiannos I, Karakiewicz P, Eastham JA, et al. A preoperative nomogram identifying decreased risk of positive pelvic lymph nodes in patients with prostate cancer. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1798-803.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532779
39. Haese A, Epstein JI, Huland H, et al. Validation of a biopsy-based pathologic algorithm for predicting lymph node metastases in patients with clinically localized prostate carcinoma. Cancer 2002 Sep;95(5):1016-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12209685
40. Hoivels AM, Heesakkers RAM, Adang EM, et al. The diagnostic accuracy of CT and MRI in the staging of pelvic lymph nodes in patients with prostate cancer: a meta-analysis. Clinical Radiology 2008;63:387-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18325358
41. Jager GJ, Barentsz JO, Oosterhof GO, et al. Pelvic adenopathy in prostatic and urinary bladder carcinoma: MR-imaging with a three-dimensional T1-weighted magnetization-prepared-rapid gradient-echo sequence. Am J Roentgenol 1996 Dec;167(6):1503-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8956585
42. Harisinghani MG, Barentsz J, Hahn PF, et al. Noninvasive detection of clinically occult lymph-node metastases in prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Jun;348(25):2491-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12815134
43. Heesakkers RA, Fütterer JJ, Hövels AM, et al. Prostate cancer evaluated with ferumoxtran-10-enhanced T2*-weighted MR imaging at 1.5 and 3.0 T: early experience. Radiology 2006 May; 239(2):481-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16641354
44. Salminen E, Hogg A, Binns D, et al. Investigations with FDG-PET scanning in prostate cancer show limited value for clinical practice. Acta Oncol 2002;41(5):425-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12442917
45. Husarik DB, Miralbell R, Dubs M, et al. Evaluation of [(18)F]-choline PET/CT for staging and restaging of prostate cancer. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2008 Feb;35(2):253-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17926036
46. Schiavina R, Scattoni V, Castellucci P, et al. (11)C-choline positron emission tomography/computerized tomography for preoperative lymph-node staging in intermediate-risk and high-risk prostate cancer: comparison with clinical staging nomograms. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):392-401.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18456393
47. Heidenreich A, Varga Z, Von Knobloch R. Extended pelvic lymphadenectomy in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy: high incidence of lymph node metastasis. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1681-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912387
48. Bader P, Burkhard FC, Markwalder R, et al. Is a limited lymph node dissection an adequate staging procedure for prostate cancer? J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):514-18, discussion 518.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131300
49. Weckermann D, Dorn R, Holl G, et al. Limitations of radioguided surgery in high-risk prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1549-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16996201
50. Weckermann D, Dorn R, Trefz M, et al. Sentinel lymph node dissection for prostate cancer: experience with more than 1,000 patients. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):916-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296375
51. Whitmore WF Jr. Natural history and staging of prostate cancer. Urol Clin North Am 1984 May;11(2): 205-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6375067
52. Wolff JM, Ittel TH, Borchers H, et al. Metastatic workup of patients with prostate cancer employing alkaline phosphatase and skeletal alkaline phosphatase. Anticancer Res 1999 Jul-Aug;19(4A):2653-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10470213

53. Lorente JA, Morote J, Raventos C, et al. Clinical efficacy of bone alkaline phosphatase and prostate specific antigen in the diagnosis of bone metastasis in prostate cancer. J Urol 1996 Apr;155(4):1348-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8632571
54. Lorente JA, Valenzuela H, Morote J, et al. Serum bone alkaline phosphatase levels enhance the clinical utility of prostate specific antigen in the staging of newly diagnosed prostate cancer patients. Eur J Nucl Med 1999 Jun;26(6):625-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10369948
55. McGregor B, Tulloch AG, Quinlan MF, et al. The role of bone scanning in the assessment of prostatic carcinoma. Br J Urol 1978 May;50(3):178-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/753456
56. O'Donoghue EP, Constable AR, Sherwood T, et al. Bone scanning and plasma phosphatases in carcinoma of the prostate. Br J Urol 1978 May;50(3):172-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/753455
57. Buell U, Kleinhans E, Zorn-Bopp E, et al. A comparison of bone imaging with Tc-99m DPD and Tc-99m MDP: concise communication. J Nucl Med 1982 Mar;23(3):214-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6460854
58. Even-Sapir E, Metser U, Mishani E, et al. The detection of bone metastases in patients with high-risk prostate cancer: 99mTc-MDP Planar bone scintigraphy, single- and multifield-of-view SPECT, 18F-fluoride PET/CT. J Nucl Med 2006 Feb;47(2):287-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16455635
59. Beheshti M, Vali R, Langsteger W. [18F]Fluorocholine PET/CT in the assessment of bone metastases in prostate cancer. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2007 Aug;34(8):1316-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17476505
60. Bouchelouche K, Oehr P. Recent developments in urologic oncology: positron emission tomography molecular imaging. Curr Opin Oncol 2008 May;20(3):321-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18391633
61. Rana A, Karamanis K, Lucas MG, et al. Identification of metastatic disease by T category, Gleason score and serum PSA level in patients with carcinoma of the prostate. Br J Urol 1992 Mar;69(3):277-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1373666
62. Lee N, Fawaaz R, Olsson CA, et al. Which patients with newly diagnosed prostate cancer need a radionuclide bone scan? An analysis based on 631 patients. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2000 Dec;48(5):1443-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11121646
63. Bruwer G, Heyns CF, Allen FJ. Influence of local tumour stage and grade on reliability of serum prostate-specific antigen in predicting skeletal metastases in patients with adenocarcinoma of the prostate. Eur Urol 1999;35(3):223-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072624

8. TREATMENT: DEFERRED TREATMENT (WATCHFUL WAITING/ACTIVE MONITORING)

8.1 Introduction

There is a great difference between the incidence of PCa and deaths from PCa. In 2007, in the USA, there were 240,890 new cases with only 33,720 deaths (1). Several autopsy studies of people dying from different causes have shown that while 60-70% of older men have histological PCa (2), a large proportion of these tumours will not progress. Prostate cancer is diagnosed in only 15-20% of men during their lifetime, with a 3% lifetime risk of death (3).

The incidence of small, localised, well-differentiated PCa is increasing, mainly as a result of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) screening and 'multicore' schemes of prostate biopsy. These data suggest that many men with localised PCa would not actually benefit from definitive treatment. With the aim of reducing the risk of overtreatment in this subgroup of patients, two conservative management strategies of 'watchful waiting' and 'active surveillance' have been proposed.

8.1.1 *Definition*

8.1.1.1 *Watchful waiting (WW)*

Watchful waiting is also known as 'deferred treatment' or 'symptom-guided treatment'. This term was coined in the pre-PSA screening era (before 1990) and referred to the conservative management of PCa until the development of local or systemic progression. At this point, the patient would then be treated palliatively with transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or other procedures for urinary tract obstruction, and hormonal therapy or radiotherapy for the palliation of metastatic lesions.

8.1.1.2 *Active surveillance (AS)*

Active surveillance is also known as 'active monitoring'. It is the new term for the conservative management of PCa. Introduced in the past decade, it includes an active decision not to treat the patient immediately. Instead, the patient is followed up under close surveillance and treated at pre-defined thresholds that classify progression (i.e. short PSA doubling time and deteriorating histopathological factors on repeat biopsy). The treatment options are intended to be curative.

8.2 Deferred treatment of localised PCa (stage T1-T2, Nx-N0, M0)

8.2.1 *Watchful waiting (WW)*

The rationale behind WW is the observation that PCa often progresses slowly, and is diagnosed in older men, in whom there is a high incidence of co-morbidity and related high competitive mortality (4). Watchful waiting can be considered as an option for treating patients with localised PCa and a limited life expectancy or for older patients with less aggressive cancers.

There have been several attempts to summarise the key papers dealing with deferred treatment in patients with presumed localised PCa (5-7). Most have presented the same results, as they analyse roughly the same series, but using somewhat different methodologies. The outcome studies in WW usually included patients, whose PSA readings were not always available and who had predominantly palpable lesions that would currently be defined as intermediate-risk tumours (8). The most recent study used data from the PSA era of the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) database of the National Cancer Institute in the USA (9). These studies included patients with a follow-up of up to 25 years, for whom the endpoints are overall survival (OS) and disease-specific survival (DSS).

Several WW series show a very consistent DSS ratio at 10 years, ranging from 82-87% (5,10-14), and up to 80-95% if T1-T2 Gleason $\leq$ 7 (9). In three studies with data beyond 15 years, the DSS was 80%, 79% and 58%, respectively (11,13,14). Two of them reported a 20-year DSS of 57% and 32%, respectively (11,13).

Chodak et al. reported a pooled analysis of the original data from 828 patients treated by WW (5). The paper was based on patients from six non-randomised studies and described cancer-specific survival and metastasis-free survival after 5 and 10 years of follow-up (5) (LE: 2b).

Tumour grade is clearly significant, with very low survival rates for grade 3 tumours. Although the 10-year cancer-specific rate is equally good (87%) for grade 1 and 2 tumours, the latter have a significantly higher progression rate, with 42% of these patients developing metastases (Table 9).

Table 9: Outcome of deferred treatment in localised PCa in relation to tumour grade (6): percentage of patients (95% confidence interval) surviving at 5 and 10 years

Grade	5 years (%)	10 years (%)
Disease-specific survival		
Grade 1	98 (96-99)	87 (81-91)
Grade 2	97 (93-98)	87 (80-92)
Grade 3	67 (51-79)	34 (19-50)
Metastasis-free survival		
Grade 1	93 (90-95)	81 (75-86)
Grade 2	84 (79-89)	58 (49-66)
Grade 3	51 (36-64)	26 (13-41)

The importance of tumour grade on survival after conservative management of PCa was also underlined in a large register study using the SEER database (9) (LE: 3). Patients with grade 1, 2 and 3 tumours had 10-year cancer-specific survival rates of 91%, 90% and 74%, respectively, correlating with data from the pooled analysis.

The paper by Chodak et al. also specifically described the outcome for stage T1a patients (5), with cancer-specific 10-year survival rates of 96% and 94%, respectively, for grade 1 and 2 tumours. The

metastasis-free survival rate was 92% for patients with grade 1 tumours, but 78% for those with grade 2 tumours, indicating a higher risk of progression in individuals with moderately differentiated tumours. This difference in progression rate correlates with other studies on stage T1a disease (15,16).

The impact of grade on the risk of tumour progression and ultimately death from PCa was also described in a paper by Albertsen et al. in the pre-PSA era (17). The study re-evaluated all biopsy specimens using the more widely accepted Gleason score, and showed that the risk of PCa death was very high in Gleason 7-10 tumours, intermediate in Gleason 6 tumours, but low in Gleason 2-5 cancers (Table 10) (18,19) (LE: 3).

This paper also showed that Gleason 6-10 tumours carry a continuously increasing risk of ending the patient's life for up to 15 years of follow-up after conservative management. The cancer-specific survival curves for this group of patients have been published in a recent discussion article on different methods of assessing outcome in treatment for localised PCa (18).

Table 10: The 15-year risk of dying from PCa in relation to Gleason score at diagnosis in patients with localised disease aged 55-74 years (17,18)

Gleason score	Risk of cancer death* (%)	Cancer-specific mortality† (%)
2-4	4-7	8
5	6-11	14
6	18-30	44
7	42-70	76
8-10	60-87	93

** The figures on the risk of cancer death differ for different age groups and represent the true risk in the studied population (taking actual competing mortality from other causes into consideration).*

† The cancer-specific mortality compensates for differences in competing mortality and indicates the outcome if the patient actually lived for 15 years.

Three randomised clinical trials have reported long-term follow-up of patients randomised to WW or radical prostatectomy: the first was in the pre-PSA screening era (19); the second was at the beginning of PSA screening (20); and the third was a recent study, the results of which have not yet been published (21).

Between 1967 and 1975, the Veterans Administration Cooperative Urological Research Group randomised 142 patients affected by clinical localised PCa. The study was underpowered to detect treatment differences (22).

Between 1989 and 1999, the Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study Number 4 (SPCG-4) randomised 695 patients with clinical stage T1-T2 to WW (348) or radical prostatectomy (347) (Table 11) (30). This study began after PSA screening was introduced into clinical practice, but only 5% of men were diagnosed by screening. After a median follow-up of 12.8 years, this study showed a significant decrease in cancer-specific mortality, overall mortality, metastatic risk progression and local progression in patients treated with radical prostatectomy versus WW (LE: 1b).

Table 11: Outcome of Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study Number 4 (SPCG-4) at 15 years of follow-up (median of 12.8 years) (20)

	RP (N = 347) % (n)	WW (N = 348) % (n)	Relative risk (95% CI)	p value
Disease-specific mortality	14.6	20.7	0.62	0.01
Overall mortality	46.1	57.2	0.75 (0.61-0.92)	0.007
Metastatic progression	21.7	33.4	0.59 (0.45-0.79)	< 0.001
Local progression	21.5	49.3	0.34 (0.26-0.45)	

RP = radical prostatectomy; WW = watchful waiting.

Subgroup analysis showed that the overall difference was not modified by PSA level (below or above 10 ng/mL) or by the Gleason score (below 7 or above) at the time of diagnosis. However, age at that the time of randomisation had a profound impact, the benefit on overall survival and metastases free survival being only seen for those below 65 years of age. The Prostate Cancer Intervention Versus Observation Trial: VA/NCI/AHRQ Cooperative Studies Program #407 (PIVOT) is an ongoing, controlled, multicentre, randomised clinical

trial comparing radical prostatectomy with WW in patients with clinical stage T1-T2 disease. Between 1994 and 2002, 731 patients with a median age of 67 years were enrolled. The median PSA was 7.8 ng/mL (mean 10.2 ng/mL). Three-quarters of the men had clinical stage T1c disease. Using previously developed tumour risk categorizations based on PSA levels, Gleason histological grade and tumour stage, approximately 43% of men had low-risk PCa, 36% had medium-risk PCa, and 20% had high-risk PCa. Follow-up is planned for 15 years, and the primary endpoint is the overall mortality. Men enrolled in PIVOT are more representative of men diagnosed and treated in everyday clinical practice than those enrolled in SPCG-4. Preliminary unpublished results have been presented at the latest AUA meeting (21). The results suggested that overall there was a lack of survival benefit. However, there appeared to be an overall survival benefit in men with an intermediate- and high-risk PCa, as well as a cancer specific survival benefit in men with high-risk PCa or with a PSA above 10 ng/mL. Full results are urgently awaited.

No data are available comparing WW and radiotherapy. Some data are available for hormonal treatment. For patients who choose deferred treatment, there appears to be a modest risk of disease progression, although shorter cancer-specific survival times have been reported after deferred therapy compared with immediate hormone therapy, in presumed localised PCa (not using PSA for staging) after 15 years of follow-up (22). In contrast to Lundgren et al. (22), the report of the Casodex Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group programme showed a higher mortality in a group of men with localised PCa treated with bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, than in those who received placebo (23).

Conclusions on deferred treatment	**LE**
Clinical stage T1c currently represents 40-50% of new cases of PCa (24). The incidence of small, localised, well-differentiated PCa is increasing, mainly as a result of PSA screening and 'multicore' schemes of prostate biopsy.	
The SPCG-4 study demonstrated significant advantages for RP over WW, but only 5% of those studied were PSA-screened patients.	1b
During the past 20 years, there appears to have been a shift towards higher Gleason scoring levels (25), even in cases evaluating microscopic foci of PCa. Some tumours previously given a Gleason score of 6 (3 + 3) might be scored today as 7 (3 + 4) or higher.	3
The lead time in PSA screening is about 10 years (26,27). It is therefore possible that cancer-related mortality from untreated, non-screen-detected PCa in patients with contemporary Gleason scores of 6 might be as low as 10% at 20-year follow-up (28).	2a
The comparison of immediate hormonal treatment to WW in localised PCa remain controversial and may be associated with an increased mortality with bicalutamide.	2a

It appears that many small localised well-differentiated PCas will not progress, and radical therapy may lead to substantial overtreatment with resulting effects on the patients' quality of life and treatments costs. This has been further confirmed by a recent analysis at 5 and 10 years of 19,639 patients > 65 years from the SEER database not given curative treatment. Based on comorbidities (Charlson score), most men with a Charlson score ≥ 2 died from competing causes at 10 years, whatever their initial age (below or above 65 years). However, men with no or just one comorbidity had a low risk of death at 10 years, especially for well or moderately differentiated lesions (29). In men with a Charlson score ≥ 2, tumour aggressiveness had little impact on overall survival, suggesting that perhaps these patients could have been spared the biopsies and diagnosis of cancer. This strengthens the major role of initial comorbidity evaluation, leading to an individual survival probability, before embarking an individual on any form of medical intervention such as biopsies or treatment (30).

*8.2.2 **Active surveillance***

Active surveillance was conceived with the aim of reducing the ratio of overtreatment in patients with clinically confined very low-risk PCa, without giving up radical treatment, as happens with WW. Currently, the only data available is data from non-mature randomised clinical trials of active surveillance, with a follow-up of less than 10 years. Active surveillance can therefore only be proposed for highly selected low-risk patients, particularly as the data indicate there is a significant risk of tumour progression after conservative treatment for some patients with apparently localised PCa. This conclusion is also supported by other studies, which have shown that patients with a life expectancy > 10 years have a higher mortality rate from PCa in the absence of curative treatment. These studies include the Johansson series, which showed that there is a higher risk of dying from PCa in patients surviving more than 15 years with well- and moderately differentiated tumours at diagnosis (31) (LE: 3). In the light of these findings, it is essential that a more precise selection of candidates for active

surveillance is carried out.

A multicentre clinical trial of active surveillance versus immediate treatment was opened in the USA in 2006. Its results are expected in 2025. Choo, Klotz and co-workers were the first to report on a prospective active surveillance protocol (32,33). The most advanced cohort to date was reported last year by Klotz (43). A total of 450 patients with clinical stage T1c or T2a, PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL were enrolled with an overall Gleason score ≤ 6 (PSA ≤ 15), with patients > 70 years having a Gleason score ≤ 7 [3 + 4]. Initially, six biopsies were performed, followed by the usual extended 12-core protocol during the study. At a median follow-up of 6.8 years, the 10-year overall survival was 68%. At 10 years, the disease-specific survival was 97.2%, with 62% of men still alive on active surveillance. Subsequently, 30% of patients underwent a radical treatment for the following reasons: 48% for a PSA doubling time < 3 years; 27% for Gleason score progression on repeat biopsies; and 10% because of patient preference.

A variety of additional studies on active surveillance in clinically organ confined disease (Tables 12 and 13) have now been published. All have confirmed that, in well-selected patients with very low-risk disease, there was a very low rate of progression and cancer-specific death, with only a few patients required delayed radical intervention. However, an extended follow-up is necessary to obtain definitive results. Thus, active surveillance might mean no treatment at all for patients older than 70 years, while in younger patients, it might mean a possible treatment delayed for years. The repeated biopsies that are part of active surveillance might then become important for their potential side effect on nerve preservation if surgery is subsequently considered.

Table 12: Clinical trials of AS for organ-confined PCa: inclusion criteria

	N	Median age	Criteria
Dall'Era (35)	376	62	Gleason ≤ 3+3, PSAd ≤ 0,15 ng/dL, T ≤ T2, ≤ 33% biopsies+, ≤ 50% cores
Van den Berg (36)	616	66	Gleason ≤ 3+3, PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL, PSAd ≤ 0,2 ng/dL, T≤T2, ≤ 2 biopsies +
Van As (37)	326	67	Gleason ≤ 3+4, PSA ≤ 15 ng/mL, T ≤ T2a, ≤ 50% biopsies +
Soloway (38)	230	64	Gleason ≤ 6, PSA ≤ 10 ng/dL, T ≤ T2, ≤ 2 biopsies+, ≤ 20% cores +
Klotz (34)	453	70	Gleason ≤ 6, PSA ≤ 10 ng/dL, (up to 1999: Gleason ≤ 3+4, PSA ≤ 15 ng/mL) < 3 biopsies +, < 50% each core
Tosoain (39)	633	66	Gleason ≤ 3+3, PSAd ≤ 0,15 ng/dL, T1, ≤ 2 biopsies+, ≤ 50% cores
Adamy (40)	238	64	Gleason ≤ 3+3, PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL, T ≤ T2a, ≤ 3 biopsies+, ≤ 50% length

Table 13: Clinical trials of AS for organ-confined PCa: main results

		Progression			Survival (%)		
	Median follow-up (months)	Biopsy (%)	PSA / PSA DT	Patient's request	OS	CSS	PFS
Dall'Era	47	35	5	8	97	100	54
Van den Berg	52	-	13	18	91	100	68
Van As	22	13	18	2	98	100	73
Soloway	32	10	-	-	100	100	86
Klotz	82	9	14	3	68	97	70
Tosoain	32	14	-	9	98	100	54
Adamy	22	13	14	11	-	-	-

OS = overall survival: CSS = cancer-specific survival; PFS =progression-free survival.

Different series have identified several eligibility criteria for enrolment (41):

- clinically confined PCa (T1-T2);
- Gleason score < 7 for most studies;
- PSA < 10-15 ng/mL.

Limited tumour volume is defined by a low number of involved cores and a low tumour length on each involved core. The role of other tools. e.g. MRI, to better define acceptable lesions remains controversial, except probably for anterior lesions (42). The PCA3 level may become a practical tool in the future (43).

Active surveillance is based on repeated DRE, PSA and most importantly repeated biopsies, usually every year. The place of early repeated biopsy has become an important part of the selection process, based on the risk of under-detection of grade 4 (35,40,44,45).

The criteria for active treatment are less well defined (5), but most groups have used:

- PSA doubling time with a cut-off value ranging between ≤ 2 and ≤ 4 years. This criterion is becoming questionable because of a weak link between PSA doubling time and grade progression on repeated biopsy (46).
- Gleason score progression to ≥ 7 during follow-up systematic biopsies, at intervals ranging from 1-4 years.
- Patient's request mainly based on anxiety. This is a significant factor (36) and might affect up to 10% of treated patients. No data is available regarding active surveillance. However, data from the SPCG-4 trial has suggested that, based on self-administered questionnaires 87% of the included patients), the treatment group always reported inferior well-being, depression and psychological status, but this difference was never significant (47).

8.3 Deferred treatment for locally advanced PCa (stage T3-T4, Nx-N0, M0)

The literature reporting on deferred treatment for locally advanced PCa is sparse. There are no randomised studies that compare more aggressive treatments, such as radiotherapy or surgery, with or without hormones.

Most patients whose disease progresses after deferred treatment of locally advanced PCa will be candidates for hormone therapy. There are reports from non-randomised studies showing that hormone treatment may safely be delayed until metastatic progression occurs, as no survival advantage was noted between patients treated with immediate orchiectomy compared with delayed treatment (48,49).

In a recent prospective randomised clinical phase III trial (EORTC 30981), 985 patients with T0-4 N0-2 M0 PCa were randomly assigned to immediate androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT) or received ADT only on symptomatic disease progression or occurrence of serious complications (50,51). After a median follow-up of 7.8 years, the overall survival hazard ratio was 1.25 (95% confidence interval [CI]: 1.05-1.48; non-inferiority $p > 0.1$) favouring immediate treatment, seemingly due to fewer deaths of non-prostatic cancer causes ($p = 0.06$). The time from randomisation to progression of hormone-refractory disease did not differ significantly nor did prostate cancer-specific survival. The median time to the start of deferred treatment after study entry was 7 years. In this group, 126 patients (25.6%) died without ever needing treatment (44% of deaths in this arm). The conclusion drawn from this study is that immediate ADT resulted in a modest but statistically significant increase in overall survival, but no significant difference in PCa mortality or symptom-free survival. This raises the question of the usefulness of such a small statistical benefit.

Furthermore, the authors identified significant risk factors associated with a significantly worse outcome: in both arms. Patients with a baseline PSA > 50 ng/mL were at a > 3.5-fold higher risk of dying of PCa than patients with a baseline PSA ≤ to 8 ng/mL. If the baseline PSA was between 8 ng/mL and 50 ng/ mL, the risk of PCa death was approximately 7.5-fold higher in patients with a PSA doubling time < 12 months than in patients with a PSA doubling time > 12 months. The time to PSA relapse following a response to immediate ADT correlated significantly with baseline PSA, suggesting that baseline PSA may also reflect disease aggressiveness.

However, when early and delayed treatments were compared in a large randomised trial carried out by the Medical Research Council (MRC), a survival benefit for immediate hormone therapy was demonstrated (62), comparable with the results of the Lundgren et al. study mentioned above (22) (LE: 1b). In addition, a comparison of bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, with placebo showed that progression-free survival (PFS) was better with early treatment in patients with locally advanced PCa (23) (LE: 1b).

Fifty selected asymptomatic patients (mean age 71 years) with highly or moderately differentiated stage T3 M0 PCa were followed up for 169 months (53). The 5- and 10-year cancer-specific survival rates were 90% and 74%, respectively, and the likelihood of being without treatment at 5 and 10 years was 40% and 30%, respectively. The authors concluded that WW might be a treatment option for selected patients with non-poorly differentiated T3 tumours and a life expectancy of less than 10 years (LE: 3).

8.4 Deferred treatment for metastatic PCa (stage M1)

There are only very sparse data on this subject. The only candidates for such treatment should be asymptomatic patients with a strong wish to avoid treatment-related side-effects (LE: 4). As the median survival time is about 2 years, the time without any treatment (before symptoms occur) is very short in most cases. The MRC trial highlighted the risk of developing symptoms (pathological fractures, spinal cord compression), and even death from PCa, without receiving the possible benefit from hormone treatment (52,54) (LE:1b). If a deferred treatment policy is chosen for a patient with advanced PCa, close follow-up must be possible.

8.5 Summary of deferred treatment for prostate cancer

8.5.1 ***Indications***	**LE**
In presumed localised PCa (Nx-N0, M0):	
Stage T1a: well and moderately differentiated tumours. In younger patients with a life expectancy of more than 10 years, re-evaluation with PSA, TRUS and biopsies of the prostatic remnant is recommended.	2a
Stage T1b-T2b: well and moderately differentiated tumours. In asymptomatic patients with a life expectancy of < 10 years.	2a
Active surveillance	2a
In patients with the lowest risk of cancer progression: cT1-2a, PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL, biopsy Gleason score ≤ 6 (at least 10 cores), ≤ 2 positive biopsies, minimal biopsy core involvement (≤ 50% cancer per biopsy).	
Active surveillance selection is based on confirmatory biopsies.	
Follow-up is based on DRE, PSA and repeated biopsies. The optimal timing for follow-up is still unclear (yearly or every 2 years).	
The trigger for patients being moved off active treatment is based mainly on grade progression on repeated biopsies or at the patient's request.	
PSA progression is controversial.	
8.5.2 ***Options***	
In presumed localised PCa (Nx-N0, M0):	
Stage T1b-T2b patients who are well informed and have well-differentiated PCa and a life expectancy of 10-15 years.	
All patients not willing to accept side-effects of active treatment.	
Well-informed, asymptomatic patients with high PSA levels for whom cure is unlikely.	3
In locally advanced disease (stage T3-T4):	
Asymptomatic patients with well or moderately differentiated cancer, PCa and a short life expectancy.	3
PSA < 50 ng/mL and PSA doubling time > 12 months.	1
In metastatic disease (M1):	
A very rare patient without any symptoms and the possibility of close follow-up.	4

8.6 References

1. Cancer: fact and figures 2011. America cancer society. 2011 (web base: http://www.cancer.org/Research/CancerFactsFigures/CancerFactsFigures/cancer-facts-figures-2011)
2. Haas GP, Delongchamps N, Brawley OW, et al. The worldwide epidemiology of prostate cancer: perspectives from autopsy studies. Can J Urol 2008 Feb;15(1):3866-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18304396
3. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, et al. Cancer statistics, 2006. CA Cancer J Clin 2006;56(2):106-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16514137
4. Adolfsson J. Watchful waiting and active surveillance: the current position. BJU Int 2008 Jul;102(1): 10-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18422774
5. Chodak GW, Thisted RA, Gerber GS, et al. Results of conservative management of clinically localized prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 1994 Jan;330(4):242-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8272085

6. Middleton RG, Thompson IM, Austenfeld MS, et al. Prostate Cancer Clinical Guidelines Panel Summary report on the management of clinically localized prostate cancer. The American Urological Association. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):2144-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500479
7. Thompson IM. Observation alone in the management of localized prostate cancer: the natural history of untreated disease. Urology 1994 Feb;43(2 Suppl):41-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8116132
8. D'Amico AV, Whittington R, Malkowicz SB, et al. Biochemical outcome after radical prostatectomy, external beam radiation therapy, or interstitial radiation therapy for clinically localized prostate cancer. JAMA 1998 Sep;280(11):969-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9749478
9. Lu-Yao GL, Albertsen PC, Moore DF, et al. Outcomes of localized prostate cancer following conservative management. JAMA 2009 Sep 16;302(11):1202-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19755699
10. Sandblom G, Dufmats M, Varenhorst E. Long-term survival in a Swedish population-based cohort of men with prostate cancer. Urology 2000 Sep;56(3):442-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962312
11. Johansson JE, Adami HO, Andersson SO, et al. Natural history of localized prostatic cancer. A population-based study in 223 untreated patients. Lancet 1989 Apr;1(8642):799-803.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2564901
12. Bill-Axelson A, Holmberg L, Ruutu M, et al. for the Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study No. 4. Radical prostatectomy versus watchful waiting in early prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2005 May;352(19):1977-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15888698
13. Adolfsson J, Tribukait B, Levitt S. The 20-yr outcome in patients with well- or moderately differentiated clinically localized prostate cancer diagnosed in the pre-PSA era: the prognostic value of tumour ploidy and comorbidity. Eur Urol 2007 Oct;52(4):1028-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17467883
14. Jonsson E, Sigbjarnarson HP, Tomasson J, et al. Adenocarcinoma of the prostate in Iceland: a population-based study of stage, Gleason grade, treatment and long-term survival in males diagnosed between 1983 and 1987. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2006;40(4):265-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16916765
15. Lowe BA. Management of stage T1a Prostate cancer. Semin Urol Oncol 1996 Aug;14(3):178-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8865481
16. Loughlin KR, Renshaw AA, Kumar S. Expectant management of stage A-1 (T1a) prostate cancer utilizing serum PSA levels: a preliminary report. J Surg Oncol 1999 Jan;70(1):49-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9989421
17. Albertsen PC, Hanley JA, Gleason DF, et al. Competing risk analysis of men aged 55 to 74 years at diagnosis managed conservatively for clinically localized prostate cancer. JAMA 1998 Sep;280(11):975-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9749479
18. Albertsen P, Hanley JA, Murphy-Setzko M. Statistical considerations when assessing outcomes following treatment for prostate cancer. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):439-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411053
19. Iversen P, Johansson JE, Lodding P, et al. Scandinavian Prostatic Cancer Group. Bicalutamide (150 mg) versus placebo as immediate therapy alone or as adjuvant to therapy with curative intent for early nonmetastatic prostate cancer: 5.3-year median followup from the Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study Number 6. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5Pt1):1871-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540741
20. Bill-Axelson et al. n engl j med 364;18 nejm.org may 5, 20
21. Wilt TJ. The VA/NCI/AHRQ CSP#407: Prostate Cancer Intervention Versus Observation Trial (PIVOT): main results from a randomized trial comparing radical prostatectomy to watchful waiting in men with clinically localized prostate cancer. Plenary presentation at: American Urological Association Annual Meeting; May 14-19, 2011;Washington, DC, USA. Late Breaking abstracts
22. Lundgren R, Nordle O, Josefsson K. Immediate estrogen or estramustine phosphate therapy versusdeferred endocrine treatment in nonmetastatic prostate cancer: a randomized multicentre study with 15 years of followup. The South Sweden Prostate Cancer Study Group. J Urol 1995 May;153(5):1580-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7714978

23. Wirth MP, See WA, McLeod DG, et al; Casodex Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group. Bicalutamide 150 mg in addition to standard care in patients with localized or locally advanced prostate cancer: results from the second analysis of the early prostate cancer program at median followup of 5.4 years. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5Pt1):1865-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540740
24. Klotz L. Active surveillance for prostate cancer: trials and tribulations. World J Urol 2008 Sep;26(5):437-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18813934
25. Albertsen PC, Hanley JA, Barrows GH, et al. Prostate cancer and the Will Rogers phenomenon. J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Sep;97(17):1248-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145045
26. Draisma G, Boer R, Otto SJ, et al. Lead times and overdetection due to prostate-specific antigen screening: estimates from the European Randomized Study of Screening for prostate cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 2003 Jun;95(12):868-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12813170
27. Törnblom M, Eriksson H, Franzén S, et al. Lead time associated with screening for prostate cancer. Int J Cancer 2004 Jan;108(1):122-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14618626
28. Klotz L. Active surveillance for favorable-risk prostate cancer: who, how and why? Nat Clin Pract Oncol 2007;4(12):692-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18037873
29. Albertsen PC, Moore DF, Shih W, et al. Impact of comorbidity on survival among men with localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 1;29(10):1335-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357791
30. Droz JP, Balducci L, Bolla M, et al. Background for the proposal of SIOG guidelines for the management of prostate cancer in senior adults. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2010 Jan;73(1):68-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19836968
31. Johansson JE, Andrén O, Andersson SO, et al. Natural history of early, localized prostate cancer. JAMA 2004 Jun;291(22):2713-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15187052
32. Choo R, Klotz L, Danjoux C, et al. Feasibility study: watchful waiting for localized low to intermediate grade prostate carcinoma with selective delayed intervention based on prostate specific antigen, histological and/or clinical progression. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1664-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912384
33. Choo R, DeBoer G, Klotz L, et al. PSA doubling time of prostate carcinoma managed with watchful observation alone. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2001 Jul;50(3):615-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11395227
34 Klotz L, Zhang L, Lam A, et al. Clinical results of long-term follow-up of a large, active surveillance cohort with localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2010 Jan 1;28(1):126-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19917860
35. Dall'Era MA, Konety BR, Cowan JE, et al. Active surveillance for the management of prostate cancer in a contemporary cohort. Cancer 2008 Jun 15;112(12):2664-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18433013
36. van den Bergh RC, Roemeling S, Roobol MJ, et al. Outcomes of men with screen-detected prostate cancer eligible for active surveillance who were managed expectantly. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):1-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18805628
37. van As NJ, Norman AR, Thomas K, et al. Predicting the probability of deferred radical treatment for localised prostate cancer managed by active surveillance. Eur Urol 2008 Dec;54(6):1297-305.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18342430
38. Soloway MS, Soloway CT, Eldefrawy A, Acosta K, Kava B, Manoharan M. Careful selection and close monitoring of low-risk prostate cancer patients on active surveillance minimizes the need for treatment. Eur Urol 2010 Dec;58(6):831-5.
39. Tosoian JJ, Trock BJ, Landis P, et al. Active surveillance program for prostate cancer: an update of the Johns Hopkins experience. J Clin Oncol 2011 Jun 1;29(16):2185-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21464416
40. Adamy A, Yee DS, Matsushita K, et al. Role of prostate specific antigen and immediate confirmatory biopsy in predicting progression during active surveillance for low risk prostate cancer. J Urol. 2011 Feb;185(2):477-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21167529

41. Cooperberg MR, Carroll PR, Klotz L. Active surveillance for prostate cancer: progress and promise. J Clin Oncol 2011 Sep 20;29(27):3669-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21825257
42. Lawrentschuk N, Haider MA, Daljeet N, et al. 'Prostatic evasive anterior tumours': the role of magnetic resonance imaging. BJU Int 2010 May;105(9):1231-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19817743
43. Ploussard G, Durand X, Xylinas E, et al. Prostate cancer antigen 3 score accurately predicts tumour volume and might help in selecting prostate cancer patients for active surveillance. Eur Urol 2011 Mar;59(3):422-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21156337
44. Berglund RK, Masterson TA, Vora KC, et al. Pathological upgrading and up staging with immediate repeat biopsy in patients eligible for AS. J Urol 2008 Nov;180(5):1964-7; discussion 1967-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18801515
45. Al Otaibi M, Ross P, Fahmy N, et al. Role of repeated biopsy of the prostate in predicting disease progression in patients with prostate cancer on active surveillance. Cancer 2008 Jul 15;113(2):286-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18484590
46. Ross AE, Loeb S, Landis P, et al. Prostate-specific antigen kinetics during follow-up are an unreliable trigger for intervention in a prostate cancer surveillance program. J Clin Oncol 2010 Jun;28(17): 2810-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20439642
47. Steineck G, Helgesen F, Adolfsson J, et al; Scandinavian Prostatic Cancer Group Study Number 4. Quality of life after radical prostatectomy or watchful waiting. N Engl J Med 2002 Sep 12;347(11): 790-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12226149
48. Rana A, Chisholm GD, Khan M, et al. Conservative management with symptomatic treatment and delayed hormonal manipulation is justified in men with locally advanced carcinoma of the prostate. Br J Urol 1994 Nov;74(5):637-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7827816
49. Parker MC, Cook A, Riddle PR, et al. Is delayed treatment justified in carcinoma of the prostate? Br JUrol 1985 Dec;57(6):724-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4084734
50. Studer UE, Whelan P, Albrecht W, et al. Immediate or deferred androgen deprivation for patients with prostate cancer not suitable for local treatment with curative intent: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Trial 30891. J Clin Oncol 2006 Apr;24(12):1868-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622261
51. Studer UE, Collette L, Whelan P, et al; EORTC Genitourinary Group. Using PSA to guide timing of androgen deprivation in patients with T0-4 N0-2 M0 prostate cancer not suitable for local curative treatment (EORTC 30891). Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):941-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191322
52. [No authors listed] The Medical Research Council Prostate Cancer Working Party Investigators Group. Immediate versus deferred treatment for advanced prostatic cancer: initial results of the Medical Research Council Trial. Br J Urol 1997 Feb;79(2):235-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052476
53. Adolfsson J, Steineck G, Hedlund PO. Deferred treatment of locally advanced non-metastatic prostate cancer: a long-term followup. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):505-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915436
54. Walsh PC. Immediate versus deferred treatment for advanced prostatic cancer: initial results of the Medical Research Council trial. The Medical Research Council Prostate Cancer Working Party Investigators Group. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1623-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302187

9. TREATMENT: RADICAL PROSTATECTOMY

9.1 Introduction

The surgical treatment of prostate cancer (PCa) consists of radical prostatectomy (RP), which involves removal of the entire prostate gland between the urethra and bladder, and resection of both seminal vesicles, along with sufficient surrounding tissue to obtain a negative margin. Often, this procedure is accompanied by bilateral

pelvic lymph node dissection. In men with localised PCa and a life expectancy ≥ 10 years, the goal of RP by any approach must be eradication of disease, while preserving continence and whenever possible potency (1). There is no age threshold for RP and a patient should not be denied this procedure on the grounds of age alone (2). Increasing comorbidity greatly increases the risk of dying from non-PCa-related causes (3). An estimation of life expectancy is paramount in counselling a patient about surgery (4).

RP was first applied at the beginning of the 20th century by Young (5) using a perineal approach, while Memmelaar and Millin were the first to perform retropubic RP (6). In 1982, Walsh and Donker described the anatomy of the dorsal venous complex and the neurovascular bundles (NVBs). This resulted in a significant reduction in blood loss and improved continence and potency rates (7). Currently, RP is the only treatment for localised PCa to show a benefit for cancer-specific survival (CSS), compared with conservative management, as shown in a prospective randomised trial (8). Surgical expertise has decreased the complication rates of RP and improved cancer cure (9-12).

Total surgical removal is an excellent treatment option in well-selected patients with localised PCa. If performed by an experienced surgeon, the patient's subsequent quality of life should be satisfactory. Lower rates of positive surgical margins for high-volume surgeons suggest that experience and careful attention to surgical details, adjusted for the characteristics of the cancer being treated, can decrease positive surgical margin rates and improve cancer control with RP (13,14).

Radical retropubic prostactectomy (RRP) and perineal prostatectomy are performed through open incisions, and more recently, minimally invasive laparoscopic radical prostatectomy (LRP) and robot-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy (RALP) have been developed. RALP is displacing RRP as the gold standard surgical approach for clinically localised prostate cancer in the United States and is also being increasingly used in Europe and other parts of the world. This trend has occurred despite the paucity of high-quality evidence to support its relative superiority to more-established treatment modalities. Recent in-depth systematic reviews of the literature have compared the results of RRP versus LRP/RALP. It has been concluded that LRP and RALP are followed by significantly lower blood loss and transfusion rate, but the available data are not sufficient and of insufficient quality to prove the superiority of any surgical approach in terms of functional and oncological outcomes (15-17).

9.2 Low-risk, localised prostate cancer: cT1-T2a and Gleason score 2-6 and prostate-specific antigen < 10 ng/mL

Patients with low-risk, localised PCa should be informed about the results of the randomised trial comparing retropubic RP versus watchful waiting (WW) in localised PCa (8). In this study, the survival benefit was similar before and after 9 years of follow-up, was observed also among men with low-risk PCa, and was confined to men < 65 years of age. The number needed to treat to avert one death was 15 overall and seven for men < 65 years of age.

*9.2.1 **Stage T1a-T1b prostate cancer***

Stage T1a PCa is defined as an incidental histological finding of cancer in ≤ 5% of resected prostatic tissue [transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or open adenomectomy]. Stage T1b PCa is defined as > 5% cancer. Published series have shown a pT0 stage in 4-21% and an organ-confined stage in 47-85% of patients at subsequent RP (18).

A Swedish register-based study of 23,288 men with incidental PCa detected at TURP or open adenoma enucleation, mostly before the prostate-specific antigen (PSA) era, showed a 10-year PCa mortality of 26.6%. There were no details of the PSA level or Gleason score nor the numbers of cases with cT1a or cT1b PCa (19). Other older studies have shown that, even though the risk of disease progression of untreated T1a PCa after 5 years is only 5%, these cancers can progress in about 50% of cases after 10-13 years (20). Thus, it was believed that, in younger patients with a life-expectancy of ≥ 15 years, the chance of disease progression was real. In contrast, most patients with T1b tumours were expected to show disease progression after 5 years, and aggressive treatment was often warranted (20). Patients with T1b lesions were offered RP when they had a life expectancy of ≥ 10 years.

Nevertheless, it remains unclear whether these findings would still be valid in the PSA era. In a recent analysis of T1a/b PCa:

- The only significant predictors of the presence of residual cancer at RRP were PSA measured before and after surgery for BPH and Gleason score at surgery for BPH.
- The only independent predictors of biochemical recurrence after RRP were PSA measured after surgery for BPH and Gleason score at surgery for BPH.
- The stage (cT1a or cT1b) lost its significance in predicting the above-mentioned outcomes.

A predictive model has been proposed, which incorporates the PSA level before and after surgery and the Gleason score at surgery for BPH. The model has a predictive accuracy of 83.2% for estimating residual tumour and 87.5% for estimating biochemical progression, but needs external validation before it can be used in daily practice (18).

Systematic prostate biopsies of the remnant prostate may be useful in detecting residual cancer or concomitant peripheral zone cancer, or to ascertain a more correct tumour grade. RP may be difficult after thorough TURP, when almost no residual prostate is left behind (21).

9.2.2 ***Stage T1c and T2a prostate cancer***

Clinically unapparent tumour identified by needle biopsy because of an elevated PSA (cT1c) has become the most prevalent type of PCa. In an individual patient, it is difficult to differentiate between clinically insignificant and life-threatening PCa. Most reports, however, stress that cT1c tumours are mostly significant and should not be left untreated because up to 30% of cT1c tumours are locally advanced at final histopathological analysis (22). The proportion of insignificant tumours varies between 11% and 16% (23,24). Increasing the number of biopsies may carry the risk of detecting a higher number of insignificant cancers. However, a recent study has shown that increasing the number of biopsies to 12 did not increase the number of insignificant tumours (25). The major problem is how to recognise those tumours that do not need RP. The biopsy findings and the free PSA ratio are helpful in predicting insignificant disease (26). Partin tables may help better selection of patients who require surgical treatment, because of their ability to provide an estimation of the final pathological stage (27). Other authors have suggested the incorporation of biopsy information, such as the number of cores or the percentage of cores invaded (28). When only one or a few cores are invaded and the percentage of invasion in one core is limited, the chance of finding an insignificant PCa is more likely, certainly when the lesion is of low Gleason grade (29). It might be reasonable to follow up some patients whose tumours are most likely to be insignificant.

In general, however, RP should be advocated for patients with T1c tumours, bearing in mind that significant tumours will be found in most of these individuals. Stage T2a patients with a 10-year life expectancy should be offered RP because 35-55% of them will have disease progression after 5 years if not treated. If active monitoring is proposed for low-grade T2 cancer, it should be remembered that preoperative assessment of tumour grade by needle biopsy is often unreliable (30).

Extended pelvic lymph node dissection (eLND) is not necessary in low-risk, localised PCa, because the risk for positive lymph nodes does not exceed 5% (31).

9.3 Intermediate-risk, localised prostate cancer: cT2b-T2c or Gleason score = 7 or prostate-specific antigen 10-20 ng/mL

Patients with intermediate-risk, localised PCa should be informed about the results of the randomised trial comparing RRP versus WW in localised PCa (8). In this study, the survival benefit was similar before and after 9 years of follow-up and was confined to men < 65 years of age. The number needed to treat to avert one death was 15 overall and seven for men < 65 years of age.

RP is one of the recommended standard treatments for patients with intermediate-risk PCa and a life expectancy of > 10 years (32). The prognosis is excellent when the tumour is confined to the prostate, based on pathological examination (33,34). A policy of WW has been proposed for some patients with intermediate-risk localised tumours (35). However, when the tumour is palpable or visible on imaging and clinically confined to the prostate, disease progression can be expected in most long-term survivors.

The median time to progression of untreated T2 disease has been reported as 6-10 years. Stage T2b cancer confined to the prostate, but involving more than half a lobe or both lobes, will progress in > 70% of patients within 5 years (36). These data have been confirmed by a large randomised trial comparing RP and WW that included mostly T2 PCa patients, with a significant reduction in disease-specific mortality in favour of RP (8).

eLND should be performed in intermediate-risk, localised PCa if the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes exceeds 5% (31). In all other cases, eLND can be omitted, which means accepting a low risk of missing positive nodes. Limited LND should no longer be performed, because this misses at least half of the nodes involved.

9.3.1 ***Oncological results of radical prostatectomy in low- and intermediate-risk prostate cancer***

The results achieved in a number of studies involving RP are shown in Table 14.

Table 14: Oncological results of RP in organ-confined disease

Reference	No. of patients	Year of RP	Median follow-up (mo)	10-year PSA-free survival (%)	10-year cancer-specific survival (%)	15-year cancer-specific survival (%)	25-year cancer-specific survival (%)
Isbarn *et al*. (2009) (37)	436	1992-97	122	60	94		
Roehl *et al*. (2004) (38)	3478	1983-2003	65	68	97		
Han *et al*. (2001) (39)	2404	1982-99	75	74	96	90	
Hull *et al*. (2002) (40)	1000	1983-98	53	75	98		
Porter *et al*. (2006) (41)	752	1954-94	137	71	96	91	82
Bill-Axelson *et al*. (2011) (8)	347	1989-99	153			85	
Stephenson et al. (42)	6398	1987-2005	48			88	

The first externally validated nomogram predicting PCa-specific mortality after RP for patients treated in the PSA era was published recently. The nomogram predicts that few patients die from PCa within 15 years of RP, despite the presence of adverse clinical features. This nomogram can be used in patient counselling and clinical trial design (42).

9.4 High-risk, localised prostate cancer: cT3a or Gleason score 8-10 or prostate-specific antigen > 20 ng/mL

The widespread use of PSA testing has led to a significant migration in stage and grade of PCa, with > 90% of men in the current era diagnosed with clinically localised disease (27). Despite the trends towards lower-risk PCa, 20-35% of patients with newly diagnosed PCa are still classified as high risk, based on either PSA > 20 ng/mL, Gleason score > 8, or an advanced clinical stage (43). Patients classified with high-risk PCa are at an increased risk of PSA failure, the need for secondary therapy, metastatic progression and death from PCa. Nevertheless, not all high-risk patients have a uniformly poor prognosis after RP (44).

There is no consensus regarding the optimal treatment of men with high-risk PCa. Decisions on whether to elect surgery as local therapy should be based on the best available clinical evidence. Provided that the tumour is not fixed to the pelvic wall, or that there is no invasion of the urethral sphincter, RP is a reasonable first step in selected patients with a low tumour volume. Management decisions should be made after all treatments have been discussed by a multidisciplinary team (including urologists, radiation oncologists, medical oncologists and radiologists), and after the balance of benefits and side effects of each therapy modality has been considered by the patients with regard to their own individual circumstances.

*9.4.1 **Locally advanced prostate cancer: cT3a***

Stage T3a cancer is defined as cancer that has perforated the prostate capsule. In the past, locally advanced PCa was seen in about 40% of all clinically diagnosed tumours. This figure is lower today, although its management remains controversial. Surgical treatment of clinical stage T3 PCa has traditionally been discouraged (45), mainly because patients have an increased risk of positive surgical margins and lymph node metastases and/or distant relapse (46,47). Several randomised studies of radiotherapy combined with androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT) versus radiotherapy alone have shown a clear advantage for combination treatment, but no trial has ever proven combined treatment to be superior to RP (48). Another problem is "contamination" by the additional use of either adjuvant radiotherapy or immediate or delayed hormonal therapy (HT) in most series reporting the treatment of clinical T3 PCa. In recent years, there has been renewed interest in surgery for locally advanced PCa, and several retrospective case series have been published. Although still controversial, it is increasingly evident that surgery has a place in treating locally advanced disease (49-54).

Over-staging of cT3 PCa is relatively frequent and occurs in 13-27% of cases. Patients with pT2 disease and those with specimen-confined pT3 disease have similarly good biochemical and clinical

progression-free survival (PFS) (53,54). In 33.5-66% of patients, positive section margins are present, and 7.9-49% have positive lymph nodes (55). Thus, 56-78% of patients primarily treated by surgery eventually require adjuvant or salvage radiotherapy or HT (53,54). Nevertheless, excellent 5-, 10- and 15-year overall survival (OS) and cancer-specific survival (CSS) rates have been published (Table 15). These rates surpass radiotherapy-alone and are no different from radiotherapy combined with adjuvant HT (48).

The problem remains the selection of patients before surgery. Nomograms, including PSA level, stage and Gleason score, can be useful in predicting the pathological stage of disease (27,55). In addition, nodal imaging with computed tomography (CT), and seminal vesicle imaging with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or directed specific puncture biopsies of the nodes or seminal vesicles can help to identify those patients unlikely to benefit from a surgical approach (56). RP for clinical T3 cancer requires sufficient surgical expertise to keep the level of morbidity acceptable. Increased overall surgical experience must contribute to decreased operative morbidity and to better functional results after RP for clinical T3 cancer (53,57). It has been shown that continence can be preserved in most cases, and in selected cases, potency can also be preserved (58).

Table 15: OS and CSS rates for PCa.

Reference	no. of patients	Median and/or mean follow-up	BPFS (%)			CSS (%)		
			5 years	10 years	15 years	5 years	10 years	15 years
Yamada *et al*. (1994) (49)	57	Median, 5.4 years	45.5 (PSA > 0.4)	-	-	-	-	-
Gerber *et al*. (1997) (50)	242	Mean, 39 months Median, 26 months	-	-	-	85	57	-
Van den Oudene*t al*. (1998) (51)	83	Median, 52 months	29 (PSA > 0.1)	-	-	85	72	-
Martinez de la Riva *et al*. (2004) (52)	83	Mean, 68.7 months (cT3a only)	- (PSA > 0.3)	59.8	-	100	-	-
Ward *et al*. (2005) (53)	841	Median, 10.3 years	58 (PSA > 0.4)	43	38	95	90	79
Hsu *et al*. (2007) (54)	200	Mean, 70.6 months (cT3a only)	59.5 (PSA > 0.2)	51.1	-	99	92	-

BPFS = biochemical progression-free survival

*9.4.2 **High-grade prostate cancer: Gleason score 8-10***

Although most poorly differentiated tumours extend outside the prostate, the incidence of organ-confined disease is 26-31%. Patients with high-grade tumours confined to the prostate at histopathological examination still have a good prognosis after RP. Furthermore, one-third of patients with a biopsy Gleason score ≥ 8 may in fact have a specimen Gleason score ≤ 7 with better prognostic characteristics. The PSA value and percentage of positive prostate biopsies may help to select men with high-grade PCa who are most likely to benefit from RP (59).

*9.4.3 **Prostate cancer with prostate-specific antigen > 20 ng/mL***

Yossepowitch et al. have reported the results of RP as monotherapy in men with PSA > 20 ng/mL, in a cohort with mostly clinically organ-confined tumours, and found a PSA failure rate of 44% and 53% at 5 and 10 years, respectively (44). D'Amico et al. found that men with PSA levels > 20 ng/mL had a 50% risk of PSA failure at 5 years after RP (60). Spahn et al. published the largest multicentre clinical series of its kind, comprising 712 patients with PSA > 20 ng/mL, and reported a CSS of 90% and 85% at 10 and 15 years follow-up, respectively (61). In the same analysis, they demonstrated that the combination of PSA > 20 ng/mL with cT3 stage and/or biopsy Gleason score 8-10 significantly lowered CSS. More recently, Gontero and co-workers described a subanalysis of the same patient cohort. Ten-year CSS was 80%, 85% and 91% in patients with PSA > 100 ng/mL, 50.1-100 ng/mL and 20.1-50 ng/mL, respectively. These results argue for aggressive management with RP as the initial step (62).

eLND should be performed in all high-risk cases, because the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes is 15-40% (31). Limited LND should no longer be performed, because it misses at least half the nodes involved.

9.5 Very-high-risk, localised prostate cancer: cT3b-T4 N0 or any T, N1

9.5.1 ***cT3b-T4 N0***

Men with very-high-risk PCa generally have a significant risk of disease progression and cancer-related death if left untreated. Very-high-risk PCa presents two specific challenges. There is a need for local control as well as treatment of any microscopic metastases that are likely to be present but undetectable until disease progression.

The optimal treatment approach therefore often necessitates multiple modalities. The exact combinations, timing and intensity of treatment continue to be strongly debated. A recent US study has shown that 72 patients who underwent RP for cT4 disease had better survival than those who received HT or radiotherapy alone, and comparable survival to men who received radiotherapy plus HT (63). Another study has compared the outcomes of RP in very-high-risk PCa (T3-T4 N0-N1, N1, M1a) with those in localised PCa. The two groups did not differ significantly in surgical morbidity except for blood transfusion, operative time, and lymphoceles, which showed a higher rate in patients with advanced disease. OS and CSS at 7 years were 76.69% and 90.2% in the advanced disease group and 88.4% and 99.3% in the organ-confined disease group, respectively (64).

Provided that the tumour is not fixed to the pelvic wall, or there is no invasion of the urethral sphincter, RP is a reasonable first step in selected patients with very-high-risk PCa and low tumour volume. Management decisions should be made after all treatments have been discussed by a multidisciplinary team (including urologists, radiation oncologists, medical oncologists and radiologists), and after the balance of benefits and side effects of each therapy modality has been considered by the patients with regard to their own individual circumstances.

9.5.2 ***Any T, N1***

The indication for RP in all previously described stages assumes the absence of clinically detectable nodal involvement. Lymph-node-positive (N+) disease will mostly be followed by systemic disease progression, and all patients with significant N+ disease ultimately fail treatment.

Nevertheless, the combination of RP and early adjuvant HT in N+ PCa has been shown to achieve a 10-year CSS rate of 80% (65,66). Most urologists are reluctant to perform RP for clinical N+ disease, or cancel surgery if a frozen section shows lymph node invasion. However, a recent study has shown a dramatic improvement in CSS and OS in favour of completed RP versus abandoned RP in patients who were found to be N+ at the time of surgery. These results suggest that RP may have a survival benefit and the abandonment of RP in N+ cases may not be justified (67). These findings have been corroborated in a contemporary series (68). RP resulted in superior survival of patients with N+ PCa after controlling for lymph node tumour burden. The findings from these studies support the role of RP as an important component of multimodal strategies of N+ PCa.

It should also be noted that definitive pathological examination after RP could show microscopic lymph node invasion. The incidence of tumour progression is lower in patients with fewer positive lymph nodes and in those with microscopic invasion only (69,70). In patients who prove to be pN+ after RP, early adjuvant HT has been shown to improve CSS and OS significantly in a prospective randomised trial. However, this trial included mostly patients with high-volume nodal disease and multiple adverse tumour characteristics. It is unclear whether early adjuvant HT should still be used in the present era of increased detection of microscopic involvement as a result of more eLND. The benefits should be judged against the side effects of long-term HT. Follow-up of PSA and HT in patients with increased PSA level is therefore an acceptable option in selected cases. Interestingly, maximal local control with radiotherapy of the prostatic fossa appears to be beneficial in PCa patients with pN+ after RP, treated adjuvantly with continuous ADT (71).

9.6 Indication and extent of extended pelvic lymph node dissection

Although it is generally accepted that eLND provides important information for prognosis (number of nodes involved, tumour volume within the lymph node, and capsular perforation of the node) that cannot be matched by any other current procedure, consensus has not been reached about when eLND is indicated and to what extent it should be performed. When making such decisions, many physicians rely on nomograms based on preoperative biochemical markers and biopsies (27).

According to these nomograms, patients with PSA < 10 ng/mL and biopsy Gleason score < 7 have a low risk of lymph node metastasis, and therefore, eLND might not be beneficial. However, the fact that most nomograms are based on a limited eLND (obturator fossa and external iliac vein) probably results in underestimation of the incidence of patients with positive nodes (31). Lymphography studies have shown that the prostate drains not only to the obturator and external iliac lymph nodes but also to the internal iliac and

presacral nodes. Performing eLND results in removal of all lymph nodes in these particular anatomical regions, producing a higher yield of excised lymph nodes (mean: 20 nodes) compared with limited LND (mean: 8-10 nodes).

In patients with PSA < 10 ng/mL and Gleason score ≥ 7, the incidence of nodal involvement has been reported as 25% (72). Different reports mention that 19-35% of positive lymph nodes are found exclusively outside the area of the traditionally limited LND (73,74). Clearly, the removal of a greater number of nodes results in improved staging. In the largest study of its kind, a cut-off ≤ 2 versus > 2 affected nodes was shown to be an independent predictor of CSS (69).

9.6.1 ***Conclusions***

Extended LND is not necessary in low-risk, localised PCa, because the risk for positive lymph nodes does not exceed 5% (31).

Extended LND should be performed in intermediate-risk, localised PCa if the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes exceeds 5%, as well as in high-risk cases. In these circumstances, the estimated risk for positive lymph nodes is 15-40% (31). Limited LND should no longer be performed, because it misses at least half the nodes involved.

9.6.2 ***Extent of extended lymph node dissection***

Extended LND includes removal of the nodes overlying the external iliac artery and vein, the nodes within the obturator fossa located cranially and caudally to the obturator nerve, and the nodes medial and lateral to the internal ileac artery. Some lymph node mapping studies have advocated extending the template to include the common iliac lymph nodes up to the ureteric crossing. With this template, 75% of all anatomical landing sites are cleared (75). For eLND to be representative, a mean of 20 lymph nodes should be removed (76). It is recommended that the nodes should be sent in separate containers for each region for histopathological analysis, because this will usually be associated with a higher diagnostic gain by the uropathologist.

9.6.3 ***Therapeutic role of extended lymph node dissection***

Besides being a staging procedure, pelvic LND/eLND can be curative, or at least beneficial, in a subset of patients with limited lymph node metastases (77-79). In some series, the number of nodes removed during lymphadenectomy has correlated significantly with time to progression (80). In one population-based study with a 10-year follow-up, patients undergoing excision of at least four lymph nodes (node-positive and node-negative patients) or > 10 nodes (only node-negative patients) had a lower risk of PCa-specific death at 10 years than those who did not undergo lymphadenectomy (81). Further studies should confirm these results.

9.6.4 ***Morbidity***

Pelvic eLND remains a surgical procedure that increases morbidity in the treatment of PCa. When comparing extended versus limited LND, threefold higher complication rates have been reported by some authors (82). Complications consist of lymphocoeles, lymphoedema, deep venous thrombosis, and pulmonary embolism. Other authors, however, have reported more acceptable complication rates (83,84).

9.6.5 ***Conclusions extended lymph node dissection***

Extended LND may play a role in the treatment of a subset of intermediate-risk cases with > 5% nomogram predicted risk of positive lymph nodes, and in all high-risk cases.
Extended LND may increase staging accuracy and influence decision making with respect to adjuvant therapy. The number of lymph nodes removed correlates with time to progression.
Surgical morbidity must be balanced against the therapeutic effects, and decisions need to be made based on individual cases.

9.7 Summary of radical prostatectomy in high-risk localised disease

RP is a reasonable treatment option in selected patients with cT3a PCa, Gleason score 8-10 or PSA > 20. Furthermore, RP is optional in highly selected patients with cT3b-4 N0 or any cT N1 PCa in the context of a multimodality approach.
Management decisions should be made after all treatments have been discussed by a multidisciplinary team (including urologists, radiation oncologists, medical oncologists and radiologists), and after the balance of benefits and side effects of each therapy modality has been considered by the patients with regard to their own individual circumstances.

If RP is performed, pelvic eLND must be performed, because lymph node involvement is common.
The patient must be informed about the likelihood of a multimodal approach. In case of adverse tumour characteristics (positive section margin, extraprostatic extension, or seminal vesicle invasion), adjuvant radiotherapy may reasonably be used after recuperation from surgery.
When nodal involvement is detected after surgery, adjuvant ADT may be selected.

9.8 Neoadjuvant hormonal therapy and radical prostatectomy

Neoadjuvant or up-front HT is defined as therapy given before definitive local curative treatment (e.g., surgery or radiotherapy). PCa is an androgen-dependent tumour, therefore, neoadjuvant hormonal therapy (NHT) is an appealing concept. Attempts to decrease the size of the prostate before RP were first reported by Vallett as early as 1944 (85). In a recent review and meta-analysis, the role of NHT and prostatectomy has been studied (86). NHT before prostatectomy did not improve OS or disease-free survival (DFS), but did significantly reduce positive margin rates [relative risk (RR): 0.49; 95% confidence interval (CI): 0.42-0.56, $P < 0.00001$), organ confinement (RR: 1.63; 95% CI: 1.37-1.95, $P < 0.0001$) and lymph node invasion (RR: 0.49; 95% CI: 0.42-0.56, $P < 0.02$). Thus, the absence of improvement in clinically important outcomes (OS, disease-specific survival or biochemical DFS) was demonstrated despite improvements in putative pathological surrogate outcomes, such as margin-free positive status. This calls into question the use of these pathological markers of treatment outcomes as valid surrogates for clinically relevant outcomes.

Further studies are needed to investigate the application of HT as both neoadjuvant treatment and with chemotherapy in early disease. More information is also needed to evaluate these agents in terms of side effects and quality of life, which was lacking in most studies presented in this review.

Further cost analyses should be undertaken to update the data. A recent Cochrane review and meta-analysis have studied the role of adjuvant HT following RP: the pooled data for 5-year OS showed an odds ratio (OR) of 1.50 and 95% CI: 0.79-2.84. This finding was not statistically significant, although there was a trend favouring adjuvant HT. Similarly, there was no survival advantage at 10 years. The pooled data for DFS gave an overall OR of 3.73 and 95% CI: 2.3-6.03. The overall effect estimate was highly significant ($P < 0.00001$) in favour of the HT arm.

It is noteworthy that the Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group (EPC) trial was not included in the Cochrane review. The third update from this large randomised trial of bicalutamide, 150 mg once daily, in addition to standard care in localised and locally advanced, non-metastatic PCa was published in November 2005 (87). Median follow-up was 7.2 years. There was a significant improvement in objective PFS in the RP group. This improvement was only significant in the locally advanced disease group [hazard ratio (HR): 0.75; 95% CI: 0.61-0.91]. There was no significant improvement in OS in the RP-treated groups (localised and locally advanced disease). In the WW group, there was an OS trend in favour of WW alone in the localised disease group (HR: 1.16; 95% CI: 0.99-1.37).

*9.8.1 **Summary of neoadjuvant and adjuvant hormonal treatment and radical prostatectomy***

NHT before RP does not provide a significant OS advantage over prostatectomy alone.
NHT before RP does not provide a significant advantage in DFS over prostatectomy alone.
NHT before RP does substantially improve local pathological variables such as organ-confined rates, pathological down-staging, positive surgical margins, and rate of lymph node involvement.
Adjuvant HT following RP shows no survival advantage at 10 years.
Adjuvant HT following RP: the overall effect estimate for DFS is highly significantly ($P < 0.00001$) in favour of the HT arm.

9.9 Complications and functional outcome

The postoperative complications of RP are listed in Table 16. The mortality rate is 0-1.5% (81); urinary fistulas are seen in 1.2-4% of patients (88); and urinary incontinence persists after 1 year in 7.7% (89). In men undergoing prostatectomy, the rates of postoperative and late urinary complications are significantly reduced if the procedure is performed in a high-volume hospital and by a surgeon who performs a large number of such procedures (90-92).

Erectile dysfunction used to occur in nearly all patients, but this can be avoided by using nerve-sparing techniques in early-stage disease (93). Patients who benefit from nerve-sparing RP may have a higher chance of local disease recurrence and should therefore be selected carefully.

Table 16: Complications of RP

Complication	Incidence (%)
Perioperative death	0.0-2.1
Major bleeding	1.0-11.5
Rectal injury	0.0-5.4
Deep venous thrombosis	0.0-8.3
Pulmonary embolism	0.8-7.7
Lymphocoele	1.0-3.0
Urine leak, fistula	0.3-15.4
Slight stress incontinence	4.0-50.0
Severe stress incontinence	0.0-15.4
Impotence	29.0-100.0
Bladder neck obstruction	0.5-14.6
Ureteral obstruction	0.0-0.7
Urethral stricture	2.0-9.0

9.10 Summary of indications for nerve-sparing surgery* (100-104)

Reference name	Sofer (94)	Walsh (95)	Alsikafi (96)	Graefen (97)	Bianco (98)
Preoperative selection criteria					
Stage > T2	+	+	+	+	+
PSA > 10	+				
Biopsy Gleason score 7			+		
Biopsy Gleason score 8-10	+			+	
Partin tables		+			+
Side with > 50% tumour in biopsy			+		
Side with perineural invasion		+/-	+		
Intra-operative selection criteria					
Side of palpable tumour			+		
Side of positive biopsy				+	
Induration of lateral pelvic fascia		+			+
Adherence to neurovascular bundles		+			+
Positive section margins	**24%**	**5%**	**11%**	**15.9%**	**5%**

**Clinical criteria used by different authors when NOT to perform a nerve-sparing RP*

Nerve-sparing RP can be performed safely in most men undergoing RP (99,100). In the past decade, a dramatic shift towards lower-stage tumours has become evident. More importantly, men are younger at the time of diagnosis and more interested in preserving sexual function. Nevertheless, clear contraindications are patients in whom there is a high risk of extracapsular disease, such as any cT3 PCa, cT2c, any Gleason score > 7 on biopsy, or more than one biopsy > 6 at the ipsilateral side. Partin tables help to guide decision making (27).

If any doubt remains regarding residual tumour, the surgeon should remove the neurovascular bundle (NVB). Alternatively, the use of intraoperative frozen-section analysis can help guide these decisions. This is especially helpful in patients with a lesion palpable close to the capsule during nerve-sparing RP. A wedge of the prostate can then be resected and inked differently. In case carcinoma is adherent to the capsule on frozen section analysis, the NVB is resected; otherwise, the NVB remains in situ. In patients with intraoperatively detected tumour lesions during nerve-sparing, planned RP, frozen-section analysis objectively supports the decision of secondary NVB resection, as well as preservation (101).

The patient must be informed before surgery about the risks of nerve-sparing surgery, the potency rates achieved, and the possibility that, to ensure adequate cancer control, the nerves may be sacrificed despite any preoperative optimism favouring the potential for their salvage.

The early administration of intracavernous injection therapy could improve the definitive potency rates (102,103). Finally, the early use of phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors in penile rehabilitation remains controversial. A recent placebo-controlled prospective study has shown no benefit from daily early administration of vardenafil versus on-demand vardenafil in the postoperative period (104), whereas another placebo-controlled prospective study has shown that sildenafil has a significant impact on return of normal spontaneous erections (105).

9.11 Conclusions and recommendations for radical prostatectomy

Indications	**LE**
In patients with low and intermediate risk localised PCa (cT1a-T2b and Gleason score 2-7 and PSA ≤ 20 ng/mL) and life expectancy > 10 years.	1b
Optional	
Patients with stage T1a disease and a life expectancy >15 years or Gleason score 7.	3
Selected patients with low-volume, high-risk, localised PCa (cT3a or Gleason score 8-10 or PSA > 20 ng/mL).	3
Highly selected patients with very-high-risk, localised PCa (cT3b-T4 N0 or any T N1) in the context of multimodality treatment.	3
Recommendations	
Short-term (3 months) or long-term (9 months) neoadjuvant therapy with gonadotrophin-releasing hormone analogues is not recommended for the treatment of stage T1-T2 disease.	1a
Nerve-sparing surgery may be attempted in preoperatively potent patients with low risk for extracapsular disease (T1c, Gleason score < 7 and PSA < 10 ng/mL or see Partin tables/nomograms).	3
Unilateral nerve-sparing procedures are an option in stage T2a-T3a disease.	4

*9.12 **References***

1. Bianco FJ Jr, Scardino PT, Eastham JA. Radical prostatectomy: long-term cancer control and recovery of sexual and urinary function ("trifecta"). Urology 2005 Nov;66(5 Suppl):83-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16194712
2. Droz JP, Balducci L, Bolla M, et al. Background for the proposal of SIOG guidelines for the management of prostate cancer in senior adults. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2010 Jan;73(1):68-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19836968
3. Albertsen PC, Moore DF, Shih W, et al. Impact of comorbidity on survival among men with localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr;29(10):1335-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357791
4. Walz J, Gallina A, Saad F, et al. A nomogram predicting 10-year life expectancy in candidates for radical prostatectomy or radiotherapy for prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2007 Aug;25(24):3576-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17704404
5. Young H. Radical perineal prostatectomy. Johns Hopkins Hosp Bull 1905;16:315-21.
6. Memmelaar J. Total prostatovesiculectomy; retropubic approach. J Urol 1949 Sep;62(3):340-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18148289
7. Walsh PC, Donker PJ. Impotence following radical prostatectomy: insight into etiology and prevention. J Urol 1982 Sep;128(3):492-7. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7120554
8. Bill-Axelson A, Holmberg L, Ruutu M, et al. Radical prostatectomy versus watchful waiting in early prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2011 May;364(18):1708-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21542742
9. Potosky AL, Warren JL. Radical prostatectomy: does higher volume lead to better quality? J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Nov;91(22):1906-7. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10564667

10. Lepor H, Nieder AM, Ferrandino MN. Intraoperative and postoperative complications of radical retropubic prostatectomy in a consecutive series of 1,000 cases. J Urol 2001 Nov;166(5):1729-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586211
11. Augustin H, Hammerer P, Graefen M, et al. Intraoperative and perioperative morbidity of contemporary radical retropubic prostatectomy in a consecutive series of 1243 patients: results of a single center between 1999 and 2002. Eur Urol 2003 Feb;43(2):113-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12565767
12. Maffezzini M, Seveso M, Taverna G, et al. Evaluation of complications and results in a contemporary series of 300 consecutive radical retropubic prostatectomies with the anatomic approach at a single institution. Urology 2003 May;61(5):982-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12736020
13. Eastham JA, Kattan MW, Riedel E, et al. Variations among individual surgeons in the rate of positive surgical margins in radical prostatectomy specimens. J Urol 2003 Dec;170(6 Pt 1):2292-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634399
14. Vickers AJ, Savage CJ, Hruza M, et al. The surgical learning curve for laparoscopic radical prostatectomy: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet Oncol 2009 May;10(5):475-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19342300
15. Ficarra V, Novara G, Artibani W, et al. Retropubic, laparoscopic, and robot-assisted radical prostatectomy: a systematic review and cumulative analysis of comparative studies. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1037-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19185977
16. Coelho RF, Rocco B, Patel MB, et al. Retropubic, laparoscopic, and robot-assisted radical prostatectomy: a critical review of outcomes reported by high-volume centers. J Endourol 2010 Dec;24(12):2003-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20942686
17. Kang DC, Hardee MJ, Fesperman SF, et al. Low quality of evidence for robot-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy: results of a systematic review of the published literature. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6): 930-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20138423
18. Capitanio U, Scattoni V, Freschi M, et al. Radical prostatectomy for incidental (stage T1a-T1b) prostate cancer: analysis of predictors for residual disease and biochemical recurrence. Eur Urol 2008 Jul;54(1):118-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18314255
19. Andrèn O, Garmo H, Mucci L, et al. Incidence and mortality of incidental prostate cancer: a Swedish register-based study. Br J Cancer 2009 Jan;100(1):170-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19088721
20. Lowe BA, Listrom MB. Incidental carcinoma of the prostate: an analysis of the predictors of progression. J Urol 1988 Dec;140(6):1340-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3193495
21. Van Poppel H, Ameye F, Oyen R, et al. Radical prostatectomy for localized prostate cancer. Eur J Surg Oncol 1992 Oct;18(5):456-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1426296
22. Elgamal AA, Van Poppel HP, Van de Voorde WM, et al. Impalpable invisible stage T1c prostate cancer: characteristics and clinical relevance in 100 radical prostatectomy specimens-a different view. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):244-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976263
23. Oesterling JE, Suman VJ, Zincke H, et al. PSA-detected (clinical stage T1c or B0) prostate cancer. Pathologically significant tumors. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Nov;20(4):687-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7505977
24. Epstein JI, Walsh PC, Brendler CB. Radical prostatectomy for impalpable prostate cancer: the Johns Hopkins experience with tumors found on transurethral resection (stages T1A and T1B) and on needle biopsy (stage T1C). J Urol 1994 Nov;152(5 Pt 2):1721-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523719
25. Singh H, Canto EI, Shariat SF, et al. Improved detection of clinically significant, curable prostate cancer with systematic 12-core biopsy. J Urol 2004 Mar;171(3):1089-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767277
26. Epstein JI, Chan DW, Sokoll LJ, et al. Nonpalpable stage T1c prostate cancer: prediction of insignificant disease using free/total prostate specific antigen levels and needle biopsy findings. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 2):2407-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817393

27. Makarov DV, Trock BJ, Humphreys EB, et al. Updated nomogram to predict pathologic stage of prostate cancer given prostate-specific antigen level, clinical stage, and biopsy Gleason score (Partin tables) based on cases from 2000 to 2005. Urology 2007 Jun;69(6):1095-101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17572194
28. D'Amico AV, Whittington R, Malkowicz SB, et al. Combination of preoperative PSA level, biopsy gleason score, percentage of positive biopsies and MRI T-stage to predict early PSA failure in men with clinically localized prostate cancer. Urology 2000 Apr;55(4):572-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10736506
29. Epstein JI. Gleason score 2-4 adenocarcinoma of the prostate on needle biopsy: a diagnosis that should not be made. Am J Surg Pathol 2000 Apr;24(4):477-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10757394
30. Epstein JI, Steinberg GD. The significance of low-grade prostate cancer on needle biopsy. A radical prostatectomy study of tumor grade, volume, and stage of the biopsied and multifocal tumor. Cancer 1990 Nov;66(9):1927-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov:/pubmed/1699655
31. Briganti A, Larcher A, Abdollah F, et al. Updated Nomogram Predicting Lymph Node Invasion in Patients with Prostate Cancer Undergoing Extended Pelvic Lymph Node Dissection: The Essential Importance of Percentage of Positive Cores. Eur Urol 2012 Mar;61(3):480-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22078338
32. Schroder FH, Van den Ouden D, Davidson P. The role of surgery in the cure of prostatic carcinoma. Eur Urol Update Series 1992;1:18-23.
33. Gibbons RP. Total prostatectomy for clinically localized prostatic cancer: long-term surgical results and current morbidity. NCI Monogr 1988;(7):123-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3173498
34. Pound CR, Partin AW, Epstein JI, et al. Prostate-specific antigen after anatomic radical retropubic prostatectomy. Patterns of recurrence and cancer control. Urol Clin North Am 1997 May;24(2): 395-406. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126237
35. Johansson JE, Andersson SO. Deferred treatment in localized prostatic cancer. Acta Oncol 1991;30(2):221-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2029410
36. Graversen PH, Nielsen KT, Gasser TC, et al. Radical prostatectomy versus expectant primary treatment in stages I and II prostatic cancer. A fifteen-year follow-up. Urology 1990 Dec;36(6):493-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2247914
37. Isbarn H, Wanner M, Salomon G, et al. Long-term data on the survival of patients with prostate cancer treated with radical prostatectomy in the prostate-specific antigen era. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(1):37-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20002667
38. Roehl KA, Han M, Ramos CG, et al. Cancer progression and survival rates following anatomical radical retropubic prostatectomy in 3,478 consecutive patients: long-term results. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):910-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15310996
39. Han M, Partin AW, Pound CR, et al. Long-term biochemical disease-free and cancer specific survival following anatomic radical retropubic prostatectomy. The 15-year Johns Hopkins experience. Urol Clin North Am 2001 Aug;28(3):555-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11590814
40. Hull GW, Rabbani F, Abbas F, et al. Cancer control with radical prostatectomy alone in 1,000 consecutive patients. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):528-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792912
41. Porter CR, Kodama K, Gibbons RP, et al. 25-year prostate cancer control and survival outcomes: a 40-year radical prostatectomy single institution series. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):569-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813891
42. Stephenson AJ, Kattan MW, Eastham JA, et al. Prostate cancer-specific mortality after radical prostatectomy for patients treated in the prostate-specific antigen era. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep;27(26):4300-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19636023
43. Shao YH, Demissie K, Shih W, et al. Contemporary risk profile of prostate cancer in the United States. J Natl Cancer Inst 2009 Sep 16;101(18):1280-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19713548

44. Yossepowitch O, Eggener SE, Bianco FJ Jr, et al. Radical prostatectomy for clinically localized, high risk prostate cancer: critical analysis of risk assessment methods. J Urol 2007 Aug;178(2):493-9; discussion 499.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17561152
45. Hodgson D, Warde P, Gospodarowicz M. The management of locally advanced prostate cancer. Urol Oncol 1998;(4):3-12. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21227163
46. Fallon B, Williams RD. Current options in the management of clinical stage C prostatic carcinoma. Urol Clin North Am 1990 Nov;17(4):853-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2219582
47. Boccon-Gibod L, Bertaccini A, Bono AV, et al. Management of locally advanced prostate cancer: a European Consensus. Int J Clin Pract 2003 Apr;57(3):187-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12723722
48. Bolla M, Collette L, Blank L, et al. Long-term results with immediate androgen suppression and external irradiation in patients with locally advanced prostate cancer (an EORTC study): a phase III randomised trial. Lancet 2002 Jul;360(9327):103-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12126818
49. Yamada AH, Lieskovsky G, Petrovich Z, et al. Results of radical prostatectomy and adjuvant therapy in the management of locally advanced, clinical stage TC, prostate cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 1994 Aug;17(4):277-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8048388
50. Gerber GS, Thisted RA, Chodak GW, et al. Results of radical prostatectomy in men with locally advanced prostate cancer: multi-institutional pooled analysis. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):385-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412793
51. van den Ouden D, Hop WC, Schröder FH. Progression in and survival of patients with locally advanced prostate cancer (T3) treated with radical prostatectomy as monotherapy. J Urol 1998 Oct;160(4):1392-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751362
52. Isorna Martinez de la Riva S, Belón López-Tomasety J, Marrero Dominguez R, et al. [Radical prostatectomy as monotherapy for locally advanced prostate cancer (T3a): 12 years follow-up]. Arch Esp Urol 2004 Sep;57(7):679-92. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15536949
53. Ward JF, Slezak JM, Blute ML, et al. Radical prostatectomy for clinically advanced (cT3) prostate cancer since the advent of prostate-specific antigen testing: 15-year outcome. BJU Int 2005 Apr;95(6):751-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15794776
54. Hsu CY, Joniau S, Oyen R, et al. Outcome of surgery for clinical unilateral T3a prostate cancer: a single-institution experience. Eur Urol 2007 Jan;51(1):121-8; discussion 128-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16797831
55. Joniau S, Hsu CY, Lerut E, et al. A pretreatment table for the prediction of final histopathology after radical prostatectomy in clinical unilateral T3a prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2007 Feb;51(2):388-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16901622
56. Van Poppel H, Ameye F, Oyen R, et al. Accuracy of combined computerized tomography and fine needle aspiration cytology in lymph node staging of localized prostatic carcinoma. J Urol 1994 May;151(5):1310-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8158777
57. Van Poppel H, Vekemans K, Da Pozzo L, et al. Radical prostatectomy for locally advanced prostate cancer: results of a feasibility study (EORTC 30001). Eur J Cancer 2006 May;42(8):1062-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16624554
58. Loeb S, Smith ND, Roehl KA, et al. Intermediate-term potency, continence, and survival outcomes of radical prostatectomy for clinically high-risk or locally advanced prostate cancer. Urology 2007 Jun;69(6):1170-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17572209
59. Van Poppel H, Joniau S. An analysis of radical prostatectomy in advanced stage and high-grade prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2008 Feb;53(2):253-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17949893
60. D'Amico AV, Whittington R, Malkowicz SB, et al. Pretreatment nomogram for prostate-specific antigen recurrence after radical prostatectomy or external-beam radiation therapy for clinically localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1999 Jan;17(1):168-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458230

61. Spahn M, Joniau S, Gontero P, et al. Outcome predictors of radical prostatectomy in patients with prostate-specific antigen greater than 20 ng/ml: a European multi-institutional study of 712 patients. Eur Urol 2010 Jul;58(1):1-7; discussion 10-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299147
62. Gontero P, Spahn M, Tombal B, et al. Is there a prostate-specific antigen upper limit for radical prostatectomy? BJU Int 2011 Oct;108(7):1093-100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21392220
63. Johnstone PA, Ward KC, Goodman M, et al. Radical prostatectomy for clinical T4 prostate cancer. Cancer 2006 Jun;106:2603-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16700037
64. Gontero P, Marchioro G, Pisani R, et al. Is radical prostatectomy feasible in all cases of locally advanced non-bone metastatic prostate cancer? Results of a single-institution study. Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):922-9; discussion 929-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17049718
65. Ghavamian R, Bergstralh EJ, Blute ML, et al. Radical retropubic prostatectomy plus orchiectomy versus orchiectomy alone for pTxN+ prostate cancer: a matched comparison. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1223-7; discussion 1277-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081874
66. Messing EM, Manola J, Yao J, et al; Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group study EST 3886. Immediate versus deferred androgen deprivation treatment in patients with node-positive prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Lancet Oncol 2006 Jun;7(6):472-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750497
67. Engel J, Bastian PJ, Baur H, et al. Survival benefit of radical prostatectomy in lymph node-positive patients with prostate cancer. Eur Urol May;57(5):754-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20106588
68. Steuber T, Budäus L, Walz J, et al. Radical prostatectomy improves progression-free and cancer-specific survival in men with lymph node positive prostate cancer in the prostate-specific antigen era: a confirmatory study. BJU Int 2011 Jun;107(11):1755-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20942833
69. Briganti A, Karnes JR, Da Pozzo LF, et al. Two positive nodes represent a significant cut-off value for cancer specific survival in patients with node positive prostate cancer. A new proposal based on a two-institution experience on 703 consecutive N+ patients treated with radical prostatectomy, extended pelvic lymph node dissection and adjuvant therapy. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):261-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18838212
70. Schumacher MC, Burkhard FC, Thalmann GN, et al. Good outcome for patients with few lymph node metastases after radical retropubic prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):344-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18511183
71. Briganti A, Karnes RJ, Da Pozzo LF, et al. Combination of adjuvant hormonal and radiation therapy significantly prolongs survival of patients with pT2-4 pN+ prostate cancer: results of a matched analysis. Eur Urol 2011 May;59(5):832-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21354694
72. Schumacher MC, Burkhard FC, Thalmann GN, et al. Is pelvic lymph node dissection necessary in patients with a serum PSA <10ng/mL undergoing radical prostatectomy for prostate cancer? Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):272-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16632187
73. Heidenreich A, Varga Z, Von Knobloch R. Extended pelvic lymphadenectomy in patients undergoing radical prostatectomy: high incidence of lymph node metastasis. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1681-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912387
74. Bader P, Burkhard FC, Markwalder R, et al. Disease progression and survival of patients with positive lymph nodes after radical prostatectomy. Is there a chance of cure? J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):849-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576797
75. Mattei A, Fuechsel FG, Bhatta Dhar N, et al. The template of the primary lymphatic landing sites of the prostate should be revisited: results of a multimodality mapping study. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):118-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17709171
76. Weingärtner K, Ramaswamy A, Bittinger A, et al. Anatomical basis for pelvic lymphadenectomy in prostate cancer: results of an autopsy study and implications for the clinic. J Urol 1996 Dec;156(6):1969-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911367

77. Pound CR, Partin AW, Eisenberger MA, et al. Natural history of progression after PSA elevation following radical prostatectomy. JAMA 1999 May;281(17):1591-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10235151
78. Aus G, Nordenskjöld K, Robinson D, et al. Prognostic factors and survival in nodepositive (N1) prostate cancer-a prospective study based on data from a Swedish population-based cohort. Eur Urol 2003 Jun;43(6):627-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12767363
79. Cheng L, Zincke H, Blute ML, et al. Risk of prostate carcinoma death in patients with lymph node metastasis. Cancer 2001 Jan;91(1):66-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148561
80. Bader P, Burkhard FC, Markwalder R, et al. Is a limited lymph node dissection an adequate staging procedure for prostate cancer? J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):514-8; discussion 518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131300
81. Joslyn SA, Konety BR. Impact of extent of lymphadenectomy on survival after radical prostatectomy for prostate cancer. Urology 2006 Jul;68(1):121-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16806432
82. Briganti A, Chun FK, Salonia A, et al. Complications and other surgical outcomes associated with extended pelvic lymphadenectomy in men with localized prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):1006-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16959399
83. Heidenreich A, Von Knobloch R, Varga Z, et al. Extended pelvic lymphadenectomy in men undergoing radical retropubic prostatectomy (RRP)-an update on >300 cases. J Urol 2004;171:312, abstract #1183.
84. Burkhard FC, Schumacher M, Studer UE. The role of lymphadenectomy in prostate cancer. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2005 Jul;2(7):336-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474786
85. Vallett BS. Radical perineal prostatectomy subsequent to bilateral orchiectomy. Delaware Med J 1944;16:19-20.
86. Shelley MD, Kumar S, Wilt T, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials of neoadjuvant hormone therapy for localised and locally advanced prostate carcinoma. Cancer Treat Rev 2009 Feb;35(1):9-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18926640
87. McLeod DG, Iversen P, See WA, et al. Casodex Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group. Bicalutamide 150 mg plus standard care vs standard care alone for early prostate cancer. BJU Int 2006 Feb;97(2):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430622
88. Hautmann RE, Sauter TW, Wenderoth UK. Radical retropubic prostatectomy: morbidity and urinary continence in 418 consecutive cases. Urology 1994 Feb;43(2 Suppl):47-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8116133
89. Murphy GP, Mettlin C, Menck H, et al. National patterns of prostate cancer treatment by radical prostatectomy: results of a survey by the American College of Surgeons Commission on Cancer. J Urol 1994 Nov;152(5 Pt 2):1817-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523727
90. Begg CB, Riedel ER, Bach PB, et al. Variations in morbidity after radical prostatectomy. N Engl J Med 2002 Apr;346(15):1138-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948274
91. Potosky AL, Legler J, Albertsen PC, et al. Health outcomes after prostatectomy or radiotherapy for prostate cancer: results from the Prostate Cancer Outcome Study. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000 Oct;92(19):1582-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11018094
92. Van Poppel H, Collette L, Kirkali Z, et al, EORTC GU Group. Quality control of radical prostatectomy: a feasibility study. Eur J Cancer 2001 May;37(7):884-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313177
93. Walsh PC, Partin AW, Epstein JI. Cancer control and quality of life following anatomical radical retropubic prostatectomy: results at 10 years. J Urol 1994 Nov;152(5 Pt 2):1831-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523730
94. Sofer M, Savoie M, Kim SS, et al. Biochemical and pathological predictors of the recurrence of prostatic adenocarcinoma with seminal vesicle invasion. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):153-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478125

95. Walsh RM, Thompson IM. Prostate cancer screening and disease management: how screening may have an unintended effect on survival and mortality-the camel's nose effect. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1303-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382719
96. Alsikafi NF, Brendler CB. Surgical modifications of radical retropubic prostatectomy to decrease incidence of positive surgical margins. J Urol 1998 Apr;159(4):1281-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9507853
97. Graefen M. Is the open retropubic radical prostatectomy dead? Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5):1281-3. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17764828
98. Bianco FJ Jr, Scardino PT, Eastham JA. Radical prostatectomy: long-term cancer control and recovery of sexual and urinary function ("trifecta"). Urology 2005 Nov;66(5 Suppl):83-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16194712
99. Gontero P, Kirby RS. Nerve-sparing radical retropubic prostatectomy: techniques and clinical considerations. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2005;8(2):133-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711608
100. Sokoloff MH, Brendler CB. Indications and contraindications for nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy. Urol Clin North Am 2001 Aug;28(3):535-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11590812
101. Eichelberg C, Erbersdobler A, Haese A, et al. Frozen section for the management of intraoperatively detected palpable tumor lesions during nerve-sparing scheduled radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):1011-6; discussion 1016-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16546316
102. Montorsi F, Guazzoni G, Strambi LF, et al. Recovery of spontaneous erectile function after nerve-sparing radical retropubic prostatectomy with and without early intracavernous injections of alprostadil: results of a prospective, randomized trial. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1408-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302132
103. Nandipati K, Raina R, Agarwal A, et al. Early combination therapy: intracavernosal injections and sildenafil following radical prostatectomy increases sexual activity and the return of natural erections. Int J Impot Res 2006 Sep-Oct;18(5):446-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16482200
104. Montorsi F, Brock G, Lee J, et al. Effect of nightly versus on-demand vardenafil on recovery of erectile function in men following bilateral nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4): 924-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18640769
105. Padma-Nathan H, McCullough AR, Levine LA, et al; Study Group. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of postoperative nightly sildenafil citrate for the prevention of erectile dysfunction after bilateral nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy. Int J Impot Res 2008 Sep-Oct;20(5):479-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650827

10. TREATMENT: DEFINITIVE RADIATION THERAPY

10.1 Introduction

There are no randomised studies comparing radical prostatectomy (RP) with either external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) or brachytherapy for localised PCa. However, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) consensus set up in 1988 (1) remains available: external irradiation offers the same long-term survival results as surgery; moreover, EBRT provides a QoL at least as good as that provided by surgery (2).

Intensity modulated radiotherapy (IMRT) +/- image guided (IGRT) is the gold standard and all centres unable to offer this should have a plan to introduce it as a routine for the definitive treatment of prostate cancer (PCa).

In addition to external irradiation, transperineal low-dose or high-dose rate brachytherapy are widely used. In localised and locally advanced PCa, several randomised phase III trials conducted by radiation therapy scientific societies, such as the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG) and European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC), have established the indications for the combination of external irradiation and androgen deprivation treatment (ADT).

Whatever the technique used, the choice of treatment - after the appropriate assessment of tumour

extension - must be based on a multidisciplinary approach and should consider the following:

- 2009 TNM classification;
- Gleason score defined on a sufficient number of core biopsies (at least 12);
- baseline PSA;
- age of the patient;
- patient's co-morbidity, life expectancy and QoL;
  IPSS score and uroflowmetry recordings;
- National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) and prognostic class D'Amico's prognostic factor classification (2b).

It is essential to obtain a patient's informed consent after providing full information to him, regarding diagnosis, therapeutic modalities and morbidity. Additional information on the various aspects of radiotherapy in the treatment of PCa is available in a newly published extensive overview (3).

10.2 Technical aspects: three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy (3D-CRT) and intensity modulated external beam radiotherapy (IMRT)

Anatomical data, acquired by scanning the patient in a treatment position, are transferred to the 3D treatment planning system, which visualises the clinical target volume and then adds a (surrounding) safety margin. At the time of irradiation, a multi-leaf collimator automatically and, in the case of IMRT, continuously, adapts to the contours of the target volume seen by each beam. Real-time verification of the irradiation field by means of portal imaging allows for comparison of the treated and simulated fields, and correction of deviations where displacement is more than 5 mm. Three-dimensional CRT improves local control through dose escalation, without increasing the risk of morbidity.

The use of IMRT is possible with linear accelerators equipped with the latest multileaf collimators and specific software. Movement of the leaves during the course of the irradiation allows for a more complex distribution of the dose to be delivered within the treatment field, and provides concave isodose curves, which are particularly useful as a means of sparing the rectum.

Whatever the techniques and their sophistication, quality assurance plays a major role in the management of radiotherapy, requiring the involvement of physicians, physicists, dosimetrists, radiographers, radiologists and computer scientists.

10.3 Radiotherapy for non-metastatic prostate cancer

Several randomized and non-randomised studies have shown that dose escalation (range, 76-80 Gy) has a significant impact on 5-year survival without biochemical relapse (5-7,10-12,15).
Two randomised trials focused on clinical stages T1-3 N0 M0 have paved the way for dose escalation:

- The MD Anderson study compared 78 Gy with 70 Gy conventional radiotherapy: it included 305 stage T1-3 patients with a pre-treatment PSA level of more than 10 ng/mL and, with a median follow-up of 8.7 years, showed a significant increase in freedom from biochemical and/or clinical failure for low-risk patients ($p = 0.04$) (5).
- The PROG 95-09 study evaluated 393 T1b-T2b patients, of whom 75% had a Gleason score ≤ 6 and a PSA < 15 ng/mL. Patients were randomised to receive an initial boost to the prostate alone, using conformal protons of either 19.8 Gy or 28.8 Gy, and then 50.4 Gy to a larger volume. With a median follow-up of 5.5 years, there was a significant increase in 5-year freedom from biochemical failure ($p < 0.001$) in favour of low-risk patients given a higher dose (79.2 Gy) versus those given a conventional dose (70.2 Gy) (6).

In daily practice, a minimum dose of ≥ 74 Gy is recommended for EBRT + hormone therapy (expert opinion) (7).

The following phase III trials argue for the combination of ADT and RT, or for dose-escalated RT:

- A Dutch randomised phase III trial comparing 68 Gy with 78 Gy showed a significant increase in 5-year freedom from clinical or biochemical failure for patients in an intermediate-risk group (10).
- The phase III trial of the French Federation of Cancer Centres compared 70 Gy with 80 Gy in 306 patients with a pelvic lymph node involvement risk of < 10% (Partin) or pN0, with no hormonal therapy allowed before, during, or after radiotherapy. With a median follow-up of 59 months, a high dose should provide a better 5-year biological outcome in intermediate-risk patients, especially if the initial PSA > 15 ng/mL (11).
- The RTOG 94-08 trial in 1979 patients with T1b-T2b, PSA < 20 ng/mL has shown that the addition of complete androgen blockade for 2 months before, and 2 months during conventional, lower-dose RT (66 Gy) significantly improved 10-year overall survival (62% vs 57%, $p = 0,03$) (12).
- Patients who are reluctant to accept short-term hormonal treatment (13) can receive definitive

radiotherapy alone, provided that a dose escalation up to 78-80 Gy is proposed.

- The MRC RT01 study, comparing a dose of 64 Gy with 74 Gy, both with neoadjuvant hormonal therapy, showed an 11% difference in 5-year BDFS (14).
- The PROG 95-09 study showed a significant increase in 5-year freedom from biochemical failure ($p < 0.02$) in favour of high-risk patients given a higher dose (79.2 Gy) versus those given a conventional dose (70.2 Gy) (10).
- An MD Anderson study showed a significant improvement in mestatases-free survival for high-risk patients ($p = 0.004$) (5).
- The EORTC trial 22991, comparing 3D-CRT +/- IMRT with a choice of three levels of dose (70 Gy, 74 Gy or 78 Gy), with or without 6 months of neoadjuvant and concomitant hormonal therapy, was closed in April 2008 after recruiting 800 patients; its results are awaited (15).

A combination of external irradiation with short-term ADT improves overall survival, based on the results of a phase III randomised trial which included 206 patients with a PSA level of at least 10 ng/mL (maximum 40 ng/mL), a Gleason score of at least 7 (range 5-10), or radiographic evidence of extra-prostatic disease, compared 3D-CRT alone or in combination with 6 months of ADT. After a median follow-up of 7.6 years, intermediate- or high-risk patients without moderate or severe co-morbidity, who had been randomised to receive 3D-CRT + ADT, showed a 13% improvement in overall survival rate ($p < 0.001$) (13). In contrast, data from the EORTC-22961 randomised phase III trial, comparing 36 months of hormonal treatment + radiotherapy with 6 months of hormonal treatment + radiotherapy, showed that increased hormonal treatment improved overall survival in patients with high-risk PCa at 5 years (14).

*10.3.1 **Prophylactic irradiation of pelvic lymph nodes in high-risk localised PCa***

Invasion of the pelvic lymph nodes is a poor prognostic factor and mandates systemic medical treatment because radiotherapy alone is insufficient (15). Prophylactic whole-pelvis irradiation has been abandoned since randomised trials failed to show that patients benefited from prophylactic irradiation (46-50 Gy) of the pelvic lymph nodes in high-risk cases. Such studies include the RTOG 77 06 study with 484 T1b-T2 patients (16), the Standford study with only 91 patients (17), and the GETUG-01 trial, which included 444 T1b-T3 N0 pNx M0 patients (18). Pelvic lymphadenectomy may be needed to improve the selection of patients who might benefit from pelvic lymph node irradiation and to supplement the use of Partin's tables (19) and/or the Roach formula (20). The results of pelvic lymphadenectomy, particularly for young patients, will enable radiation oncologists to tailor both the planning target volume and the duration of ADT: specifically, no pelvic irradiation for pN0 patients, but pelvic irradiation for pN1 patients with long-term ADT. The benefits of pelvic nodal irradiation merit further investigation in a clinical trail (one trial using high-dose IMRT is currently being designed).

10.4 Innovative techniques

*10.4.1 **Intensity modulated radiotherapy***

Intensity modulated radiotherapy enables radiation oncologists to increase radiation doses homogeneously, up to as much as 86 Gy within the target volume, while respecting the tolerance doses in organs at risk. Certainly, IMRT is the only safe means of treatment delivery for dose escalation beyond 75 Gy, using conventional 2 Gy fraction sizes, or for dose escalation using hypofractionated radiotherapy, in which there has been renewed interest. However, both treatment scenarios should be performed only within the confines of a properly designed clinical trial.

To date, no randomised trials have been published comparing dose escalation using IMRT and 3D-CRT.

With dose escalation using IMRT, organ movement becomes a critical issue, in terms of both tumour control and treatment toxicity. Evolving techniques will therefore combine IMRT with some form of image-guided radiotherapy (IGRT), in which organ movement can be visualised and corrected for in real time, although the optimum means of achieving this is still unclear (21).

Another evolving technique for the delivery of IMRT is tomotherapy, which uses a linear accelerator mounted on a ring gantry that rotates as the patient is delivered through the centre of the ring, analogous to spiral computed tomography (CT) scanning. Preliminary data suggest that this technique is feasible in PCa treatment (22).

*10.4.2 **Proton beam and carbon ion beam therapy***

In theory, proton beams are an attractive alternative to photon beam radiotherapy for PCa because they deposit almost all their radiation dose at the end of the particle's path in tissue (the Bragg peak), in contrast to photons, which deposit radiation along their path. Additionally, there is a very sharp fall-off for proton beams beyond their deposition depth, meaning that critical normal tissues beyond this depth could be effectively

spared. In contrast, photon beams continue to deposit energy until they leave the body, including an exit dose.

In practice, however, this has the disadvantage that dose distributions from protons are highly sensitive to changes in internal anatomy, such as might occur with bladder or rectal filling, and prostate proton therapy is usually delivered with lateral beams. It is also possible that high linear energy transfer (LET) radiation therapy using protons or carbon ions offers inherent biological advantages over photons, having more capacity for DNA damage dose-for-dose.

Only one randomised trial has incorporated proton therapy in one arm: the Loma Linda/Massachusetts General Hospital trial mentioned above compared standard-dose conformal radiotherapy with dose-escalated radiotherapy using protons for the boost dose (6). This trial cannot, however, be used as evidence for the superiority of proton therapy per se, as its use here could be viewed simply as a sophisticated method for dose escalation. A randomised trial comparing equivalent doses of proton beam therapy with IMRT is needed to compare the efficacy of protons versus photons; such a study is under consideration by the RTOG.

Two recent planning studies comparing conformal proton therapy with IMRT have yielded conflicting results; one study suggested that the two are equivalent in terms of rectal dose sparing, but that IMRT is actually superior in terms of bladder sparing (23); the other study suggested a clearer advantage to protons (24). Further studies are clearly needed. Meanwhile, proton therapy must be regarded as a promising, but experimental, alternative to photon beam therapy. Theoretically, proton therapy may be associated with a lower risk of secondary cancers compared with IMRT, because of the lower integral dose of radiation, but there are no data in patients treated for PCa to support this.

Carbon ions offer similar theoretical advantages as protons, as an alternative to photon beam therapy. In a phase II study, 175 patients with T1-3, N0-1, M0 PCa were treated with carbon ions in a dose equivalent to 66 Gy in 20 fractions over 5 weeks (25). Treatment appeared to be well tolerated, with no RTOG grade 3 or 4 bowel or genitourinary toxicity, and an overall four-year BDFR of 88% (24). As with protons, a randomised trial comparing carbon ions with IMRT and using equivalent doses is required.

10.5 Transperineal brachytherapy

Transperineal brachytherapy is a safe and effective technique. There is consensus on the following eligibility criteria:

- stage cT1b- T2a N0, M0;
- a Gleason score ≤ 6 assessed on a sufficient number of random biopsies;
- an initial PSA level of ≤ 10 ng/mL;
- $\leq 50\%$ of biopsy cores involved with cancer;
- a prostate volume of < 50 cm^3;
- an International Prostatic Symptom Score ≤ 12 (IPSS) (26).

Patients with low-risk PCa are the most suitable candidates for low-dose rate (LDR) brachytherapy. Further guidelines on the technical aspects of brachytherapy have been published recently and are strongly recommended (27).

In 1983, Holm et al. described the transperineal method with endorectal sonography in which the patient is positioned in a dorsal decubitus gynaecological position (28). Implantation is undertaken under general anaesthesia or spinal block, and involves a learning curve for the whole team: the surgeon for delineation of the prostate and needle placement, the physicist for real-time dosimetry, and the radiation oncologist for source loading. The sonography probe introduced into the rectum is fixed in a stable position.

There are no randomised trials comparing brachytherapy with other curative treatment modalities, and outcomes are based on non-randomised case series. Results of permanent implants have been reported from different institutions, with a median follow-up ranging between 36 and 120 months (29). Recurrence-free survival after 5 and 10 years was reported to range from 71% to 93% and from 65% to 85%, respectively (30-37).

A significant correlation has been shown between the implanted dose and recurrence rates (38). Patients receiving a D90 of > 140 Gy demonstrated a significantly higher biochemical control rate (PSA < 1.0 ng/mL) at 4 years than patients receiving less than 140 Gy (92% vs 68%). There is no benefit from adding neoadjuvant or adjuvant ADT to LDR brachytherapy (29).

Some patients experience significant urinary complications following implantation, such as urinary retention (1.5-22%), post-implant transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) (up to 8.7%), and incontinence (0-19%) (39b). A small randomised trial has suggested that prophylactic tamsulosin does not reduce the rates of acute urinary retention, but may improve urinary morbidity (39). This observation requires further study in a larger number of patients. Chronic urinary morbidity can occur in up to 20% of patients, depending on the severity of symptoms prior to brachytherapy. Previous TURP for benign prostatic hyperplasia increases the risk of post-implant incontinence and urinary morbidity.

The incidence of grade III toxicity is less than 5%. Erectile dysfunction develops in about 40%

of patients after 3-5 years. In a recent retrospective analysis of 5,621 men who had undergone LDR brachytherapy (40), urinary, bowel and erectile morbidity rates were 33.8%, 21% and 16.7%, respectively, with invasive procedure rates of 10.3%, 0.8% and 4%, respectively.

In cases of permanent implants, iodine-125 in granular form is the radio-element of reference, while palladium-103 may be used for less differentiated tumours with a high doubling time. The dose delivered to the planning target volume is 144 Gy for iodine-125, and 125 Gy for palladium-103. A Gleason score of 7 remains a 'grey area', but patients with a Gleason score of 4 + 3 showed no difference in outcome (41).

A small randomised trial has suggested that the use of stranded rather than loose seeds is associated with better seed retention and less seed migration, and this should be the standard choice (42).

In cases of intermediate- or high-risk localised PCa, brachytherapy in combination with supplemental external irradiation (43) or neoadjuvant hormonal treatment (44) may be considered.

The optimum dose of supplemental EBRT is unclear. A randomised trial comparing 44 Gy with 20 Gy of EBRT + palladium-103 brachytherapy closed early, showing no difference in biochemical outcomes (45).

Non-permanent transperineal interstitial prostate brachytherapy using a high-dose rate iridium-192 stepping source and a remote afterloading technique can be applied with a total dose of 12-20 Gy in two to four fractions combined with fractionated external radiotherapy of 45 Gy (46). Higher doses of supplemental EBRT than this may best be delivered with IMRT; a report from Memorial Sloan-Kettering indicates that this approach is safe and feasible (47).

Recent data suggest an equivalent outcome in terms of BDFS compared with high-dose EBRT (HD EBRT) (48). In a retrospective analysis of modern series (49,50), BDFS rates of 85.8%, 80.3% and 67.8% in men with low-, intermediate- and high-risk PCa, respectively, are reported after a mean follow-up of 9.43 years. Quality-of-life changes are similar between high-dose EBRT and high-dose rate (HDR) brachytherapy in terms of diarrhoea and insomnia (51). However, the frequency of erectile dysfunction was significantly increased with HDR brachytherapy (86% vs 34%). A single randomised trial of EBRT versus EBRT + HDR brachytherapy has been reported (52). A total of 220 patients with organ-confined PCa were randomised to EBRT alone with a dose of 55 Gy in 20 fractions, or EBRT with a dose of 35.75 Gy in 13 fractions, followed by HDR brachytherapy with a dose of 17 Gy in two fractions over 24 hours. Compared to EBRT alone, the combination of EBRT and HDR brachytherapy showed a significant improvement in biochemical relapse-free survival ($p = 0.03$). There were no differences in the rates of late toxicity. Patients randomised to EBRT + brachytherapy had a significantly better QoL as measured by their Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy-prostate (FACT-P) score at 12 weeks. However, a very high, uncommon rate of early recurrences was observed in the EBRT-arm alone, even after 2 years, possibly due to the uncommon fractionation used (52). There is still a need to compare dose-escalated EBRT + hormone therapy, with the same followed by a brachytherapy boost, in intermediate- and high-risk patients.

For T1-2 N0 M0 disease, the 5-year biochemical failure rates are similar for permanent seed implantation, high-dose (> 72 Gy) external radiation, combination seed/external irradiation, and RP, according to a study of 2991 patients diagnosed with T1-2 consecutive localised PCa treated between 1990 and 1998 at the Cleveland Clinic Foundation and Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center with a minimum of 1-year follow-up (48).

10.6 Late toxicity

Patients must be informed about the potential late genitourinary or gastrointestinal toxicity that may occur, as well as the impact of irradiation on erectile function. Late toxicity was analysed using a dose of 70 Gy in the prospective EORTC randomised trial 22863 (1987-1995) (53), in which 90% of patients were diagnosed as stage T3-4. A total of 377 patients (91%) out of 415 enrolled were evaluable for long-term toxicity, graded according to a modified RTOG scale. Eighty-six (22.8%) patients had grade ≥ 2 urinary or intestinal complications or leg oedema, of which 72 had grade 2 (moderate) toxicity, 10 had grade 3 (severe) toxicity, and four died due to grade 4 (fatal) toxicity. Although four (1%) late treatment-related deaths occurred, long-term toxicity was limited, with fewer than 5% grade 3 or 4 late complications being reported (Table 17). These data can be used as a baseline for comparison with irradiation techniques currently in use, such as 3D-CRT or IMRT.

Table 17: Incidence of late toxicity by RTOG grade (from EORTC trial 22863)

Toxicity	Grade 2		Grade 3		Grade 4		Any significant toxicity (≥ grade 2)	
	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%
Cystitis	18	4.7	2	0.5	0	0	20	5.3
Haematuria	18	4.7	0	0	0	0	18	4.7
Urinary stricture	18	4.7	5	1.3	4	1	27	7.1
Urinary incontinence	18	4.7	2	0.5	0	0	20	5.3
Overall GU toxicity	**47**	**12.4**	**9**	**2.3**	**4†**	**1†**	**60**	**15.9**
Proctitis	31	8.2	0	0	0	0	31	8.2
Chronic diarrhoea	14	3.7	0	0	0	0	14	3.7
Small bowel obstruction	1	0.2	1	0.2	0	0	2	0.5
Overall GI toxicity	**36**	**9.5**	**1**	**0.2**	**0**	**0**	**37**	**9.8**
Leg oedema	**6**	**1.5**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**0**	**6**	**1.5**
Overall toxicity*	**72**	**19.0**	**10**	**2.7**	**4**	**1**	**86**	**22.8**

GU = genitourinary; GI = gastrointestinal.

** Overall toxicity included GU and GI toxicity and leg oedema. As most patients had more than one type of toxicity, the overall toxicity does not result from simple addition.*

† Two of the grade 4 patients were irradiated with cobalt-60.

Note: There was no other significant (≥ grade 2) toxicity among patients irradiated with cobalt-60 (n = 15) except for two patients with grade 4 GU (stated above) and only one patient with grade 2 GI toxicity.

Radiotherapy affects erectile function to a lesser degree than surgery according to retrospective surveys of patients (2). A recent meta-analysis has shown that the 1-year rate of probability for maintaining erectile function was 0.76 after brachytherapy, 0.60 after brachytherapy + external irradiation, 0.55 after external irradiation, 0.34 after nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy, and 0.25 after standard radical prostatectomy.

When studies with more than 2 years of follow-up were selected (i.e. excluding brachytherapy), the rates became 0.60, 0.52, 0.25, and 0.25, respectively, with a greater spread between the radiation techniques and surgical approaches (54).

Recent studies have demonstrated a significantly increased risk of developing secondary malignancies of the rectum and bladder following EBRT (55,56). In a retrospective evaluation of 30,552 and 55,263 men who had undergone either EBRT or RP, the risk of being diagnosed with rectal cancer increased 1.7-fold in comparison with the surgery group (55). Another analysis (56) showed that the relative risk of developing bladder cancer increased by 2.34-fold compared with a healthy control population. On the other hand, a re-analysis of SEER data with more than 100,000 patients demonstrated a risk of about 0.16% (i.e. 160 cases per 100,000 patients) of radiation-induced malignant tumours (57).

Corresponding data on late toxicity has also been reported by the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center group, from its experience in 1,571 patients with T1-T3 disease treated with either 3D-CRT or IMRT in doses of between 66 Gy and 81 Gy, with a median follow-up of 10 years (57). Both acute GI and GU toxicity appeared to predict for corresponding late toxicity. The overall rates of NCIC-CTC grade 2 or more GI toxicity was 5% with IMRT, compared with 13% with 3D-CRT. The incidence of grade 2 or more late GU toxicity was 20% in patients treated with 81 Gy, compared with 12% in patients treated with lower doses. The overall incidence of grade 3 GI toxicity was 1%, and grade 3 GU toxicity was 3%. These data suggest that IMRT can successfully protect against late GI toxicity, but, interestingly, with dose escalation, GU toxicity may become the dominant morbidity (58).

10.7 Immediate and delayed post-operative external irradiation after radical prostatectomy

Extracapsular invasion (pT3) is associated with a risk of local recurrence, which can be as high as 30% (59). In a multifactorial analysis, the predictors of biochemical relapse are:

- PSA level ($p = 0.005$);
- Gleason score of the surgical specimen ($p = 0.002$);
- positive surgical margins ($p < 0.001$) (60).

Three prospective randomised trials have assessed the role of immediate post-operative radiotherapy (adjuvant radiotherapy, ART). The EORTC study 22911, with a target sample size of 1,005 patients, compared

immediate post-operative radiotherapy (60 Gy) with radiotherapy delayed until local recurrence (70 Gy) in patients classified as pT3 pN0 with risk factors R1 and pT2R1 after retropubic RP. Immediate post-operative radiotherapy proved to be well tolerated, with a risk of grade 3-4 urinary toxicity of less than 3.5%, without significantly worsening the rate of incontinence and/or stricture of the anastomosis. The study concludes that immediate post-operative radiotherapy after surgery significantly improved 5-year clinical or biological survival: 72.2% versus 51.8% ($p < 0.0001$) (61). After re-evaluation by central pathological review, the highest impact (30%) was seen in patients with positive margins (R1), but there was also a positive effect of 10% after 5 years for pT3 with negative margins and other risk factors (62,63).

The most suitable candidates for immediate radiation therapy might be those with multifocal positive surgical margins and a Gleason score > 7. The conclusions of the ARO trial 96-02 (n = 385) appear to support those of the EORTC study. After a median follow-up of 54 months, the radiotherapy group demonstrated a significant improvement in biochemical progression-free survival of 72% versus 54%, respectively ($p = 0.0015$). However, of major interest and in contrast to other studies, patients were randomised after achieving an undetectable PSA following RP (< 0.1 ng/mL) and only pT3-tumours were included. This finding indicates that adjuvant radiotherapy works even in the setting of an undetectable PSA after RP and additional risk factors (63). Conversely, the updated results, with a median follow-up of more than 12 years, of the SWOG 8794 trial, which randomised 425 pT3 patients, showed that adjuvant radiation significantly improved metastasis-free survival, with a 10-year metastasis-free survival of 71% versus 61% (median prolongation of 1.8 years, $p = 0.016$) and a 10-year overall survival of 74% versus 66% (median: 1.9 years prolongation, $p = 0.023$) (65).

Thus, for patients classified as pT3 pN0 with a high risk of local failure after RP due to positive margins (highest impact), capsule rupture, and/or invasion of the seminal vesicles, who present with a PSA level of < 0.1 ng/mL, two options can be offered within the framework of an informed consent:

- *either* immediate radiotherapy (ART) to the surgical bed (61,63,65,66) upon recovery of urinary function;
- *or* clinical and biological monitoring followed by salvage radiotherapy (SRT) before the PSA exceeds 0.5 ng/mL (67,68).

Early salvage radiotherapy provides the possibility of cure to patients with an increasing or persisting PSA after RP. More than 60% of patients who are treated before the PSA level rises to more than 0.5 ng/mL will achieve an undetectable PSA level again (67,68), so providing patients with the chance of about 80% being progression-free 5 years later (68). A retrospective analysis based on 635 patients undergoing RP from 1982-2004, followed up through to December 2007, who experienced biochemical and/or local recurrence and received no salvage treatment (397) or salvage radiotherapy alone (160) within 2 years of biochemical recurrence, has shown that SRT was associated with a threefold increase in PCa-specific survival relative to those who received no salvage treatment ($p < 0.001$). Salvage radiotherapy has also been effective in patients who have had a rapid PSA-doubling time (69). So far, the optimal SRT-dose has not been well defined. It should be at least 66 Gy. However, newer data suggest that higher total doses can achieve higher rates of biochemical control at 3 to 5 years (70,71).

The role of an additional ADT in combination with SRT remains controversial. The RTOG 9601 randomised, multi-centre phase III trial was designed to compare anti-androgen therapy (bicalutamide monotherapy 150 mg/dL) plus SRT (n = 387) to a placebo plus SRT alone (n = 383) in men with pT3 (n = 518)/ pT2 R1 (n = 252) N0 M0 prostate cancer with an elevated PSA after surgery. The median follow-up in surviving patients was 7.1 years. The addition of 24 months of peripheral and androgen blockade during and after RT significantly improved freedom from PSA progression (FFP) 57% versus 40% ($p < 0.0001$) and reduced the incidence of metastatic PCa (7.4% versus 12.6%, $p < 0.04$), without adding significantly to radiation toxicity. Longer follow-up is required to assess the significance of benefit in overall survival and to provide analysis of risk-stratified subsets (72).

These two approaches, together with the efficacy of neoadjuvant hormone therapy, are currently being compared in the UK MRC RADICALS randomised trial. The role of short-term hormone therapy in combination with radiotherapy is being investigated in the EORTC 22043 randomised trial.

10.8 Locally advanced PCa: T3-4 N0, M0

The incidence of locally advanced PCa has declined as a result of individual or mass screening. Pelvic lymph node irradiation is optional for N0 patients, but the results of radiotherapy alone are very poor (73). Because of the hormonal dependence of PCa (74), ADT has been combined with external irradiation with the aim of:

- reducing the risk of distant metastases by potentially sterilising micrometastases already present at the moment of diagnosis;
- decreasing the risk of non-sterilisation and/or local recurrence as a source of secondary metastases (73) through the effect of radiation-induced apoptosis (75,76). Numerous randomised trials have confirmed the value of long-term administration.

10.8.1 ***Neo-adjuvant and concomitant short-term androgen deprivation therapy***

The Trans-Tasman Radiation Oncology Group 96.01 trial included 818 men randomly assigned to RT alone (66 Gy/33 fractions) (77), 3 months of ADT with goserelin and flutamide starting 2 months before radiotherapy, or 6 months of ADT with the same regimen starting 5 months before RT. After a median follow-up of 10.6 years, those assigned to 3 months of ADT had a decreased cumulative incidence of PSA progression ($p = 0.003$), local progression ($p = 0.0005$), and event-free survival ($p = 0.0001$), compared with patients assigned to RT alone. Six months of ADT reduced PSA progression ($p < 0.0001$) and local progression ($p = 0.0001$) and led to a greater improvement in event-free survival ($p < 0.0001$). Furthermore, 6 months of ADT decreased distant progression ($p = 0.001$), cancer-specific mortality ($p = 0.0008$), and all-cause mortality ($p = 0.0008$) compared with RT alone (77).

10.8.2 ***Neo-adjuvant and concomitant hormonal therapy***

The RTOG study 86-10 included 471 patients with bulky (5 x 5 cm) tumours T2-4 N0-X M0. Androgen deprivation therapy was administered at 2 months before irradiation and during irradiation, or in the case of relapse in the control arm. Thirty-two per cent of patients were diagnosed as T2, 70% as T3-4, and 91% as N0. The hormone treatment consisted of oral eulexine, 250 mg three times daily, and goserelin acetate (Zoladex), 3.6 mg every 4 weeks by subcutaneous injection. The pelvic target volume received 45 Gy and the prostatic target volume received 20-25 Gy. The 10-year overall survival estimates were 43% for ADT + irradiation versus 34% for hormonal treatment, although the difference was not significant ($p = 0.12$). There was a significant improvement in the 10-year disease-specific mortality (23% vs 36%; $p = 0.01$), disease-free survival (11% vs 3%; $p < 0.0001$) and in biochemical failure (65% vs 80%; $p < 0.0001$), with the addition of ADT having no statistical impact on the risk of fatal cardiac events (78).

10.8.3 ***Concomitant and long-term adjuvant hormonal therapy***

The EORTC study 22863 recruited 415 patients diagnosed with T1-2 grade 3 WHO (World Health Organization) or T3-4 N0 M0 and any histological grade, and compared radiotherapy + adjuvant ADT with radiotherapy alone. The use of ADT was allowed in cases of relapse. A total of 82% of patients was diagnosed as T3, 10% as T4, and 89% as N0.

Hormonal treatment consisted of oral cyproterone acetate (CPA), 50 mg three times daily for 1 month, beginning 1 week before the start of radiotherapy, and goserelin acetate (Zoladex), 3.6 mg subcutaneously every 4 weeks for 3 years, starting on the first day of radiotherapy. The pelvic target volume received was 50 Gy, and the prostatic target volume was 20 Gy. With a median follow-up of 66 months, combination therapy compared with radiotherapy alone yielded significantly better survival (78% vs 62%, $p = 0.001$) (79). At a median follow-up of 9.1 years, the 10-year overall survival remained significantly higher at 58.1% vs 39.8% ($p < 0.0001$), as did clinical progression-free survival at 47.7% vs 22.7% ($p < 0.0001$). The 10-year cumulative incidence of PCa mortality was 11.1% versus 31% ($p < 0.0001$), and the 10-year cumulative incidence of cardiovascular mortality was 11.1% versus 8.2% ($p = 0.75$) (80).

10.8.4 ***Long-term adjuvant hormonal therapy***

The RTOG study 8531 recruited 977 patients diagnosed with T3-4 N0-1 M0, or pT3, after RP. Androgen deprivation therapy was begun in the last week of irradiation and continued up to relapse (Group I) or was started at recurrence (Group II). A total of 15% of patients in Group I and 29% in Group II had undergone RP, and 14% of patients in Group I and 26% in Group II were pN1. Goserelin acetate, 3.6 mg subcutaneously, was administered every 4 weeks. The pelvis was irradiated with 45 Gy, while the prostatic bed received 20-25 Gy. Patients diagnosed with stage pT3 received 60-65 Gy. With a median follow-up time of 7.6 years for all patients, the 10-year overall survival was significantly greater for the adjuvant arm, at 49% versus 39% ($p = 0.002$) (81).

The National Cancer Institute of Canada (NCIC)/UK Medical Research Council (MRC)/Southwest Oncology Group (SWOG) intergroup PR3/PR07 study included 1205 patients with T3-4 (n = 1057) or T2, PSA > 40 ng/mL (n = 119), or T2, PSA > 20 ng and Gleason > 8 (n = 25) and N0-X M0 PCa, who were randomised to lifelong ADT (bilateral orchidectomy or LHRH agonist), with or without RT (65-70 Gy to prostate +/- 45 Gy to pelvic lymph nodes). With a median follow-up of 6 years, the addition of RT to ADT reduced the risk of death from any cause by 23% ($p = 0.03$) and the risk of death due to PCa by 46% ($p = 0.0001$) (82,83).

The GETUG trial included 273 patients with locally advanced PCa T3-4 or pT3 N0 M0, who were randomly assigned to lifelong ADT using an LHRH agonist (leuproreline), with or without RT (70 Gy to the prostate plus 48+/- 2Gy to pelvic lymph nodes). With a median follow-up of 67 months, there was a significant improvement in 5-year disease free survival ($p < 0.001$), metastases disease-free survival ($p < 0.018$) and loco-regional progression-free survival ($p < 0.0002$), but the effect on overall survival was not reported (84).

The SPCG-7/SFUO-3 randomised study (85) compared hormonal treatment alone (i.e. 3 months of continuous androgen blockade followed by continuous flutamide treatment (n = 439) with the same treatment

combined with radiotherapy (n = 436). After a median follow-up of 7.6 years, the 10-year cumulative incidence for prostate cancer-specific mortality was, respectively, 23.9% and 11.9% (95% CI: 4.9-19.1), and the 10-year cumulative incidence for overall mortality was 39.4% in the hormonal treatment-only group, and 29.6% in the hormonal + RT group (95% CI: 0.8-18%).

10.8.5 ***Neo-adjuvant, concomitant and long-term adjuvant hormonal therapy***

The RTOG 9202 trial closed in 1995 after accruing 1554 patients. Statistically significant improvements were observed in actuarial biochemical freedom from disease control, distant metastatic failure, local control, and disease-free survival in patients receiving long-term ADT (before, during, and 2 years after radiotherapy), compared with short-term ADT (2 months before and during radiotherapy). With a median follow-up of 11.27 years of all survival patients, the long-term ADT arm showed significant improvement over the short-term ADT arm in all efficacy endpoints, except 10-year overall survival, which was 51.6% versus 53.9% (p = 0.36), respectively. In a subset of patients that was not part of the original study design, with Gleason score 8-10 tumours, the long-term ADT arm showed significantly better overall survival after 10 years than the short-term ADT arm, with 45% versus 32% (p = 0.006) (86).

10.8.6 ***Short-term or long-term adjuvant hormonal treatment***

Following the EORTC trial 22863, the EORTC equivalence trial 22961 was set up to test whether similar survival could be achieved in patients who underwent irradiation (to 70 Gy) and 6 months of combined ADT without further ADT, i.e. short-term ADT arm, compared with patients with 2.5 years of further treatment with luteinising hormone-releasing hormone analogue, i.e. long-term ADT arm. Eligible patients had T1c-2b N1-2 or pN1-2, or T2c-4 N0-2 (UICC 1992) M0 PCa with PSA < 150 ng/mL.

Non-inferior survival was defined as a mortality hazard ratio (HR) = 1.35 for short-term ADT versus long-term ADT. A total of 970 patients were randomised. With a 5.2-year median follow-up, the 5-year overall survival rate was 85.3% on long-term ADT, and 80.6% on short-term ADT (HR = 1.43; 96.4% CI; 1.04-1.98), and failed to prove non-inferiority (87).

10.8.7 ***Dose escalation with hormonal therapy***

Zelefsky et al. (88) reported a retrospective analysis of 2251 patients with T1-3 N0-X M0 PCa comprised of 571 low-risk patients (22.4%), 1074 intermediate-risk patients (42.1%) and 906 high-risk patients (35.5%), according to the National Comprehensive Cancer Network classification. Three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy (3D-CRT) or IMRT were given to the prostate and seminal vesicles only. The prostate dose ranged from 64.8 to 86.4 Gy; doses beyond 81 Gy were delivered within the last 10 years by employing image-guided IMRT. Androgen deprivation therapy by complete androgen blockade with a luteinizing hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) agonist plus oral anti-androgen was given at the discretion of the treating physician to 1,249 patients (49%), including 623 high-risk patients (69%), 456 intermediate-risk patients (42%) and 170 low-risk (30%) patients. The duration of ADT was 3 months for low-risk patients and 6 months for intermediate-risk and high-risk patients, starting at 3 months prior to RT and continued during RT. The end-points were 10-year biochemical disease-free survival and distant metastases-free survival. With an 8-year median follow-up, the 10-year biochemical disease-free survival of each risk group was significantly improved by dose escalation: 84% (> 75.6 Gy) versus 70% for low-risk patients (p = 0.04), 76% (> 81 Gy) vs 57% for intermediate- risk patients (p = 0.0001), and 55% (> 81 Gy) versus 41% for high-risk patients (p = 0.0001). The 6-month ADT also influenced the biochemical disease-free survival of intermediate-risk and high-risk patients, with 55% versus 36% for high-risk patients (p < 0.0001). In multivariate analysis, a dose greater than 81 Gy (p = 0.027) and ADT (p = 0.052) were significant predictors for distant metastases-free survival, but none of these parameters influenced PCa mortality or overall survival. There were very low rates of grade 3-4 acute or late toxicity (89).

10.9 Very high-risk PCa: c or pN1, M0

Patients with a pelvic lymph node involvement lower than the iliac regional nodes, younger than 80 years old, with a WHO performance status 0-1, and no severe co-morbidity may be candidates for EBRT plus immediate long-term hormonal manipulation. The RTOG 85-31 randomised phase III trial has shown, with a median follow-up of 6.5 years, that 95 patients out of the 173 pN1 patients who received pelvic radiotherapy with immediate hormonal therapy had better 5-year (54%) and 9-year (10%) progression-free survival (PSA < 1.5 ng/mL) versus 33% and 4%, respectively, with radiation alone and hormonal manipulation instituted at the time of relapse (p < 0.0001). Multivariate analysis showed that this combination had a statistically significant impact on overall survival, disease-specific failure, metastatic failure and biochemical control (90). The GETUG 12 trial has addressed the impact of neoadjuvant chemotherapy with docetaxel on progression-free survival in a cohort of 413 high-risk patients, defined as having one or more of the following criteria: T3-4, Gleason score ≥ 8, PSA ≥ 20 ng/mL, pN+. Patients were randomly assigned to either goserelin, 10.8 mg every 3 months for 3 years, plus 4 cycles of docetaxel, 70 mg/m^2 every 3 weeks plus estramustine 10 mg/kg/dL on days 1 to 5 (arm 1), or

goserelin alone (arm 2). Local therapy was administered at 3 months and consisted of RT in 358 patients (87%). Toxicity included grade 3-4 neutropenia (27%) with neutropenic fever in 2%, but no toxicity-related death and no secondary leukaemia. With a median follow-up of 4.6 years, the 4-year progression-free survival was 85% in arm 1 versus 81% in arm 2 (p = 0.26), but the data need to mature (91).

10.10 Guidelines summary for definitive radiation therapy

	LE
In localised prostate cancer T1c-T2c N0 M0, 3D-CRT with or without IMRT is recommended, even for young patients who refuse surgical intervention.	2
For high-risk patients, long-term ADT prior to and during radiotherapy is recommended because it results in increased overall survival.	2a
In patients with cT1-T2a, Gleason score < 7 (or 3 + 4), PSA ≤ 10 ng/mL, prostate volume ≤ 50 mL, without a previous TURP and with a good IPSS, transperineal interstitial brachytherapy with permanent implants can be an alternative.	2b
In patients with pathological tumour stage T3 N0 M0, immediate post-operative external irradiation after RP may improve overall survival and biochemical and clinical disease-free survival with the highest impact in cases of positive margins.	1
In patients with pathological tumour stage T2-3N0M0, salvage irradiation is indicated in case of persisting PSA or biochemical failure, but before the PSA level rises above 0.5 ng/mL.	3
In locally advanced prostate cancer T3-4 N0 M0, concomitant and adjuvant hormonal therapy for a total duration of 3 years, with external beam irradiation for patients with WHO 0-2 performance status, is recommended because it improves overall survival.	1
In a subset of patients with T2c-T3 N0-X and a Gleason score of 2-6, short-term ADT before and during radiotherapy can be recommended because it may favourably influence overall survival.	1b
In very high-risk prostate cancer, c-pN1 M0 with no severe co-morbidity, pelvic external irradiation and immediate long-term adjuvant hormonal treatment is recommended because it will improve overall survival, disease-specific failure, metastatic failure and biochemical control.	2b

10.11 References

1. Consensus statement: the management of clinically localized prostate cancer. National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Panel (no authors listed). NCI Monogr 1988;(7):3-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3050539
2. Fowler FJ, Barry MJ, Lu-Yao G, et al. Outcomes of external beam radiation therapy for prostate cancer: a study of Medicare beneficiaries in three surveillance epidemiology and end results areas. J Clin Oncol 1996 Aug;14(8):2258-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8708715

2b. NCCN Clinical Proactice guidelines in Oncology Prostate Cancer, Version 4.2011. NCCN.org

3. Nilsson S, Norlen BJ, Widmarks A. A systematic overview of radiation therapy effects in prostate cancer. Acta Oncol 2004;43(4):316-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15303499
4. Kupelian P, Kuban D, Thames H, et al. Improved biochemical relapse-free survival with increased external radiation doses in patients with localized prostate cancer: the combined experience of nine institutions in patients treated in 1994 and 1995. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2005 Feb;61(2):415-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15667961
5. Kuban DA, Tucker SL, Dong L, et al. Long term results of the MD Anderson randomized doseescalation trial for prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Jan;70(1):67-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17765406
6. Zietman AL, DeSilvio M, Slater JD, et al. Comparison of conventional-dose vs high-dose conformal radiation therapy in clinically localized adenocarcinoma of the prostate. A randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2005 Sep;294(10):1233-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16160131
7. Viani GA, Stefano EJ, Afonso SL. Higher-than-conventional radiation doses in localized prostate cancer treatment: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2009 Aug;74(5):1405-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616743

8. Leibel SA, Zelefsky MJ, Kutcher GJ, et al. The biological basis and clinical application of three dimensional conformal external beam radiation therapy in carcinoma of the prostate. Semin Oncol 1994 Oct;21(5):580-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7939749
9. Zelefsky MJ, Leibel SA, Gaudin PB, et al. Dose escalation with three-dimensional conformal radiation therapy affects the outcome in prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1998 Jun;41(3);491-500.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9635694
10. Peeters ST, Heemsbergen WD, Koper PCM, et al. Dose-response in radiotherapy for localized prostate cancer: results of the Dutch multicenter randomized phase III trial comparing 68 Gy of radiotherapy with 78 Gy. J Clin Oncol 2006 May;24(13):1990-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16648499
11. Beckendorf V, Guerif S, Le Prise E, et al. The GETUG 70 Gy vs 80 Gy randomized trial for localized prostate cancer: feasibility and acute toxicity. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2004 Nov;60(4):1056-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15519775
12. Jones CU, Hunt D, McGowan DG, et al. Radiotherapy and short-term androgen deprivation for localized prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2011 Jul 14;365(2):107-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21751904
13. D'Amico A, Renshaw AA, Loffredo M, et al. Androgen suppression and radiation vs radiation alone for prostate cancer; a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2008 Jan;299(3):289-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18212313
14. Dearnaley DP, Sydes MR, Graham JD, et al. RT01 collaborators. Escalated-dose versus standarddose conformal radiotherapy in prostate cancer: first results from the MRC RT01 randomized controlled trial. Lancet Oncol 2007 Jun;8(6):475-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482880
15. Bolla M, de Reijke TM, Van Tienhoven G, et al. EORTC Radiation Oncology Group and Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Group. Duration of androgen suppression in the treatment of prostate cancer. N Engl J Med. 2009 Jun 11;360(24):2516-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19516032
16. Leibel SA, Fuks Z, Zelefsky MJ, et al. The effects of local and regional treatments on the metastatic outcome in prostatic carcinoma with pelvic lymph node involvement. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1994 Jan;28(1):7-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270461
17. Asbell SO, Krall JM, Pilepich MV, et al. Elective irradiation in stage A2, B carcinoma of the prostate: analysis of RTOG 77 06. Int J Radiation Oncology Biol Phys 1988 Dec;15(6):1307-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3058656
18. Pommier P, Chabaud S, Lagrange JL, et al. Is there a role for pelvic irradiation in localized prostate adenocarcinoma? Preliminary results of GETUG-01. J Clin Oncol 2007 Dec;25(34):5366-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18048817
19. Partin AW, Kattan MW, Subong EN, et al. Combination of prostate-specific antigen, clinical stage and Gleason score to predict pathological stage of localized prostate cancer. A multi-institutional update. JAMA 1997 May;277(18):1445-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9145716
20. Roach M, Marquez C, Yuo H, et al. Predicting the risk of lymph node involvement using the pretreatment prostate specific antigen and Gleason score in men with clinically localized prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1993 Jan;28(1):33-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7505775
21. Ling CC, Yorke E, Fuks Z. From IMRT to IGRT: frontierland or neverland? Radiother Oncol 2006 Feb;78(2):119-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413622
22. Keiler L, Dobbins D, Kulasekere R, et al. Tomotherapy for prostate adenocarcinoma: a report on acute toxicity. Radiother Oncol 2007 Aug;84(2):171-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17692975
23. Trofimov A, Nguyen PL, Coen JJ, et al. Radiotherapy treatment of early-stage prostate cancer with IMRT and protons: a treatment planning comparison. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Oct;69(2): 444-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513063
24. Vargas C, Fryer A, Mahajan C, et al. Dose-volume comparison of proton therapy and intensity modulated radiotherapy for prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Mar;70(3): 744-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17904306

25. Ishikawa H, Tsuji H, Kamada T, et al. Working Group for Genitourinary Tumors. Carbon ion radiation therapy for prostate cancer: results of a prospective phase II study. Radiother Oncol 2006 Oct;81(1):57-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16971008
26. Ash D, Flynn A, Batterman J, et al. ESTRA/EAU Urological Brachytherapy Group; EORTC Radiotherapy Group. ESTRO/EAU/EORTC recommendations on permanent seed implantation for localized prostate cancer. Radiother Oncol 2000 Dec;57(3):315-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11104892
27. Salembier C, Lavagnini P, Nickers P, et al. GEC ESTRO PROBATE Group. Tumour and target volumes in permanent prostate brachytherapy: a supplement to the ESTRO/EAU/EORTC recommendations on prostate brachytherapy. Radiother Oncol 2007 Apr;83(1):3-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17321620
28. Holm HH, Juul N, Pedersen JF, et al. Transperineal seed implantation in prostatic cancer guided by transrectal ultrasonography. J Urol 1983 Aug;130(2):283-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6876274
29. Machtens S, Baumann R, Hagemann J, et al. Long-term results of interstitial brachytherapy (LDR brachytherapy) in the treatment of patients with prostate cancer. World J Urol 2006 Aug;24(3):289-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16645877
30. Grimm PD, Blasko JC, Sylvester JE, et al. 10-year biochemical (prostate-specific antigen) control of prostate cancer with (125)I brachytherapy. Int J Radiat Biol Phys 2001 Sep;51(1):31-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11516848
31. Potters L, Klein EA, Kattan MW, et al. Monotherapy for stage T1-T2 prostate cancer: radical prostatectomy, external beam radiotherapy, or permanent seed implantation. Radiother Oncol 2004;71(1):29-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15066293
32. Sylvester JE, Blasko JC, Grimm R, et al. Fifteen year follow-up of the first cohort of localized prostate cancer patients treated with brachytherapy. J Clin Oncol 2004 Apr;22(14S):4567.
http://meeting.jco.org/cgi/content/abstract/22/14_suppl/4567
33. Potters L, Morgenstern C, Calugaru E, et al. 12-year outcomes following permanent prostate brachytherapy in patients with clinically localized prostate cancer. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1562-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821486
34. Stone NN, Stock RG, Unger P. Intermediate term biochemical-free progression and local control following 125iodine brachytherapy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):803-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711273
35. Zelefsky MJ, Kuban DA, Levy LB, et al. Multi-institutional analysis of long-term outcome for stages T1-T2 prostate cancer treated with permanent seed implantation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Feb;67(2):327-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084558
36. Lawton CA, DeSilvio M, Lee WR, et al. Results of a phase II trial of transrectal ultrasound-guided permanent radioactive implantation of the prostate for definitive management of localized adenocarcinoma of the prostate (RTOG 98-05). Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Jan;67(1):39-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084551
37. Potters L, Morgenstern C, Calugaru E, et al. 12-year outcomes following permanent prostate brachytherapy in patients with clinically localized prostate cancer. J Urol 2008 May;179(5Suppl.): S20-S24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18405743
38. Stock RG, Stone NN. Importance of post-implant dosimetry in permanent brachytherapy. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):434-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074816
39. Elshaikh MA, Ulchaker JC, Reddy CA, et al. Prophylactic tamsulosin (Flomax) in patients undergoing prostate 125I brachytherapy for prostate carcinoma: final report of a double-blind placebo-controlled randomized study. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2005 May;62(1):164-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15850917
39b. Budäus L, Bolla M, Bossi A, et al. Functional outcomes and complications following radiation therapy for prostate cancer: a critical analysis of the literature. Eur Urol 2012 Jan;61(1):112-27
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22001105
40. Chen AB, D'Amico AV, Neville BA, et al. Patient and treatment factors associated with complications after prostate brachytherapy. J Clin Oncol 2006 Nov;24(33):5298-304.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17114664

41. Merrick GS, Butler WM, Galbreath RW, et al. Biochemical outcome for hormone naive patients with Gleason score 3+4 versus 4+3 prostate cancer undergoing permanent prostate brachytherapy. Urology 2002 Jul;60(1):98-103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12100932
42. Reed DR, Wallner KE, Merrick GS, et al. A prospective randomized comparison of stranded vs. loose 125I seeds for prostate brachytherapy. Brachytherapy 2007 Apr;6(2):129-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17434106
43. Potters L, Cha C, Ashley R, et al. Is pelvic radiation necessary in patients undergoing prostate brachytherapy? Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1998;42:300 (abstract 2146).
44. Lee LN, Stock RG, Stone NN. Role of hormonal therapy in the management of intermediate-to high-risk prostate cancer treated with permanent radioactive seed implantation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2002 Feb;52(2):444-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11872291
45. Wallner K, Merrick G, True L, et al. 20 Gy versus 44 Gy supplemental beam radiation with Pd-103 prostate brachytherapy: preliminary biochemical outcomes from a prospective randomized multicenter trial. Radiother Oncol 2005 Jun;75(3):307-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16086912
46. Galalae RM, Kovacs G, Schultze J, et al. Long term outcome after elective irradiation on the pelvic lymphatics and local dose escalation using high dose rate brachytherapy for locally advanced prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2002 Jan;52(1):81-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11777625
47. Zelefsky MJ, Nedelka MA, Arican ZL, et al. Combined brachytherapy with external beam radiotherapy for localized prostate cancer: reduced morbidity with an intraoperative brachytherapy planning technique and supplemental intensity-modulated radiation therapy. Brachytherapy 2008 Jan-Mar; 7(1):1-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18299108
48. Kupelian PA, Potters L, Ciezki JP, et al. Radical prostatectomy, external beam radiotherapy < 72 Gy, external radiotherapy > or = 72 Gy, permanent seed implantation or combined seeds/external beam radiotherapy for stage T1-2 prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2004 Jan;58(1):25-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14697417
49. Sylvester JE, Grimm PD, Blasko JC, et al. 15-year biochemical relapse free survival in clinical stage T1-T3 prostate cancer following combined external beam radiotherapy and brachytherapy; Seattle experience. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Jan;67(1):57-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084544
50. Phan TP, Syed AM, Puthawala A, et al. High dose rate brachytherapy as a boost for the treatment of localized prostate cancer. J Urol 2007 Jan;177(1):123-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17162020
51. Vordermark D, Wulf J, Markert K, et al. 3-D conformal treatment of prostate cancer to 74 Gy vs high dose rate brachytherapy boost: a cross-sectional quality of life survey. Acta Oncol 2006;45(6):708-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16938814
52. Hoskin PJ, Motohashi K, Bownes P, et al. High dose rate brachytherapy in combination with external beam radiotherapy in the radical treatment of prostate cancer: initial results of a randomised phase three trial. Radiother Oncol 2007 Aug;84(2):114-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17531335
53. Ataman F, Zurlo A, Artignan X, et al. Late toxicity following conventional radiotherapy for prostate cancer: analysis of the EORTC trial 22863. Eur J Cancer 2004 Jul;40(11):1674-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15251156
54. Robinson JW, Moritz S, Fung T. Meta-analysis of rates of erectile function after treatment of localized prostate carcinoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2002 Nov;54(4):1063-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12419432
55. Baxter NN, Trepper JE, Durham SB, et al. Increased risk of rectal cancer after prostate radiation: a population-based study. Gastroenterology 2005 Apr;128(4):819-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15825064
56. Liauw SL, Sylvester JE, Morris CG, et al. Second malignancies after prostate brachytherapy: incidence of bladder and colorectal cancers in patients with 15 years of potential follow-up. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006 Nov;66(3):669-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16887293

57. Abdel-Wahab M, Reis IM, Hamilton K. Second primary cancer after radiotherapy for prostate cancer-a SEER analysis of brachytherapy versus external beam radiotherapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Sep;71(1):58-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18374503
58. Zelefsky MJ, Levin EJ, Hunt M, et al. Incidence of late rectal and urinary toxicities after three-dimensional conformal radiotherapy and intensity-modulated radiotherapy for localized prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Mar;70(4):1124-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18313526
59. Hanks GE. External-beam radiation therapy for clinically localized prostate cancer: patterns of care studies in the United States. NCI Monogr 1988;(7):75-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3050542
60. Kupelian PA, Katcher J, Levin HS, et al. Staging T1-2 prostate cancer: a multivariate analysis of factors affecting biochemical and clinical failures after radical prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Mar;37(5):1043-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9169811
61. Bolla M, van Poppel H, Collette L, et al. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer. Postoperative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy: a randomized controlled trial (EORTC trial 22911). Lancet 2005 Aug;366(9485):572-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16099293
62. Van der Kwast TH, Bolla M, Van Poppel H, et al. EORTC 22911. Identification of patients with prostate cancer who benefit from immediate postoperative radiotherapy: EORTC 22911. J Clin Oncol 2007 Sep 20;25(27):4178-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17878474
63. Wiegel T, Bottke D, Steiner U, et al. Phase III postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy compared with radical prostatectomy alone in pT3 prostate cancer with postoperative undetectable prostate-specific antigen: ARO 96-02/AUO AP 09/95. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jun 20;27(18): 2924-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19433689
64. Bolla M, Van Poppel H, Tombal B, et al. 10-year results of adjuvant radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy in pT3N0 prostate cancer (EORTC 22911) Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2010;78 (Suppl):S29.
65. Swanson GP, Thompson IM, Tangen C, et al. Update of SWOG 8794: adjuvant radiotherapy for pT3 prostate cancer improves metastasis free survival. Int J Rad Oncol Biol Phys 2008;72:S31.
66. Thompson IM, Tangen CM, Paradelo J, et al. Adjuvant radiotherapy for pathological T3N0M0 prostate cancer significantly reduces risk of metastases and improves survival: long-term followup of a randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2009 Mar;181(3):956-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19167731
67. Stephenson AJ, Scardino PT, Kattan MW, et al. Predicting the outcome of salvage radiation therapy for recurrent prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. J Clin Oncol 2007 May;25:2035-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513807
68. Wiegel T, Lohm G, Bottke D, et al. Achieving an undetectable PSA after radiotherapy for biochemical progression after radical prostatectomy is an independent predictor of biochemical outcome-results of a retrospective study. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2009 Mar;73(4):1009-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18963539
69. Trock BJ, Han M, Freedland SJ, et al. Prostate cancer-specific survival following salvage radiotherapy vs observation in men with biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy. JAMA 2008 Jun; 299:2760-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18560003
70. King CR, Kapp DS (2008) Radiotherapy after prostatectomy: is the evidence for dose escalation out there? Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 71:346-350,
71. Siegmann A, Bottke D, Faehndrich J et al. Dose escalation for patients with decreasing PSA during radiotherapy for elevated PSA after radical prostatectomy improves biochemical progression-free survival : Results of a retrospective study. Strahlenther Onkol 2011;187:467-472.
72. Shipley WU, Hunt D, Lukka H, et al. Initial report of RTOG 9601: A phase III trial in prostate cancer: Anti-androgen therapy with bicalutamide during and after radiation therapy improves freedom from progression and reduces the incidence of metastatic disease in patients following radical prostatectomy with pT2-3, N0 disease, and elevated PSA levels (abstract). Int J Radiat Biol Phys 2010; s27.

73. Leibel SA, Fuks Z, Zelefsky MJ, et al. The effects of local and regional treatments on the metastatic outcome in prostatic carcinoma with pelvic lymph node involvement. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1994 Jan;28(1):7-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270461
74. Huggins C, Hodges CV. Studies on prostate cancer I. The effects of castration, of estrogen and of androgen injection on serum phosphatases in metastatic carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):9-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050481
75. Zietman AL, Prince EA, Nakfoor BM, et al. Androgen deprivation and radiation therapy: sequencing studies using the Shionogi in vivo tumour system. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Jul;38(5):1067-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9276373
76. Joon DL, Hasegawa M, Sikes C, et al. Supraadditive apoptotic response of R3327-G rat prostate tumours to androgen ablation and radiation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Jul;38(5):1071-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9276374
77. Denham JW, Steigler A, Lamb DS, et al. Short term neoadjuvant androgen deprivation and radiotherapy for locally advanced prostate cancer: 10-year data from the TROG 96.01 randomised trial. Lancet Oncol 2011 May;12(5):451-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21440505
78. Roach M, Bae K, Speight J, et al. Short-term neodajuvant androgen deprivation therapy and external-beam radiotherapy for locally advanced prostate cancer: long term results of RTOG 8610. J Clin Oncol 2008 Feb;26(4):585-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18172188
79. Bolla M, Collette L, Blank L, et al. Long-term results with immediate androgen suppression and external irradiation in patients with locally advanced prostate cancer (an EORTC study): a phase III randomized trial. Lancet 2002 Jul;360(9327):103-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12126818
80. Bolla M, Collette L, Van Tienhoven G, et al. Ten year results of long term adjuvant androgen deprivation with goserelin in patients with locally advanced prostate cancer treated with radiotherapy; a phase III EORTC study. Int Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008;72(1 Suppl 1):S30-S31.
81. Pilepich MV, Winter K, Lawton CA, et al. Androgen suppression adjuvant to definitive radiotherapy in prostate carcinoma--long-term results of phase III RTOG 85-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15817329
82. Warde, P, Mason, M, Ding, K, et al and for the NCIC CTG PR.3/MRC UK PR07 investigators. Combined androgen deprivation therapy and radiation therapy for locally advanced prostate cancer: a randomised, phase 3 trial. Lancet 2012 Dec 17;378(9809):2104-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22056152
83. Mason M, Warde P, Sydes M, et al; The National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group PR3/; Medical Research Council PR07 Trial Management Group. Defining the need for local therapy in locally advanced prostate cancer: an appraisal of the MRC PR07 study. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2005 Jun;17(4):217-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15997913
84. Mottet N, Peneau M, Mazeron J et al. Impact of radiotherapy (RT) combined with androgen deprivation (ADT) versus ADT alone for local control in clinically locally advanced prostate cancer. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2010;28;abstr CRA4505
http://www.asco.org/ascov2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=74&abstractID=49013
85. Widmark A, Klepp O, Solberg A, et al for the Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study, the Swedish Association for Urological Oncology. Endocrine treatment, with or without radiotherapy, in locally advanced prostate cancer (SPCG-7/SFUO-3): an open randomized phase III trial. Lancet 2008 Jan;373(9660):301-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19091394
86. Horwitz EM, Bae K, Hanks GE, et al. Ten-year follow-up of radiation therapy oncology group protocol 92-02: a phase III trial of the duration of elective androgen deprivation in locally advanced prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2008 May 20;26(15):2497-504.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18413638
87. Bolla M, de Reijke TM, Van Tienhoven G, et al; EORTC Radiation Oncology Group and Genito-Urinary Tract Cancer Group. Duration of androgen suppression in the treatment of prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2009 Jun;360(24):2516-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19516032

88. Zelefsky MJ, Pei X, Chou JF, et al. Dose escalation for prostate cancer radiotherapy: predictors of long term biochemical tumor control and distant metastases-free survival outcomes. Eur Urol 2011 Dec;60(6):1133-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21889832
89. Zelefsky MJ, Levin EJ, Hunt M. et al. Incidence of later rectal and urinary toxicities after three dimensional conformal radiotherapy and intensity modulated radiotherapy for localized prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Mar;70(4):1124-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18313526
90. Lawton CA, Winter K, Grignon D, et al. Androgen suppression plus radiation versus radiation alone for patients with D1/pathologic node-positive adenocarcinoma of the prostate: updated results based on a national prospective randomized trial, RTOG 85-31. J Clin Oncol 2005 Feb;23(4):800-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15681524
91. Fizazi K, Lesaunier F, Delva R et al. Docetaxel-estramustine in high-risk localized prostate cancer: first results of the French Genitourinary Tumor Group phase III trial (GETUG12) J Clin Oncol 2011;29 (suppl; abstr 4513).

11. EXPERIMENTAL LOCAL TREATMENT OF PROSTATE CANCER

11.1 Background

Besides radical prostatectomy (RP), external beam radiation and/or brachytherapy, cryosurgical ablation of the prostate (CSAP) and high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) have emerged as alternative therapeutic options in patients with clinically localised PCa (1-4).

Although HIFU is still considered to be an experimental treatment, CSAP has been recognised as a true therapeutic alternative according to the guidelines of the American Urological Association. Both HIFU and CSAP have been developed as minimally invasive procedures, which have potentially the same therapeutic efficacy as established surgical and non-surgical options, with reduced therapy-associated morbidity.

11.2 Cryosurgery of the prostate (CSAP)

Cryosurgery uses freezing techniques to induce cell death by:

- dehydration resulting in protein denaturation;
- direct rupture of cellular membranes by ice crystals;
- vascular stasis and microthrombi, resulting in stagnation of the microcirculation with consecutive ischaemia;
- apoptosis (1-4).

Freezing of the prostate is ensured by placement of 12-15 17G-cryoneedles under transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) guidance, placement of thermosensors at the level of the external sphincter and bladder neck, and insertion of a urethral warmer. Two freeze-thaw cycles are used under TRUS guidance, resulting in a temperature of -40°C in the mid-gland and at the neurovascular bundle.

*11.2.1 **Indication for CSAP***

Patients who are ideal candidates for CSAP are those who have organ-confined PCa and those identified as having minimal tumour extension beyond the prostate (1-3). The prostate should be < 40 mL in size. Prostate glands > 40 mL should be hormonally downsized to avoid any technical difficulty in placing cryoprobes under the pubic arch. Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) serum levels should be < 20 ng/mL, and the biopsy Gleason score should be < 7. It is important that patients with a life expectancy > 10 years should be fully informed that there are no data, or only minimal data, on the long-term outcome for cancer control at 10 and 15 years.

*11.2.2 **Results of modern cryosurgery for PCa***

When comparing treatment modalities, it is important to bear in mind that, in modern RP patients with clinically organ-confined PCa, there is a very low risk (2.4%) of dying from PCa at 10 years after surgery (5). Therapeutic results have improved over time with enhanced techniques, such as gas-driven probes and transperineal probe placement, as used in third-generation cryosurgery (6-11).

An objective assessment of PSA outcome is not easily performed because some institutions use PSA values

< 0.1 ng/mL as an indicator of therapeutic success, whereas others use the American Society of Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology (ASTRO) criteria, which requires three consecutive increases in PSA level.

With regard to second-generation CSAP, if a PSA nadir < 0.5 ng/mL is used, biochemical disease-free survival (BDFS) at 5 years is 60% and 36% for low-risk and high-risk patients, respectively (6,7).

Long et al. (6) have performed a retrospective analysis of the multicentre, pooled, CSAP results of 975 patients stratified into three risk groups. Using PSA thresholds of 1.0 ng/mL and < 0.5 ng/mL at a mean follow-up of 24 months, the 5-year actuarial BDFS rate was:

- 76% and 60%, respectively, for the low-risk group;
- 71% and 45%, respectively, for the intermediate-risk group;
- 61% and 36%, respectively, for the high-risk group.

However, according to a recent meta-analysis of 566 cryosurgery-related publications, there were no controlled trials, survival data or validated biochemical surrogate end-points available for analysis (12).

Cryosurgery showed progression-free survival (PFS) of 36-92% (projected 1- to 7-year data), depending on risk groups and the definition of failure. Negative biopsies were seen in 72-87% of cases, but no biopsy data were available for the currently used third-generation cryotherapy machines.

With regard to third-generation cryosurgery, clinical follow-up is short, with a 12-month PSA follow-up carried out in only 110/176 (63%) patients (6-11). Eighty of these (73%) patients still had a PSA nadir < 0.4 ng/mL, whereas 42/65 (64.6%) low-risk patients remained free from biochemical progression using the 0.4 ng/mL cut-off.

Longer follow-up has been reported by Bahn et al. (9), who have analysed the therapeutic results of 590 patients undergoing CSAP for clinically localised and locally advanced PCa. At a PSA cut-off level of < 0.5 ng/mL, the 7-year BDFS for low-, medium- and high-risk groups was 61%, 68% and 61%, respectively.

Nerve-sparing cryosurgery, as reported recently (13), must still be considered an experimental therapeutic option. Nerve-sparing surgery was performed in nine patients with unilateral PCa confirmed on repeated biopsies; CSAP was carried out on the side of the positive biopsy, whereas the negative biopsy side was spared from freezing.

*11.2.3 **Complications of CSAP for primary treatment of PCa***

Erectile dysfunction occurs in about 80% of patients and remains a consistent complication of the CSAP procedure, independent of the generation of the system used. The complication rates described in third generation cryosurgery include tissue sloughing in about 3%, incontinence in 4.4%, pelvic pain in 1.4% and urinary retention in about 2% (6-11). The development of fistula is usually rare, being < 0.2% in modern series. About 5% of all patients require transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) for subvesical obstruction.

Quality of life and sexuality following CSAP have been investigated in a clinical phase II trial recruiting 75 men (14). Quality-of-life analysis by the prostate-specific FACT-P questionnaire showed that most subscales return to pre-treatment levels by 12 months after CSAP. Furthermore, no significant changes are seen when comparing data at 36 months with those at 12 months. With regard to sexuality, 37% of men were able to have intercourse 3 years after CSAP.

In a recent, prospective, randomised clinical trial, 244 men with newly diagnosed organ-confined PCa were randomised to receive either external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) or to undergo CSAP (15). After a follow-up of 3 years, sexual function was significantly less impaired in the EBRT group.

*11.2.4 **Summary conclusions for CSAP***

Patients with low-risk PCa (PSA < 10 ng/mL, < T2a, Gleason score < 6) or intermediate-risk PCa (PSA > 10 ng/mL, or Gleason score > 7, or stage > 2b) represent potential candidates for CSAP.
Prostate size should be < 40 mL at the time of therapy.
Long-term results are lacking, whereas 5-year BDFS rates are inferior to those achieved by RP in low-risk patients. Patients must be informed accordingly.

11.3 HIFU of the prostate

HIFU consists of focused ultrasound waves emitted from a transducer, which cause tissue damage by

mechanical and thermal effects as well as by cavitation (16). The goal of HIFU is to heat malignant tissues above 65°C so that they are destroyed by coagulative necrosis.

HIFU is performed under general or spinal anaesthesia, with the patient lying in the lateral position. The procedure is time-consuming, with about 10 g prostate tissue treated per hour.

In a recent review, 150 papers related to HIFU were identified and evaluated with regard to various oncological and functional outcome parameters (12). No controlled trial was available for analysis, and no survival data were presented. No validated biochemical, surrogate end-point was available for HIFU therapy.

11.3.1 ***Results of HIFU in PCa***

As with CSAP, it appears to be difficult to interpret oncological outcome in patients undergoing HIFU because various PSA thresholds are defined, and no international consensus exists on objective response criteria. The results of HIFU are limited, with outcome data from < 1,000 PCa cases published in the literature.

According to the recent review mentioned above (12), HIFU showed PFS (based on PSA ± biopsy data) of 63-87% (projected 3- to 5-year data), but median follow-up in the studies ranged from 12-24 months only.

In one of the largest single-centre studies, 227 patients with clinically organ-confined PCa were treated with HIFU, and their outcome data were analysed after a mean follow-up of 27 months (range: 12-121 months) (17). The projected 5-year BDFS was 66%, or only 57% if patients had exhibited a pre-therapeutic PSA value of 4-10 ng/mL. Incontinence and bladder neck stricture decreased over time from 28% and 31% to 9% and 6%, respectively. In one of the studies (18), a significant decrease in pre-treatment PSA serum levels from 12 to 2.4 ng/mL was observed. However, 50% of the 14 patients demonstrated positive prostate biopsies during follow-up. In another study (19), a complete response rate (i.e., PSA < 4 ng/mL) and six negative biopsies were achieved in 56% of the patients.

Thüroff *et al*. (19) have summarised the efficacy results of a European multicentre study comprising the data of 559 patients with mainly low- and intermediate-risk PCa, and have reported a negative biopsy rate of 87.2% in 288 men with a follow-up of at least 6 months. A PSA nadir after 6 months' follow-up could be determined in 212 patients, and was 1.8 ng/mL. However, following the initial procedure, it could be demonstrated that the PSA nadir might be reached in 12-18 months.

Blana *et al*. have reported the results of 146 patients undergoing HIFU with a mean follow-up of 22.5 months (20). The mean PSA level at initiation of therapy was 7.6 ng/mL; the PSA nadir achieved after 3 months was 0.07 ng/mL. However, after 22 months, the median PSA level was 0.15 ng/mL. Of the 137 men available for analysis, 93.4% demonstrated a negative control biopsy. The PSA nadir appeared to be strongly associated with treatment failure (21) ($P < 0.001$). Patients with a PSA nadir of 0.0-0.2 ng/mL had a treatment failure rate of only 11% compared with 46% in patients with a PSA nadir of 0.21-1.00 ng/mL, and 48% with a PSA nadir of > 1.0 ng/mL. Recently, the group has updated its results, with a total of 163 men treated for clinically organ-confined PCa. Within the 4.8 ± 1.2 years of follow-up, the actuarial DFS rate at 5 years was 66%, with salvage treatment initiated in 12% of patients (22).

In another study, 517 men with organ-confined or locally advanced PCa were treated with HIFU (23). Biochemical failure was defined as the PSA nadir + 2 ng/mL, according to the Phoenix guidelines with regard to radiotherapy. After a median follow-up of 24 months, the BDFS was 72% for the entire cohort. The BDFS in patients with stage T1c, T2a, T2b, T2c and T3 groups at 5 years was 74%, 79%, 72%, 24% and 33%, respectively ($P < 0.0001$). The BDFS in patients in the low-, intermediate- and high-risk groups at 5 years was 84%, 64% and 45%, respectively ($P < 0.0001$). The BDFS in patients treated with or without neoadjuvant hormonal therapy at 7 years was 73% and 53% ($P < 0.0001$), respectively. Postoperative erectile dysfunction was noted in 33 out of 114 (28.9%) patients who were preoperatively potent.

In a recent retrospective study, 137 patients with PCa underwent HIFU (24). After a median follow-up of 36 months, 22% of the patients relapsed according to the Phoenix criteria. The 5-year DFS rate was 78% based on these criteria, and 91%, 81% and 62% in the low-, intermediate- and high-risk group, respectively. Urge incontinence (16 cases) and dysuria (33 cases) occurred after removal of the urethral catheter in 11.8% and 24.1%, respectively.

To evaluate whether the location (apex/midgland/base) of PCa influences the risk of incomplete transrectal HIFU ablation, Bouiter et al. (25) analysed 99 patients who underwent PCa HIFU ablation (Ablatherm; EDAP, Vaulx-en-Velin, France) with a 6-mm safety margin at the apex, and had systematic biopsies at 3-6 months after treatment. After treatment, residual cancer was found in 36 patients (36.4%) and 50 sextants (8.4%); 30

(60%) positive sextants were in the apex, 12 (24%) in the midgland, and eight (16%) in the base. Statistical analysis showed that the mean (95% CI) probability for a sextant to remain positive after HIFU ablation was 8.8% (3.5-20.3%) in the base, 12.7% (5.8-25.9%) in the midgland, and 41.7% (27.2-57.89%) in the apex. When a 6-mm apical safety margin was used, treatment-associated side effects, especially incontinence and erectile dysfunction, were fewer but residual cancer after HIFU ablation was significantly more frequent in the apex.

Komura et al. (26) have analysed the oncological outcome in 144 patients with T1/T2 PCa and a median follow-up of 47 (2-70) months. Thirty-nine percent patients relapsed and approximately 40% developed a clinical or subclinical urethral stricture postoperatively. Most interestingly, the 5-year DFS was significantly better in those with a stricture as compared to those without (78.2% vs. 47.8%, $P < 0.001$), indicating the need for more aggressive treatment especially at the apex of the prostate.

11.3.2 ***Complications of HIFU***

Urinary retention appears to be one of the most common side effects of HIFU, developing in almost all patients, with the mean interval of catheterisation via a suprapubic tube varying between 12 and 35 days (16-18). Grade I and II urinary stress incontinence occurs in about 12% of patients. Subsequent TURP or bladder neck incision to treat subvesical obstruction is common, and is sometimes even performed at the time of HIFU. Post-operative impotence occurs in 55-70% of patients.

Elterman et al. (27) have treated 95 patients with clinically organ-confined PCa using the Sonablate-500 device, and have evaluated the type and frequency of treatment-associated complications. With a minimum follow-up of 6 months, 17% (7/41) of the men had significant incontinence and 2% developed significant erectile dysfunction. Early and late subvesical obstruction necessitating surgical treatment occurred in 17 (17.9%) and 20 (21.1%) patients, respectively.

11.4 Focal therapy of PCa

During the past two decades, there has been a trend towards earlier diagnosis of PCa due to greater public and professional awareness, leading to the adoption of both formal and informal screening strategies. The effect of this has been to identify men with smaller tumours at an earlier stage, which occupy only 5-10% of the prostate volume, with a greater propensity for unifocal or unilateral disease (28-30).

Most focal therapies to date have been achieved with ablative technologies; cryotherapy, HIFU or photodynamic therapy. So far, three groups have proposed that non-diseased prostate tissue be left untreated in the hope and expectation that genitourinary function might be preserved and the tumour treated adequately (31-33). Although focal therapy is currently not the standard for men with organ-confined PCa, it is the therapeutic approach with the most important future potential.

11.4.1 ***Pre-therapeutic assessment of patients***

The high number of random and systematic errors associated with TRUS-guided biopsy regimens means that this procedure is not sufficiently accurate for selecting candidates for focal therapy. The current standard for characterising men considering focal therapy is transperineal prostate biopsy using a template-guided approach (34,35). When used with a 5-mm sampling frame, this approach can rule in and rule out PCa foci of 0.5 and 0.2 mL volume, with 90% certainty (36). Thus, the exact anatomical localisation of the index lesion - defined as the biologically most aggressive- can be accurately determined.

11.4.2 ***Patient selection for focal therapy***

The primary objective of treatment must be the eradication of measurable and biologically aggressive disease. However, although treatment is usually intended to be one-off, patients should know that further treatment might be necessary in the future.

Based on published data, the following criteria identify possible candidates for currently ongoing trials of focal treatment:

- Candidates for focal therapy should ideally undergo transperineal template mapping biopsies. However, a state-of-the-art multifunctional MRI with TRUS biopsy at expert centres may be acceptable.
- Focal therapy should be limited to patients with a low to moderate risk. The clinical stage of the tumour should be < cT2a and the radiological stage < cT2b.
- Patients with previous prostate surgery should be counselled with caution because no data on functional and oncological outcomes are available. Patients who have undergone radiation therapy of the prostate are not candidates for focal therapy.
- Patients must be informed that the therapy is still experimental and that there is a possibility of repeat-treatment.

11.5 Summary of experimental therapeutic options to treat clinically localised PCa

Conclusion	
All other minimally invasive treatment options - such as HIFU microwave and electrosurgery - are still experimental or investigational. For all of these procedures, a longer follow-up is mandatory to assess their true role in the management of PCa.	
Recommendation	**GR**
In patients who are unfit for surgery, or with a life expectancy < 10 years CSAP has evolved from an investigational therapy to a possible alternative treatment for PCa.	**C**
Focal therapy of PCa is still in its infancy and cannot be recommended as a therapeutic alternative outside clinical trials.	**C**

11.6 References

1. Fahmy WE, Bissada NK. Cyrosurgery for prostate cancer. Arch Androl 2003 Sep-Oct;49(5):397-407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12893518
2. Rees J, Patel B, Macdonagh R, et al. Cryosurgery for prostate cancer. BJU Int 2004 Apr;93(6):710-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15049977
3. Han KR, Belldegrun AS. Third-generation cryosurgery for primary and recurrent prostate cancer. BJU Int 2004 Jan;93(1):14-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14678360
4. Beerlage HP, Thüroff S, Madersbacher S, et al. Current status of minimally invasive treatment options for localized prostate carcinoma. Eur Urol 2000 Jan;37(1):2-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671777
5. Hull GW, Rabbani F, Abbas F, et al. Cancer control with radical prostatectomy alone in 1,000 consecutive patients. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2Pt1):528-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792912
6. Long JP, Bahn D, Lee F, et al. Five-year retrospective, multi-institutional pooled analysis of cancer-related outcomes after cryosurgical ablation of the prostate. Urology 2001 Mar;57(3):518-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248631
7. Donelly BJ, Saliken JC, Ernst DS, et al. Prospective trial of cryosurgical ablation of the prostate: five year results. Urology 2002 Oct;60(4):645-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12385926
8. Han K, Cohen J, Miller R, et al. Treatment of organ confined prostate cancer with third generation cryosurgery: preliminary multicentre experience. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4Pt1):1126-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501706
9. Bahn DK, Lee F, Baldalament R, et al. Targeted cryoablation of the prostate: 7-year outcomes in the primary treatment of prostate cancer. Urology 2002 Aug;60(2 Suppl 1):3-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12206842
10. Koppie TM, Shinohara K, Grossfeld GD, et al. The efficacy of cryosurgical ablation of prostate cancer: the University of California, San Francisco experience. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):427-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411051
11. De La Taille A, Benson MC, Bagiella E, et al. Cryoablation for clinically localized prostate cancer using an argon-based system: complication rates and biochemical recurrence. BJU Int 2000 Feb;85(3): 281-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671882
12. Aus G. Current status of HIFU and cryotherapy in prostate cancer-a review. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):927-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16971038
13. Onik G, Narayan P, Vaughan D, et al. Focal 'nerve-sparing' cryosurgery for treatment of primary prostate cancer: a new approach to preserving potency. Urology 2002 Jul;60(1):109-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12100934
14. Robinson JW, Donnelly BJ, Saliken JC, et al. Quality of life and sexuality of men with prostate cancer 3 years after cryosurgery. Urology 2002 Aug;60(2 Suppl 1):12-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12206843
15. Robinson JW, Donnelly BJ, Siever JE, et al. A randomized trial of external beam radiotherapy versus cryoablation in patients with localized prostate cancer: quality of life outcomes. Cancer 2009 Oct;115(20):4695-704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19691092

16. Madersbacher S, Marberger M. High-energy shockwaves and extracorporeal high-intensity focused ultrasound. J Endourol 2003 Oct;17(8):667-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14622487
17. Poissonnier L, Chapelon JY, Rouviere O, et al. Control of prostate cancer by transrectal HIFU in 227 patients. Eur Urol 2007 Feb;51(2):381-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16857310
18. Gelet A, Chapelon JY, Bouvier R, et al. Local control of prostate cancer by transrectal high intensity focused ultrasound therapy: preliminary results. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):156-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037389
19. Thüroff S, Chaussy C, Vallancien G, et al. High-intensity focused ultrasound and localized prostate cancer: efficacy results from the European multicentric study. J Endourol 2003 Oct;17(8):673-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14622488
20. Blana A, Walter B, Rogenhofer S, et al. High-intensity focused ultrasound for the treatment of localized prostate cancer: 5-year experience. Urology 2004 Feb;63(2)297-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14972475
21. Uchida T, Illing RO, Cathcart PJ, et al. To what extent does the prostate-specific antigen nadir predict subsequent treatment failure after transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound therapy for presumed localized adenocarcinoma of the prostate? BJU Int 2006 Sep;98(3):537-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16925749
22. Blana A, Rogenhofer S, Ganzer R, et al. Eight years'experience with high-intensity focused ultrasonography for treatment of localized prostate cancer. Urology 2008 Dec;72(6):1329-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18829078
23. Uchida T, Shoji S, Nakano M, et al. Transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound for the treatment of localized prostate cancer: eight-year experience. Int J Urol 2009 Nov;16(11):881-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19863624
24. Inoue Y, Goto K, Hayashi T, et al. Transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound for treatment of localized prostate cancer. Int J Urol 2011 May;18(5):358-62
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21449970
25. Boutier R, Girouin N, Cheikh AB, et al. Location of residual cancer after transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound ablation for clinically localized prostate cancer. BJU Int 2011 Dec;108(11):1776-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21711432
26. Komura K, Inamoto T, Black PC, et al. Clinically significant urethral stricture and/or subclinical urethral stricture after high-intensity focused ultrasound correlates with disease-free survival in patients with localized prostate cancer. Urol Int 2011;87(3):276-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21912100
27. Elterman DS, Barkin J, Radomski SB, et al. Results of high intensity focused ultrasound treatment of prostate cancer: early Canadian experience at a single center. Can J Urol 2011 Dec;18(6):6037-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22166332
28. Mouraviev V, Mayes JM, Polascik TJ. Pathologic basis of focal therapy for early-stage prostate cancer. Nat Rev Urol 2009 Apr;6(4):205-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19352395
29. Cooperberg MR, Broering JM, Kantoff PW, et al. Contemporary trends in low risk prostate cancer: risk assessment and treatment. J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3Pt 2):S14-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17644125
30. Polascik TJ, Mayes JM, Sun L, et al. Pathologic stage T2a and T2b prostate cancer in the recent prostate-specific antigen era: implications for unilateral ablative therapy. Prostate 2008 Sep;68(13):1380-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18543281
31. Ahmed HU, Pendse D, Illing R, et al. Will focal therapy become standard of care for men with localized prostate cancer? Nat Clin Pract Oncol 2007 Nov;4(11):632-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17965641
32. Eggener SE, Scardino PT, Carroll PR, et al; International Task Force on Prostate Cancer and the Focal Lesion Paradigm. Focal therapy for localized prostate cancer: a critical appraisal of rationale and modalities. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2260-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17936815
33. Crawford ED, Barqawi A. Targeted focal therapy: a minimally invasive ablation technique for early prostate cancer. Oncology (Williston Park) 2007 Jan;21(1):27-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17313155

34. Onik G, Miessau M, Bostwick DG. Three-dimensional prostate mapping biopsy has a potentially significant impact on prostate cancer management. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep;10:27(26):4321-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19652073
35. Onik G, Barzell W. Transperineal 3D mapping biopsy of the prostate: an essential tool in selecting patients for focal prostate cancer therapy. Urol Oncol 2008 Sep-Oct;26(5):506-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18774464
36. Crawford ED, Wilson SS, Torkko KC, et al. Clinical staging of prostate cancer: a computer-simulated study of transperineal prostate biopsy. BJU Int 2005 Nov;96(7):999-1004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16225516

12. HORMONAL THERAPY

12.1 Introduction

In 1941, Huggins and Hodges assessed the effect of surgical castration and oestrogen administration on the progression of metastatic prostate cancer (PCa). They demonstrated for the first time the responsiveness of PCa to androgen deprivation (1,2). Since then, androgen-suppressing strategies have become the mainstay of advanced PCa management. More recently, there has been a move towards the increasing use of hormonal treatment in younger men with earlier disease (i.e. non-metastatic) or recurrent disease after definitive treatment, either as the primary single-agent therapy or as a part of a multimodality approach (3).

However, even if hormonal treatment effectively palliates the symptoms of advanced disease, there is currently no conclusive evidence to show that it extends life.

*12.1.1 **Basics of hormonal control of the prostate***

Prostate cells are physiologically dependent on androgens to stimulate growth, function and proliferation. Testosterone, although not tumorigenic, is essential for the growth and perpetuation of tumour cells (4). The testes are the source of most androgens, with adrenal biosynthesis providing only 5-10% of androgens (i.e. androstenedione, dihydroepiandrosterone and dihydroepiandrosterone sulphate).

Testosterone secretion is regulated by the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis. Hypothalamic luteinising hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) stimulates the anterior pituitary gland to release luteinising hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). Luteinising hormone stimulates the Leydig cells of the testes to secrete testosterone. Within the prostate cell, testosterone is converted to 5-α-dihydrotestosterone (DHT) by the enzyme 5-α-reductase; DHT is an androgenic stimulant about 10 times more powerful than testosterone. Meanwhile, circulating testosterone is peripherally aromatised and converted to oestrogens, which, together with circulating androgens, exert a negative feedback control on hypothalamic LH secretion.

If prostate cells are deprived of androgenic stimulation, they undergo apoptosis (programmed cell death). Any treatment that results ultimately in suppression of androgen activity is referred to as androgen deprivation therapy (ADT).

*12.1.2 **Different types of hormonal therapy***

Androgen deprivation can be achieved by either suppressing the secretion of testicular androgens by surgical or medical castration or inhibiting the action of circulating androgens at the level of their receptor in prostate cells using competing compounds known as anti-androgens. These two methods of androgen deprivation (surgical or medical castration and the use of anti-androgens) can be combined to achieve what is commonly known as complete (or maximal or total) androgen blockade (CAB).

12.2 Testosterone-lowering therapy (castration)

*12.2.1 **Castration level***

Surgical castration is still considered the ‘gold standard’ for ADT, against which all other treatments are rated. Removal of the testicular source of androgens leads to a considerable decline in testosterone levels and induces a hypogonadal status, although a very low level of testosterone (known as the ‘castration level’) persists.

The standard castrate level is < 50 ng/dL. It was defined more than 40 years ago, when testosterone level testing was limited. However, current testing methods using chemiluminescence have found that the mean value of testosterone after surgical castration is 15 ng/dL (5). This has led to a revisiting of the current definition of castration, with some authors suggesting < 20 ng/dL as a more appropriate level.

12.2.2 ***Bilateral orchiectomy***

Bilateral orchiectomy, either total or by means of a subcapsular technique (i.e. with preservation of tunica albuginea and epididymis), is a simple and virtually complication-free surgical procedure. It is easily performed under local anaesthesia (6) and is the quickest way to achieve a castration level, usually within less than 12 hours.

The main drawback of orchiectomy is that it may have a negative psychological effect: some men consider it to be an unacceptable assault on their manhood. In addition, it is irreversible and does not allow for intermittent treatment. The use of bilateral orchiectomy has declined in recent years, probably because of stage migration towards earlier disease and the introduction of equally effective pharmacological modalities of castration.

12.2.3 ***LHRH agonists***

Long-acting LHRH agonists (busereline, gosereline, leuproreline, triptoreline) have been used in advanced PCa for more than 15 years and are currently the main forms of ADT (3). They are synthetic analogues of LHRH, generally delivered as depot injections on a 1-, 2-, 3-, or 6-monthly basis. Initially, they stimulate pituitary LHRH receptors, inducing a transient rise in LH and FSH release. This then elevates testosterone production (known as the 'testosterone surge' or 'flare-up' phenomenon), which begins about 2-3 days after the first injection and lasts for about the first week of therapy.

12.2.3.1 Achievement of castration levels

Chronic exposure to LHRH agonists eventually results in down-regulation of LHRH-receptors. This then suppresses pituitary LH and FSH secretion and testosterone production, so that testosterone levels decrease to castration levels usually within 2-4 weeks (7). However, about 10% of patients treated with LHRH agonists fail to achieve castration levels (8). This proportion rises to 15% if the castration threshold is defined as 20 ng/dL.

A recent meta-analysis evaluating single-therapy ADT for advanced PCa showed that LHRH agonists have comparable efficacy to orchiectomy and DES (9) (LE: 1a). This finding raises a question about the clinical impact of changing the definition of the castrate testosterone level from 50 ng/dL to 20 ng/dL. In addition, although only based on indirect comparison, the LHRH agonists seemed equally effective whatever their formulation (9) (LE: 3).

12.2.3.2 Flare-up phenomenon

Today, LHRH agonists have become the 'standard of care' in hormonal therapy because they avoid the physical and psychological discomfort associated with orchiectomy and lack the potential cardiotoxicity associated with DES. However, the main concerns associated with the administration of LHRH agonists are the potentially detrimental effects associated with 'flare phenomenon' in advanced disease, namely increased bone pain, acute bladder outlet obstruction, obstructive renal failure, spinal cord compression, and fatal cardiovascular events due to hypercoagulation status.

A review (10) concluded that clinical flare needs to be distinguished from the more common biochemical flare (i.e. increasing levels of PSA), and even from asymptomatic radiographic evidence of progression. The review also identified that patients at risk of clinical flare are usually patients with high-volume, symptomatic, bony disease, which account for only 4-10% of M1 patients.

Anti-androgen treatment

Concomitant therapy with an anti-androgen decreases the incidence of clinical relapse (i.e. clinical flare), but does not completely remove the possibility of its occurrence. Anti-androgens should be started on the same day as the depot LHRH injection and should be continued for a 2-week period. However, other strategies for immediately ablating testosterone levels, such as bilateral orchiectomy or LHRH-antagonists, must be used in patients with impending spinal cord compression. Except in this patient group, the clinical impact of the flare-up observation is unknown.

Long-term use of LHRH agonists

Some "mini-flares" have also been observed with the long-term use of LHRH agonists. The clinical impact is unknown but it has been suggested that a mini-flare is associated with a negative impact on overall survival (*see* Section 17.4).

12.2.4 ***LHRH antagonists***

In contrast to LHRH agonists, LHRH antagonists bind immediately and competitively to LHRH receptors in the pituitary gland. The effect is a rapid decrease in LH, FSH and testosterone levels without any flare. This seemingly more desirable mechanism of action has made LHRH antagonists very attractive. However, practical

shortcomings have limited clinical studies, as many LHRH antagonists have been associated with serious and life-threatening histamine-mediated side-effects and, until recently, no depot formulation was available.

12.2.4.1 Abarelix

Two published phase III randomised multicentre trials compared the LHRH antagonist, abarelix, with the LHRH agonist, leuprorelin acetate (11), and with CAB (12), in patients with metastatic or recurrent PCa. Both trials showed no difference in achieving and maintaining castration levels of testosterone and in reducing serum PSA. The biochemical 'flare up' phenomenon was not reported in the abarelix arm and the overall incidence of severe adverse events (including allergic reactions) was similar across all treatment groups. Data on survival end-points and long-term safety are not yet available.

The US Food and Drug Administration has recently licensed the clinical use of abarelix, but only in metastatic and symptomatic PCa, for which no other treatment option is available. However, based on prolonged analysis, the FDA have issued a warning about allergic reactions with the long-term use of abarelix, which has resulted in suspension of its further development.

12.2.4.2 Degarelix

Degarelix is another LHRH antagonist that has shown promising preliminary results in a monthly subcutaneous formulation. Following phase II trials, a large, randomised, non-inferiority, dose-finding study (n = 610) compared two degarelix dosages with 7.5 mg monthly leuprorelin injections (13). The study showed that the standard dosage of degarelix should be 240 mg the first month, followed by 80 mg monthly injections. More than 95% of patients achieved a castrate level at day 3 with degarelix, which was associated with a quicker decline in PSA as quickly as day 14. No allergic reaction was observed. The main criterion (suppression of testosterone $\leq$ 0.5 ng/mL at all monthly measurements) was similar in the three treatment groups at 1 year. The main specific side-effect of degarelix was a painful injection (moderate or mild) reported in 40% of patients, mainly after the first injection. An extended follow-up has been recently published (median 27.5 months), suggesting that degarelix might result in better progression-free survival compared to monthly leuprorelin (14).

12.2.4.3 Conclusions

Overall, this new family of agents seems appealing, but their advantages over LHRH agonists are far from proven. Further trials are needed to confirm the preliminary observed increased efficacy compared to leuprorelin. The use of LHRH antagonists is limited by a monthly formulation, compared with 3-month and 6-month depot formulations for the available LHRH analogues. Suppression of the initial flare-up with monotherapy is only clinically relevant in a few symptomatic metastatic patients.

12.3 Oestrogens

Oestrogens have several mechanisms of action:

- down-regulation of LHRH secretion;
- androgen inactivation;
- direct suppression of Leydig cell function;
- direct cytotoxicity to the prostate epithelium (in-vitro evidence only) (15).

12.3.1 ***Diethylstilboesterol (DES)***

Diesthylstilboesterol (DES) is the most commonly used oestrogen in PCa. Early studies by the Veterans Administration Co-operative Urological Research Group (VACURG) tested oral DES at a dosage of 5 mg/day, as it was the dosage used in CAB. However, this dosage was associated with high cardiovascular morbidity and mortality, due to first-pass hepatic metabolism and formation of thrombogenic metabolites. Lower oral doses of 1 mg/day and 3 mg/day were therefore tested and were both found to provide a therapeutic efficacy similar to that of bilateral orchiectomy. However, 3 mg daily of DES was still associated with high cardiotoxicity. Although 1 mg daily of DES resulted in much fewer adverse cardiovascular events than 5 mg daily of DES, the side-effects were still significantly greater than with castration. Because of these concerns and the introduction of LHRH agonists and anti-androgens, the use of DES was greatly reduced. There has been renewed interest in using oestrogens (9).

12.3.2 ***Renewed interest in oestrogens***

There are three main reasons for a renewed interest in using oestrogens to treat PCa:

1. LHRH agonists have a number of deleterious side-effects and their long-term widespread use is costly, while oestrogens suppress testosterone levels and do not seem to lead to bone loss and cognitive decline (16) (LE: 3).
2. In phase II trials with patients diagnosed with hormone-refractory PCa (HRPC), oestrogenic compounds (DES, DES-diphosphate) have induced prostate-specific antigen (PSA) response rates as high as 86%.

3. Discovery of a new oestrogen receptor-® (ER-®), possibly involved in prostate tumorigenesis (15).

12.3.3 ***Strategies to counteract the cardiotoxicity of oestrogen therapy***

Two strategies have been used to try and neutralise the cardiotoxicity associated with oestrogen therapy, which is its main disadvantage:

- parenteral route of administration - so avoiding first-pass hepatic metabolism;
- concomitant use of cardiovascular-protective agents.

The Scandinavian Prostatic Cancer Group Study 5 set up a prospective randomised trial of more than 900 men with metastatic PCa, which compared a parenteral oestrogen (polyoestradiol phosphate) with CAB (orchiectomy, or an LHRH agonist + flutamide). The trial found no significant difference in disease-specific survival and OS between the treatment groups, and no significant increase in cardiovascular mortality in the oestrogen-treated group. However, in the oestrogen-treated group, there was a significantly higher incidence of non-fatal adverse cardiovascular events, particularly ischaemic and heart decompensation events (17).

In addition, thromboembolic complications have been observed in recent (though small) phase II trials of patients with advanced PCa or CRPC. The trials evaluated the combination of DES, 1 mg/day or 3 mg/ day, with either a low dose of warfarin sodium, 1 mg/day, or a low dose of aspirin, 75-100 mg/day, for the prevention of cardiovascular toxicity (18,19).

12.3.4 ***Conclusions***

Diethylstilboesterol is one of the classic forms of hormonal therapy. Its efficacy was demonstrated many years ago and was recently re-confirmed in a meta-analysis as comparable to that of bilateral orchiectomy (9) (LE:1a). However, there is still concern about the significant cardiovascular side-effects of DES, even at lower dosages. Further data are needed before oestrogens can be re-admitted into clinical practice as a standard first-line treatment option.

12.4 Anti-androgens

Anti-androgens compete with testosterone and DHT at the receptor level in the prostate cell nucleus, thus promoting apoptosis and inhibiting PCa growth (20).

These oral compounds are classified according to their chemical structure as:

- steroidal, e.g. cyproterone acetate (CPA), megestrol acetate and medroxyprogesterone acetate;
- non-steroidal or pure, e.g. nilutamide, flutamide and bicalutamide.

Both classes compete with androgens at the receptor level. This is the sole action of non-steroidal anti-androgens. In addition, steroidal anti-androgens have progestational properties due to central inhibition of the pituitary gland. As a consequence, non-steroidal antiandrogens do not lower testosterone levels, which remain normal or, conversely, slightly elevated.

12.4.1 ***Steroidal anti-androgens***

These compounds are synthetic derivatives of hydroxyprogesterone. In addition to peripherally blocking androgen receptors, they have progestational properties and inhibit the release of gonadotrophins (LH and FSH) and suppress adrenal activity. At high doses, megestrol acetate is cytotoxic. Since steroidal antiandrogens lower testosterone levels, the main pharmacological side-effects are loss of libido and erectile dysfunction, while gynaecomastia is quite rare. The non-pharmacological side-effects are cardiovascular toxicity (4-40% for CPA) and hepatotoxicity.

12.4.1.1 Cyproterone acetate (CPA)

Cyproterone acetate was the first anti-androgen to be licensed and is the most widely used. However, it is the least studied, with many questions about its use unanswered, e.g. the optimal dose, or unclear, e.g. comparison with standard forms of castration, surgical or with an agonist.

Comparison of CPA with medical castration

There has been only one randomised trial (21) comparing CPA with standard hormonal therapy, i.e. medical castration. Patients in arm A (no contraindications to DES) were randomly assigned to CPA, goserelin or DES, while patients in arm B (contraindications to DES) were assigned to CPA or goserelin. In arm A, treatment with CPA was associated with a significantly poorer median OS than goserelin only; adjusting for baseline characteristics did not account for this difference. Although there are other studies in CPA monotherapy, methodological limitations prevent firm conclusions being made from their results about the relative efficacy of CPA and castration.

Dosage regimen of CPA
Because there have been no dose-finding studies of CPA monotherapy, the most effective dose is still unknown. Although CPA has a relatively long half-life (31-41 hours), it is usually administered in two or three fractionated doses of 100 mg each (22).

Comparative study of CPA with flutamide
The only comparative study on anti-androgens as monotherapy was recently published by the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC). The final analysis of Protocol 30892 (a randomised trial of 310 patients comparing CPA with flutamide in metastatic PCa) showed no difference in cancer-specific survival and OS at a median follow-up of 8.6 years, although the study was underpowered (23) (LE: 1b).

12.4.1.2 Megestrol acetate and medroxyprogesterone acetate
Very limited information is available on these two compounds. Early studies with megestrol acetate demonstrated a symptomatic and partially beneficial clinical response, both in previously untreated metastatic PCa (24,25) and less so in CRPC (26). No apparent dose-response correlation was found (27). The overall poor efficacy has prevented megestrol acetate and medroxyprogesterone acetate from being recommended for either primary- or second-line hormonal therapy.

The only prospective randomised trial evaluating medroxyprogesterone acetate as primary therapy in advanced (M0-1) PCa is the EORTC 30761 study (28), in which 236 patients were given CPA, DES or medroxyprogesterone acetate. There was no difference in cancer-specific survival and OS between CPA and DES. However, medroxyprogesterone acetate resulted in a less favourable course, with a shorter survival time and time to progression than CPA or DES.

12.4.2 ***Non-steroidal anti-androgens***
The use of non-steroidal anti-androgens as monotherapy has been promoted on the basis of improved quality of life (QoL) and compliance compared to castration. They do not suppress testosterone secretion and it is claimed that libido, overall physical performance and bone mineral density (BMD) are preserved (29). Although they have not been directly compared in a monotherapy setting, the severity of pharmacological side-effects, namely gynaecomastia, breast pain and hot flashes, appears similar for the three available non-steroidal anti-androgens. However, there are differences in non-pharmacological side-effects, with bicalutamide showing a more favourable safety and tolerability profile than nilutamide and flutamide (30). All three agents share a common liver toxicity and liver enzymes must be monitored regularly.

12.4.2.1 Nilutamide
There are no comparative trials of nilutamide monotherapy with castration or with other anti-androgens.

A large randomised controlled trial in 457 patients with M1 PCa showed a significant benefit for cancer-specific survival and OS with orchiectomy + nilutamide, 300 mg/day, versus orchiectomy + placebo (31). Nilutamide has recently shown encouraging results as a second-line hormonal therapy in HRPC (32,33).

Non-pharmacological side-effects are visual disturbances (i.e. delayed adaptation to darkness), alcohol intolerance, nausea, hepatotoxicity, and interstitial pneumonitis. Even if exceptional, interstitial pneumonitis is potentially life-threatening and is specific to nilutamide. Nilutamide is not licensed for monotherapy.

12.4.2.2 Flutamide
Flutamide was the first non-steroidal anti-androgen available for clinical use. Although it has been studied as monotherapy for more than 20 years, there are no dose-finding studies against a currently accepted end-point (e.g. PSA response). Flutamide is a pro-drug, and the half-life of the active metabolite is 5-6 hours, so it must be administered three times daily to maintain therapeutic serum levels. The recommended daily dosage is 750 mg (22).

Early phase II trials demonstrated the efficacy of flutamide in advanced PCa, even though the reported response rates cannot be correlated with currently recommended end-points. The main advantage shown in these small single-arm studies was the preservation of sexual function, which was maintained in up to 80% of patients with no pre-treatment erectile dysfunction. This rate has not been confirmed in the above-mentioned EORTC trial 30892 (23), in which as few as 20% of men treated with flutamide maintained sexual activity for up to 7 years.

Although several phase III studies have been conducted, the results are often difficult to evaluate because of several drawbacks, such as the use of non-standard combinations, short-term follow-up and underpowering. Of these studies, survival data for advanced PCa has been reported in only one published phase III randomised trial comparing flutamide monotherapy with CAB (34).

No significant difference in OS for flutamide or castration in patients with a PSA < 100 ng/mL (34). At a higher PSA, flutamide was inferior. However, both trials were underpowered. Results are eagerly awaited from an ongoing Swedish study, which randomised 700 patients with M1 PCa to flutamide, 250 mg three times daily, or CAB (29). The non-pharmacological side-effects of flutamide are diarrhoea and hepatotoxicity (occasionally fatal).

12.4.2.3 Bicalutamide

Dose-finding studies of bicalutamide

Early studies with bicalutamide monotherapy used the 50 mg/day dosage licensed for use in CAB. Although this dosage provided clinical benefits, it resulted in a poorer OS than with castration (median difference 97 days) (35). Subsequent dose-finding studies established that bicalutamide, 150 mg once daily, achieved a similar PSA response to castration, while maintaining a good tolerability profile (36). Accordingly, the 150 mg dosage was chosen for further evaluation as both primary and adjuvant monotherapy.

Primary monotherapy with bicalutamide

Bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, as first-line monotherapy has been compared to medical or surgical castration in two large prospective randomised trials with identical study designs, including a total of 1,435 patients with locally advanced M0 or M1 PCa (37). A pooled analysis showed:

- In M1 patients, an improvement in OS with castration, although the difference in median survival between the groups was only 6 weeks (37);
- In M0 patients (n = 480), no significant difference was noted in OS (38) based on the Kaplan-Meier test, with median survival being 63.5 months in the bicalutamide arm compared with 69.9 months in the castration one.

In two smaller randomised trials, high-dose bicalutamide was compared with CAB. In the first trial (251 patients with predominantly M1 stage), there was no apparent difference in OS (39). In the second trial (220 patients with M0 and M1 stage), there was no difference in OS for well-differentiated tumours or tumours that were only moderately well-differentiated (40) (LE: 1b). However, both studies were underpowered, and the first one has not yet been fully published.

Adjuvant therapy with bicalutamide

In the adjuvant setting, the ongoing Early Prostate Cancer Programme (EPCP) is a study comprising three different clinical trials (known as Trials 23, 24 and 25) of similar design. The programme included 8,113 patients worldwide and evaluated the efficacy and tolerability of high-dose (150 mg/day) bicalutamide versus placebo, given in addition to standard primary care (i.e. radical prostatectomy, radiotherapy or watchful waiting) in either localised PCa (T1-2, N0-X) or locally advanced PCa (T3-4, any N, or any T N+). The first combined analysis of the programme showed that, after a median follow-up of 3 years, adjuvant bicalutamide reduced the risk of objective disease progression by 42% compared with standard care alone (41).

After a median follow-up of 5.4 years, the positive effects of bicalutamide were obvious in patients with locally advanced disease (stage M0). Bicalutamide significantly improved PFS, irrespective of standard care. However, survival appeared to be reduced in patients with localised disease treated with bicalutamide versus those given placebo (42). After a median follow-up of 7.4 years, there appeared to be no benefit to PFS from the addition of bicalutamide to standard care in localised PCa, with a trend towards decreased survival in patients otherwise undergoing watchful waiting (WW) (hazard ratio [HR], 1.16; 95% CI: 0.99-1.37; p = 0.07).

The same overall results were observed in the most recent analysis of the bicalutamide treatment arm of the EPCP 24 trial (43). Bicalutamide significantly improved OS in patients receiving radiotherapy (HR, 0.65; 95% CI: 0.44-0.95; p = 0.03), mainly due to a lower risk of PCa-related deaths. Bicalutamide produced a trend towards improved OS in patients with locally advanced disease otherwise undergoing WW (HR, 0.81; 95% CI:0.66-1.01; p = 0.06). No survival difference was evident in the subgroup undergoing radical prostatectomy (42).

Even though the EPCP is a combination of three trials and among the largest conducted in PCa patients, it is difficult to draw clear conclusions because of the following problems with the protocols:

- The three trials grouped for analysis were different in terms of patients; 80% of patients underwent prostatectomy in Trial 23 versus 13% in Trial 25. In addition, treatment duration was 2 years in Trial 23, but treatment was prolonged until progression in Trials 24 and 25.
- The OS benefit claimed with radiotherapy is mainly driven by a respiratory or cardiovascular improvement, and not by a cancer-specific survival benefit, which is different to other trials with LHRH agonists.
- Furthermore, the EPCP trials are underpowered for locally advanced patients, compared with oriented trials such as the Bolla (44) or Pilepich (45) trials.

- Direct protocol analysis revealed quite different results, such as those from EPCP Trial 23 (80% prostatectomy, 19% radiotherapy) (46). At a median 7.7 years of follow-up, no PFS benefit was observed (HR, 1.00; 95% CI: 0.84-1.19; p = 0.991). Likewise, OS did not differ. Even after stratifying for disease stage, no PFS benefit was apparent.
- The OS benefit must be balanced by the very prolonged (mainly permanent) use of bicalutamide combined with radiotherapy in contrast to the more limited use of agonists (6 months to 3 years).
- Although a QoL benefit has been claimed, in fact a QoL benefit cannot be demonstrated because none of the EPCP trials used a systematic, validated QoL questionnaire. The only available data were derived from a specific questionnaire and a limited population. The observed benefit was only significant for physical capacity and sexual interest (not function!). For all other QoL items (emotional well-being, vitality, social function, pain, activity limitation and bed disability), there was no difference compared with castration (38). The breast problems related to bicalutamide are also important, as they can lead to a 16.4% treatment cessation (47).

The lack of data means that many questions are still debatable with bicalutamide, such as the practical management after progression under bicalutamide. Furthermore, the clear trend (even if not statistically significant) towards a decreased OS in localised disease otherwise treated with WW is a clear argument against the use of bicalutamide in such situations (42). The mechanisms involved remain unclear.

Conclusions for the use of bicalutamide in primary and adjuvant therapy

High-dose bicalutamide has emerged as an alternative to castration for patients with locally advanced (M0) if PFS is the target, and in highly selected, well-informed cases of M1 PCa with a low PSA.
Bicalutamide monotherapy should be avoided in patients with localised PCa.
The expected benefit of bicalutamide for QoL compared with castration is far from being proven.
The survival benefit observed with adjuvant use after radiotherapy in locally advanced PCa must be considered with caution, as the EPCP trials do not have the clear power of trials conducted with LHRH agonists. The lack of any direct comparison between both bicalutamide and LHRH agonists in combination with radiotherapy leads to a major limitation of any guidelines, which should therefore be based on unquestionable trials, which are mainly those with analogues

Side-effects of bicalutamide

Non-pharmacological side-effects are mainly gynaecomastia (70%) and breast pain (68%), which may be prevented by anti-oestrogens (49-51), prophylactic radiotherapy (52), or treatment with surgical mastectomy or radiotherapy (53). However, bicalutamide clearly offers bone protection compared with LHRH analogues and probably LHRH antagonists (54,55).

12.5 Combination therapies

*12.5.1 **Complete androgen blockade (CAB)***

Although castration reduces serum testosterone levels by up to 95%, an intraprostatic androgen stimulus is sustained by the conversion of circulating androgens of adrenal origin into DHT within the prostate cells. However, the action of these adrenal androgens can be blocked by the addition of an anti-androgen to either surgical or pharmacological castration, a concept known as complete (or maximal or total) androgen blockade (CAB).

The many studies comparing CAB with monotherapy (castration through LHRH analogues) have produced contrasting results (56). According to the most recent systematic reviews and meta-analyses, at a follow-up of 5 years, CAB appears to provide a small survival advantage (< 5%) versus monotherapy (57-60) (LE: 1a). However, some of the largest trials included were methodologically flawed (61). It remains debatable whether this small advantage, if any, is useful in everyday clinical practice, as the survival benefit seems limited to patients taking non-steroidal antiandrogens (62) and only appears after 5 years of follow-up.

Gastrointestinal, ophthalmological, and haematological side-effects are worse with CAB. Although LHRH analogues and non-steroidal anti-androgens have the highest estimated quality-adjusted survival, there is an incremental cost of more than US$1 million per quality-adjusted life-year for CAB over orchiectomy alone.

*12.5.2 **Minimal androgen blockade (or peripheral androgen blockade)***

Minimal androgen blockade is produced by combining finasteride with a non-steroidal anti-androgen. Finasteride reduces intraprostatic levels of DHT by inhibiting 5-α-reductase, while the anti-androgen competes with the binding of the residual DHT to its receptor. This enables testosterone levels to be maintained within normal ranges to ensure acceptable sexual function and a reasonable QoL.

Several phase II trials (63-67) have evaluated the association of finasteride and flutamide, either given together or sequentially, using the PSA response rate in patients with advanced or biochemically recurrent PCa. Notwithstanding the small sample and short follow-up, nearly all patients experienced a substantial decline in PSA (by up to 96% compared with the baseline level at entry). In a long-term follow-up of one study, stronger end-points were reported, including castration-free survival (median: 37 months), androgen independent PCa-free survival (median: 48.6 months) and OS (65% at 5 years). These results indicated that combination therapy was able to induce an overall period of hormone-responsive disease exceeding 4 years (68). In all these trials, sexual function was preserved in 55-86% of men studied.

The preliminary data make minimal androgen blockade a very attractive option in the management of patients for whom QoL is the main concern. However, while awaiting the results of follow-up and larger controlled trials, this treatment should be considered investigational.

12.5.3 ***Intermittent versus continuous ADT***

For reasons beginning to be clarified, long-term CAB, which stimulates prostate cell apoptosis, fails to eliminate the entire malignant cell population. Thus, after a variable period (averaging 24 months), the tumour inevitably relapses, characterised by an castrate-independent state of growth. Experimental data indicate that castrate-independent progression may begin early after the administration of hormonal therapy, coinciding with the cessation of androgen-induced differentiation of stem cells (69). It has therefore been suggested that stopping androgen deprivation prior to progression of androgen-independent cells would mean any subsequent tumour growth would be solely sustained by the proliferation of androgen-dependent stem cells. The stem cells should therefore be susceptible once again to androgen withdrawal. Thus, intermittent androgen blockade (IAD) would delay the emergence of the androgen-independent clone. It should be noted that this rationale has been developed mainly through models (e.g. the Shionoggi model), which may be significantly different from the behaviour of total tumour in men.

Other possible benefits of IAD include the preservation of QoL in off-treatment periods and a reduction in the cost of treatment.

Phase II results

A detailed systematic review was recently published (70), with no other trials published since this review. According to the review, several phase II trials demonstrated the feasibility of IAB in metastatic or biochemically recurrent disease (70). Both PSA response rates and symptom improvement were similar to those seen with CAB. However, these trials included very heterogeneous patients and used different PSA thresholds for decisions regarding castration. This should be borne in mind when considering the main findings.

- Most patients were treated with an LHRH agonist, with or without an anti-androgen.
- The cycle lengths were quite stable regarding the off-treatment periods.
- Testosterone recovery, when tested, was frequent during the first cycle, but tended to decrease during subsequent cycles.
- Early occurrence of early refractory status was quite uncommon.
- Overall tolerability was acceptable, and sometimes there was a QoL benefit, especially for sexual function.

These findings suggest a potential benefit for IAD. However, randomised trials are required to clarify the potential survival benefit suggested by animal models.

Randomised controlled trials

Overall, eight randomised trials are underway, only some of which have published findings. Most of the trials included a mixed patient population of both locally advanced and metastatic disease. Only three trials included only metastatic patients, and two trials only relapsing patients. The two largest trials each contained more than 1,300 patients, with one trial focused only on metastatic patients (SWOG 9346) and the other on relapsing patients after radiotherapy (SWOG PR7). Few fully published trials are available, some are pending. But, all available results are similar so far, allowing the inclusion of abstract-only references. A short summary of the most important published findings from these trials follows.

- The South West Oncology Group (SWOG) trial 9346 randomised 1,134 men with stage D2 PCa to intermittent and continuous ADT after 7 months' induction ADT with PSA reduction < 4 ng/mL. A very preliminary analysis has identified no significant differences with regard to survival between treatment groups (71). A PSA reduction to < 0.2 ng/mL, < 4 ng/mL and > 4 ng/mL was identified as a significant prognostic factor with regard to survival, achieving 13 months, 44 months and 75 months, respectively. In a similar patient population and using a quite similar protocol, no difference was observed in OS or in PFS between IAD and CAB in 173 randomised patients (72), with a mean follow-up of 47 months. No QoL benefit was observed in any treatment arm. The same lack of difference in OS was seen with CPA in another randomized study of 366 patients (73), after a mean follow-up of 66 months.

- The largest trial available so far (still unpublished) has been presented at several meetings (74). A total of 1,386 patients relapsing after radiotherapy, given as either primary treatment or for relapsing patients after surgery, were randomized to continuous ADT or intermittent ADT. Continuous treatment was for a fixed 8-month period. Intermittent ADT was stopped when PSA < 4 ng/mL and resumed when above 10 ng/mL. After a median 7 years of follow-up, the median OS was 9.1 years in the continuous arm and 8.8 years in the intermittent arm (HR: 1.02:; 95% CI= 0.86-1.21).
- In other studies (75,76) of mixed populations of locally advanced and metastatic PCa, there has also been no evidence found of decreased survival using IAD. The larger study (76) included 478 patients with either M1 disease (40%) or N+ (N1-3) disease. In this study, 335 patients were randomised to IAD after 6 months of CAB if the PSA decreased to < 4 ng/mL or a decrease of > 90% was observed. The mean initial level of PSA was 158 ng/mL in the IAD-treated group and 139 ng/mL in the CAB-treated group. In the IAD group, treatment was resumed if the PSA rose > 10 ng/mL and stopped when it decreased < 4 ng/mL. However, after a median follow-up of 50.5 months, no significant difference was observed in the median PFS (16.6 months in the IAD group vs 11.5 months in the CAB group, p = 0.17) in either the total study population or in the N+ or M1 subgroup populations. In the IAD arm, 88% of patients were off-treatment for more than 50% of the time and normalised their testosterone in a mean of 70 days after stopping treatment.
- To date, the largest fully published trial (n = 766) has been carried out by the South European Uro-Oncological Group (SEUG) (77). Patients followed an induction regimen of 3 months, in which CPA was given for 2 weeks followed by monthly LHRH + CPA. Patients with a PSA < 4 ng/mL or a PSA decrease > 80% were randomised to IAD or CAB. In the IAD-treated group, treatment was resumed, if the PSA level rose to ≥ 10 ng/mL for symptomatic patients. For patients whose PSA level dropped to < 80% of the initial value, therapy was restarted when the PSA level rose to ≥ 20% above the nadir. The primary end-point was time to progression. After a median follow-up of 51 months, there was no difference in either time to progression (HR: 0.81; p = 0.11) or OS (HR: 0.99). Metastatic status and PSA at randomisation were associated with specific death rates. No overall QoL benefit was seen, except for more frequent side-effects in the CAB-treated group. However, there was a clear benefit for improved sexual function in the IAD group versus the CAB group (28% sexually active vs 10% at 15 months after randomisation, respectively). After follow-up for a median of 7 years, it should be highlighted that both the IAD treatment arm and the continuous treatment arm showed similar non-significant specific death increases. This finding suggests that, even if continuous treatment provides a specific survival difference compared to IAD, the survival difference is completely counterbalanced by the increased specific toxicity of continuous ADT, which therefore results in a lack of difference in OS survival, the increasing of which remains the main objective.

Alternative IAD regimen

Recently, a published randomised trial (n = 129) suggested an alternative IAD regimen, which alternated fixed 6-month periods of CAB treatment and surveillance (78). The PSA response was not used to guide treatment in the heterogeneous study population. After a mean follow-up of 44.8 months, no difference was observed in OS, cancer-specific survival or PFS. The QoL also showed no difference between the two groups, except that painkillers were required more often in the IAD arm, and the ability to get and maintain an erection was better in the IAD arm.

Other benefits of IAD

Intermittent androgen deprivation has not been shown to be associated with prolonged hormone-sensitive status or OS increase. This modality is well accepted by patients, urologists and oncologists. Although the QoL benefit is less than expected or absent, except in two studies (73,74), IAD is better tolerated and sometimes benefits sexual functioning (76,77). Other possible long-term benefits, which are not clearly proven, include bone protection (79,80) and/or a protective effect against metabolic syndrome. Testosterone recovery is seen in most studies (70), leading to an intermittent castration (not just an intermittent treatment delivery).

Optimal threshold for stopping or resuming ADT

The optimal thresholds at which ADT must be stopped or resumed are empirical (70). The best candidates for IAD have still not been completely defined (70,80), but are probably patients with locally advanced or relapsing disease, provided a perfect response is obtained (*see below*). Nevertheless, several points are clear (70,81):

- Because IAD is based on intermittent castration, only drugs leading to castration are suitable for use in IAD.
- It is unclear if an LHRH agonist may be used alone, as published experiences are based on CAB. An LHRH antagonist might be a valid alternative, provided clear results are obtained from randomised trials.

- The initial (induction) cycle must last between 6 and 9 months, otherwise testosterone recovery is unlikely.
- The treatment is stopped only if patients have fulfilled all the following criteria:
  - well-informed and compliant patient
  - no clinical progression, i.e. a clear PSA response, empirically defined as a PSA < 4 ng/mL in metastatic disease, or 0.5 ng/mL in relapsing disease.
- Strict follow-up must be applied once treatment has stopped, with clinical examination every 3-6 months. The more advanced the disease, the closer is the follow-up). The PSA level should be measured by the same laboratory to ensure standardization of testing.
- Treatment is resumed when the patient reaches either a clinical progression, or a PSA value above a predetermined, empirically fixed threshold. This is usually 4-10 ng/mL in non-metastatic situations or 10-15 ng/mL in metastatic patients (80).
- The same treatment is used for at least 3-6 months.
- Subsequent cycles of treatment are based on the same rules until the first sign is seen of hormone-refractory status.

In conclusion, IAD is currently widely offered to patients with PCa in various clinical settings, and its status should no longer be regarded as investigational (LE: 2).

Increased duration of off-treatment periods in IAD

There have recent attempts to increase the duration of off-treatment periods in IAD. Although hormonal manipulation using finasteride (82) has been suggested, finasteride has never been tested in randomised trials and its use in PCa has been recently questioned (83). However, there have been trials of non-hormonal compounds, including a COX-2 inhibitor (84) and anti-angiogenic drugs (85). In a study of the anti-angiogenic drug, thalidomide, 159 patients, who had relapsed after local treatment, were randomized to an LHRH antagonist for 6 months, followed by placebo or thalidomide, 200 mg daily. When PSA progression occurred, a crossover was done using the same regimen. A non-significant difference was observed in the time-to-PSA progression during the first treatment round (15 vs 9.6 months). However, after crossover, the time-to-PSA progression showed a highly significant difference (17.1 vs 6.6 months, p = 0.0002) in favour of the thalidomide treatment arm. This finding was not linked to any hormonal effect. This observation provides proof of principle and warrants further larger studies, particularly because thalidomide required dose reduction in 47% of patients due to intolerability.

12.5.4 ***Immediate versus deferred ADT***

There is still controversy over the most appropriate time to introduce hormonal therapy in patients with advanced PCa. Should ADT be given immediately upon diagnosis in locally advanced and asymptomatic metastatic disease or deferred until there are signs and symptoms of clinical progression? (This has already been partly discussed in Section 8.3.)

The controversy over whether only immediate treatment with ADT has a positive effect on survival and QoL has arisen because of the lack of properly conducted randomised controlled trials. Many trials are methodologically flawed because of small size and underpowering, heterogeneity of patient enrolment with advanced PCa (i.e. locally advanced, nodal and metastatic stages of disease), and variation in the hormonal treatments given and in the follow-up schedules and modalities used.

Bearing these limitations in mind, the evidence for immediate versus deferred ADT is provided by four systematic reviews of the literature (including a meta-analysis). A report by the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR) indicated a possible survival advantage for early ADT in single studies where hormonal treatment was the primary therapy (86). Furthermore, androgen suppression was shown to be the most cost-effective therapy if initiated after patients had experienced symptoms from metastatic disease (87).

The Cochrane Library review extracted four, good-quality, randomised, controlled trials, i.e. namely VACURG I and II studies, the MRC trial and the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) 7887 study, which were all conducted in the pre-PSA era. The studies included patients with advanced PCa, who received early versus deferred ADT, either as primary therapy or adjuvant to radical prostatectomy (but not to radiotherapy). Early androgen suppression significantly reduced disease progression and complication rates due to progression itself. However, it did not improve cancer-specific survival and provided a relatively small benefit in OS, with an absolute risk reduction of 5.5% after 10 years (88). Finally, a systematic review was published last year, highlighting again the benefit of immediate versus deferred ADT in term of overall survival (+ 10%) and specific survival (+ 20%) (89). In the PSA era, the EORTC 30891 study (90) has produced the same results, namely a small benefit in OS, but no cancer-specific survival benefit. Furthermore, only young patients with a high PSA are likely to clearly benefit.

Based on a systematic review of the literature, recently published ASCO guidelines on initial hormonal

treatment for androgen-sensitive, metastatic, recurrent or progressive PCa concluded that no recommendation can be made on when to start hormonal therapy in advanced asymptomatic PCa, until data becomes available from studies using modern diagnostic and biochemical tests and standardised follow-up schedules (48).

Based on meta-analyses published, treatment appears to be most cost-effective when started after the onset of symptoms. Based on exploratory analysis, treatment with anti-androgen monotherapy does not lead to a survival benefit in men with localised PCa managed with non-definitive therapy, and the impact is still questionable after external beam therapy. This was explored in detail above with regard to the EPCP trials (*see Section* 12.4.2.3).

For asymptomatic patients with locally or regionally advanced PCa who undergo radiotherapy, several randomised controlled trials have produced good evidence to show that concomitant and/or adjuvant hormonal therapy provides longer time-to-disease progression and/or longer OS than radiotherapy alone followed by androgen suppression at progression (*see Section* 12.8) (LE: 1b).

The detailed discussion on immediate or deferred ADT combined with surgery or radiation therapy is discussed in Section 8.3.

12.6 Indications for hormonal therapy

Table 18 lists the indications for hormonal therapy.

Table 18: Indications for hormonal therapy

Hormonal therapy Indications for castration	**Benefits**	**LE**
M1 symptomatic	To palliate symptoms and to reduce the risk for potentially catastrophic sequelae of advanced disease (spinal cord compression, pathological fractures, ureteral obstruction, extraskeletal metastasis).	1b
	Even without a controlled randomised trial, this is the standard of care and must be applied and considered as level 1 evidence.	1
M1 asymptomatic	Immediate castration to defer progression to a symptomatic stage and prevent serious disease progression-related complications.	1b
	An active clinical surveillance protocol may be an acceptable option in clearly informed patients if survival is the main objective.	3
N+	Immediate castration to prolong PFS and even OS.	1b
	Might be questioned in single micrometastasis after extended lymph node dissection and radical prostatectomy.	3
Locally advanced M0	Immediate castration to improve cancer-free survival.	1b
- Locally advanced disease treated with radiotherapy	High-risk d'Amico: combined and prolonged ADT.	1a
	Intermediate-risk d'Amico: - If low dose (< 75 Gy) radiotherapy: 6 months of ADT; - If high dose (> 75 Gy) radiotherapy: ADT questionable.	1b 2a
- Locally advanced disease treated with radical prostatectomy	No benefit in term of survival either as neoadjuvant or adjuvant treatment.	3
- Locally advanced asymptomatic unfit for local definitive treatment	Limited OS improvement not related to a CSS benefit (90).	1a
	CAB compared compared to castration monotherapy: survival benefit (<5% after 5 years of follow-up).	1a
Anti-androgens		
Short-term administration	To reduce the risk of the 'flare-up' phenomenon in patients with advanced metastatic disease who are to receive an LHRH agonist (91,92).	1b

Non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy	Primary monotherapy as an alternative to castration in patients with locally advanced PCa (T3-4, any N, or any T).	2a
	No place in localised disease as a single-treatment modality.	
	Combined with radiotherapy: no clear recommendation is possible at the present time.	
	Combined with radical prostatectomy: no place so far in an adjuvant setting.	

12.7 Contraindications for various therapies

Table 19 lists the contraindications for various therapies.

Table 19: Contraindications for various therapies.

Therapy	Contraindications
Bilateral orchiectomy	Psychological reluctance to undergo surgical castration.
Oestrogens	Known cardiovascular disease.
LHRH agonists alone	Patients with metastatic disease at high risk for clinical 'flare up' phenomenon.
Anti-androgens	Localised PCa as primary therapy.

12.8 Outcome

Outcome depends on the stage and grade of disease at diagnosis.

In M1 cases, the median OS ranges between 28 and 53 months (9). Only 7% of patients with metastatic cancer treated with hormonal therapy have been reported alive at 10 years or longer (93). Survival is likely to depend on the PSA level at diagnosis, the Gleason score, the volume of metastatic disease, and the presence of bony symptoms.

In locally advanced M0 patients, the median OS is frequently reported to exceed 10 years (57).

12.9 Side-effects, QoL, and cost of hormonal therapy

The many deleterious side-effects of long-term ADT have been well known for years. Some can have a detrimental effect on QoL, especially in young men, while others may contribute to an increased risk of serious health concerns associated with ageing.

Many patients with PCa for whom long-term ADT is indicated are still young and physically and sexually active. Quality of life is an issue of paramount importance when considering the various hormonal treatment options. Thus, in selected patients, monotherapy with a non-steroidal anti-androgen (e.g. bicalutamide) is becoming more popular because it maintains normal (or even higher) serum testosterone levels and has a good tolerability profile.

*12.9.1 **Sexual function***

Loss of libido and erectile dysfunction are well-known side-effects of hormonal therapy. The management of erectile dysfunction is not specific.

*12.9.2 **Hot flashes***

Hot flashes are probably the most common side-effect of ADT. They appear 3 months after starting ADT, persist long term in most patients and can have a significant impact on QoL in some patients. Treatments include hormonal therapy and antidepressants.

12.9.2.1 Hormonal therapy

Oestrogen-receptor modulators or low-dose oestrogen therapies, e.g. DES, 0.5-1 mg/day, reduce the frequency and severity of hot flashes. Both treatments carry a risk of cardiovascular complications (94). Soya phytoestrogens have shown efficacy for hot flashes in breast cancer patients (95), but have not been evaluated in men. Progesterone-based treatments, such as megestrol acetate, medroxyprogesterone acetate and CPA, have also demonstrated efficacy, with 80% of patients showing an improvement with CPA (96) or chlormadinone (97).

12.9.2.2 Antidepressants

Antidepressants may have some efficacy against hot flashes, including venlafaxine (a non-specific selective noradrenaline and serotonin reuptake inhibitor), which has shown efficacy in breast cancer patients, and the

selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, sertraline, which appears to be effective in men with PCa.

Recently, a randomised trial (n = 919) compared three drugs: venlafaxine, 75 mg daily, medroxyprogesterone, 20 mg daily, or CPA, 100 mg daily (98). After 6 months of LHRH, only 311 men had significant hot flushes and were randomized. Venlafaxine was clearly inferior compared to the hormonal agents, which showed similar efficacy to each other.

12.9.2.3 Other options

Other treatments have also been tested, including clonidine and veralipride, and even acupuncture (99). With a placebo effect influencing up to 30% of patients (100), few treatments are approved for the control of hot flashes in men with PCa. There is a lack of large, prospective, randomised controlled trials in this area.

12.9.3 ***Other systemic side-effects of ADT***

More recently, other systemic side-effects have been described and require increased attention, including bone problems, obesity and sarcopenia, lipid alterations and insulin resistance, metabolic syndrome, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease (101).

12.9.3.1 Non-metastatic bone fractures

Androgen deprivation therapy increases the risk of non-metastatic bone fracture due to increased bone turnover and decreased BMD in a time-dependent manner, and there is an increased risk of fracture of up to 45% relative risk with long-term ADT (102). This is an important side-effect, as hip fractures in men are associated with a significant risk of death (103). Increased exercise, calcium and vitamin D supplementation are protective. Bicalutamide monotherapy could also be a bone-protective method based on a small, prospective, randomised trial, including 103 patients comparing bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, or medical castration (104) (LE: 1b).

Bisphosphonates

Recently, bisphosphonates, such as pamidronate, alendronate or zoledronic acid, have been shown to increase BMD in the hip and spine by up to 7% in 1 year. The optimal regimen for zoledronic acid is unclear. One study recommends treatment every 3 weeks (105), while another trial has produced similar results with an annual injection (106). The optimal regimen is very important because of the risk of jaw necrosis, which may be both dose- and time-related (107). The initial BMD could be used to guide the choice of regimen (108). Thus, a 3-month injection might be given in osteoporotic patients for whom a yearly injection is likely to provide insufficient protection.

As previously observed in breast cancer, a significant benefit in OS has recently been demonstrated for biphosphonates in PCa, particularly oral first-generation clodronate versus placebo. After at least 10 years of follow-up, an absolute 8% increase in OS was observed at 8 years in a clodronate-treated group of PCa patients, who had an overall survival of 22% versus 14% in the placebo group (109). The benefit for OS applied only to M1 patients, but not to M0 patients. Although this is a post-hoc analysis and the results are surprising because clodronate has no bone protective effect in PCa, this study again highlights the potential impact of bone-targeted drugs and the need for continuous trials, e.g. the Zeus trial, which uses a more recent biphosphonate.

Denosumab

In 2009, a major advance in bone protection was made with the introduction of denosumab, a fully human monoclonal antibody against RANKL, which is a key mediator for osteoclast function, activation and survival. A total of 1,468 men with non-metastatic PCa receiving ADT were randomised to denosumab, 60 mg subcutaneous every 6 months, or placebo (110). The primary end-point was the percentage change in lumbar spine BMD at 2 years. Denosumab was associated with 5.6% increase in the lumbar BMD versus 1% decrease in the placebo arm. There were also significant BMD increases at the total hip, femoral neck and distal third of the radius. The vertebral fracture rate was less in the denosumab-treated group versus the placebo-treated group (1.5% vs 3.9%, p = 0.006). This benefit was similar whatever the age (< or > 70 years), the duration or type of ADT, the initial BMD, the patient's weight or the initial BMI. This benefit was not associated with any significant toxicity, as the rates of adverse events were the same in both groups, without any jaw osteonecrosis or delayed healing in vertebral fractures. Denosumab may therefore represent a major advance in bone protection.

In addition, this drug has been shown to postpone bone metastases in non-metastatic patients in a large RCT of 1,432 patients (111). Denosumab, 120 mg every 4 weeks, increased the time to bone metastasis-free survival by 4.2 months compared to placebo, but was accompanied by the side effects of jaw necrosis in 5% of treated patients versus 0% in the placebo arm and hypocalcaemia in 2% of treated patients versus less than 1% in the placebo arm. However, the increase in bone metastasis-free survival had no impact on overall

survival, which was 43.9 months in the denosumab group compared to 44.8 months in the placebo group. These results highlight the potential importance of targeting the bone microenvironment. However, the daily use of denosumab remains questionable because of related side effects and cost.

Lifestyle changes before starting long-term ADT
Patients should be encouraged to adopt lifestyle changes, e.g. increased physical activity, cessation of smoking, decreased alcohol consumption and normalisation of their body mass index (BMI). A precise evaluation of BMD should be performed by dual emission X-ray absorptiometry before starting long-term ADT. An initial low BMD (T-score > 2.5, or > 1 if other risk factors are present) indicates a high risk of subsequent non-metastatic fracture, suggesting the need for early preventive bisphosphonate therapy.

Obesity and sarcopenia
Obesity and sarcopenia are common and often occur early, during the first year of ADT. There is an expected increase in body fat mass by up to 10%, and a decrease in lean tissue mass by up to 3% (112). Both changes are linked to an increased risk of fracture.

12.9.3.2 Lipid levels
Lipid alterations are common and may occur as early as the first 3 months of treatment (112). Androgen deprivation therapy also decreases insulin sensitivity and increases fasting plasma insulin levels, which is a marker of insulin resistance. Once again, exercise must be recommended as a protective tool.

12.9.3.3 Metabolic syndrome
Metabolic syndrome is an association of independent cardiovascular disease risk factors, often associated with insulin resistance. The risk factors include:

- waist circumference > 102 cm;
- serum triglyceride > 1.7 mmol/L;
- blood pressure > 130/80 mmHg;
- HDL cholesterol < 1 mmol/L;
- glycaemia > 6.1 mmol/L.

The prevalence of metabolic syndrome is higher during ADT compared with untreated men (113).

12.9.3.4 Cardiovascular disease
Androgen deprivation therapy has been associated with an increased risk of diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular disease, and myocardial infarction in several studies (114).

Analysis of the RTOG 92-02 data has confirmed an increase in cardiovascular risk, which is unrelated to the duration of ADT. No increase in cardiovascular mortality was found (115). Similar findings were observed in the RTOG 94-08 trial (116). These observations have been much discussed because no increase in cardiovascular mortality has been reported in trials RTOG 8531, 8610, 9202, EORTC 30891 or EORTC 22863. However, an increase in cardiovascular mortality has been reported in patients suffering from previous congestive heart failure or myocardial infarction in a retrospective database analysis (117).

In summary, since 6 or less months of ADT may already be associated with increased cardiovascular morbidity the FDA issued a warning and a consensus paper from the American Heart, Cancer Society and Urological Associations was published (118). However, to date, the data on cardiovascular mortality remain inconsistent. Preventive advice is associated with non-specific measures, such as loss of weight, increased exercise, improved nutrition and the cessation of smoking.

12.10 Quality of life (QoL)

There is little data on QoL during hormone treatment. The only large, prospective, randomised study is a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial including 739 patients with M1 PCa, which compared orchiectomy + flutamide versus orchiectomy + placebo. The QoL was assessed in the first 6 months of treatment. Combined therapy resulted in a lower QoL, with statistically significant differences in two QoL parameters, namely more frequent diarrhoea and worse emotional functioning, compared with castration alone (119).

A prospective, non-randomised, observational study, which included 144 patients with locally advanced PCa or PSA failure after definitive local treatment, found that patients who received immediate ADT (by means of bilateral orchiectomy, LHRH agonist or CAB) reported a lower overall QoL (increased fatigue, emotional distress, and decreased physical functioning) than patients in the deferred hormone treatment arm (120) (LE: 2a).

A retrospective, non-randomised study included 431 patients with stage PCa who received orchiectomy or LHRH agonists as their primary therapy within 12 months of initial diagnosis. The study

assessed health-related quality of life (HRQoL) outcomes at 12-months' follow-up. Men receiving LHRH agonists reported more worry and physical discomfort and poorer overall health, and were less likely to believe themselves free of cancer than were orchiectomised patients. The stage at diagnosis had no significant independent effect on health outcome. However, the study was underpowered (121) (LE: 2b).

A recent, small, randomised, controlled trial evaluated the HRQoL of patients with non-localised PCa allocated to leuprorelin, goserelin, CPA or no treatment at 1-year follow-up. Both sexual and cognitive function significantly declined in men on all forms of androgen suppression, while emotional distress significantly increased in those assigned to CPA or no treatment (122) (LE: 1b).

Intermittent androgen deprivation may be associated with an improved overall QoL based on the normal testosterone levels during off-treatment periods. Until recently, the results were inconclusive, showing either no benefit, or only a marginal one, in QoL. However, recent results from the JPR7 trial have shown a clear benefit for QoL (74).

As for LHRH agonists, QoL has been evaluated in the previously mentioned studies of bicalutamide monotherapy using a specific non-validated questionnaire. At 12 months, bicalutamide showed a significant advantage over castration in the domains of physical capacity and sexual interest (not sexual function) (38) (LE: 1b).

A further post-hoc analysis, including only patients with sexual interest at study entry, found that significantly more patients receiving bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, maintained their interest in sex and felt that they were still sexually attractive (123,124), or had a preserved libido and erectile function compared to castration (125).

The most common side-effects during non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy are gynaecomastia and breast pain, which are caused by an imbalance in the androgen-to-oestrogen ratio within breast tissue. In bicalutamide studies, these events were reported by up to 66% and 73% of patients, respectively, and may have led to treatment cessation in 16.4% of patients.

12.11 Cost-effectiveness of hormonal therapy options

A recent formal meta-analysis and literature review evaluated the cost-effectiveness of various long-term androgen suppression options in advanced PCa (e.g. bilateral orchiectomy, DES, LHRH-agonist, non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy, and CAB using non-steroidal anti-androgens).

For the analysis, a sophisticated statistical model was generated, assuming the base case at entry to be a 65-year-old man with clinically evident local recurrence of PCa and no distant metastases, followed for a 20-year time horizon. The study concluded that, for men who can accept it, bilateral orchiectomy is the most cost-effective form of ADT providing a higher quality-adjusted survival, while CAB is the least economically attractive option, yielding small health benefits for a high relative cost. Furthermore, the greatest QoL gains and least costs may be obtained by starting ADT when symptoms from distant metastases have occurred (87) (LE: 1a).

Finally, once ADT is started, if a clear response is obtained (*see Section* 12.3.3), then IAD might be a useful way to lower treatment costs.

12.12 Conclusions and guidelines for hormonal therapy in prostate cancer	LE
In advanced PCa, androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) delays progression, prevents potentially catastrophic complications, and palliates symptoms effectively, but does not prolong survival.	1b
In advanced PCa, all forms of castration used as monotherapy (e.g. orchiectomy, LHRH and DES) have equivalent efficacy.	1b
Non-steroidal anti-androgen monotherapy (e.g. bicalutamide) is an alternative to castration in patients with locally advanced disease.	2a
In metastatic PCa, the addition of a non-steroidal anti-androgen to castration (CAB) results in a small advantage in OS over castration alone, but is associated with increased adverse events, reduced QoL, and high costs.	1a
In metastatic PCa, ADT should only be offered to carefully selected patients.	2a
In advanced PCa, immediate ADT (given at diagnosis) significantly reduces disease progression, as well as the complication rate due to progression itself, compared with deferred ADT (delivered at symptomatic progression). However, the survival benefit is at best marginal and not related to cancer-specific survival.	1b
Bilateral orchiectomy might be the most cost-effective form of ADT, especially if initiated after the occurrence of symptoms from metastatic disease.	3

12.13 References

1. Huggins C, Hodges CV. Studies on prostatic cancer. I. The effect of castration, of estrogen and of androgen injection on serum phosphatase in metastatic carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2P 2):948-51; discussion 952.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905923
2. Huggins C, Stevens RE Jr, Hodges CV. Studies on prostate cancer. II. The effect of castration on advanced carcinoma of the prostate gland. Arch Surg 1941;43:209-23.
3. McLeod DG. Hormonal therapy: historical perspective to future directions. Urology 2003 Feb;61(2 Suppl 1):3-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12667881
4. Walsh PC. Physiologic basis for hormonal therapy in carcinoma of the prostate. Urol Clin North Am 1975 Feb;2(1):125-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/48206
5. Oefelein MG, Feng A, Scolieri MJ, et al. Reassessment of the definition of castrate levels of testosterone: implications for clinical decision making. Urology 2000 Dec;56(6):1021-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11113751
6. Desmond AD, Arnold AJ, Hastie KJ. Subcapsular orchiectomy under local anaesthesia. Technique, results and implications. Br J Urol 1988 Feb;61(2):143-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3349279
7. Limonta P, Montagnani MM, Moretti RM. LHRH analogues as anticancer agents: pituitary and extrapituitary sites of action. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 2001 Apr;10(4):709-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11281820
8. Morote J, Orsola A, Planas J, et al. Redefining clinically significant castration levels in patients with prostate cancer receiving continuous androgen deprivation therapy. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 1): 1290-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17698136
9. Seidenfeld J, Samson DJ, Hasselblad V, et al. Single-therapy androgen suppression in men with advanced prostate cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ann Intern Med 2000 Apr;132(7):566-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10744594
10. Bubley GJ. Is the flare phenomenon clinically significant? Urology 2001 Aug;58(2 Suppl 1):5-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11502435
11. McLeod DG, Zinner N, Tomera K, et al. A phase 3, multicentre, open-label, randomized study of abarelix versus leuprolide acetate in men with prostate cancer. Urology 2001 Nov;58(5):756-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11711355
12. Trachtenberg J, Gittleman M, Steidle C, et al. A phase 3, multicentre, open label, randomized study of abarelix versus leuprolide plus daily antiandrogen in men with prostate cancer. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1670-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912385
13. Klotz L, Boccon-Gibod L, Shore ND, et al. The efficacy and safety of degarelix: a 12-month, comparative, randomized, open-label, parallel-group phase III study in patients with prostate cancer. BJU Int 2008 Dec;102(11):1531-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19035858
14. Crawford ED, Tombal B, Miller K, et al. A phase III extension trial with a 1-arm crossover from leuprolide to degarelix: comparison of gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist and antagonist effect on prostate cancer. J Urol 2011 Sep;186(3):889-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21788033
15. Oh WK. The evolving role of estrogen therapy in prostate cancer. Clin Prostate Cancer 2002 Sep;1(2):81-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15046698
16. Scherr DS, Pitts WR Jr. The non-steroidal effects of diethylstilbestrol: the rationale for androgen deprivation therapy without estrogen deprivation in the treatment of prostate cancer. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1703-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532759
17. Hedlund PO, Johansson R, Damber JE, et al; SPCG-5 STUDY GROUP. Significance of pretreatment cardiovascular morbidity as a risk factor during treatment with parenteral oestrogen or combined androgen deprivation of 915 patients with metastasized prostate cancer: evaluation of cardiovascular events in a randomized trial. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2011 Nov;45(5):346-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21627403

18. Klotz L, McNeill I, Fleshner N. A phase 1-2 trial of diethylstilbestrol plus low dose warfarin in advanced prostate carcinoma. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):169-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037391
19. Farrugia D, Ansell W, Singh M, et al. Stilboestrol plus adrenal suppression as salvage treatment for patients failing treatment with luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone analogues and orchidectomy. BJU Int 2000 Jun;85(9):1069-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10848697
20. Anderson J. The role of antiandrogen monotherapy in the treatment of prostate cancer. BJU Int 2003 Mar;91(5):455-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12603397
21 Moffat LE. Comparison of Zoladex, diethylstilboestrol and cyproterone acetate treatment in advanced prostate cancer. Eur Urol 1990;18(Suppl 3):26-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2151272
22. Mahler C, Verhelst J, Denis L. Clinical pharmacokinetics of the antiandrogens and their efficacy in prostate cancer. Clin Pharmacokinet 1998 May;34(5):405-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9592622
23. Schroder FH, Whelan P, de Reijke TM, et al. Metastatic prostate cancer treated by flutamide versus cyproterone acetate. Final analysis of the 'European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer' (EORTC) Protocol 30892. Eur Urol 2004 Apr;45(4):457-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15041109
24. Geller J, Albert J, Yen SS. Treatment of advanced cancer of the prostate with megestrol acetate. Urology 1978 Nov;12(5):537-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/153029
25. Bonomi P, Pessis D, Bunting N, et al. Megestrol acetate use as primary hormonal therapy in stage D prostatic cancer. Semin Oncol 1985 Mar;12(1 Suppl 1):36-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3975650
26. Patel SR, Kvols LK, Hahn RG, et al. A phase II randomized trial of megestrol acetate or dexamethasone in treatment of hormonally refractory advanced carcinoma of the prostate. Cancer 1990 Aug;66(4):655-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2201425
27. Dawson NA, Conaway M, Halabi S, et al. A randomized study comparing standard versus moderately high dose megestrol acetate for patients with advanced prostate carcinoma. Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study 9181. Cancer 2000 Feb;88(4):825-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679652
28. Pavone-Macaluso M, Schröder FH, de Voogt HJ, et al. EORTC protocol 30761: a randomized study of non-metastatic and metastatic prostatic cancer treated by cyproterone acetate versus diethylstilbestrol and medroxyprogesterone acetate. European Organization for Research on Treatment of Cancer Urological Group. Prog Clin Biol Res 1989;303:111-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2528735
29. Iversen P. Antiandrogen monotherapy: indications and results. Urology 2002;60(3 Suppl 1):64-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12231053
30. McLeod DG. Tolerability of non-steroidal antiandrogens in the treatment of advanced prostate cancer. Oncologist 1997;2(1):18-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10388026
31. Dijkman GA, Janknegt RA, de Reijke TM, et al. Long-term efficacy and safety of nilutamide plus castration in advanced prostate cancer, and the significance of early prostate specific antigen normalization. International Anandron Study Group. J Urol 1997 Jul;158(1):160-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9186345
32. Desai A, Stadler WM, Vogelzang NJ. Nilutamide: possible utility as a second-line hormonal agent. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):1016-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744479
33. Kassouf W, Tanguay S, Aprikian AG. Nilutamide as second line hormone therapy for prostate cancer after androgen ablation fails. J Urol 2003 May;169(5):1742-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686822
34. Boccon-Gibod L, Fournier G, Bottet P, et al. Flutamide versus orchidectomy in the treatment of metastatic prostate carcinoma. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):391-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412794

35. Tyrrell CJ, Denis L, Newling D, et al. Casodex 10-200 mg daily, used as monotherapy for patients with advanced prostate cancer. An overview of the efficacy, tolerability and pharmacokinetics from three phase II dose-ranging studies. Casodex Study Group. Eur Urol 1998;33(1):39-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9471040
36. Kolvenbag GJ, Nash A. Bicalutamide dosages used in the treatment of prostate cancer. Prostate 1999 Apr;39(1):47-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10221266
37. Tyrrell CJ, Kaisary AV, Iversen P, et al. A randomized comparison of 'Casodex' (bicalutamide) 150 mg monotherapy versus castration in the treatment of metastatic and locally advanced prostate cancer. Eur Urol 1998;33(5):447-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9643663
38. Iversen P, Tyrrell CJ, Kaisary AV, et al. Bicalutamide monotherapy compared with castration in patients with non-metastatic locally advanced prostate cancer: 6.3 years of follow up. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1579-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025708
39. Fourcade RO, Chatelain C, Poterre M, et al. An open multicentre randomized study to compare the effect and safety of 'Casodex' (bicalutamide) 150 mg monotherapy with castration plus nilutamide in metastatic prostate cancer. Eur Urol 1998;33(Suppl 1):88,349A.
40. Boccardo F, Barichello M, Battaglia M, et al. Bicalutamide monotherapy versus flutamide plus goserelin in prostate cancer: updated results of a multicentric trial. Eur Urol 2002 Nov;42(5):481-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12429158
41. Wirth MP, See WA, McLeod DG, et al; Casodex Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group. Bicalutamide 150 mg in addition to standard care in patients with localized or locally advanced prostate cancer: results from the second analysis of the early prostate cancer programme at median followup of 5.4 years. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1865-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540740
42. McLeod DG, Iversen P, See WA, et al; Casodex Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group. Bicalutamide 150 mg plus standard care vs standard care alone for early prostate cancer. BJU Int 2006 Feb;97(2):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430622
43. Wirth M, Tyrrell C, Delaere K, et al. Bicalutamide (Casodex) 150 mg plus standard care in early non-metastatic prostate cancer: results from Early Prostate Cancer Trial 24 at a median 7 years' follow-up. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2007;10(1):87-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17102802
44. Bolla M, van Poppel H, Collette L, et al; European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer. Postoperative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy: a randomised controlled trial (EORTC trial 22911). Lancet 2005 Aug;366(9485):572-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16099293
45. Pilepich MV, Winter K, Lawton CA, et al. Androgen suppression adjuvant to definitive radiotherapy in prostate carcinoma-long-term results of phase III RTOG 85-31. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2005 Apr;61(5):1285-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15817329
46. McLeod DG, See WA, Klimberg I, et al. The bicalutamide 150 mg early prostate cancer program: findings of the North American trial at 7.7-year median followup. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):75-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753373
47. See WA, Tyrrell CJ; CASODEX Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group. The addition of bicalutamide 150 mg to radiotherapy significantly improves overall survival in men with locally advanced prostate cancer. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2006 Aug;132(Suppl 1):S7-S16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16896884
48. Loblaw DA, Mendelson DS, Talcott JA, et al: American Society of Clinical Oncology. American Society of Clinical Oncology recommendations for the initial hormonal management of androgen-sensitive metastatic, recurrent, or progressive prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2004 Jul;22(14):2927-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15184404
49. Boccardo F, Rubagotti A, Battaglia M, et al. Evaluation of tamoxifen and anastrozole in the prevention of gynecomastia and breast pain induced by bicalutamide monotherapy of prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2005 Feb;23(4):808-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15681525

50. Fradet Y, Egerdie B, Andersen M, et al. Tamoxifen as prophylaxis for prevention of gynaecomastia and breast pain associated with bicalutamide 150 mg monotherapy in patients with prostate cancer: a randomised, placebo-controlled, dose-response study. Eur Urol 2007 Jul;52(1):106-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17270340
51. Bedognetti D, Rubagotti A, Conti G, et al. An open, randomised, multicentre, phase 3 trial comparing the efficacy of two tamoxifen schedules in preventing gynaecomastia induced by bicalutamide monotherapy in prostate cancer patients. Eur Urol 2010 Feb;57(2):238-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19481335
52. Dicker AP. The safety and tolerability of low-dose irradiation for the management of gynaecomastia caused by antiandrogen monotherapy. Lancet Oncol 2003 Jan;4(1):30-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12517537
53. Van Poppel H, Tyrrell CJ, Haustermans K, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of radiotherapy as treatment for bicalutamide-induced gynaecomastia and breast pain in prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2005 May;47(5): 587-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15826748
54. Smith MR, Goode M, Zietman AL, et al. Bicalutamide monotherapy versus leuprolide monotherapy for prostate cancer: effects on bone mineral density and body composition. J Clin Oncol 2004 Jul; 22(13):2546-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15226323
55. Wadhwa VK, Weston R, Mistry R, et al. Long-term changes in bone mineral density and predicted fracture risk in patients receiving androgen-deprivation therapy for prostate cancer, with stratification of treatment based on presenting values. BJU Int 2009 Sep;104(6):800-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19338564
56. Moul JW. Twenty years of controversy surrounding combined androgen blockade for advanced prostate cancer. Cancer 2009 Aug;115(15):3376-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19484788
57. [No authors listed] Prostate Cancer Trialists' Collaborative Group. Maximum androgen blockade in advanced prostate cancer: an overview of the randomized trials. Lancet 2000 Apr;355(9214):1491-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10801170
58. Schmitt B, Bennett C, Seidenfeld J, et al. Maximal androgen blockade for advanced prostate cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2000;2:D001526. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796804
59. Schmitt B, Wilt TJ, Schellhammer PF, et al. Combined androgen blockade with non-steroidal antiandrogens for advanced prostate cancer: a systematic review. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):727-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306391
60. Samson DJ, Seidenfeld J, Schmitt B, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of monotherapy compared with combined androgen blockade for patients with advanced prostate carcinoma. Cancer 2002 Jul;95(2):361-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12124837
61. Collette L, Studer UE, Schroder FH, et al. Why phase III trials of maximal androgen blockade versus castration in M1 prostate cancer rarely show statistically significant differences. Prostate 2001 Jun;48(1):29-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11391684
62. Akaza H, Hinotsu S, Usami M, et al; Study Group for the Combined Androgen Blockade Therapy of Prostate Cancer. Combined androgen blockade with bicalutamide for advanced prostate cancer: long-term follow-up of a phase 3, double-blind, randomized study for survival. Cancer 2009 Aug;115(15):3437-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19536889
63. Fleshner NE, Trachtenberg J. Combination finasteride and flutamide in advanced carcinoma of the prostate: effective therapy with minimal side-effects. J Urol 1995 Nov;154(5):1645-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7563310
64. Fleshner NE, Fair WR. Anti-androgenic effects of combination finasteride plus flutamide in patients with prostatic carcinoma. Br J Urol 1996 Dec;78(6):907-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9014718
65. Ornstein DK, Rao GS, Johnson B, et al. Combined finasteride and flutamide therapy in men with advanced prostate cancer. Urology 1996 Dec;48(6):901-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8973674

66. Brufsky A, Fontaine-Rothe P, Berlane K, et al. Finasteride and flutamide as potency-sparing androgenablative therapy for advanced adenocarcinoma of the prostate. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6): 913-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187700
67. Kirby R, Robertson C, Turkes A, et al. Finasteride in association with either flutamide or goserelin as combination hormonal therapy in patients with stage M1 carcinoma of the prostate gland. International Prostate Health Council (IPHC) Trial Study Group. Prostate 1999 Jul;40(2):105-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10386471
68. Oh WK, Manola J, Bittman L, et al. Finasteride and flutamide therapy in patients with advanced prostate cancer: response to subsequent castration and long-term follow-up. Urology 2003 Jul;62(1): 99-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837431
69. Bruchovsky N, Rennie PS, Coldman AJ, et al. Effects of androgen withdrawal on the stem cell composition of the Shionogi carcinoma. Cancer Res 1990 Apr;50(8):2275-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2317815
70. Abrahamsson PA. Potential benefits of intermittent androgen suppression therapy in the treatment of prostate cancer: a systematic review of the literature. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):49-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19683858
71. Hussain M, Tangen CM, Higano C, et al; Southwest Oncology Group Trial 9346 (INT-0162). Absolute prostate-specific antigen value after androgen deprivation is a strong independent predictor of survival in new metastatic prostate cancer: data from Southwest Oncology Group Trial 9346 (INT-0162). J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug;24(24):3984-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921051
72. Mottet N, Goussard M, Loulidi S, et al. Intermittent versus continuous maximal androgen blockade in metastatic (D2) prostate cancer patients. A randomized trial. Eur Urol Suppl 2009;8(4):131, abstract 44.
73. Verhagen PCMS, Wissenburg LD, Wildhagen MF, et al. Quality of life effects of intermittent and continuous hormonal therapy by cyproterone acetate (CPA) for metastatic prostate cancer. Eur Urol Suppl 2008;7(3):206, abstract 541.
74. Crook JM, O'Callaghan CJ, Ding K, et al. A phase III randomized trial of intermittent versus continuous androgen suppression for PSA progression after radical therapy (NCIC CTG PR.7/SWOG JPR.7/CTSU JPR.7/ UK Intercontinental Trial CRUKE/01/013). J Clin Oncol 29: 2011 (suppl; abstr 4514)
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=102&abstractID=77775
75. de Leval J, Boca P, Yousef E, et al. Intermittent versus continuous total androgen blockade in the treatment of patients with advanced hormone-naive prostate cancer: results of a prospective randomized multicenter trial. Clin Prostate Cancer 2002 Dec;1(3):163-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15046691
76. Miller K, Steiner U, Lingnau A, et al. Randomised prospective study of intermittent versus continuous androgen suppression in advanced prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2007;Part 1;25(18S), abstract 5015.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=47&abstractID=33936
77. Calais da Silva FE, Bono AV, Whelan P, et al. Intermittent androgen deprivation for locally advanced and metastatic prostate cancer: results from a randomised phase 3 study of the South European Uroncological Group. Eur Urol 2009 Jun;55(6):1269-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19249153
78. Irani J, Celhay O, Hubert J, et al; Association for Research in Urological Oncology. Continuous versus six months a year maximal androgen blockade in the management of prostate cancer: a randomised study. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):382-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18339475
79. Higano C, Shields A, Wood N, et al. Bone mineral density in patients with prostate cancer without bone metastases treated with intermittent androgen suppression. Urology 2004 Dec;64(6):1182-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596194
80. Shaw GL, Wilson P, Cuzick J, et al. International study into the use of intermittent hormone therapy in the treatment of carcinoma of the prostate: a meta-analysis of 1446 patients. BJU Int 2007 May;99(5): 1056-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17346277
81. Boccon-Gibod L, Hammerer P, Madersbacher S, et al. The role of intermittent androgen deprivation in prostate cancer. BJU Int 2007 Oct;100(4):738-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17662079

82. Scholz MC, Jennrich RI, Strum SB, et al. Intermittent use of testosterone inactivating pharmaceuticals using finasteride prolongs the time off period. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1673-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600727
83. Wang Y, Gupta S, Hua V, et al. Prolongation of off-cycle interval by finasteride is not associated with survival improvement in intermittent androgen deprivation therapy in LNCaP tumor model. Prostate 2010 Feb 1;70(2):147-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19739129
84. Di Silverio F, Sciarra A, Gentile V. Etoricoxib and intermittent androgen deprivation therapy in patients with biochemical progression after radical prostatectomy. Urology 2008 May;71(5):947-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18279940
85. Figg WD, Hussain MH, Gulley JL, et al. A double-blind randomized crossover study of oral thalidomide versus placebo for androgen dependent prostate cancer treated with intermittent androgen ablation. J Urol 2009 Mar;181(3):1104-13; discussion 1113. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19167733
86. Seidenfeld J, Samson DJ, Aronson N, et al. Relative effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of methods of androgen suppression in the treatment of advanced prostate cancer. Evidence Report/Technology Assessment No. 4. AHCPR Publication No. 99-E0012, May 1999, Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, Public Health Service, US Department of Health and Human Services, Rockville, MD. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/bv.fcgi?rid=hstat1.chapter.5028
87. Bayoumi AM, Brown AD, Garber AM. Cost-effectiveness of androgen suppression therapies in advanced prostate cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000 Nov;92(21):1731-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11058616
88. Nair B, Wilt T, MacDonald R, et al. Early versus deferred androgen suppression in the treatment of1 advanced prostatic cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(1):CD003506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869665
89. Verhagen PC, Schröder FH, Collette L, et al. Does local treatment of the prostate in advanced and/or lymph node metastatic disease improve efficacy of androgen-deprivation therapy? A systematic review. Eur Urol 2010 Aug;58(2):261-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20627403
90. Studer UE, Whelan P, Albrecht W, et al. Immediate or deferred androgen deprivation for patients with prostate cancer not suitable for local treatment with curative intent: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Trial 30891. J Clin Oncol 2006 Apr;24(12):1868-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622261
91. Kuhn JM, Billebaud T, Navratil H, et al. Prevention of the transient adverse effects of a gonadotropinreleasing hormone analogue (buserelin) in metastatic prostatic carcinoma by administration of an antiandrogen (nilutamide). N Engl J Med 1989 Aug;321(7):413-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2503723
92. Crawford ED, Eisenberger MA, McLeod DG, et al. A controlled trial of leuprolide with and without flutamide in prostatic carcinoma. N Engl J Med 1989 Aug;321(7):419-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2503724
93. Tangen CM, Faulkner JR, Crawford ED, et al. Ten-year survival in patients with metastatic prostate cancer. Clin Prostate Cancer 2003 Jun;2(1):41-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15046683
94. Steiner MS, Raghow S. Antiestrogens and selective estrogen receptor modulators reduce prostate cancer risk. World J Urol 2003 May;21(1):31-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12756492
95. Smith MR. Complementary and alternative therapies for advanced prostate cancer. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 2001 Jun;15(3):559-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11525297
96. Eaton AC, McGuire N. Cyproterone acetate in treatment of post-orchidectomy hot flushes. Doubleblind cross-over trial. Lancet 1983 Dec;2(8363):1336-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6139671
97. Sakai H, Igawa T, Tsurusaki T, et al. Hot flashes during androgen deprivation therapy with luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone agonist combined with steroidal or nonsteroidal antiandrogen for prostate cancer. Urology 2009 Mar;73(3):635-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19038426

98. Irani J, Salomon L, Oba R, et al. Efficacy of venlafaxine, medroxyprogesterone acetate, and cyproterone acetate for the treatment of vasomotor hot flushes in men taking gonadotropin-releasing hormone analogues for prostate cancer: a double-blind, randomised trial. Lancet Oncol 2010 Feb;11(2):147-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19963436
99. Frisk J, Spetz AC, Hjertberg H, et al. Two modes of acupuncture as a treatment for hot flushes in men with prostate cancer-a prospective multicenter study with long-term follow-up. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):156-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294761
100. Sloan JA, Loprinzi CL, Novotny PJ, et al. Methodologic lessons learned from hot flash studies. J Clin Oncol 2001 Dec;19(23):4280-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11731510
101. Isbarn H, Boccon-Gibod L, Carroll PR, et al. Androgen deprivation therapy for the treatment of prostate cancer: consider both benefits and risks. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):62-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18945543
102. Smith MR, Boyce SP, Moyneur E, et al. Risk of clinical fractures after gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist therapy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1):136-9; discussion 139.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406890
103. Cree M, Soskolne CL, Belseck E, et al. Mortality and institutionalization following hip fracture. J Am Geriatr Soc 2000 Mar;48(3):283-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10733054
104. Sieber PR, Keiller DL, Kahnoski RJ, et al. Bicalutamide 150 mg maintains bone mineral density during monotherapy for localized or locally advanced prostate cancer. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2272-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126801
105. Smith MR, Eastham J, Gleason DM, et al. Randomized controlled trial of zoledronic acid to prevent bone loss in men receiving androgen deprivation therapy for nonmetastatic prostate cancer. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2008-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771706
106. Michaelson MD, Kaufman DS, Lee H, et al. Randomized controlled trial of annual zoledronic acid to prevent gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist-induced bone loss in men with prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2007 Mar;25(9):1038-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17369566
107. Migliorati CA, Siegel MA, Elting LS. Bisphosphonate-associated osteonecrosis: a long-term complication of bisphosphonate treatment. Lancet Oncol 2006 Jun;7(6):508-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750501
108. Wadhwa VK, Weston R, Parr NJ. Frequency of zoledronic acid to prevent further bone loss in osteoporotic patients undergoing androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. BJU Int 2010 Apr; 105(8):1082-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912210
109. Dearnaley DP, Mason MD, Parmar MK, et al. Survival benefit with oral sodium clodronate in metastatic but not localised prostate cancer: long-term results of MRC PR04 & PR05. 2009 ASCO meeting, Orlando, FL, Genitourinary Cancers Symposium, abstract 6.
http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=64&abstractID=20143
110. Smith MR, Egerdie B, Hernández Toriz N, et al; Denosumab HALT Prostate Cancer Study Group. Denosumab in men receiving androgen-deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2009 Aug;361(8):745-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19671656
111. Smith MR, Saad F, Coleman R, et al. Denosumab and bone-metastasis-free survival in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: results of a phase 3, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 2012 Jan 7;379(9810):39-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22093187
112. Saylor PJ, Smith MR. Metabolic complications of androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):1998-2006; discussion 2007-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19286225
113. Braga-Basaria M, Dobs AS, Muller DC, et al. Metabolic syndrome in men with prostate cancer undergoing long-term androgen-deprivation therapy. J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug;24(24):3979-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921050

114. Keating NL, O'Malley JO, Freedland SJ, et al. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease during androgen deprivation therapy: observational study of Veterans with prostate cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 2010 Apr;102(1):39-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19996060
115. Efstathiou JA, Bae K, Shipley WU, et al. Cardiovascular mortality and duration of androgen deprivation for locally advanced prostate cancer: analysis of RTOG 92-02. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):816-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243498
116. Jones CU, Hunt D, McGowan DG, et al. Radiotherapy and short-term androgen deprivation for localized prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2011 Jul 14;365(2):107-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21751904
117. Nguyen PL, Chen MH, Beckman JA, et al. Influence of Androgen Deprivation Therapy on All-Cause Mortality in Men with High-Risk Prostate Cancer and a History of Congestive Heart Failure or Myocardial Infarction. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys. 2011 Jun 25. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21708431
118. Levine GN, D'Amico AV, Berger P, et al; American Heart Association Council on Clinical Cardiology and Council on Epidemiology and Prevention, the American Cancer Society, and the American Urological Association. Androgen-deprivation therapy in prostate cancer and cardiovascular risk: a science advisory from the American Heart Association, American Cancer Society, and American Urological Association: endorsed by the American Society for Radiation Oncology. Circulation. 2010 Feb 16;121(6):833-40
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20124128
119. Moinpour CM, Savage MJ, Troxel A, et al. Quality of life in advanced prostate cancer: results of a randomized therapeutic trial. J Natl Cancer Inst 1998 Oct;90(20):1537-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9790546
120. Herr HW, O'Sullivan M. Quality of life of asymptomatic men with non-metastatic prostate cancer on androgen deprivation therapy. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1743-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799173
121. Potoski AL, Knopf K, Clegg LX, et al. Quality-of-life outcomes after primary androgen deprivation therapy: results from the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study. J Clin Oncol 2001 Sep;19(17):3750-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11533098
122. Cherrier MM, Aubin S, Higano CS. Cognitive and mood changes in men undergoing intermittent combined androgen blockade for non-metastatic prostate cancer. Psychooncology 2009 Mar;18(3): 237-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18636420
123. Green HJ, Pakenham KI, Headley BC, et al. Quality of life compared during pharmacological treatments and clinical monitoring for non-localized prostate cancer: a randomized controlled trial. BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):975-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142146
124. Iversen P, Melezinek I, Schmidt A. Non-steroidal antiandrogens: a therapeutic option for patients with advanced prostate cancer who wish to retain sexual interest and function. BJU Int 2001 Jan;87(1): 47-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11121992
125 Boccardo F, Rubagotti A, Barichello M, et al; for the Italian Prostate Cancer Project. Bicalutamide monotherapy versus flutamide plus goserelin in prostate cancer patients: results of an Italian Prostate Cancer Project study. J Clin Oncol 1999 Jul;17(7):2027-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561254

13. MANAGEMENT OF PROSTATE CANCER IN OLDER MEN

13.1 Introduction

Prostate cancer is the most prevalent cancer in men, with a median age at diagnosis of 68 years. Two-thirds of prostate cancer-related deaths occur in men aged ≥ 75 years (1). Older men tend to have larger tumours of a higher grade than younger patients (2,3). Treatment decisions for older men should take into consideration the risk of dying from PCa (which depends on the grade and stage of the tumour), potential adverse effects of treatment, and patient preference. Interventions that might decrease health-related quality of life (HRQoL)

without prolonging survival should be avoided. Evidence suggests that in both the USA (4) and Europe (5) older patients are under-treated: only a minority of older adults with localised prostate cancer receive curative treatment. However, curative treatment should neither be denied where appropriate, nor limited to androgen deprivation therapy (ADT).

Life expectancy is a major determinant of the potential for benefit from therapy. The International Society of Geriatric Oncology (SIOG) Prostate Cancer Working Group recommends that the decision-making process for treating older men with PCa should be based on a systematic evaluation of health status, most importantly comorbidities, dependence status, and nutritional status (6). These factors influence patient survival and can also affect the ability to tolerate treatment-related side-effects (6).
For localised disease, treatment benefit is usually considered to be seen only beyond 10 years, which leads to a treatment frontier of 75 years. This should be reconsidered, given that Walter (7) has shown that survival probability is linked not only to legal age, but more importantly to overall health status. For example, a healthy 80-year-old senior can expect a median 10.8 years of survival, compared to 6.7 years for a vulnerable, and 3.3 years for a frail senior. At 85 years of age, healthy seniors can expect to survive 8 years. These figures date back 10 years, and are likely to have increased with life expectancy.

Comorbidity is a major predictor of PCa mortality. Tewari et al. demonstrated that comorbidity evaluated by the Charlson index was the strongest predictor of death from causes other than PCa in men with localised PCa treated with RP (8). This was recently confirmed in a cohort of patients from the Surveillance, Epidemiology and End Results (SEER) database, all of whom had treatment-resistant PCa. At 10 years, most men with a Charlson score ≥ 2 died from competing causes, irrespective of age or tumour aggressiveness (9). Currently the Cumulative Illness Score Rating-Geriatrics (CISR-G) is the best available tool for assessing the risk for death unrelated to PCa. Whereas the Charlson index considers only potentially lethal comorbid conditions, the CISR-G also rates nonlethal conditions according to their severity and level of control (10,11).

Level of dependence in daily activities is another factor that influences survival in senior adult patients (12,13). Dependence can be evaluated using the Activities of Daily Living (ADL) and Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADL) scales. The ADL scale rates an ability to accomplish basic activities of daily living, while the IADL scale rates activities that require a higher level of cognition and judgement (for example the ability to manage money or medication, or to use transportation or the telephone).

Malnutrition has also been shown to be associated with an increased mortality rate in senior adult patients (14). Nutritional status can be estimated by the variation of weight during the previous 3 months:

- good nutritional status < 5% of weight loss;
- risk of malnutrition - weight loss 5-10%;
- severe malnutrition - weight loss > 10%.

Evaluation of comorbidity, dependence and malnutrition is recommended by The SIOG Prostate Cancer Working Group in order to classify patients into one of 4 groups:

1. ‘Fit’ or ‘healthy’ older men should receive the same standard treatment as younger patients.
2. ‘Vulnerable’ patients (i.e. reversible impairment) should receive standard treatment after resolution of any geriatric problems through geriatric interventions.
3. ‘Frail’ patients (i.e. irreversible impairment) should receive an adapted treatment.
4. Patients who are ‘too sick’ with ‘terminal illness’ should receive only symptomatic palliative treatment (6).

“Fit” and “vulnerable” older men with localised PCa in the high-risk group defined by D`Amico et al. (18), with a chance of surviving for more than 10 years are likely to benefit from curative treatment. Older men in the low risk and possibly intermediate risk classification are most likely to benefit from a watchful-waiting approach. The urological approach in older men with PCa should be the same as in younger patients, based on existing recommendations (15-17). Older men with PCa should be managed according to their individual health status which is mainly driven by the severity of associated comorbid conditions and not according to chronological age.

13.2 Treatment-related complications

The risk of short-term postoperative complications appears to be related more to the severity of comorbidities than chronological age. Conversely, the risk of long-term incontinence after RP is more influenced by increasing age than comorbidity (19,20). External Beam Radiotherapy (EBRT) has similar outcomes in terms of cancer control and treatment related comorbidities in both older and younger patients, assuming a dose of $\geq$ 70Gy using intensity modulated radiotherapy (IMRT) or image guided radiotherapy (IGRT). Brachytherapy might be a suitable option in older patients, but survival benefit in older men with low risk disease has not been established. Urinary, bowel and erectile complications after brachytherapy increase significantly with

both increasing age and severity of comorbidities (15). For those with locally advanced disease, a combined modality of EBRT and long term hormonal treatment must be considered. The drawback of ADT in older patients has been discussed earlier (see Chapter 14). Cardiac status should be specially checked if ADT is considered, as it might be associated with increased morbidity, but not mortality. Comorbidity by itself could also be a discriminating factor, as suggested recently in localised high risk patients (21).

In patients with non-metastatic localised PCa unsuitable for curative treatment, immediate ADT should be used only in patients requiring symptom palliation (22,23) . In the case of locally advanced T3-T4 disease immediate ADT can be of benefit in patients with PSA > 50ng/mL and PSA doubling time of < 12 months (22,23). ADT is the first-line treatment in hormone-sensitive metastatic PCa. The SIOG Prostate Cancer Working Group recommends evaluation of bone mineral status and prevention of osteoporosis. All men receiving ADT should receive calcium and vitamin D supplementation. The routine use of biphosphonates to prevent skeletal complications in patients undergoing ADT is not recommended unless there is a documented risk for fracture or castration-resistant PCa with skeletal metastasis (6). However, in a recent randomised trial Denosumab was shown to improve metastases free survival in patients without distant metastases and rising PSA (29.5 months vs 25.2 months, p = 0.0028) and increase time to first bone lesion (33.2 months vs 29.5 months, p = 0.0032) (24).

In metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer (CRPC), chemotherapy with docetaxel (75 mg/m^2 every 3 weeks) is the standard for fit and vulnerable older men. The tolerability of the docetaxel 3-weekly regimen has not been specifically studied in frail older men. In a retrospective analysis of 175 patients aged ≥ 75 years treated with docetaxel, patients with a good performance status responded to docetaxel therapy to a similar extent as younger patients. Docetaxel was generally well tolerated. The weekly regimen showed less febrile neutropenia than the 3-weekly regimen but a higher rate of fatigue, resulting in frequent treatment discontinuation (25). The place of weekly docetaxel in metastatic CRPC should be further evaluated. Palliative treatments in CRPC include palliative surgery, radiopharmaceuticals, EBRT, and medical treatments for pain and symptoms.

13.3 References

1. Ries LAG, Melbert D, Krapcho M et al. eds. SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1975-2005. Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute, 2008. Available at: http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975-2005/, based on December 2009 SEER data submission.
2. Richstone L, Bianco FJ, Shah HH, et al. Radical prostatectomy in men aged >or=70 years: effect of age on upgrading, upstaging, and the accuracy of a preoperative nomogram. BJU Int 2008 Mar;101(5):541-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18257855
3. Sun L, Caire AA, Robertson CN, et al. Men older than 70 years have higher risk prostate cancer and poorer survival in the early and late prostate specific antigen eras. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2242-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758616
4. Bubolz T, Wasson JH, Lu-Yao G, et al. Treatments for prostate cancer in older men: 1984-1997. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):977-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744472
5. Houterman S, Janssen-Heijnen ML, Hendrikx AJ, et al. Impact of comorbidity on treatment and prognosis of prostate cancer patients: a population-based study. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2006 Apr;58(1):60-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16213153
6. Droz JP, Balducci L, Bolla M, et al. Management of prostate cancer in older men: recommendations of a working group of the International Society of Geriatric Oncology. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(4):462-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20346033
7. Walter LC, Covinsky KE. Cancer screening in elderly patients: a framework for individualized decision making. JAMA 2001 Jun 6;285(21):2750-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11386931
8. Tewari A, Johnson CC, Divine G, et al. Long-term survival probability in men with clinically localized prostate cancer: a case-control, propensity modeling study stratified by race, age, treatment and comorbidities. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1513-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017210
9. Albertsen PC, Moore DF, Shih W, et al. Impact of comorbidity on survival among men with localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 1;29(10):1335-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357791
10. Extermann M. Measuring comorbidity in older cancer patients. Eur J Cancer 2000 Mar;36(4):453-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10717521

11. Linn BS, Linn MW, Gurel L. Cumulative illness rating scale. J Am Geriatr Soc 1968 May;16(5):622-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5646906
12. Katz S, Ford AB, Moskowitz RW, et al. Studies of illness in the aged. The index of ADL: a standardized measure of biological and psychosocial function. JAMA 1963 Sep;185:914-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14044222
13. Lawton MP, Brody EM. Assessment of older people: self-maintaining and instrumental activities of daily living. Gerontologist 1969 Autumn;9(3):179-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5349366
14. Blanc-Bisson C, Fonck M, Rainfray M, et al. Undernutrition in elderly patients with cancer: target for diagnosis and intervention. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2008 Sep;67(3):243-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18554922
15. Heidenreich A, Bellmunt J, Bolla M, et al. [EAU guidelines on prostate cancer. Part I: screening, diagnosis, and treatment of clinically localised disease.] Actas Urol Esp 2011 Oct;35(9):501-14. [article in Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21757259
16. Thompson I, Thrasher JB, Aus G, et al. Guideline for the management of clinically localized prostate cancer: 2007 update. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2106-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509297
17. National Comprehensive Cancer Network. NCCN Clinical Cancer for senior adult oncology. V.1.2012. Available at: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/ physician_gls/f_guidelines.asp.
18. D'Amico AV, Moul J, Carroll PR, et al. Cancer-specific mortality after surgery or radiation for patients with clinically localized prostate cancer managed during the prostate-specific antigen era. J Clin Oncol 2003 Jun;21(11):2163-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12775742
19. Begg CB, Riedel ER, Bach PB, et al. Variations in morbidity after radical prostatectomy. N Engl J Med 2002 Apr;346(15):1138-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948274
20. Stanford JL, Feng Z, Hamilton AS, et al. Urinary and sexual function after radical prostatectomy for clinically localized prostate cancer: the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study. JAMA 2000 Jan 19;283(3):354-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647798
21. D'Amico AV, Chen MH, Renshaw AA, et al. Androgen suppression and radiation vs radiation alone for prostate cancer: a randomized trial. JAMA 2008 Jan;299(3):289-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18212313
22. Studer UE, Whelan P, Albrecht W, et al. Immediate or deferred androgen deprivation for patients with prostate cancer not suitable for local treatment with curative intent: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Trial 30891. J Clin Oncol 2006 Apr 20;24(12):1868-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622261
23. Studer UE, Collette L, Whelan P, et al. Using PSA to guide timing of androgen deprivation in patients with T0-4 N0-2 M0 prostate cancer not suitable for local curative treatment (EORTC 30891). Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):941-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191322
24. Keating NL, O'Malley AJ, Smith MR. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease during androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006 Sep 20;24(27):4448-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16983113
25. D'Amico AV, Denham JW, Crook J, et al. Influence of androgen suppression therapy for prostate cancer on the frequency and timing of fatal myocardial infarctions. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jun 10;25(17):2420-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17557956

14. QUALITY OF LIFE OF PATIENTS WITH LOCALISED PROSTATE CANCER

14.1 Introduction

The increase in life expectancy of patients with localised PCa has made the quality of life after treatment a key issue for PCa survivors. The term 'health-related quality of life' (HRQoL) is typically used to refer to the impact

that disease and treatment have on a person's well-being and physical, emotional and social functioning, including daily functioning (1-4). HRQoL is a patient-centered outcome which is rated by the patient himself, particularly as physicians often underestimate the impact of disease and treatment on their patients' lives (5). In PCa, HRQoL is usually divided into PCa-specific and PCa-general issues. PCa-specific HRQoL refers to the disease-specific outcome of PCa, including urinary, bowel, and sexual functioning. PCa-general HRQoL refers to generic issues of well-being, including physical, social, emotional, and cognitive functioning, vitality/fatigue, pain, general health status, global quality of life and life satisfaction (6).

HRQoL is measured using standardised questionnaires, which collect patient-centric data and provide an objective assessment and perception of both generic and disease-specific domains. Several comprehensive HRQoL questionnaires have undergone validation and have been used to measure early stage PCa outcomes. The most frequently used questionnaires include the EPIC (Expanded Prostate Cancer Index Composite), the Symptom indexes constructed by Clark and Talcott, and the Prostate Module appendix for the EORTC-QLQ C30 (7-9).

Various forms of therapies have different impacts on HRQoL. A comparison of the most common contemporary therapies for localised PCa (radical prostatectomy, brachytherapy, external-beam radiation therapy and active surveillance) is necessary to inform patients about treatment options and to address individual patient preferences for the various possible outcomes. There is still very little objective data about HRQoL for PCa treatment, mainly because of a lack of prospective trials.

14.2 Active surveillance

Although active surveillance avoids treatment-related side effects, it carries an increased risk of psychological distress, which can have significant effects on the patient's HRQoL. There are certain risk factors for patients who may not do well on active surveillance. These factors include the patient's perception that the physician is making most of the decision-making, a poor physical health score, a high neuroticism (anxiety) score, and a high PSA value. All these factors were found to have significant positive associations with lower HRQoL scores in multivariate analysis (10). Anxiety and distress did not increase and remained low during the first 9 months of surveillance in men enrolled in the active surveillance PRIAS study (11). Additional research with a longer follow-up is needed to define the significance of negative effects of active surveillance on HRQoL (LE: 1b).

Data from an RCT on anxiety comparing WW and RP (13) found that depression, well-being and psychological status were not significantly different between treatment groups, even if they were systematically inferior in the treated group (LE: 1b).

14.3 Radical prostatectomy

Several trials have shown that RP has a significant negative effect on multiple QoL domains, including a lower sexual function score, lower urinary function and incontinence scores, and a lower physical HRQoL (13-16).

In the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study (PCOS), 8.7% of men at 24 months were bothered by a lack of urinary control and 41.9% reported that sexual function was a moderate-to-big problem in their daily lives (17). Sexual function and interest are the two prostate-specific domains that decline most after surgery and remain most affected after 1 year (18). The recovery of sexual dysfunction and urinary incontinence occurs over 2 to 3 years (19-21). Sanda and colleagues (14) recently reported that urinary incontinence was at its worst by 2 months after surgery, after which time it improved in most patients. At 1 year after RP, 26% of patients reported that sexual function was a 'big problem', while 76% reported that urinary incontinence was a 'very small' problem or 'no problem at all' (LE: 2a).

Although certain advances have been made that help diminish these side effects, such as nerve-sparing RP or robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy (RALP), their impact on HRQoL remain controversial.

Preserving the neurovascular bundles reduces the incidence of impotence (14,22) and can also help to improve urinary function (21,22). Both RALP and open RP have demonstrated comparable functional outcomes and should therefore theoretically have similar HRQoL scores (24). Recently, Hu et al. (25) compared minimally invasive RP (all laparoscopic techniques) with traditional open RP using a dataset of nearly 2000 Medicare patients. The incontinence and erectile dysfunction rate were higher in the minimally invasive group compared with the open RP group (LE: 3). In a prospective, longitudinal study, Thornton et al. assessed changes in the cognitive, emotional, and interpersonal components of PCa-related QoL in 71 men who underwent RALP. Although some components of QoL returned to baseline by 1 year after surgery, there were enduring decreases in sexual intimacy, sexual confidence, and masculine self-esteem (26). More motivated patients

seemed to experience greater distress and were less satisfied (27). Other general HRQoL domains that may be affected after surgery included pain and energy (18). Several studies have shown that pain and energy worsen immediately post-RP but usually improve by 12 months (19,21,28).

A new methodology for reporting outcomes after RP was proposed recently: the so-called trifecta (29) and pentafecta (30). The new method combines major outcomes, including continence, potency and cancer control (trifecta) and peri-operative complications and positive surgical margins rates (pentafecta). Pentafecta rates reflect post-operative patient expectations and satisfaction more accurately and can be used in counselling patients with clinically localised PCa. The use of trifecta and pentafecta outcomes in post-operative HRQoL assessment needs further validation.

14.4 External-beam radiation therapy (EBRT) and low-dose rate (LDR) brachytherapy

Patients undergoing EBRT and I^{125} LDR brachytherapy may have urinary, sexual and bowel dysfunction after treatment (31). Both methods can result in irritative voiding symptoms, such as urgency, frequency, and urge incontinence, that negatively affect overall urinary function and HRQoL. The most predominant severe acute toxicity after LDR brachytherapy is urinary retention requiring catheterisation (32). Roeloffzen et al. (32,33) reported that acute urinary retention after LDR brachytherapy occurs in 8-10.2% of patients and has a significant negative impact on patients' HRQoL up to 6 years after treatment, in terms of both global QoL measures and urinary symptom scores (LE: 3).

A prospective multicentre study showed that the effects of EBRT on urinary symptoms had resolved at 12 months and improved over baseline at 24 months (14). In the same study, patients in the LDR brachytherapy group reported significant detriments in urinary irritation or obstruction and incontinence compared with baseline. Incontinence after LDR brachytherapy was reported by 4-6% of patients at 1-2 years after treatment. Eighteen percent of patients in the LDR brachytherapy group and 11% of those in the EBRT group reported moderate or worse distress from overall urinary symptoms at 1 year (14) (LE: 3).

It has been shown that both EBRT and LDR brachytherapy had a significant impact on the bowel and rectal HRQoL domains (14,34). Bowel/rectal problems appeared to have an overall impact close to that of the urinary v domain (35,36). The onset of symptoms occurred during or early after treatment, and sometimes persisted longer into follow-up. Sanda et al. reported rectal urgency, frequency, pain, fecal incontinence, or hematochezia-caused distress related to bowel function in 9% of patients at 1 year after EBRT or LDR brachytherapy (14). In a retrospective observational study of fecal incontinence in 143 men, who had received LDR brachytherapy for localised PCa, 13.2% (20) of patients at 2 years reported that fecal incontinence was impacting their ability to participate in daily activities (37). A multivariable analysis suggested that bowel and rectal symptoms were less profound after LDR brachytherapy than after EBRT (7) (LE: 2a).

Roeloffzen et al. (33) reported a statistically significant deterioration in HRQoL in patients treated with I125 LDR brachytherapy at 6 years for urinary symptoms, bowel symptoms, pain, physical functioning, and sexual activity. However, most of these changes were not clinically relevant. HRQoL scores returned to approximately baseline values at 1 year and remained stable up to 6 years after treatment. The only clinically relevant changes were seen for emotional functioning and sexual activity. Worse bowel and urinary function may play a stronger role than sexual function in predicting a patient's overall physical and emotional HRQoL (38). Contemporary treatment refinements, such as 3-D conformal or intensity-modulated radiotherapy (IMRT), may be able to reduce the impact of EBRT on bowel symptoms, but this has not yet been shown in a multicentre setting.

Recently, Sanda et al. showed that adjuvant androgen suppression exacerbated the adverse effects of external radiotherapy or brachytherapy on sexuality and vitality (14). The negative effects of adjuvant hormonal therapy have been shown in some other studies (31,39).

Among general domains, fatigue was commonly reported following EBRT. However, provided that fatigue was temporary, it did not appear to be emotionally distressing to most men (40,41). Men treated with interstitial LDR brachytherapy appeared to have only slight declines in general HRQoL (42). Physical and functional status declines have been reported in the first few months after implant, but pretreatment levels of function are regained by most men at 1 year after implant (43).

14.5 Comparison of HRQoL between treatment modalities

The limitations of all published studies assessing QoL include the lack of randomisation to treatment and therefore the presence of selection bias, which may influence outcomes. Thus, information regarding comparative outcome relies largely on results from non-randomised observational cohorts. Treatment comparison requires a long follow-up, as measures of quality of life may change with time. There are very few

trials investigating a direct comparison of different treatment modalities.

Most early studies addressing general HRQL issues (general physical function, role function, social function, emotional well-being, body pain, general health, or vitality/energy) have found few differences across treatments for clinically localised disease (6,44). In more recent longitudinal studies, both surgery- and radiotherapy-treated men have reported some declines in role function and vitality/energy shortly after treatment, with surgically treated men reporting the most dysfunction (28,40). However most men recovered function by 1 year after treatment.

The presence of comorbid psychiatric conditions (i.e. prior psychiatric history, alcohol abuse, drug abuse) and the experience of pain after treatment were considered to be certain risk factors for poor general HRQoL in men after treatment for localised prostate cancer (45-47).

The PCOS was the first reported prospective study presenting treatment-specific QoL outcomes for PCa patients at 5 years after initial diagnosis (17). The cohort consisted of men with newly diagnosed localised PCa treated with RP (n = 901) or EBRT (n = 286). At 5 years after diagnosis, overall sexual function declined in both groups to approximately the same level, mostly because of a continuing decline in erectile function among EBRT patients between years 2 and 5. However, erectile dysfunction was more prevalent in the RP group (79.3% vs 63.5%, respectively). Approximately 14-16% of RP and 4% of EBRT patients were incontinent at 5 years. Bowel urgency and painful haemorrhoids were more common in the EBRT group (LE: 2a).

Madalinska et al. evaluated the side effects of RP and EBRT in 278 patients from the ERSPC study at 6 and 12 months following treatment (35). RP patients reported significantly higher incidences of urinary incontinence (39- 49%) and erectile dysfunction (80-91%) than radiotherapy patients (6-7% and 41- 55%, respectively). Bowel problems (urgency) affected 30-35% of the EBRT group versus 6-7% of the RP group (LE: 2a).

Downs et al. measured the impact of LDR brachytherapy alone on general HRQoL and disease-specific HRQoL compared to patients treated with RP (48). The authors studied 419 men from the CaPSURE database, whose primary treatment was (LDR) brachytherapy [n = 92] or RP [n = 327].Patients treated with LDR brachytherapy or RP did not differ greatly in general HRQoL after treatment. Both treatment groups showed early functional impairment in most general domains, with scores returning to or approaching baseline in most domains at 18 to 24 months after treatment. Patients treated with LDR brachytherapy had significantly higher urinary function scores at 0 to 6 months after treatment (84.5%) than patients treated with RP (63.3%). Urinary bother scores were not significantly different (67.7% vs 67.4%, respectively). Both treatment groups showed decreases in sexual function that did not return to pretreatment levels (LE: 2a).

A multicentre study that compared all three treatments (RP, EBRT, LDR brachytherapy) in a longitudinal prospective cohort was conducted by Talcott et al. (7). In 417 men, the authors assessed urinary, bowel and sexual function from before primary treatment to 24 months afterwards. Urinary incontinence increased sharply after RP, while bowel problems and urinary irritation/obstruction occurred after EBRT and LDR brachytherapy. Sexual function severely worsened immediately after surgery and then improved, while sexual function continued to decline after both radiation treatments. It has been shown that a surgical patient, who is impotent at 3 or 12 months after surgery, can expect to have a realistic hope of improvement while impotent EBRT patients probably should not. There was no change in urinary function and little change in overall bowel function after 12 months. The data showed that a patient with bowel dysfunction at 12 months after EBRT may expect modest improvement, with diverging trends for individual symptoms. Diarrhoea will continue to subside, tenesmus and rectal urgency will change little, and episodes of rectal bleeding will become more prevalent (7) (LE: 2a).

A recent, prospective, multicentre study of 435 patients with a longer follow-up of 36 months was reported by Pardo et al. (49). The study confirmed that there was a long-term change in adverse effects, e.g. an increase in urinary-related adverse effects after EBRT or sexual adverse effects with LDR brachytherapy, which tended to reduce any differences between treatments over time. However, these changes were only slight. In accordance with other reports, the RP-treated group showed greater deterioration in urinary incontinence and sexual function, but improved urinary irritative-obstructive results compared with the LDR brachytherapy group. In patients with urinary irritative-obstructive symptoms at baseline, improvement was observed in 64% of those treated with nerve-sparing RP. Higher bowel worsening was observed in the ERBT group, with 20% of patients reporting bowel symptoms. Relevant differences between treatment groups persisted for up to 3 years of follow-up (49) (LE: 2a).

The American College of Surgeons Oncology Group phase III Surgical Prostatectomy Versus Interstitial Radiation Intervention Trial compared RP and LDR brachytherapy, but was closed after 2 years due to poor accrual. Crook et al. (50) recently reported the HRQoL at a mean of 5.3 years for 168 trial-eligible men, who either chose or were randomly assigned to RP or brachytherapy following a multidisciplinary educational session (50). There were no differences in bowel or hormonal domains. However, men treated with LDR brachytherapy scored slightly better in the urinary domain (91.8 vs 88.1; $p = 0.02$) and sexual (52.5 vs 39.2; $p = 0.001$) domain, and in patient satisfaction (93.6 vs 76.9; $p < 0.001$). It should be noted that treatment allocation was random in only 19% of cases (LE: 2a).

The quality of life of a patient's spouse or partner may also be reduced as a result of their spouse or partner receiving treatment for PCa. In a prospective multicentre study of more than 1200 patients and 625 spouses or partners (14), patients in the LDR brachytherapy group reported long-lasting urinary irritation, bowel and sexual symptoms and transient problems with vitality or hormonal function. The adverse effects of RP on sexual function were mitigated by nerve-sparing procedures. Distress associated with the patient's erectile dysfunction was reported by 44% of partners in the RP group, 22% of those in the EBRT group and 13% of those in the LDR brachytherapy group. After RP, urinary incontinence was observed, but urinary irritation and obstruction improved, particularly in patients with large prostates. Treatment-related symptoms were made worst by obesity, large prostate size, high prostate-specific antigen score and older age (LE: 2a).

Malcolm et al. (51) reported a single-institution study comparing the outcomes of surgery (RP, RALP), LDR brachytherapy and cryosurgical ablation of the prostate (CSAP) with a relatively short follow-up of 24 months (51). The HRQoL of patients treated with (LDR) brachytherapy and CSAP was associated with higher urinary function and higher bother score compared to open RP and RALP. LDR brachytherapy was associated with higher sexual function and higher bother score compared to all other treatment modalities. Unfortunately, the study used the UCLA-PCI questionnaire, which lacks items for evaluating irritative urinary symptoms often observed in patients after LDR brachytherapy (48). This may have significantly compromised the results of the HRQoL assessment (LE: 3).

In conclusion, many men treated for clinically localised PCa will experience some post-treatment problems that may impact their daily lives. Each patient therefore has to determine which side effect profile (34) is most acceptable to them when making a decision about treatment.

14.6 References

1. Leplège A, Hunt S. The problem of quality of life in medicine. JAMA 1997 Jul;278(1):47-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9207338.
2. Osoba D. Self-rating symptom checklists: a simple method for recording and evaluating symptom control in oncology. Cancer Treat Rev 1993;19 Suppl A:43-51 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679319
3. Patrick, D. L. and Erickson, P.: Assessing health-related quality of life for clinical decision-making. In: Quality of Life Assessment: Key Issues in the 1990s. Edited by S. R. Walker and R. M. Rosser. Boston: Dordrecht Kluwer, pp. 11-64, 1993.
4. Schumacher M, Olschewski M, Schulgen G. Assessment of quality of life in clinical trials. Stat Med 1991 Dec;10(12):1915-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1805318
5. Litwin M, Lubeck D, Henning J, et al. Differences in urologist and patient assessments of health related quality of life in men with prostate cancer: results of the CaPSURE database. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1988-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598504
6. Eton DT, Lepore SJ. Prostate cancer and health-related quality of life: a review of the literature. Psychooncology 2002 Jul-Aug;11(4):307-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12203744
7. Talcott JA, Manola J, Clark JA, et al. Time course and predictors of symptoms after primary prostate cancer therapy. J Clin Oncol 2003 Nov;21(21):3979-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14581420
8. Clark JA, Talcott JA. Symptom indexes to assess outcomes of treatment for early prostate cancer. Med Care 2001 Oct;39(10):1118-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11567174

9. Joly F, Brune D, Couette JE, Lesaunier F, et al. Health-related quality of life and sequelae in patients treated with brachytherapy and external beam irradiation for localized prostate cancer. Ann Oncol 1998 Jul;9(7):751-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9739442
10. van den Bergh RC, Essink-Bot ML, Roobol MJ, et al. Anxiety and distress during active surveillance for early prostate cancer. Cancer 2009 Sep 1;115(17):3868-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19637245
11. van den Bergh RC, Essink-Bot ML, Roobol MJ, et al. Do anxiety and distress increase during active surveillance for low risk prostate cancer? J Urol 2010 May;183(5):1786-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299064
12. Holmberg L, Bill-Axelson A, Helgesen F, et al; Scandinavian Prostatic Cancer Group Study Number 4. A randomized trial comparing radical prostatectomy with watchful waiting in early prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 2002 Sep 12;347(11):781-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12226148
13. Bellizzi KM, Latini DM, Cowan JE, et al. Fear of recurrence, symptom burden, and health-related quality of life in men with prostate cancer. Urology 2008 Dec;72(6):1269-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18342930
14. Sanda MG, Dunn RL, Michalski J, et al. Quality of life and satisfaction with outcome among prostate-cancer survivors. N Engl J Med 2008 Mar;358(12):1250-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18354103
15. Gacci M, Simonato A, Masieri L, et al. Urinary and sexual outcomes in long-term (5+ years) prostate cancer disease free survivors after radical prostatectomy. Health Qual Life Outcomes 2009 Nov;7:94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912640
16. Chen RC, Clark JA, Talcott JA. Individualizing quality-of-life outcomes reporting: how localized prostate cancer treatments affect patients with different levels of baseline urinary, bowel, and sexual function. J Clin Oncol 2009 Aug;27(24):3916-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19620493
17. Potosky AL, Legler J, Albertsen PC, et al. Health outcomes after prostatectomy or radiotherapy for prostate cancer: results from the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000 Oct;92(19):1582-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11018094
18. Ku J, Krahn M, Trachtenberg J, et al. Changes in health utilities and health-related quality of life over 12 months following radical prostatectomy. Can Urol Assoc J 2009 Dec;3(6):445-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20019969
19. Litwin MS, Melmed GY, Nakazon T. Life after radical prostatectomy: a longitudinal study. J Urol. 2001 Aug;166(2):587-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458073
20. Stanford JL, Feng Z, Hamilton AS, et al. Urinary and sexual function after radical prostatectomy for clinically localized prostate cancer: the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study. JAMA 2000 Jan;283(3): 354-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647798
21. Smith DS, Carvalhal GF, Schneider K, et al. Quality-of-life outcomes for men with prostate carcinoma detected by screening. Cancer 2000 Mar 15;88(6):1454-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10717630
22. Abel EJ, Masterson TA, Warner JN, et al. Nerve-sparing prostatectomy and urinary function: a prospective analysis using validated quality-of-life measures. Urology 2009 Jun;73(6):1336-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19362347
23. Nandipati KC, Raina R, Agarwal A, et al. Nerve-sparing surgery significantly affects long-term continence after radical prostatectomy. Urology 2007 Dec;70(6):1127-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18158032
24. Coelho RF, Chauhan S, Palmer KJ, et al. Robotic-assisted radical prostatectomy: a review of current outcomes. BJU Int 2009 Nov;104(10):1428-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19804427
25. Hu JC, Gu X, Lipsitz SR, et al. Comparative effectiveness of minimally invasive vs open radical prostatectomy. JAMA 2009 Oct;302(14):1557-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19826025
26. Thornton AA, Perez MA, Oh S, et al. A prospective report of changes in prostate cancer related quality of life after robotic prostatectomy. J Psychosoc Oncol 2011 Mar;29(2):157-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21391068

27. Messaoudi R, Menard J, Ripert T, et al. Erectile dysfunction and sexual health after radical prostatectomy: impact of sexual motivation. Int J Impot Res 2011 Mar-Apr;23(2):81-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21471982
28. Lubeck DP, Litwin MS, Henning JM, et al. Changes in health-related quality of life in the first year after treatment for prostate cancer: results from CaPSURE. Urology 1999 Jan;53(1):180-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886609
29. Bianco FJ Jr, Scardino PT, Eastham JA. Radical prostatectomy: long-term cancer control and recovery of sexual and urinary function ("trifecta"). Urology 2005 Nov;66(5 Suppl):83-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16194712
30. Patel VR, Sivaraman A, Coelho RF, et al. Pentafecta: a new concept for reporting outcomes of robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2011 May;59(5):702-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21296482
31. Wei JT, Dunn RL, Sandler HM, et al. Comprehensive comparison of health-related quality of life after contemporary therapies for localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2002 Jan;20(2):557-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11786586
32. Roeloffzen EM, Hinnen KA, Battermann JJ, et al. The impact of acute urinary retention after iodine-125 prostate brachytherapy on health-related quality of life. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2010 Aug 1;77(5):1322-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19939578
33. Roeloffzen EM, Lips IM, van Gellekom MP, et al. Health-related quality of life up to six years after (125)I brachytherapy for early-stage prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2010 Mar;76(4):1054-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20097486
34. Dandapani SV, Sanda MG. Measuring health-related quality of life consequences from primary treatment for early-stage prostate cancer. Semin Radiat Oncol 2008 Jan;18(1):67-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082590
35. Madalinska JB, Essink-Bot ML, de Koning HJ, et al. Health-related quality-of-life effects of radical prostatectomy and primary radiotherapy for screen-detected or clinically diagnosed localized prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2001 Mar;19(6):1619-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11250990
36. Miller DC, Sanda MG, Dunn RL, et al. Long-term outcomes among localized prostate cancer survivors: health-related quality-of-life changes after radical prostatectomy, external radiation, and brachytherapy. J Clin Oncol 2005 Apr;23(12):2772-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15837992
37. Lamb MN, Trabinino L, Hackford A. Patients' perspectives on fecal incontinence after brachytherapy for localized prostate cancer. Dis Colon Rectum 2011 May;54(5):615-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21471764
38. Steenland K, Goodman M, Liff J, et al. Quality of life among men with prostate cancer in rural Georgia. Urology 2011 Apr;77(4):927-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21334050
39. Bestmann B, Kollakowski T, Weissbach L. [Quality of life after prostate cancer in members of support groups: first results of the HAROW retro study.] Urologe A 2011 Mar;50(3):333-9. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21290094
40. Beard CJ, Propert KJ, Rieker PP, et al. Complications after treatment with external-beam irradiation in early-stage prostate cancer patients: a prospective multiinstitutional outcomes study. J Clin Oncol 1997 Jan;15(1):223-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996146
41. Monga U, Jaweed M, Kerrigan AJ, et al. Neuromuscular fatigue in prostate cancer patients undergoing radiation therapy. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1997 Sep;78(9):961-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9305269
42. Penson DF, Litwin MS, Aaronson NK. Health related quality of life in men with prostate cancer. J Urol. 2003 May;169(5):1653-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686803
43. Lee WR, McQuellon RP, Harris-Henderson K, et al. A preliminary analysis of health-related quality of life in the first year after permanent source interstitial brachytherapy (PIB) for clinically localized prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2000 Jan;46(1):77-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10656376
44. Litwin MS, Hays RD, Fink A, et al. Quality-of-life outcomes in men treated for localized prostate cancer. JAMA 1995 Jan;273(2):129-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7799493

45. Schag CA, Ganz PA, Wing DS, et al. Quality of life in adult survivors of lung, colon and prostate cancer. Qual Life Res 1994 Apr;3(2):127-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8044158
46. Borghede G, Karlsson J, Sullivan M. Quality of life in patients with prostatic cancer: results from a Swedish population study. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1477-85; discussion 1486.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302147
47. Heim HM, Oei TP. Comparison of prostate cancer patients with and without pain. Pain 1993 May;53(2):159-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8336985
48. Downs TM, Sadetsky N, Pasta DJ, et al. Health related quality of life patterns in patients treated with interstitial prostate brachytherapy for localized prostate cancer--data from CaPSURE. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1822-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532784
49. Pardo Y, Guedea F, Aguiló F, et al. Quality-of-life impact of primary treatments for localized prostate cancer in patients without hormonal treatment. J Clin Oncol 2010 Nov;28(31):4687-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921463
50. Crook JM, Gomez-Iturriaga A, Wallace K, et al. Comparison of health-related quality of life 5 years after SPIRIT: Surgical Prostatectomy Versus Interstitial Radiation Intervention Trial. J Clin Oncol 2011 Feb 1;29(4):362-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21149658
51. Malcolm JB, Fabrizio MD, Barone BB, et al. Quality of life after open or robotic prostatectomy, cryoablation or brachytherapy for localized prostate cancer. J Urol 2010 May;183(5):1822-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303100

15. SUMMARY OF GUIDELINES ON PRIMARY TREATMENT OF PCA

Stage	Treatment	Comment	GR
T1a	Watchful waiting	Standard treatment for Gleason score ≤ 6 and 7 adenocarcinomas and < 10-year life expectancy.	B
	Active surveillance	In patients with > 10-year life expectancy, re-staging with TRUS and biopsy is recommended.	B
	Radical prostatectomy	Optional in younger patients with a long life expectancy, especially for Gleason score ≥ 7 adenocarcinomas	B
	Radiotherapy	Optional in younger patients with a long life expectancy, in particular in poorly differentiated tumours. Higher complication risks after TURP, especially with interstitial radiation.	B
	Hormonal	Not an option.	A
	Combination	Not an option.	C
T1b-T2b	Active surveillance	Treatment option in patients with cT1c-cT2a, PSA < 10 ng/mL, biopsy Gleason score ≤ 6, ≤ 2 biopsies positive, ≤ 50% cancer involvement of each biopsy.	B
		Patients with a life expectancy < 10 years.	
		Patients with a life expectancy > 10 years once they are informed about the lack of survival data beyond 10 years.	
		Patients who do not accept treatment-related complications.	

T1a-T2c	Radical prostatectomy	Optional in patients with pT1a PCa. Standard treatment for patients with a life expectancy > 10 years who accept treatment-related complications.	A
	Radiotherapy	Patients with a life expectancy > 10 years who accept treatment-related complications.	B
		Patients with contraindications for surgery.	
		Unfit patients with 5-10 years of life expectancy and poorly differentiated tumours (combination therapy is recommended; see below).	
	Brachytherapy	Low-dose rate brachytherapy can be considered for low risk PCa patients with a prostate volume ≤ 50 mL and an IPSS ≤ 12.	B
	Hormonal	Symptomatic patients, who need palliation of symptoms, unfit for curative treatment.	C
		Anti-androgens are associated with a poorer outcome compared to 'active surveillance' and are not recommended.	A
	Combination	For high-risk patients, neoadjuvant hormonal treatment and concomitant hormonal therapy plus radiotherapy results in increased overall survival.	A
T3-T4	Watchful waiting	Option in asymptomatic patients with T3, well-differentiated and moderately-differentiated tumours, and a life expectancy < 10 years who are unfit for local treatment.	C
	Radical prostatectomy	Optional for selected patients with T3a, PSA < 20 ng/mL, biopsy Gleason score ≤ 8 and a life expectancy > 10 years.	C
		Patients have to be informed that RP is associated with an increased risk of positive surgical margins, unfavourable histology and positive lymph nodes and that, therefore, adjuvant or salvage therapy such as radiation therapy or androgen deprivation might be indicated.	
	Radiotherapy	T3 with > 5-10 years of life expectancy. Dose escalation of > 74 Gy seems to be of benefit. A combination with hormonal therapy can be recommended.	A
	Hormonal	Symptomatic patients, extensive T3-T4, high PSA level (> 25-50 ng/mL), PSA-Doubling Time (DT) < 1 year.	A
		Patient-driven, unfit patients.	
		Hormone monotherapy is not an option for patients who are fit enough for radiotherapy.	
	Combination	Overall survival is improved by concomitant and adjuvant hormonal therapy (3 years) combined with external beam radiation.	A
		NHT plus radical prostatectomy: no indication.	B
N+, M0	Watchful waiting	Asymptomatic patients. Patient-driven (PSA < 20-50 ng/mL), PSA DT > 12 months. Requires very close follow-up.	B
	Radical prostatectomy	Optional for selected patients with a life expectancy of > 10 years as part of a multimodal treatment approach.	C
	Radiotherapy	Optional in selected patients with a life expectancy of > 10 years, combination therapy with adjuvant androgen deprivation for 3 years is mandatory.	C
	Hormonal	Standard adjuvant therapy in more than 2 positive nodes to radiation therapy or radical prostatectomy as primary local therapy. Hormonal therapy should only be used as monotherapy in patients who are unfit for any type of local therapy.	A
	Combination	No standard option. Patient-driven.	B

M+	Watchful waiting	No standard option. May have worse survival/more complications than with immediate hormonal therapy. Requires very close follow-up.	B
	Radical prostatectomy	Not a standard option.	C
	Radiotherapy	Not an option for curative intent; therapeutic option in combination with androgen deprivation for treatment of local cancer-derived symptoms.	C
	Hormonal	Standard option. Mandatory in symptomatic patients.	A

DT = doubling time; NHT = neoadjuvant hormonal treatment; IPSS = International Prostatic Symptom Score; PSA = prostatespecific antigen; TRUS = transrectal ultrasound; TURP =transurethral resection of the prostate

16. FOLLOW-UP: AFTER TREATMENT WITH CURATIVE INTENT

16.1 Definition

Curative treatment is defined as radical prostatectomy or radiotherapy, either by external beam radiation or an interstitial technique, or any combination of these. Alternative treatment options that are not fully established, such as HIFU, do not have a well-defined, validated PSA-cut-point to define biochemical failure but do generally follow the outlines given below.

16.2 Why follow-up?

The first question to be answered is: 'If failure after curative treatment is so common, are follow-up efforts worthwhile?' The answer to this question is definitely 'yes'. Recurrences will occur in a substantial number of patients who received treatment with intent to cure at various time points after the primary therapy.
The second question to be answered is: 'What is the reason for follow-up?' Reasons may vary depending on the treatment given, patient age, co-morbidity and the patient's own wishes. In general, patients who receive curative therapy may be followed-up for any of the following reasons:

- good responsible patient care;
- possibility of second-line treatment with curative intent;
- possibility of early hormonal therapy after failure;
- as part of a study protocol.

Chapter 18 discusses treatment options after failure of primary therapy.

16.3 How to follow-up?

The procedures indicated at follow-up visits vary depending on the clinical situation. The examinations discussed below are routinely used for the detection of PCa progression or residual disease. The PSA level, and eventually DRE, are the only tests that need to be carried out routinely. A disease-specific history should be mandatory at every follow-up visit and should include psychological aspects, signs of disease progression, and treatment-related complications. The examinations used for the evaluation of treatment-related complications must be individualised and are beyond the scope of these guidelines. The examinations used most often for cancer-related follow-up after curative surgery or radiation treatment are discussed below.

*16.3.1 **PSA monitoring***

The measurement of PSA level is a cornerstone in the follow-up after curative treatment. There is a difference in what can be expected after radical prostatectomy and radiotherapy, but PSA recurrence nearly always precedes clinical recurrence after either treatment, in some cases by many years (1-5). It is recommended that the finding of a single, elevated, serum PSA level should be re-confirmed before second-line therapy is started solely based on the PSA elevation.

*16.3.2 **Definition of PSA progression***

The level of PSA at which to define treatment failure differs between radical prostatectomy cases and radiation treated cases. Following radical retropubic prostatectomy, two consecutive values of 0.2 ng/mL or greater appear to represent an international consensus defining recurrent cancer (6,7). Other authors have argued for

an even higher cut-off of 0.4 ng/mL to better define patients with a high risk for clinical progression (5). It has been shown that patients with a PSA level between 0.1 ng/mL and 0.2 ng/mL after radical prostatectomy had neither clinical nor biochemical disease progression (8). Therefore, the use of an ultra-sensitive PSA assay is not justified for routine follow-up after radical prostatectomy (4). If ongoing randomised trials show that early adjuvant treatment after radical prostatectomy (given before PSA reaches > 0.2 ng/mL) improves survival, this issue should be reconsidered.

Following radiation therapy, until recently, the definition of biochemical relapse was three consecutive increases according to the recommendation of ASTRO from 1996 (9). At the 2006 RTOG-ASTRO Consensus conference a new definition of radiation failure was established with as the main aim to establish a better correlation between the definition and clinical outcome. The new definition of radiation failure is a rise of 2 ng/mL above the post-treatment PSA-nadir (lowest value) (10). This definition is applicable for patients treated with or without hormonal therapy.

After HIFU or cryotherapy, a variety of definitions for PSA-relapse have been used (11). Most of these are based on a cut-off of around 1 ng/mL, eventually combined with a negative post-treatment biopsy. As yet, none of these end-points have been validated against clinical progression or survival and therefore it is not possible to give firm recommendations on the definition of biochemical failure.

16.3.3 ***PSA monitoring after radical prostatectomy***

PSA is expected to be undetectable within 6 weeks after a successful radical prostatectomy (12). A persistently elevated PSA level means that PSA-producing tissue remains in the body. In patients treated with radical prostatectomy, this is generally thought to be residual cancer due to either micrometastases that were not detected or undetectable beforehand, or residual disease in the pelvis possibly due to positive surgical margins.

A rapidly increasing PSA level (high PSA velocity, short PSA doubling time) indicates distant metastases, while a later and slowly increasing concentration of PSA is most likely to indicate local disease recurrence. The time to PSA recurrence and tumour differentiation are also important predictive factors distinguishing between local and systemic recurrence (13,14). Both local treatment failure and distant metastases have been shown to occur with undetectable PSA levels. This is very rare and occurs almost only in patients with unfavourable pathology (undifferentiated tumours) (15,16).

This means that, in patients with a relatively favourable pathology (< pT3, pN0, Gleason score < 8), PSA measurement, together with the disease-specific history, could stand as the single test in follow-up after radical prostatectomy.

16.3.4 ***PSA monitoring after radiation therapy***

The PSA level falls slowly after radiotherapy compared with radical prostatectomy. The optimal cut-off value for a favourable PSA nadir after radiotherapy is somewhat controversial. Achieving a PSA nadir of less than 0.5 ng/mL seems to be associated with a favourable outcome (17). The interval before reaching the nadir PSA may be very long and can sometimes take up to 3 years or more. A PSA rising more than 2 ng/mL above the nadir PSA is the current definition of biochemical failure after radiotherapy (10). Also, after radiotherapy, the PSA doubling time has been shown to correlate to the site of recurrence; patients with local recurrence had a doubling time of 13 months compared to 3 months for those with distant failure (18).

16.3.5 ***Digital rectal examination (DRE)***

DRE is performed to assess whether or not there is any sign of local disease recurrence. It is very difficult to interpret the findings of DRE after curative therapy, especially after radiotherapy. A newly detected nodule should raise the suspicion of local disease recurrence.

As mentioned previously, a local disease recurrence after curative treatment is possible without a concomitant rise in PSA level (15,16). However, this has only been proven in patients with unfavourable pathology, i.e. those with undifferentiated tumours. Thus, PSA measurement and DRE comprise the most useful combination of tests as first-line examination in follow-up after radiotherapy or radical prostatectomy, but PSA measurement may well be the only test in cases with favourable pathology (19).

16.3.6 ***Transrectal ultrasonography (TRUS) and biopsy***

TRUS and biopsy have no place in the routine follow-up of asymptomatic patients and nowadays only rarely after biochemical failure. TRUS cannot stand alone as a diagnostic tool, but must usually be combined with biopsy to establish the presence of local disease recurrence. The purpose of the investigation is to confirm a histological diagnosis of local disease recurrence. It is only warranted if the finding of a local recurrence affects the treatment decision (see Section 16 for a more detailed discussion).

*16.3.7 **Bone scintigraphy***

The purpose of bone scintigraphy is to detect skeletal metastases. It is not recommended for the routine follow-up of asymptomatic patients, but may be indicated in individuals with elevated PSA levels for whom the findings will affect the treatment decision. It is also indicated in patients with symptoms arising from the skeleton, since metastatic disease may occur even if PSA is undetectable (15,16).

*16.3.8 **Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)***

CT or MRI have no place in the routine follow-up of asymptomatic patients. They may be used selectively in the evaluation after biochemical failure before treatment decisions are made (see Chapter 18).

16.4 When to follow-up?

Most patients who fail treatment for PCa do so early, even if failure only becomes clinically obvious after years. The patient should therefore be followed-up more closely during the first years after treatment when the risk of failure is highest. PSA measurement, disease-specific history and DRE are recommended at the following intervals: 3, 6 and 12 months postoperatively, every 6 months thereafter until 3 years, and then annually. The purpose of the first clinic visit is mainly to detect treatment-related complications and to assist patients in coping with the new situation. Tumour or patient characteristics may allow alterations to this schedule. For example, patients with poorly differentiated and locally advanced tumours or with positive margins may be followed-up more closely than those with a well-differentiated, intracapsular or specimenconfined tumour. Obviously, advanced age or associated co-morbidity may make further follow-up in asymptomatic patients superfluous.

16.5 Guidelines for follow-up after treatment with curative intent

Recommendations	GR
In asymptomatic patients, a disease-specific history and a serum PSA measurement supplemented by DRE are the recommended tests for routine follow-up. These should be performed at 3, 6 and 12 months after treatment, then every 6 months until 3 years, and then annually.	B
After radical prostatectomy, a serum PSA level of more than 0.2 ng/mL can be associated with residual or recurrent disease.	B
After radiation therapy, a rising PSA level over 2 ng/mL above the nadir PSA, rather than a specific threshold value, is the most reliable sign of persistent or recurrent disease.	B
Both a palpable nodule and a rising serum PSA level can be signs of local disease recurrence.	B
Detection of local recurrence by TRUS and biopsy is only recommended if it will affect the treatment plan. In most cases TRUS and biopsy are not necessary before second-line therapy.	B
Metastasis may be detected by pelvic CT/MRI or bone scan. In asymptomatic patients, these examinations may be omitted if the serum PSA level is less than 20 ng/mL but data on this topic are sparse.	C
Routine bone scans and other imaging studies are not recommended in asymptomatic patients. If a patient has bone pain, a bone scan should be considered irrespective of the serum PSA level.	B

16.6 References

1. Han M, Partin AW, Pound CR, et al. Long-term biochemical disease-free and cancerspecific survival following anatomic radical retropubic prostatectomy. The 15-year Johns Hopkins experience. Urol Clin North Am 2001 Aug;28(3)555-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11590814
2. Rosser CJ, Chichakli R, Levy LB, et al. Biochemical disease-free survival in men younger than 60 years with prostate cancer treated with external beam radiation. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):536-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131304
3. Horwitz EM, Thames HD, Kuban DA, et al. Definitions of biochemical failure that best predict clinical failure in patients with prostate cancer treated with external beam radiation alone: a multi-institutional pooled analysis. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):797-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711272
4. Taylor JA III, Koff SG, Dauser DA, et al. The relationship of ultrasensitive measurements of prostatespecific antigen levels to prostate cancer recurrence after radical prostatectomy. BJU Int 2006 Sep;98(3):540-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16925750

5. Stephenson AJ, Kattan MW, Eastham JA, et al. Defining biochemical recurrence of prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy: a proposal for a standardized definition. J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug;24(24):3973-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921049
6. Boccon-Gibod L, Djavan WB, Hammerer P, et al. Management of prostate-specific antigen relapse in prostate cancer: a European Consensus. Int J Clin Pract 2004 Apr;58(4):382-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15161124
7. Moul JW. Prostate specific antigen only progression of prostate cancer. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6): 1632-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799151
8. Schild SE, Wong WW, Novicki DE, et al. Detection of residual prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy with the Abbott Imx PSA assay. Urology 1996 Jun;47(6):878-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8677580
9. American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology Consensus Panel. Consensus statement: guidelines for PSA following radiation therapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997 Mar;37(5):1035-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9169810
10. Roach III M, Hanks G, Thames jr H, et al. Defining biochemical failure following radiotherapy with or without hormonal therapy in men with clinically localized prostate cancer: recommendations of the RTOG-ASTRO Phoenix consensus conference. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006 Jul;65(4):965-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16798415
11. Aus G. Current status of HIFU and cryotherapy in prostate cancer - a review. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5): 927-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16971038
12. Stamey TA, Kabalin JN, McNeal JE, et al. Prostate specific antigen in the diagnosis and treatment of adenocarcinoma of the prostate. II. Radical prostatectomy treated patients. J Urol 1989 May;141(5): 1076-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2468795
13. Partin AW, Pearson JD, Landis PK, et al. Evaluation of serum prostate-specific antigen velocity after radical prostatectomy to distinguish local recurrence from distant metastases. Urology 1994 May;43(5):649-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513108
14. Trapasso JG, deKernion JB, Smith RB, et al. The incidence and significance of detectable levels of serum prostate specific antigen after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1994 Nov;152(5 Pt 2):1821-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523728
15. Oefelein MG, Smith N, Carter M, et al. The incidence of prostate cancer progression with undetectable serum prostate specific antigen in a series of 394 radical prostatectomies. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):2128-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500474
16. Leibman BD, Dilliouglugil O, Wheeler TM, et al. Distant metastasis after radical prostatectomy in patients without an elevated serum prostate specific antigen level. Cancer 1995 Dec;76(12):2530-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625081
17. Ray ME, Thames HD, Levy LB, et al. PSA nadir predicts biochemical and distant failure after external beam radiotherapy for prostate cancer: a multi-institutional analysis. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006 Mar;64(4):1140-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16198506
18. Hancock SL, Cox RS, Bagshaw MA. Prostate specific antigen after radiotherapy for prostate cancer: a reevaluation of long-term biochemical control and the kinetics of recurrence in patients treated at Stanford University. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1412-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7544843
19. Chaplin BM, Wildhagen MF, Schroder FH, et al. Digital rectal examination is no longer necessary in the routine follow-up of men with undetectable prostate specific antigen after radical prostatectomy: the implications for follow-up. Eur Urol 2005 Aug;48(6):906-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16126322

17. FOLLOW-UP AFTER HORMONAL TREATMENT

17.1 Introduction

A large proportion of patients treated with hormonal therapy have either metastatic or locally advanced tumours at diagnosis. This will affect the scheme of follow-up because biochemical failure is often associated with rapid symptomatic progression.

17.2 Purpose of follow-up

The main objectives of following-up these patients are to:

- monitor the response to treatment;
- ensure compliance with treatment;
- detect potential complications of endocrine therapy;
- guide the modalities of palliative symptomatic treatment at the time of CRPC.

It is important to be clear about which complementary investigations are helpful at different stages of the disease to avoid unnecessary patient examinations and excessive economic cost. In addition, strict recommendations for follow-up procedures are only useful if effective therapeutic strategies are available in cases of disease progression. To date, the issue of early versus late initiation of non-hormonal treatment in CRPC has still not been resolved, so follow-up should be performed on an individual basis. Based on current knowledge, it is not possible to formulate level 1 evidence guidelines for follow-up procedures following hormonal therapy.

17.3 Methods of follow-up

17.3.1 ***Prostate-specific antigen monitoring***

Prostate-specific antigen is a good marker for following the course of metastatic PCa. The initial PSA level can be a reflection of the extent of metastatic disease, although some poorly differentiated tumours do not secrete PSA. In recent decades, the PSA value has been used to predict the duration of response to endocrine treatment, based on either the initial pre-treatment value or the PSA decrease during the first 3-6 months. However, the prognostic value of the pre-treatment PSA value is variably assessed in the literature and should not be used alone to predict the duration of treatment response (1).

Treatment response may be assessed using the change in serum PSA level as a surrogate endpoint for survival in patients with newly diagnosed metastatic PCa after hormonal treatment has been initiated. Patients with the lowest absolute value of serum PSA (< 0.2 ng/mL) have been shown to have the best survival compared to patients with a value of 0.2-4.0 ng/mL or > 4.0 ng/mL (2). Similar results have been seen in other studies of locally advanced and metastatic PCa (3-5). The PSA response has been shown to be equally important in patients treated with hormonal therapy, following a rising PSA after treatments with curative intent (radical prostatectomy, radiation therapy). Patients with the best response also had the best survival (6,7).

Despite its usefulness in determining treatment response in individual patients, the role of PSA as a surrogate end-point in clinical trials is more controversial (8). After the initial phase of response to endocrine treatment, patients should be regularly monitored to detect and treat any complications of endocrine escape. Clinical disease progression occurs after a median interval of about 12-18 months of treatment in patients with stage M1 disease. It is well established that regular PSA control in asymptomatic patients allows the earlier detection of biochemical escape because a rise in PSA level usually precedes the onset of clinical symptoms by several months. However, it must be stressed that the PSA level is not the absolute marker of escape and should not be used alone as a follow-up test. Clinical disease progression (usually bone pain) with normal PSA levels has been reported to occur.

17.3.2 ***Creatinine, haemoglobin and liver function monitoring***

Creatinine monitoring has some value because it can detect upper urinary tract obstruction in cases of advanced cancer, which might need to be relieved by, for example, percutaneous nephrostomy or a JJ-stent.

Haemoglobin and liver function tests may suggest disease progression and/or toxicity of hormonal treatment, which can lead to interruption of hormonal treatment (i.e. liver toxicity from non-steroidal antiandrogens). It is important to remember that haemoglobin levels will decrease by about 20% with androgen deprivation (9).

Alkaline phosphatase and its bone-specific isoenzymes have the advantage of not being directly influenced by hormonal therapy compared with PSA. These markers may be used to monitor patients with stage M1b disease. It should be remembered that increases in serum alkaline phosphatase may be due to androgen-induced osteoporosis (10), and in this context, it may be helpful to determine the level of bone-specific alkaline phosphatase.

17.3.3 ***Bone scan, ultrasound and chest X-ray***

In routine practice, asymptomatic patients with a stable PSA level should not undergo a bone scan at regular intervals, because disease progression is more reliably detected by PSA monitoring, which also has a lower cost (11,12).

Moreover, it is also sometimes difficult to interpret bone scans. Thus, in an asymptomatic patient, the therapeutic approach is not modified by the appearance of a new site of uptake or deterioration of pre-existing lesions. Recently, the PCWG2 has clarified the definition of bone scan progression as the appearance of at least two new lesions (13).

Clinical or laboratory suspicion of disease progression indicates the need for a chest X-ray or renal and hepatic ultrasound. Imaging modalities must also be guided by symptoms. However, these examinations are not recommended for routine use in asymptomatic patients. In CRPC disease, follow-up examinations should be individualised with the aim of maintaining the patient's quality of life.

During long-term ADT, it may be necessary to introduce regular measurement of BMD (LE: 3), based on the initial T-score (14). Bone mineral density should be measured every 2 years if the initial T-score < 1.0, or every year if the T-score is between 1.0 and 2.5, in the absence of associated risk factors (LE: 4). Otherwise, active protective bone treatment should have started at the initiation of ADT (see Chapter 12).

17.4 Testosterone monitoring

Most PCa patients receiving LHRH analogues will achieve serum testosterone values at or below the castration level (< 20 ng/dL). However, about 13-38% of patients fail to achieve this therapeutic goal, while 2-17% of patients do not achieve a serum testosterone level below 50 ng/dL (15-17). Furthermore, up to 24% of men treated with LHRH analogues may experience testosterone surges (testosterone > 50 ng/dL) during long-term treatment upon re-administration of the agonist drug, which is described as the 'acute on-chronic effect' or 'breakthrough responses' (16,18).

In view of these findings, the measurement of serum testosterone levels, as well as serum PSA levels, should be considered as part of clinical practice for men on LHRH therapy. The timing of testosterone measurements is not clearly defined. The first evaluation of testosterone level can be recommended at 1 month after initiating LHRH therapy to check the nadir testosterone level achieved before re-administration of the agonist drug. A 6-month testosterone level assessment may be performed to evaluate the effectiveness of treatment and to ensure the castration level is being maintained. If it is not being maintained, switching to another LHRH agent or surgical orchiectomy can be attempted. In patients with a rising PSA and/or clinical signs of progression, serum testosterone must be evaluated in all cases to confirm a castrate-resistant state.

17.5 Monitoring of metabolic complications

Androgen deprivation therapy is beneficial in patients with prostate cancer, but has a greater range of complications than might be expected (see Chapter 12). The most common side-effects of low testosterone levels include hot flushes, lack of libido, erectile dysfunction, gynaecomastia and loss of bone mineral density. In addition, recent studies have suggested that men with low testosterone levels have a higher prevalence of metabolic complications (19), including insulin resistance, arterial stiffness, diabetes and metabolic syndrome. Research has shown that the metabolic syndrome is present in more than 50% of men undergoing long-term ADT, predisposing them to a higher cardiovascular risk (20). Men with metabolic syndrome are almost three times more likely to die of coronary heart disease and other cardiovascular diseases (21), which have now become the most common cause of death in prostate cancer patients, even exceeding prostate cancer mortality (22).

In view of these findings, a cardiology consultation may be beneficial in men with a history of cardiovascular disease and men older than 65 years prior to starting ADT. All patients should be screened for diabetes by checking fasting glucose and HbA1c (at baseline and then every 3 months [LE: 3]). In selected cases, glucose tolerance testing may be required. Men with impaired glucose tolerance and/or diabetes should be referred for an endocrine consultation. Patients on ADT should be given advice on modifying their lifestyle (e.g. diet, exercise, smoking cessation, etc.) and should be treated for any existing conditions, such as diabetes, hyperlipidaemia, and/or hypertension (23,24). The patient's GP or family physician should probably be more involved in those patients at risk of cardiovascular disease, including monitoring of fasting glucose, lipids profile and blood pressure, which is recommended in all patients receiving long-term ADT. Furthermore, the risk-to-benefit ratio of ADT must be considered in patients with a higher risk of cardiovascular complications, especially if it is possible to delay starting ADT (19,25).

Monitoring bone health is also important, particularly serum levels of Vitamin D and calcium. If needed, supplements should be given so that the patient receives a daily intake of at least 1200 mg/day of calcium and 1000 UI of vitamin D. Preventive therapy with biphosphonates or denosumab should be considered in patients who have an initial T-score of less than -2.5 on dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), which is the definition of osteoporosis. However, optimal bone monitoring using DEXA is still controversial and should

be prospectively evaluated. It is currently suggested that bone monitoring should be performed every 2 years after initiation of castration, provided there are no other risk factors (26), and every year if there are risk factors (27,28).

17.6 When to follow-up

After initiation of hormonal treatment, it is recommended that patients be followed-up at 3 and 6 months. These guidelines must be individualised, and each patient should be told to contact his physician in the event of troublesome symptoms.

17.6.1 ***Stage M0 patients***

If there is a good treatment response, i.e. symptomatic improvement, good psychological coping, good treatment compliance, and a serum PSA level of less than 4 ng/mL, follow-up visits are scheduled every 6 months.

17.6.2 ***Stage M1 patients***

If there is a good treatment response, i.e. good symptomatic improvement, good psychological coping, good treatment compliance, and a serum PSA level of less than 4 ng/mL, follow-up is scheduled every 3 to 6 months.

17.6.3 ***Castration-refractory PCa***

Patients whose disease progresses, or who do not respond according to the criteria mentioned above, warrant an individualised follow-up scheme.

17.7 Guidelines for follow-up after hormonal treatment

Recommendation	GR
Patients should be evaluated at 3 and 6 months after the initiation of treatment.	
As a minimum, tests should include serum PSA measurement, digital rectal examination (DRE), serum testosterone and careful evaluation of symptoms in order to assess the treatment response and the side-effects of the treatments given.	B
If patients undergo intermittent androgen deprivation, PSA and testosterone should be monitored in 3-month intervals during the treatment pause.	C
Follow-up should be tailored for the individual patient, according to symptoms, prognostic factors and the treatment given.	C
In patients with stage M0 disease with a good treatment response, follow-up is scheduled every 6 months, and should include as a minimum a disease-specific history, DRE and serum PSA determination.	C
In patients with stage M1 disease with a good treatment response, follow-up is scheduled for every 3 to 6 months. As a minimum, this should include a disease-specific history, DRE and serum PSA determination, and is frequently supplemented with haemoglobin, serum creatinine and alkaline phosphatase measurements. The testosterone level should be checked, especially during the first year.	C
Patients (especially with M1b status) should be advised about the clinical signs that could suggest spinal cord compression.	A
When disease progression occurs, or if the patient does not respond to the treatment given, the follow-up needs to be individualised.	C
In patients with suspected progression, the testosterone level must be checked. By definition, CRPC is based on the assumption that the patient is castrated (at least T < 50 ng/dL).	
Routine imaging of stable patients is not recommended.	B

17.8 References

1. Petros JA, Andriole GL. Serum PSA after antiandrogen therapy. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Nov;20(4):749-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7505983

2. Hussain M, Tangen CM, Higano C, et al. Absolute prostate-specific antigen value after androgen deprivation is a strong independent predictor of survival in new metastatic prostate cancer: data from Southwest Oncology Group Trial 9346 (INT-0162). J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug;24(24):3984-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921051
3. Kwak C, Jeong SJ, Park MS, et al. Prognostic significance of the nadir prostate specific antigen level after hormone therapy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):995-1000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187207
4. Collette L, de Reijke TM, Schröder FH; EORTC Genito-Urinary Group. Prostate specific antigen: a prognostic marker of survival in good prognosis metastatic prostate cancer? (EORTC 30892). Eur Urol 2003 Aug;44(2):182-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12875936
5. Robinson D, Sandblom G, Johansson R, et al; Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group (SPCG)-5. Prediction of survival of metastatic prostate cancer based on early serial measurements of prostate specific antigen and alkaline phosphatase. J Urol 2008 Jan;179(1):117-22; discussion 122-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17997442
6. D'Amico AV, Moul JW, Carroll PR, et al. Intermediate end point for prostate cancer-specific mortality following salvage hormonal therapy for prostate-specific antigen failure. J Natl Cancer Inst 2004 Apr 7;96(7):509-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15069112
7. Stewart AJ, Scher HI, Chen MH, et al. Prostate-specific antigen nadir and cancer-specific mortality following hormonal therapy for prostate-specific antigen failure. J Clin Oncol 2005 Sep 20;23(27): 6556-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16170163
8. Collette L, BurzyKowski T, Carroll KJ, et al. Is prostate antigen a valid surrogate end point for survival in hormonally treated patients with metastatic prostate cancer? Joint research of the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer, the Limburgs Universitair Centrum, and AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals. J Clin Oncol 2005 Sep 1;23(25):6139-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16135480
9. Strum SB, McDermed JE, Scholz MC, et al. Anaemia associated with androgen deprivation in patients with prostate cancer receiving combined hormone blockade. Br J Urol 1997 Jun;79(6):933-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9202563
10. Daniell HW. Osteoporosis due to androgen deprivation therapy in men with prostate cancer. Urology 2001 Aug;58(2 Suppl 1):101-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11502461
11. Miller PD, Eardley I, Kirby RS. Prostate specific antigen and bone scan correlation in the staging and monitoring of patients with prostatic cancer. Br J Urol 1992 Sep;70(3):295-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1384920
12. Sissons GR, Clements R, Peeling WB, et al. Can serum prostate-specific antigen replace bone scintigraphy in the follow-up of metastatic prostatic cancer? Br J Radiol 1992;65(778):861-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1384917
13. Scher HI, Halabi S, Tannock I, et al; Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group. Design and end points of clinical trials for patients with progressive prostate cancer and castrate levels of testosterone: recommendations of the Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group. J Clin Oncol 2008 Mar 1;26(7):1148-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309951
14. Higano CS. Bone loss and the evolving role of bisphosphonate therapy in prostate cancer. Urol Oncol 2003 Sep-Oct;21(5):392-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670551
15. Tombal B, Berges R. Corrigendum to: How good do current LHRH agonists control testosterone? Can this be improved with Eligard®? [Eur Urol Suppl 4/8 (2005) 30-6]. Eur Urol 2006;49(5):937.
16. Morote J, Esquena S, Abascal JM, et al. Failure to maintain a suppressed level of serum testosterone during long-acting depot luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone agonist therapy in patients with advanced prostate cancer. Urol Int 2006;77(2):135-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888418
17. Yri OE, Bjoro T, Fossa SD. Failure to achieve castration levels in patients using leuprolide acetate in locally advanced prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2006 Jan;49(1):54-8; discussion 58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16314038

18. Sharifi R, Browneller R; Leuprolide Study Group. Serum testosterone suppression and potential for agonistic stimulation during chronic treatment with monthly and 3-month depot formulations of leuprolide acetate for advanced prostate cancer. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1001-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187208
19. Saylor PJ, Smith MR. Metabolic complications of androgen deprivation therapy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):1998-2006; discussion 2007-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19286225
20. Braga-Basaria M, Dobs AS, Muller DC, et al. Metabolic syndrome in men with prostate cancer undergoing long-term androgen-deprivation therapy. J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug 20;24(24):3979-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921050
21. Tsai HK, D'Amico AV, Sadetsky N, et al. Androgen deprivation therapy for localized prostate cancer and the risk of cardiovascular mortality. J Natl Cancer Inst 2007 Oct 17;99:1516-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17925537
22. Lu-Yao G, Stukel TA, Yao SL. Changing patterns in competing causes of death in men with prostate cancer: a population based study. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2285-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126804
23. Shahani S, Braga-Basaria M, Basaria S. Androgen deprivation therapy in prostate cancer and metabolic risk for atherosclerosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008 Jun;93(6):2042-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18349064
24. Mohile SG, Mustian K, Bylow K, et al. Management of complications of androgen deprivation therapy in the older man. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2009 Jun;70(3):235-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18952456
25. Schwandt A, Garcia JA. Complications of androgen deprivation therapy in prostate cancer. Curr Opin Urol 2009 May;19(3):322-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19318949
26. Conde FA, Aronson WJ. Risk factors for male osteoporosis. Urol Oncol 2003 Sep-Oct;21(5):380-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670549
27. Higano CS. Bone loss and the evolving role of bisphosphonate therapy in prostate cancer. Urol Oncol 2003 Sep-Oct;21(5):392-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14670551
28. Hamdy RC, Baim S, Broy SB, et al. Algorithm for the management of osteoporosis. South Med J 2010 Oct;103(10):1009-15; quiz 1016. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20818296

18. TREATMENT OF BIOCHEMICAL FAILURE AFTER TREATMENT WITH CURATIVE INTENT

18.1 Background

Primary curative procedures, such as RP and radiotherapy, are well-established therapeutic options in the management of localised PCa. Technical advances in surgery and radiation therapy have improved therapeutic efficacy and decreased treatment-associated morbidity and toxicity, respectively. However, despite these improvements, there is still a significant risk of cancer recurrence after therapy. Between 27% and 53% of all patients undergoing RP or radiation therapy develop local or distant recurrences within 10 years of initial therapy and 16-35% of patients receive second-line treatment within five years of initial therapy (1-5,6).

18.2 Definitions

*18.2.1 **Definition of treatment failure***

Treatment failure was previously defined as recurrence on DRE or the development of metastatic disease. Currently, treatment failure is defined as a rising PSA level based on a study of Pound et al. (7), which showed that no patient followed for more than five years developed any recurrence without a concomitant rise in PSA.

The level of PSA that defines treatment failure differs between men who have undergone RP and men treated with radiotherapy. Following radical retropubic prostatectomy (RRP), there is an international consensus that recurrent cancer may be defined by two consecutive values of PSA > 0.2 ng/mL (6,8). However, the most appropriate definition of biochemical progression after RP remains uncertain. A retrospective analysis of 2782 men who had undergone RP for clinically localised PCa (9) was used to determine the best PSA cut-off point

for defining biochemical recurrence. Another study found that once PSA recurrence was detected, there was a subsequent increase in PSA in 49%, 62% and 72% of patients with PSA levels of 0.2 ng/mL, 0.3 ng/mL, and 0.4 ng/mL, respectively (9). These data indicate that only half of patients with a PSA of 0.2 ng/mL will show further progression and can therefore be managed initially by surveillance.

Similar data have been presented by Stephenson et al. (10). The study identified a PSA value of > 0.4 ng/mL as the best cut-off level to explain the development of distant metastasis among 10 candidates. This level was estimated using definitions developed from a retrospective review of 75 patients, who had developed distant metastases following RP. A cut-off of 0.4 ng/mL is therefore appropriate to define progression with clinical relevance, i.e. necessitating salvage treatment.

Following radiotherapy, three consecutive increases in PSA are considered to provide a reasonable definition of biochemical relapse, according to ASTRO (11). This new definition indicates a relapse if the PSA increase is > 2 ng/mL higher than the PSA nadir value, independent of the serum concentration of the nadir (12).

18.2.2 ***Definitions of recurrence***

A recurrence of CaP can be defined as:

- Following RP, PSA values > 0.2 ng/mL confirmed by two consecutive measures.
- Following radiotherapy, a PSA value of 2 ng/mL above the nadir after radiotherapy.

18.3 Local or systemic relapse

Once a PSA relapse has been diagnosed, it is of major importance to determine whether the recurrence has developed at local or distant sites. About 50% of patients who have undergone radical retropubic prostatectomy will have local disease, while the remainder will have either distantdisease alone, or distant and local disease (11).

Several important parameters help to differentiate between local or distant relapse:

- timing of the PSA increase after surgery;
- PSA velocity;
- PSA doubling time (PSA DT);
- pathohistological stage;
- Gleason score of the prostatectomy specimen.

PSA elevations developing within the first 2 years following surgery are more often associated with distant recurrences (12). It has been shown that a median PSADT of 4.3 months might be associated with distant relapse, whereas a median PSA DT of 11.7 months predicts local failure (13). According to a recent study (14), a PSA velocity of < 0.75 ng/mL/y was observed in 94% of patients with local recurrence, whereas 56% of patients with distant metastases demonstrated a PSA velocity of > 0.75 ng/mL/y. There is no indication to perform ultrasound-guided biopsies of the vesicourethral anastomosis to diagnose local relapse as this method has low sensitivity and low predictive accuracy in men with rising PSA levels < 1.0 ng/mL.

With radiotherapy, any continuously rising PSA following a nadir after radiation is an indicator for local recurrence, systemic metastatic spread or a combination of both (11,14-16). However, due to the well- known PSA bounce phenomenon, biochemical recurrence is defined by a PSA rise of 2 ng/mL above the PSA nadir according to ASTRO guidelines. After radiotherapy, a late and slowly rising PSA is a sign of local failure only.

Local recurrence of PCa is defined by:

- a prostatic biopsy demonstrating malignant cells at 18 months or longer after initial radiotherapy;

plus

- an associated rise in PSA, although prostate biopsy is only indicated if the patient is a candidate for a secondary local salvage therapy with curative intent;

plus

- no evidence of metastatic spread documented by CT or MR imaging and bone scintigraphy.

18.3.1 ***Definition of local and systemic failure***

The definitions of local and systemic failure are as follows:

- Local failure following RP is predicted with an 80% probability by a PSA increase at 3 years after RP, a PSA DT ≥ 11 months, a Gleason score ≤ 6, and stage ≤ pT3a pN0, pTx R1.
- Systemic failure following RP is predicted with > 80% accuracy by a PSA increase.
- At less than 1 year after RP, there is a PSA DT of 4-6 months, a Gleason score of 8-10, and stage pT3b, pTxpN1.

- Local failure after radiotherapy is documented by a positive prostatic biopsy and negative imaging studies.
- Prostatic biopsy after radiotherapy is necessary only if local procedures, such as salvage prostatectomy, are indicated in an individual patient.

18.4 Evaluation of PSA progression

Prior to an extensive diagnostic work-up in patients with PSA relapse following local treatment, men must be stratified into those who are candidates for salvage therapy and those who are not. Men must also be stratified into those who are candidates for local salvage treatment and those who might need systemic therapy. All diagnostic procedures should only be performed if the results will have therapeutic consequences.

In recent years, most patients with PSA progression following initial therapy with curative intent underwent physical and sonographic examinations, as well as radiology or biopsies of the prostatic fossa and the vesicourethral anastomosis to confirm the recurrence identified by serological studies. For patients with asymptomatic PSA-only progression, the yield is very low. Lange et al. (14) have shown that biochemical failure precedes clinical disease by 6-48 months.

In general, DRE is not useful in men with undetectable or very low PSA levels. In a recent study by Öbek et al. (17), it was shown that only 4/72 patients (5.5%) with a PSA recurrence following RP had an abnormal DRE.

Imaging studies are used to differentiate local from systemic relapse to help select the most appropriate treatment modality. However, it must be remembered that most imaging studies are probably not sensitive enough to identify the anatomical location of relapsing PCA at PSA levels < 0.5-1.0 ng/mL.

*18.4.1 **Diagnostic procedures for PSA relapse following RP***

Traditionally, bone scans and abdominal CT scans have been used to evaluate PSA elevations following primary treatment. However, both imaging studies have low sensitivity and specificity and can be safely omitted in the routine work-up of relapsing patients. A recent study (18) looked at bone scans in 144 patients, 122 of whom had undergone RP without hormone treatment, while 22 had received either neoadjuvant or adjuvant androgen-deprivation therapy (ADT). Bone scans in 93 patients with PSA recurrence identified metastatic disease in only 4.1% of men who had undergone RP and 27% of men who had been treated with ADT. The lowest PSA associated with positive findings was 46 ng/mL in the absence of adjuvant ADT, whereas the lowest PSA value was 15.47 ng/mL in patients who had received hormonal therapy.

The probability of a positive bone scan remains < 5% until the serum PSA reaches at least 40 ng/mL. Similar data have been achieved by other groups, which have demonstrated that patients with a true positive bone scan had an average PSA level of > 60 ng/mL and a PSA velocity of 22 ng/mL/year (19,20). Logistic regression analysis showed that PSA and PSA velocity were good predictors of bone scan results and PSA velocity for CT scan results. Of 132 patients with biochemical recurrence, 9.4% had a positive bone scan and 14% had a positive CT scan. However, there may be a slight difference between patients after radical retropubic prostatectomy and patients after radiation therapy, as shown by Johnstone et al. (21), who found that 5% and 30%, respectively, of bone scans, were positive.

In summary, bone scintigraphy and CT scans are of no additional diagnostic value, unless the PSA serum levels are higher than 20 ng/mL or the PSA velocity is more than 20 ng/mL/year.

Endorectal coil imaging is a useful technique to detect local recurrences after RP (22). In a series of 48 patients, local recurrence was correctly identified in 81%, with the mean PSA being 2 ng/mL at diagnosis.

The diagnostic accuracy of endorectal MRI (eMRI) was investigated in a series of 72 men with PSA relapse following RP (23). The mean total PSA was1.23 +/- 1.3 ng/mL, with men undergoing eMRI using a 1.5-Tesla system. The data were compared to standard references for local recurrence, including prostatectomy bed biopsy results, choline positron emission tomography results, PSA reduction or increase after pelvic radiotherapy, and PSA modification during active surveillance. Sensitivity, specificity, predictive positive value, negative predictive value and accuracy were 61.4%, 82.1%, 84.4%, 57.5% and 69.4% for unenhanced eMRI, and 84.1%, 89.3%, 92.5%, 78.1% and 86.1% for enhanced eMRI. The two evaluations showed a statistically significant difference in accuracy (chi(2) = 5.33, p = 0.02) and sensitivity (chi(2) = 9.00m, p = 0.0027).

Although eMRI appears to be very sensitive and predictive in identifying local recurrences following RP, it is currently not a routine imaging modality to be performed in every case, as local versus systemic relapse

must be differentiated at PSA levels < 0.5 ng/mL (see Section 18.6). At this PSA level, eMRI is not sufficiently sensitive or accurate.

Positron emission tomography (PET) has been successfully applied in many human cancers for early identification of local or systemic recurrences. In PCa, there are few, but promising, published data on the clinical efficacy of PET in detecting local recurrences after RP (23-25). However, it must be kept in mind that the uptake of ^{11}C-choline is not specific for PCa and may also be due to inflammatory intraprostatic lesions.

In a series of 31 patients with biochemical progression after RP, ^{11}C-acetate-PET demonstrated a high sensitivity and specificity for the detection of local recurrences when the PSA serum level was > 1 ng/mL (24). In another recent series of 43 patients with newly diagnosed CaP, there was a significant correlation between ^{11}C-choline uptake and the intraprostatic location of PCa in RP specimens (26). Similar results have been reported for the detection of locally recurrent PCa after radiation therapy (27). However, ^{11}C-PET was significantly less sensitive at detecting extraprostatic extension compared with MRI.

The most recent series evaluating the role of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT in men with biochemical recurrence after RP have shown that metastases were more likely to be identified at higher PSA levels. ^{11}C-choline PET/CT was able to locate metastases in 20-36% of men with PSA levels < 1 ng/mL, increasing to 63-83% of men with PSA levels > 3 ng/mL (28-31).

In 190 patients with PSA relapse following RP, Castelucci et al. (32) investigated how the ^{11}C-choline PET/CT detection rate was affected by:

- trigger PSA level (i.e. total PSA level at the time of the scan);
- PSA velocity (PSA VEL);
- PSA doubling time (PSA DT) (Table 20).

The study found that the mean PSA relapse was 4.2 ng/mL (median 2.1, range 0.2-25.4). Disease relapse was detected by ^{11}C-choline PET/CT in 74/190 patients (38.9%). The study also found that trigger PSA values were statistically different between PET-positive patients (median PSA 4.0 ng/mL) and PET-negative patients (median PSA 1.4 ng/mL) (p = 0.0001), with the optimal cutoff point for trigger PSA being 2.43 ng/mL. In 106 patients, PSA DT and PSA level values were statistically different between patients with PET-positive (p = 0.04) and PET-negative scans (p = 0.03).

Table 20: Relationship between different measurements of PSA and ^{11}C-choline PET/CT detection rate

PSA measurement	n	^{11}C-choline PET/CT detection rate (%)
Trigger PSA		
< 1 ng/mL	51	19
1 < PSA < 2 ng/mL	39	25
2 < PSA < 5 ng/mL	51	41
PSA > 5 ng/mL	49	67
PSA velocity		
< 1 ng/mL/y	33	12
1 < PSA VEL < 2 ng/mL/y	26	34
2 < PSA VEL < 5 ng/mL/y	19	42
PSA VEL > 5 ng/mL/y	28	70
PSA doubling time		
PSA DT > 6 mo	45	20
4 < PSA DT < 6 mo	20	40
2 < PSA DT < 4 mo	31	48
PSA DT < 1 mo	10	60

A recent publication from Giovacchini et al. (32) comprising 109 patients with rising PSA level and negative conventional imaging studies concluded that ^{11}C-choline PET/CT might be helpful in restaging PCA but it

should not be used to guide therapy. The authors found that only 12 of 109 patients (11%) had positive PET/CT findings. Scans were positive in 5%, 15%, and 28% of patients with PSA < 1ng/mL, between 1 and 2 ng/mL, and > 2ng/mL, respectively ($p < 0.05$). The use of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT in all men with a rising PSA level > 1 ng/mL would result in 85% incidence of unnecessary examinations, significant increase of medical costs, and no benefit for the individual patient.

Another retrospective study of 37 patients scheduled for salvage radiation therapy after RP (34) reported that about 13% of the patients demonstrated ^{11}C-choline PET/CT-positive lymph nodes outside the prostatic fossa, implicating an extension of the target volume. However, none of the lesions was verified histologically, and the mean PSA of choline-positive patients (1.1 ng/mL, range 0.5-1.8 ng/mL) was significantly higher than in ^{11}C-choline PET/CT-negative patients (0.4 ng/mL, range: 0.3-0.7 ng/mL).

The most recent review published by Picchio et al. (35) has concluded that the routine use of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT cannot be recommended for PSA values < 1 ng/mL. Its accuracy is correlated to PSA value, PSA DT, and other pathological features. The authors propose that ^{11}C-choline PET/CT may be proposed as a guide for individualised treatment of recurrence. A similar conclusion can be made from another recent study by Castellucci et al (32).

However, the indication to perform ^{11}C-choline PET/CT must be placed in the context of the above-mentioned clinical parameters. It therefore remains doubtful whether a patient with elevated PSA, rapid PSA DT and a prostatectomy Gleason score > 8 will receive therapy other than ADT based on the findings of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT.

In summary, the role and the diagnostic accuracy of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT in men with rising PSA following RP is dependent on the absolute PSA, PSA DT, and PS AV. The higher the PSA level and the faster PSA DT, the better the predictive value of this imaging modality. However, even in patients with PSA values > 2 ng/mL and negative imaging studies, ^{11}C-choline PET/CT is positive in only 28% of patients. There is therefore an urgent need for well-conducted and histologically controlled trials to explore the potential role of ^{11}C-choline PET/CT.

The role of choline PET/CT to detect local or systemic recurrences in men with PSA relapse following radiotherapy is unclear and based on very few studies (36,37). Thus, no final recommendations can be made. Its sensitivity and specificity with regard to the detection of lymph node metastases are less reliable, and the routine use of ^{11}C-PET cannot therefore be recommended, especially not for PSA values < 1 ng/mL.

It has been common practice to perform transrectal ultrasound (TRUS)-guided biopsies of the prostatic fossa, the anastomosis or the prostate gland to exclude local recurrence after radical retropubic prostatectomy or radiotherapy. However, according to available studies, routine biopsy of the vesicourethral anastomosis appears not to be justified based on a verification rate of only 54% (38-40). Only in the presence of a palpable lesion or a hypoechoic lesion on TRUS can the diagnostic yield of the biopsy be improved to approximately 80%. Furthermore, there is a strong correlation between the positive biopsy rate and PSA serum concentrations (38-40); 28% and 70% of the biopsies were positive if the PSA level was, respectively, below 0.5 ng/mL or greater than 2.0 ng/mL.
Thus, it is now commonsense that routine anastomotic biopsy is not indicated, and the use of PSA and PSA DT is sufficient for clinical practice. In addition, PSA-free survival in biopsy-proven recurrences does not differ significantly compared with PSA-only recurrences.

*18.4.2 **Diagnostic studies for PSA relapse following radiation therapy***

With regard to PSA relapses following radiation therapy, routine prostate biopsy should no longer be performed for the evaluation of PSA-only recurrences, according to an ASTRO consensus recommendation (15). However, prostate biopsy documenting local recurrence represents the main cornerstone in the decision-making process for salvage RP in patients with rising PSA levels following a nadir after radiation therapy (41). It is a general recommendation to wait about 18 months and three months following radiation therapy or seeds, and cryotherapy or high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU), respectively. Patients with rising PSA and viable cancer on biopsy 2 years after radiation therapy have true locally recurrent disease and might be candidates for salvage RP.

Recent studies have evaluated the role of eMRI, MRI spectroscopy and dynamic-contrast enhanced MRI in the identification of locally recurrent PCA following radiation therapy (42-44). These studies have demonstrated that locally recurrent PCA can be differentiated from benign nodules due to the low T2-weighted signal intensity. Endorectal MRI and MR spectroscopy were more sensitive than TRUS or TRUS-guided prostate biopsies

to detect viable PCa. Endorectal MRI has also contributed important information about the presence of extraprostatic extension and seminal vesicle invasion with a sensitivity of 86% and a specificity of 96%.

Endorectal MRI is therefore strongly recommended in the diagnostic work-up of men with PSA relapse after radiation therapy, who might be candidates for secondary local salvage therapy with curative intent.

*18.4.3 **Diagnostic procedures in patients with PSA relapse***

Following RP, CT scans of the pelvis and abdomen are of low sensitivity and specificity in patients with PSA levels < 20 ng/mL or a PSA velocity of < 2 ng/mL/y. Endorectal MRI or PET scans may help to detect local recurrences if PSA is > 1.0 ng/mL, but is not routine clinical practice for the early detection of local relapses.

Following radiation therapy, local recurrence is documented by a positive biopsy > 18 months after the procedure. Endorectal MRI is of valuable importance for men who are candidates for radical salvage prostatectomy.

18.5 Treatment of PSA-only recurrences

The timing and mode of treatment of PSA-only recurrence after RP or radiation therapy remains controversial. After RRP observation, the therapeutic options are:

- radiation therapy to the prostatic bed;
- (complete) androgen blockade (CAB);
- intermittent androgen deprivation (IAD);
- combination of antiandrogens with 5-α-reductase inhibitors;
- early chemohormonal approaches.

These same therapeutic options may be applied to PSA recurrences following radiation therapy. In addition, salvage prostatectomy, cryotherapy or brachytherapy may be indicated in carefully selected patients.

*18.5.1 **Radiation therapy for PSA-only recurrence after RP***

Three large RCTs in adjuvant radiation have now been published (45-48). All three trials showed a benefit with adjuvant radiotherapy of at least 15% at 5 years in biochemical recurrence-free survival.

The largest trial (EORTC-22911, n = 1005) (46) and the smallest trial (ARO-96-02, n = 307) (47) trial were powered to detect a benefit in biochemical disease recurrence-free survival, while metastasis-free survival was the primary endpoint of the third trial, SWOG-S8794 (n = 431) (47). The three trials had similar inclusion criteria; however, the EORTC trial also included pT2R1 patients, while the other two trials allowed only pT3 cancers with or without a positive resection margin. In all three trials, quite a high proportion of patients (63-68%) had a positive surgical margin.

It should be noted that the post-operative PSA level of men before they were randomised to adjuvant radiotherapy was different between the three trials. In the German ARO-96-02 trial, only men with a PSA < 0.1 ng/mL were eligible for randomisation. In the EORTC trial, 11% of men had a PSA level > 0.2 ng/mL prior to randomisation and 34% in the SWOG trial. Thus, a substantial number of patients in the EORTC and SWOG trials received ‘salvage‘ radiation therapy rather than adjuvant radiotherapy for a non-normalised PSA. It is therefore interesting that not all men in the non-adjuvant arms of the trials were treated with salvage radiotherapy by the time of a biochemical recurrence: delayed or salvage radiotherapy to the prostatic fossa was administered to 55% of men with a rising PSA level in the EORTC trial and to 33% of men in the SWOG trial. Thus, the trials were not able to evaluate whether adjuvant radiation was superior to salvage radiation as in the control arm, as at most only half of the men received radiation at the time of PSA recurrence.

Indeed, the authors of the EORTC trial suggested that salvage radiation may be equivalent to adjuvant therapy provided the PSA is lower than 1 ng/mL (46). However, only the SWOG trial was powered to address the effect of delayed radiation since it was the only trial with metastasis-free survival as the primary endpoint. In the SWOG trial, men in the control arm were less likely to receive salvage radiation (33%). However, it took a median follow-up of over 12 years before metastasis-free survival improve d in the adjuvant treatment arm suggesting that adjuvant therapy may not be helpful in men with a life expectancy < 10 years (45,47). Recently, it has been demonstrated that patients in the control group had a higher frequency of Gleason score 8-10 CaP and were more likely to not receive ADT at the time of PSA relapse.

There have been many studies on the use of radiation therapy for PSA-only recurrence following RRP. As a result there is a growing body of parameters predicting outcome that may help to differentiate between the

need for observation, radiation or hormonal therapy. As confirmed by various studies, the pre-radiation PSA level is critically important for optimal treatment results (41-44,49-53):

- Applying a pre-radiation cut-off of < 2.5 ng/mL, Wu et al. (49) and Schild et al. (50) reported disease-free survival rates of 53% and 76%, compared with 8% and 26%, respectively, for patients with PSA serum levels > 2.5 ng/mL.
- Forman et al. (51) demonstrated a disease-free survival rate of 83% versus 33% in patients with a PSA-only recurrence of < 2.0 ng/mL and greater than 2.0 ng/mL, respectively.
- Nudell et al. (52) even reported progression-free survival rates of 58% and 21% in patients having undergone radiation of the prostate bed if PSA serum levels were below 1.0 ng/mL or greater than 1.0 ng/mL, respectively.

Based on these data, ASTRO has published a consensus paper recommending a dose of at least 64 Gy when the PSA level is < 1.5 ng/mL after RRP (15). Furthermore, recent papers (53-58) have corroborated the data of early salvage radiation therapy demonstrating a significant difference in 5-year biochemical-free and overall survival rates in patients treated for PSA-recurrence only or for palpable local recurrence. In another study, Stephenson et al. (59) evaluated prognostic models to predict the outcome of salvage radiation therapy on a cohort of 1603 men with PSA progression after RP and operated on in 17 North American tertiary referral centres.

The authors identified a significant relationship between PSA serum concentration at the time of radiation therapy and therapeutic outcome: the 6-year biochemical-free survival was 48% in men with PSA < 0.5 ng/mL, but only 40%, 28%, and 18% in men with PSA levels of 0.51-1 ng/mL, 1.01-1.5 ng/mL and > 1.5 ng/mL, respectively.

For the SWOG and EORTC non-adjuvant radiotherapy arms, the median interval to salvage radiotherapy was 2 and 2.2 years, respectively. In the SWOG 8974 study, 23% of men had a PSA > 1.5 ng/mL prior to salvage radiation. In a subanalysis of the SWOG 8974 trial, Swanson et al. (60) showed that men in all categories of post-prostatectomy PSA level (< 0.2, 0.2-1.0, > 1.0 ng/mL) showed an improvement with salvage radiotherapy in metastasis-free survival. However, the therapeutic benefit was most evident in the presence of minimal PSA serum levels. These data suggest that, although less effective, salvage radiation treatment may help improve metastasis-free survival.

In a recent multi-institutional, matched-control analysis of adjuvant and salvage post-operative radiation for pT3-4N0 PCa, Trabulsi et al. (61) have demonstrated a biochemical recurrence-free survival advantage in favour of adjuvant radiotherapy versus salvage radiotherapy. Interestingly, in a multivariate Cox regression analysis, adjuvant versus salvage radiotherapy were not independent predictors in metastatic progression-free survival, when corrected for adverse clinical and pathological factors.

Recently, data on overall survival and salvage radiation have become available. In a group of men with a median follow-up of 9 years after prostatectomy, the benefit of salvage radiation for prostate cancer-specific mortality was seen particularly in men with a PSA DT of less than 6 months, who had been given salvage radiation to the prostate fossa within 2 years after a rise in PSA (62). This suggests that local disease control may prolong prostate cancer-specific survival in men formerly thought to be at risk for systemic disease progression and less likely to benefit from (salvage) radiation. It has been suggested that men with slowly progressing disease, even though still at risk of systemic progression, may not benefit from salvage radiotherapy because they have a low risk of development of lethal PCa. Certainly, longer follow-up is needed to answer this question.

However, more data are required from prospective randomised trials.

18.5.1.1 Dose, target volume, toxicity

The three randomised trials on adjuvant radiation therapy all used dosages less than 66 Gy, which is currently the most frequently used dose for adjuvant and salvage radiation. However, it is important to note that, as with dose escalation studies in primary radiation for PCa, an increased dose in the salvage setting may improve the biochemical response without worsening local toxicity (63,64). Dosages up to 70 Gy showed better biochemical recurrence-free rates at higher doses, with 66.8 Gy radiation found to be the dose required for 50% biochemical recurrence-free survival (TCD50). Even higher doses may be considered, particularly when using improved imaging techniques, such as fiducial markers (65). The finding that 9% of men develop a local recurrence after adjuvant radiation of 60 Gy provides support for an increase in dosage and target volume (60). Target volume delineation has been found to vary by up to 65% between different radiotherapists administering

adjuvant or salvage radiation to the prostatic fossa (66,67), despite the presence of guideline (68). It is therefore important not to overlook local toxicity. In the EORTC 22911 study, 3.1% of men had to interrupt adjuvant radiation because of local complaints, mainly diarrhoea. Although grade 3 or 4 toxicity is rare for either adjuvant or salvage radiation to the prostate fossa, it was almost doubled in the adjuvant arm of the EORTC 22911 study (2.6% vs 4.2%) and the SWOG S8794 study, particularly urethral stricture (relative risk [RR], 9) and incontinence (RR, 2.3).

*18.5.2 **Hormonal therapy***

Systemic failure following RP is predicted with > 80% accuracy by PSA relapse < 1 year, PSA DT of 4-6 months, Gleason score 8-10 and stage pT3b, pTxpN1. There is some evidence that early hormonal therapy may help to delay progression and possibly achieve a survival benefit (69,70).

18.5.2.1 Adjuvant hormonal therapy after RP

In the absence of randomised controlled trials for post-operative PSA recurrence, it is necessary to rely on retrospective data or to extrapolate data from other clinical settings, such as men with metastatic disease or locally advanced non-metastatic disease. It is uncertain whether or not such data are relevant to men with rising post-operative PSA levels.

Two randomised studies have compared immediate hormonal therapy (after diagnosis) with deferred hormonal therapy (on progression) in patients with PCa. The Medical Research Council study in locally advanced or asymptomatic metastatic PCa and the EORTC study in newly diagnosed PCa (T0-4N0M0) illustrate that, although immediate hormonal therapy after diagnosis can delay disease progression in men with PCa, it does not necessarily result in an improved cancer-specific survival (71,72).

The survival advantage for immediate (adjuvant) ADT after RP has only been proven in patients with positive-lymph-node PCa in a single randomised study (69,70). The updated results of this multicentre Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group study after a median follow-up of 11.9 years showed a significant improvement in overall survival, cancer-specific survival, and progression-free survival in lymph-node positive (N+) patients treated with immediate ADT (70).

Adjuvant bicalutamide, 150 mg, could decrease progression in men with locally advanced PCa, but did not result in an overall survival benefit (73). Several retrospective analyses from the Mayo Clinic showed that adjuvant hormonal therapy after RP had a positive effect on time to progression and cancer death in patients with pT3b and N+ PCa (74-76). However, a recent large series from the Mayo Clinic with a median follow-up of 10.3 years showed that adjuvant hormonal therapy in patients with surgically managed N+ PCa decreased the risk of biochemical recurrence and local recurrence, but did not significantly impact systemic progression or cancer-specific survival (77). A recent retrospective study with a median follow-up of 5.2 years showed that immediate and delayed hormonal therapy (at PSA recurrence) in patients with surgically managed N+ PCa provided similar outcomes (78).

An observational study showed that deferring immediate ADT in men with positive lymph nodes after RP may not significantly compromise survival. There was no statistically significant difference in survival with 90, 150, 180 and 365 days as the definition of adjuvant ADT. These results need to be validated in a prospective study (79).

18.5.2.2 Post-operative hormonal therapy for PSA-only recurrence

Androgen deprivation therapy

Although patients with post-operative PSA recurrence often undergo ADT before evidence of metastatic disease, the benefit of this approach is uncertain. A retrospective study including 1352 patients with post-operative PSA recurrence showed no significant difference in the time to clinical metastases with early ADT (after PSA recurrence, but before clinical metastases) versus delayed ADT (at the time of clinical metastases). However, upon risk stratification, early ADT could delay the time to clinical metastases in high-risk patients with a Gleason score > 7 and/or a PSA DT < 12 months. Androgen deprivation therapy had no overall impact on prostate cancer-specific mortality (80).

A recent retrospective study from the Mayo Clinic showed that adjuvant ADT (within 90 days of surgery) slightly improved the cancer-specific survival and systemic progression-free survival after RP in a large group of high-risk patients with PCa. However, the survival advantage was lost when ADT was delivered farther in the disease process, at the time of PSA recurrence or systemic progression. It should be emphasised that there was no overall survival advantage (83% for both groups) and that the difference in cancer-specific survival and systemic progression-free survival was only 3% and 5%, respectively (81). In a recent retrospective

study, including 422 patients with post-operative PSA recurrence, 123 developed distant metastasis, of whom 91 patients with complete data received deferred ADT at the time of documented metastasis after RP. The authors concluded that patients when closely followed after PSA recurrence may have an excellent response to deferred ADT and a long survival with a median failure time of 169 months from RP to death (82). However, these three studies are limited by their retrospective design and in assessing the side effects of long-term ADT. Evidence from well-designed, prospective, randomised studies is needed before the use of early hormonal therapy can be advocated in clinical practice.

Antiandrogens
Although gynaecomastia and breast tenderness were the most predominant side effects for the treatment of organ-confined and locally advanced PCa, the incidence of hot flushes, loss of libido and impotence was significantly lower than expected for luteinising hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) agonists and CAB (83).

Antiandrogens may represent a viable alternative to other modes of androgen deprivation for the management of PSA-only recurrences, especially in young and otherwise healthy men. In a prospective, placebo-controlled, randomised trial of adjuvant bicalutamide, 150 mg, following RP in patients with locally advanced disease, the risk of objective progression of the disease was significantly reduced in patients receiving bicalutamide. However, overall survival did not differ between groups (84). Low-dose flutamide, 250 mg daily, is currently being investigated in men with PSA recurrence. Bicalutamide, 150 mg daily, has not yet been studied in this clinical setting (85).

Intermittent androgen deprivation
Intermittent androgen deprivation (IAD) has been examined as a potential alternative to CAD to:
- delay the time to androgen independence and hormone-refractory disease;
- minimise side-effects;
- reduce costs of prolonged therapy.

The Cochrane Collaboration revealed that there were no long-term data of large-scale randomised controlled trials that proved the superiority of IAD over CAD for survival. Limited information suggests that IAD may result in a slight reduction of adverse effects (86). However, in the setting of PSA-only recurrences, there are no prospective randomised trials and no clinical studies with sufficient data on long-term efficacy to justify the routine clinical application of IAD, despite its potential benefits. Summarising the series in which PSA-only recurrences were treated by IAD (87-91), PSA threshold levels at study-entry varied significantly, as did the PSA level at discontinuation of hormonal therapy. Only the study of 150 patients by Tunn et al. (91) had a sufficiently appropriate study design to allow the drawing of important clinical conclusions. Patients were started on IAD for 9 months when the post-prostatectomy PSA serum level was greater than 3.0 ng/ mL, and all patients reached a nadir of less than 0.5 ng/mL. Intermittent androgen deprivation was re-started when PSA increased to more than 3.0 ng/mL. After a mean follow-up of 48 months, and a mean duration of hormonal therapy of 26.6 months, none of the patients had progressed to hormone-refractory disease. In the meantime, IAD remains attractive to selected, closely monitored and well-informed patients with post-operative PSA recurrence.

Minimal androgen blockade
In some studies, finasteride and flutamide have been combined to manage PSA-only recurrences since both agents work additively by blocking the intraprostatic conversion of testosterone to dihydrotestosterone (DHT) and blocking the intracytoplasmic DHT receptor (92-94). In the latest report (93) including 73 patients, the application of finasteride (10 mg/day) and low-dose flutamide (250 mg/day) resulted in a mean PSA nadir of 1.35 ng/mL within 6 months. However, only 62% of the patients studied reached a PSA nadir of < 0.2 ng/mL. After a mean follow-up of 15 months, none of the patients had progressed to traditional hormonal therapy. However, longer follow-up of a larger patient cohort is needed, and randomised phase III trials using modern antiandrogens with fewer gastrointestinal and hepatic side-effects are mandatory.

Hormonal therapy after RP combined with radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy
The addition of hormonal therapy to salvage radiotherapy (n = 78) was not associated with any additional increase in cancer-specific survival (94). A recent phase II trial including 74 patients with post-operative PSA recurrence showed that combined treatment with salvage radiotherapy plus 2 years of maximum androgen blockade (castration + oral antiandrogen) had relatively minor long-term effects on quality of life (95). However, more efficacy data are needed and the potential increase in side effects should be considered when combining therapies. Results are eagerly awaited from a recently completed randomised controlled phase III study from the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG-9061) comparing radiotherapy + placebo versus the

combination of radiotherapy + bicalutamide, 150 mg daily, in the post-operative setting.

Radiotherapy and Androgen Deprivation in Combination after Local Surgery is a recently started, large, randomised, controlled study, sponsored by the Medical Research Council. The study addresses the timing of radiotherapy (adjuvant vs early salvage) and the duration of hormonal therapy (none vs short-term vs long-term) used together with post-operative radiotherapy. The primary outcome measure will be cancer-specific survival. Secondary outcome measures will include overall survival, ADT administered outside the protocol, and reported treatment toxicity. The study also aims to assess the long-term effect of radiotherapy after RP on sexual, urinary and bowel function, and the long-term effect of ADT on sexual function and overall quality of life. Patients will be asked to complete four short questionnaires. These assessments will be done at baseline, 5 years and 10 years (96).

Currently, there is no indication for chemotherapy in patients with PSA-recurrence only. Chemotherapy should be considered as a treatment option for patients with castration-resistant PCa, but when to initiate a cytotoxic regime remains controversial (97).

18.5.3 ***Observation***

Observation until the development of clinically evident metastatic disease might represent a viable option for patients with a Gleason score < 7, PSA recurrence longer than 2 years after surgery, and a PSA DT longer than 10 months. In these patients, the median actuarial time for the development of metastasis will be 8 years, and the median time from metastasis to death will be another 5 years (7).

18.5.4 ***Management of PSA relapse after RP***

Recommendations	GR
Local recurrences are best treated by salvage radiation therapy with 64-66 Gy at a PSA serum level < 0.5 ng/mL.	B
For patients with presumed local recurrence who are too unfit or unwilling to undergo radiation therapy, expectant management can be offered.	B
PSA recurrence indicative of systemic relapse is best treated by early ADT resulting in decreased frequency of clinical metastases.	B
Luteinising hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) analogues/antagonists/orchiectomy or bicalutamide, 150 mg/day, can both be used when there is an indication for hormonal therapy.	A

18.6 Management of PSA failures after radiation therapy

In a recent review of the data of the Cancer of the Prostate Strategic Urologic Research Endeavor (CaPSURE) comprising 2336 patients with PCa, Grossfeld et al. (98) demonstrated that 92% of patients initially irradiated received ADT for secondary treatment of PSA progression. In the absence of salvage procedures, the mean time interval from biochemical to clinical progression is approximately 3 years. Therapeutic options in these patients are ADT or local procedures, such as salvage RP, cryotherapy and interstitial radiation therapy (41,99-108). Salvage RRP has not, however, gained widespread acceptance because of its associated morbidity, namely incontinence, local recurrences and rectal injuries. However, in well-selected patients, the procedure may result in long-term disease-free survival.

18.6.1 ***Salvage radical prostatectomy***

Previously, most series reporting on salvage RP have included patients treated in the pre-PSA era without modern radiotherapeutic techniques, when local recurrences were usually detected at a late stage. Complications associated with the procedure were therefore quite high, with up to 65% of patients suffering from treatment-related morbidities. Up to 60% of patients who underwent salvage RP had to undergo anterior or total exenteration for locally extensive disease, associated with a high rate of local recurrences and a mean time to progression of only 1.3 years.

Recent reports analysing patients who were operated on during the past decade, have described far more optimistic outcomes after salvage RP. In the series examined by Gheiler et al. (103), 40 patients with a mean PSA of 14 ng/mL underwent salvage RP. When stratified by PSA < 10 ng/mL, the 3-year disease-specific survival was 68% and 26%, respectively. In the series reported by Garzotto and Wajsman (104), 24 patients underwent radical cystoprostatectomy or RP with neoadjuvant ADT. Neoadjuvant ADT was associated with a lower rate of positive surgical margins (21%) compared with patients in whom androgen deprivation failed and

who exhibited a positive surgical margin rate of 80%. The authors demonstrated that disease-specific survival correlated strongly with the surgical margin status. At a mean follow-up of 5 years, the disease-specific survival rate was 95% and 44% for those with negative and positive surgical margins, respectively. Vaidya and Soloway (105) demonstrated a low rate of complications, good post-operative continence and only one biochemical recurrence at 36 months after salvage RP.

Similar data have been achieved by Stephenson et al. (106), who reported on 100 consecutive patients undergoing salvage RP associated with a very low rate of peri-operative complications. The 5-year progression-free rates have improved, with results similar to those of standard RP in cases of similar pathological stages. In contemporary series, the 10-year cancer-specific survival and overall survival rates are 70-75% and 60-66%, respectively. In most contemporary series, organ-confined disease, negative surgical margins and the absence of seminal vesicle and/or lymph node metastases are favourable prognostic indicators associated with a better disease-free survival of approximately 70-80%, compared with 40-60% in patients with locally advanced PCa (107).

Recently, Heidenreich et al. (108) reported on the oncological and functional outcome of 55 patients who underwent radical salvage therapy for locally recurrent PCA after various types of modern state-of-the-art radiation therapy, performed in or after the year 2000. Forty (72.7%) and 15 (27.3%) patients demonstrated organ-confined and locally advanced PCa, respectively. Eleven patients (20%) and seven patients (14%) had lymph node metastases and positive surgical margins, respectively. On multivariate analysis, significant predictors of organ-confined PCa with negative surgical margins were:

- biopsy Gleason score prior to salvage RP ($p = 0.02$);
- < 50% positive biopsy cores ($p = 0.001$);
- PSA DT > 12 months ($p = 0.001$);
- low-dose brachytherapy ($p = 0.001$).

Urinary continence was achieved after a mean of 8 months in basically all men after low-dose-radiation brachytherapy, while incontinence persisted in about 20% of patients who underwent external beam radiation therapy or high-dose radiation brachytherapy. Salvage RP is a surgically challenging but effective secondary local treatment of radiorecurrent PCa with curative intent. The identified predictive parameters will help to select patients most suitable for salvage RP with long-term cure and good functional outcome.

18.6.1.1 Summary of salvage RP

In general, salvage RP should be considered only in patients with a low co-morbidity, a life expectancy of at least 10 years, an organ-confined PCa < T2, Gleason grade < 7, and pre-surgical PSA < 10 ng/mL. In all other patients, accurate pre-surgical staging is not easily defined after radiation therapy, increasing the risk not only for anterior and total extirpation procedures, but also for associated complications and decreased long-term disease-specific survival.

18.6.2 ***Salvage cryosurgical ablation of the prostate (CSAP) for radiation failures***

Salvage cryosurgery has been proposed as an alternative to salvage RP because it has the potential to have less morbidity but equal efficacy. However, there have only been a very few studies, with disappointing results. Pisters et al. (109) reported on 150 patients who had undergone CSAP for PSA recurrences following radiotherapy (n = 110) or other extensive pre-treatment (n = 40). After a mean follow-up of 13.5 months, 58% of patients exhibited biochemical failure, while only 31% demonstrated undetectable PSA serum levels. The complications associated with salvage CSAP were significant, and occurred in virtually all patients, with the main complications being urinary incontinence (73%), obstructive symptoms (67%), impotence (72%) and severe perineal pain (8%). After 1-year follow-up, incontinence resolved in most patients, with persistent significant incontinence in 22% of patients.

According to a recent study by Cespedes et al. (110), the risk for urinary incontinence and impotence at least 12 months after CSAP are as high as 28% and 90%, respectively. In addition, 8-40% of patients complained about persistent rectal pain, and an additional 4% of men had undergone surgical procedures for the management of treatment-associated complications.

With regard to oncological outcome, recent studies demonstrated that a durable PSA-response can be achieved in about 50% of patients with a pre-cryosurgery PSA of < 10 ng/mL (111). In a recent multicentre study, the contemporary results of CSAP in 279 patients treated at a large number of centres, participating in the Cryo On-Line Data Registry, were analysed (112). Pre-treatment PSA was 7.6 +/- 8.2 ng/mL and the Gleason score was 7.5 +/- 1.1 (median 7). Patients were followed for 21.6 +/- 24.9 months and 47 were

followed for longer than 5 years. The 5-year actuarial biochemical disease-free rate was 54.5% +/- 4.9% (Phoenix). As predicted, based on the preservation of some prostatic tissue, 83% +/- 3.5% of patients had a detectable PSA level > 0.2 ng/mL at 5 years. Positive biopsies were observed in 15 of the 46 patients (32.6%) who underwent prostate biopsy after salvage cryotherapy. The incontinence rate (requiring pad use) was 4.4%. The rectal fistula rate was 1.2% and 3.2% of patients underwent transurethral prostate resection to remove sloughed tissue.

Quite recently, a case-matched control study between RSP and CSAP was performed among men with radiorecurrent PCa. The authors compared the oncological outcome of both salvage treatment options after a mean follow-up of 7.8 and 5.5 years for the radical salvage prostatectomy group and the cryosurgery group, respectively. RSP resulted in a statistically significant biochemical disease-free survival at 5 years of 61% versus 21% for the cryosurgery procedure. Also, the 5-year overall survival was significantly superior for the RSP group (95% vs 85%, $p < 0.001$) (113).

*18.6.3 **Salvage brachytherapy for radiation failures***

The experience with salvage brachytherapy for radiation failures is very limited. There is only one study that includes a representative number of patients and a mean follow-up of 64 months (114). Grado et al. (114) treated 49 patients with transperineal TRUS-guided brachytherapy and reported 3- and 5-year disease-free survival rates of 48% and 43%, respectively. Beyer (115) reported a 5-year biochemical freedom from relapse in 34-53% of patients, with local cancer control achieved in 98% of patients. However, the complication rate was quite severe:

- 27% became incontinent;
- 14% needed palliative transurethral resection due to acute urinary retention;
- 4% developed rectal ulcers;
- 2% required permanent colostomy.

Burri et al. (116) reported on the long-term outcomes and toxicity after salvage brachytherapy with palladium-103 or iodine-125 for local failure after initial radiotherapy for PCa in 37. Median follow-up was 86 months (range, 2-156). The median dose to 90% of the prostate volume was 122 Gy (range, 67-166). The 10-year biochemical disease-free survival and cancer-specific survival were 54% and 96%, respectively. There were three grade 3 toxicities and one grade 4 toxicity (10.8%). In conclusion, careful patient selection for salvage brachytherapy may result in improved outcomes and reduced toxicity.

In a similar approach, Moman et al. (117) retrospectively evaluated the outcome and toxicity after salvage iodine-125 implantation in 31 patients with locally recurrent PCa after primary iodine-125 implantation and external beam radiotherapy. The mean follow-up was 9 years (SD +/-4). Freedom from biochemical failure after 1-year follow-up was 51% and after 5 years was 20%. Fourteen (45%) patients died of PCa after a mean (+/- SD) follow-up of 73 (+/-39) months. Grade 1, 2, or 3 toxicity of the genitourinary tract was reported in 29%, 58% and 3% of the patients, respectively, in the acute phase, and in 16%, 39%, and 19%, respectively, in the late phase. Grade 1, 2, or 3 toxicity of the gastrointestinal tract was reported in 45%, 10%, and 0% of the patients, respectively, in the acute phase, and in 48%, 3%, and 6%, respectively, in the late phase. In conclusion, freedom from biochemical failure after salvage iodine-125 implantation for locally recurrent PCa after radiotherapy is limited, and both genitourinary and gastrointestinal toxicity occur frequently.

*18.6.4 **Observation***

Patients with signs of local recurrence only (i.e. low-risk patients with late recurrence and a slow PSA rise), who are not opting for second-line curative options, are best managed by observation alone. A retrospective cohort analysis of hormonal therapy versus watchful waiting (WW) in 248 men with PSA failure after radiotherapy showed no advantage for hormonal therapy in the subgroup of men with a PSA DT of > 12 months after radiotherapy. The 5-year metastasis-free survival rate was 88% with hormonal therapy versus 92% with WW ($p = 0.74$) (118).

*18.6.5 **High-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU)***

The experience of HIFU for the treatment of locally recurrent PCa after radiation therapy is limited to a few retrospective studies. Zacharakis et al. (119) investigated the oncological and functional outcome of HIFU in a cohort of 31 men with biopsy-proven locally recurrent PCa following EBRT. The mean (range) pre-operative PSA level was 7.73 (0.20-20) ng/mL. The patients were followed for a mean (range) of 7.4 (3-24) months. Side effects included stricture or intervention for necrotic tissue in 11 patients (35%), urinary tract infection or dysuria syndrome in eight (26%) and urinary incontinence in two (6%). Rectourethral fistula occurred in two men (7%). Overall, 71% had no evidence of disease following salvage HIFU.

Using a similar approach, Murat et al. (120) evaluated the safety and efficacy of salvage HIFU in 167 patients with local PCA recurrence after EBRT and to determine prognostic factors for optimal patient selection. Local cancer control was achieved with negative biopsy results in 122 (73%) patients. The median PSA nadir was 0.19 ng/mL. The mean follow-up period was 18.1 months (range, 3-121 months). Seventy-four patients required no hormonal therapy. The actuarial 5-year overall survival rate was 84%. The actuarial 3-year progression-free survival was significantly lower in three situations:

- worsening of the pre-EBRT stage with 53%, 42%, and 25% for low-, intermediate-, and high-risk patients, respectively;
- an increase in the pre-HIFU PSA;
- use of ADT during PCa management.

In multivariate analyses, the risk ratios for intermediate- and high-risk patients were 1.32 and 1.96, respectively. The risk ratio was 2.8 if patients had been treated with ADT. No rectal complications were observed. Urinary incontinence accounted for 49.5% of the urinary sphincter implantations required in 11% of patients.

Urinary incontinence and the development of rectourethral fistula are the most significant complications of salvage HIFU therapy (119-121). About 30% of men develop some type of incontinence, with significant urinary incontinence treated with an artificial urinary sphincter in about 10% of patients. The oncological control rate after a short median follow-up of about 2 years is 30-40%.

18.6.5.1 Salvage HIFU therapy

Ahmed et al. (122) evaluated the outcome of whole-gland HIFU in 84 patients with radiorecurrent CaP following external beam radiation therapy. After a mean follow-up of 19.8 months, the 1- and 2-year progression-free survival rates were 59% and 43%, respectively. Four men developed rectourethral fistula and another 20% needed to undergo surgical treatment for subvesical outlet obstruction.

Berge et al. (123) evaluated the health-related quality of life using the Los Angeles Prostate Cancer Index questionnaire in 61 patients following HIFU for radiorecurrent, clinically organ-confined CaP. The mean time between treatment and quality of life evaluation was 17.5 months The treatment of localised radiorecurrent PCa by salvage HIFU is associated with clinically significant reductions in urinary and sexual function domains, but not in mental domains.

18.6.6 ***Guidelines for the management of PSA relapse after radiation therapy***

Recommendations	**GR**
Local recurrences may be treated by salvage RP in carefully selected patients, who presumably demonstrate organ-confined disease, i.e. PSA < 10 ng/mL, PSA DT > 12 months, low-dose-radiation brachytherapy, biopsy Gleason score < 7.	B
Cryosurgical ablation of the prostate and interstitial brachytherapy are alternative procedures in patients not suitable for surgery.	B
High-intensity-focused ultrasound may be an alternative option. However, patients must be informed about the experimental nature of this treatment modality due to the short follow-up periods reported.	
In patients with presumed systemic relapse, ADT may be offered.	B

18.7 Guidelines for second-line therapy after treatment with curative intent

Recommendations	GR
Presumed local failure after radical prostatectomy	
Patients with presumed local failure only may be candidates for salvage radiotherapy. This should be given with at least 64 Gy and preferably before PSA has risen above 0.5 ng/mL.	B
Other patients are best offered a period of watchful waiting (active monitoring), with possible hormonal therapy later on.	
Presumed local failure after radiotherapy	
Selected patients may be candidates for salvage RP and patients should be informed about the higher risk of complications, e.g. incontinence and erectile dysfunction.	C
Salvage RP should only be performed in experienced centres.	
Other patients are best offered a period of watchful waiting (active monitoring), with possible hormonal therapy later on.	
Presumed distant failure	
There is some evidence that early hormonal therapy may be of benefit in +/- local failure, delaying progression, and possibly achieving a survival benefit in comparison with delayed therapy. The results are not without controversy.	B
Local therapy is not recommended except for palliative reasons.	

18.9 References

1. Grossfeld GD, Stier DM, Flanders SC, et al. Use of second treatment following definitive local therapy for prostate cancer: data from the CaPSURE database. J Urol 1998;160(4):1398-404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751363
2. Lu-Yao GL, Potosky AL, Albertsen PC, et al. Follow-up prostate cancer treatments after radical prostatectomy: a population-based study. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88(3-4):166-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8632490
3. Fowler FJ Jr, Barry MJ, Lu-Yao GL, et al. Patient-reported complications and follow-up treatment after radical prostatectomy. The National Medicare Experience: 1988-1990 (updated June 1993). Urology 1993;42(6):622-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8256394
4. Partin AW, Pearson JD, Landis PK, et al. Evaluation of serum prostate-specific antigen velocity after radical prostatectomy to distinguish local recurrence from distant metastases. Urology 1994;43(5):649-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513108
5. Bott SRJ. Management of recurrent disease after radical prostatectomy. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2004;7(3):211-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15278094
6. Polascik TJ, Oesterling JE, Partin AW. Prostate specific antigen: a decade of discovery - what we have learned and where we are going. J Urol 1999;162(2):293-306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411025
7. Pound CR, Partin AW, Eisenberger MA, et al. Natural history of progression after PSA elevation following radical prostatectomy. JAMA 1999;281(17):1591-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10235151
8. Moul JW. Prostate specific antigen only progression of prostate cancer. J Urol 2000;163(6):1632-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799151
9. Amling CL, Bergstralh EJ, Blute ML, et al. Defining prostate specific antigen progression after radical prostatectomy: what is the most appropriate cut point? J Urol 2001; 165(4):1146-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257657
10. Stephenson AJ, Kattan MW, Eastham JA, et al. Defining biochemical recurrence of prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy: a proposal for a standardized definition. J Clin Oncol 2006; 24(24): 3973 -78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16921049

11. American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology Consensus Panel. Consensus statement: guidelines for PSA following radiation therapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1997;37(5):1035-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9169810
12. Roach M 3rd, Hanks G, Thames H Jr, et al. Defining biochemical failure following radiotherapy with or without hormonal therapy in men with clinically localized prostate cancer: recommendations of the RTOG-ASTRO Phoenix Consensus Conference. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006; 65:965-74. http://www.mdconsult.com/das/citation/body/120674870-2/jorg=journal&source=MI&sp=16362265&sid=0/N/16362265/1.html
13. Trapasso JG, deKernion JB, Smith RB, et al. The incidence and significance of detectable levels of serum prostate specific antigen after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1994;152(5 Pt 2):1821-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523728
14. Lange PH, Ercole CJ, Lightner DJ, et al. The value of serum prostate specific antigen determinations before and after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1989;141(4):873-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2467013
15. Cox JD, Gallagher MJ, Hammond EH, et al. Consensus statements on radiation therapy of prostate cancer: guidelines for prostate re-biopsy after radiation and for radiation therapy with rising prostate-specific antigen levels after radical prostatectomy. American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology Consensus Panel. J Clin Oncol 1999;17(4):1155-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561174
16. Taylor JM, Griffith KA, Sandler HM. Definitions of biochemical failure in prostate cancer following radiation therapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2001;50(5):1212-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11483331
17. Öbek C, Neulander E, Sadek S, et al. Is there a role for digital rectal examination in the follow up of patients after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1999;162(3 Pt 1):762-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458361
18. Cher ML, Bianco FJ Jr, Lam JS, et al. Limited role of radionuclide bone scintigraphy in patients with prostate specific antigen elevations after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1998;160(4):1387-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751361
19. Kane CJ, Amling CL, Johnstone PAS, et al. Limited value of bone scintigraphy and computed tomography in assessing biochemical failure after radical prostatectomy. Urology 2003;61(3):607-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12639656
20. Gomez P, Manoharan M, Kim SS, et al. Radionuclide bone scintigraphy in patients with biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy: when is it indicated? BJU Int 2004;94(3):299-302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15291855
21 Johnstone PAS, Tarman GJ, Riffenburgh R, et al. Yield of imaging and scintigraphy assessing biochemical failure in prostate cancer patients. Urol Oncol 1997;3(4)108-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21227114
22. Sella T, Schwartz LH, Swindle PW, et al. Suspected local recurrence after radical prostatectomy: endorectal coil MR imaging. Radiology 2004;231(2):379-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15064390
23. Cirillo S, Petracchini M, Scotti L, et al. Endorectal magnetic resonance imaging at 1.5 Tesla to assess local recurrence following radical prostatectomy using T2-weighted and contrast-enhanced imaging. Eur Radiol. 2009; 19(3):761-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18825386
24. Kotzerke J, Volkmer BG, Neumaier B, et al. Carbon-11 acetate positron emission tomography can detect local recurrence of prostate cancer. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2002;29(10):1380-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12271422
25. Heinisch M, Dirisamer A, Loidl W, et al. Positron emission tomography/computed tomography with F-18-flourocholine for restaging of prostate cancer patients: meaningful at PSA < 5 ng/ml? Mol Imaging Biol 2006;8(1):43-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315004
26. Martorana G, Schiavina R, Corti B, et al. ^{11}C-choline positron emission tomography/computerized tomography for tumor localization of primary prostate cancer in comparison with 12-core biopsy. J Urol 2006;176(3):954-60; discussion 960. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890665
27. Vees H, Buchegger F, Albrecht S, et al. 18F-choline and/or ^{11}C-acetate positron emission tomography: detection of residual or progressive subclinical disease at very low prostate-specific antigen values (<1 ng/mL) after radical prostatectomy. BJU Int 2007;99(6):1415-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17428249

28. Rinnab L, Mottaghy FM, Simon J, et al. [^{11}C]Choline PET/CT for targeted salvage lymph node dissection in patients with biochemical recurrence after primary curative therapy for prostate cancer. Preliminary results of a prospective study. Urol Int 2008;81(2):191-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18758218
29. Krause BJ, Souvatzoglou M, Tuncel M, et al. The detection rate of [^{11}C]Choline-PET/CT depends on the serum PSA-value in patients with biochemical recurrence of prostate cancer. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2008 Jan;35(1):18-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17891394
30. Husarik DB, Miralbell R, Dubs M, et al. Evaluation of [(18)F]-choline PET/CT for staging and restaging of prostate cancer. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2008 Feb;35(2):253-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17926036
31. Pelosi E, Arena V, Skanjeti A, et al. Role of whole-body 18F-choline PET/CT in disease detection in patients with biochemical relapse after radical treatment for prostate cancer. Radiol Med 2008 Sep;113(6):895-904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18414809
32. Castellucci P, Fuccio C, Nanni C, et al. Influence of trigger PSA and PSA kinetics on ^{11}C-Choline PET/CT detection rate in patients with biochemical relapse after radical prostatectomy. J Nucl Med 2009 Sep; 50(9):1394-400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19690023
33. Giovacchini G, Picchio M, Briganti A, et al. [^{11}C]choline positron emission tomography/computerized tomography to restage prostate cancer cases with biochemical failure after radical prostatectomy and no disease evidence on conventional imaging. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):938-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20643445
34 Souvatzoglou M, Krause BJ, Pürschel A, et al. Influence of (11)C-choline PET/CT on the treatment planning for salvage radiation therapy in patients with biochemical recurrence of prostate cancer. Radiother Oncol 2011 May;99(2):193-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21620494
35. Picchio M, Briganti A, Fanti S, et al. The role of choline positron emission tomography/computed tomography in the management of patients with prostate-specific antigen progression after radical treatment of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2011 Jan;59(1):51-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20869161
36. Schilling D, Schlemmer HP, Wagner PH, et al. Histological verification of ^{11}C-choline-positron emission/computed tomography-positive lymph nodes in patients with biochemical failure after treatment for localized prostate cancer. BJU Int Aug 2008;102(4):446-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18410442
37. Reske SN, Blumstein NM, Glatting G. [^{11}C]choline PET/CT imaging in occult local relapse of prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2008 Jan;35(1):9-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17828534
38. Foster LS, Jajodia P, Fournier G Jr, et al. The value of prostate specific antigen and transrectal ultrasound guided biopsy in detecting prostatic fossa recurrences following radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1995 May;149(5):1024-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7683341
39. Fowler JE Jr, Brooks J, Pandey P, et ak. Variable histology of anastomotic biopsies with detectable prostate specific antigen after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 2):1011-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7531783
40. Connolly JA, Shinohara K, Presti JC Jr, et al. Local recurrence after radical prostatectomy: characteristics in size, location, and relationship to prostate-specific antigen and surgical margins. Urology 1996 Feb;47(2):225-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8607239
41. Heidenreich A, Semrau R, Thüer D, et al. Radical salvage prostatectomy: Treatment of local recurrence of prostate cancer after radiotherapy. Urologe A 2008 Nov;47(11):1441-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18806991
42. Pucar D, Shukla-Dave A, Hricak H, et al. Prostate cancer: correlation of MR imaging and MR spectroscopy with pathologic findings after radiation therapy-initial experience. Radiology 2005 Aug;236(2):545-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15972335
43. Rouvière O, Valette O, Grivolat S, et al. Recurrent prostate cancer after external beam radiotherapy: value of contrast-enhanced dynamic MRI in localizing intraprostatic tumor--correlation with biopsy findings. Urology 2004 May;63(5):922-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134982

44. Sala E, Eberhardt SC, Akin O, et al. Endorectal MR imaging before salvage prostatectomy: tumor localization and staging. Radiology 2006 Jan;238(1):176-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16373766
45. Thompson IM Jr, Tangen CM, Paradelo J, et al. Adjuvant radiotherapy for pathologically advanced prostate cancer: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2006 Nov;296:2329-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17105795
46. Bolla M, Van Poppel H, Collette L, et al. Postoperative radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy: a randomised controlled trial (EORTC trial 22911). Lancet 2005 Aug;366:572-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16099293
47. Thompson IM, Tangen CM, Paradelo J, et al. Adjuvant radiotherapy for pathological T3N0M0 prostate cancer significantly reduces risk of metastases and improves survival: long-term followup of a randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2009 Mar;181:956-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19167731
48. Wiegel T, Bottke D, Steiner U, et al. Phase III postoperative adjuvant radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy compared with radical prostatectomy alone in pT3 prostate cancer with postoperative undetectable prostate-specific antigen: ARO 96-02/AUO AP 09/95. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jun;27:2924-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19433689
49. Wu JJ, King SC, Montana GS, McKinstry CA, Anscher MS. The efficacy of postprostatectomy radiotherapy in patients with an isolated elevation of serum prostate-specific antigen. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1995;32(2):317-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7538500
50. Schild SE, Buskirk SJ, Wong WW, et al. The use of radiotherapy or patients with isolated elevation of prostate specific antigen following radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1996 Nov;156(5):1725-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8863580
51. Forman JD, Meetze K, Pontes E, et al. Therapeutic irradiation for patients with an elevated postprostatectomy prostate specific antigen level. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1436-9; discussion 1439-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302138
52. Nudell DM, Grossfeld GD, Weinberg VK, et al. Radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy: treatment outcomes and failure patterns. Urology 1999 Dec;54(6):1049-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604707
53. Carroll P. Rising PSA after a radical treatment. Eur Urol 2001;40(Suppl 2):9-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11684859
54. Cadeddu JA, Partin AW, DeWeese TL, et al. Long-term results of radiation therapy for prostate cancer recurrence following radical prostatectomy. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):173-7;discussion 177-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400465
55. Haab F, Meulemans A, Boccon-Gibbod L, et al. Effect of radiation therapy after radical prostatectomy on serum prostate-specific antigen measured by an ultrasensitive assay. Urology 1995 Jun;45(6): 1022-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7539559
56. Egewa S, Matsumoto K, Suyama K, et al. Limited suppression of prostate specific antigen after salvage radiotherapy for its isolated elevation after radical prostatectomy. Urology 1999 Jan;53(1): 148-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886604
57. Vicini FA, Ziaja EL, Kestin LL, et al. Treatment outcome with adjuvant and salvage irradiation after radical prostatectomy for prostate cancer. Urology 1999 Jul;54(1):111-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10414736
58. MacDonald OK, Schild SE, Vora S, et al. Salvage radiotherapy for men with isolated rising PSA or local palpable recurrence after radical prostatectomy: do outcomes differ? Urology 2004 Oct;64(4):760-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15491716
59. Stephenson AJ, Scardino PT, Kattan MW, et al. Predicting outcome of salvage radiation therapy for recurrent prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. J Clin Oncol 2007 May;25(15):2035-41
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17513807
60. Swanson GP, Hussey MA, Tangen CM, et al. Predominant treatrment failure in postprostatectomy patients is local: analysis of patterns of treatment failure in SWOG 8794. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jun;25(16):222-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17538167
61. Trabulsi EJ, Valicenti RK, Hanlon AL, et al. A multi-institutional matched-control analysis of adjuvant and salvage postoperative radiation therapy for pT3-4N0 prostate cancer. Urology 2008 Dec;72(6): 1298-302; discussion 1302-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18672274

62. Trock BJ, Han M, Freedland SJ, et al. Prostate cancer-specific survival following salvage radiotherapy vs observation in men with biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy. JAMA 2008 Jun;299:2760-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18560003
63. King CR, Spiotto MT. Improved outcomes with higher doses for salvage radiotherapy after prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 May;71:23-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207668
64. King CR, Kapp DS. Radiotherapy after prostatectomy: is the evidence for dose escalation out there? Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2008 Jun;71:346-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18234451
65. Schiffner DC, Gottschalk AR, Lometti M, et al. Daily electronic portal imaging of implanted gold seed fiducials in patients undergoing radiotherapy after radical prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Feb;67:610-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17236978
66. Mitchell DM, Perry L, Smith S, et al. Assessing the effect of a contouring protocol on postprostatectomy radiotherapy clinical target volumes and interphysician variation. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2009 Nov;75:990-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19345515
67. Wiltshire KL, Brock KK, Haider MA, et al. Anatomic boundaries of the clinical target volume (prostate bed) after radical prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2007 Nov;69:1090-9.
68. Poortmans P, Bossi A, Vandeputte K, et al. Guidelines for target volume definition in post-operative radiotherapy for prostate cancer, on behalf of the EORTC Radiation Oncology Group. Radiother Oncol 2007 Aug;84:121-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17706307
69. Messing EM, Manola J, Sarosdy M, et al. Immediate hormonal therapy compared with observation after radical prostatectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy in men with node-positive prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 1999 Dec;341:1781-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10588962
70. Messing EM, Manola J, Yao J, et al. Immediate versus deferred androgen deprivation treatment in patients with node positive prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy. Lancet Oncol 2006 Jun;7:472-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750497
71. [No authors listed] The Medical Research Council Prostate Cancer Working Party Investigators Group. Immediate versus deferred treatment for advanced prostatic cancer: initials results of the Medical Research Council Trial. Br J Urol 1997;79:235-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052476
72. Studer UE, Whelan P, Albrecht W, et al. Immediate or deferred androgen deprivation for patients with prostate cancer not suitable for local treatment with curative intent: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Trial 30891. J Clin Oncol 2006 Apr;24:1868-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622261
73. McLeod DG, Iversen P, See WA, et al. Bicalutamide 150mg plus standard care vs standard care alone for early prostate cancer. BJU Int 2006 Feb;97:247-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430622
74. Zincke H, Lau W, Bergstralh E, et al. Role of early adjuvant hormonal therapy after radical prostatectomy for prostate cancer. J Urol 2001 Dec;166:2208-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696737
75. Seay TM, Blute ML, Zincke H. Long-term outcome in patients with pTxN+ adenocarcinoma of prostate treated with radical prostatectomy and early androgen ablation. J Urol 1998 Feb;159:357-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9649239
76. Cheng L, Zincke H, Blute ML, et al. Risk of prostate carcinoma death in patients with lymph node metastasis. Cancer 2001 Jan;91:66-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148561
77. Boorjian SA, Thompson RH, Siddiqui S, et al. Long-term outcome after radical prostatectomy for patients with lymph node positive prostate cancer in the prostate specific antigen era. J Urol 2007 Sep;178 (3 Part 1):864-70; discussion 870-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17631342
78. Spiess PE, Lee AK, Busby JE, et al. Surgically managed lymph node-positive prostate cancer: does delaying hormonal therapy worsen the outcome? BJU Int 2007 Feb;99:321-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17155975

79. Wong YN, Freedland S, Egleston B, et al. Role of androgen deprivation therapy for nodepositive prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jan;27:100-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19047295
80. Moul JW, Wu H, Sun L, et al. Early versus delayed hormonal therapy for prostate specific antigen only recurrence of prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. J Urol 2004 Mar;171:1141-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767288
81. Siddiqui SA, Boorjian SA, Inman B, et al. Timing of androgen deprivation therapy and its impact on survival after radical prostatectomy: a matched cohort study. J Urol 2008 May;179:1830-7; discussion 1837.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18353378
82. Makarov DV, Humphreys EB, Mangold LA, et al. The natural history of men treated with deferred androgen deprivation therapy in whom metastatic prostate cancer developed following radical prostatectomy. J Urol 2008 Jan;179:156-61; discussion 161-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18001801
83. Wirth M, Tyrrell C, Wallace M, et al. Bicalutamide (Casodex) 150 mg as immediate therapy in patients with localized or locally advanced prostate cancer significantly reduces the risk of disease progression. Urology 2001 Aug;58(2):146-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489683
84. Wirth M. Delaying/reducing the risk of clinical tumour progression after primary curative procedures. Eur Urol 2001;40(Suppl 2):17-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11684860
85. Moul JW. Treatment of PSA only recurrence of prostate cancer after prior local therapy. Curr Pharm Des 2006;12:785-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16515495
86. Conti PD, Atallah AN, Arruda H, et al. Intermittent versus continuous androgen suppression for prostatic cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Oct;(4):CD005009.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943832
87. Goldenberg SL, Gleave ME, Taylor D, et al. Clinical experience with intermittent androgen suppression in prostate cancer: minimum of 3 years' follow-up. Mol Urol 1999;3(3):287-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10851335
88. Higano CS, Ellis W, Russell K, et al. Intermittent androgen suppression with leuprolide and flutamide for prostate cancer: a pilot study. Urology 1996 Nov;48(5):800-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911533
89. Tunn UW. Intermittent endocrine therapy of prostate cancer. Eur Urol 1996;30(Suppl 1):22-5, discussion 38-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8977986
90. Grossfeld GD, Small EJ, Carroll PR. Intermittent androgen deprivation for clinically localized prostate cancer: initial experience. Urology 1998 Jan;51(1):137-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457309
91. Tunn U, Eckhart O, Kienle E, et al. Intermittent androgen deprivation in patients with PSA-relapse after radical prostatectomy-first results of a randomized prospective phase III clinical trial (AUO study AP06/95). Eur Urol (Suppl) 2003;1:24, no. 86.
92. Ziada AM, Crawford ED. Advanced prostate cancer. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 1999 Jan;2(S1):21-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496853
93. Harding P, Moul JW, McLeod DG. Combination flutamide and finasteride in PSA-only recurrence after prior local prostate cancer therapy. J Urol 1998;159(Suppl):130 (abstr).
94. Trock BJ, Han M, Freedland SJ, et al. Prostate cancer-specific survival following salvage radiotherapy s observation in men with biochemical recurrence after radical prostatectomy. JAMA 2008 Jun; 299:2760-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18560003
95. Pearce A, Choo R, Danjoux C, et al. Effect of combined treatment with salvage radiotherapy plus androgen suppression on quality of life in patients with recurrent prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2006 May;65:78-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16563657
96. Parker C, Clarke N, Logue J, et al. RADICALS (Radiotherapy and Androgen Deprivation in Combination after Local Surgery). Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2007 Apr;19:167-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17359901
97. Heidenreich A, Aus G, Bolla M, et al. EAU guidelines on prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53:68-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17920184

98. Grossfeld GD, Li YP, Lubeck DP, et al. Predictors of secondary cancer treatment in patients receiving local therapy for prostate cancer: data from cancer of the prostate strategic urologic research endeavor. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):530-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131303
99. Ahlering TE, Lieskovsky G, Skinner DG. Salvage surgery plus androgen deprivation for radioresistant prostatic carcinoma. J Urol 1992 Mar;147(3 Pt 2):900-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538492
100. Zincke H. Radical prostatectomy and exenterative procedures for local failure after radiotherapy with curative intent: comparison of outcomes. J Urol 1992 Mar;147(3 Pt 2):894-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538491
101. Lerner SE, Blute ML, Zincke H. Critical evaluation of salvage surgery for radio-recurrent/resistant prostate cancer. J Urol 1995 Sep;154(3):1103-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543608
102. Rogers E, Ohori M, Kassabian S, et al. Salvage radical prostatectomy: outcome measured by serum prostate specific antigen levels. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):104-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7526002
103. Gheiler EL, Tefilli MV, Tiguert R, et al. Predictors for maximal outcome in patients undergoing salvage surgery for radio-recurrent prostate cancer. Urology 1998 May;51(5):789-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9610593
104. Garzotto M, Wajsman Z. Androgen deprivation with salvage surgery for radiorecurrent prostate cancer: result of a 5-year follow-up. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):950-4;discussion 954-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474190
105. Vaidya A, Soloway MS. Salvage radical prostatectomy for radiorecurrent prostate cancer: morbidity revisited. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):1998-2001.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061900
106. Stephenson AJ, Scardino PT, Bianco FJ, et al. Morbidity and functional outcomes of salvage radical prostatectomy for locally recurrent prostate cancer after radiation therapy. J Urol 2004 Dec;172 (6 Pt 1):2239-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538239
107. Heidenreich A, Ohlmann C, Ozgür E, et al. [Functional and oncological outcome of salvage prostatectomy of locally recurrent prostate cancer following radiation therapy] Urologe A 2006 Apr; 45(4):474-81. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16465521
108. Heidenreich A, Richter S, Thüer D, et al. Prognostic parameters, complications, and oncologic and functional outcome of salvage radical prostatectomy for locally recurrent prostate cancer after 21st-century radiotherapy. Eur Urol 2010 Mar;57(3):437-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19303197
109. Pisters LL, von Eschenbach AC, Scott SM, et al. The efficacy and complications of salvage cryotherapy of the prostate. J Urol 1997Mar;157(3):921-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072600
110. Cespedes RD, Pisters LL, von Eschenbach AC, et al. Long-term follow-up of incontinence and obstruction after salvage cryosurgical ablation of the prostate: results in 143 patients. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):237-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976261
111. Ismail M, Ahmed S, Kastner C, Davies J. Salvage cryotherapy for recurrent prostate cancer after radiation failure: a prospective case series of the first 100 patients. BJU Int 2007 Oct;100(4):760-4. Epub 2007 Jul 23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17662081
112. Pisters LL, Rewcastle JC, Donnelly BJ, et al. Salvage prostate cryoablation: initial results from the cryo on-line data registry. J Urol 2008 Aug;180(2):559-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18554664
113. Pisters LL, Leibovici D, Blute M, et al. Locally recurrent prostate cancer after initial radiation therapy: a comparison of salvage radical prostatectomy versus cryotherapy. J Urol. 2009 Aug;182(2):517-25; discussion 525-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19524984
114. Grado GL, Collins JM, Kriegshauser JS, et al. Salvage brachytherapy for localized prostate cancer after radiotherapy failure. Urology 1999 Jan;53(1):2-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886580

115. Beyer DC. Permanent brachytherapy as salvage treatment for recurrent prostate cancer. Urology 1999 Nov;54(5):880-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10565751
116. Burri RJ, Stone NN, Unger P, et al. Long-term outcome and toxicity of salvage brachytherapy for local failure after initial radiotherapy for prostate. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol 2010 Aug;77(5):1338-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20138442
117. Moman MR, van der Poel HG, Battermann JJ, et al. Treatment outcome and toxicity after salvage 125-I implantation for prostate cancer recurrences after primary 125-I implantation and external beam radiotherapy. Brachytherapy 2010 Apr-Jun;9(2):119-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19850536
118. Pinover WH, Horwitz EM, Hanlon AL, et al. Validation of a treatment policy for patients with prostate specific antigen failure after three-dimensional conformal prostate radiation therapy. Cancer 2003 Feb;97(4):1127-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12569615
119. Zacharakis E, Ahmed HU, Ishaq A, et al. The feasibility and safety of high-intensity focused ultrasound as salvage therapy for recurrent prostate cancer following external beam radiotherapy. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(7):786-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18564135
120. Murat FJ, Poissonnier L, Rabilloud M, et al. Mid-term results demonstrate salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) as an effective and acceptably morbid salvage treatment option for locally radiorecurrent prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Mar;55(3):640-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18508188
121. Ahmed HU, Ishaq A, Zacharakis E, et al. Rectal fistulae after salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound for recurrent prostate cancer after combined brachytherapy and external beam radiotherapy. BJU Int 2009 Feb;103(3):321-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19021611
122. Ahmed HU, Cathcart P, Chalasani V, et al. Whole-gland salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound therapy for localized prostate cancer recurrence after external beam radiation therapy. Cancer. 2011 Nov 9. doi: 10.1002/cncr.26631. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22071795
123. Berge V, Baco E, Dahl AA, Karlsen SJ. Health-related quality of life after salvage high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) treatment for locally radiorecurrent prostate cancer. Int J Urol 2011 Sep;18(9): 646-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21771102

19. CASTRATION-RESISTANT PCA (CRPC)

19.1 Background

Cancer of the prostate is a heterogeneous disease. Our knowledge of the mechanisms involved in androgen independence, which is now known as castration-resistant prostate cancer (CRPC), remains incomplete (1-4), but is starting to become clearer (5,6). In the past, it was thought that androgen ablation provides a selective advantage androgen-independent cells that grow and eventually comprise most of the tumour. An alteration in normal androgen signalling is thought to be central to the pathogenesis of androgen-independent PCa (7).

It is thought that androgen independence (now called castration resistance) is mediated through two main, overlapping, mechanisms, which are androgen-receptor (AR)-independent and AR-dependent.

*19.1.1 **Androgen-receptor-independent mechanisms***

Androgen-receptor-independent mechanisms may be associated with the deregulation of apoptosis through the deregulation of oncogenes. High levels of bcl-2 expression are seen with greater frequency as PCa progresses.The regulation of microtubule integrity may be a mechanism through which bcl-2 induces its anti-apoptotic effect (8,9). Indeed, most active chemotherapeutics in CRPC work by inhibiting microtubule formation. The tumour suppressor gene p53 is more frequently mutated in androgen-independent PCa. Over-expression of bcl-2 and p53 in prostatectomy specimens has been shown to predict an aggressive clinical course (10-12). Clinical trials are underway to target the bcl-2 pathway (13), as the MDM2 oncogene (14) and the PTEN (phosphatase and tensin homolog) suppressor gene may also be involved (15).

19.1.2 ***AR-dependent mechanisms***

Direct AR-dependent mechanisms comprise the main pathway. Ligand-independent AR activation has been suspected, such as the tyrosine kinase activated pathway (IGF-1, KGF, EGF). Epidermal growth factor (EGF) is a potent mitogen of prostate stromal and epithelial cells. It is produced in high levels locally and acts as a paracrine stimulator. In AR-independent tumours, autocrine stimulation may become more important, which could allow unregulated growth (16).

Androgen receptor amplification and overexpression are observed in one-third of CRPC tissues (17,19) and may lead to AR hypersensitivity. Androgen receptor mutations may lead to a functional change in AR function (3,4,16). At the same time, there is an intracellular increase in androgens from in-situ conversion (20,21). This increase may be secondary to an increase in the intracellular enzymes involved in intracellular androgen synthesis (22).

Because AR mutations are found in only a subpopulation of tumour cells, they are unlikely to be responsible for the entire spectrum of the AR-independent state (23). The AR mutations might be related to the selective pressure of anti-androgens (23). The recent discovery of gene fusion between the androgen-driven TMPRSS2 and the EGR-ETS oncogene family (24) raises the question of oncogene regulation through androgen regulation pathways. In gene fusion, an androgen-responsive element from an androgene-regulated gene becomes associated with genes that are usually not androgen-regulated, so that they too become subject to androgen regulation. Currently, their implication in CRPC is hypothetical. Even in castrated patients, metastatic tissues have repeatedly shown high levels of androgens, suggesting a high level of intracrine synthesis (22,25). It is possible that a high intraprostatic cholesterol level can activate specific androgen pathways (1).

19.2 Definition of relapsing prostate cancer after castration

The previously term, 'hormone-refractory prostate cancer' referred to a very heterogeneous disease. It included different patient cohorts with significantly different median survival times (Table 21).

Table 21: Estimated natural mean survival of patients with HRPC presenting with different clinical scenarios

Patient characteristics	**Estimated mean survival**
Asymptomatic PSA	
No metastases	20-36 months
Minimal metastases	18-27 months
Extensive metastases	9-12 months
Symptomatic PSA	
Minimal metastases	14-16 months
Extensive metastases	9-12 months

The precise definition of recurrent or relapsed PCa remains controversial and several groups have recently published practical recommendations for defining CRPC (25-26).

Various different terms have been used to describe prostate cancers that relapse after initial hormonal ablation therapy, including HRPC, androgen-independent cancers and hormone-independent cancers (1). Over the course of the past 5 to 8 years, the term castration-resistant prostate cancer (CRPC) has become more used than the term hormone refractory or androgen independent. This is based predominantly on the implications of recent findings suggesting that advancing prostate cancer is not uniformly refractory to further hormonal manipulation and that androgens and the progression of disease are frequently dependent on - not independent of - androgen-AR interactions. The castrate-resistant, but still hormone-sensitive, PCa (CRPC) has been clearly characterised, with new drugs targeting either the AR, such as MDV3100, or androgen synthesis, via the CYP 17 inhibition like abiraterone acetate or TAK700 (*see below* Section 17.8.5.2) (27). Table 22 lists the key defining factors of CRPC.

Table 22: Definition of CRPC

Castrate serum levels of testosterone (testosterone < 50 ng/dL **or** < 1.7 nmol/L)
Three consecutive rises of PSA, 1 week apart, resulting in two 50% increases over the nadir, with a PSA > 2 ng/mL
Anti-androgen withdrawal for at least 4 weeks for flutamide and for at least 6 weeks for bicalutamide*
PSA progression, despite consecutive hormonal manipulations†

** Either anti-androgen withdrawal or one secondary hormonal manipulation should have been done in order to fulfil the criteria for CRPC if patients have been treated with antiandrogens in the context of maximum androgen blockade or step up therapy following PSA progression after failure of LHRH treatment.*
† Progression of osseous lesions: progression or appearance of two or more lesions on bone scan or soft tissue lesions using RECIST (Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumours) and with nodes ≥ 2 cm in diameter.

19.3 Assessing treatment outcome in androgen-independent PCa

In general, the therapeutic outcome should be assessed using the guidelines for the evaluation of treatment response in solid tumours, recently published by the RECIST group (Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumours) (28). However, 80-90% of patients do not have bi-dimensionally measurable disease. Patients with primarily soft tissue cancers often have a different prognosis to those with only osseous metastases.

Osteoblastic bone metastases remain difficult to quantify accurately. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) might be useful for assessing axial metastases (29). Since the cause of death in PCa patients is often unreliable, a more valid end-point might be overall survival (OS) rather than a disease-specific one (30).

*19.3.1 **PSA level as marker of response***

Many contemporary studies use PSA as a marker of response, even though there is no consensus about the magnitude and duration of a decline in PSA level. Although PSA is used as a rapid screening tool to test new agents for activity, there is conflicting evidence about the role of PSA as a response marker. Both the vaccine trials, Sipuleucel-T (Provenge) (31) and the TRICOM (PROSTVAC) study (32), demonstrated a significant OS benefit without any PSA change, raising questions about the value of PSA response for non-hormonal non-cytotoxic drugs (33).

In addition, wide fluctuations have been seen in PSA values due to a transient effect of drugs on PSA production. The effect of drugs on PSA expression should be considered when interpreting PSA response data, which should be viewed together with other clinical data (34-41).

Nevertheless, it has been reproducibly shown that ≥ 50% PSA decline in pre-treatment PSA following therapy carries a significant survival advantage (42,43). Kelly et al. (42) reported a statistically significant survival advantage in 110 patients with ≥ 50% PSA decline (> 25 months) versus those without a ≥ 50% PSA decline (8.6 months). Smith et al. (43) showed that a PSA decline ≥ 50% for at least 8 weeks resulted in a longer mean survival time of 91 weeks versus 38 weeks in patients showing a smaller PSA reduction.

An improved PSA response was also associated with prolonged survival in the TAX 327 study, with a median survival of 33 months when the PSA was normalised (< 4 ng/mL) versus 15.8 months for an abnormal PSA. This study also showed that a PSA response was not a surrogate marker for survival; even though the same PSA response rate was found in both docetaxel arms (45%), improved survival only occurred with the 3-weekly docetaxel regimen. According to the most recent evaluation of the TAX 327 and SWOG 99-16 studies, a PSA detection of ≥ 30% is associated with a significant survival benefit (44,45).

*19.3.2 **Other parameters***

The evaluation of molecular markers is just beginning. It includes a possible correlation between the positive findings of reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) and poor survival (46), though these data must be corroborated before any clinical recommendations can be made. Another, probably more interesting, tool is the circulating tumour cell count (CTC count), which has been developed in parallel with abiraterone. The CTC count has been clearly related to survival in several trials (47-49) and may become a surrogate marker for survival. The FDA has recently approved an assay for CTC.

In patients with symptomatic osseous lesions, pain reduction or complete pain relief may be used as parameters to assess palliative therapeutic response (50). In a landmark analysis of TAX 327, PSA response

and pain response, but not QoL response, were independently associated with survival (51).

*19.3.3 **Trial end-points***

An increasing number of investigators advocate subjective end-points. However, investigators should currently apply the following:

- Use clearly defined end-points in trials, sufficiently powered to answer the hypothesis.
- Report each response parameter individually, rather than as a complete or partial response.
- Only use PSA response with other clinical parameters of response.
- Consider QoL end-points independently in symptomatic patients.

However, in everyday practice, the evaluation of treatment response must be based on symptom improvement, prolonged survival, or other pre-defined targets.

*19.3.4 **Recommendations for assessing therapeutic response***

The Prostate Cancer Working Group 2 recommends that investigators measure early-response outcomes by the changes in the individual disease manifestations present initially for both cytotoxic and non-cytotoxic drugs with the same methods used at enrolment (25). If a protocol defines a composite end-point for progression, the specified progression in any measure (with the exception of early changes in PSA or pain) overrides a change or improvement in other measures.

Recommendations	LE	GR
For PSA: Recognise that a favourable effect on PSA may be delayed for 12 weeks or more, even for a cytotoxic drug. Monitor PSA by cycle but plan to continue through early rises for a minimum of 12 weeks, unless there is other evidence of progression. Ignore early rises (prior to 12 weeks) in determining PSA response.	1a	A
Bone disease; Record outcome as new lesions or no new lesions. • First scheduled reassessment: no new lesions: continue therapy. • New lesions: perform a confirmatory scan 6 or more weeks later Confirmatory scan: no new lesions: continue therapy • Additional new lesions: progression Subsequent scheduled reassessments: no new lesions: continue. New lesions: progression.		
In non-osseous metastases from CRPC, assessment should adhere to the RECIST criteria.	1b	A
In patients with advanced symptomatic metastatic CRPC, the therapeutic response can be best assessed by improvement of symptoms. Document pain and analgesia at entry with a lead-in period and measure repeatedly at 3- to 4-week intervals. Perform serial assessments of global changes in HRQoL, urinary or bowel compromise, pain management, additional anticancer therapy Ignore early changes (12 weeks) in pain or HRQoL in absence of compelling evidence of disease progression. Confirm response or progression of pain or HRQoL end-points 3 weeks later.	1b	A

HRQoL = health-related Quality of life; RECIST = Response Evaluation Criteria in Solid Tumours.

19.4 Androgen deprivation in castration-resistant PCa

The existence of androgen-resistant PCa shows that disease progression occurs despite castration. The castration levels of testosterone must therefore be documented and a serum testosterone level < 50 ng/dL (1.7 nmol/L) should be documented at initial relapse on hormonal therapy (52).

Continued testicular androgen suppression in CRPC has a minimal overall effect. The recommendation to continue androgen deprivation therapy (ADT) with LHRH analogues, despite PSA progression, is based on the data of Manni et al. (53). This study demonstrated significantly lower survival rates in patients without complete androgen blockade (CAB). However, these data have been challenged by two trials that showed only a marginal survival benefit for patients remaining on LHRH analogues during second- and third-line therapies (54,55).

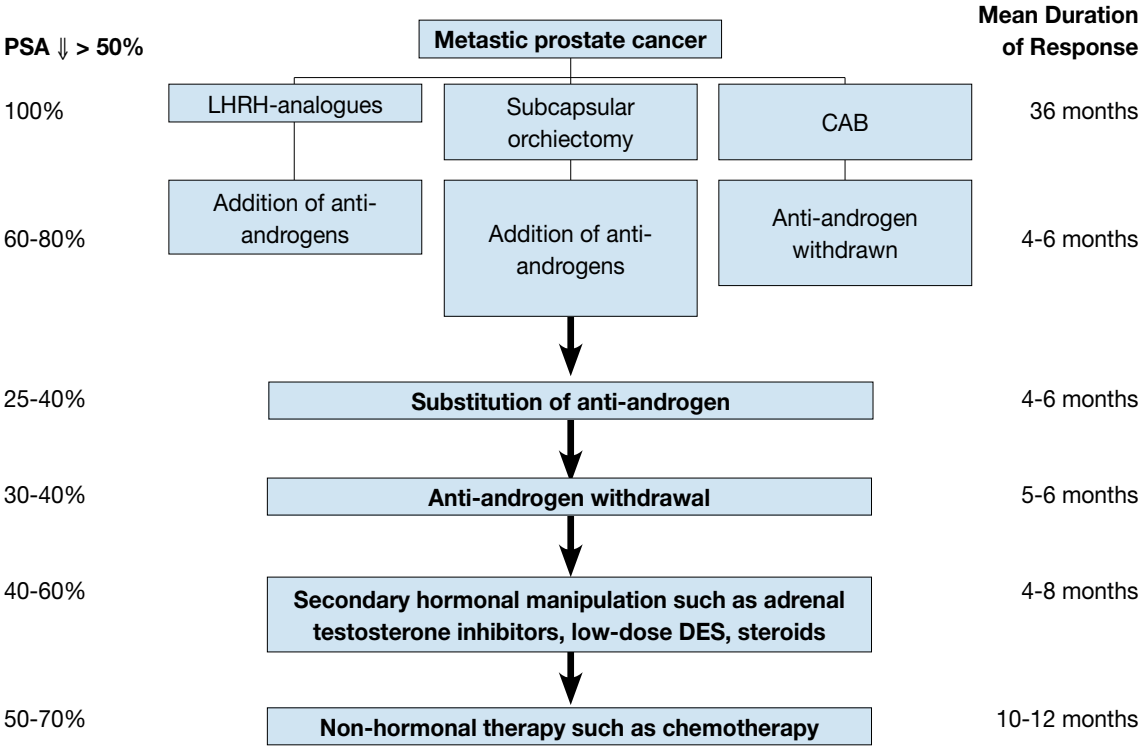
However, in the absence of prospective data, the modest potential benefits of a continuing castration outweigh the minimal risk of treatment. Androgen suppression should therefore be continued indefinitely in these patients.

19.5 Secondary hormonal therapy

For the patient with progressive disease after ADT, there are many therapeutic options. They include anti-

androgen withdrawal, addition of anti-androgens, anti-androgen replacement, oestrogenic compounds, adrenolytic agents, and novel approaches (56). Figure 1 summarises the treatment modalities and expected responses.

Figure 1: Flowsheet of the potential therapeutic options after PSA progression following initial hormonal therapy



LHRH = luteinising hormone releasing hormone; CAB = complete androgen blockade; DES = diethylstilboesterol.

19.6 Anti-androgen withdrawal syndrome

In 1993, Kelly and Scher (57) reported clinical and PSA responses in men who discontinued flutamide therapy upon the development of progressive disease. The anti-androgen withdrawal syndrome was a critical discovery in understanding the biology of androgen independence, interpreting clinical trials, and treating patients (58-61).

Approximately one-third of patients respond to anti-androgen withdrawal, as indicated by a ≥ 50% PSA decrease, for a median duration of approximately 4 months (Table 22). Anti-androgen withdrawal responses have also been reported with bicalutamide and megestrol acetate (62-67). Recently, in the SWOG 9426 trial, PSA progression despite CAB was reported in a subgroup of 210 patients with a tumour stage of M0 or M1 (68). A response was observed in 21%, even though there was no radiographic response. Median progression-free survival (PFS) was 3 months, with 19% (all M0) having 12 months' or greater PFS. Factors associated with increased PFS and OS were a longer period of non-steroidal use, lower PSA at baseline and M0-stage. These results were obtained with patients on CAB following androgen withdrawal treatment. No data were available on the withdrawal effect following second-line anti-androgen treatment.

In conclusion, androgen withdrawal should be systematically considered as a first-line modality in relapsing patients, even if its efficacy is limited (LE: 2).

Table 23: Frequency and duration of PSA response following anti-androgen withdrawal

Anti-androgen	No. of patients	> 50% decrease in PSA No. of patients (%)	Duration (months)
Flutamide	57	16 (28%)	4.0
Flutamide	82	12 (15%)	3.5
Flutamide	39	11 (28%)	3.7
Flutamide	21	7 (33%)	3.7
Bicalutamide	17	5 (29%)	5.0
Combined results	210	44 (21%)	3 (median)

19.7 Treatment alternatives after initial hormonal therapy

Except in patients with non-castration testosterone levels, it is difficult to predict which subset of patients is most likely to respond to secondary hormonal strategies.

19.7.1 ***Bicalutamide***

Bicalutamide is a non-steroidal anti-androgen with a dose response, with higher doses producing a greater reduction in PSA level (69). The largest cohort so far is based on 52 CRPC patients treated with bicalutamide, 150 mg (70). A palliative effect was clear and a 20% PSA response (at least 50% decrease) was observed, without any link to the palliative effect. Based on the affinity of dihydrotestosterone (DHT) for the androgen receptor, a large randomised trial (TARP) is ongoing comparing the effectiveness of bicalutamide 50 mg combined with either dutasteride or placebo in non-metastatic CRPC (71). The addition of an anti-androgen, such as bicalutamide or flutamide, to gonadal suppression at the time of PSA failure appears to result in declining PSA in only a few patients (72,73).

19.7.2 ***Switching to an alternative anti-androgen therapy***

There has been recent interest in another simple modality: the alternative anti-androgen therapy (74). After CAB was stopped in 232 progressing patients (76% being M1b), a withdrawal effect was observed in 31 men (15.1%). A second-line hormonal treatment was performed by giving an alternative non-steroidal drug (i.e. initial flutamide was replaced by bicalutamide and vice versa). An overall > 50% decline in PSA was observed in 83 men (35.8%), irrespective of any previous withdrawal effect, which lasted more than 6 months. The higher the PSA at the start of second-line therapy, the shorter was the progression-free survival and the lower was the PSA response rate.

19.7.3 ***Anti-androgen withdrawal accompanied by simultaneous ketoconazole***

The adrenal glands secrete approximately 10% of circulating androgen in humans. Some tumour cells in androgen-independent states must retain androgen sensitivity, as a clinical response is induced by a further decrease in circulating androgen levels following bilateral adrenalectomy or administration of drugs inhibiting adrenal steroidogenesis. Aminoglutethimide, ketoconazole and corticosteroids act mainly via this mechanism (75-79) to produce a PSA response in about 25% of patients for about 4 months. The simultaneous addition of ketoconazole to anti-androgen withdrawal, produced a significantly increased PSA response (32% vs 11%) and a longer time to PSA progression (8.6 vs 5.9 months) compared to anti-androgen withdrawal alone (79).

19.7.4 ***Oestrogens***

Prostate cancer usually expresses oestrogen receptors, which are upregulated after androgen ablation in animal models. In-vitro oestrogens can activate mutant androgen receptors isolated from androgen-independent PCa, while high-dose oestrogens have achieved objective salvage responses. This may be due to the mitotic arrest of direct cytotoxic effects on the cells, perhaps through an apoptotic mechanism (80,81). Recently, diethylstilboestrol (DES) (82-84) achieved a positive PSA response between 24% and 80%, with an overall estimated survival of 63% at 2 years. However, even at low doses of DES, about one-third (31%) of patients developed deep venous thrombosis and 7% experienced myocardial infarction.

19.7.5 ***The future for agents targeting the androgen receptor and endocrine pathways***

In the last 2 years, potential drugs have appeared in early phase I/II trials in CRPC and should be considered as potential major new tools, provided the randomised phase III trials confirm the early results. Furthermore, they confirm that the castrate-resistant status is far from meaning an hormonal-resistant status (see above Section 19.4).

19.7.5.1 MDV3100

The first agent, MDV3100, is a novel anti-androgen which blocks AR transfer to the nucleus, in contrast to currently available drugs where AR is able to transfer to the nucleus. This means that no agonist-like activity should ever occur. At the ASCO 2009 meeting, a phase I/II trial on 140 CRPC was reported (85). In this dose-finding study, a PSA decline > 50% was seen in 57% chemo-naïve patients, and in 45% chemo-refractory patients. Based on these results, a large phase III trial has been recently launched in metastatic CRPC patients after chemotherapy, on more than 1000 patients, with OS being the primary end-point.

At the GU ASCO 2012 the final results of the AFFIRM study were presented demonstrating a significant survival benefit of 4.8 months in patients undergoing MDV3100 treatment as compared to placebo. The median survival was 18.4 months versus 13.6 months ($p < 0.0001$) in the MDV3100 and the placebo group, respectively. The relative risk reduction of death was 37%. The median progression-free was 8.3 months versus 3.0 months ($p < 0.0001$) (86).

19.7.5.2 Abiraterone acetate

The second agent is the CYP17 inhibitor, abiraterone acetate. In CRPC patients, this drug is able to decrease PSA > 50% in 85% chemo-naïve patients (87), by 50% after docetaxel (88,89), and even by 33% after ketoconazole (89). In chemo-naïve patients, a PSA decline of > 90% is seen in up to 40% of patients (87).

The largest cohort so far is based on 96 chemo-naïve men included in a phase I/II trial. At a dose of 1000 mg, a PSA decline > 50% was observed in 67% and > 90% in 19% of patients. A partial response (RECIST-based) was seen in 37% of patients. The median time to progression was about 1 year (6). These very promising results have led to two large phase III trials: one in chemo-refractory patients (n = 1158), the other in chemo-naïve patients (n = 1000, accrual completed). In both trials, OS is the primary endpoint. In the post-chemotherapy trial (COU-301), patients with disease progression after docetaxel-based therapy were randomly assigned to receive abiraterone plus prednisone or prednisone plus placebo, with treatment continuing until disease progression or death. The results from the study demonstrated a significant improvement in overall survival in favour of abiraterone from 10.9 to 14.8 months, with a hazard ratio of 0.646. The PSA response proportion to abiraterone/prednisone was 38% versus 10% in this study, while grade 3 to 4 adverse events leading to discontinuation occurred in 10% of those treated with abiraterone and 13% of those treated with placebo. This study is a confirmation that CRPC remains hormone-driven, even in advanced stages of the disease and represents an outstanding opportunity for the future treatment of CRPC (90).

19.8 Non-hormonal therapy (cytotoxic agents)

Several proven chemotherapeutic options are available for metastatic disease in CRPC (Table 24). Multiple trials are underway, using very different approaches through all the known pathways. A detailed review is far beyond the scope of these guidelines (5), as most drugs are experimental, except perhaps docetaxel.

A significant improvement in median survival of about 2, 2.5 months occurred with docetaxel-based chemotherapy compared to mitoxantrone + prednisone therapy (91,92). In the SWOG 99-16 trial, pain relief was similar in both groups, although side-effects occurred significantly more often with docetaxel than with mitoxantrone.

Table 24: PSA response rates, mean survival, time to progression, and pain reduction in the large, prospective, randomised phase III trials of chemotherapy in patients with CRPC

Study	n	PSA decrease > 50%	Decrease in pain	Survival (months)	Time to progression
TAX 327					
Mitoxantrone, 3 weekly, 12 mg/m^2, Prednisone 5 mg BID		32%	22%	16.5	-
Docetaxel, 3 weekly, 75 mg/m^2 Prednisone 5 mg BID		45%[1]	35%[3]	18.9[1]	-
Docetaxel, weekly, 30 mg/m^2 Prednisone 5 mg BID		48%[1]	31%	17.4	-
SWOG 99-16					
Mitoxantrone, 3 weekly, 12 mg/m^2	336	50%[1]	-	17.5[2]	6.3 months[1]

Docetaxel/EMP, 3 weekly, 60 mg/m^2, EMP 3x280mg/day	338	27%	-	15.6	3.2 months
CALGB 9182					
Hydrocortisone	123	38%[4]	-	12.3	2.3 months
Mitoxantrone/HC, 3 weekly, 12 mg/m^2	119	22%	-	12.6	3.7 months[4]
Tannock et al.					
Prednisone	81	22%	12%	-	43 weeks[1]
Mitoxantrone/Pred, 3 weekly, 12 mg/m2	80	33%	29%[2]	-	18 weeks

EMP = estramustine; HC = hydrocortisone; Pred = prednisone. [1]p < 0.000; [2]p = 0.001; [3]p = 0.01; [4]p < 0.03.

19.8.1 Timing of chemotherapy in metastatic CRPC

The timing of chemotherapy varies in metastatic CRPC. It is advisable to start it immediately in symptomatic patients, if possible every 3 weeks, as this schedule is associated with an improvement in survival. However, a weekly regimen will result in the same symptom improvement and must be considered in patients unable to receive the optimal regimen (LE: 1b), as it is more effective than best supportive care (93). In asymptomatic patients, timing is not so clear and must be discussed individually.

Several poor prognostic factors have been described, such as a PSA level > 114 ng/mL, PSA doubling time (PSA-DT) < 55 days, or the presence of visceral metastases (94). A better risk group definition has been recently presented, based on the TAX 327 study cohort. The predictive factors were visceral metastases, pain, anaemia (Hb < 13 g/dL), bone scan progression, and prior estramustine before docetaxel. Patients were categorised into three risk groups: good risk (0-1 factor), intermediate (2 factors) and high risk (3-4 factors), leading to three different median OS: 25.7, 18.7 and 12.8 months, respectively (46) . In addition, two independent studies have suggested that improved survival can be predicted by C-reactive protein (CRP) levels < 8 mg/L (hazard ratio [HR], 2.96) (95,96). Age by itself is not a contraindication to docetaxel (97).

Currently, the only indication for chemotherapy in CRPC non-metastatic patients is inside clinical trials and patients should be advised to participate.

19.8.2 Mitoxantrone combined with corticosteroids

Mitoxantrone combined with corticosteroids (98,99) has been extensively studied primarily in patients with symptomatic osseous lesions due to CRPC. In the CALGB 9182 study (99), 244 patients with symptomatic metastatic CRPC were randomised to receive either mitoxantrone + hydrocortisone, 12 mg/m^2 every 3 weeks, or hydrocortisone alone. No differences were observed with regard to survival, PSA response, and median time to progression. However, the QoL was significantly improved in the combination arm. In another trial (99), 161 men with painful osseous metastases due to CRPC were randomised to receive mitoxantrone + prednisone versus prednisone alone. There was a significant benefit in pain reduction in the combination group (29%) versus prednisone alone (12%, p = 0.01). Furthermore, the duration of palliation was longer in patients who received mitoxantrone (43 weeks vs 18 weeks, p < 0.0001). There were no significant differences with regard to PSA response and median survival time. However, again, QoL was improved significantly due to pain reduction.

19.8.3 Alternative combination treatment approaches

Encouraging results have been seen with alternative treatments evaluated in prospective clinical phase II trials (100-103), including pegylated doxorubicin, vinorelbine, a combination of paclitaxel, carboplatin + estramustine, a combination of vinblastine, doxorubicin + radionuclides, and a combination of docetaxel + mitoxantrone. The lack of representative randomised phase III trials and unknown long-term efficacy are major problems associated with all these studies.

19.8.4 Estramustine in combination therapies

The synergy observed for estramustine combined with other drugs that target microtubule action has generated promising results in prospective clinical trials.

Estramustine + vinblastine is the most studied estramustine combination. Although different doses of estramustine and vinblastine have been used in prospective randomised trials, significant PSA and measurable responses have been reported in three separate studies. Although time to progression and frequency of ≥ 50% PSA decrease was significantly higher in the estramustine + vinblastine treatment arm, median survival

did not differ significantly between the estramustine and the estramustine + vinblastine arms (104). A recent meta-analysis (105) concluded that the addition of estramustine to chemotherapy increased the time to PSA progression and OS. However, there was a significant increased risk of thromboembolic events, up to 7% (106), requiring systematic prevention with coumadin.

19.8.5 ***Oral cyclophosphamide***

Intravenous cyclophosphamide has been tested in many trials. However, there is currently interest in oral cyclophosphamide, which seems to be less toxic than intravenous cyclophosphamide and may have greater activity. A study of oral cyclophosphamide + oral etoposide in 20 patients was similarly encouraging (107,108).

19.8.6 ***Cisplatin and carboplatin***

Cisplatin and carboplatin have activity as single agents against PCa. They also have a well-documented synergy with etoposide or paclitaxel in vitro in other malignancies, such as lung and ovarian cancer. As estramustine is also synergistic with these drugs, combinations of these three agents are now being tested. A combination of estramustine, etoposide and cisplatin (or carboplatin) has significant activity against poorly differentiated CRPC. A combination of estramustine, etoposide and paclitaxel has produced high response rates (102,109).

19.8.7 ***Specific bone targets***

Bone is a primary target for prostatic metastatic cells, leading to a rational for bone-protective drugs, preventing cancer cells from colonising and developing bone. Besides zoledronic acid and denosumab (see above Section 12.7.1), there are other promising drugs, mainly those targeting the endothelin-1 axis. The first of these agents (atrasentan) resulted in clear biological responses, but questionable clinical results (110), possibly secondary to an inappropriate trial design. However, the proof of principle has been made, and second-generation blockers (zibotentan) are under development after initially encouraging phase II trials (111), with large phase III trials in CRPC, either without metastases (> 1000 patients), with metastases (> 500 patients), or with docetaxel (> 1000 patients). Phase 3 trials in patients with CRPC are currently assessing docetaxel with or without atrasentan (NCT00134056) or zibotentan (ENTHUSE M1C; NCT00617669). However, recent results from the ENTHUSE M1 trial (NCT00554229) showed no significant improvement in OS with zibotentan monotherapy in men with mildly symptomatic CRPC (112). Moreover, it has been announced that the ENTHUSE M0 trial of zibotentan monotherapy in patients with non-metastatic CRPC has been discontinued after failing to meet the primary OS end-point. Phase 3 results for zibotentan/docetaxel treatment of bone-metastatic CRPC are still pending.

19.8.8 ***Salvage chemotherapy***

Since all patients who receive docetaxel-based chemotherapy for CRPC will progress, there have been many clinical trials investigating the role of salvage chemotherapy. The results suggest the most appropriate approaches are cabazitaxel (113), intermittent docetaxel chemotherapy (114,115), and potentially molecular-targeted therapy (116,117).

Several groups have used second-line intermittent docetaxel in patients who had clearly responded to first-line docetaxel (114,115,118). In general, a PSA response can be achieved in about 60% of patients with a median time to progression of about 6 months, while treatment-associated toxicity is minimal and similar to that of first-line docetaxel. Another, recently identified approach is molecular-targeted therapy (116,117,119-122) though more research is needed in larger groups of patients.

Platinum-based chemotherapeutic regimes have been investigated in patients with CRPC. Although the platinum complex, satraplatin, has shown activity against CRPC and some promise in clinical trials, the FDA rejected it for CRPC in 2008 (119).

Many new drugs, such as gefitinib, bevacizumab (phase III trial CALB 90401 ongoing), oblimersen (phase II trial EORTC 30021), and also a vaccine, G-Vax (122), have been tested in phase II/III trials without any positive impact on the primary end-point. The G-VAx trial was stopped prematurely because of a significantly higher mortality in the treatment arm as compared to the docetaxel control arm.

Positive results have been recently published from a prospective, randomised, phase III trial comparing the therapeutic efficacy of the taxane derivate, cabazitaxel, + prednisone versus mitoxantrone + prednisone in 755 patients with castration-resistant PCa, who had progressed after or during docetaxel-based chemotherapy (123). Patients received a maximum of 10 cycles of cabazitaxel (25 mg/m2) and mitoxantrone (12 mg/2), respectively. In both treatment arms, patients also received 10 mg prednisone daily for the entire treatment period. Overall survival was the primary endpoint and PFS, treatment response and safety were secondary endpoints. Patients in the cabazitaxel arm experienced a significantly increased OS of 15.1 versus 12.7 months ($p < 0.0001$) in the mitoxantrone arm. The cabazitaxel treatment arm also showed significant improvement

in PFS (2.8 vs 1.4 months, p < 0.0001), as well as in the objective response rate according to RECIST criteria (14.4% vs 4.4%, p < 0.005) and the PSA response rate (39.2% vs 17.8%, p < 0.0002).Treatment-associated WHO grade 3-4 side-effects developed significantly more often in the cabazitaxel arm, particularly haematological (68.2% vs 47.3%, p < 0.0002) and non-haematological toxicities (57.4% vs 39.8%, p < 0.0002) (113). Because of this and the risk of neutropenic sepsis associated with cabazitaxel, this drug should be administered by physicians with expertise in handling neutropenia and sepsis, possibly with granulocyte colony-stimulating factor.Whether cabazitaxel can be substituted for front-line docetaxel is the subject of a prospective phase III trial.

Recommendations on hormonal therapy
According to the positive results of this prospective randomised clinical phase III trial (LE: 1), cabazitaxel should be considered in the management of progressive CRPCA following docetaxel therapy.
Based on this second positive trial, in patients with relapse following first-line docetaxel chemotherapy both Cabazitaxel and Abiraterone are regarded as first-choice options for second-line treatment

19.9 Palliative therapeutic options: bone targeted therapies in CRPC

CRPC is usually a debilitating disease, often affecting the elderly male. A multidisciplinary approach is often required with input from medical oncologists, radiation oncologists, urologists, nurses, psychologists and social workers (124).

*19.9.1 **Painful bone metastases***

Most patients with CRPC have painful bone metastases. External beam radiotherapy is highly effective (125), even as single fraction (126). The two radioisotopes, strontium-89 and samarium-153, can partially or completely decrease bone pain in up to 70% of patients, but should not be given too late when pain is intractable. Early use can give rise to myelosuppression, making subsequent chemotherapy more difficult (127), even though a recent phase I trial has demonstrated manageable haematological toxicity with repeated administration of docetaxel and samarium-153. The use of samarium-153 as consolidation therapy, following a clear docetaxel response, may also help with initially painful bone metastases (128). Palliative treatment with another radioisotope emitter, radium-233, has shown very promising phase II results in patients with painful bone metastases in terms of palliation and OS, and only a mild haematological toxicity (129). Recently, survival results of the randomised phase 3 trial in men with CRPC and symptomatic bone metastases ineligible for or post-progresion to docetaxel with 223Ra (Alpharadin) (NCT00699751) have been reported at the ESMO 2011 meeting.The trial showed a survival advantage for alpharadine versus placebo (11.2 months versus 14.0 months HR 0.695; 95% CI, 0.552-0.875 P = .00185) met its primary endpoint of improved OS. Full data are awaited (130).

*19.9.2 **Common complications due to bone metastases***

Common complications due to skeletal metastases include bone pain, vertebral collapse or deformity pathological fractures and spinal cord compression. Osteoporosis may also cause fractures and should be prevented (see above). Cementation is an effective treatment of painful fracture, clearly improving both pain and QoL (131). However, it is still important to offer standard palliative surgery, which can be very effective at managing osteoblastic metastases (132,133). Impending spinal cord compression is an emergency. It must be recognised early and patients educated to recognise the warning signs. Once suspected, high-dose corticosteroids must be given and an MRI performed as soon as possible. A systematic neurosurgery consultation should be planned to discuss a possible decompression (134). Otherwise, external beam radiotherapy, with or without systemic therapy, is the treatment of choice.

*19.9.3 **Bisphosphonates***

Recently, bisphosphonates have been used to inhibit osteoclast-mediated bone resorption and osteoclast precursors in CRPC to provide effective treatment of skeletal complications and to reduce pain or provide total pain relief. In the largest single phase III trial (135), 643 patients who had CRPC with bone metastases were randomised to receive zoledronic acid, 8 mg or 4 mg every 3 weeks for 15 consecutive months, or placebo. At 15 and 24 months of follow-up, patients treated with only 4 mg of zoledronic acid had fewer skeletal-related events compared to the placebo group (44% vs 33%, p = 0.021) and fewer pathological fractures (13.1% vs 22.1%, p = 0.015). Furthermore, the time to first skeletal-related event was longer in the zoledronate group, so improving QoL. Patients were initially randomised to 4 or 8 mg of zoledronic acid, but the 8 mg dosage was later modified to 4 mg because of toxicity.

Currently, bisphosphonates can be proposed to patients with CRPC bone metastases to prevent skeletal

complications, even if the best dosing interval is unclear. At present, it is every 3 weeks or less. The toxicity, e.g. jaw necrosis, of these drugs, especially aminobisphosphonate, must always be kept in mind (135). Patients should have a dental examination before starting a bisphosphonate. The risk of jaw necrosis is increased by a history of trauma, dental surgery or dental infection, as well as intravenous long-term bisphosphonate administration (136).

Pain due to osseous metastases is one of the most debilitating complications of CRPC. Bisphosphonates have proven to be highly effective in reducing bone pain, but so far this has been investigated in small, open trials only. This data show that bisphosphonates seem to have a low side-effect profile which make them an ideal medication for palliative therapy of advanced CRPC (137-139). Bisphosphonates should be considered early in the management of symptomatic CRPC. Critical issues of palliation must be addressed when considering additional systemic treatment, including management of pain, constipation, anorexia, nausea, fatigue and depression, which often occur (i.e. palliative external beam radiation, cortisone, analgesics and anti-emetics).

19.9.4 ***RANK ligand inhibitors***

Denosumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody directed against RANKL, a key mediator of osteoclast formation, function, and survival. Denosumab efficacy against CRPC bone metastases was initially assessed in a phase 2 study. Fifty patients with increased urinary NTX levels despite previous treatment with zoledronic acid were randomised to either continue on intravenous bisphosphonates or receive subcutaneous denosumab. Denosumab normalised NTX levels more frequently than continuing bisphosphonate treatment (140).The efficacy and safety of denosumab (n = 950) compared with zoledronic acid (n = 951) in patients with metastatic CRPC was assessed in a phase III trial. Denosumab was superior to zoledronic acid in delaying or preventing skeletal related events (SREs), as shown by time to first on-study SRE (pathological fracture, radiation or surgery to bone, or spinal cord compression) of 20.7 versus 17.1 months, respectively (HR 0.82; p = 0.008). Denosumab also extended time to first and subsequent on-study SRE (HR 0.82; p=0.008). Both urinary NTX and BAP were significantly suppressed in the denosumab arm compared with the zoledronic acid arm ($p < 0.0001$ for both). This was the last of three pivotal trials exploring denosumab treatment of bone metastases, which formed the basis of the recent FDA approval of denosumab for preventing SREs in patients with bone metastases from solid tumours.

19.10 Summary of treatment after hormonal therapy

(Until results from randomised controlled trials on novel agents MDV3100 and abiraterone become available, there are no significant changes in the treatment of prostate cancer after hormonal therapy [27]).

Recommendations	GR
It is recommended to stop anti-androgen therapy once PSA progression is documented.	B
No clear-cut recommendation can be made for the most effective drug for secondary hormonal.	
manipulations because data from randomised trials are scarce.	C

Comment: Four to six weeks after discontinuation of flutamide or bicalutamide, an eventual anti-androgen withdrawal effect will be apparent.

19.11 Recommendations for cytotoxic and pre/post-docetaxel therapy in CRPC

Recommendations	GR
Patients with CRPCa should be counselled, managed and treated in a multidisciplinary team.	
In non-metastatic CRPCa, cytotoxic therapy should only be used in a clinical trial setting.	B
In patients with a PSA rise only, two consecutive increases of PSA serum levels above a previous reference level should be documented.	B
Patients should not be started on cytotoxic therapy unless their testosterone serum levels are below 50 ng/dL.	B
Patients should not be started on cytotoxic therapy unless their PSA serum levels are > 2 ng/mL. to assure correct interpretation of therapeutic efficacy.	B
Prior to treatment, the potential benefits of cytotoxic therapy and expected side-effects should be discussed with the patient.	C
In patients with metastatic CRPCa who are candidates for cytotoxic therapy, docetaxel at 75 mg/m^2 every 3 weeks is the drug of choice since it has shown a significant survival benefit.	A

In patients with symptomatic osseous metastases due to CRPCa, either docetaxel or mitoxantrone with prednisone or hydrocortisone are viable therapeutic options. If not contraindicated, docetaxel is the preferred agent based on the significant advantage in pain relief.	A
In patients with relapse following first-line docetaxel chemotherapy Cabazitaxel and Abiraterone are regarded as first-choice option for second-line treatment.	A
Second-line docetaxel can be offered to previously responding docetaxel-treated patients. Otherwise treatment is to be tailored to the individual patient. In case patients are not eligible for cabazitaxel or abiraterone, docetaxel is an option.	A
In men with CRPC with symptomatic bone metastases, ineligible for or progressing to docetaxel treatment with 223Ra (Alpharadin) has shown a survival benefit (141).	A

19.12 Recommendations for palliative management of CRPC

Recommendations	GR
Patients with symptomatic and extensive osseous metastases should be informed that further medical treatment will not extend life.	A
Management of these patients has to be directed at improvement of QoL and mainly pain reduction.	A
Effective medical management with the highest efficacy and a low frequency of side-effects is the major goal of therapy.	A
Bisphosphonates may be offered to patients with skeletal masses (mainly zoledronic acid has been studied) to prevent osseous complications. However, the benefits must be balanced against the toxicity of these agents, in particular jaw necrosis must be avoided.	A
Denosumab may be offered since it has been shown to delay/prevent SREs (pathologic fracture, radiation or surgery to bone, or spinal cord compression) also extending time to first and subsequent on-study SRE. Prior to treatment, the patient must be counseled about the potential benefits and side-effects (toxicity), in particular jaw necrosis.	A
In the management of painful osseous metastatses, early use of palliatative treatments such as radionuclides, external beam radiotherapy and adequate use of analgescis is recommended.	B
In patients with neurological symptoms, spinal surgery or decrompressive radiotherapy might be indicated as ermergency interventions.	A

19.13 References

1. Isaacs JT, Coffey DS. Adaptation vs selection as the mechanism responsible for the relapse of prostatic cancer to androgen ablation therapy as studied in the Dunning R-3327-H adenocarcinoma. Cancer Res 1981 Dec;41(12 Pt 1):5070-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7307008
2. Horoszewicz JS, Leong SS, Kawinski E, et al. LNCaP model of human prostatic carcinoma. Cancer Res 1983 Apr;43(4):1809-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6831420
3. Taplin ME, Bubley GJ, Shuster TD, et al. Mutation of the androgen-receptor gene in metastatic androgen-independent prostate cancer. N Engl J Med 1995 May;332(21):1393-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7723794
4. Visakorpi T, Hyytinen E, Kovisto P, et al. Amplification of the androgen receptor gene is common in recurrent prostate cancer from patients treated with androgen withdrawal. J Urol 1995;153:379A (abstract #603).
5. Chi KN, Bjartell A, Dearnaley D, et al. Castration-resistant prostate cancer: from new pathophysiology to new treatment targets. Eur Urol. 2009 Oct;56(4):594-605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19560857
6. Attard G, Cooper CS, de Bono JS. Steroid hormone receptors in prostate cancer: a hard habit to break? Cancer Cell 2009 Dec 8;16(6):458-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19962664
7. Schröder FH. Progress in understanding androgen-independent prostate cancer (AIPC): a review of potential endocrine-mediated mechanisms. Eur Urol 2008 Jun;53(6):1129-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18262723

8. Haldar S, Basu A, Croce CM. Bcl-2 is the guardian of microtubule integrity. Cancer Res 1997 Jan;57(2):229-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9000560
9. Stapleton AM, Timme TL, Gousse AE, et al. Primary human prostate cancer cells harboring p53 mutations are clonally expanded in metastases. Clin Cancer Res 1997 Aug;3(8):1389-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9815823
10. Bauer JJ, Sesterhenn IA, Mostofi FK, et al. Elevated levels of apoptosis regulator proteins p53 and bcl-2 are independent prognostic biomarkers in surgically treated clinically localized prostate cancer. J Urol 1996 Oct;156(4):1511-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808919
11. Theodorescu D, Broder SR, Boyd JC, et al. p53, bcl-2 and retinoblastoma proteins as long-term prognostic markers in localized carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1997 Jul;158(1):131-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9186339
12. MacGrogan D, Bookstein R. Tumour suppressor genes in prostate cancer. Semin Cancer Biol 1997 Feb;8(1):11-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9299577
13. Chi KN. Targeting Bcl-2 with oblimersen for patients with hormone refractory prostate cancer. World J Urol 2005 Feb;23(1):33-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15723221
14. Zhang Z, Li M, Wang H, Agrawal S, et al. Antisense therapy targeting MDM2 oncogene in prostate cancer: Effects on proliferation, apoptosis, multiple gene expression, and chemotherapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2003 Sep;100(20):11636-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13130078
15. Verhagen PC, van Duijn PW, Hermans KG, et al. The PTEN gene in locally progressive prostate cancer is preferentially inactivated by bi-allelic gene deletion. J Pathol 2006 Apr;208(5):699-707.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16402365
16. Ruijter E, van de Kaa C, Miller G, et al. Molecular genetics and epidemiology of prostate carcinoma. Endocr Rev 1999 Feb;20(1):22-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10047972
17. Hu R, Dunn TA, Wei S, et al. Ligand-independent androgen receptor variants derived from splicing of cryptic exons signify hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cancer Res 2009 Jan;69(1):16-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19117982
18. Koivisto PA, Schleutker J, Helin H, et al. Androgen receptor gene amplification: a possible molecular mechanism for androgen deprivation therapy failure in prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1999 Nov; 5(11):3578-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10589774
19. Linja MJ, Savinainen KJ, Saramäki OR, et al. Amplification and overexpression of androgen receptor gene in hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cancer Res. 2001 May 1;61(9):3550-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11325816
20. Montgomery RB, Mostaghel EA, Vessella R, et al. Maintenance of intratumoral androgens in metastatic prostate cancer: a mechanism for castration-resistant tumor growth. Cancer Res 2008 Jun;68(11):4447-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18519708
21. Locke JA, Guns ES, Lubik AA, et al. Androgen levels increase by intratumoral de novo steroidogenesis during progression of castration-resistant prostate cancer. Cancer Res 2008 Aug;68(15):6407-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18676866
22. Stanbrough M, Bubley GJ, Ross K, et al. Increased expression of genes converting adrenal androgens to testosterone in androgen-independent prostate cancer. Cancer Res 2006 Mar;66(5):2815-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16510604
23. Taplin ME, Rajeshkumar B, Halabi S, et al. Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study 9663. Androgen receptor mutations in androgen-independent prostate cancer: Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study 9663. Clin Oncol 2003 Jul;21(14):2673-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12860943
24. Tomlins SA, Rhodes DR, Perner S, et al. Recurrent fusion of TMPRSS2 and ETS transcription factor genes in prostate cancer. Science 2005 Oct;310(5748):644-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16254181

25. Scher HI, Halabi S, Tannock I, et al. Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group. Design and end points of clinical trials for patients with progressive prostate cancer and castrate levels of testosterone: recommendations of the Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Working Group. J Clin Oncol 2008 Mar;26(7):1148-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309951
26. Heidenreich A, von Knobloch R, Hofmann R. Current status of cytotoxic chemotherapy in hormone refractory prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2001 Feb;39(2):121-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11223670
27. Yamaoka M, Hara T, Kusaka M. Overcoming Persistent Dependency on Androgen Signaling after Progression to Castration-Resistant Prostate Cancer. Clin Cancer Res September 1, 2010 16:4319-24.
http://clincancerres.aacrjournals.org/content/16/17/4319
28. Eisenhauer EA, Therasse P, Bogaerts J, et al. New response evaluation criteria in solid tumours: revised RECIST guideline (version 1.1). Eur J Cancer 2009 Jan;45(2):228-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19097774
29. Tombal B, Rezazadeh A, Therasse P, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging of the axial skeleton enables objective measurement of tumor response on prostate cancer bone metastases. Prostate 2005 Oct; 65(2):178-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15948151
30. Scher HI, Mazumdar M, Kelly WK. Clinical trials in relapsed prostate cancer: defining the target. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996 Nov;88(22):1623-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8931606
31. Small EJ, Schellhammer PF, Higano CS, et al. Placebo-controlled phase III trial of immunologic therapy with sipuleucel-T (APC8015) in patients with metastatic, asymptomatic hormone refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jul;24(19):3089-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16809734
32. Kantoff P W, Schuetz T, Blumenstein BA, et al. Overall survival (OS) analysis of a phase II randomized controlled trial (RCT) of a poxviral-based PSA targeted immunotherapy in metastatic castration resistant prostate cancer (mCRPC). J Clin Oncol 27:15s, 2009 (suppl; abstract #5013)
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20100959
33. Bellmunt J, Rosenberg JE, Choueiri TK. Recent progress and pitfalls in testing novel agents in castration-resistant prostate cancer. Eur Urol 2009 Oct;56(4):606-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19635642
34. Dawson NA, McLeod DG. The assessment of treatment outcomes in metastatic prostate cancer: changing endpoints. Eur J Cancer 1997 Apr;33(4):560-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9274435
35. Kelly WK, Scher HI, Mazurmdar M, et al. Prostate-specific antigen as a measure of disease outcome in metastatic hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1993 Apr;11(4):607-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7683043
36. Sella A, Kilbourn R, Amato R, et al. Phase II study of ketoconazole combined with weekly doxorubicinin patients with androgen-independent prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1994 Apr;12(4):683-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512126
37. Pienta KJ, Redman B, Hussain M, et al. Phase II evaluation of oral estramustine and oral etoposide inhormone-refractory adenocarcinoma of the prostate. J Clin Oncol 1994 Oct;12(10):2005-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7523606
38. Hudes GR, Greenberg R, Krigel RL, et al. Phase II study of estramustine and vinblastine, two microtubule inhibitors, in hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1992 nov;10(11):1754-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1383436
39. Tannock IF, Osoba D, Stockler MR, et al. Chemotherapy with mitoxantrone plus prednisone or prednisone alone for symptomatic hormone-resistant prostate cancer: a Canadian randomized trial with palliative endpoints. J Clin Oncol 1996 Jun;14(6):1756-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8656243
40. George DJ, Kantoff PW. Prognostic indicators in hormone refractory prostate cancer. Urol Clin NorthAm 1999 May;26(2):303-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10361553
41. Scher HI, Curley T, Geller N, et al. Trimetrexate in prostatic cancer: preliminary observations on the use of prostate-specific antigen and acid phosphatase as a marker in measurable hormone-refractory disease. J Clin Oncol 1990 Nov;8(11):1830-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1700078

42. Kelly WK, Scher HI, Mazurmdar M, et al. Prostate-specific antigen as a measure of disease outcomein metastatic hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1993 Apr;11(4):607-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7683043
43. Smith DC, Dunn RL, Strawderman MS, et al. Change in serum prostate-specific antigen as a marker of response to cytotoxic therapy for hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1998 May;16(5):1835-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586898
44. Petrylak DP, Ankerst DP, Jiang CS et al. Evaluation of prostate-specific antigen declines for surrogacy in patients treated on SWOG 99-16.Crawford ED. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2006 Apr 19;98(8):516-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16622120
45. Armstrong AJ, Garrett-Mayer E, de Wit R, et al Prediction of survival following first-line chemotherapy in men with castration-resistant metastatic prostate cancer. Clin Cancer Res. 2010 Jan 1;16(1):203-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008841
46. Ghossein RA, Rosai J, Scher HI, et al. Prognostic significance of detection of prostate-specific antigen transcripts in the peripheral blood of patients with metastatic androgen-independent prostatic carcinoma. Urology 1997 Jul;50(1):100-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9218026
47. Scher HI, Jia X, de Bono JS, et al. Circulating tumour cells as prognostic markers in progressive, castration-resistant prostate cancer: a reanalysis of IMMC38 trial data. Lancet Oncol 2009 Mar; 10(3):233-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19213602
48. Helo P, Cronin AM, Danila DC, et al. Circulating prostate tumor cells detected by reverse transcription-PCR in men with localized or castration-refractory prostate cancer: concordance with Cell Search assay and association with bone metastases and with survival. Clin Chem 2009 Apr;55(4):765-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19233911
49. Goodman OB Jr, Fink LM, Symanowski JT, et al. Circulating tumor cells in patients with castration-resistant prostate cancer baseline values and correlation with prognostic factors. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2009 Jun;18(6):1904-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19505924
50. Heidenreich A, Hofmann R, Engelmann UH. The use of bisphosphonates for the palliative treatment of painful bone metastasis due to hormone refractory prostate cancer. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):136-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125382
51. Berthold DR, Pond GR, Roessner M et al.; TAX-327 investigators. Treatment of hormone-refractory prostate cancer with docetaxel or mitoxantrone: relationships between prostate-specific antigen, pain, and quality of life response and survival in the TAX-327 study. Clin Cancer Res 2008 May 1;14(9): 2763-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18451243
52. Klugo RC, Farah RN, Cerny JC. Bilateral orchiectomy for carcinoma of the prostate. Response of serum testosterone and clinical response to subsequent estrogen therapy. Urology 1981 Jan;17(1): 49-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7456197
53. Manni A, Bartholomew M, Caplan R, et al. Androgen priming and chemotherapy in advanced prostate cancer: evaluation of determinants of clinical outcome. J Clin Oncol 1988 Sep;6(9):1456-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3047336
54. Taylor CD, Elson P, Trump DL. Importance of continued testicular suppression in hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1993 nov;11(11):2167-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8229130
55. Hussain M, Wolf M, Marshall E, et al. Effects of continued androgen deprivation therapy and other prognostic factors on response and survival in phase II chemotherapy trials for hormone-refractory prostate cancer: a Southwest Oncology Group report. J Clin Oncol 1994 Sep;12(9):1868-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8083710
56. Ryan CJ, Small EJ. Role of secondary hormonal therapy in the management of recurrent disease. Urology 2003 Dec;62(Suppl 1):87-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14747046
57. Kelly WK, Scher HI. Prostate specific antigen decline after antiandrogen withdrawal syndrome. J Urol1993 Mar;149(3):607-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679759
58. Scher HI, Kelly WK. Flutamide withdrawal syndrome: its impact on clinical trials in hormone-refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 1993 Aug;11(8):1566-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7687666

59. Small EJ, Carroll PR. Prostate-specific antigen decline after casodex withdrawal: evidence for an antiandrogen withdrawal syndrome. Urology 1994 Mar;43(3):408-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7510915
60. Dawson NA, McLeod DG. Dramatic prostate specific antigen decline in response to discontinuation of megestrol acetate in advanced prostate cancer: expansion of the antiandrogen withdrawal syndrome. J Urol 1995 Jun;153(6):1946-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7538601
61. Small EJ, Vogelzang NJ. Second-line hormonal therapy for advanced prostate cancer: a shifting paradigm. J Clin Oncol 1997 Jan;15(1):382-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996165
62. Scher HI, Liebertz C, Kelly WK, et al. Bicalutamide for advanced prostate cancer: the natural versus treated history of disease. J Clin Oncol 1997 Aug;15(8):2928-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9256137
63. Joyce R, Fenton MA, Rode P, et al. High dose bicalutamide for androgen independent prostate cancer: effect of prior hormonal therapy. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):149-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400459
64. Kucuk O, Blumenstein B, Moinpour C, et al. Phase II trial of Casodex in advanced prostate cancer (CaP) patients who failed conventional hormonal manipulations: a Southwest Oncology Group study(SWOG 9235). Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol (ASCO) 1996;15:245 (abstr).
65. Osborn JL, Smith DC, Trump DL. Megestrol acetate in the treatment of hormone refractory prostate cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 1997 Jun;20(3):308-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9167760
66. Gebbia V, Testa A, Gebbia N. Prospective randomized trial of two dose levels of megestrol acetate inthe management of anorexia-cachexia syndrome in patients with metastatic cancer. Br J Cancer 1996Jun;73(12):1576-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8664133
67. Dawson NA, Conaway M, Halabi S, et al. A randomized study comparing standard versus moderately high dose megestrol acetate for patients with advanced prostate carcinoma: cancer and leukaemia group B study 9181. Cancer 2000 Feb;88(4):825-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679652
68. Sartor AO, Tangen CM, Hussain MH, et al; Southwest Oncology Group. Antiandrogen withdrawal in castrate-refractory prostate cancer: a Southwest Oncology Group trial (SWOG 9426). Cancer 2008Jun;112(11):2393-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18383517
69. McLeod DG. Antiandrogenic drugs. Cancer 1993 Feb;71(3 Suppl):1046-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8428326
70. Kucuk O, Fisher E, Moinpour CM, et al. Phase II trial of bicalutamide in patients with advanced prostate cancer in whom conventional hormonal therapy failed: a Southwest Oncology Group study (SWOG 9235). Urology 2001 Jul;58(1):53-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445479
71. Sartor O, Gomella LG, Gagnier P, et al. Dutasteride and bicalutamide in patients with hormone-refractory prostate cancer: the Therapy Assessed by Rising PSA (TARP) study rationale and design. Can J Urol 2009 Oct;16(5):4806-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19796455
72. Dawson NA. Treatment of progressive metastatic prostate cancer (published erratum of serious dosage error appears in Oncology (Huntingt) 1993 Jun;7(6):2). Oncology 1993 May;7(5):17-24, 27; discussion 27-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8512779
73. Fowler JE Jr, Pandey P, Seaver LE, et al. Prostate specific antigen after gonadal androgen withdrawal deferred flutamide treatment. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 1):448-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541862
74. Suzuki H, Okihara K, Miyake H, et al; Nonsteroidal Antiandrogen Sequential Alternation for Prostate Cancer Study Group. Alternative nonsteroidal antiandrogen therapy for advanced prostate cancer that relapsed after initial maximum androgen blockade. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):921-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635218
75. Sartor O, Cooper M, Weinberger M, et al. Surprising activity of flutamide withdrawal, when combined with aminoglutethimide, in treatment of 'hormone refractory' prostate cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1994Feb;86(3):222-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7506794

76. Dupont A, Gomez JL, Cusan L, et al. Response to flutamide withdrawal in advanced prostate cancer in progression under combination therapy. J Urol 1993 Sep;150(3):908-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7688437
77. Rochlitz CF, Damon LE, Russi MB, et al. Cytotoxicity of ketoconazole in malignant cell lines. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 1988;21(4):319-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3370740
78. Mahler C, Verhelst J, Denis L. Ketoconazole and liarozole in the treatment of advanced prostatic cancer. Cancer 1993 Feb;71(3 Suppl):1068-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8428329
79. Small EJ, Halabi S, Dawson NA, et al. Antiandrogen withdrawal alone or in combination with ketokonazole in androgen independent prostate cancer patients: a phase III trial (CALGB 9583). J ClinOncol 2004 Mar;22(6):1025-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15020604
80. Ferro MA, Gillatt D, Symes MO, et al. High-dose intravenous estrogen therapy in advanced prostatic carcinoma. Use of serum prostate-specific antigen to monitor response. Urology 1989 Sep;34(3): 134-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2476882
81. Robertson CN, Roberson KM, Padilla GM, et al. Induction of apoptosis by diethylstilbestrol in hormone-insensitive prostate cancer cells. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996 Jul;88(13):908-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8656443
82. Smith DC, Redman BG, Flaherty LE, et al. A phase II trial of oral diethylbestrol as a second line hormonal agent in advanced prostate cancer. Urology 1998 Aug;52(2):257-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9697791
83. Klotz L, McNeill I, Fleshner N. A phase 1-2 trial of diethylbestrol plus low dose warfarin in advanced prostate carcinoma. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):169-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037391
84. Oh WK, Kanthoff PW, Weinberg V, et al. Prospective, multicentre, randomized phase II trial of the herbal supplement PC-SPES and diethylbestrol in patients with androgen-independent prostate cancer. Clin Oncol 2004 Sep;22(18):3705-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15289492
85. Scher HI, Beer TM, Higano CS, et al. Prostate Cancer Foundation/Department of Defense Prostate Cancer Clinical Trials Consortium. Antitumour activity of MDV3100 in castration-resistant prostate cancer: a phase 1-2 study. Lancet 2010 Apr 24;375(9724):1437-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20398925
86. Scher HI, Fizazi K, Saad F, et al. Effect of MDV3100, an androgen receptor signaling inhibitor (ARSI), on overall survival in patients with prostate cancer postdocetaxel: Results from the phase III AFFIRM study. J Clin Oncol (Meeting Abstracts) February 2012 vol. 30 no. 5_suppl LBA1. http://meeting.ascopubs.org/cgi/content/short/30/5_suppl/LBA1?rss=1
87. Ryan CJ, Smith MR, Fong L, et al. Phase I clinical trial of the CYP17 inhibitor abiraterone acetate demonstrating clinical activity in patients with castration-resistant prostate cancer who received prior ketoconazole therapy. J Clin Oncol. 2010 Mar 20;28(9):1481-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20159824
88. Reid AH, Attard G, Danila DC, et al. Significant and sustained antitumor activity in post-docetaxel, castration-resistant prostate cancer with the CYP17 inhibitor abiraterone acetate. J Clin Oncol. 2010 Mar 20;28(9):1489-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20159823
89. Danila DC, Morris MJ, de Bono JS, et al. Phase II multicenter study of abiraterone acetate plus prednisone therapy in patients with docetaxel-treated castration-resistant prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2010 Mar 20;28(9):1496-501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20159814
90. de Bono JS, Logothetis CJ, Molina A, et al. COU-AA-301 Investigators. Abiraterone and increased survival in metastatic prostate cancer. N Engl J Med. 2011 May 26;364(21):1995-2005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21612468
91. Petrylak DP, Tangen CM, Hussain MH, et al. Docetaxel and estramustine compared with mitoxantroneand prednisone for advanced refractory prostate cancer. New Engl J Med 2004 Oct;351(15):1513-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15470214

92. Tannock IF, de Wit R, Berry WR, et al, TAX 327 Investigators. Docetaxel plus prednisone or mitoxantrone plus prednisone for advanced prostate cancer. New Engl J Med 2004 Oct;351(15): 1502-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15470213
93. Fosså SD, Jacobsen AB, Ginman C, et al. Weekly docetaxel and prednisolone versus prednisolone alone in androgen-independent prostate cancer: a randomized phase II study. Eur Urol 2007 Dec; 52(6):1691-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17306441
94. Eisenberger M, Garrett-Mayer ES, Ou Yang Y, et al. multivariate prognostic nomogram incorporatingPSA kinetics in hormone-refractory metastatic prostate cancer (HRPC). Abstract. ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings (Post-Meeting Edition). J Clin Oncol 2007;25(18S): #5058.
http://meeting.ascopubs.org/cgi/content/abstract/25/18_suppl/5058
95. Graff J, Lalani AS, Lee S, et al, ASCENT Investigators. C-reactive protein as a prognostic marker formen with androgen-independent prostate cancer (AIPC): Results from the ASCENT trial. Abstract. ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings (Post-Meeting Edition). J Clin Oncol 2007;25(18S):abstract #5074.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18428198
96. Prins R, Rademacher BL, Mongoue-Tchokote S, et al. C-reactive protein as adverse prognostic marker for men with castration-resistant prostate cancer (CRPC): Confirmatory results. J Clin Oncol 27:15s, 2009 (suppl; abstract #5168)
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed
97. Bompas E, Italiano A, Ortholan C, et al. Docetaxel-based chemotherapy in elderly patients (> 75 years) with castration resistant prostate cancer (CRPC): A French National study of 175 patients. Abstract. ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings (Post-Meeting Edition). J Clin Oncol 2008;26(15S): #5145.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18706755
98. Tannock IF, Osoba D, Stockler MR, et al. Chemotherapy with mitoxantrone plus prednisone or prednisone alone for symptomatic hormone-resistant prostate cancer: a Canadian randomized trial with palliative end points. J Clin Oncol 1996 Jun;14(6):1756-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8656243
99. Kantoff PW, Halabi S, Conaway M, et al. Hydrocortisone with or without mitoxantrone in men with hormone-refractory prostate cancer: results of the Cancer and Leukemia Group B 9182 Study. J Clin Oncol 1999 Aug;17(8):2506-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561316
100. Heidenreich A, Sommer F, Ohlmann CH, et al. Prospective randomized phase II trial of pegylated doxorubicin in the management of symptomatic hormone refractory prostate carcinoma. Cancer 2004Sep;101(5):948-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15329902
101. Savarese DM, Halabi S, Hars V, et al. Phase II study of docetaxel, estramustine, and low-dose hydrocortisone in men with hormone refractory prostate cancer: a final report of CALGB 9780. Cancer and Leukemia Group B. J Clin Oncol 2001 May;19(9):2509-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11331330
102. Smith DC, Chay CH, Dunn RL, et al. Phase II trial of paclitaxel, estramustine, etoposide and carboplatin in the treatment of patients with hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cancer 2003 Jul;98(2):269-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12872344
103. Oudard S, Caty A, Humblet Y, et al. Phase II study of vinorelbine in patients with androgen-independent prostate cancer. Ann Oncol 2001 Jun;12(6):847-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11484963
104. Albrecht W, Van Poppel H, Horenblas S, et al. Randomized Phase II trial assessing estramustine andvinblastine combination chemotherapy vs estramustine alone in patients with progressive hormone-escapedmetastatic prostate cancer. Br J Cancer. 2004 Jan 12;90(1):100-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14710214
105. Fizazi K, Le Maitre A, Hudes G, et al; Meta-analysis of Estramustine in Prostate Cancer (MECaP) Trialists' Collaborative Group. Addition of estramustine to chemotherapy and survival of patients withcastration-refractory prostate cancer: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. Lancet Oncol 2007Nov;8(11):994-1000.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17942366
106. Lubiniecki GM, Berlin JA, Weinstein RB, et al. Risk of thromboembolic events (TE) with estramustine-based chemotherapy in hormone-refractory prostate cancer (HRPC): results of a meta-analysis. Abstract. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 2003;22: #1581.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15536625

107. Maulard-Durdux C, Dufour B, Hennequin C, et al. Phase II study of the oral cyclophosphamide and oral etoposide combination in hormone-refractory prostate carcinoma patients. Cancer 1996 Mar;77(6):1144-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8635136
108. Nelius T, Klatte T, de Riese W, et al. Clinical outcome of patients with docetaxel-resistant hormone-refractory prostate cancer treated with second-line cyclophosphamide-based metronomic chemotherapy. Med Oncol 2010 Jun;27(2):363-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19365737
109. Regan MM, O'Donnell EK, Kelly WK, et al.Efficacy of carboplatin-taxane combinations in the management of castration-resistant prostate cancer: a pooled analysis of seven prospective clinical trials. Ann Oncol 2010 Feb;21(2):312-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19633053
110. Carducci MA, Saad F, Abrahamsson PA, et al; Atrasentan Phase III Study Group Institutions. A phase3 randomized controlled trial of the efficacy and safety of atrasentan in men with metastatic hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cancer 2007 Nov;110(9):1959-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17886253
111. James ND, Caty A, Borre M, et al. Safety and efficacy of the specific endothelin-A receptor antagonistZD4054 in patients with hormone-resistant prostate cancer and bone metastases who were pain free or mildly symptomatic: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised, phase 2 trial. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1112-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19042080
112. Nelson JB, Fizazi K, Miller K et al. Phase III study of the efficacy and safety of zibotentan (ZD4054) in patients with bone metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer (CRPC). J Clin Oncol 2011; 29: suppl 7; abstr 117.
113. de Bono JS, Oudard S, Ozguroglu M, et al. Prednisone plus cabazitaxel or mitoxantrone for metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer progressing after docetaxel treatment: a randomised open-label trial. Lancet 2010 Oct 2;376(9747):1147-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20888992
114. Beer TM, Garzotto M, Henner WD, et al. Multiple cycles of intermittent chemotherapy in metastatic androgen-independent prostate cancer. Br J Cancer 2004;91(8):1425-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15467765
115. Ohlmann C, Ozgur E, Wille S, et al. Second-line chemotherapy with docetaxel for prostate-specific antigen relapse in men with hormone refractory prostate cancer previously treated with docetaxel based chemotherapy. Eur Urol Suppl 2006;5(2):93, abstract #289.
116. Lara PN Jr, Twardowski P, Quinn DI. Angiogenesis-targeted therapies in prostate cancer. Clin Prostate Cancer 2004 Dec;3(3):165-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15636683
117. Sternberg CN, Petrylak DP, Sartor O, et al. Multinational, double-blind, phase III study of prednisoneand either satraplatin or placebo in patients with castrate-refractory prostate cancer progressing afterprior chemotherapy: the SPARC trial. J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 10;27(32):5431-8
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19805692
118. Ohlmann C, Ozgur E, Engelmann U, et al. Molecular triggered therapy in hormone refractory prostate cancer. Eur Urol Suppl 2006;5(2):93, abstract #281.
119. Ansari J, Hussain SA, Zarkar A, et al. Docetaxel re-treatment for metastatic hormone refractory prostate cancer. J Clin Oncol 2008;26(15S):abstract #16016.
http://meeting.ascopubs.org/cgi/content/abstract/26/15_suppl/16066
120. Lara PN Jr, Twardowski P, Quinn DI. Angiogenesis-targeted therapies in prostate cancer. Clin Prostate Cancer 2004 Dec;3(3):165-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15636683
121. Periman PO, Sonpavde G, Bernold DM, et al. Sunitinib malate for metastatic castration resistant prostate cancer following docetaxel-based chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 2008;26(15S):abstract #5157.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19633050
122. Small EJ, Schellhammer PF, Higano CS, et al. Results of a placebo-controlled phase III trial of immunotherapy with APC8015 for patients with hormone refractory prostate Cancer (HRPC). J Clin Oncol 2005;23(16S):abstract #4500.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16809734

123. Sartor AO, Oudard S, Ozguroglu M, et al. for the TROPIC Investigators. Cabazitaxel or mitoxantrone with prednisone in patients with metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer (mCRPC) previously treated with docetaxel: Final results of a multinational phase III trial (TROPIC). 2010 Genitourinary Cancers Symposium, abstract #9
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20888992
124. Esper PS, Pienta KJ. Supportive care in the patient with hormone refractory prostate cancer. Semin Urol Oncol 1997 Feb;15(1):56-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9050140
125. Dy SM, Asch SM, Naeim A, et al. Evidence-based standards for cancer pain management. J Clin Oncol 2008 Aug;26(23):3879-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18688056
126. Hartsell WF, Scott CB, Bruner DW, et al. Randomized trial of short- versus long-course radiotherapy for palliation of painful bone metastases. J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Jun;97(11):798-804.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928300
127. Liepe K, Kotzerke J. A comparative study of 188Re-HEDP, 186Re-HEDP, 153Sm-EDTMP and 89Sr in the treatment of painful skeletal metastases. Nucl Med Commun 2007 Aug;28(8):623-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17625384
128. Morris MJ, Pandit-Taskar N, Stephenson RD, et al. Phase I study of docetaxel (Tax) and 153Sm repetitively administered for castrate metastatic prostate cancer (CMPC).). Abstract. J Clin Oncol May2008;26(15S): #5001.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19364960
129. Laplanche A, Beuzeboc P, Lumbroso J, et al. A phase II trial of docetaxel and samarium in patients with bone metastases from castration-refractory prostate cancer (CRPC). Abstract. J Clin Oncol Jun2007;25(18S): #5122.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19364971
130. C. Parker,1 D. Heinrich,2 J.M. O'Sullivan,3 et al. Overall survival benefit of radium-223 chloride (Alpharadin) in the treatment of patients with symptomatic bone metastases in castration-resistant prostate cancer: A phase III randomized trial (ALSYMPCA). ECCO-ESMO 2011; abstract 1LBA
131. Frankel BM, Monroe T, Wang C. Percutaneous vertebral augmentation: an elevation in adjacent-level fracture risk in kyphoplasty as compared with vertebroplasty. Spine J. 2007 Sep-Oct;7(5):575-82.
132. Dutka J, Sosin P. Time of survival and quality of life of the patients operatively treated due to pathological fractures due to bone metastases. Ortop Traumatol Rehabil 2003 Jun;5(3):276-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18034018
133. Frankel BM, Jones T, Wang C. Segmental polymethyl methacrylate-augmented pedicle screw fixationin patients with bone softening caused by osteoporosis and metastatic tumor involvement: a clinical evaluation. Neurosurgery 2007 Sep;61(3):531-7; discussion 537-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17881965
134. Marco RA, Sheth DS, Boland PJ, et al. Functional and oncological outcome of acetabular reconstruction for the treatment of metastatic disease. J Bone Joint Surg Am 2000 May;82(5):642-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10819275
135. Saad F, Gleason DM, Murray R, et al. A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of zoledronic acid in patients with hormone refractory metastatic prostate carcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 2002 Oct;94(19):1458-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12359855
136. Aapro M, Abrahamsson PA, Body JJ, et al. Guidance on the use of bisphosphonates in solid tumours:recommendations of an international expert panel. Ann Oncol 2008 Mar;19(3):420-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17906299
137. Diel IJ, Fogelman I, Al-Nawas B, et al. Pathophysiology, risk factors and management of bisphosphonate-associated osteonecrosis of the jaw: Is there a diverse relationship of amino- and non-aminobisphosphonates? Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2007 Dec;64(3):198-207.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17855108
138. Heidenreich A, Hofmann R, Engelmann. UH The use of bisphosphonate for the palliative treatment of painful bone metastasis due to hormone refractory prostate cancer. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):136-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125382
139. Heidenreich A, Elert A, Hofmann R. Ibandronate in the treatment of prostate cancer associated painful osseous metastases. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2002;5(3):231-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496987

140. Fizazi K, Carducci M, Smith M, et al. Denosumab versus zoledronic acid for treatment of bone metastases in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: a randomised, double-blind study. Lancet. 2011 Mar 5;377(9768):813-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353695
141. Sartor O, Michels RM, Massard C, et al. Novel therapeutic strategies for metastatic prostate cancer in the post-docetaxel setting. Oncologist. 2011;16(11):1487-97. http://www.ncbinlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22048000

20. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

3D-US	three-dimensional ultrasound
ADT	androgen-deprivation therapy
AS	active surveillance
ASCO	American Society of Clinical Oncology
ASTRO	American Society for Therapeutic Radiology and Oncology
AUA	American Urological Association
BDFS	biochemical disease-free survival
BMD	bone mineral density
bNED	actuarial biochemical freedom from disease
CAB	complete (or maximal or total) androgen blockade
CPA	cyproterone acetate
CRT	conformal radiotherapy
CSAP	cryosurgical ablation of the prostate
CSS	cancer-specific survival
CT	computed tomography
DES	diethylstilboestrol
DRE	digital rectal anticipation
DHT	dihydrostestosterone
DSS	disease-specific survival
EBRT	external beam radiation therapy
ECOG	Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group
eLND	extended lymph node dissection
ELND	elective lymph node dissection
e-MRI	endorectal MRI
EORTC	European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer
EPC	Early Prostate Cancer Trialists' Group
EPCP	Early Prostate Cancer Programme
EPE	extraprostatic extension
ER-®	oestrogen receptor-®
ESRPC	European Randomized Screening for Prostate Cancer
FACT-P	Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy-prostate
FNAB	fine-needle aspiration biopsy
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
GI	gastrointestinal
GR	grade of recommendation
GU	genitourinary
HD EBRT	high-dose EBRT
HDR	high-dose rate
HIFU	high-intensity focused ultrasound
HR	hazard ratio
HRPC	hormone-refractory prostate cancer
HRQoL	health-related quality of life
HT	hormonal therapy
IAD	intermittent androgen deprivation
IGRT	image-guided radiotherapy
IMRT	intensity modulated radiotherapy
IPSS	International Prostatic Symptom Score
LDAT	long-term ADT
LDR	low-dose rate (LDR)
LE	level of evidence
LET	linear energy transfer
LH	luteinising hormone
LHRH	luteinising hormone-releasing hormone
LHRHa	luteinising hormone-releasing hormone analogue
LND	lymph node dissection
LRP	laparoscopic radical prostatectomy
MRC	Medical Research Council

MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRSI	magnetic resonance spectroscopy imaging
NHT	neoadjvant hormonal therapy
NIH	National Institutes of Health
NVB	neurovascular bundle
OR	odds ratio
OS	overall survival
PAP	prostate acid phosphatase
PCa	prostate cancer
PET	positron emission tomography
PFS	progression-free survival
PIN	prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia
PIVOT	Prostate Cancer Intervention Versus Observation Trial: VA/NCI/AHRQ Cooperative StudiesProgram #407
PLCO	Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovary
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
PSA-ACT	PSA complexed to antichymotrypsin
PSADT	PSA doubling time
PSAV	PSA velocity
PSMA	prostate-specific membrane antigen for messenger RNA
QoL	quality of life
QUALYs	quality of life adjusted gain in life
RALP	robot-assisted radical prostatectomy
RITA	radio-frequency interstitial tumour ablation
RP	radical prostatectomy
RRP	radical retropubic prostatectomy
RTOG	Radiation Therapy Oncology Group
SEER	Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results
SLN	sentinel lymph node
SPCG-4	Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study Number 4
STAD	short-term androgen deprivation
SVI	seminal vesicle invasion
SWOG	South West Oncology Group
TNM	Tumour Node Metastasis
TZ	transition zone
TRUS	transrectal ultrasound
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
UICC	Union Against Cancer
USPIO	ultra-small super-paramagnetic iron oxide particles
VACURG	Veterans Administration Co-operative Urological Research Group
WHO	World Health Organization
WW	watchful waiting

Conflict of interest

All members of the Prostate Cancer Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on
Renal Cell Carcinoma

B. Ljungberg, N. Cowan, D.C. Hanbury, M. Hora, M.A. Kuczyk, A.S. Merseburger, P.F.A. Mulders, J-J. Patard, I.C. Sinescu

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

The EAU Guideline Group for renal cell carcinoma (RCC) have prepared these guidelines to help urologists assess the evidence-based management of RCC and to help them incorporate the guidelines recommendations into their clinical practice. Publications concerning RCC are mostly retrospective analyses, which include some larger multicentre studies and well-designed controlled studies. As only a few randomised controlled trials are available, there is some lack of data with a strong evidence base. In recent years, a number of randomised studies have been performed, mostly concerning the medical treatment of metastasised RCC resulting in high evidence-based recommendations.

Where possible, a level of evidence (LE) and/or grade of recommendation (GR) have been assigned (1). Recommendations are graded in order to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given (Tables 1 and 2).

There is clearly a need for re-evaluation at regular intervals by the RCC Guideline Group of the information provided in these guidelines. It has to be emphasised that the current guidelines contain information for the treatment of an individual patient according to a standardised general approach. The information should be considered as providing recommendations without legal implications.

The current document provides a full text update, with a summary of the amendments provided below.

1.1 Summary of the 2010 RCC guidelines update

A new chapter “Other renal tumours” has been added which discusses other tumours of the kidney with the exception of renal pelvic carcinoma. The content of the other chapters has been completely revised based on the findings of a structured literature search.

1.2 Methodology

Structured literature searches using an expert consultant were designed for each section of this document. Searches were carried out in the Cochrane Library database of Systematic Reviews, the Cochrane Library of Controlled Clinical Trials, Medline, and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform. The controlled terminology of the respective databases was used and both MesH and EMTREE were analysed for relevant entry terms.

The search strategies covered the last 3 years for Medline and Embase. Prior to publication of this document an update search was carried out.

Also other data sources were consulted such as the Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effectiveness (DARE) as well as relevant reference lists from other guidelines producers (National Institute for Clinical Excellence [NICE], American Urological Association [AUA]).

Publication history information: The RCC Guidelines were first published in 2000, with partial updates in 2001 and 2007 followed by a full text update in 2009, and a partial update in 2010.

Table 1: Level of evidence

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials.
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial.
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation.
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study.
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports.
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities.

Modified from Sackett et al. (1).

Table 2: Grade of recommendation

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.

Modified from Sackett et al. (1).

1.3 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]

2. EPIDEMIOLOGY AND AETIOLOGY

Renal cell carcinoma represents 2-3% of all cancers (1), with the highest incidence occurring in Western countries. Generally, during the last two decades until recently, there has been an annual increase of about 2% in incidence both worldwide and in Europe, though in Denmark and Sweden a continuing decrease has been observed (2). In 2006, it was estimated that there were 63,300 new cases of RCC and 26,400 kidney cancer-related deaths within the European Union (3). In Europe, overall mortality rates for RCC have increased up until the early 1990s, with rates generally stabilising or declining thereafter (4). There has been a decrease in mortality since the 1980s in Scandinavian countries and since the early 1990s in France, Germany, Austria, the Netherlands, and Italy. However, in some European countries (Croatia, Estonia, Greece, Ireland, Slovakia), mortality rates still show an upward trend with increasing rates (4).

Renal cell carcinoma is the commonest solid lesion within the kidney and accounts for approximately 90% of all kidney malignancies. It comprises different RCC types with specific histopathological and genetic characteristics (5). There is a 1.5:1 predominance of men over women, with peak incidence occurring between 60 and 70 years of age. Aetiological factors include lifestyle factors such as smoking, obesity, and hypertension (6-10). Having a first-degree relative with kidney cancer is also associated with an increased risk of RCC (11,12). The most effective prophylaxis is to avoid cigarette smoking and obesity.

Due to the increased detection of tumours by imaging techniques such as ultrasound and computed tomography (CT), the number of incidentally diagnosed RCCs has increased. These tumours are more often smaller and of lower stage (13-15).

2.1 Conclusion

Several verified risk factors have been identified including smoking, obesity and hypertension. Cigarette smoking is a definite risk factor for RCC (LE: 2a).

2.2 Recommendation

	GR
The most important primary prevention for RCC is to eliminate cigarette smoking and to avoid obesity.	B

2.3 References

1. European Network of Cancer Registries. Eurocim version 4.0. European incidence database V2.3, 730 entity dictionary (2001), Lyon, 2001.
2. Lindblad P. Epidemiology of renal cell carcinoma. Scand J Surg 2004;93(2):88-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15285559
3. Ferlay J, Autier P, Boniol M, et al. Estimates of the cancer incidence and mortality in Europe in 2006. Ann Oncol 2007 Mar;18(3):581-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17287242
4. Levi F, Ferlay J, Galeone C, et al. The changing pattern of kidney cancer incidence and mortality in Europe. BJU Int 2008 Apr;101(8):949-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18241251

5. Kovacs G, Akhtar M, Beckwith BJ, et al. The Heidelberg classification of renal cell tumours. J Pathol 1997;183(2):131-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9390023
6. Lipworth L, Tarone RE, McLaughlin JK. The epidemiology of renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2006; Dec;176(6 Pt 1):2353-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085101
7. International Agency for Research on cancer (IARC). WHO IARC monographs. Vol. 83, 2004. Available at: http://monographs.iarc.fr/ENG/Monographs/vol83/index.php [Accessed January 2012].
8. Bergstrom A, Hsieh CC, Lindblad P, et al. Obesity and renal cell cancer–a quantitative review. Br J Cancer 2001;85(7):984-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11592770
9. Pischon T, Lahmann PH, Boeing H, et al. Body size and risk of renal cell carcinoma in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC). Int J Cancer 2006;118(3):728-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094628
10. Weikert S, Boeing H, Pischon T, et al. Blood pressure and risk of renal cell carcinoma in the European prospective investigation into cancer and nutrition. Am J Epidemiol 2008 Feb;167(4):438-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18048375
11. Clague J, Lin J, Cassidy A, et al. Family history and risk of renal cell carcinoma: results from a case-control study and systematic meta-analysis. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2009 Mar;18(3):801-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19240244
12. Gudbjartsson T, Jónasdóttir TJ, Thoroddsen A, et al. A population-based familial aggregation analysis indicates genetic contribution in a majority of renal cell carcinomas. Int J Cancer 2002 Aug;100(4): 476-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12115533
13. Patard JJ, Rodriguez A, Rioux-Leclercq N, et al. Prognostic significance of the mode of detection in renal tumours. BJU Int 2002;90(4):358-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12175389
14. Kato M, Suzuki T, Suzuki Y, et al. Natural history of small renal cell carcinoma: evaluation of growth rate, histological grade, cell proliferation and apoptosis. J Urol 2004;172(3):863-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15310984
15. Tsui KH, Shvarts O, Smith RB, et al. Renal cell carcinoma: prognostic significance of incidentally detected tumors. J Urol 2000;163(2):426-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647646

3. DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING

3.1 Symptoms

Many renal masses are asymptomatic and non-palpable until the late stages of the disease (1). Currently, more than 50% of RCCs are detected incidentally by using imaging to investigate a variety of non-specific symptom complexes (2-4) (LE: 2b). The classic triad of flank pain, gross haematuria, and palpable abdominal mass is now rare (6-10%) (5,6) (LE: 3).

Paraneoplastic syndromes are found in approximately 30% of patients with symptomatic RCCs (Table 3) (LE: 4). A few symptomatic patients present with symptoms due to metastatic disease, such as bone pain or persistent cough (1,7) (LE: 2b).

Table 3: Most common paraneoplastic syndromes

Hypertension
Cachexia
Weight loss
Pyrexia
Neuromyopathy
Amyloidosis
Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate
Anaemia

Abnormal liver function
Hypercalcaemia
Polycythaemia

3.1.1 ***Physical examination***

Physical examination has only a limited role in diagnosing RCC. However, the following findings should initiate radiological examinations:

- palpable abdominal mass;
- palpable cervical lymphadenopathy;
- non-reducing varicocele;
- bilateral lower extremity oedema, which suggests venous involvement.

3.1.2 ***Laboratory findings***

The most commonly assessed laboratory parameters are serum creatinine, glomerular filtration rate, haemoglobin, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, alkaline phosphatase, lactate dehydrogenose (LDH), and serum corrected calcium (1,8,9) (LE: 4).

Separate bilateral renal function should be estimated in the following situations (10-12) (LE: 2b):

- When renal function is clinically important, e.g. in patients with a solitary kidney tumour or bilateral tumours;
- When renal function is compromised, as indicated by an increased concentration of serum creatinine;
- In patients at risk of future renal impairment from co-morbid disorders, e.g. diabetes, chronic pyelonephritis, renovascular disease, stone or renal polycystic disease.

3.2 Radiological investigations

Most renal tumours are diagnosed by abdominal ultrasound or CT performed for various reasons (LE: 4). Imaging can be used to classify renal masses into solid or cystic.

3.2.1 ***Presence of enhancement***

For solid renal masses, the most important criterion for differentiating malignant lesions is the presence of enhancement (13) (LE: 3). The traditional approach for detection and characterisation of renal masses is to use ultrasound, CT, or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Most renal masses can be diagnosed accurately by using imaging alone. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound can be helpful in specific cases (e.g. chronic renal failure with relative contraindication for iodinated or gadolinium contrast media (14-16) (LE: 3).

3.2.2 ***Computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging***

Computed tomography or MRI are used to characterise a renal mass. Imaging must be performed both before and after administration of intravenous contrast material to demonstrate enhancement. In CT imaging, enhancement in renal masses is determined by comparing Hounsfield unit (HU) readings from before and after contrast administration. A change of 20 HU or greater is strong evidence of enhancement (17) (LE: 3). To maximise differential diagnosis and detection, the evaluation should include images from the nephrographic phase, because this phase allows optimum depiction of renal masses that typically do not enhance to the same degree as renal parenchyma.

Abdominal CT allows diagnosis of RCC and provides information on:

- function and morphology of the contralateral kidney (10) (LE: 3);
- primary tumour extension with extrarenal spread;
- venous involvement;
- enlargement of locoregional lymph nodes;
- condition of adrenal glands and the liver (LE: 3).

Abdominal contrast-enhanced CT angiography is a useful tool in selected cases to obtain detailed information about the kidney vascular supply (18). If CT results are indeterminate, MRI may provide additional information to:

- demonstrate enhancement in renal masses;
- investigate locally advanced malignancy;
- investigate venous involvement if there is a badly defined extension of inferior vena cava tumour thrombus on CT scan (19-22) (LE: 3).

Magnetic resonance imaging is also indicated in patients with an allergy to intravenous contrast and in

pregnancy without renal failure (23,24) (LE: 3). Evaluation of the tumour thrombus can also be performed with Doppler ultrasound (25) (LE: 3).

*3.2.3 **Other investigations***

Renal arteriography and inferior venacavography have only a limited role in the work-up of selected patients with RCC (LE: 3). In patients with any sign of impaired renal function, an isotope renogram and total renal function evaluation should be considered in order to optimise the treatment decision, e.g. the need to preserve renal function (10-12) (LE: 2a). The true value of positron emission tomography (PET) in the diagnosis and follow-up of RCC remains to be determined and currently PET is not a standard investigation (26,27) (LE: 1b).

*3.2.4 **Metastatic RCC investigations***

Chest CT is the most accurate investigation for chest staging (25,28-34) (LE: 3). However, at the very least, routine chest radiography, as a less accurate alternative to chest CT imaging, must be done for metastatic evaluation (LE: 3). There is a consensus that most bone and brain metastases are symptomatic at diagnosis so that a routine bone or brain CT scan is not generally indicated (35,36). However, if indicated by clinical or laboratory signs and symptoms, other diagnostic procedures may be used, such as a bone scan, brain CT, or MRI (37,39) (LE: 3).

*3.2.5 **Bosniak classification of renal cystic masses***

For the evaluation of renal cystic masses, the Bosniak classification classifies renal cysts into five categories based on CR imaging appearance in an attempt to predict the risk of malignancy (38) (LE: 3). The Bosniak system also advocates treatment for each category (Table 4).

Table 4: The Bosniak classification of renal cysts (38**)**

Bosniak category	**Features**	**Work-up**
I	A simple benign cyst with a hairline-thin wall that does not contain septa, calcification, or solid components. It measures water density and does not enhance with contrast material.	Benign
II	A benign cyst that may contain a few hairline-thin septa. Fine calcification may be present in the wall or septa. Uniformly high-attenuation lesions of < 3 cm, which are sharply marginated and do not enhance.	Benign
IIF	These cysts might contain more hairline-thin septa. Minimal enhancement of a hairline-thin septum or wall can be seen. There may be minimal thickening of the septa or wall. The cyst may contain calcification that might be nodular and thick, but there is no contrast enhancement. There are no enhancing soft-tissue elements. This category also includes totally intrarenal, non-enhancing, high-attenuation renal lesions of ≥ 3 cm. These lesions are generally well-marginated.	Follow-up. A small proportion are malignant.
III	These lesions are indeterminate cystic masses that have thickened irregular walls or septa in which enhancement can be seen.	Surgery or follow-up. Malignant in > 50% lesions.
IV	These lesions are clearly malignant cystic lesions that contain enhancing soft-tissue components.	Surgical therapy recommended. Mostly malignant tumour.

3.3 Renal biopsy

Renal tumour biopsies are increasingly being used in diagnosis, in follow-up surveillance, and in ablative therapies (40-45) (LE: 3). In most series, a core biopsy demonstrates high specificity and high sensitivity for the presence of malignancy (40-44), though it should be noted that 10-20% of biopsies are non-conclusive.

Biopsy aims to determine eventual malignancy, type, and grade of the evaluated renal mass.
A percutaneous mass biopsy is rarely required for large renal masses scheduled for nephrectomy.
The positive predictive value of imaging findings is so high that a negative biopsy result does not alter management (45) (LE: 3).

Biopsy is also indicated in metastatic patients before starting systemic therapy (46) (LE: 3).

3.4 Histological diagnosis

The histological diagnosis in RCC is established after surgical removal of renal tumours or after biopsy specimen examinations (40-42). The Fuhrman classification system for nuclear grade (grade 1, 2, 3 and 4) in RCC (47,48) has been the most generally accepted classification, and is an important, independent prognostic factor for RCC (LE: 3).

According to the World Health Organization (WHO) (49) there are at least three major histological subtypes of RCC:

- clear cell (cRCC, 80-90%);
- papillary (pRCC, 10-15%);
- chromophobe (chRCC, 4-5%) (LE: 3).

These RCC types can be differentiated by histological and molecular genetic changes (Table 5) (LE: 3). Papillary RCC can further be divided into two different subtypes: type 1 and type 2 with an adverse clinical course (Table 5) (50,51) (LE: 3).

Table 5: Major histological subtypes of RCC

Histological subtype	Percentage of RCC	Histological description	Associated molecular genetic changes
Clear cell (cRCC)	80-90%	Most cRCC are composed predominantly of cells containing clear cytoplasm, although eosinophilic cytoplasm predominates in some cells. The growth pattern may be solid, tubular, and cystic.	Identified by the specific deletion of chromosome 3p and mutation of the VHL gene. Other changes are duplication of the chromosome band 5q22, deletion of chromosome 6q, 8p, 9p, and 14q.
Papillary (pRCC)	10-15%	Most pRCCs have small cells with scanty cytoplasm, but also basophilic, eosinophilic, or pail-staining characteristics. A papillary growth pattern predominates, although there may be tubular papillary and solid architectures. Necrotic areas are common. Papillary RCC can be divided into two different subtypes: type 1 with small cells and pale cytoplasm and type 2 with large cells and eosinophilic cytoplasm, the latter having a worse prognosis.	The most consistent genetic alterations are trisomies of chromosomes 3q, 7, 8, 12, 16, 17, and loss of the y chromosome.
Chromophobe (chRCC)	4-5%	The cells of chRCC may have pail or eosinophilic granular cytoplasm. Growth usually occurs in solid sheets.	The genetic characteristic is a combination of loss of chromosomes 1, 2, 6, 10, 13, and 17.

3.5 Conclusion

The proportion of small and incidental renal tumours has significantly increased in most countries, though a large number of patients with RCC still present with clinical symptoms, such as palpable mass, haematuria, and paraneoplastic and metastatic symptoms (LE: 3). Accurate staging of RCC with abdominal and chest CT or MRI is obligatory (LE: 3). Chest CT is the most sensitive approach for chest staging. There is no role for routine bone scan or CT of the brain in the standard clinical work-up of asymptomatic patients.

Recently, there has been an increasing indication for fine-needle biopsy for evaluation and ablative therapies in small renal tumours (40-45) (LE: 3).

3.6 Recommendations

	GR
In a patient with one or more laboratory or physical findings, the possible presence of RCC should be suspected.	B
A plain chest x-ray can be sufficient for assessment of the lung in low-risk patients, but chest CT is most sensitive.	A
Abdominal CT and MRI are recommended for the work-up of patients with RCC and are the most appropriate imaging modalities for Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification prior to surgery.	A
In high-risk patients for bone metastases (raised alkaline phosphatase or bone pain), further evaluation using an imaging approach should be done.	A
Evaluation of renal function is recommended.	B
Percutaneous biopsy is always indicated before ablative- and systemic therapy without previous histopathology.	B
Percutaneous biopsy is recommended in surveillance strategies to stratify follow-up.	B

3.7 References

1. Novick AC, Bukowski RM, Campbell SC. Renal tumours. In: *Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, Partin AV, Peters CA (eds). Campbell-Walsh Urology*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2007: pp. 1565-638.
2. Kutikov A, Fossett LK, Ramchandani P, et al. Incidence of benign pathologic findings at partial nephrectomy for solitary renal mass presumed to be renal cell carcinoma on preoperative imaging. Urology 2006 Oct;68(4):737-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17070344
3. Remzi M, Ozsoy M, Klingler HC, et al. Are small renal tumors harmless? Analysis of histopathological features according to tumors 4 cm or less in diameter. J Urol 2006 Sep;176(3):896-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890647
4. Kane CJ, Mallin K, Ritchey J, et al. Renal cell cancer stage migration: analysis of the National Cancer Data Base. Cancer 2008 Jul;113(1):78-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18491376
5. Lee CT, Katz J, Fearn PA, et al. Mode of presentation of renal cell carcinoma provides prognostic information. Urol Oncol 2002 Jul-Aug;7(4):135-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12474528
6. Patard JJ, Leray E, Rodriguez A, et al. Correlation between symptom graduation, tumor characteristics and survival in renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2003 Aug;44(2):226-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12875943
7. Kim HL, Belldegrun AS, Freitas DG, et al. Paraneoplastic signs and symptoms of renal cell carcinoma: implications for prognosis. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1742-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532767
8. Sufrin G, Chasan S, Golio A, et al. Paraneoplastic and serologic syndromes of renal adenocarcinoma. Semin Urol 1989 Aug;7(3):158-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2690260
9. Motzer RJ, Bacik J, Murphy BA, et al. Interferon-alfa as a comparative treatment for clinical trials of new therapies against advanced renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2002 Jan 1;20(1):289-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11773181
10. Song C, Bang JK, Park HK, et al. Factors influencing renal function reduction after partial nephrectomy. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):48-53; discussion 53-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012914
11. Uzzo RG, Novick AC. Nephron sparing surgery for renal tumors: indications, techniques and outcomes. J Urol 2001 Jul;66(1):6-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435813
12. Huang WC, Levey AS, Serio AM, et al. Chronic kidney disease after nephrectomy in patients with renal cortical tumours: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet Oncol 2006 Sep;7(9):735-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945768
13. Israel GM, Bosniak MA. How I do it: evaluating renal masses. Radiology 2005 Aug;236(2):441-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16040900

14. Fan L, Lianfang D, Jinfang X, et al. Diagnostic efficacy of contrast-enhanced ultrasonography in solid renal parenchymal lesions with maximum diameters of 5 cm. J Ultrasound Med 2008 Jun;27(6): 875-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499847
15. Correas JM, Tranquart F, Claudon M. [Guidelines for contrast enhanced ultrasound (CEUS)–update 2008.] J Radiol 2009 Jan;90(1 Pt 2):123-38. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19212280
16. Mitterberger M, Pelzer A, Colleselli D, et al. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound for diagnosis of prostate cancer and kidney lesions. Eur J Radiol 2007 Nov;64(2):231-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17881175
17. Israel GM, Bosniak MA. Pitfalls in renal mass evaluation and how to avoid them. Radiographics 2008 Sep-Oct;28(5):1325-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18794310
18. Ferda J, Hora M, Hes O, et al. Assessment of the kidney tumor vascular supply by two-phase MDCT-angiography. Eur J Radiol 2007 May;62(2):295-301.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17324548
19. Hricak H, Demas BE, Williams RD, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging in the diagnosis and staging of renal and perirenal neoplasms. Radiology 1985;154(3):709-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3969475
20. Janus CL, Mendelson DS. Comparison of MRI and CT for study of renal and perirenal masses. Crit Rev Diagn Imaging 1991;32(2):69-118.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1863349
21. Adey GS, Pedrosa I, Rofsky NM, et al. Lower limits of detection using magnetic resonance imaging for solid components in cystic renal neoplasms. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):47-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242363
22. Krestin GP, Gross-Fengels W, Marincek B. [The importance of magnetic resonance tomography in the diagnosis and staging of renal cell carcinoma.] Radiologe 1992;32(3):121-6. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1565792
23. Sun MR, Pedrosa I. Magnetic resonance imaging of renal masses. Semin Ultrasound CT MR. 2009 Aug;30(4):326-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19711644
24. Putra LG, Minor TX, Bolton DM, et al. Improved assessment of renal lesions in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Urology 2009 Sep;74(3):535-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19604560
25. Fritzsche PJ, Millar C. Multimodality approach to staging renal cell carcinoma. Urol Radiol 1992;14(1):3-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1615571
26. Ruiz Solís S, Rodado Marina S, Soriano Castrejón A, et al. [Clinical and prognostic value of X-ray based attenuation correction in post-stress myocardial perfusion SPECT.] Rev Esp Med Nucl 2007 Mar-Apr;26(2):77-89. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17386234
27. Park JW, Jo MK, Lee HM. Significance of 18F-fluorodeoxyglucose positron-emission tomography/ computed tomography for the postoperative surveillance of advanced renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(5):615-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19007371
28. Bechtold RE, Zagoria RJ. Imaging approach to staging of renal cell carcinoma. Urol Clin North Am 1997;24(3):507-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9275976
29. Heidenreich A, Ravery V. European Society of Oncological Urology. Preoperative imaging in renal cell cancer. World J Urol 2004;22(5):307-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15290202
30. Sheth S, Scatarige JC, Horton KM, et al. Current concepts in the diagnosis and management of renal cell carcinoma: role of multidetector CT and three-dimensional CT. Radiographics 2001;21 Spec No:S237-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11598260
31. Miles KA, London NJ, Lavelle JM, et al. CT staging of renal carcinoma: a prospective comparison of three dynamic computed tomography techniques. Eur J Radiol 1991;13(1):37-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1889427

32. Lim DJ, Carter MF. Computerized tomography in the preoperative staging for pulmonary metastases in patients with renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 1993;150(4):1112-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8371366
33. Doda SS, Mathur RK, Buxi TS. Role of computed tomography in staging of renal cell carcinoma. Comput Radiol 1986;10(4):183-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3791984
34. McClennan BL, Deyoe LA. The imaging evaluation of renal cell carcinoma: diagnosis and staging. Radiol Clin North Am 1994;32(1):55-69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284361
35. Kabala JE, Gillatt DA, Persad RA, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging in the staging of renal cell carcinoma. Br J Radiol 1991;64(764):683-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1884119
36. Gupta NP, Ansari MS, Khaitan A, et al. Impact of imaging and thrombus level in management of renal cell carcinoma extending to veins. Urol Int 2004;72(2):129-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14963353
37. Hendriksson C, Haraldsson G, Aldenborg F, et al. Skeletal metastases in 102 patients evaluated before surgery for renal cell carcinoma. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1992;26(4):363-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1292074
38. Warren KS, McFarlane J. The Bosniak classification of renal cystic masses. BJU Int 2005 May;95(7):939-42. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15839908
39. Seaman E, Goluboff ET, Ross S, et al. Association of radionuclide bone scan and serum alkaline phosphatase in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Urol 1996;48(5):692-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911510
40. Brierly RD, Thomas PJ, Harrison NW, et al. Evaluation of fine needle aspiration cytology for renal masses. BJU Int 2000;85(1):14-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10619937
41. Dechet CB, Zincke H, Sebo TJ, et al. Prospective analysis of computerized tomography and needle biopsy with permanent sectioning to determine the nature of solid renal masses in adults. J Urol 2003;169(1):71-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478106
42. Remzi M, Marberger M. Renal tumor biopsies for evaluation of small renal tumors: why, in whom and how? Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):359-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18849108
43. Shannon BA, Cohen RJ, de Bruto H, et al. The value of preoperative needle core biopsy for diagnosing benign lesions among small, incidentally detected renal masses. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4):1257-61; discussion 1261. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18707712
44. Volpe A, Mattar K, Finelli A, et al. Contemporary results of percutaneous biopsy of 100 small renal masses: a single center experience. J Urol 2008 Dec;180(6):2333-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18930274
45. Silverman SG, Gan YU, Mortele KJ, et al. Renal masses in the adult patient: the role of percutaneous biopsy. Radiology 2006 Jul:240(1):6-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16709793
46. Dutcher JP, de Souza P, McDermott D, et al. Effect of temsirolimus versus interferon-alpha on outcome of patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma of different tumor histologies. Med Oncol 2009;26(2):202-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19229667
47. Fuhrman SA, Lasky LC, Limas C. Prognostic significance of morphologic parameters in renal cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 1982;6(7):655-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7180965
48. Lang H, Lindner V, de Fromont M, et al. Multicenter determination of optimal interobserver agreement using the Fuhrman grading system for renal cell carcinoma: assessment of 241 patients with > 15-year follow-up. Cancer 2005;103(3):625-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15611969
49. Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, et al (eds). In: *Pathology and genetics of tumours of the urinary system and male genital organs. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours*. Lyon: IARC Press, 2004: p. 7.

50. Delahunt B, Eble JN, McCredie MR, et al. Morphologic typing of papillary renal cell carcinoma: comparison of growth kinetics and patient survival in 66 cases. Hum Pathol 2001 Jun;32(6):590-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11431713
51. Pignot G, Elie C, Conquy S, et al. Survival analysis of 130 patients with papillary renal cell carcinoma: prognostic utility of type 1 and type 2 subclassification. Urology 2007 Feb;69(2):230-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17275070

4. CLASSIFICATION AND PROGNOSTIC FACTORS

4.1 Classification

The TNM stage classification system is generally recommended for clinical and scientific use (1). However, the TNM classification requires continuous improvements (2). The 2009 version has introduced significant changes based on recent prognostication literature (Table 6).

- The pT1 substratification, introduced in 2002, has been validated by several studies and is no longer a matter of controversy (3-5) (LE: 3). Even though it has been less extensively studied, the tumour size stratification of T2 tumours has been recently introduced within the 2009 TNM classification.
- Since the 2002 version of the TNM classification, tumours with renal sinus fat invasion have been classified as pT3a. However, accumulating data suggest that renal sinus fat invasion carries a worse prognosis than perinephric fat invasion and therefore should not be included in the same pT3a stage group (LE: 3) (6-8).
- Many studies have suggested that adrenal invasion has a very poor prognostic value and that RCCs with this feature should be classified as pT4 tumours (9,10) (LE: 3). This change has been introduced in the latest TNM version (1).
- In previous TNM classifications, the pT3b group included both renal vein and inferior vena cava invasions. As the result of many studies into the independent prognostic value of vena cava compared to renal vein invasion alone (11-13), these two groups have now been separated in the latest version of the TNM classification (1).
- The accuracy of the N1-N2 subclassification has been questioned (14) (LE: 3). For adequate M-staging of patients with RCC, accurate pre-operative imaging (currently, chest and abdominal CT) should be performed (15,16) (LE: 4).

4.2 Prognostic factors

Factors influencing prognosis can be classified into: anatomical, histological, clinical, and molecular.

*4.2.1 **Anatomical factors***

Anatomical factors include tumour size, venous invasion, renal capsule invasion, adrenal involvement, lymph node, and distant metastasis. These factors are commonly gathered together in the universally used TNM staging classification system (Table 6).

Table 6: The 2009 TNM staging classification system (1)

T - Primary tumour	
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed
T0	No evidence of primary tumour
T1	Tumour ≤ 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney
T1a	Tumour ≤ 4 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney
T1b	Tumour > 4 cm but ≤ 7 cm in greatest dimension
T2	Tumour > 7 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney
T2a	Tumour > 7 cm but ≤ 10 cm in greatest dimension
T2b	Tumours > 10 cm limited to the kidney
T3	Tumour extends into major veins or directly invades adrenal gland or perinephric tissues but not into the ipsilateral adrenal gland and not beyond Gerota's fascia

	T3a	Tumour grossly extends into the renal vein or its segmental (muscle-containing) branches or tumour invades perirenal and/or renal sinus (peripelvic) fat but not beyond Gerota's fascia
	T3b	Tumour grossly extends into the vena cava below the diaphragm
	T3c	Tumour grossly extends into vena cava above the diaphragm or invades the wall of the vena cava
T4	Tumour invades beyond Gerota's fascia (including contiguous extension into the ipsilateral adrenal gland)	
N - Regional lymph nodes		
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed	
N0	No regional lymph node metastasis	
N1	Metastasis in a single regional lymph node	
N2	Metastasis in more than 1 regional lymph node	
M - Distant metastasis		
M0	No distant metastasis	
M1	Distant metastasis	
TNM stage grouping		
Stage I	T1	N0 M0
Stage II	T2	N0 M0
Stage III	T3	N0 M0
	T1, T2, T3	N1 M0
Stage IV	T4	Any N M0
	Any T	N2 M0
	Any T	Any N M1

A help desk for specific questions about TNM classification is available at http://www.uicc.org/tnm.

*4.2.2 **Histological factors***

Histological factors include Fuhrman grade, RCC subtype, sarcomatoid features, microvascular invasion, tumour necrosis, and invasion of the collecting system. Fuhrman nuclear grade is the most widely accepted histological grading system in RCC (17). Although affected by intra- and inter-observer discrepancies, it is an independent prognostic factor (18). Recently, it has been suggested that a simplified two- or three-strata Fuhrman grading system could be as accurate as the classical four-tiered grading scheme (19,20) (LE: 3).

According to the WHO classification (21), three major histological subtypes of RCC exist: conventional (clear cell) (80-90%), papillary (10-15%) and chromophobe (4-5%). In univariate analysis, there is a trend towards a better prognosis for patients with chromophobe versus papillary versus conventional (clear cell) RCC (22,23). However, the prognostic information provided by the RCC subtype is lost when stratified to tumour stage (23,24) (LE: 3).

Among papillary RCCs, two subgroups with different outcomes have been identified (25):
Type 1 are low-grade tumours with a chromophilic cytoplasm and a favourable prognosis.
Type 2 are mostly high-grade tumours with an eosinophilic cytoplasm and a great propensity for developing metastases (LE: 3).

The RCC type classification has been confirmed at the molecular level by cytogenetic and genetic analyses (26-28) (LE: 2b).

*4.2.3 **Clinical factors***

Clinical factors include patient performance status, localised symptoms, cachexia, anaemia, and platelet count (29-32) (LE: 3).

*4.2.4 **Molecular factors***

Numerous molecular markers being investigated include: carbonic anhydrase IX (CaIX), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), hypoxia inducible factor (HIF), Ki67 (proliferation), p53, PTEN (phosphatase and tensin homolog) (cell cycle), E-cadherin, and CD44 (cell adhesion) (33,34) (LE: 3). To date, none of these markers has been shown to improve the predictive accuracy of current prognostic systems and their use is therefore not recommended in routine practice. Finally, even though gene expression profiling seems a promising method, it has not helped so far to identify new relevant prognostic factors (35).

*4.2.5 **Prognostic systems and nomograms***

Post-operative prognostic systems and nomograms that combine independent prognostic factors have been developed and externally validated (36-42). These systems may be more accurate than TNM stage or Fuhrman grade alone for predicting survival (LE: 3). An important advantage of nomograms is their ability to measure predictive accuracy (PA), which enables all new predictive parameters to be objectively evaluated. Before being adopted, every new prognostic variable or system should be able to demonstrate that its PA is superior to conventional post-operative histo-prognostic schemes (43). Recently, new pre-operative nomograms with excellent PAs have been designed (44,45). Table 7 summarises the current most relevant prognostic systems.

4.3 Conclusion

In patients with RCC, TNM stage, nuclear grade according to Fuhrman, and RCC subtype (WHO, 2004; (21)), should be performed because they contribute important prognostic information (LE: 2). Prognostic systems should currently be used in a metastatic setting and are still investigational in localised disease (LE: 2).

4.4 Recommendations

	GR
The current TNM classification system is recommended because it has consequences for prognosis and therapy.	B
The Fuhrman grading system and classification of RCC subtype should be used.	B
A stratification system should be used in a metastatic setting for selecting the appropriate first-line treatment.	B
In localised disease, the use of integrated prognostic systems or nomograms is not routinely recommended, even though these systems can provide a rationale for enrolling patients into clinical trials.	B
No molecular prognostic marker is currently recommended for routine clinical use.	B

Table 7: Summary of the anatomical, histological, and clinical variables included in the most commonly used prognostic models for localised and metastatic RCC

Prognostic Models		Variables												
		TNM Stage	ECOG PS	Karnofsky PS	RCC related symptoms	Fuhrman grade	Tumor necrosis	Tumor size	Delay between diagnosis and treatment	LDH	Corrected calcium	Hemoglobin	Neutrophil count	Platelet count
Localised RCC	UISS	X	X			X								
	SSIGN	X				X	X	X						
	Post operative Karakiewicz's nomogram	X			X	X		X						
Metastatic RCC	MSKCC prognostic system			X					X	X	X	X		
	Heng's model			X					X		X	X	X	X

ECOG PS = Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group performance status; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase; MSKCC = Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center; PS = performance status; RCC = renal cell carcinoma; SSIGN = Stage Size Grade Necrosis; TNM = tumour node metastasis; UISS = University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system.

4.5 References

1. Sobin LH, Gospodariwicz M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM classification of malignant tumors. UICC International Union Against Cancer. 7th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, 2009: pp. 255-257. http://www.uicc.org/tnm
2. Gospodarowicz MK, Miller D, Groome PA, et al. The process for continuous improvement of the TNM classification. Cancer 2004 Jan;100(1):1-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14692017
3. Frank I, Blute ML, Leibovich BC, et al. Independent validation of the 2002 American Joint Committee on cancer primary tumor classification for renal cell carcinoma using a large, single institution cohort. J Urol Jun 2005;173(6):1889-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879769
4. Salama ME, Guru K, Stricker H, et al. pT1 substaging in renal cell carcinoma: validation of the 2002 TNM staging modification of malignant renal epithelial tumors. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1492-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821466
5. Ficarra V, Schips L, Guille F, et al. Multiinstitutional European validation of the 2002 TNM staging system in conventional and papillary localized renal cell carcinoma. Cancer 2005 Sep;104(5):968-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16007683
6. Bertini R, Roscigno M, Freschi M, et al. Renal sinus fat invasion in pT3a clear cell renal cell carcinoma affects outcomes of patients without nodal involvement or distant metastases. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):2027-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19286201
7. Poon SA, Gonzalez JR, Benson MC, et al. Invasion of renal sinus fat is not an independent predictor of survival in pT3a renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2009 Jun;103(12):1622-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154464
8. Bedke J, Buse S, Pritsch M, et al. Perinephric and renal sinus fat infiltration in pT3a renal cell carcinoma: possible prognostic differences. BJU Int 2009 May;103(10):1349-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19076147
9. Han KR, Bui MH, Pantuck AJ, et al. TNM T3a renal cell carcinoma: adrenal gland involvement is not the same as renal fat invasion. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):899-903; discussion 903-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576809
10. Thompson RH, Leibovich BC, Cheville JC, et al. Should direct ipsilateral adrenal invasion from renal cell carcinoma be classified as pT3a? J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):918-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711327
11. Thompson RH, Cheville JC, Lohse CM, et al. Reclassification of patients with pT3 and pT4 renal cell carcinoma improves prognostic accuracy. Cancer 2005 Jul;104(1):53-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15895375
12. Moch H, Artibani W, Delahunt B, et al. Reassessing the current UICC/AJCC TNM staging for renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Oct;56(4):636-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19595500
13. Wagner B, Patard JJ, Mejean A, et al. Prognostic value of renal vein and inferior vena cava involvement in renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):452-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18692951
14. Terrone C, Cracco F, Porpiglia F, et al. Reassessing the current TNM lymph node staging for renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2006 Feb;49(2):324-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16386352
15. Heidenreich A, Ravery V; European Society of Oncological Urology. Preoperative imaging in renal cell cancer. World J Urol 2004 Nov;22(5):307-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15290202
16. Sheth S, Scatarige JC, Horton KM, et al. Current concepts in the diagnosis and management of renal cell carcinoma: role of multidetector CT and three-dimensional CT. Radiographics 2001 Oct;21. Spec No:S237-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11598260
17. Fuhrman SA, Lasky LC, Limas C. Prognostic significance of morphologic parameters in renal cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 1982 Oct;6(7):655-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7180965
18. Lang H, Lindner V, de Fromont M, et al. Multicenter determination of optimal interobserver agreement using the Fuhrman grading system for renal cell carcinoma: assessment of 241 patients with > 15-year follow-up. Cancer 2005 Feb;103(3):625-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15611969

19. Rioux-Leclercq N, Karakiewicz PI, Trinh QD, et al. Prognostic ability of simplified nuclear grading of renal cell carcinoma. Cancer 2007 Mar;109(5):868-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17262800
20. Sun M, Lughezzani G, Jeldres C, et al. A proposal for reclassification of the Fuhrman grading system in patients with clear cell renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Nov;56(5):775-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19573980
21. Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, et al (eds). In: *Pathology and genetics of tumours of the urinary system and male genital organs. World Health Organization Classification of Tumours.* Lyons: IARC Press, 2004, p. 7.
22. Cheville JC, Lohse CM, Zincke H, et al. Comparisons of outcome and prognostic features among histological subtypes of renal cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2003 May;27(5):612-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12717246
23. Patard JJ, Leray E, Rioux-Leclercq N, et al. Prognostic value of histological subtypes in renal cell carcinoma: a multicenter experience. J Clin Oncol 2005 Apr;23(12):2763-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15837991
24. Capitanio U, Cloutier V, Zini L, et al. A critical assessment of the prognostic value of clear cell, papillary and chromophobe histological subtypes in renal cell carcinoma: a population-based study. BJU Int 2009 Jun;103(11):1496-500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19076149
25. Delahunt B, Eble JN, McCredie MR, et al. Morphologic typing of papillary renal cell carcinoma: comparison of growth kinetics and patient survival in 66 cases. Hum Pathol 2001 Jun;32(6):590-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11431713
26. Yang XJ, Tan MH, Kim HL, et al. A molecular classification of papillary renal cell carcinoma. Cancer Res 2005 Jul;65(13):5628-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15994935
27. Linehan WM, Vasselli J, Srinivasan R, et al. Genetic basis of cancer of the kidney: disease specific approaches to therapy. Clin Cancer Res 2004;10(18 Pt 2):6282S-9S. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15448018
28. Furge KA, Tan MH, Dykema K, et al. Identification of deregulated oncogenic pathways in renal cell carcinoma: an integrated oncogenomic approach based on gene expression profiling. Oncogene 2007 Feb;26(9):1346-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17322920
29. Bensalah K, Leray E, Fergelot P, et al. Prognostic value of thrombocytosis in renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3 Pt 1):859-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469566
30. Kim HL, Belldegrun AS, Freitas DG, et al. Paraneoplastic signs and symptoms of renal cell carcinoma: implications for prognosis. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1742-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532767
31. Kim HL, Han KR, Zisman A, et al. Cachexia-like symptoms predict a worse prognosis in localized T1 renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2004 May;171(5):1810-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076282
32. Patard JJ, Leray E, Cindolo L, et al. Multi-institutional validation of a symptom based classification for renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):858-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15310983
33. Sabatino M, Kim-Schulze S, Panelli MC, et al. Serum vascular endothelial growth factor and fibronectin predict clinical response to high-dose interleukin-2 therapy. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jun;27(16):2645-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19364969
34. Li G, Feng G, Gentil-Perret A, et al. Serum carbonic anhydrase 9 level is associated with postoperative recurrence of conventional renal cell cancer. J Urol 2008 Aug;180(2):510-3; discussion 513-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18550116
35. Zhao H, Ljungberg B, Grankvist K, et al. Gene expression profiling predicts survival in conventional renal cell carcinoma. PLoS Med 2006 Jan;3(1):e13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16318415
36. Sorbellini M, Kattan MW, Snyder ME, et al. A postoperative prognostic nomogram predicting recurrence for patients with conventional clear cell renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2005 Jan;173(1):48-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592023
37. Zisman A, Pantuck AJ, Dorey F, et al. Improved prognostication of renal cell carcinoma using an integrated staging system. J Clin Oncol 2001 Mar;19(6):1649-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11250993

38. Frank I, Blute ML, Cheville JC, et al. An outcome prediction model for patients with clear cell renal cell carcinoma treated with radical nephrectomy based on tumor stage, size, grade and necrosis: the SSIGN score. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2395-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441925
39. Leibovich BC, Blute ML, Cheville JC, et al. Prediction of progression after radical nephrectomy for patients with clear cell renal cell carcinoma: a stratification tool for prospective clinical trials. Cancer 2003 Apr;97(7):1663-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655523
40. Patard JJ, Kim HL, Lam JS, et al. Use of the University of California Los Angeles integrated staging system to predict survival in renal cell carcinoma: an international multicenter study. J Clin Oncol 2004 Aug;22(16):3316-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15310775
41. Karakiewicz PI, Briganti A, Chun FK, et al. Multi-institutional validation of a new renal cancer-specific survival nomogram. J Clin Oncol 2007 Apr;25(11):1316-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17416852
42. Zigeuner R, Hutterer G, Chromecki T, et al. External validation of the Mayo Clinic stage, size, grade, and necrosis (SSIGN) score for clear-cell renal cell carcinoma in a single European centre applying routine pathology. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):102-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19062157
43. Isbarn H, Karakiewicz PI. Predicting cancer-control outcomes in patients with renal cell carcinoma. Curr Opin Urol 2009 May;19(3):247-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19325492
44. Raj GV, Thompson RH, Leibovich BC, et al. Preoperative nomogram predicting 12-year probability of metastatic renal cancer. J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2146-51; discussion 2151.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423735
45. Karakiewicz PI, Suardi N, Capitanio U, et al. A preoperative prognostic model for patients treated with nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Feb; 55(2):287-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18715700

5. OTHER RENAL TUMOURS

Detailed morphological studies, which use contemporary immunohistochemical and molecular techniques, have resulted in the current classification of renal epithelial neoplasms, as outlined in the 2004 WHO monograph (1). The common clear cell (cRCC), papillary (pRCC) and chromophobe RCC (chRCC) types account for 85-90% of the renal malignancies. The remaining 10-15% of renal tumours include a variety of uncommon, sporadic, and familial carcinomas, some of which have recently been described, and a group of unclassified carcinomas.

5.1 Bellini duct carcinoma (collecting-duct carcinoma)

Collecting-duct carcinoma is a very rare type of RCC, often presenting at an advanced stage of disease. Up to 40% of patients have metastatic spread at initial presentation and most patients die within 1–3 years from the time of primary diagnosis. To date, the largest case series (n = 81) to consider outcome showed that regional lymph node metastases were present in 44% of patients at diagnosis and distant metastases were present in 32%. The survival rate was 48% at 5 years and 14% at 10 years (2-4).

5.2 Sarcomatoid RCC

Sarcomatoid RCC represents high-grade transformation in different RCC types, without being a distinct histological entity. Sarcomatoid changes in RCC carry a worse prognosis (5).

5.3 Unclassified RCC

Unclassified RCC is a diagnostic category for RCC that cannot be assigned to any other category of RCC-type carcinoma (1).

5.4 Multilocular cystic RCC (cRCC)

There are no strict histopathological criteria for this subtype. In the WHO 2004 classification (1), multilocular cRCC is an independent entity, but it is essentially a well-differentiated cRCC. This subtype accounts for up to about 3.5% of surgically treated kidney tumours (6). To date, metastases of this tumour have not been

described (6,7). According to the Bosniak classification, which is based on imaging criteria, multilocular cRCC presents as a Bosniak type II or III cystic lesion (8-10). However, this type of Bosniak lesion can also be due to a mixed epithelial and stromal tumour of the kidney (MESTK), a cystic nephroma, or a multilocular cyst, all of which are benign lesions. In many cases, a pre-operative biopsy and intra-operative frozen-section analysis does not lead to a correct diagnosis. Fortunately, all these tumours are treated with the same operative strategy. For this reason, if technically feasible, a nephron-sparing procedure is the procedure of choice for a complex multicystic renal mass with enhanced density is observed (LE: 3) (GR: B) (6,7,9,10).

5.5 Papillary adenoma

Papillary adenomas are tumours with papillary or tubular architecture of low nuclear grade and 5 mm in diameter or smaller (1). Because they are so small, they are only found incidentally in a nephrectomy specimen.

5.6 Renal medullary carcinoma

Renal medullary carcinoma is a devastating malignancy that primarily affects young men with sickle cell trait. It is also extremely rare, comprising approximately 2% of all primary renal tumours in young people aged 10 to 20 years old. Metastatic disease is seen at presentation in 95% of patients (2,11,12).

5.7 Translocation carcinoma

Renal translocation carcinomas are uncommon tumours, which usually occur in children and young adults. Most translocation carcinomas (about 90%) involve the transcription factor E3 (TFE3) located on Xp11.2 and seem to follow a relatively indolent course, despite often being at an advanced stage at presentation (2). Another rare group of RCCs that show a translocation (t (6; 11) (p21; q12)) has also been reported (2,13).

5.8 Mucinous tubular and spindle cell carcinoma

This tumour is associated with the loop of Henle. Most mucinous tubular and spindle-cell carcinomas behave in a low-grade fashion (1,2,14).

5.9 Carcinoma associated with end-stage renal disease

Cystic degenerative changes (acquired cystic kidney disease [ACKD]) and a higher incidence of RCC are typical features of ESKD (end-stage kidney disease). The incidence of ACKD is about 50% in patients undergoing dialysis, but also depends on the duration of dialysis, gender (three times more common in men), and the diagnostic criteria of the method of evaluation. RCCs of native end-stage kidneys are found in about 4% of patients. The lifetime risk of developing RCCs is at least 10 times higher than in the general population. Compared with sporadic RCCs, the RCCs associated with ESKD and ACKD are characterised by multicentricity and bilaterality, being found in younger patients (mostly male), and by less aggressive behaviour. In transplanted patients, however, it is usually quite aggressive, probably as a result of immunosuppression (15-20).

Although the histological spectrum of tumours within ACKD is similar to that in sporadic RCC, the most predominant form is pRCC, being found in 41-71% of ACKD-associated RCC versus 10% in sporadic RCC. The remaining tumours are mostly cRCC (2,19,20). Tickoo et al. (21) recently described two new renal tumours associated with ESKD: ‘acquired cystic disease-associated RCC‘ and ‘clear-cell pRCC‘. To date, these entities have not generally been accepted. The malignant potential of RCCs in ESKD is still a matter of discussion compared to sporadic RCCs. Patients with ESKD should undergo an annual ultrasound evaluation of the kidneys (16-19).

5.10 Metanephric tumours

Metanephric tumours are divided into metanephric adenoma, adenofibroma, and metanephric stromal tumour. These are very rare benign tumours and surgical excision is sufficient (1).

5.11 Renal epithelial and stromal tumours

Renal epithelial and stromal tumours (REST) is a new concept that brings together two benign mixed mesenchymal and epithelial tumours: cystic nephroma and mixed epithelial and stromal tumours (22). Imaging reveals that most REST cystic lesions are Bosniak type III and less frequently Bosniak type II or IV (8,10). Even though aggressive behaviour has been reported in very few cases, both neoplasms are generally considered to be benign and surgical excision as curative (22).

5.12 Oncocytoma

Renal oncocytomas are benign tumours (1) that comprise about 3-7% of all renal tumours (23). Imaging characteristics alone are unreliable when differentiating between oncocytoma and RCC. Histopathological diagnosis remains the reference standard (24). Although only a percutaneous biopsy can lead to a pre-

operative diagnosis, it has a low specificity for oncocytoma because oncocytotic cells are also found in cRCC, the granular-cell variant of RCC, and in the eosinophilic variant of pRCC (type 2) (25). 'Watchful waiting' can be considered in selected cases of histologically verified oncocytoma (LE: 3) (GR: C) (25,26).

5.13 Hereditary kidney tumours

Hereditary kidney tumours can be found as part of the following entities: Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, hereditary pRCC, Birt-Hogg-Dubé syndrome, hereditary leiomyomatosis, tuberous sclerosis, and constitutional chromosome 3 translocation (1,27).

5.14 Mesenchymal tumours

Mesenchymal tumours include different types of sarcomas and are relatively rare, except for angiomyolipoma.

*5.14.1 **Angiomyolipoma***

Angiomyolipoma (AML) is a benign mesenchymal tumour composed of a variable proportion of adipose tissue, spindle and epitheloid smooth muscle cells, and abnormal thick-walled blood vessels. It can occur sporadically, which is four times more likely in women. It also occurs in tuberous sclerosis, when it is multiple, bilateral, larger, and likely to cause spontaneous haemorrhage. It accounts for approximately 1% of surgically removed tumours. Ultrasound, CT, and MRI often lead to diagnosis due to the presence of adipose tissue. Biopsy is rarely useful. Pre-operatively, it may be difficult to differentiate between tumours composed predominantly of smooth muscle cells and epithelial tumours. Epithelioid AML is a potentially malignant variant of AML (1).

The main complications of renal AML are retroperitoneal bleeding or bleeding into the urinary collection system, which can be life-threatening (28). The bleeding tendency is related to the angiogenic component of the tumour that includes irregular and aneurysmatic blood vessels (28). The major risk factors for bleeding are tumour size, the grade of angiogenic component of the tumour, and the presence of tuberous sclerosis (28,29).

Primary indications for intervention include symptoms such as pain, bleeding, or suspected malignancy. Prophylactic intervention is justifiable for:

- large tumours (the recommended threshold of intervention is ≥ 4 cm wide (28,30);
- females of childbearing age;
- patients in whom follow-up or access to emergency care may be inadequate (29) (LE: 3) (GR: C).

Most cases of AML can be managed by conservative nephron-sparing approaches, though some cases of AML may require complete nephrectomy (29) (LE: 3). Of the standard surgical interventions, selective arterial embolisation (SAE) and radiofrequency ablation (RFA) can be used (28,31). Although SAE is effective at controlling haemorrhage in the acute setting, it has limited value in the longer-term management of AML (31).

5.15 New histological entities

New histological entities have recently been described, for which there currently is very little clinical data. The entities include:

- thyroid-like follicular tumour/carcinoma of the kidney (32);
- RCC associated with neuroblastoma (1);
- renal angiomyoadenomatous tumour (33);
- tubulocystic carcinoma (34);
- clear cell pRCC (2);
- oncocytic pRCC (2);
- follicular renal carcinoma (2);
- leiomyomatous RCC (2).

Table 8: Summary of other renal tumours with indication of malignant potential and recommendation for treatment (GR: C)

Entity	Malignant potential	Treatment
Sarcomatoid variants of RCC	High	Surgery
Multilocular clear cell RCC	Low, no metastasis	Surgery, NSS*
Papillary adenoma	Benign	Observation
Carcinoma of the collecting ducts of Bellini	High, very aggressive	Surgery, in M+ discussable

Renal medullary carcinoma	High, very aggressive	Surgery
Translocation carcinoma	Intermediate	Surgery, NSS
Mucinous tubular and spindle cell carcinoma	Intermediate	Surgery, NSS
Carcinoma associated with end-stage renal disease	Variable	Surgery
Metanephric tumours	Benign	Surgery, NSS
Renal epithelial and stromal tumours (REST)	Low	Surgery, NSS
Oncocytoma	Benign	Observation/surgery
Hereditary kidney tumours	High	Surgery, NSS
Angiomyolipoma	Benign	Consider treatment when > 4 cm
Unclassified RCC	Variable	Surgery, NSS

**NSS = nephron-sparing surgery*

5.16 Summary

A variety of renal tumours exists, of which about 15% are benign. All kidney lesions have to be examined (e.g. imaging, biopsy, etc.) and judged regarding the likelihood of malignant behaviour.

5.17 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Except for angiomyolipomas, most of these less common renal tumours cannot be differentiated from RCC on the basis of radiology and should therefore be treated in the same way as RCC.	3	C
Bosniak cysts ≥ type III should be surgically treated. When possible, a nephron-sparing procedure should be performed in Bosniak type III.	3	C
In oncocytomas verified on biopsy, follow-up is an option.	3	C
In angiomyolipomas, treatment (surgery, thermal ablation, and selective arterial embolisation) can be considered when the tumour > 4cm. When possible, a nephron-sparing procedure should be performed.	3	C
In advanced uncommon types of renal tumours, a standardised oncological treatment approach does not exist.	4	C

5.18 References

1. Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, et al. (eds). World Health Organization Classification of Tumours. Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Urinary System and Male Genital Organs. IARC Press: Lyon, 2004, pp. 9-87.
2. Srigley JR, Delahunt B. Uncommon and recently described renal carcinomas. Mod Pathol 2009 Jun;22:S2–S23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19494850
3. Tokuda N, Naito S, Matsuzaki O, et al. Collecting duct (Bellini duct) renal cell carcinoma in Japan: a nationwide survey in Japan. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):40-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753362
4. Karakiewicz PI, Trinh QD, Rioux-Leclercq N, et al. Collecting duct renal cell carcinoma: a matched analysis of 41 cases. Eur Urol 2007 Oct;52(4):1140-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17336449
5. de Peralta-Venturina M, Moch H, Amin M, et al. Sarcomatoid differentiation in renal cell carcinoma: a study of 101 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 2001 Mar;25(3):275-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224597
6. Webster WS, Thompson RH, Cheville JC, et al. Surgical resection provides excellent outcomes for patients with cystic clear cell renal cell carcinoma. Urology 2007 Nov;70(5):900-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18068445
7. Gong K, Zhang N, He Z, et al. Multilocular cystic renal cell carcinoma: an experience of clinical management for 31 cases. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2008 Apr;134(4):433-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17846788

8. Israel GM, Bosniak MA. An update of the Bosniak renal cyst classification system. Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):484-8. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140062
9. Limb J, Santiago L, Kaswick J, et al. Laparoscopic evaluation of indeterminate renal cysts: long-term follow-up. J Endourol 2002 Mar;16(2):79-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11962559
10. Hora M, Hes O, Michal M, et al. Extensively cystic renal neoplasms in adults (Bosniak classification II or III)–possible 'common' histological diagnoses: multilocular cystic renal cell carcinoma, cystic nephroma, and mixed epithelial and stromal tumor of the kidney. Int Urol Nephrol 2005 Dec;37(4): 743-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16362592
11. Hakimi AA, Koi PT, Milhoua PM, et al. Renal medullary carcinoma: the Bronx experience. Urology 2007 Nov;70(5):878-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18068443
12. Watanabe IC, Billis A, Guimarães MS, et al. Renal medullary carcinoma: report of seven cases from Brazil. Mod Pathol 2007 Sep;20(9):914-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17643096
13. Hora M, Hes O, Ürge T, et al. A Distinctive translocation carcinoma of the kidney ('rosette-like forming', t(6;11), HMB45 positive renal tumor). Int Urol Nephrol 2009 Sep;41(3):553-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18998233
14. Hes O, Hora M, Perez-Montiel DM, et al. Spindle and cuboidal renal cell carcinoma, a tumour having frequent association with nephrolithiasis: report of 11 cases including a case with hybrid conventional renal cell carcinoma/spindle and cuboidal renal cell carcinoma components. Histopathol 2002 Dec; 41:549-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12460208
15. Maisonneuve P, Agodoa L, Gellert R, et al. Cancer in patients on dialysis for end-stage renal disease: an international collaborative study. Lancet 1999 Jul;354(9173):93-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10408483
16. Farivar-Mohseni H, Perlmutter AE, Wilson S, et al. Renal cell carcinoma and end stage renal disease. J Urol 2006 Jun;175(6):2018-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697788
17. Kojima Y, Takahara S, Miyake O, et al. Renal cell carcinoma in dialysis patients: a single center experience. Int J Urol 2006 Aug;13(8):1045-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903927
18. Moudouni SM, Lakmichi A, Tligui M, et al. Renal cell carcinoma of native kidney in renal transplant recipients. BJU Int 2006 Aug;98(2):298-302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16879668
19. Schwarz A, Vatandaslar S, Merkel S, et al. Renal cell carcinoma in transplant recipients with acquired cystic kidney disease. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2007 Jul;2(4):750-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17699492
20. Hora M, Hes O, Reischig T, et al. Tumours in end-stage kidney. Transplant Proc 2008 Dec;40(10): 3354-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19100388
21. Tickoo SK, dePeralta-Venturina MN, Harik LR, et al. Spectrum of epithelial neoplasm in end-stage renal disease: an experience from 66 tumor-bearing kidneys with emphasis on histological pattern distinct from those in sporadic adult renal neoplasia. Am J Surg Pathol 2006 Feb;30(2):141-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16434887
22. Montironi R, Mazzucchelli R, Lopez-Beltran A, et al. Cystic nephroma and mixed epithelial and stromal tumour of the kidney: opposite ends of the spectrum of the same entity? Eur Urol 2008 Dec;54(6):1237-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18006141
23. Kuroda N, Toi M, Hiroi M, et al. Review of renal oncocytoma with focus on clinical and pathobiological aspects. Histol Histopathol 2003 Jul;18(3):935-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12792905
24. Choudhary S, Rajesh A, Mayer NJ, et al. Renal oncocytoma: CT features cannot reliably distinguish oncocytoma from other renal neoplasms. Clin Radiol 2009 May;64(5):517-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19348848
25. Schmidbauer J, Remzi M, Memarsadeghi M, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of computed tomography-guided percutaneous biopsy of renal masses. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):1003-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18061339

26. Wang R, Wolf JS Jr, Wood DP Jr, et al. Accuracy of percutaneous core biopsy in management of small renal masses. Urology 2009 Mar;73(3):586–90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19118884
27. Sanz-Ortega J, Olivier C, Pérez Segura P, et al. Hereditary renal cancer. Actas Urol Esp 2009 Feb;33(2):127-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19418834
28. Ramon J, Rimon U, Garniek A, et al. Renal angiomyolipoma: long-term results following selective arterial embolization. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1155-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18440125
29. Nelson CP, Sanda MG. Contemporary diagnosis and management of renal angiomyolipoma. J Urol 2002 Oct;168 (4 Pt 1):1315-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352384
30. Oesterling JE, Fishamn EK, Goldman SM, et al. The management of renal angiomyolipoma. J Urol 1986 Jun;135(6):1121-4. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3520013
31. Sooriakumaran P, Gibbs P, Coughlin G, et al. Angiomyolipomata: challenges, solutions, and future prospects based on over 100 cases treated. BJU Int 2010 Jan;105(1):101-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19493268
32. Amin MB, Gupta R, Ondrej H, et al. Primary thyroid-like follicular carcinoma of the kidney: report of 6 cases of a histologically distinctive adult renal epithelial neoplasm. Am J Surg Pathol 2009 Mar;33(3):393-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19047894
33. Michal M, Hes O, Nemcová J, et al. Renal angiomyoadenomatous tumor: morphologic, immunohistochemical and molecular genetic study of a new entity. Virchow Arch 2009 Jan;454(1): 89-99.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19020896
34. Yang XJ, Zhou M, Hes O, et al. Tubulocystic carcinoma of the kidney: clinicopathologic and molecular characterization. Am J Surg Pathol 2008 Feb;32(2):177-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18223319

6. TREATMENT OF LOCALISED RCC

6.1 Nephron-sparing surgery (partial tumour resection)

Nephron-sparing surgery (partial tumour resection) for localised RCC has a similar oncological outcome to that of radical surgery (1-5). However, in some patients with localised RCC, nephron-sparing surgery is not suitable because of:

- locally advanced tumour growth;
- partial resection is not technically feasible because the tumour is in an unfavourable location;
- significant deterioration of a patient's general health.

In these situations, the gold standard curative therapy remains radical nephrectomy, which includes removal of the tumour-bearing kidney. Complete resection of the primary tumour by either open (6,7) or laparoscopic surgery (8-13) offers a reasonable chance of curing the disease.

*6.1.1 **Associated procedures***

6.1.1.1 Adrenalectomy

Adrenalectomy is not indicated in the following situations (14-22):

- Pre-operative tumour staging (CT, MRI) shows a normal adrenal gland;
- Intra-operative findings do not give any indication of a nodule within the adrenal gland suspicious of metastatic disease;
- There is no evidence of direct invasion of the adrenal gland by a large upper pole tumour.

6.1.1.2 Lymph node dissection

An extended or radical lymph node dissection does not appear to improve long-term survival following tumour nephrectomy (23). Thus, for staging purposes, the lymph node dissection can be limited to the hilar region. In patients with palpable or CT-detected enlarged lymph nodes, resection of the affected lymph nodes should be performed to obtain adequate staging information.

6.1.1.3 Embolisation

There is no benefit in performing tumour embolisation before routine nephrectomy (24-26). In patients who are unfit for surgery, or who present with non-resectable disease, embolisation can control symptoms such as gross haematuria or flank pain (27-31). Embolisation prior to the resection of hypervascular bone or spinal metastases can reduce intra-operative blood loss (32-34). In selected patients with painful bone or paravertebral metastases, embolisation can help to relieve symptoms (35).

6.1.1.4 Conclusions

- Patients with low-stage RCC (T1) should undergo nephron-sparing surgery. Radical nephrectomy is no longer the gold standard treatment in these cases (1-5) (LE: 2b).
- Adrenalectomy is not recommended, provided a pre-operative CT scan shows the adrenal gland is normal and the intra-operative findings do not suggest intra-adrenal metastatic spread or a direct invasion of the adrenal gland by a larger upper pole tumour (14-22) (LE: 3).
- Extended lymphadenectomy does not improve survival in RCC patients and should be restricted to staging purposes with dissection of palpable and enlarged lymph nodes (23) (LE: 1b).
- RCCs with tumour thrombi have a higher stage and grade of disease (LE: 2b). Distant and lymph node metastases are twice as common in these patients (LE: 3). The increase in biological aggressiveness of the disease has a larger influence on clinical prognosis than the cranial extension of an intracaval thrombosis (36-40) (LE: 3).

6.1.1.5 Recommendations

	GR
Surgical therapy is the only curative therapeutic approach for the treatment of RCC. For T1 tumours, nephron-sparing surgery should be performed whenever possible. Extended lymphadenectomy does not improve survival and can be restricted to staging purposes.	A
Adrenalectomy (together with nephrectomy) is not needed in most patients, except when there is a large upper pole tumour and direct invasion of the adrenal gland is likely or when a normal adrenal gland cannot be excluded.	B
Embolisation can be a beneficial palliative approach in patients unfit for surgery and suffering from massive haematuria or flank pain.	C

6.1.2 ***Indications for nephron-sparing surgery***

Standard indications for nephron-sparing surgery are divided into the following categories:

- absolute – anatomical or functional solitary kidney;
- relative – functioning opposite kidney is affected by a condition that might impair renal function in the future;
- elective – localised unilateral RCC with a healthy contralateral kidney.

Relative indications include hereditary forms of RCC, which carry a high risk of developing a tumour in the contralateral kidney.

For elective indications, nephron-sparing surgery for tumours limited in diameter (T1a) provides recurrence-free and long-term survival rates similar to those observed after radical surgery (1-5,41,42) (LE: 2b). For larger tumours (T1b), partial nephrectomy has demonstrated feasibility and oncological safety in carefully selected patients (43-47).

6.1.3 ***Complications***

- The complication rates observed with nephron-sparing surgery are slightly higher but still very tolerable when compared with radical nephrectomy (48) (LE: 1b).
- Nephron-sparing surgery carried out for absolute rather than elective indications carries an increased complication rate and a higher risk of developing locally recurrent disease, probably due to the larger tumour size (49-51) (LE: 3).

6.1.4 ***Prognosis***

- In patients with a sporadic solitary renal tumour of up to 4-5 cm maximum diameter and a normal contralateral kidney, long-term renal function is better preserved with a nephron-sparing approach than with nephrectomy (52).
- There is a strong indication that, due to better preservation of renal function, nephron-sparing surgery

results in an improved overall survival when compared with radical nephrectomy (53-55) (LE: 3).
- If the tumour is completely resected, the thickness of the surgical margin does not impact on the likelihood of local recurrence (56-58) (LE: 3).

*6.1.5 **Conclusions***

- Nephron-sparing surgery has a slightly higher complication rate compared with radical surgery.
- However, nephron-sparing surgery is a safe procedure from the oncological point of view. Whenever technically feasible, nephron-sparing surgery is therefore considered to be the standard of care for T1a/b stage RCC (1-5,41-47).
- In the long term, a nephron-sparing approach results in improved preservation of renal function, decreased overall mortality, and reduced frequency of cardiovascular events (53-55).

*6.1.6 **Recommendations***

	GR
Whenever technically feasible, nephron-sparing surgery is the standard procedure for solitary renal tumours up to a diameter of 7 cm.	A
A minimal tumour-free surgical margin following partial resection of RCC is sufficient to avoid local recurrence.	B
There is an increased risk of intrarenal recurrences in larger-size (> 7 cm) tumours treated with nephron-sparing surgery, or when there is a positive margin. Follow-up should be intensified in these patients.	C

6.2 Laparoscopic surgery

Since its introduction, laparoscopic nephrectomy for RCC has become an established surgical procedure worldwide. Whether done retro-peritoneally or trans-peritoneally, the laparoscopic approach must follow established open surgical oncological principles.

*6.2.1 **Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy***

Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy is the standard of care for patients with T2 tumours and smaller renal masses not treatable by nephron-sparing surgery (59-63). Long-term outcome data indicate that laparoscopic radical nephrectomy has equivalent cancer-free survival rates to those of open radical nephrectomy (10,12,13,61,62,64-68).

6.2.1.1 Conclusions

- Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy appears to have a lower morbidity compared to open surgery, though this is based on only a few studies using a standardised quality-of-life evaluation (69) (LE: 3).
- Tumour control rates appear equivalent for T1-T2 tumours (10,12,13,61,62,64-68) (LE: 3).

6.2.1.2 Recommendations

	GR
Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy is recommended in T2 renal cell cancer.	B
Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy should not be performed in patients with T1 tumours for whom partial resection is indicated.	B

*6.2.2 **Partial laparoscopic nephrectomy***

In experienced hands and selected patients, laparoscopic partial nephrectomy is an alternative to open nephron-sparing surgery. The optimal indication for laparoscopic nephron-sparing surgery is a relatively small and peripheral renal tumour (4).

During laparoscopic partial resection, the intra-operative ischaemia time is longer than with open partial nephrectomy (4,70,71). Long-term renal function depends on the duration of the intra-operative ischaemia time (72).

Laparoscopic nephron-sparing surgery has a higher complication rate compared to open surgery. However, the oncological outcome in available series with limited follow-up appears to be similar to the outcome achieved with open nephron-sparing surgery (4,73,74).

In patients with a solitary kidney, laparoscopic partial nephrectomy results in a prolonged warm ischaemia time and a higher complication rate. Temporary or permanent dialysis is more likely to be necessary (4,72,75).

6.2.2.1 *Robotic-assisted partial nephrectomy*

Robotic-assisted partial nephrectomy is a novel technique that is still undergoing evaluation (76-80).

6.2.2.2 *Conclusion*

Partial nephrectomy by laparoscopic surgery is technically feasible (LE: 2b).

6.2.3 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Open partial nephrectomy currently remains the standard of care.	C
Laparoscopic partial nephrectomy should be performed by experienced surgeons.	C
Open partial resection is recommended for renal masses in a solitary kidney.	C

6.3 Therapeutic approaches as alternative to surgery

6.3.1 ***Surveillance***

In patients presenting with small renal masses, who undergo active surveillance, there appears to be no correlation between local tumour progression and an increased risk of metastatic disease. Both short- and intermediate-term oncological outcomes indicate that it is an appropriate strategy to initially monitor small renal masses followed, if required, by treatment for progression (73,81,82).

6.3.2 ***Percutaneous approaches***

Suggested alternatives to the surgical treatment of RCC have included image-guided percutaneous and minimally invasive techniques, e.g. percutaneous RFA, cryoablation, microwave ablation, laser ablation, and high-intensity focused ultrasound ablation (HIFU) (LE: 2b).

Possible advantages of these and other techniques include reduced morbidity, out-patient therapy, and the ability to treat high-risk surgical candidates (LE: 2b).

Indications for minimally invasive techniques, including RFA, are:

- small, incidentally found, renal cortical lesions in elderly patients;
- patients with a genetic predisposition for developing multiple tumours;
- patients with bilateral tumours;
- patients with a solitary kidney at high risk of complete loss of renal function following surgical tumour resection (LE: 2b).

Contraindications to the above-mentioned procedures include:

- poor life expectancy of < 1 year;
- multiple metastases;
- low possibility of successful treatment due to size or location of tumour. In general, tumours > 3 cm or tumours in the hilum, near the proximal ureter or the central collecting system are not typically recommended for ablative techniques via a percutaneous approach.

Absolute contraindications include:

- irreversible coagulopathies;
- severe medical instability, such as sepsis.

6.3.2.1 *Radiofrequency ablation and cryoablation*

Of all the available ablative techniques, RFA and cryoablation are the most intensively investigated approaches in terms of how practical they are to use, complication rate, and oncological safety.

Before an ablative approach, a pre-treatment biopsy to clarify the histology of the renal mass should be carried out. The available literature indicates that the pathology is unknown in a significantly higher proportion of patients undergoing RFA (40%) versus 25% in patients undergoing cryotherapy.

Compared to RFA, cryoablation is more likely to be performed laparoscopically. The laparoscopic approach is more effective but has a higher complication rate. Repeat ablation is necessary more frequently following RFA. Local tumour progression is significantly higher with RFA. Cancer-specific survival rates for cryotherapy and RFA are poorer than survival rates for surgical procedures (83-86).

6.3.2.2 *Conclusions*

- Radiofrequency and cryoablation are the only minimally invasive approaches for the treatment of small renal tumours with medium follow-up data.

- Although the oncological efficacy is not yet known, currently available data strongly suggest that cryoablation, when performed laparoscopically, results in fewer re-treatments and improved local tumour control compared with RFA (LE: 3).
- For both RFA and cryoablation, recurrence rates are higher than with nephron-sparing surgery (83-86) (LE: 3).

6.3.2.3 Recommendations

	GR
Patients with small tumours and/or significant co-morbidity who are unfit for surgery should be considered for an ablative approach, e.g. cryotherapy and radiofrequency ablation.	A
Pre-treatment biopsy has to be carried out as standard.	C
Other image-guided percutaneous and minimally invasive techniques, such as microwave ablation, laser ablation, and high-intensity focused ultrasound ablation are still experimental in character. The experience obtained with radiofrequency ablation and cryoablation should be considered when using these related techniques.	B

6.4 Adjuvant therapy

Current evidence that adjuvant tumour vaccination might improve the duration of the progression-free survival of selected subgroups of patients undergoing nephrectomy for T3 renal carcinomas needs further confirmation regarding the impact on overall survival (87-91) (LE: 1b). Prognostic algorithms might identify patients likely to derive the largest clinical benefit from adjuvant vaccination therapy.

*6.4.1 **Conclusion***

Adjuvant therapy with cytokines does not improve survival after nephrectomy (LE: 1b).

*6.4.2 **Recommendation***

	GR
Outside controlled clinical trials, there is no indication for adjuvant therapy following surgery.	A

6.5 Surgical treatment of metastatic RCC (tumour nephrectomy)

Tumour nephrectomy is curative only if surgery can excise all tumour deposits. For the majority of patients with metastatic disease, tumour nephrectomy is palliative and other systemic treatments are necessary. In a meta-analysis of two randomised studies, comparing nephrectomy combined with immunotherapy versus immunotherapy only, an increased long-term survival was found in patients subjected to tumour nephrectomy (92). Nephrectomy in patients with metastatic disease is indicated for patients who are both suitable for surgery and have good performance status (93). At present, only limited data are available addressing the value of cytoreductive nephrectomy combined with targeting agents.

*6.5.1 **Conclusion***

Tumour nephrectomy in combination with interferon-alpha (IFN-alpha) improves the survival of patients with metastatic RCC (mRCC) and good performance status (LE: 1b).

*6.5.2 **Recommendation***

	GR
Tumour nephrectomy is recommended for metastatic RCC patients with good performance status when combined with IFN-alpha.	A

6.6 Resection of metastases

Complete removal of metastatic lesions contributes to an improvement of clinical prognosis. Immunotherapy, where there has been complete resection of metastatic lesions or isolated local recurrences, does not contribute to an improvement in clinical prognosis (93-97) (LE: 2b).

*6.6.1 **Conclusion***

There is a definite role for metastasectomy in patients with RCC in order to improve the clinical prognosis

(LE: 3). Therefore; the possibility of metastasectomy has to be continuously re-evaluated, even together with a targeted systemic therapy.

6.6.2 ***Recommendation***

	GR
In patients with synchronous metastatic spread, metastasectomy should be performed where disease is resectable and the patient has a good performance status. The clinical prognosis is worse in patients who have surgery for metachranous metastases.	B
Metastasectomy should be performed in patients with residual and resectable metastatic lesions previously responding to immunotherapy and/or a limited (solitary lesion) number of metachranous metastases in order to improve the patient's prognosis.	B

6.7 Radiotherapy for metastases in RCC

Radiotherapy can be used for selected symptomatic patients with non-resectable brain or osseous lesions who do not respond to systemic treatment approaches (98,99).

6.7.1 ***Conclusion***

Radiotherapy of metastases from RCC can induce a significant relief from symptoms with pain reduction, e.g. a single bony deposit (LE: 2b).

6.7.2 ***Recommendation***

	GR
In individual cases, radiotherapy for the treatment of brain metastases (whole brain irradiation or stereotactic approach) and osseous lesions can induce a relief from symptoms due to mRCC (100,101).	B

6.8 References

1. Raz O, Mendlovic S, Shilo Y, et al. Positive surgical margins with renal cell carcinoma have a limited influence on long-term oncological outcomes of nephron sparing surgery. Urology 2010 Feb;75(2):277-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19896179
2. Marszalek M, Meixl H, Polajnar M, et al. Laparoscopic and open partial nephrectomy: a matched-pair comparison of 200 patients. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1171-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19232819
3. Peycelon M, Hupertan V, Comperat E, et al. Long-term outcomes after nephron sparing surgery for renal cell carcinoma larger than 4 cm. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):35-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012929
4. Gill IS, Kavoussi LR, Lane BR, et al. Comparison of 1,800 laparoscopic and open partial nephrectomies for single renal tumors. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):41-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17574056
5. Delakas D, Karyotis I, Daskalopoulos G, et al. Nephron-sparing surgery for localized renal cell carcinoma with a normal contralateral kidney: a European three-center experience. Urology 2002 Dec;60(6):998-1002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12475657
6. Tsui KH, Shvarts O, Smith RB, et al. Prognostic indicators for renal cell carcinoma: a multivariate analysis of 643 patients using the revised 1997 TNM staging criteria. J Urol 2000 Apr;163(4):1090-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737472
7. Javidan J, Stricker HJ, Tamboli P, et al. Prognostic significance of the 1997 TNM classification of renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 1999 Oct;162(4):1277-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10492179
8. Cadeddu JA, Ono Y, Clayman RV, et al. Laparoscopic nephrectomy for renal cell cancer: evaluation of efficacy and safety: a multicenter experience. Urology 1998 Nov;52(5):773-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9801097
9. Luo JH, Zhou FJ, Xie D, et al. Analysis of long-term survival in patients with localized renal cell carcinoma: laparoscopic versus open radical nephrectomy. World J Urol 2010 Jun;28(3):289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19916010

10. Hemal AK, Kumar A, Kumar R, et al. Laparoscopic versus open radical nephrectomy for large renal tumors: a long-term prospective comparison. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):862-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296361
11. Portis AJ, Yan Y, Landman J, et al. Long-term followup after laparoscopic radical nephrectomy. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1257-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832709
12. Gabr AH, Gdor Y, Strope SA, et al. Patient and pathologic correlates with perioperative and long-term outcomes of laparoscopic radical nephrectomy. Urology 2009 Sep;74(3):635-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616826
13. Berger A, Brandina R, Atalla MA, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma: oncological outcomes at 10 years or more. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2172-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758651
14. Lane BR, Tiong HY, Campbell SC, et al. Management of the adrenal gland during partial nephrectomy. J Urol 2009;181(6):2430-6: discussion 2436-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19371896
15. Tsui KH, Shvarts O, Barbaric Z, et al. Is adrenalectomy a necessary component of radical nephrectomy? UCLA experience with 511 radical nephrectomies. J Urol 2000;163(2):437-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647649
16. Kobayashi T, Nakamura E, Yamamoto S, et al. Low incidence of ipsilateral adrenal involvement and recurrences in patients with renal cell carcinoma undergoing radical nephrectomy: a retrospective analysis of 393 patients. Urology 2003 Jul;62(1):40-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837419
17. Kuczyk M, Wegener G, Jonas U. The therapeutic value of adrenalectomy in case of solitary metastatic spread originating from primary renal cell cancer. Eur Urol 2005 Aug;48(2):252-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15936136
18. Alamdari FI, Ljungberg B. Adrenal metastasis in renal cell carcinoma: a recommendation for adjustment of the TNM staging system. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2005;39(4):277-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16118103
19. von Knobloch R, Seseke F, Riedmiller H, et al. Radical nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma: is adrenalectomy necessary? Eur Urol 1999 Oct;36(4):303-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10473989
20. Paul R, Mordhorst J, Leyh H, et al. Incidence and outcome of patients with adrenal metastases of renal cell cancer. Urology 2001 May;57(5):878-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11337286
21. von Knobloch R, Schrader AJ, Walthers EM, et al. Simultaneous adrenalectomy during radical nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma will not cure patients with adrenal metastasis. Urology 2009 Feb;73(2):333-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19038420
22. Kuczyk M, Münch T, Machtens S, et al. The need for routine adrenalectomy during surgical treatment for renal cell cancer: the Hannover experience. BJU Int 2002 Apr;89(6):517-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11942955
23. Blom JH, van Poppel H, Maréchal JM, et al; EORTC Genitourinary Tract Cancer Group. Radical nephrectomy with and without lymph-node dissection: final results of European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) randomized phase 3 trial 30881. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):28-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18848382
24. May M, Brookman-Amissah S, Pflanz S, et al. Pre-operative renal arterial embolisation does not provide survival benefit in patients with radical nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma. Br J Radiol 2009 Aug;82(981):724-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19255117
25. Subramanian VS, Stephenson AJ, Goldfarb DA, et al. Utility of preoperative renal artery embolization for management of renal tumors with inferior vena caval thrombi. Urology 2009 Jul:74(1):154-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19428069
26. Baird AD, Woolfenden KA, Desmond AD, et al. Outcome and survival with nonsurgical management of renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2003 May;91:600-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12699467
27. Maxwell NJ, Saleem Amer N, Rogers E, et al. Renal artery embolization in the palliative treatment of renal carcinoma. Br J Radiol 2007 Feb;80(950):96-102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17495058

28. Munro NP, Woodhams S, Nawrocki JD, et al. The role of transarterial embolization in the treatment of renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2003 Aug;92(3):240-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12887475
29. Serafin Z, Karolkiewicz M, Strzesniewski P, et al. Palliative percutaneous kidney embolization with enbucrilate in patients with renal cell carcinoma: safety and symptom control. Med Sci Monit 2007 May;13 Suppl:98-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17507893
30. Hallscheidt P, Besharati S, Noeldge G, et al. Preoperative and palliative embolization of renal cell carcinomas: follow-up of 49 patients. Rofo 2006 Apr;178(4):391-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16612730
31. Lamb GW, Bromwich EJ, Vasey P, et al. Management of renal masses in patients medically unsuitable for nephrectomy–natural history, complications and outcome. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):909-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533476
32. Kickuth R, Waldherr C, Hoppe H, et al. Interventional management of hypervascular osseous metastasis: role of embolotherapy before orthopedic tumor resection and bone stabilization. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2008 Dec;191(6):W240-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19020210
33. Scirmer CM, Malek AM, Kwan ES, et al. Preoperative embolization of hypervascular spinal metastases using percutaneous direct injection with n-butyl cyanoacrylate: technical case report. Neurosurgery 2006 Aug;59(2):E431-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16883157
34. Guzman R, Dubach-Schwizer S, Heini P, et al. Preoperative transarterial embolization of vertebral metastases. Eur Spine J 2005 Apr;14(3):263-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15378414
35. Forauer AR, Kent E, Cwikiel W, et al. Selective palliative transcatheter embolization of bony metastases from renal cell carcinoma. Acta Oncol 2007;46(7):1012-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17851849
36. Martin GL, Castle EP, Martin AD, et al. Outcomes of laparoscopic radical nephrectomy in the setting of vena caval and renal vein thrombus: seven-year experience. J Endourol 2008 Aug;22(8):1681-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18657033
37. Wagner B, Patard JJ, Méjean A, et al. Prognostic value of renal vein and inferior vena cava involvement in renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):452-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18692951
38. Kuczyk M. Clinical outcome of renal cell cancer patients subjected to the simultaneous removal of the primary tumour and an intracaval thrombosis. Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):310. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18219721
39. Kuczyk MA, Münch T, Machtens S, et al. The impact of extracorporal circulation on therapy-related mortality and long-term survival of patients with renal cell cancer and intracaval neoplastic extension. World J Urol 2002 Sep;20(4):227-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12215851
40. Kuczyk MA, Bokemeyer C, Köhn G, et al. Prognostic relevance of intracaval neoplastic extension for patients with renal cell cancer. Br J Urol 1997 Jul;80(1):18-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240174
41. Becker F, Siemer, S, Humke U, et al. Elective nephron-sparing surgery should become standard treatment for small unilateral renal cell carcinoma: long-term survival data of 216 patients. Eur Urol 2006 Feb;49(2):308-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16359779
42. Matin SF, Gill IS, Worley S, et al. Outcome of laparoscopic radical and open partial nephrectomy for the sporadic 4 cm or less renal tumor with a normal contralateral kidney. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1): 1356-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352392
43. Leibovich BC, Blute ML, Cheville JC, et al. Nephron sparing surgery for appropriately selected renal cell carcinoma between 4 and 7 cm results in outcome similar to radical nephrectomy. J Urol 2004 May;171(3):1066-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767272
44. Margulis V, Tamboli P, Jacobsohn KM, et al. Oncological efficacy and safety of nephron-sparing surgery for selected patients with locally advanced renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2007;100(6):1235-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17979923

45. Simmons MN, Weight CJ, Gill IS. Laparoscopic radical versus partial nephrectomy for tumors >4 cm: intermediate-term oncologic and functional outcomes. Urology 2009 May;73(5):1077-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394509
46. Patard JJ, Shvarts O, Lam JS, et al. Safety and efficacy of partial nephrectomy for all T1 tumors based on an international multicenter experience. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2181-5, quiz 2435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126781
47. Thompson RH, Siddiqui S, Lohse CM, et al. Partial versus radical nephrectomy for 4 to 7 cm renal cortical tumors. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2601-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19836797
48. Van Poppel H, Da Pozzo L, Albrecht W, et al; European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC); National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group (NCIC CTG); Southwest Oncology Group (SWOG); Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG). A prospective randomized EORTC intergroup phase 3 study comparing the complications of elective nephron-sparing surgery and radical nephrectomy for low-stage renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2007 Jun 51(6):1606-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17140723
49. Thompson RH, Frank I, Lohse CM, et al. The impact of ischemia time during open nephron sparing surgery on solitary kidneys: a multi-institutional study. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2):471-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222613
50. Pasticier G, Timsit MO, Badet L, et al. Nephron-sparing surgery for renal cell carcinoma: detailed analysis of complications over a 15-year period. Eur Urol 2006 Mar;49(3):485-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16443321
51. Lane BR, Novick AC, Babineau D, et al. Comparison of laparoscopic and open partial nephrectomy for tumor in a solitary kidney. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):847-51; discussion 852. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18221958
52. McKiernan J, Simmons R, Katz J, et al. Natural history of chronic renal insufficiency after partial and radical nephrectomy. Urology 2002 Jun;59(6):816-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12031359
53. Thompson RH, Boorjian SA, Lohse CM, et al. Radical nephrectomy for pT1a renal masses may be associated with decreased overall survival compared with partial nephrectomy. J Urol 2008 Feb;179(2):468-71; discussion 472-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18076931
54. Huang WC, Elkin EB, Levey AS, et al. Partial nephrectomy versus radical nephrectomy in patients with small renal tumors–is there a difference in mortality and cardiovascular outcomes? J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):55-61; discussion 61-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012918
55. Miller DC, Schonlau M, Litwin MS, et al. Urologic Diseases in America Project. Renal and cardiovascular morbidity after partial or radical nephrectomy. Cancer 2008 Feb 1;112(3):511-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18072263
56. Bensalah K, Pantuck AJ, Rioux-Leclercq N, et al. Positive surgical margin appears to have negligible impact on survival of renal cell carcinomas treated by nephron-sparing surgery. Eur Urol 2010 Mar;57(3):466-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19359089
57. Yossepowitch O, Thompson RH, Leibovich BC, et al. Positive surgical margins at partial nephrectomy: predictors and oncological outcomes. J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2158-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423758
58. Sutherland SE, Resnick MI, Maclennan GT, et al. Does the size of the surgical margin in partial nephrectomy for renal cell cancer really matter? J Urol 2002 Jan;167(1):61-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743276
59. Rosoff JS, Raman JD, Sosa RE, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy for renal masses 7 centimeters or larger. JSLS 2009 Apr-Jun;13(2):148-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19660207
60. Srivastava A, Gupta M, Singh P, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy: a journey from T1 to very large T2 tumors. Urol Int 2009;82(3):330-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19440023
61. Chung SD, Huang KH, Lai MK, et al. Long-term follow-up of hand-assisted laparoscopic radical nephrectomy for organ-confined renal cell carcinoma. Urology 2007 Apr;69:652-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445645

62. Hemal AK, Kumar A, Gupta NP, et al. Oncologic outcome of 132 cases of laparoscopic radical nephrectomy with intact specimen removal for T1-2N0M0 renal cell carcinoma. World J Urol 2007 Dec;25:619-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17786453
63. Burgess NA, Koo BC, Calvert RC, et al. Randomized trial of laparoscopic v open nephrectomy. J Endourol 2007 Jun;21:610-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17638555
64. Nambirajan T, Jeschke S, Al-Zahrani H, et al. Prospective randomized controlled study: transperitoneal laparoscopic versus retroperitoneoscopic radical nephrectomy. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):919-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533478
65. Permpongkosol S, Chan DY, Link RE, et al. Long-term survival analysis after laparoscopic radical nephrectomy. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1222-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145374
66. Wille AH, Roigas J, Deger S, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy: techniques, results and oncological outcome in 125 consecutive cases. Eur Urol 2004 Apr;45(4):483-8; discussion 488-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15041113
67. Portis AJ, Yan Y, Landman J, et al. Long-term follow-up after laparoscopic radical nephrectomy. J Urol 2002;167(3):1257-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832709
68. Jiang J, Zheng X, Qin J, et al. Health related quality of life after hand-assisted laparoscopic and open radical nephrectomise of renal cell carcinoma. Int J Nephrol 2009;41(1):23-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18633726
69. Gettman MT, Napper C, Corwin TS, et al. Laparoscopic radical nephrectomy: prospective assessment of impact of intact versus fragmental removal on postoperative quality of life. J Endourol 2002 Feb;16(1):23-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890445
70. Lifshitz DA, Shikanov S, Jeldres C, et al. Laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: predictors of prolonged warm ischemia. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):860-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616257
71. Godoy G, Ramanathan V, Kanofsky JA, et al. Effect of warm ischemia time during laparoscopic partial nephrectomy on early postoperative glomerular filtration rate. J Urol 2009 Jun;181(6):2438-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19371905
72. Lane BR, Babineau DC, Poggio ED, et al. Factors predicting renal functional outcome after partial nephrectomy. J Urol 2008 Dec;180(6):2363-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18930264
73. Abou Youssif T, Kassouf W, Steinberg J, et al. Active surveillance for selected patients with renal masses: updated results with long-term follow-up. Cancer 2007 Sep 1;110(5):1010-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17628489
74. Gong EM, Orvieto MA, Zorn KC, et al. Comparison of laparoscopic and open partial nephrectomy in clinical T1a renal tumors. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):953-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18363510
75. La Rochelle J, Shuch B, Riggs S, et al. Functional and oncological outcomes of partial nephrectomy of solitary kidneys. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):2037-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19298974
76. Kaouk JH, Goel RK. Single-port laparoscopic and robotic partial nephrectomy. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1163-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19185415
77. Kural AR, Atug F, Tufek I, et al. Robot-assisted partial nephrectomy versus laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: comparison of outcomes. J Endourol 2009 Sep;23(9):1491-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19694519
78. Benway BM, Bhayani SB, Rogers CG, et al. Robot assisted partial nephrectomy versus laparoscopic partial nephrectomy for renal tumors: a multi-institutional analysis of perioperative outcomes. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):866-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616229
79. Michli EE, Parra RO. Robotic-assisted laparoscopic partial nephrectomy: initial clinical experience. Urology 2009 Feb;73(2):302-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19038432

80. Deane LA, Lee HJ, Box GN, et al. Robotic versus standard laparoscopic partial/wedge nephrectomy: a comparison of intraoperative and perioperative results from a single institution. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):947-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18397157
81. Rais-Bahrami S, Guzzo TJ, Jarrett TW, et al. Incidentally discovered renal masses: oncological and perioperative outcomes in patients with delayed surgical intervention. BJU Int 2009 May; 103(10):1355-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19239459
82. Abouassaly R, Lane BR, Novick AC. Active surveillance of renal masses in elderly patients. J Urol 2008 Aug;180(2):505-8; discussion 508-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18550113
83. Hui GC, Tuncali K, Tatli S, et al. Comparison of percutaneous and surgical approaches to renal tumor ablation: metaanalysis of effectiveness and complication rates. J Vasc Interv Radiol 2008 Sep;19(9):1311-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18725094
84. Kunkle DA, Uzzo RG. Cryoablation or radiofrequency ablation of the small renal mass: a meta-analysis. Cancer 2008 Nov;113:2671-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18816624
85. Bird VG, Carey RI, Ayyathurai R, et al. Management of renal masses with laparoscopic-guided radiofrequency ablation versus laparoscopic partial nephrectomy. J Endourol 2009 Jan;23(1):81-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19118475
86. O'Malley RL, Berger AD, Kanofsky JA, et al. A matched-cohort comparison of laparoscopic cryoblation and laparoscopic partial nephrectomy for treating renal masses. BJU Int 2007 Feb;99(2):395-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17092288
87. Hines-Peralta A, Goldberg SN. Review of radiofrequency ablation for renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2004 Sep;10(18 Pt 2):6328S-34S.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15448026
88. Galligioni E, Quaia M, Merlo A, et al. Adjuvant immunotherapy treatment of renal carcinoma patients with autologous tumor cells and bacillus Calmette-Guèrin: five-year results of a prospective randomized study. Cancer 1996 Jun;77(12):2560-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8640706
89. Figlin RA, Thompson JA, Bukowski RM, et al. Multicenter, randomized, phase III trial of CD8(+) tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in combination with recombinant interleukin-2 in metastatic renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 1999 Aug;17(8):2521-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561318
90. Clark JI, Atkins MB, Urba WJ, et al. Adjuvant high-dose bolus interleukin-2 for patients with high-risk renal cell carcinoma: a cytokine working group randomized trial. J Clin Oncol 2003 Aug;21(16): 3133-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12810695
91. Atzpodien J, Schmitt E, Gertenbach U, et al; German Cooperative Renal Carcinoma Chemo-Immunotherapy Trials Group (DGCIN). Adjuvant treatment with interleukin-2- and interferonalpha2a-based chemoimmunotherapy in renal cell carcinoma post tumour nephrectomy: results of a prospectively randomised trial of the German Cooperative Renal Carcinoma Chemoimmunotherapy Group (DGCIN). Br J Cancer 2005 Mar;92(5):843-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15756254
92. Jocham D, Richter A, Hoffmann L, et al. Adjuvant autologous renal tumour cell vaccine and risk of tumour progression in patients with renal-cell carcinoma after radical nephrectomy: phase III, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 2004 Feb;363(9409):594-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14987883
93. Flanigan RC, Mickisch G, Sylvester R, et al. Cytoreductive nephrectomy in patients with metastatic renal cancer: a combined analysis. J Urol 2004 Mar;171(3):1071-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767273
94. Ljungberg B, Landberg G, Alamdari FI. Factors of importance for prediction of survival in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma, treated with or without nephrectomy. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2000 Aug;34(4):246-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11095082
95. Pongracz N, Zimmerman R, Kotz R. Orthopaedic management of bony metastases of renal cancer. Semin Surg Oncol 1988;4(2):139-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3393777

96. Tongaonkar HB, Kulkarni JN, Kamat MR. Solitary metastases from renal cell carcinoma: a review. J Surg Oncol 1992 Jan;49(1):45-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1548881
97. van der Poel HG, Roukema JA, Horenblas S, et al. Metastasectomy in renal cell carcinoma: A multicenter retrospective analysis. Eur Urol 1999;35(3):197-203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072620
98. Jackson RJ, Loh SC, Gokaslan ZL. Metastatic renal cell carcinoma of the spine: surgical treatment and results. J Neurosurg 2001 Jan;94(1 Suppl):18-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11147860
99. Fossa SD, Kjolseth I, Lund G. Radiotherapy of metastases from renal cancer. Eur Urol 1982;8(6): 340-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6183119
100. Gez E, Libes M, Bar-Deroma R, et al. Postoperative irradiation in localized renal cell carcinoma: the Rambam Medical Center experience. Tumori 2002 Nov-Dec;88(6):500-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12597146
101. Andrews DW, Scott CB, Sperduto PW, et al. Whole brain radiation therapy with or without stereotactic radiosurgery boost for patients with one to three brain metastases: phase III results of the RTOG 9508 randomised trial. Lancet 2004 May;363(9422):1665-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15158627

7. SYSTEMIC THERAPY FOR METASTATIC RCC

7.1 Chemotherapy

Since RCCs develop from the proximal tubules, they have high levels of expression of the multiple-drug resistance protein, P-glycoprotein, and are therefore resistant to most chemotherapies. Chemotherapy seems to be moderately effective only if 5-fluorouracil (5FU) is combined with immunotherapeutic agents (1).

*7.1.1 **Conclusion***

Only 5FU in combination with immunotherapy seems to be effective in patients with mRCC (LE: 3).

Recommendation

	GR
Chemotherapy as monotherapy should not be considered effective in patients with mRCC.	B

7.2 Immunotherapy

*7.2.1 **Interferon-alpha monotherapy and combined with bevacizumab***

In randomised studies, IFN-alpha has proven superiority for survival over hormonal therapy in patients with mRCC (2). Interferon-alpha provided a response rate of 6-15%, together with a 25% decrease in the risk for tumour progression and a modest survival benefit of 3-5 months compared with a placebo-equivalent (3,4). The positive effect of IFN-alpha is particularly important in mRCC patients with clear-cell histology, good-risk Motzer criteria and lung metastases only (4). In a prospective randomised study, IFN-alpha showed equivalence in efficacy to the combination IFN-alpha + IL2 + 5FU (5).

A combination of bevacizumab + IFN-alpha recently demonstrated increased response rates and progression-free survival in first-line therapy compared to IFN-alpha monotherapy (6). All recent randomised studies comparing anti-angiogenic drugs in a first-line setting to IFN-alpha monotherapy have demonstrated a superiority for either sunitinib, bevacizumab + IFN-alpha or temsirolimus (6-9).

Table 9: MSKCC (Motzer) criteria to predict survival of patients with advanced RCC; depending on the presence or absence of 5 distinct risk factors (3)

Risk factors[1]	Cut Point Used
Karnofsky performance status	< 80
Time from diagnosis to treatment with IFN-alpha	< 12 months
Hemoglobin	< Lower limit of laboratory's reference range
Lactate dehydrogenase	> 1.5 x the upper limit of laboratory's range
Corrected serum calcium	> 10.0 mg/dL (2.4 mmol/L)

[1]Favourable (low) risk, 0 risk factor; intermediate, 1-2 risk factors; poor (high) risk ≥ 3 risk factors.

7.2.1.1 Conclusions

- Interferon-alpha monotherapy is no longer recommended as first-line therapy for mRCC (LE: 1b).
- Interferon-alpha monotherapy still has a role only in selected cases (good performance status, clear-cell type, lung metastases only) (LE: 2).

*7.2.2 **Interleukin-2***

Interleukin-2 (IL-2) has been used to treat mRCC since 1985 with response rates ranging from 7-27% (9-11).

The optimal IL-2 regimen is not clear, but long-term (> 10 years) complete responders have been achieved with high-dose bolus IL-2 (12). The toxicity of IL-2 is substantially higher than that of IFN-alpha. Only clear cell type RCC responds to immunotherapy. Interleukin-2 has not been validated in controlled randomised studies compared with best supportive care (4).

7.2.2.1 Conclusions

- Interleukin-2 has more side-effects than INF-alpha.
- High-dose IL-2 gives durable complete responders in a limited number of patients.
- Interleukin-2 can be considered as monotherapy in selected patients with a good prognosis profile.

7.2.2.2 Recommendations

	GR
Monotherapy with IFN-alpha or high-dose bolus IL-2 can only be recommended as a first-line treatment for mRCC in selected cases with clear-cell histology and good prognostic factors.	A
Bevacizumab + IFN-alpha is recommended as first-line therapy in low- and intermediate-risk patients. Only selected patients with mRCC, revealing a good risk profile, and clear-cell subtype histology, show clinical benefit from immunotherapy with IL-2.	B
Cytokine combinations, with or without additional chemotherapy, do not improve overall survival compared with monotherapy.	A

7.3 Angiogenesis inhibitor drugs

Recent advances in molecular biology have led to the development of several novel agents for the treatment of mRCC (Table 9).

In sporadic clear cell RCC, HIF accumulation due to von Hippel Landau (VHL) inactivation, results in overexpression of VEGF and PDGF (platelet-derived growth factor), both of which promote neo-angiogenesis (13-15). This process substantially contributes to the development and progression of RCC. At present, several targeting drugs have been approved both in the USA and in Europe for the treatment of mRCC:

- sorafenib (Nexavar®);
- sunitinib (Sutent®);
- bevacizumab (Avastin®) combined with IFN-alpha;
- pazopanib (Votrient®);
- temsirolimus (Torisel®);
- everolimus (Afinitor®).

Several other new agents targeting angiogenesis are under investigation, as well as combinations of these new agents with each other or with cytokines.

*7.3.1 **Sorafenib***

Sorafenib is an oral multikinase inhibitor with activity against Raf-1 serine/threonine kinase, B-Raf, vascular

endothelial growth factor receptor-2 (VEGFR-2), platelet-derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR), FMS-like tyrosine kinase 3 (FLT-3) and c-KIT. A phase III trial compared sorafenib and placebo after failure of a prior systemic immunotherapy or in patients unfit for immunotherapy. The trial reported a 3-month improvement in progression-free survival in favour of sorafenib (16). Survival seems to improve in patients crossed over from placebo to sorafenib treatment (17).

7.3.2 ***Sunitinib***

Sunitinib is an oxindol tyrosine kinase (TK) inhibitor. It selectively inhibits PDGFR, VEGFR, c-KIT and FLT-3 and has anti-tumour and anti-angiogenic activity. Phase II trials with sunitinib as second-line monotherapy in patients with mRCC demonstrated a partial response rate in 34-40% of patients and stable disease > 3 months in 27-29% of patients (18).

In a recent phase III trial of first-line monotherapy comparing treatment with sunitinib versus IFN-alpha, sunitinib achieved a longer progression-free survival than IFN-alpha (11 versus 5 months, $p < 0.000001$). Results suggested monotherapy with IFN-alpha was inferior compared to sunitinib in low- and intermediate-risk patients with mRCC (19). Overall survival was 26.4 and 21.8 months in the sunitinib and IFN-alpha arms, respectively ($p = 0.05$) (19). In patients crossed over from IFN-alpha to sunitinib ($n = 25$), median survival times were 26.4 versus 20.0 months for sunitinib and IFN-alpha, respectively ($p = 0.03$). In patients who did not receive any post-study treatment, the median overall survival reached 28.1 months in the sunitinib group versus 14.1 months in the IFN-alpha group ($p = 0.003$).

7.3.3 ***Bevacizumab monotherapy and combined with interferon-alpha***

Bevacizumab is a humanised monoclonal antibody that binds isoforms of VEGF-A. Bevacizumab, 10 mg/kg every 2 weeks, in patients refractory to immunotherapy showed an increase in overall response (10%) and in progression-free survival versus placebo (20). A recent double-blind phase III trial ($n = 649$) in mRCC compared bevacizumab + IFN-alpha to IFN-alpha monotherapy (6). The median overall response was 31% in the bevacizumab + IFN-alpha group versus 13% in the IFN-alpha-only group ($p < 0.0001$). Median progression-free survival increased significantly from 5.4 months with IFN-alpha to 10.2 months for bevacizumab + IFN-alpha ($p < 0.0001$), but only in low-risk and intermediate-risk patients. No benefit was seen in high-risk patients. No mature data are yet available on overall survival.

7.3.4 ***Pazopanib***

Pazopanib is an oral angiogenesis inhibitor targeting VEGFR, PDGFR, and c-KIT. In a prospective randomised trial of pazopanib versus placebo in treatment-naïve mRCC patients and cytokine-treated patients, there was a significant improvement in progression-free survival and tumour response (9.2 vs 4.2 months) (20).

7.3.5 ***Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitors***

7.3.5.1 Temsirolimus

Temsirolimus is a specific inhibitor of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) (21). Patients with high-risk mRCC were randomised to receive first-line treatment with temsirolimus or IFN-alpha monotherapy or in combination. In the temsirolimus group, overall survival was 10.9 months versus 7.3 months in the IFN-alpha group ($p < 0.0069$). However, overall survival in the temsirolimus + IFN-alpha group was not significantly improved (8).

7.3.5.2 Everolimus

Everolimus is an oral mTOR inhibitor. A recent phase III study compared everolimus plus best supportive care (BSC) versus placebo plus BSC in patients who had failed previous anti-VEGFR treatment. Median progression-free survival was 4 months with everolimus versus 1.9 months with placebo ($p < 0.001$) (13,22).

Table 10: 2010 EAU evidence-based recommendations for first- and second-line systemic therapy in mRCC

Treatment	Risk or prior treatment	Recommended agent
1st-line therapy	Low- or intermediate-risk	Sunitinib
		Bevacizumab + IFN-alpha
		Pazopanib
	High risk	Temsirolimus
2nd-line therapy	Prior cytokine	Sorafenib
		Pazopanib
	Prior VEGFR	Everolimus
	Prior mTOR(-)	Clinical trials

7.3.6 Conclusions

	LE
Tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) increase progression-free survival and or overall survival as both first- and second-line treatment of mRCC.	1b
Sorafenib has proven efficacy as second-line treatment after failure of cytokine therapy or in patients unfit for cytokines.	1b
Sunitinib is more effective than IFN-alpha in treatment-naïve, low- and intermediate-risk tumours.	1b
The association between bevacizumab and IFN-alpha is more effective than IFN-alpha in treatment-naïve, low- and intermediate-risk tumours.	1b
Pazopanib is superior to placebo in both naïve mRCC patients as post-cytokine patients.	1b
Temsirolimus monotherapy in poor-risk mRCC patients is more effective than IFN-alpha or temsirolimus + IFN-alpha.	1b
Everolimus prolongs progression-free survival in patients who have failed treatment with TKIs.	
The role of the new drugs is still under development and combination studies are ongoing. To date, no data are available indicating the new agents have a curative effect. These agents appear to promise to stabilise mRCC for a prolonged period of time. However, their promise has to be balanced against their toxicity profile and the patient's quality of life.	4

7.3.7 Recommendations for systemic therapy for mRCC

Recommendations	GR
Sunitinib is recommended as first-line therapy in low- and intermediate-risk patients.	A
Bevacizumab + IFN-alpha is recommended as first-line therapy in low- and intermediate-risk patients.	A
Sorafenib is recommended as a second-line treatment for mRCC after cytokine failure.	A
Pazopanib is recommended as first-line and after cytokine failure.	A
Temsirolimus is recommended as first-line treatment in high-risk patients.	A
Everolimus is recommended as second-line treatment after failure of tyrosine kinase inhibitors.	A

7.4 References

1. Stadler WM, Huo D, George C, et al. Prognostic factors for survival with gemcitabine plus 5-fluorouracil based regimens for metastatic renal cancer. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1141-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501711
2. Medical Research Council Renal Cancer Collaborators. Interferon-alpha and survival in metastatic renal carcinoma: early results of a randomised controlled trial. Medical Research Council Renal Cancer Collaborators. Lancet 1999 Jan;353(9146):14-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10023944
3. Motzer RJ, Bacik J, Murphy BA, et al. Interferon-alfa as a comparative treatment for clinical trials of new therapies against advanced renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2002 Jan;20(1):289-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11773181
4. Coppin C, Porzsolt F, Awa A, et al. Immunotherapy for advanced renal cell cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Jan;(1):CD001425. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15674877
5. Gore ME, Griffin CL, Hancock B, et al. Interferon alfa-2a versus combination therapy with interferon alfa-2a, interleukin-2, and fluorouracil in patients with untreated metastatic renal cell carcinoma (MRC RE04/EORTC GU 30012): an open-label randomised trial. Lancet 2010 Feb 20;375(9715):641-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20153039
6. Escudier B, Pluzanska A, Koralewski P, et al; AVOREN Trial investigators. Bevacizumab plus interferon alfa-2a for treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma: a randomised, double-blind phase III trial. Lancet 2007 Dec;370(9605):2103-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18156031
7. Motzer RJ, Hutson TE, Tomczak P, et al. Sunitinib versus interferon alfa in metastatic renal-cell carcinoma. N Engl J Med 2007 Jan;356(2):115-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17215529

8. Hudes G, Carducci M, Tomczak P, et al; Global ARCC Trial. Temsirolimus, interferon alfa, or both for advanced renal-cell carcinoma. N Engl J Med 2007 May;356(22):2271-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17538086
9. Rosenberg SA, Lotze MT, Yang JC, et al. Prospective randomized trial of high-dose interleukin-2 alone or in conjunction with lymphokine-activated killer cells for the treatment of patients with advanced cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1993 Apr;21(85):622-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8468720
10. Fyfe G, Fisher RI, Rosenberg SA, et al. Results of treatment of 255 patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma who received high-dose recombinant interleukin-2 therapy. J Clin Oncol 1995 Mar;13(3):688-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7884429
11. McDermott DF, Regan MM, Clark JI, et al. Randomized phase III trial of high-dose interleukin-2 versus subcutaneous interleukin-2 and interferon in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2005 Jan;23(1):133-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15625368
12. Yang JC, Sherry RM, Steinberg SM, et al. Randomized study of high-dose and low-dose interleukin-2 in patients with metastatic renal cancer. J Clin Oncol 2003 Aug;21(16):3127-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12915604
13. Patel PH, Chadalavada RS, Chaganti RS, et al. Targeting von Hippel-Lindau pathway in renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2006 Dec;12(24):7215-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17189392
14. Yang JC, Haworth L, Sherry RM, et al. A randomized trial of bevacizumab, an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor antibody, for metastatic renal cancer. N Engl J Med 2003 Jul;349(5):427-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12890841
15. Patard JJ, Rioux-Leclercq N, Fergelot P. Understanding the importance of smart drugs in renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2006 Apr;49(4):633-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481093
16. Escudier B, Eisen T, Stadler WM, et al; TARGET Study Group. Sorafenib in advanced clear-cell renal-cell carcinoma. N Engl J Med 2007 Jan;356(2):125-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17215530
17. Bellmunt J, Négrier S, Escudier B, et al. The medical treatment of metastatic renal cell cancer in the elderly: position paper of a SIOG Taskforce. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2009 Jan;69(1):64-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18774306
18. Motzer RJ, Michaelson MD, Redman BG, et al. Activity of SU11248, a multitargeted inhibitor of vascular endothelial growth factor receptor and platelet-derived growth factor receptor, in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jan;24(1):16-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16330672
19. Figlin RA, Hutson TE, Tomczac P, et al. Overall survival with sunitinib versus interferon alfa as first-line treatment in metastatic renal-cell carcinoma. ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings 2008. J Clin Oncol 2008;26(Suppl.):Abstr 5024. http://www.asco.org/ASCO/Abstracts+%26+Virtual+Meeting/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=55&abstractID=32895
20. Sternberg CN, Davis ID, Mardiak J, et al. Pazopanib in locally advanced or metastatic renal cell carcinoma: results of a randomized phase iii trial. J Clin Oncol. 2010 Feb 20;28(6):1061-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20100962
21. Larkin JM, Eisen T. Kinase inhibitors in the treatment of renal cell carcinoma. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2006 Dec;60(3):216-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16860997
22. Motzer RJ, Escudier B, Oudard S, et al; RECORD-1 Study Group. Efficacy of everolimus in advanced renal cell carcinoma: a double-blind, randomised, placebocontrolled phase III trial. Lancet 2008 Aug;372(9637):449-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18653228

8. SURVEILLANCE FOLLOWING RADICAL OR PARTIAL NEPHRECTOMY OR ABLATIVE THERAPIES FOR RCC

8.1 Introduction

Surveillance after treatment for RCC allows the urologist to monitor or identify:

- post-operative complications;
- renal function;
- local recurrence after partial nephrectomy or ablative treatment;
- recurrence in the contralateral kidney;
- development of metastases.

The method and timing of investigation has been the subject of many publications. There is no consensus on surveillance after treatment for RCC and in fact no evidence that early versus later diagnosis of recurrence improves survival. However, follow-up is important to increase our knowledge of RCC and should be performed by the urologist, who should record the time elapsed to recurrence or development of metastasis.

Post-operative complications and renal function are readily assessed by history, physical examination and measurement of serum creatinine and estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR). Repeated long-term monitoring of eGFR is indicated if there is impaired renal function before surgery or a post-operative deterioration. Renal function (1,2) and non-cancer survival (3-5) can be optimised by performing nephron-sparing surgery whenever possible for T1 and T2 tumours (6) (LE: 3). Tumour-bed recurrence is rare (2.9%), but early diagnosis is useful because the most effective treatment is cytoreductive surgery (7,8). Recurrence in the contralateral kidney is also rare (1.2%) and is related to positive margins, multifocality and grade (9) (LE: 3).

The reason for surveillance is to identify local recurrence or metastases early. This is particularly important with ablative therapies, such as cryotherapy and RFA. Even though the local recurrence rate is higher than conventional surgery, the patient may still be cured by repeat ablative therapy or radical nephrectomy (10) (LE: 3). In metastatic disease, more extended tumour growth can reduce the possibility of surgical resection, which is considered the standard therapy in cases of resectable and preferably solitary lesions. In addition, within clinical trials, an early diagnosis of tumour recurrence may enhance the efficacy of a systemic treatment if the tumour burden is low.

8.2 Which investigations for which patients, and when?

Intensive radiological surveillance for all patients is unnecessary. For example, the outcome after surgery for T1a, low-grade, tumours is almost always excellent. It is therefore reasonable to stratify follow-up, taking into account the risk of a recurrence or metastases developing. Although no randomised evidence exists, there are large studies examining prognostic factors with long follow-up from which some conclusions can be drawn (11-13) (LE: 4).

- When the likelihood of relapse is low, chest x-ray and ultrasound may be appropriate. However, the sensitivity of chest x-ray for small metastases is poor and ultrasound has limitations.
- When the risk of relapse is intermediate or high, CT of the chest and abdomen is the investigation of choice, though the significant morbidity of radiation dose with repeated CT scans should be taken into account (14).

Depending on the availability of new effective treatments, more strict follow-up schedules may be required, particularly as there is a higher local recurrence rate after cryotherapy and RFA. There is controversy over the optimal duration of follow-up. Some argue that follow-up by imaging is not cost-effective after 5 years; however, late metastases are more likely to be solitary and justify more aggressive therapy with curative intent. In addition, patients with tumours that develop in the contralateral kidney can be treated with nephron-sparing surgery if detected when small. Furthermore, for tumours < 4 cm, there is no difference between partial or radical nephrectomy in recurrence during follow-up (15) (LE: 3).

Several authors, notably Kattan, Liebovich, UCLA, and Karakiewicz (16-19), have designed scoring systems and nomograms to quantify the likelihood of patients developing tumour recurrence, metastases, and subsequent death. These systems have been compared and validated (20) (LE: 2). Using prognostic variables, several stage-based surveillance regimes have been proposed (21,22), but these do not include ablative therapies. A post-operative nomogram is available to give the likelihood of freedom from recurrence at 5 years (23). Most recently, a pre-operative prognostic model based on age, symptoms, and TNM staging has been published and validated (24) (LE: 3). There is therefore a need for a surveillance algorithm to monitor patients

after treatment for RCC, recognising not only the patient risk profile, but also the efficacy of the treatment given (Table 11).

Table 11: Proposed algorithm for surveillance following treatment for RCC taking into account patient risk profile and treatment efficacy

Risk profile	Treatment	Surveillance						
		6 months	1 year	2 years	3 years	4 years	5 year	After 5 years
Low	RN/PN only	CXR and US	CXR and US	CXR and US	CXR and US	CXR and US	CXR and US	Discharge
Intermediate	RN/PN/cryo/ RFA	CT	CXR and US	CT	CXR and US	CXR and US	CT	Yearly CXR and US
High	RN/PN/cryo/ RFA	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	CT	CXR/CT alternate years

RN = radical nephrectomy; PN = partial nephrectomy; CXR = chest x-ray; US = ultrasound of kidneys and renal bed; CT = computed tomography of chest and abdomen; cyro = cryotherapy; RFA = radiofrequency ablation.

8.3 Conclusions

Surveillance after treatment for RCC should be based on a patient's risk factors and the type of treatment delivered. The aim of surveillance is to detect either local recurrence or metastatic disease while the patient is still surgically curable.

- For low-risk disease, the use of CT can be infrequent (LE: 4).
- In the intermediate-risk group, an intensified follow-up that includes CT scans at regular time intervals should be performed according to a risk-stratified nomogram (LE: 4).
- In high-risk patients, the follow-up examinations should include routine CT scans (LE: 4).

8.4 Recommendation

	GR
The intensity of the follow-up programme for an individual patient should be adapted according to the risk of tumour recurrence and the type of treatment.	C

8.5 References

1. Pettus JA, Jang TL, Thompson RH, et al. Effect of baseline glomerular filtration rate on survival in patients undergoing partial or radical nephrectomy for renal cortical tumors. Mayo Clin Proc 2008 Oct;83(10):1101-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18828969
2. Snow DC, Bhayani SB. Rapid communication: chronic renal insufficiency after laparoscopic partial nephrectomy and radical nephrectomy for pathologic T1A lesions. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):337-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18257672
3. Thompson RH, Boorjian SA, Lohse CM, et al. Radical nephrectomy for pT1a renal masses may be associated with decreased overall survival compared to partial nephrectomy. J Urol 2008 Feb;179(2):468-71; discussion 472-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18076931
4. Huang WC, Elkin EB, Levey AS, et al. Partial nephrectomy versus radical nephrectomy in patients with small renal tumors–is there a difference in mortality and cardiovascular outcomes? J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):55-61; discussion 61-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012918
5. Zini L, Perotte P, Capitanio U, et al. Radical versus partial nephrectomy: effect on overall and noncancer mortality. Cancer 2009 Apr;115(7):1465-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19195042
6. Jeldres C, Patard JJ, Capitano U, et al. Partial versus radical nephrectomy in patients with adverse clinical or pathologic characteristics. Urology 2009 Jun;73(6):1300-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19376568

7. Bruno JJ, Snyder ME, Motzer RJ, et al. Renal cell carcinoma local recurrences, jmpact of surgical treatment and concomitant metastasis on survival. BJU Int 2006 May;97(5):933-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16643473
8. Sandhu SS, Symes A, A'Hern R, et al. Surgical excision of isolated renal-bed recurrence after radical nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95(4):522-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705072
9. Bani-Hani AH, Leibovich BC, Lohse CM, et al. Associations with contralateral recurrence following nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma using a cohort of 2,352 patients. J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2);391-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643178
10. Matin SF, Ahrar K, Cadeddu JA, et al. Residual and recurrent disease following renal energy ablative therapy: a multi-institutional study. J Urol 2006 Nov;176(5):1973-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17070224
11. Lam JS, Shvarts O, Leppert JT, et al. Renal cell carcinoma 2005: new frontiers in staging, prognostication and targeted molecular therapy. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):1853-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879764
12. Capitanio U, Cloutier V, Zini L, et al. A critical assessment of the value of clear cell, papillary and chromophobe histological subtypes in renal cell carcinoma: a population-based study. BJU Int 2009 Jun;103(11):1496-500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19076149
13. Scoll BJ, Wong YN, Egleston BL, et al. Age, tumor size and relative survival of patients with localized renal cell carcinoma: a surveillance, epidemiology and end results analysis. J Urol 2009 Feb;181(2) 506-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19084868
14. Ionising Radiation (Medical Exposures) Regulations 2000. National Radiation Protection Board 2000.
15. Patard JJ, Shvarts O, Lam JS, et al. Safety and efficacy of partial nephrectomy for all T1 tumors based on an international multicenter experience. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2181-5; quiz 2435. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126781
16. Kattan MW, Reuter V, Motzer RJ, et al. A postoperative prognostic nomogram for renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):63-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435824
17. Lam JS, Shvarts O, Leppert JT, et al. Postoperative surveillance protocol for patients with localized and locally advanced renal cell carcinoma based on a validated prognosticated nomogram and risk group stratification system. J Urol 2005 Aug;174(2):466-72; discussion 472; quiz 801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006866
18. Leibovich BC, Blute ML, Cheville JC, et al. Prediction of progression after radical nephrectomy for patients with clear cell renal cell carcinoma: a stratification tool for prospective clinical trials. Cancer 2003 Apr;97(7):1663-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12655523
19. Karakiewicz PI, Briganti A, Chun FK, et al. Multi-institutional validation of a new renal cancer-specific survival nomogram. J Clin Oncol 2007 Apr;25(11):1316-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17416852
20. Cindolo L, Patard JJ, Chiodini P, et al. Comparison of predictive accuracy of four prognostic models for nonmetastatic renal cell carcinoma after nephrectomy: a multicenter European study. Cancer 2005 Oct;104(7):1362-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16116599
21. Skolarikos A, Alivizatos G, Laguna P, et al. A review on follow-up strategies for renal cell carcinoma after nephrectomy. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1490-500; discussion 1501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17229521
22. Chin AI, Lam JS, Figlin RA, et al. Surveillance strategies for renal cell carcinoma patients following nephrectomy. Rev Urol 2006 Winter;8(1):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16985554
23. Sorbellini M, Kattan MW, Snyder ME, et al. A postoperative nomogram predicting recurrence for patients with conventional clear cell renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 2005 Jan;173(1):48-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592023
24. Karakiewicz PI, Suardi N, Capitano U, et al. A preoperative prognostic model for patients treated with nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2);287-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18715700

9. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

ACKD	acquired cystic kidney disease
AML	Angiomyolipoma
5FU	5-fluorouracil
BSC	best supportive care
CaIX	carbonic anhydrase IX
cRCC	clear cell renal carcinoma
chRCC	chromophobe renal cell carcinoma
CT	computed tomography
eGFR	estimated glomerular filtration rate
ESKD	end-stage kidney disease
FLT-3	FMS-like tyrosine kinase 3
GR	grade of recommendation
HIF	hypoxia inducible factor
HIFU	high-intensity focused ultrasound
HU	Hounsfield unit
IFN-alpha	interferon-alpha
IL-2	interleukin-2
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LE	level of evidence
MESTK	mixed epithelial and stromal tumour of the kidney
mRCC	metastatic renal cell carcinoma
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
mTOR	mammalian target of rapamycin
NSS	nephron-sparing surgery
PA	predictive accuracy
pRCC	papillary renal cell carcinoma
RCC	renal cell carcinoma
PDGF	platelet-derived growth factor
PDGFR	platelet-derived growth factor receptor
PET	positron emission tomography
PTEN	phosphatase and tensin homolog
REST	Renal epithelial and stromal tumours
RFA	radiofrequency ablation
SAE	selective arterial embolisation
TFE3	transcription factor E3
TK	tyrosine kinase
TKI	Tyrosine kinase inhibitors
TNM	Tumour Node Metastasis
US	abdominal ultrasound
VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor
VEGFR	vascular endothelial growth factor receptor
VHL	von Hippel-Lindau
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest

All members of the Renal Cell Carcinoma Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Testicular Cancer

P. Albers (chairman), W. Albrecht, F. Algaba,
C. Bokemeyer, G. Cohn-Cedermark, K. Fizazi,
A. Horwich, M.P. Laguna

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. BACKGROUND

Testicular cancer represents between 1% and 1.5% of male neoplasms and 5% of urological tumours in general, with 3-10 new cases occurring per 100,000 males/per year in Western society (1-3). An increase in the incidence of testicular cancer was detected during the 1970s and 1980s, particularly in Northern European countries, and there is a clear trend towards an increased testicular cancer incidence in the last 30 years in the majority of the industrialised countries in North America, Europe and Oceania, although surprising differences in incidence rates are seen between neighbouring countries (4,5). Data from the Surveillance Epidemiology and End Results Program during the years 1973 to 1998 show a continuing increased risk among Caucasian men in the USA only for seminoma (6).

Only 1-2% of cases are bilateral at diagnosis. The histological type varies, although there is a clear predominance (90-95%) of germ cell tumours (1). Peak incidence is in the third decade of life for nonseminoma, and in the fourth decade for pure seminoma. Familial clustering has been observed, particularly among siblings (7).

Genetic changes have been described in patients with testicular cancer. A specific genetic marker (an isochromosome of the short arm of chromosome 12 – i(12p) – has been described in all histological types of germ cell tumours (7). Intratubular germ cell neoplasia (testicular intraepithelial neoplasia, Tin) shows the same chromosomal changes, and alterations in the p53 locus have been found in 66% of cases of testicular Tin (8).

A deregulation in the pluripotent programme of fetal germ cells (identified by specific markers such as M2A, C-KIT and OCT4/NANOG) is probably responsible for the development of Tin and germ cell neoplasia. There is overlap in the development to seminoma and embryonal carcinoma as shown by genome-wide expression analysis and detection of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) mRNA in some atypical seminoma (9,10). Continued genome wide screening studies and gene expression analysis data suggest testis cancer specific gene mutations on chromosomes 4, 5, 6 and 12 (namely expressing SPRY4, kit-Ligand and Synaptopodin) (11-13).

Epidemiological risk factors for the development of testicular tumours are: a history of cryptorchidism or undescended testis (testicular dysgenesis syndrome), Klinefelter's syndrome, familial history of testicular tumours among first-grade relatives (father/brothers), the presence of a contralateral tumour or Tin, and infertility (14-20). Tallness was associated with a risk of germ cell cancer, although further confirmation is needed (21,22).

Testicular tumours show excellent cure rates. The main factors contributing to this are: careful staging at the time of diagnosis; adequate early treatment based on chemotherapeutic combinations, with or without radiotherapy and surgery; and very strict follow-up and salvage therapies. In the past decades, a decrease in the mean time delay to diagnosis and treatment has been observed (23). In the treatment of testicular cancer, the choice of centre where this treatment is going to be administered is of utmost importance. Although early stages can be successfully treated in a non-reference centre, the relapse rate is higher (24). In poor prognosis non-seminomatous germ cell tumours, it has been shown that overall survival within a clinical trial depended on the number of patients treated at the participating centre (worse < 5 patients enrolled) (25). In the same context, the frequency of post-chemotherapy residual tumour resection is associated with perioperative mortality and overall survival (26,27).

1.1 Methodology

A multidisciplinary team of urologists, medical oncologists, radiotherapists and a pathologist were involved in producing this text, which is based on a structured review of the literature from January 2008 until December 2010 for both the germ cell tumour and non-germ cell sections. Also, data from meta-analysis studies, Cochrane evidence, and the recommendations of the European Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group Meeting in Amsterdam in November 2006 have been included (28-31). A validation scoping search with a focus on the available level 1 (systematic reviews and meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials [RCTs]) data was carried out in Medline and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform, covering a time frame of 2009 through September 2010. The searches used the controlled terminology of the respective databases. Both MesH and EMTREE were analysed for relevant terms.

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (LE) (Table 1), and guideline recommendations have been graded (GR) (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (32). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

* *Modified from Sackett et al. (32).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence – although a very important factor – has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (33-35).

The EAU Guidelines Office do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (32).*

Publication history

The content of these guidelines has not changed respect to the previous version, but for assessing the currency of the references used; replacing old references by more recent publications. This resulted in the inclusion of 5 new references. No changes in the recommendations were made. The European Association of Urology (EAU) published a first guideline on Testicular Cancer in 2001 with limited updates achieved in 2002, 2004, a major update in 2005, followed by limited updates in 2008, 2009 and 2010. Review papers have been published in the society scientific journal European Urology, the latest version dating to 2011 (36). Since 2008, the edition contains a separate chapter on testicular stromal tumours.

A quick reference document presenting the main findings of the Testicular Cancer guidelines is also available, following the large text updates. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

For 2013, a revised version is scheduled which will address the findings of the Third European Consensus Conference on the Diagnosis and treatment of Germ Cell Cancer.

2. PATHOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION

The recommended pathological classification (modified from the 2004 version of the World Health Organization [WHO] guidance) is shown below (37).

1. Germ cell tumours
- Intratubular germ cell neoplasia, unclassified type (IGCNU)
- Seminoma (including cases with syncytiotrophoblastic cells)
- Spermatocytic seminoma (mention if there is sarcomatous component)
- Embryonal carcinoma
- Yolk sac tumour
- Choriocarcinoma
- Teratoma (mature, immature, with malignant component)
- Tumours with more than one histological type (specify percentage of individual components).

2. Sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours
- Leydig cell tumour
- Malignant Leydig cell tumour
- Sertoli cell tumour
  - lipid-rich variant
  - sclerosing
  - large cell calcifying
- Malignant Sertoli cell tumour
- Granulosa cell tumour
  - adult type
  - juvenile type
- Thecoma/fibroma group of tumours
- Other sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours
  - incompletely differentiated
  - mixed
- Tumours containing germ cell and sex cord/gonadal stromal (gonadoblastoma).

3. Miscellaneous non-specific stromal tumours
- Ovarian epithelial tumours
- Tumours of the collecting ducts and rete testis
- Tumours (benign and malignant) of non-specific stroma.

3. DIAGNOSIS

3.1 Clinical examination

Testicular cancer generally affects young men in the third or fourth decade of life. It normally appears as a painless, unilateral mass in the scrotum or the casual finding of an intrascrotal mass (38). In approximately 20% of cases, the first symptom is scrotal pain, and up to 27% of patients with testicular cancer may have local pain (1).

Occasionally, trauma to the scrotum may reveal the presence of a testicular mass. Gynaecomastia appears in 7% of cases and is more common in non-seminomatous tumours. Back and flank pain are present in about 11% of cases (1).

In about 10% of cases, a testicular tumour can mimic an orchioepididymitis, with consequent delay of the correct diagnosis (1,2). Ultrasound must be performed in any doubtful case. Physical examination reveals the features of the mass and must always be carried out in conjunction with a general examination in order to find possible (supraclavicular) distant metastases, a palpable abdominal mass or gynaecomastia. A correct diagnosis must be established in all patients with an intrascrotal mass (39).

3.2 Imaging of the testis

Currently, diagnostic ultrasound serves to confirm the presence of a testicular mass and to explore the contralateral testis. Its sensitivity in detecting a testicular tumour is almost 100%, and it has an important role in determining whether a mass is intra- or extratesticular (40). Ultrasound is an inexpensive test and should be

performed even in the presence of a testicular tumour that is clinically evident (41).

Ultrasound of the testis has to be performed in young men without a palpable testicular mass who have retroperitoneal or visceral masses or elevated serum chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG) or AFP or in men consulting for fertility problems (42-44).

Ultrasound may be recommended in the follow up of patients at risk (45), when other risk factors than microlithiasis are present (e.g. size < 12 ml or athrophy, inhomogeneous parenchyma). The solely presence of microlithiasis is not an indication for a regular scrotal ultrasound (46).

In the absence of other risk factors (< 12 ml (atrophy), maldescent testis), testicular microlithiasis is not an indication for biopsy or further (ultrasound) screening (45,47).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) offers higher sensitivity and specificity than ultrasound for diagnosing tumours (40,48). MRI of the scrotum offers a sensitivity of 100% and a specificity of 95-100% (49), but its high cost does not justify its use for diagnosis.

3.3 Serum tumour markers at diagnosis

Serum tumour markers are prognostic factors and contribute to diagnosis and staging (50). The following markers should be determined:

- AFP (produced by yolk sac cells);
- hCG (expression of trophoblasts);
- LDH (lactate dehydrogenase).

In all tumours, there is an increase in these markers in 51% of cases of testicular cancer (23,38). Alphafetoprotein increases in 50-70% of patients with non-seminomatous germ cell tumour (NSGCT), and a rise in hCG is seen in 40-60% of patients with NSGCT. About 90% of non-seminomatous tumours present with a rise in one or two of the markers. Up to 30% of seminomas can present or develop an elevated hCG level during the course of the disease (51,52).

Lactate dehydrogenase is a less specific marker, and its concentration is proportional to tumour volume. Its level may be elevated in 80% of patients with advanced testicular cancer (51). It should be noted that negative marker levels do not exclude the diagnosis of a germ cell tumour. Other markers studied include placental alkaline phosphatase (PLAP), which may be of value in monitoring patients with pure seminoma. Cytogenetic and molecular markers are available in specific centres, but at present only contribute to research studies. Measurement of serum AFP, hCG and LDH is mandatory, while that of PLAP is optional.

3.4 Inguinal exploration and orchidectomy

Every patient with a suspected testicular mass must undergo inguinal exploration with exteriorisation of the testis within its tunics. Orchidectomy with division of the spermatic cord at the internal inguinal ring must be performed if a malignant tumour is found. If the diagnosis is not clear, a testicular biopsy (an enucleation of the intraparenchymal tumour) is taken for frozen (fresh tissue) section histological examination.

In cases of disseminated disease and life-threatening metastases, it is current practice to start with up-front chemotherapy, and orchidectomy may be delayed until clinical stabilisation has occurred.

3.5 Organ-sparing surgery

Although organ-sparing surgery is not indicated in the presence of non-tumoural contralateral testis, it can be attempted in special cases with all the necessary precautions.

In synchronous bilateral testicular tumours, metachronous contralateral tumours, or in a tumour in a solitary testis with normal pre-operative testosterone levels, organ preserving surgery can be performed when the tumour volume is less than 30% of the testicular volume and surgical rules are respected. In those cases, the rate of associated TIN is high (at least up to 82%), and all patients must be treated with adjuvant radiotherapy (16-20 Gy) at some point (53).

Infertility will result after radiotherapy and the risk of long-term Leydig cell insufficiency after radiotherapy of a solitary testis is increased (54). Radiation treatment may be delayed in fertile patients who wish to father children. The option must be carefully discussed with the patient and surgery performed in a centre with experience (55,56).

3.6 Pathological examination of the testis

Mandatory pathological requirements:

- Macroscopic features: side, testis size, maximum tumour size, and macroscopic features of epididymis, spermatic cord, and tunica vaginalis.
- Sampling: a 1 cm^2 section for every centimetre of maximum tumour diameter, including normal macroscopic parenchyma (if present), albuginea and epididymis, with selection of suspected areas. At least one proximal and one distal section of spermatic cord plus any suspected area.
- Microscopic features and diagnosis: histological type (specify individual components and estimate amount as percentage) according to WHO 2004 (37):
  - presence or absence of peri-tumoural venous and/or lymphatic invasion;
  - presence or absence of albuginea, tunica vaginalis, rete testis, epididymis or spermatic cord invasion;
  - presence or absence of intratubular germ cell neoplasia (TIN) in non-tumour parenchyma intratubular germ cell neoplasia.
- pT category according to Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) 2009 (57).
- Immunohistochemical studies: in seminoma and mixed germ cell tumour, AFP and hCG.

Advisable immunohistochemical markers, in cases of doubt, are:

- in seminoma: cytokeratins (CAM 5.2), PLAP, c-kit;
- in intratubular germ cell neoplasia: PLAP, c-kit;
- other advisable markers: chromogranine A (Cg A), Ki-1 (MIB-1).

3.7 Diagnosis and treatment of testicular intraepithelial neoplasia (TIN)

Contralateral biopsy has been advocated to rule out the presence of TIN (58). Although this is routine policy in some countries, the low incidence of TIN and contralateral metachronous testicular tumours (up to 9% and approximately 2.5%, respectively) (59,60), the morbidity of TIN treatment, and the fact that most of these metachronous tumours are at a low stage at presentation make it controversial to recommend a systematic contralateral biopsy in all patients (61-63). It is still difficult to reach a consensus on whether the existence of contralateral TIN must be identified in all cases. However, biopsy of the contralateral testis should be offered to high-risk patients for contralateral TIN with a testicular volume of less than 12 mL, a history of cryptorchidism, or poor spermatogenesis (Johnson Score 1-3). A contralateral biopsy is not necessary for patients older than 40 years (64-69). A double biopsy is preferred to increase sensitivity (66).

Once TIN is diagnosed, local radiotherapy (16-20 Gy in fractions of 2 Gy) is the treatment of choice in solitary testis. Because this may produce infertility, the patient must be carefully counselled before treatment commences (61,70). In addition to infertility, Leydig cell function and testosterone production may be impaired long-term following radiotherapy for TIN (55). Radiation treatment may be delayed in fertile patients who wish to father children (66). Patients have to be informed that a testicular tumour may arise in spite of a negative biopsy (71).

If TIN is diagnosed and the contralateral testis is healthy, the options for management are orchidectomy or close observation (with a risk of 50% in 5 years to develop a testicular cancer) (72).

3.8 Screening

Although there are no surveys proving the advantages of screening programmes, it has been demonstrated that stage and prognosis are directly related to early diagnosis. In the presence of clinical risk factors, selfphysical examination by the affected individual is advisable.

4. STAGING

4.1 Diagnostic tools

To determine the presence of metastatic or occult disease, the half-life kinetics of serum tumour markers must be assessed, the nodal pathway must be screened, and the presence of visceral metastases ruled out. Consequently, it is mandatory to assess:

- the post-orchidectomy half-life kinetics of serum tumour markers;
- the status of retroperitoneal and supraclavicular lymph nodes, and the liver;
- the presence or absence of mediastinal nodal involvement and lung metastases;
- the status of brain and bone, if any suspicious symptoms are present.

The mandatory tests are:

- serial blood sampling;
- abdominopelvic and thoracic computed tomography (CT) scan.

4.2 Serum tumour markers: post-orchidectomy half-life kinetics

The mean serum half-life of AFP and hCG is 5-7 days and 2-3 days, respectively (51). Tumour markers have to be re-evaluated after orchidectomy to determine half-life kinetics. Marker decline in patients with clinical stage I disease should be assessed until normalisation has occurred. Markers before start of chemotherapy are important to classify the patient according to the International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group (IGCCCG) risk classification. The persistence of elevated serum tumour markers after orchidectomy might indicate the presence of metastatic disease (macro- or microscopically), while the normalisation of marker levels after orchidectomy does not rule out the presence of tumour metastases. During chemotherapy, the markers should decline; persistence has an adverse prognostic value.

4.3 Retroperitoneal, mediastinal and supraclavicular lymph nodes and viscera

Retroperitoneal and mediastinal lymph nodes are best assessed by means of a CT scan. The supraclavicular nodes are best assessed by physical examination.

Abdominopelvic CT scanning offers a sensitivity of 70-80% in determining the state of the retroperitoneal nodes. Its accuracy depends on the size of the nodes; sensitivity and the negative predictive value increase using a 3 mm threshold to define metastatic nodes in the landing zones (69). Those figures decrease slightly in stages I and II (70,73), with a rate of understaging of 25-30% (74). New generations of CT scans do not seem to improve the sensitivity.

Magnetic resonance imaging produces similar results to CT scanning in the detection of retroperitoneal nodal enlargement (75,76). Again, the main objections to its routine use are its high cost and limited access to it. Nevertheless, MRI can be helpful when abdominopelvic CT or ultrasound are inconclusive (75), when CT scan is contraindicated because of allergy to contrast media, or when the physician or the patient are concerned about radiation dose. MRI is an optional test, and there are currently no indications for its systematic use in the staging of testicular cancer.

A chest CT scan is the most sensitive way to evaluate the thorax and mediastinal nodes. This exploration has to be recommended in all patients with testicular cancer because up to 10% of cases can present with small subpleural nodes that are not visible radiologically (77). The CT scan has high sensitivity but low specificity (75).

There is no evidence to support the use of the fluorodeoxyglucose-PET (FDG-PET) scan in the staging of testis cancer (78,79). It is recommended in the follow-up of patients with seminoma with any residual mass at least 6 weeks after chemotherapy in order to decide on watchful waiting or active treatment (80-83). fluorodeoxyglucose-PET, however, is not recommended in the re-staging of patients with non-seminomatous tumours after chemotherapy (84,85).

Other examinations, such as brain or spinal CT, bone scan or liver ultrasound, should be performed if there is suspicion of metastases to these organs. A CT or MRI scan of the skull is advisable in patients with NSGCT and multiple lung metastasis and poor prognosis IGCCG risk group. Table 3 shows the recommended test at staging.

Table 3: Recommended tests for staging at diagnosis

Test	Recommendation	GR
Serum tumour markers	Alpha-fetoprotein hCG LDH	A
Abdominopelvic CT scan	All patients	A
Chest CT scan	All patients	A
Testis ultrasound (bilateral)	All patients	A
Bone scan	In case of symptoms	
Brain scan (CT/MRI)	In case of symptoms and patients with metastatic disease with multiple lung metastases and high beta-hCG values	

Further investigations	
Fertility investigations: Total testosterone LH FSH Semen analysis	B
Sperm banking should be offered	A

hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase; CT = computed tomography; LH = luteinising hormone; FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone.

4.4 Staging and prognostic classifications

The staging system recommended in these guidelines is the 2009 TNM of the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) (Table 4) (57). This includes:

- determination of the anatomical extent of disease;
- assessment of serum tumour markers, including nadir values of hCG, AFP and LDH after orchidectomy (S category);
- clear definition of regional nodes;
- some N-category modifications related to node size.

Table 4: TNM classification for testicular cancer (UICC, 2009, 7th edn [57])

pT	**Primary tumour[1]**	
	pTX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed (see note 1)
	pT0	No evidence of primary tumour (e.g. histological scar in testis)
	pTis	Intratubular germ cell neoplasia (testicular intraepithelial neoplasia)
	pT1	Tumour limited to testis and epididymis without vascular/lymphatic invasion: tumour may invade tunica albuginea but not tunica vaginalis
	pT2	Tumour limited to testis and epididymis with vascular/lymphatic invasion, or tumour extending through tunica albuginea with involvement of tunica vaginalis
	pT3	Tumour invades spermatic cord with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion
	pT4	Tumour invades scrotum with or without vascular/lymphatic invasion
N	**Regional lymph nodes clinical**	
	NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
	N0	No regional lymph node metastasis
	N1	Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension or multiple lymph nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
	N2	Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension, or multiple lymph nodes, any one mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
	N3	Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
pN	**Pathological**	
	pNX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
	pN0	No regional lymph node metastasis
	pN1	Metastasis with a lymph node mass 2 cm or less in greatest dimension and 5 or fewer positive nodes, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
	pN2	Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 2 cm but not more than 5 cm in greatest dimension; or more than 5 nodes positive, none more than 5 cm; or evidence or extranodal extension of tumour
	pN3	Metastasis with a lymph node mass more than 5 cm in greatest dimension
M	**Distant metastasis**	
	MX	Distant metastasis cannot be assessed
	M0	No distant metastasis
	M1	Distant metastasis
	M1a	Non-regional lymph node(s) or lung
	M1b	Other sites
S	**Serum tumour markers**	
	Sx	Serum marker studies not available or not performed
	S0	Serum marker study levels within normal limits

	LDH (U/l)	hCG (mIU/ml)	AFP (ng/ml)
S1	< 1.5 x N and	< 5,000 and	< 1,000
S2	1.5-10 x N or	5,000-50,000 or	1,000-10,000
S3	> 10 x N or	> 50,000 or	> 10,000

N indicates the upper limit of normal for the LDH assay.

LDH, lactate dehydrogenase; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; AFP = alpha-fetoprotein.
[1]Except for pTis and pT4, where radical orchidectomy is not always necessary for classification purposes, the extent of the primary tumour is classified after radical orchidectomy; see pT. In other circumstances, TX is used if no radical orchidectomy has been performed.

According to the 2009 TNM classification, stage I testicular cancer includes the following substages:

Stage grouping

Stage 0	pTis	N0	M0	S0,SX
Stage I	pT1-T4	N0	M0	SX
Stage IA	pT1	N0	M0	S0
Stage IB	pT2 - pT4	N0	M0	S0
Stage IS	Any patient/TX	N0	M0	S1-3
Stage II	Any patient/TX	N1-N3	M0	SX
Stage IIA	Any patient/TX	N1	M0	S0
	Any patient/TX	N1	M0	S1
Stage IIB	Any patient/TX	N2	M0	S0
	Any patient/TX	N2	M0	S1
Stage IIC	Any patient/TX	N3	M0	S0
	Any patient/TX	N3	M0	S1
Stage III	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1a	SX
Stage IIIA	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1a	S0
	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1a	S1
Stage IIIB	Any patient/TX	N1-N3	M0	S2
	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1a	S2
Stage IIIC	Any patient/TX	N1-N3	M0	S3
	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1a	S3
	Any patient/TX	Any N	M1b	Any S

Stage IA patients have primary tumours limited to the testis and epididymis, with no evidence of microscopic vascular or lymphatic invasion by tumour cells on microscopy, no sign of metastases on clinical examination or imaging, and post-orchidectomy serum tumour marker levels within normal limits. Marker decline in patients with clinical stage I disease should be assessed until normalisation. Stage IB patients have a more locally invasive primary tumour, but no sign of metastatic disease. Stage IS patients have persistently elevated (and usually increasing) serum tumour marker levels after orchidectomy, which is evidence of subclinical metastatic disease (or possibly a second germ cell tumour in the remaining testis). If serum tumour marker levels are declining according to the expected half-life decay after orchidectomy, the patient is usually followed up until normalisation.

In large population-based patient series, 75-80% of seminoma patients, and about 55% of patients with NSGCT cancer have stage I disease at diagnosis (86,87). True stage IS (persistently elevated or increasing serum marker levels after orchidectomy) is found in about 5% of non-seminoma patients. If a staging retroperitoneal lymph node dissection (RPLND) was to be performed in stage IS patients, nearly all patients would be found to have pathological stage II disease (pN+) (1,7,86,88).

In 1997, the IGCCCG defined a prognostic factor-based staging system for metastatic testis tumour based on identification of some clinical independent adverse factors. This staging system has been incorporated

into the TNM Classification and uses histology, location of the primary tumour, location, of metastases and prechemotherapy marker levels in serum as prognostic factors to categorise patients into 'good', 'intermediate' or 'poor' prognosis (Table 5) (89).

Table 5: Prognostic-based staging system for metastatic germ cell cancer (International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group)*

Good-prognosis group	
Non-seminoma (56% of cases) 5-year PFS 89% 5-year survival 92%	*All of the following criteria:* • Testis/retroperitoneal primary • No non-pulmonary visceral metastases • AFP < 1,000 ng/mL • hCG < 5,000 IU/L (1,000 ng/mL) • LDH < 1.5 x ULN
Seminoma (90% of cases) 5-year PFS 82% 5-year survival 86%	*All of the following criteria:* • Any primary site • No non-pulmonary visceral metastases • Normal AFP • Any hCG • Any LDH
Intermediate prognosis group	
Non-seminoma (28% of cases) 5 years PFS 75% 5-year survival 80%	• Testis/retroperitoneal primary • No non-pulmonary visceral metastases • AFP 1,000 - 10,000 ng/mL or • hCG 5,000 - 50,000 IU/L or • LDH 1.5 - 10 x ULN
Seminoma (10% of cases) 5-year PFS 67% 5-year survival 72%	*Any of the following criteria:* • Any primary site • Non-pulmonary visceral metastases • Normal AFP • Any hCG • Any LDH
Poor prognosis group	
Non-seminoma (16% of cases) 5-year PFS 41% 5-year survival 48%	*Any of the following criteria:* • Mediastinal primary • Non-pulmonary visceral metastases • AFP > 10,000 ng/mL or • hCG > 50,000 IU/L (10,000 ng/mL) or • LDH > 10 x ULN
Seminoma No patients classified as poor prognosis	

**Pre-chemotherapy serum tumour markers should be assessed immediately prior to the administration of chemotherapy (same day).*
PFS = progression-free survival; AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase.

4.5 Prognostic risk factors

Retrospectively, for seminoma stage I tumour size (> 4 cm) and invasion of the rete testis have been identified as predictors for relapse in a pooled analysis (29). However, these risk factors have not been validated in a prospective setting except that the absence of both factors indicated a low recurrence rate (6%) (90).

For non-seminoma stage I, vascular invasion of the primary tumour in blood or lymphatic vessels is the most important predictor of occult metastatic disease. The proliferation rate, as well as the percentage of embryonal carcinoma, are additional predictors that improve upon the positive and negative predictive value of vascular invasion (91,92).

The significant prognostic pathological risk factors for stage I and clinical risk factors for metastatic disease are listed in Table 6.

Table 6: Prognostic factors for occult metastatic disease in testicular cancer

	For seminoma	For non-seminoma
Pathological (for stage I)		
Histopathological type	• Tumour size (> 4 cm) • Invasion of the rete testis	• Vascular/lymphatic in or peri-tumoural invasion • Proliferation rate > 70% • Percentage of embryonal carcinoma > 50%
Clinical (for metastatic disease)		
• Primary location • Elevation of tumour marker levels • Presence of non-pulmonary visceral metastasis		

4.6 Impact on fertility and fertility- associated issues

Sperm abnormalities are frequently found in patients with testis tumours. Furthermore, chemotherapy and radiation treatment can also impair fertility. In patients in the reproductive age group, pre-treatment fertility assessment (testosterone, luteinising hormone [LH] and FSH levels) should be performed, and semen analysis and cryopreservation should be offered. If cryopreservation is desired, it should be preferably performed before orchidectomy, but in any case prior to chemotherapy treatment (54,93-99).

In cases of bilateral orchidectomy or low testosterone levels after treatment of TIN, life-long testosterone supplementation is necessary (100). Patients with unilateral or bilateral orchidectomy should be offered a testicular prosthesis (101). For more detailed information, the reader is referred to the EAU Male Infertility Guidelines.

5. GUIDELINES FOR THE DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING OF TESTICULAR CANCER

	GR
1. Testicular ultrasound is mandatory assessment	A
2. Orchidectomy and pathological examination of the testis are necessary to confirm the diagnosis and to define the local extension (pT category). In a life-threatening situation due to extensive metastasis, chemotherapy must be started before orchidectomy.	A
3. Serum determination of tumour markers (AFP, hCG, and LDH must be performed before and after orchidectomy for staging and prognostic reasons	A
4. The state of the retroperitoneal, mediastinal and supraclavicular nodes and viscera must be assessed in testicular cancer.	A

AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin; LDH = lactate dehydrogenase.

6. TREATMENT: STAGE I GERM CELL TUMOURS

6.1 Stage I seminoma

After modern staging procedures, about 15-20% of stage I seminoma patients have subclinical metastatic disease, usually in the retroperitoneum, and will relapse after orchidectomy alone.

*6.1.1 **Surveillance***

Several prospective non-randomised studies of surveillance have been conducted during the past decade, the largest study coming from Canada with > 1,500 patients (102). Previous analysis from four studies showed an actuarial 5 years' relapse-free rate of 82.3%. The Princess Margaret Hospital series (n = 1559) showed an overall relapse rate in unselected patients of 16.8%. The actuarial relapse rate is in the order of 15-20% at 5 years, and most of the relapses are first detected in infra-diaphragmatic lymph nodes (103).

In patients with low risk (tumour size ≤ 4 cm and no rete testis invasion) the recurrence under surveillance is as low as 6% (104).

Chemotherapy according to IGCCCG classification is a possible treatment for seminoma relapse under surveillance. However, 70% of patients with relapse are suitable for treatment with radiotherapy alone because of small volume disease at the time of recurrence. Patients who relapse again can be effectively treated with chemotherapy (105).

The overall cancer-specific survival rate reported with surveillance performed by experienced centres is 97-100% for seminoma stage I (103,105). The main drawback of surveillance is the need for more intensive follow-up, especially with repeated imaging examinations of the retroperitoneal lymph nodes, for at least 5 years after orchidectomy. This compares with the very low risk of subdiaphragmatic relapse after adjuvant radiotherapy.

There is a small but clinically significant risk of relapse more than 5 years after orchidectomy for stage I seminoma which supports the need for long term surveillance.

*6.1.2 **Adjuvant chemotherapy***

A joint trial by the Medical Research Council (MRC) and the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) (MRC TE 19 trial), which compared one cycle of carboplatin (area under curve [AUC] 7) with adjuvant radiotherapy, did not show a significant difference with regard to recurrence rate, time to recurrence and survival after a median follow-up of 4 years (106-108). Therefore, adjuvant carboplatin therapy using a dosage of one course AUC 7 is an alternative to radiotherapy or surveillance in stage I seminoma (103,106-108). Two courses of adjuvant carboplatin seem to further reduce the relapse rate to the order of 1-3% (109,110), but further experience and long-term observations are needed.

*6.1.3 **Adjuvant radiotherapy***

Seminoma cells are extremely radiosensitive. Adjuvant radiotherapy to a para-aortic (PA) field or to a hockeystick field (para-aortic and ipsilateral iliac nodes), with moderate doses (total 20-24 Gy), will reduce the relapse rate to 1-3% (111-114). After modern radiotherapy, nearly all relapses will first occur outside the irradiated field (supradiaphragmatic lymph nodes or in the lungs) (111-114). Based on the results of a large randomised MRC trial, Fossa et al. (111,112) recommended radiotherapy to a PA field as standard treatment for patients with testicular seminoma stage I, T1-T3 and with undisturbed lymphatic drainage. Acute toxicity was reduced and the sperm count within the first 18 months was significantly higher after PA irradiation than after irradiation of the traditional dog-leg field. On the other hand, the relapse rate in the iliac lymph nodes was about 2% (all of them on the right side) after PA and 0% after dog-leg irradiation. Another possible site of failure is in the left renal hilum. PA irradiation should be tailored according to the site of the primary tumour. Adjuvant irradiation of supradiaphragmatic lymph nodes is not indicated in seminoma stage I.

With regard to the irradiation dose, the MRC recently finished a large randomised trial of 20 Gy versus 30 Gy PA radiation in stage I seminoma that showed equivalence for both doses in terms of recurrence rates (112). The rate of severe radiation-induced long-term toxicity is less than 2%. Moderate chronic gastrointestinal (GI) side-effects are seen in about 5% of patients, and moderate acute GI toxicity in about 60% (111). The main concern surrounding adjuvant radiotherapy is the increased risk of radiation-induced second non-germ cell malignancies (115-119).

A scrotal shield can be of benefit during adjuvant radiotherapy in order to prevent scattered radiation toxicity in the contralateral testis (118).

*6.1.4 **Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection (RPLND)***

In a prospective, non-randomised study comparing radiotherapy and RPLND in stage I seminoma, there was a trend towards a higher incidence of retroperitoneal relapses (9.5%) after RPLND as primary treatment. Therefore this policy should not be recommended in stage I seminoma (120).

*6.1.5 **Risk-adapted treatment***

Using tumour size > 4 cm and rete testis invasion, patients with seminoma stage I may be subdivided into a low-and high-risk group of occult metastatic disease. Patients with and without both risk factors have a risk of occult disease of 32% and 12%, respectively. These risk factors were introduced by an analysis of retrospective trials (29). A prospective trial based on these risk factors (no risk factors: surveillance; both risk factors: two courses of carboplatin AUC 7) showed the feasibility of a risk-adapted approach. Early data with limited follow-up indicate that patients without either risk factor have a 6.0% risk of relapse at 5 years. Patients

in the high risk group treated with carboplatin experienced a 1.4% relapse rate at mean follow up of 34 months (121).

However, given the fact that cure is achieved in ~100% in patients with stage I seminoma whatever therapy used (adjuvant radiotherapy, adjuvant chemotherapy, or surveillance) and that the relapse rate in large surveillance series not using risk factors is about 15-20% indicates a risk of over-treatment.

Therefore, the therapeutic decision should be shared with an informed patient.

6.2 Guidelines for the treatment of seminoma stage I

	GR
1. Surveillance is the recommended management option (if facilities available and patient compliant)	A*
2. Carboplatin-based chemotherapy (one course at AUC 7) can be recommended.	B
3. Adjuvant treatment is not recommended for patients at very low risk.	A
4. Radiotherapy is not recommended as adjuvant treatment.	A

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

6.3 NSGCT stage I

Up to 30% of NSGCT patients with clinical stage I (CS1) disease have subclinical metastases and will relapse if surveillance alone is applied after orchidectomy.

*6.3.1 **Surveillance***

Improvements in clinical staging and follow-up methods, and the availability of effective salvage treatment with cisplatin-based chemotherapy and post-chemotherapy surgery, have led to studies of only close surveillance after orchidectomy in CS1 NSGCT patients. The largest reports of the surveillance strategy indicate a cumulative relapse rate of about 30%, with 80% of relapses occurring during the first 12 months of follow-up, 12% during the second year and 6% during the third year, decreasing to 1% during the fourth and fifth years, and occasionally even later (122-126). About 35% of relapsing patients have normal levels of serum tumour markers at relapse. About 60% of relapses are in the retroperitoneum. Despite very close follow-up, 11% of relapsing patients presented with large-volume recurrent disease.

The somewhat lower relapse rates reported from surveillance studies compared with some series of patients staged by RPLND (127) can be explained by the fact that some patients (presumably at risk) are excluded once surveillance is advised. Based on the overall cancer-specific survival data, surveillance within an experienced surveillance programme may be offered to patients with non-risk stratified clinical stage I non-seminoma as long as they are compliant and informed about the expected recurrence rate as well as the salvage treatment (128,129).

*6.3.2 **Primary chemotherapy***

Several studies involving two courses of chemotherapy with cisplatin, etoposide and bleomycin (PEB) as primary treatment for high-risk patients (having about 50% risk of relapse) have been reported (130-135). In these series, involving more than 200 patients, some with a median follow-up of nearly 8 years (130), a relapse rate of only 2.7% was reported, with very little long-term toxicity. Two cycles of cisplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy do not seem to adversely affect fertility or sexual activity (136). However, the very-long term (> 20 years) side effects of adjuvant chemotherapy in this setting are currently unknown, and this should be taken in consideration for decision-making; especially the long-term cardio-vascular effects of chemotherapy in GCT survivors (137).

It is important to be aware of the slow-growing retroperitoneal teratomas after primary chemotherapy (138).

The results of cost analyses comparing surveillance, RPLND and primary chemotherapy show different results among the reported studies, possibly because of differences in intensity and costs related to follow-up procedures (139). With a low frequency of follow-up CTs (such as has been proven effective for the surveillance strategy in non-seminoma CS1), the costs of follow-up can be considerably reduced (140).

*6.3.3 **Risk-adapted treatment***

Risk-adapted treatment is based on the risk factor vascular invasion. Stratifying patients with CS1 NSGCT

according to their presumed risk of relapse is a rational option, as several studies have reported similar survival rates and a final cure rate close to 100% with all available treatment options using the risk-stratifying approach (130-135,141-144). Risk-adapted treatment is therefore an equally effective alternative treatment of choice in CS1 NSGCT.

If the risk-adapted policy is applied, patients with vascular invasion are recommended to undergo adjuvant chemotherapy with two cycles of PEB, and patients without vascular invasion are recommended to undergo surveillance. Only if patients or doctors are not willing to accept the consequent risk-adapted treatment, or if there are circumstances that militate against the risk-adapted treatment option, should the remaining treatments be considered.

Thus, the decision about treatment should be based on a thorough discussion with the patients, taking into account the described advantages and disadvantages, as well as the individual situation of the patient and/or the treatment centre. The Swedish-Norwegian Testicular Cancer Project (SWENOTECA) recently showed that in a large population-based study with a risk-adapted approach within a management programme and a median follow-up of 4.7 years, the relapse rate was 3.2% for patients with vascular invasion treated with only one adjuvant PEB (145). Taken together, about 300 patients with high risk CS I have been adjuvantly treated with 1 x PEB with a follow-up of more than 5 yrs. Still, a randomised trial between 1 and 2 courses of PEB is accruing patients. As long as 1 x PEB has not been proven superior or at least equivalent to 2 courses PEB, this adjuvant treatment cannot be recommended outside of a clinical trial or a prospective registry.

*6.3.4 **Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection***

If RPLND is performed, about 30% of patients are found to have retroperitoneal lymph node metastases, which corresponds to pathological stage II (PS2) disease (146-148). If no retroperitoneal metastases are found at RPLND (PS1), approximately 10% of the PS1 patients relapse at distant sites (92,128,149-151).

The main predictor of relapse in CS1 NSGCT managed by surveillance, for having PS2 disease and for relapse in PS1 after RPLND, is histopathological evidence of vascular invasion by tumour cells in, or near, the primary tumour in the testis (92,123,128,151,152). The presence of vascular invasion seems to be a very robust parameter, and is clinically usable even without centralised review by an expert panel (142,151). Vascular invasion was the most predictive of stage in a multifactorial analysis. The absence of vascular invasion has a negative predictive value of 77%, thus allowing for surveillance in low-risk compliant patients (92).

Patients without vascular invasion constitute about 50-70% of the CS1 population, and these patients have only a 15-20% risk of relapse on surveillance, compared with a 50% relapse rate in patients with vascular invasion. The risk of relapse for PS1 patients is less than 10% for those without vascular invasion and about 30% for those with vascular invasion (142,151,153,154).

If CS1 patients with PS2 are followed up only after RPLND, about 30% relapse, mainly at sites outside the abdomen and pelvis. The risk of relapse depends upon the amount of retroperitoneal disease resected (155-157). If two (or more) courses of cisplatin-based chemotherapy are given adjuvant to RPLND in PS2 cases, the relapse rate is reduced to less than 2%, including teratoma relapse (128,152,158). The risk of retroperitoneal relapse after a properly performed nerve-sparing RPLND is very low (less than 2%), as is the risk of ejaculatory disturbance or other significant side-effects (152,155,156).

The follow-up after RPLND is much simpler and less costly than that carried out during post-orchidectomy surveillance because of the reduced need for abdominal CT scans (152). If there is a rare indication to perform a staging RPLND, a laparoscopic or robot-assisted RPLND is feasible in expert hands. This minimal-invasive approach cannot be recommended as standard approach outside of a specialized laparoscopic centre (159-162). In a randomised comparison of RPLND with one course of PEB chemotherapy, adjuvant chemotherapy significantly increased the 2-year recurrence-free survival to 99.41% (confidence interval [CI] 95.87%, 99.92%) as opposed to surgery, which had a 2-year recurrence-free survival of 92.37% (CI 87.21%, 95.50%). The difference was 7.04%, CI 2.52%, 11.56%. The hazard ratio to experience a tumour recurrence with surgery as opposed to chemotherapy was 7.937, CI 1.808, 34.48. Therefore, one course of adjuvant PEB is superior to RPLND with regard to recurrence rates in patients unstratified for risk factors (163). In the SWENOTECA data mentioned in section 7.3.3 it was also found that one adjuvant PEB reduced the number of recurrences to 3.2% of the high risk and to 1.4% of the low risk patients (145).

6.4 CS1S with (persistently) elevated serum tumour markers

Serum tumour markers should be followed closely until levels fall into the reference values according to the expected half-life values for AFP and hCG. If the marker level increases after orchidectomy, the patient has

residual disease. If RPLND is performed, up to 87% of these patients have pathologically documented nodes in the retroperitoneum (164). An ultrasound examination of the contralateral testicle must be performed, if this was not done initially.

The treatment of true CS1S patients is still controversial. They may be treated with three courses of primary PEB chemotherapy and with follow-up as for CS1B patients (high risk, see below) after primary chemotherapy (165), or by RPLND (140). The presence of vascular invasion may strengthen the indication for primary chemotherapy as most CS1S with vascular invasion will need chemotherapy sooner or later anyway.

6.5 Guidelines for the treatment of NSGCT stage I

CS1 risk-adapted treatments based on vascular invasion or surveillance without using risk factors are recommended treatment options.

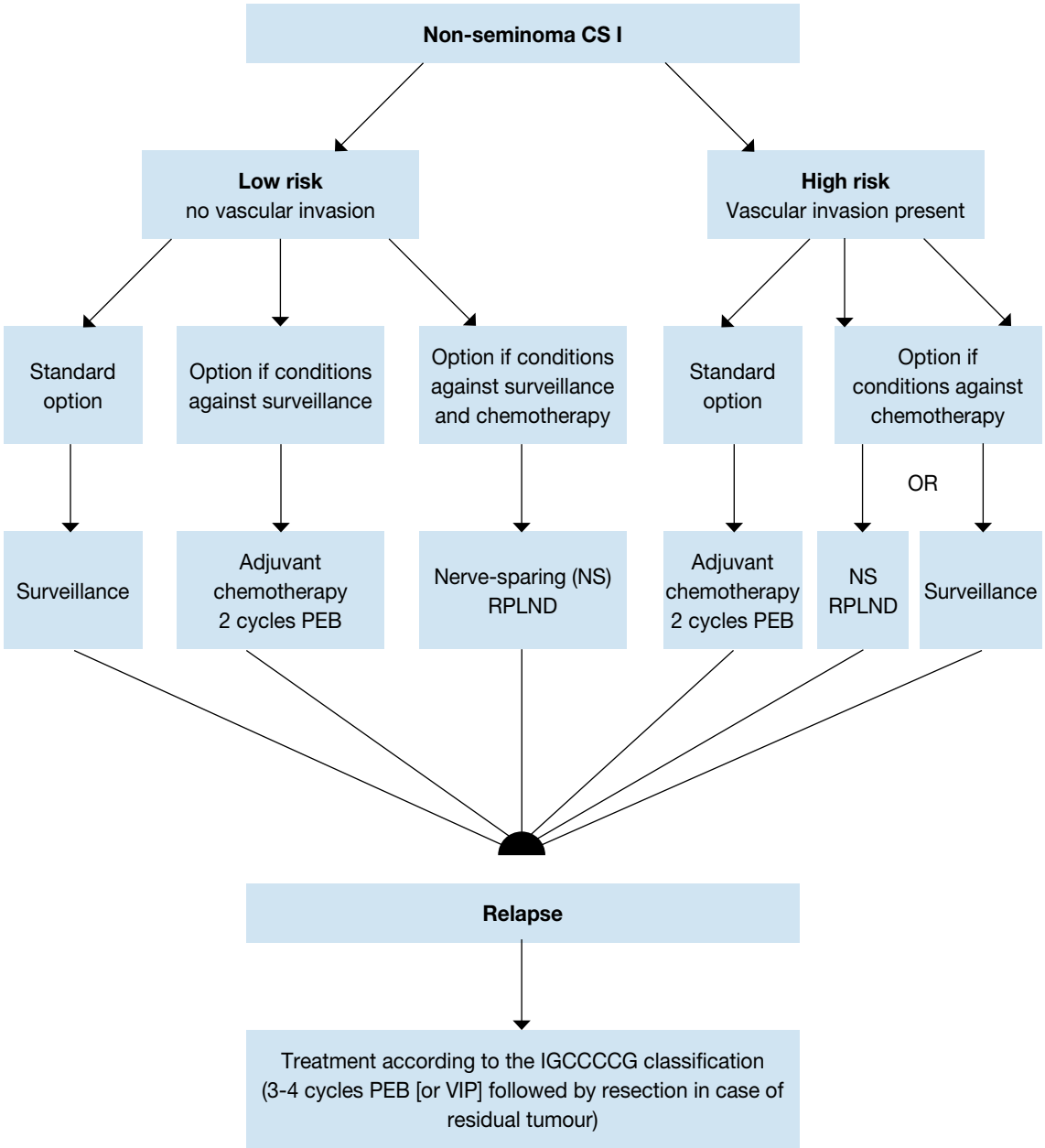
Table 7: Risk-adapted treatments for CS1 based on vascular invasion

	GR
CS1A (pT1, no vascular invasion): low risk	
1. If the patient is willing and able to comply with a surveillance policy, long-term (at least 5 years) close follow-up should be recommended.	A*
2. In low-risk patients not willing (or suitable) to undergo surveillance, adjuvant chemotherapy or nerve-sparing RPLND are treatment options If RPLND reveals PN+ (nodal involvement) disease, chemotherapy with two courses of PEB should be considered.	A
CS1B (pT2-pT4): high risk	
1. Primary chemotherapy with two courses of PEB should be recommended (one course of PEB within a clinical trial or registry).	A*
2. Surveillance or nerve-sparing RPLND in high-risk patients remain options for those not willing to undergo adjuvant chemotherapy. If pathological stage II is revealed at RPLND, further chemotherapy should be considered.	A

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*
PEB = cisplatin, eposide, bleomycin; RPLND = retroperitoneal lymph node dissection.

Figure 1 provides a treatment algorithm for patients with NSGCT stage I.

Figure 1: Treatment algorithm after orchidectomy according to individual risk factors in patients with non-seminoma NSGCT CS1 (31)



PEB = cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin; CS = clinical stage; IGCCCG = International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group; RLNPD = retroperitoneal lymph node dissection; VIP = etoposide, cisplatin, ifosfamide.

7. TREATMENT: METASTATIC GERM CELL TUMOURS

The treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours depends on:

- the histology of the primary tumour;
- prognostic groups as defined by the IGCCCG based on 5202 non-seminoma and 660 seminoma cases (Table 5) (166).

7.1 Low-volume metastatic disease (stage IIA/B)

*7.1.1 **Stage IIA/B seminoma***

So far, the standard treatment for stage IIA/B seminoma has been radiotherapy. The radiation dose delivered in stage IIA and IIB is **approximately** 30 Gy and 36 Gy, respectively. The standard radiation field compared with stage I will be extended from the PA region to the ipsilateral iliac field (the hockey-stick field). In stage IIB, the lateral borders should include the metastatic lymph nodes with a safety margin of 1.0-1.5 cm. This technique yields a relapse-free survival in stage IIA and IIB of 92% and 90%, respectively. Overall survival is almost 100% (167,168). Conversely, dose reduction to 27Gy has been associated with 11% of relapses (105).

In stage IIB chemotherapy (4 x etoposide and cisplatin [EP] or 3 x PEB in good prognosis) is an alternative to radiotherapy. Although more toxic in the short term, 4 x EP or 3 x PEB achieve a similar level of disease control (169). Single-agent carboplatin is not an alternative to standard EP or PEB chemotherapy (170).

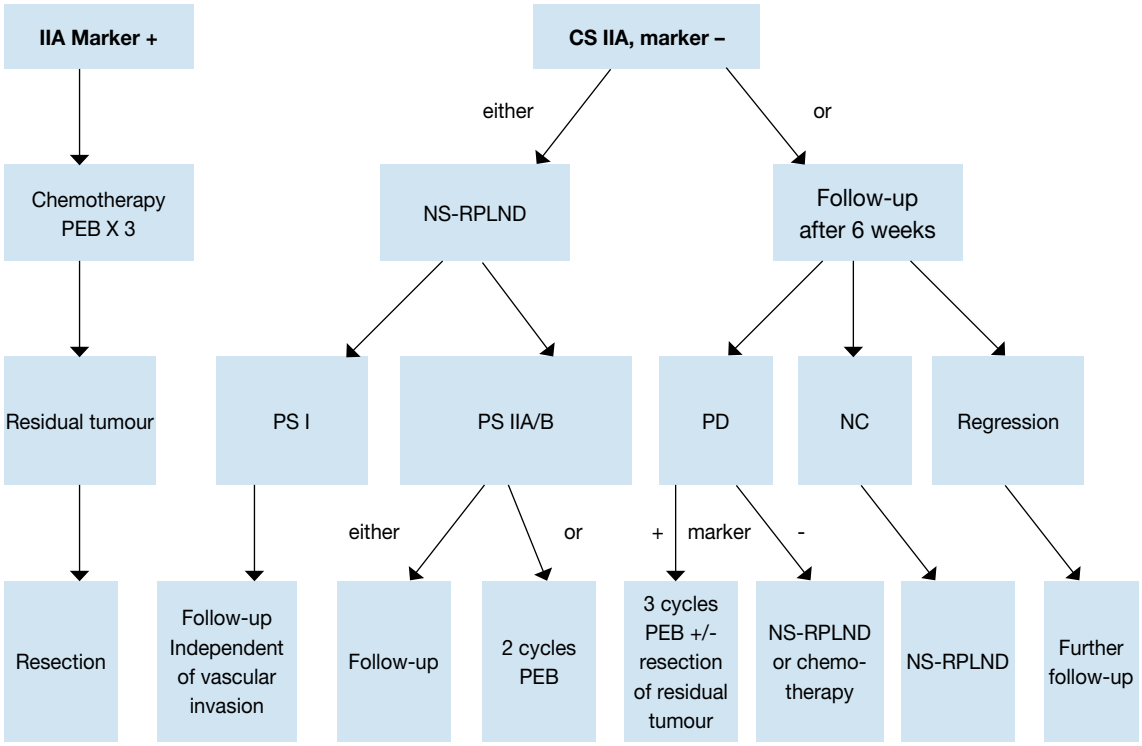
*7.1.2 **Stage IIA/B non-seminoma***

There is a general consensus that treatment should start with initial chemotherapy in all advanced cases of NSGCT except for stage II NSGCT disease without elevated tumour markers, which alternatively can be managed by primary RPLND or surveillance to clarify stage (171,172).

If surveillance is chosen, one follow-up after 6 weeks is indicated to document whether the lesion is growing, remaining stable or shrinking. A shrinking lesion is likely to be of non-malignant origin and should be observed further. A stable or growing lesion indicates either teratoma or an undifferentiated malignant tumour. If the lesion is growing without a corresponding increase in the tumour markers AFP or beta-hCG, RPLND should be performed by an experienced surgeon because of suspected teratoma. Patients with a growing lesion and a concomitant increase in the tumour markers AFP or beta-hCG should not undergo surgery; they require chemotherapy with PEB according to the treatment algorithm for patients with metastatic disease and IGCCCG recommendations (173-175) (Figure 2). An alternative to the surveillance strategy in marker-negative II A/B non-seminoma with suspicion of an undifferentiated malignant tumour is a (computer tomography-guided) biopsy, if technically possible. There is insufficient published data on PET scans in this situation.

Patients not willing to undergo primary chemotherapy have the option of primary nerve-sparing RPLND with adjuvant chemotherapy (two cycles of PEB) in case of metastatic disease (pII A/B). Primary chemotherapy and primary RPLND are comparable options in terms of outcome but side-effects and toxicity are different, allowing for involvement of the patient in selecting the treatment of choice (176). The cure rate with either approach will be close to 98% (158,177-182).

Figure 2: Treatment options in patients with non-seminoma clinical stage IIA (32)



PEB = cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin; NS = nerve-sparing; RPLND = retroperitoneal lymph node dissection; PS = pathological stage; PD = progressive disease; NC = no change.

7.2 Advanced metastatic disease

*7.2.1 **Primary chemotherapy***

The primary treatment of choice for advanced disease is three or four cycles of PEB combination chemotherapy (Table 8), depending on the IGCCCG risk classification (see Table 3). This regimen has proven superiority to cisplatin, vinblastine and bleomycin (PVB) in patients with advanced disease (183-185). Data support a 3-day regimen of administering combination chemotherapy to be equally effective as a 5-day regimen, but associated with increased toxicity when 4 cycles are used (186).

Table 8: PEB regimen (interval 21 days)

Drug	Dosage	Duration of cycles
Cisplatin	20 mg/m^2	Days 1-5*
Etoposide	100 mg/m^2	Days 1-5
Bleomycin	30 mg	Days 1, 8, 15

*Plus hydration.
PEB = cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin.

For patients with a 'good prognosis', according to the IGCCCG Classification (166), standard treatment consists of three cycles of PEB, and only in very selected cases where bleomycin is contraindicated, four cycles of EP (166,185-189). A randomised trial from the GETUG suggested that when the PEB regimen is being used in this setting the mortality was half that of EP, although the difference did not reached statistical significance (189,190). Therapy should be given without reduction of the doses at 21-day intervals; delaying the following chemotherapy cycle is justified only in cases of fever with granulocytopenia < 1000/mm^3 or thrombocytopenia < 100,000/IU. There is no indication for prophylactic application of haematopoietic growth factors such as, for example, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF). However, if infectious complications have occurred during chemotherapy, prophylactic administration of G-CSF is recommended for the following cycles (187,191).

The 'intermediate prognosis' group in the IGCCCG has been defined as patients with a 5-year survival rate of about 80%. The available data support four cycles of PEB as standard treatment (166,192).

For patients with a 'poor prognosis', standard treatment consists of four cycles of PEB. Four cycles of cisplatin, etoposide and ifosfamide (PEI) have the same effect, but are more myelotoxic (193,194). The 5-year progression-free survival is between 45% and 50%. Three randomised trials have shown no advantage in high-dose chemotherapy for the overall group of 'poor prognosis' patients (195-197). However, patients with a slow marker decline after the first or second cycle may represent a prognostically inferior subgroup with a potential role for dose-intensified chemotherapy after detection of inadequate marker decline (195). More aggressive chemotherapy may also be investigated in a very poor prognostic group (e. g. primary mediastinal germ cell tumours or synchroneous brain metastasis).

Since a matched-pair analysis resulted in a better survival rate (198-200), poor prognosis patients should still be treated in ongoing prospective trials, investigating the value of dose intensified or high-dose chemotherapy (e. g. the international GETUG 13 trial (EU-20502, NCT00104676).

Patients meeting 'poor-prognosis' criteria should therefore be transferred to a reference centre because a better outcome was reported for intermediate and poor prognosis patients who had been treated within a clinical trial in a high volume centre (25). There are no general recommendations for treatment modifications for patients with a poor general condition (Karnofsky < 50%) or extended liver infiltration (> 50%). Patients with extended pulmonary infiltration are at risk for acute respiratory distress syndrome: adapting the doses of the PEB regimen in the first cycle of chemotherapy (only 3 days of EP without bleomycin) was suggested to reduce the risk of early death in this setting (201).

7.3 Restaging and further treatment

7.3.1 ***Restaging***

Restaging is performed by imaging investigations and re-evaluation of tumour markers. At marker decline and stable or regressive tumour manifestation, chemotherapy will be completed (three or four cycles, depending on the initial stage) (166,202,203). In the case of marker decline but growing metastases, resection of the tumour is obligatory after termination of induction therapy, other than in an emergency, according to local tumour growth (204).

Only with documented marker increase after two courses of chemotherapy is an early crossover of therapy indicated. These patients are usually candidates for new drugs trials (198,205). Patients with a low-level hCG marker plateau post-treatment should be observed to see whether complete normalisation occurs. Patients with a low plateau serum AFP level after chemotherapy, surgery of residual masses should be performed, with post-surgery AFP monitoring. Salvage chemotherapy is indicated for documented marker rise only (206,207).

7.3.2 ***Residual tumour resection***

A residual mass of seminoma should not be primarily resected, irrespective of the size, but controlled by imaging investigations and tumour markers (208-214).

FDG-PET has a high negative predictive value in patients with residual masses after treatment of seminoma but false positive results can be a problem and scans should not be performed less than 2 months after chemotherapy. In patients with residuals of > 3 cm, FDG-PET should be performed in order to gain more information on the viability of these residuals. In patients with residuals of < 3 cm, the use of FDG-PET is optional (215).

On progression, salvage therapy is indicated (chemotherapy, salvage surgery, radiotherapy) (216-220). In patients with concurrent hCG elevation, progressing seminoma after first-line chemotherapy should be treated by salvage chemotherapy (or radiotherapy if only small volume recurrence is present). Progressing patients without hCG progression should undergo histological verification (e. g. by biopsy or open surgery) before salvage chemotherapy is given.

In the case of non-seminoma and complete remission after chemotherapy (no tumour visible), residual tumour resection is not indicated (221-228). The long-term relapse rate in this patient group is 6-9%, however, one third of the late relapsing patients will not survive (228).

In the case of any visible residual mass and marker normalisation, surgical resection is indicated. In patients with lesions < 1 cm, there still is an increased risk of residual cancer or teratoma (229) although the role of surgery in this setting is debated. In persistent larger volume retroperitoneal disease, all areas of primary metastatic sites must be completely resected within 4-6 weeks of completion of chemotherapy. If technically feasible, a nerve-sparing procedure should be performed (221,228-237).

Overall, following PEB induction chemotherapy, only 10% of residual masses contain viable cancer, 50% contain mature teratoma, and 40% contain necrotic-fibrotic tissue. As yet, no imaging investigations, including PET or a prognosis model, are able to predict histological differentiation of the non-seminomatous residual tumour. Thus, residual tumour resection is mandatory in all patients with residual disease > 1 cm (222-224,236-246).

The extent of surgery should be based on the risk of relapse of an individual patient and quality of life issues (231). If possible, all the masses should be resected, because a complete resection, in the setting of viable malignant cells, is more critical than recourse to post-operative chemotherapy (247). There is growing evidence that "template" resections in selected patients yield equivalent long-term results compared to bilateral systematic resections in all patients (248,249). However, the mere resection of the residual tumour (so called "lumpectomy") should not be performed.

The histology may diverge in different organ sites (239). Resection of contralateral pulmonary lesions is not mandatory in case pathologic examination of the lesions from the first lung shows complete necrosis (250).

7.3.3 ***Quality of surgery***

Post-chemotherapy surgery is demanding and frequently needs ad hoc vascular interventions (like vena cava or aortic prosthesis). Therefore, patients should be referred to specialized centres capable of interdisciplinary surgery (hepatic resections, vessel replacement, spinal neurosurgery, thoracic surgery). Patients treated within such centres benefit with a significant reduction in perioperative mortality from 6% to 0.8% (26,251). In addition, specialised urologic surgeons are capable to reduce the local recurrence rate from 16% to 3% (252) with a higher rate of complete resections.

7.3.4 ***Consolidation chemotherapy after secondary surgery***

After resection of necrosis or mature/immature teratoma, no further treatment is required. In the case of incomplete resection of other germ cell tumour pathologies, two adjuvant cycles of conventionally dosed cisplatin-based chemotherapy may be given in certain subgroups (e.g. 'poor prognosis' patients) (247,253) (caution: cumulative doses of bleomycin). After complete resection of 'vital' tumour < 10% of the total volume, especially in patients with an initially good prognosis group according to IGCCCG, the relapse rate is vey low and adjuvant chemotherapy is not beneficial for preventing further relapse. The prognosis will definitely deteriorate if vital malignant neoplasm is found in resection specimens after second- and third-line chemotherapy. In this latter situation, post-operative chemotherapy is not indicated and is unable to improve the prognosis (235,240).

7.4 Systemic salvage treatment for relapse or refractory disease

Cisplatin-based combination salvage chemotherapy will result in long-term remissions for about 50% of the patients who relapse after first-line chemotherapy (254). The regimens of choice are four cycles of PEI/VIP (etoposide, ifosfamide, cisplatin), four cycles of TIP (paclitaxel, ifosfamide, cisplatin) or four cycles of VeIP (vinblastine, ifosfamide, cisplatin) (Table 9).

A randomised trial showed no benefit in progression-free survival nor overall survival in patients treated with 3 cycles of VeIP plus 1 cycle of high-dose chemotherapy, compared with 4 cycles of VeIP (255). At present, it is impossible to determine whether conventionally dosed cisplatin-based combination chemotherapy is sufficient as first-salvage treatment or whether early intensification of first-salvage treatment with high-dose chemotherapy should be attempted. However, there is evidence from large retrospective analyses that there are different prognostic groups in case of relapse after first line chemotherapy (256-258). An international randomised trial of high-dose versus conventional dose chemotherapy in patients with first-line relapse is planned. It is therefore of the utmost importance that these rare patients are treated within clinical trials and at experienced centres.

Table 9: Standard PEI/VIP, TIP and VeIP chemotherapy (interval 21 days)

Chemotherapy agents	Dosage	Duration of cycles
PEI/VIP	20 mg/m^2	Days 1-5
Cisplatin*	75-100 mg/m^2	Days 1-5
Etoposide	1.2 g/m^2	Days 1-5
Ifosfamide†		
TIP		
Paclitaxel	250 mg/m^2 [xx]	24 hour continuous infusion day 1
Ifosfamide†	1.5 g/ m^2	Days 2-5
Cisplatin*	25 mg/m^2	Days 2-5
VeIP		
Vinblastin	0.11 mg/kg	Days 1 + 2
Ifosfamide†	1.2 g/m^2	Days 1-5
Cisplatin*	20 mg/m^2	Days 1-5

PEI/VIP = cisplatin, etoposide, ifosfamide; TIP = paclitaxel, ifosfamide, cisplatin; VeIP = vinblastine, ifosfamide, cisplatin.
**Plus hydration.*
†Plus mesna protection.
[xx] An MRC schedule uses paclitaxel at 175mg/m2 in a 3 hour infusion (259).

Conventionally dosed salvage chemotherapy may achieve long-term remissions in 15-40% of patients, depending on individual risk factors (207,260-262).

The IGCCCG-2 prognostic score comprised of 7 important factors as listed in Table 10 (seminoma vs. non-seminoma histology, primary tumour site, response to initial chemotherapy, duration of progression-free interval, AFP marker level at salvage, HCG marker level at salvage, and the presence of liver, bone, or brain metastases at salvage). Using these factors, 5 risk groups (very low risk = -1 points; low risk = 0 points; intermediate-risk = 1-2 points, high risk = 3-4 points; and very high risk ≥5 points) were identified with significant differences in PFS and OS. Table 9 illustrates the 5 risk groups and the corresponding 2-year PFS and 3-year OS rates (263).

Table 10: IGCCCG-2 (Lorch-Beyer) Score Construction (257)

Points Variable	-1	0	1	2	3
Histology	Seminoma	Non-seminoma			
Primary site		Gonadal	Retroperitoneal		Mediastinal
Response		CR/PRm-	PRm+/SD	PD	
PFI		> 3 months	3 months		
AFP salvage		Normal	< 1000	1000	
HCG salvage		< 1000	1000		
LBB		No	Yes		

AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; IGCCCG = International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group; LBB = alkaline extract of L. barbarum; PFI = platinum-free interval.

Table 11: PFS and OS estimates for all patients according to IGCCCG-2 prognostic score (257)

	N	%	HR	2-years PFS	3-years OS
Score (N=1435)					
Very Low	76	5.30	1	75.1	77.0
Low	257	17.9	2.07	52.6	69.0
Intermediate	646	45.0	2.88	42.8	57.3
High	351	24.5	4.81	26.4	31.7
Very High	105	7.3	8.95	11.5	14.7
Missing	159				

IGCCCG = International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group; OS = overall survival; PSF = progression-free survival.

Salvage therapy with VeIP is probably not superior to other conventionally dosed cisplatin-based combination regimens (250,253,254). Recently, paclitaxel and gemcitabine have proved to be active in the treatment of refractory germ cell tumours; both drugs are synergistic with cisplatin (264-266).

Depending on the presence of adverse prognostic factors, the results of salvage therapy after first-line cisplatin-based treatment are unsatisfactory (207,267). Although some phase II trials indicate a 10% improvement in survival with early intensification of first-salvage treatment using high-dose chemotherapy, others fail to demonstrate such improvement (259,268-271).

High dose chemotherapy offered no advantage as first salvage treatment according to the results of the randomised IT 94 trial in good prognosis patients (255). Patients with good prognostic features should therefore be offered conventional-dose first salvage treatment. However, several phase II trials, as well as one retrospectively matched pair-analysis, have shown an improvement in survival in poor-prognosis patients with early intensification of first-salvage treatment using high-dose chemotherapy (256,261,272,273). All of these patients should, if possible, be entered into ongoing studies to define the optimal approach to salvage treatment, and should be referred to centres experienced in caring for relapse and/or refractory patients (274,275).

*7.4.3 **Late relapse (≥ 2 years after end of first-line treatment)***

Late relapse is defined as any patient relapsing more than 2 years following chemotherapy for metastatic nonseminoma. If technically feasible, all nonseminoma patients with late relapse should undergo immediate radical surgery of all lesions, irrespective of the level of their tumour markers to resect completely all undifferentiated germ-cell tumour, mature teratoma or secondary non-germ cell cancer (139,276). Patients with rapidly rising HCG may present an exception for immediate surgery and may benefit from induction salvage chemotherapy before complete resection. If the lesions are not completely resectable, biopsies should be obtained for histological assessment, and salvage chemotherapy should be initiated according to the histological results. In these cases consultation of an experimented pathologist is required to avoid misinterpretation of the therapeutic morphological changes in the germ cell neoplasms (277). If the patient responds to salvage chemotherapy, secondary surgery should be conducted whenever possible. In the case of unresectable, but localised, refractory disease, radiotherapy can be considered. To avoid excess mortality, late relapses should be treated only at centres experienced in managing such patients (278).

7.5 Salvage surgery

Residual tumours after salvage chemotherapy should be resected if possible. In the case of marker progression after salvage treatment and a lack of other chemotherapeutic options, resection of residual tumours ('desperation surgery') should be considered if complete resection of all tumour seems feasible (about 25% long-term survival may be achieved) (206,232,240,243,279-288).

7.6 Treatment of brain metastases

Brain metastases occur in the frame of a systemic relapse and rarely as an isolated relapse. The long-term survival of patients presenting with brain metastases at initial diagnosis is poor (30-40%), but even poorer is the development of a brain metastasis as a recurrent disease (the 5-year survival-rate is 2-5%) (289,290). Chemotherapy is the initial treatment in this case, and some data support the use of consolidation radiotherapy, even in the case of a total response after chemotherapy (291). Surgery can be considered in the case of a persistent solitary metastasis, depending on the systemic state, the histology of the primary tumour and the location of the metastasis.

7.7 Guidelines for the treatment of metastatic germ cell tumours

	GR
1. Low volume NSGCT stage IIA/B with elevated markers should be treated like 'good or intermediate prognosis' advanced NSGCT, with three or four cycles of PEB.	A
2. In stage IIA/B witout marker elevation, histology can be gained by RPLND or biopsy. A repeat staging can be performed after six weeks of surveillance before final decision on further treatment.	B
3. In metastatic NSGCT (> stage IIC) with a good prognosis, three courses of PEB is the primary treatment of choice.	A
4. In metastatic NSGCT with an intermediate or poor prognosis, the primary treatment of choice is four courses of standard PEB and inclusion in clinical trials is strongly recommended.	A
5. Surgical resection of residual masses after chemotherapy in NSGCT is indicated in the case of visible residual masses and when serum levels of tumour markers are normal or normalising.	A
6, Seminoma CSII A/B can initially be treated with radiotherapy. When necessary, chemotherapy can be used as a salvage treatment with the same schedule as for the corresponding prognostic groups of NSGCT.	A
7. In seminoma stage CS IIB, chemotherapy (4 x EP or 3 x PEB, in good prognosis) is an alternative to radiotherapy. It appears that 4 x EP or 3 x PEB achieve a similar level of disease control.	B
8. Seminoma stage IIC and higher should be treated with primary chemotherapy according to the same principles used for NSGCT.	A

EP = eposide, cisplatin; GR = grade of recommendation; NSGCT = non-seminomatous germ cell tumour; PEB = cisplatin, eposide, bleomycin; RPLND = retroperitoneal lymph node dissection.

8. FOLLOW-UP AFTER CURATIVE THERAPY

8.1 General considerations

The selection of the test to be performed in follow-up should adhere to the following principles (292).

- The interval between examination and duration of testing should be consistent with the time of maximal risk of recurrence and the natural history of the tumour.
- The tests should be directed at the most likely sites of recurrence and should have a high predictive value, both positive and negative.
- Therapy should be available that will result in cure of the recurrence, significant prolongation of life or palliation of symptoms. The initiation of earlier therapy should improve the outcome compared with therapy given when the patient becomes symptomatic from the tumour recurrence.
- The increased risk of second malignancy, both in the primary site and in other tissues that may have been exposed to the same carcinogens, or in which there is epidemiological evidence of increased risk, should also guide the ordering tests. Malignant and non-malignant complications of therapy must also be considered. Such testing should also be performed with a frequency and duration consistent with the nature of the risk, and include only tests with high positive- and negative-predictive values.

The following considerations apply in a general manner for the selection of an appropriate schedule and testing in the follow-up of all stages of testis tumour.

- Most recurrences after curative therapy will occur in the first 2 years; surveillance should therefore be most frequent and intensive during this time.
- Late relapses can occur beyond 5 years, and therefore yearly follow-up for life may be advocated.
- After RPLND, relapse in the retroperitoneum is rare, the most likely site of recurrence being the chest.
- The value of chest X-ray has been recently questioned in the follow-up of patients with disseminated disease after complete remission (293,294).
- CT of the chest has a higher predictive value than chest X-ray (294).
- The results of therapy are dependent on the bulk of disease; thus an intensive strategy to detect asymptomatic disease may be justifiable.
- After chemotherapy or radiotherapy, there is a long-term risk of the development of secondary malignancies.
- Exposure to diagnostic X-rays causes second malignancies (295). Thus, the frequency of CT-scans

should generally be reduced and any exposure to X-rays should be well justified in a patient cohort with a very long life-expectancy after successful treatment.

- In specialised centres, CT can be substituted by MRT. However, MRT is a protocol-dependent method and, thus, should be performed in the same institution with a standardized protocol.
- With special expertise, ultrasound may be used as a method to screen the retroperitoneum during follow-up. However, the method is very much dependent on the investigator and cannot be recommended as general method during follow-up.
- Longer follow-up in patients after radiotherapy and chemotherapy is justified to detect late toxicities (e.g. cardio-vascular, endocrine).

A number of interdisciplinary organisations have presented recommendations for follow-up of testicular cancer patients (296-298). The follow-up tables presented below (tables 12 through 15) present the minimum follow-up criteria and should therefore be considered as a GR A.

8.2 Follow-up: stage I non-seminoma

Approximately 5% of patients with CS1 NSGCT present with elevated levels of tumour markers after orchidectomy, and up to 25-30% relapse during the first 2 years (5,131,151,154,177,299-302).
The follow-up schedule will differ depending on which of the three possible treatment strategies was chosen:

- surveillance;
- nerve-sparing RPLND;
- adjuvant chemotherapy.

*8.2.1 **Follow-up investigations during surveillance***

The results of a surveillance policy depend upon a careful pre-operative staging procedure and follow-up management. In a 'wait and see' policy, relapses will occur in 30% of cases. Of these relapses, 80% will occur in the first 12 months after orchidectomy, and approximately 12% during the second year. The median time to relapse is 6 months (range 1-62 months), but relapses after 3-5 years, and even later, can still occur, with an annual rate of 4% (112,113). Relapse occurs mainly in the retroperitoneum: approximately 70% of patients have evident metastases in the retroperitoneum, and 10% in the mediastinum and lungs (303). Sometimes the only indication is an elevated level of tumour markers.

A randomised trial of two versus five CT scans has been published by the MRC recommending the reduction of imaging during surveillance in this stage to one CT scan at 3 months after orchidectomy, and another at 12 months. The trial, with a cohort of 414 patients, was powered to exclude a 3% probability of detecting a patient during surveillance only, with a relapse presenting already-metastatic disease with 'intermediate' or 'poor' prognosis features. Relapses were detected in 15% with two CTs, and 20% with five CTs; 1.6% of these patients had 'intermediate' or 'poor' prognosis features. Only 10% of patients had high-risk features (vascular invasion). In summary, this first randomised trial yielded level 1 evidence for a minimum follow-up in patients with CS1 non-seminoma (141). The recommended follow-up schedule (Table 12) includes the minimum requirements for imaging, and adds recommendations for other surveillance tests.

Table 12: Recommended follow-up schedule in a surveillance policy: stage I non-seminoma

Procedure	**Year**			
	1	**2**	**3-5**	**6-10**
Physical examination	4 times	4 times	Once/year	Once/year
Tumour markers	4 times	4 times	Once/year	Once/year
Chest X-ray	Twice	Twice		
Abdominopelvic CT scan	Twice (at 3 and 12 months)			

CT= computed tomography scan.

During the initial post-treatment phase, follow-up consists of regular clinical examinations, the monitoring of serum tumour markers, and imaging investigations. The frequency and type of the examinations depend on the estimated risk of relapse, the chosen treatment strategy, and the time that has elapsed since completion of therapy, and should be modified according to these risks. However, only limited information about the optimal follow-up strategy exists, and currently recommendations can only be given for seminoma (304).

For low-risk stage I non-seminoma, two abdominopelvic CT scans during the first year seem sufficient

to detect relapses at an early stage (141). The significance of additional CT scans remains uncertain. No studies are available that address the optimal monitoring of such patients by serum tumour markers (AFP, beta-hCG).

*8.2.2 **Follow-up after nerve-sparing RPLND***

Retroperitoneal relapse after a properly performed nerve-sparing RPLND is rare. RPLND should eliminate the retroperitoneal nodes as a site of relapse and thus the need for repeated abdominal CT scans. The US Testicular Cancer Intergroup study data show retroperitoneal relapse in 7/264 patients with pathological stage I disease (and 20 pulmonary relapses); four of these seven had no marker elevation (305). In the Indiana series, only one relapse in 559 cases was reported (306). If a relapse occurs, it is generally in the chest, neck or at the margins of the surgical field.

Pulmonary relapses occur in 10-12% of patients, and more than 90% of those relapses occur within 2 years of RPLND (87,307). However, the low rate of retroperitoneal relapse after RPLND can only be achieved by surgery in specialised centres, as shown by the high in-field relapse rate (7/13 relapses) in the German randomised trial of RPLND versus one course of PEB (163). The recommended minimum follow-up schedule is shown in Table 13.

Table 13: Recommended follow-up schedule after retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy or adjuvant chemotherapy: stage I non-seminoma

Procedure	Year			
	1	**2**	**3-5**	**6-10**
Physical examination	4 times	4 times	Once/year	Once/year
Tumour markers	4 times	4 times	Once/year	Once/year
Chest X-ray	Twice	Twice		
Abdominopelvic CT scan	Once	Once		

CT = computed tomography scan.

*8.2.3 **Follow-up after adjuvant chemotherapy***

Prospective reports with long-term follow-up after adjuvant chemotherapy have shown a low relapse rate (131,132,299,300) of about 3%. In a randomised trial with one course of PEB versus RPLND, the relapse rate with adjuvant chemotherapy was 1% (2/174 patients, one with marker relapse, one with mature teratoma in the retroperitoneum) (163). The need for repeated and long-term assessment of the retroperitoneum is still not clear. Owing to the risk of developing a late, slow-growing teratoma in the retroperitoneum after adjuvant chemotherapy, an abdominal CT should still be performed (see Table 13).

8.3 Follow-up: stage I seminoma

The majority of patients with seminoma (70-80%) present with clinical stage I disease at diagnosis. In 15-20% of cases, there is nodal radiological involvement at the level of the retroperitoneum, and only 5% of patients present with distant metastasis.

The relapse rate varies between 1% and 20%, depending on the post-orchidectomy therapy chosen. Only up to 30% of seminomas present with elevation of hCG at diagnosis or in the course of the disease. Consequently, in most cases, measurement of blood markers will not be a reliable test for follow-up (308). The treatment options post-orchidectomy in stage I seminoma are retroperitoneal radiotherapy, surveillance and adjuvant chemotherapy. Due to extreme radio- and chemosensitivity, high cure rates of almost 100% are reached with each of the approaches, even in cases of relapse. The costs of the different therapies vary, as do the expected side-effects (309-311).

*8.3.1 **Follow-up after radiotherapy***

Low doses of radiotherapy (20-24 Gy) limited to the retroperitoneal or the hockey-stick field achieve an overall survival rate of approximately 99% at 5-10 years (112-114,312,314). The rate of relapse is 1-2% and the most common time of presentation is within 18 months of treatment (112,115,311,314,315), although late relapses have also been described (316). The site of relapse is mainly at the supradiaphragmatic lymph nodes, mediastinum, lungs or bones. In a small proportion of cases, the tumour will relapse in the inguinal or external iliac nodes. After para-aortic field RT there is also a pelvic node relapse pattern.

The side-effects of radiotherapy include temporary impaired spermatogenesis, GI symptoms (peptic ulceration), and induction of second malignancies (311,317,318). Up to 50% of patients can develop moderate toxicity grade I-II (308). The schedule of follow-up is described in Table 14.

Table 14: Recommended follow-up schedule for post-orchidectomy surveillance, radiotherapy or chemotherapy: stage I seminoma

Procedure	Year			
	1	2	3-4	5-10
Physical examination	3 times	3 times	Once/year	Once/year
Tumour markers	3 times	3 times	Once/year	Once/year
Chest X-ray	Twice	Twice		
Abdominopelvic CT scan	Twice	Twice		

CT = computed tomography scan.

*8.3.2 **Follow-up during surveillance***

The actuarial risk of relapse at 5 years ranges between 6% (low risk) and 20% (118,329-323). There is no increased risk of death. The median time to relapse ranges from 12-18 months, but up to 29% of relapses can develop later than this (102,324). The sites of relapse are the PA lymph nodes in up to 82% of cases; the pelvic lymph nodes, inguinal nodes and lungs can also be affected (102,137,325-328). Due to the high and often late rate of relapse, close and active follow-up is mandatory for at least 5 years (329) (see Table 14).

*8.3.3 **Follow-up after adjuvant chemotherapy***

One or two courses of carboplatin-based chemotherapy is an effective alternative treatment in stage I seminoma. The relapse rate is 1.9-4.5%. In general, this treatment is well tolerated, with only mild, acute and intermediate-term toxicity (329,330). Long-term data on late relapses and survival are missing (see Table 14).

8.4 Follow-up: stage II and advanced (metastatic) disease

The more advanced the nodal stage of the disease, the higher the likelihood of recurrence (158). In general, the primary tumour bulk governs the outcome for patients with NSGCT (331). In stage II NSGCT, regardless of the treatment policy adopted, excellent survival rates of 97% are reached provided that relapse is identified as soon as possible (171,172,178).

In advanced metastatic germ cell tumours, the extent of the disease is correlated with the response to therapy and with survival. The combination of cisplatin-based chemotherapy and surgery (aggressive multimodality) achieves cure rates of between 65% and 85%, depending on the initial extent of disease (332,333). Complete response rates to chemotherapy are in the order of 50-60% (332); another 20-30% of patients could be rendered disease-free with post-chemotherapy surgery (334).
The main reasons for failure of therapy in advanced NSGCT are (331,335,336):

- the presence of bulky disease not responding completely to chemotherapy;
- unresectable residual teratoma after chemotherapy;
- the presence or development of chemoresistant non-germ elements, which account for 8.2% of cases.

Table 15 presents the recommended minimum follow-up schedule in advanced NSGCT and seminoma.

Table 15: Recommended minimum follow-up schedule in advanced NSGCT and seminoma

Procedure	Year			
	1	2	3-5	Thereafter
Physical examination	4 times	4 times	Twice/year	Once/year
Tumour markers	4 times	4 times	Twice/year	Once/year
Chest X-ray	4 times	4 times	Twice/year	Once/year
Abdominopelvic CT scan*†	Twice	Twice	as indicated	as indicated
Chest CT scan†‡	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated

Brain CT scan§	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated	As indicated

CT = computed tomography scan.

**Abdominal CT scanning must be performed at least annually if teratoma is found in the retroperitoneum.*
†If the post-chemotherapy evaluation in a seminoma patient shows any mass > 3 cm, the appropriate CT scan should be repeated 2 and 4 months later to ensure that the mass is continuing to regress. If available, FDG-PET scanning can be performed.
‡A chest CT scan is indicated if abnormality is detected on chest X-ray and after pulmonary resection.
§In patients with headaches, focal neurological findings, or any central nervous system symptoms.

9. TESTICULAR STROMAL TUMOURS

9.1 Background

Testicular stromal tumours are rare and account for only 2-4% of adult testicular tumours. However, only Leydig cell and Sertoli cell tumours are of clinical relevance. As no general recommendations have been published to date, the Testicular Cancer Working Group of the European Association of Urology (EAU) has decided to include these tumours in the EAU Germ Cell Tumour Guidelines. Recommendations for diagnosis and treatment are given only for Leydig and Sertoli cell tumours.

9.2 Methods

A Medline search for Leydig cell tumours (synonym: interstitial cell tumour) and Sertoli cell tumours (synonym: androblastoma) was performed. Approximately 850 papers were found. After excluding pure laboratory work without clinical data, female and paediatric tumours and animal cases, 371 papers and abstracts were reviewed. Double publications and papers with unclear histology or missing data on clinical course were excluded. The majority of the remaining 285 publications are case reports, with only a few papers reporting series of more than 10 cases, most of them published in the pathology literature. The true incidence of stromal tumours therefore remains uncertain, and the proportion of metastatic tumours can only be given approximately.

Nevertheless, the symptoms for pre-operative suspicion of testicular stromal tumours and the characteristics of tumours at high risk for metastases are sufficiently well established (LE: 2a/2b) to enable recommendations to be made regarding diagnosis and surgical approach. However, no recommendations for appropriate follow-up can be given due to the absence of follow-up data in most reported cases, and the fatal outcome of metastatic tumours, irrespective of the therapy chosen.

The individual publications have been rated according to level of evidence (see above).

The literature research for clinical data on Leydig cell tumours resulted in 193 publications dealing with more than 480 tumours in adults, including three publications (1-3) reporting larger series on a total of 90 patients. Follow-up data of more than 2 years are available for about 80 patients.

The literature research for clinical data on Sertoli cell tumours resulted in 93 publications dealing with more than 260 tumours in adults, including three publications (from the same group) (4-6) reporting on a total of 80 patients. Follow-up data of more than 2 years are available in fewer than 40 patients.

9.3 Classification

The non-germ cell tumours of the testicle include the sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours and the miscellaneous non-specific stromal tumours. The different histological subtypes of testicular tumours are defined according to the WHO classification 2004 (adapted) (7).

9.4 Leydig cell tumours

*9.4.1 **Epidemiology***

Leydig cell tumours constitute about 1-3% of adult testicular tumours (2,8) and 3% of testicular tumours in infants and children (8). The tumour is most common in the third to sixth decade in adults, with a similar incidence observed in every decade. Another peak incidence is seen in children aged between 3 and 9 years.

Only 3% of Leydig cell tumours are bilateral (2). Occasionally, they occur in patients with Klinefelter's syndrome (8).

9.4.2 ***Pathology of Leydig cell tumours***

Leydig cell tumours are the most common type of sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours. Histopathologically, they are well outlined and usually up to 5 cm in diameter. They are also solid, coloured yellow to tan, with haemorrhage and/or necrosis present in 30% of cases. Microscopically, the cells are polygonal, with eosinophilic cytoplasm with occasional Reinke crystals, regular nucleus, solid arrangement and capillary stroma. The cells express vimentin, inhibin, protein S-100, steroid hormones, calretinin and cytokeratin (focally) (7).

About 10% of Leydig cell tumours are malignant tumours, which present with the following parameters:

- large size (> 5 cm);
- cytological atypia;
- increased mitotic activity (> 3 per 10 high-power field [HPF]);
- increased MIB-1 expression (18.6% vs 1.2% in benign);
- necrosis;
- vascular invasion (9);
- infiltrative margins;
- extension beyond the testicular parenchyma;
- DNA aneuploidy (1,10).

9.4.3 ***Diagnosis***

Patients either present with a painless enlarged testis or the tumour is an incidental ultrasound finding. In up to 80% of cases, hormonal disorders with high oestrogen and oestradiol levels and low testosterone, increased levels of LH and FSH are reported (11,12), while negative results are always obtained for the testicular germ cell tumour-markers AFP, hCG, LDH and PLAP. Approximately 30% of patients present with gynaecomastia (13,14). Only 3% of tumours are bilateral (2). Leydig cell tumours must be distinguished from the multinodular tumour-like and often bilaterally occurring lesions of the androgenital syndrome (15).

Diagnostic work-up must include markers, hormones (at least testosterone, LH and FSH; if not conclusive, additionally oestrogen, oestradiol, progesterone and cortisol), ultrasound of both testes, and CT scan of chest and abdomen. On ultrasound, it may be possible to observe well-defined, small, hypoechoic lesions with hypervascularisation, but the appearance is variable and is indistinguishable from germ cell tumours (16,17). The proportion of metastatic tumours in all published case reports is only 10%. Within three larger series with longer follow-up, 18 metastatic tumours were found in a total of 83 cases (21.7%) (1-3). Histopathological signs of malignancy have been depicted above (see 4.2) (1,10). In addition, patients of older age have a greater risk of harbouring a tumour of malignant potential.

9.4.4 ***Treatment***

Asymptomatic testicular tumours of small volume are often misinterpreted as germ cell tumours, and inguinal orchidectomy is performed. It is highly recommended to perform an organ-sparing procedure in every small intraparenchymal lesion in order to obtain the histological diagnosis. Especially in patients with symptoms of gynaecomastia or hormonal disorders, a non germ-cell tumour should be considered and immediate orchidectomy avoided (18). In cases of germ cell tumour in either frozen (fresh tissue) section or paraffin histology, orchidectomy is recommended as long as a contralateral normal testicle is present.

In stromal tumours with histological signs of malignancy, especially in patients of older age, orchidectomy and retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy is recommended to prevent metastases (19). Without histological signs of malignancy, an individualised surveillance strategy after orchidectomy is recommended (CT follow-up may be most appropriate since specific tumour markers are not available).

Tumours that have metastasised to lymph nodes, lung, liver or bone respond poorly to chemotherapy or radiation and survival is poor (19).

9.4.5 ***Follow-up***

Recommendations for appropriate follow-up cannot be given because of the lack of follow-up data in most reported cases and the lethal outcome of metastatic tumours, irrespective of the therapy chosen.

9.5 Sertoli cell tumour

9.5.1 ***Epidemiology***

Sertoli cell tumours account for fewer than 1% of testicular tumours, and the mean age at diagnosis is around 45 years, with rare cases under 20 years of age (4,20). On rare occasions, these tumours may develop in patients with androgen insensitivity syndrome and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome.

*9.5.2 **Pathology of Sertoli cell tumours***

The tumour is well circumscribed, yellow, tan or white, with an average diameter of 3.5 cm (4). Microscopically, the cells are eosinophilic to pale with vacuolated cytoplasm. The nuclei are regular with grooves and there may be inclusions. The arrangement of the cells is tubular or solid; a cord-like or retiform pattern is possible. The stroma is fine and capillary, but in some cases a sclerosing aspect predominates. The cells express vimentin, cytokeratins, inhibin (40%) and protein S-100 (30%) (4).

The rate of malignant tumours ranges between 10% and 22%, and fewer than 50 cases have been reported (21-23). Signs of a malignant Sertoli tumour are:

- large size (> 5 cm);
- pleomorphic nuclei with nucleoli;
- increased mitotic activity (> 5 per 10 HPF);
- necrosis;
- vascular invasion.

9.5.2.1 Classification

Three subtypes have been described (20):

- the classic Sertoli cell tumour (4);
- the large cell calcifying form with characteristic calcifications (5,24);
- the rare sclerosing form (6,25).

*9.5.3 **Diagnosis***

Patients present either with an enlarged testis or the tumour is an incidental ultrasound finding (26). Most classic Sertoli tumours are unilateral and unifocal. Hormonal disorders are infrequent, although gynaecomastia is sometimes seen (4). The testicular tumour-markers AFP, hCG, LDH and PLAP are always negative.

Diagnostic work-up must include tumour markers, hormones (at least testosterone, LH and FSH; if not conclusive, additionally oestrogen, oestradiol, progesterone and cortisol), ultrasound of both testes and CT scan of chest and abdomen.

Sertoli cell tumours are generally hypoechoic on ultrasound, but they can be of variant appearance and therefore cannot be safely distinguished from germ cell tumours (20). Only the large cell calcifying form has a characteristic image with brightly echogenic foci due to calcification (27,28).

The large cell calcifying form is diagnosed in younger men and is associated with genetic syndromes (Carney's complex [29] and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome [30]) or, in about 40% of cases, endocrine disorders. A total of 44% of cases are bilateral, either synchronous or metachronous, and 28% show multifocality (24).

The characteristics of metastatic tumours have been depicted above (24,25). However, among patients whose tumours have been histopathologically classified as 'malignant' using these or similar characteristics (i.e. 18.8% of tumours in all reported cases), only 7% showed metastatic disease during follow-up.

In the largest series with the longest follow-up, 7.5% of patients had been classified as 'malignant' at primary diagnosis and 11.7% showed metastatic disease long-term (4). In general, affected patients are of higher age, tumours are nearly always palpable, and show more than one sign of malignancy (4).

Up to 20% of the large cell sclerosing form are malignant. There are some hints that discrimination between an early and late onset type may define a different risk for metastatic disease (5.5% compared with 23%) (20). Metastases in the infrequent sclerosing subtype are rare.

*9.5.4 **Treatment***

Testicular tumours of small volume, otherwise asymptomatic, are often misinterpreted as germ cell tumours and inguinal orchidectomy is performed. It is highly recommended to proceed with an organ-sparing approach in small intraparenchymal testicular lesions until final histology is available. Especially in patients with symptoms of gynaecomastia or hormonal disorders or typical imaging on ultrasound (calcifications, small circumscribed tumours), organ-sparing surgery should be considered. Secondary orchidectomy can be performed if final pathology reveals a non-stromal (e.g. germ cell) tumour. Organ-sparing surgical approaches are justified as long as the remaining testicular parenchyma is sufficient for endocrine (and in stromal tumours also exocrine) function.

In tumours with histological signs of malignancy, especially in patients of older age, orchidectomy and

retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy are recommended to prevent metastases (19). Without signs of malignancy, an individualised surveillance strategy after orchidectomy is recommended (CT scans may be most appropriate since specific tumour-markers are not available). Tumours metastasising to lymph nodes, lung or bone respond poorly to chemotherapy or radiation, and survival is poor.

9.5.5 ***Follow-up***

Recommendations for appropriate follow-up cannot be given because of the lack of follow-up data in most reported cases and the lethal outcome of metastatic tumours, irrespective of the therapy chosen.

9.6 Granulosa cell tumour

This is a rare tumour, with two variants: juvenile and adult.

- The juvenile type is benign. It is the most frequent congenital testicle tumour and represents 6.6% of all prepubertal testicular neoplasms. The cystic appearance is characteristic of this tumour type (31).
- With the adult type, the average age at presentation is 44 years. The typical morphology is of a homogeneous, yellow-grey tumour, with elongated cells with grooves in microfollicular and Call-Exner body arrangements.

Malignant tumours represent around 20% of cases. They are usually > 7 cm diameter. Vascular invasion and necrosis are features suggestive of malignant biology (32).

9.7 Thecoma/fibroma group of tumours

These tumours are very rare and benign (7).

9.8 Other sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours

Sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours may be incompletely differentiated or mixed forms.
There is limited experience with incompletely differentiated sex cord/gonadal stromal tumours and no cases of reported metastasis (7). In mixed tumour forms, all the histological components should be reported. However, the clinical behaviour is most likely to reflect the predominant pattern or the most aggressive component of the tumour (33).

9.9 Tumours containing germ cell and sex cord/gonadal stromal (gonadoblastoma)

If the arrangement of the germ cells are in a nested pattern and the rest of the tumour is composed of sex cord/gonadal stroma, the term gonadoblastoma is used. It is most frequent in gonadal dysgenesis with ambiguous genitalia. Bilateral tumours are present in 40% of cases. The prognosis is correlated with the invasive growth of the germinal component (34).

In the case of a diffuse arrangement of the different components, there are some doubts about the neoplastic nature of the germinal cells and some authors consider them to be entrapped rather than neoplastic (35).

9.10 Miscellaneous tumours of the testis

9.10.1 ***Tumours of ovarian epithelial types***

These tumours resemble the epithelial tumours of the ovary. A cystic appearance with occasional mucinous material can be observed. Microscopically, the aspect is identical to their ovarian counterparts, and their evolution is similar to that of the different epithelial ovarian subtypes. Some Brenner types can be malignant (7).

9.10.2 ***Tumours of the collecting ducts and rete testis***

These tumours are very rare. Benign (adenoma) and malignant (adenocarcinoma) have been reported, with malignant tumours showing local growth with a mortality rate of 56% (18).

9.10.3 ***Tumours (benign and malignant) of non-specific stroma***

These are very uncommon and have a similar criteria, prognosis and treatment as do the soft tissue sarcomas.

10. REFERENCES

10.1 Germ cell tumours

1. La Vecchia C, Bosetti C, Lucchini F, et al. Cancer Mortality in Europe, 2000-2004, and an overview of trends since 1995. Ann Oncol. 2010 Jun;21(6):1323-60. Epub 2009 Nov 30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19948741
2. Cancer Incidence in Five Continents, Vol IX. Curado MP, Edwards B, Shin R, et al eds. IARC Scientific Publication 2007, No. 160. http://www.iarc.fr/en/publications/pdfs-online/epi/index.php
3. Engholm G, Ferlay J, Christensen N, et al. NORDCAN--a Nordic tool for cancer information, planning, quality control and research. Acta Oncol 2010 Jun;49(5):725-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20491528
4. Jemal A, Siegel R, Ward E, et al. Cancer Statistics, 2009. CA Cancer J Clin 2009 Jul-Aug;59(4):225-49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19474385
5. Huyghe E, Matsuda T, Thonneau P. Increasing incidence of testicular cancer worldwide: a review. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):5-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796635
6. McGlynn KA, Devesa SS, Sigurdson AJ, et al. Trends in the incidence of testicular germ cell tumours in the United States. Cancer 2003 Jan;97(1):63-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12491506
7. Bosl GJ, Motzer RJ. Testicular germ-cell cancer. N Engl J Med 1997 Nov;337(4):242-53. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9227931
8. Kuczyk MA, Serth J, Bokemeyer C, et al. Alterations of the p53 tumour suppressor gene in carcinoma in situ of the testis. Cancer 1996 Nov;78(9):1958-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8909317
9. Looijenga LH, Gillis AJ, Stoop H, et al. Relevance of microRNAs in normal and malignant development, including human testicular germ cell tumours. Int J Androl 2007 Aug;30(4):304-14; discussion 314-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17573854
10. Reuter VE. Origins and molecular biology of testicular germ cell tumors. Mod Pathol 2005 Feb;18(Suppl 2):S51-S60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15761466
11. Rapley EA, Turnbull C, Al Olama AA, et al; UK Testicular Cancer Collaboration. A genome-wide association study of testicular germ cell tumor. Nat Genet 2009 Jul;41(7):807-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19483681
12. Kanetsky PA, Mitra N, Vardhanabhuti S, et al. Common variation in KITLG and at 5q31.3 predisposes to testicular germ cell cancer. Nat Genet 2009 Jul;41(7):811-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19483682
13. Korkola JE, Houldsworth J, Feldman DR, et al. Identification and validation of a gene expression signature that predicts outcome in adult men with germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 1;27(31):5240-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19770384
14. Osterlind A, Berthelsen JG, Abildgaard N, et al. Risk of bilateral testicular germ cell tumours in Denmark: 1960-1984. J Natl Cancer Inst 1991 Oct;83(19):1391-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1656057
15. Møller H, Prener A, Skakkebaek NE. Testicular cancer, cryptorchidism, inguinal hernia, testicular atrophy and genital malformations: case-control studies in Denmark. Cancer Causes Control 1996 Mar;7(2):264-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8740739
16. Dieckmann KP, Pichlmeier U. The prevalence of familial testicular cancer: An analysis of two patient populations and a review of the literature. Cancer 1997 Nov;80(10):1954-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366298
17. Forman D, Oliver RT, Brett AR, et al. Familial testicular cancer: a report of the UK family register, estimation of risk and a HLA class 1 sib-pair analysis. Br J Cancer 1992 Feb;65(2):255-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1739626
18. Weestergaard T, Olsen JH, Frisch M, et al. Cancer risk in fathers and brothers of testicular cancer patients in Denmark. A population based study. Int J Cancer 1996 May;66(5):627-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8647624

19. Dieckmann KP, Loy V, Buttner P. Prevalence of bilateral germ cell tumours and early detection based on contralateral testicular intra-epithelial neoplasia. Br J Urol 1993 Mar;71(3):340-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8386582
20. Peng X, Zeng Z, Peng S, et al. The Association risk of male subfertility and testicular cancer: A systematic review. PLoS ONE 4(5):e5591. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19440348
21. Dieckmann KP, Hartmann JT, Classen J, et al. Tallness is associated with risk of testicular cancer: evidence for the nutrition hypothesis. Br J Cancer 2008 Nov 4;99(9):1517-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18827809
22. Dieckmann KP, Hartmann JT, Classen J, et al. Is increased body mass index associated with the incidence of testicular germ cell cancer? J Cancer Res Clin Oncol. 2009 May;135(5):731-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19002497
23. Wanderas EH, Tretli S, Fossa SD. Trends in incidence of testicular cancer in Norway 1955-1992. Eur J Cancer 1995 Nov;31A(12):2044-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8562163
24. Jones A, Fergus JN, Chapman J, et al. Is surveillance for stage I germ cell tumours of the testis appropiate outside a specialist centre? BJU Int 1999 Jul;84(1):79-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10444129
25. Collette L, Sylvester RJ, Stenning SP, et al. Impact of the treating institution on survival of patients with “poor-prognosis” metastatic nonseminoma. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genitourinary Tract Cancer Collaborative Group and the Medical Research Council Testicular Cancer Working Party. J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 May;91(10):839-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10340903
26. Capitanio U, Jeldres C, Perrotte P, et al. Population-based study of perioperative mortality after retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy for nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumors. Urology 2009 Aug;74(2):373-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19501893
27. Fléchon A, Tavernier E, Boyle H, et al. Long-term oncological outcome after post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in men with metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell tumour. BJU Int. 2010 Sep;106(6):779-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20089110
28. Warde P, Specht L, Horwich A, et al. Prognostic factors for relapse in stage I seminoma managed by surveillance: a pooled analysis. J Clin Oncol 2002 Nov;20(22):4448-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12431967
29. Shelley MD, Burgon K, Mason MD. Treatment of testicular germ-cell cancer: a cochrane evidence-based systematic review. Cancer Treat Rev 2002 Oct;28(5):237-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12435371
30. Krege S, Beyer J, Souchon R, et al. European consensus conference on diagnosis and treatment of germ cell cancer: a report of the second meeting of the European Germ Cell Cancer Consensus group (EGCCCG): part I. Eur Urol 2008 Mar;53(3):478-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191324
31. Krege S, Beyer J, Souchon R, et al. European consensus conference on diagnosis and treatment of germ cell cancer: a report of the second meeting of the European Germ Cell Cancer Consensus Group (EGCCCG): part II. Eur Urol 2008 Mar;53(3):497-513. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18191015
32. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2001). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. [accessed February 2011]. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025
33. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
34. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
35. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

36. Albers P, Albrecht W, Algaba F, et al; European Association of Urology. EAU guidelines on testicular cancer: 2011 update. Eur Urol 2011 Aug;60(2):304-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21632173
37. WHO histological classification of testis tumours, In: Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, Sesterhenn IA, eds. Pathology & Genetics. Tumours of the urinary system and male genital organs. Lyons: IARC Press, 2004: 218, pp. 250-262.
38. Germa-Lluch JR, Garcia del Muro X, Maroto P, et al. Spanish Germ-Cell Cancer Group (GG). Clinical pattern and therapeutic results achieved in 1490 patients with germ-cell tumours of the testis: the experience of the Spanish Germ-Cell Cancer Group (GG). Eur Urol 2002 Dec;42(6):553-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12477650
39. Richie JP, Birnholz J, Garnick MB. Ultrasonography as a diagnostic adjunct for the evaluation of masses in the scrotum. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1982 May;154(5):695-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7071705
40. Kim W, Rosen MA, Langer JE, et al. US-MR Imaging correlation in pathologic conditions of the scrotum. Radiographics 2007 Sep-Oct;27(5):1239-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17848688
41. Shaw J. Diagnosis and treatment of testicular cancer. Am Fam Physician. 2008 Feb 15;77(4):469-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18326165
42. Angulo JC, Gonzalez J, Rodriguez N, et al. Clinicopathological study of regressed testicular tumors (apparent extragonadal germ cell neoplasms). J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2303-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19762049
43. Scholz M, Zehender M, Thalmann GN, et al. Extragonadal retroperitoneal germ cell tumor: evidence of origin in testis. Ann Oncol 2002 Jan;13(1):121-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11863093
44. Mancini M, Carmignani L, Gazzano G, et al. High prevalence of testicular cancer in azoospermic men without spermatogenesis. Hum Reprod 2007 Apr; 22(4):1042-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220165
45. Elzinga-Tinke JE, Sirre ME, Looijenga LH, et al. The predictive value of testicular ultrasound abnormalities for carcinoma in situ of the testis in men at risk for testicular cancer. Int J Androl 2010 Aug 1;33(4):597-603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19845800
46. DeCastro BJ, Peterson AC, Costabile RA. A 5-year followup study of asymptomatic men with testicular microlithiasis. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1420-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18289592
47. Montgomery JS, Bloom DA. The diagnosis and management of scrotal masses. Med Clin North Am 2011 Jan;95(1):235-44. Review. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21095426
48. Cassidy FH, Ishioka KM, McMahon CJ, et al. MR imaging of scrotal tumors and pseudotumors. Radiographics 2010 May;30(3):665-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20462987
49. Johnson JO, Mattrey RF, Phillipson J. Differentiation of seminomatous from nonseminomatous testicular tumours with MR imaging. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1990;154(3):539-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2106218
50. Klein EA. Tumour markers in testis cancer. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Feb;20(1):67-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7679533
51. Peyret C. Tumeurs du testicule. Synthèse et recommandations en onco-urologie. Prog Urol 1993;2:60-4. [Testicular tumours. Summary of onco-urological recommendations] [Article in French]
52. Javadpour N. The role of biologic markers in testicular cancer. Cancer 1980 Apr;45(7 Suppl):1755-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6154517
53. Heidenreich A, Weissbach L, Holth W, et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Organ sparing surgery for malignant germ cell tumour of the testis. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2161-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696727
54. Petersen PM, Giwercman A, Daugaard G, et al. Effect of graded testicular doses of radiotherapy in patients treated for carcinoma-insitu in the testis. J Clin Oncol 2002 Aug;20(6):1537-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11896102
55. Heidenreich A, Höltl W, Albrecht W, et al. Testis-preserving surgery in bilateral testicular germ cell tumours. Br J Urol 1997 Feb;79(2):253-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052478

56. Weissbach L. Organ preserving surgery of malignant germ cell tumours. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):90-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966800
57. Sobin LH, Gospodariwicz M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM classification of malignant tumors. UICC International Union Against Cancer, 7th edn. Wiley-Blackwell, 2009 Dec; pp 249-254. http://www.uicc.org/tnm/
58. Dieckmann KP, Loy V. Prevalence of contralatral testicular intraepithelial neoplasia in patients with testicular germ cell neoplasms. J Clin Oncol 1996 Dec;14(12):3126-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8955658
59. Von der Maase H, Rorth M, Walbom-Jorgensen S, et al. Carcinoma-in-situ of contralateral testis in patients with testicular germ cell cancer: study of 27 cases in 500 patients. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1986 Nov;293(6559):1398-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3026550
60. Harland SJ, Cook PA, Fossa SD, et al. Intratubular germ cell neoplasia of contralateral testis in testicular cancer: defining a high risk group. J Urol 1998 Oct;160(4):1353-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751353
61. Tabernero J, Paz-Ares L, Salazar R, et al. Incidence of contralateral germ cell testicular tumours in South Europe: report of the experience at 2 Spanish university hospitals and review of the literature. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):164-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665868
62. Herr HW, Sheinfeld J. Is biopsy of the contralateral testis necessary in patients with germ cell tumors? J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1331-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302113
63. Albers P, Göll A, Bierhoff E, et al. Clinical course and histopathologic risk factor assessment in patients with bilateral testicular germ cell tumours. Urology 1999 Oct;54(4):714-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510934
64. Giwercman A, Bruun E, Frimotd-Muller C, et al. Prevalence of carcinoma in situ and other histopathological abnormalities in testes of men with a history of cryptorchidism. J Urol 1989 Oct;142(4):998-1001. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2571738
65. Heidenreich A, Moul JW. Contralateral testicular biopsy procedure in patients with unilateral testis cancer: is it indicated? Sem Urol Oncol 2002 Nov;20(4):234-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12489055
66. Dieckmann KP, Kulejewski M, Pichlmeier U, et al. Diagnosis of contralateral testicular intraepithelial neoplasia (TIN) in patients with testicular germ cell cancer: systematic two-site biopsies are more sensitive than a single random biopsy. Eur Urol 2007 Jan:51(1):175-83; discussion 183-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16814456
67. Kliesch S, Thomaidis T, Schütte B, et al. Update on the diagnostic safety for detection of testicular intraepithelial neoplasia (TIN). APMIS 2003 Jan;111(1):70-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12752238
68. Classen J, Dieckmann K, Bamberg M, et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Radiotherapy with 16 Gy may fail to eradicate testicular intraepithelial neoplasia: preliminary communication of a dose-reduction trial of the German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Br J Cancer 2003 Mar;88(6): 828-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12644817
69. Leibovitch I, Foster RS, Kopecky KK, et al. Improved accuracy of computerized tomography based clinical staging in low stage nonseminomatous germ cell cancer using size criteria of retroperitoneal lymph nodes. J Urol 1995 Nov;154(5):1759-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7563341
70. Jing B, Wallace S, Zornoza J. Metastases to retroperitoneal and pelvic lymph nodes: computed tomography and lymphangiography. Radiol Clin North Am 1982 Sep;20(3):511-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7051132
71. Souchon R, Gertenbach U, Dieckmann KP, et al. Contralateral testicular cancer in spite of TIN-negative double biopsies and interval cisplatin chemotherapy. J. Strahlenther Onkol. 2006 May;182(5):289-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16673063
72. Hoei-Hansen CE, Rajpert-De Meyts E, Daugaard G, et al. Carcinoma in situ testis, the progenitor of testicular germ cell tumours: a clinical review. Ann Oncol 2005 Jun;16(6):863-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821122

73. Husband JE, Barrett A, Peckham MJ. Evaluation of computed tomography in the management of testicular teratoma. Br J Urol 1981 Apr;53(2):179-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7237052
74. Swanson DA. Role of retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy (RLDN) when patients with nonseminomatous germ cell testicular tumours are at high risk of needing lymph node surgery plus chemotherapy, in Donohue JP (ed.). Lymph Node Surgery in Urology. International Society of Urology Reports. Oxford: Isis Medical Media, 1995, pp. 133-140.
75. Ellis JH, Blies JR, Kopecky KK, et al. Comparison of NMR and CT imaging in the evaluation of metastatic retroperitoneal lymphadenopathy from testicular carcinoma. J Comput Assist Tomogr 1984 Aug;8(4):709-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6539790
76. Sohaib SA, Koh DM, Barbachano Y, et al. Prospective assessment of MRI for imaging retroperitoneal metastases from testicular germ cell tumours. Clin Radiol 2009 Apr;64(4):362-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19264179
77. See WA, Hoxie L. Chest staging in testis cancer patients: imaging modality selection based upon risk assessment as determined by abdominal computerized tomography scan results. J Urol 1993 Sep;150(3):874-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8345604
78. de Wit M, Brenner W, Hartmann M, et al. [18F]-FDG-PET in clinical stage I/II non-seminomatous germ cell tumours: results of the German multicentre trial. Ann Oncol 2008 Sep;19(9):1619-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18453520
79. Huddart RA, O'Doherty MJ, Padhani A, et al. NCRI Testis Tumour Clinical Study Group. 18fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography in the prediction of relapse in patients with high-risk, clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumors: preliminary report of MRC Trial TE22--the NCRI Testis Tumour Clinical Study Group. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jul 20;25(21):3090-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17634488
80. Cremerius U, Wildberger JE, Borchers H, et al. Does positron emission tomography using 18-fluoro-2-deoxyglucose improve clinical staging of testicular cancer?– Results of a study in 50 patients. Urology 1999 Nov;54(5):900-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10565755
81. Albers P, Bender H, Yilmaz H, et al. Positron emission tomography in the clinical staging of patients with Stage I and II testicular germ cell tumours. Urology 1999 Apr;53(4):808-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10197862
82. De Santis M, Becherer A, Bokemeyer C, et al. 2-18fluoro-deoxy-D-glucose positron emission tomography is a reliable predictor for viable tumor in postchemotherapy seminoma: an update of the prospective multicentric SEMPET trial. J Clin Oncol 2004 Mar;22(6):1034-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15020605
83. Spermon JR, De Geus-Oei LF, Kiemeney LA, et al. The role of (18)fluoro-2-deoxyglucose positron emission tomography in initial staging and re-staging after chemotherapy for testicular germ cell tumours. BJU Int 2002 Apr;89(6):549-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11942962
84. Oechsle K, Hartmann M, Brenner W, et al. German Multicenter Positron Emission Tomography Study Group. 18F]Fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography in nonseminomatous germ cell tumors after chemotherapy: the German multicenter positron emission tomography study group. J Clin Oncol 2008 Dec 20;26(36):5930-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19018083
85. Hinz S, Schrader M, Kempkensteffen C, et al. The role of positron emission tomography in the evaluation of residual masses after chemotherapy for advanced stage seminoma. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):936-40; discussion 940.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207171
86. Zagars GK. Management of stage I seminoma: radiotherapy, in Horwich A (ed.). Testicular Cancer: Investigation and Management. London: Chapman & Hall Medical, 1999, p. 99.
87. Klepp O, Flodgren P, Maartman-Moe H, et al. Early clinical stages (CS1, CS1Mk+ and CS2A) of non-seminomatous testis cancer. Value of preand postorchidectomy serum tumour marker information in prediction of retroperitoneal lymph node metastases. Swedish-Norwegian Testicular Cancer Project (SWENOTECA). Ann Oncol 1990 Jul;1(4):281-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1702312
88. Schottenfeld D, Warshauer ME, Sherlock S, et al. The epidemiology of testicular cancer in young adults. Am J Epidemiol 1980 Aug;112(2):232-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6106385

89. International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group. International Germ Cell Consensus Classification: a prognostic factor-based staging system for metastatic germ cell cancers. J Clin Oncol 1997 Feb;15(2):594-603.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053482
90. Aparicio J, Germà JR, García del Muro X, et al. Second Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Cooperative Group. Risk-adapted management for patients with clinical stage I seminoma: the Second Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Cooperative Group study. J Clin Oncol 2005 Dec 1;23(34):8717-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16260698
91. Bokemeyer C, Schmoll HJ. Treatment of clinical stage I testicular cancer and a possible role for new biological prognostic parameters. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122(10):575-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8879254
92. Albers P, Siener R, Kliesch S, et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Risk factors for relapse in clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumours: results of the German Testicular Cancer Study Group Trial. J Clin Oncol 2003 Apr;21(8):1505-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12697874
93. Petersen PM, Giwercman A, Skakkebaek NE, et al. Gonadal function in men with testicular cancer. Semin Oncol 998 Apr;25(2):224-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9562456
94. De Santis M, Albrecht W, Höltl W, et al. Impact of cytotoxic treatment on long-term fertility in patients with germ-cell cancer. Int J Cancer 1999 Dec;83(6):864-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10597213
95. Jacobsen KD, Fosså SD, Bjøro TP, et al. Gonadal function and fertility in patients with bilateral testicular germ cell malignancy. Eur Urol 2002 Sep;42(3):229-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12234507
96. Kliesch S, Behre HM, Jürgens H, et al. Cryopreservation of semen from adolescent patients with malignancies. Med Pediatr Oncol 1996 Jan;26(1):20-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7494508
97. Giwercman A, von der Maase H, Rørth M, et al. Semen quality in testicular tumour and CIS in the contralateral testis. Lancet 1993 Feb;341(8841):384-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8094162
98. Kliesch S, Bergmann M, Hertle L, et al. Semen parameters and testicular pathology in men with testicular cancer and contralateral carcinoma in situ or bilateral testicular malignancies. Hum Reprod 1997 Dec;12(12):2830-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9455863
99. Spermon JR, Kiemeney LA, Meuleman EJ, et al. Fertility in men with testicular germ cell tumours. Fertil Steril 2003 Jun;79(Suppl 3):1543-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12801557
100. Nieschlag E, Behre HM. Pharmacology and clinical use of testosterone, in Nieschlag E, Behre HM (eds). Testosterone-Action, Deficiency, Substitution. Berlin–Heidelberg-New York: Springer, 1999, pp. 92-114.
101. Skoogh J, Steineck G, Cavallin-Ståhl E, et al; on behalf of SWENOTECA. Feelings of loss and uneasiness or shame after removal of a testicle by orchidectomy: a population-based long-term follow-up of testicular cancer survivors. Int J Androl. 2010 Jun 7. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20550599
102. Groll RJ, Warde P, Jewett MA. A comprehensive systematic review of testicular germ cell tumor surveillance. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 2007 Dec;64(3):182-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17644403
103. Aparicio J, García del Muro X, Maroto P, et al. Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Cooperative Group (GG). Multicenter study evaluating a dual policy of postorchidectomy surveillance and selective adjuvant single-agent carboplatin for patients with clinical stage I seminoma. Ann Oncol 2003 Jun;14(6):867-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796024
104. Chung P, Mayhew LA, Warde P, et al; Genitourinary Cancer Disease Site Group of Cancer Care Ontario's Program in Evidence-based Care. Management of stage I seminomatous testicular cancer: a systematic review. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2010 Feb;22(1):6-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19775876
105. Tandstad T, Smaaland R, Solberg A, et al. Management of Seminomatous Testicular Cancer: A Binational Prospective Population-Based Study From the Swedish Norwegian Testicular Cancer Study Group (SWENOTECA). J Clin Oncol 2011 Feb 20;29(6);719-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21205748

106. Oliver RT, Mead GM, Rustin GJ, et al. Randomized trial of carboplatin versus radiotherapy for stage I seminoma: mature results on relapse and contralateral testis cancer rates in MRC TE19/EORTC 30982 study (ISRCTN27163214). J Clin Oncol 2011 Mar 10;29(8):957-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21282539
107. Oliver RT, Mason MD, Mead GM, et al. MRC TE19 collaborators and the EORTC 30982 collaborators. Radiotherapy versus single-dose carboplatin in adjuvant treatment of stage I seminoma: a randomised trial. Lancet 2005 Jul;23-29;366(9482):293-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16039331
108. Mead GM, Fossa SD, Oliver RT, et al. MRC/EORTC seminoma trial collaborators. Randomized trials in 2466 patients with stage I seminoma: patterns of relapse and follow-up. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2011 Feb 2;103(3):241-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21212385
109. Aparicio J, Germà JR, García del Muro X, et al. The Second Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Cooperative Group. Risk-adapted management for patients with clinical stage I seminoma: the Second Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Cooperative Group study. J Clin Oncol 2005 Dec;23(34):8717-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16260698
110. Schoffski P, Höhn N, Kowalski R, et al. Health-related quality of life (QoL) in patients with seminoma stage I treated with either adjuvant radiotherapy (RT) or two cycles of carboplatinum chemotherapy (CT): Results of a randomized phase III trial of the German Interdisciplinary Working Party on Testicular Cancer. ASCO Annual Meeting Proceedings. Part 1. J Clin Oncol 2007;25(Suppl 18S):5050. http://www.asco.org/ASCOv2/Meetings/Abstracts?&vmview=abst_detail_view&confID=47&abstractID=32158
111. Fosså SD, Horwich A, Russell JM, et al. Optimal planning target volume for stage I testicular seminoma: A Medical Research Council Testicular Tumor Working Group randomized trial. J Clin Oncol 1999 Apr;17(4):1146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561173
112. Jones WG, Fossa SD, Mead GM, et al. A randomized trial of two radiotherapy schedules in the adjuvant treatment of stage I seminoma (MRC TE 18). Eur J Cancer 2001;37(Suppl 6):S157, abstr 572.
113. Melchior D, Hammer P, Fimmers R, et al. Long term results and morbidity of paraaortic compared with paraaortic and iliac adjuvant radiation in clinical stage I seminoma. Anticancer Res 2001 Jul-Aug;21(4B):2989-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11712799
114. Livsey JE, Taylor B, Mobarek N, et al. Patterns of relapse following radiotherapy for stage I seminoma of the testis: implications for follow-up. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2001;13(4):296-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11554630
115. Van Leeuwen FE, Stiggelbout AM, van den Belt-Dusebout AW, et al. Second cancer risk following testicular cancer: a follow-up study of 1,909 patients. Clin Oncol 1993 Mar;11(3):415-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8445415
116. Travis LB, Curtis RE, Storm H, et al. Risk of second malignant neoplasms among long-term survivors of testicular cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1997 Oct;89(19):1429-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9326912
117. Robinson D, Møller H, Horwich A. Mortality and incidence of second cancers following treatment for testicular cancer. Br J Cancer 2007 Feb 12;96(3):529-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17262080
118. Bieri S, Rouzaud M, Miralbell R. Seminoma of the testis: is scrotal shielding necessary when radiotherapy is limited to the para-aortic nodes? Radiother Oncol 1999 Mar;50(3):349-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10392822
119. van den Belt-Dusebout AW, de Wit R, Gietema JA, et al. Treatment-specific risks of second malignancies and cardiovascular disease in 5-year survivors of testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 2007 Oct 1;25(28):4370-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17906202
120. Warszawski N, Schmucking M. Relapses in early-stage testicular seminoma: radiation therapy versus retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy. Scan J Urol Nephrol 1997 Aug;31(4):335-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9290165
121. Aparicio J, Maroto P, del Muro XG, et al. Risk-adapted treatment in clinical stage I testicular seminoma: the third Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Group study. J Clin Oncol 2011 Dec 10;29(35): 4677-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22042940

122. Freedman LS, Parkinson MC, Jones WG, et al. Histopathology in the prediction of relapse of patients with stage I testicular teratoma treated by orchidectomy alone. Lancet 1987 Aug;2(8554):294-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2886764
123. Read G, Stenning SP, Cullen MH, et al. Medical Research Council prospective study of surveillance for stage I testicular teratoma. J Clin Oncol 1992 Nov;10(11):1762-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1403057
124. Colls BM, Harvey VJ, Skelton L, et al. Late results of surveillance of clinical stage I nonseminoma germ cell testicular tumours: 17 years' experience in a national study in New Zealand. Br J Urol Int 1999 Jan;83(1):76-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233456
125. Oliver RT, Ong J, Shamash J, et al. Anglian Germ Cell Cancer Group. Long-term follow-up of Anglian Germ Cell Cancer Group surveillance versus patients with Stage 1 nonseminoma treated with adjuvant chemotherapy. Urology 2004 Mar;63(3):556-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15028457
126. Zuniga A, Kakiashvili D, Jewett MA. Surveillance in stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumours of the testis. BJU Int 2009 Nov;104(9 Pt B):1351-6. Review. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19840012
127. Klepp O, Olsson AM, Henrikson H, et al. Prognostic factors in clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumours of the testis: multivariate analysis of a prospective multicenter study. J Clin Oncol 1990 Mar;8(3):509-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1689773
128. Kakiashvili D, Anson-Cartwright L, Sturgeon JF, et al. Non risk-adapted surveillance management for clinical stage I nonseminomatous testis tumors. J Urol 2007;177:278 (abstr #835).
129. Kollmannsberger C, Moore C, Chi KN, et al. Non-risk-adapted surveillance for patients with stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ-cell tumors: diminishing treatment-related morbidity while maintaining efficacy. Ann Oncol 2010 Jun;21(6):1296-301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19875756
130. Cullen MH, Stenning SP, Parkinson MC, et al. Short-course adjuvant chemotherapy in high-risk stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis: a Medical Research Council report. J Clin Oncol 1996 Apr;14(4):1106-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648364
131. Oliver RT, Raja MA, Ong J, et al. Pilot study to evaluate impact of a policy of adjuvant chemotherapy for high risk stage I malignant teratoma on overall relapse rate of stage I cancer patients. J Urol 1992 Nov;148(5):1453-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1279211
132. Studer UE, Fey MF, Calderoni A, et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy after orchidectomy in high-risk patients with clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular cancer. Eur Urol 1993;23(4):444-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7687549
133. Böhlen D, Borner M, Sonntag RW, et al. Long-term results following adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with clinical stage I testicular nonseminomatous malignant germ cell tumors with high risk factors. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1148-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081858
134. Pont J, Albrecht W, Postner G, et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy for high-risk clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ cell cancer: long-term results of a prospective trial. J Clin Oncol 1996 Feb;14(2):441-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8636755
135. Chevreau C, Mazerolles C, Soulié M, et al. Long-term efficacy of two cycles of BEP regimen in high-risk stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumors with embryonal carcinoma and/or vascular invasion. Eur Urol 2004 Aug;46(2):209-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15245815
136. Böhlen D, Burkhard FC, Mills R, et al. Fertility and sexual function following orchidectomy and 2 cycles of chemotherapy for stage I high risk nonseminomatous germ cell cancer. J Urol 2001 Feb;165(2): 441-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176393
137. Huddart RA, Norman A, Shahidi M, et al. Cardiovascular disease as a long-term complication of treatment for testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 2003 Apr;21(8):1513-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12697875
138. Baniel J, Foster RS, Gonin R, et al. Late relapse of testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 1995 May;13(5):1170-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537800

139. Baniel J, Roth BJ, Foster RS, et al. Cost- and risk-benefit considerations in the management of clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular tumors. Ann Surg Oncol 1996 Jan;3(1):86-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8770308
140. Rustin GJ, Mead GM, Stenning SP, et al. National Cancer Research Institute Testis Cancer Clinical Studies Group. Randomized trial of two or five computed tomography scans in the surveillance of patients with stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis: Medical Research Council Trial TE08, ISRCTN56475197-the National Cancer Research Institute Testis Cancer Clinical Studies Group. J Clin Oncol 2007 Apr;25(11):1310-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17416851
141. Klepp O, Dahl O, Flodgren P et al. Riskadapted treatment of clinical stage 1 non-seminoma testis cancer. Eur J Cancer 1997 Jun;33(7):1038-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9376184
142. Ondrus D, Matoska J, Belan V, et al. Prognostic factors in clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell testicular tumors: rationale for different risk-adapted treatment. Eur Urol 1998;33(6):562-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9743698
143. Maroto P, García del Muro X, Aparicio J, et al. Multicentre risk-adapted management for stage I non-seminomatous germ cell tumours. Ann Oncol 2005 Dec;16(12):1915-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16126737
144. Tandstad T, Cohn-Cedermark G, Dahl O, et al. Long-term follow-up after risk-adapted treatment in clinical stage 1 (CS1) nonseminomatous germ-cell testicular cancer (NSGCT) implementing adjuvant CVB chemotherapy. A SWENOTECA study. Ann Oncol 2010 Sep;21(9):1858-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20142410
145. Tandstad T, Dahl O, Cohn-Cedermark G, et al. Risk-adapted treatment in clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell testicular cancer: the SWENOTECA management program. J Clin Oncol 2009 May 1;27(13):2122-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19307506
146. Heidenreich A, Albers P, Hartmann M, et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Complications of primary nerve sparing retroperitoneal lymph node dissection for clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumours of the testis: experience of the German Testicular Cancer Study Group. J Urol 2003 May;169(5):1710-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686815
147. Spermon JR, Roeleveld TA, van der Poel HG, et al. Comparison of surveillance and retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in stage I nonseminomatous germ cell tumors. Urology 2002 Jun;59(6):923-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12031382
148. Hendry WF, Norman A, Nicholls J, et al. Abdominal relapse in Stage 1 nonseminomatous germ cell tumours of the testis managed by surveillance or with adjuvant chemotherapy. BJU Int 2000 Jul;86(1):89-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10886090
149. Pizzocaro G, Salvioni R, Zanoni F. Unilateral lymphadenectomy in intraoperative stage I nonseminomatous germinal testis cancer. J Urol 1985 Sep;134(3):485-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2993672
150. Donohue JP, Thornhill JA, Foster RS, et al. Retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy for clinical stage A testis cancer (1965 to 1989): modifications of technique and impact on ejaculation. J Urol 1993 Feb;149(2):237-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8381190
151. Lashley DB, Lowe BA. A rational approach to managing stage I nonseminomatous germ cell cancer. Urol Clin North Am 1998 Aug;25(3):405-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728211
152. Foster RS, Roth BJ. Clinical stage I nonseminoma: surgery versus surveillance. Semin Oncol 1998 Apr;25(2):145-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9562447
153. Kratzik C, Holtl W, Albrecht W, et al. Risk adapted management for NSGCT stage I: long-term results of a multicenter study. J Urol 1996;155:547A.
154. Ondrus D, Goncalves F, Kausitz J, et al. The value of prognostic factors in the management of stage I nonseminomatous germ cell testicular tumors (NSGCTT). Neoplasma 1996;43(3):195-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8841507
155. Donohue JP, Thornhill JA, Foster RS, et al. Clinical stage B non-seminomatous germ cell testis cancer: the Indiana University experience (1965-1989) using routine primary retroperitoneal lymph node dissection. Eur J Cancer 1995 Sep;31A(10):1599-604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7488408

156. Richie JP, Kantoff PW. Is adjuvant chemotherapy necessary for patients with stage B1 testicular cancer? J Clin Oncol 1991 Aug;9(8):1393-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2072143
157. Pizzocaro G, Monfardini S. No adjuvant chemotherapy in selected patients with pathological stage II nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis. J Urol 1984 Apr;131(4):677-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6200611
158. Williams SD, Stablein DM, Einhorn LH et al. Immediate adjuvant chemotherapy versus observation with treatment at relapse in pathological stage II testicular cancer. N Engl J Med 1987 Dec;317(23):1433-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2446132
159. Bianci G, Beltrami P, Giusti G, et al. Unilateral laparoscopic lymph node dissection for clinical stage I nonseminomatous germ cell testicular neoplasm. Eur Urol 1998;33(2):190-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9519363
160. Rassweiler JJ, Frede T, Lenz E, et al. Long-term experience with laparoscopic retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in the management of low-stage testis cancer. Eur Urol 2000 Mar;37(3):251-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10720848
161. Janetschek G, Hobisch A, Peschel R, et al. Laparoscopic retyroperitoneal lymph node dissection for clinical stage I non-seminomatous testicular carcinoma: long-term outcome. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1793-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799184
162. LeBlanc E, Caty A, Dargent D, et al. Extraperitoneal laparoscopic para-aortic lymph node dissection for early stage nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis with introduction of a nerve sparing technique: description and results. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):89-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125371
163. Albers P, Siener R, Krege S, et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Randomized phase III trial comparing retroperitoneal lymph node dissection with one course of bleomycin and etoposide plus cisplatin chemotherapy in the adjuvant treatment of clinical stage I Nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumors: AUO trial AH 01/94 by the German Testicular Cancer Study Group. J Clin Oncol 2008 Jun 20;26(18):2966-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18458040
164. Pizzocaro G, Nicolai N, Salvioni R. Marker positive clinical stage I non seminomatous germ cell tumours (NSGCT) of the testis: which primary therapy? J Urol 1996;155(Suppl):328A.
165. Davis BE, Herr HW, Fair WR, et al. The management of patients with nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis with serologic disease only after orchidectomy. J Urol 1994 Jul;152(1):111-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7515445
166. International Germ Cell Collaborative Group. International Germ Cell Consensus Classification: a prognostic factor-based staging system for metastatic germ cell cancers. J Clin Oncol 1997 Feb;15(2):594-603.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9053482
167. Classen J, Schmidberger H, Meisner C, et al. Radiotherapy for stages IIA/B testicular seminoma: final report of a prospective multicenter clinical trial. J Clin Oncol 2003 Mar 15;21(6):1101-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12637477
168. Chung PW, Gospodarowicz MK, Panzarella T, et al. Stage II testicular seminoma: patterns of recurrence and outcome of treatment. Eur Urol 2004 Jun;45(6):754-59; discussion 759-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15149748
169. Garcia-del-Muro X, Maroto P, Gumà J, et al. Chemotherapy as an alternative to radiotherapy in the treatment of stage IIA and IIB testicular seminoma: a Spanish Germ Cell Cancer Group Study. J Clin Oncol 2008 Nov 20;26(33):5416-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18936476
170. Krege S, Boergermann C, Baschek R et al; German Testicular Cancer Study Group (GTCSG). Single agent carboplatin for CS IIA/B testicular seminoma. A phase II study of the German Testicular Cancer Study Group (GTCSG). Ann Oncol 2006 Feb;17(2):276-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16254023
171. Frohlich MW, Small EJ. Stage II nonseminomatous testis cancer: the roles of primary and adjuvant chemotherapy. Urol Clin North Am 1998 Aug;25(3):451-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728214
172. Baniel J, Donohue JP. Cost and risk benefit considerations in low stage (I and II) nonseminomatous testicular tumours. AUA Update Series 1997;26:50-5.

173. Peckham MJ, Hendry WF. Clinical stage II non-seminatous germ cell testicular tumors. Results of management by primary chemotherapy. Br J Urol 1985 Dec;57(6):763-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2417652
174. Logothetis CJ, Samuels ML, Selig DE, et al. Primary chemotherapy followed by a selective retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy in the management of clinical stage II testicular carcinoma: a preliminary report. J Urol 1985 Dec;134(6):1127–30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2414470
175. Horwich A, Stenning S. Initial chemotherapy for stage II testicular non-seminoma. World J Urol 1994;12(3):148–50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7951341
176. Weissbach L, Bussar-Maatz R, Fletchner H et al. RPLND or primary chemotherapy in clinical stage IIA/B nonseminomatous germ cell tumors. Results of a prospective multicenter trial including quality of life assessment. Eur Urol 2000 May;37(5):582-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10765098
177. Sternberg CN. Role of primary chemotherapy in stage I and low-volume stage II nonseminomatous germ-cell testis tumors. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Feb;20(1):93-109.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8382000
178. Horwich A, Norman A, Fisher C, et al. Primary chemotherapy for stage II nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis. J Urol 1994 Jan;151(1):72-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254836
179. Donohue JP, Thornhill JA, Foster RS, et al. The role of retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy in clinical stage B testis cancer: the Indiana University Experience (1965 to 1989). J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):85-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966799
180. Motzer RJ, Sheinfeld J, Mazumdar M, et al. Etoposide and cisplatin adjuvant therapy for patients with pathological stage II germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 1995 Nov;13(11):2700-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7595727
181. Hartlapp JH, Weissbach L, Bussar-Maatz R. Adjuvant chemotherapy in nonseminomatous testicular tumour stage II. Int J Androl 1987 Feb;10(1):277-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2438221
182. Logothetis CJ, Swanson DA, Dexeus F, et al. Primary chemotherapy for clinical stage II nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis: a follow-up of 50 patients. J Clin Oncol 1987 Jun;5(6):906-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2438389
183. Saxman SB, Finch D, Gonin R, et al. Long-term follow-up of a phase III study of three versus four cycles of bleomycin, etoposide and cisplatin in favorable-prognosis germ-cell tumors: the Indiana University Experience. J Clin Oncol 1998 Feb;16(2):702-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9469360
184. de Wit R, Stoter G, Kaye SB, et al. Importance of bleomycin in combination chemotherapy for good-prognosis testicular nonseminoma: a randomized study of the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genitourinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group. J Clin Oncol 1997 May;15(5):1837-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9164193
185. Horwich A, Sleijfer DT, Fosså SD, et al. Randomized trial of bleomycin, etoposide and cisplatin compared with bleomycin, etoposide and carboplatin in good-prognosis metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell cancer: a Multiinstitutional Medical Research Council/European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer trial. J Clin Oncol 1997 May;15(5):1844-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9164194
186. De Wit R, Roberts JT, Wilkinson PM, et al. Equivalence of three or four cycles of bleomycin, etoposide, and cisplatin chemotherapy and of a 3- or 5- day schedule in good-prognosis germ cell cancer: a randomized study of the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Genitourinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group and the Medical research Council. J Clin Oncol 2001 Mar;19(6): 1629-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11250991
187. Bokemeyer C, Kuczyk MA, Köhne H, et al. Hematopoietic growth factors and treatment of testicular cancer: biological interactions, routine use and dose-intensive chemotherapy. Ann Hematol 1996 Jan;72(1):1-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8605273
188. Xiao H, Mazumdar M, Bajorin DF, et al. Longterm follow-up of patients with good-risk germ cell tumors treated with etoposide and cisplatin. J Clin Oncol 1997 Jul;15(7):2553-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9215824

189. Culine S, Kerbrat P, Kramar A, et al. Genito-Urinary Group of the French Federation of Cancer Center (GETUG T93BP). Refining the optimal chemotherapy regimen for good-risk metastatic nonseminomatous germ-cell tumors: a randomized trial of the Genito-Urinary Group of the French Federation of Cancer Centers (GETUG T93BP). Ann Oncol 2007 May;18(5):917-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17351252
190. Grimison PS, Stockler MR, Thomson DB, et al. J Natl Cancer Inst 2010. Comparison of two standard chemotherapy regimens for good-prognosis germ cell tumors: updated analysis of a randomized trial. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2010 Aug 18;102(16):1253-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20631341
191. Fosså SD, Kaye SB, Mead GM, et al. Filgastrim during combination chemotherapy of patients with poor prognosis metastatic germ cell malignancy. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer, Genito-Urinary Group, and the Medical Research Council Testicular Cancer Working Party, Cambridge, United Kingdom. J Clin Oncol 1998 Feb;16(2):716-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9469362
192. De Wit R, Stoter G, Sleijfer DT, et al. Four cycles of BEP vs four cycles of VIP in patients with intermediate-prognosis metastatic testicular non-seminoma: a randomized study of the EORTC Genitourinary Tract Cancer Cooperative Group. European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer. Br J Cancer 1998 Sep;78(6):828-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9743309
193. De Wit R, Louwerens M, de Mulder PH, et al. Management of intermediate-prognosis germ-cell cancer: results of a phase I/II study of Taxol-BEP. Int J Cancer 1999 Dec;83(6):831-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10597204
194. Nichols CR, Catalano PJ, Crawford ED, et al. Randomized comparison of cisplatin and etoposide and either bleomycin or ifosfamide in treatment of advanced disseminated germ cell tumors: an Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group, Southwest Oncology Group, and Cancer and Leukemia Group B Study. J Clin Oncol 1998 Apr;16(4):1287-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9552027
195. Motzer RJ, Nichols CJ, Margolin KA, et al. Phase III randomized trial of conventional-dose chemotherapy with or without high-dose chemotherapy and autologous hematopoietic stem-cell rescue as first-line treatment for patients with poor-prognosis metastatic germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jan;25(3):247-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17235042
196. Droz JP, Kramar A, Biron P, et al. Genito-Urinary Group of the French Federation of Cancer Centers (GETUG). Failure of high-dose cyclophosphamide and etoposide combined with double-dose cisplatin and bone marrow support in patients with high-volume metastatic nonseminomatous germ-cell tumours: mature results of a randomised trial. Eur Urol 2007 Mar;51(3):739-46; discussion 747-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084512
197. Daugaard G, Skoneczna I, Aass N, et al. A randomized phase III study comparing standard dose BEP with sequential high-dose cisplatin, etoposide, and ifosfamide (VIP) plus stem-cell support in males with poor-prognosis germ-cell cancer. An intergroup study of EORTC, GTCSG, and Grupo Germinal (EORTC 30974). Ann Oncol 2011 May;22(5):1054-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21059637
198. Motzer RJ, Mazumdar M, Bajorin DF, et al. High-dose carboplatin, etoposide, and cyclophosphamide with autologous bone marrow transplantation in first-line therapy for patients with poor-risk germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 1997 Jul;15(7):2546-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9215823
199. Bokemeyer C, Kollmannsberger C, Meisner C, et al. First-line high-dose chemotherapy compared with standard-dose PEB/VIP chemotherapy in patients with advanced germ cell tumors: a multivariate and matched-pair analysis. J Clin Oncol 1999 Nov;17(11):3450-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10550141
200. Fizazi K, Culine S, Kramar A, et al. Early predicted time to normalization of tumor markers predicts outcome in poor-prognosis nonseminomatous germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 2004 Oct;22(19): 3868-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302906
201. Massard C, Plantade A, Gross-Goupil M, et al. Poor prognosis nonseminomatous germ-cell tumours (NSGCTs): should chemotherapy doses be reduced at first cycle to prevent acute respiratory distress syndrome in patients with multiple lung metastases? Ann Oncol 2010 Aug;21(8):1585-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20181575

202. Gerl A, Clemm C, Lamerz R, et al. Prognostic implications of tumour marker analysis in non-seminomatous germ cell tumours with poor prognosis metastatic disease. Eur J Cancer 1993;29A(7):961-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7684597
203. Murphy BA, Motzer RJ, Mazumdar M, et al. Serum tumour marker decline is an early predictor of treatment outcome in germ cell tumour patients treated with cisplatin and ifosfamide salvage chemotherapy. Cancer 1994 May;73(10):2520-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513603
204. André F, Fizazi K, Culine S, et al. The growing teratoma syndrome: results of therapy and long-term follow-up of 33 patients. Eur J Cancer 2000 Jul;36(11):1389-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10899652
205. De Wit R, Collette L, Sylvester R, et al. Serum alpha-fetoprotein surge after the initiation of chemotherapy for non-seminomatous testicular cancer has an adverse prognostic significance. Br J Cancer 1998 Nov;78(10):1350-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823978
206. Zon RT, Nichols C, Einhorn LH. Management strategies and outcomes of germ cell tumour patients with very high human chorionic gonadotropin levels. J Clin Oncol 1998 Apr;16(4):1294-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9552028
207. Fosså SD, Stenning SP, Gerl A, et al. Prognostic factors in patients progressing after cisplatin-based chemotherapy for malignant non-seminomatous germ cell tumours. Br J Cancer 1999 Jul;80(9): 1392-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10424741
208. Fosså SD, Borge L, Aass N, et al. The treatment of advanced metastatic seminoma: experience in 55 cases. J Clin Oncol 1987 Jul;5(7):1071-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2439660
209. Herr HW, Bosl G. Residual mass after after chemotherapy for seminoma: changing concepts of management. J Urol 1987 Jun;137(6):1234-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2438431
210. Hofmockel G, Gruss A, Theiss M. Chemotherapy in advanced seminoma and the role of postcytostatic retroperitoneal lymph node dissection. Urol Int 1996;57(1):38-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8840489
211. Kamat MR, Kulkarni JN, Tongoankar HB, et al. Value of retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in advanced testicular seminoma. J Surg Oncol 1992 Sep;51(1):65-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1381455
212. Loehrer PJ Sr, Birch R, Williams SD, et al. Chemotherapy of metastatic seminoma: the Southeastern Cancer Study Group experience. J Clin Oncol 1987 Aug;5(8):1212-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442317
213. Motzer R, Bosl G, Heelan R, et al. Residual mass: an indication for further therapy in patients with advanced seminoma following systemic chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 1987 Jul;5(7):1064-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3598610
214. Peckham MJ, Horwich A, Hendry WF. Advanced seminoma treatment with cisplatinum based combination chemotherapy or carboplatin (JM8). Br J Cancer 1985 Jul;52(1):7-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3893507
215. De Santis M, Becherer A, Bokemeyer C, et al. Pont J. 2-18fluoro-deoxy-D-glucose positron emission tomography is a reliable predictor for viable tumor in postchemotherapy seminoma: an update of the prospective multicentric SEMPET trial. J Clin Oncol 2004 Mar;22(6):1034-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15020605
216. Duchesne GM,Stenning SP, Aass N, et al. Radiotherapy after chemotherapy for metastatic seminoma – a diminishing role. MRC Testicular Tumour Working Party. Eur J Cancer 1997 May;33(6):829-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9291801
217. Bamberg M, Classen J. [Value of radiotherapy of residual tumors after chemotherapy of metastatic seminomas] Strahlenther Onkol 1998 Aug;174(8):442-3. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9739390
218. Puc H, Heelan R, Mazumdar M, et al. Management of residual mass in advanced seminoma: results and recommendations from the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center. J Clin Oncol 1996 Feb;14(2):454-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8636757
219. Herr HW, Sheinfeld J, Puc HS, et al. Surgery for a post-chemotherapy residual mass in seminoma. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):860-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072586

220. Mosharafa AA, Foster RS, Leibovich BC, et al. Is the post-chemotherapy resection of seminomatous elements associated with higher acute morbidity? J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2126-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771733
221. Kuczyk M, Machtens S, Stief C et al. Management of the post-chemotherapy residual mass in patients with advanced stage non-seminomatous germ cell tumors (NSGCT). Int J Cancer 1999 Dec;83(6): 852-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10597210
222. Fosså SD, Ous S, Lien HH, et al. Post-chemotherapy lymph node histology in radiologically normal patients with metastatic nonseminomatous testicular cancer. J Urol 1989 Mar;141(3):557-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2918591
223. Toner GC, Panicek DM, Heelan RT, et al. Adjunctive surgery after chemotherapy for nonseminomatous germ cell tumors: recommendations for patient selection. J Clin Oncol 1990 Oct;8(10):1683-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2170590
224. Donohue JP, Rowland RG, Kopecky K, et al. Correlation of computerized tomographic changes and histological findings in 80 patients having radical retroperitoneal lymph node dissection after chemotherapy for testis cancer. J Urol 1987 Jun;137(6):1176-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3035236
225. Richie JP. The surgical management of advanced abdominal disease. Semin Urol 1984 Nov;2(4):238-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6505446
226. Stomper PC, Fung CY, Socinski MA, et al. Detection of retroperitoneal metastases in early-stage nonseminomatous testicular cancer: analysis of different CT criteria. Am J Roentgenol 1987 Dec;149(6):1187-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2825494
227. Kollmannsberger C, Daneshmand S, So A, et al. Management of disseminated nonseminomatous germ cell tumors with risk-based chemotherapy followed by response-guided postchemotherapy surgery. J Clin Oncol 2010 Feb 1;28(4):537-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20026807
228. Ehrlich Y, Brames MJ, Beck SD, et al. Long-term follow-up of Cisplatin combination chemotherapy in patients with disseminated nonseminomatous germ cell tumors: is a postchemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection needed after complete remission? J Clin Oncol 2010 Feb 1;28(4):531-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20026808
229. Carver BS, Shayegan B, Serio A, et al. Long-term clinical outcome after postchemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in men with residual teratoma. J Clin Oncol 2007 Mar;25(9):1033-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17261854
230. Aprikian AG, Herr HW, Bajorin DF, et al. Resection of postchemotherapy residual masses and limited retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy in patients with metastatic testicular nonseminomatous germ cell tumors. Cancer 1994 Aug;74(4):1329-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8055456
231. Herr HW. Does necrosis on frozen-section analysis of a mass after chemotherapy justify a limited retroperitoneal resection in patients with advanced testis cancer? Br J Urol 1997 Oct;80(4):653-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9352708
232. Hendry WF, A'Hern RP, Hetherington JW, et al. Para-aortic lymphadenectomy after chemotherapy for metastatic non-seminomatous germ cell tumours: prognostic value and therapeutic benefit. Br J Urol 1993 Feb;71(2):208-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8384914
233. Wood DP Jr, Herr HW, Heller G, et al. Distribution of retroperitoneal metastases after chemotherapy in patients with nonseminomatous germ cell tumors. J Urol 1992 Dec;148(6):1812-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1331547
234. Baniel J, Foster RS, Rowland RG, et al. Complications of post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 2):976-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7853586
235. Hartmann JT, Schmoll HJ, Kuczyk MA, et al. Postchemotherapy resections of residual masses from metastatic non-seminomatous germ cell tumors. Ann Oncol 1997 Jun;8(6):531-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9261521

236. Rabbani F, Goldenberg SL, Gleave ME, et al. Retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy for post-chemotherapy residual masses: is a modified dissection and resection of residual masses sufficient? Br J Urol 1998 Feb;81(2):295-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9488075
237. Tekgul S, Ozen HA, Celebi I, et al. Postchemotherapeutic surgery for metastatic testicular germ cell tumors: results of extended primary chemotherapy and limited surgery. Urology 1994 Mar;43(3): 349-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8134989
238. Steyerberg EW, Keizer HJ, Fosså SD, et al. Prediction of residual retroperitoneal mass histology after chemotherapy for metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell tumour: multivariate analysis of individual patient data from six study groups. J Clin Oncol 1995 May;13(5):1177-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537801
239. Hartmann JT, Candelaria M, Kuczyk MA, et al. Comparison of histological results from the resection of residual masses at different sites after chemotherapy for metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell tumours. Eur J Cancer 1997 May;33(6):843-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9291803
240. Stenning SP, Parkinson MC, Fisher C, et al. Postchemotherapy residual masses in germ cell tumor patients: content, clinical features and prognosis. Medical Research Council Testicular Tumour Working Party. Cancer 1998 Oct;83(7):1409-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9762943
241. Weinknecht S, Hartmann M, Weissbach L. [In which marker-positive patients with germ cell tumors is residual tumor resection of value?] Urologe A 1998 Nov;37(6):621-4. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9887490
242. Hendry WF, Norman AR, Dearnaley DP, et al. Metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell tumors of the testis: results of elective and salvage surgery for patients with residual retroperitoneal masses. Cancer 2002 Mar;94(6):1668-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11920527
243. Sheinfeld J. The role of adjunctive postchemotherapy surgery for nonseminomatous germ-cell tumors: current concepts and controversies. Semin Urol Oncol 2002 Nov;20(4):262-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12489059
244. Foster RS, Donohue JP. Can retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy be omitted in some patients after chemotherapy? Urol Clin North Am 1998 Aug;25(3):479-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728217
245. Steyerberg EW, Kaiser HJ, Habbema JD. Prediction models for the histology of residual masses after chemotherapy for metastatic testicular cancer. ReHiT Study Group. Int J Cancer 1999 Dec;83(6): 856-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10597211
246. Vergouwe Y, Steyerbeg EW, De Wit R, et al. External validity of a prediction rule for residual mass histology in testicular cancer: an evaluation for good prognosis patients. Br J Cancer 2003 Mar;88(6):843-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12644820
247. Fizazi K, Tjulandin S, Salvioni R, et al. Viable malignant cells after primary chemotherapy for disseminated nonseminomatous germ cell tumors: prognostic factors and role of postsurgery chemotherapy-results from an international study group. J Clin Oncol 2001 May;19(10):2647-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11352956
248. Steiner H, Peschel R, Bartsch G. Retroperitoneal lymph node dissection after chemotherapy for germ cell tumours: is a full bilateral template always necessary? BJU Int 2008 Aug;102(3):310-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18325053
249. Heidenreich A, Pfister D, Witthuhn R, et al. Postchemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in advanced testicular cancer: radical or modified template resection. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):217-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18926622
250. Besse B, Grunenwald D, Fléchon A, et al. Nonseminomatous germ cell tumors: assessing the need for postchemotherapy contralateral pulmonary resection in patients with ipsilateral complete necrosis. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 2009 Feb;137(2):448-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19185168
251. Capitanio U, Jeldres C, Perrotte P, et al. Population-based study of perioperative mortality after retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy for nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumors. Urology 2009 Aug;74(2):373-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19501893

252. Fléchon A, Tavernier E, Boyle H, et al. Long-term oncological outcome after post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in men with metastatic nonseminomatous germ cell tumour. BJU Int 2010 Sep;106(6):779-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20089110
253. Fizazi K, Oldenburg J, Dunant A et al. Assessing prognosis and optimizing treatment in patients with postchemotherapy viable nonseminomatous germ-cell tumors (NSGCT): results of the sCR2 international study. Ann Oncol 2008 Feb;19(2):259-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18042838
254. Miller KD, Loehrer PJ, Gonin R et al. Salvage chemotherapy with vinblastine, ifosfamide and cisplatin in recurrent seminoma. J Clin Oncol 1997 Apr;15(4):1427-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9193335
255. Pico JL, Rosti G, Kramar A et al. Genito-Urinary Group of the French Federation of Cancer Centers (GETUG-FNCLCC), France; European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT). A randomised trial of high-dose chemotherapy in the salvage treatment of patients failing first-line platinum chemotherapy for advanced germ cell tumours. Ann Oncol 2005 Jul;16(7):1152-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928070
256. Lorch A, Kollmannsberger C, Hartmann JT et al. German Testicular Cancer Study Group. Single versus sequential high-dose chemotherapy in patients with relapsed or refractory germ cell tumors: a prospective randomized multicenter trial of the German Testicular Cancer Study Group. J Clin Oncol 2007 Jul;25(19):2778-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17602082
257. International Prognostic Factors Study Group, Lorch A, Beyer J, Bascoul-Mollevi C, et al. Prognostic factors in patients with metastatic germ cell tumors who experienced treatment failure with cisplatin-based first-line chemotherapy. J Clin Oncol 2010 Nov 20;28(33):4906-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20956623
258. Oechsle K, Lorch A, Honecker F, Kollmannsberger C, Hartmann JT, Boehlke I, Beyer J, Bokemeyer C. Patterns of relapse after chemotherapy in patients with high-risk non-seminomatous germ cell tumor. Oncology 2010;78(1):47-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20215785
259. Mead GM, Cullen MH, Huddart R et al. MRC Testicular Tumour Working Party. A phase II trial of TIP (paclitaxel, ifosfamide and cisplatin) given as second-line (post-BEP) salvage chemotherapy for patients with metastatic germ cell cancer: a medical research council trial. Br J Cancer 2005 Jul;93(2):178-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15999102
260. Loehrer PJ Sr, Gonin R, Nichols CR et al. Vinblastine plus iofosfamide plus cisplatin as initial salvage-therapy in recurrent germ cell tumour. J Clin Oncol 1998 Jul;16(7):2500-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9667270
261. Beyer J, Rick O, Siegert W et al. Salvage chemotherapy in relapsed germ cell tumors. World J Urol 2001 Apr;19(2):90-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11374323
262. Schmoll HJ, Beyer J. Prognostic factors in metastatic germ cell tumors. Semin Oncol 1998 Apr;25(2):174-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9562450
263. Segal R, Lukka H, Klotz LH et al. Cancer Care Ontario Practice Guidelines Initiative Genitourinary Cancer Disease Site Group. Surveillance programs for early stage nonseminomatous testicular cancer: a practice guideline. Can J Urol 2001 Feb;8(1):1184-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11268306
264. Reinhorn LH, Rajhavan D, Kindlen H. A phase I trial of gemcitabine plus paclitaxel combination therapy in patients with refractory advanced germ cell tumours. Proc ASCO 1999;18:207A (abstr 796).
265. Motzer RJ, Sheinfeld J, Mazumdar M et al. Paclitaxel, ifosfamide, and cisplatin second-line therapy for patients with relapsed testicular germ cell cancer. J Clin Oncol 2000 Jun;18(12):2413-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10856101
266. Bokemeyer C, Gerl A, Schöffski P et al. Gemcitabine in patients with relapse or cisplatin-refractory testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 1999 Feb;17(2):512-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10080593
267. Beyer J, Schmoll HJ. [Prognosefaktoren bei metastasierten seminomatösen und nichtseminomatösen Hodentumouren.] Onkologe 1998;4:518-523. [Prognostic factors in metastatic seminoma and nonseminoma germ-cell tumours] [Article in German]

268. Beyer J, Stenning S, Gerl A et al. High-dose versus conventional-dose chemotherapy as first-salvage treatment in patients with non-seminomatous germ-cell tumors: a matched-pair analysis. Ann Oncol 2002 Apr;13(4):599-605.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12056711
269. Bhatia S, Abonour R, Porcu P et al. High-dose chemotherapy as inital salvage chemotherapy in patients with relapsed testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 2000 Oct;18(19):3346-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11013274
270. Rosti G, Pico JL, Wandt H et al. High-dose chemotherapy (HDC) in the salvage treatment of patients failling first-line platinum chemotherapy for advanced germ cell tumours (GCT): first results of a prospective randomised trial of the European Group for Blood and Marrow Transplantation (EBMT): IT- 94 study. Proc Ann Soc Clin Oncol 2002;21:180a, abstr 716.
271. Kondagunta GV, Bacik J, Donadio A et al. Combination of paclitaxel, ifosfamide, and cisplatin is an effective second-line therapy for patients with relapsed testicular germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 2005 Sep;23(27):6549-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16170162
272. Motzer RJ, Mazumdar M, Sheinfeld J et al. Sequential dose-intensive paclitaxel, ifosfamide, carboplatin, and etoposide salvage therapy for germ cell tumor patients. J Clin Oncol 2000 Mar;18(6):1173-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10715285
273. Vaena DA, Abonour R, Einhorn LH. Long-term survival after high-dose salvage chemotherapy for germ cell malignancies with adverse prognostic variables. J Clin Oncol 2003 Nov;21(22):4100-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14615439
274. Beyer J, Bokemeyer C, Schmoll HJ. [Salvagetherapie rezidivierter und refraktärer Hodentumouren] Onkologe 1998;4:541-546. [Salvage chemotherapy for relapsed and refractory germ cell tumours] [Article in German]
275. Lorch A, Rick O, Wündisch T, et al. High dose chemotherapy as salvage treatment for unresectable late relapse germ cell tumors. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):168-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20483152
276. George DW, Foster RS, Hromas RA et al. Update on late relapse of germ cell tumor: a clinical and molecular analysis. J Clin Oncol 2003 Jan;21(1):113-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12506179
277. Lee AH, Mead GM, Theaker JM. The value of central histopathological review of testicular tumours before treatment. BJU Int 1999 Jul;84(1)75-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10444128
278. Lipphardt ME, Albers P. Late relapse of testicular cancer. World J Urol 2004 Apr;22(1):47-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15064970
279. Tiffany P, Morse MJ, Bosl G et al. Sequential excision of residual thoracic and retroperitoneal masses after chemotherapy for stage III germ cell tumors. Cancer 1986 Mar;57(5):978-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3002596
280. Cassidy J, Lewis CR, Kaye SB et al. The changing role of surgery in metastatic non-seminomatous germ cell tumour. Br J Cancer 1992 Jan;65(1):127-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1370759
281. Coogan CL, Foster RS, Rowland RG, et al. Postchemotherapy retroperitoneal lymph node dissection is effective therapy in selected patients with elevated tumour markers after primary chemotherapy alone. Urology 1997 Dec;50(6):957-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9426730
282. Eastham JA, Wilson TG, Russell C et al. Surgical resection in patients with nonseminomatous germ cell tumour who fail to normalize serum tumour markers after chemotherapy. Urology 1994 Jan;43(1):74-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7506856
283. Gerl A, Clemm C, Schmeller N et al. Late relapse of germ cell tumors after cisplatin-based chemotherapy. Ann Oncol 1997 Jan;8(1):41-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9093706
284. Kisbenedek L, Bodrogi I, Szeldeli P et al. Results of salvage retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy (RLA) in the treatment of patients with nonseminomatous germ cell tumours remaining marker positive after inductive chemotherapy. Int Urol Nephrol 1995;27(3):325-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7591598
285. Murphy BR, Breeden ES, Donohue JP et al. Surgical salvage of chemorefractory germ cell tumors. J Clin Oncol 1993 Feb;11(2):324-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8381163

286. Nichols CR. Treatment of recurrent germ cell tumors. Semin Surg Oncol 1999 Dec;17(4):268-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10588856
287. Ravi R, Ong J, Oliver RT et al. Surgery as salvage therapy in chemotherapy-resistant nonseminomatous germ cell tumours. Br J Urol 1998 Jun;81(6):884-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9666776
288. Albers P, Ganz A, Hanning E et al. Salvage surgery of chemorefractory germ cell tumors with elevated tumor markers. J Urol 2000 Aug;164(2):381-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10893590
289. Fosså SD, Bokemeyer C, Gerl A et al. Treatment outcome of patients with brain metastases from malignant germ cell tumors. Cancer 1999 Feb;85(4):988-97. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10091779
290. Bokemeyer C, Nowak P, Haupt A et al. Treatment of brain metastases in patients with testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 1997 Apr;15(4):1449-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9193339
291. Hartmann JT, Bamberg M, Albers P et al. Multidiciplinary treatment and prognosis of patients with central nervous metastases (CNS) from testicular germ cell tumour (GCT) origin. Proc Ann Soc Clin Oncol 2003;22:400, abstr 1607.
292. Edelman MJ, Meyers FJ, Siegel D. The utility of follow-up testing after curative cancer therapy A critical review and economic analysis. J Gen Intern Med 1997 May;12(5):318-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9159703
293. Rathmell AJ, Brand IR, Carey BM et al. Early detection of relapse after treatment for metastatic germ cell tumour of the testis: an exercise in medical audit. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 1993;5(1):34-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7678749
294. Gietema JA, Meinardi MT, Sleijfer DT et al. Routine chest X-rays have no additional value in the detection of relapse during routine follow-up of patients treated with chemotherapy for disseminated non-seminomatous testicular cancer. Ann Oncol 2002 Oct;13(10):1616-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12377651
295. Brenner DJ, Hall EJ Computed tomography: an increasing source of radiaton exposure. N Engl J Med 2007 Nov;357(22):2277-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18046031
296. Schmoll HJ, Jordan K, Huddart R, et al; ESMO Guidelines Working Group.Testicular non-seminoma: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. Ann Oncol 2010 May;21 Suppl 5:v147-54. http://annonc.oxfordjournals.org/content/21/suppl_5/v147.long
297. Schmoll HJ, Jordan K, Huddart R, et al; ESMO Guidelines Working Group. Testicular non-seminoma: ESMO clinical recommendations for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. Ann Oncol 2009 May;20 Suppl 4:89-96. Review. http://annonc.oxfordjournals.org/content/20/suppl_4/iv89.long
298. Cathomas R, Helbling D, Stenner F, et al. Interdisciplinary evidence-based recommendations fo the follow-up of testicular cancer patients: a joint effort. Swiss Med Wkly 2010; 140 (25-26) : 356-69. http://www.smw.ch/for-readers/archive/backlinks/?url=/docs/pdfcontent/smw-12993.pdf
299. Pont J, Albrecht W, Postner G et al. Adjuvant chemotherapy for high-risk clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ cell cancer: long-term results of a prospective trial. J Clin Oncol 1996 Feb;14(2):441-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8636755
300. Böhlen D, Borner M, Sonntag RW et al. Long-term results following adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with clinical stage I testicular nonseminomatous malignant germ cell tumors with high risk factors. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1148-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081858
301. Tjan-Heijnen VC, Oosterhof GO, de Wit R et al. Treatment of germ cell tumours: state of the art. Eur J Surg Oncol 1997 Apr;23(2):110-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158183
302. Lowe BA. Surveillance versus nerve-sparing retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy in stage I germ cell tumors. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Feb;20(1):75-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8381999
303. Gels ME, Hoekstra HJ, Sleijfer DT et al. Detection of recurrence in patients with clinical stage I nonseminomatous testicular germ cell tumors and consequences for further follow-up: a single-center 10-year experience. J Clin Oncol 1995 May;13(5):1188-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7537802

304. van As NJ, Gilbert DC, Money-Kyrle J et al. Evidence-based pragmatic guidelines for the follow-up of testicular cancer: optimising the detection of relapse. Br J Cancer 2008 Jun:17;98(12):1894-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18542063
305. McLeod DG, Weiss RB, Stablein DM et al. Staging relationships and outcome in early stage testicular cancer: a report from the Testicular Cancer Intergroup Study. J Urol 1991 Jun;145(6):1178-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1851890
306. Donohue JP, Thornhill JA, Foster RS et al. Primary retroperitoneal lymph node dissection in clinical stage A non-seminomatous germ cell testis cancer: review of the Indiana University Experience 1965-1989. Br J Urol 1993 Mar;71(3):326-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8386580
307. Schmoll HJ, Weissbach L. [Diagnostik und Therapie von Hodentumouren.] Interdisziplinäre Konsensus-Konferenz, Halle (Saale), 1996. EBM IIa, IIb, III. [Diagnosis and therapy for germ cell tumours] [Article in German]
308. McCaffrey JA, Bajorin DF, Motzer RJ. Risk assessment for metastatic testis cancer. Urol Clin North Am 1998 Aug;25(3):389-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728209
309. Sharda N, Kinsella T, Ritter MA. Adjuvant radiation versus observation: a cost analysis of alternate management schemes in early stage testicular seminoma. J Clin Oncol 1996 Nov;14(11):2933-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8918490
310. Buchholz TA, Walden TL, Prestidge BR. Cost-effectiveness of posttreatment surveillance after radiation therapy for early stage seminoma. Cancer 1998 Mar;82(6):1126-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9506359
311. Tana S, Cerrotta A, Gardani G et al. Postsurgical policy in stage I testicular seminoma: cost and benefit of prophylactic irradiation in a long-term experience. Tumouri 1997 Nov-Dec;83(6):918-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9526584
312. Sultanem K, Souhami L, Benk V et al. Para-aortic irradiation only appears to be adequate treatment for patients with stage I seminoma of the testis. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1998 Jan;40(2):455-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457835
313. Kiricuta IC, Sauer J, Bohndorf W. Omission of the pelvic irradiation in stage I testicular seminoma: a study of postorchidectomy paraaortic radiotherapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1996 May;35(2): 293-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8635936
314. Warde P, Gospodarowicz MK, Panzarella T et al. Stage I testicular seminoma: results of adjuvant irradiation and surveillance. J Clin Oncol 1995 Sep;13(9):2255-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7666083
315. Fosså SD, Aass N, Kaalhus O. Radiotherapy for testicular seminoma stage I: treatment results and long-term post-irradiation morbidity in 365 patients. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1989;16(2):383-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2921142
316. Baniel J, Foster RS, Einhorn LH et al. Late relapse of clinical stage I testicular cancer. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1370-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7658541
317. Stein ME, Leviov M, Drumea K et al. Radiationinduced tumors in irradiated stage I testicular seminoma: results of a 25-year follow-up (1968-1993). J Surg Oncol 1998 Jan;67(1):38-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457255
318. Akimoto T, Takahashi I, Takahashi M et al. Long-term outcome of postorchidectomy radiation therapy for stage I and II testicular seminoma. Anticancer Res 1997 Sep-Oct;17(5B):3781-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9427780
319. Von der Maase H, Specht L, Jacobsen GK et al. Surveillance following orchidectomy for stage I seminoma of the testis. Eur J Cancer 1993;29A(14):1931-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8280484
320. Horwich A, Alsanjari N, A'Hern et al. Surveillance following orchidectomy for stage I testicular seminoma. Br J Cancer 1992 May;65(5):775-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1586607
321. Germá Lluch JR, Climent MA, Villavicencio H et al. Treatment of stage I testicular tumours. Br J Urol 1993 Apr;71(4):473-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8499994
322. Warde PR, Gospodarowicz MK, Goodman PJ et al. Results of a policy of surveillance in stage I testicular seminoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1993 Sep;27(1):11-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8365931

323. Allhoff EP, Liedke S, de Riese W et al. Stage I seminoma of the testis: adjuvant radiotherapy or surveillance? Br J Urol 1991 Aug;68(2):190-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1715798
324. Fosså SD, Chen J, Schonfeld SJ et al. Risk of contralateral testicular cancer: a population-based study of 29,515 U.S. men. J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Jul;97(14):1056- 66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16030303
325. Wierecky J, Kollmannsberger C, Boehlke I et al. Secondary leukemia after first-line high-dose chemotherapy for patients with advanced germ cell cancer. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2005 Apr;131(4):255-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15627215
326. Nuver J, Smit AJ, Sleijfer DT et al. Left ventricular and cardiac autonomic function in survivors of testicular cancer. Eur J Clin Invest 2005 Feb;35(2):99-103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15667580
327. van den Belt-Dusebout AW, Nuver J, de Wit R et al. Long-term risk of cardiovascular disease in 5-year survivors of testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 2006 Jan;24(3):467-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16421423
328. Haugnes HS, Aass N, Fosså SD et al. Components of the metabolic syndrome in long-term survivors of testicular cancer. Ann Oncol 2007 Feb;18(2):241-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17060482
329. Huddart RA, Joffe JK. Preferred treatment for stage I seminoma: a survey of Canadian radiation oncologists. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2006 Nov;18(9):693-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17100155
330. Krege S, Kalund G, Otto T et al. Phase II study: adjuvant single-agent carboplatin therapy for clinical stage I seminoma. Eur Urol 1997;31(4):405-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187898
331. Dieckmann KP, Krain J, Küster J et al. Adjuvant carboplatin treatment for seminoma clinical stage I. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122(1):63-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8543595
332. Bukowski RM. Management of advanced and extragonadal germ-cell tumors. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Feb;20(1):153-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8381995
333. Fair W, Dalbagni G, Machele Donat S et al. Evaluation and follow-up of patients with urologic cancer. AUA Office of Education Publications 9958 PG, 1999.
334. Pizzocaro G. Non-seminomatous germ-cell tumours (NSGCT) of the testis: diagnosis and management, stage by stage. Eur Urol Update Series 1997;6:139-45.
335. Sheinfeld J, Bajorin DF, Solomon M. Management of postchemotherapy residual masses in advanced germ cell tumours. Urol Clin North Am 1997;3:18-23.
336. Little JS Jr., Foster RS, Ulbright TM et al. Unusual neoplasms detected in testis cancer patients undergoing post-chemotherapy retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy. J Urol 1994 Oct;152(4):1144-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8072083

10.2 Non-germ cell tumours

1. Cheville JC, Sebo TJ, Lager DJ, et al. Leydig cell tumour of the testis: a clinicopathologic, DNA content, and MIB-1 comparison of nonmetastasizing and metastasizing tumors. Am J Surg Pathol 1998 Nov;22(11):1361-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9808128
2. Kim I, Young RH, Scully RE. Leydig cell tumours of the testis. A clinicopathological analysis of 40 cases and review of the literature. Am J Surg Pathol 1985 Mar;9(3):177-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3993830
3. Matveev BP, Gurarii LL. [Leydig-cell tumors of the testis] Urol Nefrol (Mosk) 1997 Jul-Aug;(4):34-6. [Article in Russian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9381620
4. Young RH, Koelliker DD, Scully RE. Sertoli cell tumors of the testis, not otherwise specified: a clinicopathologic analysis of 60 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 1998 Jun;22(6):709-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9630178
5. Proppe KH, Scully RE. Large-cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour of the testis. Am J Clin Pathol 1980 Nov;74(5):607-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7446466

6. Zukerberg LR, Young RH, Scully RE. Sclerosing Sertoli cell tumour of the testis. A report of 10 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 1991 Sep;15(9):829-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719830
7. WHO histological classification of testis tumours, In: Eble JN, Sauter G, Epstein JI, Sesterhenn IA (eds). Pathology & Genetics. Tumours of the urinary system and male genital organs. Lyon: IARC Press, 2004: 218, pp. 250-262.
8. Ulbright TM, Amin MB, Young RH. Tumours of the testis, adnexia, spermatic cord and scrotum. AFIP1999.
9. Cheville JC, Sebo TJ, Lager DJ, et al. Leydig cell tumour of the testis: a clinicopathologic, DNA content, and MIB-1 comparison of nonmetastasizing and metastasizing tumors. Am J Surg Pathol 1998;22(11):1361-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9808128
10. McCluggage WG, Shanks JH, Arthur K, et al. Cellular proliferation and nuclear ploidy assessments augment established prognostic factors in predicting malignancy in testicular Leydig cell tumours. Histopathology 1998 Oct;33(4):361-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9822927
11. Mineur P, de Cooman S, Hustin J, et al. Feminizing testicular Leydig cell tumour: hormonal profile before and after unilateral orchidectomy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1987 Apr;64(4):686-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3818898
12. Reznik Y, Rieu M, Kuhn JM, et al. Luteinizing hormone regulation by sex steroids in men with germinal and Leydig cell tumours. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 1993 May;38(5):487-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8392454
13. Bercovici JP, Nahoul K, Tater D, et al. Hormonal profile of Leydig cell tumors with gynecomastia. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1984 Oct;59(4):625-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6434575
14. Haas GP, Pittaluga S, Gomella L, et al. Clinical occult Leydig cell tumour presenting with gynecomastia. J Urol 1989 Nov;142(5):1325-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2810523
15. Ruthgers JL, Young RH, Scully RE. The testicular 'tumour' of the adrenogenital syndrome. A report of six cases and review of the literature on testicular masses in patients with adrenocortical disorders. Am J Surg Pathol 1988 Jul;12(7):503-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3291624
16. Maizlin ZV, Belenky A, Kunichezky M, et al. Leydig cell tumors of the testis: gray scale and color Doppler sonographic appearance. J Ultrasound Med 2004 Jul;23(7):959-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15292565
17. Ponce de León Roca J, Algaba Arrea F, Bassas Arnau L, et al. [Leydig-cell tumour of the testis] Arch Esp Urol 2000 Jul-Aug;53(6):453-8. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11002512
18. Sánchez-Chapado M, Angulo JC, Haas GP. Adenocarcinoma of the rete testis. Urology 1995 Oct;46(4):468-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7571213
19. Mosharafa AA, Foster RS, Bihrle R, et al. Does retroperitoneal lymph node dissection have a curative role for patients with sex cord-stromal testicular tumors? Cancer 2003 Aug;98(4):753-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12910519
20. Giglio M, Medica M, De Rose AF, et al. Testicular Sertoli cell tumours and relative sub-types. Analysis of clinical and prognostic features. Urol Int 2003;70(3):205-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12660458
21. Jacobsen GK. Malignant Sertoli cell tumours of the testis. J Urol Pathol 1993;1:233-55.
22. Kratzer SS, Ulbright TM, Talerman A, et al. Large cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour of the testis: contrasting features of six malignant and six benign tumors and a review of the literature. Am J Surg Pathol 1997 Nov;21(11):1271-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9351565
23. Henley JD, Young RH, Ulbright TM. Malignant Sertoli cell tumours of the testis: a study of 13 examples of a neoplasm frequently misinterpreted as seminoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2002 May;26: 541-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11979085
24. Plata C, Algaba F, Andújar M, et al. Large cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour of the testis. Histopathology 1995 Mar;26(3):255-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7541015

25. Anderson GA. Sclerosing Sertoli cell tumour of the testis: a distinct histological subtype. J Urol 1995 Nov;154(5):1756-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7563340
26. Grabrilove JL, Freiberg EK, Leiter E, et al. Feminizing and non-feminizing Sertoli cell tumors. J Urol 1980 Dec;124(6):757-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7003168
27. Gierke CL, King BF, Bostwick DG, et al. Large-cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour of the testis: appearance at sonography. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1994 Aug;163(2):373-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8037034
28. Chang B, Borer JG, Tan PE, et al. Large-cell calcifying Sertoli cell tumour of the testis: case report and review of the literature. Urology 1998 Sep;52(3):520-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730477
29. Washecka R, Dresner MI, Honda SA. Testicular tumors in Carney's complex. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3): 1299-302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832717
30. Young S, Gooneratne S, Straus FH 2nd, et al. Feminizing Sertoli cell tumors in boys with Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. Am J Surg Pathol 1995 Jan;19(1):50-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7802138
31. Kaplan GW, Cromie WJ, Kelalis PP, et al. Gonadal stromal tumors: a report of the Prepuberal Testicular Tumours Registry. J Urol 1986 Jul;136(1Pt2):300-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3723681
32. Al-Bozom IA, El-Faqih SR, Hassan SH, et al. Granulosa cell tumour of the adult type. A case report and review of the literature of a very rare testicular tumour. Arch Pathol Lab Med 2000 Oct;124(10):1525-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11035589
33. Perito PE, Ciancio G, Civantos F, et al. Sertoli-Leydig cell testicular tumour: case report and review of sex cord/gonadal stromal tumour histogenesis. J Urol 1992 Sep;148(3):883-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1512847
34. Scully RE. Gonadoblastoma. A review of 74 cases. Cancer 1970 Jun;25(6):1340-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4193741
35. Ulbright TM, Srigley JR, Reuter VE, et al. Sex-cord-stromal tumours of the testis with entrapped germ cells: a lesion mimicking unclassified mixed germ cell sex cord-stromal tumors. Am J Surg Pathol 2000 Apr;24(4):535-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10757400

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive to the most common abbreviations.

AFP	alpha-fetoprotein
AUC	area under curve
Cg A	chromogranine A
CI	confidence interval
CS	clinical stage
CT	computed tomography
EAU	European Association of Urology
EBM	evidence-based medicine
EP	etoposide, cisplatin
EORTC	European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer
FDG-PET	fluorodeoxyglucose-positron emission tomography
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
GI	gastrointestinal
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor
GR	grade of recommendation
hCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
HPF	high-power field
IGCCCG	International Germ Cell Cancer Collaborative Group
LE	level of evidence
LH	luteinising hormone
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
MRC	Medical Research Council
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NSGCT	non-seminomatous germ cell tumour
PA	para-aortic
PEB	cisplatin, etoposide, bleomycin
PEI	cisplatin, etoposide, ifosfamide
PET	positron emission tomography
PFS	progression-free survival
PS	pathological stage
PLAP	placental alkaline phosphatase
PVB	cisplatin, vinblastine, bleomycin
RPLND	retroperitoneal lymph node dissection
SWENOTECA	Swedish-Norwegian Testicular Cancer Project
Tin	testicular intraepithelial neoplasia
	pathological definition: undifferentiated intratubular germ cell carcinoma
TIP	paclitaxel, ifosfamide, cisplatin
TNM	Tumour Node Metastasis
UICC	International Union Against Cancer
ULN	upper limit of normal
VelP	vinblastine, ifosfamide, cisplatin
WHO	World Health Organization
VIP	(VP-16) etoposide, ifosfamide, cisplatin

Conflict of interest

All members of the Testicular Cancer Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided

Guidelines on
Penile Cancer

G. Pizzocaro (past Chairman), F. Algaba, E. Solsona,
S. Tana, H. Van Der Poel, N. Watkin, S. Horenblas (chairman)

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Group on Penile Cancer has prepared this guidelines document to assist medical professionals in the management of penile cancer. The guidelines aim to provide detailed, up-to-date information, based on recent developments in our understanding and management of penile squamous cell carcinoma (SCC). However, it must be emphasised that these guidelines provide an updated, but not yet standardised general approach to treatment and that they provide guidance and recommendations without legal implications.

Publication history information: The Penile Cancer Guidelines were first published in 2001 and updated in 2004 and 2009. The literature search for the 2009 update covered the period from October 2004 to December 2008. The reason to present such an early update can also be attributed to the recent publication of the 2009 Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) classification which, for penile cancer, had remained unchanged since 1987. Additionally, this update allowed inclusion of relevant new references.

2. METHODOLOGY

A systematic literature search on penile cancer was performed by all members of the EAU Penile Cancer Working Group which covered the period between October 2004 and December 2008. At the onset of the project, each member was assigned one or two topics in accordance with their particular expertise. Each panel member was teamed up with another panel member who acted as a reviewer of a section. The panel decided to avoid rare diseases and to restrict the guidelines to SCC only. Since new publications became available in the first 3 years, the initial literature acquisition resulted in a first draft for discussion in 2008. This document was reviewed and updated by the panel and published in the 2009 edition of the EAU guidelines book and as an ultra-short (pocket) edition at the EAU Annual Congress in Stockholm, Sweden. For this 2010 print, the results of the updated search performed by the panel for their scientific publication (1) covering the period between December 2008 and December 2009 was supplemented by a second search with a cut-off date of March 2010.

To date the physician data query on 'Penile Cancer Treatment' (Health Professional Version) published by the National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health in Bethesda, MD, USA (2), remains the only evidence-based, peer-reviewed document available. No randomised controlled trials or Cochrane reviews have been published.

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1), and guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (3). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given. As a result of the lack of randomised studies, the levels of evidence (LE) and grades of recommendation (GR) provided in the document are low.

Additionally, a quick reference guide is available. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the society website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (3).*

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (3).*

2.1 References

1. Pizzocaro G, Algaba F, Horenblas S, et al. EAU penile cancer guidelines 2009. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):1002-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20163910
2. National Cancer Institute. Penile Cancer Treatment (PDQ). Health Professional Version. US National Institutes of Health, 2008, pp. 1-13. http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/treatment/penile/healthprofessional/allpages
3. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]

3. DEFINITION OF PENILE CANCER

Penile cancer is a relatively rare SCC. It usually originates in the epithelium of the inner prepuce and glans. It shares similar pathology and natural history with SCC of the oropharynx, female genitalia (cervix, vagina and vulva), and anus. Phimosis, poor hygiene, and smoking are the major risk factors for penile cancer. Typing has been done of the human papillomaviruses (HPVs) that are responsible for the sexual transmission of genital warts, condyloma acuminata, and SCC.

An improved understanding of the natural history of the disease, earlier diagnosis, better technology, research group collaboration, and centralisation of patients in centres of excellence has improved the cure rate for penile cancer from 50% in the 1990s to 80% in recent years.

4. EPIDEMIOLOGY

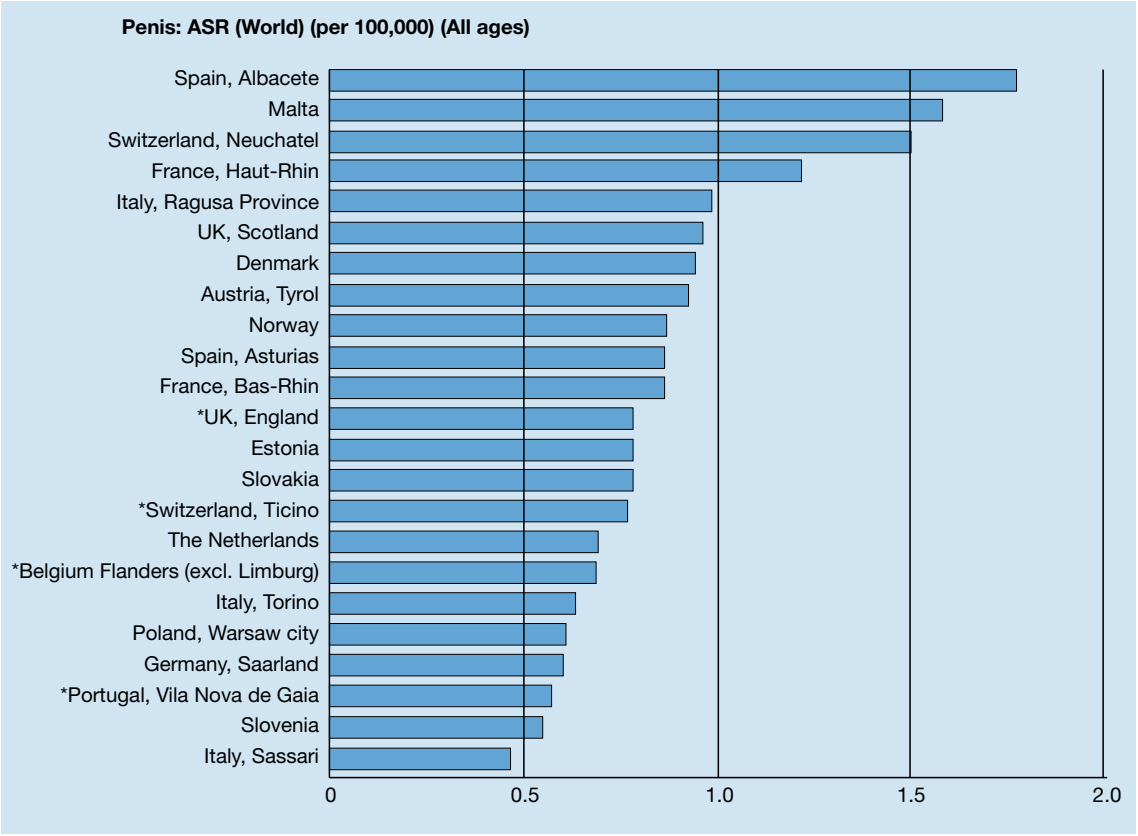
In Western countries, primary malignant penile cancer is uncommon, with an incidence of less than 1.00 per 100,000 males in Europe and the United States (1,2). However, there are significant geographical variations, within Europe (Figure 1) reporting an incidence greater than 1.00 per 100,000 men (3). Incidence is also affected by race and ethnicity in North America (1), with the highest incidence of penile cancer found in white Hispanics (1.01 per 100,000), followed by Alaskan, Native/American Indians (0.77 per 100,000), Blacks (0.62 per 100,000) and white non-Hispanics (0.51 per 100,000).

In contrast, in the non-Western world, the incidence of penile cancer is much higher and can represent 10-20% of malignant diseases in men ranging from an age-adjusted incidence of 0.7-3 per 100,000 people in India to 8.3 per 100,000 men in Brazil, and even higher in Uganda, where it is the most commonly diagnosed cancer.

Important risk factors include social and cultural habits, and hygienic and religious practices (4). Penile carcinoma is rare in communities that practise circumcision in newborns or before puberty (Jews, Muslims, and the Ibos of Nigeria). Early circumcision reduces the risk of penile cancer by 3-5 times. Adult circumcision does not protect against penile cancer.

In the USA, the overall age-adjusted incidence rate decreased considerably between 1973 and 2002 from 0.84 per 100,000 in 1973-1982 to 0.69 per 100,000 in 1983-1992, and further to 0.58 per 100,000 in 1993-2002 (1). In European countries, the incidence during the 1980s and 1990s was stable or increased only slightly (2). Incidence increases with age (2); however, the disease has been reported in younger men and even in children in non-western countries (3).

Figure 1: Annual incidence rate (world standardised) by European region/country*



**From Parkin et al. (2003) (3).*

4.1 References

1. Barnholtz-Sloan JS, Maldonado JL, Pow-sang J, et al. Incidence trends in primary malignant penile cancer. Urol Oncol 2007 Sep-Oct;25(5):361-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17826651
2. ENCR (European Network of Cancer Registries). Eurocim version 4.0. European incidence database V2.2 (1999). Lyon, France: IARC, 2001. http://www.encr.com.fr/encr_EUROCIM1.htm
3. Parkin DM, Whelan SL, Ferlay J, et al. Cancer Incidence in Five Continents. Vol. VIII. IARC Scientific Publications. No. 155. Lyon, France: IARC, 2002. http://www.iarc.fr/en/Publications/PDFs-online/Cancer-Epidemiology/IARC-Scientific-Publication-No.-155
4. Misra S, Chaturvedi A, Misra NC. Penile carcinoma: a challenge for the developing world. Lancet Oncol 2004 Apr;5(4):240-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15050955

5. RISK FACTORS AND PREVENTION

Risk factors for penile cancer were identified by the Karolinska Institute based on a Medline search of published literature from 1966 to 2000 (1). Strong risk factors (OR > 10) identified by case-control studies included (LE: 2a):

- Phimosis;
- Chronic inflammatory conditions, e.g. balanoposthitis, lichen sclerosus, and atrophicus (balanitis xerotica obliterans);
- Treatment with sporalene and ultraviolet A photochemotherapy.

Sexual history (multiple partners, early age of first intercourse) and a self-reported history of condylomata are associated with a 3-5-fold increased risk of penile cancer. Smoking is also a risk factor. Cervical cancer in female sexual partners is not consistently associated with penile cancer in their male partners.

In many case series, HPV DNA has been identified in 70-100% of intraepithelial neoplasia and in 40-50% of cases with invasive penile cancer. These results have been confirmed by a population-based case-control study (2). Among men not circumcised in childhood, phimosis was strongly associated with the development of invasive penile cancer (OR: 11.4; 95% CI: 5.0-25.9) and cigarette smoking was associated with a 4.5-fold increased risk (95% CI: 2.0-10.1). Human papillomavirus DNA was detected in 80% of tumour specimens and 69% were positive for HPV-16 (LE: 2a).

Smegma as a carcinogen has been clearly excluded (3). The risk of cancer of the vulva, vagina, penis, and anus is increased in patients with condyloma acuminata (4) (LE: 2b).

Human papillomavirus-16 and 18 have a causal role in 70% of cancers of the cervix, vagina, and anus and 40-50% of cancers of the vulva, penis, and oropharynx. Other cofactors are very likely to be necessary for progression from HPV infection to cancer (5). Verrucous carcinoma is not related to HPV infection (6).

In June 2006, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) licensed the first vaccine to prevent cervical cancer and other HPV-associated diseases in women (7). The vaccine protects against infection with HPV-6, 11, 16 and 18, which together are responsible for 70% of cervical cancers and 90% of genital warts.

Human papillomavirus is highly transmissible, with a peak incidence soon after the onset of sexual activity. The recommended age for vaccination in girls is 11-12 years (8), with catch-up vaccination recommended in females aged 13-26 years.

However, vaccination is not a substitute for routine cervical cancer screening and vaccinated women should continue to have cervical cancer screening. Vaccination against HPV has also been recommended in men (9). Although one study has found that mid-adult women (≥ 25 years) have a high level of acceptance of HPV vaccination (10), only 33% of men wanted the HPV vaccine, 27% did not, and 40% were undecided (11). It has been decided that vaccination in men must wait for results of female HPV vaccination (12).

Interestingly, the presence of high-risk HPV DNA in penile cancer does not compromise prognosis.

An early study has found no difference between HPV DNA-negative and -positive patients for lymph node metastases and 10-year survival rate (13). In a more recent study (14), disease-specific 5-year survival in the high-risk HPV-negative group was 78% versus 93% in the high-risk HPV-positive group (log rank test P = 0.03). This suggests the presence of high-risk HPV confers a survival advantage in patients with penile cancer. The virus plays an important role in oncogenesis through interaction with oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes (P53 and Rb genes) (15).

5.1 References

1. Dillner J, von Krogh G, Horenblas S, et al. Etiology of squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 2000;(205):189-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11144896
2. Daling JR, Madeleine MM, Johnson LG, et al. Penile cancer: importance of circumcision, human papillomavirus and smoking in situ and invasive disease. Int J Cancer 2005 Sep;116(4):606-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15825185
3. Van Howe RS, Hodges FM. The carcinogenicity of smegma: debunking a myth. Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 2006 Oct;20(9):1046-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16987256
4. Nordenvall C, Chang ET, Adami HO, et al. Cancer risk among patients with condylomata acuminata. Int J Cancer 2006 Aug;119(4):888-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16557590
5. Muñoz N, Castelisague X, de Gonzalez AB, et al. HPV in the etiology of human cancer. Vaccine 2006 Aug;24(Suppl 3):S3/1-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16949995

6. Stankiewicz E, Kudahetti SC, Prowse DM, et al. HPV infection and immunochemical detection of cell-cycle markers in verrucous carcinoma of the penis. Mod Pathol 2009 Sep;22:1160-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465901
7. Huang CM. Human papillomavirus and vaccination. Mayo Clin Proc 2008 Jun;83(6):701-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533087
8. Markowitz LE, Dunne EF, Saraiya M, et al; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC); Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). Quadrivalent Human Papillomavirus Vaccine: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Recomm Rep 2007 Mar;56(RR-2):1-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17380109
9. Giuliano AR. Human papillomavirus vaccination in males. Gynecol Oncol 2007 Nov;107(2 Suppl 1): S24-S26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17938015
10. Ferris DG, Waller JL, Owen A, et al. Midadult women's attitudes about receiving the prophylactic human papillomavirus vaccine. J Low Genit Tract Dis 2007 Jul;11(3):166-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17596762
11. Ferris DG, Waller JL, Miller J, et al. Men's attitudes toward receiving the human papillomavirus vaccine. J Low Genit Tract Dis 2008 Oct;12(4):276-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18820541
12. Gerend MA, Barley J. Human papillomavirus vaccine acceptability among young adult men. Sex Transm Dis 2009 Jan;36:58-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18830138
13. Bezerra AL, Lopes A, Santiago GH, et al. Human papillomavirus as a prognostic factor in carcinoma of the penis: analysis of 82 patients reated with amputation and bilateral lymphadenectomy. Cancer 2001 Jun;15;91(12):5-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11413520
14. Lont AP, Kroon BK, Horenblas S, et al. Presence of high risk human papilllomavirus DNA in penile carcinoma predicts favorable outcome in survival. Int J Cancer 2006 Sep;119(5):1078-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16570278
15. Kayes O, Ahmed HU, Arya M, et al. Molecular and genetic pathways in penile cancer. Lancet Oncol 2007 May;8(5):420-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17466899

6. TNM CLASSIFICATION AND PATHOLOGY

6.1 TNM classification

The new 2009 TNM classification for penile cancer (1) includes a change for the T1 category (Table 3). This classification needs a further update for the definition of the T2 category*. Two recent publications have shown that the prognosis for corpus spongiosum invasion is much better than for corpora cavernosa invasion (2,3).

Table 3: 2009 TNM clinical and pathological classification of penile cancer

Clinical classification	
T - Primary tumour	
TX	Primary tumour cannot be assessed
T0	No evidence of primary tumour
Tis	Carcinoma *in situ*
Ta	Non-invasive verrucous carcinoma, not associated with destructive invasion
T1	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue
T1a	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue without lymphovascular invasion and is not poorly differentiated or undifferentiated (T1G1-2)
T1b	Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue without with lymphovascular invasion or is poorly differentiated or undifferentiated (T1G3-4)
T2 *	Tumour invades corpus spongiosum/corpora cavernosa
T3	Tumour invades urethra
T4	Tumour invades other adjacent structures
N - Regional lymph nodes	
NX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N0	No palpable or visibly enlarged inguinal lymph node
N1	Palpable mobile unilateral inguinal lymph node
N2	Palpable mobile multiple or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes
N3	Fixed inguinal nodal mass or pelvic lymphadenopathy, unilateral or bilateral
M - Distant metastasis	
M0	No distant metastasis
M1	Distant metastasis
Pathological classification The pT categories correspond to the T categories. The pN categories are based upon biopsy or surgical excision.	
pN - Regional lymph nodes	
pNX	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
pN0	No regional lymph node metastasis
pN1	Intranodal metastasis in a single inguinal lymph node
pN2	Metastasis in multiple or bilateral inguinal lymph nodes
pN3	Metastasis in pelvic lymph node(s), unilateral or bilateral or extranodal extension of regional lymph node metastasis
pM - Distant metastasis	
pM0	No distant metastasis
pM1	Distant metastasis
G - Histopathological grading	
GX	Grade of differentiation cannot be assessed
G1	Well differentiated
G2	Moderately differentiated
G3-4	Poorly differentiated/undifferentiated

Rees et al. (2) have investigated 72 patients with T2 tumours. Local recurrence (35% vs. 17%) and mortality (30% vs. 21%) rates were higher in patients with tunica or cavernosal involvement versus glands-only invasion after a mean follow-up of 3 years (LE: 2b). The authors have proposed defining T2a patients by spongiosum-only invasion and T2b patients by involvement of tunica or corpus cavernosum.

A retrospective analysis of the records of 513 patients treated between 1956 and 2006 has confirmed the above-mentioned difference between tumour invasion of the corpus spongiosum only versus corpus cavernosum (3). It also has confirmed that there are no differences in long-term survival between patients with T2 and T3 tumours, and no significant differences between N1 and N2 tumours in the 1987-2002 TNM classification (LE: 2a).

In the new UICC 2009 TNM classification (1), retroperitoneal node metastases are correctly and accurately defined as extraregional nodal and distant metastases. The difference between corpus spongiosum and corpora cavernosa invasion is not considered.

6.1.1 ***References***

1. Sobin LH, Gospodariwics M, Wittekind C (eds). TNM Classification of Malignant Tumours. UICC International Union Against Cancer 7th edition, Willy-Blackwell, 2009 Dec; 239-42. http://www.uicc.org/tnm/
2. Rees RW, Freeman A, Borley N, et al. PT2 penile squamous cell carcinomas: cavernosus vs. spongiosus invasion. Eur Urol Suppl 2008;7(3):111 (abstract #163). http://www.europeanurology.com/article/S1569-9056(08)60162-1/fulltext
3. Leijte JA, Gallee M, Antonini N, et al. Evaluation of current (2002) TNM classification of penile carcinoma. J Urol 2008;180(3):933-8; discussion 938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635216

6.2 Pathology

Squamous cell carcinoma accounts for more than 95% of cases of malignant disease of the penis. Malignant melanoma and basal cell carcinoma are much less common. It is not known how often SCC is preceded by premalignant lesions (1-4). Although SCC is the most common penile neoplasia, different types and varying growth patterns have been identified (5-7) (Tables 4 and 5).

Table 4: Premalignant lesions

Lesions sporadically associated with SCC of the penis • Cutaneous horn of the penis • Bowenoid papulosis of the penis • Balanitis xerotica obliterans (lichen sclerosus et atrophicus)
Lesions at high risk of developing SCC of the penis (up to one-third transform to invasive SCC) • Penile intraepithelial neoplasia (carcinoma *in situ*): erythroplasia of Queyrat and Bowen's disease

Table 5: Penile SCC

Types of SCC • Classic • Basaloid • Verrucous and its varieties: - Warty (condylomatous) carcinoma - Verrucous carcinoma - Papillary carcinoma - Hybrid verrucous carcinoma - Mixed carcinomas (warty basaloid and adenobasaloid carcinoma) • Sarcomatoid • Adenosquamous
Growth patterns of SCC • Superficial spread • Nodular or vertical-phase growth • Verrucous

Differentiation grading systems for SCC

- Broders' grading system (8)
- Maiche's system score (9)

*6.2.1 **Penile biopsy***

There is no need for biopsy if:

- there is no doubt about the diagnosis and/or;
- treatment of the lymph nodes is postponed after treatment of the primary tumour and/or after histological examination of the sentinel node(s).

There is a need for histological confirmation if:

- there is doubt about the exact nature of the lesion (e.g. metastasis or melanoma) and/or;
- treatment of the lymph nodes is based on preoperative histological information (risk-adapted strategy).

In these cases an adequate biopsy is advised. When performing a biopsy, it is important to consider the findings from a study of biopsy size. Studies of biopsies with an average size of 0.1 cm found the following difficulties:

- difficulty in evaluating the extent of depth in 91% of biopsies;
- discordance between the grade at biopsy and in the final specimen in 30% of cases;
- failure to detect cancer in 3.5% of cases (1).

Thus, although a punch biopsy may be sufficient for superficial lesions, an excisional biopsy is preferred.

*6.2.2 **Pathological categories***

Traditionally, SCC has been considered as superficial or invasive. However, Cubilla et al. (5) have divided penile carcinoma into four categories:

- superficial spreading;
- vertical growth;
- verrucous;
- multicentric.

Different types of growth pattern have different prognoses (10) and different ways of dissemination. The limits of partial surgical resection must therefore be set according to the growth pattern at the time of evaluation of the frozen sections (11). If the margins are studied following these criteria (including urethral and periurethral tissue), only 3-4 mm of tumour-free tissue is sufficient to consider the surgical margins to be negative (12). Basaloid SSC is a cellular subtype that is better recognised than before, and it is highly aggressive (13).

*6.2.3 **Histology and metastatic risk***

Histological subtypes carry different risks of developing metastatic lymph nodes:

- Condylomatous: 18.2%;
- SCC: 56.7%;
- Sarcomatoid carcinoma: 89%.

Perineural (14) and lymphovascular invasion (14,15) are correlated with lymph node metastases, with 23.1% of positive lymph nodes associated with a nodular pattern, and 64.6% with an infiltrative pattern. Perineural invasion, lymphovascular invasion, and high histological grade appear to be the most important adverse pathological prognostic factors, reaching 80% mortality (15).

*6.2.4 **References***

1. Velazquez EF, Barreto JE, Rodriguez I, et al. Limitations in the interpretation of biopsies in patients with penile squamous cell carcinoma. Int J Surg Pathol 2004 Apr;12(2):139-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15173919
2. Velazquez EF, Cubilla AL. Lichen sclerosus in 68 patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: frequent atypias and correlation with special carcinoma variants suggests a precancerous role. Am Surg Pathol 2003 Nov;27:1448-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14576478
3. Teichman JM, Thompson IM, Elston DM. Non infectious penile lesions. Am Fam Physician 2010 Jan;81(2):167-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20082512

4. Renand-Vilmer C, Cavelier-Balloy B, Verola O, et al. Analysis of alterations adjarent to invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the penis and their relationship with associated carcinoma. J Am Acad Dermatol 2010 Feb;62(2):284-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20115951
5. Cubilla AL, Barreto J, Caballero C, et al. Pathologic features of epidermoid carcinoma of the penis. A prospective study of 66 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 1993 Aug;17(8):753-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8338190
6. Chaux A., Soares F, Rodriguez I, et al. Papillary squamous cell carcinoma, not otherwise specified (NOS) of the penis: clinical pathologic features differential diagnosis and outcome of 35 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 2010 Feb;34(2):223-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20061934
7. Ranganath R, Singh SS, Sateeshan B. Sarcomatoid carcinoma of the penis: clinico pathological features. Indian J Urol 2008 Apr;24(2):267-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19468412
8. Broders AC. Squamous cell epithelioma of the skin: A study of 256 cases. Ann Surg 1921 Feb;73(2):141-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17864409
9. Maiche AG, Pyrhönen S, Karkinen M. Histological grading of squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: a new score system. Br J Urol 1991 May;67(5):522-526.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1710163
10. Villavicencio H, Rubio-Briones J, Regalado R, et al. Grade, local stage and growth pattern as prognostic factors in carcinoma of the penis. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):442-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412803
11. Velazquez EF, Soskin A, Bock A, et al. Positive resection margins in partial penectomies: sites of involvement and proposal of local routes of spread of penile squamous cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2004 Mar;28(3):384-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15104302
12. Minhas S, Kayes O, Hegarty P, et al. What surgical resection margins are required to achieve oncological control in men with primary penile cancer? BJU Int 2005 Nov;96(7):1040-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16225525
13. Cubilla AL, Reuter V, Velazquez E, et al. Histologic classification of penile carcinoma and its relation to outcome in 61 patients with primary resection. Int J Surg Pathol 2001 Apr;9(2):111-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11484498
14. Cubilla AL. The role of pathologic prognostic factors in squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. World J Urol 2009 Apr;27:169-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18766352
15. Chaux A, Reuter V, Lezcano G, et al: Comparison of morphologic features and outcome of resected recurrent and non recurrent squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. A study of 81 cases. Am J Surg Pathol 2009 Sep;33(9):1299-306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19471153

7. DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING

The primary tumour and regional lymph nodes must be staged correctly to enable the most appropriate treatment.

7.1 Primary lesion

Physical examination of a patient with penile cancer includes:

- diameter of the penile lesion or suspicious areas;
- location of lesion on the penis;
- number of lesions;
- morphology of lesion: papillary, nodular, ulcerous or flat;
- relationship of lesion to other structures, e.g. submucosa, tunica albuginea, and urethra;
- corpus spongiosum and corpus cavernosum;
- colour and boundaries of lesion;
- penis length.

Accurate histological diagnosis and staging of the primary tumour and regional nodes are necessary for making treatment decisions (1). In a small series, physical examination alone proved more reliable than imaging with ultrasound to judge infiltration into the corpora cavernosa (2). Artificial erection with prostaglandin E1 (alprostadil) in combination with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is helpful in excluding tumour invasion into the corpora cavernosa, and deciding whether limited surgery (e.g. glansectomy) can be performed (3,4).

7.2 Regional lymph nodes

*7.2.1 **Lymphatic drainage of the penis***

Primary lymphatic drainage of penile cancer occurs to the inguinal nodes. A recent single photon emission computed tomography (CT) study (5) has shown that all sentinel nodes were located in the superior and central inguinal zones, with most found in the medial superior zone. No lymphatic drainage was observed from the penis to the two inferior regions of the groin, and no direct drainage to the pelvic nodes was visualised. These findings confirm earlier studies (6-8).

*7.2.2 **Non-palpable nodes***

Careful inguinal physical examination is necessary. In the absence of palpable abnormalities, inguinal ultrasound (7.5 MHz) can reveal abnormal nodes and can be used as a guide for fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB) (9,10). A sentinel node biopsy (SNB) (8) was not recommended until 10 years ago because of a high rate of false-negative results (25%, range: 9-50%) (11). However, recent reports have suggested that dynamic sentinel node biopsy (DSNB) using isosulphan blue and/or Tc99m-colloid sulphur improves survival compared to a 'wait-and-see' policy (LE: 3), and reduces side effects compared to those with inguinal lymphadenectomy (LAD) (12,13). Prospective studies on DSNB have obtained 100% specificity and 95% sensitivity (14-18) (LE: 2b). As analysis of dynamic SNB is operator-dependent (19) and relies on experience, the procedure is only available in a few centres. Nevertheless, a two-centre evaluation of DSNB has demonstrated the reproducibility of the technique, with a short learning curve (20).

Iliac lymph node metastases do not occur in the absence of inguinal metastases (19), therefore pelvic CT is not necessary in patients with no inguinal node metastases.

Conventional CT or MRI scans cannot detect micrometatases (21). No further studies have been performed to confirm the promising results reported with nanoparticle-enhanced MRI (22), but positron emission tomography (PET)/CT imaging can detect pelvic and distant metastases (23).

*7.2.3 **Risk factors and metastasis detection***

Patients with T1G1 category tumours do not need further therapy after local treatment, but in 13% up to 29% of cases those with intermediate T1G2 tumours can develop lymph node metastases (23,24). The risk for lymph node involvement can be evaluated by T and G categories and from other tumour characteristics.

Risk factors identified from retrospective studies include several pathological parameters, such as: perineural invasion, lymphovascular invasion, tumour depth or thickness, anatomical site, size and growth pattern, infiltrative front of invasion, positive resection margins, and urethral invasion (25). Several large series have identified lymphovascular invasion alone, lymphovascular invasion with absence of koilocytosis, lymphovascular invasion plus palpable inguinal nodes, and high histological grade plus perineural invasion as the most important risk factors (26-28).

Finally, the most adverse pathological prognostic factors appears to be lymphovascular invasion and high histological grade (28).

Nomograms have been used to evaluate the predictive value of clinical and pathological indicators, but pathological parameters and nomograms (23-30) cannot achieve more than 80% prediction (23-30). Only ^{18}fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG) PET/CT scanning can improve the detection of early regional and distant metastases (31).

*7.2.4 **Palpable nodes***

Palpable nodes should be described as follows:

- node consistency;
- node location;
- diameter of nodes or masses;
- unilateral or bilateral location;
- number of nodes identified in each inguinal area;
- mobile or fixed nodes or masses;
- relationship (e.g. infiltration or perforation) to other structures, such as the skin or cooper ligament;
- oedema of leg and/or scrotum.

Palpable lymph node metastases can be diagnosed using percutaneous FNAB (cytology and/or histology punction). At the time of diagnosis of penile cancer, as many as 50% of palpable inguinal nodes will be reactive for concomitant infection rather than due to lymph node metastasis. In contrast, during follow-up, nearly 100% of enlarged nodes are metastatic (32) (LE: 2b).

Thus, after allowing time for inflammatory reactions to subside, regional nodes should be evaluated within a few weeks after treatment of the primary tumour. Histological diagnosis can be done using fine-needle aspiration, tissue core, or open biopsy, according to the preference of the pathologist (32,33) (LE: 2b). In the case of a negative biopsy and clinically suspicious nodes, a repeat or excisional biopsy should be performed.

*7.2.5 **Conclusion***

Imaging techniques (e.g. CT and MRI) are widely used, but they are only useful for staging patients with centrimetrical, or lymph node metastases ≥ 1 cm. So far, no current imaging modality can identify microscopic invasion. Imaging using ^{18}FDG-PET/CT have some minor limitations (0.5 cm) (31). The use of molecular biological techniques is experimental (37-41).

7.3 Distant metastases

An assessment of distant metastases should be performed in patients with positive inguinal nodes (23-35) (LE: 2b). Positron emission tomography/CT is reliable for identification of pelvic and distant metastases in patients with positive inguinal nodes (31). Routine blood analysis and chest x-rays are usually performed, despite the fact that they have limited use and lung metastases are exceptionally rare. The value of SCC antigen determination as a staging tool is unclear and therefore not recommended for routine use (37). Biological studies are investigational (38-41).

A diagnostic schedule is summarised below.

7.4 Guidelines for the diagnosis and staging of penile cancer

Recommendations	**GR**
Primary tumour	C
Physical examination, recording morphological and physical characteristics of the lesion. Cytological and/or histological diagnosis.	
Inguinal lymph nodes	C
Physical examination of both groins, recording nodal morphological and physical characteristics: - If nodes are non-palpable, DSNB is indicated; if DSNB not available, ultrasound-guided FNAC/risk factors. - If nodes are palpable, FNAC for cytological diagnosis.	
Regional metastases (inguinal and pelvic nodes)	C
A pelvic CT scan/PET-CT scan is indicated in patients with metastatic inguinal nodes.	
Distant metastases (beside inguinal and pelvic nodes)	C
PET/CT scan also allows evidence of distant metastasis. If PET/CT is not available, abdominal CT scan and chest x-ray are advisable, and in symptomatic M1 patients a bone scan is also advisable.	
Biological laboratory	C
Determinations for penile cancer are investigational and not for clinical use.	

CT = computed tomography; DSNB = dynamic sentinel node biopsy; FNAC = fine-needle aspiration cytology; PET = positron emission tomography.

7.5 References

1. Solsona E, Iborra I, Rubio J, et al. Prospective validation of the association of local tumor stage grade as a predictive factor for occult lymph node micrometastasis in patients with penile carcinoma and clinically negative inguinal lymph nodes. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1506-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342906
2. Horenblas S. The accuracy of ultrasound in squamous cell carcinoma. In: The Management of Penile Squamous Cell Carcinoma. A Retrospective and Prospective Study. Thesis. Amsterdam Zoetermeer: BV Export drukkerij, 1993, pp. 71-83.
3. Kayes O, Minhas S, Allen C, et al. The role of magnetic resonance imaging in the local staging of penile cancer. Eur Urol 2007 May;51(5):1313-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17113213

4. Lont AP, Besnard AP, Gallee MP, et al. A comparison of physical examination and imaging in determining the extent of primary penile carcinoma. BJU Int 2003 Apr;91(6):493-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12656901
5. Leijte JA, Valdés Olmos RA, Nieweg OE, et al. Anatomical mapping of lymphatic drainage in penile carcinoma with SPECT-CT: implications for the extent of inguinal lymph node dissection. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):885-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502024
6. Daseler EH, Anson BJ, Reimann AF. Radical excision of the inguinal and iliac lymph glands: a study based upon 450 anatomical dissections and upon supportive clinical observations. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1948 Dec;87(6):679-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18120502
7. Cabanas RM. An approach for the treatment of penile carcinoma. Cancer 1977 Feb;39(2):456-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/837331
8. Catalona WJ. Modified inguinal lymphadenectomy for carcinoma of the penis with preservation of saphenous veins: technique and preliminary results. J Urol 1988 Oct;140(4):306-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3398125
9. Saisorn I, Lawrentschut N, Leewansangtong S, et al. Fine-needle aspiration cytology predicts inguinal lymph node metastases without antibiotic pretreatment in penile carcinoma. BJU Int 2006 Jun;97(6):1125-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16686716
10. Kroon BK, Horenblas S, Deurloo EE, et al. Ultrasonography-guided fine-needle aspiration cytology before sentinel node biopsy in patients with penile carcinoma. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95(4):517-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705071
11. Pettaway CA, Pisters LL, Dinney CPN, et al. Sentinel lymph node dissection for penile carcinoma: the MD Anderson Cancer Center Experience. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):1999-2003. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500444
12. Horenblas S. Surgical management of carcinoma of the penis and scrotum. In: Petrovich Z, Baert L, Brady LW (eds). *Medical Radiology. Diagnostic Imaging and Radiation Oncology. Carcinoma of the Kidney and Testis, and Rare Urologic Malignancies*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1999, pp. 341-54.
13. Pettaway CA, Jularbal FA, Babaian RJ, et al. Intraoperative lymphatic mapping to detect inguinal metastases in penile carcinoma: results of a pilot study. J Urol 1999;161:159 (abstr #612).
14. Akduman B, Fleshner NE, Ehrlich L, et al. Early experience in intermediate-risk penile cancer with sentinel node identification using the gamma probe. Urology 2001 Jul;58(1):65-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445481
15. Perdonà S, Gallo L, Claudio L, et al. [Role of crural inguinal lymphadenectomy and dynamic sentinel lymph node biopsy in lymph node staging in squamous-cell carcinoma of the penis. Our experience.] Tumori 2003 Jul-Aug;89(4 Suppl):276-9. [Article in Italian] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12903620
16. Tanis PJ, Lont AP, Meinhardt W, et al. Dynamic sentinel node biopsy for penile cancer: reliability of a staging technique. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):76-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050496
17. Wawroschek F, Vogt H, Bachter D, et al. First experience with gamma probe guided sentinel lymph node surgery in penile cancer. Urol Res 2000 Aug;28(4):246-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11011963
18. Lont AP, Horenblas S, Tanis PJ, et al. Management of clinically node negative penile carcinoma: improved survival after the introduction of dynamic sentinel node biopsy. J Urol 2003 Sep;170(3): 783-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913697
19. Leijte JA, Kroon BK, Valdés Olmos RA, et al. Reliability and safety of current dynamic sentinel node biopsy for penile carcinoma. Eur Urol 2007 Jul;52(1):170-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17316967
20. Leijte JA, Hughes B, Graafland NM, et al. Two-center evaluation of dynamic sentinel node biopsy for squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul; 27:3325-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19414668
21. Mueller-Lisse UG, Scher B, Scherr MK, et al. Functional imaging in penile cancer: PET/computed tomography, MRI, and sentinel lymph node biopsy. Curr Opin Urol 2008 Jan;18(1):105-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18090498

22. Tabatabaei S, Harisinghani M, McDougal WS. Regional lymph node staging using lymphotropic nanoparticle enhanced magnetic resonance imaging with ferumoxtran-10 in patients with penile cancer. J Urol 2005 Sep;174:923-7; discussion 927.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093989
23. Schelenker B, Tieki A, Gratzke C, et al . Intermediate differentiated invasive (pT1G2) penile cancer oncological outcome and follow-up. Urol Oncol 2011 Nov;29(6):782-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19945307
24. Hughes BE, Leijte JA, Kroon BK, et al. Lymph Node Metastasis in Intermediate-Risk Penile Squamous Cell Cancer: A Two-Centre Experience. Eur Urol. 2010 Apr;57(4):688-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19647926
25. Lopes A, Hidalgo GS, Kowalski LP, et al. Prognostic factors in carcinoma of the penis: multivariate analysis of 145 patients treated with amputation and lymphadenectomy. J Urol 1996 Nov;156(5): 1637-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8863559
26. Ornellas AA, Nóbrega BL, Wei Kin Chin E, et al. Prognostic factors in invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: analysis of 196 patients treated at the Brazilian National Cancer Institute. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4):1354-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18707720
27. Velazquez EF, Ayala G, Liu H, et al. Histologic grade and perineural invasion are more important than tumor thickness as predictor of nodal metastasis in penile squamous cell carcinoma invading 5 to 10 mm. Am J Surg Pathol 2008 Jul;32(7):974-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18460979
28. Cubilla AL. The role of pathologic prognostic factors in squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. World J Urol 2009 Apr;27(2):169-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18766352
29. Chaux A, Caballero C, Soares F, et al. The prognostic index: a useful pathologic guide for prediction of nodal metastases and survival in penile squamous cell carcinoma. Am J Surg Pathol 2009 Jul;33(7): 1049-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19384188
30. Ficarra V, Zattoni F, Artibani W, et al; GUONE Penile Cancer Project Members. Nomogram predictive of pathological inguinal lymph nodes involvement in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. J Urol 2006 Jun;175(6):2103-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697813
31. Graafland NM, Leijte JA, Valdes Olmos RA, et al. Scanning with 18F.FDG-PET/TC for detection of pelvic nodal involvement in inguinal node positive penile carcinoma. Eur Urol 2009 Aug;56(2):339-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19477581
32. Horenblas S, Van Tinteren H, Delamarre JFM, et al. Squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. III. Treatment of regional lymph nodes. J Urol 1993 Mar;149(3):492-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8437253
33. Ornellas AA, Seixas AL, Marota A, et al. Surgical treatment of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: retrospective analysis of 350 cases. J Urol 1994 May;151(5):1244-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512656
34. Pizzocaro G, Piva L, Nicolai N. Treatment of lymphatic metastasis of squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: experience at the National Tumor Institute of Milan. Arch Ital Urol Androl 1996 Jun;68(3):169-72. [Article in Italian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8767505
35. Senthil Kumar MP, Ananthakrishnan N, Prema V. Predicting regional node metastasis in carcinoma of the penis: a comparison between fine-needle aspiration cytology, sentinel lymph node biopsy and medial inguinal lymph node biopsy. Br J Urol 1998 Mar;81(3):453-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9523669
36. Skoog L, Collins BT, Tani E, et al. Fine-needle aspiration cytology of penile tumors. Acta Cytol 1998 Mar-Apr;42(2):1336-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9850639
37. Laniado ME, Lowdell C, Mitchell H, et al. Squamous cell carcinoma antigen: a role in the early identification of nodal metastases in men with squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. BJU Int 2003 Aug;92(3):248-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12887477

38. Lopes A, Bezena AL, Pinto CA, et al. p53 as a new prognostic factor for lymph node metastasis in penile carcinoma: analysis of 82 patients treated with amputation and bilateral lymphadenectomy. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):81-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050497
39. Kayes O, Ahmed HU, Arya M, et al. Molecular and genetic pathways in penile cancer. Lancet Oncol 2007 May;8(5):420-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17466899
40. Zhu Y, Zhang SL, Ye DW, et al. Predicting pelvic lymph node metastases in penile cancer patients: a comparison of computed tomography, Cloquet's node, and disease burden of inguinal lymph nodes. Onkologie 2008 Feb;31(1-2):37-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268397
41. Zhu Y, Zhou XY, Yao XO, et al. The prognostic significance of p53, Ki-67, epithelial cadherin and matrix metallo proteinase-9 in penile squamous cell carcinoma treated with surgery. BJU Int 2007 Jul;100(1):204-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17433031

8. TREATMENT

The primary tumour and regional lymph nodes are usually treated separately. Although it is important to avoid overtreatment, which can lead to loss of penile tissue and adverse effects of an unnecessary lymphadenectomy, it is essential to remove all cancerous tissue with healthy margins.

8.1 Primary tumour

Guidelines on treatment strategies for primary tumour in penile cancer are outlined in Table 6. For small lesions, a penis-preserving strategy is recommended (GR: B). There is a variety of treatment modalities, which have not been compared in a scientifically rigorous manner, and providing recommendations based on published data is therefore difficult. However, treatment choice is influenced by tumour size, its position on the glans or in the corpora cavernosa, and experience of the treating urologist. There are no documented differences in the local recurrence rate between surgery, laser therapy, and radiotherapy. Although conservative surgery improves quality of life, the risk of local recurrence is higher than after ablative surgery (27% vs. 5%). The pathological assessment of surgical margins is essential to guarantee tumour-free margins (1). Tumour-positive margins lead inevitably to local recurrence. Total removal of the glans (glansectomy) and prepuce does have the lowest recurrence rate among the treatment modalities for small penile lesions (2%) (2).

*8.1.1 **Categories Tis, Ta, and T1a***

Superficial lesions can be treated with one of the following penis-sparing techniques:	**LE**
Local excision with (or without) circumcision.	3
Laser therapy with CO_2 laser (peniscopically controlled) or neodymium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser (3-5). Small recurrences can be retreated in the same way.	2b
Mohs' micrographic surgery (for verrucous carcinoma) (6).	3
Photodynamic and topical therapy with 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) or 5% imiquimod cream and other agents have been reported for superficial lesions with relatively high recurrence rates (7).	4

*8.1.2 **Category T1b tumours of the glans with deeper infiltration (> 1 mm)***

These tumours can be treated with the following techniques:	**LE**
Wide local (laser) excision plus reconstructive surgery or total glans resurfacing with or without skin transplantation (8).	2b
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy [vinblastine, bleomycin, and methotrexate (VBM)] followed by CO_2 laser excision and spontaneous glans re-epithelialisation (3).	2b
Radiotherapy (*see* section 8.1.7).	
Glansectomy (2,8-11).	2b

Conservative treatment may be less suitable in cases of multifocal lesions, which are responsible for 15% of recurrences. Total treatment of the glans surface combined with concomitant circumcision is recommended to avoid multiple recurrences (3) (GR: C).

Negative surgical margins are imperative when using penile-conserving treatments. Pathological assessment of the surgical margins is recommended (GR: C). In general, a margin of 3 mm is considered safe (1).

*8.1.3 **Category T2 (limited to the glans)***

Total glansectomy, with or without resurfacing of the corporeal heads, is recommended (8,10) (LE: 2b; GR: B). Radiotherapy is also an option (*see* section 8.1.7). Partial amputation should be considered in patients who are unfit for more conservative reconstructive surgery (11) (GR: C).

*8.1.4 **Local disease recurrence after conservative surgery***

A second conservative procedure is advised if there is no corpus cavernosum invasion (2-8) (GR: C). If there is a large or deep infiltrating recurrence, partial or total amputation is inevitable (11) (GR: B). For those cases a total phallic reconstruction should be considered (12,13).

*8.1.5 **Category T2 with invasion into the corpus cavernosum***

Partial amputation with a tumour-free margin is considered standard treatment (11) (GR: B). A surgical margin of 5-10 mm is considered safe (1). Reconstruction may alleviate the mutilation (10,12,13).

*8.1.6 **Categories T3 and T4***

These categories of patients are rare (e.g. 5% in Europe and 13% in Brazil) (13). Total penectomy with perineal urethrostomy is standard surgical treatment for T3 tumours (14) (GR: B). Spatulating the urethra is helpful in preventing stenosis. In more advanced disease (T4), neoadjuvant chemotherapy is advised, followed by surgery in responding patients (as for management of patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes (*see* section 8.2.4) (GR: B). Otherwise, adjuvant chemotherapy or consolidating radiation is advised (GR: C; *see* sections 8.2.4 and 8.1.7).

*8.1.7 **Radiotherapy***

Radiotherapy of the primary tumour is an alternative organ-preserving approach with good results in selected patients with T1-2 lesions < 4 cm in diameter (15-18) (LE: 2b). Best results have been obtained with brachytherapy with local control rates ranging from 70-90% (15,17). Patients with lesions > 4 cm are not candidates for brachytherapy.

A minimum dose of 60 Gy is given for external radiotherapy combined with a brachytherapy boost, or brachytherapy alone (15-18). The penile preservation rate after radiotherapy is approximately 80%. Local failure rates after radiotherapy are higher than after partial penectomy, but salvage surgery can restore local control (16). The following complications are the most prevalent: urethral stenosis (20-35%), glans necrosis (10-20%), and late fibrosis of the corpora cavernosa (18) (LE: 3).

No scientifically sound recommendations can be given regarding surgical procedures versus radiotherapy. Institutional experience and available techniques play an important role in decision making.

*8.1.8 **Guidelines for treatment strategies for penile cancer***

Table 6 provides a graded treatment schedule, also including the level of the underlying evidence on which the recommendations are based.

Table 6: Treatment strategies for penile cancer

Primary tumour	**Conservative treatment is to be considered whenever possible**	**LE**	**GR**
Category Tis, Ta, T1a (G1, G2)	CO_2 or Nd:YAG laser surgery, wide local excision, glans resurfacing, or glans resection, depending on size and location of the tumour.	2b	C
	Mohs' micrographic surgery or photodynamic therapy for well differentiated superficial lesions (Tis, G1 Ta).	3	C
Categories: T1b (G3) and T2 (glans only)	Glansectomy, with or without tips amputation or reconstruction.	2b	B
Category T2 (invasion of the corpora)	Partial amputation.	2b	B
Category T3 (invasion of urethra)	Total amputation with perineal urethrostomy.	2b	B

Category T4 (other adj. structures)	Eligible patients: neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by surgery in responders. Alternative: external radiation.	3	C
Local disease recurrence after conservative therapy	Salvage surgery, consisting of penis-sparing treatment in small recurrences.	2b	B
	Larger recurrence: some form of amputation.	2b	B
Radiotherapy	Organ-preserving treatment in selected patients with T1-T2 of glans or coronal sulcus, lesions < 4 cm.	2b	B
Chemotherapy	Neoadjuvant, before surgery.	3	C
	Palliation in advanced or metastatic disease.	3	C

CO_2 = carbon dioxide; Nd:YAG = neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet.

8.2 Regional lymph nodes

Guidelines on treatment strategies for nodal metastases are presented in section 8.2.7. Lymphadenectomy is the treatment of choice for patients with inguinal lymph node metastases (GR: B). The procedure requires careful skin-flap management, meticulous lymph node dissection, prophylactic antibiotics, compression stockings, and early ambulation. Prolonged lymph leakage, leg and scrotal lymphoedema, skin-flap necrosis, and wound infection can occur in 30-70% of patients (14) (LE: 2b). Recent studies have shown a decrease in complications, which suggests that these procedures should be done by experienced surgeons (19).

*8.2.1 **Surveillance***

Surveillance can be recommended only in patients with Tis, Ta, and T1G1 tumours (14,19,20).

*8.2.2 **Management of patients with non-palpable inguinal nodes***

All non-invasive diagnostic procedures miss approximately 20% of microscopic metastases. Also, the sensitivity of a published nomogram does not exceed 80% (21) (LE: 2b). Various risk factors have been helpful in stratifying node-negative patients for lymph node dissection (14,19-21) (LE: 2b). This approach was the basis for the 2004 guideline recommendations for the management of clinically node-negative patients (22). In centres without sentinel node diagnostics, these recommendations can still be useful. In addition, T1G2 tumours should be considered intermediate risk, based on a recent analysis (23). The experience from Brazil can be used as a gold standard for survival rates that can only be attained by surgery (14,19). Only DSNB has better sensitivity (94%) (24) (LE: 2b).

To identify the sentinel nodes reliably, preoperative mapping is essential. Tc99m nanocolloid is injected the day before surgery, patent blue is injected, and a γ-ray detection probe is used intraoperatively. Complete inguinal LAD is performed only in tumour-positive patients. The current protocol has a sensitivity of 95% (24). The technique is now reproducible with a short learning curve (25) (GR: B).

Considering the rarity of the disease and possible improvements in diagnosis and treatment, centralisation of patients is recommended. Centralisation of patients with penile SCC in 10 centres in the United Kingdom allowed improvement in the cure of the disease within a few years (26).

*8.2.3 **Management of patients with palpable inguinal nodes***

Ultrasound-guided FNAB provides an excellent, rapid, and easy way to detect metastatic nodal involvement (27) (LE: 3). In suspected cases with tumour-negative findings, various strategies can be followed:
(1) antibiotics are given;
(2) FNAB is repeated;
(3) suspected nodes are surgically removed;
(4) inguinal LAD is performed. Dynamic sentinal node biopsy is not reliable in patients with palpable suspected nodes and should not be used (28) (LE: 3); DSNB can be used for the clinically uninvolved side and LAD is performed at the tumour-positive sites. Inguinal LAD has been shown to have significant morbidity and it is to be limited to positive sides.

In advanced cases, reconstructive surgery is often necessary for primary wound closure (29).
Modified inguinal LAD is associated with less morbidity, but reducing the field of dissection increases the possibility of false-negative results. Current knowledge on lymphatic drainage of the penis suggests that modified LAD should dissect at least the central and both superior Daseler's zones (30,31) (LE: 3).

There is no direct lymphatic drainage from penile tumours to the pelvic lymph nodes (30), therefore, pelvic LAD is not needed if there is no involvement of inguinal nodes or there is only one intranodal metastasis (14,19) (LE: 3).

In contrast, pelvic LAD is recommended if the node of Cloquet or two or more inguinal nodes

are involved. The rate of positive pelvic nodes was found to be 23% in cases with more than two positive inguinal nodes, and 56% for those with more than three positive inguinal nodes, or if there was extracapsular involvement in at least one inguinal node (14,19) (LE: 2b). Pelvic LAD can be performed as a secondary procedure.

If bilateral dissection is indicated, it can be performed though a midline suprapubic extraperitoneal incision. It is also important to avoid delay for LAD (31). Laparoscopy is not suitable for radical surgery.

*8.2.4 **Adjuvant chemotherapy***

Adjuvant chemotherapy after resection of nodal metastases has been reported in a few small heterogeneous series. Nevertheless, at the National Cancer Institute in Milan, Italy, a long-term disease-free survival (DFS) rate of 84% was obtained in 25 consecutive node-positive patients treated with 12 adjuvant weekly courses of VBM during the period 1979-1990 (32,33). This compares with a DFS rate of only 39% for 38 consecutive patients who underwent radical LAD, with or without complementary radiotherapy, in the period 1960-1978 (32).

Since 1991, category pN2-3 patients have received three courses of adjuvant cisplatin and 5-FU, with lower toxicity and even better results compared to VBM (33) (LE: 2b). Category pN1 patients do not need adjuvant chemotherapy (33) (LE: 2b).

*8.2.5 **Management of patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes***

Upfront surgery is not recommended (GR: B) because cure is unlikely, survival is short, and the surgery is usually quite destructive. Upfront chemotherapy followed by surgery is promising, and these procedures should be performed by experienced medical oncologists and surgeons (14,32,33).

Multiple regimens have been used in a small number of patients. Cisplatin, methotrexate, and bleomycin (BMP) at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York have shown promising results, but a confirmatory study by the Southwest Oncology Group has reported unacceptable toxicity and only modest results (34).

Leijte et al. have reported on 20 patients with five different neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimens in the 1972-2005 period (36). Responders underwent post-chemotherapy surgery and achieved a 37% long-term survival rate. At the MD Anderson Cancer Center, combination therapy with paclitaxel, carboplatin or paclitaxel, cisplatin, and ifosfamide has been used in seven patients, followed by surgery (37). Four patients were long-term survivors (48-84 months) but none of the other three patients treated with BMP achieved significant remission.

A preliminary study on taxol combined with cisplatin and 5-FU has shown significant responses in five of six patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes, but only the three who underwent post-chemotherapy surgery achieved durable complete remission (38).

Conclusion

Adjuvant chemotherapy is recommended in patients with pN2-3 tumours (33) (GR: C), and neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by radical surgery is advisable in those with non-resectable or recurrent lymph node metastases (36-38) (GR: C).

*8.2.6 **The role of radiotherapy***

Prophylactic radiotherapy in patients with N0 tumours is not recommended (39) (GR: C) because of:

- failure to prevent the development of metastatic lymph nodes;
- complications of radiotherapy;
- more difficult follow-up due to fibrotic changes.

Adjuvant radiotherapy may improve locoregional control in patients with extensive metastases and/or extranodal spread, but control is achieved at the cost of severe side effects including severe oedema and pain (GR: C).

*8.2.7 **Guidelines for treatment strategies for nodal metastases***

Regional lymph nodes	**Management of regional lymph nodes is fundamental in the treatment of penile cancer**	**LE**	**GR**
No palpable inguinal nodes	Tis, Ta G1, T1G1: surveillance.	2a	B
	> T1G2: DSNB. (NB: Inguinal LAD if histology is positive).	2a	B
	If DSNB not available: risk factors / nomogram decision-making.	3	C

Palpable inguinal nodes	Ultrasound-guided FNAB (DSNB is unsuitable for palpable nodes).	2a	B
	Negative biopsy: surveillance (repeat biopsy).		
	Positive biopsy: inguinal LAD on positive side.		
	(NB: Modified LAD must include the central zone and both superior Daseler's zones).		
Pelvic nodes	Pelvic LAD if there is: extranodal metastasis; Cloquet node involved; > 2 inguinal node metastases.	2a	B
	Unilateral pelvic LAD if unilateral lymph node metastases with prolonged inguinal incision.	2b	B
	Bilateral pelvic LAD if bilateral inguinal metastases.	2a	B
Adjuvant chemotherapy	In patients with > 1 intranodal metastasis (pN2 pN3) after radical LAD, survival is improved by adjuvant chemotherapy (3 courses of cisplatin, fluorouracil [PF] chemotherapy).	2b	B
Patients with fixed or relapsed inguinal nodes	Neo-adjuvant chemotherapy is strongly recommended in patients with unresectable or recurrent lymph node metastases.	2a	B
	Taxanes seems to improve the efficacy of standard PF chemotherapy (or carboplatin).		
Radiotherapy	Curative radiotherapy may be used for primary tumours of the glans penis and sulcus < 4 cm or for palliation.	2a	B
	Prophylactic radiotherapy in clinical N0 patients is not indicated.	2a	B

DSNB = dynamic sentinel node biopsy; FNAB = fine-needle aspiration biopsy; LAD = lymphadenectomy.

8.3 ***References***

1. Minhas S, Kayes O, Hegarty P. What surgical resection margins are required to achieve oncologic control in man with primary penile cancer? BJU Int 2005 Nov;96(7):1040-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16225525
2. Hadway P, Corbishley CM, Watkin NA. Total glans resurfacing for premalignant lesions of the penis: initial outcome data. BJU Int 2006 Sep;98(3):532-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16925748
3. Bandieramonte G, Colecchia M, Mariani L, et al. Peniscopically controlled CO2 laser excision for conservative treatment of in situ and T1 penile carcinoma: report on 224 patients. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):875-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243513
4. Windalh T, Andersson SO. Combined laser treatment for penile carcinoma: results after long-term follow up. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2118-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771731
5. Schlenker B, Tilki D, Seitz M, et al. Organ-preserving neodymium-yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser therapy for penile carcinoma: a long-term follow-up. BJU Int. 2010 Sep;106(6):786-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20089106
6. Shindel AW, Mann MW, Lev RY, et al. Mohs micrographic surgery for penile cancer: management and long-term followup. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):1980-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869306
7. Paoly J, Ternesten Bratel A, Löwhagen GB, et al. Penile intraepithelial neoplasia: results of photodynamic therapy. Acta Derm Venereal 2006;86(5):418-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16955186
8. Smith Y, Hadway P, Biedrzycki O, et al. Reconstructive surgery for invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the glans penis. Eur Urol 2007 Oct;52(4):1179-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17349734
9. Morelli G, Pagni R, Mariani C, et al. Glansectomy with split-thickness skin graft for the treatment of penile cancer. Int J Impot Res 2009 Sep-Oct;21(5):311-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19458620
10. Palminteri E, Berdondini E, Lazzari M, et al. Resurfacing and reconstruction of the glans penis. Eur Urol 2007 Sep;52(3):893-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17275169
11. Gotsadze D, Matveev B, Zak B, et al. Is conservative organsparing treatment of penile carcinoma justified? Eur Urol 2000 Sep; 38(3):306-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10940705

12. Garaffa G, Raheem AA, Christopher NA, et al. Total phallic reconstruction after penile amputation for carcinoma. BJU Int 2009 Sep;104(6):852-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19239449
13. Salgado CJ, Licata L, Fuller DA, et al. Glans penis coronaplasty with palmaris longus tendon following total penile reconstruction. Ann Plast Surg 2009 Jun;62(6):690-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19461287
14. Ornellas AA, Kinchin EW, No´ brega BL, et al. Surgical treatment of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: Brazilian National Cancer Institute long-term experience. J Surg Oncol 2008 May;97(6):487-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425779
15. deCrevoisier R, Slimane K, Sanfilippo N, et al. Long- term results of brachytherapy for carcinoma of the glans (N- or NX). Int J Radiol Biol Phys 2009 Jul 15;74(4):1150-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19395183
16. Azrif M, Logue GP, Swindell R, et al. External-beam radiotherapy in T1-2 N0 penile carcinoma. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2006 May;18(4):320-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16703750
17. Crook J, Esche B, Pond G. Penile brachytherapy: results for 60 patients. Brachytherapy 2007;6:82-92.
18. Zouhair A, Coucke PA, Jeanneret W, et al. Radiation therapy alone or combined surgery and radiation therapy in squamous-cell carcinoma of the penis? Eur J Cancer 2001 Jan;37(2):198-203.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11166146
19. Ornellas AA, Seixas AL, Marota A, et al. Surgical treatment of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: retrospective analysis of 350 cases. J Urol 1994 May;151(5):1244-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512656
20. Protzel C, Alcatraz A, Horenblas S, et al. Lymphadenectomy in the surgical management of penile cancer. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1075-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19264390
21. Cattan MW, Ficarra V, Artibani W, et al. GUONE Penile Cancer Project Members. Nomogram predictive of cancer specific survival in patients undergoing partial or total amputation for squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. J Urol 2006 Jun;175(6):2103-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697813
22. Solsona E, Algaba F, Horenblas S, et al. EAU guidelines on penile cancer. Eur Urol 2004 Jul;46(1):1-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183542
23. Hughes BE, Leijte JAP, Kroon BK, et al. Lymph node metastasis in intermediate-risk penile squamous cell cancer: a two-centre experience. Eur Urol 2010 Apr;57(4):688-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19647926
24. Leijte JAP, Kroon BK, Valde´ s Olmos RA, et al. Reliability and safety of current dynamic sentinel node biopsy for penile carcinoma. Eur Urol 2007 Jul;52(1):170-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17316967
25. Leijte JA, Hughes B, Graafland NM, et al. Two-center evaluation of dynamic sentinel node biopsy for squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul;27(20):3325-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19414668
26. Lucky MA, Rogers B, Parr NJ. Referrals into a dedicated British penile cancer centre and sources of possible delay. Sex Transm Infect 2009 Dec;85(7):527-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19584061
27. Saisorn I, Lawrentschut N, Leewansangtong S, et al. Fine-needle aspiration cytology predicts inguinal lymph node metastases without antibiotic pretreatment in penile carcinoma. BJU Int 2006 Jun;97(6):1125-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16686716
28. Horenblas S. Lymphadenectomy for squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. Part 1: diagnosis of lymph node metastasis. BJU Int 2001 Sep;88:467-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11589659
29. Leijte JAP, Valde´ s Olmos RA, Nieweg OE, et al. Anatomical mapping of lymphatic drainage in penile carcinoma with SPECT-CT: implications for the extent of inguinal lymph node dissection.
Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):885-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502024
30. Daseler EH, Anson BJ, Reimann AF. Radical excision of inguinal and iliac lymph glands: a study based upon 450 anatomical dissections and upon supportive clinical observations. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1948 Dec;87(6):679-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18120502

31. Horenblas S. Lymphadenectomy for squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. Part 2: the role and technique of lymph node dissection. BJU Int 2001 Sep;88(5):473-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11589660
32. Pizzocaro G, Piva L. Adjuvant and neoadjuvant vincristine, bleomycin, and methotrexate for inguinal metastases from squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. Acta Oncol 1988;27(6b):823-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2466471
33. Pizzocaro G, Piva L, Bandieramonte G, et al. Up-to-date management of carcinoma of the penis. Eur Urol 1997;32(1):5-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9266225
34. Dexeus F, Logothetis C, Sella A, et al. Combination chemotherapy with methotrexate, bleomycin and cisplatin for advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the male genital tract. J Urol 1991 Nov;146(5): 1284-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719241
35. Haas G, Blumenstein B, Gagliano R, et al. Cisplatin, methotrexate and bleomycin for the treatment of carcinoma of the penis: a Southwest Oncology Group study. J Urol 1999 Jun;161(6):1823-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10332445
36. Leijte JAP, Kerst JM, Bais E, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in advanced penile carcinoma. Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):488-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17316964
37. Barmejo C, Busby JK, Spiess PE, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by aggressive surgical consolidation for metastatic penile squamous cell carcinoma. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1335-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382727
38. Pizzocaro G, Nicolai N, Milani A. Taxanes in combination with cisplatin and fluorouracil for advanced penile cancer: preliminary results. Eur Urol 2009 Mar;55(3):546-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18649992
39. Kulkarni JN, Kamat MR. Prophylactic bilateral groin node dissection versus prophylactic radiotherapy and surveillance in patients with N0 and N(1-2A) carcinoma of the penis. Eur Urol 1994;26(2):123-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7957466

9. FOLLOW-UP

Follow-up in penile carcinoma is important for several reasons:

- It enables early detection of recurrence, which is important because most local and/or loco-regional recurrences are potentially curable.
- It is the only way to assess treatment and anticipate early and late complications.
- It is important for patient (and physician) education.

A rational follow-up scheme requires an understanding of the patterns of recurrence. Preferably, follow-up should be introduced within the framework of a controlled study. Based on a retrospective study, a follow-up schedule for penile cancer has been published (1).

9.1 How to follow-up

The aim of follow-up is to detect local and/or regional recurrences because they can be cured. In contrast, metastases at distant sites are always fatal (2). Risk stratification for recurrence is also helpful. Traditional follow-up methods are inspection and physical evaluation. Modern ultrasound imaging is a useful adjunct, with promising results from new imaging modalities, such as PET/CT (3).

9.2 When to follow-up

The follow-up interval and strategies for patients with penile cancer are directed by the initial treatment of the primary lesion and regional lymph nodes. In the above-mentioned multicentre study (1), during the first 2 years of follow-up, the following occurred:

- 74.3% of all recurrences;
- 66.4% of local recurrences;
- 86.1% of regional recurrences;
- 100% of distant recurrences.

Of all recurrences, 92.2% occurred within the first 5 years (1). All recurrences after 5 years were

local recurrences or new primary lesions. Thus, an intensive programme of follow-up during the first 2 years is rational, with less intensive follow-up needed thereafter. In well-educated and motivated patients, follow-up can stop after 5 years, although they must continue to carry out regular self-examination.

9.3 Primary tumour

Local recurrence has been reported in up to 30% of patients treated with penis-preserving surgery, during the first 2 years following treatment. Local recurrence is more likely with all types of local therapy, that is, local resection, laser therapy, brachytherapy, Mohs' procedure, and associated therapies (1,4). However, in contrast to regional recurrence, local recurrence does not have an impact on survival (1,4).

Local recurrences are easily detected by the patient, his partner or doctor. Patient education is an important part of follow-up and the patient should be urged to visit a specialist if any changes are seen. Despite the fact that late local recurrences are well documented, it is reasonable to stop follow-up after 5 years, provided the patient will report local changes immediately (5). This is possible because life-threatening regional and distant metastases no longer occur, while recurrences that are local only are not life-threatening. The emphasis should be placed on patient self-examination. In patients who are unlikely to self-examine, long-term follow-up may be necessary.

Following penis-preserving treatment, a follow-up visit every 3 months is advised in the first 2 years. We then advise a follow-up visit every 6 months, provided that the patient and his partner have been well instructed to examine the penis regularly and to return if any abnormality is observed. It is important to stress that the patient must continue to carry out regular self-examination even after 5 years' follow-up. After amputation, a less frequent time interval of every 6 months is advised. The risk of local recurrence is no more than 5% (1,4).

9.4 Regional recurrences

Stringent follow-up is advised for the 2 years following surgery. This is because most regional recurrences occur within that time, whether a 'wait-and-see' policy has been followed or the patient has undergone SNB or inguinal LAD.

Previous follow-up recommendations have relied heavily on physical examination of the inguinal regions. However, experience with 'wait and see' and DSNB have shown that, despite intensive follow-up, regional recurrences have shown up unexpectedly (6). Ultrasound and immediate FNAB have been encouraging in finding occult metastases (6,7), and it seems reasonable to add ultrasound to physical examination.

Patients managed with a 'wait-and-see' policy have a higher risk of recurrence (9%) than patients staged surgically (2.3%), irrespective whether staging has been performed by LAD or DSNB. This finding only applies to patients without histopathological evidence of lymph node metastases.

Patients treated surgically because of lymph node metastases have an increased risk of recurrence (19%) (1). Based on these findings, a change in the follow-up scheme is proposed. For patients in a 'wait-and-see' programme and those treated with LAD for proven lymph node metastases, follow-up should be every 3 months and should include ultrasound investigation of the groin. This intensive follow-up programme should be observed for 2 years, which is the period when recurrence is most likely. Imaging using CT has been replaced by ultrasound scanning with immediate FNAB, and PET/CT is used in patients at risk of regional recurrence and distant metastases. Bone scan and other tests are only recommended in symptomatic patients.

9.5 Guidelines for follow-up in penile cancer

Table 7 provides a follow-up schedule for penile cancer with grades of recommendation.

Table 7: Follow-up schedule for penile cancer

	Interval of follow-up		**Examinations and investigations**	**Maximum duration of follow-up**	**GR**
	Years 1 and 2	Years 3, 4 and 5			
Recommendations for follow-up of the primary tumour					
Penile preserving treatment	3 months	6 months	Regular physician or self-examination	5 years	C
Amputation	6 months	1 year	Regular physician or self-examination	5 years	C
Recommendations for follow-up of the inguinal lymph nodes					
'Wait-and-see'	3 months	6 months	Regular physician or self-examination	5 years	C

pN0	6 months	1 year	Regular physician or self-examination Ultrasound with FNAB	5 years	C
pN+	3 months	6 months	Regular physician or self-examination Ultrasound with FNAB	5 years	C

FNAB = fine-needle aspiration biopsy.

9.6 References

1. Leijte JAP, Kirrander P, Antonini N, et al. Recurrence patterns of squamous cell carcinoma of the penis: recommendations for follow-up based on a two-centre analysis of 700 patients. Eur Urol 2008 Jul;54(1):161-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18440124
2. Horenblas S, van Tinteren H, Delamarre JFM, et al. Squamous cell carcinoma of the penis. III. Treatment of regional lymph nodes. J Urol 1993 Mar;149(3):492-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8437253
3. Lont AP, Gallee MP, Meinhardt W, et al. Penis conserving treatment for T1 and T2 penile carcinoma: clinical implications of a local recurrence. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):575-80;discussion 580. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813892
4. Horenblas S, Newling DW. Local recurrent tumour after penis-conserving therapy. A plea for long-term follow-up. Br J Urol 1993 Dec;72(6):976. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8306171
5. Kroon BK, Horenblas S, Lont AP, et al. Patients with penile carcinoma benefit from immediate resection of clinically occult lymph node metastases. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):816-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711276
6. Kroon BK, Horenblas S, Deurloo EE, et al. Ultrasonography-guided fine-needle aspiration cytology before sentinel node biopsy in patients with penile carcinoma. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95(4):517-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705071
7. Krishna RP, Sistla SC, Smile R, et al. Sonography: An underutilized diagnostic tool in the assessment of metastatic groin nodes. J Clin Ultrasound 2008 May;36(4):212-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17960822

10. QUALITY OF LIFE

10.1 Sexuality and fertility after cancer

As more people achieve long-term survival after cancer, sexual dysfunction and infertility are increasingly recognised as negative consequences that affect quality of life (1).

*10.1.1 **Sexual activity and quality of life after penile cancer laser treatment***

A retrospective, face-to-face, structured interview study was carried out on Swedish patients treated with laser for localised penile carcinoma during 1986 to 2000 (2). Sixty-seven patients were treated, with 58 of them (mean age 63 years) still alive in 2006. Forty-six (79%) agreed to participate in the interview. Nearly all patients could recall their first symptom, with 37% reporting that they delayed seeking treatment for > 6 months. Patients had a greater lifetime number of sexual partners and a greater lifetime prevalence of sexually transmitted infections than the comparable general Swedish population. Following laser treatment, there was a marked decrease in some sexual practices, such as manual stimulation or caressing and fellatio. Patient satisfaction with life overall was similar to that of the general population.

In conclusion, some patients delayed seeking treatment for a considerable period despite awareness of the first local symptoms. Men with laser-treated localised penile carcinoma resumed their sexual activities to a large extent. Except for satisfaction with somatic health, a similar (or higher) proportion of patients were satisfied with life overall and with other domains of life including their sex life.

*10.1.2 **Sexual function after partial penectomy for penile cancer***

To compare sexual function and satisfaction before and after partial penectomy, 18 Brazilian patients were given a personal interview and answered the International Index of Erectile Function questionnaire to determine erectile function, orgasmic function, sexual desire, intercourse satisfaction, and overall satisfaction with sexual activity (3). The median patient age was 52 years. The medium penile length after partial penectomy was

4 cm in the flaccid state, with 55.6% of patients reporting erectile function that allowed sexual intercourse. The main reason given for not resuming sexual intercourse in 50% of sexually abstinent patients was feeling shame because of a small penis and the absence of the glans penis. Surgical complications also compromised resumption of sexual activity after amputation in 33.3% of these patients. However, 66.7% sustained the same frequency and level of sexual desire prior to surgery, and 72.2% continued to have ejaculation and orgasm every time they had sexual stimulation or intercourse. Nevertheless, only 33.3% maintained their preoperative frequency of sexual intercourse and were satisfied with their sexual relationships with their partners and their overall sex life. In conclusion, the preoperative and postoperative scores were statistically worse for all domains of sexual function after partial penectomy.

10.2 Sexual mutilation, relapse, and death

Today, nearly 80% of penile cancer patients can be cured. Experience in management of this rare tumour is helpful (4). Referral to centres with experience is recommended. Psychological support is very important for these patients. Penis-sparing surgery obviously allows a better quality of life than penile amputation and must be considered whenever feasible.

10.3 References

1. Schover LR. Sexuality and fertility after cancer. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2005;523-7.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16304430
2. Skeppner E, Windahl T, Andersson S, et al. Treatment-seeking, aspects of sexual activity and life satisfaction in men with laser-treated penile carcinoma. Eur Urol 2008 Sep;54(3):631-9.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18788122
3. Romero FR, Romero KR, Mattos MA, et al. Sexual function after partial penectomy for penile cancer. Urology 2005 Dec;66(6):1292-5.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16360459
4. Leijte JA, Gallee M, Antonini N, et al. Evaluation of current TNM classification of penile carcinoma. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):933-8.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635216

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

5-FU	5-fluorouracil
BMP	cisplatin, methotrexate and bleomycin
CT	computed tomography
DFS	disease-free survival
DSNB	dynamic sentinel node biopsy
EAU	European Association of Urology
FDA	[US] Food and Drug Administration
FDG	fluorodeoxyglucose
FNAB	fine-needle aspiration biopsy
FNAC	fine-needle aspiration cytology
GR	grade of recommendation
HPV	human papillomavirus
LAD	lymphadenectomy
LE	level of evidence
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
Nd:YAG	neodynium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet
PET	positron emission tomography
PF	cisplatin and fluorouracil
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SNB	sentinel node biopsy
TC99m	technetium 99m
TNM	tumour, node, metastasis
VBM	vinblastine, bleomycin, methotrexate

Conflict of interest

All members of the Penile Cancer Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Management of Male Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms (LUTS), incl. Benign Prostatic Obstruction (BPO)

M. Oelke (chairman), A. Bachmann, A. Descazeaud,
M. Emberton, S. Gravas, M.C. Michel, J. N'Dow,
J. Nordling, J.J. de la Rosette

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) in elderly men were traditionally attributed to the enlarging prostate. The mechanisms invoked were one or all of the following: histological benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), benign prostatic enlargement (BPE), or benign prostatic obstruction (BPO). However, during the last decade the causal link between the prostate and the pathogenesis of LUTS has come into question (1). Although the enlarged prostate can contribute to the onset of LUTS in a proportion of men over 40 years of age, other factors are of equal importance. Latest knowledge suggests that LUTS may be linked to the prostate (BPH-LUTS), bladder (detrusor overactivity-overactive bladder syndrome [OAB], detrusor underactivity) or kidney (nocturnal polyuria) (1). Because of the great prevalence of BPH in elderly men, which is as high as 40% in men in their fifth decade and 90% in men in their ninth decade (2), microscopical changes of the prostate seem to co-exist silently with other bladder or kidney malfunctions in some men. The many causes of LUTS are illustrated in Figure 1. In any single person complaining of LUTS it is common for more than one of these factors to be present. This multi-factorial view of the aetiology of LUTS has led most experts to regard the whole urinary tract as a single functional unit. This broader, more complex approach to the pathogenesis of LUTS meant that we modified the title - to reflect the change in perspective - from the former EAU Guideline on LUTS suggestive of BPO (3) to the more contemporary and precise EAU Guideline on Male LUTS, including BPO.

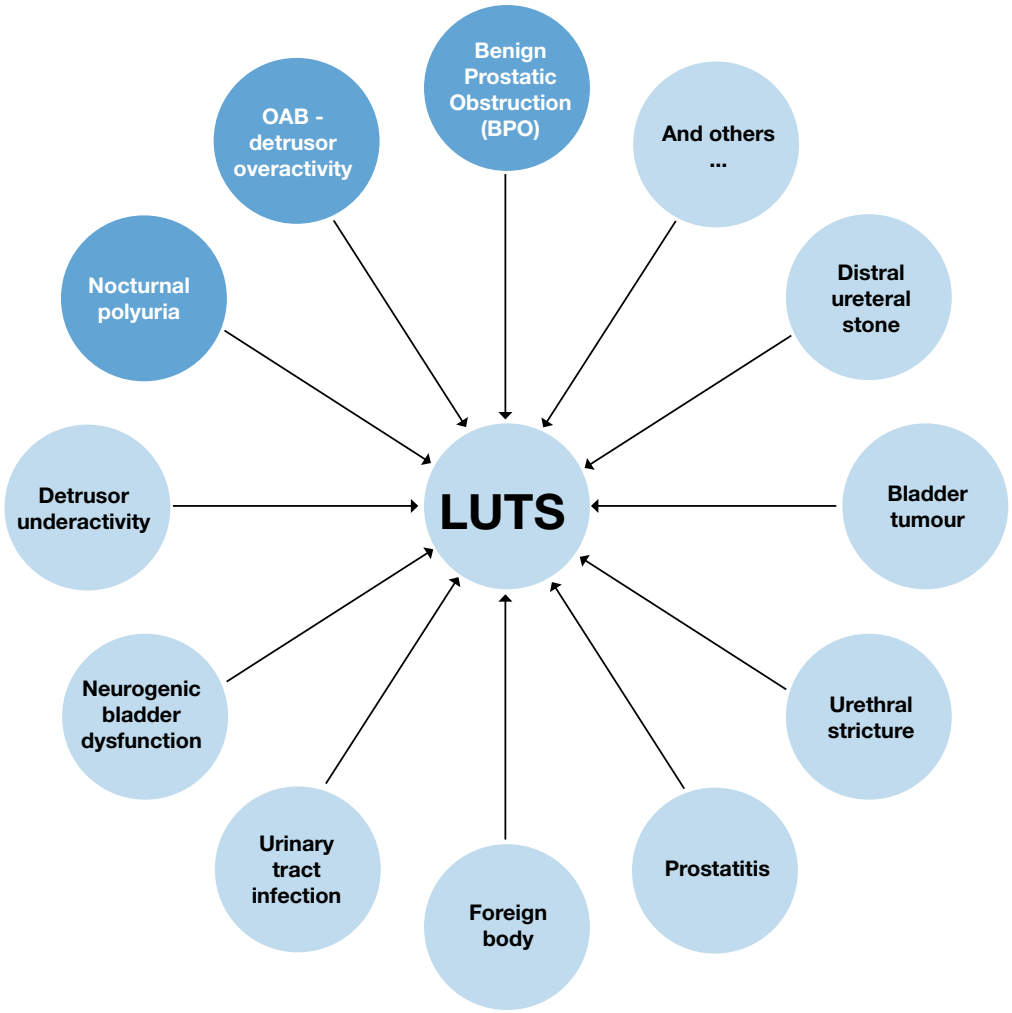


Figure 1: Multifactorial aetiology of lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS). The EAU Guideline on Male LUTS mainly covers LUTS secondary to benign prostatic enlargement (BPE) or benign prostatic obstruction (BPO), detrusor overactivity or overactive bladder (OAB), and nocturia due to nocturnal polyuria. Other causes of male LUTS are covered by separate EAU Guidelines.

Because patients seek help for LUTS and not an underlying attribute of the prostate such as BPH or BPE, this updated guideline has been written from the perspective of men who complain about a variety of bladder storage, voiding and/or post-micturition symptoms. The recommendations made within the guideline are based on the best available evidence. These recommendations apply to men aged 40 years or older who seek professional help for various forms of non-neurogenic benign forms of LUTS, e.g. LUTS/BPO, detrusor

overactivity-overactive bladder (OAB), or nocturnal polyuria. Assessment and treatment of neurogenic LUTS has been published elsewhere and is valid only for men and women with bladder symptoms due to neurological diseases (4). EAU Guidelines on LUTS due urinary incontinence, urogenital infections, ureteral stones, or malignant diseases of the lower urinary tract have been published elsewhere.

The recommendations of this guideline are based on a structured literature search using articles in English language published in the PubMed/Medline, Web of Science, and Cochrane databases between 1966 and 1st January 2010, including the search terms “lower urinary tract symptoms”, “benign prostatic hyperplasia”, “detrusor overactivity”, “overactive bladder”, “nocturia”, and “nocturnal polyuria” in combination with the various treatment modalities and the search limits “humans”, “adult men”, “review”, “randomised clinical trials”, “clinical trials”, and “meta-analysis”. There have been no new drugs liscensed since the literature search.

Databases: PubMed/Medline (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/) Web of Science (http://apps.webofknowledge.com) Cochrane (http://www.cochrane.org/)		
Language: English		
Literature Search: conducted 1st February - 1st March 2010		
Search Period: 1966 - 1st January 2010		
Search limits …	for group search terms … **(AND)**	in combination with investigated drugs, operations, or synonyms **(AND)**
humans **AND** adult men **AND** review **OR** randomised clinical trials **OR** clinical trials **OR** meta-analysis	- lower urinary tract symptoms - benign prostatic hyperplasia - detrusor overactivity - overactive bladder - nocturia - nocturnal polyuria	- alpha-adrenoceptor antagonist - adrenergic alpha-1 receptor antagonists - alpha-blocker - alfuzosin - doxazosin - tamsulosin - terazosin - 5α-reductase inhibitor - dutasteride - finasteride

Each extracted article was separately analysed, classified, and labelled with a Level of Evidence (LE), according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine in 2001 (LE: 1a, highest evidence level) to expert opinion (LE: 4, lowest evidence level) (5). Subsections for the various types of conservative treatments, drugs, and operations are presented in a homogeneous structure listing (1) “mechanism of action”, (2) “available drugs” with a table of key pharmacokinetic profiles or “operative procedure” in case of surgical intervention, (3) “efficacy” with a table of trials with the highest LE, (4) “tolerability and safety”, (5) “practical considerations”, and (6) “recommendations”, which were drawn from the relevant articles using a Grade of Recommendation (GR) according to a classification system modified from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine, ranging from a strong (Grade A) to a weak (Grade C) recommendation. (5).

The guideline panel consisted of urologists, a pharmacologist, and an epidemiologist and statistician who have been working on the topic for the last 4 years. The guideline is primarily written for urologists but can also be used by general practitioners, patients, or other stakeholders. The guideline panel intends to update the content and recommendations, according to the given structure and classification systems, every 2 years.

1.1 References

1. Chapple CR, Roehrborn CG. A shifted paradigm for the further understanding, evaluation, and treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms in men: focus on the bladder. Eur Urol 2006 Apr;49(4): 651-8.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16530611
2. Berry SJ, Coffey DS, Walsh PC, et al. The development of human benign prostatic hyperplasia with age. J Urol 1984 Sep;132(3):474-9.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6206240
3. Madersbacher S, Alivizatos G, Nordling J, et al. EAU 2004 guidelines on assessment, therapy and follow-up of men with lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic obstruction (BPH guidelines). Eur Urol 2004 Nov;46(5):547-54.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15474261

4. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403235
5. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2001). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998.
http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [accessed January 2012].

2. ASSESSMENT

Systematic diagnostic work-up should be done by history, validated symptom questionnaires (e.g. IPSS), both ideally proactively, physical examination, uinanlysis, blood analysis, ultrasound of the prostate, bladder and kidneys, uroflowmetry and ultrasound measurement of post-void residual urine, and bladder diary in cases of urinary frequency or nocturia. Only the diagnosis of nocturnal polyuria (> 33% of the 24-hour urine excretion over night) can be made by the bladder diary, whereas the diagnosis of all other forms of non-neurogenic benign forms of LUTS in men aged 40 years or older is mainly made by exclusion. The systematic work-up should exclude relevant diseases or conditions also causing LUTS in adult men. An assessment algorithm is proposed in figure 2.

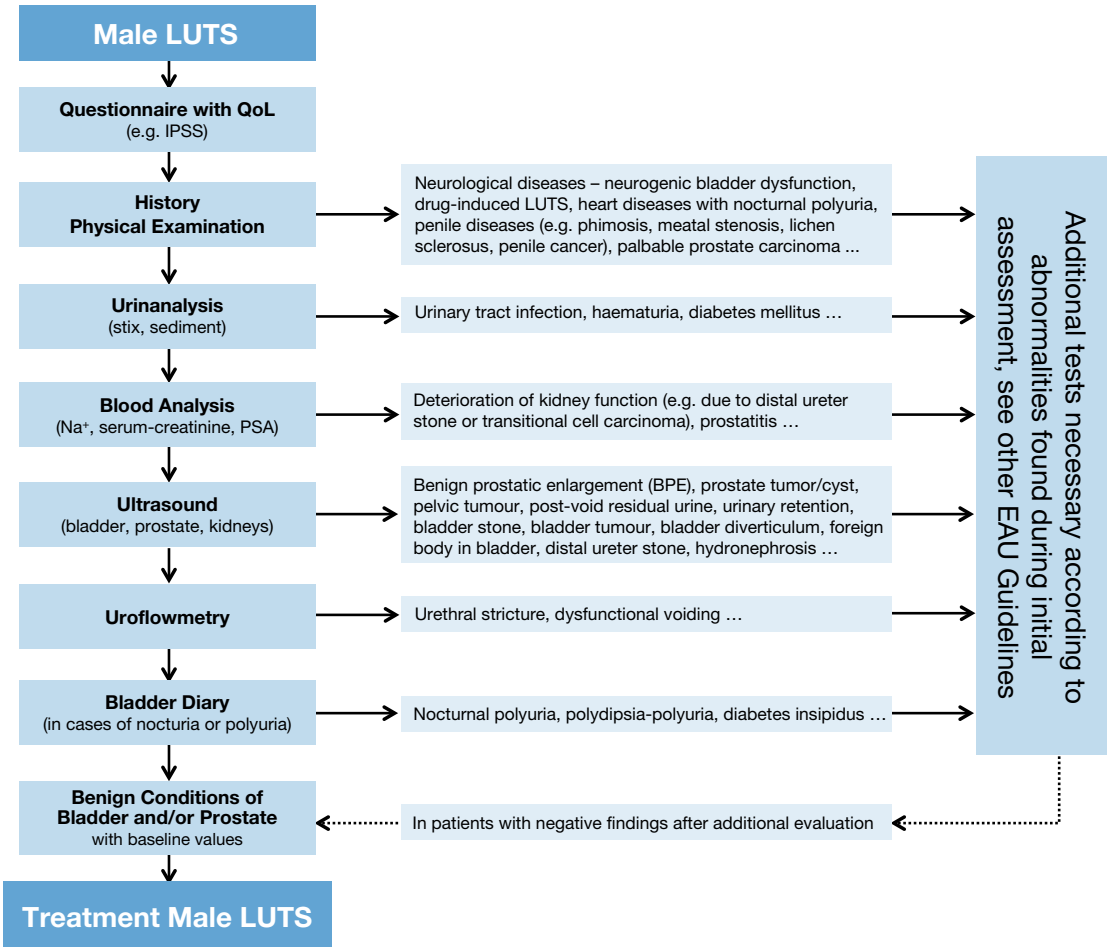


Figure 2: Assessment algorithm of LUTS in men aged 40 years or older. Systematic work-up can exclude other diseases or conditions also associated with LUTS. The assessment may be interrupted or stopped when relevant pathologies have been identified.

Benign prostatic obstruction (BPO) and detrusor overactivity are urodynamic diagnoses. Filling cystometry and pressure-flow measurement are optional tests usually indicated before surgical treatment in men who:

- cannot void ≥ 150 mL;

- have a maximum flow rate ≥ 15 mL/s;
- are < 50 or > 80 years of age;
- can void but have post-void residual urine > 300 mL;
- are suspicious of having neurogenic bladder dysfunction;
- have bilateral hydronephrosis;
- had radical pelvic surgery or;
- had previous unsuccessful (invasive) treatment.

3. CONSERVATIVE TREATMENT

3.1 Watchful waiting - behavioural treatment

Many men with LUTS do not complain of high levels of bother and are therefore suitable for non-medical and non-surgical management - a policy of care known as watchful waiting (WW). It is customary for this type of management to include the following components: education, reassurance, periodic monitoring, and lifestyle advice. In many patients, it is regarded as the first tier in the therapeutic cascade and most men will have been offered WW at some point. WW is a viable option for many men as few, if left untreated, will progress to acute urinary retention and complications such as renal insufficiency and stones (1,2). Similarly, some symptoms may improve spontaneously, while other symptoms remain stable for many years (3).

3.2 Patient selection

All men with LUTS should be formally assessed prior to starting any form of management in order to identify those with complications that may benefit from intervention therapy. Men with mild to moderate uncomplicated LUTS (causing no serious health threat), who are not too bothered by their symptoms, are suitable for a trial of WW. A large study comparing WW and transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) in men with moderate symptoms showed that those who had undergone surgery had improved bladder function over the WW group (flow rates and post-void residual volumes), with the best results being in those with high levels of bother. Thirty-six per cent of patients crossed over to surgery in 5 years, leaving 64% doing well in the WW group (4). Approximately 85% of men will be stable on WW at 1 year, deteriorating progressively to 65% at 5 years (5, 6). The reason why some men deteriorate with WW and others do not is not well understood; increasing symptom bother and PVR volumes appeared to be the strongest predictors of failure.

3.3 Education, reassurance, and periodic monitoring

There now exists LE 1b that self-management as part of WW reduces both symptoms and progression (7, 8) (Table 1). In this study, men randomised to three self-management sessions in addition to standard care had better symptom improvement and improved quality of life at 3 and 6 months when compared to men treated with standard care only. These differences were maintained at 12 months. Nobody is quite sure which key components of self-management are effective, but most experts believe the key components are:

- education about the patient's condition;
- reassurance that cancer is not a cause of the urinary symptoms;
- framework of periodic monitoring.

Table 1: Self-management as part of watchful waiting reduces symptoms and progression (7)

Trial	Duration (weeks)	Treatment	Patients	IPSS	Q_{max} (mL/s)	PVR (mL)	LE
Brown et al. (2007) (7)	52	Standard care	67	-1.3	-	-	1b
		Standard care plus self-management	73	-5.7 * †	-	-	

IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate during free uroflowmetry; PVR = post-void residual urine.

** significant compared to standard care ($p < 0.05$); † significant compared to baseline ($p < 0.05$).*

3.4 Lifestyle advice

The precise role of lifestyle advice in conferring benefit seen in the studies reported to date remains uncertain. Minor changes in lifestyle and behaviour can have a beneficial effect on symptoms and may prevent deterioration requiring medical or surgical treatment. Lifestyle advice can be obtained through informal and

formal routes. If it is offered to men, it should probably comprise the following:

- Reduction of fluid intake at specific times aimed at reducing urinary frequency when most inconvenient, e.g. at night or going out in public. The recommended total daily fluid intake of 1500 mL should not be reduced.
- Avoidance or moderation of caffeine and alcohol which may have a diuretic and irritant effect, thereby increasing fluid output and enhancing frequency, urgency and nocturia.
- Use of relaxed and double-voiding techniques.
- Urethral stripping to prevent post-micturition dribble.
- Distraction techniques, such as penile squeeze, breathing exercises, perineal pressure and mental 'tricks' to take the mind off the bladder and toilet, to help control irritative symptoms.
- Bladder re-training, by which men are encouraged to 'hold on' when they have sensory urgency to increase their bladder capacity (to around 400 mL) and the time between voids.
- Reviewing a man's medication and optimising the time of administration or substituting drugs for others that have fewer urinary effects.
- Providing necessary assistance when there is impairment of dexterity, mobility or mental state.
- Treatment of constipation.

3.5 Practical considerations

The components of self-management have not been individually subjected to study. The above components of lifestyle advice have been derived from formal consensus methodology (9). Further research in this area is required.

3.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Men with mild symptoms are suitable for watchful waiting.	1b	A
Men with lower urinary tract symptoms should be offered lifestyle advice prior to or concurrent with treatment.	1b	A

3.7 References

1. Ball AJ, Feneley RC, Abrams PH. The natural history of untreated 'prostatism'. Br J Urol 1981 Dec;53(6):613-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6172172
2. Kirby RS. The natural history of benign prostatic hyperplasia: what have we learned in the last decade? Urology 2000 Nov;56(5 Suppl 1):3-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11074195
3. Isaacs JT. Importance of the natural history of benign prostatic hyperplasia in the evaluation of pharmacologic intervention. Prostate 1990;3(Suppl):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1689166
4. Flanigan RC, Reda DJ, Wasson JH, et al. 5-year outcome of surgical resection and watchful waiting for men with moderately symptomatic BPH: a department of Veterans Affairs cooperative study. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):12-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628595
5. Wasson JH, Reda DJ, Bruskewitz RC, et al. A comparison of transurethral surgery with watchful waiting for moderate symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia. The Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study Group on Transurethral Resection of the Prostate. New Engl J Med 1995 Jan;332(2):75-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7527493
6. Netto NR, de Lima ML, Netto MR, et al. Evaluation of patients with bladder outlet obstruction and mild international prostate symptom score followed up by watchful waiting. Urol 1999 Feb;53(2):314-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933046
7. Brown CT, Yap T, Cromwell DA, et al. Self-management for men with lower urinary tract symptoms – a randomised controlled trial. BMJ 2007 Jan 6;334(7583):25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17118949
8. Yap TL, Brown C, Cromwell DA, et al. The impact of self-management of lower urinary tract symptoms on frequency-volume chart measures. BJU Int 2009 Oct;104(8):1104-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19485993

9. Brown CT, van der Meulen J, Mundy AR, et al. Defining the components of self-management programme in men with lower urinary tract symptoms: a consensus approach. Eur Urol 2004 Aug;46(2):254-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15245822

4. DRUG TREATMENT

4.1 α_1-adrenoceptor antagonists (α_1-blockers)

4.1.1 Mechanism of action

Historically, it was assumed that α_1-blockers act by inhibiting the effect of endogenously released noradrenaline on prostate smooth muscle cells, thereby reducing prostate tone and bladder outlet obstruction. Contraction of the human prostate is mediated predominantly, if not exclusively, by α_1A-adrenoceptors (1). However, it has been shown that α_1-blockers have little effect on urodynamically determined bladder outlet resistance (2) and treatment-associated improvement of LUTS is correlated only poorly with obstruction (3). Hence, there has been a lot of discussion about the role of α_1-adrenoceptors located outside the prostate (e.g. in the urinary bladder and/or spinal cord) and other α-adrenoceptor subtypes (α_1B- or α_1D-adrenoceptors) as mediators of beneficial effects of α_1-blockers. α_1-adrenoceptors in blood vessels, other non-prostatic smooth muscle cells, and central nervous system are considered to be mediators of side-effects during α-blocker treatment, and all three receptor subtypes seem to be involved. This concept has favoured the use of α_1A-selective adrenoceptor antagonists. However, it remains to be determined whether α_1A-selectivity is the only and main factor determining good tolerability.

4.1.2 Available drugs

Following the early use of phenoxybenzamine and prazosin in BPH-LUTS treatment, four α_1-blockers are currently in mainstream use:

- alfuzosin HCL (alfuzosin);
- doxazosin mesylate (doxazosin);
- tamsulosin HCL (tamsulosin);
- terazosin HCL (terazosin).

Over a period of time, alfuzosin has been clinically available in Europe in three formulations, doxazosin and tamsulosin in two formulations each, and terazosin in one formulation (Table 2). Although different formulations result in different pharmacokinetic behaviours and, perhaps, tolerability profiles, the overall clinical impact of the different formulations is modest. Although some countries also have available indoramin, naftopidil and more recently silodosin, there have been only limited clinical data for these agents at the time of the literature search and, hence, they will not be discussed in these guidelines.

Table 2: Key pharmacokinetic properties and standard doses of α_1-blockers licensed in Europe for treating symptoms of BPH

Drug	t_{max} (hours)	t½ (hours)	Recommended daily dose
Alfuzosin IR	1.5	4-6	3 x 2.5 mg
Alfuzosin SR	3	8	2 x 5 mg
Alfuzosin XL	9	11	1 x 10 mg
Doxazosin IR	2-3	20	1 x 2-8 mg
Doxazosin GITS	8-12	20	1 x 4-8 mg
Silodosin	2.5	11-18	1 x 4-8 mg
Tamsulosin MR	6	10-13	1 x 0.4 mg
Tamsulosin OCAS	4-6	14-15	1 x 0.4 mg
Terazosin	1-2	8-14	1 x 5-10 mg

t_{max} = time to maximum plasma concentration; t½ = elimination half-life; IR = immediate release; SR = sustained release; GITS = Gastrointestinal Therapeutic System; MR = Modified Release; OCAS = Oral Controlled Absorption System.

4.1.3 ***Efficacy***

Indirect comparisons between α_1-blockers, and limited direct comparisons, demonstrate that all α_1-blockers have a similar efficacy in appropriate doses (4). Controlled studies have shown that α_1-blockers typically reduce the International Prostate Symptom Score (IPSS), after a run-in period, by approximately 35-40% and increase the maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max}) by approximately 20-25% (Table 3). However, considerable improvements also occurred in the corresponding placebo arms (4,5). In open-label studies (without a runin period), an IPSS improvement of up to 50% and Q_{max} increase of up to 40% were documented (4,6).

Although these improvements take a few weeks to develop fully, statistically significant efficacy over placebo was demonstrated within hours to days. α_1-blockers seem to have a similar efficacy, expressed as a percent improvement in IPPS, in patients with mild, moderate and severe symptoms (6). Prostate size does not affect α_1-blocker efficacy in studies with follow-up periods of $\leq$ 1 year but patients with smaller prostates (< 40 mL) seem to have better efficacy compared to those with larger glands in longer-term and is similar across age groups (6). α_1-blockers do not reduce prostate size and do not prevent acute urinary retention in long-term studies (8), so that eventually some patients will have to be surgically treated. Nevertheless, the efficacy of α_1-blockers appears to be maintained over at least 4 years.

Table 3: Randomised, placebo-controlled trials with α_1-blockers in men with LUTS (drugs in chronological order; selection of trials)

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment (daily dose)	Patients (n)	Change in symptoms (%)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s)	PVR change (%)	LE
Jardin et al. (1991) [14]	24	Placebo Alfuzosin 3 x 2.5 mg	267 251	-32 [a] -42 [a,b]	+1.3 [a] +1.4 [a]	-9 -39 [a,b]	1b
Buzelin et al. (1997) [15]	12	Placebo Alfuzson 2 x 5 mg	196 194	-18 -31 [a,b]	+1.1 +2.4 [a,b]	0 -17 [a,b]	1b
van Kerrebroeck et al. (2000) [16]	12	Placebo Alfuzosin 3 x 2.5 mg Alfuzosin 1 x 10 mg	154 150 143	-27.7 -38.1 [a,b] -39.9 [a,b]	+1.4 +3.2 [a,b] +2.3 [a,b]	- - -	1b
MacDonald and Wilt (2005) [17]	4-26	Placebo Alfuzosin: all formulations	1039 1928	-0.9 [b] (Boyarski) [†] -1.8 [b] (IPSS) [†]	+1.2 [b]	-	1a
Kirby et al. (2001) [18]	13	Placebo Doxazosin 1 x 1-8 mg IR Doxazosin 1 x 4-8 mg GITS	155 640 651	-34 [a] -45 [a,b] -45 [a,b]	+1.1 [a] +2.6 [a,b] +2.8 [a,b]	- - -	1b
McConnell et al. (2003) [8]	234	Placebo Doxazosin 1 x 4-8 mg	737 756	-29 -39 [b]	+1.4 +2.5 [a,b]	- -	1b
Chapple et al. (1996) [19]	12	Placebo Tamsulosin MR 1 x 0.4 mg	185 364	-25.5 -35.1 [a,b]	+0.6 +1.6 [a,b]	-13.4 -22.4 [a]	1b
Lepor (1998) [20]	13	Placebo Tamsulosin MR 1 x 0.4 mg Tamsulosin MR 1 x 0.8 mg	253 254 247	-28.1 -41.9 [a,b] -48.2 [a,b]	+0.5 +1.8 [a,b] +1.8 [a,b]	- - -	1b
Chapple et al. (2005) [21]	12	Placebo Tamsulosin MR 1 x 0.4 mg Tamsulosin OCAS 1 x 0.4 mg Tamsulosin OCAS 1 x 0.8 mg	350 700 354 707	-32 -43.2 [b] -41.7 [b] -42.4 [b]	- - - -	- - - -	1b
Wilt et al. (2002) [22]	4-26	Placebo Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4-0.8 mg	4122	-12 [b] (-1.1 Boyarski [†]) -11 [b] (-2.1 IPSS [†])	+1.1 [b]	-	1a

Brawer et al. (1993) [23]	24	Placebo Terazosin 1 x 1-10 mg	72 69	-11 -42 [a,b]	+1.2 +2.6 [a,b]	- -	1b
Roehrborn et al. (1996) [24]	52	Placebo Terazosin 1 x 1-10 mg	973 976	-18.4 -37.8 [a,b]	+0.8 [a] +2.2 [a,b]	- -	1b
Wilt et al. (2000) [25]	4-52	Placebo Terazosin	5151	-37 [b] (-2.9 Boyarski †) -38 [b] (IPSS †)	+1.7 [b]	-	1a

Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry); PVR = post-void residual urine; a = significant compared to baseline (indexed wherever evaluated); b = significant compared to placebo; † = absolute value.

*4.1.4 **Tolerability and safety***

Although alfuzosin, doxazosin, and terazosin are similar in terms of molecular structure and lack of α_1-adrenoceptor subtype selectivity, the side-effect profile of alfuzosin is more similar to tamsulosin than to doxazosin and terazosin. The mechanisms underlying such differential tolerability are not fully understood, but may involve better distribution into lower urinary tract tissues by alfuzosin and tamsulosin. Other factors, such as subtype selectivity and the pharmacokinetic profiles of certain formulations, may also contribute to the tolerability profile of specific drugs.

The most frequent side-effects of α_1-blockers are asthenia, dizziness and (orthostatic) hypotension. Although a reduction in blood pressure may benefit hypertensive patients, at least some of the observed asthenia and dizziness can be attributed to a decrease in blood pressure. Vasodilating effects are most pronounced with doxazosin and terazosin, and are much less common for alfuzosin and tamsulosin (odds ratio for vascular-related adverse events 3.3, 3.7, 1.7 and 1.4, respectively; the latter two not reaching statistical significance; [5]). In particular, patients with cardiovascular co-morbidity and/or vasoactive co-medication may be susceptible to α-blocker-induced vasodilatation (9). This includes anti-hypertensive drugs, such as α-adrenoceptor antagonists, diuretics, Ca^{2+}-channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, and angiotensin receptor antagonists, but also phosphodiesterase (PDE) inhibitors prescribed for erectile dysfunction or male LUTS (9).

Despite the long-standing and widespread use of α_1-blockers, an adverse ocular event, termed intraoperative floppy iris syndrome (IFIS), has been discovered only recently in the context of cataract surgery (10). Although IFIS has been observed with all α_1-blockers, most reports have been related to tamsulosin. Whether this reflects a greater risk with tamsulosin than with other α_1-blockers, or rather its more widespread use, is not clear, particularly as the ratio between doses yielding ocular effects and those acting on the lower urinary tract are similar for all α_1-blockers (11). It therefore appears prudent not to initiate α_1-blocker treatment prior to cataract surgery, while existing α_1-blocker treatment should be stopped though it is not clear how long before surgery takes place. It should be noted that the occurrence of IFIS complicates cataract surgery and makes it technically more demanding, however, there are no reports about increased health risks of these patients.

As LUTS and erectile dysfunction often co-exist, medical BPH treatment should not further impair sexual function. A systematic review concluded that α_1-blockers do not adversely affect libido, have a small beneficial effect on erectile function, but sometimes cause abnormal ejaculation (12). Originally, the abnormal ejaculation was thought to be retrograde, but more recent data demonstrate that it is due to (relative) anejaculation, with young age being an apparent risk factor. Although abnormal ejaculation has been observed more frequently with tamsulosin than with other α_1-blockers, this difference did not reach statistical significance in direct comparative studies with alfuzosin and is not associated with an overall reduction of overall sexual function (12). The apparently greater risk for abnormal ejaculation with tamsulosin is intriguing as even more α_1A-selective drugs, such as silodosin, carry a greater risk (13), however, all α_1-blockers are dosed to block α_1A-adrenoceptors effectively. Hence, the mechanism underlying abnormal ejaculation remains to be elucidated.

*4.1.5 **Practical considerations***

α_1-blockers are often considered the first-line drug treatment of moderate-to-severe male LUTS. All α_1-blockers are available in formulations, which are suitable for once-daily administration. To minimise adverse events, it is recommended that dose titration is used to initiate treatment with doxazosin and terazosin; however, this is not necessary with alfuzosin and tamsulosin. Because of their rapid onset of action, α_1-blockers can be considered for intermittent use in patients with fluctuating intensity of symptoms not needing long-term treatment.

*4.1.6 **Recommendations***

	LE	GR
α_1-blockers should be offered to men with moderate-to-severe lower urinary tract symptoms	1a	A

4.1.7 ***References***

1. Michel MC, Vrydag W. a1-, a2- and b-adrenoceptors in the urinary bladder, urethra and prostate. Br J Pharmacol 2006 Feb;147:Suppl 2:S88-S119.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16465187
2. Kortmann BBM, Floratos DL, Kiemeney LA, et al. Urodynamic effects of alpha-adrenoceptor blockers: a review of clinical trials. Urology 2003 Jul;62(1):1-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837408
3. Barendrecht MM, Abrams P, Schumacher H, et al. Do a1-adrenoceptor antagonists improve lower urinary tract symptoms by reducing bladder outlet resistance? Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(3):226-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17638312
4. Djavan B, Chapple C, Milani S, et al. State of the art on the efficacy and tolerability of alpha1-adrenoceptor antagonists in patients with lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 2004 Dec;64(6):1081-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596173
5. Nickel JC, Sander S, Moon TD. A meta-analysis of the vascular-related safety profile and efficacy of a-adrenergic blockers for symptoms related to benign prostatic hyperplasia. Int J Clin Pract 2008 Oct;62(10):1547-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18822025
6. Michel MC, Mehlburger L, Bressel HU, et al. Comparison of tamsulosin efficacy in subgroups of patients with lower urinary tract symptoms. Prostate Cancer Prost Dis 1998 Dec;1(6):332-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496876
7. Roehrborn CG. Three months' treatment with the a1-blocker alfuzosin does not affect total or transition zone volume of the prostate. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2006;9(2):121-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16304557
8. McConnell JD, Roehrborn CG, Bautista O, et al. The long-term effect of doxazosin, finasteride, and combination therapy on the clinical progression of benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 2003 Dec;349(25):2387-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14681504
9. Barendrecht MM, Koopmans RP, de la Rosette JJ, et al. Treatment for lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic hyperplasia: the cardiovascular system. BJU Int 2005 Jun; 95 Suppl. 4:19-28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15871732
10. Chang DF, Campbell JR. Intraoperative floppy iris syndrome associated with tamsulosin. J Cataract Refract Surg 2005 Apr;31(4):664-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15899440
11. Michel MC, Okutsu H, Noguchi Y, et al. In vivo studies on the effects of a1-adrenoceptor antagonists on pupil diameter and urethral tone in rabbits. Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 2006 Feb;372(5):346-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16489448
12. van Dijk MM, de la Rosette JJ, Michel MC. Effects of a1-adrenoceptor antagonists on male sexual function. Drugs 2006;66(3):287-301.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16526818
13. Kawabe K, Yoshida M, Homma Y; Silodosin Clinical Study Group. Silodosin, a new a1A-adrenoceptorselective antagonist for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia: a results of a phase III randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study in Japanese men. BJU Int 2006 Nov;98(5): 1019-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945121
14. Jardin A, Bensadoun H, Delauche-Cavallier MC, et al. Alfuzosin for treatment of benign prostatic hypertrophy. The BPH-ALF Group. Lancet 1991 Jun;337(8755):1457-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1710750
15. Buzelin JM, Roth S, Geffriaud-Ricouard C, et al. Efficacy and safety of sustained-release alfuzosin 5 mg in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. ALGEBI Study Group. Eur Urol 1997;31(2):190-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9076465
16. van Kerrebroeck P, Jardin A, Laval KU, et al. Efficacy and safety of a new prolonged release formulation of alfuzosin 10 mg once daily versus afluzosin 2.5 mg thrice daily and placebo in patients with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. ALFORTI Study Group. Eur Urol 2000 Mar;37(3): 306-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10720857

17. MacDonald R, Wilt TJ. Alfuzosin for treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms compatible with benign prostatic hyperplasia: a systematic review of efficacy and adverse effects. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):780-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230138
18. Kirby RS, Andersen M, Gratzke P, et al. A combined analysis of double-blind trials of the efficacy and tolerability of doxazosin-gastrointestinal therapeutic system, doxazosin standard and placebo in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 2001 Feb;87(3):192-200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11167641
19. Chapple CR, Wyndaele JJ, Nordling J, et al. Tamsulosin, the first prostate-selective alpha 1A-adrenoceptor antagonist. A meta-analysis of two randomised, placebo-controlled, multicentre studies in patients with benign prostatic obstruction (symptomatic BPH). European Tamsulosin Study Group. Eur Urol 1996;29(2):155-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8647141
20. Lepor H. Phase III multicenter placebo-controlled study of tamsulosin in benign prostatic hyperplasia. Tamsulosin Investigator Group. Urology 1998 Jun;51(6):892-900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9609623
21. Chapple CR, Al-Shukri SH, Gattegno B, et al. Tamsulosin oral controlled absorption system (OCAS) in patients with lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic hyperplasia (LUTS/BPH): Efficacy and tolerability in a placebo and active comparator controlled phase 3a study. Eur Urol Suppl 2005;4:33-44.
22. Wilt TJ, Mac Donold R, Rutks I. Tamsulosin for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003; (1): CD002081.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12535426
23. Brawer MK, Adams G, Epstein H. Terazosin in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Terazosin Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia Study Group. Arch Fam Med 1993 Sep;2(9):929-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7509243
24. Roehrborn CG, Oesterling JE, Auerbach S, et al. The Hytrin Community Assessment Trial study: a one-year study of terazosin versus placebo in the treatment of men with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. HYCAT Investigator Group. Urology 1996 Feb;47(2):159-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8607227
25. Wilt TJ, Howe RW, Rutks I, et al. Terazosin for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(4):CD003851.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519611

4.2 5α-reductase inhibitors

4.2.1 ***Mechanism of action***

Androgen effects on the prostate are mediated by dihydrotestosterone (DHT), which is converted primarily in the prostatic stroma cells from its precursor testosterone by the enzyme 5α-reductase, a nuclear-bound steroid enzyme (1). Two isoforms of this enzyme exist:

- 5α-reductase type 1, with minor expression and activity in the prostate but predominant activity in extraprostatic tissues, such as skin and liver.
- 5α-reductase type 2, with predominant expression and activity in the prostate.

Finasteride inhibits only 5α-reductase type 2, whereas dutasteride inhibits 5α-reductase types 1 and 2 with similar potency (dual 5α-reductase inhibitor). However, the clinical role of dual inhibition remains unclear. 5α-reductase inhibitors act by inducing apoptosis of prostate epithelial cells (2) leading to prostate size reduction of about 18-28% and circulating PSA levels of about 50% after 6-12 months of treatment (3). Mean prostate volume reduction may be even more pronounced after long-term treatment.

4.2.2 ***Available drugs***

Two 5α-reductase inhibitors are available for clinical use: dutasteride and finasteride (Table 4). The elimination half-time is longer for dutasteride (3-5 weeks). Both 5α-reductase inhibitors are metabolised by the liver and excreted in the faeces. Continuous treatment reduces the serum DHT concentration by approximately 70% with finasteride and 95% with dutasteride. However, prostate DHT concentration is reduced to a similar level (85-90%) by both 5α-reductase inhibitors.

Table 4: 5α-reductase inhibitors licensed in Europe for treating benign prostatic enlargement (BPE) due to benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH); key pharmacokinetic properties and standard doses

Drug	t_{max} (hours)	t ½	Recommended daily dose
Dutasteride	1-3	3-5 weeks	1 x 0.5 mg
Finasteride	2	6-8 hours	1 x 5 mg

t_{max} = time to maximum plasma concentration; t½ = elimination half-life.

*4.2.3 **Efficacy***

Clinical effects relative to placebo are seen after minimum treatment duration of at least 6 to 12 months. After 2 to 4 years of treatment, 5α-reductase inhibitors reduce LUTS (IPSS) by approximately 15-30%, decrease prostate volume by approximately 18-28% and increase Q_{max} of free uroflowmetry by approximately 1.5-2.0 mL/s in patients with LUTS due to prostate enlargement (Table 5) (4-13).

Symptom reduction by finasteride depends on initial prostate size and may not be more efficacious than placebo in patients with prostates smaller than 40 mL (14). However, dutasteride seems to reduce IPSS, prostate volume, and the risk of acute urinary retention. It also increases Q_{max} even in patients with prostate volumes between 30 and 40 mL at baseline (15,16). Indirect comparison between individual studies and one unpublished direct comparative trial indicate that dutasteride and finasteride are equally effective in the treatment of LUTS (3). Comparative studies with α_1-blockers have demonstrated that 5α-reductase inhibitors reduce symptoms more slowly and, for finasteride, less effectively (5,10,17,18). A long-term trial with dutasteride in symptomatic men with a prostate volume greater than 30 mL (average prostate volume in the CombAT trial was approximately 55 mL) showed that the 5α-reductase inhibitor reduced LUTS in these patients at least as much or even more effectively than tamsulosin (11,12). The greater the baseline prostate volume (serum PSA concentration), the faster and more pronounced the symptomatic benefit of dutasteride (19). IPSS reduction was significantly greater in men with prostate volumes of 58 mL or more (PSA > 4.4) at treatment month 15 or later compared to men with lower baseline prostate volumes (PSA concentrations).

5α-reductase inhibitors, but not α_1-blockers, reduce the long-term (> 1 year) risk of acute urinary retention or need for surgery (8,10,19,20). Prevention of disease progression by 5α-reductase inhibitors is already detectable with prostate sizes considerably smaller than 40 mL (12,13,20). The precise mechanism of action of 5α-reductase inhibitors in reducing disease progression remains to be determined, but it is most likely attributable to reduction of bladder outlet resistance. Open-label trials demonstrated relevant reductions of voiding parameters after computer-urodynamic re-evaluation in men who were treated at least 3 years with finasteride (21,22).

Table 5: Randomised trials with 5α-reductase inhibitors in men with LUTS and benign prostatic enlargement due to BPH

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment (daily dose)	Patients (n)	Change in symptoms (% IPSS)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s)	Change in prostate volume (%)	LE
Lepor et al. (1996) [4]	52	Placebo	305	-16.5 [a]	+1.4	+1.3	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	310	-19.8 [a]	+1.6	-16.9 [b]	
Kirby et al. (2003) [5]	52	Placebo	253	-33.1	+1.4	-	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	239	-38.6	+1.8	-	
Andersen et al. (1995) [6]	104	Placebo	346	+1.5	-0.3	+11.5 [a]	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	348	-14.9 [a,b]	+1.5 [a,b]	-19.2 [a,b]	
Nickel et al. (1996) [7]	104	Placebo	226	-4.2	+0.3	+8.4 [a]	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	246	-13.3 [a,b]	+1.4 [a,b]	-21	

McConnell et al. (1998) [8]	208	Placebo	1503	-8.7	+0.2	+14 [a]	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	1513	-22 [a,b]	+1.9 [a,b]	-18 [a,b]	
Marberger et al. (1998) [9]	104	Placebo	1452	-9.8 [†]	0.8	+9	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	1450	-21.4 [†b]	+1.4 [b]	-15 [b]	
McConnell et al. (2003) [10]	234	Placebo	737	-23.8	+1.4 [a]	+24 [a]	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	768	-28.4 [a,b]	+2.2 [a,b]	-19 [a,b]	
Roehrborn et al. (2002) [11]	104	Placebo	2158	-13.5 [a]	+0.6	+1.5 [a]	1b
		Dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg	2167	-26.5 [a,b]	+2.2 [a,b]	-25.7 [a,b]	
Roehrborn et al. (2008) [12]	104	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg	1611	-27.4 [a]	+0.9	0	1b
		Dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg	1623	-30.5 [a]	+1.9	-28 [b]	
Roehrborn et al. (2010) [13]	208	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg	1611	-23.2 [a]	+0.7	+4.6	1b
		Dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg	1623	-32.3 [a]	+2.0	-28 [b]	

Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry); IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; † Boyarski Score; a = significant compared to baseline (indexed wherever evaluated); b = significant compared to placebo/ active control.

4.2.4 ***Tolerability and safety***

The most relevant adverse effects of 5α-reductase inhibitors are related to sexual function and include reduced libido, erectile dysfunction and, less frequently, ejaculation disorders, such as retrograde ejaculation, ejaculation failure, or decreased semen volume (3,10,13). The incidence of sexual dysfunction and other adverse events is low and even decreased with trial duration. Gynaecomastia (breast enlargement with breast or nipple tenderness) develops in approximately 1-2% of patients.

4.2.5 ***Practical considerations***

Treatment with 5α-reductase inhibitors should only be considered in men with moderate-to-severe LUTS and enlarged prostates (> 40 mL) or elevated PSA concentrations (> 1.4 – 1.6 µg/L). Due to the slow onset of action, 5α-reductase inhibitors are only suitable for long-term treatment (many years). Their effect on the serum PSA concentration needs to be considered for prostate cancer screening. Of interest, 5α-reductase inhibitors (finasteride) might reduce blood loss during transurethral prostate surgery, probably due to their effects on prostatic vascularisation (23).

4.2.6 ***Recommendations***

	LE	**GR**
5α-reductase inhibitors should be offered to men who have moderate-to-severe lower urinary tract symptoms and enlarged prostates (> 40 mL) or elevated prostate specific antigen concentrations (> 1.4 – 1.6 µg/L). 5α-reductase inhibitors can prevent disease progression with regard to acute urinary retention and need for surgery.	1b	A

4.2.7 ***References***

1. Andriole G, Bruchovsky N, Chung LW, et al. Dihydrotestosterone and the prostate: the scientific rationale for 5α-reductase inhibitors in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2004 Oct; 172(4 Pt 1):1399-1403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371854
2. Rittmaster RS, Norman RW, Thomas LN, et al. Evidence for atrophy and apoptosis in the prostates of men given finasteride. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996 Feb;81(2):814-819. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8636309

3. Naslund MJ, Miner M. A review of the clinical efficacy and safety of 5α-reductase inhibitors for the enlarged prostate. Clin Ther 2007 Jan;29(1):17-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17379044
4. Lepor H, Williford WO, Barry MJ, et al. The efficacy of terazosin, finasteride, or both in benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 1996 Aug;335(8):533-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8684407
5. Kirby R, Roehrborn CG, Boyle P, et al; Prospective European Doxazosin and Combination Therapy Study Investigators. Efficacy and tolerability of doxazosin and finasteride, alone or in combination, in treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: the Prospective European Doxazosin and Combination Therapy (PREDICT) trial. Urology 2003 Jan;61(1):119-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12559281
6. Andersen JT, Ekman P, Wolf H, et al. Can finasteride reverse the progress of benign prostatic hyperplasia? A two-year placebo-controlled study. The Scandinavian BPH Study Group. Urology 1995 Nov;46(5):631-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7495111
7. Nickel JC, Fradet Y, Boake RC, et al. Efficacy and safety of finasteride therapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia: results of a 2-year randomised controlled trial (the PROSPECT study). PROscar Safety Plus Efficacy Canadian Two year Study. CMAJ 1996 Nov;155(9):1251-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911291
8. McConnell JD, Bruskewitz R, Walsh P, et al. The effect of finasteride on the risk of acute urinary retention and the need for surgical treatment among men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med1998 Feb;338(9):557-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9475762
9. Marberger MJ, on behalf of the PROWESS Study Group. Long-term effects of finasteride in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter study. Urology 1998 May;51(5):677-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9610579
10. McConnell JD, Roehrborn CG, Bautista O, et al; Medical Therapy of Prostatic Symptoms (MTOPS) Research Group. The long-term effect of doxazosin, finasteride, and combination therapy on the clinical progression of benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 2003 Dec;349(25):2387-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14681504
11. Roehrborn CG, Boyle P, Nickel JC, et al; ARIA3001 ARIA3002 and ARIA3003 Study Investigators. Efficacy and safety of a dual inhibitor of 5-alpha-reductase types 1 and 2 (dutasteride) in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 2002 Sep;60(3):434-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12350480
12. Roehrborn CG, Siami P, Barkin J, et al; CombAT Study Group. The effects of dutasteride, tamsulosin and combination therapy on lower urinary tract symptoms in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia and prostatic enlargement: 2-year results from the CombAT study. J Urol 2008 Feb;179(2):616-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082216
13. Roehrborn CG, Siami P, Barkin J, et al; CombAT Study Group. The effects of combination therapy with dutasteride and tamsulosin on clinical outcomes in men with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: 4-year results from the CombATstudy. Eur Urol 2010 Jan,57(1):123-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19825505
14. Boyle P, Gould AL, Roehrborn CG. Prostate volume predicts outcome of treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia with finasteride: meta-analysis of randomised clinical trials. Urology 1996 Sep;48(3): 398-405.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8804493
15. Roehrborn CG, Lukkarinen O, Mark S, et al. Long-term sustained improvement in symptoms of benign protatic hyperplasia with the dual 5α-reductase inhibitor dutasteride: results of 4-year studies. BJU Int 2005 Sep;96(4):572-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16104912
16. Gittelman M, Ramsdell J, Young J, et al. Dutasteride improves objective and subjective disease measures in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia and modest or severe prostateenlargement. J Urol 2006 Sep;176(3):1045-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890688
17. Lepor H, Williford WO, Barry MJ, et al. The efficacy of terazosin, finasteride, or both in benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 1996 Aug;335(8):533-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8684407

18. Debruyne FM, Jardin A, Colloi D, et al; on behalf of the European ALFIN Study Group. Sustained-release alfuzosin, finasteride and the combination of both in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Eur Urol 1998 Sep;34(3):169-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9732187
19. Roehrborn CG, Siami P, Barkin J, et al; CombAT Study Group. The influence of baseline parameters on changes in International Prostate Symptom Score with dutasteride, tamsulosin, and combination therapy among men with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia and enlarged prostate: 2-year data from the CombAT Study. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):461-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19013011
20. Roehrborn CG. BPH progression: concept and key learning from MTOPS, ALTESS, COMBAT, and ALF-ONE. BJU Int 2008 Mar;101 Suppl. 3:17-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18307681
21. Kirby RS, Vale J, Bryan J, et al. Long-term urodynamic effects of finasteride in benign prostatic hyperplasia: a pilot study. Eur Urol 1993;24(1):20-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7689971
22. Tammela TLJ, Kontturi MJ. Long-term effects of finasteride on invasive urodynamics and symptoms in the treatment of patients with bladder outflow obstruction due to benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1466-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7544845
23. Donohue JF, Sharma H, Abraham R, et al. Transurethral prostate resection and bleeding: a randomised, placebo controlled trial of the role of finasteride for decreasing operative blood loss. J Urol 2002 Nov;168(5):2024-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12394700

4.3 Muscarinic receptor antagonists

*4.3.1 **Mechanism of action***

The predominant neurotransmitter of the urinary bladder is acetylcholine that is able to stimulate muscarinic receptors (m-cholinoreceptors) on the surface of detrusor smooth muscle cells. However, muscarinic receptors are not only densely expressed on smooth muscle cells but also on other cell types, such as epithelial cells of the salivary glands, urothelial cells of the urinary bladder, or nerve cells of the peripheral or central nervous system. Five muscarinic receptor subtypes (M^1-M^5) have been described in humans, of which the M^2 and M^3 subtypes are predominantly expressed in the detrusor. Although approximately 80% of these muscarinic receptors are M^2 and 20% M^3 subtypes, only M^3 seems to be involved in bladder contractions in healthy humans (1,2). The role of M^2 subtypes remains unclear. However, in men with neurogenic bladder dysfunction and in experimental animals with neurogenic bladders or bladder outlet obstruction M^2 receptors seem to be involved in smooth muscle contractions as well (3).

The detrusor is innervated by parasympathic nerves which have their origin in the lateral columns of sacral spinal cord on the level S2-S4 which itself is modulated by supraspinal micturition centres. The sacral micturition centre is connected with the urinary bladder by the pelvic nerves which release acetylcholine after depolarisation. Acetylcholine stimulates postsynaptic muscarinic receptors leading to G-protein mediated calcium release in the sarcoplasmatic reticulum and opening of calcium channels of the cell membrane and, finally, smooth muscle contraction. Inhibition of muscarinic receptors by muscarinic receptor antagonists inhibit/decrease muscarinic receptor stimulation and, hence, reduce smooth muscle cell contractions of the bladder. Antimuscarinic effects might also be induced or modulated by the urothelium of the bladder and/or by the central nervous system (4,5).

*4.3.2 **Available drugs***

The following muscarinic receptor antagonists are licensed for treating overactive bladder/storage symptoms in men and women (Table 6):

- darifencacin hydrobromide (darifenacin);
- fesoterodine fumarate (fesoterodine);
- oxybutynin HCL (oxybutynin);
- propiverine HCL (propiverine);
- solifenacin succinate (solifenacin);
- tolterodine tartrate (tolterodine);
- trospium chloride.

This drug class is still officially contraindicated in men with BPH/BOO due to the possibility of incomplete bladder emptying or development of urinary retention.

Table 6: Antimuscarinic drugs licensed in Europe for treating overactive bladder/storage symptoms; key pharmacokinetic properties and standard doses

Drug	t_{max} [h]	t ½ [h]	Recommended daily dose
Darifencacin	7	13 - 19	1 x 7.5-15 mg
Fesoterodine	5	7	1 x 4-8 mg
Oxybutynin IR	0.5 - 1	2 - 4	3-4 x 2.5-5 mg
Oxybutynin ER	5	16	2-3 x 5 mg
Propiverine	2.5	13 - 20	2-3 x 15 mg
Propiverine ER	7	20	1 x 30 mg
Solifenacin	4 - 6	45 - 68	1 x 5-10 mg
Tolterodine IR	1 - 3	2-10	2 x 1-2 mg
Tolterodine ER	4	6 - 10	1 x 4 mg
Trospium chloride	4 - 6	5 - 15	3 x 10-15 mg 2 x 10-20 mg

IR = immediate release; ER = extended release; t_{max} = time to maximum plasma concentration; t½ = elimination half-life;
** oral bioavailability increased by about 50% for the parent compound, whereas that of the active metabolite is decreased by about 30%; † absolute bioavailability dependent on genotype for CPY 2D6 ranging from 17% in extensive metabolisers to 65% in poor metabolisers.*

*4.3.3 **Efficacy***

Muscarinic receptor antagonists have been predominantly tested in females in the past because it was believed that LUTS in women are caused by the bladder and, therefore, have to be treated with bladder-specific drugs. In contrast, it was believed that LUTS in men are caused by the prostate and need to be treated with prostate specific drugs. However, there is no scientific data for that assumption (6). A sub-analysis of an open-label trial of 2,250 male or female patients with overactive bladder symptoms treated with tolterodine showed that age but not gender has a significant impact on urgency, frequency, or urgency incontinence (7).

The efficacy of the anticholinergic drug tolterodine, and lately also fesoterodine, was tested as a single agent in adult men with bladder storage symptoms (OAB symptoms) but without bladder outlet obstruction (Table 7). Maximum trial duration was 25 weeks, but most of the trials lasted for only 12 weeks. In open-label trials with tolterodine, daytime frequency, nocturia, urgency incontinence, and IPSS were all significantly reduced compared to baseline values after 12-25 weeks (8, 9). In an open-label study with α_1-blocker nonresponders, each answer of the IPSS questionnaire was improved during tolterodine treatment irrespective of storage or voiding symptoms (8). Randomised, placebo-controlled trials demonstrated that tolterodine can significantly reduce urgency incontinence and daytime or 24-hour frequency compared to placebo. It was also demonstrated that urgency related voiding is significantly reduced by tolterodine (10-12). Although nocturia, urgency, or IPSS were reduced in the majority of patients, these parameters did not reach statistical significance in most of the trials. However, if treatment outcome was stratified by PSA-concentration (prostate volume) tolterodine significantly reduced daytime frequency, 24h voiding frequency and IPSS storage symptoms in those men with PSA concentrations below 1.3 ng/mL, which was not the case in men with PSA concentrations of 1.3 ng/mL or more indicating that men with smaller prostates might profit more from antimuscarinic drugs (13).

Table 7: Trials with antimuscarinic drugs only in elderly men with LUTS, predominantly with overactive bladder symptoms (trials in chronological order)

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment	Patients	Voiding frequency [%]	Nocturia [%]	Urgency incontinence [%]	IPSS [%]	LE
Kaplan et al. (2005) [8]	25	Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d (after α-blocker failure)	43	-35.7[a]	-29.3[a]	-	-35.3[a]	2b
Roehrborn et al. (2006) [16]	12	Placebo	86	-4	-	-40	-	1b
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	77	-12	-	-71[b]	-	
Kaplan et al. (2006) [11]	12	Placebo	374	-7.9	-17.6	-	-	1b
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	371	-10.8[b]	-18.8	-	-	
Kaplan et al. (2006) [17]	12	Placebo	215	-13.5	-23.9	-13	-44.9	1b
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	210	-16.5	-20.1	-85[b]	-54	
Dmochowski et al. (2007) [12]	12	Placebo	374	-5.6	-17.6	-	-	1b
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	371	-8.7[b]	-18.8	-	-	
Höfner et al. (2007) [9]	12	Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	741	-20[a]	-42.9 a	-100	-37.9[a]	2b
Herschorn et al. (2009) [14]	12	Placebo	124	-10.2	-	-59.3	-	1b
		Fesoterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	111	-13.2[b]	-	-84.5[b]	-	
		Fesoterodine 1 x 8 mg/d	109	-15.6[b]	-	-100[b,c]	-	

IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; [a] = significant compared to baseline ($p < 0.01$; indexed wherever evaluated); [b] = significant compared to placebo ($p < 0.05$); c = significant compared to fesoterodine 4 mg ($p < 0.05$)

*4.3.4 **Tolerability and safety***

Muscarinic receptor antagonists are generally well tolerated and associated with approx. 3-10% study withdrawals which were not significantly different compared to placebo in most of the studies. Compared to placebo, drug-related adverse events appear with higher frequencies for dry mouth (up to 16%), constipation (up to 4%), micturition difficulties (up to 2%) nasopharyngitis (up to 3%), and dizziness (up to 5%).

Increase of post-void residual urine in men without bladder outlet obstruction is minimal and not significantly different compared to placebo (0 to 5 mL vs. -3.6 to 0 mL). Nevertheless, fesoterodine 8 mg showed higher post-void residuals (+20.2 mL) compared to placebo (-0.6 mL) or fesoterodine 4 mg (+9.6 mL) (14). The incidence of urinary retention in men without bladder outlet obstruction was comparable with placebo in trials with tolterodine (0 to 1.3 vs. 0 to 1.4%). In men under fesoterodine 8 mg treatment, 5.3% had symptoms suggestive of urinary retention that was higher compared to placebo or fesoterodine 4 mg (0.8% each). These symptoms appeared during the first 2 weeks of treatment and affected men aged 66 years or older.

In men with bladder outlet obstruction, antimuscarinic drugs are not recommended due to the theoretical decrease of bladder strength which might be associated with post-void residual urine or urinary retention. A 12-week placebo-controlled safety study dealing with men who had mild to moderate bladder outlet obstruction (median bladder outlet obstruction index, BOOI, in the placebo or tolterodine group 43 and 49 cm H_2O, respectively) demonstrated that tolterodine significantly increased the amount of post-void residual urine (49 vs. 16 mL) but was not associated with increased events of acute urinary retention (3% in both study arms) (15). Urodynamic effects of tolterodine included significant larger bladder volumes to first detrusor contraction, higher maximum cystometric bladder capacity, and decreased bladder contractility index. Maximum urinary flow remained unchanged in both the tolterodine and placebo groups. This single trial indicated that the short-term treatment with antimuscarinic drugs in men with bladder outlet obstruction is safe.

4.3.5 *Practical considerations*

Although studies in elderly men with LUTS and overactive bladder symptoms were exclusively carried out with tolterodine or fesoterodine it is likely that similar efficacy and adverse events will also appear with other antimuscarinic agents. Long-term studies on the efficacy of muscarinic receptor antagonists in men with LUTS are still missing, therefore, these drugs should be prescribed with caution, and regular re-evaluation of IPSS and post-void residual urine is advised.

4.3.6 *Recommendations*

	LE	GR
Muscarinic receptor antagonists might be considered in men with moderate to severe lower urinary tract symptoms who have predominantly bladder storage symptoms.	1b	B
Caution is advised in men with bladder outlet obstruction.	4	C

4.3.7 *References*

1. Chess-Williams R, Chapple CR, Yamanishi T, et al. The minor population of M3-receptors mediate contraction of human detrusor muscle in vitro. J Auton Pharmacol 2001;21(5-6):243-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12123469
2. Matsui M, Motomura D, Karasawa H, et al. Multiple functional defects in peripherial autonomic organs in mice lacking muscarinic acetylcholine receptor gene for the M3 subtype. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000 Aug;97(17):9579-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10944224
3. Braverman AS, Doumanian LR, Ruggieri MR Sr. M2 and M3 muscarinic receptor activation of urinary bladder contractile signal transduction. II. Denervated rat bladder. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 2006 Feb;316(2):875-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16243962
4. Wuest M, Kaden S, Hakenberg OW, et al. Effect of rilmakalim on detrusor contraction in the presence and absence of urothelium. Naunyn-Schiedeberg's Arch Pharmacol 2005 Nov;372(3):203-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16283254
5. Kono M, Nakamura Y, Ishiura Y, et al. Central muscarinic receptor subtypes regulating voiding in rats. J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1):353-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406941
6. Chapple CR, Roehrborn CG. A shifted paradigm for the further understanding, evaluation, and treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms in men: focus on the bladder. Eur Urol 2006 Apr;49(4): 651-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16530611
7. Michel MC, Schneider T, Krege S, et al. Does gender or age affect the efficacy and safety oftolterodine? J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1027-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187215
8. Kaplan SA, Walmsley K, Te AE. Tolterodine extended release attenuates lower urinary tract symptoms in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2273-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280803
9. Höfner K, Burkart M, Jacob G, et al. Safety and efficacy of tolertodine extended release in men withoveractive bladder symptoms and presumed non-obstructive benign prostatic hyperplasia. World J Urol 2007 Dec;25(6):627-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17906864
10. Kaplan SA, Roehrborn CG, Chancellor M, et al. Extended-release tolterodine with or without tamsulosin in men with lower urinary tract symptoms and overactive bladder: effects on urinary symptoms assessed by the International Prostate Symptom Score. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(9):1133-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18510659
11. Kaplan SA, Roehrborn CG, Dmochowski R, et al. Tolterodine extended release improves overactive bladder symptoms in men with overactive bladder and nocturia. Urology 2006 Aug;68(2):328-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904446
12. Dmochowski R, Abrams P, Marschall-Kehrel D, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of tolterodine extended release in male and female patients with overactive bladder. Eur Urol 2007 Apr; 51(4):1054-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17097217
13. Roehrborn CG, Kaplan SA, Kraus SR, et al. Effects of serum PSA on efficacy of tolterodine extended release with or without tamsulosin in men with LUTS, including OAB. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):1061-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18817961

14. Herschorn S, Jones JS, Oelke M, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of fesoterodine in men with overactive bladder: a pooled analysis of 2 phase III studies. Urology 2010 May;75(5):1149-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19914702
15. Abrams P, Kaplan S, De Koning Gans HJ, et al. Safety and tolerability of tolterodine for the treatment of overactive bladder in men with bladder outlet obstruction. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(5):999-1004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469601
16. Roehrborn CG, Abrams P, Rovner ES, et al. Efficacy and tolerability of tolterodine extended-release in men with overactive bladder and urgency incontinence. BJU Int 2006 May;97(5):1003-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16643482
17. Kaplan SA, Roehrborn CG, Rovner ES, et al. Tolterodine and tamsulosin for treatment of men with lower urinary tract symptoms and overactive bladder. JAMA 2006 Nov;296(19):2319-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17105794

4.4 Plant extracts - Phytotherapy

4.4.1 ***Mechanism of action***

Phytotherapy comprises the medical use of various extracts of different plants. It remains controversial which components of the extracts are responsible for symptom relief in male LUTS. The most important compounds are believed to be phytosterols, ß-sitosterol, fatty acids, and lectins (1). In vitro studies have shown that plant extracts:

- have anti-inflammatory, antiandrogenic, or oestrogenic effects;
- decrease sexual hormone binding globulin (SHBG);
- inhibit aromatase, lipoxygenase, growth-factor stimulated proliferation of prostatic cells, α-adrenoceptors, 5α-reductase, muscarinic cholinoceptors, dihydropyridine receptors, or vanilloid receptors;
- improve detrusor function;
- neutralise free radicals (1-3).

However, most in vitro effects have not been confirmed in vivo and the precise mechanisms of action of plant extracts remain unclear.

4.4.2 ***Available drugs***

Herbal drug preparations are made of roots, seeds, pollen, bark, or fruits of a single plant (monopreparations); others combine the extracts of two or more plants to one pill (combination preparations). A large number of different plants are used for the preparation of extracts. The most widely used plants are:

- *Cucurbita pepo* (pumpkin seeds)
- *Hypoxis rooperi* (South African star grass)
- *Pygeum africanum* (bark of the African plum tree)
- *Secale cereale* (rye pollen)
- *Serenoa repens* (syn. *Sabal serrulata*; berries of the American dwarf palm, saw palmetto)
- *Urtica dioica* (roots of the stinging nettle).

Different producers use different extraction techniques, distribute active ingredients with different qualitative and quantitative properties, or combine two or more herbal compounds in one pill. The extracts of the same plant produced by different companies do not necessarily have the same biological or clinical effects so that the effects of one brand cannot be extrapolated to others (4). To complicate matters, even two different batches of the same producer might contain different concentrations of active ingredients and cause different biological effects (5). Thus, the pharmacokinetic properties can differ significantly between different plant extracts.

4.4.3 ***Efficacy***

Each class of plant extract is discussed separately because of the above-mentioned reasons (Table 8). Whenever possible, the brand name is mentioned to demonstrate possible differences between products. In general, no phytotherapeutic agent has been shown to significantly reduce prostate size and no trial has proven reduction of bladder outlet obstruction or decreased disease progression.

- ***Cucurbita pepo***: Only one trial has evaluated the efficacy of pumpkin seeds extracts (Prosta Fink™ forte) in patients with BPH-LUTS (6). A total of 476 patients were randomly assigned to placebo or Prostat Fink™ forte. After a follow-up of 12 months, IPSS and daytime voiding frequency were significantly reduced in the pumpkin seed group. However, uroflowmetry parameters (Q_{max}), post-void residual urine, prostate volume, PSA concentration, nocturia, or quality of life (QoL) Score were not statistically different between the groups.

- ***Hypoxis rooperi***: These phytopharmacological extracts contain a mixture of phytosterols bonded with glycosides of which ß-sitosterol is the most important compound (Harzol™, Azuprostat™). Four randomised, placebo-controlled trials with durations between 4 and 26 weeks were published and summarised in a Cochrane report (7). Daily doses of plant extracts ranged from 60 to 195 mg. Two trials evaluated symptoms (8,9) and all four trials investigated Q_{max} and post-void residual urine. A meta-analysis calculated weighted mean differences of -4.9 IPSS points, +3.9 mL/s in terms of Q_{max} and -28.6 mL in terms of post-void residual urine in favour of ß-sitosterol. Prostate size remained unchanged in all trials. No further trials have been carried out since the Cochrane report was published in 2000.
- ***Pygeum africanum***: A Cochrane report dealing with the clinical results of *Pygeum africanum* extracts (mono- or combination preparations) summarised the results of 18 randomised, placebo-controlled trials (10). Most trials used the *Pygeum africanum* extract Tadenan™. The meta-analysis comprised 1,562 men, but individual trials were small in size and lasted only between 30 and 122 days. Most trials were performed in the 1970s and 1980s and did not use validated questionnaires such as the IPSS. Men treated with *Pygeum africanum* were twice as likely to report symptom improvement (relative risk [RR] 2.07) compared to men treated with placebo. The mean weighted difference of Q_{max} was +2.5 mL/s and of post-void residual volume -13.2 mL in favour of *Pygeum africanum*. No further trials have been published since the Cochrane report in 2002.
- ***Secale cereale***: A Cochrane report dealt with the clinical results of the main *Secale cereale* product Cernilton™ and comprised 444 men who were enrolled in two placebo-controlled and two comparative trials (Tadenan™, Paraprost™) lasting between 12 and 24 weeks (11). Men treated with Cernilton™ reported that they were twice as likely to benefit from therapy compared to placebo (RR 2.4). However, there were no significant differences between Cernilton™ and placebo with regard to Q_{max}, post-void residual urine, or prostate volume. No additional placebo-controlled trial with the mono preparation of *Secale cereale* has been published since the Cochrane report in 2000.
- ***Sabal serrulata/Serenoa repens***: A recently updated Cochrane report summarised the clinical results of 30 randomised trials comprising 5,222 men (12). *Serenoa repens* (mainly Permixon™ or Prostaserene™) was compared as mono or combination preparations either with placebo, other plant extracts (*Pygeum africanum*, *Utica dioica*), the 5-reductase inhibitor finasteride, or the α_1-blocker tamuslosin. Mean follow-up of these trials varied between 4 and 60 weeks. The Cochrane report concluded that *Serenoa repens* was not superior to placebo, finasteride, or tamsulosin with regard to IPSS improvement, Q_{max}, or prostate size reduction. Similar levels of IPSS or Q_{max} improvements in trials with finasteride or tamsulosin might be interpreted as treatment equivalence (13). For nocturia, *Serenoa repens* was significantly better than placebo (mean weighted difference -0.78).
- ***Urtica diocia***: Two trials investigated the efficacy of stinging nettle mono preparations compared to placebo (14,15). One trial investigated 246 men with BPH-LUTS over a period of 52 weeks (14); only IPSS decreased significantly in the phytotherapy group (Bazoton™ uno), whereas Q_{max} and post-void residual urine were not statistically different between the groups at the end of the trial. The second trial investigated 620 patients with BPH-LUTS over a period of 26 weeks (15); IPSS, Q_{max}, and post-void residual urine significantly improved compared to placebo.
- ***Combination preparations***: Trials have been carried out, especially with the extract combination of *Sabal serrulata* and *Utica dioica* (PRO 160/120, Prostatgutt™ forte). A 24-weeks placebo-controlled trial demonstrated a significant improvement in IPSS in the phytotherapy arm (-2 IPSS points difference) (16); Q_{max} reduction was similar in both groups. A 24-week open label extension trial of the same patients, in which all patients were treated with PRO 160/120, showed similar improvements of IPSS at week 48 in both groups (-7 IPSS points). A second trial, in which PRO 160/120 was randomised against finasteride, showed similar results for IPSS and Q_{max} in both groups (17).

Table 8: Trials with plant extracts in patients with BPH-LUTS (selection; in alphabetical order)

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment	Patients (n)	Change in symptoms (IPSS) †	Change in Q_{max} [mL/s]	PVR [mL]	LE
Bach (2000) (6)	52	placebo Cucurbita pepo (Prosta Fink™forte)	243 233	-5.5 -6.7[a]	n.s. n.s.	n.s. n.s	1b
Berges et al. (1995) (8)	24	placebo *Hypoxis rooperi* (Harzol™)	100 100	-2.3 -7.4[a]	+1.1 +5.2[a]	-16.8 -35.4[a]	1b
Klippel et al. (1997) (9)	26	placebo *Hypoxis rooperi* (Azuprostat™)	89 88	-2.8 -8.2[a]	+4.3 +8.8[a]	-4.1 -37.5[a]	1b
Wilt et al. (2000) (7)	4-26	placebo Hypoxis rooperi	475	-4.9[b]	+3.9[b]	-28.6[b]	1a
Wilt et al. (2002) (10)	4-18	placebo *Pygeum africanum* (β-sitosterol)	1562	RR 2.07[b]	+2.5[b]	-13.2[b]	1a
Wilt et al. (2000) (11)	12-24	placebo *Secale cereale* (Cernilton™)	444	RR 2.4[b]	-1.6	-14.4	1a
Wilt et al. (2002) (18)	4-48	placebo Serenoa repens/ Sabal cerrulata	3139	-1.41[b]	+1.86[b]	-23[b]	1a
Bent et al. (2006) (19)	52	placebo Serenoa repens	113 112	-0.7 -0.7	-0.01 +0.42	-19 -14	1b
Carraro et al. (1996) (20)	26	finasteride *Serenoa repens* (Permixon™)	545 553	-6.2 -5.8	+3.2* +2.7	- -	1b
Debruyne et al. (2002) (21)	52	tamsulosin *Serenoa repens* (Permixon™)	354 350	-4.4 -4.4	+1.9 +1.8	- -	1b
Schneider & Rübben (2004) (14)	52	placebo *Urtica dioica* (Bazoton uno™)	122 124	-4.7 -5.7[a]	+2.9 +3.0	-4 -5	1b
Safarinejad (2005) (15)	26	placebo Urtica dioica	316 305	-1.5 -8.0[a]	+3.4 +8.2[a]	0 -37	1b
Lopatkin et al. (2005) (16)	24	placebo *Sabal cerrulata* + *Urtica dioica* (Prostatgutt™ forte)	126 127	-4 -6[b]	+1.9 +1.8	- -	1b
Sökeland & Albrecht (1997) (17)	48	finasteride *Sabal cerrulata* + *Urtica dioica* (Prostatgutt™ forte)	244 245	-5.6 -4.8	+2.8 +2.0	-17.1 -10.2	1b

IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; Q_{max} = maximal urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry); PVR = post-void residual urine; n.s. = not significant; RR = relative risk
† absolute values; a = significant reduction compared to placebo/comparison treatment arm ($p<0.05$); b = in favour of plant extract.

*4.4.4 **Tolerability and safety***

Side-effects during phytotherapy are generally mild and comparable to placebo with regard to severity and frequency. Serious adverse events were not related to study medication. Gastrointestinal complaints were the

most commonly reported side-effects. In formulations with *Hypoxis rooperi*, erectile dysfunction appeared in 0.5% of patients. Trial withdrawals were almost equal in both placebo and phytotherapy groups.

4.4.5 ***Practical considerations***

Phytotherapeutic agents are a heterogeneous group of plant extracts used to improve BPH-LUTS. Phytotherapy remains problematic to use because of different concentrations of the active ingredient(s) in different brands of the same phytotherapeutic agent. Hence, meta-analyses of extracts of the same plant do not seem to be justified and results of these analyses have to be interpreted with caution.

4.4.6 ***Recommendations***

The guidelines committee is unable to make specific recommendations about phytotherapy of male lower urinary tract symptoms because of the heterogeneity of the products and the methodological problems associated with meta-analyses.

4.4.7 ***References***

1. Madersbacher S, Berger I, Ponholzer A, et al. Plant extracts: sense or nonsense? Current Opin Urol 2008 Jan;18(1):16-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18090484
2. Levin RM, Das AK. A scientific basis for the therapeutic effects of *Pygeum africanum* and *Serenoa repens*. Urol Res 2000 Jun;28(3):201-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10929430
3. Buck AC. Is there a scientific basis for the therapeutic effects of *serenoa repens* in benign prostatic hyperplasia? Mechanisms of action. J Urol 2004 Nov;172 (5 Pt 1):1792-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540722
4. Habib FK, Wyllie MG. Not all brands are created equal: a comparison of selected compounds of different brands of *Serenoa repens* extract. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2004;7:195-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15289814
5. Scaglione F, Lucini V, Pannacci M, et al. Comparison of the potency of different brands of *Sereonoa repens* extract on 5alpha-reductase types I and II in prostatic co-cultured epithelial and fibroblast cells. Pharmacology 2008;82(4):270-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18849646
6. Bach D. Placebokontrollierte Langzeittherapiestudie mit Kürbissamenextrakt bei BPH-bedingten Miktionsbeschwerden. Urologe B 2000;40:437-43.
7. Wilt T, Ishani A, Mac Donald R, et al. Beta-sitosterols for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database of Syst Rev 2000; (2): CD001043. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796740
8. Berges RR, Windeler J, Trampisch HJ, et al. Randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial of beta-sitosterol in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. Beta-sitosterol study group. Lancet 1995 Jun;345(8964):1529-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7540705
9. Klippel KF, Hiltl DM, Schipp B. A multicentric, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial of beta-sitosterol (phytosterol) for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Br J Urol 1997 Sep; 80 (3):427-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9313662
10. Wilt T, Ishani A, Mac Donald R, et al. Pygeum africanum for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002; (1): CD001044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869585
11. Wilt T, Mac Donald R, Ishani A, et al. Cernilton for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2000; (2): CD001042. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796739
12. Tacklind J, Mac Donald R, Rutks I, et al. *Serenoa repens* for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009; (2): CD001423. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370565
13. Wilt T, MacDonold R, Rutks I. Tamsulosin for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002; Issue 4: CD002081. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12535426

14. Schneider T, Rübben H. Bennesseltrockenextrakt (Bazoton®-uno) in der Langzeittherapie des benignen Prostatasyndroms (BPS). Ergebnisse einer randomisierten, doppelblinden, placebokontrollierten Multicenterstudie über 12 Monate. Urologe A 2004 Mar;43(3):302-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15045190
15. Safarinejad MR. *Urtica dioica* for treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: a prospective, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover study. J Herb Pharmacother 2005;5(4):1-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16635963
16. Lopatkin N, Sivkov A, Walther C, et al. Long-term efficacy and safety of a combination of sabal and urtica extract for lower urinary tract symptoms - a placebo-controlled, double-blind, multicenter trial. World J Urol 2005 Jun;23(2):139-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928959
17. Sökeland J, Albrecht J. Kombination aus Sabal- und Urticaextrakt vs. Finasterid bei BPH (Stad. I bis II nach Alken). Urologe A 1997 Jul;36(4):327-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9340898
18. Wilt T, Ishani A, Mac Donald R. Serenoa repens for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database of Syst Rev 2002; (3): CD001423. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12137626
19. Bent S, Kane C, Shinohara K, et al. Saw palmetto for benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 2006 Feb;354(6):557-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16467543
20. Carraro JC, Raynaud JP, Koch G, et al. Comparison of phytotherapy (Permixon®) with finasteride in the treatment of benign prostate hyperplasia: A randomised international study of 1,098 patients. Prostate 1996 Oct;29(4):231-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8876706
21. Debruyne F, Koch G, Boyle P, et al. Comparison of a phytotherapeutic agent (Permixon) with an alpha-blocker (Tamsulosin) in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: A 1-year randomised international study. Eur Urol 2002 May;41(5):497-506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074791

4.5 Vasopressin analogue - desmopressin

*4.5.1 **Mechanism of action***

The antidiuretic hormone arginine vasopressin (AVP) plays a key role in body water homeostasis and the control of urine production by binding to the V2 receptor in the renal collecting ducts. AVP increases water re-absorption as well as urinary osmolality and decreases water excretion as well as total urine volume. AVP might be therapeutically used to manipulate the amount of urine excretion but, however, AVP also has V1 receptor mediated vasoconstrictive / hypertensive effects and a very short serum half-life, which makes the hormone unsuitable for the treatment of nocturia / nocturnal polyuria.

*4.5.2 **Available drugs***

Desmopressin acetate (desmopressin) is a synthetic analogue of AVP with high V2 receptor affinity and antidiuretic properties. It is the only registered drug for antidiuretic treatment (Table 9). In contrast to AVP, desmopressin has no relevant V1 receptor affinity and hypertensive effects. Desmopressin may be used by intravenous infusion, nasal spray, tablet, or MELT formulation. Nasally or orally administered desmopressin is rapidly absorbed and, later, excreted 55% unchanged by the kidneys (1). Desmopressin has been used for over 30 years in the treatment of diabetes insipidus or primary nocturnal enuresis and has recently been approved in most European countries for the treatment of nocturia polyuria for adult male and female patients. After intake before sleeping, urine excretion during the night decreases and, therefore, the urge to void is postponed and the number of voids at night is reduced (2,3). The clinical effects - in terms of urine volume decrease and an increase in urine osmolality - last for approximately 8-12 hours (2).

Table 9: Antidiuretics licensed in Europe for treating nocturia due to nocturnal polyuria; key pharmacokinetic properties and standard doses

Drug	t_{max} (hours)	t ½ (hours)	Recommended daily dose
Desmopressin	1-2	3	1 x 0.1-0.4 mg orally before sleeping

t_{max} = time to maximum plasma concentration; t½ = elimination half-life.

4.5.3 *Efficacy*

The majority of clinical trials have used desmopressin in an oral formulation. A dose-finding study showed that the nocturnal urine volume/nocturnal diuresis was more reduced by oral desmopressin 0.2 mg than 0.1 mg; however, this study also showed that a 0.4 mg dose taken once before sleeping had no additional effects on the nocturnal diuresis compared to a 0.2 mg dose (4). In the pivotal clinical trials, the drug was titrated from 0.1 to 0.4 mg according to the individual clinical response. Desmopressin significantly reduced nocturnal diuresis by approximately 0.6-0.8 mL/min (-40%), decreased the number of nocturnal voids by approximately 0.8-1.3 (-40%) (-2 in the long-term open-label trial), and extended the time until the first nocturnal void by approximately 1.6 hours (-2.3 in the long-term open-label trial) (Table 10). Furthermore, desmopressin significantly reduced night-time urine volume as well as the percentage of urine volume excreted at night (5,8).

The clinical effects of desmopressin were more pronounced in patients with more severe nocturnal polyuria and bladder capacity within the normal range at baseline. The 24-hour diuresis remained unchanged during desmopressin treatment (6). The clinical effects were stable over a follow-up period of 10-12 months and returned to baseline values after trial discontinuation (12). A significantly higher proportion of patients felt fresh in the morning-time after desmopressin use (odds ratio 2.71) (11).

Table 10: Clinical trials with desmopressin in adult men with nocturnal polyuria

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment, i.e. oral daily dose before bedtime unless otherwise indicated	Patients (n)	Change nocturnal urine volume (mL/min)	Change nocturnal voids (n)	Time to first void (hours)	LE
Asplund et al. (1998) [4]	3	1 x 0.1 mg 1 x 0.2 mg 2 x 0.2 mg	23* 23* 23*	-0.5 (-31%) -0.7 (-44%) -0.6 (-38%)	- - -	- - -	2b
Cannon et al. (1999) [5]	6	Placebo 1 x 20 µg intranasal 1 x 40 µg intranasal	20 20 20	- - -	+0.1 (+3%) -0.3 (-10%) -0.7 (-23%)[a]	- - -	1b
Asplund et al. (1999) [6]	2	Placebo 1 x 0.1-0.4 mg	17* 17*	-0.2 (-11%) -0.8 (-44%)[a]	-0.2 (-11%) -0.8 (-42%)[a]	+0.2 +1.6	1b
Chancellor et al. (1999) [7]	12	1 x 20-40 µg intranasal	12	-	-1.8 (-50%)	-	2b
Mattiasson et al. (2002) [8]	3	Placebo 1 x 0.1-0.4 mg	65 86	-0.2 (-6%) -0.6 (-36%)[a]	-0.5 (-12%) -1.3 (-43%)[a]	+0.4 +1.8[a]	1b
Kuo 2002 [9]	4	1 x 0.1 mg	30*	-	-2.72 (-48.5)	-	2b
Rembratt et al. (2003) [10]	0.5	1 x 0.2 mg	72*	-0.5	-1.0	+1.9	2b
van Kerrebroeck et al. (2007) [11]	3	Placebo 1 x 0.1-0.4 mg	66 61	- -	-0.4 (-15%) -1.25 (-39%)[a]	+0.55 +1.66[a]	1b
Lose et al. (2004) [12] ‡	52	1 x 0.1-0.4 mg	132	-	-2	+2.3	2b

**Majority of study participants were men; ‡ only male data; a = significant compared to placebo.*

4.5.4 *Tolerability*

The absolute number of adverse events associated with desmopressin treatment were higher compared to placebo but usually mild in nature. The most frequent adverse events in short-term (up to 3 weeks) and long-term studies (12 months) were headache, nausea, diarrhoea, abdominal pain, dizziness, dry mouth, and hyponatraemia. These events were comparable with the established safety profile of desmopressin in the treatment of polyuria due to other conditions. Peripheral oedema (2%) and hypertension (5%) were reported in the long-term treatment trial (12).

Hyponatraemia (serum sodium concentration < 130 mmol/L) was observed mainly in patients aged

65 years or older and seemed to occur less frequently in men compared to women of the same age (3). Hyponatraemia of all degrees, not necessarily associated with symptoms, occurs in approximately 5% (13) to 7.6% of patients (14) early after treatment initiation. The risk of developing hyponatraemia significantly increases with age (odds ratio 1.16 per year of age), lower serum sodium concentration at baseline (odds ratio 0.76), and higher basal 24-hour urine volume per bodyweight (odds ratio 1.09) (13). The chance of developing hyponatraemia in patients younger than 65 years is less than 1%, whereas the risk for older patients increases to 8% with normal sodium concentration and up to 75% in patients with low sodium concentration at baseline (13).

Therefore, the treatment of men aged 65 years or older should not be initiated without monitoring the serum sodium concentration. At the time of treatment initiation or dose change, older men with normal values of serum sodium should be monitored by Na^+ measurement at day 3 and day 7 of treatment as well as at 1 month later. If serum sodium concentration has remained normal and no dose adjustment is intended, Na^+ should be monitored every 3-6 months thereafter (15). Furthermore, patients should be informed about the prodromal symptoms of hyponatraemia, such as headache, nausea, or insomnia.

*4.5.5 **Practical considerations***

Desmopressin should be taken once daily before sleeping. As the optimal dose differs between patients, desmopressin treatment should be initiated at a low dose (0.1 mg/day) and may be gradually increased every week until maximum efficacy is reached. The maximal daily dose recommended is 0.4 mg/day. Patients should avoid drinking fluids at least 1 hour before using desmopressin until 8 hours thereafter. In men aged 65 years or older, desmopressin should not be used if the serum sodium concentration is below the normal value. In all other men aged 65 years or older, serum sodium concentration should be measured at day 3 and 7 as well as after 1 month and, if serum sodium concentration has remained normal, every 3-6 months subsequently.

*4.5.6 **Recommendations***

	LE	**GR**
Desmopressin can be used for the treatment of nocturia secondary to nocturnal polyuria.	1b	A

*4.5.7 **References***

1. Fjellestad-Paulsen A, Höglund P, Lundin S, et al. Pharmacokinetics of 1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin after various routes of administration in healthy volunteers. Clin Endocrinol 1993 Feb;38(2):177-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8435898
2. Rembratt A, Graugaard-Jensen C, Senderovitz T, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of desmopressin administered orally versus intravenously at daytime versus night-time in healthy men aged 55-70 years. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 2004 Aug; 60(6):397-402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15197520
3. Hvistendahl GM, Riis A, Norgaard JP, et al. The pharmacokinetics of 400 µg of oral desmopressin in elderly patients with nocturia, and the correlation between the absorption of desmopressin and clinical effect. BJU Int 2005 Apr;95(6):804-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15794787
4. Asplund R, Sundberg B, Bengtsson P. Desmopressin for the treatment of nocturnal polyuria in the elderly: a dose titration study. Br J Urol 1998 Nov;82(5):642-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9839577
5. Cannon A, Carter PG, McConnell AA, et al. Desmopressin in the treatment of nocturnal polyuria in the male. BJU Int 1999;84:20-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10744454
6. Asplund R, Sundberg B, Bengtsson P. Oral desmopressin for nocturnal polyuria in elderly subjects: a double-blind, placebo-controlled randomised exploratory study. BJU Int 1999 Apr;83:591-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233563
7. Chancellor MB, Atan A, Rivas DA, et al. Beneficial effect of intranasal desmopressin for men with benign prostatic hyperplasia and nocturia: preliminary results. Tech Urol 1999 Dec;5(4):191-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591256
8. Mattiasson A, Abrams P, Van Kerrebroeck P, et al. Efficacy of desmopressin in the treatment of nocturia: a double-blind placebo-controlled study in men. BJU Int 2002 Jun;89:(9) 855-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010228

9. Kuo HC. Efficacy of desmopressin in treatment of refractory nocturia in patients older than 65 years. Urology 2002 Apr;59:485-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927295
10. Rembratt A, Norgaard JP, Andersson KE. Desmopressin in elderly patients with nocturia: short-term safety and effects on urine output, sleep and voiding patterns. BJU Int 2003 May;91(7):642-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12699476
11. Van Kerrebroeck P, Rezapour M, Cortesse A, et al. Desmopressin in the treatment of nocturia: a double blind placebo-controlled study. Eur Urol 2007 Jul;52(1):221-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17280773
12. Lose G, Mattiasson A, Walter S, et al. Clinical experiences with desmopressin for long-term treatment of nocturia. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1021-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311028
13. Rembratt A, Riis A, Norgaard JP. Desmopressin treatment in nocturia; an analysis of risk factors for hyponatremia. Neurourol Urodyn 2006;25(2):105-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16304673
14. Weatherall M. The risk of hyponatremia in older adults using desmopressin for nocturia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(4):302-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15227644
15. Bae JH, Oh MM, Shim KS, et al. The effects of long-term administration of oral desmopressin on the baseline secretion of antidiuretic hormone and serum sodium concentration for the treatment of nocturia: a circadian study. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):200-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499799

4.6 Combination therapies

4.6.1 α_1-blockers + 5α-reductase inhibitors

4.6.1.1 Mechanism of action

Combination therapy of α_1-blockers and 5α-reductase inhibitors aims to combine the differential effects of both drug classes to create synergistic efficacy in symptom improvement and prevention of disease progression.

4.6.1.2 Available drugs

Combination therapy consists of an α_1-blocker (alfuzosin, doxazosin, tamsulosin, or terazosin; pharmacokinetic properties see Section 3.1.2) together with a 5α-reductase inhibitor (dutasteride or finasteride; pharmacokinetic properties see Section 3.2.2). The α_1-blocker exhibits clinical effects within hours or days, whereas the 5α-reductase inhibitor needs several months to develop significant clinical efficacy. Of all drug combinations possible, so far finasteride together with alfuzosin, doxazosin, or terazosin, and dutasteride together with tamsulosin, have been tested in clinical trials. Both compounds show class effects with regard to efficacy and adverse events. No differences in pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic properties of the combined use of both drugs have been reported compared to single drug.

4.6.1.3 Efficacy

Several studies have investigated the efficacy of combination therapy against the efficacy of an α_1-blocker, 5α-reductase inhibitor, or placebo alone (Table 11). Initial studies with follow-up periods between 6 and 12 months used symptom (IPSS) change as their primary endpoint (1-3). These trials consistently demonstrated that the α_1-blocker was superior to finasteride in symptom reduction, whereas the combination treatment was not superior to the α_1-blocker alone. In studies which included a placebo arm, the α_1-blocker was consistently more effective than placebo, whereas finasteride was consistently not more effective than placebo. Data from the 1-year time point of the MTOPS (Medical Therapy of Prostatic Symptoms) study, which have been published but not specifically analysed for this time point, showed similar results (4).

More recently, 4-year data analysis from MTOPS as well as the 2- and 4-year results from the CombAT (Combination of Avodart® and Tamsulosin) trials, have been reported (4-6). The latter trial included older men with larger prostates and higher serum PSA concentrations and therefore appears to represent men at greater risk of disease progression. In contrast to earlier studies with only 6 to 12 months follow-up, long-term data have demonstrated that combination treatment is superior to either monotherapy with regard to symptom reduction and Q_{max} improvement and superior to α_1-blocker in reducing the risk of acute urinary retention and the need for surgery (4-6). The CombAT study demonstrated that combination treatment is superior to either monotherapy with regard to symptom improvement and Q_{max} starting from month 9 and superior to α_1-blocker with regard to the reduction in the risk of acute urinary retention and the need for surgery after month 8 (6). The different results between the CombAT and MTOPS trials appear to arise from different inclusion and exclusion criteria rather than the types of α_1-blockers or 5α-reductase inhibitors. Dutasteride or finasteride alone reduced prostate volume as effectively as combination treatment (-20 to -27%).

Three studies addressed the issue of discontinuation of the α_1-blocker (7-9). One trial evaluated the combination of tamsulosin with dutasteride and the impact of tamsulosin discontinuation after 6 months (7). After cessation of the α_1-blocker, almost three-quarters of patients reported no worsening of symptoms. However, patients with severe symptoms (IPSS > 20) at baseline may benefit from longer combination therapy. A more recently published trial evaluated the symptomatic outcome of finasteride monotherapy at 3 and 9 months after discontinuation of 9-month combination therapy (finasteride plus α_1-blocker) (8). LUTS improvement after combination therapy was sustained at 3 months (IPSS difference 1.24) and 9 months (IPSS difference -0.44).

In a retrospective study, the likelihood of α_1-blocker discontinuation, which was based on the individual decision of the patient, was evaluated over a 12-month period in men aged > 65 years receiving α_1-blockers in combination with either dutasteride or finasteride (9). Dutasteride patients discontinued α_1-blocker therapy 64% faster than finasteride patients at any time point. At 12 months, 62% of patients were treated with dutasteride alone compared to 43.7% of men treated with finasteride alone.

Combination therapy was shown to be superior to monotherapy in both the MTOPS and CombAT trials in preventing overall clinical progression, as defined by an IPSS increase of at least 4 points, acute urinary retention, urinary tract infection, incontinence, or an increase in serum creatinine > 50% compared to baseline values). For combination therapy in the MTOPS trial versus the CombAT trial, the following reductions were observed:

- overall risk of disease progression was 66% versus 44%;
- symptomatic progression, 64% vs. 41%;
- acute urinary retention, 81% vs. 68%;
- urinary incontinence, 65% vs. 26%;
- BPH-related surgery, 67% vs. 71%.

Monotherapy with 5α-reductase inhibitor appeared to reduce the risks of acute urinary retention and prostaterelated surgery as effectively as combination treatment (differences not significant), although the preventive effects were more pronounced with combination therapy (4,6). The MTOPS trial results suggested that the α_1-blocker alone might also reduce the risk of symptom progression.

Table 11: Randomised trials using α_1-blocker, 5α-reductase inhibitor, and the combination of both drugs in men with LUTS and benign prostatic enlargement due to benign prostatic hyperplasia (Of note: references 5 and 6 reflect different time points of the same study.)

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment (daily dose)	Patients (n)	Symptom change (% IPSS)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s)	Change in prostate volume (%)	LE
Lepor et al. (1996) [1]	52	Placebo	305	-16.5 [a]	+1.4	+1.3	1b
		Terazosin 1 x 10 mg	305	-37.7 [a,b,d]	+2.7 [b,d]	+1.3	
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	310	-19.8 [a]	+1.6	-16.9 [b,c]	
		Terazosin 1 x 10 mg + finasteride 1 x 5 mg	309	-39 [a, b ,d]	+3.2 [b,d]	-18.8 [b,c]	
Debruyne et al. (1998) [2]	26	Alfuzosin 2 x 5 mg	358	-41.2 [d]	+1.8	-0.5	1b
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	344	-33.5	+1.8	-10.5 [c]	
		Alfuzosin 2 x 5 mg + finasteride 1 x 5 mg	349	-39.1 [d]	+2.3	-11.9 [c]	
Kirby et al. (2003) [3]	52	Placebo	253	-33.1	+1.4	-	1b
		Doxazosin 1 x 1-8 mg	250	-49.1 [b,d]	+3.6 [b,d]	-	
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	239	-38.6	+1.8	-	
		Doxazosin 1 x 1-8 mg + finasteride 1 x 5 mg	265	-49.7 [b,d]	+3.8 [d]	-	
McConnell et al. (2003) [4]	234	Placebo	737	-23.8 [a]	+1.4 [a]	+24 [a]	1b
		Doxazosin 1 x 1-8 mg	756	-35.3 [a,b,d]	+2.5 [a,b]	+24 [a]	
		Finasteride 1 x 5 mg	768	-28.4 [a,b]	+2.2 [a,b]	-19 [a,b,c]	
		Doxazosin 1 x 1-8 mg + finasteride 1 x 5 mg	786	-41.7 [a,b,c,d]	+3.7 [a,b,c,d]	-19 [a,b,c]	

Roehrborn et al. (2008) [5]	104	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg Dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg + dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg	1611 1623 1610	-27.4 -30.5 -39.2 [c,d]	+0.9 +1.9 +2.4 [c,d]	0 -28 [c] -26.9 [c]	1b
Roehrborn et al. (2010) [6]	208	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg Dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg + dutasteride 1 x 0.5 mg	1611 1623 1610	-23.2 -32.3 -38 [c,d]	+0.7 +2.0 +2.4 [c]	+4.6 -28 [c] -27.3 [c]	1b

Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry); IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; a = significant compared to baseline (indexed wherever evaluated); b = significant compared to placebo; c = significant compared to α_1-blocker monotherapy; d = significant compared to 5α-reductase inhibitor monotherapy.

4.6.1.4 Tolerability and safety

In both the CombAT and MTOPS trials, overall drug-related adverse events were significantly more frequent during combination treatment than during either monotherapy. The adverse events observed during combination treatment were typical of an α_1-blocker and 5α-reductase inhibitor. The frequencies of adverse events were significantly higher for combination therapy for most adverse events (4).

4.6.1.5 Practical considerations

Compared to α_1-blockers or 5α-reductase inhibitor monotherapy, combination therapy results in a greater improvement in LUTS and increase in Q_{max}, and is superior prevention of disease progression. However, combination therapy is also associated with more adverse events. Combination therapy should therefore be used primarily in men who have moderate to severe LUTS and are at risk of disease progression (higher prostate volume, higher PSA concentration, advanced age, etc). Combination therapy should only be used when long-term treatment (more than 12 months) is intended; this issue should be discussed with the patient before treatment. Discontinuation of the α_1-blocker after 6 months might be considered in men with moderate LUTS.

4.6.1.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Combination treatment with α_1-blocker together with 5α-reductase inhibitor should be offered to men with moderate-to-severe lower urinary tract symptoms, enlarged prostates (> 40 mL), and reduced Q_{max} (men likely to develop disease progression). Combination treatment is not recommended for short-term therapy (< 1 year).	1b	A

4.6.1.7 References

1. Lepor H, Williford WO, Barry MJ, et al. The efficacy of terazosin, finasteride, or both in benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 1996 Aug;335(8):533-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8684407
2. Debruyne FM, Jardin A, Colloi D, et al; on behalf of the European ALFIN Study Group. Sustainedrelease alfuzosin, finasteride and the combination of both in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Eur Urol 1998 Sep;34(3):169-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9732187
3. Kirby R, Roehrborn CG, Boyle P, et al; Prospective European Doxazosin and Combination Therapy Study Investigators. Efficacy and tolerability of doxazosin and finasteride, alone or in combination, in treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: the Prospective European Doxazosin and Combination Therapy (PREDICT) trial. Urology 2003; 61(1):119-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12559281
4. McConnell JD, Roehrborn CG, Bautista O, et al; Medical Therapy of Prostatic Symptoms (MTOPS) Research Group. The long-term effect of doxazosin, finasteride, and combination therapy on the clinical progression of benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 2003 Dec;349(25):2387-98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14681504
5. Roehrborn CG, Siami P, Barkin J, et al; CombAT Study Group. The effects of dutasteride, tamsulosin and combination therapy on lower urinary tract symptoms in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia and prostatic enlargement: 2-year results from the ComAT study. J Urol 2008;179(2):616-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082216

6. Roehrborn CG, Siami P, Barkin J, et al; CombAT Study Group. The effects of combination therapy with dutasteride and tamsulosin on clinical outcomes in men with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: 4-year results from the CombAT study. Eur Urol 2010 Jan;57(1):123-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19825505
7. Barkin J, Guimarães M, Jacobi G, et al. Alpha-blocker therapy can be withdrawn in the majority of men following initial combination therapy with the dual 5alpha-reductase inhibitor dutasteride. Eur Urol 2003 Oct;44(4):461-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499682
8. Nickel JC, Barkin J, Koch C, et al. Finasteride monotherapy maintains stable lower urinary tract symptoms in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia following cessation of alpha blockers. Can Urol Assoc J 2008 Feb;2(1):16-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18542722
9. Issa MM, Lin PJ, Eaddy MT, et al. Comparative analysis of alpha-blocker utilization in combination with 5-alpha reductase inhibitors for enlarged prostate in a managed care setting among Medicareaged men. Am J Manag Care 2008 May;14(5 Suppl 2):S160-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18611090

4.6.2 α_1-blockers + muscarinic receptor antagonists

4.6.2.1 Mechanism of action

Combination therapy of an α_1-blocker together with a muscarinic receptor antagonist aims to antagonise both α_1-adrenoceptor and muscarinic cholinoreceptors (M^2 and M^3) in the lower urinary tract, hereby using the efficacy of both drug classes to achieve synergistic effects.

4.6.2.2 Available drugs

Combination treatment consists of an α_1-blocker (alfuzosin, doxazosin, tamsulosin, or terazosin; pharmacokinetic properties chapter 3.1.2) together with a muscarinic receptor antagonist (darifencacin, fesoterodine, oxybutynin, propiverine, solifenacin, tolterodine, or trospium chloride; pharmacokinetic properties chapter 3.3.2). However, only the combinations of the α_1-blocker doxazosin, tamsulosin, or terazosin and the muscarinic receptor antagonist oxybutynin, propiverine, solifenacin, or tolterodine have been tested in clinical trials so far. Until now, both drug classes have to be taken as separate pills as no combination pill is yet available. No differences in terms of pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic properties of the combined use of both drugs have been described compared to the use of the single drugs.

4.6.2.3 Efficacy

At least nine trials have been published investigating the efficacy of the combination treatment with α_1-blockers and muscarinic receptor antagonists in adult male patients with LUTS (1-8). Additionally, one trial was published using the α_1-blocker naftopidil (not registered in most European countries) with and without anticholinergic agents (9). Only one of those trials had a placebo arm (LE: 1b) and also tested the drug combination against the α_1-blocker as well as against the muscarinic receptor antagonist (4); all other trials compared the efficacy of the combination therapy with the efficacy of an α_1-blocker alone (Table 12) (LE: 2b). Maximum trial duration was 25 weeks but the majority of trials lasted 4-12 weeks only.

The combination of drugs was in general more efficacious in reducing voiding frequency, nocturia, or IPSS compared to α_1-blockers or placebo alone. Furthermore, the combination treatment significantly reduced urgency urinary incontinence episodes as well as urgency and significantly increased QoL (4).

Overall symptom improvement in the combination therapy arm was significantly higher compared to placebo regardless of PSA serum concentration, whereas tolterodine alone significantly improved symptoms predominantly in men with a serum PSA concentration less than 1.3 ng/mL (10). Three trials investigated the efficacy of combination treatment in patients with persistent LUTS during α_1-blocker treatment by adding a muscarinic receptor antagonist to the existing α_1-blocker therapy (add-on approach) (6-8). These trials demonstrated that persistent LUTS can be significantly reduced by the additional use of a muscarinic receptor antagonist (tolterodine) especially if detrusor overactivity had been demonstrated (Table 12). Patient reported QoL, treatment benefit, symptom bother, or patient perception of bladder condition was significantly improved in the combination treatment arm.

Table 12: Efficacy of muscarinic receptor antagonists together with α_1-blockers

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment	Patients	Voiding frequency [%]	Nocturia [%]	IPSS [%]	LE
Saito et al. (1999) [1]	4	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.2 mg/d	59	-29.6	-22.5	-	1b
		Tamsulosin 1 x 0.2 mg/d + propiverine 1 x 20 mg/d	75	-44.7	-44.4[a]	-	
Lee et al. (2005) [3]	8	Doxazosin 1 x 4 mg/d	67	-11.8	-37.5	-54.9	1b
		Doxazosin 1 x 4 mg/d + propiverine 1 x 20 mg/d	131	-27.5[a]	-46.7	-50.7	
Kaplan et al. (2006) [4]	12	Placebo	215	-13.5	-23.9	-44.9	1b
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	210	-16.5	-20.1	-54	
		Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d	209	-16.9	-40.3	-64.9[b]	
		Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d + tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d	217	-27.1[b]	-39.9[b]	-66.4[b]	
MacDiarmid et al. (2008) [5]	12	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d + placebo	209	-	-	-34.9	1b
		Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d + oxybutynine 1 x 10 mg/d	209	-	-	-51.9[b]	
Kaplan et al. (2005) [7] ‡	25	Tolterodine 1 x 4 mg/d	43	-35.7[a]	-29.3 [a]	-35.3	2b
Yang et al. (2007) [8] ‡	6	Tolterodine 2 x 2 mg/d	33	-	-	-35.7[a]	2b
Kaplan et al. (2009) [11] ‡	12	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d + placebo	195	-6.2[a]	-	-29	1b
		Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/d + solifenacin 5 mg/d	202	-9.1[a]	-	-31.8	

IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score
‡ persisting LUTS during α_1-blocker treatment (add-on approach)
a = significant compared to baseline ($p \leq 0.05$, indexed wherever evaluated)
b = significant reduction compared to placebo ($p < 0.05$)

4.6.2.4 Tolerability and safety

Adverse events of both drug classes appear during combination treatment of α_1-blockers and muscarinic receptor antagonists. The most frequently reported side effect in all trials was xerostomia. Some side effects (e.g. xerostomia or ejaculation failure) appear with increased frequency and cannot simply be explained by adding the frequencies of adverse events of either drug. Post-void residual urine increased in most trials. Although the mean increase of post-void residual urine was low (+6 to +24 mL) some men developed higher post-void residuals or even urinary retention (0.9 to 3.3%). It remains unknown which men are at risk of developing post-void residual urine or urinary retention during the combination treatment.

4.6.2.5 Practical considerations

Class effects are likely to be responsible for increased efficacy and QoL in patients treated with α_1-blocker and muscarinic receptor antagonist. Measuring of post-void residual urine is recommended during combination treatment to assess increase or urinary retention.

4.6.2.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Combination treatment with α_1-blocker and muscarinic receptor antagonist might be considered in patients with moderate to severe lower urinary tract symptoms if symptom relief has been insufficient with the monotherapy of either drug.	1b	B
Combination treatment should cautiously be prescribed in men who are suspicious of having bladder outlet obstruction.	2b	B

4.6.2.7 References

1. Saito H, Yamada T, Oshima H, et al. A comparative study of the efficacy and safety of tamsulosin hydrochloride (Harnal capsules) alone and in combination with propiverine hydrochloride (BUP-4 tablets) in patients with prostatic hypertrophy associated with pollakisuria and/or urinary incontinence. Jpn J Urol Surg 1999;12:525-36.
2. Lee JY, Kim HW, Lee SJ, et al. Comparison of doxazosin with or without tolterodine in men with symptomatic bladder outlet obstruction and an overactive detrusor. BJU Int 2004 Oct;94(6):817-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15476515
3. Lee KS, Choo MS, Kim DY, et al. Combination treatment with propiverine hydrochloride plus doxazosin controlled release gastrointestinal therapeutic system formulation for overactive bladder coexisting benign prostatic obstruction: a prospective, randomised, controlled multicenter study. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1334-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145414
4. Kaplan SA, Roehrborn CG, Rovner ES, et al. Tolterodine and tamsulosin for treatment of men with lower urinary tract symptoms and overactive bladder. JAMA 2006 Nov;296(19):2319-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17105794
5. MacDiarmid SA, Peters KM, Chen A, et al. Efficacy and safety of extended-release Oxybutynin in combination with tamsulosin for treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms in men: randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Mayo Clin Proc 2008 Sep;83(9):1002-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18775200
6. Athanasopoulols A, Gyftopoulos K, Giannitsas K, et al. Combination treatment with an α-blocker plus an anticholinergic for bladder outlet obstruction: a prospective, randomised, controlled study. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2253-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771763
7. Kaplan SA, Walmsley K, Te AE. Tolterodine extended release attenuates lower urinary tract symptoms in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2273-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280803
8. Yang Y, Zhao SF, Li HZ, et al. Efficacy and safety of combined therapy with terazosin and tolterodine for patients with lower urinary tract symptoms associated with benign prostatic hyperplasia: a prospective study. Chin Med J 2007 Mar;120(5):370-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17376305
9. Maruyama O, Kawachi Y, Hanazawa K, et al. Naftopidil monotherapy vs naftopidil and an anticholinergic agent combined therapy for storage symptoms associated with benign prostatic hyperplasia: A prospective randomised controlled study. Int J Urol 2006 Oct;13(10):1280-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17010005
10. Roehrborn CG, Kaplan SA, Kraus SR, et al. Effects of serum PSA on efficacy of tolterodine extended release with or without tamsulosin in men with LUTS, including OAB. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):1061-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18817961
11. Kaplan SA, McCammon K, Fincher R, et al. Safety and tolerability of solifenacin add-on therapy to alpha-blocker treated men with residual urgency and frequency. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2825-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837435

4.7 Emerging drugs

4.7.1 Phosphodiesterase (PDE) 5 Inhibitors (with or without α_1-blockers)

4.7.2 ***Mechanism of action***

Nitric oxide (NO) represents an important non-adrenergic, non-cholinergic neurotransmitter in the human body and is involved in signal transmission in the human urinary tract. NO is synthesised from the amino acid L-arginine by NO synthases (NOS), which are classified based on their original tissues of detection as neuronal (nNOS), endothelial (eNOS), and immune cells (inducible NOS, iNOS). After being synthesised, NO diffuses

into cells and stimulates the synthesis of cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) mediated by the enzyme guanylyl-cyclase. cGMP can activate protein kinases, ion channels, and cGMP-binding phosphodiesterases (PDEs) leading to smooth muscle cell relaxation via depletion of intracellular Ca^{2+} and desensitisation of contractile proteins (1). The effects of cGMP are terminated by PDE isoenzymes catalysing the hydrolysis of cGMP to an inactive form. PDE inhibitors increase the concentration and prolong the activity of intracellular cGMP, hereby reducing smooth muscle tone of the detrusor, prostate, and urethra. Until now, 11 different PDEs have been identified of which the PDEs 4 and 5 are the predominant ones in the transition zone of the human prostate, bladder, and urethra (2,3). NO might also be involved in the micturition cycle by inhibiting reflex pathways in the spinal cord and neurotransmission in the urethra, prostate, or bladder (4).

*4.7.3 **Available drugs***

Three selective oral PDE5 inhibitors (sildenafil citrate [sildenafil], tadalafil, and vardenafil hcl [vardenafil]) have been licensed in Europe for the treatment of erectile dysfunction or pulmonary arterial hypertension (sildenafil and tadalafil), but these drugs have not yet been officially registered for the treatment of male LUTS (Table 13). The available PDE5 inhibitors differ primarily in their pharmacokinetic profiles (5). All PDE5 inhibitors are rapidly resorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, have a high protein binding in plasma, and are metabolised primarily by the liver and eliminated predominantly by the faeces. However, their half-lives differ markedly. PDE5 inhibitors are taken on-demand by patients with erectile dysfunction but tadalafil is also registered for daily use in lower dose (5 mg) than for on-demand use.

Table 13: PDE5 inhibitors licensed in Europe for treating erectile dysfunction; key pharmacokinetic properties and doses used in clinical trials

Drugs	t_{max} (hours)	t ½ (hours)	Daily doses in clinical trials of patients with male LUTS
Sildenafil	1 * (0.5-2)	3-5	1 x 25-100 mg
Tadalafil	2 (0.5-12)	17.5	1 x 2.5-20 mg
Vardenafil	1 * (0.5-2)	4-5	2 x 10 mg

*t_{max} = time to maximum plasma concentration; t½ = elimination half-life; * dependent on food intake (i.e. slower resorption of the drug and an increase in tmax by approximately 1 hour after a fatty meal).*

*4.7.4 **Efficacy***

A post-hoc analysis of patients with erectile dysfunction treated with sildenafil initially showed that the PDE5 inhibitor was capable of significantly reducing concomitant LUTS and increasing bladder symptoms-related QoL, as measured by the IPSS questionnaire (6,7). LUTS improvement was found to be independent of improvement of erectile function. Randomised, placebo-controlled trials on the efficacy of all three available oral PDE5 inhibitors have been published during the last years and have investigated changes in symptoms (IPSS), uroflowmetry parameters (Q_{max}), and post-void residual urine (6-16). The maximum trial duration was 12 weeks. These trials demonstrated that all PDE5 inhibitors significantly and consistently reduced IPSS by approximately 17-35% (Table 14). Both bladder storage and voiding symptoms decreased equally during treatment with PDE5 inhibitors. Post-void residual urine remained unchanged in most of the trials. Q_{max} of free uroflowmetry increased in a dose-dependent fashion (tadalafil [16]), but was not significantly different to placebo (sildenafil, tadalafil, and vardenafil). In contrast to the EBM level 1b-trials listed in Table 14, two singlecentre uroflowmetry studies documented improvements of Q_{max} and Q_{ave} following oral administration of 50 or 100 mg sildenafil in up to 76% of men (mean Q_{max} increase 3.7-4.3 mLs or 24-38%) (17,18). PDE5 inhibitors significantly improved QoL compared to placebo-treated patients.

Three trials compared the efficacy of PDE5 inhibitors (sildenafil or tadalafil) with or without α_1-blockers (alfuzosin or tamsulosin) (9,12,13). These trials were conducted in a small number of patients and with a limited follow-up of 6 to 12 weeks. The drug combination improved IPSS, Q_{max}, and post-void residual urine to a greater extent than the single drug alone of each class (Table 14), although the difference compared to PDE5 inhibitor or α_1-blocker alone was only statistically significant in one of the three trials (12).

Table 14: Efficacy of PDE5 inhibitors in adult men with LUTS who participated in clinical trials with EBM

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Treatment	Patients	IPSS	Qmax (mL/s)	PVR (mL]	LE
McVary et al. 2007 [8] ‡	12	Placebo	180	-1.93	+0.16	-	1b
		Sildenafil 1 x 50-100 mg/ day or 1 x 50-100 mg before sexual intercourse	189	-6.32 *	+0.32	-	
Kaplan et al. 2007 [9]‡	12	Alfuzosin 1 x 10 mg/day	20	-2.7 (-15.5%) †	+1.1 †	-23 †	1b
		Sildenafil 1 x 25 mg/day	21	-2.0 (-16.9%) †	+0.6	-12	
		Alfuzosin 1 x 10 mg/day + sildenafil 1 x 25 mg/day	21	-4.3 (-24.1%) †	+4.3 †	-21 †	
McVary et al. 2007 [10]	12	Placebo	143	-1.7 (-9.3%)	+0.9	-2.6	1b
		Tadalafil 1 x 5-20 mg/day	138	-3.8 (-21.7%) *	+0.5	+1.4	
Roehrborn et al. 2008 [11]	12	Placebo	212	-2.3 (-13.3%)	+1.2	+4.81	1b
		Tadalafil 1 x 2.5 mg/day	209	-2.7 (-22.2%) *	+1.4	+12.1	
		Tadalafil 1 x 5 mg/day	212	-4.9 (-28.2%) *	+1.6	+6.6	
		Tadalafil 1 x 10 mg/day	216	-5.2 (-29.1%) *	+1.6	+10.6	
		Tadalafil 1 x 20 mg/day	209	-5.2 (-30.5%) *	+2.0	-4	
Bechara et al. 2008 [12]	6	Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/day	15	-6.7 † (-34.5%)	+2.1 †	-35.2 †	1b
		Tamsulosin 1 x 0.4 mg/day + tadalafil 1 x 20 mg/day	15	-9.2 †a (-47.4%)	+3.0 †	-38.7 †	
Liguori et al. 2009 [13] ‡	12	Alfuzosin 1 x 10 mg/day	22	-5.2 † (-27.2%)	+1.7 †	-	1b
		Tadalafil 1 x 20 mg every 2 days	21	-1.3 (-8.4%)	+1.2 †	-	
		Alfuzsosin 1 x 10 mg/day + tadalafil 1 x 20 mg every 2 days	23	-6.3 † (-41.6%)	+3.1 †	-	
Porst et al. 2009 [14]‡	12	Placebo	115	-2.1	+1.9	-6.8	1b
		Tadalafil 1 x 2.5 mg/day	113	-3.6 *	+1.4	+8.6 *	
		Tadalafil 1 x 5 mg/day	117	-4.2 *	+1.7	-1.8	
		Tadalafil 1 x 10 mg/day	120	-4.7 *	+1.3	+3.8	
		Tadalafil 1 x 20 mg/day	116	-4.7 *	+2.0	-14	
Stief et al. 2008 [15]	8	Placebo	113	-3.6 (-20%)	+1.0	+1.92	1b
		Vardenafil 2 x 10 mg	109	-5.8 (-34.5%) *	+1.6	-1.0	

*IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate during free uroflowmetry; PVR = post-void residual urine; ‡ trial included patients with both erectile dysfunction and LUTS; * significant compared to placebo ($p \leq 0.05$); † significant compared to baseline ($p \leq 0.05$ (indexed wherever evaluated); [a] significant compared to α1-blocker (tamsulosin, $p < 0.05$).*

4.7.5 *Tolerability and safety*

PDE5 inhibitors in general can cause headache, flushing, dizziness, dyspepsia, nasal congestion, myalgia, hypotension, syncope, tinnitus, conjunctivitis, or altered vision (blurred, discoloration). However, the frequencies of side-effects vary between the individual PDE5 inhibitors. The probability of developing priapism or acute urinary retention is considered minimal.

PDE5 inhibitors are contraindicated in patients using nitrates or the potassium channel opener, nicorandil, due to additional vasodilatation, which might cause hypotension, myocardial ischaemia in patients with coronary artery disease, or cerebrovascular strokes (5). Additionally, all PDE5 inhibitors should not be used in patients who are taking the α_1-blockers doxazosin or terazosin, have unstable angina pectoris, have had a recent myocardial infarction (previous 3 months) or stroke (previous 6 months), myocardial insufficiency NYHA > 2, hypotension, poorly controlled blood pressure, significant hepatic or renal insufficiency, or if non-arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy (NAION) with sudden loss of vision is known or has appeared after previous use of PDE5 inhibitors. Sildenafil and vardenafil are also contraindicated in patients with retinitis pigmentosa. Caution is advised if PDE5 inhibitors are used together with other drugs which are metabolised by the same hepatic elimination pathway (CYP3A4), which is associated with an increased serum concentration of the PDE5 inhibitor.

4.7.6 *Practical considerations*

To date, PDE5 inhibitors have been officially licensed only for the treatment of erectile dysfunction and pulmonary arterial hypertension. Treatment beyond this indication (e.g. male LUTS) is still experimental and should not be used routinely in the clinical setting. Long-term experience in patients with LUTS is still lacking. The value of PDE5 inhibitors in the context of other available potent drugs (e.g. α_1-blockers, 5α-reductase inhibitors, or muscarinic receptor antagonists) remains to be determined. Insufficient information is available about combinations between PDE5 inhibitors and other LUTS medications.

4.7.7 *Recommendations*

	LE	GR
PDE5 inhibitors reduce moderate to severe male lower urinary tract symptoms.	1b	
PDE5 inhibitors are currently restricted to men with erectile dysfunction, pulmonary arterial hypertension, or to those who have lower urinary tract symptoms and participate in clinical trials.		A

4.7.8 *References*

1. Kedia GT, Ückert S, Jonas U, et al. The nitric oxide pathway in the human prostate: clinical implications in men with lower urinary tract symptoms. World J Urol 2008 Dec;26(6):603-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18607596
2. Ückert S, Küthe A, Jonas U, et al. Characterization and functional relevance of cyclic nucleotide phosphodiesterase isoenzymes of the human prostate. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2484-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696815
3. Ückert S, Oelke M, Stief CG, et al. Immunohistochemical distribution of cAMP- and cGMPphosphodiesterase (PDE) isoenzymes in the human prostate. Eur Urol 2006 Apr;49(4):740-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16460876
4. Andersson KE, Persson K. Nitric oxide synthase and the lower urinary tract: possible implications for physiology and pathophysiology. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1995;175:43-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8771275
5. Wright PJ. Comparison of phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5) inhibitors. Int J Clin Pract 2006 Aug;60(8): 967-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16780568
6. Sairam K, Kulinskaya E, McNicholas TA, et al. Sildenafil influences lower urinary tract symptoms. BJU Int 2002 Dec;90(9):836-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12460342
7. Mulhall JP, Guhring P, Parker M, et al. Assessment of the impact of sildenafil citrate on lower urinary tract symptoms in men with erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2006 Jul;3(4):662-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839322
8. McVary KT, Monnig W, Camps JL Jr, et al. Sildenafil citrate improves erectile function and urinary symptoms in men with erectile dysfunction and lower urinary tract symptoms associated with benign prostatic hyperplasia: a randomised, double-blind trial. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):1071-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296414

9. Kaplan SA, Gonzalez RR, Te AE. Combination of alfuzosin and sildenafil is superior to monotherapy in treating lower urinary tract symptoms and erectile dysfunction. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1717-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17258855
10. McVary KT, Roehrborn CG, Kaminetsky JC, et al. Tadalafil relieves lower urinary tract symptoms secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1401-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382741
11. Roehrborn CG, McVary KT, Elion-Mboussa A, et al. Tadalafil administered once daily for lower urinary tract symptoms secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia: a dose finding study. J Urol 2008 Oct; 180(4):1228-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18722631
12. Bechara A, Romano S, Casabé A, et al. Comparative efficacy assessment of tamsulosin vs. tamsulosin plus tadalafil in the treatment of LUTS/BPH. Pilot study. J Sex Med 2008 Sep;5(9):2170-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18638006
13. Liquori G, Trombetta C, De Giorgi G, et al. Efficacy and safety of combined oral therapy with tadalafil and alfuzosin: an integrated approach to the management of patients with lower urinary tract symptoms and erectile dysfunction. Preliminary report. J Sex Med 2009 Feb;6(2):544-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19138360
14. Porst H, McVary KT, Montorsi F, et al. Effects of once-daily tadalafil on erectile function in men with erectile dysfunction and sign and symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Eur Urol 2009 Oct;56(4):727-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19409693
15. Stief CG, Porst H, Neuser D, et al. A randomised, placebo-controlled study to assess the efficacy of twice-daily vardenafil in the treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia. Eur Urol 2008 Jun;53(6):1236-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18281145
16. Roehrborn CG, Kaminetsky JC, Auerbach SM, et al. Changes in peak urinary flow and voiding efficiency in men with signs and symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia during once daily tadalafil treatment. BJU Int 2010 Feb;105(4):502-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19732051
17. Güler C, Tüzel E, Dogantekin E, et al. Does sildenafil affect uroflowmetry values in men with lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic enlargement? Urol Int 2008;80(2):181-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362490
18. Guven EO, Balbay MD, Mete K, et al. Uroflowmetric assessment of acute effects of sildenafil on the voiding of men with erectile dysfunction and sympotomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. Int Urol Nephrol 2009;41(2):287-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18649004

4.8 Other new drugs

Several new drugs are currently under clinical investigation (phase II-III trials) of which none has been licensed for male LUTS so far. These new drugs target:

- the prostate, e.g. gonodotrophin-releasing hormone antagonists, oestrogen receptor antagonists, apoptosis-inducing agents, vaccines, vitamin D agonists, or androgen replacement therapies;
- the bladder, e.g. β_3-adrenoceptor agonists;
- the nervous system, e.g. neuromuscular blocking agents, tachykinin receptor antagonists. Published results of those drugs are preliminary and sparse. Therefore, these new drugs were excluded from further analyses, but will be re-evaluated for the next version of the guidelines on male LUTS.

5. SURGICAL TREATMENT

5.1 Transurethral Resection of the Prostate (TURP) and Transurethral Incision of the Prostate (TUIP)

*5.1.1 **Mechanism of action***

Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) was first performed in 1932. Whereas the material has changed substantially since the first procedure, the basic principle of TURP has remained unchanged. It is still, firstly, the removal of tissue from the transition zone of the prostate to reduce benign prostatic obstruction (BPO) and, secondly, to reduce lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS).

TURP is still regarded as the gold standard for the treatment of LUTS secondary to BPO in prostates between 30 and 80 mL. However, there is no strong evidence in the literature regarding the upper size limit of the prostate suitable for TURP. The suggested threshold sizes reflect the Panel's opinion who has assumed that this limit depends on the surgeon's experience, resection speed, and resectoscope sizes. During the last decade, there has been a continuous decline in the rate of TURPs performed. In 1999, TURP represented 81% of all surgery for benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH) in the USA, but by 2005, TURP represented only 39% of surgical procedures for BPH, due to the combined effect of fewer prostatic operations and more minimally-invasive procedures (1).

Transurethral incision of the prostate (TUIP) was initially described by Orandi in 1969. TUIP reduces LUTS secondary to BPO by splitting the bladder outlet without tissue removal. This technique has been rediscovered and may replace TURP as the first choice of treatment in selected men with benign prostate enlargement, especially men with prostate sizes ≤ 30 mL and without prostate middle lobes.

*5.1.2 **Operative procedure***

During TURP, hyperplastic prostatic tissue of the transition zone is removed endoscopically using special resectoscopes and cutting loops, which enable ablation of prostatic tissue in small slices that are then removed from the bladder at the end of surgery. The cutting of prostatic tissue and coagulation of blood vessels is achieved by using adaptable electrical current.

During the TUIP procedure, one or two cuts are made into the prostatic parenchyma and capsule, thereby reducing urethral resistance (BPO). The technique has been modified by several authors. The most popular unilateral incision is located at the 6 o'clock position and the most commonly performed bilateral incisions are at the 5 and 7 o'clock positions.

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) should be treated prior to TURP or TUIP (2,3). The routine use of prophylactic antibiotics in TURP has been well evaluated with a considerable number of RCTs. Three systematic reviews of the available RCTs resulted in similar conclusions favouring the use of antibiotic prophylaxis (4-6). Antibiotic prophylaxis significantly reduces bacteriuria, fever, sepsis, and the need for additional antibiotics after TURP. There was also a trend towards higher efficacy in favour of short-course antibiotic administration than for a single-dose regimen (4). However, further studies are required to define the optimal antibiotic regimen and cost-effectiveness of antibiotic prophylaxis in TURP.

*5.1.3 **Efficacy***

5.1.3.1 Symptom improvement

TURP provides durable clinical outcomes, as shown by studies with a long follow-up of 8-22 years. There are no similar data on durability for any other surgical treatment for BPO (7). One study with a mean follow-up of 13 years reported a significant and sustained decrease in most symptoms and improvements in urodynamic parameters following TURP. The study also found that subjective and objective failures were associated with decreased detrusor contractility rather than BPO (8). A study in 577 men who underwent TURP reported excellent functional outcomes with a mean IPSS of 4.9 and a mean QoL score of 1.2 after 10 years of followup (9). A meta-analysis of 29 RCTs reported a mean LUTS improvement of 70.6% (95% CI: 66.4-75.5%) after TURP (10).

5.1.3.2 RCT comparison of TUIP with TURP

Eleven RCTs comparing TUIP with TURP are currently available (10-14) (Table 15). These studies evaluated similar LUTS improvements in patients with small prostates (< 20-30 mL) and no prostate median lobe (10-14). The findings are reported below.

Uroflowmetry: the mean Q_{max} increase following TURP was 125% with an absolute mean improvement of +9.7 mL/s (95% CI: 8.6-11.2 mL/s) (10). All RCTs comparing TUIP with TURP 12 months after the procedure reported a lower mean or median Q_{max} following TUIP with an overall mean Q_{max} improvement of 70% (95% CI: 27-112) (10,13).

Post-void residual: PVR volume decreased by 60.5% (95% CI: 48-71) after TURP (10). The decrease in PVR after TUIP varied across available studies, but was always lower than with TURP (10,13).

Re-treatment rate: a second prostatic operation, usually performed as TURP again, was reported at a constant rate of approximately 1-2% per year. The review analysing 29 RCTs found a re-treatment rate of 2.6% (96% CI: 0.5-4.7) after a mean follow-up of 16 months (10). In a recent large-scale study of 20,671 men, who underwent TURP in Austria, the overall reported re-treatment rates (including secondary TURP, urethrotomy, and bladder neck incision) were 5.8%, 12.3%, and 14.7% at 1, 5, and 8 years of follow-up, respectively (14). The incidence of secondary TURP was 2.9%, 5.8% and 7.4% for the same follow-up periods (14). Analyses of RCTs comparing TURP with TUIP showed that re-treatment was more likely following TUIP (17.5%) than after TURP (9%) (13).

5.1.4 ***Tolerability and safety***

5.1.4.1 Intra- and peri-operative complications

Mortality following prostatectomy has decreased constantly and significantly during the past decades and is less than 0.25% in contemporary series (10,15,16). In the most recent study of 10,564 men who underwent TURP, peri-operative mortality (during the first 30 days) was 0.1% (17). The risk of transurethral resection (TUR) syndrome has also decreased during the last decades to less than 1.1% (10,16). Risk factors associated with TUR syndrome are excessive bleeding with opening of venous sinuses, prolonged operation time, large prostates, and past or present nicotine abuse (17). No cases of TUR syndromes were recorded in patients undergoing TUIP. The incidence of blood transfusion following TURP in the analysis of 29 RCTs was 8.4% (95% CI: 3.9-13.4) (10). Contemporary real-life data from 10,564 TURP procedures reported procedure-related bleeding requiring blood transfusion in 2.9% of patients. The risk of bleeding following TUIP is negligible (10).

5.1.4.2 Long-term risk of mortality

The possibility of an increased long-term risk of mortality after TURP compared to open surgery has been raised by Roos et al. (15). However, these findings have not been replicated by others (18-20). Recently, data from 20,671 TURPs and 2,452 open prostatectomies (OP) showed that the 8-year incidence of myocardial infarction was identical after TURP (4.8%) and OP (4.9%). Similarly, mortality rates at 90 days (0.7% vs. 0.9%), one year (2.8% vs. 2.7%), 5 years (12.7% vs. 11.8%) and 8 years (20% vs. 20.9%) were almost identical (14).

5.1.4.3 Long-term complications

Urinary incontinence: the median probability of post-operative stress urinary incontinence ranges from 1.8% following TUIP to 2.2% following TURP (1-6,13,15). A meta-analysis of three trials investigating urinary incontinence showed no statistically significant difference between the TUIP and TURP groups, although there were fewer events in the TUIP group (13).

Urinary retention and UTIs: a recent meta-analysis found no statistically significant differences between TURP and TUIP in the development of urinary retention and UTIs (13).

Bladder neck stenosis and urethral stricture: the risk of developing urethral strictures after TURP is 3.8% (95% CI: 1.7-5.8) and after TUIP 4.1% (10). The risk of bladder neck stenoses is 4.7% (95% CI: 0.3-9.2) after TURP (10). A systematic review reported an overall incidence of 8.7% for strictures after TUIP, but did not distinguish between urethral strictures and bladder neck stenoses (13).

Sexual function: retrograde ejaculation results from resection/destruction of the bladder neck and is reported by 65.4% (95% CI 53.4-77.5) of patients after TURP and 18.2% after TUIP (10). There is a long-standing controversy on the impact of prostatectomy, particularly TURP, on erectile function. The only RCT that compared TURP to a 'wait and see' policy with a follow-up of 2.8 years reported identical rates of erectile dysfunction (ED) in both arms (19% and 21%, respectively) (21). In the analysis of 29 RCTs, the incidence of ED following TURP was 6.5% (95% CI: 0.2-12.7%) (10). The frequently reported increase in ED after TURP seems to be caused by confounding factors (e.g. age) rather than being the direct consequence of TURP.

5.1.5 ***Practical considerations***

TURP and TUIP are both effective primary treatments for men with BPO, BPE, and moderate-to-severe LUTS. The choice between TURP and TUIP should be primarily based on prostate volume, with prostates < 30 mL being mainly considered for TUIP and prostates of 30-80 mL for TURP. The advantages of TUIP are reduced bleeding incidents, shorter operation time, avoidance of TUR syndrome, minimal and shorter post-operative bladder irrigation, low risk of retrograde ejaculation, and shorter times for catheterisation and hospitalisation. The disadvantages are a higher rate of symptom recurrence and the need for additional surgery.

5.1.6 ***Modifications of TURP: bipolar Transurethral Resection of the Prostate***

5.1.6.1 Mechanism of action

One of the most important recent improvements in TURP is the incorporation of plasmakinetic bipolar technology (B-TURP). To date, five types of bipolar resection devices have been developed: the plasmakinetic (PK) system (Gyrus), Vista Coblation/CTR (controlled tissue resection) system (ACMI) [withdrawn], transurethral

resection in saline (TURis) system (Olympus), Karl Storz, and Wolf (22). The devices differ in the way in which bipolar current flow is delivered to achieve the plasmakinetic effect.

5.1.6.2 Operative procedure

Prostatic tissue removal during B-TURP is identical to monopolar TURP. In contrast to monopolar TURP, B-TURP uses a specialised resectoscope loop, which incorporates both the active and return electrodes. It permits electrosurgical tissue cutting in a conductive saline medium. After activation of the high frequency current, the physiological saline around the loop is heated up to the boiling point. The resulting bubbles create an environment with high electrical resistance; the voltage between electrode and saline solution spikes forms an arc. The tissue is heated indirectly by the heat of the ignition of the arc; this enables both resection and coagulation. As with other endoscopic operations, UTIs should be treated before the procedure and prophylactic antibiotic therapy is advised.

5.1.6.3 Efficacy

The efficacy of bipolar TURP devices has been demonstrated in case series and RCTs. Three systematic reviews have provided important information on the efficacy of bipolar TURP (23-25). Almost identical outcomes were reported with monopolar and bipolar TURP concerning the improvement of Q_{max} (10.5 mL/s vs. 10.8 mL/s) and the AUA-SS/IPSS (-15.2 vs. -15.1) (23).

Long-term results of B-TURP are still awaited. In a RCT comparing B-TURP with plasmakinetic energy with a mean follow-up of 18.3 months, the re-operation rate was 4.1% and 2.1% for the PK system and TURP, respectively (26). In a recent study with a follow-up of 3 years, the initially observed significant improvements remained durable for the bipolar and monopolar arm in terms of IPSS (6.8 vs. 6.2) and Q_{max} (20.5 vs. 21.5 mL/s) (27).

5.1.6.4 Tolerability and safety

The overall rate of adverse events was significantly lower with B-TURP compared to monopolar TURP (28.6% vs. 15.5%) (23). Main advantages of B-TURP include reduced blood loss and decreased incidences of postoperative clot retention and blood transfusions. Both post-operative catheterisation and hospitalisation times were shorter with bipolar TURP compared to monopolar TURP; this was thought to be due to reduced bleeding associated with improved coagulation abilities. Post-operative storage symptoms, particularly dysuria, were less common with B-TURP. However, most of these results were trends favouring B-TURP rather than statistically significant differences (23).

TUR syndrome has not been reported with B-TURP, due to the use of physiological saline irrigation fluid and reduced fluid absorption during the procedure (23,24). Several RCTs have suggested that urethral strictures are more common with B-TURP, with possible contributory factors being a larger resectoscope size (27F), the type of return electrode, and higher current densities (22). However, the most recent systematic review of RCTs did not reveal statistically significant differences between monopolar and bipolar TURP treatment arms (1.7% vs 2.4, respectively, $p = 0.280$) (24). Nevertheless, larger studies with increased numbers of patients and/or longer follow-ups may change these results. Regarding the impact of B-TURP on sexual function, it was found that post-operative retrograde ejaculation (57 vs 60%) (24) or erectile dysfunction (both about 14%) (23) did not differ significantly between B-TURP and monopolar TURP.

5.1.6.5 Practical considerations

B-TURP offers an attractive alternative to monopolar TURP in patients with LUTS secondary to BPO with similar efficacy but lower morbidity. Furthermore, the safety of B-TURP allows more time for training and teaching of urology residents. However, since there remains a lack of sufficient long-term data, it is not possible to draw definite conclusions about the duration of improvements and advantages of B-TURP over monopolar TURP. The choice of B-TURP should currently be based on the availability of the bipolar armamentarium, the surgeon's experience, and the patient's preference.

5.1.7 *Recommendations*

	LE	GR
Monopolar TURP is the current surgical standard procedure for men with prostate sizes of 30-80 mL and moderate-to-severe LUTS secondary to BPO. Monopolar TURP provides subjective and objective improvement rates superior to medical or minimally invasive treatments. However, the morbidity of monopolar TURP is higher than for transur, bipolar TURP, drugs, or other minimally-invasive procedures.	1a	A
Bipolar TURP achieves short-term results comparable to monopolar TURP.	1a	A
TUIP is the surgical therapy of choice for men with LUTS secondary to BPO and prostate sizes < 30 mL without middle lobes.	1a	A

BPO = benign prostatic obstruction; LUTS = lower urinary tract symptoms; TUIP = transurethral incision of the prostate; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

Table 15: Efficacy of transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) or transurethral incision of the prostate (TUIP) in level 1 trials at 12 or 24 months. Absolute and relative changes compared to baseline with regard to symptoms (Madson-Iverson or IPSS) and maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max})

Trials	Intervention	Patients (n)	Absolute decrease (%) in symptoms at 12 months		Q_{max} (mL/s) at 12 months		Blood transfusion	Re-operation rate at 12 months	LE
			absolute	[%]	absolute	[%]	[%]	[%]	
Dorflinger et al. (1992) (28)	TURP	31	-11.6 [a]	-88 [a]	+22.9 [a, b]	+294 [a, b]	13	3.2 [b]	1b
	TUIP	29	-12.6 [a]	-85 [a]	+16.3 [a]	+223 [a]	0 [c]	20.7	
Jahnson et al. (1998) (29)	TURP	43	-13 [a]	-82 [a]	+19.5 [a, b]	+229 [a, b]	2.4	7.1 [b]	1b
	TUIP	42	-11.8 [a]	-77 [a]	+13.8 [a]	+148 [a]	0	23.2	
Riehmann et al. (1995) (30)	TURP	61	-9.5 [a]	-67 [a]	no significant difference between groups			16	1b
	TUIP	56	-10 [a]	-63 [a]				23	
Saporta et al. (1996) (31)	TURP	20	-9.4 [a]	-63 [a]	+17.3 [a]	+266 [a]		0 [b]	1b
	TUIP	20	-9.3 [a]	-64 [a]	+14.6 [a]	+197 [a]		15	
Soonwalla et al. (1992) (32)	TURP	110			+20.1 [a]	+251 [a]	34.5		1b
	TUIP	110			+19.5 [a]	+246 [a]	0 [c]		
Tkoocz et al. (2002) (12)	TURP	50	-12 *[a]	-70*	6.9 *[a]	+255 [a]			1b
	TUIP	50	-13 *[a]	-77*	7.6 *[a]	+222 [a]			
Lourenco et al. (2009) (33)	TURP	345	no significant difference between groups		no significant difference between groups		28.3	7.2 [b]	1a
	TUIP	346					1.1 [c]	18	
Yang et al. (2001) (11)	TURP	403	-11.2 to -13	-63 to -82	+17.3 to +22.9 [b]	+266 to +352 [b]	25.1	5.5	1a
	TUIP	392	-10 to -13.5	-63 to -83	+13.8 to +16.3	+189 to +223	0.87 [c]	9.3	

** 24 month post-operatively; a significantly different compared to baseline; b significantly different in favour of TURP; c significantly different in favour of TUIP*

5.1.8 *References*

1. Yu X, Elliott SP, Wilt TJ, et al. Practice patterns in benign prostatic hyperplasia surgical therapy: the dramatic increase in minimally invasive technologies. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):241-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499180
2. Elmalik EM, Ibrahim AI, Gahli AM, et al. Risk factors in prostatectomy bleeding: preoperative urinary tract infection is the only reversible factor. Eur Urol 2000 Feb;37(2):199-204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10705199
3. Scholz M, Luftenegger W, Harmuth H, et al. Single-dose antibiotic prophylaxis in transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective randomised trial. Br J Urol 1998 Jun;81(6):827-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9666765
4. Berry A, Barratt A. Prophylactic antibiotic use in transurethral prostatic resection: a meta-analysis J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):571-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792921
5. Qiang W, Jianchen W, MacDonald R, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transurethral prostatic resection in men with preoperative urine containing less than 100,000 bacteria per ml: a systematic review J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1175-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758736
6. Bootsma A, Laguna Pes M, Geerlings S, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis in urologic procedures: a systematic review. Eur Urol 2008 Dec;54(6):1270-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423974
7. Reich O, Gratzke C, Stief CG. Techniques and long-term results of surgical procedures for BPH. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):970-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481092
8. Thomas AW, Cannon A, Bartlett E, et al. The natural history of lower urinary tract dysfunction in men: minimum 10-year urodynamic followup of transurethral resection of prostate for bladder outlet obstruction. J Urol 2005 Nov;174(5):1887-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16217330
9. Varkarakis J, Bartsch G, Horninger W. Long-term morbidity and mortality of transurethral prostatectomy: a 10- year follow-up. Prostate 2004 Feb;58(3):248-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14743463
10. Madersbacher S, Marberger M. Is transurethral resection of the prostate still justified? Br J Urol 1999 Feb;83(3):227-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233485
11. Yang Q, Peters TJ, Donovan JL, et al. Transurethral incision compared with transurethral resection of the prostate for bladder outlet obstruction: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1526-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342911
12. Tkocz M, Prajsner A. Comparison of long-term results of transurethral incision of the prostate with transurethral resection of the prostate, in patients with benign prostatic hypertrophy. Neurourol Urody 2002;21(2):112-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857663
13. Lourenco T, Armstrong N, N'Dow J, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of effectiveness and cost utility of surgical treatments for men with benign prostatic enlargement. Health Technol Assess 2008 Nov;12(35):1-146. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19032882
14. Madersbacher S, Lackner J, Brossner C, et al. Reoperation, myocardial infarction and mortality after transurethral and open prostatectomy: a nation-wide, long-term analysis of 23,123 cases. Eur Urol 2005 Apr;47(4):499-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15774249
15. Roos NP, Wennberg JE, Malenka DJ, et al. Mortality and reoperation after open and transurethral resection of the prostate for benign prostatic hyperplasia. N Engl J Med 1989 Apr;320(17):1120-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2469015
16. Rassweiler J, Teber D, Kuntz R, et al. Complications of transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)--ncidence, management, and prevention. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):969-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469429
17. Hahn RG. Smoking increases the risk of large scale fluid absorption during transurethral prostatic resection. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):162-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435847

18. Holman CD, Wisniewski ZS, Semmens JB, et al. Mortality and prostate cancer risk in 19,598 men after surgery for benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 1999 Jul;84(1):37-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10444122
19. Hahn RG, Farahmand BY, Hallin A, et al. Incidence of acute myocardial infarction and cause-specific mortality after transurethral treatments of prostatic hypertrophy. Urology 2000 Feb;55(2):236-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688086
20. Shalev M, Richter S, Kessler O, et al. Long-term incidence of acute myocardial infarction after open and transurethral resection of the prostate for benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):491-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915433
21. Wasson JH, Reda DJ, Bruskewitz RC, et al. A comparison of transurethral surgery with watchful waiting for moderate symptoms of benign prostatic hyperplasia. The Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study Group on Transurethral Resection of the Prostate. New Engl J Med 1995 Jan;332(2):75-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7527493
22. Rassweiller J, Schlze M, Stock C, et al. Bipolar transurethral resection of the prostate – technical modifications and early clinical experience. Minim Invasive Ther Allied Technol 2007;16(1):11-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17365673
23. Issa MM. Technological Advances in Transurethral Resection of the Prostate: Bipolar versus Monopolar TURP. J Endourol 2008 Aug;22(8):1587-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18721041
24. Mamoulakis C, Trompetter M, de la Rosette J. Bipolar transurethral resection of the prostate: the 'golden standard' reclaims its leading position. Curr Opin Urol 2009 Jan;19(1):26-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19057207
25 Mamoulakis C, Ubbink DT, de la Rosette J. Bipolar versus Monopolar Transurethral Resection of the Prostate : A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis of Randomised Controlled Trials. Eur Urol 2009 Nov;56(5):798-809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19595501
26. Tefekli A, Muslumanoglu AY, Baykal M, et al. A hybrid technique using bipolar energy in transurethral prostate surgery: a prospective, randomised comparison. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4):1339-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145415
27. Autorino R, De Sio M, D'Armiento M. Bipolar plasmakinetic technology for the treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: evidence beyond marketing hype? BJU Int 2007 Nov;100(5):983-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17578467
28. Dorflinger T, Jensen FS, Krarup T, et al. Transurethral prostatectomy compared with incision of the prostate in the treatment of prostatism caused by small benign prostate glands. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1992;26(4):333-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1284003
29. Jahnson S, Dalen M, Gustavsson G, et al. Transurethral incision versus resection of the prostate for small to medium benign prostatic hyperplasia. Br J Urol 1998 Feb;81(2):276-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9488072
30. Riehmann M, Knes JM, Heisey D, et al. Transurethral resection versus incision of the prostate: a randomised, prospective study. Urology 1995 May;45(5):768-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7538238
31. Saporta L, Aridogan IA, Erlich N, et al. Objective and subjective comparison of transurethral resection, transurethral incision and balloon dilatation of the prostate. A prospective study. Eur Urol 1996;29(4):439-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8791051
32. Soonawalla PF, Pardanani DS. Transurethral incision versus transurethral resection of the prostate. A subjective and objective analysis. Br J Urol 1992 Aug;70(2):174-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1382793
33. Lourenco T, Shaw M, Fraser C, et al. The clinical effectiveness of transurethral incision of the prostate: a systematic review of randomised controlled trials. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):23-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20033744

5.2 Open prostatectomy

*5.2.1 **Mechanism of action***

Open prostatectomy is the oldest surgical treatment modality for LUTS secondary to BPO. Obstructive prostatic adenomas are enucleated using the index finger, either from the inside of the bladder (Freyer procedure) or through the anterior prostatic capsule (Millin procedure), allowing unobstructed voiding.

5.2.2 ***Operative procedure***

Indications for surgery

The most frequent indication for surgical management is bothersome LUTS refractory to medical management (1,2). The following complications of BPH/BPE/BPO are considered strong indications for surgery:

- refractory urinary retention;
- recurrent urinary infection;
- recurrent haematuria refractory to medical treatment with 5-alpha reductase inhibitors;
- renal insufficiency due to BPE/BPO;
- bladder stones.

Increased PVR volume may also be used as an indication for surgery. However, there is great intra-individual variability and an upper limit requiring intervention has not been defined. Variables most likely to predict the outcome of prostatectomy are severity of LUTS, the degree of bother, and the presence of BPO.

Procedure

A transurethral balloon catheter is inserted and the bladder is filled with saline solution. Access to the bladder or anterior prostatic capsule is obtained through a midline or transverse suprapubic incision.

Transvesical procedure (Freyer)

A transverse incision is made in the anterior bladder wall. The index finger is then placed in the urethra and with forward pressure towards the symphysis, the urethral mucosa is broken, and the plane between the surgical capsule and the adenomas is defined. The prostatic adenomas are then bluntly separated from the capsule with the finger. Special care must be taken when dividing the urethra at the apex in order not to harm the urethral sphincter. Haemostatic sutures are placed in the posterior corners of the cavity and the posterior margin, taking care not to include the ureteral orifices. Post-operative haemostasis might be obtained using gauze packing and/or traction on a large balloon catheter. For sufficient drainage, both a transurethral and a suprapubic catheter are placed.

Transcapsular procedure (Millin)

A transverse incision is made in the anterior prostatic capsule and the adenomas freed bluntly with a scissor and the index finger. Care is taken when dividing the urethra. Many surgeons will resect the posterior bladder neck to avoid late bladder neck stricture. The prostatic capsule is closed after insertion of a transurethral balloon catheter for drainage.

Peri-operative antibiotics

A known urinary tract infection should be treated before surgery (10,11). The routine use of prophylactic antibiotics remains controversial. However, antibiotics are recommended in patients on catheterisation prior to surgery.

5.2.3 ***Efficacy***

Open prostatectomy is the treatment of choice for large glands (> 80-100 mL). Associated complications include large bladder stones or bladder diverticula (4-6). Three recent RCTs have shown that Holmium laser enucleation and PVP lead to similar outcomes compared to open prostatectomy in men with large glands (> 70, 80 and 100 mL) at a significantly lower complication rate (7-9).

5.2.3.1 Treatment outcome

The results of open prostatectomy studies for treating BPH-LUTS or BPO are summarised in Table 16.

- LUTS: open prostatectomy results in an improvement of LUTS of 63-86% and in the IPSS Quality of Life score of 60-87% (8,9,12).
- Uroflowmetry: the mean increase of Q_{max} following open prostatectomy is 375% (range, 88-677%) (8,9,12) in absolute terms +16.5-20.2 mL/s (6,8,9,12).
- PVR: a reduction of 86-98% is seen in the PVR volume after open prostatectomy (8,9,12).

5.2.3.2 Long-term outcome and re-treatment rate

A favourable long-term outcome is common after open prostatectomy. A secondary prostatic operation has not been reported in the open prostatectomy arm in randomised studies up to 5 years follow-up (8,9,12) (Table 17).

5.2.4 *Tolerability and safety*

Intra-/peri-operative complications

Mortality following open prostatectomy has decreased significantly during the past two decades and is less than < 0.25% in contemporary series (13) (Table 17). The estimated need for blood transfusion following is about 7-14% (9,12,13).

Long-term complications

Long-term complications are incontinence and bladder neck contracture and urethral stricture. The risk of developing stress incontinence is up to 10% (4), while the risk for developing bladder neck contracture and urethral stricture is about 6% (7-9).

5.2.5 *Practical considerations*

Open prostatectomy is the most invasive, but also the most effective and durable, procedure for the treatment of LUTS secondary to BPO. Only Holmium enucleation delivers similar results, but with less morbidity. In the absence of an endourological armamentarium and a Holmium laser, open prostatectomy appears to be the treatment of choice for men with prostates > 80-100 mL and drug-treatment-resistant LUTS secondary to BPO. The choice between the Freyer or Millin procedures depends upon the surgeon's preference.

Table 16: Results of open prostatectomy studies for treating BPH-LUTS or BPO

Studies	Duration (weeks)	Patients (*n*)	Change in symptoms (IPSS)		Change in Q_{max}		Change in PVR		Change in prostate volume		LE
			Absolute	%	mL/s	%	mL	%	mL	%	
Kuntz et al. 2008 (9)	260	32	-18.2	86	21.4	677	-287	98			1b
Skolarikos et al. 2008 (8)	78	60	-12.5	63	7	86	-77	86	-86	88	1b
Naspro et al. 2006 (7)	104	39	-13.2	62	15.9	291					1b
Varkarakis et al. 2004 (12)	151	232	-23.3	84	16.5	329	-104	90			3
Gratzke et al. 2007 (13)		868			13	218	-128	88	85	88	2b

IPSS = international prostate symptom score; PVR = post-void residual urine; Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry)

Table 17: Tolerability and safety of open prostatectomy

	Peri-operative mortality (%)	Post-operative stress incontinence (%)	Re-operation for BPO (%)
Kuntz *et al*. 2008 (9)	0	0	0
Skolarikos *et al*. 2008 (8)	0		0
Naspro *et al*. 2006 (7)	0	2.5	0
Varkarakis *et al*. 2004 (12)	0	0	
Gratzke *et al*. 2007 (13)	0.2		

BPO = benign prostatic obstruction.

5.2.6 *Recommendations*

	LE	GR
Open prostatectomy is the first choice of surgical treatment in men with drug-refractory LUTS secondary to benign prostatic obstruction and prostate sizes > 80-100 mL in the absence of Holmium lasers.	1b	A

5.2.7 *References*

1. Borboroglu PG, Kane CJ, Ward JF, et al. Immediate and postoperative complications of transurethral prostatectomy in the 1990s. J Urol 1999 Oct;162(4):1307-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10492185
2. Pickard R, Emberton M, Neal DE. The management of men with acute urinary retention. National Prostatectomy Audit Steering Group. Br J Urol 1998 May;81(5):712-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634047
3. Bruskewitz RC, Reda DJ, Wasson JH, et al. Testing to predict outcome after transurethral resection of the prostate. J Urol 1997 Apr;157(4):1304-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120927
4. Tubaro A, Carter S, Hind A, et al. A prospective study of the safety and efficacy of suprapubic transvesical prostatectomy in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):172-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435849
5. Mearini E, Marzi M, Mearini L, et al. Open prostatectomy in benign prostatic hyperplasia: 10-year experience in Italy. Eur Urol 1998 Dec;34(6):480-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9831789
6. Serretta V, Morgia G, Fondacaro L, et al. Open prostatectomy for benign prostatic enlargement in southern Europe in the late 1990s: a contemporary series of 1800 interventions. Urology 2002 Oct;60(4):623-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12385922
7. Naspro R, Suardi N, Salonia A, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus open prostatectomy for prostates >70 g: 24-month follow-up. Eur Urol 2006 Sep;50(3):563-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16713070
8. Skolarikos A, Papachristou C, Athanasiadis G, et al. Eighteen-month results of a randomised prospective study comparing transurethral photoselective vaporisation with transvesical open enucleation for prostatic adenomas greater than 80 cc. J Endourol 2008 Oct;22(10):2333-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18837655
9. Kuntz RM, Lehrich K, Ahyai SA. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus open prostatectomy for prostates greater than 100 grams: 5-year follow-up results of a randomised clinical trial. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):160-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869409
10. ElMalik EM, Ibrahim AI, Gahli AM, et al. Risk factors in prostatectomy bleeding: preoperative urinary infection is the only reversible factor. Eur Urol 2000 Feb;37(2):199-204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10705199
11. Scholz M, Luftenegger W, Harmuth H, et al. Single-dose antibiotic prophylaxis in transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective randomised trial. Br J Urol 1998 Jun;81(6):827-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9666765
12. Varkarakis I, Kyriakakis Z, Delis A, et al. Long-term results of open transvesical prostatectomy from a contemporary series of patients. Urology 2004 Aug;64(2):306-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302484
13. Gratzke C, Schlenker B, Seitz M, et al. Complications and early postoperative outcome after open prostatectomy in patients with benign prostatic enlargement: results of a prospective multicenter study. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1419-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382744

5.3 Transrethral Microwave Therapy (TUMT)

5.3.1 *Mechanism of action*

Microwave thermotherapy of the prostate works by emitting microwave radiation through an intra-urethral antenna in order to deliver heat into the prostate. Tissue is destroyed by being heated at temperatures above cytotoxic thresholds (> 45°C) (coagulation necrosis). Heat is mainly produced by electrical dipoles (water molecules) oscillating in the microwave field and electric charge carriers (ions) moving back and forth in the microwave field. It is also thought that the heat generated by TUMT also causes apoptosis and denervation of α-receptors, thereby decreasing the smooth muscle tone of the prostatic urethra.

5.3.2 *Operative procedure*

Transurethral microwave therapy is a registered trademark of Technomed Medical Systems, the pioneer of microwave thermotherapy. Currently, the main devices in the field of microwave thermotherapy are the Prostatron™ device (Urologix, Minneapolis, MN, USA), Targis™ (Urologix, Minneapolis, MN, USA), CoreTherm™ (ProstaLund, Lund, Sweden), and TMx-2000™ (TherMatrx Inc, Northbrook, ILL, USA). Most published data on thermotherapy has been on the Prostatron device.

Conceptually, TUMT devices are all similar in delivering microwave energy to the prostate with some type of feedback system. All TUMT devices consist of a treatment module that contains the microwave generator with a temperature measurement system and a cooling system. The main difference between TUMT devices is the design of the urethral applicator. The applicator consists of a microwave catheter connected to the module, which is inserted into the prostatic urethra. Differences in the characteristics of applicators have a significant effect on the heating profile (1). Other less important differences between TUMT devices are found in the catheter construction, cooling systems, treatment time, and monitoring of TUMT effects (2).

*5.3.3 **Efficacy***

5.3.3.1 Clinical outcome

A systematic review of all available RCTs on TUMT attempted to assess therapeutic efficacy (Table 18) (3) in different TUMT devices and software, including Prostatron (Prostatsoft 2.0 and 2.5) and ProstaLund Feedback. Weighted mean differences (WMD) were calculated with a 95% confidence interval (CI) for the between-treatment differences in pooled means. The review found that TUMT was somewhat less effective than transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) in reducing LUTS. The pooled mean symptom score for men undergoing TUMT decreased by 65% in 12 months compared to 77% in men undergoing TURP, which is a WMD of -1.83 in favour of TURP. TURP achieved a greater improvement in Q_{max} (119%) than TUMT (70%), with a WMD of 5.44 mL/s in favour of TURP (3).

Similarly, a pooled analysis of three studies (two RCTs and one open label) of ProstaLund Feedback TUMT (PLFT) with 12-month follow-up showed that the responder rate was 85.3% in the PLFT group and 85.9% in the TURP group (4). In addition, pooled IPSS data indicated that a subjective, non-inferior improvement with PLFT compared to TURP (4). However, one-sided 95% CI analysis showed that the non-inferiority of PLFT compared to TURP did not reach the predetermined level, even though both PLFT and TURP appeared to improve Q_{max} significantly.

Previously, urinary retention was considered to be a contraindication for TUMT. Nowadays, level 2b evidence studies have reported an 80-93% success rate for TUMT, defined as the percentage of patients who regained their ability to void spontaneously (5-7). However, these studies had a short follow-up (≤12 months), which makes it difficult to estimate the durability of TUMT outcome in patients with retention. In a study with a longer follow-up of up to 5 years, treatment failure was 37.8% in the retention group, with a cumulative risk of 58.8% at 5 years (8). One RCT compared TUMT with the α_1-blocker, terazosin (9). After 18 months' follow-up, treatment failure in the terazosin-treated patients (41%) was significantly greater than in TUMT patients (5.9%), with TUMT also achieving a greater improvement in IPSS and Q_{max} (10).

5.3.3.2 Durability

Low-energy TUMT has disappointing results for durability. Several studies have reported a re-treatment rate after low-energy TUMT as high as 84.4% after 5 years (11-14), while other studies have reported re-treatment rates of 19.8-29.3% after high-energy TUMT, though with a lower mean follow-up of 30-60 months (15-18). The re-treatment rate due to treatment failure has also been estimated by a systematic review of randomised TUMT trials (3). The trials had different follow-up periods and the re-treatment rate was expressed as the number of events per person per year of follow-up. The re-treatment rate was 0.075/person years for patients treated by TUMT and 0.010/person years for TURP.

However, a prospective, randomised, multicentre study after 5 years has obtained comparable clinical results with TUMT to those seen with TRUP. The study compared TUMT (PLFT; the Core-Therm device) and TURP (19). No statistically significant differences were found in Q_{max} and IPSS between the two treatment groups at 5 years. In the TUMT group, 10% needed additional treatment versus 4.3% in the TURP arm. These data suggest that, at 5 years, clinical results obtained with PLFT-TUMT were comparable to those seen after TURP. It should be noted that most durability studies have a high attrition rate; in this study, less than half of the initial group of patients treated were analysed at 4-5 years. In addition, patients who remained in the study were likely to represent the best data (responders).

*5.3.4 **Tolerability and safety***

Treatment is well tolerated, even though most patients experience perineal discomfort and urinary urgency and require pain medication prior to or during therapy. Pooled morbidity data of randomised studies comparing TUMT and TURP have been published (3,4,20). Catheterisation time, incidence of dysuria/urgency and urinary retention were significantly less with TURP, while the incidence of hospitalisation, haematuria, clot retention, transfusions, transurethral resection (TUR) syndrome, and urethral strictures were significantly less for TUMT. In a systematic review of randomised trials (3), the re-treatment rate due to strictures during follow-up was estimated and expressed as the number of events per person per year of follow-up. TURP patients (5.85/100 person years) were more likely than TUMT patients (0.63/100 person years) to require surgical re-treatment for strictures (meatal, urethral, or bladder neck). Pooled data showed that TUMT had less impact on sexual

function (erectile dysfunction, retrograde ejaculation) than TURP (3,4,20).

5.3.5 *Practical considerations*

Endoscopy is essential because it is important to identify the presence of an isolated enlarged middle lobe or an insufficient length of the prostatic urethra. Reported low morbidity and the absence of any need for anaesthesia (spinal or general) make TUMT a true outpatient procedure, providing an excellent option for older patients with co-morbidities at high operative risk and, therefore, unsuitable for invasive treatment (21). Independent baseline parameters predicting an unfavourable outcome include advanced age of the patient, small prostate volume, mild-to-moderate bladder outlet obstruction and a low amount of energy delivered during treatment (22). However, it should be remembered that a predictive factor for a particular device cannot necessarily be applied to other devices.

Table 18: Efficacy of TUMT. Absolute and relative changes compared to baseline are listed for symptoms (IPSS), maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max}), post-void residual urine (PVR), and prostate volume (PVol)

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Patients (n)	Change IPSS (absolute [%])	Change Q_{max} (mL/s, [%])	Change QoL (absolute [%])	Change PVR (absolute [%])	Change PVol (absolute [%])	LE
Hoffman et al. (2007) (3)	52	322	-12.7[a] (-65.0)	5.6[a] (70.0)	-2.4[a] (58.5)	NA	NA	1a
Gravas et al. (2005) (4)	52	183	-14.5[a] (-69.0)	8.4[a] (109.0)	-2.97[a] (70.9)	NA	-17.0 [a] (-33.0)	1b
Mattiasson et al. (2007) (19)	260	100	-13.6[a] (-61.5)	3.8[a] (50.0)	-3.2[a] (-74.4)	-36.0 (-34.0)	-4.0 (-8.1)	1b
Floratos et al. (15)	156	78	-8.0[a] (-40.0)	2.7[a] (29.3)	-2.0[a] (-50.0)	NS	NA	1b
Thalmann et al. (2002) (17)	104	200	-20.0[a] (-87.0)	7.0[a] (116.6)	-4.0[a] (-80.0)	-143 [a] (-84.1)	-17.7 [a] (-30.7)	2b
Miller et al. (2003) (18)	260	150	-10.6[a] (-47.0)	2.4[a] (37.0)	-2.3[a] (-54.7)	NA	NA	2b
Trock et al. (2004) (23)	208	541	-8.9[a] (-42.7)	2.8[a] (35.0)	-2.1[a] (-50.1)	NA	NA	2b

a = significant compared to baseline (indexed whenever evaluated); NS = not significant; NA = not available.

5.3.6 *Recommendations*

	LE	GR
Transuretrual microwave therapy achieves symptom improvement comparable to TURP, but is associated with decreased morbidity and lower flow improvements.	1a	A
Durability is in favour of transuretrual resection of the prostate with lower re-treatment rates compared to transretrual microwave therapy	1a	A

5.3.7 *References*

1. Bolmsjo M, Wagrell L, Hallin A, et al. The heat is on - but how? A comparison of TUMT devices. Br J Urol 1996 Oct;78(4):564-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8944513

2. Walmsley K, Kaplan SA. Transurethral Microwave Thermotherapy for Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia: Separating truth from marketing hype. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1249-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371817
3. Hoffman RM, Monga M, Elliot S, et al. Microwave thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Oct;(4):CD004135. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943811
4. Gravas S, Laguna P, Ehrnebo M, et al. Seeking for evidence that cell kill guided thermotherapy gives results not inferior to transurethral resection of prostate: results of a pooled analysis of 3 studies on feedback transurethral microwave thermotherapy. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):1002-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094023
5. Schelin S. Microwave thermotherapy in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia and chronic urinary retention. Eur Urol 2001 Apr;39(4):400-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306877
6. Naqvi SA, Rizvi SA, Hasan AS. High-energy microwave thermotherapy in patients in urinary retention. J Endourol 2000 Oct;14(8):677-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11083411
7. Kellner DS, Armenakas NA, Brodherson M, et al. Efficacy of high-energy transurethral microwave thermotherapy in alleviating medically refractory urinary retention due to benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 2004 Oct;64(4):703-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15491705
8. Gravas S, Laguna P, Kiemeney LA, et al. Durability of 30 minutes high-energy transurethral microwave therapy for the treatment of BPH: a study of 213 patients with and without urinary retention. Urology 2007 May;69(5):854-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482921
9. Djavan B, Roehrborn CG, Shariat S, et al. Prospective randomised comparison of high energy transurethral microwave thermotherapy versus α-blocker treatment of patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 1999;161(1):139-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037386
10. Djavan B, Seitz C, Roehrborn CG, et al. Targeted transurethral microwave thermotherapy versus alpha-blockade in benign prostatic hyperplasia: outcomes at 18 months. Urology 2001 Jan;57(1): 66-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11164146
11. Keijzers CB, Francisca EAE, D'Ancona FC, et al. Long-term results of lower energy TUMT. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1966-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598499
12. Tsai YS, Lin JSN, Tong YC, et al. Transurethral microwave thermotherapy for symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: Long term durability with Prostcare. Eur Urol 2001 Jun;39(6):688-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11464059
13. Terada N, Aoki Y, Ichioka K, et al. Microwave thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia with the Dornier Urowave: response durability and variables potentially predicting response. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):701-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306384
14. Ekstrand V, Westermark S, Wiksell H, et al. Long-term clinical outcome of transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT) 1991-1999 at Karolinska Hospital, Sweden. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2002;36(2):113-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12028684
15. Floratos DL, Kiemeney LA, Rossi C, et al. Long-term followup of randomised transurethral microwave thermotherapy versus transurethral prostatic resection study. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1533-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342912
16. D'Ancona FC, Francisca EA, Witjes WP, et al. Transurethral resection of the prostate vs high-energy thermotherapy of the prostate in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia: long-term results. Br J Urol 1998 Feb;81(2):259-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9488070
17. Thalmann GN, Mattei A, Treuthardt C, et al. Transurethral microwave therapy in 200 patients with a minimum followup of 2 years: urodynamic and clinical results. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2496-501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992066
18. Miller PD, Kastner C, Ramsey EW, et al. Cooled thermotherapy for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: durability of results obtained with the Targis System. Urology 2003 Jun;61(6):1160-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12809888

19. Mattiasson A, Wagrell L, Schelin S, et al. Five-year follow-up of feedback microwave thermotherapy versus TURP for clinical BPH: a prospective randomised multicenter study. Urology 2007 Jan;69(1): 91-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17270624
20. de la Rosette JJ, Laguna MP, Gravas S, et al. Transurethral Microwave Thermotherapy: The Gold Standard for Minimally Invasive Therapies or Patients with Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia? J Endourolog 2003 May;17(4):245-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12816589
21. D'Ancona FC, van der Bij AK, Francisca EA, et al. The results of high energy transurethral microwave thermotherapy in patients categorized according to the American Society of Anaesthiologists operative risk classification (ASA). Urology 1999 Feb;53(2):322-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933048
22. D'Ancona FC, Francisca EAE, Hendriks JC, et al. High energy transurethral thermotherapy in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: criteria to predict treatment outcome. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 1999 Mar;2(2):98-105.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496846
23. Trock BJ, Brotzman M, Utz WJ, et al. Long-term pooled analysis of multicenter studies of cooled thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia results at three months through four years. Urology 2004 Apr;63(4):716-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072887
24. Horasanli K, Silay MS, Altay B, et al. Photoselective potassium titanyl phosphate (KTP) laser vaporisation versus transurethral resection of the prostate for prostates larger than 70 mL: a shortterm prospective randomised trial. Urology 2008 Feb;71(2):247-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308094

5.4 Transurethral Needle Ablation (TUNA™) of the prostate

5.4.1 ***Mechanism of action***

The TUNA™ procedure works by inducing a coagulative necrosis within the transition zone of the prostate. As a result of scar maturation, there may be a reduction in transition zone volume and, therefore, a reduction of BPO. There may also be a poorly understood neuromodulatory effect.

5.4.2 ***Operative procedure***

The TUNA™ device delivers low-level radiofrequency energy to the prostate via needles inserted transurethrally into the prostatic parenchyma. The needles are insulated, except at their tips, so that energy is only delivered into the prostatic parenchyma and not to the urethra. Needles are placed under direct vision using an attachment to the standard cystoscope. TUNA™ is carried out under anaesthetic (local or general) or sedation.

5.4.3 ***Efficacy***

Several, non-randomised, clinical trials have documented the clinical efficacy of TUNA™ with a fairly consistent outcome (3-7). Symptomatic improvement has ranged from 40-70%. Improvements in Q_{max} vary widely from 26-121% in non-retention patients. A recent report with 5 years' follow-up in 188 patients demonstrated symptomatic improvement in 58% and improved flow in 41%. However, 21.2% of patients required additional treatment (8).

5.4.3.1 Randomised clinical trials

TUNA™ has been compared with TURP in randomised studies (8-11) with varying follow-up. The studies found both TUNA™ and TURP produced symptomatic improvement. However, TURP produced greater symptom improvement and a better QoL than TUNA™, as well as a significant improvement in Q_{max} after TUNA™ (Table 19). More detailed comparisons between TUNA™ and TURP can be found in some very high-quality and comprehensive, systematic reviews and meta-analyses (12,13).

5.4.3.2 Impact on bladder outlet obstruction

Seven clinical studies on the impact of TUNA™ on BPO (14,15) have demonstrated a statistically significant decrease in maximum detrusor pressure or detrusor pressure at Q_{max}, even though a number of patients were still obstructed following TUNA™ therapy.

There is no convincing evidence that prostate size is significantly reduced following TUNA™ (6). Recent reports have suggested that gadolinium-enhanced MRI can be used to assess TUNA™-related treatment effects (16).

5.4.3.3 Durability

Because most studies have been short-to-medium term, concerns have been risen about the durability of effects. Even short term (12 months), up to 20% of patients treated with TUNA™ need to be re-treated with TURP (1). A recent French report described a failure rate (incorporating re-treatment) of up to 50% over a 20-month period (17).

*5.4.4 **Tolerability and safety***

TUNA™ is usually performed as an outpatient procedure under local anaesthesia, although intravenous sedation is sometimes required (1). Post-operative urinary retention is seen in 13.3-41.6% of patients and lasts for a mean of 1-3 days; within 1 week, 90-95% of patients are catheter-free (1). Irritative voiding symptoms up to 4-6 weeks are common (2). Continence status is not affected.

*5.4.5 **Practical considerations***

Few selection criteria have been identified. However, TUNA™ is unsuitable for patients with prostate volumes > 75 mL or isolated bladder neck obstruction. Because TUNA™ cannot treat median lobes effectively it is not clear whether men with significant median lobes will experience the benefit in published studies. There is anecdotal evidence for TUNA™ in men receiving aspirin and anti-coagulants. TUNA™ can be performed as a day-case procedure and is associated with fewer side-effects compared to TURP (e.g. bleeding, erectile dysfunction, urinary incontinence). However, there remain concerns about the durability of the effects achieved by TUNA™.

*5.4.6 **Recommendations***

	LE	GR
Transurethral needle ablation™ is an alternative to transurethral resection of the prostate for patients who wish to defer/avoid (complications of) transurethral resection of the prostate, but patients should be aware of significant re-treatment rates and less improvement in symptoms and quality of life.	1a	A

Table 19: Summary of comparative level of evidence (LE) 1 data (TUNA™ vs TURP) (12)

	TUNA™	TURP	TUNA™ vs TURP 95% CI	LE
Symptoms (IPSS): mean (% improvement)				
3 months (8,10)	-12 (56%)	-14 (62%)	-2 (-0.9 to 3.1)	1b
1 year (9-11)	-12 (55%)	-15.5 (70%)	3.4 (2.1 to 5.2)[a]	1b
3 years (9,11)	-10 (45%)	-15 (67%)	4.8 (4.2 to 5.4)[a]	1b
Quality of life scores: mean (% improvement)				
3 months (8,10)	-4.5 (54%)	-3.7 (48%)	-0.8 (-1.3 to 0.5)	1b
1 year (9-11)	-4 (50%)	-4.3 (56%)	0.63 (0.1 to 1.2)[a]	1b
3 years (9,11)	-4.2 (50%)	5.2 (67%)	1 (0.2 to 1.9)[a]	1b
Q_{max} (mL/s): mean (% improvement)				
3 months (8,10)	4.7 (54%)	11.5 (150%)	-5.8 (-6.3 to -5.4)[a]	1b
1 year (9-11)	6.5 (76%)	12.2 (160%)	-5.9 (-7.7 to -4.1)[a]	1b
3 years (9,11)	5.6 (66%)	10.8 (141%)	-5.3 (-6.8 to -3.9)[a]	1b
PVR (mL): mean (% improvement)				
1 year (10,11)	-20 (22%)	-42 (41%)	22 (-18 to 27)[a]	1b

IPSS = International Prostate Symptom Score; Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate; PVR = post-void residual urine. a = TURP significantly better compared with TUNA™.

5.4.7 ***References***

1. Chapple CR, Issa MM, Woo H. Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA). A critical review of radiofrequency thermal therapy in the management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Eur Urol 1999 Feb;35(2):119-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933805
2. Schatzl G, Madersbacher S, Lang T, et al. The early postoperative morbidity of transurethral resection of the prostate and of four minimally invasive treatment alternatives. J Urol 1997 Jul;158(1):105-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9186334
3. Ramon J, Lynch TH, Eardley I, et al. Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: a collaborative multicentre study. Br J Urol 1997Jul;80(1):128-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240192
4. Roehrborn CG, Issa MM, Bruskewitz RC, et al. Transurethral needle ablation for benign prostatic hyperplasia: 12-month results of a prospective, multicenter US study. Urology 1998 Mar;51(3): 415-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510346
5. Schulman CC, Zlotta AR. Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate for treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: early clinical experience. Urology 1995 Jan;45(1):28-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529447
6. Minardi D, Garafolo F, Yehia M, et al. Pressure-flow studies in men with benign prostatic hypertrophy before and after treatment with transurethral needle ablation. Urol Int 2001;66(2):89-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11223750
7. Zlotta AR, Giannakopoulos X, Maehlum O, et al. Long-term evaluation of transurethral needle ablation of the prostate (TUNA) for treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: clinical outcome up to five years from three centers. Eur Urol. 2003 Jul;44(1):89-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814680
8. Bruskewitz R, Issa MM, Roehrborn CG, et al. A prospective randomised 1-year clinical trial comparing transurethral needle ablation to transurethral resection of the prostate for the treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 1998 May;159(5):1588-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9554360
9. Chandrasekar P, Virdi JS, Kapasi F. Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate(TUNA) in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia; a prospective, randomised study, long term results. J Urol 2003;169:s468
10. Cimentepe E, Unsal A, Saglam R. Randomised clinical trial comparing transurethral needle ablation with transurethral resection of the prostate for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: results at 18 months. J Endourol 2003 Mar;17(2):103-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12689404
11. Hill B, Belville W, Bruskewitz R, et al. Transurethral needle ablation versus transurethral resection of the prostate for the treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: 5-year results of a prospective, randomised, multicenter clinical trial. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2336-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126816
12. Bouza C, Lopez T, Magro A, et al. Systematic review and meta-analysis of of transurethral needle ablation in symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. MBC Urology 2006 Jun;6:14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16790044
13. Lourenco T, Armstrong N, N'Dow J, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of effectiveness and cost utility of surgical treatments for men with benign prostatic enlargement. Health Technol Assess 2008 Nov;12(35):iii, ix-x, 1-146, 169-515. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19032882
14. Campo B, Bergamaschi F, Corrada P, et al. Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA) of the prostate: a clinical and urodynamic evaluation. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6):847-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187689
15. Steele GS, Sleep DJ. Transurethral needle ablation of the prostate: a urodynamic based study with 2-year follow-up. J Urol 1997 Nov;158(5):1834-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334612
16. Mynderse LA, Larson B, Huidobro C, et al. Characterizing TUNA ablative treatments of the prostate for benign hyperplasia with gadolinium-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging. J Endourol 2007 Nov;21(11):1361-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18042031
17. Benoist N, Bigot P, Colombel P, et al. Tuna: Clinical retrospective study addressing mid-term outcomes. Prog Urol 2009 Jan;19(1):54-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135643

5.5 Laser treatments of the prostate

5.5.1 ***Holmium Laser Enucleation (HoLEP) and Holmium Laser Resection of the Prostate (HoLRP)***

5.5.1.1 Mechanism of action

The holmium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Ho:YAG) laser (2140 nm) is a pulsed, solid-state laser that has been used in urology for a variety of endourological applications in soft tissues and for the disintegration of urinary calculi (1). The wavelength of the Ho:YAG laser is strongly absorbed by water. This means that the area of tissue coagulation and the resulting tissue necrosis is limited to 3-4 mm, which is enough to obtain adequate haemostasis (2). Peak power produces intense, non-thermal, localised, tissue destruction, resulting in precise and efficient cutting of prostatic tissue. Resection is usually performed when the prostate is smaller than 60 mL, while enucleation is used for larger glands.

5.5.1.2 Operative procedure

Instrumentation for this technique includes a 550 µm, end-firing, quartz fibre and an 80 W Ho:YAG laser. A continuous-flow resectoscope is required with a working element, while physiological saline solution is used as an irrigant. The basic principle of the HoLRP technique is retrograde resection of the prostate and fragmentation of resected tissue inside the bladder to allow its evacuation through the operating channel of the resectoscope (2,3). The introduction of holmium laser enucleation (HoLEP) has been a significant improvement. Mimicking open prostatectomy, the prostatic lobes are completely enucleated and pushed into the bladder, before being fragmented and aspirated afterwards by a morcellator (8).

5.5.1.3 Efficacy

Gilling et al. (4) has presented the results of a prospective RCT comparing TURP with HoLRP. To date, 120 patients have been enrolled with urodynamically-confirmed BPO (Schäfer grade ≥ 2) and prostate sizes < 100 mL (Table 20). Preliminary analysis has revealed a significantly longer mean resection time (42.1 vs. 25.8 minutes) for HoLRP patients, while symptomatic and urodynamic improvement were equivalent in both treatment groups. In 2004, long-term results with a minimum follow-up of 4 years were published (7), which showed that there was no difference in urodynamic parameters between HoLRP and TURP after 48 months.

Gilling et al. (9) reported long-term data with a mean follow-up of 6.1 years, indicating that HoLEP results were durable and most patients remained satisfied with their procedure. Two meta-analyses, which analyzed available RCTs comparing HoLEP and TURP (10,11), reported a significantly longer operation time with HoLEP (Table 20). Symptom improvements were comparable, but Q_{max} at 12 months was significantly better with HoLEP (11). In prostates > 100 mL, HoLEP proved to be as effective as open prostatectomy for improving micturition, with equally low re-operation rates at 5-years' follow-up (12).

5.5.1.4 Tolerability and safety

No major intra-operative complications have been described; however, the technique is a surgical procedure that requires relevant endoscopic skills. There are no specific limitations to the procedure. Patients taking anticoagulant medication and those with urinary retention can be treated safely (6). Dysuria was the most common peri-operative complication with an incidence of approximately 10% (2,4,5). Compared to TURP, HoLRP has a significantly shorter catheterisation time (20.0 vs. 37.2 hours), shorter hospitalisation time (26.4 vs. 47.4 hours) (4), and peri-operative morbidity (7). Potency, continence, symptom scores and major morbidity at 48 months were identical between HoLRP and TURP (7). Retrograde ejaculation occurred in 75-80% of patients; no post-operative impotence has been reported (2). Both meta-analyses found that HoLEP resulted in a significantly shorter catheterisation time and hospital stay, reduced blood loss and fewer blood transfusions, but had a longer operation time than TURP (10,11).

5.5.2 ***532 nm ('Greenlight') laser vaporisation of prostate***

5.5.2.1 Mechanism of action

Vaporisation of prostatic tissue is achieved by a sudden increase in tissue temperature from 50°C to 100°C following the application of laser energy. A rapid increase in tissue temperature results in intracellular vacuoles (bubbles), followed by an increase in intracellular cell pressure. Once the cell pressure exceeds that compatible with cellular integrity, the vacuoles are released, as can be seen during the procedure. Because of the way in which tissue interacts with oxyhaemoglobin, laser vaporisation is increased within a wavelength range from 500-580 nm. Because of the green light emitted (λ=532 nm), this laser procedure is known as 'Greenlight' laser vaporisation.

It is important to include the wavelength or crystal used to produce the laser energy when describing the type of laser vaporisation used. This is because tissue interaction caused by laser energy varies according to the wavelength, applied energy, fibre architecture and tissue properties. This also means that the clinical results of different wavelengths are not comparable.

Table 20: Post-operative results of holmium resection (HoLRP) or enucleation (HoLEP) vs. transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) open prostatectomy (OP) and 'Greenlight' laser vaporisation (KTP) vs. TURP. Absolute and relative changes compared to baseline, with regard to symptoms (AUA-SI/IPSS), maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max}), post-void residual urine (PVR), and prostate volume

Trials	Duration	Patients	Surgery	Change symptoms (IPSS)		Change Q_{max} (mL/s)		Change PVR (mL)		Change prostate volume (mL)		LE
	(months)	(n)		absolute	[%]	absolute	[%]	absolute	[%]	absolute	[%]	
Le Duc et al. (1999) (1)	6	42	HoLRP	-18.4	-84	+15.1	+170					1b
		43	TURP	-17.9	-78	+13.2	+145					
Westenberg et al. (2004) (7)	48	43	HoLRP	-14.7 [a]	-67 [a]	+13.4 [a]	+151 [a]	- 61.1 [a] †	-70 [a] †	- 15 [a] †	-34 [a] †	1b
		30	TURP	-16.4 [a]	-71 [a]	+9.4 [a]	+103 [a]	- 50.4 [a] †	-60 [a] †	- 17 [a]	-39 [a] †	
Fraundorfer et al. (1998) (8)	1	14	HoLEP	-14.0	-66	+18.2	+260					3
Gilling et al. (2008) (9)	72	38	HoLEP	-17.2	-67	+10.9	+135	-71.7 †	-68 †	- 31.3 †	-54 †	3
Tan et al. (2007) (10)	12	232	HoLRP	-17.5 to -21.7	-81 to -83	+13.4 to +23.0	+160 to +470	-232.7	-98			1a
		228	TURP	-17.7 to -18.0	-76 to -82	+10.1 to +21.8	+122 to +370	-189.4	-88			
Lourenco et al. (2008) (11)	12	277	HoLRP	-17.7 to -21.7	-82 to -92	+13.4 to +23.0 [b]	+160 to +470 [b]					1a
		270	TURP	-17.5 to -18.7	-81 to -82	+10.1 to +21.8	+122 to +370 [a]					
Kuntz et al. (2008) (12)	60	42	HoLEP	-19.1	-86	+ 20.5	+540	-269.4	-96			1b
		32	OP	-18.0	-86	+ 20.8	+578	-286.7	-98			
Heinrich et al. (2007) (13)	6	140	KTP (80 W)	-10.9 [a]	-55	+ 5.6	+ 43	-65 [a]	-74 [a]			3
Ruszat et al. (2008) (14)	12	302	KTP (80 W)	-11.9 [a]	-65 [a]	+ 10.2 [a]	+121 [a]	-173 [a]	-83 [a]			3
	48	88	KTP (80 W)	-10.9 [a]	-60 [a]	+ 10.2 [a]	+121 [a]	-179 [a]	-86 [a]			
Hamann et al. (2008) (15)	12	157	KTP (80 W)	-13.4 [a]	-65 [a]	+ 10.7 [a]	+135 [a]	-103.4 [a]	-78 [a]			3
Reich et al. (2005) (16)	12	51	KTP (80 W) OA	-13.7 [a]	-68 [a]	+ 14.9 [a]	+222 [a]	-122 [a]	-83 [a]			3

Ruszat et al. (2007) (17)	24	116	KTP (80 W) OA	-13.0	-70	+ 11.3	+140	-103	-80			3
		92	KTP (80 W) CG	-12.7	-71	+12.0	+168	-160	-78			
Ruszat et al. (2006) (18)	24	16	PVP RUR	-11.1	-72			-280	-88			3
		19	PVP NUR	-12.1	-65	+16.2	+228	-131	-85			
Rajbabu et al. (2007) (19)	24	38	KTP (80 W)	-17.2 [a]	-75 [a]	+11.3 [a]	+141 [a]	-85 [a]	-63 [a]			3
Bouchier-Hayes et al. (2006) (20)	12	38	KTP (80 W)	-14.0 [a]	-50 [a]	+12.0 [a]	+167 [a]	-120 [a]	-82 [a]			1b
		38	TURP	-12.9 [a]	-50 [a]	+8.6 [a]	+149 [a]	-82 [a]	-69 [a]			
Bachmann et al. (2005) (21)	6	55	KTP (80 W)	-12.9 [a]	-71 [a]	+11.2 [a]	+162 [a]	-133 [a]	-91 [a]			3
		31	TURP	-12.5 [a]	-72 [a]	+12.2 [a]	+177 [a]	-106 [a]	-88 [a]	-21	-45	
Bouchier-Hayes et al. (2008) (23)	12	46	KTP (80 W)	-16.4 [a]	-65 [a]	+9.8 [a]	+111 [a]	-107 [a]	-83 [a]	-30	-63	1b
		39	TURP	-14.5 [a]	-57 [a]	+10.5 [a]	+118 [a]	-93 [a]	-84 [a]	-27	-44	
Horasanli et al. (2008) (24)	6	39	KTP (80 W)	-5.8	-31	+4.7	+156	-104	-57			1b
		37	TURP	-13.8 [b]	-68 [b]	+11.5 [b]	+225 [b]	-154 [b]	-87 [b]			

† 6-month data; CG = control group; RUR = refractory urinary retention; OA = oral anticoagulation; NUR = no urinary retention

[a] significant compared to baseline (indexed whenever evaluated)

[b] significant difference in favour of indicated treatment

5.5.2.2 *Operative procedure*

Laser vaporisation of the prostate using an 80 W, 532 nm laser is performed by using a 600 µm side-firing laser fibre with a 70°-deflecting laser beam and a 30°-deflecting laser cystoscope. Cold sterile saline or water can be used for irrigation during the procedure. Under direct vision, vaporisation is performed with a fibre-sweeping technique, usually starting at the bladder neck and continuing with the lateral lobes and the apex (13). The visible, side-fired, laser beam leads to an immediate and apparent tissue ablation.

5.5.2.3 *Efficacy*

Numerous studies, predominantly with 80 W lasers, have been published in recent years (Table 20). The lack of long-term data means it is not yet possible to make final conclusions about the duration of improvement. A significant improvement in symptoms and voiding parameters and a re-operation rate comparable to TURP was reported in a 5-year follow-up study of 500 patients (14). Despite ongoing oral anticoagulation in 45% of the patients (n = 225), no severe intra-operative complications were observed. The mean catheterisation and post-operative hospitalisation time was 1.8 (0-10) and 3.7 (0-35) days, respectively.

Three years after photolaser vaporisation in men with mean vaporised prostate volumes of 28 ± 42 mL, the mean IPSS was 8.0, QoL score was 1.3, and Q_{max} was 18.4 mL/s. The re-treatment rate was 6.8%. Urethral and bladder neck strictures were observed in 4.4% and 3.6% of patients, respectively. However, follow-up was available only in a few patients. Significant improvements in voiding parameters at a follow-up of 12 months were demonstrated with urodynamic investigation (15). At 12 months' follow-up, the mean urethral opening pressure (Pdetopen; 76.2 vs. 37.4 cm H_2O) and detrusor pressure at Q_{max} (Pdetmax; 75 vs. 36.6 cm H_2O) were significantly reduced compared to baseline. The Q_{max} improved by 113% (mean 18.6 mL/s) compared to pre-operative Q_{max} (mean 7.9 mL/s).

To date, only two prospective RCTs and three non-randomised trials have been published. The longest available follow-up of a RCT is only 12 months; this trial indicated that 532 nm laser vaporisation was equivalent to TURP in symptom improvement (20). Both groups showed a significant increase in Q_{max} from baseline. In the TURP group, flow increased from 8.7 to 17.9 mL/s (149%) and in the laser vaporisation group from 8.5 to 20.6 mL/s (167%). The IPSS decreased from 25.4 to 12.4 (50%) in the TURP group and from 26 to 12 (50%) in the laser vaporisation group. Laser vaporisation also resulted in significant decreases (averaging 119 mL pre-operatively in the TURP group and 147 mL in the laser vaporisation group), with reductions to 37 and 27 mL, respectively. Similar trends were seen concerning bother and quality of life scores.

5.5.2.4 *Tolerability and safety*

Safety was shown in various, prospective, non-randomised trials in patients with oral anticoagulation, urinary retention, or prostates > 80 ml (16-19). Regarding intra-operative safety, 532 nm laser vaporisation was reported to be superior to TURP in non-randomised trials (21,22). It is also an effective technique when compared to TURP, producing equivalent improvements in flow rates and IPSS with the advantages of markedly reduced length of hospital stay, duration of catheterisation, and adverse events in a randomised trial. The duration of catheterisation was significantly less in the laser vaporisation than the TURP group, with a mean (range) of 13 (0–24) hours versus 44.7 (6–192) hours. Additionally, the length of hospital stay was significantly shorter with laser vaporisation, with a mean (range) of 1.09 (1–2) and 3.6 (3–9) days in the laser vaporisation and TURP groups, respectively (23).

5.5.2.5 *Practical considerations*

Despite the efficacy of TURP in terms of tissue removal and reduction of BPO, a higher rate of peri-operative complications has resulted in an ongoing search for less invasive and safer surgical techniques. Based on the wavelength and power, laser can be used either for coagulation, vaporisation, or cutting ('enucleation'). Non-thermal effects, also known as 'ablation', also result in tissue destruction. Functional results will therefore differ in terms of peri-operative handling of different laser devices, including learning curve, debulking issue, durability of results, and type of complications. The treatment choice how to reduce BPO is dependent on the availability of the armamentarium, patient's choice, concomitant morbidity or drug use, and experience of the surgeon.

Several types of new generation lasers for prostate surgery have emerged during the last decade, including the holmium:YAG, potassium titanyl phosphate:yttrium aluminum garnet (KTP:YAG), thulium:yttrium aluminium garnet (thulium:YAG), light blue optics:yttrium aluminium garnet (LBO:YAG) and the diode lasers. Energy can be transmitted through a bare, right-angle or interstitial fibre. Each laser has wavelength-specified energy–tissue interaction. Prostatic tissue destruction results from both thermal and non-thermal effects. In 2009, published data were only available for HoLEP, 80 W Greenlight PV (photoselective vaporisation), and thulium:YAG laser prostatectomy. Only a few articles have been published on thulium:YAG prostatectomy, which may be used as a vaporising, coagulating, or cutting laser. The lack of published data means that firm conclusions are not yet possible with regard to the different laser treatments.

5.5.2.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
HoLEP and 532 nm laser vaporisation of the prostate are minimally-invasive alternatives to TURP in men with LUTS secondary to BPO which lead to immediate, objective and subjective improvements comparable to TURP.	1b	A
With regard to intra-operative safety, 532 nm laser vaporisation is superior to TURP and should be considered in patients receiving anticoagulant medication or with a high cardiovascular risk.	3	B
With regard to long-term complication rates, results are only available for HoLEP, and are comparable to TURP.	1b	A

TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate; LUTS = lower urinary tract symptoms; BPO = benign prostatic obstruction.

5.5.3 ***References***

1. Le Duc A, Gilling PJ. Holmium laser resection of the prostate. Eur Urol 1999 Feb;35(2):155-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933809
2. Gilling PJ, Cass CB, Malcolm AR, et al. Combination Holmium and Nd: YAG laser ablation of the prostate: initial clinical experience. J Endourol 1995 Apr;9(2):151-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7633476
3. Chun SS, Razvi HA, Denstedt JD. Laser prostatectomy with the holmium:YAG laser. Tech Urol 1995 Winter;1(4):217-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9118394
4. Gilling PJ, Fraundorfer MR, Kabalin JB. Holmium: YAG laser resection of the prostate (HoLRP) versus transurethral electrocautery resection of the prostate (TURP): a prospective randomised, urodynamicbased clinical trial. J Urol 1997;157:149A.
5. Le Duc A, Anidjar M, Teillac P, et al. The Holmium YAG laser in the transurethral resection of prostate. Br J Urol 1997;80(Suppl 2):A773.
6. Kabalin JN, Mackey MJ, Cresswell MD, et al. Holmium: YAG laser resection of prostate (HoLRP) for patients in urinary retention. J Endourol 1997 Aug;11(4):291-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9376851
7. Westenberg A, Gilling P, Kennett K, et al. Holmium laser resection of the prostate versus transurethral resection of the prostate: results of a randomised trial with 4-year minimum long-term followup. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):616-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247745
8. Fraundorfer MR, Gilling PJ. Holmium:YAG laser enucleation of the prostate combined with mechanical morcellation: preliminary results. Eur Urol. 1998;33(1):69-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9471043
9. Gilling PJ, Aho TF, Frampton CF, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: results at 6 years. Eur Urol 2008 Apr;53(4):744-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17475395
10. Tan A, Liao C, Mo Z, et al. Meta-analysis of holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate for Symptomatic prostatic obstruction. Br J Surg 2007 Oct;94(10):1201-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17729384
11. Lourenco T, Pickard R, Vale L, et al. Benign Prostatic Enlargement team. Alternative approaches to endoscopic ablation for benign enlargement of the prostate: systematic review of randomised controlled trials BMJ 2008 Jun;337:a449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18595932
12. Kuntz RM, Lehrich K, Ahyai SA. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus open prostatectomy for prostates greater than 100 grams: 5-year follow-up results of a randomised clinical trial. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):160-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869409
13. Heinrich E, Schiefelbein F, Schoen G. Technique and short-term outcome of green light laser (KTP, 80W) vaporisation of the prostate. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1632-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17689002

14. Ruszat R, Seitz M, Wyler SF, et al. GreenLight Laser Vaporisation of the Prostate: Single-Center experience and long-term results after 500 procedures. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):893-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18486311
15. Hamann MF, Naumann CM, Seif C, et al. Functional outcome following photoselective vaporisation of the prostate (PVP): Urodynamic findings within 12 months follow-up. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):902-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502565
16. Reich O, Bachmann A, Siebels M, et al. High power (80W) potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser vaporisation of the prostate in 66 high risk patients. J Urol 2005 Jan;173(1):158-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592063
17. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Forster T, et al. Safety and effectiveness of photoselective vaporisation ot the prostate (PVP) in patients on ongoing oral anticoagulation. Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):1031-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945475
18. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Seifert HH, et al. Photoselective vaporisation ot the prostate: subgroup analysis of men with refractory urinary retention Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):1040-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481099
19. Rajbabu K, Chandrasekara SK, Barber NJ, et al. Photoselective vaporisation of the prostate with the potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser in men with prostates of > 100 mL BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):593-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17511771
20. Bouchier-Hayes DM, Anderson P, Van Appledorn S, et al. KTP laser versus transurethral resection: early results of a randomised trial J Endourol. 2006 Aug;20(8):580-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903819
21. Bachmann A, Schürch L, Ruszat R, et al. Photoselective vaporisation (PVP) versus transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP): a prospective bi-centre study of perioperative morbidity and early functional outcome. Eur Urol. 2005 Dec;48(6):965-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16126327
22. Ruszat R, Wyler SF, Seitz M, et al. Comparison of potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser vaporisation of the prostate and transurethral resection of the prostate: update of a prospective non-randomised twocentre study. BJU Int. 2008 Nov;102(10):1432-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18671785
23. Bouchier-Hayes DM, Van Appledorn S, Bugeja P, et al. A randomised trial of photoselective vaporisation of the prostate using the 80-W potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser vs transurethral prostatectomy, with a 1-year follow-up. BJU Int. 2010 Apr;105(7):964-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912196

5.6 Prostate stents

5.6.1 ***Mechanism of action***

The use of an endoprosthesis to preserve luminal patency is a well-established concept, while in 1980 Fabian first describing stenting of the prostatic urethra to relieve BPO (1). Prostatic stents were primarily designed as an alternative to an indwelling catheter in patients unfit for surgery because of co-morbidity. However, prostatic stents have also been assessed by several studies as a primary treatment option in patients without significant co-morbidities (2,3).

A prostatic stent requires a functioning detrusor, so that the bladder still has the ability to empty itself. This is in contrast to an indwelling catheter, which drains the bladder passively (4). Stents can be temporary or permanent. Permanent stents are biocompatible, allowing epithelialisation, so that eventually they become embedded in the urethra. Temporary stents do not epithelialise and may be either biostable or biodegradable. Temporary stents can provide short-term relief from BPO in patients temporarily unfit for surgery or after minimally invasive treatment (MIT) (4).

5.6.2 ***Operative procedure***

Stent insertion is mostly performed in an outpatient setting under local anaesthesia. Prior to stent insertion, the length of the prostatic urethra is measured to determine the stent length. After the patient has been placed in the lithotomy position, the stent is advanced through the urethra until the tip of the prostatic urethral segment is positioned in the bladder. It is important that the stent is not positioned inside the external urethral sphincter as it may cause stress urinary incontinence. To confirm proper positioning, abdominal ultrasonography or cystoscopy is performed. Removal of a temporary stent is achieved by pulling the retrieval suture, until the stent is completely retracted, or by using graspers under endoscopic guidance. It can be difficult to remove permanent stents in cases of stent migration, stent encrustation or epithelial in-growth, and general anaesthesia is usually needed. In general, antibiotic prophylaxis is not necessary unless there has been a positive urine culture.

5.6.3 *Efficacy*

There have been several small case studies on a range of stents of different designs and materials, which have provided a low level of evidence for their use. Table 21 describes the most important studies (2,5-9). All studies during follow-up have observed a significant attrition rate. There is only one RCT that has compared two versions of a blind-placement prostatic stent (BPS) for BPO (10), and there have been no studies comparing stents with sham or other treatment modalities. The BPS system is a temporary stent consisting of a soft silicone stent, retrieval line, and delivery device, with the difference between BPS-1 and BPS-2 being an additional 2-cm bulbar segment. This bulbar segment results in a significantly lower migration rate with BPS-2 (5%) compared with BPS-1 (85%), but the bulbar segment also caused significant discomfort (10). BPS-2 also has better symptom scores and voiding function than BPS-1, but only Q_{max} reached statistical significance. The results from this study appear to indicate that stent design has a critical role in the efficacy and safety of prostatic stents (10).

5.6.3.1 *Permanent stents (UroLume endourethral prosthesis)*

The main representative of the permanent stents is the UroLume endourethral prosthesis. A recent systematic review identified 20 case series, with a total of 990 patients who received the UroLume stent (11). The 10 studies that reported symptom scores demonstrated improved symptoms following stent insertion, although the timing of assessment varied between studies. The reported decrease in Madsen-Iversen scores ranged from 7.9 to 14.3 points, while the IPSS decreased by 10-12.4 points (11). Additionally, the mean Q_{max} increased between 4.2 and 13.1 mL/s following stent insertion. The pooled data from studies with patients using permanent transurethral catheters showed that 84% of patients (148/176) regained the ability to void spontaneously after UroLume treatment, with the mean Q_{max} ranging from 8.8 to 20 mL/s. At 12 years of follow-up, the mean IPSS, Q_{max} and PVR were 10.82, 11.5 mL/s and 80 mL, respectively (12).

5.6.3.2 *Non-epitheliasing (temporary) prostatic stent (Memokath)*

The best data on non-epitheliasing prostatic stent are provided by a systematic review of the efficacy of Memokath, a self-expanding metallic prostatic stent (13). In total, 14 case series with 839 patients were reviewed. Analysis of the seven studies reporting symptom scores found that Memokath insertion was associated with a reduction of 11-19 points in the IPSS and a reduction of 9 points in the Madsen-Iversen score. However, it is important to note that the assessment was made at different times after stent placement. Similarly, stent insertion resulted in a Q_{max} increase of 3 to 11 ml/s, although again the time of assessment was variable after placement (13).

5.6.4 ***Tolerability and safety***

In general, stents are subject to misplacement, migration, poor tolerability because of exacerbation of LUTS, and encrustation (4). The main adverse events immediately following stent placement include perineal pain or irritative voiding symptoms in most patients.

The systematic review of the UroLume reported a 16% failure rate (104/666) within 12 months of insertion, mainly due to stent misplacement or migration (37%) or recurrent obstructive or irritative voiding symptoms (14%). The overall failure rate at 5 years was 27% (50/188 stents), although many patients were lost to follow-up or died with the stent in situ (11). In the study with the longest follow-up, 18% of the patient population (11 men) completed 12 years of follow-up with the Urolume stent in situ, whereas 29 stents were removed (failure rate, 47%) and 22 patients (34%) died of diseases non related to male LUTS.

5.6.5 ***Practical considerations***

In search for the ideal prostatic stent, a range of different stent types has been developed and undergone clinical study. Because of the side effects and high migration rate, prostatic stents have a limited role in the treatment of BPO. Prostatic stents remain an alternative to transurethral catheterisation for men who have (recurrent) urinary retention and are at high risk for surgery.

5.6.6 ***Recommendations***

	LE	GR
Prostatic stents are an alternative to catheterisation for men unfit for surgery. Stents may have a role in the temporary relief of benign prostatic obstruction after minimally invasive treatment.	3	C

Table 21: Efficacy of stents: key studies

		Symptoms		Q_{max} (mL/s)		Failure rate (follow-up in months)	LE
Stent	***n***	**Pre-operative**	**Post-operative**	**Pre-operative**	**Post-operative**		
Urolume (P) (2)	91	14.1	4.7	9.3	17.1	Overall	3
	44	R	4.6	R	13.7	15.5% (18 mos)	
Memotherm (P) (5)	123	24.0	6.1*	7.4	16.1*	4% (48 mos)	3
TITAN (P) (6)	85	15.9[a]	9.331	8.59*	11.431	Overall	3
	59	18.0	5.21	R	11.34	19% (24 mos)	
Spanner (T) (7)	30	22.3	7.1	8.2	11.6	0% (2 mos)	3
Memokath (T-P) (8)	211	20.3	8.22	NA	NA	23% (7 y)3	3
Horizon Bell-shaped (T) (9)	108	22.0	15.0	9.1	9.6	46% (3 mos)	3

Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate (free uroflowmetry); (P) = permanent stent; R = retention; (T) = temporary stent; NA = not available.
** Immediately after insertion; [a] Madsen score; 1 at 2 years; 2 at 3 months.*

5.6.7 ***References***

1. Fabian KM. [The intra-prostatic "partial catheter" (urological spiral) (author's transl)]. Urologe A 1980 Jul;19(4):236-8. [Article in German]
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7414771
2. Guazzoni G, Montorsi F, Coulange C, et al. A modified prostatic UroLume Wallstent for healthy patients with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: a European Multicenter Study. Urology 1994 Sep;44(3):364-70.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7521092
3. Corica AP, Larson BT, Sagaz A, et al. A novel temporary prostatic stent for the relief of prostatic urethral obstruction. BJU Int 2004 Feb:93(3):346-8
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764134
4. vanderbrink BA, Rastinehad AR, Badlani GH. Prostatic stents for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Curr Opin Urol 2007 Jan;17(1):1-6.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17143103
5. Gesenberg A, Sintermann R. Management of benign prostatic obstruction in high risk patients: longterm experience with the Memotherm stent. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):72-6.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628608
6. Kaplan SA, Chiou RK, Morton WJ, et al. Long-term experience utilizing a new balloon expandable prostatic endoprosthesis: the Titan stent. North American Titan Stent Study Group. Urology 1995 Feb;45(2):234-40.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7855972
7. Corica AP, Larson BT, Sagaz A, et al. A novel temporary prostatic stent for the relief of prostatic urethral obstruction. BJU Int 2004 Feb;93(3):346-8.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764134
8. Perry MJA, Roodhouse AJ, Gidlow AB, et al. Thermo-expandable intraprostatic stents in bladder outlet obstruction: an 8-year study. BJU Int 2002 Aug;90(3):216-23.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12133055
9. van Dijk MM, Mochtar CA, Wijkstra H, et al. The bell-shaped Nitinol prostatic stent in the treatment of lower urinary tract symptoms: experience in 108 patients. Eur Urol 2006 Feb;49(2):353-9.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426738
10. Kijvikai K, van Dijk M, Pes PL, et al. Clinical utility of "blind placement" prostatic stent in patients with benign prostatic obstruction: a prospective study. Urology. 2006 Nov;68(5):1025-30.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17113894
11. Armitage JN, Cathcart PJ, Rashidian A, et al. Epithelializing Stent for Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia: A Systematic Review of the Literature. J Urol 2007 May;177(5):1619-24.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437773

12. Masood S, Djaladat H, Kouriefs C, et al. The 12-year outcome analysis of an endourethral wallstent for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 2004 Dec;94(9):1271-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15610103
13. Armitage JN, Rashidian A, Cathcart PJ, et al. The thermo-expandable metallic stent for managing benign prostatic hyperplasia: a systematic review. BJU Int 2006 Oct;98(4):806-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16879446

5.7 Emerging operations

5.7.1 ***Intra-prostatic ethanol injections***

5.7.1.1 Mechanism of action

Absolute (dehydrated, 95-98%) ethanol is injected into the prostatic parenchyma for the treatment of LUTS secondary to BPO. The precise mechanism of action in both humans and animals remains unclear. The use of ethanol was investigated in the canine model and demonstrated the ability of ethanol to cause inflammation, coagulative necrosis with protein denaturation and cell membrane lysis, and, finally, atrophy and ablation of prostatic tissue resulting in cavity formation (1-4). Tissue necrosis was typically wedge-shaped (4). The volume of injected ethanol correlated only moderately with the size of tissue necrosis (4). Intra-prostatic cavity formation appeared in the canine model after 7 days (3).

5.7.1.2 Operative procedure

Liquid dehydrated ethanol or ethanol gel is injected into the prostatic parenchyma with a 20-22 gauge needle either transurethrally, transperineally, or transrectally. The transurethral approach (TEAP or TUEIP) has been used more frequently (5-14) than the transperineal (11,15,16) or transrectal approaches (11).

Specific devices have been developed for the transurethral delivery of ethanol (InecTx™ in the USA and Prostaject™ in Europe) (17). There is no consensus on the number of injection sites or injection volumes, which depend on total prostate volume, urethral length and/or presence of a prostate median lobe, and have ranged from 2 mL to 25 mL of ethanol per patient in different studies (with the injection volume being up to 42% of the volume of the prostate).

Local anaesthesia supplemented by conscious sedation may be considered, although regional or general anaesthesia were chosen by most patients. The procedure is usually completed within approximately 30 minutes. The majority of patients need an indwelling catheter after the procedure.

5.7.1.3 Efficacy

So far, 12 trials (5-16) have been published (Table 22), with the majority having investigated men refractory to medical treatment. Only one trial investigated patients with urinary retention (10). None of these trials was randomised against TURP or other minimally invasive procedures for BPH-LUTS or BPO. Mean follow-up varied among studies from 12 to 208 weeks (3-48 months).

The majority of trials demonstrated a significant reduction in symptoms (IPSS -41% to -71%) and PVR (-6% to -99%) as well as a significant improvement in the maximum urinary flow rate (Qmax +35% to +155%) and QoL (IPSS-QoL -47% to -60%). Prostate volume decreased significantly in approximately half the trials (-4% to -45%). After an initial strong reduction in prostate volume, 1-2 years post-operatively prostate size increased again, although LUTS and peak urinary flow remained significantly improved (8). No predictive efficacy parameter or dose-response relationship has been found (9,12).

Several trials demonstrated a considerable number of retreatments within the first year after the procedure (usually treated by a second ethanol injection, TURP, or open prostatectomy). Little is known about the durability of clinical effects later than 1 year after the operation; one trial with a mean follow-up of 3 years showed a retreatment rate of 41% (8).

Table 22: Results of intra-prostatic ethanol injections for treating BPH-LUTS or BPO in men refractory to medical treatment or in urinary retention

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Patients (n)	Change in symptoms (IPSS)		Change in Q_{max}		Change in PVR		Change in prostate volume		Level of evidence
			Absolute	%	mL/s	%	mL	%	mL	%	
Goya *et al.* 1999 (5)	12	10	-10.9[a]	-47	+5.1[a]	+64	-79.8[a]	-62	-2.1	-4	3
Savoca *et al.* 2001 (15)	24	8	-11[a]	-52	+5[a]	+46	-103[a]	-79	n/a	n/a	3
Ditrolio *et al.* 2002 (6)	52	15	-1 6.5	-74	+6.2	+109	n/a	n/a	-21.6	-45	3
Plante *et al.* 2002 (7)	52	5	-9.6[a]	-41	+3.2	+32	-7.6	-6.4	-15.8[a]	-30	2b
Chiang *et al.* 2003 (16)	12 (24)	11	-9.2[a]	-52	+8.2[a]	+155	-203.2[a]	-88	-2.2	-5	3
Goya *et al.* 2004 (8)	156	34	-8.7[a]	-40	+4.4[a]	+65	-65[a]	-70	+2.1	+4	3
Grise *et al.* 2004 (9)	52	115 (94)	-10.3[a]	-50	+3.5[a]	+35	n/a	n/a	-7.4[a]	-16	2b
Mutaguchi *et al.* 2006 (10)†	64	16	Spontaneous voiding in 87.5% Mean PVR 60 mL						-19.7[a]	-34	3
Larson *et al.* 2006 (11)	52	65	-9.4[a]	-44	+2.8[a]	+33	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	3
Plante *et al.* 2007 (12)*	24	79	-10.6 to -13.4[a]	-47 to -55	+3.2 to +8.1[a]	+37 to +94	-1.2 to -27.3[a]	-1 to -26	-5.6 to -11.2[a]	-13 to -25	2b
Magno *et al.* 2008 (13)	52	36	-13.3[a]	-47	+9.2[a]	+154	-286.4[a]	-99	-12.7	-19	3
Sakr *et al.* 2009 (14)	208	35	-12.1[a]	-55	+11[a]	+186	-32.6[a]	-47	-2.8[a]	-5	3

*Absolute and relative changes compared with baseline are listed with regard to symptoms (IPSS), maximum urinary flow rate (Qmax), post-void residual urine (PVR), and prostate volume. [a] = significant compared with baseline (indexed whenever evaluated); † = patients with urinary retention; * = three study arms comparing transurethral, transrectal and transperineal injections.*

5.7.1.4 Tolerability and safety

Frequently reported adverse events included:

- perineal or abdominal discomfort/pain;
- bladder storage symptoms (≤ 40%);
- haematuria (≤ 40%);
- urinary tract infection or epididymitis;
- urinary retention.

Less frequently reported (< 5%) adverse events included:

- decreased libido;
- retrograde ejaculation;
- urgency urinary incontinence;
- urethral stenosis;
- erectile dysfunction.

Animal studies revealed a high percentage of urethral sphincter damage and stress urinary incontinence when ethanol was injected via the perineal route (1), but these complications have not been reported in humans (15,16). One man developed a big bladder stone six months after treatment, most probably due to calcification of sloshed necrotic prostatic masses (18). Two cases of severe complications after ethanol injections have been reported; bladder necrosis required cystectomy and urinary diversion (9).

5.7.1.5 Practical considerations

Intra-prostatic ethanol injections are considered to be a minimally invasive treatment option for patients with LUTS secondary to BPO. However, the mechanism of action, patient selection and application of ethanol (the number of injection sites and the injection volume) have not been well investigated, severe adverse events occurred in some patients, and long-term results are sparse. Intra-prostatic ethanol injections are therefore still regarded as experimental and should be used only in trials.

Randomised-controlled trials with long-term follow-up comparing ethanol injections with TURP, other minimally invasive procedures, or drugs are needed to be able to judge adequately the value of this treatment modality.

5.7.1.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Intra-prostatic ethanol injections for LUTS due to BPO are still experimental.	3	
Intra-prostatic ethanol injections should be performed only in clinical trials.		C

LUTS = lower urinary tract symptoms; BPO = benign prostatic obstruction.

5.7.1.7 References

1. Littrup PJ, Lee F, Borlaza GS , et al. Percutaneous ablation of canine prostate using transrectal ultrasound guidance. Absolute ethanol and Nd:YAG laser. Invest Radiol 1988 Oct;23(10):734-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3056869
2. Levy DA, Cromeens DM, Evans R, et al. Transrectal ultrasound-guided intraprostatic injection of absolute ethanol with and without carmustine: a feasibility study in the canine model. Urology 1999 Jun;53(6):1245-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367863
3. Zvara P, Karpman E, Stoppacher R, et al. Ablation of canine prostate using transurethral intraprostatic absolute ethanol injection. Urology 1999 Sep;54(3):411-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10475344
4. Plante MK, Gross AL, Kliment J, et al. Intraprostatic ethanol chemoablation via transurethral and transperineal injection. BJU Int 2003 Jan;91(1):94-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12614259
5. Goya N, Ishikawa N, Ito F, et al. Ethanol injection therapy of the prostate for benign prostatic hyperplasia: preliminary report on application of a new technique. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):383-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411043
6. Ditrolio J, Patel P, Watson RA, et al. Chemo-ablation of the prostate with dehydrated alcohol for the treatment of prostatic obstruction. J Urol 2002 May;167(5):2100-3. (Level 3) http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956449
7. Plante MK, Bunnell ML, Trotter SJ, et al. Transurethral prostatic tissue ablation via a single needle delivery system: initial experience with radio-frequency energy and ethanol. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2002;5(3):183-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496979
8. Goya N, Ishikawa N, Ito F, et al. Transurethral ethanol injection therapy for prostatic hyperplasia: 3-year results. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1017-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311027
9. Grise P, Plante M, Palmer J, et al. Evaluation of the transurethral ethanol ablation of the prostate (TEAP) for symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH): a European multi-center evaluation. Eur Urol 2004 Oct;46(4):496-501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15363567
10. Mutaguchi K, Matsubara A, Kajiwara M, et al. Transurethral ethanol injection for prostatic obstruction: an excellent treatment strategy for persistent urinary retention. Urology 2006;68:307-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904442
11. Larson BT, Netto N, Huidobro C, et al. Intraprostatic injection of alcohol gel for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: preliminary clinical results. ScientificWorldJournal 2006 Sep;6:2474-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17619720
12. Plante MK, Marks LS, Anderson R, et al. Phase I/II examination of transurethral ethanol ablation of the prostate for the treatment of symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3): 1030-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296405

13. Magno C, Mucciardi G, Galì A, et al. Transurethral ethanol ablation of the prostate (TEAP): an effective minimally invasive treatment alternative to traditional surgery for symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) in high-risk comorbidity patients. Int Urol Nephrol 2008;40(4):941-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18478352
14. Sakr M, Eid A, Shoukry M, et al. Transurethral ethanol injection therapy of benign prostatic hyperplasia: four-year follow-up. Int J Urol 2009 Feb;16(2):196-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19054163
15. Savoca G, De Stefani S, Gattuccio I, et al. Percutaneous ethanol injection of the prostate as minimally invasive treatment for benign prostatic hyperplasia: preliminary report. Eur Urol 2001 Nov;40(5):504-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752856
16. Chiang PH, Chuang YC, Huang CC, et al. Pilot study of transperineal injection of dehydrated ethanol in the treatment of prostatic obstruction. Urology 2003 Apr;61(4):797-801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12670568
17. Ditrolio J, Patel P, Watson RA, et al. An endoscopic injection device: a potential advance in the transurethral treatment of benign prostatic obstruction. BJU Int 2003 Jul;92(1):143-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12823400
18. Ikari O, Leitao VA, D'Ancona CA, et al. Intravesical calculus secondary to ethanol gel injection into the prostate. Urology 2005 May;65(5):1002.e24-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15882750

*5.7.2 **Intra-prostatic botulinum toxin injections***

5.7.2.1 Mechanism of action

BTX is the exotoxin of the bacterium *Clostridium botulinum*. This 150 kDa toxin is the most potent neurotoxin known in humans, and causes botulism (food-borne, wound or infant). Seven subtypes of BTX are known (types A-G), of which subtypes A and B have been manufactured for use in humans.

Experience with intra-prostatic injections for the treatment of LUTS/BPO exists only for BTX-A. The precise mechanism of action has been evaluated in experimental animals but is not fully understood. BTX-A blocks the release of neurotransmitters (e.g. acetylcholine or norepinephrine) from pre-synaptic nerves (1). BTX-A directly or indirectly reduces LUTS by induction of apoptoses of prostatic (epithelial) cells leading to tissue atrophy and prostate size reduction (2-4), inhibition of sensory neurons in the prostate and reduction of afferent signals to the central nervous system (3), and/or relaxation of smooth muscle cells in the prostatic parenchyma and reduction of BPO (4-6). Down-regulation of 1A adrenergic receptors in the prostate may contribute to smooth muscle cell relaxation (3). The latter two mechanisms are summarised as chemical denervation that possibly has a negative influence on prostate growth.

5.7.2.2 Operative procedure

Under ultrasound visualisation, BTX-A can be injected into the prostatic parenchyma transperineally, transurethrally or transrectally, using a 21-23 gauge needle. The transperineal approach has been described most frequently (7-13); the transurethral (5) and transrectal routes (14,15) have also been used but applied less often. Botox™ (Allergan, Irving, CA, USA) was employed in all but one study (13).

Different therapeutic doses (100-300 units Botox™ or 300-600 units Dysport™) and dilutions (25-50 units Botox™/mL or 75 units Dysport™/mL) were used in various studies, but doses and dilutions have not been systematically tested. Doses of 100 units Botox™ have been suggested for prostate sizes < 30 mL, 200 units for sizes between 30 mL and 60 mL, and 300 units for sizes > 60 mL (9). For Dysport™, 300 units were used for prostate sizes < 30 mL, and 600 units for sizes > 30 mL were used (13). The majority of patients were treated without anaesthesia, local anaesthesia, or sedation.

5.7.2.3 Efficacy

So far, 11 trials have been published (Table 23 investigating intra-prostatic BTX-A injections in patients with BPH-LUTS who required or were resistant to medical therapy, or patients with an indwelling urethral catheter due to acute or chronic urinary retention (5,14,15). Only two trials were randomised, one against injection of saline solution (7), the other against α_1-blocker therapy (12).

The majority of patients in the published trials received only a single injection of BTX-A and mean follow-up ranged between 12 and 120 weeks (3 to 30 months). All trials reported significant improvements with regard to symptoms (IPSS -39% to -79%) and urinary flow rate (Q_{max} +27% to +122%), or a decrease of prostate volume (-11% to -61%). Post-void residual urine decreased in all studies, but reduction was significant in only approximately half of the trials. BTX-A injection therapy was significantly superior to saline injection in the randomised-controlled trial with regard to symptom and Q_{max} improvement as well as PVR and prostate volume reduction; all parameters were significantly different compared with baseline or saline solution within the first treatment month (7).

In patients with urinary retention before BTX-A injections, 80-100% of men could void spontaneously within one month of the operation, and maintained voiding throughout the follow-up period.

Little is known about the long-term effects and durability of the treatment; prostate volume seems to increase again after 6-12 months (11,14) despite stable improvements in symptoms, Q_{max} and PVR. Retreatment rates with BTX-A were as high as 29% (11).

Table 23: Results of intra-prostatic botulinum toxin (Botox™) injections for treating LUTS/BPH, BPO or urinary retention

Trials	Duration (weeks)	Patients (n)	Change in symptoms (IPSS)		Change in Q_{max}		Change in PVR		Change in prostate volume		Level of evidence
			Absolute	%	mL/s	%	mL	%	mL	%	
Maria *et al.* 2003 (7)*	52	30	-14.4[a,b]	-62	+6.9[a,b]	+85	-102[a,b]	-81	-32[a,b]	-61	1b
Chuang *et al.* 2005 (8)*	40	16	-9.8[a]	-52	+5.3[a]	+73	-41	-60	-3[a]	-16	3
Kuo 2005 (5)†	24	10	Spontaneous voiding in 100% of patients		+4.0[a]	+53	-206[a]	-85	-17[a]	-24	3
Chuang *et al.* 2006 (9)*	52	41	-11[a]	-57	+4.1[a]	+59	-68	-42	-7[a]	-13	3
Park *et al.* 2006 (10)*	24	23	-9.3[a]	-39	+2.0[a]	+28	-49[a]	-45	-7[a]	-14	3
Chuang *et al.* 2006 (4)	12	8	-15[a]	-79	+6.5[a]	+73	-155.5	-88	-12.1[a]	-20	3
Silva *et al.* 2008 (14)†*	12 (24)	21 (10)	Spontaneous voiding in 80% of patient		+11.4	n/a	Mean PVR 66 mL		-20[a]	-29	3
Brisinda *et al.* 2009 (11)*	120	77	-13[a]	-54	+5.9[a]	+69	-65[a]	-71	-27.2[a]	-50	3
Kuo and Liu 2009 (12)*	52	30	-7.1[a]	-46	+2.3[a]	+27	+21	+23	-13[a]	-14	1b
Silva *et al.* 2009 (15)†*	72	11	Spontaneous voiding in 100% of patients		+10.5	n/a	Mean PVR 58 mL		-9.2[a]	-11	3
Nikoobakht *et al.* 2010 (13)‡	52	72	-11.3[a]	-57	+7.7[a]	+122	-34[a]	-68	n/a		3

*Absolute and relative changes compared with baseline are listed with regard to symptoms (IPSS), maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max}), post-void residual urine (PVR), and prostate volume. a = significant compared with baseline (indexed whenever evaluated); b = significant compared with placebo (saline solution) or α1-blockers; † = patients with acute or chronic urinary retention; * = Botox™; ‡ = Dysport™.*

5.7.2.4 Tolerability and safety

BTX-A injections were well tolerated in all studies, and no systemic adverse events have yet been reported to have arisen from BTX-A. There was no need for post-operative analgesia.

Adverse events were dysuria in ≤ 19%, haematuria in ≤ 14%, and acute prostatitis in one patient (2%). Urinary retention occurred in ≤ 6%, but many patients received a transurethral catheter or performed clean intermittent catheterisation during the early post-operative period (one week to one month) (8,14).

5.7.2.5 Practical considerations

BTX-A injections into the prostatic parenchyma seem to be a promising and quick minimally invasive treatment modality with low morbidity for patients who are refractory to medical treatment or in urinary retention. However, despite the excellent and homogeneous outcomes in published trials, BTX-A has been injected into only a few patients, and all trials have a limited follow-up. Only two randomised-controlled trials have been published so far. Trials with a larger number of patients, randomisation against saline injections, drugs, TURP, or other minimally invasive treatments, and long-term follow-up are therefore necessary to judge adequately

the value of intra-prostatic BTX-A injections in the context of other available medical or surgical treatments of LUTS/BPO.

5.7.2.6 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Intra-prostatic botulinum toxin injections for lower urinary tract symptoms due to benign prostatic obstruction or urinary retention are still experimental.	3	
Intra-prostatic botulinum toxin injections should be performed only in clinical trials.		C

5.7.2.7 References

1. Smith CP, Franks ME, McNeil BK et al. Effect of botulinum toxin A on the autonomic nervous system of the rat lower urinary tract. J Urol 2003 May;169(5):1896-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686869
2. Doggweiler R, Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, et al. Botox-induced prostatic involution. Prostate 1998 Sep;37(1):44-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9721068
3. Chuang YC, Huang CC, Kang HY, et al. Novel action of botulinum toxin on the stromal and epithelial components of the prostate gland. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3 Pt 1):1158-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469644
4. Chuang YC, Tu CH, Huang CC, et al. Intraprostatic injection of botulinum toxin type-A relieves bladder outlet obstruction in human and induces prostate apoptosis in dogs. BMC Urology 2006 Apr;6:12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16620393
5. Kuo HC. Prostate botulinum A toxin injection – an alternative treatment for benign prostatic obstruction in poor surgical candidates. Urology 2005 Apr;65(4):670-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15833506
6. Lin AT, Yang AH, Chen KK. Effects of botulinum toxin A on the contractile function of dog prostate. Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):582-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17386969
7. Maria G, Brisinda G, Civello IM, et al. Relief by botulinum toxin of voiding dysfunction due to benign prostatic hyperplasia: results of a randomised, placebo-controlled study. Urology 2003 Aug;62(2): 259-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12893330
8. Chuang YC, Chiang PH, Huang CC, et al. Botulinum toxin type A improves benign prostatic hyperplasia symptoms in patients with small prostates. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):775-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230137
9. Chuang YC, Chiang PH, Yoshimura N, et al. Sustained beneficial effects of intraprostatic botulinum toxin type A on lower urinary tract symptoms and quality of life in men with benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 2006 Nov;98(5):1033-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16956361
10. Park DS, Cho TW, Lee YK, et al. Evaluation of short term clinical effects and presumptive mechanism of botulinum toxin type A as a treatment modality of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Yonsei Med J 2006 Oct;47(5):706-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17066515
11. Brisinda G, Cadeddu F, Vanella S, et al. Relief by botulinum toxin of lower urinary tract symptoms owing to benign prostatic hyperplasia: earl and long-term results. Urology 2009 Jan;73(1):90-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18995889
12. Kuo HC, Liu HT. Therapeutic effects of add-on botulinum toxin A on patients with large benign prostatic hyperplasia and unsatisfactory response to combined medical therapy. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2009;43(3):206-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19308807
13. Nikoobakht M, Daneshpajooh A, Ahmadi H, et al. Intraprostatic botulinum toxin type A injection for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: initial experience with Dysport. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Apr;44(3):151-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201752

14. Silva J, Silva C, Saraiva L, et al. Intraprostatic botulinum toxin type A injection in patients unfit for surgery presenting with refractory urinary retention and benign prostatic enlargement. Effect on prostate volume and micturition resumption. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):153-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17825981
15. Silva J, Pinto R, Carvalho T, et al. Intraprostatic botulinum toxin type A injection in patients with benign prostatic enlargement: duration of the effect of a single treatment. BMC Urology 2009 Aug:9:9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19682392

5.8 Summary treatment

The choice of treatment depends on:

- findings assessed during evaluation;
- treatment preferences of the individual patient;
- ability of the treatment modality to change assessed findings;
- expectations to be met in terms of speed of onset, efficacy, side-effects, quality of life, and disease progression.

Table 24 provides differential information about conservative, medical and surgical treatment options described in the EAU Guidelines on Male LUTS, including BPO. Note that treatment modalities may be combined leading to different effects.

Table 24: Speed of onset and influence on basic parameters with conservative or surgical treatment modalities for the management of non-neurogenic male LUTS. Note that the drug treatment studies have typically used data after a run-in phase as baseline, whereas those of interventional treatments did not.

Treatment	Onset	LUTS	Uroflowmetry (Q_{max})	Prostate size	PVR	Disease progression
Conservative treatments						
Watchful waiting, behavioural treatment	months	+	+	-	-	?
α-adrenoceptor antagonists	days	++	++	-	- / +	+++ (symptoms)
5α-reductase inhibitors	months	+	++	+ - ++	-	+++ (retention)
Muscarinic receptor antagonists	weeks	++ (storage symptoms)	-	-	+ (increase)	?
Plant extracts	weeks	+	- / +	-	-	+
α-adrenoceptor antagonists + 5α-reductase inhibitors	days	++	++	+ -++	- / +	+++ (symptoms + retention)
α-adrenoceptor antagonists + muscarinic receptor antagonists	days	++	++	-	- / +	?
PDE5-inhibitors	weeks	++	-	-	-	?
Surgical treatments	After catheter removal					
TURP–TUIP	hours	++++	++++	+++	++++	++++
Open prostatectomy	hours	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++
TUMT	weeks	+++	+++	++	++	+++
TUNA	weeks	+++	+++	++	+	++
HoLEP	hours	++++	++++	++++	++++	++++
KTP	days	+++	+++	++	++	+++
Prostate stents	hours	++	++	-	+++	?
Ethanol injections prostate	weeks	++	++	+	+	?
Botulinum toxin injections prostate	weeks	++	+++	+	+	?

LUTS = Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms; Q_{max} = maximum urinary flow rate; PVR = post-void residual urine

Key to Table:

-	no influence
+	mild influence
++	moderate influence
+++	strong influence
++++	very strong influence
?	unknown

Behavioural with or without medical treatments are usually the first choice of therapy. A flowchart illustrating conservative and medical treatment choices according to evidence-based medicine and patients' profiles is provided in Figure 3.

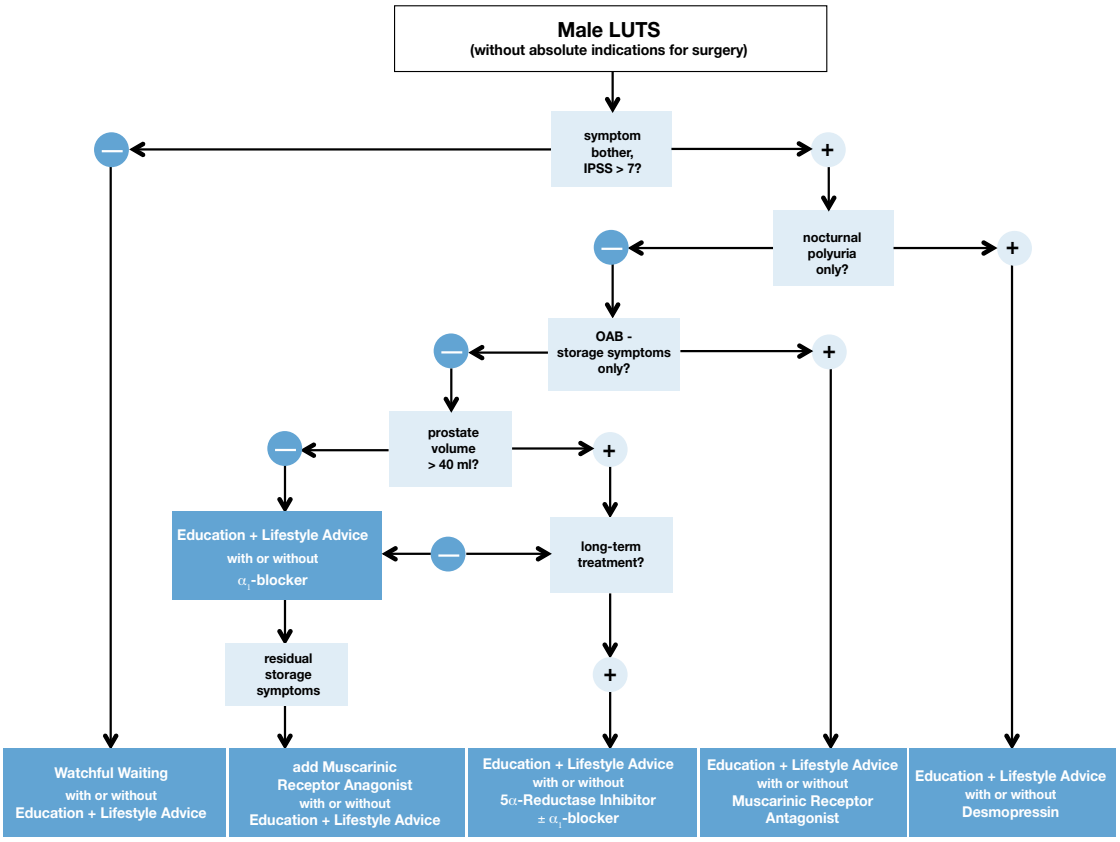


Figure 3: Treatment algorithm of male lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) using medical and/or conservative treatment options. Treatment decisions depend on results assessed during initial evaluation (◊). Minus (–) indicate the absence and plus (+) the presence of the condition.

Surgical treatment is usually required when patients have experienced recurrent or refractory urinary retention, overflow incontinence, recurrent urinary tract infections, bladder stones or diverticula, treatment-resistant macroscopic hematuria due to BPH/BPE, or dilatation of the upper urinary tract due to BPO, with or without renal insufficiency (absolute operation indications, need for surgery). Additionally, surgery is usually needed when patients have had insufficient relief in LUTS or PVR after conservative or medical treatments (relative operation indications). The choice of the surgical technique depends primarily on prostate size, co-morbidities of the patient, and the ability to have anaesthesia but also on patients' preferences, willingness to accept surgery-associated side effects, availability of the surgical armamentarium, and experience of the surgeon with these operation techniques. A flowchart illustrating surgical treatment choices according to evidence-based medicine and patients' profiles is provided in Figure 4.

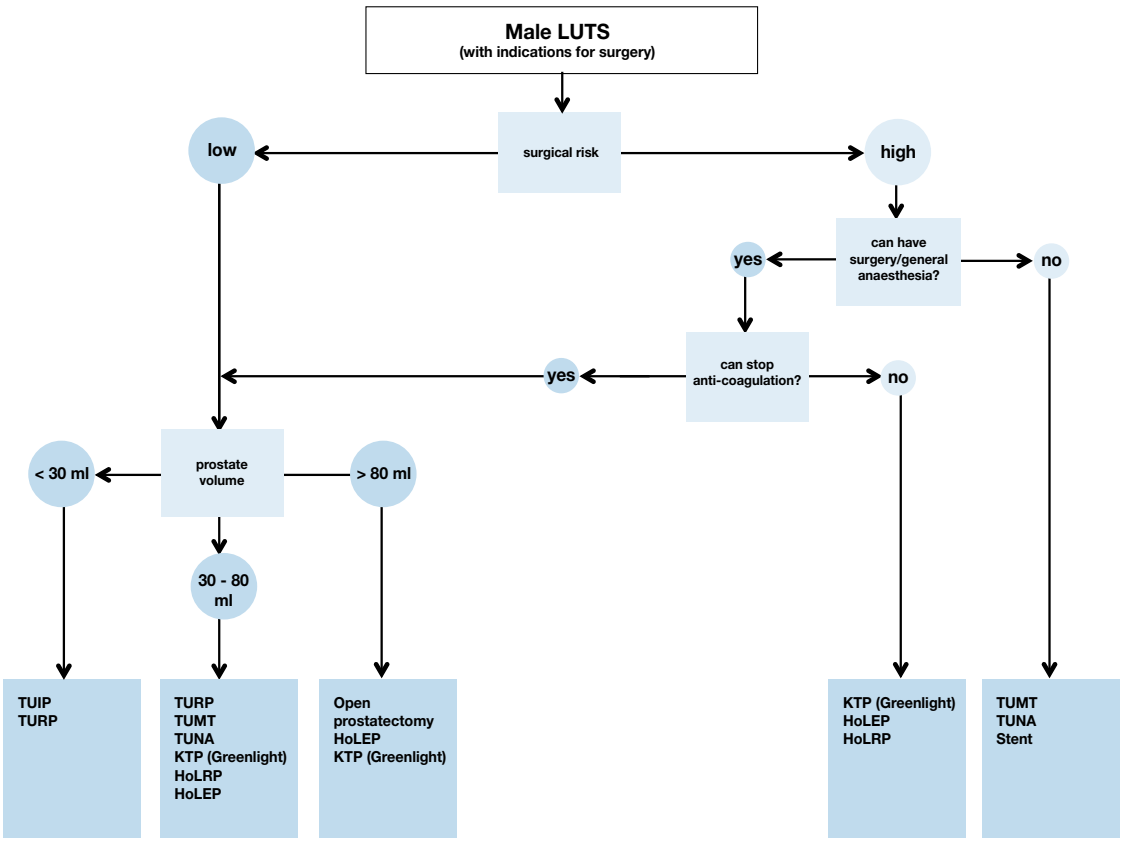


Figure 4: Treatment algorithm of bothersome lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) refractory to conservative/medical treatment or in cases of absolute operation indications. Note that this flowchart has been stratified by the patient's ability to have anaesthesia, cardiovascular risk, and prostate size; however, the choice of the surgical techniques also depends on patients' preferences, willingness to accept surgery-associated side effects, availability of the armamentarium, and surgeon's experience with the operation technique.

HoLEP = Holmium Laser Enucleation of the Prostate; HoLRP = Holmium Laser Resection of the Prostate; KTP = K^+-titanyl-phosphate laser ("greenlight"); TUIP = Transurethral Incision of the Prostate; TUMT = Transurethral Microwave Therapy; TUNA = Transurethral Needle Ablation of the prostate; TURP = Transurethral Resection of the Prostate.

6. FOLLOW-UP

6.1 Watchful waiting – behavioural

Patients who elect to pursue a WW policy should be reviewed at 6 months and then annually, provided there is no deterioration of symptoms or development of absolute indications for surgical treatment. The following are recommended at follow-up visits:

- I-PSS
- Uroflowmetry and post-void residual urine volume.

6.2 Medical treatment

Patients receiving α-blockers, muscarinic receptor antagonists, or the combination of α-blockers with 5α-reductase inhibitors or muscarinic receptor antagonists should be reviewed 4 to 6 weeks after drug initiation in order to determine treatment response. If patients gain symptomatic relief in the absence of troublesome adverse events, drug therapy may be continued.

Patients should be reviewed at 6 months and then annually, provided there is no deterioration of symptoms or development of absolute indications for surgical treatment. The following tests are recommended at follow-up visits:

- I-PSS;
- Uroflowmetry and post-void residual urine volume.

Patients receiving 5α-reductase inhibitors should be reviewed after 12 weeks and 6 months to determine their response and adverse events. Follow-up visits are similar to the above mentioned drugs. The following are recommended at follow-up visits:

- I-PSS;
- Uroflowmetry and post-void residual urine volume.

Patients receiving desmopressin, serum sodium concentration should be measured at day 3 and 7 as well as after 1 month and, if serum sodium concentration has remained normal, every 3 months subsequently. The following tests are recommended at follow-up visits:

- Serum-sodium concentration;
- Frequency-volume chart.

After dose adjustment, follow-up should be repeated likewise.

6.3 Surgical treatment

Patients after prostate surgery should be reviewed 4 to 6 weeks after catheter removal in order to evaluate treatment response and adverse events. If patients have symptomatic relief and are without adverse events no further re-assessment is necessary. The following tests are recommended at follow-up visit after 4 to 6 weeks:

- I-PSS;
- Uroflowmetry and post-void residual urine volume.

6.4 Recommendations

	LE	GR
Follow-up for all conservative or operative treatment modalities is based on empirical data or theoretical considerations but not on evidence based studies.	3-4	C

7. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

AVP	arginine vasopressin
BOO(I)	bladder outlet obstruction (index)
BPE	benign prostatic enlargement
BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia
BPO	benign prostatic obstruction
cGMP	cyclic guanosine monophosphate
CombAT	combination of avodart® and tamsulosin
DHT	dihydrotestosterone
EBM	evidence-based medicine
eNOS	endothelial
ER	extended release
GITS	gastrointestinal therapeutic system
IFIS	intra-operative floppy iris syndrome
IPSS	international prostate symptom score
IR	immediate release
LUTS	lower urinary tract symptoms
MR	modified release
MTOPS	medical therapy of prostatic symptoms
NAION	non-arteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy
NO	Nitric oxide
NOS	NO synthases
nNOS	neuronal
n.s.	not significant
OCAS	oral controlled absorption system
PDE	phosphodiesterase
PSA	prostate specific antigen
PVR	post-void residual urine
Qmax	maximum urinary flow rate during free uroflowmetry
QoL	quality of life
RR	relative risk
SHBG	sexual hormone binding globulin
SR	sustained release
tmax	time to maximum plasma concentration
t½	elimination half-life
TUIP	transuretrual incision of the prostate
TUMT	transretrual microwave therapy
TUNA™	transuretrual needle ablasion
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
WW	watchful waiting

Conflict of interest

All members of the Male LUTS working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Male Sexual Dysfunction:

Erectile dysfunction and premature ejaculation

E. Wespes, E. Amar, I. Eardley, F. Giuliano, D. Hatzichristou, K. Hatzimouratidis, F. Montorsi, Y. Vardi

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. BACKGROUND

1.1 Introduction

Erectile dysfunction (ED, impotence) and premature ejaculation (PE) are the two main complaints in male sexual medicine. New oral therapies have completely changed the diagnostic and therapeutic approach to ED and the Guidelines Office of The European Association of Urology (EAU) has appointed an Expert Panel to update previously published EAU guidelines for ED or impotence (1).

The update is based on a review of available scientific information, current research, and clinical practice in the field (1,2). The Expert Panel has also identified critical problems and knowledge gaps, setting priorities for future clinical research.

Level of evidence (LE) and grade of recommendation (GR) have been included in these guidelines when possible. The aim of this practice is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation made (3).

1.2 References

1. Wespes E, Amar E, Hatzichristou DG, et al. European Association of Urology Guidelines on erectile dysfunction. Eur Urol 2002 Jan;41(1):1-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11999460
2. Rosenberg MT, Sadovsky R. Identification and diagnosis of premature ejaculation. Int J Clin Pract 2007 Jun;61(6):903-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17504352
3. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]

2. DIAGNOSIS

2.1 Epidemiology and risk factors

Erection is a neurovascular phenomenon under hormonal control. It includes arterial dilatation, trabecular smooth muscle relaxation, and activation of the corporeal veno-occlusive mechanism (1).

Erectile dysfunction has been defined as the persistent inability to attain and maintain an erection sufficient to permit satisfactory sexual performance. Although ED is a benign disorder, it affects physical and psychosocial health and has a significant impact on the quality of life (QoL) of sufferers and their partners and families (2).

*2.1.1 **Epidemiology***

Recent epidemiological data have shown a high prevalence and incidence of ED worldwide. The first large-scale, community-based study of ED was the Massachusetts Male Aging Study (MMAS). The study reported an overall prevalence of 52% ED in non-institutionalised 40- to 70-year-old men in the Boston area in the USA (3); specific prevalences for minimal, moderate, and complete ED were 17.2%, 25.2%, and 9.6%, respectively. In the Cologne study of men aged 30-80 years old, the prevalence of ED was 19.2%, with a steep age-related increase from 2.3% to 53.4% (4). In the National Health and Social Life Survey (NHSLS), the prevalence of sexual dysfunctions (not specific ED) was 31% (5). The incidence rate of ED (new cases per 1,000 men annually) was 26 in the MMAS study (6), 65.6 (mean follow-up of 2 years) in a Brazilian study (7), and 19.2 (mean follow-up of 4.2 years) in a Dutch study (8). Differences between these studies can be explained by differences in methodology and in the ages and socio-economic status of the populations studied.

*2.1.2 **Risk factors***

Erectile dysfunction shares common risk factors with cardiovascular disease (e.g. lack of exercise, obesity, smoking, hypercholesterolaemia, metabolic syndrome), some of which can be modified. In the MMAS, men who began exercising in midlife had a 70% reduced risk for ED compared to sedentary men and a significantly lower incidence of ED over an 8-year follow-up period of regular exercise (9). A multicentre, randomised, open-label study in obese men with moderate ED compared 2 years of intensive exercise and weight loss with a control group given general information about healthy food choices and exercise (10). Significant improvements in body mass index (BMI) and physical activity scores, as well as in erectile function, were observed in the lifestyle intervention group. These changes were highly correlated with both weight loss and activity levels.

However, it should be emphasised that controlled prospective studies are necessary to determine the effects of exercise or other lifestyle changes in prevention or treatment of ED.

*2.1.3 **Post-radical prostatectomy erectile dysfunction (ED)***

Radical prostatectomy (RP) in any form (open, laparoscopic, or robotic) is a widely performed procedure for patients with clinically localised prostate cancer (PCa) and a life expectancy of at least 10 years. This procedure may lead to treatment-specific sequelae affecting health-related QoL. This outcome has become increasingly important with the more frequent diagnosis of PCa in younger patients (11-13). Research has shown that about 25-75% of men experience post-operative ED (14).

Post-RP ED is multifactorial. Cavernosal nerve injury induces pro-apoptotic (loss of smooth muscle) and pro-fibrotic (increase in collagen) factors within the corpora cavernosa. These changes may also be caused by poor oxygenation due to changes in the blood supply to the cavernosa.

Because pre-operative potency is a major factor associated with the recovery of erectile function after surgery, patients being considered for a nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy (NSRP) should ideally be potent (15). It is also clear that cavernosal nerves must be preserved to ensure erectile function recovers after RP. In addition, the role of vascular insufficiency is of increasing interest in post-operative ED (16,17).

2.2 Managing ED: implications for everyday clinical practice

Advances in basic and clinical research in ED during the past 15 years have led to the development of several new treatment options for ED, including new pharmacological agents for intracavernous, intraurethral, and, more recently, oral use (18-20). Treatment strategies have also changed following the poor outcomes seen in long-term follow-up of reconstructive vascular surgery (21,22).

An increasing number of men are seeking help for ED due to the great media interest in ED and the availability of effective and safe oral drug therapy. However, there are many physicians evaluating and treating ED without appropriate background knowledge and clinical experience. Thus, some men with ED may receive little or no evaluation before treatment and will therefore not receive treatment for any underlying disease that may be causing their ED. Other men without ED may be requesting treatment simply to enhance their sexual performance. Given this situation, these EAU guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of ED are a necessity.

2.3 Conclusions on epidemiology and risk factors

Conclusions	LE
Erection is a neurovascular phenomenon under hormonal control in a physiologenic environment.	2b
ED is common worldwide.	3
ED shares several risk factors with cardiovascular disease.	3
Lifestyle modification (intensive exercise and a decrease in body mass index) can improve erectile function.	1b
ED is a symptom, not a disease. Some men may not be properly evaluated or receive treatment for an underlying disease or condition that may be causing ED.	4
Radical prostatectomy is a common cause of ED.	3

ED = erectile dysfunction.

2.4 References

1. Lue TF, Tanagho EA. Physiology of erection and pharmacological management of impotence. J Urol 1987 May;137(5):829-36. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3553617
2. Feldman HA, Goldstein I, Hatzichristou DG, et al. Impotence and its medical and psychosocial correlates: results of the Massachusetts Male Aging Study. J Urol 1994 Jan;151(1):54-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254833
3. Wespes E. [Ejaculation and its disorders.] Encyclopédie Médico-chirurgicale, Nephrologie-Urologie, 18-710-A-10, Paris, 1992. [Article in French]
4. Braun M, Wassmer G, Klotz T, et al. Epidemiology of erectile dysfunction: results of the 'Cologne Male Survey'. Int J Impot Res 2000 Dec;12(6):305-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11416833
5. Laumann EO, Paik A, Rosen RC. Sexual dysfunction in the United States: prevalence and predictors. JAMA 1999 Feb;281(6):537-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022110

6. Johannes CB, Araujo AB, Feldman HA, et al. Incidence of erectile dysfunction in men 40 to 69 years old: longitudinal results from the Massachusetts Male Aging Study. J Urol 2000 Feb;163(2):460-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647654
7. Moreira ED Jr, Lbo CF, Diament A, et al. Incidence of erectile dysfunction in men 40 to 69 years old: results from a population-based cohort study in Brazil. Urology 2003 Feb;61(2):431-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12597962
8. Schouten BW, Bosch JL, Bernsen RM, et al. Incidence rates of erectile dysfunction in the Dutch general population. Effects of definition, clinical relevance and duration of follow-up in the Krimpen Study. Int J Impot Res 2005 Jan-Feb;17(1):58-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15510192
9. Derby CA, Mohr BA, Goldstein I, et al. Modifiable risk factors and erectile dysfunction: can lifestyle changes modify risk? Urology 2000 Aug;56(2):302-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10925098
10. Esposito K, Giugliano F, Di Palo C, et al. Effect of lifestyle changes on erectile dysfunction in obese men: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2004 Jun;291(24):2978-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15213209
11. Cooperberg MR, Broering JM, Litwin MS, et al. The contemporary management of prostate cancer in the United States: lessons from the cancer of the Prostate Strategic Urologic Research Endeavor (CaPSURE), a national disease registry. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1393-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017184
12. Stanford JL, Feng Z, Hamilton AS, et al. Urinary and sexual function after radical prostatectomy for clinically localized prostate cancer; the Prostate Cancer Outcomes Study. JAMA 2000 Jan;283(3): 354-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647798
13. Heidenreich A. Radical prostatectomy in 2007: oncologic control and preservation of functional integrity. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):877-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243495
14. Sanda MG, Dunn RL, Michalski J, et al. Quality of life and satisfaction with outcome among prostate-cancer survivors. N Engl J Med 2008 Mar;358(12):1250-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18354103
15. Montorsi F, Briganti A, Salonia A, et al. Current and future strategies for preventing and managing erectile dysfunction following radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2004 Feb;45:123-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14733995
16. Mulhall JP, Slovick R, Hotaling J, et al. Erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy: hemodynamic profiles and their correlation with the recovery of erectile function. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1371-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832735
17. Secin FP, Touijer K, Mulhall J, et al. Anatomy and preservation of accessory pudendal arteries in laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2007 May;51(5):1229-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16989942
18. Goldstein I, Lue TF, Padma-Nathan H, et al; Sildenafil Study Group. Oral sildenafil in the treatment o erectile dysfunction. 1998. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 2):1197-203. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905901
19. Hellstrom WJ, Gittelman M, Karlin G, et al; Vardenafil Study Group. Sustained efficacy and tolerability of vardenafil, a highly potent selective phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor, in men with erectile dysfunction: results of a randomized, double-blind, 26-week placebo-controlled pivotal trial. Urology 2003 Apr;61(4 Suppl 1):8-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12657355
20. Brock GB, McMahon CG, Chen KK, et al. Efficacy and safety of tadalafil for the treatment of erectile dysfunction: results of integrated analyses. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1332-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352386
21. Wespes E, Schulman C. Venous impotence: pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment. J Urol 1993 May;149(5 Pt 2):1238-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8479008
22. Rao DS, Donatucci CF. Vasculogenic impotence. Arterial and venous surgery. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):309-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402583

2.5 Diagnosis

2.5.1 ***Basic work-up***

The first step in evaluating ED is always a detailed medical and psychological history of patients and partners

(1,2). Often it is not possible to include the partner at the patient's first visit, but an effort should be made to include the partner at the second visit. The pathophysiology of ED may be vasculogenic, neurogenic, hormonal, anatomical, drug-induced, or psychogenic (Table 1) (3) and taking a medical history may reveal one of the many common disorders associated with ED.

It is important to establish a relaxed atmosphere during history-taking. This will make it easier to ask questions about erectile function and other aspects of sexual history, particularly when patients do not find it easy to talk about their problem. It will also make it easier to explain the diagnosis and therapeutic approach to the patient and his partner.

Table 1: Pathophysiology of ED

Vasculogenic
- Cardiovascular disease
- Hypertension
- Diabetes mellitus
- Hyperlipidaemia
- Smoking
- Major surgery (radical prostatectomy) or radiotherapy (pelvis or retroperitoneum)
Neurogenic
Central causes
- Multiple sclerosis
- Multiple atrophy
- Parkinson's disease
- Tumours
- Stroke
- Disk disease
- Spinal cord disorders
Peripheral causes
- Diabetes mellitus
- Alcoholism
- Uraemia
- Polyneuropathy
- Surgery (pelvis or retroperitoneum, radical prostatectomy)
Anatomical or structural
- Peyronie's disease
- Penile fracture
- Congenital curvature of the penis
- Micropenis
- Hypospadias, epispadias
Hormonal
- Hypogonadism
- Hyperprolactinemia
- Hyper- and hypo-thyroidism
- Cushing's disease
Drug-induced
- Antihypertensives (diuretics and beta-blockers are the most common causes)
- Antidepressants
- Antipsychotics
- Antiandrogens
- Antihistamines
- Recreational drugs (heroin, cocaine, methadone)
Psychogenic
- Generalised type (e.g. lack of arousability and disorders of sexual intimacy)
- Situational type (e.g. partner-related, performance-related issues or due to distress)

2.5.1.1 Sexual history

The sexual history may include information about previous and current sexual relationships, current emotional status, onset and duration of the erectile problem, and previous consultations and treatments. A detailed description should be made of the rigidity and duration of both erotic and morning erections and of problems with arousal, ejaculation, and orgasm. Validated questionnaires, such as the International Index for Erectile

Function (IIEF), help to assess all sexual function domains (erectile function, orgasmic function, sexual desire, ejaculation, intercourse, and overall satisfaction), as well as the impact of a specific treatment modality (4).

2.5.1.2 Physical examination

Every patient must be given a physical examination focused on the genitourinary, endocrine, vascular, and neurological systems (1). A physical examination may reveal unsuspected diagnoses, such as Peyronie's disease, prostatic enlargement or cancer, or signs and symptoms suggesting hypogonadism (small testes, alterations in secondary sexual characteristics, diminished sexual desire, and changes in mood) (2). A rectal examination should be performed in every patient older than 50 years. Blood pressure and heart rate should be measured if they have not been assessed in the previous 3-6 months. Particular attention must be given to patients with cardiovascular disease (*see* Section 2.5.2).

2.5.1.3 Laboratory testing

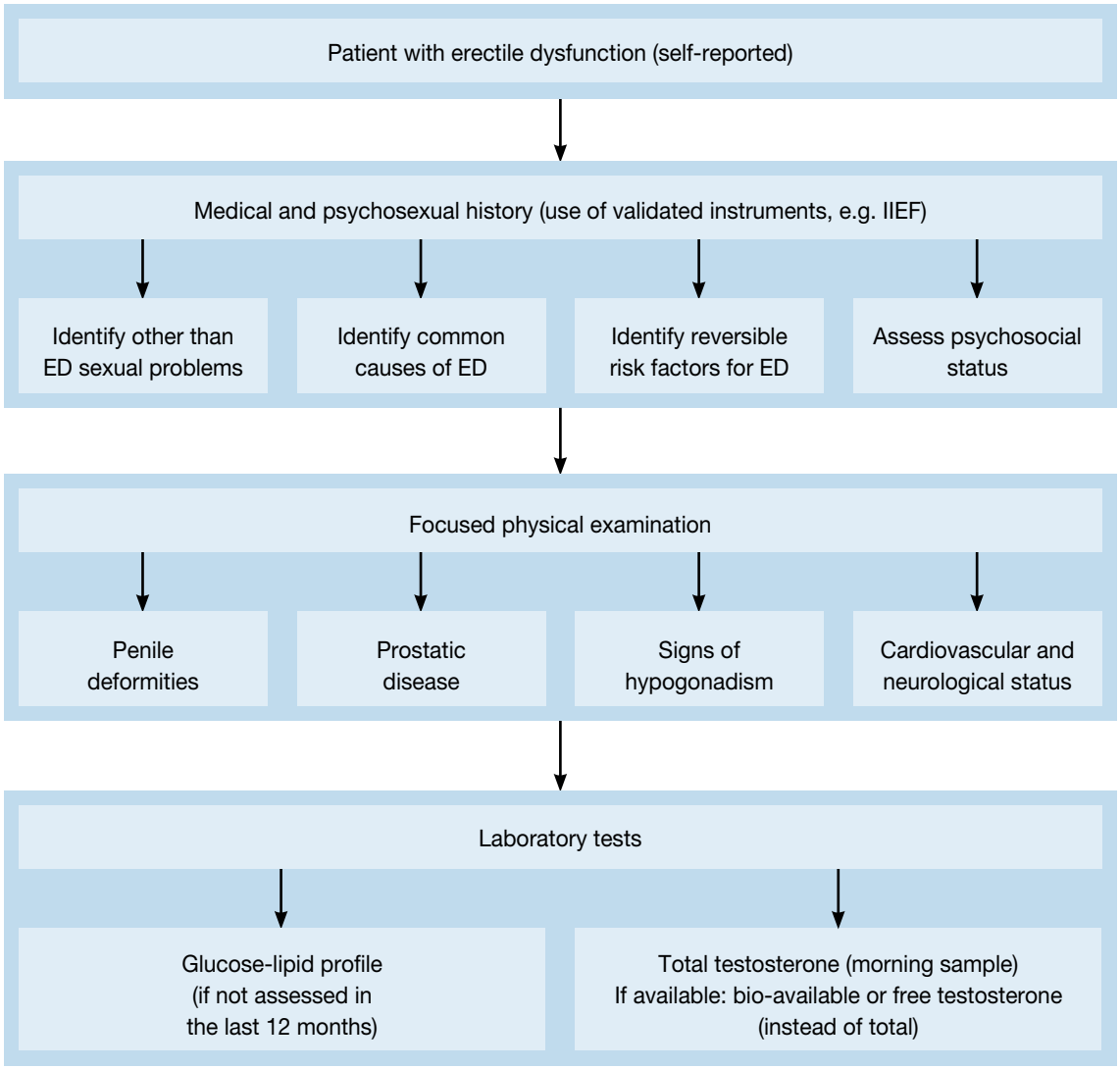
Laboratory testing must be tailored to the patient's complaints and risk factors. All patients must undergo a fasting glucose and lipid profile if not assessed in the previous 12 months. Hormonal tests must include a morning sample of total testosterone. Tests that measure bioavailable or calculated-free testosterone are preferred to total testosterone tests because they are better at establishing hypogonadism.

Additional laboratory tests must be considered only in selected patients, e.g. prostate-specific antigen (PSA) for detection of prostate cancer.

Additional hormonal tests, e.g. prolactin, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinising hormone (LH), must be carried out when low testosterone levels are detected. If any abnormality is observed, referral to another specialist may be necessary (5,6).

Figure 1 gives the minimal diagnostic evaluation (basic work-up) in patients with ED.

Figure 1: Minimal diagnostic evaluation (basic work-up) in patients with ED



ED = erectile dysfunction; IIEF = International Index of Erectile Function.

2.5.2 *Cardiovascular system and sexual activity: the patient at risk*

Patients who seek treatment for sexual dysfunction have a high prevalence of cardiovascular disease. The cardiac risks associated with sexual activity are well established. Recent epidemiological studies have emphasised the association between cardiovascular and metabolic risk factors and sexual dysfunction in both men and women (7).

There has been an intensive investigation of the pharmacological properties of phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5) inhibitors, including their effects on cardiac smooth muscle activity and overall cardiovascular safety. The EAU Guidelines recommendations given here for using PDE5 inhibitors in PE have been adapted from previously published recommendations from consensus conferences on sexual dysfunction and cardiac risk (8,9).

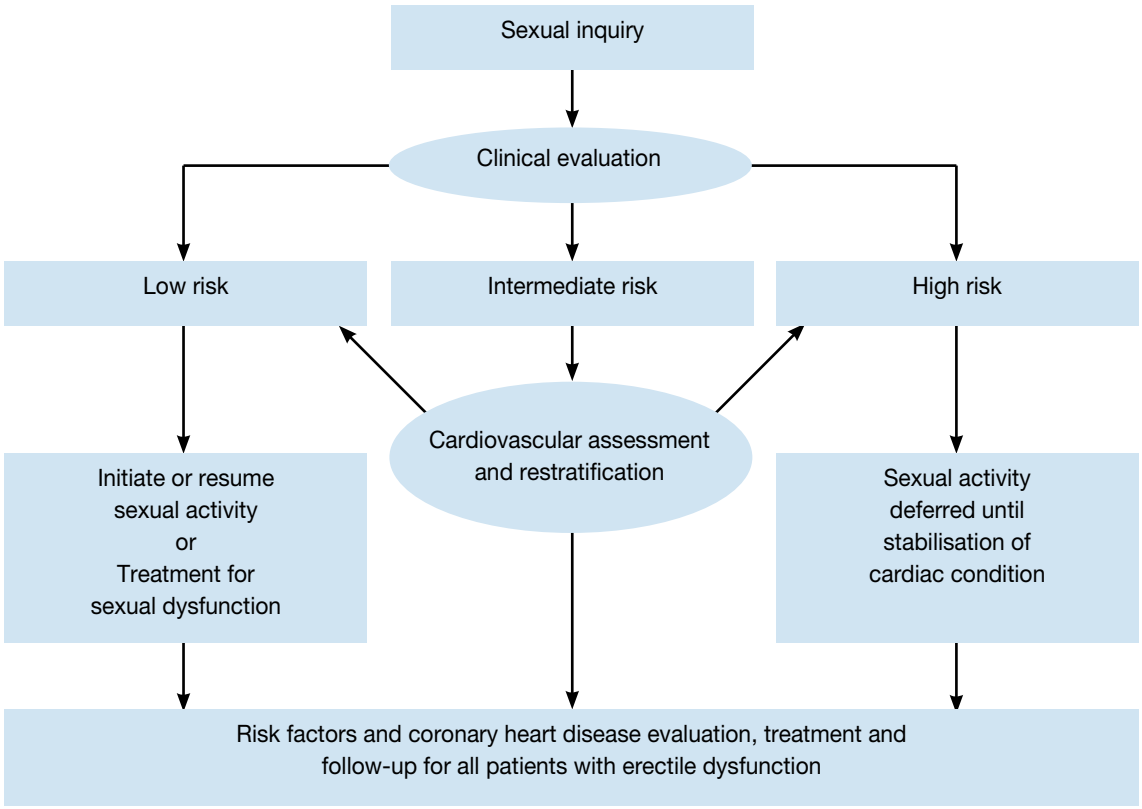
Patients with ED can be stratified into three cardiovascular risk categories (Table 2), which can be used as the basis for a treatment algorithm for initiating or resuming sexual activity (Figure 2). It is also possible for the clinician to estimate the risk of sexual activity in most patients from their level of exercise tolerance, determined when taking the patient's history.

Table 2: Cardiac risk stratification

Low-risk category	Intermediate-risk category	High-risk category
Asymptomatic, < 3 risk factors for CAD (excluding gender)	≥ 3 risk factors for CAD (excluding gender)	High-risk arrhythmias
Mild, stable angina (evaluated and/or being treated)	Moderate, stable angina	Unstable or refractory angina
Uncomplicated previous MI	Recent MI (> 2, < 6 weeks)	Recent MI (< 2 weeks)
LVD/CHF (NYHA class I)	LVD/CHF (NYHA class II)	LVD/CHF (NYHA class III/IV)
Post-successful coronary revascularisation	Non-cardiac sequelae of atherosclerotic disease (e.g. stroke, peripheral vascular disease)	Hypertrophic obstructive and other cardiomyopathies
Controlled hypertension		Uncontrolled hypertension
Mild valvular disease		Moderate-to-severe valvular disease

CAD = coronary artery disease; CHF = congestive heart failure; LVD = left ventricular dysfunction; MI = myocardial infarction; NYHA = New York Heart Association.

Figure 2: Treatment algorithm for determining level of sexual activity according to cardiac risk in ED



2.5.2.1 *Low-risk category*

The low-risk category includes patients who do not have any significant cardiac risk associated with sexual activity. Low risk is typically implied by the ability to perform exercise of modest intensity, which is defined as six or more 'metabolic equivalents of energy expenditure in the resting state' (METs) without symptoms. According to current knowledge of the exercise demand or emotional stress associated with sexual activity, low-risk patients do not need cardiac testing or evaluation before the initiation or resumption of sexual activity or therapy for sexual dysfunction.

2.5.2.2 *Intermediate-risk or indeterminate-risk category*

The intermediate- or indeterminate-risk category consists of patients with an uncertain cardiac condition or patients whose risk profile requires testing or evaluation before the resumption of sexual activity. Based upon the results of testing, these patients may be moved to either the high- or low-risk group. A cardiology consultation may be needed in some patients to help the primary physician determine the safety of sexual activity.

2.5.2.3 *High-risk category*

High-risk patients have a cardiac condition that is sufficiently severe and/or unstable for sexual activity to carry a significant risk. Most high-risk patients have moderately to severely symptomatic heart disease. High-risk individuals should be referred for cardiac assessment and treatment. Sexual activity should be stopped until the patient's cardiac condition has been stabilised by treatment or a decision made by the cardiologist and/or internist that it is safe to resume sexual activity.

2.5.3 ***Specialised diagnostic tests***

Most patients with ED can be managed within the sexual care setting, but some patients may need specific diagnostic tests (Tables 3 and 4).

2.5.3.1 *Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity (NPTR)*

The nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity assessment should be done on at least two nights. A functional erectile mechanism is indicated by an erectile event of at least 60% rigidity recorded on the tip of the penis that lasts for 10 min or more (10).

2.5.3.2 *Intracavernous injection test*

The intracavernous injection test gives limited information about vascular status. A positive test is a rigid erectile response (unable to bend the penis) that appears within 10 min after the intracavernous injection and lasts for 30 min (11). This response indicates a functional, but not necessarily normal, erection, as the erection may co-exist with arterial insufficiency or veno-occlusive dysfunction (12). A positive test shows that a patient will respond to the intracavernous injection programme. The test is inconclusive as a diagnostic procedure and Duplex ultrasound of the penile arteries should be requested.

2.5.3.3 *Duplex ultrasound of penile arteries*

A peak systolic blood flow higher than 30 cm/s and a resistance index higher than 0.8 are generally considered normal (11). Further vascular investigation is unnecessary when a Duplex examination is normal.

2.5.3.4 *Arteriography and dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography*

Arteriography and dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography (DICC) should be performed only in patients who are being considered for vascular reconstructive surgery (13).

2.5.3.5 *Psychiatric assessment*

Patients with psychiatric disorders must be referred to a psychiatrist who is particularly interested in ED. In younger patients (< 40 years) with long-term primary ED, psychiatric assessment may be helpful before any organic assessment is carried out.

2.5.3.6 *Penile abnormalities*

Surgical correction may be needed for patients with ED due to penile abnormalities, e.g. hypospadias, congenital curvature, or Peyronie's disease with preserved rigidity. Success rates are high (*see* EAU Guidelines on Penile Curvature).

2.5.4 ***Patient education – consultation and referrals***

The consultation with the patient should include a discussion of the expectations and needs of both the patient and his partner. It should also review both the patient's and partner's understanding of ED and results of the

diagnostic tests, and provide a rational selection of treatment options. Patient and partner education are an essential part of ED management (14,15).

Table 3: Indications for specific diagnostic tests

Primary erectile disorder (not caused by organic disease or psychogenic disorder)
Young patients with a history of pelvic or perineal trauma who could benefit from potentially curative vascular surgery
Patients with penile deformities that might require surgical correction, e.g. Peyronie's disease, congenital curvature
Patients with complex psychiatric or psychosexual disorders
Patients with complex endocrine disorders
Specific tests may be indicated at the request of the patient or his partner
Medicolegal reasons, e.g. implantation of penile prosthesis, sexual abuse

Table 4: Specific diagnostic tests

Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity (NTPR) using Rigiscan®
Vascular studies
- Intracavernous vasoactive drug injection
- Duplex ultrasound of the cavernous arteries
- Dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography (DICC)
- Internal pudendal arteriography
Neurological studies, e.g. bulbocavernosus reflex latency, nerve conduction studies
Endocrinological studies
Specialised psychodiagnostic evaluation

*2.5.5 **Guidelines for the diagnosis of ED***

	LE	GR
Clinical use of validated questionnaire related to ED may help to assess all sexual function domains and the effect of a specific treatment modality	3	B
Physical examination is needed in the initial assessment of men with ED to identify underlying medical conditions that may be associated with ED	4	B
Routine laboratory tests, including glucid-lipid profile and total testosterone, are required to identify and treat any reversible risk factors and lifestyle factors that can be modified	4	B
Specific diagnostic tests are indicated by only a few conditions	4	B

*2.5.6 **References***

1. Davis-Joseph B, Tiefer L, Melman A. Accuracy of the initial history and physical examination to establish the etiology of erectile dysfunction. Urology 1995 Mar;45(3):498-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7879338
2. Hatzichristou D, Hatzimouratidis K, Bekas M, et al. Diagnostic steps in the evaluation of patients with erectile dysfunction. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):615-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131320
3. Lewis RW. Epidemiology of erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):209-16, vii. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402575
4. Rosen RC, Riley A, Wagner G, et al. The international index of erectile function (IIEF): a multidimensional scale for assessment of erectile dysfunction. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6):822-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187685
5. Morales A, Heaton JP. Hormonal erectile dysfunction. Evaluation and management. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):279-88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402581
6. Lue TF, Giuliano F, Montorsi F, et al. Summary of the recommendations on sexual dysfunctions in men. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(1):6-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422979
7. Laumann EO, Paik A, Rosen RC. The epidemiology of erectile dysfunction: results from the National Health and Social Life Survey. Int J Impot Res 1999 Sep;11(Suppl 1):S60-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10554933

8. DeBusk R, Drory Y, Goldstein I, et al. Management of sexual dysfunction in patients with cardiovascular disease: recommendations of the Princeton Consensus Panel. Am J Cardiol 2000 Jul;86(2):175-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10913479
9. Kostis JB, Jackson G, Rosen R, et al. Sexual dysfunction and cardiac risk (the Second Princeton Consensus Conference). Am J Cardiol 2005 Jul;96(2):313-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16018863
10. Hatzichristou DG, Hatzimouratidis K, Ioannides E, et al. Nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity monitoring in young potent volunteers: reproducibility, evaluation criteria and the effect of sexual intercourse. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1921-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598488
11. Meuleman EJ, Diemont WL. Investigation of erectile dysfunction. Diagnostic testing for vascular factors in erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am 1995 Nov;22(4):803-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7483130
12. Hatzichristou DG, Hatzimouratidis K, Apostolidis A, et al. Hemodynamic characterization of a functional erection. Arterial and corporeal veno-occlusive function in patients with a positive intracavernosal injection test. Eur Urol 1999;36(1):60-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10364657
13. Wespes E, Schulman C. Venous impotence: pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment. J Urol 1993 May;149(5 Pt 2):1238-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8479008
14. Rosen RC, Leiblum SR, Spector IP. Psychologically based treatment for male erectile disorder: a cognitive-interpersonal model. J Sex Marital Ther 1994 Summer;20(2):67-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8035472
15. Hatzichristou D, Rosen RC, Broderick G, et al. Clinical evaluation and management strategy for sexual dysfunction in men and women. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(1):49-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422983

3. TREATMENT OF ERECTILE DYSFUNCTION

3.1 Treatment options

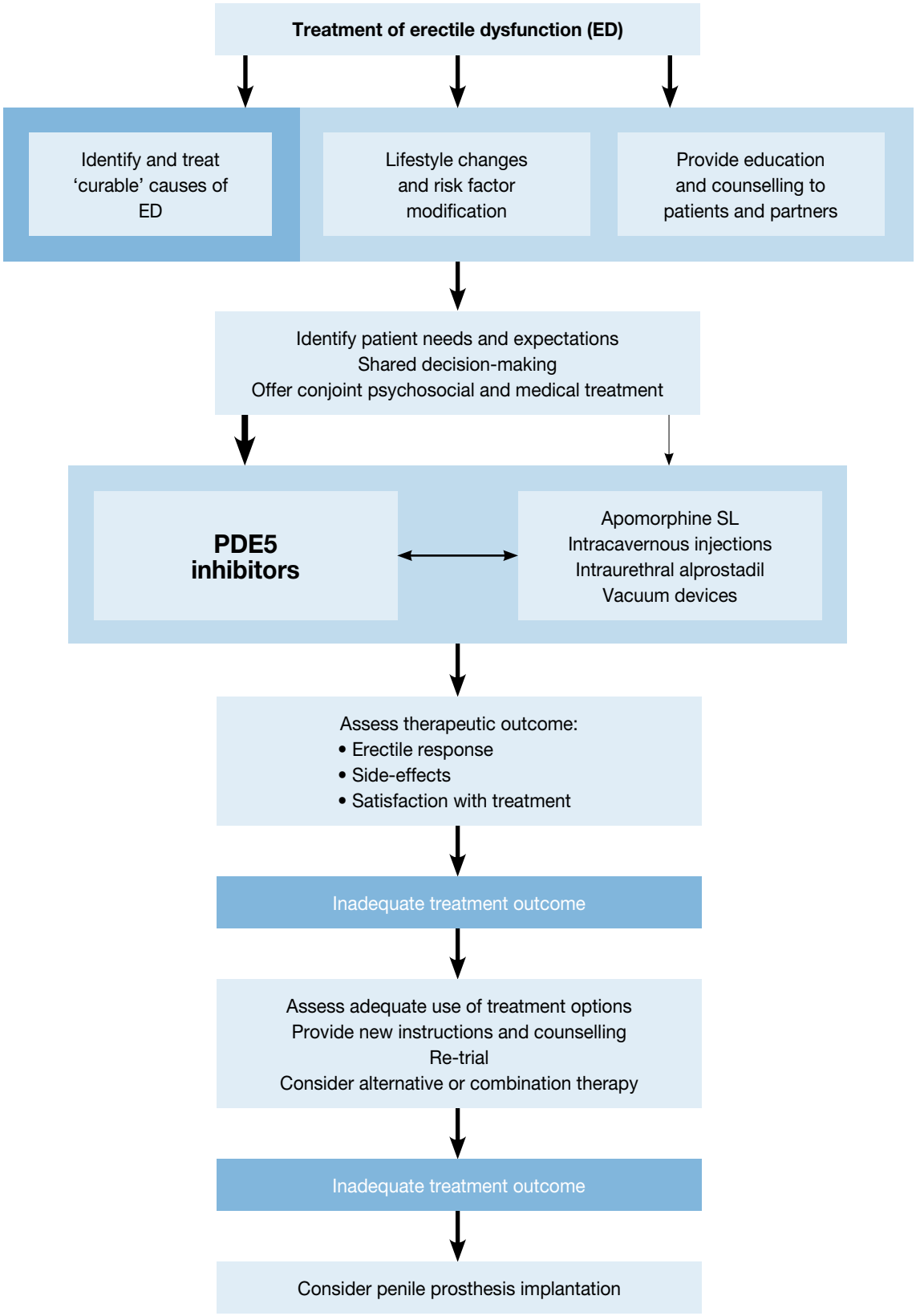
The primary goal in the management strategy of a patient with ED is to determine the aetiology of the disease and treat it when possible, and not to treat the symptom alone. Erectile dysfunction may be associated with modifiable or reversible factors, including lifestyle or drug-related factors. These factors may be modified either before, or at the same time as, specific therapies are used.

As a rule, ED can be treated successfully with current treatment options, but cannot be cured. The only exceptions are psychogenic ED, post-traumatic arteriogenic ED in young patients, and hormonal causes (e.g. hypogonadism, hyperprolactinaemia), which can be potentially cured with specific treatment.

Most men with ED will be treated with treatment options that are not cause-specific. This results in a structured treatment strategy that depends on efficacy, safety, invasiveness and cost, as well as patient preference (1). To counsel patients properly with ED, physicians must be fully informed of all treatment options.

The assessment of treatment options must consider the effects on patient and partner satisfaction and other QoL factors as well as efficacy and safety. A treatment algorithm for ED is given in Figure 3.

Figure 3: Treatment algorithm for ED



PDE5 inhibitor = phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor.

3.2 Lifestyle management in ED with concomitant risk factors

The basic work-up of the patient must identify reversible risk factors for ED. Lifestyle changes and risk factor modification must precede or accompany ED treatment.

The potential benefits of lifestyle changes may be particularly important in individuals with ED and specific comorbid cardiovascular or metabolic diseases, such as diabetes or hypertension (2-4). Besides improving erectile function, aggressive lifestyle changes may also benefit overall cardiovascular and metabolic health, with recent studies supporting the potential of lifestyle intervention to benefit both ED and overall health (5).

Although further studies are needed to make clear the role of lifestyle changes in the management of ED and related cardiovascular disease, lifestyle changes can be recommended alone or combined with PDE5 therapy. Some studies have suggested that the therapeutic effects of PDE5 inhibitors may be enhanced when other comorbidities or risk factors are aggressively managed (6). However, these results have yet to be confirmed in well-controlled, long-term studies. Because of the success of pharmacological therapy for ED, clinicians need to provide specific evidence for the benefits of lifestyle change and hopefully future research will show this.

3.3 Erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy (RP)

Use of pro-erectile drugs following RP is very important in achieving erectile function following surgery. Several trials have shown higher rates of erectile function recovery after RP in patients receiving any drug (therapeutic or prophylactic) for ED.

Historically, the treatment options for post-operative ED included intracavernous injections (7), urethral microsuppository (8), vacuum device therapy (9), and penile implants (10). Intracavernous injections and penile implants are still suggested as second- and third-line treatments, respectively, when oral compounds are not adequately effective or contraindicated for post-operative patients (*see* Sections 3.8 and 3.9).

The management of post-RP ED has been revolutionised by the advent of PDE5 inhibitors, with their demonstrated efficacy, ease of use, good tolerability, excellent safety, and positive impact on QoL. At present, PDE5 inhibitors are the first-line choice of oral pharmacotherapy for post-RP ED in patients who have undergone a nerve-sparing (NS) surgical approach. The choice of PDE5 inhibitors as first-line treatment is controversial because the experience (surgical volume) of the surgeon is a key factor in preserving post-operative erectile function in addition to patient age and NS technique (11-13). In fact, PDE5 inhibitors are most effective in patients who have undergone a rigorous NS procedure, which is more commonly performed by the largest-volume surgeons (12,13).

The early use of a high dose of sildenafil after RP is associated with the preservation of smooth muscle within the human corpora cavernosa (14). Daily sildenafil also resulted in a greater return of spontaneous normal erectile function post RP compared to placebo following bilateral nerve-sparing RP (NSRP) in patients who were fully potent before surgery (15,16). The response rate to sildenafil treatment for ED after RP in different trials ranged from 35% to 75% among those who underwent NSRP and from 0% to 15% among those who underwent non-NSRP (15-18).

The effectiveness of both tadalafil and vardenafil as on-demand treatment has also been evaluated in post-RP ED:

- A large multicentre trial in Europe and USA studied tadalafil in patients with ED following a bilateral NS procedure. Erectile function was improved in 71% of patients treated with tadalafil 20 mg versus 24% treated with placebo, while the rate of successful intercourse attempts was 52% with tadalafil 20 mg versus 26% with placebo (19).
- Similarly, vardenafil has been tested in patients treated with ED following either a unilateral or bilateral NS procedure in a multicentre, prospective, placebo-controlled, randomised North American study (20). Following bilateral NSRP, erectile function improved by 71% and 60% with vardenafil, 20 mg and 10 mg, respectively. An extended analysis of the same patients undergoing NSRP has underlined the benefit of vardenafil compared to placebo regarding intercourse satisfaction, hardness of erection, orgasmic function, and overall satisfaction with sexual experience (21).

A randomised, double-blind, double-dummy, multicentre, parallel-group study in 87 centres across Europe, Canada, South Africa and the USA, compared on-demand and nightly dosing of vardenafil in men with ED following bilateral NSRP. In patients whose IIEF erectile function domain (IIEF-EF) score was ≥ 26 before surgery, vardenafil was efficacious when used on demand, supporting a paradigm shift towards on-demand dosing with PDE5 inhibitors in post-RP ED (22). Patients who do not respond to oral PDE5 inhibitors after NSRP should be treated with prophylactic intracorporeal alprostadil (23). A penile prosthesis remains a very satisfactory approach for patients who do not respond to either oral or intracavernous pharmacotherapy or to a vacuum device (24).

3.4 'Curable' causes of ED

3.4.1 ***Hormonal causes***

An endocrinologist's advice is essential for managing patients with hormonal abnormalities. Testosterone deficiency is either a result of primary testicular failure or secondary to pituitary/hypothalamic causes, including a functional pituitary tumour resulting in hyperprolactinaemia.

Testosterone replacement therapy (intramuscular, oral, or transdermal) is effective, but should only be used after other endocrinological causes for testicular failure have been excluded (25). Testosterone replacement is contraindicated in men with a history of prostate carcinoma or with symptoms of prostatism. Before initiating testosterone replacement, a digital rectal examination (DRE) and serum PSA test should be performed. Patients given androgen therapy should be monitored for clinical response and the development of hepatic or prostatic disease.

There is no contraindication for testosterone therapy in men with coronary artery disease who have been properly diagnosed with hypogonadism and/or ED. However, the haematocrit level should be monitored and a dose adjustment of testosterone may be necessary, especially in congestive heart failure.

Hormonal treatment is not always effective in the management of ED associated with hypogonadism (26).

3.4.2 ***Post-traumatic arteriogenic ED in young patients***

In young patients with pelvic or perineal trauma, surgical penile revascularisation has a 60-70% long-term success rate (27). The lesion must be demonstrated by Duplex ultrasound and confirmed by penile pharmaco-arteriography. Corporeal veno-occlusive dysfunction is a contraindication to revascularisation and must be excluded by DICC (9,10). Vascular surgery for veno-occlusive dysfunction is no longer recommended because of poor long-term results (28).

3.4.3 ***Psychosexual counselling and therapy***

For patients with a significant psychological problem, psychosexual therapy may be given either alone or with another therapeutic approach. Psychosexual therapy takes time and has had variable results (29).

3.5 First-line therapy

3.5.1 ***Oral pharmacotherapy***

The PDE5 enzyme hydrolyses cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) in the cavernosum tissue of the penis. Inhibition of PDE5 results in increased arterial blood flow leading to smooth muscle relaxation, vasodilatation, and penile erection (30).

Three potent selective PDE5 inhibitors have been approved by the European Medicines Agency (EMEA) and the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of ED. They are not initiators of erection and require sexual stimulation to facilitate an erection.

3.5.1.1 Sildenafil

Sildenafil, launched in 1998, was the first PDE5 inhibitor available on the market. Efficacy is defined as an erection with rigidity sufficient for vaginal penetration. Sildenafil is effective from 30 to 60 min after administration. Its efficacy is reduced after a heavy, fatty meal due to prolonged absorption. It is administered in 25, 50 and 100 mg doses. The recommended starting dose is 50 mg and should be adapted according to the patient's response and side-effects. Efficacy may be maintained for up to 12 h (31). The pharmacokinetic data of sildenafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature and self-limited by continuous use. The drop-out rate due to adverse events is similar to placebo (32).

After 24 weeks in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 56%, 77% and 84% of men taking 25, 50 and 100 mg of sildenafil, respectively, compared to 25% of men taking placebo (33). Sildenafil statistically improved patient scores in IIEF, sexual encounter profile 2 (SEP2), SEP3, and general assessment question (GAQ) and treatment satisfaction.

The efficacy of sildenafil in almost every subgroup of patients with ED has been successfully established. In diabetic patients, 66.6% reported improved erections (GAQ) and 63% successful intercourse attempts compared to 28.6% and 33% of men taking placebo, respectively (34).

3.5.1.2 Tadalafil

Tadalafil, licensed for the treatment of ED as of February 2003, is effective from 30 min after administration, with peak efficacy after about 2 h. Efficacy is maintained for up to 36 h (35) and is not affected by food. It is administered in 10 and 20 mg doses. The recommended starting dose is 10 mg and should be adapted according to the patient's response and side-effects. Pharmacokinetic data of tadalafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature, self-limited by continuous use. The drop-out rate due to adverse events is similar to placebo (36).

In pre-marketing studies, after 12 weeks of treatment and in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 67% and 81% of men taking 10 mg and 20 mg of tadalafil compared to 35% of men in the control placebo group (36). Tadalafil statistically improved patient scores in IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and GAQ and treatment satisfaction. These results were confirmed in post-marketing studies (37).

Tadalafil also improved erections in difficult-to-treat subgroups. In diabetic patients, 64% reported improved erections (i.e. improved GAQ) versus 25% of patients in the control group and the change in the final score for IIEF-EF was 7.3 compared to 0.1 for placebo (38).

3.5.1.3 Vardenafil

Vardenafil, commercially available as of March 2003, is effective from 30 min after administration. Its effect is reduced by a heavy, fatty meal (> 57% fat). It is administered in 5, 10 and 20 mg doses. The recommended starting dose is 10 mg and should be adapted according to the patient's response and side-effects. In vitro, it is 10-fold more potent than sildenafil, though this does not necessarily mean greater clinical efficacy (39). Pharmacokinetic data of vardenafil are presented in Table 5. Adverse events (Table 6) are generally mild in nature and self-limited by continuous use, with a drop-out rate similar to placebo (40).

After 12 weeks in a dose-response study, improved erections were reported by 66%, 76% and 80% of men taking 5 mg, 10 mg and 20 mg of vardenafil, respectively, compared with 30% of men taking placebo (41). Vardenafil statistically improved patient scores for IIEF, SEP2, SEP3, and GAQ and treatment satisfaction. Efficacy was confirmed in post-marketing studies (42).

Vardenafil improved erections in difficult-to-treat subgroups. In diabetic patients, 72% reported improved erections (i.e. improved GAQ) compared to 13% of patients taking placebo and the final IIEF-EF score was 19 compared to 12.6 for placebo (43).

3.5.1.4 Choice or preference between the different PDE5 inhibitors

To date, no data are available from double- or triple-blind multicentre studies comparing the efficacy and/or patient preference for sildenafil, tadalafil, and vardenafil. Choice of drug will depend on the frequency of intercourse (occasional use or regular therapy, 3-4 times weekly) and the patient's personal experience. Patients need to know whether a drug is short- or long-acting, possible disadvantages, and how to use it.

3.5.1.5 On-demand or chronic use of PDE5 inhibitors

Animal studies have shown that chronic use of PDE5 inhibitors improves or prevents significantly the intracavernous structure alterations due to age, diabetes, or surgical damage (44-50).

In humans, a randomised study (n = 145) showed that daily tadalafil led to a significantly higher IIEF-EF score and higher completion of successful intercourse attempts compared to on-demand tadalafil (51). Two major double-blind, randomised studies, using daily 5 and 10 mg tadalafil for 12 weeks (n = 268) (52) and daily 2.5 and 5 mg tadalafil for 24 weeks (n = 286) (53), showed that daily dosing was well tolerated and significantly improved erectile function. However, these studies lacked an on-demand treatment arm. An open-label extension was carried out of both studies in 234 patients for 1 year and 238 patients for 2 years. Tadalafil, 5 mg once daily, was shown to be well tolerated and effective (54). Tadafil, 5 mg once daily, therefore provides an alternative to on-demand dosing of tadalafil for couples who prefer spontaneous rather than scheduled sexual activities or who anticipate frequent sexual activity, with the advantage that dosing and sexual activity no longer need to be temporally linked. Nevertheless, in the 1-year open-label 5 mg tadalafil extension study followed by 4 weeks of wash-out, erectile function was not maintained after discontinuation of therapy in most patients (about 75%).

A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre, parallel-group study was conducted in 236 men with mild-to-moderate ED randomised to receive once-daily vardenafil 10 mg plus on-demand placebo for 12 or 24 weeks, or once-daily placebo plus on-demand vardenafil 10 mg for 24 weeks, followed by 4 weeks of wash-out (55). Despite preclinical evidence, the results suggested that once-daily dosing of vardenafil 10 mg does not offer any sustainable effect after cessation of treatment compared to on-demand administration in patients with mild-to-moderate ED.

Other studies (open-label, randomised, cross-over studies with limited patient numbers) showed that chronic, but not on-demand, tadalafil treatment improved endothelial function with sustained effect after its discontinuation (56,57). This was confirmed in another study of chronic sildenafil in men with type 2 diabetes (58).

Recently, in the first double-blind, placebo-controlled study, enrolling 298 men with diabetes and ED for 12 weeks, once-daily tadalafil 2.5 mg and 5 mg was efficacious and well tolerated. This regimen provides an alternative to on-demand treatment for some diabetic men (59).

However, when patients have the choice, it seems that they prefer on-demand rather than continuous therapy (60).

Table 5: Summary of the key pharmacokinetic data for the three PDE5 inhibitors used to treat ED*

Parameter	Sildenafil, 100 mg	Tadalafil, 20 mg	Vardenafil, 20 mg
Cmax	560 µg/L	378 µg/L	18.7 µg/L
Tmax	0.8-1 h	2 h	0.9 h
T1/2	2.6-3.7 h	17.5 h	3.9 h
AUC	1685 µg.h/L	8066 µg.h/L	56.8 µg.h/L
Protein binding	96%	94%	94%
Bioavailability	41%	NA	15%

Cmax: maximal concentration, Tmax: time-to-maximum plasma concentration; T1/2: plasma elimination half-time; AUC: area under curve or serum concentration time curve.

** Fasted state, higher recommended dose. Data adapted from EMEA statements on product characteristics.*

Table 6: Common adverse events of the three PDE5 inhibitors used to treat ED*

Adverse event	Sildenafil	Tadalafil	Vardenafil
Headache	12.8%	14.5%	16%
Flushing	10.4%	4.1%	12%
Dyspepsia	4.6%	12.3%	4%
Nasal congestion	1.1%	4.3%	10%
Dizziness	1.2%	2.3%	2%
Abnormal vision	1.9%		< 2%
Back pain		6.5%	
Myalgia		5.7%	

** Adapted from EMEA statements on product characteristics.*

Sildenafil: http://www.emea.europa.eu/humandocs/Humans/EPAR/viagra/viagra.htm
Tadalafil: http://www.emea.europa.eu/humandocs/Humans/EPAR/cialis/cialis.htm
Vardenafil: http://www.emea.europa.eu/humandocs/Humans/EPAR/levitra/levitra.htm

3.5.1.6 Safety issues for PDE5 inhibitors

3.5.1.6.1 Cardiovascular safety

Clinical trial results and post-marketing data of sildenafil, tadalafil, and vardenafil have demonstrated no increase in myocardial infarction rates in patients receiving PDE5 inhibitors, as part of either double-blind, placebo-controlled trials or open-label studies, or compared to expected rates in age-matched male populations.

None of the PDE5 inhibitors had an adverse effect on total exercise time or time-to-ischaemia during exercise testing in men with stable angina (61,62). In fact, they may improve exercise tests. Sildenafil does not alter cardiac contractility, cardiac output or myocardial oxygen consumption according to available evidence. Chronic or on-demand use is well tolerated with a similar safety profile.

3.5.1.6.2 Nitrates are totally contraindicated with PDE5 inhibitors

Organic nitrates (e.g. nitroglycerine, isosorbide mononitrate, isosorbide dinitrate) and other nitrate preparations used to treat angina, as well as amyl nitrite or amyl nitrate ('poppers' used for recreation), are absolute contraindications with the use of PDE5 inhibitors. They result in cGMP accumulation and unpredictable falls in blood pressure and symptoms of hypotension. The duration of interaction between organic nitrates and PDE5 inhibitors depends upon the PDE5 inhibitor and nitrate used.

If a PDE5 inhibitor is taken and the patient develops chest pain, nitroglycerine must be withheld for at least 24 h if sildenafil (and probably also vardenafil) was used (half-life, 4 h), and for at least 48 h if tadalafil was used (half-life, 17.5 h).

If a patient develops angina while taking a PDE5 inhibitor, other agents may be given instead of nitroglycerine until the appropriate time has passed. If nitroglycerine must be re-introduced following administration of a PDE5 inhibitor, the patient should receive it only after an appropriate interval has elapsed, as described above, and under close medical observation.

3.5.1.6.3 Antihypertensive drugs

Co-administration of PDE5 inhibitors with antihypertensive agents (angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin-receptor blockers, calcium blockers, beta-blockers, diuretics) may result in small additive drops in blood pressure, which are usually minor. In general, the adverse event profile of a PDE5 inhibitor is not made worse by a background of antihypertensive medication, even when the patient is taking several

antihypertensive agents.

3.5.1.6.4 Alpha-blocker interactions
All PDE5 inhibitors show some interaction with alpha-blockers, which under some conditions may result in orthostatic hypotension.

- Sildenafil labelling currently advises that 50 or 100 mg of sildenafil should not be taken within 4 h following treatment with an alpha-blocker. This restriction does not apply to 25 mg dose of sildenafil.
- In the USA, vardenafil is absolutely contraindicated with alpha-blockers.
- Co-administration of vardenafil with tamsulosin is not associated with clinically significant hypotension (63).
- Tadalafil is contraindicated in patients taking alpha-blockers, except for tamsulosin, 0.4 mg (64).

These interactions are more pronounced when PDE5 inhibitors are given to healthy volunteers not previously taking alpha-blockers. Further research is needed into the interaction between other PDE5 inhibitors and other alpha-blockers (e.g. alfuzosin, once-daily), or mixed alpha-/beta-blockers (e.g. carvedilol, labetalol).

3.5.1.6.5 Dosage adjustment
Drugs that inhibit the CYP34A pathway will inhibit the metabolic breakdown of PDE5 inhibitors. They include ketoconazole, itraconazole, erythromycin, clarithromycin, and HIV protease inhibitors (ritonavir, saquinavir). Such agents may increase blood levels of PDE5 inhibitors, so that lower doses of PDE5 inhibitors are necessary.

However, other agents, such as rifampin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, and carbamazepine, may induce CYP3A4 and enhance the breakdown of PDE5 inhibitors, so that higher doses of PDE5 inhibitors are required.

Severe kidney or hepatic dysfunction may require dose adjustments or warnings.

3.5.1.7 Management of non-responders to PDE5 inhibitors
The two main reasons why patients fail to respond to a PDE5 inhibitor are either incorrect drug use or inefficacy of the drug. The management of a non-responder depends upon identifying the underlying cause.

3.5.1.7.1 Check that the patient has been using a licensed medication
There is a very large 'black market' in PDE5 inhibitors. The amount of active drug in these medications varies enormously and it is important to check how and from which source the patient has obtained his medication.

3.6.1.7.2 Check that the medication has been properly prescribed and correctly used
The main reason why a patient fails to use his medication correctly is inadequate counselling from his physician. The main ways in which a drug may be incorrectly used are:

- failure to use adequate sexual stimulation;
- failure to use an adequate dose;
- failure to wait an adequate amount of time between taking the medication and attempting sexual intercourse.

Lack of adequate sexual stimulation: PDE5 inhibitors depend for their action upon the release of nitric oxide (NO) by the parasympathetic nerves of the penis. The usual stimulus for NO release is sexual stimulation, and without adequate sexual stimulation (and NO release), the drugs cannot work.

Not enough time between taking the medication and intercourse attempt: Oral PDE5 inhibitors take different times to reach maximal plasma concentrations (65-67). Although pharmacological activity is achieved at plasma levels well below the maximal plasma concentration, there will be a period of time following oral ingestion of the medication during which the drug is ineffective. Even though all three drugs have an onset of action in some patients within 30 min of oral ingestion (68-70), most patients require a longer delay between taking the medication, with at least 60 min being required for men using sildenafil and vardenafil and up to 2 h being required for men using tadalafil.

Food may affect drug absorption: sildenafil's absorption can be delayed by a meal (65), while varenafil's absorption can be delayed by a fatty meal (71). Tadalafil's absorption is less affected provided there is enough delay between oral ingestion and an attempt at sexual intercourse (67).

Too much time between taking medication and intercourse attempt: It is also possible to wait too long after taking medication before attempting sexual intercourse. The half-life of sildenafil and vardenafil is about 4 h, suggesting that the normal window of efficacy is about 6-8 h following ingestion of the medication, though

responses following this time period are well recognised. Tadalafil had a longer half-life of about 17.5 h, so the window of efficacy is much longer at about 36 h.

Insufficient dose: For financial reasons, some physicians may prescribe only the lower doses of a medication. It is important to check that the patient has had an adequate trial of the maximal dose of the drug. Data suggests an adequate trial involves at least six attempts with a particular drug (72).

Benefit of education for a non-responding patient: Data from uncontrolled studies suggests patient education can help salvage an apparent non-responder to a PDE5 inhibitor. After emphasising the importance of dose, timing, and sexual stimulation to the patient, erectile function was effectively restored following re-administration of the relevant PDE5 inhibitor (73-76).

One study (74) went further, and in those patients who still did not respond to the PDE5 inhibitor, a second-line adjustment was instituted. Patients taking tadalafil were advised to wait at least 2 h between oral ingestion and attempting intercourse. Patients taking vardenafil were advised to use the drug only after a fast. In both patient groups, further apparent non-responders were 'salvaged'. No patients using sildenafil were included in this study.

3.5.1.7.3 Possible manoeuvres in patients correctly using a PDE5 inhibitor

When the patient is using an adequate dose of the drug properly and the response is still inadequate, there are a number of changes that may improve the efficacy of the medication, though the evidence supporting these interventions is limited.

Modification of associated risk factors: ED is typically a symptom of an underlying condition, such as diabetes, hypertension, dyslipidaemia, etc. Limited evidence suggests that, in a hypogonadal patient, normalisation of the serum testosterone might improve the patient's response to a PDE5 inhibitor (77). So far, modification of other risk factors, such as diabetic control, hypertension and dyslipidaemia, has not been shown to be effective in improving response to a PDE5 inhibitor.

Change the PDE5 inhibitor: A randomised trial suggested vardenafil might benefit non-responders to sildenafil (78), but the results are considered to overstate the benefits of switching PDE5 inhibitors because of poor study design. However, a randomised, open-label, crossover trial comparing sildenafil and tadalafil indicated that some patients might respond better to one PDE5 inhibitor than to another (79). According to the IIEF-EF score, 17% of patients had a better response (≥ 5 points) to tadalafil than to sildenafil, while 14% had a better response to sildenafil than tadalafil.

Although these differences might be explained by variation in drug pharmacokinetics, they do raise the possibility that, despite an identical mode of action, switching to a different PDE5 inhibitor might be helpful.

Regular dosing of PDE5 inhibitor: Two non-randomised trials have suggested that daily dosing with a PDE5 inhibitor might salvage some non-responders to intermittent dosing. In one trial (80), some men benefited from regular dosing with either vardenafil or tadalafil, while in the other trial (75) daily dosing with tadalafil salvaged some men who had failed to respond to intermittent dosing with a PDE5 inhibitor.

Currently, there are no randomised trials to support this intervention. Although tadalafil is licensed for daily dosing at a dose of 2.5 mg and 5 mg, neither sildenafil nor vardenafil are licensed for use in this way.

Introduction of an alternative therapeutic modality: If drug treatment fails, then the patient should be offered an alternative therapy, with intracavernosal injection therapy of with a vacuum erection device. Intraurethral therapy is usually ineffective in these patients.

3.5.1.8 Apomorphine sublingual

Apomorphine is a centrally acting dopamine agonist that improves erectile function by enhancing the natural central erectile signals that normally occur during sexual stimulation (81,82). It is administered sublingually on demand in 2 or 3 mg doses. Apomorphine has been approved for ED treatment in several countries but not in the USA.

Efficacy rates (erections sufficient for intercourse) range from 28.5% to 55% (83-85). Due to rapid absorption, 71% of erections are achieved within 20 min. The most common adverse events are nausea (7%), headache (6.8%) and dizziness (4.4%). These events are generally mild in nature and self-limited (85). Severe events, such as syncope, are extremely rare (< 0.2%) (86).

Apomorphine is not contraindicated in patients taking nitrates or antihypertensive drugs (of all classes) and it does not affect vital signs (87,88). There was no marked improvement in sexual desire, but a slight improvement in orgasmic function was noticed.

Comparative studies clearly show that apomorphine is associated with significantly lower efficacy and satisfaction rates than sildenafil (89-91). The most significant strength of apomorphine is its safety profile (92). Even in pre-marketing studies, apomorphine significantly improves erectile function, intercourse, and overall satisfaction domains of the IIEF compared to placebo.

Its use is limited to patients with mild-to-moderate ED or psychogenic causes of sexual dysfunction due to reduced efficacy rates. It may also be a first-line treatment in patients with certain contraindications for the use of PDE5 inhibitors, e.g. nitrates.

3.5.1.9 Other oral agents

Several other drugs have been used in the treatment of ED with various mechanisms of action (93), but today there is no place for these drugs in the treatment of ED.

- Yohimbine is a centrally and peripherally active alpha-2 adrenergic antagonist used as an aphrodisiac for almost a century.
- Delequamine is a more specific and selective alpha-2 adrenergic antagonist than yohimbine.
- Trazodone is a serotonin reuptake inhibitor (antidepressant) associated with prolonged erections and priapism. It is also a non-selective alpha-adrenergic antagonist in the corporal smooth muscle cells.
- L-arginine is a nitric oxide donor and nalmefene/naltrexone is an opioid-receptor antagonist.
- Red Korea ginseng is a formulation with an unknown mechanism of action (though it may possibly act as a nitric oxide donor).
- Limaprost is an alprostadil derivative for oral use.
- An oral formulation of phentolamine (non-selective alpha-adrenergic antagonist) has undergone phase III clinical trials (94).

Randomised trials have shown that yohimbine and trazodone have a similar efficacy to placebo in patients with organic causes of ED (95,96). Oral phentolamine had efficacy rates (erections sufficient for intercourse) of about 50% (94), but possible carcinogenesis in animal models stopped further development. Efficacy data on Red Korea ginseng suggested it might have a role in treatment of ED (97). There are no efficacy data on the other drugs listed above.

3.6 Topical pharmacotherapy

Several vasoactive drugs (2% nitroglycerine, 15-20% papaverine gel, and 2% minoxidil solution or gel) have been used for topical application to the penis. To overcome the poor drug absorption through the thick and dense tunica albuginea, several drug absorption enhancers have been developed for combination with vasoactive drugs (98). The combination (Topiglan™) of alprostadil gel 1% with 5% SEPA® (absorption enhancer) resulted in an erection sufficient for vaginal penetration in 38.9% of patients compared to 6.9% of placebo-treated patients (99). Adverse events include skin and glans erythema, burning sensation, allergic reactions, and side-effects in the partner (hypotension, headache) due to vaginal absorption.

No topical therapy has been approved and currently these agents have no role in treatment of ED.

3.7 Vacuum constriction devices

Vacuum constriction devices (VCD) provide passive engorgement of the corpora cavernosa together with a constrictor ring placed at the base of the penis to retain blood within the corpora. Thus, erections with these devices are not normal since they do not use physiological erection pathways. Efficacy, in terms of erections satisfactory for intercourse, is as high as 90%, regardless of the cause of ED and satisfaction rates range between 27% and 94% (100). Men with a motivated, interested, and understanding partner report the highest satisfaction rates. Long-term use of VCDs decreases to 50-64% after 2 years (101). Most men who discontinue use of VCDs do so within 3 months.

The commonest adverse events include pain, inability to ejaculate, petechiae, bruising, and numbness, which occur in less than 30% of patients (102). Serious adverse events (skin necrosis) can be avoided if patients remove the constriction ring within 30 min. Vacuum constriction devices are contraindicated in patients with bleeding disorders or on anticoagulant therapy.

Vacuum constriction devices are generally unacceptable to younger patients. They may be the treatment of choice in well-informed older patients with infrequent sexual intercourses and comorbidities requiring a non-invasive, drug-free management of ED.

3.8 Second-line therapy

Patients not responding to oral drugs may be offered intracavernous injections. Success rate is high (85%) (100). Intracavernous administration of vasoactive drugs was the first medical treatment for ED more than 20 years ago (103).

*3.8.1 **Intracavernous injections***

3.8.1.1 Alprostadil

Alprostadil (Caverject™, Edex/Viridal™) is the first and only drug approved for intracavernous ED treatment (104). It is the more efficacious monotherapy for intracavernous treatment in 5-40 µg doses. The erection appears after 5-15 min and lasts according to the dose injected. An office-training programme (one or two visits) is required for the patient to learn the correct injection process. In cases of limited manual dexterity, the technique may be taught to their partners. The use of an automatic special pen that avoids a view of the needle can resolve fear of penile puncture and simplifies the technique.

Efficacy rates for intracavernous alprostadil of more than 70% have been found in general ED populations, as well as in patient subgroups (e.g. diabetes or cardiovascular disease), with reported sexual activity after 94% of the injections and satisfaction rates of 87-93.5% in patients and 86-90.3% in partners (105-107).

Complications of intracavernous alprostadil include penile pain (50% of patients, after 11% of injections), prolonged erections (5%), priapism (1%), and fibrosis (2%) (108). Pain is usually self-limited after prolonged use. It can be alleviated with the addition of sodium bicarbonate or local anaesthesia (109,110). Fibrosis requires temporary discontinuation of the injection programme for several months. Systemic side-effects are uncommon. The most common is mild hypotension especially when using higher doses.

Contraindications include men with a history of hypersensitivity to alprostadil, men at risk of priapism, and men with bleeding disorders.

Despite these favourable data, intracavernous pharmacotherapy is associated with high drop-out rates and limited compliance. Drop-out rates of 41-68% have been described (111-113), with most drop outs occurring within the first 2-3 months. In a comparative study, alprostadil monotherapy had the lowest discontinuation rates (27.5%) compared to overall drug combinations (37.6%), with an attrition rate after the first few months of therapy of 10% per year. Reasons for discontinuation included desire for a permanent modality of therapy (29%), lack of a suitable partner (26%), poor response (23%) (especially among early drop out patients), fear of needles (23%), fear of complications (22%), and lack of spontaneity (21%). Careful counselling of patients during the office-training phase as well as close follow-up is important in addressing patient withdrawal from an intracavernous injection programme (114).

Today, intracavernous pharmacotherapy is considered a second-line treatment. Patients not responding to oral drugs may be offered intracavernous injections with a high success rate of 85%. Most long-term injection users can switch to sildenafil despite underlying pathophysiology (115-117). However, almost one-third of long-term intracavernous injections users who subsequently responded also to sildenafil preferred to continue with an intracavernous injection programme (117,118).

Action to be taken with a prolonged erection

After 4 h of erection, patients are advised to consult their physician to avoid any damage to the intracavernous muscle, which would provoke permanent impotence. A 19-gauge needle is used to aspirate blood and thereby decrease intracavernous pressure. This simple method is usually sufficient to make the penis flaccid. However, if the penis becomes rigid again after this, an intracavernous injection of phenylephrine is required, starting at a dose of 200 µg every 5 min and increasing to 500 µg if necessary. The risk of having a prolonged erection during following subsequent injections cannot be predicted. When this problem occurs, the dose is usually reduced for the next injection.

3.8.1.2 Combination therapy

Combination treatment enables a patient to take advantage of the different modes of action of the drugs being used, as well as alleviating side-effects by using lower doses of each drug.

- Papaverine (20-80 mg) was the first oral drug used for intracavernous injections. It is only used in combination therapy today due to its high incidence of side-effects as monotherapy.
- Phentolamine has been used in combination therapy to increase efficacy. As monotherapy, it produces a poor erectile response.
- Sparse data in the literature support the use of other drugs, such as vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), NO donors (linsidomine), forskolin, potassium channel openers, moxisylyte or calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP), usually combined with the main drugs (119,120). Most combinations are not standardised and some drugs have limited availability worldwide.
- Papaverine (7.5-45 mg) plus phentolamine (0.25-1.5 mg), and papaverine (8-16 mg) plus phentolamine (0.2-0.4 mg) plus alprostadil (10-20 µg), have been widely used with improved efficacy rates, although they have never been licensed for ED (121-123). The triple combination regimen of papaverine, phentolamine and alprostadil had the highest efficacy rates, reaching 92%; this combination had similar side-effects as alprostadil monotherapy, but a lower incidence of penile pain due to lower doses of alprostadil. However, fibrosis was more common (5-10%) when papaverine was used

(depending on total dose). In addition, mild hepatotoxicity has been reported with papaverine (124). Despite high efficacy rates, 5-10% of patients will not respond to combination intracavernous injections. The combination of sildenafil with intracavernous injection of the triple combination regimen may salvage as many as 31% of patients who do not respond to the triple combination alone (125). However, combination therapy was associated with an incidence of adverse effects in 33% of patients, including dizziness in 20% of patients.

This strategy can be considered in carefully selected patients before proceeding to a penile implant.

3.8.1.3 Intraurethral alprostadil

A specific formulation of alprostadil (125-1000 µg) in a medicated pellet (MUSE™) has been approved for use in ED (126). A vascular interaction between the urethra and the corpora cavernosa enables drug transfer between these structures (127). Erections sufficient for intercourse were achieved in 30-65.9% of patients. In clinical practice, only the higher doses (500 and 1000 µg) have been used with low consistency rates (127-129). The application of a constriction ring at the root of the penis (ACTIS™) may improve efficacy (130).

The most common adverse events are local pain (29-41%) and dizziness (1.9-14%). Penile fibrosis and priapism are very rare (< 1%). Urethral bleeding (5%) and urinary tract infections (0.2%) are adverse events related to the mode of administration.

Efficacy rates are significantly lower than intracavernous pharmacotherapy (131). Intraurethral pharmacotherapy is a second-line therapy and provides an alternative to intracavernous injections in patients who prefer a less invasive, though less efficacious, treatment.

3.9 Third-line therapy (penile prostheses)

The surgical implantation of a penile prosthesis may be considered in patients who do not respond to pharmacotherapy or who prefer a permanent solution to their problem. Two types of prosthesis exist: malleable (semi-rigid) and inflatable (two- or three-piece).

Most patients prefer the three-piece inflatable devices due to the more 'natural' erections obtained. However, the two-piece inflatable prosthesis can be a reliable option with fewer mechanical complications and is easier to implant. A semi-rigid prosthesis provides a constantly rigid penis and may be suitable in older patients with infrequent sexual intercourse (132). The inflatable prosthesis is much more expensive. In several countries, patients are reimbursed for the cost of the prosthesis provided the ED has an organic cause and the patient has undergone a complete impotence assessment.

Prosthesis implantation has one of the highest satisfaction rates (70-87%) among treatment options for ED based on appropriate consultation (133-137).

*3.9.1 **Complications***

The two main complications of penile prosthesis implantation are mechanical failures and infection. Several technical modifications of the most commonly used three-piece prosthesis (AMS 700CX/CXM™ and Mentor Alpha I™) resulted in mechanical failure rates of less than 5% at 5-year follow-up (136,137). Careful surgical technique with proper antibiotic prophylaxis against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria reduced infections rates to 2-3%. The infection rate may be further reduced to 1% by implanting an antibiotic-impregnated prosthesis (AMS Inhibizone™) or hydrophilic-coated prosthesis (Mentor Titan™) (138,139). Although diabetes is considered to be one of the main risk factors for infection, this is not supported by current data (132). Infections, as well as erosions, are significantly higher (9%) in patients with spinal cord injuries (9%) (132). Infection requires removal of the prosthesis, antibiotic administration and re-implantation after 6-12 months. However, salvage therapy with removal and re-implantation at the same time, after copious irrigation of the corpora with multi-drug solutions, had an 82% success rate (140).

*3.9.2 **Conclusion***

Penile implants are an attractive solution for patients who do not respond to oral therapy (141).

3.10 Guidelines on the treatment of ED

	LE	GR
Lifestyle changes and risk factor modification must precede or accompany ED treatment.	1b	A
Pro-erectile treatments have to be given at the earliest opportunity after radical prostatectomy.	1b	A
When a curable cause of ED is found, the cause must be treated first.	1b	B
PDE5 inhibitors are first-line therapy.	1a	A
Daily administration of PDE5 inhibitors may improve results and restore erectile function.	1b	A

Inadequate/incorrect prescription and poor patient education are the main causes of a lack of response to PDE5 inhibitors.	3	B
Testosterone replacement restores efficacy in hypogonadic non-responders to PDE5 inhibitors.	1b	B
Apomorphine can be used in mild-to-moderate ED or psychogenic causes or in patients with contraindications for the use of PDE5 inhibitors.	1b	B
A vacuum constriction device can be used in patients with a stable relationship.	4	C
Intracavernous injection is second-line therapy.	1b	B
Penile implant is third-line therapy.	4	C

PDE5 inhibitor = phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor; ED = erectile dysfunction.

3.11 References

1. Hatzichristou D, Rosen RC, Broderick G, et al. Clinical evaluation and management strategy for sexual dysfunction in men and women. J Sex Med 2004 Jun;1(1):49-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422983
2. Derby CA, Mohr BA, Goldstein I, et al. Modifiable risk factors and erectile dysfunction: can lifestyle changes modify risk? Urology 2000 Aug;56(2):302-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10925098
3. Moyad MA, Barada JH, Lue TF, et al; Sexual Medicine Society Nutraceutical Committee. Prevention and treatment of erectile dysfunction using lifestyle changes and dietary supplements: what works and what is worthless, part I. Urol Clin North Am 2004 May;31(2):249-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15123405
4. Moyad MA, Barada JH, Lue TF, et al; Sexual Medicine Society Nutraceutical Committee. Prevention and treatment of erectile dysfunction using lifestyle changes and dietary supplements: what works and what is worthless, part II. Urol Clin North Am 2004 May;31(2):259-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15123406
5. Esposito K, Giugliano F, Di Palo C, et al. Effect of lifestyle changes on erectile dysfunction in obese men: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2004 Jun;291(24):2978-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15213209
6. Guay AT. Optimizing response to phosphodiesterase therapy: impact of risk-factor management. J Androl 2003 Nov-Dec;24(6 Suppl):S59-S62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14581497
7. Montorsi F, Guazzoni G, Strambi LF, et al. Recovery of spontaneous erectile function after nerve-sparing radical retropubic prostatectomy with and without early intracavernous injections of alprostadil: results of a prospective, randomized trial. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1408-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302132
8. Raina R, Pahlajani G, Agarwal A, et al. The early use of transurethral alprostadil after radical prostatectomy potentially facilitates an earlier return of erectile function and successful sexual activity. BJU Int 2007 Dec;100(6):1317-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17850385
9. Raina R, Agarwal A, Ausmundson S, et al. Early use of vacuum constriction device following radical prostatectomy facilitates early sexual activity and potentially earlier return of erectile function. Int J Impot Res 2006 Jan-Feb;18(1):77-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16107868
10. Lane BR, Abouassaly R, Angermeier KW, et al. Three-piece inflatable penile prostheses can be safely implanted after radical prostatectomy through a transverse scrotal incision. Urology 2007 Sep;70(3):539-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17686509
11. Bianco F, Kattan M, Eastham J, et al. Surgeon and surgical volume as predictors of erectile function outcomes following radical prostatectomy. J Sex Med 2004;1(Suppl 1):34. abstr O17.
12. Ayyathurai R, Manoharan M, Nieder AM, et al. Factors affecting erectile function after radical retropubic prostatectomy: results from 1620 consecutive patients. BJU Int 2008 Apr;101(7):833-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18190627
13. Hollenbeck BK, Dunn RL, Wei JT, et al. Determinants of long-term sexual health outcome after radical prostatectomy measured by a validated instrument. J Urol 2003 Apr;169(4):1453-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629382
14. Schwartz EJ, Wong P, Graydon RJ. Sildenafil preserves intracorporeal smooth muscle after radical retropubis prostatectomy. J Urol 2004 Feb;171(2 Pt 1):771-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713808

15. Padma-Nathan H, McCullough AR, Levine LA, et al, Study Group. Collaborators (12) Andrianne R, Bell D, Broderick G, Carrier S, Cuzin B, Deeths HJ, Hellstrom W, Herschorn S, Lewis RW, Rosen RC, Shabsigh R, Stricker P. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of postoperative nightly sildenafil citrate for the prevention of erectile dysfunction after bilateral nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy. Int J Impot Res 2008 Sep-Oct;20(5):479-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650827
16. Bannowsky A, Schulze H, van der Horst C, et al. Recovery of erectile function after nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy: improvement with nightly low-dose sildenafil. BJU Int 2008 May;101(10): 1279-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18284406
17. Raina R, Lakin MM, Agarwal A, et al. Efficacy and factors associated with successful outcome of sildenafil citrate use for erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy. Urology 2004 May;63(5): 960-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134989
18. McCullough AR, Levine LA, Padma-Nathan H. Return of nocturnal erections and erectile function after bilateral nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy in men treated nightly with sildenafil citrate: subanalysis of a longitudinal randomized double-blind placebo-controlled trial. J Sex Med 2008 Feb;5(2):476-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18086170
19. Montorsi F, Nathan HP, McCullough A, et al. Tadalafil in the treatment of erectile dysfunction following bilateral nerve sparing radical retropubic prostatectomy: a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1036-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311032
20. Brock G, Nehra A, Lipshultz LI, et al. Safety and efficacy of vardenafil for the treatment of men with erectile dysfunction after radical retropubic prostatectomy. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1278-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501741
21. Nehra A, Grantmyre J, Nadel A, Thibonnier M, et al. Vardenafil improved patient satisfaction with erectile hardness, orgasmic function and sexual experience in men with erectile dysfunction following nerve sparing radical prostatectomy. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2067-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879836
22. Montorsi F, Brock G, Lee J, et al. Effect of nightly versus on-demand vardenafil on recovery of erectile function in men following bilateral nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4): 924-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18640769
23. Mulhall J, Land S, Parker M, et al. The use of an erectogenic pharmacotherapy regimen following radical prostatectomy improves recovery of spontaneous erectile function. J Sex Med 2005 Jul; 2(4):532-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422848
24. Montague DK. Penile prosthesis implantation for end-stage erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy. Rev Urol 2005;7(Suppl 2):S51-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16985898
25. Greenstein A, Mabjeesh NJ, Sofer M, et al. Does sildenafil combined with testosterone gel improve erectile dysfunction in hypogonadal men in whom testosterone supplement therapy alone failed? J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2):530-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643239
26. Morales A, Heaton JP. Hormonal erectile dysfunction. Evaluation and management. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):279-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402581
27. Rao DS, Donatucci CF. Vasculogenic impotence. Arterial and venous surgery. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):309-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402583
28. Wespes E, Wildschutz T, Roumeguere T, et al.The place of surgery for vascular impotence in the third millennium. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1284-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501742
29. Rosen RC. Psychogenic erectile dysfunction. Classification and management. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):269-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402580
30. Lue TF. Erectile dysfunction. N Engl J Med 2000 Jun;342(24):1802-13. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10853004

31. Moncada I, Jara J, Subirá D, et al. Efficacy of sildenafil citrate at 12 hours after dosing: re-exploring the therapeutic window. Eur Urol 2004 Sep;46(3):357-60; discussion 360-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15306108
32. Langtry HD, Markham A. Sildenafil: a review of its use in erectile dysfunction. Drugs 1999 Jun;57(6): 967-89.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10400408
33. Goldstein I, Lue TF, Padma-Nathan H, et al; Sildenafil Study Group. Oral sildenafil in the treatment of erectile dysfunction. 1998. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 2):1197-203.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905901
34. Stuckey BG, Jadzinsky MN, Murphy LJ, et al. Sildenafil citrate for treatment of erectile dysfunction in men with type 1 diabetes: results of a randomized controlled trial. Diabetes Care 2003 Feb;26(2): 279-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12547849
35. Porst H, Padma-Nathan H, Giuliano F, et al. Efficacy of tadalafil for the treatment of erectile dysfunction at 24 and 36 hours after dosing: a randomized controlled trial. Urology 2003 Jul;62(1): 121-5; discussion 125-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837435
36. Brock GB, McMahon CG, Chen KK, et al. Efficacy and safety of tadalafil for the treatment of erectile dysfunction: results of integrated analyses. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1332-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352386
37. Montorsi F, Verheyden B, Meuleman E, et al. Long-term safety and tolerability of tadalafil in the treatment of erectile dysfunction. Eur Urol 2004 Mar;45(3):339-44; discussion 344-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15036680
38. Sáenz de Tejada I, Anglin G, Knight JR, et al. Effects of tadalafil on erectile dysfunction in men with diabetes. Diabetes Care 2002 Dec;25(12):2159-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12453954
39. Bischoff E, Schneider K. A conscious-rabbit model to study vardenafil hydrochloride and other agents that influence penile erection. Int J Impot Res 2001 Aug;13(4):230-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11494080
40. Keating GM, Scott LJ. Vardenafil: a review of its use in erectile dysfunction. Drugs 2003;63(23):2673-703.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14636086
41. Porst H, Rosen R, Padma-Nathan H, et al. The efficacy and tolerability of vardenafil, a new, oral, selective phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor, in patients with erectile dysfunction: the first at-home clinical trial. Int J Impot Res 2001 Aug;13(4):192-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11494074
42. Potempa AJ, Ulbrich E, Bernard I, et al. Efficacy of vardenafil in men with erectile dysfunction: a flexible-dose community practice study. Eur Urol 2004 Jul;46(1):73-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183550
43. Goldstein I, Young JM, Fischer J, et al; Vardenafil Diabetes Study Group. Vardenafil, a new phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor, in the treatment of erectile dysfunction in men with diabetes: a multicentre double-blind placebo-controlled fixed-dose study. Diabetes Care 2003 Mar;26(3):777-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12610037
44. Ahn GJ, Yu JY, Choi SM, et al. Chronic administration of phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitor improves erectile and endothelial function in a rat model of diabetes. Int J Androl 2005 Oct;28(5):260-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16128985
45. Kovanecz I, Rambhatla A, Ferrini MG, et al. Chronic daily tadalafil prevents the corporal fibrosis and veno-occlusive dysfunction that occurs after cavernosal nerve resection. BJU Int 2008 Jan;101(2): 203-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17888043
46. Ferrini MG, Davila HH, Kovanecz I, et al. Vardenafil prevents fibrosis and loss of corporal smooth muscle that occurs after bilateral cavernosal nerve resection in the rat. Urology 2006 Aug;68(2): 429-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904479
47. Vignozzi L, Filippi S, Morelli A, et al. Effect of chronic tadalafil administration on penile hypoxia induced by cavernous neurotomy in the rat. J Sex Med 2006 May;3(3):419-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16681467

48. Ferrini MG, Kovanecz I, Sanchez S, et al. Long-term continuous treatment with sildenafil ameliorates aging-related erectile dysfunction and the underlying corporal fibrosis in the rat. Biol Reprod 2007 May;76(5):915-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17287493
49. Behr-Roussel D, Gorny D, Mevel K, et al. Chronic sildenafil improves erectile function and endothelium-dependent cavernosal relaxation in rats: lack of tachyphylaxis. Eur Urol 2005 Jan;47(1):87-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15582254
50. McMahon C. Efficacy and safety of daily tadalafil in men with erectile dysfunction previously unresponsive to on-demand tadalafil. J Sex Med 2004 Nov;1(3):292-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422959
51. McMahon C. Comparison of efficacy, safety and tolerability of on-demand tadalafil and daily dosed tadalafil for the treatment of erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2005 May;2(3):415-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422874
52. Porst H, Giuliano F, Glina S, et al. Evaluation of the efficacy and safety of once-a-day dosing of tadalafil 5mg and 10mg in the treatment of erectile dysfunction: results of a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):351-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16766116
53. Rajfer J, Aliotta PJ, Steidle CP, et al. Tadalafil dosed once a day in men with erectile dysfunction: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study in the US. Int J Impot Res 2007 Jan-Feb; 19(1):95-103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov.pubmed/16871272
54. Porst H, Rajfer J, Casabé A, et al. Long-term safety and efficacy of tadalafil 5 mg dosed once daily in men with erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2008 Sep;5(9):2160-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18557812
55. Zumbé J, Porst H, Sommer F, et al. Comparable efficacy of once-daily versus on-demand vardenafil in men with mild-to-moderate erectile dysfunction: findings of the RESTORE study. Eur Urol 2008 Jul;54(1):204-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18395326
56. Rosano GM, Aversa A, Vitale C, et al. Chronic treatment with tadalafil improves endothelial function in men with increased cardiovascular risk. Eur Urol 2005 Feb;47(2):214-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15661417
57. Aversa A, Greco E, Bruzziches R, et al. Relationship between chronic tadalafil administration and improvement of endothelial function in men with erectile dysfunction: a pilot study. Int J Impot Res 2007 Mar-Apr;19(2):200-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16943794
58. Aversa A, Vitale C, Volterrani M, et al. Chronic administration of Sildenafil improves markers of endothelial function in men with Type 2 diabetes. Diabet Med 2008 Jan;25(1):37-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18199130
59. Hatzichristou D, Gambla M, Rubio-Aurioles E, et al. Efficacy of tadalafil once daily in men with diabetes mellitus and erectile dysfunction. Diabet Med 2008 Feb;25(2):138-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18290855
60. Mirone V, Costa P, Damber JE, et al. An evaluation of an alternative dosing regimen with tadalafil, 3 times/week, for men with erectile dysfunction: SURE study in 14 European countries. Eur Urol 2005 Jun;47(6):846-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925082
61. Kloner RA. Novel phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors: assessing hemodynamic effects and safety parameters. Clin Cardiol 2004 Apr;27(4 Suppl 1):I20-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15115192
62. Thadani U, Smith W, Nash S, et al. The effect of vardenafil, a potent and highly selective phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitor for the treatment of erectile dysfunction, on the cardiovascular response to exercise in patients with coronary artery disease. J Am Coll Cardiol 2002 Dec;40(11):2006-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12475462
63. Vardi Y, Bulus M, Reisner S, et al. Effects of sildenafil citrate (Viagra) on hemodynamic parameters during exercise testing and occurrence of ventricular arrhythmias in patients with erectile dysfunction and cardiovascular disease. Eur Urol 2003 May;43(5):544-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12706001

64. Auerbach SM, Gittelman M, Mazzu A, et al. Simultaneous administration of vardenafil and tamsulosin does not induce clinically significant hypotension in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):998-1003; discussion 1003-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533493
65. Kloner RA, Jackson G, Emmick JT, et al. Interaction between the phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitor, tadalafil and 2 alpha-blockers, doxazosin and tamsulosin in healthy normotensive men. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1935-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540759
66. Nichols DJ, Muirhead GJ, Harness JA. Pharmacokinetics of sildenafil citrate after single oral doses in healthy male subjects: absolute bioavailability, food effects and dose proportionality. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2002;53(Suppl 1);5S-12S.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11879254
67. Forgue ST, Patterson BE, Bedding AW, et al. Tadalafil pharmacokinetics in healthy subjects. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2006 Mar;61(3):280-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16487221
68. Klotz T, Sachse R, Heidrich A, et al. Vardenafil increases penile rigidity and tumescence in erectile dysfunction patients: a RigiScan and pharmacokinetic study. World J Urol 2001 Feb;19(1):32-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11289568
69. Padma-Nathan H, Stecher VJ, Sweeney M, et al. Minimal time to successful intercourse after sildenafil citrate: results of a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Urology 2003 Sep:62(3):400-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12946731
70. Rosen RC, Padma-Nathan H, Shabsigh R, et al. Determining the earliest time within 30 minutes to erectogenic effect after tadalafil 10 and 20 mg: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, at-home study. J Sex Med 2004 Sep:1(2);193-200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422974
71. Montorsi F, Padma-Nathan H, Buvat J, et al; Vardenafil Study Group. Earliest time to onset of action leading to successful intercourse with vardenafil determined in an at-home setting: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. J Sex Med 2004 Sep; 1(2):168-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422971
72. Rajagopalan P, Mazzu A, Xia C, et al. Effect of high-fat breakfast and moderate-fat evening meal on the pharmacokinetics of vardenafil, an oral phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitor for the treatment of erectile dysfunction. J Clin Pharmacol 2003 Mar;43(3):260-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12638394
73. McCullough AR, Barada JH, Fawzy A, et al. Achieving treatment optimization with sildenafil citrate (Viagra) in patients with erectile dysfunction. Urology 2002 Sep;60(2 Suppl 2):28-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12414331
74. Hatzichristou D, Moysidis K, Apostolidis A, et al. Sildenafil failures may be due to inadequate patient instructions and follow-up: a study on 100 non-responders. Eur Urol 2005 Apr;47(4):518-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15774252
75. Hatzimouratidis K, Moysidis K, Bekos A, et al. Treatment strategy for 'non-responders' to tadalafil and vardenafil: a real-life study. Eur Urol 2006 Jul;50(1):126-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16564127
76. Gruenwald I, Shenfeld O, Chen J, et al. Positive effect of counseling and dose adjustment in patients with erectile dysfunction who failed treatment with sildenafil. Eur Urol 2006 Jul;50(1):134-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16527391
77. Shabsigh R, Kaufman JM, Steidle C, et al. Randomized study of testosterone gel as adjunctive therapy to sildenafil in hypogonadal men with erectile dysfunction who do not respond to sildenafil alone. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):658-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247755
78. Carson CC, Hatzichristou DG, Carrier S, et al; Patient Response with Vardenafil in Slidenafil Non-Responders (PROVEN) Study Group. Erectile response with vardenafil in sildenafil nonresponders: a multicentre, double-blind, 12-week, flexible-dose, placebo-controlled erectile dysfunction clinical trial. BJU Int 2004 Dec;94(9):1301-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15610110
79. Eardley I, Montorsi F, Jackson G, et al. Factors associated with preference for sildenafil citrate and tadalafil for treating erectile dysfunction in men naive to phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitor therapy: post hoc analysis of data from a multicentre, randomized, open-label, crossover study. BJU Int 2007 Jul;100(1):122-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17552960

80. McMahon C. Efficacy and safety of daily tadalafil in men with erectile dysfunction previously unresponsive to on-demand tadalafil. J Sex Med 2004 Nov;1(3):292-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422959
81. Hagemann JH, Berding G, Bergh S, et al. Effects of visual sexual stimuli and apomorphine SL on cerebral activity in men with erectile dysfunction. Eur Urol 2003 Apr;43(4):412-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12667723
82. Montorsi F, Perani D, Anchisi D, et al. Brain activation patterns during video sexual stimulation following the administration of apomorphine: results of a placebo-controlled study. Eur Urol 2003 Apr;43(4):405-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12667722
83. Heaton JP. Apomorphine: an update of clinical trial results. Int J Impot Res 2000 Oct;12(Suppl 4): S67-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11035390
84. Dula E, Bukofzer S, Perdok R, et al. Double-blind, crossover comparison of 3 mg apomorphine SL with placebo and with 4 mg apomorphine SL in male erectile dysfunction. Eur Urol 2001 May;39(5):558-3; discussion 564.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11464037
85. Martínez R, Puigvert A, Pomerol JM, et al. Clinical experience with apomorphine hydrochloride: the first 107 patients. J Urol 2003 Dec;170(6 Pt 1):2352-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634414
86. Buvat J, Montorsi F. Safety and tolerability of apomorphine SL in patients with erectile dysfunction. BJU Int 2001 Oct;88 (Suppl 3):30-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11578277
87. Bukofzer S, Livesey N. Safety and tolerability of apomorphine SL (Uprima). Int J Impot Res 2001 Aug;13(Suppl 3):S40-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11477491
88. Fagan TC, Buttler S, Marbury T, et al; SLAPO Study Group. Cardiovascular safety of sublingual apomorphine in patients on stable doses of oral antihypertensive agents and nitrates. Am J Cardiol 2001 Oct;88(7):760-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11589843
89. Eardley I, Wright P, MacDonagh R, et al. An open-label, randomized, flexible-dose, crossover study to assess the comparative efficacy and safety of sildenafil citrate and apomorphine hydrochloride in men with erectile dysfunction. BJU Int 2004 Jun;93(9):1271-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15180621
90. Perimenis P, Gyftopoulos K, Giannitsas K, et al. A comparative, crossover study of the efficacy and safety of sildenafil and apomorphine in men with evidence of arteriogenic erectile dysfunction. Int J Impot Res 2004 Feb;16(1):2-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14963464
91. Afif-Abdo J, Teloken C, Damião R, et al. Comparative cross-over study of sildenafil and apomorphine for treating erectile dysfunction. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(7):829-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18537952
92. Montorsi F. Tolerability and safety of apomorphine SL (Ixense™). Int J Impot Res 2003 Apr;15 (Suppl 2):S7-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12825097
93. Padma-Nathan H, Christ G, Adaikan G, et al. Pharmacotherapy for erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2004 Sep;1(2):128-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422967
94. Goldstein I. Oral phentolamine: an alpha-1, alpha-2 adrenergic antagonist for the treatment of erectile dysfunction. Int J Impot Res 2000 Mar;12(Suppl 1):S75-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10845768
95. Telöken C, Rhoden EL, Sogari P, et al. Therapeutic effects of high dose yohimbine hydrochloride on organic erectile dysfunction. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):122-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400452
96. Costabile RA, Spevak M. Oral trazodone is not effective therapy for erectile dysfunction: a double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 1999 Jun;161(6):1819-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10332444
97. Hong B, Ji YH, Hong JH, et al. A double-blind crossover study evaluating the efficacy of korean red ginseng in patients with erectile dysfunction: a preliminary report. J Urol 2002 Nov;168(5):2070-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12394711

98. Montorsi F, Salonia A, Zanoni M, et al. Current status of local penile therapy. Int J Impot Res 2002 Feb;14(Suppl 1):S70-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11850739
99. Goldstein I, Payton TR, Schechter PJ. A double-blind, placebo-controlled, efficacy and safety study of topical gel formulation of 1% alprostadil (Topiglan) for the in-office treatment of erectile dysfunction. Urology 2001 Feb;57(2):301-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11182341
100. Levine LA, Dimitriou RJ. Vacuum constriction and external erection devices in erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):335-41, ix-x.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402585
101. Cookson MS, Nadig PW. Long-term results with vacuum constriction device. J Urol 1993 Feb;149(2): 290-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8426404
102. Lewis RW, Witherington R. External vacuum therapy for erectile dysfunction: use and results. World J Urol 1997;15(1):78-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9066099
103. Shabsigh R, Padma-Nathan H, Gittleman M, et al. Intracavernous alprostadil alfadex (EDEX/VIRIDAL) is effective and safe in patients with erectile dysfunction after failing sildenafil (Viagra). Urology 2000 Apr;55(4):477-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10736486
104. Leungwattanakij S, Flynn V Jr, Hellstrom WJ. Intracavernosal injection and intraurethral therapy for erectile dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2):343-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402586
105. Linet OI, Ogrinc FG. Efficacy and safety of intracavernosal alprostadil in men with erectile dysfunction. The Alprostadil Study Group. N Engl J Med 1996 Apr;334(14):873-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8596569
106. Porst H. The rationale for prostaglandin E1 in erectile failure: a survey of worldwide experience. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):802-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583582
107. Heaton JP, Lording D, Liu SN, et al. Intracavernosal alprostadil is effective for the treatment of erectile dysfunction in diabetic men. Int J Impot Res 2001 Dec;13(6):317-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11918246
108. Lakin MM, Montague DK, VanderBrug Medendorp S, et al. Intracavernous injection therapy: analysis of results and complications. J Urol 1990 Jun;143(6):1138-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342174
109. Kattan S. Double-blind randomized crossover study comparing intracorporeal prostaglandin E1 with combination of prostaglandin E1 and lidocaine in the treatment of organic impotence. Urology 1995 Jun;45(6):1032-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7771004
110. Moriel EZ, Rajfer J. Sodium bicarbonate alleviates penile pain induced by intracavernous injections for erectile dysfunction. J Urol 1993 May;149(5 Pt 2):1299-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8386779
111. Flynn RJ, Williams G. Long-term follow-up of patients with erectile dysfunction commenced on self injection with intracavernosal papaverine with or without phentolamine. Br J Urol 1996 Oct;78(4): 628-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8944522
112. Sundaram CP, Thomas W, Pryor LE, et al. Long-term follow-up of patients receiving injection therapy for erectile dysfunction. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6):932-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187703
113. Gupta R, Kirschen J, Barrow RC 2nd, et al. Predictors of success and risk factors for attrition in the use of intracavernous injection. J Urol 1997 May;157(5):1681-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9112505
114. Vardi Y, Sprecher E, Gruenwald I. Logistic regression and survival analysis of 450 impotent patients treated with injection therapy: long-term dropout parameters. J Urol 2000 Feb;163(2):467-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647656
115. Montorsi F, Althof SE, Sweeney M, et al. Treatment satisfaction in patients with erectile dysfunction switching from prostaglandin E(1) intracavernosal injection therapy to oral sildenafil citrate. Int J Impot Res 2003 Dec;15(6):444-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14671665

116. Raina R, Lakin MM, Agarwal A, et al. Long-term intracavernous therapy responders can potentially switch to sildenafil citrate after radical prostatectomy. Urology 2004 Mar;63(3):532-7; discussion 538. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15028452
117. Hatzichristou DG, Apostolidis A, Tzortzis V, et al. Sildenafil versus intracavernous injection therapy: efficacy and preference in patients on intracavernous injection for more than 1 year. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4):1197-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992365
118. Buvat J, Lemaire A, Ratajczyk J. Acceptance, efficacy and preference of sildenafil in patients on long term auto-intracavernosal therapy: a study with follow-up at one year. Int J Impot Res 2002 Dec;14(6): 483-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12494282
119. Mulhall JP, Daller M, Traish AM, et al. Intracavernosal forskolin: role in management of vasculogenic impotence resistant to standard 3-agent pharmacotherapy. J Urol 1997 Nov;158(5):1752-8; discussion 1758-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334594
120. Buvat J, Costa P, Morlier D, et al. Double-blind multicentre study comparing alprostadil alpha-cyclodextrin with moxisylyte chlorhydrate in patients with chronic erectile dysfunction. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):116-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400450
121. Bechara A, Casabé A, Chéliz G, et al. Comparative study of papaverine plus phentolamine versus prostaglandin E1 in erectile dysfunction. J Urol 1997 Jun;157(6):2132-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146599
122. Bennett AH, Carpenter AJ, Barada JH. An improved vasoactive drug combination for a pharmacological erection program. J Urol 1991 Dec;146(6):1564-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719248
123. McMahon CG. A comparison of the response to the intracavernosal injection of papaverine and phentolamine, prostaglandin E1 and a combination of all three agents in the management of impotence. Int J Impot Res 1991;3:113-21.
124. Levine SB, Althof SE, Turner LA, et al. Side effects of self administration of intracavernous papaverine and phentolamine for the treatment of impotence. J Urol 1989 Jan;141(1):54-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2908954
125. McMahon CG, Samali R, Johnson H. Treatment of intracorporeal injection nonresponse with sildenafil alone or in combination with triple agent intracorporeal injection therapy. J Urol 1999 Dec;162(6): 1992-7; discussion 1997-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569554
126. Padma-Nathan H, Hellstrom WJ, Kaiser FE, et al. Treatment of men with erectile dysfunction with transurethral alprostadil. Medicated Urethral System for Erection (MUSE) Study Group. N Engl J Med 1997 Jan;336(1):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8970933
127. Guay AT, Perez JB, Velásquez E, et al. Clinical experience with intraurethral alprostadil (MUSE) in the treatment of men with erectile dysfunction. A retrospective study. Medicated urethral system for erection. Eur Urol 2000 Dec;38(6):671-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11111182
128. Fulgham PF, Cochran JS, Denman JL, et al. Disappointing initial results with transurethral alprostadil for erectile dysfunction in a urology practice setting. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 1):2041-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817319
129. Mulhall JP, Jahoda AE, Ahmed A, et al. Analysis of the consistency of intraurethral prostaglandin E(1) (MUSE) during at-home use. Urology 2001 Aug;58(2):262-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489714
130. Lewis RW, Weldon K, Nemo K; the MUSE-ACTIS Study Group. Combined use of transurethral alprostadil and an adjustable penile constriction band in men with erectile dysfunction: results from a multicentre trial. Int J Impot Res 1998;10:S49 (365).
131. Shabsigh R, Padma-Nathan H, Gittleman M, et al. Intracavernous alprostadil alfadex is more efficacious, better tolerated, and preferred over intraurethral alprostadil plus optional actis: a comparative, randomized, crossover, multicentre study. Urology 2000 Jan;55(1):109-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654905
132. Montague DK, Angermeier KW. Penile prosthesis implantation. Urol Clin North Am 2001 May;28(2): 355-61, x. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402587

133. Holloway FB, Farah RN. Intermediate term assessment of the reliability, function and patient satisfaction with the AMS700 Ultrex penile prosthesis. J Urol 1997 May;157(5):1687-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9112506
134. Tefilli MV, Dubocq F, Rajpurkar A, et al. Assessment of psychosexual adjustment after insertion of inflatable penile prosthesis. Urology 1998 Dec;52(6):1106-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9836564
135. Wilson SK, Cleves MA, Delk JR 2nd. Comparison of mechanical reliability of original and enhanced Mentor Alpha I penile prosthesis. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):715-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458350
136. Montorsi F, Rigatti P, Carmignani G, et al. AMS three-piece inflatable implants for erectile dysfunction: a long-term multi- institutional study in 200 consecutive patients. Eur Urol 2000 Jan;37(1):50-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671785
137. Goldstein I, Newman L, Baum N, et al. Safety and efficacy outcome of mentor alpha-1 inflatable penile prosthesis implantation for impotence treatment. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):833-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072580
138. Carson CC 3rd. Efficacy of antibiotic impregnation of inflatable penile prostheses in decreasing infection in original implants. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1611-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017233
139. Wolter CE, Hellstrom WJ. The hydrophilic-coated inflatable penile prosthesis: 1-year experience. J Sex Med 2004 Sep;1(2):221-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16429621
140. Mulcahy JJ. Long-term experience with salvage of infected penile implants. J Urol 2000 Feb; 163(2):481-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647660
141. Montorsi F, Dehò F, Salonia A, et al. Penile implants in the era of oral drug treatment for erectile dysfunction. BJU Int 2004 Sep;94(5):745-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15329092

4. PREMATURE EJACULATION (PE)

4.1 Introduction

Although PE is a very common male sexual dysfunction, it is poorly understood. Patients are often unwilling to discuss their symptoms and many physicians do not know about effective treatments. As a result, patients may be misdiagnosed or mistreated (1). In addition, there is currently no registered pharmacological treatment for PE.

These guidelines provide an evidence-based analysis (2) of published data on definition, clinical evaluation and treatment. It provides recommendations to clinicians on the diagnosis and treatment of PE, without pre-empting physician judgement on individual cases.

4.2 Definition of PE

*4.2.1 **Overview***

There have previously been two official definitions of PE, neither of which were universally accepted:

- In the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders IV-Text Revision (DSM-IV-TR), PE is defined as a '*persistent or recurrent ejaculation with minimal sexual stimulation before, on, or shortly after penetration and before the person wishes it. The clinician must take into account factors that affect duration of the excitement phase, such as age, novelty of the sexual partner or situation, and recent frequency of sexual activity*' (3).
- In the World Health Organization's International Classification of Diseases-10 (ICD-10), PE is defined as '*the inability to delay ejaculation sufficiently to enjoy lovemaking, which is manifested by either an occurrence of ejaculation before or very soon after the beginning of intercourse (if a time limit is required: before or within 15 seconds of the beginning of intercourse) or ejaculation occurs in the absence of sufficient erection to make intercourse possible. The problem is not the result of prolonged absence from sexual activity*' (4).

Recently, two more definitions have been proposed:

- The Second International Consultation on Sexual and Erectile Dysfunction defined PE as '*ejaculation*

with minimal stimulation and earlier than desired, before or soon after penetration, which causes bother or distress, and over which the sufferer has little or no voluntary control' (5).

- The International Society for Sexual Medicine (ISSM) has adopted a completely new definition of PE which is the first evidence-based definition, '*Premature ejaculation is a male sexual dysfunction characterised by ejaculation which always or nearly always occurs prior to or within about one minute of vaginal penetration; and inability to delay ejaculation on all or nearly all vaginal penetrations; and negative personal consequences, such as distress, bother, frustration and/or the avoidance of sexual intimacy*'. It must be noted that this definition is limited to men with lifelong PE who engage in vaginal intercourse since there are insufficient objective data to propose an evidence-based definition for acquired PE (6).

All four definitions have taken into account the time to ejaculation, the inability to control or delay ejaculation, and negative consequences (bother/distress) from PE. However, the major point of debate is quantifying the time to ejaculation, which is usually described by intravaginal ejaculatory latency time (IELT). Several proposals for updating the definition of PE in the forthcoming DSM-V and ICD-11 have been presented (7-11).

4.2.2 ***Classifications***

Premature ejaculation is classified as 'lifelong' (primary) or 'acquired' (secondary) (12). Lifelong PE is characterised by onset from the first sexual experience, remains so during life and ejaculation occurs too fast (before vaginal penetration or < 1-2 min after). Acquired PE is characterised by a gradual or sudden onset following normal ejaculation experiences before onset and time to ejaculation is short (usually not as short as in lifelong PE).

Recently, two more PE syndromes have been proposed (11):

- 'Natural variable PE' is characterised by inconsistent and irregular early ejaculations, representing a normal variation in sexual performance.
- 'Premature-like ejaculatory dysfunction' is characterised by subjective perception of consistent or inconsistent rapid ejaculation during intercourse, while ejaculation latency time is in the normal range or can even last longer. It should not be regarded as a symptom or manifestation of true medical pathology.

The addition of these new types may aid patient stratification, diagnosis and treatment, but their exact role remains to be defined (13).

4.3 Epidemiology of PE

4.3.1 ***Prevalence***

The major problem in assessing the prevalence of PE is the lack of an accurate (validated) definition at the time the surveys were conducted (14). However, epidemiological research has consistently shown that PE, at least according to the DSM-IV definition, is the most common male sexual dysfunction, with prevalence rates of 20-30% (15-17).

The highest prevalence rate of 31% (men aged 18-59 years) was found by the USA NHSLS study (16). Prevalence rates from 18 to 29 years, 30 to 39 years, 40 to 49 years and 50 to 59 years were 30%, 32%, 28% and 55%, respectively. These high prevalence rates may be a result of the dichotomous scale (yes/no) in a single question asking if ejaculation occurred too early, as the prevalence rates in European studies have been significantly lower. A British mailed questionnaire survey estimated that the prevalence rate of PE was between 14% (3 months) and 31% (life-time) (18). A French telephone survey of men aged 18 to 69 years estimated the life-time prevalence of early ejaculation at 15%, including 5% who often had experienced ejaculation prior to penetration and 10% who often had ejaculated too rapidly after vaginal intromission (19). A Swedish interview reported an overall prevalence rate of 9% in men aged 18 to 74 years (20), with prevalence by age being 4% for 18-24 years, 7% for 25-34 years, 8% for 35-49 years, 8% for 50-65 years and 14% for 66-74 years. A Danish study about sexual problems using a questionnaire (12 questions) and an interview (23 questions) reported the prevalence rate for PE to be 14% in men aged 51 years (21). An Italian questionnaire survey recorded a prevalence rate of 21% (22). Finally, in a self-administered questionnaire survey in the Netherlands, the prevalence rate was 13% in men aged 50-78 years (23).

The prevalence of PE in the Premature Ejaculation Prevalence and Attitudes (PEPA) survey (a multinational, internet-based survey) was 22.7% (24.0% in the USA, 20.3% in Germany, and 20.0% in Italy) (17). The Global Study of Sexual Attitudes and Behaviors (GSSAB) survey was conducted in men between 40 and 80 years old in 29 different countries using personal and telephone interviews and self-completed mailed questionnaires; it confirmed that the worldwide prevalence of PE was almost 30%. Except for a low reported rate of PE in Middle Eastern countries (10-15%), prevalence was relatively similar throughout the rest of the world (15). Finally, the prevalence rate of PE was 18% in a five-country European Observational study using the IELT and the Premature Ejaculation Profile (PEP) (24), comparable to those obtained in a similarly designed USA observational study (25).

Further research is needed on the prevalence of lifelong and acquired PE. Limited data suggests that the prevalence of lifelong PE, defined as IELT < 1-2 min, is about 2-5% (20, 25). These results are supported by the moderate genetic influence on PE (26) and low prevalence rates of IELT < 1 min (27).

*4.3.2 **Pathophysiology and risk factors***

The aetiology of PE is unknown, with little data to support suggested biological and psychological hypotheses, including anxiety, penile hypersensitivity, and 5-HT receptor dysfunction (5). In addition, the pathophysiology of PE is largely unknown. In contrast to ED, there is no impairment of the physiological events leading up to the forceful expulsion of sperm at the urethral meatus.

A significant proportion of men with ED also experience PE (15). High levels of performance anxiety related to ED may worsen PE, with a risk of misdiagnosing PE instead of the underlying ED.

According to the NHLS, the prevalence of PE is not affected by age (16,17), unlike ED, which increases with age. Premature ejaculation is not affected by marital or income status (16). However, PE is more common in blacks, Hispanic men and men from Islamic backgrounds (28,29) and may be higher in men with a lower educational level (15,16). Other risk factors may include a genetic predisposition (30), poor overall health status and obesity (16), prostate inflammation (31,32), thyroid hormone disorders (33), emotional problems and stress (16,34), and traumatic sexual experiences (1516).

In the only published study on risk modification/prevention strategies (35), successful eradication of causative organisms in patients with chronic prostatitis and PE produced marked improvements in IELT and ejaculatory control compared to untreated patients.

4.4 Impact of PE on QoL

Men with PE are more likely to report low satisfaction with their sexual relationship, low satisfaction with sexual intercourse, difficulty relaxing during intercourse, and less frequent intercourse (36,37). However, the negative impact of PE extends beyond sexual dysfunction. PE has a detrimental effect on self-confidence and the relationship with the partner, and may cause mental distress, anxiety, embarrassment and depression (36, 38). Sex drive and overall interest in sex does not appear to be affected by PE (39). However, the partner's satisfaction with the sexual relationship decreased with increasing severity of the man's condition (40).

Despite the serious psychological and QoL consequences of PE, few men seek treatment. In the GSSAB survey, 78% of men who self-reported a sexual dysfunction sought no professional help or advice for their sexual problems (15), with men more likely to seek treatment for ED than for PE (15). In the PEPA survey, only 9% of men with self-reported PE consulted a doctor (17).

The main reasons for not discussing PE with their physician are patient embarrassment and a belief that there is no treatment. Physicians are often uncomfortable discussing sexuality with their patients usually because of embarrassment and a lack of training or expertise in treating PE (41,42). Physicians need to encourage patients to talk about PE.

4.5 Diagnosis of PE

Diagnosis of PE is based on the patient's medical and sexual history (43,44). History should classify PE as lifelong or acquired and determine whether PE is situational (under specific circumstances or with a specific partner) or consistent. Special attention should be given to the duration time of ejaculation, degree of sexual stimulus, impact on sexual activity and QoL, and drug use or abuse. It is also important to distinguish PE from ED.

Many patients with ED develop secondary PE caused by the anxiety associated with difficulty in attaining and maintaining an erection (45). Furthermore, some patients are not aware that loss of erection after ejaculation is normal and may erroneously complain of ED, while the actual problem is PE (46).

There are several overlapping definitions of PE, with four shared factors (Table 7), resulting in a multidimensional diagnosis (47).

Table 7: Common factors in different definitions of ED

Time to ejaculation assessed by IELT
Perceived control
Distress
Interpersonal difficulty related to the ejaculatory dysfunction

*4.5.1 **Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time (IELT)***

The use of IELT alone is not sufficient to define PE, as there is significant overlap between men with and without PE (24,25). Moreover, IELT has a significant direct effect on perceived control over ejaculation, but not

a significant direct effect on ejaculation-related personal distress or satisfaction with sexual intercourse (48). In addition, perceived control over ejaculation has a significant direct effect on both ejaculation-related personal distress and satisfaction with sexual intercourse (each showing direct effects on interpersonal difficulty related to ejaculation).

In everyday clinical practice, self-estimated IELT is sufficient. Self-estimated and stopwatch-measured IELT are interchangeable and correctly assign PE status with 80% sensitivity and 80% specificity (49). Specificity can be improved further to 96% by combining IELT with a single-item patient-reported outcome (PRO) on control over ejaculation and satisfaction with sexual intercourse (scale ranging from 0 = very poor to 4 = very good) and on personal distress and interpersonal difficulty (0 = not at all to 4 = extremely). However, stopwatch-measured IELT is necessary in clinical trials.

*4.5.2 **PE assessment questionnaires***

The need to assess PE objectively has led to the development of several questionnaires based on the use of PROs (47). Only two questionnaires can discriminate between patients who have PE and those who do not:

- Premature Ejaculation Diagnostic Tool (PEDT: five-item questionnaire based on focus groups and interviews from the USA, Germany and Spain. Assesses control, frequency, minimal stimulation, distress and interpersonal difficulty (50,51).
- Arabic Index of Premature Ejaculation (AIPE): seven-item questionnaire developed in Saudi Arabia assesses sexual desire, hard erections for sufficient intercourse, time to ejaculation, control, satisfaction for the patient and partner, anxiety or depression (52).

These tools are a significant step in simplifying the methodology of PE drug studies, though further cross-cultural validation is needed (53).

Other questionnaires used to characterise PE and determine treatment effects include the PEP (25), Index of Premature Ejaculation (IPE), (54) and Male Sexual Health Questionnaire Ejaculatory Dysfunction (MSHQ-EjD) (55). Currently, their role is optional in everyday clinical practice.

*4.5.3 **Physical examination and investigations***

Physical examination is part of the initial assessment of men with PE. It includes a brief examination of the vascular, endocrine and neurological systems to identify underlying medical conditions associated with PE or other sexual dysfunctions, such as chronic illness, endocrinopathy, autonomic neuropathy, Peyronie's disease, urethritis or prostatitis. Laboratory or physiological testing should be directed by specific findings from history or physical examination and is not routinely recommended (44).

4.6 Guidelines recommendations on the diagnosis of PE

	LE	GR
Diagnosis and classification of PE is based on medical and sexual history. It should be multidimensional and assess IELT, perceived control, distress and interpersonal difficulty due to the ejaculatory dysfunction.	1a	A
Clinical use of self-estimated IELT is adequate. Stopwatch-measured IELT is necessary in clinical trials.	2a	B
Patient-reported outcomes (PROs) have the potential to identify men with PE. Further research is needed before PROs can be recommended for clinical use.	3	C
Physical examination may be necessary in initial assessment of PE to identify underlying medical conditions that may be associated with PE or other sexual dysfunctions, particularly ED.	3	C
Routine laboratory or neurophysiological tests are not recommended. They should only be directed by specific findings from history or physical examination.	3	C

4.7 References

1. Rosenberg MT, Sadovsky R. Identification and diagnosis of premature ejaculation. Int J Clin Pract 2007 Jun;61(6):903-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17504352
2. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]

3. American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. 4th Ed. Text Revision. Washington, D.C., American Psychiatric Publishing, Inc, 2000.
4. International Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems. 10th Ed. Geneva, World Health Organization, 1994.
5. McMahon CG, Abdo C, Incrocci L, et al. Disorders of orgasm and ejaculation in men. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(1):58-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422984
6. McMahon CG, Althof SE, Waldinger MD, et al. An evidence-based definition of lifelong premature ejaculation: report of the International Society for Sexual Medicine (ISSM) ad hoc committee for the definition of premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2008 Jul;5(7):1590-606.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18466262
7. Balon R, Segraves RT, Clayton A. Issues for DSM-V: sexual dysfunction, disorder, or variation along normal distribution: toward rethinking DSM criteria of sexual dysfunctions. Am J Psychiatry 2007 Feb;164(2):198-200. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17267778
8. Waldinger MD, Schweitzer DH. The DSM-IV-TR is an inadequate diagnostic tool for premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2007 May;4(3):822-3. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17498112
9. Waldinger MD, Schweitzer DH. The use of old and recent DSM definitions of premature ejaculation in observational studies: a contribution to the present debate for a new classification of PE in the DSM-V. J Sex Med 2008 May;5(5):1079-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18331260
10. Waldinger MD, Schweitzer DH. Changing paradigms from a historical DSM-III and DSM-IV view toward an evidence-based definition of premature ejaculation. Part I-validity of DSM-IV-TR. J Sex Med 2006 Jul;3(4):682-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839325
11. Waldinger MD, Schweitzer DH. Changing paradigms from a historical DSM-III and DSM-IV view toward an evidence-based definition of premature ejaculation. Part II-proposals for DSM-V and ICD-11. J Sex Med 2006 Jul;3(4):693-705.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839326
12. Godpodinoff ML. Premature ejaculation: clinical subgroups and etiology. J Sex Marital Ther 1989 Summer;15(2):130-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2769774
13. Waldinger MD. Premature ejaculation: state of the art. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Nov;34(4):591-9, vii-viii.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17983899
14. Waldinger MD. The neurobiological approach to premature ejaculation. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6): 2359-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441918
15. Laumann EO, Nicolosi A, Glasser DB, et al; GSSAB Investigators' Group. Sexual problems among women and men aged 40-80 y: prevalence and correlates identified in the Global Study of Sexual Attitudes and Behaviors. Int J Impot Res 2005 Jan-Feb;17(1):39-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15215881
16. Laumann EO, Paik A, Rosen RC. Sexual dysfunction in the United States: prevalence and predictors. JAMA 1999 Feb;281(6):537-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022110
17. Porst H, Montorsi F, Rosen RC, et al. The Premature Ejaculation Prevalence and Attitudes (PEPA) survey: prevalence, comorbidities, and professional help-seeking. Eur Urol 2007 Mar;51(5):816-23; discussion 824.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16934919
18. Dunn KM, Croft PR, Hackett GI. Sexual problems: a study of the prevalence and need for health care in the general population. Fam Pract 1998 Dec;15(6):519-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10078790
19. Spira A, Bajos N, Giami A, et al. Cross-national comparisons of sexual behavior surveys--methodological difficulties and lessons for prevention. Am J Public Health 1998 May;88(5):730-1. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9585733
20. Fugl-Meyer AR, Sjogren Fugl-Meyer K. Sexual disabilities, problems and satisfaction in 18-74 year old Swedes. Scan J Sexol 1999;2:79-105.

21. Solstad K, Hertoft P. Frequency of sexual problems and sexual dysfunction in middle-aged Danish men. Arch Sex Behav 1993 Feb;22(1):51-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8435039
22. Basile Fasolo C, Mirone V, Gentile V, et al; Andrology Prevention Week centers; Italian Society of Andrology (SIA).Premature ejaculation: prevalence and associated conditions in a sample of 12,558 men attending the andrology prevention week 2001–a study of the Italian Society of Andrology (SIA). J Sex Med 2005 May;2(3):376-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422869
23. Blanker MH, Bosch JL, Groeneveld FP, et al. Erectile and ejaculatory dysfunction in a community-based sample of men 50 to 78 years old: prevalence, concern, and relation to sexual activity. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):763-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306400
24. Giuliano F, Patrick DL, Porst H, et al; 3004 Study Group. Premature ejaculation: results from a five-country European observational study. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):1048-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17950985
25. Patrick DL, Althof SE, Pryor JL, et al. Premature ejaculation: an observational study of men and their partners. J Sex Med 2005 May;2(3):358-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422867
26. Jern P, Santtila P, Witting K, et al. Premature and delayed ejaculation: genetic and environmental effects in a population-based sample of Finnish twins. J Sex Med 2007 Nov;4(6):1739-49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17888070
27. Waldinger MD, Quinn P, Dilleen M, et al. A multinational population survey of intravaginal ejaculation latency time. J Sex Med 2005 Jul;2(4):492-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422843
28. Richardson D, Goldmeier D. Premature ejaculation–does country of origin tell us anything about etiology? J Sex Med 2005 Jul;2(4):508-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422845
29. Carson C, Gunn K. Premature ejaculation: definition and prevalence. Int J Impot Res 2006 Sep-Oct;18(Suppl 1):S5-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16953247
30. Waldinger MD, Rietschel M, Nöthen MM, et al. Familial occurrence of primary premature ejaculation. Psychiatr Genet 1998 Spring;8(1):37-40. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9564687
31. Screponi E, Carosa E, Di Stasi SM, et al. Prevalence of chronic prostatitis in men with premature ejaculation. Urology 2001 Aug;58(2):198-202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489699
32. Shamloul R, el-Nashaar A. Chronic prostatitis in premature ejaculation: a cohort study in 153 men. J Sex Med 2006 Jan;3(1):150-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16409229
33. Carani C, Isidori AM, Granata A, et al. Multicenter study on the prevalence of sexual symptoms in male hypo- and hyperthyroid patients. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2005 Dec;90(12):6472-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16204360
34. Dunn KM, Croft PR, Hackett GI. Association of sexual problems with social, psychological, and physical problems in men and women: a cross sectional population survey. J Epidemiol Community Health 1999 Mar;53(3):144-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10396490
35. El-Nashaar A, Shamloul R. Antibiotic treatment can delay ejaculation in patients with premature ejaculation and chronic bacterial prostatitis. J Sex Med 2007 Mar;4(2):491-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17367444
36. Rowland D, Perelman M, Althof S, et al. Self-reported premature ejaculation and aspects of sexual functioning and satisfaction. J Sex Med 2004 Sep;1(2):225-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16429622
37. Rowland DL, Patrick DL, Rothman M, et al. The psychological burden of premature ejaculation. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):1065-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296413
38. Symonds T, Roblin D, Hart K, et al. How does premature ejaculation impact a man's life? J Sex Marital Ther 2003 Oct-Dec;29(5):361-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14504007
39. Riley A, Segraves RT. Treatment of premature ejaculation. Int J Clin Pract 2006 Jun;60(6):694-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16805755

40. Byers ES, Grenier G. Premature or rapid ejaculation: heterosexual couples' perceptions of men's ejaculatory behavior. Arch Sex Behav 2003 Jun;32(3):261-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12807298
41. Sotomayor M. The burden of premature ejaculation: the patient's perspective. J Sex Med 2005 May;2(Suppl 2):110-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422797
42. Solursh DS, Ernst JL, Lewis RW, et al. The human sexuality education of physicians in North American medical schools. Int J Impot Res 2003 Oct;15(Suppl 5):S41-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14551576
43. Sharlip I. Diagnosis and treatment of premature ejaculation: the physician's perspective. J Sex Med 2005 May;2(Suppl 2):103-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422796
44. Shabsigh R. Diagnosing premature ejaculation: a review. J Sex Med 2006 Sep;3(4):318-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16939476
45. Rowland DL, Slob AK. Premature ejaculation: psychophysiological considerations in theory, research, and treatment. Annu Rev Sex Res 1997;8:224-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10051895
46. Althof SE. Prevalence, characteristics and implications of premature ejaculation/rapid ejaculation. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3 Pt 1):842-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469562
47. Althof SE, Symonds T. Patient reported outcomes used in the assessment of premature ejaculation. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Nov;34(4):581-9, vii.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17983898
48. Patrick DL, Rowland D, Rothman M. Interrelationships among measures of premature ejaculation: the central role of perceived control. J Sex Med 2007 May;4(3):780-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17419817
49. Rosen RC, McMahon CG, Niederberger C, et al. Correlates to the clinical diagnosis of premature ejaculation: results from a large observational study of men and their partners. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3): 1059-64; discussion 1064.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296411
50. Symonds T, Perelman M, Althof S, et al. Further evidence of the reliability and validity of the premature ejaculation diagnostic tool. Int J Impot Res 2007 Sep-Oct;19(5):521-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17568761
51. Symonds T, Perelman MA, Althof S, et al. Development and validation of a premature ejaculation diagnostic tool. Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):565-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17275165
52. Arafa M, Shamloul R. Development and evaluation of the Arabic Index of Premature Ejaculation (AIPE). J Sex Med 2007 Nov;4(6):1750-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17970977
53. McMahon CG. Ejaculatory latency vs. patient-reported outcomes (PROs) as study end points in premature ejaculation clinical trials. Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):321-3. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445975
54. Althof S, Rosen R, Symonds T, et al. Development and validation of a new questionnaire to assess sexual satisfaction, control, and distress associated with premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2006 May;3(3):465-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16681472
55. Rosen RC, Catania JA, Althof SE, et al. Development and validation of four-item version of Male Sexual Health Questionnaire to assess ejaculatory dysfunction. Urology 2007 May;69(5):805-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482908

4.8 Treatment

In many relationships, PE causes few, if any, problems. In such cases, treatment should be limited to psychosexual counselling. Before beginning treatment, it is essential to discuss patient expectations thoroughly. Erectile dysfunction, in particular, or other sexual dysfunction or genitourinary infection (e.g. prostatitis), should be treated first or at the same time as PE.

Various behavioural techniques have demonstrated benefit in treating PE and are indicated for patients uncomfortable with pharmacological therapy. In lifelong PE, behavioural techniques are not recommended for first-line treatment. They are time-intensive, require the support of a partner and can be difficult to do. In addition, long-term outcomes of behavioural techniques for PE are unknown.

Pharmacotherapy is the basis of treatment in lifelong PE. Since no drug for PE has been approved by

the EMEA or FDA, all medical treatments are off-label indications. Only chronic selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and on-demand topical anaesthetic agents have consistently shown efficacy in PE. Again, long-term outcomes for pharmacological treatments are unknown.

An evidence-based analysis of all current treatment modalities was performed. Levels of evidence and grade of recommendation are provided and a treatment algorithm is presented (Figure 3).

4.8.1 ***Psychological/behavioural strategies***

Behavioural strategies mainly include the 'stop-start' programme developed by Semans (1) and its modification, the 'squeeze' technique, proposed by Masters and Johnson.

- In the 'stop-start' programme, the partner stimulates the penis until the patient feels the urge to ejaculate. At this point, he instructs his partner to stop, waits for the sensation to pass and then stimulation is resumed.
- The 'squeeze' technique is similar but the partner applies manual pressure to the glans just before ejaculation until the patient loses his urge.

Both these procedures are typically applied in a cycle of three pauses before proceeding to orgasm. Behavioural strategies are based on the hypothesis that PE occurs because the man fails to appreciate the sensations of heightened arousal and to recognise the feelings of ejaculatory inevitability. Re-training may attenuate stimulus-response connections by gradually exposing the patient to progressively more intense and more prolonged stimulation, while maintaining the intensity and duration of the stimulus just below the threshold for triggering the response.

There are several modifications of these techniques making comparison difficult.

Masturbation before anticipation of sexual intercourse is a technique used by many younger men. Following masturbation, the penis is desensitised resulting in greater ejaculatory delay after the refractory period is over. In a different approach, the man learns to recognise the signs of increased sexual arousal and how to keep his level of sexual excitement below the intensity that elicits the ejaculatory reflex. Efficacy is similar to the 'start-stop' programme (2).

Overall, success rates of 50-60% have been reported short term (3,4). However, there is no controlled research to support the efficacy of behavioural techniques, while a double-blind, randomised, crossover study showed that pharmacological treatment (chlomipramine, sertraline, paroxetine and sildenafil) resulted in greater IELT prolongation than behavioural therapy (5). Furthermore, clinical experience suggests that improvements achieved with these techniques are generally not maintained long term (6,7).

4.8.1.1 Guideline recommendation on the psychological/behavioural treatment of PE

	LE	GR
Psychological/behavioural therapies may be attempted but no clinical data exists supporting prolonged effect.	3	C

4.8.2 ***Topical anaesthetic agents***

The use of local anaesthetics to delay ejaculation is the oldest form of pharmacological therapy for PE (8). Several trials (9,10) support the hypothesis that topical desensitising agents reduce the sensitivity of the glans penis so delaying ejaculatory latency, but without adversely affecting the sensation of ejaculation.

4.8.2.1 Lidocaine-prilocaine cream

In a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, lidocaine-prilocaine cream increased the IELT from 1 min in the placebo group to 6.7 min in the treatment group (11). In another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, lidocaine-prilocaine cream significantly increased the stopwatch-measured IELT from 1.49 to 8.45 min while no difference was recorded in the placebo group (1.67 to 1.95 min) (12). Lidocaine-prilocaine cream (5%) is applied for 20 to 30 min prior to intercourse. Prolonged application of topical anaesthetic (30 to 45 min) may result in loss of erection due to numbness of the penis in a significant percentage of men (11). A condom is required to avoid diffusion of the topical anaesthetic agent into the vaginal wall causing numbness in the partner. Alternatively, the condom may be removed prior to sexual intercourse and the penis washed clean of any residual active compound. Although no significant side-effects have been reported, topical anaesthetics are contraindicated in patients or partners with an allergy to any component of the product.

An aerosol formulation of lidocaine 7.5 mg plus prilocaine 2.5 mg (Topical Eutectic Mixture for Premature Ejaculation, TEMPE (13) has been evaluated in a phase II study (14). Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time increased from a baseline of 1 min to 4.9 min in the TEMPE-treated group compared to an increase from baseline of 0.9 min to 1.6 min ($p < 0.01$) in the placebo-treated group. It has been suggested that lidocaine-prilocaine can penetrate the glans within 5–10 min, but penetrates intact keratinised skin less easily, reducing

penile numbness and ED (14,15).

Finally, in a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group study, lidocaine-prilocaine cream showed similar efficacy to combination with sildenafil (50 mg before coitus) and significantly better efficacy than sildenafil alone (16). However, no specific data on estimated IELT were provided.

4.8.2.2 SS-cream

SS-cream is a topical anaesthetic agent made from the extracts of nine herbs. It is applied to the glans penis 1 h before and washed off immediately prior to coitus. SS-cream increased the vibratory threshold in a dose-dependent fashion, as well as the latency and amplitude of somatosensory-evoked potentials measured at the glans penis (17,18). In a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled study (19), application of 0.2 g SS-cream improved IELT from 1.37 min to 10.92 min in the treatment group versus 2.45 min in the placebo group. Sexual satisfaction improved by 82% in the treatment group versus 20% in the placebo group. Mild local burning and mild pain were reported by 18.5% of patients. No adverse effects on sexual function or partner or systemic side-effects were observed.

4.8.2.3 Guideline recommendations on the topical therapy for PE

	LE	**GR**
Lidocaine-prilocaine cream.	1B	A
SS-cream.	1B	A

*4.8.3 **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors***

Ejaculation is mediated by a spinal ejaculation generator (20, 21) and by descending supraspinal modulation from several brain regions. The neurotransmitter 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT, serotonin) is also involved in ejaculatory control. The retarding effect of 5-HT on ejaculation is probably due to central activation (i.e. spinally and supraspinally) of 5-HT1B and 5-HT2C receptors, while stimulation of 5-HT1A receptors precipitates ejaculation.

Selective serontonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are used to treat mood disorders, but can delay ejaculation and are therefore widely used 'off-label' for PE. As in depression, SSRIs must be given for 1 to 2 weeks to be effective in PE (22). Chronic SSRI administration causes prolonged increases in synaptic cleft serotonin, which desensitise the 5-HT1A and 5-HT1B receptors (23). Clomipramine, the most serotoninergic tricyclic antidepressant, was first reported in 1973 as an effective PE treatment (24). Selective serontonin reuptake inhibitors have revolutionised treatment of PE, but they have also changed our understanding of PE since the first publication on paroxetine in 1970 (25). Today, daily treatment with SSRIs has become the first choice of treatment in PE. Commonly used SSRIs include citalopram, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine and sertraline, all of which have a similar pharmacological mechanism of action.

A systematic review and meta-analysis of all drug treatment studies reported that, despite methodological problems in most studies, there still remained several, well-designed, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials supporting the therapeutic effect of daily SSRIs on PE (26). Open-design studies and studies using subjective reporting or questionnaires showed greater variation in ejaculation delay than double-blind studies in which the ejaculation delay was prospectively assessed with a stopwatch.

Based on this meta-analysis, SSRIs were expected to increase the geometric mean IELT by 2.6-fold to 13.2-fold. Paroxetine was found to be superior to fluoxetine, clomipramine and sertraline. Sertraline was superior to fluoxetine, whereas the efficacy of clomipramine was not significantly different from fluoxetine and sertraline. Paroxetine was evaluated in doses of 20-40 mg, sertraline 25-200 mg, fluoxetine 10-60 mg and clomipramine 25-50 mg; there was no significant relationship between dose and response among the various drugs. There is limited evidence that citalopram may be less efficacious compared to other SSRIs, while fluvoxamine may not be effective (27,28).

Ejaculation delay may start a few days after drug intake, but it is more evident after 1 to 2 weeks since receptor desensitisation requires time to occur. While efficacy may be maintained for several years, tachyphylaxis (decreasing response to a drug following chronic administration) may occur after 6 to 12 months (24).

Common side-effects of SSRIs include fatigue, drowsiness, yawning, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, diarrhoea and perspiration; they are usually mild and gradually improve after 2 to 3 weeks (24). Decreased libido, anorgasmia, anejaculation and ED have been also reported.

In one controlled trial, on-demand use of clomipramine (but not paroxetine), 3 to 5 h before intercourse, was reported to be efficacious, though IELT improvement was inferior compared to daily treatment with the same drug (29). However, on-demand treatment may be combined with an initial trial of daily treatment or concomitant low-dose daily treatment reducing adverse effects (30,31).

4.8.3.1 *Dapoxetine*

Dapoxetine is a potent SSRI, which has been designed as an on-demand oral treatment for PE. It is quickly absorbed with a Tmax of 1.5 h and is rapidly cleared, avoiding accumulation.

An integrated analysis of two, double-blind, randomised, controlled trials (1,958 patients) with dapoxetine was published (32). Dapoxetine, 30 and 60 mg, was administered 1 to 3 h before intercourse. Intravaginal ejaculatory latency time improved from a baseline of 0.9 min to 1.75 min, 2.78 min and 3.32 min in the patient groups treated with placebo, 30 mg dapoxetine, and 60 mg dapoxetine, respectively. Improved ejaculation control was reported by 51% and 58% of patients in the 30 mg and 60 mg groups, respectively. Both dapoxetine doses were effective on the first dose. Common adverse events for 30 mg and 60 mg doses of dapoxetine, respectively, were nausea (8.7%, 20.1%), diarrhoea (3.9%, 6.8%), headache (5.9%, 6.8%), and dizziness (3.0%, 6.2%).

In a subanalysis of these two studies (33), 32% of men reported a two-category (from a 5-point scale, 'very poor' to 'very good') or greater increase in control and satisfaction with sexual intercourse after treatment. More than 95% of those men rated their PE as 'slightly better', 'better', or 'much better' on the global impression of change (7-point scale, 'much worse' to 'much better') while 67.1% gave ratings of 'better' or 'much better.' They also had greater improvements in IELT than men with less than a two-category increase in control, with a mean (SD) change from baseline of 3.7 (4.3) vs 0.77 (1.8) min, respectively. The proportions of men with a two-category or greater increase in control with dapoxetine 30 and 60 mg were 36.3% and 44.5%, respectively (vs 15% with placebo).

In another randomised, double-blind, parallel-group, placebo-controlled, phase II trial including 1,162 men in 22 countries (34), mean average IELT increased from 0.9 min at baseline (all groups) to 1.9 min, 3.2 min, and 3.5 min with placebo and dapoxetine 30 mg and dapoxetine 60 mg, respectively, at study end point. The geometric mean IELT increased from 0.7 min at baseline to 1.1 min, 1.8 min, and 2.3 min, respectively, at study end point. All PEP measures and IELTs improved significantly with dapoxetine versus placebo at week 12 and week 24 ($p < 0.001$ for all). The most common adverse effects were nausea, dizziness, diarrhea, and headache. Adverse effects led to discontinuation in 1.3%, 3.9%, and 8.2% of subjects with placebo and dapoxetine 30 mg. Finally, in a randomised, double-blind, placebo controlled, phase III trial (1,238 men in USA and Canada), dapoxetine reduced the personal distress and interpersonal difficulty associated with PE (35).

Dapoxetine has been approved (December 2008) for the on-demand treatment of PE in seven European countries (Sweden, Austria, Finland, Germany, Spain, Italy and Portugal). This is currently the first and only drug approved for such an indication.

4.8.3.2 *Guideline recommendation on the treatment of PE*

	LE	GR
Selective serotonin receptor inhibitors (SSRIs).	1A	A

4.8.4 ***Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors***

Several recent studies have supported the therapeutic role of PDE5 inhibitors in PE. They may reduce performance anxiety due to better erections and may down-regulate the erectile threshold to a lower level of arousal so that greater arousal is required to achieve the ejaculation threshold. However, many of the mechanisms involved remain speculative (33,36-38).

There is only one well-designed, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study comparing sildenafil to placebo (39). Although IELT was not significantly improved, sildenafil increased confidence, the perception of ejaculatory control and overall sexual satisfaction, reduced anxiety and decreased the refractory time to achieve a second erection after ejaculation.

In another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, lidocaine-prilocaine had similar efficacy to combination with sildenafil (50 mg before intercourse), while the efficacy of sildenafil was similar to placebo (no IELT data provided) (16). In contrast, in a randomised, double-blind, parallel group study, sildenafil significantly improved IELT and satisfaction and reduced overall anxiety compared to several SSRIs and the 'pause-squeeze' technique. From a baseline of IELT at 1 min, IELT improved to 15 min with sildenafil, 4 min with clomipramine, 3 min with sertraline, 4 min with paroxetine and 3 min with the 'pause-squeeze' technique (5).

Finally, several open-label studies showed that sildenafil combined with an SSRI is superior to SSRI monotherapy. Sildenafil combined with paroxetine improved IELT significantly and satisfaction versus paroxetine alone (40). Sildenafil combined with sertraline improved IELT and satisfaction significantly versus sertraline alone (41). Sildenafil combined with paroxetine and psychological and behavioural counselling significantly improved IELT and satisfaction in patients in whom other treatments failed (42). Finally, sildenafil combined with behavioural therapy significantly improved IELT and satisfaction versus behavioural therapy alone (43).

There are limited data on the efficacy in PE of other PDE5 inhibitors (tadalafil and vardenafil) (37, 38). Overall, the role of PDE5 inhibitors in PE patients without ED is not established, with only minimal double-blind placebo controlled data are available.

4.8.4.1 Guidelines recommendation on the use of PDE5 inhibitors for the treatment of PE

	LE	GR
In patients presenting with PE, a trial of PDE5 inhibitors may be attempted.	2B	C

*4.8.5 **Other drugs***

Adrenergic blockade for PE aims to decrease the sympathetic tone of the seminal tract and therefore delay ejaculation (44). Tramadol is a centrally acting analgesic agent that combines opioid receptor activation and re-uptake inhibition of serotonin and noradrenaline.

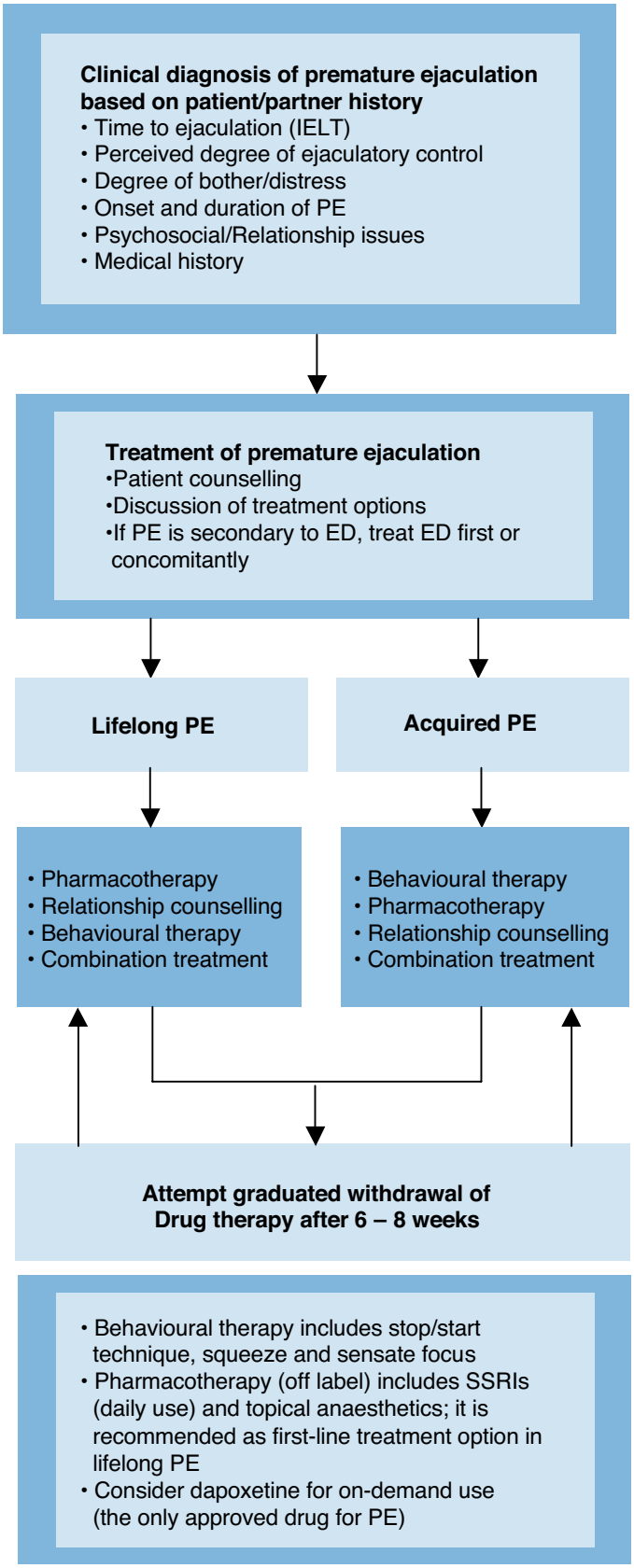
Research suggests that the alpha-1 adrenergic antagonists, terazosin and alfuzosin (45,46), and tramadol (47,48) may have some efficacy in PE. However, further research is needed to investigate their role fully. Currently they are not recommended in clinical practice (49).

*4.8.6 **Guideline recommendations on the treatment of PE***

	LE	GR
ED, other sexual dysfunction or genitourinary infection (e.g. prostatitis) should be treated first.	2a	B
Behavioural techniques have demonstrated benefit in treating PE. However, they are time intensive, require the support of a partner and can be difficult to do.	3	C
Pharmacotherapy is the basis of treatment in lifelong PE.	1a	A
Daily SSRIs are first-line, off-label, pharmacological treatment for PE. The pharmacokinetic profile of SSRIs is not amenable to pm dosing.	1a	A
Dapoxetine, a short-acting SSRI, has already been approved for the on-demand treatment of PE in seven European Countries.	1a	A
Topical anaesthetic agents provide viable alternatives to SSRIs (off-label).	1b	A
Recurrence is likely after treatment cessation.	1b	A
Behavioural therapy may augment pharmacotherapy to enhance relapse prevention.	3	C

ED = erectile dysfunction; PE = premature ejaculation; SSRI = selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor; pm = on-demand adminstration.

Figure 4: Management of PE*



* Adapted from Lue et al. 2004 (49).
ED = erectile dysfunction; PE = premature ejaculation; IELT = intravaginal ejaculatory latency time; SSRI = selective serotonin receptor inhibitor.

4.9 References

1. Semans JH. Premature ejaculation: a new approach. South Med J 1956 Apr;49(4):353-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13311629
2. de Carufel F, Trudel G. Effects of a new functional-sexological treatment for premature ejaculation. J Sex Marital Ther 2006 Mar-Apr;32(2):97-114. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418103
3. Grenier G, Byers ES. Rapid ejaculation: a review of conceptual, etiological, and treatment issues. Arch Sex Behav 1995 Aug;24(4):447-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7661658
4. Metz ME, Pryor JL, Nesvacil LJ, et al. Premature ejaculation: a psychophysiological review. J Sex Marital Ther 1997 Spring;23(1):3-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9094032
5. Abdel-Hamid IA, El Naggar EA, El Gilany AH. Assessment of as needed use of pharmacotherapy and the pause-squeeze technique in premature ejaculation. Int J Impot Res 2001 Feb;13(1):41-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313839
6. De Amicis LA, Goldberg DC, LoPiccolo J, et al. Clinical follow-up of couples treated for sexual dysfunction. Arch Sex Behav 1985 Dec;14(6):467-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4084048
7. Hawton K, Catalan J, Martin P, et al. Long-term outcome of sex therapy. Behav Res Ther 1986; 24(6):665-75. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3800838
8. Morales A, Barada J, Wyllie MG. A review of the current status of topical treatments for premature ejaculation. BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):493-501. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17608824
9. Sachs BD, Liu YC. Maintenance of erection of penile glans, but not penile body, after transection of rat cavernous nerves. J Urol 1991 Sep;146(3):900-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1875517
10. Wieder JA, Brackett NL, Lynne CM, et al. Anesthetic block of the dorsal penile nerve inhibits vibratory-induced ejaculation in men with spinal cord injuries. Urology 2000 Jun;55(6):915-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840108
11. Atikeler MK, Gecit I, Senol FA. Optimum usage of prilocaine-lidocaine cream in premature ejaculation. Andrologia. 2002 Dec;34(6):356-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12472618
12. Busato W, Galindo CC. Topical anaesthetic use for treating premature ejaculation: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):1018-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142155
13. Henry R, Morales A, Wyllie MG. TEMPE: Topical Eutectic-Like Mixture for Premature Ejaculation. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 2008 Feb;5(2):251-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18248322
14. Dinsmore WW, Hackett G, Goldmeier D, et al. Topical eutectic mixture for premature ejaculation (TEMPE): a novel aerosol-delivery form of lidocaine-prilocaine for treating premature ejaculation. BJU Int 2007 Feb;99(2):369-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17129234
15. Henry R, Morales A. Topical lidocaine-prilocaine spray for the treatment of premature ejaculation: a proof of concept study. Int J Impot Res 2003 Aug;15(4):277-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12934056
16. Atan A, Basar MM, Tuncel A, et al. Comparison of efficacy of sildenafil-only, sildenafil plus topical EMLA cream, and topical EMLA-cream-only in treatment of premature ejaculation. Urology 2006 Feb; 67(2):388-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16461091
17. Xin ZC, Choi YD, Seong DH, et al. Sensory evoked potential and effect of SS-cream in premature ejaculation. Yonsei Med J 1995 Nov;36(5):397-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8545998
18. Xin ZC, Choi YD, Lee WH, et al. Penile vibratory threshold changes with various doses of SS-cream in patients with primary premature ejaculation. Yonsei Med J 2000 Feb;41(1):29-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10731916
19. Choi HK, Jung GW, Moon KH, et al. Clinical study of SS-cream in patients with lifelong premature ejaculation. Urology 2000 Feb;55(2):257-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688090

20. Truitt WA, Coolen LM. Identification of a potential ejaculation generator in the spinal cord. Science 2002 Aug;297(5586):1566-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12202834
21. Borgdorff AJ, Bernabé J, Denys P, et al. Ejaculation elicited by microstimulation of lumbar spinothalamic neurons. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):449-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18394782
22. Giuliano F. 5-Hydroxytryptamine in premature ejaculation: opportunities for therapeutic intervention. Trends Neurosci 2007 Feb;30(2):79-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17169440
23. Olivier B, van Oorschot R, Waldinger MD. Serotonin, serotonergic receptors, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and sexual behaviour. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 1998 Jul;13(Suppl 6):S9-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728669
24. Waldinger MD. Premature ejaculation: definition and drug treatment. Drugs 2007;67(4):547-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17352514
25. Waldinger MD, Hengeveld MW, Zwinderman AH. Paroxetine treatment of premature ejaculation: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. Am J Psychiatry 1994 Sep;151(1):1377-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8067497
26. Waldinger MD, Zwinderman AH, Schweitzer DH, et al. Relevance of methodological design for the interpretation of efficacy of drug treatment of premature ejaculation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Impot Res 2004 Aug;16(4):369-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14961051
27. Waldinger MD, Zwinderman AH, Olivier B. SSRIs and ejaculation: a double-blind, randomized, fixed-dose study with paroxetine and citalopram. J Clin Psychopharmacol 2001 Dec;21(6):556-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11763001
28. Waldinger MD, Hengeveld MW, Zwinderman AH, et al. Effect of SSRI antidepressants on ejaculation: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study with fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, paroxetine, and sertraline. J Clin Psychopharmacol 1998 Aug;18(4):274-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9690692
29. Waldinger MD, Zwinderman AH, Olivier B. On-demand treatment of premature ejaculation with clomipramine and paroxetine: a randomized, double-blind fixed-dose study with stopwatch assessment. Eur Urol 2004 Oct;46(4):510-5; discussion 516.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15363569
30. McMahon CG, Touma K. Treatment of premature ejaculation with paroxetine hydrochloride as needed: 2 single-blind placebo controlled crossover studies. J Urol 1999 Jun;161(6):1826-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10332446
31. Kim SW, Paick JS. Short-term analysis of the effects of as needed use of sertraline at 5 PM for the treatment of premature ejaculation. Urology 1999 Sep;54(3):544-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10475369
32. Pryor JL, Althof SE, Steidle C, et al; Dapoxetine Study Group. Efficacy and tolerability of dapoxetine in treatment of premature ejaculation: an integrated analysis of two double-blind, randomised controlled trials. Lancet 2006 Sep;368(9539):929-37.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16962882
33. Shabsigh R, Patrick DL, Rowland DL, et al. Perceived control over ejaculation is central to treatment benefit in men with premature ejaculation: results from phase III trials with dapoxetine. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(7):824-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18647300
34 Buvat J, Tesfaye F, Rothman M, et al. Dapoxetine for the treatment of premature ejaculation: results from a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial in 22 countries. Eur Urol 2009 Apr;55(4):957-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19195772
35. Kaufman JM, Rosen RC, Mudumbi RV, et al. Treatment benefit of dapoxetine for premature ejaculation: results from a placebo-controlled phase III trial. BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(5):651-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19021601
36. Chen J, Keren-Paz G, Bar-Yosef Y, et al. The role of phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors in the management of premature ejaculation: a critical analysis of basic science and clinical data. Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5):1331-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17728050
37. McMahon CG, McMahon CN, Leow LJ, et al. Efficacy of type-5 phosphodiesterase inhibitors in the drug treatment of premature ejaculation: a systematic review. BJU Int 2006 Aug;98(2):259-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16879663

38. Wang WF, Minhas S, Ralph DJ. Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitors in the treatment of premature ejaculation. Int J Androl 2006 Oct;29(5):503-09.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16573707
39. McMahon CG, Stuckey BG, Andersen M, et al. Efficacy of sildenafil citrate (Viagra) in men with premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2005 May;2(3):368-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422868
40. Salonia A, Maga T, Colombo R, et al. A prospective study comparing paroxetine alone versus paroxetine plus sildenafil in patients with premature ejaculation. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2486-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441946
41. Zhang XS, Wang YX, Huang XY, et al. [Comparison between sildenafil plus sertraline and sertraline alone in the treatment of premature ejaculation]. Zhonghua Nan Ke Xue. 2005 Jul;11(7):520-2,525. [Article in Chinese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16078671
42. Chen J, Mabjeesh NJ, Matzkin H, et al. Efficacy of sildenafil as adjuvant therapy to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor in alleviating premature ejaculation. Urology 2003 Jan;61(1):197-200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12559295
43. Tang W, Ma L, Zhao L, et al. [Clinical efficacy of Viagra with behavior therapy against premature ejaculation]. Zhonghua Nan Ke Xue. 2004 May;10(5):366-7, 370. [Article in Chinese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15190831
44. Hsieh JT, Chang HC, Law HS, et al. In vivo evaluation of serotonergic agents and alpha-adrenergic blockers on premature ejaculation by inhibiting the seminal vesicle pressure response to electrical nerve stimulation. Br J Urol 1998 Aug;82(2):237-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9722759
45. Basar MM, Yilmaz E, Ferhat M, Basar H, Batislam E. Terazosin in the treatment of premature ejaculation: a short-term follow-up. Int Urol Nephrol 2005;37(4):773-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16362597
46. Cavallini G. Alpha-1 blockade pharmacotherapy in primitive psychogenic premature ejaculation resistant to psychotherapy. Eur Urol 1995;28(2):126-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8529737
47. Safarinejad MR, Hosseini SY. Safety and efficacy of tramadol in the treatment of premature ejaculation: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, fixed-dose, randomized study. J Clin Psychopharmacol 2006 Feb;26(1):27-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16415702
48. Salem EA, Wilson SK, Bissada NK, et al. Tramadol HCL has promise in on-demand use to treat premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2008 Jan;5(1):188-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17362279
49. Lue TF, Giuliano F, Montorsi F, et al. Summary of the recommendations on sexual dysfunctions in men. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(6):6-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422979

5. CONCLUSION

Modern treatment of ED has been revolutionised by the worldwide availability of three PDE5 inhibitors for oral use – sildenafil, tadalafil and vardenafil. These drugs have high efficacy and safety rates, even in difficult-to-treat populations, such as patients with diabetes mellitus or who have undergone RP. Patients should be encouraged to try all three PDE5 inhibitors. Patients should make up their own minds about which compound has the best efficacy, while also considering other factors, such as time of onset, duration of action, window of opportunity and how side-effects affect them individually.

Treatment options for patients who do not respond to oral drugs, or for whom drugs are contraindicated, include intracavernous injections, intraurethral alprostadil, vacuum constriction devices, or implantation of a penile prosthesis.

It is very important that the physician warns the patient that sexual intercourse is a vigorous physical activity, which increases heart rate as well as cardiac work. Physicians should assess the cardiac fitness of patients prior to treating ED.

Any successful pharmacological treatment for erectile failure demands a degree of integrity of the penile mechanisms of erection. Further studies of individual agents and synergistic activity of available substances are underway. The search for the ideal pharmacological therapy for erectile failure aims to fulfil the following characteristics: good efficacy, easy administration, freedom from toxicity and side-effects, with a rapid onset and a possible long-acting effect.

Premature ejaculation is another very common male sexual dysfunction, with prevalence rates of 20% to 30%. Four major definitions of PE are currently used and the most widely accepted classification of PE includes “lifelong” (primary) and “acquired” (secondary) forms (syndromes).

Diagnosis of PE in everyday clinical practice is based on medical and sexual history assessing IELT, perceived control, distress, and interpersonal difficulty related to the ejaculatory dysfunction. Physical examination and laboratory testing may be needed in selected patients only.

Pharmacotherapy is the basis of treatment in lifelong PE including daily dosing of SSRIs and topical anaesthetics. Behavioural techniques may be efficacious as a monotherapy or in combination with pharmacotherapy, but they can be difficult to perform. In every case, recurrence is likely to occur after treatment withdrawal.

6. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

5-HT	5-hydroxytryptamine
AIPE	Arabic Index of Premature Ejaculation
AUC	area under curve - serum concentration time curve
BMI	body mass index
CAD	coronary artery disease
cGMP	cyclic guanosine monophosphate
CGRP	calcitonin gene-related peptide
CHF	congestive heart failure
Cmax	maximal concentration
DICC	dynamic infusion cavernosometry or cavernosography
DRE	digital rectal examination
DSM-IV-TR	Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders IV-Text Revision
EAU	European Association of Urology
ED	erectile dysfunction
EMEA	European Medicines Agency
FDA	(US) Food and Drug Administration
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
GAQ	General Assessment Question
GR	grade of recommendation
GSSAB	Global Study of Sexual Attitudes and Behaviors
ICD-10	International Classification of Diseases-10
IELT	intravaginal ejaculatory latency time
IIEF	International Index for Erectile Function
IIEF-EF	International Index for Erectile Function - erectile function domain
IPE	Index of Premature Ejaculation
ISSM	International Society for Sexual Medicine
LE	level of evidence
LH	luteinising hormone
LVD	left ventricular dysfunction
MET	metabolic equivalent of energy expenditure in the resting state
MI	myocardial infarction
MMAS	Massachusetts Male Aging Study
MSHQ-EjD	Male Sexual Health Questionnaire Ejaculatory Dysfunction
NHSLS	National Health and Social Life Survey
NS	nerve sparing
NO	nitric oxide
NPTR	nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity
NSRP	nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy
NYHA	New York Heart Association
PCa	prostate cancer
PDE5	phosphodiesterase type 5 [inhibitors]
PE	premature ejaculation
PEDT	Premature Ejaculation Diagnostic Tool
PEP	Premature Ejaculation Profile
PEPA	Premature Ejaculation Prevalence and Attitudes
PRO	Patient reported outcome
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
QoL	quality of life
RP	radical prostatectomy
SEP	sexual encounter profile
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
TEMPE	topical eutectic mixture for premature ejaculation
Tmax	time to maximum plasma concentration
VCD	vacuum constriction devices
VIP	vasointestinal peptide

Conflict of interest

All members of the Male Sexual Dysfunction guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel - and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Penile Curvature

E. Wespes (chairman), K. Hatzimouratidis (vice-chair), I. Eardley,
F. Giuliano, D. Hatzichristou, I. Moncada, A. Salonia, Y. Vardi

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Penile curvature can be congenital or acquired. Congenital curvature is discussed in these guidelines as a distinct pathology in the adult population without any other concomitant abnormality present (such as urethral abnormalities). For paediatric congenital penile curvature, please refer to the EAU Guidelines on Paediatric Urology, Chapter 7, Congenital Penile Curvature.

Acquired curvature is secondary due to La Peyronie's disease (referred as Peyronie's disease in this text), which was named by a French physician, François Gigot de La Peyronie, in 1743 – although he was not the first one to describe this disease (1).

2. METHODOLOGY

A systematic literature search of the Medline database was performed by panel members. The controlled vocabulary of the Medical Subject Headings (MeSH) database uses the specific term 'penile induration' for Peyronie's disease. There is no specific MeSH term for congenital penile curvature. In order to identify relevant articles, search included the MeSH terms 'congenital abnormalities', 'penis/*abnormalities' and 'male' as well as the free text term 'congenital penile curvature'. Since this is the first time guidelines on this topic are published, the search includes all relevant articles published up to January 2012. A total of 48 articles were identified for congenital penile curvature while this number was 1200 for Peyronie's disease. The panel reviewed all these records and selected the articles with the highest evidence available. However, in several subtopics only articles with low levels of evidence were available and discussed accordingly.

2.1 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

The level of evidence (LE) and grade of recommendation (GR) provided in this guideline follow the listings in Tables 1 and 2. The aim of grading the recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (2).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, there is not an automatic relationship between the level of evidence and the grade of recommendation. The availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation if there are methodological limitations or disparities in the published results. Conversely, an absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations in which corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons. In this case, unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. Whenever this occurs, it has been clearly indicated in the text with an asterisk as 'upgraded based on panel consensus'. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence is a very important factor, but it has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and costs when a grade is assigned (3–5).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. However, whenever such data are available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (2).*

2.2 Publication history

The present Penile Curvature guidelines are a new publication that underwent a blinded peer-review process before publication. The standard procedure will be an annual assessment of newly published literature in this field, guiding future updates. An ultra-short reference document is being published alongside this publication. All documents are available with free access through the EAU website Uroweb (http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/).

2.3 Potential conflict of interest statement

The expert panel have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

3. CONGENITAL PENILE CURVATURE

3.1 Epidemiology and physiopathology

Congenital curvature is rare: one study reports an incidence of less than 1% (6) while another suggests it is more common with prevalence rates of 4-10% in the absence of hypospadias (7).

There is no evident cause of congenital penile curvature. A single study analysing the ultrastructure of the tunica albuginea has demonstrated widening and fragmentation of collagen fibres, with complete disappearance of striation and transformation into electron-dense, fibrous, granulated material and elastin accumulation (8).

3.2 Patient evaluation

Taking medical and sexual history are usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis of congenital penile curvature. Physical examination during erection is only useful to document curvature and exclude other pathologies (9). Erectile function is normal but it can be compromised by excessive curvature.

3.3 Treatment

Only androgens have been tried for congenital penile curvature with no improvement in adults (10). Therefore, the treatment of this pathology is only surgical. Surgical treatments for congenital penile curvature generally share the same principles as in Peyronie's disease (presented in detail in the next section) but can be performed at any time in adults. Notably, most operations for Peyronie's disease have been described first for congenital penile curvature (11). Plication techniques are used almost exclusively with high curvature correction rates (67-97%) (12-14). The use of grafting material in isolated congenital penile curvature is very limited to draw any conclusions (15).

Conclusions on treatment	LE
Medical and sexual history are usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis of congenital penile curvature. Physical examination during erection is useful for documentation of the curvature and exclusion of other pathologies.	3
Surgery is the only treatment option which can be performed at any time in adult life. Plication techniques have been used almost exclusively in isolated penile curvature with high curvature correction rates.	3

4. PEYRONIE'S DISEASE

4.1 Epidemiology, physiopathology and natural history

Epidemiological data on Peyronie's disease are limited. Prevalence rates of 0.4-9% have been published (16-22).

The etiology of Peyronie's disease is unknown. However, an insult (repetitive microvascular injury or trauma) to the tunica albuginea is the most widely accepted hypothesis on the etiology of the disease (23). Peyronie's disease starts with an acute inflammatory process. The acute inflammation is characterised by increased proliferation of the tunical fibroblasts, some of which differentiate into myofibroblasts, with excessive deposition of collagen, persistence of fibrin and elastin fragmentation. A prolonged inflammatory response will result in the remodelling of connective tissue into a dense fibrotic plaque (23-25). Penile plaque formation can result in curvature which, if severe, may prevent vaginal intromission. The most commonly associated comorbidities and risk factors are diabetes, hypertension, lipid abnormalities, ischaemic cardiopathy, erectile dysfunction, smoking, and excessive consumption of alcohol (21,22,26,27). Dupuytren's contracture is more common in patients with Peyronie's disease affecting 9-39% of patients (18,28-30) while 4% of patients with Dupuytren's contracture reported Peyronie's disease (28). However, it is still unclear if these factors contribute to the pathophysiology of Peyronie's disease. While the pathogenesis has to be clarified, younger men and Caucasian men are at increased risk for Peyronie's disease after radical pelvic surgery, e.g. radical prostatectomy (31).

Peyronie's disease can be a chronic and progressive disease. Two phases of the disease can be distinguished (32). The first is the acute inflammatory phase, which may be associated with pain in the flaccid state or painful erections and manifestation of a 'soft' nodule/plaque and penile curvature. The second is the fibrotic phase with the formation of hard palpable plaques that can be calcified, which also result in disease stabilisation. With time, penile curvature is expected to worsen in 30-50% of patients or stabilise in 47-67% of patients, while spontaneous improvement has been reported by only 3-13% of patients (27,33,34). An improvement in penile curvature is more likely to occur in the early stage of the disease, rather than in a later phase when the plaque has been formed and has become densely calcified (35). Pain is present in 35-45% of patients during the early stages of the disease (36). Pain tends to resolve with time in 90% of men, usually during the first 12 months after the onset of the disease (33,34).

In addition to physiological and functional alteration of the penis, affected men also suffer significant distress. Validated mental health questionnaires have shown that 48% of men with Peyronie's disease have mild or moderate depression, sufficient to warrant medical evaluation (37).

Conclusions	**LE**
Peyronie's disease is a connective tissue disorder, characterised by the formation of a fibrotic lesion or plaque in the tunica albuginea, which leads to penile deformity.	2
The contribution of associated comorbidities or risk factors (e.g. diabetes, hypertension, lipid abnormalities and Dupuytren's contracture) to the pathophysiology of Peyronie's disease is still unclear.	3
Two phases of the disease can be distinguished. The first phase is the acute inflammatory phase (painful erections, 'soft' nodule/plaque), and the second phase is the fibrotic/calcifying phase with formation of hard palpable plaques (disease stabilisation).	2
Spontaneous resolution is uncommon (3-13%) and most patients experience disease progression (30-50%) or stabilisation (47-67%). Pain is usually present during the early stages of the disease but tends to resolve with time in 90% of men.	2

4.2 Patient evaluation

The aim of the initial evaluation is to provide information on the presenting symptoms and their duration (erectile pain, palpable nodules, curvature, length, rigidity, and girth) and erectile function status. It is mandatory to obtain information on the distress provoked by the symptoms and the potential risk factors for erectile dysfunction and Peyronie's disease. Although a disease-specific questionnaire has been designed to collect data, it is yet a validated instrument suitable for use in clinical practice (38).

Major attention should be given to whether the disease is still active, as this will influence medical treatment or the timing of surgery. Patients who are still likely to have an active disease are those with short symptom

duration, pain during erection, or a recent change in penile curvature. It is often difficult to evaluate the end of the inflammatory phase, but resolution of pain and stability of the curvature for at least 3 months are well-accepted criteria of disease stabilisation and patients referral for surgical intervention when indicated (*see below* Section 4.4.4 Surgical treatment of penile curvature) (33).

The examination should start with a routine genitourinary assessment, which is then extended to the hands and feet for detecting possible Dupuytren's contracture or Ledderhose scarring of the plantar fascia (34). Penile examination consists generally of a palpable node or plaque. The whole of the penis should be examined. There is currently no standardised approach, but it is recommended to measure the penis dorsally from the base to the tip of the glans while at full stretch (34). Plaque size is measured in the erect penis. However, there is no correlation between plaque size and the degree of curvature (35). Measurement of length during erection is important because it impacts directly on treatment decisions (39). Girth-related changes are often self-reported by the patients.

Erectile function can be assessed using validated instruments such as the international index of erectile function (IIEF) (40). However, it should be noted that IIEF has not been validated specifically in Peyronie's disease patients. Erectile dysfunction is quite common (> 50%) in patients with Peyronie's disease but it is important to define if pre-dated or post-dated Peyronie's disease onset. It is mainly due to penile vascular disease (27,35). The presence of erectile dysfunction may impact on the treatment strategy (41).

Sonographic measurement of the plaque's size is inaccurate and operator dependent and it is not recommended in everyday clinical practice (42). Duplex ultrasonography may be required for the assessment of vascular parameters (41) (see also Section 2.5.3.3 and Table 3 in the EAU Guidelines on Male Sexual Dysfunction). An objective assessment of penile curvature with an erection is mandatory. This can be obtained by a home (self) photograph of a natural erection (preferably) or using a vacuum-assisted erection test or an intracavernosal injection using vasoactive agents (38).

Guidelines recommendations on the evaluation of Peyronie's disease	**LE**	**GR**
Medical and sexual history in patients with Peyronie's disease must include duration of the disease, penile pain, change of penile deformity, difficulty in vaginal intromission due to deformity, and erectile dysfunction.	2	B
Physical examination must include assessment of palpable nodules, penile length, extent of curvature (self-photograph, vacuum-assisted erection test or pharmacological-induced erection) and any other possibly related diseases (Dupuytren's contracture, Ledderhose disease).	2	B
Sonographic measurement of the plaque's size is inaccurate and operator dependent. It is not recommended in everyday clinical practice.	3	C
Duplex ultrasonography is required to ascertain vascular parameters associated to erectile dysfunction.	2	B

4.3 Non-operative treatment

Conservative treatment of Peyronie's disease is primarily focused on patients in the early stage of disease, when symptoms are present and the plaque is not densely fibrotic or calcified (34,43). In this context, several options have been suggested, including oral pharmacotherapy, intralesional injection therapy and other topical treatments, which will be discussed in this section (Table 1). The role of conservative treatment in men with stable/chronic disease has not yet been adequately defined (32,44). No single drug has been approved by the European Medical Association for the treatment of Peyronie's disease. Only potassium para-aminobenzoate (Potaba) has been classified as 'possibly effective' by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of Peyronie's disease.

The results of the studies on conservative treatment for Peyronie's disease are often contradictory making it difficult to provide recommendations in the everyday, real-life setting. This fact is due to several methodological problems including uncontrolled studies, limited number of patients treated, short term follow-up and different outcome measures (44). Moreover, the efficacy of conservative treatment in distinct patient population in terms of early (inflammatory) or late (fibrotic) phases of the disease is not yet available.

Table 1: Non-operative treatments for Peyronie's disease

Oral treatments
Vitamin E
Potassium para-aminobenzoate (Potaba)
Tamoxifen
Colchicine
Acetyl esters of carnitine
Pentoxifylline
Intralesional treatments
Steroids
Verapamil
Clostridial collagenase
Interferon
Topical treatments
Verapamil
Iontophoresis
Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)
Traction devices
Vacuum devices

*4.3.1 **Oral treatment***

4.3.1.1 Vitamin E

Vitamin E (tocopherol, a fat-soluble compound that acts as a natural antioxidant to reduce the number of oxygen-free radicals produced in energy metabolism) is commonly prescribed by the majority of urologists at once or twice daily doses of 400 IU because of its wide availability, low cost and safety (45). Despite the fact that it has been suggested as a potential treatment option in patients with Peyronie's disease (46), a double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study failed to show a significant effect on penile deformity or plaque size (47).

4.3.1.2 Potassium para-aminobenzoate (Potaba)

Potassium para-aminobenzoate is thought to exert an antifibrotic effect through an increase in oxygen uptake by the tissues, a rise in the secretion of glycosaminoglycans, and an enhancement of the activity of monoamine oxidases (48). Its role in the treatment of Peyronie's disease is due to preliminary studies that reported an improvement in penile curvature, penile plaque size, and penile pain during erection (49). In a prospective double-blinded controlled study in 41 patients with Peyronie's disease, potassium paraaminobenzoate (12 g/day for 12 months) improved penile pain significantly, but not penile curvature and penile plaque size (50). In another prospective, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled in 103 patients with Peyronie's disease, potassium para-aminobenzoate (4 x 3g/day for 12 months) decreased penile plaque size significantly, but had no effect on penile curvature or penile pain (51). However, the pre-existing curvature under potassium para-aminobenzoate remained stable, suggesting a protective effect on the deterioration of penile curvature. Treatment-emergent adverse events are nausea, anorexia, pruritus, anxiety, chills, cold sweats, confusion and difficulty in concentration, but no serious adverse events were reported.

4.3.1.3 Tamoxifen

Tamoxifen is a non-steroidal oestrogen receptor antagonist. Its proposed mechanism of action in Peyronie's disease involves the modulation of TGFβ1 secretion by fibroblasts. Preliminary studies reported that tamoxifen (20 mg twice daily for 3 months) improved penile pain, penile curvature, and reduced the size of penile plaque (52). However, a placebo-controlled, randomised study (in only 25 patients, at late stage of the disease with a mean duration of 20 months) using the same treatment protocol, failed to show any significant improvement in pain, curvature, or plaque size in patients with Peyronie's disease (53).

4.3.1.4 Colchicine

Colchicine is a medicine often used to treat acute attacks of gout. It has been introduced into the treatment

of Peyronie's disease on the basis of its anti-inflammatory effect (54). Preliminary results in 24 men showed that half of the men given colchicine (0.6-1.2 mg daily for 3-5 months) found that painful erections and penile curvature improved, while penile plaque decreased or disappeared in 50% (55). In another study in 60 men (colchicine 0.5-1 mg daily for 3-5 months with escalation to 2 mg twice daily), penile pain resolved in 95% and penile curvature improved in 30% (54). Similar results have been reported in another uncontrolled retrospective study in 118 patients. The study concluded that lateral curvature is the most commonly altered deformity, which mostly shifts to the dorsal size of the penis after colchicine therapy (56). Reported treatment-emergent adverse events with colchicine are gastrointestinal effects (nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea) that can be improved with dose escalation (54).

The combination of vitamin E and colchicine (600 mg/day and 1 mg every 12 hours, respectively) for 6 months in patients with early-stage Peyronie's disease resulted in significant improvement in plaque size and curvature, but not in pain compared to ibuprofen 400 mg/day for 6 months (57).

4.3.1.5 Acetyl esters of carnitine

Although the actual mechanism of action of acetyl esters of carnitine in patients with Peyronie's disease is unknown, it has been suggested that it can reduce intracellular calcium levels in endothelial cells (58). This may eventually suppress fibroblast proliferation and collagen production, thus reducing penile fibrosis. In a randomised, double-blind study in 48 patients with early-stage Peyronie's disease, patients were randomised to acetyl-L-carnitine (1 g twice daily) compared to tamoxifen (20 mg twice daily). After 3 months, acetyl-L-carnitine was significantly more effective than tamoxifen in pain and curvature reduction and in inhibiting disease progression but not in penile plaque size reduction (both drugs significantly reduced plaque size) (59). Tamoxifen induced significantly more side-effects.

Finally, the combination of intralesional verapamil (10 mg weekly for 10 weeks) with propionyl-l-carnitine (2 g/day for 3 months) significantly reduced penile curvature, plaque size, and disease progression compared to intralesional verapamil combined with tamoxifen (40 mg/day) for 3 months (60).

4.3.1.6 Pentoxifylline

Pentoxifylline is a non-specific phosphodiesterase inhibitor which down regulates TGFβ1 and increases fibrinolytic activity (61). Moreover, an increase of nitric oxide levels may be effective in preventing progression of Peyronie's disease or reversing fibrosis (62). Preliminary data from a case report showing that pentoxifylline (400 mg three times daily for 6 months) improved penile curvature and the ultrasonographic appearance of the plaque (62). In another study in 62 patients with Peyronie's disease, pentoxifylline treatment for 6 months appeared to stabilise or reduce calcium content in penile plaques (63).

4.3.1.7 Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5i)

The rationale for the use of PDE5i in Peyronie's disease comes from animal studies showing that they can reduce the collagen/smooth muscle and collagen III/I ratios and increase the apoptotic index in the Peyronie's disease-like plaque (64). In a retrospective controlled study, daily tadalafil (2.5mg for 6 months) resulted in statistically significant ($p < 0.05$) resolution of septal scar in 69% of patients compared to 10% in the control group (no treatment). However, this study included patients with isolated septal scars without evidence of penile deformity (65). Therefore, no recommendation can be given for PDEi in patients with Peyronie's disease.

4.3.2 ***Intralesional treatment***

Injection of pharmacologically active agents directly into penile plaques represents another treatment option. It allows a localised delivery of a particular agent that provides higher concentrations of the drug inside the plaque. However, delivery of the compound to the target area is difficult to ensure.

4.3.2.1 Steroids

Intralesional steroids are thought to act by opposing the inflammatory milieu responsible for Peyronie's plaque progression via inhibition of phospholipase A2 and suppression of the immune response and by decreasing collagen synthesis (66). In small, non-randomised studies, a decrease in penile plaque size and pain resolution was reported (67,68). In the only single-blind, placebo-controlled study with intralesional administration of betamethasone, no statistical significant changes in penile deformity, penile plaque size, and penile pain during erection were reported (69). Adverse effects include tissue atrophy, thinning of the skin and immune suppression (67).

4.3.2.2 Verapamil

The rationale for intralesional use of verapamil (a calcium channel antagonist) in patients with Peyronie's disease is based on in-vitro data that demonstrated transport of extracellular matrix molecules, which included

collagen, fibronectin, and glycosaminoglycans as a calcium-dependent process, along with a concomitant increase in collagenase activity, a modification of the inflammatory response in the early phase of the disorder, and the inhibition of fibroblast proliferation in the plaques (70,71). A number of studies have reported that intralesional verapamil injection may induce a significant reduction in penile curvature and plaque volume (72-76). These findings suggested that intralesional verapamil injections (multiple-puncture technique, 10 mg of verapamil diluted to 10 mL, distributed throughout the plaque every 2 weeks for a total of 12 consecutive sessions) could be advocated for the treatment of non-calcified acute phase or chronic plaques to stabilise disease progression or possibly reduce penile deformity, although large scale, placebo-controlled trials have not yet been conducted (72). Side effects are uncommon (4%) and minor including nausea, light-headedness, penile pain, and ecchymosis (72). However, in the only randomised, placebo-controlled study, no statistical significant differences on plaque size, penile curvature, penile pain during erection and plaque 'softening' were reported (77). Younger age and larger baseline penile curvature were found to be predictive of favourable curvature outcomes in a case-series study (78).

4.3.2.3 Clostridial collagenase

Clostridial collagenase is a chromatographically purified bacterial enzyme that selectively attacks collagen, which is known to be the primary component of the Peyronie's disease plaque (79-81). Conversely, clostridial collagenase injections received FDA approval for Dupuytren's contracture, with a similar mechanism of action (82). In a prospective randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study, comparing the effects on plaque size and penile deformity of intralesional purified clostridial collagenase (6,000-14,000 units) and saline placebo, the overall response was 36% while in the placebo arm it was 4% ($p < 0.007$) (79). Follow-up was only 3 months. The response rates were even higher in patients with smaller plaques and curvature less than 60º. The efficacy of intralesional collagenase injections (three injections of clostridial collagenase 10,000 unit/0.25 cm3 per injection administered over 7-10 days and subsequently administered over 7-10 days at 3 months) has been assessed over a non-placebo-controlled, short-term follow-up study conducted in a small population of men with Peyronie's disease (81). Although methodologically-biased, this study showed significant decreases from baseline in the deviation angle, in plaque width and in plaque length. The most commonly reported side effects were penile pain, contusions, and ecchymosis.

4.3.2.4 Interferon

Interferon α-2b has been shown to decrease fibroblast proliferation, extracellular matrix production and collagen production from fibroblasts and improved the wound healing process from Peyronie's disease plaques in vitro (83). Intralesional injections (5×10^6 units of interferon α-2b in 10 mL saline, two times per week for 12 weeks) significantly improved penile curvature, plaque size and density, and pain compared to placebo (84,85). Side effects include myalgias, arthralgia, sinusitis, fever and flu-like symptoms. They can be effectively treated with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs before interferon injection.

4.3.3 ***Topical treatments***

4.3.3.1 Topical verapamil

In a small, randomised, placebo-controlled study, topical verapamil (gel 15% applied topically to the penile shaft twice daily) significantly improved penile curvature, plaque size, and penile pain (86). Moreover, treatment results significantly improved after 9 months compared to 3 months showing that a prolonged treatment period may be important. However, there is lack of evidence that topical verapamil applied to the penile shaft results in adequate levels of the active compound within the tunica albuginea (87).

4.3.3.2 Iontophoresis

Iontophoresis (also known as transdermal electromotive drug administration or electromotive drug administration [EMDA]) has been introduced to try and overcome limitations on the local uptake of the drugs themselves. Uncontrolled studies showed promising results in terms of improvement in penile curvature, plaque size and penile pain during erection (88-90).

In a randomised, double-blind, controlled study, iontophoresis with verapamil 5 mg and dexamethasone 8 mg resulted in a statistically significant improvement in penile curvature and plaque size (91). However, in another randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, penile curvature was not statistically improved after iontophoresis with verapamil 10 mg (92). The method is not associated with any significant adverse event.

4.3.3.3 Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)

The mechanism of action involved in SWL for Peyronie's disease is still unclear, but there are two hypotheses. In the first hypothesis, shock wave therapy works by directly damaging and remodelling the penile plaque. In the second hypothesis, SWL increases the vascularity of the area by generating heat resulting in an inflammatory reaction, with increased macrophage activity causing plaque lysis and eventually leading to

plaque resorption (93). Most uncontrolled studies failed to show significant improvements in patients with Peyronie's disease (94-96). In a prospective, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, four weekly treatment sessions of SWL, with each session consisting of 2000 focused shock waves, resulted in significant improvement only for penile pain (97).

4.3.3.4 Traction devices

The application of continuous traction in Dupuytren's contracture increases the activity of degradative enzymes (98). This initially leads to a loss of tensile strength and ultimately to solubilisation. It is followed by an increase in newly synthesised collagen (98). This concept has been applied in an uncontrolled study, including 10 patients with Peyronie's disease (the FastSize Penile Extender was applied as the only treatment for 2-8 hours/day for 6 months) (99). Penile curvature reduced in all men from 10° to 45°, with an average reduction of 33% (range: 51-34°). The stretched penile length increased to 0.5-2.0 cm. The erect girth increased to 0.5-1.0 cm, with a correction of hinge effect in four out of four men. There were no adverse events, including skin changes, ulcerations, hypoesthesia or diminished rigidity.

However, in another uncontrolled study in 15 patients with Peyronie's disease and a curvature of less than 50° (the Andropenis penile extender was applied for at least 5 hours per day for 6 months). The decrease in penile curvature was minimal (4°, the effect size was not reached), while the mean stretched and flaccid penile length increased by 1.3 and 0.83 cm, respectively, at 6 months (100).

4.3.3.5 Vacuum devices

The application of vacuum devices follows the same principles as traction devices. Their efficacy has been assessed in an uncontrolled study (31 patients completed the study) (101). They used a vacuum device for 10 min twice daily over a 12 week period. Penile pain reduced significantly ($p = 0.012$). Stretched penile length also increased significantly ($p = 0.029$) with a mean of 0.5 cm. Reduction of the curvature was reported in 67% of patients while 10% of them had a worsening and 23% had no change. Half of them were satisfied with outcome and the remaining had their curvature corrected surgically.

Guidelines recommendations on non-operative treatment for Peyronie's disease	**LE**	**GR**
Conservative treatment for Peyronie's disease is primarily aimed at treating patients in the early stage of disease. It is an option in patients not fit for surgery or when surgery is not acceptable to the patient.	3	C
Oral treatment with potassium para-aminobenzoate may result in a significant reduction in penile plaque size and penile pain as well as penile curvature stabilisation.	1b	B
Intralesional treatment with verapamil may induce a significant reduction in penile curvature and plaque volume.	1b	C
Intralesional treatment with clostridial collagenase showed significant decreases in the deviation angle, plaque width and plaque length.	2b	C
Intralesional treatment with interferon may improve penile curvature, plaque size and density, and pain.	1b	B
Topical verapamil gel 15% may improve penile curvature and plaque size.	1b	B
Iontophoresis with verapamil 5 mg and dexamethasone 8 mg may improve penile curvature and plaque size.	1b	B
Extracorporeal shock-wave treatment fails to improve penile curvature and plaque size, and should not be used with this intent but may be beneficial for penile pain.	1b	B
Penile traction devices and vacuum devices may reduce penile deformity and increase penile length.	3	C
Recommendations AGAINST		
Intralesional treatment with steroids is not associated with significant reduction in penile curvature, plaque size or penile pain. Therefore intralesional treatment with steroids cannot be recommended.	1b	B
Oral treatment with vitamin E and tamoxifen are not associated with significant reduction in penile curvature, plaque size or penile pain thus should not be used with this intent.	2b	B
Other oral treatments (acetyl esters of carnitine, pentoxifylline) are not recommended.	3	C

4.4 Surgical treatment

Although conservative treatment for Peyronie's disease should resolve painful erections in most men, only a small percentage will experience any significant straightening of the penis. The aim of surgery is to correct curvature and allow satisfactory intercourse (102). Surgery is indicated only in patients with stable disease for at least 3 months, although a 6-12 month period has also been suggested (103).

During informed consent, the potential aims and risks of surgery should be discussed. Specific issues that should be mentioned during consent are the risks of penile shortening, erectile dysfunction, penile numbness, the risk of recurrent curvature, the potential for palpation of knots and stitches underneath the skin, and the potential need for circumcision at the time of surgery (32).

Two major types of repair may be considered for both congenital penile curvature and Peyronie's disease: penile shortening and penile lengthening procedures (104). Penile shortening procedures include the Nesbit wedge resection and the plication techniques performed on the convex side of the penis. Penile lengthening procedures are performed on the concave side of the penis and require the use of a graft. They aim to minimise penile shortening caused by Nesbit or plication of the tunica albuginea or correct complex deformities. Penile degloving with associated circumcision (as a means of preventing post-operative phimosis) is considered the standard approach for all types of procedures (104). However, recent data suggests that circumcision is not always necessary. In cases where the foreskin is normal pre-operatively, circumcision is unnecessary (105). Finally, in patients with Peyronie's disease and erectile dysfunction not responding to medical treatments, the surgical correction of the curvature with concomitant penile prosthesis implantation should be considered (106).

Choosing the most appropriate surgical intervention is based on penile length assessment, curvature severity and on the erectile function status, including response to pharmacotherapy in cases of erectile dysfunction (32). Patient expectations from surgery must also be included in the pre-operative assessment. There are no standardised questionnaires for the evaluation of surgical outcomes (102). Data from well-designed prospective studies are scarce, with a low level of evidence. Most data are mainly based on retrospective studies, typically non-comparative and non-randomised, or on expert opinion (32,107).

*4.4.1 **Penile shortening procedures***

In 1965, Nesbit was the first to describe the removal of tunical ellipses opposite a non-elastic corporal segment to treat congenital penile curvature (11). Fourteen years later, this technique became a successful treatment option, also for Peyronie's disease (108). This operation is based on a 5-10 mm transverse elliptical excision of the tunica albuginea or approximately 1 mm for each 10º of curvature (104). The overall short- and long-term results of the Nesbit operation are excellent. Complete penile straightening is achieved in more than 80% of patients (109). Recurrence of the curvature and penile hypoesthesia are uncommon (about 10%) and the risk of post-operative erectile dysfunction is minimal (104,110). Penile shortening is the most commonly reported outcome of the Nesbit procedure (110). However, shortening of only 1-1.5 cm has been reported for about 85% of patients, which is rarely the cause for post-operative sexual dysfunction (108,111). Patients often perceive the loss of length as greater than it actually is (109,110). It is therefore advisable to measure and document the penile length peri-operatively, both before and after the straightening procedure, whatever the technique used. Only one modification of the Nesbit procedure has been described (partial thickness shaving instead of conventional excision of a wedge of tunica albuginea) (112).

Plication procedures actually share the same principle as the Nesbit operation but are simpler to perform. Many of them have been described as Nesbit modifications in the older literature. They are based on single or multiple longitudinal incisions on the convex side of the penis closed in a horizontal way, applying the Heineke-Miculicz principle, or plication is performed without making an incision ((113-118). Another modification has been described as the '16 dot' technique with minimal tension under local anaesthesia (119). The use of non-absorbable sutures reduced recurrence of the curvature. Results and satisfaction rates are similar to the Nesbit procedure (104). However, a lot of different modifications have been described and the level of evidence is not sufficient to recommend one method over the other.

*4.4.2 **Penile lengthening procedures***

Tunical lengthening procedures entail an incision in the short (concave) side of the tunica to increase the length of this side, creating a tunical defect, which is covered by a graft. However, plaque removal may be associated with high rates of post-operative erectile dysfunction due to venous leak (120).

Devine and Horton introduced dermal grafting in 1974 (121). Since then, a variety of grafting materials and

techniques have been reported (Table 2) (122-136). Unfortunately, the ideal material for grafting has yet to be identified. In addition, grafting procedures are associated with erectile dysfunction rates as high as 25%. Despite excellent initial surgical results, graft contracture and long-term failures resulted in a 17% re-operation rate (137). Vein grafts have the theoretical advantage of endothelial-to-endothelial contact when grafted to underlying cavernosal tissue. Saphenous vein is the most common vein draft used, followed by dorsal penile vein (104). In the latter case, a secondary incision for graft harvesting is avoided. Post-operative curvature (20%), penile shortening (17%) and graft herniation (5%) have been reported after vein graft surgery (122-124). Tunica vaginalis is relatively avascular, easy to harvest and has little tendency to contract due to its low metabolic requirements (126). Dermal grafts are commonly associated with contracture resulting in recurrent penile curvature (35%), progressive shortening (40%), and a 17% re-operation rate at 10 years (138). Cadaveric pericardium (Tutoplast®) offers good results by coupling excellent tensile strength and multi-directional elasticity/expansion by 30% (129). In a retrospective telephone interview, 44% of patients with pericardium grafting reported recurrent curvature, although most of them continued to have successful intercourse and were pleased with their outcomes ((129,138). Small intestinal submucosa (SIS, a collagen-based xenogenic graft derived from the submucosal layer of the porcine small intestine) has been shown to promote tissue-specific regeneration, and supports the growth of endothelial cells. Small intestinal submucosa acts as a scaffold to promote angiogenesis, host cell migration and differentiation, resulting in tissue structurally and functionally similar to the original. It has been used successfully to repair severe chordee and Peyronie's disease, without significant contraction or histological alterations, but data are limited (133).

Tunical preferably incision with grafting offers an excellent surgical option for men with curvatures over 60º as well as patients with an hourglass deformity and good erectile function that are willing to risk a higher rate of post-operative erectile dysfunction (139). The presence of pre-operative erectile dysfunction, the use of larger grafts, age more than 60 years, and ventral curvature are considered poor prognostic factors for functional outcome after grafting surgery (106). Although the risk for penile shortening is significantly less compared to the Nesbit or plication procedures, it is still an issue and patients must be informed accordingly (104). The use of a penile extender device on an 8- to 12-hour daily regimen has been advocated as an effective and safe way to the loss of penile length in patients operated on for Peyronie's disease (140).

Table 2: Types of grafts used in Peyronie's disease surgery

Autologous grafts
Dermis
Vein grafts
Tunica albuginea
Tunica vaginalis
Temporalis fascia
Buccal mucosa
Allografts
Cadaveric pericardium
Cadaveric fascia lata
Cadaveric dura matter
Cadaveric dermis
Xenografts
Porcine small interstinal submucosa
Bovine pericardium
Porcine dermis
Synthetic grafts
Gore-Tex
Dacron

*4.4.3 **Penile prosthesis***

Penile prosthesis implantation is typically reserved for the treatment of Peyronie's disease in patients with erectile dysfunction, especially when they are not responders to phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitor (PDE5i)

(104). Although all types of penile prosthesis can be used, the implantation of inflatable penile prosthesis seems to be most effective in these patients (141).

Most patients with mild-to-moderate curvature can expect an excellent outcome simply by cylinder insertion. In cases of severe deformity, intra-operative 'modelling' of the penis over the inflated cylinders (manually bent on the opposite side of the curvature for 90 seconds, often accompanied by an audible crack) has been introduced as an effective treatment (142,143). If there is a residual curvature of less than 30°, no further treatment is recommended, as the prosthesis will act as a tissue expander and will result in complete correction of curvature in a few months (142). While this technique is effective in most patients, a Nesbit/plication procedure or plaque excision/incision and grafting may be required in order to achieve adequate straightening (144-146).

The risk of complications (infection, malformation, etc.) is not increased compared to the general population. However, a small risk of urethral perforation (3%) has been reported in patients with 'modelling' over the inflated prosthesis (143).

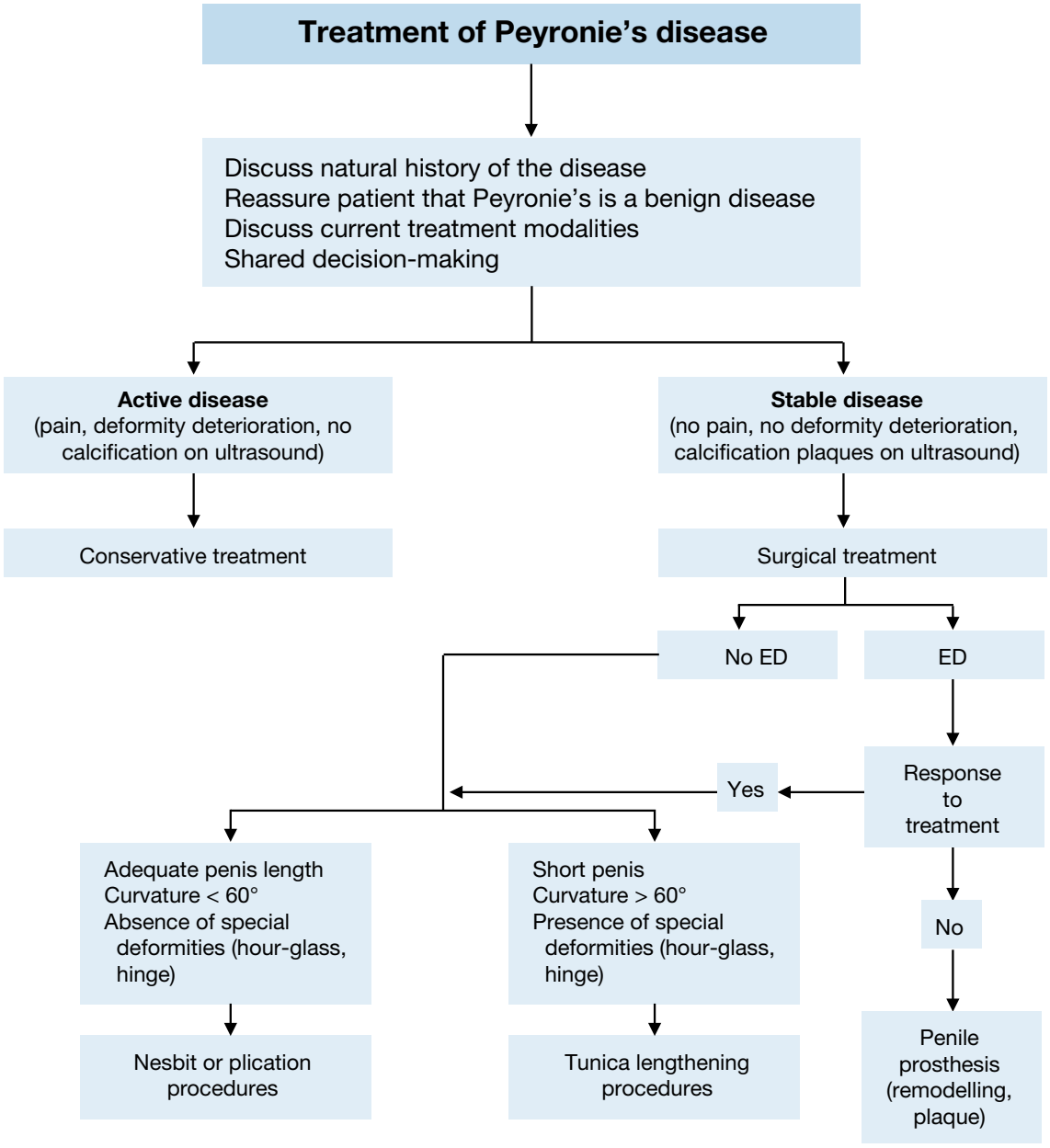
Table 3: Results of surgical treatments for Peyronie's disease (data from different, non-comparable studies) (108,110-136,138,139)

	Tunical shortening procedures		**Tunical lengthening procedures**
	Nesbit	**Plication**	**Grafts**
Penile shortening	4.7-30.8%	41-90%	0-40%
Penile straightening	79-100%	58-100%	74-100%
Persistent or recurrent curvature	4-26.9%	7.7-10.6%	0-16.7%
Post-operative erectile dysfunction	0-13%	0-22.9%	0-15%
Penile hypoesthesia	2-21%	0-21.4%	0-16.7%
Technical modifications	1	At least 3	Many types of grafts and techniques used

*4.4.4 **Treatment algorithm***

The decision on the most appropriate surgical procedure to correct penile curvature is based on pre-operative assessment of penile length, the degree of the curvature and erectile function status. If the degree of curvature is less than 60°, penile shortening is acceptable and the Nesbit or plication procedures are usually the method of choice. This is typically the case for congenital penile curvature. If the degree of curvature is over 60° or is a complex curvature, or if the penis is significantly shortened in patients with a good erectile function (with or without pharmacological treatment), then a grafting procedure is feasible. If there is erectile dysfunction, which is not responding to pharmacological treatment, the best option is the implantation of an inflatable penile prosthesis, with or without an associated procedure over the penis (modelling, plication or even grafting plus the prosthesis). The treatment algorithm is presented in Figure 1.

Figure 1: Treatment algorithm for Peyronie's disease



ED = erectile dysfunction.

The results of the different surgical approaches are presented in Table 3. It must be emphasised that there are no randomised controlled trials available addressing surgery in Peyronie's disease. The risk of erectile dysfunction seems to be greater for penile lengthening procedures (32,104). Recurrent curvature implies either failure to wait until the disease has stabilised, a reactivation of the condition following the development of stable disease, or the use of re-absorbable sutures that lose their strength before fibrosis has resulted in acceptable strength of the repair (104). Accordingly, it is recommended that only non-absorbable sutures or slowly reabsorbed absorbable sutures be used. Although with non-absorbable sutures, the knot should be buried to avoid troublesome irritation of the penile skin, this issue seems to be alleviated by the use of slowly re-absorbed absorbable sutures (110). Penile numbness is a potential risk of any surgical procedure involving mobilisation of the dorsal neurovascular bundle. This will usually be a neuropraxia, due to bruising of the dorsal sensory nerves. Given that the usual deformity is a dorsal deformity, the procedure most likely to induce this complication is a lengthening (grafting) procedure for a dorsal deformity (104).

Guidelines recommendations on surgical treatment for penile curvature	LE	GR
Surgery is indicated when Peyronie's disease is stable for at least 3 months (without pain or deformity deterioration), which is usually the case after 12 months from the onset of symptoms and intercourse is compromised due to deformity.	3	C
Penile length, curvature severity, erectile function (including response to pharmacotherapy in case of erectile dysfunction) and patient expectations must be assessed prior to surgery.	3	C
Tunical shortening procedures, especially plication techniques are the first treatment options for congenital penile curvature and for Peyronie's disease with adequate penile length, curvature < 60º and absence of special deformities (hour-glass, hinge).	2b	B
Grafting techniques are the preferred treatment option for patients with Peyronie's disease with no adequate penile length, curvature > 60º and presence of special deformities (hour-glass, hinge).	2b	B
Penile prosthesis implantation, with or without any additional procedure (modelling, plication or grafting), is recommended in Peyronie's disease patients with erectile dysfunction not responding to pharmacotherapy.	2b	B

5. REFERENCES

1. Musitelli S, Bossi M, Jallous H. A brief historical survey of "Peyronie's disease". J Sex Med 2008 Jul;5(7):1737-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18179461
2. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
3. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
5. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049—51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long
6. Yachia D, Beyar M, Aridogan IA, et al. The incidence of congenital penile curvature. J Urol 1993 Nov;150(5 Pt 1):1478-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8411431
7. Montag S, Palmer LS. Abnormalities of penile curvature: chordee and penile torsion. ScientificWorldJournal 2011 Jul;11:1470-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21805016
8. Darewicz B, Kudelski J, Szynaka B, et al. Ultrastructure of the tunica albuginea in congenital penile curvature. J Urol 2001 Nov;166(5):1766-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586220
9. Baskin LS, Duckett JW, Lue TF. Penile curvature. Urology 1996 Sep;48(3):347-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8804484
10. Catuogno C, Romano G. Androstanolone treatment for congenital penile curvature. Eur Urol 2001 Jan;39 Suppl 2:28-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11223694
11. Nesbit R. Congenital curvature of the phallus: Report of three cases with description of corrective operation. J Urol 1965 Feb;93:230-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14260875
12. Bar Yosef Y, Binyamini J, Matzkin H, et al. Midline dorsal plication technique for penile curvature repair. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1368-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371846

13. Hayashi Y, Kojima Y, Mizuno K, et al. Modified technique of dorsal plication for penile curvature with or without hypospadias. Urology 2002 Apr;59(4):584-6; discussion 6-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927319
14. Ebbehoj J, Metz P. Congenital penile angulation. Br J Urol 1987 Sep;60(3):264-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3676675
15. Badawy H, Morsi H. Long-term followup of dermal grafts for repair of severe penile curvature. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4 Suppl):1842-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18721971
16. Schwarzer U, Sommer F, Klotz T, et al. The prevalence of Peyronie's disease: results of a large survey. BJU Int 2001 Nov;88(7):727-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890244
17. Rhoden EL, Teloken C, Ting HY, et al. Prevalence of Peyronie's disease in men over 50-y-old from Southern Brazil. Int J Impot Res 2001 Oct;13(5):291-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890516
18. Mulhall JP, Creech SD, Boorjian SA, et al. Subjective and objective analysis of the prevalence of Peyronie's disease in a population of men presenting for prostate cancer screening. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2350-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126819
19. La Pera G, Pescatori ES, Calabrese M, et al. Peyronie's disease: prevalence and association with cigarette smoking. A multicenter population-based study in men aged 50-69 years. Eur Urol 2001;40:525-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752860
20. Kumar B, Narang T, Gupta S, et al. A clinico-aetiological and ultrasonographic study of Peyronie's disease. Sex Health 2006 May;3(2):113-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16800397
21. Lindsay MB, Schain DM, Grambsch P, et al. The incidence of Peyronie's disease in Rochester, Minnesota, 1950 through 1984. J Urol 1991 Oct;146(4):1007-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1895413
22. Sommer F, Schwarzer U, Wassmer G, et al. Epidemiology of Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 2002 Oct;14(5):379-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12454689
23. Devine CJ Jr, Somers KD, Jordan SG, et al. Proposal: trauma as the cause of the Peyronie's lesion. J Urol 1997;157:285-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976281
24. Jarow JP, Lowe FC. Penile trauma: an etiologic factor in Peyronie's disease and erectile dysfunction. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1388-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302127
25. Gonzalez-Cadavid NF, Rajfer J. Mechanisms of Disease: new insights into the cellular and molecular pathology of Peyronie's disease. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2005 Jun;2(6):291-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474811
26. Rhoden EL, Riedner CE, Fuchs SC, et al. A cross-sectional study for the analysis of clinical, sexual and laboratory conditions associated to Peyronie's disease. J Sex Med 2010 Apr;7(4 Pt 1):1529-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912489
27. Kadioglu A, Tefekli A, Erol B, et al. A retrospective review of 307 men with Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1075-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187226
28. Carrieri MP, Serraino D, Palmiotto F, et al. A case-control study on risk factors for Peyronie's disease. J Clin Epidemiol 1998 Jun;51(6):511-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9636000
28. Deveci S, Hopps CV, O'Brien K, et al. Defining the clinical characteristics of Peyronie's disease in young men. J Sex Med 2007 Mar;4(2):485-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17081219
30. Bjekic MD, Vlajinac HD, Sipetic SB, et al. Risk factors for Peyronie's disease: a case-control study. BJU Int 2006 Mar;97(3):570-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469028
31. Tal R, Heck M, Teloken P, et al. Peyronie's disease following radical prostatectomy: incidence and predictors. J Sex Med 2010 Mar;7(3):1254-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20500447

32. Ralph D, Gonzalez-Cadavid N, Mirone V, et al. The management of Peyronie's disease: evidence-based 2010 guidelines. J Sex Med 2010 Jul;7(7):2359-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20497306
33. Gelbard MK, Dorey F, James K. The natural history of Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1990 Dec;144(6):1376-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2231932
34. Mulhall JP, Schiff J, Guhring P. An analysis of the natural history of Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2006 Jun;175(6):2115-8; discussion 8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697815
35. Bekos A, Arvaniti M, Hatzimouratidis K, et al. The natural history of Peyronie's disease: an ultrasonography-based study. Eur Urol 2008 Mar;53(3):644-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17673362
36. Pryor JP, Ralph DJ. Clinical presentations of Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 2002;14:414-7.
37. Nelson CJ, Diblasio C, Kendirci M, et al. The chronology of depression and distress in men with Peyronie's disease. J Sex Med 2008 Aug;5(8):1985-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18554257
38. Levine LA, Greenfield JM. Establishing a standardized evaluation of the man with Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 2003 Oct;15 Suppl 5:S103-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14551586
39. Greenfield JM, Lucas S, Levine LA. Factors affecting the loss of length associated with tunica albuginea plication for correction of penile curvature. J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1):238-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406919
40. Rosen RC, Riley A, Wagner G, et al. The international index of erectile function (IIEF): a multidimensional scale for assessment of erectile dysfunction. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6):822-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187685
41. Kadioglu A, Tefekli A, Erol H, et al. Color Doppler ultrasound assessment of penile vascular system in men with Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 2000 Oct;12(5):263-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11424963
42. Porst H, Vardi Y, Akkus E, et al. Standards for clinical trials in male sexual dysfunctions. J Sex Med 2010 Jan;7(1 Pt 2):414-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20092447
43. Hellstrom WJ, Bivalacqua TJ. Peyronie's disease: etiology, medical, and surgical therapy. J Androl 2000 May-June;21(3):347-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10819440
44. Muller A, Mulhall JP. Peyronie's disease intervention trials: methodological challenges and issues. J Sex Med 2009 Mar;6(3):848-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19138374
45. Shindel AW, Bullock TL, Brandes S. Urologist practice patterns in the management of Peyronie's disease: a nationwide survey. J Sex Med 2008 Apr;5(4):954-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18042214
46. Scott WW, Scardino PL. A new concept in the treatment of Peyronie's disease. South Med J 1948 Feb;41(2):173-7. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18898262
47. Pryor JP, Farell CF. Controlled clinical trial of Vitamin E in Peyronie's disease. Prog Reprod Biol 1983;9:41-5.
48. Griffiths MR, Priestley GC. A comparison of morphoea and lichen sclerosus et atrophicus in vitro: the effects of para-aminobenzoate on skin fibroblasts. Acta Derm Venereol 1992;72(1):15-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1350132
49. Zarafonetis CJ, Horrax TM. Treatment of Peyronie's disease with potassium para-aminobenzoate (potaba). J Urol 1959 Jun;81(6):770-2. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13655401
50. Shah PJR, Green NA, Adib RS, et al. A multicentre double-blind controlled clinical trial of potassium para-amino-benzoate (POTABA1) in Peyronie's disease. Progr Reprod Biol Med 1 1983;9:61-7.
51. Weidner W, Hauck EW, Schnitker J. Potassium paraaminobenzoate (POTABA) in the treatment of Peyronie's disease: a prospective, placebo-controlled, randomized study. Eur Urol 2005 Apr;47(4):530-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15774254
52. Ralph DJ, Brooks MD, Bottazzo GF, et al. The treatment of Peyronie's disease with tamoxifen. Br J Urol 1992 Dec;70(6):648-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1486392

53. Teloken C, Rhoden EL, Grazziotin TM, et al. Tamoxifen versus placebo in the treatment of Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1999 Dec;162(6):2003-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569556
54. Kadioglu A, Tefekli A, Koksal T, et al. Treatment of Peyronie's disease with oral colchicine: long-term results and predictive parameters of successful outcome. Int J Impot Res 2000 Jun;12(3):169-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11045911
55. Akkus E, Carrier S, Rehman J, et al. Is colchicine effective in Peyronie's disease? A pilot study. Urology 1994 Aug;44(2):291-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8048212
56. Akman T, Sanli O, Uluocak N, et al. The most commonly altered type of Peyronie's disease deformity under oral colchicine treatment is lateral curvature that mostly shifts to the dorsal side. Andrologia 2011 Feb;43(1):28-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21219379
57. Prieto Castro RM, Leva Vallejo ME, Regueiro Lopez JC, et al. Combined treatment with vitamin E and colchicine in the early stages of Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2003 Apr;91(6):522-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12656907
58. Netticadan T, Yu L, Dhalla NS, Panagia V. Palmitoyl carnitine increases intracellular calcium in adult rat cardiomyocytes. J Mol Cell Cardiol 1999 Jul;31(7):1357-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10403753
59. Biagiotti G, Cavallini G. Acetyl-L-carnitine vs tamoxifen in the oral therapy of Peyronie's disease: a preliminary report. BJU Int 2001 Jul;88(1):63-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11446848
60. Cavallini G, Biagiotti G, Koverech A, et al. Oral propionyl-l-carnitine and intraplaque verapamil in the therapy of advanced and resistant Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2002 Jun;89(9):895-900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010235
61. Shindel AW, Lin G, Ning H, et al. Pentoxifylline attenuates transforming growth factor-beta1-stimulated collagen deposition and elastogenesis in human tunica albuginea-derived fibroblasts part 1: impact on extracellular matrix. J Sex Med 2010 Jun;7(6):2077-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20367772
62. Brant WO, Dean RC, Lue TF. Treatment of Peyronie's disease with oral pentoxifylline. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2006 Feb;3(2):111-5; quiz 6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16470210
63. Smith JF, Shindel AW, Huang YC, et al. Pentoxifylline treatment and penile calcifications in men with Peyronie's disease. Asian J Androl 2011 Mar;13(2):322-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21102473
64. Ferrini MG, Kovanecz I, Nolazco G, et al. Effects of long-term vardenafil treatment on the development of fibrotic plaques in a rat model of Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2006 Mar;97(3):625-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469038
65. Chung E, Deyoung L, Brock GB. The role of PDE5 inhibitors in penile septal scar remodeling: assessment of clinical and radiological outcomes. J Sex Med 2011 May;8(5):1472-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21324095
66. Tranchant C, Braun S, Warter JM. [Mechanism of action of glucocorticoids: role of lipocortins]. Rev Neurol (Paris) 1989;145(12):813-8. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2533385
67. Desanctis PN, Furey CA Jr. Steroid injection therapy for Peyronie's disease: a 10-year summary and review of 38 cases. J Urol 1967 Jan;97(1):114-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6016195
68. Winter CC, Khanna R. Peyronie's disease: results with dermo-jet injection of dexamethasone. J Urol 1975 Dec;114(6):898-900.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1195471
69. Cipollone G, Nicolai M, Mastroprimiano G, et al. [Betamethasone versus placebo in Peyronie's disease]. Arch Ital Urol Androl 1998 Sep;70(4):165-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9823662
70. Roth M, Eickelberg O, Kohler E, et al. Ca2+ channel blockers modulate metabolism of collagens within the extracellular matrix. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1996 May 28;93(11):5478-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8643600
71. Mulhall JP, Anderson MS, Lubrano T, et al. Peyronie's disease cell culture models: phenotypic, genotypic and functional analyses. Int J Impot Res 2002 Oct;14(5):397-405.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12454692

72. Levine LA, Goldman KE, Greenfield JM. Experience with intraplaque injection of verapamil for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):621-5; discussion 5-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131321
73. Anderson MS, Shankey TV, Lubrano T, et al. Inhibition of Peyronie's plaque fibroblast proliferation by biologic agents. Int J Impot Res 2000 Sep;12 Suppl 3:S25-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11002396
74. Rehman J, Benet A, Melman A. Use of intralesional verapamil to dissolve Peyronie's disease plaque: a long-term single-blind study. Urology 1998 Apr;51(4):620-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586617
75. Bennett NE, Guhring P, Mulhall JP. Intralesional verapamil prevents the progression of Peyronie's disease. Urology 2007 Jun;69(6):1181-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17572211
76. Cavallini G, Modenini F, Vitali G. Open preliminary randomized prospective clinical trial of efficacy and safety of three different verapamil dilutions for intraplaque therapy of Peyronie's disease. Urology 2007 May;69(5):950-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482941
77. Shirazi M, Haghpanah AR, Badiee M, et al. Effect of intralesional verapamil for treatment of Peyronie's disease: a randomized single-blind, placebo-controlled study. Int Urol Nephrol 2009;41(3):467-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19199072
78. Moskovic DJ, Alex B, Choi JM, et al. Defining predictors of response to intralesional verapamil injection therapy for Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2011 Nov;108(9):1485-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21733073
79. Gelbard MK, James K, Riach P, et al. Collagenase versus placebo in the treatment of Peyronie's disease: a double-blind study. J Urol 1993 Jan;149(1):56-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8417217
80. Ehrlich HP. Scar contracture: cellular and connective tissue aspects in Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):316-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976288
81. Jordan GH. The use of intralesional clostridial collagenase injection therapy for Peyronie's disease: a prospective, single-center, non-placebo-controlled study. J Sex Med 2008 Jan;5(1):180-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18173766
82. Hurst LC, Badalamente MA, Hentz VR, et al. Injectable collagenase clostridium histolyticum for Dupuytren's contracture. N Engl J Med 2009 Sep 3;361(10):968-79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19726771
83. Duncan MR, Berman B, Nseyo UO. Regulation of the proliferation and biosynthetic activities of cultured human Peyronie's disease fibroblasts by interferons-alpha, -beta and -gamma. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1991;25(2):89-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1651559
84. Kendirci M, Usta MF, Matern RV, et al. The impact of intralesional interferon alpha-2b injection therapy on penile hemodynamics in men with Peyronie's disease. J Sex Med 2005 Sep;2(5):709-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422829
85. Hellstrom WJ, Kendirci M, Matern R, et al. Single-blind, multicenter, placebo controlled, parallel study to assess the safety and efficacy of intralesional interferon alpha-2B for minimally invasive treatment for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):394-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753449
86. Fitch WP 3rd, Easterling WJ, Talbert RL, et al. Topical verapamil HCl, topical trifluoperazine, and topical magnesium sulfate for the treatment of Peyronie's disease--a placebo-controlled pilot study. J Sex Med 2007 Mar;4(2):477-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17367443
87. Martin DJ, Badwan K, Parker M, et al. Transdermal application of verapamil gel to the penile shaft fails to infiltrate the tunica albuginea. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2483-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441945
88. Di Stasi SM, Giannantoni A, Capelli G, et al. Transdermal electromotive administration of verapamil and dexamethasone for Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2003 Jun;91(9):825-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12780842
89. Riedl CR, Plas E, Engelhardt P et al. Iontophoresis for treatment of Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):95-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604323

90. Tuygun C, Ozok UH, Gucuk A, et al. The effectiveness of transdermal electromotive administration with verapamil and dexamethasone in the treatment of Peyronie's disease. Int Urol Nephrol 2009;41(1):113-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18592390
91. Di Stasi SM, Giannantoni A, Stephen RL, et al. A prospective, randomized study using transdermal electromotive administration of verapamil and dexamethasone for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1605-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017231
92. Greenfield JM, Shah SJ, Levine LA. Verapamil versus saline in electromotive drug administration for Peyronie's disease: a double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):972-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296390
93. Husain J, Lynn NN, Jones DK, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave therapy in the management of Peyronie's disease: initial experience. BJU Int 2000 Sep;86(4):466-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10971273
94. Strebel RT, Suter S, Sautter T, et al. Extracorporeal shockwave therapy for Peyronie's disease does not correct penile deformity. Int J Impot Res 2004 Oct;16(5):448-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14973523
95. Hauck EW, Hauptmann A, Bschleipfer T, et al. Questionable efficacy of extracorporeal shock wave therapy for Peyronie's disease: results of a prospective approach. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):296-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665898
96. Srirangam SJ, Manikandan R, Hussain J, et al. Long-term results of extracorporeal shockwave therapy for Peyronie's disease. J Endourol 2006 Nov;20(11):880-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144855
97. Palmieri A, Imbimbo C, Longo N, et al. A first prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial evaluating extracorporeal shock wave therapy for the treatment of Peyronie's disease. Eur Urol 2009 Aug;56(2):363-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19473751
98. Bailey AJ, Tarlton JF, Van der Stappen J, et al. The continuous elongation technique for severe Dupuytren's disease. A biochemical mechanism. J Hand Surg Br 1994 Aug;19(4):522-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7964107
99. Levine LA, Newell M, Taylor FL. Penile traction therapy for treatment of Peyronie's disease: a single-center pilot study. J Sex Med 2008 Jun;5(6):1468-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18373527
100. Gontero P, Di Marco M, Giubilei G, et al. Use of penile extender device in the treatment of penile curvature as a result of Peyronie's disease. Results of a phase II prospective study. J Sex Med 2009 Feb;6(2):558-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19138361
101. Raheem AA, Garaffa G, Raheem TA, et al. The role of vacuum pump therapy to mechanically straighten the penis in Peyronie's disease. BJU Int 2010 Oct;106(8):1178-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20438558
102. Montorsi F, Adaikan G, Becher E, et al. Summary of the recommendations on sexual dysfunctions in men. J Sex Med 2010 Nov;7(11):3572-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21040491
103. Kendirci M, Hellstrom WJ. Critical analysis of surgery for Peyronie's disease. Curr Opin Urol 2004; 14:381-8.
104. Langston JP, Carson CC, 3rd. Peyronie disease: plication or grafting. Urol Clin North Am 2011;38: 207-16.
105. Garaffa G, Sacca A, Christopher AN, et al. Circumcision is not mandatory in penile surgery. BJU Int 2010 Jan;105(2):222-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19594732
106. Mulhall J, Anderson M, Parker M. A surgical algorithm for men with combined Peyronie's disease and erectile dysfunction: functional and satisfaction outcomes. J Sex Med 2005 Jan;2(1):132-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422916
107. Smith JF, Walsh TJ, Lue TF. Peyronie's disease: a critical appraisal of current diagnosis and treatment. Int J Impot Res 2008 Sep-Oct;20(5):445-59
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18650828
108. Pryor JP, Fitzpatrick JM. A new approach to the correction of the penile deformity in Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1979 Nov;122(5):622-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/501814

109. Pryor JP. Correction of penile curvature and Peyronie's disease: why I prefer the Nesbit technique. Int J Impot Res 1998 Jun;10(2):129-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9647952
110. Ralph DJ, al-Akraa M, Pryor JP. The Nesbit operation for Peyronie's disease: 16-year experience. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1362-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7658538
111. Savoca G, Trombetta C, Ciampalini S, et al. Long-term results with Nesbit's procedure as treatment of Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 2000 Oct;12(5):289-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11424968
112. Rehman J, Benet A, Minsky LS, et al. Results of surgical treatment for abnormal penile curvature: Peyronie's disease and congenital deviation by modified Nesbit plication (tunical shaving and plication). J Urol 1997 Apr;157(4):1288-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120923
113. Lemberger RJ, Bishop MC, Bates CP. Nesbit's operation for Peyronie's disease. Br J Urol 1984 Dec;56(6):721-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6534497
114. Sassine AM, Wespes E, Schulman CC. Modified corporoplasty for penile curvature: 10 years' experience. Urology 1994 Sep;44(3):419-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8073558
115. Licht MR, Lewis RW. Modified Nesbit procedure for the treatment of Peyronie's disease: a comparative outcome analysis. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):460-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224323
116. Yachia D. Modified corporoplasty for the treatment of penile curvature. J Urol 1990 Jan;143(1):80-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2294269
117. Essed E, Schroeder FH. New surgical treatment for Peyronie disease. Urology 1985 Jun;25(6):582-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4012950
118. Ebbehoj J, Metz P. New operation for "krummerik" (penile curvature). Urology 1985 Jul;26(1):76-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3892851
119. Gholami SS, Lue TF. Correction of penile curvature using the 16-dot plication technique: a review of 132 patients. J Urol 2002 May;167(5):2066-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956440
120. Dalkin BL, Carter MF. Venogenic impotence following dermal graft repair for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1991 Sep;146(3):849-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1843616
121. Devine CJ Jr, Horton CE. Surgical treatment of Peyronie's disease with a dermal graff. J Urol 1974 Jan;111(1):44-9. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4273261
122. Montorsi F, Salonia A, Maga T, et al. Evidence based assessment of long-term results of plaque incision and vein grafting for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1704-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799165
123. Kadioglu A, Tefekli A, Usta M et al. Surgical treatment of Peyronie's disease with incision and venous patch technique. Int J Impot Res 1999 Apr;11(2):75-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10356666
124. El-Sakka AI, Rashwan HM, Lue TF. Venous patch graft for Peyronie's disease. Part II: outcome analysis. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 1):2050-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817321
125. Hatzichristou DG, Hatzimouratidis K, Apostolidis A, et al. Corporoplasty using tunica albuginea free grafts for penile curvature: surgical technique and long-term results. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1367-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832734
126. Das S. Peyronie's disease: excision and autografting with tunica vaginalis. J Urol 1980 Dec;124(6):818-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7441830
127. Gelbard MK, Hayden B. Expanding contractures of the tunica albuginea due to Peyronie's disease with temporalis fascia free grafts. J Urol 1991 Apr;145(4):772-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2005698
128. Cormio L, Zucchi A, Lorusso F, et al. Surgical treatment of Peyronie's disease by plaque incision and grafting with buccal mucosa. Eur Urol 2009 Jun;55(6):1469-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19084325

129. Taylor FL, Levine LA. Surgical correction of Peyronie's disease via tunica albuginea plication or partial plaque excision with pericardial graft: long-term follow up. J Sex Med 2008 Sep;5(9):2221-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18637996
130. Burnett AL. Fascia lata in penile reconstructive surgery: a reappraisal of the fascia lata graft. Plast Reconstr Surg 1997 Apr;99(4):1061-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9091903
131. Fallon B. Cadaveric dura mater graft for correction of penile curvature in Peyronie disease. Urology 1990 Feb;35(2):127-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2305535
132. Leungwattanakij S, Bivalacqua TJ, Yang DY, et al. Comparison of cadaveric pericardial, dermal, vein, and synthetic grafts for tunica albuginea substitution using a rat model. BJU Int 2003 Jul;92(1):119-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12823395
133. Knoll LD. Use of porcine small intestinal submucosal graft in the surgical management of Peyronie's disease. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):753-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306396
134. Bokarica P, Parazajder J, Mazuran B, et al. Surgical treatment of Peyronie's disease based on penile length and degree of curvature. Int J Impot Res 2005 Mar-Apr;17(2):170-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15215882
135. Faerber GJ, Konnak JW. Results of combined Nesbit penile plication with plaque incision and placement of Dacron patch in patients with severe Peyronie's disease. J Urol 1993 May;149(5 Pt 2):1319-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8479026
136. Egydio PH, Lucon AM, Arap S. A single relaxing incision to correct different types of penile curvature: surgical technique based on geometrical principles. BJU Int 2004 Nov;94(7):1147-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15541152
137. Kadioglu A, Akman T, Sanli O, et al. Surgical treatment of Peyronie's disease: a critical analysis. Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):235-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16716495
138. Chun JL, McGregor A, Krishnan R, et al. A comparison of dermal and cadaveric pericardial grafts in the modified Horton-Devine procedure for Peyronie's disease. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):185-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435853
139. Chung E, Clendinning E, Lessard L et al. Five-year follow-up of Peyronie's graft surgery: outcomes and patient satisfaction. J Sex Med 2011 Feb;8(2):594-600. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21054805
140. Taylor FL, Levine LA. Peyronie's Disease. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Nov;34(4):517-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17983892
141. Montorsi F, Guazzoni G, Barbieri L, et al. AMS 700 CX inflatable penile implants for Peyronie's disease: functional results, morbidity and patient-partner satisfaction. Int J Impot Res 1996 Jun;8(2):81-5; discussion 5-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8858396
142. Wilson SK. Surgical techniques: modeling technique for penile curvature. J Sex Med 2007 Jan;4(1):231-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17233788
143. Wilson SK, Delk JR 2nd. A new treatment for Peyronie's disease: modeling the penis over an inflatable penile prosthesis. J Urol 1994 Oct;152(4):1121-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8072079
144. Carson CC. Penile prosthesis implantation in the treatment of Peyronie's disease. Int J Impot Res 1998 Jun;10(2):125-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9647951
145. Montague DK, Angermeier KW, Lakin MM, et al. AMS 3-piece inflatable penile prosthesis implantation in men with Peyronie's disease: comparison of CX and Ultrex cylinders. J Urol 1996 Nov;156(5): 1633-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8863557
146. Chaudhary M, Sheikh N, Asterling S,et al. Peyronie's disease with erectile dysfunction: penile modelling over inflatable penile prostheses. Urology 2005 Apr;65(4):760-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15833523

6. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

EAU	European Association of Urology
EMDA	transdermal electromotive drug administration or electromotive drug administration
SWL	shock wave lithotripsy
GR	grade of recommendation
IIEF	international index of erectile function
LE	level of evidence
MeSH	Medical Subject Headings
PDE5i	Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors

Conflict of interest

All members of the Penile Curvature guidelines writing panel have provided disclosure statements of all relationships they have that may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Male Infertility

A. Jungwirth, T. Diemer, G.R. Dohle, A. Giwercman,
Z. Kopa, C. Krausz, H. Tournaye

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. METHODOLOGY

1.1 Introduction

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guideline Panel on Male Infertility has prepared these guidelines to assist urologists and healthcare professionals from related specialities in the treatment of male infertility.

Urologists are usually the specialists who are initially responsible for assessing the male partner when male infertility is suspected. However, infertility can be a multifactorial condition requiring multidisciplinary involvement. The Male Infertility Guidelines Panel consists of urologists and endocrinologists with special training in andrology and experience in the diagnosis and treatment of male infertility.

1.2 Data identification

The recommendations provided in the current guidelines are based on a systemic literature search performed by the panel members. MedLine, Embase, and Cochrane databases were searched to identify original and review articles. The controlled vocabulary of the Medical Subject Headings (MeSH) database was used alongside a 'free-text' protocol, combining 'male infertility' with the terms 'diagnosis', 'epidemiology', 'investigations', 'treatment', 'spermatogenic failure', 'genetic abnormalities', 'obstruction', 'hypogonadism', 'varicocele', 'cryptorchidism', 'testicular cancer', 'male accessory gland infection', 'idiopathic', 'contraception', 'ejaculatory dysfunction' and 'cryopreservation' .

All articles published between January 2010 (previous update) and November 2011 were considered for review. The expert panel reviewed these records and selected articles with the highest evidence.

1.3 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

References in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1), and guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (1). Grading aims to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

When recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not translate into a grade A recommendation when there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. There may be exceptions where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons, and unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful. Whenever this occurs, it is indicated in the text as "upgraded based on panel consensus". The quality of the underlying scientific evidence must be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (2-4).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can it address local/national preferences systematically. The expert panels include this information whenever it is available.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

1.4 Publication history

The EAU Male infertility Guidelines were first published in 2001, followed by full text updates in 2004, 2007 and 2010. For this 2012 publication all sections have been revised and limited changes were implemented. Starting in 2012, the expert panel instigate start a new updating cycle. A quick reference guide presenting the main findings of the Male Infertility Guidelines is also available as well as a number of scientific publications in the EAU journal European Urology. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the society website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

This document was peer-reviewed prior to publication.

1.5 Definition

'Infertility is the inability of a sexually active, non-contracepting couple to achieve spontaneous pregnancy in one year' World Health Organization (WHO) (5).

1.6 Epidemiology and aetiology

About 15% of couples do not achieve pregnancy within 1 year and seek medical treatment for infertility. Eventually, 5% remain unwillingly childless. Infertility affects both men and women. In 50% of involuntarily childless couples, a male infertility associated factor is found together with abnormal semen parameters. A fertile partner may compensate for the fertility problem of the man and thus infertility usually becomes manifest if both partners have reduced fertility (5). Male fertility can be reduced as a result of (5):

- congenital or acquired urogenital abnormalities;
- urogenital tract infections;
- increased scrotal temperature (e.g. as a consequence of varicocele);
- endocrine disturbances;
- genetic abnormalities;
- immunological factors.

In 30-40% of cases, no male infertility associated factor is found (idiopathic male infertility). These men present with no previous history of fertility problems and have normal findings on physical examination and endocrine laboratory testing. However, semen analysis reveals a decreased number of spermatozoa (oligozoospermia), decreased sperm motility (asthenozoospermia), and many abnormal forms of sperm (teratozoospermia). These sperm abnormalities usually occur together and are called oligo-astheno-teratozoospermia (OAT) syndrome. Table 3 summarises the main male infertility-associated factors. Idiopathic male infertility may be explained by several factors, including endocrine disruption as a result of environmental pollution, reactive oxygen species, or genetic abnormalities.

Table 3: Male infertility associated factors and percentage of distribution in10,469 patients

Male infertility associated factor	Distribution %
Idiopathic male infertility	31
Maldescended testes	7.8
Urogenital infection	8.0
Disturbances of semen deposition and sexual factors	5.9
General and systemic disease	3.1
Varicocele	15.6
(Endocrine) Hypogonadism	8.9
Immunological factors	4.5
Obstructions	1.7
Other abnormalities	5.5

1.7 Prognostic factors

Prognostic factors for male infertility are:

- duration of infertility;
- primary or secondary infertility;
- results of semen analysis;
- age and fertility status of female partner.

The cumulative pregnancy rate in infertile couples with 2 years of follow-up and oligozoospermia as the primary cause of infertility is 27% (7). Female age is the most important single variable influencing outcome in assisted reproduction (8). Compared to a woman aged 25 years, the fertility potential of a woman aged 35 years is reduced to 50%, to 25% at 38 years, and less than 5% at over 40 years. In many Western countries, women postpone their first pregnancy until after their education and starting a career.

1.8 Recommendations on epidemiology and aetiology

Recommendations	GR
To categorise infertility, both partners should be investigated simultaneously.	C
In the diagnosis and management of male subfertility, the fertility status of the female partner must also be considered, as this might determine the final outcome (8).	B
The urologist/andrologist should examine any male with fertility problems for urogenital abnormalities. This applies to all males diagnosed with reduced sperm quality. A diagnosis is mandatory to start appropriate therapy (drugs, surgery, assisted reproduction) (5).	C

1.9 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2001). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Produced by Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long
5. World Health Organization. WHO Manual for the Standardised Investigation and Diagnosis of the Infertile Couple. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.

6. Andrology. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM (eds). *Male reproductive health and dysfunction*. 2nd edn. Berlin: Springer Verlag, 1997, Chapter 5, pp. 83-7.
7. Snick HK, Snick TS, Evers JL, et al. The spontaneous pregnancy prognosis in untreated subfertile couples: the Walcheren primary care study. Hum Reprod 1997 Jul;12(7):1582-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9262301
8. Rowe T. Fertility and a woman's age. J Reprod Med 2006 Mar:51(3);157-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16674009

2. INVESTIGATIONS

2.1 Semen analysis

A medical history and physical examination are standard assessments in all men, including semen analysis. A comprehensive andrological examination is indicated if semen analysis shows abnormalities compared with reference values (Table 4). As important treatment decisions are based on the results of semen analysis, it is essential that the complete laboratory work-up is standardised. Ejaculate analysis has been standardised by the WHO and disseminated by publication of the *WHO Laboratory Manual for the Examination and Processing of Human Semen* (5th edn.) (1). It is the consensus that modern spermatology must follow these guidelines.

Table 4: Lower reference limits (5th centiles and their 95% confidence intervals) for semen characteristics

Parameter	Lower reference limit (range)
Semen volume (mL)	1.5 (1.4-1.7)
Total sperm number (10^6 per ejaculate)	39 (33-46)
Sperm concentration (10^6 per mL)	15 (12-16)
Total motility (PR + NP)	40 (38-42)
Progressive motility (PR, %)	32 (31-34)
Vitality (live spermatozoa, %)	58 (55-63)
Sperm morphology (normal forms, %)	4 (3.0-4.0)
Other consensus threshold values	
pH	> 7.2
Peroxidase-positive leukocytes (10^6 per mL)	< 1.0
MAR test (motile spermatozoa with bound particles, %)	< 50
Immunobead test (motile spermatozoa with bound beads, %)	< 50
Seminal zinc (µmol/ejaculate)	≥ 2.4
Seminal fructose (µmol/ejaculate)	≥ 13
Seminal neutral glucosidase (mU/ejaculate)	≥ 20

PR = progressive; NP = non-progressive; MAR = Mixed antiglobulin reaction.

*2.1.1 **Frequency of semen analysis***

If the results of semen analysis are normal according to WHO criteria, one test should be sufficient. If the results are abnormal in at least two tests, further andrological investigation is indicated. It is important to differentiate between the following:

- oligozoospermia: < 15 million spermatozoa/mL
- asthenozoospermia: < 32% motile spermatozoa
- teratozoospermia: < 4% normal forms.

Quite often, all three anomalies occur simultaneously which is defined as OligoAsthenoTeratozoospermia (OAT). As in azoospermia, in extreme cases of oligozoospermia (< 1 million spermatozoa/mL), there is an increased incidence of obstruction of the male genital tract and genetic abnormalities.

2.2 Recommendations for investigations in male infertility

Recommendations	GR
According to WHO criteria, andrological investigations are indicated if semen analysis is abnormal in at least two tests.	C
Assessment of andrological status must consider the suggestions made by WHO for the standardised investigation, diagnosis, and management of the infertile couple; this will result in implementation of evidence-based medicine in this interdisciplinary field of reproductive medicine (2).	C
Semen analysis must follow the guidelines of the *WHO Laboratory Manual for the Examination and Processing* (5th edn) (1).	B

2.3 References

1. World Health Organization. WHO Laboratory Manual for the Examination and Processing of Human Semen. 5th edn. WHO, 2010. http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/infertility/9789241547789/en/index.html
2. World Health Organization. WHO Manual for the Standardised Investigation and Diagnosis of the Infertile Couple. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.

3. TESTICULAR DEFICIENCY (SPERMATOGENIC FAILURE)

3.1 Definition

Testicular deficiency as a consequence of spermatogenic failure is caused by conditions other than hypothalamic-pituitary disease and obstructions of the male genital tract. It is the commonest form of reduced male fertility. Testicular deficiency may have different aetiologies and present clinically as severe OAT or non-obstructive azoospermia (NOA) (1).

3.2 Aetiology

The causes of testicular deficiency are summarised in Table 5.

Table 5: Causes of testicular deficiency

Factors	Causes
Congenital	Anorchia
	Testicular dysgenesis/cryptorchidism
	Genetic abnormalities (karyotype, Y chromosome deletions)
	Germ cell aplasia, resulting in Sertoli cell only syndrome
	Spermatogenic arrest (maturation arrest)
Acquired	Trauma
	Testicular torsion
	Post-inflammatory forms, particularly mumps orchitis
	Exogenous factors (medications, cytotoxic drugs, irradiation, heat)
	Systemic diseases (liver cirrhosis, renal failure)
	Testicular tumour
	Varicocele
	Surgery that may compromise vascularisation of the testes and subsequently testicular atrophy
Idiopathic	Unknown aetiology
	Unknown pathogenesis

3.3 Medical history and physical examination

Typical findings from the history and physical examination of a patient with testicular deficiency are:

- cryptorchidism;
- testicular torsion;
- genitourinary infection;
- testicular trauma;
- exposure to environmental toxin(s);
- gonadotoxic medication;
- exposure to radiation or chemical(s);
- testicular cancer;
- absence of testes;
- abnormal secondary sexual characteristics;
- gynaecomastia;
- abnormal testicular volume and/or consistency;
- varicocele.

3.4 Investigations

Routine investigations include semen analysis and hormonal determinations. Other investigations may be required depending on the individual situation.

3.4.1 ***Semen analysis***

In NOA, semen analysis shows normal ejaculate volume and azoospermia after centrifugation. A recommended method is semen centrifugation at 3000 g for 15 minutes and a thorough microscopic examination by phase contrast optics at x200 magnification of the pellet. All samples can be stained and re-examined microscopically (2).

3.4.2 ***Hormonal determinations***

In men with testicular deficiency hypergonadotrophic hypogonadism is usually present, with high levels of follicle stimulating hormone [FSH] and luteinising hormone [LH], and sometimes low levels of testosterone. Generally, the levels of FSH correlate with the number of spermatogonia:

- When spermatogonia are absent or markedly diminished, FSH values are usually elevated.
- When the number of spermatogonia is normal, but spermatocyte or spermatid blockage is complete. FSH values are within normal range.

However, for an individual patient, FSH levels do not accurately predict the spermatogenesis status (3-5). Preliminary data indicate a stronger correlation between low inhibin B level and spermatogenic damage (6).

3.4.3 ***Testicular biopsy***

Testicular biopsy can be part of an intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) treatment in patients with clinical evidence of NOA. Testicular sperm extraction (TESE) is the technique of choice and shows excellent repeatability (7-9). Spermatogenesis may be focal, which means that in about 50-60% of men with NOA, spermatozoa can be found and used for ICSI. Most authors therefore recommend taking several testicular samples (10,11). There is a good correlation between the histology found upon diagnostic biopsy and the likelihood of finding mature sperm cells during testicular sperm retrieval and ICSI (12,13). However, no clear relationship has been found between FSH, inhibin B or testicular volume and successful sperm harvesting. When there are complete AZFa and AZFb microdeletions, the likelihood of sperm retrieval is virtually zero.

Microsurgical testicular sperm extraction may increase retrieval rates, even though comparative studies are not yet available (14-16). After opening the testis, tubules exhibiting larger diameter are excised using micro-scissors or forceps. Then, tubules are minced using mechanical or enzymatic digestion to facilitate sperm search (17). Positive retrievals are reported even in conditions, such as Sertoli cell only syndrome type II (14). Percutaneous Epididymal Sperm Aspiration (PESA) results in lower retrieval rates and does not allow histological examination to detect for instance carcinoma in situ (CIS) and testicular malignancies (18,19). PESA may also result in more tubular and vascular damage than TESE (20).

The results of ICSI are worse when using sperm retrieved from men with NOA compared to sperm from ejaculated semen and from men with obstructive azoospermia (OA) (21-24):

- Birth rates are lower in NOA versus OA (19% vs 28%) (25).
- Fertilisation and implantation rates are significantly lower (26).
- Miscarriage rates are higher in NOA versus OA (11.5% vs 2.5%) (27).

In OA, there were no significant differences in ICSI results between testicular and epididymal sperm (24). Also,

no significant differences have been reported in ICSI results between the use of fresh and frozen-thawed sperm (22,26-28).

3.5 Conclusions and recommendations for testicular deficiency

Conclusions
Impaired spermatogenesis is often associated with elevated FSH concentration.
Testicular biopsy is the best procedure to define the histological diagnosis and the possibility of finding sperm. Spermatozoa should be cryopreserved for use in ICSI.
Spermatozoa are found in about 60% of patients with non-obstructive azoospermia (NOA).
Men who are candidates for sperm retrieval must receive appropriate genetic advice.
For patients with NOA, who have spermatozoa in their testicular biopsy, ICSI with fresh or cryopreserved spermatozoa is the only therapeutic option.
Pregnancies and live births are achieved in 30-50% of couples with NOA, when spermatozoa has been found in the testicular biopsy.

Recommendations	GR
Men with non-obstructive azoospermia (NOA) can be offered a testicular sperm extraction with cryopreservation of the spermatozoa to be used for intracytoplasmic sperm injection (28).	B
To increase the chances of positive sperm retrievals in men with NOA, testicular sperm extraction (single, multiple or microsurgical) should be used rather than PESA.	B

3.6 References

1. World Health Organization. WHO Manual for the Standardised Investigation, Diagnosis and Management of the Infertile Male. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
2. World Health Organization. WHO Laboratory Manual for the Examination and Processing of Human Semen. 5th edn. WHO, 2010. http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/infertility/9789241547789/en/index.html
3. Hauser R, Temple-Smith PD, Southwick GJ, et al. Fertility in cases of hypergonadotropic azoospermia. Fertil Steril 1995 Mar;63(3):631-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7851598
4. Martin-du Pan RC, Bischof P. Increased follicle stimulating hormone in infertile men. Is increased plasma FSH always due to damaged germinal epithelium? Hum Reprod 1995 Aug;10(8):1940-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8567817
5. De Kretser DM, Burger HG, Hudson B. The relationship between germinal cells and serum FSH in males with infertility. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1974 May;38(5):787-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4823921
6. Pierik FH, Vreeburg JT, Stijnen T, et al. Serum inhibin B as a marker of spermatogenesis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998 Sep;83(9):3110-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9745412
7. Amer M, Haggar SE, Moustafa T, et al. Testicular sperm extraction: impact to testicular histology on outcome, number of biopsies to be performed and optional time for repetition. Hum Reprod 1999 Dec;14(12):3030-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10601092
8. Colpi GM, Piediferro G, Nerva F, et al. Sperm retrieval for intra-cytoplasmic sperm injection in nonobstructive azoospermia. Minerva Urol Nefrol 2005 Jun;57(2):99-107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15951734
9. Vernaeve V, Verheyen G, Goossens A, et al. How successful is repeat testicular sperm extraction in patients with azoospermia? Hum Reprod 2006 Jun;21(6):1551-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16473930
10. Gottschalk-Sabag S, Weiss DB, Folb-Zacharow N, et al. Is one testicular specimen sufficient for quantitative evaluation of spermatogenesis? Fertil Steril 1995 Aug;64(2):399-402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7615120
11. Turek PJ, Cha I, Ljung BM. Systematic fine-needle aspiration of the testis: correlation to biopsy and results of organ 'mapping' for mature sperm in azoospermic men. Urology 1997 May;49(5):743-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9145981

12. Abdel-Meguid TA. Predictors of sperm recovery and azoospermia relapse in men with nonobstructive azoospermia after varicocele repair. J Urol 2012 Jan;187(1):222-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22100001
13. Kim ED, Gilbaugh JH 3rd, Patel VR, et al. Testis biopsies frequently demonstrate sperm in men with azoospermia and significantly elevated follicle-stimulating hormone levels. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1): 144-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976237
14. Colpi GM, Piediferro G, Nerva F, et al. Sperm retrieval for intra-cytoplasmic sperm injection in nonobstructive azoospermia. Minerva Urol Nefrol 2005 Jun;57(2):99-107. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15951734
15. Schlegel PN. Testicular sperm extraction: microdissection improves sperm yield with minimal tissue excision. Hum Reprod 1999 Jan:14(1):131-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10374109
16. Okada H, Dobashi M, Yamazaki T, et al. Conventional versus microdissection testicular sperm extraction for non obstructive azoospermia. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1063-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187223
17. Esteves SC, Miyaoka R, Agarwal A. Sperm retrieval techniques for assisted reproduction. Int Braz J Urol 2011 Sep-Oct;37(5): 570-83 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22099268
18. Monzó A, Kondylis F, Lynch D, et al. Outcome of intracytoplasmic sperm injection in azoospermic patients: stressing the liaison between the urologist and reproductive medicine specialist. Urology 2001 Jul;58(1):69-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445482
19. Vernaeve V, Tournaye H, Osmanagaoglu K, et al. Intracytoplasmic sperm injection with testicular spermatozoa is less successful in men with nonobstructive azoospermia than in men with obstructive azoospermia. Fertil Steril 2003 Mar;79(3):529-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12620435
20. Silber S, Munné S. Chromosomal abnormalities in embryos derived from testicular sperm extraction tese) in men with non-obstructive azoospermia. In: *Proceedings of EAA International Symposium. Genetics of male infertility: from research to clinic*. October 2-4, 2003, Florence, Italy.
21. Schwarzer J, Fiedler K, Hertwig I, et al. Sperm retrieval procedures and intracytoplasmatic spermatozoa injection with epididymal and testicular sperms. Urol Int 2003;70(2):119-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12592040
22. Ghanem M, Bakr NI, Elgayaar MA, et al. Comparison of the outcome of intracytoplasmic sperm injection in obstructive and non-obstructive azoospermia in the first cycle: a report of case series and meta-analysis. Int J Androl 2005 Feb;28(1):16-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15679616
23. Borges E Jr, Rossi-Ferragut LM, Pasqualotto FF, et al. Testicular sperm results in elevated miscarriage rates compared to epididymal sperm in azoospermic patients. Sao Paulo Med J 2002 Jul;120(4): 122-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12436160
24. Gil Salóm M. [Spermatic recovery techniques for intracytoplasmic spermatozoid injection (ICSI) in male infertility.] Arch Esp Urol 2004 Nov;57(9):1035-46. [Article in Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15624403
25. Ben-Yosef D, Yogev L, Hauser R, et al. Testicular sperm retrieval and cryopreservation prior to initiating ovarian stimulation as the first line approach in patients with non-obstructive azoospermia. Hum Reprod 1999 Jul;14(7):1794-801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10402392
26. Gil-Salóm M, Romero J, Rubio C, et al. Intracytoplasmic sperm injection with cryopreserved testicular spermatozoa. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2000 Nov;169(1-2):15-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11155947
27. Sousa M, Cremades N, Silva J, et al. Predictive value of testicular histology in secretory azoospermic subgroups and clinical outcomes after microinjection of fresh and frozen-thawed sperm and spermatids. Hum Reprod 2002 Jul;17(7):1800-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12093843
28. Hauser R, Yogev L, Amit A, et al. Severe hypospermatogenesis in cases of nonobstructive azoospermia: should we use fresh or frozen testicular spermatozoa? J Androl 2005 Nov-Dec;26(6):772-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16291973

4. GENETIC DISORDERS IN INFERTILITY

4.1 Introduction

All urologists working in andrology must have an understanding of genetic abnormalities in infertility, so that they can provide correct advice to couples seeking fertility treatment. Men with very low sperm counts can be given a reasonable chance of paternity, using in vitro fertilisation (IVF), ICSI and sperm harvesting from the epididymis or the testis in case of azoospermia. However, the sperm of infertile men show an increase in aneuploidy, other genetic abnormalities and DNA damage and carry the risk of passing genetic abnormalities to the next generation. Although there are prospects for screening of sperm (1,2), current routine clinical practice is based on screening peripheral blood samples.

4.2 Chromosomal abnormalities

Chromosome abnormalities can be numerical (e.g. trisomy) or structural (e.g. inversions or translocations) (3,4). In a survey of pooled data from 11 publications, including 9,766 infertile men, the incidence of chromosomal abnormalities was 5.8% (3). Of these, sex chromosome abnormalities accounted for 4.2% and autosomal abnormalities for 1.5%. For comparison, the incidence of abnormalities was 0.38% in pooled data from three series, with a total of 94,465 newborn male infants, of which 131 (0.14%) were sex chromosome abnormalities and 232 (0.25%) autosomal abnormalities (4). The frequency of chromosomal abnormalities increases as the testicular deficiency becomes more severe. Patients with < 5 million spermatozoa/mL already show a 10-fold higher incidence (4%) of mainly autosomal structural abnormalities compared with the general population (5). At highest risk are secretory azoospermic men.

Based on the frequencies of chromosomal aberrations in patients with different sperm concentration, karyotype analysis is indicated in azoospermic men and in oligozoospermic men with < 5 million spermatozoa/mL (5). If there is a family history of recurrent abortions, malformations or mental retardation, karyotype analysis should be requested, regardless of the sperm concentration.

*4.2.1 **Sperm chromosomal abnormalities***

Sperm can be examined for chromosomal normality using multicolour fluorescent *in situ* hybridisation (FISH). Aneuploidy in sperm, particularly sex chromosome aneuploidy, is associated with severe damage to spermatogenesis (3,6-10) and is also seen in men with translocations (11).

FISH analysis of spermatozoa is a research investigation. It should be used to assess spermatozoa from men with defined andrological conditions (6). Techniques are needed to separate populations of genetically abnormal sperm from normal sperm or to safely screen individual spermatozoa before IVF and ICSI.

*4.2.2 **Sex chromosome abnormalities (Klinefelter's syndrome and variants [47,XXY; 46,XY/47, XXY mosaicism])***

Klinefelter's syndrome is the most common sex chromosome abnormality (3,12). Adult men with Klinefelter's syndrome have small firm testicles devoid of germ cells. The phenotype varies from a normally virilised man to a man with the stigmata of androgen deficiency, including female hair distribution, scant body hair, and long arms and legs due to late epiphyseal closure. Leydig cell function is commonly impaired in men with Klinefelter's syndrome (13). Testosterone levels may be normal or low, oestradiol levels normal or elevated, and FSH levels increased. Libido is often normal despite low testosterone levels, but androgen replacement may be needed as the patient ages.

Germ cell presence and sperm production are variable in men with Klinefelter's mosaicism, 46,XY/47,XXY. There is one case report of declining spermatogenesis in a man with Klinefelter's syndrome, with the recommendation that early sperm retrieval sperm should be considered (14). Based on sperm FISH studies showing an increased frequency of sex chromosomal abnormalities and increased incidence of autosomal aneuploidies (disomy for chromosomes 13, 18 and 21), concerns have been raised about the chromosomal normality of the embryos generated through ICSI (15).

The production of 24,XY sperm has been reported in 0.9% and 7.0% of men with Klinefelter's mosaicism (16-18) and in 1.36-25% of men with somatic karyotype 47,XXY (19-22). In azoospermic patients, TESE or (MicroTESE) can be proposed as a therapeutic option since spermatozoa can be recovered in about 30% of cases. To date, 49 healthy children have been born using ICSI without preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PDG) and the conception of one 47,XXY fetus has been reported (12). However, a study of ICSI combined with PDG in 113 embryos reported a significant fall in the rate of normal embryos for couples with Klinefelter's syndrome in respect to controls (54% vs 77.2%) (15). Due to the significant increase of sex chromosomal and autosomal abnormalities in the embryos of Klinefelter's patients, pre-implantation diagnosis or amniocentesis and karyotype analysis should be strongly advised.

Follow-up (possibly every year) of men with Klinefelter's syndrome is required and androgen replacement therapy should be started when testosterone level is in the range of hypoandrogenism. All men

with Klinefelter's syndrome who undergo testicular biopsy procedures for sperm retrieval need long-term endocrine follow-up.

*4.2.3 **Autosomal abnormalities***

Genetic counselling should be offered to all couples seeking fertility treatment (including IVF/ICSI) when the male partner is known or found to have an autosomal karyotype abnormality.

The most common autosomal karyotype abnormalities are Robertsonian translocations, reciprocal translocations, paracentric inversions and marker chromosomes. It is important to look for these structural chromosomal anomalies because there is an increased associated risk of aneuploidy or unbalanced chromosomal complements in the fetus. As with Klinefelter's syndrome, sperm FISH analysis provides a more accurate risk estimation of affected offspring.

When IVF/ICSI is carried out for men with translocations, preimplantation genetic diagnosis or amniocentesis and karyotype analysis should be used. Embryos with known unbalanced translocation should probably not be implanted.

4.3 Genetic defects

*4.3.1 **X-linked genetic disorders and male fertility***

Each man has only one X chromosome. An X-linked recessive disorder manifests in males. The defect will be transmitted to daughters, but not to sons.

*4.3.2 **Kallmann syndrome***

The most common X-linked disorder in infertility practice is Kallmann syndrome. The predominant form is an X-linked recessive disorder caused by a mutation in the KALIG-1 gene on Xp22.3 (23). A number of newly identified autosomal gene mutations can also cause Kallmann syndrome (24). Patients with Kallmann syndrome have hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism and anosmia, but may also have other clinical features, including facial asymmetry, cleft palate, colour blindness, deafness, maldescended testes, and renal abnormalities.

Since spermatogenesis can be relatively easily induced by hormonal treatment (25), genetic screening prior to therapy is strongly adviced. Treatment with gonadotrophins allows natural conception in most cases, even in men with a relatively low sperm count. Thus, identification of the involved gene (X-linked, autosomal dominant or recessive) can help to provide more accurate genetic counselling i.e. risk estimation for transmission to the offspring.

*4.3.3 **Mild androgen insensitivity syndrome***

The AR gene is located on the long arm of the X chromosome. Mutations in the AR gene may result in mild to complete androgen insensitivity (26).The phenotypic features of complete androgen insensitivity syndrome (CAIS) are female external genitalia and absence of pubic hair (Morris syndrome). In partial androgen insensitivity syndrome, several different phenotypes are evident, ranging from predominantly female phenotype through ambiguous genitalia, to predominantly male phenotype with micropenis, perineal hypospadias, and cryptorchidism. The later phenotype is also termed Reifenstein syndrome. In the above mentioned severe forms of androgen resistances there is no risk of transmission since affected men cannot generate their own biological children using the current technologies. Patients with mild AIS have male infertility as their primary or even sole symptom. Disorders of the androgen receptor causing infertility in the absence of any genital abnormality are rare, only a few mutations have been reported in infertile men (26-30).

*4.3.4 **Other X-disorders***

An unexpectedly high number of genes with a testis-specific or enriched expression pattern have been identified on the X chromosome and especially pre-meiotic genes are over-represented on the X chromosome compared with autosomal chromosomes (31,32). Nevertheless, up to now only two genes, USP26 and TAF7L, have been screened in relatively small study populations and neither of them appear relevant for male infertility (33,34).

4.4 Y chromosome and male infertility

*4.4.1 **Introduction***

The first association between azoospermia and microscopically detectable deletions of the long arm of the Y chromosome was demonstrated by Tiepolo and Zuffardi in 1976 (35). The first cases of Y microdeletions and male infertility were reported in 1992 (36), and many case series have subsequently been published. Microdeletions have been found in three non-overlapping regions, AZFa+b+c, of the Y chromosome (37). Several years after the discovery of the three AZF regions and with knowledge of the precise structure of the Y chromosome in Yq11, it was realised that the AZFb and AZFc regions overlap and that there was no AZFd region (38). Clinically relevant deletions remove partially, or in most cases completely, one or more of the AZF

regions, and are the most frequent molecular genetic cause of severe oligozoospermia and azoospermia (39). In each AFZ region, there are a number of candidate genes, but their function in spermatogenesis remains largely unknown (40).

Since deletions occur in block (i.e. removing more than one gene), it is not possible to determine the role of a single AZF gene from the AZF deletion phenotype and thus it is unclear if they are all participating in spermatogenesis. Gene-specific deletions, which remove a single gene, have been reported only in the AZFa region. These studies suggested that the USP9Y gene is not essential for spermatogenesis and is most likely to be a 'fine tuner' of sperm production (41).

A new type of Yq deletions, known as 'gr/gr deletion' has been described in the AZFc region (42). This deletion removes half of the AZFc region gene content and affects the dosage of multicopy genes mapping inside this region (e.g. DAZ, CDY1, BPY2).

*4.4.2 **Clinical implications of Y microdeletions***

The clinical significance of Yq deletions have been debated for a long time because of the large variability found in deletion frequencies and reports of Yq deletions in 'fertile' men. More than 10 years of clinical research has found the following about Y deletions:

- They are not found in normospermic men, proving there is clearly a cause-and-effect relationship between Y deletions and spermatogenic failure (43).
- The highest frequency of Y deletions is found in azoospermic men (8-12%), followed by oligozoospermic (3-7%) men.
- Deletions are extremely rare with a sperm concentration > 5 million of spermatozoa/mL (approximately 0.7%).
- AZFc deletions are most common (approximately 65-70%), followed by deletions of the AZFb and AZFb+c or AZFa+b+c regions (25-30%). AZFa region deletions are extremely rare (5%).
- Complete removal of the AZFa region is associated with severe testicular phenotype (Sertoli cell only syndrome), while complete removal of the AZFb region is associated with spermatogenic arrest. Complete removal of the AZFc region causes a variable phenotype ranging from azoospermia to oligozoospermia.
- Classical AZF deletions do not confer a risk for cryptorchidism or testicular cancer (39).

The specificity and genotype/phenotype correlation reported above means that Y deletion analysis has both a diagnostic and prognostic value for testicular sperm retrieval (39). In the case of gr/gr deletion, there is no such strict genotype/phenotype correlation. This type of partial AZFc deletion can also be found in normozoospermic men, although at a significantly lower frequency (0.5-1%) than in men with abnormal spermatogenesis (3-5%). In the largest Caucasian study population (> 1000 men), gr/gr deletion carriers were 7-fold more likely to develop oligozoospermia (44). The phenotypic expression may vary in different ethnic groups, depending on the Y chromosome background (45,46). An overall risk of 2.4-fold for reduced sperm production in gr/gr deletion carriers has recently been reported by a meta-analysis that included only studies free from methodological and selection bias (47). There has also been a report of gr/gr deletion as a potential risk factor for testicular germ cell tumours (48). However, this data needs further confirmation in an ethnically and geographically matched case-control study setting.

After conception, any Y deletions are transmitted automatically to a male offspring, and genetic counselling is therefore mandatory. In most cases, father and son have the same microdeletion (49-52), but occasionally the son has a larger microdeletion (53). It has been proposed that partial AZFc deletions (gr/gr and b2/b3) may predispose to complete AZFc deletion in the next generation (54). There is a substantial variation in the son's phenotype and the extent of spermatogenic failure (still in the range of azoo/oligozoospermia) cannot be predicted entirely, due to the different genetic background and the presence or absence of environmental factors with potential toxicity for reproductive function. A significant proportion of spermatozoa from men with complete AZFc deletion are nullisomic for sex chromosome (55,56), indicating a potential risk for any offspring to develop 45,X0 Turner's syndrome and other phenotypic anomalies associated with sex chromosome mosaicism, including ambiguous genitalia.

The screening for Y chromosome microdeletions in patients bearing a mosaic 46,XY/45,X0 karyotype with sexual ambiguity and/or Turner stigmata has shown a relatively high incidence of AZFc deletions (33%) (57). There is data to support the association of Yq microdeletions with an overall Y chromosomal instability, which leads to the formation of 45,X0 cell lines (58,59). Despite this theoretical risk, babies born from fathers affected by Yq microdeletions are phenotypically normal (39,60). This could be due to the reduced implantation rate and a likely higher risk of spontaneous abortions of embryos bearing a 45,X0 karyotype.

When ICSI is used in the presence of a Y microdeletion, long-term follow up of any male children is needed with respect to their fertility status and cryoconservation of spermatozoa at a young age can be considered. However, there has only been a single report (48) of an enhanced risk for testicular germ cell

tumours in carriers of gr/gr deletion. Thus, it is only necessary to consider introducing preventive measures (e.g. testis ultrasound) in the sons of gr/gr deletion carriers if confirmatory studies are published.

4.4.2.1 Testing for Y microdeletions

Indications for AZF deletions screening are based on sperm count and include azoospermia and severe oligozoospermia (< 5 million spermatozoa/mL). Thanks to the European Academy of Andrology (EAA) guidelines (60) and EAA/EMQN (European Molecular Genetics Quality Network) external quality control programme (http://www.emqn.org/emqn/), Yq testing has become more homogeneous and reliable in different routine genetic laboratories. The EAA guidelines provide a set of primers capable of detecting > 95% of clinically relevant deletions (60). The primers consist of two markers for each region and control markers from the Yp and X chromosome. The initial reports of large variability of deletion frequencies are more likely to have been caused by technical problems and unreliable markers rather than be an expression of true ethnic differences.

4.4.2.2 Y chromosome: 'gr/gr' deletion

A new type of Yq deletions, known as the gr/gr deletion, has been described in the AZFc region (42). This deletion removes half of the gene content of the AZFc region, affecting the dosage of multicopy genes mapping inside this region. There is an almost 8-fold higher risk of developing oligozoospermia (OR = 7.9, 95% CI: 1.8-33.8; $p < 0.001$) in gr/gr deletion carriers in the largest Caucasian study population published to date (43). The frequency of gr/gr deletion in oligozoospermic patients is about 4%. According to four meta-analyses, gr/gr deletion is a significant risk factor for impaired sperm production (61,62).

However, both the frequency of gr/gr deletion and its phenotypic expression vary between different ethnic groups, depending on the Y chromosome background. For example, in some Y haplogroups, the deletion is fixed and appears to have no negative effect on spermatogenesis). The routine screening for gr/gr deletion is a still a debated issue, especially in those laboratories serving diverse ethnic and geographic populations.

4.4.2.3 Conclusions

Testing for microdeletions is not necessary in men with obstructive azoospermia when ICSI is used because spermatogenesis should be normal.
Men with severely damaged spermatogenesis (with < 5 million spermatozoa/mL) should be advised to undergo Yq microdeletion testing for both diagnostic and prognostic purposes. Yq microdeletion also has important implications for genetic counselling (*see below*).
If complete AZFa or AZFb microdeletions are detected, microtesticular sperm extraction is not worth doing because it is extremely unlikely that any sperm will be found.
gr/gr deletion has been confirmed as a significant risk factor for impaired sperm production, whereas further evidence of the prognostic significance of gr/gr and development of TCGTs is needed.
If a man with microdeletion and his partner wish to proceed with ICSI, they should be advised that microdeletions will be passed to sons, but not to daughters.
A son who inherits a microdeletion will have abnormal spermatogenesis because complete AZF deletions are not reported in normozoospermic men.

4.4.3 ***Autosomal defects with severe phenotypic abnormalities and infertility***

Several inherited disorders are associated with severe or considerable generalised abnormalities and infertility (Table 6). Patients with these defects will be well known to doctors, often from childhood. A fertility problem must be managed in the context of the care of the man as a whole and considering the couple's ability to care for a child.

Table 6: Less common inherited disorders associated with infertility and other alterations to phenotype

Disorder	Phenotype	Genetic basis
Prader-Willi syndrome	Obesity, mental retardation	Deletion of 15q12 on paternally inherited chromosome
Bardet-Biedle syndrome	Obesity, mental retardation, retinitis pigmentosa, polydactyly	Autosomal recessive 16q21
Cerebellar ataxia and hyogonadotrophic hypogonadism	Eunuchoidism, disturbances of gait and speech	Autosomal recessive
Noonan's syndrome	Short stature, webbed neck, cardiac and pulmonary abnormalities, cryptorchidism	Autosomal dominant
Myotonic dystrophy	Muscle wasting, cataract, testicular atrophy	Autosomal dominant 19q13.3
Dominant polycystic kidney disease	Renal cysts, obstruction from epididymal cysts	Autosomal dominant 16p13.3 and 4q
5-alpha reductase deficiency	Perineal or scrotal hypospadias, vaginal pouch, immature female phenotype	Autosomal recessive

4.5 Cystic fibrosis mutations and male infertility

Cystic fibrosis is a fatal autosomal-recessive disorder. It is the most common genetic disease of Caucasians; 4% are carriers of gene mutations involving the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene. This gene is located on the short arm of chromosome 7. It encodes a membrane protein that functions as an ion channel and influences the formation of the ejaculatory duct, seminal vesicle, vas deferens and distal two thirds of the epididymis.

Congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens (CBAVD) is associated with CFTR gene mutations and was found in approximately 2% of men with OA attending a clinic in Edinburgh (63). The incidence in men with OA varies between different countries. The clinical diagnosis of absent vasa is easy to miss and all men with azoospermia should be very carefully examined to exclude CBAVD, particularly those with a semen volume of < 1.5 mL and pH less than 7.0.

Approximately 1,500 mutations are listed on the CFTR database (http://www.genet.sickkids.on.ca/cftr/). Many series of men with CBAVD tested for varying numbers of mutations have been published. In general, the more mutations tested for, the higher the percentage of men found to have them. In a review of published series of 449 men with CBAVD, the Delta F508 mutation was detected in 244 men, the R117H mutation in 54 men and the W1282X mutation in 37; 63 other mutations were found in 1 to 9 men, but not all mutations were tested for in all case series (64).

As more mutations are defined and tested for, almost all men with CBAVD will probably be found to have mutations. It is not practical to test for all known mutations, as many have a very low prevalence in a particular population. Testing is usually restricted to the most common mutations in a particular community.

Mutations may be found in both copies of the CFTR gene; however, in most men with CBAVD, mutation is found in only one copy. In some of these supposedly heterozygous cases, there may be an unknown second mutation, but there is also another mechanism. In two-thirds of men with CBAVD, a DNA variant (the fifth allele) can be detected in a non-coding region of CFTR (65). Consequently, since the 5T-tract variant is now considered a mild CFTR mutation rather than a polymorphism, it should be analysed in each CAVD patient.

Men with CBAVD often have mild clinical stigmata of CF (e.g. history of chest infections). Children born after ICSI, where the father has CBAVD and is either hetero- or homozygous, must be followed up.

When a man has CBAVD, it is important to test him and his partner for CF mutations. If the female partner is found to be a carrier of CFTR, the couple must consider very carefully whether to proceed with ICSI using the husband's sperm, as the risk of a having a baby with CF will be 25% if the man is heterozygous and 50% if the man is homozygous. If the female partner is negative for known mutations, the risk of being a carrier of unknown mutations is about 0.4%.

4.6 Unilateral or bilateral absence/abnormality of the vas and renal anomalies

Unilateral absence of the vas deferens is usually associated with ipsilateral absence of the kidney (66) and probably has a different genetic causation. Men with unilateral absence of the vas deferens are usually

fertile, and the condition is most commonly encountered as an incidental finding in the vasectomy clinic. Nevertheless, men with unilateral absence of the vas deferens and CF mutations may have the same underlying genetic diseases as men with true CBAVD. Men with bilateral absence of vas deferens and renal abnormalities do not have CFTR gene abnormalities (67).

Men who have unilateral absence of the vas and normal kidneys or bilateral absence or bilateral abnormality, should be tested for CF mutations. If the results are negative and renal anatomy has not been defined, an abdominal ultrasound should be undertaken. Findings may range from unilateral absence of the vas with ipsilateral absence of the kidney, to bilateral vessel abnormalities and renal abnormalities, such as pelvic kidney.

4.7 Unknown genetic disorders

Considering the high predicted number of genes involved in male gametogenesis, it is likely that most 'idiopathic' forms of spermatogenic disturbances are caused by mutations or polymorphisms in spermatogenesis candidate genes (34). However, despite an intensive search for new genetic factors, no clinically relevant gene mutations or polymorphisms (except those related to the Y chromosome) have so far been identified (34, 68, 69, and references therein). The introduction of new analytical approaches is likely to provide major advancement in this field (70,71).

ICSI is used to enable men with severely damaged spermatogenesis to father children in situations formerly considered hopeless and where very few spermatozoa can be obtained. This has led to concern that children may be born with a fetal abnormality, because ICSI may enable defective sperm to bypass the selective processes of the female genital tract and egg covering. Alternatively, eggs may be fertilised that would otherwise not be fertilised. However, fetal abnormality statistics from ICSI centres do not indicate any increase in congenital malformations compared with the general population.

On the other hand, ICSI babies have a higher risk of *de novo* sex chromosomal aberrations (about a 3-fold increase compared with natural conceptions) and paternally inherited structural abnormalities (72-74).

Indications for ICSI are constantly being extended to include fertilisation with immature sperm forms, and it is therefore particularly important to continue to monitor fetal abnormality rates, using detailed subgroup analysis according to the father's clinical and molecular diagnosis.

4.8 DNA fragmentation in spermatozoa

There is increased DNA damage in spermatozoa from men with oligozoospermia. This increase is associated with reduced chances of natural conception and, to a lesser extent, conception after IVF/ICSI, and with an increase in early pregnancy loss (75,76). DNA damage may improve after varicocele ligation (77,78).

4.9 Genetic counselling and ICSI

The best management is to agree treatment with the couple and provide them with full information on the genetic risks. Initially, the couple should be given full information about the risks to the child to help them decide whether to proceed with ICSI. Where there is conflict between the wishes of the couple and the interests of the future child, it may be ethically correct to withhold therapy.

When both partners are known to carry defects (e.g. CF mutations), there is up to a 50% chance of the child developing a clinical condition and dying early after a number of years of morbidity. Many clinicians and infertility clinic personnel may consider it is unethical to proceed because their duty of care to the future child and the interests of society outweigh the wishes of the individual couple. If there is a conflict that cannot be resolved by agreement, the interests of a future child probably take precedence over the interests of a couple. The couple also need to give consideration to preimplantation diagnosis and replacement only of normal embryos.

4.10 Conclusions and recommendations for genetic disorders in male infertility

Conclusions
New insights into the genetic basis of infertility and the advent of ICSI require a good understanding of genetics by clinicians and the general public.
Diagnostic advances will allow us to identify the genetic basis of more disorders and diagnose known disorders at a lower cost. For some of these disorders, gene therapy might be practical.

Recommendations	GR
Standard karyotype analysis should be offered to all men with damaged spermatogenesis (< 10 million spermatozoa/mL) who are seeking fertility treatment by in vitro fertilisation/intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) (2).	B
Men with Klinefelter's syndrome might require androgen replacement therapy as they get older.	B
All men with Klinefelter's syndrome who undergo testicular biopsy procedures for sperm retrieval need long-term endocrine follow-up.	B
For men with severely damaged spermatogenesis (< 5 million spermatozoa/mL), testing for Yq microdeletions is strongly advised (39,60).	B
When a man has structural abnormalities of the vas deferens (bilateral absence of vas deferens, unilateral absence of the vas), it is important to test him and his partner for CF gene mutations (64).	A
Genetic counselling is mandatory in couples with a genetic abnormality found in clinical or genetic investigation and in patients who carry a (potential) inheritable disease (1).	A

4.11 References

1. Griffin DK, Finch KA. The genetic and cytogenetic basis of male infertility. Human Fertil Mar 2005;8(1);19-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15823847
2. Carrell DT. The clinical implementation of sperm chromosome aneuploidy testing: pitfalls and promises. J Androl 2008 Mar-Apr;29(2):124-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17881765
3. Johnson MD. Genetic risks of intracytoplasmic sperm injection in the treatment of male infertility: recommendations for genetic counseling and screening. Fertil Steril 1998 Sep;70(3):397-411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9757865
4. van Assche EV, Bonduelle M, Tournaye H, et al. Cytogenetics of infertile men. Hum Reprod 1996 Dec;11(Suppl 4):1-24; discussion 25-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9147109
5. Vincent MC, Daudin M, De MP, et al. Cytogenetic investigations of infertile men with low sperm counts: a 25-year experience. J Androl 2002 Jan-Feb;23(1):18-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11780918
6. Tempest HG, Martin RH. Cytogenetic risks in chromosomally normal infertile men. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2009 Jun;21(3):223-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19424064
7. Clementini E, Palka C, Iezzi I, et al. Prevalence of chromosomal abnormalities in 2078 inferitle couples referred for assisted reproduction techniques. Hum Reprod 2005 Feb;20(2):437-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15567875
8. Gianaroli L, Magli MC, Cavallini G, et al. Frequency of aneuploidy in sperm from patients with extremely severe male factor infertility. Hum Reprod 2005 Aug;20(8):2140-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15845594
9. Pang MG, Kim YJ, Lee SH, et al. The high incidence of meiotic errors increases with decreased sperm count in severe male factor infertilities. Hum Reprod 2005 Jun;20(6):1688-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15734753
10. Machev N, Gosset P, Viville S. Chromosome abnormalities in sperm from infertile men with normal somatic karyotypes: teratozoospermia. Cytogenet Genome Res 2005;111(3-4):352-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16192715
11. Baccetti B, Collodel G, Marzella R, et al. Ultrastructural studies of spermatozoa from infertile males with Robertsonian translocations and 18, X, Y aneuploidies. Hum Reprod 2005 Aug;20(8):2295-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15878922
12. Lanfranco F, Kamischke A, Zitzmann M, et al. Klinefelter's syndrome. Lancet 2004 Jul 17-23;364(9430):273-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15262106
13. Wang C, Baker HW, Burger HG, et al. Hormonal studies in men with Klinefelter's syndrome. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 1975 Jul;4(4):399-411. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1157343
14. Ichioka K, Utsunomiya N, Kohei N, et al. Adult onset of declining spermatogenesis in a man with nonmosaic Klinefelter's syndrome. Fertil Steril 2006 May;85(5):1511.e1-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16616747

15. Staessen C, Tournaye H, Van Assche E, et al. PGD in 47,XXY Klinefelter's syndrome patients. Hum Reprod Update 2003 Jul-Aug;9(4):319-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12926526
16. Chevret E, Rousseaux S, Monteil M, et al. Increased incidence of hyperhaploid 24 XY spermatozoa detected by three-colour FISH in a 46,XY/47,XXY male. Hum Genet 1996 Feb;97(2):171-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566948
17. Martini E, Geraedts JP, Liebaers I, et al. Constitution of semen samples from XYY and XXY males as analysed by in-situ hybridization. Hum Reprod 1996 Aug;11(8):1638-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8921108
18. Lenz P, Luetjens CM, Kamischke A, et al. Mosaic status in lymphocytes of infertile men with or without Klinefelter syndrome. Hum Reprod 2005 May;20(5):1248-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15665007
19. Cozzi J, Chevret E, Rousseaux S, et al. Achievement of meiosis in XXY germ cells: study of 543 sperm karyotypes from an XY/XXY mosaic patient. Hum Genet 1994 Jan;93(1):32-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8270252
20. Guttenbach M, Michelmann HW, Hinney B, et al. Segregation of sex chromosomes into sperm nuclei in a man with 47,XXY Klinefelter's karyotype: a FISH analysis. Hum Genet 1997 Apr;99(4):474-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9099836
21. Estop AM, Munné S, Cieply KM, et al. Meiotic products of a Klinefelter 47,XXY male as determined by sperm fluorescence in-situ hybridization analysis. Hum Reprod 1998 Jan;13(1):124-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9512242
22. Foresta C, Galeazzi C, Bettella A, et al. High incidence of sperm sex chromosomes aneuploidies in two patients with Klinefelter's syndrome. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998 Jan;83(1):203-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9435442
23. Franco B, Guioli S, Pragliola A, et al. A gene deleted in Kallmann's syndrome shares homology with neural cell adhesion and axonal path-finding molecules. Nature 1991 Oct;353(6344):529-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1922361
24. Bianco SD, Kaiser UB. The genetic and molecular basis of idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism. Nat Rev Endocrinol 2009 Oct;5(10):569-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707180
25. Miyagawa Y, Tsujimura A, Matsumiya K, et al. Outcome of gonadotropin therapy for male hypogonadotropic hypogonadism at university affiliated male infertility centers: a 30-year retrospective study. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2072-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879837
26. Gottlieb B, Beitel LK, Wu JH, et al. The androgen receptor gene mutations database (ARDB): 2004 update. Hum Mutat 2004 Jun;23(6):527-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15146455
27. Tincello DG, Saunders PT, Hargreave TB. Preliminary investigations on androgen receptor gene mutations in infertile men. Mol Hum Reprod 1997 Nov;3(11):941-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9433918
28. Gottlieb B, Lombroso R, Beitel LK, et al. Molecular pathology of the androgen receptor in male (in) fertility. Reprod Biomed Online 2005 Jan;10(1):42-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705293
29. Ferlin A, Vinanzi C, Garolla A, et al. Male infertility and androgen receptor gene mutations: clinical features and identification of seven novel mutations. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2006;65(5):606-10).
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17054461
30. Rajender S, Singh L, Thangaraj K. Phenotypic heterogeneity of mutations in androgen receptor gene. Asian J Androl 2007 Mar;9(2):147-79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17334586
31. Wang PJ, McCarrey JR, Yang F, et al. An abundance of X-linked genes expressed in spermatogonia. Nat Genet 2001 Apr;27(4):422-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11279525
32. Wang PJ. X chromosomes, retrogenes and their role in male reproduction. Trends Endocrinol Metab 2004 Mar;15(2):79-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15036254
33. Stouffs K, Tournaye H, Liebaers I, et al. Male infertility and the involvement of the X chromosome. Hum Reprod Update 2009 Nov-Dec;15(6):623-37.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19515807

34. Nuti F, Krausz C. Gene polymorphisms/mutations relevant to abnormal spermatogenesis. Reprod Biomed Online 2008 Apr;16(4):504-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18413059
35. Tiepolo L, Zuffardi O. Localization of factors controlling spermatogenesis in the nonfluorescent portion of the human Y chromosome long arm. Hum Genet 1976 Oct 28;34(2):119-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1002136
36. Ma K, Sharkey, A, Kirsch S, et al. Towards the molecular localisation of the AZF locus: mapping of microdeletions in azoospermic men within 14 subintervals of interval 6 of the human Y chromosome. Hum Mol Genet 1992 Apr;1(1):29-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1301132
37. Vogt P, Edelmann A, Kirsch S, et al. Human Y chromosome azoospermia factors (AZF) mapped to different subregions in Yq11. Hum Mol Genet 1996 Jul;5(7):933-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8817327
38. Repping S, Skaletsky H, Lange J, et al. Recombination between palindromes P5 and P1 on the human Y chromosome causes massive deletions and spermatogenic failure. Am J Hum Genet 2002 Oct;71: 906-922.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12297986
39. Krausz C, Degl'Innocenti S. Y chromosome and male infertility: update, 2006. Front Biosci 2006 Sep;11:3049-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16720375
40. Skaletsky H, Kuroda-Kawaguchi T, Minx PJ, et al. The male-specific region of the human Y chromosome is a mosaic of discrete sequence classes. Nature 2003 Jun;423(6942):825-37.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12815422
41. Tyler-Smith C, Krausz C. The will-o'-the-wisp of genetics--hunting for the azoospermia factor gene. N Engl J Med 2009 Feb;360(9):925-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19246366
42. Repping S, Skaletsky H, Brown L, et al. Polymorphism for a 1.6-Mb deletion of the human Y chromosome persists through balance between recurrent mutation and haploid selection. Nat Genet 2003 Nov;35(3):247-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14528305
43. Krausz C, Forti G, McElreavey K. The Y chromosome and male fertility and infertility. Int J Androl 2003 Apr;26(2):70-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12641824
44. Giachini C, Laface I, Guarducci E, et al. Partial AZFc deletions and duplications: clinical correlates in the Italian population. Hum Genet 2008 Nov;124(4):399-410.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18807255
45. Vogt PH. AZF deletions and Y chromosomal haplogroups: history and update based on sequence. Hum Reprod Update 2005 Jul-Aug;11(4):319-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15890785
46. Krausz C, Giachini C, Xue Y, et al. Phenotypic variation within European carriers of the Y-chromosomal gr/gr deletion is independent of Y-chromosomal background. J Med Genet 2009 Jan;46(1):21-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18782837
47. Visser L, Westerveld GH, Korver CM, et al. Y chromosome gr/gr deletions are a risk factor for low semen quality. Hum Reprod 2009 Oct;24(10):2667-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19602516
48. Nathanson KL, Kanetsky PA, Hawes R, et al. The Y deletion gr/gr and susceptibility to testicular germ cell tumor. Am J Hum Genet 2005 Dec;77(6):1034-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16380914
49. Mulhall JP, Reijo R, Alagappan R, et al. Azoospermic men with deletion of the DAZ gene cluster are capable of completing spermatogenesis: fertilization, normal embryonic development and pregnancy occur when retrieved testicular spermatozoa are used for intracytoplasmic sperm injection. Hum Reprod 1997 Mar;12(3):503-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9130751
50. Silber SJ, Alagappan R, Brown LG, et al. Y chromosome deletions in azoospermic and severely oligozoospermic men undergoing intracytoplasmic sperm injection after testicular sperm extraction. Hum Reprod 1998 Dec;13(12):3332-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886509

51. Kamischke A, Gromoll J, Simoni M, et al. Transmisson of a Y chromosomal deletion involving the deleted in azoospermia (DAZ) and chromodomain (CDYI) genes from father to son through intracytoplasmic sperm injection: case report. Hum Reprod 1999 Sep;14(9):2320-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10469702
52. Mau Kai C, Juul A, McElreavey K, et al. Sons conceived by assisted reproduction techniques inherit deletions in the azoospermia factor (AZF) region of the Y chromosome and the DAZ gene copy number. Hum Reprod 2008 Jul;23(7):1669-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18440997
53. Stuppia L, Gatta V, Calabrese G, et al. A quarter of men with idiopathic oligo-azospermia display chromosomal abnormalities and microdeletions of different types in interval 6 of Yq11. Hum Genet 1998 May;102(5):566-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9654206
54. Zhang F, Lu C, Li Z, et al. Partial deletions are associated with an increased risk of complete deletion in AZFc: a new insight into the role of partial AZFc deletions in male infertility. J Med Genet 2007 Jul;44(7):437-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17412880
55. Siffroi JP, Le Bourhis C, Krausz C, et al. Sex chromosome mosaicism in males carrying Y chromosome long arm deletions. Hum Reprod 2000 Dec;15(12):2559-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11098026
56. Jaruzelska J, Korcz A, Wojda A, et al. Mosaicism for 45,X cell line may accentuate the severity of spermatogenic defects in men with AZFc deletion. J Med Genet 2001 Nov;38(11):798-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11732492
57. Patsalis PC, Sismani C, Quintana-Murci L, et al. Effects of transmission of Y chromosome AZFc deletions. Lancet 2002 Oct;360(9341):1222-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12401251
58. Patsalis PC, Skordis N, Sismani C, et al. Identification of high frequency of Y chromosome deletions in patients with sex chromosome mosaicism and correlation with the clinical phenotype and Y-chromosome instability. Am J Med Genet A 2005 Jun;135(2):145-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15880425
59. Le Bourhis C, Siffroi JP, McElreavey K, et al. Y chromosome microdeletions and germinal mosaicism in infertile males. Mol Hum Reprod 2000 Aug;6(8):688-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10908277
60. Simoni M, Bakker E, Krausz C. EAA/EMQN best practice guidelines for molecular diagnosis of y-chromosomal microdeletions. State of the art 2004. Int J Androl 2004 Aug;27(4):240-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15271204
61. Stouffs K, Lissens W, Tournaye H, Haentjens P.What about gr/gr deletions and male infertility? Systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod Update 2011 Mar-Apr;17(2):197-209. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20959348
62. Navarro-Costa P, Gonçalves J, Plancha CE. The AZFc region of the Y chromosome: at the crossroad between genetic diversity and male infertility. Hum Reprod Update 2010 Sep-Oct;16(5):525-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20304777
63. Donat R, McNeill AS, Fitzpatrick DR, et al. The incidence of cystic fibrosis gene mutations in patients with congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens in Scotland. Br J Urol 1997 Jan;79(1):74-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9043501
64. De Braekeleer M, Férec C. Mutations in the cystic fibrosis gene in men with congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens. Mol Hum Reprod 1996 Sep;2(9):669-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9239681
65. Chillón M, Casals T, Mercier B, et al. Mutations in cystic fibrosis gene in patients with congenital absence of the vas deferens. New Engl J Med 1995 Jun;332(22):1475-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7739684
66. Drake MJ, Quinn FM. Absent vas deferens and ipsilateral multicystic dysplastic kidney in a child. Br J Urol 1996 May;77(5):756-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8689131
67. Augarten A, Yahav Y, Kerem BS, et al. Congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens in the absence of cystic fibrosis. Lancet 1994 Nov 26;344(8935):1473-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7968122
68. Krausz C, Giachini C. Genetic risk factors in male infertility. Arch Androl 2007 May-Jun;53(3):125-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17612870

69. Tüttelmann F, Rajpert-De Meyts E, Nieschlag E, et al. Gene polymorphisms and male infertility--a meta-analysis and literature review. Reprod Biomed Online 2007 Dec;15(6):643-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18062861
70. Aston KI, Carrell DT. Genome-wide study of single-nucleotide polymorphisms associated with azoospermia and severe oligozoospermia. J Androl 2009 Nov-Dec;30(6):711-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19478329
71. Carrell DT, De Jonge C, Lamb DJ. The genetics of male infertility: a field of study whose time is now. Arch Androl 2006 Jul-Aug;52(4):269-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16728342
72. Van Steirteghem A, Bonduelle M, Devroey P, et al. Follow-up of children born after ICSI. Hum Reprod Update 2002 Mar-Apr;8(2):111-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12099626
73. Bonduelle M, Van Assche E, Joris H, et al. Prenatal testing in ICSI pregnancies: incidence of chromosomal anomalies in 1586 karyotypes and relation to sperm parameters. Hum Reprod 2002 Oct;17(10):2600-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12351536
74. ESHRE Capri Workshop group Intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) in 2006: evidence and evolution. Hum Reprod Update 2007 Nov-Dec;13(6):515-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17630396
75. Zini A, Meriano J, Kader K, et al. Potential adverse effect of sperm DNA damage on embryo quality after ICSI. Hum Reprod 2005 Dec;20(12);3476-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16123087
76. Zini A, Sigman M. Are tests of sperm DNA damage clinically useful? Pros and cons. J Androl 2009 May-Jun;30(3):219-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19059901
77. Zini A, Blumenfeld A, Libman J, et al. Beneficial effect of microsurgical varicocelectomy on human sperm DNA integrity. Hum Reprod 2005 Apr;20(4):1018-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15608026
78. Smit M, Romijn JC, Wildhagen MF, et al. Decreased sperm DNA fragmentation after surgical varicocelectomy is associated with increased pregnancy rate. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):270-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913801

5. OBSTRUCTIVE AZOOSPERMIA

5.1 Definition

Obstructive azoospermia (OA) is the inability to detect both spermatozoa and spermatogenetic cells in semen and post-ejaculate urine due to bilateral obstruction of the seminal ducts. OA is less common than NOA and occurs in 15-20% of men with azoospermia. Common causes of OA are summarised in Table 7.

Men with OA present with normal FSH, normal size testes and epididymal enlargement. Sometimes, the vas deferens is absent due to congenital factors or previous inguinal or scrotal surgery. Obstruction in primary infertile men is often present at the epididymal level; other sites of obstruction are the ejaculatory ducts and the vas deferens. In 25% of men with a suspected obstruction, no spermatozoa are found in the epididymis during scrotal exploration, indicating an intratesticular obstruction.

Table 7: Classification of OA, on the basis of ductal obstruction due to congenital and acquired causes

Conditions	Congenital	Acquired
Epididymal obstruction	Idiopathic epididymal obstruction	Post-infective (epididymitis) Post-surgical (epididymal cysts)
Vas deferens obstruction	Congenital absence of vas deferens	Post-vasectomy Post-surgical (hernia, scrotal surgery)
Ejaculatory duct obstruction	Prostatic cysts (Müllerian cysts)	Post-surgical (bladder neck surgery) Post-infective

5.2 Classification

*5.2.1 **Intratesticular obstruction***

Intratesticular obstruction occurs in 15% of OA (1). Congenital forms (dysjunction between rete testis and efferent ductules) are less common than acquired forms, i.e. post-inflammatory or post-traumatic obstructions. Acquired forms are often associated with an obstruction of epididymis and vas deferens.

*5.2.2 **Epididymal obstruction***

Epididymal obstruction is the most common cause of OA, affecting 30-67% of azoospermic men with a serum FSH less than twice the upper limit of normal (1-4).

Congenital epididymal obstruction usually manifests as CBAVD, which is associated with at least one mutation of the CF gene in 82% of cases (5). This form is often accompanied by absence of the distal part of the epididymis and seminal vesicle agenesis (*see above* Chapter 4: Genetic disorders in infertility). Other congenital forms of obstruction are rare, e.g. disjunction between efferent ductules and the corpus epididymis, agenesis/atresia of a short part of the epididymis.

Congenital forms of epididymal obstruction include chronic sinopulmonary infections (Young's syndrome) (6), in which obstruction results from a mechanical blockage due to debris within the proximal epididymal lumen.

Acquired forms secondary to acute (e.g. gonococcal) and subclinical (e.g. chlamydial) epididymitis are most common (7,8) (*see below* Chapter 11: Male accessory gland infections). Acute or chronic traumas can result in epididymal damage (9).

Azoospermia caused by surgery may occur after epididymal surgery, e.g. cyst removal. Epididymal obstruction secondary to long-lasting distal obstruction must be considered when repairing seminal ducts (10).

*5.2.3 **Vas deferens obstruction***

Vas deferens obstruction is the most common cause of acquired obstruction following vasectomy for sterilisation, with possible subsequent germ cell impairment and fibrosis (11,12). Approximately 2-6% of these men request vasectomy reversal. Of those undergoing vaso-vasostomy, 5-10% have epididymal blockage as a result of tubule rupture, making epididymo-vasostomy mandatory (*see below* Chapter 10: Male contraception). Vasal obstruction may also occur after herniotomy (13). Polypropylene mesh herniorrhaphy appears to be able to induce a fibroblastic response able to entrap or obliterate the vas deferens (14).

The most common congenital vasal obstruction is CBAVD, often accompanied by CF. Unilateral agenesis or a partial defect is associated with contralateral seminal duct anomalies or renal agenesis in 80% and 26% of cases, respectively (15) (*see above* Chapter 4: Genetic disorders in infertility). Distal vas deferens obstruction includes CBAVD and accidental injury to the vas deferens during hernia surgery (16).

*5.2.4 **Ejaculatory duct obstruction***

Ejaculatory duct obstruction is found in about 1-3% of OA (1) and is classified as either cystic or post-inflammatory.

Cystic obstructions are usually congenital (i.e. Müllerian duct cyst or urogenital sinus/ejaculatory duct cysts) and are medially located in the prostate between the ejaculatory ducts. In urogenital sinus abnormalities, one or both ejaculatory ducts empty into the cyst (17), while in Müllerian duct anomalies, ejaculatory ducts are laterally displaced and compressed by the cyst (18).

Paramedian or lateral intraprostatic cysts are Wolffian in origin and rare in clinical practice (19). Post-inflammatory obstructions of the ejaculatory duct are usually secondary to acute, non-acute, or chronic urethro-prostatitis (20).

Congenital or acquired complete obstructions of the ejaculatory ducts are commonly associated with low semen volume, decreased or absent seminal fructose and acid pH. The seminal vesicles are usually dilated (anterior-posterior diameter > 15 mm) (20,21).

*5.2.5 **Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts***

Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts might be attributed to local neuropathy (22). This abnormality is often associated with urodynamic dysfunction because of the vasographic patterns of ampullo-vesicular atony or of ejaculatory duct hypertony. Functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts has been reported in juvenile diabetes and polycystic kidney disease (23); however, no relevant pathology has been found in most cases. Results of semen analysis vary between azoospermia, cryptozoospermia and severe OAT syndrome.

5.3 Diagnosis

*5.3.1 **Clinical history***

Clinical history taking should follow the suggestions for investigation of infertile men (*see* Chapter 2: Investigations).

Patients should be asked about:

- haematospermia;
- post-ejaculatory pain;
- previous or present urethritis or prostatitis;
- obstructive or irritative urinary symptoms;
- previous scrotal enlargement or pain or surgery;
- previous inguinal herniorrhaphy or traumas;
- chronic sinopulmonary infections.

5.3.2 ***Clinical examination***

Clinical examination should follow suggestions for investigation of the infertile man. The following findings indicate OA:

- at least one testis with a volume > 15 ml, although a smaller testicular volume may be found in some patients with OA and concomitant partial testicular failure;
- enlarged and hardened epididymis;
- nodules in the epididymis or vas deferens;
- absence or partial atresia of the vas;
- signs of urethritis;
- prostatic abnormalities.

5.3.3 ***Semen analysis***

At least two examinations must be carried out at an interval of 2-3 months, according to the WHO (*see above* Chapter 2: Investigations). Azoospermia means the inability to detect spermatozoa after centrifugation at x400 magnification. Careful repeat observation of several smears after semen liquefaction is needed. If no spermatozoa are found in a wet preparation, then aliquots or the whole semen sample should be centrifuged at 3000 G for 15 minutes. The pellet must be examined for spermatozoa.

Ejaculatory duct obstruction or CBAVD is suggested by a semen volume of less than 1.5 mL, acid pH and a low fructose level. When semen volume is low, a search must be made for spermatozoa in urine after ejaculation, as their presence confirms an ejaculatory disorder. Absence of spermatozoa and immature germ cells in semen smears suggest complete proximal or distal seminal duct obstruction.

5.3.4 ***Hormone levels***

Serum FSH levels may be normal, but do not exclude a testicular cause of azoospermia (e.g. spermatogenic arrest). Follicle-stimulating hormone is normal in 40% of men with primary spermatogenic failure. Inhibin B seems to have a higher predictive value for normal spermatogenesis (4).

5.3.5 ***Ultrasonography***

Scrotal ultrasound is helpful in finding signs of obstruction (e.g. dilatation of rete testis, enlarged epididymis with cystic lesions, absent vas deferens) and may demonstrate signs of testicular dysgenesis (e.g. non-homogenous testicular architecture and microcalcifications) and associated carcinoma *in situ* of the testis. For patients with a low seminal volume and in whom distal obstruction is suspected, transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) is essential. If possible, TRUS should be performed at high resolution and with high frequency (> 7 MHz) biplane transducers. Seminal vesicle enlargement (anterior-posterior diameter 15 mm) (21) and roundish, anechoic areas in the seminal vesicle (24) are TRUS anomalies more often associated with ejaculatory duct obstruction, especially when semen volume is < 1.5 mL. Müllerian duct cysts or urogenital sinus/ejaculatory duct cysts (20) and ejaculatory duct calcifications (25) are other known anomalies in obstructive azoospermia. Transrectal ultrasound may also be used to aspirate seminal vesicle fluid (26).

Invasive diagnosis, including testicular biopsy, scrotal exploration, and distal seminal duct evaluation, are indicated in patients with OA in whom an acquired obstruction of the seminal ducts is suspected. Explorative and recanalisation surgery should be carried out at the same time.

5.3.6 ***Testicular biopsy***

In selected cases, testicular biopsy may be indicated to exclude spermatogenic failure. Testicular biopsy should be combined with extraction of testicular spermatozoa (i.e. TESE) for cryopreservation and subsequent ICSI, when surgical recanalisation cannot be carried out or has failed. A scoring system for testicular biopsies is given in Table 8 (27).

Table 8: Scoring system for testicular biopsies (Johnsen score)*

Score	Histological criteria
10	Full spermatogenesis
9	Slightly impaired spermatogenesis, many late spermatids, disorganised epithelium
8	< 5 spermatozoa per tubule, few late spermatids
7	No spermatozoa, no late spermatids, many early spermatids
6	No spermatozoa, no late spermatids, few early spermatids
5	No spermatozoa or spermatids, many spermatocytes
4	No spermatozoa or spermatids, few spermatocytes
3	Spermatogonia only
2	No germinal cells, Sertoli cells only
1	No seminiferous epithelium

** From Johnsen, 1970 (27).*

5.4 Treatment

*5.4.1 **Intratesticular obstruction***

At this level seminal duct recanalisation is impossible. Both Testicular Sperm Extraction (TESE) or Microsurgical Epididymal Sperm Aspiration (MESA) allow sperm retrieval in nearly all OA patients. TESE and MESA are therefore recommended. The spermatozoa retrieved may be used immediately for ICSI, or may be cryopreserved.

*5.4.2 **Epididymal obstruction***

Microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration (MESA) (28) is indicated in men with CBAVD. TESA and PESA are also viable options for retrieving epididymal sperm from men with OA (29). Retrieved spermatozoa are used for ICSI. Usually, one MESA procedure provides sufficient material for several ICSI cycles (30) and it produces high pregnancy and fertilisation rates (31). In patients with azoospermia due to acquired epididymal obstruction, end-to-end or end-to-side microsurgical epididymo-vasostomy is recommended, with the preferred technique being microsurgical intussusception epididymo-vasostomy (32).

Reconstruction may be carried out unilaterally or bilaterally; patency and pregnancy rates are usually higher with bilateral reconstruction. Before microsurgery, it is important to check for full patency downstream of the epididymis. Anatomical recanalisation following surgery may require 3-18 months. Before microsurgery (and in all cases where recanalisation is impossible), epididymal spermatozoa should be aspirated and cryopreserved for use in ICSI in case of surgical failure (30).

Patency rates range between 60% and 87% (33-35) and cumulative pregnancy rates between 10% and 43%. Recanalisation success rates may be adversely affected by pre-operative and operative findings (e.g. concomitant abnormal testicular histology, absence of sperm in the spermatic fluid on sectioning the small epididymal tubules, wide fibrosis of the epididymis).

*5.4.3 **Proximal vas obstruction***

Proximal vas obstruction after vasectomy requires microsurgical vasectomy reversal (*see* Chapter 10: Male contraception). Vaso-vasostomy is also required in rare cases of proximal vasal obstructions (iatrogenic, post-traumatic, post-inflammatory). The absence of spermatozoa in the intraoperative vas deferens fluid may suggest the presence of a secondary epididymal obstruction, especially if the seminal fluid of the proximal vas has a thick 'toothpaste' appearance. Microsurgical vaso-epididymostomy is then indicated.

*5.4.4 **Distal vas deferens obstruction***

It is usually impossible to correct large bilateral vas deferens defects, resulting from involuntary excision of the vas deferences during hernia surgery in early childhood or previous orchidopexy (16). In these cases, proximal vas deferens sperm aspiration (37) or TESE/MESA can be used for cryopreservation for future ICSI. In large unilateral vas deferens defects associated with contralateral testicular atrophy, the vas deferens of the atrophic testis can be used for a cross-over vaso-vasostomy or vaso-epididymostomy.

*5.4.5 **Ejaculatory duct obstruction***

The treatment of ejaculatory duct obstruction depends on its aetiology. Transurethral resection of the ejaculatory ducts (TURED) (20,38) can be used in large post-inflammatory obstruction and when one, or both,

ejaculatory ducts empty into an intraprostatic midline cyst. Resection may remove part of the verumontanum. In cases of obstruction due to a midline intraprostatic cyst, incision or unroofing of the cyst is required (20). Intra-operative TRUS makes this procedure safer. If distal seminal tract evaluation is carried out at the time of the procedure, installation of methylene blue dye into the vas deferens can help to document opening of the ducts. The limited success rate of surgical treatment of ejaculatory duct obstruction in terms of spontaneous pregnancies should be weighed against sperm aspiration and ICSI.

Complications following TURED include retrograde ejaculation due to bladder neck injury and urine reflux into ducts, seminal vesicles and vasa (causing poor sperm motility, acid semen pH and epididymitis). The alternatives to TURED are MESA, TESE, proximal vas deferens sperm aspiration, seminal vesicle ultrasonically guided aspiration and direct cyst aspiration.

In cases of functional obstruction of the distal seminal ducts, TURED often fails to improve sperm output. Spermatozoa can then be retrieved by antegrade seminal tract washout (38). Spermatozoa retrieved by any of the aforementioned surgical techniques should always be cryopreserved for assisted reproductive procedures.

5.5 Conclusions and recommendation for obstructive azoospermia

Conclusions
Obstructive lesions of the seminal tract should be suspected in azoospermic or severely oligozoospermic patients with normal-sized testes and normal endocrine parameters.
Results of reconstructive microsurgery depend on the cause and location of the obstruction and the surgeon's expertise. Standardised procedures include vaso-vasostomy and epididymo-vasostomy.
Sperm retrieval techniques, such as MESA, TESE, and PESA can be used additionally. These methods should be used only when cryostorage of the material obtained is available.

Recommendation	GR
In azoospermia caused by epididymal obstruction, a scrotal exploration with microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration and cryopreservation of the spermatozoa should be carried out, together with a microsurgical reconstruction (35).	B

5.6 References

1. Hendry WF. Azoospermia and surgery for testicular obstruction. In: Hargreave TB (ed). *Male Infertility*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1997, pp. 319-36.
2. Hendry WF, Parslow JM, Stedronska J. Exploratory scrototomy in 168 azoospermic males. Br J Urol 1983 Dec;55(6):785-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6652453
3. Jequier AM. Obstructive azoospermia: a study of 102 patients. Clin Reprod Fertil 1985 Mar;3(1):21-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3978535
4. Pierik FH, Vreeburg JT, Stijnen T, et al. Serum inhibin B as a marker of spermatogenesis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1998 Sep;83(9):3110-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9745412
5. Oates RD, Amos JA. The genetic basis of congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens and cystic fibrosis. J Androl 1994 Jan-Feb;15(1):1-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8188533
6. Handelsman DJ, Conway AJ, Boylan LM, et al. Young's syndrome: obstructive azoospermia and chronic sinopulmonary infections. New Engl J Med 1984 Jan;310(1):3-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6689737
7. Silber SJ, Grotjan HE. Microscopic vasectomy reversal 30 years later: a summary of 4010 cases by the same surgeon. J Androl 2004 Nov-Dec;25(6):845-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15477352
8. Schoysman R. Vaso-epididymostomy - a survey of techniques and results with considerations of delay of appearance of spermatozoa after surgery. Acta Eur Fertil 1990 Sep-Oct;21(5):239-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2132475
9. Matthews GJ, Schlegel PN, Goldstein M. Patency following microsurgical vasoepididymostomy and vasovasostomy: temporal considerations. J Urol 1995 Dec154(6):2070-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500460

10. Jarvi K, Zini A, Buckspan MB, et al. Adverse effects on vasoepididymostomy outcomes for men with concomitant abnormalities in the prostate and seminal vesicle. J Urol 1998 Oct;160(4):1410-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751365
11. Raleigh D, O'Donnell L, Southwick GJ, et al. Stereological analysis of the human testis after vasectomy indicates impairment of spermatogenic efficiency with increasing obstructive interval. Fertil Steril 2004 Jun;81(6):1595-603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15193483
12. McVicar CM, O'Neill DA, McClure N, et al. Effects of vasectomy on spermatogenesis and fertility outcome after testicular sperm extraction combined with ICSI. Hum Reprod 2005 Oct;20(10): 2795-800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15958397
13. Sheynkin YR, Hendin BN, Schlegel PN, et al. Microsurgical repair of iatrogenic injury to the vas deferens. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):139-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400456
14. Shin D, Lipshultz LI, Goldstein M, et al. Herniorrhaphy with polypropylene mesh causing inguinal vassal obstruction: a preventable cause of obstructive azoospermia. Ann Surg 2005 Apr;241(4):553-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15798455
15. Schlegel PN, Shin D, Goldstein M. Urogenital anomalies in men with congenital absence of the vas deferens. J Urol 1996 May;155(5):1644-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627844
16. Borovikov A. Treatment of large vasal defects. In: Goldstein M (ed). *Surgery of Male Infertility*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1995, pp. 77-95.
17. Elder JS, Mostwin JL. Cyst of the ejaculatory duct/urogenital sinus. J Urol 1984 Oct;132(4):768-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6471229
18. Schuhrke TD, Kaplan GW. Prostatic utricle cysts (müllerian duct cysts). J Urol 1978 Jun;119(6):765-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26814
19. Surya BV, Washecka R, Glasser J, et al. Cysts of the seminal vesicles: diagnosis and management. Br J Urol 1988 Nov;62(5):491-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3208033
20. Schroeder-Printzen I, Ludwig M, Kohn F, et al. Surgical therapy in infertile men with ejaculatory duct obstruction: technique and outcome of a standardized surgical approach. Hum Reprod 2000 Jun;15(6):1364-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10831570
21. Kuligowska E, Baker CE, Oates RD. Male infertility: role of transrectal US in diagnosis and management. Radiology 1992 Nov;185(2):353-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1410338
22. Colpi GM, Casella F, Zanollo A, et al. Functional voiding disturbances of the ampullo-vesicular seminal tract: a cause of male infertility. Acta Eur Fertil 1987 May-Jun;18(3):165-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3125711
23. Hendry WF, Rickards D, Pryor JP, et al. Seminal megavesicles with adult polycystic kidney disease. Hum Reprod 1998 Jun;13(6):1567-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9688393
24. Colpi GM, Negri L, Nappi RE, et al. Is transrectal ultrasonography a reliable diagnostic approach in ejaculatory duct sub-obstruction? Hum Reprod 1997 Oct;12(10):2186-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9402280
25. Meacham RB, Hellerstein DK, Lipshultz LI. Evaluation and treatment of ejaculatory duct obstruction in the infertile male. Fertil Steril 1993 Feb;59(2):393-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8425637
26. Jarow JP. Seminal vesicle aspiration of fertile men. J Urol 1996 Sep;156(3):1005-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8709296
27. Johnsen SG. Testicular biopsy score count-a method for registration of spermatogenesis in human testes: normal values and results in 335 hypogonadal males. Hormones 1970;1(1):2-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5527187
28. Silber SJ, Balmaceda J, Borrero C, et al. Pregnancy with sperm aspiration from the proximal head of the epididymis: a new treatment for congenital absence of the vas deferens. Fertil Steril 1988 Sep;50(3):525-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3410105
29. Esteves SC, Miyaoka R, Agarwal A. Sperm retrieval techniques for assisted reproduction. Int Braz J Urol 2011 Sep-Oct;37(5): 570-83 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22099268

30. Schroeder-Printzen I, Zumbe G, Bispink L, et al. Microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration: aspirate analysis and straws available after cryopreservation in patients with non-reconstructable obstructive azoospermia. MESA/TESE Group Giessen. Hum Reprod 2000 Dec;15(12):2531-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11098022
31. Van Peperstraten A, Proctor ML, Johnson NP, et al. Techniques for surgical retrieval of sperm prior to ICSI for azoospermia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jul 19;3:CD002807. http://www.mrw.interscience.wiley.com/cochrane/clsysrev/articles/CD002807/frame.html
32. Chan PT, Brandell RA, Goldstein M. Prospective analysis of outcomes after microsurgical intussusception vasoepididymostomy. BJU Int 2005 Sep;96(4):598-601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16104917
33. Matthews GJ, Schlegel PN, Goldstein M. Patency following microsurgical vasoepididymostomy and vasovasostomy: temporal consideration. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):2070-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500460
34. Mangoli V, Dandekar S, Desai S, et al. The outcome of ART in males with impaired spermatogenesis. Hum Reprod Sci 2008 Jul;1(2):73-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19562049
35. Kim ED, Winkel E, Orejuela F, et al. Pathological epididymal obstruction unrelated to vasectomy: results with microsurgical reconstruction. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 1):2078-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817328
36. Kolettis PN, Thomas AJ Jr. Vasoepididymostomy for vasectomy reversal: a critical assessment in the era of intracytoplasmic sperm injection. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):467-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224325
37. Ruiz-Romero J, Sarquella J, Pomerol JM. A new device for microsurgical sperm aspiration. Andrologia 1994 Mar-Apr;26(2):119-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8042769
38. Fisch H, Lambert SM, Goluboff ET. Management of ejaculatory duct obstruction: etiology, diagnosis, and treatment. World J Urol 2006 Dec;24(6):604-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17077974

6. VARICOCELE

6.1 Introduction

Varicocele is a common abnormality (*see* Chapter 2: Investigations) with the following andrological implications:

- failure of ipsilateral testicular growth and development;
- symptoms of pain and discomfort;
- infertility.

6.2 Classification

The following classification of varicocele (1,2) is useful in clinical practice:

- subclinical: not palpable or visible at rest or during valsalva manoeuvre, but can be shown by special tests (Doppler ultrasound studies) (3);
- grade 1: palpable during valsalva manoeuvre, but not otherwise;
- grade 2: palpable at rest, but not visible;
- grade 3: visible and palpable at rest.

6.3 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of varicocele is made by clinical examination and can be confirmed by colour Doppler analysis (2). In centres where treatment is carried out by antegrade or retrograde sclerotherapy or embolisation, diagnosis is additionally confirmed by X-ray.

6.4 Basic considerations

*6.4.1 **Varicocele and fertility***

Varicocele is a physical abnormality present in 11.7% of adult men and in 25.4% of men with abnormal semen analysis (4). The exact association between reduced male fertility and varicocele is unknown, but a recent meta-analysis showed that semen improvement is usually observed after surgical correction (5). Current information fits with the hypothesis that in some men the presence of varicocele is associated with progressive testicular damage from adolescence onwards, and consequent reduction in fertility. Varicocele is associated

with increased sperm DNA damage, and this sperm pathology may be secondary to varicocele-mediated oxidative stress.Varicocelectomy can reverse this sperm DNA damage, as shown in several studies (6).

*6.4.2 **Varicocelectomy***

Varicocele repair has been a subject of debate for decades: controversy exists as to whether varicocele repair results in more spontaneous pregnancies as compared to observation. The 2009 Cochrane Database review concluded that there is no evidence that treatment of the varicocele improves a couples' chance of conception (7). This meta-analysis was criticised for including several heterogenous studies, men with normal semen analysis and men with a subclinical varicocele (8). In 3 randomised controlled studies varicocele repair in men with a subclinical varicocele was found to be ineffective (9-11). Also, studies of men with a varicocele and normal semen analysis showed no clear benefit of treatment over observation (12,13).

The duration of the infertility also seems of importance: in a recent study it was shown that couples with an infertility duration of more than 2 years had a significant higher pregnancy rate compared to couples with an uncorrected varicocele. In couples with a shorter duration of infertility, such a difference was not observed (14).

In a recent meta-analysis of 4 RCTs on varicocelectomy in men with a clinical varicocele, oligospermia and otherwise unexplained infertility a trend in favour of surgical correction was observed (15). The combined odds ratio was 2.23 (95% confidence interval [CI], 0.86-5.78; p=0.091), indicating that varicocelectomy is moderately superior to observation, but the effect was not statistically significant.

There is a need for a large, properly conducted RCT of varicocele treatment in men with abnormal semen from couples with otherwise unexplained subfertility (16). While treatment of varicocele in infertile men may be effective, in adolescents there is a significant risk of overtreatment: most adolescents with a varicocele will have no problem achieving pregnancy later in life (17).

6.5 Treatment

Several treatments are available for varicocele (Table 9). The type of intervention chosen depends mainly on the experience of the therapist. Although laparoscopic varicocelectomy is feasible, it must be justified in terms of cost effectiveness.

Table 9: Recurrence and complication rates associated with treatments for varicocele

Treatment	Ref.	Recurrence/ persistence %	Complication rates
Antegrade sclerotherapy	18	9	Complication rate 0.3-2.2%: testicular atrophy, scrotal haematoma, epididymitis, left-flank erythema
Retrograde sclerotherapy	19	9.8	Adverse reaction to contrast medium, flank pain, persistent thrombophlebitis, vascular perforation
Retrograde embolisation	20,21	3.8-10	Pain due to thrombophlebitis, bleeding haematoma, infection, venous perforation, hydrocele, radiological complication (e.g. reaction to contrast media), misplacement or migration of coils, retroperitoneal haemorrhage, fibrosis, ureteric obstruction
Open operation			
Scrotal operation		-	Testicular atrophy, arterial damage with risk of devascularisation and gangrene of testicle, scrotal haematoma, post-operative hydrocele
Inguinal approach	22	13.3	Possibility of missing out a branch of testicular vein
High ligation	23	29	5-10% incidence of hydrocele (< 1%)
Microsurgical inguinal or subinguinal	24,25	0.8-4	Post-operative hydrocele arterial injury, scrotal haematoma
Laparoscopy	26,27	3-7	Injury to testicular artery and lymph vessels, intestinal, vascular and nerve damage, pulmonary embolism, peritonitis, bleeding, post-operative pain in right shoulder (due to diaphragmatic stretching during pneumoperitoneum), pneumoscrotum, wound infection

6.6 Conclusions and recommendations for varicocele

Conclusions
Current information supports the hypothesis that the presence of varicocele in some men is associated with progressive testicular damage from adolescence onwards and a consequent reduction in fertility.
Although the treatment of varicocele in adolescents may be effective, there is a significant risk of over-treatment.
Varicocele repair may be effective in men with subnormal semen analysis, a clinical varicocele and otherwise unexplained infertility. Further RCTs are needed to confirm that this subgroup of infertile couples will benefit from treatment.

Recommendations	GR
Varicocele treatment is recommended for adolescents with progressive failure of testicular development documented by serial clinical examination (9,10).	B
No evidence indicates benefit from varicocele treatment in infertile men who have normal semen analysis or in men with subclinical varicocele. In this situation, varicocele treatment cannot be recommended (15-17).	A
Varicocele repair should be considered in case of a clinical varicocele, oligospermia, duration of infertility of at least 2 years and otherwise unexplained infertility in the couple.	B

6.7 References

1. Hudson RW, Perez Marrero RA, Crawford VA, et al. Hormonal parameters in incidental varicoceles and those causing infertility. Fertil Steril 1986 May;45(5):692-700. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3084304
2. World Health Organization. WHO Manual for the Standardized Investigation, Diagnosis and Management of the Infertile Male. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
3. Dhabuwala CB, Hamid S, Moghissi KS. Clinical versus subclinical varicocele: improvement in fertility after varicocelectomy. Fertil Steril 1992 Apr;57(4):854-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1555699
4. No authors listed. The influence of varicocele on parameters of fertility in a large group of men presenting to infertility clinics. World Health Organisation. Fertil Steril 1992; 57(6):1289-93.
5. Argawal A, Deepinder F, Cocuzza M, et al. Efficacy of varicocelectomy in improving semen parqameters: new meta-analytical approach. Urology 2007 Sep;70(3):532-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17905111
6. Zini A, Dohle G. Are varicoceles associated with increased deoxyribonucleic acid fragmentation? Fertil Steril 2011 Dec;96(6):1283-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22035729
7. Evers JH, Collins J, Clarke J. Surgery or embolisation for varicoceles in subfertile men. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Jan 21;(1):CD000479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19160180
8. Ficarra V, Cerruto MA, Iguori G et al. Treatment of varicocele in subfertile men: The Cochrane review - a contrary opinion. Eur Urol 2006 Feb;49(2):258-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426727
9. Grasso M, Lania C, Castelli M, et al. Low-grade left varicocoele in patients over 30 years old: the effect of spermatic vein ligation on fertility. BJU Int 2000 Feb;85(3):305-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671887
10. Yamamoto M, Hibi H, Hirata Y, et al. Effect of varicocoelectomy on sperm parameters and pregnancy rates in patients with subclinical varicocele: a randomized prospective controlled study. J Urol 1996 May;155(5):1636-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627841
11. Unal D, Yeni E, Verit A, et al. Clomiphene citrate versus varicocoelectomy in treatment of subclinical varicocoele: a prospective randomized study. Int J Urol 2001 May;8(5):227-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11328423
12. Nilsson S, Edvinsson A, Nilsson B. Improvement of semen and pregnancy rate after ligation and division of the internal spermatic vein: fact or fiction? Br J Urol 1979 Dec;51(6):591-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/534846

13. Breznik R, Vlaisavljevic V, Borko E. Treatment of varicocoele and male fertility. Arch Androl 1993 May-June;30(3):157-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8498867
14. Giagulli VA, Carbone MD. Varicocele correction for infertility: which patients to treat? Int J Androl 2011 Jun;34(3):236-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20579135
15. Baazeem A, Belzile E, Ciampi A, et al. Varicocele and male factor infertility treatment: a new meta-analysis and review of the role of varicocele repair. Eur Urol 2011 Oct;60(4):796-808.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21733620
16. Abdel-Meguid, TA, Al-Sayyad A, Tayib A, et al. Does varicocele repair improve male infertility? An evidence-based perspective from a randomized, controlled trial. Eur Urol 2011 Mar;59(3):455-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21196073
17. Zargooshi J. Sperm count and sperm motility in incidental high-grade varicocoele. Fertil Steril 2007 Nov;88(5):1470-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17451695
18. Tauber R, Johnsen N. Antegrade scrotal sclerotherapy for the treatment of varicocele: technique and late results. J Urol 1994 Feb;151(2):386-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8283530
19. Sigmund G, Bahren W, Gall H, et al. Idiopathic varicoceles: feasibility of percutaneous sclerotherapy. Radiology 1987 Jul;164(1):161-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3588899
20. Seyferth W, Jecht E, Zeitler E. Percutaneous sclerotherapy of varicocele. Radiology 1981 May;139(2):335-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7220877
21. Lenk S, Fahlenkamp D, Gliech V, et al. Comparison of different methods of treating varicocele. J Androl 1994 Nov-Dec;15(Suppl):34S-37S.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7721674
22. Ivanissevich O. Left varicocele due to reflux; experience with 4,470 operative cases in forty-two years. J Int Coll Surg 1960 Dec;34:742-755.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13718224
23. Palomo A. Radical cure of varicocele by a new technique; preliminary report. J Urol 1949 Mar;61(3):604-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18114752
24. Goldstein M, Gilbert BR, Dicker AP, et al. Microsurgical inguinal varicocelectomy with delivery of the testis: an artery and lymphatic sparing technique. J Urol 1992 Dec;148(6):1808-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433614
25. Jungwirth A, Gögüs C, Hauser G, et al. Clinical outcome of microsurgical subinguinal varicocelectomy in infertile men. Andrologia 2001 Mar;33(2):71-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11350369
26. Miersch WD, Schoeneich G, Winter P, et al. Laparoscopic varicocelectomy: indication, technique and surgical results. Br J Urol 1995 Nov;76(5):636-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8535687
27. Tan SM, Ng FC, Ravintharan T, et al. Laparoscopic varicocelectomy: technique and results. Br J Urol 1995 Apr;75(4):523-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7788264

7. HYPOGONADISM

7.1 Introduction

Hypogonadism is characterised by impaired testicular function, which may affect spermatogenesis and/or testosterone synthesis. The symptoms of hypogonadism depend on the degree of androgen deficiency and if the condition develops before or after pubertal development of the secondary sex characteristics. The symptoms and signs of hypoandrogenism presenting before and after completion of puberty are given in Table 10.

Table 10: Symptoms and signs of hypogonadism debuting before and after completion of puberty*

Affected organ/function	Before completed puberty	After completed puberty
Larynx	No voice mutation	No voice mutation
Hair	Horizontal pubic hairline Straight frontal hairline Diminished beard growth	Diminished secondary body hair
Skin	Absent sebum production Lack of acne Pallor Skin wrinkling	Decreased sebum production Lack of acne Pallor Skin wrinkling
Bones	Eunuchoid tall stature Osteoporosis	Osteoporosis
Bone marrow	Mild anaemia	Mild anaemia
Muscles	Underdeveloped	Hypotrophy
Prostate	Underdeveloped	Hypotrophy
Penis	Infantile	No change of size
Testes	Possibly maldescended testes Small volume	Decrease of testicular volume
Spermatogenesis	Not initiated	Involuted
Libido and potency	Not developed	Loss

**Modified from Nieschlag et al. (1998) (1).*

The aetiological and pathogenetic mechanisms of male hypogonadism can be divided into three main categories:

1. Primary (hypergonadotrophic) hypogonadism due to testicular failure.
2. Secondary (hypogonadotrophic) hypogonadism caused by insufficient gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and/or gonadotrophin (FSH, LH) secretion.
3. Androgen insensitivity (end-organ resistance).

The most common conditions within these three categories are given in Table 11 (*see also* Chapter 4: Genetic disorders in infertility).

Table 11: Disorders with male hypogonadism*

Primary (hypergonadotropic) hypogonadism (testicular failure)*
Anorchia
Maldescended testes
Klinefelter's syndrome
Y chromosome microdeletions
Numerical and structural chromosomal anomalies
Trauma, testicular torsion, orchitis
Iatrogenic (surgery, medications, irradiation, cytostatic drugs)
Exogenous factors (toxins, heat, occupational hazards)
Systemic diseases (liver cirrhosis, renal failure)
Testicular tumour
Varicocele
Idiopathic
Secondary (hypogonadotropic) hypogonadism (secondary testicular failure)
Congenital o Idiopathic hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism o Normosmic o Iposmic/anosmic (Kallmann syndrome)

Acquired (tumours in the following regions) o Dyencephalon (craniopharyngiomas, meningiomas) o Hypothalamus or pituitary
Empty sella
Granulomatous illnesses
Fractures of the skull base
Ischaemic or haemorrhagic lesions in hypothalamic area
Hyperprolactinaemia
Drugs/anabolic steroids, radiotherapy
Target organ resistance to androgens
Testicular feminisation
Reifenstein's syndrome

7.2 Hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management

Idiopathic hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (IHH) is characterised by low levels of gonadotrophins and sex steroid in the absence of anatomical or functional abnormalities of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis (2). Idiopathic HH may be an isolated condition or may be associated with anosmia/hyposmia (Kallmann syndrome). Genetic factors causing a deficit of gonadotrophins may act at the hypothalamic or pituitary level. Mutations in candidate genes (X-linked or autosomal) can be found in about 30% of congenital cases (2) and should be screened prior to assisted reproduction (3).

Acquired hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism can be caused by some drugs, hormones, anabolic steroids, and by tumours. A suspected tumour requires imaging (CT or MR) of the sella region and a complete endocrine work-up.

The failure of hormonal regulation can easily be determined (4). Endocrine deficiency leads to a lack of spermatogenesis and testosterone secretion as a result of decreased secretion of FSH and LH. After having excluded secondary forms (drug, hormones, tumours), the therapy of choice depends on whether the goal is to achieve normal androgen levels or to achieve fertility.

Normal androgen levels and subsequent development of secondary sex characteristics (in cases of onset of hypogonadism before puberty) and eugonadal state can be achieved by androgen replacement alone. However, the stimulation of sperm production requires treatment with human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG) combined with recombinant FSH or urinary FSH or human menopausal gonadotropins (HMG). In the rare cases of 'fertile eunuchs', who have sufficient production of FSH but not LH, treatment with hCG alone may be sufficient to stimulate sperm production and to achieve normal testosterone levels (5).

If hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism is hypothalamic in origin, an alternative to hCG treatment is therapy with pulsatile GnRH (6). In patients who have developed hypogonadism before puberty and have not been treated with gonadotropins or GnRH, 1-2 years of therapy may be needed to achieve sperm production. Once pregnancy has been established, patients can return to testosterone substitution.

7.3 Hypergonadotrophic hypogonadism: aetiology, diagnosis and therapeutic management

Many conditions are associated in men with hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (Table 11, *see also* Chapter 4: Genetic disorders in infertility). Most conditions listed in Table 11 only affect the reproductive function of the testis so that only the FSH level is elevated. However, it has been reported that men with infertility problems are at higher risk for developing impaired Leydig cell function (7), while men with Klinefelter's syndrome often show high LH values and develop hypoandrogenism with ageing (8). A decrease in testosterone blood concentrations after extensive testicular biopsy in the context of TESE/ICSI has been observed, raising questions about the need for long-term endocrine follow-up of these patients (9).

Hypogonadism affecting both reproductive and endocrine functions of the testis occurs after treatment with GnRH analogues or surgical castration for prostatic cancer (10).

The laboratory diagnosis of hypergonadotrophic hypogonadism is based on a high level of FSH, decreased serum testosterone and increased LH levels (3). Testosterone levels should be evaluated in view of the concentration of the serum concentration of sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG). Based on levels of total testosterone and SHBG, free and bioavailable testosterone can be calculated (http://www.issam.ch/freetesto.htm).

Due to diurnal variation, blood samples for testosterone assessment should be taken before 10.00 am. The existing guidelines for androgen replacement are based on mainly total testosterone levels. There is general agreement that a total testosterone level > 12 nmol / L (350 ng / dL) does not require substitution. Similarly,

based on the data of younger men, there is consensus that patients with serum total testosterone levels < 8 nmol / L (230 ng / dL) will usually benefit from testosterone treatment. If the serum total testosterone level is between 8 and 12 nmol / L, testosterone supplementation is based on the presence of symptoms.

In obese men, decision-making may be helped by measuring total testosterone with SHBG to calculate free testosterone or measurement of free testosterone by equilibrium dialysis (11). Injectable, oral and transdermal testosterone preparations are available for clinical use (3). The best preparation to use is one that maintains serum testosterone levels as near as possible to physiological concentrations (11-13).

7.4 Conclusion and recommendation for hypogonadism

Conclusion
It is generally agreed that patients with primary or secondary hypogonadism associated with hypoandrogenism should receive testosterone substitution therapy.

Recommendation	GR
Effective drug therapy is available to achieve fertility in men with hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (4).	A

7.5 References

1. Andrology. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM (eds). *Male Reproductive Health and Dysfunction*. Berlin: Springer Verlag, 1997, Chapter 5, pp. 83-7.
2. Bianco SD, Kaiser UB. The genetic and molecular basis of idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism. Nat Rev Endocrinol 2009 Oct;5(10):569-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707180
3. Krausz C. Genetic aspects of male infertility. *European Urological Review* 2009;3(2):93-6.
4. World Health Organization. WHO manual for the Standardized Investigation, Diagnosis and Management of the Infertile Male. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
5. Burris AS, Rodbard HW, Winters SJ, et al. Gonadotropin therapy in men with isolated hypogonadotropic hypogonadism: the response to human chorionic gonadotropin is predicted by initial testicular size. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1988 Jun;66(6):1144-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3372679
6. Schopohl J, Mehltretter G, von Zumbusch R, et al. Comparison of gonadotropin-releasing hormone and gonadotropin therapy in male patients with idiopathic hypothalamic hypogonadism. Fertil Steril 1991 Dec;56(6):1143-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1743335
7. Andersson AM, Jørgensen N, Frydelund-Larsen L, et al. Impaired Leydig cell function in infertile men: a study of 357 idiopathic infertile men and 318 proven fertile controls. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004 Jul;89(7):3161-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240588
8. Lanfranco F, Kamischke A, Zitzmann M, et al. Klinefelter's syndrome. Lancet 2004 Jul;364(9430): 273-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15262106.
9. Manning M, Junemann KP, Alken P. Decrease in testosterone blood concentrations after testicular sperm extraction for intracytoplasmic sperm injection in azoospermic men. Lancet 1998 Jul;352(9121):37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9800753
10. Daniell HW. Osteoporosis after orchiectomy for prostate cancer. J Urol 1997 Feb;157(2):439-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996327
11. Finkelstein JS. Androgens and bone metabolism. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM (eds). *Testosterone: Action, Deficiency, Substitution*. 2nd edn. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1998, pp. 187-207.
12. Nieschlag E, Swerdloff R, Behre HM, et al. Investigation, treatment and monitoring of late-onset hypogonadism in males: ISA, ISSAM, and EAU recommendations. Int J Androl 2005 Jun;28(3):125-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15910536
13. Nieschlag E, Wang C, Handelsman DJ, et al. Guidelines for the Use of Androgens in Men. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

8. CRYPTORCHIDISM

8.1 Introduction

Cryptorchidism is the most common congenital abnormality of the male genitalia and is found in 2-5% of newborn boys, depending on gestational age (cryptorchidism occurs more often in premature boys) and age after birth. At the age of 3 months, the incidence of cryptorchidism falls spontaneously to 1-2%. Approximately 20% of undescended testes are non-palpable and may be located within the abdominal cavity.

The aetiology of cryptorchidism is multifactorial, involving disrupted endocrine regulation and several gene defects. The normal descent of the testes requires a normal hypothalamo-pituitary-gonadal axis. Endocrine disruption in early pregnancy can potentially affect gonadal development and normal descent of the testes; however, most boys with maldescended testes show no endocrine abnormalities after birth. It has been postulated that cryptorchidism may be a part of the so-called testicular dysgenesis syndrome (TDS), which is a developmental disorder of the gonads caused by environmental and/or genetic influences early in pregnancy. Besides cryptorchidism, TDS includes hypospadias, reduced fertility, increased risk of malignancy, and Leydig cell dysfunction (1).

8.2 Incidence of cryptorchidism

The Caucasian population has a three-fold higher incidence of cryptorchidism compared to African-Americans. Even between Caucasians, there are significant differences in the risk of cryptorchidism, e.g. it is significantly more common among Danish than Finnish newborns (2). Premature babies have a much higher incidence of cryptorchidism than full-term babies. In a British study, the incidence of cryptorchidism was 2.7% in more than 3,000 boys weighing > 2500 g and 21% in premature boys weighing < 2500 g. At the age of 3 months, spontaneous descent occurred in most boys, and the incidence of cryptorchidism fell to 0.9% and 1.7%, in the > 2500 g and < 2500 g group, respectively (3).

8.3 Testicular descent and maldescent

The process of testicular descent has two distinct phases: transabdominal and inguinal. During transabdominal descent, development of the gubernaculum and genitoinguinal ligament plays an important role. The anti-Müllerian hormone regulates the transabdominal descent of the testes. Induction of the gubernaculum depends on a functional Insl3 gene in mice (4). This gene is expressed in Leydig cells and its targeted deletion causes bilateral cryptorchidism with free-moving testes and genital ducts (5). Androgens play an important role in both phases of testicular descent, while other gene families, e.g. the homeobox (HOX) and GREAT/RXFP2 genes (G-protein-coupled receptor affecting testis descent), are important in the development of genital organs and may be associated with testicular maldescent (6,7).

8.4 Hormonal control of testicular descent

Maldescent can be caused by two hormonal factors: hypogonadism and androgen insensitivity. The increasing incidence of reproductive abnormalities in male humans can be explained by increased oestrogen exposure during gestation (8). Some pesticides and synthetic chemicals act as hormonal modulators, often possessing oestrogenic activity (xeno-oestrogens) (9). The oestrogenic and anti-androgenic properties of these chemicals may cause hypospadias, cryptorchidism, reduced sperm density, and an increased incidence of testicular tumours in animal models, via receptor-mediated mechanisms or direct toxic effects associated with Leydig cell dysfunction (10).

8.5 Pathophysiological effects in maldescended testes

*8.5.1 **Degeneration of germ cells***

The degeneration of germ cells in maldescended testes is apparent after the first year of life. Degenerative changes vary, depending on the position of the testis (11). During the second year, the number of germ cells declines. In 10-45% of affected patients, the complete loss of germ cells can be detected. Early treatment is therefore recommended to conserve spermatogenesis, especially in bilateral cases. Surgical treatment is the most effective and reliable method of bringing testes into the scrotum. Hormone treatment with hCG has been used widely in the past, but it has now been abolished because of increased germ cell apoptosis after treatment (12).

*8.5.2 **Relationship with fertility***

Semen parameters are often impaired in men with a history of cryptorchidism (13). Surgical treatment during the first or second year of life may have a positive effect on subsequent fertility (14). However, there is no definitive proof of the protective effect of early orchidopexy. In men with a history of unilateral cryptorchidism, paternity is almost equal (89.7%) to that in men without cryptorchidism (93.7%).

In men with unilateral cryptorchidism, paternity is independent of age at orchidopexy and pre-

operative testicular location and testicular size (15). However, a history of unilateral cryptorchidism may result in reduced fertility potential and therefore a longer time to achieve pregnancy.

In men with bilateral cryptorchidism, oligozoospermia can be found in 31% and azoospermia in 42%. In cases of bilateral cryptorchidism, the rate of paternity is only 35-53%. In cases of bilateral cryptorchidism and azoospermia, orchidopexy performed even in adult life might lead to the appearance of spermatozoa in the ejaculate (16).

8.5.3 ***Germ cell tumours***

Cryptorchidism is a risk factor for testicular cancer and is associated with testicular microcalcification and intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type [ITGCNU] former "CIS" of the testis. In 5-10% of testicular cancers, there is a history of cryptorchidism (17). The risk of a germ cell tumour is 3.6-7.4 times higher than in the general population and 2-6% of men with a history of cryptorchidism will develop a testicular tumour (17). Orchidopexy preformed before the age of puberty has been reported to decrease the risk of testicular cancer (18). However, this and other similar reports are based on retrospective data and does not exclude the possibility that boys undergoing early and late orchidopexy represent different pathogenetic groups of testicular maldescent.

8.6 Treatment of undescended testes

8.6.1 ***Hormonal treatment***

Human chorionic gonadotrophin or GnRH has been used widely in the past to treat cryptorchidism. However, although 15-20% of retained testes descend during hormonal treatment, one-fifth of these re-ascend later. Also, treatment with hCG may be harmful to future spermatogenesis by increasing the apoptosis of germ cells (12), which is why hormonal treatment is no longer recommended.

8.6.2 ***Surgical treatment***

The success rate of surgical treatment for undescended testes is 70-90% (19). If the spermatic cords or the spermatic vessels are too short to allow proper mobilisation of the testis into the scrotum, a staged orchidopexy (Fowler-Stephenson procedure) can be performed, using open surgery, laparoscopy or microsurgery.

The optimal age for performing orchidopexy is still debated. Some retrospective studies have indicated early treatment (during the first 2 years of life) has a beneficial effect on preserving future fertility (20), while a recent randomised study showed that surgery at 9 months resulted in a partial catch-up of testicular growth until at least age 4 years versus surgery at 3 years. The results clearly indicate that early surgery has a beneficial effect on testicular growth. Because testicular volume is an approximate indirect measure of spermatogenic activity, it is possible that orchidopexy at an early age might improve future spermatogenesis.

A biopsy at the time of orchidopexy (*see section* 8.5.3) can reveal intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type [ITGCNU], which can be removed thereby preventing development of a malignant tumour. If not corrected by adulthood, an undescended testis should not be removed because it still produces testosterone. Furthermore, as indicated above, correction of bilateral cryptorchidism, even in adulthood, can lead to sperm production in previously azoospermic men (16).

Vascular damage is the most severe complication of orchidopexy and can cause testicular atrophy in 1-2% of cases. In males with non-palpable testes, the post-operative atrophy rate was 12% in those cases with long vascular pedicles that enabled scrotal positioning. Post-operative atrophy in staged ochidopexy has been reported in up to 40% of patients (19).

8.7 Conclusions and recommendations for cryptorchidism

Conclusions
Cryptorchidism is multifactorial in origin and can be caused by genetic factors and endocrine disruption early in pregnancy.
Cryptorchidism is often associated with testicular dysgenesis and is a risk factor for infertility and germ cell tumours.
Whether early surgical intervention can prevent germ cell loss is still debatable, but in a randomised study it improved testicular growth in boys treated at the age of 9 months compared to those aged 3 years at the time of orchidopexy.
Paternity in men with unilateral cryptorchidism in almost equal to that in men without cryptorchidism.
Bilateral cryptorchidism significantly reduces the likelihood of paternity.

Recommendations	GR
Hormonal treatment of cryptorchidism should be abolished because of the risk of germ cell apoptosis and subsequent reduction of sperm production.	B
Early orchidopexy (6-12 months of age) might be beneficial for testicular development in adulthood.	B
If undescended testes are corrected in adulthood, testicular biopsy for detection of intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type [ITGCNU; former “CIS] is recommended at the time of orchidopexy (17).	B

8.8 References

1. Skakkebaek NS, Rajpert-De Meyts E, Main KM. Testicular dysgenesis syndrome: an increasingly common developmental disorder with environmental aspects. Hum Reprod 2001 May;16(5):972-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11331648
2. Boisen KA, Kaleva M, Main KM, et al. Difference in prevalence of congenital cryptorchidism in infants between two Nordic countries. Lancet 2004 Apr;363(9417):1264-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15094270
3. Heyns CF, Hutson JM. Historical review of theories on testicular descent. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 1): 754-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861531
4. Scorer CG. The descent of the testis. Arch Dis Child 1964 Dec;39:605-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14230757
5. Nguyen MT, Showalter PR, Timmons CF, et al. Effects of orchiopexy on congenitally cryptorchid insulin-3 knockout mice. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1779-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352358
6. Lewis AG, Pecha BR, Smith EP, et al. Early orchidopexy restores fertility in Hoxa 11 gene knockout mouse. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):302-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796710
7. Gorlov IP, Kamat A, Bogatcheva NV, et al. Mutations of the GREAT gene cause cryptorchidism. Hum Mol Genet 2002 Sep;11(19):2309-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12217959
8. Hadziselimovic F, Geneto R, Emmons LR. Elevated placental estradiol: a possible etiological factor of human cryptorchidism. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1694-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025750
9. Hosi S, Loff S, Witt K, et al. Is there a correlation between organochlorine compounds and undescended testes? Eur J Pediatr Surg 2000 Oct;10(5):304-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11194541
10. Mahood IK, Scott HM, Brown R, et al. In utero exposure to di(n-butyl) phthalate and testicular dysgenesis: comparison of fetal and adult end points and their dose sensitivity. Environ Health Perspect 2007 Dec;115 Suppl 1:55-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18174951
11. Garcia J, González N, Gómez ME, et al. Clinical and anatomopathological study of 2000 cryptorchid testes. Br J Urol 1995 Jun;75(6):697-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7613821
12. Ritzén EM. Undescended testes: a consensus on management. Eur J Endocrinol 2008 Dec;159 Suppl 1:S87-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18728121
13. Yavetz H, Harash B, Paz G, et al. Cryptorchidism: incidence and sperm quality in infertile men. Andrologia 1992 Sep-Oct;24(5):293-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1356318
14. Wilkerson ML, Bartone FF, Fox L, et al. Fertility potential: a comparison of intra-abdominal and intracanalicular testes by age groups in children. Horm Res 2001;55(1):18-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11423737
15. Miller KD, Coughlin MT, Lee PA. Fertility after unilateral cryptorchidism: paternity, time to conception, pretreatment testicular location and size, hormone and sperm parameters. Horm Res 2001; 55(5): 249-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11740148
16. Giwercman A, Hansen LL, Skakkebaek NE. Initiation of sperm production after bilateral orchiopexy: clinical and biological implications. J Urol 2000 Apr;163(4):1255-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737515

17. Giwercman A, Bruun E, Frimodt-Moller C, et al. Prevalence of carcinoma in situ and other histopathological abnormalities in testes of men with a history of cryptorchidism. J Urol 1989 Oct; 142(4):998-1001.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2571738
18. Pettersson A, Richiardi L, Nordenskjold A, et al. Age at surgery for undescended testis and risk of testicular cancer. N Engl J Med 2007 May 3;356(18):1835-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17476009
19. Jones PF. Approaches to orchidopexy. Br J Urol 1995 Jun;75(6):693-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7613820
20. Hadziselimovic F, Hocht B, Herzog B, et al. Infertility in cryptorchidism is linked to the stage of germ cell development at orchidopexy. Horm Res 2007;68(1):46-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17356291

9. IDIOPATHIC MALE INFERTILITY

9.1 Introduction

No demonstrable cause of male infertility, other than idiopathic OAT syndrome, is found in at least 44% of infertile men (1).

9.2 Empirical treatments

A wide variety of empirical drug treatments of idiopathic male infertility have been used; however, there is little scientific evidence for an empirical approach (2). Androgens, hCG/human menopausal gonadotrophin, bromocriptine, alpha-blockers, systemic corticosteroids and magnesium supplementation are not effective in the treatment of OAT syndrome. Follicle-stimulating hormone (3) and anti-oestrogens in combination with testosterone (4) might be beneficial in a selection of patients (3,4). A Cochrane analysis showed that men taking oral antioxidants had an associated statistically significant increase in live birth rate (pooled odds ratio (OR) = 4.85; 95% CI: 1.92-12.24; p = 0.0008; I(2) = 0%) when compared with men taking the control. No studies reported harmful side effects from the antioxidant therapy used. The evidence suggests that antioxidant supplementation in subfertile males may improve the outcomes of live birth and pregnancy rate for subfertile couples undergoing ART cycles. Further head-to-head comparisons are necessary to identify the superiority of one antioxidant over another (5).

Recommendation	GR
Medical treatment of male infertility is recommended only for cases of hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism (1).	A

9.3 References

1. Pierik FH, Van Ginneken AM, Dohle GR, et al. The advantages of standardized evaluation of male infertility. Int J Androl 2000 Dec;23(6):340-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11114979
2. Foresta C, Bettella A, Spolaore D, et al. Suppression of the high endogenous levels of plasma FSH in infertile men are associated with improved Sertoli cell function as reflected by elevated levels of plasma inhibin B. Hum Reprod 2004 Jun;19(6):1431-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15117900
3. Paradisi R, Busacchi P, Seracchioli R, et al. Effects of high doses of recombinant human follicle stimulating hormone in the treatment of male factor infertility: results of a pilot study. Fertil Steril 2006 Sep;86(3):728-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16782097
4. Adamopoulos DA, Pappa A, Billa E, et al. Effectiveness of combined tamoxifen citrate and testosterone undecanoate treatment in men with idiopathic oligozoospermia. Fertil Steril 2003 Oct;80(4):914-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14556812
5. Showell MG, Brown J, Yazdani A, Stankiewicz MT, Hart RJ. Antioxidants for male subfertility. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Jan 19;(1):CD007411.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21249690

10. MALE CONTRACEPTION

10.1 Introduction

'Male contribution to contraception' is a more accurate phrase than 'male contraception', as men do not conceive. Development of male contraceptive methods is important because up to 40% of women have an unmet need for family planning, with approximately 80 million women every year having unintended or unwanted pregnancies (1).

Three of the four methods of male contraception have been in use for hundreds of years (i.e. condoms, periodic abstinence and withdrawal). The typical first-year failure rates of traditional male methods are high (withdrawal 19%, periodic abstinence 20%, and condoms 3-14%) compared to the failure rates of 0.1-3% for modern reversible female methods (2). For men to take more responsibility for family planning, male contraceptive methods must be acceptable, cheap, reversible, and effective.

Research is attempting to (3):

- Prevent sperm production by using exogenic androgens, progestogen and GnRH formulations in various combinations).
- Interfere with the ability of sperm to mature and fertilise, by using an epididymal approach to create a hostile environment for sperm.
- Produce better barrier methods, e.g. polyurethane condoms can be used by those with latex allergy, although they have higher breakage rates (4).
- Produce an antisperm contraceptive vaccine (5).
- Inhibit sperm-egg interactions.

These approaches remain experimental. The method nearest to being generally available clinically is hormonal male contraception, which is based on the suppression of gonadotrophins and testosterone substitution to maintain male sexual function and bone mineralisation and to prevent muscle wasting (6). Various contraceptive regimens have been developed and tested, including testosterone monotherapy, androgen/progestin combinations, testosterone with GnRH analogues, and selective androgen- and progestin-receptor modulators. There are racial differences in the response to androgens alone. However, a combination of testosterone with progestin has resulted in complete suppression of spermatogenesis in all races, and provides contraceptive efficacy equivalent to female hormonal methods (7). Phase III clinical trials of depot preparations of androgen/progestin combinations are in progress.

10.2 Vasectomy

Vasectomy is an effective method of permanent male surgical sterilisation (8). Before vasectomy, the couple should be fully informed about the benefits and risks, especially as an Australian telephone survey found that 9.2% of respondents regretted having a vasectomy (9).

10.2.1 ***Surgical techniques***

Various techniques are available for vasectomy. The least invasive approach is the no-scalpel vasectomy (10), which is also associated with a low rate of complications (11). The most effective occlusion technique is cauterisation of the lumen of the vas deferens and fascial interposition (12-14). Most techniques can be carried out safely under local anaesthesia in an outpatient clinic.

10.2.2 ***Complications***

Vasectomy does not significantly alter spermatogenesis and Leydig cell function. The volume of ejaculate remains unchanged. Potential systemic effects of vasectomy, including atherosclerosis, have not been proven, and there is no evidence of a significant increase in any systemic disease after vasectomy. An increased rate of prostate cancer in men who underwent vasectomy has not been detected (17).

Acute local complications associated with vasectomy include haematoma, wound infection, and epididymitis in up to 5% of cases (15). The potential long-term complications (e.g. chronic testicular pain) (16) must be discussed with the patient before the procedure. Epididymal tubal damage is common, and is associated with consequent development of sperm granuloma and time-dependent secondary epididymal obstruction, which limits vasectomy reversal.

10.2.3 ***Vasectomy failure***

If an effective occlusion technique is used, the risk of recanalisation after vasectomy should be < 1% (12). However, patients should be informed pre-operatively that, although rare, long-term re-canalisation might occur (19). No motile spermatozoa should be detected 3 months after vasectomy. Persistent motility is a sign of vasectomy failure, and the procedure will need to be repeated. A 'special clearance' with non-motile spermatozoa < 10,000/mL is still under discussion (18).

10.2.4 ***Counselling***

Counselling with regard to vasectomy must address the following aspects:

- Vasectomy should be considered irreversible.
- Vasectomy is associated with a low complication rate; however, because it is an elective operation, even small risks must be explained, because men (and their partners) might wish to consider these before giving consent.
- Vasectomy can fail, although the failure rate is low.
- Couples should be advised to continue with other effective contraception until clearance is confirmed.
- All available data indicate that vasectomy is not associated with any serious, long-term, side effects (15).
- Vascetomy involving cauterisation and fascial interposition appears to be the most effective technique (12-14).

10.3 Vasectomy reversal

A wide range of surgical success rates has been published for vasectomy reversal (up to 90%), depending on the time between vasectomy and re-fertilisation, type of vasectomy (e.g. open-ended or sealed), type of reversal (vaso-vasostomy or vaso-epididymostomy), and whether reversal was unilateral or bilateral. However, there have been no randomised controlled trials comparing macrosurgery (loops) and microsurgery. Microsurgical techniques with the help of magnification and smaller suture materials should be used (20).

10.3.1 ***Length of time since vasectomy***

Vaso-vasostomy results have shown patency rates up to 90%. The longer the interval is from vasectomy to reversal, the lower is the pregnancy rate. In a study of 1,469 men who had undergone microsurgical vasectomy reversal, patency and pregnancy rates were 97% and 76%, respectively, for an interval up to 3 years after vasectomy, 88% and 53%, respectively, for 3-8 years, 79% and 44%, respectively, for 9-14 years, and 71% and 30%, respectively, for > 15 years (21).

10.3.2 ***Epididymo-vasostomy***

The chance of secondary epididymal obstruction after vasectomy increases with time. After an interval of 10 years, 25% of men appear to have epididymal blockage. If secondary epididymal obstruction occurs, epididymo-vasostomy is needed to reverse the vasectomy (*see above* Chapter 5: Obstructive azoospermia) (22).

10.3.3 ***Microsurgical vasectomy reversal versus epididymal or testicular sperm retrieval and ICSI***

According to the calculations of cost per delivery for vasectomy reversal versus sperm retrieval/ICSI, under a wide variety of initial assumptions, it is clear that vasectomy reversal is associated with a considerably lower cost per delivery and higher delivery rates (23,24). Sperm retrieval and ICSI must yield an 81% pregnancy rate per cycle to achieve equal costs to vasectomy reversal.

10.4 Conclusions and recommendations for male contraception

Conclusions
The most cost-effective approach to treatment of post-vasectomy infertility is microsurgical reversal. This procedure is also associated with the highest chance of pregnancy.
Pregnancy is still achievable after successful vasectomy reversal.
MESA/TESE/PESA (25) and ICSI should be reserved for failed vasectomy reversal surgery.
All available data indicate vasectomy is not associated with any serious, long-term, side effects (15).
Fascial interposition and cauterisation appears to be the most effective vasectomy technique (12-14).

Recommendations	**GR**
Patients seeking consultation about vasectomy must be informed about the surgical method, risk of failure, irreversibility, the need for post-procedure contraception until clearance, and the risk of complications.	C
Methods of male contraception other than vasectomy are associated with high failure rates or are still experimental (e.g. hormonal approach).	B
Microsurgical vasectomy reversal is a low-risk and (cost-) effective method of restoring fertility.	B

For couples wanting to achieve pregnancy, sperm aspiration together with ICSI is a second-line option for selected cases and in those with failed vaso-vasostomy.	B

10.5 References

1. Reproductive Health Strategy. Reproductive Health Research World Health Organisation, Geneva. Adopted at the 57th World Health Assembly, 2004. http://www.who.int/reproductive-health/publications/strategy.pdf
2. Handelsman D, Waites G. Tradional methods. In: Schill W, Comhaire F, Hargreave T (eds). *Andrology for the Clinician*. Berlin: Springer Verlag, 2006, pp. 122-4.
3. Griffin D, Ringheim K. Male hormonal contraception. What prospects exist and how acceptable are they? Plan Parent Chall 1996;(2):20-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12291936
4. Gallo MF, Grimes DA, Lopez LM, et al. Non-latex versus latex male condoms for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jan 25;(1):CD003550. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16437459
5. Naz RK. Antisperm immunity for contraception. J Androl 2006 Mar-Apr;27(2):153-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474022
6. Matthiesson KL, McLachlan RI. Male hormonal contraception: concept proven, product in sight? Hum Reprod Update 2006 Jul-Aug;12(4):463-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16597629
7. Handelsman DJ, Waites GMH. Hormonal male contraception. In: Schill W, Comhaire F, Hargreave T (eds). *Andrology for the Clinician*. Berlin: Springer Verlag, 2006, pp. 520-4.
8. Schwingl PJ, Guess HA. Safety and effectiveness of vasectomy. Fertil Steril 2000 May;73(5):923-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10785217
9. Holden CA, McLachlan RI, Cumming R, et al. Sexual activity, fertility and contraceptive use in middle-aged and older men: Men in Australia, Telephone Survey (MATeS). Hum Reprod 2005 Dec: 20(12):3429-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172145
10. Li SQ, Goldstein M, Zhu J, et al. The no-scalpel vasectomy. J Urol 1991 Feb;145(2):341-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1988727
11. Nirapathpongporn A, Huber D, Krieger N. No-scalpel vasectomy at the King's birthday vasectomy festival. Lancet 1990 Apr;335(8694):894-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1969992
12. Sokal, D, Irsula, B, Hays M, et al; Investigator Study Group. Vasectomy by ligation and excision, with or without fascial interposition: a randomized controlled trial. BMC Med 2004 Mar;2:6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15056388
13. Barone MA, Irsula B, Chen-Mok M, et al; Investigator Study Group. Effectiveness of vasectomy using cautery. BMC Urol 2004 Jul;19;4:10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15260885
14. Sokal DC, Irsula B, Chen-Mok M, et al. A comparison of vas occlusion techniques: cautery more effective than ligation and excision with fascial interposition. BMC Urol 2004 Oct;4(1):12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15509302
15. Schwingl PJ, Guess HA. Safety and effectiveness of vasectomy. Fertil Steril 2000 May;73(5):923-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10785217
16. Christiansen CG, Sandlow JI. Testicular pain following vasectomy: a review of postvasectomy pain syndrome. J Androl 2003 May-Jun;24(3):293-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12721203
17. Bernal-Delgado E, Latour-Pérez J, Pradas-Arnal F, et al. The association between vasectomy and prostate cancer: a systematic review of the literature. Fertil Steril 1998 Aug;70(2):191-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9696205
18. Davies AH, Sharp RJ, Cranston D, et al. The long-term outcome following 'special clearance' after vasectomy. Br J Urol 1990 Aug;66(2):211-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2390708
19. Verhulst APM, Hoekstra JW. Paternity after bilateral vasectomy. BJU Int 1999 Feb;83(3):280-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233494
20. Schroeder-Printzen I, Diemer T, Weidner W. Vasovasostomy. Urol Int 2003;70(2):101-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12592037
21. Belker AM, Thomas AJ Jr, Fuchs EF, et al. Results of 1,469 microsurgical vasectomy reversals by the Vasovasostomy Study Group. J Urol 1991 Mar;145(3):505-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1997700

22. Chan PT, Brandell RA, Goldstein M. Prospective analysis of outcomes after microsurgical intussusception vasoepididymostomy. BJU Int 2005 Sep;96(4):598-601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16104917.).
23. Pavlovich CP, Schlegel PN. Fertility options after vasectomy: a cost-effectiveness analysis. Fertil Steril 1997 Jan;67(1):133-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8986698
24. Heidenreich A, Altmann P, Engelmann UH. Microsurgical vasovasostomy versus microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration/testicular extraction of sperm combined with intracytoplasmic sperm injection. A cost-benefit analysis. Eur Urol 2000 May;37(5):609-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10765102
25. Esteves SC, Miyaoka R, Agarwal A. Sperm retrieval techniques for assisted reproduction. Int Braz J Urol 2011 Sep-Oct;37(5): 570-83 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22099268

11. MALE ACCESSORY GLAND INFECTIONS

11.1 Introduction

Infections of the male urogenital tract are potentially curable causes of male infertility (1-3). The WHO considers urethritis, prostatitis, orchitis and epididymitis to be male accessory gland infections (MAGIs) (2). However, specific data are not available to confirm that these diseases have a negative influence on sperm quality and male fertility in general.

11.2 Urethritis

Infectious, sexually acquired urethritis is caused by various pathogens, most often *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, and *Neisseria gonorrhoea* (4). Non-infectious causes of urethritis include irritations as a result of allergic reactions, trauma and manipulations. Urethral discharge and bladder voiding problems are the predominant symptoms of acute urethritis.

11.2.1 ***Diagnosis and treatment***

Diagnosis is based on the analysis of urethral smear and first-voided urine (VB1). Pathognomonic evidence is > 4 granulocytes per microscopic high-power field (×1000) in an urethral smear, or 15 granulocytes per microscopic field (×400) in the smear of the sediment of 3 mL VB1, is pathognomonic (4). In urethritis, defined by inflammatory discharge, semen analysis for disorders of male fertility is not possible because the anterior urethra is full of infectious and inflammatory material that hampers any useful analysis (5).

The impact of urethritis on semen quality and fertility has not been proven because the ejaculate is contaminated with inflammatory material from the urethra.

It is still debated whether infection with sexually transmitted micro-organisms has a negative effect on sperm function (1,6,7). Male fertility can be impaired by urethral strictures, ejaculatory disturbances (2), or the development of obstruction (8). Obstruction can develop as either a normal urethral stricture or a lesion in the posterior urethra in the area of the verumontanum, both of which can lead to ejaculatory disturbances and central obstruction of the seminal pathway (2).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in Atlanta, GA, USA have published guidelines to standardise the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases (9). Because the aetiology of acute urethritis is usually unknown at the time of diagnosis, empirical therapy is used against potential pathogens. A single dose of a fluoroquinolone is given, followed by a 2-week regimen of doxycycline. Treatment is effective both for gonococcal and (co-existing) chlamydial/ureaplasmal infections.

11.3 Prostatitis

Prostatitis is the most common urological diagnosis in men < 50 years of age (10). Traditionally, prostatitis has been classified into four clinical entities:

- acute bacterial prostatitis (abp) and prostatic abscess as a sequela/complication of abp;
- chronic bacterial prostatitis (cbp);
- non- or abacterial prostatitis (nbp);
- prostatodynia.

To improve the definition and understanding of prostatitis, a classification system has been proposed by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) (10) (Table 12).

Table 12: NIH/NIDDK classification of prostatitis syndrome*

New NIH category	Clinical entity	Description
I	ABP	Acute infection of the prostate gland
II	CBP	Recurrent infection of the prostate
III	Chronic abacterial prostatitis/CPPS	No demonstrable infection
IIIA	Inflammatory CPPS	White cells in semen, expressed prostatic secretions or post-prostatic massage urine
IIIB	Non-inflammatory CPPS	No white cells in semen, expressed prostatic secretions or post-prostatic massage urine
IV	Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis	No subjective symptoms. Inflammation detected either by prostate biopsy or by the presence of white cells in expressed prostatic secretions or semen during evaluation for other disorders

** Adapted from Wagenlehner et al. (10).*
ABP = acute bacterial prostatitis; CBP = chronic bacterial prostatitis; CPPS = chronic pelvic pain syndrome.

11.3.1 ***Microbiology***

ABP (NIH I), CBP (NIH II) and, more significantly, prostatic abscesses are clinically relevant but uncommon diseases. The most common causes of bacterial prostatitis are Gram-negative bacteria, mainly strains of *Escherichia coli* (11). The role of Gram-positive bacteria in bacterial prostatitis is controversial. Although enterococci can cause bacterial prostatitis and associated recurrent urinary tract infection (UTI), the importance of other Gram-positive bacteria in chronic prostatitis is doubtful (11), as is that of *C. trachomatis* and *Mycoplasma*, particularly *U. urealyticum* (11-15). Hidden bacteria may be aetiologically involved in patients with chronic idiopathic prostatitis after exclusion of typical bacterial infection (16). Detection of bacteria by molecular techniques has not been evaluated definitively.

11.3.2 ***Diagnosis***

Symptoms must be evaluated using standardised scores, especially the NIH symptom score (17). Other investigative procedures include laboratory diagnosis of CBP using the four-specimen test for bacterial localisation (10,11), which measures sequential quantitative bacteriological cultures of the urethra, bladder urine and prostatic secretions, both in expressed prostatic excretion (EPS) and urine after prostatic massage (12).

Simplified techniques compare bacterial and leukocyte counts in the urine before and after prostatic massage (18). Screening of bladder voiding and imaging analysis of the prostate gland must be integrated.

The key to diagnosis is the demonstration of leukocytes in EPS, urine after prostatic massage and/or ejaculate to differentiate between inflammatory and non-inflammatory CPPS.

11.3.3 ***Ejaculate analysis***

An ejaculate analysis (*see* Chapter 2: Investigations) clarifies whether the prostate is involved as part of a generalised MAGI and provides information about sperm quality. In addition, leukocyte analysis allows differentiation between inflammatory and non-inflammatory CPPS (NIH IIa vs NIH IIIb).

11.3.4 ***Microbiological findings***

After exclusion of urethritis and bladder infection, > 10^6 peroxidase-positive white blood cells (WBCs) per millilitre of ejaculate indicate an inflammatory process. In this case, a culture should be made for common urinary tract pathogens, particularly Gram-negative bacteria.

A concentration of > 10^3 cfu/mL urinary tract pathogens in the ejaculate is indicative of significant bacteriospermia. Various micro-organisms are found in the genital tract of men seen in infertility clinics, usually with more than one strain of bacteria present (1). The sampling time can influence the positive rate of micro-organisms in semen and the frequency of isolation of different strains (19). The ideal diagnostic test for *C. trachomatis* in semen has not yet been established (14). In contrast to serological findings in women, antibody tests for *C. trachomatis* in seminal plasma are not indicative if no type-specific methods are used (14).

Ureaplasma urealyticum is pathogenic only in high concentrations (> 10^3 cfu/mL ejaculate). No more than about 10% of samples analysed for ureaplasma exceed this concentration (20). Normal colonisation of the urethra hampers the clarification of mycoplasma-associated urogenital infections, using samples such as the ejaculate (15).

11.3.5 ***White blood cells***

The clinical significance of an increased concentration of leukocytes in the ejaculate is controversial (21). Infection is indicated only by an increased level of leukocytes (particularly polymorphonuclear leukocytes) and their products (e.g. leukocyte elastase) secreted into the seminal fluid. Most leukocytes are neutrophilic granulocytes, as suggested by the specific staining of the peroxidase reaction (2). Although leukocytospermia is a sign of inflammation, it is not necessarily associated with bacterial or viral infections (7). Earlier findings have shown that elevated leukocyte numbers are not a natural cause of male infertility (22).
According to WHO classification, leukocytospermia is defined as > 10^6 WBCs/mL. Only two studies have analysed alterations of WBCs in the ejaculate of patients with proven prostatitis (23,24). Both studies found more leukocytes in men with prostatitis compared to those without inflammation (CPPS, type NIH IIIb).

11.3.6 ***Sperm quality***

The deleterious effects of chronic prostatitis on sperm density, motility and morphology are under debate (1). All investigations have given contradictory results, and have not confirmed that chronic prostatitis has a decisive role in altering conventional semen parameters (25-27).

11.3.7 ***Seminal plasma alterations***

Seminal plasma elastase is a biochemical indicator of polymorphonuclear lymphocyte activity in the ejaculate (1,28,29), with a suggested cut-off level of approximately 600 ng/mL (1). Various cytokines are involved in inflammation and can influence sperm function. Several studies have investigated the association between interleukin (IL) concentration, leukocytes and sperm function (30-32), but no correlations have been found. The prostate is the main site of origin of IL-6 in the seminal plasma. Cytokines, especially IL-6, play an important role in the male accessory gland inflammatory process (33). However, elevated cytokine levels do not depend on the number of leukocytes in EPS (34).

11.3.8 ***Glandular secretory dysfunction***

Infections of the sex glands can impair their excretory function. Decreased quantities of citric acid, phosphatase, fructose, zinc, and α-glutamyl-transferase activity are indicators of disturbed prostatic secretory parameters (1). Reduced fructose concentration indicates impaired vesicular function (20,35).

11.3.9 ***Sperm antibodies***

Serum antibodies to sperm antigens are not useful in the diagnosis of immune infertility. Early studies found an association between increased levels of sperm antibodies in serum and NBP (36,37). However, except for suspected chlamydial infections (38), only a history of vasectomy is predictive of sperm antibody formation (39).

11.3.10 ***Reactive oxygen species***

Reactive oxygen species might be increased in chronic urogenital infections associated with increased leukocyte numbers (40). However, their biological significance in prostatitis remains unclear (1).

11.3.11 ***Therapy***

Treatment of chronic prostatitis is usually targeted at relieving symptoms (10,41). Andrologically, the aims of therapy for altered semen composition in male adnexitis (acute and chronic infections of the male urogenital tract) are:

- reduction or eradication of micro-organisms in prostatic secretions and semen;
- normalisation of inflammatory (e.g. leukocytes) and secretory parameters;
- improvement of sperm parameters to counteract fertility impairment (42).

Treatment includes antibiotics, anti-inflammatory drugs, surgical procedures, normalisation of urine flow, physical therapy and alterations in general and sexual behaviour.

Only antibiotic therapy of CBP (NIH II) has provided symptomatic relief, eradication of microorganisms and a decrease in cellular and humoral inflammatory parameters in urogenital secretions. The use of alpha-blockers for symptom relief is controversial. Although antibiotics might improve sperm quality (42), there is no evidence that treatment of chronic prostatitis increases the probability of conception (1,43).

11.4 Orchitis and epididymo-orchitis

11.4.1 ***Introduction***

Orchitis is an inflammatory lesion of the testis associated with a predominantly WBC exudate inside and outside the seminiferous tubules, which potentially results in tubular sclerosis. The inflammation causes pain and swelling. Chronic inflammatory alterations in the seminiferous tubules disrupt the normal process

of spermatogenesis and alter sperm number and quality (44). Orchitis might also be an important cause of spermatogenetic arrest (45), which might be reversible in most cases. Testicular atrophy can develop as a result of tubular sclerosis (45).

11.4.2 ***Diagnosis***

Epididymo-orchitis usually presents with unilateral scrotal pain (46). Diagnosis is based on past medical history and palpation. Ultrasonography usually indicates a swollen, enlarged testis. The sonographic features of the tissue do not allow any differential diagnosis (47).

11.4.3 ***Ejaculate analysis***

Ejaculate analysis, including leukocyte analysis, indicates persistent inflammatory activity. In many cases, especially in acute epididymo-orchitis, transiently decreased sperm counts and reduced forward motility occur (44,46). Obstructive azoospermia caused by complete obstruction is a rare complication. Mumps orchitis can result in bilateral testicular atrophy (45) and non-obstructive azoospermia. When granulomatous orchitis is suspected, sperm-bound autoantibodies occur.

11.4.4 ***Therapy***

Only therapy of acute bacterial epididymo-orchitis and of specific granulomatous orchitis is standardised (45) (Table 13). Several regimens improve the inflammatory lesion. Unfortunately, corticosteroids and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (e.g. diclofenac, indomethacin, acetylsalicylic acid) have not been evaluated for their andrological outcome (47). In mumps orchitis, systemic therapy with interferon α-2b prevents testicular atrophy and azoospermia (50). In idiopathic granulomatous orchitis, surgical removal of the testis is the therapy of choice.

Table 13: Treatment of epididymo-orchitis

Condition and pathogen	**Treatment**
Acute bacterial epididymo-orchitis	
N. gonorrhoeae	Tetracyclines
C. trachomatis	Tetracyclines
E. coli, Enterobacteriaceae	Fluoroquinolones
Mumps orchitis	Interferon α-2b
Non-specific chronic epididymo-orchitis	Steroidal and non-steroidal inflammatory agents
Granulomatous (idiopathic) orchitis	Semi-castration
Specific orchitis	According to therapy of underlying diseases

11.5 Epididymitis

11.5.1 ***Introduction***

Inflammation of the epididymis causes unilateral pain and swelling, usually with acute onset. Among sexually active men < 35 years of age, epididymitis is most often caused by *C. trachomatis* or *N. gonorrhoea* (51,52). Sexually transmitted epididymitis is usually accompanied by urethritis. Non-sexually transmitted epididymitis is associated with UTI and occurs more often in men aged > 35 years, those who have recently undergone urinary tract instrumentation or surgery, and those who have anatomical abnormalities (52).

11.5.2 ***Diagnosis***

In acute epididymitis, inflammation and swelling usually start in the tail of the epididymis and can spread to involve the rest of the epididymis and testicular tissue (46). Although men with epididymitis caused by sexually transmitted micro-organisms always have a history of sexual activity, exposure could have occurred several months before onset. The microbial aetiology of epididymitis is usually easy to determine by Gram-stained examination of both a urethral smear for urethritis and of a mid-stream urine specimen for Gram-negative bacteriuria (51,52). Intracellular Gram-negative diplococci on the smear indicate the presence of *N. gonorrhoea*. Only WBCs on urethral smear indicate non-gonorrhoeal urethritis; *C. trachomatis* will be isolated in about two-thirds of these patients (53).

11.5.3 ***Ejaculate analysis***

Ejaculate analysis according to WHO criteria, including leukocyte analysis, might indicate persistent inflammatory activity. In many cases, transiently decreased sperm counts and forward motility are observed

(46,48,51). Ipsilateral low-grade orchitis (54,55) might be the cause of this slight impairment in sperm quality (Table 14) (56).

Development of stenosis in the epididymal duct, reduction of sperm count and azoospermia are more important in the follow-up of bilateral epididymitis *(see* Chapter 5: Obstructive azoospermia). The extent of azoospermia after epididymitis is unclear.

Table 14: Acute epididymitis and impact on sperm parameters.

Authors	Negative influence			
	Density	**Motility**	**Morphology**	**Comment**
Ludwig & Haselberger (57)	+	+	+	Pyospermia in 19 of 22 cases
Berger *et al*. (51)		+		
Weidner *et al*. (47)	+	+	+	Azoospermia in 3 of 70 men
Haidl (58)		+		Chronic infections; macrophages elevated
Cooper *et al*. (59)				Decrease in epididymal markers: α-glucosidase, L-carnitine

11.5.4 ***Treatment***

Antibiotic therapy is indicated before culture results are available (Table 13). Treatment of epididymitis results in:

- microbiological cure of infection;
- improvement of clinical signs and symptoms;
- prevention of potential testicular damage;
- prevention of transmission;
- decrease of potential complications (e.g. infertility or chronic pain).

Patients with epididymitis known or suspected to be caused by *N. gonorrhoea* or *C. trachomatis* must be told to refer their sexual partners for evaluation and treatment (60).

11.6 Conclusions and recommendations for male accessory gland infections

Conclusions
Urethritis and prostatitis are not associated clearly with male infertility.
Antibiotic treatment often only eradicates micro-organisms; it has no positive effect on inflammatory alterations, and cannot reverse functional deficits and anatomical dysfunction.

Recommendations	**GR**
In most cases, the aetiology of acute urethritis is unknown at the time of diagnosis; empirical therapy is therefore suggested using a single dose of a fluoroquinolone, followed by a 2-week regimen of doxycycline. Treatment is effective both for gonococcal and (co-existing) chlamydial/ureaplasmal infections (9).	B
Antibiotic therapy of (chronic) bacterial prostatitis has been shown to provide symptomatic relief, eradication of micro-organisms, and a decrease in cellular and humoral inflammatory parameters in urogenital secretions (61-64).	B
Although antibiotic procedures for MAGI might provide improvement in sperm quality, therapy does not necessarily enhance the probability of conception (1,43).	B
Patients with epididymitis that is known or suspected to be caused by *N.* gonorrhoea or *C. trachomatis* must be instructed to refer their sexual partners for evaluation and treatment (60).	B

11.7 References

1. Weidner W, Krause W, Ludwig M. Relevance of male accessory gland infection for subsequent fertility with special focus on prostatitis. Hum Reprod Update 1999 Sep-Oct;5(5):421-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10582781

2. World Health Organization. *WHO Manual for the Standardized Investigation, Diagnosis and Management of the Infertile Male*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000.
3. Purvis K, Christiansen E. Infection in the male reproductive tract. Impact, diagnosis and treatment in relation to male infertility. Int J Androl 1993 Feb;16(1):1-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8468091
4. Schiefer HG. Microbiology of male urethroadnexitis: diagnostic procedures and criteria for aetiologic classification. Andrologia 1998;30(Suppl 1):7-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9629437
5. Chambers RM. The mechanism of infection in the urethra, prostate and epididymis. In: Keith LG, Berger GS, Edelmann DA (eds). *Infections in Reproductive Health: Common Infections*. Lancaster: MTP Press, pp. 283-96.
6. Ness RB, Markovic N, Carlson CL, et al. Do men become infertile after having sexually transmitted urethritis? An epidemiologic examination. Fertil Steril 1997 Aug;68(2):205-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240243
7. Trum JW, Mol BW, Pannekoek Y, et al. Value of detecting leukocytospermia in the diagnosis of genital tract infection in subfertile men. Fertil Steril 1998 Aug;70(2):315-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9696227
8. Purvis K, Christiansen E. The impact of infection on sperm quality. J Br Fertil Soc 1995;1:31-41.
9. Krieger JN. New sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines. J Urol 1995 Jul;154(1):209-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7776428
10 Wagenlehner FM, Diemer T, Naber KG, et al. Chronic bacterial prostatitis (NIH type II): diagnosis, therapy and influence on the fertility status. Andrologia 2008 Apr;40(2):100-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18336459
11. Naber KG, Weidner W. Chronic prostatitis-an infectious disease? J Antimicrob Chemother 2000 Aug;46(2):157-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10933636
12. Weidner W, Schiefer HG, Krauss H, et al. Chronic prostatitis: a thorough search for etiologically involved microorganisms in 1,461 patients. Infection 1991;19 Suppl 3:S119-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2055646
13. Bruce AW, Reid G. Prostatitis associated with Chlamydia trachomatis in 6 patients. J Urol 1989 Oct;142(4):1006-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2677408
14. Taylor-Robinson D. Evaluation and comparison of tests to diagnose Chlamydia trachomatis genital infections. Hum Reprod 1997 Nov;12(11 Suppl):113-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9433967
15. Taylor-Robinson D. Infections due to species of Mycoplasma and Ureaplasma: an update. Clin Infect Dis 1996 Oct;23(4):671-684; quiz 683-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8909826
16. Krieger JN, Riley DE, Roberts MC, et al. Prokaryotic DNA sequences in patients with chronic idiopathic prostatitis. J Clin Microbiol 1996 Dec;34(12):3120-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8940458
17. Litwin MS, McNaughton-Collins M, Fowler FJ Jr, et al. The National Institutes of Health chronic prostatitis symptom index: development and validation of a new outcome measure. Chronic Prostatitis Collaboration Research Network. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):369-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411041
18. Ludwig M, Schroeder-Printzen I, Ludecke G, et al. Comparison of expressed prostatic secretions with urine after prostatic massage-a means to diagnose chronic prostatitis/inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology 2000 Feb;55(2):175-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688073
19. Liversedge NH, Jenkins JM, Keay SD, et al. Antibiotic treatment based on seminal cultures from asymptomatic male partners in in-vitro fertilization is unnecessary and may be detrimental. Hum Reprod 1996 Jun;11(6):1227-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8671429
20. Weidner W, Krause W, Schiefer HG, et al. Ureaplasmal infections of the male urogenital tract, in particular prostatitis, and semen quality. Urol Int 1985;40(1):5-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3883615
21. Aitken RJ, Baker HW. Seminal leukocytes: passengers, terrorists or good samaritans? Hum Reprod 1995 Jul;10(7):1736-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8582971

22. Tomlinson MJ, Barratt CLR, Cooke ID. Prospective study of leukocytes and leukocyte subpopulations in semen suggests they are not a cause of male infertility. Fertil Steril 1993 Dec;60(6):1069-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8243688
23. Krieger JN, Berger RE, Ross SO, et al. Seminal fluid findings in men with nonbacterial prostatitis and prostatodynia. J Androl 1996 Dec;17(3):310-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8792222
24. Weidner W, Jantos C, Schiefer HG, et al. Semen parameters in men with and without proven chronic prostatitis. Arch Androl 1991 May-Jun;26(3):173-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1872650
25. Giamarellou H, Tympanidis K, Bitos NA, et al. Infertility and chronic prostatitis. Andrologia 1984 Sep-Oct;16(5):417-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6496959
26. Christiansen E, Tollefsrud A, Purvis K. Sperm quality in men with chronic abacterial prostatovesiculitis verified by rectal ultrasonography. Urology 1991 Dec;38(6):545-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1746084
27. Leib Z, Bartoov B, Eltes F, et al. Reduced semen quality caused by chronic abacterial prostatitis: an enigma or reality? Fertil Steril 1994 Jun;61(6):1109-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8194626
28. Wolff H, Bezold G, Zebhauser M, et al. Impact of clinically silent inflammation on male genital tract organs as reflected by biochemical markers in semen. J Androl 1991 Sep-Oct;12(5):331-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1765569
29. Wolff H. The biologic significance of white blood cells in semen. Fertil Steril 1995 Jun;63(6):1143-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7750580
30. Dousset B, Hussenet F, Daudin M, et al. Seminal cytokine concentrations (IL-1beta, IL-2, IL-6, sR IL-2, sR IL-6), semen parameters and blood hormonal status in male infertility. Hum Reprod 1997 Jul;12(7):1476-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9262280
31. Huleihel M, Lunenfeld E, Levy A, et al. Distinct expression levels of cytokines and soluble cytokine receptors in seminal plasma of fertile and infertile men. Fertil Steril 1996 Jul;66(1):135-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8752625
32. Shimonovitz S, Barak V, Zacut D, et al. High concentration of soluble interleukin-2 receptors in ejaculate with low sperm motility. Hum Reprod 1994 Apr;9(4):653-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8046017
33. Zalata A, Hafez T, van Hoecke MJ, et al. Evaluation of beta-endorphin and interleukin-6 in seminal plasma of patients with certain andrological diseases. Hum Reprod 1995 Dec;10(12):3161-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8822435
34. Alexander RB, Ponniah S, Hasday J, et al. Elevated levels of proinflammatory cytokines in the semen of patients with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology 1998 Nov;52(5):744-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9801092
35. Comhaire F, Verschraegen G, Vermeulen L. Diagnosis of accessory gland infection and its possible role in male infertility. Int J Androl 1980 Feb;3(1):32-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7409893
36. Jarow JP, Kirkland JA Jr, Assimos DG. Association of antisperm antibodies with chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. Urology 1990 Aug;36(2):154-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2385884
37. Witkin SS, Zelikovsky G. Immunosuppression and sperm antibody formation in men with prostatitis. J Clin Lab Immunol 1986 Sep;21(1):7-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3543373
38. Munoz MG, Witkin SS. Autoimmunity to spermatozoa, asymptomatic Chlamydia trachomatis genital tract infection and gamma delta T lymphocytes in seminal fluid from the male partners of couples with unexplained infertility. Hum Reprod 1995 May;10(5):1070-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7657743
39. Jarow JP, Sanzone JJ. Risk factors for male partner antisperm antibodies. J Urol 1992 Dec;148(6):1805-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433613
40. Depuydt CE, Bosmans E, Zalata A, et al. The relation between reactive oxygen species and cytokines in andrological patients with or without male accessory gland infection. J Androl 1996 Nov-Dec;17(6): 699-707. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9016401

41. Schaeffer AJ. Clinical practice. Chronic prostatitis and chronic pelvic pain syndrome. N Engl J Med 2006 Oct 19;355(16):1690-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17050893
42. Weidner W, Ludwig M, Miller J. Therapy in male accessory gland infection-what is fact, what is fiction? Andrologia 1998;30(Suppl 1):87-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9629448
43. Comhaire FH, Rowe PJ, Farley TM. The effect of doxycycline in infertile couples with male accessory gland infection: a double blind prospective study. Int J Androl 1986 Apr;9(2):91-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3539821
44. Purvis K, Christiansen E. Infection in the male reproductive tract. Impact, diagnosis and treatment in relation to male infertility. Int J Androl 1993 Feb;16(1):1-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8468091
45. Diemer T, Desjardins C. Disorders of Spermatogenesis. In: Knobil E, Neill JD (eds). *Encyclopedia of Reproduction*. Vol 4. San Diego: Academic Press, 1999, pp. 546-56.
46. [No authors listed.] Association of Genitourinary Medicine and the Medical Society for the Study of Venereal Diseases: National guideline for the management of epididymo-orchitis. Sex Transm Infect 1999 Aug;75(Suppl 1):S51-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10616385
47. Weidner W, Garbe C, Weissbach L, et al. [Initial therapy of acute unilateral epididymitis using ofloxacin. II. Andrological findings.] Urologe A 1990 Sep;29(5):277-280. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2120839
48. Weidner W, Krause W. Orchitis. In: Knobil E, Neill JD (eds). *Encyclopedia of Reproduction*. Vol. 3. San Diego: Academic Press, 1999, pp. 92-5.
49. Vicari E, Mongioi A. Effectiveness of long-acting gonadotrophin-releasing hormone agonist treatment in combination with conventional therapy on testicular outcome in human orchitis/epididymo-orchitis. Hum Reprod 1995 Aug;10(8):2072-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8567844
50. Ruther U, Stilz S, Rohl E, et al. Successful interferon-alpha 2, a therapy for a patient with acute mumps orchitis. Eur Urol 1995;27(2):174-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7744163
51. Berger RE, Alexander RE, Harnisch JP, et al. Etiology, manifestations and therapy of acute epididymitis: prospective study of 50 cases. J Urol 1979 Jun;121(6):750-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/379366
52. Berger RE. Epididymitis. In: Holmes KK, Mardh PA, Sparling PF et al. (eds). *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1984, pp. 650-62.
53. Weidner W, Schiefer HG, Garbe C. Acute nongonococcal epididymitis. Aetiological and therapeutic aspects. Drugs 1987;34(Suppl 1):111-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3481311
54. Nilsson S, Obrant KO, Persson PS. Changes in the testis parenchyma caused by acute non-specific epididymitis. Fertil Steril 1968 Sep-Oct;19(5):748-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5676481
55. Osegbe DN. Testicular function after unilateral bacterial epididymo-orchitis. Eur Urol 1991;19(3):204-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1855525
56. Weidner W, Krause W, Ludwig M. Relevance of male accessory gland infection for subsequent fertility with special focus on prostatitis. Hum Reprod Update 1999 Sep-Oct;5(5):421-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10582781
57. Ludwig G, Haselberger J. [Epididymitis and fertility. Treatment results in acute unspecific epididymitis.] Fortschr Med 1977 Feb;95(7):397-9. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/849851
58. Haidl G. Macrophages in semen are indicative of chronic epididymal infection. Arch Androl 1990;25(1):5-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2389992
59. Cooper TG, Weidner W, Nieschlag E. The influence of inflammation of the human genital tract on secretion of the seminal markers alpha-glucosidase, glycerophosphocholine, carnitine, fructose and citric acid. Int J Androl 1990 Oct;13(5):329-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2283178
60. Robinson AJ, Grant JB, Spencer RC, et al. Acute epididymitis: why patient and consort must be investigated. Br J Urol 1990 Dec;66(6):642-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2265337

61. Schneede P, Tenke P, Hofstetter AG. Urinary Tract Infection Working Group of the Health Care Office of the European Association of Urology. Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)-a synoptic overview for urologists. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814668
62. Schaeffer AJ, Weidner W, Barbalias GA, et al. Summary consensus statement: diagnosis and management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Eur Urol 2003;(Suppl 2):1-4.
63. Alexander RB, Propert KJ, Schaeffer AJ, et al; Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. Ciprofloxacin or tamsulosin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind trial. Ann Intern Med 2004 Oct;141(8):581-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15492337
64. Nickel JC, Narayan P, McKay J, et al. Treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome with tamsulosin: a randomized double blind trial. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1594-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017228

12. GERM CELL MALIGNANCY AND TESTICULAR MICROCALCIFICATION

12.1 Germ cell malignancy and male infertility

Testicular germ cell tumour (TGCT) is the most common malignancy in Caucasian men aged 15-40 years and affects approximately 1% of subfertile men. The lifetime risk of TGCT varies between ethnic groups and countries. The highest annual incidence of TGCT occurs in Caucasians, and varies from 10/100,000 (e.g. in Denmark and Norway) to 2/100,000 (e.g. in Finland and the Baltic countries). Generally, seminomas and non-seminomas are always preceded by CIS, and untreated germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type ([ITGCNU] former CIS) will eventually progress to invasive cancer (1,2).

The most convincing evidence for a general decline in male reproductive health is the increase in testicular cancer seen in Western countries (3). In almost all countries with reliable cancer registers, the incidence of testicular cancer has increased (4). Cryptorchidism and hypospadias are associated with an increased risk of testicular cancer; men with cryptorchidism and/or hypospadias are over-represented among patients with testicular cancer.

Men with dysgenic testes have an increased risk of developing testicular cancer in adulthood. These cancers arise from premalignant gonocytes or CIS cells (5). Testicular microlithiasis, seen on ultrasound, can be associated with germ cell tumours and CIS of the testis.

12.2 Testicular germ cell cancer and reproductive function

Men with TGCT have decreased semen quality, even before cancer is diagnosed (6). Orchidectomy implies a risk of azoospermia in these men, with sperm found in the ejaculate before the tumour-bearing testis has been removed. Semen cryopreservation before orchidectomy should therefore be considered (*see* Chapter 14: Semen cryopreservation). Treatment of TGCT can result in additional impairment of semen quality (7).

In addition to spermatogenic failure, patients with TGCT have Leydig cell dysfunction, even in the contralateral testis (8). The risk of hypogonadism may therefore be increased in men treated for TGCT. The measurement of pretreatment levels of testosterone, SHBG, LH and oestradiol might help to anticipate post-treatment hypogonadism. Men who have had TGCT and have low normal androgen levels should receive long-term follow-up because they are at risk of developing hypogonadism as a result of an age-related decrease in testosterone production (9).

The risk of hypogonadism is most pronounced in TGCT patients treated with $\geq$ 3 cycles of chemotherapy and in patients who have received irradiation of retroperitoneal lymph nodes. However, this risk is greatest at 6-12 months post-treatment. This suggests there may be some improvement in Leydig cell function, and why it is reasonable to expect initiation of androgen replacement, until the patient shows continuous signs of testosterone deficiency, even at 2 years' follow-up (10). Even the risk of low libido and erectile dysfunction is increased in TGCT patients (11).

12.3 Testicular microlithiasis

Microcalcification inside the testicular parenchyma can be found in 0.6-9% of men referred for testicular ultrasound (12-14). Although the true incidence of microcalcification in the general population is unknown, it is probably rare. However, ultrasound findings of testicular microlithiasis (TM) are common in men with TGCT, cryptorchidism, testicular dysgenesis, infertility, testicular torsion and atrophy, Klinefelter's syndrome,

hypogonadism, male pseudohermaphroditism, varicocele, epididymal cysts, pulmonary microlithiasis and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. The incidence reported seems to be higher with high-frequency ultrasound machines (16).

The relationship between TM and infertility is unclear, but probably relates to dysgenesis of the testes, with degenerate cells being sloughed inside an obstructed seminiferous tubule and failure of the Sertoli cells to phagocytose the debris. Subsequently, calcification occurs.

Testicular microlithiasis is found in testes at risk of malignant development. The reported incidence of TM in men with TGCT is 6-46% (17-19), and TM should therefore be considered premalignant. Testicular biopsies from men with TM have found a higher prevalence of CIS, especially in those with bilateral microlithiasis (20). However, TM is found most often in men with a benign testicular condition and the microcalcification itself is not malignant.

Further investigation of the association between TM and CIS will require testicular biopsies in large series of men without signs of a TGCT. However, available data indicate that men in whom TM is found by ultrasound, and who have an increased risk of TGCT, should be offered testicular biopsy for detection of CIS. The list of high-risk patients includes men with infertility and bilateral TM, atrophic testes, undescended testes and those with a history of TGCT, and contralateral TM (21).

12.4 Recommendations for germ cell malignancy and testicular microcalcification

Recommendations	GR
It is important to encourage and educate patients with TM about self-examination, as this might result in early detection of TGCT.	B
Testicular biopsy should be offered to men with TM, who belong to one of the following high-risk groups: infertility and bilateral TM, atrophic testes, undescended testes, and men with a history of TGCT and contralateral TM (21).	B
If there are suspicious findings on physical examination or ultrasound in patients with TM and associated lesions, surgical exploration with testicular biopsy or orchidectomy should be considered.	B
Testicular biopsy, follow-up scrotal ultrasound, routine use of biochemical tumour markers, or abdominal or pelvic computed tomography is not justified for men with isolated TM without associated risk factors (e.g. infertility, cryptorchidism, testicular cancer, atrophic testis) (15).	B
Men with TGCT are at increased risk of developing hypogonadism and sexual dysfunction and should therefore be followed up (10,11).	B

TGCT = testicular germ cell tumour; TM = testicular microlithiasis

12.5 References

1. Skakkebaek NE. Carcinoma in situ of the testis: frequency and relationship to invasive germ cell tumours in infertile men. Histopathology 1978 May;2(3):157-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27442
2. von der Maase H, Rørth M, Walbom-Jørgensen S, et al. Carcinoma in situ of contralateral testis in patients with testicular germ cell cancer: study of 27 cases in 500 patients. Br Med J 1986 Nov;293(6559):1398-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3026550
3. Jacobsen R, Bostofte E, Engholm G, et al. Risk of testicular cancer in men with abnormal semen characteristics: cohort study. BMJ 2000 Sep;321(7264):789-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11009515
4. Huyghe E, Matsuda T, Thonneau P. Increasing incidence of testicular cancer worldwide: a review. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):5-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796635
5. Giwercman A, Muller J, Skakkebaek NE. Carcinoma in situ of the undescended testis. Semin Urol 1988 May;6(2):110-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2903524
6. Petersen PM, Skakkebaek NE, Vistisen K, et al. Semen quality and reproductive hormones before orchiectomy in men with testicular cancer. J Clin Oncol 1999 Mar;17(3):941-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10071288
7. Eberhard J, Stahl O, Giwercman Y, et al. Impact of therapy and androgen receptor polymorphism on sperm concentration in men treated for testicular germ cell cancer: a longitudinal study. Hum Reprod 2004 Jun;19(6):1418-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15105386

8. Willemse PH, Sleijfer DT, Sluiter WJ, et al. Altered Leydig cell function in patients with testicular cancer: evidence for bilateral testicular defect. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 1983 Apr;102(4):616-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6133401
9. Nord C, Bjoro T, Ellingsen D, et al. Gonadal hormones in long-term survivors 10 years after treatment for unilateral testicular cancer. Eur Urol 2003 Sep;44(3):322-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12932930
10. Eberhard J, Ståhl O, Cwikiel M, et al. Risk factors for post-treatment hypogonadism in testicular cancer patients. Eur J Endocrinol 2008 Apr;158(4):561-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362304
11. Eberhard J, Ståhl O, Cohn-Cedermark G, et al. Sexual function in men treated for testicular cancer. J Sex Med 2009 Jul;6(7):1979-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19453896
12. Parra BL, Venable DD, Gonzalez E, et al. Testicular microlithiasis as a predictor of intratubular germ cell neoplasia. Urology 1996 Nov;48(5):797-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911532
13. Peterson AC, Bauman JM, Light DE, et al. The prevalence of testicular microlithiasis in an asymptomatic population of men 18 to 35 years old. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2061-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696707
14. von Eckardstein S, Tsakmakidis G, Kamischke A, et al. Sonographic testicular microlithiasis as an indicator of premalignant conditions in normal and infertile men. J Androl 2001 Sep-Oct;22(5):818-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11545295
15. Thomas K, Wood SJ, Thompson AJ, et al. The incidence and significance of testicular microlithiasis in a subfertile population. Br J Radiol 2000 May;73(869):494-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10884745
16. Pierik FH, Dohle GR, van Muiswinkel JM, et al. Is routine scrotal ultrasound advantageous in infertile men? J Urol 1999 Nov;162(5):1618-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524881
17. Derogee M, Bevers RF, Prins HJ, et al. Testicular microlithiasis, a premalignant condition: prevalence, histopathologic findings, and relation to testicular tumor. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6):1133-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11377326
18. Miller FN, Sidhu PS. Does testicular microlithiasis matter? A review. Clin Radiol 2002 Oct;57(10): 883-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12413911
19. Giwercman A, Muller J, Skakkebaek NE. Prevalence of carcinoma in situ and other histopathological abnormalities in testes from 399 men who died suddenly and unexpectedly. J Urol 1991 Jan;145(1):77-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1984105
20. de Gouveia Brazao CA, Pierik FH, Oosterhuis JW, et al. Bilateral testicular microlithiasis predicts the presence of the precursor of testicular germ cell tumors in subfertile men. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1): 158-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665866
21. van Casteren NJ, Looijenga LH, Dohle GR. Testicular microlithiasis and carcinoma in situ overview and proposed clinical guideline. Int J Androl 2009 Aug;32(4):279-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19207616

13. DISORDERS OF EJACULATION

13.1 Definition

Disorders of ejaculation are uncommon, but important, causes of male infertility. This group includes several heterogeneous dysfunctions, which can be either organic or functional.

13.2 Classification and aetiology

*13.2.1 **Anejaculation***

Anejaculation involves complete absence of antegrade or retrograde ejaculation and is caused by failure of emission of semen from the seminal vesicles, the prostate and the ejaculatory ducts into the urethra (1). True anejaculation is usually associated with a normal orgasmic sensation. Occasionally (e.g. in incomplete spinal cord injuries), this sensation is altered or decreased. True anejaculation is always associated with central or

peripheral nervous system dysfunction or with drugs (2) (Table 15).

Table 15: Aetiology of anejaculation

Neurogenic	**Drug-related**
Spinal cord injury	Antihypertensives
Cauda equina lesion	Antipsychotics
Retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy	Antidepressants
Aortoiliac or horseshoe-kidney surgery	Alcohol
Colorectal surgery	
Multiple sclerosis	
Parkinson's disease	
Autonomic neuropathy (diabetes mellitus)	

13.2.2 ***Anorgasmia***

Anorgasmia is the inability to reach orgasm and can give rise to anejaculation. Anorgasmia is often a primary condition and its cause is usually psychological. Some patients report sporadic events of nocturnal emission or of ejaculation occurring during great emotional excitement unrelated to sexual activity (3).

13.2.3 ***Delayed ejaculation***

In delayed ejaculation, abnormal stimulation of the erect penis is needed to achieve orgasm with ejaculation (1). Delayed ejaculation can be considered a mild form of anorgasmia, and both conditions can be found alternately in the same patient. The causes of delayed ejaculation can be psychological or organic, e.g. incomplete spinal cord lesion (3), iatrogenic penile nerve damage (4), or pharmacological, e.g. antidepressants, antihypertensives, antipsychotics (5).

13.2.4 ***Retrograde ejaculation***

Retrograde ejaculation is the total, or sometimes partial, absence of antegrade ejaculation as a result of semen passing backwards through the bladder neck into the bladder. Patients experience a normal or decreased orgasmic sensation, except in paraplegia. Partial antegrade ejaculation must not be confused with the secretion of bulbo-urethral glands. The causes of retrograde ejaculation can be divided into neurogenic, pharmacological, urethral, or bladder neck incompetence (Table 16).

Table 16: Aetiology of retrograde ejaculation

Neurogenic	**Pharmacological**
Spinal cord injury	Antihypertensives
Cauda equina lesions	α1-adrenoceptor antagonists
Multiple sclerosis	Antipsychotics
Autonomic neuropathy (juvenile diabetes)	Antidepressants
Retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy	**Bladder neck incompetence**
Sympathectomy	Congenital defects/dysfunction of hemitrigone
Colorectal and anal surgery	Bladder extrophy
Urethral	Bladder neck resection
Ectopic ureterocele	Prostatectomy
Urethral stricture	
Urethral valves or verumontaneum hyperplasia	
Congenital dopamine β-hydroxylase deficiency	

13.2.5 ***Asthenic ejaculation***

Asthenic ejaculation, also defined as partial ejaculatory incompetence or 'ejaculation baveuse' (5), is characterised by an altered propulsive phase, with a normal emission phase. The orgasmic sensation is reduced and the typically rhythmical contractions associated with ejaculation are missing, whereas in asthenic

ejaculation caused by urethral obstruction, these contractions are present. Asthenic ejaculation generally is caused by the neurogenic or urethral pathologies already listed in Table 16. Asthenic ejaculation does not usually affect semen quality.

13.2.6 ***Premature ejaculation***

Premature ejaculation is the inability to control ejaculation for a sufficient length of time during vaginal penetration. Although a universally accepted definition of sufficient length of time does not exist, some patients are unable to delay ejaculation beyond a few coital thrusts, or even after vaginal penetration. Premature ejaculation may be strictly organic (e.g. prostatitis-related) or psychogenic, primary or acquired, partner-related or non-selective, and can be associated with erectile dysfunction. Premature ejaculation does not impair fertility, provided intravaginal ejaculation occurs. For more extensive discussion on this topic, the EAU Male Sexual Dysfunction guidelines should be consulted.

13.2.7 ***Painful ejaculation***

Painful ejaculation is usually an acquired condition that is often related to lower urinary tract symptoms (6). It sometimes causes moderate sexual dysfunction. The painful sensation might be felt in the perineum, or urethra and urethral meatus (7). It can be caused by ejaculatory duct obstruction, all types of chronic prostatitis/CPPS, urethritis, urethrocele, antidepressant drugs, and psychological problems.

13.3 Diagnosis

Diagnostic management includes the following recommended procedures.

13.3.1 ***Clinical history***

The patient must be carefully checked for diabetes, neuropathy, trauma, urogenital infection, previous surgery, and medication. Particular attention must be paid to the characteristics of micturition and ejaculation (presence of nocturnal emission, ejaculatory ability in given circumstances, primary or acquired disorder), as well as to psychosexual aspects (education, features of affective relationship, pre-existent psychological trauma, previous psychological therapy).

13.3.2 ***Physical examination***

Genital and rectal examinations are conducted, including evaluation of the prostate, bulbo-cavernosus reflex and anal sphincter tone. Minimal neurological tests include:

- sensitivity of scrotum, testes, and perineum
- cremasteric and abdominal cutaneous reflex
- leg osteotendinous and plantar reflexes.

13.3.3 ***Post-ejaculatory urinalysis***

Post-ejaculatory urinalysis can be used to determine if there is total or partial retrograde ejaculation.

13.3.4 ***Microbiological examination***

Initial, mid-stream urine, EPS and/or urine after prostatic massage are cultured for evidence of prostatic infection. In cases of increased leukocytes in semen, semen culture is also suggested (8).

13.3.5 Optional diagnostic work-up

This diagnostic workup can include:

- neurophysiological tests (bulbocavernosus evoked response and dorsal nerve somatosensory evoked potentials);
- tests for autonomic neuropathy;
- psychosexual evaluation;
- video-cystometry;
- cystoscopy;
- transrectal ultrasonography;
- uroflowmetry;
- vibratory stimulation of the penis.

13.4 Treatment

Infertility caused by disorders of ejaculation is seldom treated on the basis of aetiology. Treatment usually involves retrieving spermatozoa for use in assisted reproduction techniques (ARTs). The following aspects must be considered when selecting treatment:

- age of patient and his partner;

- psychological problems of the patient and his partner;
- couple's willingness and acceptance of different fertility procedures;
- associated pathology;
- psychosexual counselling.

13.5 Aetiological treatment

If possible, any pharmacological treatment that is interfering with ejaculation should be stopped. In painful ejaculations, tamsulosin can be administered during antidepressant treatment (9). Treatment should be given for urogenital infections (i.e. in cases of painful ejaculation) (8). Dapoxetin, a selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitor (SSRI) has been introduced for the therapy of premature ejaculation (PE) (10), since it appears that PE is related to serotonin levels. If possible, any underlying urethral pathology or metabolic disorder (e.g. diabetes) should be corrected. Psychotherapy is usually not very effective.

13.6 Symptomatic treatment

13.6.1 ***Premature ejaculation (PE)***

Premature ejaculation can be treated with the selective SSRI dapoxetine, topical anaesthetic agents to increase intravaginal ejaculation latency time, behavioural therapy and/or psychotherapy. Off-label use of SSRIs (e.g. paroxetine, fluoxetine) should be applied with caution.

13.6.2 ***Retrograde ejaculation***

In the absence of spinal cord injury, anatomical anomalies of the urethra, or pharmacological agents, drug treatment must be used to induce antegrade ejaculation (Table 17). Alternatively, the patient can be encouraged to ejaculate when his bladder is full to increase bladder neck closure (11).

Table 17: Drug therapy for retrograde ejaculation

Drug	Dosage regimen	Ref.
Ephedrine sulphate	10-15 mg four times daily	12
Midodrin	5 mg three times daily	13
Brompheniramine maleate	8 mg twice daily	14
Imipramine	25-75 mg three times daily	15
Desipramine	50 mg every second day	16

Sperm collection from post-orgasmic urine for use in ART is recommended if:

- drug treatment is ineffective or intolerable as a result of side effects;
- the patient has a spinal cord injury;
- drug therapy inducing retrograde ejaculation cannot be interrupted.;

Sperm retrieval is timed to coincide with the partner's ovulation. Urine must be alkalinised (pH 7.2-7.8) and osmolarity must be 200-300 mOsmol/kg. The patient is asked to have intercourse or to masturbate. Within 10 minutes after ejaculation, urine must be voided and centrifuged, and the pellet resuspended in 0.5 mL Tyrode's or Ham's F-10 medium, and immediately inseminated (17). Alternatively, a catheter can be applied to the bladder and 10-50 mL Tyrode's or Ham's F-10 medium instilled into the bladder. The patient must ejaculate, and a second catheterisation is carried out immediately to retrieve spermatozoa. The latter treatment minimises contact between spermatozoa and urine (18). If the biological sperm preparation is not of sufficient quality for intrauterine insemination, the couple must undergo *in vitro* reproductive procedures (i.e. ICSI) with fresh orcryopreserved spermatozoa.

13.6.3 ***Anejaculation***

Drug treatment for anejaculation caused by lymphadenectomy and neuropathy or psychosexual therapy in anorgasmic men is not very effective. In all these cases, and in men who have a spinal cord injury, vibrostimulation (i.e. the application of a vibrator to the penis) is first-line therapy.

In anejaculation, vibrostimulation evokes the ejaculation reflex (19), which requires an intact lumbosacral spinal cord segment. Complete spinal injuries and injuries above T10 show a better response to vibrostimulation. Once the safety and efficacy of this procedure has been assessed, patients can manage the process in their own home. Intravaginal insemination using a 10-mL syringe during ovulation can be carried out. If the quality of semen is poor, or ejaculation is retrograde, the couple may enter an IVF programme.

If vibrostimulation has failed, electro-ejaculation is the therapy of choice (20). Electro-ejaculation

involves electric stimulation of the periprostatic nerves via a probe inserted into the rectum, which seems unaffected by reflex arc integrity. Anaesthesia is required except in cases of complete spinal cord injury. In 90% of patients, electrostimulation induces ejaculation, which is retrograde in one-third of cases. Semen quality is often poor and most couples will need to enter an IVF programme (21).

When electro-ejaculation fails or cannot be carried out, sperm can be retrieved from the seminal ducts by aspiration from the vas deferens (22) (*see* Chapter 5 Obstructive azoospermia) or seminal tract washout (23).

When sperm cannot be retrieved, epididymal obstruction or testicular failure must be suspected. TESE can then be used (8,24). Anejaculation following either surgery for testicular cancer or total mesorectal excision can be prevented using monolateral lymphadenectomy or autosomic nerve preservation (24), respectively.

13.7 Conclusion and recommendations for disorders of ejaculation

Conclusion
Ejaculation disorders can be treated using a wide range of drugs and physical stimulation, with a high level of efficacy.

Recommendations	**GR**
Aetiological treatments for ejaculatory disorders should be offered before sperm collection and ART is performed.	B
Premature ejaculation can be treated successfully with either topical anaesthetic creams or SSRIs (22).	A
In men with spinal cord injury, vibrostimulation and electro-ejaculation are effective methods of sperm retrieval.	B

13.8 References

1. Buvat J. Glossaire. [Disruptions in ejaculation] In: Buvat J, Jouannet P (eds). [*Ejaculation and its Disruptions*.] Lyon-Villeurbanne: SIMEP, 1984, p. 9. [Book in French]
2. Wang R, Monga M, Hellstrom WJG. Ejaculatory dysfunction. In: Comhaire FH (ed). *Male Infertility: Clinical Investigation. Cause, Evaluation and Treatment*. London: Chapman Hall, 1996, pp. 205-221.
3. Pryor JP. Erectile and ejaculatory problems in infertility. In: Hargreave TB (ed). *Male Infertility*. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1997, pp. 319-36.
4. Yachia D. Our experience with penile deformations: incidence, operative techniques, and results. J Androl 1994 Nov-Dec;15(Suppl):63S-68S. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7721682
5. Rudkin L, Taylor MJ, Hawton K. Strategies for managing sexual dysfunction induced by antidepressant medication. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004 Oct18;(4):CD003382. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15495050
6. Vallancien G, Emberton M, Harving N, et al; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1,274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2257-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771764
7. Hermabessiere J, Bouquet de la Joliniere J, Buvat J. [Painful ejaculation. Researching organic causes.] In: Buvat J, Jouannet P (eds). [*Ejaculation and its Disruptions*.] Lyon-Villeurbanne: SIMEP, 1984, pp. 129-134. [Book in French]
8. Abdel-Hamid IA, El Naggar EA, El Gilany AH. Assessment of as needed use of pharmacotherapy and the pause-squeeze technique in premature ejaculation. Int J Impot Res 2001 Feb;13(1):41-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11313839
9. Demyttenaere K, Huygens R. Painful ejaculation and urinary hesitancy in association with antidepressant therapy: relief with tamsulosin. Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 2002 Aug;12(4):337-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12126873
10. McMahon CG, Porst H. Oral agents for the treatment of premature ejaculation: review of efficacy and safety in the context of the recent international society for sexual medicine criteria for lifelong premature ejaculation. Sex Med 2011 Oct;8(10):2707-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21771283
11. Crich JP, Jequier AM. Infertility in men with retrograde ejaculation: the action of urine on sperm motility, and a simple method for achieving antegrade ejaculation. Fertil Steril 1978 Nov;30(5):572-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/720646

12. Gilja I, Parazajder J, Radej M, et al. Retrograde ejaculation and loss of emission: possibilities of conservative treatment. Eur Urol 1994;25(3):226-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8200405
13. Jonas D, Linzbach P, Weber W. The use of midodrin in the treatment of ejaculation disorders following retroperitoneal lymphadenectomy. Eur Urol 1979;5(3):184-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/87324
14. Schill WB. Pregnancy after brompheniramine treatment of a diabetic with incomplete emission failure. Arch Androl 1990;25(1):101-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2389987
15. Brooks ME, Berezin M, Braf Z. Treatment of retrograde ejaculation with imipramine. Urology 1980 Apr;15(4):353-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7190335
16. Hendry WF. Disorders of ejaculation: congenital, acquired and functional. Br J Urol 1998 Sep;82(3):331-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9772867
17. Schill WB. Diagnosis and treatment of ejaculatory sterility. In: Paulson JD, Nigro-Vilar A, Lucena E, Martini L (eds). *Andrology. Male Fertility and Sterility*. Orlando: Academic Press, 1986, pp. 599-617.
18. Hotchkiss RS, Pinto AB, Kleegman S. Artificial insemination with semen recovered from the bladder. Fertil Steril 1954 Jan-Feb;6(1):37-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13220644
19. Brindley GS. Reflex ejaculation under vibratory stimulation in paraplegic men. Paraplegia 1981;19(5):299-302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7279433
20. Elliott S, Rainsbury PA. Treatment of anejaculation. In: Colpi GM, Balerna M (eds). *Treating Male Infertility: New Possibilities*. Basel: Karger AG, 1994, pp. 240-54.
21. Denil J, Kuczyk MA, Schultheiss D, et al. Use of assisted reproductive techniques for treatment of ejaculatory disorders. Andrologia 1996;28(Suppl 1):43-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9082877
22. Waldinger MD. The neurobiological approach to premature ejaculation. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6): 2359-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441918
23. Jankowicz E, Drozdowski W, Pogumirski J. [Idiopathic autonomic neuropathy (pandysautonomia)]. Neurol Neurochir Pol 2001 Mar-Apr;35(3):439-52. [Article in Polish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11732267
24. Maurer CA, Z'Graggen K, Renzulli P, et al. Total mesorectal excision preserves male genital function compared with conventional rectal cancer surgery. Br J Surg 2001 Nov;88(11):1501-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11683749

14. SEMEN CRYOPRESERVATION

14.1 Definition

Cryopreservation is the storage of biological material at subzero temperatures [e.g. -80°C or -196°C (the boiling point of liquid nitrogen)], at which biochemical processes of cell metabolism are slowed or interrupted. At -196°C, the biochemical reactions that lead to cell death are stopped.

14.2 Introduction

Cryopreservation was first developed in the 1940s by veterinarians and adapted for human sperm in the 1950s. The first pregnancy that used cryopreservation took place in 1954 (1). In fertility practice, clinical indications for cryopreservation include storage of sperm, testicular and ovarian tissue and early embryos.

14.3 Indications for storage

Storage of sperm is available in many clinics for the following indications:

- Before potentially sterilising chemotherapy or radiotherapy for cancer (2) or for non-malignant diseases.
- Before surgery that might interfere with fertility (e.g. bladder neck surgery in a younger man or removal of a testical in a man with testicular malignancy, before vasectomy).
- For men with progressive decrease in semen quality as a result of diseases that have an associated

risk of subsequent azoospermia (i.e. pituitary macroadenoma, Craniopharyngioma, empty sella syndrome, chronic nephropathy, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, multiple sclerosis).

- For men with paraplegia when sperm have been obtained by electro-ejaculation or obtained by using penile vibratory stimulation.
- For men with psychogenic anejaculation, after sperm have been obtained either by electro-ejaculation or a sperm retrieval procedure.
- After gonadotrophin treatment has induced spermatogenesis in men with hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism.
- For men with NOA, the chance of finding sperm using micro-TESE is approximately 60-70%. Cryopreservation can be used to separate sperm collection from ICSI, thus avoiding unnecessary hyperstimulation of the female partner. It can also be used to avoid repeated sperm retrieval procedures.
- In any situation where sperm have been obtained by a sperm retrieval procedure (e.g. after failed vasectomy reversal, or in some cases of epididymal obstruction not amenable to surgery).
- For storage of donor sperm, because cryopreservation and a quarantine period of 3-6 months reduces the risk of transmission of infection from sperm donors; in most countries, fresh sperm are no longer used.

14.4 Precautions and techniques

14.4.1 ***Freezing and thawing process***

The cryopreservation techniques currently used are not yet optimal as damage occurs to cells during cryopreservation and prolonged storage. Most damage occurs during freezing and thawing. Major causes of damage during freezing are ice crystal formation and cell dehydration that disrupt the cell wall and intracellular organelles. Sperm morphology, motility and vitality decrease significantly after thawing, and cryopreservation increases the damage done to sperm DNA (3-6). Further damage can be caused by contamination of samples with micro-organisms and high levels of superoxide radicals (7,8). To reduce ice crystal formation, a cryopreservation solution is added before freezing. Various cryopreservation solutions are available commercially, most of which contain varying proportions of glycerol and albumen. After freezing, the tissues are immersed in liquid nitrogen.

Several techniques have been developed to try to reduce damage caused by freezing and thawing, including:

- Rapid method (9,10): sample is held in the vapour phase for 10 minutes before being plunged into liquid nitrogen.
- Slow method (11): sample is gradually cooled in the vapour phase for approximately 40 minutes.
- Programmable automatic freezing machine, which is preset to cool at a rate of 1-10°C/min, is used.

The method available depends on the resources of the laboratory. Whichever freezing technique is used, it should be tested using donor sperm and post-thaw examination, and should regularly undergo a quality-control programme.

The likelihood of sperm survival decreases with increased storage time and repeated freezing and thawing. The maximum viable storage time for human sperm is not known. Many laboratory or regulatory authorities apply a storage time limit of up to 10 years (12). However, longer storage times are sometimes needed (e.g. for a 17-year-old man who has had sperm stored before undergoing chemotherapy for testicular cancer).

14.4.2 ***Cryopreservation of very small numbers of sperm***

Standard cryopreservation in straws is an efficient way of storing large number of sperm (e.g. for a donor insemination programme). However, in micro-TESE, very few sperm might be obtained, and the choice is either to freeze testicular tissue and find sperm after thawing the tissue, or to freeze very small numbers of sperm. If sperm are frozen in straws, it can be very difficult to find any sperm after thawing. Instead, the sperm should be frozen in a pellet (13) or in a container (14).

14.4.3 ***Testing for infections and preventing cross-contamination***

Sperm storage in straws is used extensively. Large numbers of straws are stored in canisters, with the straws being bathed in a pool of liquid nitrogen. Microbial contamination of the pool of liquid nitrogen results in contamination of the outside of all the straws. The most widely used safeguard is to accept samples for storage only from patients whose semen samples have been tested for infection and confirmed as safe. Donor samples should be tested for viral (hepatitis B and C, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]) and sexually transmitted (*C. trachomatis*, gonorrhoea, syphilis) infections.

Until the test results are known, samples must be stored in an individual quarantine vessel (15)

(http://www.hfea.gov.uk/docs/8th_Code_of_Practice(2).pdf) [acces date December 2011]. Some laboratories use the additional safeguard of double-wrapping the straws before freezing, although this is more costly and can interfere with the freezing process, thus reducing sample quality upon thawing. Some centres carry out cytomegalovirus (CMV) testing and store CMV-negative and CMV-positive samples separately.

Considerable ethical issues surround the storage of samples before cancer chemotherapy for a man who is hepatitis-virus- or HIV-positive. Very few clinics have separate storage facilities for HIV-positive samples. However, the success of antiretroviral treatment is increasing the number of HIV-positive men who may wish to store sperm. There is also concern about HIV transmission to children conceived using HIV-positive sperm, as sperm-washing techniques fail in about 5%.

14.4.4 ***Fail-safe precautions to prevent loss of stored materials***

Any laboratory that undertakes long-term storage of human biological materials should have procedures that guard against accidental loss of material caused by storage vessel failure. This is particularly important for sperm stored before potentially sterilising cancer chemotherapy because these patients may not be able to obtain further sperm. The level of precaution depends on the cost and resources available to the laboratory, but if possible the following safeguards should be in place:

- All in-use storage vessels should be fitted with an alarm system that is activated by rising temperature or liquid nitrogen leakage.
- The alarm system should alert a laboratory staff member, according to a 24-h, 365-day rota.
- Ideally, there should be a spare storage container, in which samples can be transferred following a vessel failure.

14.4.5 ***Orphan samples***

In malignancy and some other situations, several years might pass before stored samples are required. Inevitably, during this time, the owners of some samples might disappear or die, leaving behind orphan samples for which the owner is no longer contactable. The duty of the laboratory and the legal ownership of these samples can create considerable problems.

It is best to obtain instructions from the owner of the sample at the time of, or very shortly after storage, about what to do with the sample in the event of death or untraceability. In some countries, owners are legally required to provide instructions/consent. Choices available for the owner of the sample depend on the laws of the country, might not be appropriate in all situations, and include:

- a request that the sample should be destroyed;
- use of the sample by their wife or partner;
- use of the sample in research;
- donation of the sample to help another infertile couple.

14.5 Biological aspects

Cryopreservation induces deterioration of the seminal quality. After the sample has been thawed, motility (16) and morphology (17,18) are worsened, including mitochondrial acrosomal and sperm tail damage (19). Sperm freezing decreases motility by 31% and mitochondrial activity by 36%, and causes morphological disruption in 37% of sperm (9). Motility is correlated best with IVF capacity of the thawed sample. Further improvement can be achieved by selecting the subpopulation of sperm with the best motility and DNA integrity and freezing these sperm in seminal plasma (13).

14.6 Conclusions and recommendations for semen cryopreservation

Conclusions
The purpose of sperm cryopreservation is to enable future ART procedures.
Cryopreservation techniques are not optimal, and future efforts are needed to improve the outcome of sperm banking.
Cryopreservation should be offered and explained in patients with specific diseases, or before a patient undergoes surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy that might damage his reproductive integrity.
If testicular biopsies are indicated, sperm cryopreservation is strongly advised.

Recommendations	GR
Cryopreservation of semen should be offered to all men who are candidates for chemotherapy, radiation or surgical interventions that might interfere with spermatogenesis or cause ejaculatory disorders.	B
If cryopreservation is not available locally, patients should be advised about the possibility of visiting, or transferring to, the nearest cryopreservation unit before therapy starts.	C
Consent for cryopreservation should include a record of the man's wishes for his samples if he dies or is otherwise untraceable.	C
Precautions should be taken to prevent transmission of viral, sexually transmitted or any other infection by cryostored materials from donor to recipient, and to prevent contamination of stored samples. These precautions include testing of the patient and the use of rapid testing and quarantine of samples until test results are known. Samples from men who are positive for hepatitis virus or HIV should not be stored in the same container as samples from men who have been tested and are free from infection.	C

14.7 References

1. Bunge RG, Keettel WC, Sherman JK. Clinical use of frozen semen; report of four cases. Fertil Steril 1954 Nov-Dec;5(6):520-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13210484
2. Saito K, Suzuki K, Iwasaki A, et al. Sperm cryopreservation before cancer chemotherapy helps in the emotional battle against cancer. Cancer 2005 Aug;104(3):521-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15968690
3. Desrosiers P, Légaré C, Leclerc P, et al. Membranous and structural damage that occur during cryopreservation of human sperm may be time-related events. Fertil Steril 2006 Jun;85(6):1744-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16643911
4. Donnelly ET, McClure N, Lewis SE. Cryopreservation of hu`man semen and prepared sperm: effects on motility parameters and DNA integrity. Fertil Steril 2001 Nov;76(5):892-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11704107
5. Chohan KR, Griffin JT, Carrell DT. Evaluation of chromatin integrity in human sperm using acridine orange staining with different fixatives and after cryopreservation. Andrologia 2004 Oct;36(5):321-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15458552
6. Askari HA, Check JH, Peymer N, et al. Effect of natural antioxidants tocopherol and ascorbic acids in maintenance of sperm activity during freeze-thaw process. Arch Androl 1994 Jul-Aug;33(1):11-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7979804
7. Smith KD, Steinberger E. Survival of spermatozoa in a human sperm bank. Effects of long-term storage in liquid nitrogen. J Am Med Assoc 1973 Feb;223(7):774-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4739258
8. Agarwal A, Said TM. Oxidative stress, DNA damage and apoptosis in male infertility: a clinical approach. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95(4):503-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705068
9. Grischenko VI, Dunaevskaya AV, Babenko VI. Cryopreservation of human sperm using rapid cooling rates. Cryo Letters 2003 Mar-Apr;24(2):67-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12819827
10. Sherman JK, Bunge RG. Observations on preservation of human spermatozoa at low temperatures. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1953 Apr;82(4):686-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13055973
11. Sawada Y, Ackerman D, Behrman SJ. Motility and respiration of human spermatozoa after cooling to various low temperatures. Fertil Steril 1967 Nov-Dec;18(6):775-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6073928
12. Henry MA, Noiles EE, Gao D, et al. Cryopreservation of human spermatozoa. IV. The effects of cooling rate and warming rate on the maintenance of motility, plasma membrane integrity, and mitochondrial function. Fertil Steril 1993 Nov;60(5):911-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8224279
13. Bahadur G, Ling KL, Hart R, et al. Semen quality and cryopreservation in adolescent cancer patients. Hum Reprod 2002 Dec;17(12):3157-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12456617

14. Hallak J, Hendin BN, Thomas AJ Jr, et al. Investigation of fertilizing capacity of cryopreserved spermatozoa from patients with cancer. J Urol 1998 Apr;159(4):1217-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9507838?dopt=AbstractPlus
15. Clarke GN. Sperm cryopreservation: is there a significant risk of cross-contamination? Hum Reprod 1999 Dec;14(12):2941-3. http://humrep.oxfordjournals.org/content/14/12/2941.long#sec-1
16. O'Connell M, McClure N, Lewis SE. The effects of cryopreservation on sperm morphology, motility and mitochondrial function. Hum Reprod 2002 Mar;17(3):704-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11870124
17. Woolley DM, Richardson DW. Ultrastructural injury to human spermatozoa after freezing and thawing. J Reprod Fertil 1978 Jul;53(2):389-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/567693
18. Watson PF. Recent developments and concepts in the cryopreservation of spermatozoa and the assessment of their post-thawing function. Reprod Fertil Dev 1995;7(4):871-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8711221
19. Donnelly ET, McClure N, Lewis SE. Cryopreservation of human semen and prepared sperm: effects on motility parameters and DNA integrity. Fertil Steril 2001 Nov;76(5):892-900. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11704107

15. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

ABP	acute bacterial prostatitis
ART	assisted reproduction techniques
CAIS	complete androgen insensitivity syndrome
CBAVD	congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens
CBP	chronic bacterial prostatitis
CF	cystic fibrosis
CFTR	cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator
CIS	carcinoma *in situ*
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CPPS	chronic pelvic pain syndrome
EAA	European Academy of Andrology
EPS	espressed prostatic excretion
FISH	(multicolour) fluorescent *in situ* hybridisation
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
GnRH	gonadotrophin-releasing hormone
GR	grade of recommendation
GREAT	G-protein-coupled receptor affecting testis descent
hCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
ICSI	intracytoplasmic sperm injection
IHH	idiopathic hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism
IL-6	interleukin-6
ITGCNU	intratubular germ cell neoplasia of unclassified type
IVF	in vitro fertilisation
LE	level of evidence
LH	luteinising hormone
MAGI	male accessory gland infection
MAR	mixed antiglobulin reaction
MESA	microsurgical epididymal sperm aspiration
NBP	non- or abacterial prostatitis
NIDDK	National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
NIH	National Institutes of Health
NOA	non-obstructive azoospermia
OA	obstructive azoospermia
OAT	oligo-astheno-teratozoospermia [syndrome]
PE	premature ejaculation
PGD	preimplantation genetic diagnosis
SHBG	sex hormone binding globulin
SSRIs	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
TDS	testicular dysgenesis syndrome
TEFNA	testicular fine-needle aspiration
TESE	testicular sperm extraction
TGCT	testicular germ cell tumour
TM	testicular microlithiasis
TRUS	transurethral ultrasound
TURED	transurethral resection of the ejaculatory ducts
UTI	urinary tract infection
WBC	white blood cell
VB1	first-voided urine
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest

All members of the Male Infertility guidelines writing panel have provided disclosure statements of all relationships they have that may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on
Male Hypogonadism

G.R. Dohle, S. Arver, C. Bettocchi,
S. Kliesch, M. Punab, W. de Ronde

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION AND DEFINITION

Definition: male hypogonadism is a clinical syndrome caused by androgen deficiency which may adversely affect multiple organ functions and quality of life (1).

Androgens play a crucial role in the development and maintenance of male reproductive and sexual functions. Low levels of circulating androgens can cause disturbances in male sexual development, resulting in congenital abnormalities of the male reproductive tract. Later in life, this may cause reduced fertility, sexual dysfunction, decreased muscle formation and bone mineralisation, disturbances of fat metabolism, and cognitive dysfunction. Testosterone levels decrease as a process of ageing: signs and symptoms caused by this decline can be considered a normal part of ageing. However, low testosterone levels are also associated with several chronic diseases, and symptomatic patients may benefit from testosterone treatment.

This document presents the European Association of Urology (EAU) guidelines on diagnosis and treatment of male hypogonadism. This guideline aims to provide practical recommendations on how to deal with primary low testosterone and ageing-related decline in testosterone in male patients, as well as the treatment of testosterone disruption and deficiencies caused by other illnesses.

1.1 Reference

1. Nieschlag E, Behre HM (eds). *Andrology: male reproductive health and dysfunction*. 3rd edn. Heidelberg: Springer, 2010.

2. METHODOLOGY

The EAU Male Hypogonadism panel consists of a multidisciplinary group of experts, including urologists specialising in the treatment of infertility, endocrinologists and andrologists. There is a need for ongoing re-evaluation of the information presented in the current guideline by an expert EAU panel. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts at the time of writing. However, following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when treatment decisions for individual patients are being taken. Guidelines help to focus decisions. Clinical decisions must also take into account patients' personal values and preferences and their individual circumstances.

2.1 Data identification

The recommendations provided in the current guidelines are based on a systematic literature search performed by the panel members. MedLine, Embase and Cochrane databases were searched to identify original articles and review articles. The controlled vocabulary of the Medical Subject Headings (MeSH) database was used alongside a 'free-text' protocol, combining 'male hypogonadism' with the terms 'diagnosis', 'epidemiology', 'investigations', 'treatment', 'testosterone', 'androgens' and 'hypogonadism'.

All articles published before January 2012 were considered for review. The expert panel reviewed these records and selected articles with the highest level of evidence in accordance with a rating schedule adapted from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine levels of evidence.

2.2 Levels of evidence and grades of recommendation

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1). Guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) in accordance with the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine levels of evidence (LE) (1). The aim of grading recommendations (GR) is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Levels of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials.
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial.
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation.
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study.

3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports.
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities.

** Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, there is not an automatic relationship between the level of evidence and the grade of recommendation. The availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation if there are methodological limitations or disparities in the published results. Conversely, an absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations in which corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons. In this case, unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. Whenever this occurs, it has been clearly indicated in the text with an asterisk as 'upgraded based on panel consensus'. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence is a very important factor, but it has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and costs when a grade is assigned (2-4).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. However, whenever such data are available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grades of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.

** Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

2.3 Publication history

The present male hypogonadism guidelines are a new publication that underwent a blinded peer-review process before publication. The standard procedure will be an annual assessment of newly published literature in this field, guiding future updates. An ultra-short reference document is being published alongside this publication. All documents are available with free access through the EAU website Uroweb (http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/).

2.4 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

3. EPIDEMIOLOGY

3.1 Introduction

Androgen deficiency increases with age; an annual decline in circulating testosterone of 0.4-2.0% has been reported (1,2). In middle-aged men, the incidence was found to be 6% (3). It is more prevalent in older men, in men with obesity, those with co-morbidities, and in men with a poor health status.

3.2 Role of testosterone for male reproductive health

Androgens, which are produced by the testis and the adrenal glands, play a pivotal role in male reproductive and sexual function. Androgens are also crucial for the development of male reproductive organs, such as the epididymis, vas deferens, seminal vesicle, prostate and penis. In addition, androgens are needed for puberty, male fertility, male sexual function, muscle formation, body composition, bone mineralisation, fat metabolism, and cognitive functions (4).

3.3 Physiology

Male sexual development starts between the 7th and 12th week of gestation. The undifferentiated gonads develop into a foetal testis through expression of the sex-determining region Y gene (SRY), a gene complex located on the short arm of the Y chromosome (5). The foetal testis produces two hormones: testosterone and anti-Müllerian hormone (AMH).

Testosterone is needed for the development of the Wolffian ducts, resulting in formation of the epididymis, vas deferens and seminal vesicle. AMH activity results in regression of the Müllerian ducts (Figure 1). Under the influence of intratesticular testosterone, the number of gonocytes per tubule increases threefold during the foetal period (6).

In addition, testosterone is needed for development of the prostate, penis and scrotum. However, in these organs testosterone is converted into the more potent metabolite dihydrotestosterone (DHT) by the enzyme 5α-reductase (7). The enzyme is absent in the testes, which explains why 5α-reductase inhibitors do not have a marked effect on spermatogenesis. Testosterone and DHT are required for penile growth, both activating the androgen receptor. The androgen receptor (AR) in the penis disappears after puberty, thus preventing further growth of the penis (8).

Intratesticular testosterone is needed to maintain the spermatogenic process and to inhibit germ cell apoptosis (9). The seminiferous tubules of the testes are exposed to concentrations of testosterone 25-100 times greater than circulating levels. Suppression of gonadotrophins (e.g. through excessive testosterone abuse) results in a reduced number of spermatozoa in the ejaculate and hypospermatogenesis (10). Complete inhibition of intratesticular testosterone results in full cessation of meiosis up to the level of spermatids (11,12). Testosterone does not appear to act directly on the germ cells, but functions through the Sertoli cells by expression of the AR and influencing the seminiferous tubular microenvironment (12).

Testosterone can also be metabolised into estradiol by aromatase, present in fatty tissue, the prostate and bone. Estradiol is essential for bone mineralisation, also in men (13).

The production of testosterone is controlled by luteinizing hormone (LH) from the pituitary gland. Immediately after birth, serum testosterone levels reach adult concentrations over several months. Thereafter and until puberty, testosterone levels are low, thus preventing male virilisation. Puberty starts with the production of gonadotrophins, initiated by GnRH secretion from the hypothalamus and resulting in testosterone production, male sexual characteristics and spermatogenesis (14). Figure 1 shows the development of the male reproductive system.

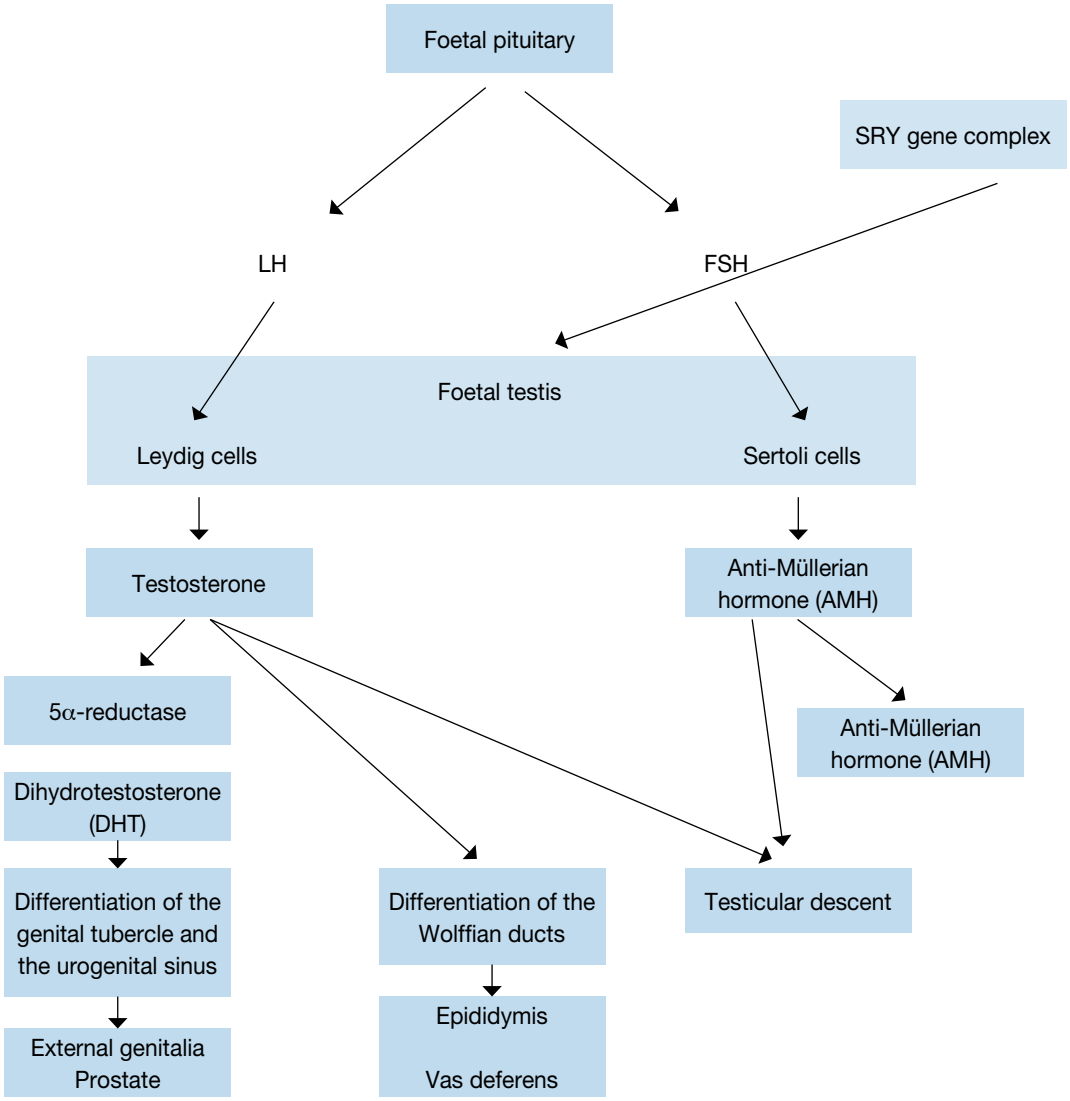
3.4 The androgen receptor

Testosterone exerts its action through the androgen receptor (AR), located in the cytoplasm and nucleus of target cells. During the foetal period, testosterone increases the number of androgen receptors by increasing the number of cells with the AR, but also by increasing the number of ARs in each individual cell (8,13).

The AR gene is located on the X chromosome (Xq 11-12): defects and mutations in the AR gene can result in male sexual maldevelopment, which may cause testicular feminisation or low virilisation. Less severe mutations in the AR gene may cause mild forms of androgen resistance and male infertility (15). In exon 1 of the gene, the transactivation domain consists of a trinucleotide tract (cytosine–adenine–guanine [CAG-repeats]) of variable length. Androgen sensitivity may be influenced by the length of the CAG repeats in exon 1 of the AR gene (15). The AR CAG repeat length is inversely correlated with serum total and bioavailable testosterone in ageing men. Shorter repeats have been associated with an increased risk for prostate disease, and longer repeats with reduced androgen action in several tissues (16). CAG repeat number may influence androgenic phenotypical effects, even in case of normal testosterone levels (17).

Conclusion
Testosterone is essential for normal male development.

Figure 1: Development of the male reproductive system



FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; LH = luteinizing hormone; SRY = sex region of the Y chromosome.

3.5 References

1. Kaufman JM, Vermeulen A. The decline of androgen levels in elderly men and its clinical and therapeutic implications. Endocr Rev 2005 Oct;26(6):833-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15901667
2. Wu FC, Tajar A, Pye SR, et al. Hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular axis disruptions in older men are differentially linked to age and modifiable risk factors: the European Male Aging Study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008 Jul;93(7):2737-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18270261
3. Hall SA, Esche GR, Araujo AB, et al. Correlates of low testosterone and symptomatic androgen deficiency in a population-based sample. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008 Oct;93(10):3870-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664536
4. Nieschlag E, Behre H, Nieschlag S. *Testosterone: action, deficiency, substitution*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004.
5. Parker KL, Schimmer BP, Schedl A. Genes essential for early events in gonadal development. Cell Mol Life Sci 1999 Jun;55(6-7):831-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10412366

6. Brinkmann AO. Molecular mechanisms of androgen action - a historical perspective. Methods Mol Biol 2011;776:3-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21796517
7. Rey RA, Grinspon RP. Normal male sexual differentiation and aetiology of disorders of sex development. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 2011 Apr;25(2):221-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21397195
8. Bentvelsen FM, McPhaul MJ, Wilson JD, et al. The androgen receptor of the urogenital tract of the fetal rat is regulated by androgen. Mol Cell Endocrinol 1994 Oct;105(1):21-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7821714
9. Singh J, O'Neill C, Handelsman DJ. Induction of spermatogenesis by androgens in gonadotropin-deficient (hpg) mice. Endocrinology 1995 Dec;136(12):5311-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7588276
10. Sun YT, Irby DC, Robertson DM, et al. The effects of exogenously administered testosterone on spermatogenesis in intact and hypophysectomized rats. Endocrinology 1989 Aug;125(2):1000-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2502373
11. Weinbauer GF, Nieschlag E. Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone analogue-induced manipulation of testicular function in the monkey. Hum Reprod 1993 Nov;8 Suppl 2:45-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8276968
12. McLachlan RI, O'Donnell L, Meachem SJ, et al. Hormonal regulation of spermatogenesis in primates and man: insights for development of the male hormonal contraceptive. J Androl 2002 Mar-Apr:23(2): 149-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11868805
13. de Ronde W, de Jong FH. Aromatase inhibitors in men: effects and therapeutic options. Reprod Biol Endocrinol 2011 Jun 21;9:93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21693046
14. Brinkmann AO. Molecular basis of androgen insensitivity. Mol Cell Endocrinol 2001 Jun;179(1-2): 105-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11420135
15. Zitzmann M. Mechanisms of disease: pharmacogenetics of testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2007 Mar;4(3):161-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17347661
16. Rajender S, Singh L, Thangaraj K. Phenotypic heterogeneity of mutations in androgen receptor gene. Asian J Androl 2007 Mar;9(2):147-79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17334586
17. Canale D, Caglieresi C, Moschini C, et al. Androgen receptor polymorphism (CAG repeats) and androgenicity. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2005;63(3):356-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16117826

4. AETIOLOGY (PRIMARY AND SECONDARY FORMS AND LATE-ONSET HYPOGONADISM)

4.1 Introduction

Hypogonadism results from testicular failure, or is due to the disruption of one or several levels of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis (Table 3).

Male hypogonadism can be classified in accordance with disturbances at the level of:

- the hypothalamus and pituitary (secondary hypogonadism);
- the testes (primary hypogonadism);
- the hypothalamus/pituitary and gonads (late-onset hypogonadism);
- androgen target organs (androgen insensitivity/resistance).

4.2 Male hypogonadism of hypothalamic-hypopituitary origin (secondary hypogonadism)

Central defects of the hypothalamus or pituitary cause secondary testicular failure. Identifying secondary hypogonadism is of clinical importance, as it can be a consequence of pituitary pathology (including prolactinomas) and can cause infertility, which can be restored by hormonal stimulation in most patients with secondary hypogonadism.

The most relevant forms of secondary hypogonadism are:

- *Hyperprolactinemia* (HP), caused by prolactin-secreting pituitary adenomas (prolactinomas) (microprolactinomas < 10 mm in diameter vs. macroprolactinomas) or drug-induced (by dopamine-antagonistic effects of substances such as phenothiazine, imipramine and metoclopramide); additional causes may be chronic renal failure or hypothyroidism.
- *Isolated hypogonadotropic hypogonadism* (IHH) (formerly termed idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, IHH).
- *Kallmann syndrome* (hypogonadotropic hypogonadism with anosmia, genetically determined, prevalence one in 10,000).

These disorders are characterised by disturbed hypothalamic secretion or action of GnRH, as a pathophysiology common to the diseases, resulting in impairment of pituitary LH and FSH secretion. An additional inborn error of migration and homing of GnRH-secreting neurons results in Kallmann syndrome (1,2).

The most important differential diagnosis is the constitutional delay of puberty, as the most common cause of delayed puberty (pubertas tarda) with a prevalence of one in 40 in males, caused by a delayed increase in pulsatile GnRH secretion with an autosomal-dominant pattern of inheritance (3). Other rare forms of secondary hypogonadism are listed in Table 3.

4.3 Male hypogonadism of gonadal origin (primary hypogonadism)

Primary testicular failure results in low testosterone levels, impairment of spermatogenesis and elevated gonadotrophins. The most important clinical forms of primary hypogonadism are Klinefelter syndrome (one in 500 males) and testicular tumours (12 per 100,000 males).

- *Klinefelter syndrome* affects 0.2% of the male population. It is the most frequent form of male hypogonadism and the most common numerical chromosomal aberration, with 47,XXY in 90% of cases (4). It arises due to non-disjunction during paternal or maternal meiotic division of germ cells (5).
- *Testicular tumours* are the most frequent type of cancer in young males during reproductive age. Risk factors are contralateral germ cell cancer, maldescended testes, gonadal dysgenesis, infertility and familial germ cell cancer. Twenty-five per cent of patients suffer from testosterone deficiency after treatment (6-8).

Other reasons for primary testicular failure are summarised in Table 4.

4.4 Male hypogonadism due to mixed dysfunction of hypothalamus/pituitary and gonads

Combined primary and secondary testicular failure results in low testosterone levels, impairment of spermatogenesis and variable gonadotrophin levels. Gonadotrophin levels depend on the predominant primary or secondary failure. This form was recently named late-onset hypogonadism (9,10).

4.5 Male hypogonadism due to defects of androgen target organs

These forms are primarily rare defects and will not be further discussed in detail in this guideline. There are androgen receptor defects with complete, partial and minimal androgen insensitivity syndrome; Reifenstein syndrome; bulbospinal muscular atrophy (Kennedy disease); as well as 5α-reductase deficiency (for a review, see Nieschlag et al. 2010) (11).

The classification of hypogonadism has therapeutic implications. In patients with secondary hypogonadism, hormonal stimulation with hCG and FSH or alternatively GnRH can restore fertility in most cases (12,13). However, fertility options for males with primary hypogonadism are limited. Detailed evaluation may for example detect pituitary tumours, systemic disease, or testicular tumours.

Combined forms of primary and secondary hypogonadism can be observed in older men, with a concomitant age-related decline in testosterone levels resulting from defects in testicular as well as hypothalamic-pituitary function. A significant percentage of men over the age of 60 years have serum testosterone levels below the lower reference limits in young adults (14-18).

Table 3: Forms of secondary hypogonadism

Disease	Causes for deficiency
Hyperprolactinemia	Prolactin-secreting pituitary adenomas (prolactinomas) or drug-induced.
Isolated hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (IHH) (formerly termed idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, IHH)	GnRH deficiency.
Kallmann syndrome (hypogonadotropic hypogonadism with anosmia (prevalence 1 in 10,000)	GnRH deficiency and anosmia, genetically determined.
Secondary GnRH deficiency	Medication, drugs, toxins, systemic diseases.
Hypopituitarism	Radiotherapy, trauma, infections, hemochromatosis and vascular insufficiency or congenital.
Pituitary adenomas	Hormone-secreting adenomas; hormone-inactive pituitary adenomas; metastases from the pituitary or pituitary stalk.
Prader-Willi syndrome (PWS) (formerly Prader-Labhart-Willi syndrome) (prevalence 1 in 10,000 individuals)	Congenital disturbance of GnRH secretion.
Congenital adrenal hypoplasia with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (prevalence 1 in 12,500 individuals)	X-chromosomal recessive disease, in the majority of patients caused by mutations in the DAX1 gene.
Pasqualini syndrome	Isolated LH deficiency.

Table 4: Forms of primary hypogonadism

Disease	Causes of deficiency
Maldescended or ectopic testes	Failure of testicular descent, 85% idiopathic.
Orchitis	Viral or unspecific orchitis.
Acquired anorchia	Traumatic, tumour, torsion, inflammation, iatrogenic, surgical removal.
Secondary testicular dysfunction	Medication, drugs, toxins, systemic diseases.
(Idiopathic) testicular atrophy	Male infertility (Idiopathic or specific causes).
Congenital anorchia (bilateral in 1 in 20,000 males, unilateral 4 times as often)	Intrauterine torsion is the most probable cause.
46,XY disorders of sexual development (DSD) (formerly male pseudohermaphroditism)	Disturbed testosterone synthesis due to enzymatic defects of steroid biosynthesis (17,20-desmolase defect, 17β-hydroxsteroid dehydrogenase defect).
Gonadal dysgenesis (synonym ‘streak gonads’)	XY gonadal dysgenesis can be caused by mutations in different genes.
46,XX male syndrome (prevalence of 1 in 10,000-20,000)	Males with presence of genetic information from the Y chromosome after translocation of a DNA segment of the Y to the X chromosome during paternal meiosis.
47,XYY syndrome (prevalence of 1 in 2,000)	Caused by non-disjunction in paternal meiosis.
Noonan syndrome (prevalence of 1 in 1,000 to 1 in 5,000)	Genetic origin.
Inactivating LH receptor mutations, Leydig cell hypoplasia (prevalence of 1 in 1,000,000 to 1 in 20,000)	Leydig cells are unable to develop due to the mutation (19).

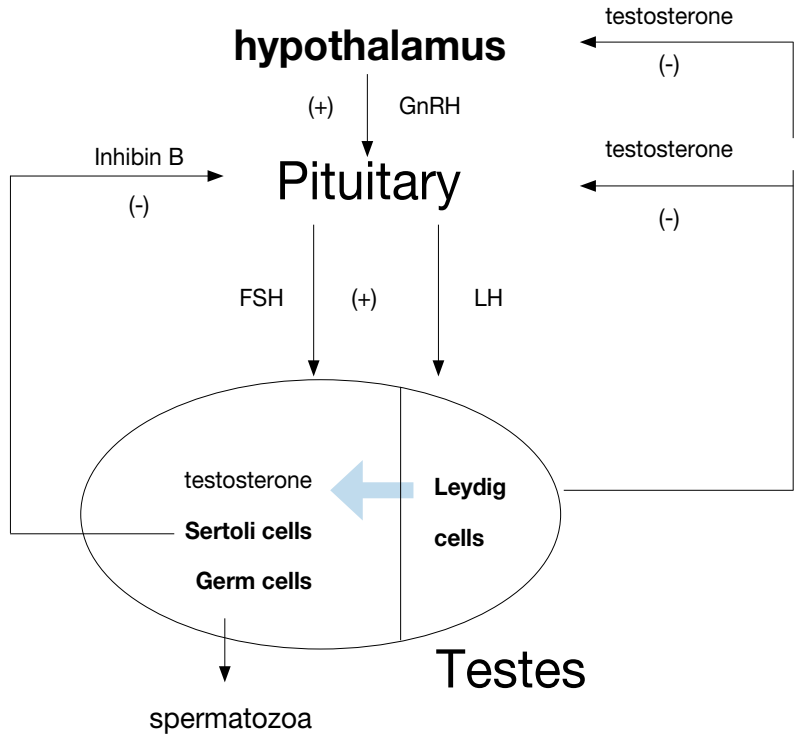
Recommendation	LE	GR
The two forms of hypogonadism have to be differentiated, as this has implications for patient evaluation and treatment and makes it possible to identify patients with associated health problems and infertility.	1b	B

4.6 References

1. Behre HM, Nieschlag E, Partsch CJ, et al. Diseases of the hypothalamus and the pituitary gland. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM, Nieschlag S (eds). *Andrology - male reproductive health and dysfunction*. 3rd edn. Berlin: Springer, 2010: 169-92.
2. Pitteloud N, Durrani S, Raivio T, et al. Complex genetics in idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism. Front Horm Res 2010;39:142-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20389092
3. Sedlmeyer IL, Hirschhorn JN, Palmert MR. Pedigree analysis of constitutional delay of growth and maturation: determination of familial aggregation and inheritance pattern. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002 Dec;87(12):5581-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12466356
4. Bojesen A, Juul S, Gravholt CH. Prenatal and postnatal prevalence of Klinefelter syndrome: a national registry study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2003 Feb;88(2):622-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12574191
5. Tüttelmann F, Gromoll J. Novel genetic aspects of Klinefelter's syndrome. Mol Hum Reprod 2010 Jun;16(6):386-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20228051
6. Nord C, Bjøro T, Ellingsen D, et al. Gonadal hormones in long-term survivors 10 years after treatment for unilateral testicular cancer. Eur Urol 2003 Sep;44(3):322-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12932930
7. Eberhard J, Ståhl O, Cwikiel M, et al. Risk factors for post-treatment hypogonadism in testicular cancer patients. Eur J Endocrinol 2008 Apr;158(4):561-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18362304
8. Pühse G, Secker A, Kemper S, et al. Testosterone deficiency in testicular germ-cell cancer patients is not influenced by oncological treatment. Int J Androl 2011 Oct;34(5 Pt 2):e351-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21062302
9. Nieschlag E, Swerdloff R, Behre HM, et al.; International Society of Andrology (ISA); International Society for the Study of the Aging Male (ISSAM); European Association of Urology (EAU). Investigation, treatment and monitoring of late-onset hypogonadism in males. ISA, ISSAM, and EAU recommendations. Eur Urol 2005 Jul;48(1):1-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15951102
10. Wang C, Nieschlag E, Swerdloff R, et al.; International Society of Andrology; International Society for the Study of Aging Male; European Association of Urology; European Academy of Andrology; American Society of Andrology. Investigation, treatment, and monitoring of late-onset hypogonadism in males: ISA, ISSAM, EAU, EAA, and ASA recommendations. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):121-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18762364
11. Nieschlag E, Behre HM, Wieacker P, et al. Disorders at the testicular level. In: Nieschlag E, Behre HM, Nieschlag S (eds). *Andrology - male reproductive health and dysfunction*. 3rd edn. Berlin: Springer, 2010: 193-238.
12. Büchter D, Behre HM, Kliesch S, et al. Pulsatile GnRH or human chorionic gonadotropin/human menopausal gonadotropin as effective treatment for men with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism: a review of 42 cases. Eur J Endocrinol 1998 Sep;139(3):298-303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9758439
13. Sykiotis GP, Hoang XH, Avbelj M, et al. Congenital idiopathic Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism: evidence of defects in the hypothalamus, pituitary, and testes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010 Jun;95(6):3019-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20382682
14. Araujo AB, Esche GR, Kupelian V, et al. Prevalence of symptomatic androgen deficiency in men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2007 Nov;92(11):4241-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17698901
15. Gray A, Feldman HA, McKinlay JB et al. Age, disease, and changing sex hormone levels in middle-aged men: results of the Massachusetts Male Aging Study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1991 Nov;73(5):1016-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1719016

16. Feldman HA, Longcope C, Derby CA, et al. Age trends in the level of serum testosterone and other hormones in middle-aged men: longitudinal results from the Massachusetts Male Aging Study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2002 Feb;87(2):589-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11836290
17. Harman SM, Metter EJ, Tobin JD, et al. Longitudinal effects of aging on serum total and free testosterone levels in healthy men. Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Aging. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2001 Feb;86(2):724-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11158037
18. Wu FC, Tajar A, Pye SR, et al. Hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular axis disruptions in older man are differentially linked to age and modifiable risk factors: the European Male Aging Study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008 Jul;93(7):2737-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18270261
19. Huhtaniemi I, Alevizaki M. Gonadotrophin resistance. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 2006 Dec;20(4):561-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17161332

Figure 2: The hypothalamic-pituitary-testes axis



FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; GnRH = Gonadotrohin-relasing hormone; LH = luteinizing hormone.

5. DIAGNOSIS

5.1 Introduction

Hypogonadism is diagnosed on the basis of persistent symptoms and signs related to androgen deficiency and assessment of consistently low testosterone levels (at least on two occasions) with a reliable method (1-5).

5.2 Clinical symptoms

Low levels of circulating androgens may be associated with signs and symptoms (Table 5).

Table 5: Clinical symptoms and signs suggestive for androgen deficiency

Delayed puberty
Small testes
Male-factor infertility
Decreased body hair
Gynaecomastia
Decrease in lean body mass and muscle strength
Visceral obesity
Decrease in bone mineral density (osteoporosis) with low trauma fractures
Reduced sexual desire and sexual activity
Erectile dysfunction
Diminished nocturnal erections
Hot flushes
Changes in mood, fatigue and anger
Sleep disturbances
Metabolic syndrome
Insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes mellitus
Diminished cognitive function

The most prevalent symptoms of male hypogonadism in ageing men are reduced sexual desire and sexual activity, erectile dysfunction, and hot flushes (1).

Symptoms and signs of androgen deficiency vary depending on age of onset, duration and the severity of the deficiency. Reference ranges for the lower normal level of testosterone (percentile 2.5) have recently been compiled from three large community-based samples, suggesting a cut-off of 12.1 nmol/L for total serum testosterone and calculated free testosterone 243 pmol/L to distinguish between normal levels and levels possibly associated with deficiency (6). Symptoms suggesting the presence of hypogonadism (1,7) are summarised in Table 5.

In men aged 40-79 years, the threshold for total testosterone was 8 nmol/L for decreased frequency of sexual thoughts, 8.5 nmol/L for erectile dysfunction, 11 nmol/L for decreased frequency of morning erections and 13 nmol/L for diminished vigour (8). The strongest predictor for hypogonadism in this age group was three sexual symptoms (decreased sexual thoughts, weakened morning erections, erectile dysfunction) and either a total testosterone level of < 8 nmol/L or serum testosterone in the range of 8-11 nmol/L and free testosterone < 220 pmol/L. These data are based on serum samples taken in the morning, when levels are highest and best reproducible (9).

Hypogonadism may be more subtle and not always evident by low testosterone levels. For example, men with primary testicular damage often have normal T levels but high LH: this could be considered a subclinical or compensated form of hypogonadism. The clinical consequences of an isolated elevation of LH is not clear yet, but potentially these men may already have signs or symptoms of hypogonadism or will become hypogonadal in the future.

To differentiate between primary and secondary forms of hypogonadism and to clarify late-onset hypogonadism determination of LH serum levels is required. Both LH and testosterone serum levels should be analysed twice.

5.3 History-taking and questionnaires

Symptoms of hypogonadism are listed in Table 5 and should be addressed during history-taking. Early onset of hypogonadism causes a lack of or minimal pubertal development, lack of development of secondary sex characteristics, possibly eunuchoid body proportions and a high-pitched voice. These signs and symptoms strongly suggest hypogonadism. Postpubertal development of hypogonadism causes a loss of androgen-dependent functions and symptoms that may have other etiological backgrounds than low testosterone levels. Published questionnaires are unreliable and have low specificity, while their sensitivity is high, and are not effective for case-finding (10-13). It is important to assess and exclude systemic illnesses, signs of malnutrition and malabsorption, as well as ongoing acute disease. Pharmacological treatments with corticosteroids, abuse of drugs such as marihuana, opiates and alcohol and previous treatment or use of testosterone or abuse of anabolic steroids should also be included in history-taking.

5.4 Physical examination

Assessment of body mass index (BMI), the waist-hip ratio (or sagittal abdominal diameter), body hair, male-pattern hair loss, presence of gynaecomastia and testicular size (measured with an orchidometer or ultrasound) and a structural examination of the penis as well as a digital rectal examination of the prostate should be included.

Conclusion
The diagnosis of male hypogonadism is based on symptoms and signs of androgen deficiency, together with consistently low serum testosterone levels.

Recommendations	**LE**	**GR**
The diagnosis of testosterone deficiency should be restricted to men with persistent symptoms suggesting hypogonadism (Table 5) (1-7).	3	C
Total testosterone assessment should be repeated at least on two occasions with a reliable method in men with: - Total testosterone levels close to the lower normal range (8-12 nmol/l), the free testosterone level should be measured to strengthen the laboratory assessment. - Suspected or known abnormal sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) levels, free testosterone should also be included (6,8).	1	A
Currently available diagnostic instruments (questionnaires) are not reliable as case-finding tools (10), as they have not been validated.	3	C
Testosterone assessment is recommended in men with a disease or treatment in which testosterone deficiency is common and in whom treatment may be indicated. This includes men with: - Pituitary mass, following radiation involving the sellar region and other diseases in the hypothalamic and sellar region; - End-stage renal disease receiving haemodialysis; - Treatment with medications that cause suppression of testosterone levels - e.g. corticosteroids and opiates; - Moderate to severe chronic obstructive lung disease; - Infertility; - Osteoporosis or low-trauma fractures; - HIV infection with sarcopenia; - Type 2 diabetes (14-18).	2	B
LH serum levels should be analysed to differentiate between primary, secondary, and late-onset hypogonadism.		

5.5 References

1. Hall SA, Esche GR, Araujo AB, et al. Correlates of low testosterone and symptomatic androgen deficiency in a population-based sample. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2008 Oct;93(10):3870-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18664536
2. Bhasin S, Cunningham GR, Hayes FJ, et al. Testosterone therapy in men with androgen deficiency syndromes: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010 Jun;95(6):2536-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20525905
3. Wang C, Catlin DH, Demers LM, et al. Measurement of total serum testosterone in adult men: comparison of current laboratory methods versus liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004 Feb;89(2):534-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764758
4. Rosner W, Auchus RJ, Azziz R, et al. Position statement: Utility, limitations, and pitfalls in measuring testosterone: an Endocrine Society position statement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2007 Feb;92(2): 405-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17090633
5. Rosner W, Vesper H. Toward excellence in testosterone testing: a consensus statement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010 Oct;95(10):4542-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20926540

6. Bhasin S,Pencina M, Jasuja GK, et al. Reference ranges for testosterone in men generated using liquid chromatography tandem mass spectrometry in a community-based sample of healthy nonobese young men in the Framingham Heart Study and applied to three geographically distinct cohorts. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2011 Aug;96(8):2430-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21697255
7. Wu FC, Tajar A, Beynon JM, et al. Identification of late-onset hypogonadism in middle-aged and elderly men. N Engl J Med 2010 Jul 8;363(2):123-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20554979
8. Vesper HW,Bhasin S, Wang C, et al. Interlaboratory comparison study of serum total testosterone [corrected] measurements performed by mass spectrometry methods. Steroids 2009 Jun;74(6): 498-503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19428438
9. Bremner WJ, Vitiello MV, Prinz PN. Loss of circadian rhythmicity in blood testosterone levels with aging in normal men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1983 Jun;56(6):1278-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6841562
10. Morley JE, Charlton E, Patrick P, et al. Validation of a screening questionnaire for androgen deficiency in aging males. Metabolism 2000 Sep:49(9):1239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11016912
11. Buvat, J, Lemaire A. Endocrine screening in 1,022 men with erectile dysfunction: clinical significance and cost-effective strategy. J Urol 1997 Nov;158(5):1764-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334596
12. Moore C, Huebler D, Zimmerman T, et al.The Aging Males' Symptoms scale (AMS) as outcome measure for treatment of androgen deficiency. Eur Urol 2004 Jul;46(1):80-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183551
13. Smith KW, Feldman HA, McKinlay JB. Construction and field validation of a self-administered screener for testosterone deficiency (hypogonadism) in ageing men. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2000 Dec;53(6):703-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11155092
14. Dobs AS, Few WL 3rd, Blackman MR, et al. Serum hormones in men with human immunodeficiency virus-associated wasting. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996 Nov;81(11):4108-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8923868
15. Arver S, Sinha-Hikim I, Beall G, et al. Serum dihydrotestosterone and testosterone concentrations in human immunodeficiency virus-infected men with and without weight loss. J Androl 1999 Sep-Oct;20(5):611-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10520573
16. Reid IR. Serum testosterone levels during chronic glucocorticoid therapy. Ann Intern Med 1987 Apr;106(4):639-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3826973
17. Dhindsa S, Prabhakar S, Sethi M, et al. Frequent occurrence of hypogonadotropic hypogonadism in type 2 diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004 Nov;89(11):5462-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15531498
18. Katznelson L, Finkelstein JS, Schoenfeld DA, et al. Increase in bone density and lean body mass during testosterone administration in men with acquired hypogonadism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1996 Dec;81(12):4358-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8954042

6. CLINICAL CONSEQUENCES OF HYPOGONADISM

6.1 Introduction

The clinical consequences of hypogonadism are determined by the age of onset and the severity of hypogonadism.

6.2 Foetal androgen deficiency

During the first 14 weeks of gestation, the presence of testosterone is crucial for normal virilisation of the external male genitalia. Androgen deficiency or androgen resistance due to deficient androgen receptor

function during this stage of life may result in abnormal genital development, ranging from hypospadias to female external genitalia with intra-abdominal testis. Frequently, patients with disorders of sexual development are diagnosed at an early age because of clearly abnormal external genitalia. However, patients at both ends of the phenotypic spectrum may go unnoticed in childhood and are diagnosed during puberty because of delayed pubertal development in phenotypic men or primary amenorrhoea in XY women.

6.3 Prepubertal onset of androgen deficiency

At the start of puberty, rising gonadotrophin levels result in increasing testicular volume and the activation of spermatogenesis and testosterone secretion. During puberty, rising testosterone levels result in the development of male secondary sex characteristics, comprising deepening of the voice, development of terminal body hair, stimulation of hair growth in sex-specific regions, facial hair, increasing penile size, increase in muscle mass and bone size and mass, growth spurt induction and eventually closing of the epiphyses. In addition, testosterone has explicit psychosexual effects, including increased libido.

Delayed puberty is defined as an absence of testicular enlargement at the age of 14. As this is a 'statistical' definition, based on reference ranges for the onset of puberty in the normal population, delayed puberty does not necessarily indicate the presence of a disease. In cases of severe androgen deficiency, the clinical picture of prepubertal-onset hypogonadism is evident (Table 6) and diagnosis and treatment are fairly straightforward. The major challenge in younger individuals with presumed idiopathic hypogonadotropic hypogonadism is to differentiate the condition from a constitutional delay in puberty and to determine when to start androgen treatment. In milder cases of androgen deficiency, such as are seen in patients with Klinefelter syndrome, pubertal development can be incomplete or delayed, resulting in a more subtle phenotypic picture. In these patients, several clues may lead to a diagnosis of hypogonadism. These include: small testes, (a history of) cryptorchidism, gynaecomastia, sparse body hair, eunuchoid habitus, low bone mass and subfertility (1).

Table 6: Signs and symptoms suggesting prepubertal-onset hypogonadism

Small testes
Cryptorchidism
Gynaecomastia
High voice
Unclosed epiphyses
Linear growth into adulthood
Eunuchoid habitus
Sparse body hair / facial hair
Infertility
Low bone mass
Sarcopenia
Reduced sexual desire / activity

6.4 Late-onset hypogonadism

Definition: Late-onset hypogonadism is defined as hypogonadism in a person who has had normal pubertal development and as a result developed normal male secondary sex characteristics.

Depending on the underlying cause of hypogonadism, the decline in gonadal function may be gradual and partial. The resulting clinical picture may be variable, and the signs and symptoms may be obscured by the physiological phenotypic variation. Symptoms that have been associated with late-onset androgen deficiency include: loss of libido, erectile dysfunction, sarcopenia, low bone mass, depressive thoughts, fatigue, loss of vigour, erectile dysfunction, loss of body hair, hot flushes and reduced fertility (Table 7). Most of these symptoms have a multifactorial aetiology, are reminiscent of normal aging and can also be found in men with completely normal testosterone levels (2). As a result, signs and symptoms of adult-onset hypogonadism may be non-specific, and confirmation of a clinical suspicion by hormonal testing is mandatory. For most of the symptoms mentioned above, the probability of their presence increases with lower plasma testosterone levels. Most studies indicate a threshold level below which the prevalence of symptoms starts to increase (3,4). This threshold level is near the lower level of the normal range for plasma testosterone levels in young men, but there appears to be wide variation between individuals, and even within one individual the threshold level may

be different for different target organs.

Table 7: Signs and symptoms associated with late-onset hypogonadism

Loss of libido
Erectile dysfunction
Sarcopenia
Low bone mass
Depressive thoughts
Fatigue
Loss of body hair
Hot flushes
Loss of vigour

Recommendations	LE	GR
Screening of testosterone deficiency is only recommended in adult men with consistent and preferably multiple signs and symptoms listed in Table 7.	3	C
Adult men with established severe hypogonadism should be screened for concomitant osteoporosis.	2	B

6.5 References

1. Lanfranco F, Kamischke A, Zitzmann M, et al. Klinefelter's syndrome. Lancet 2004 Jul 17-23; 364(9430):273-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15262106
2. Kaufman J, Vermeulen A. The decline of androgen levels in elderly men and its clinical and therapeutic implications. Endocr Rev 2005 Oct;26(6):833-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15901667
3. Wu FC, Tajar A, Beynon M, et al. Identification of late-onset hypogonadism in middle-aged and elderly men. N Engl J Med 2010 Jul 8;363(2):123-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20554979
4. Zitzmann M, Faber S, Nieschlag E. Association of specific symptoms and metabolic risks with serum testosterone in older men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2006 Nov;91(11):4335-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16926258

7. INDICATIONS AND CONTRAINDICATIONS FOR TREATMENT

Testosterone treatment aims to restore testosterone levels to the physiological range in men with consistently low levels of serum testosterone and associated symptoms of androgen deficiency. The aim is to improve quality of life, sense of well-being, sexual function, muscle strength and bone mineral density. Table 8 highlights the main indications for testosterone treatment. Table 9 lists the main contraindications against testosterone therapy.

Table 8: Indications for testosterone treatment

Delayed puberty (idiopathic, Kallmann syndrome)
Klinefelter syndrome with hypogonadism
Sexual dysfunction and low testosterone
Low bone mass in hypogonadism
Adult men with consistent and preferably multiple signs and symptoms of hypogonadism (listed in Table 7)
Hypopituitarism
Testicular dysgenesis and hypogonadism

Table 9: Contraindications against testosterone treatment

Prostate cancer
PSA > 4 ng/mL
Male breast cancer
Severe sleep apnoea
Male infertility
Haematocrit > 50%
Severe lower urinary tract symptoms due to benign prostatic hyperplasia

8. BENEFITS OF TREATMENT

Testosterone replacement therapy (TRT) provides several benefits in relation to body composition, metabolic control and psychological and sexual parameters. Randomised trials have shown a correlation between restored physiological testosterone levels, muscle mass and strength measured as leg press strength and quadriceps muscle volume (1-4). Similar positive results have been reported in meta-analyses evaluating the role of exogenous testosterone in relation to bone mineral density: it is evident that testosterone therapy improves mineral density at the lumbar spine, producing a reduction in bone resorption markers. The available trials failed to demonstrate a similar effect at the femoral neck (4-6). Body composition is influenced by testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men, with a consequent decrease in fat mass and an increase in lean body mass (4). Several studies based on experience with testosterone undecanoate have demonstrated a significant reduction in trunk and waist fat, with a clear decrease in waist size (7,8). In the same trials, testosterone undecanoate administration was associated with an improvement in body weight, body mass index and lipid profile after 3 months of therapy. Testosterone replacement therapy has positive effects on glycaemic and lipid control, insulin resistance and visceral adiposity in hypogonadal men with impaired glucose tolerance and lipid profiles, with a consequent decrease in the cardiovascular risk (9). Benefits on libido, erection and ejaculation have been reported in several retrospective studies and case reports. In a recent multicentre prospective study, Moon et al. (10) reported a significant increase in the International Index of Erectile Function (IIEF) score for sexual desire, intercourse satisfaction and overall satisfaction starting 6 weeks after the beginning of treatment. Testosterone replacement therapy has also shown encouraging results in several case reports in which satisfactory sexual intercourse was reported after at least 3 months from therapy induction in hypogonadal men suffering from veno-occlusive erectile dysfunction (4,11). Significant improvement in depressive symptoms in men treated with testosterone undecanoate is reported in a recent randomised trial, while benefits in relation to the cognitive spectrum have been reported in studies with a lower impact (12,13).

Conclusion	**LE**
Benefits including a reduction in BMI and waist size and improved glycaemic control and lipid profile are observed in hypogonadal men receiving TRT.	2a

Recommendations	LE	GR
Testosterone replacement therapy is recommended in patients with:		
A decline in muscle mass and strength	1b	A
Reduced bone mineral density at the lumbar spine	1a	A
Decreased libido and erection	3	B

8.1 References

1. Bhasin S, Woodhouse L, Casaburi R, et al. Testosterone dose-response relationships in healthy young men. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 2001 Dec;281(6):E1172-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11701431
2. Caminiti G, Volterrani M, Iellano F, et al. Effect of long-acting testosterone treatment on functional exercise capacity, skeletal muscle performance, insulin resistance and baroflex sensitivity in elderly patients with chronic heart failure: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized study. J Am Coll Cardiol 2009 Sep 1;54(10):919-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19712802
3. Storer TW, Woodhouse L, Magliano L, et al. Changes in muscle mass, muscle strength and power but not physical function are related to testosterone dose in healthy older men. J Am Geriatr Soc 2008 Nov;56(11):1991-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18795988
4. Saad F, Aversa A, Isidori AM, et al. Onset of effects of testosterone treatment and time span until maximum effects are achieved. Eur J Endocr 2011 Nov;165(5):675-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21753068
5. Tracz MJ, Sideras K, Bolona ER et al. Testosterone use in men and its effects on bone health. A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized placebo-controlled trials. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2006 Jun;91(6):2011-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16720668
6. Isidori AM, Giannetta E, Greco EA et al. Effects of testosterone on body composition, body metabolism and serum lipid profile in middle-aged men: a meta-analysis. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2005 Sep;63(3):280-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16117815
7. Saad F, Gooren L, Haider A, et al. An exploratory study of the effect of 12 months administration of the novel long-acting testosterone undecanoate on measures of sexual function and the metabolic syndrome. Arch Androl 2007 Nov-Dec;53(6):353-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18357966
8. Haider A, Gooren LJ, Padungton P, et al. Improvement of the metabolic syndrome and of non-alcoholic liver steatosis upon treatment of hypogonadal elderly men with parenteral testosterone undecanoate. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes 2010 Mar;118(3):167-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19472103
9. Kapoor D, Goodwin E, Channer KS, et al. Testosterone replacement therapy improves insulin resistance, glycaemic control, visceral adiposity and hypercholesterolaemia in hypogonadal men with type 2 diabetes. Eur J Endocrinol 2006 Jun;154(6):899-906. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16728551
10. Moon du G, Park MG, Lee SW, et al. The efficacy and safety of testosterone undecanoate (Nebido®) in testosterone deficiency syndrome in Korean: a multicenter prospective study. J Sex Med 2010 Jun;7(6):2253-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20345732
11. Yassin AA, Saad F, Traish A. Testosterone undecanoate restores erectile function in a subset of patients with venous leakage: a series of case report. J Sex Med 2006 Jul;3(4):727-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839330
12. Giltay EJ, Tishova YA, Mskhalaya GJ, et al. Effects of testosterone supplementation on depressive symptoms and sexual dysfunction in men with metabolic syndrome. J Sex Med 2010 Jul;7(7):2572-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20524974
13. Zitzmann M, Weckesser M, Schoner O, et al. Changes in cerebral glucose metabolism and visuospatial capability in hypogonadal males under testosterone substitution therapy. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes 2001;109(5):302-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11507655

9. CHOICE OF TREATMENT

9.1 Introduction

The aim of TRT is to restore physiological testosterone levels in hypogonadal men (1). During TRT, periodic observation of the serum concentration of the hormone and its metabolites is recommended in order to alleviate treatment-related side effects (1). Several preparations are available, which differ in the route of administration and pharmacokinetics, and the selection should be a joint decision by both the patient and the physician (2). Short-acting preparations may be preferred to long-acting depot administration in the initial treatment phase, so that any adverse events that may develop can be observed and treatment can be discontinued if needed (3).

Testosterone replacement therapy is safe and effective and the agents are available as oral preparations, intramuscular injections and transdermal gel or patches (4).

9.2 Preparations

*9.2.1 **Testosterone undecanoate***

Testosterone undecanoate is the most widely used and safest oral delivery system. It rarely causes a rise in testosterone levels above the mid-range and it is therefore infrequently associated with side effects (1). In oral administration, resorption depends on simultaneous intake of fatty food.

Testosterone undecanoate is also available as a long-acting intramuscular injection (with intervals of up to 3 months). This long period of action ensures a normal testosterone serum concentration for the entire period, but the relatively long wash-out period may cause problems if complications appear (5).

*9.2.2 **Testosterone cypionate and enanthate***

Testosterone cypionate and enanthate are available as short-acting intramuscular delivery systems (with intervals of 2-3 weeks) and represent safe and valid preparations. However, these preparations may cause fluctuations in serum testosterone from high levels to subnormal levels, and they are consequently associated with periods of well-being alternating with periods of unsatisfactory clinical response (6,7).

*9.2.3 **Transdermal testosterone***

Transdermal testosterone preparations are available as skin patches or gel. They provide a uniform and normal serum testosterone level for 24 hours (daily interval). Common side effects consist of skin irritation at the site of application (patches) and risk of interpersonal transfer if appropriate precautions are not taken (gel) (8,9).

*9.2.4 **Sublingual and buccal testosterone***

Sublingual and buccal testosterone tablets are effective and well-tolerated delivery systems that can provide a rapid and uniform achievement of a physiological testosterone level with daily administration (10,11).

*9.2.5 **Subdermal depots***

Subdermal depots need to be implanted every 5-7 months and offer a long period of action without significant serum fluctuation of the testosterone level. The risk with this kind of delivery system lies in infections and extrusions, which may occur up to 10% of cases (1,12,13).

9.3 Hypogonadism and fertility issues

Exogenous testosterone reduces endogenous testosterone production by negative feedback on the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis. If hypogonadism coincides with fertility issues, hCG treatment should be considered.

Human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG) stimulates testosterone production of Leydig cells. Its administration should be restricted to patients with secondary hypogonadism, if fertility issues are important. Normal physiological serum levels can be achieved with a standard dosage of 1500-5000 IU administered intramuscularly or subcutaneously twice weekly. In patients with secondary hypogonadism, hCG treatment is combined with FSH treatment (usually 150 IU three times weekly i.m. or s.c.) to induce spermatogenesis.

In patients with secondary hypogonadism and fertility issues, and in selected cases of primary hypogonadism, hCG treatment can be chosen to support endogenous testosterone production for the period of infertility treatment. The dosage has to be adjusted individually to prevent suppression of FSH serum levels. hCG treatment has higher costs than testosterone treatment. There is insufficient information about the therapeutic and adverse effects of long-term hCG treatment. This type of treatment can therefore not be recommended for male hypogonadism, except in patients in whom fertility treatment is an issue.

Table 10: Testosterone preparations for replacement therapy

Formulation	Administration	Advantages	Disadvantages
Testosterone undecanoate	Oral; 2-6 cps every 6 h	Absorbed through the lymphatic system, with consequent reduction of liver involvement.	Variable levels of testosterone above and below the mid-range (1) Need for several doses per day with intake of fatty food.
Testosterone cypionate	Intramuscular; one injection every 2-3 weeks	Short-acting preparation that allows drug withdrawal in case of onset of side effects.	Possible fluctuation of testosterone levels (5,6).
Testosterone enanthate	Intramuscular; one injection every 2-3 weeks	Short-acting preparation that allows drug withdrawal in case of onset of side effects.	Possible fluctuation of testosterone levels (5,6).
Testosterone undecanoate	Intramuscular; one injection every 10-14 weeks	Steady-state testosterone levels without fluctuation.	Long-acting preparation that cannot allow drug withdrawal in case of onset of side effects (7).
Transdermal testosterone	Gel or skin patches; daily application	Steady-state testosterone level without fluctuation.	Skin irritation at the site of application and risk of interpersonal transfer (8,9).
Sublingual testosterone	Sublingual; daily doses	Rapid absorption and achievement of physiological serum level of testosterone.	Local irritation (10,11).
Buccal testosterone	Buccal tablet; two doses per day	Rapid absorption and achievement of physiological serum level of testosterone.	Irritation and pain at the site of application (10,11).
Subdermal depots	Subdermal implant every 5-7 months	Long duration and constant serum testosterone level.	Risk of infection and extrusion of the implants (1,12,13).

Recommendations	LE	GR
The patient should be fully informed about expected benefits and side effects of each treatment option. The selection of the preparation should be a joint decision by an informed patient and the physician.	1a	A
Short-acting preparations may be preferred to long-acting depot administration when starting the initial treatment.	3	B
hCG treatment can only be recommended for hypogonadal patients with simultaneous fertility treatment.	1b	B

9.4 References

1. Bassil N, Alkaade S, Morley JE. The benefits and risks of testosterone replacement therapy: a review. Ther Clin Risk Manag 2009 Jun;5(3):427-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707253
2. Calof OM, Singh AB, Lee ML, et al. Adverse events associated with testosterone replacement in middle-aged and older men: a meta-analysis of randomized, placebo-controlled trials. J Gerontol A BiolSci Med Sci 2005 Nov;60(11):1451-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339333

3. Parsons JK, Carter HB, Platz EA, et al. Serum testosterone and the risk of prostate cancer: potential implications for testosterone therapy. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2005 Sep;14(9):2257-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172240
4. Zitzman M, Nieschlag E. Androgen receptor gene CAG repeat length and body mass index modulate the safety of long-term intramuscolar testosterone undecanoate therapy in hipogonadal men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2007 Oct;92(10):3844-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17635942
5. Wang C, Harnett M, Dobs A, et al. Pharmacokinetics and safety of long acting testosterone undecanoate injections in hypogonadal men: An 84-week phase III clinical trial. J Androl 2010 Sep-Oct;31(5):457-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20133964
6. Bashin S, Bremner WJ. Emerging issues in androgen replacement therapy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997 Jan;82(1):3-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8989221
7. Comhaire FH. Andropause: hormone replacement therapy in the aging male. Eur Urol 2000 Dec;38(6):655-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11111180
8. Lakshaman KM, Bassaria S. Safety and efficacy of testosterone gel in the treatment of male hypogonadism. Clin Interv Aging 2009;4:397-412. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19966909
9. Swerdloff RS, Wang C. Transdermal androgens: pharmacology and applicability to hypogonadal elderly men. J Endocrinol Invest 2005;28(3 Suppl):112-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16042369
10. Salhenian B, Wang C, Alexander G, et al. Pharmacokinetics, bioefficacy and safety of sublingual testosterone cyclodextrin in hypogonadal men: comparison to testosterone enanthate - a clinical research center study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1995 Dec;80(12):3567-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8530600
11. Wang C, Swerdloff R, Kipnes M, et al. New testosterone buccal system (Striant) delivers physiological testosterone levels: pharmacokinetics study in hypogonadal men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004 Aug;89(8):3821-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15292312
12. Jockenhovel F, Vogel E, Kreutzer M, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of subcutaneous testosterone implants in hypogonadal men. Clin Endocrinol 1996 Jul;45(1):61-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8796140
13. Kelleher S, Conway AJ, Handelsman DJ. Influence of implantation site and track geometry on the extrusion rate and pharmacology of testosterone implants. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 2001 Oct;55(4):531-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11678837

10. RISK FACTORS IN TESTOSTERONE TREATMENT

10.1 Introduction

Physicians are often reluctant to offer TRT, especially in elderly men, due to the potential risk of this form of treatment (1). The most common doubts are associated with the possible consequences for prostatic and breast tissues, the cardiovascular system and sleep apnoea.

10.2 Male breast cancer

Male breast cancer is a rare disease, with an incidence of less than 1% of all male cancers (2). The incidence is higher in men with Klinefelter syndrome. Testosterone treatment is contraindicated in men with a history of breast cancer (3). An association between TRT and the development of breast cancer is not supported by strong evidence, although there have been some reports based on small numbers of patients (4).

10.3 Prostate cancer

Prostate cancer growth may be influenced by testosterone. Studies have reported that hypogonadism is associated with a lower incidence of prostate cancer, but if prostate cancer occurs in hypogonadal men, it is usually at an advanced stage and with a higher Gleason score (5,6). Randomised controlled trials support

the hypothesis that TRT does not result in changes in prostatic histology, nor in a significant increase in intraprostatic testosterone and DHT (7,8). The most recent studies indicate that testosterone therapy does not increase the risk of prostate cancer (7-10), but long-term follow-up data are not yet available. A recent meta-analysis showed a higher (but not statistically significant) percentage of prostate events in middle-aged and older men receiving TRT (11). In view of these observations, PSA testing and digital examination of the prostate before and during therapy are highly recommended (11).

Testosterone therapy is clearly contraindicated in men with prostate cancer. A topic currently under debate involves the use of TRT in hypogonadal men with a history of prostate cancer and no evidence of active disease. So far, only studies with limited numbers of patients and relatively short follow-up periods are available, and these indicate no increased risk for recurrent prostate cancer. No randomised and placebo-controlled trials are available yet to document the long-term safety of the treatment in these patients (12). Men who have been surgically treated for localised prostate cancer and who are currently without evidence of active disease (i.e. measurable PSA, abnormal rectal examination, evidence of bone/visceral metastasis) and showing symptoms of testosterone deficiency can be cautiously considered for TRT, although this approach is still an 'off-label' treatment (13,14). In these patients, treatment should be restricted to patients with a low risk for recurrent prostate cancer (pre-surgery Gleason < 8; pT1-2; PSA < 10 ng/mL). Therapy should not start before 1 year of follow-up after surgery and there should be no PSA recurrence (13-15). Patients who have undergone brachytherapy or external-beam radiotherapy (EBRT) for low-risk prostate cancer can also be cautiously treated with TRT in case of hypogonadism, with close monitoring for prostate cancer recurrence (14-16).

10.4 Cardiovascular diseases

Testosterone treatment is not related to the development of de novo cardiovascular events (17,18). Caution, however, should be used in men with existing cardiovascular diseases, since an increase in red blood cells is a common side effect of testosterone. Haemoglobin and haematocrit measurements are recommended before treatment and periodically thereafter (9,11,19). Patients with erythrocytosis and serious congestive heart failure (NYHA classes III-IV) are at risk of developing cardiovascular deterioration, and testosterone therapy should be discontinued until the resolution of congestive heart failure (9). Cardiovascular adverse events are more frequent in patients with multiple co-morbidities and with limited physical activity (19).

10.5 Obstructive sleep apnoea

There is no consistent evidence correlating TRT with obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA). There is also no evidence that TRT can result in the onset or worsening of the condition (20).

Conclusions	LE
Case reports and small cohort studies point to a possible correlation between TRT and the onset of breast cancer, but there is as yet a lack of strong evidence for this relationship.	3
Randomised controlled trials support the hypothesis that TRT does not result in changes in prostatic histology.	1b
Testosterone therapy is not related to the development of de novo cardiovascular events.	1a
There is no evidence for a relationship between TRT and OSA.	3

Recommendations	LE	GR
Haematological, cardiovascular, breast and prostatic assessment should be performed before the start of treatment.	1a	A
Haematocrit and haemoglobin monitoring, PSA and digital rectal examination of prostate and breast examination are recommended assessments during TRT therapy.	1a	A
In patients operated on for localised prostate cancer, testosterone therapy should not start before 1 year of follow-up without PSA recurrence has been completed.	4	B

10.6 References

1. Raynaud JP. Testosterone deficiency syndrome: Treatment and cancer risk. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 2009 Jan;114(1-2):96-105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19429438
2. JohansenTaber KA, Morisy LR, Osbahr AJ 3rd et al. Male breast cancer: risk factors, diagnosis, and management (review). Oncol Rep 2010 Nov;24(5):1115-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20878100

3. Wang C, Nieschlag E, Swerdloff R, et al.Investigation, Treatment, and Monitoring of Late-Onset Hypogonadism in Males: ISA, ISSAM, EAU, EAA, and ASA Recommendations. Eur Urol 2009 Jan;55(1):121-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18762364
4. Medras M, Filus A, Jozkow P, et al. Breast cancer and long term hormonal treatment of male Hypogonadism. Breast Cancer Res Treat 2006 Apr;96(3):263-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16418796
5. Stattin P, Lumme S, Tenkanen L, et al. High levels of circulating testosterone are not associated with increased prostate cancer risk; a pooled prospective study. Int J Cancer 2004 Jan;108(3):418-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14648709
6. Severi G, Morris HA, MacInnis RJ, et al. Circulating steroid hormones and the risk of prostate cancer. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2006 Jan;15(1):86-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16434592
7. Shabsigh R, Crawford ED, Nehra A, et al. Testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men and potential prostate cancer risk: a systematic review. Int J Impot Res 2009 Jan-Feb;21(1):9-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18633357
8. Marks LS, Mazer NA, Mostaghel E, et al. Effect of testosterone replacement therapy on prostate tissue in men with late onset hypogonadism: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2006 Nov 15;296(19): 2351-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17105798
9. Cooper CS, Perry PJ, Sparks AE, et al. Effect of exogenous testosterone on prostate volume, serum and semen prostate specific antigen levels in healthy young men. J Urol 1998 Feb;159(2):441-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9649259
10. Fernández-Balsells MM, Murad MH, Lane M, et al. Adverse effects of testosterone therapy in adult men: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2010 Jun;95(6):2560-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20525906
11. Calof OM, Singh AB, Lee ML et al.Adverse events associated with testosterone replacement in middle-aged and older men: a meta-analysis of randomized, placebo-controlled trials. J Gerontol A BiolSci Med Sci 2005 Nov;60(11):1451-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339333
12. Bassil N, Alkaade S, Morley JE. The benefits and risks of testosterone replacement therapy: a review. Ther Clin Risk Manag 2009 Jun;5(3):427-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707253
13. Morgentaler A, Morales A. Should hypogonadal men with prostate cancer receive testosterone? J Urol 2010 Oct;184(4):1257-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20723918
14. Morgentaler A. Testosterone therapy in men with prostate cancer: scientific and ethical considerations. J Urol 2009 March;181(3):972-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19150547
15. Kaufman JM, Graydon RJ. Androgen replacement after curative radical prostatectomy for prostate cancer in hypogonadal men. J Urol 2004 Sept;172(3):920-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15310998
16. Sarodsy MF. Testosterone replacement for hypogonadism after treatment of early prostate cancer with brachitherapy. Cancer 2007 Feb;109(3):536-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17183557
17. Haddad RM, Kennedy CC, Caples SM, et al. Testosterone and cardiovascular risk in men: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized placebo-controlled trials. Mayo Clin Proc 2007 Jan;82(1):29-39.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17285783
18. Shabsigh R, Katz M, Yan G, et al. Cardiovascular issues in hypogonadism and testosterone therapy. Am J Cardiol 2005 Dec;96(12B):67M-72M.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16387571
19. Basaria S, Coviello AD, Travison TG, et al. Adverse event associated with testosterone administration. New Engl J Med 2010 Jul;363(2):109-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20592293
20. Hanafy HM. Testosterone therapy and obstructive sleep apnea: is there a real connection? J Sex Med 2007 Sep;4(5):1241-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17645445

11. MONITORING OF PATIENTS RECEIVING TESTOSTERONE REPLACEMENT THERAPY

11.1 Introduction

Regular follow-up is needed in patients receiving testosterone therapy, as potentially androgen-dependent symptoms and conditions may occur as a result of TRT. The side effects of TRT are limited, but their incidence and clinical relevance is as yet unclear.

The primary aim of TRT is to alleviate the clinical symptoms of testosterone deficiency. Careful monitoring of changes in the clinical manifestations of testosterone deficiency should therefore be an essential part of every follow-up visit. Effects of TRT on sexual interest may already appear after 3 weeks of treatment, and reach a plateau at 6 weeks (1). Changes in erectile function and ejaculation may require up to 6 months (1). Effects on quality of life, and also on depressive mood, may become detectable within 1 month, but the maximum effect may take longer (1).

11.2 Testosterone level

There are as yet insufficient data to define optimal serum levels of testosterone during TRT. Expert opinion suggests that TRT should restore the serum testosterone level to the mid-normal range of specific age groups of men, which is usually sufficient to alleviate various manifestations of hormone deficiency. An optimal monitoring schedule for serum testosterone level is also dependent on the formulation of TRT used (LE: 4; GR: C).

11.3 Bone density

Bone mineral density (BMD) should be monitored only in men whose BMD was abnormal before initiation of TRT. An increase in lumbar spine BMD may already be detectable after 6 months of TRT and may continue for 3 more years (1).

11.4 Haematocrit

It is important to use only minimal or no venous occlusion when taking a blood sample for haematocrit measurements (2). Elevated haematocrit is the most frequent side effect of TRT. The clinical significance of a high haematocrit level is unclear, but it may be associated with hyperviscosity and thrombosis (3). The effect of erythropoiesis may become evident at 3 months and peaks at 12 months (1).

11.5 Prostate safety

Testosterone replacement therapy results in a marginal increase in PSA and prostate volume, plateauing at 12 months (1). Previous fears that TRT might increase the risk of prostate cancer have been contradicted by recent meta-analyses (4-7). However, there are insufficient long-term data available to conclude that there is safety from prostate cancer with TRT.

11.6 Cardiovascular system

Testosterone replacement therapy is not associated with the development of any unsafe cardiovascular events, and special monitoring in this respect is not needed (7,8). There has been one study (9) indicating that testosterone therapy in older men with a high prevalence of chronic diseases may result in a higher risk of cardiovascular adverse events. These patients may need individualised monitoring schemes.

Recommendations	LE	GR
The response to treatment should be assessed 3, 6 and 12 months after the onset of treatment, and thereafter annually.	4	C
In men with an abnormal BMD, BMD measurements should be repeated 6 and 12 months after the start of TRT and thereafter annually.	4	C
Haematocrit should be monitored at 3, 6 and 12 months and thereafter annually. The testosterone dosage should be decreased, or therapy discontinued if the haematocrit increases above normal levels.	4	C
Prostate health should be assessed by digital rectal examination (DRE) and PSA before the start of TRT. Follow-up by PSA at 3, 6 and 12 months and thereafter annually.	4	C
Routine screening of potential cardiovascular side effects is not indicated in men receiving TRT.	1B	A
Men with cardiovascular co-morbidity should be assessed by a cardiologist before TRT is initiated and there should be close cardiovascular monitoring during TRT.	3	C

11.7 References

1. Saad F, Aversa A, Isidori AM, et al. Onset of effects of testosterone treatment and time span until maximum effects are achieved. Eur J Endocrinol 2011 Nov;165(5):675-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21753068
2. McMullin MF, Bareford D, Campbell P; General Haematology Task Force of the British Committee for Standards in Haematology. Guidelines for the diagnosis, investigation and management of polycythaemia/erythrocytosis.Br J Haematol 2005 Jul;130(2):174-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16029446
3. Palacios A, Campfield LA, McClure RD, et al. Effect of testosterone enanthate on hematopoiesis in normal men. Fertil Steril1983 Jul;40(1):100-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6862037
4. Shabsigh R, Crawford ED, Nehra A, et al. Testosterone therapy in hypogonadal men and potential prostate cancer risk: a systematic review. Int J Impot Res 2009 Jan;21(1):9-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18633357
5. Marks LS, Mazer NA, Mostaghel E, et al. Effect of testosterone replacement therapy on prostate tissue in men with late onset hypogonadsim: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2006 Nov 15;296(19): 2351-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17105798
6. Calof OM, Singh AB, Lee ML et al.Adverse events associated with testosterone replacement in middle-aged and older men: a meta-analysis of randomized, placebo-controlled trials. J Gerontol A BiolSci Med Sci 2005 Nov;60(11):1451-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16339333
7. Fernández-Balsells MM, Murad MH, Lane M, et al. Adverse effects of testosterone therapy in adult men: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab Jun 2010;95(6):2560-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20525906
8. Haddad RM, Kennedy CC, Caples SM, et al. Testosterone and cardiovascular risk in men: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized placebo-controlled trials. Mayo Clin Proc 2007 Jan;82(1):29-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17285783
9. Basaria S, Coviello AD, Travison TG, et al. Adverse event associated with testosterone administration. New Engl J Med 2010 Jul;363(2):109-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20592293

12. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

AMH	Anti-Müllerian hormone
AR	Androgen receptor
BMD	Bone mineral density
BMI	Body mass index
CAG	Cytosine-adenine-guanine
DHT	Dihydrotestosterone
DRE	Digital rectal examination
DSD	Disorders of sexual development
EAU	European Association of Urology
EBRT	External-beam radiation therapy
FSH	Follicle-stimulating hormone
GnRH	Gonadotrophin-releasing hormone
GR	Grade of recommendation
hCG	Human chorionic gonadotrophin
HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus
HP	Hyperprolactinemia
IHH	Isolated hypogonadotropic hypogonadism
IIEF	International Index of Erectile Function
IU	International unit
LE	Level of evidence
LH	Luteinizing hormone
NYHA	New York Heart Association
OSA	Obstructive sleep apnoea
PSA	Prostate-specific antigen
PWS	Prader-Willi syndrome
RCT	Randomised controlled trial
TRT	Testosterone replacement therapy
SHBG	Sex hormone-binding globulin
SRY	Sex region of the Y chromosome

Conflict of interest statement

All members of the Male Hypogonadism Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation, and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Urological Infections

M. Grabe (chairman), T.E. Bjerklund-Johansen, H. Botto, B. Wullt, M. Çek, K.G. Naber, R.S. Pickard, P. Tenke, F. Wagenlehner

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Background

Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are among the most prevailing infectious diseases with a substantial financial burden on society. There are only limited data from Europe. In the USA, UTIs are responsible for over 7 million physician visits annually (1). Approximately 15% of all community-prescribed antibiotics in the USA are dispensed for UTI (2) and data from some European countries suggest a similar rate (3). In the US, UTIs account for more than 100,000 hospital admissions annually, most often for pyelonephritis (1). These data do apparently not account for complicated UTI associated with urological patients, the prevalence of which is not clear. UTIs represents at least 40% of all hospital acquired infections and are, in the majority of cases, catheter associated (4). Bacteriuria develops in up to 25% of patients who require a urinary catheter for one week or more with a daily risk of 5-7% (5,6). The recent Global Prevalence Infection in Urology (GPIU) studies have shown that 10-12 % of patients hospitalised in urological wards have a healthcare-associated infection (HAI). The strains retrieved from these patients are even more resistant (7).

1.2 Bacterial resistance development

The present state of microbial resistance development is alarming (8). The use of antibiotics in the different countries and communities of Europe mirrors the global increase in resistant strains. There is a clear association between antibiotic use and the level of resistance on both individual and community levels (8). Multi-resistant microbial strains such as well known meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) are found in an increasing number of patients. The presence of extended-spectrum β-lactamase producing *E. coli* (ESBL) showing resistance to most antibiotics, except for the carbapenem class, is steadily increasing in the population (9). Particularly troublesome is the increasing resistance to broad-spectrum antibiotics such as fluoroquinolones and cephalosorines. The microbes are harboured in the faecal reservoir and become a threat for urological patients in general, and men undergoing prostate biopsy in particular. The most important risk factors for this colonisation are recurrent infections and exposure to these antibiotics (10). Aggravating the situation is the observation of co-resistance to alternative antibiotics such as gentamicin (10).
A strong grip on this threatening development is thus required. With few new antibiotics in the development chain, prudent use of antibiotics is the only option to delay the development of resistance (8). The urological community has a responsibility to engage in evidence-based practices regarding the use of antimicrobial agents. It is also essential to consider the local microbial environment and resistance pattern as well as each individual patient's risk factor for harbouring resistant strains.

1.3 The aim of the guidelines

It is the ambition of the present guidelines to provide both urologist and physicians from other medical specialities with evidence-based guidance regarding the treatment and prophylaxis of UTI. These guidelines cover male and female UTIs, male genital infections and special fields such as UTI in paediatric urology, immunosuppression, renal insufficiency and kidney transplant recipients. Much attention is given to antibiotic prophylaxis, aiming to reduce the misuse and overuse of peri-operative prophylactic antibiotics. High quality clinical research using strict internationally recognised definitions and classifications as presented in this section are encouraged.

1.4 Pathogenesis of UTIs

Microorganisms can reach the urinary tract by haematogenous or lymphatic spread, but there is abundant clinical and experimental evidence to show that the ascent of microorganisms from the urethra is the most common pathway that leads to a UTI, especially organisms of enteric origin (e.g. *E. coli* and other Enterobacteriaceae). This provides a logical explanation for the greater frequency of UTIs in women than in men, and for the increased risk of infection following bladder catheterisation or instrumentation. A single insertion of a catheter into the urinary bladder in ambulatory patients results in urinary infection in 1-2% of cases. Indwelling catheters with open-drainage systems result in bacteriuria in almost 100% of cases within 3-4 days. The use of a closed-drainage system, including a valve to prevent retrograde flow, delays the onset of infection, but ultimately does not prevent it. It is thought that bacteria migrate within the mucopurulent space between the urethra and catheter, and that this leads to the development of bacteriuria in almost all patients within about 4 weeks.

Haematogenous infection of the urinary tract is restricted to a few relatively uncommon microbes, such as *Staphylococcus aureus, Candida* sp., *Salmonella* sp. and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, which cause primary infections elsewhere in the body. Candida albicans readily causes a clinical UTI via the haematogenous route, but is also an infrequent cause of an ascending infection if an indwelling catheter is present, or following antibiotic therapy.

The concept of bacterial virulence or pathogenicity in the urinary tract infers that not all bacterial

species are equally capable of inducing infection. The more compromised the natural defence mechanisms (e.g. obstruction, or bladder catheterisation), the fewer the virulence requirements of any bacterial strain to induce infection. This is supported by the well-documented *in vitro* observation that bacteria isolated from patients with a complicated UTI frequently fail to express virulence factors. The virulence concept also suggests that certain bacterial strains within a species are uniquely equipped with specialised virulence factors, e.g. different types of pili, which facilitate the ascent of bacteria from the faecal flora, introitus vaginae or periurethral area up the urethra into the bladder, or less frequently, allow the organisms to reach the kidneys to induce systemic inflammation.

1.5 Microbiological and other laboratory findings

The number of bacteria is considered relevant for the diagnosis of a UTI. In 1960, Kass developed the concept of significant bacteriuria ($\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL) in the context of pyelonephritis in pregnancy (11). Although this concept introduced quantitative microbiology into the diagnosis of infectious diseases, and is therefore still of general importance, it has recently become clear that there is no fixed bacterial count that is indicative of significant bacteriuria, which can be applied to all kinds of UTIs and in all circumstances. As described in Appendix 16.1, the following bacterial counts are clinically relevant:

- $\geq 10^3$ cfu/mL of uropathogens in a mid-stream sample of urine (MSU) in acute uncomplicated cystitis in women.
- $\geq 10^4$ cfu/mL of uropathogens in an MSU in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis in women.
- $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of uropathogens in an MSU in women, or $\geq 10^4$ cfu/mL uropathogens in an MSU in men, or in straight catheter urine in women, in a complicated UTI.

In a suprapubic bladder puncture specimen, any count of bacteria is relevant. The problem of counting low numbers, however, has to be considered. If an inoculum of 0.1 mL of urine is used and 10 identical colonies are necessary for statistical reasons of confidence, then in this setting, the lowest number that can be counted is 100 cfu/mL of uropathogens. Asymptomatic bacteriuria is diagnosed if two cultures of the same bacterial strain (in most cases the species only is available), taken $\geq$ 24 h apart, show bacteriuria of $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of uropathogens.

It is obvious that methods of urine collection and culture, as well as the quality of laboratory investigations, may vary. Two levels of standard must therefore be used for the management of patients. A basic standard level is necessary for routine assessment, whereas a higher standard level is required for scientific assessment and in special clinical circumstances, e.g. fever of unknown origin in immunocompromised patients. In research, the need for a precise definition of sampling methods, such as the time that urine is kept in the bladder, must be recognised, and these parameters carefully recorded.

In clinical routine assessment, a number of basic criteria must be looked at before a diagnosis can be established, including:

- clinical symptoms;
- results of selected laboratory tests (blood, urine or expressed prostatic secretion [EPS]);
- evidence of the presence of microorganisms by culturing or other specific tests;
- most of these investigations can today be performed in any laboratory.

It has to be considered, however, that microbiological methods and definitions applied must follow accepted standards with regard to specimen transport, pathogen identification, and antimicrobial susceptibility testing. These methods and microbiological definitions may vary between countries and institutions. One example is the breakpoints for classification of pathogen susceptibility. It is important to report not only the results, but also which methods and standards were applied, such as the European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) (12,13), or the National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS) (14). Mixing results obtained by different methods, e.g. rates of bacterial resistance, can be problematic and requires careful interpretation. Histological investigation sometimes shows the presence of non-specific inflammation. Only in some cases, such findings (e.g. prostatitis in patients who have elevated levels of prostate-specific antigen [PSA]) might help determine the appropriate treatment, whereas in more specific inflammation, such as tuberculosis and actinomycosis, histology can be diagnostic. In general, however, histological findings usually contribute very little to the treatment decisions.

1.6 Methodology

The EAU Urological Infections guidelines panel consists of a group of urologists, specialised in the treatment of UTIs. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts at the time of writing. However, following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when treatment decisions for individual patients are being taken. Guidelines help to focus decisions. Clinical decisions must also take into account patients' personal values and

preferences and their individual circumstances.

1.6.1 Level of evidence and grade of guideline recommendations

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1). Guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) in accordance with the Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine levels of evidence (LE) (15). The aim of grading recommendations (GR) is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from at least one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (15).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Conversely, an absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence - although a very important factor - has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (16-18).

The EAU Guidelines Office, do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.

**Modified from Sackett et al. (15).*

1.6.2 Publication history

A first version of the guidelines on the management of UTI and male genital infections was published in the EAU guidelines 2001 and in European Urology (19). A second updated version was included in the EAU guidelines 2006. The EAU/ICUD textbook on Urogenital Infections (20) has become the book of reference for the Guidelines and the recent update 2011. This version included an improved classification of UTI, a chapter on Fournier's gangrene and the updates following a systematic review of the literature on uncomplicated UTI and antibiotic prophylaxis in urological surgery. Guidelines on special conditions of the urogenital tract have also been published elsewhere (21-23).

Standard procedure for EAU publications includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in this field, guiding future updates. An ultra-short reference document is being published alongside this publication. All documents are available with free access through the EAU website Uroweb (http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/).

1.7 References

1. Foxman B. Epidemiology of urinary tract infections: incidence, morbidity, and economic costs. Am J Med 2002 Jul;113 Suppl 1A:5S-13S. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12113866
2. Mazzulli T. Resistance trends in urinary tract pathogens and impact on management. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1720-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352343
3. UVI – nedre urinvägsinfektioner hos kvinnor [UTI – lower urinary tract infections in females]. The Medical Products Agency, Sweden 2007;18 (2).
4. Rüden H, Gastmeier P, Daschner FD, et al. Nosocomial and community-acquired infections in Germany. Summary of the results of the First National Prevalence Study (NIDEP). Infection 1997 Jul-Aug;25(4):199-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9266256
5. Maki DG, Tambyah PA. Engineering out the risk for infection with urinary catheters. Emerg Infect Dis 2001 Mar-Apr;7(2):342-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11294737
6. Tambyah P, Olyszyna D P, Tenke P, Koves P. Urinary catheters and drainage systems: definition, epidemiology and risk factors. In Naber K G, Schaeffer AJ, Heyns C, Matsumoto T et al (eds). Urogenital Infections. European Association of Urology, Arnhem, The Netherlands 2010, p 523-31. http://www.uroweb.org/gls/pdf/Urological%20Infections%202010.pdf
7. Bjerklund Johansen TE, Cek M, Naber KG, et al; PEP and PEAP-study investigators and the board of the European Society of Infections in Urology. Prevalence of Hospital-Acquired Urinary Tract Infections in Urology departments. Eur Urol 2007;51(4):1100-1012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17049419
8. Gyssens IC. Antibiotic policy. Internat J of Antimicrob Agents 2011, 38S:11-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22018989
9. Oteo J, Pérez-Vázquez M, Campos J. Extended-spectrum [beta]-lactamas producing Escherichia coli: changing epidemiology and clinical impact. Curr Opin Infect Dis 2010; 23:320-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20614578
10. Cassier P, Lallechère S, Aho S, Astruc K et al. Cephalosporin and fluoroquinolone combination are highly associated with CTX-M β-lactamase-producing Escherichia coli: a case control study in a French teaching hospital. Clin Microbiol Infect 2011;17(11):1746-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20840333
11. Kass EH. Bacteriuria and pyelonephritis of pregnancy. Arch Intern Med 1960 Feb;105:194-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14404662
12. European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Dieases (ESCMID). EUCAST Definitive Document E.DEF 3.1, June 2000: Determination of minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) of antibacterial agents by agar dilution. Clin Microbiol Infect 2000 Sep;6(9):509-15. http://www.eucast.org http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11168187
13. European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) of the European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Dieases (ESCMID). EUCAST Definitive Document E. Def 1.2, May 2000: Terminology relating to methods for the determination of susceptibility of bacteria to antimicrobial agents. Clin Microbiol Infect 2000 Sep;6(9):503-8. http://www.eucast.org http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11168186
14. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards (NCCLS). Methods for dilution antimicrobial susceptibility tests for bacteria that grow aerobically. Approved Standard 4th Edition M7-A5 (2002) and M100-S12, 2004. Wayne, PA.
15. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
16. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
17. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948

18. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long
19. Naber KG, Bergman B, Bishop MC, et al; Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the Health Care Office (HCO) of the European Association of Urology (EAU). EAU guidelines for the management of urinary and male genital tract infections. Eur Urol 2001 Nov;40(5):576-88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752870
20. Naber K G, Schaeffer A J, Heyns C F, Matsumoto T et al (eds). Urogenital Infections. European Association of Urology - International Consultations on Urological Diseases 2010. Arnhem, The Netherlands. ISBN:978-90-79754-41-0. http://www.icud.info/urogenitalinfections.html
21. Schneede P, Tenke P, Hofstetter AG; Urinary Tract Infection Working Group of the Health Care Office of the European Association of Urology. Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) - a synoptic overview for urologists. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814668.
22. Çek M, Lenk S, Naber KG, et al; Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office. EAU guidelines for the management of genitourinary tuberculosis. Eur Urol 2005 Sep;48(3):353-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15982799
23. Bichler KH, Savatovsky I; the Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the Guidelines Office of the European Association of Urology (EAU):, Naber KG, Bischop MC, Bjerklund-Johansen TE, Botto H, Çek M, Grabe M, Lobel B, Redorta JP, Tenke P. EAU guidelines for the management of urogenital schistosomiasis. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):998-1003. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16519990

2. CLASSIFICATION OF UTIs

2.1 Introduction

Traditionally, UTIs are classified based on clinical symptoms, laboratory data, and microbiological findings. Practically, UTIs have been divided in uncomplicated and complicated UTIs, and sepsis. It is important to underline that the following proposed classification is still not validated or recognised. It is a working instrument.

A critical review of present classifications was undertaken for the EAU/ICUD Urogenital Infections initiative (1) in Appendix 16.1. The overall aim is to provide the clinician and researcher with a standardised tool and nomenclature for UTI. The present guidelines give a short summary of a tentative improved system of classification of UTI based on:

- anatomical level of infection;
- grade of severity of infection;
- underlying risk factors;
- microbiological findings.

The symptoms, signs and laboratory finding focus on the anatomical level and the degree of severity of the infection. The risk factor analysis contributes to define any additional therapeutic measure required (i.e. drainage).

2.2 Level of infection

The symptoms, as presented in the Appendix 16.1, focus on the level of infection, defined as:

- urethritis (UR);
- cystitis (CY);
- pyelonephritis (PN);
- sepsis (US).

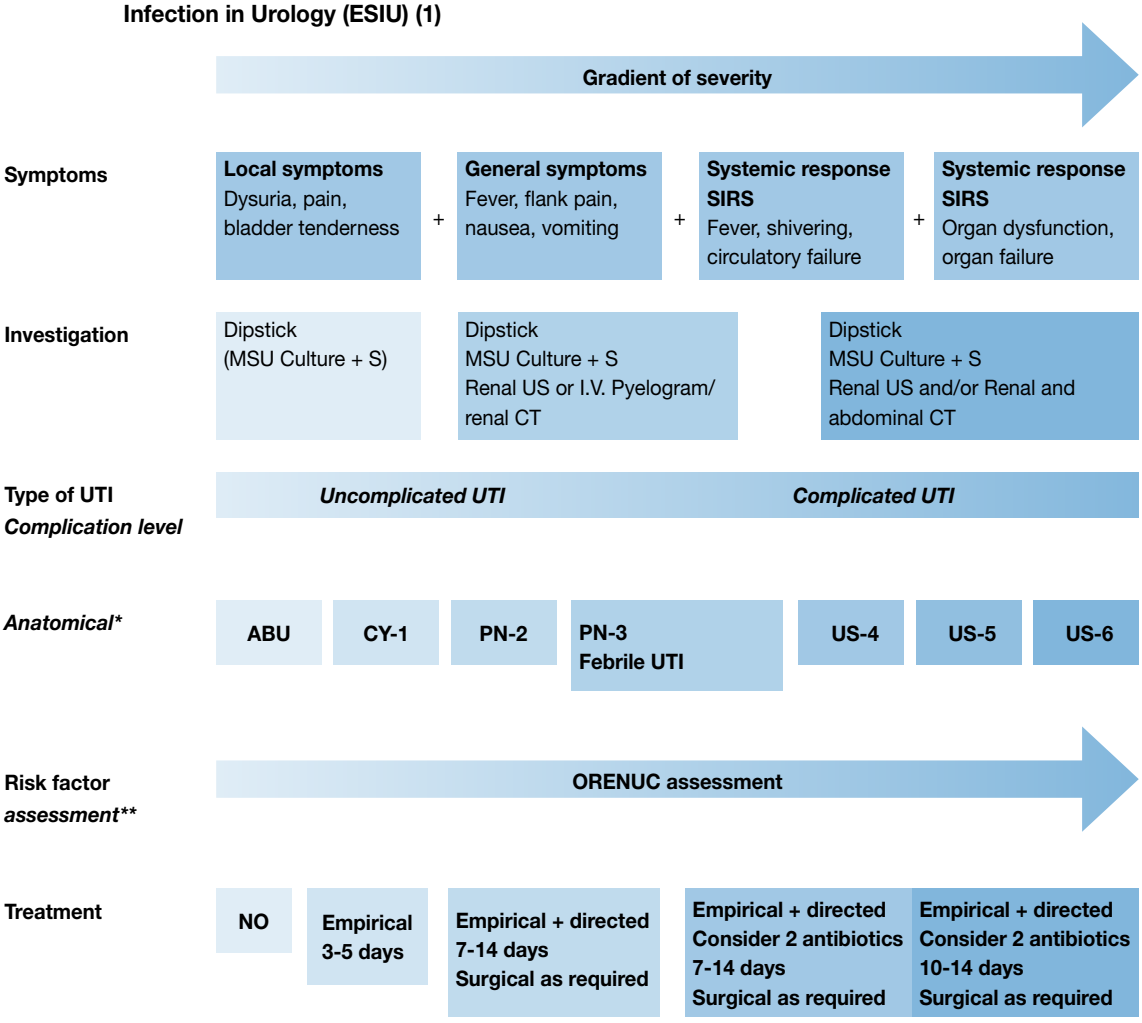
Urethritis being poorly understood is for the time being not included in the algorithm and treatment strategy of pure UTI. The male genital infections prostatitis and epididymitis are also not included.

Asymptomatic bacteriuria (ABU) needs to be considered a special entity because it can have its source in both the lower and upper urinary tracts, and requires no treatment unless the patient is subjected to urological surgery.

2.3 Grade of severity

The grade of severity is set on a scale of 1-6 that is related to the risk of fatal outcome (Figure 2.1)

Figure 2.1: Traditional and improved classification of UTI as proposed by the EAU European Section of Infection in Urology (ESIU) (1)



** see Figure 2.2*
*** see Table 2.1*

Table 2.1: Host risk factors in UTI

Type	Category of risk factor	Examples of risk factors
O	No known/associated RF	- Healthy premenopausal women
R	RF of recurrent UTI, but no risk of severe outcome	- Sexual behaviour and contraceptive devices - Hormonal deficiency in post menopause - Secretory type of certain blood groups - Controlled diabetes mellitus
E	Extra-urogenital RF, with risk or more severe outcome	- Pregnancy - Male gender - Badly controlled diabetes mellitus - Relevant immunosuppression* - Connective tissue diseases* - Prematurity, new-born
N	Nephropathic disease, with risk of more severe outcome	- Relevant renal insufficiency* - Polycystic nephropathy

U	Urological RF, with risk or more severe outcome, which can be resolved during therapy	- Ureteral obstruction (i.e. stone, stricture) - Transient short-term urinary tract catheter - Asymptomatic Bacteriuria** - Controlled neurogenic bladder dysfunction - Urological surgery
C	Permanent urinary Catheter and non resolvable urological RF, with risk of more severe outcome	- Long-term urinary tract catheter treatment - Non resolvable urinary obstruction - Badly controlled neurogenic bladder

*RF = Risk Factor; * = not well defined; ** = usually in combination with other RF (i.e. pregnancy, urological internvention).*

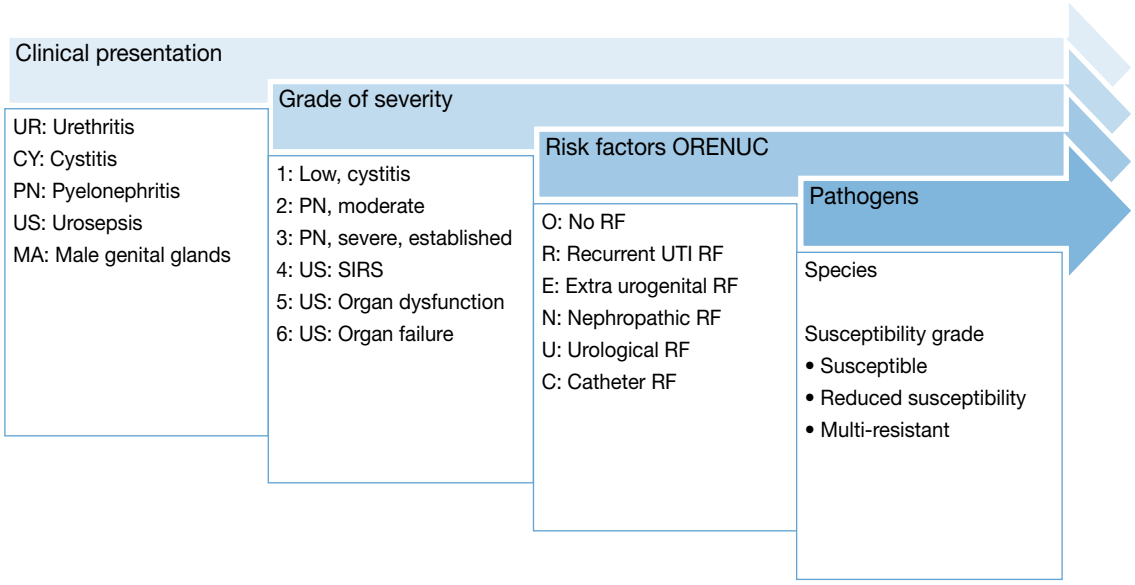
2.4 Pathogens

Urine culture will usually identify the causative pathogen (≥ 10^4 cfu/mL) and its susceptibility pattern. Both characteristics can be introduced in the final classification of the clinical stage of infection. The degree of susceptibility is defined as grade a (susceptible) to c (resistant).

2.5 Classification of UTI

Figure 2.2 shows a summary of the additive parameters that make up an individual class of UTI.

Figure 2.2: Additive parameters of UTI classification and severity assessment



By cumulating the different parameters, a UTI can be classified as follows (1):

- CY-1R: *E. coli* (a): simple cystitis but recurrent with susceptibility to standard antibiotics.
- PN-3U: *K pneumonia* (b): severe pyelonephritis (with high fever and vomiting), with underlying urological disease (e.g. stones or obstruction) due to Klebsiella sp., with a moderate antibiotic resistance profile.
- US-5C: *Enterococcus* sp (a): severe urosepsis with an antibiotic-sensitive Enterococcus sp. in a patient with an indwelling catheter.

2.6 Reference

1. Bjerklund Johansen T E, Botto H, Cek M, Grabe M et al. Critical review of current definitions of urinary tract infections and proposal of an ESU/ESIU classification system. Internat J Antimicrob Agents 2011;38S:64-70.

3. UNCOMPLICATED UTIs IN ADULTS

3.1 Summary and recommendations

This chapter is by itself the summary of the EAU/ICUD initiative on urogenital infections, chapter 3 on uncomplicated UTI (1).

3.2 Definition

Acute, uncomplicated UTIs in adults include episodes of acute cystitis and acute pyelonephritis in otherwise healthy individuals. These UTIs are seen mostly in women without structural and functional abnormalities within the urinary tract, kidney diseases, or comorbidity that could lead to more serious outcomes and therefore require additional attention (2).

*3.2.1 **Aetiological spectrum***

The spectrum of aetiological agents is similar in uncomplicated upper and lower UTIs, with *E. coli* the causative pathogen in 70-95% of cases and *Staphylococcus saprophyticus* in 5-10%. Occasionally, other Enterobacteriaceae, such as *Proteus mirabilis* and *Klebsiella sp*., are isolated (3) (LE: 2a).

3.3 Acute uncomplicated cystitis in premenopausal, non-pregnant women

*3.3.1 **Diagnosis***

3.3.1.1 Clinical diagnosis

The diagnosis of acute uncomplicated cystitis can be made with a high probability based on a focused history of urinary irritative symptomatology (dysuria, frequency and urgency) and the absence of vaginal discharge or irritation, in those women who have no other risk factors for complicated UTIs (4) (LE: 2a, GR: B).

3.3.1.2 Laboratory diagnosis

Urine dipstick testing, as opposed to urinary microscopy, is a reasonable alternative to urinalysis for diagnosis of acute uncomplicated cystitis (5,6) (LE: 2a, GR: B).

Urine cultures are recommended for those with: (i) suspected acute pyelonephritis; (ii) symptoms that do not resolve or recur within 2-4 weeks after the completion of treatment; and (iii) those women who present with atypical symptoms (7,8) (LE: 4, GR: B).

A colony count of $\geq 10^3$ cfu/mL of uropathogens is microbiologically diagnostic in women who present with symptoms of acute uncomplicated cystitis (9) (LE: 3, GR: B).

Women who present with atypical symptoms of either acute uncomplicated cystitis or acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis, as well as those who fail to respond to appropriate antimicrobial therapy should be considered for additional diagnostic studies (LE:4, GR: B).

*3.3.2 **Therapy***

Antibiotic therapy is recommended because clinical success is significantly more likely in women treated with antibiotics compared with placebo (10) (LE: 1a, GR: A).

The choice of an antibiotic for therapy should be guided by:

- spectrum and susceptibility patterns of the aetiological uropathogens;
- efficacy for the particular indication in clinical studies;
- tolerability;
- adverse effects;
- cost;
- availability.

According to these principles and the available susceptibility patterns in Europe, fosfomycin trometamol 3 g single dose, pivmecillinam 400 mg for 3 days, and nitrofurantoin macrocrystal 100 mg bid for 5 days, are considered as drugs of first choice in many countries, when available (11-13) (LE: 1a, GR: A).

Cotrimoxazole 160/800 mg bid for 3 days or trimethoprim 200 mg for 5 days should only be considered as drugs of first choice in areas with known resistance rates for *E. coli* of < 20% (14,15) (LE: 1b, GR: B).

Alternative antibiotics are ciprofloxacin 250 mg bid, ciprofloxacin extended release 500 mg qd, levofloxacin 250 mg qd, norfloxacin 400 mg bid, and ofloxacin 200 mg bid, each as a 3-day course (16) (LE: 1b, GR: B). However, adverse effects have to be considered (Table 3.1).

Table 3.1: Recommended antimicrobial therapy in acute uncomplicated cystitis in otherwise healthy premenopausal women

Antibiotics	Daily dose	Duration of therapy
Fosfomycin trometamol°	3 g SD	1 day
Nitrofurantoin	50 mg q6h	7 days
Nitrofurantoin macrocrystal	100 mg bid	5-7 days
Pivmecillinam*	400 mg bid	3 days
Pivmecillinam*	200 mg bid	7 days
Alternatives		
Ciprofloxacin	250 mg bid	3 days
Levofloxacin	250 mg qd	3 days
Norfloxacin	400 mg bid	3 days
Ofloxacin	200 mg bid	3 days
Cefpodoxime proxetil	100 mg bid	3 days
*If local resistance pattern is known (*E. coli *resistance < 20%)*		
Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole	160/800mg bid	3 days
Trimethoprim	200 mg bid	5 days

°not available in all countries.
**available only in Scandinavia, the Netherlands, Austria, and Canada.*

3.3.3 ***Follow-up***

Routine post-treatment urinalysis or urine cultures in asymptomatic patients are not indicated (17) (LE: 2b, GR: B).

In women whose symptoms do not resolve by the end of treatment, and in those whose symptoms resolve but recur within 2 weeks, urine culture and antimicrobial susceptibility tests should be performed (LE: 4, GR: B). For therapy in this situation, one should assume that the infecting organism is not susceptible to the agent originally used. Retreatment with a 7-day regimen using another agent should be considered (LE: 4, GR: C).

3.4 Acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis in premenopausal, non-pregnant women

3.4.1 ***Diagnosis***

3.4.1.1 Clinical diagnosis

Acute pyelonephritis is suggested by flank pain, nausea and vomiting, fever (> 38°C), or costovertebral angle tenderness, and it can occur in the absence of symptoms of cystitis (18).

3.4.1.2 Laboratory diagnosis

Urinalysis (e.g. using a dipstick method), including the assessment of white and red blood cells and nitrites, is recommended for routine diagnosis (19) (LE: 4, GR: C).

Colony counts ≥ 10^4 cfu/mL of uropathogens are considered to be indicative of clinically relevant bacteriuria (20) (LE: 2b, GR: C).

3.4.1.3 Imaging diagnosis

Evaluation of the upper urinary tract with ultrasound should be performed to rule out urinary obstruction or renal stone disease (LE: 4, GR: C).

Additional investigations, such as an unenhanced helical computed tomography (CT), excretory urography, or dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scanning, should be considered if the patients remain febrile after 72 h of treatment (LE: 4, GR: C).

3.4.2 ***Therapy***

As a result of the lack of suitable surveillance studies, the spectrum and susceptibility patterns of uropathogens that cause uncomplicated cystitis can be used as a guide for empirical therapy (3) (LE: 4, GR: B). However, *S. saprophyticus* is less frequent in acute pyelonephritis as compared to acute cystitis (LE: 4, GR: B).

3.4.2.1 Mild and moderate cases of acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis (Table 3.2)

In mild and moderate cases of acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis, oral therapy of 10-14 days is usually sufficient (LE: 1b, GR: B).

A fluoroquinolone for 7-10 days can be recommended as first-line therapy if the resistance rate of *E. coli* is still < 10% (21) (LE: 1b, GR: A).

If the fluoroquinolone dose is increased, the treatment can probably be reduced to 5 days (22,23) (LE: 1b, GR: B). However, increasing numbers of fluoroquinolone-resistant *E. coli* in the community have already been found in some parts of the world, thus restricting the empirical use of fluoroquinolones.

A third-generation oral cephalosporin, such as cefpodoxime proxetil or ceftibuten, could be an alternative (24,25) (LE: 1b, GR: B). However, available studies have demonstrated only equivalent clinical, but not microbiological, efficacy compared with ciprofloxacin.

As a result of increasing *E. coli* resistance rates >10%, cotrimoxazole is not suitable for empirical therapy in most areas, but it can be used after sensitivity has been confirmed through susceptibility testing (26) (LE: 1b, GR: B).

Co-amoxiclav is not recommended as a drug of first choice for empirical oral therapy of acute pyelonephritis (LE: 4, GR: B). It is recommended when susceptibility testing shows a susceptible Gram-positive organism (LE: 4, GR: C).

In communities with high rates of fluoroquinolone-resistant and extended-spectrum β-lactamase (ESBL)-producing *E. coli* (> 10%), initial empirical therapy with an aminoglycoside or carbapenem has to be considered until susceptibility testing demonstrates that oral drugs can also be used (LE: 4, GR: B).

3.4.2.2 Severe cases of acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis (Table 3.2)

Patients with severe pyelonephritis who cannot take oral medication because of systemic symptoms such as nausea and vomiting, have to be treated initially with one of the following parenteral antibiotics:

	LE	**GR**
a parenteral fluoroquinolone, in communities with *E. coli* fluoroquinolone-resistance rates < 10%.	1b	B
a third-generation cephalosporin, in communities with ESBL-producing *E. coli* resistance rates < 10%.	1b	B
an aminopenicillin plus a β-lactamase-inhibitor in cases of known susceptible Gram-positive pathogens.	4	B
an aminoglycoside or carbapenem in communities with fluoroquinolone and/or ESBL-producing *E. coli* resistance rates > 10%.	1b	B

Hospital admission should be considered if complicating factors cannot be ruled out by available diagnostic procedures and/or the patient has clinical signs and symptoms of sepsis (LE: 4, GR: B).

After improvement, the patient can be switched to an oral regimen using one of the above-mentioned antibacterials, if active against the infecting organism, to complete the 1-2-week course of therapy (LE: 1b, GR: B).

Table 3.2: Recommended initial empirical antimicrobial therapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis in otherwise healthy premenopausal women

I. Oral therapy in mild and moderate cases			
Antibiotics	Daily dose	Duration of therapy	Reference
Ciprofloxacin[1]	500-750 mg bid	7-10 days	(21)
Levofloxacin[1]	250-500 mg qd	7-10 days	(27)
Levofloxacin	750 mg qd	5 days	(22,23)
Alternatives (clinical but not microbiological equivalent efficacy compared with fluoroquinolones):			
Cefpodoxime proxetil	200 mg bid	10 days	(25)
Ceftibuten	400 mg qd	10 days	(24)
Only if the pathogen is known to be susceptible (not for initial empirical therapy):			

Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole	160/800 mg bid	14 days	(21)
Co-amoxiclav[2,3]	0.5/0.125 g tid	14 days	

[1]lower dose studied, but higher dose recommended by experts.
[2]not studied as monotherapy for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.
[3]mainly for Gram-positive pathogens.

II. Initial parenteral therapy in severe cases After improvement, the patient can be switched to an oral regimen using one of the above-mentioned antibacterials (if active against the infecting organism) to complete the 1-2-week course of therapy. Therefore, only daily dose and no duration of therapy are indicated.		
Antibiotics	Daily dose	Reference
Ciprofloxacin	400 mg bid	(21)
Levofloxacin[1]	250-500 mg qd	(27)
Levofloxacin	750 mg qd	(22)
Alternatives:		
Cefotaxime[2]	2 g tid	
Ceftriaxone[1,4]	1-2 g qd	(28)
Ceftazidime[2]	1-2 g tid	(29)
Cefepime[1,4]	1-2 g bid	(30)
Co-amoxiclav[2,3]	1.5 g tid	
Piperacillin/tazobactam[1,4]	2.5-4.5 g tid	(31)
Gentamicin[2]	5 mg/kg qd	
Amikacin[2]	15 mg/kg qd	
Ertapenem[4]	1 g qd	(28)
Imipenem/cilastatin[4]	0.5/0.5 g tid	(31)
Meropenem[4]	1 g tid	(29)
Doripenem[4]	0.5 g tid	(32)

[1]lower dose studied, but higher dose recommended by experts.
[2]not studied as monotherapy in acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis.
[3]mainly for Gram-positive pathogens.
[4]same protocol for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated UTI (stratification not always possible).

*3.4.3 **Follow-up***

Routine post-treatment urinalysis and urine cultures in an asymptomatic patient might not be indicated (LE: 4, GR: C).

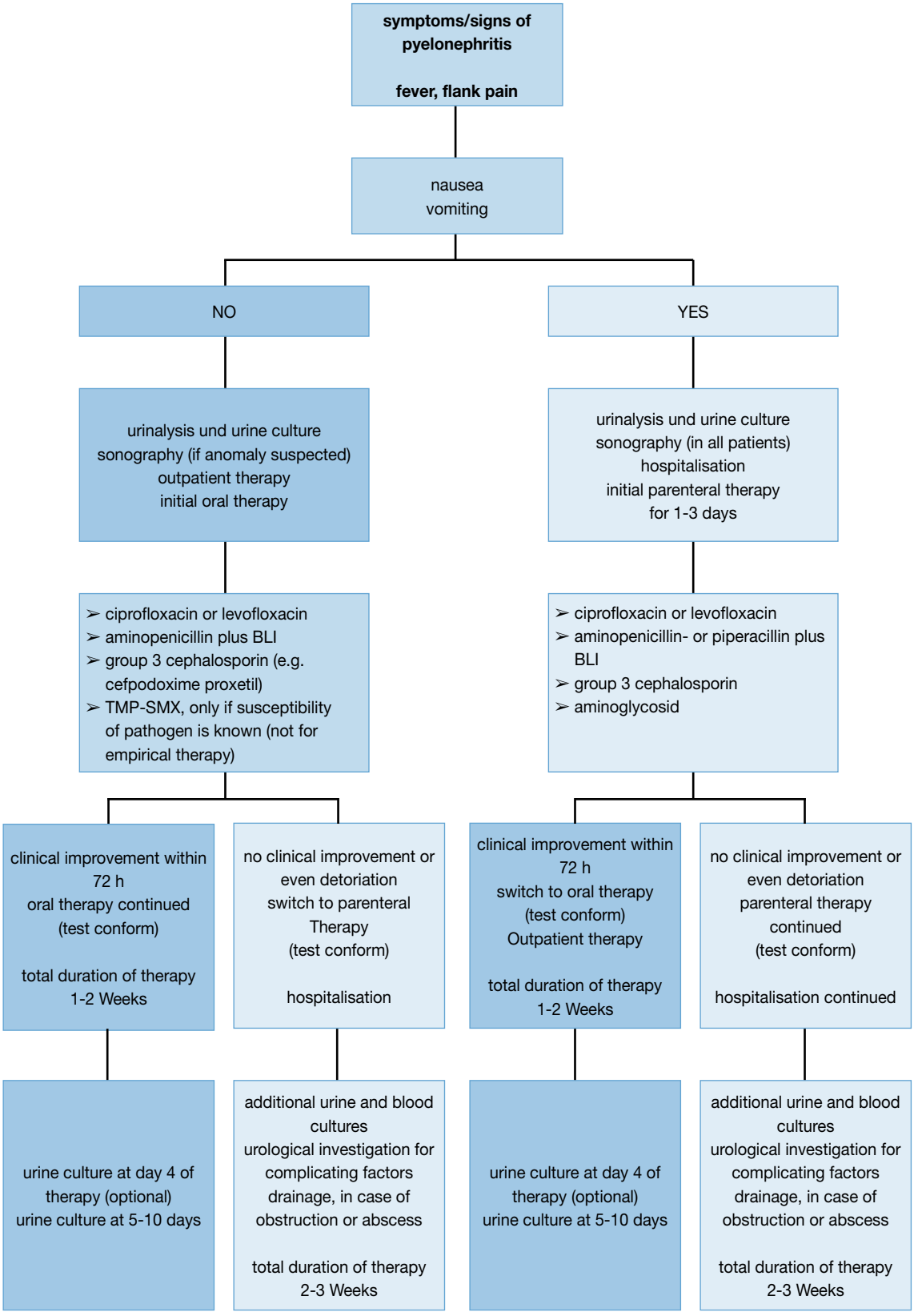
In women whose pyelonephritis symptoms do not improve within 3 days, or resolve and then recur within 2 weeks, repeated urine culture and antimicrobial susceptibility tests and an appropriate investigation, such as renal ultrasound, CT or renal scintigraphy, should be performed (LE: 4, GR: B).

In patients with no urological abnormality, it should be assumed that the infecting organism is not susceptible to the agent originally used, and an alternative tailored treatment should be considered based on culture results (LE: 4, GR: B).

For patients who relapse with the same pathogen, the diagnosis of uncomplicated pyelonephritis should be reconsidered. Appropriate diagnostic steps are necessary to rule out any complicating factors (LE: 4, GR: C).

An algorithm of the clinical management of acute pyelonephritis is shown in Figure 3.1.

Figure 3.1: Clinical management of acute pyelonephritis



BLI = β-lactamase inhibitor; TMP = trimethoprim; SMX = sulphamethoxazole.

3.5 Recurrent (uncomplicated) UTIs in women

3.5.1 ***Diagnosis***

Recurrent UTIs are common among young, healthy women, even though they generally have anatomically and physiologically normal urinary tracts (33) (LE: 2a).

Recurrent UTIs need to be diagnosed by urine culture (LE: 4, GR: A).

Excretory urography, cystography and cystoscopy are not routinely recommended for evaluation of women with recurrent UTIs (34) (LE: 1b, GR: B).

3.5.2 ***Prevention***

Different therapeutic options can be recommended to the patient.

3.5.2.1 Antimicrobial prophylaxis

Antimicrobial prophylaxis for prevention of recurrent UTI should be considered only after counselling and behavioural modification has been attempted (LE: 4, GR: A).

Before any prophylaxis regimen is initiated, eradication of a previous UTI should be confirmed by a negative urine culture 1-2 weeks after treatment (LE: 4, GR: A).

Continuous or postcoital antimicrobial prophylaxis should be considered to prevent recurrent uncomplicated cystitis in women in whom non-antimicrobial measures have been unsuccessful (35) (LE: 1a, GR: A). The choice of antibiotics should be based upon the identification and susceptibility pattern of the organism that causes the UTI and the patient's history of drug allergies. Drug regimens are shown in Tables 3.3 and 3.4.

Table 3.3: Continuous antimicrobial prophylaxis regimens for women with recurrent UTIs (33)

Regimens	Expected UTIs per year
TMP-SMX* 40/200 mg once daily	0-0.2
TMP-SMX 40/200 mg thrice weekly	0.1
Trimethoprim 100 mg once daily	0-1.5**
Nitrofurantoin 50 mg once daily	0-0.6
Nitrofurantoin 100 mg once daily	0-0.7
Cefaclor 250 mg once daily	0.0
Cephalexin 125 mg once daily	0.1
Cephalexin 250 mg once daily	0.2
Norfloxacin 200 mg once daily	0.0
Ciprofloxacin 125 mg once daily	0.0
Fosfomycin 3 g every 10 days	0.14

**Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole*

***high recurrence rates observed with trimethoprim use associated with trimethoprim resistance*

Table 3.4: Postcoital antimicrobial prophylaxis regimens for women with recurrent UTIs (33)

Regimens	Expected UTIs per year
TMP-SMX* 40/200 mg	0.30
TMP-SMX 80/400 mg	0.00
Nitrofurantoin 50 or 100 mg	0.10
Cephalexin 250 mg	0.03
Ciprofloxacin 125 mg	0.00
Norfloxacin 200 mg	0.00
Ofloxacin 100 mg	0.06

**Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole*

In appropriate women with recurrent uncomplicated cystitis, self-diagnosis and self-treatment with a short-course regimen of an antimicrobial agent should be considered (36) (LE: 2b, GR: A).

3.5.2.2 Immunoactive prophylaxis

OM-89 (Uro-Vaxom®) is sufficiently well-documented and has been shown to be more effective than placebo in several randomised trials. Therefore, it can be recommended for immunoprophylaxis in female patients with recurrent uncomplicated UTI (37,38) (LE: 1a, GR: B). Its efficacy in other groups of patients, and its efficacy relative to antimicrobial prophylaxis remain to be established.

For other immunotherapeutic products on the market, larger phase III studies are still missing. In smaller phase II studies, StroVac® and Solco-Urovac® have been shown to be effective when administered with a booster cycle of the same agents (LE: 1a, GR: C).

For other immunotherapeutic products, such as Urostim® and Urvakol®, no controlled studies are available. Therefore, no recommendations are possible.

3.5.2.3 Prophylaxis with probiotics

Accessibility of clinically proven probiotics for UTI prophylaxis is currently not universal. Only the Lactobacillus strains specifically tested in studies should be used for prophylaxis.

When commercially available, it is reasonable to consider the use of intravaginal probiotics that contain L. rhamnosus GR-1 and L. reuteri RC-14 for the prevention of recurrent UTI (39), and these products can be used once or twice weekly (LE: 4, GR: C).

Daily use of the oral product with strains GR-1 and RC-14 is worth testing given that it can restore the vaginal lactobacilli, compete with urogenital pathogens, and prevent bacterial vaginosis, a condition that increases the risk of UTI (39) (LE: 1b, GR: C).

3.5.2.4 Prophylaxis with cranberry

Despite the lack of pharmacological data and the small number of weak clinical studies, there is evidence to suggest that cranberry (Vaccinium macrocarpon) is useful in reducing the rate of lower UTIs in women (40,41) (LE: 1b, GR: C).

For everyday practice, the daily consumption of cranberry products, giving a minimum of 36 mg/day proanthocyanindin A (the active compound), is recommended (LE: 1b, GR: C). The best approach is to use those compounds that have demonstrated clear bioactivity in urine.

3.6 UTIs in pregnancy

Urinary tract infections are common during pregnancy. Most women acquire bacteriuria before pregnancy, and 20-40% of women with asymptomatic bacteriuria develop pyelonephritis during pregnancy.

3.6.1 ***Definition of significant bacteriuria***

- in an asymptomatic pregnant woman, bacteriuria is considered significant if two consecutive voided urine specimens grow $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of the same bacterial species on quantitative culture; or a single catheterised specimen grows $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of a uropathogen (17) (LE: 2a, GR: A).
- in a pregnant woman with symptoms compatible with UTI, bacteriuria is considered significant if a voided or catheterised urine specimen grows $\geq 10^3$ cfu/mL of a uropathogen (LE: 4, GR: B).

3.6.2 ***Screening***

Pregnant women should be screened for bacteriuria during the first trimester (42) (LE: 1a, GR: A).

3.6.3 ***Treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria***

Asymptomatic bacteriuria detected in pregnancy should be eradicated with antimicrobial therapy (42) (LE: 1a, GR: A). Recommended antibiotic regimens are shown in Table 3.5.

Table 3.5: Treatment regimens for asymptomatic bacteriuria and cystitis in pregnancy (44)

Antibiotics	Duration of therapy	Comments
Nitrofurantoin (Macrobid®) 100 mg	q12 h, 3-5 days	Avoid in G6PD deficiency
Amoxicillin 500 mg	q8 h, 3-5 days	Increasing resistance
Co-amoxicillin/clavulanate 500 mg	q12 h, 3-5 days	
Cephalexin (Keflex®) 500 mg	q8 h, 3-5 days	Increasing resistance
Fosfomycin 3 g	Single dose	
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	q12 h, 3-5 days	Avoid trimethoprim in first trimester/term and sulfamethoxazole in third trimester/term

G6PD = glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase

3.6.4 *Duration of therapy*

Short courses of antimicrobial therapy (3 days) should be considered for the treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria and cystitis in pregnancy (43) (LE: 1a, GR: A).

3.6.5 *Follow-up*

Urine cultures should be obtained soon after completion of therapy for asymptomatic bacteriuria and symptomatic UTI in pregnancy (LE: 4, GR: A).

3.6.6 *Prophylaxis*

Postcoital prophylaxis should be considered in pregnant women with a history of frequent UTIs before onset of pregnancy, to reduce their risk of UTI (44) (LE: 2b, GR: B).

3.6.7 *Treatment of pyelonephritis*

Outpatient management with appropriate antibiotics should be considered in women with pyelonephritis in pregnancy, provided symptoms are mild and close follow-up is feasible (45) (LE: 1b, GR: A). Recommended antibiotic regimens are shown in Table 3.6 (46).

Table 3.6: Treatment regimens for pyelonephritis in pregnancy

Antibiotics	Dose
Ceftriaxone	1-2 g IV or IM q24 h
Aztreonam	1 g IV q8-12 h
Piperacillin-tazobactam	3.375-4.5 g IV q6 h
Cefepime	1 g IV q12 h
Imipenem-cilastatin	500 mg IV q6 h
Ampicillin +	2 g IV q6 h
Gentamicin	3-5 mg/kg/day IV in 3 divided doses

3.6.8 *Complicated UTI*

Prolonged antibiotic therapy (7-10 days) should be considered in this patient population (LE: 4, GR: B). When indicated, ultrasonography or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) should be used preferentially to avoid radiation risk to the foetus (LE: 4, GR: B).

3.7 UTIs in postmenopausal women

3.7.1 *Risk factors*

	Reference	LE
In older institutionalised women, urine catheterisation and functional status deterioration appear to be the most important risk factors associated with UTI.	47	2a
Atrophic vaginitis.	47	2a
Incontinence, cystocele and post-voiding residual urine.	47	2a
UTI before menopause.	47	2a
Non-secretor status of blood group antigens.	47	2a

3.7.2 *Diagnosis*

Diagnosis of UTI in postmenopausal women should always consider the following:

	Reference	LE	GR
History, physical examination and urinalysis, including culture.		4	B
Genitourinary symptoms are not necessarily related to UTI and an indication for antimicrobial treatment.	48	1b	B

3.7.3 ***Treatment***

	Reference	LE	GR
Treatment of acute cystitis in postmenopausal women is similar to that in premenopausal women, however, short-term therapy is not so well-established as in premenopausal women.	49	1b	C
Treatment of pyelonephritis in postmenopausal women is similar to that in premenopausal women.		4	C
Asymptomatic bacteriuria in elderly women should not be treated with antibiotics.	17	2b	A
Optimal antimicrobials, doses and duration of treatment in elderly women appear to be similar to those recommended for younger postmenopausal women.		4	C
Oestrogen (especially vaginal) can be administered for prevention of UTI, but results are contradictory.	50	1b	C
Alternative methods, such as cranberry and probiotic lactobacilli, can contribute but they are not sufficient to prevent recurrent UTI.	51	1b	C
If complicating factors, such as urinary obstruction and neurogenic bladder, are ruled out, antimicrobial prophylaxis should be carried out as recommended for premenopausal women.		4	C

3.8 Acute uncomplicated UTIs in young men

3.8.1 ***Men with acute uncomplicated UTI***

	Reference	LE	GR
Only a small number of 15-50-year-old men suffer from acute uncomplicated UTI.	52		
Such men should receive, as minimum therapy, a 7-day antibiotic regimen.		4	B

3.8.2 ***Men with UTI and concomitant prostate infection***

	Reference	LE	GR
Most men with febrile UTI have a concomitant infection of the prostate, as measured by transient increases in serum PSA and prostate volume.	53	2a	
Urological evaluation should be carried out routinely in adolescents and men with febrile UTI, pyelonephritis, or recurrent infection, or whenever a complicating factor is suspected.		4	A
A minimum treatment duration of 2 weeks is recommended, preferably with a fluoroquinolone since prostatic involvement is frequent.	54	2a	B

3.9 Asymptomatic bacteriuria

3.9.1 ***Diagnosis***

	Reference	LE	GR
For women, a count of $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of a microorganism in a voided urine specimen is diagnostic of bacteriuria.	17	2b	B
For men, a count of $\geq 10^3$ cfu/mL of a microorganism in a voided urine specimen is diagnostic of bacteriuria.	55	2a	B
For men with specimens collected using an external condom catheter, $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL is an appropriate quantitative diagnostic criterion.	56	2a	B
For patients with indwelling urethral catheters, a count of $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL is diagnostic of bacteriuria.	17	2b	B
For a urine specimen collected by in and out catheter, a count of ≥ 100 cfu/mL is consistent with bacteriuria.	17	2a	B
Pyuria in the absence of signs or symptoms in a person with bacteriuria should not be interpreted as symptomatic infection or as an indication for antimicrobial therapy.	17	2b	B

3.9.2 *Screening*

Screening for and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria is recommended:

	Reference	LE	GR
For pregnant women.	42	1a	A
Before an invasive genitourinary procedure for which there is a risk of mucosal bleeding.	17	1b	A

Screening for or treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria is not recommended for:

	Reference	LE	GR
Premenopausal, non-pregnant women	17	1a	A
Postmenopausal women	17	1b	A
Women with diabetes	57	1b	A
Healthy men	58	2b	B
Residents of long-term care facilities	17	1a	A
Patients with an indwelling urethral catheter	17	1b	
Patients with nephrostomy tubes or ureteric stents		4	C
Patients with spinal cord injury	59	2a	B
Patients with candiduria	60	1b	A

Screening for or treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria in renal transplant patients beyond the first 6 months is not recommended (LE: 2b, GR: B).

No recommendation can be made with respect to screening for or treatment of bacteriuria in patients with neutropenia (LE: 4).

3.10 References

1. Naber KG (chair), Schaeffer AJ, Hynes CF, et al (Eds) (2010). EAU/International Consultation on Urological Infections. The Netherlands, European Association of Urology.
2. Hooton TM, Stamm WE. Diagnosis and treatment of uncomplicated urinary tract infection. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1997 Sep;11:(3)551-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9378923
3. Naber KG, Schito G, Botto H, et al. Surveillance study in Europe and Brazil on clinical aspects and Antimicrobial Resistance Epidemiology in Females with Cystitis (ARESC): implications for empiric therapy. Eur Urol 2008 Nov; 54(5):1164-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18511178
4. Stamm WE, Hooton TM. Management of urinary tract infections in adults. N Engl J Med 1993 Oct 28; 329(18):1328-34. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8413414
5. Bradbury SM. Collection of urine specimens in general practice: to clean or not to clean? J R Coll Gen Pract 1988 Aug; 38(313): 363-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3256648
6. Lifshitz E, Kramer L. Outpatient urine culture: does collection technique matter? Arch Intern Med 2000 Sep 11;160(16):2537-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10979067
7. Foxman B, Brown P. Epidemiology of urinary tract infections: transmission and risk factors, incidence, and costs. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2003 Jun;17(2):227-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12848468
8. Fihn SD. Clinical practice. Acute uncomplicated urinary tract infection in women. N Engl J Med 2003 Jul 17;349(3):259-66. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12867610
9. Kunin C. Urinary tract infections. In: Detection, prevention and management. 5th edition.1997, Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger.
10. Falagas ME, Kotsantis IK, Vouloumanou EK,, et al. Antibiotics versus placebo in the treatment of women with uncomplicated cystitis: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Infect 2009 Feb;58(2):91-102.. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19454521

11. Lecomte F, Allaert FA. Single-dose treatment of cystitis with fosfomycin trometamol (Monuril): analysis of 15 comparative trials on 2,048 patients. Giorn It Ost Gin 1997;19:399-404.
12. Nicolle LE. Pivmecillinam in the treatment of urinary tract infections. J Antimicrob Chemother 2000 Sep;46 Suppl 1:35-9; discussion 63-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11051622
13. Gupta, K, Hooton TM, Roberts PL, et al. Short-course nitrofurantoin for the treatment of acute uncomplicated cystitis in women. Arch Intern Med 2007 Nov;167(20):2207-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17998493
14. Warren JW, Abrutyn E, Hebel JR, et al. Guidelines for antimicrobial treatment of uncomplicated acute bacterial cystitis and acute pyelonephritis in women. Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA). Clin Infect Dis 1999 Oct;29(4):745-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10589881
15. Gupta K, Stamm WE. Outcomes associated with trimethoprim/sulphamethoxazole (TMP/SMX) therapy in TMP/SMX resistant community-acquired UTI. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2002 Jun;19(6):554-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12135847
16. Rafalsky V, Andreeva I, Rjabkova E. Quinolones for uncomplicated acute cystitis in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jul 19;3:CD003597.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16856014
17. Nicolle LE, Bradley S, Colgan R, et al; Infectious Diseases Society of America; American Society of Nephrology; American Geriatric Society. Infectious Diseases Society of America guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria in adults. Clin Infect Dis 2005 Mar;40(5):643-54. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15714408
18. Scholes D, Hooton TM, Roberts PL, et al. Risk factors associated with acute pyelonephritis in healthy women. Ann Intern Med 2005 Jan;142(1):20-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15630106
19. Shoff WH, Green-McKenzie J, Edwards C, et al. Acute Pyelonephritis. 2009
http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/245559-overview
20. Rubin US, Andriole VT, Davis RJ, et al. Evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of UTI. Clin Infect Di, 1992;15:216.
http://cid.oxfordjournals.org/content/15/Supplement_1/S216.short
21. Talan DA, Stamm WE, Hooton TM, et al. Comparison of ciprofloxacin (7 days) and trimethoprimsulfamethoxazole (14 days) for acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis pyelonephritis in women: a randomized trial. JAMA 2000 Mar;283(12):1583-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10735395
22. Klausner HA, Brown P, Peterson J, et al. A trial of levofloxacin 750 mg once daily for 5 days versus ciprofloxacin 400 mg and/or 500 mg twice daily for 10 days in the treatment of acute pyelonephritis. Curr Med Res Opin 2007 Nov;23(11):2637-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17880755
23. Peterson J, Kaul S, Khashab M, et al. A double-blind, randomized comparison of levofloxacin 750 mg once-daily for five days with ciprofloxacin 400/500 mg twice-daily for 10 days for the treatment of complicated urinary tract infections and acute pyelonephritis. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):17-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242357
24. Cronberg S, Banke S, Bergman B, et al. Fewer bacterial relapses after oral treatment with norfloxacin than with ceftibuten in acute pyelonephritis initially treated with intravenous cefuroxime. Scand J Infect Dis 2001;33(5):339-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11440218
25. Naber KG, Schoenwald S, Hauke W. [Cefpodoxime proxetil in patients with acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis. International, prospective, randomized comparative study versus ciprofloxacin in general practice.] Chemotherapie Journal 2001;10:29-34. [Article in German]
26. Stamm WE, McKevitt M, Counts GW. Acute renal infection in women: treatment with trimethoprimsulfamethoxazole or ampicillin for two or six weeks. A randomized trial. Ann Intern Med 1987 Mar;106(3):341-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3492950
27. Richard GA, Klimberg IN, Fowler CL, et al. Levofloxacin versus ciprofloxacin versus lomefloxacin in acute pyelonephritis. Urology 1998 Jul;52(1):51-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9671870

28. Wells WG, Woods GL, Jiang Q, et al. Treatment of complicated urinary tract infection in adults: combined analysis of two randomized, double-blind, multicentre trials comparing ertapenem and ceftriaxone followed by an appropriate oral therapy. J Antimicrob Chemother 2004 Jun;53 Suppl 2:ii67-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15150185
29. Mouton YJ, Beuscart C. Empirical monotherapy with meropenem in serious bacterial infections. Meropenem Study Group. J Antimicrob Chemother 1995 Jul;36 Suppl A:145-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8543490
30. Giamarellou H. Low-dosage cefepime as treatment for serious bacterial infections. J Antimicrob Chemother 1993 Nov;32 Suppl B:123-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8150755
31. Naber KG, Savov O, Salmen HC. Piperacillin 2 g/tazobactam 0.5 g is as effective as imipenem 0.5 g/ cilastatin 0.5 g for the treatment of acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis and complicated urinary tract infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2002 Feb;19(2):95-103.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11850161
32. Naber KG, Llorens L, Kaniga K, et al. Intravenous therapy with doripenem versus levofloxacin with an option to switch to oral therapy for the treatment of complicated lower urinary tract infection and pyelonephritis. Antimicr Agents Chemotherapy, submitted.
33. Hooton, TM. Recurrent urinary tract infection in women. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2001 Apr;17(4): 259-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11295405
34. Fowler JE Jr, Pulaski ET. Excretory urography, cystography, and cystoscopy in the evaluation of women with urinary-tract infection: a prospective study. N Engl J Med 1981 Feb;304(8):462-5. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7453771
35. Albert X, Huertas I, Pereiró II, et al. Antibiotics for preventing recurrent urinary tract infection in nonpregnant women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004(3):CD001209.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15266443
36. Schaeffer AJ, BA Stuppy. Efficacy and safety of self-start therapy in women with recurrent urinary tract infections. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):207-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037399
37. Bauer HW, Rahlfs VW, Lauener PA, et al. Prevention of recurrent urinary tract infections with immuno-active E. coli fractions: a meta-analysis of five placebo-controlled double-blind studies. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2002 Jun;19(6):451-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12135831
38. Naber KG, Cho YH, Matsumoto T, et al. Immunoactive prophylaxis of recurrent urinary tract infections: a meta-analysis. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2009 Feb;33(2):111-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18963856
39. Anukam KC, Osazuwa E, Osemene GI, et al. Clinical study comparing probiotic Lactobacillus GR-1 and RC-14 with metronidazole vaginal gel to treat symptomatic bacterial vaginosis. Microbes Infect 2006 Oct;8(12-13):2772-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17045832
40. Kontiokari T, Sundqvist K, Nuutinen M, et al. Randomised trial of cranberrylingonberry juice and Lactobacillus GG drink for the prevention of urinary tract infections in women. BMJ 2001 Jun;322(7302):1571.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11431298
41. Stothers L. A randomized trial to evaluate effectiveness and cost effectiveness of naturopathic cranberry products as prophylaxis against urinary tract infection in women. Can J Urol 2002 Jun;9(3):1558-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12121581
42. Smaill F, Vazquez JC. Antibiotics for asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Apr 18;(2):CD000490.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17443502
43. Vazquez JC, Villar J. Treatments for symptomatic urinary tract infections during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2000;(3):CD002256.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10908537
44. Pfau A, Sacks TG. Effective prophylaxis for recurrent urinary tract infections during pregnancy. Clin Infect Dis, 1992 Apr 14;(4): 810-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1576275

45. Millar LK, Wing DA, Paul RH, et al. Outpatient treatment of pyelonephritis in pregnancy: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 1995 Oct; 86(4 Pt 1):560-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7675380
46. Wing DA, Hendershott CM, Debuque L, et al. A randomized trial of three antibiotic regimens for the treatment of pyelonephritis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 1998 Aug;92(2):249-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9699761
47. Nicolle LE. Asymptomatic bacteriuria in the elderly. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1997 Sep;11(3):647-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9378928
48. Foxman B, Somsel P, Tallman P, et al. Urinary tract infection among women aged 40 to 65: behavioural and sexual risk factors. J Clin Epidemiol 2001 Jul;54(7):710-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11438412
49. Vogel T, Verreault R, Gourdeau M, et al. Optimal duration of antibiotic therapy for uncomplicated urinary tract infection in older women: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. CMAJ 2004 Feb;170(4):469-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC332712/
50. Raz R, Stamm WE. A controlled trial of intravaginal estriol in postmenopausal women with recurrent urinary tract infections. N Engl J Med 1993 Sep;329(11):753-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8350884
51. Avorn J, Monane M, Gurwitz JH, et al. Reduction of bacteriuria and pyuria after ingestion of cranberry juice. JAMA 1994 Mar;271(10):751-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8093138
52. Stamm WE. Urinary tract infections in young men. In: Bergan T (ed). Urinary tract infections. Basel, Switzerland: Karger, 1997 vol 1;pp. 46-7. [no abstract available]
http://content.karger.com/ProdukteDB/produkte.asp?Doi=61396
53. Ulleryd P. Febrile urinary tract infection in men. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2003 Oct;22 Suppl 2:89-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14527778
54. Ulleryd P, Sandberg T. Ciprofloxacin for 2 or 4 weeks in the treatment of febrile urinary tract infection in men: a randomized trial with a 1 year follow-up. Scand J Infect Dis 2003;35(1):34-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12685882
55. Gleckman R, Esposito A, Crowley M, et al. Reliability of a single urine culture in establishing diagnosis of asymptomatic bacteriuria in adult males. J Clin Microbiol 1979 May;9(5):596-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/383746
56. Nicolle LE, Harding GK, Kennedy J, et al. Urine specimen collection with external devices for diagnosis of bacteriuria in elderly incontinent men. J Clin Microbiol 1988 Jun;26(6):1115-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3384923
57. Harding GK, Zhanel GG, Nicolle LE, et al; Manitoba Diabetes Urinary Tract Infection Study Group. Antimicrobial treatment in diabetic women with asymptomatic bacteriuria. N Engl J Med 2002 Nov 14; 347(20):1576-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12432044
58. Mims AD, Norman DC, Yamamura RH, et al. Clinically inapparent (asymptomatic) bacteriuria in ambulatory elderly men: epidemiological, clinical, and microbiological findings. J Am Geriatr Soc 1990 Nov;38(11):1209-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2246458
59. Lewis RI, Carrion HM, Lockhart JL, et al. Significance of asymptomatic bacteriuria in neurogenic bladder disease. Urology 1984 Apr;23(4):343-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6369712
60. Sobel JD, Kauffman CA, McKinsey D, et al. Candiduria: a randomized, double-blind study of treatment with fluconazole and placebo. The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) Mycoses Study Group. Clin Infect Dis 2000 Jan;30(1):19-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10619727

4. COMPLICATED UTIs DUE TO UROLOGICAL DISORDERS

4.1 Summary and recommendations

A complicated UTI is an infection associated with a condition, such as a structural or functional abnormality of the genitourinary tract, or the presence of an underlying disease that interferes with host defence mechanisms, which increase the risks of acquiring infection or of failing therapy.

A broad range of bacteria can cause a complicated UTI. The spectrum is much larger than in uncomplicated UTIs, and bacteria are more likely to be resistant to antimicrobials, especially in a treatment-related complicated UTI.

Enterobacteriaceae are the predominant pathogens, with *E. coli* being the most common pathogen. However, non-fermenters (e.g. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*) and Gram-positive cocci (e.g. staphylococci and enterococci) may also play an important role, depending on the underlying conditions.

Treatment strategy depends on the severity of the illness. Treatment encompasses three goals: management of the urological abnormality, antimicrobial therapy, and supportive care when needed. Hospitalisation is often required. To avoid the emergence of resistant strains, therapy should be guided by urine culture whenever possible.

If empirical therapy is necessary, the antibacterial spectrum of the antibiotic agent should include the most relevant pathogens (GR: A). A fluoroquinolone with mainly renal excretion, an aminopenicillin plus a β-lactamase inhibitor (BLI), a Group 2 or 3a cephalosporin or, in the case of parenteral therapy, an aminoglycoside, are recommended alternatives (LE: 1b, GR: B).

In case of failure of initial therapy, or in case of clinically severe infection, a broader-spectrum antibiotic should be chosen that is also active against *Pseudomonas* (LE: 1b, GR: B), e.g. a fluoroquinolone (if not used for initial therapy), an acylaminopenicillin (piperacillin) plus a BLI, a Group 3b cephalosporin, or a carbapenem, with or without combination with an aminoglycoside (LE: 1b, GR: B).

The duration of therapy is usually 7-14 days (LE: 1b, GR: A), but sometimes has to be prolonged for up to 21 days (LE: 1b, GR: A).

Until predisposing factors are completely removed, true cure without recurrent infection is usually not possible. Therefore, a urine culture should be carried out 5-9 days after completion of therapy and also 4-6 weeks later (GR: B).

4.2 Definitions and classification

A complicated UTI is an infection associated with a condition, such as structural or functional abnormalities of the genitourinary tract or the presence of an underlying disease, which increases the risks of acquiring an infection or of failing therapy (1-3). Two criteria are mandatory to define a complicated UTI: a positive urine culture and one or more of the factors listed in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1: Factors that suggest a potential complicated UTI

The presence of an indwelling catheter, stent or splint (urethral, ureteral, renal) or the use of intermittent bladder catheterisation
Post-void residual urine of > 100 mL
An obstructive uropathy of any aetiology, e.g. bladder outlet obstruction (including neurogenic urinary bladder), stones and tumour
Vesicoureteric reflux or other functional abnormalities
Urinary tract modifications, such as an ileal loop or pouch
Chemical or radiation injuries of the uroepithelium
Peri- and postoperative UTI
Renal insufficiency and transplantation, diabetes mellitus and immunodeficiency

Complicated UTI can arise in a heterogeneous group of patients. However, neither patient age nor sex *per se* are part of the definition of a complicated UTI. With regard to prognosis and clinical studies, it is advisable to stratify complicated UTIs due to urological disorders into at least two groups (4):

1. Patients in whom the complicating factors could be eliminated by therapy, e.g. stone extraction, removal of an indwelling catheter.
2. Patients in whom the complicating factor could not be or is not removed satisfactorily during therapy, e.g. permanent indwelling catheter, stone residues after treatment or neurogenic bladder.

*4.2.1 **Clinical presentation***

A complicated UTI may or may not be associated with clinical symptoms (e.g. dysuria, urgency, frequency, flank pain, costovertebral angle tenderness, suprapubic pain and fever). Clinical presentation can vary from severe obstructive acute pyelonephritis with imminent urosepsis to a catheter-associated postoperative UTI, which might disappear spontaneously as soon as the catheter is removed. It also has to be recognised that symptoms, especially lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTSs), are not only caused by UTIs but also by other urological disorders, such as benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP).

Apart from urological abnormalities, concomitant medical conditions, such as diabetes mellitus (10%) and renal failure, which can be related to urological abnormalities (5), are often present in a complicated UTI. These are discussed in more details in Sections 8.1.3 and 8.1.4 on UTIs in renal insufficiency, transplant recipients, diabetes mellitus and immunosuppression.

*4.2.2 **Urine cultures***

Significant bacteriuria in a complicated UTI is defined by counts of $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL and $\geq 10^4$ cfu/mL, in the mid-stream urine (MSU) of women and men, respectively (1,2). If a straight catheter urine sample is taken, $\geq 10^4$ cfu/mL can be considered relevant. For an asymptomatic patient, two consecutive urine cultures (at least 24 h apart) yielding $\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL of the same microorganism are required. The requirement for pyuria is ≥ 10 white blood cells (WBC) per high-power field (x400) in the resuspended sediment of a centrifuged aliquot of urine or per mm^3 in unspun urine. A dipstick method can also be used for routine assessment, including a leukocyte esterase test, haemoglobin and probably a nitrite reaction.

4.3 Microbiology

*4.3.1 **Spectrum and antibiotic resistance***

Patients with a complicated UTI, both community and hospital-acquired, tend to show a diversity of microorganisms with a higher prevalence of resistance against antimicrobials, and higher rates of treatment failure if the underlying abnormality cannot be corrected.

However, the presence of a resistant strain on its own is not enough to define a complicated UTI. Urinary abnormality (anatomical or functional) or the presence of an underlying disease predisposing to a UTI is also necessary.

A broad range of bacteria can cause a complicated UTI. The spectrum is much larger than with an uncomplicated UTI and the bacteria are more likely to be antibiotic-resistant (especially in a treatment-related complicated UTI) than those isolated in an uncomplicated UTI. *E. coli, Proteus, Klebsiella*, Pseudomonas and *Serratia* sp. and enterococci are the usual strains found in cultures. Enterobacteriaceae predominate (60-75%) (6-8), with *E. coli* as the most common pathogen; particularly if the UTI is a first infection. Otherwise, the bacterial spectrum may vary over time and from one hospital to another.

*4.3.2 **Complicated UTIs associated with urinary stones***

In the subset of complicated UTIs related to urinary stones, the frequency of *E. coli* and enterococci infection seems less important pathogens. In contrast, a greater portion of *Proteus* and *Pseudomonas* sp. (9) is found.

Of the urease-producing organisms, *Proteus, Providencia* and *Morganella* sp., and *Corynebacterium urealyticum* are predominant, but *Klebsiella, Pseudomonas* and *Serratia* sp. and staphylococci are also urease producers to a certain extent.

Among patients with staghorn calculus disease, 88% were found to have a UTI at the time of diagnosis, with 82% of patients infected with urease-producing organisms (10). The enzyme, urease, splits urea into carbon dioxide and ammonia. The resultant increase in ammonia in the urine injures the glycosaminoglycan layer, which in turn increases bacterial adherence (11) and enhances the formation of struvite crystals. These aggregate to form renal stones and incrustations on urinary catheters (12).

The pathogenic potential of coagulase-negative staphylococci and non-group D streptococci is controversial (13,14). Under certain circumstances, such as the presence of a stone or foreign bodies, staphylococci can be relevant pathogens. Otherwise, staphylococci are not so common in complicated UTIs (0-11%), according to published reports (6,15).

*4.3.3 **Complicated UTIs associated with urinary catheters***

In catheter-associated UTIs, the distribution of microorganisms is similar (16), and biofilm has to be considered. Antimicrobial therapy may only be effective in the early stages of the infection (15). For more details see chapter 6 on catheter-associated UTIs.

4.4 Treatment

*4.4.1 **General principles***

Treatment strategy depends on the severity of the illness. Appropriate antimicrobial therapy and the

management of the urological abnormality are mandatory. If needed, supportive care is given. Hospitalisation is often necessary depending on the severity of the illness.

4.4.2 ***Choice of antibiotics***

Empirical treatment of a symptomatic complicated UTI requires a knowledge of the spectrum of possible pathogens and local antibiotic resistance patterns, as well as assessment of the severity of the underlying urological abnormality (including the evaluation of renal function).

Bacteraemia is usually reported too late to influence the choice of antibiotics. However, suspicion of bacteraemia must influence the empirical treatment. The severity of the associated illness and the underlying urological condition are still of the utmost importance for prognosis.

Many therapeutic trials have been published on the use of specific antimicrobial therapies in complicated UTIs. Unfortunately, most reports are of limited use for the practical management of the patient in a day-to-day situation because of limitations such as:

- poor characterisation of the patient populations;
- unclear evaluation of the severity of the illness;
- nosocomial and community-acquired infections are not accurately distinguished;
- urological outcome is seldom taken into consideration.

Intense use of any antimicrobial, especially when used on an empirical basis in this group of patients with a high likelihood of recurrent infection, will lead to the emergence of resistant microorganisms in subsequent infections. Whenever possible, empirical therapy should be replaced by a therapy adjusted for the specific infective organisms identified in the urine culture. Therefore, a urine specimen for culture must be obtained before initiation of therapy, and the selection of an antimicrobial agent should be re-evaluated once culture results are available (7). To date, it has not been shown that any agent or class of agents is superior in cases in which the infective organism is susceptible to the drug administered.

In patients with renal failure, whether related to a urological abnormality or not, appropriate dose adjustments have to be made.

If empirical treatment is necessary, fluoroquinolones with mainly renal excretion are recommended because they have a large spectrum of antimicrobial activity that covers most of the expected pathogens, and they reach high concentration levels both in the urine and the urogenital tissues. Fluoroquinolones can be used orally as well as parenterally. An aminopenicillin plus a BLI, a Group 2 or 3a cephalosporin, or, in the case of parenteral therapy, an aminoglycoside, are alternatives. A new Group 1 oral carbapenem, ertapenem, in a prospective randomised trial, has been shown to be as effective as ceftriaxone (16).

In most countries, *E. coli* shows a high rate of resistance against TMP-SMX (18-25% in the latest evaluation in the USA) (17) and should therefore be avoided as a first-line treatment. Fosfomycin trometamol is licensed only for a single-dose therapy of uncomplicated cystitis (18). The aminopenicillins, ampicillin or amoxicillin, are no longer sufficiently active against *E. coli*.

In the case of failure of initial therapy, or if microbiological results are not yet available, or as initial therapy in the case of clinically severe infection, treatment should be switched to an antibiotic with a broader spectrum that is also active against *Pseudomonas*, such as a fluoroquinolone (if not used for initial therapy), an acylaminopenicillin (piperacillin) plus a BLI, a Group 3b cephalosporin, or a carbapenem, eventually in combination with an aminoglycoside. Similarly, many experts concur that empirical therapy for the institutionalised or hospitalised patients with a serious UTI should include an intravenous antipseudomonal agent because of an increased risk of urosepsis (19).

Patients can generally be treated as outpatients. In more severe cases (e.g. hospitalised patients), antibiotics have to be given parenterally. A combination of an aminoglycoside with a BLI or a fluoroquinolone is widely used for empirical therapy. After a few days of parenteral therapy and clinical improvement, patients can be switched to oral treatment. Therapy has to be reconsidered when the infective strains have been identified and their susceptibilities are known.

The successful treatment of a complicated UTI always combines effective antimicrobial therapy, optimal management of the underlying urological abnormalities or other diseases, and sufficient life-supporting measures. The antibacterial treatment options are summarised in Table 4.2 and Appendix 16.2 (Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy in urology).

4.4.3 ***Duration of antibiotic therapy***

Treatment for 7-14 days is generally recommended, but the duration should be closely related to the treatment of the underlying abnormality (1). Sometimes, a prolongation for up to 21 days, according to the clinical situation, is necessary (2).

4.4.4 ***Complicated UTIs associated with urinary stones***

If a nidus of a stone or an infection remains, stone growth will occur. Complete removal of the stones and

adequate antimicrobial therapy are both needed. Eradication of the infection will probably eliminate the growth of struvite calculi (20). Long-term antimicrobial therapy should be considered if complete removal of the stone cannot be achieved (21).

*4.4.5 **Complicated UTIs associated with indwelling catheters***

Current data do not support the treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria, either during short-term catheterisation (< 30 days) or during long-term catheterisation, because it will promote the emergence of resistant strains (22,23). In short-term catheterisation, antibiotics may delay the onset of bacteriuria, but do not reduce complications (24).

A symptomatic complicated UTI associated with an indwelling catheter is treated with an agent with as narrow a spectrum as possible, based on culture and sensitivity results. The optimal duration is not well established. Treatment durations that are too short as well as too long may cause the emergence of resistant strains. A 7-day course could be a reasonable compromise.

*4.4.6 **Complicated UTIs in patients with spinal cord injury***

In case of persistent UTIs and suspicion of urinary retention, a full urodynamic assessment to appraise bladder function is to be carried out. Priority is to ensure proper drainage of the bladder to protect the urinary tract. For further details, see the EAU guidelines on Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction (25).

It is generally accepted that asymptomatic bacteriuria in patients with spinal cord injury should not be treated (26), even in cases of intermittent catheterisation. For symptomatic episodes of infection in patients with spinal cord injury, only a few studies have investigated the most appropriate agent and duration of therapy. Currently, 7-10 days of therapy is most commonly used. There is no superiority of one agent or class of antimicrobials in this group of patients.

Antimicrobial treatment options are summarised in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2: Antimicrobial treatment options for empirical therapy

Antibiotics recommended for initial empirical treatment
Fluoroquinolones
Aminopenicillin plus a BLI
Cephalosporin (Groups 2 or 3a)
Aminoglycoside
Antibiotics recommended for empirical treatment in case of initial failure, or for severe cases
Fluoroquinolone (if not used for initial therapy)
Ureidopenicillin (piperacillin) plus BLI
Cephalosporin (Group 3b)
Carbapenem
Combination therapy:
- Aminoglycoside + BLI
- Aminoglycoside + fluoroquinolone
Antibiotics not recommended for empirical treatment
Aminopenicillins, e.g. amoxicillin, ampicillin
Trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole (only if susceptibility of pathogen is known)
Fosfomycin trometamol

BLI = β-lactam inhibitor

*4.4.7 **Follow-up after treatment***

The greater likelihood of the involvement of resistant microorganisms in complicated UTIs is another feature of these infectious diseases. This is not a priori related to the urinary abnormality, but is related more to the fact that patients with a complicated UTI tend to have recurrent infection (7). For these reasons, before and after the completion of the antimicrobial treatment, urine cultures must be obtained for the identification of the microorganisms and the evaluation of susceptibility testing.

4.5 References

1. Rubin RH, Shapiro ED, Andriole VT, et al. Evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of urinary tract infection. Infectious Diseases Society of America and the Food and Drug Administration. Clin Infect Dis 1992 Nov;15 Suppl 1:S216-S227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1477233
2. Rubin RH, Shapiro ED, Andriole VT, et al, with modifications by a European Working Party. General guidelines for the evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of UTI. Taufkirchen, Germany: The European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases, 1993, pp. 240-310.
3. Kumazawa J, Matsumoto T. Complicated UTIs. In: Bergan T, ed. UTIs. *Infectiology*. Vol 1. Basel: Karger, 1997, pp. 19-26.
4. Naber KG. Experience with the new guidelines on evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of urinary tract infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents 1999 May;11(3-4):189-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10394969
5. Sharifi R, Geckler R, Childs S. Treatment of urinary tract infections: selecting an appropriate broadspectrum antibiotic for nosocomial infections. Am J Med 1996 Jun;100(6A):76S-82S. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8678101
6. Frankenschmidt A, Naber KG, Bischoff W, et al. Once-daily fleroxacin versus twice-daily ciprofloxacin in the treatment of complicated urinary tract infections. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1494-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302150
7. Nicolle LE. A practical guide to the management of complicated urinary tract infection. Drugs 1997 Apr;53(4):583-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9098661
8. Cox CE, Holloway WJ, Geckler RW. A multicenter comparative study of meropenem and imipenem/cilastatin in the treatment of complicated urinary tract infections in hospitalized patients. Clin Infect Dis 1995 Jul;21(1):86-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7578765
9. Dobardzic AM, Dobardzic R. Epidemiological features of complicated UTI in a district hospital of Kuwait. Eur J Epidemiol 1997 Jun;13(4):465-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258554
10. Emori TG, Gaynes RP. An overview of nosocomial infections, including the role of the microbiology laboratory. Clin Microbiol Rev 1993 Oct;6(4):428-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8269394
11. Parsons CL, Stauffer C, Mulholland SG, et al. Effect of ammonium on bacterial adherence to bladder transitional epithelium. J Urol 1984 Aug;132(2):365-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6376829
12. Dumanski AJ, Hedelin H, Edin-Liljergen A, et al. Unique ability of the Proteus mirabilis capsule to enhance mineral growth in infectious urinary calculi. Infect Immun 1994 Jun;62(7):2998-3003. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8005688
13. Stamm WE, Hooton TM. Management of urinary tract infections in adults. N Engl J Med 1993 Oct;329(18):1328-34. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8413414
14. US Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration. Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER). Guidance for Industry. Complicated urinary tract infections and pyelonephritis-developing antimicrobial drugs for treatment. Clin-Anti. Rockville, MD: Drug Information Branch. Division of Communications Management, 1998. http://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/UCM070981.pdf
15. Reid G. Biofilms in infectious disease and on medical devices. Int J Antimicrob Agents 1999 May;11 (3-4):223-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10394974
16. Wells WG, Woods GL, Jiang Q, et al. Treatment of complicated urinary tract infection in adults: combined analysis of two randomized, double-blind, multicentre trials comparing ertapenem and ceftriaxone followed by an appropriate oral therapy. J Antimicrob Chemother 2004 Jun;53 Suppl 2:ii67-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15150185
17. Sahm DF, Thornsberry C, Mayfield DC, et al. Multidrug-resistant urinary tract isolates of Escherichia coli: prevalence and patient demographics in the United States in 2000. Antimicrob Agents Chemother. 2001 May;45(5):1402-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11302802

18. Lerner SA, Price S, Kulkarni S. Microbiological studies of fosfomycin trometamol against urinary isolates in vitro. In: *New trends in urinary tract infections*. Williams N, ed. Basel: Karger, 1988, pp. 121-129.
19. Carson C, Naber KG. Role of fluoroquinolones in the treatment of serious bacterial urinary tract infections. Drugs 2004;64(12):1359-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15200349
20. Griffith DP, Osborne CA. Infection (urease) stones. Miner Electrolyte Metab 1987;13(4):278-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3306321
21. Beck EM, Riehle RA Jr. The fate of residual fragments after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy monotherapy of infection stones. J Urol 1991 Jun;145(1):6-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1984100
22. Alling B, Brandberg A, Seeberg S, et al. Effect of consecutive antibacterial therapy on bacteriuria in hospitalized geriatric patients. Scand J Infect Dis 1975;7(3):201-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/809837
23. Warren JW, Anthony WC, Hoopes JM, et al. Cephalexin for susceptible bacteriuria in afebrile, long term catheterized patients. JAMA 1982 Jul;248(4):454-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7045440
24. Yoshikawa TT, Nicolle LE, Norman DC. Management of complicated urinary tract infection in older patients. J Am Geriatr Soc 1996 Oct;44(10):1235-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8856005
25. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU Guidelines on Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction. Eur Urol. 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403235
26. National Institute on Disability and Rehabilitation Research. The prevention and management of urinary tract infections among people with spinal cord injuries. National Institute on Disability and Rehabilitation Research Consensus Statement. January 27-29, 1992. J Am Paraplegia Soc 1992 Jul;15(3):194-204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1500945

5. SEPSIS SYNDROME IN UROLOGY (UROSEPSIS)

5.1 Summary and recommendations

Patients with urosepsis should be diagnosed at an early stage, especially in the case of a complicated UTI. The systemic inflammatory response syndrome, known as SIRS (fever or hypothermia, hyperleukocytosis or leukopenia, tachycardia, tachypnoea), is recognised as the first event in a cascade to multi-organ failure. Mortality is considerably increased when severe sepsis or septic shock are present, although the prognosis of urosepsis is globally better than that of sepsis from other infectious sites.

The treatment of urosepsis calls for the combination of adequate life-supporting care, appropriate and prompt antibiotic therapy, adjunctive measures (e.g. sympathomimetic amines, hydrocortisone, blood glucose control) and the optimal management of urinary tract disorders (LE: 1a, GR: A). The drainage of any obstruction in the urinary tract is essential as first-line treatment (LE: 1b, GR: A). Urologists are recommended to treat patients in collaboration with intensive care and infectious diseases specialists (LE; 2a, GR: B).

Urosepsis is seen in both community-acquired and healthcare associated infections. Most nosocomial urosepsis can be avoided by measures used to prevent nosocomial infection, e.g. reduction of hospital stay, early removal of indwelling urethral catheters, avoidance of unnecessary urethral catheterisation, correct use of closed catheter systems, and attention to simple daily asepsis techniques to avoid cross-infection (LE: 2a, GR: B).

5.2 Background

Urinary tract infections can manifest as bacteriuria with limited clinical symptoms, sepsis or severe sepsis, depending on localised or systemic extension. Sepsis is diagnosed when clinical evidence of infection is accompanied by signs of systemic inflammation (fever or hypothermia, tachycardia, tachypnoea, leukocyturia or leukopenia). Severe sepsis is defined by the presence of symptoms of organ dysfunction, and septic shock by the presence of persistent hypotension associated with tissue anoxia.

Severe sepsis is a severe situation with a reported mortality rate of 20-42% (1). Most severe sepsis

reported in the literature is related to pulmonary (50%) or abdominal (24%) infections, with UTIs accounting for only 5% (2). Sepsis is more common in men than in women (3). In recent years, the incidence of sepsis has increased by 8.7% per year (1), but the associated mortality has decreased, which suggests improved management of patients (total in-hospital mortality rate fell from 27.8% to 17.9% during 1995-2000) (4). Globally (this is not true for urosepsis), the rate of sepsis due to fungal organisms has increased while Gram-positive bacteria have become the predominant pathogen in sepsis, even if Gram-negative bacteria remain predominant in urosepsis.

In urosepsis, as in other types of sepsis, the severity depends mostly upon the host response. Patients who are more likely to develop urosepsis include: elderly patients; diabetics; immunosuppressed patients, such as transplant recipients; patients receiving cancer chemotherapy or corticosteroids; and patients with AIDS. Urosepsis also depends on local factors, such as urinary tract calculi, obstruction at any level in the urinary tract, congenital uropathy, neurogenic bladder disorders, or endoscopic manoeuvres. However, all patients can be affected by bacterial species that are capable of inducing inflammation within the urinary tract. Moreover, it is now recognised that SIRS may be present without infection (e.g. pancreatitis, burns, or non-septic shock) (5).

For therapeutic purposes, the diagnostic criteria of sepsis should identify patients at an early stage of the syndrome, which should prompt urologists and intensive care specialists to search for and treat infection, apply appropriate therapy, and monitor for organ failure and other complications.

5.3 Definition and clinical manifestation of sepsis in urology

The clinical evidence of UTI is based on symptoms, physical examination, sonographic and radiological features, and laboratory data, such as bacteriuria and leukocyturia. The following definitions apply (Table 5.1):

- Sepsis is a systemic response to infection. The symptoms of SIRS which were initially considered to be 'mandatory' for the diagnosis of sepsis (5), are now considered to be alerting symptoms (6). Many other clinical or biological symptoms must be considered.
- Severe sepsis is sepsis associated with organ dysfunction.
- Septic shock is persistence of hypoperfusion or hypotension despite fluid resuscitation.
- Refractory septic shock is defined by an absence of response to therapy.

Table 5.1: Clinical diagnostic criteria of sepsis and septic shock (5,6)

Disorder	Definition
Infection	Presence of organisms in a normally sterile site that is usually, but not necessarily, accompanied by an inflammatory host response.
Bacteraemia	Bacteria present in blood as confirmed by culture. May be transient.
Systematic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)	Response to a wide variety of clinical insults, which can be infectious, as in sepsis but may be non-infectious in aetiology (e.g. burns, or pancreatitis). This systemic response is manifested by two or more of the following conditions: - Temperature > 38°C or < 36°C - Heart rate > 90 bpm - Respiratory rate > 20 breaths/min or PaCO2 < 32 mmHg (< 4.3 kPa) - WBC > 12,000 cells/mm3 or < 4,000 cells/mm^3 or > 10% immature (band) forms
Sepsis	Activation of the inflammatory process due to infection.
Hypotension	Systolic blood pressure < 90 mmHg or a reduction of > 40 mmHg from baseline in the absence of other causes of hypotension.
Severe sepsis	Sepsis associated with organ dysfunction, hypoperfusion or hypotension. Hypoperfusion and perfusion abnormalities may include but are not limited to lactic acidosis, oliguria or acute alteration of mental status.

Septic shock	Sepsis with hypotension despite adequate fluid resuscitation along with the presence of perfusion abnormalities that may include, but are not limited to lactic acidosis, oliguria, or acute alteration in mental status. Patients who are on inotropic or vasopressor agents may not be hypotensive at the time that perfusion abnormalities are measured.
Refractory septic shock	Septic shock that lasts for > 1 h and does not respond to fluid administration or pharmacological intervention.

5.4 Physiology and biochemical markers

Microorganisms reach the urinary tract by way of the ascending, haematogenous, or lymphatic routes. For urosepsis to be established, the pathogens have to reach the bloodstream. The risk of bacteraemia is increased in severe UTIs, such as pyelonephritis and acute bacterial prostatitis, and is facilitated by obstruction of the urinary tract. *E. coli* remains the most prevalent microorganism. In several countries, some bacterial strains can be resistant to quinolones or third-generation cephalosporins. Some microorganisms are multi-resistant, such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), *P. aeruginosa* and *Serratia* sp. and therefore difficult to treat. Most commonly, the condition develops in compromised patients (e.g. those with diabetes or immunosuppression), with typical signs of generalised sepsis associated with local signs of infection. A fatal outcome is described in 20-40% of all patients.

*5.4.1 **Cytokines as markers of the septic response***

Cytokines are involved in the pathogenesis of sepsis syndrome. They are peptides that regulate the amplitude and duration of the host inflammatory response. They are released from various cells including monocytes, macrophages and endothelial cells, in response to various infectious stimuli. When they become bound to specific receptors on other cells, cytokines change their behaviour in the inflammatory response. The complex balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory responses is modified in severe sepsis. An immunosuppressive phase follows the initial pro-inflammatory mechanism. Other cytokines are involved such as interleukins (ILs). Tumour necrosis factor (TNF)-α, IL-1, IL-6 and IL-8 are cytokines that are associated with sepsis. Sepsis may indicate an immune system that is severely compromised and unable to eradicate pathogens or a non-regulated and excessive activation of inflammation, or both. Genetic predisposition is a probable explanation of sepsis in several patients. Mechanisms of organ failure and death in patients with sepsis remain only partially understood (2).

*5.4.2 **Procalcitonin is a potential marker of sepsis***

Procalcitonin is the propeptide of calcitonin, but is devoid of hormonal activity. Normally, levels are undetectable in healthy humans. During severe generalised infections (bacterial, parasitic and fungal) with systemic manifestations, procalcitonin levels may rise to > 100 ng/mL. In contrast, during severe viral infections or inflammatory reactions of non-infectious origin, procalcitonin levels show only a moderate or no increase. The exact site of procalcitonin production during sepsis is not known. Procalcitonin monitoring may be useful in patients likely to develop a SIRS of infectious origin. High procalcitonin levels, or an abrupt increase in levels in these patients, should prompt a search for the source of infection. Procalcitonin may be useful in differentiating between infectious and non-infectious causes of severe inflammatory status (7,8).

5.5 Prevention

Septic shock is the most frequent cause of death for patients hospitalised for community-acquired and nosocomial infection (20-40%). Sepsis initiates the cascade that progresses to severe sepsis and then septic shock in a clinical continuum. Urosepsis treatment calls for a combination of treatment of the cause (obstruction of the urinary tract), adequate life-supporting care, and appropriate antibiotic therapy (2). In such a situation, it is recommended that urologists collaborate with intensive care and infectious disease specialists for the best management of the patient.

*5.5.1 **Preventive measures of proven or probable efficacy (9,10)***

The most effective methods to prevent nosocomial urosepsis are the same as those used to prevent other nosocomial infections:

- Isolation of all patients infected with multi-resistant organisms to avoid cross-infection.
- Prudent use of antimicrobial agents for prophylaxis and treatment of established infections, to avoid selection of resistant strains. Antibiotic agents should be chosen according to the predominant pathogens at a given site of infection in the hospital environment.
- Reduction in hospital stay. It is well known that long inpatient periods before surgery lead to a greater

incidence of nosocomial infections.

- Early removal of indwelling urethral catheters, as soon as allowed by the patient's condition. Nosocomial UTIs are promoted by bladder catheterisation as well as by ureteral stenting (11). Antibiotic prophylaxis does not prevent stent colonisation, which appears in 100% of patients with a permanent ureteral stent and in 70% of those temporarily stented.
- Use of closed catheter drainage and minimisation of breaks in the integrity of the system, e.g. for urine sampling or bladder wash-out.
- Use of least-invasive methods to release urinary tract obstruction until the patient is stabilised.
- Attention to simple everyday techniques to assure asepsis, including the routine use of protective, disposable gloves, frequent hand disinfection, and using infectious disease control measures to prevent cross-infections.

*5.5.2 **Appropriate perioperative antimicrobial prophylaxis***

For appropriate perioperative antimicrobial prophylaxis, see Section 15. The potential side effects of antibiotics must be considered before their administration in a prophylactic regimen.

*5.5.3 **Preventive measures of debatable efficacy***

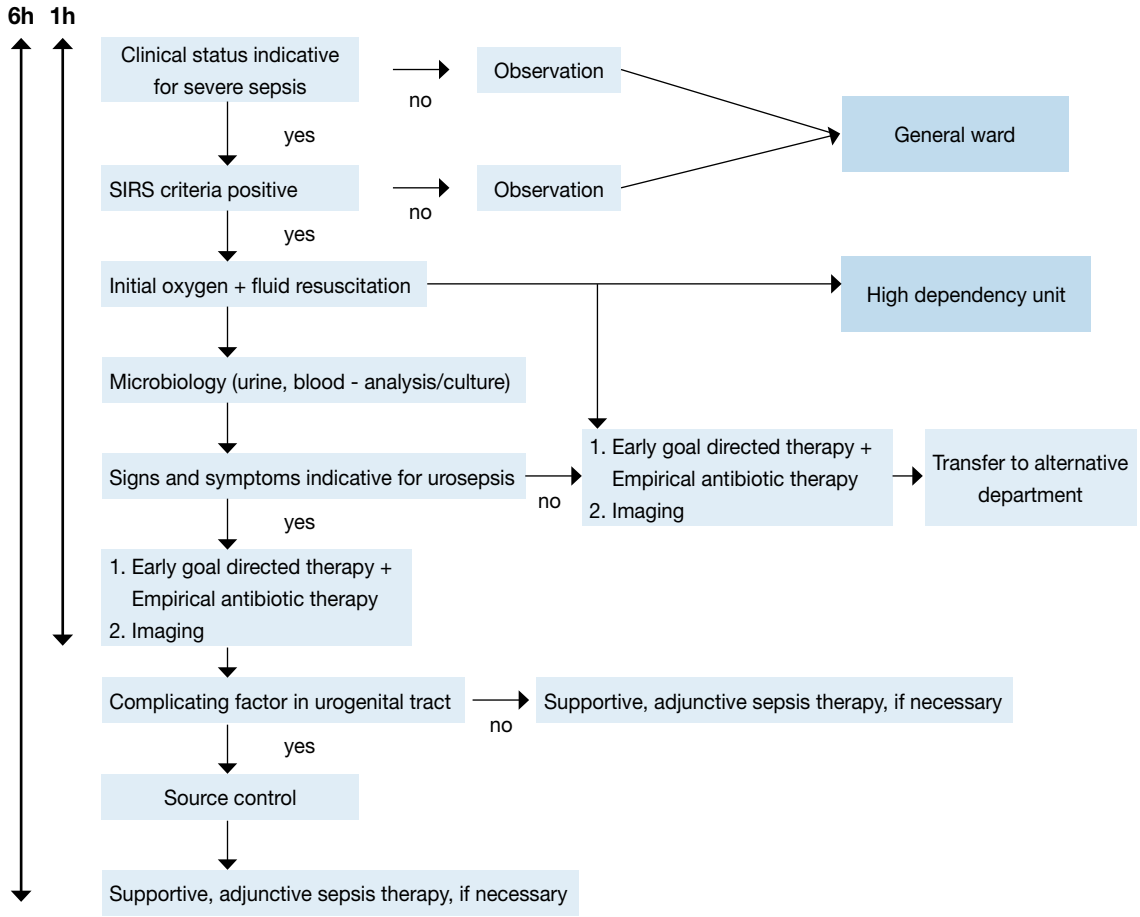
- Instillation of antibiotic or antiseptic drugs into catheters and drainage bags.
- Use of urinary catheters coated with antibiotics or silver.

*5.5.4 **Ineffective or counterproductive measures***

- Continuous or intermittent bladder irrigations with antibiotics or urinary antiseptics that increase the risk of infection with resistant bacteria (9,12).
- Routine administration of antimicrobial drugs to catheterised patients, which reduces the incidence of bacteriuria only for a few days and increases the risk of infection with multi-resistant bacteria (9,12). Its use may be reserved for immunosuppressed patients.

5.6 Algorithm for the management of urosepsis

Figure 5.1: Clinical algorithm for the management of urosepsis



5.7 Treatment

*5.7.1 **Clinical algorithm for management of urosepsis***

Table 5.2: Early goal directed therapy

Early goal directed therapy	
Central venous pressure (CVP)	8-12 mmHg
Mean arterial pressure (MAP)	65-90 mmHg
Central venous oxygen (CVO2)	≥ 70%
Haematocrit (HKT)	> 30 %
Urine output	> 40 mL/h

Table 5.3: Levels of therapy in sepsis

Levels of therapy in sepsis	
Causal therapy	1. Antimicrobial treatment 2. Source control
Supportive therapy	1. Haemodynamic stabilisation 2. Airways, respiration
Adjunctive therapy	1. Glucocorticosteroids 2. Intensified insulin therapy

*5.7.2 **Relief of obstruction***

Drainage of any obstruction in the urinary tract and removal of foreign bodies, such as urinary catheters or stones, should lead to resolution of symptoms and recovery. These are key components of the strategy. This condition is an absolute emergency.

*5.7.3 **Antimicrobial therapy***

Empirical initial treatment should provide broad antimicrobial coverage and should later be adapted on the basis of culture results. The dosage of the antibiotic substances is of paramount importance in patients with sepsis syndrome and should generally be high, with the exception of patients in renal failure. Antimicrobials must be administered not later than 1 h after clinical assumption of sepsis (see algorithm). The antibacterial treatment options are summarised in Appendix 16.1 and 16.2.

*5.7.4 **Adjunctive measures (12,13)***

The management of fluid and electrolyte balance is a crucial aspect of patient care in sepsis syndrome; particularly when the clinical course is complicated by shock. The use of human albumin is debatable. Early goal-directed therapy has been shown to reduce mortality (14). Volaemic expansion and vasopressor therapy have a considerable impact on the outcome. Early intervention with appropriate measures to maintain adequate tissue perfusion and oxygen delivery by prompt institution of fluid therapy, stabilisation of arterial pressure, and providing sufficient oxygen transport capacity are highly effective.

Hydrocortisone (with a debate on dosage) is useful in patients with relative insufficiency in the pituitary gland-adrenal cortex axis (adrenocorticotropin test) (15).

Tight blood glucose control by administration of insulin doses up to 50 U/h is associated with a reduction in mortality (16).

Current evidence does not support the use of human recombinant activated protein C in adults and children with severe sepsis and septic shock (17).

The best strategy has been summarised and graded according to a careful evidence-based methodology in the recently published ‘Surviving Sepsis Guidelines’ (18).

5.8 Conclusion

Sepsis syndrome in urology remains a severe situation with a mortality rate as high as 20-40%. A recent campaign, ‘Surviving Sepsis Guidelines’, aimed at reducing mortality by 25% in the next few years has been published recently (18). Early recognition of the symptoms may decrease the mortality by timely treatment of urinary tract disorders, e.g. obstruction, or urolithiasis. Adequate life-support measures and appropriate antibiotic treatment provide the best conditions for improving patient survival. The prevention of sepsis syndrome is dependent on good practice to avoid nosocomial infections and using antibiotic prophylaxis and

therapy in a prudent and well-accepted manner.

5.9 Acknowledgement

The authors are thankful to Jean M. Carlet, Head of Intensive Care, Hôpital Saint Joseph, Paris, France, for reviewing this manuscript on urosepsis.

5.10 References

1. Martin GS, Mannino DM, Eaton S, et al. The epidemiology of sepsis in the United States from 1979 through 2000. N Engl J Med 2003 Apr;348(16):1546-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12700374
2. Hotchkiss RS, Karl IE. The pathophysiology and treatment of sepsis. N Engl J Med 2003 Jan;348(2):138-50. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519925
3. Rosser CJ, Bare RL, Meredith JW. Urinary tract infections in the critically ill patient with a urinary catheter. Am J Surg 1999 Apr;177(4):287-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10326844
4. Brun-Buisson C, Meshaka P, Pinton P, et al; EPISEPSIS Study Group. EPISEPSIS: a reappraisal of the epidemiology and outcome of severe sepsis in French intensive care units. Intensive Care Med 2004 Apr;30(4):580-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14997295
5. Bone RC, Balk RA, Cerra FB, et al. Definitions for sepsis and organ failure and guidelines for the use of innovative therapies in sepsis. The ACCP/SCCM Consensus Conference Committee. American College of Chest Physicians/Society of Critical Care Medicine. Chest 1992 Jun;101(6):1644-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1303622
6. Levy MM, Fink MP, Marshall JC, et al; SCCM/ESICM/ACCP/ATS/SIS. 2001 SCCM/ESICM/ACCP/ATS/SIS International Sepsis Definitions Conference. Crit Care Med 2003 Apr;31(4):1250-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682500
7. Brunkhorst FM, Wegscheider K, Forycki ZF, et al. Procalcitonin for early diagnosis and differentiation of SIRS, sepsis, severe sepsis and septic shock. Intensive Care Med 2000 Mar;26, Suppl.2:S148-52 . http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18470710
8. Harbarth S, Holeckova K, Froidevaux C, et al; Geneva Sepsis Network. Diagnostic value of procalcitonin, interleukin-6, and interleukin-8 in critically ill patients admitted with suspected sepsis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001 Aug;164(3):396-402. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11500339
9. Carlet J, Dumay MF, Gottot S, et al. (Guideliness for prevention of nosocomial infections in intensive care unit.) Arnette Ed Paris 1994:41-53. [Article in French]
10. Riedl CR, Plas E, Hübner WA, et al. Bacterial colonization of ureteral stents. Eur Urol 1999;36(1):53-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10364656
11. DeGroot-Kosolcharoen J, Guse R, Jones JM. Evaluation of a urinary catheter with a preconnected closed drainage bag. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1988 Feb;9(2):72-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3343502
12. Persky L, Liesen D, Yangco B. Reduced urosepsis in a veterans' hospital. Urology 1992 May;39(5):443-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1580035
13. Glück T, Opal SM. Advances in sepsis therapy. Drugs 2004;64(8):837-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15059039
14. Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al; Early Goal-Directed Therapy Collaborative Group. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. N Engl J Med 2001 Nov;345(19):1368-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11794169
15. Annane D, Sebille V, Charpentier C, et al. Effect of treatment with low doses of hydrocortisone and fludrocortisone on mortality in patients with septic shock. JAMA 2002 Aug;288(7):862-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12186604
16. van den Berghe G, Wouters P, Weekers F, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in the critically ill patients. N Engl J Med 2001 Nov;345(19):1359-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11794168
17. Marti-Carvajal A J, Solà I, Lathyris D, Cardona A F. Human recombinant activated protein C for severe sepsis. Cochrane Summaries. Publ online April 13, 2011. www.cochrane.org

18. Dellinger RP, Carlet JM, Masur H, et al; Surviving Sepsis Campaign Management Guidelines Committee. Surviving Sepsis Campaign guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock. Crit Care Med 2004 Mar;32:858-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15090974

6. CATHETER-ASSOCIATED UTIs

Based on the EAU guidelines published in 2007 (ISBN-13:978-90-70244-59-0), the following text presents the findings of a comprehensive update produced as a collaborative effort by the ESIU (a full EAU section office), the Urological Association of Asia, the Asian Association of UTI/STD, the Western Pacific Society for Chemotherapy, the Federation of European Societies for Chemotherapy and Infection, and the International Society of Chemotherapy for Infection and Cancer. This text was recently published as "The European and Asian guidelines on management and prevention of catheter-associated urinary tract infections" (1). Since the complete document is available online, only the abstract and a summary of the recommendations are presented here.

6.1 Abstract

We surveyed the extensive literature regarding the development, therapy and prevention of catheter-associated UTIs (CAUTIs). We systematically searched for meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials available in Medline, and gave preference to the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials, and also considered other relevant publications, rating them on the basis of their quality. Studies were identified through a PubMed search. The recommendations of the studies, rated according to a modification of the US Department of Health and Human Services (1992), give a close-to-evidence-based guideline for all medical disciplines, with special emphasis on urology, in which catheter care is an important issue.

The survey found that the urinary tract is the commonest source of nosocomial infection, particularly when the bladder is catheterised (LE: 2a). Most CAUTIs are derived from the patient's own colonic flora (LE: 2b) and the catheter predisposes to UTI in several ways. The most important risk factor for the development of catheter-associated bacteriuria is the duration of catheterisation (LE: 2a). Most episodes of short-term catheter-associated bacteriuria are asymptomatic and are caused by a single organism (LE: 2a). Further organisms tend to be acquired by patients who are catheterised for > 30 days.

The clinician should be aware of two priorities: the catheter system should remain closed and the duration of catheterisation should be minimal (GR: A). The use of nurse-based or electronic reminder systems to remove unnecessary catheters can decrease the duration of catheterisation and the risk of CAUTI (LE: 2a). The drainage bag should be always kept below the level of the bladder and the connecting tube (GR: B). In case of short-term catheterisation, routine prophylaxis with systemic antibiotics is not recommended (GR: B). There are sparse data about antibiotic prophylaxis in patients on long-term catheterisation, therefore, no recommendation can be made (GR: C). For patients using intermittent catheterisation, routine antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended (GR: B). Antibiotic irrigation of the catheter and bladder is of no advantage (GR: A). Healthcare workers should be constantly aware of the risk of cross-infection between catheterised patients. They should observe protocols on hand washing and the need to use disposable gloves (GR: A). A minority of patients can be managed with the use of the non-return (flip) valve catheters, thus avoiding the closed drainage bag. Such patients may exchange the convenience of on-demand drainage with an increased risk of infection. Patients with urethral catheters in place for ≥ 10 years should be screened annually for bladder cancer (GR: C). Clinicians should always consider alternatives to indwelling urethral catheters that are less prone to causing symptomatic infection. In appropriate patients, suprapubic catheters, condom drainage systems and intermittent catheterisation are each preferable to indwelling urethral catheterisation (GR: B). While the catheter is in place, systemic antimicrobial treatment of asymptomatic catheter-associated bacteriuria is not recommended (GR: A), except for some special cases. Routine urine culture in an asymptomatic catheterised patient is also not recommended (GR: C) because treatment is in general not necessary. Antibiotic treatment is recommended only for symptomatic infection (GR: B). After initiation of empirical treatment, usually with broad-spectrum antibiotics based on local susceptibility patterns (GR: C), the choice of antibiotics might need to be adjusted according to urine culture results (GR: B). Long-term antibiotic suppressive therapy is not effective (GR: A).

6.2 Summary of recommendations

Recommendation		GR
General aspects		
1.	Written catheter care protocols are necessary.	B
2.	Health care workers should observe protocols on hand hygiene and the need to use disposable gloves between catheterised patients.	A
Catheter insertion and choice of catheter		
3.	An indwelling catheter should be introduced under antiseptic conditions.	B
4.	Urethral trauma should be minimised by the use of adequate lubricant and the smallest possible catheter calibre.	B
5.	Antibiotic-impregnated catheters may decrease the frequency of asymptomatic bacteriuria within 1 week. There is, however, no evidence that they decrease symptomatic infection. Therefore, they cannot be recommended routinely.	B
6.	Silver alloy catheters significantly reduce the incidence of asymptomatic bacteriuria, but only for < 1 week. There was some evidence of reduced risk for symptomatic UTI. Therefore, they may be useful in some settings.	B
Prevention		
7.	The catheter system should remain closed.	A
8.	The duration of catheterisation should be minimal.	A
9.	Topical antiseptics or antibiotics applied to the catheter, urethra or meatus are not recommended.	A
10.	Benefits from prophylactic antibiotics and antiseptic substances have never been established, therefore, they are not recommended.	A
11.	Removal of the indwelling catheter after non-urological operation before midnight might be beneficial.	B
12.	Long-term indwelling catheters should be changed at intervals adapted to the individual patient, but must be changed before blockage is likely to occur, however, there is no evidence for the exact intervals of changing catheters.	B
13.	Chronic antibiotic suppressive therapy is generally not recommended.	A
14.	The drainage bag should always be kept below the level of the bladder and the connecting tube.	B
Diagnostics		
15.	Routine urine culture in asymptomatic catheterised patients is not recommended.	B
16.	Urine, and in septic patients, also blood for culture must be taken before any antimicrobial therapy is started.	C
17.	Febrile episodes are only found in < 10% of catheterised patients living in a long-term facility. It is therefore extremely important to rule out other sources of fever.	A
Treatment		
18.	While the catheter is in place, systemic antimicrobial treatment of asymptomatic catheter-associated bacteriuria is not recommended, except in certain circumstances, especially before traumatic urinary tract interventions.	A
19.	In case of asymptomatic candiduria, neither systemic nor local antifungal therapy is indicated, but removal of the catheter or stent should be considered.	A/C
20.	Antimicrobial treatment is recommended only for symptomatic infection.	B
21.	In case of symptomatic CAUTI, it might be reasonable to replace or remove the catheter before starting antimicrobial therapy if the indwelling catheter has been in place for > 7 days.	B
22.	For empirical therapy, broad-spectrum antibiotics should be given based on local susceptibility patterns.	C
23.	After culture results are available, antibiotic therapy should be adjusted according to pathogen sensitivity.	B

24.	In case of candiduria associated with urinary symptoms, or if candiduria is the sign of systemic infection, systemic therapy with antifungals is indicated.	B
25.	Elderly female patients may need treatment if bacteriuria does not resolve spontaneously after catheter removal.	C
Alternative drainage systems		
26.	There is limited evidence that postoperative intermittent catheterisation reduces the risk of bacteriuria compared with indwelling catheters. No recommendation can be made.	C
27.	In appropriate patients, a suprapubic, condom drainage system or intermittent catheter is preferable to an indwelling urethral catheter.	B
28.	There is little evidence to suggest that antibiotic prophylaxis decreases bacteriuria in patients using intermittent catheterisation, therefore, it is not recommended.	B
Long-term follow up		
29.	Patients with urethral catheters in place for ≥ 10 years should be screened for bladder cancer.	C

6.3 Reference

1. Tenke P, Kovacs B, Bjerklund Johansen TE, et al. European and Asian guidelines on management and prevention of catheter-associated urinary tract infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2008;31 Suppl 1:S68-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18006279

7. UTIs IN CHILDREN

7.1 Summary and recommendations

Urinary tract infection in children is a frequent health problem, with the incidence only a little lower than that of upper respiratory and digestive infections.

The incidence of UTI varies depending on age and sex. In the first year of life, mostly the first 3 months, UTI is more common in boys (3.7%) than in girls (2%), after which the incidence changes, being 3% in girls and 1.1% in boys. Paediatric UTI is the most common cause of fever of unknown origin in boys aged < 3 years. The clinical presentation of UTI in infants and young children can vary from fever to gastrointestinal and lower or upper urinary tract symptoms.

Investigation should be undertaken after two episodes of UTI in girls and one in boys (GR: B). The objective is to rule out the unusual occurrence of obstruction, vesicoureteric reflux (VUR) and dysfunctional voiding, e.g. as caused by a neuropathic disorder.

Chronic pyelonephritic renal scarring develops very early in life due to the combination of a UTI, intrarenal reflux and VUR. It sometimes arises *in utero* due to dysplasia. Although rare, renal scarring may lead to severe long-term complications such as hypertension and chronic renal failure.

VUR is treated with long-term prophylactic antibiotics (GR: B). Surgical re-implantation or endoscopic treatment is reserved for the small number of children with breakthrough infection (GR: B).

For treatment of UTI in children, short courses are not advised and therefore treatment is continued for 5-7 days and longer (GR: A). If the child is severely ill with vomiting and dehydration, hospital admission is required and parenteral antibiotics are given initially (GR: A).

7.2 Background

The urinary tract is a common source of infection in children and infants. It represents the most common bacterial infection in children < 2 years of age (1) (LE: 2a). The outcome of a UTI is usually benign, but in early infancy, it can progress to renal scarring, especially when associated with congenital anomalies of the urinary tract. Delayed sequelae related to renal scarring include hypertension, proteinuria, renal damage and even chronic renal failure, which requires dialysis treatment in a significant number of adults (2) (LE: 2a).

The risk of UTI during the first decade of life is 1% in males and 3% in females (3). It has been suggested that 5% of schoolgirls and up to 0.5% of schoolboys undergo at least one episode of UTI during their school life. The incidence is different for children < 3 months of age, when it is more common in boys. The incidence of asymptomatic bacteriuria is 0.7-3.4% in neonates, 0.7-1.3% in infants < 3 months of age, and 0.2-0.8% in preschool boys and girls (3). The incidence of symptomatic bacteriuria is 0.14% in neonates, with a further increase to 0.7% in boys and 2.8% in girls aged < 6 months. The overall recurrence rate for the neonatal period has been reported to be 25% (3,4).

7.3 Aetiology

The common pathogenic sources are Gram-negative, mainly enteric, bacteria. Of these, *E. coli* is responsible for 90% of UTI episodes (5). Gram-positive bacteria (particularly enterococci and staphylococci) represent 5-7% of cases. Hospital-acquired infections show a wider pattern of aggressive bacteria, such as *Klebsiella, Serratia* and *Pseudomonas* sp. Groups A and B streptococci are relatively common in new-born infants (6). There is an increasing trend towards the isolation of *S. saprophyticus* in UTIs in children, although the role of this bacterium is still debatable (7).

7.4 Pathogenesis and risk factors

The urinary tract is a sterile space with an impermeable lining. Retrograde ascent is the most common mechanism of infection. Nosocomial infection and involvement as part of a systemic infection are less common (8).

Obstruction and dysfunction are among the most common causes of urinary infection. Phimosis predisposes to UTI (9,10) (LE: 2a). Enterobacteria derived from intestinal flora colonise the preputial sac, glandular surface and the distal urethra. Among these bacteria are strains of *E. coli* that express P fimbriae, which adhere to the inner layer of the preputial skin and to uroepithelial cells (11).

A wide variety of congenital urinary tract abnormalities can cause UTIs through obstruction, e.g. urethral valves, ureteropelvic junction obstruction or non-obstructive urinary stasis (e.g. prune belly syndrome, or VUR). More mundane but significant causes of UTIs include labial adhesion and chronic constipation (7).

Dysfunctional voiding in an otherwise normal child may result in infrequent bladder emptying aided by delaying manoeuvres, e.g. crossing legs, sitting on heels (12). Neuropathic bladder dysfunction (e.g. spina bifida, or sphincter dyssynergia) may lead to post-void residual urine and secondary VUR (4).

The link between renal damage and UTIs is controversial. The mechanism in obstructive nephropathy is self-evident, but more subtle changes occur when there is VUR. Almost certainly, the necessary components include VUR, intrarenal reflux and UTI. These must all work together in early childhood when the growing kidney is likely to be susceptible to parenchymal infection. Later on in childhood, the presence of bacteriuria seems irrelevant to the progression of existing scars or the very unusual formation of new scars. Another confounding factor is that many so-called scars are dysplastic renal tissue which develop in utero (13).

7.5 Signs and symptoms

Symptoms are non-specific, and vary with the age of the child and the severity of the disease. Epididymo-orchitis is extremely unusual. With scrotal pain and inflammation, testicular torsion has to be considered.

A UTI in neonates may be non-specific and with no localisation. In small children, a UTI may present with gastrointestinal signs, such as vomiting and diarrhoea. In the first weeks of life, 13.6% of patients with fever have a UTI (14). Rarely, septic shock is the presentation. Signs of UTI may be vague in small children, but later on, when they are older than 2 years, frequent voiding, dysuria and suprapubic, abdominal or lumbar pain may appear with or without fever.

7.6 Classification

UTIs may be classified as a first episode or recurrent, or according to severity (simple or severe).
Recurrent UTI may be subclassified into three groups (8):

- *Unresolved infection*: subtherapeutic level of antimicrobial, non-compliance with treatment, malabsorption, resistant pathogens.
- *Bacterial persistence*: may be due to a nidus for persistent infection in the urinary tract. Surgical correction or medical treatment for urinary dysfunction may be needed.
- *Reinfection*: each episode is a new infection acquired from periurethral, perineal or rectal flora. From the clinical point of view, severe and simple forms of UTIs should be differentiated because to some extent the severity of symptoms dictates the degree of urgency with which investigation and treatment are to be undertaken (Table 7.1).

Table 7.1: Clinical classification of UTIs in children

Severe UTI	Simple UTI
Fever ≥ 39°C	Mild pyrexia
Persistent vomiting	Good fluid intake
Serious dehydration	Slight dehydration
Poor treatment compliance	Good treatment compliance

7.6.1 ***Severe UTI***

Severe UTI is related to the presence of fever of ≥ 39°C, the feeling of being ill, persistent vomiting, and moderate or severe dehydration.

7.6.2 ***Simple UTI***

A child with a simple UTI may have only mild pyrexia, but is able to take fluids and oral medication. The child is only slightly or not dehydrated and has a good expected level of compliance. When a low level of compliance is expected, such a child should be managed as one with a severe UTI.

7.7 Diagnosis

7.7.1 ***Physical examination***

It is mandatory to look for phimosis, labial adhesion, signs of pyelonephritis, epididymo-orchitis, and stigmata of spina bifida, e.g. hairy patch on the sacral skin. The absence of fever does not exclude the presence of an infective process.

7.7.2 ***Laboratory tests***

The definitive diagnosis of infection in children requires a positive urine culture (8,15). Urine must be obtained under bacteriologically reliable conditions when undertaking a urine specimen culture (16). A positive urine culture is defined as the presence of > 100,000 cfu/mL of one pathogen. The urine specimen may be difficult to obtain in a child < 4 years old, and different methods are advised because there is a high risk of contamination (17,18).

7.7.2.1 Collection of the urine

7.7.2.1.1 Suprapubic bladder aspiration

Suprapubic bladder aspiration is the most sensitive method, even though urine may be obtained in 23-99% of cases (8,18).

7.7.2.1.2 Bladder catheterisation

Bladder catheterisation is also a very sensitive method, even though there is the risk of introduction of nosocomial pathogens (8,19).

7.7.2.1.3 Plastic bag attached to the genitalia

Prospective studies have shown a high incidence of false-positive results, ranging from 85 to 99% (8,18). It is helpful when the culture is negative (8,18) and has a positive predictive value of 15% (16). To obtain a urine sample in the best condition in children < 2 years of age (girls and uncircumcised boys without sphincteric control), it is better to use suprapubic bladder aspiration or bladder catheterisation. In older children with sphincteric control, MSU collection is possible and reliable (18).

7.7.2.2 Quantification of bacteriuria

The final concentration of bacteria in urine is directly related to the method of collection, diuresis, and method of storage and transport of the specimen (15). The classical definition of significant bacteriuria of > 10^5 cfu/mL is still used and depends on the clinical environment (15,17).

The presence of pyuria (> 5 leukocytes per field) and bacteriuria in a fresh urine sample reinforce the clinical diagnosis of UTI (17).

In boys, when the urine is obtained by bladder catheterisation, the urine culture is considered positive with > 10^4 cfu/mL. Even though Hoberman (20) has identified a microorganism in 65% of cases with colony counts between 10,000 and 50,000 cfu/mL, there was a mixed growth pattern suggesting contamination. In these cases, it is better to repeat the culture or to evaluate the presence of other signs, such as pyuria, nitrites or other biochemical markers (15). The collection of MSU or in a collecting bag of ≥10^5 cfu/mL is considered positive (16) (Table 7.2).

Table 7.2: Criteria for UTI in children

Urine specimen from suprapubic bladder puncture	Urine specimen from bladder catheterisation	Urine specimen from midstream void
Any number of cfu/mL (at least 10 identical colonies)	≥ 1,000-50,000 cfu/mL	≥ 10^4 cfu/mL with symptoms ≥10^5 cfu/mL without symptoms

7.7.2.3 Other biochemical markers

The presence of other biochemical markers in a urine sample are useful to establish the diagnosis of UTI (8).

The most frequent markers are nitrite and leukocyte esterase usually combined in a dipstick test.

7.7.2.3.1 Nitrite

Nitrite is the degradation product of nitrate in bacterial metabolism, particularly in Gram-negative bacteria. When an infection is caused by Gram-positive bacteria, the test may be negative (8,16). Limitations of the nitrite test include:

- not all uropathogens reduce nitrate to nitrite, e.g. *P. aeruginosa*, or enterococci;
- even nitrite-producing pathogens may show a negative test result, due to the short transit time in the bladder in cases of high diuresis and urine dilution, e.g. neonates;
- the nitrite test has a sensitivity of only 45-60%, but a very good specificity of 85-98% (8,17,21).

7.7.2.3.2 Leukocyte esterase

Leukocyte esterase is produced by the activity of leukocytes. The test for leukocyte esterase has a sensitivity of 48-86% and a specificity of 17-93% (8,17,20,21).

A combination of nitrite and leukocyte esterase testing improves sensitivity and specificity, but carries the risk of false-positive results (21).

The dipstick test has become useful to exclude rapidly and reliably the presence of a UTI, provided both nitrite and leukocyte esterase tests are negative. If the tests are positive, it is better to confirm the results in combination with the clinical symptoms and other tests (17,21).

Bacteriuria without pyuria may be found:

- in bacterial contamination;
- in colonisation (asymptomatic bacteriuria);
- when collecting a specimen before the onset of an inflammatory reaction.

In such cases, it is advisable to repeat the urinalysis after 24 h to clarify the situation. Even in febrile children with a positive urine culture, the absence of pyuria may cast doubt on the diagnosis of UTI. Instead, asymptomatic bacteriuria with a concomitant septic focus responsible for the febrile syndrome has to be considered.

Bacteriuria without pyuria is found in 0.5% of specimens. This figure corresponds well with the estimated rate of asymptomatic bacteriuria in childhood (20,22) (LE: 2a).

Pyuria without bacteriuria may be due to:

- incomplete antimicrobial treatment of UTI;
- urolithiasis and foreign bodies;
- infections caused by *M. tuberculosis* and other fastidious bacteria, e.g. Chlamydia trachomatis.

Thus, either bacteriuria or pyuria may not be considered reliable parameters to diagnose or exclude UTI. Their assessment can be influenced by other factors, such as the degree of hydration, method of specimen collection, mode of centrifugation, volume in which sediment is resuspended and subjective interpretation of results (23). However, according to Landau et al. (24), pyuria in febrile children is indicative of acute pyelonephritis.

For all of these reasons, in neonates and children < 6 months of age, either pyuria, bacteriuria or the nitrite test, separately, have minimal predictive value for UTI (25,26) (LE: 3). In contrast, the positive predictive value of significant Gram staining with pyuria is 85% (20) (LE: 2b). In older children, pyuria with a positive nitrite test is more reliable for the diagnosis of UTI, with a positive predictive value of 98%.

Combining bacteriuria and pyuria in febrile children, the findings of ≥ 10 WBC/mm^3 and ≥ 50,000 cfu/mL in a specimen collected by catheterisation are significant for a UTI, and discriminate between infection and contamination (20,25).

7.7.2.3.3 C-reactive protein

Although non-specific in febrile children with bacteriuria, C-reactive protein seems to be useful in distinguishing between acute pyelonephritis and other causes of bacteriuria. It is considered significant at a concentration > 20 µg/mL.

7.7.2.3.4 Urinary N-acetyl-β-glucosaminidase

Urinary N-acetyl-β-glucosaminidase is a marker of tubular damage. It is increased in febrile UTI and may become a reliable diagnostic marker for UTIs, although it is also elevated in VUR (27).

7.7.2.3.5 IL-6

The clinical use of urinary concentrations of IL-6 in UTIs (28) is still at the research stage.

7.7.3 ***Imaging of the urinary tract***

A gold standard imaging technique has to be cost-effective, painless, safe, and have minimal or no radiation, as well as have the ability to detect any significant structural anomaly. Current techniques do not fulfil all such requirements.

7.7.3.1 Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography (US) has become very useful in children because of its safety, speed and high accuracy in identifying the anatomy and size of the renal parenchyma and collecting system (29). It is subjective and therefore operator-dependent, and gives no information on renal function. However, scars can be identified, although not as well as with Tc-99m DMSA scanning (29,30) (LE: 2a). This technique has been shown to be very sensitive and excretory urography must be reserved only for when images need to be morphologically clarified (31) (LE: 2a).

7.7.3.2 Radionuclide studies

Tc-99m DMSA is a radiopharmaceutical that is bound to the basement membrane of proximal renal tubular cells; half of the dose remains in the renal cortex after 6 h. This technique is helpful in determining functional renal mass and ensures an accurate diagnosis of cortical scarring by showing areas of hypoactivity, which indicates lack of function. A UTI interferes with the uptake of this radiotracer by the proximal renal tubular cells, and may show areas of focal defect in the renal parenchyma. A star-shaped defect in the renal parenchyma may indicate an acute episode of pyelonephritis. A focal defect in the renal cortex usually indicates a chronic lesion or a renal scar (32-34) (LE: 2a).

Focal scarring or a smooth uniform loss of renal substance as demonstrated by Tc-99m DMSA is generally regarded as being associated with VUR (reflux nephropathy) (35,36). However, Rushton et al. (37) have stated that significant renal scarring may develop, regardless of the existence or absence of VUR. Ransley and Risdon (38) have reported that Tc-99m DMSA shows a specificity of 100% and sensitivity of 80% for renal scarring.

The use of Tc-99m DMSA scanning can be helpful in the early diagnosis of acute pyelonephritis. About 50-85% of children show positive findings in the first week. Minimal parenchymal defects, when characterised by a slight area of hypoactivity, can resolve with antimicrobial therapy (39,40). However, defects lasting > 5 months are considered to be renal scarring (41) (LE: 2a).

Tc-99m DMSA scans are considered more sensitive than excretory urography and US in the detection of renal scars (42-45). It remains questionable whether radionuclide scans can substitute for echography as a first-line diagnostic approach in children with a UTI (46,47).

7.7.3.3 Cystourethrography

7.7.3.3.1 Conventional voiding cystourethrography

Voiding cystourethrography (VCU) is the most widely used radiological exploration for the study of the lower urinary tract and especially of VUR. It is considered mandatory in the evaluation of UTIs in children < 1 year of age. Its main drawbacks are the risk of infection, the need for retrogrades filling of the bladder, and the possible deleterious effect of radiation on children (48). In recent years, tailored low-dose fluoroscopic VCU has been used for the evaluation of VUR in girls to minimise radiological exposure (49). VCU is mandatory in the assessment of febrile childhood UTI, even in the presence of normal US. Up to 23% of these patients may reveal VUR (50).

7.7.3.3.2 Radionuclide cystography (indirect)

This investigation is performed by prolonging the period of scanning after the injection of Tc-99m diethylene triamine pentaacetate (DTPA) or mercaptoacetyltriglycine (MAG-3) as part of dynamic renography. It represents an attractive alternative to conventional cystography, especially when following patients with reflux, because of its lower dose of radiation. Disadvantages are poor image resolution and difficulty in detecting lower urinary tract abnormalities (51,52).

7.7.3.3.3 Cystosonography

Contrast-material-enhanced voiding ultrasonography has been introduced for the diagnoses of VUR without irradiation (47,52). Further studies are necessary to determine the role of this new imaging modality in UTI.

7.7.3.4 Additional imaging

Excretory urography remains a valuable tool in the evaluation of the urinary tract in children, but its use in UTIs is debatable unless preliminary imaging has demonstrated abnormalities that require further investigation. The major disadvantages in infants are the risks of side effects from exposure to contrast media and radiation (53). However, the role of excretory urography is declining with the increasing technical superiority of CT (54) and

MRI. However, the indications for their use is still limited in UTI.

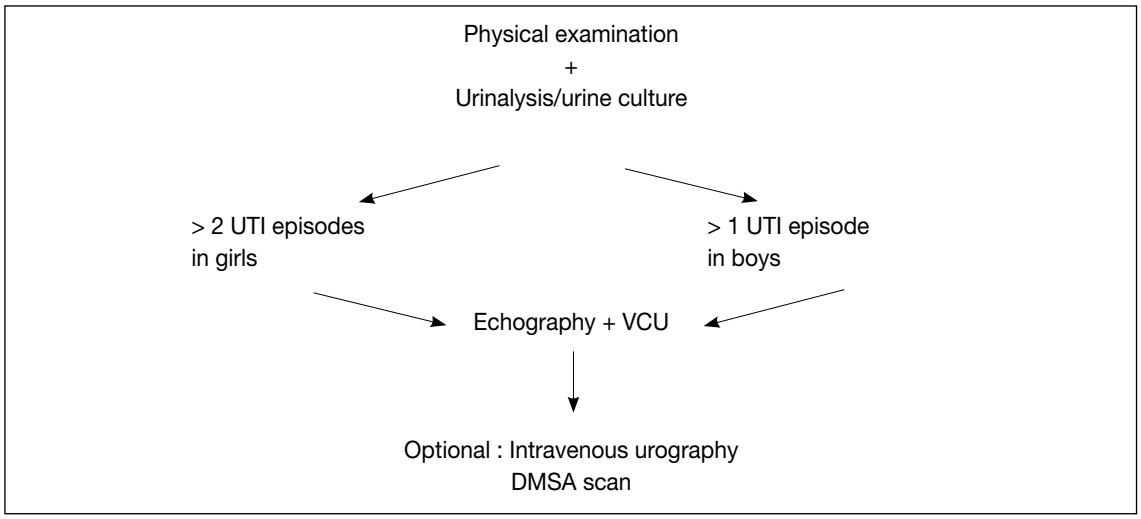
7.7.3.5 Urodynamic evaluation

When voiding dysfunction is suspected, e.g. incontinence, residual urine, increased bladder wall thickness, urodynamic evaluation with uroflowmetry, (video) cystometry, including pressure flow studies, and electromyography should be considered.

7.8 Schedule of investigation

Screening of infants for asymptomatic bacteriuria is unlikely to prevent pyelonephritic scar formation, as these usually develop very early in infancy. Only a minority of children with a UTI have an underlying urological disorder, but when present, such a disorder can cause considerable morbidity. Thus, after a maximum of two UTI episodes in a girl and one in a boy, investigations should be undertaken (Figure 7.1), but not in the case of asymptomatic bacteriuria (51-58). The need for DTPA/MAG-3 scanning is determined by the ultrasound findings, particularly if there is suspicion of an obstructive lesion.

Figure 7.1: Schedule of investigation of a UTI in a child



DMSA = dimercaptosuccinic acid; UTI = urinary tract infection; VCU = voiding cystourethrography.

7.9 Treatment

Treatment has four main goals:

1. elimination of symptoms and eradication of bacteriuria in the acute episode;
2. prevention of renal scarring;
3. prevention of a recurrent UTI;
4. correction of associated urological lesions.

7.9.1 ***Severe UTIs***

A severe UTI requires adequate parenteral fluid replacement and appropriate antimicrobial treatment, preferably with cephalosporins (third generation). If a Gram-positive UTI is suspected by Gram stain, it is useful to administer aminoglycosides in combination with ampicillin or amoxycillin/clavulanate (59) (LE: 2a). Antimicrobial treatment has to be initiated on an empirical basis, but should be adjusted according to culture results as soon as possible. In patients with an allergy to cephalosporins, aztreonam or gentamicin may be used. When aminoglycosides are necessary, serum levels should be monitored for dose adjustment.
Chloramphenicol, sulphonamides, tetracyclines, rifampicin, amphotericin B and quinolones should be avoided. The use of ceftriaxone must also be avoided due to its undesired side effect of jaundice.

A wide variety of antimicrobials can be used in older children, with the exception of tetracyclines (because of tooth staining). Fluorinated quinolones may produce cartilage toxicity (58), but if necessary, may be used as second-line therapy in the treatment of serious infections, because musculoskeletal adverse events are of moderate intensity and transient (60,61). For a safety period of 24-36 h, parenteral therapy should be administered. When the child becomes afebrile and is able to take fluids, he/she may be given an oral agent to complete the 10-14 days of treatment, which may be continued on an outpatient basis. This provides some advantages, such as less psychological impact on the child and more comfort for the whole family.
It is also less expensive, well tolerated and eventually prevents opportunistic infections (20). The preferred oral antimicrobials are: trimethoprim (TMP), co-trimoxazole (TMP plus sulphamethoxazole), an oral cephalosporin,

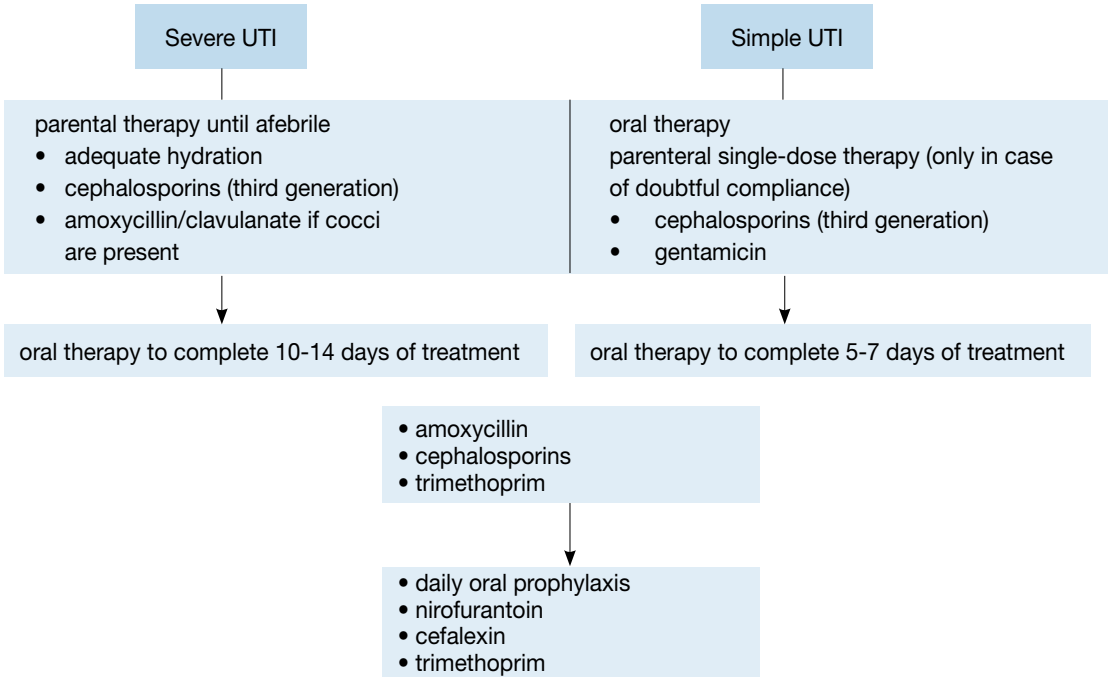
or amoxycillin/clavulanate. However, the indications for TMP are declining in areas with increasing resistance.

In children < 3 years of age, who have difficulty taking oral medications, parenteral treatment for 7-10 days seems advisable, with similar results to those with oral treatment (62).

If there are significant abnormalities in the urinary tract (e.g. VUR, or obstruction), appropriate urological intervention should be considered. If renal scarring is detected, the patient will need careful follow-up by a paediatrician in anticipation of sequelae such as hypertension, renal function impairment, and recurrent UTI.

An overview of the treatment of febrile UTIs in children is given in Figure 7.2 and the dosing of antimicrobial agents is outlined in Table 7.3 (63).

Figure 7.2: Treatment of febrile UTIs in children



*7.9.2 **Simple UTIs***

A simple UTI is considered to be a low-risk infection in children. Oral empirical treatment with TMP, an oral cephalosporin or amoxycillin/clavulanate is recommended, according to the local resistance pattern. The duration of treatment in uncomplicated UTIs treated orally should be 5-7 days (64,65) (LE: 1b). A single parenteral dose may be used in cases of doubtful compliance and with a normal urinary tract (66) (LE: 2a). If the response is poor or complications develop, the child must be admitted to hospital for parenteral treatment (67).

*7.9.3 **Prophylaxis***

If there is an increased risk of pyelonephritis, e.g. VUR, and recurrent UTI, low-dose antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended (68,69) (LE; 2a). It may also be used after an acute episode of UTI until the diagnostic work-up is completed. The most effective antimicrobial agents are: nitrofurantoin, TMP, cephalexin and cefaclor (68).

7.10 Acknowledgement

With our grateful thanks, the chapter on UTIs in children was updated also by Jorge Caffaratti Sfulcini, Paediatric Urology, Fundació Puigvert, Barcelona, Spain, as co-author.

Table 7.3: Dosing of antimicrobial agents in children aged 3 months to 12 years*

Antimicrobial agent	Application	Age	Total dose per day	No. of doses per day
Ampicillin	Intravenous	3-12 months	100-300 mg/kg BW	3
Ampicillin	Intravenous	1-12 years	60-150 (-300) mg/kg BW	3
Amoxycillin	Oral	3 months to 12 years	50-100 mg/kg BW	2-3
Amoxycillin/clavulanate	Intravenous	3 months to 12 years	60-100 mg/kg BW	3
Amoxycillin/clavulanate	Oral	3 months to 12 years	37.5-75 mg/kg BW	2-3
Cephalexin				
Treatment	Oral	3 months to 12 years	50-100 mg/kg BW	3
Prophylaxis	Oral	1-12 years	10 mg/kg BW	1-2
Cefaclor				
Treatment	Oral	3 months to 12 years	50-100 mg/kg BW	3
Prophylaxis	Oral	1-12 years	10 mg/kg BW	1-2
Cefixime	Oral	3 months to 12 years	8-12 mg/kg BW	1-2
Cetriaxone	Intravenous	3 months to 12 years	50-100 mg/kg BW	1
Aztreonam	Intravenous	3 months to 12 years	(50)-100 mg/kg BW	3
Gentamicin Gentamicin	Intravenous Intravenous	3-12 months 1-2 years	5-7.5 mg/kg BW 5 mg/kg BW	1-3 1-3
Trimethoprim				
Treatment	Oral	1-12 years	6 mg/kg BW	2
Prophylaxis	Oral	1-12 years	1-2 mg/kg BW	1
Nitrofurantoin				
Treatment	Oral	1-12 years	3-5 mg/kg BW	2
Prophylaxis	Oral	1-12 years	1 mg/kg BW	1-2

BW = body weight.
** Adapted from ref. 63.*

7.11 References

1. Jodal U. The natural history of bacteriuria in childhood. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1987 Dec;1(4):713-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3333655
2. Jacobson SH, Eklöf O, Eriksson CG, et al. Development of hypertension and uraemia after pyelonephritis in childhood: 27 year follow up. BMJ 1989 Sep;299(6701):703-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2508881

3. Foxman B. Epidemiology of urinary tract infections: incidence, morbidity, and economic costs. Am J Med 2002 Jul;113 Suppl1A:5S-13S.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12113866
4. Schulman SL. Voiding dysfunction in children. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Aug;31(3):481-90, ix.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313057
5. Shapiro ED. Infections of the urinary tract. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1992 Feb;11(2):165-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1741197
6. Richards MJ, Edwards JR, Culver DH, et al. Nosocomial infections in pediatric intensive care units in the United States. National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System. Pediatrics 1999 Apr;103(4):e39.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10103331
7. Abrahamsson K, Hansson S, Jodal U, et al. Staphylococcus saprophyticus urinary tract infections in children. Eur J Pediatr 1993 Jan;152(1):69-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8444210
8. Ma JF, Shortliffe LM. Urinary tract infection in children: etiology and epidemiology. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Aug;31(3):517-26, ix-x.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313061
9. Craig JC, Knight JF, Sureshkuman P, et al. Effect of circumcision on incidence of urinary tract infection in preschool boys. J Pediatr 1996 Jan;128(1):23-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8551417
10. To T, Agha M, Dick PT, et al. Cohort study on circumcision of newborn boys and subsequent risk of urinary-tract infection. Lancet 1998 Dec;352(9143):1813-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851381
11. Fussell EN, Kaack MB, Cherry R, et al. Adherence of bacteria to human foreskins. J Urol 1988 Nov;140(5):997-1001.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2902235
12. Wan J, Kaplinsky R, Greenfield S. Toilet habits of children evaluated for urinary tract infection. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 2):797-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609183
13. Yeung CK, Godley ML, Dhillon HK, et al. The characteristics of primary vesico-ureteric reflux in male and female infants with pre-natal hydronephrosis. Br J Urol 1997 Aug;80(2):319-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9284209
14. Lin DS, Huang SH, Lin CC, et al. Urinary tract infection in febrile infants younger than eight weeks of Age. Pediatrics 2000 Feb;105(2):E20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654980
15. Zorc JJ, Kiddoo DA, Shaw KN. Diagnosis and management of pediatric urinary tract infections. Clin Microbiol Rev 2005 Apr:18(2):417-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15831830
16. Cavagnaro F. [Urinary tract infection in childhood.] Rev Chilena Infectol 2005 Jun:22(2):161-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15891797
17. Watson AR. Pediatric urinary tract infection. EAU Update Series 2, 2004 Sep, pp. 94-100.
http://www.journals.elsevierhealth.com/periodicals/euus/article/PIIS1570912404000406/abstract
18. Koch VH, Zuccolotto SM. [Urinary tract infection: a search for evidence.] J Pediatr (Rio J) 2003 May;79 Suppl 1: S97-S106. [Article in Portuguese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14506522
19. Hellerstein, S. Urinary tract infection in children: pathophysiology, risk factors and management. Infect Med 2002;19:554-60.
http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/447232
20. Hoberman A, Wald ER. Urinary tract infections in young febrile children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1997 Jan;16(1):11-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9002094
21. Devillé WL, Yzermans JC, van Duijn NP, et al. The urine dipstick test useful to rule out infections. A meta-analysis of the accuracy. BMC Urol 2004 Jun;4:4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15175113
22. Wettergren B, Jodal U. Spontaneous clearance of asymptomatic bacteriuria in infants. Acta Paediatr Scand 1990 Mar;79(3):300-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2333743
23. Stamm WE. Measurement of pyuria and its relation to bacteriuria. Am J Med 1983 Jul;75(1B):53-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6349345

24. Landau D, Turner ME, Brennan J, et al. The value of urinalysis in differentiating acute pyelonephritis from lower urinary tract infection in febrile infants. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1994 Sep;13(9):777-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7808845
25. Hoberman A, Chao HP, Keller DM, et al. Prevalence of urinary tract infection in febrile infants. J Pediatr 1993 Jul;123(1):17-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8320616
26. Piercey KR, Khoury AE, McLorie GA, et al. Diagnosis and management of urinary tract infections. Curr Opin Urol 1993 Feb;3:25-9.
27. Jantausch BA, Rifai N, Getson P, et al. Urinary N-acetylbetaglucosaminidase and beta-2-microglobulin in the diagnosis of urinary tract infection in febrile infants. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1994 Apr;13(4):294-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8036046
28. Benson M, Jodal U, Andreasson A, et al. Interleukin 6 response to urinary tract infection in childhood. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1994 Jul;13(7):612-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7970949
29. Kass EJ, Fink-Bennett D, Cacciarelli AA, et al. The sensitivity of renal scintigraphy and sonography in detecting nonobstructive acute pyelonephritis. J Urol 1992 Aug;148(2 Pt 2):606-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1640534
30. Pickworth FE, Carlin JB, Ditchfield MR, et al. Sonographic measurement of renal enlargement in children with acute pyelonephritis and time needed for resolution: implications for renal growth assessment. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1995 Aug;165(2):405-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7618567
31. Kangarloo H, Gold RH, Fine RN, et al. Urinary tract infection in infants and children evaluated by ultrasound. Radiology 1985 Feb;154(2):367-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3880909
32. Kass EJ. Imaging in acute pyelonephritis. Curr Opin Urol 1994 Jan;4:39-44.
33. Stutley JE, Gordon I. Vesico-ureteric reflux in the damaged non-scarred kidney. Pediatr Nephrol 1992 Jan;6(1):25-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1311185
34. Britton KE. Renal radionuclide studies. In: Whitfield HN, Hendry WF, Kirby RS, Duckett JW, eds. Textbook of genitourinary surgery. Oxford: Blackwell Science, 1998; pp. 76-103.
35. Rosenberg AR, Rossleigh MA, Brydon MP, et al. Evaluation of acute urinary tract infection in children by dimercaptosuccinic acid scintigraphy: a prospective study. J Urol 1992 Nov;148(5 Pt 2):1746-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1331546
36. Jakobsson B, Söderlundh S, Berg U. Diagnostic significance of 99mTc-dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scintigraphy in urinary tract infection. Arch Dis Child 1992 Nov;67(11):1338-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1335226
37. Rushton HG, Majd M, Jantausch B, et al. Renal scarring following reflux and nonreflux pyelonephritis in children: evaluation with 99mtechnetium-dimercaptosuccinic acid scintigraphy. J Urol 1992 May;147(5):1327-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1314912
38. Ransley PG, Risdon RA. Renal papillary morphology in infants and young children. Urol Res 1975 Oct;3(3):111-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1189138
39. Risdon RA. The small scarred kidney of childhood. A congenital or an acquired lesion. Pediatr Nephrol 1987 Oct;1(4):632-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3153344
40. Risdon RA, Godley ML, Parkhouse HF, et al. Renal pathology and the 99mTc-DMSA image during the evolution of the early pyelonephritic scar: an experimental study. J Urol 1994 Mar;151(3):767-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8309003
41. Jakobsson B, Svensson L. Transient pyelonephritic changes on 99mTechnetium dimercaptosuccinic acid scan for at least five months after infection. Acta Paediatr 1997 Aug;86(8):803-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9307157
42. Rushton HG, Majd M, Chandra R, et al. Evaluation of 99mtechnetium-dimercapto-succinic acid renal scans in experimental acute pyelonephritis in piglets. J Urol 1988 Nov;140(5 Pt 2):1169-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2846898
43. Bircan ZE, Buyan N, Hasanoglu E, et al. Radiologic evaluation of urinary tract infection. Int Urol Nephrol 1995;27(1):27-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7615367

44. Elison BS, Taylor D, Van der Wall H, et al. Comparison of DMSA scintigraphy with intravenous urography for the detection of renal scarring and its correlation with vesicoureteric reflux. Br J Urol 1992 Mar;69(3):294-302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1314684
45. MacKenzie JR, Fowler K, Hollman AS, et al. The value of ultrasound in the child with an acute urinary tract infection. Br J Urol 1994 Aug;74(2):240-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7921944
46. Mucci B, Maguire B. Does routine ultrasound have a role in the investigation of children with urinary tract infection? Clin Radiol 1994 May;49(5):324-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8013196
47. Westwood ME, Whiting PF, Cooper J, et al. Further investigation of confirmed urinary tract infection (UTI) in children under five years: a systematic review. BMC Pediatr 2005 Mar;5(1):2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15769296
48. Haycock GB. A practical approach to evaluating urinary tract infection in children. Pediatr Nephrol 1991 Jul;5(4):401-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1654977
49. Kleinman PK, Diamond BA, Karellas A, et al. Tailored low-dose fluoroscopic voiding cystourethrography for the reevaluation of vesicoureteral reflux in girls. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1994 May;162(5):1151-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8166001
50. Kass EJ, Kernen KM, Carey JM. Paediatric urinary tract infection and the necessity of complete urological imaging. BJU Int 2000 Jul;86(1):94-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10886091
51. De Sadeleer C, De Boe V, Keuppens F, et al. How good is technetium-99m mercaptoacetyltriglycine indirect cystography? Eur J Nucl Med 1994 Mar;21(3):223-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8200390
52. Piaggio G, Degl' Innocenti ML, Tomà P, et al. Cystosonography and voiding cystourethrography in the diagnosis of vesicoureteral reflux. Pediatr Nephrol 2003 Jan;18(1):18-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12488985
53. Vela Navarrete R. [Urinary tract infections in children.] In: Tratado de urología tomo I. Jiménez Cruz JF, Rioja LA, eds. Barcelona: Ed Prous, 1993; pp. 499-507. [Article in Spanish]
54. Huang JJ, Sung JM, Chen KW, et al. Acute bacterial nephritis: a clinicoradiologic correlation based on computer tomography. Am J Med 1992 Sep;93(3):289-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1524081
55. Majd M, Rushton HG, Jantausch B, et al. Relationship among vesicoureteral reflux, Pfimbriated Escherichia coli, and acute pyelonephritis in children with febrile urinary tract infection. J Pediatr 1991 Oct;119(4):578-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1681043
56. Melis K, Vandevivere J, Hoskens C, et al. Involvement of the renal parenchyma in acute urinary tract infection: the contribution of 99mTc dimercaptosuccinic acid scan. Eur J Pediatr 1992 Jul;151(7): 536-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1327798
57. Smellie JM, Rigden SP. Pitfalls in the investigation of children with urinary tract infection. Arch Dis Child 1995 Mar;72(3):251-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7741579
58. Smellie JM, Rigden SP, Prescod NP. Urinary tract infection: a comparison of four methods of investigation. Arch Dis Child 1995 Mar;72(3):247-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7741578
59. Broseta E, Jimenez-Cruz JF. [Urinary tract infection in children.] In: Broseta E, Jimenez-Cruz JF, eds. Infeccion urinaria. Madrid: Ed Aula Medica, 1999; pp. 185-194. [Article in Spanish]
60. Grady R. Safety profile of quinolone antibiotics in the pediatric population. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2003 Mar;22(12):1128-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14688586
61. [No authors listed.] Fluoroquinoles in children: poorly defined risk of joint damage. Prescrire Int 2004 Oct;13(73):184-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15499700
62. Bloomfield P, Hodson EM, Craig JC. Antibiotics for acute pyelonephritis in children. Cohrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Jan;(1):CD003772.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15674914

63. Deutsche Gesellschaft für pädiatrische Infektiologie e.V. (DGPI) (ed). [Textbook for infections in children and adolescents.] 4th edn. Futuramed: Munich, 2003, pp. 148-157. [Article in German]
64. Michael M, Hodson EM, Craig JC, et al. Short versus standard duration oral antibiotic therapy for acute urinary tract infection in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003;(1):CD003966. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12535494
65. Tran D, Muchant DG, Aronoff SC. Short-course versus conventional length antimicrobial therapy for uncomplicated lower urinary tract infections in children: a meta-analysis of 1279 patients. J Pediatr 2001 Jul;139(1):93-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445800
66. Khan AJ. Efficacy of single-dose therapy of urinary tract infection in infants and children: a review. J Nalt Med Assoc 1994 Sep;86(9):690-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966433
67. Hellerstein S. Urinary tract infections. Old and new concepts. Pediatr Clin North Am 1995 Dec;42(6): 1433-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8614594
68. Smellie JM, Gruneberg RN, Bantock HM, et al. Prophylactic co-trimoxazole and trimethoprim in the management of urinary tract infection in children. Pediatr Nephrol 1988 Jan;2(1):12-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3152984
69. Arant BS Jr. Vesicoureteral reflux and evidence-based management. J Pediatr 2001 Nov;139(5):620-1. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11713435

8. UTIs IN RENAL INSUFFICIENCY, TRANSPLANT RECIPIENTS, DIABETES MELLITUS AND IMMUNOSUPPRESSION

8.1 Summary and recommendations

8.1.1 Acute effects of UTI on the kidney

In acute pyelonephritis, very dramatic changes can occur with focal reduction in perfusion on imaging and corresponding renal tubular dysfunction. However, if in the adult the kidney is normal beforehand, chronic renal damage is unlikely. There is no evidence that prolonged or intensive antibiotic treatment of acute pyelonephritis shortens the episode or prevents complications.

In diabetes mellitus, overwhelming infection can predispose to pyogenic infection with intrarenal perinephric abscess formation, emphysematous pyelonephritis, and rarely, a specific form of infective interstitial nephropathy. Papillary necrosis is a common consequence of pyelonephritis in patients with diabetes. Women are more prone to asymptomatic bacteriuria than men with diabetes, but in both sexes, progression to clinical pyelonephritis is more likely than in normal individuals. The risk factors for developing asymptomatic bacteriuria differ between type 1 and type 2 diabetes.

It is arguable that diabetic patients are susceptible to rapid progression of parenchymal infection. However, the clearance of asymptomatic bacteriuria should not be attempted if the intention is to prevent complications, notably acute pyelonephritis (GR: A).

8.1.2 Chronic renal disease and UTI

There are several factors of general potential importance that predispose to infection in uraemia, including the loss of several urinary defence mechanisms and a degree of immunosuppression. Typically, adult polycystic kidney disease (APCKD), gross VUR and end-stage obstructive uropathy harbour infective foci or promote ascending infection, but not invariably so. Clearly, severe UTI with accompanying bacteraemia can hasten progression of renal failure, but there is little evidence that vigorous treatment of lesser degrees of infection or prophylaxis will slow renal functional impairment once it is established (GR: C).

In patients with VUR and UTI in end-stage chronic renal failure, bilateral nephroureterectomy should only be undertaken as a last resort (GR: B).

8.1.2.1 APCKD

In patients with acute pyelonephritis and infected cysts (presenting as recurrent bacteraemia or local sepsis), treatment requires a long course of high-dose systemic fluoroquinolones, followed by prophylaxis. Bilateral nephrectomy should be utilised as a last resort (GR: B).

8.1.2.2 Calculi and UTI

Management is similar to that for patients without renal impairment, i.e. to clear the stones if possible and to minimise antibiotic treatment if the calculus cannot be removed. Nephrectomy should be performed as a last resort, but even residual renal function may be of vital importance (GR: B).

8.1.2.3 Obstruction of the urinary tract and UTI

As in all other situations, the combination of obstruction and infection is dangerous and should be treated vigorously. Obstruction may be covert and require specific diagnostic tests, e.g. video-urodynamics, or upper urinary tract pressure flow studies.

*8.1.3 **UTI in renal transplantation and immunosuppression***

The need to correct uropathy or to remove a potential focus of infection in an end-stage disease kidney is more pressing in patients enlisted for renal transplantation. Even so, the results of nephrectomy for a scarred or hydronephrotic kidney may be disappointing.

Immunosuppression is of secondary importance, although if this is extreme, immunosuppression can promote persistent bacteriuria, which may become symptomatic. In the context of renal transplantation, UTI is very common, but immunosuppression is only one of many factors that are mainly classified as 'surgical'.

HIV infection is associated with acute and chronic renal disease, possibly through the mechanisms of thrombotic microangiopathy and immune-mediated glomerulonephritis. Steroids, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors and highly active retroviral therapy appear to reduce progression to end-stage renal disease.

*8.1.4 **Antibiotic treatment for UTI in renal insufficiency and after renal transplantation***

The principles of antibiotic treatment for UTI in the presence of renal impairment, during dialysis treatment and after renal transplantation are discussed in the text and summarised in Tables 8.1-8.4.

8.2 Background

Whenever UTI is present in patients with renal insufficiency, problems arise in both the treatment of infection and the management of renal disease. There are also important scientific issues to be considered concerning the cause, special susceptibilities, effects and complications of renal parenchymal infection, particularly in the immunosuppressed patient.

This part of the guidelines can be subdivided into four sections.

1. What are the acute effects of UTI on the kidney and do the lesions become chronic?
2. Does chronic renal disease progress more quickly as a result of infection, and do particular renal diseases predispose to UTI?
3. Are immunosuppressed patients prone to UTI, particularly in the context of renal transplantation? Is UTI a significant cause of graft failure?
4. Which problems arise in antibiotic therapy in patients with renal insufficiency and after renal transplantation?

8.3 Acute effects of UTI on the kidney

Some authors regard acute pyelonephritis as complicated because, in their view, it may cause renal scarring in a previously normal kidney (1,2) (LE: 2a). Pathologically, a similar process may occur in such fundamentally different situations as obstructive and reflux nephropathy, although the distribution and extent of the lesions may be different (3-5) (LE: 2a).

*8.3.1 **VUR and intrarenal reflux***

The effects of VUR and intrarenal reflux on the renal parenchyma, and the contribution of ascending infection are still unresolved. Renal scarring can certainly be acquired as a result of these three factors, although, in almost all cases, this usually occurs very early in life. In this narrow age range, developmental renal dysplasia must be a major consideration in the pathogenesis of chronic pyelonephritis.

Although acute infection is important in the early stages of this disease, the status of either recurrent acute UTI or asymptomatic bacteriuria specifically in the progression of scar formation is tenuous. Prophylactic antibiotics therefore offer little benefit in preserving renal tissue in reflux nephropathy in older children and adults, even if the reflux has not already been successfully treated (6) (GR: A). However, further discussion of reflux nephropathy is beyond the scope of these guidelines.

*8.3.2 **Obstructive neuropathy***

Obstruction occurring through a voiding disorder or supravesically causes renal tubular dysfunction and ultimately renal damage, mainly through the process of apoptosis. Infection enhances the process of

parenchymal loss. In extreme cases, pyonephrosis, perinephric abscess and widespread systemic sepsis develop. Obstruction has to be cleared if infection is to be eradicated (7) (GR: A).

A detailed discussion of obstructive nephropathy is not appropriate here, but the kidney that is permanently damaged by any cause has less reserve to withstand the effects of reflux, obstruction and infection. In any circumstances, the combination of obstruction and infection is a surgical emergency and both must be relieved without delay. It is sometimes difficult to exclude an element of obstruction when discussing the pathogenesis of putative infective renal damage in the alleged normal kidney. Urinary calculi and pregnancy can cause urinary stasis and an intermittent increase in pressure in the upper urinary tract, which can cause subtle and persistent damage.

8.3.3 ***Renal effects of severe UTI***

Severe infection can lead to renal functional impairment through sepsis, endotoxaemia, hypotension and poor renal perfusion, as part of the process of multiorgan failure. The presence of renal calculi and diabetes mellitus further reduces host defences (8).

8.3.4 ***Acute effects of UTI on the normal kidney***

The acute effects of UTI on the normal kidney are complex. They are worth reviewing because they may provide a lead in deciding how chronic changes can occur and therefore a basis for the development of guidelines on the prevention of renal damage.

E. coli is the most common of the Gram-negative bacteria that are isolated in the majority of patients with acute pyelonephritis. The proportion of infections caused by *E. coli* is lower in adults than children (69% vs. 80%) (9) (LE: 2b).

Virulent microorganisms cause direct cellular injury, usually after colonising the renal pelvis. Damage can also occur indirectly from the effects of inflammatory mediators. Metastatic infection rarely causes renal infection, which presents as cortical abscesses, and usually only in susceptible individuals (see the sections below on Diabetes mellitus and Immunosuppression) (10).

Bacterial infection in the urinary tract can induce fever and elevate acute phase reactants, such as C-reactive protein, and erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR). Bacterial infection also elicits immunoglobulin A and cytokine responses (11) (LE: 2b). In particular, serum levels of IL-6 and IL-8 are elevated (12,13) (LE: 2b). Tissue damage is reflected by urinary secretion of tubular proteins and enzymes, such as α2-macroglobulin, β2-microglobulin and N-acetyl-β-D-glucosaminidase. In functional terms, there may be a loss of concentrating power that can persist in the long term (14,15) (LE: 2b). The fact that there is a serological immune response and bacteria become coated with antibodies to various antigenic components of the microorganism is regarded as evidence of an immune response, and therefore, of exposure to microorganisms that are potentially damaging to the renal parenchyma (16) (LE: 2b).

There are many identifiable factors relating to virulence of the bacterial cell and to its ability to adhere to the mucosa as a preliminary to invasion (17). For example, type 1 pili or fimbriae combine with mannose receptors on the uromucoid, which is part of the protective mucopolysaccharide layer found on uroepithelial cells lining the urinary tract. Type 2 or P fimbriae bind to glycolipids of the blood group substances that are secreted by the host urothelium. In practical terms, *E. coli*, which is pathological to the kidney, appears to express P (or pyelonephritis-associated) or type 2 fimbriae, at least in children in whom 90% of individuals with acute pyelonephritis express these bacteria, compared with a much smaller proportion of those who have had cystitis or asymptomatic bacteriuria (18) (LE; 2b).

Bacterial adhesion may be of variable benefit to the bacterium, because its attachment may mean that it is easier for host defence mechanisms to localise and abolish it (19). The cellular and humoral inflammatory host response is also a crucial part of host defences. Various cytokines (e.g. IL-6 and IL-8) are responsible for inducing leukocyte migration, and may be intrinsically deficient in converting asymptomatic bacterial colonisation to clinical infection.

Paradoxically, reduced adhesiveness can facilitate silent penetration into the renal parenchyma. In a Swedish study, a group of 160 patients who had recently suffered acute UTI all developed reduced concentrating power, even though a significant proportion (40%) did not develop a febrile illness. In the majority of these patients, the infiltrating bacteria had reduced adhesive characteristics, perhaps facilitating their penetration into the renal parenchyma and promoting more permanent structural and functional damage (15) (LE: 2b).

8.3.5 ***Renal scarring***

The possible development of scarring, as a result of UTI in the absence of reflux, obstruction or calculi, is controversial (20) (LE: 2a). It is agreed that dramatic reduction in renal perfusion and excretion can occur acutely and so-called ‘lobar nephronia’ has been demonstrated with the newer methods of imaging, such as CT or DMSA scanning, but not with standard intravenous urography (IVU).

A study has shown that 55% of patients with no pre-existing lesions developed acute parenchymal lesions during an episode of acute pyelonephritis (2) (LE: 2a). These lesions were found to have persisted after 3-6 months follow-up in 77% of patients (9) (LE: 3).

An earlier study by Alwall (21) has described 29 women who were followed for 20-30 years, with evidence of increasing renal damage and chronic pyelonephritis upon biopsy (LE: 3). That study would have used cruder diagnostic techniques, which might not have identified pre-existing disease, therefore, patients may have had renal damage initially. Over such a long period, it was impossible to exclude other causes of renal impairment and interstitial nephropathy, e.g. analgesic abuse. This important issue is clarified by a recent more critical study of DMSA scanning during the acute phase of acute pyelonephritis. In the study, 37 of 81 patients had one or more perfusion defects, of which, the majority resolved within 3 months. In lesions that persisted, further imaging invariably showed evidence of reflux or obstructive nephropathy that must have predated the acute infective episode (22) (LE: 2a).

In summary, small parenchymal scars demonstrated by modern imaging may develop as a result of acute non-obstructive pyelonephritis. However, such patients do not develop chronic renal failure and the scar is a very different lesion from the typical scar of reflux nephropathy. This is reflected in clinical experience. Thus, in acute pyelonephritis, IVU or DMSA scanning during an acute urinary infection can have alarming and dramatic results, but in practical terms the observed changes mostly resolve.

The poor correlation between the severity of the symptoms in an episode of acute pyelonephritis and the risk of permanent damage, which is very small, should discourage the clinician from prescribing excessive antibiotic treatment beyond that needed to suppress the acute inflammatory reaction (GR: A).

In future, the rare occurrence of renal damage apparently arising from acute or recurrent uncomplicated UTI may be prevented by targeting long-term treatment at selected patients. These patients will have been identified as having an intrinsic genetic defect in the host response of cytokine release to infection. Such a genetic defect would be even more important if a patient also had structural abnormalities that cause complicated UTI.

8.3.6 ***Specific conditions in which an acute UTI causes renal damage***

There are several specific conditions in which acute UTI can cause renal damage:

8.3.6.1 Diabetes mellitus

Asymptomatic bacteriuria is common in diabetic women. In a prospective study of non-pregnant women with diabetes mellitus, 26% had significant bacteriuria ($\geq 10^5$ cfu/mL) compared with 6% of controls. Women with type 1 diabetes are particularly at risk if they have had diabetes for a long time or complications have developed, particularly peripheral neuropathy and proteinuria. Risk factors in patients with type 2 diabetes were old age, proteinuria, a low body mass index and a past history of recurrent UTIs (23) (LE: 2a).

Diabetes mellitus increases the risk of acute pyelonephritis from infection by Enterobacteriaceae That originate in the lower urogenital tract. *Klebsiella* infection is particularly common (25% compared with 12% in non-diabetics).

Asymptomatic bacteriuria is common in women with diabetes (though not in men). If left untreated, it may lead to renal functional impairment (24). The mechanism is ill-understood and, as in uncomplicated acute pyelonephritis, a direct causal link is dubious. Other subtle factors may be present, such as underlying diabetic nephropathy (25) and autonomic neuropathy that causes voiding dysfunction. Impaired host resistance is thought to predispose to persistence of nephropathogenic organisms, but specific evidence is lacking for the development of renal complications. Glycosuria inhibits phagocytosis and perhaps cellular immunity, and encourages bacterial adherence. However, diabetic women with asymptomatic bacteriuria can have good glycaemic control, but still show reduced urinary cytokine and leukocyte concentrations (although polymorph function is normal). Poor glycaemic control has not been shown to increase the risk of bacteriuria (26).

It has always been recognised that diabetic patients are particularly susceptible to rapid progression of renal parenchymal infection and ensuing complications. Until recently, there was no consensus on the questions of pre-emptive screening, treatment and prophylaxis of asymptomatic bacteriuria. However, these issues have been addressed in a placebo-controlled, double-blind randomised trial (27) (LE: 1b), which has concluded that treatment does not reduce complications, and diabetes should not therefore be regarded as an indication for screening or treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria. The findings from this trial have been subsequently recognised in the guidelines published by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) on the diagnosis and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria in general (28).

Diabetic patients are also prone to an under-reported and probably unusual form of infective interstitial nephritis, which sometimes includes infection by gas-forming organisms, with a high mortality (emphysematous pyelonephritis) (29). This is characterised histologically by acute pyogenic infiltration with micro-abscesses and the development of acute renal failure. The origin of the organisms may be haematogenous. Even in the absence of obstruction, acute parenchymal infection may progress insidiously to form an intrarenal abscess

that ruptures, which leads to a perinephric collection and a psoas abscess. The presentation can occasionally be indolent.

Papillary necrosis is common in diabetics, particularly in association with acute pyelonephritis. It is certainly associated with permanent renal parenchymal scarring, although it is difficult to exclude obstruction by the sloughed papillae as the cause of the nephropathy. Antibiotic prophylaxis for the treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria is probably required (GR: C).

8.3.6.2 Tuberculosis

Tuberculosis can cause acute and chronic renal damage through bilateral renal infiltration. Rarely, this can lead to end-stage renal failure. However, a more subtle form of interstitial granulomatous disease can occur, which is sufficient to cause renal failure in the absence of fibrosis, calcification or obstruction (30,31) (LE: 3).

Tuberculosis and leprosy can cause renal damage through the development of amyloid and a form of proliferative glomerulonephritis (32,33). (LE: 2b). For more details see the EAU guidelines on genitourinary tuberculosis (34).

8.4 Chronic renal disease and UTI

There are good reasons why all uraemic patients should be prone to UTI, and why UTI should increase the rate of deterioration of renal function. The antibacterial properties of normal urine, due to urea or low pH and high osmolality, may be lost (35). Uraemic patients are also mildly immunosuppressed and the formation of protective uroepithelial mucus may be inhibited (36-38) (LE: 2b).

However, apart from a few exceptions, there is little evidence for a causal relationship between pre-existing chronic renal disease and persistent UTI (7). The results of removing a scarred or hydronephrotic kidney in the hope of curing infection are often disappointing.

The few exceptions include the following.

8.4.1 ***Adult dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD)***

UTI is a prominent complication of ADPKD, with symptomatic UTI being the presenting feature in 23-42% of patients, who are usually female (39). It may be difficult to obtain a positive culture on standard laboratory media, but pyuria is common, particularly in the later stages of disease progression. Acute pyelonephritis is common and may originate from pyogenic infection in the cysts (40) (LE: 3).

The efficacy of antibiotic treatment may depend on whether cysts are derived from proximal (active secretion) or distal tubules (passive diffusion) and on the lipid solubility of the agent used. Cephalosporins, gentamicin and ampicillin, which are standard treatments of acute pyelonephritis and require active transport, are often ineffective (41) (LE; 2b). Fluoroquinolones are generally the most effective (GR: A).

After transplantation, overall graft and patient survival rates do not differ between ADPKD and control groups (42) (LE: 2a). However, despite close monitoring of patients, UTI and septicaemic episodes are still a significant cause of morbidity, such that bilateral nephrectomy may be the only option.

Polycystic disease is not to be confused with acquired renal cystic disease of the end-stage kidney, which has no predisposition to UTI.

The issue of whether urological complications including UTI affect the progression of renal failure in polycystic disease or in any other renal pathology is controversial. Severe symptomatic UTIs may indicate an adverse prognosis, particularly in men with ADPKD.

8.4.2 ***Renal calculi***

Nephrolithiasis, particularly from infective struvite stones, obstructive uropathy and gross reflux, clearly does promote infection, although not always. However, it is doubtful whether vigorous treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria or even mild clinical UTI makes any difference to the progression of renal disease (43) (LE; 3).

It is disappointing that, as yet, few studies have provided long-term serial data that identify renal damage and its causal relationship with infection. In this respect, it is of some interest that a study of 100 patients who underwent reflux prevention surgery at least 20 years before has recently been published (44). It was concluded that even patients whose reflux prevention surgery had been successful were prone to recurrent UTI, hypertension and complications, which even occasionally included progressive renal scarring. Such consequences should at least inform the patient's decision in deciding between surgical and medical treatment of VUR.

8.5 UTI in renal transplantation

UTI is common after renal transplantation. Bacteriuria is present in 35-80% of patients, although the risk has been reduced by improvements in donation surgery, which have lowered the dose of immunosuppressive therapy and prophylactic antibiotics (45).

8.5.1 ***Donor organ infection***

Early factors predisposing to UTI include infection in the transplanted kidney. Clearly, the organ donor should be screened for a variety of viral and bacterial infections. Detailed discussion of this process is beyond the limits of these guidelines. However, it must be acknowledged that the urinary tract of the cadaver donor is rarely investigated, even if the mid-stream urine (MSU) culture is positive. Antibiotics are given empirically, but usually the first suspicion of occurrence of a renal tract abnormality is raised during the organ donation operation. Under these circumstances, only the most obvious renal or ureteric abnormality will be detected. Very occasionally, organ donation will be abandoned at this late stage.

After the kidney is removed from its storage box, the effluent from the renal vein and surrounding fluid in the sterile plastic bags that contain the excised kidney should ideally be cultured because microorganisms are likely to have been introduced during the donation process. Bladder catheters and ureteric stents promote the loss of the glycosoaminoglycan layer from the uroepithelium, as well as providing a source of microorganisms within the mucous biofilm that covers the foreign body. Infection in the native kidneys may worsen considerably as a result of maximum immunosuppression.

In renal transplant recipients, the following problems are most troublesome: papillary necrosis, particularly in diabetes mellitus (46), massive infective VUR, polycystic disease, and infective calculi. There is also concern about the increasing number of children with congenital uropathy, often associated with neuropathic bladder dysfunction and the sinister combination of intravesical obstruction, poor bladder compliance, residual urine, and VUR. A full urodynamic assessment, establishing a routine of intermittent self-catheterisation and any necessary bladder surgery must be completed well in advance of renal transplantation.

Urinary diversions and bladder augmentation and substitution have also been successfully completed in patients on dialysis treatment and after transplantation, although bacteriuria is common and may require antibiotic treatment (47).

In the first 3 months, UTI is more likely to be symptomatic with a high rate of relapse. Later on, there is a lower rate of pyelonephritis and bacteraemia, and a better response to antibiotics unless there are urological complications (e.g. fistula, or obstruction of the urinary tract). Infarction, either of the whole kidney or of a segment due to arterial damage, can promote UTI through bacterial colonisation of dead tissue. This often occurs by commensal or fastidious pathogens. The infection may be impossible to eradicate until the kidney or at least the dead segment is removed.

8.5.2 ***Graft failure***

There are several potential mechanisms by which severe UTI can cause graft failure. There was an early suggestion that reflux into the graft could lead to pyelonephritis and parenchymal scarring. However, these findings have not been confirmed and most surgeons do not make a special effort to perform an antireflux anastomosis.

Infection can theoretically induce graft failure by three other mechanisms, such as by the direct effect of cytokines, growth factors (e.g. tumour necrosis factor [TNF]) and free radicals as part of the inflammation cascade (45). UTIs can also reactivate cytomegalovirus infection, which can lead to acute transplant rejection. Sometimes it can be very difficult to distinguish rejection from infection (48) (LE: 2b).

For many years, the polyomavirus type BK has been listed as a possible candidate for causing transplant ureteric stenosis. Improved detection of so-called ‘decoy cells’ in urine and of virus DNA by polymerase chain reaction has confirmed the causal relationship between infection and obstruction, but also with interstitial nephropathy progressing to graft loss in possibly 5% of recipients. The virus is susceptible to treatment with the antiviral agent cidofovir (49) (LE: 2a).

8.5.3 ***Kidney and whole-organ pancreas transplantation***

Simultaneous kidney and whole-organ pancreas transplantation can present specific urological complications when the bladder is chosen for drainage of exocrine secretions. These may include recurrent UTI, chemical urethritis and bladder calculi of sufficient severity to warrant cystoenteric conversion. The risk of such complications is minimised if urodynamic abnormalities, e.g. obstruction, are identified and corrected well in advance of the transplant procedure (50) (LE: 3).

8.6 Antibiotic therapy in renal failure and transplant recipients

Much of the detailed information on antibiotic prescribing in renal failure is summarised in Tables 8.1-8.5 and Appendix 16.3. It is important to note that peritoneal dialysis and haemodialysis clear certain antibiotics, which should either be avoided or given at much higher doses. Also, there are important interactions to consider between immunosuppressive agents and antibiotics.

Table 8.1: Use of antibiotics for UTI with renal impairment

Most antibiotics have a wide therapeutic index. No adjustment of dose is necessary until GFR < 20 mL/min, except antibiotics with nephrotoxic potential, e.g. aminoglycoside.
Drugs removed by dialysis should be administered after dialysis treatment.
Combination of loop diuretics (e.g. furosemide) and a cephalosporin is nephrotoxic.
Nitrofurantoin and tetracyclines are contraindicated, but not doxycycline.

GFR = glomerular filtration rate.

Table 8.2: Clearance of antibiotics at haemodialysis

Dialysed	Slightly dialysed	Not dialysed
Amoxycillin/ampicillin	Fluoroquinolones*	Amphotericin
Carbenicillin	Co-trimoxazole	Methicillin
Cephalosporins*	Erythromycin	Teicoplanin
Aminoglycosides*	Vancomycin	
Trimethoprim		
Metronidazole		
Aztreonam*		
Fluconazole*		

** Drugs cleared by peritoneal dialysis.*

Table 8.3: Treatment of tuberculosis in renal failure

Rifampicin and isoniazid (INH) not cleared by dialysis. Give pyridoxine.
Ethambutol not dialysed. Reduce dose if GFR < 30 mL/min.
Avoid rifampicin with cyclosporin.

Table 8.4: Recommendations for prevention and treatment of UTI in renal transplanation

Treat infection in recipient before transplantation.
Culture donor tissue sample and perfusate.
Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis.
6 months low-dose TMP-SMX (co-trimoxazole) (LE: 1b, GR: A).
Empirical treatment of overt infection (quinolone, TMP-SMX for 10-14 days).

TMX = trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole.

Table 8.5: Drug interactions with cyclosporin and tacrolimus

Rifampicin
Erythromycin
Aminoglycosides
TMP-SMX
Amphotericin B

TMP-SMX = trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole.

8.6.1 Treatment of UTI in renal transplant recipients

The treatment of a symptomatic UTI is similar to treatment given to non-transplant patients. However, a short course of treatment has yet to be established, and in most cases a 10-14-day course of treatment is given.

The choice of antibiotic is dictated by the special need for penetration into the renal parenchyma rather than for merely a 'mucosal' antibiotic. Fluoroquinolones seem to be particularly effective.

There is good evidence for the beneficial effects of treating asymptomatic bacteriuria in the first 6 months after renal transplantation (51) (LE: 2a). Patients must be investigated for surgical complications.

In most units, the combination of trimethoprim and sulphamethoxazole (co-trimoxazole) is effective in preventing UTI (52) (LE: 1b). It will also prevent *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP) and infection with other rare fastidious organisms. Low-dose antibiotic prophylaxis with co-trimoxazole has been recommended for 6 months after transplantation. This will cover the high-risk period when infection is more likely to be symptomatic and associated with acute graft impairment. At a low dose, adverse interactions with cyclosporin do not occur, although the higher dose advocated by some units results in synergistic nephrotoxicity with trimethoprim.

A number of other drug interactions need to be considered, e.g. gentamicin, co-trimoxazole and amphotericin B promote cyclosporin and tacrolimus toxicity. Rifampicin and erythromycin also interact with calcineurin inhibitors by increasing cytochrome p450 synthetase and inhibiting hepatic cyclosporin A metabolism.

In any patients with relapsing or recurrent infection, an anatomical cause, such as a urological complication in the transplant kidney or recipient bladder dysfunction, must be considered and treated vigorously.

*8.6.2 **Fungal infections***

Candidal infections can occur in any immunosuppressed patient, but are more common in diabetic patients and those with chronic residual urine and in whom there is an indwelling catheter or stent. It is wise to treat all patients with antifungal agents (fluconazole, amphotericin B plus flucytosine) even when they are asymptomatic. Removal of the catheter or stents is usually necessary (GR: B).

*8.6.3 **Schistosomiasis***

Schistosomiasis is a familiar problem for patients treated for end-stage renal failure from locations where the disease is endemic. Renal transplantation is possible, even when live donors and recipients have active lesions, provided they are treated. Combined medication (praziquantil and oxaminoquine) is recommended for 1 month. In a trial that compared infected patients with those free of schistosomiasis, there was no difference between the incidence of acute and chronic rejection. However, UTI and urological complications occurred in the infected group and a higher cyclosporin dose was required. Despite this, however, it was concluded that active schistosomiasis did not preclude transplantation (53) (LE: 3). For further details on schistosomiasis in genitourinary tract infections see Bichler et al. (54).

8.7 Immunosuppression

It is well known that viral and fungal infections are common in immunosuppressed patients.

*8.7.1 **Human immunodeficiencey virus (HIV) infection***

HIV infection can lead to acute renal failure through non-specific severe systemic illness, and to chronic renal failure through a variety of nephropathies. These include HIV-induced thrombotic microangiopathy, immune-mediated glomerulonephritis and nephropathy due to virus-induced cellular damage, primarily to the glomerular epithelial cell. Combination therapy using corticosteroids, ACE inhibitors and highly active antiretroviral therapy seems to delay and prevent progression of nephropathy, although evidence from randomised trials is not available (55). HIV infection is therefore no longer a contraindication to renal replacement therapy.

The place of immunosuppression per se in the development of UTI remains unresolved (56). Patients with end-stage renal failure are generally not particularly susceptible to the usual Gram-negative urinary pathogens, although they may acquire unusual and granulomatous infections. Patients have evidence of reduced cellular and humoral immunity.

However, the situation is a little clearer in male patients with HIV and AIDS, in whom there is a close relationship between CD4 counts and the risk of bacteriuria, particularly in patients whose counts are < 200 cells/mL (57). About 40% of patients with bacteriuria are asymptomatic. In these patients, PCP prophylaxis of the type used in transplant patients may not reduce the rate of bacteriuria, perhaps due to the previous development of resistant organisms.

*8.7.2 **Viral and fungal infections***

Viral and fungal infections are relatively common in immunosuppressed patients.

8.8 References

1. Kincaid-Smith P, Fairley KF. Complicated urinary tract infection in adults. In: Cattell WR, ed. *Infections of the kidney and urinary tract*. Oxford: Oxford Medical Publications (Oxford University Press), 1996, pp. 186-205.

2. Meyrier A, Condamin MC, Fernet M, et al. Frequency of development of early cortical scarring in acute primary pyelonephritis. Kidney Int 1989 Feb;35(2):696-703.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2651759
3. Matz LR, Hodson CJ, Craven JD. Experimental obstructive nephropathy in the pig. 3. Renal artery changes in experimental hydronephrosis, with special reference to renal artery stenosis due to fibromuscular hyperplasia. Br J Urol 1969 Dec;41 Suppl:36-41. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5359479
4. Hodson CJ, Maling TM, McManamon PJ, et al. The pathogenesis of reflux nephropathy (chronic atrophic pyelonephritis). Br J Radiol 1975;Suppl 13:1-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/766885
5. Bishop MC. Obstructive uropathy. In: Mundy AR, ed. *Scientific basis of urology*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone 1987, pp. 115-151.
6. Bailey RR. Vesico-ureteric reflux and reflux nephropathy. In: Cameron S et al., eds. *Oxford textbook of clinical nephrology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press,1992, pp. 1983-2002.
7. Bishop MC. Urosurgical management of urinary tract infection. J Antimicrob Chemother 1994 May;33 Suppl A:74-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7928839
8. Roberts JA. Management of pyelonephritis and upper urinary tract infections. Urol Clin North Am 1999 Nov;26(4):753-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10584616
9. Fraser IR, Birch D, Fairley KF, et al. A prospective study of cortical scarring in acute febrile pyelonephritis in adults: clinical and bacteriological characteristics. Clin Nephrol 1995 Mar;43(3): 159-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7774071
10. George NJ. Urinary tract infection. In: Mundy AR, George NJ, Fitzpatrick JM, Neill DE, eds. *Scientific basis of urology*. 2nd edition. ISIS Medical Media, 1998, pp. 143-173.
11. Svanborg C, de Man P, Sandberg T. Renal involvement in urinary tract infection. Kidney Int 1991 Mar;39(3):541-9. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2062037
12. Hedges S, Stenqvist K, Lidin-Janson G, et al. Comparison of urine and serum concentrations of interleukin-6 in women with acute pyelonephritis or asymptomatic bacteriuria. J Infect Dis 1992 Sep;166(3):653-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1500753
13. Jacobson SH, Hylander B, Wretlind B, et al. Interleukin-6 and interleukin-8 in serum and urine in patients with acute pyelonephritis in relation to bacterial- virulence-associated traits and renal function. Nephron 1994;67(2):172-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7915403
14. Ronald AR, Cutler RE, Turck M. Effect of bacteriuria on renal concentrating mechanisms. Ann Intern Med 1996 Apr;70(4):723-33. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5771530
15. de Man P, Cläeson I, Johnson IM, et al. Bacterial attachment as a predictor of renal abnormalities in boys with urinary tract infection. J Pediatr 1989 Dec;115(6):915-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2685219
16. Percival A, Birumfitt W, Delouvois J. Serum antibody levels as an indication of clinically inapparent pyelonephritis. Lancet 1964 Nov;2:1027-33. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14206013
17. Wullt B, Bergsten G, Fischer H. Application of laboratory research in UTI. European Urology EAU Update Series 2, 2004, pp. 116-124.
18. Kallenius G, Mollby R, Svenson SB, et al. Occurrence of Pfimbriated Escherichia coli in urinary tract infections. Lancet 1981 Dec;2(8260-8261):1369-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6171697
19. Mulvey MA, Schilling JD, Martinez JJ, et al. Bad bugs and beleaguered bladders: interplay between uropathogenic Escherichia coli and innate host defenses. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000 Aug;97(16):8829-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10922042
20. Gordon I, Barkovics M, Pindoria S, et al. Primary vesicoureteric reflux as a predictor of renal damage in children hospitalized with urinary tract infection: a systematic review and metaanalysis. J Am Soc Nephrol 2003 Mar;14(3):739-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12595511

21. Alwall N. On controversial and open questions about the course and complications of non-obstructive urinary tract infection in adult women. Follow-up for up to 80 months of 707 participants in a population study and evaluation of a clinical series of 36 selected women with a history of urinary tract infection for up to 40 years. Acta Med Scand 1978;203(5):369-77. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/665302
22. Bailey RR, Lynn KL, Robson RA, et al. DMSA renal scans in adults with acute pyelonephritis. Clin Nephrol 1996 Aug;46(2):99-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8869786
23. Geerlings SE, Stolk RP, Camps MJ, et al. Asymptomatic bacteriuria may be considered a complication in women with diabetes. Diabetes Mellitus Women Asymptomatic Bacteriuria Utrecht Study Group. Diabetes Care 2000 Jun;23(6):744-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840989
24. Ooi BS, Chen BT, Yu M. Prevalence and site of bacteriuria in diabetes mellitus. Postgrad Med J 1974 Aug;50(586):497-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4464512
25. Korzeniowski OM. Urinary tract infection in the impaired host. Med Clin North Am 1991 Mar;75(2): 391-404.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1996041
26. Mackie AD, Drury PL. Urinary tract infection in diabetes mellitus. In: Cattell WR, ed. *Infections of the kidney and urinary tract*. Oxford: Oxford, Medical Publications (Oxford University Press), 1996, pp. 218-233.
27. Harding GK, Zhanel GG, Nicolle LE, et al; Manitoba Diabetes Urinary Tract Infection Study Group. Antimicrobial treatment of diabetic women with asymptomatic bacteriuria. N Eng J Med 2002 Nov;347(20):1576-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12432044
28. Nicolle LE, Bradley S, Colgan R, et al; Infectious Diseases Society of America; American Society of Nephrology; American Geriatric Society. Infectious Diseases Society of America guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria in adults. Clin Infect Dis 2005 Mar;40(5):643-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15714408
29. Cattell WR. Urinary tract infection and acute renal failure. In: Raine AE, ed. *Advanced renal medicine*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1992, pp. 302-313.
30. Mallinson WJ, Fuller RW, Levison DA, et al. Diffuse interstitial renal tuberculosis - an unusual cause of renal failure. Q J Med 1981 Mar;50(198):137-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7302115
31. Morgan SH, Eastwood JB, Baker LR. Tuberculous interstitial nephritis - the tip of an iceberg? Tubercle 1990 Mar;71(1):5-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2371760
32. McAdam KP, Anders RF, Smith SR, et al. Association of amyloidosis with erythema nodosum leprosum reactions and recurrent neutrophil leucocytosis in leprosy. Lancet 1975 Sep;2(7935):572-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/51405
33. Ng WL, Scollard DM, Hua A. Glomerulonephritis in leprosy. Am J Clin Pathol 1981 Sep;76(3):321-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6456662
34. Çek M, Lenk S, Naber KG, et al; Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office. EAU guidelines for the management of genitourinary tuberculosis. Eur Urol 2005 Sep;48(3):353-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15982799
35. Neal DE Jr. Host defense mechanisms in urinary tract infections. Urol Clin North Am 1999 Nov;26(4):677-86, vii.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10584610
36. Khan I H, Catto GR. Long-term complications of dialysis: infection. Kidney Int Suppl 1993 Jun;41:S143-S148.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8320909
37. Kessler M, Hoen B, Mayeux D, et al. Bacteremia in patients on chronic hemodialysis. A multicenter prospective survey. Nephron 1993;64(1):95-100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8502343
38. Saitoh H, Nakamura K, Hida M, et al. Urinary tract infection in oliguric patients with chronic renal failure. J Urol 1985 Jun;133(6):990-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3999225

39. Elzinga LW, Bennett WM. Miscellaneous renal and systemic complications of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease including infection. In: Watson ML and Torres VE, eds. Polycystic kidney disease. Oxford: Oxford Clinical Nephrology series. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996, pp. 483-499.
40. Sklar AH, Caruana RJ, Lammers JE, et al. Renal infections in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. Am J Kidney Dis 1987 Aug;10(2):81-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3300296
41. Schwab SJ, Bander SJ, Klahr S. Renal infection in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. Am J Med 1987 Apr;82(4):714-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3565428
42. Stiasny B, Ziebell D, Graf S, et al. Clinical aspects of renal transplantation in polycystic kidney disease. Clin Nephrol 2002 Jul;58(1):16-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12141402
43. Gower PE. A prospective study of patients with radiological pyelonephritis, papillary necrosis and obstructive atrophy. Q J Med 1976 Apr;45(187):315-49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/940921
44. Mor Y, Leibovitch I, Zalts R, et al. Analysis of the long term outcome of surgically corrected vesicoureteric reflux. BJU Int 2003 Jul;92(1):97-100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12823390
45. Tolkoff-Rubin NE, Rubin RH. Urinary tract infection in the renal transplant recipient. In: Bergan T, ed. Urinary tract infections. Basel: Karger 1997, pp. 27-33.
46. Tolkoff-Rubin NE, Rubin RH. The infectious disease problems of the diabetic renal transplant recipient. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1995 Mar;9(1):117-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7769213
47. Müller T, Arbeiter K, Aufricht C. Renal function in meningomyelocele: risk factors, chronic renal failure, renal replacement therapy and transplantation. Curr Opin Urol 2002 Nov;12(6):479-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12409876
48. Steinhoff J, Einecke G, Niederstadt C, et al. Renal graft rejection or urinary tract infection? The value of myeloperoxidase, C-reactive protein, and alpha2-macroglobulin in the urine. Transplantation 1997 Aug;64(3):443-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9275111
49. Keller LS, Peh CA, Nolan J, et al. BK transplant nephropathy successfully treated with cidofovir. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2003 May;18(5):1013-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686681
50. Blanchet P, Droupy S, Eschwege P, et al. Urodynamic testing predicts long term urological complications following simultaneous pancreas-kidney transplantation. Clin Transplant 2003 Feb;17(1):26-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12588318
51. Snydman DR. Posttransplant microbiological surveillance. Clin Infect Dis 2001 Jul;33 Suppl 1: S22-S25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11389518
52. Fox BC, Sollinger HW, Belzer FO, et al. A prospective, randomised double-blind study of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for prophylaxis of infection in renal transplantation: clinical efficacy, absorption of trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole, effects on the microflora, and the cost-benefit of prophylaxis. Am J Med 1990 Sep;89(3):255-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2118307
53. Mahmoud KM, Sobh MA, El-Agroudy AE, et al. Impact of schistosomiasis on patient and graft outcome after renal transplantation: 10 years' follow-up. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2001 Nov;16(11):2214-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11682670
54. Bichler KH, Savatovsky I; the Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the Guidelines Office of the European Association of Urology (EAU). EAU Guidelines for the management of urogenital schistosomiasis. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):998-1003.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16519990
55. Kimmel PL, Barisoni L, Kopp JB. Pathogenesis and treatment of HIV-associated renal diseases: lessons from clinical and animal studies, molecular pathologic correlations, and genetic investigations. Ann Intern Med 2003 Aug;139(3):214-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12899589

56. Tolkoff-Rubin NE, Rubin RH. Urinary tract infection in the immunocompromised host. Lessons from kidney transplantation and the AIDS epidemic. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1997 Sep;11(3):707-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9378931
57. Van Dooyeweert DA, Schneider MM, Borleffs JC, et al. Bacteriuria in male patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus type 1. In: Bergan T, ed. *Urinary tract infections*. Basel: Karger, 1997, pp. 37-45.

*8.8.1 **Further reading***

Antibiotic prescribing in renal failure: evidence base of guidelines. Information has been derived from the following standard reference sources:

1. BMA and RPSGB. British national formulary. Summary of product characteristics from electronic medicines compendium for individual drugs. Datapharm Communications Ltd. Available from http://emc.medicines.org.uk
2. Ashley C, Currie A. The renal drug handbook. 2nd edn. Oxford: Radcliffe Medical Press, 2004.

9. URETHRITIS

9.1 Epidemiology

From a therapeutic and clinical point of view, gonorrhoeal urethritis has to be differentiated from non-specific urethritis. In Central Europe, non-specific urethritis is much more frequent than gonorrhoeal urethritis. There is a correlation between promiscuity and low socioeconomic status and the frequency of infections due to *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis*. Infection is spread by sexual contact.

9.2 Pathogens

Pathogens include *N. gonorrhoeae, C. trachomatis, Mycoplasma genitalium* and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. The frequency of the different species varies between patient populations (1-5). *Mycoplasma hominis* probably does not cause urethritis, and *Ureaplasma urealyticum* is an infrequent cause. In most cases, clinical evidence of *Mycoplasma* or *Ureaplasma* is caused by asymptomatic colonisation of the urogenital tract.

9.3 Route of infection and pathogenesis

Causative agents either remain extracellularly on the epithelial layer or penetrate into the epithelium (*N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis*) and cause pyogenic infection. Although arising from urethritis, chlamydiae and gonococci can spread further through the urogenital tract to cause epididymitis in men or cervicitis, endometritis and salpingitis in women. Recent evidence has suggested that *Myc. genitalium* can also cause cervicitis and pelvic inflammatory disease in women (6) (LE: 3)

9.4 Clinical course

Mucopurulent or purulent discharge, alguria, dysuria and urethral pruritus are symptoms of urethritis. However, many infections of the urethra are asymptomatic.

9.5 Diagnosis

A Gram stain of a urethral discharge or a urethral smear that shows more than five leukocytes per high power field (× 1,000) and eventually, gonococci located intracellularly as Gram-negative diplococci, indicate pyogenic urethritis (7) (LE: 3, GR: B). The Gram stain is the preferred rapid diagnostic test for evaluating urethritis. It is highly sensitive and specific for documenting urethritis and the presence or absence of gonococcal infection. A positive leukocyte esterase test or > 10 leucocytes per high power field (× 400) in the first voiding urine specimen is diagnostic. In all patients with urethritis, and when sexual transmission is suspected, the aim should be to identify the pathogenic organisms. If an amplification system is used for identifying the pathogens, the first voiding urine specimen can be taken instead of a urethral smear. *Trichomonas* sp. can usually be identified microscopically.

9.6 Therapy

*9.6.1 **Treatment of gonorrhoeal urethritis***

The following guidelines for therapy comply with the recommendations of the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (8-10). The following antimicrobials can be recommended for the treatment of gonorrhoea:

As first-choice treatment

- cefixime, 400 mg orally as a single dose, or 400 mg by suspension (200 mg/5 mL)
- ceftriaxone, 1 g intramuscularly (with local anaesthetic) as a single dose

Alternative regimens

- ciprofloxacin, 500 mg orally as single dose
- ofloxacin, 400 mg orally as single dose
- levofloxacin, 250 mg orally as single dose.

Note that fluoroquinolones are contraindicated in adolescents (< 18 years) and pregnant women. As a result of the continuous spread of fluoroquinolone-resistant N. gonorrhoeae, this class of antibiotics is no longer recommended for the treatment of gonorrhoea in the United States. In Europe, knowledge of local susceptibility patterns is mandatory for the correct treatment of gonorrhoeal urethritis.

Because gonorrhoeae is frequently accompanied by chlamydial infection, an active antichlamydial therapy should be added.

*9.6.2 **Treatment of non-gonorrhoeal urethritis***

The following treatment has been successfully applied to non-gonorrhoeal urethritis:

As first choice of treatment:	**LE**	**GR**
azithromycin, 1 g orally as single dose	1b	A
doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days	1b	A
As second choice of treatment:		
erythromycin base, 500 mg orally four times daily for 14 days	1b	A
erythromycin ethylsuccinate, 800 mg orally four times daily for 7 days		
ofloxacin, 300 mg orally twice daily for 7 days	1b	A
levofloxacin, 500 mg orally once daily for 7 days		

Doxycycline and azithromycin are considered to be equally effective in the treatment of chlamydial infections, however, infections with *Myc. genitalium* may respond better to azithromycin (11). Erythromycin is less effective and causes more side effects. In pregnant women, fluoroquinolones and doxycycline are contraindicated, therefore, besides erythromycin and azithromycin, a regimen with amoxicillin 500 mg three times daily for 7 days is also recommended.

If therapy fails, one should consider treating infections by *T. vaginalis* and/or *Mycoplasma* with a combination of metronidazole (2 g orally as single dose) and erythromycin (500 mg orally four times daily for 7 days). As in other STDs, the treatment of sexual partners is necessary.

9.7 Follow-up and prevention

Patients should return for evaluation if symptoms persist or recur after completion of therapy. Patients should be instructed to abstain from sexual intercourse until 7 days after therapy is initiated, provided their symptoms have resolved and their sexual partners have been adequately treated. Persons who have been diagnosed with a new STD should receive testing for other STDs, including syphilis and HIV.

9.8 References

1. Borchardt KA, al-Haraci S, Maida N. Prevalence of Trichomonas vaginalis in a male sexually transmitted disease clinic population by interview, wet mount microscopy, and the InPouch TV test. Genitourin Med 1995 Dec;71(6):405-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8566985
2. Busolo F, Camposampiero D, Bordignon G, et al. Detection of Mycoplasma genitalium and Chlamydia trachomatis DNAs in male patients with urethritis using the polymerase chain reaction. New Microbiol 1997 Oct;20(4):325-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9385602
3. Evans BA, Bond RA, MacRae KD. Racial origin, sexual behaviour, and genital infection among heterosexual men attending a genitourinary medicine clinic in London (1993-4). Sex Transm Infect 1998 Feb;74(1):40-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634302
4. Evans BA, Kell PD, Bond RA, et al. Racial origin, sexual lifestyle, and genital infection among women attending a genitourinary medicine clinic in London (1992). Sex Transm Infect 1998 Feb;74(1):45-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634303

5. Krieger JN. Trichomoniasis in men: old issues and new data. Sex Transm Dis 1995 Mar-Apr;22(2): 83-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7624817
6. Haggerty CL. Evidence for a role of Mycoplasma genitalium in pelvic inflammatory disease. Curr Opin Infect Dis. 2008 Feb;21(1):65-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18192788
7. Swartz SL, Kraus SJ, Herrmann KL, et al. Diagnosis and etiology of nongonococcal urethritis, J Infect Dis 1978 Oct;138(4):445-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/213495
8. Workowski KA, Berman SM. CDC sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines. Clin Infect Dis 2002 Oct 15;35(Suppl 2):S135-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12353199
9. Burstein GR, Workowski KA. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines. Curr Opin Pediatr 2003 Aug;15(4):391-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12891051
10. Scharbo-Dehaan M, Anderson DG. The CDC 2002 guidelines for the treatment of sexually transmitted diseases: implications for women's health care. J Midwifery Womens Health 2003 Mar-Apr;48(2): 96-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686941
11. Falk L, Fredlund H, Jensen JS. Tetracycline treatment does not eradicate Mycoplasma genitalium. Sex Transmit Infect 2003 Aug;79:318-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12902584

10. PROSTATITIS AND CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN SYNDROME

10.1 Summary and recommendations

Bacterial prostatitis is a disease entity diagnosed clinically and by evidence of inflammation and infection localised to the prostate. According to the duration of symptoms, bacterial prostatitis is described as either acute or chronic, when symptoms persist for at least 3 months. It is recommended that European urologists use the classification suggested by the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), in which bacterial prostatitis with confirmed or suspected infection is distinguished from chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS).

Acute bacterial prostatitis can be a serious infection. Parenteral administration of high doses of a bactericidal antibiotic is usually required, which may include a broad-spectrum penicillin, a third-generation cephalosporin, or a fluoroquinolone. All of these agents can be combined with an aminoglycoside for initial therapy. Treatment is required until there is defervescence and normalisation of infection parameters (LE: 3, GR: B). In less severe cases, a fluoroquinolone may be given orally for 10 days (LE: 3, GR: B).

In chronic bacterial prostatitis, and if infection is strongly suspected in CPPS, a fluoroquinolone or trimethoprim should be given orally for 2 weeks after the initial diagnosis. The patient should then be reassessed and antibiotics only continued if pre-treatment cultures are positive and/or the patient has reported positive effects from the treatment. A total treatment period of 4-6 weeks is recommended (LE: 3, GR: B).

Patients with CPPS are treated empirically with numerous medical and physical modalities. Despite the existence of some scientifically valid studies, no specific recommendations have been made until now. This has been because patients with CPPS probably represent a heterogeneous group of diseases and therapeutic outcome is always uncertain.

10.2 Introduction and definition

Traditionally, the term prostatitis has included both acute and chronic bacterial prostatitis, in which an infective origin is accepted, and the term prostatitis syndrome or, more recently, CPPS, in which no infective agent can be found and whose origin is multifactorial and in most cases obscure.

Prostatitis and CPPS are diagnosed by symptoms and evidence of inflammation and infection localised to the prostate (1). A causative pathogen, however, is detected by routine methods in only 5-10% of cases (2), and for whom antimicrobial therapy therefore has a rational basis. The remainder of patients are treated empirically with numerous medical and physical modalities. However, recent improvement in classification and application of modern methods, including molecular biology, should allow proper

systematisation of treatment (3-5).

This chapter reviews documented or suspected bacterial infections of the prostate.

10.3 Diagnosis

10.3.1 ***History and symptoms***

According to the duration of symptoms, bacterial prostatitis is described as either acute or chronic, the latter being defined by symptoms that persist for at least 3 months (3-5). The predominant symptoms are pain at various locations and LUTSs (Tables 10.1 and 10.2) (6-8). Chronic bacterial prostatitis is the most frequent cause of recurrent UTI in men (9).

Table 10.1: Localisation of pain in prostatitis and CPPS*

Site of pain	Percentage of patients
Prostate/perineum	46%
Scrotum and/or testes	39%
Penis	6%
Urinary bladder	6%
Lower back	2%

**Adapted from Zermann et al. (6).*

Table 10.2: LUTSs in prostatitis and CPPS*

Frequent need to urinate
Difficulty urinating, e.g. weak stream and straining
Pain on urination, or that increases with urination

**Adapted from Alexander et al. (8).*

10.3.1.1 Symptom questionnaires

Symptoms appear to have the strongest basis for use as a classification parameter in bacterial prostatitis as well as in CPPS (10). Prostatitis symptom questionnaires have therefore been developed for the quantification of symptoms (10,11). They include the Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index (CPSI), which was recently developed by the International Prostatitis Collaborative Network (IPCN), initiated by the NIH (USA) (12). Although the CPSI has been validated, to date, its benefit in clinical studies is still uncertain. The questionnaire contains four questions regarding pain or discomfort, two regarding urination, and three related to quality of life (see Appendix 16.5).

10.3.2 ***Clinical findings***

In acute prostatitis, the prostate may be swollen and tender on digital rectal examination (DRE). Prostatic massage is contraindicated. Otherwise, the prostate is usually normal on palpation. An essential consideration in the clinical evaluation is to exclude differential diagnoses, such as other diseases in the urogenital organs and anorectal disorders. Clinical examination should include evaluation of the pelvic floor musculature.

10.3.3 ***Urine cultures and expressed prostatic secretion***

The most important investigations in the evaluation of the patient with prostatitis are quantitative bacteriological localisation cultures and microscopy of the segmented urine and of expressed prostatic secretion (EPS), as described by Meares and Stamey (1) (see Appendix 16.6).

According to the classification developed by the NIDDK/NIH (Table 10.3), the presence of leukocytes in post-massage urine and ejaculate are also included in the definition of inflammatory chronic prostatitis or CPPS (group IIIA) (3). The inclusion of leukocytes in the ejaculate as part of the new consensus CPPS concept allows almost twice as many patients to be reclassified into group IIIA as were formerly included in the category abacterial prostatitis using the earlier Drach's classification (13).

Table 10.3: Classification of prostatitis and CPPS according to NIDDK/NIH (3-5)

Type	Name and description
I	Acute bacterial prostatitis
II	Chronic bacterial prostatitis
III	Chronic abacterial prostatitis - CPPS A. Inflammatory CPPS (white cells in semen/EPS/VB3) B. Non-inflammatory CPPS (no white cells in semen/EPS/VB3)
IV	Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis (histological prostatitis)

CPPS = chronic pelvic pain syndrome; EPS = expressed prostatic secretion; VB3 = voided bladder urine 3 (urine following prostatic massage).

The Enterobacteriaceae, especially *E. coli*, are the predominant pathogens in bacterial prostatitis (Table 10.4) (14). The significance of intracellular bacteria, such as *C. trachomatis*, is uncertain (15). In patients with immune deficiency or HIV infection, prostatitis may be caused by fastidious pathogens, such as *M. tuberculosis*, *Candida* sp. and rare pathogens, such as *Coccidioides immitis, Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* (16).

Table 10.4: Most common pathogens in prostatitis

Aetiologically recognised pathogens*
E. coli
Klebsiella sp.
Prot. mirabilis
Enterococcus faecalis
P. aeruginosa
Organisms of debatable significance
Staphylococci
Streptococci
Corynebacterium sp.
C. trachomatis
U. urealyticum
Myc. hominis

**Adapted from Weidner et al. (2) and Schneider et al. (14).*

There is no correlation between leukocyte and bacterial counts and the severity of symptoms in men with chronic prostatitis/CPPS (17). It has also been shown that culture, leukocyte and antibody status does not predict antibiotic response in this group of prostatitis patients (18). In both studies, however, patients with clearly defined chronic bacterial prostatitis were excluded.

*10.3.4 **Perineal biopsy***

Perineal biopsies may be taken to help in the detection of difficult-to-culture microorganisms, but perineal biopsy should be reserved for research purposes, and cannot be recommended as part of the routine work-up. Bacteria have been cultured from perineal prostate biopsies in 36% of men with CPPS, but these results do not differ from the findings in asymptomatic controls (19).

*10.3.5 **Other tests***

The main parameter for diagnosis of inflammation in the male urogenital tract is increased leukocyte counts in the prostatic fluid, post-prostate massage urine, and seminal fluid.

Prostatic biopsy is not indicated in the routine management of prostatitis/CPPS. However, histological prostatitis is frequently diagnosed in biopsies taken for suspected prostate cancer. If such patients are asymptomatic, they are classified in the new category of asymptomatic prostatitis (type IV) (Table 10.3).

Other inflammatory markers include elevated pH, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) and immunoglobulins

(20). The cytokines, IL-1β and TNF-α, may be identified in EPS (20) and complement C3, coeruloplasmin or polymorphonuclear (PMN) elastase in the ejaculate. These tests, however, cannot be considered to be part of routine diagnostic work-up (21).

Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) may reveal intraprostatic abscesses, calcification in the prostate, and dilatation in the seminal vesicles. However, TRUS is not an important classification parameter in prostatitis (22), because it is unreliable for diagnosis.

*10.3.6 **Classification systems***

The purpose of the culture technique described by Meares and Stamey in 1968 was to decide whether bacteriuria originated from the urethra, prostate or bladder. Ten years later, Drach et al. (23) suggested a classification of prostatitis based on the work of Meares and Stamey, in which various types of prostatitis were differentiated according to the number of leukocytes, and positive cultures in EPS and in segmented urine samples, i.e. first voided bladder urine-1 (VB1), mid-stream urine (second voided bladder urine-2, VB2) and urine following prostatic massage (third voided bladder urine-3, VB3). This has been the most widely used classification of prostatitis for almost three decades (Table 10.5), and is still included in the latest WHO classification of diseases (ICD 10) (24).

Table 10.5: Classification of prostatitis according to Drach et al. (23)

Classification	Clinical and laboratory findings
Acute bacterial prostatitis	Clinically significant infection of the prostate
Chronic bacterial prostatitis	Significant inflammation of the prostate Isolation of an aetiologically recognised organism from the prostatic fluid/urine
Chronic abacterial prostatitis	Significant prostatic inflammation Failure to isolate an organism from the prostatic fluid/urine, or isolation of an organism whose aetiological significance is debatable
Prostatodynia	No significant prostatic inflammation Failure to isolate an organism from the prostatic fluid/urine

In 1995, the NIDDK of the NIH (USA) convened a workshop to 'develop a plan which would enable clinicians and research investigators to effectively diagnose, treat, and eventually prevent the prostatitis syndrome' (4). The NIDDK recommended a new classification of the prostatitis syndrome, which has been accepted by the IPCN. The terms abacterial prostatitis and prostatodynia were exchanged for CPPS, with or without inflammation, respectively. Seminal secretion was added to segmented urine and EPS as an additional parameter. A new category (type IV) of asymptomatic prostatitis (histological prostatitis) was added (Table 10.3). This classification is now used as a logical basis for choice of treatment.

*10.3.7 **Diagnostic evaluation***

The content and order of procedures in the diagnostic evaluation of a patient with suspected prostatitis depends on previous examinations undertaken by GPs, the established routines in different hospitals and countries, and the distance from the patient's home to the urologist. A suggested algorithm for diagnostic evaluation is presented in Table 10.6.

Table 10.6: Algorithm for diagnostic urological work-up in prostatitis

Clinical evaluation
Urinalysis and urine culture
Exclude STDs
Micturition chart, uroflowmetry and residual urine
Four-glass test according to Meares and Stamey
Microscopy
Culture
Try antibiotics if signs of inflammation

*10.3.8 **Additional investigations***

The EAU working group believes that guidelines on prostatitis should not contain a set of minimum differential diagnostic examinations. An experienced urologist should decide which investigations are relevant for each

individual patient. Bladder outflow and urethral obstruction should always be considered and ruled out by uroflowmetry, retrograde urethrography, or endoscopy. If suspected, bladder cancer must be excluded by urine cytology and cystoscopy. Ureteric calculus is ruled out by unenhanced spiral CT or intravenous pyelography. Interstitial cystitis is diagnosed by means of a micturition chart, cystoscopy and biopsy. Anorectal examination is carried out whenever indicated.

Microscopic examination of ejaculate is inferior to microscopy of EPS. It is difficult to differentiate between spermatocytes and leukocytes, unless specific methods are applied, e.g. peroxidase staining (25), and the detection rate for positive cultures is significantly reduced (26).

Video-urodynamics and advanced urodynamic examination with measurement of urethral closing pressure are not justified in the routine evaluation of patients with prostatitis, although intriguing results have been obtained in some studies (27).

The measurement of cytokines and biofilms in EPS has research interest only (6,28). Prostate-specific antigen values may be elevated in both symptomatic and asymptomatic prostatitis (29). If a patient has elevated PSA and evidence of prostatic inflammation, serum PSA will normalise after antimicrobial treatment for 4 weeks in about 50% of patients (30). A delay of at least 3 months should be allowed before it can be assumed that a stable level of PSA has been reached. Measurement of free and total PSA adds no practical diagnostic information in prostatitis (31).

10.4 Treatment

10.4.1 ***Antibiotics***

Antibiotics are life-saving in acute bacterial prostatitis, recommended in chronic bacterial prostatitis, and may be tried in inflammatory CPPS.

Acute bacterial prostatitis can be a serious infection with fever, intense local pain, and general symptoms. Parenteral administration of high doses of bactericidal antibiotics, such as a broad-spectrum penicillin, a third-generation cephalosporin or a fluoroquinolone, may be administered. For initial therapy, these regimens may be combined with an aminoglycoside. After defervescence and normalisation of infection parameters, oral therapy can be substituted and continued for a total of 2-4 weeks (32). In less severe cases, a fluoroquinolone may be given orally for 10 days (5) (IVC).

The recommended antibiotics in chronic bacterial prostatitis and inflammatory CPPS (NIH type IIIA), together with their advantages and disadvantages, are listed in Table 10.7 (33). Fluoroquinolones, such as ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin, are considered drugs of choice because of their favourable pharmacokinetic properties (33) (LE: 2b, GR: B), their generally good safety profile, and antibacterial activity against Gram-negative pathogens, including *P. aeruginosa*. In addition, levofloxacin is active against Gram-positive and atypical pathogens, such as *C. trachomatis* and genital mycoplasmas (LE: 2b, GR: B).

The duration of antibiotic treatment is based on experience and expert opinion and is supported by many clinical studies (34). In chronic bacterial prostatitis and in inflammatory CPPS, antibiotics should be given for 2 weeks after initial diagnosis. The patient should then be reassessed and antibiotics continued only if cultures are positive or the patient reports positive effects from the treatment. A total treatment period of 4-6 weeks is recommended. Relatively high doses are needed and oral therapy is preferred (33,34) (LE: 3, GR: B).

The reason for administration of antibiotics in inflammatory CPPS is that there may be a bacterial infection, even though bacteria have not been detected by routine methods (35,36). Furthermore, many clinical studies report a beneficial effect of antibiotics in inflammatory CPPS (37,38) (LE: 2a, GR: B). If intracellular bacteria have been detected or are suspected, tetracyclines or erythromycin should be given (33,38) (LE: 2b, GR: B).

10.4.2 ***Antibiotics and β-blockers in combination therapy***

Urodynamic studies have shown increased urethral closing pressure in patients with chronic prostatitis (5). A combination treatment of β-blockers and antibiotics is reported to have a higher cure rate than antibiotics alone in inflammatory CPPS (Type IIIA+B) (39) (LE: 1b, GR: B). This is a treatment option that is favoured by many urologists.

However, in a recent randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled multicentre study, it was shown that neither ciprofloxacin, tamsulozin, nor the combination of ciprofloxacin and tamsulozin was superior to placebo in reducing symptoms in men with moderate to severe symptoms (40) (LE: 1b, GR: B). However, in this study, many patients were included who had already been heavily pre-treated with different drug regimens.

Table 10.7: Antibiotics in chronic bacterial prostatitis*

Antibiotic	Advantages	Disadvantages	Recommendation
Fluoroquinolones	Favourable pharmacokinetics	Depending on the substance:	Recommend
	Excellent penetration into the prostate	Drug interactions	
	Good bioavailability	Phototoxicity	
	Equivalent oral and parenteral pharmacokinetics (depending on the substance)	Central nervous system adverse events	
	Good activity against typical and atypical pathogens and *P. aeruginosa*		
	In general, good safety profile		
Trimethoprim	Good penetration into prostate	No activity against *Pseudomonas*, some enterococci and some Enterobacteriaceae	Consider
	Oral and parenteral forms available		
	Relatively cheap		
	Monitoring unnecessary		
	Active against most relevant pathogens		
Tetracyclines	Cheap	No activity against P. Aeruginosa	Reserve for special indications
	Oral and parenteral forms available	Unreliable activity against coagulase-negative staphylococci, *E. coli*, other Enterobacteriaceae, and enterococci	
	Good activity against *Chlamydia and Mycoplasma*	Contraindicated in renal and liver failure	
		Risk of skin sensitisation	
Macrolides	Reasonably active against Gram-positive bacteria	Minimal supporting data from clinical trials	Reserve for special indications
	Active against Chlamydia	Unreliable activity against Gram-negative bacteria	
	Good penetration into prostate		
	Relatively non-toxic		

**Adapted from Bjerklund Johansen et al. (33).*

10.4.3 ***Other oral medication***

The β-blocker terazosin has been found to be superior to placebo in reducing symptoms for patients with CPPS (41) (LE: 1b, GR: B). Pentosan polysulphate sodium may reduce symptoms and improve quality of life in patients with CPPS (42) (LE: 2a, GR: B). Finasteride will provide some improvement for patients with category IIIA prostatitis (43) (LE: 1b, GR: B).

10.4.4 ***Intraprostatic injection of antibiotics***

This treatment has not been evaluated in controlled trials and should be considered only if oral treatment fails to eradicate the infection (44,45).

10.4.5 ***Surgery***

In acute prostatitis, some patients need bladder drainage, preferably with a suprapubic catheter. A positive effect of TURP and transurethral needle ablation has been observed in patients with severe discomfort (46,47) (LE: 2a, GR: B). Even radical prostatovesiculectomy has been carried out to relieve the pain of chronic prostatitis; the results of which are dubious (48). In general, surgery should be avoided in the treatment of prostatitis patients, except for drainage of prostatic abscesses.

10.4.6 ***Other treatment forms***

Microwave energy delivered from Prostatron 2.0 has an *in vitro* bactericidal effect on laboratory-cultured *E. coli* and *Enterobacter cloacae* (49), and transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT) in inflammatory CPPS has been proven to be superior to sham-treated controls (50) (LE: 1b, GR: B). However, TUMT is still considered an experimental treatment option in patients with a suspected infection.

A number of other medical and physical treatment modalities have been suggested in non-inflammatory CPPS. In this condition, there is no evidence of an infection, therefore, full coverage of this topic lies beyond the scope of this review, and the reader is referred to other publications. It should be recalled, however, that symptoms resolve within 1 year in about 30% of men with CPPS (51) (2).

10.5 References

1. Meares EM, Stamey TA. Bacteriologic localization patterns in bacterial prostatitis and urethritis. Invest Urol 1968 Mar;5(5):492-518. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4870505
2. Weidner W, Schiefer HG, Krauss H, et al. Chronic prostatitis: a thorough search for etiologically involved microorganisms in 1,461 patients. Infection 1991;19 Suppl 3:S119-25. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2055646
3. Krieger JN, Nyberg L Jr, Nickel JC. NIH consensus definition and classification of prostatitis. JAMA 1999 Jul;282(3):236-7. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10422990
4. Workshop Committee of the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Disease (NIDDK). Chronic prostatitis workshop. Bethesda, Maryland, 1995, Dec 7-8.
5. Schaeffer AJ. Prostatitis: US perspective. Int J Antimicrob Agents 1999 May;11(3-4):205-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10394972
6. Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, Doggweiler R, et al. Neurourological insights into the etiology of genitourinary pain in men. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):903-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022711
7. Alexander RB, Ponniah S, Hasday J, et al. Elevated levels of proinflammatory cytokines in the semen of patients with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology 1998 Nov;52(5):744-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9801092
8. Alexander RB, Trissel D. Chronic prostatitis: results of an Internet survey. Urology 1996 Oct;48(4): 568-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8886062
9. Krieger JN. Recurrent lower urinary tract infections in men. J New Rem Clin 1998;47:4-15.
10. Krieger JN, Egan KJ, Ross SO, et al. Chronic pelvic pains represent the most prominent urogenital symptoms of 'chronic prostatitis'. Urology 1996 Nov;48(5):715-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911515
11. Nickel JC. Effective office management of chronic prostatitis. Urol Clin North Am 1998 Nov;25(4): 677-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10026774
12. Litwin MS, McNaughton-Collins M, Fowler FJ Jr, et al. The National Institute of Health chronic prostatitis symptom index: development and validation of new outcome measure. Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):369-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411041
13. Krieger JN, Jacobs RR, Ross SO. Does the chronic prostatitis/pelvic pain syndrome differ from nonbacterial prostatitis and prostatodynia? J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1554-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025703
14. Schneider H, Ludwig M, Hossain HM, et al. The 2001 Giessen Cohort Study on patients with prostatitis syndrome - an evaluation of inflammatory status and search for microorganisms 10 years after a first analysis. Andrologia 2003 Oct;35(5):258-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14535851
15. Badalyan RR, Fanarjyan SV, Aghajanyan IG. Chlamydial and ureaplasmal infections in patients with nonbacterial chronic prostatitis. Andrologia 2003 Oct;35(5):263-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14535852
16. Naber KG, Weidner W. Prostatitits, epididymitis and orchitis. In: Armstrong D, Cohen J, eds. *Infectious diseases*. London: Mosby, 1999; Chapter 58.

17. Schaeffer AJ, Knauss JS, Landis JR, et al; Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network Study Group. Leukocyte and bacterial counts do not correlate with severity of symptoms in men with chronic prostatitis: the National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1048-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187220
18. Nickel JC, Downey J, Johnston B, et al; Canadian Prostatitis Research Group. Predictors of patient response to antibiotic therapy for the chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective multicenter clinical trial. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1539-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342913
19. Lee JC, Muller CH, Rothman I, et al. Prostate biopsy culture findings of men with chronic pelvis pain syndrome do not differ from those of healthy controls. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):584-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544312
20. Nadler RB, Koch AE, Calhoun EA, et al. IL-1beta and TNF-alpha in prostatic secretions are indicators in the evaluation of men with chronic prostatitis. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):214-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840462
21. Blenk H, Hofstetter A. Complement C3, coeruloplasmin and PMN-elastase in the ejaculate in chronic prostato-adnexitis and their diagnostic value. Infection 1991;19 Suppl 3:S138-S140.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2055649
22. Doble A, Carter SS. Ultrasonographic findings in prostatitis. Urol Clin North Am 1989;16(4):763-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2683305
23. Drach GW, Fair WR, Meares EM, et al. Classification of benign diseases associated with prostatic pain: prostatitis or prostatodynia? J Urol 1978 Nov;120(2):266. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/671653
24. International Classification of Diseases (ICD). 10th version. Geneva: WHO, 1989.
25. Krieger JN, Berger RE, Ross SO, et al. Seminal fluid findings in men with nonbacterial prostatitis and prostatodynia. J Androl 1996 Aug;17(3):310-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8792222
26. Weidner W, Jantos C, Schiefer HG, et al. Semen parameters in men with and without proven chronic prostatitis. Arch Androl 1991 May-Jun;26(3):173-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1872650
27. Kaplan SA, Santarosa RP, D'Alisera PM, et al. Pseudodyssynergia (contraction of the external sphincter during voiding) misdiagnosed as chronic nonbacterial prostatitis and the role of biofeedback as a therapeutic option. J Urol 1997 May-Jun;157(6):2234-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146624
28. Goto T, Nakame Y, Nishida M, et al. Bacterial biofilms and catheters in experimental urinary tract infection. Int J Antimicrob Agents 1999 Jun;11(3-4):227-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10394975
29. Carver BS, Bozeman CB, Williams BJ, et al. The prevalence of men with National Institutes of Health category IV prostatitis and association with serum prostate specific antigen. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):589-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544313
30. Bozeman CB, Carver BS, Eastham JA, et al. Treatment of chronic prostatitis lowers serum prostate specific antigen. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1723-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912396
31. Polascik TJ, Oesterling JE, Partin AW. Prostate specific antigen: a decade of discovery - what we have learned and where we are going. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):293-306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411025
32. Schaeffer AJ, Weidner W, Barbalias GA, et al. Summary consensus statement: diagnosis and management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Eur Urol 2003 Aug;43(Suppl 2):1-4.
33. Bjerklund Johansen TE, Grüneberg RN, Guibert J, et al. The role of antibiotics in the treatment of chronic prostatitis: a consensus statement. Eur Urol 1998 Dec;34(6):457-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9831786
34. Naber KG. Antimicrobial treatment of bacterial prostatitis. Eur Urol 2003;43(Suppl 2):23-6.
http://www.europeanurology-supplement.com/article/S1569-9056(02)00196-3/abstract
35. Krieger JN, Riley DE, Roberts MC, et al. Prokaryotic DNA sequences in patients with chronic idiopathic prostatitis. J Clin Microbiol 1996 Dec;34(12):3120-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8940458
36. Krieger JN, Riley DE, Vesella RL, et al. Bacterial dna sequences in prostate tissue from patients with prostate cancer and chronic prostatitis. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4):1221-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992370

37. de la Rosette JJ, Hubregtse MR, Meuleman EJ, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of 409 patients with prostatitis syndromes. Urology 1993 Apr;41(4):301-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8470312
38. Ohkawa M, Yamaguchi K, Tokunaga S, et al. Antimicrobial treatment for chronic prostatitis as a means of defining the role of Ureaplasma urealyticum. Urol Int 1993;51(3):129-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8249222
39. Barbalias GA, Nikiforidis G, Liatsikos EN. Alpha-blockers for the treatment of chronic prostatitis in combination with antibiotics. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):883-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474175
40. Alexander RB, Propert KJ, Schaeffer AJ, et al; Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. Ciprofloxacin or tamsulosin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind trial. Ann Intern Med 2004 Oct;141(8):581-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15492337
41. Cheah PY, Liong ML, Yuen KH, et al. Terazosin therapy for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):592-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544314
42. Nickel JC, Johnston B, Downey J, et al. Pentosan polysulfate therapy for chronic nonbacterial prostatitis (chronic pelvic pain syndrome category IIIA): a prospective multicenter clinical trial. Urology 2000 Sep;56(3):413-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962305
43. Nickel JC, Downey J, Pontari MA, et al. A randomized placebo-controlled multicentre study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of finasteride for male chronic pelvic pain syndrome (category IIIA chronic nonbacterial prostatitis). BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):991-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142149
44. Mayersak JS. Transrectal ultrasonography directed intraprostatic injection of gentamycin-xylocaine in the management of the benign painful prostate syndrome. A report of a 5 year clinical study of 75 patients. Int Surg 1998 Oct-Dec;83(4):347-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10096759
45. Jiménez-Cruz JF, Tormo FB, Gómez JG. Treatment of chronic prostatitis: intraprostatic antibiotic injections under echography control. J Urol 1988 May;139(5):967-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3283385
46. Darenkov AF, Simonov VIa, Kuz'min GE, et al. [Transurethral electroresection in chronic prostatitis and its complications.] Urol Nefrol (Mosk) 1989 Jan-Feb;(1):18-23. [Article in Russian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2470185
47. Lee KC, Jung PB, Park HS, et al. Transurethral needle ablation for chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. BJU Int 2002 Feb;89(3):226-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11856102
48. Frazier HA, Spalding TH, Paulson DF. Total prostatoseminal vesiculectomy in the treatment of debilitating perineal pain. J Urol 1992 Aug;148(2 Pt 1):409-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1635150
49. Sahin A, Eiley D, Goldfischer ER, et al. The in vitro bactericidal effect of microwave energy on bacteria that cause prostatitis. Urology 1998 Sep;52(3):411-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730452
50. Nickel JC, Sorensen R. Transurethral microwave thermotherapy for nonbacterial prostatitis: a randomized double-blind sham controlled study using new prostatitis specific assessment questionnaires. J Urol 1996 Jun;155(6):1950-5; discussion 1954-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8618295
51. Nickel JC, Downey JA, Nickel KR, et al. Prostatitis-like symptoms: one year later. BJU Int 2002 Nov;90(7):678-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12410746

11. EPIDIDYMITIS AND ORCHITIS

11.1 Summary and recommendations

Orchitis and epididymitis are classified as acute or chronic processes according to the onset and clinical course. The most common type of orchitis, mumps orchitis, develops in 20-30% of post-pubertal patients with mumps virus infection. If mumps orchitis is suspected, a history of parotitis and evidence of IgM antibodies in

the serum supports the diagnosis.

Epididymitis is almost always unilateral and relatively acute in onset. In young males it is associated with sexual activity and infection of the consort (LE: 3). The majority of cases in sexually active males aged < 35 years are due to sexually transmitted organisms, whereas in elderly patients, it is usually due to common urinary pathogens (LE: 3). Epididymitis causes pain and swelling, which begins in the tail of the epididymis, and may spread to involve the rest of the epididymis and testicular tissue. The spermatic cord is usually tender and swollen. It is imperative for the physician to differentiate between epididymitis and spermatic cord torsion as soon as possible using all available information. The microbial aetiology of epididymitis can usually be determined by examination of a Gram stain of a urethral smear and/or an MSU for the detection of Gram-negative bacteriuria (LE: 3). A urethral swab and MSU should be obtained for microbiological investigation before antimicrobial therapy (GR: C). Antimicrobials should be selected on the empirical basis that in young, sexually active men, *C. trachomatis* is usually causative, and that in older men, the most common uropathogens are involved. Fluoroquinolones with activity against *C. trachomatis* (e.g. ofloxacin and levofloxacin), should be the drugs of first choice. If *C. trachomatis* has been detected, treatment could also be continued with doxycycline, 200 mg/day, for a total of at least 2 weeks. Macrolides may be used as alternative agents (GR: C). Supportive therapy includes bed rest, up positioning of the testes and anti-inflammatory therapy. In case of *C. trachomatis* epididymitis, the sexual partner should also be treated (GR: C). Abscess-forming epididymitis or orchitis needs surgical treatment. Chronic epididymitis can sometimes be the first clinical manifestation of urogenital tuberculosis.

11.2 Definition and classification

Epididymitis, inflammation of the epididymis, causes pain and swelling which is almost always unilateral and relatively acute in onset. In some cases, the testes are involved in the inflammatory process (epididymo-orchitis). On the other hand, inflammatory processes of the testicle, especially virally induced orchitis, often involve the epididymis.

Orchitis and epididymitis are classified as acute or chronic processes according to the onset and clinical course. Chronic disease with induration develops in 15% of acute epididymitis cases. In the case of testicular involvement, chronic inflammation may result in testicular atrophy and the destruction of spermatogenesis (1,2).

11.3 Incidence and prevalence

There are no new data available concerning the incidence and prevalence of epididymitis. According to older data, acute epididymitis has been a major cause for admission to hospitals of military personnel (2) (LE: 3). Acute epididymitis in young men is associated with sexual activity and infection of the consort (3) (LE: 3).

The most common type of orchitis, mumps orchitis, develops in 20-30% of post-pubertal patients with mumps virus infection. The incidence depends upon the vaccination status of the population (4). Primary chronic orchitis is a granulomatous disease, and a rare condition with uncertain aetiology that has been reported in about 100 cases in the literature (5).

11.4 Morbidity

Complications in epididymo-orchitis include abscess formation, testicular infarction, testicular atrophy, development of chronic epididymal induration and infertility (2).

Epididymitis caused by sexually transmitted organisms occurs mainly in sexually active males aged < 35 years (2,6) (LE: 3). The majority of cases of epididymitis are due to common urinary pathogens, which are also the most common cause of bacteriuria (2,6) (LE: 3). Bladder outlet obstruction and urogenital malformations are risk factors for this type of infection.

11.5 Pathogenesis and pathology

Typically, in epididymitis due to common bacteria and sexually transmitted organisms, the infection is spread from the urethra or bladder. In non-specific granulomatous orchitis, autoimmune phenomena are assumed to trigger chronic inflammation (5,7). Paediatric orchitis and mumps orchitis are of haematogenous origin (7).

Epididymo-orchitis is also seen in systemic infections such as tuberculosis, lues, brucellosis and cryptococcus disease.

11.6 Diagnosis

In acute epididymitis, the inflammation and swelling usually begin in the tail of the epididymis, and may spread to involve the rest of the epididymis and testicular tissue. The spermatic cord is usually tender and swollen. All men with epididymitis that is caused by sexually transmitted organisms have a history of sexual exposure, and the organisms can lie dormant for months before the onset of symptoms. If the patient is examined immediately after undergoing urinalysis, urethritis and urethral discharge may be missed because WBC and

bacteria have been washed out of the urethra during urination.

The microbial aetiology of epididymitis can usually be determined by examination of a Gram stain of a urethral smear and/or an MSU for the detection of Gram-negative bacteriuria. The presence of intracellular Gram-negative diplococci on the smear correlates with infection with *N. gonorrhoeae*. The presence of only WBC on a urethral smear indicates the presence of non-gonorrhoeal urethritis. *C. trachomatis* is isolated in approximately two-thirds of these patients (2,6) (LE; 3).

Ejaculate analysis according to WHO criteria including leukocyte analysis indicates persistent inflammatory activity. In many cases, transient decreased sperm counts and forward motility can be found. Azoospermia due to complete obstruction of both epididymides is a rare complication (8). If mumps orchitis is suspected, a history of parotitis and evidence of IgM antibodies in the serum supports the diagnosis. In about 20% of mumps orchitis cases, the disease occurs bilaterally in post-pubertal men with a risk of testicular atrophy and azoospermia (3) (LE: 3).

11.6.1 ***Differential diagnosis***

It is imperative for the physician to differentiate between epididymitis and spermatic cord torsion as soon as possible using all available information, including the age of the patient, history of urethritis, clinical evaluation and Doppler (duplex) scanning of testicular blood flow.

11.7 Treatment

Only a few studies have measured the penetration of antimicrobial agents into the epididymis and testes in humans. Of these, the fluoroquinolones have shown favourable properties (9) (LE: 2a).

Antimicrobials should be selected on the empirical basis that in young, sexually active men, *C. trachomatis* is usually causative, and that in older men, with BPH or other micturition disturbances, the most common uropathogens are involved. Studies that have compared microbiological results from puncture of the epididymis and from urethral swabs as well as urine have shown very good correlation. Therefore, before antimicrobial therapy, a urethral swab and MSU should be obtained for microbiological investigation (GR: C).

Again, fluoroquinolones, preferably those with activity against *C. trachomatis* (e.g. ofloxacin and levofloxacin), should be the drugs of first choice, because of their broad antibacterial spectra and their favourable penetration into the tissues of the urogenital tract. If *C. trachomatis* has been detected as an aetiological agent, treatment could also be continued with doxycycline, 200 mg/day, for a total period of at least 2 weeks. Macrolides may be used as alternative agents (GR: C).

Supportive therapy includes bed rest, up-positioning of the testes and antiphlogistic therapy. In young men, epididymitis can lead to permanent occlusion of the epididymal ducts and thus to infertility, therefore, one should consider antiphlogistic therapy with methylprednisolone, 40 mg/day, and reduce the dose by half every second day (GR: C).

In case of *C. trachomatis* epididymitis, the sexual partner should also be treated (GR: C). If uropathogens are found as causative agents, a thorough search for micturition disturbances should be carried out to prevent relapse (GR: C). Abscess-forming epididymitis or orchitis also needs surgical treatment. Chronic epididymitis can sometimes be the first clinical manifestation of urogenital tuberculosis.

11.8 References

1. Naber KG, Weidner W. Prostatitis, epididymitis, orchitis. In: Armstrong D, Cohen J, eds. Infectious diseases. London: Mosby, Harcourt Publishers Ltd, 1999, pp. 1-58.
2. Berger RE. Epididymitis. In: *Sexually transmitted diseases*. Holmes KK, Mardh P-A, Sparling PF, Wiesner PJ (eds). New York: McGraw-Hill, 1984; pp. 650-662.
3. Robinson AJ, Grant JB, Spencer RC, et al. Acute epididymitis: why patient and consort must be investigated. Br J Urol 1990 Dec;66(6):642-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2265337
4. Rüther U, Stilz S, Röhl E, Nunnensiek C, et al. Successful interferon-alpha 2, a therapy for a patient with acute mumps orchitis. Eur Urol 1995;27(2):174-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7744163
5. Aitchison M, Mufti GR, Farrell J, et al. Granulomatous orchitis. Review of 15 cases. Br J Urol 1990 Sep;66(3):312-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2207549
6. Weidner W, Schiefer HG, Garbe C. Acute nongonococcal epididymitis. Aetiological and therapeutic aspects. Drugs 1987;34 Suppl 1:111-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3481311
7. Nistal M, Paniagua R. Testicular and Epididymal Pathology. Stuttgart: Thieme, 1984.

8. Weidner W, Garbe C, Weissbach L, et al. [Initial therapy of acute unilateral epididymitis using ofloxacin. II. Andrological findings.] Urologe A 1990 Sep;29(5):277-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2120839
9. Ludwig M, Jantos CA, Wolf S, et al. Tissue penetration of sparfloxacin in a rat model of experimental Escherichia coli epididymitis. Infection 1997 May-Jun;25(3):178-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9181388

12. SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED INFECTIONS

The classical bacteria that cause venereal diseases, e.g. gonorrhoea, syphilis, chancroid and inguinal granuloma, only account for a small proportion of all known sexually transmitted deceases (STDs) today. Other bacteria and viruses as well as yeasts, protozoa and epizoa must also be regarded as causative organisms of STD. Taken together, all STDs are caused by > 30 relevant pathogens. However, not all pathogens that can be sexually transmitted manifest genital diseases, and not all genital infections are exclusively sexually transmitted. Concise information and tables that summarise the diagnostic and therapeutic management of STDs in the field of urology allow a synoptic overview and are in agreement with recent international guidelines of other specialities.

Special considerations (i.e. HIV infection, pregnancy, infants, and allergy) and recommended regimens may be looked up here.

12.1 Reference

1. Schneede P, Tenke P, Hofstetter AG; Urinary Tract Infection Working Group of the Health Care Office of the European Association of Urology. Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)--a synoptic overview for urologists. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814668

13. FOURNIER'S GANGRENE

13.1 Summary of recommendations

1. Full, repeated surgical debridement should commence within 24 h of presentation (LE: 3; GR: B).
2. Treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics should be started on presentation, with subsequently refinement according to culture and clinical response (LE: 3; GR: B).
3. Adjunctive treatment such as pooled immunoglobulin and hyperbaric oxygen are not recommended, except in the context of clinical trials (LE: 3; GR: C).

13.2 Background

Fournier's gangrene describes an aggressive and frequently fatal polymicrobial soft tissue infection of the perineum, perianal region, and external genitalia. It is an anatomical sub-category of necrotising fasciitis with which it shares a common aetiology and management pathway. Evidence regarding investigation and treatment is predominantly from case series and expert opinion (LE: 3/4).

13.3 Clinical presentation

Fournier's gangrene remains rare but its incidence is increasing with an ageing population and higher prevalence of diabetes, together with emergence of multi-resistant pathogens. Typically there is painful swelling of the scrotum or perineum associated with signs of severe sepsis. Examination shows a small necrotic bulla with surrounding erythema and oedema. Crepitus on palpation and a foul-smelling exudate occurs with more advanced disease. Risk factors include immuno-compromised patients, most commonly diabetes or malnutrition, or a recent history of catheterisation, instrumentation or perineal surgery. In up to 40% of cases, the onset is more insidious with undiagnosed pain often resulting in delayed treatment. A high index of suspicion and careful examination, particularly of obese patients, is required.

13.4 Microbiology

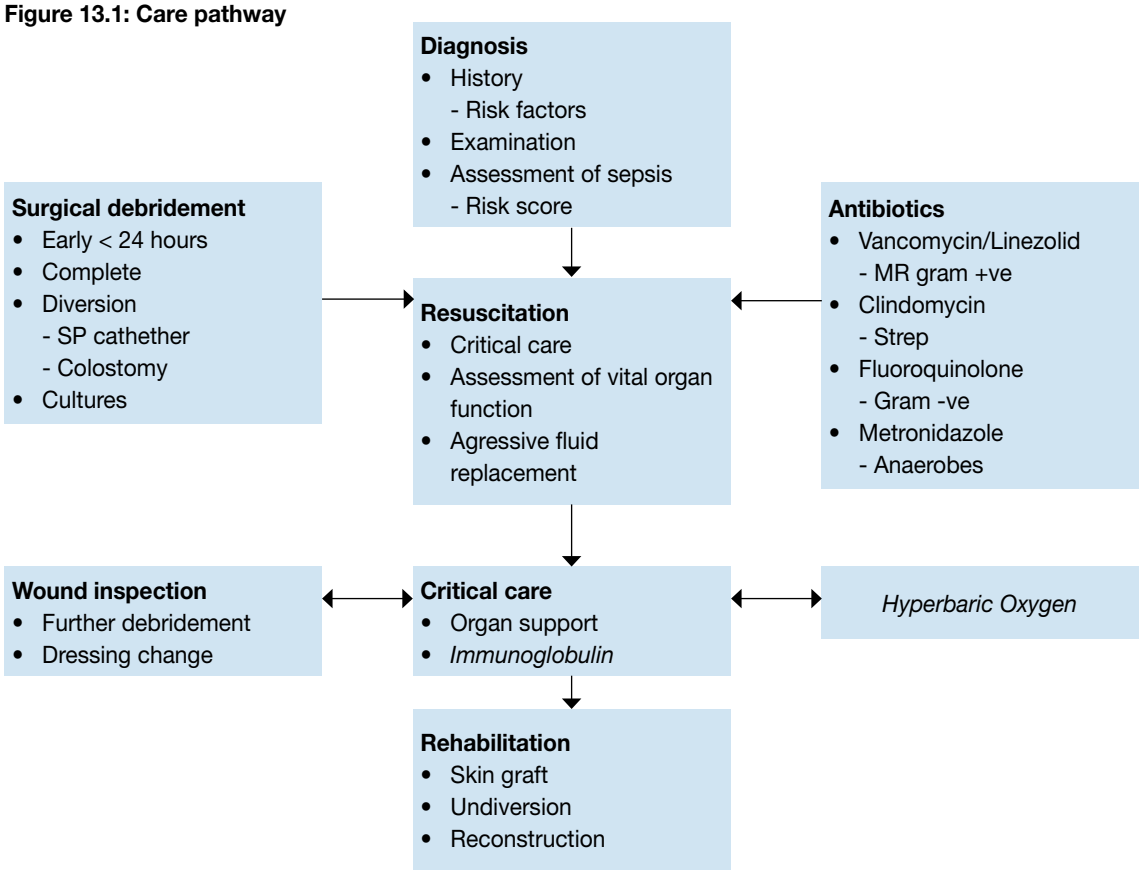
Fournier's gangrene is typically a type 1 necrotising fasciitis that is polymicrobial in origin, including *S. aureus, Streptococcus sp., Klebsiella sp.*, *E. coli* and anaerobic bacteria; involvement of Clostridium sp. is

now less common. These organisms secrete a variety of endotoxins that cause tissue necrosis and severe cardiovascular impairment. Subsequent inflammatory reaction by the host contributes to multi-organ failure and death if untreated.

13.5 Management

It is essential, first, to appreciate that the degree of internal necrosis is much greater than suggested by the external signs, and second, that adequate, repeated surgical debridement is necessary to save the patient's life (LE: 3, GR: B). Recently, severity scoring systems have been devised based on laboratory parameters to aid management, and cross-sectional imaging using CT or MRI can help define para-rectal involvement, which suggests the need for colostomy (LE: 3, GR: C). Consensus from case series suggests that surgical debridement should be early (< 24 h) and complete, because delayed and/or inadequate surgery results in higher mortality (LE: 3/4, GR: B). Concurrent parenteral antibiotic treatment should be given that covers all causative organisms and can penetrate inflammatory tissue (LE: 3, GR: B). This can then be refined following surgical cultures. The benefit of pooled immunoglobulin therapy and hyperbaric oxygen remains uncertain (LE: 3, not recommended grade C). With aggressive early surgical management, survival rates are > 70% depending upon patient group and availability of critical care (LE: 3). Following resolution, reconstruction using skin grafts is required.

Figure 13.1: Care pathway



13.6 References

1. Erol B, Tuncel A, Hanci V, et al. Fournier's gangrene: overview of prognostic factors and definition of new prognostic parameter. Urology. 2010 May;75(5):1193-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20451745
2. Morua AG, Lopez JA, Garcia JD, et al. Fournier's gangrene: our experience in 5 years, bibliographic review and assessment of the Fournier's gangrene severity index. Arch Esp Urol. 2009 Sep;62(7): 532-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19815967
3. Ozturk E, Sonmez Y, Yilmazlar T. What are the indications for a stoma in Fournier's gangrene? Colorectal Dis. 2011 Sep;13(9):1044-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20579084

4. Sarani B, Strong M, Pascual J, et al. Necrotizing fasciitis: Current concepts and review of the literature. J Am Coll Surg. 2009; 208: 279-88. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19228540

14. SPECIFIC INFECTIONS

Urogenital tuberculosis and bilharziasis are two infections that may affect the urogenital tract. Although not endemic in Europe, cases of urogenital tuberculosis are occasionally diagnosed in all communities. In a world of globalisation, travellers are regularly confronted with situations in which they may be infected. Guidelines on the diagnosis and management of these two infections have been published elsewhere. Following the abstract printed here, there is a direct link to these published guidelines, which can be consulted for free.

14.1 Urogenital tuberculosis

Nearly one third of the world's population is estimated to be infected with *M. tuberculosis*. Moreover, tuberculosis is the most common opportunistic infection in AIDS patients. Urogenital tuberculosis is not very common but it is considered as a severe form of extra-pulmonary tuberculosis. The diagnosis of urogenital tuberculosis is made based on culture studies by isolation of the causative organism; however, biopsy material on conventional solid media may occasionally be required. Drugs are the first-line therapy in urogenital tuberculosis. Treatment regimens of 6 months are effective in most patients. Although chemotherapy is the mainstay of treatment, surgery in the form of ablation or reconstruction may be unavoidable. Both radical and reconstructive surgery should be carried out in the first 2 months of intensive chemotherapy.

14.1.1 ***Reference***

1. Mete Çek M, Lenk S, Naber KG, et al; the Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI). EAU Guidelines for the Management of Genitourinary Tuberculosis. Eur Urol 2005 Sep;48(3):353-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15982799

14.2 Urogenital schistosomiasis

More than 100 million people worldwide are affected by bilharziasis, which is caused by Schistosoma heamatobium. For travellers, precautions are most important. For the population in endemic areas, an integrated approach including health education is necessary. Effective pharmacological treatment is available.

14.2.1 ***Reference***

1. Bichler KH, Savatovsky I; the Members of the Urinary Tract Infection (UTI) Working Group of the Guidelines Office of the European Association of Urology (EAU):, Naber KG, Bischop MC, Bjerklund-Johansen TE, Botto H, Çek M, Grabe M, Lobel B, Redorta JP, Tenke P. EAU guidelines for the management of urogenital schistosomiasis. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):998-1003.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16519990

15. PERIOPERATIVE ANTIBACTERIAL PROPHYLAXIS IN UROLOGY

15.1 Summary and recommendations

The aim of antimicrobial prophylaxis in urological surgery is to prevent infective complications that result from diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. However, evidence for the best choice of antibiotics and prophylactic regimens is limited (Table 15.1).

Before surgery, it is essential to categorise the patients in relation to (1):

- general health status according to American Society of Anesthesiology (ASA) score P1-P5;
- presence of general risk factors such as older age, diabetes mellitus, impaired immune system, malnutrition, extreme weight;
- presence of specific endogenous or exogenous risk factors such as a history of UTI or urogenital

infection, indwelling catheters, bacterial burden, previous instrumentation, genetic factors;
- type of surgery and surgical field contamination burden;
- expected level of surgical invasiveness, duration and technical aspects.

Only transrectal core prostate biopsy (LE: 1b, GR: A) and TURP (LE: 1a, GR: A) are well documented. There is no evidence for any benefits of antibiotic prophylaxis in standard non-complicated endoscopic procedures and shockwave lithotripsy (SWL), although it is recommended in complicated procedures and patients with identified risk factors.

For open and laparoscopic surgery, the same rules as in abdominal and gynaecological surgery can be applied. No antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended for clean operations, whereas a single or 1-day dose is recommended in clean-contaminated/contaminated operations. Opening of the urinary tract is considered as clean-contaminated surgery.

A single dose or a short course of antimicrobials can be given parenterally or orally. The administration route depends on the type of intervention and patient characteristics. Oral administration requires drugs that have good bioavailability. In a case of continuous close urinary drainage, prolongation of perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended.

Many antibiotics are suitable for perioperative antibacterial prophylaxis, e.g. co-trimoxazole, second-generation cephalosporins, fluoroquinolones, aminopenicillins plus a beta-lactam inhibitor, and aminoglycosides. Broader-spectrum antibiotics including fluoroquinolones should be used cautiously and reserved for treatment. This applies also to the use of vancomycin.

The use of antimicrobials should be based on knowledge of the local pathogen profile and antibiotic susceptibility pattern. Best practice includes surveillance and an audit of infectious complications.

Table 15.1: Level of evidence and grade of recommendation for standard urological procedures
(The consequences in terms of antibiotic prophylaxis are given in Table 15.5)

Procedure	LE	GR	Remarks
Diagnostic procedures			
Cystoscopy	1b	A	Low frequency of infections Contradictory findings
Urodynamic study	1a	A	Low frequency of infections Contradictory findings
Transrectal core biopsy of prostate	1b	A	High risk of infection Assess carefully risk factors
Diagnostic ureteroscopy	4	C	No available studies
Therapeutic procedures			
TURB	2b	C	Poor data. No concern given to burden of tumor, i.e. size, multiplicity, necrosis
TURP	1a	A	Good documentation
SWL (standard, no risk factors such as the presence of a stent or nephrostomy tube)	1a/1b	A	Low frequency of infections Contradictory findings
Ureteroscopy stone	2b	B	Literature does not distinguish between severity of stone management
Percutaneous stone management	2b	B	High risk of infection
Open and laparoscopic surgery			
Clean operations (no opening of urinary tract)			
Nephrectomy	3	C	SSI poorly documented Catheter-related UTI
Scrotal surgery	3	C	Review studies contradictory
Prosthetic implants	3	B	Limited documentation Regimen not well defined
Clean-contaminated (opening of urinary tract)			
Nephroureterectomy	3	B	Poor documentation
Ureteropelvic junction repair	4	C	No studies detected

Total (radical) prostatectomy	2a	B	No RCT, poor documentation
Partial bladder resection	3	C	No specific RCT studies
Clean-contaminated/contaminated (opening of bowel, urine deviation)			
Cystectomy with urine deviation	2a	B	Limited documentation

SWL = extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy; TURB = transurethral resection of the bladder; SSI = surgical site infection; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate; RCT= randomised controlled trials.

15.2 Introduction

Antibiotic prophylaxis in urology has been controversial for many years. Most studies in the past have been poorly designed and have lacked statistical power. There has been inconsistency concerning definitions and assessment of risk factors. Urological practice has changed particularly in the last decade and older studies are no longer relevant. Several surveys among urologists in Europe have revealed wide differences in regimens and choice of antibiotics for prophylaxis. Clearly, there is a need for evidence-based guidelines (2-6).
The present section aims to clarify the current state of knowledge and to propose practical recommendations based on clinical studies, expert opinion and professional consensus. The section also considers the recommendations of societies, such as the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy, the corresponding working groups of the German Society of Urology (7), French Association of Urology (8) and of an international consensus working group (1).

One systematic review of antibiotic prophylaxis in urological surgery has been published (9). The results of the review strengthen the underlying documentation for the present recommendations.

A recent pan-European survey was carried out by the EAU Section for Infection in Urology (ESIU) in a large number of European countries, including > 200 urological services or units. The survey found that 9.7% of patients had a healthcare-associated UTI (10). The survey illustrated the need for a stringent antibiotic policy throughout Europe, and that recommendations for antibiotic prophylaxis should be included in the general antibiotic policy of each hospital.

The microbial development of resistance presents a challenge to the urological community for both treatment and prophylaxis. It is essential that the urologist is aware of the microbial pattern and resistance profile in his/her community and can assess the risk of each individual patient of harbouring resistant strains (see section 1.2).

15.3 Goals of perioperative antibacterial prophylaxis

Antibiotic prophylaxis and therapy are two different issues. Antibiotic prophylaxis aims to prevent healthcare-associated infections that result from diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Antibiotic prophylaxis is only one of several measures to prevent infections and can never compensate for poor hygiene and operative technique. In contrast, antibiotic therapy is the treatment of a clinically suspected or microbiologically proven infection.

There are some clinical situations, however, that are not easily classified as either prophylaxis or therapy, e.g. patients with long-term indwelling catheters and bacteriuria. These patients must receive antibiotics at the time of surgery, regardless of how they are classified.

There is also a dilemma regarding the definition of infections. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) have presented definitions that are currently the most comprehensive, and are recommended for the evaluation of infectious complications (11). These definitions have also been used in the recent pan-European study on nosocomial UTI (10). Revision of definitions and recommendations are ongoing in some countries (12). Table 15.2 illustrates the different types of infectious complications encountered in urological surgery.

Table 15.2: Main types of healthcare-associated infections encountered in urological practice

Site of infection	Minor	Major
Surgical wound Incision/surgical site infection (SSI)	Superficial wound infection	Deep wound infection Wound rupture (abdominal dehiscence) Deep abdominal or surgical site abscess
UTI or organ-specific infection	Asymptomatic bacteriuria (bacterial colonisation) Symptomatic lower UTI	Febrile UTI Pyelonephritis Renal abscess

Blood stream	Bacteremia without signs of systemic response	SIRS or sepsis with signs of systemic response
Septic embolism Other urogenital sites	Epididymitis (Orchitis)	Acute bacterial prostatitis (type I)
Other sites		Pneumonia

Surgical site infections are seen after open surgery and to some extent after laparoscopic surgery. Febrile and complicated UTIs are mainly complications of endoscopic surgery and the use of indwelling catheters and stents. They can also occur following open surgery of the urinary tract. Sepsis can be seen with all types of procedures.

The endpoints of perioperative prophylaxis in urology are debatable. It is generally agreed that its main aim is to prevent symptomatic, febrile urogenital infections such as acute pyelonephritis, prostatitis, epididymitis and urosepsis, as well as serious wound infections directly related to surgery (Table 15.2). This might be extended to asymptomatic bacteriuria and even minor wound infections, which could easily be treated on an outpatient basis. In some circumstances, even minor wound infections can have serious consequences, as in implant surgery. However, asymptomatic bacteriuria after TURP or other endourological procedures can disappear spontaneously and is usually of no clinical significance. Another question is whether perioperative prophylaxis should also be concerned with the prevention of non-urological infections, e.g. endocarditis and postoperative pneumonia. Perioperative antibacterial prophylaxis in urology must go beyond the traditional aim of prophylaxis in surgery, which is the prevention of wound infections.

15.4 Risk factors

Risk factors (Table 15.3) are underestimated in most trials. However, they are important in the preoperative assessment of the patient. They are related to:

- general health of the patient as defined by ASA score P1-P5;
- presence of general risk factors such as older age, diabetes mellitus, impaired immune system, malnutrition, extreme weight;
- presence of specific endogenous or exogenous risk factors such as a history of UTI or urogenital infection, indwelling catheters, bacterial burden, previous instrumentation, genetic factors;
- type of surgery and surgical field contamination;
- expected level of surgical invasiveness, duration and technical aspects.

The traditional classification of surgical procedures according to Cruse and Foord (13) into clean, clean-contaminated, contaminated, and dirty operations applies to open surgery but not to endourological interventions. It is still debated whether opening of the urinary tract (i.e. bladder surgery, radical prostatectomy, or surgery of the renal pelvis and ureter) should be classified as clean or clean-contaminated surgery in cases of negative urine culture. The same applies to endoscopic and transurethral surgery. However, members of the EAU Expert Group consider these procedures as clean-contaminated because urine culture is not always a predictor of bacterial presence, and the lower genitourinary tract is colonised by microflora, even in the presence of sterile urine (6,14,15).

Table 15.3: Generally accepted risk factors for infectious complications

General risk factors	Special risk factors associated with an increased bacterial load
Older age	Long preoperative hospital stay or recent hospitalisation
Deficient nutritional status	History of recurrent urogenital infections
Impaired immune response	Surgery involving bowel segment
Diabetes mellitus	Colonisation with microorganisms
Smoking	Long-term drainage
Extreme weight	Urinary obstruction
Coexisting infection at a remote site	Urinary stone
Lack of control of risk factors	

The pan-European study on nosocomial UTI (10) has identified the three most important risk factors for infectious complications as:

- an indwelling catheter;

- previous urogenital infection;
- long preoperative hospital stay.

The risk of infection varies with the type of intervention. The wide spectrum of interventions further complicates the provision of clearcut recommendations. Furthermore, the bacterial load, the duration and difficulty of the operation, the surgeon's skill, and perioperative bleeding may also influence the risk of infection (6).

15.5 Principles of antibiotic prophylaxis

Antibiotic prophylaxis aims at protecting the patient but not at the expense of promoting resistance. However, there is good evidence that intelligent use of prophylaxis can lower the overall consumption of antibiotics (15,16). It is essential to individualise the choice of antibiotic prophylaxis according to each patient's cumulative risk factors (17). Urine culture prior to surgery is strongly recommended. Antibiotics cannot replace other basic measures to reduce infection (18-20).

Unfortunately, the benefit of antibiotic prophylaxis for most modern urological procedures has not yet been established by well-designed interventional studies.

*15.5.1 **Timing***

There is a given time-frame during which antibiotic prophylaxis should be administered. Although the following guidelines are based on research into skin wounds and clean-contaminated and contaminated bowel surgery, there is good reason to believe that the same findings apply to urological surgery. The optimal time for antibiotic prophylaxis is from 2 h before but not later than 3 h after the start of an intervention (21-23). For practical purposes, oral antibiotic prophylaxis should be given approximately 1 h before the intervention. Intravenous antibiotic prophylaxis should be given at the induction of anaesthesia. These timings allow antibiotic prophylaxis to reach a peak concentration at the time of highest risk during the procedure, and an effective concentration shortly afterwards (24). It is worth noting that a bloodstream infection can develop in less than an hour (21).

*15.5.2 **Route of administration***

Oral administration is as effective as the intravenous route for antibiotics with sufficient bioavailability. This is recommended for most interventions when the patient can easily take the drug between 1 and 2 h before intervention. Administration of the drug several hours before surgery is probably less effective. In other cases, intravenous administration is recommended. Local irrigation of the operating field with antibiotics is not recommended.

*15.5.3 **Duration of the regimen***

For most procedures, duration of antibiotic prophylaxis has not yet been adequately addressed and rarely can a defined regimen be recommended. In principle, the duration of perioperative prophylaxis should be minimised; ideally to a single preoperative antibiotic dose. Perioperative prophylaxis should be prolonged only where there are significant risk factors (see Section 15.4).

*15.5.4 **Choice of antibiotics***

No clear-cut recommendations can be given, as there are considerable variations in Europe regarding both bacterial spectra and susceptibility to different antibiotics. Antimicrobial resistance is usually higher in Mediterranean compared with Northern European countries; resistance is correlated with an up to fourfold difference in sales of antibiotics (25). Thus, knowledge of the local pathogen profile, susceptibility and virulence is mandatory in establishing local antibiotic guidelines. It is also essential to define the predominant pathogens for each type of procedure. When choosing an antimicrobial agent, it is necessary to consider the procedure-specific risk factors, contamination load, target organ, and the role of local inflammation.

In general, many antibiotics are suitable for perioperative antibacterial prophylaxis, e.g. co-trimoxazole, second-generation cephalosporins, aminopenicillins plus a BLI, aminoglycosides and fluoroquinolones. Broader-spectrum antibiotics should be used sparingly and reserved for treatment. Fluoroquinolones should be avoided as far as possible for prophylaxis. This applies also to the use of vancomycin.

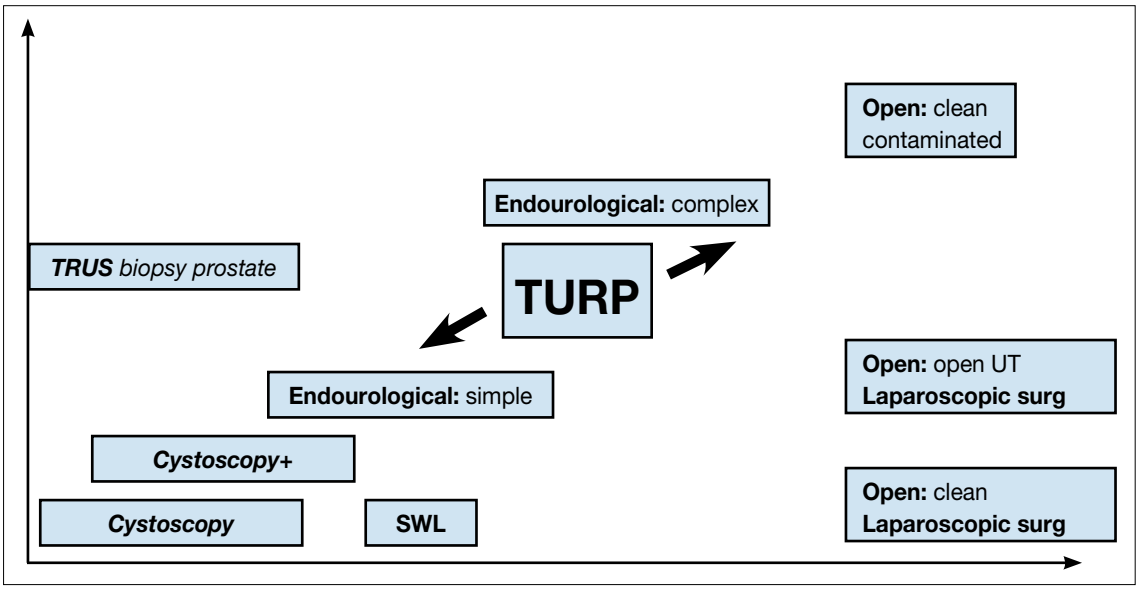
15.6 Prophylactic regimens in defined procedures

The list of major urological diagnostic and therapeutic procedures is given in Table 15.4 and the empirical relationship between the level of invasiveness and risk for infective complications is illustrated in Figure 15.1. Moreover, a tentative classification of the urological procedures in relation to the surgical field contamination level is given in Table 15.6.a and 15.6.b.

Table 15.4: List of urological interventions

Diagnostic procedures
• Fine-needle biopsy of the prostate
• Core-needle biopsy of the prostate
Cystoscopy
• Urodynamic examination
• Radiological diagnostic intervention of the urinary tract
• Ureteroscopy
Deviation procedures
• Insertion of indwelling catheter
• Insertion of suprapubic catheter
• Insertion of nephrostomy tube
• Insertion of ureteric stent
Endourological operations
• Resection of bladder tumour
• Resection of prostate
• Minimal invasive prostatic operation, i.e. microwave thermotherapy
• Ureteroscopy for stone or tumour fulguration
• Percutaneous stone or tumour surgery
SWL
Laparoscopic surgery
• Radical prostatectomy
• Pyeloplasty
• Nephrectomy and nephron-sparing surgery of the kidney
• Other major laparoscopic surgery, including bowel surgery
Open surgery
• Open surgery of the prostate, i.e. enucleation of prostatic adenoma
• Open stone surgery
• Pyeloplasty
• Nephrectomy and nephron-sparing surgery of the kidney
• Nephro-ureterectomy, including bladder resection
• Bladder resection
• Urethroplasty
• Implantation of prosthetic devices
• Urinary diversion procedures using intestinal segments

Figure 15.1: Level of invasiveness and risk of infection in urological procedures (empirical scheme) (5)



The recommendations for antibiotic prophylaxis in standard urological surgery are summarised in Table 15.5 and Appendix 16.4.

15.6.1 ***Diagnostic procedures***

Antimicrobial prophylaxis in core biopsy of the prostate is generally recommended (GR: A). However, the choice of regimens remains debatable. Most regimens used are effective, and recent studies have suggested that 1-day and even single doses are sufficient in low-risk patients (26-41) (LE: 1b, GR: A).

The frequency of infectious complications after cystoscopy, urodynamic studies and diagnostic simple ureteroscopy is low. The use of antibiotic prophylaxis is still debated and the results are controversial. In view of the very large number of cystoscopic examinations and the potential adverse effect on bacterial sensitivity, antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended in standard cases. However, bacteriuria, indwelling catheters, and a history of urogenital infection are risk factors that must be considered (42-56) (LE: 1b, GR: A).

15.6.2 ***Endourological treatment procedures (urinary tract entered)***

There is little evidence for any benefit of antibiotic prophylaxis in TURB. However, antibiotic prophylaxis should be considered in patients with large tumours with a prolonged resection time, large necrotic tumours, and with risk factors (43,57,58) (LE: 2b, GR: C).

TURP is the best-studied urological intervention. A meta-analysis of 32 prospective, randomised and controlled studies, including > 4,000 patients, showed a benefit of antibiotic prophylaxis with a relative risk reduction of 65% and 77% for bacteriuria and septicaemia, respectively (15,59-61) (LE: 1a, GR: A). There is a difference between smaller resections in healthy patients and large resections in at-risk patients (Figure 15.1).

There have been few studies that have defined the risk of infection following ureteroscopy and percutaneous stone removal, and no clear-cut evidence exists (62). It is reasonable, however, to distinguish low-risk procedures, such as simple diagnostic and distal stone treatment, from higher-risk procedures, such as treatment of proximal impacted stones and intrarenal interventions (Figure 15.1) (5). Other risk factors (i.e. size, length, bleeding, and surgeon's experience) also need to be considered in the choice of regimen (63-70) (LE: 2b, GR: B).

SWL is one of the most commonly performed procedures in urology. No standard prophylaxis is recommended. However, prophylaxis is recommended in cases of internal stent and treatment, due to the increased bacterial burden (e.g. indwelling catheter, nephrostomy tube, or infectious stones) (71-79) (LE: 1a-1b, GR: A).

Most antibiotic groups have been evaluated, such as fluoroquinolones, BLIs, including cephalosporins, and co-trimoxazole, but comparative studies are limited.

15.6.3 ***Laparoscopic surgery***

There has been a lack of sufficiently powered studies in laparoscopic urological surgery. However, it seems reasonable to manage laparoscopic surgical procedures in the same manner as the corresponding open procedures (LE: 4, GR: C).

15.6.4 ***Open or laparoscopic urological operations without opening of the urinary tract (clean procedures)***

No standard antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended in clean operations (80-84) (LE: 3, GR: C).

15.6.5 ***Open or laparoscopic urological operations with open urinary tract (clean-contaminated procedures)***

In cases of opening the urinary tract, a single perioperative parenteral dose of antibiotics is recommended (LE: 3, GR: C). This is valuable for standard procedures such as total (radical) prostatectomy (85-88). In open enucleation of prostatic adenoma, the risk of postoperative infection is particularly high (89) (LE: 2b, GR: B).

15.6.6 ***Open urological operations with bowel segment (clean-contaminated or contaminated procedures)***

Antibiotic prophylaxis is recommended, as for clean-contaminated operations in general surgery. Single or 1-day dosage is recommended, although prolonged operation and other morbidity risk factors might support the use of a prolonged regimen, which should be < 72 h. The choice of antibiotic should focus on aerobic and anaerobic pathogens. Evidence is based on colorectal surgery (LE: 1a, GR: A), but experience is limited as for specific urological interventions (90-93) (LE: 2a, GR: B).

15.6.7 ***Postoperative drainage of the urinary tract***

When continuous urinary drainage is left in place after surgery, prolongation of perioperative antibacterial prophylaxis is not recommended, unless a complicated infection that requires treatment is suspected. Asymptomatic bacteriuria (bacterial colonisation) should only to be treated before surgery or after removal of the drainage tube (LE: 3, GR: B).

15.6.8 ***Implantation of prosthetic devices***

When infectious complications occur in implant surgery, they are usually problematic and often result in removal of the prosthetic device. Diabetes mellitus is considered a specific risk factor for infection. Skin-related staphylococci are responsible for most infections. The antibiotics used must be chosen to target these strains (94-97) (LE: 2a, GR: B).

15.5 Recommendations for perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis in urology

Procedure	Pathogens (expected)	Prophylaxis	Antibiotics	Remarks
Diagnostic procedures				
Transrectal biopsy of the prostate	Enterobacteriaceae Anaerobes?	All patients	Fluoroquinolones TMP ± SMX Metronidazole?[1]	Single dose effective in low-risk patients. Consider prolonged course in high-risk patients
Cystoscopy Urodynamic examination	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd Generation	Consider in high-risk patients
Ureteroscopy	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd generation	Consider in high-risk patients
Endourological surgery and SWL				
SWL	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI[a]	
SWL with stent or nephrostomy tube	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI[a]	Risk patients

Ureteroscopy for uncomplicated distal stone	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI Fluoroquinolones	Consider in risk patients
Ureteroscopy of proximal or impacted stone and percutaneous stone extraction	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI Fluoroquinolones	Short course Length to be determined Intravenous suggested at operation
TURP	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Low-risk patients and small-size prostate probably do not require prophylaxis
TUR of bladder tumour	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Consider in high-risk patients and large tumours
Open or laparoscopic urological surgery				
Clean operations	Skin-related pathogens, e.g. staphylococci Catheter-associated uropathogens	No		Consider in high-risk patients Short postoperative catheter requires no treatment
Clean-contaminated (opening of urinary tract)	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	Recommended	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Single perioperative course
Clean-contaminated/ contaminated (use of bowel segments)	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Anaerobes Skin-related bacteria	All patients	Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Metronidazole	As for colonic surgery
Implant of prosthetic devices	Skin-related bacteria, e.g. staphylococci	All patients	Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Penicillin (penicillinase stable)	

[1]No evidence for metronidazole in core biopsy of the prostate

[a] = Gram-negative bacteria excluding Pseudomonas aeruginosa

Table 15.6.a: Surgical Wound Classes and risk of wound infection modified for urological procedures. Tentative classification of urological instrumentation and procedures in relation to the different classes. The risk of wound infection as expressed in per cent is that of classical wound infection and not bacteriuria or clinical UTI in urological surgery. (Urogenital infections, EAU/ICUD, 2010, p 674-75)

Category of intervention (risk of surgical wound infection)	Description	Open or laparoscopic urological surgery (Examples)	Endoscopic urological instrumentation and surgery (examples)
Clean (1-4%)	Urogenital tract not entered No evidence of inflammation No break in technique Blunt trauma	Simple nephrectomy Planned scrotal surgery Vasectomy Varicocele surgery	Cystoscopy Urodynamic study TURB (minor, fulguration)* SWL*
Clean-contaminated (4-10%)	*Urogenital tract* entered with no or little (controlled) spillage No major break in technique	Pelvio-ureteric junction repair Nephron-sparing tumour resection Total/radical prostatectomy Bladder surgery and partial cystectomy Incl. Vaginal surgery	TURB (major, necrotic)* TURP* Diagnostic URS* Uncomplicated URS* and PCNL stone management SWL*
	Gastrointestinal tract entered with no or little (controlled) spillage No break in technique	Urine diversion (orthotopic bladder replacement; ileal conduit)	
Contaminated (10-15%)	Spillage of Gastrointestinal content Inflammatory tissue Major break in technique Open, fresh accidental wounds	Urine deviation (colon) and small intestine/spillage Trauma surgery Concomitant gastrointestinal disease	Core prostate biopsy* TURP* Impacted proximal stone management Complicated PCNL
Dirty (15-40%)	Pre-existing infection Perforated viscera at surgery Old traumatic wound	Drainage of abscess Large dirty trauma surgery	Infectious stone surgery

**Detailed description in table 15.6.b*

Table 15.6.b: Tentative list of essential criteria for assessment of surgical wound class/surgical field contamination level of common urological procedures: The estimated risk of infectious complication is related to the surgical class or category (Urogenital infections, EAU/ICUD, 2010, p 674-75)

Operation/ Category	TURB	TURP	Endoscopy Stone	SWL	Prostate biopsy
Clean	Small tumours No history UTI Sterile urine (similar cystoscopy)	-	Distal ureteral stone No history UTI Sterile urine No or minor obstruction No other RF	Standard ureteral or kidney stone No history UTI Sterile urine No or mild obstruction	-
Clean-contaminated	Large tumours History UTI Sterile urine	No history UTI/ UGI Sterile urine No catheter	All ureteral stone History UTI Sterile urine Minor/moderate obstruction No stent Other RF	Standard ureteral or kidney stone History UTI Sterile urine Moderate obstruction Other RF	*Transperineal* Sterile urine No history UTI/UGI
Contamin-ated	Large tumours Necrosis Bacteriuria controlled	History UTI/UGI Catheter prior to surgery Bacteriuria controlled	Proximal impacted stone History UTI Sterile urine or Controlled bacteriuria Moderate obstruction Stent/catheter	Complex stone History UTI Obstruction Bacteriuria controlled Stent or nephrostomy tube	*Transperineal* Sterile urine History UTI/ UGI *Transrectal* No- or history UTI/UGI Sterile urine
Dirty	Clinical infected Emergency	Clinical infected Emergency	Clinical infected Drainage only	Clinical infected Drainage only	*Transrectal* Presence of catheter or bacteriuria

**UTI = urinary tract infection; UGI = urogenital infection (i.e. prostatitis); RF = risk factor.*

15.7 References

1. Naber KG (chair), Schaeffer AJ, Hynes CF, et al (Eds) (2010). EAU/International Consultation on Urological Infections. The Netherlands, European Association of Urology.
2. Hedelin H, Bergman B, Frimodt-Møller C, et al. [Antibiotic prophlaxis in diagnostic and therapeutic urological interventions.] Nord Med 1995;110(1):9-11,25. [Article in Swedish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831109
3. Wilson NI, Lewis HJ. Survey of antibiotic prophylaxis in British urological practice. Br J Urol 1985 Aug;57(4):478-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4040787
4. Taylor HM, Bingham JB. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal prostate biopsy. J Antimicrob Chemother 1997Feb;39(2):115-7. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9069529
5. Grabe M. Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis in urology. Curr Opin Urol 2001 Jan;11(1):81-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148751
6. Grabe M. Controversies in antibiotic prophylaxis in urology. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2004 Mar;23 Suppl 1:S17-S23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15037324
7. Naber KG, Hofstetter AG, Brühl P, et al. Guidelines for perioperative prophylaxis in interventions of the urinary and the male genital tract. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2001 Apr;17(4):321-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11295416

8. Societé Francaise d'Anesthésie et de Réanimation (SFAR). (Recommendations for antibacterial prophylaxis in surgery. Actualisation 1999). Pyrexie 1999;3:21-30. [Article in French]
9. Bootsma AM, Laguna Pes MP, Geerlings SE, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis in urologic procedures: a systematic review. Eur Urol, 2008 Dec. 54(6): 1270-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423974
10. Bjerklund-Johansen TE, Naber K, Tenke P. The Paneuropean prevalence study on nosocomial urinary tract infections. European Association of Urology, Vienna, Austria, 24-27 March, 2004. www.uroweb.org/peap
11. Horan TC, Gaynes RP. Surveillance of nosocomial infections. In: Mayhall CG (ed). *Hospital epidemiology and infection control*. 3rd edn. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 2004: pp. 1659-1702.
12. Association Française d'Urologie et Société de Pathologie Infectieuse de Langue Française. [Nosocomial urinary tract infections in adults.] [Article in French] www.urofrance.org
13. Cruse PJ, Foord R. The epidemiology of wound infection. A 10-year prospective of 62,939 wounds. Surg Clin North Am 1980 Feb;60(1):27-40. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7361226
14. Love TA. Antibiotic prophylaxis and urologic surgery. Urology 1985 Nov; 26(5 Suppl):2-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3904137
15. Wagenlehner FM, Wagenlehner C, Schinzel S, et al; Working Group 'Urological Infections' of German Society of Urology. Prospective, randomized, multicentric, open, comparative study on the efficacy of a prophylactic single dose of 500 mg levofloxacin versus 1920 mg trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole versus a control group in patients undergoing TUR of the prostate. Eur Urol 2005;47(4):549-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15774257
16. Grabe M, Forsgren A, Björk T, Hellsten S. Controlled trial of a short and a prolonged course with ciprofloxacin in patients undergoing transurethral prostatic surgery. Eur J Clin Microbiol 1987;6(1): 11-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3569248
17. Grabe M, Shortliffe L, Lobel B, et al. Risk factors. In: Naber KG, Pechère JC, Kumazawa J et al., eds. *Nosocomial and health* care associated infections in urology. Health Publications Ltd, 2001, pp. 35-57.
18. Adam D, Daschner F. [Prevention of infection in surgery: hygienic measurements and antibiotic prophylaxis.] Stuttgart: Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, 1993. [Article in German]
19. Blumenberg EA, Abrutyn E. Methods for reduction of UTI. Curr Opin Urol 1997;7:47-51.
20. Mignard JP for the Comité de Formation Continue, Association Francaise d'Urologie. [Sterilisation and disinfection of instruments.] Progrès en Urologie 2004;14 (Suppl 1):1049-92. [Article in French]
21. Burke JF. The effective period of preventive antibiotic action in experimental incision and dermal lesion. Surgery 1961 Jul;50:161-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16722001
22. Classen DC, Evans RS, Pestotnik SL, et al. The timing of prophylactic administration of antibiotics and the risk of surgical-wound infection. N Engl J Med 1992 Jan;326(5):281-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1728731
23. Bates T, Siller G, Crathern BC, et al. Timing of prophylactic antibiotics in abdominal surgery: trial of a pre-operative versus an intra-operative first dose. Br J Surg 1989 Jan;76(1):52-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2645013
24. Bergamini TM, Polk HC Jr. The importance of tissue antibiotic activity in the prevention of operative wound infection. J Antimicrob Chemother 1989 Mar;23(3):301-13. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2659564
25. Kahlmeter G. Prevalence and antimicrobial susceptibility of pathogens in uncomplicated cystitis in Europe. The ECO.SENS study. Int J Antimicrob Chemother 2003 Oct;22 Suppl 2:49-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14527771
26. Aron M, Rajeev TP, Gupta NP. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal needle biopsy of the prostate: a randomized controlled study. BJU Int 2000 Apr;85(6):682-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10759665
27. Webb NR, Woo HH. Antibiotic prophylaxis for prostate biopsy. BJU Int 2002 May;89(8):824-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11972504
28. Sabbagh R, McCormack M, Péloquin F, et al. A prospective randomized trial of 1-day versus 3-day antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal ultrasound guided prostate biopsy. Can J Urol 2004 Apr;11(2):2216-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15182413

29. Lindstedt S, Lindström U, Ljunggren E, et al. Single dose antibiotic prophylaxis in core prostate biopsy: Impact of Timing and identification of risk factors. Eur Urol 2006 Oct;50(4):832-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16750292
30. Enlund AL,Varenhorst E. Morbidity of ultrasound-guided transrectal core biopsy of the prostate without prophylactic antibiotic therapy. A prospective study in 415 cases. Br J Urol 1997 May;79(5):777-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158518
31. Larsson P, Norming U, Tornblom M, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for prostate biopsy: benefits and costs. Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 1999 Mar;2(2): 88-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12496844
32. Puig J, Darnell A, Bermudez P, et al. Transrectal ultrasound-guided prostate biopsy: is antibiotic prophylaxis necessary? Eur Radiol 2006 Apr;16(4):939-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16391904
33. Kapoor DA, Klimberg IW, Malek GH, et al. Single-dose oral ciprofloxacin versus placebo for prophylaxis during transrectal prostate biopsy. Urology 1998 Oct;52(4):552-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763070
34. Isen K, Kupeli B, Sinik Z, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal biopsy of the prostate: a prospective randomized study of the prophylactic use of single dose oral fluoroquinolone versus trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole. Int Urol Nephrol 1999;31(4):491-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10668944
35. Crawford ED, Haynes AL, Jr., et al. Prevention of urinary tract infection and sepsis following transrectal prostatic biopsy. J Urol 1982 Mar;127(3):449-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6895918
36. Melekos MD. Efficacy of prophylactic antimicrobial regimens in preventing infectious complications after transrectal biopsy of the prostate. Int Urol Nephrol 1990;22(3):257-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2210982
37. Yamamoto S, Ishitoya S, Segawa T, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transrectal prostate biopsy: a prospective randomized study of tosufloxacin versus levofloxacin. Int J Urol 2008 Jul;15(7):604-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18462354
38. Schaeffer AJ, Montorsi F, Scattoni V, et al. Comparison of a 3-day with a 1-day regimen of an extended-release formulation of ciprofloxacin as antimicrobial prophylaxis for patients undergoing transrectal needle biopsy of the prostate. BJU Int 2007 Jul;100(1):51-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17552953
39. Briffaux R, Merlet B, Normand G, et al, [Short or long schemes of antibiotic prophylaxis for prostate biopsy. A multicentre prospective randomised study]. Prog Urol 2009 Jan;19(1):39-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135641
40. Shandera KC, Thibault GP, Deshon GE, Jr. Efficacy of one dose fluoroquinolone before prostate biopsy. Urology 1998 Oct;52(4):641-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763085
41. Griffith BC, Morey AF, Ali-Khan MM, et al. Single dose levofloxacin prophylaxis for prostate biopsy in patients at low risk. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1021-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187213
42. Kraklau DM, Wolf JS Jr. Review of antibiotic prophylaxis recommendations for office based urologic procedures. Tech Urol 1999 Sep;5(3):123-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10527253
43. Wilson L, Ryan J, Thelning C, et al. Is antibiotic prophylaxis required for flexible cystoscopy? A truncated randomized double-blind controlled trial. J Endourol 2005 Oct;19(8):1006-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16253070
44. Latthe PM, Foon R, Toozs-Hobson P. Prophylactic antibiotics in urodynamics: a systematic review of effectiveness and safety. Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(3):167-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17849482
45. Clark KR, Higgs MJ. Urinary infection following out-patient flexible cystoscopy. Br J Urol1990 Nov; 66(5):503-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249120
46. Almallah YZ, Rennie CD, Stone J, et al. Urinary tract infection and patient satisfaction after flexible cystoscopy and urodynamic evaluation. Urology 2000 Jul;56(1):37-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10869618
47. Burke DM, Shackley DC, O'Reilly PH.The community-based morbidity of flexible cystoscopy. BJU Int 2002 Mar;89(4):347-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11872022

48. Johnson MI, Merrilees D, Robson WA, et al. Oral ciprofloxacin or trimethoprim reduces bacteriuria after flexible cystoscopy. BJU Int 2007 Oct;100(4):826-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17822463
49. Jimenez Cruz JF, Sanz Chinesta S, Otero G, et al. [Antimicrobial prophylaxis in urethrocystoscopy. Comparative study]. Actas Urol Esp 1993 Mar;17(3):172-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8506770
50. MacDermott JP, Ewing RE, Somerville JF, et al. Cephradine prophylaxis in transurethral procedures for carcinoma of the bladder. Br J Urol 1988 Aug;62(2):136-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3044484
51. Rane A, Cahill D, Saleemi A, et al. The issue of prophylactic antibiotics prior to flexible cystoscopy. Eur Urol 2001 Feb;39(2):212-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11223682
52. Manson AL. Is antibiotic administration indicated after outpatient cystoscopy. J Urol 1988 Aug;140(2):316-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3398127
53. Karmouni T, Bensalah K, Alva A, et al. [Role of antibiotic prophylaxis in ambulatory cystoscopy]. Prog Urol 2001 Dec;11(6):1239-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11859658
54. Tsugawa M, Monden K, Nasu Y, et al. Prospective randomized comparative study of antibiotic prophylaxis in urethrocystoscopy and urethrocystography. Int J Urol 1998 Sep;5(5):441-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9781431
55. Cundiff GW, McLennan MT, Bent AE. Randomized trial of antibiotic prophylaxis for combined urodynamics and cystourethroscopy. Obstet Gynecol 1999;93(5 Pt 1):749-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10912979
56. Logadottir Y, Dahlstrand C, Fall M, et al. Invasive urodynamic studies are well tolerated by the patients and associated with a low risk of urinary tract infection. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2001 Dec;35(6):459-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11848424
57. Upton JD, Das S. Prophylactic antibiotics in transurethral resection of bladder tumors: are they necessary? Urology 1986 May;27(5):421-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3518183
58. Delavierre D, Huiban B, Fournier G, et al. [The value of antibiotic prophylaxis in transurethral resection of bladder tumors. Apropos of 61 cases]. Prog Urol 1993 Aug-Sep;3(4):577-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8401618
59. Grabe M. Antimicrobial agents in transurethral prostatic resection. J Urol 1987 Aug;138(2):245-52. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3298693
60. Qiang W, Jianchen W, MacDonald R, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for transurethral prostatic resection in men with preoperative urine containing less than 100,000 bacteria per ml: a systematic review. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1175-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758736
61. Berry A, Barratt A. Prophylactic antibiotic use in transurethral prostatic resection: a meta-analysis. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):571-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792921
62. Dasgupta R, Grabe M. Preoperative antibiotics before endourologic surgery: current recommendations. J Endourol 2009 Oct;23:1567-70
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19785548
63. Fourcade RO. Antibiotic prophylaxis with cefotaxime in endoscopic extraction of upper urinary tract stones: a randomized study. The Cefotaxime Cooperative Group. J Antimicrob Chemother 1990 Sep;26 Suppl A:77-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2228847
64. Knopf HJ, Graff HJ, Schulze H. Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis in ureteroscopic stone removal. Eur Urol, 2003.;44(1):115-8.
65. Hendrikx AJ, Strijbos WE, de Knijff DW, et al. Treatment for extended-mid and distal ureteral stones: SWL or ureteroscopy? Results of a multicenter study. J Endourol 1999;13(10):727-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10646679
66. Rao PN, Dube DA, Weightman NC, et al. Prediction of septicaemia following endourological manipulation for stones in the upper urinary tract. J Urol 1991;146:955-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1895450

67. Charton M, Vallancien G, Veillon B, et al. Urinary tract infection in percutaneous surgery for renal calculi. J Urol 1986 Jan;135(1):15-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3510316
68. Osman M, Wendt-Nordahl G, Heger K, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy with ultrasonographyguided renal access: experience from over 300 cases. BJU Int 2005 Oct;96(6):875-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16153221
69. Dogan HS, Sahin A, Cetinkaya Y, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis in percutaneous nephrolithotomy: prospective study in 81 patients. J Endourol 2002 Nov;16(9):649-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12490017
70. Mariappan P, Smith G, Bariol SV, et al. Stone and pelvic urine culture and sensitivity are better than bladder urine as predictors of urosepsis following percutaneous nephrolithotomy: a prospective clinical study. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1610-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821509
71. Charton M, Vallancien G, Veillon B, et al. Use of antibiotics in the conjunction with extracorporeal lithotripsy. Eur Urol 1990;17(2):134-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2178940
72. Deliveliotis C, Giftopoulos A, Koutsokalis G, et al. The necessity of prophylactic antibiotics during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Int Urol Nephrol 1997;29(5):517-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9413755
73. Dincel C, Ozdiler E, Ozenci H, et al. Incidence of urinary tract infection in patients without bacteriuria undergoing SWL: comparison of stone types. J Endourol 1998 Feb;12(1):1-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9531141
74. Claes H, Vandeursen R, Baert L. Amoxycillin/clavulanate prophylaxis for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy - a comparative study. J Antimicrob Chemother, 1989 Nov;24 Suppl B:217-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2691484
75. Gattegno B, Sicard F, Alcaidinho D, et al. [Extracorporeal lithotripsy and prophylactic antibiotic therapy]. Ann Urol (Paris) 1988;22(2):101-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3382159
76. Pettersson B, Tiselius HG. Are prophylactic antibiotics necessary during extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy? Br J Urol 1989 May;63(5):449-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2659132
77. Knipper A, Bohle A, Pensel J, et al. [Antibiotic prophylaxis with enoxacin in extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy]. Infection 1989;17 Suppl 1:S37-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2807562
78. Bierkens AF, Hendrikx AJ, Ezz el Din KE, et al. The value of antibiotic prophylaxis during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in the prevention of urinary tract infections in patients with urine proven sterile prior to treatment. Eur Urol 1997;31(1):30-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9032531
79. Pearle MS, Roehrborn CG. Antimicrobial prophylaxis prior to shock wave lithotripsy in patients with sterile urine before treatment: a meta-analysis and cost-effectivness analysis. Urology 1997 May;49(5):679-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9145970
80. Steiner T, Traue C, Schubert J. [Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis in transperitoneal tumor nephrectomy: does it lower the rate of clinically significant postoperative infections?]. Urologe A 2003 Jan;42(1):34-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12574881
81. Montgomery JS, Johnston WK, 3rd, Wolf JS, Jr. Wound complications after hand assisted laparoscopic surgery. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2226-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280775
82. Pessaux P, Atallah D, Lermite E, et al. Risk factors for prediction of surgical site infections in “clean surgery”. Am J Infect Control 2005 Jun;33(5):292-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947746
83. Kiddoo DA, Wollin TA, Mador DR. A population based assessment of complications following outpatient hydrocelectomy and spermatocelectomy. J Urol 2004 Feb;171(2 Pt 1):746-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713801
84. Swartz MA, Morgan TM, Krieger JN. Complications of scrotal surgery for benign conditions. Urology 2007 Apr;69(4):616-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445635

85. Stranne J, Aus G, Hansson C, et al. Single-dose orally administered quinolone appears to be sufficient antibiotic prophylaxis for radical retropubic prostatectomy. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2004;38(2):143-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15204401
86. Terai A, Ichioka K, Kohei N, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis in radical prostatectomy: 1-day versus 4-day treatments. Int J Urol 2006 Dec;13(12):1488-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17118023
87. Takeyama K, Takahashi S, Maeda T, et al. Comparison of 1-day, 2-day, and 3-day administration of antimicrobial prophylaxis in radical prostatectomy. J Infect Chemother 2007 Oct;13(5):320-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17982721
88. Sakura M, Kawakami S, Yoshida S, et al. Prospective comparative study of single dose versus 3-day administration of antimicrobial prophylaxis in minimum incision endoscopic radical prostatectomy. Int J Urol 2008 Apr;15(4):328-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18380822
89. Richter S, Lang R, Zur F, et al. Infected urine as a risk factor for postprostatectomy wound infection. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1991 Mar;12(3):147-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2022859
90. Takeyama K, Matsukawa M, Kunishima Y, et al. Incidence of and risk factors for surgical site infection in patients with radical cystectomy with urinary diversion. J Infect Chemother 2005 Aug;11(4):177-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16133708
91. Hara N, Kitamura Y, Saito T, et al. Perioperative antibiotics in radical cystectomy with ileal conduit urinary diversion: efficacy and risk of antimicrobial prophylaxis on the operation day alone. Int J Urol 2008 Jun;15(6):511-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18422576
92. Studer UE, Danuser H, Merz VW, et al. Experience in 100 patients with an ileal low pressure bladder substitute combined with an afferent tubular isoperistaltic segment. J Urol 1995 Jul;154(1):49-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7776455
93. Mangram AJ, Horan TC, Pearson ML, et al. Guidelines for Prevention of Surgical Site Infection, 1999. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. Am J Infect Control 1999 Apr;27(2):97-132. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10196487
94. Kabalin JN, Kessler R. Infectious complications of penile prosthesis surgery. J Urol 1988 May;139(5):953-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3361672
95. Radomski SB, Herschorn S. Risk factors associated with penile prosthesis infection. J Urol 1992 Feb;147(2):383-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1732599
96. Mould JW, Carson CC. Infectious complications of penile prostheses. Infections in Urology 1989;139:50-2.
97. Carson CC. Diagnosis. treatment and prevention of penile prosthesis infection. Int J Impot Res 2003 Oct;15 Suppl 5:S139-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14551594

16. APPENDICES

16.1 Criteria for the diagnosis of UTI, as modified according to IDSA/European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases guidelines (1-3)

Category	Description	Clinical features	Laboratory investigations
1	Acute uncomplicated UTI in women; acute uncomplicated cystitis in women	Dysuria, urgency, frequency, suprapubic pain, no urinary symptoms in 4 weeks before this episode	> 10 WBC/mm^3 > 10^3 cfu/mL*
2	Acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis	Fever, chills, flank pain; other diagnoses excluded; no history or clinical evidence of urological abnormalities (ultrasonography, radiography)	> 10 WBC/mm^3 > 10^4 cfu/mL*
3	Complicated UTI	Any combination of symptoms from categories 1 and 2 above; one or more factors associated with a complicated UTI (see text)	> 10 WBC/mm^3 > 10^5 cfu/mL* in women > 10^4 cfu/mL* in men, or in straight catheter urine in women
4	Asymptomatic bacteriuria	No urinary symptoms	> 10 WBC/mm^3 > 10^5 cfu/mL* in two consecutive MSU cultures > 24 h apart
5	Recurrent UTI (antimicrobial prophylaxis)	At least three episodes of uncomplicated infection documented by culture in past 12 months: women only; no structural/functional abnormalities	< 10^3 cfu/mL*

All pyuria counts refer to unspun urine.
**Uropathogen in MSU culture.*

16.1.1 ***References***

1. Rubin RH, Shapiro ED, Andriole VT, et al. Evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of urinary tract infection. Infectious Diseases Society of America and the Food and Drug Administration. Clin Infect Dis 1992 Nov;15 Suppl 1:S216-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1477233
2. Rubin RH, Shapiro ED, Andriole VT, et al, with modifications by a European Working Party (Norrby SR). General guidelines for the evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of UTI. Taufkirchen, Germany: The European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases, 1993; pp. 294-310.
3. Naber KG. Experience with the new guidelines on evaluation of new anti-infective drugs for the treatment of urinary tract infections. Int J Antimicrob Agents 1999 May;11(3-4):189-96; discussion 213-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10394969

16.2 Recommendations for antimicrobial therapy in urology

Diagnosis	Most frequent pathogen/species	Initial, empirical antimicrobial therapy	Therapy duration
Cystitis acute, uncomplicated	• *E. coli* • *Klebsiella* • *Proteus* • Staphylococci	• TMP-SMX[1] • Nitrofurantoin • Fosfomycin trometamol • Pivmecillinam Alternative: • Fluoroquinolone[2,3]	3 days (5-)7 days 1 day (3-)5 days (1-)3 days
Pyelonephritis acute, uncomplicated	• *E. coli* • *Proteus* • *Klebsiella* • Other enterobacteria • Staphylococci	• Fluoroquinolone[2] • Cephalosporin (group 3a) Alternatives: • Aminopenicillin/BLI • Aminoglycoside	7-10 days
UTI with complicating factors	• *E. coli* • Enterococci • *Pseudomonas* • Staphylococci	• Fluoroquinolone[2] • Aminopenicillin/BLI • Cephalosporin (group 2) • Cephalosporin (group 3a) • Aminoglycoside In case of failure of initial therapy within 1-3 days or in clinically cases: Anti-*Pseudomonas* active: • Fluoroquinolone, if not used initially • Acylaminopenicillin/BLI • Cephalosporin (group 3b) • Carbapenem • ± Aminoglycoside In case of Candida: • Fluconazole • Amphotericin B	3-5 days after defervescence or control/elimination of complicating factor
Nosocomial UTI	• *Klebsiella* • *Proteus*		
Pyelonephritis severe acute, complicated	• *Enterobacter* • Other enterobacteria • *(Candida)*		
Prostatitis acute, chronic	• *E. coli* • Other enterobacteria • *Pseudomonas* • Enterococci Chronic: • Staphylococci • *Chlamydia* • *Ureaplasma* • *E. coli* • Other enterobacteria After urological interventions - multi-resistant pathogens: • *Pseudomonas* • *Proteus* • *Serratia* • *Enterobacter*	• Fluoroquinolone[2] Alternative in acute bacterial prostatitis: • Cephalosporin (group 3a/b) In case of *Chlamydia* or *Ureaplasma*: • Doxycycline • Macrolide • Cephalosporin (group 3a/b) • Fluoroquinolone[2] • Anti-*Pseudomonas* active acylaminopenicillin/BLI • Carbapenem • ± Aminoglycoside	Acute: 2-4 weeks Chronic: 4-6 weeks or longer 3-5 days after defervescence or control/elimination of complicating factor
Epididymitis Ureaplasma: Acute			
Urosepsis			

[1]Only in areas with resistance rate < 20% (for E. coli).

[2]Fluoroquinolone with mainly renal excretion (see text).

[3]Avoid Fluoroquinolones in uncomplicated cystitis whenever possible.

16.3 Recommendations for antimicrobial prescription in renal failure

Antibiotic	GFR (mL/min)			Comments
	Mild 50-20	**Moderate** 20-10	**Severe** < 10	
*Aciclovir	normal dose every 12 h	normal dose every 24 h	50% of normal dose every 24 h	Give post-HD
Aciclovir po	normal	Herpes simplex: normal Herpes zoster: 800 mg Total Dissolved Solids tds	Herpes simplex: 200 mg bid Herpes zoster: 800 mg bd	Give post-HD
Amikacin	5-6 mg/kg 12 h	3-4 mg/kg 24 h HD: 5mg/kg post HD and monitor levels	2 mg/kg 24-48 h	Give post-HD Monitor pre- and 1 h post-dose levels after 3rd dose and adjust dose as required
Amoxicillin po	normal	normal	250 mg 8 h (normal)	Give post-HD
Amphotericin	normal	normal	normal	
(Liposonal + lipid complex)	Amphotericin is highly NEPHROTOXIC. Consider using liposomal/lipid complex amphotericin. Daily monitoring of renal function (GFR) essential.			
Ampicillin IV	normal	250-500 mg 6 h	250 mg 6 h (500 mg 6 h)	Give post-HD
Benzylpenicillin	normal	75%	20-50% Max. 3.6 g/day (1.2 g qds)	Give post-HD Refer to microbiology for dosing in SBE
Caspofungin	normal	normal	normal	
Cefotaxime	normal	normal	1 g stat then 50%	Give post-HD
Cefradine	normal	Normal	250 mg 6 h	Give post-HD
Ceftazidime	1 g 12 h	1 g 24 h	500 mg 24 h (1 g 24 h)	Give post-HD
Ceftriaxone	normal	normal	normal Max. 2 g/day	
Cefuroxime IV	normal	750 mg-1.5 g 12 h	750 mg 24 h (750 mg 12 h)	Give post-HD
Ciproflazin IV + po	normal	50%	50%	
Clarithromycin IV + po	normal	normal	50%	Give post-HD
Clindamycin IV + po	normal	normal	normal	
Co-amoxiclav IV (Augmentin)	normal	1.2 stat then 50% 12 h (1.2 g 12 h)	1.2 stat then 50% 24 h (1.2 g stat then 600 mg 12 h)	Give post-HD
Co-amoxiclav po (Augmentin)	normal	375-625 mg 12 h (375 mg 8 h)	375 mg 12 h (375 mg 8 h)	Give post-HD
*Co-trimoxazole IV	normal	Normal for 3/7 then 50%	50%	Give post-HD

Doxycycline	normal	normal	normal	All other tetracyclines contraindicated in renal impairment
Erythromycin IV + po	normal	normal	normal Max. 1.5 g/day (500 mg qds)	
*Ethambutol	normal	24-36 h	48 h	Give post-HD
	Monitor levels if GFR < 30mL/min (contact Mirco)			
Flucloxacillin IV + po	normal	normal	normal Max. 4 g/day	
Fluconazole	normal	normal	50%	Give post-HD No adjustments in single-dose therapy required
*Flucytosine	50 mg/kg 12 h	50 mg/kg 24 h	50 mg/kg stat then dose according to levels	Give post-HD Levels should be monitored predialysis.
Fusidic acid	normal	normal	normal	
1) Gentamicin ONCE DAILY	**GFR 10-40 mL/min** 3 mg/kg stat (max. 300 mg) Check pre-dose levels 18-24 h after first dose Redose only when level < 1 mg/L		**GFR < 10 mL/min** 2 mg/kg (max. 200 mg) redose according to levels	BOTH METHODS Give post-HD Monitor blood levels:
2) Gentamicin CONVENTIONAL	80 mg 12 h	80 mg 48 h	80 mg 24 h HD: 1-2 mg/kg Post-HD: redose according to levels	Once daily: pre only Conventional: pre and 1 h post level required.
Imipenem	500 mg 8-12 h	250-500 mg bid	Risk of convulsions - use Meropenem: *see below*	Give post-HD
Isoniazid	normal	normal	200-300 mg 24 h	Give post-HD
Itraconazole	normal	normal	normal	
Levoflaxacin	500 mg stat then 250 mg bid**	500 mg stat then 125 mg bid**	500 mg stat then 125 mg od	**Applies if full dose is 500 mg bid If full dose is 500 mg od, five reduced doses daily
Linezolid	normal	normal	normal	Give post-HD
Meropenem	12 h	50% 12 h	50% 24 h	Give post-HD
Metronidazole	normal	normal	12 h (normal)	Give post-HD
Nitrofurantoin	Do **NOT** use in renal impairment			
Penicillin V	normal	normal	normal	Give post-HD
Piperacillin/ Tazobactam (Tazocin)	4.5 g 8 h	4.5 g 12 h	4.5 g 12 h	Give post-HD
Pyrazinamide	normal	normal	normal	
Rifampicin	normal	normal	50-100%	

*Teicoplanin	100% 48 h	100% 72 h	100% 72 h	Dose reduction after day 3 of therapy
Tetracycline	See **Doxycycline**			
Trimethoprim	normal	Normal for 3/7 then 50% 18 h	50% 24 h	Give post-HD
Vancomycin	1 g od Check pre-dose level before 3rd dose	1 g 48 h Check pre-dose level before 2nd dose	1 g stat (or 15 mg/kg, up to max. 2 g). Recheck level after 4-5 days ONLY give subsequent dose when level < 12mg/L	Monitor pre-dose levels and adjust dose as required
Vorinconazole	normal	normal	normal	Give post HD

bid = twice daily; HD = haemodialysis; od = once daily; po = by mouth; qid = four times daily; SBE = subacute bacterial endocarditis; tds = total dissolved solids; qds = Quantum Dots.

16.4 Recommendations for perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis in urology

Procedure	Pathogens (expected)	Prophylaxis	Antibiotics	Remarks
Diagnostic procedures				
Transrectal biopsy of the prostate	Enterobacteriaceae Anaerobes?	All patients	Fluoroquinolones TMP ± SMX Metronidazole?[1]	Single dose effective in low-risk patients. Consider prolonged course in high-risk patients
Cystoscopy Urodynamic examination	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd Generation	Consider in high-risk patients
Ureteroscopy	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd generation	Consider in high-risk patients
Endourological surgery and SWL				
SWL	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI[a]	
SWL with stent or nephrostomy tube	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI[a]	Risk patients
Ureteroscopy for uncomplicated distal stone	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI Fluoroquinolones	Consider in risk patients
Ureteroscopy of proximal or impacted stone and percutaneous stone extraction	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI Fluoroquinolones	Short course Length to be determined Intravenous suggested at operation

TURP	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	All patients	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Low-risk patients and small-size prostate probably do not require prophylaxis
TUR of bladder tumour	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci	No	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Consider in high-risk patients and large tumours
Open or laparoscopic urological surgery				
Clean operations	Skin-related pathogens, e.g. staphylococci Catheter-associated uropathogens	No		Consider in high-risk patients Short postoperative catheter requires no treatment
Clean-contaminated (opening of urinary tract)	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Staphylococci	Recommended	TMP ± SMX Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Aminopenicillin/BLI	Single perioperative course
Clean-contaminated/ contaminated (use of bowel segments)	Enterobacteriaceae Enterococci Anaerobes Skin-related bacteria	All patients	Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Metronidazole	As for colonic surgery
Implant of prosthetic devices	Skin-related bacteria, e.g. staphylococci	All patients	Cephalosporin 2nd or 3rd generation Penicillin (penicillinase stable)	

[1]No evidence for metronidazole in core biopsy of the prostate.

[a] = gram-negative bacteria excluding Pseudomonas aeruginosa.

16.5 CPSI

from: Litwin MS, McNaughton-Collins M, Fowler FJ Jr, Nickel JC, Calhoun MA, Pontari MA, Alexander RB, Farrar JT, O'Leary MP. The National Institute of Health chronic prostatitis symptom index: development and validation of new outcome measure. Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. J Urol 1999:162;369-375.

NIH-Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index (NIH-CPSI)

Pain or Discomfort

1. In the last week, have you experienced any pain or discomfort in the following areas?

	Yes	No
a. Area between rectum and testicles (perineum)	☐ 1	☐ 0
b. Testicles	☐ 1	☐ 0
c. Tip of penis (not related to urination)	☐ 1	☐ 0
d. Below your waist, in your pubic or bladder area	☐ 1	☐ 0

2. In the last week, have you experienced:

	Yes	No
a. Pain or burning during urination?	☐ 1	☐ 0
b. Pain or discomfort during or after sexual climax (ejaculation)?	☐ 1	☐ 0

3. How often have you had pain or discomfort in any of these areas over the last week?

☐ 0 Never
☐ 1 Rarely
☐ 2 Sometimes
☐ 3 Often
☐ 4 Usually
☐ 5 Always

4. Which number best describes your AVERAGE pain or discomfort on the days that you had it, over the last week?

☐ 0 ☐ 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐ 7 ☐ 8 ☐ 9 ☐ 10

NO PAIN — PAIN AS BAD AS YOU CAN IMAGINE

Urination

5. How often have you had a sensation of not emptying your bladder completely after you finished urinating over the last week?
☐ 0 Not at all
☐ 1 Less than 1 time in 5
☐ 2 Less than half the time
☐ 3 About half the time
☐ 4 More than half the time
☐ 5 Almost always

6. How often have you had to urinate again less than two hours after you finished urinating, over the last week?

☐ 0 Not at all
☐ 1 Less than 1 time in 5
☐ 2 Less than half the time
☐ 3 About half the time
☐ 4 More than half the time
☐ 5 Almost always

Impact of Symptoms

7. How much have your symptoms kept you from doing the kinds of things you would usually do over the last week?

☐ 0 None
☐ 1 Only a little
☐ 2 Some
☐ 3 A lot

8. How much did you think about your symptoms, over the last week?

☐ 0 None
☐ 1 Only a little
☐ 2 Some
☐ 3 A lot

Quality of life

9. If you were to spend the rest of your life with your symptoms, just the way they have been during the last week, how would you feel about that?

☐ 0 Delighted
☐ 1 Pleased
☐ 2 Mostly satisfied
☐ 3 Mixed (about equally satisfied and dissatisfied)
☐ 4 Mostly dissatisfied
☐ 5 Unhappy
☐ 6 Terrible

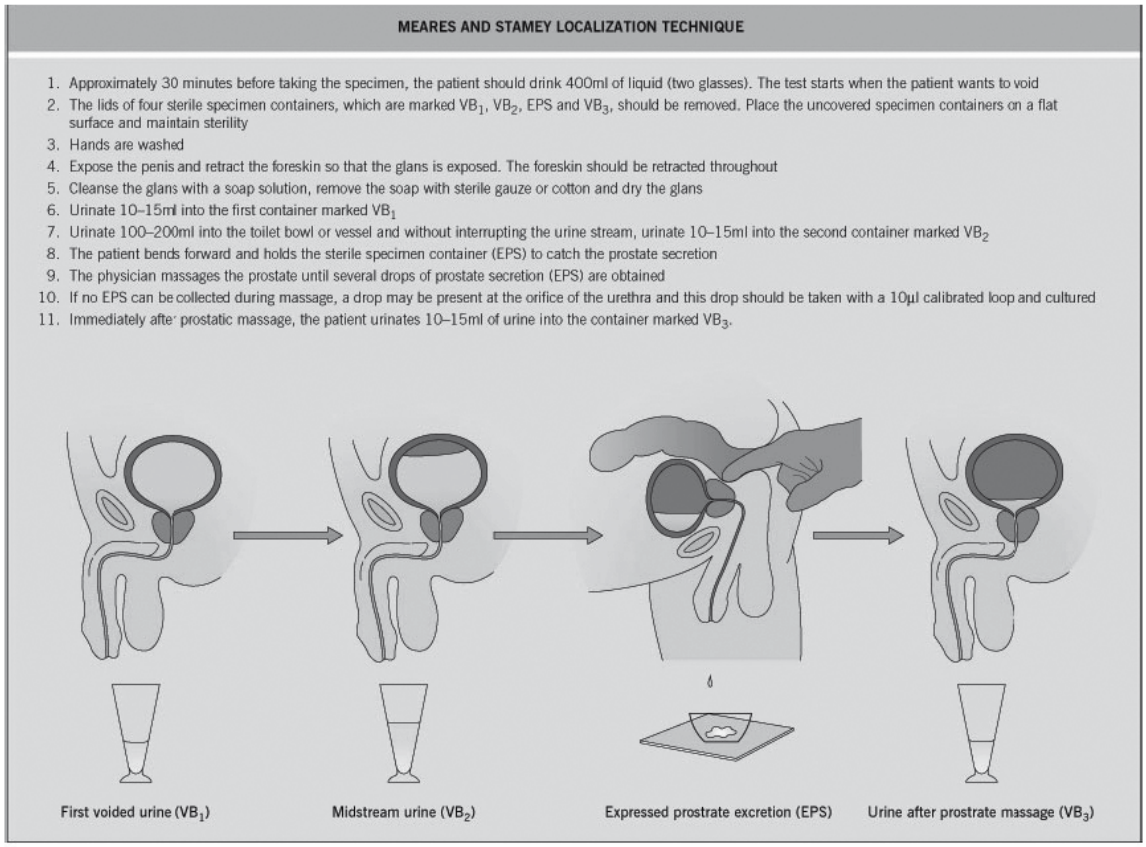
Scoring the NIH-CPSI Prostatitis Symptom Index Domain

Pain:
Total of items 1a,1b,1c,1d,2a,2b,3 and 4 = _____

Urinary Symptoms:
Total of items 5 and 6 = _____

Quality of Life Impact:
Total of items 7,8, and 9 = _____

16.6 Meares & Stamey localisation technique*



* Naber KG, Weidner W. Prostatitis, epididymitis, orchitis. In: Armstrong D, Cohen J, eds. Infectious Diseases. London: Mosby, Harcourt Publishers Ltd, 1999, pp. 1-58.

16.7 Antibacterial agents

Groups	Agents
Trimethoprim-sulphonamide combinations	Trimethoprim, co-trimoxazole, co-tetroxoprime (trimethoprim plus sulfametrol)
Fluoroquinolones[1,2]	
Group 1	Norfloxacin, pefloxacin
Group 2	Enoxacin, fleroxacin, lomefloxacin, ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin
Group 3	Levofloxacin
Group 4	Gatifloxacin, moxifloxacin
Macrolides	Erythromycin, roxithromycin, clarithromycin, azithromycin
Tetracyclines	Doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline
Fosfomycin	Fosfomycin sodium, fosfomycin trometamol3
Nitrofuran[4]	Nitrofurantoin
Penicillins	
Benzylpenicillin	Penicillin G
Phenoxypenicillins	Penicillin V, propicillin, azidocillin
Isoxazolylpenicillins	Oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, flucloxacillin
Aminobenzylpenicillins[5]	Ampicillin, amoxycillin, bacampicillin
Aminopenicillins/BLI[6]	Ampicillin/sulbactam, amoxycillin/clavulanic acid[7]

Acylaminopenicillins	Mezlocillin, piperacillin
±BLI[6]	Piperacillin/tazobactam, sulbactam[6]
Cephalosporins[1]	
Group 1 (oral)	Cefalexin, cefadroxil, cefaclor
Group 2 (oral)	Loracarbef, cefuroxime axetile
Group 3 (oral)	Cefpodoxime proxetile, cefetamet pivoxil, ceftibuten, cefixime
Group 1 (parenteral)	Cefazolin
Group 2 (parenteral)	Cefamandole, cefuroxime, cefotiam
Group 3a (parenteral)	Cefodizime, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone
Group 3b (parenteral)	Cefoperazone, ceftazidime
Group 4 (parenteral)	Cefepime, cefpirome
Group 5 (parenteral)	Cefoxitin
Monobactams	Aztreonam
Carbapenems	Imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem
Aminoglycosides	Gentamicin, netilmicin, tobramycin, amikacin
Glycopeptides	Vancomycin, teicoplanin
Oxazolidones	Linezolid

[1]Classification according to the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy (1-3).
[2]Only in adults, except pregnant and lactating women.
[3]Only in acute, uncomplicated cystitis as a single dose.
[4]Contraindicated in renal failure and in newborns.
[5]In cases of resistance, the pathogen is most likely to be a β-lactamase producer.
[6]BLIs can only be used in combination with β-lactam antibiotics.
[7]In solution, storage instability.

16.7.1 ***Penicillins***

Penicillin G and the oral penicillins, penicillin V, propicillin and azidocillin, have a high intrinsic activity against streptococci and pneumococci. However, the resistance rate of pneumococci may vary considerably between countries. In Germany, penicillin resistance in pneumococci is still < 1%. Because of their narrow spectrum of activity, these penicillins do not have any role in the treatment of urogenital infections.

16.7.1.1 Aminopenicillins

Aminopenicillins, e.g. ampicillin and amoxycillin, have a broader spectrum of activity. Apart from streptococci and pneumococci, they cover enterococci, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Haemophilus parainfluenzae, Listeria sp*., *E. coli*, *Pr. mirabilis*, and *Salmonella* and *Shigella* sp. However, resistance may occur.

Aminopenicillins are sensitive to β-lactamases. They are therefore not sufficiently active against certain species, such as staphylococci, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *Bacteroides fragilis* and many enterobacteria. This gap in the spectrum of activity can be closed by the use of a BLI (clavulanic acid, or sulbactam). Amoxycillin/clavulanic acid and ampicillin/sulbactam are available on the market as fixed combinations. Indications for aminopenicillins and their combinations with a BLI are mild respiratory tract infections, UTIs, as well as infections of the skin and soft tissues.

16.7.1.2 Acylaminopenicillins

The acylaminopenicillins include apalcillin, azlocillin, mezlocillin and piperacillin. They are characterised by their high activity against enterococci, enterobacteria and *Pseudomonas* (weaker activity of mezlocillin). Acylaminopenicillins are hydrolyzed by β-lactamases and are therefore active only against β-lactamase-producing strains of staphylococci, *B. fragilis*, and if used in combination with a BLI, some of the enterobacteria. The acylaminopenicillin/BLI combination provides a broad spectrum of activity and may be used for a large number of indications, including complicated UTIs and urosepsis. A selection of free combinations with sulbactam is available, or there is the fixed combination of tazobactam and piperacillin, which has the advantages of being easy to use and a well-documented database drawn from qualified clinical studies.

16.7.1.3 Isoxazolylpenicillins

Isoxazolylpenicillins are available as parenteral drugs with oxacillin and flucloxacillin, and have a narrow

spectrum of activity. Their indications are limited to infections caused by *S. aureus*. Due to their suboptimal pharmacokinetic parameters, isoxazolylpenicillins are preferably used in milder infections of the skin and soft tissues, and of the ear, nose and throat area. They play no role in the treatment of UTIs, but may be used for staphylococcal abscesses in the genital area.

16.7.2 ***Parenteral cephalosporins***

According to the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy (1), the parenteral cephalosporins have been classified into five groups, according to their spectrum of activity (Table 16.7.2).

16.7.2.1 Group 1 cephalosporins

Group 1 cephalosporins (cefazolin and cefazedone) are very active against streptococci and staphylococci (including penicillin-G-resistant strains). They have only weak activity against Gram-negative microorganisms. Like all cephalosporins, cefazolin is not active against enterococci and MRSA and methicillin-resistant coagulase-negative staphylococci (MRSE).

16.7.2.2 Group 2 cephalosporins

Compared with Group 1 cephalosporins, Group 2 cephalosporins, e.g. cefuroxime, cefotiame and cefamandole, exhibit markedly improved activity against Gram-negative pathogens and maintain high activity against staphylococci.

16.7.2.3 Group 3a cephalosporins

Group 3a cephalosporins have high activity against Gram-negative bacteria and less activity against staphylococci. They differ mainly in their pharmacokinetic characteristics.

16.7.2.4 Group 3b cephalosporins

Group 3b cephalosporins, e.g. ceftazidime and cefoperazone, have added high anti-pseudomonal activity. However, the activity of cefoperazone against P. aeruginosa is markedly inferior to that of the other substances in this group.

16.7.2.5 Group 4 cephalosporins

Group 4 cephalosporins, e.g. cefepime and cefpirome, have a comparable activity against Gram-negative bacteria, but are more stable against extended-spectrum β-lactamases, and a better activity against Gram-positive bacteria.

16.7.2.6 Group 5 cephalosporins

The Group 5 cephalosporins are characterised by their anti-anaerobic activity. These cephalosporins have superior activity against Gram-negative bacteria compared with Group 1 and 2 cephalosporins, but most of them are weaker than Group 3 drugs. At present, cefoxitin is the only drug of that group available on the market in some countries.

Table 16.7.2: Classification of parenteral cephalosporins (2)

Group	Generic names	Features of the group
Group 1 (1st generation)	Cefazolin Cefazedone	• Active against Gram-positive and partly against Gram-negative bacteria • Stable against staphylococcal penicillinases • Unstable against β-lactamases of Gram-negative bacteria
Group 2 (2nd generation)	Cefuroxime Cefotiame Cefamandole	• Activity against Gram-positive bacteria good, but weaker than Group 1 • Activity against Gram-negative bacteria superior to that of Group 1 • Stable against staphylococcal penicillinases • Limited stability against β-lactamases of Gram-negative bacteria
Group 3a (3rd generation)	Cefotaxime Ceftriaxone Ceftizoxime Cefmenoxime Cefodizime	• Activity against Gram-negative bacteria clearly superior to that of Groups 1 and 2 • Stable against numerous β-lactamases of Gram-negative bacteria • Microbiologically less active against staphylococci
Group 3b (3rd generation)	Ceftazidime	• Spectrum of antibacterial activity similar to that of Group 3a
	Cefoperazone	• Additional activity against P. aeruginosa
Group 4	Cefepime Cefpirome	• Spectrum of antibacterial activity similar to that of Group 3a
Group 5	Cefoxitin	• Additional activity against P. aeruginosa • Higher stability against beta-lactamases than group 3b • With anti-anaerobic activity • Superior activity against Gram-negative bacteria than Group 1 and 2 • Weaker than Group 3

16.7.3 ***Oral cephalosporins***

Oral cephalosporins are classified into three groups, based on their spectrum of activity, according to the recommendations of the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy (1) (Table 16.7.3).

Table 16.7.3: Classification of oral cephalosporins (1)

Oral cephalosporins	Drug names
Group 1	Cefalexin Cefadroxil Cefaclor
Group 2	Cefprozil Loracarbef Cefuroxime axetile
Group 3	Cefpodoxime proxetile Cefetamet pivoxile Ceftibuten Cefixime

16.7.3.1 Group 1 oral cephalosporins

Group 1 oral cephalosporins include cefalexin, cefadroxil and cefaclor. They are mainly active against Gram-positive cocci with limited activity against *H. influenzae* (cefaclor). Their main indications are skin and soft tissue infections and, with limitations, respiratory tract infections. Their activity against enterobacteria is limited, therefore, they can only be recommended for the treatment or prophylaxis of uncomplicated UTIs in children or

pregnant women, for whom the use of other antibiotics is limited.

16.7.3.2 Group 2 oral cephalosporins

The activity of cefprozil against *S. aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae* and *Mor. catarrhalis* is somewhat higher than that of cefaclor. However, cefprozil is less active than cefaclor against *E. coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* and *Pr. mirabilis*.

Loracarbef is structurally close to cefaclor. In contrast to cefaclor, it is stable in solution, has better pharmacokinetics and a broader antibacterial spectrum. However, its activity against staphylococci is lower than that of cefaclor. The main indications are respiratory tract, skin and soft-tissue infections and uncomplicated UTIs.

Cefuroxime axetile has a higher β-lactamase stability and thus a broader spectrum than others in this group. It can be used mainly for bacterial infections of the upper (including otitis media) and lower respiratory tract, for skin and soft-tissue infections, and UTIs.

16.7.3.3 Group 3 oral cephalosporins

Group 3 oral cephalosporins have a higher activity and a broader spectrum against enterobacteria than group 2 cephalosporins. In contrast, their activity against Gram-positive bacteria is lower. Against staphylococci, the activity of cefpodoxime proxetil is intermediate, whereas cefetamet pivoxil, ceftibuten and cefixime are inactive.

The main indications for the oral cephalosporins of group 3 are complicated infections of the respiratory tract (provided that staphylococci can be excluded) and infections due to enterobacteria, e.g. UTIs or infections in immunocompromised patients. Group 3 oral cephalosporins are also suitable for oral switch therapy, i.e. when initial parenteral therapy (using a parenteral group 3a cephalosporin) needs to be continued orally. In addition, cefixime is licensed also for treatment of gonorrhoea.

*16.7.4 **Monobactams***

Among the monobactams, only aztreonam is available. It is active only against Gram-negative aerobes. In this respect, its spectrum and activity are similar to those of the parenteral group 3b cephalosporins.

*16.7.5 **Carbapenems***

Carbapenems are broad-spectrum antibiotics with good activity against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, including anaerobes. They are preferably used in the treatment of mixed infections and in the initial therapy of life-threatening diseases, including urosepsis. Imipenem/cilastatin, meropenem and doripenem are also active against P. aeruginosa. However, ertapenem is not active against P. aeruginosa. Ertapenem has a longer half-life than imipenem/cilastatin and meropenem, and is therefore, suitable for once-daily dosing.

*16.7.6 **Fluoroquinolones***

Non-fluorinated quinolones are no longer recommended because of their poor antibacterial activity. According to the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy, the fluoroquinolones are classified into four groups, based on their spectrum of activity, their pharmacokinetics and indications (Table 16.7.4).

Table 16.7.4: Classification of fluoroquinolones, as modified according to the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy (3)

Generic name	**Trade name* / features of the group**
Group 1	**Indications essentially limited to UTIs in some countries, e.g. Germany**
	Norfloxacin
	Pefloxacin**
Group 2	**Broad indications for systemic use**
	Enoxacin
	Fleroxacin***
	Lomefloxacin
	Ofloxacin
	Ciprofloxacin

Group 3	Improved activity against Gram-positive and atypical pathogens
	Levofloxacin
Group 4	Improved activity against Gram-positive and atypical pathogens and anaerobes
	Gatifloxacin
	Moxifloxacin

** Listed according to increasing in vitro activity (minimum inhibitory concentration) against indicative pathogens.*
*** In France and other countries, pefloxacin is also available for systemic use.*
**** Investigated in acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis, UTIs, gonorrhoea and gastrointestinal infections.*

16.7.6.1 Group 1 fluoroquinolones
The indications for group 1 fluoroquinolones are limited to UTIs in some countries, e.g. Germany. In France and some other countries, pefloxacin is also used for systemic oral and parenteral use. Norfloxacin is not available as parenteral antibiotic.

16.7.6.2 Group 2 fluoroquinolones
Group 2 fluoroquinolones includes fluoroquinolones for systemic use with a broad spectrum of indications. These include infections of the urinary tract, respiratory tract, skin and soft tissues, bones and joints, as well as systemic infections and even sepsis. Group 2 fluoroquinolones exhibit good activity against enterobacteria and *H. influenzae*, with less activity against staphylococci, pneumococci, enterococci and atypical pathogens, e.g. *Chlamydia, Legionella* and *Mycoplasma* sp. Their activity against *P. aeruginosa* varies, with ciprofloxacin being most active in vitro. In addition, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin and fleroxacin are also available for parenteral use.

16.7.6.3 Group 3 fluoroquinolones
The main difference in the spectra of activity of group 3 fluoroquinolones (levofloxacin) and group 4 fluoroquinolones (gatifloxacin and moxifloxacin) is that the former have a higher intrinsic activity against Gram-positive pathogens, such as staphylococci, streptococci, pneumococci and enterococci.

However, group 3 and group 4 fluoroquinolones have comparable activity against Gram-negative pathogens. In addition, they have improved activity against the so-called atypical pathogens, such as *Chlamydia, Mycoplasma* and *Legionella* sp. In addition, group 4 fluoroquinolones have improved anti-anaerobic activity.

The only group 3 fluoroquinolone available for parenteral use is levofloxacin; the left enantiomer of the ofloxacin racemate. The main indications for levofloxacin are respiratory tract infections, and, due to its high renal elimination rate, UTIs, as well as skin and soft-tissue infections.

Among group 4 fluoroquinolones, gatifloxacin (not on the market in Europe), moxifloxacin and trovafloxacin have been licensed. However, in June 1999, trovafloxacin was taken off the market because of severe side effects. Thus, to date, no parenteral fluoroquinolone of this group has been made available.

Apart from respiratory tract infections, these broad-spectrum fluoroquinolones are appropriate for treatment of skin, soft-tissue and intra-abdominal infections, and oral treatment of gynaecological infections. However, final judgement of their position in the treatment of these diseases is not yet possible. Gatifloxacin has the highest renal excretion (about 84%) after oral administration. It is therefore also the most suitable for the treatment of uncomplicated and complicated UTI. Urinary excretion of moxifloxacin after oral administration is only in the range of about 20%.

16.7.7 ***Co-trimoxazole***
The treatment of UTIs is the main indication for trimethoprim alone or in combination with a sulphonamide, e.g. sulphamethoxazole. Trimethoprim with or without sulphamethoxazole can also be used for the prophylaxis of recurrent cystitis. The resistance rate against *E. coli* can vary between countries. It is therefore not recommended for empirical therapy of acute uncomplicated cystitis or pyelonephritis, when the resistance rate in the area is > 10-20% (4). In complicated UTIs, co-trimoxazole should only be used in accordance with sensitivity testing. Trimethoprim, especially in combination with sulphamethoxazole, can lead to severe although rare adverse events, such as Lyell syndrome, Stevens-Johnson syndrome and pancytopenia.

16.7.8 ***Fosfomycin***
Fosfomycin is active against Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria. The sodium salt is only for parenteral use. Fosfomycin trometamol is licensed for single-dose (3 g) treatment of uncomplicated cystitis in women.

16.7.9 ***Nitrofurantoin***

The antibacterial activity of nitrofurantoin is limited to the urinary tract because of its low serum concentrations. It is active against *E. coli*, *Citrobacter* and most strains of *Klebsiella* and *Enterobacter*, whereas *Providencia* and *Serratia* are mostly resistant. *Proteus, P. aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter* are almost always resistant. It is active against Gram-positive cocci, e.g. enterococci and staphylococci.

It is suitable only for the treatment or prophylaxis of uncomplicated UTIs. Short-term therapy for this indication has not been proven in sufficiently large studies. Little development of resistance has been observed over many years. Treatment can lead to severe, though rare adverse events, such as chronic desquamative interstitial pneumonia with fibrosis.

16.7.10 ***Macrolides***

Erythromycin is the only macrolide that is available for both oral and parenteral use. The newer macrolides, roxithromycin, clarithromycin and azithromycin, are better tolerated than erythromycin, but can only be administered orally. The macrolides have good activity against streptococci, pneumococci, *Bordetella pertussis*, and *Chlamydia, Mycoplasma* and *Legionella* sp. The macrolides are not active against Gram-negative rods, therefore, their use in the treatment of UTIs is limited to special indications, such as non-gonococcal urethritis due to *C. trachomatis*.

16.7.11 ***Tetracyclines***

The resistance against doxycycline and tetracycline of pneumococci, streptococci, *H. influenzae* and *E. coli* shows marked regional differences. Tetracyclines are therefore only suitable for initial empirical therapy if the local resistance situation is sufficiently well known and justifies their use. As a result of their high activity against the so-called atypical pathogens (*Legionella, Chlamydia* and *Mycoplasma* sp.), they may be used as alternative antibiotics in infections caused by these microorganisms, e.g. in non-gonococcal urethritis due to *C. trachomatis*.

16.7.12 ***Aminoglycosides***

Aminoglycosides are for parenteral use only. These drugs have a narrow therapeutic window. Their effective levels of activity are close to toxic borderline concentrations, making a strict therapeutic indication mandatory. With few exceptions (e.g. treatment of UTIs), aminoglycosides should only be used in combination with another appropriate antibiotic. Ideal partners are β-lactam antibiotics, because this combination has a marked synergistic effect against certain bacterial species. Streptomycin is one of the older aminoglycosides and is used only for the treatment of tuberculosis.

Newer aminoglycosides include netilmicin, gentamicin, tobramycin and amikacin. They have good activity against enterobacteria and *Pseudomonas* (especially tobramycin). Their activity against streptococci, anaerobes and *H. influenzae* is not satisfactory. Resistance data for tobramycin, gentamicin and netilmicin are almost identical, whereas the resistance situation is more favourable for amikacin against many enterobacteria.

16.7.13 ***Glycopeptides***

The glycopeptides vancomycin and teicoplanin are active against Gram-positive pathogens, i.e. staphylococci (including oxacillin-resistant strains), streptococci, enterococci, *Clostridium difficile*, diphtheria bacteria and Gram-positive aerobes. They are inactive against Gram-negative pathogens. Their use is indicated:

- In infections caused by the above-mentioned pathogens in case of allergy against all other suitable antibiotics.
- In infections caused by ampicillin-resistant enterococci or oxacillin-resistant staphylococci, or multi-resistant corynebacteria.
- As an alternative, in oral form, to metronidazole for the treatment of pseudomembranous colitis. Due to the risk of selection of glycopeptide-resistant enterococci and staphylococci, the use of glycopeptides should be highly restricted. Similar to the aminoglycosides, glycopeptides have a narrow therapeutic window.

16.7.14 ***Oxazolidinones***

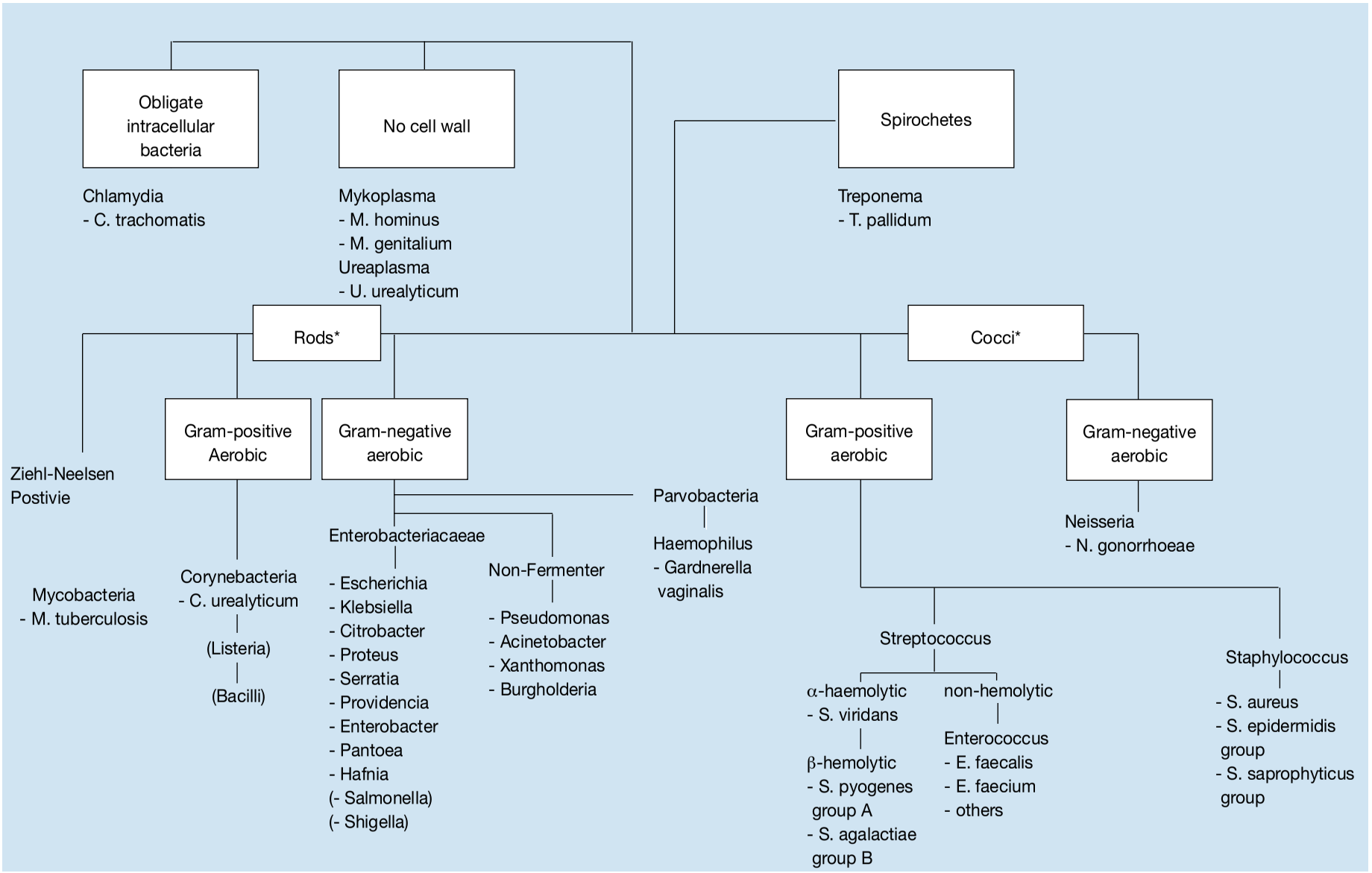
The only substance of this group is linezolid, which can be administered parenterally and orally. It has good activity against Gram-positive cocci, such as staphylococci, including methicillin (oxacillin)-resistant strains, enterococci, including vancomycin-resistant strains, and streptococci.

16.7.15 ***References***

1. Scholz H, Naber KG, and an expert group of the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy. [Classification of oral cephalosporins.] Chemotherapie Journal 1999;8:227-9. [Article in German]

2. Vogel F, Bodmann K-F and the expert group of the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy. [Recommendations for empiric parenteral initial therapy of bacterial infections in adults.] Chemotherapie Journal 2004;13:46-105. [Article in German]
3. Naber KG, Adam D, and an expert group of the Paul Ehrlich Society for Chemotherapy. [Classification of fluoroquinolones.] Chemotherapie Journal 1998;7:66-8. [Article in German]
4. Warren JW, Abrutyn E, Hebel JR, et al. Guidelines for antimicrobial treatment of uncomplicated acute bacterial cystitis and acute pyelonephritis in women. Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA). Clin Infect Dis 1999 Oct;29(4):745-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10589881

16.8 Relevant bacteria for urological infections



**Anaerobic bacteria not considered.*

17. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

ABU	asymptomatic bacteriuria
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ADPKD	adult dominant polycystic disease
APCKD	adult polycystic kidney disease
BLI	β-lactamase inhibitor
BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia
CPPS	chronic pelvic pain syndrome
CPSI	Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index
CT	computed tomography
CAUTIs	catheter-associated urinary tract infections
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid
DTPA	diethylenetriamine pentaacetate
EPS	expressed prostatic secretion
EUCAST	European Committee for Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing
G6PD	glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
IDSA	Infectious Diseases Society of America
IL	interleukin
IPCN	International Prostatitis Collaborative Network
IVU	intravenous urography
LUTS	lower urinary tract symptom
MAG-3	mercaptoacethylglycine
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRSA	methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus
MSU	mid-stream sample of urine
NCCLS	National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards
NIDDK	National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
NIH	National Institutes of Health
PCP	Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome
SMX	sulphamethoxazole
SSI	surgical site infection
STD	sexually transmitted disease
SWL	shockwave lithotripsy
TMP	trimethoprim
TNF	tumour necrosis factor
TRUS	transrectual ultrasound
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
US	ultrasonography
UTI	urinary tract infection
VB1	first-voided urine
VB2	mid-stream urine
VB3	voided bladder urine-3
VCU	voiding cysto-urethography
VUR	vesicoureteric reflux
WBC	white blood cells

Conflict of interest

All members of the Urological Infections guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the EAU Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the EAU. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Urinary Incontinence

M.G. Lucas, J.L.H.R. Bosch, F.R. Cruz, T.B. Madden, A. Nambiar, A. Neisius, R.S. Pickard, D.J.M.K. de Ridder, A. Tubaro, W.H. Turner

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Urinary incontinence (UI) is an extremely common complaint in every part of the world. It causes a great deal of distress and embarrassment, as well as significant costs, to both individuals and societies. Estimates of prevalence vary according to the definition of incontinence being used and the populations being studied. However, there is universal agreement about the importance of the problem, both in terms of human suffering and economic costs.

These new Guidelines from the European Association of Urology (EAU) Working Panel on Urinary Incontinence are written by urologists for urologists, and aim to provide sensible and practical guidance on the clinical problems of UI rather than an exhaustive narrative review. Such a review is already available elsewhere, as provided by the International Consultation on Incontinence (1), and so these Guidelines do not mention topics such as the causation, basic science, epidemiology and psychology of UI. The focus of these Guidelines is entirely on assessment and treatment reflecting clinical practice. The Guidelines also do not consider patients with UI caused by neurological disease, as this is covered by complementary EAU Guidelines (2).

The EAU Panel knew that they would find only a little evidence for some issues and a lot of evidence for others. This difference largely reflects the much greater research funding needed to produce the high-quality evidence required for regulatory submissions by the regulated (pharmaceutical) industries and their marketing strategies. The situation regarding published evidence for surgical devices is different, with much more surgical experimentation. However, despite the higher potential for harm, there are far fewer high-quality studies from which to derive clear evidence. There is a high potential for bias in this situation, and so the Panel has deliberately adjusted its expectation for quality evidence, depending on the domain of management being considered, and tried to reflect this in the text.

1.1 Methodology

The Panel decided to rewrite the existing EAU Guidelines on UI using a new methodological approach and to present them in a format that most closely reflected the approach to management of UI. The current Guidelines provide:

- A clear clinical pathway (algorithm) for common clinical problems. This can provide the basis for thinking through a patient's management and also for planning and designing clinical services.
- A brief but reliable summary of the current state of evidence on clinical topics, complete with references to the original text.
- Clear guidance on what to do or not to do, in most clinical circumstances. This should be particularly helpful in those areas of practice for which there is little or no published evidence.

*1.1.1 **PICO questions***

The 'PICO' (Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcome) framework was used to develop a series of clinical questions that would provide the basis of presentation of the guidelines (3,4). There are four elements to each clinical question:

- population;
- intervention;
- comparison;
- outcome.

The wording is important because it directs the subsequent literature research. For each element, the Panel listed every possible wording variation.

In these Guidelines, four traditional domains of urological practice are presented as separate chapters, namely assessment and diagnosis, conservative management, drug therapy and surgical treatments.

In this first edition of these new EAU Guidelines for Urinary Incontinence, the Panel has focused largely on the management of a 'standard' patient. The Panel has referred in places to patients with 'complicated incontinence', by which we mean patients with associated morbidity, a history of previous pelvic surgery, surgery for UI, radiotherapy and women with associated genitourinary prolapse. This first edition does not review the prevention of UI, the management of fistula, or the special problems of the frail elderly, but these issues will be fully addressed in future editions.

*1.1.2 **Search strategies***

A number of significant narrative reviews and major guidelines and systematic reviews have been produced within the last few years. It was agreed from the start that the literature searches carried out by these reviews

would be accepted as valid. Thus, for each PICO question, a search was carried out with a start date that was the same as the cut-off date for the search associated with the most recent systematic review for the PICO topic. This pragmatic selection approach, while being a compromise and open to criticism, made the task of searching the literature for such a large subject area possible within the available resources. For each section, the latest cut-off date for the relevant search is indicated.

Thus, for each PICO, a subsequent literature search was carried out (confined to Medline and Embase and to English language articles), which produced an initial list of abstracts (*see* Number of 'hits', Table 1). The abstracts were each assessed by two Panel members, who selected the studies relevant to the PICO question, and the full text for these was retrieved.

Table 1: Initial list of abstracts

Chapter	Latest 'cut-off' date for search	Number of 'hits'
Assessment and diagnosis	June 2010	1055
Conservative therapy	July 2010	1026
Drug therapy	February 2011	1162
Surgical therapy	May 2011	2191

Each PICO was then assigned to a Panel member, who read the paper and extracted the evidence for incorporation into standardised evidence tables, which are maintained online as an evidence resource for the Panel. This resource will continue to be available and will be continuously updated with each repeated review of the literature.

The existing evidence from previous systematic reviews and new evidence were then discussed, for each PICO in turn, at a Panel meeting before the Panel came to its conclusions. To help standardise the approach, modified process forms (data extraction and considered judgment) from the Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) were used.

The quality of evidence for each PICO is commented on in the text, which then leads into the development of an evidence summary. This aims to synthesise the important clinical messages from the available literature and is presented as a series of 'evidence summaries', which follow the standard for levels of evidence used by the EAU (Table 2).

From the evidence summaries, the Panel then produced a series of action-based recommendations graded according to EAU standards (Table 3). These grades aim to make it clear what the clinician should or should not do in clinical practice, not merely to comment on what they might do.

The Panel has tried to avoid extensive narrative text. Instead, algorithms are presented for both initial and specialised management of men and women with non-neurogenic UI. Each decision node of these algorithms is clearly linked back to the relevant evidence and recommendations.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the expert Panel at the time of writing. There remains a need for ongoing re-evaluation of the current guidelines by the Panel. However, following guidelines recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients; they aim to focus decisions. Clinical decisions must also take into account the patient's personal values, preferences and specific circumstances.

1.1.3 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 2), which is a modification of the system used by the Oxford Centre for Evidence Based Medicine (CEBM). A similar modification has been used for Guidelines recommendations. The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given. Diagnostic studies were assessed according to a similar modification of the CEBM evidence levels for diagnostic accuracy and prognosis.

Table 2: Level of evidence (LE)*

Type of evidence	LE
Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials.	1a
Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial.	1b
Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation.	2a
Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study.	2b
Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports.	3
Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities.	4

**Modified from Sackett et al. (5).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, there is not an automatic relationship between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation. The availability of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) may not necessarily translate into a Grade A recommendation if there are methodological limitations or a disparity in published results.

Alternatively, an absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a Grade A recommendation; if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus to support a high level recommendation, this can be made. In addition, there may be exceptional situations in which corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons. In this case, unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. Whenever this occurs, it has been clearly indicated in the text with an asterisk, as 'upgraded based on Panel consensus'. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence is a very important factor, but it has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and economic cost when a grade is assigned (6-8).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion.

Table 3: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Nature of recommendations	GR
Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.	A
Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.	B
Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.	C

**Modified from Sackett et al. (5).*

1.2 Publication history

The complete update in 2009 was largely a synthesis of ICUD and NICE and so was the 2010 edition. In 2011 an addendum was added on the use of drugs, now incorporated in the full text under Chapter 4. This 2012 edition is also partly based on ICUD and NICE but new searches were conducted from June 2008 to present. An addendum to the guidelines is provided on mixed urinary incontinence (see Appendix).

1.3 References

1. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, et al., eds. Incontinence. 4th International Consultation on Incontinence, Paris, July 5-8, 2008. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd, 2009. http://www.icud.info/incontinence.html
2. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.uroweb.org/fileadmin/tx_eauguidelines/2009/Trans/2009_Neurogenic_LUTS.pdf
3. Higgins JPT, Green S, eds. Cochrane Handbook for Systematic Reviews of Interventions 5.1.0 [updated March 2011]. www.cochrane.org/training/cochrane-handbook

4. Richardson WS, Wilson MS, Nishikawa J, et al. The well-built clinical question: a key to evidence-based decisions. ACP Journal Club 1995;123:A12-3.
5. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
6. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
7. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al; GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008 Apr 26;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
8. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18467413

1.4 Use in different healthcare settings and by healthcare professionals

The Guidelines have been written for urologists and for use in any healthcare setting in Europe. However, the Panel recognises that many different health professionals besides urologists use the Guidelines. The Panel also recognises that a patient's first point of contact may not always be a urologist, and that the healthcare professional delivering treatment, e.g. physiotherapy, may also not be a urologist. For this reason, some healthcare professionals may find that the Guidelines do not explain a particular topic in enough detail for their needs, e.g. delivery modalities for pelvic floor muscle training.

1.5 Terminology

Evidence summaries provide a succinct summary of what the currently available evidence tells us about an individual clinical question. They are presented according to the levels of evidence used by the EAU.

Recommendations have been deliberately written as 'action-based' sentences. The following words or phrases are used consistently throughout the Guidelines, as follows:

- **Consider** an action. This word is used when there is not enough evidence to say whether the action causes benefit or risk to the patient. However, in the opinion of the Panel, the action may be justified in some circumstances. Action is optional.
- **Offer** an action. This word is used when there is good evidence to suggest that the action is effective, or that, in the opinion of the Panel, it is the best action. Action is advisable.
- **Carry out (perform)** an action**. Do** something. This phrase is used when there is strong evidence that this is the only best action in a certain clinical situation. Action is mandatory.
- **Avoid** an action. This phrase is used when there is high-level evidence that the action is either ineffective or is harmful to the patient. Action is contraindicated.

2. ASSESSMENT AND DIAGNOSIS

2.1 History and physical examination

Taking a careful clinical history is fundamental to the clinical process. Despite the lack of formal evidence, there is universal agreement that taking a history should be the first step in the assessment of anyone with UI. The history should include details of the type, timing and severity of incontinence, associated voiding, and other urinary symptoms. The history should allow the UI to be categorised into stress, urgency or mixed. It should also identify patients who need rapid referral to a specialist. These include patients with associated pain, haematuria, a history of recurrent urinary tract infections (UTIs), pelvic surgery (particularly prostate surgery) or radiotherapy, constant leakage suggesting a fistula, voiding difficulty or suspected neurological disease. An obstetric and gynaecological history may help to understand the underlying cause and identify factors that may impact on treatment decisions. The patient should also be asked about comorbid conditions, as these may impact on symptoms of UI, or cause it, and details of current medications.

There is little evidence for the necessity to carry out a clinical examination. However, there is wide agreement that clinical examination is essential. In a patient with UI, this should include abdominal examination, to detect an enlarged bladder or other abdominal mass, and perineal and digital examination of the rectum

and/or vagina. Examining the perineum includes an assessment of oestrogen status in women and a careful assessment of any associated genitourinary prolapse. A cough test will often reveal stress incontinence, but only if the bladder contains urine during the examination. Pelvic floor contraction is assessed by means of digital vaginal examination. In men, it is essential to perform a digital examination of the rectum and prostatic assessment.

2.2 Patient questionnaires

Questionnaires may be symptom scores, symptom questionnaires, patient-reported outcome measures (PROMS) or health-related quality of life (HRQoL) measures. Questionnaires are widely used to record patients' symptoms, including their severity and impact on the patient, and have been used to monitor the symptom scores of individual patients or groups of patients over time, e.g. in the context of changes related to treatment. During the last 10 years, many questionnaires have been developed and studied, including ones specifically designed for lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), pelvic organ prolapse, faecal incontinence and both condition-specific quality of life (QoL) and generic QoL. The methodology for their development was reviewed in the 4th International Consultation on Incontinence (ICI) in 2008 (1).

*2.2.1 **Questions***

- In adults with UI, does assessment using either urinary symptom or QoL questionnaires improve the treatment outcome for UI?
- In adults with UI, does assessment of the patient perspective (concerns or expectations) improve patient outcomes, regarding either urinary symptoms or QoL, compared to no patient-reported assessment?

*2.2.2 **Evidence***

Although many studies have investigated the validity and reliability of questionnaires and PROMs, most have taken place in adults without UI. This greatly limits the extent to which results and conclusions from these studies can be applied in adults with UI.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no evidence that the use of either questionnaires or PROMs in the assessment of adults with UI has an influence on outcome.	4

*2.2.3 **Research priorities***

There is a lack of knowledge about whether using questionnaires to assess urinary symptoms or QoL helps to improve outcomes in adults with UI. Further research is needed to compare the use of questionnaires to assess urinary symptoms and/or QoL in addition to standard clinical assessment versus clinical measures alone. Patients should be closely involved in the design of such studies.

*2.2.4 **Reference***

1. Staskin D, Kelleher C, Avery K, et al: Committee 5B. Patient reported outcome assessment. In: Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, et al., editors. Incontinence. 4th International Consultation on Incontinence, Paris July 5-8, 2008. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd, 2009. http://www.icud.info/incontinence.html

2.3 Voiding dairies

Measurement of the frequency and severity of LUTS is an important step in the evaluation and management of lower urinary tract dysfunction, including UI. Voiding diaries are a semi-objective method of quantifying symptoms, such as daytime and night-time frequency, urgency, urgency urinary incontinence (UUI) and stress urinary incontinence (SUI) episodes. They also quantify urodynamic variables, such as voided volume and 24-hour or nocturnal total urine volume. Voiding diaries are also known as micturition time charts, frequency/volume charts and bladder diaries.

Any discrepancy between diary recordings and the patient rating of symptoms, e.g. frequency or UI, can be useful in patient management. In addition, voided volume measurement can be used to support diagnoses, such as overactive bladder (OAB) or polyuria. Diaries can also be used to monitor treatment response and are widely used in clinical trials as a semi-objective measure of treatment outcome.

*2.3.1 **Questions***

- In adults with UI, what is the reliability, the diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of a voiding diary,

compared to patient history or symptom score?
- How does the accuracy of a computerised voiding diary compare to a paper diary?

2.3.2 ***Evidence***

Two recent articles have suggested a consensus has been reached in the terminology used in voiding diaries (1,2):

- Micturition time charts record only the times of micturitions for a minimum of 24 continuous hours.
- Frequency volume charts record voided volumes and times of micturitions for a minimum of 24 hours.
- Bladder diaries include information on incontinence episodes, pad usage, fluid intake, degree of urgency and degree of incontinence.

Several studies have compared patients' preference for, and the accuracy of, electronic and paper voiding diaries in voiding dysfunction (3-7). Several studies have compared shorter (3 or 5 days) and longer diary durations (7 days) (8-14). The choice of diary duration appears to be based upon the possible behavioural therapeutic effect of keeping a diary rather than on validity or reliability.

Two studies have investigated the reproducibility of voiding diaries in both men and women (8,9). Further studies investigated the variability of diary data within a 24-hour period (15) and compared voided volumes recorded in diaries with those recorded on uroflowmetry (16). Other studies have investigated the correlation between data obtained from voided diaries and standard symptom evaluation (17-20).

One study investigated the effect of diary duration on the observed outcome of treatment of LUTS (21). Another study found that keeping a voiding diary had a therapeutic benefit (22).

In conclusion, voiding diaries give reliable data on lower urinary tract function. There remains a lack of consensus about how long a diary should be kept and how well diary data correlate with some symptoms.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Voiding diaries of 3-7 days duration are a reliable tool for quantifying mean voided volume, daytime and night-time frequency.	2b
Voiding diaries are sensitive to change and are a reliable measure of outcome.	2b

Recommendations	**GR**
Voiding diaries should be used in urinary incontinence to evaluate co-existing storage and voiding dysfunction in clinical practice and in research.	A
A diary duration of between 3 and 7 days is recommended.	B

2.3.3 ***References***

1. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Fall M, et al. The standardisation of terminology of lower urinary tract function: report from the Standardisation Sub-committee of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(2):167-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857671
2. Haylen BT, de Ridder D, Freeman RM, et al. An International Urogynecological Association (IUGA)/ International Continence Society (ICS) joint report on the terminology for female pelvic floor dysfunction. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):4-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19941278
3. Rabin JM, McNett J, Badlani GH. Computerized voiding diary. Neurourol Urodyn 1993;12(6):541-53; discussion 553-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8312939
4. Rabin JM, McNett J, Badlani GH. A computerized voiding diary. J Reprod Med 1996 Nov;41(11): 801-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8951128
5. Rabin JM, McNett J, Badlani GH. "Compu-Void II": the computerized voiding diary. J Med Syst 1996 Feb;20(1):19-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8708489
6. Quinn P, Goka J, Richardson H. Assessment of an electronic daily diary in patients with overactive bladder. BJU Int 2003 May;91(7):647-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12699477

7. Guan ZC, Wei BL, Meng ZW. [Development of remote wireless mobile voiding diary and a report of its objective voiding in 20 young people.] Beijing Da Xue Xue Bao 2010 Aug 18;42(4):476-9. [Chinese] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20721269
8. Nygaard I, Holcomb R. Reproducibility of the seven-day voiding diary in women with stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000;11(1):15-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10738929
9. Brown JS, McNaughton KS, Wyman JF, et al. Measurement characteristics of a voiding diary for use by men and women with overactive bladder. Urology 2003 Apr;61(4):802-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12670569
10. Locher JL, Goode PS, Roth DL, et al. Reliability assessment of the bladder diary for urinary incontinence in older women. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 2001 Jan;56(1):M32-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11193230
11. Homma Y, Ando T, Yoshida M, et al. Voiding and incontinence frequencies: variability of diary data and required diary length. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):204-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948713
12. Ku JH, Jeong IG, Lim DJ, et al. Voiding diary for the evaluation of urinary incontinence and lower urinary tract symptoms: prospective assessment of patient compliance and burden. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(4):331-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15227650
13. Gordon D, Groutz A. Evaluation of female lower urinary tract symptoms: overview and update. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2001 Oct;13(5):521-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547034
14. Addla S, Adeyoju A, Neilson D. Assessment of reliability of 1-day, 3-day and 7-day frequency volume charts. Eur Urol Suppl 2004;2:130, abstract no. 510. http://www.europeanurology.com/article/S1569-9056(04)90507-6/pdf/
15. Ertberg P, Moller LA, Lose G. A comparison of three methods to evaluate maximum bladder capacity: cystometry, uroflowmetry and a 24-h voiding diary in women with urinary incontinence. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2003 Apr:82(4):374-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12716323
16. Fitzgerald MP, Brubaker L. Variability of 24-hour voiding diary variables among asymptomatic women. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):207-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478137
17. van Brummen HJ, Heintz AP, van der Vaart CH. The association between overactive bladder symptoms and objective parameters from bladder diary and filling cystometry. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(1):38-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14694455
18. Stav K, Dwyer PL, Rosamilia A. Women overestimate daytime urinary frequency: the importance of the bladder diary. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):2176-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19296975
19. Fayyad AM, Hill SR, Jones G. Urine production and bladder diary measurements in women with type 2 diabetes mellitus and their relation to lower urinary tract symptoms and voiding dysfunction. Neurourol Urodyn 2010 Mar;29(3):354-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19760759
20. Homma Y, Kakizaki H, Yamaguchi O, et al. Assessment of overactive bladder symptoms: comparison of 3-day bladder diary and the overactive bladder symptoms score. Urology. 2011 Jan;77(1):60-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20951412
21. Wein AJ, Khullar V, Wang JT, et al. Achieving continence with antimuscarinic therapy for overactive bladder: effects of baseline incontinence severity and bladder diary duration. BJU Int 2007 Feb;99(2):360-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17155987
22. Burgio KL, Locher JL, Goode PS, et al. Behavioral vs drug treatment for urge urinary incontinence in older women: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 1998 Dec 16;280(23):1995-2000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9863850

2.4 Urinalysis and urinary tract infection

Urinary incontinence is known to occur more commonly in women with UTIs and is also more likely in the first few days following an acute infection (1). In contrast with symptomatic UTI, asymptomatic bacteriuria appears to have little influence on UI. A study carried out in nursing home residents showed that the severity of UI was unchanged after eradication of bacteriuria (2).

Reagent strip ('dipstick') urinalysis may detect infection, proteinuria, haematuria and glycosuria:

- Nitrite and leucocyte esterase may indicate a UTI.
- Protein may indicate infection and/or renal disease.
- Blood may indicate malignancy (or infection).
- Glucose may indicate diabetes mellitus.

It is generally agreed that dipstick urinalysis provides sufficient screening information in both men and women with UI. Microscopy and other tests may be necessary to confirm any abnormalities identified on dipstick analysis. Urinalysis is usually carried out on a mid-stream urine specimen, but analysis of initial voided and terminal urine samples may be required for assessment of urethral and prostate infections.

*2.4.1 **Questions***

- In adults with UI, what is the diagnostic accuracy of urinalysis for UTIs?
- What is the benefit on UI of treating UTIs?

*2.4.2 **Evidence***

In both men and women with UI, diagnosis of a UTI by positive leucocytes or nitrites using urine culture as the reference standard had a low sensitivity and very high specificity (3,4). A negative urine dipstick test in patients with UI therefore excludes a UTI with a high degree of certainty.

There is a consensus that urinalysis should be a standard part of the basic evaluation of UI irrespective of gender, age or aetiology.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no evidence that a UTI causes UI.	4
There is no evidence that treating a UTI cures UI.	4
The presence of a symptomatic UTI worsens symptoms of UI.	3
Elderly nursing home patients with established UI do not benefit from treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria.	2

Recommendations	**GR**
Do urinalysis as a part of the initial assessment of a patient with urinary incontinence.	A
In a patient with urinary incontinence, treat a symptomatic urinary tract infection appropriately *(see 'EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections' [5]).*	A
Do not treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in elderly patients to improve urinary incontinence.	B

*2.4.3 **References***

1. Moore EE, Jackson SL, Boyko EJ, et al. Urinary incontinence and urinary tract infection: temporal relationships in postmenopausal women. Obstet Gynecol 2008 Feb;111(2 Pt 1):317-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18238968
2. Ouslander JG, Schapira M, Schnelle JF, et al. Does eradicating bacteriuria affect the severity of chronic urinary incontinence in nursing home residents? Ann Intern Med 1995 May 15;122(10):749-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7717597
3. Semeniuk H, Church D. Evaluation of the leukocyte esterase and nitrite urine dipstick screening tests for detection of bacteriuria in women with suspected uncomplicated urinary tract infections. J Clin Microbiol 1999 Sep;37(9):3051-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10449505
4. Buchsbaum GM, Albushies DT, Guzick DS. Utility of urine reagent strip in screening women with incontinence for urinary tract infection. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Dysfunct 2004 Nov-Dec;15(6):391-3; discussion 393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15278254
5. Grabe M, Bjerklund-Johansen TE, Botto H, et al. EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections. http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/

2.5 Post-voiding residual volume

Post-voiding residual (PVR) volume (also known as residual urine, bladder residual) is the amount of urine that remains in the bladder after voiding. It indicates poor voiding efficiency, which may result from a number of contributing factors. It is important because it may worsen symptoms and, more rarely, may be associated with upper urinary tract dilatation and renal insufficiency. Both bladder outlet obstruction and detrusor underactivity contribute to the development of PVR.

Post-voiding residual can be measured by catheterisation or ultrasound (US). The prevalence of PVR is uncertain, partly because of the lack of a standard definition of an abnormal PVR volume.

*2.5.1 **Question***

In adults with UI, what are the diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of measurements of PVR?

*2.5.2 **Evidence***

Most studies investigating PVR have not included patients with UI. Although some studies have included women with UI and men and women with LUTS, they have also included children and adults with neurogenic UI. In general, the data on PVR can be applied with caution to adults with non-neurogenic UI. The results of studies investigating the best method of measuring PVR (1-6) have led to the consensus that US measurement of PVR is better than measurement using catheterisation.

Several studies have evaluated PVR in different subjects and patients cohorts (7-17). In peri- and post-menopausal women without significant LUTS or pelvic organ symptoms, 95% of women had a PVR < 100 mL (7). A comparison of women with and without LUTS suggested that symptomatic women had a higher incidence of elevated PVR (9). In women with UUI, a PVR > 100 mL was found in 10% of cases (8). Other research has found that a high PVR is associated with pelvic organ prolapse (> stage II), voiding symptoms and an absence of SUI (10,11,13,15). In women with SUI, the mean PVR was 38.5 mL measured by catheterisation and 62.8 mL measured by US, with 15.9% of women having a PVR > 100 mL (8). Overall, women with symptoms of lower urinary tract or pelvic floor dysfunction and pelvic organ prolapse have a higher risk of elevated PVR compared to asymptomatic subjects.

There is evidence to suggest that elevated PVR should be particularly looked for in patients with voiding symptoms (18-21). There is no evidence to define a threshold between normal and abnormal PVR values. Expert opinion has therefore been used to produce a definition of elevated PVR values (22-25).

There is a lack of evidence to support the routine measurement of PVR in patients with UI (26-30).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Ultrasonography provides an accurate estimate of post-voiding residual.	1b
Lower urinary tract dysfunction is associated with a higher risk of post-voiding residual compared to controls.	2
Elevated post-voiding residual is not a risk factor for poor outcome in the management of SUI.	2

Recommendations	**GR**
Post-voiding residual should be measured by ultrasound.	A
Measure post-voiding residual in patients with urinary incontinence who have voiding dysfunction.	B
Measure post-voiding residual when assessing patients with complicated urinary incontinence.	C
Post-voiding residual should be monitored in patients receiving treatments that may cause or worsen voiding dysfunction.	B

*2.5.3 **Research priority***

Further research is required to evaluate whether combining non-invasive tests provides greater diagnostic accuracy and prognostic value than tests viewed in isolation.

2.5.4 ***References***

1. Goode PS, Locher JL, Bryant RL, et al. Measurement of postvoid residual urine with portable transabdominal bladder ultrasound scanner and urethral catheterization. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000;11(5):296-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11052565
2. Ouslander JG, Simmons S, Tuico E, et al. Use of a portable ultrasound device to measure post-void residual volume among incontinent nursing home residents. J Am Geriatr Soc 1994 Nov;42(11): 1189-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7963206
3. Nygaard IE. Postvoid residual volume cannot be accurately estimated by bimanual examination. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1996;7(2):74-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8798090
4. Griffiths DJ, Harrison G, Moore K, et al. Variability of post-void residual urine volume in the elderly. Urol Res 1996;24(1):23-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8966837
5. Stoller ML, Millard RJ. The accuracy of a catheterized residual urine. J Urol 1989 Jan;141(1):15-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2908944
6. Marks LS, Dorey FJ, Macairan ML, et al. Three-dimensional ultrasound device for rapid determination of bladder volume. Urology 1997 Sep;50(3):341-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9301695
7. Gehrich A, Stany MP, Fischer JR, et al. Establishing a mean postvoid residual volume in asymptomatic perimenopausal and postmenopausal women. Obstet Gynecol 2007 Oct;110(4):827-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17906016
8. Tseng LH, Liang CC, Chang YL, et al. Postvoid residual urine in women with stress incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(1):48-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17563112
9. Haylen BT, Law MG, Frazer M, et al. Urine flow rates and residual urine volumes in urogynecology patients. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1999;10(6):378-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10614974
10. Fitzgerald MP, Jaffar J, Brubaker L. Risk factors for an elevated postvoid residual urine volume in women with symptoms of urinary urgency, frequency and urge incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2001;12(4):237-9; discussion 239-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11569651
11. Lukacz ES, DuHamel E, Menefee SA, et al. Elevated postvoid residual in women with pelvic floor disorders: prevalence and associated risk factors. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2007 Apr;18(4):397-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16804634
12. Wu J, Baguley IJ. Urinary retention in a general rehabilitation unit: prevalence, clinical outcome, and the role of screening. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2005 Sep;86(9):1772-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1618941
13. Milleman M, Langenstroer P, Guralnick ML. Post-void residual urine volume in women with overactive bladder symptoms. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1911-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540753
14. de Waal KH, Tinselboer BM, Evenhuis HM, et al. Unnoticed post-void residual urine volume in people with moderate to severe intellectual disabilities: prevalence and risk factors. J Intellect Disabil Res 2009 Sep;53(9):772-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19627424
15. Haylen BT, Lee J, Logan V, et al. Immediate postvoid residual volumes in women with symptoms of pelvic floor dysfunction. Obstet Gynecol 2008;111(6):1305-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18515513
16. Lowenstein L, Anderson C, Kenton K, et al. Obstructive voiding symptoms are not predictive of elevated postvoid residual urine volumes. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Jun;19(6): 801-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074067
17. Gupta A, Taly AB, Srivastava A, et al. Urodynamic profile in myelopathies: a follow-up study. Ann Indian Acad Neurol 2009 Jan;12(1):35-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20151007
18. Fowler CJ, Panicker JN, Drake M, et al. A UK consensus on the management of the bladder in multiple sclerosis. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2009 May;80(5):470-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19372287

19. Jacobsen SJ, Girman CJ, Lieber MM. Natural history of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6 Suppl 1):5-16; discussion 16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11750242
20. Dorflinger A, Monga A. Voiding dysfunction. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2001 Oct;13(5):507-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547032
21. Twiss C, Triaca V, Anger J, et al. Validating the incontinence symptom severity index: a self-assessment instrument for voiding symptom severity in women. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2384-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19758631
22. Fantl JA, Newman DK, Colling J. Urinary incontinence in adults: acute and chronic management: 1996 update. AHCPR Clinical Practice Guidelines. No. 2. Rockville (MD): Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR), March 1996. Report No. 96-0682.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1302135
23. AUA guideline on management of benign prostatic hyperplasia (2003). Chapter 1: Diagnosis and treatment recommendations. J Urol 2003 Aug;170(2 Pt 1):530-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12853821
24. Abrams P, Griffiths D, Hoefner K, et al. The urodynamic assessment of lower urinary tract symptoms. In: Chatelain C, Denis L, Foo K, et al., editors. Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd., 2001, pp. 227-81.
25. Madersbacher S, Alivizatos G, Nordling J, et al. EAU 2004 guidelines on assessment, therapy and follow-up of men with lower urinary tract symptoms suggestive of benign prostatic obstruction (BPH guidelines). Eur Urol 2004 Nov;46(5):547-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15474261
26. Nager CW, FitzGerald M, Kraus SR, et al. Urodynamic measures do not predict stress continence outcomes after surgery for stress urinary incontinence in selected women. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1470-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295276
27. Bates TS, Sugiono M, James ED, et al. Is the conservative management of chronic retention in men ever justified? BJU Int 2003 Oct;92(6):581-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14511038
28. Vesely S, Knutson T, Fall M, et al. Clinical diagnosis of bladder outlet obstruction in men with lower urinary tract symptoms: reliability of commonly measured parameters and the role of idiopathic detrusor overactivity. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(4):301-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12808704
29. Athanasopoulos A, Mitropoulos D, Giannitsas K, et al. Safety of anticholinergics in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2008 Jul;7(4):473-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18613810
30. Sahai A, Sangster P, Kalsi V, et al. Assessment of urodynamic and detrusor contractility variables in patients with overactive bladder syndrome treated with botulinum toxin-A: is incomplete bladder emptying predictable? BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(5):630-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18990156

2.6 Urodynamics

In clinical practice, 'urodynamics' is generally used as a collective term for all tests of bladder and urethral function. These Guidelines will review both non-invasive estimation of urine flow, i.e. uroflowmetry, and invasive tests, including multichannel cystometry, ambulatory monitoring and videourodynamics, and different tests of urethral function, such as urethral pressure profilometry, Valsalva leak point pressure estimation, and retrograde urethral resistance measurement.

Multichannel cystometry, ambulatory monitoring and videourodynamics aim to observe the effects on intravesical and intra-abdominal pressures while reproducing a patient's symptoms. Bladder filling may be artificial or physiological and voiding is prompted. Any incontinence observed may be categorised as SUI, detrusor overactivity (DO) incontinence, a mixture of SUI/DO incontinence, or, rarely, urethral relaxation incontinence. A test may fail to reproduce a patient's symptoms because of poor diagnostic accuracy or because the symptoms are not directly attributable to a urodynamically measurable phenomenon. Despite these uncertainties, urodynamic testing is still used to establish an uncertain 'diagnosis', to direct decisions about treatment and to provide prognostic information.

*2.6.1 **Question***

In adults with UI, what is the diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of uroflowmetry, i.e. the measurement of maximum urinary flow rate (Q_{max}) and urodynamic testing?

2.6.2 ***Evidence***

2.6.2.1 Repeatability

Many studies have examined test-retest reliability for a range of urodynamic parameters, including eight studies on cystometry/pressure flow studies (1-8). No published studies on the reliability of ambulatory monitoring were found.

Various techniques are used to measure urethral profilometry. Individual techniques are generally reliable in terms of repeatability, but results may vary between different techniques, so that one type of test cannot be compared meaningfully to another (9-11).

The measurement of abdominal or Valsalva leak point pressures has not been standardised. It has not been possible to correlate consistently any method of measuring Valsalva leak point pressure with either UI severity or other measures of urethral function (12-17).

Studies of technical accuracy have included adults with LUTS, with or without UI. The studies used different equipment and lacked standardised techniques (18,19). As with all physiological investigation, results have shown a wide range of variability.

Inter-rater and intra-rater reliability of videourodynamics for the severity and type of SUI is good (20).

2.6.2.2 Diagnostic accuracy

The diagnostic accuracy of urodynamics cannot be measured against a 'gold standard' since all incontinence diagnoses are defined in urodynamic terms.

Detrusor overactivity may be found in asymptomatic patients, while normal cystometry is found in patients who are clearly symptomatic. There have been many studies of variable quality, investigating the relationship between UI symptoms and subsequent urodynamic findings. For their UK-based guidance, the National Institute for Health and Clinical Evidence (NICE) reviewed 11 studies (21), which investigated the relationship between clinical diagnosis and urodynamic findings and the diagnostic accuracy of urodynamic measurement, specifically in females. The Panel found no new evidence had been published since 2005 up until July 2011.

There is a consensus that urodynamic tests should aim to reproduce the patient's symptoms. If they do not, the findings are inevitably inconclusive. There is also a consensus that attention to technical and methodological detail during urodynamic testing may increase the accuracy of urodynamics in recording usual bladder behaviour.

In clinical practice, urodynamic testing (cystometry) may help to provide, or confirm, a diagnosis, predict treatment outcome, or facilitate discussion during a consultation.

2.6.2.3 Does urodynamics influence the outcome of conservative therapy?

A meta-analysis of 129 studies of diagnostic tests for incontinence, using economic modelling, concluded that urodynamics was not cost-effective in a primary care setting (22).

A few RCTs have investigated the ability of urodynamics to predict treatment decisions or treatment outcomes following conservative management. In 2009, a Cochrane review examined three small RCT studies, two of which were reported as abstracts (23,24). A further RCT, not included in the Cochrane review, also compared patients who underwent urodynamics with those who did not, though they did have urodynamics later in their care (25). Since then, another RCT addressing the same question has been published (26). Patients who underwent urodynamics were more likely to be treated by surgery or drugs or to have a change in their treatment (23). However, urodynamic tests made no difference to the outcomes of conservative treatment, including antimuscarinic therapy (27,28).

2.6.2.4 Does urodynamics influence the outcome of surgery for SUI?

There have been no RCTs specifically addressing this question, though trials are currently underway. Several case series have examined a possible relationship between individual urodynamic parameters and the subsequent success or failure of surgical treatment for SUI. Most were low-quality small studies. Post-hoc analysis of an RCT on surgery for SUI failed to confirm a predictive value for urodynamics, though the success rate for patients with urodynamic SUI exceeded that for women without urodynamic SUI (29).

Various studies have examined the relationship between measures of poor urethral function, i.e. low maximal

urethral closure pressure, low Valsalva leak point pressure, and subsequent failure of surgery. Some studies found a correlation between low urethral pressures and surgical failure, while other studies did not (30-33). A correlation, in itself, was not necessarily predictive.

2.6.2.5 Does urodynamics help to predict complications of surgery?
There have been no RCTs. A large number of case series, or post-hoc analyses of larger studies, have examined the relationship between urodynamic parameters and surgical outcome for SUI. A low Q_{max} or low pressure voiding has been inconsistently associated with post-operative voiding difficulty (34-40). However, the predictive value has rarely been calculated.

The presence of pre-operative DO has more consistently been associated with development of post-operative UUI. Post-hoc analysis of an RCT comparing the autologous fascial sling to Burch colposuspension showed inferior outcomes for women who suffered pre-operative urgency (41). However pre-operative urodynamics had failed to predict this outcome (29). Other case series, however, have shown a consistent association of poor outcomes with pre-operative DO, though the predictive value was not calculated (42,43).

2.6.2.6 Does urodynamics influence the outcome of surgery for DO?
No studies were found on the relationship between urodynamic testing and subsequent surgical outcome for DO. However, most studies reporting surgical outcomes for DO have included only patients with urodynamically proven DO or DO incontinence. Higher-pressure DO appears to be consistently associated with surgical failure and persistent or de-novo urgency. As with other suggested 'predictors', the predictive value has not often been formally calculated (30,44,45). Pre-operative urgency was resolved in some patients (46,47).

2.6.2.7 Does urodynamics influence the outcome of treatment for post-prostatectomy UI in men?
There are no RCTs examining the clinical usefulness of urodynamics in post-prostatectomy incontinence. However, many case series have demonstrated the ability of urodynamics to distinguish between different causes of UI (48-50). The ability of urodynamic testing to predict surgical outcome for post-prostatectomy incontinence is inconsistent (51,52).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Most urodynamic parameters show a high random immediate and short-term test-retest variability of up to 15% in the same subject.	2
Test-retest variability creates an overlap between 'normal' and 'abnormal' populations, which may make it more difficult to categorise urodynamic findings in a particular individua.l	2
Different techniques of measuring urethral function may perform reliably from one test to another, but do not reliably correlate to other tests and to the severity of UI.	3
The accuracy of ambulatory urodynamics remains uncertain.	4
There may be inconsistency between history and urodynamic results.	3
Preliminary urodynamics do not affect the outcome of conservative therapy for UI.	1a
There is limited evidence about whether preliminary urodynamic testing predicts surgical outcomes in adults with UI.	3
There is conflicting low-level evidence that tests suggesting poor urethral function predict surgery failure for SUI in women.	3
There is consistent low-level evidence that pre-operative DO predicts failure of mid-urethral sling surgery in women.	3
There is no evidence about whether preliminary urodynamics predicts outcomes of treatment for UI in men.	4

Recommendations	**GR**
Clinicians carrying out urodynamics in patients with urinary incontinence should: • Ensure that the test replicates patient's symptoms • Interpret results in context of the clinical problem • Check recordings for quality control • Remember there may be physiological variability within the same individual.	C

Advise patients that the results of urodynamics may be useful in discussing treatment options, although there is limited evidence that performing urodynamics will alter the outcome of treatment for urinary incontinence.	C
Do not routinely carry out urodynamics when offering conservative treatment for urinary incontinence.	B
Perform urodynamics if the findings may change the choice of surgical treatment.	C
Perform urodynamics prior to surgery for urinary incontinence if there are either symptoms of overactive bladder, a history of previous surgery or a suspicion of voiding difficulty.	C
Do not routinely carry out urethral pressure profilometry.	C

2.6.3 ***Research priority***

Future studies should address whether any urodynamic test influences the choice between treatments or prediction of the outcome of treatment.

2.6.4 ***References***

1. Chin-Peuckert L, Komlos M, Rennick JE, et al. What is the variability between 2 consecutive cystometries in the same child? J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 2):1614-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501675
2. Chou FH, Ho CH, Chir MB, et al. Normal ranges of variability for urodynamic studies of neurogenic bladders in spinal cord injury. J Spinal Cord Med 2006;29(1):26-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16572562
3. Gupta A, Defreitas G, Lemack GE. The reproducibility of urodynamic findings in healthy female volunteers: results of repeated studies in the same setting and after short-term follow-up. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(4):311-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15227647
4. Hess MJ, Lim L, Yalla SV. Reliability of cystometrically obtained intravesical pressures in patients with neurogenic bladders. J Spinal Cord Med 2002 Winter;25(4):293-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12482172
5. Homma Y, Kondo Y, Takahashi S, et al. Reproducibility of cystometry in overactive detrusor. Eur Urol 2000 Dec;38(6):681-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11111184
6. Mortensen S, Lose G, Thyssen H. Repeatability of cystometry and pressure-flow parameters in female patients. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2002;13(2):72-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12054185
7. Ockrim J, Laniado ME, Khoubehi B, et al. Variability of detrusor overactivity on repeated filling cystometry in men with urge symptoms: comparison with spinal cord injury patients. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95(4):587-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705085
8. Brostrom S, Jennum P, Lose G. Short-term reproducibility of cystometry and pressure-flow micturition studies in healthy women. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(5):457-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12232880
9. Zehnder P, Roth B, Burkhard FC, et al. Air charged and microtip catheters cannot be used interchangeably for urethral pressure measurement: a prospective, single-blind, randomized trial. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):1013-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639301
10. Wang AC, Chen MC. A comparison of urethral pressure profilometry using microtip and double-lumen perfusion catheters in women with genuine stress incontinence. BJOG 2002 Mar;109(3):322-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11950188
11. Pollak JT, Neimark M, Connor JT, et al. Air-charged and microtransducer urodynamic catheters in the evaluation of urethral function. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2004 Mar-Apr;15(2):124-8; discussion 128. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15014940
12. Almeida FG, Bruschini H, Srougi M. Correlation between urethral sphincter activity and Valsalva leak point pressure at different bladder distentions: revisiting the urethral pressure profile. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1312-5; discussion 1315-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145410
13. Sinha D, Nallaswamy V, Arunkalaivanan AS. Value of leak point pressure study in women with incontinence. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):186-8; discussion 188. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753397

14. Nguyen JK, Gunn GC, Bhatia NN. The effect of patient position on leak-point pressure measurements in women with genuine stress incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2002;13(1):9-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11999213
15. Dorflinger A, Gorton E, Stanton S, et al. Urethral pressure profile: is it affected by position? Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(6):553-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12382246
16. Fleischmann N, Flisser AJ, Blaivas JG, et al. Sphincteric urinary incontinence: relationship of vesical leak point pressure, urethral mobility and severity of incontinence. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):999-1002. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576830
17. Schick E, Dupont C, Bertrand PE, et al. Predictive value of maximum urethral closure pressure, urethral hypermobility and urethral incompetence in the diagnosis of clinically significant female genuine stress incontinence. J Urol 2004 May;171(5):1871-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076296
18. Brown K, Hilton P. Ambulatory monitoring. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1997;8(6):369-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9609337
19. Brown K, Hilton P. The incidence of detrusor instability before and after colposuspension: a study using conventional and ambulatory urodynamic monitoring. BJU Int 1999 Dec;84(9):961-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10571620
20. Glancz LJ, Cartwright R, Cardozo L. Inter- and intra-rater reliability of fluoroscopic cough stress testing. J Obstet Gynaecol 2010;30(5):492-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20604654
21. Urinary incontinence: the management of urinary incontinence in women. Clinical guidelines CG40. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, October 2006. http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG40
22. Martin JL, Williams KS, Abrams KR, et al. Systematic review and evaluation of methods of assessing urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2006 Feb;10(6):1-132, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16487456
23. Khullar V, Salvatore S, Cardozo Let al. Randomised study of ambulatory urodynamics versus symptomatic treatment of symptomatic women without a urodynamic diagnosis. 30th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society (ICS). Tampere, Finland, 28-31 August 2000. Neurourol Urodyn 2000;19(4)379-547, abstract no. 274. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/38/000274.pdf
24. Dowling CR, O'Connell HE, Kurczyki L, et al. Randomised control trial of bladder pressure management versus management based on symptoms and residual volumes in patients with established multiple sclerosis (Abstract). In: Abstracts of the Urological Society of Australasia, Annual Scientific Meeting 2005, Melbourne, Victoria, Australia, 13-17 February 2005. BJU Int 2005;95(Suppl s1):5, abstract no. U018. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/bju.2005.95.issue-s1/issuetoc
25. Holtedahl K, Verelst M, Schiefloe A, et al. Usefulness of urodynamic examination in female urinary incontinence-lessons from a population-based, randomized, controlled study of conservative treatment. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2000 Jun;34(3):169-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10961470
26. Malone-Lee JG, Al-Buheissi S. Does urodynamic verification of overactive bladder determine treatment success? Results from a randomized placebo controlled study. BJU Int 2009 Apr;103(7):931-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19281469
27. Ramsay IN, Ali HM, Hunter M, et al. A randomized controlled trial of urodynamic investigations prior to conservative treatment of urinary incontinence in the female. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1995;6(5):277-81.
28. Ward RM, Hampton BS, Blume JD, et al. The impact of multichannel urodynamics upon treatment recommendations for female urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Sep;19(9):1235-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425401
29. Nager CW, FitzGerald M, Kraus SR, et al. Urodynamic measures do not predict stress continence outcomes after surgery for stress urinary incontinence in selected women. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1470-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295276

30. Hsiao SM, Chang TC, Lin HH. Risk factors affecting cure after mid-urethral tape procedure for female urodynamic stress incontinence: comparison of retropubic and transobturator routes. Urology 2009 May;73(5):981-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19285713
31. McLennan MT, Melick CF, Bent AE. Leak-point pressure: clinical application of values at two different volumes. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000 Jun;11(3):136-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11484740
32. Wadie BS, El-Hefnawy AS. Urethral pressure measurement in stress incontinence: does it help? Int Urol Nephrol 2009;41(3):491-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19048384
33. Roderick T, Paul M, Christopher M, et al. Urethral retro-resistance pressure: association with established measures of incontinence severity and change after midurethral tape insertion. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(1):86-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18671296
34. Lemack GE, Krauss S, Litman H, et al. Normal preoperative urodynamic testing does not predict voiding dysfunction after Burch colposuspension versus pubovaginal sling. J Urol 2008 Nov;180(5):2076-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18804239
35. Dawson T, Lawton V, Adams E, et al. Factors predictive of post-TVT voiding dysfunction. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2007 Nov;18(11):1297-302.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17347790
36. Hong B, Park S, Kim HS, et al. Factors predictive of urinary retention after a tension-free vaginal tape procedure for female stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2003 Sep;170(3):852-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913715
37. Lose G, Jorgensen L, Mortensen SO, et al. Voiding difficulties after colposuspension. Obstet Gynecol 1987 Jan;69(1):33-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3796917
38. Iglesia CB, Shott S, Fenner DE, et al. Effect of preoperative voiding mechanism on success rate of autologous rectus fascia suburethral sling procedure. Obstet Gynecol 1998 Apr;91(4):577-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9540944
39. Wheeler TL 2nd, Richter HE, Greer WJ, et al. Predictors of success with postoperative voiding trials after a mid urethral sling procedure. J Urol 2008;179(2):600-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082219
40. Gravina GL, Costa AM, Ronchi P, et al. Bladder outlet obstruction index and maximal flow rate during urodynamic study as powerful predictors for the detection of urodynamic obstruction in women. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(2):247-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17219400
41. Richter HE, Diokno A, Kenton K, et al. Predictors of treatment failure 24 months after surgery for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):1024-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18206917
42. Kuo HC. Effect of detrusor function on the therapeutic outcome of a suburethral sling procedure using a polypropylene sling for stress urinary incontinence in women. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2007;41(2): 138-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17454953
43. Colombo M, Milani R, Vitobello D, et al. A randomized comparison of Burch colposuspension and abdominal paravaginal defect repair for female stress urinary incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1996 Jul;175(1):78-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8694079
44. Sahai A, Sangster P, Kalsi V, et al. Assessment of urodynamic and detrusor contractility variables in patients with overactive bladder syndrome treated with botulinum toxin-A: is incomplete bladder emptying predictable? BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(5):630-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18990156
45. Houwert RM, Venema PL, Aquarius AE, et al. Predictive value of urodynamics on outcome after midurethral sling surgery for female stress urinary incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2009 Jun;200(6):649.e1-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19344879
46. Nilsson CG, Kuuva N, Falconer C, et al. Long-term results of the tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) procedure for surgical treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2001;12 Suppl 2:S5-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11450979

47. Ward K, Hilton P. Prospective multicentre randomised trial of tension-free vaginal tape and colposuspension as primary treatment for stress incontinence. BMJ 2002 Jul;325(7355):67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12114234
48. Kuo HC. Analysis of the pathophysiology of lower urinary tract symptoms in patients after prostatectomy. Urol Int 2002;68(2):99-104. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834899
49. Groutz A, Blaivas JG, Chaikin DC, et al. The pathophysiology of post-radical prostatectomy incontinence: a clinical and video urodynamic study. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1767-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799178
50. Huckabay C, Twiss C, Berger A, et al. A urodynamics protocol to optimally assess men with post-prostatectomy incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2005;24(7):622-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16208638
51. Gomha MA, Boone TB. Artificial urinary sphincter for post-prostatectomy incontinence in men who had prior radiotherapy: a risk and outcome analysis. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):591-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792924
52. Thiel DD, Young PR, Broderick GA, et al. Do clinical or urodynamic parameters predict artificial urinary sphincter outcome in post-radical prostatectomy incontinence? Urology 2007 Feb;69(2):315-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17320671

2.7 Pad testing

A well-designed continence pad will contain any urine leaked within a period of time and this has therefore been used as a way of quantifying leakage. Although the International Continence Society has attempted to standardise pad testing, there remains variation in the duration of the test and the physical activity undertaken during the test.

2.7.1 ***Question***

In adults with UI, what are the reliability, the diagnostic accuracy and predictive value of pad testing?

2.7.2 ***Evidence***

The use of pad tests has been reviewed in the 4th International Consultation on Incontinence. Many studies have investigated the use of short-term and long-term pad tests to diagnose UI (1). Several other studies have investigated the correlation between pad test results and symptom scores for UI or LUTS (2-6). In addition, several studies have analysed the reproducibility of pad tests (6,7-11).

A few studies have tried to use pad testing to predict the outcome of treatment for UI with variable results (12,13). Currently, pad tests are mostly used as objective outcomes in clinical trials. However, pad tests may be helpful in daily clinical practice, and most guidelines already include the use of pad testing to evaluate treatment outcome (14,15). There is good evidence to show that repeat pad testing can detect change following treatment for UI (16-18).

Evidence summary	**LE**
A pad test can diagnose UI accurately, is reproducible and correlates with patients' symptoms.	1b
A pad test cannot differentiate between causes of UI.	4
An office-based pad test requires standardisation of bladder volume and a predefined set of exercises to improve diagnostic accuracy.	1b
A pad weight gain > 1 g in a 1-hour test can be used as a threshold to diagnose UI.	2b
Patient adherence to home pad testing protocols is poor.	1b
A weight gain > 1.3 g in a 24-hour home-based test can be used as a diagnostic threshold for UI.	1b
Home-based pad tests longer than 24 hours provide no additional benefit.	2b
Repeat pad tests can indicate treatment outcome.	1b

Recommendations	**GR**
Use a pad test when quantification of urinary incontinence is required.	C
Use repeat pad test if objective treatment outcome measure is required.	C

2.7.3 ***Research recommendation***

A systematic review of pad testing at home and in the office would clarify its role in routine care.

2.7.4 ***References***

1. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, et al., editors. Incontinence. 4th International Consultation on Incontinence, Paris July 5-8, 2008. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd, 2009. http://www.icud.info/incontinence.html
2. Aslan E, Beji NK, Coskun A, et al. An assessment of the importance of pad testing in stress urinary incontinence and the effects of incontinence on the life quality of women. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2003 Nov;14(5):316-9; discussion 320. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14618307
3. Harvey MA, Kristjansson B, Griffith D, et al. The Incontinence Impact Questionnaire and the Urogenital Distress Inventory: a revisit of their validity in women without a urodynamic diagnosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2001 Jul;185(1):25-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11483899
4. Singh M, Bushman W, Clemens JQ. Do pad tests and voiding diaries affect patient willingness to participate in studies of incontinence treatment outcomes? J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):316-8; discussion 318-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665904
5. Franco AV, Lee F, Fynes MM. Is there an alternative to pad tests? Correlation of subjective variables of severity of urinary loss to the 1-h pad test in women with stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2008 Aug 5;102(5):586-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18384632
6. Albo M, Wruck L, Baker J, et al. The relationships among measures of incontinence severity in women undergoing surgery for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2007 May;177(5):1810-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437826
7. Simons AM, Yoong WC, Buckland S, et al. Inadequate repeatability of the one-hour pad test: the need for a new incontinence outcome measure. BJOG 2001 Mar;108(3):315-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11281474
8. Jakobsen H, Kromann-Andersen B, Nielsen KK, et al. Pad weighing tests with 50% or 75% bladder filling. Does it matter? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 1993;72(5):377-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8392270
9. Groutz A, Blaivas JG, Chaikin DC, et al. Noninvasive outcome measures of urinary incontinence and lower urinary tract symptoms: a multicenter study of micturition diary and pad tests. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):698-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953128
10. Karantanis E, O'Sullivan R, Moore KH. The 24-hour pad test in continent women and men: normal values and cyclical alterations. BJOG 2003 Jun;110(6):567-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12798473
11. Kromann-Andersen B, Jakobsen H, Thorup Andersen J. Pad-weighing tests: a literature survey on test accuracy and reproducibility. Neurourol Urodyn 1989;8(3):237-42. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/nau.1930080309/abstract
12. Richter HE, Diokno A, Kenton K, et al. Predictors of treatment failure 24 months after surgery for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):1024-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18206917
13. Foster RT, Sr., Anoia EJ, Webster GD, et al. In patients undergoing neuromodulation for intractable urge incontinence a reduction in 24-hr pad weight after the initial test stimulation best predicts long-term patient satisfaction. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(2):213-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17009252
14. Leach GE, Dmochowski RR, Appell RA, et al. Female Stress Urinary Incontinence Clinical Guidelines Panel summary report on surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence. The American Urological Association. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 1):875-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258103
15. Blaivas JG, Appell RA, Fantl JA, et al. Standards of efficacy for evaluation of treatment outcomes in urinary incontinence: recommendations of the Urodynamic Society. Neurourol Urodyn 1997;16(3): 145-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9136135

16. Floratos DL, Sonke GS, Rapidou CA, et al. Biofeedback vs verbal feedback as learning tools for pelvic muscle exercises in the early management of urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy. BJU Int 2002 May;89(7):714-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11966630
17. Blackwell AL, Yoong W, Moore KH. Criterion validity, test-retest reliability and sensitivity to change of the St George Urinary Incontinence Score. BJU Int 2004 Feb;93(3):331-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764131
18. Ward KL, Hilton P; UK and Ireland TVT Trial Group. A prospective multicenter randomized trial of tension-free vaginal tape and colposuspension for primary urodynamic stress incontinence: two-year follow-up. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2004 Feb;190(2):324-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14981369

2.8 Imaging

Imaging improves our understanding of the anatomical and functional abnormalities that may cause UI. In clinical research, imaging is used to understand the relationship between conditions of the central nervous system (CNS) and of the lower urinary tract in causing UI, and to investigate the relationship between conditions of the lower urinary tract and treatment outcome.

Ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have replaced X-ray imaging as both procedures are safer than X-ray imaging and can provide both qualitative and quantitative data on the kidneys, bladder neck and pelvic floor.

Ultrasound is preferred to MRI because of its ability to produce three-dimensional and four-dimensional (dynamic) images at lower cost and wider availability. The current lack of knowledge about the pathophysiology of UI makes it difficult to carry out research in the imaging of UI. Studies on lower urinary tract imaging in patients with UI often include an evaluation of surgical outcomes, making design and conduct of these trials particularly challenging.

*2.8.1 **Questions***

- Can imaging aid selection of surgical procedure for SUI?
- How accurate is imaging in evaluating the outcome of UI surgery?

*2.8.2 **Evidence***

Several imaging studies have investigated the relationship between sphincter volume and function in women (1) and between sphincter volume and surgery outcome in men and women (2,3). Imaging of urethral anastomosis following radical prostatectomy has been used to investigate continence status (4). However, no imaging test has been shown to predict the outcome of treatment for UI.

Many studies have evaluated the imaging of bladder neck mobility by US and MRI, and concluded that UI cannot be identified by a particular pattern of urethrovesical movements (5). In addition, the generalised increase in urethral mobility after childbirth does not appear to be associated with de-novo SUI (6).

There is a general consensus that MRI provides good global pelvic floor assessment, including pelvic organ prolapse, defecatory function and integrity of the pelvic floor support structure (7). However, there is a large variation in MRI interpretation between institutions (8) and little evidence to support its clinical usefulness.

Studies have assessed the use of imaging to effect of mid-urethral sling insertion for SUI. One study suggested that mid-urethral sling placement decreased mobility of the mid-urethra, but not of the bladder neck (9). In addition, the position of mid-urethral slings with respect to the pubis has been associated with the cure of UI (10).

However, in conclusion, no studies were found which specifically addressed the PICO questions for this section. Lower urinary tract imaging does not appear to provide any clinical benefit in patients with UI (11). Despite this, however, some experts continue to recommend imaging (12-15).

Evidence summary	LE
Imaging can reliably measure bladder neck and urethral mobility, although there is no evidence of any clinical benefit in patients with UI.	2b
Imaging of the pelvic floor can identify levator ani detachment and hiatus, although there is little evidence of clinical benefit.	2b
Ultrasonography can image mid-urethral slings, although more research is needed into the relationship between sling position and surgical outcome.	2b

Recommendation	GR
Do not routinely carry out imaging of the upper or lower urinary tract as part of the assessment of uncomplicated SUI in women.	A

2.8.3 ***References***

1. Morgan DM, Umek W, Guire K, et al. Urethral sphincter morphology and function with and without stress incontinence. J Urol 2009 Jul;182(1):203-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19450822
2. Digesu GA, Robinson D, Cardozo L, et al. Three-dimensional ultrasound of the urethral sphincter predicts continence surgery outcome. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(1):90-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18726938
3. Nguyen L, Jhaveri J, Tewari A. Surgical technique to overcome anatomical shortcoming: balancing post-prostatectomy continence outcomes of urethral sphincter lengths on preoperative magnetic resonance imaging. J Urol 2008 May;179(5):1907-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18353395
4. Paparel P, Akin O, Sandhu JS, et al. Recovery of urinary continence after radical prostatectomy: association with urethral length and urethral fibrosis measured by preoperative and postoperative endorectal magnetic resonance imaging. Eur Urol 2009 Mar;55(3):629-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18801612
5. Lewicky-Gaupp C, Blaivas J, Clark A, et al. "The cough game": are there characteristic urethrovesical movement patterns associated with stress incontinence? Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Feb;20(2):171-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18850057
6. Shek KL, Dietz HP, Kirby A. The effect of childbirth on urethral mobility: a prospective observational study. J Urol 2010 Aug;184(2):629-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20639028
7. Woodfield CA, Krishnamoorthy S, Hampton BS, et al. Imaging pelvic floor disorders: trend toward comprehensive MRI. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2010 Jun;194(6):1640-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20489108
8. Lockhart ME, Fielding JR, Richter HE, et al. Reproducibility of dynamic MR imaging pelvic measurements: a multi-institutional study. Radiology 2008 Nov;249(2):534-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18796659
9. Shek KL, Chantarasorn V, Dietz HP. The urethral motion profile before and after suburethral sling placement. J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1450-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171657
10. Chantarasorn V, Shek KL, Dietz HP. Sonographic appearance of transobturator slings: implications for function and dysfunction. Int Urogynecol J 2011 Apr;22(4):493-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20967418
11. Thuroff JW, Abrams P, Andersson KE, et al. EAU guidelines on urinary incontinence. Eur Urol 2011 Mar;59(3):387-400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21130559
12. Doumouchtsis SK, Jeffery S, Fynes M. Female voiding dysfunction. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2008 Aug;63(8):519-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631408
13. Dietz HP. Pelvic floor ultrasound: a review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2010 Apr;202(4):321-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20350640
14. Savoye-Collet C, Koning E, Dacher JN. Radiologic evaluation of pelvic floor disorders. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2008 Sep;37(3):553-67, viii. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18793996

15. Santoro GA, Wieczorek AP, Dietz HP, et al. State of the art: an integrated approach to pelvic floor ultrasonography. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2011 Apr;37(4):381-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20814874

3. CONSERVATIVE TREATMENT

In clinical practice, it is a convention that non-surgical therapies are tried first because they usually carry the least risk of harm.

The Panel has grouped together simple clinical interventions, which are likely to be initiated by the healthcare professional at the first point of contact. These are followed by a series of treatments described as 'lifestyle interventions' because they are changes that a patient can make to improve symptoms. These are then followed by behavioural treatments, which require some form of training or instruction, and physical therapies, which require instruction and use some form of physical intervention. Drug treatment is described separately. The Panel recognises that in clinical practice a combination of these interventions may be recommended as a care package. Consequently, recommendations have been linked together in places where this reflects the way that care is often 'packaged'.

3.1 Simple clinical interventions

*3.1.1 **Underlying disease/cognitive impairment***

Urinary Incontinence, especially in the elderly, can be worsened or caused by underlying diseases, especially conditions that cause polyuria, nocturia, increased abdominal pressure or CNS disturbances. These conditions include:

- cardiac failure (1);
- chronic renal failure;
- diabetes (1,2);
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (3);
- neurological disorders;
- stroke;
- dementia;
- multiple sclerosis;
- general cognitive impairment;
- sleep disturbances e.g. sleep apnoea.

It is possible that correction of the underlying disease may reduce the severity of urinary symptoms. However, this is often difficult to assess as patients often suffer from more than one condition. In addition, interventions may be combined and individualised, making it impossible to decide which change in an underlying disease has affected a patient's UI.

3.1.1.1 Question

In adults with UI, does correcting an underlying disease or cognitive impairment improve UI or QoL compared to no correction of underlying disease?

3.1.1.2 Evidence

We found only one study that directly addressed the question. The study was a follow-up of an earlier RCT. The study found no correlation between earlier intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes mellitus and the prevalence of UI in later life versus conventional treatment (4). This was despite the known benefit of close control of blood glucose levels on other known consequences of type 1 diabetes mellitus, including renal and visual impairment. A higher prevalence of UI was associated with an increase in age and body mass index in this study.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Improved diabetic control neither resolves nor improves UI.	3

3.1.1.3 References

1. Lee PG, Cigolle C, Blaum C, et al. The co-occurrence of chronic diseases and geriatric syndromes: the health and retirement study. J Am Geriatr Soc 2009 Mar;57(3):511-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19187416
2. Vischer UM, Bauduceau B, Bourdel-Marchasson I, et al. A call to incorporate the prevention and treatment of geriatric disorders in the management of diabetes in the elderly. Diabetes Metab 2009 Jun;35(3):168-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19446486
3. Hirayama F, Lee AH, Binns CW, et al. Urinary incontinence in men with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Int J Urol 2008 Aug;15(8):751-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18786199
4. Sarma AV, Kanaya A, Nyberg LM, et al. Risk factors for urinary incontinence among women with type 1 diabetes: findings from the epidemiology of diabetes interventions and complications study. Urology 2009 Jun;73(6):1203-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19362350

3.1.2 ***Adjustment of medication***

Although UI is listed as an adverse effect in many drug compendiums, e.g. *British National Formulary*, this is mainly due to uncontrolled individual patient reports and post-marketing surveillance. Few controlled studies have used the occurrence of UI as a primary outcome or were powered to assess the occurrence of statistically significant UI or worsening rates against placebo. It is therefore not possible in most cases to be sure that a drug causes incontinence.

In patients with existing UI, particularly the elderly, it may be difficult or impossible to distinguish between the effects on UI of medication, comorbidity, or ageing.

Although changing drug regimens for underlying disease may be considered a possible early intervention for UI, there is very little evidence of benefit (1). There is also a theoretical risk that stopping or altering medication may result in more harm than benefit.

3.1.2.1 Question

In adults with UI, does adjustment of medication improve UI or QoL compared to no change in treatment?

3.1.2.2 Evidence

A structured narrative review found there was only weak evidence for a causative effect for most medications associated with the adverse effect of new, or worsening, UI (2). A case-control study found that women with hypertension started on alpha-blockers were more likely to develop UI than untreated controls (3).

Several case series have suggested a link between drugs with a CNS site of action and UI (2). A secondary analysis of a large observational database of elderly Italians found a higher risk of UI among those taking benzodiazepines. In addition, a retrospective analysis of a large Dutch database of dispensed prescriptions found that patients started on a selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitor were more likely to require a subsequent prescription of antimuscarinic drugs or absorbent urinary pads, suggesting the development of UI (4). Limited evidence from case series and case-control studies suggests that diuretic therapy is not associated with a higher incidence or worsening of UI (2). It is possible that SUI may be worsened by the development of the chronic cough sometimes associated with ACE inhibitors prescribed for heart failure or hypertension.

Systemic oestrogen therapy for post-menopausal women was shown by a meta-analysis (5) to be associated with the development and worsening of UI. Systemic oestrogen, compared to placebo, worsened symptoms of UI, both in women who had undergone a hysterectomy, and in those who had not (5). In addition, data from a single large RCT (6) showed that previously continent women treated with systemic oestrogen were more likely to develop symptoms of UI compared to women given a placebo.

These more recent analyses have superseded conflicting results from earlier and smaller studies of the effect of oestrogen replacement therapy on UI. However, the number of women who gain relief from UI through stopping systemic oestrogen replacement is likely to be small, as there has been a decline in the use of oestrogen replacement therapy by post-menopausal women, due to concerns about developing cancer and the association of oestrogen replacement therapy with UI.

Evidence summary	LE
Alpha-blockers used to treat hypertension in women may cause or exacerbate UI, and stopping them may relieve UI.	3
Individuals taking drugs acting on the central nervous system may experience UI as a side effect.	3
Diuretics in elderly patients does not cause or worsen UI.	3
Systemic oestrogen replacement therapy in previously continent women approximately doubles the prevalence of UI at 12 months compared to placebo.	1b
Women with pre-existing UI, who use systemic oestrogen replacement therapy, are 30% more likely to experience worsening UI compared to placebo.	1a

Recommendations	GR
Take a drug history from all patients with urinary incontinence.	A
Inform women with urinary incontinence that begins or worsens after starting systemic oestrogen replacement therapy that it may cause urinary incontinence.	A
Review any new medication associated with the development or worsening of urinary incontinence.	C

3.1.2.3 References

1. Urinary incontinence: the management of urinary incontinence in women. Clinical guidelines CG40. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, October 2006. http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG40
2. Tsakiris P, de la Rosette JJ, Michel MC, et al. Pharmacologic treatment of male stress urinary incontinence: systematic review of the literature and levels of evidence. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):53-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17920183
3. Marshall HJ, Beevers DG. Alpha-adrenoceptor blocking drugs and female urinary incontinence: prevalence and reversibility. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1996 Oct;42(4):507-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8904625
4. Movig KL, Leufkens HG, Belitser SV, et al. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor-induced urinary incontinence. Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf 2002 Jun;11(4):271-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12138594
5. Cody JD, Richardson K, Moehrer B, et al. Oestrogen therapy for urinary incontinence in post-menopausal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD001405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821277
6. Hendrix SL, Cochrane BB, Nygaard IE, et al. Effects of estrogen with and without progestin on urinary incontinence. JAMA 2005 Feb 23;293(8):935-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728164

*3.1.3 **Constipation***

Several studies have shown strong associations between constipation, UI and OAB. Constipation can be improved by behavioural and medical treatments.

3.1.3.1 Question

Does treatment for constipation therapy improve symptoms or QoL in patients with UI?

3.1.3.2 Evidence

One RCT found that a multimodal intervention in elderly patients, involving assisted toileting, fluid intake, etc., reduced the occurrence of UI and constipation, while behavioural therapy appeared to improve both constipation and UI (1). Another study found bowel function improved after successful treatment of voiding problems with sacral nerve stimulation (2). A different study recommended the simultaneous treatment of constipation and urinary disorders in children and adolescents with LUTS.

An observational study comparing women with UI and women with pelvic organ prolapse to controls found that a history of constipation was associated with both prolapse and UI (3). Two large cross-sectional population-based studies (4,5) and two longitudinal studies (6,7) showed constipation was a risk factor for LUTS.

In conclusion, constipation appears to be associated with LUTS. However, there is no evidence to show whether or not treating constipation improves LUTS, although both constipation and UI appear to be improved by certain behavioural interventions.

Evidence summary	LE
There is a consistent association between a history of constipation and the development of UI and pelvic organ prolapse.	3
There is no evidence that treatment of constipation improves UI.	4
Multimodal behavioural therapy improves both constipation and UI in the elderly.	1b
Simultaneous treatment of constipation and urinary incontinence in adolescents is beneficial.	3

Recommendation	GR
For adults with UI, treat co-existing constipation.	C

3.1.3.3 References

1. Schnelle JF, Leung FW, Rao SS, et al. A controlled trial of an intervention to improve urinary and fecal incontinence and constipation. J Am Geriatr Soc 2010;58(8):1504-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20653804
2. Killinger KA, Kangas JR, Wolfert C, et al. Secondary changes in bowel function after successful treatment of voiding symptoms with neuromodulation. Neurourol Urodyn 2011 Jan;30(1):133-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20928914
3. Spence-Jones C, Kamm MA, Henry MM, et al. Bowel dysfunction: a pathogenic factor in uterovaginal prolapse and urinary stress incontinence. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1994 Feb;101(2):147-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8305390
4. Coyne KS, Cash B, Kopp Z, et al. The prevalence of chronic constipation and faecal incontinence among men and women with symptoms of overactive bladder. BJU Int 2011 Jan;107(2):254-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20590548
5. Diokno AC, Brock BM, Herzog AR, et al. Medical correlates of urinary incontinence in the elderly. Urology 1990 Aug;36(2):129-38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2385880
6. Alling Moller L, Lose G, Jorgensen T. Risk factors for lower urinary tract symptoms in women 40 to 60 years of age. Obstet Gynecol 2000 Sep;96(3):446-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10960640
7. Byles J, Millar CJ, Sibbritt DW, et al. Living with urinary incontinence: a longitudinal study of older women. Age Ageing 2009 May;38(3):333-8; discussion 251. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19258398

*3.1.4 **Containment***

Although initiation of assessment and treatment of UI should be the main priority for healthcare professionals, containment is of great practical importance to many patients with UI. Absorbent pads are predominantly used to absorb or collect leakage. However, if these are inadequate, an indwelling urethral or suprapubic catheter may then be used after taking into account the complications associated with catheter use, e.g. infection, bladder spasm, stone formation, etc.

3.1.4.1 Question

In adults with UI, does urinary containment improve patient outcomes, regarding either urinary symptoms or QoL, compared with no containment?

3.1.4.2 Evidence

There was a lack of consistency in the evidence reviewed. There have been two consensus statements in the 4th International Consultation on Incontinence (1) and one RCT comparing conservative treatment with urinary pads (2). There have been Cochrane reviews of devices (3) and pads (4), and three small trials of devices with differing outcomes (5-7). Few studies have been carried out in urinary catheterisation; these included an RCT comparing condom catheters with indwelling urinary catheters (8). A small open crossover RCT (11) evaluated different penile clamps and showed that none completely controlled urine leakage, but penile blood flow was reduced.

Evidence summary	LE
Pads are not effective as a treatment for UI.	1b
Different pads have different advantages and disadvantages.	1b
Intermittent catheterisation carries a lower risk of urinary tract infection and bacteriuria than indwelling catheterisation.	1b
Containment devices are better than no treatment.	4
There is not enough evidence to conclude which containment device is best.	4
Condom catheters are better than indwelling catheters if no residual urine is present.	1b
There is no evidence to compare mechanical devices with other forms of treatment.	4

Recommendations	GR
Offer pads when containment of urinary incontinence is needed.	B
Adapt the choice of pad to the type and severity of urinary incontinence and the patient's needs.	A
Offer catheterisation to manage urinary incontinence when no other treatments can be considered.	B
Offer condom catheters to men with urinary incontinence without significant residual urine.	A
Offer to teach intermittent catheterisation to manage UI associated with retention of urine.	A
Do not routinely offer intravaginal devices as treatment for incontinence.	B
Do not use penile clamps for control of UI in men.	A

3.1.4.3 References

1. Cottenden A, Bliss DZ, Buckley B, et al: Committee 20. Management using continence products. In: Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, et al., editors. Incontinence. 4th International Consultation on Incontinence, Paris, July 5-8, 2008. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd, 2009, pp. 1519-1642. http://www.icud.info/incontinence.html
2. Fader M, Cottenden A, Getliffe K, et al. Absorbent products for urinary/faecal incontinence: a comparative evaluation of key product designs. Health Technol Assess 2008 Jul;12(29):iii-iv, ix-185. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18547500
3. Shaikh S, Ong EK, Glavind K, et al. Mechanical devices for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jul 19;(3):CD001756. Update in: Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011;(7):CD001756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855977
4. Fader M, Cottenden AM, Getliffe K. Absorbent products for moderate-heavy urinary and/or faecal incontinence in women and men. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 Oct 8;(4):CD007408. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843748
5. Allen WA, Leek H, Izurieta A, Moore KH. Update: the "Contiform" intravaginal device in four sizes for the treatment of stress incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 June;19(6):757-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18183342
6. Richter HE, Burgio KL, Brubaker L, et al. Continence pessary compared with behavioral therapy or combined therapy for stress incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 2010 Mar;115(3):609-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20177294
7. Ziv E, Stanton SL, Abarbanel J. Significant improvement in the quality of life in women treated with a novel disposable intravaginal device for stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Jun;20(6):651-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19434384
8. Saint S, Kaufman SR, Rogers MA, et al. Condom versus indwelling urinary catheters: a randomized trial. J Am Geriatr Soc 2006 Jul;54(7):1055-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16866675
9. Jamison J, Maguire S, McCann J. Catheter policies for management of long term voiding problems in adults with neurogenic bladder disorders. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004;(2):CD004375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15106248
10. Hagen S, Sinclair L, Cross S. Washout policies in long-term indwelling urinary catheterisation in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010 Mar 17;(3):CD004012. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20238325

11. Moore KN, Schieman S, Ackerman T, et al. Assessing comfort, safety and patient satisfaction with three commonly used penile compression devices. Urology 2004 Jan;63(1):150-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14751370

3.2 Lifestyle interventions

Examples of lifestyle factors that may be associated with incontinence include obesity, smoking, level of physical activity and diet. It may therefore be possible to improve UI by beginning lifestyle interventions, such as weight loss, fluid restriction, reduction of caffeine or alcohol intake, limiting heavy activity and stopping smoking.

*3.2.1 **Caffeine reduction***

Many drinks contain caffeine, particularly tea, coffee and cola. The pharmacological actions of caffeine include CNS stimulation, diuresis and smooth muscle relaxation. Anecdotal evidence of urinary symptoms being aggravated by excessive caffeine intake has focussed attention on whether caffeine reduction may improve UI. However, a cross-sectional population survey found no statistical association between caffeine intake and UI (1). A lack of knowledge about the caffeine content of different drinks has made the role of caffeine reduction in alleviating UI more complex.

3.2.1.1 Question

In adults with UI, does caffeine reduction improve UI or QoL, compared to no caffeine reduction?

3.2.1.2 Evidence

Four studies were found on the effect of caffeine reduction on UI (2-5). They were of moderate quality and the results were inconsistent. The studies were mainly in women, so results can only be cautiously generalised to all adults. There were two RCTs investigating caffeine reduction (3,4). One RCT showed that reducing caffeine intake resulted in reduced urgency but not reduced UI (3). However, the study was not powered for UI and compared the interventions of bladder training (BT) and caffeine reduction against BT alone. Another RCT found that reducing caffeine had no benefit for UI (4). An uncontrolled study suggested that people with OAB and high caffeine intake were more likely to show DO on filling during conventional cystometry (2). A further interventional study in the elderly showed borderline significance for the benefit of reducing caffeine intake on UI (5).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Reduction of caffeine intake does not improve UI.	2
Reduction in caffeine intake may improve symptoms of urgency and frequency.	2

3.2.1.3 References

1. Hannestad YS, Rortveit G, Daltveit AK, et al. Are smoking and other lifestyle factors associated with female urinary incontinence? The Norwegian EPINCONT Study. BJOG 2003 Mar;110(3):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628262
2. Arya LA, Myers DL, Jackson ND. Dietary caffeine intake and the risk for detrusor instability: a case-control study. Obstet Gynecol 2000 Jul;96(1):85-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10862848
3. Bryant CM, Dowell CJ, Fairbrother G. Caffeine reduction education to improve urinary symptoms. Br J Nurs 2002 Apr 25-May 8;11(8):560-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11979209
4. Swithinbank L, Hashim H, Abrams P. The effect of fluid intake on urinary symptoms in women. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):187-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947624
5. Tomlinson BU, Dougherty MC, Pendergast JF, et al. Dietary caffeine, fluid intake and urinary incontinence in older rural women. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1999;10(1):22-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10207763

*3.2.2 **Physical exercise***

Regular physical activity may strengthen the pelvic floor musculature and possibly decrease the risk of developing UI, especially SUI. However, it is also possible that heavy physical exercise may aggravate UI.

3.2.2.1 Question

Does physical exercise cause, improve or exacerbate UI in adults?

3.2.2.2 Evidence

The association between exercise and UI is unclear. Four studies (1-4) in differing populations concluded that strenuous physical exercise increases the risk of SUI during periods of physical activity and there is consistent evidence that physically active females and elite athletes experience higher levels of SUI than control populations (5-10). On the other hand, the presence of UI may prevent women from taking exercise (11). There is no evidence that strenuous exercise predisposes athletes to the development of SUI later in life (12). Lower levels of UI have been observed in cohorts of women who undertake moderate exercise, but it remains unclear whether taking exercise can prevent development of UI (13,14).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Female athletes may experience UI during intense physical activity but not during common activities.	3
Strenuous physical activity does not predispose to UI for women later in life.	3
Although moderate exercise is associated with lower rates of UI in middle-aged or older women, there is no evidence that starting moderate exercise improves established UI in women.	2b

3.2.2.3 References

1. Jorgensen S, Hein HO, Gyntelberg F. Heavy lifting at work and risk of genital prolapse and herniated lumbar disc in assistant nurses. Occup Med (Lond) 1994 Feb;44(1):47-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8167320
2. Nygaard IE, Thompson FL, Svengalis SL, et al. Urinary incontinence in elite nulliparous athletes. Obstet Gynecol 1994 Aug;84(2):183-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8041527
3. Hannestad YS, Rortveit G, Daltveit AK, et al. Are smoking and other lifestyle factors associated with female urinary incontinence? The Norwegian EPINCONT Study. BJOG 2003 Mar;110(3):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628262
4. Nygaard I, DeLancey JO, Arnsdorf L, et al. Exercise and incontinence. Obstet Gynecol Nygaard 1990 May;75(5):848-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2325968
5. Kruger JA, Dietz HP, Murphy BA. Pelvic floor function in elite nulliparous athletes. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2007 Jul;30(1):81-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17497753
6. Bo K, Borgen JS. Prevalence of stress and urge urinary incontinence in elite athletes and controls. Med Sci Sports Exerc 2001 Nov;33(11):1797-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11689727
7. Bo K, Maehlum S, Oseid S, et al. The prevalence of stress urinary incontinence amongst physically active and sedentary female students. Scand J Sports Sci 1989;11(3):113-6.
8. Caylet N, Fabbro-Peray P, Mares P, et al. Prevalence and occurrence of stress urinary incontinence in elite women athletes. Can J Urol 2006 Aug;13(4):3174-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16953954
9. Thyssen HH, Clevin L, Olesen S, et al. Urinary incontinence in elite female athletes and dancers. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2002;13(1):15-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11999199
10. Bø K, Sundgot-Borgen J. Are former female elite athletes more likely to experience urinary incontinence later in life than non-athletes? Scand J Med Sci Sports. 2010 Feb;20(1):100-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19000097
11. Brown WJ, Miller YD. Too wet to exercise? Leaking urine as a barrier to physical activity in women. J Sci Med Sport. 2001 Dec;4(4):373-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905931
12. Nygaard IE. Does prolonged high-impact activity contribute to later urinary incontinence? A retrospective cohort study of female Olympians. Obstet Gynecol 1997 Nov;90(5):718-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9351751
13. Eliasson K, Nordlander I, Larson B, et al. Influence of physical activity on urinary leakage in primiparous women. Scand J Med Sci Sports 2005 Apr;15(2):87-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15773862
14. Kikuchi A, Niu K, Ikeda Y, et al. Association between physical activity and urinary incontinence in a community-based elderly population aged 70 years and over. Eur Urol 2007 Sep;52(3):868-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17412488

3.2.3 ***Fluid intake***

It is generally assumed that reduction in total volume of fluid intake may be beneficial for UI. Fluid restriction is a widely used, inexpensive and non-invasive intervention that is easily recommended. It is usually advised that fluid intake and output is monitored using a frequency volume chart. Daily urine output should not be less than 1500 mL and not more than 3000 mL. The restriction of fluid intake may have adverse effects, including a predisposition to UTI, dehydration, urinary tract stone formation and constipation. The cause of a high fluid intake should be investigated.

3.2.3.1 Question

In adults with UI, what is the effect of modifying fluid intake compared to not modifying fluid intake on symptoms and QoL?

3.2.3.2 Evidence

The few RCTs provide inconsistent evidence. In most studies, the instructions for fluid intake are individualised and it is difficult to assess participant adherence to protocol. All available studies are in women.

Two RCTs of limited quality due to high drop-out rates and small sample size (1,2) produced conflicting results regarding recommendations for fluid intake. One study found that increased fluid intake improved symptoms, while the other study, which was limited to patients with DO, found that decreased fluid intake improved QoL. A more recent RCT (3) showed that a reduction in fluid intake by 25% improved symptoms in patients with OAB but not incontinence. An observational study also addressed fluid intake as part of a behavioural regime (4).

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is conflicting evidence on whether fluid modification changes symptoms of urinary incontinence and quality of life.	2

3.2.3.3 References

1. Dowd TT, Campbell JM, Jones JA. Fluid intake and urinary incontinence in older community-dwelling women. J Community Health Nurs 1996;13(3):179-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8916607
2. Swithinbank L, Hashim H, Abrams P. The effect of fluid intake on urinary symptoms in women. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):187-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947624
3. Wyman JF, Fantl JA, McClish DK, et al. Comparative efficacy of behavioral interventions in the management of female urinary incontinence. Continence Program for Women Research Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1998 Oct;179(4):999-1007. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9790388
4. Fantl JA, Wyman JF, McClish DK, et al. Efficacy of bladder training in older women with urinary incontinence. JAMA 1991 Feb 6;265(5):609-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1987410

3.2.4 ***Obesity and weight loss***

In most developed countries, nearly one-quarter to more than one-third of adult women are obese. Obesity and UI are serious health problems, adversely affecting QoL. Obesity has been identified as a risk factor for UI in many epidemiological studies (1,2). There is evidence that the prevalence of both UUI and SUI increases proportionately with rising body mass index. A significant proportion of patients who undergo surgery for incontinence are overweight or obese. In 2009, the 4th International Consultation on Incontinence recommended that the role of obesity in UI should be a research priority.

3.2.4.1 Question

In adults with UI, does weight loss lead to an improvement in symptoms of UI or QoL?

3.2.4.2 Evidence

All the available evidence relates to women. The prevalence of UI in overweight individuals is well established (1,2). Obesity appears to confer a four-fold increased risk of UI (3).

Two systematic reviews concluded that weight loss was beneficial in improving symptoms of UI (4,5). Four further RCTs reported a similar benefit beneficial effect on incontinence following surgical weight reduction

programmes (6-9). The largest study was in diabetic women, for whom weight loss was the main lifestyle intervention (9). There have been other cohort studies and case-control studies suggesting similar effects, including surgery for the morbidly obese (10-17). For example, in a longitudinal cohort study, a weight loss of 5-10% was associated with a significant reduction in pad test loss of urine (18).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Obesity is a risk factor for UI in women.	1b
Weight loss (> 5%) in obese women improves UI.	1b

3.4.2.3 References

1. Danforth KN, Townsend MK, Lifford K, et al. Risk factors for urinary incontinence among middle-aged women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2006 Feb;194(2):339-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16458626
2. Hannestad YS, Rortveit G, Daltveit AK, et al. Are smoking and other lifestyle factors associated with female urinary incontinence? The Norwegian EPINCONT Study. BJOG 2003 Mar;110(3):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628262
3. Chen CC, Gatmaitan P, Koepp S, et al. Obesity is associated with increased prevalence and severity of pelvic floor disorders in women considering bariatric surgery. Surg Obes Relat Dis 2009 Jul-Aug;5(4):411-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19136310
4. Hunskaar S. A systematic review of overweight and obesity as risk factors and targets for clinical intervention for urinary incontinence in women. Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(8):749-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18951445
5. Imamura M, Abrams P, Bain C, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2010 Aug;14(40):1-188, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738930
6. Bump RC, Sugerman HJ, Fantl JA, et al. Obesity and lower urinary tract function in women: effect of surgically induced weight loss. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1992 Aug;167(2):392-7; discussion 397-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1497041
7. Subak LL, Johnson C, Whitcomb E, et al. Does weight loss improve incontinence in moderately obese women? Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2002;13(1):40-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11999205
8. Subak LL, Whitcomb E, Shen H, et al. Weight loss: a novel and effective treatment for urinary incontinence. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):190-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947625
9. Brown JS, Wing R, Barrett-Connor E, et al. Lifestyle intervention is associated with lower prevalence of urinary incontinence: the Diabetes Prevention Program. Diabetes Care 2006 Feb;29(2):385-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16443892
10. Subak LL, Wing R, West DS, et al; PRIDE Investigators. Weight loss to treat urinary incontinence in overweight and obese women. N Engl J Med 2009 Jan 29;360(5):481-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19179316
11. Deitel M, Stone E, Kassam HA, et al. Gynecologic-obstetric changes after loss of massive excess weight following bariatric surgery. J Am Coll Nutr 1988 Apr;7(2):147-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3361039
12. Burgio KL, Richter HE, Clements RH, et al. Changes in urinary and fecal incontinence symptoms with weight loss surgery in morbidly obese women. Obstet Gynecol 2007 Nov;110(5):1034-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17978117
13. Laungani RG, Seleno N, Carlin AM. Effect of laparoscopic gastric bypass surgery on urinary incontinence in morbidly obese women. Surg Obes Relat Dis 2009 May-Jun;5(3):334-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19342304
14. López M, Ortiz AP, Vargas R. Prevalence of urinary incontinence and its association with body mass index among women in Puerto Rico. J Womens Health (Larchmt) 2009 Oct;18(10):1607-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19788409
15. Mishra GD, Hardy R, Cardozo L, et al. Body weight through adult life and risk of urinary incontinence in middle-aged women: results from a British prospective cohort. Int J Obes (Lond) 2008 Sep;32(9):1415-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18626483

16. Richter HE, Kenton K, Huang L, et al. The impact of obesity on urinary incontinence symptoms, severity, urodynamic characteristics and quality of life. J Urol 2010 Feb;183(2):622-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20018326
17. Sarma AV, Kanaya A, Nyberg LM, et al; Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications Research Group. Risk factors for urinary incontinence among women with type 1 diabetes: findings from the epidemiology of diabetes interventions and complications study. Urology 2009 Jun;73(6):1203-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19362350
18. Auwad W, Steggles P, Bombieri L, et al. Moderate weight loss in obese women with urinary incontinence: a prospective longitudinal study. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Sep;19(9):1251-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18421406

*3.2.5 **Smoking***

The role of smoking and the importance of smoking cessation are discussed in the management of almost every disease. Smoking, especially if > 20 cigarettes per day, is considered to intensify UI.

3.2.5.1 Question

In adults with UI, does smoking cessation improve patient outcomes regarding either urinary symptoms or QoL versus continued smoking?

3.2.5.2 Evidence

Seven published articles were found, all in women, on whether smoking cessation improved patient outcome. There was no RCT, but several population studies were found, including a study including 83,500 people. The studies only provided a comparison of smoking rates between different populations and did not examine the role of smoking cessation.

Four of these studies, totalling more than 110,000 subjects, found an association between smoking and UI, for people smoking > 20 cigarettes per day (1-4). Both former and current cigarette smoking was positively associated with frequent and severe UI, with a stronger relationship in women who were current smokers (2). Other studies involving similar large populations have not shown an association. The effect of smoking cessation on UI was described as uncertain in the latest Cochrane review (5).

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no consistent evidence that smokers are more likely to suffer from UI.	3
There is some evidence that smoking may be associated with more severe UI, but not mild UI.	3
There is no evidence that smoking cessation will improve the symptoms of UI.	4

Recommendations for lifestyle interventions	**GR**
Encourage obese women suffering from any urinary incontinence to lose weight (> 5%).	A
Advise adults with urinary incontinence that reducing caffeine intake may improve symptoms of urgency and frequency but not incontinence.	B
Patients with abnormally high or abnormally low fluid intake should be advised to modify their fluid intake appropriately.	C
Counsel female athletes experiencing urinary incontinence with intense physical activity that it will not predispose to urinary incontinence in later life.	C
Patients with urinary incontinence who smoke should be given smoking cessation advice in line with good medical practice although there is no definite effect on urinary incontinence.	A

3.2.5.3 References

1. Sampselle CM, Harlow SD, Skurnick J, et al. Urinary incontinence predictors and life impact in ethnically diverse perimenopausal women. Obstet Gynecol 2002;100(6):1230-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12468167
2. Danforth KN, Townsend MK, Lifford K, et al. Risk factors for urinary incontinence among middle-aged women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2006;194(2):339-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628262

3. Hannestad YS, Rortveit G, Daltveit AK, et al. Are smoking and other lifestyle factors associated with female urinary incontinence? The Norwegian EPINCONT Study. BJOG 2003 Mar;110(3):247-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12628262
4. Hojberg KE, Salvig JD, Winslow NA, et al. Urinary incontinence: prevalence and risk factors at 16 weeks of gestation. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1999 Aug;106(8):842-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10453836
5. Imamura M, Abrams P, Bain C, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2010 Aug;14(40):1-188, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738930

3.3 Behavioural therapy/scheduled voiding

Scheduled voiding is a treatment programme designed to gradually increase a person's control over voiding function and urgency and to reduce episodes of incontinence. It is also known as bladder drill, bladder discipline, bladder re-education, or BT. The programme also aims to increase a person's self-confidence in bladder function, though this can take months to achieve and may not persist long term unless the programme is maintained.

Different strategies may be used since no single regimen has yet been proven ideal. As well as following a voiding pattern, the patient is instructed on bladder function and fluid intake, including caffeine restriction and bowel habits. Patients may be asked to void according to a fixed voiding schedule. Alternatively, patients may be encouraged to follow a schedule established by their own bladder diary/voiding chart (habit training). 'Timed voiding' is voiding initiated by the patient, while 'prompted voiding' is voiding initiated by the caregiver. Timed and habit voiding are recommended to patients who can void independently.

Bladder training can be offered to any patient with any form of UI, as a first-line therapy for at least a short period of time. The ideal form or intensity of a BT programme for UI is unclear. It is also unclear whether or not BT can prevent the development of UI.

*3.3.1 **Questions***

- Is BT better than no treatment for cure or improvement of UI?
- Is BT better than other conservative treatments for cure or improvement of UI?
- Is BT useful as an adjunct to other conservative treatments for UI?
- Are the benefits of BT durable in the longer term?
- Are there any patient groups for whom BT is more effective?

*3.3.2 **Evidence***

There have been four systematic reviews covering the effect of BT compared to standard care (1-4). Two key RCTs, which compared BT with no intervention, found that UI was improved, but not cured, by timed bladder voiding at intervals of between 2.5 and 4 hours (5,6). However, it is unclear whether these findings also applied to specific groups of individuals with UI. However, another two RCTs reported inconsistent findings regarding treatment adherence(7).

Bladder training has been compared with other treatments for UI in a number of other RCTs. BT alone is as effective in controlling UUI and nocturnal incontinence as oxybutynin, tolterodine and solifenacin (8-13).

Studies have shown that the addition of BT to antimuscarinic therapy gives either no (10,11) or minimal (12) added benefit in terms of improvement of UI compared with antimuscarinic treatment alone. BT combined with antimuscarinic therapy does provide a greater benefit in reducing urinary frequency and nocturia (10,14). BT does not improve an individual's capacity to discontinue drug therapy and maintain improvement of UUI (12). However, the addition of BT to antimuscarinic drugs may increase patient satisfaction with pharmacological treatment (15), including in patients previously dissatisfied with the antimuscarinic treatment (16).

Bladder training combined with pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT) is better than standard care for controlling UI in elderly women living in institutions (17). However, BT alone is inferior to a high-intensity programme of PFMT to improve SUI in elderly women (18). BT is better than intravaginal pessaries to control SUI, although the improvement may only be short term.

Whatever the method of training used, any benefit of BT on UI is likely to be of short duration unless the BT programme is practised repeatedly. No adverse events have been reported with BT.

Evidence summary	LE
There is limited evidence that supervised bladder training is better than no treatment in women with UUI and mixed urinary incontinence.	1b
The effectiveness of bladder training diminishes after the treatment has ceased.	2
There is inconsistent evidence to show whether bladder training is better than drug therapy.	2
The combination of bladder training with antimuscarinic drugs does not result in greater in improvement of UI but may have other benefits.	2
Bladder training is better than pessary alone.	1b
Timed voiding reduces leakage episodes in cognitively impaired men and women.	1b

For recommendations see page 46.

3.3.3 References

1. Abrams P, Andersson KE, Birder L, et al. Fourth International Consultation on Incontinence Recommendations of the International Scientific Committee: evaluation and treatment of urinary incontinence, pelvic organ prolapse, and fecal incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):213-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025020
2. Shamliyan TA, Kane RL, Wyman J, et al. Systematic review: randomized, controlled trials of nonsurgical treatments for urinary incontinence in women. Ann Intern Med 2008 Mar 18;148(6):459-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268288
3. Imamura M, Abrams P, Bain C, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2010;14(40):1-188, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738930
4. National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health (UK). Urinary incontinence. The management of urinary incontinence in women. NICE Clinical Guidelines. No. 40. London: RCOG Press, October 2006. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK57205/
5. Jarvis GJ, Millar DR. Controlled trial of bladder drill for detrusor instability. Br Med J 1980 Nov 15;281(6251):1322-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7002250
6. Fantl JA, Wyman JF, McClish DK, et al. Efficacy of bladder training in older women with urinary incontinence. JAMA 1991 Feb 6;265(5):609-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1987410
7. Colombo M, Zanetta G, Scalambrino S, et al. Oxybutynin and bladder training in the management of female urinary urge incontinence: a randomized study. Int Urogynecol J 1995;6(2):63-7. http://www.springerlink.com/content/p75435j280072j72/
8. Lauti M, Herbison P, Hay-Smith J, et al. Anticholinergic drugs, bladder retraining and their combination for urge urinary incontinence: a pilot randomised trial. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Nov;19(11):1533-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18654731
9. Mattiasson A, Blaakaer J, Hoye K, et al; Tolterodine Scandinavian Study Group. Simplified bladder training augments the effectiveness of tolterodine in patients with an overactive bladder. BJU Int 2003 Jan;91(1):54-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12614251
10. MattiassonA, Masala A, Morton R, et al. Efficacy of simplified bladder training in patients with overactive bladder receiving a solifenacin flexible-dose regimen: results from a randomized study. BJU Int 2009 Oct 10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19818077
11. Fitzgerald MP, Lemack G, Wheeler T, et al; Urinary Incontinence Treatment Network. Nocturia, nocturnal incontinence prevalence, and response to anticholinergic and behavioral therapy. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Nov;19(11):1545-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18704249
12. Burgio KL, Locher JL, Goode PS, et al. Behavioral vs drug treatment for urge urinary incontinence in older women: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 1998 Dec 16;280(23):1995-2000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9863850
13. Goode PS, Burgio KL, Locher JJ, et al. Effect of behavioral training with or without pelvic floor electrical stimulation on stress incontinence in women: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 2003 Jul 16;290(3):345-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12865375

14. Song C, Park JT, Heo KO, et al. Effects of bladder training and/or tolterodine in female patients with overactive bladder syndrome: a prospective, randomized study. J Korean Med Sci 2006 Dec;21(6):1060-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17179687
15. Wallace SA, Roe B, Williams K, et al. Bladder training for urinary incontinence in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004;(1):CD001308. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14973967
16. Klutke CG, Burgio KL, Wyman JF, et al. Combined effects of behavioral intervention and tolterodine in patients dissatisfied with overactive bladder medication. J Urol 2009 Jun;181(6):2599-607. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375110
17. Aslan E, Komurcu N, Beji NK, et al. Bladder training and Kegel exercises for women with urinary complaints living in a rest home. Gerontology 2008;54(4):224-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18483451
18. Sherburn M, Bird M, Carey M, et al. Incontinence improves in older women after intensive pelvic floor muscle training: an assessor-blinded randomized controlled trial. Neurourol Urodyn 2011 Mar;30(3):317-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21284022

3.4 Physical therapies

*3.4.1 **Pelvic floor muscle training (PFMT)***

Pelvic floor muscle training is used to increase the strength and durability of contraction of the pelvic floor muscles. This increases urethral closure pressure and stabilises the urethra, preventing downward movement during moments of increased activity. Patients are sometimes taught to perform 'the knack' of contracting the pelvic floor at moments when predictable UI is likely to occur. Otherwise regular training aims to increase pelvic floor muscle strength. There is some evidence that increasing pelvic floor strength may help to inhibit bladder contraction in patients with an OAB.

Traditionally, following vaginal examination and pelvic floor assessment by a trained professional, patients are taught to contract their pelvic floor muscles, as hard as they can and for as long as they can, and to repeat these exercises a number of times every day. This training can be delivered in many ways, including women teaching themselves (e.g. using an information leaflet), group training in classes, or intensive one-to-one supervision from a highly trained physical therapist. PFMT may be used to prevent UI, e.g. in childbearing women before birth, in men about to undergo radical prostatectomy, or as part of a planned recovery programme after childbirth or surgery. Most often, PFMT is used to treat existing UI, and may be augmented with biofeedback, electrical stimulation or vaginal cones.

3.4.1.1 Methods used to augment PFMT

Biofeedback increases patient awareness of the pelvic floor muscles, using visual, tactile or auditory stimuli, e.g. vaginal manometry or electromyography, and is used to help teach patients to exercise their pelvic floor muscles more effectively. However, there is no guarantee that the signals recorded come from the pelvic floor and digital palpation or ultrasound may provide better reassurance of correct contraction. Biofeedback can be used at home or in an office setting.

In electrical stimulation, surface electrodes supply electrical current to stimulate the pelvic floor muscles via their nerve supply. Electrodes are available in several formats, including vaginal, anal, or skin. Electrical stimulation is often used to help patients recognise their pelvic floor muscles though there is no evidence supporting this concept. It is also used to exercise muscles in the hope of increasing pelvic floor strength. Electrical stimulation can also be used to inhibit overactive detrusor contractions.

Weighted vaginal cones are cone-shaped vaginal inserts of graduated weights. A woman learns first to insert the lightest cone and retain it using pelvic floor contraction. Gradually, she is able to hold increasingly heavy cones as her pelvic floor muscles become stronger.

3.4.1.2 Question

In adult men and women suffering from UI, does treatment with PFMT (given either alone or augmented with biofeedback, electrical stimulation or vaginal cones) improve or cure UI or improve QoL, compared to no treatment, sham treatment or other conservative treatments, e.g. bladder training, electrical stimulation or vaginal cones?

3.4.1.3 Evidence

Although there have been many randomised trials of PFMT, the trials vary widely in terms of quality, mode of delivery, intensity and duration of treatment, and the details of contractions and repetitions.

In a recent UK Health Technology Appraisal, the role of PFMT in the care of women with SUI was analysed in both direct comparisons and a mixed treatment comparison model, which compared different 'packages' of care (1). This extensive meta-analysis reviewed data from 37 interventions and 68 direct comparisons, while the mixed treatment comparisons examined combinations of 14 different types of intervention from 55 separate trials. The mixed treatment comparison used both indirect and direct comparisons and has probably provided more accurate estimates of effect. Where relevant, the Technology Appraisal has influenced the evidence and recommendations in these Guidelines.

3.4.1.4 Efficacy of PFMT in SUI, UUI and MUI in women

This question has been addressed by one Cochrane systematic review (2), which included six RCTs comparing PFMT to no treatment. Three RCTs evaluated PFMT for mixed urinary incontinence (MUI), while the other three RCTs compared a programme of treatment supervised by a professional versus either self-taught PFMT or unsupervised PFMT. There was inconsistency between studies because of poor reporting of technique and different outcome measures. Meta-analysis showed that PFMT achieved cure or improvement of incontinence more often compared to no treatment.

One recent RCT compared interpersonal support and digital vaginal palpation to PFMT and an instruction leaflet, finding superior efficacy for the former group (3). Another recent RCT found that PFMT delivered in a group setting can be as effective as individual treatment (4). Another RCT reported 15-year follow-up outcomes of an earlier RCT, showing that long-term adherence to treatment was poor. Half of patients had progressed to surgery, though the functional outcomes in those who had undergone surgery were less satisfactory than those who did not have surgery (5).

The 4th International Consultation on Incontinence 2009 (6) reviewed studies up to June 2008. This review included the following comparisons:

- vaginal cones: 8 RCTs
- different types of electrical stimulation: 8 RCTs
- BT: 3 RCTs
- different drugs: 4 RCTs
- surgery in which the operation was 'selected' by the surgeon (i.e. inconsistent): 1 RCT.

None of these RCTs were of good quality. In addition, inconsistent reporting of techniques and outcomes makes it difficult to compare studies.

The same review also included comparisons of PFMT with other therapies in women with SUI:

- PFMT versus PFTM + vaginal cones: 2 RCTs
- PFMT versus PFMT + electrical stimulation: 2 small RCTs
- PFMT versus PFMT + biofeedback: 9 RCTs of mixed quality, of which 5 RCTs were clinic-based and 4 RCTs used a home-based biofeedback device. Potential bias was caused by the inconsistent supervision of women between different treatment groups.

There has been one further RCT comparing PFMT + duloxetine versus duloxetine alone versus PFMT alone versus no treatment (6).

These studies, and two additional studies (8,9) were reviewed as part of the 2010 UK Health Technology Appraisal (1), which considered additional data as part of a mixed treatment comparison. The Appraisal resulted in a number of different findings from those based solely on direct comparisons. In conclusion, the Appraisal, using a revised methodology, supported the general principle that greater efficacy was achieved by adding together different types of treatment and increasing intensity.

3.4.1.5 Efficacy of PFMT in childbearing women

The Cochrane review in 2008 (10) reviewed sixteen RCTs in pregnant or post partum women which included PFMT in one arm of the trial. Five of these trials were in post partum women who had developed urinary incontinence. Eight trials reported mixed treatment and prevention groups. Treatment of UI with PFMT in the post partum period inreased the chances of continence at 12 months post partum.

3.4.1.6 Efficacy of PFMT in men with SUI following radical prostatectomy

There has been one systematic review of eleven RCTs. There have been three further RCTs of reasonable quality (11-13). These trials consistently demonstrated improved continence within the first few months after

radical prostatectomy (RP), but not thereafter, suggesting that PFMT speeds the recovery of UI. Two additional RCTs have shown that written instructions alone can achieve the same result (14,15).

3.4.1.7 Preventive value of PFMT in childbearing women and post-RP men

The Cochrane review by Hay Smith (10) reviews five RCTs in which PFMT was started in continent pregnant women. A number of other trials included both prevention and treatment groups in their comparisons. PFMT was found to reduce the risk of incontinence in late pregancny and up to 6 months post partum.

Ten RCTs of variable quality compared the preventative effect of PFMT prior to RP versus various different types of control treatments. These were generally small studies, which were difficult to compare with each other because of different times of delivery and different outcomes (16-24). However, one study was well designed and provided level 2 evidence confirming that pre-operative PFMT speeds recovery of continence post-operatively (25).

PFMT as monotherapy	**LE**
PFMT is better than no treatment for reducing incontinence episodes and improving quality of life in women with SUI, and MUI. There is no evidence that PFMT is better than no treatment in providing a cure.	1
Higher-intensity regimes, or the addition of biofeedback, confer greater benefit, but differences are not sustained long term.	1
A taught/supervised programme of PFMT is more effective than self-taught PFMT.	1
Group-based PFMT is as effective as treatment delivered individually.	1
Short-term benefits of intensive PFMT are not maintained at 15 years' follow-up.	2
PFMT compared with other conservative treatments	**LE**
PFMT results in better reduction in leakage episodes than training using vaginal cones, but no difference in self-reported cure or improvement.	1
PFMT results in fewer incontinence episodes than electrical stimulation.	1
PFMT does not result in measurable improvement in quality of life.	2
PFMT is better than bladder training for improvement of leakage and quality of life, in women with SUI.	2
There is no consistent difference between PFMT and bladder training for women with UUI or MUI.	2
PFMT is as effective as duloxetine in women with SUI and has fewer side effects.	2
PFMT is better tolerated than oxybutynin for UUI.	2
PFMT is better than alpha-blockers for women with SUI.	2
PFMT for UI in childbearing women	**LE**
PFMT commencing in early pregnancy reduces the risk of incontinence in late pregnancy, and up to 6 months post partum.	1
PFMT commencing in the early post partum period improves UI in women for up to 12 months.	1
PFMT for post-prostatectomy incontinence	**LE**
Men undergoing some form of PFMT, before or after radical prostatectomy achieve continence more quickly than non-treated men.	2
There is conflicting evidence on whether the addition of electrical stimulation or biofeedback or supervised training increases the effectiveness of PFMT alone.	2
There is no evidence that pre-operative PFMT prevents UI following radical prostatectomy. As with post-operative PFMT, it appears to lead to earlier recovery of continence.	2
What remains unproven about PFMT	**LE**
There is a lack of evidence about what is the most effective regimen for PFMT.	4
The long-term durability of PFMT, augmented or not by other therapies, remains uncertain in all clinical situations.	4
There is insufficient evidence that adding electrical stimulation or vaginal cones to PFMT alters the efficacy of PFMT alone.	2

3.4.1.8 References

1. Imamura M, Abrams P, Bain C, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2010;14(40):1-188, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738930
2. Dumoulin C, Hay-Smith J. Pelvic floor muscle training versus no treatment for urinary incontinence in women. A Cochrane systematic review. Eur J Phys Rehabil Med 2008 Mar;44(1):47-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18385628
3. Tsai YC, Liu CH. The effectiveness of pelvic floor exercises, digital vaginal palpation and interpersonal support on stress urinary incontinence: an experimental study. Int J Nurs Stud 2009;46(9):1181-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19361800
4. de Oliveira Camargo F, Rodrigues AM, Arruda RM, et al. Pelvic floor muscle training in female stress urinary incontinence: comparison between group training and individual treatment using PERFECT assessment scheme. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Dec;20(12):1455-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19690792
5. Bo K, Kvarstein B, Nygaard I. Lower urinary tract symptoms and pelvic floor muscle exercise adherence after 15 years. Obstet Gynecol 2005 May;105(5 Pt 1):999-1005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15863536
6. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, et al., editors. Incontinence. 4th International Consultation on Incontinence, Paris, July 5-8, 2008. Plymouth: Health Publication Ltd, 2009. http://www.icud.info/incontinence.html
7. Ghoniem GM, Van Leeuwen JS, Elser DM, et al. Duloxetine/Pelvic Floor Muscle Training Clinical Trial Group. A randomized controlled trial of duloxetine alone, pelvic floor muscle training alone, combined treatment and no active treatment in women with stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2005;173(5): 1647-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821528
8. Aukee P, Immonen P, Penttinen J, et al. Increase in pelvic floor muscle activity after 12 weeks' training: a randomized prospective pilot study. Urology 2002;60(6):1020-3; discussion 1023-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12475661
9. Ferguson KL, McKey P, Bishop KR, et al. Stress urinary incontinence: effect of pelvic muscle exercise. Obstet Gynecol 1990 Apr;75(4):671-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2314786
10. Hay-Smith J, Mørkved S, Fairbrother KA, et al. Pelvic floor muscle training for prevention and treatment of urinary and faecal incontinence in antenatal and postnatal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2008 Oct 8;(4):CD007471. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843750
11. Manassero F, Traversi C, Ales V, et al. Contribution of early intensive prolonged pelvic floor exercises on urinary continence recovery after bladder neck-sparing radical prostatectomy: results of a prospective controlled randomized trial. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(7):985-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17487874
12. Marchiori D, Bertaccini A, Manferrari F, et al. Pelvic floor rehabilitation for continence recovery after radical prostatectomy: role of a personal training re-educational program. Anticancer Res 2010 Feb;30(2):553-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20332469
13. Ribeiro LH, Prota C, Gomes CM, et al. Long-term effect of early postoperative pelvic floor biofeedback on continence in men undergoing radical prostatectomy: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):1034-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20643454
14. Moore KN, Valiquette L, Chetner MP, et al. Return to continence after radical retropubic prostatectomy: a randomized trial of verbal and written instructions versus therapist-directed pelvic floor muscle therapy. Urology 2008 Dec;72(6):1280-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18384853
15. Dubbelman Y, Groen J, Wildhagen M, et al. The recovery of urinary continence after radical retropubic prostatectomy: a randomized trial comparing the effect of physiotherapist-guided pelvic floor muscle exercises with guidance by an instruction folder only. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(4):515-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201841
16. Bales GT, Gerber GS, Minor TX, et al. Effect of preoperative biofeedback/pelvic floor training on continence in men undergoing radical prostatectomy. Urology 2000 Oct 1;56(4):627-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11018619

17. Mathewson-Chapman M. Pelvic muscle exercise/biofeedback for urinary incontinence after prostatectomy: an education program. J Cancer Educ 1997 Winter;12(4):218-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9440013
18. Sueppel C, Kreder K, See W. Improved continence outcomes with preoperative pelvic floor muscle strengthening exercises. Urol Nurs 2001 Jun;21(3):201-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11998651
19. Parekh AR, Feng MI, Kirages D, et al. The role of pelvic floor exercises on post-prostatectomy incontinence. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):130-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796664
20. Burgio KL, Goode PS, Urban DA, et al. Preoperative biofeedback assisted behavioral training to decrease post-prostatectomy incontinence: a randomized, controlled trial. J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1): 196-201; discussion 201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406909
21. Filocamo MT, Li Marzi V, Del Popolo G, et al. Effectiveness of early pelvic floor rehabilitation treatment for post-prostatectomy incontinence. Eur Urol 2005 Nov;48(5):734-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16002204
22. Overgard M, Angelsen A, Lydersen S, et al. Does physiotherapist-guided pelvic floor muscle training reduce urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy? A randomised controlled trial. Eur Urol 2008 Aug;54(2):438-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18448233
23. Lilli P, Mercuriali M, Fiori M, et al. Impact of preoperative biofeedback on incontinence in cancer patients undergoing radical prostatectomy. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2006 Sep;78(3):92-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17137022
24. Wille S, Sobottka A, Heidenreich A, et al. Pelvic floor exercises, electrical stimulation and biofeedback after radical prostatectomy: results of a prospective randomized trial. J Urol 2003 Aug;170(2 Pt 1): 490-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12853806
25. Centemero A, Rigatti L, Giraudo D, et al. Preoperative pelvic floor muscle exercise for early continence after radical prostatectomy: a randomised controlled study. Eur Urol 2010 Jun;57(6):1039-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20227168

3.4.2 ***Electrical stimulation (surface electrodes)***

Electrical stimulation with surface electrodes can be delivered vaginally, anally or with skin electrodes on the perineum or suprapubic region. Stimulation parameters vary considerably from one study to another. Generally, low-intensity levels are used in home-based, self-administered therapy and high-intensity levels in clinic-based settings. Maximal stimulation under general anaesthesia has been described. The treatment regimes (number and frequency of sessions) vary considerably.

Electrical stimulation can also be combined with other forms of conservative therapy, e.g. PFMT and biofeedback. Electrical stimulation is often used to assist women who cannot initiate contractions to identify their pelvic floor muscles.

3.4.2.1 Question

In adults with UI, does treatment with electrical stimulation improve or cure symptoms of UI or QoL compared to no treatment or sham treatment?

3.4.2.2 Evidence

Most evidence on electrical stimulation refers to women. Five recent systematic reviews of electrical stimulation were found (1-5), although there was no specific Cochrane review. The five reviews included analysis of 15 RCTs, of which eight were comparisons to no treatment or sham treatment - seven studies were comparisons to other physical or behavioural therapies - and a further eight studies were comparisons of electrical stimulation combined with other therapies, usually PFMT.

The studies were considered to be of generally low quality, with small sample size and a variety of stimulation parameters, treatment regimes and outcome parameters. In addition, most of the studies lacked detail of the statistical methods used, e.g. power calculation. Due to the lack of consistency in the parameters used for electrical stimulation and in the outcome measures, it has not been possible to compare or pool data from most of these studies.

The role of electrical stimulation is complicated by a lack of knowledge of how it might work in UI.

Physiotherapists have used electrical stimulation to help women identify and contract pelvic floor muscles during PFMT. It has been suggested that electrical stimulation probably targets the pelvic floor directly in SUI, and the detrusor muscle or pelvic floor muscle or afferent innervation in UUI.

Evidence summary	LE
The evidence is inconsistent for whether electrical stimulation alone can improve UI.	2

3.4.2.3 References

1. Berghmans LC, Hendriks HJ, Bo K, et al. Conservative treatment of stress urinary incontinence in women: a systematic review of randomized clinical trials. Br J Urol 1998 Aug;82(2):181-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9722751
2. Berghmans LC, Hendriks HJ, De Bie RA, et al. Conservative treatment of urge urinary incontinence in women: a systematic review of randomized clinical trials. BJU Int 2000 Feb;85(3):254-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671878
3. Imamura M, Abrams P, Bain C, et al. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. Health Technol Assess 2010 Aug;14(40):1-188, iii-iv. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738930
4. Shamliyan TA, Kane RL, Wyman J, et al. Systematic review: randomized, controlled trials of nonsurgical treatments for urinary incontinence in women. Ann Intern Med 2008 Mar 18;148(6):459-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268288
5. Abrams P, Andersson KE, Birder L, et al. Fourth International Consultation on Incontinence Recommendations of the International Scientific Committee: Evaluation and treatment of urinary incontinence, pelvic organ prolapse, and fecal incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn. 2010;29(1):213-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025020

*3.4.3 **Magnetic stimulation***

(Extracorporeal) magnetic stimulation stimulates the pelvic floor musculature and/or the sacral roots in a non-invasive way. The patient is seated over a magnetic field generator. This produces a steep gradient magnetic field, which may stimulate the pelvic floor muscles and sphincters. Magnetic stimulation can also be given via a portable electromagnetic device. Magnetic stimulation may be effective in SUI and UUI. The mechanism of action is not understood.

3.4.3.1 Question

In adults with SUI or UUI or MUI, what is the clinical effectiveness of magnetic stimulation versus sham treatment?

3.4.3.2 Evidence

Eight RCTs and two cohort studies have investigated the question of whether magnetic stimulation is effective in UI. The RCTs were mostly of poor quality. The technique of electromagnetic stimulation was poorly standardised and involved different devices, mode of delivery, and stimulation parameters. Blinding was difficult to achieve and this resulted in a high risk of bias in some trials.

Three RCTs induced magnetic stimulation in women with UI, using a coil placed over the sacral foramina. Two were poor-quality RCTs, with a short follow-up and an inconclusive effect in SUI and UUI or OAB (1,2). The third better-quality RCT observed no improvement in UUI or OAB after a longer 12-week follow-up and did not recommend treatment with magnetic stimulation (3).

A portable device (Pulsegen) was compared in two RCTs to sham treatment in women with UI. Inconclusive effects were obtained. Both trials were poor quality with a short follow-up (4,5).

In adult women with SUI, an RCT using the NeoControl chair found no improvement (6). A cohort study for 6 weeks, but with a follow-up of 2 years, showed a moderate improvement in incontinence measured by pad test (7), while another cohort study found no improvement (8). A further poor-quality RCT using the NeoControl chair also found no benefit in women with UUI or OAB (9). No clinical benefits were reported when magnetic stimulation using the NeoControl chair was also compared to functional electrical stimulation with surface electrodes (10).

The negative or inconclusive effects obtained from the reviewed literature were considered to be consistent

and generally applicable to adult women with SUI or UUI. There was a lack of evidence in men with UI.

Evidence summary	LE
There is no consistent evidence of efficacy of magnetic stimulation for the cure or improvement of UI.	2a
There are no reports of adverse events for magnetic stimulation.	1b

3.4.3.3 References

1. Fujishiro T, Enomoto H, Ugawa Y, et al. Magnetic stimulation of the sacral roots for the treatment of stress incontinence: an investigational study and placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4): 1277-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992380
2. Fujishiro T, Takahashi S, Enomoto H, et al. Magnetic stimulation of the sacral roots for the treatment of urinary frequency and urge incontinence: an investigational study and placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1036-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187217
3. O'Reilly BA, Fynes M, Achtari C, et al. A prospective randomised double-blind controlled trial evaluating the effect of trans-sacral magnetic stimulation in women with overactive bladder. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Apr;19(4):497-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17932613
4. But I. Conservative treatment of female urinary incontinence with functional magnetic stimulation. Urology 2003 Mar;61(3):558-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12639647
5. But I, Faganelj M, Sostaric A. Functional magnetic stimulation for mixed urinary incontinence. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1644-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821527
6. Gilling PJ, Wilson LC, Westenberg AM, et al. A double-blind randomized controlled trial of electromagnetic stimulation of the pelvic floor vs sham therapy in the treatment of women with stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2009 May;103(10):1386-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154474
7. Hoscan MB, Dilmen C, Perk H, et al. Extracorporeal magnetic innervation for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence: results of two-year follow-up. Urol Int 2008;81(2):167-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18758214
8. Ismail SI, Forward G, Bastin L, et al. Extracorporeal magnetic energy stimulation of pelvic floor muscles for urodynamic stress incontinence of urine in women. J Obstet Gynaecol 2009 Jan;29(1): 35-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19280493
9. Morris AR, O'Sullivan R, Dunkley P, et al. Extracorporeal magnetic stimulation is of limited clinical benefit to women with idiopathic detrusor overactivity: a randomized sham controlled trial. Eur Urol 2007 Sep;52(3):876-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17335962
10. Yamanishi T, Sakakibara R, Uchiyama T, et al. Comparative study of the effects of magnetic versus electrical stimulation on inhibition of detrusor overactivity. Urology 2000 Nov;56(5):777-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11068300

*3.4.4 **Posterior (percutaneous) tibial nerve stimulation***

Electrical stimulation of the posterior tibial nerve (PTNS) delivers electrical stimuli to the sacral micturition centre via the S2-S4 sacral nerve plexus. The PTNS is stimulated with a fine, 34-G, needle, which is inserted just above the medial aspect of the ankle (equivalent to the SP6 acupuncture point). Treatment cycles typically consist of 12-weekly treatments of 30 minutes. PTNS may be effective in patients with UUI.

3.4.4.1 Question

In adults suffering from UUI, what is the clinical effectiveness of PTNS compared to sham treatment or antimuscarinic drug treatment?

3.4.4.2 Evidence

Seven studies were reviewed, including two RCTs of PTNS against sham treatment (1,2) and one comparing PTNS to tolterodine in patients with UUI (3). Four relevant case series were also included because they were either extension studies of an RCT population (5-7) or provided data on a large sample. Other studies of PTNS in UUI were excluded because of an inadequate study design (small case series, case series with no follow-up)

or a lack of relevance (series with combination treatment, reviews or studies from which specific results in UUI patients could not be extracted).

The results of studies of PTNS in women with refractory UUI are consistent. Considered together, these results allow the conclusion that that PTNS has a benefit in women with UUI not able to tolerate antimuscarinic therapy. However, there is no evidence of benefit for women who do not respond to antimuscarinic therapy. In men there is insufficient data to make a conclusion about efficacy.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There are not enough data to make a conclusion about the effectiveness of PTNS in men.	4
PTNS is effective in women with UUI, who cannot tolerate anticholinergic medication.	2a
PTNS does not give benefit for women with UUI who have not responded to anticholinergic medication.	1b
No serious adverse events have been reported for PTNS in UUI.	2a

Recommendations for behavioural and physical therapies	**GR**
Offer supervised PFMT, lasting at least 3 months, as a first-line therapy to women with stress or mixed urinary incontinence.	A
PFMT programmes should be as intensive as possible.	A
Consider using biofeedback as an adjunct in women with stress urinary incontinence.	A
Offer supervised PFMT to continent women in their first pregnancy to help prevent incontinence in the postnatal period.	A
Offer instruction on pelvic floor exercises to men undergoing radical prostatectomy to speed recovery of urinary incontinence.	B
Offer bladder training as a first-line therapy to adults with urgency urinary incontinence or mixed urinary incontinence.	A
Offer timed voiding to adults with urinary incontinence, who are cognitively impaired.	A
Do not offer electrical stimulation with surface electrodes (skin, vaginal, anal) alone for the treatment of urinary incontinence.	A
Do not offer magnetic stimulation for the treatment of urinary incontinence or overactive bladder in adult women.	B
Offer PTNS to women with urgency urinary incontinence who cannot tolerate anticholinergic medication.	A

PFMT = pelvic floor muscle training; PTNS = posterior tibial nerve stimulation.

3.4.4.3 Research priorities

There is a need for well-designed studies of both electrical stimulation and magnetic stimulation in adults with UI.

3.4.4.4 References

1. Finazzi-Agro E, Petta F, Sciobica F, et al. Percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation effects on detrusor overactivity incontinence are not due to a placebo effect: a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2010 Nov;184(5):2001-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20850833
2. Peters KM, Carrico DJ, Perez-Marrero RA, et al. Randomized trial of percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation versus Sham efficacy in the treatment of overactive bladder syndrome: results from the SUmiT trial. J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1438-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171677
3. Peters KM, Macdiarmid SA, Wooldridge LS, et al. Randomized trial of percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation versus extended-release tolterodine: results from the overactive bladder innovative therapy trial. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):1055-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616802

4. MacDiarmid SA, Peters KM, Shobeiri SA, et al. Long-term durability of percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation for the treatment of overactive bladder. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):234-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913821
5. Vandoninck V, Van Balken MR, Finazzi Agro E, et al. Posterior tibial nerve stimulation in the treatment of urge incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(1):17-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478596
6. Vandoninck V, Van Balken MR, Finazzi Agro E, et al. Percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation in the treatment of overactive bladder: urodynamic data. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(3):227-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12707873
7. Congregado Ruiz B, Pena Outeirino XM, Campoy Martinez P, et al. Peripheral afferent nerve stimulation for treatment of lower urinary tract irritative symptoms. Eur Urol 2004 Jan;45(1):65-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14667518

4. DRUG TREATMENT

4.1 Antimuscarinic drugs

Antimuscarinic drugs are currently the mainstay of treatment for UUI. They act by blocking muscarinic receptors in the bladder wall. This reduces detrusor contractility and also alters sensation. Antimuscarinic agents differ in their pharmacological profiles, e.g. muscarinic receptor affinity and other modes of action, in their pharmacokinetic properties, e.g. lipid solubility and half-life, and in their formulation, e.g. immediate release (IR) or extended release (ER) and transdermal.

The evaluation of cure/improvement of UI using oxybutynin and tolterodine IR formulations is made harder by the lack of a standard definition of improvement. Outcome measures vary and are not standardised, and never use 'cure' as a primary outcome. Meta-analysis of the published evidence is therefore not always possible.

There have been many publications of variable quality about the pharmacological treatment of the overactive bladder (OAB), including several systematic reviews and meta-analyses. The systematic reviews, published in 2009 (1), on behalf of the US Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) and the Oregon Health and Science University (2), have collated together much of the relevant evidence. As well as the studies included in these reviews, the Panel have examined studies published since these reviews up until July 2010.

Dry mouth is the commonest side effect though others include constipation, blurred vision, fatigue and congnitive dysfuction. When people have a dry mouth they may be inclined to drink more but it is not clear whether this adversely influences the effect of the drug.

*4.1.1 **Immediate-release antimuscarinic agents***

The IR formulation of oxybutynin is the prototype drug in the treatment of UUI. Oxybutynin IR provides maximum dosage flexibility, including an off-label 'on-demand' use. Immediate-release drugs have been the only available formulation for many years. They have a greater risk of side effects than ER formulations because of their higher plasma peak levels. A transdermal delivery system (TDS) and gel developed for oxybutynin has improved its safety profile while maintaining efficacy.

4.1.1.1 Question

In adults with UI, are IR formulations of antimuscarinic drugs, and TDS application of oxybutynin, more effective than placebo in reducing UI episodes and achieving continence?

4.1.1.2 Evidence

Four systematic reviews of individual antimuscarinic drugs versus placebo were included by the Panel for this section (1-4).

A systematic review and meta-analysis by Chapple et al. in 2008 (2), which updated previous reviews, showed that oxybutynin IR versus placebo was better for improvement and cure of UUI. In patients receiving oxybutynin IR, 15 mg daily, there were statistically significant improvements compared to placebo. However, the absolute changes in incontinence episodes were small. Treated patients were 3.53 times more likely to achieve complete continence than controls (7-11). Similar changes have been reported for tolterodine IR, 4 mg daily, versus placebo (12-20), although the changes reported for tolterodine IR, 2 mg daily, were smaller

than for the higher dose (15-19). With propiverine IR, a cure of incontinence was 1.8 times more likely than with placebo (21-23). For trospium IR, no cure rates were available (24).

Randomised controlled trials of oxybutynin TDS versus placebo and other oral formulations have shown a significant improvement in the number of incontinence episodes and micturitions per day.

In Staskin et al. oxybutynin topical gel was superior to placebo for improvement of UUI with a higher proportion of participants being cured (25).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Oxybutynin IR and transdermal, tolterodine IR, and propiverine IR provide a significantly better rate of cure/improvement compared to placebo.	1a
Trospium IR provides significantly better reduction in incontinence episodes than placebo.	1a

4.1.1.3 References

1. Chapple CR, Khullar V, Gabriel Z, et al. The effects of antimuscarinic treatments in overactive bladder: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Urol 2005 Jul;48(1):5-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15885877
2. Chapple CR, Khullar V, Gabriel Z, et al. The effects of antimuscarinic treatments in overactive bladder: an update of a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Urol 2008;54(3):543-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18599186
3. Hartmann KE, McPheeters ML, Biller DH, et al. Treatment of overactive bladder in women. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Full Rep). 2009 Aug;(187):1-120, v. [Comparative study review] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947666
4. Herbison P, Hay-Smith J, Ellis G, et al. Effectiveness of anticholinergic drugs compared with placebo in the treatment of overactive bladder: systematic review. BMJ 2003 Apr 19;326(7394):841-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12702614
5. Nabi G, Cody JD, Ellis G, et al. Anticholinergic drugs versus placebo for overactive bladder syndrome in adults. [Meta-analysis review.] Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Oct 18;(4):CD003781. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17054185
6. McDonagh MS, Selover D, Santa J, et al. Drug class review: agents for overactive bladder. Final report. Update 4. Portland, Oregon: Oregon Health & Science University, 2009 Mar. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK47183/
7. Homma Y, Paick JS, Lee JG, et al. Clinical efficacy and tolerability of extended-release tolterodine and immediate-release oxybutynin in Japanese and Korean patients with an overactive bladder: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2003 Nov;92(7):741-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14616458
8. Moore KH, Goldstein M, Hay D. The treatment of detrusor instability in postmenopausal women with oxybutynin chloride: a double blind placebo controlled study. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1990 Nov;97(11):1063-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2082973
9. Szonyi G, Collas DM, Ding YY, et al. Oxybutynin with bladder retraining for detrusor instability in elderly people: a randomized controlled trial. Age Ageing 1995 Jul;24(4):287-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7484484
10. Tapp AJ, Cardozo LD, Versi E, et al. The treatment of detrusor instability in post-menopausal women with oxybutynin chloride: a double blind placebo controlled study. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1990 Jun;97(6):521-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2198921
11. Thuroff JW, Bunke B, Ebner A, et al. Randomized, double-blind, multicenter trial on treatment of frequency, urgency and incontinence related to detrusor hyperactivity: oxybutynin versus propantheline versus placebo. J Urol 1991 Apr;145(4):813-6; discussion 816-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2005707

12. Abrams P, Freeman R, Anderstrom C, et al. Tolterodine, a new antimuscarinic agent: as effective but better tolerated than oxybutynin in patients with an overactive bladder. Br J Urol 1998 Jun;81(6): 801-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9666761
13. Abrams P, Malone-Lee J, Jacquetin B, et al. Twelve-month treatment of overactive bladder: efficacy and tolerability of tolterodine. Drugs Aging 2001;18(7):551-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11482747
14. Drutz HP, Appell RA, Gleason D, et al. Clinical efficacy and safety of tolterodine compared to oxybutynin and placebo in patients with overactive bladder. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1999;10(5):283-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10543335
15. Jacquetin B, Wyndaele J. Tolterodine reduces the number of urge incontinence episodes in patients with an overactive bladder. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2001 Sep;98(1):97-102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11516807
16. Jonas U, Hofner K, Madersbacher H, et al. Efficacy and safety of two doses of tolterodine versus placebo in patients with detrusor overactivity and symptoms of frequency, urge incontinence, and urgency: urodynamic evaluation. The International Study Group. World J Urol 1997;15(2):144-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144906
17. Malone-Lee JG, Walsh JB, Maugourd MF. Tolterodine: a safe and effective treatment for older patients with overactive bladder. J Am Geriatr Soc 2001 Jun;49(6):700-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11454106
18. Millard R, Tuttle J, Moore K, et al. Clinical efficacy and safety of tolterodine compared to placebo in detrusor overactivity. J Urol 1999 May;161(5):1551-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210394
19. Rentzhog L, Stanton SL, Cardozo L, et al. Efficacy and safety of tolterodine in patients with detrusor instability: a dose-ranging study. Br J Urol 1998 Jan;81(1):42-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9467475
20. Van Kerrebroeck P, Kreder K, Jonas U, et al; Tolterodine Study Group. Tolterodine once-daily: superior efficacy and tolerability in the treatment of the overactive bladder. Urology 2001 Mar;57(3):414-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubed/11248608
21. Dorschner W, Stolzenburg JU, Griebenow R, et al. Efficacy and cardiac safety of propiverine in elderly patients-a double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical study. Eur Urol 2000 Jun;37(6):702-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10828671
22. Halaska M, Martan A, Voigt R, et al. [Tolerance and effectiveness of propiverine hydrochloride in 752 patients with symptoms of detrusor hyperactivity and increased sensitivity and irritability of the urinary bladder: results of a study monitoring drug utilization]. Ceska Gynekol 1997 Oct;62(5):259-64. [Czech]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9600163
23. Junemann KP, Hessdorfer E, Unamba-Oparah I, et al. Propiverine hydrochloride immediate and extended release: comparison of efficacy and tolerability in patients with overactive bladder. Urol Int 2006;77(4):334-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17135784
24. Zinner N, Gittelman M, Harris R, et al. Trospium chloride improves overactive bladder symptoms: a multicenter phase III trial. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2311-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126811
25. Staskin DR, Dmochowski RR, Sand PK, et al. Efficacy and safety of oxybutynin chloride topical gel for overactive bladder: a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled, multicenter study. J Urol 2009 Apr;181(4):1764-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19233423

*4.1.2 **Extended-release and longer-acting antimuscarinic agents***

4.1.2.1 Question

In men and women with UUI, do oral extended-release and longer-acting antimuscarinic drugs cure or improve the symptoms of UUI compared with no treatment?

4.1.2.2 Evidence

Most studies included patients with OAB, with a mean age of 55-60 years. Because most patients were women, the results can be generalised to women, but not to men. The reported rates for improvement or cure of UUI were only short term (up to 12 weeks). The evidence reviewed was consistent, indicating that ER formulations of antimuscarinics offer clinically significant short-term cure rates and improvement rates for UUI.

A comprehensive review of antimuscarinic therapy by the AHRQ was published in 2009. The references to individual RCTs included in this review have not been listed separately for this section (1).

Darifenacin
Two RCTs compared darifenacin to placebo, involving 838 patients (681 women). One study included only patients older than 65 years. The second study by Hill et al. found that darifenacin was superior to placebo for cure of UUI. No new data comparing darifenacin with placebo have been published since the AHRQ and Oregon Health and Science University systematic reviews, published in 2009 (1,2).

Fesoterodine
Two randomised trials have been reported since the AHRQ review (4,5). Both trials compared fesoterodine, 8 mg/day, versus tolterodine ER, 4 mg/day, versus placebo. The first study reported higher cure rates with fesoterodine than with placebo, but also higher rates of dry mouth. In the second study, the cure rates were also higher than with placebo, but again with higher rates of dry mouth. These trials are consistent with previous reports showing the effectiveness of fesoterodine compared to no treatment (placebo) described in the AHRQ and Oregon systematic reviews (1-3).

Oxybutynin
None of the identified studies that compared oxybutynin ER with placebo included incontinence as a measured outcome. One study reported that oxybutynin ER produced less cognitive disturbance than placebo (6).

Tolterodine
A study of mostly women (n = 361) compared tolterodine ER, transcutaneous oxybutynin, and placebo (7). Tolterodine ER resulted in a significantly higher chance of cure than placebo. Another study (8) in 337 incontinent men and women calculated the daytime incontinence outcomes in a secondary analysis of data from a previous study of tolterodine ER in OAB with nocturia. The analysis found higher cure rates of UUI using tolterodine ER. These data are consistent with the studies summarised in the AHRQ and Oregon systematic reviews (1,2) showing that tolterodine was effective for improvement of UUI compared to placebo.

Propiverine
We found three RCTs comparing propiverine ER with placebo, all with improvement of UUI as an outcome (9-11). All trials showed propiverine ER had a significant benefit over placebo in terms of improvement (11) and cure (9,10). Adverse effects reported included dry mouth and a prolonged QTc interval (9,10).

Solifenacin
Karram et al. reported a study in 707 patients comparing solifenacin and placebo, although their primary outcome measure was urgency rather than incontinence (12). Cure rates for urgency were 58% for solifenacin and 42% for placebo. Concerning an improvement in UUI, there have been no high-quality studies published since the AHRQ and Oregon systematic reviews (1,2), which already contained useful data on improvement in UI with solifenacin.

Trospium
Several authors (13-15) have done a secondary analysis of two previously published studies of trospium ER versus placebo (16,17). Cure rates for UUI were reported as 21% with trospium ER and 11% with placebo (14).

Evidence summary	**LE**
ER formulations of antimuscarinic agents are effective for improvement and cure of UUI.	1b
ER formulations of antimuscarinic agents result in higher rates of dry mouth compared to placebo.	1b
The clinical significance of prolonged QT for propiverine is uncertain.	3

4.1.2.3 References

1. Hartmann KE, McPeeters ML, Biller DH, et al. Treatment of overactive bladder in women. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Full Rep). 2009 Aug;(187):1-120, v. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947666
2. McDonagh MS, Selover D, Santa J, et al. Drug class review: agents for overactive bladder. Final report. Update 4. Portland, Oregon: Oregon Health & Science University, 2009 Mar. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21089246

3. Dmochowski RR, Peters KM, Morrow JD, et al. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of flexible-dose fesoterodine in subjects with overactive bladder. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):62-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19931895
4. Herschorn S, Swift S, Guan Z, et al. Comparison of fesoterodine and tolterodine extended release for the treatment of overactive bladder: a head-to-head placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2010;105(1): 58-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20132103
5. Kaplan SA, Schneider T, Foote JE, et al. Superior efficacy of fesoterodine over tolterodine extended release with rapid onset: a prospective, head-to-head, placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2011 May;107(9):1432-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20860717
6. Lackner TE, Wyman JF, McCarthy TC, et al. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of the cognitive effect, safety, and tolerability of oral extended-release oxybutynin in cognitively impaired nursing home residents with urge urinary incontinence. J Am Geriatr Soc 2008 May;56(5):862-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18410326
7. Dmochowski RR, Sand PK, Zinner NR, et al.; Transdermal Oxybutynin Study Group. Comparative efficacy and safety of transdermal oxybutynin and oral tolterodine versus placebo in previously treated patients with urge and mixed urinary incontinence. Urology 2003 Aug;62(2):237-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12893326
8. Rovner ES, Rackley R, Nitti VW, et al. Tolterodine extended release is efficacious in continent and incontinent subjects with overactive bladder. Urology 2008 Sep;72(3):488-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639327
9. Junemann KP, Hessdorfer E, Unamba-Oparah I, et al. Propiverine hydrochloride immediate and extended release: comparison of efficacy and tolerability in patients with overactive bladder. Urol Int 2006;77(4):334-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17135784
10. Yamaguchi O, Marui E, Kakizaki H, et al. Randomized, double-blind, placebo- and propiverine-controlled trial of the once-daily antimuscarinic agent solifenacin in Japanese patients with overactive bladder. BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):579-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17669143
11. Homma Y, Yamaguchi O; Imidafenacin Study Group. A randomized, double-blind, placebo- and propiverine-controlled trial of the novel antimuscarinic agent imidafenacin in Japanese patients with overactive bladder. Int J Urol 2009 May;16(5):499-506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19389083
12. Karram MM, Toglia MR, Serels SR, et al. Treatment with solifenacin increases warning time and improves symptoms of overactive bladder: results from VENUS, a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Urology 2009 Jan;73(1):14-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18995887
13. Staskin DR, Rosenberg MT, Sand PK, et al. Trospium chloride once-daily extended release is effective and well tolerated for the treatment of overactive bladder syndrome: an integrated analysis of two randomised, phase III trials. Int J Clin Pract 2009;63(12):1715-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19930332
14. Staskin DR, Cardozo L. Baseline incontinence severity is predictive of the percentage of patients continent after receiving once-daily trospium chloride extended release. Int J Clin Pract 2009;63(6):973-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19459997
15. Sand PK, Dmochowski RR, Zinner NR, et al. Trospium chloride extended release is effective and well tolerated in women with overactive bladder syndrome. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Dec;20(12):1431-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19727537
16. Dmochowski RR, Sand PK, Zinner NR, et al. Trospium 60 mg once daily (QD) for overactive bladder syndrome: results from a placebo-controlled interventional study. Urology 2008 Mar;71(3):449-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18342185
17. Staskin D, Sand P, Zinner N, et al. Once daily trospium chloride is effective and well tolerated for the treatment of overactive bladder: results from a multicenter phase III trial. J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3 Pt 1):978-83; discussion 983-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17632131

4.2 Comparison of antimuscarinic agents

Head-to-head comparison trials of the efficacy and side effects of different antimuscarinic agents can help clinicians and patients to decide on the best initial agent to use, and the most appropriate second-line agent to try if the initial agent provides little benefit or has troublesome side effects.

4.2.1 ***Question***

In adults with UUI, does one type of antimuscarinic drug result in a greater likelihood of cure or improvement in UUI, and/or a greater improvement in QoL, and/or a lesser likelihood of adverse effects compared to an alternative antimuscarinic drug?

4.2.2 ***Evidence***

There is a considerable body of evidence covering this question, comprising over 40 RCTs and five systematic reviews. Nearly all the primary studies have been funded and sponsored by the manufacturer of the newer drug under evaluation, which forms the experimental arm of the RCT. It was noted that upward dose titration is often included in the protocol for the experimental arm, but not for the comparator arm (Table 4).

Table 4: Description of trials comparing antimuscarinic agents

Comparison of agents	No. of trials
Experimental IR agent vs. standard IR drug	11
Experimental ER agents vs. standard IR drug	19
Experimental ER agents vs. standard ER drug	12
Transcutaneous oxybutynin vs. standard IR oral drug	1
Transcutaneous oxybutynin vs. standard oral ER drug	1

In general, these studies have been designed for regulatory approval. They have a short treatment duration of typically 12 weeks and a primary outcome of a change in OAB symptoms rather than a cure of, or an improvement in, UUI, which were generally analysed as secondary outcomes. It is therefore difficult to use the results from these trials in daily clinical practice to select the best first-line drug or second-line alternative following the failure of initial treatment. A quality assessment carried out as part of the most recent systematic review (1) found that all the trials were of low or moderate quality.

Two, recent, high-quality systematic reviews from the USA included RCTs published up to the end of October 2008 (1,2). One review specifically addressed evidence of the comparative efficacy of antimuscarinic drugs (2). A European review included drugs not available in the USA and included literature published up to the end of August 2008 (3). Both reviews broadly agreed with two earlier reviews (4,5). Between December 2008 and July 2010 (the literature search cut-off date for the present review), two further relevant trials were published (6,9).

For cure of UI, there was weak evidence that oxybutynin ER was more effective than tolterodine ER (1,7). Three recent studies found some evidence that fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, was better than tolterodine ER, 4 mg daily, for cure of UI (6,8,9).

For improvement in UI, there was weak evidence that both oxybutynin ER and tolterodine ER were superior to tolterodine IR (2,3), and that oxybutynin ER was superior to tolterodine ER (3,7). The meta-analysis by Chapple et al. (4), which concluded that solifenacin was better than tolterodine IR for improving UI, has been challenged by more recent systematic reviews, which have concluded that there is no difference (1,2). Evidence from two trials where improvement in UI was the primary outcome suggests greater benefit is obtained with fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, compared with tolterodine ER, 4 mg daily (6,10). All other comparisons showed no difference in efficacy for improvement of UI.

There was no evidence that any one antimuscarinic agent improved QoL more than another agent (1).

Dry mouth is the most prevalent and most studied adverse effect of antimuscarinic agents. Good evidence indicates that, in general, ER formulations of both short-acting drugs and longer-acting drugs are associated with lower rates of dry mouth than IR preparations (1,3). Oxybutynin IR showed higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine IR and trospium IR, but lower rates of dry mouth than darifenacin, 15 mg daily (1,3). Overall, oxybutynin ER had higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine ER, but generally oxybutynin did not have higher rates for moderate or severe dry mouth. Transdermal oxybutynin was associated with a lower rate of dry mouth

than oxybutynin IR and tolterodine ER, but had an overall higher rate of withdrawal due to an adverse skin reaction (1). Solifenacin, 10 mg daily, had higher rates of dry mouth than tolterodine ER (1). Fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, had a higher rate of dry mouth than tolterodine, 4 mg daily (6,10). In general, discontinuation rates were similar for each treatment arm in comparative RCTs, irrespective of differences in the occurrence of dry mouth.

In conclusion, there is no consistent evidence for the superiority of one antimuscarinic agent over another for the cure or improvement of UI. Recent trials with incontinence as the primary outcome suggest that fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, is superior to tolterodine ER, 4 mg daily, but meta-analysis is required to determine the size of effect. There is good evidence that ER, once-daily, and transdermal preparations, are associated with lower rates of dry mouth than ER preparations, although discontinuation rates are similar.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no consistent evidence that one antimuscarinic drug is superior to an alternative antimuscarinic drug for cure or improvement of UUI.	1a
The ER formulation of oxybutynin is superior to the ER and IR formulations of tolterodine for improvement of UUI.	1b
Fesoterodine, 8 mg daily, is more effective than tolterodine ER, 4 mg daily, for cure and improvement of UUI.	1b
ER and once-daily formulations of antimuscarinic drugs are generally associated with lower rates of dry mouth than IR preparations, although discontinuation rates are similar.	1b
A transdermal oxybutynin (patch) is associated with lower rates of dry mouth than oral antimuscarinic drugs, but has a high rate of withdrawal due to skin reaction.	1b
Oxybutynin IR or ER shows higher rates of dry mouth than the equivalent formulation of tolterodine.	1a
There is no evidence that any particular antimuscarinic agent is superior to another for improvement in QoL.	1a

4.2.3 ***References***

1. McDonagh MS, Selover D, Santa J, et al. Drug Class Review. Agents for overactive bladder. Final report. Update 4. Portland, Oregon: Oregon Health & Science University, 2009 Mar. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21089246
2. Hartmann KE, McPeeters ML, Biller DH, et al. Treatment of overactive bladder in women. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Full Rep). 2009 Aug;(187):1-120, v. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947666
3. Novara G. Galfano A, Secco S, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials with antimuscarinic drugs for overactive bladder. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):740-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18632201
4. Chapple C, Khullar V, Gabriel Z, et al. The effects of antimuscarinic treatments in overactive bladder: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Urol 2005 Jul;48(1):5-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15885877
5. Hay-Smith J, Herbison P, Ellis G, et al. Which anticholinergic drug for overactive bladder symptoms in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Jul 20;(3):CD005429. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034974
6. Herschorn S, Swift S, Guan Z, et al. Comparison of fesoterodine and tolterodine extended release for the treatment of overactive bladder: a head-to-head placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2010 Jan;105(1):58-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20132103
7. Chapple CR, Khullar V, Gabriel Z, et al. The effects of antimuscarinic treatments in overactive bladder: an update of a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Urol 2008 Sep;54(3):543-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18599186
8. Chapple CR, Van Kerrebroeck PE, Junemann KP, et al. Comparison of fesoterodine and tolterodine in patients with overactive bladder. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(9):1128-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18647298
9. Kaplan SA, Schneider T, Foote JE, et al. Superior efficacy of fesoterodine over tolterodine extended release with rapid onset: a prospective, head-to-head, placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2011 May;107(9):1432-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20860717

10. Chapple CR, Van Kerrebroeck P, Tubaro A. Clinical efficacy, safety, and tolerability of once-daily fesoterodine in subjects with overactive bladder. Eur Urol 2007 Oct;52(4):1204-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17651893

4.3 Antimuscarinic drugs versus non-drug treatment

The choice of drug versus non-drug treatment of UUI is an important question for many clinicians. Especially in less economically developed countries, conservative treatment remains a cheap, effective alternative treatment to drug therapy, with a low risk of side effects.

4.3.1 ***Question***

In adults with UUI, does one type of antimuscarinic drug result in a greater likelihood of cure or improvement in UUI and/or greater improvement in QoL, and/or lesser likelihood of adverse effects compared to an alternative non-drug treatment?

4.3.2 ***Evidence***

There is a large body of evidence comparing non-drug and drug treatment, including more than 100 RCTs and four, recently published, high-quality reviews (1-4). Most of these studies were not funded by the pharmaceutical industry, whose main focus is on drug treatment rather than on conservative treatment.

The US Health Technology Appraisal found that trials were of low- or moderate-quality with none categorised as high quality. The main focus of the review was to compare the different drugs used to treat UUI. Non-drug treatments were mentioned only in the evidence tables for the treatment of UUI. This review included studies comparing behavioural and pharmacological treatments. Nine studies, including one prospective cohort study and eight RCTs, provided direct comparisons between behavioural and pharmacological treatment arms. The behavioural approaches included bladder training, multicomponent behavioural approaches and electrical stimulation. Only one of these studies showed superiority for behavioural therapy. In one study, multicomponent behavioural modification produced significantly greater reductions in incontinence episodes compared to oxybutynin, and higher patient satisfaction for behavioural versus drug treatment.

The Health Technology Appraisal included a comparison between procedural and pharmaceutical treatments, including one RCT that showed a substantial benefit for sacral neuromodulation compared with medical therapy (5).

The most recently published systematic review in 2010 (3) found that medication was less effective than behavioural therapy in a comparative effectiveness trial (81% vs. 69% reduction in UI episodes). In addition, the use of antimuscarinic agents had side effects.

Two older RCTs (6,7), in only small patient groups, reported a similar improvement in subjective parameters with either transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation or Stoller afferent nerve stimulation. However, only oxybutynin-treated patients showed significant improvements in objective urodynamic parameters (capacity). The oxybutynin-treated group had more side effects.

An important question addressed by multiple studies is how well the combination of antimuscarinic drugs and behavioural therapy compare to either treatment alone. This has been previously discussed in Section 3.3 Behavioural therapy/scheduled voiding. In summary, although medication may enhance the effect of behavioural therapy, there is no evidence that behavioural therapy enhances the effect of drugs.

In conclusion, there is no consistent evidence for the superiority of antimuscarinic drugs over non-drug treatments, especially behavioural treatment. More side effects have been reported for drug therapy compared to non-drug treatment. Electrical stimulation appears to be inferior to other treatment alternatives. Several trials have suggested that a combination of drug and behavioural therapy produce the best results, including in long-term follow-up.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no consistent evidence to show superiority of drug therapy or behavioural therapy.	1b
Behavioural treatment results in increased patient satisfaction versus drug treatment alone.	1b

4.3.3 ***References***

1. McDonagh MS, Selover D, Santa J, et al. Drug class review: agents for overactive bladder. Final report. Update 4. Portland, Oregon: Oregon Health & Science University, 2009 Mar. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21089246
2. Hartmann KE, McPeeters ML, Biller DH, et al. Treatment of overactive bladder in women. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Full Rep) 2009 Aug;(187):1-120, v. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947666
3. Goode PS, Burgio KL, Richter HE, et al. Incontinence in older women. JAMA 2010 Jun 2;303(21): 2172-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20516418
4. Shamliyan TA, Kane RL, Wyman J, et al. Systematic review: randomized, controlled trials of nonsurgical treatments for urinary incontinence in women. Ann Intern Med 2008 Mar 18;148(6):459-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268288
5. Schmidt RA, Jonas U, Oleson KA, et al. Sacral nerve stimulation for treatment of refractory urinary urge incontinence. Sacral Nerve Stimulation Study Group. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):352-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411037
6. Soomro NA, Khadra MH, Robson W, et al. A crossover randomized controlled trial of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation and oxybutynin in patients with detrusor instability. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):146-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435843
7. Svihra J, Kurca E, Luptak J, et al. Neuromodulative treatment of overactive bladder-noninvasive tibial nerve stimulation. Bratisl Lek Listy 2002;103(12):480-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12696778

4.4 Antimuscarinic agents: adherence and persistence

Most studies on antimuscarinic medication provide information only about short-term outcomes (12 weeks), with a smaller number of trials providing longer-term follow-up data. However, it is recognised that in clinical practice many patients stop taking their medication rather more readily than tends to occur in RCTs, where the methodology tends to enhance adherence to allocated medication.

4.4.1 ***Question***

Do patients with UUI adhere to antimuscarinic drug treatment and persist with prescribed treatment everyday clinical practice?

4.4.2 ***Evidence***

Twelve papers have been published on adherence/persistence to antimuscarinic medication in everyday clinical practice (1-12). Ten papers used established pharmaco-epidemiological parameters (1-7,9-11), including:

- Persistence. This is calculated from the index date until the patient discontinues treatment or is lost to follow-up, or the maximum follow-up period has ended, whichever occurs first.
- Medication possession rate (MPR). This is the total days of medication dispensed, except for the last refill, divided by the number of days between the first date on which medication was dispensed and the last refill date.
- Adherence ratio (MPR $\geq$ 0.8). This is the percentage of patients with MPR $\geq$ 0.8.

One study was in an open-label extension population (8). One study used only self-reports of patients and did not follow patients from the start of treatment (12). Most of the data was not derived from RCTs, but from pharmacy refill records. Pharmacy records are likely to overestimate adherence and persistence, because it is often not clear whether patients have been monitored from the start of treatment or whether monitoring (for the purpose of the study) was started in patients already taking the drug for some time and therefore defined as persistent users.

The main drugs studied in adherence/persistence trials were oxybutynin IR and ER and tolterodine IR and ER. These reviews demonstrated high non-persistence rates for tolterodine at 12 months, and particularly high rates (68-95%) for oxybutynin (1-3,5,6).

Five articles reported 'median days to discontinuation' as between < 30 days and 50 days (2,3,5,6,10), with one study reporting 273 days in a military health system (which provides patients with free medication) (6).

Only one RCT (8) included solifenacin, darifenacin and trospium. The only open-label extension study included

in the review also studied solifenacin, darifenacin and trospium. However, determining adherence/persistence in an open-label extension population is not the preferred methodology, as these patients will not have been monitored from the start of treatment and are therefore self-selected as persistent patients.

Several of the RCT trials tried to identify the factors associated with a lower, or low, adherence or persistence of antimuscarinic agents (2,6,7,9). These were identified in order of importance as:

- low level of efficacy (41.3%);
- adverse events (22.4%);
- cost (18.7%), as most adherence measures were higher in populations, which did not pay for medication, e.g. patients with health insurance (6).

Other reasons for poor adherence included:

- IR versus ER formulations;
- age, with persistence lower among younger adults;
- unrealistic expectations of treatment;
- gender distribution, because adherence/persistence was better in studies that include relatively more female patients;
- ethnic group because African-Americans and other minorities were more likely to discontinue or switch treatment;
- effectiveness of treatment because in Campbell et al. only 52% were somewhat satisfied to very satisfied with treatment.

In addition, the source of data influenced the adherence figures.

Evidence summary	**LE**
More than half of patients will stop antimuscarinic agents within the first 3 months because of ineffectiveness, adverse events and cost.	2

4.4.3 ***References***

1. Lawrence M, Guay DR, Benson SR, et al. Immediate-release oxybutynin versus tolterodine in detrusor overactivity: a population analysis. Pharmacotherapy 2000;20(4):470-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10772377
2. Shaya FT, Blume S, Gu A, et al. Persistence with overactive bladder pharmacotherapy in a Medicaid population. Am J Manag Care 2005 Jul;11(4 Suppl):S121-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16161385
3. Yu YF, Nichol MB, Yu AP, et al. Persistence and adherence of medications for chronic overactive bladder/urinary incontinence in the california medicaid program. Value Health 2005 Jul-Aug;8(4): 495-505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16091027
4. Balkrishnan R, Bhosle MJ, Camacho FT, et al. Predictors of medication adherence and associated health care costs in an older population with overactive bladder syndrome: a longitudinal cohort study. J Urol 2006;175(3 Pt 1):1067-71; discussion 1071-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469620
5. D'Souza AO, Smith MJ, Miller LA, et al. Persistence, adherence, and switch rates among extended-release and immediate-release overactive bladder medications in a regional managed care plan. J Manag Care Pharm 2008 Apr;14(3):291-301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18439051
6. Sears CL, Lewis C, Noel K, et al. Overactive bladder medication adherence when medication is free to patients. J Urol 2010 Mar;183(3):1077-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20092838
7. Campbell UB, Stang P, Barron R. Survey assessment of continuation of and satisfaction with pharmacological treatment for urinary incontinence. Value Health 2008 Jul-Aug;11(4):726-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18179666
8. Basra RK, Wagg A, Chapple C, et al. A review of adherence to drug therapy in patients with overactive bladder. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(7):774-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18616691
9. Benner JS, Nichol MB, Rovner ES, et al. Patient-reported reasons for discontinuing overactive bladder medication. BJU Int 2010 Sep;105(9):1276-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912188

10. Yeaw J, Benner J, Walt JG, et al. Comparing adherence and persistence across 6 chronic medication classes. J Manag Care Pharm 2009 Nov-Dec;15(9):728-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19954264
11. Varadharajan S, Jumadilova Z, Girase P, et al. Economic impact of extended-release tolterodine versus immediate- and extended-release oxybutynin among commercially insured persons with overactive bladder. Am J Manag Care 2005 Jul;11(4 Suppl):S140-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16161387
12. Brubaker L, Fanning K, Goldberg EL, et al. Predictors of discontinuing overactive bladder medications. BJU Int 2010 May;105(9):1283-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912189

4.5 Antimuscarinic agents, the elderly and cognition

Although the prevalence of UI increases with age, this is not reflected by research targeted to elderly people with UI. Drug trials usually exclude patients with several comorbidities and those taking multiple medications. However, the mechanisms underlying UI in the elderly are more likely to be multifactorial than in younger patients. The elderly are also likely to be taking medications that may affect the efficacy or adverse effects of a new drug.

Muscarinic receptors exist throughout the body and are involved in many physiological processes. Most anticholinergics used to treat OAB are directed against the M2 and M3 receptors. The M1 receptor is involved in memory processes. The specificity of a drug for one or another receptor and the degree of penetration into the CNS through the blood-brain barrier may impact on cognitive function. In recent years, the effects of antimuscarinic agents on cognition have been studied in more detail.

4.5.1 ***Question***

What is the comparative efficacy, and risk of adverse effects, particularly the cognitive impact, of treatment with antimuscarinic medication in elderly men and women with UUI compared to younger patients?

4.5.2 ***Evidence***

There have been two systematic reviews of antimuscarinic agents in elderly patients (1,2). One review was confined to evidence on nursing home residents with UUI (2). A community-based cohort study on the burden of antimuscarinic drugs in an elderly population (n = 372) found a high incidence of cognitive dysfunction (3). The Oregon systematic review of treatments for OAB reported specifically on outcomes in elderly patients (4).

There have been very few trials specifically investigating the cognitive changes that might occur with the use of antimuscarinic agents. Most trials have been done in healthy volunteers of different age groups and only for a short period (varying from a single dose to 12 weeks). Other publications describe post-hoc analyses of other trials or reviewed only a number of selected publications. In general, these trials have measured CNS side effects in a non-specific way that does not allow the impact on cognition to be considered in a particular patient population (5,6). Meta-analyses have been limited by study heterogeneity, dosing inconsistency and reporting bias. There is a need for more detailed, standardised measurement of age-stratified CNS outcomes in clinical trials to provide better information to patients and clinicians about the CNS risks associated with antimuscarinic agents.

Studies on antimuscarinic effects have been done in elderly persons (7), and in people with dementia with UUI (8). There have been no specific studies in vulnerable patient populations, who are likely to have cognitive dysfunction and might suffer deterioration of their cognitive function due to using antimuscarinic medication.

Although there have been no RCTs specifically designed to examine the impact of antimuscarinic medication on elderly patients compared with younger patients, it is possible to extract relevant evidence from several RCTs, which have provided outcomes for specific age groups, and other studies of the risks/benefits of antimuscarinic agents in an elderly population. There are many case studies that report adverse effects of antimuscarinic agents in elderly patients, particularly those with serious cognitive dysfunction. There are also a number of studies that address the cardiovascular risk, which is mainly associated with antimuscarinic agents, in this age group. It should be noted that the definition of an elderly patient and the exclusion criteria vary from study to study.

Oxybutynin

There is substantial evidence that oxybutynin may cause or worsen cognitive dysfunction in adults (5,7,9).

A crossover RCT in elderly volunteers given oxybutynin IR reported increased cognitive dysfunction with oxybutynin, while a short-term RCT of oxybutynin ER in elderly women with cognitive dysfunction observed no increase in delirium (10).Two studies in the elderly demonstrated additional benefit from oxybutynin IR combined with scheduled voiding versus scheduled voiding alone. Another study found no differences between oxybutynin ER and IR in elderly patients, although the study did not reach its recruitment target (11).

A large observational study (n = 3536) suggested that more rapid functional deterioration might result from the combined use of cholinesterase inhibitors with antimuscarinic agents in elderly patients with cognitive dysfunction (12). However, the nature of the interaction with cholinesterase inhibitors is unclear. No general conclusions can be made, but caution is advised in prescribing these combinations.

Solifenacin
One pooled analysis from several RCTs (13) has shown that solifenacin has good efficacy and does not increase cognitive impairment in the elderly. Another RCT found no age-related differences in the pharmacokinetics of solifenacin between elderly, middle-aged or younger patients. One post-marketing surveillance study reported more frequent adverse events in subjects over 80 years old. Another study on healthy elderly volunteers showed no cognitive effect (9).

Tolterodine
Pooled data from RCTs showed no change in efficacy or side effects related to age, but reported a higher discontinuation rate for both tolterodine and placebo in elderly patients (5). Two RCTs of tolterodine specifically designed in the elderly found that tolterodine showed a similar efficacy and side effect profile, as in younger patients. Post-hoc analysis from other RCTs has shown little effect on cognition.

Darifenacin
Two RCTs carried out specifically in the elderly population (one RCT in patients with UUI and the other RCT in volunteers) concluded that darifenacin was effective and had no cognitive side effects (16,17). Another comparison between darifenacin and oxybutynin ER in elderly subjects concluded that the two agents had a similar efficacy, but that cognitive function was more often affected in patients receiving oxybutynin ER (7).

Trospium chloride and fesoterodine
No published evidence was found regarding the comparative efficacy and side effect profiles of trospium or fesoterodine in the elderly compared with younger patients. However, there is good evidence that trospium does not impair cognitive function.

Applicability of evidence to general elderly population
It is not clear how much the data from pooled analyses and subgroup analyses from large RCTs can be extrapolated to a general ageing population. The community-based studies of the prevalence of antimuscarinic side effects in this age group may be the most helpful (3).

When starting anticholinergic medication in patients at risk of worsening cognitive function, it has been suggested that mental function is assessed objectively and monitored to detect any significant changes during treatment (18).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Oxybutynin IR may worsen cognitive function.	1b
Trospium chloride has not been reported to affect cognitive function.	1b
Solifenacin, tolterodine and darifenacin have not been shown to impair cognitive function in healthy volunteers.	3
Oxybutynin ER, 5 mg/day, does not cause delirium in the short term in cognitively impaired elderly women.	1b
Oxybutynin IR is less effective in people with impaired orientation, cerebral cortical underperfusion and reduced bladder sensation.	2
The effectiveness and risk of adverse events of solifenacin, tolterodine and darifenacin do not differ with patient age.	3
There is conflicting evidence about whether the efficacy of antimuscarinic drugs is different in elderly people compared to younger populations.	3

Recommendations for antimuscarinic drugs	GR
Offer IR or ER formulations of antimuscarinic drugs as initial drug therapy for adults with urgency urinary incontinence.	A
If IR formulations of antimuscarinic drugs are unsuccessful for adults with urgency urinary incontinence, offer ER formulations or longer-acting antimuscarinic agents.	A
Consider using transdermal oxybutynin if oral antimuscarinic agents cannot be tolerated due to dry mouth.	B
Offer and encourage early review (of efficacy and side effects) of patients on antimuscarinic medication for urgency urinary incontinence (< 30 days).	A
When prescribing antimuscarinic drugs to elderly patients, be aware of the risk of cognitive side effects, especially in those receiving cholinesterase inhibitors.	C
Avoid using oxybutynin IR in patients who are at risk of cognitive dysfunction.	A
Consider use of trospium chloride in patients known to have cognitive dysfunction.	B
Use solifenacin, tolterodine and darifenacin with caution in patients with cognitive dysfunction.	B
Do an objective assessment of mental function before treating patients whose cognitive function may be at risk.	C
Check mental function in patients on antimuscarinic medication if they are at risk of cognitive dysfunction.	C

IR = Immediate release; ER = extended release.

4.5.3 ***Research priority***

As it is difficult to predict the longer-term benefit from the effect seen in short-term trials, it is recommended that cure of UUI should be a primary outcome measure in future research.

4.5.4 ***References***

1. DuBeau CE, Kuchel GA, Johnson T 2nd, et al. Incontinence in the frail elderly: report from the 4th International Consultation on Incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):165-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025027
2. Fink HA, Taylor BC, Tacklind JW, et al. Treatment interventions in nursing home residents with urinary incontinence: a systematic review of randomized trials. Mayo Clin Proc 2008 Dec;83(12):1332-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19046552
3. Ancelin ML, Artero S, Portet F, et al. Non-degenerative mild cognitive impairment in elderly people and use of anticholinergic drugs: longitudinal cohort study. BMJ 2006 Feb 25;332(7539):455-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16452102
4. McDonagh MS, Selover D, Santa J, et al. Drug class review: agents for overactive bladder. Final report. Update 4. Portland, Oregon: Oregon Health & Science University, 2009. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21089246
5. Kessler TM, Bachmann LM, Minder C, et al. Adverse event assessment of antimuscarinics for treating overactive bladder: a network meta-analytic approach. PLoS One 2011 Feb 23;6(2):e16718. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21373193
6. Paquette A, Gou P, Tannenbaum C. Systematic review and meta-analysis: do clinical trials testing antimuscarinic agents for overactive bladder adequately measure central nervous system adverse events? J Am Geriatr Soc 2011 Jul;59(7):1332-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21718264
7. Kay G, Crook T, Rekeda L, et al. Differential effects of the antimuscarinic agents darifenacin and oxybutynin ER on memory in older subjects. Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):317-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16687205
8. Isik AT, Celik T, Bozoglu E, et al. Trospium and cognition in patients with late onset Alzheimer disease. J Nutr Health Aging 2009 Oct;13(8):672-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19657549
9. Wesnes KA, Edgar C, Tretter RN, et al. Exploratory pilot study assessing the risk of cognitive impairment or sedation in the elderly following single doses of solifenacin 10 mg. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2009 Nov;8(6):615-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19747069

10. Lackner TE, Wyman JF, McCarthy TC, et al. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of the cognitive effect, safety, and tolerability of oral extended-release oxybutynin in cognitively impaired nursing home residents with urge urinary incontinence. J Am Geriatr Soc 2008 May;56(5):862-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18410326
11. Minassian VA, Ross S, Sumabat O, et al. Randomized trial of oxybutynin extended versus immediate release for women aged 65 and older with overactive bladder: lessons learned from conducting a trial. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2007 Sep;29(9):726-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17825137
12. Sink KM, Thomas J 3rd, Xu H, et al. Dual use of bladder anticholinergics and cholinesterase inhibitors: long-term functional and cognitive outcomes. J Am Geriatr Soc 2008 May;56(5):847-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18384584
13. Wagg A, Wyndaele JJ, Sieber P. Efficacy and tolerability of solifenacin in elderly subjects with overactive bladder syndrome: a pooled analysis. Am J Geriatr Pharmacother 2006 Mar;4(1):14-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16730617
14. Michel MC, Wetterauer U, Vogel M, et al. Cardiovascular safety and overall tolerability of solifenacin in routine clinical use: a 12-week, open-label, post-marketing surveillance study. Drug Saf 2008;31(6):505-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18484784
15. Griebling TL, Kraus SR, Richter HE, et al. Tolterodine extended release is well tolerated in older subjects. Int J Clin Pract 2009 Aug;63(8):1198-204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19624787
16. Chapple C, DuBeau C, Ebinger U, et al. Darifenacin treatment of patients >or= 65 years with overactive bladder: results of a randomized, controlled, 12-week trial. Curr Med Res Opin 2007 Oct;23(10):2347-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17706004
17. Lipton RB, Kolodner K, Wesnes K. Assessment of cognitive function of the elderly population: effects of darifenacin. J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2):493-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643227
18. Wagg A, Verdejo C, Molander U. Review of cognitive impairment with antimuscarinic agents in elderly patients with overactive bladder. Int J Clin Pract 2010 Aug;64(9):1279-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20529135

4.6 Duloxetine

Duloxetine inhibits the presynaptic re-uptake of the neurotransmitters, serotonin (5-HT) and norepinephrine (NE) leading to an increase in levels of these neurotransmitters in the synaptic cleft. In the sacral spinal cord, an increased concentration of 5-HT and NE in the synaptic cleft increases stimulation of 5-HT and NE receptors on the pudendal motor neurones, which in turn increases the resting tone and contraction strength of the urethral striated sphincter.

4.6.1 ***Questions***

- In adults with SUI, does duloxetine cure or reduce UI and/or improve QoL compared to no treatment?
- In adults with SUI, does duloxetine result in a greater cure or improvement of incontinence, or a greater improvement in QoL or a lesser likelihood of adverse effects, compared to any other intervention?

4.6.2 ***Evidence***

Duloxetine was evaluated as a treatment for female SUI or MUI in two systematic reviews (1,2) including 10 RCTs (3-12). The typical dose of duloxetine was 80 mg daily, with dose escalation up to 120 mg daily allowed in one study (4), over a period of 8-12 weeks. One RCT extended the observation period up to 36 weeks and used the Incontinence Quality of Life (I-QoL) score as a primary outcome (6).

The studies provided reasonably consistent results demonstrating improvement in UI compared to placebo. There were no clear differences between SUI and MUI. One study reported cure for UI in about 10% of patients (3). An improvement in I-QoL was not found in the study using I-QoL as a primary endpoint (6). A further study compared duloxetine, 80 mg daily, with PFMT alone, PFMT + duloxetine, and placebo (13). Duloxetine reduced leakage compared to PFMT or no treatment. Global improvement and QoL were better for combined therapy than no treatment. There was no significant difference between PFMT and no treatment.

The long-term effect of duloxetine in controlling SUI was evaluated by two open-label studies with a follow-up of 1 year or more (14,15). However, the studies had high rates of discontinuation.

Duloxetine, 80 mg daily, which could be increased up to 120 mg daily, was investigated in a 12-week study in patients, who had OAB but not SUI (16). Episodes of UUI were also significantly reduced by duloxetine.

One study (17) compared PFMT + duloxetine versus PFMT + placebo, for 16 weeks, followed by 8 weeks of PFMT alone in males with post-prostatectomy incontinence. Duloxetine + PFMT significantly improved UI, but the effect did not last to the end of the study, indicating that duloxetine only accelerates cure and does not increase the percentage of patients cured.

In general, all studies had a high patient withdrawal rate of about 20-40% of patients in short-term studies and up to 90% in long-term studies. The high withdrawal rate was caused by a combination of a lack of efficacy and a high incidence of adverse events, including nausea and vomiting (40% or more of patients), dry mouth, constipation, dizziness, insomnia, somnolence and fatigue.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Duloxetine does not cure incontinence.	1b
Duloxetine, 80 mg daily, can modestly improve episodes of SUI and UUI in women and men.	1b
Duloxetine causes significant gastrointestinal and CNS side effects leading to a high rate of treatment discontinuation.	1b

Recommendations	**GR**
Duloxetine should not be offered to women or men who are seeking a cure for their incontinence.	A
Duloxetine can be offered to women or men who are seeking temporary improvement in incontinence symptoms.	A
Duloxetine should be initiated using dose titration because of high adverse effect rates.	A

4.6.3 ***References***

1. Mariappan P, Alhasso A, Ballantyne Z, et al. Duloxetine, a serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor (SNRI) for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence: a systematic review. Eur Urol 2007 Jan;51(1):67-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17014950
2. Shamliyan TA, Kane RL, Wyman J, et al. Systematic review: randomized, controlled trials of nonsurgical treatments for urinary incontinence in women. Ann Intern Med 2008 Mar 18;148(6):459-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18268288
3. Bent AE, Gousse SL, Hendrix SL, et al. Duloxetine compared with placebo for the treatment of women with mixed urinary incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(3):212-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17580357
4. Cardozo L, Drutz HP, Baygani SK, et al. Pharmacological treatment of women awaiting surgery for stress urinary incontinence. Obstet Gynecol 2004 Sep;104(3):511-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15339761
5. Dmochowski RR, Miklos JR, Norton PA, et al; Duloxetine Urinary Incontinence Study Group. Duloxetine versus placebo for the treatment of North American women with stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1259-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501737
6. Kinchen KS, Obenchain R, Swindle R. Impact of duloxetine on quality of life for women with symptoms of urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2005 Sep-Oct;16(5):337-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15662490
7. Millard RJ, Moore K, Rencken R, et al; Duloxetine UI Study Group. Duloxetine vs placebo in the treatment of stress urinary incontinence: a four-continent randomized clinical trial. BJU Int 2004 Feb;93(3):311-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14764128
8. Norton PA, Zinner NR, Yalcin I, et al; Duloxetine Urinary Incontinence Study Group. Duloxetine versus placebo in the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2002 Jul;187(1):40-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12114886
9. Schagen van Leeuwen JH, Lange RR, Jonasson AF, et al. Efficacy and safety of duloxetine in elderly women with stress urinary incontinence or stress-predominant mixed urinary incontinence. Maturitas 2008 Jun 20;60(2):138-47. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18547757

10. Cardozo L, Lange R, Voss S, et al. Short- and long-term efficacy and safety of duloxetine in women with predominant stress urinary incontinence. Curr Med Res Opin 2010 Feb;26(2):253-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19929591
11. Lin AT, Sun MJ, Tai HL, et al. Duloxetine versus placebo for the treatment of women with stress predominant urinary incontinence in Taiwan: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. BMC Urol 2008 Jan 25;8:2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18221532
12. Van Kerrebroeck P, Abrams P, Lange R, et al. Duloxetine versus placebo in the treatment of European and Canadian women with stress urinary incontinence. BJOG 2004 Mar;111(3):249-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14961887
13. Ghoniem GM, Van Leeuwen JS, Elser DM, et al; Duloxetine/Pelvic Floor Muscle Training Clinical Trial Group. A randomized controlled trial of duloxetine alone, pelvic floor muscle training alone, combined treatment and no active treatment in women with stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1647-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821528
14. Bump RC, Voss S, Beardsworth A, et al. Long-term efficacy of duloxetine in women with stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2008 Jul;102(2):214-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18422764
15. Vella M, Duckett J, Basu M. Duloxetine 1 year on: the long-term outcome of a cohort of women prescribed duloxetine. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Jul;19(7):961-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18231697
16. Steers WD, Herschorn S, Kreder KJ, et al. Duloxetine compared with placebo for treating women with symptoms of overactive bladder. BJU Int 2007 Aug;100(2):337-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17511767
17. Filocamo MT, Li Marzi V, Del Popolo G, et al. Pharmacologic treatment in postprostatectomy stress urinary incontinence. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1559-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16942833

4.7 Intravaginal oestrogen

Oestrogen treatment for UI can be given orally, vaginally or even intravesically. Oral oestrogen has been shown to worsen UI. Topical oestrogen treatment has less systemic effect and is not associated with an increased risk for cancer or thromboembolism. Topical treatment is used to treat urogenital disorders in post-menopausal women.

*4.7.1 **Question***

In women with UI, does intravaginal oestrogen cure or improve UI compared to no treatment?

*4.7.2 **Evidence***

A recent Cochrane systematic review looked at the use of oestrogen therapy in post-menopausal women (1). The review identified 33 trials, with a total of 19,313 incontinent women, including 1,262 women who were given local oestrogen therapy. There is also a more recent narrative review of oestrogen therapy in urogenital diseases (2). However, since the Cochrane review, no new RCTs have been published up to July 2010. Evidence from a large RCT showed that systemic oestrogen therapy leads to an increased incidence of UI in post-menopausal women, including both SUI and UUI (3).

Local oestrogen therapy can be given as conjugated equine, oestriol or oestradiol in vaginal pessaries, vaginal rings or creams. Besides improving vaginal atrophy (4), local oestrogen therapy reduces incontinence and frequency and urgency in OAB. Local oestrogens were more effective than placebo at improving or curing UI, and reducing frequency (1). The current data do not allow differentiation among the various types of oestrogens or delivery methods. Moreover, the ideal duration of this type of therapy and the long-term effects have been poorly studied.

In conclusion, the evidence for the use of oestrogens in UI is consistent, but is only available in post-menopausal women. This means that any conclusions can only be applied to post-menopausal women with UI. Thus, post-menopausal women taking oral oestrogens should be advised that they have an increased risk for developing or worsening UI. Local oestrogens can be used to reduce incontinence, urgency and frequency in post-menopausal women.

Evidence summary	LE
Systemic oestrogen therapy can worsen existing UI and carries an increased risk of UI developing in post-menopausal women.	1a
Local oestrogen therapy in post-menopausal women can at least temporarily improve or cure UI.	1a
There is no evidence available on the neoadjuvant or adjuvant use of local oestrogens at the time of surgery for UI.	1a

Recommendations	GR
Women using systemic oestrogen should be counselled that they have an increased risk for developing urinary incontinence or worsening of their existing incontinence.	A
Offer post-menopausal women with urinary incontinence local oestrogen therapy, although the ideal duration of therapy and best delivery method are unknown.	A
Advise post-menopausal women who are taking oral oestrogens that they have an increased risk for developing urinary incontinence or worsening of their existing urinary incontinence.	A

*4.7.3 **References***

1. Cody JD, Richardson K, Moehrer B, et al. Oestrogen therapy for urinary incontinence in post-menopausal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD001405. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821277
2. Robinson D, Cardozo L. Estrogens and the lower urinary tract. Neurourol Urodyn 2011 Jun;30(5): 754-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21661025
3. Hendrix SL, Cochrane BB, Nygaard IE, et al. Effects of estrogen with and without progestin on urinary incontinence. JAMA 2005 Feb 23;293(8):935-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15728164
6. Suckling J, Lethaby A, Kennedy R. Local oestrogen for vaginal atrophy in postmenopausal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Oct 18;(4):CD001500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17054136

4.8 Desmopressin

Desmopressin is a synthetic analogue of vasopressin (also known as antidiuretic hormone), which increases water re-absorbtion in the renal collecting ducts without increasing blood pressure. It can be taken orally, nasally or by injection. Desmopressin is most commonly used to treat diabetes insipidus and, when used at night, to treat nocturnal enuresis.

*4.8.1 **Questions***

- In adults with nocturnal UI, does desmopressin cure or reduce nocturnal UI and/or improve QoL compared to no treatment?
- In adults with nocturnal UI, does desmopressin result in a greater cure or improvement in nocturnal UI, or a greater improvement in QoL or a lesser likelihood of adverse effects, compared to any other intervention?

*4.8.2 **Evidence***

4.8.2.1 Improvement of incontinence

Most studies of desmopressin in UI have been designed to investigate its effect on nocturia. Few studies have examined the use of desmopressin exclusively for the treatment of UI. Only two RCTS have compared desmopressin to placebo with UI as an outcome measure. A pilot RCT study (n = 128) in women demonstrated improved incontinence during the first 4 hours after taking desmopressin (1). An RCT in 176 men and women with OAB concluded that continuous use of desmopressin improved frequency and urgency, but did not improve UI (2). There is no published evidence reporting desmopressin cure rates for UI and no evidence that compares desmopressin with other non-drug treatments for UI.

4.8.2.2 Monitoring for hyponatraemia

Importantly, the use of desmopressin carries a risk of developing hyponatraemia (12%) (3). Elderly patients started on this drug should have their serum sodium checked regularly, beginning in the first few days after starting treatment.

Evidence summary	LE
The risk of UI is reduced within 4 hours of taking oral desmopressin, but not after 4 hours.	1b
Continuous use of desmopressin does not improve or cure UI.	1b
Regular use of desmopressin may lead to hyponatraemia.	3

Recommendations	GR
Offer desmopressin to patients requiring occasional short-term relief from urinary incontinence, inform them that this drug is not licensed for this indication.	B
Do not use desmopressin for long-term control of urinary incontinence.	A

*4.8.3 **References***

1. Lose G, Mattiasson A, Walter S, et al. Clinical experiences with desmopressin for long-term treatment of nocturia. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1021-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311028
2. Robinson D, Cardozo L, Akeson M, et al. Antidiuresis: a new concept in managing female daytime urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):996-1000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142150
3. Hashim H, Malmberg L, Graugaard-Jensen C, et al. Desmopressin, as a “designer-drug”, in the treatment of overactive bladder syndrome. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(1):40-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18726947

5. SURGICAL TREATMENT

Surgery for the treatment of UI is usually considered as an option in pathways of care only after the failure of conservative therapy or drug treatment, although the emergence of minimally invasive procedures with low rates of adverse effects may modify this principle in the future. The aim of all operations for incontinence is to make patients continent, usually by allowing them to store urine normally. However, the mechanisms for achieving this vary widely.

Some generic principles apply to good surgical practice. Any operation for UI should be preceded by a discussion with the patient and/or carers, about the purpose of the operation, the likely benefits and possible risks. It is also important to explain when there are alternative approaches, even if these procedures are not available locally. Surgeons performing operations for UI should be properly trained and perform an adequate number of procedures to maintain expertise. Most importantly, they should be able to demonstrate their competence by being aware of the outcomes of individual operations in their own hands, and should share this information with their patients.

Some newer surgical interventions can be very costly. The Panel is well aware that the availability of devices varies from one healthcare system to another. We have tried to recognise this in the recommendations by suggesting that procedures should be offered ‘when available’.

The section considers surgical options for the following situations:

- Women with uncomplicated SUI. This means no history of previous surgery, no neurological LUTD, no bothersome genitourinary prolapse, and not considering further pregnancy.
- Women with complicated SUI. Neurogenic LUTD is reviewed in the EAU Guidelines on Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction (1).
- Associated genitourinary prolapse has not been included in these Guidelines, but will be reviewed for 2013.
- Men with SUI. This applies mainly to post-prostatectomy incontinence in men without neurological disease affecting the lower urinary tract.
- Patients with refractory DO incontinence.

5.1 Women with uncomplicated SUI

*5.1.1 **Open and laparoscopic surgery for SUI***

The open ‘Burch’ colposuspension aims to approximate the lateral tissues of the vaginal vault to the pectineal

ligament by means of insertion of several, interrupted, non-absorbable sutures. The operation has been much modified over the years, most notably as the vagino-obturator shelf procedure. This has provided less elevation of the vaginal wall by inserting suspensory sutures into the obturator fascia instead of the pectineal ligament.

Autologous fascial slings have been used for many years to provide support or elevation to the mid- or proximal urethra. Again, there have been many different descriptions of this technique.

For decades, open colposuspension has been considered the gold standard surgical intervention for SUI, and has often been used as the comparator in RCTs of new, less invasive, surgical techniques. These include laparoscopic techniques, which have enabled colposuspension to be performed with a minimally invasive approach.

Although the outcome of open and laparoscopic procedures should be considered in absolute terms, it is also important to consider any associated complications, adverse events and costs. The outcome parameters used to evaluate surgery for SUI have included:

- continence rate and number of incontinence episodes;
- general and procedure-specific complications;
- generic, specific (UI) and correlated (sexual and bowel) QoL.

The large number of RCTs available for standard review and meta-analysis suggest that the evidence can be generalised to all women with SUI. There is also a good degree of consistency between the different RCTs.

5.1.1.1 Question

In women with SUI, what is effectiveness of open and laparoscopic surgery, compared to no treatment or compared to other surgical procedures, measured in terms of cure or improvement of incontinence or QoL, or the risk of adverse events?

5.1.1.2 Evidence

Four systematic reviews were found, which covered the subject of open surgery for SUI, including 46 RCTs (1-4), but no RCTs comparing any operation to a sham procedure.

Open colposuspension

The Cochrane review (6) included 46 trials (4738 women) having open colposuspension. In most of these trials, open colposuspension was used as the comparator to an experimental procedure. Consequently, for this review we have only considered the absolute effect of colposuspension but have not reviewed all of these comparisons. No additional trials have been reported since this review.

Within the first year, complete continence rates of approximately 85-90% were achieved for open colposuspension, while failure rates for incontinence were 17% up to 5 years and 21% over 5 years. The re-operation rate for incontinence was 2%, but there was a higher rate of development of genitourinary prolapse than for other open operations.

Seven trials, covered by the review, compared open colposuspension to needle suspension. These trials found similar levels of effectiveness at 85-90% and lower rates of failure at 5 years for the Marshall Marchetti Krantz procedure.

Open colposuspension was compared with conservative treatment in one small study (7). One trial compared open colposuspension with antimuscarinic treatment, while another compared it with periurethral injection of bulking agents. Colposuspension resulted in superior outcomes, but had significantly higher rates of adverse events.

Four trials compared Burch colposuspension to the Marshall Marchetti Krantz procedure and one trial evaluated Burch colposuspension with paravaginal repair in both cases showing fewer surgical failures up to 5 years but otherwise similar outcomes.

Anterior colporrhaphy

Anterior colporrhaphy is now mainly considered to be an obsolete operation for UI. In a Cochrane review (3), 10 trials compared anterior colporrhaphy (385 women) with colposuspension (627 women). The failure rate for incontinence at follow-up of up to 5 years was worse for anterior colporrhaphy with a higher requirement for re-operation for incontinence.

Autologous fascial sling
The Cochrane review (5) described 26 RCTs, including 2284 women undergoing autologous sling procedure in comparison to other operations. The trials did not identify those women undergoing repeat surgery for recurrent UI. No further studies have been reported.

There were seven trials of autologous fascial sling versus colposuspension. Except for one very high-quality study (8), most of the studies were of variable quality, with a few very small studies, and a short follow-up. The meta-analysis showed that fascial sling and colposuspension had a similar efficacy at 1 year. Colposuspension had a lower risk of voiding difficulty and UTIs, but a higher risk of bladder perforation.

In 12 trials of autologous fascial sling versus mid-urethral synthetic slings, the procedures showed similar efficacy. However, use of the synthetic sling resulted in shorter operating times and lower rates of complications, including voiding difficulty. Six trials compared autologous fascial slings with other materials of different origins, with results favouring traditional autologous fascial slings. There were no trials compared traditional suburethral slings with anterior colporrhaphy, laparoscopic retropubic colposuspension or the artificial urinary sphincter device.

Laparoscopic colposuspension
The Cochrane review (2) identified 22 RCTs, of which 10 trials compared laparoscopic colposuspension to open colposuspension. No other trials have been identified. Although these procedures had a similar subjective cure rate, there was limited evidence suggesting the objective outcomes were less good for laparoscopic colposuspension. However, laparoscopic colposuspension had a lower risk of complications and shorter duration of hospital stay.

In eight RCTs comparing laparoscopic colposuspension to self-fixing slings, the subjective cure rates were similar, while the objective cure rate favoured the mid-urethral sling at 18 months. Complication rates were similar for the two procedures and operating times were shorter for the mid-urethal sling.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Anterior colporrhaphy has lower rates of cure for UI especially in the longer term.	1a
Open colposuspension and autologous fascial sling are similarly effective for cure of SUI in women.	1b
Laparoscopic colposuspension has similar efficacy to open colposuspension for cure of SUI and a similar risk of voiding difficulty or de-novo urgency.	1a
Laparoscopic colposuspension has a lower risk of other complications and shorter hospital stay than open colposuspension.	1a
Autologous fascial sling has a higher risk of operative complications than open colposuspension, particularly voiding dysfunction and post-operative UTI.	1b

5.1.1.3 References

1. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.uroweb.org/fileadmin/tx_eauguidelines/2009/Trans/2009_Neurogenic_LUTS.pdf
2. Dean N, Ellis G, Wilson D, et al. Laparoscopic colposuspension for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jul 19;(3):CD002239. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855989
3. Glazener CM, Cooper K. Anterior vaginal repair for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2001;(1):CD001755. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11279728
4. Lapitan MC, Cody JD, Grant A. Open retropubic colposuspension for urinary incontinence in women: a short version Cochrane review. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(6):472-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19591206
5. Rehman H, Bezerra CCB, Bruschini H, et al. Traditional suburethral sling operations for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Jan 19;(1):CD001754. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21249648
6. Lapitan MC, Cody JD, Grant A. Open retropubic colposuspension for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD002912. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821297

7. Klarskov P, Belving D, Bischoff N, et al. Pelvic floor exercise versus surgery for female urinary stress incontinence. Urol Int 1986;41(2):129-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3727190
8. Albo ME, Richter HE, Brubaker L, et al: Urinary Incontinent Treatment Network. Burch colposuspension versus fascial sling to reduce urinary stress incontinence. N Engl J Med 2007 May 24;356(21):2143-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17517855

*5.1.2 **Mid-urethral slings***

The description of tension-free support for mid-urethra using a synthetic sling was an important new concept in the treatment of women with urodynamic SUI, which led to the development of synthetic mesh materials and devices to allow minimally invasive insertion (1). Early clinical studies identified that slings should be made from monofilament, non-absorbable material, typically polypropylene, and constructed as a 1-2 cm wide mesh with a relatively large pore size (macroporous). Mid-urethral slings are now the most frequently used surgical intervention in Europe for women with SUI.

*5.1.2.1 **Questions***

In women with SUI, what is the effectiveness in curing SUI and adverse effects at 1 year of:

- mid-urethral synthetic sling insertion compared to Burch colposuspension?
- one method of insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling compared to another method?
- one direction of insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling compared to another direction of insertion?

5.1.2.2 Evidence

For the purposes of this guideline, a new meta-analysis was performed.

Mid-urethral sling insertion compared to colposuspension

Thirteen RCTs (n = 1037) compared mid-urethral sling (retropubic) and colposuspension (open and laparoscopic). The meta-analysis found no difference in patient-reported cure rates at 12 months (2-15). The overall patient-reported cure rate was 75%. There was weak evidence of higher clinician-reported cure rates at 12 months after mid-urethral sling (83%) compared to colposuspension (78%) (7-15). However, longer-term follow-up for up to 5 years reported no difference in effectiveness, though the numbers of participants lost to follow-up was high (5,12,13). Voiding dysfunction was more likely for colposuspension (relative risk 0.34; 95%CI 0.16-0.7) whilst bladder perforation was higher for the mid-urethral sling (15% vs. 9%, and 7% vs. 2%, respectively) (3,4,14,16,17).

A single randomised trial, comparing the mid-urethral sling (transobturator) with open colposuspension, reporting similar rates of patient-reported and clinician-reported cure and no evidence of differential harms (18). In all the trials, operative time and duration of hospital stay was shorter for women randomised to insertion of the mid-urethral synthetic sling.

Transobturator route versus retropubic route

Thirty-four RCTs (5786 women) compared insertion of the mid-urethral sling by the retropubic and transobturator routes. There was no difference in cure rates at 12 months in either patient-reported or clinically reported cure rates (77% and 85%, respectively) (20-49). Voiding dysfunction was less common (4%) following transobturator insertion compared to retropubic insertion (7%), as was the risk of bladder perforation (0.3%) or urethral perforation (5%). Similarly, the risks of de-novo urgency and vaginal perforation were 6% and 1.7%, respectively. Chronic perineal pain at 12 months after surgery was reported by 21 trials and meta-analysis of these data showed strong evidence of a higher rate in women undergoing transobturator insertion (7%) compared to retropubic insertion (3%).

Insertion using a skin-to-vagina direction versus a vagina-to-skin direction

A Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis found that the skin-to-vagina direction (outside in) for retropubic insertion of mid-urethral slings was less effective than the vagina-to-skin (inside out) direction and was associated with higher rates of voiding dysfunction, bladder perforation, and vaginal erosion (50). A further systematic review and meta-analysis found that the skin-to-vagina (outside in) direction of transobturator insertion of mid-urethral slings was equally effective compared to the vagina-to-skin route (inside out) using direct comparison. However, indirect comparative analysis gave weak evidence for a higher rate of voiding dysfunction and bladder injury (51). These differences in adverse effects were not found in the Cochrane review, which only used the limited amount of direct head-to-head comparative data and found no differences in effectiveness or adverse effects (50).

Generalisability of evidence to adult women with SUI

Analysis of the heterogeneity of trials in this meta-analysis suggests that the evidence is generalisable to women, who have predominantly SUI, and no other clinically severe lower genitourinary tract dysfunction. The evidence is not adequate to guide choice of surgical treatment for those women with MUI, severe pelvic organ prolapse, or a history of previous surgery for SUI.

The results of the EAU Panel meta-analysis were consistent with those of the Cochrane systematic review (52), except that in our meta-analysis the objective cure rates appeared slightly higher for retropubic (88%) compared to transobturator insertion (84%). The Panel finding is consistent with an additional systematic review and meta-analysis (53), and the difference may result from the Panel's decision to only consider trial data with at least 12 months of follow-up. The cure rates at 12 months in our meta-analysis for mid-urethral sling were similar to those calculated in the meta-analysis for the American Urological Association guidelines (54). In addition, our results and recommendations are consistent with those of the Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada (55) and those of the UK National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (66).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Compared to colposuspension, the retropubic insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling gives equivalent patient-reported cure of SUI and superior clinician-reported cure of SUI at 12 months.	1a
Compared to colposuspension, the transobturator insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling gives equivalent patient-reported and clinician-reported cure of SUI at 12 months.	2
Insertion of a mid-urethral synthetic sling by the transobturator route gives equivalent patient-reported and clinician-reported cure rates at 12 months compared to retropubic insertion.	1a
The skin-to-vagina direction of retropubic insertion of mid-urethral sling is less effective than a vagina-to-skin direction.	1a
Mid-urethral sling insertion is associated with a lower rate of a new symptom of urgency, and voiding dysfunction, compared to colposuspension.	1a
The retropubic route of insertion is associated with a higher intra-operative risk of bladder perforation and a higher rate of voiding dysfunction than the transobturator route.	1a
The transobturator route of insertion is associated with a higher risk of chronic perineal pain at 12 months than the retropubic route.	1a
The skin-to-vagina direction of both retropubic and transobturator insertion is associated with a higher risk of post-operative voiding dysfunction.	1b

5.1.2.3 References

1. Ulmsten U, Petros P. Intravaginal slingplasty (IVS): an ambulatory surgical procedure for treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1995 Mar;29(1):75-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7618052
2. Bai SW, Sohn WH, Chung DJ, et al. Comparison of the efficacy of Burch colposuspension, pubovaginal sling, and tension-free vaginal tape for stress urinary incontinence. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2005 Dec;91(3):246-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16242695
3. Drahoradova PI, Masata JI, Martan AI, et al. Comparative development of quality of life between TVT and Burch colposuspension. Joint Meeting of the International Continence Society and the International UroGynecological Association, 34rd Annual Meeting, Paris, France, 25th-27th August 2004. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(5/6):387-616, abstract no. 278. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/42/000278.pdf
4. Foote AJ, Maughan V, Carne C. Laparoscopic colposuspension versus vaginal suburethral slingplasty: a randomised prospective trial. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 2006 Dec;46(6):517-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17116057
5. Jelovsek JE, Barber MD, Karram MM, et al. Randomised trial of laparoscopic Burch colposuspension versus tension-free vaginal tape: long-term follow up. BJOG 2008 Jan;115(2):219-25; discussion 225. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18081602
6. Mirosh M, Epp A. TVT vs laparoscopic Burch colposuspension for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. 35th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, Montreal, Canada, 28th August-2nd September, 2005. Neurourology Urodyn 2005;24(5/6):401-598, abstract number 640. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/AbstractsSearch.aspx?EventID=43

7. Paraiso MF, Walters MD, Karram MM, et al. Laparoscopic Burch colposuspension versus tension-free vaginal tape: a randomized trial. Obstet Gynecol 2004 Dec;104(6):1249-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15572485
8. Persson J, Teleman P, Etén-Bergquist C, et al. Cost-analyzes based on a prospective, randomized study comparing laparoscopic colposuspension with a tension-free vaginal tape procedure. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2002 Nov;81(11):1066-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12421176
9. Ustun Y, Engin-Ustun Y, Gungor M, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape compared with laparoscopic Burch urethropexy. J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc 2003 Aug;10(3):386-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14567818
10. Valpas A, Kivela A, Penttinen J, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape and laparoscopic mesh colposuspension for stress urinary incontinence. Obstet Gynecol 2004 Jul;104(1):42-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15228999
11. Wang AC, Chen MC. Comparison of tension-free vaginal taping versus modified Burch colposuspension on urethral obstruction: a randomized controlled trial. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(3):185-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12707868
12. Ward K, Hilton P; United Kingdom and Ireland Tension-free Vaginal Tape Trial Group. Prospective multicentre randomised trial of tension-free vaginal tape and colposuspension as primary treatment for stress incontinence. BMJ 2002 Jul 13;325(7355):67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12114234
13. Adile B, Granese R, Lo Bue A, et al. A prospective randomized study comparing laparoscopic Burch versus TVT. Short and long term follow-up. Proceedings of the International Continence Society, 33rd Annual Meeting, Florence, Italy, 5th-9th October 2003. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(5):357-548, abstract 550. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/41/000550.pdf
14. Liapis A, Bakas P, Creatsas G. Burch colposuspension and tension-free vaginal tape in the management of stress urinary incontinence in women. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):469-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074820
15. Tellez Martinez-Fonres M, Fernandez Perez C, Fouz Lopez C, et al. A three year follow-up of a prospective open randomized trial to compare tension-free vaginal tape with Burch colposuspension for treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Actas Urol Esp 2009 Nov;33(10):1088-96. [English, Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096179
16. El-Barky E, El-Shazly A, El-Wahab OA, et al. Tension free vaginal tape versus Burch colposuspension for treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Int Urol Nephrol 2005;37(2):277-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16142556
17. Maher C, Qatawneh A, Baessler K, et al. Laparoscopic colposuspension or tension-free vaginal tape for recurrent stress urinary incontinence and/or intrinsic sphincter deficiency-a randomised controlled trial (Abstract). Joint Meeting of the International Continence Society and the International UroGynecological Association, 34rd Annual Meeting, Paris, France, 25th-27th August 2004. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(5/6):433. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/42/000025.pdf
18. Sivaslioglu AA, Caliskan E, Dolen I, et al. A randomized comparison of transobturator tape and Burch colposuspension in the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2007 Sep;18(9):1015-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17180553
19. Barber MD, Kleeman S, Karram MM, et al. Transobturator tape compared with tension-free vaginal tape for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 2008 Mar;111(3):611-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18310363
20. Barber MD, Kleeman, Karram MM, et al. Risk factors associated with failure 1 year after retropubic or transobturator midurethral slings. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2008 Dec;199(6):666.e1-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19084098
21. Deffieux X, Daher H, Mansoor A, et al. Transobturator TVT-O versus retropubic TVT: results of a multicenter randomized controlled trial at 24 months follow-up. Int Urogynecol J 2010 Nov;21(11):1337-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20552165

22. Krofta L, Feyereisl J, Otcenasek M, et al. TVT and TVT-O for surgical treatment of primary stress urinary incontinence: prospective randomized trial. Int Urogynecol J 2010 Feb;21(2):141-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19907913
23. Lee KS, Han DH, Choi YS, et al. A prospective trial comparing tension-free vaginal tape and transobturator vaginal tape inside-out for the surgical treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: 1-year followup. J Urol 2007 Jan;177(1):214-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17162048
24. Liapis A, Bakas P, Giner M, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape versus tension-free vaginal tape obturator in women with stress urinary incontinence. Gynecol Obstet Invest 2006;62(3):160-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16707901
25. Nerli RB, Kumar AG, Koura A, et al. Transobturator vaginal tape in comparison to tension-free vaginal tape: a prospective trial with a minimum 12 months follow-up. Indian J Urol 2009 Jul;25(3):321-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19881123
26. Palva K, Rinne K, Aukee P, et al. A randomized trial comparing tension-free vaginal tape with tension-free vaginal tape-obturator: 36-month results. Int Urogynecol J 2010 Sep;21(9):1049-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20440474
27. Porena M, Costantini E, Frea B, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape versus transobturator tape as surgery for stress urinary incontinence: results of a multicentre randomised trial. Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5): 1481-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482343
28. Richter HE, Albo ME, Zyczynski HM, et al. Retropubic versus transobturator midurethral slings for stress incontinence. N Engl J Med 2010 Jun 3;362(22):2066-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20479459
29. Riva D, Sacca V, Tonta A, et al. T.V.T versus T.O.T. A randomised study at 1-year follow up. 31st Annual IUGA Meeting, Athens, Greece, 6-9 September 2006. Int Urogynecol J 2006;17(Suppl 2):S93, abstract no. 060. http://www.springerlink.com/content/102824/
30. Ross S, Robert M, Swaby C, et al. Transobturator tape compared with tension-free vaginal tape for stress incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 2009 Dec;114(6):1287-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19935032
31. Teo R, Moran P, Mayne C, et al. Randomized trial of tension-free vaginal tape and tension-free vaginal tape-obturator for urodynamic stress incontinence in women. J Urol 2011 Apr;185(4):1350-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21334654
32. Wang F, Song Y, Huang H. Prospective randomized trial of TVT and TOT as primary treatment for female stress urinary incontinence with or without pelvic organ prolapse in Southeast China. Arch Gynecol Obstet 2010 Feb;281(2):279-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19404656
33. Zhu L, Lang J, Hai N, et al. Comparing vaginal tape and transobturator tape for the treatment of mild and moderate stress incontinence. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2007 Oct;99(1):14-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707822
34. Andonian S, St-Denis B, Lemieux MC, et al. Prospective clinical trial comparing Obtape and DUPS to TVT: one-year safety and efficacy results. Eur Urol 2007 Jul;52(1):245-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17234331
35. Aniuliene R. Tension-free vaginal tape versus tension-free vaginal tape obturator (inside-outside) in the surgical treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Medicina (Kaunas) 2009;45(8):639-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19773623
36. Araco F, Gravante G, Sorge R, et al. TVT-O vs TVT: a randomized trial in patients with different degrees of urinary stress incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Jul;19(7):917-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18217177
37. Castillo-Pino E, Sasson A, Pons JE. Comparison of retropubic and transobturator tension-free vaginal implants for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2010 Jul;110(1):23-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20409546
38. Chen Z, Chen Y, Du GH, et al. Comparison of three kinds of mid-urethral slings for surgical treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Urologia 2010 Jan-Mar;77(1):37-41; discussion 42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20890856
39. Costantini E, Lazzeri M, Bini V, et al. Burch colposuspension does not provide any additional benefit to pelvic organ prolapse repair in patients with urinary incontinence: a randomized surgical trial. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):1007-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639302

40. Darai E, Frobert JL, Grisard-Anaf M, et al. Functional results after the suburethral sling procedure for urinary stress incontinence: a prospective randomized multicentre study comparing the retropubic and transobturator routes. Eur Urol 2007 Mar;51(3):795-801; discussion 801-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17010507
41. El-Hefnawy AS, Wadie BS, El Mekresh M, et al. TOT for treatment of stress urinary incontinence: how should we assess its equivalence with TVT? Int Urogynecol J 2010 Aug;21(8):947-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20424826
42. Enzelsberger H, Schalupny J, Heider R, et al. TVT versus TOT-A prospective randomized study for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence at a follow-up of 1 year. Geburts Frauenheilk 2005;65(5):506-11. [German] https://www.thieme-connect.de/ejournals/abstract/gebfra/doi/10.1055/s-2005-837654
43. Karateke A, Haliloglu B, Cam C, et al. Comparison of TVT and TVT-O in patients with stress urinary incontinence: short-term cure rates and factors influencing the outcome. A prospective randomised study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 2009 Feb;49(1):99-105. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19281588
44. Oliveira LM, Girao MJBC, Sartori MGF, et al. Comparison of retro pubic TVT, pre pubic TVT and TVT obturator in surgical treatment of women with stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J 2006;17(Suppl 2):S253, abstract no. 354.
45. Rechberger T, Jankiewicz K, Skorupski P, et al. Transobturator vs retropubic vaginal tape for female stress urinary incontinence: one year follow-up in 296 patients. 37th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, Rotterdam, The Netherlands, 20th-24th August. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(5):595-748, abstract no. 288. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/AuthorIndex.aspx?EventID=45
46. Rechberger T, Futyma K, Jankiewicz K, et al. The clinical effectiveness of retropubic (IVS-02) and transobturator (IVS-04) midurethral slings: randomized trial. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):24-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19285788
47. Rinne K, Laurikainen E, Kivelä A, et al. A randomized trial comparing TVT with TVT-O: 12-month results. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Aug;19(8):1049-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18373046
48. Tcherniakovsky M, Fernandes CE, Bezerra CA, et al. Comparative results of two techniques to treat stress urinary incontinence: synthetic transobturator and aponeurotic slings. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Aug;20(8):961-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19582386
49. Wang W, Zhu L, Lang J. Transobturator tape procedure versus tension-free vaginal tape for treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2009 Feb;104(2):113-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18957269
50. Ogah J, Cody JD, Rogerson L. Minimally invasive synthetic suburethral sling operations for stress urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009;(4):CD006375. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD006375.pub2/abstract
51. Latthe PM, Singh P, Foon R, et al. Two routes of transobturator tape procedures in stress urinary incontinence: a meta-analysis with direct and indirect comparison of randomized trials. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(1):68-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912182
52. Ogah J, Cody JD, Rogerson L. Minimally invasive synthetic suburethral sling operations for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD006375. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821363
53. Novara G, Artibani W, Barber MD, et al. Updated systematic review and meta-analysis of the comparative data on colposuspensions, pubovaginal slings, and midurethral tapes in the surgical treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Eur Urol 2010 Aug;58(2):218-38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20434257
54. Dmochowski RR, et al; Female Stress Urinary Incontinence Update Panel of the American Urological Association Education and Research, Whetter LE. Update of AUA guideline on the surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2010 May;183(5):1906-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303102
55. Schulz JA,Chan MC, Farrel SA, et al; Sub-Committee on Urogynaecology. Midurethral minimally invasive sling procedures for stress urinary incontinence. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2008 Aug;30(8): 728-40. [English, French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18786297

56. Urinary incontinence: the management of urinary incontinence in women. Clinical guidelines CG40. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, October 2006. http://publications.nice.org.uk/CG40

5.1.3 ***Single-incision slings***

There is continued innovation to reduce the invasiveness of procedures for SUI. Single-incision mid-urethral slings have been introduced on the basis of providing mid-urethral support, using a variety of modifications to a short macroporous polypropylene tape. These modifications allow the tape to be fixed to the retropubic tissues, endopelvic fascia or obturator fascia, while avoiding the troublesome complications of obturator nerve injury or passage through the gracilis muscle or skin of the inner thigh, or through the retropubic space. These procedures are usually performed as day cases under local anaesthesia.

5.1.3.1 Questions

- In women with SUI, do 'single-incision' slings cure UI or improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?
- How does a 'single-incision' sling compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

5.1.3.2 Evidence

Although there have been many studies published on single-incision devices, it should be noted that there are significant differences in design between devices and it may be misleading to make general statements about them as a class of operations.

One systematic review has been published (1), which included RCTs and quasi-RCTs, comparing single-incision slings to either retropubic or transobturator mid-urethral slings. The literature search included non-English trials and unpublished studies. A further systematic review is currently being undertaken by the Cochrane centre (2).

The nine RCTs in the current Cochrane review included 758 participants, who were followed up for a mean of 9.5 months. There was poor reporting of allocation concealment, as well as poorly reported randomisation, resulting in a high risk of bias. One centre provided several of the studies. Seven studies included only patients with tension-free vaginal tape secure (TVTS). The remaining two studies include only patients with a Miniarc® device.

Meta-analysis showed that the outcome of single-incision sling insertion was consistently worse compared with mid-urethral slings in terms of patient-reported cure of UI. Single-incision techniques had a shorter operating time, lower blood loss and and lower pain levels compared to a standard mid-urethral sling. One RCT found no difference in effectiveness between two different methods of insertion of the TVTS® device with 12 months' follow-up (3). One RCT designed to compare the TVTS device to a standard retropubic mid-urethral sling in 280 women found a significantly lower objective cure at 2 months for TVTS and a higher complication rate and was terminated early (4). Another RCT (5) compared the TVTS device to a standard transobturator mid-urethal sling but was underpowered to show a statistical difference between the techniques. A small, three-treatment arm, phase II RCT compared standard transobturator mid-urethral sling to TVTS and Miniarc® devices [6]. The results suggested that cure rates were lower for TVT but no statistical analysis was presented.

A more recent RCT comparing the TVTS device to standard transobturator mid-urethral sling, not included in the Cochrane review, demonstrated a lower objective cure rate and lower pain levels for the TVTS device [7].

Another recent non-randomised study compared the TVTS to the Curemesh® device showed no difference in outcomes at a minimum of 15.5 months (8). Similarly, a quasi-RCT comparing a standard transobturator mid-urethral sling to a Contasure® device found no difference in cure of UI or adverse events (9).

There are a number of case series with a minimum of 12 months' follow-up, including five series using the Miniarc device (10-15), two series using the TVTS device (11,16) and one series using the Minitape® device (17). The 12-month outcomes range from 52% objective cure to 92% subjective cure. Results from one study reporting outcome at 2 years found that only 10% of included participants remained cured (17). One study reported a 24% rate of de-novo urgency but generally there were few reported adverse effects (11).

There are no RCTs relating to the Solyx® device. There is one retrospective review of 63 women with short-term follow-up (18), and one report of 12 months' follow-up of the Ophira® device 176 women (19). These studies did not report outcomes of interest for these Guidelines.

Evidence summary	LE
Single-incision mid-urethral slings are effective in curing SUI in women in the short term.	1b
Operation times for insertion of single-incision mid-urethral slings are shorter than for standard retropubic slings.	1b
Blood loss and immediate post-operative pain are lower for insertion of single-incision slings compared with standard mid-urethral slings.	1b
Single-incisions slings are less effective than other mid-urethral slings at medium-term follow-up*.	1b
There is no evidence that other adverse outcomes from surgery are more or less likely with single-incision slings than with standard mid-urethral slings.	1b

**NB: Most evidence on single-incision slings comes from studies using the tension-free vaginal tape secure (TVTS) device.*

5.1.3.3 References

1. Abdel-Fattah M, Ford JA, Lim CP, et al. Single-incision mini-slings versus standard midurethral slings in surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence: a meta-analysis of effectiveness and complications. Eur Urol 2011 Sep;60(3):468-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21621321
2. Jeffery ST, De Jong P, Abdool Z, et al. Single-incision sling operations for urinary incontinence in women (Protocol). Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010;(9):CD008709. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD008709/pdf
3. Kim JJ, Lee YS, Lee KS. Randomized comparative study of the U- and H-type approaches of the TVT-Secur procedure for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: one-year follow-up. Korean J Urol 2010 Apr;51(4):250-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20428427
4. Andrada Hamer M, Larsson PG, Teleman P, et al. Short-term results of a prospective randomized evaluator blinded multicenter study comparing TVT and TVT-Secur. Int Urogynecol J 2011 Jul;22(7):781-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21499755
5. Jeong MY, Kim SJ, Kim HS, et al. Comparison of efficacy and satisfaction between the TVT-SECUR(R) and MONARC(R) procedures for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Korean J Urol 2010 Nov;51(11):767-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21165197
6. Oliveira R, Botelho F, Silva P, et al. Exploratory study assessing efficacy and complications of TVT-O, TVT-Secur, and Mini-Arc: results at 12-month follow-up. Eur Urol 2011 Jun;59(6):940-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21277076
7. Hinoul P, Vervest HA, den Boon J, et al. A randomized, controlled trial comparing an innovative single incision sling with an established transobturator sling to treat female stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2011 Apr;185(4):1356-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21334682
8. Joo YM, Choe JH, Seo JT. One-year surgical outcomes and quality of life after minimally invasive sling procedures for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: TVT SECUR(R) vs. CureMesh(R). Korean J Urol 2010 May;51(5):337-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20495697
9. Amat I, Tardiu L, Martinez FE, et al. Contasure-Needleless compared with transobturator-TVT for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J 2011 Jul;22(7):827-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21365331
10. Gauruder-Burmester A, Popken G. The MiniArc sling system in the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Int Braz J Urol 2009 May-Jun;35(3):334-41; author reply 341-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19538769
11. Krofta L, Feyereisl J, Velebil P, et al. TVT-S for surgical treatment of stress urinary incontinence: prospective trial, 1-year follow-up. Int Urogynecol J 2010 Jul;21(7):779-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20358177
12. Deole N, Kaufmann A, Arunkalaivanan A. Evaluation of safety and efficacy of single-incision mid-urethral short tape procedure (MiniArc tape) for stress urinary incontinence under local anaesthesia. Int Urogynecol J 2011 Mar;22(3):335-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20938645

13. Kennelly MJ, Moore R, Nguyen JN, et al. Prospective evaluation of a single incision sling for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2010 Aug;184(2):604-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20639024
14. Moore RD, Mitchell GK, Miklos JR. Single-center retrospective study of the technique, safety, and 12-month efficacy of the MiniArc single-incision sling: a new minimally invasive procedure for treatment of female SUI. Surg Technol Int 2009;18:175-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19585431
15. Pickens RB, Klein FA, Mobley JD 3rd, et al. Single incision mid-urethral sling for treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2011 Feb;77(2):321-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21167559
16. Meschia M, Barbacini P, Ambrogi V, et al. TVT-secur: a minimally invasive procedure for the treatment of primary stress urinary incontinence. One year data from a multi-centre prospective trial. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2009 Mar;20(3):313-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19037575
17. North CE, Hilton P, Ali-Ross NS, et al. A 2-year observational study to determine the efficacy of a novel single incision sling procedure (Minitape) for female stress urinary incontinence. BJOG 2010 Feb;117(3):356-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20015305
18. Serels S, Douso M, Short G. Preliminary findings with the Solyx single-incision sling system in female stress urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J 2010 May;21(5):557-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20024648
19. Palma P, Riccetto C, Bronzatto E, et al. Efficacy of Ophira mini sling system for stress urinary incontinence: midterm follow up of 176 patients in a multicenter international clinical trial. Scientific Programme, 41st Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society (ICS), 29 August-2 September 2011, Glasgow, UK. Neurourol Urodyn Aug 2011;30(6):830-1,abstract no. 22. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/106/000022.pdf

5.1.4 ***Adjustable sling***

Voiding dysfunction is an adverse effect of anti-incontinence procedures and may require further intervention such as clean intermittent self-catheterisation. One possible cause is overcorrection of the anatomical deformity by the sling. Adjustable slings seek to overcome this problem because they enable the tension of the newly implanted sling to be increased or decreased, either during or shortly after the operation. An adjustable sling aims to optimise the balance between correcting the SUI, while allowing normal voiding to continue. However, this concept has not been adequately tested. There is still no evidence to show that being able to adjust the tension of a sling has a beneficial effect on outcome.

5.1.4.1 Questions

- In women with SUI, does an adjustable sling cure SUI and improve QoL or does it cause adverse outcome(s)?
- How does an adjustable sling compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

5.1.4.2 Evidence

There are no RCTs investigating outcome of adjustable sling insertion for women with SUI. There is limited data from cohort studies on adjustable tension slings with variable selection criteria and outcome definition. Few studies include sufficient numbers of patients or have a long enough follow-up to provide useful evidence. The available devices have differing designs, making it difficult to use existing data to make general conclusions about adjustable slings as a class of procedure. Three adjustable sling devices were reviewed: Remeex®, Safyre®, Ajust®. The latter is an adjustable single-incision sling.

Remeex®

Two cohort studies included a total of 155 patients and had more than 22 months' follow-up (1,2). The results showed that at least 86% of women had objective cure of SUI, with re-adjustment of the device required in up to 16% of women.

Saffyre®

Two cohort studies included a total of 208 patients with a minimum of 12 months follow-up (3,4). The reported cure rate was up to 92% with adverse effects of late vaginal erosion in 8% and dyspareunia in 11% (3).

Ajust®
A single cohort study reported an 80% success rate (patient's global impression of improvement) in 90 women after 12 months of follow-up.

Evidence summary	LE
Adjustable mid-urethral synthetic sling devices may be effective for cure or improvement of SUI in women.	3
There is no evidence that adjustable slings are superior to standard mid-urethral slings.	4

5.1.4.3 References

1. Giberti C, Gallo F, Cortese P, et al. The suburethral tension adjustable sling (REMEEX system) in the treatment of female urinary incontinence due to 'true' intrinsic sphincter deficiency: results after 5 years of mean follow-up. BJU Int 2011 Oct;108(7):1140-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21554527
2. Errando C, Rodriguez-Escovar F, Gutierrez C, et al. A re-adjustable sling for female recurrent stress incontinence and sphincteric deficiency: outcomes and complications in 125 patients using the Remeex sling system. Neurourol Urodyn 2010 Nov;29(8):1429-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20127837
3. Kuschel S, Schuessler B. Results on function and safety of the Safyre-t, a hybrid transobturator vaginal sling for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2008;27(5):403-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17985372
4. Palma PC, Riccetto CL, Dambros M, et al. [SAFYRE. A new concept for adjustable minimally invasive sling for female urinary stress incontinence]. Actas Urol Esp 2004 Nov-Dec;28(10):749-55. [Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15666517

*5.1.5 **Bulking agents***

Injection of a bulking agent into the submucosal tissues of the urethra is thought to increase the coaptation of the urethral walls, in turn leading to increased urethral resistance and improved continence. Whether this is achieved through causing obstruction or improving the mucosa-to-mucosa sealing is unknown. The recommended site of injection varies with the bulking agent, and numerous materials have been developed for this use over 20 years (see below). They are injected transurethrally or paraurethrally under urethroscopic control, or alternatively using a purpose-made device (implacer), which reliably positions the needle-tip under local anaesthetic at the required position in the urethral wall.

5.1.5.1 Question

In women with SUI, does injection of a urethral bulking agent cure SUI or improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

5.1.5.2 Evidence

There is one Cochrane systematic review (1), which reported on 12 RCTs or quasi-RCTs of injectable agents. In general, the trials were only of moderate quality and small, and many of them had been reported in abstract form. Wide confidence intervals meant a meta-analysis was not possible. Since the Cochrane review, two further RCTs have been reported (2,3).

Each injectable product has been the subject of many case series. Short-term efficacy in reducing the symptoms of SUI has been demonstrated for all materials used. In 2006, NICE published an extensive review of these case series (4). These case series have added very little to the evidence provided by RCTs. There has been only one placebo-controlled RCT, in which an autologous fat injection was compared with the placebo of a saline injection.

Polytetrafluoroethylene (Polytef)

There are no RCTs available. NICE 2006 (4) did not recommend this treatment because of the high incidence of adverse events.

Glutaraldehyde cross-linked bovine collagen (Contigen)

Most evidence from RCTs of the efficacy of collagen comes from six trials, in which collagen has been used as a comparator to an experimental synthetic product (see below). This implies that collagen has been regarded as the 'gold standard' bulking agent. In one RCT, collagen was compared to open surgery (5).

Autologous fat
One study found no difference in efficacy between autologous fat and saline injection (22% vs. 20% improvement at 3 months, respectively) (6). Due to a fatality from fat embolism, NICE 2006 (4) and the Cochrane Review (1) made a strong recommendation that this treatment should not be used.

Silicon particles (Macroplastique™)
Silicon particles have been compared to collagen in two RCTs, only one of which has been published as a full article (7). No significant difference in efficacy was found.

Carbon beads (Durasphere™)
Carbon beads have been compared to collagen in two RCTs (3,8). Although one study lacked appropriate statistical power, the other was a good-quality study (n = 235), with 12 months' follow-up, that showed no difference in efficacy.

Calcium hydroxylapatite (CaHA) (Coaptite™)
A study with small sample size comparing collagen to hydroxylapatite found the failure rate was significantly higher at 6 months for collagen (6/18 vs. 3/22, respectively) (9).

Ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer (EVOH) (Uryx™)
There is one RCT (n = 210), comparing ethylene copolymer to collagen, which demonstrated similar efficacy at 6 months' follow-up (10).

Porcine dermal implant (Permacol™)
There is one very small RCT comparing porcine dermis to silicon particles. There was no significant difference in failure rates between the two procedures at 6 months' follow-up (11).

Hydrogel cross-linked with polyacrilamide (BulkamidTM)
No RCT data are available. There is a single multicentre case series of 135 women, which reported 66% success rate with 35% participants requiring re-injection (12).

Non-animal stabilised hyaluronic acid/dextranomer (NASHA/Dx) (Zuidex™)
There is one RCT, comparing dextranomer (placed in mid-urethra) to collagen injection (at the bladder neck). At 12 months, results were inferior in women given dextranomer (13).

Stem cells
Early reports of dose-ranging studies (14) suggest that stem cell injection is a safe procedure in the short term. However, its efficacy (compared to its bulking effect) has yet to be established.

Comparison with open surgery
Two RCTs studies compared collagen injection to conventional surgery for SUI (autologous sling vs. silicon particles and collagen vs. assorted procedures). The studies reported greater efficacy but higher complication rates for open surgery. In comparison, collagen injections showed inferior efficacy but equivalent levels of satisfaction and fewer serious complications (5,15).

Another trial found that a periurethral route of injection can carry a higher risk of urinary retention compared to a transurethral injection (16). A recent small RCT found no difference in efficacy between a mid-urethral and bladder neck injection of collagen (2).

Evidence summary	**LE**
Periurethral injection of bulking agent may provide short-term improvement in symptoms (3 months), but not cure, in women with SUI.	2a
Repeat injections to achieve therapeutic effect are very common.	2a
Bulking agents are less effective than colposuspension or autologous sling for cure of SUI.	2a
Adverse effect rates are lower compared to open surgery.	2a
There is no evidence that one type of bulking agent is better than another type.	1b
Periurethral route of injection may be associated with a higher risk of urinary retention compared to transurethral route.	2 b

Recommendations for surgery for uncomplicated stress urinary incontinence in women	GR
Offer the mid-urethral sling to women with uncomplicated stress urinary incontinence as the preferred surgical intervention whenever available.	A
Offer colposuspension (open or laparoscopic) or autologous fascial sling to women with stress urinary incontinence if mid-urethral sling cannot be considered.	A
Warn women who are being offered a retropubic insertion synthetic sling about the relatively higher risk of peri-operative complications compared to transobturator insertion.	A
Warn women who are being offered transobturator insertion of mid-urethral sling about the higher risk of pain and dyspareunia in the longer term.	A
Warn women undergoing autologous fascial sling that there is a high risk of voiding difficulty and the need to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation; ensure they are willing and able to do so.	A
Do a cystoscopy as part of retropubic insertion of a mid-urethral sling, or if difficulty is encountered during transobturator sling insertion, or if there is a significant cystocoele.	C
Women being offered a single-incision sling device for which an evidence base exists, should be warned that short-term efficacy is inferior to standard mid-urethral slings and that long-term efficacy remains uncertain.	C
Only offer single-incision sling devices, for which there is no level 1 evidence base, as part of a structured research programme.	A
Only offer adjustable mid-urethral sling as a primary surgical treatment for stress urinary incontinence as part of a structured research programme.	C
Do not offer bulking agents to women who are seeking a permanent cure for stress urinary incontinence.	A

5.1.5.3 References

1. Keegan PE, Atiemo K, Cody J, et al. Periurethral injection therapy for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Jul 18;(3):CD003881. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17636740
2. Kuhn A, Stadlmayr W, Lengsfeld D, et al. Where should bulking agents for female urodynamic stress incontinence be injected? Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Jun;19(6):817-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18157642
3. Lighter D, Calvosa C, Andersen R, et al. A new injectable bulking agent for treatment of stress urinary incontinence: results of a multicenter, randomized, controlled, double-blind study of Durasphere. Urology 2001 Jul;58(1):12-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445471
4. Urinary incontinence: the management of urinary incontinence in women. Clinical guidelines CG40. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, October 2006. http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG40
5. Corcos J, Collet JP, Shapiro S, et al. Multicenter randomized clinical trial comparing surgery and collagen injections for treatment of female stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2005 May;65(5): 898-904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15882720
6. Lee PE, Kung RC, Drutz HP. Periurethral autologous fat injection as treatment for female stress urinary incontinence: a randomized double-blind controlled trial. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):153-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125386
7. Ghoniem G, Corcos J, Comiter C, et al. Cross-linked polydimethylsiloxane injection for female stress urinary incontinence: results of a multicenter, randomized, controlled, single-blind study. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):204-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19013613
8. Andersen RC. Long-term follow-up comparison of durasphere and contigen in the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. J Low Genit Tract Dis 2002 Oct;6(4):239-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17051030
9. Dmochowski R, Appell R, Klimberg I, et al. Initial clinical results from coaptite injection for stress urinary incontinence comparative clinical study. Proceedings of the International Continence Society 32nd Annual Meeting. Heidelburg, Germany, 28-30 August 2002. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(4): 275-442, abstract 282. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/40/000282.pdf

10. Dmochowski R, Herschorn S, Corcos J, et al. Multicenter randomized controlled study to evaluate uryxo urethral bulking agent in treating female stress urinary incontinence. Proceedings of the International Continence Society 32nd Annual Meeting. Heidelburg, Germany, 28-30 August 2002. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(4):275-442, abstract 285. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/40/000285.pdf
11. Bano F, Barrington JW, Dyer F. Comparison between porcine dermal implant (Permacol TM) and silicone injection (Macroplastique) for urodynamic stress incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2005 Mar-Apr;16(2):147-50; discussion 150. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15378234
12. Lose G, Sorensen HC, Axelsen SM, et al. An open multicenter study of polyacrylamide hydrogel (Bulkamid®) for female stress and mixed urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J 2010 Dec;21(12): 1471-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20645077
13. Lightner DJ, Fox J, Klingele C. Cystoscopic injections of dextranomer hyaluronic acid into proximal urethra for urethral incompetence: efficacy and adverse outcomes. Urology 2010 Jun;75(6):1310-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299087
14. Carr L, Herschorn S, Birch C, et al. Autologous muscle-derived cells as a therapy for stress urinary incontinence: a randomized, blinded, multi-dose study. J Urol 2009 Apr 28;181(4 Suppl):546, abstract 1526. http://download.journals.elsevierhealth.com/pdfs/journals/0022-5347/PIIS0022534709615408.pdf
15. Maher CF, O'Reilly BA, Dwyer PL, et al. Pubovaginal sling versus transurethral Macroplastique for stress urinary incontinence and intrinsic sphincter deficiency: a prospective randomised controlled trial. BJOG 2005 Jun;112(6):797-801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15924540
16. Schulz JA, Nager CW, Stanton SL, et al. Bulking agents for stress urinary incontinence: short-term results and complications in a randomized comparison of periurethral and transurethral injections. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2004 Jul-Aug;15(4):261-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15517671

5.2 Complicated SUI in women

This section will address surgical treatment for women who have had previous surgery for SUI, which has failed, or those women who have undergone previous radiotherapy affecting the vaginal or urethral tissues. Neurological lower urinary tract dysfunction is not considered because it is reviewed by the EAU Guidelines on Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction (1). Women with associated genitourinary prolapse will be included in the next edition of these Guidelines in 2013.

*5.2.1 **Failed surgery***

The reported failure rates from any operation for SUI vary widely from 5-80%, depending on how failure was defined. Even using a very strict definition, this means that at least hundreds of the many thousands of women undergoing primary surgery for SUI will require further surgery for recurrent symptoms. A primary operation may fail from the start or may occur some years after the original procedure. There may be persistent or recurrent SUI, or the development of de-novo UUI or voiding difficulty. Expert opinion therefore considers careful urodynamic evaluation to be an essential part of the work-up of these patients.

However, the underlying reasons for failure are poorly understood. Consequently, which operation to offer women with failed previous surgery for UI is usually driven by individual clinician opinion about the mechanisms of failure, familiarity with certain procedures, and experience in personal series. Most surgeons believe the results of any operation will be inferior to the same operation used as a primary procedure and will warn their patients of this.

The Panel have limited their literature search to the surgical management of recurrent SUI. It is presumed that the management of de-novo UUI will follow the pathway recommended for the management of primary UUI and DO, starting with conservative management. The Panel has not addressed the management of voiding difficulty because this does not require further treatment for incontinence.

5.2.1.1 Question

In women who have recurrent SUI following previous corrective surgery, what is the best surgical treatment?

5.2.1.2 Evidence

Most data on surgery for SUI are for primary surgery. When secondary procedures are included, it is unusual

for the outcomes to be separately reported. Even if they are, the numbers of patients are usually too small to allow meaningful comparisons.

The 4th International Consultation on Incontinence included a review of this topic up until 2008, and the subject has also been reviewed by Ashok and Wang (1). Cochrane reviews of individual operative techniques have not included a separate evaluation of outcomes in women undergoing second-line surgery. However, there is a current protocol advising on this issue (2). A further literature review up until October 2011 has been carried out since that time by the EAU Panel with the following findings.

Three RCTs were found. Two of the trials compared Burch colposuspension to a biological sling in recurrent SUI (3,4). There was no difference in efficacy between the procedures, but the complication rates were higher for slings. Another small RCT (abstract only) compared retropubic mid-urethral sling to laparoscopic colposuspension in women with recurrent SUI and reported similar short-term cure rates and adverse events (5).

Post-hoc analysis of high-quality RCTs comparing one surgical procedure to another reported higher failure rates for SUI and higher rates for adverse effects in women who had had previous surgery for SUI. There was no difference in these rates between the compared procedures (4,6-8). A history of prior surgery for UI was not an independent predictor of failure at 2 years in women undergoing open colposuspension or autologous fascial sling (4).

One large non-randomised cohort study suggested that cure rates after more than two previous operations were 0% for open colposuspension and 38% for autologous sling (9).

Several cohort studies have reported outcomes for retropubic mid-urethral synthetic sling specifically for primary and secondary cases. There is conflicting evidence on the effectiveness of second-line retropubic sling insertion, with some series showing equivalent outcomes for primary and secondary cases (10-12) and other series showing inferior outcomes for secondary surgery (13,14). Other confounding variables make meaningful conclusions difficult. There appears to be no evidence supporting the concept that the original mid-urethral sling should be removed.

Many small case series report satisfactory outcomes for repeat procedures of many types, but this evidence is not suitable to generate guidance.

A systematic review of older trials of open surgery for SUI suggests that the longer-term outcomes of repeat open colposuspension may be worse than those seen with autologous fascial slings (15). Successful results have been reported from mid-urethral slings after various types of primary surgery, while good outcomes are reported for both repeat retropubic mid-urethral sling and for 'tightening' of existing mid-urethral slings, but data were limited to small case series only.

Finally, clinical guidelines have been developed by the Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada, based on a literature review and expert opinion. Unfortunately, the methodology and the rationale for grading decisions were not clear (16).

Evidence summary	**LE**
The risk of treatment failure from surgery for SUI is higher in women who have had prior surgery for incontinence or prolapse.	1b
Open colposuspension and autologous fascial sling appear to be as effective for first-time repeat surgery as for primary surgery.	1b
The mid-urethral sling is less effective as a second-line procedure than for primary surgery.	2

5.2.1.3 Research priority on failed SUI surgery

There is a need for well-structured research trials to compare surgical procedures in women who have had previous failed surgery for SUI.

5.2.1.4 References

1. Ashok K, Wang A. Recurrent urinary stress incontinence: an overview. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 2010 Jun;36(3):467-73.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20598022
2. Bakali E, Buckley BS, Hilton P, et al. Treatment of recurrent stress urinary incontinence after failed minimally invasive synthetic suburethral tape surgery in women (Protocol). Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011;(10):CD009407.
   http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD009407/abstract
3. Enzelsberger H, Helmer H, Schatten C. Comparison of Burch and lyodura sling procedures for repair of unsuccessful incontinence surgery. Obstet Gynecol 1996 Aug;88(2):251-6.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8692511
4. Richter HE, Diokno A, Kenton K, et al. Predictors of treatment failure 24 months after surgery for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):1024-30.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18206917
5. Maher C, Qatawneh A, Baessler K, et al. Laparoscopic colposuspension or tension-free vaginal tape for recurrent stress urinary incontinence and/or urethral sphincter deficiency-a randomised controlled trial. Joint Meeting of the International Continence Society and the International UroGynecological Associations, 34rd Annual Meeting, Paris, France, 25th-27th August 2004. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(5/6):433-4.
   http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/42/000025.pdf
6. Richter HE, Litman H, Lukacz E, et al. Baseline predictors of one year treatment failure of retropubic and transobturator midurethral sling procedures for stress urinary incontinence. [Abstract]. Female Pelvic Medicine & Reconstructive Surgery 2010 Sep/Oct;16 (5) supplement 2:S62.
   http://journals.lww.com/jpelvicsurgery/toc/2010/09002
7. Richter HE, Litman HJ, Lukacs ES, et al. Demographic and clinical predictors of treatment failure one year after midurethral sling surgery. Obstet Gynecol 2011 Apr;117(4):913-21.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21422865
8. Abdel-Fattah M, Ramsay I, Pringle S, et al. Evaluation of transobturator tension-free vaginal tapes in management of women with recurrent stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2011 May;77(5):1070-5.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21414653
9. Amaye-Obu FA, Drutz HP. Surgical management of recurrent stress urinary incontinence: a 12-year experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1999 Dec;181(6):1296-307; discussion 1307-9.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10601904
10. Rezapour M, Ulmsten U. Tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) in women with mixed urinary incontinence-a long-term follow-up. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2001;12 Suppl 2:S15-18.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11450974
11. Rardin CR, Kohli N, Rosenblatt PL, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape: outcomes among women with primary versus recurrent stress urinary incontinence. Obstet Gynecol 2002 Nov;100(5 Pt 1):893-7.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12423849
12. Koops SE, Bisseling TM, van Brummen HJ, et al. What determines a successful tension-free vaginal tape? A prospective multicenter cohort study: results from The Netherlands TVT database. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2006 Jan;194(1):65-74.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16389011
13. Stav K, Dwyer PL, Rosamilia A, et al. Repeat synthetic mid urethral sling procedure for women with recurrent stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):241-6.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913831
14. Lee KS, Doo CK, Han Dh, et al. Outcomes following repeat mid urethral synthetic sling after failure of the initial sling procedure: rediscovery of the tension-free vaginal tape procedure. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 1):1370-4; discussion 1374.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17706716
15. Jarvis GJ. Surgery for genuine stress incontinence. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1994 May;101(5):371-4.
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8018606
16. Lovatsis D, Easton W, Wilkie D. Guidelines for the evaluation and treatment of recurrent urinary incontinence following pelvic floor surgery. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2010 Sep;32(9):893-904. [English, French]
    http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21050525

*5.2.2 **External compression devices***

Some of the earliest techniques for treating SUI simply applied intra-corporeal compression external to the urethra. External compression devices are still widely used in the treatment of recurrent SUI after the failure of

previous surgery. They are also commonly used in women with neurological LUTD, in whom there is thought to be profound intrinsic failure of the sphincter mechanism, characterised by very low leak point pressures or low urethral closure pressures.

There are two intracorporeal external urethral compression devices available. They are the adjustable compression therapy (ACT) device and the artificial urinary sphincter (AUS). Using ultrasound or fluoroscopic guidance, the ACT device is inserted by placement of two inflatable spherical balloons on either side of the bladder neck. Each volume of each balloon can be adjusted through a subcutaneous port placed within the labia majora. More recently, an adjustable artificial urinary sphincter (Flowsecure) has been introduced. It has the added benefit of 'conditional occlusion', enabling it to respond to rapid changes in intra-abdominal pressure.

5.2.2.1 Question

- In women with SUI, does insertion of an external compressive device cure SUI, improve QoL or cause adverse outcomes?
- How do external compression devices compare to other surgical treatments for SUI?

5.2.2.2 Evidence

The major advantage of artificial sphincters over other anti-incontinence procedures is the perceived ability of women to be able to void normally. However, voiding dysfunction is a known side effect, with a lack of data making it difficult to assess its importance. Because of significant differences in design between devices and in selection criteria between case series, results obtained with specific devices cannot be extrapolated generally to the use of adjustable devices. A recent consensus report has standardised the terminology used for reporting complications arising from implantation of materials into the pelvic floor region (1).

Artificial urinary sphincter

The 2011 Cochrane review on AUS (2) applies only to men with post-prostatectomy incontinence. A previous review of mechanical devices concluded that there was insufficient evidence to support the use of artificial sphincters in women (3).

There are no RCTs regarding the AUS in women. There are a few case series in women, including four series (n = 611), with study populations ranging from 45 to 215 patients and follow-up ranging from 1 month to 25 years (4-7). Case series have been confounded by varying selection criteria, especially the proportion of women who have neurological dysfunction or who have had previous surgery. Most patients achieved an improvement in SUI, with reported subjective cures in 59-88% of patients. However, common side effects included mechanical failure requiring revision (up to 42% at 10 years) and explantation (5.9-15%). In a retrospective series of 215 women followed up for a mean of 6 years, the risk factors for failure were older age, previous Burch colposuspension and pelvic radiotherapy (6). Peri-operative injury to the urethra, bladder or rectum was also a high-risk factor for explantation (4).

Early reports of laparoscopically implanted AUS do not have sufficient patient populations and/or sufficient follow-up to be able to draw any conclusions (8,9).

Adjustable compression device

There are no RCTs on use of the ACT device. There are four case series (n = 349), with follow-up ranging from 5 to 84 months (11-14). An improvement in UI outcomes was reported, ranging from 47% objective cure to 100% subjective improvement. However, most patients required adjustment to achieve continence and 21% required explantation.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Implantation of an artificial sphincter may achieve continence in women with complicated SUI.	3
Implantation of the ACT device may improve complicated UI.	3
Failure and device explantation are common adverse effects of both the artificial sphincter and the adjustable compression device.	3
Explantation is more frequent in older women and among those who have had previous Burch colposuspension or pelvic radiotherapy.	3

Recommendations for surgery for complicated stress urinary incontinence in women	GR
The choice of surgery for recurrent stress urinary incontinence should be based on careful evaluation of the individual patient.	C
Women should be warned that the outcome of second-line surgical procedures is likely to be inferior to first-line treatment, both in terms of reduced benefit and increased risk of harm.	C
Offer implantation of AUS or ACT as an option for women with complicated stress urinary incontinence if they are available and appropriate monitoring of outcome is in place.	C
Warn women receiving AUS or ACT that there is a high risk of mechanical failure or a need for explantation.	C

AUS = Artificial Urinary Sphincter; ACT = Adjustable Compression Therapy.

5.2.2.3 References

1. Haylen BT, Freeman RM, Swift SE, et al. An International Urogynecological Association (IUGA)/ International Continence Society (ICS) joint terminology and classification of the complications related directly to the insertion of prostheses (meshes, implants, tapes) and grafts in female pelvic floor surgery. Neurourol Urodyn 2011 Jan;30(1):2-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21181958
2. Silva LA, Andriolo RB, Atallah AN, et al. Surgery for stress urinary incontinence due to presumed sphincter deficiency after prostate surgery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Apr 13;(4):CD008306. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21491408
3. Shaikh S, Ong EK, Glavind K, et al. Mechanical devices for urinary incontinence in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jul 19;(3):CD001756. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855977
4. Costa P, Mottet N, Rabut B, et al. The use of an artificial urinary sphincter in women with type III incontinence and a negative Marshall test. J Urol 2001 Apr;165(4):1172-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257664
5. Heitz M, Olianas R, Schreiter F. [Therapy of female urinary incontinence with the AMS 800 artificial sphincter. Indications, outcome, complications and risk factors]. Urologe A 1997 Sep;36(5):426-31. [German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9424794
6. Vayleux B, Rigaud J, Luyckx F, et al. Female urinary incontinence and artificial urinary sphincter: study of efficacy and risk factors for failure and complications. Eur Urol 2011 Jun;59(6):1048-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21420781
7. Chung E, Cartmill RA. 25-year experience in the outcome of artificial urinary sphincter in the treatment of female urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2010 Dec;106(11):1664-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20500509
8. Mandron E, Bryckaert PE, Papatsoris AG. Laparoscopic artificial urinary sphincter implantation for female genuine stress urinary incontinence: technique and 4-year experience in 25 patients. BJU Int 2010 Oct;106(8):1194-8; discussion 1198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20132197
9. Roupret M, Misrai V, Vaessen C, et al. Laparoscopic approach for artificial urinary sphincter implantation in women with intrinsic sphincter deficiency incontinence: a single-centre preliminary experience. Eur Urol 2010 Mar;57(3):499-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19346059
10. Lee R, Te AE, Kaplan SA, et al. Temporal trends in adoption of and indications for the artificial urinary sphincter. J Urol 2009 Jun;181(6):2622-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375102
11. Aboseif SR, Franke EI, Nash SD, et al. The adjustable continence therapy system for recurrent female stress urinary incontinence: 1-year results of the North America Clinical Study Group. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):2187-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19296967
12. Aboseif SR, Sassani P, Franke EI, et al. Treatment of moderate to severe female stress urinary incontinence with the adjustable continence therapy (ACT) device after failed surgical repair. World J Urol 2011 Apr;29(2):249-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20959993

13. Kocjancic E, Crivellaro S, Ranzoni S, et al. Adjustable continence therapy for severe intrinsic sphincter deficiency and recurrent female stress urinary incontinence: long-term experience. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):1017-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20643464
14. Wachter J, Henning A, Reohlich M, et al. Adjustable continence therapy for female urinary incontinence: a minimally invasive option for difficult cases. Urol Int 2008;81(2):160-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18758213

5.3 Men with SUI

*5.3.1 **Bulking agents in men***

Injection of bulking agents has been used to try and improve the coaptation of a damaged sphincter zone. More recently, more modern compounds have been used to treat female and male SUI, e.g. bovine collagen (Contigen™), cross-linked polyacrylamide hydrogel (Bulkamid™) and dextranomer/hyaluronic acid copolymer (Deflux™), pyrolytic carbon particles (Durasphere™) and polymethylsyloxane (Macroplastique™). Initial reports showed limited efficacy in treating incontinence following radical prostatectomy incontinence (1,2).

5.3.1.1 Question

In men with post-prostatectomy incontinence or SUI, does injection of a urethral bulking agent cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

5.3.1.2 Evidence

Most studies are case series with small sample sizes. Small cohort studies showed a lack of benefit using a number of different materials (3,4) However, polyacrylamide hydrogel resulted in limited improvement in QoL without curing the UI (4). A Cochrane review on the surgical treatment of post-prostatectomy incontinence found only one study that fulfilled the inclusion criteria (5). A prospective, randomised study compared the AUS to silicon particles (Macroplastique™) in 45 patients (1). Eighty-two per cent of patients receiving an AUS were continent compared to 46% of patients receiving silicone particles. In patients with severe incontinence, this difference was significant, but in patients with moderate and mild incontinence, the difference was less.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is no evidence that bulking agents cure post-prostatectomy incontinence.	2a
There is weak evidence that bulking agents can offer temporary improvement in QoL in men with post-prostatectomy incontinence.	3
There is no evidence that one bulking agent is superior to another.	3

5.3.1.3 References

1. Imamoglu MA, Tuygun C, Bakirtas H, et al. The comparison of artificial urinary sphincter implantation and endourethral macroplastique injection for the treatment of postprostatectomy incontinence. Eur Urol 2005 Feb;47(2):209-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15661416
2. Secin FP, Martínez-Salamanca JI, Eilber KS. [Limited efficacy of permanent injectable agents in the treatment of stress urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy]. Arch Esp Urol 2005 Jun;58(5):431-6. [Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16078785
3. Werther M, Seibold J, Amend B, et al. Stress urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy: long term effects of endoscopic injection with dextranomer/hyaluronic acid copolymer. 39th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, San Francisco, USA. 29 September to 3 October. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(7):567-935, abstract no. 643.
http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/47/000643.pdf
4. Mantovani F, Maruccia S, Cozzi G, et al. Bulkamide hydrogel: limits of a new bulking agent in the mini-invasive therapy of incontinence after prostatectomy. 34th Congress SIUD, 17-19 2010, Verona, Italy. Neurourol Urodyn 2010 Jun;29(S2):95.
http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/nau.20930/pdf
5. Silva LA, Andriolo RB, Atallah AN, et al. Surgery for stress urinary incontinence due to presumed sphincter deficiency after prostate surgery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Apr 13;(4):CD008306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21491408

5.3.2 ***Fixed male sling***

As well as external compression devices and bulking agents, slings have been introduced to treat post-prostatectomy incontinence. Fixed slings are positioned under the urethra and fixed by a retropubic or transobturator approach. The tension is adjusted during the surgery and cannot be re-adjusted post-operatively.

For the restoration of continence by these male slings, two concepts are now being proposed:

- continence restoration by urethral compression (InVance®, TOMS , Argus®)
- continence restoration by repositioning the bulb of urethra (AdVance) (1).

In principle, the AUS can be used for all degrees of post-prostatectomy incontinence, while male slings are advocated for mild-to-moderate incontinence. However, the definitions of mild and moderate incontinence are not clear. The definition of cure, used in most studies, was no pad use or one security pad per 24 hours. Some authors used a stricter criterion of less than 2 g urine loss in a 24-hour pad test (2).

5.3.2.1 Question

In men with post-prostatectomy SUI, does insertion of a fixed suburethral sling cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

5.3.2.2 Evidence

Concerning the surgical treatment of post-prostatectomy incontinence, three recent literature reviews are available (3-5). There are a large number of uncontrolled case series concerning men implanted with several types of slings (6-14).

For the repositioning sling (AdVance), the benefit after a mean follow-up of 3 years has been published on 136 patients (15). Data were available on at least 614 patients with a mean follow-up of between 3 months and 3 years (2,12,15-21). Subjective cure rates for the device vary between 8.6% and 73.7%, with a mean of 49.5%. Radiotherapy was a negative prognostic factor (13,21). Post-operative voiding dysfunction occurred in 5.7-1.3%, while erosions and chronic pain were uncommon (0-0.4%). The overall failure rate was about 20%.

For the compression sling (InVance), 5-year data were available on 27 patients, 3-year data were available on 45 patients, and 1-year data were available on an additional 177 patients (22,23-27) The cure rate for this device varied between 36% and 62.7%, with a mean of 51.8% (22,23,25,26). Radiotherapy was a negative prognostic factor. Infection occurred in 3.2-15%, while de-novo urgency was reported in 2.3-11.9% of patients. The overall failure rate was about 20%.

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is limited short-term evidence that fixed male slings cure post-prostatectomy incontinence in patients with mild-to-moderate incontinence.	3
Men with severe incontinence, previous radiotherapy or urethral stricture surgery have poor outcomes from fixed male slings.	3
There is no evidence that one type of male sling is better than another.	3

5.3.2.3 References

1. Zeif HJ, Almallah Z. The male sling for post-radical prostatectomy urinary incontinence: urethral compression versus urethral relocation or what is next? Br J Med Surg Urol 2010;3(4):134-143. http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1875974210000248
2. Cornel EB, Elzevier HW, Putter H. Can advance transobturator sling suspension cure male urinary postoperative stress incontinence? J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1459-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20172561
3. Bauer RM, Gozzi C, Hubner W, et al. Contemporary management of postprostatectomy incontinence. Eur Urol 2011 Jun;59(6):985-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21458914
4. Abrams P, Andersson KE, Birder L, et al. Fourth International Consultation on Incontinence Recommendations of the International Scientific Committee: evaluation and treatment of urinary incontinence, pelvic organ prolapse, and fecal incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):213-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025020

5. Herschorn S, Bruschini H, Comiter C, et al. Surgical treatment of stress incontinence in men. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):179-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025026
6. Bauer R, Mayer M, May F, et al. Complications of the AdVance transobturator male sling in the treatment of male stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2010 Jun;75(6):1494-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20156654
7. Bauer RM, Mayer ME, Gratzke C, et al. Prospective evaluation of the functional sling suspension for male postprostatectomy stress urinary incontinence: results after 1 year. Eur Urol 2009 Dec;56(6): 928-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19660850
8. Bauer R, Mayer M, Buchner A, et al. Surgical treatment of male stress incontinence after radical prostatectomy and its impact on quality of life. [Abstract] Urology 2009 Oct;74 (Supplement 4A):S119
9. Bauer R, Fullhase C, Stief C, et al. AdVance sling: the 'repositioning test', the most important tool for preoperative evaluation. Urology 2010 Sep;76(3 Suppl 1):S4, abstract no. POD-1.09. http://www.siu-urology.org/userfiles/files/URL 1.pdf
10. Bauer RM, Mayer ME, May F, et al. Complications of the AdVance transobturator male sling in the treatment of male stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2010 Jun;75(6):1494-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20156654
11. Bauer R, Fullhase C, Becker A, et al. Mid-term results of the functional transobturator sling suspension for male post-prostatectomy stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2010 Sep;76(3 Suppl 1):S1-2; abstract no. POD-1.03. http://www.siu-urology.org/userfiles/files/URL 1.pdf
12. Bauer RM, Soljanik I, Fullhase C, et al. Mid-term results for the retroluminar transobturator sling suspension for stress urinary incontinence after prostatectomy. BJU Int 2011 Jul;108(1):94-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20883489
13. Bauer RM, Soljanik I, Fullhase C, et al. Results of the AdVance transobturator male sling after radical prostatectomy and adjuvant radiotherapy. Urology 2011 Feb;77(2):474-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21167563
14. Bauer R, Gozzi C, Becker A, et al. Urodynamic findings after AdVance sling implantation. AUA 2011 Annual Scientific Meeting, May 14-19, 2011, Washington DC. Abstract 2159. http://www.aua2011.org/abstracts/abstracts.cfm
15. Cornu J-N, Sebe P, Ciofu C, et al. Mid-term evaluation of the transobturator male sling for post-prostatectomy incontinence: focus on prognostic factors. BJU Int 2011 Jul;108(2):236-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20955265
16. Gill BC, Swartz MA, Klein JB, et al. Patient perceived effectiveness of a new male sling as treatment for post-prostatectomy incontinence. J Urol 2010 Jan;183(1):247-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913826
17. Gill B, Li H, Nowacki A, et al. Durability of subjective outcomes of the Advance sling: initial insights. Society for Urodynamics and Female Urology, 2011 Winter Meeting, March 1-5 2011, Phoenix, Arizona, USA. Neururol Urodyn 2011 Feb:30(2):204-79. [Abstract no. 13] http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/nau.21058/full
18. Bertoloni R, Amenta M, Olivo G, et al. The retrourethral trans-obturator sling is an effective and attractive treatment option for male stress urinary incontinence resulting from radical prostatectomy (RP) after 1 year of implantation. Abstracts of the 20th Annual Meeting of the Italian Society of Uro-oncology (SIUrO), Rome, June 23-25, 2010. Anticancer Res 2011;30(4):1389, abstract no. 26. http://www.iiar-anticancer.org/openAR/journals/index.php/anticancer/article/view/205
19. Hegele A, Frohme C, Olbert P, et al. Long term results after AdVance® male sling procedure in male stress urinary incontinence (SUI). 25th Anniversary EAU Congress, 16-20 April 2009, Barcelona, Spain. Eur Urol Suppl 2010;9(2):102, abstract no. 233. http://www.uroweb.org/events/abstracts-online/?AID=26295
20. Rehder P, Mitterberger MJ, Pichler R, et al. The 1 year outcome of the transobturator retroluminal repositioning sling in the treatment of male stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2010 Dec;106(11):1668-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20518761
21. Rehder P, Pichler R, Schachtner L, et al. Two year outcome of the transobturator retroluminal repositioning sling in the treatment of male stress urinary incontinence. 26th Annual EAU Congress, 18-22 March 2011, Vienna, Austria. Eur Urol Suppl 2011;10(2):309, abstract no. 994. http://www.uroweb.org/events/abstracts-online/?AID=34202

22. Carmel M, Hage B, Hanna S, et al. Long-term efficacy of the bone-anchored male sling for moderate and severe stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2010 Oct;106(7):1012-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201839
23. Guimaraes M, Oliveira R, Resende A, et al. The bone-anchored perineal male sling for post-prostatectomy incontinence: results up to 5 years of follow-up. Urology 2010 Sep;76 (Suppl 3A):S2, abstract no. POD-1.04 http://www.siu-urology.org/userfiles/files/URL 1.pdf
24. Lynch W. Treatment parameters for the bone anchored male perineal sling. [Abstract UP-1.188] Urology 2009 Oct;74 (Supplement 4A):S229-S230. http://www.goldjournal.net/search/results
25. Giberti C, Gallo F, Schenone M, et al. The bone-anchor sub-urethral sling for the treatment of iatrogenic male incontinence: subjective and objective assessment after 41 months of mean follow-up. World J Urol 2008 Apr;26(2):173-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17982750
26. Giberti C, Gallo F, Schenone M, et al. The bone anchor suburethral synthetic sling for iatrogenic male incontinence: critical evaluation at a mean 3-year followup. J Urol 2009 May;181(5):2204-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19296976
27. Comiter CV. The male perineal sling: intermediate-term results. Neurourol Urodyn 2005;24(7):648-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16167352

*5.3.3 **Adjustable slings in males***

Adjustability in male sling surgery attempts to adjust the tension of the sling post-operatively. Two main systems are used in men:

- The Remeex® system consists of tension wires, which are adjusted using a type of screwdriver that temporarily comes out of the suprapubic wound. Once the ideal tension is achieved, it is easy to dislodge the screwdriver and close the wound. It is possible to repeat the procedure later during secondary surgery.
- The Argus® system consists of a silicone cushion, which is placed under the urethra and tensioned by two silicone arms, positioned either retropubically or in a transobturator fashion. Re-adjustment is usually carried out several months after the initial implant, by tightening or loosening the tensioning arms during a second surgical intervention.

5.3.3.1 Question

In men with post-prostatectomy incontinence or SUI, does insertion of an adjustable suburethral sling cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

5.3.3.2 Evidence

There are no prospective RCTs comparing adjustable male slings to any other procedure. Most studies consist of prospective or retrospective case series, with variable follow-up and different definitions of success. Some have been published only as conference abstracts.

Remeex® system

For the Remeex® system, only two abstracts, with conflicting findings, have been published. One study followed 19 patients for nearly 7 years and reported 70% success (1), with no explants, infections or erosions. The second study followed 14 patients for 25 months. Only 36% of patients were satisfied and multiple re-adjustments were needed. Mechanical failure was reported in 21% (2).

Argus® system

Data on the Argus® system have been reported for 404 men, but only four series have reported on more than 50 patients (3-6), with the longest follow-up being 2.4 years. Success rates varied between 17% and 91.6%, with a mean of 57.6% predominantly reporting a subjective cure. The number of implants requiring re-adjustment was reported as between 22.9% and 41.5% (5,7,8). Infection of the device occurred in 5.4-8% (3,6,9). Erosions were reported in 5-10% (9,10). Urethral perforations occurred in 2.7-16% (3,4,6). Pain at the implant site was usually only temporary, but chronic pain has been reported (4,8,10,11). These complications resulted in explantation rates of 10-15% (5,8).

Evidence summary	LE
There is limited evidence that adjustable male slings are effective at curing SUI in men.	3
There is limited evidence that early explantation rates are high.	3
There is no evidence that adjustability of the male sling offers additional benefit over other types of sling.	3

5.3.3.3 References

1. Sousa A. Long term follow-up of the male remeex system for the surgical treatment of male incontinence. ICS/IUGA 2010 Scientific Meeting, 23-27 Aug 2010, Toronto, Canada. Abstract no. 136. https://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/105/000136.pdf
2. Kim JH, Kim JC, Seo JT. Long term follow-up of readjustable urethral sling procedure (Remeex System®) for male stress urinary incontinence. [Abstract 11] Society for Urodynamics and Female Urology, 2011 Winter Meeting, March 1-5, 2011, Arizona Biltmore Hotel, Phoenix, Arizona. Neurourology Urodyn 2011; 30:204-279. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/nau.21058/pdf
3. Bochove-Overgaauw D, Hoefnagels J, Schrier B. The Argus (adjustable sling for treatment of all degrees of male stress urinary incontinence: retrospective evaluation of efficacy and complications after a minimal follow-up of 14 months. [Abstract] http://ovidsp.ovid.com/ovidweb.cgi?T=JS&PAGE=reference&D=emed9&NEWS=N&AN=70272834.
4. Bochove-Overgaauw DM, Schrier BP. An adjustable sling for the treatment of all degrees of male stress urinary incontinence: retrospective evaluation of efficacy and complications after a minimal followup of 14 months. J Urol 2011 Apr;185(4):1363-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21334683
5. Hubner WA, Gallistl H, Rutkowski M, et al. Adjustable bulbourethral male sling: experience after 101 cases of moderate-to-severe male stress urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2011 Mar;107(5):777-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20964801
6. Romano S, Hubner W, Trigo Rocha F, et al. Post prostatectomy urinary incontinence treated with Argus T male sling-endurance of the results of a multicentre trial. Scientific Programme, 41st Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society (ICS), Glasgow, UK, 29 August to 2nd September, 2011. Neurourol Urodyn 2011;30(6):787-1206, abstract no. 73. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/106/000073.pdf
7. Hind A, Pini G, Viola D, Martino F, et al. Urodynamic and clinical results of an adjustable sling for male urinary incontinence-32 months follow up-ARGUS is effective also in severe cases. 39th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, San Francisco, USA. 29 September to 3 October, 2009. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(7):567-935, abstract no. 94. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/47/000094.pdf
8. Gallistl H, Rutkowski M, Ghawidel C, et al. Argus adjustable bulbourethral male sling-experience after 94 cases [Abstract]. American Urological Association (AUA) Annual Scientific Meeting, San Francisco, USA. May 29 to Jun 3 2010. J Urol 2010 April;183(4);e620. http://download.journals.elsevierhealth.com/pdfs/journals/0022-5347/PIIS0022534710016393.pdf
9. Dalpiaz O, Knopf HJ, Orth S, et al. Mid-term complications after placement of the male adjustable suburethral sling: a single center experience. J Urol 2011 Aug;186(2):604-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21684559
10. Trigo Rocha F, Gomes C, Brushini H, et al. Adjustable transobturator sling (Argus T) for the treatment of post radical prostatectomy urinary incontinence (PRPUI). 31st Congress of SIU, 16-20 Oct 2011, Berlin, Germany. Urology 2011 Sep;78(Suppl 3A), S161, abstract no. VID-02.05. http://www.siucongress.org/2011/files/VID/VID-02_031-16534.pdf

*5.3.4 **Compressive devices in males***

External compression devices can be divided into two types: circumferential and non-circumferential compression of the urethral lumen (1). The artificial urinary sphincter (AUS) has been used for more than 30 years and is the standard treatment for moderate-to-severe male SUI. Most data available on the efficacy and adverse effects of AUS implantation is from older retrospective cohort studies with RCTs not performed due to the lack of a comparator. Several modifications of the standard single-cuff transperineal technique have been described, including transcorporeal implantation, double-cuff implants and trans-scrotal approaches (2). Men considering insertion of an AUS should understand that they must be able to operate a scrotal pump, requiring adequate dexterity and cognitive function. If the ability of an individual to operate the pump is uncertain, it may not be appropriate to implant an AUS. There are several recognised complications of AUS implantation, e.g. mechanical dysfunction, urethral constriction by fibrous tissue, erosion and infection.

The non-circumferential compression devices consist of two balloons placed close to the anastomotic urethra. The balloons can be filled and their volume can be adjusted post-operatively through an intrascrotal port.

5.3.4.1 Question

In men with post-prostatectomy SUI, does insertion of an external compression device cure SUI, improve QoL, or cause adverse outcomes?

5.3.4.2 Evidence

Artificial urinary sphincter

Although the AUS is considered to be the standard treatment for men with SUI, the quantity and level of evidence is low. There are no well-designed prospective RCTs with most information gained from older case series (2). More recent case series confirm the previous data (3,5). A continence rate of about 80% can be expected, while this may be lower in men who have undergone pelvic radiotherapy (3).

Trigo Rocha et al. published a prospective cohort study on 40 patients with a mean follow-up of 53 months (6). Pad use was reduced significantly and continence was achieved in 90%, with a significant improvement in QoL. The revision rate was 20%. From all urodynamic parameters, only low bladder compliance had a negative impact on the outcome, although another retrospective study showed that no urodynamic factors adversely altered the outcome of AUS implantation (7).

The penoscrotal approach was introduced to limit the number of incisions and to allow simultaneous implantation of penile and sphincter prostheses. It is uncertain whether this approach alters the outcome (8-10). The transcorporeal technique of placement can be used for repeat surgery but evidence of effectiveness is lacking (11,12).

The dual-cuff placement was introduced to treat patients who remained incontinent with a single 4-cm cuff in place. However, it has not improved control of continence, while the availability of a 3.5-cm cuff may have eliminated the need for a dual cuff (13-15). Patients who experienced complete continence after AUS implantation had a higher erosion risk (16).

Non-circumferential compression device (ProAct®)

There have been trials to treat post-prostatectomy SUI by insertion of a device consisting of balloons with adjustable volume external to the proximal bulbar urethra. A prospective cohort study (n = 128) described the functional outcome as 'good' in 68%, while 18% of the devices had to be explanted (17). A subgroup of radiotherapy patients only had 46% success and a higher percentage of urethral erosions.

A quasi-randomised trial comparing a non-circumferential compression device (ProAct®) with bone-anchored male slings found both types of device resulted in similar improvement of SUI (68% vs. 65%, respectively) (18). Other prospective series have shown similar continence outcomes, but several re-adjustments of the balloon volume were required to achieve cure. Adverse events were frequent, leading to an explantation rate of 11-58% (3,19-23). Although most studies have shown a positive impact on QoL, a questionnaire study showed that 50% of patients were still bothered significantly by persistent incontinence (24).

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is limited evidence that primary AUS implantation is effective for cure of SUI in men.	2b
Long-term failure rate for AUS is high although device replacement can be performed.	3
Previous pelvic radiotherapy does not appear to affect the outcome of AUS implantation.	3
Men who develop cognitive impairment or lose manual dexterity are likely to have difficulty operating an AUS.	3
Tandem-cuff placement is not superior to single-cuff placement.	3
The penoscrotal approach and perineal approach appear to give equivalent outcomes.	3
Very limited short-term evidence suggests that the non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) is effective for treatment of post-prostatectomy SUI.	3
The non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) is associated with a high failure and complication rate leading to frequent explantation.	3

Recommendations for surgery in men with stress urinary incontinence	GR
Only offer bulking agents to men with mild post-prostatectomy incontinence who desire temporary relief of UI symptoms.	C
Do not offer bulking agents to men with severe post-prostatectomy incontinence.	C
Offer fixed slings to men with mild-to-moderate post-prostatectomy incontinence.	B
Warn men that severe incontinence, prior pelvic radiotherapy or urethral stricture surgery, may worsen the outcome of fixed male sling surgery.	C
Offer AUS to men with persistent (more than 6 months) moderate-to-severe post-prostatectomy incontinence that has not responded to conservative management.	B
Warn about the long-term risk of failure and need for revision when counselling men for insertion of AUS.	C
Only offer the non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) if arrangements for men with post-prostatectomy incontinence if arrangements for monitoring of outcome are in place.	C
Warn men considering a non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) that there is a high risk of failure and subsequent explantation.	C
Do not offer non-circumferential compression device (ProACT®) to men who have had pelvic radiotherapy.	C

AUS = Artifical urinary sphincter.

5.3.4.3 References

1. Abrams P, Andersson KE, Birder L, et al. Fourth International Consultation on Incontinence Recommendations of the International Scientific Committee: evaluation and treatment of urinary incontinence, pelvic organ prolapse, and fecal incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):213-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025020
2. Herschorn S, Brushini H, Comiter C, et al. Surgical treatment of urinary incontinence in men. Neurourol Urodyn 2010;29(1):179-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025026
3. Sandhu J, Maschino A, Vickers A. The surgical learning curve for artificial urinary sphincter procedures compared to typical surgeon experience. Eur Urol 2011 Dec;60(6):1285-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21665357
4. Kumar P, Summerton D, Terry T. The artificial urinary sphincter: a contemporary series. Urol 2010;76(3 Suppl 1):S3-S4. [Abstract POD-1.08]
5. Kim SP, Sarmast Z, Daignault S, et al. Long-term durability and functional among patients with artificial urinary sphincters: a 10-year retrospective review from the University of Michigan. J Urol 2008 May;179(5):1912-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18353376
6. Trigo Rocha F, Gomes CM, Mitre AI, et al. A prospective study evaluating the efficacy of the artificial sphincter AMS 800 for the treatment of postradical prostatectomy urinary incontinence and the correlation between preoperative urodynamic and surgical outcomes. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):85-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242371
7. Lai HH, Hsu EI, Boone TB. Urodynamic testing in evaluation of postradical prostatectomy incontinence before artificial urinary sphincter implantation. Urology 2009;73(6):1264-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19371935
8. Sotelo TM, Westney OL. Outcomes related to placing an artificial urinary sphincter using a single-incision, transverse-scrotal technique in high-risk patients. BJU Int 2008 May;101(9):1124-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18399828
9. Henry GD, Graham SM, Cleves MA, et al. Perineal approach for artificial urinary sphincter implantation appears to control male stress incontinence better than the transscrotal approach. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1475-9, discussion 1479. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295275
10. Henry GD, Graham SM, Cornell RJ, et al. A multicenter study on the perineal versus penoscrotal approach for implantation of an artificial urinary sphincter: cuff size and control of male stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2009 Nov;182(5):2404-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19762042
11. Aaronson DS, Elliott SP, McAninch JW. Transcorporal artificial urinary sphincter placement for incontinence in high-risk patients after treatment of prostate cancer. Urology 2008 Oct;72(4):825-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18752838

12. Zafirakis H, Alba F, Shapiro A, et al. Outcomes following transcorporal placement of an artificial urinary sphincter. 39th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, San Francisco, USA. 29 September to 3 October, 2009. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(7):567-935, abstract no. 90. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/47/000090.pdf
13. O'Connor RC, Lyon MB, Guralnick ML, et al. Long-term follow-up of single versus double cuff artificial urinary sphincter insertion for the treatment of severe postprostatectomy stress urinary incontinence. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):90-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242372
14. Zafirakis H, Alba F, Westney OL. Preoperative pad weight and pad number as a predictor of failure of single cuff artificial urinary sphincter. 39th Annual Meeting of the International Continence Society, San Francisco, USA. 29 September to 3 October, 2009. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;38(7):567-935, abstract no. 89. http://www.icsoffice.org/Abstracts/Publish/47/000089.pdf
15. Hudak S, Valadez C, Terlecki R, et al. Impact of 3.5 cm artificial urinary sphincter cuff on primary and revision surgery for male stress urinary incontinence. J Urol 2011 Nov;186(5):1962-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21944140
16. Smith P, Hudak S, Morey A. Hypercontinence and cuff erosion after artificial sphincter insertion: a comparison of cuff sizes and placement techniques. American Urological Association 2011 Annual Meeting, Washington DC, USA, 14-19 May 2011. Abstract no. 1348. http://www.aua2011.org/abstracts/abstracts.cfm
17. Roupret M, Misra V, Gosseine PN, et al. Management of stress urinary incontinence following prostate surgery with minimally invasive adjustable continence balloon implants: functional results from a single center prospective study. J Urol 2011 Jul;186(1):198-203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21575974
18. Crivellaro S, Singla A, Aggarwal N, et al. Adjustable continence therapy (ProACT) and bone anchored male sling: comparison of two new treatments of post prostatectomy incontinence. Int J Urol. 2008 Oct;15(10):910-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18761534
19. Hubner WA, Schlarp OM. Treatment of incontinence after prostatectomy using a new minimally invasive device: adjustable continence therapy. BJU Int 2005 Sep;96(4):587-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16104915
20. Pignot G, Lugagne PM, Yonneau L, et al. Results of minimally invasive adjustable continence balloon device, ProACT, for treatment of male postoperative incontinence: a monocentric experience. European Association of Urology 24th Congress, 17-21 March 2009, Stockholm, Sweden. Eur Urol Suppl 2009 Mar;8(4):335, abstract no. 860. http://www.uroweb.org/events/abstracts-online/?AID=23216
21. Gilling PJ, Bell DF, Wilson LC, et al. An adjustable continence therapy device for treating incontinence after prostatectomy: a minimum 2-year follow-up. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(10):1426-30, discussion 1430-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18564132
22. Gregori A, Roman AL, Scieri F, et al. Transrectal ultrasound-guided implantation of the Proact system in patients with postradical prostatectomy stress urinary incontinence: 5 years experience. Eur Urol 2010;57:430-6. http://www.europeanurology-supplement.com/article/S1569-9056(11)60968-8/abstract
23. Martens FM, Lampe MI, Heesakkers JP. ProACT for stress urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy. Urol Int 2009;82(4):394-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19506404
24. Kjaer L, Norgaard N, Sonksen J, et al. Adjustable continence balloons-clinical results of a new minimally invasive treatment of male urinary incontinence. European Association of Urology 26th Annual Congress. Eur Urol Suppl 2011;10(2):307, abstract no. 985. http://www.uroweb.org/events/abstracts-online/?id=108&no_cache=1&AID=31776

5.4 Surgical interventions for refractory DO

*5.4.1 **Intravesical injection of botulinum toxin A***

Botulinum toxin (BTX) A injections into the bladder wall are being increasingly used to treat persistent or refractory UUI in adult women, as well as in men despite the lack of high-quality data on BTX in males. Almost all reported studies have used BTX A (1,2). Injection techniques have not been standardised and the various studies differ with reference to the number of injections, the sites of injection and the injection volumes (1,2). Surgeons must realise that there are different products of Botulinum Toxin, onabotulinumtoxina (Botox in Europe) and abobotulinumtoxina (Dysport in Europe) and that the doses are not interchangeable. The effects

of repeat injection have not been well studied in patients with UUI. The most important adverse event is an increase in PVR that may require clean intermittent catheterisation (CIC). CIC in turn is associated with an increased risk of UTIs (1,2).

5.4.1.1 Question

In adults with refractory UUI, does botulinum toxin injection in the bladder wall lead to a reduction in the number of incontinence episodes and/or to a higher percentage of continent patients compared to placebo?

5.4.1.2 Evidence

Two systematic reviews on the use of BTX have recently been published (1,2). The Cochrane analysis (1), which included patients with neurogenic or idiopathic DO, reported on RCTs comparing BTX with placebo. (It was not possible to draw conclusions about non-neurogenic incontinence from this review.) Reduction of incontinence episodes favoured BTX over placebo at both 4-6 weeks and 12 weeks. The mean difference in the reduction of incontinence episodes per day was -2.74 (95% CI: -4.47 to -1.01; p = 0.002). The rise in PVR favoured the placebo group, with a mean increase in PVR of 70.2 mL with the BTX. The question of the best injection technique remained largely unanswered. Studies were uniformly small with a maximum of 77 patients in any one study. Up to 66% of patients achieved complete continence, with an effect lasting between 3 and 12 months. The need for CIC was related to how aggressively patients are investigated for PVR. There was some evidence that lower doses produced fewer adverse events in terms of increased PVR and necessity for CIC. The UTI rates are consistently comparable to rates with cystoscopy alone but increase when CIC is required.

The systematic review by Mangera et al. (2) analysed the effect of BTX in adults with idiopathic DO in four RCTs (3-6). These studies (all using Onabotulinum toxin a) all demonstrated significant improvements in adults with idiopathic DO, at doses of 200 U in Brubaker et al. (4), 200/300 U in Flynn et al. (5) and 200 U in Sahai et al. (6). Dmochowski et al. compared a range of doses of BTX (3). These authors reported a change in incontinence episodes per day from baseline, but did not show the original baseline values, so that their results could not be included in the Mangera analysis. Additionally, an abstract from Tincello et al. (7) has recently reported results from the largest RCT of BTX to date. The study of 200 U Botox in 227 patients reported significant improvements in symptoms and QoL parameters versus placebo (7). The analysis of the efficacy data produced similar results to the Cochrane review.

The Cochrane and Mangera et al. reviews (1,2) also showed that the number of injection sites varied from 3 to 40, with 20 being most common, and the injection volume ranged between 3 and 30 mL, with 20 mL being the most common. The choice of injection site did not seem to impact on efficacy or adverse events. A range of 27-43% of patients had a PVR > 200 mL, while 13-44% suffered from UTI (1,2).

The Cochrane and Mangera et al. reviews accounted for all the major RCTs in BTX (1,2). However, cure-dry rates were not used as an outcome measure, and a separate meta-analysis using the original data (3,5-7) and data from a recent paper (8) was performed. Although the Dmochowski study (3) was not included in the analysis for the Mangera review, the EAU Panel have now obtained supplementary data from the authors, including dry rates at 6 and 12 weeks.

The meta-analysis (3,5-8) yielded the following results: the odds ratio (95% CI) of becoming dry with BTX versus placebo are 2.28 (0.95-5.49; p = 0.07) for 50 U, 4.39 (1.91-10.12; p = 0.0005) for 100 U, 4.96 (2.14-11.53; p = 0.0002) for 150 U, 4.34 (2.49-7.59, p < 0.00001) for 200 U and 7.05 (2.68-18.51, p < 0.0001) for 300 U. These results showed that 50 U had inferior efficacy to higher dosages. Although 300 U was the most efficacious dose, it is not a recommended dose because of the high rates of PVR necessitating CIC. A dose of 100-200 U seems to have comparable efficacy in the meta-analysis.

In the Dmochowski study, the cure-dry rate at 12 weeks was 37.0% and 50.9% for 100 U and 200U, respectively. Higher rates of PVR requiring CIC were found with higher doses showing a clear dose-response relationship (3).

Evidence summary	LE
A single treatment session of intravesical Onabotulinum toxin A (100-300 U) is more effective than placebo at curing and improving UUI for up to 12 months.	1a
There is no evidence that repeated injections of botulinum toxin A have reduced efficacy.	3
There is a high risk of increased PVR, which is dose dependent and may require intermittent self-catheterisation.	1b
There is a high risk of UTI in those who require intermittent self-catheterisation.	1b
There is no evidence that one technique of injecting botulinum toxin A is more efficacious than another.	1b

Recommendations	GR
Offer botulinum toxin A intravesical injections to patients with urgency urinary incontinence refractory to antimuscarinic therapy.	A
Warn patients of the possible need to self-catheterise and the associated risk of urinary tract infection; ensure that they are willing and able to do so.	A
Patients should also be warned of the licensing status of botulinum toxin A, and that the long-term effects remain unknown.	A

5.4.1.3 References

1. Duthie JB, Vincent M, Herbison GP, et al. Botulinum toxin injections for adults with overactive bladder syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Dec 7;(12):CD005493. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD005493.pub3/abstract
2. Mangera A, Andersson KE, Apostolidis A, et al. Contemporary management of lower urinary tract disease with botulinum toxin A: a systematic review of botox (onabotulinumtoxinA) and dysport (abobotulinumtoxinA). Eur Urol 2011 Oct;60(4):784-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21782318
3. Dmochowski R, Chapple C, Nitti VW, et al. Efficacy and safety of onabotulinumtoxinA for idiopathic overactive bladder: a double-blind, placebo controlled, randomized, dose ranging trial. J Urol 2010 Dec;184(6):2416-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20952013
4. Brubaker L, Richter HE, Visco A, et al. Refractory idiopathic urge urinary incontinence and botulinum A injection. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):217-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499184
5. Flynn MK, Amundsen CL, Perevich M, et al. Outcome of a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial of botulinum A toxin for refractory overactive bladder. J Urol 2009 Jun;181(6):2608-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375091
6. Sahai A, Khan MS, Dasgupta P. Efficacy of botulinum toxin-A for treating idiopathic detrusor overactivity: results from a single center, randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2231-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509328
7. Tincello DG, Slack MC, Kenyon S, et al. Botulinum toxin-A for refractory detrusor overactivity in women: a 240 patient randomized placebo controlled trial. Eur Urol Suppl 2011 Mar;10(2):191, abstract no. 581. http://www.europeanurology.com/article/S1569-9056(11)60571-X/abstract
8. Denys P, Le Normand L, Ghout I, et al. Efficacy and safety of low doses of onabotulinumtoxinA for the treatment of refractory idiopathic overactive bladder: a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled dose-ranging study. Eur Urol 2011 Oct 25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22036776

5.4.1.4. Research priorities

More research is needed to investigate the optimum injection technique and regimen, as well as the long-term effects of intravesical injection of botulinum toxin.

5.4.2 ***Sacral nerve stimulation (neuromodulation)***

Under fluoroscopic control, an electrode is placed percutaneously in the sacral foramen alongside a sacral nerve, usually S3, in the first stage of a two-stage implantation (FS2S). Once it has been shown that the patient can respond, the patient proceeds to the second stage of implantation, in which the electrode is connected

by cables under the skin to an implanted, programmable, pulse generator. The generator provides stimulation within established stimulation parameters. In earlier techniques for stimulating the sacral nerve, a temporary test (wire) electrode was placed near the nerve, and then percutaneous nerve evaluation (PNE) and test stimulation, provided by an external pulse generator, was performed. Generally, the PNE lasted for 5-7 days.

More recently, the permanent electrode has been used for a longer test phase, as part of a two-stage procedure. Once the PNE or FS2S has been shown to be successful, the patient proceeds to full implantation with the pulse generator. Patients, in whom selected symptoms of UUI are reduced by more than 50% during the test phase, are candidates for the permanent implant. Schmidt et al. first described the technique of PNE of the S3 sacral nerve (1). The two-stage implant was introduced by Janknegt et al. (2). Spinelli et al. introduced the minimally invasive percutaneous implantation of a tined lead (3).

5.4.2.1 Question

In adults suffering from refractory UUI, what is the clinical effectiveness of sacral nerve neuromodulation compared to alternative treatments?

5.4.2.2 Evidence

A Cochrane review of the literature until March 2008 (4) identified three RCTs that investigated sacral nerve stimulation in patients with refractory UUI. One of these RCTs was only published as an abstract and is not considered here (5,6). The quality of the other two RCTs was poor. No details of method of randomisation or concealment of randomisation were given. Assessors were not blind to the treatment allocation; it was impossible to blind the patients since all had to respond to a PNE before randomisation. In addition, the numbers randomised did not match the numbers in the results in these two studies.

One multicentre RCT involved implantation of half of the participants (5), while the remaining patients formed the control group (delayed implantation) staying on medical treatment for 6 months. The control group was subsequently offered implantation. Fifty percent of the immediately implanted group had > 90% improvement in UUI at 6 months compared to 1.6% of the control group (5). The other RCT (6) achieved similar results, although these patients had already been included in the first report (5). However, Weil et al. (6) showed that the effect on generic QoL measured by the SF-36, was unclear as it differed between the groups in only one of the eight dimensions.

The results of 17 case series of patients with UUI, who were treated early in the experience with sacral nerve stimulation were reviewed (7). After a follow-up duration of between 1 and 3 years, approximately 50% of patients with UUI, demonstrated > 90% reduction in incontinence, 25% demonstrated 50-90% improvement, and another 25% demonstrated < 50% improvement. Adverse events occurred in 50% of implanted cases, with surgical revision necessary in 33% (7).

In a subanalysis of the RCT, the outcome of UUI patients, with or without pre-implant DO were compared. Similar success rates were found in patients with and without urodynamic DO (8).

There are two case series describing the longer-term outcome of sacral nerve neuromodulation, with a mean or median follow-up of at least 5 years, in patients with refractory UUI (9,10). These studies have reported continued success (> 50% improvement on original symptoms) experienced by 50-63% in those patients available for follow-up. Only one study reported cure rates averaging 15% (10).

Technical modifications have been made, including a change in the anatomical site of the pulse generator, introduction of the tined lead and different test-phase protocols prior to definitive implantation. The lead may also be implanted using a minimally invasive percutaneous procedure (3). The effect of these changes on the outcome of implantation is uncertain.

Evidence summary	**LE**
Sacral nerve neuromodulation is more effective than continuation of failed conservative treatment for cure of UUI, but no sham controls have been used.	1b
In those patients who have been implanted, more than 50% improvement is maintained in at least 50% of patients at 5 years' follow up, and 15% remain cured.	3
One-stage implantation results in more patients receiving the final implant than occurs with prior temporary test stimulation.	4

Recommendations	GR
If available, offer patients with urgency urinary incontinence that is refractory to conservative therapy, the opportunity to be treated by sacral nerve neuromodulation before bladder augmentation or urinary diversion is considered.	A

5.4.2.3 Research priority

A RCT comparing a strategy of botulinum toxin injection, repeated as required, against a strategy of test and permanent sacral nerve neuromodulation with an accompanying health economic analysis is required.

5.4.2.4 References

1. Schmidt RA, Senn E, Tanagho EA. Functional evaluation of sacral root integrity. Report of a technique. Urology 1990 May;35(5):388-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2336766
2. Janknegt RA, Weil EH, Eerdmans PH. Improving neuromodulation technique for refractory voiding dysfunctions: two-stage implant. Urology 1997 Mar;49(3):358-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9123698
3. Spinelli M, Giardiello G, Gerber M, et al. New sacral neuromodulation lead for percutaneous implantation using local anesthesia: description and first experience. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1905-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532804
4. Herbison GP, Arnold EP. Sacral neuromodulation with implanted devices for urinary storage and voiding dysfunction in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Apr 15;(2):CD004202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370596
5. Schmidt RA, Jonas U, Oleson KA, et al: Sacral Nerve Stimulation Group. Sacral nerve stimulation for treatment of refractory urinary urge incontinence. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):352-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411037
6. Weil EH, Ruiz-Cerda JL, Eerdmans PH, et al. Sacral root neuromodulation in the treatment of refractory urinary urge incontinence: a prospective randomized clinical trial. Eur Urol 2000 Feb;37(2):161-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10705194
7. Brazzelli M, Murray A, Fraser C. Efficacy and safety of sacral nerve stimulation for urinary urge incontinence: a systematic review. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3 Pt 1):835-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469561
8. Groenendijk PM, Lycklama à Nyeholt AA, Heesakkers JP, et al: Sacral Nerve Stimulation Study Group. Urodynamic evaluation of sacral neuromodulation for urge urinary incontinence. BJU Int 2008 Feb;101(3):325-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18070199
9. van Kerrebroeck PE, van Voskuilen AC, Heesakkers JP, et al. Results of sacral neuromodulation therapy for urinary voiding dysfunction: outcomes of a prospective, worldwide clinical study. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):2029-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869298
10. Groen J, Blok BF, Bosch JL. Sacral neuromodulation as treatment for refractory idiopathic urge urinary incontinence: 5-year results of a longitudinal study in 60 women. J Urol 2011 Sep;186(3):954-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21791355

5.4.3 ***Cystoplasty/urinary diversion***

5.4.3.1 Augmentation cystoplasty

In augmentation cystoplasty (also known as clam cystoplasty), a detubularised segment of bowel is inserted into the bivalved bladder wall. The aim is to disrupt involuntary detrusor contraction, increase compliance and increase bladder capacity. The segment of bowel most often used is distal ileum, but any bowel segment can be used if it has the appropriate mesenteric length to reach the pelvic cavity without tension. One study did not find any difference between bivalving the bladder in the sagittal plane and bivalving it in the coronal plane (1).

There are no RCTs comparing bladder augmentation to other treatments for patients with UUI. Most often, bladder augmentation is used to correct neurogenic DO or small-capacity, low-compliant, bladders caused by fibrosis, tuberculosis, radiation or chronic infection.

A number of case series have been reported (1-8), but none within the last 10 years. All these series included a large proportion of patients with neurological bladder dysfunction. The largest case series of bladder augmentation in UUI included 51 women with UUI (2). At an average follow-up of 74.5 months, only 53% were continent and satisfied with the surgery, whereas 25% had occasional leaks and 18% continued to have

disabling UUI. It is difficult to extract data on non-neurogenic patients from these case series, but in general the results for patients with idiopathic DO (58%) seemed to be less satisfactory than for patients with neurogenic overactivity (90%).

Adverse effects were common and have been summarised in a review over 5-17 years of more than 267 cases, 61 of whom had non-neurogenic UUI (9). In addition, many patients may require self CIC to obtain adequate bladder emptying.

.

Table 6: Complications of bladder augmentation

Short-term complications	**Affected patients (%)**
Bowel obstruction	2
Infection	1.5
Thromboembolism	1
Bleeding	0.75
Fistula	0.4
Long-term complications	
Clean intermittent self-catheterisation	38
Urinary tract infection	70% asymptomatic; 20% symptomatic
Urinary tract stones	13
Metabolic disturbance	16
Deterioration in renal function	2
Bladder perforation	0.75

5.4.3.2 Detrusor myectomy (bladder auto-augmentation)

Detrusor myectomy aims to increase bladder capacity and reduce storage pressures by incising or excising a portion of the detrusor muscle, to create a bladder mucosal 'bulge' or pseudodiverticulum. It was initially described as an alternative to bladder augmentation in children (10). An additional, non-randomised study (11), which compared bladder augmentation with detrusor myectomy in adult patients with neurogenic and non-neurogenic bladder dysfunction, demonstrated a much lower incidence of short-term complications. However, the poor long-term results caused by fibrosis of the pseudodiverticulum led to the abandonment of this technique in patients with neurogenic dysfunction. A small study of five patients with UUI (12) showed good outcome in all patients at the initial post-operative visit, but clinical and urodynamic failure in four of the five patients at 3 months.

5.4.3.3 Urinary diversion

Urinary diversion remains a reconstructive option for patients, who decline repeated surgery for UI. It is rarely needed in the treatment of non-neurogenic UUI. There are no studies that have specifically examined this technique in the treatment of non-neurogenic UI, although the subject has been reviewed by the Cochrane group (13).

Evidence summary	**LE**
There is limited evidence on the effectiveness of augmentation cystoplasty and urinary diversion in treatment of idiopathic DO.	3
Augmentation cystoplasty and urinary diversion are associated with high risks of short-term and long-term severe complications.	3
The need to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation following augmentation cystoplasty is very common.	3
There is no evidence comparing the efficacy or adverse effects of augmentation cystoplasty with urinary diversion.	3
There is no evidence on the long-term effectiveness of detrusor myectomy in adults with idiopathic DO.	3

Recommendations	GR
Only offer augmentation cystoplasty to patients with detrusor overactivity incontinence who have failed conservative therapy, in whom the possibility of botulinum toxin and sacral nerve stimulation has been discussed.	C
Warn patients undergoing augmentation cystoplasty of the high risk of having to perform clean intermittent self-catheterisation; ensure they are willing and able to do so.	C
Do not offer detrusor myectomy as a treatment for urinary incontinence.	C
Only offer urinary diversion to patients who have failed less invasive therapies for the treatment of urinary incontinence and who will accept a stoma.	C
Warn patients undergoing augmentation cystoplasty or urinary diversion of the high risk of short-term and long-term complications, and the possible small risk of malignancy.	C
Life-long follow-up is recommended for patients who have undergone augmentation cystoplasty or urinary diversion.	C

5.4.3.4 References

1. Kockelbergh RC, Tan JB, Bates CP, et al. Clam enterocystoplasty in general urological practice. Br J Urol 1991 Jul;68(1):38-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1873689
2. Awad SA, Al-Zahrani HM, Gajewski JB, et al. Long-term results and complications of augmentation ileocystoplasty for idiopathic urge incontinence in women. Br J Urol 1998 Apr;81(4):569-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598629
3. Hasan ST, Marshall C, Robson WA, et al. Clinical outcome and quality of life following enterocystoplasty for idiopathic detrusor instability and neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Br J Urol 1995 Nov;76(5):551-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8535671
4. Mundy AR, Stephenson TP. “Clam” ileocystoplasty for the treatment of refractory urge incontinence. Br J Urol 1985 Dec;57(6):641-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4084722
5. Edlund C, Peeker R, Fall M. Clam ileocystoplasty: successful treatment of severe bladder overactivity. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2001 Jun;35(3):190-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11487070
6. Bramble FJ. The treatment of adult enuresis and urge incontinence by enterocystoplasty. Br J Urol 1982 Dec;54(6):693-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7150926
7. George VK, Russell GL, Shutt A, et al. Clam ileocystoplasty. Br J Urol 1991 Nov;68(5):487-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1747723
8. Kelly JD, Keane PF. Long-term results and complications of augmentation ileocystoplasty for idiopathic urge incontinence in women. Br J Urol 1998 Oct;82(4):609-10; comment in Br J Urol 1998 Apr;81(4):569-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9806210
9. Greenwell TJ, Venn SN, Mundy AR. Augmentation cystoplasty. BJU Int 2001 Oct;88(6):511-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11678743
10. Cartwright PC, Snow BW. Bladder autoaugmentation: partial detrusor excision to augment the bladder without use of bowel. J Urol 1989 Oct;142(4):1050-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2795729
11. Leng WW, Blalock HJ, Fredriksson WH, et al. Enterocystoplasty or detrusor myectomy? Comparison of indications and outcomes for bladder augmentation. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):758-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022679
12. Ter Meulen PH, Heesakkers JP, Janknegt RA. A study on the feasibility of vesicomyotomy in patients with motor urge incontinence. Eur Urol 1997;32(2):166-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286647
13. Nabi G, Cody JD, Dublin N, et al. Urinary diversion and bladder reconstruction/replacement using intestinal segments for intractable incontinence or following cystectomy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003;(1): CD003306. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD003306/abstract

APPENDIX A: MIXED URINARY INCONTINENCE

About one-third of women with UI have mixed incontinence (MUI), rather than pure stress UI (SUI) or urge UI (UUI). In addition, a mixed combination of symptoms becomes more common with increasing age. However, although many studies include patients with MUI, it is rare for these studies to provide a separate analysis of MUI. It is therefore difficult to find evidence specifically related to MUI.

This issue has been addressed by the Panel after the initial work on the preceding chapters had been completed. It was realised that a crucial part of developing the clinical algorithms was to provide advice on how to mange this large group of patients. A decision was therefore made to include a rapid review of this topic, but the iterative process underpinning the Panel's advice on this issue was necessarily shorter and less robust that for the preceding sections, and will be addressed more systematically for future editions.

A limited literature search was carried out from June 2008 for the terms, 'mixed incontinence' and 'mixed urinary incontinence' in PubMed. A separate search was also done for these terms within all known systematic reviews published since 2008 that had already been used for the rest of the guideline.

A.2 Question

In adults with MUI, is the outcome of a certain treatment different to that obtained with the same treatment in patients with either pure SUI or pure UUI?

A.3 Evidence

No specific systematic reviews were found that addressed the above question. Systematic reviews on conservative therapies, drug therapy and surgery were also reviewed for any analyses of specific incontinence categories, but none were found.

However, a Cochrane report on pelvic floor muscle training (1) concluded that training was less likely to result in a cure in patients with MUI than in patients with pure SUI, though it is not clear from the report how this conclusion was reached.

A.3.1 ***RCTs in MUI population, which compare one treatment to another***

An RCT in MUI patients compared intravaginal electrical stimulation to pelvic floor muscle training. No difference was seen in outcome, but this was a small underpowered study (2).

A.3.1.1 Duloxetine

In one RCT, involving 588 women, subjects were stratified into either stress-predominant, urge-predominant or balanced MUI groups and randomised to receive duloxetine or placebo. Duloxetine was effective in reducing episodes of incontinence and improving QoL compared to placebo in all subgroups (3).

A.3.1.2 Transvaginal obturator tape

In an RCT including 96 women with MUI, objective improvement was better for patients treated with transvaginal obturator tape + the Ingelman Sundberg operation versus patients treated with obturator tape alone (4).

A.3.1.3 Tolterodine

In an RCT of 854 women with MUI, tolterodine ER was effective compared to placebo in reducing frequency, urgency and UUI, but not SUI. These results show that the effect of tolterodine was not altered by the presence of SUI (5).

A.3.2 ***RCTs, including a subanalysis of MUI patients within treatment arms and allowing comparison to patients with pure SUI or pure UUI***

Many RCTs include both patients with pure UI (stress or urge) and patients with MUI, in which pure UI predominates. However, very few RCTs report separate outcomes for MUI and pure UI groups.

A small and underpowered RCT (n = 71) compared delivery of pelvic floor muscle training, with or without an instructive audiotape. It showed equal efficacy for different types of UI (6).

An RCT in 121 women with stress, urgency or mixed UI compared transvaginal electrical stimulation with sham stimulation and was found to be equally effective in urgency UI as in mixed UI (7).

A.3.2.1 Drugs

Duloxetine was found to have equal efficacy for Stress UI and Mixed UI in an RCT (n = 553) following

secondary analysis of subpopulations (8). In another study, secondary analysis showed that tolterodine compared to placebo (n = 1380) was equally effective in reducing urgency and urgency UI symptoms, regardless of whether there was associated stress incontinence (9). Similar findings apply to solifenacin (10,11).

A.3.2.2 Surgery

Post-hoc analysis of the SISTER trial showed that in women undergoing either autologous fascial sling or Burch colposuspension, the outcomes were poorer for women with a concomitant complaint of pre-operative urgency. This applied to both stress-specific and non-stress incontinence outcomes(12).

A similar post-hoc review of an RCT comparing transobturator and retropubic midurethral slings showed that the greater the severity of pre-operative urgency the more likely that treatment would fail, as assessed objectively, even if surgery had been similar (13).

However, an earlier study had found that surgery provided similar outcomes, whether or not urgency was present prior to surgery (14). (This study included only a few patients with urodynamic detrusor overactivity.)

A.3.3 ***Large cohort studies, including a separate analysis of patients with MUI***

Following a RCT of pelvic floor muscle training, a review of 88 women available for follow-up at 5 years found that outcomes were less satisfactory in women with MUI than in women with pure SUI (15).

A.3.3.1 Surgery for SUI

Some authors have reported the disappearance of urgency in up to 40% of women after successful SUI surgery for MUI, suggesting that urgency is an accompanying feature of SUI (14,16-18).

In a case series of 192 women undergoing midurethral sling insertion, overall satisfaction rates were lower for women with mixed symptoms and overactive detrusor function according to pre-operative urodynamics compared to those with pure SUI and normal urodynamics (75% vs 98%, respectively) (19). One study compared two parallel cohorts of patients undergoing surgery for SUI, with and without detrusor overactivity, and found inferior outcomes in women with MUI (20).

However, in a study of the bulking agent, Bulkamid, similar outcomes were reported in women with pure SUI and MUI (21).

One cohort of 450 women, undergoing midurethral sling surgery, had significantly worse outcomes for increased amounts of urgency. In urgency-predominant MUI, the success rate fell to 52% compared to 80% in stress-predominant MUI (22). In a second study in 1,113 women treated with transvaginal obturator tape, Stress UI was cured equally in stress-predominant MUI or urgency-predominant MUI. However, women with stress-predominant MUI were found to have significantly better overall outcomes than women with urgency-predominant MUI (23).

A.4 Evidence statements

Evidence summary	**LE**
Pelvic floor muscle training is less effective for mixed UI than for SUI alone.	2
Electrical stimulation is equally effective for mixed UI and SUI.	1b
Antimuscarinic drugs are equally effective in improving symptoms of urgency and urgency UI, in patients with mixed UI as in patients with urgency UI alone.	1a
Duloxetine is equally effective in improving SUI in patients with MUI as in patients with SUI alone.	1a
Women with mixed UI are less likely to be cured of their incontinence, by SUI surgery, than women with SUI alone.	1c
The response of pre-existing urgency symptoms to SUI surgery is unpredictable, and symptoms may improve or worsen.	3

A.5 Recommendations

Recommendations	GR
Treat the most bothersome symptom first in patients with mixed urinary incontinence.	C
Warn patients with mixed urinary incontinence that the chance of success of pelvic floor muscle training is less satisfactory than for stress urinary incontinence alone.	B
Offer antimuscarinic drugs to patients with urge-predominant mixed urinary incontinence.	A
Warn patients with mixed urinary incontinence that surgery is less likely to be successful than surgery in patients with stress urinary incontinence alone.	A

A.6 Research priority

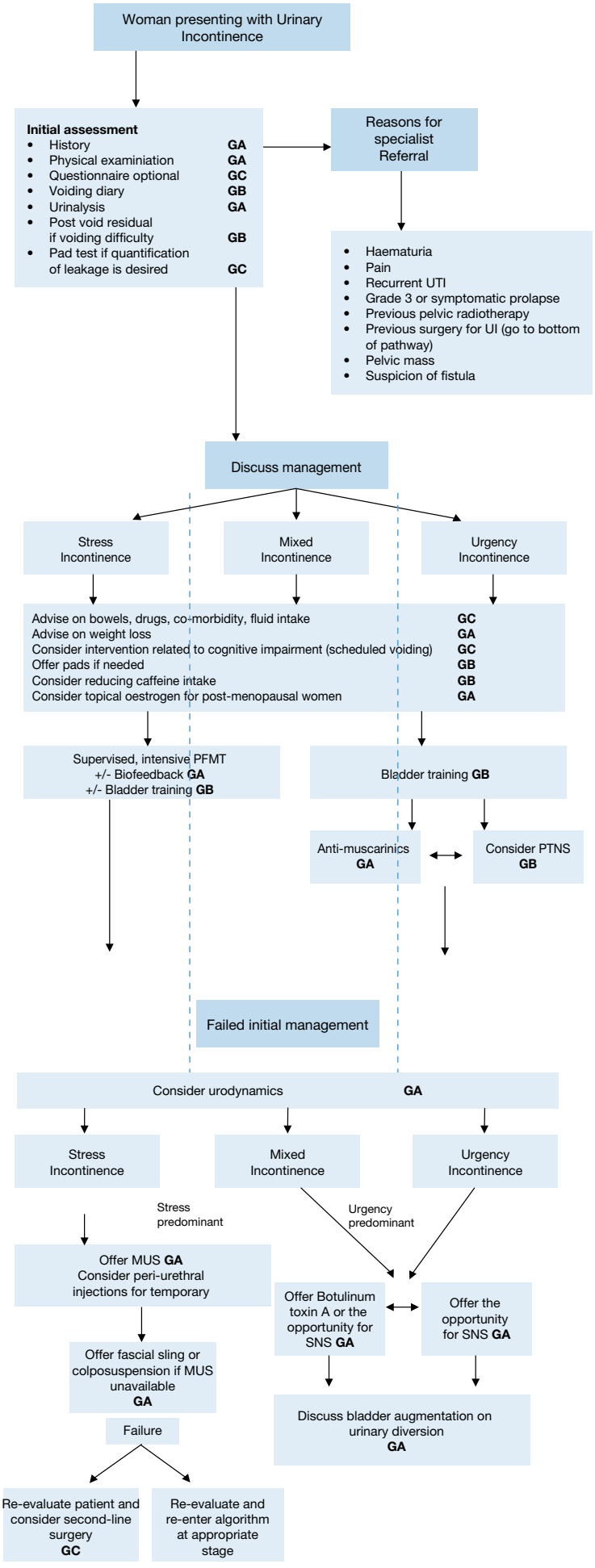
There is a need for well-designed trials comparing treatments in populations with MUI, and in which the type of MUI has been accurately defined.

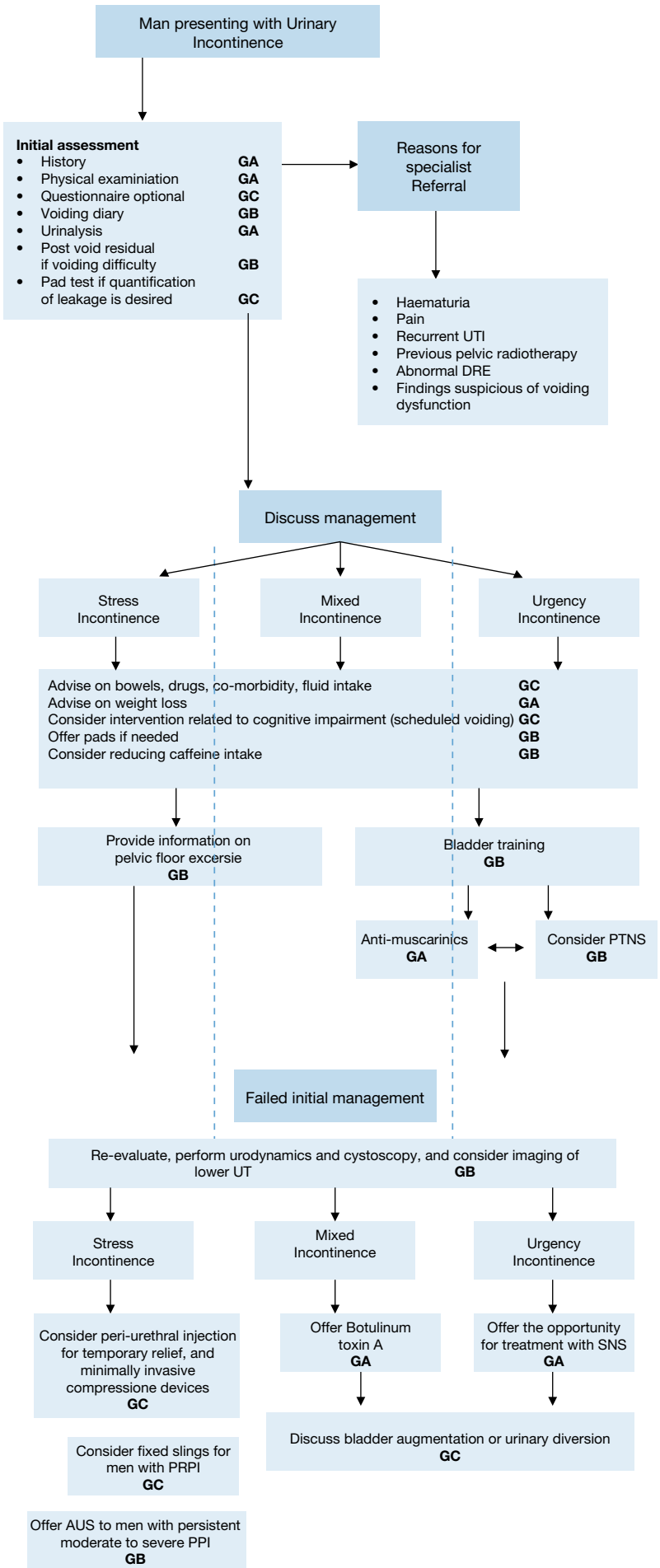
Researchers should be more precise about the definitions of MUI, when evaluating the effects of treatment in this group.

A.7 References

1. Dumoulin C, Hay/Smith J. Pelvic floor muscle training versus no treatment for urinary incontinence in women. A Cochrane systematic review. Eur J Phys Rehabil Med. 2008 Mar;44(1):47-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18385628
2. Smith JJ 3rd. Intravaginal stimulation randomized trial. J Urol. 1996 Jan;155(1):127-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490809
3. Bent AE, Gousse SE, Hendrix SL, et al. Duloxetine compared with placebo for the treatment of women with mixed urinary incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn. 2008;27(3):212-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17580357
4. Juang CM, Yu KJ, Chou P, et al. Efficacy analysis of trans-obturator tension-free vaginal tape (TVT-O) plus modified Ingelman-Sundberg procedure versus TVT-O alone in the treatment of mixed urinary incontinence: a randomized study. Eur Urol. 2007 Jun;51(6):1671-8; discussion 1679. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17254697
5. Khullar V, Hill S, Laval K-U, Schiotz HA, et al. Treatment of urgepredominant mixed urinary incontinence with tolterodine extended release: A randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Urology. 2004 Aug;64(2):269-74; discussion 274-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302476
6. Nygaard IE, Kreger KJ, Lepic MM, et al. Efficacy of pelvic floor muscle exercises in women with stress, urge, and mixed urinary incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1996 Jan;174(1 Pt 1):120-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8571994
7. Brubaker L, Benson JT, Bent A, et al. Transvaginal electrical stimulation for female urinary incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1997 Sep;177(3):536-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9322620
8. Bump RC, Norton PA, Zinner NR, et al. Mixed urinary incontinence symptoms: urodynamic findings, incontinence severity, and treatment response. Obstet Gynecol. 2003 Jul;102(1):76-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12850610
9. Kreder KJ Jr, rubaker L, Mainprize T. Tolterodine is equally effective in patients with mixed incontinence and those with urge incontinence alone. BJU Int. 2003 Sep;92(4):418-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12930432
10. Staskin DR, Te AE. Short- and long-term efficacy of solifenacin treatment in patients with symptoms of mixed urinary incontinence. BJU Int. 200 6 Jun;97(6):1256-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16686722
11. Kelleher C, Cardozo L, Kobashi K, et al. Solifenacin: as effective in mixed urinary incontinence as in urge urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2006 Jun;17(4):382-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16283422
12. Richter HE, Diokno A, Kenton K, et al. Predictors of treatment failure 24 months after surgery for stress urinary incontinence. J Urol. 2008 Mar;179(3):1024-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18206917
13. Richter HE, Litman HJ, Lukacz ES, et al. Demographic and Clinical Predictors of Treatment Failure One Year After Midurethral Sling Surgery. Obstetrics and Gynaecology 2011 April;117(4):913-921. http://journals.lww.com/greenjournal/toc/2011/04000

14. Choe JH, Choo MS, Lee KS. The impact of tension-free vaginal tape on overactive bladder symptoms in women with stress urinary incontinence: significance of detrusor overactivity. [see comment]. J Urol. 2008 Jan;179(1):214-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18001792
15. Lagro/Janssen T, van Weel C. Long-term effect of treatment of female incontinence in general practice. Br J Gen Pract. 1998 Nov;48(436):1735-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10198479
16. Koonings P, Bergman A, Ballard CA. Combined detrusor instability and stress urinary incontinence: where is the primary pathology? Gynecol Obstet Invest. 1988;26(3):250-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/324089
17. Botros SM, Aramov Y, Goldberg RP, et al. Detrusor overactivity and urge urinary incontinence following midurethral versus bladder sling procedures. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2005 Dec;193(6):2144-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16325631
18. Duckett JR, Tamilselvi A. Effect of tensionfree vaginal tape in women with a urodynamic diagnosis of idiopathic detrusor overactivity and stress incontinence. BJOG. 2006 Jan;113(1):30-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16398768
19. Kuo HC. Effect of detrusor function on the therapeutic outcome of a suburethral sling procedure using a polypropylene sling for stress urinary incontinence in women. Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2007;41(2): 138-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17454953
20. Colombo M, Zanetta G, Vitobello D, et al. The Burch colposuspension for women with and without detrusor overactivity. Br J Obstet Gynaecol. 1996 Mar;103(3):255-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8630311
21. Lose G, SorensenHC, Axelsen SM, et al. An open multicenter study of polyacrylamide hydrogel (Bulkamid®) for female stress and mixed urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J. 2010 Dec;21(12):1471-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20645077
22. Kulseng-HanssenS, Husby H, Schiotz HA. The tension free vaginal tape operation for women with mixed incontinence: Do preoperative variables predict the outcome? Neurourol Urodyn. 2007;26(1):115-21; discussion 122.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16894616
23. Kulseng-Hanssen S, Husy H, Schiotz HA. Follow-up of TVT operations in 1,113 women with mixed urinary incontinence at 7 and 38 months. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2008 Mar;19(3): 391-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17891326


Woman presenting with Urinary Incontinence
Initial assessment
History GA
Physical examiniation GA
Questionnaire optional GC
Voiding diary GB
Urinalysis GA
Post void residual if voiding difficulty GB
Pad test if quantification of leakage is desired GC
Reasons for specialist Referral
Haematuria
Pain
Recurrent UTI
Grade 3 or symptomatic prolapse
Previous pelvic radiotherapy
Previous surgery for UI (go to bottom of pathway)
Pelvic mass
Suspicion of fistula
Discuss management
Stress Incontinence
Mixed Incontinence
Urgency Incontinence
Advise on bowels, drugs, co-morbidity, fluid intake GC
Advise on weight loss GA
Consider intervention related to cognitive impairment (scheduled voiding) GC
Offer pads if needed GB
Consider reducing caffeine intake GB
Consider topical oestrogen for post-menopausal women GA
Supervised, intensive PFMT +/- Biofeedback GA +/- Bladder training GB
Bladder training GB
Anti-muscarinics GA
Consider PTNS GB
Failed initial management
Consider urodynamics GA
Stress Incontinence
Mixed Incontinence
Urgency Incontinence
Stress predominant
Urgency predominant
Offer MUS GA Consider peri-urethral injections for temporary
Offer fascial sling or colposuspension if MUS unavailable GA
Failure
Re-evaluate patient and consider second-line surgery GC
Re-evaluate and re-enter algorithm at appropriate stage
Offer Botulinum toxin A or the opportunity for SNS GA
Offer the opportunity for SNS GA
Discuss bladder augmentation on urinary diversion GA


Man presenting with Urinary Incontinence
Initial assessment
History GA
Physical examiniation GA
Questionnaire optional GC
Voiding diary GB
Urinalysis GA
Post void residual if voiding difficulty GB
Pad test if quantification of leakage is desired GC
Reasons for specialist Referral
Haematuria
Pain
Recurrent UTI
Previous pelvic radiotherapy
Abnormal DRE
Findings suspicious of voiding dysfunction
Discuss management
Stress Incontinence
Mixed Incontinence
Urgency Incontinence
Advise on bowels, drugs, co-morbidity, fluid intake GC
Advise on weight loss GA
Consider intervention related to cognitive impairment (scheduled voiding) GC
Offer pads if needed GB
Consider reducing caffeine intake GB
Provide information on pelvic floor excersie GB
Bladder training GB
Anti-muscarinics GA
Consider PTNS GB
Failed initial management
Re-evaluate, perform urodynamics and cystoscopy, and consider imaging of lower UT GB
Stress Incontinence
Mixed Incontinence
Urgency Incontinence
Consider peri-urethral injection for temporary relief, and minimally invasive compressione devices GC
Offer Botulinum toxin A GA
Offer the opportunity for treatment with SNS GA
Consider fixed slings for men with PRPI GC
Discuss bladder augmentation or urinary diversion GC
Offer AUS to men with persistent moderate to severe PPI GB

6. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

ACT	adjustable compression therapy (device)
AHRQ	Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality
AUS	artificial urinary sphincter
BT	bladder training
BTX	botulinum toxin
CIC	clean intermittent catheterisation
CNS	central nervous system
DO	detrusor overactivity
EAU	European Association of Urology
ER	extended release
FS2S	first stage of two-stage [implantation of sacral neuromodulator]
GR	grade of recommendation
HRQoL	health-related quality of life
ICI	International Consultation on Incontinence
I-QoL	Incontinence Quality of Life
IR	immediate release
LE	level of evidence
LUTS	lower urinary tract symptoms
MPR	medication possession rate [drug adherence]
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MUI	mixed urinary incontinence
NICE	National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (UK)
OAB	overactive bladder
PFMT	pelvic floor muscle training
PICO	Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcome
PNE	percutaneous nerve evaluation
PROMS	patient-reported outcome measures
PTNS	posterior tibial nerve stimulation
PVR	post-voiding residual volume
Q_{max}	maximum urinary flow rate
QoL	quality of life
RCT	randomised controlled trial
RP	radical prostatectomy
SIGN	Scottish Intercollegiate Guideline Network
SUI	stress urinary incontinence
TDS	transdermal delivery system
TVTS	tension-free vaginal tape secure
UI	urinary incontinence
US	ultrasound
UTI	urinary tract infection
UUI	urgency urinary incontinence

Conflict of interest

All members of the Urinary Incontinence Guidelines panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction

J. Pannek (chair), M. Stöhrer (vice-chair), B. Blok,
D. Castro-Diaz, G. Del Popolo, G. Kramer, P. Radziszewski,
A. Reitz, J-J. Wyndaele

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. BACKGROUND

1.1 Aims and objectives

The purpose of these clinical guidelines is to provide useful information for clinical practitioners on the incidence, definitions, diagnosis, therapy, and follow-up observation of the condition of neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD). These guidelines reflect the current opinion of the experts in this specific pathology and thus represent a state-of-the-art reference for all clinicians, as of the date of its presentation to the European Association of Urology (EAU).

The EAU Guidelines panel consists of an international multidisciplinary group of experts, including urologists specialised in the care of spinal cord injured (SCI) patients, as well as a specialist in the field of urodynamic technologies.

The terminology used and the diagnostic procedures advised throughout these guidelines follow the recommendations for investigations on the lower urinary tract (LUT) as published by the International Continence Society (ICS) (1-3).

1.2 Methodology

*1.2.1 **Data identification***

Literature searches were carried out for all sections of the Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction guidelines. Focus of all searches was identification of all level 1 scientific papers (systematic reviews and meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials) in accordance with EAU methodology. In case sufficient data was identified to answer the clinical question, the search was not expanded to include lower level literature. The search was limited to English language publications, animal studies were excluded. Additionally, the guidelines panel have included scientific material from foreign language publications and textbooks.

*1.2.2 **Evidence sources***

Searches were carried out in Medline and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform. The searches used the controlled terminology of the respective databases. Both MesH and EMTREE were analysed for relevant terms. In many cases the use of free text ensured the sensitivity of the searches.

Randomised controlled trial (RCT) strategies used were based on Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) and Modified McMaster/Health Information Research Unit (HIRU) filters for RCTs, systematic reviews and practice guidelines on the OVID platform and then translated into Datastar syntax.

*1.2.3 **Level of evidence and grade of recommendation***

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1), and guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (4). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

** Modified from Sackett, et al. (4).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there

is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence – although a very important factor – has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and costs when a grade is assigned (5-7).

The EAU Guidelines Office, do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett, et al. (4).*

*1.2.4 **Publication history***

The current guidelines present a limited update of the 2008 publication. The EAU published the first guidelines on Neurogenic LUTS 2003 with an update in 2008. A review paper was published in the scientific journal of the association in 2009 (8).

A quick reference document presenting the main findings of the Neurogenic LUTS guidelines is available. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

There is a need for ongoing re-evaluation of the information presented in the current guidelines by an expert panel. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions – also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account.

Summary of updated information

An updated literature search was done covering the chapters on Epidemiology, Diagnosis and assessment, Medical Treatment, Sexuality/Fertility and Quality of life. New additions are the Introduction in this chapter 1, Bladder rehabilitation and the chapters on Infections, Sexual Dysfunction and Fertility. Chapter 2 “Epidemiology” has been updated and chapter 3 “Diagnosis” completely renewed.

Readers are adviced to consult the other EAU guidelines which may address different aspects of the topics discussed in this document.

1.3 Introduction

The function of the lower urinary tract (LUT) is mainly storage and voiding of urine, which is regulated by a neural control system in the brain and spinal cord that coordinates the activity of the urinary bladder and bladder outlet. Therefore, any disturbance of the nervous systems that control the LUT, including the peripheral nerves in the pelvis, can result in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD). Depending on the extent and location of the disturbance, a variety of different NLUTDs might occur, which can be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Moreover, NLUTD can cause a variety of long-term complications; the most dangerous being damage of renal function. As symptoms and long-term complications do not correlate (9), it is important to identify patients with NLUTD, and establish if they have a low or high risk of subsequent complications.

According to current knowledge, elevated storage pressure in the bladder, either alone or combined with vesicoureteric reflux, is the most important risk factor for renal damage (10). Sustained elevated storage pressure in the bladder is mainly due to a combination of increased detrusor activity during the storage phase (detrusor overactivity (DO) or low compliance), combined with detrusor-sphincter-dyssynergia (DSD). The combination of these two findings is mainly caused by suprasacral infrapontine spinal lesions. Furthermore, elevated detrusor leak point pressure has been demonstrated to be a risk factor for renal deterioration in patients with meningomyelocele (11). Therefore, renal failure has been the leading cause of death in patients with spinal cord injury for a long time (12). Even today, 26% of patients with meningomyelocele who do not

undergo urological treatment develop renal damage. Detrusor leak point pressure ≥ 40 cm H_2O and low bladder compliance are the main risk factors for renal damage (13).

In recent years, adequate diagnosis and treatment of NLUTD in patients with spinal cord lesions have improved the situation of these patients. Nowadays, respiratory diseases are the most frequent (21%) cause of death in patients with SCI (14).

In all other patients with NLUTD, the risk of renal damage is significantly lower. However, in Multiple Sclerosis (MS), urodynamics and clinical symptoms do not correlate, which means that asymptomatic patients can present with abnormal urodynamic findings (15). LUT symptoms do not always lead to urological evaluation in patients with MS, even if the symptoms are troublesome (16). Therefore, urological assessment is important in MS patients (17), although respiratory diseases are currently the leading cause of death for patients with MS, as well those with SCI (18).

In Parkinson disease (PD), NLUTD has not been mentioned as a significant cause of death. Moreover, patients with PD commonly suffer from overactive bladder without DSD (19), which does not seem to be as threatening to the upper urinary tract as DO with DSD. In patients with PD, urodynamic diagnosis of DO correlates well with diagnosis made by questionnaires (20). For these reasons, regular urodynamic follow-up might be less important in PD patients compared with patients suffering from MS or SCI. The same is true for type 2 diabetes, which frequently leads to NLUTD (21), but cardiovascular diseases are the main cause of death in these patients (22).

In summary, treatment and intensity of follow-up examinations are based on the type of NLUTD and the underlying cause.

1.4 References

1. Stöhrer M, Goepel M, Kondo A, et al. The standardization of terminology in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction with suggestions for diagnostic procedures. International Continence Society Standardization Committee. Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(2):139-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081953
2. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Fall M, et al. The standardisation of terminology of lower urinary tract function: Report from the Standardisation Sub-committee of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(2):167-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857671
3. Schäfer W, Abrams P, Liao L, et al. International Continence Society. Good urodynamic practices: uroflowmetry, filling cystometry, and pressure-flow Studies. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):261-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948720
4. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
5. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al. GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
6. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
7. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al. GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long
8. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403235
9. Nosseir M, Hinkel A, Pannek J. Clinical usefulness of urodynamic assessment for maintenance of bladder function in patients with spinal cord injury. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(2);228-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16998859
10. Gerridzen RG, Thijssen AM, Dehoux E. Risk factors for upper tract deterioration in chronic spinal cord injury patients. J Urol 1992 Feb;147(2):416-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1732606
11. McGuire EJ, Woodside JR, Borden TA, et al. Prognostic value of urodynamic testing in myelodysplastic patients. J Urol 1981 Aug;126(2); 205-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7196460

12. Hackler RH. A 25-year prospective mortality study in the spinal cord injured patient: comparison with the long-term living paraplegic. J Urol 1977 Apr;117(4):486-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/850323
13. Bruschini H, Almeida FG, Srougi M. Upper and lower urinary tract evaluation of 104 patients with myelomeningocele without adequate urological management. World J Urol. 2006 Jun;24(2):224-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16758253
14. Lidall IB, Snekkevik H, Aamodt G, et al. Mortality after spinal cord injury in Norway. J Rehabil Med 2007 Mar;39(2):145-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17351697
15. Del Popolo G, Panariello G, Del Corso F, et al. Diagnosis and therapy for neurogenic bladder dysfunctions in multiple sclerosis patients. Neurol Sci 2008 Dec;29 Suppl 4:S352-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19089675
16. Marrie RA, Cutter G, Tyry T, et al. Disparities in the management of multiple sclerosis-related bladder symptoms. Neurology 2007 Jun 5;68(23):1971-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17548546
17. de Sèze M, Ruffion A, Denys P, et al. GENULF. The neurogenic bladder in multiple sclerosis: review of the literature and proposal of management guidelines. Mult Scler 2007 Aug;13(7):915-28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17881401
18. Ragonese P, Aridon P, Salemi G,et al. Mortality in multiple sclerosis: A review. Eur J Neurol 2008 Feb;15(2):123-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18217882
19. Sakakibara R, Hattori T, Uchiyama T, et al. Videourodynamic and sphincter motor unit potential analyses in Parkinson's disease and multiple system atrophy. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2001 Nov;71(5):600-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11606669
20. Palleschi G, Pastore AL, Stocchi F, et al. Correlation between the Overactive Bladder questionnaire (OAB-q) and urodynamic data of Parkinson disease patients affected by neurogenic detrusor overactivity during antimuscarinic treatment. Clin Neuropharmacol 2006 Jul-Aug;29(4):220-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855424
21. Frimodt-Møller C. Diabetic cystopathy: epidemiology and related disorders. Ann Intern Med 1980 Feb;92(2 Pt 2):318-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7356221
22. Brown SH, Abdelhafiz AH. Trials review: cardiovascular outcome with intensive glycemic control and implications for patients with type 2 diabetes. Postgrad Med 2009 Sep;121(5):31-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19820272

2. RISK FACTORS AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

2.1 Introduction

Neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction may be caused by various diseases and events affecting the nervous systems controlling the LUT.
The resulting LUTD depends grossly on the location and the extent of the neurological lesion (see also Section 2.3).

There are no figures on the overall prevalence of NLUTD in the general population, but data are available on the prevalence of the underlying conditions and the relative risk of those for the development of NLUTD. It is important to realise that most of these data show a very wide range of prevalence figures because of the low level of evidence in most published data and smaller sample sizes.

*2.1.1 **Brain tumours***

Brain tumours can cause LUTD in 24% of patients (1). More recently, mostly case reports to small series have been published (2-3). In a series of patients with brain tumours, voiding difficulty was reported in 46/152 (30%) of patients with tumours in the posterior fossa, while urinary incontinence occurred in only three (1.9%) patients (4). Urinary retention was found in 12/17 (71%) children with pontine glioma (5).

*2.1.2 **Dementia***

It is not easy to distinguish dementia-associated LUTD from LUTD caused by age-related changes of the bladder and other concomitant diseases. Therefore, the true incidence of incontinence caused by dementia

is unknown. However, it has been shown that incontinence is much more frequent in geriatric patients with dementia than in patients without dementia (6,7).

Alzheimer, Lewy body dementia, Binswanger, Nasu-Hakola and Pick diseases frequently cause NLUTD (8-13). The occurrence of incontinence is reported to be between 23% and 48% (14,15) in patients with Alzheimer's disease. In Lewy body dementia, 92% of NLUTD is attributed to DO and 53% to incontinence (16). The onset of incontinence usually correlates with disease progression (17). A male-to-female ratio of dementia-related incontinence was found to be 1:15.

*2.1.3 **Mental retardation***

In mental retardation, depending on the grade of the disorder, 12-65% of LUTD was described (18,19).

*2.1.4 **Cerebral palsy***

Lower urinary tract dysfunction has been described in about 30-40% (20,21).

*2.1.5 **Normal pressure hydrocephalus***

There have only been case reports of LUTD (22-24).

*2.1.6 **Basal ganglia pathology (Parkinson disease, Huntington's disease, Shy-Drager syndrome, etc.)***

Parkinson disease is accompanied by NLUTD in 37.9-70% (25-27).

In the rare Shy-Drager syndrome, almost all patients have NLUTD (27), with incontinence found in 73% (28).

Hattori, et al. (29) reported that 60% of Parkinson patients had urinary symptoms. However, Gray et al. (30) reported that functional disturbances of the LUT in PD were not disease-specific and were correlated only with age. Recent, control-based studies have given the prevalence of LUT symptoms as 27-63.9% using validated questionnaires (31-33), or 53% in men and 63.9% in women using a validated questionnaire, which included a urinary incontinence category (33), with all these values being significantly higher than in healthy controls. Ransmayr reported a prevalence of urge episodes and urge incontinence in 53% Lewy body patients, whereas this was observed in 27% of the PD study population, of which 46% were also diagnosised with DO (34).

In most patients, the onset of the bladder dysfunction occurred after the motor disorder had appeared.

*2.1.7 **Cerebrovascular pathology***

Cerebrovascular (CVA) pathology causes hemiplegia with remnant incontinence NLUTD in 20-50% of patients (35,36), with decreasing prevalence in the post-insult period (37). In 1996, 53% of patients with CVA pathology had significant urinary complaints at 3 months (38). Without proper treatment, at 6 months after the CVA, 20-30% of patients still suffered from urinary incontinence (39). The commonest cystometric finding was DO (40-45).

In 39 patients who had brainstem strokes, urinary symptoms were present in almost 50%, nocturia and voiding difficulty in 28%, urinary retention in 21%, and urinary incontinence in 8%. Several case histories have been published presenting difficulties with micturition in the presence of various brainstem pathologies (46-48).

*2.1.8 **Demyelinisation***

Multiple sclerosis causes NLUTD in 50-90% of the patients (49-51).

The reported incidence of voiding dysfunction in multiple sclerosis is 33-52% in patients sampled consecutively, regardless of urinary symptoms. This incidence is related to the disability status of the patient (52). There is almost a 100% chance of having LUTD once these patients experience difficulties with walking. NLUTD is the presenting symptom in 2-12% of patients, with this finding being as high as 34% in some studies (53). LUTD appears mostly during the 10 years following the diagnosis (54).

*2.1.9 **Spinal cord lesions***

Spinal cord lesions can be traumatic, vascular, medical or congenital. An incidence of 30-40 new cases per million population is the accepted average for the USA. Most of these patients will develop NLUTD (55). The prevalence of spina bifida and other congenital nerve tube defects in the UK is 8-9 per 10,000 aged 10-69 years, with the greatest prevalence in the age group 25-29 years (56), and in the USA 1 per 1,000 births (57). The incidence of urethrovesical dysfunction in myelomeningocele is not completely known, but most studies suggest it is very high at 90-97% (58). About 50% of these children will have DSD (59,60).

In a large review specific data have been given for intradural metastasis from renal carcinoma with 22% of patients presenting with NLUTD (61).

Central cord syndrome is an incomplete SCI. A case series (n = 50) presented NLUTD in 42% of patients at admission, 12 % had residual disturbance during follow up, but most of the 12% related to patients > 70 years old (60% of that age bracket) (62).

In a hereditary spastic paraplegia series, 38 (77.6%) out of 49 patients presented with NLUTD (63).

Caudal Regression Syndrome (CRS): In a case series 61% of patients diagnosed with CRS presented with NLUTD (n = 69). 20% of these CRS patients presented with one kidney (64).
Special attention is to be paid to the combination of traumatic SCI and brain injuries: the incidence of tramatic SCI with clinical concomitant brain injury has increased over the passed 50 years. These finding have consequences for the diagnosis and treatment of NLUTD (65).
In 25% of children with high anorecta malformationi, innate NLUTD is present (66).

2.1.10 ***Disc disease***

This is reported to cause NLUTD in 28-87% of the patients (< 20%) (67,68). The incidence of cauda equine syndrome due to central lumbar disc prolapse is relatively rare and is about 1-5% of all prolapsed lumbar discs (68-75). There have been case reports of NLUTD without cauda equine syndrome (76) and small series with 90% cure of incontinence (77).

2.1.11 ***Spinal stenosis and spine surgery***

About 50% of patients seeking help for intractable leg pain due to spinal stenosis report symptoms of LUTD, such as a sense of incomplete bladder emptying, urinary hesitancy, incontinence, nocturia or urinary tract infections (UTIs) (78). These symptoms may be overlooked or attributed to primary urological disorders, with 61-62% affected by LUTD (79,80). The prevalence of neurological bladder is more significantly associated with the anteroposterior diameter of the dural sac than with its cross-sectional area. Spinal surgery is related to LUTD in 38-60% of patients (81,82). In a series with sacrectomy for sacral chordoma's NLUTD was found in 74% (83).

2.1.12 ***Peripheral neuropathy***

Diabetes: This common metabolic disorder has a prevalence of about 2.5% in the American population, but the disease may be subclinical for many years. No specific criteria exist for secondary neuropathy in this condition, but it is generally accepted that 50% of patients will develop somatic neuropathy, with 75-100% of these patients developing NLUTD (84,85). Diabetic patients suffer from various polyneuropathies, with 'diabetic cystopathy' reported in 43-87% of insulin-dependent diabetics without gender or age differences. It is also described in about 25% of type 2 diabetic patients on oral hypoglycaemic treatment (86).

The prevalence of NLUTD in type 2 diabetes gets higher with increasing severity of cardiac autonomic neuropathy (87) .

Alcohol abuse will eventually cause peripheral neuropathy. This has a reported prevalence that varies widely from 5-15% (88) to 64% (89). NLUTD is probably more likely to be present in patients with liver cirrhosis. The parasympathetic nervous system is attacked more than the sympathetic nervous system (89).

Less prevalent peripheral neuropathies include the following:

- Porphyria: bladder dilatation occurs in up to 12% of patients (90).
- Sarcoidosis: NLUTD is rare (91).
- Lumbosacral zone and genital herpes: incidence of LUT dysfunction is as high as 28% when only lumbosacral dermatome-involved patients are considered. The overall incidence is 4% (92,93). NLUTD is transient in most patients.
- Guillain Barré syndrome: the prevalence of micturition disorders varies from 25% to more than 80% (94,95), but is regressive in most cases (96). The true incidence is uncertain because, during the acute phase, patients are usually managed by indwelling catheter.

2.1.13 ***Other conditions (systematic lupus erythematosus)***

Nervous system involvement occurs in about half of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE). Symptoms of LUTD can occur, but data on prevalence are rare and give an incidence of 1% (97,98).

In familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy (FAP) approx. 50% of patients present with NLUTD (99).

*2.1.14 **Human immunodeficiency virus***

Voiding problems have been described in 12% of HIV-infected patients, mostly in advanced stages of the disease (100,101).

*2.1.15 **Regional spinal anaesthesia***

This may cause NLUTD but no prevalence figures have been found (102,103).
NLUTD have been described after image guided transforaminal lumbar spine epidural steroid injection (104), and intrathecal methotrexate injection (105).

*2.1.16 **Iatrogenic***

Abdominoperineal resection of the rectum has been described as causing NLUTD in up to 50% of patients (106,107).
One study has reported that NLUTD remains a long-term problem in only 10% (108); however, the study was not clear whether this was because the neurological lesion was cured or bladder rehabilitation was successful. Surgical prevention with nerve preservation was shown to be important (109,110).

NLUTD has been reported following simple hysterectomy (111) and in 8-57% of patients following radical hysterectomy or pelvic irradiation for cervical cancer (112-115). Surgical prevention can be used to prevent it (116). Neurological dysfunction of the pelvic floor has been demonstrated following radical prostatectomy (117).

2.2 Standardisation of terminology

*2.2.1 **Introduction***

Several national or international guidelines have already been published for the care of patients with NLUTD (118-121). The guidelines will evolve as time goes by. The guidelines include definitions of important terms and procedures. The ICS NLUTD standardisation report (119) deals specifically with the standardisation of terminology and urodynamic investigation in patients with NLUTD. Other relevant definitions are found in the general ICS standardisation report (122).

Section 2.2.2 lists the definitions from these references, partly adapted, and other definitions considered useful for clinical practice in NLUTD (Tables 3 and 4). For specific definitions relating to urodynamic investigation, the reader is referred to the appropriate ICS report (119).

*2.2.2 **Definitions***

Table 3: Definitions useful in clinical practice

Acontractility, detrusor	*See below under voiding phase*
Acontractility, urethral sphincter	*See below under storage phase*
Autonomic dysreflexia	Increase of sympathetic reflex due to noxious stimuli with symptoms or signs of headache, hypertension, flushing face and perspiration
Capacity	*See below under storage phase*
Catheterisation, indwelling	Emptying of the bladder by a catheter that is introduced (semi-) permanently
Catheterisation, intermittent (IC)	Emptying of the bladder by a catheter that is removed after the procedure, mostly at regular intervals
• Aseptic IC	The catheters remain sterile, the genitals are disinfected, and disinfecting lubricant is used
• Clean IC	Disposable or cleansed re-usable catheters, genitals washed
• Sterile IC	Complete sterile setting, including sterile gloves, forceps, gown and mask
• Intermittent self-catheterisation (ISC)	IC performed by the patient
Compliance, detrusor	*See below under storage phase*
Condition	Evidence of relevant pathological processes

Diary, urinary	Record of times of micturitions and voided volumes, incontinence episodes, pad usage, and other relevant information
• Frequency volume chart (FVC)	Times of micturitions and voided volumes only
• Micturition time chart (MTC)	Times of micturitions only
Filling rate, physiological	Below the predicted maximum: body weight (kg) / 4 in mL/s (122,123)
Hesitancy	Difficulty in initiating micturition; delay in the onset of micturition after the individual is ready to pass urine
Intermittency	Urine flow stops and starts on one or more occasions during voiding
Leak point pressure (LPP)	*See below under storage phase*
Lower motor neuron lesion (LMNL)	Lesion at or below the S1-S2 spinal cord level
Neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD)	Lower urinary tract dysfunction secondary to confirmed pathology of the nervous supply
Observation, specific	Observation made during specific diagnostic procedure
Overactivity, bladder	*See below under symptom syndrome*
Overactivity, detrusor	*See below under storage phase*
Rehabilitation, LUT	Non-surgical non-pharmacological treatment for LUT dysfunction
Sign	To verify symptoms and classify them
Sphincter, urethral, non-relaxing	*See below under voiding phase*
Symptom	Subjective indicator of a disease or change in condition, as perceived by the patient, carer, or partner that may lead the patient to seek help from healthcare professionals
Upper motor neuron lesion (UMNL)	Lesion above the S1-S2 spinal cord level
Voiding, balanced: In patients with NLUTD (< 80 mL or < 20% of bladder volume)	Voiding with physiological detrusor pressure and low residual
Voiding, triggered	Voiding initiated by manoeuvres to elicit reflex detrusor contraction by exteroceptive stimuli
Volume, overactivity	*See below under storage phase*

Table 4: Further definitions useful in clinical practice

Storage phase	
Maximum anaesthetic bladder capacity	Maximum bladder filling volume under deep general or spinal anaesthesia
Increased daytime frequency	Self-explanatory; the normal frequency can be estimated at about 8 times per day (124)
Nocturia	Waking at night one or more times to void
Urgency	The symptom of a sudden compelling desire to pass urine that is difficult to defer
Urinary incontinence	Any involuntary leakage of urine
• Stress urinary incontinence	On effort or exertion, or on sneezing or coughing
• Urge urinary incontinence	Accompanied by or immediately preceded by urgency
• Mixed urinary incontinence	Associated with urgency and also exertion, effort, sneezing, or coughing
• Continuous urinary incontinence	
Bladder sensation	

Normal	
• Symptom and history	Awareness of bladder filling and increasing sensation up to a strong desire to void
• Urodynamics	First sensation of bladder filling, first desire to void, and strong desire to void at realistic bladder volumes
Increased	
• Symptom and history	An early and persistent desire to void
• Urodynamics	Any of the three urodynamic parameters mentioned under 'normal' persistently at low bladder volume
Reduced	
• Symptom and history	Awareness of bladder filling but no definite desire to void
• Urodynamics	Diminished sensation throughout bladder filling
Absent	No sensation of bladder filling or desire to void
Non-specific	Perception of bladder filling as abdominal fullness, vegetative symptoms, or spasticity
Definitions valid after urodynamic confirmation only	
Cystometric capacity	Bladder volume at the end of the filling cystometry
• Maximum cystometric capacity	Bladder volume at strong desire to void
• High-capacity bladder	Bladder volume at cystometric capacity far over the mean voided volume, estimated from the bladder diary, with no significant increase in detrusor pressure under non-anaesthetised condition
Normal detrusor function	Little or no pressure increase during filling: no involuntary phasic contractions despite provocation
Detrusor overactivity	Involuntary detrusor contractions during filling; spontaneous or provoked
• Phasic DO	Characteristic phasic contraction
• Terminal DO	A single contraction at cystometric capacity
• High pressure DO	Maximal detrusor pressure > 40 cm H_2O (119,125)
• Overactivity volume	Bladder volume at first occurrence of DO
• Detrusor overactivity incontinence	Self-explanatory
Leak point pressure	
• Detrusor leak point pressure (DLPP)	Lowest value of detrusor pressure at which leakage is observed in the absence of abdominal strain or detrusor contraction
• Abdominal leak point pressure	Lowest value of intentionally increased intravesical pressure that provokes leakage in the absence of a detrusor contraction
Detrusor compliance	Relationship between change in bladder volume (ΔV) and change in detrusor pressure ($\Delta pdet$):$C=\Delta V/\Delta pdet$ (mL/ cmH_2O)
• Low detrusor	compliance $C=\Delta V/\Delta pdet$ < 20 mL/cm H_2O (106)
Break volume	Bladder volume after which a sudden significant decrease in detrusor compliance is observed
Urethral sphincter acontractility	No evidence of sphincter contraction during filling, particularly at higher bladder volumes, or during abdominal pressure increase
Voiding phase	
• Slow stream	Reduced urine flow rate
• Intermittent stream (intermittency)	Stopping and starting of urine flow during micturition

• Hesitancy	Difficulty in initiating micturition
• Straining	Muscular effort to initiate, maintain, or improve urinary stream
• Terminal dribble	Prolonged final part of micturition when the flow has slowed to a trickle/dribble
Definitions valid after urodynamic confirmation only	
Normal detrusor function	Voluntarily initiated detrusor contraction that causes complete bladder emptying within a normal time span
Detrusor underactivity	Contraction of reduced strength / duration
Acontractile detrusor	Absent contraction
Non-relaxing urethral sphincter	Self-explanatory
Detrusor sphincter dyssynergia (DSD)	Detrusor contraction concurrent with an involuntary contraction of the urethra and/or periurethral striated musculature
Post-micturition phase Feeling of incomplete emptying (symptom only) Post-micturition dribble: involuntary leakage of urine shortly after finishing the micturition Pain, discomfort or pressure sensation in the LUT and genitalia that may be related to bladder filling or voiding, may be felt after micturition, or be continuous	
Symptom syndrome: combination of symptoms • Overactive bladder syndrome: urgency with or without urge incontinence, usually with frequency and nocturia • Synonyms: urge syndrome, urgency-frequency syndrome • This syndrome is suggestive for LUTD	

2.3 ***References***

1. Andrew J, Nathan PW. Lesions of the anterior frontal lobes and disturbances of micturition and defecation. Brain 1964 Jun;87:233-62. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14188274
2. Maurice-Williams RS. Micturition symptoms in frontal tumours. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 1974 Apr;37(4):431-6. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4365244
3. Lang EW, Chesnut RM, Hennerici M. Urinary retention and space-occupying lesions of the frontal cortex. Eur Neurol 1996;36(1):43-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8719650
4. Ueki K. Disturbances of micturition observed in some patients with brain tumor. Neurol Med Chir 1960;2:25-33.
5. Renier WO, Gabreels FJ. Evaluation of diagnosis and non-surgical therapy in 24 children with a pontine tumour. Neuropediatrics 1980 Aug;11(3):262-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6252517
6. Toba K, Ouchi Y, Orimo H, et al. Urinary incontinence in elderly inpatients in Japan: a comparison between general and geriatric hospitals. Aging (Milano) 1996 Feb;8(1):47-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8695676
7. Campbell AJ, Reinken J, McCosh L. Incontinence in the elderly: prevalence and prognosis. Age Ageing 1985 Mar;14(2):65-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4003185
8. Horimoto Y, Matsumoto M, Akatsu H, et al. Autonomic dysfunctions in dementia with Lewy bodies. J Neurol 2003 May;250(5):530-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12736730
9. Sugiyama T, Hashimoto K, Kiwamoto H, et al. Urinary incontinence in senile dementia of the Alzheimer type (SDAT). Int J Urol 1994 Dec;1(4):337-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7614397
10. McGrother C, Resnick M, Yalla SV, et al. Epidemiology and etiology of urinary incontinence in the elderly. World J Urol 1998;16(Suppl 1):S3-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9775412

11. Madersbacher H, Awad S, Fall M, et al. Urge incontinence in the elderly-supraspinal reflex incontinence. World J Urol 1998;16 (Suppl 1):S35-S43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9775414
12. Olsen CG, Clasen ME. Senile dementia of the Binswanger's type. Am Fam Physician 1998 Dec;58(9):2068-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9861880
13. Honig LS, Mayeux R. Natural history of Alzheimer's disease. Aging (Milano) 2001 Jun;13:171-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11442300
14. Burns A, Jacoby R, Levy R. Psychiatric phenomena in Alzheimer's disease. IV: Disorders of behaviour. Br J Psychiatry 1990 Jul;157:86-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2397368
15. Cacabelos R, Rodríguez B, Carrera C, et al. APOE-related frequency of cognitive and noncognitive symptoms in dementia. Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol 1996 Dec;18(10):693-706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9121226
16. Ransmayr GN, Holliger S, Schletterer K, et al. Lower urinary tract symptoms in dementia with Lewy bodies, Parkinson disease, and Alzheimer disease. Neurology 2008 Jan;70(4):299-303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18209204
17. Leung KS, Ng MF, Pang FC, et al. Urinary incontinence: an ignored problem in elderly patients. Hong Kong Med J 1997 Mar;3(1):27-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11847353
18. Mitchell SJ, Woodthorpe J. Young mentally handicapped adults in three London boroughs: prevalence and degree of disability. J Epidemiol Community Health 1981 Mar;35(1):59-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7264535
19. Reid AH, Ballinger BR, Heather BB. Behavioural syndromes identified by cluster analysis in a sample of 100 severely and profoundly retarded adults. Psychol Med 1978 Aug;8(3):399-412.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/704707
20. McNeal DM, Hawtrey CE, Wolraich ML, et al. Symptomatic neurologic bladder in a cerebralpalsied population. Dev Med Child Neurol 1983 Oct;25(5):612-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6354799
21. Decter RM, Bauer SB, Khoshbin S, et al. Urodynamic assessment of children with cerebral palsy. J Urol 1987 Oct;138(4 Pt 2):1110-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3656569
22. Jonas S, Brown J. Neurologic bladder in normal pressure hydrocephalus. Urology 1975 Jan;5(1): 44-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1114545
23. Black PM. Idiopathic normal-pressure hydrocephalus. Results of shunting in 62 patients. J Neurosurg 1980 Mar;52(3):371-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7359191
24. Mulrow CD, Feussner JR, Williams BC, et al. The value of clinical findings in the detection of normal pressure hydrocephalus. J Gerontol 1987 May;42(3):277-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3571862
25. Murnaghan GF. Neurogenic disorders of the bladder in Parkinsonism. Br J Urol 1961 Dec;33:403-9. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14477379
26. Campos-Sousa RN, Quagliato E, da Silva BB, et al. Urinary symptoms in Parkinson's disease: prevalence and associated factors. Arq Neuropsiquiatr 2003 Jun;61(2B):359-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12894267
27. Salinas JM, Berger Y, De La Rocha RE, et al. Urological evaluation in the Shy Drager syndrome. J Urol 1986 Apr;135(4):741-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3959195
28. Chandiramani VA, Palace J, Fowler CJ. How to recognize patients with parkinsonism who should not have urological surgery. Br J Urol 1997 Jul;80(1):100-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240187
29. Hattori T, Yasuda K, Kita K, et al. Voiding dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. Jpn J Psychiatry Neurol 1992 Mar;46(1):181-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1635308
30. Gray R, Stern G, Malone-Lee J. Lower urinary tract dysfunction in Parkinson's disease: changes relate to age and not disease. Age Ageing 1995 Nov;24(6):499-504.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8588540

31. Araki I, Kuno S. Assessment of voiding dysfunction in Parkinson's disease by the international prostate symptom score. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2000 Apr;68(4):429-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10727477
32. Lemack GE, Dewey RB, Roehrborn CG, et al. Questionnaire-based assessment of bladder dysfunction in patients with mild to moderate Parkinson's disease. Urology 2000 Aug;56(2):250-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10925088
33. Sakakibara R, Uchiyama T, Yamanishi T, et al. Bladder and bowel dysfunction in Parkinson's disease. J Neural Transm. 2008;115(3):443-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18327532
34. Ransmayr GN, Holliger S, Schletterer K, et al. Lower urinary tract symptoms in dementia with Lewy bodies, Parkinson disease, and Alzheimer disease. Neurology. 2008 Jan;70(4):299-303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18209204
35. Currie CT. Urinary incontinence after stroke. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1986 Nov;293(6558):1322-3. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3790967
36. Codine PH, Pellissier J, Manderscheidt JC, et al. Les troubles urinaires au cours des hémiplegies vasculaires. In: *Hémiplegie vasculaire et médicine de rééducation*. Pellisier J, ed. Paris, Masson, 1988, pp. 261-269.
37. Barer DH. Continence after stroke: useful predictor or goal of therapy? Age Ageing 1989 May;18(3):183-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2782216
38. Sakakibara R, Hattori T, Yasuda K, et al. Micturitional disturbance after acute hemispheric stroke: analysis of the lesion site by CT and MRI. J Neurol Sci 1996 Apr;137(1):47-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120487
39. Nakayama H, Jørgensen HS, Pedersen PM, et al. Prevalence and risk factors of incontinence after stroke. The Copenhagen Stroke Study. 1997 Jan;28(1):58-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996489
40. Khan Z, Hertanu J, Yang WC, et al. Predictive correlation of urodynamic dysfunction and brain injury after cerebrovascular accident. J Urol 1981 Jul;126(1):86-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7253085
41. Tsuchida S, Noto H, Yamaguchi O, et al. Urodynamic studies on hemiplegic patients after cerebrovascular accident. Urology 1983 Mar;21(3):315-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6836813
42. Kuroiwa Y, Tohgi H, Ono S, et al. Frequency and urgency of micturition in hemiplegic patients; relationship to hemisphere laterality of lesions. J Neurol 1987 Feb;234(2):100-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3559632
43. Khan Z, Starer P, Yang WC, et al. Analysis of voiding disorders in patients with cerebrovascular accidents. Urology 1990 Mar;35(3):265-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2316094
44. Taub NA, Wolfe CD, Richardson E, et al. Predicting the disability of first-time stroke sufferers at 1 year. 12-month follow-up of a population-based cohort in southeast England. Stroke 1994 Feb;25(2):352-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8303744
45. Borrie MJ, Campbell AJ, Caradoc-Davies TH, et al. Urinary incontinence after stroke: a prospective study. Age Ageing 1986 May;15(3):177-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3739856
46. Sakakibara R, Hattori T, Yasuda K, et al. Micturitional disturbance and the pontine tegmental lesion: urodynamic and MRI analyses of vascular cases. J Neurol Sci 1996 Sep;141(1-2):105-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8880701
47. Betts CD, Kapoor R, Fowler CJ. Pontine pathology and voiding dysfunction. Br J Urol 1992 Jul;70(1):100-2. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1638364
48. Manente G, Melchionda D, Uncini A. Urinary retention in bilateral pontine tumour: evidence for a pontine micturition centre in humans. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1996 Nov;61(5):528-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8937354
49. Litwiller SE, Frohman EM, Zimmern PE. Multiple sclerosis and the urologist. J Urol;1999 Mar;161(3): 743-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022678
50. Giannantoni A, Scivoletto G, Di Stasi SM, et al. Lower urinary tract dysfunction and disability status in patients with multiple sclerosis. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999 Apr;80(4):437-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10206607

51. Hinson JL, Boone TB. Urodynamics and multiple sclerosis. Urol Clin North Am 1996 Aug;23(3):475-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8701560
52. Bemelmans BL, Hommes OR, Van Kerrebroeck PE, et al. Evidence for early lower urinary tract dysfunction in clinically silent multiple sclerosis. J Urol 1991 Jun;145(6):1219-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2033697
53. DasGupta R, Fowler CJ. Sexual and urological dysfunction in multiple sclerosis: better understanding and improved therapies. Curr Opin Neurol 2002 Jun;15(3):271-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12045724
54. Perrigot M, Richard F, Veaux-Renault V, et al. [Bladder sphincter disorders in multiple sclerosis: symptomatology and evolution. 100 cases.] Sem Hop 1982 Nov;58(43):2543-6. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6297048
55. Burns AS, Rivas DA, Ditunno JF. The management of neurogenic bladder and sexual dysfunction after spinal cord injury. Spine (Phila Pa 1976) 2001 Dec 15;26(24 Suppl):S129-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805620
56. Lawrenson R, Wyndaele JJ, Vlachonikolis I, et al. A UK general practice database study of prevalence and mortality of people with neural tube defects. Clin Rehabil 2000 Dec;14(6):627-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11128738
57. Selzman AA, Elder JS, Mapstone TB. Urologic consequences of myelodysplasia and other congenital abnormalities of the spinal cord. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Aug;20(3):485-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8351774
58. Smith E. *Spina bifida and the total care of spinal myelomeningocoele*. Springfield, IL: CC Thomas, ed, 1965; pp. 92-123.
59. van Gool JD, Dik P, de Jong TP. Bladder-sphincter dysfunction in myelomeningocele. Eur J Pediatr 2001 Jul;160(7):414-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11475578
60. Wyndaele JJ, De Sy WA. Correlation between the findings of a clinical neurological examination and the urodynamic dysfunction in children with myelodysplasia. J Urol 1985 Apr;133(4):638-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3981715
61. Jost G, Zimmerer S, Frank S, et al. Intradural spinal metastasis of renal cell cancer. Report of a case and review of 26 published cases. Acta Neurochir (Wien) 2009 Jul;151(7):815-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19415167
62. Lenehan B, Street J, O'Toole P, et al. Central cord syndrome in Ireland: the effect of age on clinical outcome. Eur Spine J 2009 Oct;18(10):1458-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19685249
63. Braschinsky M, Zopp I, Kals M, et al. Bladder dysfunction in hereditary spastic paraplegia: what to expect? J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2010 Mar;81(3):263-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19726407
64. Torre M, Buffa P, Jasonni V, et al. Long-term urologic outcome in patients with caudal regression syndrome, compared with meningomyelocele and spinal cord lipoma. J Pediatr Surg 2008 Mar;43(3):530-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18358295
65. Hagen EM, Eide GE, Rekand T, et al. Traumatic spinal cord injury and concomitant brain injury: a cohort study. Acta Neurol Scand Suppl. 2010;(190):51-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20586736
66. Borg H, Holmdahl G, Olsson I, et al. Impact of spinal cord malformation on bladder function in children with anorectal malformations. J Pediatr Surg. 2009 Sep;44(9):1778-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19735825
67. Bartolin Z, Gilja I, Bedalov G, et al. Bladder function in patients with lumbar intervertebral disc protrusion. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):969-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474195
68. O'Flynn KJ, Murphy R, Thomas DG. Neurologic bladder dysfunction in lumbar intervertebral disc prolapse. Br J Urol 1992 Jan;69(1):38-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1737251
69. Jennett WB. A study of 25 cases of compression of the cauda equina by prolapsed intervertebral discs. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1956 May;19(2):109-16. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13346384
70. Tay EC, Chacha PB. Midline prolapse of a lumbar intervertebral disc with compression of the cauda equina. J Bone Joint Surg Br 1979 Feb;61(1):43-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/154521

71. Nielsen B, de Nully M, Schmidt K, et al. A urodynamic study of cauda equina syndrome due to lumbar disc herniation.Urol Int 1980;35(3):167-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7385464
72. Bartels RH, de Vries J. Hemi-cauda equina syndrome from herniated lumbar disc: a neurosurgical emergency? Can J Neurol Sci 1996 Nov;23(4):296-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8951209
73. Goldman HB, Appell RA. Voiding dysfunction in women with lumbar disc prolapse. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1999;10(2):134-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10384977
74. Ahn UM, Ahn NU, Buchowski JM, et al. Cauda equina syndrome secondary to lumbar disc herniation: a meta-analysis of surgical outcomes. Spine 2000 Jun;25(12):1515-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10851100
75. Shapiro S. Medical realities of cauda equina syndrome secondary to lumbar disc herniation. Spine 2000 Feb;25(3):348-51; discussion 352.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10703108
76. Emmett JL, Love JG. Urinary retention in women caused by asymptomatic protruded lumbar disc: report of 5 cases. J Urol 1968 May;99:597-606. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5648558
77. Olivero WC, Wang H, Hanigan WC, et al. Cauda equina syndrome (CES) from lumbar disc herniations. J Spinal Disord Tech 2009 May;22(3):202-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19412023
78. Kawaguchi Y, Kanamori M, Ishihara H, et al. Clinical symptoms and surgical outcome in lumbar spinal stenosis patients with neurologic bladder. J Spinal Disord 2001 Oct;14(5):404-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586140
79. Tammela TL, Heiskari MJ, Lukkarinen OA. Voiding dysfunction and urodynamic findings in patients with cervical spondylotic spinal stenosis compared with severity of the disease. Br J Urol. 1992 Aug;70(2):144-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1393436
80. Inui Y, Doita M, Ouchi K, et al. Clinical and radiological features of lumbar spinal stenosis and disc herniation with neurologic bladder. Spine (Phila Pa 1976) 2004 Apr;29(8):869-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15082986
81. Boulis NM, Mian FS, Rodriguez D, et al. Urinary retention following routine neurosurgical spine procedures. Surg Neurol 2001 Jan;55(1):23-7; discussion 27-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248301
82. Brooks ME, Moreno M, Sidi A, et al. Urologic complications after surgery on lumbosacral spine. Urology 1985 Aug;26:202-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4024418
83. Schwab JH, Healey JH, Rose P, et al. The surgical management of sacral chordomas. Spine (Phila Pa 1976). 2009 Nov 15;34(24):2700-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19910774
84. Ellenberg M. Development of urinary bladder dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med 1980 Feb;92(2 Pt 2):321-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7356222
85. Frimodt-Møller C. Diabetic cystopathy: epidemiology and related disorders. Ann Intern Med 1980 Feb;92:318-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7356221
86. Bradley WE. Diagnosis of urinary bladder dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. Ann Intern Med 1980 Feb;92(2 Pt 2):323-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7188844
87. Bilal N, Erdogan M, Ozbek M, et al. Increasing severity of cardiac autonomic neuropathy is associated with increasing prevalence of nephropathy, retinopathy, and peripheral neuropathy in Turkish type 2 diabetics. J Diabetes Complications. 2008 May-Jun;22(3):181-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18413163
88. Barter F, Tanner AR. Autonomic neuropathy in an alcoholic population. Postgrad Med J. 1987 Dec;63(746):1033-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3451229
89. Anonymous. Autonomic neuropathy in liver disease. Lancet 1989 Sep;2(8665):721-2. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2570966

90. Bloomer JR, Bonkovsky HL. The porphyrias. Dis Mon 1989 Jan;35(1):1-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2645098
91. Chapelon C, Ziza JM, Piette JC, et al. Neurosarcoidosis: signs, course and treatment in 35 confirmed cases. Medicine (Baltimore); 1990 Sep;69(5):261-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2205782
92. Chen PH, Hsueh HF, Hong CZ. Herpes zoster-associated voiding dysfunction: a retrospective study and literature review. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2002 Nov;83(11):1624-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12422336
93. Greenstein A, Matzkin H, Kaver I, et al. Acute urinary retention in herpes genitalis infection. Urodynamic evaluation. Urology 1988;31(5):453-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3363783
94. Grbavac Z, Gilja I, Gubarev N, et al. [Neurologic and urodynamic characteristics of patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome]. Lijec Vjesn 1989 Feb;111(1-2):17-20. [Article in Croatian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2739495
95. Sakakibara R, Hattori T, Kuwabara S, et al. Micturitional disturbance in patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1997 Nov;63(5):649-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9408108
96. Lichtenfeld P. Autonomic dysfunction in the Guillain-Barré syndrome. Am J Med 1971 Jun;50(6): 772-80. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5089852
97. Sakakibara R, Uchiyama T, Yoshiyama M, et al. Urinary dysfunction in patients with systemic lupus erythematosis. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(6):593-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12951670
98. Min JK, Byun JY, Lee SH, et al. Urinary bladder involvement in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus: with review of the literature. Korean J Intern Med 2000 Jan;15(1):42-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10714091
99. Andrade MJ. Lower urinary tract dysfunction in familial amyloidotic polyneuropathy, Portuguese type. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(1):26-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19089892
100. Gyrtrup HJ, Kristiansen VB, Zachariae CO, et al. Voiding problems in patients with HIV infection and AIDS. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1995 Sep;29(3):295-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8578272
101. Khan Z, Singh VK, Yang WC. Neurologic bladder in acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). Urology 1992 Sep;40(3):289-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1523760
102. Mardirosoff C, Dumont L. Bowel and bladder dysfunction after spinal bupivacaine. Anesthesiology 2001 Nov; 95(5):1306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11685017
103. Auroy Y, Benhamou D, Bargues L, et al. Major complications of regional anesthesia in France: The SOS Regional Anesthesia Hotline Service. Anesthesiology 2002 Nov;97(5):1274-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12411815
104. Kennedy DJ, Dreyfuss P, Aprill CN, et al. Paraplegia following image-guided transforaminal lumbar spine epidural steroid injection: two case reports. Pain Med 2009 Nov;10(8):1389-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19863744
105. Pascual AM, Coret F, Casanova B, et al. Anterior lumbosacral polyradiculopathy after intrathecal administration of methotrexate. J Neurol Sci 2008 Apr 15;267(1-2):158-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17949753
106. Hollabaugh RS Jr, Steiner MS, Sellers KD, et al. Neuroanatomy of the pelvis: implications for colonic and rectal resection. Dis Colon Rectum 2000 Oct;43(10):1390-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11052516
107. Baumgarner GT, Miller HC. Genitourinary complications of abdominoperineal resection. South Med J 1976 Jul;69(7):875-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/941055
108. Eickenberg HU, Amin M, Klompus W, et al. Urologic complications following abdominoperineal resection. J Urol 1976 Feb;1152(2):180-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1249871
109. Pocard M, Zinzindohoue F, Haab F, et al. A prospective study of sexual and urinary function before and after total mesorectal excision with autonomic nerve preservation for rectal cancer. Surgery 2002 Apr;131(4):368-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11935125

110. Kim NK, Aahn TW, Park JK, et al. Assessment of sexual and voiding function after total mesorectal excision with pelvic autonomic nerve preservation in males with rectal cancer. Dis Colon Rectum 2002 Sep;45(9):1178-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352233
111. Parys BT, Woolfenden KA, Parsons KF. Bladder dysfunction after simple hysterectomy: urodynamic and neurological evaluation. Eur Urol 1990;17(2):129-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2311638
112. Sekido N, Kawai K, Akaza H. Lower urinary tract dysfunction as persistent complication of radical hysterectomy. Int J Urol 1997 May;4(3):259-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9255663
113. Zanolla R, Monzeglio C, Campo B, et al. Bladder and urethral dysfunction after radical abdominal hysterectomy: rehabilitative treatment. J Surg Oncol 1985 Mar;28(3):190-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3974245
114. Seski JC, Diokno AC. Bladder dysfunction after radical abdominal hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1977 Jul;128(6):643-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18009
115. Lin HH, Sheu BC, Lo MC, et al. Abnormal urodynamic findings after radical hysterectomy or pelvic irradiation for cervical cancer. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 1998 Nov;63(2):169-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9856324
116. Kuwabara Y, Suzuki M, Hashimoto M, et al. New method to prevent bladder dysfunction after radical hysterectomy for uterine cervical cancer. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 2000 Feb;26(1):1-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10761323
117. Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, Wunderlich H, et al. A study of pelvic floor function pre- and postradical prostatectomy using clinical neurourological investigations, urodynamics and electromyography. Eur Urol 2000 Jan;37(1):72-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671789
118. Burgdörfer H, Heidler H, Madersbacher H, et al. [Guidelines for the urological management of paraplegic patients]. Urologe A 1998;37:222-8. [Article in German]
119. Stöhrer M, Goepel M, Kondo A, et al. The standardization of terminology in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction with suggestions for diagnostic procedures, Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(2):139-58. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081953
120. Wyndaele JJ, Castro D, Madersbacher H, et al. Neurologic urinary and faecal incontinence.
In: Abrams P, Cardozo L, Khoury S, Wein A, eds. *Incontinence*. Plymouth: Health Publications, 2005: 1061-2.
http://www.icsoffice.org/publications/ICI_3/v2.pdf/chap17.pdf
121. Consortium for Spinal Cord Medicine. Bladder management for adults with spinal cord injury: a clinical practice guideline for health-care providers. J Spinal Cord Med 2006;29(5):527-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17274492
122. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Fall M, et al. The standardisation of terminology of lower urinary tract function: Report from the Standardisation Sub-committee of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(2):167-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857671
123. Klevmark B. Natural pressure-volume curves and conventional cystometry. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1999;201:1-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10573769
124. Homma Y, Ando T, Yoshida M, et al. Voiding and incontinence frequencies: variability of diary data and required diary length. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):204-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948713
125. McGuire EJ, Cespedes RD, O'Connell HE. Leak-point pressures. Urol Clin North Am 1996 May;23(2): 253-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8659025

3. DIAGNOSIS

3.1 Introduction

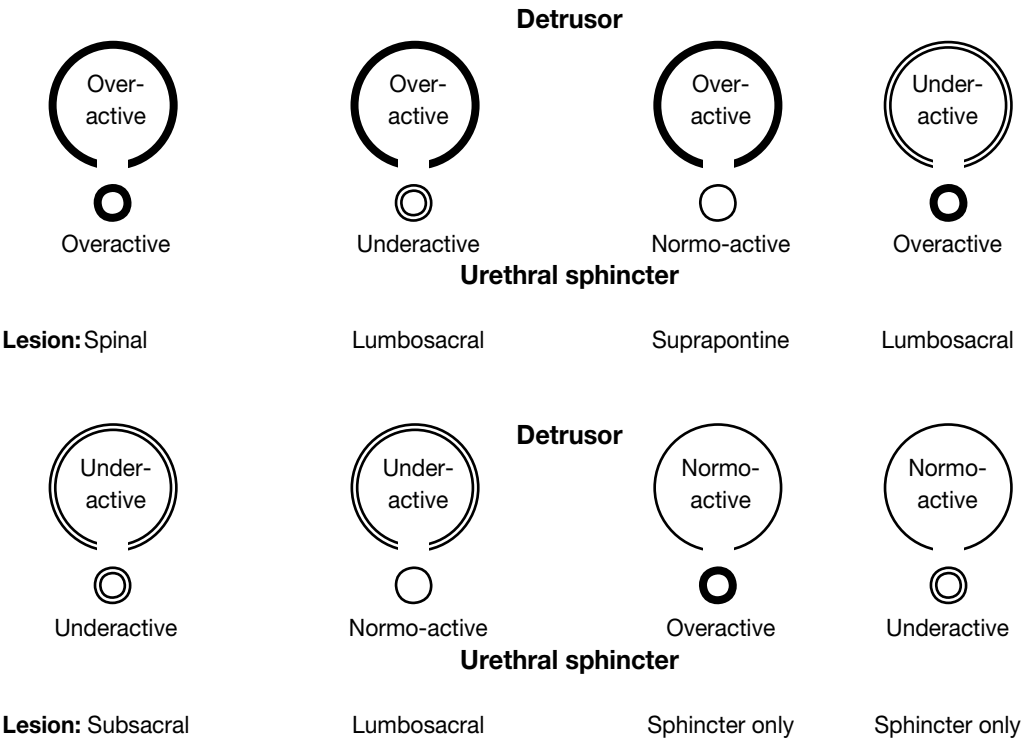
A thorough medical history and physical examination is mandatory, before any additional diagnostic investigations are planned. The clinical assessment of patients with NLUTD includes a detailed history, a

patient voiding diary and systematic physical examination. The initial evaluation is essential to determine the therapeutic scheme for long-term treatment and follow-up.

3.2 Classification

The NLUTD classification provides a standardised terminology. Several classification systems have been proposed. A simple classification focused on therapeutic consequences has been proposed by Madersbacher (1) (LE: 4). This classification describes several NLUTD symptoms on the basis of the contraction state of the bladder and external urethral sphincter during voiding and filling phase (Figure 1).

Figure 1: Madersbacher classification system with typical neurogenic lesions [1]



3.3 Timing of diagnosis and treatment

Early diagnosis and treatment are essential in both congenital and acquired NLUTD. Irreversible changes within the LUT may occur, even with normal neurological reflexes (2,3) (LE: 3). Additionally, NLUTD can be the presenting feature of neurological pathology (4,5) (LE: 3). Early intervention, e.g. intermittent catheterisation (IC), can prevent irreversible deterioration of the lower and upper urinary tract (6) (LE: 3).

3.4 Patient history

History taking is the cornerstone of evaluation and should include past and present symptoms and disorders. The patient's past history should be taken in detail, particularly in cases of non-traumatic neurological bladder dysfunction with a slow insidious onset. Occasionally, this is traceable to childhood or adolescence (7) (LE: 4). Urinary history consists of symptoms related to both storage and evacuation functions of the LUT.

Bowel history is important since patients with NLUTD may suffer from a related neurogenic condition of the lower gastrointestinal tract. This may reflect the neurological condition of the urinary bladder (7) (LE: 4). Sexual function may also be impaired because of the neurogenic condition.

Table 5 gives an overview of the items that should be assessed. These items are important to guide the decision process of diagnostic investigations and treatment options.

Special attention should be paid to possible warning signs and symptoms (e.g. pain, infection, haematuria and fever) that warrant further investigation. However, it is usually difficult for patients with SCI to report accurately symptoms related to urinary tract infections (8-10) (LE: 3).

Table 5: History examination in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction*	
Past history	
	Childhood – adolescence – adult
	Hereditary or familial risk factors
	Menarche (age)*; may suggest metabolic disorder*
	Obstetric history
	History of diabetes; *in some cases correction will resolve the neurological problem*
	Diseases, *e.g. syphilis, Parkinsonism, multiple sclerosis, encephalitis*
	Accidents and operations, *especially those involving the spine and central nervous system*
Present history	
	Present medication
	Lifestyle (smoking, alcohol and drugs); *may influence bowel and urinary function*
	Quality of life
	Life expectancy
Specific urinary history	
	Onset urological history
	Relief after voiding; *to detect the extent of a neurological lesion in the absence of obstructive uropathy*
	Bladder sensation
	Initiation of micturition *(normal, precipitate, reflex, strain, Credé)*
	Interruption of micturition *(normal, paradoxical, passive)*
	Enuresis
	Mode and type of voiding (catheterisation)
	Urinary diary*; (semi)objective information about number of voids, day- and night-time voiding frequency, volumes voided, incontinence, urge episodes*
Bowel history	
	Frequency and faecal incontinence
	Desire to defecate
	Defecation pattern
	Rectal sensation
	Initiation of defecation *(digital rectal stimulation)*
Sexual history	
	Genital or sexual dysfunction symptoms
	Sensation in genital area
	Specific male: erection, (lack of) orgasm, ejaculation
	Specific female: dyspareunia, (lack of) orgasm
Neurological history	
	Acquired or congenital neurological condition
	Mental status and comprehension
	Neurological symptoms (somatic and sensory), with onset, evolution and any treatment
	Spasticity or autonomic dysreflexia (lesion above level Th 6) Mobility and hand function

** Extracted from Bors and Turner ([7] (LE: 4; GR: C) and Stöhrer, et al. [11] (LE: 4; GR: C).*

Voiding diaries offer information on the number of voids, volumes voided, incontinence, and urge episodes. A 24-hour voiding diary was shown to be reliable in women with urinary incontinence (12,13) (LE: 3). However, no such information is available in patients with neurological incontinence. The voiding diary is also useful in patients performing intermittent catheterisation (11) (LE: 4).

3.5 Physical examination

In addition to a detailed patient history and a general examination, attention should be paid to possible physical and mental handicaps with respect to the planned investigation.

Neurological status should be described as completely as possible (Table 4). Patients with very high neurological lesions may suffer from a significant drop in blood pressure when moved in a sitting or standing position. All sensations and reflexes in the urogenital area must be tested. Furthermore, detailed testing of the anal sphincter and pelvic floor functions must be performed (Figure 2). Availability of this clinical information is essential for the reliable interpretation of subsequent diagnostic investigations.

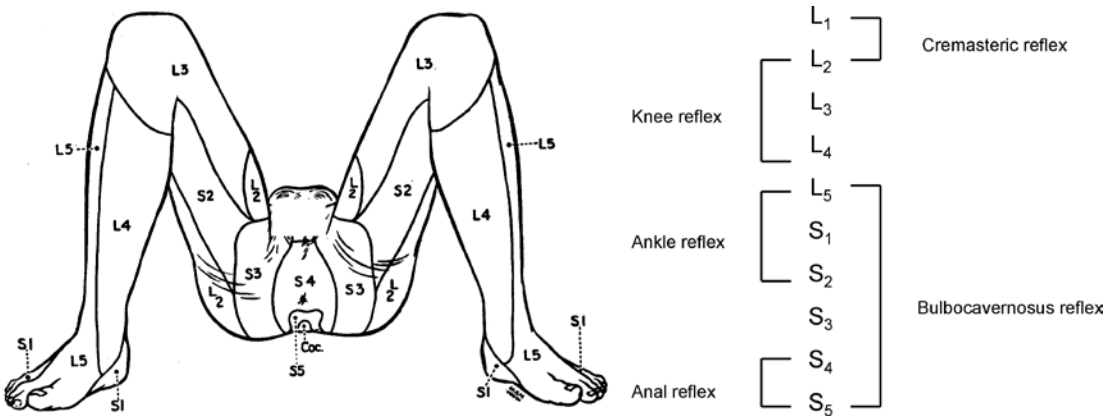


Figure 2: The neurological status of a patient with neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD) must be described as completely as possible: (a) dermatomes of spinal cord levels L2-S4; (b) urogenital and other reflexes in the lower spinal cord

Table 6: Neuro-urological items to be specified*

Sensations S2-S5 (both sides)	
	Presence (increased/normal/reduced/absent)
	Type (sharp/blunt)
	Afflicted segments
Reflexes (increased/normal/reduced/absent)	
	Bulbocavernous reflex
	Perianal reflex
	Knee and ankle reflexes
	Plantar responses (Babinski)
Anal sphincter tone	
	Presence (increased/normal/reduced/absent)
	Voluntary contractions of anal sphincter and pelvic muscles (increased/normal/reduced/absent)
Prostate palpation	
Descensus (prolapse) of pelvic organs	

**From Stöhrer, et al. [11] (LE: 4; GR: C).*

Caution

Autonomic dysreflexia (AD) is a sudden and exaggerated autonomic response to stimuli in patients with spinal cord injuries or dysfunction above level Th 5–Th 6. Hypertension is a relatively common manifestation of AD and can have life-threatening results if not properly managed (14-16) (LE: 3; GR: C).

3.5.1 *Recommendations for history taking and physical examination**

History taking	GR
An extensive general history is mandatory, concentrating on past and present symptoms and conditions for urinary, bowel, sexual, and neurological functions, and on general conditions that might impair any of these.	A
Special attention should be paid to the possible existence of alarm signs, such as pain, infection, haematuria, fever, etc, that warrant further specific diagnosis.	A
A specific history should be taken for each of the four mentioned	A
Physical examination	A
Individual patient handicaps should be acknowledged in planning further investigations.	A
The neurological status should be described as completely as possible. Sensations and reflexes in the urogenital area must all be tested.	A
The anal sphincter and pelvic floor functions must be tested extensively.	A
Urinalysis, blood chemistry, voiding diary, residual and free flowmetry, incontinence quantification and urinary tract imaging should be performed.	A

** All grade A recommendations based on panel consensus.*

3.6 Urodynamics

3.6.1 *Introduction*

Urodynamic investigation is the only method that can objectively assess the (dys-)function of the LUT. It is essential to describe the LUT status in patients with NLUTD.
In these patients, particularly when DO might be present, the invasive urodynamic investigation is even more provocative than in other patients. Any technical source of artefacts must be critically considered. The quality of the urodynamic recording and its interpretation must be ensured (17).
In patients at risk for autonomic dysreflexia, it is advisable to measure blood pressure during the urodynamic study.

In many patients with NLUTD, it may be helpful to assess the maximum anaesthetic bladder capacity. The rectal ampulla should be empty of stool before the start of the investigation. Drugs that influence the LUT function should be stopped at least 48 hours before the investigation (if feasible) or otherwise be considered when interpreting the data obtained.

All urodynamic findings must be reported in detail and performed according to the ICS technical recommendations and standards (17-19).

3.6.2 *Urodynamic tests*

A bladder diary is a semi-objective qualification of the LUT. It is a highly advisable diagnostic tool. For reliable interpretation, it should be recorded over at least 2-3 days (18,20). Possible pathological findings: high voiding frequency, very low or very high voided volumes, nocturnal voidings, urgency, incontinence.

Free uroflowmetry and assessment of residual urine gives a first impression of the voiding function. It is mandatory before planning any invasive urodynamics. For reliable information, it should be repeated at least 2-3 times (18,21,22). Possible pathological findings: low flow rate, low voided volume, intermittent flow, hesitancy, residual urine.

Care must be taken when assessing the results in patients who are not able to void in a normal position. Both the flow pattern and the flow rate may be modified by inappropriate positions and by any constructions to divert the flow.

Filling cystometry: The only method to quantify the filling function has limited significance as a solitary procedure. It is much more powerful if combined with bladder pressure measurement during micturition and even more in video-urodynamics. This investigation is necessary to document the status of the LUT function during the filling phase. The bladder should be empty at the start of filling. A physiological filling rate should be used with body-warm saline, as fast filling and room-temperature saline are provocative (18).

Possible pathological findings include DO, low detrusor compliance, abnormal bladder and other sensations, incontinence, incompetent or relaxing urethra.

Detrusor leak point pressure (DLPP): This specific investigation may estimate the risk for the upper urinary tract or for secondary bladder damage (18,23). The DLPP is a screening test only, because it gives no impression of

the duration of the high pressure during the filling phase, which can be expected to have even more impact on the upper urinary tract (24). A high DLPP thus warrants further testing by video-urodynamics.

Pressure flow study: This measurement reflects the co-ordination between detrusor and urethra or pelvic floor during the voiding phase. It is even more powerful in combination with filling cystometry and with video urodynamics. It is necessary to document the function of the LUT function during the voiding phase. Possible pathological findings: Detrusor underactivity/acontractility, DSD, non-relaxing urethra, residual urine.

Most types of obstruction caused by NLUTD are due to DSD (25,26), non-relaxing urethra, or nonrelaxing bladder neck (18,27,28). Pressure-flow analysis mostly assesses the amount of mechanical obstruction caused by the urethra's inherent mechanical and anatomical properties and has limited value in patients with NLUTD.

Electromyography (EMG): Registration of the activity of the external urethral sphincter, the peri-urethral striated musculature, the anal sphincter, or the striated pelvic floor muscles. The correct interpretation may be difficult due to artefacts introduced by other equipment used. In the urodynamic setting an EMG is useful as a gross indication of the patient's ability to control the pelvic floor. Possible pathological findings: Inadequate recruitment on specific stimuli (bladder filling, hyperreflexive contractions, onset of voiding, coughing, Valsalva, etc.). More detailed analysis (motor unit potentials, single-fibre EMG) is only possible as part of a neurophysiological investigation.

Urethral pressure measurement: This investigation has only a very limited place in NLUTD. There exists no basic consensus on parameters indicating pathological findings (29).

Video-urodynamics: This combination of filling cystometry and pressure flow study with imaging is the gold standard for urodynamic investigation in NLUTD (18,30,31). Possible pathological findings: All as described under cystometry and pressure flow study, plus morphological pathology of the LUT and the upper urinary tract.

Ambulatory urodynamics: Functional investigation of the urinary tract utilising predominantly natural filling of theurinary tract and reproducing normal subject activity (32).

This type of study should be considered when office urodynamics do not reproduce the patient's symptoms and complaints. Possible pathological findings include those found under filling cystometry and pressure flow study, provided the flow is measured also. It should be kept in mind that during this study the actual bladder volume is unknown.

Provocative tests during urodynamics: The LUT function can be provoked by coughing, triggered voiding, or anal stretch.

Fast-filling cystometry with cooled saline (the 'ice water test') is considered a discriminative test between upper motor neuron lesion (UMNL) and lower motor neuron lesion (LMNL) (33-38). Patients with UMNL will develop a detrusor contraction if the detrusor muscle is intact, while patients with lower lesions will not. The test gives false-positive results in young children (35) and does not seem to be fully discriminative in other patients (36,37).

It was thought that a positive bethanechol test (39) (detrusor contraction > 25 cm H_2O) provided proof of a detrusor denervation hypersensitivity and the muscular integrity of an acontractile detrusor; however, in practice, the test has given equivocal results. Recently, a variation of this method was reported using intravesical electromotive administration of the bethanechol (40); this test turned out to be both selective and predictive for successful oral bethanechol treatment.

3.6.3 ***Specific uro-neurophysiological tests***

These tests are advised as part of the neurological work-up of the patient. They comprise:

- EMG (in a neurophysiological setting) of pelvic floor muscles, urethral sphincter and/or anal sphincter;
- nerve conduction studies of pudendal nerve;
- reflex latency measurements of bulbocavernosus and anal reflex arcs;
- evoked responses from clitoris or glans penis;
- sensory testing on bladder and urethra.

Other elective tests may be asked for specific conditions that became obvious during patient work-up and urodynamic investigations. Possible pathological findings are dependent on the type of the test.

3.6.4 *Recommendations for urodynamics and uro-neurophysiology*

Recommendations	GR
Urodynamic investigation is necessary to document the (dys-)function of the LUT.	A
The recording of a bladder diary is advisable.	B
Non-invasive testing is mandatory before invasive urodynamics is planned.	A
Video-urodynamics is the gold standard for invasive urodynamics in patients with NLUTD. If this is available, then a filling cystometry continuing into a pressure flow study should be performed.	A
A physiological filling rate and body-warm saline must be used.	A
Specific uro-neurophysiological tests are elective procedures.	C

3.7 *Typical manifestations of neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction*

Typical findings in NLUTD are listed below:

Filling phase

- hyposensitivity or hypersensitivity;
- vegetative sensations;
- low compliance;
- high capacity bladder;
- detrusor overactivity, spontaneous or provoked;
- sphincter acontractility.

Voiding phase

- detrusor acontractility;
- dsd;
- non-relaxing urethra;
- non-relaxing bladder neck.

These signs warrant further neurological evaluation, as LUTD may be the presenting symptom of NLUTD (41-45).

3.8 References

1. Madersbacher H. The various types of neurogenic bladder dysfunction: an update of current therapeutic concepts. Paraplegia 1990 May;28(4):217-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2235029
2. Satar N, Bauer SB, Shefner J, et al. The effects of delayed diagnosis and treatment in patients with an occult spinal dysraphism. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 2):754-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609171
3. Watanabe T, Vaccaro AR, Kumon H, et al. High incidence of occult neurogenic bladder dysfunction in neurologically intact patients with thoracolumbar spinal injuries. J Urol. 1998 Mar;159(3):965-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474194
4. Bemelmans BL, Hommes OR, Van Kerrebroeck PE, et al. Evidence for early lower urinary tract dysfunction in clinically silent multiple sclerosis. J Urol. 1991 Jun;145(6):1219-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2033697
5. Ahlberg J, Edlund C, Wikkelsö C, et al. Neurological signs are common in patients with urodynamically verified “idiopathic” bladder overactivity. Neurourol Urodyn. 2002;21(1):65-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11835426
6. Weld KJ, Graney MJ, Dmochowski RR. Differences in bladder compliance with time and associations of bladder management with compliance in spinal cord injured patients. J Urol. 2000 Apr;163(4): 1228-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737503
7. Bors E, Turner RD. History and physical examination in neurological urology. J Urol. 1960 May;83: 759-67. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13802958
8. Jayawardena V, Midha M. Significance of bacteriuria in neurogenic bladder. J Spinal Cord Med 2004;27(2):102-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15162878
9. Massa LM, Hoffman JM, Cardenas DD. Validity, accuracy, and predictive value of urinary tract infection signs and symptoms in individuals with spinal cord injury on intermittent catheterization. J Spinal Cord Med 2009;32(5):568-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025153

10. Linsenmeyer TA, Oakley A. Accuracy of individuals with spinal cord injury at predicting urinary tract infections based on their symptoms. J Spinal Cord Med 2003 Winter;26(4):352-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14992336
11. Stöhrer M, Goepel M, Kondo A, et al. The standardization of terminology in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction: with suggestions for diagnostic procedures. International Continence Society Standardization Committee. Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(2):139-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081953
12. Naoemova I, De Wachter S, Wuyts FL, et al. Reliability of the 24-h sensation-related bladder diary in women with urinary incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2008 Jul;19(7):955-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18235981
13. Honjo, H, Kawauchi A, Nakao M, et al. Impact of convenience void in a bladder diary with urinary perception grade to assess overactive bladder symptoms: a community-based study. Neurourol Urodyn 2010 Sep;29(7):1286-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20878998
14. Braddom RL, Rocco JF. Autonomic dysreflexia. A survey of current treatment. Am J Phys Med Rehabil 1991 Oct;70(5):234-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1910647
15. Silver JR. Early autonomic dysreflexia. Spinal Cord 2000 Apr;38(4):229-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10822393
16. Assadi F, Czech K, Palmisano JL. Autonomic dysreflexia manifested by severe hypertension. Med Sci Monit 2004 Dec;10(12):CS77-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15567988
17. Schurch B. The predictive value of plantar flexion of the toes in the assessment of neuropathic voiding disorders in patients with spine lesions at the thoracolumbar level. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999 Jun;80(6):681-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10378495
18. Stöhrer M, Goepel M, Kondo A, et al. The standardization of terminology in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction with suggestions for diagnostic procedures. International Continence Society Standardization Committee. Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(2):139-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081953
19. Ochoa B. Can a congenital dysfunctional bladder be diagnosed from a smile? The Ochoa syndrome updated. Pediatr Nephrol 2004 Jan;19(1):6-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14648341
20. Reynard JM, Peters TJ, Lim C, et al. The value of multiple free-flow studies in men with lower Urinary tract symptoms. Br J Urol 1996 Jun;77(6):813-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8705213
21. Weld KJ, Dmochowski RR. Association of level of injury and bladder behavior in patients with post-traumatic spinal cord injury. Urology 2000 Apr;55(4):490-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10736489
22. Schurch B, Schmid DM, Kaegi K. Value of sensory examination in predicting bladder function in patients with T12-L1 fractures and spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2003 Jan;84(1):83-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12589626
23. Sonke GS, Kiemeney LA, Verbeek AL, et al. Low reproducibility of maximum urinary flow rate determined by portable flowmetry. Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(3):183-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10338438
24. Schäfer W, Abrams P, Liao L, et al. International Continence Society. Good urodynamic practices: uroflowmetry, filling cystometry, and pressure-flow studies. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):261-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948720
25. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Fall M, et al. The standardisation of terminology of lower urinary tract function: report from the Standardisation Sub-committee of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(2):167-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11857671
26. Homma Y, Ando T, Yoshida M, et al. Voiding and incontinence frequencies: variability of diary data and required diary length. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):204-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948713
27. McGuire EJ, Cespedes RD, O'Connell HE. Leak-point pressures. Urol Clin North Am 1996 May;23(2): 253-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8659025

28. Linsenmeyer TA, Bagaria SP, Gendron B. The impact of urodynamic parameters on the upper tracts of spinal cord injured men who void reflexly. J Spinal Cord Med 1998 Jan;21(1):15-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9541882
29. Krongrad A, Sotolongo JR Jr. Bladder neck dysynergia in spinal cord injury. Am J Phys Med Rehabil 1996 May-Jun;75(3):204-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8663928
30. Weld KJ, Graney MJ, Dmochowski RR. Clinical significance of detrusor sphincter dyssynergia type in patients with post-traumatic spinal cord injury. Urology 2000 Oct;56(4):565-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11018603
31. Rossier AB, Fam BA. 5-microtransducer catheter in evaluation of neurogenic bladder function. Urology 1986 Apr;27(4):371-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3962062
32. Al-Ali M, Haddad L. A 10 year review of the endoscopic treatment of 125 spinal cord injured patients with vesical outlet obstruction: does bladder neck dyssynergia exist? Paraplegia 1996 Jan;34(1): 34-38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8848321
33. Lose G, Griffiths D, Hosker G, et al. Standardization Sub-Committee, International Continence Society. Standardisation of urethral pressure measurement: report from the Standardisation Sub-Committee of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(3):258-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11948719
34. Rivas DA, Chancellor MB. Neurogenic vesical dysfunction. Urol Clin North Am 1995 Aug;22(3):579-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7645158
35. Madersbacher HG. Neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Curr Opin Urol 1999 Jul;9(4):303-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10459465
36. van Waalwijk van Doorn E, Anders K, Khullar V, et al. Standardisation of ambulatory urodynamic monitoring: report of the Standardisation Sub- Committee of the International Continence Society for Ambulatory Urodynamic Studies. Neurourol Urodyn 2000;19(2):113-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10679828
37. Geirsson G, Fall M, Lindström S. The ice-water test–a simple and valuable supplement to routine cystometry. Br J Urol 1993 Jun;71(6):681-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8343894
38. Geirsson G, Lindström S, Fall M. Pressure, volume and infusion speed criteria for the ice-water test. Br J Urol 1994 May;73(5):498-503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8012770
39. Geirsson G, Lindström S, Fall M, et al. Positive bladder cooling test in neurologically normal young children. J Urol 1994 Feb;151(2):446-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8283555
40. Petersen T, Chandiramani V, Fowler CJ. The ice-water test in detrusor hyper-reflexia and bladder instability. Br J Urol 1997 Feb;79(2):163-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9052463
41. Chancellor MB, Lavelle J, Ozawa H, et al. Ice-water test in the urodynamic evaluation of spinal cord injured patients. Tech Urol 1998 Jun;4(2):87-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9623622
42. Ronzoni G, Menchinelli P, Manca A, et al. The ice-water test in the diagnosis and treatment of the neurogenic bladder. Br J Urol 1997 May;79(5):698-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158504
43. Lapides J. Neurogenic bladder. Principles of treatment. Urol Clin North Am 1974 Feb;1(1):81-97. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4428540
44. Riedl CR, Stephen RL, Daha LK, et al. Electromotive administration of intravesical bethanechol and the clinical impact on acontractile detrusor management: introduction of a new test. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):2108-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061937
45. Bemelmans BL, Hommes OR, Van Kerrebroeck PE, et al. Evidence for early lower urinary tract dysfunction in clinically silent multiple sclerosis. J Urol 1991 Jun;145(6):1219-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2033697

4. TREATMENT

4.1 Introduction

The primary aims for treatment of NLUTD and their priorities are (1-4):

1. Protection of the upper urinary tract;
2. Improvement of urinary continence;
3. Restoration of (parts of) the LUT function;
4. Improvement of the patient's QoL.

Further considerations are the patient's disability, cost-effectiveness, technical complexity, and possible complications (4).

Preservation of the upper tract function is of paramount importance (1-7). Renal failure was the main factor for mortality in the SCI patient surviving the trauma (5-7). This has led to the golden rule in treatment of NLUTD: ensure that the detrusor pressure remains within safe limits during both the filling phase and the voiding phase (1-4). This approach has indeed significantly reduced the mortality from urological causes in this patient group (8).

The therapy of urinary incontinence is important for social rehabilitation of the patient and thus contributes substantially to the QoL. It is also pivotal in preventing UTI (6,7). If complete continence cannot be achieved, methods to attain a socially acceptable control of incontinence can be used.

The patient's QoL is an essential part of any treatment decision.

In patients with high detrusor pressure during the filling phase (DO, low detrusor compliance) or during the voiding phase (DSD, other causes of bladder outlet obstruction), treatment is aimed primarily at 'conversion of an active, aggressive high-pressure bladder into a passive low-pressure reservoir' despite the resulting residual urine (1).

4.2 Non-invasive conservative treatment

*4.2.1 **Assisted bladder emptying***

Incomplete bladder emptying is a serious risk factor for UTI, developing a high intravesical pressure during the filling phase, and incontinence. Methods to improve the voiding process are practised in patients with NLUTD.

Third party bladder expression (Credé): Regretfully, this method is still applied, foremost in infants and young children with myelomeningocele and sometimes in tetraplegics. Because of the high pressures that may be created during this procedure, it is potentially hazardous for the urinary tract (9).

Voiding by abdominal straining (Valsalva): The considerations mentioned under Credé above also apply to the Valsalva manoeuvre (1,9-11). For both methods of emptying, long-term complications are hardly avoidable (9,10) and the already weak pelvic floor function may be further impaired, thus exacerbating the existing incontinence (11).

Triggered reflex voiding: Stimulation of the sacral or lumbar dermatomes in patients with UMNL can elicit reflex contraction of the detrusor (1,11). Morbidity occurs more often during the first decades of treatment (12-16). Strict urodynamic control is therefore required (1,11).

Behavioural modification techniques: These are used to improve continence and include prompted voiding, timed voiding (bladder training), and lifestyle modification (17-20).

Pelvic floor muscle exercises: These aim to improve continence. They may be helpful in selected patients with NLUTD (21-23).

Biofeedback: This method can be used for supporting the voiding pattern modification (24,25).

*4.2.2 **Lower urinary tract rehabilitation***

4.2.2.1 Bladder rehabilitation including electrical stimulation

4.2.2.1.1 Introduction

The term bladder rehabilitation summarises treatment options that aim to re-establish bladder function in patients with NLUTD. Regaining voluntary control over LUTD has been described in individuals with non-neurogenic bladder dysfunction, using behavioural treatment in patients with urge incontinence and biofeedback training for stress urinary incontinence. However, evidence for bladder rehabilitation using electrical stimulation in neurogenic patients is lacking and mainly based on pilot studies with small patient numbers.

A strong contraction of the urethral sphincter and/or pelvic floor, but also anal dilatation, manipulation of the genital region, and physical activity reflexly inhibit the micturition (11,26). Whereas the first mechanism is affected by activation of efferent fibres, the latter ones are produced by activation of afferents (14). Electrical stimulation of the pudendal nerve afferents produces a strong inhibition of the micturition reflex and of the detrusor contraction (27). This stimulation might then support the restoration of the balance between excitatoryand inhibitory inputs at the spinal or supraspinal level (11,28,29). It might also imply that patients with incomplete lesions will benefit (11,29,30), but patients with complete lesions will not (31).

4.2.2.1.2 Peripheral temporary electrostimulation
Posterior tibial nerve stimulation and external temporary electrical stimulation (e.g. penile/clitoral or intracavital) suppress neurogenic DO during acute stimulation (32). Both techniques have also demonstrated sustained prolonged effects (3 months and 1 year, respectively) in patients with neurogenic bladder dysfunction due to MS (33.34).

In MS patients, combining active neuromuscular electrical stimulation with pelvic floor muscle training and electromyography biofeedback achieved a substantial reduction of LUTD (35). Furthermore, this treatment combination was significantly superior ($p = 0.0028$) to electrostimulation alone.

Biofeedback: This method can be used for supporting the voiding pattern modification (24,25).

4.2.2.1.3 Intravesical electrostimulation
Intravesical electrostimulation can increase bladder capacity, improve bladder compliance as well as the sensation of bladder filling in patients with incomplete SCI or meningomyelocele (36). In patients with neurogenic detrusor hypocontractility, intravesical electrostimulation may also improve voiding and reduce residual urine volume (37).

4.2.2.1.4 Chronic peripheral pudendal stimulation
The results of a pilot study showed that chronic peripheral pudendal stimulation (chronic, defined as a period of 2 weeks) in patients with incomplete SCI produced significant neuromodulatory effects in the brain which led to changes in urodynamic parameters (38).

4.2.2.1.5 Repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation
Although repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation improved voiding symptoms in patients with PD or MS, the duration of the effect, stimulation parameters and the appropriate patient selection are still under investigation (39,40).

4.2.2.1.6 Summary
To date, bladder rehabilitation techniques are mainly based on electrical or magnetic stimulation. However, there is a lack of well-designed studies for all techniques. The different techniques of external temporary electrostimulation, possibly combined with biofeedback training, may be useful, especially in patients with MS or incomplete spinal cord injury. Further studies are necessary to evaluate the usefulness of these techniques.

4.2.3 ***Drug treatment***
A single, optimal, medical therapy for NLUTD is not yet available. Currently, a combination of therapies is the best way to maximise outcomes (41-50) (LE: 1a).

4.2.3.1 Antimuscarinic drugs
Antimuscarinic drugs are the first-line choice for treating NLUTD. They are the most useful medications available for NLUTD and provide an established approach to managing neurogenic detrusor overactivity (NDO) (41-47, 51-53) (LE: 1a). Previously, these drugs were known as ‘anticholinergic’, but they are now described as muscarinic receptor antagonists because of their action in binding to muscarinic receptors. Antimuscarinic drugs are used to stabilise the detrusor muscle, which reduces its overactivity and makes it moderately refractory to parasympathetic stimulation. This results in improved bladder compliance and reduced symptoms of overactive bladder (47,51), which in turn helps to prevent renal and bladder damage and potentially improve long-term outcomes (54) (LE: 1a).

Neurogenic patients may need a higher dose of antimuscarinic agents than patients with idiopathic DO (47,48,55-57) (LE: 1b). However, adverse events due to the higher dosage may lead to early discontinuation of therapy (19,21,56.58.59) (LE: 1b).

4.2.3.1.1 Choice of antimuscarinic agent

Oxybutynin chloride (47) (LE: 1a) (48-51,57-59), trospium chloride (47,55,56,60), tolterodine tartrate (61-63) and propiverine (47,58,64,65) (LE: 1a) are established, effective, medical treatments. These antimuscarinic agents are known to be well tolerated and safe, even during long-term treatment. They have diverse tolerance profiles, so that a different antimuscarinic agent may be prescribed if a patient experiences adverse effects or if the therapeutic effect is not sufficient (66).

Darifenacin has recently been evaluated in neurogenic overactive bladder secondary to MS (67,68), with results similar to other muscarinic drugs. Solifenacin has also been introduced, even though to date there has been no published clinical evidence of the use of solifenacin in NDO. Data is awaited from an ongoing trial.

4.2.3.1.1.1 Side effects

Antimuscarinic agents have some minor side-effects, e.g. dry mouth. It has been suggested that different ways of administration may help to reduce side effects. In a selected group of patients, transdermal oxybutynin was found to be well tolerated and effective (69,70), while intravesical oxybutynin led to abolishment of the bladder-cooling reflex (71). However, further research is needed into the use of alternative methods of administration, particularly long-term results (LE: 2a).

4.2.3.2 Other agents

4.2.3.2.1 Phosphodiesterase inhibitors (PDE5I)

These have demonstrated significant effects upon DO in pilot studies and in the future may become an alternative or adjunct to antimuscarinic treatment (72).

4.2.3.3 Adjunct desmopressin

Additional treatment with desmopressin might improve the efficacy of treatment (73-75) (LE: 3).

4.2.3.4 Drugs with different mechanisms of action

4.2.3.4.1 Detrusor underactivity

Cholinergic drugs, such as bethanechol chloride and distigmine bromide, have been considered to enhance detrusor contractility and promote bladder emptying, but are not routinely used in clinical practice. The available studies do not support the use of parasympathomimetic agents, especially when frequent and/or serious possible side-effects are considered (76) (LE: 1a).

Combination therapy with an antimuscarinicdrug and alpha-blocker appears to be more useful than monotherapy with either agent (77). In conclusion, there is no drug with evidence of efficacy for underactive detrusor (11,78-81) (LE: 2a).

4.2.3.4.2 Decreasing bladder outlet resistance

Alpha-blockers (non-selective and selective) have been partially successful for decreasing bladder outlet resistance, residual urine and autonomic dysreflexia (11,82-86) (LE: 2a).

4.2.3.4.3 Increasing bladder outlet resistance

Several drugs have shown efficacy in selected cases of mild stress urinary incontinence, but there have been very few publications in patients with NLUTD (11,87).

4.2.3.4.4 Conclusions and recommendations on drug treatments

Conclusions	**LE**
Long-term efficacy and safety of antimuscarinic therapy for NDO is well documented.	1a
A combination of antimuscarinic agents is now used more frequently and is often considered to maximise outcomes for NDO.	1a
Alternative ways of administration of antimuscarinic agents, such as transdermally and intravescically, should now be considered.	2a
There is no drug with evidence of efficacy for underactive detrusor.	2a
Alpha-blockers have been partly successful in decreasing bladder outlet resistance and autonomic dysreflexia prophylaxis in spinal cord injury.	2a
There is a lack of prospective, randomised, controlled studies in the medical management of NLUTD.	

Recommendations on drug treatments	GR
Antimuscarinic therapy for NDO is effective and safe to use, including long term.	A
Outcomes for NDO can be maximised by considering a combination of antimuscarinic agents.	A
Alternative ways of administration of antimuscarinic agents, such as transdermally and intravescically, should be considered with the aim of reducing side effects.	B
Alpha-blockers may help to decrease bladder outlet resistance and may be a preventive measure in spinal cord injury to prevent autonomic dysreflexia.	B

*4.2.4 **External appliances***

As an ultimate remedy, social continence may be achieved by collecting urine during incontinence (1,11). Condom catheters with urine collection devices are a practical method for men. Otherwise, incontinence pads may offer a reliable solution. In both cases, the infection risk must be closely observed (11). Because of the risk of developing high intravesical pressure, the penile clamp is absolutely contraindicated.

*4.2.5 **Statements & guidelines on non-invasive conservative treatment***

Statements	LE
The first aim of any therapy is the protection of the upper urinary tract.	1
A condom catheter or pads may reduce urinary incontinence to a socially acceptable situation.	

Recommendations	GR
The mainstay of treatment for overactive detrusor is anticholinergic drug therapy.	A
Lower urinary tract rehabilitation may be effective in selected cases (patients that do not suffer from a complete spinal cord lesion).	
Any method of assisted bladder emptying should be used with the greatest caution.	A

4.3 Minimal invasive treatment

*4.3.1 **Catheterisation***

Intermittent self- or third-party catheterisation (88,89) is the gold standard for the management of NLUTD (1,11). It is effective in patients with:

- Detrusor underactivity or acontractility (1).
- With DO, provided the overactivity can be controlled (1,11,90-95).

Sterile IC, as originally proposed by Guttmann and Frankel (67), significantly reduces the risk of UTI and/or bacteriuria (1,11,96,97), compared with clean IC introduced by Lapides, et al. (89). However, it cannot be considered a routine procedure (11,97). Aseptic IC is an alternative (1,98), which provides a significant benefit in reducing the potential for external contamination of an intermittent urinary catheter (99). Insufficient patient education and the inherent greater risk of UTI in patients with NLUTD are contributing factors (11,100-104).

The average frequency of catheterisations per day is 4-6 times and the catheter size should be 12-14 Fr.

Less frequent catheterisation results in higher catheterisation volumes and a higher risk of UTI (1,100-103). More frequent catheterisation increases the risk of cross-infections and other complications (1,100-103).

Bladder volume at catheterisation should be lower than 400 mL.

The prevalence of complications can be limited by adequate patient education, use of nontraumatising techniques and adequate precautions to prevent infections (11,104).

Indwelling transurethral catheterisation and, to a lesser extent, suprapubic cystostomy are significant and early risk factors for UTI and other complications (11,16,105-114). Silicone catheters are preferred because they are less susceptible to encrustation and because of the high incidence of latex allergy in the NLUTD population.

4.3.2 ***Recommendations for catheterisation***

Recommendations	GR
Intermittent catheterisation is the standard treatment for patients who are unable to empty their bladder.	A
Patients should be well instructed in the technique and risks of IC.	
Aseptic IC is the method of choice.	B
The catheter size should be 12-14 Fr.	B
The frequency of IC is 4-6 times per day.	B
The bladder volume should remain below 400.	B
Indwelling transurethral and suprapubic catheterisation should be used only exceptionally, under close control, and the catheter should be changed frequently. Silicone catheters are preferred and should be changed every 2-4 weeks, while (coated) latex catheters need to be changed every 1-2 weeks.	A

4.3.3 ***Intravesical drug treatment***

To reduce DO, anticholinergics can also be applied intravesically (115-121). This approach may reduce adverse effects because the anticholinergic drug is metabolised differently (119) and a greater amount is sequestered in the bladder, even more than with electromotive administration (120,121).

The vanilloids, capsaicin and resiniferatoxin, desensitise the C-fibres and thereby decrease DO for a period of a few months until the sensation of these fibres has been restored (122-127).
The dosage is 1-2 mMol capsaicin in 100 mL 30% alcohol, or 10-100 nMol resiniferatoxin in 100 mL 10% alcohol for 30 minutes. Resiniferatoxin has about a 1,000-fold potency compared to capsaicin, with less pain during the instillation, and is effective in patients refractory to capsaicin. Clinical studies have shown that resiniferatoxin has limited clinical efficacy compared to botulinum toxin A injections in the detrusor (127).

4.3.4 ***Intravesical electrostimulation***

Intravesical electrostimulation (128) enhances the sensation for bladder filling and urge to void and may restore the volitional control of the detrusor (11,129,130). Daily stimulation sessions of 90 minutes with 10 mApulses of 2 ms duration at a frequency of 20 Hz (130,131) are used for at least 1 week (131). It appears that patients with peripheral lesions are the best candidates, that the detrusor muscle must be intact, and that at least some afferent connection between the detrusor and the brain must still be present (11,130,131). Also, the positioning of the stimulating electrodes and bladder filling are important parameters (132). With these precautions, the results in the literature are still not unequivocal: both positive (129,131,133,134) and negative (LE: 3) (135,136) results have been reported.

4.3.5 ***Botulinum toxin injections in the bladder***

Botulinum toxin causes a long-lasting but reversible chemical denervation that lasts for about 9 months (137-143). The toxin injections are mapped over the detrusor in a dosage that depends on the preparation used. Botulinum toxin A has been proven effective in a randomised placebo-controlled trial in NLUTD (144). Repeated injections seem to be possible without loss of efficacy (143,145,146). Generalised muscular weakness is an occasional adverse effect (141,143,146). Histological studies have not found ultrastructural changes after injection (147).

4.3.6 ***Bladder neck and urethral procedures***

Reduction of the bladder outlet resistance may be necessary to protect the upper urinary tract. This can be achieved by surgical interventions (bladder neck or sphincter incision or urethral stent) or by chemical denervation of the sphincter. Incontinence may result and can be managed by external devices (see Section 4.2.5).

Botulinum toxin sphincter injection can be used to treat detrusor sphincter dyssynergia effectively by injection in a dosage that depends on the preparation used. The dyssynergia is abolished for a few months, necessitating repeat injections. The efficacy of this treatment is high and there are few adverse effects (148-150).

Balloon dilatation: although favourable immediate results were reported (151), no further reports since 1994 have been found. Consequently, this method is no longer recommended.

Sphincterotomy: by staged incision, bladder outlet resistance can be reduced without completely losing the closure function of the urethra (1,11,144). The laser technique appears to be advantageous (1,152).

Sphincterotomy also needs to be repeated at regular intervals in a substantial proportion of patients (153), but is efficient and without severe adverse effects (1,9,151-154). Secondary narrowing of the bladder neck may occur, for which combined bladder neck incision might be considered (1,155).

Bladder neck incision: This is indicated only for secondary changes at the bladder neck (fibrosis) (1,9,152,155). When the detrusor is hypertrophied and causes thickening of the bladder neck, this procedure makes no sense (1).

Stents: Implantation of urethral stents causes the continence to be dependent on the adequate closure of the bladder neck only (1,4). Although the results are comparable with sphincterotomy and the stenting procedure has a shorter surgery time and reduced hospital stay (156,157), the costs (1) and possible complications or re-interventions (156,158,159) are limiting factors in its use.

Increasing bladder outlet resistance: This can improve the continence condition. Despite early positive results with urethral bulking agents, a relative early loss of continence is reported in patients with NLUTD (4,16,160-164).

Urethral inserts: Urethral plugs or valves for management of (female) stress incontinence have not been applied in patients with NLUTD. The experience with active pumping urethral prosthesis for treatment of the underactive or acontractile detrusor was disappointing (165).

4.3.7 ***Recommendations for minimal invasive treatment****

Recommendations	GR
Botulinum toxin injection in the detrusor is the most effective minimally invasive treatment to reduce neurogenic detrusor overactivity.	A
Sphincterotomy is the standard treatment for DSD.	A
Bladder neck incision is effective in a fibrotic bladder neck.	B

**Guidelines for catheterisation are listed separately under Section 4.3.2.*

4.4 Surgical treatment

4.4.1 ***Urethral and bladder neck procedures***

Increasing the bladder outlet resistance has the inherent risk of causing high intravesical pressure during the filling, which may become even higher during the voiding phase. Procedures to treat sphincteric incontinence are suitable only when the detrusor activity is, or can be, controlled, when no significant reflux is present.

Moreover, these procedures require the urethra and bladder neck to be in good condition and mostly result in intermittent catheterisation being performed after the procedure (4).

Urethral sling: Various materials have been used for this procedure with enduring positive results (4,166-179). The procedure is established in women; for men, the artificial sphincter is obviously the first choice (4).

Artificial urinary sphincter: This device has stood the test of time in patients with NLUTD (4). It was introduced by Light and Scott (180) for this patient group and the need for revisions (181) has decreased significantly with new generations of devices (172,182-185).

Functional sphincter augmentation: By transposing the gracilis muscle to the bladder neck (186) or to the proximal urethra (187), the possibility exists for creating a functional autologous sphincter by electrical stimulation (186,187). This would open the possibility of restoring control over the urethral closure.

Bladder neck and urethra reconstruction: The classical Young-Dees-Leadbetter (188) procedure for bladder neck reconstruction in children with bladder exstrophy and the Kropp urethral lengthening (189) improved by Salle (190) are established methods to restore continence provided that intermittent catheterisation is practiced and/or bladder augmentation is performed (172,181,189-200).

4.4.2 ***Detrusor myectomy (auto-augmentation)***

The idea of enlarging a shrunken bladder by removing lateral detrusor tissue to free the entrapped ureter in a non-functional fibrotic detrusor was put forward by Couvelaire (201). Since its clinical introduction by

Cartwright and Snow (202) in children and by Stöhrer (203) in adults, this procedure for reducing DO or improving low detrusor compliance has gained popularity because of its acceptable long-term results, its low surgical burden, its low rate of long-term adverse effects, its positive effect on the patient's QoL, and because it does not preclude further interventions (1,4,202-221).

The procedure is performed extraperitoneally under general anaesthesia and consists of the dissection of about 20% of the detrusor tissue around the umbilicus, leaving the mucosa intact (1,202,203). A diverticulum will develop, but this may take 1-2 years in adults (1,191,192). A laparoscopic procedure (205,209,213,222), covering of the mucosa at the detrusor defect (transperitoneal) (24,212,214,218), supporting the bladder (202,218), or simple incision of the detrusor muscle (detrusor myotomy) (220,221) are proposed variations of the procedure but offer no essential advantages.

*4.4.3 **Denervation, deafferentation, neurostimulation, neuromodulation***

Various procedures estimated to destroy the peripheral detrusor innervation have been abandoned because of poor long-term results and severe complications (4). These procedures include bladder distension, cystolysis, transvaginal denervation (Ingelman-Sundberg procedure) and subtrigonal phenol injections.

Sacral rhizotomy, also known as sacral deafferentation (SDAF), has achieved some success in reducing DO (16,223-227), but it is used nowadays mostly as an adjuvant to sacral anterior root stimulation (228-239). Alternatives for rhizotomy are sought in this treatment combination (240-242).

Sacral anterior root stimulation (SARS) is aimed at producing a detrusor contraction. The technique was developed by Brindley (243) and is applicable only in complete lesions above the implant location because of its stimulation amplitude over the pain threshold. The urethral sphincter efferents are also stimulated, but as the striated muscle relaxes faster than the smooth muscle of the detrusor, a so-called 'post-stimulus voiding' will occur. This approach has been successful in highly selected patients (228-239). By changing the stimulation parameters, this method can also induce defecation or erection.

The sacral nerve stimulation or sacral neuromodulation is based on the research by Schmidt and Tanagho (244). This technique stimulates the afferents and thereby probably restores the correct balance between excitatory and inhibitory impulses from and to the pelvic organs at a sacral and supra-sacral level, thus reducing the DO (28,245). It is used either as a temporary procedure using foramen electrodes with an external stimulator, with the expectation that the changes will persevere after treatment, or as a chronic procedure with an implanted stimulator. In the latter case, a test procedure, the percutaneous nerve evaluation (PNE), with an external stimulator is performed before the implant to judge the patient's response. This procedure also has considerable success in selected patients (210,246-250).

On the basis of the successful application of these systems, future developments towards a device that may be more integrated in the body are under research (251).

*4.4.4 **Bladder covering by striated muscle***

When the bladder is covered by a (part of) striated muscle that can be stimulated electrically, or ideally could be contracted volitionally, an acontractile bladder could be restored to perform a voiding function. The rectus abdominis (252) and the latissimus dorsi (253) have been used successfully in patients with NLUTD.

*4.4.5 **Bladder augmentation or substitution***

Replacing or expanding the bladder by intestine or other passive expandable coverage will reduce detrusor compliance and at least reduce the pressure effect of DO. The inherent complications associated with these procedures include recurrent infection, stone building, perforation or diverticula, possible malignant changes, and for intestine metabolic abnormality, mucus production and impaired bowel function (4,254-256). Since the age of the NLUTD patient population, when the surgery is performed, is generally much lower than that of patients with bladder malignancy, who are elected for this surgery, it is important that any possible, very long-term, complications in particular are appraised. Thus, the procedures should be used with caution in NLUTD patients, but may become necessary if all less-invasive treatment methods have failed.

Bladder augmentation, by procedures such as clam cystoplasty, is a valid option to decrease detrusor pressure and increase bladder capacity, whenever more conservative approaches have failed. A number of different techniques have been published. The results of the various procedures are very good and comparable (208,210-212,215-217,255-258). Bladder substitution to create a low pressure reservoir may be indicated in patients with severely thick and fibrotic bladder wall. Scaffolds, probably of tissue-engineered material for bladder augmentation or substitution or alternative techniques, are promising future options (216,259-264).

*4.4.6 **Urinary diversion***

When no other therapy has been successful urinary diversion must be considered for the protection of the upper tract and for the patient's QoL (4,265).

Continent diversion: This should be the first choice for diversion. In patients for whom indwelling catheterisation or suprapubic catheterisation is the only feasible treatment option, change to a continent stoma may be a better prospect (4). Some patients with limited dexterity prefer a stoma to using the urethra for catheterisation (4). The continent stoma is created following various techniques. All of them, however, do show frequent complications, including leakage or stenosis (4,266). The short-term continence rates are over 80% and good protection of the upper urinary tract is achieved (4,13,264-278). For cosmetic reasons, the umbilicus is often used for the stoma site, but this may have a higher risk of stenosis (269,271,276).

Incontinent diversion: If catheterisation is impossible, incontinent diversion with a urine collecting devic eis indicated. Fortunately, nowadays, this indication is seldom because many appropriate alternatives can be offered (4). Ultimately, it could be considered in patients who are wheelchair bound or bed-ridden with intractable and untreatable incontinence, in devastated LUTs, when the upper urinary tract is severely compromised, and in patients who refuse other therapy (4). An ileal segment is used for the deviation in most cases (4,279-283). The rather poor long-term results and the expected complications warrant a permanent follow-up (4).

Undiversion: Long-standing diversions may be successfully undiverted or an incontinent diversion changed to a continent one with the emergence of new and better techniques for control of the detrusor pressure and the incontinence (4). Also, in young patients, body image may play a role (273). The patient must be carefully counselled and must comply meticulously with the instructions (4). Successful undiversion can then be performed (284).

4.5 Recommendations for surgical treatment

Recommendations			**GR**
Detrusor	Overactive	Detrusor myectomy is an acceptable option for the treatment of overactive bladder when more conservative approaches have failed. It is limited invasive and has minimal morbidity	B
		Sacral rhizotomy with SARS in complete lesions and sacral neuromodulation in incomplete lesions are effective treatments in selected patients	B
		Bladder augmentation is an acceptable option for decreasing detrusor pressure whenever less invasive procedures have failed. For the treatment of a severely thick or fibrotic bladder wall, a bladder substitution might be considered	B
	Underactive	SARS with rhizotomy and sacral neuromodulation are effective in selected patients	B
		Restoration of a functional bladder by covering with striated muscle is still experimental	
Urethra	Overactive (DSD)	refer to guidelines for minimal invasive treatment (see Section 4.3.6)	
	Underactive	The placement of a urethral sling is an established procedure	B
		The artificial urinary sphincter is very effective	B
		Transposition of the gracilis muscle is still experimental	

4.6 References

1. Stöhrer M, Kramer G, Löchner-Ernst D, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of bladder dysfunction in spinal cord injury patients. Eur Urol Update Series 1994;3:170-5.
2. Burns AS, Rivas DA, Ditunno JF. The management of neurogenic bladder and sexual dysfunction after pinal cord injury. Spine 2001 Dec;26 (24 Suppl):S129-136. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805620
3. Rickwood AM. Assessment and conservative management of the neuropathic bladder. Semin Pediatr Surg 2002 May;11(2):108-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11973763
4. Castro-Diaz D, Barrett D, Grise P, et al. Surgery for the neuropathic patient. In: *Incontinence*, 2nd edn. Abrams P, Khoury S, Wein A, eds. Plymouth: Health Publication, 2002; pp. 865-891.

5. Donnelly J, Hackler RH, Bunts RC. Present urologic status of the World War II paraplegic: 25-year followup. Comparison with status of the 20-year Korean War paraplegic and 5-year Vietnam paraplegic. J Urol 1972 Oct;108(4):558-62. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4651345
6. Hackler RH. A 25-year prospective mortality study in the spinal cord injured patient: comparison with the long-term living paraplegic. J Urol 1977 Apr;117(4):486-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/850323
7. Game X, Castel-Lacanal E, Bentaleb Y, et al. Botulinum toxin A detrusor injections in patients with neurogenic detrusor overactivity significantly decrease the incidence of symptomatic urinary tract infections. Eur Urol 2008 Mar;53(3):613-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17804150
8. Frankel HL, Coll JR, Charlifue SW, et al. Long-term survival in spinal cord injury: a fifty year investigation. Spinal Cord 1998 Apr;36(4):266-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9589527
9. Stöhrer M. Alterations in the urinary tract after spinal cord injury–diagnosis, prevention and therapy of late equelae. World J Urol 1990;7:205-11.
http://www.springerlink.com/content/k16411w744170641/
10. Barbalias GA, Klauber GT, Blaivas JG. Critical evaluation of the Credé maneuver: a urodynamic study of 207 patients. J Urol 1983 Oct;130(4):720-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6887405
11. Madersbacher H, Wyndaele JJ, Igawa Y, et al. Conservative management in neuropatic urinary incontinence. In: *Incontinence*, 2nd edn. Abrams P, Khoury S, Wein A, eds. Plymouth: Health Publication, 2002; pp. 697-754.
http://icsoffice.org/Publications/ICI_2/chapters/Chap10E.pdf
12. Van Kerrebroeck PE, Koldewijn EL, Scherpenhuizen S, et al. The morbidity due to lower urinary tract function in spinal cord injury patients. Paraplegia 1993 May;31(5):320-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8332378
13. Sekar P, Wallace DD, Waites KB, et al. Comparison of longterm renal function after spinal cord injury using different urinary management methods. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1997 Sep;78(9):992-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9305274
14. Linsenmeyer TA, Bagaria SP, Gendron B. The impact of urodynamic parameters on the upper tracts of spinal cord injured men who void reflexly. J Spinal Cord Med 1998 Jan;21(1):15-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9541882
15. McKinley WO, Jackson AB, Cardenas DD, et al. Long-term medical complications after traumatic spinal cord injury: a regional model systems analysis. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999 Nov;80(11): 1402-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569434
16. Weld KJ, Dmochowski RR. Effect of bladder management on urological complications in spinal cord injured patients. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):768-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687973
17. Menon EB, Tan ES. Bladder training in patients with spinal cord injury. Urology 1992 Nov;40(5):425-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1441039
18. Nijman RJ. Classification and treatment of functional incontinence in children. BJU Int 2000 May;85(3): 37-42; discussion 45-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11954196
19. Aslan AR, Kogan BA. Conservative management in neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Curr Opin Urol 2002 Nov;12(6):473-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12409875
20. Christ KF, Kornhuber HH. Treatment of neurogenic bladder dysfunction in multiple sclerosis by ultrasound-controlled bladder training. Arch Psychiatr Nervenkr 1980;228(3):191-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7416934
21. De Ridder D, Vermeulen C, Ketelaer P, et al. Pelvic floor rehabilitation in multiple sclerosis. Acta Neurol Belg 1999 Mar;99(1):61-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10218095
22. Ishigooka M, Hashimoto T, Hayami S, et al. Electrical pelvic floor stimulation: a possible alternative treatment for reflex urinary incontinence in patients with spinal cord injury. Spinal Cord 1996 Jul;34(7): 411-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8963996

23. Balcom AH, Wiatrak M, Biefeld T, et al. Initial experience with home therapeutic electrical stimulation for continence in the myelomeningocele population. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 2):1272-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258193
24. Chin-Peuckert L, Salle JL. A modified biofeedback program for children with detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia: 5-year experience. J Urol 2001 Oct;166(4):1470-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547115
25. McClurg D, Ashe RG, Marshall K, et al. Comparison of pelvic floor muscle training, electromyography biofeedback, and neuromuscular electrical stimulation for bladder dysfunction in people with multiple sclerosis: a randomized pilot study. Neurourol Urodyn 2006;25(4):337-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16637070
26. Fall M, Lindström S. Electrical stimulation. A physiologic approach to the treatment of urinary incontinence. Urol Clin North Am 1991 May;18(2):393-407. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2017820
27. Vodusek DB, Light KJ, Libby JM. Detrusor inhibition induced by stimulation of pudendal nerve afferents. Neurourol Urodyn 1986;5:381-9.
28. Bemelmans BL, Mundy AR, Craggs MD. Neuromodulation by implant for treating lower urinary tract symptoms and dysfunction. Eur Urol 1999 Aug;36(2):81-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10420026
29. Primus G, Kramer G. Maximal external electrical stimulation for treatment of neurogenic or nonneurogenic urgency and/or urge incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 1996;15(3):187-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8732985
30. Madersbacher H, Kiss G, Mair D. Transcutaneous electrostimulation of the pudendal nerve for treatment of detrusor overactivity. Neurourol Urodyn 1995;14:501-2.
31. Prévinaire JG, Soler JM, Perrigot M. Is there a place for pudendal nerve maximal electrical stimulation for the treatment of detrusor hyperreflexia in spinal cord injury patients? Spinal Cord 1998 Feb;36(2):100-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9494999
32. Opisso E, Borau A, Rodríguez A, et al. Patient controlled versus automatic stimulation of pudendal nerve afferents to treat neurogenic detrusor overactivity. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4):1403-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18710774
33. Kabay S, Kabay SC, Yucel M, et al. The clinical and urodynamic results of a 3-month percutaneous posterior tibial nerve stimulation treatment in patients with multiple sclerosis-related neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Neurourol Urodyn 2009;28(8):964-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19373898
34. Pannek J, Janek S, Noldus J. [Neurogenic or idiopathic destrusor overactivity after failed antimuscarinic treatment: clinical value of external temporary electrostimulation]. Urologe A 2010 Apr;49(4):530-5. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20057991
35. McClurg D, Ashe RG, Lowe-Strong AS. Neuromuscular electrical stimulation and the treatment of lower urinary tract dysfunction in multiple sclerosis--a double blind, placebo controlled, randomised clinical trial. Neurourol Urodyn.2008;27(3):231-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17705160
36. Hagerty JA, Richards I, Kaplan WE. Intravesical electrotherapy for neurogenic bladder dysfunction: a 22-year experience. J Urol. 2007;178(4 Pt 2):1680-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707024
37. Primus G, Kramer G, Pummer K. Restoration of micturition in patients with acontractile and hypocontractile detrusor by transurethral electrical bladder stimulation. Neurourol Urodyn. 1996;15(5): 489-97. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8857617
38. Zempleni MZ, Michels L, Mehnert U, et al. Cortical substrate of bladder control in SCI and the effect of peripheral pudendal stimulation. Neuroimage 2010 Feb;49(4):2983-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19878725
39. Brusa L, Petta F, Pisani A, et al. Central acute D2 stimulation worsens bladder function in patients with mild Parkinson's disease. J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1):202-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406911
40. Brusa L, Finazzi Agrò E, Petta F, et al. Effects of inhibitory rTMS on bladder function in Parkinson's disease patients. Mov Disord 2009 Feb;24(3):445-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19133657

41. Baskin LS, Kogan BA, Benard F. Treatment of infants with neurogenic bladder dysfunction using anticholinergic drugs and intermittent catheterisation. Br J Urol 1990 Nov;66(5):532-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249125
42. Tanaka H, Kakizaki H, Kobayashi S, et al. The relevance of urethral resistance in children with myelodysplasia: its impact on upper urinary tract deterioration and the outcome of conservative management. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):929-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022727
43. Stone AR. Neurourologic evaluation and urologic management of spinal dysraphism. Neurosurg Clin N Am 1995 Apr;6(2):269-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7620353
44. Edelstein RA, Bauer SB, Kelly MD, et al. The long-term urological response of neonates with myelodysplasia treated proactively with intermittent catheterization and anticholinergic therapy. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1500-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7658577
45. DasGupta R, Fowler CJ. Bladder, bowel and sexual dysfunction in multiple sclerosis: management strategies. Drugs 2003;63(2):153-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12515563
46. Buyse G, Verpoorten C, Vereecken R, et al. Treatment of neurogenic bladder dysfunction in infants and children with neurospinal dysraphism with clean intermittent (self)catheterisation and optimized intravesical oxybutynin hydrochloride therapy. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1995 Dec;5 Suppl 1:31-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8770576
47. Appell RA. Overactive bladder in special patient populations. Rev Urol 2003;5 Suppl 8:S37-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16985989
48. Amend B, HennenlotterJ, Schäfer T, et al. Effective treatment of neurogenic detrusor dysfunction by combined high–dosed antimuscarinics without increased side–effects. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5): 1021-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18243516
49. Cameron AP, Clemens JQ, Latini JM, et al. Combination drug therapy improves compliance of the neurogenic bladder. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):1062-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616807
50. Alloussi SH, Mürtz G, Gitzhofer S, et al. Failure of monotherapy in primary monosymptomatic enuresis: a combined desmopressin and propiverine treatment regimen improves efficacy outcomes. BJU Int 2009 Jun;103(12):1706-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154456
51. Kennelly MJ, DeVoe WB. Overactive Bladder: Pharmacologic Treatments in the Neurogenic Population. Rev Urol 2008 Summer;10(3):182-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18836537
52. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403235
53. Sakakibara R, Uchiyama T, Yamanishi T, et al. Dementia and lower urinary dysfunction: with a reference to anticholinergic use in elderly population Int J Urol. 2008 Sep;15(9):778-88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18643858
54. Verpoorten C, Buyse GM. The neurogenic bladder: Medical treatment. Pediatr Nephrol. 2008 May;23(5):717-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18095004
55. Horstmann M, Schaefer T, Aguilar Y, et al. Neurogenic bladder treatment by doubling the recommended antimuscarinic dosage. Neurourol Urodyn 2006;25(5):441-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16847942
56. Menarini M, Del Popolo G, Di Benedetto P, et al; TcP128-Study Group. Trospium chloride in patients with neurogenic detrusor overactivity: is dose titration of benefit to the patients? Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther 2006 Dec;44(12):623-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17190372
57. O'Leary M, Erickson JR, Smith CP, et al. Effect of controlled release oxybutynin on neurogenic bladder function in spinal cord injury. J Spinal Cord Med 2003 Summer;26(2):159-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12828295
58. Stöhrer M, Mürtz G, Kramer G, et al; Propiverine Investigator Group. Propiverine compared to oxybutynin in neurogenic detrusor overactivity--results of a randomized, double-blind, multicenter clinical study. Eur Urol 2007 Jan;51(1):235-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16698176

59. Schwantes U, Topfmeier P. Importance of pharmacological and physicochemical properties for tolerance of antimuscarinic drugs in the treatment of detrusor instability and detrusor hyperreflexia --chances for improvement of therapy. Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther 1999 May;37(5):209-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10363619
60. Isik AT, Celik T, Bozoglu E, et al. Trospium and cognition in patients with late onset Alzheimer disease. J Nutr Health Aging 2009 Oct;13(8):672-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19657549
61. Ethans KD, Nance PW, Bard RJ, et al. Efficacy and safety of tolterodine in people with neurogenic detrusor overactivity. J Spinal Cord Med 2004;27(3):214-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15478523
62. Reddy PP, Borgstein NG, Nijman RJ, et al. Long–term efficacy and safety of tolterodine in children with neurogenic detrusor overactivity. J Pediatr Urol. 2008 Dec;4(6):428–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19013412
63. Mahanta K, Medhi B, Kaur B, et al. Comparative efficacy and safety of extended–release and instant–release tolterodine in children with neural tube defects having cystometric abnormalities. J Pediatr Urol 2008 Apr;4(2)118–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631906
64. Grigoleit U, Mürtz G, Laschke S, et al. Efficacy, tolerability and safety of propiverine hydrochloride in children and adolescents with congenital or traumatic neurogenic detrusor overactivity: a retrospective study. Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):1114-21; discussion 1120-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16542772
65. Madersbacher H, Mürtz G, Alloussi S, et al. Propiverine vs oxybutynin for treating neurogenic detrusor overactivity in children and adolescents: results of a multicentre observational cohort study. BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(6):776-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19007380
66. Menarini M, Del Popolo G, Di Benedetto P, et al; TcP128-Study Group. Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther. 2006 Dec;44(12):623-32
67. Carl S, Laschke S. Darifenacin is also effective in neurogenic bladder dysfunction (multiple sclerosis). Urology 2006;68(suppl):250.
68. Bycroft J, Leaker B, Wood S, et al. The effect of darifenacin on neurogenic detrusor overactivity in patients with spinal cord injury. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22:A190.
69. Cartwright PC, Coplen DE, Kogan BA, et al. Efficacy and safety of transdermal and oral oxybutynin in children with neurogenic detrusor overactivity. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4):1548-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19683731
70. Kennelly MJ, Lemack GE, Foote JE, et al. Efficacy and safety of oxybutynin transdermal system in spinal cord injury patients with neurogenic detrusor overactivity and incontinence: an open-label, dose-titration study. Urology 2009 Oct;74(4):741-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19628264
71. Van Meel TD, De Wachter S, Wyndaele JJ. The effect of intravesical oxybutynin on the ice water test and on electrical perception thresholds in patients with neurogenic detrusor overactivity. Neurourol Urodyn 2010 Mar;29(3):391-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19787712
72. Gacci M, Del Popolo G, Macchiarella A, et al. Vardenafil improves urodynamic parameters in men with spinal cord injury: results from a single dose, pilot study. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):2040-3; discussion 2044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869296
73. Chancellor MB, Rivas DA, Staas WE Jr. DDAVP in the urological management of the difficult neurogenic bladder in spinal cord injury: preliminary report. J Am Paraplegia Soc 1994 Oct;17(4): 165-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7869058
74. Valiquette G, Herbert J, Maede-D'Alisera P. Desmopressin in the management of nocturia in patients with multiple sclerosis. A double-blind, crossover trial. Arch Neurol 1996 Dec;53(12):1270-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8970454
75. Panicker JN, de Sèze M, Fowler CJ. Rehabilitation in practice: neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction and its management. Clin Rehabil. 2010 Jul;24(7):579-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20584864
76. Barendrecht MM, Oelke M, Laguna MP, et al. Is the use of parasympathomimetics for treating an underactive urinary bladder evidence-based? BJU Int 2007 Apr;99(4):749-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17233798

77. Yamanishi T, Yasuda K, Kamai T, et al. Combination of a cholinergic drug and an alpha-blocker is more effective than monotherapy for the treatment of voiding difficulty in patients with underactive detrusor. Int J Urol 2004 Feb;11(2):88-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14706012
78. Wheeler JS Jr, Robinson CJ, Culkin DJ, et al. Naloxone efficacy in bladder rehabilitation of spinal cord injury patients. J Urol 1987 Jun;137(6):1202-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3586156
79. Komersova K, Rogerson JW, Conway EL, et al. The effect of levcromakalim (BRL 38227) on bladder function in patients with high spinal cord lesions. Br J Clin Pharmacol 1995 Feb;39(2):207-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7742166
80. Wyndaele JJ, van Kerrebroeck P. The effects of 4 weeks treatment with cisapride on cystometric parameters in spinal cord injury patients. A double-blind, placebo controlled study. Paraplegia 1995 Nov;33(11):625-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8584295
81. Costa P, Bressolle F, Sarrazin B, et al. Dose-related effect of moxisylyte on maximal urethral closing pressure in patients with spinal cord injuries. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1993 Apr;53(4);443-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8477560
82. Cain MP, Wu SD, Austin PF, et al. Alpha blocker therapy for children with dysfunctional voiding and urinary retention. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 2):1514-5 discussion 1516-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501648
83. Schulte-Baukloh H, Michael T, Miller K, et al. Alfuzosin in the treatment of high leak-point pressure in children with neurogenic bladder. BJU Int 2002 Nov;90(7):716-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12410754
84. Abrams P, Amarenco G, Bakke A, et al; European Tamsulosin Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction Study Group. Tamsulosin: efficacy and safety in patients with neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction due to suprasacral spinal cord injury. J Urol 2003 Oct;170(4 Pt 1):1242-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501734
85. Yasuda K, Yamanishi T, Kawabe K, et al. The effect of urapidil on neurogenic bladder: a placebo controlled double-blind study. J Urol 1996 Sep;156(3):1125-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8709324
86. Al-Ali M, Salman G, Rasheed A, et al. Phenoxybenzamine in the management of neuropathic bladder following spinal cord injury. Aust N Z J Surg 1999 Sep;69(9):660-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10515340
87. Te AE. A modern rationale for the use of phenoxybenzamine in urinary tract disorders and other conditions. Clin Ther 2002 Jun;24(6):851-61; discussion 837.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12117078
88. Guttmann L, Frankel H. The value of intermittent catheterisation in the early management of traumatic paraplegia and tetraplegia. Paraplegia 1966 Aug;4(2):63-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5969402
89. Lapides J, Diokno AC, Silber SJ, et al. Clean, intermittent self-catheterization in the treatment of urinary tract disease. J Urol 1972 Mar;107(3):458-61. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5010715
90. Baskin LS, Kogan BA, Benard F. Treatment of infants with neurogenic bladder dysfunction using anticholinergic drugs and intermittent catheterisation. Br J Urol 1990 Nov;66(5):532-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249125
91. Tanaka H, Kakizaki H, Kobayashi S, et al. The relevance of urethral resistance in children with myelodysplasia: its impact on upper urinary tract deterioration and the outcome of conservative management. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):929-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022727
92. Stone AR. Neurourologic evaluation and urologic management of spinal dysraphism. Neurosurg Clin N Am 1995 Apr;6(2):269-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7620353
93. Edelstein RA, Bauer SB, Kelly MD, et al. The long-term urological response of neonates with myelodysplasia treated proactively with intermittent catheterization and anticholinergic therapy. J Urol 1995 Oct;154(4):1500-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7658577
94. DasGupta R, Fowler CJ. Bladder, bowel and sexual dysfunction in multiple sclerosis: management strategies. Drugs 2003;63(2):153-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12515563

95. Buyse G, Verpoorten C, Vereecken R, et al. Treatment of neurogenic bladder dysfunction in infants and children with neurospinal dysraphism with clean intermittent (self)catheterisation and optimized intravesical oxybutynin hydrochloride therapy. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1995 Dec;5 Suppl 1:31-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8770576
96. Wyndaele JJ. Intermittent catheterization: which is the optimal technique? Spinal Cord 2002 Sep;40(9):432-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12185603
97. Prieto-Fingerhut T, Banovac K, Lynne CM. A study comparing sterile and nonsterile urethral catheterization in patients with spinal cord injury. Rehabil Nurs 1997 Nov-Dec;22(6):299-302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9416190
98. Matsumoto T, Takahashi K, Manabe N, et al. Urinary tract infection in neurogenic bladder. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2001 Apr;17(4):293-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11295411
99. Hudson E, Murahata RI. The 'no-touch' method of intermittent urinary catheter insertion: can it reduce the risk of bacteria entering the bladder? Spinal Cord 2005 Oct;43(10):611-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15852058
100. Waller L, Jonsson O, Norlén L, et al. Clean intermittent catheterization in spinal cord injury patients: long-term follow-up of a hydrophilic low friction technique. J Urol 1995 Feb;153(2):345-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7815579
101. Bakke A, Digranes A, Høisaeter PA. Physical predictors of infection in patients treated with clean intermittent catheterization: a prospective 7-year study. Br J Urol 1997 Jan;79(1):85-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9043503
102. Gunther M, Lochner-Ernst D, Kramer G, et al. [Effects of aseptic intermittent catheterisation on the male urethra] Urologe B 2001;41:359-361. [Article in German] http://www.springerlink.com/content/9cevbv7hayf09xta/
103. Wyndaele JJ. Complications of intermittent catheterization: their prevention and treatment. Spinal Cord 2002 Oct;40(10):536-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12235537
104. Sauerwein D. Urinary tract infection in patients with neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Int J Antimicrob Agents 2002 Jun;19(6):592-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12135853
105. Sullivan LP, Davidson PG, Kloss DA, et al. Small-bowel obstruction caused by a long-term indwelling urinary catheter. Surgery 1990 Feb;107(2):228-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2300902
106. Chao R, Clowers D, Mayo ME. Fate of upper urinary tracts in patients with indwelling catheters after spinal cord injury. Urology 1993 Sep;42(3):259-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8379025
107. Chancellor MB, Erhard MJ, Kiilholma PJ, et al. Functional urethral closure with pubovaginal sling for destroyed female urethra after long-term urethral catheterization. Urology 1994 Apr;43(4):499-505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8154071
108. Bennett CJ, Young MN, Adkins RH, et al. Comparison of bladder management complication outcomes in female spinal cord injury patients. J Urol 1995 May;153(5):1458-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7714965
109. Larsen LD, Chamberlin DA, Khonsari F, et al. Retrospective analysis of urologic complications in male patients with spinal cord injury managed with and without indwelling urinary catheters. Urology 1997 Sep;50(3):418-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9301708
110. West DA, Cummings JM, Longo WE, et al. Role of chronic catheterization in the development of bladder cancer in patients with spinal cord injury. Urology 1999 Feb;53(2):292-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933042
111. Mitsui T, Minami K, Furuno T, et al. Is suprapubic cystostomy an optimal urinary management in high quadriplegics? A comparative study of suprapubic cystostomy and clean intermittent catheterization. Eur Urol 2000 Oct;38(4):434-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025382
112. Weld KJ, Wall BM, Mangold TA, et al, Dmochowski RR. Influences on renal function in ronic spinal cord injured patients. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1490-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025689
113. Zermann D, Wunderlich H, Derry F, et al. Audit of early bladder management complications after spinal cord injury in first-treating hospitals. Eur Urol 2000 Feb;37(2):156-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10705193

114. Park YI, Linsenmeyer TA. A method to minimize indwelling catheter calcification and bladder stones in individuals with spinal cord injury. J Spinal Cord Med 2001 Summer;24(2):105-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11587416
115. Glickman S, Tsokkos N, Shah PJ. Intravesical atropine and suppression of detrusor hypercontractility in the neuropathic bladder. A preliminary study. Paraplegia 1995 Jan;33(1):36-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7715952
116. Amark P, Bussman G, Eksborg S. Follow-up of long-time treatment with intravesical oxybutynin for neurogenic bladder in children. Eur Urol 1998 Aug;34(2):148-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9693251
117. Haferkamp A, Staehler G, Gerner HJ, et al. Dosage escalation of intravesical oxybutynin in the treatment of neurogenic bladder patients. Spinal Cord 2000 Apr;38(4):250-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10822396
118. Pannek J, Sommerfeld HJ, Bötel U, et al. Combined intravesical and oral oxybutynin chloride in adult patients with spinal cord injury. Urology 2000 Mar;55(3):358-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10699610
119. Buyse G, Waldeck K, Verpoorten C, et al. Intravesical oxybutynin for neurogenic bladder dysfunction: less systemic side effects due to reduced first pass metabolism. J Urol 1998 Sep;160(3 Pt 1):892-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9720583
120. Riedl CR, Knoll M, Plas E, et al. Intravesical electromotive drug administration technique: preliminary results and side effects. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1851-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598474
121. Di Stasi SM, Giannantoni A, Navarra P, et al. Intravesical oxybutynin: mode of action assessed by passive diffusion and electromotive administration with pharmacokinetics of oxybutynin and N-desethyl oxybutynin. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2232-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696741
122. Geirsson G, Fall M, Sullivan L. Clinical and urodynamic effects of intravesical capsaicin treatment in patients with chronic traumatic spinal detrusor hyperreflexia. J Urol 1995 Nov;154(5):1825-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7563356
123. Cruz F, Guimarães M, Silva C, et al. Suppression of bladder hyperreflexia by intravesical resiniferatoxin. Lancet 1997 Aug;350(9078):640-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9288055
124. De Ridder D, Chandiramani V, Dasgupta P, et al. Intravesical capsaicin as a treatment for refractory detrusor hyperreflexia: a dual center study with long-term followup. J Urol 1997 Dec;158(6):2087-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366318
125. Wiart L, Joseph PA, Petit H, et al. The effects of capsaicin on the neurogenic hyperreflexic detrusor. A double blind placebo controlled study in patients with spinal cord disease. Preliminary results. Spinal Cord 1998 Feb;36(2):95-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9494998
126. Kim JH, Rivas DA, Shenot PJ, et al. Intravesical resiniferatoxin for refractory detrusor hyperreflexia: a multicenter, blinded, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. J Spinal Cord Med 2003 Winter;26(4): 358-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14992337
127. Giannantoni A, Di Stasi SM, Stephen RL, et al. Intravesical resiniferatoxin versus botulinum-A toxin injections for neurogenic detrusor overactivity: a prospective randomized study. J Urol 2004 Jul;172(1):240-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201783
128. Katona F, Benyo L, Lang I. [Intraluminary electrotherapy of various paralytic conditions of the gastrointestinal tract with the quadrangular current.] Zentralbl Chir 1959 Jun;84(24):929-33. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13676705
129. Kaplan WE. Intravesical electrical stimulation of the bladder: pro. Urology 2000 Jul;56(1):2-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10869607
130. Ebner A, Jiang C, Lindström S. Intravesical electrical stimulation–an experimental analysis of the mechanism of action. J Urol 1992 Sep;148(3):920-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1512860
131. Primus G, Kramer G, Pummer K. Restoration of micturition in patients with acontractile and hypocontractile detrusor by transurethral electrical bladder stimulation. Neurourol Urodyn 1996;15(5): 489-97.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8857617

132. De Wachter S, Wyndaele JJ. Quest for standardisation of electrical sensory testing in the lower urinary tract: the influence of technique related factors on bladder electrical thresholds. Neurourol Urodyn 2003;22(2):118-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12579628
133. Katona F, Berenyi M. Intravesical transurethral electrotherapy in meningomyelocele patients. Acta Paediatr Acad Sci Hung 1975;16(3-4):363-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/773096
134. Hagerty JA, Richards I, Kaplan WE. Intravesical electrotherapy for neurogenic bladder dysfunction: a 22-year experience. J Urol. 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 2):1680-3;discussion 1683.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707024
135. Nicholas JL, Eckstein HB. Endovesical electrotherapy in treatment of urinary incontinence in spinabifida patients. Lancet 1975 Dec;2(7948):1276-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/54798
136. Pugach JL, Salvin L, Steinhardt GF. Intravesical electrostimulation in pediatric patients with spinal cord defects. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):965-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958718
137. Stöhrer M, Schurch B, Kramer G, et al. Botulinum-A toxin in the treatment of detrusor hyperreflexia in spinal cord injury: a new alternative to medical and surgical procedures? Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18:401-2.
138. Schurch B, Schmid DM, Stöhrer M. Treatment of neurogenic incontinence with botulinum toxin A (letter). N Engl J Med 2000 Mar;342(9):665.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10702067
139. Schurch B, Stöhrer M, Kramer G, et al. Botulinum-A toxin for treating detrusorhyperreflexia in spinal cord injured patients: a new alternative to anticholinergic drugs? Preliminary results. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):692-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953127
140. Schulte-Baukloh H, Michael T, Schobert J, et al. Efficacy of botulinum-A toxin in children with detrusor hyperreflexia due to myelomeningocele: preliminary results. Urology 2002 Mar;59(3):325-7; discussion 327-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11880062
141. Wyndaele JJ, Van Dromme SA. Muscular weakness as side effect of botulinum toxin injection for neurogenic detrusor overactivity. Spinal Cord 2002 Nov;40(11):599-600.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12411968
142. Reitz A, Stöhrer M, Kramer G, et al. European experience of 200 cases treated with botulinum-A toxin injections into the detrusor muscle for urinary incontinence due to neurogenic detrusor overactivity. Eur Urol 2004;45(4):510-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15041117
143. Del Popolo G, Filocamo MT, Li Marzi V, et al. Neurogenic detrusor overactivity treated with English Botulinum Toxin A: 8-year experience of one single centre. Eur Urol 2008 May;53(5):1013-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17950989
144. Schurch B, de Sèze M, Denys P, et al; Botox Detrusor Hyperreflexia Study Team. Botulinum toxin type a is a safe and effective treatment for neurogenic urinary incontinence: results of a single treatment, randomized, placebo controlled 6-month study. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):196-200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947626
145. Akbar M, Abel R, Seyler TM, et al. Repeated botulinum-A toxin injections in the treatment of myelodysplastic children and patients with spinal cord injuries with neurogenic bladder dysfunction. BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):639-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17532858
146. Grosse J, Kramer G, Stöhrer M. Success of repeat detrusor injections of botulinum a toxin in patients with severe neurogenic detrusor overactivity and incontinence. Eur Urol 2005 May;47(5):653-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15826758
147. Haferkamp A, Schurch B, Reitz A, et al. Lack of ultrastructural detrusor changes following endoscopic injection of botulinum toxin type a in overactive neurogenic bladder. Eur Urol 2004 Dec;46(6):784-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15548448
148. Dykstra DD, Sidi AA. Treatment of detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia with botulinum A toxin: a doubleblind study. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1990 Jan;71(1):24-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2297305
149. Schurch B, Hauri D, Rodic B, et al. Botulinum-A toxin as a treatment of detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia: a prospective study in 24 spinal cord injury patients. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):1023-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583552

150. Petit H, Wiart L, Gaujard E, et al. Botulinum A toxin treatment for detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia in spinal cord disease. Spinal Cord 1998 Feb;36(2):91-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9494997
151. Chancellor MB, Rivas DA, Abdill CK, et al. Prospective comparison of external sphincter balloon dilatation and prosthesis placement with external sphincterotomy in spinal cord injured men. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1994 Mar;75(3):297-305.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8129583
152. Perkash I. Use of contact laser crystal tip firing Nd:YAG to relieve urinary outflow obstruction in male neurogenic bladder patients. J Clin Laser Med Surg 1998 Feb;16(1):33-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728128
153. Noll F, Sauerwein D, Stöhrer M. Transurethral sphincterotomy in quadriplegic patients: long-termfollow-up. Neurourol Urodyn 1995;14(4):351-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7581471
154. Reynard JM, Vass J, Sullivan ME, et al. Sphincterotomy and the treatment of detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia: current status, future prospects. Spinal Cord 2003 Jan;41(1):1-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12494314
155. Derry F, al-Rubeyi S. Audit of bladder neck resection in spinal cord injured patients. Spinal Cord 1998 May;36(5):345-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9601115
156. Chancellor MB, Gajewski J, Ackman CF, et al. Long-term followupof the North American multicenter UroLume trial for the treatment of external detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia. J Urol 1999 May;161(5):1545-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210393
157. Seoane-Rodríguez S, Sánchez R-Losada J, Montoto-Marqués A, et al. Long-term follow-up study of intraurethral stents in spinal cord injured patients with detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia. Spinal Cord 2007 Sep;45(9):621-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17211463
158. Gajewski JB, Chancellor MB, Ackman CF, et al. Removal of UroLume endoprosthesis: experience of the North American Study Group for detrusor-sphincter dyssynergia application. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):773-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687974
159. Wilson TS, Lemack GE, Dmochowski RR. UroLume stents: lessons learned. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2477-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992061
160. Bennett JK, Green BG, Foote JE, et al. Collagen injections for intrinsic sphincter deficiency in the neuropathic urethra. Paraplegia 1995 Dec;33(12):697-700.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8927407
161. Guys JM, Simeoni-Alias J, Fakhro A, et al. Use of polydimethylsiloxane for endoscopic treatment of neurogenic urinary incontinence in children. J Urol 1999 Dec;162(6):2133-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569603
162. Kassouf W, Capolicchio G, Berardinucci G, et al. Collagen injection for treatment of urinary incontinence in children. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1666-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342951
163. Caione P, Capozza N. Endoscopic treatment of urinary incontinence in pediatric patients: 2-year experience with dextranomer/hyaluronic acid copolymer. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1868-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352378
164. Block CA, Cooper CS, Hawtrey CE. Long-term efficacy of periurethral collagen injection for the treatment of urinary incontinence secondary to myelomeningocele. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):327-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478183
165. Schurch B, Suter S, Dubs M. Intraurethral sphincter prosthesis to treat hyporeflexic bladders in women: does it work? BJU Int 1999 Nov;84(7):789-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10532973
166. Herschorn S, Radomski SB. Fascial slings and bladder neck tapering in the treatment of male neurogenic incontinence. J Urol 1992 Apr;147(4):1073-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1552586
167. Gormley EA, Bloom DA, McGuire EJ, et al. Pubovaginal slings for the management of urinary incontinence in female adolescents. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 2):822-5; discussion 826-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022024

168. Kakizaki H, Shibata T, Shinno Y, et al. Fascial sling for the management of urinary incontinence due to sphincter incompetence. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 1):644-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861504
169. Gosalbez R, Castellan M. Defining the role of the bladder-neck sling in the surgical treatment of urinary incontinence in children with neurogenic incontinence. World J Urol 1998;16(4):285-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9775429
170. Barthold JS, Rodriguez E, Freedman AL, et al. Results of the rectus fascial sling and wrap procedures for the treatment of neurogenic sphincteric incontinence. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):272-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037423
171. Dik P, Van Gool JD, De Jong TP. Urinary continence and erectile function after bladder neck sling suspension in male patients with spinal dysraphism. BJU Int 1999 Jun;83(9):971-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10368238
172. Kryger JV, Gonzalez R, Barthold JS. Surgical management of urinary incontinence in children with neurogenic sphincteric incompetence. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):256-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604371
173. Walker RD, Erhard M, Starling J. Long-term evaluation of rectus fascial wrap in patients with spina bifida. J Urol 2000 Aug;164(2):485-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10893629
174. Kapoor R, Dubey D, Kumar A, et al. Modified bulbar urethral sling procedure for the treatment of male sphincteric incontinence. J Endourol 2001 Jun;15(5):545-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11465337
175. Nguyen HT, Bauer SB, Diamond DA, et al. Rectus fascial sling for the treatment of neurogenic sphincteric incontinence in boys: is it safe and effective? J Urol 2001 Aug;166(2):658-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458113
176. Austin PF, Westney OL, Leng WW, et al. Advantages of rectus fascial slings for urinary incontinence in children with neuropathic bladders. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2369-71;discussion 2371-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11398778
177. Mingin GC, Youngren K, Stock JA, et al. The rectus myofascial wrap in the management of urethral sphincter incompetence. BJU Int 2002 Oct;90(6):550-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12230615
178. Colvert JR 3rd, Kropp BP, Cheng EY, et al. The use of small intestinal submucosa as an off-the-shelf urethral sling material for pediatric urinary incontinence. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1872-5; discussion 1875-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352379
179. Daneshmand S, Ginsberg DA, Bennet JK, et al. Puboprostatic sling repair for treatment of urethral incompetence in adult neurogenic incontinence. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):199-202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478135
180. Light JK, Scott FB. Use of the artificial urinary sphincter in spinal cord injury patients. J Urol 1983 Dec;130(6):1127-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6644893
181. Sidi AA, Reinberg Y, Gonzalez R. Comparison of artificial sphincter implantation and bladder neck reconstruction in patients with neurogenic urinary incontinence. J Urol 1987 Oct;138(4 Pt 2):1120-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3656572
182. Fulford SC, Sutton C, Bales G, et al. The fate of the 'modern' artificial urinary sphincter with a follow-up of more than 10 years. Br J Urol 1997 May;79(5):713-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158507
183. Elliott DS, Barrett DM. Mayo Clinic long-term analysis of the functional durability of the AMS 800 artificial urinary sphincter: a review of 323 cases. J Urol 1998 Apr;159(4):1206-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9507835
184. Castera R, Podésta ML, Ruarte A, et al. 10-Year experience with artificial urinary sphincter in children and adolescents. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2373-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371980
185. Kryger JV, Leverson G, González R. Long-term results of artificial urinary sphincters in children are independent of age at implantation. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2377-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371981
186. Janknegt RA, Baeten CG, Weil EH, et al. Electrically stimulated gracilis sphincter for treatment of bladder sphincter incontinence. Lancet 1992 Nov;340(8828):1129-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1359213

187. Chancellor MB, Heesakkers JP, Janknegt RA. Gracilis muscle transposition with electrical Stimulation for sphincteric incontinence: a new approach. World J Urol 1997;15(5):320-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9372585
188. Donnahoo KK, Rink RC, Cain MP, et al. The Young-Dees-Leadbetter bladder neck repair for neurogenic incontinence. J Urol 1999 Jun;161(6):1946-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10332478
189. Kropp KA, Angwafo FF. Urethral lengthening and reimplantation for neurogenic incontinence in children. J Urol 1986 Mar;135(3):533-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3944902
190. Salle JL, McLorie GA, Bägli DJ, et al. Urethral lengthening with anterior bladder wall flap (Pippi Salle procedure): modifications and extended indications of the technique. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):585-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224369
191. Mollard P, Mouriquand P, Joubert P. Urethral lengthening for neurogenic urinary incontinence (Kropp's procedure): results of 16 cases. J Urol 1990 Jan;143(1):95-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2294274
192. Nill TG, Peller PA, Kropp KA. Management of urinary incontinence by bladder tube urethral lengthening and submucosal reimplantation. J Urol 1990 Aug;144(2 Pt 2):559-61; discussion 562-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2374240
193. Rink RC, Adams MC, Keating MA. The flip-flap technique to lengthen the urethra (Salle procedure) for treatment of neurogenic urinary incontinence. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 2):799-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022018
194. Waters PR, Chehade NC, Kropp KA. Urethral lengthening and reimplantation: incidence and management of catheterization problems. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 2):1053-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258141
195. Diamond DA, Bauer SB, Dinlenc C, et al. Normal urodynamics in patients with bladder exstrophy: are they achievable? J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):841-4; discussion 844-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458392
196. Hayes MC, Bulusu A, Terry T, et al. The Pippi Salle urethral lengthening procedure; experience and outcome from three United Kingdom centres. BJU Int 1999 Oct;84(6):701-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510119
197. Yerkes EB, Adams MC, Rink RC, et al. How well do patients with exstrophy actually void? J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):1044-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958737
198. Surer I, Baker LA, Jeffs RD, et al. Modified Young-Dees-Leadbetter bladder neck reconstruction in patients with successful primary bladder closure elsewhere: a single institution experience. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2438-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371993
199. Chan DY, Jeffs RD, Gearhart JP. Determinants of continence in the bladder exstrophy population: predictors of success? Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):774-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306402
200. Ferrer FA, Tadros YE, Gearhart J. Modified Young-Dees-Leadbetter bladder neck reconstruction: new concepts about old ideas. Urology 2001 Nov;58(5):791-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11711366
201. Couvelaire R. [Bladder surgery]. Paris: Masson, 1955. [Article in French]
202. Cartwright PC, Snow BW. Bladder autoaugmentation: early clinical experience. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2Pt 2):505-8; discussion 520-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746767
203. Stöhrer M, Kramer A, Goepel M, et al. Bladder auto-augmentation - an alternative for enterocystoplasty: preliminary results. Neurourol Urodyn 1995;14(1):11-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7742844
204. Elder JS. Autoaugmentation gastrocystoplasty: early clinical results. J Urol 1995 Jul;154(1):322-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7776450
205. Poppas DP, Uzzo RG, Britanisky RG, et al. Laparoscopic laser assisted auto-augmentation of the pediatric neurogenic bladder: early experience with urodynamic follow-up. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):1057-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583564
206. Snow BW, Cartwright PC. Bladder autoaugmentation. Urol Clin North Am 1996 May;23(2):323-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8659030
207. Stöhrer M, Kramer G, Goepel M, et al. Bladder autoaugmentation in adult patients with neurogenic voiding dysfunction. Spinal Cord 1997 Jul;35(7):456-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9232751

208. Duel BP, Gonzalez R, Barthold JS. Alternative techniques for augmentation cystoplasty. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):998-1005.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474216
209. Braren V, Bishop MR. Laparoscopic bladder autoaugmentation in children. Urol Clin North Am 1998 Aug;25(3):533-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728222
210. Chapple CR, Bryan NP. Surgery for detrusor overactivity. World J Urol 1998;16(4):268-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9775426
211. Leng WW, Blalock HJ, Fredriksson WH, et al. Enterocystoplasty or detrusor myectomy? Comparison of indications and outcomes for bladder augmentation. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):758-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022679
212. Comer MT, Thomas DF, Trejdosiewicz LK, et al. Reconstruction of the urinary bladder by auto augmentation, enterocystoplasty, and composite enterocystoplasty. Adv Exp Med Biol 1999; 462: 43-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10599412
213. Siracusano S, Trombetta C, Liguori G, et al. Laparoscopic bladder auto-augmentation in an incomplete traumatic spinal cord injury. Spinal Cord 2000 Jan;38(1):59-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10762200
214. Oge O, Tekgul S, Ergen A, et al. Urothelium-preserving augmentation cystoplasty covered with a peritoneal flap. BJU Int 2000 May;85(7):802-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10792156
215. Cranidis A, Nestoridis G. Bladder augmentation. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000; 11(1):33-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10738932
216. Niknejad KG, Atala A. Bladder augmentation techniques in women. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000 Jun;11(3):156-69.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11484743
217. Westney OL, McGuire EJ. Surgical procedures for the treatment of urge incontinence. Tech Urol 2001 Jun;7(2):126-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11383990
218. Perovic SV, Djordjevic ML, Kekic ZK, et al. Bladder autoaugmentation with rectus muscle backing. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1877-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352380
219. Marte A, Di Meglio D, Cotrufo AM, et al. A long-term follow-up of autoaugmentation in myelodysplastic children. BJU Int 2002 Jun;89(9):928-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010242
220. Ter Meulen PH, Heesakkers JP, Janknegt RA. A study on the feasibility of vesicomyotomy in patients with motor urge incontinence. Eur Urol 1997;32(2):166-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286647
221. Potter JM, Duffy PG, Gordon EM, et al. Detrusor myotomy: a 5-year review in unstable and non-compliant bladders. BJU Int 2002 Jun;89(9):932-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010243
222. Baskin LS, Kogan BA, Benard F. Treatment of infants with neurogenic bladder dysfunction using anticholinergic drugs and intermittent catheterisation. Br J Urol 1990 Nov;66(5):532-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249125
223. Nagib A, Leal J, Voris HC. Successful control of selective anterior sacral rhizotomy for treatment of spastic bladder and ureteric reflux in paraplegics. Med Serv J Can 1966 Jul-Aug;22(7):576-81. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5966992
224. Young B, Mulcahy JJ. Percutaneous sacral rhizotomy for neurogenic detrusor hyperreflexia. J Neurosurg 1980 Jul;53(1):85-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7411212
225. Franco I, Storrs B, Firlit CF, et al. Selective sacral rhizotomy in children with high pressure neurogenic bladders: preliminary results. J Urol 1992 Aug;148(2 Pt 2):648-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1640538
226. Schneidau T, Franco I, Zebold K, et al. Selective sacral rhizotomy for the management of neurogenic bladders in spina bifida patients: long-term followup. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 2):766-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609174

227. Hohenfellner M, Pannek J, Bötel U, et al. Sacral bladder denervation for treatment of detrusor hyperreflexia and autonomic dysreflexia. Urology 2001 Jul;58(1):28-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11445474
228. MacDonagh RP, Forster DM, Thomas DG. Urinary continence in spinal injury patients following complete sacral posterior rhizotomy. Br J Urol 1990 Dec;66(6):618-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2265335
229. Sauerwein D, Ingunza W, Fischer J, et al. Extradural implantation of sacral anterior root stimulators. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1990 Aug;53(8):681-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2213045
230. Koldewijn EL, Van Kerrebroeck PE, Rosier PF, et al. Bladder compliance after posterior sacral root rhizotomies and anterior sacral root stimulation. J Urol 1994 Apr;151(4):955-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8126835
231. Singh G, Thomas DG. Intravesical oxybutinin in patients with posterior rhizotomies and sacral anterior root stimulators. Neurourol Urodyn 1995;14(1):65-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7742851
232. Van Kerrebroeck PE, Koldewijn EL, Rosier PF, et al. Results of the treatment of neurogenic bladder dysfunction in spinal cord injury by sacral posterior root rhizotomy and anterior sacral root stimulation. J Urol 1996 Apr;155(4):1378-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8632580
233. Schurch B, Rodic B, Jeanmonod D. Posterior sacral rhizotomy and intradural anterior sacral root stimulation for treatment of the spastic bladder in spinal cord injured patients. J Urol 1997 Feb;157(2):610-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996369
234. Van Kerrebroeck EV, van der Aa HE, Bosch JL, et al. Sacral rhizotomies and electrical bladder stimulation in spinal cord injury. Part I: Clinical and urodynamic analysis. Dutch Study Group on Sacral Anterior Root Stimulation. Eur Urol 1997;31(3):263-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9129914
235. Schumacher S, Bross S, Scheepe JR, et al. Restoration of bladder function in spastic neuropathic bladder using sacral deafferentation and different techniques of neurostimulation. Adv Exp Med Biol 1999;462:303-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10599434
236. Van der Aa HE, Alleman E, Nene A, et al. Sacral anterior root stimulation for bladder control: clinical results. Arch Physiol Biochem 1999 Jul;107(3):248-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10650355
237. Everaert K, Derie A, Van Laere M, et al. Bilateral S3 nerve stimulation, a minimally invasive alternative treatment for postoperative stress incontinence after implantation of an anterior root stimulator with posterior rhizotomy: a preliminary observation. Spinal Cord 2000 Apr;38(4):262-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10822398
238. Creasey GH, Grill JH, Korsten M, et al; Implanted Neuroprosthesis Research Group. An implantable neuroprosthesis for restoring bladder and bowel control to patients with spinal cord injuries: a multicenter trial. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2001 Nov;82(11):1512-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11689969
239. Vignes JR, Liguoro D, Sesay M, et al. Dorsal rhizotomy with anterior sacral root stimulation for neurogenic bladder. Stereotact Funct Neurosurg 2001;76(3-4):243-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12378103
240. Schumacher S, Bross S, Scheepe JR, et al. Extradural cold block for selective neurostimulation of the bladder: development of a new technique. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):950-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022732
241. Kirkham AP, Knight SL, Craggs MD, et al. Neuromodulation through sacral nerve roots 2 to 4 with a Finetech-Brindley sacral posterior and anterior root stimulator. Spinal Cord 2002 Jun;40(6): 272-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12037708
242. Bhadra N, Grünewald V, Creasey G, et al. Selective suppression of sphincter activation during sacral anterior nerve root stimulation. Neurourol Urodyn 2002;21(1):55-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11835425
243. Brindley GS. An implant to empty the bladder or close the urethra. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1977 Apr;40(4):358-69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/406364
244. Schmidt RA, Tanagho EA. Feasibility of controlled micturition through electric stimulation. Urol Int 1979;34(3):199-230. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/382559

245. Braun PM, Baezner H, Seif C, et al. Alterations of cortical electrical activity in patients with sacral neuromodulator. Eur Urol 2002 May;41(5):562-6; discussion 566-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074800
246. Ruud Bosch JL, Groen J. Treatment of refractory urge urinary incontinence with sacral spinal nerve stimulation in multiple sclerosis patients. Lancet 1996 Sep;348(9029):717-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8806291
247. Bosch JL, Groen J. Neuromodulation: urodynamic effects of sacral (S3) spinal nerve stimulation in patients with detrusor instability or detrusor hyperreflexia. Behav Brain Res 1998 May;92(2):141-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9638956
248. Chartier-Kastler EJ, Ruud Bosch JL, Perrigot M, et al. Long-term results of sacral nerve stimulation (S3) for the treatment of neurogenic refractory urge incontinence related to detrusor hyperreflexia. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1476-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025686
249. Groen J, van Mastrigt R, Bosch JL. Computerized assessment of detrusor instability in patients treated with sacral neuromodulation. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):169-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125389
250. Hohenfellner M, Humke J, Hampel C, et al. Chronic sacral neuromodulation for treatment of neurogenic bladder dysfunction: long-term results with unilateral implants. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):887-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744452
251. Haugland M, Sinkjaer T. Interfacing the body's own sensing receptors into neural prosthesis devices. Technol Health Care 1999;7(6):393-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10665672
252. Zhang YH, Shao QA, Wang JM. Enveloping the bladder with displacement of flap of the rectus abdominis muscle for the treatment of neurogenic bladder. J Urol 1990 Nov;144(5):1194-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2146404
253. Stenzl A, Ninkovic M, Kölle D, et al. Restoration of voluntary emptying of the bladder by transplantation of innervated free skeletal muscle. Lancet 1998 May;351(9114):1483-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9605805
254. Vajda P, Kaiser L, Magyarlaki T, et al. Histological findings after colocystoplasty and gastrocystoplasty. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):698-701; discussion 701.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131353
255. Greenwell TJ, Venn SN, Mundy AR. Augmentation cystoplasty. BJU Int 2001 Oct;88(6):511-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11678743
256. Gough DC. Enterocystoplasty. BJU Int 2001 Nov;88(7):739-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890246
257. Quek ML, Ginsberg DA. Long-term urodynamics followup of bladder augmentation for neurogenic bladder. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):195-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478134
258. Chartier-Kastler EJ, Mongiat-Artus P, Bitker MO, et al. Long-term results of augmentation cystoplasty in spinal cord injury patients. Spinal Cord 2000 Aug;38(8):490-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962609
259. Piechota HJ, Dahms SE, Probst M, et al. Functional rat bladder regeneration through xenotransplantation of the bladder acellular matrix graft. Br J Urol 1998 Apr;81(4):548-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598626
260. Sievert KD, Tanagho EA. Organ-specific acellular matrix for reconstruction of the urinary tract. World J Urol 2000 Feb;18(1):19-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10766039
261. Kropp BP, Cheng EY. Bioengineering organs using small intestinal submucosa scaffolds: in vivo tissue-engineering technology. J Endourol 2000 Feb;14(1):59-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10735574
262. Liatsikos EN, Dinlenc CZ, Kapoor R, et al. Tissue expansion: a promising trend for reconstruction in urology. J Endourol 2000 Feb;14(1):93-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10735578
263. Reddy PP, Barrieras DJ, Wilson G, et al. Regeneration of functional bladder substitutes using large segment acellular matrix allografts in a porcine model. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):936-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958712
264. Kawai K, Hattori K, Akaza H. Tissue-engineered artificial urothelium. World J Surg 2000 Oct;24(10):1160-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11071451

265. O'Donnell WF. Urological management in the patient with acute spinal cord injury. Crit Care Clin 1987 Jul;3(3):599-617.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3332216
266. Bennett JK, Gray M, Green BG, et al. Continent diversion and bladder augmentation in spinal cord-injured patients. Semin Urol 1992 May;10(2):121-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1636071
267. Robertson CN, King LR. Bladder substitution in children. Urol Clin North Am 1986 May;13(2):333-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3515729
268. Duckett JW, Lotfi AH. Appendicovesicostomy (and variations) in bladder reconstruction. J Urol 1993 Mar;149(3):567-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8437267
269. Moreno JG, Chancellor MB, Karasick S, et al. Improved quality of life and sexuality with continent urinary diversion in quadriplegic women with umbilical stoma. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1995 Aug;76(8):758-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7632132
270. Mollard P, Gauriau L, Bonnet JP, et al. Continent cystostomy (Mitrofanoff's procedure) for neurogenic bladder in children and adolescent (56 cases: long-term results). Eur J Pediatr Surg 1997 Feb;7(1): 34-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9085806
271. Sylora JA, Gonzalez R, Vaughn M, et al. Intermittent self-catheterization by quadriplegic patients via a catheterizable Mitrofanoff channel. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):48-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976213
272. Cain MP, Casale AJ, King SJ, et al. Appendicovesicostomy and newer alternatives for the Mitrofanoff procedure: results in the last 100 patients at Riley Children's Hospital. J Urol 1999 Nov;162(5): 1749-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524929
273. Stein R, Fisch M, Ermert A, et al. Urinary diversion and orthotopic bladder substitution in children and young adults with neurogenic bladder: a safe option for treatment? J Urol 2000 Feb;163(2):568-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10647686
274. Liard A, Séquier-Lipszyc E, Mathiot A, et al. The Mitrofanoff procedure: 20 years later. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2394-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371985
275. Kajbafzadeh AM, Chubak N. Simultaneous Malone antegrade continent enema and Mitrofanoff principle using the divided appendix: report of a new technique for prevention of stoma complications. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2404-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371987
276. Van Savage JG, Yepuri JN. Transverse retubularized sigmoidovesicostomy continent urinary diversion to the umbilicus. J Urol 2001 Aug;166(2):644-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458110
277. Clark T, Pope JC 4th, Adams C, et al. Factors that influence outcomes of the Mitrofanoff and Malone antegrade continence enema reconstructive procedures in children. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1): 1537-40; discussion 1540.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352454
278. Richter F, Stock JA, Hanna MK. Continent vesicostomy in the absence of the appendix: three methods in 16 children. Urology 2002 Aug;60(2):329-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12137836
279. Shapiro SR, Lebowitz R, Colodny AH. Fate of 90 children with ileal conduit urinary diversion a decade later: analysis of complications, pyelography, renal function and bacteriology. J Urol 1975 Aug;114(2):289-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1159925
280. Hald T, Hebjøorn S. Vesicostomy - an alternative urine diversion operation. Long term results. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1978;12(3):227-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/725543
281. Cass AS, Luxenberg M, Gleich P, et al. A 22-year followup of ileal conduits in children with a neurogenic bladder. J Urol 1984 Sep;132(2):529-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6471190
282. Schwartz SL, Kennelly MJ, McGuire EJ, et al. Incontinent ileo-vesicostomy urinary diversion in the treatment of lower urinary tract dysfunction. J Urol 1994 Jul;152(1):99-102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8201699

283. Atan A, Konety BR, Nangia A, et al. Advantages and risks of ileovesicostomy for the management of neuropathic bladder. Urology 1999 Oct;54(4):636-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510920
284. Herschorn S, Rangaswamy S, Radomski SB. Urinary undiversion in adults with myelodysplasia: longterm followup. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 1):329-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8015064

5. URINARY TRACT INFECTION IN NEUROGENIC LOWER URINARY TRACT DYSFUNCTION

5.1 Introduction

Complicated UTI is the name given to urinary tract infection (UTI) in neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction (NLUTD). A detailed discussion of the clinical presentation, diagnosis, microbiological considerations and treatment strategies of complicated UTI can be found in the *EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections* (1). As stated in these guidelines, bacteriuria in patients with SCI should not be treated, even in cases of intermittent catheterisation. Generally, most knowledge concerning UTI in neurogenic patients comes from studies of patients with SCI and is therefore not directly transferable to other populations, such as MS, stroke, or PD.

5.2 Recurrent urinary tract infection in neurogenic patients

Recurrent UTI in patients with NLUTD may indicate a suboptimal management of the underlying functional problem, e.g. high bladder pressure during storage and voiding, incomplete voiding or bladder stones. The improvement of bladder function and the removal of bladder stones or other direct supporting factors are mandatory. Additionally, UTI prevention strategies can be applied (1).

5.3 Prevention

It is generally agreed that the best prevention of UTI in neurogenic patients is a well-balanced management of the LUTD, including low-pressure urine storage, maintaining a periodical, low resistance and ensuring complete voiding. If clean, intermittent catheterisation (CIC) is used for emptying, aseptic technique and sterile lubricated (2) or hydrophilic catheters (3,4) should be used. Regular voiding and a minimal daily fluid intake of 30 mL/kg body weight are considered to be supportive factors in UTI prevention.

Various approaches have been tried to minimise UTIs in neurogenic bladder. Randomised controlled trials have shown that cranberry extracts have no benefit (5-7). Research has also shown that both methenamine hippurate (8) and bladder irrigation are ineffective (9). Although urine acidification therapy using drugs, such as L-methionine, is widely used in neurogenic patients in an attempt to prevent UTIs, there is little scientific evidence to support its use. Low-dose, long-term, antibiotic prophylaxis may be an option for patients with recurrent UTI (10), but has the disadvantage of possibly increasing bacterial resistance (11). Vaccination therapy for UTI prevention has not been tested in neurogenic patients.

5.3.1 Recommendations for the treatment of urinary tract infection

Recommendations	GR
Bacteriuria in patients with spinal cord injury (SCI) should not be treated, even in cases of intermittent catheterisation.	
As in the general population, the use of long term antibiotics in recurrent UTIs may cause bacterial resistance and caution is advised.	
Protection of the urinary tract is the main focus.	

References

1. Grabe M, Bjerklund-Johansen T-E, Botto H, et al; members of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office. Guidelines on Urological Infections. In: EAU Guidelines, edition presented at the 25th EAU Annual Congress 2010. ISBN 978-90-79754-70-0.

2. Giannantoni A, Di Stasi SM, Scivoletto G, et al. Intermittent catheterization with a prelubricated catheter in spinal cord injured patients: a prospective randomized crossover study. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):130-133.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435839
3. De Ridder DJ, Everaert K, Fernández LG, et al. Intermittent catheterisation with hydrophilic-coated catheters (SpeediCath) reduces the risk of clinical urinary tract infection in spinal cord injured patients: a prospective randomised parallel comparative trial. Eur Urol 2005 Dec;48(6): 991-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16137822
4. Cardenas DD, Hoffman JM. Hydrophilic catheters versus noncoated catheters for reducing the incidence of urinary tract infections: a randomized controlled trial. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2009 Oct;90(10):1668-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19801054
5. Linsenmeyer TA, Harrison B, Oakley A, et al. Evaluation of cranberry supplement for reduction of urinary tract infections in individuals with neurogenic bladders secondary to spinal cord injury. A prospective, double-blinded, placebo-controlled, crossover study. J Spinal Cord Med 2004;27(1): 29-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15156934
6. Waites KB, Canupp KC, Armstrong S, et al. Effect of cranberry extract on bacteriuria and pyuria in persons with neurogenic bladder secondary to spinal cord injury. J Spinal Cord Med 2004;27(1):35-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15156935
7. Hess MJ, Hess PE, Sullivan MR, et al. Evaluation of cranberry tablets for the prevention of urinary tract infections in spinal cord injured patients with neurogenic bladder. Spinal Cord 2008 Sep;46(9):622-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18392039
8. Lee BB, Haran MJ, Hunt LM, et al. Spinal-injured neuropathic bladder antisepsis (SINBA) trial. Spinal Cord 2007 Aug;45(8): 542-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17043681
9. Waites KB, Canupp KC, et al. Evaluation of 3 methods of bladder irrigation to treat bacteriuria in persons with neurogenic bladder. J Spinal Cord Med 2006;29(3):217-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16859225
10. Biering-Sorensen F, Hoiby N, Nordenbo A, et al. Ciprofloxacin as prophylaxis for urinary tract infection: prospective, randomized, cross-over, placebo controlled study in patients with spinal cord lesion. J Urol 1994 Jan;151(1):105-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254783
11. Sandock DS, Gothe BG, Bodner DR. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole prophylaxis against urinary tract infection in the chronic spinal cord injury patient. Paraplegia 1995 Mar;33(3): 156-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7784119

6. TREATMENT OF VESICO-URETERAL REFLUX

6.1 Treatment options

The treatment options for vesico-ureteral reflux in patients with NLUTD do not differ essentially from those in other reflux patients. They become necessary when the high intravesical pressure during the filling phase or during the voiding phase have been treated successfully, but where the reflux did not resolve (1-4). Subtrigonal injections with bulking agents or ureteral re-implantation are the standard procedures.

Subtrigonal injections of bulking agents: This minimal invasive procedure has a relatively good effect with complete success in about 65% of patients (5-12). It can also be easily repeated if not effective and thereby the success rate can be increased to about 75% after the second or third session.

Ureteral re-implantation: This technique has an immediate and long-lasting result in over 90% of the patients (11-13). In deciding which procedure will be offered to the patient, the relative risks of more invasive surgery and of less successful therapy should be considered.

6.2 References

1. Kass EJ, Koff SA, Diokno AC. Fate of vesicoureteral reflux in children with neuropathic bladders managed by intermittent catheterization. J Urol 1981 Jan;125(1):63-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7463586
2. Sidi AA, Peng W, Gonzalez R. Vesicoureteral reflux in children with myelodysplasia: natural history and results of treatment. J Urol 1986 Jul;136(1 Pt 2):329-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3723683
3. López Pereira P, Martinez Urrutia MJ, Lobato Romera R, et al. Should we treat vesicoureteral reflux in patients who simultaneously undergo bladder augmentation for neuropathic bladder? J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2259-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371958
4. Simforoosh N, Tabibi A, Basiri A, et al. Is ureteral reimplantation necessary during augmentation cystoplasty in patients with neurogenic bladder and vesicoureteral reflux? J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1): 1439-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352413
5. Diamond T, Boston VE. The natural history of vesicoureteric reflux in children with neuropathic bladder and open neural tube defects. Z Kinderchir 1987 Dec;42 Suppl 1:15-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3433968
6. Chancellor MB, Rivas DA, Liberman SN, et al. Cystoscopic autogenous fat injection treatment of vesicoureteral reflux in spinal cord injury. J Am Paraplegia Soc 1994 Apr;17(2):50-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8064286
7. Sugiyama T, Hashimoto K, Kiwamoto H, et al. Endoscopic correction of vesicoureteral reflux in patients with neurogenic bladder dysfunction. Int Urol Nephrol 1995;27(5):527-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8775034
8. Misra D, Potts SR, Brown S, et al. Endoscopic treatment of vesico-ureteric reflux in neurogenic bladder–8 years' experience. J Pediatr Surg 1996 Sep;31(9):1262-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8887097
9. Haferkamp A, Möhring K, Staehler G, et al. Long-term efficacy of subureteral collagen injection for endoscopic treatment of vesicoureteral reflux in neurogenic bladder cases. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):274-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604375
10. Shah N, Kabir MJ, Lane T, et al. Vesico-ureteric reflux in adults with neuropathic bladders treated with Polydimethylsiloxane (Macroplastique). Spinal Cord 2001 Feb;39(2):92-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11402365
11. Engel JD, Palmer LS, Cheng EY, et al. Surgical versus endoscopic correction of vesicoureteral reflux in children with neurogenic bladder dysfunction. J Urol 1997 Jun;157(6):2291-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146655
12. Granata C, Buffa P, Di Rovasenda E, et al. Treatment of vesico-ureteric reflux in children with neuropathic bladder: a comparison of surgical and endoscopic correction. J Pediatr Surg 1999 Dec;34(12):1836-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10626867
13. Kaplan WE, Firlit CF. Management of reflux in the myelodysplastic child. J Urol 1983 Jun;129(6): 1195-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6854797

7. SEXUAL (DYS)FUNCTION AND FERTILITY

7.1 Spinal cord injury and sexuality - introduction

Neurological diseases and injuries have a distinct impact on sexual health, but guidelines for their management are still lacking (1). Periodical check-ups using validated questionnaires will help to assess and therefore improve sexual rehabilitation and response (2) (LE: 3).

7.2 Male erectile dysfunction

7.2.1 Medical treatment - Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors

Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors (PDE5Is) are recommended as first-line treatment in men with SCI and ED. They are safe and effective for long-term use. The most common side-effects in men with SCI are headache and flushing, while men with tetraplegia or high-level paraplegia may have postural hypotension for several

hours after using a PDE5I.

Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors are currently the first-line treatment option for ED in patients with SCI because of their high efficacy and safety rates (3-5) (LE: 1b). However, little is known about the effect on erectile function in neurological patients. Tadalafil and sildenafil citrate are effective and safe long-term treatments for patients with MS and PD, respectively (8-11) (LE: 1b).

The great majority of neurogenic patients require long-term therapy for ED. However, some patients have a low compliance rate or they stop therapy because of side-effects (3). In addition, some patients with severe neurological damage may be resistant to PDE5Is (12).

7.2.2 Mechanical devices

Mechanical devices (vacuum tumescence devices and penile rings) may be effective but are less popular (6,7).

7.2.3 Intracavernosal injections

Patients not responding to oral drugs may be offered intracavernosal injections. Intracavernosal penile injectable medications (ICI) are very effective for the treatment of ED in men with SCI, but their use requires careful dose titration and some precautions. The reported complications of intracavernous drugs include priapism and corpora cavernosa fibrosis.

An intracavernosal injection of vasoactive medication is the first therapeutic option to consider in patients taking nitrate medications, for whom there are concerns about drug interactions with PDE5Is, or in patients for whom PDE5Is are ineffective.

Topical agents for penile smooth muscle relaxation (prostaglandin) or intraurethral preparation of prostaglandin E1 (MUSE) were found to be less effective in SCI patients suffering from ED (13).

7.2.4 Penile prostheses

Penile prostheses may be effective for treatment of ED in men with SCI and should be offered when all conservative treatments have failed. Serious complications, including infection and prosthesis perforation, may occur in about 10% of patients, depending on implant type (14-16).

7.2.5 Recommendations sexual dysfunction

Recommendations	GR
Oral PDE5Is are the first-line treatment for erectile dysfunction in men with SCI.	A
Intracavernosal injections of vasoactive drugs (alone or in combination) are the second-line treatment when oral medications have failed.	A
Mechanical devices such as vacuum devices and rings may be effective but are not as popular.	C
Surgical prostheses should be reserved for selected patients who have not responded to conservative therapies.	B

7.3 Male fertility

Reproductive dysfunction in men with SCI is a common condition and is due to a combination of ED, ejaculatory failure, and abnormal semen parameters, even if the definitive causal mechanism is unknown (17) (LE: 3). Assisted reproductive technologies may be needed.

Pregnancy rates are lower than in the general population. But since the advent of intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) men with SCI now have a good chance of becoming biological fathers (18-20).

In men with retrograde ejaculation, the use of a balloon catheter to obstruct the bladder neck may be effective in obtaining antegrade ejaculation (21). More comparative trials are needed to evaluate the impact of intracavernosal injections on ejaculation and orgasmic function, their early use for increasing the recovery rate of a spontaneous erection, and their effectiveness and tolerability in the long-term (3). Prostatic massage is a safe and easy method to use for obtaining semen in men with lesions above T10 (22).

The two most commonly used methods of sperm retrieval are vibrostimulation (VS) and transrectal electroejaculation (EEJ) (23-25). Semen retrieval is more likely with VS in men with lesions above T10 (26-28).

Midodrine may be combined with VS in men not responding to VS alone. However, EEJ is the second choice for sperm retrieval when repeated tries at VS have failed (29).

Surgical procedures, such as epididymal (MESA) or testicular (TESE) sperm retrieval, may be used if VS and EEJ are not successful (30,31).

*7.3.1 **Sperm quality and motility***

The following has been reported about sperm quality and motility:

- Vibratory stimulation produces samples with better sperm motility than electrostimulation (24,32).
- Antegrade samples have better sperm motility than retrograde samples.
- EEJ with interrupted current produces better sperm motility than does continuous current (33).
- Bladder management with clean intermittent catheterisation may improve semen quality compared to indwelling catheterisation, reflex voiding or bladder expression (34).
- Sperm quality in patients with SCI is enhanced by processing in able-bodied seminal plasma (35).

There are no relevant publications about fertility in other neurological pathologies.

7.4 Female sexuality

Studies have shown that most women (65–80%) continue to be sexually active after SCI, but to a much lesser extent than before injury. In addition, about 25% of women with an SCI report a decreased satisfaction with their sexual life (37-39).

Studies show that the greatest physical barrier to sexual activity is urinary leakage. Problems with positioning and spasticity affect mainly tetraplegics. Peer support may help to optimise the sexual adjustment of women with SCI in achieving a more positive self-image, self-esteem and feelings of being attractive to themselves and others (40-43).

The use of specific drugs for sexual dysfunctions is indicated to treat inadequate lubrication. Sildenafil may partially reverse subjective sexual arousal difficulties, while manual and vibratory clitoral stimulation may increase genital responsiveness (44,45).

Neurophysiological studies have shown that women with the ability to perceive T11-L2 pinprick sensations may have psychogenic genital vasocongestion, while reflex lubrication and orgasm is more prevalent in women with SCI who have preserved the sacral reflex arc (S2-S5). These findings are true, even when it has not been shown in an individual woman that a specific level and degree of lesion is the cause of a particular sexual dysfunction. In SCI women with a complete lesion of the sacral reflex, arousal and orgasm may be evoked through stimulation of other erogenous zones above the level of lesions (46-48).

Studies have reported dissatisfaction with the quality and quantity of sexuality related rehabilitation services for women with SCI and that affected women were less likely to receive sexual information than men (48-50).

7.5 Female fertility

The reproductive capacity of women with SCI is only temporarily affected by SCI with cessation of menstruation for approximately 6 months post-SCI (51). About 70% of sexually active women use some form of contraception after injury, but fewer women use the birth control pill compared to before their injury (52).

Although pregnancy is usually normal, women with SCI are more likely to suffer complications during pregnancy, labour and delivery compared to able-bodied women. Complications of labour and delivery include bladder problems, spasticity, pressure sores, and anaemia autonomic dysreflexia (53,54). Obstetric outcomes include higher rates of caesarean sections and an increased incidence of low birth-weight babies (55).

Epidural anaesthesia is chosen and effective for most patients with autonomic dysreflexia during labour and delivery (56,57).

There is very little published data on women's experience of the menopause following an SCI (58). There are no relevant publications about sexuality and fertility in other neurological pathologies.

7.6 References

1. Basson R, Rees P, Wang R, et al. Sexual function in chronic illness. J Sex Med 2010 Jan;7(1):374–88.
2. Lombardi G, Del Popolo G, Macchiarella A, et al. Sexual rehabilitation in women with spinal cord injury: a critical review of the literature. Spinal Cord 2010 Apr 13.) http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20386552
3. Lombardi G, Macchiarella A, Cecconi F, et al. Ten years of phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors in spinal cord injured patients. J Sex Med 2009 May;6(5):1248-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19210710
4. Soler JM, Previnaire JG, Denys P, et al. Phosphodiesterase inhibitors in the treatment of erectile dysfunction in spinal cord-injured men. Spinal Cord 2007 Feb;45(2):169-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16801935
5. Giuliano F, Rubio-Aurioles E, Kennelly M, et al. Vardenafil Study Group. Efficacy and safety of vardenafil in men with erectile dysfunction caused by spinal cord injury. Neurology 2006 Jan;66(2):210-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16434656
6. Lombardi G, Macchiarella A, Del Popolo G. Efficacy and safety of tadalafil for erectile dysfunction in patients with multiple sclerosis. J Sex Med 2010 Jun;7(6):2192-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20384939
7. Lombardi G, Macchiarella A, Cecconi F, et al. Efficacy and safety of medium and long-term tadalafil use in spinal cord patients with erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2009 Feb;6(2):535-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19138363
8. Safarinejad MR, Taghva A, Shekarchi B, et al. Safety and efficacy of sildenafil citrate in the treatment of Parkinson-emergent erectile dysfunction: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized study. Int J Impot Res 2010 Sep-Oct;22(5):325-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20861846
9. Lombardi G, Macchiarella A, Cecconi F, et al. Ten-year follow-up of sildenafil use in spinal cord-injured patients with erectile dysfunction. J Sex Med 2009 Dec;6(12):3449-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19686427
10. Hatzimouratidis K, Hatzichristou DG. Phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors: Unmet needs. Curr Pharm Des 2009 Oct;15(30):3476–85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19860693
11. Earle CM, Seah M, Coulden SE, et al. The use of the vacuum erection device in the management of erectile impotence. Int J Impot Res 1996;8(4 suppl):237-40 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8981174
12. Denil J, Ohl DA, Smythe C. Vacuum erection device in spinal cord injured men: patient and partner satisfaction. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1996 Aug;77(8):750-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8702367
13. Bodner DR, Haas CA, Krueger B, et al. Intraurethral alprostadil for treatment of erectile dysfunction in patients with spinal cord injury. Urology 1999;53:199-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9886612
14. Zermann DH, Kutzenberger J, Sauerwein D, et al. Penile prosthetic surgery in neurologically impaired patients: Long-term followup. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3Pt1):1041-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469612
15. Gross AJ, Sauerwein DH, Kutzenberger J, et al. Penile prostheses in paraplegic men. Br J Urol 1996 Aug;78:262-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8813925
16. Kimoto Y, Iwatsubo E. Penile prostheses for the management of the neuropathic bladder and sexual dysfunction in spinal cord injury patients: long term follow up. Paraplegia 1994;32(5 suppl):336-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8058351
17. Patki P, Woodhouse J, Hamid R, et al. Effects of spinal cord injury on semen parameters. J Spinal Cord Med 2008;31(1):27-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533408
18. Taylor Z, Molloy D, Hill V, et al. Contribution of the assisted reproductive technologies to fertility in males suffering spinal cord injury. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 1999;39:84-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10099757
19. Schatte EC, Orejuela FJ, Lipshultz LI, et al. Treatment of infertility due to anejaculation in the male with electroejaculation and intracytoplasmic sperm injection. J Urol 2000;163:1717-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799167

20. Shieh JY, Chen SU, Wang YH, et al. A protocol of electroejaculation and systematic assisted reproductive technology achieved high efficiency and efficacy for pregnancy for anejaculatory men with spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2003;84:535-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12690592
21. Lim TC, Mallidis C, Hill ST, et al. A simple technique to prevent retrograde ejaculation during assisted ejaculation. Paraplegia 1994;32:142-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8008416
22. Arafa MM, Zohdy WA, Shamloul R. Prostatic massage: a simple method of semen retrieval in men with spinal cord injury. Int J Androl 2007 Jun;30:170-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17298549
23. Rutkowski SB, Geraghty TJ, Hagen DL, et al. A comprehensive approach to the management of male infertility following Spinal Cord Injury. Spinal Cord 1999 Jul;37(7):508-14 .
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10438118
24. Ohl DA, Sonksen J, Menge AC, et al. Electroejaculation versus vibratory stimulation in spinal cord injured men: sperm quality and patient preference. J Urol 1997;157:2147-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146603
25. Kolettis PN, Lambert MC, Hammond KR, et al. Fertility outcomes after electroejaculation in men with spinal cord injury. Fertil Steril 2002;78:429- 31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12137889
26. Beretta G, Chelo E, Zanollo A. Reproductive aspects in spinal cord injured males. Paraplegia 1989;27:113-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2717193
27. Sonksen J, Biering-Sorensen F, Kristensen JK. Ejaculation induced by penile vibratory stimulation in men with spinal cord injuries. The importance of the vibratory amplitude. Paraplegia 1994;32:651-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7831070
28. Brackett NL, Kafetsoulis A, Ibrahim E, et al. Application of 2 vibrators salvages ejaculatory failures to 1 vibrator during penile vibratory stimulation in men with spinal cord injuries. J Urol 2007;177:660-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222653
29. Soler JM, Previnaire JG, Plante P, et al. Mododrine improves ejaculation in spinal cord injured men. J Urol 2007;178:2082-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869290
30. Brackett NL, Lynne CM, Ibrahim E, et al. Treatment of infertility in men with spinal cord injury. Nat Rev Urol 2010 Mar;7(3):162-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20157304
31. Dimitriadis F, Karakitsios K, Tsounapi P, et al. Erectile function and male reproduction in men with spinal cord injury: a review Andrologia 2010 Jun;42(3):139-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20500744
32. Brackett NL, Padron OF, Lynne CM. Semen quality of spinal cord injured men is better when obtained by vibratory stimulation versus electroejaculation. J Urol 1997a;157:151-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976239
33. Brackett NL, Ead DN, Aballa TC, et al. Semen retrieval in men with spinal cord injury is improved by interrupting current delivery during electroejaculation. J Urol 2002;167:201-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743305
34. Rutkowski SB, Middleton JW, Truman G, et al. The influence of bladder management on fertility in spinal cord injured males. Paraplegia 1995;33:263-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7630651
35. Brackett NL, Davi RC, Padron OF, et al. Seminal plasma of spinal cord injured men inhibits sperm motility of normal men. J Urol 1996;155:1632-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627840
36. Brackett NL, Cohen DR, Ibrahim E, et al. Neutralization of cytokine activity at the receptor level improves sperm motility in men with spinal cord injuries. J Androl 2007;28(5):717-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17494103
37. Kreuter M, Sullivan M, Siösteen A. Sexual adjustment and quality of relationship in spinal paraplegia: a controlled study. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1996; 77:541–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8831469
38. Jackson AB, Wadley V. A multicenter study of women's self reported reproductive health after spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Rehabil 1999; 80:1420–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569436

39. Kreuter M, Siösteen A, Biering-Sörensen F. Sexuality and sexual life in women with spinal cord injury: a controlled study. J Rehabil Med 2008;40:61–9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18176739
40. Ferreiro-Velasco ME, Barca-Buyo A, de la Barrera SS, et al. Sexual issues in a sample of women with spinal cord injury. Spinal Cord 2005; 43:51–5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15303115
41. Westgren N, Hulting C, Levi R, et al. Sexuality in women with traumatic spinal cord injuries. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 1997;76:997–83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9435740
42. Harrison J, Glass CA, Owens RG, et al. Factors associated with sexual functioning in women following spinal cord injury. Paraplegia 1995; 33: 687–692.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8927405
43. Reitz A, Tobe V, Knapp PA, Schurch B. Impact of spinal cord injury on sexual health and quality of life. Int J Impot Res 2004; 16:167–74
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14973522
44. Forsythe E, Horsewell JE. Sexual rehabilitation of women with a spinal cord injury. Spinal Cord 2006;44:234–1. Review
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16172622
45. Sipski ML, Rosen RC, Alexander CJ, et al. Sildenafil effects on sexual and cardiovascular responses in women with spinal cord injury. Urology 2000;55:812-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840082
46. Sipski ML, Alexander CJ, Rosen RC. Physiologic parameters associated with sexual arousal in women with incomplete spinal cord injuries. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1997;78:305–13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9084355
47. Sipski ML, Alexander CJ, Rosen RC. Sexual arousal and orgasm in women: effect of spinal cord injury. Ann Neurol 2001;49:35–44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11198294
48. Alexander M, Rosen RC. Spinal cord injuries and orgasm: a review. J Sex Marital Ther 2008; 34: 308–24. Review.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18576233
49. McAlonan S. Improving sexual rehabilitation services: the patient's perspective. Am J Occup Ther 1996;50:826–34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8947375
50. Schopp LH, Hirkpatrick HA, Sanford TC, et al. of comprehensive gynecologic services on health maintenance behaviours among women with spinal cord injury. Disabil Rehabil 2002;24:899–903.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519485
51. Axel SJ. Spinal cord injured women's concerns: Menstruation and pregnancy. Rehabil Nurs 1982;7:10-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6921826
52. Jackson AB, Wadley V. A multicenter study of women's self-reported reproductive health after spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999;80:1420-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569436
53. Baker ER, Cardenas DD. Pregnancy in spinal cord injured women. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1996;77:501-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8629929
54. Baker ER, Cardenas DD, Benedetti TJ. Risks associated with pregnancy in spinal cord-injured women. Obstet Gynecol 1992;80:425-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1495699
55. Jackson AB, Wadley V. A multicenter study of women's self-reported reproductive health after spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999;80:1420-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569436
56. Cross LL, Meythaler JM, Tuel SM, et al. Pregnancy, labor and delivery post spinal cord injury. Paraplegia 1992;30:890-902.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1287543
57. Hughes SJ, Short DJ, Usherwood MM, et al. Management of the pregnant woman with spinal cord injuries. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1991;98:513-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1873238
58. Dannels A, Charlifue S. The perimenopause experience for women with spinal cord injuries. SCI Nurs 2004;21:9-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15176344

8. QUALITY OF LIFE

8.1 Introduction

Quality of life (QoL) is a very important aspect of the global management of NLUTD patients (1). The type of bladder management may influence the health-related QoL (HRQoL) in patients with SCI (2). The effectiveness of urological treatment and the urodynamic functionality of the neurogenic bladder have become increasingly determinant of patient QoL (3). QoL is a reflection of the individual's ability to cope with the new life situation (4). Despite the limitations associated with neurological pathology, adequate treatment is possible in most patients and should not interfere with social independence. QoL can be influenced by several factors including family support, adjustment and coping ability, productivity, self-esteem, financial stability, education, and the physical and social environment (5) (LE: 3). Age, sex, ethnicity, and the patient's acceptance of the condition should also be taken into consideration when assessing QoL (6) (LE: 3).

8.2 Quality of life assessment

There are no specific QoL questionnaires for neurogenic bladder dysfunction or NLUTD. The only validated tools are a generic Visual Analogue Scale (VAS) for symptom bother, and Qualiveen® which is a specific tool for QoL in spinal cord lesion and multiple sclerosis patients. Qualiveen appears to be a discriminative evaluation instrument (3,7-9) and a short form is now available (10).

More commonly, QoL is assessed secondarily by generic HRQL questionnaires such as the Incontinence Quality of Life Instrument (I-QOL), King's Health Questionnaire (KHQ), Short Form 36 Health Survey Questionnaire (SF-36), Euro Quality of Life-5 Domains (EQ-5D), Short Form 6D Health Survey Questionnaire (SF-6D), or the Health Utilities Index (HUI).

Furthermore, the quality-adjusted life year (QALY) metric quantifies patient outcomes, by weighting years of life spent in a specified health state by a factor representing the value that society or patients place on that health state (11) (LE: 3).

8.3 Therapy influence on quality of life

Appropriate therapies should manage symptoms, improve urodynamic parameters, functional abilities and QoL, and avoid secondary complications (8,12). Changes in NLUTD appear to be a major determinant of patient QoL (13,14) (LE: 2a).

8.4 Conclusions and recommendations

Conclusions	LE
One of the main aims of therapy is to improve qualify of life.	1
There is a lack of disease-specific outcome measures assessing HRQoL in patients with NLUTD.	

Recommendations	GR
Quality of life should be assessed when evaluating lower urinary tract symptoms in neurogenic patients and when treating neurogenic bowel dysfunction.	B
The available validated tools are Qualiveen, a specific long- and short-form tool for spinal cord lesion and multiple sclerosis patients and VAS for symptom bother. In addition, generic (SF-36) or specific tools for incontinence (I-QOL) questionnaires can be used.	B

8.5 References

1. Stöhrer M, Blok B, Castro-Diaz D, et al. EAU guidelines on neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):81-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19403235
2. Liu CW, Attar KH, Gall A, et al. The relationship between bladder management and health-related quality of life in patients with spinal cord injury in the UK. Spinal Cord 2010 Apr;48(4):319-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19841636
3. Pannek J, Kullik B. Does optimizing bladder management equal optimizing quality of life? Correlation between health-related quality of life and urodynamic parameters in patients with spinal cord lesions. Urology 2009 Aug;74(2):263-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19428089
4. Ku JH, The management of neurogenic bladder and quality of life in spinal cord injury. BJU Int 2006 Oct;98(4):739-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16978269

5. Whiteneck G, Meade MA, Dijkers M, et al. Environmental factors and their role in participation and life satisfaction after spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 2004 Nov;85(11):1793-803. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15520974
6. Marschall-Kehrel D, Roberts RG, Brubaker L. Patient-reported outcomes in overactive bladder: the influence of perception of condition and expectation for treatment benefit. Urology 2006 Aug:68(2Suppl):29-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16908338
7. Bonniaud V, Jackowski D, Parratte B, et al. Quality of life in multiple sclerosis patients with urinary disorders: discriminative validation of the English version of Qualiveen. Qual Life Res 2005 Mar;14(2):425-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15892431
8. Pappalardo A, Patti F, Reggio A. Management of neuropathic bladder in multiple sclerosis. Clin Ter 2004 May;155(5):183-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15344566
9. Bonniaud V, Bryant D, Parratte B, et al. Qualiveen, a urinary–disorder specific instrument: 0.5 corresponds to the minimal important difference. J Clin Epidemiol 2008 May;61(5):505–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18394545
10. Bonniaud V, Bryant D, Parratte B, et al. Development and validation of the short form of a urinary quality of life questionnaire: SF-Qualiveen. J Urol 2008 Dec;180(6):2592-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18950816
11. Hollingworth W, Campbell JD, Kowalski J, et al. Exploring the impact of changes in neurogenic urinary incontinence frequency and condition-specific quality of life on preference-based outcomes. Qual Life Res 2010 Apr;19(3):323-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20094804
12. Kuo HC. Therapeutic satisfaction and dissatisfaction in patients with spinal cord lesions and detrusor sphincter dyssynergia who received detrusor botulinum toxin a injection. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):1056-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533231
13. Henze T. Managing specific symptoms in people with multiple sclerosis. Int MS J 2005 Aug;12(2): 60-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16417816
14. Kalsi V, Apostolidis A, Popat R, et al. Quality of life changes in patients with neurogenic versus idiopathic detrusor overactivity after intradetrusor injections of botulinum neurotoxin type A and correlations with lower urinary tract symptoms and urodynamic changes. Eur Urol 2006 Mar;49(3): 528-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426735

9. FOLLOW-UP

9.1 Introduction

NLUTD is an unstable condition and can vary considerably, even within a relatively short period. Meticulous follow-up and regular checks are necessary (1-20). Depending on the type of the underlying neurological pathology and on the current stability of the NLUTD, the interval between the detailed investigations should not exceed 1-2 years. In patients with multiple sclerosis and in acute SCI, this interval is of course much smaller. Urine dip sticks should be available for the patient and urinalysis should be performed at least every second month. The upper urinary tract, the bladder shape, and residual urine should be checked every 6 months. Physical examination and blood and urine laboratory should take place every year. Any sign indicating a risk factor warrants specialised investigation.

9.2 Guidelines for follow-up

Possible UTI checked by the patient (dip stick).
Urinalysis every second month.
Upper urinary tract, bladder morphology, and residual urine every 6 months (ultrasound).
Physical examination, blood chemistry, and urine laboratory every year.
Detailed specialistic investigation every 1-2 years and on demand when risk factors emerge. The investigation is specified according to the patient's actual risk profile, but should in any case include a video-urodynamic investigation and should be performed in a leading neuro-urological centre.
All of the above should be more frequent if the neurological pathology or the NLUTD status demand this.

9.3 References

1. Stöhrer M. Alterations in the urinary tract after spinal cord injury–diagnosis, prevention and therapy of late sequelae. World J Urol 1990;7:205-11. http://www.springerlink.com/content/k16411w744170641/fulltext.pdf
2. Perkash I. Long-term urologic management of the patient with spinal cord injury. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Aug;20(3):423-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8351768
3. Selzman AA, Elder JS, Mapstone TB. Urologic consequences of myelodysplasia and other congenital abnormalities of the spinal cord. Urol Clin North Am 1993;20(3):485-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8351774
4. Stöhrer M, Kramer G, Löchner-Ernst D, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of bladder dysfunction in spinal cord injury patients. Eur Urol Update Series 1994;3:170-5.
5. Thon WF, Denil J, Stief CG, et al. [Long-term care of patients with meningomyelocele. II. Theraphy]. Aktuel Urol 25:63-76. [Article in German]
6. Waites KB, Canupp KC, DeVivo MJ, et al. Compliance with annual urologic evaluations and preservation of renal function in persons with spinal cord injury. J Spinal Cord Med 1995 Oct;18(4): 251-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8591072
7. Cardenas DD, Mayo ME, Turner LR. Lower urinary changes over time in suprasacral spinal cord injury. Paraplegia 1995 Jun;33(6):326-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7644258
8. Capitanucci ML, Iacobelli BD, Silveri M, et al. Long-term urological follow-up of occult spinal dysraphism in children. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1996 Dec;6 Suppl 1:25-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9008815
9. Chua HC, Tow A, Tan ES. The neurogenic bladder in spinal cord injury-pattern and management. Ann Acad Med Singapore 1996 Jul;25(4):553-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8893929
10. Agarwal SK, Bagli DJ. Neurogenic bladder. Indian J Pediatr 1997 May-Jun;64(3):313-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10771853
11. Rashid TM, Hollander JB. Multiple sclerosis and the neurogenic bladder. Phys Med Rehabil Clin N Am 1998 Aug;9(3):615-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9894113
12. Burgdorfer H, Heidler H, Madersbacher H, et al. [Guidelines for the urological care of paraplegics]. Urologe A 1998;37:222-8. [Article in German]
13. McKinley WO, Jackson AB, Cardenas DD, et al. Long-term medical complications after traumatic spinal cord injury: a regional model systems analysis. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1999 Nov;80(11): 1402-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10569434
14. Atan A, Konety BR, Nangia A, et al. Advantages and risks of ileovesicostomy for the management of neuropathic bladder. Urology 1999 Oct;54(4):636-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510920
15. Cranidis A, Nestoridis G. Bladder augmentation. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000; 11(1):33-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10738932
16. Elliott DS, Boone TB. Recent advances in the management of the neurogenic bladder. Urology 2000 Dec;56 (6 Suppl 1):76-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11114567

17. Chen Y, DeVivo MJ, Roseman JM. Current trend and risk factors for kidney stones in persons with spinal cord injury: a longitudinal study. Spinal Cord 2000 Jun;38(6):346-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10889563
18. Lawrenson R, Wyndaele JJ, Vlachonikolis I, et al. Renal failure in patients with neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction. Neuroepidemiology 2001 May;20(2):138-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11359083
19. Ciancio SJ, Mutchnik SE, Rivera VM, et al. Urodynamic pattern changes in multiple sclerosis. Urology 2001 Feb;57(2):239-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11182328
20. Burns AS, Rivas DA, Ditunno JF. The management of neurogenic bladder and sexual dysfunction after spinal cord injury. Spine 2001 Dec;26 (24 Suppl):S129-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805620

10. CONCLUSIONS

NLUTD is a multi-faceted pathology. It requires an extensive and specific diagnosis before we can embark on an individualised therapy, which takes into account the medical and physical condition of the patient and the patient's expectations about his future social and physical situation with respect to the NLUTD.

The urologist or paediatric urologist can select from a wealth of therapeutical options, each with its own pros and cons. Notwithstanding the success of any therapy embarked upon, a close surveillance is necessary for the patient's entire life.

With these guidelines, we offer you expert advice on how to define the patient's NLUTD condition as precisely as possible and how to select, together with the patient, the appropriate therapy. This last choice, as always, is governed by the golden rule: as effective as needed, as less invasive as possible.

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

CVA	cerebrovascular
DLPP	detrusor leak point pressure
DO	detrusor overactivity
DSD	detrusor sphincter dyssynergia
EMG	electromyography, electromyogram
FVC	frequency volume chart
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HRQoL	health-related quality of life
IC	intermittent catheterisation
ISC	intermittent self-catheterisation
ICS	international Continence Society
LPP	leak point pressure
LMNL	lower motor neuron lesion
LUT	lower urinary tract
LUTD	lower urinary tract dysfunction
LUTS	lower urinary tract symptoms
MTC	micturition time chart
NDO	neurogenic detrusor overactivity
NLUTD	neurogenic lower urinary tract dysfunction
PNE	percutaneous nerve evaluation test
QoL	quality of life
SARS	sacral anterior root stimulation
SCI	spinal cord injury
SDAF	sacral deafferentation
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
UMNL	upper motor neuron lesion
UTI	urinary tract infection
VAS	visual analogue scale
VS	vibrostimulation

Conflict of interest

All members of the Neurogenic Lower Urinary Tract Dysfunction guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Urolithiasis

C. Türk (chairman), T. Knoll (vice-chairman), A. Petrik,
K. Sarica, M. Straub, C. Seitz

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. METHODOLOGY

1.1 Introduction

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Urolithiasis Guidelines Panel have prepared these guidelines to help urologists assess evidence-based management of stones/calculi and incorporate recommendations into clinical practice.

The document covers most aspects of the disease, which is still a cause of significant morbidity despite technological and scientific advances. The Panel is aware of the geographical variations in healthcare provision.

1.2 Data identification

For this 2012 (limited) update of the Urolithiasis guidelines, a scoping search, covering all content, was performed. Time frame of the search was November 2010 to August 10th, 2011. This search was limited to level 1 evidence (systematic reviews [SRs] and meta-analyses of randomised controlled trials [RCTs]) and English language publications in peer-reviewed journals. Animal studies were excluded.

For this limited update 124 unique records were identified of which 28 new references were selected for inclusion in this document. For a number of sections which included recommendations upgraded following panel consensus (High-risk stone formers and familiar risk [2.6], Patient evaluation [3.1.2] and Decompression of obstructed kidney [4.2.1]) additional verification searches were done to assess whether additional evidence has become available over the past year. These searches were not limited to level 1 data. Only in two instances could a higher level of evidence (not influencing the grade of recommendation) be found (3.2.2 Recommendations for repeat analysis of stone composition and 5.7.2.1 Indications for laparoscopic stone surgery). A more detailed summary of changes can be found below.

Annual scoping searches will be repeated as a standard procedure.

1.3 Evidence sources

Searches were carried out in the Cochrane Library Database of Systematic Reviews, Cochrane Library of Controlled Clinical Trials, and Medline and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform. The searches used the controlled terminology and the use of free text ensured search sensitivity.

Randomised controlled trial strategies were based on Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) and Modified McMaster/Health Information Research Unit (HIRU) filters for RCTs, systematic reviews and practice guidelines on the OVID platform and then translated into Datastar syntax.

For the 2011 full text update, 4,013 papers were identified and 688 were included in the 2011 print, which also included key publications from other sources were proposed by panel members. Initial assessment and selection were based on citation and abstract only, and when in doubt, full-text papers were consulted. Meta-analysis of the stone-free rates for the section on ureteral calculi was updated. An overall scoping search was conducted to ensure that the individual searches met the minimum requirement of identification of all level 1 evidence. There is a need for ongoing re-evaluation of the current guidelines by an expert panel. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available but following the recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients - also taking personal values and preferences/individual circumstances of patients into account.

1.4 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

References in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1), and guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (1). Grading aims to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

** Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

When recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of RCTs may not translate into a grade A recommendation when there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. There may be exceptions where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons, and unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful. Whenever this occurs, it is indicated in the text as "upgraded based on panel consensus". The quality of the underlying scientific evidence must be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (2-4).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can it address local/national preferences systematically. The expert panels include this information whenever it is available.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without RCTs
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

1.5 Publication history

The current guidelines present a limited update following a complete update of the 2011 print version. The first EAU Guidelines on Urolithiasis were published in 2000. Subsequent updates were in 2001 (partial), 2005 (comprehensive), 2008 (comprehensive), and 2009 and 2010 (limited). Several summaries have been published in scientific journals; the first in 2001 (5) and subsequently in 2007 (6,7).

A quick reference document presenting the main findings of the urolithiasis guidelines is also available with several scientific publications in the EAU journal European Urology and Journal of Urology (5-7). All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website:
http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

This document was peer-reviewed prior to publication.

1.5.1 Summary of changes

New literature included

Section	Title
2.3	X-ray characteristics
2.6	Risk groups for stone formation (Table 6)
5.3.4	Factors affecting success of MET
5.5.3	Best clinical practice

5.6.1.5.4	Puncture
5.6.1.5.7	Management of complications following PNL (new Table 14)
5.6.2.2.1	Pre-operative work up and preparations
5.6.2.2.6	Stone extraction new data added
5.6.2.2.8	Stenting prior to, and after URS
5.7.2	Laparoscopic surgery
6.4	Selection of procedure for active removal of kidney stones

New literature resulting in a change of LE in the recommendation sections

3.1	Diagnostic imaging: Patient evaluation (3.1.2) for patients in whom treatment of renal stones is planned (NCCT recommended in favour of IVU)
3.2	Recommendations for repeat stone analysis in patients: (LE:2 - old listing LE:3)
5.7.2.1	Indications for laparoscopic stone surgery - recommendations (LE: 3 - old listing LE: 4)

New literature has been including in the following sections resulting in new recommendations or a change in ranking (GR)

5.7.2.1	Indications for laparoscopic stone surgery - New recommendation on large impact stones or when endoscopic lithotripsy or SWL have failed.
6.4.2	Selection of procedure for active removal of kidney stones.

1.6 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long http://www.gradeworkinggroup.org/publications/Grading_evidence_and_recommendations_BMJ.pdf
5. Tiselius HG, Ackermann D, Alken P, et al; Working Party on Lithiasis, European Association of Urology. Guidelines on Urolithiasis. Eur Urol 2001 Oct;40(4):362-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11713390
6. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al; American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc; European Association of Urology. 2007 Guideline for the management of ureteral calculi. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1610-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074433
7. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al; EAU/AUA Nephrolithiasis Guideline Panel. Guidelines on urolithiasis. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2418-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17993340

2. CLASSIFICATION OF STONES

Urinary stones can be classified according to size, location, X-ray characteristics, aetiology of formation, composition, and risk of recurrence.

2.1 Stone size

Stone size is usually given in one or two dimensions, and stratified into those measuring up to 5, > 5-10, > 10-20, and > 20 mm in largest diameter.

2.2 Stone location

Stones can be classified according to anatomical position: upper, middle or lower calyx; renal pelvis; upper, middle or distal ureter; and urinary bladder. Treatment of bladder stones is not discussed here.

2.3 X-ray characteristics

Stones can be classified according to plain X-ray appearance (kidney-ureter-bladder radiography; KUB) (Table 3), which varies according to mineral composition. Non-contrast-enhanced computer tomography (NCCT) can be used to classify stones according to density, inner structure and composition, which can affect treatment decisions (Section 6.3.4) (1,2).

Table 3: X-ray characteristics

Radiopaque	Poor radiopacity	Radiolucent
Calcium oxalate dihydrate	Magnesium ammonium phosphate	Uric acid
Calcium oxalate monohydrate	Apatite	Ammonium urate
Calcium phosphates	Cystine	Xanthine
		2,8-dihydroxyadenine
		'Drug-stones' (Section 11.11)

2.4 Aetiology of stone formation

Stones can be classified into those caused by: infection, or non-infectious causes (infection and non-infection stones); genetic defects; or adverse drug effects (drug stones) (Table 4).

Table 4: Stones classified by aetiology*

Non-infection stones • Calcium oxalate • Calcium phosphate (including brushite and carbonate apatite) • Uric acid
Infection stones • Magnesium ammonium phosphate • Carbonate apatite • Ammonium urate
Genetic causes • Cystine • Xanthine • 2,8-dihydroxyadenine
Drug stones

*Section 11.4.2

2.5 Stone composition

Metabolic aspects are important in stone formation, and metabolic evaluation is required to rule out any disorders. Analysis in relation to metabolic disorders is the basis for further diagnostic and management decisions. Stones are often formed from a mixture of substances, and that comprising the largest part is the most important. Table 5 lists the clinically most relevant substances and their mineral components.

Table 5: Stone composition

Chemical composition	Mineral
Calcium oxalate monohydrate	whewellite
Calcium oxalate dihydrate	wheddelite
Uric acid dihydrate	uricite
Ammonium urate	
Magnesium ammonium phosphate	struvite
Carbonate apatite (phosphate)	dahllite
Calcium hydrogenphosphate	brushite
Cystine	
Xanthine	
2,8-dihydroxyadenine	
'Drug stones'	

2.6 Risk groups for stone formation

The risk status of stone formers is of particular interest because it defines the probability of recurrence or regrowth, and is imperative for pharmacological treatment.

About 50% of recurrent stone formers have just one lifetime recurrence (3,4). Highly recurrent disease is observed in slightly more than 10% of patients. Stone type and disease severity determine low or high risk of recurrence (Table 6) (5-7).

Table 6: High-risk stone formers (7-12)

General factors
Early onset of urolithiasis (especially children and teenagers)
Familial stone formation
Brushite-containing stones (calcium hydrogen phosphate; $CaHPO_4 . 2H_2O$)
Uric acid and urate-containing stones
Infection stones
Solitary kidney (the solitary kidney itself does not particularly increase risk of stone formation, but prevention of stone recurrence is of more importance)
Diseases associated with stone formation
Hyperparathyroidism
Nephrocalcinosis
Gastrointestinal diseases (i.e. jejuno-ileal bypass, intestinal resection, Crohn's disease, malabsorptive conditions, enteric hyperoxaluria after urinary diversion)
Sarcoidosis
Genetically determined stone formation
Cystinuria (type A, B, AB)
Primary hyperoxaluria (PH)
Renal tubular acidosis (RTA) type I
2,8-dihydroxyadenine
Xanthinuria
Lesch-Nyhan syndrome
Cystic fibrosis
Drugs associated with stone formation (Section 11.11)
Anatomical abnormalities associated with stone formation

Medullary sponge kidney (tubular ectasia)
Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction
Calyceal diverticulum, calyceal cyst
Ureteral stricture
Vesico-uretero-renal reflux
Horseshoe kidney
Ureterocele

2.7 References

1. Kim SC, Burns EK, Lingeman JE, et al. Cystine calculi: correlation of CT-visible structure, CT number, and stone morphology with fragmentation by shock wave lithotripsy. Urol Res 2007 Dec;35(6):319-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17965956
2. Zarse CA, Hameed TA, Jackson ME, et al. CT visible internal stone structure, but not Hounsfield unit value, of calcium oxalate monohydrate (COM) calculi predicts lithotripsy fragility in vitro. Urol Res 2007 Aug;35(4):201-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17565491
3. Hesse A, Brandle E, Wilbert D, et al. Study on the prevalence and incidence of urolithiasis in Germany omparing the years 1979 vs. 2000. Eur Urol 2003 Dec;44(6):709-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14644124
4. Strohmaier WL. Course of calcium stone disease without treatment. What can we expect? Eur Urol 2000 March;37(3):339-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10720863
5. Buchholz N, El-Husseiny T, Moraitis K, et al. Long-term follow-up of recurrent stone-formers: who, how long and how often? BJU Int 2010 Jan;105(1):1-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912208
6. Keoghane S, Walmsley B, Hodgson D. The natural history of untreated renal tract calculi. BJU Int 2010 Jun;105(12):1627-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20438563
7. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the Upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051
8. Hesse AT, Tiselius H-G, Siener R, et al. (Eds). Urinary Stones, Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence. 3rd edn. Basel, S. Karger AG, 2009. ISBN 978-3-8055-9149-2.
9. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, et al (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: *2nd International consultation on Stone Disease*, Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
10. Basiri A, Shakhssalim N, Khoshdel AR, et al. Familial relations and recurrence pattern in nephrolithiasis: new words about old subjects. Urol J 2010 Jun 10;7(2):81-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20535692
11. Sritippayawan S, Borvornpadungkitti S, Paemanee A, et al. Evidence suggesting a genetic contribution to kidney stone in northeastern Thai population. Urol Res 2009 Jun;37(3):141-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19387627
12. Goldfarb DS, Fischer ME, Keich Y, et al. A twin study of genetic and dietary influences on nephrolithiasis: a report from the Vietnam Era Twin (VET) Registry. Kidney Int 2005 Mar;67(3):1053-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15698445

3. DIAGNOSIS

3.1 Diagnostic imaging

Patients with urinary stones usually present with loin pain, vomiting, and sometimes fever, but may also be asymptomatic. Standard evaluation includes detailed medical history and physical examination. Clinical diagnosis should be supported by appropriate imaging.

If available, ultrasonography should be used as the primary diagnostic imaging tool although pain relief, or any other emergency measures should not be delayed by imaging assessments. It is safe (no risk of radiation), reproducible and inexpensive. It can identify stones located in the calices, pelvis, and pyelo-ureteric and vesicoureteric junctions, as well as upper urinary tract dilatation. For stones > 5 mm, ultrasound has a sensitivity of 96% and specificity of nearly 100% (1). For all stone locations, sensitivity and specificity of ultrasound reduces to 78% and 31%, respectively (1).

The sensitivity and specificity of KUB is 44-77% and 80-87%, respectively (2). KUB should not be performed if NCCT is considered (3), however, it is helpful in differentiating between radiolucent and radiopaque stones and for comparison during follow-up.

Recommendation	LE	GR
With fever or solitary kidney, and when diagnosis is doubtful, immediate imaging is indicated.	4	A*

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

3.1.1 Evaluation of patients with acute flank pain

Non-contrast-enhanced computer tomography has become the standard for diagnosing acute flank pain, and has replaced intravenous urography (IVU), which was the gold standard for many years. NCCT can determine stone diameter and density. When stones are absent, the cause of abdominal pain should be identified. Compared with IVU, NCCT shows higher sensitivity and specificity for identifying urinary stones (Table 7) (4-8).

Table 7: Comparison of non-contrast-enhanced computer tomography (NCCT) and intravenous urography (IVU)

Reference	NCCT		IVU	
	Sensitivity	Specificity	Sensitivity	Specificity
Miller (5)	96%	100%	87%	94%
Niall (7)	100%	92%	64%	92%
Sourtzis (4)	100%	100%	66%	100%
Yilmaz (6)	94%	97%	52%	94%
Wang (8)	99%	100%	51%	100%

Recommendation	LE	GR
NCCT should be used to confirm stone diagnosis in patients with acute flank pain, because it is superior to IVU (9,10).	1a	A

NCCT can detect uric acid and xanthine stones, which are radiolucent on plain films, but not indinavir stones (11).

NCCT can determine stone density, inner structure of the stone and skin-to-stone distance; both of which affect extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL) outcome (12-15). The advantage of non-contrast imaging must be balanced against loss of information about renal function and urinary collecting system anatomy, as well as higher radiation dose (Table 8).

Radiation risk can be reduced by low-dose CT (16). In patients with body mass index (BMI) < 30, low-dose CT was 86% sensitive for detecting ureteric stones < 3 mm and 100% sensitive for detecting calculi > 3 mm (17). A meta-analysis of prospective studies (18) showed that low-dose CT diagnosed urolithiasis with a pooled sensitivity of 96.6% (95% CI: 95.0-97.8) and specificity of 94.9% (92.0-97.0).

Table 8: Radiation exposure of imaging modalities (19-22)

Method	Radiation exposure (mSv)
KUB	0.5-1
IVU	1.3-3.5
Regular-dose NCCT	4.5-5
Low-dose NCCT	0.97-1.9
Enhanced CT	25-35

Recommendation	LE	GR
In patients with BMI < 30, low-dose NCCT should be used.	1b	A

3.1.2 Evaluation of patients for whom further treatment of renal stones is planned

A contrast study is recommended if stone removal is planned and the renal collecting system anatomy is not known. Enhanced CT is preferable because it enables 3D-reconstruction of the collecting system, as well as measurement of stone density and skin-to-stone distance. IVU may also be used.

Recommendation	LE	GR
A renal contrast study (enhanced CT or IVU) is indicated when planning treatment for renal stones.	3	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

3.1.3 References

1. Varma G, Nair N, Salim A, et al. Investigations for recognizing urinary stone. Urol Res 2009 Dec;37(6):349-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19826802
2. Heidenreich A, Desgrandschamps F, Terrier F. Modern approach of diagnosis and management of acute flank pain: review of all imaging modalities. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):351-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074804
3. Kennish SJ, Bhatnagar P, Wah TM, et al. Is the KUB radiograph redundant for investigating acute ureteric colic in the non-contrast enhanced computed tomography era? Clin Radiol 2008 Oct;63(10):1131-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18774360
4. Sourtzis S, Thibeau JF, Damry N, et al. Radiologic investigation of renal colic: unenhanced helical CT compared with excretory urography. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1999 Jun;172(6):1491-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10350278
5. Miller OF, Rineer SK, Reichard SR, et al. Prospective comparison of unenhanced spiral computed tomography and intravenous urogram in the evaluation of acute flank pain. Urology 1998 Dec;52(6):982-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9836541
6. Yilmaz S, Sindel T, Arslan G, et al. Renal colic: comparison of spiral CT, US and IVU in the detection of ureteral calculi. Eur Radiol 1998;8(2):212-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov//pubmed/9477267
7. Niall O, Russell J, MacGregor R, et al. A comparison of noncontrast computerized tomography with excretory urography in the assessment of acute flank pain. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):534-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov//pubmed/9915442
8. Wang JH, Shen SH, Huang SS, et al. Prospective comparison of unenhanced spiral computed tomography and intravenous urography in the evaluation of acute renal colic. J Chin Med Assoc 2008 Jan;71(1):30-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18218557
9. Worster A, Preyra I, Weaver B, et al. The accuracy of noncontrast helical computed tomography versus intravenous pyelography in the diagnosis of suspected acute urolithiasis: a meta-analysis. Ann Emerg Med 2002 Sep;40(3):280-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12192351

10. Shine S. Urinary calculus: IVU vs. CT renal stone? A critically appraised topic. Abdom Imaging 2008 Jan-Feb;33(1):41-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17786506
11. Wu DS, Stoller ML. Indinavir urolithiasis. Curr Opin Urol 2000 Nov;10(6):557-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148725
12. El-Nahas AR, El-Assmy AM, Mansour O, et al. A prospective multivariate analysis of factors predicting stone disintegration by extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: the value of high-resolution noncontrast computed tomography. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1688-93; discussion 93-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17161522
13. Patel T, Kozakowski K, Hruby G, et al. Skin to stone distance is an independent predictor of stone-free status following shockwave lithotripsy. J Endourol 2009 Sep;23(9):1383-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19694526
14. Kim SC, Burns EK, Lingeman JE, et al. Cystine calculi: correlation of CT-visible structure, CT number, and stone morphology with fragmentation by shock wave lithotripsy. Urol Res 2007 Dec;35(6):319-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17965956
15. Zarse CA, Hameed TA, Jackson ME, et al. CT visible internal stone structure, but not Hounsfield unit value, of calcium oxalate monohydrate (COM) calculi predicts lithotripsy fragility in vitro. Urol Res 2007 Aug;35(4):201-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17565491
16. Jellison FC, Smith JC, Heldt JP, et al. Effect of low dose radiation computerized tomography protocols on distal ureteral calculus detection. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2762-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837431
17. Poletti PA, Platon A, Rutschmann OT, et al. Low-dose versus standard-dose CT protocol in patients with clinically suspected renal colic. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2007 Apr;188(4):927-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17377025
18. Niemann T, Kollmann T, Bongartz G. Diagnostic performance of low-dose CT for the detection of urolithiasis: a meta-analysis. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2008 Aug;191(2):396-401.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18647908
19. Kluner C, Hein PA, Gralla O, et al. Does ultra-low-dose CT with a radiation dose equivalent to that of KUB suffice to detect renal and ureteral calculi? J Comput Assist Tomogr 2006 Jan-Feb;30(1):44-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16365571
20. Caoili EM, Cohan RH, Korobkin M, et al. Urinary tract abnormalities: initial experience with multidetector row CT urography. Radiology 2002 Feb;222(2):353-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11818599
21. Van Der Molen AJ, Cowan NC, Mueller-Lisse UG, et al. CT urography: definition, indications and techniques. A guideline for clinical practice. Eur Radiol 2008 Jan;18(1):4-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17973110
22. Thomson JM, Glocer J, Abbott C, et al. Computed tomography versus intravenous urography in diagnosis of acute flank pain from urolithiasis: a randomized study comparing imaging costs and radiation dose. Australas Radiol 2001 Aug;45(3):291-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11531751

3.2 Diagnostics - metabolism-related

Each emergency patient with urolithiasis needs a succinct biochemical work-up of urine and blood besides imaging. At that point, no distinction is made between high- and low-risk patients.

Table 9: Recommendations: basic analysis - emergency stone patient (1-4)

Urine	**GR**
Urinary sediment/dipstick test of spot urine sample • red cells • white cells • nitrite • approximate urine pH	A*
Urine culture or microscopy	A
Blood	

Serum blood sample • creatinine • uric acid • ionized calcium • sodium • potassium	A*
Blood cell count CRP	A*
If intervention is likely or planned: Coagulation test (PTT and INR)	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*
CPR = C-reactive protein; INR = international normalised ratio; PTT = partial thromboplastin time.

*3.2.1 **Basic analysis - non-emergency stone patients***

Biochemical work-up is similar for all stone patients. However, examination of sodium, potassium, CRP, blood coagulation time can be omitted for non-emergency cases.

Only patients at high risk for stone recurrence should undergo a more specific analytical programme (4). Stone-specific metabolic evaluation is described in Chapter 11.

The easiest means to achieve correct diagnosis is by analysis of a passed stone using a valid method. Once mineral composition is known, the potential metabolic disorders can be identified.

*3.2.2 **Analysis of stone composition***

Stone analysis should be performed in all first-time stone formers.
In clinical practice, repeat stone analysis is needed in case of:

- recurrence under pharmacological prevention;
- early recurrence after interventional therapy with complete stone clearance;
- late recurrence after a prolonged stone-free period (6).

The patient should be instructed to filter the urine to retrieve a concrement for analysis. Stone passage and restoration of normal renal function should be confirmed.

The preferred analytical procedures are infrared spectroscopy (IRS) or X-ray diffraction (XRD) (5, 7-10).
Equivalent results can be obtained by polarisation microscopy, but only in centres with expertise.
Chemical analysis (wet chemistry) is generally deemed to be obsolete (5).

Table 10: Accuracy of substance identification in stone analysis (5)

Accuracy of identification of substance (%)	Chemical analysis	Infrared spectroscopy	X-ray diffraction
Uric acid	81.0	97.6	97.9
Ammonium urate	83.1	95.0	96.0
Cystine	93.5	99.1	98.5
Xanthine	28.4	96.3	93.2
2,8-Dihydroxyadenine	6.0	80.0	69.6
Whewellite	85.6	97.8	98.7
Struvite	89.5	97.9	98.0
Brushite	69.6	97.4	100.0
Apatite	79.4	93.9	100.0
Calcite	66.0	98.5	98.2
Cholesterol	38.9	98.6	82.4
Silicium dioxide	21.6	95.6	98.1
Gypsum	38.6	96.0	77.1

Recommendations	LE	GR
Always perform stone analysis in first-time formers using a valid procedure (XRD or IRS).	2	A
Repeat stone analysis in patients: • presenting with reccurent stones despite drug therapy; • with early recurrence after complete stone clearance; • with late recurrence after a long stone-free period because stone composition may change (3).	2	B

3.3 References

1. S-3 Guideline AWMF-Register-Nr. 043/044 Urinary Tract Infections. Epidemiology, diagnostics, therapy and management of uncomplicated bacterial community acquired urinary tract infections in adults. http://www.awmf.org/leitlinien/detail/ll/043-044.html
2. Hesse AT, Tiselius H-G. Siener R, et al. (Eds). *Urinary Stones, Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence*. 3rd edn. Basel, S.Karger AG; 2009. ISBN 978-3-8055-9149-2.
3. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, et al (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: 2nd International consultation on Stone Disease. Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
4. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease. Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051
5. Hesse A, Kruse R, Geilenkeuser WJ, et al. Quality control in urinary stone analysis: results of 44 ring trials (1980-2001). Clin Chem Lab Med 2005;43(3):298-303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15843235
6. Mandel N, Mandel I, Fryjoff K, et al. Conversion of calcium oxalate to calcium phosphate with recurrent stone episodes. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2026-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771710
7. Asper R. Stone analysis. Urol Res 1990;18 Suppl 1:S9-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2291252
8. Suror DJ, Scheidt S. Identification standards for human urinary calculus components, using crystallographic methods. Br J Urol 1968 Feb;40(1):22-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5642759
9. Abdel-Halim RE, Abdel-Halim MR. A review of urinary stone analysis techniques. Saudi Med J 2006 Oct;27(10):1462-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17013464

4. TREATMENT OF PATIENTS WITH RENAL COLIC

4.1 Renal colic

*4.1.1 **Pain relief***

Pain relief is the first therapeutic step in patients with an acute stone episode (1,2).

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) are effective in patients with acute stone colic (3-6), and have better analgesic efficacy than opioids. Patients receiving NSAIDs are less likely to require further analgesia in the short term.

Opioids, particularly pethidine, are associated with a high rate of vomiting compared with NSAIDs, and carry a greater likelihood of further analgesia being needed (7,8) (see Section 4.1.3). If an opioid is used, it is recommended that it is not pethidine.

Recommendations	GR
In acute stone episodes, pain relief should be initiated immediately.	A
Whenever possible, an NSAID should be the first drug of choice.	A

4.1.2 ***Prevention of recurrent renal colic***

Most ureteral stones pass spontaneously (Section 5.1.1), and facilitation of passage is discussed in Section 5.3.

For patients with ureteral stones that are expected to pass spontaneously, NSAID tablets or suppositories (e.g. diclofenac sodium, 100-150 mg/day, 3-10 days) may help reduce inflammation and risk of recurrent pain (8-10). Although diclofenac can affect renal function in patients with already reduced function, it has no effect in patients with normal kidney function (LE: 1b) (11).

In a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, recurrent pain episodes of stone colic were significantly fewer in patients treated with NSAIDs (as compared to no NSAIDs) during the first 7 days of treatment (10).

Daily α-blockers reduce recurrent colic (LE: 1a) (Section 5.3) (12,13).

If analgesia cannot be achieved medically, drainage, using stenting or percutaneous nephrostomy, or stone removal, should be performed.

4.1.3 ***Recommendations for analgesia during renal colic***

	LE	GR	Refs.
First choice: start with an NSAID, e.g. diclofenac*, indomethacin or ibuprofen.	1b	A	1-4
Second choice: hydromorphine, pentazocine and tramadol.	4	C	
*Recommended to counteract recurrent pain after ureteral colic.	1b	A	7

**Affects glomerular filtration rate (GFR) in patients with reduced but not normal renal function (LE: 2a) (14).*

Although NSAIDs constitute the first choice for medical management of acute renal colic pain, spasmolytics may be given when parenteral administration of a non-narcotic agent is mandatory (third-line treatment) (15,16).

4.1.4 ***References***

1. Phillips E, Kieley S, Johnson EB, et al. Emergency room management of ureteral calculi: current practices. J Endourol 2009 Jun;23(6):1021-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19445640
2. Micali S, Grande M, Sighinolfi MC, et al. Medical therapy of urolithiasis. J Endourol 2006 Nov;20(11):841-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144848
3. Ramos-Fernández M, Serrano LA. Evaluation and management of renal colic in the emergency department. Bol Asoc Med P R 2009 Jul-Sep;101(3):29-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20120983
4. Engeler DS, Schmid S, Schmid HP. The ideal analgesic treatment for acute renal colic--theory and practice. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2008;42(2):137-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17899475
5. Cohen E, Hafner R, Rotenberg Z, et al. Comparison of ketorolac and diclofenac in the treatment of renal colic. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1998 Aug;54(6):455-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9776434
6. Shokeir AA, Abdulmaaboud M, Farage Y, et al. Resistive index in renal colic: the effect of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. BJU Int 1999 Aug;84(3):249-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10468715
7. Holdgate A, Pollock T. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) versus opioids for acute renal colic. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Apr 18;(2):CD004137. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15846699
8. Esquena S, Millán Rodríguez F, Sánchez-Martín FM, et al. Renal colic: Literature review and scientific evidence. Actas Urol Esp 2006 Mar;30(3):268-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16749583
9. Holdgate A, Pollock T. Systematic review of the relative efficacy of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and opioids in the treatment of acute renal colic. BMJ 2004 Jun 12;328(7453):1401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15178585

10. Laerum E, Ommundsen OE, Gronseth JE, et al. Oral diclofenac in the prophylactic treatment of recurrent renal colic. A double-blind comparison with placebo. Eur Urol 1995;28(2):108-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8529732
11. Lee A, Cooper MG, Craig JC, et al. Effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on postoperative renal function in adults with normal renal function. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;18(2):CD002765. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17443518
12. Dellabella M, Milanese G, Muzzonigro G. Randomized trial of the efficacy of tamsulosin, nifedipine and phloroglucinol in medical expulsive therapy for distal ureteral calculi. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):167-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947613
13. Resim S, Ekerbicer H, Ciftci A. Effect of tamsulosin on the number and intensity of ureteral colic in patients with lower ureteral calculus. Int J Urol 2005 Jul;12(7):615- 20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16045553
14. Walden M, Lahtinen J, Elvander E. Analgesic effect and tolerance of ketoprofen and diclofenac in acute ureteral colic. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(3):323-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8290910
15. Pavlik I, Suchy J, Pacík D, et al. Evaluation of Cizolirtine Citrate to Treat Renal Colic Pain Study Group. Comparison of cizolirtine citrate and metamizol sodium in the treatment of adult acute renal colic: a randomized, double-blind, clinical pilot study. Clin Ther 2004 Jul;26(7):1061-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15336471
16. Edwards J, Meseguer F, Faura C, et al. Single dose dipyrone for acute postoperative pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010 Sep 8;(9):CD003227. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20824835

4.2 Management of sepsis in obstructed kidney

Obstructed, infected kidney is a urological emergency. Urgent decompression is necessary to prevent further complications in infected hydronephrosis secondary to a stone-induced, either unilateral or bilateral renal obstruction.

The optimal method of decompression has yet to be established (1-3). However, it is known that compromised delivery of antibiotics into the obstructed kidney means that the collecting system must be drained to encourage resolution of infection.

*4.2.1 **Decompression***

Currently, there are two options for urgent decompression of obstructed collecting systems:

- placement of an indwelling ureteral catheter under general anaesthesia;
- percutaneous placement of a nephrostomy catheter.

There is little evidence to support the superiority of percutaneous nephrostomy over retrograde stenting as primary treatment of infected hydronephrosis. There is no good-quality evidence to suggest that ureteric stenting under general anaesthesia has more complications than percutaneous nephrostomy. However, the latter has the advantage of avoiding general anaesthesia and instrumentation in the urinary tract (1,4-6).

Only two RCTs (2,5) have assessed decompression of acute infected hydronephrosis. The complications of percutaneous nephrostomy insertion have been reported consistently, but those of ureteric stent insertion are less well described (1).

A “stent first where possible” approach may reduce the requirement for out-of-hours nephrostomy placement in patients with infected hydronephrosis, although it does not eliminate the demand for nephrostomy (1-8).

Definitive treatment of the stone should be delayed until the infection is cleared following a complete course of antimicrobial therapy (9).

Exceptionally, emergency nephrectomy may become necessary for severe sepsis and/or abscess formation.

Statement	LE
For decompression of the renal collecting system, ureteral stents and percutaneous nephrostomy catheters are equally effective.	1b

Recommendation	LE	GR
For sepsis with obstructing stones, the collecting system should be urgently decompressed, using percutaneous drainage or ureteral stenting. Definitive treatment of the stone should be delayed until sepsis is resolved.	1b	A

*4.2.2 **Further measures***

Following urgent decompression of the obstructed and infected system, urine samples should be sent for culture-antibiogram sensitivity testing, and antibiotics should be initiated immediately thereafter. The regimen should be revisited in the light of the culture-antibiogram test. Intensive care might become necessary.

Recommendations	GR
Collect urine for antibiogram test following decompression.	A*
Start antibiotics immediately thereafter (+ intensive care if necessary).	
Revisit antibiotic treatment regimen following antibiogram findings.	

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

*4.2.3 **References***

1. Ramsey S, Robertson A, Ablett MJ, et al. Evidence-based drainage of infected hydronephrosis secondary to ureteric calculi. J Endourol 2010 Feb;24(2):185-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20063999
2. Pearle MS, Pierce HL, Miller GL, et al. Optimal method of urgent decompression of the collecting system for obstruction and infection due to ureteral calculi. J Urol 1998 Oct;160(4):1260-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9751331
3. Uppot RN. Emergent nephrostomy tube placement for acute urinary obstruction. Tech Vasc Interv Radiol 2009 Jun;12(2):154-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19853233
4. Lynch MF, Anson KM, Patel U. Percutaneous nephrostomy and ureteric stent insertion for acute renal deobstruction. Consensus based guidelines. Br J Med Surg Urol 2008 Nov;1(3);120-5. http://www.bjmsu.com/article/S1875-9742(08)00095-5/abstract
5. Mokhmalji H, Braun PM, Portillo FJ, et al. Percutaneous nephrostomy versus ureteral stents for diversion of hydronephrosis caused by stones: A prospective, randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2001 Apr;165(4):1088-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257644
6. Lynch MF, Anson KM, Patel U. Current opinion amongst radiologists and urologists in the UK on percutaneous nephrostomy and ureteric stent insertion for acute renal unobstruction: Results of a postal survey. BJU Int 2006 Dec;98(6):1143-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17125470
7. Yoshimura K, Utsunomiya N, Ichioka K, et al. Emergency drainage for urosepsis associated with upper urinary tract calculi. J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2):458-462. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643207
8. Klein LA, Koyle M, Berg S. The emergency management of patients with ureteral calculi and fever. J Urol 1983 May;129(5):938-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6854761
9. vanSonnenberg E, Casola G, Talner LB, et al. Symptomatic renal obstruction or urosepsis during pregnancy: treatment by sonographically guided percutaneous nephrostomy. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1992 Jan;158(1):91-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1727366
10. Camúñez F, Echenagusia A, Prieto ML, et al. Percutaneous nephrostomy in pyonephrosis. Urol Radiol 1989;11(2):77-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2667249

5. STONE RELIEF

When deciding between active stone removal and conservative treatment with medical expulsive therapy (MET), it is important to consider all the circumstances of a patient that may affect treatment decisions.

5.1 Observation of ureteral stones

5.1.1 Stone-passage rates

There are only limited data about spontaneous stone passage according to size (1,2). A meta-analysis of 328 patients harbouring ureteral stones < 10 mm investigated the likelihood of ureteral stone passage (Table 11) (1). These studies had limitations including non-standardisation of stone size measurement, and lack of analysis of stone position, stone-passage history, and time to stone passage.

Table 11: Likelihood of ureteral stone passage of ureteral stones (1)

Stone size	passage	CI
< 5 mm (n = 224)	68%	(95% CI 46-85%)
> 5 mm (n = 104)	47%	(95% CI 36-58%)
< 2 mm	31 days	
2-4 mm	40 days	
> 4-6 mm	39 days	

95% of stones up to 4 mm pass within 40 days (2).

Recommendations	LE	GR
In patients with newly diagnosed ureteral stones < 10 mm, and if active removal is not indicated (Chapter 6), observation with periodic evaluation is optional initial treatment.	1a	A
Such patients may be offered appropriate medical therapy to facilitate stone passage during observation.*		

**see also Section 5.3, Medical expusive therapy (MET).*

5.2 Observation of kidney stones

Observation of kidney stones, especially in calices, depends on their natural history (Section 6.2.1).

Statement	LE
It is still debatable whether kidney stones should be treated, or whether annual follow-up is sufficient for asymptomatic caliceal stones that have remained stable for 6 months.	4

Recommendations	GR
Kidney stones should be treated in case of growth, formation of de novo obstruction, associated infection, and acute or chronic pain.	A
Comorbidity and patient preference need to be taken into consideration when making treatment decisions.	C
If kidney stones are not treated, periodic evaluation is needed.	A

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.3 Medical expulsive therapy (MET)

Drugs that expel stones might act by relaxing ureteral smooth muscle through inhibition of calcium channel pumps or α-1 receptor blockade (3,4).

MET should only be used in patients who are comfortable with this approach and when there is no obvious advantage from immediate active stone removal.

Meta-analyses have shown that patients with ureteral stones treated with α-blockers or nifedipine are more likely to pass stones with less episodes of colic than those not receiving such therapy (3,5).

Statement	LE
There is growing evidence that MET accelerates spontaneous passage of ureteral stones and fragments generated with SWL, and limits pain (3-15).	1a

*5.3.1 **Choice of medical agent***

5.3.1.1 Alpha-blockers

Tamsulosin is one of the most commonly used alpha-blockers (3,5,16-19). However, one small study has suggested that tamsulosin, terazosin and doxazosin are equally effective, indicating a possible class effect (20). This is also indicated by several trials demonstrating increased stone expulsion using doxazosin (4,20,21) terazosin (20,22) alfuzosin (23-26) and naftopidil (27,28).

Statement	LE
Several trials have demonstrated increased stone expulsion using tamsulosin, doxazosin, terazosin, alfuzosin and naftopidil.	1b

5.3.1.2 Calcium-channel blockers

With regard to the class effect of calcium-channel blockers, only nifedipine has been investigated (LE = 1a) (3,8-10, 29,30).

5.3.1.2.1 Tamsulosin versus nifedipine

Administration of tamsulosin and nifedipine is safe and effective in patients with distal ureteral stones with renal colic. However, tamsulosin is significantly better than nifedipine in relieving renal colic and facilitating and accelerating ureteral stone expulsion (10,29,30).

5.3.1.3 Corticosteroids

Based on studies with a limited number of patients (31,32: LE 1b), no recommendation for the use of corticosteroids in combination with alpha-blockers in MET can be made.

Statement	LE
There is no evidence to support the use of corticosteroids as monotherapy for MET. Insufficient data exist to support the use of corticosteroids in combination with alpha-blockers as an accelerating adjunct (3,20,31,32).	1b

Recommendations for MET	LE	GR
For MET, alpha-blockers or nifedipine are recommended.		A
Patients should be counselled about the attendant risks of MET, including associated drug side effects, and should be informed that it is administered as 'off-label' use.†		A*
Patients, who elect for an attempt at spontaneous passage or MET, should have well-controlled pain, no clinical evidence of sepsis, and adequate renal functional reserve.		A
Patients should be followed once between 1 and 14 days to monitor stone position and to assess for hydronephrosis.	4	A*

† It is not known if tamsulosin harms the human foetus or if it is found in breast milk.
** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

*5.3.2 **Factors affecting success of medical expulsive therapy (Tamsulosin)***

5.3.2.1 Stone size

Due to the high likelihood of spontaneous passage of stones up to ~5 mm, MET is less likely to increase the stone-free rate (4,33-36) (LE: 1b). However, MET does reduce the need for analgesics (3,5) (LE: 1a).

5.3.2.2 Stone location

The vast majority of trials have investigated distal ureteral stones (3). One RCT has assessed the effect of tamsulosin on spontaneous passage of proximal ureteral calculi 5-10 mm. The main effect was to encourage stone migration to a more distal part of the ureter (37) (LE: 1b).

5.3.2.3 Medical expulsive therapy after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)

Clinical studies and several meta-analyses have shown that MET after SWL for ureteral or renal stones can

expedite expulsion and increase stone-free rates and reduce analgesic requirements (6,11,38-46) (LE: 1a).

5.3.2.4 Medical expulsive therapy after ureteroscopy

MET following holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy increases stone-free rates and reduces colic episodes (47) (LE: 1b).

5.3.2.5 Medical expulsive therapy and ureteral stents (section 5.6.2.2.8)

5.3.2.6 Duration of medical expulsive therapy treatment

Most studies have included a duration of 1 month or 30 days. No data is currently available to support other time-intervals.

*5.3.3 **Medical expulsive therapy in the paediatric population***

A recent study has investigated the expulsion rate and time to expulsion of ureteral stones ≤ 10 mm in children aged 2-14 years receiving doxazosin or ibuprofen, but failed to demonstrate the effectiveness of doxazosin (48) (LE: 2a).

Statements	**LE**
MET has an expulsive effect also on proximal ureteral stones.	1b
After SWL for ureteral or renal stones, MET seems to expedite and increase stone-free rates, reducing additional analgesic requirements.	1a
MET in children cannot be recommended due to the limited data in this specific population.	4

*5.3.4 **References***

1. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al. American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc; European Association of Urology. 2007 Guideline for the management of ureteral calculi. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1610-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074433
2. Miller OF, Kane CJ. Time to stone passage for observed ureteral calculi: a guide for patient education. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):688-90; discussion 690-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458343
3. Seitz C, Liatsikos E, Porpiglia F, et al. Medical Therapy to Facilitate the Passage of Stones: What Is the Evidence? Eur Urol 2009 Sep;56(3):455-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19560860
4. Liatsikos EN, Katsakiori PF, Assimakopoulos K, et al. Doxazosin for the management of distal-ureteral stones. J Endourol 2007 May;21(5):538-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17523910
5. Hollingsworth JM, Rogers MA, Kaufman SR, et al. Medical therapy to facilitate urinary stone passage: a meta-analysis. Lancet 2006 Sep;368(9542):1171-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17011944
6. Gravina GL, Costa AM, Ronchi P, et al. Tamsulosin treatment increases clinical success rate of single extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of renal stones. Urology 2005 Jul;66(1):24-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15992885
7. Resim S, Ekerbicer HC, Ciftci A. Role of tamsulosin in treatment of patients with steinstrasse developing after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Urology 2005 Nov;66(5):945-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286100
8. Borghi L, Meschi T, Amato F, et al. Nifedipine and methylprednisolone in facilitating ureteral stone passage: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. J Urol 1994 Oct;152(4):1095-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8072071
9. Porpiglia F, Destefanis P, Fiori C, et al. Effectiveness of nifedipine and deflazacort in the management of distal ureter stones. Urology 2000 Oct;56(4):579-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11018608
10. Dellabella M, Milanese G, Muzzonigro G. Randomized trial of the efficacy of tamsulosin, nifedipine and phloroglucinol in medical expulsive therapy for distal ureteral calculi. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):167-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947613

11. Naja V, Agarwal MM, Mandal AK, et al. Tamsulosin facilitates earlier clearance of stone fragments and reduces pain after shockwave lithotripsy for renal calculi; results from an open-label randomized study. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):1006-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18799202
12. Schuler TD, Shahani R, Honey RJ, et al. Medical expulsive therapy as an adjunct to improve shockwave lithotripsy outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Endourol 2009 Mar;23(3):387-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19245302
13. Parsons JK, Hergan LA, Sakamoto K, et al. Efficacy of alpha blockers for the treatment of ureteral stones. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):983-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296392
14. Singh A, Alter HJ, Littlepage A. A systematic review of medical therapy to facilitate passage of ureteral calculi. Ann Emerg Med 2007 Nov;50(5):552-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17681643
15. Arrabal-Martin M, Valle-Diaz de la Guardia F, Arrabal-Polo MA, et al. Treatment of ureteral lithiasis with tamsulosin: literature review and meta-analysis. Urol Int 2010;84(3):254-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20389151
16. Lojanapiwat B, Kochakarn W, Suparatchatpan N, et al. Effectiveness of low-dose and standard-dose tamsulosin in the treatment of distal ureteric stones: A randomized controlled study. J Int Med Res 2008 May-Jun;36(3):529-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18534135
17. Wang CJ, Huang SW, Chang CH. Efficacy of an alpha1 blocker in expulsive therapy of lower ureteral stones. J Endourol 2008 Jan;22(1):41-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18315472
18. Kaneko T, Matsushima H, Morimoto H, et al. Efficacy of low dose tamsulosin medical expulsive therapy for ureteral stones in Japanese male patients: a randomized controlled study. Int J Urol 2010 May;17(5):462-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20202002
19. Al-Ansari A, Al-Naimi A, Alobaidy A, et al. Efficacy of tamsulosin in the management of lower ureteral stones: a randomized double-blind placebo-controlled study of 100 patients. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):4-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20109697
20. Yilmaz E, Batislam E, Basar MM, et al. The comparison and efficacy of 3 different alpha1-adrenergic blockers for distal ureteral stones. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2010-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879806
21. Zehri AA, Ather MH, Abbas F, et al. Preliminary study of efficacy of doxazosin as a medical expulsive therapy of distal ureteric stones in a randomized clinical trial. Urology 2010 Jun;75(6):1285-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20189226
22. Mohseni MG, Hosseini SR, Alizadeh F. Efficacy of terazosin as a facilitator agent for expulsion of the lower ureteral stones. Saudi Med J 2006 Jun;27(6):838-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16758046
23. Agrawal M, Gupta M, Gupta A, et al. Prospective Randomized Trial Comparing Efficacy of Alfuzosin and Tamsulosin in Management of Lower Ureteral Stones. Urology 2009 Apr;73(4):706-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19193417
24. Pedro RN, Hinck B, Hendlin K, et al. Alfuzosin stone expulsion therapy for distal ureteral calculi: a double-blind, placebo controlled study. J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2244-7, discussion 2247.
http:/4/www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423747
25. Ahmed AF, Al-Sayed AY. Tamsulosin versus Alfuzosin in the Treatment of Patients with Distal Ureteral Stones: Prospective, Randomized, Comparative Study. Korean J Urol 2010 Mar;51(3):193-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20414396
26. Chau LH, Tai DC, Fung BT, et al. Medical expulsive therapy using alfuzosin for patient presenting with ureteral stone less than 10mm: a prospective randomized controlled trial. Int J Urol 2011 Jul;18(7):510-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21592234
27. Sun X, He L, Ge W, et al. Efficacy of selective alpha1D-Blocker Naftopidil as medical expulsive therapy for distal ureteral stones. J Urol 2009 Apr;181(4):1716-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19233432
28. Zhou SG, Lu JL, Hui JH. Comparing efficacy of α(1)D-receptor antagonist naftopidil and α1A/D-receptor antagonist tamsulosin in management of distal ureteral stones. World J Urol 2011 Dec;29(6):767-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21845472

29. Porpiglia F, Ghignone G, Fiori C, et al. Nifedipine versus tamsulosin for the management of lower ureteral stones. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):568-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247732
30. Ye Z, Yang H, Li H, et al. A multicentre, prospective, randomized trial: comparative efficacy of tamsulosin and nifedipine in medical expulsive therapy for distal ureteric stones with renal colic. BJU Int 2011 Jul;108(2):276-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21083640
31. Porpiglia F, Vaccino D, Billia M, et al. Corticosteroids and tamsulosin in the medical expulsive therapy for symptomatic distal ureter stones: single drug or association? Eur Urol 2006 Aug;50(2):339-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16574310
32. Dellabella M, Milanese G, Muzzonigro G. Medical-expulsive therapy for distal ureterolithiasis: randomized prospective study on role of corticosteroids used in combination with tamsulosin simplified treatment regimen and health-related quality of life. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):712-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230122
33. Ferre RM, Wasielewski JN, Strout TD, et al. Tamsulosin for ureteral stones in the emergency department: a Randomized controlled trial. Ann Emerg Med 2009 Sep;54(3):432-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19200622
34. Hermanns T, Sauermann P, Rufibach K, et al. Is there a role for tamsulosin in the treatment of distal ureteral stones of 7 mm or less? Results of a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Eur Urol 2009 Sep;56(3):407-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375849
35. Vincendeau S, Bellissant E, Houlgatte A, et al; Tamsulosin Study Group. Tamsulosin hydrochloride vs placebo for management of distal ureteral stones: a multicentric, randomized, double-blind trial. Arch Intern Med 2010 Dec 13;170(22):2021-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21149761
36. Ochoa-Gómez R, Prieto-Díaz-Chávez E, Trujillo-Hernández B, et al. Tamsulosin does not have greater efficacy than conventional treatment for distal ureteral stone expulsion in Mexican patients. Urol Res 2011 Dec;39(6)491-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21516496
37. Yencilek F, Erturhan S, Canguven O, et al. Does tamsulosin change the management of proximally located ureteral stones? Urol Res 2010 Jun;38(3):195-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20182703
38. Bhagat SK, Chacko NK, Kekre NS, et al. Is there a role for tamsulosin in shock wave lithotripsy for renal and ureteral calculi? J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2185-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509314
39. Küpeli B, Irkilata L, Gürocak S, et al. Does tamsulosin enhance lower ureteral stone clearance with or without shock wave lithotripsy? Urology 2004 Dec;64(6):1111-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596181
40. Wang H, Liu K, Ji Z, et al. Effect of alpha1-adrenergic antagonists on lower ureteral stones with extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Asian J Surg 2010 Jan;33(1):37-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20497881
41. Zhu Y, Duijvesz D, Rovers MM, et al. alpha-Blockers to assist stone clearance after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a meta-analysis. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(2):256-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19889063
42. Hussein MM. Does tamsulosin increase stone clearance after shockwave lithotripsy of renal stones? A prospective, randomized controlled study. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Feb;44(1):27-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947900
43. Singh SK, Pawar DS, Griwan MS, et al. Role of tamsulosin in clearance of upper ureteral calculi after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a randomized controlled trial. Urol J 2011 Winter;8(1):14-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21404197
44. Zheng S, Liu LR, Yuan HC, et al. Tamsulosin as adjunctive treatment after shockwave lithotripsy in patients with upper urinary tract stones: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Dec;44(6):425-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21080841
45. Falahatkar S, Khosropanah I, Vajary AD, et al. Is there a role for tamsulosin after shock wave lithotripsy in the treatment of renal and ureteral calculi? J Endourol 2011 Mar;25(3):495-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21166579

46. Singh SK, Pawar DS, Griwan MS. Tamsulosin as an expulsive therapy for lower ureteric calculus after extra corporeal shock wave lithotripsy: A randomized controlled study. Nephro-Urology Monthly 2011 Jan;3(1): 62-68.
http://numonthly.com/?page=article&article_id=787
47. John TT, Razdan S. Adjunctive tamsulosin improves stone free rate after ureteroscopic lithotripsy of large renal and ureteric calculi: a prospective randomized study. Urology 2010 May;75(5):1040-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19819530
48. Aydogdu O, Burgu B, Gucuk A, et al. Effectiveness of doxazosin in treatment of distal ureteral stones in children. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2880-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19846149

5.4 Chemolytic dissolution of stones

Oral or percutaneous irrigation chemolysis of stones or their fragments can be useful first-line therapy. It may also be an adjunct to SWL, percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL), URS or open surgery to support elimination of small residual fragments. However, because its use as first-line therapy may take weeks to be effective, it is mainly used as an adjunct to endourological therapy.

Combined treatment with SWL and chemolysis is a minimal invasive option for patients with partial or complete infection staghorn stones who are not suitable for PNL. Stone fragmentation leads to increased stone surface area and improved efficacy of chemolitholysis.

Chemolysis is possible only for the stone compositions listed below, therefore, knowledge of stone composition is mandatory before treatment.

*5.4.1 **Percutaneous irrigation chemolysis***

Recommendations	GR
In percutaneous chemolysis, at least two nephrostomy catheters should be used to allow irrigation of the renal collecting system, while preventing chemolytic fluid draining into the bladder and reducing the risk of increased intrarenal pressure*.	A
Pressure- and flow-controlled systems should be used if available.	

** Alternatively, one nephrostomy catheter with a JJ stent and bladder catheter can serve as a through-flow system preventing high pressure.*

Table 12: Methods of percutaneous irrigation chemolysis

Stone composition	Refs.	Irrigation solution	Comments
Struvite Carbon apatite	1-6	10% hemiacidrin, pH 3.5-4 Suby's G	Combination with SWL for staghorn stones
			Risk of cardiac arrest due to hypermagnesaemia
Brushite	7	Hemiacidrin Suby's G	Can be considered for residual fragments
Cystine	8-13	Trihydroxymethyl aminomethane (THAM; 0.3 or 0.6 mol/L), pH 8.5-9.0 N-acetylcysteine (200 mg/L)	Takes significantly longer time than for uric acid stones
			Used for elimination of residual fragments
Uric acid	10,14-18	THAM (0.3 or 0.6 mol/L), pH 8.5-9.0	Oral chemolysis is the preferred option

*5.4.2 **Oral chemolysis***

Oral chemolitholysis is efficient only for uric acid calculi, and is based on alkalinisation of urine by application of alkaline citrate or sodium bicarbonate (14,16,18,19).

When chemolitholysis is planned, the pH should be adjusted to 7.0-7.2. Addition of allopurinol may support chemolysis and prevention of recurrent stones. No formal recommendation on allopurinol use can be given.

In case of uric acid obstruction of the collecting system, oral chemolysis in combination with urinary drainage is indicated (6).

Recommendations	GR
The dosage of alkalising medication must be modified by the patient according to urine pH, which is a direct consequence of alkalising medication.	A
Dipstick monitoring of urine pH by the patient is required at regular intervals during the day. Morning urine must be included.	A
The physician should clearly inform the patient of the significance of compliance.	A

5.4.3 ***References***

1. Tiselius HG, Hellgren E, Andersson A, et al. Minimally invasive treatment of infection staghorn stones with shock wave lithotripsy and chemolysis. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1999 Oct;33(5):286-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10572989
2. Sheldon CA, Smith AD. Chemolysis of calculi. Urol Clin North Am 1982 Feb;9(1):121-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7080280
3. Collins S, Ortiz J, Maruffo F, et al. Expedited struvite-stone dissolution using a high-flow low-pressure irrigation system. J Endourol 2007 Oct;21(10):1153-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17949316
4. Heimbach D, Jacobs D, Muller SC, et al. Chemolitholysis and lithotripsy of infectious urinary stones - an in vitro study. Urol Int 2002;69(3):212-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12372890
5. Levy DA, Resnick MI. Management of urinary stones in the patient with spinal cord injury. Urol Clin North Am 1993 Aug;20(3):435-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8351769
6. Weirich W, Frohneberg D, Ackermann D, et al. [Practical experiences with antegrade local chemolysis of struvite/apatite, uric acid and cystine calculi in the kidney]. Urologe A 1984 Mar;23(2):95-8. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6326367
7. Hesse A, Heimbach D. Causes of phosphate stone formation and the importance of metaphylaxis by urinary acidification: a review. World J Urol 1999 Oct;17(5):308-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10552150
8. Heimbach D, Jacobs D, Muller SC, et al. Improving cystine stone therapy: an in vitro study of dissolution. Urology 2000 Jan;55(1):17-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654887
9. Jacobs D, Heimbach D, Muller SC, et al. Chemolysis of artificial cystine stones (BON(N)-STONES) in vitro using a new dissolution device: first results. J Endourol 2000 Jun;14(5):451-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958570
10. Bernardo NO, Smith AD. Chemolysis of urinary calculi. Urol Clin North Am 2000 May;27(2):355-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10778477
11. Minervini MS, Dormia G, Luongo P, et al. [Instrumental chemolysis of cystine calculi]. Arch Ital Urol Androl 1994 Dec;66(5):249-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7812304
12. Ahlstrand C, Tiselius HG. Treatment of cystine urolithiasis by a combination of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy and chemolysis. J Stone Dis 1993 Jan;5(1):32-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10148259
13. Vandeursen H, Baert L. Combination of chemolysis and extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in cystine urolithiasis. Br J Urol 1991 Apr;67(4):435-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2032086
14. Honda M, Yamamoto K, Momohara C, et al. [Oral chemolysis of uric acid stones]. Hinyokika Kiyo 2003 Jun;49(6):307-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12894725
15. Lee YH, Chang LS, Chen MT, et al. Local chemolysis of obstructive uric acid stone with 0.1 M THAM and 0.02% chlorhexidine. Urol Int 1993;51(3):147-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8249225

16 Chugtai MN, Khan FA, Kaleem M, et al. Management of uric acid stone. J Pak Med Assoc 1992 Jul;42(7):153-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1404830
17. Gaston de Iriarte E, Pertusa C, Carcamo P, et al. [Non-invasive treatment of urinary lithiasis. II. Local chemolysis]. Actas Urol Esp 1985 Nov-Dec;9(6):465-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3914195
18. Tung KH, Tan EC, Foo KT. Chemolysis of uric acid stones. Ann Acad Med Singapore 1984 Oct;13(4):620-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6099081
19. Moran ME, Abrahams HM, Burday DE, et al. Utility of oral dissolution therapy in the management of referred patients with secondarily treated uric acid stones. Urology 2002 Feb;59(2):206-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834386

5.5 Extracorporeal shock wave lilthotripsy (SWL)

Introduction of SWL in the early 1980s dramatically changed the management of urinary tract stones. The development of new lithotripters, modified indications and treatment principles has also completely changed urolithiasis treatment. Modern lithotripters are smaller and usually included in uroradiological tables. They ensure application of SWL and other associated diagnostic and ancillary procedures.

More than 90% of stones in adults might be suitable for SWL treatment (1-3). However, success depends on efficacy of the lithotripter and the following factors:

- size, location (ureteral, pelvic or calyceal), and composition (hardness) of the stones (Chapter 6);
- patient's habitus (Chapter 6);
- performance of SWL (best practice, see below).

Each of these factors has an important influence on retreatment rate and final outcome of SWL.

*5.5.1 **Contraindications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy***

There are several contraindications to the use of extracorporeal SWL, including:

- pregnancy, due to the potential effects on the foetus (4);
- bleeding diatheses, which should be compensated for at least 24 h before and 48 h after treatment (5);
- uncontrolled urinary tract infections (UTIs);
- severe skeletal malformations and severe obesity, which prevent targeting of the stone;
- arterial aneurysm in the vicinity of the stone (6);
- anatomical obstruction distal to the stone.

*5.5.2 **Stenting before carrying out extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy***

5.5.2.1 Stenting in kidney stones

Routine use of internal stents before SWL does not improve stone-free rate (LE: 1b) (7). A JJ stent reduces the risk of renal colic and obstruction, but does not reduce formation of steinstrasse or infective complications (8).

However, stone particles may pass along stents while urine flows in and around the stent. This usually prevents obstruction and loss of ureteral contractions. Occasionally, stents do not efficiently drain purulent or mucoid material, increasing the risk of obstructive pyelonephritis. If fever occurs and lasts for a few days despite correct stent position, the stent must be removed and replaced by a new JJ stent or a percutaneous nephrostomy tube, even when ultrasound does not reveal any dilatation.

5.5.2.2 Stenting in ureteral stones

The 2007 AUA/EAU Guideline on the management of ureteral calculi states that routine stenting is not recommended as part of SWL (9). When the stent is inserted, patients often suffer from frequency, dysuria, urgency, and suprapubic pain (10).

Recommendation	LE	GR
Routine stenting is not recommended as part of SWL treatment of ureteral stones.	1b	A

5.5.3 ***Best clinical practice***

5.5.3.1 Pacemaker

Patients with a pacemaker can be treated with SWL, provided that appropriate technical precautions are taken; patients with implanted cardioverter defibrillators must be managed with special care (firing mode temporarily reprogrammed during SWL treatment). However, this might not be necessary with new-generation lithotripters (11).

5.5.3.2 Shock wave rate

Lowering shock wave frequency from 120 to 60-90 shock waves/min improves stone-free rate (12-16). Tissue damage increases with shock wave frequency (17,18).

Statement	LE	GR
The optimal shock wave frequency is 1.0-1.5 Hz (16).	1a	A

5.5.3.3 Number of shock waves, energy setting and repeat treatment sessions

The number of shock waves that can be delivered at each session depends on the type of lithotripter and shock wave power. There is no consensus on the maximum number of shock waves.

Starting SWL on a lower energy setting with stepwise power (and SWL sequence) ramping can achieve vasoconstriction during treatment (19), which prevents renal injury (20). Animal studies (21) and a prospective randomised study (22) have shown better stone-free rate (96% vs. 72%) using stepwise power ramping, but no difference has been found for fragmentation or evidence of complications after SWL, irrespective of whether ramping was used (23).

There are no conclusive data on the intervals required between repeated SWL sessions. However, clinical experience indicates that repeat sessions are feasible (within 1 day for ureteral stones).

Statement	LE
Clinical experience has shown that repeat sessions are feasible (within 1 day for ureteral stones).	4

5.5.3.4 Improvement of acoustic coupling

Proper acoustic coupling between the cushion of the treatment head and the patient's skin is important. Defects (air pockets) in the coupling gel reflect 99% of shock waves. Only a 2% defect in the gel layer covering the cushion reduces stone fragmentation by 20-40% (24). Ultrasonography gel is probably the optimum agent available for use as a lithotripsy coupling agent (25). To reduce air pockets, ultrasonography gel should be applied to the water cushion straight from the container, rather than by hand (26).

Recommendation	LE	GR
Ensure correct use of the coupling gel because this is crucial for effective shock wave transportation (24).	2a	B

5.5.3.5 Procedural control

Results of treatment are operator dependent, and better results are obtained by urologists who treat larger numbers of patients. During the procedure, careful imaging control of localisation contributes to outcome quality (27).

Recommendation	LE	GR
Maintain careful fluoroscopic and/or ultrasonographic monitoring during the procedure.	4	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.5.3.6 Pain control

Careful control of pain during treatment is necessary to limit pain-induced movements and excessive respiratory excursions (28-30).

Recommendation	LE	GR
Use proper analgesia because it improves treatment results by limiting induced movements and excessive respiratory excursions.	4	C

5.5.3.7 Antibiotic prophylaxis

No standard prophylaxis before SWL is recommended. However, prophylaxis is recommended in case of internal stent placement ahead of anticipated treatments and in the presence of increased bacterial burden (e.g. indwelling catheter, nephrostomy tube, infectious stones) (31,32).

Recommendation	LE	GR
In case of infected stones or bacteriuria, antibiotics should be given prior to SWL.	4	C

5.5.3.8 Medical expulsive therapy after extracorporal shock wave lithotripsy

MET after SWL for ureteral or renal stones can expedite expulsion and increase stone-free rates, as well as reduce additional analgesic requirements (33-43) (Section 5.3.2.3).

*5.5.4 **Complications of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy***

Compared to PNL and ureteroscopy, there are fewer overall complications with SWL (44,45) (Table 13).

Table 13: SWL-related complications (1,4,44-46)

Complications			%	Refs.
Related to stone fragments		Steinstrasse	4-7	47-49
		Regrowth of residual fragments	21-59	50
		Renal colic	2-4	46
Infectious		Bacteriuria in non-infection stones	7.7-23	50,51
		Sepsis	1-2.7	50,51
Tissue effect	Renal	Haematoma, symptomatic	< 1	1,52
		Haematoma, asymptomatic	4 - 19	1,52
	Cardiovascular	Dysrhythmia	11-59	50,53
		Morbid cardiac events	Case reports	50,53
	Gastrointestinal	Bowel perforation	Case reports	54-56
		Liver, spleen haematoma	Case reports	56-58

The relationship between SWL and hypertension or diabetes is unclear. Published data are contradictory and no conclusion can be reached (9,59-61).

*5.5.5 **References***

1. Wen CC, Nakada SY. Treatment selection and outcomes: renal calculi. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Aug;34(3):409-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17678990
2. Miller NL, Lingeman JE. Management of kidney stones. BMJ 2007 Mar 3;334(7591):468-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17332586
3. Galvin DJ, Pearle MS. The contemporary management of renal and ureteric calculi. BJU Int 2006 Dec;98(6):1283-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17125486
4. Ohmori K, Matsuda T, Horii Y, et al. Effects of shock waves on the mouse fetus. J Urol 1994 Jan;151(1):255-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254823
5. Streem SB. Contemporary clinical practice of shock wave lithotripsy: a reevaluation of contraindications. J Urol 1997 Apr;157(4):1197-203. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120901
6. Carey SW, Streem SB. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for patients with calcified ipsilateral renal arterial or abdominal aortic aneurysms. J Urol 1992 Jul;148(1):18-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1613866

7. Musa AA. Use of double-J stents prior to extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy is not beneficial: results of a prospective randomized study. Int Urol Nephrol 2008;40(1):19-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17394095
8. Mohayuddin N, Malik HA, Hussain M, et al. The outcome of extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy for renal pelvic stone with and without JJ stent--a comparative study. J Pak Med Assoc 2009 Mar;59(3):143-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19288938
9. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al; American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc; European Association of Urology. 2007 Guideline for the management of ureteral calculi. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1610-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074433
10. Ghoneim IA, El-Ghoneimy MN, El-Naggar AE, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in impacted upper ureteral stones: a prospective randomized comparison between stented and non-stented techniques. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):45-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19811806
11. Platonov MA, Gillis AM, Kavanagh KM. Pacemakers, implantable cardioverter/defibrillators, and extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: evidence-based guidelines for the modern era. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):243-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294028
12. Yilmaz E, Batislam E, Basar M, et al. Optimal frequency in extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: prospective randomized study. Urology 2005 Dec;66(6):1160-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16360432
13. Pace KT, Ghiculete D, Harju M, et al. Shock wave lithotripsy at 60 or 120 shocks per minute: a randomized, double-blind trial. J Urol 2005 Aug;174(2):595-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006908
14. Madbouly K, El-Tiraifi AM, Seida M, et al. Slow versus fast shock wave lithotripsy rate for urolithiasis: a prospective randomized study. J Urol 2005 Jan;173(1):127-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592053
15. Li WM, Wu WJ, Chou YH, et al. Clinical predictors of stone fragmentation using slow-rate shock wave lithotripsy. Urol Int 2007;79(2):124-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17851280
16. Semins MJ, Trock BJ, Matlaga BR. The effect of shock wave rate on the outcome of shock wave lithotripsy: a meta-analysis. J Urol 2008 Jan;179(1):194-7; discussion 7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18001796
17. Pishchalnikov YA, McAteer JA, Williams JC Jr, et al. Why stones break better at slow shockwave rates than at fast rates: in vitro study with a research electrohydraulic lithotripter. J Endourol 2006 Aug;20(8):537-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903810
18. Connors BA, Evan AP, Blomgren PM, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy at 60 shock waves/min reduces renal injury in a porcine model. BJU Int 2009 Oct:104(7):1004-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19338532
19. Handa RK, Bailey MR, Paun M, et al. Pretreatment with low-energy shock waves induces renal vasoconstriction during standard shock wave lithotripsy (SWL): a treatment protocol known to reduce SWL-induced renal injury. BJU Int 2009 May;103(9):1270-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154458
20. Connors BA, Evan AP, Blomgren PM, et al. Effect of initial shock wave voltage on shock wave lithotripsy-induced lesion size during step-wise voltage ramping. BJU Int 2009 Jan;103(1):104-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18680494
21. Maloney ME, Marguet CG, Zhou Y, et al. Progressive increase of lithotripter output produces better in-vivo stone comminution. J Endourol 2006 Sep;20(9):603-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16999607
22. Demirci D, Sofikerim M, Yalcin E, et al. Comparison of conventional and step-wise shockwave lithotripsy in management of urinary calculi. J Endourol 2007 Dec;21(12):1407-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18044996
23. Honey RJ, Ray AA, Ghiculete D, et al. Shock wave lithotripsy: a randomized, double-blind trial to compare immediate versus delayed voltage escalation. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):38-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19896176

24. Pishchalnikov YA, Neucks JS, VonDerHaar RJ, et al. Air pockets trapped during routine coupling in dry head lithotripsy can significantly decrease the delivery of shock wave energy. J Urol 2006 Dec;176(6 Pt 1):2706-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085200
25. Cartledge JJ, Cross WR, Lloyd SN, et al. The efficacy of a range of contact media as coupling agents in extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy. BJU Int 2001 Sep;88(4):321-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11564013
26. Neucks JS, Pishchalnikov YA, Zancanaro AJ, et al. Improved acoustic coupling for shock wave lithotripsy. Urol Res 2008 Feb;36(1):61-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18172634
27. Logarakis NF, Jewett MA, Luymes J, et al. Variation in clinical outcome following shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):721-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687964
28. Eichel L, Batzold P, Erturk E. Operator experience and adequate anesthesia improve treatment outcome with third-generation lithotripters. J Endourol 2001 Sep;15(7):671-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11697394
29. Sorensen C, Chandhoke P, Moore M, et al. Comparison of intravenous sedation versus general anesthesia on the efficacy of the Doli 50 lithotriptor. J Urol 2002 Jul;168(1):35-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12050487
30. Cleveland RO, Anglade R, Babayan RK. Effect of stone motion on in vitro comminution efficiency of Storz Modulith SLX. J Endourol 2004 Sep;18(7):629-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15597649
31. Bierkens AF, Hendrikx AJ, Ezz el Din KE, et al. The value of antibiotic prophylaxis during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in the prevention of urinary tract infections in patients with urine proven sterile prior to treatment. Eur Urol 1997;31(1):30-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9032531
32. Deliveliotis C, Giftopoulos A, Koutsokalis G, et al. The necessity of prophylactic antibiotics during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Int Urol Nephrol 1997;29(5):517-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9413755
33. Gravina GL, Costa AM, Ronchi P, et al. Tamsulosin treatment increases clinical success rate of single extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of renal stones. Urology 2005 Jul;66(1):24-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15992885
34. Agarwal MM, Naja V, Singh SK, et al. Is there an adjunctive role of tamsulosin to extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy for upper ureteric stones: results of an open label randomized nonplacebo controlled study. Urology 2009 Nov;74(5):989-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19883809
35. Hussein MM. Does tamsulosin increase stone clearance after shockwave lithotripsy of renal stones? A prospective, randomized controlled study. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Feb;44(1):27-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19947900
36. Gravas S, Tzortzis V, Karatzas A, et al. The use of tamsulozin as adjunctive treatment after ESWL in patients with distal ureteral stone: do we really need it? Results from a randomised study. Urol Res 2007 Oct;35(5):231-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17609936
37. Zhu Y, Duijvesz D, Rovers MM, et al. alpha-Blockers to assist stone clearance after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a meta-analysis. BJU Int 2010 Jul;106(2):256-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19889063
38. Schuler TD, Shahani R, Honey RJ, et al. Medical expulsive therapy as an adjunct to improve shockwave lithotripsy outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Endourol 2009 Mar;23(3):387-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19245302
39. Wang CJ, Huang SW, Chang CH. Adjunctive medical therapy with an alpha-1A-specific blocker after shock wave lithotripsy of lower ureteral stones. Urol Int 2009;82(2):166-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19322003
40. Bhagat SK, Chacko NK, Kekre NS, et al. Is there a role for tamsulosin in shock wave lithotripsy for renal and ureteral calculi? J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2185-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509314
41. Falahatkar S, Khosropanah I, Vajary AD, et al. Is there a role for tamsulosin after shock wave lithotripsy in the treatment of renal and ureteral calculi? J Endourol 2011 Mar;25(3):495-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21166579

42. Singh SK, Pawar DS, Griwan MS, et al. Role of tamsulosin in clearance of upper ureteral calculi after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a randomized controlled trial. Urol J 2011 Winter;8(1):14-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21404197
43. Zheng S, Liu LR, Yuan HC, et al. Tamsulosin as adjunctive treatment after shockwave lithotripsy in patients with upper urinary tract stones: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Dec;44(6):425-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21080841
44. Pearle MS, Lingeman JE, Leveillee R, et al. Prospective, randomized trial comparing shock wave lithotripsy and ureteroscopy for lower pole caliceal calculi 1 cm or less. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2005-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879805
45. Lingeman JE, Coury TA, Newman DM, et al. Comparison of results and morbidity of percutaneous nephrostolithotomy and extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 1987 Sep;138(3):485-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3625845
46. Tan YM, Yip SK, Chong TW, et al. Clinical experience and results of ESWL treatment for 3,093 urinary calculi with the Storz Modulith SL 20 lithotripter at the Singapore general hospital. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2002;36(5):363-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12487741
47. Sayed MA, el-Taher AM, Aboul-Ella HA, et al. Steinstrasse after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: aetiology, prevention and management. BJU Int 2001 Nov;88(7):675-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890235
48. Madbouly K, Sheir KZ, Elsobky E, et al. Risk factors for the formation of a steinstrasse after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a statistical model. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832705
49. Ather MH, Shrestha B, Mehmood A. Does ureteral stenting prior to shock wave lithotripsy influence the need for intervention in steinstrasse and related complications? Urol Int 2009;83(2):222-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19752621
50. Skolarikos A, Alivizatos G, de la Rosette J. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy 25 years later: complications and their prevention. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):981-90; discussion 90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481097
51. Muller-Mattheis VG, Schmale D, Seewald M, et al. Bacteremia during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of renal calculi. J Urol 1991 Sep;146(3):733-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1875482
52. Dhar NB, Thornton J, Karafa MT, et al. A multivariate analysis of risk factors associated with subcapsular hematoma formation following electromagnetic shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 2004 Dec;172(6 Pt 1):2271-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538247
53. Zanetti G, Ostini F, Montanari E, et al. Cardiac dysrhythmias induced by extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy. J Endourol 1999 Jul-Aug;13(6):409-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10479005
54. Rodrigues Netto N Jr, Ikonomidis JA, Longo JA, et al. Small-bowel perforation after shockwave lithotripsy. J Endourol 2003 Nov;17(9):719-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14642028
55. Holmberg G, Spinnell S, Sjodin JG. Perforation of the bowel during SWL in prone position. J Endourol 1997 Oct;11(5):313-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9355944
56. Maker V, Layke J. Gastrointestinal injury secondary to extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a review of the literature since its inception. J Am Coll Surg 2004 Jan;198(1):128-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14698320
57. Kim TB, Park HK, Lee KY, et al. Life-threatening complication after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for a renal stone: a hepatic subcapsular hematoma. Korean J Urol 2010 Mar;51(3):212-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20414400
58. Chen CS, Lai MK, Hsieh ML, et al. Subcapsular hematoma of spleen--a complication following extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for ureteral calculus. Changgeng Yi Xue Za Zhi 1992 Dec;15(4):215-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1295657
59. Lingeman JE, Woods JR, Toth PD. Blood pressure changes following extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy and other forms of treatment for nephrolithiasis. JAMA 1990 Apr 4;263(13):1789-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2313851

60. Krambeck AE, Gettman MT, Rohlinger AL, et al. Diabetes mellitus and hypertension associated with shock wave lithotripsy of renal and proximal ureteral stones at 19 years of followup. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1742-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600747
61. Eassa WA, Sheir KZ, Gad HM, et al. Prospective study of the long-term effects of shock wave lithotripsy on renal function and blood pressure. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):964-8; discussion 8-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207167

5.6 Endourology techniques

*5.6.1 **Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PNL)***

Since Goodwin et al. first punctured the kidney in 1955 and Harris et al. used a bronchoscope for nephroscopy in 1975, rapid technological advances have revolutionised endourological procedures. Currently, percutaneous nephrolithothomy (PNL) is a minimally invasive surgical procedure for removal of kidney stones (1,2). Rigid and flexible nephroscopes of different sizes have been developed.

5.6.1.1 Rigid nephroscopes

Rigid nephroscopes are available in diameters up to 28 Ch [Charrière (French) gauge], allowing maximal working and irrigation channels. Thinner nephroscopes are available for Mini-PNL (also known as Mini-perc), which uses nephroscopes of diameter 11-18 Ch. The term Mini-PNL (Mini-perc), although not precisely defined, indicates the use of smaller diameter nephroscopes compared with standard PNL. The smaller diameter results in smaller working channels.

Mini-PNL is associated with less morbidity than standard PNL. However, the benefit of using a smaller-calibre nephroscope to preserve renal parenchyma has not been confirmed (3-5). The use of Mini-PNL in adult patients is controversial, but Mini-PNL is the standard procedure for percutaneous stone removal in children (3,4) (Section 9.2.3).

5.6.1.2 Flexible nephroscopes

In complex cases, such as multiple or staghorn stones, or difficult anatomy, such as horseshoe kidneys, the use of rigid nephroscopes may require multiple access procedures. However, the use of flexible nephroscopes, or combination of retrograde flexible ureteroscopy with standard nephroscopy, reduces the need for multiple-access procedures. New 'chip-on-the-tip' endoscopes are equipped with a camera on the tip of the instrument and a light-emitting diode to improve visibility and handling. Complete stone clearance is viewed endoscopically and by X-ray.

5.6.1.3 Intracorporeal lithotripsy

Intracorporeal lithotripsy can be performed in several different ways (devices are discussed in Section 5.6.2.2.7). During PNL procedures, ultrasonic or pneumatic lithotripters are most commonly used. Electrohydraulic intracorporeal lithotripsy is effective even for hard kidney stones; however, due to potential damage to surrounding tissue, it should only be used in carefully selected cases, such as hard cystine stones.

With the increase in the use of flexible nephroscopes, the holmium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Ho:YAG) laser is becoming more important in ureteroscopy and PNL. It can be used for lithotripsy in parts of the calyceal system that are only accessible with flexible nephroscopes. Where flexible devices are used for PNL, the Ho:YAG laser has become the preferred intracorporeal lithotripter (5).

Recommendations	**GR**
Ultrasonic, ballistic and Ho:YAG devices are recommended for intracorporeal lithotripsy using rigid nephroscopes.	A*
When using flexible instruments, the Ho:YAG laser is currently the most effective device.	

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.6.1.4 Extraction tools

Stones or stone fragments are extracted from the kidney through the access sheath of the nephroscope using forceps or baskets, washing out with irrigation fluid, or using a suction device. New baskets made of nitinol (nickel-titanium alloy) provide additional advantages compared with steel wire baskets. Tipless versions of nitinol baskets are also available for use in calices.

5.6.1.5 Best clinical practice

5.6.1.5.1 Contraindications

All contraindications for general anaesthesia apply. Patients receiving anticoagulant therapy must be monitored carefully pre- and postoperatively. Anticoagulant therapy must be discontinued before PNL (6).

Other important contraindications include:

- untreated UTI;
- atypical bowel interposition;
- tumour in the presumptive access tract area;
- potential malignant kidney tumour;
- pregnancy (see Section 8.2).

5.6.1.5.2 Preoperative imaging

Preprocedural evaluations are summarised in Chapter 3. In particular for PNL, ultrasonography or CT of the kidney and the surrounding structures can provide information about interpositioned organs within the planned percutaneous path (e.g. spleen, liver, large bowel, pleura, lung) (7,8).

Recommendation	GR
Preprocedural imaging, including contrast medium where possible or retrograde study when starting the procedure, is mandatory to assess stone comprehensiveness, view the anatomy of the collecting system, and ensure safe access to the kidney stone.	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.6.1.5.3 Positioning of the patient

Traditionally, the patient is positioned prone for PNL. Supine position is also possible, with or without flank upholstering. Both positions are equally safe. The advantages of the supine position for PNL are (9,10):

- shorter operating time;
- possibility of simultaneous retrograde transurethral manipulation;
- more convenient position for the operator;
- easier anaesthesia.

Although the supine position confers some advantages (9,10), it depends on appropriate equipment being available to position the patient correctly, e.g. X-ray devices and operating table. The supine position can limit the manoeuvrability of instruments (11).

5.6.1.5.4 Puncture

After the insetion of a ureteric catheter, balloon or otherwise, the appropriate calyx is punctured, using fluoroscopy or ultrasonography guidance. Ultrasonography guidance is associated with decreased radiation hazards (12).

Colon interposition in the access tract of PNL can lead to colon injuries. Although rare, such injuries are more likely when operating on the left kidney. The colon is not reliably detectable with ultrasound, so preprocedural imaging is recommended. In particular, preoperative CT provides further information (13,14). However, ultrasound-guided puncture will allow identification of the tissue between the skin and kidney and lower the incidence of bowel injury (15).

5.6.1.5.5 Dilatation

Dilatation of the percutaneous access tract can be achieved using a metallic telescope, single (serial) dilators, or a ureteral balloon dilatator. Use of balloon dilatation can reduce blood transfusion rates (16). One-stage dilatation has been shown to be safe and effective, even in patients with a history of open surgery on the same kidney (17,18).

5.6.1.5.6 Nephrostomy and stents

The decision about whether or not to place a nephrostomy tube at the end of the PNL procedure depends on several factors, including:

- presence of residual stones;
- likelihood of a second-look procedure;
- significant intraoperative blood loss;
- urine extravasation;

- ureteral obstruction;
- potential persistent bacteriuria due to infected stones;
- solitary kidney;
- bleeding diathesis;
- planned percutaneous chemolitholysis.

Ureteral stenting at the end of the procedure is common procedure using antegrade placement of a JJ stent. They are usually placed using the antegrade approach at the end of the procedure. The most important criteria for ureteral stenting are residual stone fragments, inadequate transureteral drainage, or alterations to the pyeloureteral junction. An external ureteral catheter can be used instead of a JJ stent (19).

Tubeless PNL is performed without a nephrostomy tube. When neither a nephrostomy tube nor a ureteral stent is introduced, the procedure is known as totally tubeless PNL. In uncomplicated cases, the latter procedure results in a shorter hospital stay, with no disadvantages reported (20-24).

Recommendation	LE	GR
In uncomplicated cases, tubeless (without nephrostomy tube) or totally tubeless (without nephrostomy tube and without ureteral stent) PNL procedures provide a safe alternative.	1b	A

5.6.1.5.7 Management of complications
The most common postoperative complications associated with PNL are fever and bleeding, urinary leakage and problems due to residual stones. A recent review on complications following PNL used the validated Dindo-modified Clavien system and showed a normal (uncomplicated) postoperative course in 76.7% of patients (Clavien 0) (25) (Table 14). See also the EAU Guidelines on Reporting and Grading of Complications after Surgical Procedures (26).

Table 14: Complications following PNL

Complications	Transfusion	Embolisation	Urinoma	Fever	Sepsis	Thoracic complication	Organ injury	Death	LE
(Range)	(0-20%)	(0-1.5%)	(0-1%)	(0-32.1%)	(0.3-1.1%)	(0-11.6%)	(0-1.7%)	(0-0.3%)	1a
N = 11,929	7%	0,4%	0,2%	10,8%	0,5%	1,5%	0,4%		

Urinary leakage and stone clearance can be viewed endoscopically and by X-ray. In doubtful cases, complications can be minimised by performing standard rather than totally tubeless PNL.

Perioperative fever can occur, even with a sterile preoperative urinary culture and perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis, because the kidney stones themselves may be a source of infection. Intraoperative kidney stone culture may therefore help to select postoperative antibiotics (27,28). Intraoperative irrigation pressure < 30 mm Hg and unobstructed postoperative urinary drainage may be important factors in preventing postoperative sepsis. Well-positioned or specially designed access sheaths can prevent high intrapelvic irrigation pressure (29-31).

Bleeding after PNL may be due to intraparenchymal haemorrhage or acquired intrarenal aneurysm. With the former, brief clamping of the nephrostomy may stem bleeding. The latter may be marked by intense bleeding, and it can be treated by super-selective embolic occlusion of the artery supplying the aneurysm (32).

5.6.1.6 References

1. Goodwin WE, Casey WC, Woolf W. Percutaneous trocar (needle) nephrostomy in hydronephrosis. J Am Med Assoc 1955 Mar 12;157(11):891-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13233046
2. Harris RD, McLaughlin AP 3rd, Harrell JH. Percutaneous nephroscopy using fiberoptic bronchoscope: removal of renal calculus. Urology 1975 Sep;6(3):367-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1162816

3. Desai M, Ridhorkar V, Patel S, et al. Pediatric percutaneous nephrolithotomy: assessing impact of technical innovations on safety and efficacy. J Endourol 1999 Jun;13(5):359-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10446796
4. Feng MI, Tamaddon K, Mikhail A, et al. Prospective randomized study of various techniques of percutaneous nephrolithotomy. Urology 2001 Sep;58(3):345-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11549477
5. Gupta PK. Is the holmium:YAG laser the best intracorporeal lithotripter for the ureter? A 3-year retrospective study. J Endourol 2007 Mar;21(3):305-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17444776
6. Kefer JC, Turna B, Stein RJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of percutaneous nephrostolithotomy in patients on anticoagulant therapy. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):144-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012931
7. Knoll T, Michel MS, Alken P. Surgical Atlas. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy: the Mannheim technique. BJU Int 2007 Jan;99(1):213-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17227510
8. Osman M, Wendt-Nordahl G, Heger K, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy with ultrasonography-guided renal access: experience from over 300 cases. BJU Int 2005 Oct;96(6):875-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16153221
9. De Sio M, Autorino R, Quarto G, et al. Modified supine versus prone position in percutaneous nephrolithotomy for renal stones treatable with a single percutaneous access: a prospective randomized trial. Eur Urol 2008;54(1):196-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18262711
10. Falahatkar S, Moghaddam AA, Salehi M, et al. Complete supine percutaneous nephrolithotripsy comparison with the prone standard technique. J Endourol 2008 Nov;22(11):2513-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19046091
11. Valdivia Uria JG, Valle Gerhold J, López López JA, et al. Technique and complications of percutaneous nephroscopy: experience with 557 patients in the supine position. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 1): 1975-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817303
12. Basiri A, Ziaee AM, Kianian HR, et al. Ultrasonographic versus fluoroscopic access for percutaneous nephrolithotomy: A randomized clinical trial. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):281-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294034
13. Boon JM, Shinners B, Meiring JH. Variations of the position of the colon as applied to percutaneous nephrostomy. Surg Radiol Anat 2001;23(6):421-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11963625
14. Maillet PJ, Dulac JP, Barth X, et al. [Colonic perforations during interventional urinary radiology]. J Radiol 1986 Mar;67(3):225-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3746756
15. Falahatkar S, Neiroomand H, Enshaei A, et al. Totally ultrasound versus fluoroscopically guided complete supine percutaneous nephrolithotripsy: a first report. J Endourol 2010 Sep;24(9):1421-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20687858
16. Tomaszewski JJ, Smaldone MC, Schuster T, et al. Factors affecting blood loss during percutaneous nephrolithotomy using balloon dilation in a large contemporary series. J Endourol 2010 Feb;24(2): 207-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20039798
17. Ziaee SA, Karami H, Aminsharifi A, et al. One-stage tract dilation for percutaneous nephrolithotomy: is it justified? J Endourol 2007 Dec;21(12):1415-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18186676
18. Falahatkar S, Neiroomand H, Akbarpour M, et al. One-shot versus metal telescopic dilation technique for tract creation in percutaneous nephrolithotomy: Comparison of safety and efficacy. J Endourol 2009 Apr;23(4):615-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19335153
19. Gonen M, Ozturk B, Ozkardes H. Double-j stenting compared with one night externalized ureteral catheter placement in tubeless percutaneous nephrolithotomy. J Endourol 2009 Jan;23(1):27-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19118466
20. Kara C, Resorlu B, Bayindir M, et al. A randomized comparison of totally tubeless and standard percutaneous nephrolithotomy in elderly patients. Urology 2010 Aug;76(2):289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20299077

21. Istanbulluoglu MO, Ozturk B, Gonen M, et al. Effectiveness of totally tubeless percutaneous nephrolithotomy in selected patients: a prospective randomized study. Int Urol Nephrol 2009;41(3):541-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19165617
22. Singh I, Singh A, Mittal G. Tubeless percutaneous nephrolithotomy: is it really less morbid? J Endourol 2008 Mar;22(3):427-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18355137
23. Crook TJ, Lockyer CR, Keoghane SR, et al. Totally tubeless percutaneous nephrolithotomy. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):267-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18095863
24. Crook TJ, Lockyer CR, Keoghane SR, et al. A randomized controlled trial of nephrostomy placement versus tubeless percutaneous nephrolithotomy. J Urol 2008 Aug;180(2):612-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18554657
25. Seitz C, Desai M, Häcker A, et al. Incidence, prevention, and management of complications following percutaneous nephrolitholapaxy. Eur Urol 2012 Jan;61(1):146-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21978422
26. Mitropoulos D, Artibani W, Graefen M, et al. Reporting and grading of complications after urologic surgical procedures: an ad hoc EAU guidelines panel assessment and recommendations. Eur Urol 2012 Feb;61(2):341-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22074761
27. Zanetti G, Paparella S, Trinchieri A, et al. Infections and urolithiasis: current clinical evidence in prophylaxis and antibiotic therapy. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2008 Mar;80(1):5-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533618
28. Gonen M, Turan H, Ozturk B, et al. Factors affecting fever following percutaneous nephrolithotomy: a prospective clinical study. J Endourol 2008 Sep;22(9):2135-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18811569
29. Nagele U, Horstmann M, Sievert KD, et al. A newly designed amplatz sheath decreases intrapelvic irrigation pressure during mini-percutaneous nephrolitholapaxy: an in-vitro pressure-measurement and microscopic study. J Endourol 2007 Sep;21(9):1113-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17941796
30. Troxel SA, Low RK. Renal intrapelvic pressure during percutaneous nephrolithotomy and its correlation with the development of postoperative fever. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1348-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352390
31. Zhong W, Zeng G, Wu K, et al. Does a smaller tract in percutaneous nephrolithotomy contribute to high renal pelvic pressure and postoperative fever? J Endourol 2008 Sep;22(9):2147-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18811571
32. Mathieu J, Schulman CC, Struyven J. Percutaneous embolic occlusion of an acquired bleeding intrarenal aneurysm. Eur Urol 1978;4(3):212-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/658077

5.6.2 ***Ureterorenoscopy (URS) (including retrograde access to renal collecting system)***

During the past 20 years, ureterorenoscopy (URS) has dramatically changed the management of ureteral calculi. Major technical improvements include endoscope miniaturization, enhanced optical quality and tools, and introduction of disposables. URS has had a great impact on active stone removal and is performed increasingly worldwide.

5.6.2.1 Instruments

5.6.2.1.1 Rigid scopes

Semi-rigid ureteroscopy for urinary stone removal became a standard procedure in the 1990s. Today, small endoscopes with tip diameters < 8 Ch are mainly used. In Europe, rigid URS is used for proximal and distal ureteral calculi, but an increasing number of urologists prefer flexible endoscopes for proximal calculi. However, rigid URS is safe even for proximal ureteral calculi (1-11).

5.6.2.1.2 Flexible endoscopes

Technological advances have been responsible for the evolution of flexible URS (12), especially for improved deflection mechanisms, which have reached almost 300° in the latest generation, facilitating intrarenal manoeuvrability (13,14). The latest endoscopes have also made it possible to visualise the lower pole in almost all kidneys. Although a secondary active deflection mechanism has been introduced, it has not yet demonstrated its superiority over conventional flexible URS (15,16).

The durability of the latest generation of flexible scopes has been improved by stiffer shaft construction (17,18).

As with rigid scopes, the tip diameters of flexible scopes usually do not exceed 8.7 Ch.

5.6.2.1.3 Digital scopes
The miniaturisation of flexible scopes has significantly improved their effectiveness (19-21), but it has also reduced the number of fibreoptics, and therefore, the optical quality and durability.

Digital URS eliminates the need for fragile low-resolution fibreoptics. The tips of digital ureteroscopes contain digital camera chips (complementary metal-oxide semiconductors or charge-coupled devices), which produce superior image resolution. The tips also have light-emitting-diode-driven light carriers, which provide a substitute for an external light source (22).

Initial experience with digital scopes has demonstrated marked improvement in image quality, with efficacy comparable to that achieved with analogue URS (23,24). To prevent damage to the camera chip, ballistic lithotripsy can no longer be used.

5.6.2.2 Best clinical practice in ureterorenoscopy (URS)
5.6.2.2.1 Preoperative work-up and preparations
Before the procedure, the following information should be sought and actions taken (LE: 4):

- patient history;
- physical examination because anatomical and congenital abnormalities may complicate or prevent retrograde stone manipulation;
- thrombocyte aggregation inhibitors/anticoagulation (anti-platelet drugs) should be discontinued if possible, however URS can be performed in patients with bleeding disorders,with a moderate increase in complications (25,26);
- imaging.

Recommendation	LE	GR
Short-term antibiotic prophylaxis should be administered (27).	4	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.6.2.2.2 Contraindications
Apart from general problems, e.g. with general anaesthesia or untreated urinary infections, URS can be performed in all patients without any specific contraindications. Specific problems such as ureteral strictures may prevent successful retrograde stone management.

5.6.2.2.3 Access to the upper urinary tract
Most interventions are performed under general anaesthesia, although local anaesthesia or spinal anaesthesia are possible. Instrument miniaturisation means that intravenous sedation can be used to achieve the same outcome (28,29).

Intravenous sedation with miniaturised instruments is especially suitable for female patients with distal ureteral stones. However, kidney movement is more pronounced with local or intravenous anaesthesia, which may hinder flexible URS.

Antegrade URS is an option for large, impacted proximal ureteral calculi (5,30) (see Section 6.5.3).

5.6.2.2.4 Safety aspects
Fluoroscopic equipment must be available in the operating room. We recommend placement of a safety wire, even though some groups have demonstrated that URS can be performed without it (31,32). A safety wire prevents false passage in case of perforation, and ensures that a JJ stent can be inserted in difficult situations, thus avoiding more significant complications.

Retrograde access to the upper urinary tract is usually obtained under endoscopic guidance.

Balloon and plastic dilators are available if necessary. If insertion of a flexible URS is difficult, prior rigid ureteroscopy can be helpful for optical dilatation. If ureteral access is not possible, insertion of a JJ stent followed by URS after 7-14 days offers an alternative procedure.

Recommendation	GR
Placement of a safety wire is recommended.	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

5.6.2.2.5 Ureteral access sheaths
Hydrophilic-coated ureteral access sheaths, which are available in different calibres (usual inner diameter of 9 or 12/13 Ch), can be inserted via a guide wire, with the tip placed in the proximal ureter.

Ureteral access sheaths allow easy multiple access to the upper urinary tract and therefore significantly facilitate URS. The use of ureteral access sheaths improves vision by establishing a continuous outflow, decrease intrarenal pressure and potentially reduce operating time (19,33-36).

Ureteral access sheaths allow continuous outflow of irrigation fluid, which improves visual quality and maintains a low-pressure system (36,37).

Ureteral access sheaths are widely accepted and used regularly, despite ongoing debate about potential hazards, including increased ureteral stricture, which has not yet been demonstrated (33).

5.6.2.2.6 Stone extraction
The aim of endourological intervention is complete stone removal (especially in ureteric stones). “Smash and go” strategies might have a higher risk of stone regrowth and postoperative complications (38).

Stones can be extracted by endoscopic forceps or baskets. Forceps allow safe release of stone fragments if they become stuck within the ureter, but extraction takes longer than when using baskets. Only baskets made of nitinol (nickel-titanium alloy) can be used for flexible URS (39-42).

Recommendations	LE	GR
Stone extraction using a basket without endoscopic visualisation of the stone (blind basketing) should not be performed.	4 3	A* B
Nitinol baskets preserve the tip deflection of flexible ureterorenoscopes, and the tipless design reduces the risk of mucosal injury.		
Nitinol baskets are most suitable for use in flexible URS.		

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

Stones that cannot be extracted directly must be disintegrated. If it is difficult to access stones that need disintegration within the lower renal pole, it may help to displace them into a more accessible calyx (*see* Section 6.4.2) (43).

5.6.2.2.7 Intracorporeal lithotripsy
Intracorporeal lithotripsy is usually necessary before stone extraction.

5.6.2.2.7.1 Electrohydraulic systems
Flexible electrohydraulic lithotripsy probes are available for semi-rigid and flexible ureterorenoscopes. If lasers are unavailable, electrohydraulic lithotripsy can disintegrate all types of stones (even cystine or hard stones, such as calcium oxalate monohydrate), even though there is an increased risk of surrounding tissue damage (44-46).

5.6.2.2.7.2 Pneumatic systems
Pneumatic or ballistic lithotripters are often used with 2.4 Ch probes for safe rigid URS and can achieve > 90% disintegration (47-49). Proximal stone migration is a common occurrence (50,51), but can be avoided by using a basket or special tools (6,52-56).

5.6.2.2.7.3 Ultrasound
Ultrasound can be used alone or in combination with pneumatic lithotripsy. However, ultrasound can only be used in larger but not in flexible endoscopes (57,58).

5.6.2.2.7.4 Laser systems

The most efficient laser system for treatment of all types of stones in all locations is the Ho:YAG system (59-70) (LE: 3), which is the gold standard for rigid and flexible URS (65). Compared with the Nd-YAG laser, its rapid absorption in water (3 mm) and minimal tissue penetration (0.4 mm) reduces thermal damage and improves safety (69). Contact with the surface of the stone is required. Other laser systems are being evaluated, but have yet to prove superior in efficacy or safety.

Recommendation	LE	GR
Ho:YAG laser lithotripsy is the preferred method for (flexible) URS.	3	B

5.6.2.2.8 Stenting before and after URS

Routine stenting is no longer necessary before URS. However, pre-stenting facilitates ureteroscopic management of stones, improves the stone-free rate, and reduces complications (71-73).

Most urologists routinely insert a JJ stent following URS, although several randomised prospective trials have found that routine stenting after uncomplicated URS (complete stone removal) is no longer necessary (71,74-85). Ureteric stenting can be associated with lower urinary tract symptoms and pain reducing quality of life (86).

Stents should be inserted in patients who are at increased risk of complications (e.g. residual fragments, bleeding, perforation, urinary tract infections or pregnancy), and in all doubtful cases, to avoid stressful emergencies.

The ideal duration of stenting is not known. Most urologists favour 1-2 weeks after URS (71,74). Patients should be followed up with a plain abdominal film (kidney-ureter-bladder), CT or ultrasound.

Alpha-blockers reduce the morbidity of ureteral stents and increase tolerability (87-90). A recently published meta-analysis provides evidence for improvement of ureteral stent tolerability with tamsulosin (91).

Recommendation	LE	GR
Stenting is optional after uncomplicated URS.	1a	A

5.6.2.2.9 Complications

The overall complication rate after URS is 9-25% (1,9,33,35,66,92) (Table 15). Most are minor and do not require intervention. Ureteral avulsion and strictures used to be greatly feared, but nowadays are rare in experienced hands (< 1%). Previous perforations are the most important risk factor for complications.

Table 15: Complications of URS*

	Rate (%)
Intraoperative complications	3.6
Mucosal injury	1.5
Ureteral perforation	1.7
Significant bleeding	0.1
Ureteral avulsion	0.1
Early complications	6.0
Fever or urosepsis	1.1
Persistent haematuria	2.0
Renal colic	2.2
Late complications	0.2
Ureteral stricture	0.1
Persistent vesicoureteral reflux	0.1

**From Geavlete, et al. (9).*

5.6.2.3 References

1. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al; American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc; European Association of Urology. 2007 Guideline for the management of ureteral calculi. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1610-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074433
2. Salem HK. A prospective randomized study comparing shock wave lithotripsy and semirigid ureteroscopy for the management of proximal ureteral calculi. Urology 2009 Dec;74(6):1216-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19815264
3. Ather MH, Nazim SM, Sulaiman MN. Efficacy of semirigid ureteroscopy with pneumatic lithotripsy for ureteral stone surface area of greater than 30 mm2. J Endourol 2009 Apr;23(4):619-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19335149
4. Fuganti PE, Pires S, Branco R, et al. Predictive factors for intraoperative complications in semirigid ureteroscopy: analysis of 1235 ballistic ureterolithotripsies. Urology 2008 Oct;72(4):770-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18632141
5. Basiri A, Simforoosh N, Ziaee A, et al. Retrograde, antegrade, and laparoscopic approaches for the management of large, proximal ureteral stones: a randomized clinical trial. J Endourol 2008 Dec;22(12):2677-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19025388
6. Pedro RN, Netto NR Jr. Proximal ureteral calculi: shock wave or ureterolithotripsy? Urol Int 2008;81(2):198-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18758219
7. Karlsen SJ, Renkel J, Tahir AR, et al. Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy versus ureteroscopy for 5- to 10- mm stones in the proximal ureter: Prospective effectiveness patient- preference trial. J Endourol 2007 Jan;21(1):28-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17263604
8. Honeck P, Häcker A, Alken P, et al. Shock wave lithotripsy versus ureteroscopy for distal ureteral calculi: a prospective study. Urol Res 2006 Jun;34(3):190-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16446978
9. Geavlete P, Georgescu D, Nita G, et al. Complications of 2735 retrograde semirigid ureteroscopy procedures: a single-center experience. J Endourol 2006 Mar;20(3):179-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16548724
10. Grossi FS, Ferretti S, Di LS, et al. A prospective randomized multicentric study comparing stented vs non- stented ureteroscopic lithotripsy. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2006 Jun;78(2):53-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16929603
11. Wu CF, Shee JJ, Lin WY, et al. Comparison between extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy and semirigid ureterorenoscope with holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy for treating large proximal ureteral stones. J Urol 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1899-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540749
12. Chow GK, Patterson DE, Blute ML, et al. Ureteroscopy: effect of technology and technique on clinical practice. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):99-102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796655
13. Wendt-Nordahl G, Mut T, Krombach P, et al. Do new generation flexible ureterorenoscopes offer a higher treatment success than their predecessors? Urol Res 2011 Jun;39(3):185-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21052986
14. Wendt-Nordahl G, Trojan L, Alken P, et al. Ureteroscopy for stone treatment using new 270 degrees semiflexible endoscope: in vitro, ex vivo, and clinical application. J Endourol 2007 Dec;21(12):1439-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18186680
15. Shvarts O, Perry KT, Goff B, et al. Improved functional deflection with a dual-deflection flexible ureteroscope. J Endourol 2004 Mar;18(2):141-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072620
16. Ankem MK, Lowry PS, Slovick RW, et al. Clinical utility of dual active deflection flexible ureteroscope during upper tract ureteropyeloscopy. Urology 2004 Sep;64(3):430-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15351558
17. Knudsen B, Miyaoka R, Shah K, et al. Durability of the next-generation flexible fiberoptic ureteroscopes: a randomized prospective multi-institutional clinical trial. Urology 2010;75(3):534-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19854494
18. Monga M, Best S, Venkatesh R, et al. Durability of flexible ureteroscopes: a randomized, prospective study. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):137-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753388

19. Skolarikos AA, Papatsoris AG, Mitsogiannis IC, et al. Current status of ureteroscopic treatment for urolithiasis. Int J Urol 2009 Sep;16(9):713-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19674169
20. Lahme S, Zimmermanns V, Hochmuth A, et al. Stones of the upper urinary tract. Update on minimalinvasive endourological treatment. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2008 Mar;80(1):13-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533619
21. Breda A, Ogunyemi O, Leppert JT, et al. Flexible ureteroscopy and laser lithotripsy for single intrarenal stones 2 cm or greater--is this the new frontier? J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):981-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207179
22. Humphreys MR, Miller NL, Williams JC Jr, et al. A new world revealed: early experience with digital ureteroscopy. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):970-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207196
23. Binbay M, Yuruk E, Akman T, et al. Is there a difference in outcomes between digital and fiberoptic flexible ureterorenoscopy procedures? J Endourol 2010 Dec;24(12)1929-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21043835
24. Mitchell S, Havranek E, Patel A. First digital flexible ureterorenoscope: initial experience. J Endourol 2008 Jan;22(1):47-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18315473
25. Watterson JD, Girvan AR, Cook AJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of holmium: YAG laser lithotripsy in patients with bleeding diatheses. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):442-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131284
26. Turna B, Stein RJ, Smaldone MC, et al. Safety and efficacy of flexible ureterorenoscopy and holmium:YAG lithotripsy for intrarenal stones in anticoagulated cases. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1415-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18289567
27. Grabe M, Botto H, Cek M et al (2010). *Preoperative assessment of the patient, risk factor identification and tentative classification of surgical field contamination in urologic surgery*. In: Naber KG, Schaeffer AJ, Heyns CF et al (Hrsg) Urogenital infections. European Association of Urology, Arnhem, The Netherlands, S 667- 685.
28. Rao MP, Kumar S, Dutta B, et al. Safety and efficacy of ureteroscopic lithotripsy for ureteral calculi under sedoanalgesia--a prospective study. Int Urol Nephrol 2005;37(2):219-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16142546
29. Cybulski PA, Joo H, Honey RJ. Ureteroscopy: anesthetic considerations. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Feb;31(1):43-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15040400
30. Sun X, Xia S, Lu J, et al. Treatment of large impacted proximal ureteral stones: randomized comparison of percutaneous antegrade ureterolithotripsy versus retrograde ureterolithotripsy. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):913-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18429682
31. Dickstein RJ, Kreshover JE, Babayan RK, et al. Is a safety wire necessary during routine flexible ureteroscopy? J Endourol 2010 Oct;24(10):1589-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20836719
32. Eandi JA, Hu B, Low RK. Evaluation of the impact and need for use of a safety guidewire during ureteroscopy. J Endourol 2008 Aug;22(8):1653-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18721045
33. Stern JM, Yiee J, Park S. Safety and efficacy of ureteral access sheaths. J Endourol 2007 Feb;21(2):119-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17338606
34. Kourambas J, Byrne RR, Preminger GM. Does a ureteral access sheath facilitate ureteroscopy? J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):789-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176469
35. Delvecchio FC, Auge BK, Brizuela RM, et al. Assessment of stricture formation with the ureteral access sheath. Urology 2003 Mar;61(3):518-22; discussion 22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12639636
36. Auge BK, Pietrow PK, Lallas CD, et al. Ureteral access sheath provides protection against elevated renal pressures during routine flexible ureteroscopic stone manipulation. J Endourol 2004 Feb;18(1):33-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15006050

37. Ng YH, Somani BK, Dennison A, et al. Irrigant flow and intrarenal pressure during flexible ureteroscopy: the effect of different access sheaths, working channel instruments, and hydrostatic pressure. J Endourol 2010 Dec;24(12):1915-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21067276
38. Schatloff O, Lindner U, Ramon J, et al. Randomized trial of stone fragment active retrieval versus spontaneous passage during holmium laser lithotripsy for ureteral stones. J Urol 2010 Mar;183(3):1031-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20092848
39. Paffen ML, Keizer JG, de Winter GV, et al. A comparison of the physical properties of four new generation flexible ureteroscopes: (de)flection, flow properties, torsion stiffness, and optical characteristics. J Endourol 2008 Oct;22(10):2227-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18831670
40. Bach T, Geavlete B, Herrmann TR, et al. Working tools in flexible ureterorenoscopy--influence on flow and deflection: what does matter? J Endourol 2008 Aug;22(8):1639-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18620506
41. Chiu KY, Cai Y, Marcovich R, et al. Comparison of the mechanical, flow, and optical properties of contemporary flexible ureteroscopes. Urology 2003 Nov;62(5):800-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14624897
42. Michel MS, Knoll T, Ptaschnyk T, et al. Flexible ureterorenoscopy for the treatment of lower pole calyx stones: influence of different lithotripsy probes and stone extraction tools on scope deflection and irrigation flow. Eur Urol 2002 Mar;41(3):312-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12180234
43. Auge BK, Dahm P, Wu NZ, et al. Ureteroscopic management of lower-pole renal calculi: technique of calculus displacement. J Endourol 2001 Oct;15(8):835-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11724125
44. Teichman JM, Rao RD, Rogenes VJ, et al. Ureteroscopic management of ureteral calculi: electrohydraulic versus holmium:YAG lithotripsy. J Urol 1997 Oct;158(4):1357-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9302119
45. Mariani AJ. Combined electrohydraulic and holmium:YAG laser ureteroscopic nephrolithotripsy of large (greater than 4 cm) renal calculi. J Urol 2007 Jan;177(1):168-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17162030
46. Michel MS, Kohrmann KU, Alken P. Update on contact lithotripsy. Curr Opin Urol 2000 Nov;10(6): 571-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11148727
47. Delvecchio FC, Kuo RL, et al. Clinical efficacy of combined lithoclast and lithovac stone removal during ureteroscopy. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):40-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840420
48. Vorreuther R, Klotz T, Heidenreich A, et al. Pneumatic v electrokinetic lithotripsy in treatment of ureteral stones. J Endourol 1998 Jun;12(3):233-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9658292
49. Nerli RB, Koura AC, Prabha V, et al. Use of LMA Stonebreaker as an intracorporeal lithotrite in the management of ureteral calculi. J Endourol 2008 Apr;22(4):641-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18419209
50. Garg S, Mandal AK, Singh SK, et al. Ureteroscopic laser lithotripsy versus ballistic lithotripsy for treatment of ureteric stones: a prospective comparative study. Urol Int 2009;82(3):341-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19440025
51. Manohar T, Ganpule A, Desai M. Comparative evaluation of Swiss LithoClast 2 and holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy for impacted upper-ureteral stones. J Endourol 2008 Mar;22(3):443-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18355139
52. Ahmed M, Pedro RN, Kieley S, et al. Systematic evaluation of ureteral occlusion devices: insertion, deployment, stone migration, and extraction. Urology 2009 May;73(5):976-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394493
53. Marickar YM, Nair N, Varma G, et al. Retrieval methods for urinary stones. Urol Res 2009 Dec;37(6):369-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19834701
54. Eisner BH, Dretler SP. Use of the Stone Cone for prevention of calculus retropulsion during holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy: case series and review of the literature. Urol Int 2009;82(3):356-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19440028

55. Kesler SS, Pierre SA, Brison DI, et al. Use of the Escape nitinol stone retrieval basket facilitates fragmentation and extraction of ureteral and renal calculi: a pilot study. J Endourol 2008 Jun;22(6):1213-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18578653
56. Kesler SS, Pierre SA, Brison DI, et al. Use of the Escape TM nitinol stone retrieval basket facilitates fragmentation and extraction of ureteral and renal calculi: A pilot study. J Endourol 2008 Jun;22(6):1213-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18578653
57. Arancio M, Guglielmetti S, Delsignore A, et al. [Stone Cone(R) in ureteroscopic ballistic lithotripsy of proximal ureteral stones.]. Urologia 2008 October-December;75(4):237-40. [Article in Italian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21086339
58. WuJungle CH, Lin MS, Hsieh HL, et al. The efficacy of a combined pneumatic/ultrasound device in percutaneous nepholithotripsy. Mid-Taiwan Journal of Medicine 2007;12(1):8-13.
http://www.airiti.com/ceps/ec_en/ecjnlarticleView.aspx?jnlcattype=1&jnlptype=5&jnltype=44&jnliid=510&issueiid=48095&atliid=751772
59. Auge BK, Lallas CD, Pietrow PK, et al. In vitro comparison of standard ultrasound and pneumatic lithotrites with a new combination intracorporeal lithotripsy device. Urology 2002 Jul;60(1):28-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12100916
60. Fuh E, Haleblian GE, Norris RD, et al. The effect of frequency doubled, double pulse Nd:YAG laser fiber proximity to the target stone on transient cavitation and acoustic emission. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1542-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382775
61. Yates J, Zabbo A, Pareek G. A comparison of the FREDDY and holmium lasers during ureteroscopic lithotripsy. Lasers Surg Med 2007 Sep;39(8):637-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17886276
62. Marguet CG, Sung JC, Springhart WP, et al. In vitro comparison of stone retropulsion and fragmentation of the frequency doubled, double pulse nd:yag laser and the holmium:yag laser. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1797-800.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821590
63. Delvecchio FC, Auge BK, Brizuela RM, et al. In vitro analysis of stone fragmentation ability of the FREDDY laser. J Endourol 2003 Apr;17(3):177-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12803991
64. Zorcher T, Hochberger J, Schrott KM, et al. In vitro study concerning the efficiency of the frequencydoubled double-pulse Neodymium:YAG laser (FREDDY) for lithotripsy of calculi in the urinary tract. Lasers Surg Med 1999;25(1):38-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10421884
65. Bader MJ, Gratzke C, Walther S, et al. Efficacy of retrograde ureteropyeloscopic holmium laser lithotripsy for intrarenal calculi > 2 cm. Urol Res 2010 Oct;38(5):397-402.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20204341
66. Matlaga BR, Lingeman JE. Surgical management of stones: new technology. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis 2009 Jan;16(1):60-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19095207
67. Breda A, Ogunyemi O, Leppert JT, et al. Flexible ureteroscopy and laser lithotripsy for multiple unilateral intrarenal stones. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1190-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18571315
68. Leijte JA, Oddens JR, Lock TM. Holmium laser lithotripsy for ureteral calculi: predictive factors for complications and success. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):257-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294030
69. Gupta PK. Is the holmium:YAG laser the best intracorporeal lithotripter for the ureter? A 3-year retrospective study. J Endourol 2007 Mar;21(3):305-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17444776
70. Pierre S, Preminger GM. Holmium laser for stone management. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):235-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17340157
71. Farkas A, Peteri L, Lorincz L, et al. Holmium:YAG laser treatment of ureteral calculi: A 5-year experience. Lasers Med Sci 2006 Sep;21(3):170-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16897107
72. Rubenstein RA, Zhao LC, Loeb S, et al. Prestenting improves ureteroscopic stone-free rates. J Endourol 2007 Nov;21(11):1277-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18042014

73. Hubert KC, Palmer JS. Passive dilation by ureteral stenting before ureteroscopy: eliminating the need for active dilation. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):1079-80; discussion 80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094062
74. Haleblian G, Kijvikai K, de la Rosette J, et al. Ureteral stenting and urinary stone management: a systematic review. J Urol 2008 Feb;179(2):424-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18076928
75. Auge BK, Sarvis JA, L'Esperance J O, et al. Practice patterns of ureteral stenting after routine ureteroscopic stone surgery: a survey of practicing urologists. J Endourol 2007 Nov;21(11):1287-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18042016
76. Cevik I, Dillioglugil O, Akdas A, et al. Is stent placement necessary after uncomplicated ureteroscopy for removal of impacted ureteral stones? J Endourol 2010 Aug;24(8):1263-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20615145
77. Wang CJ, Huang SW, Chang CH. Indications of stented uncomplicated ureteroscopic lithotripsy: a prospective randomized controlled study. Urol Res 2009 Apr;37(2):83-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19183976
78. Ibrahim HM, Al-Kandari M, Shaaban HS, et al. Role of ureteral stenting after uncomplicated ureteroscopy for distal ureteral stones: a randomized, controlled trial. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):961-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639269
79. Nabi G, Cook J, N'Dow J, McClinton S. Outcomes of stenting after uncomplicated ureteroscopy: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 2007 Mar 17;334(7593):572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17311851
80. Wilson CH, Rix DA. Indwelling stents after ureteroscopy. BMJ 2007 Mar 17;334(7593):544-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17363781
81. Gerber GS, Stockton BR. Use of stents after ureteroscopic stone removal. J Endourol 2006 Jun;20(6):383-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16808646
82. Damiano R, Autorino R, Esposito C, et al. Stent positioning after ureteroscopy for stone removal. Am J Urol Rev 2005;3(4):204-8.
83. Knudsen BE, Beiko DT, Denstedt JD. Stenting after ureteroscopy: pros and cons. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Feb;31(1):173-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15040413
84. Srivastava A, Gupta R, Kumar A, et al. Routine stenting after ureteroscopy for distal ureteral calculi is unnecessary: results of a randomized controlled trial. J Endourol 2003 Dec;17(10):871-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14744352
85. Djaladat H, Tajik P, Payandemehr P, et al. Ureteral catheterization in uncomplicated ureterolithotripsy: a randomized, controlled trial. Eur Urol 2007 Sep;52(3):836-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17258387
86. Nabi G, Cook J, N'Dow J, et al. Outcomes of stenting after uncomplicated ureteroscopy: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 2007 Mar;334(7593):572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17311851
87. Navanimitkul N, Lojanapiwat B. Efficacy of tamsulosin 0.4 mg/day in relieving double-J stent-related symptoms: A randomized controlled study. J Int Med Res 2010 Jul-Aug;38(4):1436-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20926016
88. Lee SJ, Yoo C, Oh CY, et al. Stent position is more important than alpha-blockers or anticholinergics for stent-related lower urinary tract symptoms after ureteroscopic ureterolithotomy: A prospective randomized study. Korean J Urol 2010 Sep;51(9):636-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20856649
89. Wang CJ, Huang SW, Chang CH. Effects of specific alpha-1A/1D blocker on lower urinary tract symptoms due to double-J stent: a prospectively randomized study. Urol Res 2009 Jun;37(3):147-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19277623
90. Wang CJ, Huang SW, Chang CH. Effects of tamsulosin on lower urinary tract symptoms due to double-J stent: a prospective study. Urol Int 2009;83(1):66-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19641362
91. Lamb AD, Vowler SL, Johnston R, et al. Meta-analysis showing the beneficial effect of α-blockers on ureteric stent discomfort. BJU Int 2011 Dec;108(11):1894-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21453351
92. Monga M, Beeman WW. Advanced intrarenal ureteroscopic procedures. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Feb;31(1):129-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15040409

5.7 Open and laparoscopic surgery for removal of renal stones

*5.7.1 **Open surgery***

Advances in SWL and endourological surgery (URS and PNL) have significantly decreased the indications for open stone surgery, which is now often a second- or third-line treatment option needed in 1.0-5.4% of cases only (1-5). The incidence of open stone surgery is ~1.5% of all stone removal interventions in developed countries, and in developing countries, it has dropped from 26% to 3.5 % in recent years (3,5).

However, open surgery is still needed for the most difficult stones, which supports the importance of maintaining proficiency, skills and expertise in open renal and ureteral surgical techniques such as extended pyelolithotomy, pyelonephrolithotomy, anatrophic nephrolithotomy, multiple radial nephrotomy, partial nephrectomy and renal surgery under hypothermia (6-10) (Table 16).

Recently, intraoperative B-mode scanning and Doppler sonography (11,12) have been used to identify avascular areas in the renal parenchyma that are close to the stone or dilated calices. This allows removal of large staghorn stones by multiple small radial nephrotomy, without loss of kidney function.

The efficacy of open surgery and less-invasive therapy, in terms of stone-free rates, is based on historical data, but no comparative studies are available (13-16).

5.7.1.1 Indications for open surgery

There is a consensus that most complex stones, including partial and complete staghorn stones, should be approached primarily with PNL or combined PNL and SWL. If a reasonable number of percutaneous approaches are not likely to be successful, or if multiple, endourological approaches have been performed unsuccessfully, open surgery may be a valid treatment option.

Table 16: Indications for open surgery

Complex stone burden
Treatment failure of SWL and/or PNL, or failed ureteroscopic procedure
Intrarenal anatomical abnormalities: infundibular stenosis, stone in the calyceal diverticulum (particularly in an anterior calyx), obstruction of the ureteropelvic junction, stricture if endourologic procedures have failed or are not promising
Morbid obesity
Skeletal deformity, contractures and fixed deformities of hips and legs
Comorbidity
Concomitant open surgery
Non-functioning lower pole (partial nephrectomy), non-functioning kidney (nephrectomy)
Patient choice following failed minimally invasive procedures; the patient may prefer a single procedure and avoid the risk of needing more than one PNL procedure
Stone in an ectopic kidney where percutaneous access and SWL may be difficult or impossible
For the paediatric population, the same considerations apply as for adults

*5.7.2 **Laparoscopic surgery***

Laparoscopic urological surgery is increasingly replacing open surgery as a result of accumulated surgical experience. Laparoscopy is associated with lower postoperative morbidity, shorter hospital stay and time to convalescence, and better cosmetic results with comparably good functional results (17-24).

Laparoscopic surgery is now used to remove renal and ureteric stones in certain situations, including complex stone burden, failed previous SWL and/or endourological procedures, anatomical abnormalities or morbid obesity, and planned nephrectomy of a stone-containing non-functioning kidney.
Surgical pyelolithotomy is rarely indicated (see Table 16) and feasible laparoscopically, e.g. stone removal from an anterior caliceal diverticulum (34).

Laparoscopic ureterolithotomy is relatively easy, with stone-free rates up to 100% provided expertise is available (25-28). It can replace open surgery in most situations (15,16). Retroperitoneal and transperitoneal laparoscopic access to all portions of the ureter have been reported (28-33,35) although laparoscopic ureterolithotomy in the distal ureter is less successful than in the middle and proximal ureter, but the size of the

stone does not appear to influence outcome. Although highly effective, laparoscopic ureterolithotomy is not first-line therapy in most cases because of its invasiveness, longer recovery time, and greater risk of associated complications compared to SWL and URS (25-28) (Table 17).

5.7.2.1 Indications for laparoscopic stone surgery (Table 17)

Indications for laparoscopic kidney-stone surgery include: • Complex stone burden • Failed previous SWL and/or endourological procedures • Anatomical abnormalities • Morbid obesity • Nephrectomy in case of non-functioning kidney
Indications for laparoscopic ureteral stone surgery include: • Large impacted stones • Multiple ureteral stones • In cases of concurrent conditions requiring surgery • When other non-invasive or low-invasive procedures have failed • If indicated, for upper ureteral calculi, laparoscopic urolithomy has the highest stone free rate compared to URS and SWL (LE: 1a)

Recommendations	**LE**	**GR**
Laparoscopic or open surgical stone removal may be considered in rare cases where SWL, URS, and percutaneous URS fail or are unlikely to be successful.	3	C
When expertise is available, laparoscopic surgery should be the preferred option before proceeding to open surgery. An exception is complex renal stone burden and/or stone location.	3	C
For ureterolithotomy, laparoscopy is recommended for large impact stones or when endoscopic lithotripsy or SWL have failed.	2	B

Skolarikos, et al. have tried to identify the level of evidence and grade of recommendation, according to the evidence-based medicine criteria, in studies supporting laparoscopic stone extraction. The highest level of evidence (2a) was found for laparoscopic ureterolithotomy.

5.7.3 ***References***

1. Assimos DG, Boyce WH, Harrison LH, et al. The role of open stone surgery since extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 1):263-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746742
2. Segura JW. Current surgical approaches to nephrolithiasis. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 1990 Dec;19(4):919-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2081519
3. Honeck P, Wendt-Nordahl G, Krombach P, et al. Does open stone surgery still play a role in the treatment of urolithiasis? Data of a primary urolithiasis center. J Endourol 2009 Jul;23(7):1209-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19538063
4. Bichler KH, Lahme S, Strohmaier WL. Indications for open stone removal of urinary calculi. Urol Int 1997;59(2):102-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9392057
5. Paik ML, Resnick MI. Is there a role for open stone surgery? Urol Clin North Am 2000 May;27(2): 323- 31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10778474
6. Matlaga BR, Assimos DG. Changing indications of open stone surgery. Urology 2002 Apr;59(4): 490-93; discussion 493-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11927296
7. Ansari MS, Gupta NP. Impact of socioeconomic status in etiology and management of urinary stone disease. Urol Int 2003;70(4):255-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12776701
8. Alivizatos G, Skolarikos A. Is there still a role for open surgery in the management of renal stones? Curr Opin Urol 2006 Mar;16(2):106-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16479213

9. Kerbl K, Rehman J, Landman J, et al. Current management of urolithiasis: Progress or regress? J Endourol 2002 Jun;16(5):281-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12184077
10. Preminger GM, Assimos DG, Lingeman JE, et al. Chapter 1: AUA guideline on management of staghorn calculi: Diagnosis and treatment recommendations. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):1991-2000.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879803
11. Thüroff JW, Frohneberg D, Riedmiller R, et al. Localization of segmental arteries in renal surgery by Doppler sonography. J Urol 1982 May;127(5):863-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7086985
12. Alken P, Thüroff JW, Riedmiller H, et al. Doppler sonography and B-mode ultrasound scanning in renal stone surgery. Urology 1984 May;23(5):455-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6719663
13. Kane CJ, Bolton DM, Stoller ML. Current indications for open stone surgery in an endourology center. Urology 1995 Feb;45(2):218-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7855969
14. Sy FY, Wong MY, Foo KT. Current indications for open stone surgery in Singapore. Ann Acad Med Singapore 1999 Mar;28(2):241-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10497675
15. Goel A, Hemal AK. Upper and mid-ureteric stones: a prospective unrandomized comparison of retroperitoneoscopic and open ureterolithotomy. BJU Int 2001 Nov;88(7):679-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890236
16. Skrepetis K, Doumas K, Siafakas I, et al. Laparoscopic versus open ureterolithotomy. A comparative study. Eur Urol 2001 Jul;40(1):32-6; discussion 37.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11528174
17. Hruza M, Schulze M, Teber D, et al. Laparoscopic techniques for removal of renal and ureteral calculi. J Endourol 2009 Oct;23(10):1713-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19785553
18. Mousavi-Bahar SH, Amir-Zargar MA, Gholamrezaie HR. Laparoscopic assisted percutaneous nephrolithotomy in ectopic pelvic kidneys. Int J Urol 2008 Mar;15(3):276-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18304232
19. Nambirajan T, Jeschke S, Albqami N, et al. Role of laparoscopy in management of renal stones: single-center experience and review of literature. J Endourol 2005 Apr;19(3):353-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15865527
20. Ramakumar S, Segura JW. Laparoscopic surgery for renal urolithiasis: Pyelolithotomy, caliceal diverticulectomy, and treatment of stones in a pelvic kidney. J Endourol 2000 Dec;14(10):829-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11206616
21. Hemal AK, Goel A, Kumar M, et al. Evaluation of laparoscopic retroperitoneal surgery in urinary stone disease. J Endourol 2001 Sep;15(7):701-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11697400
22. Miller SD, Ng CS, Streem SB, et al. Laparoscopic management of a calyceal diverticular calculi. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1248-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832707
23. Troxel SA, Low RK, Das S. Extraperitoneal laparoscopy-assisted percutaneous nephrolithotomy in a left pelvic kidney. J Endourol 2002 Nov;16(9):655-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12490018
24. Gaur DD, Trivedi S, Prabhudesai MR, et al. Retroperitoneal laparoscopic pyelolithotomy for staghorn stones. J J Laparoendoc Adv Surg Tech A 2002 Aug;12(4):299-303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12269502
25. Fan T, Xian P, Yang L, et al. Experience and learning curve of retroperitoneal laparoscopic ureterolithotomy for upper ureteral calculi. J Endourol 2009 Nov;23(11):1867-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19811058
26. Khaladkar S, Modi J, Bhansali M, et al. Which is the best option to treat large (> 1.5 cm) midureteric calculi? J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2009 Aug;19(4):501-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19670976
27. Jeong BC, Park HK, Byeon SS, et al. Retroperitoneal laparoscopic ureterolithotomy for upper ureter stones. J Korean Med Sci 2006 Jun;21(3):441-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778386
28. Hruza M, Zuazu JR, Goezen AS, et al. Laparoscopic and open stone surgery. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2010 Mar;82(1):64-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20593725

29. El-Feel A, Abouel-Fettouh H, Abdel-Hakim AM. Laparoscopic transperitoneal ureterolithotomy. J Endourol 2007 Jan;21(1):50-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17263607
30. Gaur DD, Trivedi S, Prabhudesai MR, Madhusudhana HR, et al. Laparoscopic ureterolithotomy: technical considerations and long term follow up. BJU Int 2002 Mar;89(4):339-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11872020
31. Flasko T, Holman E, Kovacs G, et al. Laparoscopic ureterolithotomy: the method of choice in selected cases. J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2005 Apr;15(2):149-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15898906
32. Kijvikai K, Patcharatrakul S. Laparoscopic ureterolithotomy: its role and some controversial technical considerations. Int J Urol 2006 Mar;13(3):206-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16643610
33. Wang Y, Hou J, Wen D, et al. Comparative analysis of upper ureteral stones (> 15 mm) treated with retroperitoneoscopic ureterolithotomy and ureteroscopic pneumatic lithotripsy. Int Urol Nephrol 2010 Dec;42(4):897-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20169409
34. Skolarikos A, Papatsoris AG, Albanis S, et al. Laparoscopic urinary stone surgery: an updated evidence based review. Urol Res 2010 Oct:38(5);337-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20396871
35. Lopes Neto AC, Korkes F, Silva JL 2nd, et al. Prospective randomized study of treatment of large proximal ureteral stones: extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy versus ureterolithotripsy versus laparoscopy. J Urol 2012 Jan;187(1):164-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22100003

6. INDICATION FOR ACTIVE STONE REMOVAL AND SELECTION OF PROCEDURE

Although kidney stones might be asymptomatic, ureteral stones cause acute renal colic in most cases. Treatment decisions for upper urinary tract calculi are based on several general aspects such as stone composition, stone size, and symptoms.

6.1 Indication for active removal of ureteral stones (1,2)

- Stones with low likelihood of spontaneous passage;
- persistent pain despite adequate pain medication;
- persistent obstruction;
- renal insufficiency (renal failure, bilateral obstruction, single kidney).

6.2 Indication for active removal of kidney stones (2)

- stone growth;
- stones in high-risk patients for stone formation;
- obstruction caused by stones;
- infection;
- symptomatic stones (e.g., pain, haematuria);
- stones > 15 mm;
- stones < 15 mm if observation is not the option of choice;
- patient preference;
- comorbidity;
- social situation of the patient (e.g. profession, travelling);
- > 2-3 years stone persistence.

The suspected stone composition might influence the choice of treatment.

6.2.1 Natural history of caliceal stones

Natural history of small, non-obstructing asymptomatic lower pole calculi is not well defined, and the risk of progression is unclear. There is still no consensus on the follow-up duration, timing and type of intervention.

Statement	LE
Although the question of whether caliceal stones should be treated is still unanswered, stone growth, *de novo* obstruction, associated infection, and acute and/or chronic pain are indications for treatment (1-3).	3

Glowacki et al. have reported that the risk of a symptomatic episode or need for intervention was ~10% per year, with a cumulative 5-year event probability of 48.5% (4). In a recent retrospective study, 77% of asymptomatic patients with renal stones experienced disease progression, with 26% requiring surgical intervention (5).

In a retrospective study, Hubner and Porpaczy have reported that infection developed in 68% of patients with asymptomatic caliceal stones, and 45% had increased stone size after 7.4 years follow-up. They have suggested that 83% of caliceal calculi require intervention within the first 5 years of diagnosis (6). Inci et al. have investigated lower pole caliceal stones, and observed that no patient required intervention during 24 months follow-up. In addition, an increase in stone size without any need for intervention was observed in eight of 27 renal units (29.6%). When the follow-up period was increased to 52.3 months, nine (33.3%) patients had increased stone size, but only three (11%) required intervention (7).

However, in a prospective RCT with 2.2 years clinical follow-up, Keeley et al. have reported no significant difference between SWL and observation when they compared asymptomatic caliceal stones < 15 mm in terms of stone-free rate, symptoms, requirement for additional treatment, quality of life, renal function, or hospital admission (10). Although some have recommended prophylaxis for these stones to prevent renal colic, haematuria, infection or stone growth conflicting data have been reported (4,6,11).

Statement	LE
SWL has been increasingly used for treatment of caliceal stones to reduce the risk of complications and the need for invasive procedures.	4

Excellent stone-free rates and pain relief have been reported after removal of small caliceal stones by SWL, PNL or URS, which indicates the need for removal of symptomatic caliceal stones (12-14).

Recommendations	GR
For asymptomatic caliceal stones in general, active surveillance with annual follow-up of symptoms and stone status [KUB, ultrasonography (US), NCCT] is an option for 2-3 years, whereas intervention should be considered after this period provided patients are adequately informed.	C
Observation might be associated with a greater risk of necessitating more invasive procedures.	

6.2.2 ***References***

1. Andersson L, Sylven M. Small renal caliceal calculi as a cause of pain. J Urol 1983 Oct;130(4):752-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6887409
2. Brandt B, Ostri P, Lange P, et al. Painful caliceal calculi. The treatment of small nonobstructingcaliceal calculi in patients with symptoms. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(1):75-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493473
3. Mee SL, Thuroff JW. Small caliceal stones: is extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy justified? J Urol 1988 May;139(5):908-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3361660
4. Glowacki LS, Beecroft ML, Cook RJ, et al. The natural history of asymptomatic urolithiasis. J Urol 1992 Feb;147(2):319-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1732583
5. Burgher A, Beman M, Holtzman JL, et al. Progression of nephrolithiasis: long-term outcomes with observation of asymptomatic calculi. J Endourol 2004 Aug;18(6):534-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15333216
6. Hubner W, Porpaczy P. Treatment of caliceal calculi. Br J Urol 1990 Jul;66(1):9-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2393803
7. Inci K, Sahin A, Islamoglu E, et al. Prospective Long–Term Followup of Patients With Asymptomatic Lower Pole Caliceal Stones. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6);2189–92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509315

8. Lingeman JE, Siegel YI, Steele B, et al. Management of lower pole nephrolithiasis: a critical analysis. J Urol 1994 Mar;151(3):663-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8308977
9. Liston TG, Montgomery BS, Bultitude MI, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy with the Storz Modulith SL20: the first 500 patients. Br J Urol 1992 May;69(5):465-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1623372
10. Keeley FX Jr, Tilling K, Elves A, et al. Preliminary results of a randomized controlled trial of prophylactic shock wave lithotripsy for small asymptomatic renal calyceal stones. BJU Int 2001 Jan;87(1):1-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11121982
11. Collins JW, Keeley FX. Is there a role for prophylactic shock wave lithotripsy for asymptomatic calyceal stones? Curr Opin Urol 2002 Jul;12(4):281–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072647
12. Brandt B, Ostri P, Lange P, et al. Painful caliceal calculi. The treatment of small nonobstructing caliceal calculi in patients with symptoms. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(1):75-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493473
13. Andreassen KH, Dahl C, Andersen JT, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy as first line monotherapy of solitary calyceal calculi. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1997 Jun;31(3):245-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9249886
14. Bilgasem S, Pace KT, Dyer S, et al. Removal of asymptomatic ipsilateral renal stones following rigid ureterosocpy for ureteral stones. J Endourol 2003 Aug;17(6):397-400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12965066

6.3 General recommendations and precautions for stone removal

*6.3.1 **Infections***

Urinary infections should always be treated if stone removal is planned. In patients with clinically significant infection and obstruction, drainage should be performed for several days, via a stent or percutaneous nephrostomy, before starting stone removal.

Recommendation	GR
Urine culture or urinary microscopy is mandatory before any treatment is planned.	A*

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

*6.3.2 **Anticoagulation and stone treatment***

Patients with a bleeding diathesis, or receiving anticoagulation, should be referred to an internist for appropriate therapeutic measures before and during stone removal (1-3). In patients with an uncorrected bleeding diathesis, the following are contraindicated:

- SWL;
- PNL;
- percutaneous nephrostomy;
- open surgery (4-6).

Although SWL is feasible and safe after correction of underlying coagulopathy (7-9), URS might offer an alternative approach and is associated with less morbidity. The problem of coagulation disorder is less pronounced in URS than in SWL and PNL.

Recommendations	LE	GR
Anticoagulation therapy including salicylates should be stopped before stone removal, in particular if SWL is planned.	3	B
If intervention for stone removal is essential and salicylate therapy should not be interrupted, retrograde URS is the preferred treatment of choice.		

*6.3.3 **Obesity***

Obesity can cause a higher risk due to anaesthesiological measurements, and a lower success rate after SWL and PNL (see Section 5.5).

Statement	LE
In case of severe obesity, URS is a more promising therapeutic option than SWL.	2b

6.3.4 *Hard stones*

Stones composed of brushite or calcium oxalate monohydrate are particularly hard. Percutaneous removal of these stones might be appropriate, particularly if they are large. Chemolytic treatment of brushite stone fragments is possible. Cystine stones respond well or poorly to SWL (10). PNL or retrograde intrarenal surgery (RIRS) are alternatives for removal of large SWL-resistant stones.

Recommendation	LE	GR
Consider the stone composition before deciding on the method of removal (former stone analysis of the patient, HU in unenhanced CT). Stones with medium density > 1,000 HU on NCCT are less likely to be disintegrated by SWL.	2a	B

6.3.5 *Radiolucent stones*

Uric acid concrements can be localised using US or intravenous or retrograde administration of contrast medium. Stones composed of uric acid, but not sodium or ammonium urate, can be dissolved by oral chemolysis. Differentiation is done by urinary pH measurement (see Section 5.4.2). Postoperative monitoring of radiolucent stones during chemolysis or after SWL is the domain of ultrasound, however repeat NCCT might be necessary.

Recommendation	GR
Careful monitoring of radiolucent stones during/after therapy is imperative.	A*

** Upgraded based on panel consensus.*

6.3.6 *Steinstrasse*

Steinstrasse is an accumulation of stone fragments or stone gravel in the ureter, which does not pass within a reasonable period of time, and interferes with the passage of urine (11,12). Steinstrasse occurs in 4-7% cases of SWL (13-15), and the major factor in steinstrasse formation is stone size (14).

Insertion of a ureteral stent before SWL prevents formation of steinstrasse only in stones > 15 mm in diameter (16). Symptoms include flank pain, fever, nausea and vomiting, bladder irritation, or it may asymptomatic. A major problem of steinstrasse is ureter obstruction, which can be silent in 23% of cases (14) and lead to kidney failure (17). Anuria occurs in 5% of cases of steinstrasse in treatment of solitary kidneys (14).

When steinstrasse is asymptomatic, conservative treatment is an initial option, depending on patient preference and willingness to comply with close surveillance. Medical expulsion therapy significantly increases stone expulsion and reduces the need for endoscopic intervention (18,19).

Statement	LE
Medical expulsion therapy increases stone expulsion rate of steinstrasse (16).	1b

When spontaneous passage is unlikely, further treatment of steinstrasse is indicated.

SWL is indicated in asymptomatic and symptomatic cases, with no evidence of UTI, when large stone fragments are present (19). There is an 80% chance of clearance of the steinstrasse (13).

Ureteroscopy is equally effective as SWL for treatment of steinstrasse (13,20,21). Placement of a percutaneous nephrostomy tube is indicated for symptomatic ureteric obstruction with/without UTI, and it is effective in 83% of cases (13).

Table 18: Treatment of steinstrasse

Asymptomatic	LE		Symptomatic		LE		Symptomatic + fever	LE
1. MET	1b		1. URS		3		1. PCN	1a
2. SWL	3		1. PCN		3		2. Stent	
3. URS	3		1. SWL		3			
			2. Stent		3			

Numbers 1,2, and 3 indicate first, second and third choice.

Recommendations	LE	GR
PCN is indicated for steinstrasse associated with UTI/fever.	4	C
SWL is indicated for steinstrasse when large stone fragments are present.	4	C
Ureteroscopy is indicated for symptomatic steinstrasse and treatment failure.	4	C

6.3.7 References

1. Watterson JD, Girvan AR, Cook AJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy in patients with bleeding diatheses. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):442-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131284
2. Kuo RL, Aslan P, Fitzgerald KB, et al. Use of ureteroscopy and holmium:YAG laser in patients with bleeding diatheses. Urology 1998 Oct;52(4):609-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763079
3. Kufer R, Thamasett S, Volkmer B, et al. New-generation lithotripters for treatment of patients with implantable cardioverter defibrillator: experimental approach and review of literature. J Endourol 2001 Jun;15(5):479-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11465325
4. Rassweiler JJ, Renner C, Chaussy C, et al. Treatment of renal stones by extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: an update. Eur Urol 2001 Feb;39(2):187-99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11223679
5. Klingler HC, Kramer G, Lodde M, et al. Stone treatment and coagulopathy. Eur Urol 2003 Jan;43(1): 75-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12507547
6. Fischer C, Wöhrle J, Pastor J, et al. [Extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy induced ultrastructural changes to the renal parenchyma under aspirin use. Electron microscopic findings in the rat kidney]. Urologe A 2007 Feb;46(2):150-5. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17221245
7. Becopoulos T, Karayannis A, Mandalaki T, et al. Extracorporeal lithotripsy in patients with hemophilia. Eur Urol 1988;14(4):343-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3169076
8. Ruiz Marcellán FJ, Mauri Cunill A, Cabré Fabré P, et al. [Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy in patients with coagulation disorders]. Arch Esp Urol 1992 Mar;45(2):135-7. [Article in Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1567255
9. Ishikawa J, Okamoto M, Higashi Y, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in von Willebrand's disease. Int J Urol 1996 Jan;3(1):58-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8646601
10. Bhatta KM, Prien EL Jr, Dretler SP. Cystine calculi: two types. In: Lingeman JE, Newman DM, eds. *Shock Wave Lithotripsy 2: Urinary and Biliary Lithotripsy*. Vol 1. New York: Plenum Press, 1989, pp. 55-59.
11. Tolley DA. Consensus of lithotriptor terminology. World J Urol 1993;11(1):37-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8490666
12. Coptcoat MJ, Webb DR, Kellet MJ, et al. The steinstrasse: a legacy of extracorporeal lithotripsy? Eur Urol 1988;14(2):93-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3360043
13. Sayed MA, el-Taher AM, Aboul-Ella HA, et al. Steinstrasse after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: aetiology, prevention and management. BJU Int 2001 Nov;88(7):675-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11890235

14. Madbouly K, Sheir KZ, Elsobky E, et al. Risk factors for the formation of a steinstrasse after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a statistical model. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832705
15. Ather MH, Shrestha B, Mehmood A. Does ureteral stenting prior to shock wave lithotripsy influence the need for intervention in steinstrasse and related complications? Urol Int 2009;83(2):222-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19752621
16. Al-Awadi KA, Abdul Halim H, Kehinde EO, et al. Steinstrasse: a comparison of incidence with and without J stenting and the effect of J stenting on subsequent management. BJU Int 1999 Oct;84(6):618-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10510104
17. Hardy MR, McLeod DG. Silent renal obstruction with severe functional loss after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a report of 2 cases. J Urol 1987 Jan;137(1):91-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3795373
18. Resim S, Ekerbicer HC, Ciftci A. Role of tamsulosin in treatment of patients with steinstrasse developing after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Urology 2005 Nov;66(5):945-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286100
19. Moursy E, Gamal WM, Abuzeid A. Tamsulosin as an expulsive therapy for steinstrasse after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a randomized controlled study. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Nov;44(5):315-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20560802
20. Goyal R, Dubey D, Khurana N, et al. Does the type of steinstrasse predict the outcome of expectant therapy? Indian J Urol 2006;22(2):135-8. http://www.indianjurol.com/article.asp?issn=0970-1591;year=2006;volume=22;issue=2;spage=135;epage=138;aulast=Goyal
21. Rabbani SM. Treatment of steinstrasse by transureteral lithotripsy. Urol J 2008 Spring;5(2):89-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18592460

6.4 Selection of procedure for active removal of kidney stones

*6.4.1 **Stones in renal pelvis or upper/middle calices***

SWL, PNL or flexible URS are available treatment modalities for renal calculi. Although PNL efficacy is hardly affected by stone size, the stone-free rates (SFRs) after SWL or URS are inversely proportional to stone size (1-4). SWL achieves excellent SFRs for stones up to 20 mm, except for those at the lower pole (3,5). Therefore, SWL remains the first method of choice for such stones. Larger stones > 20 mm should be treated by PNL primarily, because SWL often requires multiple treatments, and has the risk of ureteral obstruction (colic, steinstrasse) with the need for adjunctive procedures (Figure 1) (6). Flexible URS cannot be recommended as first-line treatment, especially for stones > 15 mm, for which SFR is decreasing, and staged procedures have become necessary (7,8).

*6.4.2 **Stones in the lower renal pole***

The stone clearance rate after SWL seems to be lower for stones in the inferior calyx than for other intrarenal locations. Although the disintegration efficacy of SWL is not limited compared to other locations, the fragments often remain in the calyx and cause recurrent stone formation. The reported SFR of SWL for lower pole calculi is 25-85%. The preferential use of endoscopic procedures is under discussion (1-6).

The following can impair successful stone treatment by SWL:

- steep infundibular-pelvic angle;
- long calyx;
- narrow infundibulum (Table 19) (7-13).

Further anatomical parameters cannot yet be established. The value of supportive measures such as inversion, vibration or hydration remains under discussion (7,8).

Table 19: Unfavourable factors for SWL success (9-15)

Factors that make SWL less likely
Shockwave-resistant stones (calcium oxalate monohydrate, brushite, cystine)
Steep infundibular-pelvic angle
Long lower pole calyx (> 10 mm)
Narrow infundibulum (< 5 mm)

SWL for the lower pole is often disappointing, therefore, endourological procedures (PNL, flexible URS) are recommended for stones > 15 mm. If there are negative predictors for SWL, PNL and flexible URS might be a reasonable alternative even for smaller calculi.

Flexible URS seems to have comparable efficacy to SWL (5,6). Recent clinical experience with last-generation ureterorenoscopes suggests an advantage of URS over SWL, by paying the price of greater invasiveness (16,17). Depending on operator skills, stones up to 3 cm can be treated efficiently by flexible URS (16,18-20). However, staged procedures are frequently required.

Recommendations	GR
SWL remains the method of first choice for stones < 2 cm within the renal pelvis and upper or middle calices. Larger stones should be treated by PNL.	B*
Flexible URS cannot be recommended as first-line treatment, especially for stones > 1.5 cm in renal pelvis and upper or middle calices, for which SFR after flexible URS is decreasing, and staged procedures become necessary.	B*
For the lower pole, PNL or flexible URS are recommended even for stones > 1.5 cm because the efficacy of SWL is limited (depending on favourable and unfavourable factors for SWL).	B*

Figure 1: Treatment algorithm for renal calculi within the renal pelvis or upper and middle calices

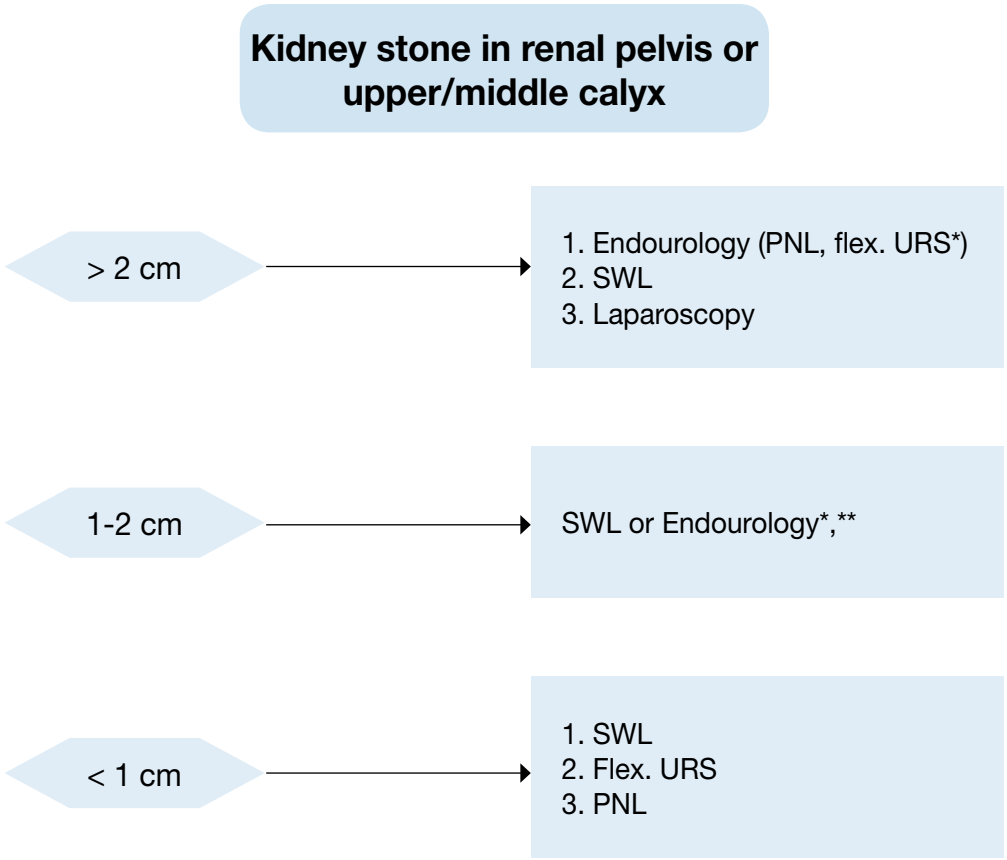
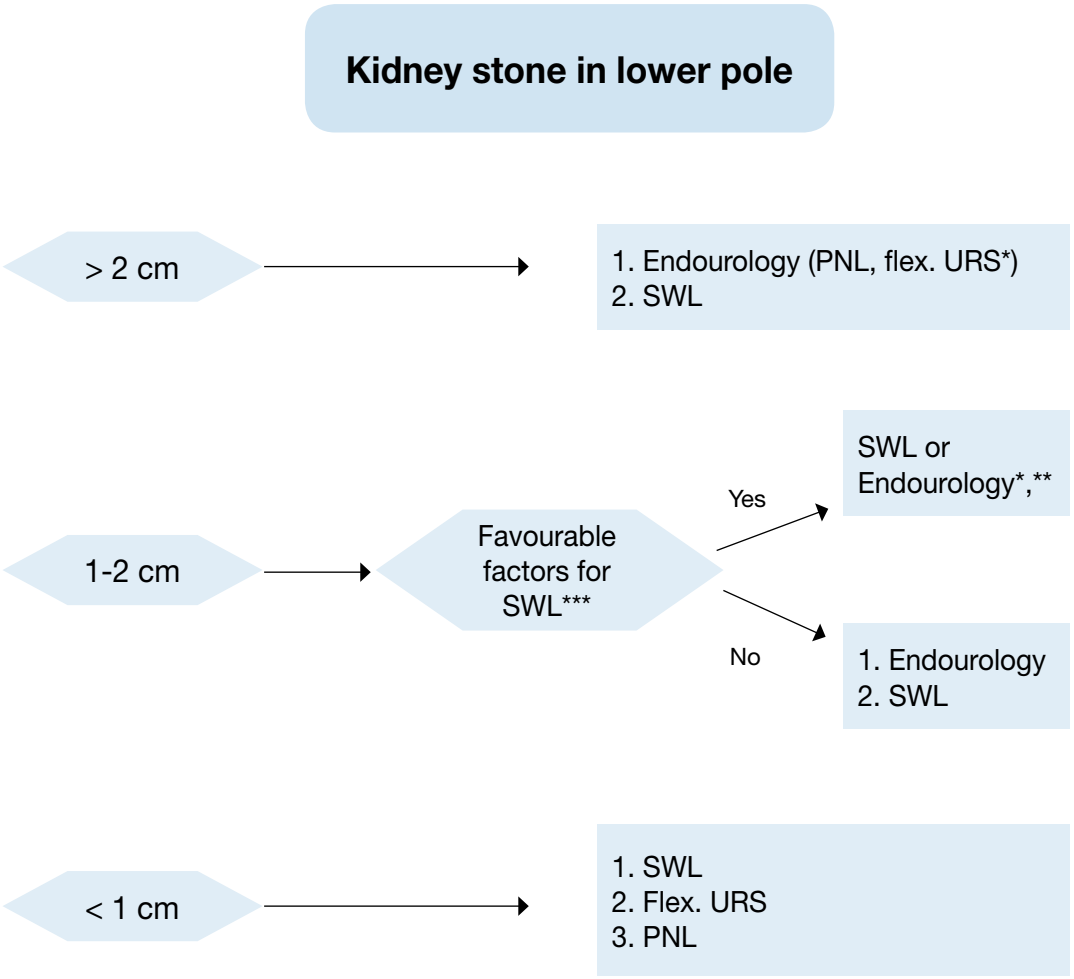


Figure 2: Treatment algorithm for renal calculi in the inferior calyx



*Flexible URS is used less as first-line therapy for renal stones > 1.5 cm, although some expert centers have reported such for renal stones > 1.5 cm.
The high number of staged procedures of URS underline the superiority of PNL. A combined approach (PNL+flexible URS) might be an option in specialised centres.
** The ranking of the recommendations reflects a panel majority vote.
*** see Table 19 on page 55.

6.4.3 ***References***

1. Argyropoulos AN, Tolley DA. Evaluation of outcome following lithotripsy. Curr Opin Urol 2010 Mar;20(2):154-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19898239
2. Srisubat A, Potisat S, Lojanapiwat B, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL) versus percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL) or retrograde intrarenal surgery (RIRS) for kidney stones. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Oct;7(4):CD007044. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821393
3. Sahinkanat T, Ekerbicer H, Onal B, et al. Evaluation of the effects of relationships between main spatial lower pole calyceal anatomic factors on the success of shock-wave lithotripsy in patients with lower pole kidney stones. Urology 2008 May;71(5):801-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18279941

4. Danuser H, Muller R, Descoeudres B, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of lower calyx calculi: how much is treatment outcome influenced by the anatomy of the collecting system? Eur Urol 2007 Aug;52(2):539-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17400366
5. Preminger GM. Management of lower pole renal calculi: shock wave lithotripsy versus percutaneous nephrolithotomy versus flexible ureteroscopy. Urol Res 2006 Apr;34(2):108-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16463145
6. Pearle MS, Lingeman JE, Leveillee R, et al. Prospective, randomized trial comparing shock wave lithotripsy and ureteroscopy for lower pole caliceal calculi 1 cm or less. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2005-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879805
7. Albanis S, Ather HM, Papatsoris AG, et al. Inversion, hydration and diuresis during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: does it improve the stone-free rate for lower pole stone clearance? Urol Int 2009;83(2):211-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19752619
8. Kosar A, Ozturk A, Serel TA, et al. Effect of vibration massage therapy after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy in patients with lower caliceal stones. J Endourol 1999 Dec;13(10):705-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10646674
9. Handa RK, Bailey MR, Paun M, et al. Pretreatment with low-energy shock waves induces renal vasoconstriction during standard shock wave lithotripsy (SWL): a treatment protocol known to reduce SWL-induced renal injury. BJU Int 2009 May;103(9):1270-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154458
10. Manikandan R, Gall Z, Gunendran T, et al. Do anatomic factors pose a significant risk in the formation of lower pole stones? Urology 2007 Apr;69(4):620-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445636
11. Juan YS, Chuang SM, Wu WJ, et al. Impact of lower pole anatomy on stone clearance after shock wave lithotripsy. Kaohsiung J Med Sci 2005 Aug;21(8):358-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16158878
12. Ruggera L, Beltrami P, Ballario R, et al. Impact of anatomical pielocaliceal topography in the treatment of renal lower calyces stones with extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Int J Urol 2005 Jun;12(6): 525-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15985072
13. Knoll T, Musial A, Trojan L, et al. Measurement of renal anatomy for prediction of lower-pole caliceal stone clearance: reproducibility of different parameters. J Endourol 2003 Sep;17(7):447-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14565873
14. Sumino Y, Mimata H, Tasaki Y, et al. Predictors of lower pole renal stone clearance after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1344-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352389
15. Madbouly K, Sheir KZ, Elsobky E. Impact of lower pole renal anatomy on stone clearance after shock wave lithotripsy: fact or fiction? J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1415-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342888
16. Hussain M, Acher P, Penev B, et al. Redefining the limits of flexible ureterorenoscopy. J Endourol 2011 Jan;25(1):45-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21050026
17. Wendt-Nordahl G, Mut T, Krombach P, et al. Do new generation flexible ureterorenoscopes offer a higher treatment success than their predecessors? Urol Res 2011 Jun;39(3):185-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21052986
18. Hyams ES, Munver R, Bird VG, et al. Flexible ureterorenoscopy and holmium laser lithotripsy for the management of renal stone burdens that measure 2 to 3 cm: a multi-institutional experience. J Endourol 2010 Oct;24(10):1583-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20629566
19. Prabhakar M. Retrograde ureteroscopic intrarenal surgery for large (1.6-3.5 cm) upper ureteric/renal calculus. Indian J Urol 2010 Jan-Mar;26(1):46-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20535284
20. Riley JM, Stearman L, Troxel S. Retrograde ureteroscopy for renal stones larger than 2.5 cm. J Endourol 2009 Sep;23(9):1395-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19694527

6.5 Selection of procedure for active removal of ureteral stones

*6.5.1 **Methodology***

Stone free rates were analysed for SWL and URS. If the study reported the SFR after all primary procedures, that number was used. If not, and the study reported the SFR after the first procedure, then that number was used. The Panel aimed to present an estimate of the number of primary procedures and the associated SFRs. There is a lack of uniformity in reporting the time to stone-free status, thereby limiting the ability to comment on the timing of this parameter.

*6.5.2 **Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy and ureteroscopy***

For proximal stones, no difference in overall SFRs between SWL and URS was detected. However, after stratifying for stone size, in proximal ureteral stones < 10 mm (n = 1,285), SWL had a higher SFR than URS. For stones > 10 mm (n = 819), URS had superior SFRs. This can be attributed to the fact that proximal ureteral stones treated with URS did not vary significantly with size, whereas the SFR following SWL negatively correlated with stone size.

For all mid-ureteral stones, URS appears superior to SWL, but after stratification for stone size, the small number of patients limits the significance. For all distal stones, URS yields better SFRs overall, compared to other methods for active stone removal, independent of stone size.

6.5.2.1 Stone free rates (SFRs)

Table 20 shows the results of a meta-analysis of SFRs. The results are presented as medians of the posterior distribution (best central estimate) with 95% Bayesian Credible Intervals (CIs). This represents an update of the EAU/AUA collaborative guidelines project (1). Outcomes show no significant changes.

Table 20: SFRs after primary treatment with SWL and URS in the overall population (1-5)

	SWL		URS	
	Number of patients	**SFR/95% CI**	**Number of patients**	**SFR/95% CI**
Distal ureter	7217	74% (73-75)	10372	93% (93-94)
< 10 mm	1684	86% (80-91)	2013	97% (96-98)
> 10 mm	966	74% (57-87)	668	93% (91-95)
Mid ureter	1697	73% (71-75)	1140	87% (85-89)
< 10 mm	44	84% (65-95)	116	93% (88-98)
> 10 mm	15	76% (36-97)	110	79% (71-87)
Proximal ureter	6682	82% (81-83)	2448	82% (81-84)
< 10 mm	967	89% (87-91)	318	84% (80-88)
> 10 mm	481	70% (66-74)	338	81% (77-85)

Unfortunately, RCTs comparing these treatments have been lacking. However, the posterior distributions from the meta-analysis can be subtracted, which yields a distribution for the difference between the treatments. If the CI does not include zero, then the result can be considered to be significantly different. This operation is mathematically justifiable but operationally risky: if the patients receiving different treatments or the outcome measures are different, the results might be meaningless. Nonetheless, the SFRs for URS remained significantly better than those for SWL for distal ureteral stones < 10 mm and > 10 mm and for proximal ureteral stones > 10 mm. The SFRs for mid-ureteral stones did not differ significantly between URS and SWL.

Although there are not sufficient data to compare statistically flexible and rigid URS for proximal ureteral stones, favourable SFRs have been reported using flexible URS (87%) compared with rigid or semi-rigid URS (77%) (1). SFRs probably continue to improve as the distribution and technical improvement of flexible URS continue.

6.5.2.2 Complications

Although URS is effective for ureteric calculi, it has greater potential for complications. In the current endourological era, with access to newer, smaller rigid and flexible instruments and use of small-calibre intracorporeal lithotripsy devices, the complication rate and morbidity of ureteroscopy have been significantly reduced (6).

Patients should be informed that URS has a better chance of achieving stone-free status with a single procedure, but has higher complication rates [Sections 5.5.4 (Complications of SWL) and 5.6.2.2.9 (Complications of URS)].

6.5.3 Percutaneous antegrade ureteroscopy

Percutaneous antegrade removal of ureteral stones is a consideration in selected cases, for example, for very large (> 15 mm diameter) impacted stones in the proximal ureter between the ureteropelvic junction and the lower border of the fourth lumbar vertebra (7-10). With SFRs of 85-100%, its superiority to standard techniques has been evaluated (7,10-13). The complication rate is low, acceptable, and not different from any other percutaneous procedure. However, percutaneous antegrade removal of ureteral stones is associated with longer operative times, hospital stay, and time to return to normal activities (10).

Recommendations	GR
Percutaneous antegrade removal of ureteral stones is an alternative when SWL is not indicated or has failed, and when the upper urinary tract is not amenable to retrograde URS (13-15).	A
A patient must be informed about the existing active treatment modalities, including the relative benefits and risks associated with each modality.	A

Table 21: Recommended treatment options (if indicated for active stone removal) (GR A*)

	First choice	Second choice
Proximal ureter < 10 mm	SWL	URS
Proximal ureter > 10 mm	URS (retrograde or antegrade) or SWL	
Distal ureter < 10 mm	URS or SWL	
Distal ureter > 10 mm	URS	SWL

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

Recommendation	GR
Treatment choices should be based on stone size and location and available equipment for stone removal.	A

6.5.4 Other methods for ureteral stone removal

Few studies have reported laparoscopic stone removal (see Section 5.7.2), and open surgery (see Section 5.7.1). These procedures are usually reserved for special cases, therefore, the reported data could not be used to compare procedures with each other or with SWL or URS. These more invasive procedures have yielded high SFRs.

6.5.5 References

1. Preminger GM, Tiselius HG, Assimos DG, et al; American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc; European Association of Urology. 2007 Guideline for the management of ureteral calculi. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1610-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074433
2. Tiselius HG. How efficient is extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy with modern lithotripters for removal of ureteral stones? J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):249-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294029
3. Elashry OM, Elgamasy AK, Sabaa MA , et al. Ureteroscopic management of lower ureteric calculi: a 15-year single-centre experience. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(8):1010-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18485033
4. Fuganti PE, Pires S, Branco R, et al. Predictive factors for intraoperative complications in semirigid ureteroscopy: analysis of 1235 ballistic ureterolithotripsies. Urology 2008 Oct;72(4):770-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18632141
5. Tugcu V, Tasci AI, Ozbek E, et al. Does stone dimension affect the effectiveness of ureteroscopic lithotripsy in distal ureteral stones? Int Urol Nephrol 2008;40(2):269-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17899430

6. Hong YK, Park DS. Ureteroscopic lithotripsy using Swiss Lithoclast for treatment of ureteral calculi: 12-years experience. J Korean Med Sci 2009 Aug;24(4):690-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19654954
7. Kumar V, Ahlawat R, Banjeree GK, et al. Percutaneous ureterolitholapaxy: the best bet to clear large bulk impacted upper ureteral calculi. Arch Esp Urol 1996 Jan-Feb;49(1):86-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8678608
8. Goel R, Aron M, Kesarwani PK, et al. Percutaneous antegrade removal of impacted upper-ureteral calculi: still the treatment of choice in developing countries. J Endourol 2005 Jan-Feb;19(1):54-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15735384
9. Berczi C, Flasko T, Lorincz L, et al. Results of percutaneous endoscopic ureterolithotomy compared to that of ureteroscopy. J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2007 Jun;17(3):285-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17570771
10. Sun X, Xia S, Lu J, et al. Treatment of Large Impacted Proximal Ureteral Stones: Randomized Comparison of Percutaneous Antegrade Ureterolithotripsy versus Retrograde Ureterolithotripsy J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):913-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18429682
11. Karami H, Arbab AH, Hosseini SJ, et al. Impacted upper-ureteral calculi > 1 cm: bind access and totally tubeless percutaneous antegrade removal or retrograde approach? J Endourol 2006 Sep;20(9):616-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16999610
12. Basiri A, Simforoosh N, Ziaee A, et al. Retrograde, antegrade, and laparoscopic approaches for the management of large, proximal ureteral stones: a randomized clinical trial. J Endourol 2008 Dec;22(12):2677-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19025388
13. el-Nahas AR, Eraky I, el-Assmy AM, et al. Percutaneous treatment of large upper tract stones after urinary diversion. Urology 2006 Sep;68(3):500-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979745
14. El-Assmy A, El-Nahas AR, Mohsen T, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of upper urinary tract calculi in patients with cystectomy and urinary diversion. Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):510-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140067
15. Rhee BK, Bretan PN Jr, Stoller ML. Urolithiasis in renal and combined pancreas/renal transplant recipients. J Urol 1999 May;161(5):1458-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210372

7. RESIDUAL STONES

7.1 Clinical evidence

Residual fragments are commonly seen after SWL and sometimes after intracorporeal lithotripsy, and mostly in the lower calix.

Reports on residual fragments vary between institutions, according to imaging method. However, the clinical value of detecting very small concretions remains debatable.

The clinical problem of residual kidney stones is related to the risk of developing:

- new stones from such nidi (heterogeneous nucleation);
- persistent UTI;
- dislocation of fragments with/without obstruction and symptoms (1-5).

Recommendations	LE	GR
Identification of biochemical risk factors and appropriate stone prevention is particularly indicated in patients with residual fragments or stones (3-5).	1b	A
Patients with residual fragments or stones should be followed up regularly to monitor disease course.	4	C

Recurrence risk in patients with residual fragments after treatment of infection stones is higher than for other stones. In a 2.2-year follow-up of 53 patients, 78% with stone fragments at 3 months after treatment

experienced stone progression. The SFR was 20%, and the remaining 2% had stable disease (6). For all stone compositions, 21-59% of patients with residual stones require treatment within 5 years. Fragments > 5 mm are more likely than smaller ones to require intervention (2,3,5,7).

Table 22: Recommendations for the treatment of residual fragments

Residual fragments, stones (largest diameter)	Symptomatic residuals	Asymptomatic residuals	LE	GR
< 4-5 mm	Stone removal	Reasonable follow-up (dependent on risk factors)	4	C
> 6-7 mm	Stone removal			

7.2 Therapy

To avoid residual fragments or facilitate further clearance, medical and physical adjunctive therapy can be suggested:

Recommendations	LE	GR
After SWL and URS, MET is recommended using an alpha-blocker to improve fragment clearance and reduce probability of residual stones (Chapter 7).	1a	A
For well-disintegrated stone material in the lower calix, inversion therapy during high diuresis and mechanical percussion facilitate clearance (8).	1a	B

The indication for active stone removal and selection of the procedure are based on the same criteria as for primary stone treatment (Chapter 6) and includes repeat SWL (9).

If intervention is not required, medical therapy according to stone analysis, patient risk group, and metabolic evaluation might help to prevent regrowth of residual fragments (10-13).

7.3 References

1. Balaji KC, Menon M. Mechanism of stone formation. Urol Clin North Am 1997 Feb;24(1):1-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9048848
2. El-Nahas AR, El-Assmy AM, Madbouly K, et al. Predictors of clinical significance of residual fragments after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy for renal stones. J Endourol 2006 Nov;20(11):870-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144853
3. Osman MM, Alfano Y, Kamp S, et al. 5-year-follow-up of patients with clinically insignificant residual fragments after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy. Eur Urol 2005 Jun;47(6):860-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925084
4. Buchholz NP, Meier-Padel S, Rutishauser G. Minor residual fragments after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: spontaneous clearance or risk factor for recurrent stone formation? J Endourol 1997 Aug;11(4):227-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9376838
5. Shigeta M, Kasaoka Y, Yasumoto H, et al. Fate of residual fragments after successful extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Int J Urol 1999 Apr;6(4):169-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10226832
6. Beck EM, Riehle RA Jr. The fate of residual fragments after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy monotherapy of infection stones. J Urol 1991 Jan;145(1):6-9; discussion -10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1984100
7. Candau C, Saussine C, Lang H, et al. Natural history of residual renal stone fragments after ESWL. Eur Urol 2000 Jan;37(1):18-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10671779
8. Chiong E, Hwee ST, Kay LM, et al. Randomized controlled study of mechanical percussion, diuresis, and inversion therapy to assist passage of lower pole renal calculi after shock wave lithotripsy. Urology 2005 Jun;65(6):1070-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15922429
9. Krings F, Tuerk C, Steinkogler I, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy retreatment ("stir-up") promotes discharge of persistent caliceal stone fragments after primary extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 1992 Sep;148(3 Pt 2):1040-1; discussion 1041-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1507326

10. Kang DE, Maloney MM, Haleblian GE, et al. Effect of medical management on recurrent stone formation following percutaneous nephrolithotomy. J Urol 2007 May;177(5):1785-8; discussion 1788-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437820
11. Fine JK, Pak CY, Preminger GM. Effect of medical management and residual fragments on recurrent stone formation following shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):27-32; discussion 32-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966783
12. Siener R, Glatz S, Nicolay C, et al. Prospective study on the efficacy of a selective treatment and risk factors for relapse in recurrent calcium oxalate stone patients. Eur Urol 2003 Oct;44(4):467-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14499683
13. Cicerello E, Merlo F, Gambaro F, et al Effect of alkaline citrate therapy on clearance of residual renal stone fragments after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in sterile calcium and infection nephrolithiasis patients., J Urology 1994 Jan;151(1):5-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254832

8. MANAGEMENT OF URINARY STONES AND RELATED PROBLEMS DURING PREGNANCY

Urolithiasis during pregnancy is a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. In most cases, it becomes symptomatic in the second or third trimester (1-4).

8.1 Diagnostic options

Diagnostic options are limited in pregnant women due to the possible teratogenic, carcinogenic, and mutagenic risk of foetal radiation exposure. The risk depends crucially on gestational age and amount of radiation delivered. Clinicians must consider carefully the risk-benefit ratio of an examination that involves radiation during the first trimester (1,2,5,6).

Currently, when evaluating pregnant patients suspected of renal colic, US (using change in resistive index and transvaginal ultrasound when necessary) has become the primary radiological diagnostic tool, with a limited excretory urogram only necessary in complicated cases. NCCT results in an even higher dose of radiation exposure. However, US is limited by poor sound transmission through gas and bone and its operator-dependent nature. Similarly, it can be difficult to differentiate physiological dilation of pregnancy from ureteral obstruction, and US is therefore of limited value in acute obstruction (7,8).

Transvaginal/endoluminal US might be important for evaluation of possible stones at the vesicoureteral junction. An endoluminal ultrasound probe can help to elucidate the level of obstruction and facilitate subsequent endoscopic ureteral stent placement.

Among other modalities, magnetic resonance urography (MRU) can be used to evaluate the urinary tract, thus avoiding ionising radiation and iodinated contrast medium, which is important in pregnancy. Magnetic resonance imaging can define the level of obstruction, and stones can be seen as a filling defect. However, these findings are non-specific. There is little experience with using this imaging modality during pregnancy (9-11).

Statements	LE	GR
US is the method of choice for practical and safe evaluation of pregnant women.	1a	A
In symptomatic patients with suspicion of ureteral stones during pregnancy, limited IVU, MRU, or isotope renography is a possible diagnostic method.		

8.2 Management

Management of pregnant urolithiasis patients poses significant multiple challenges to the patient, obstetrician and urologist, but many symptomatic stones (70-80%) pass spontaneously. Conservative management with analgesia can result in spontaneous passage.

If spontaneous passage does not occur, or if complications develop (e.g. induction of premature labour),

placement of an internal stent or percutaneous nephrostomy tube, or ureteroscopy is an alternative treatment (12-19). However, the temporising therapies (e.g. ureteral stenting or percutaneous nephrostomy) are often associated with poor tolerance, and they require multiple exchanges of stents or nephrostomy tubes during pregnancy, due to the potential for rapid encrustation of these devices (20-23).

Improvements in diagnostic technology, as well as experience in endoscopic instrumentation have made the endoscopic approach feasible and safe for diagnosis and treatment of ureteral stones. Nevertheless, one cannot overemphasise the necessity for care during URS, which should be performed only in centres with sufficient experience (20,22-24). When intracorporeal lithotripsy is necessary during URS in pregnant patients, the holmium laser has the advantage of minimal tissue penetration, thereby theoretically limiting risk of foetal injury.

Although percutaneous stone removal in the early stages of pregnancy has been reported in a few studies (21), SWL is still experimental, and pregnancy remains an absolute contraindication.

Recommendation	GR
Following correct diagnosis, conservative management should be the first-line treatment for all non-complicated cases of urolithiasis in pregnancy (except those that have clinical indications for intervention).	A

Statements	LE
If intervention becomes necessary, placement of a internal stent, percutaneous nephrostomy, or ureteroscopy are options.	3
Regular follow-up until final stone removal is necessary due to higher encrustation tendency of stents during pregnancy.	

8.3 References

1. Pais VM Jr, Payton AL, LaGrange CA. Urolithiasis in pregnancy. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Feb;34(1): 43-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17145360
2. Lewis DF, Robichaux AG 3rd, Jaekle RK, et al. Urolithiasis in pregnancy. Diagnosis, management and pregnancy outcome. J Reprod Med 2003 Jan;48(1):28-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12611091
3. Semins MJ, Matlaga BR. Management of stone disease in pregnancy. Curr Opin Urol 2010 Mar;20(2): 174-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19996751
4. Srirangam SJ, Hickerton B, Van Cleynenbreugel B. Management of urinary calculi in pregnancy: a review. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):867-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18377238
5. Swartz MA, Lydon-Rochelle MT, Simon D, et al. Admission for nephrolithiasis in pregnancy and risk of adverse birth outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 2007 May;109(5):1099-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17470589
6. Cormier CM, Canzoneri BJ, Lewis DF, et al. Urolithiasis in pregnancy: Current diagnosis, treatment, and pregnancy complications. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2006 Nov;61(11):733-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17044950
7. Patel SJ, Reede DL, Katz DS, et al. Imaging the pregnant patient for nonobstetric conditions: algorithms and radiation dose considerations. Radiographics 2007 Nov-Dec;27(6):1705-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18025513
8. Asrat T, Roossin MC, Miller EI. Ultrasonographic detection of ureteral jets in normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1998 Jun;178(6):1194-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9662301
9. Roy C, Saussine C, LeBras Y, et al. Assessment of painful ureterohydronephrosis during pregnancy by MR urography. Eur Radiol 1996;6(3):334-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8798002
10. Roy C, Saussine C, Jahn C, et al. Fast imaging MR assessment of ureterohydronephrosis during pregnancy. Magn Reson Imaging 1995;13(6):767-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8544647

11. Juan YS, Wu WJ, Chuang SM, et al. Management of symptomatic urolithiasis during pregnancy. Kaohsiung J Med Sci 2007 May;23(5):241-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17525006
12. Tsai YL, Seow KM, Yieh CH, et al. Comparative study of conservative and surgical management for symptomatic moderate and severe hydronephrosis in pregnancy: a prospective randomized study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2007;86(9):1047-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17712643
13. Zwergel T, Lindenmeir T, Wullich B. Management of acute hydronephrosis in pregnancy by ureteral stenting. Eur Urol 1996;29(3):292-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8740034
14. Delakas D, Karyotis I, Loumbakis P, et al. Ureteral drainage by double-J-catheters during pregnancy. Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol 2000;27(3-4):200-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11214951
15. Mokhmalji H, Braun PM, Martinez Portillo FJ, et al. Percutaneous nephrostomy versus ureteral stents for diversion of hydronephrosis caused by stones: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. J Urol 2001 Apr;165(4):1088-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11257644
16. vanSonnenberg E, Casola G, Talner LB, et al. Symptomatic renal obstruction or urosepsis during pregnancy: treatment by sonographically guided percutaneous nephrostomy. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1992 Jan;158(1):91-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1727366
17. Connolly SS, Mulvin DW, Quinlan DM, et al. Painful hydronephrosis of pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2008 Sep;140(1):145-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18093721
18. Ramsey S, Robertson A, Ablett MJ, et al. Evidence-based drainage of infected hydronephrosis secondary to ureteric calculi. J Endourol 2010 Feb;24(2):185-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20063999
19. Peer A, Strauss S, Witz E, et al. Use of percutaneous nephrostomy in hydronephrosis of pregnancy. Eur J Radiol 1992 Oct;15(3):220-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1490447
20. Semins MJ, Trock BJ, Matlaga BR. The safety of ureteroscopy during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):139-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012926
21. Tóth C, Tóth G, Varga A, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in early pregnancy. Int Urol Nephrol 2005;37(1):1-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16132747
22. Semins MJ, Matlaga BR. Ureteroscopy during pregnancy. Indian J Urol 2009 Jul;25(3):291-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19881118
23. Rana AM, Aquil S, Khawaja AM. Semirigid ureteroscopy and pneumatic lithotripsy as definitive management of obstructive ureteral calculi during pregnancy. Urology 2009 May;73(5):964-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394491
24. Semins MJ, Trock BJ, Matlaga BR. The Safety of Ureteroscopy During Pregnancy: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1);139-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012926

9. MANAGEMENT OF STONE PROBLEMS IN CHILDREN

Rates of urolithiasis have increased in developed countries, and there has been a shift in the age group experiencing a first stone episode (1-3). More than 1% of all urinary stones are seen in patients aged < 18 years. As a result of malnutrition and racial factors, paediatric urolithiasis remains an endemic disease in some areas (e.g. Turkey and Far East); elsewhere, the rates are similar to those observed in developed countries (4-11).

9.1 Investigations

Paediatric patients with urinary stones have a high risk of recurrence, therefore, standard diagnostic procedures for high-risk patients apply (see Chapters 2.6 and 11).

Statement	LE
In paediatric patients, the most common non-metabolic disorders are vesicoureteral reflux, ureteropelvic junction obstruction, neurogenic bladder, or other voiding difficulties (11,12).	4

Recommendation	GR
In all paediatric patients, complete metabolic stone evaluation based on stone analysis (if available) is necessary.	A

*9.1.1 **Imaging***

When selecting diagnostic procedures to identify urolithiasis in paediatric patients, it should be remembered that these patients might be uncooperative, require anaesthesia, or are sensitive to ionising radiation (13).

9.1.1.1 Ultrasound

Ultrasound is the most popular and practical imaging technique (13). In paediatrics, its advantages are absence of irradiation and no need for anaesthesia. US can be used to obtain information about the presence, size and location of a stone, and the grade of dilatation and obstruction of the urinary collecting system. It also indicates signs of abnormalities that facilitate stone formation.

Colour Doppler US shows differences in the ureteric jet (14) and resistive index of the arciform arteries of both kidneys, which are indicative of the grade of obstruction (15). Nevertheless, US fails to identify stones in > 40% of paediatric patients (16-19) (LE: 4), and provides no information about renal function. Ultrasound is part of the metaphylactic work-up in these cases.

Statement	LE
Ultrasound evaluation is the first choice for imaging in children and should include the kidney, filled bladder, and adjoining portions of the ureter (14,20).	2a

9.1.1.2 Plain films (KUB)

KUB can help to identify stones and their radio-opacity, and facilitate follow-up.

9.1.1.3 Intravenous urography (IVU)

IVU is an important diagnostic tool. However, the need for contrast medium injection is a major drawback. The radiation dose for IVU is comparable to that for voiding cystourethrography (0.33 mSV) (21).

9.1.1.4 Helical computed tomography (CT)

Recent CT protocols have been shown to reduce radiation exposure significantly (22). The principle of ALARA (As Low As Reasonable Achievable) should always be observed. like in adults it has a sensitivity of 94-100% and specificity of 92-100% (23).

In children, only 5% of stones escape detection by NCCT (14,23,24). Sedation or anaesthesia is rarely needed with modern high-speed CT apparatus (11).

9.1.1.5 Magnetic resonance urography (MRU)

MRU cannot be used to detect urinary stones. However, it might provide detailed anatomical information about the urinary collecting system, the location of an obstruction or stenosis in the ureter, and renal parenchymal morphology (25).

9.1.1.6 Nuclear imaging

^{99m}Tc-dimercaptosuccinyl acid scanning provides information about cortical abnormalities such as scarring, but does not aid primary diagnosis of urolithiasis. Diuretic renography with injection of a radiotracer (MAG3 or DPTA) and furosemide can be used to demonstrate renal function, identify obstruction in the kidney after injection of furosemide, and indicate the anatomical level of the obstruction (11,14).

9.2 Stone removal

Several factors must be considered when selecting treatment procedures for children. Compared to adults, children pass fragments more rapidly after SWL, and all stones should be evaluated for further metaphylactic measures (26). For endourological procedures, the smaller organs in children must be considered when selecting instruments for PNL or URS. To eliminate radiation exposure, US can be used for localisation during SWL or endourological procedures. Anticipation of the expected stone composition helps with selection of the appropriate procedure for removal (cystine stones are more resistant to SWL).

Statement	LE
Spontaneous passage of a stone is more likely in children than adults (6,11,12).	4

*9.2.1 **Medical expulsive therapy (MET) in children***

MET in children has already been discussed in Section 5.3.2.6. Although the use of nifedipine or α-blockers is very common in adults, there are insufficient data to demonstrate their safety and efficacy in children (27).

*9.2.2 **Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy***

Despite increasing application of PNL, and development of smaller-diameter flexible ureteroscopes and ancillary instruments, SWL is still the least-invasive procedure for stone management in children (28-36).

Stone free rates of 67-93% in short-term and 57-92% in long-term follow-up studies have been reported. In children, compared with adults, SWL can achieve more effective disintegration of large stones, together with swifter and uncomplicated discharge of large fragments (32-34). Stones located in calices, as well as abnormal kidneys, and large stones, are more difficult to disintegrate and clear. The likelihood of urinary obstruction is higher in such cases, and children should be followed closely for the prolonged risk of urinary tract obstruction. The retreatment rate is 13.9-53.9%, and the need for ancillary procedures and/or additional interventions is 7-33% (32-34,36).

The need for general anaesthesia during SWL depends on patient age and the lithotripter used. General or dissociative anaesthesia is administered in most children aged < 10 years, to avoid patient and stone motion and the need for repositioning (32,36). With modern lithotriptors, intravenous sedation or patient-controlled analgesia has been used in selected cooperative older children (37) (LE: 2b). There are concerns regarding the safety and potential biological effects of SWL on immature kidneys and surrounding organs in children. However, during short- and long-term follow-up, no irreversible functional or morphological side effects of high-energy shock waves have been demonstrated. In addition, when the potential deterioration of renal function is taken into account (although transient), restricting the number of shock waves and the energy used during each treatment session helps protect the kidneys (38-41).

Compared to adults, children pass stone fragments easily, and stenting is rarely needed. If the stone burden requires a ureteral stent, alternative procedures should be considered. Although internal stents are seldom needed following SWL of upper tract stones, ureteral pre-stenting decreases the SFR after initial treatment (28,30-32).

Statements	LE
In children, the indications for SWL are similar to those in adults, however they pass fragments more easily.	3
Children with renal stones of a diameter up to 20 mm (~300 mm^2) are ideal for SWL.	1b

*9.2.3 **Endourological procedures***

Improvement in intracorporeal lithotripsy devices and development of smaller instruments facilitate PNL and URS in children.

9.2.3.1 Percutaneous nephrolithotripsy (PNL)

Preoperative evaluation and indications for PNL in children are similar to those in adults. Although PNL is performed as monotherapy in most cases, it can be used as an adjunctive procedure. Availability of appropriate-size instruments and ultrasound guidance mean that age is not a limiting factor, and PNL can now be performed safely by experienced operators, with less radiation exposure even for large and complex stones (42-46). SFRs are between 68% and 100% after a single session, and increase with adjunctive measures, such as second-look PNL, SWL and URS (42,43).

Statement	LE
For paediatric patients, the indications for PNL are similar to those in adults.	1a

Recommendation	GR
In children, PNL is recommended for treatment of renal pelvic or caliceal stones with a diameter > 20 mm (~300 mm^2).	A

9.2.3.2 Ureteroscopy

While SWL still is the first-line treatment for most ureteral stones it is unlikely to be successful for stones > 10 mm in diameter, or for impacted, calcium oxalate monohydrate or cystine stones, or stones in children with unfavourable anatomy and in whom localisation is difficult. The success rate of SWL decreases for stones in the more distal parts of the ureter. Overall SFRs after SWL range from 75 to 100% (47-50).
If SWL is not promising ureteroscopy can be used. With the clinical introduction of smaller-calibre instruments, this modality has become the treatment of choice in middle and larger distal ureteric stones in children (48-50).

Different lithotripsy techniques, including ultrasonic, pneumatic and laser lithotripsy, are all safe and effective. As a result of the smaller size of the probes, laser energy is easier to use in smaller instruments and is more useful for paediatric cases (53,54) (see Section 5.6.2.2.7).

Statements	LE	GR
For intracorporeal lithotripsy, the same devices as in adults can be used (Ho:Yag laser, pneumatic and ultrasound lithotriptors).	3	C

Finally, flexible ureteroscopy has become an efficacious treatment for paediatric upper urinary tract stones. It might be particularly effective for treatment of proximal ureteral calculi and for stones < 1.5 cm in the lower pole calices (56-58).

9.2.4 ***Open or laparoscopic surgery***

Most stones in children can be managed by SWL and endoscopic techniques (59). Therefore the rate of open procedure has dropped significantly (60-64). In some situations, open surgery is inevitable. Indications for surgery include failure of primary therapy for stone removal, very young children with complex stones, congenital obstruction that requires simultaneous surgical correction, severe orthopaedic deformities that limit positioning for endoscopic procedures, and abnormal kidney position (29,31,44,45). Open surgery can be replaced by laparoscopic procedures in experienced hands (62-64).

9.3 Special considerations on recurrence prevention

It should be kept in mind that, in addition to stone removal procedures, treatment of paediatric urolithiasis requires a thorough metabolic and environmental evaluation on an individual basis. In case of obstructive pathologies along with the established metabolic abnormalities treatment should not be delayed. Children are in the high-risk group for stone recurrence (see Chapter 11).

9.4 References

1. Reis-Santos JM. Age of first stone episode. In: Rodgers AL, Hibbert BE, Hess B, Khan SR, Preminger GM, eds. *Urolithiasis*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town, 2000, pp. 375-378.
2. Robertson WG, Whitfield H, Unwin RJ, et al. Possible causes of the changing pattern of the age of onset of urinary stone disease in the UK. In: Rodgers AL, Hibbert BE, Hess B, Khan SR, Preminger GM, eds. *Urolithiasis*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town, 2000, pp. 366-368.
3. Hesse A, Brandle E, Wilbert D, et al. Study on the prevalence and incidence of urolithiasis in Germany comparing the years 1979 vs. 2000. Eur Urol 2003 Dec;44(6):709-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14644124
4. Djelloul Z, Djelloul A, Bedjaoui A, et al. [Urinary stones in Western Algeria: study of the composition of 1,354 urinary stones in relation to their anatomical site and the age and gender of the patients.] Prog Urol 2006 Jun;16(3):328-35. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16821346
5. Sarica K. Pediatric urolithiasis: etiology, specific pathogenesis and medical treatment. Urol Res 2006 Apr;34(2):96-101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16432692

6. Mandeville JA, Nelson CP. Pediatric urolithiasis. Curr Opin Urol 2009 Jul;19(4):419-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19440153
7. Sarica K. Medical aspect and minimal invasive treatment of urinary stones in children. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2008 Jun;80(2):43-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18683808
8. Sayasone S, Odermatt P, Khammanivong K, et al. Bladder stones in childhood: a descriptive study in a rural setting in Saravan Province, Lao PDR1. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health 2004;35 Suppl 2:50-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15906634
9. Stamatelou KK, Francis ME, Jones CA, et al. Time trends in reported prevalence of kidney stones in the United States: 1976-1994. Kidney Int 2003 May;63(5):1817-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12675858
10. DeFoor WR, Jackson E, Minevich E, et al. The risk of recurrent urolithiasis in children is dependent on urinary calcium and citrate. Urology 2010 Jul;76(1):242-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20110113
11. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease. Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051
12. Sternberg K, Greenfield SP, Williot P, et al. Pediatric stone disease: an evolving experience. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1711-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148688
13. Palmer LS. Pediatric urologic imaging. Urol Clin North Am 2006 Aug;33(3):409-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16829274
14. Darge K, Heidemeier A. [Modern ultrasound technologies and their application in pediatric urinary tract imaging.] Radiologe 2005 Dec;45(12):1101-11. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16086170
15. Pepe P, Motta L, Pennisi M, et al. Functional evaluation of the urinary tract by color-Doppler ultrasonography (CDU) in 100 patients with renal colic. Eur J Radiol 2005 Jan;53(1):131-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15607864
16. Oner S, Oto A, Tekgul S, et al. Comparison of spiral CT and US in the evaluation of pediatric urolithiasis. JBR-BTR 2004 Sep-Oct;87(5):219-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15587558
17. Palmer JS, Donaher ER, O'Riordan MA, et al. Diagnosis of pediatric urolithiasis: role of ultrasound and computerized tomography. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1413-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145452
18. Riccabona M, Lindbichler F, Sinzig M. Conventional imaging in paediatric uroradiology. Eur J Radiol 2002 Aug;43(2):100-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12127207
19. Chateil JF, Rouby C, Brun M, et al. [Practical measurement of radiation dose in pediatric radiology: use of the dose surface product in digital fluoroscopy and for neonatal chest radiographs.] J Radiol 2004 May;85(5 Pt 1):619-25. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205653
20. Riccabona M, Avni FE, Blickman JG, et al. Imaging recommendations in paediatric uroradiology. Minutes of the ESPR uroradiology task force session on childhood obstructive uropathy, high-grade fetal hydronephrosis, childhood haematuria, and urolithiasis in childhood. ESPR Annual Congress, Edinburgh, UK, June 2008. Pediatr Radiol 2009 Aug;39(8):891-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19565235
21. Stratton KL, Pope JC 4th, Adams CM, et al. Implications of ionizing radiation in the pediatric urology patient. J Urol 2010 Jun;183(6):2137-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20399463
22. Thomson JM, Glocer J, Abbott C, et al. Computed tomography versus intravenous urography in diagnosis of acute flank pain from urolithiasis: a randomized study comparing imaging costs and radiation dose. Australas Radiol 2001 Aug;45(3):291-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11531751
23. Tamm EP, Silvermann PM, Shuman WP. Evaluation of the Patient with Flank Pain and Possible Ureteral Calculus. Radiology 2003 Aug;228(2):319-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12819343

24. Cody DD, Moxley DM, Krugh KT, et al. Strategies for formulating appropriate MDCT techniques when imaging the chest, abdomen, and pelvis in pediatric patients AJR Am J Roentgenol 2004 Apr;182(4):849-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15039151
25. Leppert A, Nadalin S, Schirg E, et al. Impact of magnetic resonance urography on preoperative diagnostic workup in children affected by hydronephrosis: should IVU be replaced? J Pediatr Surg 2002 Oct;37(10):1441-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12378450
26. Hesse A, Kruse R, Geilenkeuser WJ, et al. Quality control in urinary stone analysis: results of 44 ring trials (1980-2001). Clin Chem Lab Med 2005;43(3):298-303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15843235
27. Aydogdu O, Burgu B, Gucuk A, et al. Effectiveness of doxazosin in treatment of distal ureteral stones in children. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2880-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19846149
28. Lahme S. Shockwave lithotripsy and endourological stone treatment in children. Urol Res 2006 Apr;34(2):112-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16446980
29. Dogan HS, Tekgül S. Management of pediatric stone disease. Curr Urol Rep 2007 Mar;8(2):163-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17303023
30. Smaldone MC, Docimo SG, Ost MC. Contemporary Surgical Management of Pediatric Urolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 2010 May;37(2);253-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20569803
31. Thomas BG. Management of stones in childhood. Curr Opin Urol 2010 Mar;20(2):159-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19996750
32. Landau EH, Shenfeld OZ, Pode D, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in prepubertal children: 22-year experience at a single institution with a single lithotriptor. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4 Suppl): 1835-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19692011
33. Landau EH, Gofrit ON, Shapiro A, et al. Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy is highly effective for ureteral calculi in children. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2316-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371970
34. Tan AH, Al-Omar M, Watterson JD, et al. Results of shockwave lithotripsy for pediatric urolithiasis. J Endourol 2004 Aug;18(6):527-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15333214
35. Frick J, Sarica K, Kohle R, et al. Long-term follow-up after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in children. Eur Urol 1991;19(3):225-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1855529
36. D'Addessi A, Bongiovanni L, Racioppi M, et al. Is extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in pediatrics a safe procedure? J Pediatr Surg 2008 Apr;43(4):591-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18405701
37. Aldridge RD, Aldridge RC, Aldridge LM. Anesthesia for pediatric lithotripsy. Paediatr Anaesth 2006 Mar;16(3):236-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16490086
38. Sarica K, Küpeli S, Sarica N, et al. Long-term follow-up of renal morphology and function in children after lithotripsy. Urol Int 1995;54(2):95-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7747366
39. Griffin SJ, Margaryan M, Archambaud F, et al. Safety of Shock Wave Lithotripsy for Treatment of Pediatric Urolithiasis: 20-Year Experience. J Urol 2010 Jun;183(6):2332-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20400129
40. Reisiger K, Vardi I, Yan Y, et al. Pediatric nephrolithiasis: does treatment affect renal growth? Urology 2007 Jun;69(6):1190-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17572213
41. Kurien A, Symons S, Manohar T, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in children: equivalent clearance rates to adults is achieved with fewer and lower energy shock waves. BJU Int 2009 Jan;103(1):81-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18727616
42. Desai M. Endoscopic management of stones in children. Curr Opin Urol 2005 Mar;15(2):107-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15725934

43. Rizvi S, Nagvi S, Hussain Z, et al. Management of pediatric urolithiasis in Pakistan: experience with 1,440 children. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):634-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544331
44. Straub M, Gschwend J, Zorn C. Pediatric urolithiasis: the current surgical management. Pediatr Nephrol 2010 Jul;25(7):1239-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20130924
45. Smaldone MC, Corcoran AT, Docimo SG, et al. Endourological management of pediatric stone disease: present status. J Urol 2009 Jan;181(1):17-28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19012920
46. Kapoor R, Solanki F, Singhania P, et al. Safety and efficacy of percutaneous nephrolithotomy in the pediatric population. J Endourol 2008 Apr;22(4):637-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18338958
47. Gedik A, Orgen S, Akay AF, et al. Semi-rigid ureterorenoscopy in children without ureteral dilatation. Int Urol Nephrol 2008;40(1):11-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17653831
48. Smaldone MC, Cannon GM Jr, Wu HY, et al. Is ureteroscopy first line treatment for pediatric stone disease? J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):2128-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17870124
49. Erturhan S, Yagci F, Sarica K. Ureteroscopic management of ureteral calculi in children. J Endourol 2007 Apr;21(4):397-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17451329
50. Minevich E, Sheldon CA. The role of ureteroscopy in pediatric urology. Curr Opin Urol 2006 Jul;16(4):295-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16770131
51. Basiri A, Zare S, Tabibi A, et al. A multicenter, randomized, controlled trial of transureteral and shock wave lithotripsy-which is the best minimally invasive modality to treat distal ureteral calculi in children? J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3);1106-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20650490
52. Basiri A, Zare S, Shakhssalim N, et al. Ureteral calculi in children: what is best as a minimally invasive modality? Urol J 2008 Spring;5(2);67-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18592456
53. Safwat AS, Bissada NK, Kumar U, et al. Experience with ureteroscopic holmium laser lithotripsy in children. Pediatr Surg Int 2008 May;24(5):579-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18365216
54. Gupta PK. Is the holmium: YAG laser the best intracorporeal lithotripter for the ureter? A 3-year retrospective study. J Endourol 2007 Mar;21(3):305-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17444776
55. Erdenetsesteg G, Manohar T, Singh H, et al. Endourologic management of pediatric urolithiasis: proposed clinical guidelines. J Endourol 2006 Oct;20(10):737-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17094748
56. Kim SS, Kolon TF, Canter D, et al. Pediatric Flexible Ureteroscopic Lithotripsy:The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia Experience. J Urol 2008 Dec;180(6);2616-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18950810
57. Lesani OA, Palmer JS. Retrograde proximal rigid ureteroscopy and pyeloscopy in prepubertal children: safe and effective. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 1):1570-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952683
58. Cannon GM, Smaldone MC, Wu HY, et al. Ureteroscopic management of lower-pole stones in a pediatric population. J Endourol 2007 Oct;21(10):1179-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17949321
59. Sarica K, Erturhan S, Yurtseven C, et al. Effect of potassium citrate therapy on stone recurrence and regrowth after extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy in children. J Endourol 2006 Nov;20(11):875-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144854
60. Muslumanoglu AY, Tefekli A, Sarilar O, et al. Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy as the first line treatment alternative for urinary tract stones in children: a large scale retrospective analysis. J Urol 2003 Dec;170(6 Pt 1):2405-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634438
61. Braun MP, Seif C, Jueneman KP, et al. Urolithiasis in children. Int Braz J Urol 2002 Nov-Dec;28(6);539-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15748404

62. Casale P, Grady RW, Joyner BD, et al. Transperitoneal laparoscopic pyelolithotomy after failed percutaneous access in the pediatric patient. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):680-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247760
63. Fragoso AC, Valla JS, Steyaert H, et al. Minimal access surgery in the management of pediatric urolithiasis. J Pediatr Urol 2009 Feb;5(1):42-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18805739
64. Holman E, Toth C. Laparoscopically assisted percutaneous transperitoneal nephrolithotomy in pelvic dystopic kidneys: experience in 15 successful cases J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 1998 Dec;8(6):431-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9916597

10. STONES IN URINARY DIVERSION AND OTHER VOIDING PROBLEMS

10.1 Management of stones in patients with urinary diversion

*10.1.1 **Aetiology and preventive measures***

Patients with urinary diversion are at risk for stone formation in the renal collecting system, ureters, and conduit or continent reservoir (1-3). Metabolic factors such as hypercalciuria and hypocitraturia, infection with urease-producing organisms, foreign bodies, mucus secretion, and urinary stasis could be involved in stone formation in these cases (4).

These patients are also at high risk for stone recurrence, which warrants close follow-up for effective prevention. Preventive measures include medical management of metabolic abnormalities, appropriate therapy of urinary infections, and regular irrigation of continent reservoirs (5). One study showed that the risk for recurrent upper-tract stones in patients with urinary diversion subjected to PNL was 63% at 5 years (6).

*10.1.2 **Management***

Although patients with smaller upper-tract stones can be treated effectively with SWL (7,8) other well-established endourological techniques might be necessary to achieve stone-free status.

Some patients with small- or large-bowel conduits can be treated with URS under fluoroscopic guidance. Although identification of the targeted ureteral orifice is difficult, it can be localised by flexible cystoscopy and/or administration of intravenous indigo carmine. and a hydrophilic guidewire can be placed followed by regular flexible ureteroscopy. Stone removal and fragmentation are then undertaken using standard techniques. This approach might be difficult or impossible in individuals with long, tortuous conduits; percutaneous placement of an antegrade guidewire may facilitate stone removal procedures.

PNL is the preferred treatment alternative for removal of large renal stones in patients with urinary diversion, as well as ureteral stones that cannot be accessed via a retrograde approach or are not amenable to SWL (9).

Stones can form in the conduits after urinary diversion procedures, which is typically associated with a foreign body. A trans-stomal approach can be used to remove all stone material (along with the foreign body) using standard techniques, including intracorporeal lithotripsy. However, for calculi in continent urinary diversion, although a trans-stomal approach might be successful in some patients, there is a risk of disturbing the continence mechanism. A success rate of 89% has been reported for trans-stomal management of patients with stones in Kock reservoirs with afferent nipples (10). Patients with relatively larger stones are the best candidates for percutaneous removal. Before considering any percutaneous approach in these cases, CT should be undertaken to assess the presence of an overlying bowel, which could make this approach unsafe (11), and if present, an open surgical approach should be considered. In patients with no overlying viscera, ultrasound- or CT-guided access is recommended to facilitate safe placement of a sheath into the reservoir followed by standard PNL. Jarrett and colleagues have described an approach in which a 12-mm laparoscopic trocar is placed in the continent reservoir, through which a specimen retrieval bag is inserted (12). Trans-stomal flexible endoscopy facilitates manipulation of the stones into the entrapment bag. The stones are then fragmented in the bag using a rigid nephroscope and standard intracorporeal lithotripsy. This technique allows total stone removal without dispersal of fragments in a capacious reservoir. At the end of the procedure, a large-calibre catheter is placed in the reservoir through the trocar or sheath, and left in place for at least 2-3

weeks to allow tract maturation.

10.1.3 References

1. Kato H, Igawa Y, Komiyama I, et al. Continent urinary reservoir formation with transverse colon for patients with pelvic irradiation. Int J Urol 2002 Apr;9(4):200-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010313
2. Holmes DG, Thrasher JB, Park GY, et al. Longterm complications related to the modified Indiana pouch. Urology 2002 Oct;60(4):603-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12385916
3. Yang WJ, Cho KS, Rha KH, et al. Long-term effects of ileal conduit urinary diversion on upper urinary tract in bladder cancer. Urology 2006 Aug;68(2):324-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904445
4. Assimos DG. Nephrolithiasis in patients with urinary diversion. J Urol 1996 Jan;155(1):69-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490901
5. Hensle TW, Bingham J, Lam J, et al. Preventing reservoir calculi after augmentation cystoplasty and continent urinary diversion:The influence of an irrigation protocol. BJU Int 2004 Mar;93(4):585-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15008735
6. Cohen TD, Streem SB, Lammert G. Long-term incidence and risks for recurrent stones following contemporary management of upper tract calculi in patients with a urinary diversion. J Urol 1996 Jan;155(1):62-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490899
7. Deliveliotis C, Varkarakis J, Argiropoulos V, et al. Shockwave lithotripsy for urinary stones in patients with urinary diversion after radical cystectomy. J Endourol 2002 Dec;16(10):717-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12542873
8. El-Assmy A, El-Nahas AR, Mohsen T, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of upper urinary tract calculi in patients with cystectomy and urinary diversion. Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):510-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140067
9. El-Nahas AR, Eraky I, El-Assmy AM, et al. Percutaneous treatment of large upper tract stones after urinary diversion. Urology 2006 Sep;68(3):500-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979745
10. Stein JP, Freeman JA, Esrig D, et al. Complications of the afferent antireflux valve mechanism in the Kock ileal reservoir. J Urol 1996 May;155(5):1579-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627827
11. Matlaga BR, Shah OD, Zagoria RJ, et al. Computerized tomography guided access for percutaneous nephrostolithotomy. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):45-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796641
12. Jarrett TW, Pound CR, Kavoussi LR. Stone entrapment during percutaneous removal of infection stones from a continent diversion. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):775-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458364

10.2 Management of stones in patients with neurogenic bladder

*10.2.1 **Aetiology and clinical presentation***

Patients with neurogenic bladder can develop urinary calculi because of additional risk factors such as urinary stasis and infection. Indwelling catheters and surgical interposition of bowel segments for treatment of bladder dysfunction can facilitate the introduction of foreign bodies and infection. Although calculi can form at any level of the urinary tract, they occur more frequently in the bladder, especially if bladder augmentation has been performed (1,2). Rare cases have been reported of vaginal calculi secondary to urinary stasis (3) or vesicovaginal fistulae (4). Bacteriuria, pelvicalicectasis, vesicoureteral reflux, renal scarring, lower urinary tract reconstruction, and thoracic spinal defect are risk factors for renal stone formation in patients with neurogenic bladder (5).

Kondo has found that bladder lithiasis is 10 times more prevalent in patients with myelomeningocele (MMC) treated with enterocystoplasy (2). The risk of stone formation after augmentation cystoplasty in immobile patients with sensory impairment can be significantly reduced by irrigation protocols (6). Diagnosis is more difficult because of the absence of clinical expression and difficult visualisation by imaging. As a result of their sensory impairment and vesicourethral dysfunction, these patients generally do not report troublesome symptoms until their calculi become large (7). Difficulty in self-catheterisation should lead to suspicion of possible bladder calculi.

10.2.2 ***Management***

Management of calculi in patients with neurogenic bladder is similar to that described above (see Section 10.1). Regardless of the treatment used, latex allergy is common in patients with MMC and appropriate measures need to be taken (8). Any surgery in these patients must be performed under general anaesthesia because of the impossibility of using spinal anaesthesia. Bone deformities often complicate positioning on the operating table and the necessary venous access. These deformities can even prevent general anaesthesia (9), which makes early diagnosis of lithiasis essential.

Statements	LE
Patients undergoing urinary diversion and/or suffering from neurogenic bladder dysfunction are at risk for recurrent stone formation.	3
Careful patient follow-up, utilisation of the appropriate stone-removal approach, and implementation of effective preventive strategies are the cornerstones of successful management.	3

10.2.3 ***References***

1. Gros DA, Thakkar RN, Lakshmanam Y, et al. Urolithiasis in spina bifida. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1998 Dec;8 Suppl 1:68-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9926338
2. Kondo A, Gotoh M, Isobe Y, et al. Urolithiasis in those patients with myelodysplasia. Nihon Hinyokika Gakkai Zasshi 2003 Jan;94(1):15-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12638200
3. Petrillo CR, Borrelli M, Botelho C. Primary vaginal calculus in a patient with meningomyelocele. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1981 May;62(5):227-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7235912
4. Sant GR, Conley GR, Klauber GT. Vaginal calculus in a female with myelodysplasia. Urology 1983 Sep;22(3):294-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6353734
5. Raj GV, Bennett RT, Preminger GM, et al. The incidence of nephrolithiasis in patients with spinal neural tube defects. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 2):1238-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458475
6. Hensle TW, Bingham J, Lam J, et al. Preventing reservoir calculi after augmentation cystoplasty and continent urinary diversion: the influence of an irrigation protocol. BJU Int 2004 Mar;93(4):585-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15008735
7. Gacci M, Cai T, Travaglini F, et al. Giant stone in enterocystoplasty. Urol Int 2005;75(2):181-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16123575
8. Martinez Jabaloyas JM, Broseta Rico E, Ruiz Cerda JL, et al. [Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy in patients with urinary diversion]. Actas Urol Esp 1995 Feb;19(2):143-7. [Article in Spanish] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7771239
9. Vaidyanathan S, Soni BM, Wyndaele JJ, et al. Calculus anuria in a spina bifida patient, who had solitary functioning kidney and recurrent renal calculi. Spinal Cord 2004 Jan;42(1):7-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713938

10.3 Management of stones in transplanted kidneys

10.3.1 ***Aetiology and clinical presentation***

Transplant patients depend on their solitary kidney for renal function, therefore, any impairment causing urinary stasis requires immediate intervention. Although immunosuppression renders these patients more vulnerable to infection, they also have conditions that predispose them to urolithiasis, for example, hyperfiltration, excessively alkaline urine, renal tubular acidosis, recurrent UTIs, and increased serum calcium caused by persistent tertiary hyperparathyroidism (1). Stones in kidney allografts have a incidence of 0.2-1.7% (2-4). Unexplained fever, graft rejection, or unexplained failure to thrive requires US or NCCT to rule out calculi (5).

10.3.2 ***Management***

Treatment of renal calculi in the transplant patient is difficult, however, management principles are similar to those applied in other single renal units (6-9).

Conservative treatment under close surveillance is only possible for small asymptomatic stones. Although SWL for small calyceal stones is appealing because of minimal complications, localisation can be difficult and SFRs are poor (10,11). However, for large or ureteral stones, percutaneous and antegrade endoscopic techniques are more favourable, but concerns exist about potential injury to adjacent organs (12-14).

The introduction of small flexible ureteroscopes and holmium laser has made ureteroscopy another treatment option for transplant calculi. Retrograde access to transplanted kidneys is difficult owing to the anterior location of the ureteral anastamosis and ureteral tortuosity (15-17).

Recommendations	GR
All contemporary endoscopic treatment modalities, including SWL, (flexible) ureteroscopy and percutaneous nephrolithotomy are management options in patients with transplanted kidneys.	B
Metabolic evaluation should be completed after stone removal.	A*

**Upgraded following panel consensus.*

10.3.3 ***References***

1. Harper JM, Samuell CT, Hallison PC, et al. Risk factors for calculus formation in patients with renal transplants. Br J Urol 1994 Aug;74(2):147-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7921929
2. Cho DK, Zackson DA, Cheigh J, et al. Urinary calculi in renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 1988 May;45(5):889-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3285534
3. Hayes JM, Streem SB, Graneto D, et al. Renal transplant calculi: a re-evaluation of risk and management. Transplantation 1989 Jun;47(6):949-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2660356
4. Shoskes DA, Hanbury D, Cranston D, et al. Urological complications in 1000 consecutive renal transplant recipients. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):18-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966766
5. Klingler HC, Kramer G, Lodde M, et al. Urolithiasis in allograft kidneys. Urology 2002 Mar;59(3):344-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11880067
6. Trivedi A, Patel S, Devra A, et al. Management of Calculi in A Donor Kidney. Transplant Proc 2007 Apr;39(3):761-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445593
7. Yigit B, Aydın C, Titiz I, et al. Stone Disease in Kidney Transplantation. Transplant Proc 2004 Jan-Feb;36(1):187-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15013342
8. Gupta M, Lee MW. Treatment of stones associated with complex or anomalous renal anatomy. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Aug;34(3):431-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17678992
9. Challacombe B, Dasgupta P, Tiptaft R, et al. Multimodal management of urolithiasis in renal transplantation. BJU Int 2005 Aug;96(3):385-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16042735
10. Rhoderik TM, Yang HC, Escobar FS, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in the renal transplant patient: a case report and review of the literature. Clin Transplant 1992 Oct;6(5):375-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10147926
11. Atala A, Steinbeck GS, Harty JI, et al. Extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy in transplanted kidney. Urology 1993 Jan;41(1): 60-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8420082
12. Rifaioglu MM, Berger AD, Pengune W, et al. Percutaneous Management of Stones in Transplanted Kidneys: Urology 2008 Sep;72(3):508-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18653217
13. Minon Cifuentes J, Garcia Tapia E, Garcia de la Pena E, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in transplanted kidney. Urology 1991 Sep;38(3):232-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1887537
14. Wyatt J, Kolettis PN, Burns JR. Treatment Outcomes for Percutaneous Nephrolithotomy in Renal Allografts. J Endourol 2009 Nov;23(11);1821-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19814697
15. Del Pizzo JJ, Jacobs SC, Sklar GN. Ureteroscopic evaluation in renal transplant recipients. J Endourol 1998 Apr;12(2):135-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9607439
16. Basiri A, Nikoobakht MR, Simforoosh N, et al. Ureteroscopic management of urological complications after renal transplantation. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2006;40(1):53-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16452057

17. Lu HF, Shekarriz B, Stoller ML. Donor-gifted allograft urolithiasis: Early percutaneous management. Urology 2002 Jan;59(1):25-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11796274

10.4 Special problems in stone removal

Table 23: Special problems in stone removal

Caliceal diverticulum stones	•SWL, PNL (if possible) or RIRS • Can also be removed using laparoscopic retroperitoneal surgery (1-5) • Patients may become asymptomatic due to stone disintegration (SWL) whilst well-disintegrated stone material remains in the original position due to narrow caliceal neck
Horseshoe kidneys	• Can be treated in line with the options described above (6) • Passage of fragments after SWL might be poor
Stones in pelvic kidneys	• SWL, RIRS or laparoscopic surgery • For obese patients, the options are SWL, PNL, RIRS or open surgery
Stones formed in a continent reservoir	• See 10.1 • Each stone problem must be considered and treated individually
Patients with obstruction of the ureteropelvic junction	• When outflow abnormality requires correction, stones can be removed by PNL together with percutaneous endopyelotomy (15-35) or open/ laparoscopic reconstructive surgery • URS together with endopyelotomy with Ho:YAG • Incision with an Acucise balloon catheter might be considered, provided the stones can be prevented from falling into the pelvi-ureteral incision (7-10)

10.5 References

1. Raboy A, Ferzli GS, Loffreda R, et al. Laparoscopic ureterolithotomy. Urology 1992 Mar;39(3):223-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1532102
2. Gaur DD. Retroperitoneal endoscopic ureterolithotomy: our experience in 12 patients. J Endourol 1993 Dec;7(6):501-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8124346
3. Gaur DD. Retroperitoneal laparoscopic ureterolithotomy. World J Urol 1993;11(3):175-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8401638
4. Gaur DD, Agarwal DK, Purohit KC, et al. Retroperitoneal laparoscopic pyelolithotomy. J Urol 1994 Apr;151(4):927-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8126827
5. Escovar Diaz P, Rey Pacheco M, Lopez Escalante JR, et al. [Laparoscopic urelithotomy.] Arch Esp Urol 1993 Sep;46(7):633-7. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8239742
6. Locke DR, Newman RC, Steinbock GS, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in horseshoe kidney. Urology 1990 May;35(5):407-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2336770
7. Gelet A, Combe M, Ramackers JM, et al. Endopyelotomy with the Acucise cutting balloon device. Early clinical experience. Eur Urol 1997;31(4):389-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187895
8. Faerber GJ, Richardson TD, Farah N, et al. Retrograde treatment of ureteropelvic junction obstruction using the ureteral cutting balloon catheter. J Urol 1997 Feb;157(2):454-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996330
9. Berkman DS, Landman J, Gupta M. Treatment outcomes after endopyelotomy performed with or without simultaneous nephrolithotomy: 10-year experience. J Endourol 2009 Sep;23(9):1409-13.
10. Nakada SY, Wolf JS Jr, Brink JA, et al. Retrospective analysis of the effect of crossing vessels on successful retrograde endopyelotomy outcomes using spiral computerized tomography angiography. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):62-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400437

11. METABOLIC EVALUATION AND RECURRENCE PREVENTION

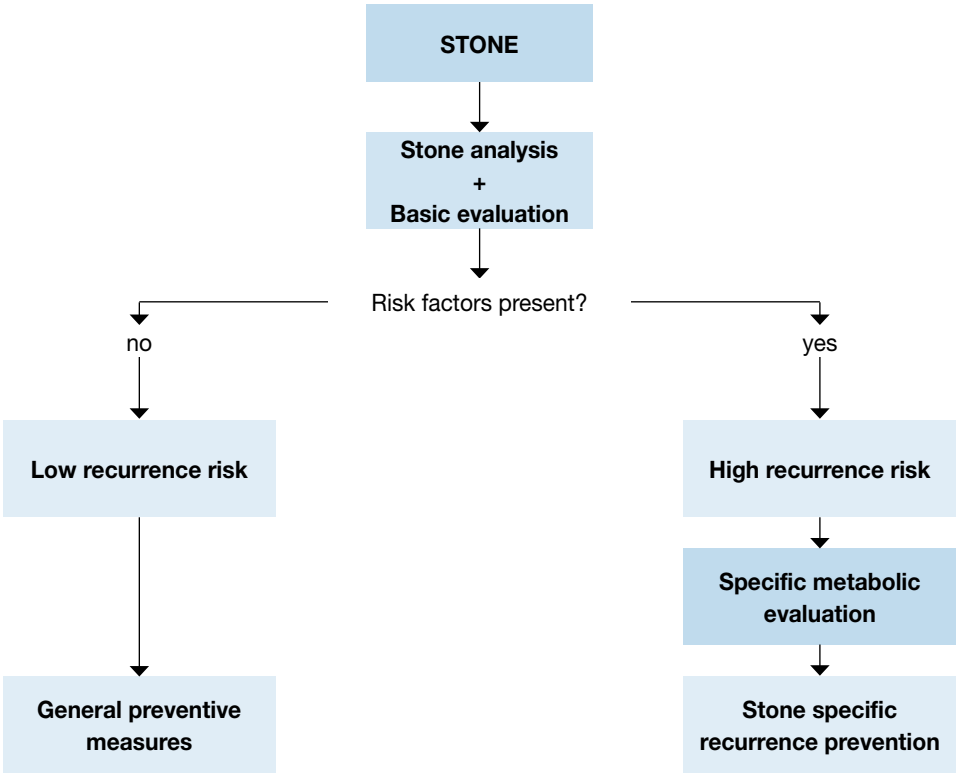
11.1 General metabolic considerations for patient work-up

*11.1.1 **Evaluation of patient risk***

After stone passage, every patient should be assigned to a low- or high-risk group of stone formers (Figure 3). For correct classification, two items are mandatory:

- reliable stone analysis by infrared spectroscopy or X-ray diffraction;
- basic analysis (*see* Section 3.2).

Figure 3: Assignment of patients to low- or high-risk groups of stone formers



Only high-risk stone formers require specific metabolic evaluation. Stone type is the deciding factor for further diagnostic tests. The different stone types include:

- calcium oxalate;
- calcium phosphate;
- uric acid;
- ammonium urate;
- struvite (and infection stones);
- cystine;
- xanthine;
- 2,8-dihydroxyadenine;
- drug stones;
- unknown composition.

*11.1.2 **Urine sampling***

Specific metabolic evaluation requires collection of two consecutive 24-h urine samples (1-3). The collecting bottles should be prepared with 5% thymol in isopropanol or stored at ≤ 8°C during collection (4). Preanalytical errors can be minimised by carrying out urinalysis immediately after collection. Urine pH should be assessed during collection of freshly voided urine four times daily (5).

HCl can be used as a preservative in special situations to prevent precipitation of calcium oxalate and calcium phosphate. However, in samples preserved with HCl, pH measurement is impossible and uric acid precipitates immediately. Alkalinisation is needed to dissolve urate crystals if urate excretion is of interest (6).

Spot urine samples are an alternative method of sampling, particularly when 24-h urine collection is difficult, e.g. in younger children (7,8). Spot urine studies normally link the excretion rates to creatinine (8,9). Spot urine studies are limited because the results may vary with collection time and patients' sex, body weight and age.

*11.1.3 **Timing of specific metabolic work-up***

For the initial specific metabolic work-up, the patient should be stone free. A minimum of 20 days is recommended between stone expulsion or removal and 24-h urine collection (4).

Follow-up studies are necessary in patients receiving recurrent stone prophylaxis (1). The first follow-up 24-h urine measurement should be at 8-12 weeks after starting pharmacological prevention of stone recurrence. This enables drug dosage to be adjusted if urinary risk factors have not normalised, with further 24-h urine measurements if necessary. Once urinary parameters have been normalised, it is sufficient to perform 24-h urine evaluation every 12 months.

The panel realise that on this issue there is only very limited published evidence.

*11.1.4 **Reference ranges of laboratory values***

Tables 24-26 provide the internationally accepted reference ranges for the different laboratory values in serum and urine.

Table 24: Normal laboratory values for blood parameters in adults

Blood parameter	Reference range	
Creatinine	20-100 µmol/L	
Sodium	135-145 mmol/L	
Potassium	3.5-5.5 mmol/L	
Calcium	2.0-2.5 mmol/L (total calcium)	
	1.12-1.32 mmol/L (ionised calcium)	
Uric acid	119-380 µmol/L	
Chloride	98-112 mmol/L	
Phosphate	0.81-1.29 mmol/L	
Blood gas analysis	pH	7.35-7.45
	pO_2	80-90 mmHg
	pCO_2	35-45 mmHg
	HCO_3	22-26 mmol/L
	BE	± 2

BE = base excess (loss of buffer base to neutralise acid).

*11.1.5 **Risk indices and additional diagnostic tools***

Several risk indices have been developed to describe the crystallisation risk for calcium oxalate or calcium phosphate in urine:

- AP_{CaOx} index (10,11);
- EQUIL (12-14);
- Bonn Risk Index (15-17).

Another approach to risk assessment is the Joint Expert Speciation System (JESS), which is based on an extensive database of physiochemical constants and is most like the EQUIL (18).

However, clinical validation of these risk indices for recurrence prediction or therapy improvement is ongoing and the benefit remains controversial.

Table 25: Normal laboratory values for urinary parameters in adults

Urinary Parameters	Reference ranges and limits for medical attention
pH	Constantly > 5.8 Constantly > 7.0 Constantly ≤ 5.8
Specific weight	> 1010
Creatinine	7-13 mmol/day females 13-18 mmol/day males
Calcium	> 5.0 mmol/day ≥ 8.0 mmol/day
Oxalate	> 0.5 mmol/day 0.45-0.85 mmol/day ≥ 1.0 mmol/day
Uric acid	> 4.0 mmol/day
Citrate	< 2.5 mmol/day
Magnesium	< 3.0 mmol/day
Inorganic phosphate	> 35 mmol/day
Ammonium	> 50 mmol/day
Cystine	> 0.8 mmol/day

Table 26: Reference urinary values in paediatric patients (19)

Soluble:creatinine ratio (spot urine samples)

Calcium:creatinine ratio			Citrate:creatinine ratio			Cystine:creatinine ratio			Oxalate:creatinine ratio			Urate:creatinine ratio		
	mol/mol	g/g		mol/mol	g/g		mmol/mol	mg/g		mmol/mol	mg/g		mol/mol	g/g
< 12 mos	< 2.2	< 0.8	0-5 y	> 0.12-0.25	> 0.2-0.42	< 1 month	< 85	< 180	0-6 mos	< 325-360	< 260-88	< 12 mos	< 1.5	< 2.2
1-3 y	< 1.5	< 0.53							7-24 mos	< 132-174	< 110-39	1-3 y	< 1.3	< 1.9
3-5 y	< 1.1	< 0.4				1-6 mos	< 53	< 112	2-5 y	< 98-101	< 80-81	3-5 y	< 1.0	< 1.5
5-7 y	< 0.8	< 0.3	> 5 y	> 0.08-0.15	> 0.14-0.25				5-14 y	< 70-82	< 60-65	5-10 y	< 0.6	< 0.9
> 7 y	< 0.6	< 0.21				> 6 mos	< 18	< 38	> 14 y	< 40	< 32	> 10 y	< 0.4	< 0.6

Urinary excretion of soluble excretion in 24-hour urine samples

Calcium excretion		Citrate excretion		Cystine excretion		Oxalate excretion		Urate excretion	
All age groups	< 0.1 mmol/kg/24 h < 4 mg/kg/24 h	All age groups	Boys > 1.9 mmol/1.73 m²/24 h > 365 mg/1.73 m²/24 h Girls > 1.6 mmol/1.73 m²/24 h > 310 mg/1.73 m²/24 h	< 10 y	< 55 µmol/1.73 m²/24 h < 13 mg/1.73 m²/24 h	All age groups	< 0.5 mmol/1.73 m²/24 h < 45 mg /1.73 m²/24 h	< 1 year	< 70 µmol/kg/24 h < 1.3 mg/kg/24 h
				> 10 y	< 200 µmol/1.73 m²/24 h < 48 mg/1.73 m²/24 h			1-5 y	< 65 µmol/kg/24 h < 1.1 mg/kg/24 h
								> 5 y	< 55 µmol/kg/24 h < 0.9 mg/kg/24 h

11.1.6 ***References***

1. Tiselius HG. Aetiological factors in stone formation. In: Davison AM, Cameron JS, Grunfeld J-P, Kerr DN, Ritz E, Winearls CG, eds. *Oxford Textbook of Clinical Nephrology*. 3rd edn. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2005, pp. 1201-1223.
2. Rodman JS, Sosa E, Lopez ML. Diagnosis and treatment of uric acid calculi. In: Coe FL, Favus MJ, Pak CYC, Parks JH, Preminger GM, eds. *Kidney Stones. Medical and Surgical Management*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1996, pp. 973-989.
3. Low RK, Stoller ML. Uric acid-related nephrolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 1997 Feb;24(1):135-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9048857
4. Shekarriz B, Stoller ML. Uric acid nephrolithiasis: current concepts and controversies. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1307-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352383
5. Hesse A, Tiselius HG, Jahnen A. *Urinary Stones: Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence*. In: Uric acid stones. Basel: S Karger AG, 2002, pp.73-91.
6. Cameron MA, Sakhaee K. Uric acid nephrolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Aug;34(3):335-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17678984
7. Food and Nitrition Board. 2002 Dietary Reference Intakes for Energy, Carbohydrate, Fiber, Fat, Fatty Acids, Cholesterol, Protein and Amino Acids. Washington DC: The National Academies Press, 2002, pp. 589-786. http://books.nap.edu/catalog/10490.html
8. Coe FL, Evan A, Worcester E. Kidney stone disease. J Clin Invest 2005 Oct;115(10):2598-608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200192
9. Welch BJ, Graybeal D, Moe OW, et al. Biochemical and stone-risk profiles with topiramate treatment. Am J Kidney Dis 2006 Oct;48(4):555-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16997051
10. Pak CY, Waters O, Arnold L, et al. Mechanism for calcium urolithiasis among patients with hyperuricosuria: supersaturation of urine with respect to monosodium urate. J Clin Invest 1977 Mar;59(3):426-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14173
11. Wilcox WR, Khalaf A, Weinberger A, et al. Solubility of uric acid and monosodium urate. Med Biol Eng 1972 Jul;10(4):522-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5074854
12. Pak CY, Sakhaee K, Fuller C. Successful management of uric acid nephrolithiasis with potassium citrate. Kidney Int 1986 Sep;30(3):422-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3784284
13. Mattle D, Hess B. Preventive treatment of nephrolithiasis with alkali citrate--a critical review. Urol Res 2005 May;33(2):73-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15875173
14. Shekarriz B, Stoller ML. Uric acid nephrolithiasis: current concepts and controversies. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1307-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352383
15. Kavanagh JP, Laube N. Why does the Bonn Risk Index discriminate between calcium oxalate stone formers and healthy controls? J Urol 2006 Feb;175(2):766-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16407047
16. Laube N, Hergarten S, Hoppe B, et al. Determination of the calcium oxalate crystallization risk from urine samples: the BONN Risk Index in comparison to other risk formulas. J Urol 2004 Jul;172(1): 355-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201810
17. Laube N, Labedzke V, Hergarten S, et al. Determination of urinary calcium-oxalate formation risk with BONN-Risk-Index and EQUIL applied to a family. J Chem Inf Comput Sci 2002 May-Jun;42(3):633-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12086525
18. Rodgers AL, Allie-Hamdulay S, Jackson GE. 2007 JESS: What can it teach us? In: AP Evan, JE Lingeman and JC Williams, Jr (Eds), Proceedings of Renal Stone Disease 1st Annual International Urolithiasis Research Symposium, 203 November 2006, Indianapolis, Indiana, pp.183-191. Melville, New York: American Institute of Physics. ISBN 878-0-7354-0406-9.
19. Hoppe B, Kemper MJ. Diagnostic examination of the child with urolithiasis or nephrocalcinosis. Pediatr Nephrol 2010 Mar;25(3):403-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19104842

11.2 General considerations for recurrence prevention

All stone formers, independent of their individual risk, should follow the preventive measures in Table 27. The main focus of these is normalisation of dietary habits and lifestyle risks. Stone formers at high risk need specific prophylaxis for recurrence, which is usually pharmacological treatment and based on stone analysis.

Table 27: General preventive measures

Fluid intake (drinking advice)	Fluid amount: 2.5-3.0 L/day Circadian drinking Neutral pH beverages Diuresis: 2.0-2.5 L/day Specific weight of urine: < 1010
Nutritional advice for a balanced diet	Balanced diet* Rich in vegetable and fibre Normal calcium content: 1-1.2 g/day** Limited NaCl content: 4-5 g/day Limited animal protein content: 0.8-1.0 g/kg/day
Lifestyle advice to normalise general risk factors	BMI: 18-25 kg/m^2 (target adult value, not applicable to children) Stress limitation measures Adequate physical activity Balancing of excessive fluid loss

Caution: The protein need is age-group dependent, therefore protein restriction in childhood should be handled carefully.

** Avoid excessive consumption of vitamin supplements.*

*** Exception: Patients with absorptive hypercalciuria, calcium excretion ≥ 8 mmol/day.*

11.2.1 ***Fluid intake***

An inverse relationship between high fluid intake and stone formation has been repeatedly demonstrated (1,2). The effect of fruit juices is mainly determined by the presence of citrate or bicarbonate (3). If hydrogen ions are present, the net result is neutralisation. However, if potassium is present, both pH and citrate are increased (4,5).

Recommendation	LE	GR
The aim should be to obtain a 24-h urine volume ≥ 2 L.	1b	A

11.2.2 ***Diet***

A common sense approach to diet should be taken, i.e. a mixed balanced diet with contributions from all food groups, but without any excesses (6).

Fruits, vegetables and fibres: fruit and vegetable intake should be encouraged because of the beneficial effects of fibre (7). The alkaline content of a vegetarian diet also increases urinary pH.

Oxalate: excessive intake of oxalate-rich products should be limited or avoided to prevent oxalate load (3), particularly in patients who have high oxalate excretion.

Vitamin C: although vitamin C is a precursor of oxalate, its role as a risk factor in calcium oxalate stone formation remains controversial (8-11). However, it seems wise to advise calcium oxalate stone formers to avoid excessive intake.

Animal protein should not be taken in excess (12-14) and limited to 0.8-1.0 g/kg body weight. Excessive consumption of animal protein has several effects that favour stone formation, including hypocitraturia, low urine pH, hyperoxaluria and hyperuricosuria.

Calcium intake should not be restricted unless there are strong reasons because of the inverse relationship between dietary calcium and stone formation (15). The minimum daily requirement for calcium is 800 mg and the general recommendation is 1000 mg/day (16). Calcium supplements are not recommended except in enteric hyperoxaluria, when additional calcium should be taken with meals to bind intestinal oxalate (14,17-19).

Sodium: the daily sodium intake should not exceed 3-5 g. High intake adversely affects urine composition:

- calcium excretion is increased by reduced tubular reabsorption;
- urinary citrate is reduced due to loss of bicarbonate;
- increased risk of sodium urate crystal formation.

Calcium stone formation can be reduced by restricting sodium and animal protein (13,14). A positive correlation between sodium consumption and risk of first-time stone formation has been confirmed only in women (15,20). There have been no prospective clinical trials on the role of sodium restriction as an independent variable in reducing the risk of stone formation.

Urate: Intake of urate-rich food should be restricted in patients with hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate stones (21-24) and uric acid stones (16). Intake should not exceed 500 mg/day.

11.2.3 ***Lifestyle***

Lifestyle factors may influence the risk of stone formation, e.g. overweight and obesity (25-27). Another risk factor is arterial hypertension (28,29).

11.2.4 ***References***

1. Borghi L, Meschi T, Amato F, et al. Urinary volume, water and recurrences in idiopathic calcium nephrolithiasis: a 5-year randomized prospective study. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):839-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583588
2. Curhan GC, Willett WC, Speizer FE, et al. Beverage use and risk for kidney stones in women. Ann Intern Med 1998 Apr 1;128(7):534-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9518397
3. Siener R, Ebert D, Nicolay C, et al. Dietary risk factors for hyperoxaluria in calcium oxalate stone formers. Kidney Int 2003 Mar;63(3):1037-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12631085
4. Wabner CL. Pak CY. Effect of orange juice consumption on urinary stone risk factors. J Urol 1993 Jun;149(6):1405-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8501777
5. Gettman MT, Ogan K, Brinkley LJ, et al. Effect of cranberry juice consumption on urinary stone risk factors. J Urol 2005 Aug;174(2):590-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006907
6. Hess B, Mauron H, Ackermann D, et al. Effects of a 'common sense diet' on urinary composition and supersaturation in patients with idiopathic calcium urolithiasis. Eur Urol 1999 Aug;36(2):136-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10420035
7. Ebisuno S, Morimoto S, Yasukawa S, et al. Results of long-term rice bran treatment on stone recurrence in hypercalciuric patients. Br J Urol 1991 Mar;67(3):237-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1902388
8. Wandzilak TR, D'Andre SD, Davis PA, et al. Effect of high dose vitamin C on urinary oxalate levels. J Urol 1994 Apr;151(4):834-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8126804
9. Sutton RA, Walker VR. Enteric and mild hyperoxaluria. Miner Electrolyte Metab 1994;20(6):352-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7783697
10. Auer BL, Auer D, Rodger AL. The effects of ascorbic acid ingestion on the biochemical and physicochemical risk factors associated with calcium oxalate kidney stone formation. Clin Chem Lab Med 1998 Mar;36(3):143-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9589801
11. Taylor EN, Stampfer MJ, Curhan GC. Dietary factors and the risk of incident kidney stones in men: new insights after 14 years of follow-up. J Am Soc Nephrol 2004 Dec;15(12):3225-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15579526).
12. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, et al. (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: 2nd International consultation on Stone Disease, Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
13. Borghi L, Schianchi T, Meschi T, et al. Comparison of two diets for the prevention of recurrent stones in idiopathic hypercalciuria. N Engl J Med 2002 Jan;346(2):77-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11784873

14. Fink HA, Akornor JW, Garimella PS, et al. Diet, fluid, or supplements for secondary prevention of nephrolithiasis: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. Eur Urol 2009 Jul;56(1):72-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19321253
15. Curhan GC, Willett WC, Speizer FE, et al. Comparison of dietary calcium with supplemental calcium and other nutrients as factors affecting the risk for kidney stones in women. Ann Intern Med 1997 Apr;126(7):497-504.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9092314
16. Hesse AT, Tiselius H-G. Siener R, Hoppe B. (Eds). *Urinary Stones, Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence*. 3rd edn. Basel, S. Karger AG, 2009. ISBN 978-3-8055-9149-2.
17. Domrongkitchaiporn S, Ongphiphadhanakul B, Stitchantrakul W, et al. Risk of calcium oxalate nephrolithiasis in postmenopausal women supplemented with calcium or combined calcium and estrogen. Maturitas 2002 Feb;41(2):149-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11836046
18. Stitchantrakul W, Sopassathit W, Prapaipanich S, et al. Effects of calcium supplements on the risk of renal stone formation in a population with low oxalate intake. The Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health 2004 Dec;35(4):1028-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15916110
19. von Unruh GE, Voss S, Sauerbruch T, et al. Dependence of oxalate absorption on the daily calcium intake. J Am Soc Nephrol 2004 Jun;15(6):1567-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15153567
20. Curhan GC, Willett WC, Rimm EB, et al. A prospective study of dietary calcium and other nutrients and the risk of symptomatic kidney stones. N Engl J Med 1993 Mar;328(12):833-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8441427
21. Coe FL. Hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate nephrolithiasis. Adv Exp Med Biol 1980;128:439-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7424690
22. Hofbauer J, Zechner O. Impact of allopurinol treatment on the prevention of hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate lithiasis. Eur Urol 1988;15(3-4):227-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3215256
23. Sarig S. The hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate stone former. Miner Electrolyte Metab 1987;13(4):251-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3306317
24. Ettinger B. Hyperuricosuric calcium stone disease. In: Coe FL, Favus MJ, Pak CYC, Parks JH, Preminger GM, eds. *Kidney Stones: Medical and Surgical Management*. Lippincott-Raven: Philadelphia, 1996, pp. 851-858.
25. Maalouf NM, Sakhaee K, Parks JH, et al. Association of urinary pH with body weight in nephrolithiasis. Kidney Int 2004 Apr;65(4):1422-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15086484
26. Curhan GC, Willett WC, Rimm EB, et al. Body size and risk of kidney stones. J Am Soc Nephrol 1998 Sep;9(9):1645-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9727373
27. Siener R, Glatz S, Nicolay C, et al. The role of overweight and obesity in calcium oxalate stone formation. Obes Res 2004 Jan;12(1):106-113.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14742848
28. Madore F, Stampfer MJ, Rimm EB, et al. Nephrolithiasis and risk of hypertension. Am J Hypertens 1998 Jan;11(1 Pt 1):46-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9504449
29. Madore F, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC, et al. Nephrolithiasis and risk of hypertension in women. Am J Kidney Dis 1998 Nov;32(5):802-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9820450

11.3 Stone-specific metabolic work-up and pharmacological recurrence prevention

11.3.1 ***Introduction***

Pharmacological treatment is necessary in patients at high risk for recurrent stone formation, which is normally used with general preventive measures. The ideal drug should halt stone formation, have no side effects, and be easy to administer. Each of these aspects is important to achieve good compliance. The following descriptions highlight the most important characteristics of commonly used medication.

11.3.1.1 Thiazides and thiazide-like agents

Hydrochlorothiazide, bendroflumethiazide, trichlorothiazide and the non-thiazide indapamide have been used for recurrence prevention in patients with calcium stones. Thiazide treatment aims to reduce excretion

of calcium in hypercalciuria, but calcium reduction is also found in patients with normocalciuria (1,2). The hypocalciuric action of thiazides is thought to be mediated by increased reabsorption of calcium in the proximal and distal nephron (3).

Good evidence from RCTs has proven that thiazides are effective in preventing calcium stone recurrence (Table 28) (4).

Table 28: RCTs of thiazides for the prevention of recurrent stone formation (LE: 1b)

Author	Treatment	Selection	Duration of Study (yrs)	No. pts.	Stones/ pt/yr	Remission rate (%)	p-value
Borghi, et al. (5)	Indapamide No tx	Hypercalciuria	3	19 21	0.06 0.28	84.2 57.1	< 0.05
Brocks, et al. (6)	BFMZ Placebo	Non-selective	4	33 29	0.09 0.11	84.8 82.8	NS
Ettinger, et al. (7)	Chlorthalidone Placebo	Non-selective	4	23 31	0.05 0.22	87.0 54.8	< 0.05
Mortensen, et al. (8)	BFMZ Placebo	Non-selective	2	12 10	- -	100.0 60.0	< 0.1
Laerum and Larsen (9)	HCTZ Placebo	Non-selective	3	23 25	0.07 0.18	78.3 52.0	< 0.05
Ohkawa, et al. (10)	Triclorme-thiazide No Tx	Hypercalciuria	2	82 93	0.13 0.31	86.5 55.9	< 0.05
Robertson, et al. (11)	BFMZ No Tx	Non-selective	3	13 9	0.22 0.58	- -	"sig"
Scholz, et al. (12)	HCTZ Placebo	Non-selective	1	25 26	0.20 0.20	76.0 76.9	NS
Wilson, et al. (13)	HCTZ No Rx	Non-selective	3	23 21	0.15 0.31	- -	< 0.05

BFMZ = bendroflumethiazide; HCTZ = hydrochlorothiazide; Tx = treatment.

However, thiazide treatment has side effects. The unmasking of normocalcaemic hyperparathyroidism, development of diabetes and gout, as well as erectile dysfunction, contribute to limited tolerance and a high drop-out rate, resulting in 50-70% overall compliance.

The use of thiazide induces potassium loss. This can be compensated for by giving potassium citrate (3.5-7.0 mmol twice daily), which is preferable to KCl because it results in better potassium substitution (14).

11.3.1.2 Alkaline citrate

Commonly used alkalinising agents are: sodium potassium citrate, potassium citrate, sodium citrate, potassium magnesium citrate, potassium bicarbonate and sodium bicarbonate. Tubular cell alkalinisation is responsible for increased levels of urinary citrate, although only a small fraction of the administered citrate is directly excreted. Alkaline citrates are used for:

- correction of hypocitraturia;
- urine alkalinisation;
- inhibition of growth and aggregation of calcium oxalate;
- inhibition of agglomeration of calcium phosphate (15).

There is evidence from RCTs that alkaline citrates are effective in preventing calcium stone recurrence (4) (Table 29).

Table 29: RCTs evaluating alkali citrate therapy in preventing stone recurrence (LE: 1b)

Author	Treatment	Selection	Duration of Study (yrs)	N	Stones/ pt/yr	Remission (%)	p-value
Barcelo, et al. (16)	K-cit	Hypocitraturia	3	18	0.01	73.23	< 0.05
	Placebo			20	1.1	20	
Hofbauer, et al. (17)	Na-K-cit	Non-selective	3	16	0.9	31.3	NS
	No Rx			22	0.7	27.3	
Ettinger, et al. (18)	K-Mag-C	Non-selective	3	16	-	87.1	rr=0.06
	Placebo			25	-	36.4	

Potassium citrate (16,19), sodium citrate and potassium magnesium citrate (4) significantly reduce recurrence rate. A favourable effect has been reported with potassium magnesium citrate (18), but not sodium potassium citrate. Although potassium magnesium citrate appears to prevent stone recurrence, it is not yet generally available. Further studies are necessary to show whether it is superior to potassium citrate.

Alkaline citrate has a high occurrence of side effects, therefore, overall compliance rates do not exceed ~50%.

11.3.1.3 Magnesium
Magnesium oxide, magnesium hydroxide, potassium magnesium citrate and magnesium aspartate increase urinary magnesium excretion. Biochemically increased urinary magnesium levels reduce the ion-activity product of calcium oxalate and inhibit growth of calcium phosphate crystals. Magnesium is important for the transformation between various calcium phosphate crystal phases. A high urinary concentration of magnesium is thought to decrease the risk of brushite formation.

There is still not enough evidence to recommend magnesium as monotherapy in calcium stone prevention. In two RCTs, magnesium hydroxide was compared with placebo (7) and magnesium oxide with untreated controls (13). Neither showed a significant effect on stone formation, despite follow-up of 4 and 3 years, respectively. The previously reported positive effects of magnesium (20,21) have not been confirmed by recent studies (22).

11.3.1.4 Calcium supplements
See Section 11.2.2.

11.3.1.5 Allopurinol
Allopurinol is an inhibitor of xanthine oxidase. It has been used to prevent recurrence of calcium oxalate stones ever since a relationship was found between hyperuricosuria and calcium oxalate stone formation (23).

Although allopurinol tolerance is normally good, there are severe side effects with high doses.
The potential benefits of allopurinol on calcium oxalate stone formation are:

- reduced salting-out effect;
- decreased risk of uric acid or urate crystals as promoters of calcium oxalate precipitation;
- complex formation between colloidal urate and macromolecular inhibitors;
- reduced excretion of oxalate.

In a placebo-controlled, randomised study of hyperuricosuric calcium-oxalate stone formers, 75% of those treated with allopurinol were free of recurrent stone formation compared with 45% in the placebo group (significant difference) (24). The effectiveness of allopurinol (300 mg/day) has been tested in RCTs in calcium oxalate stone formers (13,24,25). Only one trial demonstrated a significant benefit of allopurinol in preventing stone recurrence (25). However, this trial solely enrolled patients with hyperuricosuria, while the other three enrolled patients regardless of metabolic background.

11.3.1.6 Pyridoxine
Theoretically, pyridoxine (vitamin B6) might favourably influence endogenous production of oxalate, probably due to increased transamination of glyoxylate resulting from action of the coenzyme pyridoxal phosphate.

Due to the rarity (and severity) of primary hyperoxaluria, there are no randomised studies on pyridoxine efficacy. However, it has been confirmed that a few patients with type 1 hyperoxaluria respond favourably to large doses of pyridoxine (26-28).

Due to the lack of other effective treatments, it is worth trying pyridoxine, with the aim of reducing oxalate excretion in patients with primary hyperoxaluria type I.

There are no controlled studies to support the use of pyridoxine in patients with idiopathic calcium oxalate stones.

11.3.1.7 L-Methionine

Acidification of urine can be achieved with 600-1500 mg/day L-methionine. Methionine acidifies urine pH by donating protons. Stable acidification is difficult to achieve. Long-term acidification in children is not justified (4).

11.3.1.8 Tiopronin-α-mercaptopropionylglycine

Tiopronin - which has a thiol-containing biomolecule - is able to form drug-cysteine complexes by splitting the disulphide binding of cystine. Consequently, cystine saturation of urine decreases, while solubility increases significantly (29-31). Although no RCTs have been reported, tiopronin lowers cystine stone formation, when rates before and after treatment are compared (32-35). Due to the significant level of side effects, tiopronin (and other cysteine-binding drugs) should be reserved for patients who are unable to control stone formation with high fluid intake, dietary modification and urine alkalinisation. The side effects appear to be dose related, including: nausea, rash, fatigue, fever, and proteinuria.

11.3.2 ***Recommendations for pharmacological treatment of patients with specific abnormalities in urine composition***

Urinary risk factor	**Suggested treatment**	**LE**	**GR**
Hypercalciuria	Thiazide + potassium citrate	1a	A
Hyperoxaluria	Oxalate restriction	2b	A
Hypocitraturia	Potassium citrate	1b	A
Enteric hyperoxaluria	Potassium citrate Calcium supplement Oxalate absorption	3-4 2 3	C B B
High sodium excretion	Restricted intake of salt	1b	A
Small urine volume	Increased fluid intake	1b	A
Urea level indicating a high intake of animal protein	Avoid excessive intake of animal protein	1b	A
Distal renal tubular acidosis	Potassium citrate	2b	B
Primary hyperoxaluria	Pyridoxine	3	B
No abnormality identified	High fluid intake	2b	B

11.3.3 ***References***

1. Yendt ER. Renal calculi. CMAJ 1970 Mar;102(5):479-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5438766
2. Yendt ER. Commentary: Renal calculi-twenty years later. J Lithotripsy Stone Dis 1990;2:164-72.
3. Constanzo LS, Windhager EE. Calcium and sodium transport by the distal convoluted tubule of the rat. Am J Physiol 1978 Nov;235(5):F492-F506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/727266.
4. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, Rodgers A, Worcester EM. (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: 2nd International consultation on Stone Disease, Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
5. Borghi L, Meshi T, Guerra A, et al. Randomized prospective study of a nonthiazide diuretic, indapamide, in preventing calcium stone recurrences. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol 1993;22 Suppl 6:S78-S86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7508066
6. Brocks P, Dahl C, Wolf H, et al. Do thiazides prevent recurrent idiopathic renal calcium stones? Lancet 1981 Jul;2(8238):124-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6113485

7. Ettinger B, Citron JT, Livermore B, Dolman LI. Chlorthalidone reduces calcium oxalate calculous recurrence but magnesium hydroxide does not. J Urol 1988 Apr;139(4):679-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3280829
8. Mortensen JT, Schultz A, Ostergaard AH. Thiazides in the prophylactic treatment of recurrent idiopathic kidney stones. Int Urol Nephrol 1986;18(3):265-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3533825
9. Laerum S, Larsen S. Thiazide prophylaxis of urolithiasis. A double-blind study in general practice. Acta Med Scand 1984;215(4):383-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6375276
10. Ohkawa M, Tokunaga S, Nakashima T, et al. Thiazide treatment for calcium urolithiasis in patients with idiopathic hypercalciuria. Br J Urol 1992 Jun;69(6):571-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1638340
11. Robertson, WG, Peacock M, Selby PL, et al. In: Urolithiasis and Related Clinical Research 545-548 (Plenum Press, New York, 1985).
12. Scholz K, Schwille PO, Sigel A. Double-blind study with thiazide in recurrent calcium nephrolithiasis. J Urol 1982 Nov;128(5):903-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7176047
13. Wilson DR, Strauss AL, Manuel MA. Comparison of medical treatments for the prevention of recurrent calcium nephrolithiasis. Urol Res 1984;12:39-40.
14. Nicar MJ, Peterson R, Pak CY. Use of potassium citrate as potassium supplement during thiazide therapy of calcium nephrolithiasis. J Urol 1984 Mar;131(3):430-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6699979
15. Tiselius HG, Berg C, Fornander AM, Nilsson MA. Effects of citrate on the different phases of calcium oxalate crystallisation. Scanning Microsc 1993 Mar;7(1):381-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8316807
16. Barcelo B, Wuhl O, Servitge E, Rousaud A, Pak CY. Randomized double-blind study of potassium citrate in idiopathic hypocitraturic calcium nephrolithiasis. J Urol 1993 Dec;150(6):1761-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8230497
17. Hofbauer J, Hobarth K, Szabo N, et al. Alkali citrate prophylaxis in idiopathic recurrent calcium oxalate urolithiasis--a prospective randomized study. Br J Urol 1994 Apr;73(4):362-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8199822
18. Ettinger B, Pak CY, Citron JT, et al. Potassium-magnesium citrate is an effective prophylaxis against recurrent calcium oxalate nephrolithiasis. J Urol 1997 Dec;158(6): 2069-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366314
19. Tuncel A, Biri H, Küpeli B, et al. Efficiency of long-term potassium citrate treatment in patients with idiopathic calcium oxalate stone disease. In: Sarica K, Kyagci F, Erbagci A and Inal Y, eds. Urolithiasis. Proceedings of the 2nd Eurolithiasis Society Meeting. Gaziantep, Turkey: ReTa, 2003, p. 273.
20. Johansson G, Backman U, Danielson BG, et al. Effects of magnesium hydroxide in renal stone disease. J Am Coll Nutr 1982;1(2):179-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6764473
21. Prien EL Sr, Gershoff SF. Magnesium oxide - pyridoxine therapy for recurrent calcium oxalate calculi. J Urol 1974 Oct;112(4):509-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4414543
22. Pearle MS, Roehrborn CG, Pak CY. Meta-analysis of randomized trials for medical prevention of calcium oxalate nephrolithiasis. J Endourol 1999 Nov;13(9):679-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10608521
23. Favus MJ, Coe FL. The effects of allopurinol treatment on stone formation in hyperuricosuric calcium oxalate stone-formers. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1980;53:265-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6938003
24. Miano L, Petta S, Galatioto GP, et al. A placebo controlled double-blind study of allopurinol in severe recurrent idiopathic renal lithiasis. In: Schwille PO, Smith LH, Robertson WG, Vahlensieck W, eds. Urolithiasis and Related Clinical Research. New York: Plenum Press, 1985, pp. 521-524.
25. Ettinger B, Tang A, Citron JT, et al. Randomized trial of allopurinol in the prevention of calcium oxalate calculi. N Engl J Med 1986 Nov;315(22):1386-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3534570
26. Monico CG, Rossetti S, Olson JB, et al. Pyridoxine effect in type I primary hyperoxaluria is associated with the most common mutant allele. Kidney Int 2005 May;67(5):1704-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15840016
27. Hoppe B, Beck BB, Milliner DS. The primary hyperoxalurias. Kidney Int 2009 Jun;75(12):1264-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19225556

28. Hoppe B, Langman CB. A United States survey on diagnosis, treatment, and outcome of primary hyperoxaluria. Pediatr Nephrol 2003 Oct;18(10):986-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12920626
29. Coe FL, Clark C, Parks JH, et al. Solid phase assay of urine cystine supersaturation in the presence of cystine binding drugs. J Urol 2001 Aug;166(2):688-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458118
30. Denneberg T, Jeppsson JO, Stenberg P. Alternative treatment of cystinuria with alphamerkaptopropionylglycine, Thiola. Proc Eur Dial Transplant Assoc 1983 ;20:427-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6657666
31. Dolin DJ, Asplin JR, Flagel L, et al. Effect of cystinebinding thiol drugs on urinary cystine capacity in patients with cystinuria. J Endourol 2005 Apr;19(3):429-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15865542
32. Barbey F, Joly D, Rieu P, et al. [Medical treatment of cystinuria: evaluation of long-term results in 30 patients]. Presse Med 2000 Mar;29(10):528-32. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10761516
33. Chow GK, Streem SB. Medical treatment of cystinuria: results of contemporary clinical practice. J Urol 1996 Nov;156(5):1576-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8863541
34. Pak CY, Fuller C, Sakhaee K, et al. Management of cystine nephrolithiasis with alphamercaptopropionylglycine. J Urol 1986 Nov;136(5):1003-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3534301
35. Tekin A, Tekgul S, Atsu N, et al. Cystine calculi in children: the results of a metabolic evaluation and response to medical therapy. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2328-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371943

11.4 Calcium oxalate stones

The criteria for identification of calcium oxalate stone formers with high recurrence risk are listed in Section 2.6.

11.4.1 ***Diagnosis***

Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, ionized calcium (or total calcium + albumin), uric acid, and parathyroid hormone (PTH) in case of increased calcium levels. Urinalysis requires measurement of urine volume, urine pH profile, specific weight, calcium, oxalate, uric acid, citrate, and magnesium.

11.4.2 ***Interpretation of results and aetiology***

- Elevated levels of ionised calcium in serum (or total calcium and albumin) require assessment of intact PTH to confirm or exclude suspected hyperparathyroidism (HPT).
- "Acidic arrest" (urine pH constantly < 6) may promote co-crystallisation of uric acid and calcium oxalate. Similarly, increased uric acid excretion (> 4 mmol/day in adults or > 12 mg/kg/day in children) can act as a promoter.
- Urine pH levels constantly > 5.8 in the day profile indicate renal tubular acidosis (RTA), provided UTI has been excluded. An ammonium chloride loading test confirms RTA and identifies RTA subtype (see Section 11.6.4).
- Oxalate excretion > 0.5 mmol/day in adults (> 0.37 mmol/1.73 m^2/day in children) confirms hyperoxaluria:
  - primary hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion mostly ≥ 1 mmol/day), appears in three genetically determined forms;
  - secondary hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion ≥ 0.5 mmol/day, usually < 1 mmol/day), occurs due to intestinal hyperabsorption of oxalate or extreme dietary oxalate intake;
  - mild hyperoxaluria (oxalate excretion 0.45-0.85 mmol/day), commonly found in idiopathic calcium oxalate stone formers.

11.4.3 ***Specific treatment***

General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Hyperoxaluric stone formers should consume foods with low oxalate content, while hyperuricosuric stone formers benefit from daily dietary reduction of purine. Table 30 summarises pharmacological treatment of calcium oxalate stones.

Table 30: Pharmacological treatment of calcium oxalate stones

Biochemical risk factor	Rationale for pharmacological therapy	Medication
Hypercalciuria	Calcium excretion 5-8 mmol/day	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day, **OR** Sodium bicarbonate, 1.5 g 3 times daily
	Calcium excretion > 8 mmol/day	Hydrochlorothiazide, 25 mg/day initially, up to 50 mg/day
hypocitraturia	Citrate excretion < 2.5 mmol/day	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day
Hyperoxaluria (enteric)	Oxalate excretion > 0.5 mmol/day	Calcium, ≥ 500 mg/day with meals **NB: BE AWARE OF EXCESS CALCIUM EXCRETION** Magnesium, 200-400 mg/day **NB: NO MAGNESIUM THERAPY IN PATIENTS WITH RENAL INSUFFICIENCY**
Hyperuricosuria	Uric acid excretion > 4.0 mmol/day	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day **OR** Sodium bicarbonate, 1.5 g, 3 times daily **PLUS** Allopurinol,100 mg/day
	Hyperuricosuria and hyperuricemia > 380 µmol	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day **PLUS** Allopurionol, 100-300 mg/day, depending on kidney function
Hypomagnesiuria	Magnesium excretion < 3.0 mmol/day	Magnesium, 200-400 mg/day **NB: NO MAGNESIUM THERAPY IN CASE OF RENAL INSUFFICIENCY**

11.5 Calcium phosphate stones

Some calcium phosphate stone formers are at high risk of recurrence. Further information on identifying high-risk patients is given in Section 2.6.

Calcium phosphate mainly appears in two completely different minerals: carbonate apatite and brushite:

- Carbonate apatite crystallisation occurs at pH ≥ 6.8 and may be associated with infection.
- Brushite crystallises at an optimum pH of 6.5-6.8, at high urinary concentrations of calcium (> 8 mmol/day) and phosphate (> 35 mmol/day). Its occurrence is not related to UTI.

Possible causes of calcium phosphate stones include HPT, RTA and UTI; each of which requires different therapy.

*11.5.1 **Diagnosis***

Diagnosis requires blood analysis for: creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, ionised calcium (or total calcium + albumin), and PTH (in case of increased calcium levels). Urinalysis includes measurement of: volume, urine pH profile, specific weight, calcium, phosphate, and citrate.

*11.5.2 **Specific treatment***

General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet.

*11.5.3 **Pharmacological therapy (Table 31)***

HPT and RTA are common causes of calcium phosphate stone formation. Although most patients with primary HPT require surgery, RTA can be corrected pharmacologically. If primary HPT and RTA have been excluded, pharmacotherapy for calcium phosphate calculi depends on effective reduction of urinary calcium levels using thiazides. If urine pH remains constantly > 6.2, urinary acidification with L-methionine may be helpful. For

infection-associated calcium phosphate stones, it is important to consider the guidance given for infection stones.

Table 31: Pharmacological treatment of calcium phosphate stones

Biochemical risk factor	Rationale for pharmacological therapy	Medication
Hypercalciuria	Calcium excretion > 8 mmol/day	Hydrochlorothiazide, initially 25 mg/day, increasing up to 50 mg/day
Inadequate urine pH	pH constantly > 6.2	L-Methionine, 200-500 mg 3 times daily, with the aim of reducing urine pH to 5.8-6.2
Urinary tract infection	Eradication of urea-splitting bacteria	Antibiotics

11.6 Disorders and diseases related to calcium stones

11.6.1 ***Hyperparathyroidism (1-6)***

The clinical appearance of HPT typically comprises bone loss, gastric ulcers and urolithiasis. Elevated levels of PTH significantly increase calcium turnover, leading to hypercalcaemia and hypercalciuria. If HPT is suspected, neck exploration should be performed to confirm the diagnosis (7). Primary HPT can only be cured by surgery.

11.6.2 ***Primary hyperoxaluria (PH) (8-14)***

Patients with primary hyperoxaluria (PH) should be referred to specialised centres, because successful management requires an experienced interdisciplinary team. The main therapeutic aim is to reduce endogenous oxalate production, which is increased in patients with PH. In approximately one-third of patients with PH type I, pyridoxine therapy normalises or significantly reduces urinary oxalate excretion. The goal of adequate urine dilution is achieved by adjusting fluid intake to 3.5-4.0 L/day in adults (children 1.5 L/m^2 body surface area) and following a circadian drinking regimen.

Therapeutic options for preventing calcium oxalate crystallisation include hyperdiuresis, alkaline citrates and magnesium. However, in end-stage renal failure, primary PH requires simultaneous liver-kidney transplantation. Treatment regimens are:

- Pyridoxine in PH type I: 5-20 mg/kg/day according to urinary oxalate excretion and patient tolerance;
- Alkaline citrate: 9-12 g/day in adults, 0.1-0.15 meq/kg/day in children;
- Magnesium: 200-400 mg/day (no magnesium in case of renal insufficiency).

11.6.3 ***Enteric hyperoxaluria (15-20)***

Enteric hyperoxaluria is a particularly problematic condition in patients with intestinal malabsorption of fat. This abnormality is associated with a high risk of stone formation, and is seen after intestinal resection, jejunoileal bypass for treatment of obesity, and in Crohn's disease and pancreas insufficiency. Intestinal loss of fatty acids is combined with loss of calcium. The normal complex formation between oxalate and calcium is therefore disturbed and oxalate absorption is increased. In addition to hyperoxaluria, these patients usually present with hypocitraturia because of loss of alkali. Urine pH is usually low, as are urinary calcium and urine volume. All these abnormalities contribute to high levels of supersaturation with calcium oxalate, crystalluria and stone formation.

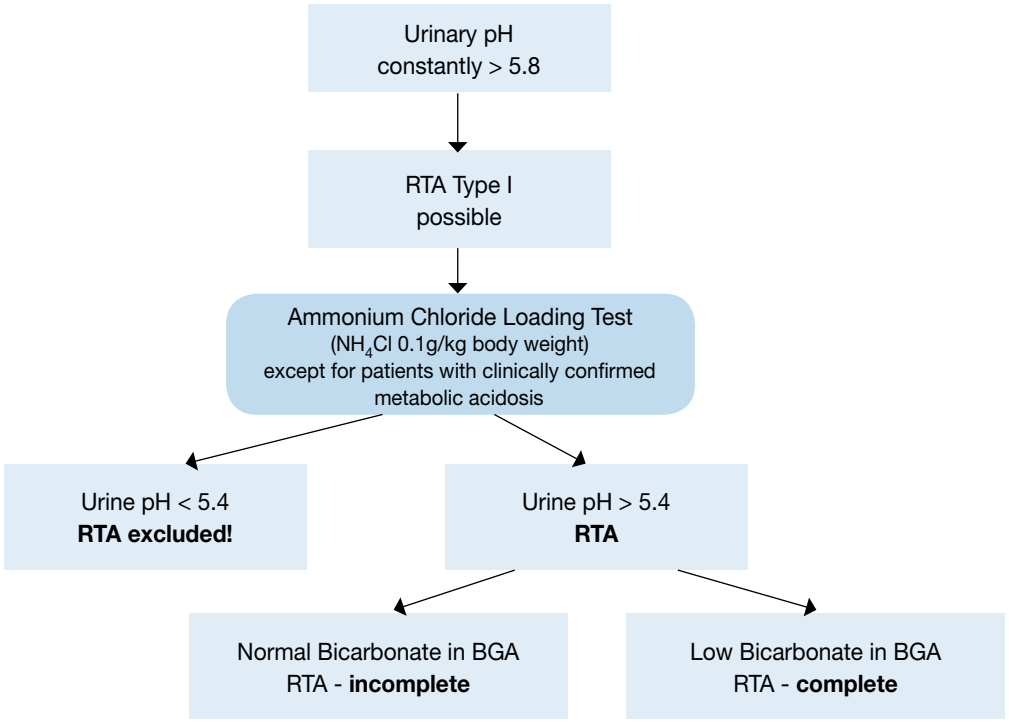
Specific preventive measures are:

- restricted intake of oxalate-rich foods;
- restricted fat intake;
- calcium supplementation at meal times to enable calcium oxalate complex formation in the intestine (20,21);
- sufficient fluid intake to balance intestinal loss of water caused by diarrhoea;
- alkaline citrates to raise urinary pH and citrate (22).

11.6.4 ***Renal tubular acidosis (RTA) (24,25)***

Renal tubular acidosis is caused by severe impairment of proton or bicarbonate handling along the nephron. Kidney stone formation most probably occurs in patients with distal RTA type I. Figure 4 outlines the diagnosis of RTA.

Figure 4: Diagnosis of renal tubular acidosis (RTA)



The main therapeutic aim is restoring a normal acid-base equilibrium. Despite the alkaline pH of urine in RTA, alkalinisation using alkaline citrates or sodium bicarbonate is key to normalising the metabolic changes (intracellular acidosis) responsible for stone formation (Table 32). The alkali load reduces tubular reabsorption of citrate, which in turn normalises citrate excretion and simultaneously reduces calcium turnover. Therapeutic success can be monitored by venous blood gas analysis (base excess: ± 2.0) in complete RTA. If excessive calcium excretion (> 8 mmol/day) persists after re-establishing acid-base equilibrium, thiazides may lower urinary calcium excretion.

Table 32: Pharmacological treatment of renal tubular acidosis

Biochemical risk factor	**Rationale for pharmacological therapy**	**Medication**
Hypercalciuria	Calcium excretion > 8 mmol/day	Hydrochlorothiazide, - in adults, 25 mg/day initially, up to 50 mg/day - in children, 0.5-1 mg/kg/day
Inadequate urine pH	Intracellular acidosis in nephron	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day **OR** Sodium bicarbonate, 1.5 g 3 times daily

11.6.5 ***Nephrocalcinosis (26,27)***

Nephrocalcinosis (NC) refers to increased crystal deposition within the renal cortex or medulla, and occurs alone or in combination with kidney stones. There are various metabolic causes. The main risk factors are: HPT, PH, RTA, vitamin D metabolic disorders, idiopathic hypercalciuria and hypocitraturia, and genetic disorders, including Dent's disease and Bartter's syndrome. The many causes of NC means there is no single standard therapy. Therapeutic attention must focus on the underlying metabolic or genetic disease, while minimising the biochemical risk factors.

11.6.5.1 Diagnosis

Diagnosis requires the following blood analysis: PTH (in case of increased calcium levels), vitamin D and metabolites, vitamin A, sodium, potassium, magnesium, chloride and blood gas analysis. Urinalysis should

investigate: urine pH profile (minimum 4 times a day), daily urine volume, specific weight of urine, and levels of calcium, oxalate, phosphate, uric acid, magnesium and citrate.

11.6.6 ***References***

1. Bilezikian JP, Brandi ML, Rubin M, et al. Primary hyperparathyroidism: New concepts in clinical, densitometric and biochemical features. J Intern Med 2005 Jan;257(1):6-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15606372
2. Bolland MJ, Grey AB, Orr-Walker BJ, et al. Prospective 10-year study of postmenopausal women with asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism. N Z Med J 2008 Jul;121(1277):18-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18677327
3. Mollerup CL, Vestergaard P, Frøkjaer VG, et al. Risk of renal stone events in primary hyperparathyroidism before and after parathyroid surgery: controlled retrospective follow up study. BMJ 2002 Oct;325(7368):807. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12376441
4. Rao DS, Phillips ER, Divine GW, et al. Randomized controlled clinical trial of surgery versus no surgery in patients with mild asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2004 Nov;89(11):5415-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15531491
5. Silverberg SJ, Bilezikian JP. The diagnosis and management of asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism. Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab 2006 Sep;2(9):494-503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16957763
6. Sorensen HA. Surgery for primary hyperparathyroidism. BMJ 2002 Oct;325(7368):785-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12376423
7. Blanco I, Carril JM, Banzo I, et al. Double-phase Tc-99m sestamibi scintigraphy in the preoperative location of lesions causing hyperparathyroidism. Clin Nucl Med 1998 May;23(5):291-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9596153
8. Bobrowski AE, Langman CB. The primary hyperoxalurias. Semin Nephrol 2008 Mar;28(2):152-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18359396
9. Bobrowski AE, Langman CB. Hyperoxaluria and systematic oxalosis: current therapy and future directions. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2006 Oct;7(14):1887-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17020415
10. Cochat P, Liutkus A, Fargue S, et al. Primary hyperoxaluria type 1: still challenging! Pediatr Nephrol. 2006 Aug;21(8):1075-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16810517
11. Kemper MJ. The role of preemptive liver transplantation in primary hyperoxaluria type 1. Urol Res 2005 Nov;33(5):376-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16284878
12. Kemper MJ. Concurrent or sequential liver and kidney transplantation in children with primary hyperoxaluria type 1? Pediatr Transplant 2005 Dec;9(6):693-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16269037
13. Rumsby G. An overview of the role of genotyping in the diagnosis of the primary hyperoxalurias. Urol Res 2005 Nov;33(5):318-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16208537
14. Hoppe B, Beck BB, Milliner DS. The primary hyperoxalurias. Kidney Int 2009 Jun;75(12):1264-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19225556
15. Hoppe B, Leumann E, von Unruh G, et al. Diagnostic and therapeutic approaches in patients with secondary hyperoxaluria. Front Biosci 2003 Sep;8:e437-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12957811
16. Whitson JM, Stackhouse GB, Stoller ML. Hyperoxaluria after modern bariatric surgery: case series and literature review. Int Urol Nephrol 2010 Jun;42(2):369-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19572208
17. Sutton RA, Walker VR. Enteric and mild hyperoxaluria. Miner Electrolyte Metab 1994;20(6):352-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7783697
18. Harper J, Mansell MA. Treatment of enteric hyperoxaluria. Postgrad Med J 1991 Mar;67(785):219-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2062767
19. Tracy CR, Pearle MS. Update on the medical management of stone disease. Curr Opin Urol 2009 Mar;19(2):200-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19188774

20. Lindsjö M. Oxalate metabolism in renal stone disease with special reference to calcium metabolism and intestinal absorption. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1989;119:1-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2669121
21. Takei K, Ito H, Masai M, et al. Oral calcium supplement decreases urinary oxalate excretion in patients with enteric hyperoxaluria. Urol Int 1998;61(3):192-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933846
22. von Unruh GE, Voss S, Sauerbruch T, et al. Dependence of oxalate absorption on the daily calcium intake. J Am Soc Nephrol 2004 Jun;15(6):1567-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15153567
23. Nordenvall B, Backman L, Burman P, et al. Low-oxalate, low-fat dietary regimen in hyperoxaluria following jejunoileal bypass. Acta Chir Scand 1983;149(1):89-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6837228
24. Domrongkitchaiporn S, Khositseth S, Stitchantrakul W, et al. Dosage of potassium citrate in the correction of urinary abnormalities in pediatric distal renal tubular acidosis patients. Am J Kidney Dis 2002 Feb;39(2):383-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11840381
25. Maxwell AP. Genetic renal abnormalities. Medicine 2007;35(7):386-92.
26. Schell-Feith EA, Moerdijk A, van Zwieten PH, et al. Does citrate prevent nephrocalcinosis in preterm neonates? Pediatr Nephrol 2006 Dec;21(12):1830-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17039333
27. Hoppe B, Kemper MJ. Diagnostic examination of the child with urolithiasis or nephrocalcinosis. Pediatr Nephrol 2010 Mar;25(3):403-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19104842

11.7 Uric acid and ammonium urate stones

All uric acid and ammonium urate stone formers are considered to be at high risk of recurrence (1). Hyperuricosuria may be a result of dietary excess, endogenous overproduction (enzyme defects), myeloproliferative disorders, tumour lysis syndrome, drugs, gout or catabolism (2). Ammonium urate crystals are associated with UTI, malabsorption and malnutrition.

11.7.1 ***Diagnosis***

Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine and uric acid levels. Urinalysis requires measurement of urine volume, urine pH profile, specific weight of urine, and uric acid level.

Interpretation of results

Uric acid and ammonium urate stones form under completely different biochemical conditions. Acidic arrest (urine pH constantly < 6) promotes uric acid crystallisation.

Hyperuricosuria is defined as uric acid excretion ≥ 4 mmol/day in adults or > 0.12 mmol/kg/day in children.

Hyperuricaemia may be present, but there is only weak evidence for its association with stone formation. Ammonium urate crystals form in urine at pH > 6.5, at high uric acid concentration, and in the presence of cations.

11.7.2 ***Specific treatment***

General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Hyperuricosuric stone formers benefit from purine reduction of their daily diet. Table 33 describes pharmacological treatment.

Table 33: Pharmacological treatment of uric acid and ammonium urate stones

Biochemical risk factor	Rationale for pharmacological therapy	Medication
Inadequate urine pH	Urine pH constantly ≤ 6.0; 'acidic arrest' in **uric acid stones**	Alkaline citrate, 9-12 g/day **OR** Sodium bicarbonate, 1.5 g 3 times daily **NB: DOSE DEPENDS ON TARGETED URINE PH** Prevention: targeted urine pH **6.2-6.8** Chemolitholysis: targeted urine pH **7.0-7.2**
	Urine pH constantly > 6.5 in **ammonium urate stones**	Adequate antibiotics in case of urinary tract infection with urea-degrading bacteria L-Methionine, 200-500 mg 3 times daily; targeted urine pH **5.8-6.2**
Hyperuricosuria	Uric acid excretion > 4.0 mmol/day	Allopurinol, 100 mg/day
	Hyperuricosuria and hyperuricemia > 380 µmol	Allopurinol, 100-300 mg/day, depending on kidney function

11.7.3 ***References***

1. Hesse AT, Tiselius H-G. Siener R, Hoppe B. (Eds). *Urinary Stones, Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence*. 3rd edn. Basel, S.Karger AG; 2009. ISBN 978-3-8055-9149-2.
2. Cameron MA, Sakhaee K. Uric acid nephrolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 2007 Aug;34(3):335-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17678984
3. Rodman JS, Sosa E, Lopez ML. Diagnosis and treatment of uric acid calculi. In: Coe FL, Favus MJ, Pak CYC, Parks JH, Preminger GM, eds. *Kidney Stones. Medical and Surgical Management*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1996, pp. 973-989.
4. Low RK, Stoller ML. Uric acid-related nephrolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 1997 Feb;24(1):135-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9048857
5. Shekarriz B, Stoller ML. Uric acid nephrolithiasis: current concepts and controversies. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1307-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352383
6. Coe FL, Evan A, Worcester E. Kidney stone disease. J Clin Invest 2005 Oct;115(10):2598-608. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16200192
7. Welch BJ, Graybeal D, Moe OW, et al. Biochemical and stone-risk profiles with topiramate treatment. Am J Kidney Dis 2006 Oct;48(4):555-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16997051
8. Pak CY, Waters O, Arnold L, et al. Mechanism for calcium urolithiasis among patients with hyperuricosuria: supersaturation of urine with respect to monosodium urate. J Clin Invest 1977 Mar;59(3):426-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14173
9. Wilcox WR, Khalaf A, Weinberger A, et al. Solubility of uric acid and monosodium urate. Med Biol Eng 1972 Jul;10(4):522-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5074854
10. Pak CY, Sakhaee K, Fuller C. Successful management of uric acid nephrolithiasis with potassium citrate. Kidney Int 1986 Sep;30(3):422-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3784284
11. Mattle D, Hess B. Preventive treatment of nephrolithiasis with alkali citrate--a critical review. Urol Res 2005 May;33(2):73-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15875173

11.8 Struvite and infection stones

All infection-stone formers are deemed at high risk of recurrence.

11.8.1 ***Diagnosis***

Blood analysis requires measurement of creatinine, and urinalysis requires urine pH profile and urine culture.

Interpretation

- Infection stones contain struvite and/or carbonate apatite and/or ammonium urate.
- Urine culture typically provides evidence for urease-producing bacteria (Table 34).

Table 34: Most important species of urease-producing bacteria

Obligate urease-producing bacteria (> 98 %)
• *Proteus* spp. • *Providencia rettgeri* • *Morganella morganii* • *Corynebacterium urealyticum* • *Ureaplasma urealyticum*
Facultative urease-producing bacteria
• *Enterobacter gergoviae* • *Klebsiella* spp. • *Providencia stuartii* • *Serratia marcescens* • *Staphylococcus* spp.
CAUTION: About 0-5% of strains of *Escherichia coli*, *Entercoccus* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* may produce urease.

11.8.2 ***Specific treatment***

General preventive measures are recommended for fluid intake and diet. Specific measures include complete surgical stone removal (1), short- or long-term antibiotic treatment (2), urinary acidification using methionine (3) or ammonium chloride (4), and urease inhibition (5,6). For severe infections, acetohydroxamic acid (Lithostat) may be an option.

Recommendations for therapeutic measures	**Refs.**	**LE**	**GR**
Surgical removal of the stone material as completely as possible	1		
Short-term antibiotic course	2	3	B
Long-term antibiotic course	2	3	B
Urinary acidification: ammonium chloride, 1 g x 2-3 daily	4	3	B
Urinary acidification: methionine, 200-500 mg, 1-3 times daily	3	3	B
Urease inhibition	5,6	1b	A

11.8.3 ***References***

1. Wilson DM. Clinical and laboratory approaches for evaluation of nephrolithiasis. J Urol 1989 Mar;141(3 Pt 2):770-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2918617
2. Wong HY, Riedl CR, Griffith DP. Medical management and prevention of struvite stones. In: Coe FL, Favus MJ, Pak CYC, Parks JH, Preminger GM, eds. *Kidney Stones: Medical and Surgical Management*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1996, pp. 941-50.
3. Jarrar K, Boedeker RH, Weidner W. Struvite stones: long term follow up under metaphylaxis. Ann Urol (Paris) 1996;30(3):112-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8766146
4. Wall I, Tiselius HG. Long-term acidification of urine in patients treated for infected renal stones. Urol Int 1990;45(6):336-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2288050

5. Griffith DP, Gleeson MJ, Lee H, et al. Randomized double-blind trial of Lithostat (acetohydroxamic acid) in the palliative treatment of infection induced urinary calculi. Eur Urol 1991;20(3):243-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1726639
6. Williams JJ, Rodman JS, Peterson CM. A randomized double blind study of acetohydroxamic acid in struvite nephrolithiasis. N Engl J Med 1984 Sep;311(12):760-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6472365

11.9 Cystine stones

All cystine stone formers are deemed at high risk of stone recurrence.

11.9.1 ***Diagnosis***

Blood analysis includes measurement of creatinine, and urinalysis includes measurement of urine volume, pH profile, specific weight, and cystine.

Interpretation

- Cystine is poorly soluble in urine and crystallizes spontaneously within the physiological range of urine pH.
- Cystine solubility depends strongly on urine pH: at pH 6.0, the limit of solubility is 1.33 mmol/L.
- Routine analysis of cystine is not suitable for therapeutic monitoring.
- Reductive therapy targets disulphide bond splitting in cystine; it is essential to differentiate between cystine, cysteine and drug-cysteine complexes. Only HPLC-based analysis differentiates between the different complexes formed by therapy.

11.9.2 ***Specific treatment***

General preventative measures for fluid intake and diet are recommended. Although theoretically a diet low in methionine may reduce urinary excretion of cystine, patients are unlikely to comply sufficiently with such a diet. However, a restricted intake of sodium is more easily achieved and is more effective in reducing urinary cystine. Patients are usually advised to avoid sodium consumption > 2 g/day (1).

A high diuresis is of fundamental importance, aiming for 24-h urine volume of ≥ 3 L (2,3). A considerable fluid intake evenly distributed during the day is necessary.

11.9.2.1 Pharmacological treatment of cystine stones

The main therapeutic option for avoiding cystine crystallisation is to maintain urine pH above 7.5 to improve cystine solubility (Table 35) and to ensure appropriate hydration with a minimum of 3.5 L/day in adults, or 1.5 L/m^2 body surface area in children.

Free cystine concentration can be decreased by reductive substances, which act by splitting the disulphide binding of cystine

Tiopronin: Tiopronin is currently the best choice for cystine reduction. However, side effects often lead to treatment termination, e.g. when nephritic syndrome develops, or poor compliance, especially with long-term use.

After carefully considering the risk of early tachyphylaxis, putting into place a dose-escape phenomenon for long-term use, and recurrence risk, tiopronin is recommended at cystine levels > 3.0 mmol/day or in the case of troublesome disease.

Ascorbic acid is used when cystine excretion is < 3.0 mmol/day. However, it has limited reductive power and is estimated to lower urinary cystine levels by ~20% (4). The effectiveness and use of ascorbic acid as a standard therapeutic regimen are controversial (5).

Results for the angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor, captopril, are controversial (6-10). Captopril remains a second-line option, for use when tiopronin is not feasible or unsuccessful.

Table 35: Pharmacological treatment of cystine stones

Biochemical risk factor	Rationale for pharmacological therapy	Medication
Cystinuria	Cystine excretion > 3.0-3.5 mmol/day	Tiopronin, 250 mg/day initially, up to a maximum dose of 2 g/day **NB: TACHYPHYLAXIS IS POSSIBLE**
Inadequate urine pH	Improvement of cystine solubility. Urine pH optimum 7.5-8.5	*Alkaline Citrate* dose according to urine pH alternative *Sodium Bicarbonate* dose according to urine pH

Recommendations for the treatment of cystine stones

Therapeutic measures	Refs.	LE	GR
Urine dilution High fluid intake recommended so that 24-h urine volume exceeds 3 L. Intake should be ≥ 150 mL/h.	1-3,5	3	B
Alkalinisation For cystine excretion < 3 mmol/day: potassium citrate 3-10 mmol 2 or 3 times daily, to achieve pH > 7.5.	1-3,5	3	B
Complex formation with cystine For patients with cystine excretion > 3 mmol/day, or when other measures are insufficient: tiopronin, 250-2000 mg/day; captopril, 75-150 mg remains a second-line option in case tiopronin is unfeasible or unsuccessful.	1-10	3	B

11.9.3 ***References***

1. Ng CS, Streem SB. Contemporary management of cystinuria. J Endourol 1999 Nov;13(9):647-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10608516
2. Biyani CS, Cartledge JJ. Cystinuria-Diagnosis and Management. EAU-EBU Update Series 4, issue 5. 2006:175-83. http://journals.elsevierhealth.com/periodicals/eeus/issues/contents
3. Dent CE, Senior B. Studies on the treatment of cystinuria. Br J Urol 1955;27(4):317-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13276628
4. Birwe H, Schneeberger W, Hesse A. Investigations of the efficacy of ascorbic acid therapy in cystinuria. Urol Res 1991;19(3):199-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1887529
5. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease. Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051
6. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, Rodgers A, Worcester EM (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: 2nd International consultation on Stone Disease, Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
7. Cohen TD, Streem SB, Hall P. Clinical effect of captopril on the formation and growth of cystine calculi. J Urol 1995 Jul;154(1):164-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7776415
8. Coulthard MG, Richardson J, Fleetwood A. The treatment of cystinuria with captopril. Am J Kidney Dis 1995 Apr;25(4):661-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7702068

9. Coulthard M, Richardson J, Fleetwood A. Captopril is not clinically useful in reducing the cystine load in cystinuria or cystinosis. Pediatr Nephrol 1991 Jan;5(1):98. [No abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2025551
10. Aunsholt NA, Ahlbom G. Lack of effect of captopril in cystinuria. Clin Nephrol 1990 Aug;34(2):92-3. [No abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2225559

11.10 2,8-dihydroyadenine stones and xanthine stones (1)

All 2,8-dihydroxyadenine and xanthine stone formers are considered to be at high risk of recurrence. Both stone types are rare. Diagnosis and specific prevention are similar to those for uric acid stones.

11.10.1 ***2,8-dihydroxyadenine stones***

A genetically determined defect of adenine phosphoribosyl transferase causeshigh urinary excretion of poorly soluble 2,8-dihydroxyadenine. High-dose allopurinol is an option, but should only be tried with regular monitoring.

11.10.2 ***Xanthine stones***

Patients who form xanthine stones usually show decreased levels of serum uric acid. There is no available pharmacological intervention.

11.10.3 ***Fluid intake and diet***

Recommendations for general preventive measures apply. Pharmacological intervention is difficult, therefore, high fluid intake ensures optimal specific weight levels of urine < 1.01. A purine-reduced diet decreases risk of spontaneous crystallisation in urine.

11.11 Drug stones (2)

Drug stones are induced by pharmacological treatment (3,4) (Table 36). Two types exist:

- stones formed by crystallised compounds of the drug;
- stones formed due to unfavourable changes in urine composition under drug therapy.

Table 36: Compounds that cause drug stones

Active compounds crystallizing in urine
• Allopurinol/oxypurinol
• Amoxicillin/ampicillin
• Ceftriaxone
• Ciprofloxacin
• Ephedrine
• Indinavir
• Magnesium trisilicate
• Sulfonamide
• Triamterene
Substances impairing urine composition
• Acetazolamide
• Allopurinol
• Aluminium magnesium hydroxide
• Ascorbic acid
• Calcium
• Furosemide
• Laxatives
• Methoxyflurane
• Vitamin D

11.12 Unknown stone composition (5)

An accurate medical history is the first step towards identifying risk factors (Table 37).

Diagnostic imaging begins with ultrasound examination of both kidneys to establish whether the patient is stone-free. Stone detection by ultrasound should be followed by KUB and unenhanced multislice CT in adults to differentiate between calcium-containing and non-calcium stones.

Blood analysis demonstrates severe metabolic and organic disorders, such as renal insufficiency, HPT or other hypercalcaemic states and hyperuricaemia. In children, hyperoxalaemia is additionally screened.

Urinalysis is performed routinely with a dipstick test as described above. Urine culture is required if there are signs of infection.

Constant urine pH > 6 in the daily profile indicates acidic arrest, which may promote uric acid crystallisation. Persistent urine pH > 5.8 in the daily profile indicates RTA, if UTI is excluded.

Microscopy of urinary sediment can help to discover rare stone types, as crystals of 2,8-dihydroxyadenine, cystine and xanthine are pathognomonic for the corresponding disease.

Following this programme, the most probable stone type can be assumed and specific patient evaluation can follow.

However, if any expulsed stone material is available, it should be analysed by diagnostic confirmation or correction.

Table 37: Investigating patients with stones of unknown composition

Investigation	Rationale for investigation
Medical history	Stone history (former stone events, family history) Dietary habits Medication chart
Diagnostic imaging	Ultrasound in case of a suspected stone Unenhanced helical-CT (Determination of Hounsfield units provides information about the possible stone composition)
Blood analysis	Creatinine Calcium (ionised calcium or total calcium + albumin) Uric acid
Urinalysis	Urine pH profile (measurement after each voiding, minimum 4 times daily) Dipstick test: leukocytes, erythrocytes, nitrite, protein, urine pH, specific weight Urine culture Microscopy of urinary sediment (morning urine)

11.13 References

1. Hesse AT, Tiselius H-G. Siener R, Hoppe B. (Eds). Urinary Stones, Diagnosis, Treatment and Prevention of Recurrence. 3rd edn. Basel, S.Karger AG; 2009. ISBN 978-3-8055-9149-2.
2. Pearle MS, Asplin JR, Coe FL, Rodgers A, Worcester EM (Committee 3). Medical management of urolithiasis. In: 2nd International consultation on Stone Disease, Denstedt J, Khoury S. eds. pp. 57-84. Health Publications 2008, ISBN 0-9546956-7-4. http://www.icud.info/publications.html
3. Matlaga BR, Shah OD, Assimos DG. Drug induced urinary calculi. Rev Urol 2003 Fall;5(4):227-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16985842
4. Welch BJ, Graybeal D, Moe OW, et al. Biochemical and stone-risk profiles with topiramate treatment. Am J Kidney Dis 2006 Oct;48(4):555-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16997051
5. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease. Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051

12. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

BFMZ	bendroflumethiazide
BMI	body mass index
CI	credible intervals
CT	computed tomography
DPTA	diethylene triamine pertaacetic acid (radiotracer)
EAU	European Association of Urology
SWL	(extracorporeal) shock wave lithotripsy
GR	grade of recommendation
HCTZ	hydrochlorothiazide
HIRU	Health Information Research Unit
Ho:YAG	holmium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet [laser]
HPT	hyperparathyroidism
INR	international normalised ratio
IRS	infrared spectroscopy
IVU	intravenous urography
JESS	joint expert speciation system
KUB	Kidney ureter bladder
LE	level of evidence
MAG 3	mercapto acetyltriglycine (radiotracer)
MET	medical expulsive therapy
MMC	myelomeningocele
MRU	magnetic resonance urography
NC	nephrocalcinosis
NCCT	non-contrast enhanced computed tomography
NSAIDs	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
PCN	percutaneous nephrostomy
PH	primary Hyperoxaluria
PNL	percutaneous nephrolithotomy
PTH	parathyroid hormone
PTT	partial thrombolastin time
RCT	randomised controlled trial
RIRS	retrograde renal surgery
RTA	renal tubular acidosis
SFR	stone free rate
SIGN	Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network
THAM	tris-hydroxymethyl-aminomethane
UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
URS	ureterorenoscopy
US	ultrasonography
UTI	urinary tract infection
XRD	X-ray diffraction

Conflict of interest

All members of the Urolithiasis Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Paediatric Urology

S. Tekgül, H. Riedmiller, H.S. Dogan, E. Gerharz, P. Hoebeke,
R. Kocvara, R. Nijman, Chr. Radmayr, R. Stein

espu

European Society for Paediatric Urology

eau

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. METHODOLOGY

1.1 Introduction

A collaborative working group consisting of members representing the European Society for Paediatric Urology (ESPU) and the European Association of Urology (EAU) has prepared these guidelines to make a document available that may help to increase the quality of care for children with urological problems.

This compilation document addresses a number of common clinical pathologies in paediatric urological practice, but covering the entire field of paediatric urology in a single guideline document is unattainable, nor practical.

The majority of urological clinical problems in children are distinct and in many ways different to those in adults. This publication intends to outline a practical and preliminary approach to paediatric urological problems. Complex and rare conditions that require special care with experienced doctors should be referred to designated centres where paediatric urology practice has been fully established and a multidisciplinary approach is available.

For quite some time, paediatric urology has informally developed, expanded, matured and established its diverse body of knowledge and expertise and may now be ready to distinguish itself from its parent specialties. Thus, paediatric urology has recently emerged in many European countries as a distinct subspecialty of both urology and paediatric surgery, and presents a unique challenge in the sense that it covers a large area with many different schools of thought and a huge diversity in management.

Knowledge gained by increasing experience, new technological advances and non-invasive diagnostic screening modalities has had a profound influence on treatment modalities in paediatric urology, a trend that is likely to continue in the years to come. We now have new techniques for the treatment of reflux, our techniques for the treatment of complex congenital anomalies have substantially improved, and totally new technologies for bladder replacement and laparoscopic procedures have been developed.

1.2 Data identification and evidence sources

The guidelines were compiled based on current literature following a systematic review using MEDLINE. Application of a structured analysis of the literature was not possible in many conditions due to a lack of well-designed studies.

Due to the limited availability of large randomised controlled trials (RCTs) - influenced also by the fact that a considerable number of treatment options relate to surgical interventions on a large spectrum of different congenital problems - this document will largely be a consensus document. Also, there is clearly a need for continuous re-evaluation of the information presented in the current document.

It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available but following the recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, also taking individual circumstances and patient and parent preferences into account.

1.3 Level of evidence and grade of recommendation

The level of evidence (LE) and grade of recommendation (GR) provided in this guideline follow the listings in Tables 1 and 2. The aim of grading the recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports

4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, there is not an automatic relationship between the level of evidence and the grade of recommendation. The availability of RCTs may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation if there are methodological limitations or disparities in the published results. Conversely, an absence of high-level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations in which corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons. In this case, unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. Whenever this occurs, it has been clearly indicated in the text with an asterisk as 'upgraded based on panel consensus'. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence is a very important factor, but it has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and costs when a grade is assigned (2-4).

The EAU Guidelines Office does not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. However, whenever such data are available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

1.4 Publication history

The Paediatric Urology Guidelines were first published in 2001 with subsequent partial updates achieved in 2005, 2006, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, and this 2012 publication includes a considerable number of updated chapters and sections detailed below.

This 2012 guidelines publication underwent a blinded peer-review process before publication.

Standard procedure for EAU publications includes an annual assessment of newly published literature in this field, guiding future updates. An ultra-short reference document is being published alongside this publication. All documents are available with free access through the EAU website Uroweb (http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/).

1.4.1 Summary of updated and new information

Amended: new literature included and the text has been revised for:
Chapter 6 - Hypospadias
Chapter 12 - Monosymptomatic enuresis. A new algorithm has been included and the text was revisited.
Chapter 13 - sections

- Botulinum toxin injections
- Follow-up of neurogenic bladder patients

Chapter 15 - Vesicoureteric reflux. The literature has been updated and the text has been revised.
Section 16.5.3 - Ureterorenoscopy. A small section has been added with new literature.
Chapter 17 - Obstructive pathology of renal duplication: ureterocele and ectopic ureter. This section has been completely revised and a new algorithm included.

New topics included in this 2012 print
Urinary tract infections in children (Chapter 10)
Post-operative fluid management in children (Chapter 20)
Post-operative pain management in children (Chapter 21)

1.5 Potential conflict of interest statement

The expert panel have submitted potential conflict of interest statements which can be viewed on the EAU

website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.6 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-Based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

2. PHIMOSIS

2.1 Background

At the end of the first year of life, retraction of the foreskin behind the glandular sulcus is possible in only about 50% of boys; this rises to approximately 89% by the age of 3 years. The incidence of phimosis is 8% in 6 to 7-year-olds and just 1% in males aged 16-18 years (1). The phimosis is either primary (physiological) with no sign of scarring, or secondary (pathological) to a scarring such as balanitis xerotica obliterans. Phimosis has to be distinguished from normal agglutination of the foreskin to the glans, which is a physiological phenomenon (2).

The paraphimosis must be regarded as an emergency situation: retraction of a too narrow prepuce behind the glans penis into the glanular sulcus may constrict the shaft and lead to oedema. It interferes with perfusion distally from the constrictive ring and brings a risk of consecutive necrosis.

2.2 Diagnosis

The diagnosis of phimosis and paraphimosis is made by physical examination.

If the prepuce is not retractable or only partly retractable and shows a constrictive ring on drawing back over the glans penis, a disproportion between the width of the foreskin and the diameter of the glans penis has to be assumed. In addition to the constricted foreskin, there may be adhesions between the inner surface of the prepuce and the glanular epithelium and/or a fraenulum breve. A fraenulum breve leads to a ventral deviation of the glans once the foreskin is retracted. If the tip remains narrow and glanular adhesions were separated, than the space is filled with urine during voiding causing the foreskin to balloon outward.

The paraphimosis is characterised by retracted foreskin with the constrictive ring localised at the level of the sulcus, which prevents replacement of the foreskin over the glans.

2.3 Treatment

Treatment of phimosis in children is dependent on the parents' preferences and can be plastic or radical circumcision after completion of the second year of life. Plastic circumcision has the objective of achieving a wide foreskin circumference with full retractability, while the foreskin is preserved (dorsal incision, partial circumcision). However, this procedure carries the potential for recurrence of the phimosis. In the same session, adhesions are released and an associated fraenulum breve is corrected by fraenulotomy. Meatoplasty is added if necessary.

An absolute indication for circumcision is secondary phimosis. The indications in primary phimosis are recurrent balanoposthitis and recurrent urinary tract infections in patients with urinary tract abnormalities (3-6) (LE: 2; GR: B). Simple ballooning of the foreskin during micturition is not a strict indication for circumcision.

Routine neonatal circumcision to prevent penile carcinoma is not indicated. Contraindications for circumcision are coagulopathy, an acute local infection and congenital anomalies of the penis, particularly hypospadias or buried penis, because the foreskin may be required for a reconstructive procedure (7,8). Childhood circumcision has an appreciable morbidity and should not be recommended without a medical reason (9-12) (LE: 2; GR B). As a conservative treatment option of the primary phimosis, a corticoid ointment or cream (0.05-0.1%) can be administered twice a day over a period of 20-30 days (13-16) (LE: 1; GR: A). This

treatment has no side effects and the mean bloodspot cortisol levels are not significantly different from an untreated group of patients (17) (LE: 1). Agglutination of the foreskin does not respond to steroid treatment (14) (LE: 2).

Treatment of paraphimosis consists of manual compression of the oedematous tissue with a subsequent attempt to retract the tightened foreskin over the glans penis. Injection of hyaluronidase beneath the narrow band may be helpful to release it (18) (LE: 4; GR: C). If this manoeuvre fails, a dorsal incision of the constrictive ring is required. Depending on the local findings, a circumcision is carried out immediately or can be performed in a second session.

2.4 References

1. Gairdner D. The fate of the foreskin: a study of circumcision. Br Med J 1949 Dec;2(4642):1433-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15408299
2. Oster J. Further fate of the foreskin. Incidence of preputial adhesions, phimosis, and smegma among Danish schoolboys. Arch Dis Child 1968 Apr;43(288):200-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5689532
3. Wiswell TE. The prepuce, urinary tract infections, and the consequences. Pediatrics 2000 Apr;105(4 Pt 1):860-2. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10742334
4. Hiraoka M, Tsukahara H, Ohshima Y, et al. Meatus tightly covered by the prepuce is associated with urinary tract infection. Pediatr Int 2002 Dec;44(6):658-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12421265
5. To T, Agha M, Dick PT, et al. Cohort study on circumcision of newborn boys and subsequent risk of urinary tract infection. Lancet 1998 Dec;352(9143):1813-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9851381
6. Herndon CDA, McKenna PH, Kolon TF, et al. A multicenter outcomes analysis of patients with neonatal reflux presenting with prenatal hydronephrosis. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 2):1203-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458467
7. Thompson HC, King LR, Knox E, et al. Report of the ad hoc task force on circumcision. Pediatrics 1975 Oct;56(4):610-1. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1174384
8. American Academy of Pediatrics. Report of the Task Force on Circumcision. Pediatrics 1989 Aug:84:388-91. Erratum in: Pediatrics 1989;84(2):761. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2664697
9. Griffiths DM, Atwell JD, Freeman NV. A prospective study of the indications and morbidity of circumcision in children. Eur Urol 1985;11(3):184-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4029234
10. Christakis DA, Harvey E, Zerr DM, et al. A trade-off analysis of routine newborn circumcision. Pediatrics 2000 Jan;105(1 Pt 3):246-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10617731
11. Ross JH. Circumcision: Pro and con. In: Elder JS, ed. *Pediatric urology for the general urologist*. New York: Igaku-Shoin, 1996, pp. 49-56.
12. Hutcheson JC. Male neonatal circumcision: indications, controversies and complications. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Aug;31(3):461-7, viii. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313055
13. Monsour MA, Rabinovitch HH, Dean GE. Medical management of phimosis in children: our experience with topical steroids. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 2):1162-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458456
14. Chu CC, Chen KC, Diau GY. Topical steroid treatment of phimosis in boys. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):861-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458396
15. Ter Meulen PH, Delaere KP. A conservative treatment of phimosis on boys. Eur Urol 2001 Aug;40(2):196-9;discussion 200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11528198
16. Elmore JM, Baker LA, Snodgrass WT. Topical steroid therapy as an alternative to circumcision for phimosis in boys younger than 3 years. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1746-7; discussion 1747. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352350
17. Golubovic Z, Milanovic D, Vukadinovic V, et al. The conservative treatment of phimosis in boys. Br J Urol 1996 Nov;78(5):786-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976781

18. DeVries CR, Miller AK, Packer MG. Reduction of paraphimosis with hyaluronidase. Urology 1996 Sep;48(3):464-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8804504

3. CRYPTORCHIDISM

3.1 Background

At 1 year of age, nearly 1% of all full-term male infants have cryptorchidism, which is the commonest congenital anomaly affecting the genitalia of newborn males (1). The most useful classification of cryptorchidism is into palpable and non-palpable testes, as clinical management is decided by the location and existence of the testis.

- Retractile testes require only observation as they may become ascendant. Although they have completed their descent, a strong cremasteric reflex may cause their retention in the groin (2).
- Bilateral, non-palpable testes and any suggestion of sexual differentiation problems (e.g. hypospadias) require urgent, mandatory endocrinological and genetic evaluation (3) (LE: 3; GR: B).

3.2 Diagnosis

A physical examination is the only way of differentiating between palpable or non-palpable testes. There is no benefit in performing ultrasound, computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or angiography.

Clinical examination includes a visual description of the scrotum and an examination of the child in both a supine and crossed-leg position. The examiner should inhibit the cremasteric reflex with his non-dominant hand, immediately above the symphysis in the groin region, before touching, or reaching for, the scrotum. The groin region may be 'milked' towards the scrotum in an attempt to move the testis into the scrotum. This manoeuvre also allows an inguinal testis to be differentiated from enlarged lymph nodes that could give the impression of an undescended testis. A retractile testis can generally be brought into the scrotum, where it will remain until a cremasteric reflex (touching the inner thigh skin) will retract it again into the groin (4).

A unilateral, non-palpable testis and an enlarged contralateral testis may suggest testicular absence or atrophy, but this is not a specific finding and does not preclude surgical exploration. An inguinal, non-palpable testis requires specific visual inspection of the femoral, penile and perineal region to exclude an ectopic testis. Diagnostic laparoscopy is the only examination that can reliably confirm or exclude an intra-abdominal, inguinal and absent/vanishing testis (non-palpable testis) (5) (LE: 1b; GR: A). Before carrying out laparoscopic assessment, an examination under general anaesthesia is recommended because some, originally nonpalpable, testes become palpable under anaesthetic conditions.

3.3 Treatment

If a testis has not descended by the age of 1 year, there is no benefit in waiting for a spontaneous descent. To prevent histological deterioration, treatment should be carried out and finished before 12-18 months of age (6-9).

3.3.1 ***Medical therapy***

Medical therapy using human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG) or gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (GnRH) is based on the hormonal dependence of testicular descent with maximum success rates of 20% (10,11). Hormonal therapy for testicular descent has lower success rates, the higher the undescended testis is located. A total dose of 6000 to 9000 units of hCG is given in four doses over a period of 2 to 3 weeks depending on weight and age, along with GnRH, given for 4 weeks as a nasal spray in a dose of 1.2 mg/day, divided into three doses per day.

Medical treatment may be beneficial before surgical orchidolysis and orchidopexy (dosage as described earlier) or afterwards (low intermittent dosages) (12), in terms of increasing the fertility index, which is a predictor for fertility in later life (12). However, long-term follow-up data are awaited. But there is data reporting that hCDG treatment may be harmful to future spermatogenesis through increased apoptosis of germ cells (13).

3.3.2 ***Surgery***

Palpable testis: surgery for the palpable testis includes orchidofuniculolysis and orchidopexy, via an inguinal approach, with success rates of up to 92% (14). It is important to remove and dissect all cremasteric fibres

to prevent secondary retraction. Associated problems, e.g. an open processus vaginalis, must be carefully dissected and closed. It is recommended that the testis is placed in a subdartos pouch. With regard to sutures, there should either be no fixation sutures or they should be made between the tunica vaginalis and the dartos musculature.

The lymph drainage of a testis that has undergone surgery for orchidopexy has been changed from iliac drainage to iliac and inguinal drainage (important in the event of later malignancy). Scrotal orchidopexy can also be an option in less severe cases.

Non-palpable testis: inguinal surgical exploration with possible laparoscopy should be attempted. There is a significant chance of finding the testis via an inguinal incision. In rare cases, it is necessary to search into the abdomen if there are no vessels or vas deferens in the groin. Laparoscopy is the best way of examining the abdomen for a testis. In addition, either removal or orchidolysis and orchiopexy can be performed via laparoscopic access (15). Before starting diagnostic laparoscopy, examine the child under general anaesthesia since a previously non-palpable testes might now be palpable under anaesthesia.

An intra-abdominal testis in a 10-year-old boy or older, with a normal contralateral testis, should be removed. In bilateral intra-abdominal testes, or in a boy younger than 10 years, a one-stage or two-stage Fowler-Stephens procedure can be performed. In the event of a two-stage procedure, the spermatic vessels are either laparoscopically clipped or coagulated proximal to the testis to allow development of collateral vasculature (16). The second-stage procedure, in which the testis is brought directly over the symphysis and next to the bladder into the scrotum, can also be performed by laparoscopy 6 months later. The testicular survival rate in a one-stage procedure varies between 50% and 60%, with success rates rising up to 90% in a two-stage procedure (17). Microvascular autotransplantation can also be performed with a 90% testicular survival rate. However, the procedure requires very skilful and experienced surgical techniques (18).

3.4 Prognosis

Although boys with one undescended testis have a lower fertility rate, they have the same paternity rate as boys with bilateral descended testes. Boys with bilateral undescended testes have a lower fertility and paternity rate.

Boys with an undescended testis have a 20-fold higher risk of developing testicular malignancy, a risk uninfluenced by any kind of treatment. Screening both during and after puberty is therefore recommended for these boys. Recently, a Swedish study, with a cohort of almost 17,000 men who were treated surgically for undescended testis and followed for a total of almost 210,000 person years, showed that treatment for undescended testis before puberty decreased the risk of testicular cancer. The relative risk of testicular cancer among those who underwent orchiopexy before 13 years of age was 2.23 when compared with the Swedish general population; this increased to 5.40 for those treated at 13 years of age or older 5.40 (19). A systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature by an American group has also concluded that prepubertal orchiopexy may decrease the risk of testicular cancer and that early surgical intervention is indicated in children with cryptorchidism (20).

Boys with retractile testes do not need medical or surgical treatment, but require close follow-up until puberty.

3.5 Recommendations for crytorchidism

Due to the lack of spontaneous testicular descent after the age of 1 year, and because of the potential loss of testicular quality, it is recommended that surgical orchidolysis and orchidopexy should be performed at the latest by 12-18 months of age.

To date, it seems that pre- or post-operative hormonal treatment may have a beneficial effect on fertility later in life.

3.6 References

1. Berkowitz GS, Lapinski RH, Dolgin SE, et al. Prevalence and natural history of cryptorchidism. Pediatrics 1993 Jul;92(1):44-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8100060
2. Caesar RE, Kaplan GW. The incidence of the cremasteric reflex in normal boys. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 2):779-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7912745
3. Rajfer J, Walsh PC. The incidence of intersexuality in patients with hypospadias and cryptorchidism. J Urol 1976 Dec;116(6):769-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12377

4. Rabinowitz R, Hulbert WC Jr. Late presentation of cryptorchidism: the etiology of testicular re-ascent. J Urol 1997 May;157(5):1892-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9112557
5. Cisek LJ, Peters CA, Atala A, et al. Current findings in diagnostic laparoscopic evaluation of the nonpalpable testis. J Urol 1998 Sep;160(3 Pt 2):1145-9; discussion 1150.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719296
6. Huff DS, Hadziselimovic F, Snyder HM 3rd, et al. Histologic maldevelopment of unilaterally cryptorchid testes and their descended partners. Eur J Pediatr 1993;152 Suppl:S11-S14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8101802
7. Hadziselimovic F, Hocht B, Herzog B, Buser MW. Infertility in cryptorchidism is linked to the stage of germ cell development at orchidopexy. Horm Res 2007;68(1):46-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17356291
8. Huff DS, Hadziselimovic F, Duckett JW, Elder JS, Snyder HM. Germ cell counts in semithin sections of biopsies of 115 unilaterally cryptorchid testes. The experience from the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia. Eur J Pediatr 1987;146 Suppl 2:S25-7.
9. Hadziselimovic F, Herzog B. The importance of both an early orchidopexy and germ cell maturation for fertility. Lancet 2001 Oct 6;358(9288):1156-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11597673
10. Rajfer J, Handelsman DJ, Swerdloff RS, et al. Hormonal therapy of cryptorchidism. A randomized, double-blind study comparing human chorionic gonadotropin and gonadotropin-releasing hormone. N Engl J Med 1986 Feb;314(8):466-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2868413
11. Pyorala S, Huttunen NP, Uhari M. A review and meta-analysis of hormonal treatment of cryptorchidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1995 Sep;80(9):2795-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7673426
12. Schwentner C, Oswald J. Kreczy A, et al. Neoadjuvant gonadotropin releasing hormone therapy before surgery may improve the fertility index in undescended testes - a prospective randomized trial. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):974-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711353
13. Ritzén EM. Undescended testes: a consensus on management. Eur J Endocrinol 2008 Dec;159 Suppl 1:S87-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18728121
14. Docimo SG. The results of surgical therapy for cryptorchidism: a literature review and analysis. J Urol 1995 Sep;154:1148-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7637073
15. Jordan GH, Winslow BH. Laparoscopic single stage and staged orchiopexy. J Urol 1994 Oct;152(4): 1249-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7915336
16. Bloom DA. Two-step orchiopexy with pelviscopic clip ligation of the spermatic vessels. J Urol 1991 May;145(5):1030-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1673160
17. Radmayr C, Oswald J, Schwentner C, et al. Long-term outcome of laparoscopically managed nonpalpable testes. J Urol 2003 Dec;170(6 Pt 1):2409-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634439
18. Wacksman J, Billmire DA, Lewis AG, et al. Laparoscopically assisted testicular autotransplantation for management of the intraabdominal undescended testis. J Urol 1996 Aug;156(2 Pt 2):772-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683780
19. Pettersson A, Richiardi L, Nordenskjold A, et al. Age at surgery for undescended testis and risk of testicular cancer. N Engl J Med 2007 May;356(18):1835-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17476009
20. Walsh TJ, Dall'Era MA, Croughan MS, et al. Prepubertal orchiopexy for cryptorchidism may be associated with a lower risk of testicular cancer. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 1):1440-6; discussion 1446.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17706709

4. HYDROCELE

4.1 Background

Hydrocele is defined as a collection of fluid between the parietal and visceral layer of tunica vaginalis (1). Pathogenesis of hydrocele is based on an imbalance between the secretion and reabsorption of this fluid. This is in contrast with inguinal hernia, which is defined as the protrusion of a portion of organs or tissues through the abdominal wall (2). Incomplete obliteration of the processus vaginalis peritonei results in formation of various types of communicating hydrocele alone or connected with other intrascrotal pathology (hernia). The exact time of obliteration of processus vaginalis is not known. It persists in approximately 80-94% of newborns and in 20% of adults (3). If complete obliteration of processus vaginalis occurs with patency of midportion, a hydrocele of the cord occurs. Scrotal hydroceles without associated patency of the processus vaginalis are encountered in newborns as well (4). Non-communicating hydroceles are found secondary to minor trauma, testicular torsion, epididymitis, varicocele operation or may appear as a recurrence after primary repair of a communicating hydrocele.

4.2 Diagnosis

The classic description of a communicating hydrocele is that of a hydrocele that vacillates in size, and is usually related to activity. It may be diagnosed by history; physical investigation and transillumination of the scrotum make the diagnosis in the majority of cases (5). If the diagnosis is that of a hydrocele, there will be no history of reducibility and no associated symptoms; the swelling is translucent, smooth and usually non-tender. If there are any doubts about the character of an intrascrotal mass, scrotal ultrasound should be performed and has nearly 100% sensitivity in detecting intrascrotal lesions. Doppler ultrasound studies help to distinguish hydroceles from varicocele and testicular torsion, although these conditions may also be accompanied by a hydrocele.

4.3 Treatment

In the majority of infants, the surgical treatment of hydrocele is not indicated within the first 12-24 months because of the tendency for spontaneous resolution (LE: 4; GR: C). Early surgery is indicated if there is suspicion of a concomitant inguinal hernia or underlying testicular pathology (6). The question of contralateral disease should be addressed by both history and examination at the time of initial consultation (5). Persistence of a simple scrotal hydrocele beyond 24 months of age may be an indication for surgical correction. However, there is no evidence that this type of hydrocele risks testicular damage. In the paediatric age group, the operation consists of ligation of patent processus vaginalis via inguinal incision and the distal stump is left open, whereas in hydrocele of the cord the cystic mass is excised or unroofed (1,5,6) (LE: 4; GR: C). In expert hands, the incidence of testicular damage during hydrocele or inguinal hernia repair is very low (0.3%) (LE: 3; GR: B). Sclerosing agents should not be used because of the risk of chemical peritonitis in communicating processus vaginalis peritonei (5,6) (LE: 4; GR: C). The scrotal approach (Lord or Jaboulay technique) is used in the treatment of a secondary non-communicating hydrocele.

4.4 References

1. Kapur P, Caty MG, Glick PL. Pediatric hernias and hydroceles. Pediatric Clin North Am 1998 Aug;45(4):773-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728185
2. Barthold JS, Kass EJ. Abnormalities of the penis and scrotum. In: Belman AB, King LR, Kramer SA, eds. *Clinical pediatric urology*. 4th edn. London: Martin Dunitz, 2002, pp. 1093-1124.
3. Schneck FX, Bellinger MF. Abnormalities of the testes and scrotum and their surgical management. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughan ED, Wein AJ, eds. *Campbell's urology. 8th edn*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2002, pp. 2353-94.
4. Rubenstein RA, Dogra VS, Seftel AD, et al. Benign intrascrotal lesions. J Urol 2004 May;171(5):1765-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076274
5. Skoog SJ. Benign and malignant pediatric scrotal masses. Pediatr Clin North Am 1997 Oct;44(5):1229-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9326960
6. Stringer MD, Godbole PP. Patent processus vaginalis. In: Gearhart JP, Rink RC, Mouriquand PD, eds. Pediatric urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2001, pp. 755-762.

5. ACUTE SCROTUM IN CHILDREN

5.1 Background

Acute scrotum is a paediatric urology emergency case, most commonly caused by torsion of the testis, torsion of the appendix testis and epididymitis/epididymo-orchitis (1-6). Other causes of acute scrotal pain are idiopathic scrotal oedema, mumps orchitis, varicocele, scrotal haematoma, incarcerated hernia, appendicitis or systemic disease (Henoch-Schönlein purpura) (7-19).

Torsion of the testis occurs most often in the neonatal period and around puberty, while torsion of the appendix testes occurs over a wider age range. Acute epididymitis affects two age groups: below the age of 1 year and between 12 and 15 years (5,20,21). Acute epididymitis was found most often (37-64.6%) in boys with acute scrotum (1-4). One study predicted the incidence of epididymitis as about 1.2 per 1,000 male children per year (22).

5.2 Diagnosis

Patients usually present with scrotal pain. The duration of symptoms is shorter in testicular torsion (69% present within 12 hours) compared to torsion of the appendix testes (62%) and acute epididymitis (31%) (5,6,20).

In the early phase, location of the pain can lead to the diagnosis. Patients with acute epididymitis experience a tender epididymitis, while patients with testicular torsion are more likely to have a tender testicle, and patients with torsion of the appendix testis feel isolated tenderness of the superior pole of the testis (20).

An abnormal position of the testis was more frequent in testicular torsion than in patients with epididymitis (20). Looking for the absence of the cremasteric reflex is a simple method with a sensitivity of 100% and specificity of 66% for the presence of testicular torsion (21,23) (LE:3; GR: C).

Fever occurs often in epididymitis (11-19%). The classical sign of a 'blue dot' was found only in 10-23% patients with torsion of the appendix testis (4,6,21,24).

In many cases, it is not easy to determine the cause of acute scrotum based on history and physical examination alone (1-6,21,24).

A positive urine culture is only found in a few patients with epididymitis (3,21,24,25). It should be remembered that a normal urinalysis does not exclude epididymitis. Similarly, an abnormal urinalysis does not exclude testicular torsion.

Doppler ultrasound is useful to evaluate an acute scrotum, with a sensitivity of 63.6-100% and a specificity of 97-100%, and a positive predictive value of 100% and negative predictive value 97.5% (26-31) (LE: 3; GR: C). The use of Doppler ultrasound may reduce the number of patients with acute scrotum undergoing scrotal exploration, but it is operator-dependent and can be difficult to perform in prepubertal patients (29,32). It may also show a misleading arterial flow in the early phases of torsion and in partial or intermittent torsion: persistent arterial flow does not exclude testicular torsion. In a multicentre study of 208 boys with torsion of the testis, 24% patients had normal or increased testicular vascularisation (29). Better results were reported using high-resolution ultrasonography (HRUS) for direct visualisation of the spermatic cord twist with a sensitivity of 97.3% and a specificity of 99% (29,33) (LE: 2; GR: C).

Scintigraphy and, more recently, dynamic contrast-enhanced subtraction MRI of the scrotum also provide a comparable sensitivity and specificity to ultrasound (34-37). These investigations may be used when diagnosis is less likely and if torsion of the testis still cannot be excluded from history and physical examination. This should be done without inordinate delays for emergent intervention (24).

The diagnosis of acute epididymitis in boys is mainly based on clinical judgement and adjunctive investigation. However, it should be remembered that findings of secondary inflammatory changes in the absence of evidence of an extra-testicular nodule by Doppler ultrasound might suggest an erroneous diagnosis of epididymitis in children with torsion of appendix testes (38).

Prepubertal boys with acute epididymitis have an incidence of underlying urogenital anomalies of 25-27.6%. Complete urological evaluation in all children with acute epididymitis is still debatable (3,21,22).

5.3 Treatment

*5.3.1 **Epididymitis***

In prepubertal boys, the aetiology is usually unclear, with an underlying pathology of about 25%. A urine culture is usually negative, and unlike in older boys, a sexually transmitted disease is very rare.

Antibiotic treatment, although often started, is not indicated in most cases unless urinalysis and urine culture show a bacterial infection (22,39). Epididymitis is usually self-limiting and with supportive therapy (i.e. minimal physical activity and analgesics) heals without any sequelae (LE: 3; GR: C). However, bacterial epididymitis can be complicated by abscess or necrotic testis and surgical exploration is required (40).

Torsion of the appendix testis can be managed conservatively (LE: 4; GR: C). During the six-week-follow-up, clinically and with ultrasound, no testicular atrophy was revealed. Surgical exploration is done in

equivocal cases and in patients with persistent pain (27).

5.3.2 ***Testicular torsion***

Manual detorsion of the testis is done without anaesthesia. It should initially be done by outwards rotation of the testis unless the pain increases or if there is obvious resistance. Success is defined as the immediate relief of all symptoms and normal findings at physical examination (41) (LE: 3; GR: C). Doppler ultrasound may be used for guidance (42).

Bilateral orchiopexy is still required after successful detorsion. This should not be done as an elective procedure, but rather immediately following detorsion. One study reported residual torsion during exploration in 17 out of 53 patients, including 11 patients who had reported pain relief after manual detorsion (41,43).

5.3.3 ***Surgical treatment***

Testicular torsion is an urgent condition, which requires prompt surgical treatment. The two most important determinants of early salvage rate of the testis are the time between onset of symptoms and the detorsion and degree of twisting of the cord (44). Severe testicular atrophy occurred after torsion for as little as 4 hours when the turn was more than 360°. In cases of incomplete torsion (180° to 360°), with symptom duration up to 12 hours, no atrophy was observed. However, an absent or severely atrophied testis was found in all cases of torsion of more than 360° and symptom duration of more than 24 hours (45).

Early surgical intervention with detorsion (mean torsion time < 13 hours) was found to preserve fertility (46). Urgent surgical exploration is mandatory in all cases of testicular torsion within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms.

In those patients with testicular torsion of more than 24 hours, semi-elective exploration is necessary (44,45) (LE: 3; GR: C). There is still controversy on whether to carry out detorsion and to preserve the ipsilateral testis, or to perform an orchiectomy, in order to preserve contralateral function and fertility after testicular torsion of long duration (> 24 hours).

A recent study in humans found that sperm quality was preserved in both orchiectomy and orchiopexy groups in comparison to control normal men, although orchiectomy resulted in better sperm morphology (47).

During exploration, fixation of the contralateral testis is also performed. Recurrence after orchiopexy is rare (4.5%) and may occur several years after operation. There is no common recommendation about the preferred type of fixation and suture material; however, many urologists currently use a Dartos pouch orchiopexy (48).

External cooling before exploration and several medical treatments seem effective in reducing ischaemia-reperfusion injury and preserving the viability of the torsed testis and the contralateral testis (49-53).

5.4 Prognosis

5.4.1 ***Fertility***

The results vary and are conflicting. In one study, unilateral torsion of the testis seriously intervened with subsequent spermatogenesis in about 50% of the patients and produced borderline impairment in another 20%.

5.4.2 ***Subfertility***

Subfertility is found in 36-39% of the patients after torsion. Semen analysis may be normal in only 5-50% in long-term follow-up (44). Early surgical intervention (mean torsion time < 13 hours) with detorsion was found to preserve fertility, but a prolonged torsion period (mean torsion time of 70 hours) followed by orchiectomy jeopardises fertility (46).

One study identified antisperm antibodies in the semen of patients with testicular torsion and correlated antibody levels with infertility, while other studies have failed to confirm these results (44,47). Anderson et al. found pre-existing contralateral testis abnormalities in biopsies performed at the time of surgery and did not detect any case of antisperm antibodies after testicular torsion (46).

5.4.3 ***Androgen levels***

A study in rats showed a long-term reduction in testicular androgen production after testicular torsion. This effect was considered to be caused by reperfusion/oxidative stress in the testis (45). Even though the levels of FSH, LH and testosterone are higher in patients after testicular torsion compared to normal controls, endocrine testicular function remains in the normal range in patients after testicular torsion (47).

5.4.4 ***Testicular cancer***

There may be a 3.2-fold increased risk of developing a testis tumour 6-13 years after torsion. However, two of nine reported cases had torsion of a tumour-bearing testis and four had a tumour in the contralateral testis to the torsed testicle (44).

*5.4.5 **Nitric oxide***

A study in rats found that spermatic cord torsion did not lead to impairment in nitric oxide-mediated relaxant responses of the isolated penile bulb (54).

5.5 Perinatal torsion

Perinatal torsion of the testis most often occurs prenatally. After birth, perinatal torsion occurs in 25%, with bilateral perinatal torsion comprises 11-21% of all perinatal torsions (55). Most cases are extravaginal torsion in contrast to the usual intravaginal torsion, which occurs during puberty.

Intrauterine torsion may present as:

- patients with a testicular nubbin;
- patients with a small and hard testis;
- patients with a normal-sized and hard testis;
- patients with an acute scrotum.

Torsion occurring in the postnatal period within the first month of life presents with signs of an acute scrotum. The clinical signs correlate well with surgical and histological findings and thus define the need and the urgency to explore the history (56). Doppler ultrasound can be an additional diagnosis tool. The sensitivity for diagnosis of torsion of the testis is high, though the specificity is unknown for neonates. Doppler ultrasound may also be used to exclude congenital testicular neoplasm (57). Neonates with acute scrotal signs as well as bilateral cases should be treated as surgical emergencies (56,58).

In cases of postnatal torsion, one study reported 40% of testes were salvaged with emergency exploration (59). The contralateral scrotum should also be explored because of the risk of asynchronous contralateral testicular torsion in as many as 33% of cases (58).

5.6 References

1. Varga J, Zivkovic D, Grebeldinger S, et al. Acute scrotal pain in children-ten years' experience. Urol Int 2007;78(1):73-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17192737
2. Cavusoglu YH, Karaman A, Karaman I, et al. Acute scrotum-etiology and management. Indian J Pediatr 2005;72(3):201-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15812112
3. Sakellaris GS, Charissis GC. Acute epididymitis in Greek children: a 3-year retrospective study. Eur J Pediatr 2008 Jul;167(7):765-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17786475
4. Klin B, Zlotkevich L, Horne T, et al. Epididymitis in childhood: a clinical retrospective study over 5 years. IMAJ 2001;3:833-35. http://www.ima.org.il/imaj/dynamic/web/showArt.asp?id=543&nMonth=11&nYear=2001&sCat=Origina%20l%20Articles&sJur=Vol%203.h
5. McAndrew HF, Pemberton R, Kikiros CS, et al. The incidence and investigation of acute scrotal problems in children. Pediatr Surg Int 2002 Sep;18(5-6): 435-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12415374
6. Makela E, Lahdes-Vasama T, Rajakorpi H, et al. A 19-year review of paediatric patients with acute scrotum. Scan J Surg 2007;96(1):62-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17461315
7. Klin B, Lotan G, Efrati Y, et al. Acute idiopathic scrotal edema in children-revisited. J Pediatr Surg 2002 Aug;37(8);1200-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12149702
8. Van Langen AM, Gal S, Hulsmann AR,et al. Acute idiopathic scrotal oedema: four cases and short review. Eur J Pediatr 2001 Jul;160(7):455-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11475590
9. Hara Y, Tajiri T, Matsuura K, et al. Acute scrotum caused by Henoch-Schonlein purpura. Int J Urology 2004 Jul;11(7):578-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15242376
10. Singh S, Adivarekar P, Karmarkar SJ. Acute scrotum in children: a rare presentation of acute, nonperforated appendicitis. Pediatr Surg Int 2003 Jun;19(4):298-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12682749

11. Bingol-Kologlu M, Fedakar M, Yagmurlu A, et al. An exceptional complication following appendectomy: acute inguinal and scrotal suppuration. Int Urol Nephrol 2006;38(3-4):663-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17160451
12. Ng KH, Chung YFA, Wilde CC, et al. An unusual presentation of acute scrotum after appendicitis. Singapore Med J 2002 Jul;43(7):365-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12437045
13. Dayanir YO, Akdilli A, Karaman CZ, et al. Epididymoorchitis mimicking testicular torsion in Henoch-Schonlein purpura. Eur Radiol 2001;11(11):2267-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11702171
14. Krause W. Is acute idiopathic scrotal edema in children a special feature of neutrophilic eccrine hidradenitis? Dermatology 2004;208(1):86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14730248
15. Diamond DA, Borer JG, Peters CA, et al. Neonatal scrotal haematoma: mimicker of neonatal testicular torsion. BJU Int 2003 May;91:675-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12699483
16. Vlazakis S, Vlahakis I, Kakavelakis KN, et al. Right acute hemiscrotum caused by insertion of an inflamed appendix. BJU Int 2002 Jun;89(9):967-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010250
17. Ha TS, Lee JS. Scrotal involvement in childhood Henoch-Schonlein purpura. Acta Paediatr 2007 Apr;96(4):552-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17306010
18. Myers JB, Lovell MA, Lee RS et al. Torsion of an indirect hernia sac causing acute scrotum. J Pediatr Surg 2004 Jan;39(1):122-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14694389
19. Matsumoto A, Nagatomi Y, Sakai M, et al. Torsion of the hernia sac within a hydrocele of the scrotum in a child. Int J Urol 2004 Sep;11(9):789-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15379947
20. Sauvat F, Hennequin S, Slimane MAA, et al. [Age for testicular torsion?] Arch Pediatr 2002 Dec;9(12):1226-9. [article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12536102
21. Kadish HA, Bolte RG. A retrospective review of pediatric patients with epididymitis, testicular torsion, and torsion of testicular appendages. Pediatrics 1998 Jul;102(1 Pt 1):73-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9651416
22. Somekh E, Gorenstein A, Serour F. Acute epididymitis in boys: evidence of a post-infectious etiology. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):391-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665940
23. Nelson CP, Williams JF, Bloom DA. The cremaster reflex: a useful but imperfect sign in testicular torsion. J Pediatr Surg 2003 Aug;38(8):1248-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12891505
24. Mushtaq I, Fung M, Glasson MJ. Retrospective review of pediatric patients with acute scrotum. ANZ J Surg 2003 Jan-Feb;73(1-2):55-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12534742
25. Murphy FL, Fletcher L, Pease P. Early scrotal exploration in all cases is the investigation and intervention of choice in the acute paediatric scrotum. Pediatr Surg Int 2006 may;22(5):413-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16602024
26. Baker LA, Sigman D, Mathews RI, et al. An analysis of clinical outcomes using color doppler testicular ultrasound for testicular torsion. Pediatrics 2000 Mar;105(3 Pt 1):604-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10699116
27. Schalamon J, Ainoedhofer H, Schleef J, et al. Management of acute scrotum in children-the impact of Doppler ultrasound. J Pediatr Surg 2006 Aug;41(8):1377-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16863840
28. Gunther P, Schenk JP, Wunsch R, et al. Acute testicular torsion in children: the role of sonography in the diagnostic workup. Eur Radiol 2006 Nov;16(11):2527-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16724203
29. Kalfa N, Veyrac C, Lopez M, et al. Multicenter assessment of ultrasound of the spermatic cord in children with acute scrotum. J Urol 2007 Jan;177(1):297-301. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17162068
30. Karmazyn B, Steinberg R, Kornreich L, et al. Clinical and sonographic criteria of acute scrotum in children: a retrospective study of 172 boys. Pediatr Radiol 2005 Mar;35(3);35:302-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15503003

31. Lam WW, Yap TL, Jacobsen AS, et al. Colour Doppler ultrasonography replacing surgical exploration for acute scrotum: myth or reality? Pediatr Radiol 2005 Jun;35(6):597-600. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15761770
32. Pepe P, Panella P, Pennisi M, et al. Does color Doppler sonography improve the clinical assessment of patients with acute scrotum? Eur J Radiol 2006 Oct;60(1):120-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16730939
33. Kalfa N, Veyrac C, Baud C, et al. Ultrasonography of the spermatic cord in children with testicular torsion: impact on the surgical strategy. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 2):1692-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371792
34. Yuan Z, Luo Q, Chen L, et al. Clinical study of scrotum scintigraphy in 49 patients with acute scrotal pain: a comparison with ultrasonography. Ann Nucl Med 2001 Jun;15(3):225-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11545192
35. Nussbaum Blask, Bulas D, Shalaby-Rana E, et al. Color Doppler sonography and scintigraphy of the testis: a prospective, comparative analysis in children with acute scrotal pain. Pediatr Emerg Care 2002 Apr;18(2):67-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11973493
36. Paltiel HJ, Connolly LP, Atala A, et al. Acute scrotal symptoms in boys with an indeterminate clinical presentation: comparison of color Doppler sonography and scintigraphy. Radiology 1998 Apr;207:223-31. http://radiology.rsnajnls.org/cgi/content/abstract/207/1/223
37. Terai A, Yoshimura K, Ichioka K, et al. Dynamic contrast-enhanced subtraction magnetic resonance imaging in diagnostics of testicular torsion. Urology 2006 Jun;67(6):1278-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16765192
38. Karmazyn B, Steinberg R, Livne P, et al. Duplex sonographic findings in children with torsion of the testicular appendages: overlap with epididymitis and epididymoorchitis. J Pediatr Surg 2006 Mar;41(3):500-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16516624
39. Lau P, Anderson PA, Giacomantonio JM, et al. Acute epididymitis in boys: are antibiotics indicated? Br J Urol 1997 May;79(5):797-800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158522
40. Abul F, Al-Sayer H, Arun N. The acute scrotum: a review of 40 cases. Med Princ Pract 2005 May-Jun;14(3):177-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15863992
41. Cornel EB, Karthaus HF. Manual derotation of the twisted spermatic cord. BJU Int 1999 Apr;83(6): 672-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10233577
42. Garel L, Dubois J, Azzie G, et al. Preoperative manual detorsion of the spermatic cord with Doppler ultrasound monitoring in patients with intravaginal acute testicular torsion. Pediatr Radiol 2000 Jan;30(1):41-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10663509
43. Sessions AE, Rabinowitz R, Hulbert WC,et al. Testicular torsion: direction, degree, duration and disinformation. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):663-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544339
44. Visser AJ, Heyns CF. Testicular function after torsion of the spermatic cord. BJU Int 2003 Aug;92(3):200-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12887467
45. Tryfonas G, Violaki A, Tsikopoulos G, et al. Late postoperative results in males treated for testicular torsion during childhood. J Pediatr Surg 1994 Apr;29(4):553-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8014814
46. Anderson MJ, Dunn JK, Lishultz LI, et al. Semen quality and endocrine parameters after acute testicular torsion. J Urol 1992 Jun;147(6):1545-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1593686
47. Arap MA, Vicentini FC, Cocuzza M, et al. Late hormonal levels, semen parameters, and presence of antisperm antibodies in patients treated for testicular torsion. J Androl 2007 Jul-Aug;28(4):528-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17287456
48. Mor Y, Pinthus JH, Nadu A, et al. Testicular fixation following torsion of the spermatic cord- does it guarantee prevention of recurrent torsion events? J Urol 2006 Jan;175(1):171-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16406900

49. Haj M, Shasha SM, Loberant N, et al. Effect of external scrotal cooling on the viability of the testis with torsion in rats. Eur Surg Res 2007;39(3):160-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17341878
50. Aksoy H, Yapanoglu T, Aksoy Y, et al. Dehydroepiandrosterone treatment attenuates reperfusion injury after testicular torsion and detorsion in rats. J Pediatr Surg 2007 Oct;42(10):1740-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17923206
51. Akcora B, Altug ME, Kontas T, et al. The protective effect of darbepoetin alfa on experimental testicular torsion and detorsion injury. Int J Urol 2007 Sep;14(9):846-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17760753
52. Yazihan N, Ataoglu H, Koku N, et al. Protective role of erythropoietin during testicular torsion of the rats. World J Urol 2007 Oct;25(5):531-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17690891
53. Unal D, Karatas OF, Savas M, et al. Protective effects of trimetazidine on testicular ischemia-reperfusion injury in rats. Urol Int 2007;78(4):356-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17495496
54. Ozkan MH, Vural IM, Moralioglu S, et al. Torsion/detorsion of the testis does not modify responses to nitric oxide in rat isolated penile bulb. Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol 2007 Aug;101(2):117-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17651313
55. Yerkes EB, Robertson FM, Gitlin J, et al. Management of perinatal torsion: today, tomorrow or never? J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1579-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148656
56. Cuervo JL, Grillo A, Vecchiarelli C, et al. Perinatal testicular torsion: a unique strategy. J Pediatr Surg 2007 Apr;42:699-703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17448769
57. Van der Sluijs JW, Den Hollander JC, Lequin MH, et al. Prenatal testicular torsion: diagnosis and natural course. An ultrasonographic study. Eur Radiol 2004 Feb;14(2):250-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12955451
58. Baglaj M, Carachi R. Neonatal bilateral testicular torsion: a plea for emergency exploration. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2296-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509343
59. Sorensen MD, Galansky SH, Striegl AM, et al. Perinatal extravaginal torsion of the testis in the first month of life is a salvageable event. Urology 2003 Jul;62(1):132-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837441

6. HYPOSPADIAS

6.1 Background

Hypospadias can be defined as hypoplasia of the tissues forming the ventral aspect of the penis beyond the division of the corpus spongiosum. Hypospadias are usually classified based on the anatomical location of the proximally displaced urethral orifice:

- distal-anterior hypospadias (located on the glans or distal shaft of the penis and the most common type of hypospadias);
- intermediate-middle (penile);
- proximal-posterior (penoscrotal, scrotal, perineal).

The pathology may be much more severe after skin release.

*6.1.1 **Risk factors***

Risk factors associated with hypospadias are likely to be genetic, placental and/or environmental (1) (LE: 2b): There is a 7% familial recurrence risk for hypospadias (2)

- Endocrine disorders can be detected in a very few cases.
- Babies of young or old mothers and babies with a low birth weight have a higher risk of hypospadias. (2)
- A significant increase in the incidence of hypospadias over the last 20 years suggests a role for environmental factors (hormonal disruptors and pesticides) (3-6). This information has been questioned recently (7).

The use of oral contraceptives prior to pregnancy has not been associated with an increased risk of hypospadias in the offspring (8) (LE: 2a; GR: B).

6.2 Diagnosis

Patients with hypospadias should be diagnosed at birth (except for the megameatus intact prepuce variant).

Diagnosis includes a description of the local findings:

- position, shape and width of the orifice;
- presence of atretic urethra and division of corpus spongiosum;
- appearance of the preputial hood and scrotum;
- size of the penis;
- curvature of the penis on erection.

The diagnostic evaluation also includes an assessment of associated anomalies, which are:

- cryptorchidism (in up to 10% of cases of hypospadias);
- open processus vaginalis or inguinal hernia (in 9-15%).

Severe hypospadias with unilaterally or bilaterally impalpable testis, or with ambiguous genitalia, require a complete genetic and endocrine work-up immediately after birth to exclude intersexuality, especially congenital adrenal hyperplasia.

Urine trickling and ballooning of the urethra requires exclusion of meatal stenosis.

The incidence of anomalies of the upper urinary tract does not differ from the general population, except in very severe forms of hypospadias (3,4).

6.3 Treatment

Differentiation between functionally necessary and aesthetically feasible operative procedures is important for therapeutic decision-making.

The functional indications for surgery are:

- proximally located meatus;
- ventrally deflected urinary stream;
- meatal stenosis;
- curved penis.

The cosmetic indications, which are strongly linked to the psychology of the parent or future patient's psychology, are:

- abnormally located meatus;
- cleft glans;
- rotated penis with abnormal cutaneous raphe;
- preputial hood;
- penoscrotal transposition;
- split scrotum.

As all surgical procedures carry the risk of complications, thorough pre-operative counselling of the parents is crucial.

The therapeutic objectives are to correct the penile curvature, to form a neo-urethra of an adequate size, to bring the neomeatus to the tip of the glans, if possible, and to achieve an overall acceptable cosmetic appearance of the boy's genitalia (3,4) (LE: 4; GR: C) (Figure 1).

The use of magnifying spectacles and special fine synthetic absorbable suture materials (6/0-7/0) is required. As in any penile surgery, an exceptional prudence should be adopted with the use of cautery. Knowledge of a variety of surgical reconstructive techniques, wound care and post-operative treatment are essential for a satisfactory outcome. Pre-operative hormonal treatment with local or parenteral application of testosterone, dihydrotestosterone or beta-chorionic gonadotropin can be helpful in patients with a small penis or for repeat surgery. In order to prevent healing complications, it has been recommended to postpone the surgery 3 months after completion of hormonal therapy (9) (LE: 2b; GR: B).

*6.3.1 **Age at surgery***

The age at surgery for primary hypospadias repair is usually 6-18 [24] months (3) (LE: 4; GR: C). However, earlier repair between 4 and 6 months of age has been reported recently (10) (LE: 3; GR; B).

*6.3.2 **Penile curvature***

If present, penile curvature is often released by degloving the penis (skin chordee) and by excision of the connective tissue of the genuine chordee on the ventral aspect of the penis in up to 70% (11). The urethral

plate has well vascularised connective tissue and does not cause curvature in most cases. The residual curvature is caused by corporeal disproportion and requires straightening of the penis, mostly using dorsal midline plication or orthoplasty or ventral corporotomies with or without grafting (12,13) (LE: 2b; GR: B).

6.3.3 ***Preservation of the well-vascularised urethral plate***

The mainstay of hypospadias repair is preservation of the well-vascularised urethral plate and its use for urethral reconstruction has become the mainstay of hypospadias repair (14). Mobilisation of the corpus spongiosum/urethral plate and the bulbar urethra decreases the need for urethral plate transection (11,13,15) (LE: 2b; GR: B).

If the urethral plate is wide, it can be tubularised following the Thiersch-Duplay technique. If the plate is too narrow to be simply tubularised, it is recommended that a midline-relaxing incision of the plate, followed by reconstruction according to the Snodgrass-Orkiszewski technique, is performed in distal hypospadias, as well as in proximal hypospadias (though the complication rate is higher) (16-21).

The onlay technique is preferred in proximal hypospadias and in cases of a plate that is unhealthy or too narrow (11). For distal forms of hypospadias, a range of other techniques is available (e.g. Mathieu, urethral advancement, etc.) (22) (LE: 2b; GR: B).

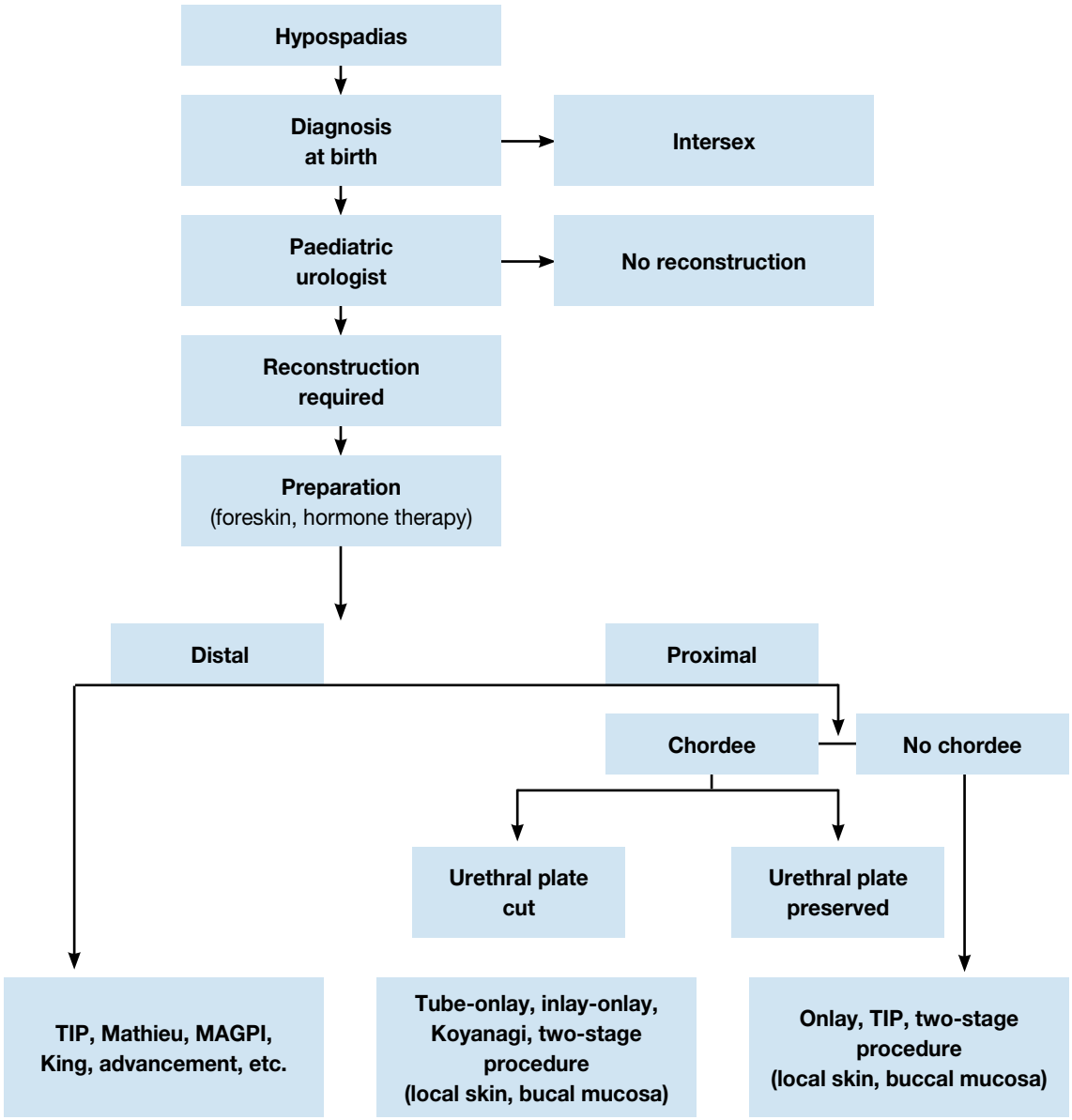
If the continuity of the urethral plate cannot be preserved, a modification of the tubularised flap, such as a tube-onlay or an inlay-onlay flap, is used to prevent urethral stricture (23,24) (LE: 3; GR: C). In this situation, as well as in severe scrotal or penoscrotal hypospadias, the Koyanagi technique or two-stage procedure may be an option (25-27).

If preputial or penile skin is not available, or has signs of balanitis xerotica obliterans, a buccal mucosa graft is used in an onlay or two-stage repair (28-30) (LE: 3; GR; C). The use of inlay skin grafts may allow an increased number of single-stage repairs to be performed (31).

6.3.4 ***Re-do hypospadias repairs***

For re-do hypospadias repairs, no definitive guidelines can be given. All the above-mentioned procedures are used in different ways and are often modified according to the individual needs of the patient.

Figure 1: Algorithm for the management of hypospadias



TIP = tubularised incised plate urethroplasty; MAGPI = meatal advancement and granulaplasty.

6.3.5 Urethral reconstruction

Following formation of the neo-urethra, the procedure is completed by glansplasty and by reconstruction of the penile skin. If there is a shortage of skin covering, the preputial double-face technique or placement of the suture line into the scrotum may be used. In countries where circumcision is not routinely performed, preputial reconstruction can be considered. However, in the TIP repair, the parents should be advised that use of a preputial dartos flap reduces the fistula rate (17, 21) (LE: 2; GR: B).

6.3.6 Urine drainage and wound dressing

Urine is drained with a transurethral dripping stent, or with a suprapubic tube. Some surgeons use no drainage after distal hypospadias repair. Circular dressing with slight compression, as well as prophylactic antibiotics during surgery, are established procedures (LE: 4; GR: C) (32). Postoperative prophylaxis is associated with a lower complication rate (LE: 1b; GR: A) (33).

A large variety of duration of stenting and dressing is described. No recommendation can be given due to the low level of evidence.

6.3.7 Outcome

Long-term follow-up, into adolescence, is necessary to detect urethral strictures, voiding dysfunction and recurrent penile curvature.

The complication rate of TIP and onlay repairs is similar, 24% and 27%, respectively. It is higher in free graft and in preputial island tube urethroplasty (11).

Overall, between 7% and 67% of patients operated on for hypospadias end up with an obstructive flow, (24.6% in TIP). These children should be followed until adulthood to clarify the clinical significance. Spontaneous improvement has been described (34,35) (LE: 2a).

Adolescents and adults, who have undergone hypospadias repair in childhood, have a slightly higher rate of dissatisfaction with penile size, especially proximal hypospadias patients, but their sexual behaviour is not different from that in control subjects (36,37) (LE: 2a-2b). The later corrective surgery is completed, the more likely the patients may become insecure with regard to gender-role behaviour. (38-39) (LE: 2b).

6.4 References

1. Morera A, Valmalle A, Asensio M, et al. A study of risk factors for hypospadias in the Rhône-Alpes region (France). J Ped Urol 2006 Jun;2(3):169-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18947603
2. Fredell L, Kockum I, Hansson E, et al. Heredity of hypospadias and the significance of low birth weight. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1423-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832761
3. Belman AB. Hypospadias and chordee. In: Belman AB, King LR, Kramer SA, eds. *Clinical Pediatric Urology*. 4th edn. London, Martin Dunitz, 2002, pp. 1061-1092.
4. Mouriquand OD, Mure PY. Hypospadias. In: Gearhart J, Rink R, Mouriquand PDE, eds. *Pediatric Urology*, Philadelphia, WB Saunders, 2001, pp. 713-728.
5. Lund L, Engebjerg MC, Pedersen L, et al. Prevalence of hypospadias in Danish boys: a longitudinal study, 1977-2005. Eur Urol 2009 May;55(5):1022-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19155122
6. Weidner IS, Møller H, Jensen TK, et al. Risk factors for cryptorchidism and hypospadias. J Urol 1999 May;161(5):1606-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210427
7. Fisch H, Hyun G, Hensle TW. Rising hypospadias rates: disproving a myth. J Pediatr Urol 2010 Feb;6(1):37-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20022563
8. Nørgaard M, Wogelius P, Pedersen L, et al. Maternal use of oral contraceptives during early pregnancy and risk of hypospadias in male offspring. Urology 2009 Sept;74(3):583-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19592074
9. Gorduza DB, Gay CL, de Mattos E, et al. Does androgen stimulation prior to hypospadias surgery increase the rate of healing complications? - A preliminary report. J Pediatr Urol 2011 Apr;7(2):158-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20570565
10. Perlmutter AE, Morabito R, Tarry WF. Impact of patient age on distal hypospadias repair: a surgical perspective. Urology 2006 Sep;68(3):648-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979730
11. Castagnetti M, El-Ghoneimi A. Surgical management of primary severe hypospadias in children: systematic 20-year review. J Urol 2010 Oct;184(4):1469-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20727541
12. Baskin LS, Duckett JW, Ueoka K, et al. Changing concepts of hypospadias curvature lead to more onlay island flap procedures. J Urol 1994;151(1):191-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8254812
13. Snodgrass W, Prieto J. Straightening ventral curvature while preserving the urethral plate in proximal hypospadias repair. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4 Suppl):1720-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19692004
14. Hollowell JG, Keating MA, Snyder HM 3rd, et al. Preservation of the urethral plate in hypospadias repair: extended applications and further experience with the onlay island flap urethroplasty. J Urol 1990 Jan;143(1): 98-100; discussion 100-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2294275
15. Mollard P, Castagnola C. Hypospadias: the release of chordee without dividing the urethral plate and onlay island flap (92 cases). J Urol 1994 Oct;152(4):1238-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8072112
16. Snodgrass WT, Yucel S. Tubularized incised plate for mid shaft and proximal hypospadias repair. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2):698-702. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222659

17. El-Sherbiny MT, Hafez AT, Dawaba MS, et al. Comprehensive analysis of tubularized incised-plate urethroplasty in primary and re-operative hypospadias. BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):1057-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142164
18. Orkiszewski M, Leszniewski J. Morphology and urodynamics after longitudinal urethral plate incision in proximal hypospadias repairs: long-term results. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2004 Feb;14(1):35-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15024677
19. Riccabona M, Oswald J, Koen M, et al. Comprehensive analysis of six years experience in tubularized incised plate urethroplasty and its extended application in primary and secondary hypospadias repair. Eur Urol 2003 Dec;44(6):714-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14644125
20. Snodgrass W, Bush N, Cost N. Tubularized incised plate hypospadias repair for distal hypospadias. J Pediat Urol 2010 Aug;6(4):408-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837000
21 El Kassaby AW, Al-Kandari AM, Elzayat T, et al. Modified tubularized incised plate urethroplasty for hypospadias repair: a long term results of 764 patients. Urology 2008 Apr;71(4): 611-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295308
22. Meyer-Junghänel L, Petersen C, Mildenberger H. Experience with repair of 120 hypospadias using Mathieu's procedure. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1995 Dec;5(6):355-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8773227
23. Kocvara R, Dvorácek J. Inlay-onlay flap urethroplasty for hypospadias and urethral stricture repair. J Urol 1997 Dec;158(6):2142-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366331
24. Perovic S, Vukadinovic V. Onlay island flap urethroplasty for severe hypospadias: a variant of the technique. J Urol 1994 Mar;151(3):711-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8308994
25. Bracka A. Hypospadias repair: the two-stage alternative. Br J Urol 1995 Dec;76 (Suppl 3):31-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8535768
26. Hayashi Y, Kojima Y, Mizuno K, et al. Neo-modified Koyanagi technique for the single-stage repair of proximal hypospadias. J Pediatr Urol 2007 Jun;3(3):239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18947743
27. Lam PN, Greenfield SP, Williot P. 2-stage repair in infancy for severe hypospadias with chordee: long-term results after puberty. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1567-72; discussion 1572. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148653
28. Ahmed S, Gough DC. Buccal mucosal graft for secondary hypospadias repair and urethral replacement. Br J Urol 1997 Aug;80(2):328-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9284210
29. Amukele SA, Stock JA, Hanna MK. Management and outcome of complex hypospadias repairs. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1540-2; discussion 1542-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148648
30. Mokhless IA, Kader MA, Fahmy N, et al. The multistage use of buccal mucosa grafts for complex hypospadias: histological changes. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1496-9;discussion 1499-500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382762
31. Schwentner C, Gozzi C, Lunacek A, et al. Interim outcome of the single stage dorsal inlay skin graft for complex hypospadias reoperations. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1872-1876; discussion 1876-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600785
32. Hsieh MH, Wildenfelds P, Gonzales ET Jr. Surgical antibiotic practices among pediatric urologists in the United States. J Pediatr Urol 2011; 7: 192-197.
33. Meir DB, Livne PM. Is prophylactic antimicrobial treatment necessary after hypospadias repair? J Urol 2004; 171:261-262
34. Andersson M, Doroszkiewicz M, Arfwidsson CH, et al. Hypospadias repair with tubularized incised plate: Does the obstructive flow pattern resolve spontaneouxly? J Pediatr Urol 2011 Aug;7(4):441-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20630805
35. Gonzáles R, Ludwikovski BM. Importance of urinary flow studies after hypospadias repair: a systematic review. Int J Urol 2011 Nov;18(11): 757-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21883491
36. Moriya K, Kakizaki H, Tanaka H, et al. Long-term cosmetic and sexual outcome of hypospadias surgery: norm related study in adolescence. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 2):1889-92; discussion 1892-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945681

37. Rynja SP, de Jong T, Bosch, et al. Functional, cosmetic and psychosexual results in adult men who underwent hypospadias correction in childhood. J Pediatr Urol 2011 Oct;7(5):504-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21429804
38. Schönbucher V, Landolt M, Gobet R, et al. Psychosexual development of children and adolescents with hypospadias. J Sex Med 2008 Jun;5(6):1365-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18194175
39. Jones B, O'Brien M, Chase J, et al. Early hypospadias surgery may lead to a better long-term psychosexual outcome. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4 Suppl):1744-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19692053

7. CONGENITAL PENILE CURVATURE

7.1 Background

Penile curvature may be ventral, dorsal or lateral. Most of ventral curvatures are associated with hypospadias due to chordee or ventral dysplasia of cavernous bodies (1). Similarly, the dorsal curvature is mostly associated with epispadias (2). Isolated penile curvature is not frequent with an incidence of 0.6 % (3) (LE: 2). The curvature is caused by asymmetry of the cavernous bodies (1,4).

Curvature over 30 degrees is considered clinically significant; curvature over 60 degrees may interfere with satisfactory sexual intercourse in adulthood (5) (LE: 4).

7.2 Diagnosis

Diagnosis is made during hypospadias or epispadias repair using an artificial erection (6). The isolated anomaly is usually not recognised until later in childhood because the appearance of the penis is normal. The curvature is only observed during erections.

7.3 Treatment

The treatment is surgical. An artificial erection is used to determine the degree of curvature and to check the symmetry after the repair (6).

In hypospadias, chordee related to the tethering of the ventral skin and to the spongiosal pillars is first released. Only in a few cases the penile curvature is caused by a short urethral plate, which should be cut. To repair the corporeal angulation in the isolated curvature or curvature associated with hypospadias, different techniques of plication of corpora cavernosa (orthoplasty) are used (5).

In epispadias, a combination of complete release of the urethral body from the corpora and a different kind of corporoplasty with or without corporotomy is usually necessary to achieve a straight penis (7,8).

7.4 References

1. Baskin LS, Duckett JW, Lue TF. Penile curvature. Urology 1996 Sep;48(3):347-56. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8804484
2. Baka-Jakubiak M. Combined bladder neck, urethral and penile reconstruction in boys with the exstrophy-epispadias complex. BJU Int 2000 Sep;86(4):513-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10971283
3. Yachia D, Beyar M, Aridogan IA, et al. The incidence of congenital penile curvature. J Urol 1993 Nov;150(5 Pt 1):1478-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8411431
4. Cendron M. Disorders of the penis and scrotum. In: Gearhart JP, Rink RC, Mouriquand PDE, eds. Pediatric urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, Philadelphia, 2001, pp. 729-37
5. Ebbehoj J, Metz P. Congenital penile angulation. Br J Uol 1987 Sep;60(3):264-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3676675
6. Gittes RF, McLaughlin AP 3rd. Injection technique to induce penile erection. Urology 1974 Oct;4(4):473-4. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4418594
7. Woodhouse CRJ. The genitalia in exstrophy and epispadias. In: Gearhart JP, Rink RC, Mouriquand PDE, eds. *Pediatric urology*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders 2001, pp. 557-64.
8. Zaontz MR, Steckler RE, Shortliffe LM, et al. Multicenter experience with the Mitchell technique for epispadias repair. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):172-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628644

8. VARICOCELE IN CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS

8.1 Background

Varicocele is defined as an abnormal dilatation of testicular veins in the pampiniformis plexus caused by venous reflux. It is unusual in boys under 10 years of age and becomes more frequent at the beginning of puberty. It is found in 15-20% of adolescents, with a similar incidence during adulthood. It appears mostly on the left side (78-93% of cases). Right-sided varicoceles are least common; they are usually noted only when bilateral varicoceles are present and seldom occur as an isolated finding (1,2).

Varicocele develops during accelerated body growth by a mechanism that is not clearly understood. Varicocele can induce apoptotic pathways because of heat stress, androgen deprivation and accumulation of toxic materials. Severe damage is found in 20% of adolescents affected, with abnormal findings in 46% of affected adolescents. Histological findings are similar in children or adolescents and in infertile men. In 70% of patients with grade II and III varicocele, left testicular volume loss was found. However, studies correlating a hypoplastic testicle with poor sperm quality have reported controversial results (3,4).

Several authors reported on reversal of testicular growth after varicocelectomy in adolescents (LE: 2) (5,6). However, this may partly be attributable to testicular oedema associated with the division of lymphatic vessels (LE: 2) (7).

In about 20% of adolescents with varicocele, fertility problems will arise (8). The adverse influence of varicocele increases with time. Improvement in sperm parameters has been demonstrated after adolescent varicocelectomy (3,9) (LE: 1).

8.2 Diagnosis

Varicocele is mostly asymptomatic, rarely causing pain at this age. It may be noticed by the patient or parents, or discovered by the paediatrician at a routine visit. The diagnosis depends upon the clinical finding of a collection of dilated and tortuous veins in the upright posture; the veins are more pronounced when the patient performs the Valsalva manoeuvre.

Varicocele is classified into 3 grades: Grade I - Valsalva positive (palpable at Valsalva manoeuvre only); Grade II - palpable (palpable without the Valsalva manoeuvre); Grade III - visible (visible at distance) (10). The size of both testicles should be evaluated during palpation to detect a smaller testis.

Venous reflux into the plexus pampiniformis is diagnosed using Doppler colour flow mapping in the supine and upright position (11). Venous reflux detected on ultrasound only is classified as subclinical varicocele. The ultrasound examination includes assessment of the testicular volume to discriminate testicular hypoplasia. In adolescents, a testis that is smaller by more than 2 mL compared to the other testis is considered to be hypoplastic (1) (LE: 4).

In order to assess testicular injury in adolescents with varicocele, supranormal follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH) responses to the luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) stimulation test are considered reliable, as histopathological testicular changes have been found in these patients (9,12).

8.3 Therapy

Surgical intervention is based on ligation or occlusion of the internal spermatic veins. Ligation is performed at different levels:

- inguinal (or subinguinal) microsurgical ligation;
- suprainguinal ligation, using open or laparoscopic techniques (13-16).

The advantage of the former is the lower invasiveness of the procedure, while the advantage of the latter is a considerably lower number of veins to be ligated and safety of the incidental division of the internal spermatic artery at the suprainguinal level.

For surgical ligation, some form of optical magnification (microscopic or laparoscopic magnification) should be used because the internal spermatic artery is 0.5 mm in diameter at the level of the internal ring (13-15,17). The recurrence rate is usually less than 10%. Angiographic occlusion is based on retrograde or antegrade sclerotisation of the internal spermatic veins (18,19).

Lymphatic-sparing varicocelectomy is preferred to prevent hydrocele formation and testicular hypertrophy development and to achieve a better testicular function according to the LHRH stimulation test (LE: 2; GR: A) (7,13,16,17,20). The methods of choice are subinguinal or inguinal microsurgical (microscopic) repairs, or suprainguinal open or laparoscopic lymphatic-sparing repairs.

Angiographic occlusion of the internal spermatic veins also meets these requirements. However, although this method is less invasive, it appears to have a higher failure rate (1,19) (LE: 2; GR: B).

There is no evidence that treatment of varicocele at paediatric age will offer a better andrological outcome than an operation performed later. The recommended indication criteria for varicocelectomy in children and adolescents are (1,21):

- varicocele associated with a small testis;
- additional testicular condition affecting fertility;
- bilateral palpable varicocele;
- pathological sperm quality (in older adolescents);
- varicocele associated with a supranormal response to LHRH stimulation test;
- symptomatic varicocele.

Repair of a large varicocele physically or psychologically causing discomfort may be also considered. Other varicoceles should be followed-up until a reliable sperm analysis can be performed (LE: 4; GR: C).

8.4 References

1. Kogan SJ. The pediatric varicocele. In: Gearhart JP, Rink RC, Mouriquand PDE, eds. *Pediatric urology*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2001, pp. 763-773.
2. Oster J. Varicocele in children and adolescents. An investigation of the incidence among Danish school children. Scand J Urol Nephrol;1971;5(1):27-32. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5093090
3. Laven JS, Haans LC, Mali WP, et al. Effects of varicocele treatment in adolescents: a randomized study. Fertil Steril 1992 Oct;58(4):756-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1426322
4. Pinto KJ, Kroovand RL, Jarow JP. Varicocele related testicular atrophy and its predictive effect upon fertility. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 2):788-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8022015
5. Kass EJ, Belman AB. Reversal of testicular growth failure by varicocele ligation. J Urol 1987 Mar;137(3):475-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3820376
6. Paduch DA, Niedzielski J. Repair versus observation in adolescent varicocele: a prospective study. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 2):1128-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258155
7. Kocvara R, Dolezal J, Hampl R, et al. Division of lymphatic vessels at varicocelectomy leads to testicular oedema and decline in testicular function according to the LH-RH analogue stimulation test. Eur Urol 2003 Apr;43(4):430-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12667726
8. World Health Organization. The influence of varicocele on parameters of fertility in a large group of men presenting to infertility clinics. Fertil Steril 1992 Jun;57(6):1289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1601152
9. Okuyama A, Nakamura M, Namiki M, et al. Surgical repair of varicocele at puberty: preventive treatment for fertility improvement. J Urol 1988 Mar;139(3):562-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3343743
10. Dubin L, Amelar RD. Varicocele size and results of varicocelectomy in selected subfertile men with a varicocele. Fertil Steril 1970 Aug;21(8):606-9. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5433164
11. Tasci AI, Resim S, Caskurlu T, et al. Color Doppler ultrasonography and spectral analysis of venous flow in diagnosis of varicocele. Eur Urol 2001Mar;39(3):316-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11275726
12. Aragona F, Ragazzi R, Pozzan GB, et al. Correlation of testicular volume, histology and LHRH test in adolescents with idiopathic varicocele. Eur Urol 1994;26(1):61-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7925532
13. Goldstein M, Gilbert BR, Dicker AP, et al. Microsurgical inguinal varicocelectomy with delivery of the testis: an artery and lymphatic sparing technique. J Urol 1992 Dec;148(6):1808-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433614
14. Hopps CV, Lemer ML, Schlegel PN, et al. Intraoperative varicocele anatomy: a microscopic study of the inguinal versus subinguinal approach. J Urol 2003 Dec;170(6 Pt 1):2366-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634418
15. Kocvara R, Dvoracek J, Sedlacek J, et al. Lymphatic-sparing laparoscopic varicocelectomy: a microsurgical repair. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1751-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821575

16. Riccabona M, Oswald J, Koen M, et al;. Optimizing the operative treatment of boys with varicocele: sequential comparison of 4 techniques. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):666-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544340
17. Marmar J, Benoff S. New scientific information related to varicoceles. (Editorial). J Urol 2003 Dec;170 (6 Pt 1):2371-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634419
18. Mazzoni G, Minucci S, Gentile V. Recurrent varicocele: role of antegrade sclerotherapy as first choice treatment. Eur Urol 2002 Jun;41(6):614-8; discussion 618.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074778
19. Thon WF, Gall H, Danz B, et al. Percutaneous sclerotherapy of idiopathic varicocele in childhood: a preliminary report. J Urol 1989 Apr;141(4):913-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2926889
20. Minevich E, Wacksman J, Lewis AG, et al. Inguinal microsurgical varicocelectomy in the adolescent: technique and preliminary results. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):1022-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474223
21. Kass EJ, Reitelman C. The adolescent with a varicocele: who needs repair? Probl Urol 1994;8: 507-17.

9. MICROPENIS

9.1 Background

Micropenis is a small but otherwise normally formed penis with a stretched length of less than 2.5 SD below the mean (1-3).
Besides an idiopathic micropenis, two major causes of abnormal hormonal stimulation have been identified:

- Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (due to an inadequate secretion of GnRH)
- Hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (due to failure of the testes to produce testosterone).

9.2 Diagnosis

The penis is measured on the dorsal aspect, while stretching the penis, from the pubic symphysis to the tip of the glans (1). The corpora cavernosa are palpated, the scrotum is often small, and the testes may be small and descended. Micropenis should be distinguished from buried and webbed penis, which is usually of normal size.

The initial evaluation has to define whether the aetiology of the micropenis is central (hypothalamic/ pituitary) or testicular. A paediatric endocrinology work-up has to be carried out immediately. Karyotyping is mandatory in all patients with a micropenis.

Endocrine testicular function is assessed (baseline and stimulated testosterone, LH and FSH serum levels). Stimulated hormone levels may also give an idea of the growth potential of the penis. In patients with non-palpable testes and hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, laparoscopy should be carried out to confirm vanishing testes syndrome or intra-abdominal undescended hypoplastic testes. This investigation can be delayed until the age of 1 year (2).

9.3 Treatment

Pituitary or testicular insufficiency are treated by the paediatric endocrinologist. In patients with testicular failure and proven androgen sensitivity, androgen therapy is recommended during childhood and at puberty to stimulate the growth of the penis (4-7) (LE: 2; GR: B). In the presence of androgen insensitivity, good outcome of sexual function is questioned and gender conversion can be considered (8-10).

9.4 References

1. Feldman KW, Smith DW. Fetal phallic growth and penile standards for newborn male infants. J Pediatr 1975 Mar;86(3):395-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1113226
2. Aaronson IA. Micropenis; medical and surgical implications. J Urol 1994 Jul;152:4-14. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8201683
3. Gonzales JR. Micropenis. AUA Update Series 1983;2:1.

4. Burstein S, Grumbach MM, Kaplan SL. Early determination of androgen-responsiveness is important in the management of microphallus. Lancet 1979 Nov;2(8150):983-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/91775
5. Choi SK, Han SW, Kim DH, et al. Transdermal dihydrotestosterone therapy and its effects on patients with microphallus. J Urol 1993 Aug;150(2 Pt 2):657-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8326617
6. Diamond M. Pediatric management of ambiguous and traumatized genitalia. J Urol 1999 Sep;162 (3 Pt 2):1021-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458424
7. Bin-Abbas B, Conte FA, Grumbach MM, et al. Congenital hypogonadotrophic hypogonadism and micropenis: effect of testosterone treatment on adult penile size. Why sex reversal is not indicated. J Pediatr 1999 May;134(5):579-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10228293
8. Calikoglu AS. Should boys with micropenis be reared as girls? J Pediatr 1999 May;134(5):537-8. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10228285
9. Reilly JM, Woodhouse CR. Small penis and the male sexual role. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 2):569-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746779
10. Husmann DA. The androgen insensitive micropenis: long-term follow-up into adulthood. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2004 Aug;17(8):1037-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15379413

10. URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS IN CHILDREN

10.1 Introduction

Urinary tract infection (UTI) represents the most common bacterial infection in children < 2 years of age. In neonates, the symptoms differ in many aspects from those in UTIs in infants and children. The prevalence is higher; there is a male predominance; infections not caused by *Escherichia coli* are more frequent; and there is a higher risk of urosepsis (1-4).

The incidence of UTIs varies depending on age and sex. One meta-analysis showed that, in the first 3 months of life, UTIs were present in 7.5% of girls, 2.4% (CI: 1.4-3.5) of circumcised boys, and 20.1% (CI: 16.8-23.4) of uncircumcised boys, who presented with fever (2). In the first year of life, UTIs are more common in boys (3.7%) than in girls (2%). Later, the incidence changes and ~3% of pre-pubertal girls and 1% of pre-pubertal boys are diagnosed with UTIs (2-7).

E. coli is found in ~75% of UTIs and is more frequent in community-acquired than nosocomial. In the latter, *Klebsiella pneumoniae, Enterobacter* spp., *Enterococcus* spp., *Pseudomonas* spp. and *Candida* spp. are more frequent than in community-acquired UTIs. Neonatal UTI is frequently complicated by bacteremia. In a retrospective study, 12.4% of blood cultures from neonates admitted for UTI were positive for bacteremia in around 12% (8), however, it is less frequent in community-acquired than in nosocomial UTI (8,9).

10.2 Classification

There are five widely used classification systems according to the site, episode, severity, symptoms and complicating factors. For acute treatment, site and severity are most important.

*10.2.1 **Classification according to site***

Lower urinary tract (cystitis) is an inflammatory condition of the urinary bladder with general signs and symptoms including dysuria, frequency, urgency, malodorous urine, enuresis, haematuria, and suprapubic pain.

Upper urinary tract (pyelonephritis) is a diffuse pyogenic infection of the renal pelvis and parenchyma. The onset of pyelonephritis is generally abrupt. Clinical signs and symptoms include fever (≥ 38 °C), chills, costovertebral angle or flank pain, and tenderness. Older children may report cystitis symptoms along with fever/flank pain. Infants and children may have non-specific signs such as poor appetite, failure to thrive, lethargy, irritability, vomiting or diarrhoea.

10.2.2 ***Classification according to episode (10)***

First infection: the first UTI may be a sign of anatomical anomalies that may predispose to complications of UTI and potential renal damage (11). Anatomical evaluation is recommended (see below).
Recurrent infection can be divided into unresolved and persistent infection.

In unresolved infection, initial therapy is inadequate for elimination of bacterial growth in the urinary tract [inadequate therapy, inadequate antimicrobial urinary concentration (poor renal concentration/gastrointestinal malabsorption), and infection involving multiple organisms with differing antimicrobial susceptibilities].

Persistent infection is caused by re-emergence of bacteria from a site within the urinary tract coming from a nidus for persistent infection that cannot be eradicated (e.g. infected stones, non-functioning or poorly functioning kidneys/renal segments, ureteral stumps after nephrectomy, necrotic papillae in papillary necrosis, urachal cyst, urethral diverticulum, periurethral gland, vesicointestinal, rectourethral or vesicovaginal fistulas). The same pathogen is identified in recurrent infections, but episodes of sterile urine may occur during and shortly following antimicrobial treatment.

Reinfection: each episode can be caused by a variety of new infecting organisms, in contrast to bacterial persistence in which the same infecting organism is always isolated. However, the most common general pathogenic species is *E. coli*, which occurs in many different serotypes. Therefore, recurrent *E. coli* UTI does not equate to infection with the same organism.

10.2.3 ***Classification according to severity***

In simple UTI, children may have only mild pyrexia; are able to take fluids and oral medication; are only slightly or not dehydrated; and have a good expected level of compliance. When a low level of compliance is expected, such children should be managed as those with severe UTI.

In severe UTI, infection is related to the presence of fever of > 39°C, the feeling of being ill, persistent vomiting, and moderate or severe dehydration.

10.2.4 ***Classification according to symptoms***

Asymptomatic bacteriuria indicates attenuation of uropathogenic bacteria by the host, or colonisation of the bladder by non-virulent bacteria that are incapable of activating a symptomatic response.

In symptomatic bacteriuria, symptoms associated with UTI include irritative voiding symptoms, suprapubic pain (cystitis), fever and malaise (pyelonephritis). Cystitis may represent early recognition of an infection destined to become pyelonephritis, or bacterial growth controlled by a balance of virulence and host response.

10.2.5 ***Classification according to complicating factors (12)***

In uncomplicated UTI, infection occurs in a patient with a morphologically and functionally normal urinary tract. This category includes mostly isolated or recurrent bacterial cystitis and is usually associated with a narrow spectrum of infecting pathogens that are easily eradicated by a short course of oral antimicrobial agents. Patients can be managed on an outpatient basis, with an emphasis on documenting resolution of their bacteriuria, followed by elective evaluation for potential anatomical or functional abnormalities of the urinary tract.

In complicated UTI, all neonates, most patients with clinical evidence of pyelonephritis, and all children with known mechanical or functional obstructions of the urinary tract are considered to have complicated UTI. Mechanical obstruction is commonly due to the presence of posterior urethral valves, strictures or stones, independent from their location. Functional obstruction often results from lower urinary tract dysfunction of either neurogenic or non-neurogenic origin and dilating vesicoureteral reflux. Patients with complicated UTI require hospitalisation and parenteral antibiotics. Prompt anatomical evaluation of the urinary tract is critical to exclude the presence of significant abnormalities (13). If mechanical or functional abnormalities are present, adequate drainage of the infected urinary tract is necessary.

10.3 Diagnosis

10.3.1 ***Medical history***

Medical history includes the question of a primary (first) or secondary (recurring) infection; possible malformations of the urinary tract (e.g. pre- or postnatal ultrasound screening); family history; and whether there is constipation or presence of lower urinary tract symptoms.

10.3.2 ***Clinical signs and symptoms***

Neonates with pyelonephritis or urosepsis can present with non-specific symptoms (failure to thrive, jaundice, hyperexcitability and without any fever). UTI is the cause of fever in 4.1-7.5% of children who present to a paediatric clinic (14,15). Septic shock is unusual, even with very high fever. Signs of a UTI may be vague and unspecific in small children, but later on, when they are > 2 years old, frequent voiding, dysuria and suprapubic, abdominal or lumbar pain can be detected.

10.3.3 ***Physical examination***

Physical examination includes a general examination of the throat, lymph nodes, abdomen (constipation, palpable and painful kidney, or palpable bladder), flank, the back (stigmata of spina bifida or sacral agenesis), genitalia (phimosis, labial adhesion, vulvitis, epididymo-orchitis), and temperature.

10.4 Urine sampling, analysis and culture

Urine sampling should be performed before any antimicrobial agent is administered. The technique for obtaining urine for urinalysis as well as culture affects the rate of contamination, which influences interpretation of the results. Especially in early infancy it can be challenging and depends on the mode of urine sampling (16,17).

10.4.1 ***Urine sampling***

Urine must be collected under defined conditions and investigated as soon as possible to confirm or exclude UTI, especially in children with fever.

In neonates, infants and non-toilet-trained children, there are four main methods with varying contamination rates and invasiveness to obtain urine in this age group:

(1) Plastic bag attached to the cleaned genitalia.
This technique is most often used in daily practice. It is helpful when the culture result is negative. Also, if the dipstick is negative for both leukocyte esterase and nitrite, or microscopic analysis is negative for both pyuria and bacteriuria, UTI can be excluded without the need for confirmatory culture (18). However, if the genitalia are not cleaned and culture is delayed, a high incidence of false-positive results (85-99%) can be found (19,20).

(2) Clean-catch urine collection.
The infant is placed in the lap of a parent or member of the nursing staff, who holds a sterile foil bowl underneath the infant's genitalia. The infant is offered oral fluids and urine collection is awaited (21). This is time consuming and requires proper instruction of the parents. However, there seems to be a good correlation between the results of urine culture obtained by this method and suprapubic aspiration (SPA), with a false-positive rate of 5% and false-negative rate of 12% (21,22).

(3) Bladder catheterisation.
Especially in boys, transurethral catheterisation is traumatic and bears the risk of nosocomial infection, but in experienced hands, this technique may be an alternative to SPA (23). In a prospective study using bladder catheterisation in febrile children aged ≤ 36 months, contamination was defined by multiple pathogens, non-pathogens, or colony counts < 10,000 cfu/mL. Ten percent of the children had true UTI and 14% of the cultures were contaminated. Univariate analysis of potential predictors identified age < 6 months, difficult catheterisation, and uncircumcised boys (24).

(4) Suprapubic bladder aspiration.
This is the most sensitive method to obtain an uncontaminated urine sample in this age group (24-26). Using ultrasound to assess bladder filling simplifies SPA and improves the diagnostic yield of obtaining a urine specimen from 60% to ~97% (25,26). Complications are rare and have been reported in only 0.22% of cases, ranging from transient haematuria to bowel perforation (27). However, bladder puncture causes more pain than catheterisation in infants < 2 months old (28).

In older, toilet-trained children, who can void on command, after carefully retracting the foreskin and cleaning the glans penis in boys and spreading the labia and cleaning the periurethral area in girls, the use of clean catch, especially midstream urine, could be an acceptable technique for obtaining urine. After cleaning the urethral meatus and perineum with gauze and liquid soap twice, the risk of contamination was reduced from 23.9% (41/171) to 7.8% (14/171) in a randomised trail (29).

If the clinical situation necessitates, and for differential diagnosis of sepsis, it is most appropriate to obtain

an adequate urine sample by catheterisation or SPA (22). In infants, a bag can only be used if the dipstick is negative, otherwise the urine should be obtained through catheterisation or SPA. This is also recommended in children, who are severely ill and a UTI needs to be excluded or confirmed. Blood sampling is dependent on the clinical situation.

*10.4.2 **Urinalysis***

There are three methods that are commonly used for urinalysis:

(1) Dipsticks:
These are appealing because they provide rapid results, do not require microscopy, and are ready to use. Leukocyte esterase (as a surrogate marker for pyuria) and nitrite (which is converted from dietary nitrates by most Gram-negative enteric bacteria in the urine) are the most frequent markers, and are usually combined in a dipstick test. The conversion of dietary nitrates to nitrites by bacteria requires approximately 4 h in the bladder (22,30). However, nitrite is not a very sensitive marker for infants, who empty their bladder frequently, and not all urinary pathogens reduce nitrate to nitrite. The test is helpful when the result is positive, because it is highly specific (i.e. there are few false-positive results) (1,22).

Table 3: Sensitivity and specificity of component of urinalysis, alone and in combination (22)*

Test	Sensitivity (Range), %	Specificity (Range), %
Leukocyte esterase test	83 (67-94)	78 (64-92)
Nitrite test	53 (15-82)	98 (90-100)
Leukocyte esterase or nitrite test positive	93 (90-100)	72 (58-91)
Microscopy, WBCs	73 (32-100)	81 (45-98)
Microscopy, bacteria	81 (16-99)	83 (11-100)
Leucocyte esterase test, nitrite test or microscopy positive	99.8 (99-100)	70 (60-92)

**Reproduced with permission from Pediatrics 2011 Sep;128(3):595-610, Copyright © 2011 by the AAP (22).*

(2) Microscopy.
This is the standard method of assessing pyuria after centrifugation of the urine with a threshold of 5 white blood cells (WBCs) per high-power field (25 WBC/μL) (27). In uncentrifuged urine, ≥ 10 WBC/μL has been demonstrated to be sensitive for UTI (31) and this could perform well in clinical situations (32). However, this is rarely done in an outpatient setting.

(3) Flow imaging analysis technology.
This is being used increasingly to classify particles in uncentrifuged urine specimens (33). The numbers of WBCs, squamous epithelial cells and red cells correlate well with those found by manual methods (22).

*10.4.3 **Urine culture***

After negative results for dipstick, microscopic or automated urinalysis, urine culture is generally not necessary, especially if there is an alternative source of fever. If the dipstick result is positive, confirmation by urine culture is recommended.

It is unclear what represents a significant UTI. In severe UTI, > 10^5 cfu/mL can be expected. However, the count can vary and be related to the method of specimen collection, diuresis, and time and temperature of storage until cultivation occurs (34). The classical definition of > 10^5 cfu/mL of voided urine is still used to define a significant UTI (35,36). The recent American Academy of Pediatric Guidelines on Urinary tract İnfection suggest that the diagnosis should be on the basis of the presence of both pyuria and at least 50 000 cfu. However, some studies have shown that, in voided specimens, ≤ 10^4 organisms may indicate a significant UTI (37,38). If urine is obtained by catheterisation, 1,000-50,000 cfu/mL is considered to be positive, and any counts obtained after SPA should be considered as significant. Mixed cultures are indicative of contamination.

Table 4: Criteria for UTI in children (adapted from the EAU Guideline on Urological Infections [39])

Urine specimen from suprapubic bladder puncture	Urine specimen from bladder catheterisation	Urine specimen from midstream void
Any number of cfu/mL (at least 10 identical colonies)	≥ 1,000-50,000 cfu/mL	≥ 10^4 cfu/mL with symptoms ≥ 10^5 cfu/mL without symptoms

Pyuria without bacteriuria (sterile pyuria) may be due to incomplete antibiotic treatment, urolithiasis, or foreign bodies in the urinary tract, and infections caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis or Chlamydia trachomatis.

10.5 Therapy

10.5.1 ***Administration route***

The choice between oral and parenteral therapy should be based on patient age; clinical suspicion of urosepsis; illness severity; refusal of fluids, food and/or oral medication; vomiting; diarrhoea; non-compliance; and complicated pyelonephritis (e.g. urinary obstruction). As a result of the increased incidence of urosepsis and severe pyelonephritis in newborns and infants aged < 2 months, parenteral antibiotic therapy is recommended. Electrolyte disorders with hyponatremia and hyperkalemia can occur in these cases (13). Combination treatment with ampicillin and an aminoglycoside (e.g. tobramycin or gentamicin) or respectively a third-generation cephalosporin achieves excellent therapeutic results (high efficacy of aminoglycosides, respectively cephalosporines against common uropathogens; enterococcus gap is closed with Ampillicin). Compared to the division in two doses, a daily single dose of aminoglycosides is safe and effective (13,40,41).

The choice of agent is also based on local antimicrobial sensitivity patterns, and should later be adjusted according to sensitivity testing of the isolated uropathogen (22). Especially in infancy, not all available antibiotics are approved by the national health authorities. In uncomplicated nephritis, both oral and parenteral treatment can be considered, because both are equally effective in children without urinary tract abnormalities. Some studies have demonstrated that once daily parenteral administration of gentamicin or ceftriaxone in a day treatment centre is safe, effective and cost-effective in children with UTI (41-43).

10.5.2 ***Duration of therapy***

Adequate treatment of UTI can prevent the spread of infection and renal scarring. Outcomes of short courses (1-3 days) are inferior to those of 7-4-day courses (22). In newborns and young infants with a febrile UTI, up to 20% may have a positive blood culture (8,13). In late infancy, there are no differences between strategies regarding the incidence of parenchymal scars, as diagnosed with DMSA (dimercaptosuccinic acid) scan (44). Some recent studies using exclusively oral therapy with a third-generation cephalosporin (e.g. cefixime or ceftibuten) have demonstrated that this is equivalent to the usual 2-4 days intravenous therapy followed by oral treatment (40,45-47). Similar data have been shown for amoxicillin-clavulanate (48), however, these antibiotics are associated with increasing rates of resistance. If ambulatory therapy is chosen, adequate surveillance, medical supervision and, if necessary, adjustment of therapy must be guaranteed. In the initial phase of therapy, a close ambulant contact to the family is advised (49).

In complicated UTI, uropathogens other than *E. coli*, such as Proteus mirabilis, Klebsiella spp., Pseudomonas aeruginosa, enterococci and staphylococci, are more often to be anticipated (13). Parenteral treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics is preferred. A temporary urinary diversion (suprapubic cystostomy or percutaneous nephrostomy) might be required in case of failure of conservative treatment in obstructive uropathy.

Acute focal bacterial nephritis (lobar nephronia) is a localised bacterial infection of the kidney that presents as an inflammatory mass without abscess formation. This may represent a relatively early stage of renal abscess. For the majority of children, the pathogenesis is related to ascending infection due to pre-existing uropathy, especially vesicorenal reflux or urinary obstruction (megaureter). Prolonged intravenous antibiotic treatment is sufficient in most cases (50), and intravenous and oral therapy tailored to the pathogen identified in culture is recommended (51).

*10.5.3 **Antimicrobial agents***

Table 5: Frequently used antibacterial substances for the therapy of urinary tract infections in infants and children*

Chemotherapeutics	Daily dosage	Application	Comments
Parenteral cephalosporins			
Group 3a, e.g. cefotaxime	100-200 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 3-6 g)*	i.v. in 2-3 D	
Group 3b, e.g. ceftazidime	100-150 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 2-6 g)*	i.v. in 2-3 D	
Ceftriaxone	75 mg/kg,	i.v. in 1 D	
Oral cephalosporins			
Group 3, e.g. ceftibuten	9 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 0,4 g)*	p.o. in 1-2 D p.o. in 1-2 D	
Group 3, e.g. cefixime	8-12 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 0,4 g)*	p.o. in 1-2 D	
Group 2, e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil	8-10 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 0,4 g)*	p.o. in 2D	
Group 2, e.g. cefuroximaxetil	20-30 mg/kg (Adolesc.: 0,5-1 g)	p.o. in 3 D	
Group 1, e.g. cefaclor	50 -100 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 1,5-4 g)*	p.o. in 2-3 D	
Trimethoprim or Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole	5-6 mg/kg 5-6 mg/kg (TMP-Anteil) *(Adolesc.: 320 mg)*	p.o. in 2 D p.o. in 2 D	
Ampicillin	100-200 mg/kgKG *(Adolesc.: 3-6 g)*	i.v. in 3 D i.v. in 3-4 D	Ampicillin and Amoxicillin are not eligible for calculated therapy
Amoxicillin	50-100 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 1,5-6 g)*	p.o. in 2-3 D[1] p.o. in 2-3 D	
Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid (parenteral) Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid (oral)	60-100 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 3,6-6,6 g)* 45-60 mg/kg (Amoxicillin-fraction) *(Adolesc.: 1500 + 375 mg)*	i.v. in 3 D i.v. in 3 D p.o. in 3 D p.o.in 3 D	
Piperacillin	300 mg/kg	i.v. in 3-4 D	
Tobramycin	5 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 3-5 mg/kg, max. 0,4 g)*	i.v. in 1 D	Drug monitoring
Gentamicin	5 mg/kg *(Adolesc.: 3-5 mg/kg, max. 0,4g)*	i.v. in 1 D	
Ciprofloxacin	Children and adolesc. (1-17 years of age): 20-30 mg/kg (max. D: 400 mg) (parenterally) Children and adolesc. (1-17 years of age): 20-40 mg/kg (max. D 750 mg) (orally)	i.v. in 3 D p.o. in 2 D	Approved in most European countries as second- or third line medication for complicated UTIs, „reserve-antibiotic“ !
Nitrofurantoin	3-5 mg	p.o. in 2 D	Contraindicated in the case of renal insufficiency

** Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International*

Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology (52).
Dosage for adolescents in paracentesis, if differing.
[1] Infants 2 D, children 1-12 ys. 3 D.

Table 6: Recommendations for calculated antibacterial therapy of pyelonephritis dependent on age and severity of the infection*

Diagnosis	Proposal	Application	Duration of therapy	LE
Pyelonephritis during the first 0-6 months of life	Ceftazidime + Ampicillin[1] or Aminoglycoside + Ampicillin[1]	3-7 days parenterally, for at least 2 days after defervescence, then oral therapy[2] In newborns: parenteral therapy for 7-14 days, then oral therapy[2]	10 (-14) days Newborns 14-21 days	4
Uncomplicated pyelonephritis after 6 months of age	Cephalosporin group 3[2]	Orally (initially parenterally, if necessary)	(7-)10 days	1
Complicated pyelonephritis/ urosepsis (all ages)	Ceftazidime + Ampicillin[1] or Aminoglycoside + Ampicillin[1]	7 days parenterally, then oral therapy[2]	10-14 days	4

** Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology (52).*
[1] after receipt of microbiological findings (pathogen, resistance) adaptation of therapy.
[2] i.v.: e.g. cefotaxime; orally: e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil, ceftibuten, cefixime.

Table 7: Recommendations for antibacterial treatment in cystitis und cystourethritis
(Dosages for children up to 12 years of age)*

Chemotherapeutics	Daily dosage	Application
Oral cephalosporins		
Group 1, e.g. cefaclor	50 (-100) mg/kgbw	p.o. in 2-3 D
Group 1, e.g. cefalexin	50 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 3-4 D
Group 2, e.g. cefuroximaxetil	20-30 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 2 D
Group 2, e.g. cefpodoxime proxetil	8-10 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 2 D
Group 3, e.g. ceftibuten	9 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 1 D
Trimethoprim	5-6 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 2 D
Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole	5-6 mg/kgbw /TMP-fraction)	p.p. in 3 D
Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid	37.5-75 mg/kgbw (Amoxicillin-fraction)	p.o. in 3 D
Nitrofurantoin	3-5 mg/kgbw	p.o. in 2 D

** Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology (52).*

*10.5.4 **Chemoprophylaxis***

Long-term antibacterial prophylaxis should be considered in cases of high susceptibility to UTI and risk of acquired renal damage. Some recently published prospective, randomised studies do not support the efficacy of antibacterial prophylaxis (53-56). The Australian PRIVENT study demonstrated risk reduction using

trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in children from birth to 18 years of age who had at least one symptomatic UTI (19% of the placebo group and 13% of the antibiotic group) (46) (see also Chapter 15).

Table 8: Drugs for antibacterial prophylaxis*

Substance**	Prophylactic dosage (mg/kgbw/d)	Limitations in young infants
Trimethoprim	1	until 6 weeks of age
Nitrofurantoin	1	Until 3 months of age
Cefaclor	10	No age limitations
Cefixim	2	Preterms and newborns
Ceftibuten	2	***
Cefuroximaxetil	5	***

** Reproduced with permission from the International Consultation on Urological Diseases (ICUD), International Consultation on Urogenital Infections, 2009. Copyright © by the European Association of Urology.*
*** Substances of first choice are nitrofurantoin and trimethoprim. In exceptional cases, oral cephalosporin can be used.*
**** In Germany, ceftibuten is not approved for infants < 3 months old.*

10.6 Monitoring of UTI

With successful treatment, urine usually becomes sterile after 24 h, and leukocyturia normally disappears within 3-4 days. Normalisation of body temperature can be expected within 24-48 h after the start of therapy in 90% of cases. In patients with prolonged fever and failing recovery, treatment-resistant uropathogens or the presence of congenitaluropathy or acute urinary obstruction should be considered. Immediate ultrasound examination is recommended in these cases.

Procalcitonin (among other laboratory inflammatory parameters such as C-reactive protein and leukocyte count) can be used as reliable serum marker for early prediction of renal parenchymal inflammation with first febrile UTI (57). In patients with febrile UTI, serum electrolytes and blood cell counts should be obtained.

10.7 Imaging

*10.7.1 **Ultrasound***

Renal and bladder ultrasonography is strongly recommended in infants with febrile UTI to exclude obstruction of the upper and lower urinary tract. Abnormal results are found in ~15% of cases, and 1-2% have abnormalities that require prompt action (e.g., additional evaluation, referral, or surgery) (22). In other studies, renal ultrasound revealed abnormalities in up to 37% of cases, whereas voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) showed vesicoureteral reflux (VUR) in 27% of cases (9). Dilating VUR is missed by ultrasound in around one third of cases (58). Post-void residual urine should be measured in toilet-trained children to exclude voiding abnormalities as a cause of UTI.

*10.7.2 **Radionuclide scanning***

Changes in DMSA clearance during acute UTI indicate pyelonephritis or parenchymal damage, correlated well with the presence of dilating reflux and the risk of further pyelonephritis episodes, break-through-infections (59) and future renal scarring. DMSA scanning may be used as a first-line diagnostic procedure based on observations that dilating VUR occurs in almost all children with abnormal DMSA scan (58,60). These findings are different in neonates. After the first symptomatic, community-acquired UTI, the majority of renal units with VUR grade III or higher had normal early DMSA scanning (61).

*10.7.3 **Voiding cystourethrography***

VCUG is still the gold standard to exclude or confirm VUR. Due to the risk of renal scarring, VCUG is recommended after the first episode of febrile UTI in boys and girls. The timing of VCUG does not influence the presence or severity of VUR (62,63). Performance of early VCUG in patients with proven sterile urine does not cause any significant morbidity (64). Another option is doing DMSA first, followed by VCUG if there is renal cortical uptake deficiency after urinary tract infection (see Chapter 15).

10.8 Bladder and bowel dysfunction

Bladder and bowel dysfunction are risk factors for which each child with UTI should be screened upon

presentation. Normalisation of micturition disorders or bladder overactivity is important to lower the rate of UTI recurrence. If there are signs of bladder and/or bowel dysfunction at infection-free intervals, further diagnosis and effective treatment are strongly recommended (65-68). Treatment of constipation leads to a decrease in UTI recurrence (69-71). Therefore, exclusion of bladder and bowel dysfunction is strongly recommended in any child with febrile and/or recurrent UTI, and it should be treated if there is evidence of a dysfunctional elimination syndrome.

10.9 References

1. Kunin CM, DeGroot JE. Sensitivity of a nitrite indicator strip method in detecting bacteriuria in preschool girls. Pediatrics 1977 Aug;60(2):244-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/887340
2. Shaikh N, Morone NE, Bost JE, Farrell MH. Prevalence of urinary tract infection in childhood: a meta-analysis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2008 Apr;27(4):302-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18316994
3. Winberg J, Andersen HJ, Bergstrom T et al. Epidemiology of symptomatic urinary tract infection in childhood. Acta paediatrica Scandinavica Supplement 1974(252):1-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4618418
4. Zorc JJ, Levine DA, Platt SL et al. Clinical and demographic factors associated with urinary tract infection in young febrile infants. Pediatrics 2005 Sep;116(3):644-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140703
5. Kanellopoulos TA, Salakos C, Spiliopoulou I et al. First urinary tract infection in neonates, infants and young children: a comparative study. Pediatr Nephrol 2006 Aug;21(8):1131-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16810514
6. . Kunin CM, Deutscher R, Paquin A Jr. Urinary Tract Infection in School Children: An Epidemiologic, Clinical and Laboratory Study. Medicine (Baltimore) 1964 Mar;43:91-130. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14129871
7. . Rushton HG, Majd M. Pyelonephritis in male infants: how important is the foreskin? J Urol 1992 Aug;148(2 Pt 2):733-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1640557
8. Magin EC, Garcia-Garcia JJ, Sert SZ et al. Efficacy of short-term intravenous antibiotic in neonates with urinary tract infection. Pediatr Emerg Care 2007 Feb;23(2):83-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17351406
9. Sastre JB, Aparicio AR, Cotallo GD et al. Urinary tract infection in the newborn: clinical and radio imaging studies. Pediatr Nephrol 2007 Oct;22(10):1735-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17665222
10. Shortliffe LMD. Infection and inflammation of the pediatric genitourinary tract In: Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, Partin AW, Peters CA, editors. Campbell-Walsh Urology. 9th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007. p.p. 3232-68.
11. Shortliffe LMD, Shinghal R, Seto EH. Pediatric urinary tract infections. In: Gearhart JP, Rink RC, Mouriquand PDE, editors. Pediatric urology. 1st edn. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2001. p.p. 237-58.
12. Burns MW, Burns JL, Krieger JN. Pediatric urinary tract infection. Diagnosis, classification, and significance. Pediatr Clin North Am 1987 Oct;34(5):1111-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3658502
13. Beetz R, Bachmann H, Gatermann S et al. [Urinary tract infections in infants and children -- a consensus on diagnostic, therapy and prophylaxis]. Urologe A 2007 Feb;46(2):112,114-8,120-3.[Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17225140
14. American Academy Pediatrics CoQIaSoUTI. Practice parameter: The diagnosis, treatment, and evaluation of the initial urinary tract infection in febrile infants and young children. Pediatrics 1999 Apr;103(4 Pt 1):843-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10103321
15. Lin DS, Huang SH, Lin CC et al. Urinary tract infection in febrile infants younger than eight weeks of Age. Pediatrics 2000 Feb;105(2):E20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654980
16. Tullus K. Difficulties in diagnosing urinary tract infections in small children. Pediatr Nephrol 2011 Nov;26(11):1923-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21773821

17. Craig JC, Williams GJ, Jones M et al. The accuracy of clinical symptoms and signs for the diagnosis of serious bacterial infection in young febrile children: prospective cohort study of 15 781 febrile illnesses. BMJ 2010 Apr:340:c1594.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20406860
18. Whiting P, Westwood M, Watt I et al. Rapid tests and urine sampling techniques for the diagnosis of urinary tract infection (UTI) in children under five years: a systematic review. BMC Pediatr 2005;5(1):4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15811182
19. Ma JF, Shortliffe LM. Urinary tract infection in children: etiology and epidemiology. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Aug;31(3):517-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313061
20. Koch VH, Zuccolotto SM. [Urinary tract infection: a search for evidence]. J Pediatr (Rio J) 2003 May;79 Suppl 1:S97-106.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14506522
21. Ramage IJ, Chapman JP, Hollman AS et al. Accuracy of clean-catch urine collection in infancy. J Pediatr. 1999 Dec;135(6):765-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10586183
22. Subcommittee On Urinary Tract I, Steering Committee On Quality I, Management. Urinary Tract Infection: Clinical Practice Guideline for the Diagnosis and Management of the Initial UTI in Febrile Infants and Children 2 to 24 Months. Pediatrics 2011 Aug 28. [Epub ahead of print]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21873693
23. Austin BJ, Bollard C, Gunn TR. Is urethral catheterization a successful alternative to suprapubic aspiration in neonates? J Paediatr Child Health 1999 Feb;35(1):34-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10234632
24. Wingerter S, Bachur R. Risk factors for contamination of catheterized urine specimens in febrile children. Pediatr Emerg Care 2011 Jan;27(1):1-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21178815
25. Buys H, Pead L, Hallett R et al. Suprapubic aspiration under ultrasound guidance in children with fever of undiagnosed cause. BMJ 1994 Mar 12;308(6930):690-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8142792
26. Kiernan SC, Pinckert TL, Keszler M. Ultrasound guidance of suprapubic bladder aspiration in neonates. J Pediatr 1993 Nov;123(5):789-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8229492
27. Hildebrand WL, Schreiner RL, Stevens DC et al. Suprapubic bladder aspiration in infants. Am Fam Physician 1981 May;23(5):115-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7234629
28. Kozer E, Rosenbloom E, Goldman D et al. Pain in infants who are younger than 2 months during suprapubic aspiration and transurethral bladder catheterization: a randomized, controlled study. Pediatrics 2006 Jul;118(1):e51-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16818537
29. Vaillancourt S, McGillivray D, Zhang X et al. To clean or not to clean: effect on contamination rates in midstream urine collections in toilet-trained children. Pediatrics 2007 Jun;119(6):e1288-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17502345
30. Powell HR, McCredie DA, Ritchie MA. Urinary nitrite in symptomatic and asymptomatic urinary infection. Arch Dis Child 1987 Feb;62(2):138-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3548604
31. Hoberman A, Wald ER, Reynolds EA et al. Is urine culture necessary to rule out urinary tract infection in young febrile children? Pediatr Infect Dis J 1996 Apr;15(4):304-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8866798
32. Herr SM, Wald ER, Pitetti RD et al. Enhanced urinalysis improves identification of febrile infants ages 60 days and younger at low risk for serious bacterial illness. Pediatrics 2001 Oct;108(4):866-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11581437
33. Mayo S, Acevedo D, Quinones-Torrelo C et al. Clinical laboratory automated urinalysis: comparison among automated microscopy, flow cytometry, two test strips analyzers, and manual microscopic examination of the urine sediments. J Clin Lab Anal 2008;22(4):262-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18623125
34. Zorc JJ, Kiddoo DA, Shaw KN. Diagnosis and management of pediatric urinary tract infections. Clin Microbiol Rev 2005 Apr;18(2):417-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15831830

35. Kass EH. Asymptomatic infections of the urinary tract. Transactions of the Association of American Physicians 1956;69:56-64.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13380946
36. Lohr JA. Use of routine urinalysis in making a presumptive diagnosis of urinary tract infection in children. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1991 Sep;10(9):646-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1923675
37. Bollgren I, Engstrom CF, Hammarlind M et al. Low urinary counts of P-fimbriated Escherichia coli in presumed acute pyelonephritis. Arch Dis Child 1984 Feb;59(2):102-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/61426977.
38. Stamm WE. Measurement of pyuria and its relation to bacteriuria. Am J Med 1983 Jul 28;75(1B):53-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6349345
39. Grabe M, Bjerklund-Johansen T-E, Botto H, et al; EAU working group on Urological Infections. EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections, edn. Presented at the EAU Annual Congress 2011, ISBN 978-90-79754-96-0. European Association of Urology, Arnhem, The Netherlands
40. Hodson EM, Willis NS, Craig JC. Antibiotics for acute pyelonephritis in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007(4):CD003772.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943796
41. Contopoulos-Ioannidis DG, Giotis ND, Baliatsa DV et al. Extended-interval aminoglycoside administration for children: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2004 Jul;114(1):e111-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15231982
42. Dore-Bergeron MJ, Gauthier M, Chevalier I et al. Urinary tract infections in 1- to 3-month-old infants: ambulatory treatment with intravenous antibiotics. Pediatrics 2009 Jul;124(1):16-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19564278
43. Gauthier M, Chevalier I, Sterescu A et al. Treatment of urinary tract infections among febrile young children with daily intravenous antibiotic therapy at a day treatment center. Pediatrics 2004 Oct;114(4):e469-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15466073
44. Bouissou F, Munzer C, Decramer S et al. Prospective, randomized trial comparing short and long intravenous antibiotic treatment of acute pyelonephritis in children: dimercaptosuccinic acid scintigraphic evaluation at 9 months. Pediatrics 2008 Mar;121(3):e553-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18267977
45. Hoberman A, Wald ER, Hickey RW et al. Oral versus initial intravenous therapy for urinary tract infections in young febrile children. Pediatrics 1999 Jul;104(1 Pt 1):79-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10390264
46. Craig JC, Simpson JM, Williams GJ et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis and recurrent urinary tract infection in children. N Engl J Med 2009 Oct 29;361(18):1748-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19864673
47. Neuhaus TJ, Berger C, Buechner K et al. Randomised trial of oral versus sequential intravenous/oral cephalosporins in children with pyelonephritis. Eur J Pediatr 2008 Sep;167(9):1037-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18074149
48. Montini G, Toffolo A, Zucchetta P et al. Antibiotic treatment for pyelonephritis in children: multicentre randomised controlled non-inferiority trial. BMJ 2007 Aug 25;335(7616):386.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17611232
49. Mak RH, Wong JH. Are oral antibiotics alone efficacious for the treatment of a first episode of acute pyelonephritis in children? Nat Clin Pract Nephrol 2008 Jan;4(1):10-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17971799
50. Klar A, Hurvitz H, Berkun Y et al. Focal bacterial nephritis (lobar nephronia) in children. J Pediatr 1996 Jun;128(6):850-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648547
51. Cheng CH, Tsau YK, Lin TY. Effective duration of antimicrobial therapy for the treatment of acute lobar nephronia. Pediatrics 2006 Jan;117(1):e84-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16326693
52. Naber KG (chair), Schaeffer AJ, Hynes CF, et al (Eds) (2010). EAU/International Consultation on Urological Infections. The Netherlands, European Association of Urology.
53. Montini G, Rigon L, Zucchetta P et al. Prophylaxis after first febrile urinary tract infection in children? A multicenter, randomized, controlled, noninferiority trial. Pediatrics 2008 Nov;122(5):1064-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18977988

54. Garin EH, Olavarria F, Garcia Nieto V et al. Clinical significance of primary vesicoureteral reflux and urinary antibiotic prophylaxis after acute pyelonephritis: a multicenter, randomized, controlled study. Pediatrics 2006 Mar;117(3):626-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16510640
55. Pennesi M, Travan L, Peratoner L et al. Is antibiotic prophylaxis in children with vesicoureteral reflux effective in preventing pyelonephritis and renal scars? A randomized, controlled trial. Pediatrics 2008 Jun;121(6):e1489-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18490378
56. Roussey-Kesler G, Gadjos V, Idres N et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for the prevention of recurrent urinary tract infection in children with low grade vesicoureteral reflux: results from a prospective randomized study. J Urol 2008 Feb;179(2):674-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082208
57. Kotoula A, Gardikis S, Tsalkidis A et al. Comparative efficacies of procalcitonin and conventional inflammatory markers for prediction of renal parenchymal inflammation in pediatric first urinary tract infection. Urology 2009 Apr;73(4):782-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19152962
58. Preda I, Jodal U, Sixt R et al. Value of ultrasound in evaluation of infants with first urinary tract infection. J Urol 2010 May;183(5):1984-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303537
59. Shiraishi K, Yoshino K, Watanabe M et al. Risk factors for breakthrough infection in children with primary vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 2010 Apr;183(4):1527-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20172558
60. Quirino IG, Silva JM, Diniz JS et al. Combined use of late phase dimercapto-succinic acid renal scintigraphy and ultrasound as first line screening after urinary tract infection in children. J Urol 2011 Jan;185(1):258-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21074813
61. Siomou E, Giapros V, Fotopoulos A et al. Implications of 99mTc-DMSA scintigraphy performed during urinary tract infection in neonates. Pediatrics 2009 Sep;124(3):881-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19661052
62. Doganis D, Mavrikou M, Delis D et al. Timing of voiding cystourethrography in infants with first time urinary infection. Pediatr Nephrol 2009 Feb;24(2):319-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18853200
63. Sathapornwajana P, Dissaneewate P, McNeil E et al. Timing of voiding cystourethrogram after urinary tract infection. Arch Dis Child 2008 Mar;93(3):229-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17626141
64. Spencer JD, Bates CM, Mahan JD et al. The accuracy and health risks of a voiding cystourethrogram after a febrile urinary tract infection. J Pediatr Urol 2010 Dec 1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21126919
65. Koff SA, Wagner TT, Jayanthi VR. The relationship among dysfunctional elimination syndromes, primary vesicoureteral reflux and urinary tract infections in children. J Urol 1998 Sep;160(3 Pt 2): 1019-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719268
66. Hoebeke P, Vande Walle J, Everaert K et al. Assessment of lower urinary tract dysfunction in children with non-neuropathic bladder sphincter dysfunction. Eur Urol 1999 Jan;35(1):57-69.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9933796
67. van Gool JD. Dysfunctional voiding: a complex of bladder/sphincter dysfunction, urinary tract infections and vesicoureteral reflux. Acta Urol Belg 1995 Sep;63(3):27-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7484519
68. van Gool JD, Kuitjen RH, Donckerwolcke RA et al. Bladder-sphincter dysfunction, urinary infection and vesico-ureteral reflux with special reference to cognitive bladder training. Contrib Nephrol 1984;39:190-210.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6744871
69. De Paepe H, Renson C, Van Laecke E et al. Pelvic-floor therapy and toilet training in young children with dysfunctional voiding and obstipation. BJU Int 2000 May;85(7):889-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10792172
70. Loening-Baucke V. Urinary incontinence and urinary tract infection and their resolution with treatment of chronic constipation of childhood. Pediatrics 1997 Aug;100(2 Pt 1):228-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240804

71. O'Regan S, Yazbeck S, Schick E. Constipation, bladder instability, urinary tract infection syndrome. Clin Nephrol 1985 Mar;23(3):152-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3987104

11. DAYTIME LOWER URINARY TRACT CONDITIONS

11.1 Background

Following the new terminology document by the International Children's Continence Society (ICCS), 'daytime lower urinary tract (LUT) conditions' is the new term used to group together functional incontinence problems in children (1). After any possible underlying uropathy or neuropathy has been excluded, a problem of incontinence in children is grouped into the category of 'daytime LUT conditions'. Night-time wetting is known as 'enuresis'.

Although exact data are unavailable, it is clear that the incidence of daytime LUT conditions is increasing. The changes in toilet training and toilet habits associated with a modern lifestyle have been blamed for the increase in incidence, but with little evidence. Rather, it is that modern life and higher hygiene standards have probably resulted in incontinence problems receiving more attention, so that an increase in prevalence could probably be attributed to an increased awareness. There exists a wide variation in reported prevalence ranging from 2% to 20% (2-6). This wide variation might reflect the variation in definitions used.

11.2 Definition

Daytime LUT conditions are conditions that present with lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), including urge, incontinence, weak stream, hesitancy, frequency and urinary tract infections, but without overt uropathy or neuropathy.

Normal bladder storage and voiding involves low pressure and adequate bladder volume filling. This is followed by a continuous detrusor contraction, which results in complete bladder emptying, associated with an adequate relaxation of the sphincter complex. Normal urine storage by the bladder and evacuation are controlled by a complex interaction between the spinal cord, brain stem, midbrain and higher cortical structures, associated with a complex integration of sympathetic, parasympathetic and somatic innervations (7).

It is understandable that this complex control mechanism is likely to be susceptible to developing different types of dysfunction. Various functional disorders of the detrusor-sphincter complex may occur during the sophisticated early development of normal mechanisms of micturition control. Voiding dysfunction is therefore thought to be the expression of incomplete or delayed maturation of the bladder sphincter complex.

Normal daytime control of bladder function matures between 2 and 3 years of age, while nighttime control is normally achieved between 3 and 7 years of age (8). There are two main groups of voiding dysfunction, namely, filling-phase dysfunctions and voiding-phase dysfunctions.

*11.2.1 **Filling-phase dysfunctions***

In filling-phase dysfunctions, the detrusor can be overactive, as in **overactive bladder (OAB) and urge syndrome**, or underactive, as in **underactive or highly compliant bladder** (formerly known as 'lazy bladder'). Some children habitually postpone micturition leading to **voiding postponement**.

*11.2.2 **Voiding-phase (emptying) dysfunctions***

In voiding-phase (emptying) dysfunctions, interference with the sphincter and pelvic floor during detrusor contraction is the main dysfunction. The general term for this condition is dysfunctional voiding. Different degrees of dysfunction are described, depending on the strength of interference with the sphincter and pelvic floor. Weak interference results in staccato voiding, while stronger interference results in interrupted voiding and straining, due to an inability to relax during voiding.

Bladder sphincter dysfunction is often associated with bowel dysfunction such as obstipation and soiling. Sometimes, secondary anatomical changes are observed, such as trabeculation, diverticulae and vesicoureteral reflux.

11.3 Diagnosis

A non-invasive screening, consisting of history-taking, clinical examination, uroflow, ultrasound and voiding diary, is essential to reach a diagnosis.

In the paediatric age group, where the history is taken from both the parents and child together, a structured approach is recommended using a questionnaire. Many signs and symptoms related to voiding and wetting will be unknown to the parents and should be specifically requested, using the questionnaire as a checklist. A voiding diary is mandatory to determine the child's voiding frequency and voided volumes as well as the child's drinking habits. History-taking should also include assessment of bowel function. Some dysfunctional voiding scores have recently been developed and validated (9,10).

Upon clinical examination, genital inspection and observation of the lumbosacral spine and the lower extremities is necessary to exclude obvious uropathy and neuropathy. Uroflow with post-void residual evaluates the emptying ability, while an upper urinary tract ultrasound screens for secondary anatomical changes. A voiding diary provides information about storage function and incontinence frequency, while a pad test can help to quantify the urine loss.

In the case of resistance to initial treatment, or in the case of former failed treatment, re-evaluation is warranted and further video-urodynamic studies may be considered. Sometimes, there are minor, underlying, urological or neurological problems, which can only be suspected using video-urodynamics.

In the case of anatomical problems, such as urethral valve problems, syringocoeles, congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane (COPUM) or Moormann's ring, it may be necessary to perform further cystoscopy with treatment. If neuropathic disease is suspected, MRI of the lumbosacral spine and medulla can help to exclude tethered cord, lipoma or other rare conditions.

Psychological screening may be useful for children or families with major psychological problems associated with the voiding dysfunction.

11.4 Treatment

Treatment of voiding dysfunction consists of lower urinary tract rehabilitation, mostly referred to as urotherapy. Urotherapy means non-surgical, non-pharmacological, treatment of LUT function. It is a very broad therapy field, incorporating many treatments used by urotherapists and other healthcare professionals (11). Urotherapy can be divided into standard therapy and specific interventions.

11.4.1 ***Standard therapy***

Standard urotherapy is defined as non-surgical, non-pharmacological, treatment for LUT malfunction. It includes the following components:

- Information and demystification, which includes explanation about normal LUT function and how a particular child deviates from normal function.
- Instruction about what to do about the problem, i.e. regular voiding habits, sound voiding posture, avoiding holding manoeuvres, etc.
- Lifestyle advice, regarding fluid intake, prevention of constipation, etc.
- Registration of symptoms and voiding habits using bladder diaries or frequency-volume charts
- Support and encouragement via regular follow-up by the caregiver.

A success rate of 80% has been described for urotherapy programmes, independent of the components of the programme. However, the evidence level is low as most studies of urotherapy programmes are retrospective and non-controlled.

11.4.2 ***Specific interventions***

As well as urotherapy, there are some specific interventions, including physiotherapy (e.g. pelvic floor exercises), biofeedback, alarm therapy and neurostimulation. Although good results with these treatment modalities have been reported, there have been no randomised controlled treatment trials (RCTs), so that the level of evidence is low (11-15).

In some cases, pharmacotherapy may be added. Antispasmodics and anticholinergics have been shown to be effective, though the level of evidence was low. More recently, a few RCTs have been published. One trial on tolterodine showed safety but not efficacy (16), while another RCT on propiverine showed both safety and efficacy (17) (LE: 1). The difference in results is probably due to study design.
Despite the low level of evidence for the use of anticholinergics and antimuscarinics, their use is recommended (GR: B) because of the large number of studies reporting a positive effect on OAB symptoms.

Although alpha-blocking agents are used occasionally, an RCT showed no benefit (18). Botulinum toxin injection seems promising, but can only be used off-label (19).

11.5 References

1. Neveus T, von Gontard A, Hoebeke P, et al. The standardization of terminology of lower urinary tract function in children and adolescents: report from the Standardisation Committee of the International Children's Continence Society. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):314-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753432

2. Hellström AL, Hanson E, Hansson S, et al. Micturition habits and incontinence in 7-year-old Swedish school entrants. Eur J Pediatr1990 Mar;149(6):434-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2332015
3. Bakker E, van Sprundel M, van der Auwera JC, et al. Voiding habits and wetting in a population of 4,332 Belgian schoolchildren aged between 10 and 14 years. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2002;36(5): 354-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12487740
4. Söderstrom U, Hoelcke M, Alenius L, et al. Urinary and faecal incontinence: a population-based study. Acta Paediatr 2004 Mar;93(3):386-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15124844
5. Sureshkumar P, Jones M, Cumming R, et al. A population based study of 2,856 school-age children with urinary incontinence. J Urol 2009 Feb;181(2):808-15; discussion 815-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19110268
6. Sureshkumar P, Craig JC, Roy LP, et al. Daytime urinary incontinence in primary school children: a population-based survey. J Pediatr 2000 Dec;137(6):814-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11113838
7. Franco I. Overactive bladder in children. Part 1: Pathophysiology. J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3 Pt 1):761-8; discussion 768.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17631323
8. Hellstrom AL, Hanson E, Hansson S, et al. Micturition habits and incontinence in 7-year-old Swedish school entrants. Eur J Pediatr 1990 Mar;149(6):434-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2332015
9. Akbal C, Genc Y, Burgu B, et al. Dysfunctional voiding and incontinence scoring system: quantitative evaluation of incontinence symptoms in pediatric population. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):969-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711352
10. Farhat W, Bägli DJ, Capolicchio G, et al. The dysfunctional voiding scoring system: quantitative standardization of dysfunctional voiding symptoms in children. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):1011-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958730
11. Hellstrom AL. Urotherapy in children with dysfunctional bladder. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 1992;141:106-7. [no abstract avaialable]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1609245
12. Vijverberg MA, Elzinga-Plomp A, Messer AP, et al. Bladder rehabilitation, the effect of a cognitive training programme on urge incontinence. Eur Urol 1997;31(1):68-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9032538
13. De Paepe H, Hoebeke P, Renson C, Van Laecke E, et al. Pelvic-floor therapy in girls with recurrent urinary tract infections and dysfunctional voiding. Br J Urol 1998 May;81(Suppl 3):109-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634033
14. De Paepe H, Renson C, Van Laecke E, et al. Pelvic-floor therapy and toilet training in young children with dysfunctional voiding and obstipation. BJU Int 2000 May;85(7):889-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10792172
15. Bower WF, Yeung CK. A review of non-invasive electro neuromodulation as an intervention for nonneurogenic bladder dysfunction in children. Neurourol Urodyn 2004;23(1):63-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14694460
16. Nijman RJ, Borgstein NG, Ellsworth P, et al. Tolterodine treatment for children with symptoms of urinary urge incontinence suggestive of detrusor overactivity: results from 2 randomized, placebo controlled trials. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1334-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758796
17. Marschall-Kehrel D, Feustel C, Persson de Geeter C, et al. Treatment with propiverine in children suffering from nonneurogenic overactive bladder and urinary incontinence: results of a randomized placebo-controlled phase 3 clinical trial. Eur Urol 2009 Mar;55(3):729-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502028
18. Kramer SA, Rathbun SR, Elkins D, et al. Double-blind placebo controlled study of alpha-adrenergic receptor antagonists (doxazosin) for treatment of voiding dysfunction in the pediatric population. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2121-4; discussion 2124.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879863
19. Hoebeke P, De Caestecker K, Vande Walle J, et al. The effect of botulinum-A toxin in incontinent children with therapy resistant overactive detrusor. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):328-30; discussion 330-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753434

12. MONOSYMPTOMATIC ENURESIS

12.1 Background

Enuresis is synonymous to intermittent nocturnal incontinence. It is a frequent symptom in children. With a prevalence of 5-10% at 7 years of age, it is one of the most prevalent conditions in childhood. With a spontaneous yearly cure rate of 15%, it is considered relatively benign (1,2). Nocturnal enuresis is considered primary when a child has not yet had a prolonged period of being dry. The term "secondary nocturnal enuresis" is used when a child or adult begins wetting again after having stayed dry. In most cases of secondary nocturnal enuresis the causes are either organic or stem from a psychologic problem.

However, 7 out of 100 children wetting the bed at age 7 will take this condition into adulthood. As it is a stressful condition, which puts a high psychological burden on children resulting in low self-esteem, treatment is advised from the age of 6-7 years onwards. Treatment is unnecessary in younger children in whom spontaneous cure is likely. The child's mental status, family expectations, social issues and cultural background need to be considered before treatment can be started.

12.2 Definition

Enuresis is the condition describing the symptom of incontinence during night. Any wetting during sleep above the age of 5 years is enuresis. However, most importantly, there is a single symptom only. Children with other LUT symptoms and enuresis are said to have **non-monosymptomatic enuresis**. Thorough history-taking, excluding any other daytime symptoms, is mandatory before diagnosing **monosymptomatic enuresis**. Any associated urinary tract symptoms make the condition a '**daytime LUT condition**' (3).

The condition is described as 'primary' when the symptom has always existed and the patient has not been dry for a period longer than 6 months. The condition is described as 'secondary', when there has been a symptom-free interval of 6 months. Genetically, enuresis is a complex and heterogeneous disorder. Loci have been described on chromosomes 12, 13 and 22 (3).

Three factors play an important pathophysiological role:

- high night-time urine output;
- night-time low bladder capacity or increased detrusor activity;
- arousal disorder.

Due to an imbalance between night-time urine output and night-time bladder capacity, the bladder can become easily full at night and the child will either wake up to empty the bladder or will void during sleep if there is a lack of arousal from sleep (1-3).

12.3 Diagnosis

The diagnosis is obtained by history-taking. In a patient with monosymptomatic enuresis, no further investigations are needed. A voiding diary, which records daytime bladder function and night-time urine output, will help to guide the treatment. An estimate of night-time urine production can be obtained by weighing diapers (nappies) in the morning and adding the volume of the morning void. Measuring the daytime bladder capacity gives an estimate of bladder capacity compared to normal values for age (4).

In most children, bedwetting is a familial problem, with most affected children found to have a history of bedwetting within the family.

A urinary dipstick may help differentiate between true enuresis resulting from polyuria due to insispidis diabetis.

12.4 Treatment

Before using alarm treatment or medication, simple therapeutic interventions should be considered.

*12.4.1 **Supportive treatment measures***

Explaining the condition to the child and his parents helps to demystify the problem. Eating and drinking habits should be reviewed, stressing normal fluid intake during the day and reducing fluid intake in the hours before sleep. Keeping a chart depicting wet and dry nights has been shown to be successful.

Counselling, provision of information, positive reinforcement, and increasing (and supporting) motivation of the child should be introduced first. There is a high level of evidence to show that supportive treatment is more successful than doing nothing, although the cure rate is not significantly high. However, supportive therapy as an initial management carries a high grade of recommendation (4).

Supportive measures have limited success when used alone, they should be used in conjunction with other treatment modalities, of which pharmacological and alarm treatment are the two most important.

*12.4.2 **Alarm treatment***

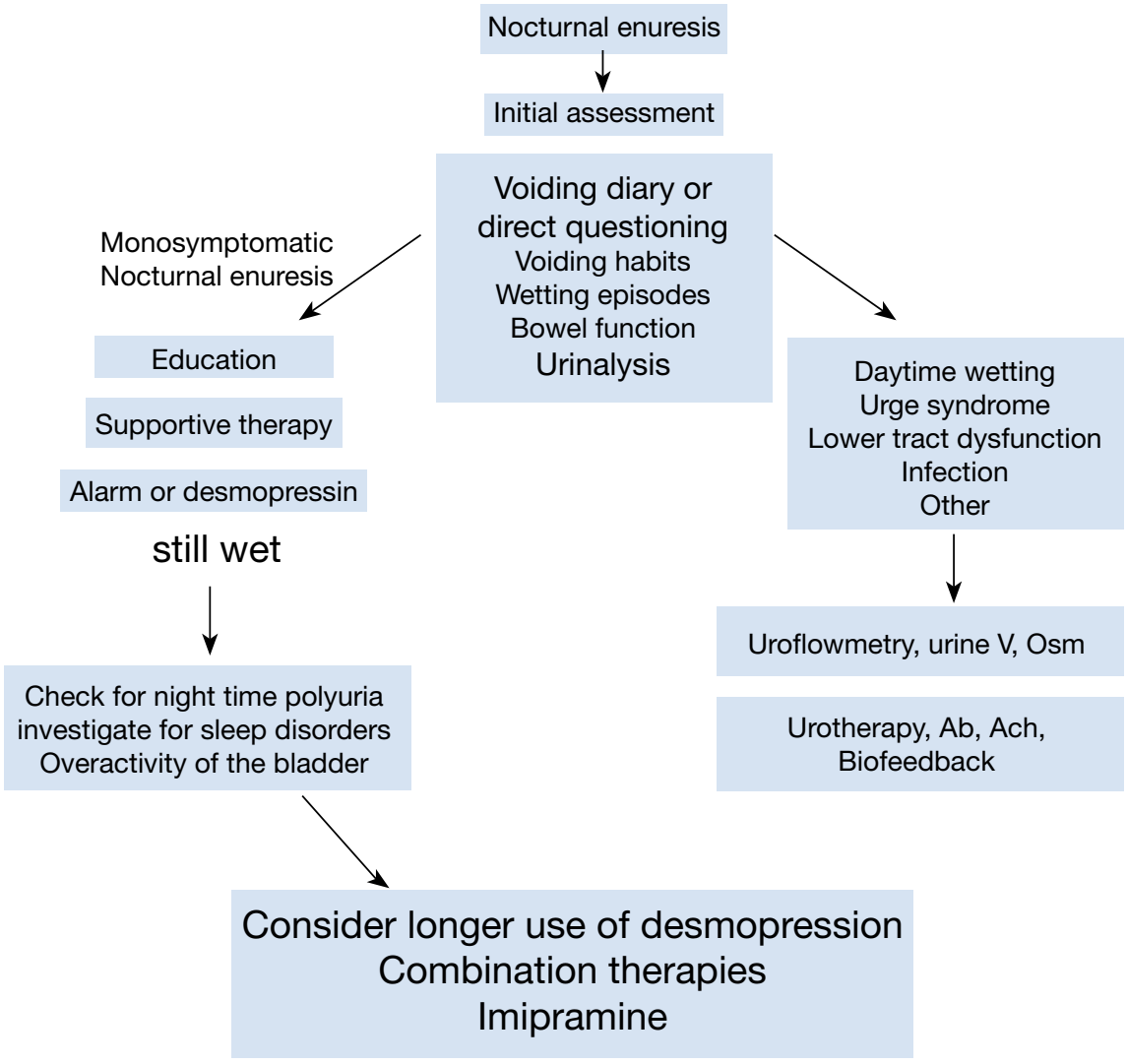
Alarm treatment is the best form for arousal disorder (LE: 1; GR: A). Initial success rates of 80% are realistic,

with low relapse rates, especially when night-time diuresis is not too high and bladder capacity is not too low (5).

12.4.3 ***Medication***

In the case of high night-time diuresis, success rates of 70% can be obtained with desmopressin (DDAVP), either as tablets, 200-400 µg, or as sublingual desmopressin oral lyophilisate, 120-240 µg. A nasal spray is no longer recommended due to an increased risk of overdose (6,7) (LE: 1; GR: A). However, relapse rates are high after desmopressin discontinuation (4).
In the case of small bladder capacity, treatment with antispasmodics or anticholinergics is possible (4). However, when these medications are necessary, the condition is no longer considered to be mono-symptomatic.
Imipramine, which has been popular for treatment of enuresis, achieves only a moderate response rate of 50% and has a high relapse rate. Furthermore, cardiotoxicity and death with overdose are described. Its use should therefore be discouraged (8) (LE: 1;GR: C).

Figure 2: Assessment and treatment of nocturnal enuresis



12.5 References

1. Lackgren G, Hjalmas K, van Gool J, et al. Nocturnal enuresis: a suggestion for a European treatment strategy. Acta Paediatr 1999 Jun;88(6):679-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10419258
2. Neveus T, von Gontard A, Hoebeke P, et al. The standardization of terminology of lower urinary tract function in children and adolescents: report from the Standardisation Committee of the International Children's Continence Society. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):314-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753432

3. Neveus T, Lackgren G, Tuvemo T, et al. Enuresis-background and treatment. Scand J Urol Nephrol Suppl 2000;206:1-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11196246
4. Hjalmas K, Arnold T, Bower W, et al. Nocturnal enuresis: an international evidence based management strategy. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 2):2545-61. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15118418
5. Glazener CM, Evans JH, Peto RE. Alarm interventions for nocturnal enuresis in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Apr;(2):CD002911.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15846643
6. Dehoorne JL, Raes AM, van Laecke E, et al. Desmopressin toxicity due to prolonged half-life in 18 patients with nocturnal enuresis. J Urol 2006 Aug;176(2):754-7; discussion 757-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813936
7. Glazener CMA, Evans JH. Desmopressin for nocturnal enuresis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(3):CD002112.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12137645
8. Glazener CMA, Evans JHC, Peto R.Tricyclic and related drugs for nocturnal enuresis in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2000;(2):CD002117.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12917922

13. MANAGEMENT OF NEUROGENIC BLADDER IN CHILDREN

13.1 Background

Neurogenic detrusor-sphincter dysfunction (NDSD) can develop as a result of a lesion at any level in the nervous system. This condition contributes to various forms of lower urinary tract dysfunction, which may lead to incontinence, UTIs, VUR, and renal scarring. Surgery may be required to establish adequate bladder drainage. If not managed properly, NDSD can potentially cause renal failure, requiring dialysis or transplantation.

The management of neurogenic bladder sphincter dysfunction in children has undergone major changes over the years. Although nappies (diapers), permanent catheters, external appliances, Crede's manoeuvre and various forms of urinary diversion have been acceptable treatment methods, these are now reserved for only a small number of resistant patients. The introduction of clean intermittent catheterisation (IC) has revolutionised the management of children with neurogenic bladder. Not only has it made conservative management a very successful treatment option, but it has also made surgical creation of continent reservoirs a very effective treatment alternative, with a good outcome for quality of life and kidney protection (1-3).

Neurogenic bladder in children with myelodysplasia presents with various patterns of detrusor-sphincter dysfunction within a wide range of severity. About 15% of neonates with myelodysplasia have no signs of neurourological dysfunction at birth. However, there is a high chance of progressive changes in the dynamics of neurological lesions with time. Even babies with normal neurourological function at birth have a one in three risk of developing either detrusor sphincter dyssynergia or denervation by the time they reach puberty. At birth, the majority of patients have normal upper urinary tracts, but nearly 60% of them develop upper tract deterioration due to infections, bladder changes and reflux (4-7).

As our understanding of urodynamic studies has evolved, it has allowed us to understand the nature and severity of problems and manage these patients in a more rational and individualised manner. Despite the remarkable changes of the last quarter of the 20th century, the main goals of treatment have remained the same, i.e. prevention of urinary tract deterioration and achievement of continence at an appropriate age.

13.2 Definition

The most common presentation is at birth with myelodysplasia. The term myelodysplasia includes a group of developmental anomalies that result from defects in neural tube closure. Lesions may include spina bifida occulta, meningocele, lipomyelomeningocele, or myelomeningocele. Myelomeningocele is by far the most common defect seen and the most detrimental. Traumatic and neoplastic spinal lesions of the cord are less frequent in children. Additionally, different growth rates between the vertebral bodies and the elongating spinal

cord can introduce a dynamic factor to the lesion. Scar tissue surrounding the cord at the site of meningocele closure can tether the cord during growth.

In occult myelodysplasia, the lesions are not overt and often occur with no obvious signs of neurological lesion. In nearly 90% of patients, however, a cutaneous abnormality overlies the lower spine, and this condition can easily be detected by simple inspection of the lower back (8).

Total or partial sacral agenesis is a rare congenital anomaly that involves absence of part or all of one or more sacral vertebrae. This anomaly can be part of the caudal regression syndrome, and must be considered in any child presenting with anorectal malformation (ARM). Patients with cerebral palsy may also present with varying degrees of voiding dysfunction, usually in the form of uninhibited bladder contractions (often due to spasticity of the pelvic floor and sphincter complex) and wetting.

Bladder sphincter dysfunction is poorly correlated with the type and spinal level of the neurological lesion.

13.3 Classification

The purpose of any classification system is to facilitate the understanding and management of the underlying pathology. There are various systems of classification of neurogenic bladder.

Most systems of classification were formulated primarily to describe those types of dysfunction secondary to neurological disease or injury. Such systems are based on the localisation of the neurological lesion and the findings of the neurourological examination. These classifications have been of more value in adults, in whom neurogenic lesions are usually due to trauma and are more readily identifiable.

In children, the spinal level and extent of congenital lesion are poorly correlated with the clinical outcome. Urodynamic and functional classifications have therefore been more practical for defining the extent of the pathology and planning treatment in children.

The bladder and sphincter are two units working in harmony to make a single functional unit. The initial approach should be to evaluate the state of each unit and define the pattern of bladder dysfunction. According to the nature of the neurological deficit, the bladder and sphincter may be in either an overactive or inactive state:

- the bladder may be overactive with increased contractions, and low capacity and compliance, or inactive with no effective contractions;
- the outlet (urethra and sphincter) may be independently overactive causing functional obstruction, or paralysed with no resistance to urinary flow;
- these conditions may present in different combinations.

This is mainly a classification based on urodynamic findings. The understanding of the pathophysiology of disorders is essential to plan a rational treatment plan for each individual patient. In meningomyelocele, most patients will present with hyper-reflexive detrusor and dyssynergic sphincter, which is a dangerous combination as pressure is built up and the upper tract is threatened.

13.4 Urodynamic studies

Urodynamic studies enable the clinician to observe lower urinary tract function and its deviations from normal. Since the treatment plan mainly depends upon a good understanding of the underlying problem in the lower urinary tract, a well-performed urodynamic study is mandatory in the evaluation of each child with neurogenic bladder.

As the bony level often does not correspond with the neurological defect present, and as the effect of the lesion on bladder function cannot be entirely determined by radiographic studies or physical examination, the information gained from a urodynamic study is priceless. A urodynamic study also provides the clinician with information about the response of the vesicourethral unit to therapy, as demonstrated by improvement or deterioration in follow-up.

It is important to determine several urodynamic parameters, including:

- the bladder capacity;
- the intravesical filling pressure;
- the intravesical pressure at the moment of urethral leakage;
- the presence or absence of reflex detrusor activity;

- the competence of the internal and external sphincteric mechanisms;
- the degree of coordination of the detrusor and sphincteric mechanisms;
- the voiding pattern;
- the post-voiding residual urine volume.

13.4.1 ***Method of urodynamic study***

There is very little comparative data evaluating the complexity and invasiveness of urodynamic testing for neurogenic bladders in children.

13.4.2 ***Uroflowmetry***

As uroflowmetry is the least invasive of all urodynamic tests, it can be used as an initial screening tool. It provides an objective way of assessing the efficiency of voiding, and, together with an ultrasonographic examination, the residual urine volume can also be determined. Unlike in children with non-neurogenic voiding dysfunction, uroflowmetry will rarely be used as a single investigational tool in children with neurogenic bladders, as it does not provide information for bladder storage, yet it may be very practical to monitor emptying in the follow-up. The main limitation of a urodynamic study is the need for the child to be old enough to follow instructions and void on request.

The recording of pelvic floor or abdominal skeletal muscle activity by electromyography (EMG) during uroflowmetry can be used to evaluate coordination between detrusor and the sphincter. As it is a non-invasive test, combined uroflowmetry and EMG may be very useful in evaluating sphincter activity during voiding (9-12) (LE: 3; GR: C).

13.4.3 ***Cystometry***

Although moderately invasive and dependent on a cooperative child, cystometry in children provides valuable information regarding detrusor contractility and compliance. The amount of information obtained from each study is related to the degree of interest and care given to the test.

It is important to be aware of the alterations in filling and emptying detrusor pressures as the infusion rates change during cystometry. Slow fill cystometry (filling rate < 10 mL/min) is recommended by the ICCS for use in children (13). However, it has been suggested that the infusion rate should be set according to the child's predicted capacity, based on age and divided by 10 (14).

Several clinical studies using conventional artificial fill cystometry to evaluate neurogenic bladder in children have reported that conventional cystometry provides useful information for diagnosis and follow-up of children with neurogenic bladder (15-20). All the studies were retrospective clinical series and lacked comparison with natural fill cystometry, so that the grade of recommendation for an artificial cystometry in children with neurogenic bladder is not high (LE: 4). Additionally, there is evidence suggesting that natural bladder behaviour is altered during regular artificial filling cystometry (21,22).

However, conventional cystometry in infants is useful for predicting future deterioration. Urodynamic parameters, such as low capacity and compliance and high leak-point pressures, are poor prognostic factors for future deterioration. Resolution of reflux is less likely to happen in such bladders (15,20,22) (LE: 4).

During natural fill cystometry, the bladder is allowed to fill naturally and the bladder and abdominal pressures are recorded using microtransducer catheters. Theoretically, this allows investigation of bladder function in near-physiological conditions. Studies on natural fill cystometry in children report similar results to those of studies done in adults. Natural fill cystometry gives a lower detrusor pressure rise during filling, and lower voided volumes with higher voiding pressures. The incidence of bladder overactivity is higher with natural filling cystometry when compared with conventional artificial filling cystometry (21,23,24).

Although there are only a few studies on natural fill cystometry in children with neurogenic bladder, the results suggest that natural fill cystometry detects new findings compared with diagnoses delivered by conventional cystometry (21) (LE: 3). However, the comparison between natural fill and artificial fill cystometry has not been performed against a gold standard, making it difficult to conclude which study is a true reflection of natural bladder behaviour. Findings in the non-neurogenic adult population have questioned the reliability of natural fill cystometry, as natural fill cystometry has shown a high incidence of bladder overactivity in totally normal asymptomatic volunteers (25).

The main disadvantage of natural fill cystometry is that it is labour-intensive and time-consuming. Moreover,

because of the transurethral catheter used during this study, false-positive findings caused by the catheter are possible. Especially in children, the recording of events is difficult and there is an increased risk of artefacts, which makes interpretation of the huge amount of data even more difficult.

Natural fill cystometry remains a new technique in the paediatric population. More data need to be gathered in a standard way before it can be widely accepted (11).

13.5 Management

The medical care of children with myelodysplasia with a neurogenic bladder requires constant observation and adaptation to new problems. In the first years of life, the kidneys are highly susceptible to back-pressure and infection. During this period, the emphasis is on documenting the pattern of NDSD, and assessing the potential for functional obstruction and VUR.

13.5.1 ***Investigations***

An abdominal ultrasound obtained as soon as possible after birth will detect hydronephrosis or other upper genitourinary tract pathology. Following ultrasound, a voiding cystourethrogram should be obtained to evaluate the lower urinary tract. Measurement of residual urine during both ultrasound and cystography should also be done. These studies provide a baseline for the appearance of the upper and lower urinary tracts, can facilitate the diagnosis of hydronephrosis or VUR, and can help identify children at risk for upper genitourinary tract deterioration and impairment of renal function.

A urodynamic evaluation can be done after some weeks, and needs to be repeated at regular intervals, in combination with evaluation of the upper tracts (26-28) (LE: 3; GR: B).

13.5.2 ***Early management with intermittent catheterisation***

Overwhelming experience gained over the years with early management of neurogenic bladder in infants has led to a consensus that children do not have upper tract deterioration when managed early with IC and anticholinergic medication. IC should be started soon after birth in all babies, especially in those with signs of possible outlet obstruction (26,29-37) (LE: 2; GR: B).

The early initiation of IC in the newborn period makes it easier for parents to master the procedure and for children to accept it as they grow older (38,39).

Early management results in fewer upper tract changes, but also better bladder protection and lower incontinence rates. It has been suggested that increased bladder pressures due to detrusor sphincter dyssynergia cause secondary changes of the bladder wall. These fibroproliferative changes in the bladder wall may cause further loss of elasticity and compliance, resulting in a small non-compliant bladder with progressively elevated pressures.

Early institution of IC and anticholinergic drugs may prevent this in some patients (2,37,40) (LE: 3). The retrospective evaluation of patients has also shown that significantly fewer augmentations were required in patients with an early start of IC (33,34) (LE: 4).

13.5.3 ***Medical therapy***

At present, oxybutynin, tolterodine, trospium and propiverine are the most frequently used drugs, with oxybutynin being the most studied.

Two different forms of tolterodine have been investigated in children with neurogenic bladder. The extended release formulation of tolterodine has been found to be as efficient as the instant release form, with the advantages of being single dosage and less expensive. Although the clinical outcome is encouraging, the level of evidence is low for anticholinergic medication because there are no controlled studies (40,41-47) (LE: 3; GR: B).

The use of medication to facilitate emptying in children with neurogenic bladder has not been well studied in the literature. A few studies investigating the use of α-adrenergic blockade in children with neurogenic bladder have reported a good response rate, but the studies lacked controls, and long-term follow-up is warranted (48) (LE: 4; GR: C).

13.5.3.1 Botulinum toxin injections

In neurogenic bladders that are refractory to anticholinergics, injection of botulinum toxin into the detrusor

muscle is a novel treatment alternative. Initial promising results in adults have initiated its use in children. It has been shown that this treatment has beneficial effects on clinical and urodynamic variables. Complete continence was achieved in 65-87% of patients; in most studies mean maximum detrusor pressure was reduced to at least 40 cmH_2O and bladder compliance was increased to at least 20 cmH_2O/mL. However these findings are limited by the lack of controlled trials and the fact that most studies involved small numbers of patients (49-54).

Botulinum toxin seems to be more effective in bladders with obvious detrusor muscle overactivity, whereas non-compliant bladders without obvious contractions are unlikely to respond (55-60).

The most commonly used dose of botulinum toxin is 10 U/kg with a maximum dose of 300 U/kg. No dose study has been performed in children and there is no evidence regarding the optimal dose. Currently, it is unclear how many times this treatment can be repeated, although repetitive treatment has been found to be safe in adults (61-64).

Injection of botulinum toxin in therapy-resistant bladders appears to be an effective and safe treatment alternative (LE: 3; GR: C). Urethral sphincter botulinum-A toxin injection has been shown to be effective in decreasing urethral resistance and improve voiding. The evidence is still too low to recommend its routine use in decreasing outlet resistance, but it could be considered as an alternative in refractory cases (65-67).

13.5.4 ***Management of bowel incontinence***

Children with neurogenic bladder have disturbances of bowel function as well as urinary function. Bowel incontinence in these children is frequently unpredictable. It is related to the turnover rate of faecal material in the anal area after evacuation, the degree of intactness of sacral cord sensation and motor function, and reflex reactivity of the external anal sphincter (68).

Bowel incontinence is managed most commonly with mild laxatives, such as mineral oil, combined with enemas to facilitate removal of bowel contents. A regular and efficient bowel emptying regimen is often necessary to maintain faecal continence, and may have to be started at a very young age. With antegrade or retrograde enemas, most of these children will have decreased constipation problems and may attain some degree of faecal continence (69-73) (LE: 3).

Biofeedback training programmes to strengthen the external anal sphincter have not been shown to be more effective than a conventional bowel management programme in achieving faecal continence (74). Electrostimulation of the bowel may also offer a variable improvement in some patients (75) (LE: 3; GR: C).

13.5.5 ***Urinary tract infection***

Urinary tract infections are common in children with neurogenic bladders. In the absence of reflux, UTIs should be treated symptomatically. There is strong evidence for not prescribing antibiotics to patients who have bacteriuria but no clinical symptoms. Although bacteriuria is seen in more than half of children on clean IC, patients who are asymptomatic do not need treatment (76-78) (LE: 3). Patients with VUR should usually be placed on prophylactic antibiotics to reduce the incidence of pyelonephritis, which can potentially lead to renal damage (79,80).

13.5.6 ***Sexuality***

Sexuality, while not an issue in childhood, becomes progressively more important as the patient gets older. This issue has historically been overlooked in individuals with myelodysplasia. However, patients with myelodysplasia do have sexual encounters. Studies indicate that at least 15-20% of males are capable of fathering children and 70% of females can conceive and carry a pregnancy to term. It is therefore important to counsel patients about sexual development in early adolescence.

13.5.7 ***Bladder augmentation***

Children with a good response to anticholinergic treatment and an overactive sphincter may be continent between catheterisations. Bladder pressure and development of the upper urinary tract will determine whether additional treatment is necessary.

Therapy-resistant overactivity of the detrusor, or small capacity and poor compliance, will usually need to be treated by bladder augmentation. A simple bladder augmentation using intestine may be carried out if there is any bladder tissue, a competent sphincter and/or bladder neck, and a urethra that can be catheterised. Stomach is rarely used as an augmenting patch because of the associated complications (81). Ileal or colonic

patches are frequently used for augmenting the bladder, with either intestinal segment appearing to be equally useful. Despite some advantages (e.g. avoiding mucus, decreased malignancy rate and fewer complications), alternative urothelium-preserving techniques, such as autoaugmentation and seromuscular cystoplasty, have not proven to be as successful as standard augmentation with intestine (82,83).

A range of applications of engineered bladder tissues are at different stages of development. There have been a few in pre-clinical trials; recent progress suggests that engineered bladder tissues may have an expanded clinical application in the future (84).

13.5.8 ***Bladder outlet procedures***

Children with detrusor overactivity, but with underactive sphincters, will be better for protecting their upper tracts, although they will be severely incontinent. Initial treatment is IC (as it might reduce the degree of incontinence and offers much better control over UTIs) with anticholinergic drugs. At a later age, the outlet resistance will be increased in order to render them continent. No medical treatment available has been validated to increase bladder outlet resistance. Alpha-adrenergic receptor stimulation of the bladder neck has not been very effective (85-90).

When conservative measures fail, surgical procedures need to be considered for maintaining continence. Although a simple augmentation is sufficient for most low-capacity, high-pressure bladders, augmentation with additional bladder outlet procedures is required when both the bladder and outlet are deficient. Bladder outlet procedures include bladder neck reconstruction or other forms of urethral reconstruction.

Various procedures can be used on the bladder neck to increase resistance, but all of them may complicate transurethral catheterisation. Augmentation with surgical closure of the bladder neck may be required primarily, or as a secondary procedure in certain rare clinical situations. In this situation, a continent stoma will be required. However, most surgeons prefer to leave the bladder neck and urethra patent as a safety precaution.

13.5.9 ***Continent stoma***

Augmentation with an additional continent stoma is utilised primarily after failure of previous bladder outlet surgery. It is also advisable when an inability to catheterise transurethrally is likely. An abdominal wall continent stoma may be particularly beneficial to wheelchair-bound spina bifida patients, who often have difficulty with urethral catheterisation or are dependent on others to catheterise the bladder. For continence with augmentation and an abdominal wall stoma, an adequate bladder outlet mechanism is essential to maintain continence.

13.5.10 ***Total bladder replacement***

Total bladder replacement in anticipation of normal voiding in children is very rare, as there are infrequent indications for a total cystectomy, with preservation of the bladder outlet and a competent urethral sphincter. This type of bladder replacement is much more common in adult urological reconstruction. Any type of major bladder and bladder outlet construction should be performed in centres with sufficient experience of the surgical technique, and with experienced healthcare personnel to carry out post-operative follow-up (91-93).

13.5.11 ***Lifelong follow-up of neurogenic bladder patients***

Neurogenic bladder patients require lifelong supervision, and the monitoring of renal function is extremely important. Periodic investigation of upper tract changes, renal function and bladder status is mandatory. Repeat urodynamic tests are therefore needed more frequently (every year) in younger children and less frequently in older children. From the urological viewpoint, a repeat urodynamic study is warranted when the patient has a change in symptoms or undergoes any neurosurgical procedure. In the case of any apparent changes in the upper and lower urinary tract, or changes in neurological symptoms, a more detailed examination including urodynamics and spinal magnetic resonance imaging is indicated.
Renal failure can progress slowly or occur with startling speed in these children. Patients who have undergone reconstructive procedures using intestine should be regularly followed up for complications such as infection, stone formation, reservoir rupture, metabolic changes, and malignancy (93).

The risk of malignancy in enteric augmentations has been reported to be higher than expected, and the risk increases with length of follow-up. Malignancy has been found to occur in 0.6-2.8% of patients during median follow-up of 13-21 years (94-99). In a study including 153 patients with a median follow-up time of 28 years (95), malignancy was found in 4.5%. The malignancy seemed to be associated with coexisting carcinogenic stimuli or with the inherent risk present with bladder exstrophy. Although there is poor data on follow-up schemes; after a reasonable time of follow up (f.i: 10 years), an annual diagnostic work-up including cystoscopy should be considered.

13.6 References

1. Bauer SB. The management of the myelodysplastic child: a paradigm shift. BJU Int 2003 Oct;92(Suppl 1):23-8. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12969005
2. Retik AB, Perlmutter AD, Gross RE. Cutaneous ureteroileostomy in children. N Eng J Med 1967 Aug;277(5):217-22. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4226464
3. Lapides J, Diokno AC, Silber SJ, et al. Clean, intermittent self-catheterization in the treatment of urinary tract disease. 1972. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 2):1131-3; discussion 1134.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905887
4. Bauer SB. The management of spina bifida from birth onwards. In: Whitaker RH, Woodard JR, eds. Paediatric urology. London: Butterworths, 1985, pp. 87-112.
5. Bauer SB. Early evaluation and management of children with spina bifida. In: King LR (ed). Urologic surgery in neonates and young infants. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1988, pp. 252-264.
6. Wilcock AR, Emery JL. Deformities of the renal tract in children with meningomyelocele and hydrocephalus, compared with those of children showing no such deformities. Br J Urol 1970 Apr;42(2):152-7. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5420153
7. Hunt GM, Whitaker RH. The pattern of congenital renal anomalies associated with neural-tube defects. Dev Med Child Neurol 1987 Feb;29(1):91-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3556803
8. Pierre-Kahn A, Zerah M, Renier D, et al. Congenital lumbosacral lipomas. Childs Nerv Syst. 1997;13(6):298-334; discussion 335.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9272285
9. Aoki H, Adachi M, Banya Y, et al. [Evaluation of neurogenic bladder in patients with spinal cord injury using a CMG.EMG study and CMG.UFM.EMG study.] Hinyokika Kiyo 1985 Jun;31(6):937-48. [article in Japanese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4061211
10. Casado JS, Virseda Chamorro M, Leva Vallejo M, Fernandez Lucas C, Aristizabal Agudelo JM, de la Fuente Trabado M. [Urodynamic assessment of the voiding phase in childhood.] Arch Esp Urol 2002 Mar;55(2):177-89. [article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12014050
11. Wen JG, Yeung CK, Djurhuus JC. Cystometry techniques in female infants and children. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000;11(2):103-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10805268
12. Bradley CS, Smith KE, Kreder KJ. Urodynamic evaluation of the bladder and pelvic floor. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 2008 Sep;37(3):539-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18793995
13. Norgaard JP, van Gool JD, Hjalmas K, et al. Standardization and definitions in lower urinary tract dysfunction in children. International Children's Continence Society. Br J Urol 1998 May;81(Suppl 3):1-16. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634012
14. Bauer SB. Pediatric urodynamics: lower tract. In: O'Donnell B, Koff SA, eds. *Pediatric urology*. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1998, pp. 125-151.
15. Tanikaze S, Sugita Y. [Cystometric examination for neurogenic bladder of neonates and infants.] Hinyokika Kiyo 1991 Nov;37(11):1403-5. [article in Japanese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1767767
16. Zoller G, Schoner W, Ringert RH. Pre-and postoperative urodynamic findings in children with tethered spinal cord syndrome. Eur Urol 1991;19(2):139-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2022217
17. Ghoniem GM, Roach MB, Lewis VH, et al. The value of leak pressure and bladder compliance in the urodynamic evaluation of meningomyelocele patients. J Urol 1990 Dec;144(6):1440-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2231938
18. Ghoniem GM, Shoukry MS, Hassouna ME. Detrusor properties in myelomeningocele patients: in vitro study. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):2193-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598568
19. Palmer LS, Richards I, Kaplan WE. Age related bladder capacity and bladder capacity growth in children with myelomeningocele. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 2):1261-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258190

20. Agarwal SK, McLorie GA, Grewal D, et al. Urodynamic correlates of resolution of reflux in meningomyelocele patients. J Urol 1997 Aug;158 (3 Pt 2):580-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224367
21. Zermann DH, Lindner H, Huschke T, et al. Diagnostic value of natural fill cystometry in neurogenic bladder in children. Eur Urol 1997;32(2):223-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286658
22. Webb RJ, Griffiths CJ, Ramsden PD, et al. Measurement of voiding pressures on ambulatory monitoring: comparison with conventional cystometry. Br J Urol 1990 Feb;65(2):152-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2317646
23. McInerney PD, Vanner TF, Harris SA, et al. Ambulatory urodynamics. Br J Urol 1991 Mar;67(3):272-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2021814
24. Yeung CK, Godley ML, Duffy PG, et al. Natural filling cystometry in infants and children. Br J Urol 1995 Apr;75(4):531-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7788266
25. Swithinbank LV, James M, Shepherd A, et al. Role of ambulatory urodynamic monitoring in clinical urological practice. Neurourol Urodyn 1999;18(3):215-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10338442
26. McGuire EJ, Woodside JR, Borden TA, et al. Prognostic value of urodynamic testing in myelodysplastic patients. 1981. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 2):1049-53. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11905876
27. Sillen U, Hansson E, Hermansson G, et al. Development of the urodynamic pattern in infants with myelomeningocele. Br J Urol 1996 Oct;78(4):596-601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8944517
28. Tarcan T, Bauer S, Olmedo E, et al. Long-term follow-up of newborns with myelodysplasia and normal urodynamic findings: is follow-up necessary? J Urol 2001 Feb;165(2):564-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176436
29. Kasabian NG, Bauer SB, Dyro FM, et al. The prophylactic value of clean intermittent catheterization and anticholinergic medication in newborns and infants with myelodysplasia at risk of developing urinary tract deterioration. Am J Dis Child 1992 Jul;146(7):840-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1496955
30. Wang SC, McGuire EJ, Bloom DA. Urethral dilatation in the management of urological complications of myelodysplasia. J Urol 1989 Oct;142(4):1054-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2795730
31. Lin-Dyken DC, Wolraich ML, Hawtrey CE, et al. Follow-up of clean intermittent catheterization for children with neurogenic bladders. Urology 1992;40(6):525-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1466106
32. Kaufman AM, Ritchey ML, Roberts AC, et al. Decreased bladder compliance in patients with myelomeningocele treated with radiological observation. J Urol 1996 Dec;156(6):2031-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8965337
33. Wu HY, Baskin LS, Kogan BA. Neurogenic bladder dysfunction due to myelomeningocele: neonatal versus childhood treatment. J Urol 1997 Jun;157(6):2295-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146656
34. Kaefer M, Pabby A, Kelly M, et al. Improved bladder function after prophylactic treatment of the high risk neurogenic bladder in newborns with myelomeningocele. J Urol 1999 Sep;162 (3 Pt 2):1068-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458433
35. van Gool JD, Dik P, de Jong TP. Bladder-sphincter dysfunction in myelomeningocele. Eur J Pediatr 2001 Jul;160(7):414-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11475578
36. Bauer SB. The argument for early assessment and treatment of infants with spina bifida. Dialogues in Pediatric Urology 2000;23:2-3.
37. Park JM. Early reduction of mechanical load of the bladder improves compliance: experimental and clinical observations. Dialogues in Pediatric Urology 2000;23:6-7.
38. Lindehall B, Moller A, Hjalmas K, et al. Long-term intermittent catheterization: the experience of teenagers and young adults with myelomeningocele. J Urol 1994 Jul;152(1):187-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8201663
39. Joseph DB, Bauer SB, Colodny AH, et al. Clean intermittent catheterization in infants with neurogenic bladder. Pediatrics 1989 Jul;84(1):72-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2740179

40. Baskin LS, Kogan BA, Benard F. Treatment of infants with neurogenic bladder dysfunction using anticholinergic drugs and intermittent catheterization. Br J Urol 1990 Nov;66(5):532-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249125
41. Connor JP, Betrus G, Fleming P, et al. Early cystometrograms can predict the response to intravesical instillation of oxybutynin chloride in myelomeningocele patients. J Urol 1994 Apr;151(4):1045-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8126787
42. Goessl C, Knispel HH, Fiedler U, et al. Urodynamic effects of oral oxybutynin chloride in children with myelomeningocele and detrusor hyperreflexia. Urology 1998 Jan;51(1):94-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457296
43. Haferkamp A, Staehler G, Gerner HJ, et al. Dosage escalation of intravesical oxybutynin in the treatment of neurogenic bladder patients. Spinal Cord 2000 Apr;38(4):250-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10822396
44. Ferrara P, D'Aleo CM, Tarquini E, et al. Side-effects of oral or intravesical oxybutynin chloride in children with spina bifida. BJU Int 2001 May;87(7):674-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11350411
45. Ellsworth PI, Borgstein NG, Nijman RJ, et al. Use of tolterodine in children with neurogenic detrusor overactivity: relationship between dose and urodynamic response. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4Pt2):1647-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148673
46. Mahanta K, Medhi B, Kaur B, et al. Comparative efficacy and safety of extended-release and instant-release tolterodine in children with neural tube defects having cystometric abnormalities. J Pediatr Urol 2008 Apr;4(2):118-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631906
47. Franco I. Overactive bladder in children. Part 2: Management. J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3Pt1):769-74; discussion 774. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17631332
48. Austin PF, Homsy YL, Masel JL, et al. Alpha-adrenergic blockade in children with neuropathic and nonneuropathic voiding dysfunction. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 2):1064-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458432
49. Schulte-Baukloh H, Knispel HH, Stolze T, et al. Repeated botulinum-A toxin injections in treatment of children with neurogenic detrusor overactivity. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):865-70; discussion 870. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230156
50. Game X, Mouracade P, Chartier-Kastler E, et al. Botulinum toxin-A (Botox) intradetrusor injections in children with neurogenic detrusor overactivity/neurogenic overactive bladder: A systematic literature review. J Pediatr Urol 2009 Jun;5(3):156-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19264554
51. Schulte-Baukloh H, Michael T, Stürzebecher B, et al. Botulinum-AToxin Detrusor Injection as a Novel Approach in theTreatment of Bladder Spasticity in Children with Neurogenic Bladder. Eur Urol 2003 Jul;44(1):139-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814690
52. Hoebeke P, De Caestecker K, Vande Walle J, et al. The effect of botulinum-A toxin in incontinent children with therapy resistant overactive detrusor. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):328-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753434
53. Mangera A, Andersson KE, Apostolidis A, et al. Contemporary Management of Lower Urinary Tract Disease With Botulinum Toxin A: A Systematic Review of Botox (OnabotulinumtoxinA) and Dysport (AbobotulinumtoxinA). Eur Urol 2011 Oct;60(4):784-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21782318
54. Deshpande AV, Sampang R, Smith GHH. Study of Botulinum Toxin A in Neurogenic Bladder Due to Spina Bifida in Children. ANZ J Surg 2010 Apr;80(4):250-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20575951
55. Smith CP, Somogyi GT, Chancellor MB. Emerging role of botulinum toxin in the treatment of neurogenic and non-neurogenic voiding dysfunction. Curr Urol Rep 2002 Oct;3(5):382-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12354347
56. Leippold T, Reitz A, Schurch B. Botulinum toxin as a new therapy option for voiding disorders: current state of the art. Eur Urol 2003 Aug;44(2):165-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12875934
57. Schulte-Baukloh H, Knispel HH, Michael T. Botulinum-A toxin in the treatment of neurogenic bladder in children. Paediatrics 2002 Aug;110(2 Pt 1):420-1. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12165609

58. Lusuardi L, Nader A, Koen M, et al. [Minimally invasive, safe treatment of the neurogenic bladder with botulinum-A-toxin in children with myelomeningocele.] Aktuelle Urol 2004 Feb;35(1):49-53. [article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14997415
59. Schröder A, Thüroff JW. New strategies for medical management of overactive bladder in children. Curr Opin Urol 2010 Jul;20(4):313-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21475074
60. Schurcha B, Corcos J. Botulinum toxin injections for paediatric incontinence. Curr Opin Urol 2005 Jul;15(4):264-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928517
61. Hoebeke P, De Caestecker K, Vande Walle J, et al. The effect of botulinum-A toxin in incontinent children with therapy resistant overactive detrusor. J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):328-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753434
62. Kajbafzadeh AM, Moosavi S, Tajik P, et al. Intravesical injection of botulinum toxin type A: management of neuropathic bladder and bowel dysfunction in children with myelomeningocele. Urology 2006 Nov;68(5):1091-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17113899
63. Akbar M, Abel R, Seyler TM, et al. Repeated botulinum-A toxin injections in the treatment of myelodysplastic children and patients with spinal cord injuries with neurogenic bladder dysfunction. BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):639-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17532858
64. DasGupta R, Murphy FL. Botulinum toxin in paediatric urology: a systematic literature review. Pediatr Surg Int 2009 Jan;25(1):19-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18953547
65. Mokhless I, Gaafar S, Fouda K, et al. Botulinum A toxin urethral sphincter injection in children with nonneurogenic neurogenic bladder. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4Pt2):1767-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945643
66. Mokhless I, Gaafar S, Fouda K, et al. Botulinum A toxin urethral sphincter injection in children with nonneurogenic neurogenic bladder. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 2):1767-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945643
67. Franco I, Landau-Dyer L, Isom-Batz G, et al. The use of botulinum toxin A injection for the management of external sphincter dyssynergia in neurologically normal children. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 2):1775-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707430
68. Younoszai MK. Stooling problems in patients with myelomeningocele. South Med J 1992 Jul;85(7):718-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1631686
69. Squire R, Kiely EM, Carr B, Ransley PG, Duffy PG. The clinical application of the Malone antegrade colonic enema. J Pediatr Surg 1993 Aug;28(8):1012-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8229586
70. Whitehead WE, Wald A, Norton NJ. Treatment options for fecal incontinence. Dis Colon Rectum 2001 Jan;44(1):131-42 ; discussion 142-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11805574
71. Krogh K, Kvitzau B, Jorgensen TM, et al. [Treatment of anal incontinence and constipation with transanal irrigation.] Ugeskr Laeger 1999 Jan;161(3):253-6. [Article in Danish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10025223
72. Van Savage JG, Yohannes P. Laparoscopic antegrade continence enema in situ appendix procedure for refractory constipation and overflow fecal incontinence in children with spina bifida. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):1084-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958747
73. Aksnes G, Diseth TH, Helseth A, et al. Appendicostomy for antegrade enema: effects on somatic and psychosocial functioning in children with myelomeningocele. Pediatrics 2002 Mar;109(3):484-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11875145
74. Loening-Baucke V, Desch L, Wolraich M. Biofeedback training for patients with myelomeningocele and fecal incontinence. Dev Med Child Neurol 1988 Dec;30(6):781-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3234607
75. Marshall DF, Boston VE. Altered bladder and bowel function following cutaneous electrical field stimulation in children with spina bifida-interim results of a randomized double-blind placebocontrolled trial. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1997 Dec;7(Suppl 1):41-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9497117

76. Hansson S, Caugant D, Jodal U, et al. Untreated asymptomatic bacteriuria in girls: I-Stability of urinary isolates. BMJ 1989 Apr;298(6677):853-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2497822
77. Hansson S, Jodal U, Lincoln K, et al. Untreated asymptomatic bacteriuria in girls: II - Effect of phenoxymethylpenicillin and erythromycin given for intercurrent infections. BMJ 1989 Apr;298(6677):856-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2497823
78. Hansson S, Jodal U, Noren L, et al. Untreated bacteriuria in asymptomatic girls with renal scarring. Pediatrics 1989 Dec;84(6):964-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2587151
79. Johnson HW, Anderson JD, Chambers GK, et al. A short-term study of nitrofurantoin prophylaxis in children managed with clean intermittent catheterization. Pediatrics 1994 May;93(5):752-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8165073
80. Schlager TA, Anderson S, Trudell J, et al. Nitrofurantoin prophylaxis for bacteriuria and urinary tract infection in children with neurogenic bladder on intermittent catheterization. J Pediatr 1998 Apr;132(4):704-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9580774
81. Nguyen DH, Mitchell ME. Gastric bladder reconstruction. Urol Clin North Am 1991 Nov;18(4):649-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1949398
82. Duel BP, Gonzalez R, Barthold JS. Alternative techniques for augmentation cystoplasty. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):998-1005.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474216
83. Bandi G, Al-Omar O, McLorie GA. Comparison of traditional enterocystoplasty and seromuscular colocystoplasty lined with urothelium. J Pediatr Urol 2007 Dec;3(6):484-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18947800
84. Atala A, Bauer SB, Soker S, et al. Tissue-engineered autologous bladders for patients needing cystoplasty. Lancet 2006 Apr;367(9518):1241-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16631879
85. Naglo AS. Continence training of children with neurogenic bladder and detrusor hyperactivity: effect of atropine. Scan J Urol Nephrol 1982;16(3):211-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7163785
86. Austin PF, Westney OL, Leng WW, et al. Advantages of rectus fascial slings for urinary incontinence in children with neuropathic bladders. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2369-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11398778
87. Guys JM, Fakhro A, Louis-Borrione C, et al. Endoscopic treatment of urinary incontinence: long-term evaluation of the results. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2389-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371983
88. Kassouf W, Capolicchio G, Bernardinucci G, et al. Collagen injection for treatment of urinary incontinence in children. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1666-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342951
89. Kryger JV, Leverson G, Gonzalez R. Long-term results of artificial urinary sphincters in children are independent of age at implantation. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2377-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371981
90. Holmes NM, Kogan BA, Baskin LS. Placement of artificial urinary sphincter in children and simultaneous gastrocystoplasty. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2366-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371944
91. Mitchell ME, Piser JA. Intestinocystoplasty and total bladder replacement in children and young adults: follow up in 129 cases. J Urol 1987 Sep;138(3):579-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3625861
92. Shekarriz B, Upadhyay J, Demirbilek S, et al. Surgical complications of bladder augmentation: comparison between various enterocystoplasties in 133 patients. Urology 2000 Jan;55(1):123-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654908
93. Medel R, Ruarte AC, Herrera M, et al. Urinary continence outcome after augmentation ileocystoplasty as a single surgical procedure in patients with myelodysplasia. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 2):1849-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352374
94. Sung MT, Zhang S, Lopez-Betran A, et al. Urothelial carcinoma following augmentation cystoplasty: an aggressive variant with distinct clinicopathological characteristics and molecular genetic alterations. Histopathology 2009 Aug;55(2):161-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19694823

95. Husmann DA, Rathbun SR. Long-term follow up of enteric bladder augmentations: The risk for malignancy. J Pediatr Urol 2008 Oct;4(5):381-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18653384
96. Balachandra B, Swanson PE, Upton MP, et al. Adenocarcinoma arising in a gastrocystoplasty. J Clin Pathol 2007 Jan;60(1):85-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17213351
97. Vemulakonda VM, Lendvay TS, Shnorhavorian M, et al. Metastatic adenocarcinoma after augmentation gastrocystoplasty. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):1094-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18206936
98. Castellan M, Gosalbez R, Perez-Brayfield M, et al. Tumor in bladder reservoir after gastrocystoplasty. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 2):1771-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707009
99. Soergel TM, Cain MP, Misseri R, et al. Transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder following augmentation cystoplasty for the neuropathic bladder. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 2):1649-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371782

14. DILATATION OF THE UPPER URINARY TRACT (URETEROPELVIC JUNCTION AND URETEROVESICAL JUNCTION OBSTRUCTION)

14.1 Background

Dilatation of the upper urinary tract still presents a significant clinical challenge in determining which patient may gain benefit by therapy.

Ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction is defined as impaired urine flow from the pelvis into the proximal ureter with subsequent dilatation of the collecting system and the potential to damage the kidney. It is the most common cause of neonatal hydronephrosis (1). It has an overall incidence of 1:1500 and a ratio of males to females of 2:1 in newborns.

Ureterovesical junction (UVJ) obstruction is an obstructive condition of the distal ureter as it enters the bladder, commonly called a primary obstructive megaureter. Megaureters are ranked as second in the differential diagnosis of neonatal hydronephrosis. They occur more often in males and are more likely to occur on the left side (2).

Much more difficult is the definition of obstruction. Creating a divide between ‘obstructed’ and ‘nonobstructed’ urinary tracts, as if entities could be as clearly differentiated as ‘black’ and ‘white’, is impossible.

Currently, the most popular definition is that obstruction represents any restriction to urinary outflow that, if left untreated, will cause progressive renal deterioration (3).

14.2 Diagnosis

Due to the widespread use of ultrasonography during pregnancy, antenatal hydronephrosis is being detected with increasing frequency (4). The challenge in the management of dilated upper urinary tracts is to decide which child can be observed, which one should be managed medically, and which one requires surgical intervention. There is no single definitive test able to distinguish obstructive from non-obstructive cases (Figure 3).

14.2.1 ***Antenatal ultrasound***

Usually between the 16th and 18th week of pregnancy, the kidneys are visualised routinely, when almost all amniotic fluid consists of urine. The most sensitive time for foetal urinary tract evaluation is the 28th week. If dilatation is detected, ultrasound should focus on the laterality, severity of dilatation, and echogenicity of the kidneys, hydronephrosis or hydro-ureteronephrosis, bladder volume and bladder emptying, sex of the child, and amniotic fluid volume, respectively (5).

14.2.2 ***Postnatal ultrasound***

Since transitory neonatal dehydration lasts about 48 hours, imaging should be performed after this period of postnatal oliguria. In severe cases (bilateral dilatation, solitary kidney, oligohydramnios), immediate postnatal sonography is recommended (6). During ultrasound examination, the anteroposterior diameter of the renal

pelvis, calyceal dilatation, kidney size, thickness of the parenchyma, cortical echogenicity, ureters, bladder wall and residual urine are assessed.

*14.2.3 **Voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG)***

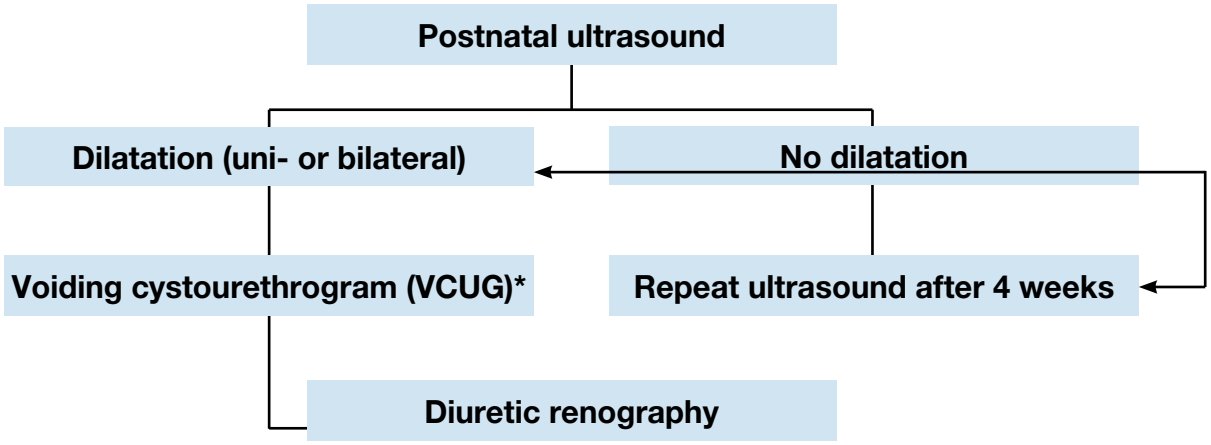
In newborns with identified upper urinary tract dilatation, the presence of primary or important associated factors that must be detected include vesicoureteral reflux in up to 25% of affected children (15), urethral valves, ureteroceles, diverticula and neurogenic bladder. Conventional VCUG is the method of choice for primary diagnostic procedures (7).

*14.2.4 **Diuretic renography***

Diuretic renography is the most commonly used diagnostic tool to detect the severity and functional significance of urine transport problems. ^{99}mTc-MAG3 is the radionuclide of choice. It is important to perform the study under standardised circumstances (hydration, transurethral catheter) between the fourth and sixth weeks of life (8).

Oral fluid intake is encouraged prior to examination. Fifteen minutes before injection of the radionuclide, it is mandatory to give normal saline intravenous infusion at a rate of 15 ml/kg over 30 minutes and then at a maintenance rate of 4 ml/kg/hour throughout the whole time of the investigation (9). The recommended dose of furosemide is 1 mg/kg for infants during the first year of life, while 0.5 mg/kg should be given to children aged 1 to 16 years up to a maximum dose of 40 mg.

Figure 3: Diagnostic algorithm for dilatation of the upper urinary tract



** A diagnostic work-up including VCUG has to be discussed with the parents since a possibly detected reflux might have absolutely no clinical impact. On the other hand, a reflux rate of up to 25% in cases of prenatally detected and postnatally confirmed hydronephrosis is reported in the literature (15) and might therefore have some forensic impact as well.*

14.3 Treatment

*14.3.1 **Prenatal management***

Counselling the parents is one of the most important aspects of care. The prognosis for an hydronephrotic kidney, even if severely affected, is hopeful. An hydronephrotic kidney may still be capable of providing meaningful renal function, whereas a severely hypoplastic and dysplastic kidney has a hopeless outlook. It is important to explain to the parents the timing and accuracy of establishing the definitive diagnosis for their child. In some cases, there is an obvious indication of severity, including massive bilateral dilatation, bilateral evidence of hypoplastic dysplasia, progressive bilateral dilatation with oligohydramnios, and pulmonary hypoplasia.

Intrauterine intervention is rarely indicated and should only be performed in well-experienced centres (10).

*14.3.2 **Ureteropelvic junction obstruction***

It is most important to make the decision on the basis of serial investigations, applying the same technique and performed by the same institution under standardised circumstances. Symptomatic obstruction (recurrent flank pain, urinary tract infection) requires surgical correction using a pyeloplasty, according to the standardised open technique of Hynes and Anderson (11). Recently, increasingly more data have become available supporting the use of a laparoscopic or retroperitoneoscopic approach to achieve a dismembered pyeloplasty.

In addition, laparoscopic suturing has been improved by the use of robotics (16). However, these methods lack very long-term data and will require time to be fully proven. In asymptomatic cases, conservative follow-up can be the treatment of choice.

Indications for surgical intervention are an impaired split renal function (< 40%), a decrease of split renal function of more than 10% in subsequent studies, increased anteroposterior diameter on the ultrasound, and grade III and IV dilatation as defined by the Society for Fetal Urology.

14.4 Megaureter

Concerning the treatment options of secondary megaureters (*see Chapter 15, Vesicoureteric reflux in children*). If a functional study reveals and confirms adequate ureteral drainage, conservative management is the best option. Initially, low-dose prophylactic antibiotics within the first year of life are recommended for prevention of urinary tract infections, although there are no prospective randomised trials to evaluate this regimen (12).

With spontaneous remission rates of up to 85% in primary megaureter cases, surgical management is no longer recommended, except for megaureters with recurrent UTI, deterioration of split renal function and significant obstruction (13).

The initial approach to the ureter can be either intravesical, extravesical, or combined. Straightening the ureter is necessary without devascularisation. Ureteral tapering should enhance urinary flow into the bladder. The ureter must be tapered to achieve a diameter for an antireflux repair. There are several tailoring techniques, e.g. ureteral imbrication or excisional tapering (14).

14.5 Conclusion

With the use of routine perinatal sonography, hydronephrosis caused by UPJ or UVJ obstruction is now increasingly recognised. Meticulous and repeat postnatal evaluation is mandatory to try to identify any obstructive cases at risk of renal deterioration and requiring surgical reconstruction. Surgical methods are fairly standardised and have a good clinical outcome.

14.6 References

1. Lebowitz RL, Griscom NT. Neonatal hydronephrosis: 146 cases. Radiol Clin North Am 1977 Apr;15(1): 49-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/139634
2. Brown T, Mandell J, Lebowitz RL. Neonatal hydronephrosis in the era of sonography. Am J Roentgenol 1987 May;148(5):959-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3034009
3. Koff SA. Problematic ureteropelvic junction obstruction. J Urol 1987 Aug;138(2):390. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3599261
4. Gunn TR, Mora JD, Pease P. Antenatal diagnosis of urinary tract abnormalities by ultrasonography after 28 weeks' gestation: incidence and outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1995 Feb;172(2 Pt 1):479-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7856673
5. Grignon A, Filiatrault D, Homsy Y, et al. Ureteropelvic junction stenosis: antenatal ultrasonographic diagnosis, postnatal investigation, and follow-up. Radiology 1986 Sep;160:649-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3526403
6. Flashner SC, King LR. Ureteropelvic junction. In: Clinical Pediatric Urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1976, p. 693.
7. Ebel KD. Uroradiology in the fetus and newborn: diagnosis and follow-up of congenital obstruction of the urinary tract. Pediatr Radiol 1998 Aug;28(8):630-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9716640
8. O 'Reilly P, Aurell M, Britton K, et al. Consensus on diuresis renography for investigating the dilated upper urinary tract. Radionuclides in Nephrourology Group. Consensus Committee on Diuresis Renography. J Nucl Med 1996 Nov;37(11):1872-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8917195
9. Choong KK, Gruenewald SM, Hodson EM, et al. Volume expanded diuretic renography in the postnatal assessment of suspected uretero-pelvic junction obstruction. J Nucl Med 1992 Dec;33:2094-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1460498
10. Reddy PP, Mandell J. Prenatal diagnosis. Therapeutic implications. Urol Clin North Am 1998 May;25(2):171-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9633572
11. Novick AC, Streem AB. Surgery of the kidney. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughan ED, Wein AJ (eds). Campbell's Urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1998, p. 3044.

12. Arena F, Baldari S, Proietto F, et al. Conservative treatment in primary neonatal megaureter. Eur J Pediatr Surg 1998 Dec;8(6):347-351.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9926303
13. Peters CA, Mandell J, Lebowitz RL, et al. Congenital obstructed megaureters in early infancy: diagnosis and treatment. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 2):641-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746792
14. Sripathi V, King PA, Thomson MR, et al. Primary obstructive megaureter. J Pediatr Surg 1991 Jul;26(7):826-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1895193
15. Thomas DF. Prenatally detected uropathy: epidemiological considerations. Br J Urol 1998 Apr;81(Suppl 2):8-12. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9602790
16. Olsen LH, Rawashdeh YF, Jorgensen TM. Pediatric robot assisted retroperitoneoscopic pyeloplasty: a 5-year experience. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):2137-41; discussion 2141.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17870122

15. VESICOURETERIC REFLUX IN CHILDREN

15.1 Methodology

The scientific literature for reflux disease is still limited and the level of evidence is generally low. Most of the studies are retrospective, include different patient groups, and have poor stratification of quality. Also, there is a high risk of presenting misleading results by combining different types of studies when systematically extracting data. Therefore, for reflux disease, it is unfortunately not possible to produce recommendations based on high-quality studies. The authors have assessed the current literature, but in the absence of conclusive findings, have provided recommendations based on panel consensus. These guidelines aim to provide a practical approach to the treatment of VUR based on risk analysis.

15.2 Background

Vesicoureteric reflux, or the retrograde flow of urine from the bladder into the ureter, is an anatomical and/or functional disorder with potentially serious consequences, such as renal scarring, hypertension, and renal failure. Fortunately, patients with VUR present within a wide range of severity, and a good proportion of reflux patients do not develop renal scars and probably do not need any intervention (1). VUR is a very common urological anomaly in children, with an incidence of nearly 1%. Its management is one of the most controversial issues in paediatric urology.

The main goal in management is the preservation of kidney function, by minimising the risk of pyelonephritis. By defining and analysing the risk factors for each patient [i.e. age, sex, reflux grade, lower urinary tract dysfunction (LUTD), anatomical abnormalities, and kidney status], it is possible to identify those patients with a potential risk of UTIs and renal scarring. Controversy persists over the optimal management of VUR, particularly the choice of diagnostic procedures, treatment (medical, endoscopic or open surgical), and the timing of treatment.

Many children present without symptoms of UTI and because invasive diagnostic procedures are performed only when clinically indicated, the exact prevalence of VUR is unknown. However, the prevalence of VUR in non-symptomatic children has been estimated at 0.4-1.8% (2). Among infants prenatally identified with hydronephrosis on ultrasonography (US), who were screened for VUR, the prevalence was 16.2% (7-35%) (3). Siblings of children with VUR had a 27.4% (3-51%) risk of also having VUR, whereas the offspring of parents with VUR had a higher incidence of 35.7% (21.2-61.4%) (3).

However, reflux detected by sibling screening is associated with lower grades (3) and significantly earlier resolution (4). When VUR is discovered in siblings after UTI, it is usually high grade and associated with a high incidence of reflux nephropathy, particularly if the sibling is male and the grade of reflux was high in the index patient. Even when asymptomatic, siblings and offspring of those with VUR may be diagnosed with high-grade reflux and scarring (5,6).

The incidence of VUR is much higher among children with UTIs (30-50%, depending on age). UTIs are more common in girls than boys due to anatomical differences. However, among all children with UTIs, boys are more likely to have VUR than girls (29% vs. 14%). Boys also tend to have higher grades of VUR diagnosed at

younger ages, although their VUR is more likely to resolve (7-10).

There is a clear co-prevalence between LUTD and VUR (11). LUTD refers to the presence of lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTSs), including urge, urge incontinence, weak stream, hesitancy, frequency and UTIs, which reflect the filling and/or emptying dysfunction that may be accompanied with bowel problems (11). Some studies have described a prevalence of 40-60% for VUR in children with LUTD (12). It is possible that VUR is secondary to LUTD, and that treatment of LUTD therefore results in correction of VUR. In contrast, high-grade VUR may affect bladder dynamics, which subsequently leads to LUTD. A recently published Swedish reflux trial has demonstrated LUTD in 34% of patients, and subdivision into groups characteristic of children revealed that 9% had isolated overactive bladder and 24% had voiding phase dysfunction. There was a significant negative correlation between dysfunction at 2 years and improved dilating reflux. Renal damage at study entry and follow-up was associated with LUTD at 2 years. Recurrent UTIs were seen in 33% of children with LUTD, and in 20% of those without (13).

The spontaneous resolution of VUR is dependent on age at presentation, sex, grade, laterality, mode of clinical presentation, and anatomy (4). Faster resolution of VUR is more likely with age < 1 year at presentation, lower grade of reflux (grade 1-3), and asymptomatic presentation with prenatal hydronephrosis or sibling reflux. The overall resolution rate is high in congenital high-grade VUR during the first years of life. In several Scandinavian studies, the complete resolution rate for high-grade VUR has been reported at > 25%, which is higher than the resolution rate for VUR detected after infancy (14,15).

The presence of renal cortical abnormality, bladder dysfunction, and breakthrough febrile UTIs are negative predictive factors for reflux resolution (16-18).

Dilating VUR increases the risk of developing acute pyelonephritis and renal scarring. Untreated recurrent UTIs may have a negative impact on somatic growth and medical status of the child. Ten to forty percent of children with symptomatic VUR have evidence of renal scarring, resulting from either congenital dysplasia and/or acquired post-infectious damage, which may have a negative impact on somatic growth and general wellbeing (19-21).

Higher grades of VUR present with higher rates of renal scars. Scar rates vary in different patient groups. In those with prenatal hydronephrosis, renal scarring occurs in ~10% of patients (22-27), whereas in patients with LUTD, this may increase up to 30% (28-30). Renal scarring may adversely affect renal growth and function, with bilateral scarring increasing the risk of insufficiency. Reflux nephropathy (RN) may be the most common cause of childhood hypertension. Follow-up studies have shown that 10-20% of children with RN develop hypertension or end-stage renal disease (31).

15.3 Diagnostic work-up

The diagnostic work-up should aim to evaluate the overall health and development of the child, the presence of UTIs, renal status, the presence of VUR, and lower urinary tract function. A basic diagnostic work-up comprises a detailed medical history (including family history, and screening for LUTD), physical examination including blood pressure measurement, urinalysis (assessing proteinuria), urine culture, and serum creatinine in patients with bilateral renal parenchymal abnormalities.

Imaging is the basis of diagnosis and management of VUR. The standard imaging tests include renal and bladder ultrasonography (US), voiding cystourethrography (VCUG) and nuclear renal scans. The criterion standard in diagnosis of VUR is VCUG, especially at the initial work-up. This test provides precise anatomical detail and allows grading of VUR (32). In 1985, the International Reflux Study Committee introduced a uniform system for the classification of VUR (33,34) (Table 9). The grading system combines two earlier classifications and is based upon the extent of retrograde filling and dilatation of the ureter, renal pelvis and calyces on VCUG (35).

Radionuclide studies for detection of reflux have lower radiation exposure than VCUG, but the anatomical details depicted are inferior (36). Recent studies on alternative imaging modalities for detection on VUR have yielded good results with voiding urosonography and magnetic resonance VCUG (37-39). However, despite the concerns about ionising radiation and its invasive nature, conventional VCUG still remains the gold standard because it allows better determination of the grade of VUR (in a single or duplicated kidney) and assessment of the bladder and urethral configuration.

Table 9: Grading system for VUR on VCUG, according to the International Reflux Study Committee (33)

Grade I	Reflux does not reach the renal pelvis; varying degrees of ureteral dilatation
Grade II	Reflux reaches the renal pelvis; no dilatation of the collecting system; normal fornices
Grade III	Mild or moderate dilatation of the ureter, with or without kinking; moderate dilatation of the collecting system; normal or minimally deformed fornices
Grade IV	Moderate dilatation of the ureter with or without kinking; moderate dilatation of the collecting system; blunt fornices, but impressions of the papillae still visible
Grade V	Gross dilatation and kinking of the ureter, marked dilatation of the collecting system; papillary impressions no longer visible; intraparenchymal reflux

Dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) is the best nuclear agent for visualising the cortical tissue and differential function between both kidneys. DMSA is taken up by proximal renal tubular cells and is a good indicator of renal parenchyma function. In areas of acute inflammation or scarring, DMSA uptake is poor and appears as cold spots. DMSA scans are therefore used to detect and monitor renal scarring. A baseline DMSA scan at the time of diagnosis can be used for comparison with successive scans later during follow-up (35,40). DMSA can also be used as a diagnostic tool during suspected episodes of acute pyelonephritis (41). Children with a normal DMSA scan during acute UTI have a low risk of renal damage (42).
Video-urodynamic studies are only important in patients in whom secondary reflux is suspected, such as those with spina bifida or boys in whom VCUG is suggestive of posterior urethral valves. In the case of LUTSs, diagnosis and follow-up can be limited to non-invasive tests (e.g. voiding charts, US, or uroflowmetry) (11). Cystoscopy has a limited role in evaluating reflux, except for infravesical obstruction or ureteral anomalies that might influence therapy.

The choice of imaging modalities varies depending on the mode of presentation.

*15.3.1 **Infants presenting because of prenatally diagnosed hydronephrosis***

Ultrasound of the kidney and bladder is the first standard evaluation tool for children with prenatally diagnosed hydronephrosis. It is non-invasive and provides reliable information regarding kidney structure, size, parenchymal thickness and collecting system dilatation (43,44).

Ultrasound should be delayed until after the first week after birth because of early oliguria in the neonate. It is essential to evaluate the bladder, as well as the kidneys. The degree of dilatation in the collecting system under US, when the bladder is both full and empty, may provide significant information about the presence of VUR. Bladder wall thickness and configuration may be an indirect sign of LUTD and reflux. The absence of hydronephrosis on postnatal ultrasound excludes the presence of significant obstruction; however, it does not exclude VUR.
Monitoring with careful US avoids unnecessary invasive and irradiating examinations. The first two US scans within the first 1-2 months of life are highly accurate for defining the presence or absence of renal pathology. In infants with two normal, successive scans, VUR is a rare entity, and if present it is likely to be low grade (23,45). The degree of hydronephrosis is not a reliable indicator for the presence of VUR, even though cortical abnormalities are more common in high-grade hydronephrosis (3). The presence of cortical abnormalities on US (defined as cortical thinning and irregularity, as well as increased echogenicity) warrants the use of VCUG for detecting VUR (3). DMSA provides more reliable and quantitative measurement of the degree of cortical abnormalities when first detected with US.

The use of VCUG is recommended in patients with US findings of bilateral high-grade hydronephrosis, duplex kidneys with hydronephrosis, ureterocele, ureteric dilatation, and abnormal bladders, because the likelihood of VUR is much higher. In all other conditions, the use of VCUG to detect reflux is optional (3,46-48). When infants who are diagnosed with prenatal hydronephrosis become symptomatic with UTIs, further evaluation with VCUG should be considered (48). Patients with severe hydronephrosis and those whose hydronephrosis is sustained or progressive need further evaluation to exclude obstruction (see Chapter 14).

*15.3.2 **Siblings and offspring of reflux patients***

The screening of asymptomatic siblings and offspring is controversial. Some authors think that early identification of children with VUR may prevent episodes of UTI and therefore renal scarring, whereas others think that screening asymptomatic individuals is likely to result in significant over-treatment of clinically insignificant VUR.

The overall estimate for renal cortical abnormalities is 19.3% (11-54%), with 27.8% having renal damage in cohorts of symptomatic and asymptomatic children combined. In asymptomatic siblings only, the rate of renal damage is 14.4% (0-100%). Early screening and therefore early diagnosis and treatment appears to be more effective than late screening in preventing further renal damage. (3,5,49,50).

The lack of randomised clinical trials for screened patients to assess clinical health outcomes makes evidence-based guideline recommendations difficult.

Recommendations for paediatric screening for VUR
The parents of children with VUR should be informed that siblings and offspring have a high prevalence of VUR.
If screening is performed, siblings should be screened by renal US. VCUG is recommended if there is evidence of renal scarring on US or a history of UTI.
In older children who are toilet-trained, there is no added value in screening for VUR.

*15.3.3 **Children with febrile urinary tract infections***

VCUG is recommended at 0-2 years of age after the first proven febrile UTI. If reflux is diagnosed, further evaluation has traditionally consisted of a DMSA scan. However, it can be reserved for high-grade VUR or VUR associated with a suggestion of abnormal renal parenchyma on ultrasound, or it can be used as a baseline test to compare the consequences of potential pyelonephritic complications in the future.

An alternative “top-down” approach is also an option, as suggested by several studies in the literature. This approach carries out an initial DMSA scan close to the time of a febrile UTI, to determine the presence of pyelonephritis, which is then followed by VCUG if the DMSA scan reveals kidney involvement. A normal DMSA scan with no subsequent VCUG will fail to spot VUR in 5-27% of cases, with the missed VUR presumably being less significant. In contrast, a normal DMSA scan with no VCUG avoids unnecessary VCUG in > 50% of those screened (51-54).

*15.3.4 **Children with lower urinary tract symptoms and vesicoureteric reflux***

Detection of LUTD is essential in treating children with VUR. There are several hypotheses. For example, it is suggested that reflux with LUTD resolves faster after LUTD correction, and that patients with LUTD are at higher risk for developing UTI and renal scarring (55). Alternatively, it is possible that LUTD is secondary to VUR and that treatment of VUR therefore results in correction of LUTD. Or, it may be that there is a high co-prevalence of LUTD and VUR, but the treatment of one condition does not correct the other. In recent literature, there are no data to support any of the above hypotheses. Most studies are descriptive, uncontrolled and retrospective, and the evidence quality is low.

A recent Swedish reflux study, however, has indicated that patients who have both VUR and LUTD may have a worse final outcome after treatment, including an elevated risk for kidney damage (13). The results from the Swedish study indicate that the coexistence of both conditions should be explored in any patient who has VUR. If there are symptoms suggestive of LUTD (e.g. urgency, wetting, constipation or holding manoeuvres), an extensive history and examination, including voiding charts, uroflowmetry and residual urine determination, will reliably diagnose underlying LUTD.

In LUTD, VUR is often low grade and US findings are normal, and there is no indication for performing VCUG in all children with LUTD. Instead, it would be more rational to ask any patient with LUTD if he or she has a history of febrile UTI, because there is a greater possibility of finding VUR in such patients. However, because of the coexistence of LUTD and VUR, it would be better to do a test covering both conditions, such as a video-urodynamic study (VUDS). Any patient with LUTD and a history of febrile UTI should be investigated with a VUDS, if available. Furthermore, any child who fails standard therapy for LUTD should undergo urodynamic investigation. At this stage, combining a urodynamic study with VCUG is highly recommended.

15.4 Treatment

There are two main treatment approaches: conservative (non-surgical) and surgical.

*15.4.1 **Conservative therapy***

The objective of conservative therapy is prevention of febrile UTI. It is based on the understanding that:

- VUR resolves spontaneously, mostly in young patients with low-grade reflux. Resolution is nearly 80%

in VUR grades I and II and 30-50% in VUR grades III-V within 4-5 years of follow-up. Spontaneous resolution is low for bilateral high-grade reflux (56).

- VUR does not damage the kidney when patients are free of infection and have normal lower urinary tract function.
- There is no evidence that small scars can cause hypertension, renal insufficiency or problems during pregnancy. Indeed, these are possible only in cases of severe bilateral renal damage.
- The conservative approach includes watchful waiting, intermittent or continuous antibiotic prophylaxis, and bladder rehabilitation in those with LUTD (55,57-60).
- Circumcision during early infancy may be considered as part of the conservative approach, because it is effective in reducing the risk of infection in normal children (61).

15.4.1.1 Follow-up

Regular follow-up with imaging studies (e.g. VCUG, nuclear cystography, or DMSA scan) is part of the conservative management to monitor spontaneous resolution and kidney status. Conservative management should be dismissed in all cases of febrile breakthrough infections, despite prophylaxis, and intervention should be considered.

15.4.1.2 Continuous antibiotic prophylaxis (CAP)

The use of CAP and duration of follow-up during prophylaxis in reflux patients is another area of major controversy. Although it is difficult to make definitive recommendations based on recent literature, it is clear that antibiotic prophylaxis may not be needed in every reflux patient (58,62-64). Although there are trials showing no benefit of CAP, especially in low-grade reflux, there are also trials showing that CAP prevents further renal damage, particularly in patients with grade III and V reflux (65-69).

It is difficult and risky to select patients who do not need CAP. A safe approach would be to use CAP in most cases. Decision making may be influenced by the presence of risk factors for UTI, such as young age, high-grade VUR, status of toilet-training/LUTSs, female sex, and circumcision status. However, recent literature does not provide any reliable information about the duration of CAP in reflux patients.

A practical approach would be to use CAP until after children have been toilet-trained and ensuring that there is no LUTD. Active surveillance of UTI is needed after CAP is discontinued. The follow-up scheme and the decision to perform an antireflux procedure or discontinuation of CAP may also depend on personal preferences and the attitude of patients and parents. It is strongly advised that the advantages and disadvantages should be discussed in detail with the family.

15.4.2 ***Surgical treatment***

Surgical treatment can be carried out by endoscopic injection of bulking agents or ureteral reimplantation.

15.4.2.1 Subureteric injection of bulking materials

With the availability of biocompatible substances, subureteric injection of bulking materials has become increasingly popular because it is minimally invasive and performed on an outpatient basis. Using cystoscopy, bulking materials are injected beneath the intramural part of the ureter in a submucosal location. The injected bulking agent elevates the ureteral orifice and the distal ureter, so that coaptation is increased. This results in narrowing of the lumen, which prevents reflux of urine into the ureter, while still allowing its antegrade flow. With the availability of biodegradable substances, endoscopic subureteric injection of bulking agents has become an alternative to long-term antibiotic prophylaxis and surgical intervention in the treatment of VUR in children.

Several bulking agents have been used over the past two decades, including polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE or Teflon), collagen, autologous fat, polydimethylsiloxane, silicone, chondrocytes, and more recently, a solution of dextranomer/hyaluronic acid (Deflux).

Although the best results have been obtained with PTFE (70), due to concerns about particle migration, PTFE has not been approved for use in children (71). Although they are all biocompatible, other compounds such as collagen and chondrocytes have failed to provide a good outcome. Deflux was approved by the US FDA in 2001 for the treatment of VUR in children. Initial clinical trials have demonstrated that this method is effective in treating reflux (72). Studies with long term follow-up have shown that there is a high recurrence rate which may go up to 20% in 2 years (62).

In a meta-analysis (73) including 5527 patients and 8101 renal units, the reflux resolution rate (by ureter)

following one treatment for grades I and II reflux was 78.5%, 72% for grade III, 63% for grade IV, and 51% for grade V. If the first injection was unsuccessful, the second treatment had a success rate of 68% and the third treatment 34%. The aggregate success rate with one or more injections was 85%. The success rate was significantly lower for duplicated (50%) versus single (73%) systems, and neuropathic (62%) versus normal (74%) bladders.

Clinical validation of the effectiveness of antireflux endoscopy is currently hampered by the lack of methodologically appropriate studies. In the most recent prospective, randomised trials comparing three treatment arms (I, endoscopic injection; II, antibiotic prophylaxis; III, surveillance without antibiotic prophylaxis) in 203 children aged 1-2 years with grade III/IV reflux, endoscopic treatment gave the highest resolution rate of 71% compared to 39% and 47% for treatment arms II and III, respectively, after 2 years' follow-up. The recurrence rate at 2 years after endoscopic treatment was 20%. The occurrence of febrile UTIs and scar formation was highest in the surveillance group at 57% and 11%, respectively. New scar formation rate was higher with endoscopic injection (7%) compared with antibiotic prophylaxis (0%) (74). Longer follow-up studies are needed to validate these findings.

15.4.2.2 Open surgical techniques

Various intra- and extravesical techniques have been described for the surgical correction of reflux. Although different methods have specific advantages and complications, they all share the basic principle of lengthening the intramural part of the ureter by submucosal embedding of the ureter. All techniques have been shown to be safe with a low rate of complications and excellent success rates (92-98%) (75).

The most popular and reliable open procedure is cross trigonal reimplantation described by Cohen. The main concern with this procedure is the difficulty of accessing the ureters endoscopically if needed when the child is older. Alternatives are suprahiatal reimplantation (Politano-Leadbetter technique) and infrahiatal reimplantation (Glenn-Anderson technique). If an extravesical procedure (Lich-Gregoir) is planned, cystoscopy should be performed preoperatively to assess the bladder mucosa and the position and configuration of the ureteric orifices. In bilateral reflux, an intravesical antireflux procedure may be considered, because simultaneous bilateral extravesical reflux repair carries an increased risk of temporary postoperative urine retention (76). Overall, all surgical procedures offer very high and similar success rates for correcting VUR.

15.4.2.3 Laparoscopy

There have been a considerable number of case series of transperitoneal extravesical and pneumovesicoscopic intravesical ureteral reimplantation, which have shown the feasibility of the techniques. Today, both conventional and robot-assisted laparoscopic approaches present comparable outcomes to their open surgical counterparts in terms of successful resolution of reflux. Further studies are needed to define the costs and benefits of both approaches.

The major shortcoming of the new techniques seems to be the longer operative times, which hinders their wider acceptance. Also, laparascopic approaches are more invasive than endoscopic correction and their advantages over open surgery are still debated. Therefore, at present, a laparoscopic approach cannot be recommended as a routine procedure. It can be offered as an alternative to the parents in centres where there is enough experience (61,77-83).

15.5 Recommendations for the management of vesicoureteric reflux in childhood

Regardless of the grade of reflux or presence of renal scars, all patients diagnosed within the first year of life should be treated initially with CAP. During early childhood, the kidneys are at higher risk of developing new scars. Immediate, parenteral antibiotic treatment should be initiated for febrile breakthrough infections. Definitive surgical or endoscopic correction is the preferred treatment in patients with frequent breakthrough infections (78).
Surgical correction should be considered in patients with persistent high-grade reflux (grades IV/V). There is no consensus about the timing and type of surgical correction. The outcome of open surgical correction is better than endoscopic correction for higher grades of reflux, whereas satisfactory results can be achieved by endoscopic injection for lower grades.
There is no evidence that correction of persistent low-grade reflux (grades I-III) without symptoms and normal kidneys offers a significant benefit. These patients may be candidates for endoscopic treatment.
In all children presenting at age 1-5 years, CAP is the preferred option for initial therapy. For those with high-grade reflux or abnormal renal parenchyma, surgical repair is a reasonable alternative. In patients with lower grades of reflux and without symptoms, close surveillance without antibiotic prophylaxis may be an option.
A detailed investigation for the presence of LUTD should be performed in all children after toilet-training. If LUTD is found, the initial treatment should always be for LUTD.
If parents prefer definitive therapy to conservative management, surgical correction may be considered. Endoscopic treatment is an option for all children with low grades of reflux.
The traditional approach of initial medical treatment after diagnosis and shifting to interventional treatment in case of breakthrough infections and new scar formation needs to be challenged, because the treatment should be tailored to different risk groups.
The choice of management depends on the presence of renal scars, clinical course, grade of reflux, ipsilateral renal function, bilaterality, bladder function, associated anomalies of the urinary tract, age, compliance, and parental preference (79). Febrile UTI, high-grade reflux, bilaterality, and cortical abnormalities are considered to be risk factors for possible renal damage. The presence of LUTD is an additional risk factor for new scars.
In high-risk patients who already have renal impairment, a more aggressive, multidisciplinary approach is needed.

Table 10: Management and follow-up according to different risk groups

Risk Groups	Presentation	Initial treatment	Comment	Follow-up
High	Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with high-grade reflux (grades IV-V), abnormal kidneys and LUTD	Initial treatment is always for LUTD with CAP; intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux	Greater possibility of earlier intervention	More aggressive follow-up for UTI and LUTD; full re-evaluation after 6 months
High	Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with high-grade reflux (grade IV-V), abnormal kidneys and no LUTD	Intervention should be considered	Open surgery has better results than endoscopic surgery	Post-operative VCUG on indication only; follow-up of kidney status until after puberty
Moderate	Symptomatic male or female patients before toilet-training, with high-grade reflux and abnormal kidneys	CAP is the initial treatment. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT infections or persistent reflux	Spontaneous resolution is higher in males	Follow-up for UTI/ hydronephrosis; full re-evaluation after 12-24 months
Moderate	Asymptomatic patients (PNH or sibling) with high-grade reflux and abnormal kidneys	CAP is the initial treatment. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT, infections or persistent reflux		Follow-up for UTI/ hydronephrosis; full re-evaluation after 12-24 months

Moderate	Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training, with high-grade reflux and normal kidneys with LUTD	Initial treatment is always for LUTD with CAP. Intervention may be considered in cases of BT, infections or persistent reflux	In case of persistent LUTD, despite urotherapy, intervention should be considered. The choice of intervention is controversial	Follow-up for UTI and LUTD, kidney status; full re-evaluation after successful urotherapy
Moderate	Symptomatic male or female patients after toilet-training with low-grade reflux, abnormal kidneys with or without LUTD	Choice of treatment is controversial. Endoscopic treatment may be an option. LUTD treatment should be given if needed.		Follow-up for UTI, LUTD, and kidney status until after puberty
Moderate	All symptomatic patients with normal kidneys, with low-grade reflux, with LUTD	Initial treatment is always for LUTD with or without CAP		Follow-up for UTI and LUTD
Low	All symptomatic patients with normal kidneys, with low-grade reflux, with no LUTD	No treatment or CAP	If no treatment is given, parents should be informed about risk of infection	Follow-up for UTI
Low	All asymptomatic patients with normal kidneys with low-grade reflux	No treatment or CAP in infants	If no treatment is given, parents should be informed about risk of infection	Follow-up for UTI

PNH = prenatal diagnosed hydronephrosis.

15.6 References

1. Fanos V, Cataldi L. Antibiotics or surgery for vesicoureteric reflux in children. Lancet 2004 Nov;364(9446):1720-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15530633
2. Sargent MA. What is the normal prevalence of vesicoureteral reflux? Pediatr Radiol. 2000 Sep;30(9):587-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11009294
3. Skoog SJ, Peters CA, Arant BS Jr, et al. Pediatric Vesicoureteral Reflux Guidelines Panel Summary Report: Clinical Practice Guidelines for Screening Siblings of Children With Vesicoureteral Reflux and Neonates/Infants With Prenatal Hydronephrosis. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):1145-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20650494
4. Estrada CR Jr, Passerotti CC, Graham DA, et al. Nomograms for predicting annual resolution rate of primary vesicoureteralreflux: results from 2,462 children. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4):1535-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19683762
5. Pirker ME, Colhoun E, Puri P. Renal scarring in familial vesicoureteral reflux: is prevention possible? J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 2):1842-6; discussion 1846. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945668
6. Pirker ME, Mohanan N, Colhoun E, et al. Familial vesicoureteral reflux: influence of sex on prevalence and expression. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 2):1776-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945647
7. Hannula A, Venhola M, Renko M, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux in children with suspected and proven urinary tract infection. Pediatr Nephrol. 2010 Aug;25(8):1463-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20467791
8. Menezes M, Puri P. Familial vesicoureteral reflux--is screening beneficial? J Urol. 2009 Oct;182(4 Suppl):1673-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19692047
9. Alsaywid BS, Saleh H, Deshpande A, et al. High grade primary vesicoureteral reflux in boys: long-term results of a prospective cohort study. J Urol 2010 Oct;184(4 Suppl):1598-603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20728178
10. Noe HN. The long-term results of prospective sibling reflux screening. J Urol. 1992 Nov;148(5 Pt 2):1739-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433599

11. Koff SA, Wagner TT, Jayanthi VR. The relationship among dysfunctional elimination syndromes, primary vesicoureteral reflux and urinary tract infections in children. J Urol 1998;160(3 Pt 2):1019-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719268
12. Ural Z, Ulman I, Avanoglu A. Bladder dynamics and vesicoureteral reflux: factors associated with idiopathic lower urinary tract dysfunction in children. J Urol 2008 Apr; 179(4):1564-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295262
13. Sillén U, Brandström P, Jodal U, et al. The Swedish reflux trial in children: v. Bladder dysfunction. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):298-304. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488486
14. Sjöström S, Sillén U, Bachelard M, Hansson S, Stokland E. Spontaneous resolution of high grade infantile vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):694-8; discussion 699. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247764
15. Esbjörner E, Hansson S, Jakobsson B; Swedish Paediatric Nephrology Association. Management of children with dilating vesico-ureteric reflux in Sweden. Acta Paediatr. 2004 Jan;93(1):37-42.)
16. Knudson MJ, Austin JC, McMillan ZM, et al. Predictive factors of early spontaneous resolution in children with primary vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 2):1684-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707023
17. Yeung CK, Sreedhar B, Sihoe JD, et al. Renal and bladder functional status at diagnosis as predictive factors for the outcome of primary vesicoureteral reflux in children. J Urol 2006 Sep;176(3):1152-6; discussion 1156-7 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16890714
18. Sjöström S, Sillén U, Jodal U, et al. Predictive factors for resolution of congenital high grade vesicoureteral reflux in infants:results of univariate and multivariate analyses. J Urol 2010 Mar;183(3):1177-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20096864
19. Peters C, Rushton HG. Vesicoureteral reflux associated renal damage: congenital reflux nephropathy and acquired renal scarring. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):265-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20483150
20. Mohanan N, Colhoun E, Puri P. Renal parenchymal damage in intermediate and high grade infantile vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4 Suppl):1635-8; discussion 1638. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18708232
21. Olbing H, Smellie JM, Jodal U, et al. New renal scars in children with severe VUR: a 10-year study of randomized treatment. Pediatr Nephrol 2003 Nov ;18(11):1128-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14523634
22. Estrada CR, Peters CA, Retik AB, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux and urinary tract infection in children with a history of prenatal hydronephrosis--should voiding cystourethrography be performed in cases of postnatally persistent grade II hydronephrosis? J Urol 2009 Feb;181(2):801-6; discussion 806-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19095265
23. Coplen DE, Austin PF, Yan Y, et al. Correlation of prenatal and postnatal ultrasound findings with the incidence of vesicoureteral reflux in children with fetal renal pelvic dilatation. J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4 Suppl):1631-4; discussion 1634. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18718617
24. Phan V, Traubici J, Hershenfield B, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux in infants with isolated antenatal hydronephrosis. Pediatr Nephrol 2003 Dec;18(12):1224-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14586679
25. Mallik M, Watson AR. Antenatally detected urinary tract abnormalities: more detection but less action. Pediatr Nephrol 2008 Jun;23(6):897-904. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18278521
26. Lee RS, Cendron M, Kinnamon DD et al. Antenatal hydronephrosis as a predictor of postnatal outcome: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2006 Aug;118(2):586-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882811
27. Ylinen E, Ala-Houhala M, Wikström S. Risk of renal scarring in vesicoureteral reflux detected either antenatally or during the neonatal period. Urology 2003 Jun;61(6):1238-42; discussion 1242-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12809909
28. Leonardo CR, Filgueiras MF, Vasconcelos MM, et al. Risk factors for renal scarring in children and adolescents with lower urinary tract dysfunction. Pediatr Nephrol 2007 Nov;22(11):1891-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17874252
29. Peters CA, Skoog SJ, Arant BS Jr, et al. Summary of the AUA Guideline on Management of Primary Vesicoureteral Reflux in Children. J Urol 2010 Sep;184(3):1134-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20650499

30. Naseer SR, Steinhardt GF. New renal scars in children with urinary tract infections, vesicoureteral reflux and voiding dysfunction: a prospective evaluation. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):566-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224361
31. Blumenthal I. Vesicoureteric reflux and urinary tract infection in children. Postgrad Med J 2006;82(963):31-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16397077
32. Darge K, Riedmiller H. Current status of vesicoureteral reflux diagnosis. World J Urol 2004;22(2):88-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15173954
33. Westwood ME, Whiting PF, Cooper J, et al. Further investigation of confirmed urinary tract infection (UTI) in children under five years: a systematic review. BMC Pediatr 2005 Mar 15;5(1):2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15769296
34. Lebowitz RL, Olbing H, Parkkulainen KV, et al. International Reflux Study in Children: international system of radiographic grading of vesicoureteric reflux. Pediatr Radiol 1985;15(2):105-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3975102
35. Westwood ME, Whiting PF, Cooper J, et al. Further investigation of confirmed urinary tract infection (UTI) in children under five years: a systematic review. BMC Pediatr 2005 Mar 15;5(1):2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15769296
36. Snow BW, Taylor MB. Non-invasive vesicoureteral reflux imaging. J Pediatr Urol 2010 Dec;6(6):543-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488755
37. Papadopoulou F, Anthopoulou A, Siomou E, et al. Harmonic voiding urosonography with a second-generation contrast agent for the diagnosis of vesicoureteral reflux. Pediatr Radiol 2009 Mar;39(3): 239-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19096835
38. Darge K. Voiding urosonography with US contrast agents for the diagnosis of vesicoureteric reflux in children. II. Comparison with radiological examinations. Pediatr Radiol 2008 Jan;38(1):54-63; quiz 126-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17639371
39. Takazakura R, Johnin K, Furukawa A, et al. Magnetic resonance voiding cystourethrography for vesicoureteral reflux. J Magn Reson Imaging 2007 Jan;25(1):170-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17154372
40. Scherz HC, Downs TM, Caesar R. The selective use of dimercaptosuccinic acid renal scans in children with vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 1994 Aug;152(2 Pt 2):628-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8021985
41. Lee MD, Lin CC, Huang FY, et al. Screening young children with a first febrile urinary tract infection for high-grade vesicoureteral reflux with renal ultrasound scanning and technetium-99m-labeled dimercaptosuccinic acid scanning. J Pediatr 2009 Jun;154(6):797-802. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19230904
42. Hoberman A, Charron M, Hickey RW, et al. Imaging studies after a first febrile urinary tract infection in young children. N Engl J Med 2003 Jan;348(3):195-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12529459
43. Grazioli S, Parvex P, Merlini L, et al. Antenatal and postnatal ultrasound in the evaluation of the risk of vesicoureteral reflux. Pediatr Nephrol 2010 Sep;25(9):1687-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20524012
44. Lidefelt KJ, Herthelius M. Antenatal hydronephrosis: infants with minor postnatal dilatation do not need prophylaxis. Pediatr Nephrol 2008 Nov;23(11):2021-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18560902
45. Hafez AT, McLorie G, Bagli D, et al. Analysis of trends on serial ultrasound for high grade neonatal hydronephrosis. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1518-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352447
46. Lee RS, Cendron M, Kinnamon DD, et al. Antenatal hydronephrosis as a predictor of postnatal outcome: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2006 Aug;118(2):586-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882811
47. Lee JH, Choi HS, Kim JK et al. Nonrefluxing neonatal hydronephrosis and the risk of urinary tract infection. J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1524-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295269
48. Sidhu G, Beyene J, Rosenblum ND. Outcome of isolated antenatal hydronephrosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Pediatr Nephrol 2006 Feb;21(2):218-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16362721

49. Houle AM, Cheikhelard A, Barrieras D, et al. Impact of early screening for reflux in siblings on the detection of renal damage. BJU Int 2004 Jul;94(1):123-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15217445
50. Puri P, Cascio S, Lakshmandass G et al. Urinary tract infection and renal damage in sibling vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 1998 Sep;160(3 Pt 2):1028-30; discussion 1038.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719271
51. Hansson S, Dhamey M, Sigström O, et al. Dimercapto-succinic acid scintigraphy instead of voiding cystourethrography for infants with urinary tract infection. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1071-3; discussion 1073-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311040
52. Herz D, Merguerian P, McQuiston L et al. 5-year prospective results of dimercapto-succinic acid imaging in children with febrile urinary tract infection: proof that the top-down approach works. J Urol 2010 Oct;184(4 Suppl):1703-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20728131
53. Quirino IG, Silva JM, Diniz JS, et al. Combined use of late phase dimercapto-succinic acid renal scintigraphy and ultrasound as first line screening after urinary tract infection in children. J Urol 2011 Jan;185(1):258-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21074813
54. Preda I, Jodal U, Sixt R, et al. Normal dimercaptosuccinic acid scintigraphy makes voiding cystourethrography unnecessary after urinary tract infection. J Pediatr 2007 Dec;151(6):581-4, 584.e1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18035134
55. Colen J, Docimo SG, Stanitski K, et al. Dysfunctional elimination syndrome is a negative predictor for vesicoureteral reflux. J Pediatr Urol 2006 Aug;2(4):312-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18947628
56. Elder JS, Peters CA, Arant BS Jr, et al. Pediatric Vesicoureteral Reflux Guidelines Panel summary report on the management of primary vesicoureteral reflux in children. J Urol. 1997 May;157(5): 1846-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9112544
57. Dias CS, Silva JM, Diniz JS, et al. Risk factors for recurrent urinary tract infections in a cohort of patients with primary vesicoureteral reflux. Pediatr Infect Dis J 2010 Feb;29(2):139-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20135833
58. Craig JC, Simpson JM, Williams GJ, et al. Prevention of Recurrent Urinary Tract Infection in Children with Vesicoureteric Reflux and Normal Renal Tracts (PRIVENT) Investigators. Antibioticprophylaxis and recurrent urinary tract infection in children. N Engl J Med 2009 Oct 29;361(18):1748-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19864673
59. Williams GJ, Wei L, Lee A, et al. Long-term antibiotics for preventing recurrent urinary tract infection in children. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006 Jul 19;3:CD001534.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16855971
60. Wheeler DM, Vimalachandra D, Hodson EM, et al. Interventions for primary vesicoureteric reflux. Cochrane Database Syst Rev.2004;(3):CD001532. Review. Update in: Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;(3):CD001532.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15266449
61. Singh-Grewal D, Macdessi J, Craig J. Circumcision for the prevention of urinary tract infection in boys: a systematic review of randomised trials and observational studies. Arch Dis Child 2005 Aug;90(8):853-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15890696
62. Brandström P, Nevéus T, Sixt R, et al. The Swedish reflux trial in children: IV. Renal damage. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):292-7. Epub 2010 May 23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20494369
63. Greenfield SP, Chesney RW, Carpenter M, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux: the RIVUR study and the way forward. J Urol 2008 Feb; 179(2):405-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18076937
64. Greenfield SP. Antibiotic Prophylaxis in Pediatric Urology: An Update. Curr Urol Rep 2011 Jan 13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21229337
65. Garin EH, Olavarria F, Garcia Nieto V, et al. Clinical significance of primary vesicoureteral reflux and urinary antibiotic prophylaxis after acute pyelonephritis: a multicenter, randomized, controlled study. Pediatrics 2006 Mar;117(3):626-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16510640

66. Pennesi M, Travan L, Peratoner L, et al; North East Italy Prophylaxis in VUR study group. Is antibiotic prophylaxis in children with vesicoureteral reflux effective in preventing pyelonephritis and renal scars? A randomized, controlled trial. Pediatrics. 2008 Jun;121(6):e1489-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18490378
67. Montini G, Rigon L, Zucchetta P, et al; IRIS Group. Prophylaxis after first febrile urinary tract infection in children? A multicenter, randomized, controlled, noninferiority trial. Pediatrics 2008 Nov;122(5):1064-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18977988
68. Roussey-Kesler G, Gadjos V, Idres N, et al. Antibiotic prophylaxis for the prevention of recurrent urinary tract infection in children with low grade vesicoureteral reflux: results from a prospective randomized study. J Urol 2008;179(2):674-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082208
69. Brandström P, Esbjorner E, Herthelius M, et al. The Swedish Reflux Trial in Children: III. Urinary tract infection pattern. J Urol 2010;184(1):286-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488494
70. Puri P, Granata C. Multicenter survey of endoscopic treatment of vesicoureteral reflux using polytetrafluoroethylene. J Urol Sep 1998;160(3 Pt 2):1007-11; discussion 1038. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9719265
71. Steyaert H, Sattonnet C, Bloch C, et al. Migration of PTFE paste particles to the kidney after treatment for vesico-ureteric reflux. BJU Int Jan 2000;85(1):168-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10619969
72. Lightner DJ. Review of the available urethral bulking agents. Curr Opin Urol 2002 Jul;12(4):333-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072655
73. Elder JS, Diaz M, Caldamone AA, et al. Endoscopic therapy for vesicoureteral reflux: a meta-analysis. I. Reflux resolution and urinary tract infection. J Urol 2006 Feb;175(2):716-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16407037
74. Holmdahl G, Brandström P, Läckgren G, et al. The Swedish reflux trial in children: II. Vesicoureteral reflux outcome. J Urol 2010 Jul;184(1):280-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20488469
75. Duckett JW, Walker RD, Weiss R. Surgical results: International Reflux Study in Children--United States branch. J Urol 1992 Nov;148(5 Pt 2):1674-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433586
76. Lipski BA, Mitchell ME, Burns MW. Voiding dysfunction after bilateral extravesical ureteral reimplantation. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):1019-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474222
77. Janetschek G, Radmayr C, Bartsch G. Laparoscopic ureteral anti-reflux plasty reimplantation. First clinical experience. Ann Urol (Paris) 1995;29(2):101-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7645993
78. El-Ghoneimi A. Paediatric laparoscopic surgery. Curr Opin Urol 2003 Jul;13(4):329-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12811298
79. Jayanthi V, Patel A. Vesicoscopic ureteral reimplantation: a minimally invasive technique for the definitive repair of vesicoureteral reflux. Adv Urol 2008:973616 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19009038
80. Chung PH, Tang DY, Wong KK, et al. Comparing open and pneumovesical approach for ureteric reimplantation in pediatric patients--a preliminary review. J Pediatr Surg 2008 Dec;43(12):2246-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19009038
81. Riquelme M, Aranda A, Rodriguez C. Laparoscopic extravesical transperitoneal approach for vesicoureteral reflux. J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2006 Jun;16(3):312-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16796449
82. Canon SJ, Jayanthi VR, Patel AS. Vesicoscopic cross-trigonal ureteral reimplantation: a minimally invasive option for repair of vesicoureteral reflux. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):269-73; discussion 273. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499791
83. Marchini GS, Hong YK, Minnillo BJ, et al. Robotic assisted laparoscopic ureteral reimplantation in children: case matched comparative study with open surgical approach. J Urol 2011 May;185(5): 1870-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21421223
84. Austin JC, Cooper CS. Vesicoureteral reflux: who benefits from correction. Urol Clin North Am 2010 May;37(2):243-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20569802

16. URINARY STONE DISEASE

16.1 Background

Paediatric stone disease is an important clinical problem in paediatric urology practice. Because of its recurrent nature, every effort should be made to discover the underlying metabolic abnormality so that it can be treated appropriately. Obtaining a stone-free state with interventional management and close follow-up are of utmost importance.

Paediatric stone disease has its own unique features, which are different in both presentation and treatment compared to stone disease in adults. In contrast to adults with stone disease who are more likely to be male, boys and girls are affected almost equally. Most paediatric stones are located in the upper urinary tract. However, bladder stones are still common in underdeveloped areas of the world and are usually ammonium acid urate and uric acid stones, strongly implicating dietary factors (1).

The incidence and characteristics of stones show a wide geographical variation in children. Although urinary stone disease is generally considered to be a relatively rare disease, it is quite common in some parts of the world. Paediatric stone disease is endemic in Turkey, Pakistan and in some South Asian, African and South American states. In the UK and other European countries, 75% of calculi in children are composed of organic matrix and struvite, with many coinciding with Proteus infection and urinary tract anomalies (2).

16.2 Stone formation mechanisms, diagnosis of causative factors and medical treatment for specific stone types

Urinary stone formation is the result of a complex process involving metabolic, anatomical factors and presence of infection.

When supersaturated in urine calcium, oxalate, uric acid and cystine molecules may cause stone formation. A decreased concentration of crystallisation inhibitors (citrate, magnesium, pyrophosphate, macromolecules and glycosaminoglycans) may sometimes be the sole factor playing a role in the formation of urinary stones. Urinary pH changes also affect stone formation.

An impaired flow of urine due to abnormal morphology may facilitate stasis and increase the concentration of stone-forming substances.

16.2.1 ***Calcium stones***

Calcium stones are usually made from calcium oxalate or calcium phosphate. Either supersaturation of calcium (hypercalciuria) and oxalate (hyperoxaluria) or decreased concentration of inhibitors like citrate (hypocitraturia) play a major role in calcium oxalate stone formation.

Hypercalciuria. This is defined by a 24-hour urinary calcium excretion of more than 4 mg/kg/day in a child weighing less than 60 kg. In infants younger than 3 months, 5 mg/kg/day is considered to be the upper limit of normal for calcium excretion (3).

Hypercalciuria can be classified as either idiopathic or secondary. Idiopathic hypercalciuria is diagnosed when clinical, laboratory, and radiographic investigations fail to delineate an underlying cause. Secondary hypercalciuria occurs when a known process produces excessive urinary calcium. In secondary (hypercalcaemic) hypercalciuria, a high serum calcium level may be due to increased bone resorption (hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism, immobilisation, acidosis, metastatic disease) or gastrointestinal hyperabsorption (hypervitaminosis D) (4).

A good screening test for hypercalciuria compares the ratio of urinary calcium to creatinine. The normal calcium-to-creatinine ratio in children is less than 0.2. If the calculated ratio is higher than 0.2, repeat testing is indicated. Neonates and infants have a higher calcium excretion and lower creatinine excretion than older children (3,4). If the follow-up ratios are normal, then no additional testing for hypercalciuria is needed. However, if the ratio remains elevated, a timed 24-hour urine collection should be obtained and the calcium excretion calculated.

The 24-hour calcium excretion test is the criterion standard for the diagnosis of hypercalciuria. If calcium excretion is higher than 4 mg/kg/day (0.1 mmol/kg/day), the diagnosis of hypercalciuria is confirmed and further evaluation is warranted. Further evaluation includes levels of serum bicarbonate, creatinine, alkaline phosphatase, calcium, magnesium, pH, and parathyroid hormone. Freshly voided urine should be measured for pH (3-6).

A 24-hour urine collection should also be collected for measurement of calcium, phosphorus, sodium, magnesium, citrate and oxalate. Meanwhile dietary manipulations should be tried to normalise urine calcium (6).

Initial management is always to increase fluid intake and urinary flow. Dietary modification is a mandatory part of effective therapy. The child should be referred to a dietician to assess accurately the daily intake of calcium, animal protein, and sodium. Dietary sodium restriction is recommended as well as

maintenance of calcium intake consistent with the daily needs of the child (7).

A brief trial of a low-calcium diet can be carried out to determine if exogenous calcium intake is contributing to a high urinary calcium. However, great caution should be used when trying to restrict calcium intake for long periods (LE: 3; GR: B).

Hydrochlorothiazide and other thiazide-type diuretics may be used to treat hypercalciuria at a dosage of 1-2 mg/kg/day (2,8) (LE: 3; GR: C). Citrate therapy is also useful if citrate levels are low or if hypercalciuria persists, despite other therapies (2,9) (LE: 4; GR: C).

Hyperoxaluria. Oxalic acid is a metabolite excreted by the kidneys. Only 10-15% of oxalate comes from diet. Normal school children excrete less than 50 mg (0.57 mmol)/1.73m2/day (2,10), while infants excrete four times as much. Hyperoxaluria may result from increased dietary intake, enteric hyperabsorption (as in short bowel syndrome) or an inborn error of metabolism.

In primary hyperoxaluria, one of the two liver enzymes that play a role in the metabolism of oxalate may be deficient. In primary hyperoxaluria there is increased deposition of calcium oxalate in the kidney and in urine. With increased deposition of calcium oxalate in the kidneys, renal failure may ensue in resulting deposition of calcium oxalate in other tissues. The diagnosis is made upon laboratory findings of severe hyperoxaluria and clinical symptoms. The definitive diagnosis requires liver biopsy to assay the enzyme activity.

Other forms of hyperoxaluria, as mentioned earlier, may be due to hyperabsorption of oxalate in inflammatory bowel syndrome, pancreatitis and short bowel syndrome. Yet, the majority of children who have high levels of oxalate excretion in urine may not have any documented metabolic problem or any dietary cause. This is known as idiopathic 'mild' hyperoxaluria, with urine oxalate levels elevated only mildly in these cases. The treatment of hyperoxaluria consists of the promotion of high urine flow, restriction of dietary oxalate and regular calcium intake. Pyridoxine may be useful in reducing urine levels, especially in primary hyperoxaluria (2,10) (LE: 4; GR: C).

Hypocitraturia. Citrate is a urinary stone inhibitor. Citrate acts by binding to calcium and by directly inhibiting the growth and aggregation of calcium oxalate as well as calcium phosphate crystals. Thus, low urine citrate may be a significant cause of calcium stone disease. In adults, hypocitraturia is the excretion of citrate in urine of less than 320 mg/day (1.5 mmol/day) for adults; this value must be adjusted for children depending on body size (11,12).

Hypocitraturia usually occurs in the absence of any concurrent symptoms or any known metabolic derangements. It may also occur in association with any metabolic acidosis, distal tubular acidosis or diarrhoeal syndromes.

Environmental factors that lower urinary citrate include a high protein intake and excessive salt intake. Many reports emphasize the significance of hypocitraturia in paediatric calcium stone disease. The presence of hypocitraturia ranges from 30% to 60% in children with calcium stone disease.

Due to the increased stone risk in hypocitraturia, the restoration of normal citrate levels is advocated to reduce stone formation. Although some studies have shown that citrate replacement therapy reduces the risk of stone formation in an adult population, there are few relevant studies in children. Hypocitraturia is treated by potassium citrate at a starting dose of 1 mEq/kg, given in two divided doses (12) (LE: 3; GR: B).

16.2.2 ***Uric acid stones***

Uric acid stones are responsible for urinary calculi in 4-8% of children. Uric acid is the end product of purine metabolism. Hyperuricosuria is the main cause of uric acid stone formation in children. A daily output of uric acid of more than 10 mg/kg/day is considered to be hyperuricosuria (2).

The formation of uric acid stones is dependent, mainly on the presence of acidic urinary composition.

Uric acid dissociation and solubility is strongly reduced at pH of less than 5.8. As the pH becomes more alkaline, uric acid crystals become more soluble and the risk of uric acid stone formation is reduced.

In the familial or idiopathic form of hyperuricosuria, children usually have normal serum uric acid levels. In other children, it can be caused by uric acid overproduction secondary to inborn errors of metabolism, myeloproliferative disorders or other causes of cell breakdown. Hyperuricosuria is also caused by high purine and protein intake. Although hyperuricosuria is a risk factor for calcium oxalate stone formation in adults, this does not appear to be a significant risk factor in children.

Uric acid stones are non-opaque stones. Plain X-rays are insufficient to show uric acid stones, and renal sonography and spiral CT are used for diagnosis.

Alkalinisation of urine is the mainstay of therapy and prevention for uric acid stones. Citrate preparations are useful as alkalinising agents. Maintaining a urine pH of 6 to 6.5 is sufficient to prevent uric acid stones (2).

16.2.3 ***Cystine stones***

Cystinuria is the cause of cystine stone formation and accounts for 2-6% of all urinary stones in children. Cystinuria is an incompletely recessive autosomal disorder characterised by failure of renal tubules to reabsorb four basic amino acids: cystine, ornithine, lysine and arginine.

Of these four amino acids, only cystine has poor solubility in urine, so that only cystine stones may form in the case of excessive excretion in urine. Cystine solubility is pH-dependent, with cystine precipitation beginning at pH levels < 7.0. Other metabolic conditions, such as hypercalciuria, hypocitraturia and hyperuricosuria, may accompany cystinuria, so leading to the formation of mixed-composition stones.

Cystine stones are faintly radiolucent and may be difficult to show on regular radiograph studies. They are also hard in texture and more difficult to disintegrate by extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL).

The medical treatment for cystine stones aims to reduce cystine saturation in urine and increase its solubility. The initial treatment consists of maintaining a high urine flow and the use of alkalinising agents, such as potassium citrate to maintain urine pH at above 7.0. If this treatment fails, the use of α-mercaptopropionil glycine or D-penicillamine may reduce cystine levels in urine and prevent stone formation. Use of these drugs can be associated with severe side effects, such as bone marrow depression and nephrotic syndrome (13) (LE: 4; GR: C).

16.2.4 Infection stones (struvite stones)

Infection-related stones constitute nearly 5% of urinary stones in children. Bacteria capable of producing urease enzyme (Proteus, Klebsiella, Pseudomonas) are responsible for the formation of such stones.

Urease converts urea into ammonia and bicarbonate, so alkalinising the urine and further converting bicarbonate into carbonate. In the alkaline environment, triple phosphates form, eventually resulting in a supersaturated environment of magnesium ammonium phosphate and carbonate apatite, which in turn leads to stone formation.

In addition to bacterial elimination, stone elimination is essential for treatment, as stones will harbour infection and antibiotic treatment will not be effective. Consideration should be given to investigating any congenital problem that causes stasis and infection. Genitourinary tract anomalies predispose to formation of such stones.

16.3 Clinical presentation

Presentation tends to be age-dependent, with symptoms such as flank pain and haematuria being more common in older children. Non-specific symptoms (e.g. irritability, vomiting) are common in very young children. Haematuria, usually gross, occurring with or without pain, is less common in children. However, microscopic haematuria may be the sole indicator and is more common in children. In some cases, urinary infection may be the only finding leading to radiological imaging in which a stone is identified (14,15).

16.4 Diagnosis

16.4.1 ***Imaging***

Generally, ultrasonography should be used as a first study. Renal ultrasonography is very effective for identifying stones in the kidney. Many radiolucent stones can be identified with a simple abdominal flat-plate examination.

If no stone is found but symptoms persist, spiral CT scanning is indicated. The most sensitive test for identifying stones in the urinary system is non-contrast helical CT scanning. It is safe and rapid, with 97% sensitivity and 96% specificity (16-18) (LE: 2; GR: B).

Intravenous pyelography is rarely used in children, but may be needed to delineate the caliceal anatomy prior to percutaneous or open surgery.

16.4.2 ***Metabolic evaluation***

Due to the high incidence of predisposing factors for urolithiasis in children and high stone recurrence rates, every child with urinary stone should be given a complete metabolic evaluation (1,19,20).

Metabolic evaluation includes:

- Family and patient history of metabolic problems.
- Analysis of stone composition (following stone analysis, metabolic evaluation can be modified according to the specific stone type).
- Electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, calcium, phosphorus, alkaline phosphatase, uric acid, total protein, carbonate, albumin, and parathyroid hormone (if there is hypercalcaemia).
- Spot urinalysis and culture, including ratio of calcium to creatinine.
- Urine tests, including a 24-hour urine collection for calcium, phosphorus, magnesium, oxalate, uric acid citrate, cystine, protein, and creatinine clearance.

Figure 4 provides an algorithm of how to perform metabolic investigations in urinary stone disease in children and to plan medical treatment accordingly.

16.5 Management

With the advance of technology stone management has changed from open surgical approach to endoscopic techniques that are less invasive. Deciding the form of treatment depends on the number, size, location, composition and anatomy of the urinary tract (19,21,22).

Currently, most paediatric stones can easily be managed by SWL. Endoscopic treatment can be applied easily for ureteric and bladder stones. Percutaneous removal of stones is also possible for kidney stones in children. Only a small portion of children will need an open surgical approach.

16.5.1 ***Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (SWL)***

Many reports confirm that shock wave lithotripsy (SWL) can be performed in children with no suspicion of long-term morbidity of the kidney (23-28).

The mean number of shock waves for each treatment is about 1800 and 2000 (up to 4000 if needed) and the mean power set varies between 14 kV and 21 kV. The use of ultrasonography and digital fluoroscopy has significantly decreased the radiation exposure and it has been shown that children are exposed to significantly lower doses of radiation compared to adults (21,29,30). Concerns about anaesthesia do not seem to be a problem any more because of advances in technique and medication, even in the infant period. The type of anaesthesia should be general or dissociative for children under 10 years of age, whereas conventional intravenous sedation or patient-controlled analgesia is an option for older children who are able to co-operate (31) (LE: 2b).

Stone-free rates are significantly affected by various factors. Regardless of the location, as the stone size increases, the stone-free rates decrease and re-treatment rate increases. The stone-free rates for < 1 cm, 1-2 cm, > 2 cm and overall were reported as nearly 90%, 80%, 60% and 80%, respectively. As the stone size increases, the need for additional sessions increases (21,29,30,32-36).

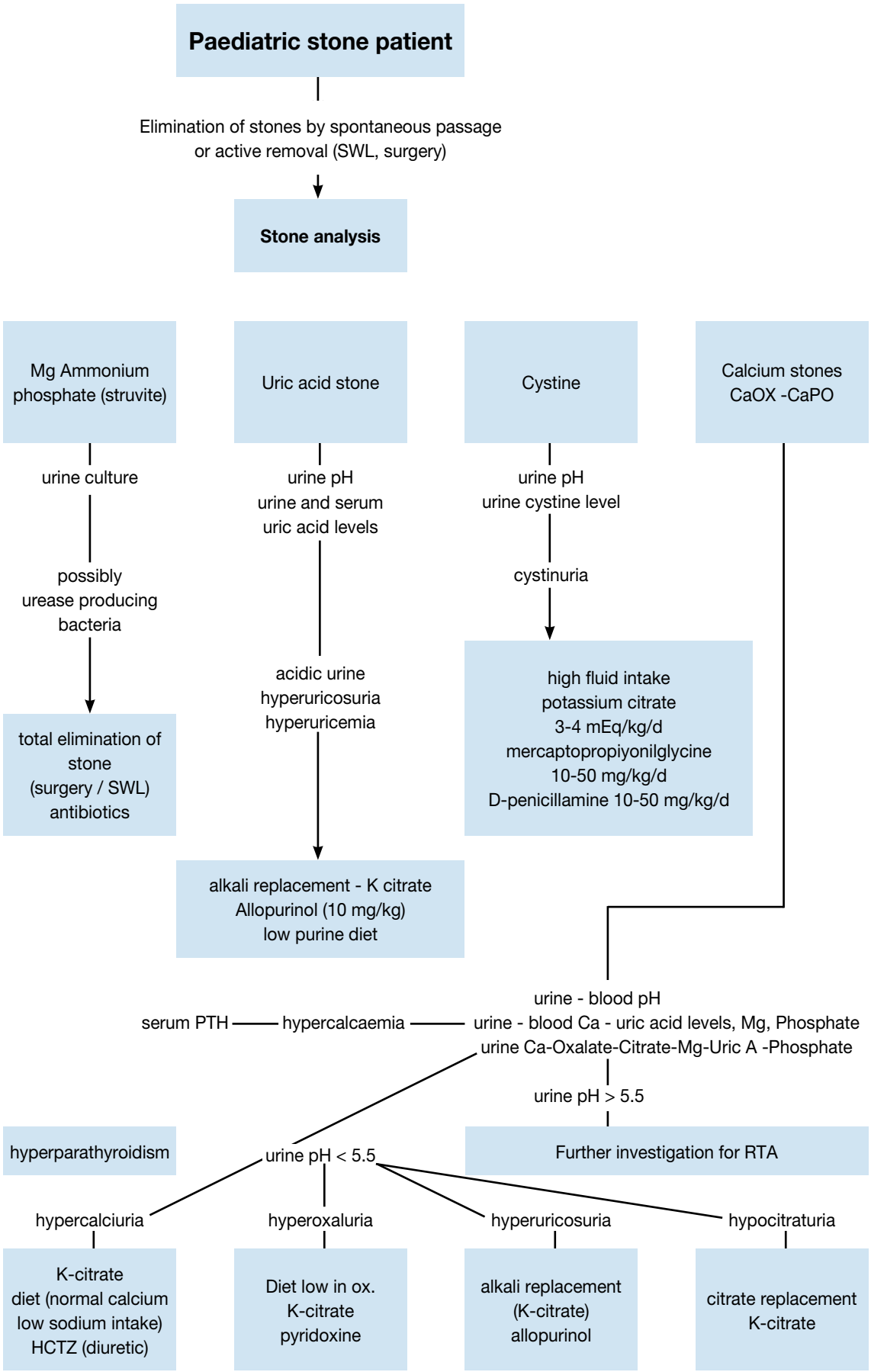
Localisation of the calculi has been described as a significant factor affecting the success rates in different studies. Stones in renal pelvis and upper ureter seem to respond better to SWL. In these mentioned sites, the stone clearance rates are nearly 90%. However, SWL was found to be less effective for caliceal stones particularly the lower caliceal stones. Several studies reported stone-free rates for isolated lower caliceal stones varying between 50% and 62% (37-40).

SWL treatment can also be used to treat ureteral calculi. However, this is a more specific issue and with controversies. The success rates with SWL are less for distal ureteric stones. There may also be technical problems with localisation and focusing of ureteric stones in children (37,39,40-42).

The type of machine used has a strong effect on success rates and complications. First-generation machines can deliver more energy to a larger focal zone, resulting in higher fragmentation rates in a single therapy. However, general anaesthesia is usually required due to the intolerable discomfort associated with a first-generation machine. Later-generation machines have a smaller focal zone and deliver less energy, and have a lower risk of pulmonary trauma. However, additional treatments may be needed with later-generation machines. The success rate is higher in younger children (35).

Although stenting does not affect stone clearance, overall complication rates are higher and hospital stay is longer in the unstented patient (34,35). Stenting is essential in solitary kidneys undergoing SWL treatment. Children with a large stone burden have a high risk of developing Steinstrasse and urinary obstruction and should be followed more closely for the risk of prolonged urinary tract obstruction after SWL. Post-SWL stent or nephrostomy tube placement may be needed in prolonged obstruction (20,36).

Figure 4: Algorithm for metabolic investigations in urinary stone disease in children



SWL = extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy; HCTZ = hydrochlorothiazide; PTH = parathyroid hormone; RTA = renal tubular acidosis.

SWL in children may have complications, but these are often self-limiting and transient. The most frequently observed complications are:

- Renal colic;
- Transient hydronephrosis;
- Dermal ecchymosis;
- Urinary tract infection;
- Formation of Steinstrasse;
- Sepsis;
- Rarely, haemoptysis.

In children with sterile pre-operative urine cultures, antibiotic prophylaxis to decrease the infectious complications is not recommended (43). However, every effort should be made to sterilise the urine before performing ESWL, ureteroscopy (URS), or percutaneous nephrolithotomy.

16.5.2 ***Percutaneous nephrolithotomy***

SWL is the first choice for treating most renal paediatric stones. However, percutaneous renal surgery can be used for larger and complex stones. Pre-operative evaluation, indication and surgical technique are similar in children compared to adults. PCNL is used as monotherapy in most cases, but is also used as an adjunctive procedure to other therapies.

The use of adult-sized instruments, in association with an increased number of tracts and sheath size, seems to increase the blood loss. However, small-calibre instruments have now been developed and there are some advantages for PCNL in children (particularly smaller children), such as smaller skin incision, single-step dilation and sheath placement, good working access for paediatric instruments, variable length, and lower cost (43,44). Now that appropriate-size instruments are available, age is no longer a limiting factor for PCNL.

As monotherapy, PCNL is considerably effective and safe. The reported stone-free rates in the recent literature are between 86.9% and 98.5% after a single session. These rates increase with adjunctive measures, such as second-look PCNL, SWL and URS. Even in complete staghorn cases, a clearance rate of 89% has been achieved following a single session (45-48,50,51).

The most frequently reported complications of PCNL in children are bleeding, post-operative fever or infection, and persistent urinary leakage. Bleeding requiring transfusion is reported in 0.4% to 23.9% and is closely associated with stone burden, operative time, sheath size and number of tracts. Post-operative fever and infection has been reported up to 29.3% and 5.5%, respectively; the origin of fever is not thought to be the infection (49-56).

The mean post-operative hospital stay is similar to adults. It is reported as 3 to 4 days in all the previously mentioned studies and is much shorter than open surgery. The less invasive nature of this technique has made it a promising alternative to open surgery for treating renal stones in children (LE: 2; GR: B).

16.5.3 ***Ureterorenoscopy***

The increasing availability of smaller size endourological equipment has made it possible to manage paediatric ureteral stones using endoscopic techniques.

The technique used in children is similar to the one used in adults. It is strongly recommended that guide wires are used and the procedure is performed using direct vision. Routine balloon dilation of ureterovesical junction and ureteral stenting are controversial. In general, ureteric dilatation is being done less and less and only in selected cases. The general tendency is to use hydrodilation more as it is shown to be as effective (57-60,43,61-63) (LE: 3; GR: B).

Different lithotripsy techniques, including ultrasonic, pneumatic and laser lithotripsy, have all been shown to be safe and effective. Because of the smaller size of the probes, laser energy is easier to use in smaller instruments and is more useful for paediatric cases (50,58,60,64-70).

All studies reporting the use of endoscopy for ureteric stones in children have clearly demonstrated that there is no significant risk of ureteric strictures or reflux with this mode of therapy (LE: 1; GR: A).

A multi-institutional study on the use of semi-rigid ureteroscopy for ureteral calculi in children has revealed that the procedure is effective with a 90% stone-free rate and efficacy quotient. The study also focused on the factors affecting the complication rates. The authors found that although operating time, age, institutional experience, orifice dilation, stenting and stone burden were significant on univariate analysis, multivariate analysis revealed that operating time was the only significant parameter affecting the complication rate (71).

A recent literature review contains a growing number of case series on the use of flexible ureterorenoscopic interventions in children. Both intrarenal and ureteric stones can be treated using this approach (72-76). In these series, the authors generally did not use active orifice dilation, but attempted to use a ureteral sheath where possible. However, an important problem was the inability to obtain retrograde access to the ureter

in approximately half of the cases (74,75). This problem can be overcome by stenting and leaving the stent indwelling for passive dilation of the orifice, and performing the procedure in a second session. The success rates varied between 60 and 100%, with a negligible number of complications (72-74,76). The need for additional procedures was related to stone size (72). Although the use of flexible instruments seems feasible for the present time, more data are needed for comparison with other endourological modalities in children.

*16.5.4 **Open stone surgery***

Most stones in children can be managed by SWL and endoscopic techniques. Yet in some situations, open surgery is inevitable. Good candidates for open stone surgery include very young children with large stones and/or a congenitally obstructed system which also requires surgical correction. Severe orthopaedic deformities may limit positioning for endoscopic procedures. Open surgery would also be a necessity for such children.

Bladder stones in children can usually be managed by endoscopic techniques. Open surgery may also be used for very large bladder stones or for bladder stones caused by an anatomical problem.

Recommendations for interventional management are given in Table 11.

Table 11: Recommendations for interventional management in paediatric stones

Stone size and localisation*	Primary treatment option	LE	Secondary treatment options	Comment
Staghorn stones	PCNL	2b	Open/SWL	Multiple sessions and accesses with PCNL maybe needed Combination with SWL may be useful
Pelvis < 10 mm	SWL	1a	RIRS/PCNL	
Pelvis 10-20 mm	SWL	2b	PCNL/Open	Multiple sessions with SWL may be needed PCNL has similar recommendation grade
Pelvis > 20 mm	PCNL	2b	SWL/Open	Multiple sessions with SWL may be needed
Lower pole calix < 10 mm	SWL	2c	RIRS/PCNL	Anatomical variations are important for complete clearance after SWL
Lower pole calix > 10 mm	PCNL	2b	SWL	Anatomical variations are important for complete clearance after SWL
Upper ureteric stones	SWL	2b	PCNL/URS/ Open	
Lower ureteric stones	URS	1a	SWL/Open	Additional intervention need is high with SWL
Bladder stones	Endoscopic	2b	Open	Open is easier and with less operative time with large stones

** Cystine and uric acid stones excluded.*
PCNL = percutaneous nephrolithostomy; SWL = shock-wave lithotripsy; RIRS = retrograde intrarenal surgery; URS = ureteroscopy.

16.6 References

1. Straub M, Strohmaier WL, Berg W, et al. Diagnosis and metaphylaxis of stone disease. Consensus concept of the National Working Committee on Stone Disease for the Upcoming German Urolithiasis Guideline. World J Urol 2005 Nov;23(5):309-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16315051
2. Bartosh SM. Medical management of pediatric stone disease. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Aug;31(3): 575-87,x-xi. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313066
3. Kruse K, Kracht U, Kruse U. Reference values for urinary calcium excretion and screening for hypercalciuria in children and adolescents. Eur J Pediatr 1984 Nov;143(1):23-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6510426

4. Sargent JD, Stukel TA, Kresel J, et al. Normal values for random urinary calcium to creatinine ratios in infancy. J Pediatr 1993 Sep;123(3):393-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8355114
5. Stapleton FB, Noe HN, Roy S 3rd, et al. Hypercalciuria in children with urolithiasis. Am J Dis Child 1982 Aug;136(8):675-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7102617
6. Stapleton FB, Noe HN, Roy S 3rd, et al. Urinary excretion of calcium following an oral calcium loading test in healthy children. Pediatrics 1982 May;69(5):594-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7079015
7. Borghi L, Schianchi T, Meschi T,et al. Comparison of two diets for the prevention of recurrent stones in idiopathic hypercalciuria. N Engl J Med 2002 Jan;346(2):77-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11784873
8. Preminger GM, Pak CY. Eventual attenuation of hypocalciuric response to hydrochlorothiazide in absorptive hypercalciuria. J Urol 1987 Jun;137(6):1104-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3586136
9. Tekin A, Tekgul S, Atsu N, et al. Oral potassium citrate treatment for idiopathic hypocitruria in children with calcium urolithiasis. J Urol 2002 Dec;168(6):2572-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12441986
10. Morgenstern BZ, Milliner DS, Murphy ME, et al. Urinary oxalate and glycolate excretion patterns in the first year of life: a longitudinal study. J Pediatr 1993 Aug;123(2):248-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8345420
11. Defoor W, Asplin J, Jackson E, et al. Results of a prospective trial to compare normal urine supersaturation in children and adults. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1708-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148687
12. Tekin A, Tekgul S, Atsu N, et al. A study of the etiology of idiopathic calcium urolithiasis in children: hypocitruria is the most important risk factor. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):162-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840454
13. Tekin A, Tekgul S, Atsu N, et al. Cystine calculi in children: the results of a metabolic evaluation and response to medical therapy. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2328-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371943
14. Bove P, Kaplan D, Dalrymple N, et al. Reexamining the value of hematuria testing in patients with acute flank pain. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):685-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458342
15. Sternberg K, Greenfield SP, Williot P, et al. Pediatric stone disease: an evolving experience. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1711-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148688
16. Oner S, Oto A, Tekgul S, et al. Comparison of spiral CT and US in the evaluation of paediatric urolithiasis. JBR-BTR 2004 Sep-Oct;87(5):219-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15587558
17. Memarsadeghi M, Heinz-Peer G, Helbich TH, et al. Unenhanced multi-detector row CT in patients suspected of having urinary stone disease: effect of section width on diagnosis. Radiology 2005 May;235(2):530-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758192
18. Strouse PJ, Bates DG, Bloom DA, et al. Non-contrast thin-section helical CT of urinary tract calculi in children. Pediatr Radiol 2002 May;32(5):326-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956719
19. Tiselius HG, Ackermann D, Alken P, et al; Working Party on Lithiasis, European Association of Urology. Guidelines on urolithiasis. Eur Urol 2001 Oct;40(4):362-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11713390
20. Tekin A, Tekgul S, Atsu N, et al. Ureteropelvic junction obstruction and coexisting renal calculi in children: role of metabolic abnormalities. Urology 2001 Mar;57(3):542-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248635
21. Raza A, Turna B, Smith G, et al. Paediatric urolithiasis: 15 years of local experience with minimally invasive endourological management of paediatric calculi. J Urol 2005 Aug;174(2):682-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006948
22. Rizvi SA, Naqvi SA, Hussain Z, et al. Paediatric urolithiasis: developing nation perspectives. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1):1522-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352448

23. Willis LR, Evan AP, Connors BA, et al . Relationship between kidney size, renal injury, and renal impairment induced by shock wave lithotripsy. J Am Soc Nephrol 1999 Aug;10(8):1753-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10446943
24. Villanyi KK, Szekely JG, Farkas LM, et al. Short-term changes in renal function after extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in children. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):222-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435873
25. Aldridge RD, Aldridge RC, Aldridge LM. Anesthesia for pediatric lithotripsy. Paediatr Anaesth 2006;16(3):236-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16490086
26. McLorie GA, Pugach J, Pode D, et al. Safety and efficacy of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in infants. Can J Urol 2003;10(6):2051-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14704109
27. Aksoy Y, Ozbey I, Atmaca AF, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in children: experience using a mpl-9000 lithotriptor. World J Urol 2004;22(2):115-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14740160
28. Vlajkovic M, Slavkovic A, Radovanovic M, et al. Long-term functional outcome of kidneys in children with urolithiasis after ESWL treatment. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2002 Apr;12(2):118-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12015657
29. Muslumanoglu AY, Tefekli A, Sarilar O, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy as first line treatment alternative for urinary tract stones in children: a large scale retrospective analysis. J Urol 2003;170(6 Pt 1):2405-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634438
30. Ather MH, Noor MA. Does size and site matter for renal stones up to 30-mm in size in children treated by extracorporeal lithotripsy? Urology 2003;61(1):212-5; discussion 215. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12559298
31. Ugur G, Erhan E, Kocabas S, et al. Anaesthetic/analgesic management of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in paediatric patients. Paediatr Anaesth 2003;13(1):85-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12535048
32. Rodrigues Netto N Jr, Longo JA, Ikonomidis JA, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy in children. J Urol 2002 May;167(5):2164-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11956471
33. Afshar K, McLorie G, Papanikolaou F, et al. Outcome of small residual stone fragments following shock wave lithotripsy in children. J Urol 2004;172(4 Pt 2):1600-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371769
34. Tan AH, Al-Omar M, Watterson JD, et al. Results of shockwave lithotripsy for pediatric urolithiasis. J Endourol 2004;18(6):527-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15333214
35. Lottmann HB, Traxer O, Archambaud F, et al. Monotherapy extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for the treatment of staghorn calculi in children. J Urol 2001;165(6 Pt 2):2324-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371942
36. Al-Busaidy SS, Prem AR, Medhat M. Pediatric staghorn calculi: the role of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy monotherapy with special reference to ureteral stenting. J Urol 2003;169(2):629-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544330
37. Ozgur Tan M, Karaoglan U, Sozen S, et al. Extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy for treatment of ureteral calculi in paediatric patients. Pediatr Surg Int 2003;19(6):471-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12736749
38. Demirkesen O, Onal B, Tansu N, et al. Efficacy of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for isolated lower caliceal stones in children compared with stones in other renal locations. Urology 2006;67(1):170-174; discussion 174-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413356
39. Ozgur Tan M, Karaoglan U, Sen I, et al. The impact of radiological anatomy in clearance of lower calyceal stones after shock wave lithotripsy in paediatric patients. Eur Urol 2003;43(2):188-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12565778
40. Onal B, Demirkesen O, Tansu N, et al. The impact of caliceal pelvic anatomy on stone clearance after shock wave lithotripsy for pediatric lower pole stones. J Urol 2004;172(3):1082-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311043
41. Landau EH, Gofrit ON, Shapiro A, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy is highly effective for ureteral calculi in children. J Urol 2001;165(6 Pt 2):2316-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371970

42. Hochreiter WW, Danuser H, Perrig M, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy for distal ureteral calculi: what a powerful machine can achieve. J Urol 2003;169(3):878-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576804
43. Wu HY, Docimo SG. Surgical management of children with urolithiasis. Urol Clin North Am 2004;31(3):589-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15313067
44. Jackman SV, Hedican SP, Peters CA, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in infants and preschool age children: experience with a new technique. Urology 1998;52(4):697-701.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763096
45. Sahin A, Tekgul S, Erdem E, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in older children. J Pediatr Surg 2000;35(9):1336-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10999692
46. Shokeir AA, El-Nahas AR, Shoma AM, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in treatment of large stones within horseshoe kidneys. Urology 2004;64(3):426-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15351557
47. Boormans JL, Scheepe JR, Verkoelen CF, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy for treating renal calculi in children. BJU Int 2005;95(4):631-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15705093
48. Dawaba MS, Shokeir AA, Hafez AT, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in children: early and late anatomical and functional results. J Urol 2004;172(3):1078-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311042
49. Zeren S, Satar N, Bayazit Y, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in the management of pediatric renal calculi. J Endourol 2002;16(2):75-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11962558
50. Desai MR, Kukreja RA, Patel SH, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy for complex paediatric renal calculus disease. J Endourol 2004;18(1):23-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15006048
51. Badawy H, Salama A, Eissa M, et al. Percutaneous management of renal calculi: experience with percutaneous nephrolithotomy in 60 children. J Urol 1999;162(5):1710-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524919
52. Holman E, Khan AM, Flasko T, et al. Endoscopic management of pediatric urolithiasis in a developing country. Urology 2004;63(1):159-62; discussion 162.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14751372
53. Aron M, Yadav R, Goel R, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy for complete staghorn calculi in preschool children. J Endourol 2005;19(8):968-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16253060
54. Salah MA, Tallai B, Holman E, et al. Simultaneous bilateral percutaneous nephrolithotomy in children. BJU Int 2005;95(1):137-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15638911
55. Samad L, Aquil S, Zaidi Z. Paediatric percutaneous nephrolithotomy: setting new frontiers. BJU Int 2006;97(2):359-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430647
56. Salah MA, Toth C, Khan AM, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy in children: experience with 138 cases in a developing country. World J Urol 2004;22(4):277-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15448997
57. Hill DE, Segura JW, Patterson DE, et al. Ureteroscopy in children. J Urol 1990;144(2 Pt 2):481-3; discussion 492-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2374224
58. Caione P, De Gennaro M, Capozza N, et al. Endoscopic manipulation of ureteral calculi in children by rigid operative ureterorenoscopy. J Urol 1990;144(2 Pt 2):484-5; discussion 492-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2374225
59. Minevich E, Defoor W, Reddy P, et al. Ureteroscopy is safe and effective in prepubertal children. J Urol 2005;174(1):276-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947666
60. Soygur T, Zumrutbas AE, Gulpinar O, et al. Hydrodilation of the ureteral orifice in children renders ureteroscopic access possible without any further active dilation. J Urol 2006;176(1):285-7; discussion 287.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753421

61. Al Busaidy SS, Prem AR, Medhat M. Paediatric ureteroscopy for ureteric calculi: a 4-year experience. Br J Urol 1997;80(5):797-801.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9393306
62. Schuster TG, Russell KY, Bloom DA, et al. Ureteroscopy for the treatment of urolithiasis in children. J Urol 2002;167(4):1813-5; discussion 1815-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912438
63. Richter S, Shalev M, Lobik L, et al. Early postoperative vesicoureteral refluxa temporary and infrequent complication: prospective study. J Endourol 1999;13(5):365-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10446797
64. Van Savage JG, Palanca LG, Andersen RD, et al.Treatment of distal ureteral stones in children: similarities to the american urological association guidelines in adults. J Urol 2000;164 (3 Pt 2): 1089-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958749
65. Bassiri A, Ahmadnia H, Darabi MR, et al. Transureteral lithotripsy in pediatric practice. J Endourol 2002;16(4):257-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12042111
66. Raza A, Smith G, Moussa S, et al. Ureteroscopy in the management of pediatric urinary tract calculi. J Endourol 2005 ;19(2):151-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15798409
67. Satar N, Zeren S, Bayazit Y, et al. Rigid ureteroscopy for the treatment of ureteral calculi in children. J Urol 2004;172(1):298-300.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201799
68. De Dominicis M, Matarazzo E, Capozza N, et al. Retrograde ureteroscopy for distal ureteric stone removal in children. BJU Int 2005;95(7):1049-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15839930
69. Dogan HS, Tekgul S, Akdogan B, et al. Use of the holmium:YAG laser for ureterolithotripsy in children. BJU Int 2004;94(1):131-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15217447
70. Thomas JC, DeMarco RT, Donohoe JM, et al. Paediatric ureteroscopic stone management. J Urol 2005;174(3):1072-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094060
71. Dogan HS, Onal B, Satar N, et al. Factors affecting complication rates of ureteroscopic lithotripsy in children: results of multi-institutional retrospective analysis by Pediatric Stone Disease Study Group of Turkish Pediatric Urology Society. J Urol 2011 Sep;186(3):1035-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21784482
72. Tanaka ST, Makari JH, Pope JC 4th, et al. Pediatric ureteroscopic management of intrarenal calculi. J Urol 2008 Nov;180(5):2150-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18804225
73. Dave S, Khoury AE, Braga L, et al. Single-institutional study on role of ureteroscopy and retrograde intrarenal surgery in treatment of pediatric renal calculi. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):1018-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18585764
74. Kim SS, Kolon TF, Canter D, et al. Pediatric flexible ureteroscopic lithotripsy: the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia experience. J Urol 2008 Dec;180(6):2616-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18950810
75. Corcoran AT, Smaldone MC, Mally D, et al. When is prior ureteral stent placement necessary to access the upper urinary tract in prepubertal children? J Urol 2008 Oct;180(4 Suppl):1861-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18721946
76. Abu Ghazaleh LA, Shunaigat AN, Budair Z. Retrograde intrarenal lithotripsy for small renal stones in prepubertal children. Saudi J Kidney Dis Transpl 2011 May;22(3):492-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21566306

17. OBSTRUCTIVE PATHOLOGY OF RENAL DUPLICATION: URETEROCELE AND ECTOPIC URETER

17.1 Background

Ureterocele and ectopic ureter are the two main anomalies associated with complete renal duplication, but they also occur in a single system. At present, antenatal ultrasonography detects both conditions in the majority of cases if associated with obstruction, and diagnosis is confirmed after birth by further examination. Later in life, these anomalies are revealed by clinical symptoms: UTI, pain, calculus formation, disturbances of micturition, and urinary incontinence. There is a wide variation of symptoms in patients with ureterocele (from the asymptomatic patient to urosepsis, urinary retention and upper tract dilatation after birth).

17.1.1 ***Ureterocele***

Ureterocele is 4-7 times more frequent in female than in male patients; the overall incidence in autopsies is around 1 in 4,000 children. Around 80% is associated with the upper pole ureter in duplicated systems and 20% in single systems. About 10% of ureteroceles are bilateral (1).

17.1.2 ***Ectopic ureter***

Ectopic ureter is less frequent than ureterocele (10 in 19,046 autopsies), but is also more common in female patients (male to female ratio, 1:5). Some remain asymptomatic, therefore, the true incidence is difficult to determine (2). Eighty per cent of ectopic ureters are associated with complete renal duplication, however, in male patients, most ectopic ureters are associated with a single system (3,4).

17.2 Definition and classification

17.2.1 ***Ureterocele***

Ureterocele is a cystic dilatation that develops in the intravesical part of the submucosal ureter. The aetiology remains unclear (5-7). A single-system uretereocele is associated with a kidney with one ureter, and in duplex systems, the ureterocele belongs to the upper pole.

Ureteroceles usually cause obstruction of the upper pole, but the degree of obstruction and functional impairment is variable according to the type of ureterocele and upper pole dysplasia. In the orthotopic form, there is often no or only mild obstruction, and frequently the function of the moiety is normal or slightly impaired, and the corresponding ureter may be dilated. Cystic renal dysplasia is also associated with a single system ureterocele (8,9). Vesicoureteral reflux can be observed in 50% on the ipsilateral side and 20% on the contralateral side. Reflux into the ureterocele is uncommon (10).

In the ectopic form, the upper pole is altered, frequently dysplastic, and hypo-functional or non-functional (11,12). The corresponding ureter is a megaureter. In the caeco-ureterocele (see definition below), the upper pole of the renal duplication is dysplastic and non-functional.

17.2.1.1 Ectopic (extravesical) ureterocele

If any portion of the ureterocele extends into the bladder neck or urethra, it is called an ectopic ureterocele. Ectopic ureterocele is the most common form of ureterocele (> 80%). It can be voluminous, dissociating the trigone and slipping into the urethra, and may prolapse through the urethral meatus (caeco-ureterocele). The ureterocele orifice is tight, and located in the bladder itself or below the neck. The ureter corresponding to the lower pole moiety is raised by the ureterocele and is frequently refluxing or compressed by the ureterocele, leading to an obstructive megaureter. A contralateral renal duplication is associated in 50% of cases. Occasionally, large ureteroceles are responsible for reflux or obstruction of the contralateral upper tract.

17.2.1.2 Orthotopic (intravesical) ureterocele

The intravesical or orthotopic ureterocele is completely located in the bladder. Intravesical ureteroceles are mostly combined with a single kidney system and account for about 15% of cases. It is seen more in older children or adults.

17.2.2 ***Ectopic ureter***

The term ectopic ureter describes a ureter with the orifice located at the bladder neck, in the urethra, or outside the urinary tract. The ureter can drain the upper pole of a duplex or single system. There is a fundamental difference between the sexes. In boys, the ectopic orifice is never below the external sphincter.

In girls, the ureteral orifice may be located (13):

- in the urethra, from the bladder neck to the meatus (35%)
- in the vaginal vestibule (34%)
- in the vagina (25%)
- in the uterus and Fallopian tube (6%).

In boys, the ureteral orifice may be located (13):

- in the posterior urethra (47%)
- in the prostatic utricle (10%)
- in the seminal vesicles (33%)
- in the vas deferens or ejaculatory ducts (10%).

17.3 Diagnosis

17.3.1 ***Ureterocele***

Prenatal ultrasound easily reveals voluminous obstructive ureteroceles (14,15). In cases with a small upper pole or a slightly obstructive ureterocele, prenatal diagnosis is difficult. If prenatal diagnosis is impossible, the following clinical symptoms, besides incidental findings, can reveal the congenital anomaly at birth or later:

- At birth, a prolapsed and sometimes strangulated ureterocele may be observed in front of the urethral orifice. In a newborn boy, it might cause acute urinary retention, simulating urethral valves.
- The early symptom of pyelonephritis in either sex may lead to the diagnosis.
- Later symptoms can include dysuria, recurrent cystitis and urgency.

In cases of prenatal diagnosis at birth, ultrasonography confirms the ureteral dilatation that ends at the upper pole of a renal duplication. It also demonstrates the presence of a ureterocele in the bladder, with a dilated ureter behind the bladder.
At this point, it is important to assess the function of the upper pole using nuclear renography of the region of interest. This is best assessed with DMSA (16-18). Magnetic resonance urography may visualise the morphological status of the upper pole and lower moieties and of the contralateral kidney. Based on the prevalence of high-grade reflux, VCUG is mandatory for identifying ipsilateral or contralateral reflux, and assessing the degree of intraurethral prolapse of the ureterocele (19).

Urethrocystoscopy may reveal the pathology in cases where it is difficult to make the differential diagnosis between ureterocele and ectopic megaureter.

17.3.2 ***Ectopic ureter***

Most of the ectopic megaureters are diagnosed primarily by ultrasonography. In some cases, clinical symptoms can lead to diagnosis:

- In neonates: dribbling of urine, pyuria, and acute pyelonephritis.
- In young girls: permanent urinary incontinence besides normal voiding, or significant vaginal discharge as the equivalent of incontinence; an ectopic orifice may be found in the meatal region (20).
- In pre-adolescent boys: epididymitis is the usual clinical presentation and the seminal vesicle may be palpable.

Ultrasonography, radionuclide studies (DMSA), VCUG, magnetic resonance urography, high-resolution MR imaging, and cystoscopy are the diagnostic tools to assess function, to detect reflux and rule out ipsilateral compression of the lower pole and urethral obstruction (21). In some cases, the large ectopic ureter presses against the bladder and can look like a pseudo-ureterocele (22,23).

Girls who present with lifelong minimal urinary incontinence, never being dry, normal bladder function, complete emptying, and normal ultrasound are very suspicious for ectopic ureter. This needs to be excluded or confirmed by further imaging (e.g. MRI). Filling the bladder with methylene blue and checking for clear urine output from the vagina can give clear evidence of extrasphincteric ureteral ectopia. This test is also helpful in confirming a vesicovaginal fistula (in this case blue fluid is drained from the vagina).

17.4 Treatment

17.4.1 ***Ureterocele***

The management is controversial with a choice between a conservative approach, endoscopic decompression, partial nephroureterectomy, or complete primary reconstruction (24-29). The choice of a therapeutic modality depends on the following criteria: clinical status of the patient (e.g. urosepsis); patient age; function of the upper pole; presence of reflux or obstruction of the ipsilateral or contralateral ureter; presence of bladder neck

obstruction caused by ureterocele; intravesical or ectopic ureterocele; and parents' and surgeon's preferences (30).

17.4.1.1 Early treatment

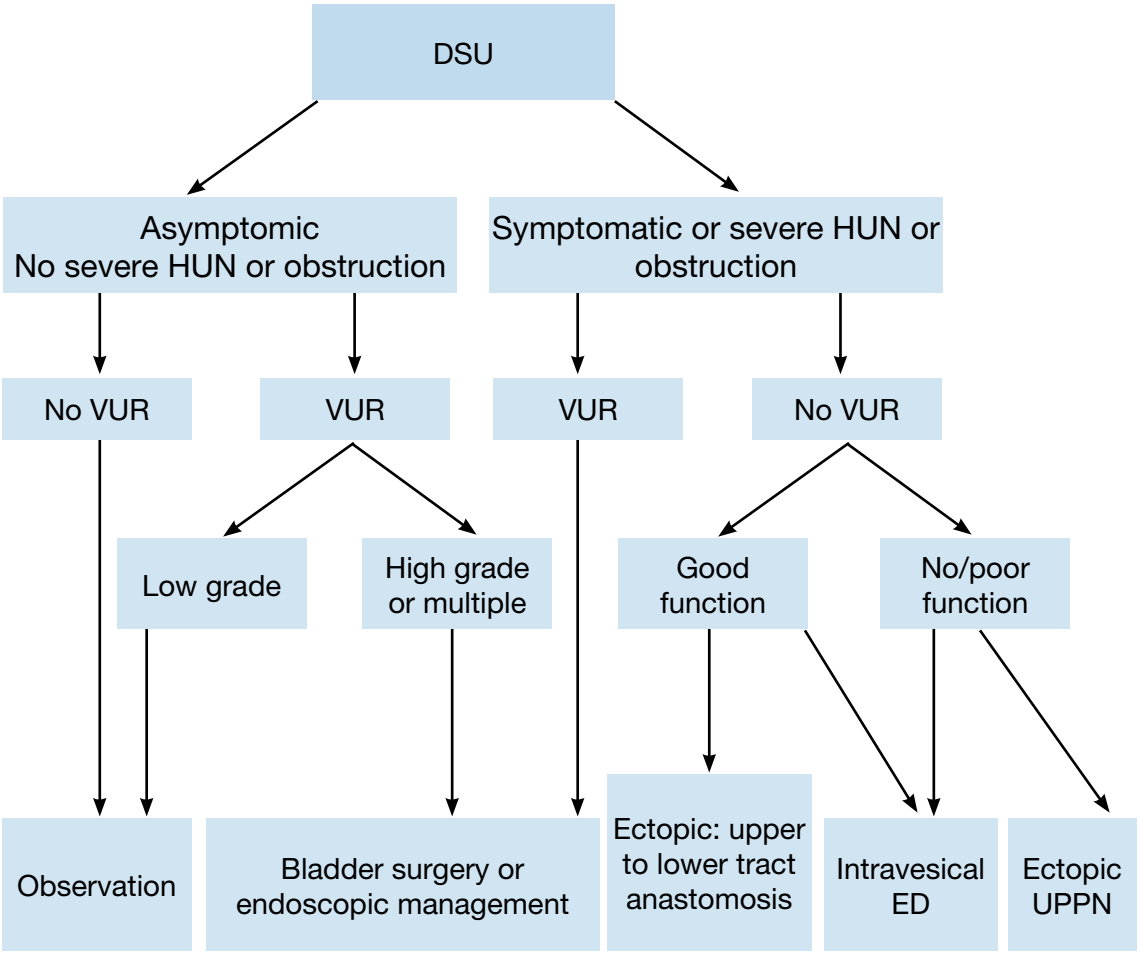
In the presence of febrile infection or obstruction at the bladder neck, immediate endoscopic incision or puncture of the ureterocele is recommended. In a clinically asymptomatic child with a ureterocele and a non- or hypofunctional upper pole, without significant obstruction of the lower pole and without bladder outlet obstruction, prophylactic antibiotic treatment is given until follow-up procedures are instigated.

17.4.1.2 Re-evaluation

Conservative treatment may be adopted in asymptomatic patients without any bladder outlet obstruction, without severe hydroureteronephrosis of the ureterocele moiety or high-grade (over grade III) reflux (30,31).

If decompression is effective and there is no reflux (~25% of cases and more often in intravesical ureterocele), the patient is followed-up conservatively. After an endoscopic incision, most of the children with an extravesical ureterocele (50-80%) need a secondary procedure, compared with only 18% of those with an intravesical ureterocele (32). Secondary surgery is necessary if decompression is not effective, significant reflux is present, or there is obstruction of the ipsi- or contralateral ureters, and/or bladder neck obstruction. Surgery may vary from upper pole nephrectomy to complete unilateral reconstruction (10,26,33-40). In an ectopic ureterocele with severe hydroureteronephrosis and without reflux, the primary upper tract approach without endoscopic decompression (partial upper-pole nephroureterectomy, pyelo/uretero-pyelo/ureterostomy and upper-pole ureterectomy) gives up to an 80% chance of being the definitive treatment (30,41).

Figure 5: Algorithm for the management of duplex system ureteroceles after the first 3-6 months of life (30)



DSU = duplex system ureterocele; ED = endoscopic decompression; HUN = hydroureteronephrosis; MCUG = micturating cystourethrography; UPPN = upper pole partial nephrectomy; VUR = vesicoureteric reflux.

Obstruction is considered to be the presence of non-refluxing dilatation of non-ureterocele-bearing moieties

(especially of the lower pole) or of an obstructive drainage pattern on diuretic renography. Endoscopic management includes decompression of ureterocele and endoscopic or conservative management of VUR.

17.4.2 ***Ectopic ureter***

In the majority of cases, the upper pole is dysplastic and heminephro-ureterectomy should be considered. Ureteral reconstruction (ureteral reimplantation/ ureteroureterostomy/ureteropyelostomy and upper-pole ureterectomy) is a therapeutic option in cases in which the upper pole has function worth preserving. Both procedures can be performed through an open or laparoscopic approach (42-44). In patients with bilateral single ectopic ureters (a very rare condition), an individual approach depending on the sex and renal and bladder function is necessary. Usually the bladder neck is insufficient in these patients (45-48).

17.5 References

1. Uson AC, Lattimer JK, Melicow MM. Ureteroceles in infants and children: a report based on 44 cases. Pediatrics 1961 Jun;27:971-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13779382
2. Prewitt LH Jr, Lebowitz RL. The single ectopic ureter. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1976 Dec;127(6):941-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/998831
3. Ahmed S, Barker A. Single-system ectopic ureters: a review of 12 cases. J Pediatr Surg 1992 Apr;27(4):491-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1522464
4. Schulman CC. The single ectopic ureter. Eur Urol 1976;2(2):64-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/971675
5. Chwalla R. The process of formation of cystic dilatation of the vesical end of the ureter and ofdiverticula at the ureteral ostium. Urol Cutan Ren 1927;31:499.
6. Stephens D. Caecoureterocele and concepts on the embryology and aetiology of ureteroceles. Aust N Z J Surg 1971 Feb;40(3):239-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5279434
7. Tokunaka S, Gotoh T, Koyanagi T, et al. Muscle dysplasia in megaureters. J Urol 1984 Feb;131(2): 383-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6699978
8. Sen S, Ahmed S. Single system ureteroceles in childhood. Aust N Z J Surg 1988 Nov;58(11):903-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3074770
9. Zerin JM, Baker DR, Casale JA. Single-system ureteroceles in infants and children: imaging features. Pediatr Radiol 2000 Mar;30(3):139-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755749
10. Monfort G, Guys JM, Coquet M et al. Surgical management of duplex ureteroceles. J Pediatr Surg 1992 May;27(5):634-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1625138
11. Upadhyay J, Bolduc S, Braga L, et al. Impact of prenatal diagnosis on the morbidity associated with ureterocele management. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2560-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992089
12. Bolduc S, Upadhyay J, Sherman C, et al. Histology of upper pole is unaffected by prenatal diagnosis in duplex system ureteroceles. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):1123-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187250
13. Ellerker AG. The extravesical ectopic ureter. Br J Surg 1958 Jan;45(192):344-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13536326
14. Di Benedetto V, Monfort G. How prenatal ultrasound can change the treatment of ectopic ureterocele in neonates? Eur J Pediatr Surg 1997 Dec;7(6):338-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9493984
15. Pfister C, Ravasse P, Barret E, et al. The value of endoscopic treatment for ureteroceles during the neonatal period. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):1006-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474217
16. Bozorgi F, Connolly LP, Bauer SB, et al. Hypoplastic dysplastic kidney with a vaginal ectopic ureter identified by technetium-99m-DMSA scintigraphy. J Nucl Med 1998 Jan;39(1):113-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9443748
17. Pattaras JG, Rushton HG, Majd M. The role of 99mtechnetium dimercapto-succinic acid renal scans in the evaluation of occult ectopic ureters in girls with paradoxical incontinence. J Urol 1999;162(3 Pt 1):821-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458388

18. Connolly LP, Connolly SA, Drubach LA, et al. Ectopic ureteroceles in infants with prenatal hydronephrosis: use of renal cortical scintigraphy. Clin Nucl Med 2002 Mar;27(3):169-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11852302
19. Bellah RD, Long FR, Canning DA. Ureterocele eversion with vesicoureteral reflux in duplex kidneys: findings at voiding cystourethrography. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1995 Aug;165(2):409-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7618568
20. Carrico C, Lebowitz RL. Incontinence due to an infrasphincteric ectopic ureter: why the delay in diagnosis and what the radiologist can do about it. Pediatr Radiol 1998 Dec;28(12):942-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9880638
21. Ehammer T, Riccabona M, Maier E. High resolution MR for evaluation of lower urogenital tract malformations in infants and children: feasibility and preliminary experiences. Eur J Radiol 2011 Jun;78(3):388-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20138451
22. Diard F, Chateil JF, Bondonny JM, et al. [Pseudo-ureteroceles resulting from the impression of a loop of a megaureter with an ectopic subvesical orifice]. J Radiol 1987 Mar;68(3):177-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3298636
23. Sumfest JM, Burns MW, Mitchell ME. Pseudoureterocele: potential for misdiagnosis of an ectopic ureter as a ureterocele. Br J Urol 1995 Mar;75(3):401-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7735809
24. Beganovic A, Klijn AJ, Dik P, et al. Ectopic ureterocele: long-term results of open surgical therapy in 54 patients. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):251-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499769
25. Decter RM, Roth DR, Gonzales ET. Individualized treatment of ureteroceles. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 2):535-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746775
26. Husmann D, Strand B, Ewalt D, et al. Management of ectopic ureterocele associated with renal duplication: a comparison of partial nephrectomy and endoscopic decompression. J Urol 1999 Oct;162(4):1406-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10492225
27. Byun E, Merguerian PA. A meta-analysis of surgical practice patterns in the endoscopic management of ureteroceles. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 2):1871-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945677
28. Chertin B, Mohanan N, Farkas A, et al. Endoscopic treatment of vesicoureteral reflux associated with ureterocele. J Urol 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 2):1594-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17707044
29. Moscovici J, Galinier P, Berrogain N, et al. [Management of ureteroceles with pyelo-ureteral duplication in children. Report of 64 cases]. Ann Urol (Paris) 1999;33(5):369-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10544742
30. Castagnetti M, El-Ghoneimi A. Management of duplex system ureteroceles in neonates and infants. Nat Rev Urol 2009 Jun;6(6):307-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19498409
31. Han MY, Gibbons MD, Belman AB, et al. Indications for nonoperative management of ureteroceles. J Urol. 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 2):1652-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16148674
32. Cooper CS, Passerini-Glazel G, Hutcheson JC, et al. Long-term followup of endoscopic incision of ureteroceles: intravesical versus extravesical. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 2):1097-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10958751
33. Jayanthi VR, Koff SA. Long-term outcome of transurethral puncture of ectopic ureteroceles: initial success and late problems. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 2):1077-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458435
34. Hendren WH, Mitchell ME. Surgical correction of ureteroceles. J Urol 1979 May;121(5):590-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/439252
35. Scherz HC, Kaplan GW, Packer MG, et al. Ectopic ureteroceles: surgical management with preservation of continence--review of 60 cases. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 2):538-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746776
36. Adorisio O, Elia A, Landi L, et al. Effectiveness of primary endoscopic incision in treatment of ectopic ureterocele associated with duplex system. Urology 2011 Jan;77(1):191-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21168903

37. Pohl HG. Recent advances in the management of ureteroceles in infants and children: why less may be more. Curr Opin Urol 2011 Jul;21(4):322-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21519275
38. Pearce R, Subramaniam R. Partial nephroureterectomy in a duplex system in children: the need for additional bladder procedures. Pediatr Surg Int 2011 Dec;27(12):1323-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21877243
39. Jesus LE, Farhat WA, Amarante AC, et al. Clinical evolution of vesicoureteral reflux following endoscopic puncture in children with duplex system ureteroceles. J Urol 2011 Oct;186(4):1455-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21862045
40. DeFoor W, Minevich E, Tackett L, et al. Ectopic ureterocele: clinical application of classification based on renal unit jeopardy. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):1092-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576859
41. Husmann DA, Ewalt DH, Glenski WJ, et al. Ureterocele associated with ureteral duplication and a nonfunctioning upper pole segment: management by partial nephroureterectomy alone. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 2):723-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609163
42. el Ghoneimi A, Miranda J, Truong T, et al. Ectopic ureter with complete ureteric duplication: conservative surgical management. J Pediatr Surg 1996 Apr;31(4):467-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8801293
43. Smith FL, Ritchie EL, Maizels M, et al. Surgery for duplex kidneys with ectopic ureters: ipsilateral ureteroureterostomy versus polar nephrectomy. J Urol 1989 Aug;142(2 Pt 2):532-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2746774
44. Storm DW, Modi A, Jayanthi VR. Laparoscopic ipsilateral ureteroureterostomy in the management of ureteral ectopia in infants and children. J Pediatr Urol 2011 Oct;7(5):529-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20869918
45. Johnin K, Narita M, Kim CJ, et al. Bilateral single ectopic ureters with hypoplastic bladder: how should we treat these challenging entities? J Pediatr Urol 2007 Jun;3(3):243-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18947744
46. Roy Choudhury S, Chadha R, Bagga D, et al. Spectrum of ectopic ureters in children. Pediatr Surg Int. 2008 Jul;24(7):819-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18463883
47. Herndon CD, Ferrer FA, McKenna PH. A complex urologic problem demonstrates how far pediatric urology has progressed. Conn Med 1999 Dec;63(12):707-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10659470
48. Jayanthi VR, Churchill BM, Khoury AE, et al. Bilateral single ureteral ectopia: difficulty attaining continence using standard bladder neck repair. J Urol 1997 Nov;158(5):1933-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9334642

18. DISORDERS OF SEX DEVELOPMENT

18.1 Background

The formerly called ‘intersex disorders’ were recently the subject of a consensus document in which it was decided that the term ‘intersex’ should be changed to ‘disorders of sex development’ (DSD) (1,2).

The new classification has arisen because of advances in knowledge of the molecular genetic causes of abnormal sexual development, controversies inherent to clinical management and ethical issues. Controversial and pejorative terminology, e.g. ‘pseudohermaphroditism’ and ‘hermaphroditism’, have been renamed according to the new pathophysiological insights. Furthermore, some conditions presenting with severe male genital malformation, such as penile agenesis, cloacal exstrophy, which could not be categorised, have also been included. The term ‘disorders of sex development’ is proposed to indicate congenital conditions with atypical development of chromosomal, gonadal or anatomical sex.

We refer to the consensus document as a general guideline, while this chapter will focus on what is relevant for the practising paediatric urologist. As the urologist is likely to be involved in both surgical and nonsurgical neonatal work, this chapter will discuss the neonatal emergency and the diagnostic and therapeutic role of the paediatric urologist.

Overall, there is a low evidence base for the published literature on DSD. There are no randomised controlled trials and most studies are based on retrospective clinical descriptive studies (grade 4 level of evidence) or are expert opinion. An exception is the risk of gonadal cancer, for which the level of evidence is higher.

Disorders of sex development require a multidisciplinary approach to diagnosis and treatment, which should include geneticists, neonatologists, paediatric and adult endocrinologists, gynaecologists, psychologists, ethicists and social workers. Each team member should be specialised in DSD and a team should have enough new patients to ensure experience.

18.2 The neonatal emergency

The first step is to recognise the possibility of DSD (Table 12) and to refer the newborn baby immediately to a tertiary paediatric centre, fully equipped with neonatal, genetics, endocrinology and paediatric urology units. At the paediatric centre, the situation should be explained to the parents fully and kindly. Registering and naming the newborn should be delayed as long as necessary.

18.2.1 Family history and clinical examination

A careful family history must be taken followed by a thorough clinical examination (Table 13).

Table 12: Findings in a newborn suggesting the possibility of DSD (adapted from the American Academy of Pediatrics)

Apparent male
Severe hypospadias associated with bifid scrotum
Undescended testis/testes with hypospadias
Bilateral non-palpable testes in a full-term apparently male infant
Apparent female
Clitoral hypertrophy of any degree, non-palpable gonads
Vulva with single opening
Indeterminate
Ambiguous genitalia

Table 13: Diagnostic work-up of neonates with ambiguous genitalia

History (family, maternal, neonatal)
Parental consanguinity
Previous DSD or genital anomalies
Previous neonatal deaths
Primary amenorrhoea or infertility in other family members
Maternal exposure to androgens
Failure to thrive, vomiting, diarrhoea of the neonate
Physical examination
Pigmentation of genital and areolar area
Hypospadias or urogenital sinus
Size of phallus
Palpable and/or symmetrical gonads
Blood pressure
Investigations
Blood analysis: 17-hydroxyprogesterone, electrolytes, LH, FSH, TST, cortisol, ACTH
Urine: adrenal steroids
Karyotype
Ultrasound
Genitogram
hCG stimulation test

Androgen-binding studies
Endoscopy

LH = luteinizing hormone; FSH = follicle stimulating hormone; TST = testosterone; ACTH = adrenocorticotropic hormone; hCG = human chorionic gonadotrophin.

18.2.2 ***Choice of laboratory investigations***

The following laboratory investigations are mandatory:

- Karyotype;
- Plasma 17-hydroxyprogesterone assay;
- Plasma electrolytes;
- Ultrasonography to evaluate the presence of Müllerian duct structures.

These investigations will provide evidence of congential adrenal hyperplasia (CAH), which is the most frequently occurring DSD. If this evidence is found, no further investigation is needed. If not, then the laboratory work-up should proceed further.

The hCG stimulation test is particularly helpful in differentiating the main syndromes of 46XYDSD by evaluating Leydig cell potential. When testosterone metabolism is evaluated, the presence or absence of metabolites will help to define the problem. An extended stimulation can help to define phallic growth potential and to induce testicular descent in some cases of associated cryptorchidism.

18.3 Gender assignment

This is a very complicated task. It should take place after a definitive diagnosis has been made. The idea that an individual is sex-neutral at birth and that rearing determines gender development is no longer the standard approach. Instead, gender assignment decisions should be based upon:

- age at presentation;
- fertility potential;
- size of the penis;
- presence of a functional vagina;
- endocrine function;
- malignancy potential;
- antenatal testosterone exposure;
- general appearance;
- psychosocial well-being and a stable gender identity.

Each patient presenting with DSD should be assigned a gender as quickly as a thorough diagnostic evaluation permits.

18.4 Role of the paediatric urologist

The role of the paediatric urologist can be divided into a diagnostic role and a therapeutic role (Table 14). Each of these roles will be discussed briefly.

Table 14: Role of the paediatric urologist

Diagnostic role

- Clinical examination
- Ultrasound
- Genitography
- Cystoscopy
- Diagnostic laparoscopy

Therapeutic role

- Masculinising surgery
- Feminising surgery
- Gonadectomy

18.4.1 ***Diagnosis***

18.4.1.1 Clinical examination

A good clinical examination in a neonate presenting with ambiguous genitalia is important. As well as a good description of the ambiguous genitalia, some detailed information should be given on palpability and localisation of the gonads. Information gathered by the various examinations described below should help the team to come to a final diagnosis.

Palpable gonad. It must be remembered that if it is possible to feel a gonad, it is almost certainly a testis; this

clinical finding therefore virtually excludes 46XXDSD.

Medical photography can be useful but requires sensitivity and consent (3).

Phallus. The phallus should be measured. A cotton bud placed at the suprapubic base of the implant of the stretched phallus allows for a good measurement of phallic length.

Urogenital sinus opening. The opening of the urogenital sinus must be well evaluated. Is there only one opening visible? Can a hymenal ring be seen? What does the fusion of the labioscrotal folds look like; do the folds show rugae or some discolouration?

18.4.1.2 Investigations
Ultrasound can help to describe the palpated gonads or to detect non-palpated gonads. However, the sensitivity and specificity are not high. On ultrasound, the Mülllerian structures can be evaluated. Is there a vagina? Are there some abdominal gonads? Is there a vaginal or utriculur structure visible? (4,5).

Genitography can provide some more information on the urogenital sinus. How low or how high is the confluence? Is there any duplication of the vagina? How does the urethra relate to the vagina?

General anaesthesia. In some cases, further examinations under general anaesthesia can be helpful. On cystoscopy, the urogenital sinus can be evaluated and the level of confluence between the bladder neck and the bladder. Cystoscopy can also be used to evaluate the vagina or utriculus, e.g. the presence of a cervix at the top of the vagina can be important information.

Laparoscopy is necessary to obtain a final diagnosis on the presence of impalpable gonads and on the presence of Müllerian structures. If indicated, a gonadal biopsy can be performed (6,7).

18.5 Management

Referring to the consensus document (1,2), it is clear that the timing of surgery is much more controversial than it used to be.
The rationale for early surgery includes:

- beneficial effects of oestrogen on infant tissue;
- avoiding complications from anatomical anomalies;
- minimising family distress;
- mitigating the risks of stigmatisation and gender-identity confusion (8).

However, adverse outcomes have led to recommendations to delay unnecessary surgery to an age when the patient can give informed consent. Surgery that alters appearance is not urgent. Early surgery should be reserved for those patients with high confluent urogenital tracts, girls with severely masculinised genitalia and boys with undervirilised genitals. Vaginoplasty should be delayed until puberty and milder forms of masculinisation should not be treated surgically.

18.5.1 ***Feminising surgery***

Clitororeduction. Reduction of an enlarged clitoris should be done with preservation of the neurovascular bundle. Clitoral surgery has been reported to have an adverse outcome on sexual function and clitoral surgery should therefore be limited to severely enlarged clitorises (9,10). Informed parental consent should be obtained. Although some techniques that conserve erectile tissue have been described, the long-term outcome is unknown (11).

Separation of the vagina and the urethra is preserved for high confluence anomalies. Many techniques for urogenital sinus repair have been described, but their outcome has not been evaluated prospectively (12,13).

Vaginoplasty should be performed during the teenage years. Every technique (self dilatation, skin or bowel substitution) has its specific advantages and disadvantages (14). All carry a potential for scarring that would require further surgery before sexual function was possible.

Aesthetic refinements. The goals of genital surgery are to maximise anatomy to allow sexual function and romantic partnering. Aesthetics are important in this perspective. The reconstruction of minor labiae from an enlarged clitoral hood is an example of aesthetic refinement.

18.5.2 ***Masculinising surgery***

Hormone therapy early in life is advocated by many doctors. The level of evidence is low for restoration of normal penile size.

Hypospadias surgery. See section on hypospadias (Chapter 6).

Excision of Mullerian structures. In the DSD patient assigned a male gender, Müllerian structures should be excised. There is no evidence about whether utricular cysts need to be excised.

Orchiopexy. See section on orchidopexy (Chapter 3).

Phalloplasty. The increasing experience of phalloplasty in the treatment of female to male transsexual patients has led to reports about the reliability and feasibility of this technique. It has therefore become available to treat severe penile inadequacy in DSD patients.

Aesthetic refinements. These include correction of penoscrotal transposition, scrotoplasty and insertion of testicular prostheses.

Gonadectomy. Germ cell malignancy only occurs in patients with DSD who have Y-chromosomal material. The highest risk is seen in patients with gonadal dysgenesis and in patients with partial androgen insensitivity with intra-abdominal gonads (LE: 2). Intra-abdominal gonads of high-risk patients should be removed at the time of diagnosis (15) (GR: A).

18.6 References

1. Lee PA, Houk CP, Ahmed SF, et al; International Consensus Conference on Intersex organized by the Lawson Wilkins Pediatric Endocrine Society and the European Society for Paediatric Endocrinology. Consensus statement on management of intersex disorders. International Consensus Conference on Intersex. Pediatrics 2006;118(2):e488-e500. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882788
2. Houk CP, Hughes IA, Ahmed SF, et al; Writing Committee for the International Intersex Consensus Conference Participants. Summary of consensus statement on intersex disorders and their management. International Intersex Consensus Conference. Pediatrics 2006;118(2):753-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882833
3. Creighton S, Alderson J, Brown S, et al. Medical photography: ethics, consent and the intersex patient. BJU Int 2002;89(1):67-1; discussion 71-2. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11849163
4. Biswas K, Kapoor A, Karak AK, et al. Imaging in intersex disorders. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2004;17(6):841-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15270401
5. Wright NB, Smith C, Rickwood AM, et al. Imaging children with ambiguous genitalia and intersex states. Clin Radiol 1995;50(12): 823-9. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8536391
6. Chertin B, Koulikov D, Alberton J, et al. The use of laparoscopy in intersex patients. Pediatr Surg Int 2006;22(5):405-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16521001
7. Denes FT, Mendonca BB, Arap S. Laparoscopic management of intersexual states. Urol Clin North Am 2001;28(1):31-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11277066
8. [No authors listed] Timing of elective surgery on the genitalia of male children with particular reference to the risks, benefits, and psychological effects of surgery and anesthesia. American Academy of Pediatrics. Pediatrics 1996;97(4):590-4. [no abstract available] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8632952
9. Creighton SM. Adult female outcomes of feminising surgery for ambiguous genitalia. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 2004;2(2):199-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16429106
10. Minto CL, Liao LM, Woodhouse CR, et al. The effect of clitoral surgery on sexual outcome in individuals who have intersex conditions with ambiguous genitalia: a crosssectional study. Lancet 2003;361(9365):1252-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12699952

11. Crouch NS, Creighton SM. Minimal surgical intervention in the management of intersex conditions. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2004;17(12):1591-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15645692
12. Jenak R, Ludwikowski B, Gonzalez R. Total urogenital sinus mobilization: a modified perineal approach for feminizing genitoplasty and urogenital sinus repair. J Urol 2001;165(6 Pt 2):2347-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371975
13. Leclair MD, Gundetti M, Kiely EM, et al. The surgical outcome of total urogenital mobilization for cloacal repair. J Urol 2007;177(4):1492-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382761
14. Schober JM. Feminizing genitoplasty: a synopsis of issues relating to genital surgery in intersex individuals. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 2004;17(5):697-703. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15237702
15. Cools M. Drop SL, Wolffenbuttel KP, et al. Germ cell tumors in the intersex gonad: old paths, new directions, moving frontiers. Endocr Rev 2006;27(5):468-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16735607

19. POSTERIOR URETHRAL VALVES

19.1 Background

Posterior urethral valves (PUV) are one of the few life-threatening congenital anomalies of the urinary tract found during the neonatal period. Despite optimal treatment, PUV in children may result in renal insufficiency in nearly 35% of cases. PUV are found in 1 in 1,250 in a population undergoing foetal ultrasound screening (1). An incidence of PUV of 1 in 5,000-12,500 live-births has been estimated (2,3). In one report, up to 46% of foetuses with a PUV diagnosis were terminated (4), indicating a possible decrease in incidence.

19.2 Classification

*19.2.1 **Urethral valve***

Despite recent attempts to introduce new classification terms, such as 'congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane (COPUM)' (5), the original classification by Hugh Hampton Young remains the most commonly used (6).

Hampton Young described three categories: type I, type II and type III. However, today, only type I and type III are found to be obstructive. As type II seems to be more like a fold and not obstructive, it is no longer referred to as a valve. Hampton Young's descriptions of type I and III are as follows:

Type I (90-95%). 'In the most common type there is a ridge lying on the floor of the urethra, continuous with the verumontanum, which takes an anterior course and divides into two fork-like processes in the region of the bulbo-membranous junction. These processes are continued as thin membranous sheets, direct upward and forward which may be attached to the urethra throughout its entire circumference. It is generally supposed that the valves have complete fusion anteriorly, leaving only an open channel at the posterior urethral wall. Yet the fusion of the valves anteriorly may not be complete in all cases, and this point a slight separation of the folds exist' (6).

Type III. 'There is a third type which has been found at different levels of the posterior urethra and which apparently bears no such relation to the verumontanum. This obstruction was attached to the entire circumference of the urethra, with a small opening in the centre' (6).

The transverse membrane described has been attributed to incomplete dissolution from the urogenital portion of the cloacal membrane (7). The embryology of the urethral valves is poorly understood. The membrane may be an abnormal insertion of the mesonephric ducts into the foetal cloaca (8).

19.3 Diagnosis

An obstruction above the level of the urethra affects the whole urinary tract in varying degrees.

- The prostatic urethra is distended and the ejaculatory ducts may be dilated due to urinary reflux. The bladder neck is hypertrophied and rigid.
- The hypertrophied bladder occasionally has multiple diverticula.
- Nearly all valve patients have dilatation of both upper urinary tracts. This may be due to the valve itself and the high pressure in the bladder, or due to obstruction of the uretereovesical junction by the

hypertrophied bladder.

- If there is secondary reflux, the affected kidney functions poorly in most cases.

During prenatal ultrasonography screening, bilateral hydroureteronephrosis and a distended bladder are suspicious signs of a urethral valve. If a dilated posterior urethra and a thick-walled bladder ('keyhole' sign) are seen, a PUV is likely. In the presence of increased echogenity of the kidney, dilatation of the urinary tract and oligohydramnion, the diagnosis of a PUV should strongly be considered.

A voiding cysturethrography (VCUG) confirms a PUV diagnosis. This study is essential whenever there is a question of an infravesical obstruction, as the urethral anatomy is well outlined during voiding. A secondary reflux is observed in at least 50% of patients with PUV (9). Reflux is consistently associated with renal dysplasia in patients with PUV. It is generally accepted that reflux in the renal units acts as a 'pressure pop-off valve', which would protect the other kidney, leading to a better prognosis (10). Other types of pop-off mechanism include bladder diverticula and urinary extravasation, with or without urinary ascites (11). However, in the long-term, a supposed protective effect did not show a significant difference compared to other patients with PUV (12,13).

Nuclear renography with split renal function is important to assess kidney function. Creatinine, blood urea nitrogen and electrolytes should be monitored closely during the first few days. A nadir creatinine of 80 µmol/L is correlated with a better prognosis (14).

19.4 Treatment

19.4.1 ***Antenatal treatment***

About 40-60% of PUV are discovered before birth (15). The intrauterine obstruction leads to a decreased urine output, which could result in an oligohydramnios. Amnion fluid is necessary for normal development of the lung and its absence may lead to pulmonary hypoplasia, causing a life-threatening problem. Intrauterine attempts have been made to treat a foetus with PUV.

As renal dysplasia is not reversible, it is important to identify those foetuses with good renal function. A sodium level below 100 mmol/L, a chloride value of < 90mmol/L and an osmolarity below 200 mOsm/L found in three foetal urine samples gained on three different days are associated with a better prognosis (16).

The placing of a vesicoamniotic shunt has a complication rate of 21-59%, dislocation of the shunt occurs in up to 44%, mortality lies between 33% and 43%, and renal insufficiency is above 50% (16-18). Although shunting is effective in reversing oligohydramnios, it makes no difference to the outcome and longterm results of patients with PUV (17,18).

19.4.2 ***Postnatal treatment***

Bladder drainage. If a boy is born with suspected PUV, drainage of the bladder and, if possible, an immediate VCUG is necessary. A neonate can be catheterised with a 3.5-5 F catheter. A VCUG is performed to see if the diagnosis is correct and whether the catheter is within the bladder and not in the posterior urethra. An alternative option is to place a suprapubic catheter, perform a VCUG and leave the tube until the neonate is stable enough to perform an endoscopic incision or resection of the valve.

Valve ablation. When the medical situation of the neonate has stabilised and the creatinine level decreased, the next step is to remove the intravesical obstruction. Small paediatric cystoscopes and resectoscopes are now available either to incise or to resect the valve at the 4-5, 7-8 or 12 o'clock position, or at all three positions, depending on the surgeon's preference. It is important to avoid extensive electrocoagulation as the most common complication of this procedure is stricture formation.

Vesicostomy. If the child is too small and/or too ill to undergo endoscopic surgery, a vesicostomy is used to drain the bladder temporarily. If initially a suprapubic tube has been inserted, this can be left in place for 6-12 weeks. Otherwise, a cutaneous vesicostomy provides an improvement or stabilisation of upper urinary tracts in over 90% of cases (19). Although there has been concern that a vesicostomy could decrease bladder compliance or capacity, so far there are no valid data to support these expectations (20-22).

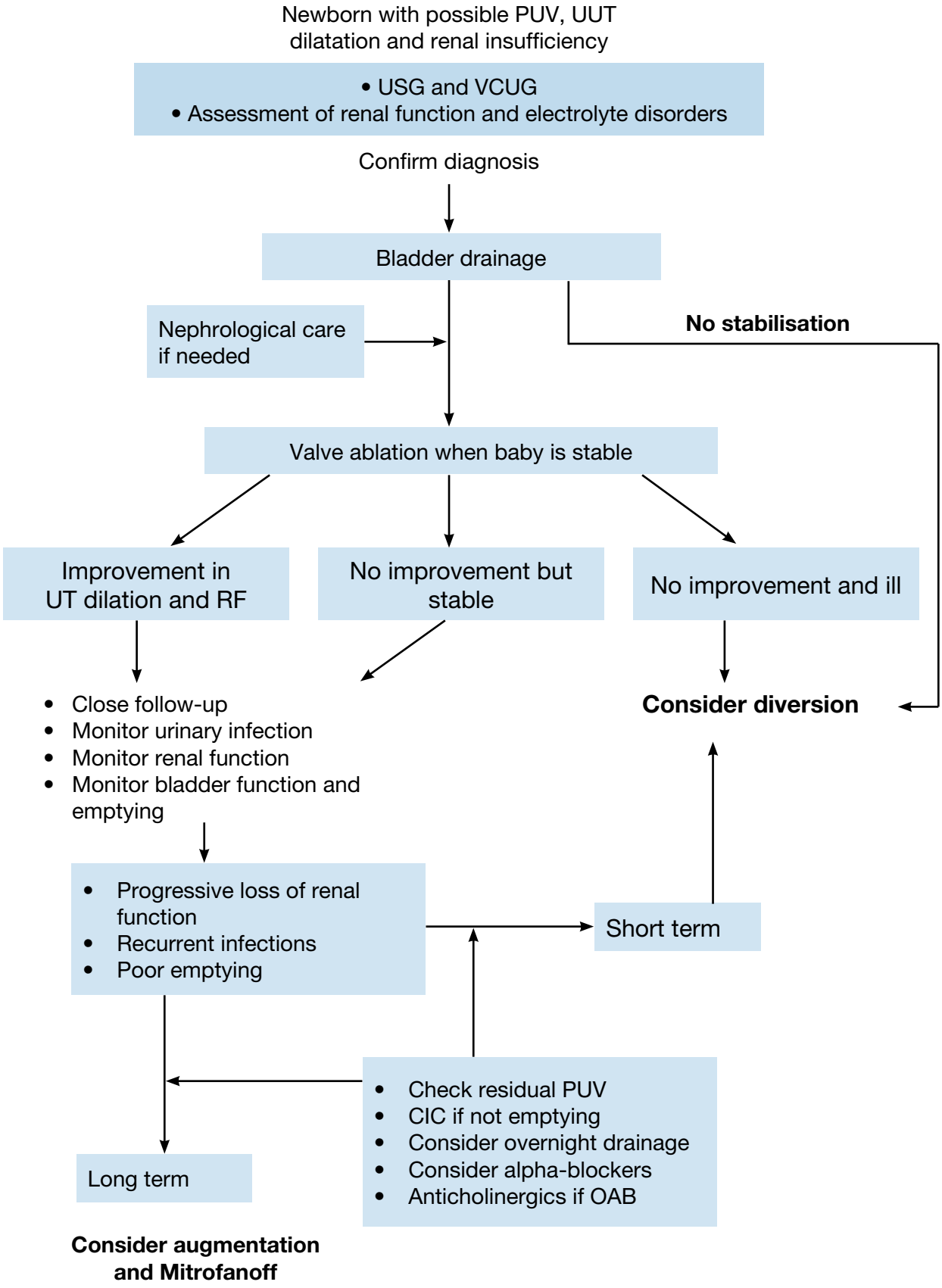
High diversion. If bladder drainage is insufficient to drain the upper urinary tract, high urinary diversion should be considered. Diversion may be suitable if there are recurrent infections of the upper tract, no improvement in renal function and/or an increase in upper tract dilatation, despite adequate bladder drainage. The choice of urinary diversion depends on the surgeon's preference for high loop ureterostomy, ring ureterostomy, end ureterostomy or pyelostomy, with each technique having advantages and disadvantages (23-25). Reconstructive surgery should be delayed until the upper urinary tract has improved as much as can be expected.

Reflux is very common in PUV patients (up to 72%) and it is described bilaterally in up to 32% (26).

High-grade reflux is mostly associated with a poor functioning kidney. However, early removal of the renal unit seems to be unnecessary, as long as it causes no problems. It may be necessary to augment the bladder and in this case the ureter may be used (27).

Life-long monitoring of these patients is mandatory, as bladder dysfunction is not uncommon and the delay in day- and night-time continence is a major problem (9, 14). Poor bladder sensation and compliance, detrusor instability and polyuria (especially at night) and their combination are responsible for bladder dysfunction. Between 10% and 47% of patients may develop end-stage renal failure (14,28). Renal transplantation in these patients can be performed safely and effectively. Deterioration of the graft function is mainly related to lower urinary tract dysfunction (29,30).

Figure 6: An algorithm providing information on assessment, treatment and follow up of newborns with possible PUV



PUV = posterior urethral valve; UUT = upper urinary tract; USG = urinary specific gravity; VCUG = voiding cystourethrogram; UT = urinary tract; RF = renal function; CIC = clean intermittent catheterisation; OAB = overactive bladder.

19.5 References

1. Gunn TR, Mora JD, Pease P. Antenatal diagnosis of urinary tract abnormalities by ultrasonography after 28 weeks' gestation: incidence and outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1995;172(2 Pt 1):479-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7856673
2. Atwell JD. Posterior urethral valves in the British Isles: a multicenter BAPS review. J Pediatr Surg 1983;18(1):70-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6834230
3. Casale AJ. Early ureteral surgery for posterior urethral valves. Urol Clin North Am 1990;17(2):361-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2186541
4. Cromie WJ, Lee K, Houde K, et al. Implications of prenatal ultrasound screening in the incidence of major genitourinary malformations. J Urol 2001;165(5):1677-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342955
5. Dewan PA, Zappala SM, Ransley PG, et al. Endoscopic reappraisal of the morphology of congenital obstruction of the posterior urethra. Br J Urol 1992;70(4):439-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1450856
6. Young HH, Frontz WA, Baldwin JC. Congenital obstruction of the posterior urethra. J Urol,3:289-365, 1919. J Urol 2002;167(1):265-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743334
7. Rosenfeld B, Greenfield SP, Springate JE, et al. Type III posterior urethral valves: presentation and management. J Pediatr Surg 1994;29(1):81-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8120770
8. Stephens FD, Gupta D. Pathogenesis of the prune belly syndrome. J Urol 1994;152(6 Pt 2):2328-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966734
9. Churchill BM, McLorie GA, Khoury AE, et al. Emergency treatment and longterm follow-up of posterior urethral valves. Urol Clin North Am 1990;17(2):343-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2186540
10. Hoover DL, Duckett JW Jr. Posterior urethral valves, unilateral reflux and renal dysplasia: a syndrome. J Urol 1982;128(5):994-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7176067
11. Rittenberg MH, Hulbert WC, Snyder HM 3rd, et al. Protective factors in posterior urethral valves. J Urol 1988;140(5):993-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3139895
12. Cuckow PM, Dinneen MD, Risdon RA, et al. Long-term renal function in the posterior urethral valves, unilateral reflux and renal dysplasia syndrome. J Urol 1997;158(3 Pt 2):1004-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258130
13. Kleppe S, Schmitt J, Geipel A, et al. Impact of prenatal urinomas in patients with posterior urethral valves and postnatal renal function. J Perinat Med 2006;34(5):425-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16965232
14. Smith GH, Canning DA, Schulman SL, et al. The long-term outcome of posterior urethral valves treated with primary valve ablation and observation. J Urol 1996;155(5):1730-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627873
15. Dinneen MD, Dhillon HK, Ward HC, ET AL. Antenatal diagnosis of posterior urethral valves. Br J Urol 1993;72(3):364-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8220998
16. Freedman AL, Johnson MP, Gonzalez R. Fetal therapy for obstructive uropathy: past, present, future? Pediatr Nephrol 2000;14(2):167-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10684370
17. McLorie G, Farhat W, Khoury A, ET AL. Outcome analysis of vesicoamniotic shunting in a comprehensive population. J Urol 2001;166(3):1036-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11490292
18. Salam MA. Posterior urethral valve: Outcome of antenatal intervention. Int J Urol 2006;13(10):1317-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17010011
19. Krahn CG, Johnson HW. Cutaneous vesicostomy in the young child: indications and results. Urology 1993;41(6):558-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8516992
20. Kim YH, Horowitz M, Combs A, ET AL. Comparative urodynamic findings after primary valve ablation, vesicostomy or proximal diversion. J Urol 1996;156(2 Pt 2):673-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683757

21. Podesta M, Ruarte AC, Gargiulo C, et al. Bladder function associated with posterior urethral valves after primary valve ablation or proximal urinary diversion in children and adolescents. J Urol 2002;168(4 Pt 2):1830-5; discussion 1835.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352370
22. Jayanthi VR, McLorie GA, Khoury AE, et al. The effect of temporary cutaneous diversion on ultimate bladder function. J Urol 1995;154(2 Pt 2):889-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609206
23. Novak ME, Gonzales ET Jr. Single-stage reconstruction of urinary tract after loop cutaneous ureterostomy. Urology 1978;11(2):134-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/628990
24. Sober I. Pelvioureterostomy-en-Y. J Urol 1972;107(3):473-5. [no abstract available]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5010719
25. Williams DI, Cromie WJ. Ring ureterostomy. Br J Urol 1975;47(7):789-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1222345
26. Scott JE. Management of congenital posterior urethral valves. Br J Urol 1985;57(1):71-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3971107
27. Bellinger MF. Ureterocystoplasty: a unique method for vesical augmentation in children. J Uro 1993;149(4):811-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8455246
28. Reinberg Y, de Castano I, Gonzalez R. Influence of initial therapy on progression of renal failure and body growth in children with posterior urethral valves. J Urol 1992;148(2 Pt 2):532-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1640516
29. DeFoor W, Tackett L, Minevich E, ET AL. Successful renal transplantation in children with posterior urethral valves. J Urol 2003;170(6 Pt 1):2402-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14634437
30. Salomon L, Fontaine E, Guest G, ET AL. Role of the bladder in delayed failure of kidney transplants in boys with posterior urethral valves. J Urol 2000;163(4):1282-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10737529

20. POST-OPERATIVE FLUID MANAGEMENT

20.1 Background

It is often stated that children are not simply small adults, and have specific metabolic features. Children are growing and developing organisms that have a different total body fluid distribution, changing renal physiology, different electrolyte requirements and weaker cardiovascular compensation mechanisms as compared to adults (1). Additionally, developing children have a high metabolic rate and low body stores of fat and other nutrients, and are therefore, susceptible to metabolic disturbances due to surgical stress (2). The metabolic response to anaesthesia and surgery in infants and children is related to the severity of the operation (3).

20.2 Pre-operative fasting

Pre-operative fasting has been advocated for elective surgery to avoid the complications associated with pulmonary aspiration during induction of anaesthesia. Current guidelines of pre-operative fasting for elective surgery are indicated in Table 15 (4,5).

Table 15: Preoperative fasting times for elective surgery

Ingested material	Minimum fasting period (h)
Clear liquids	2
Breast milk	4
Infant formula	4 (< 3 months old) to 6 (> 3 months old)
Non-human milk	6
Light meal	6

Although hypoglycaemia is considered to be an important issue for children, later studies have demonstrated that hypoglycaemia is uncommon if children are fed until 4 h before anaesthesia induction (6). Low glycogen

stores and impaired gluconeogenesis are common problems in newborns. Limiting the period of preoperative starvation and use of glucose-containing solutions are recommended. Therefore, monitoring of blood glucose and continuous adjustment of glucose supply appear to be necessary in neonates and children who are small for their age, to avoid excessive fluctuations in blood glucose levels (7).

20.3 Maintenance therapy and intraoperative fluid therapy

Typically, intraoperative management is the responsibility of the anaesthetist, whereas surgeons write the postoperative instructions. The goal of intraoperative fluid management is to sustain homeostasis by providing the appropriate amount of parenteral fluid to maintain adequate intravascular volume, cardiac output and oxygen delivery to tissues at a time when normal physiological functions are altered by surgical stress and anaesthetic agents (7).

The fluids for maintenance therapy do not take into account blood loss or third-space loss of fluid into the interstitial space or gut, and replaces losses from two sources: insensible (evaporative) and urinary loss. The principle formulae for calculating the daily maintenance water requirement has not changed for the past 50 years (Table 16) (8). Previous calculations have shown that there is good agreement in fluid requirements between non-operated and anaesthetised children (9). Thus, the combination of maintenance fluid and electrolyte requirements results in a hypotonic electrolyte solution. Conventionally, the usual intravenous maintenance fluid given to children by paediatricians is a quarter to a third strength saline (4,10).

Table 16: Hourly and daily fluid requirements according to body weight

Body weight	Hourly	Daily
< 10 kg	4 mL/kg	100 mL/kg
10-20 kg	40 mL + 2 mL/kg; > 10 kg	1000 mL + 50 mL/kg; > 10 kg
>20 kg	60 mL + 1 mL/kg; > 20 kg	1500 mL+ 20 mL/kg; > 20 kg

Fasting deficit is calculated by multiplying the hourly maintenance fluid requirement by the number of hours of restriction. Replacement of 50% of the fasting deficit in the first hour and 25% in the second and third hours is recommended (11). However, Berry et al. have proposed simplified guidelines for fluid administration according to the child's age and severity of surgical trauma (12) (Table 17).

Table 17: Intraoperative fluid management adapted for children fasted for 6-8 h following the classical recommendation "nil per oral after midnight"

The amount of fluid given during the first hour should be reduced if children are fasting for a shorter period of time, or if the child is already receiving intravenous fluid before surgery.

Furman (11)			
Hour of fluid replacement	**Maintenance fluid**	**Fasting deficit replacement**	**Persistent losses**
First hour	As Table 16	50%	Third space + blood loss replacement
Second hour	As Table 16	25%	Third space + blood loss replacement
Third hour	As Table 16	25%	Third space + blood loss replacement
Berry (12)			
First hour	≤ 3 years: 25 mL/kg ≥ 4 years: 15 mL/kg		Blood replacement 1:1 with blood or colloid or 3:1 with crystalloids
All other hours	Maintenance volume = 4 mL/kg/h Maintenance + mild trauma = 6 mL/kg/h Maintenance + moderate trauma = 8 mL/kg/h Maintenance + severe trauma = 10 mL/kg/h		Blood replacement 1:1 with blood or colloid or 3:1 with crystalloids

Five percent dextrose with a quarter- to half-normal saline is frequently used as maintenance fluid, and balanced salt solution or normal saline as replacement fluid. Blood losses are replaced with either 1:1 ratio of blood or colloid, or 3:1 ratio for crystalloid. However, the administration of a large volume of normal saline can cause dilutional acidosis or hyperchloraemic acidosis, whereas a large volume of balanced salt solution, such as lactated Ringer's solution, can decrease serum osmolality, which is not beneficial in patients with

decreased intracranial compliance. Albumin, plasma, synthetic colloids, and blood are administered where appropriate (7). Third-space losses may vary from 1 mL/kg/h for a minor surgical procedure to 15-20 mL/kg/h for major abdominal procedures, or even up to 50 ml/kg/h for surgery of necrotising enterocolitis in premature infants. Third-space losses should be replaced with crystalloids (normal saline or Ringer's lactate) (4). Most of the fluids required during surgery are needed for replacing fasting deficit or third-space losses. Both losses consist mainly of extracellular fluids. Thus, hydrating solutions should contain high sodium and chloride and a low concentration of bicarbonate, calcium and potassium. Intraoperative hypoglycaemia is rare in children. In contrast, hyperglycaemia is commonly encountered during anaesthesia and surgery. The replacement fluid should be free of dextrose or should not have > 1% dextrose. The present recommendations include the use of low-dextrose-containing solutions for maintenance fluid therapy (except for patients who are at greatest risk for hypoglycaemia) (1,10). Intraoperative administration of glucose-free isotonic hydrating solutions should be the routine practice for most procedures in children over 4-5 years of age. In infants and young children, 5% dextrose solutions should be avoided, but 1% or 2% dextrose in lactated Ringer's solution is appropriate (4).

20.4 Post-operative fluid management

During the postoperative period, the basic principle is to estimate the function of the gut and to continue oral or enteral nutrition as much as possible (2). However, it should be taken into consideration that withholding oral fluids postoperatively from children undergoing day surgery reduces the incidence of vomiting (13). For minor surgical procedures, the intraoperative administration of large volumes of crystalloids is associated with a reduced incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting after anaesthesia in paediatric and adult patients (14). Thus, Berry's guidelines seem appropriate for minor surgical cases provided that either lactated ringer polyionique B66, which has an osmolarity similar to plasma (15) is administered during surgery. It is not obligatory to check serum chemistry after uncomplicated surgery in children with normal preoperative renal and hepatic functions. However, if oral intake is postponed for > 24 h (e.g. intestinal surgery), there is an increased risk for electrolyte abnormalities that require further assessment and subsequent management, particularly for potassium. Postoperative findings such as decreased bowel movements and ileus may be signs of hypokalemia, which might be corrected with a solution including 20 mmol/L potassium with an infusion rate not more than 3 mmol/kg/day. In these cases, fluid therapy should be administered via peripheral venous access if the duration of infusion is not expected to exceed 5 days, or via central venous access when long-term parenteral nutrition is necessary.

Fluid therapy should provide basic metabolic requirements, and compensate for gastrointestinal and additional losses. If hypovolemia is present, it should be treated rapidly. Hyponatremia is the most frequent electrolyte disorder in the postoperative period (15,16). Therefore, hypotonic fluid should not be routinely administered to hospitalised children because they have several stimuli for AVP production, and are at high risk for developing hyponatremia (4,15,17-20). The preferred fluids for maintenance therapy are 0.45% saline with dextrose or isotonic fluids, in the absence of a specific indication for 0.25% saline. Moreover, it is advised to administer isotonic fluids intraoperatively and also immediately postoperatively, albeit at two-thirds of the calculated maintenance rate in the recovery room. Fluid composition should balance high sodium requirements, energy requirements and osmolarity of the solution. The extra losses from gastric or chest tubes should be replaced with lactated Ringer's solution. Fluid administration to dilute the medications also should be taken into account (4).

Children who undergo interventions to relieve any kind of obstructive diseases deserve particular attention. The risk of polyuria due to post-obstructive diuresis has to be assessed. In cases in which polyuria develops, fluid intake and urine output should be followed, as well as renal function and serum electrolytes. When necessary, clinicians should not feel any hesitation in consulting with a paediatric nephrologist.

20.5 Post-operative fasting

Although some previous studies have reported that fasting reduces the risk of vomiting by up to 50% (13,21,22), a recent study has revealed that, if children were freely allowed to drink and eat when they felt ready or requested, the incidence of vomiting did not increase, the children felt happier, and were significantly less bothered by their pain than those in the fasting group (23). The mean times until first drink and eating in the free group were 108 and 270 min, respectively, which were 4 and 3 h earlier than in the fasting group.

Previous studies have implied that gastric motility returns to normal 1 h after emergence from anaesthesia in children who have undergone non-abdominal surgery (24), and first oral intake in children 1 h after emergence from anaesthesia for minor surgery does not appear to cause an increase in the incidence of vomiting, as long as the fluid ingested is at body temperature (25). Therefore, panel members recommend encouraging early fluid intake for children who undergo minor or non-abdominal urological surgery.

20.6 References

1. Nair SG, Balachandran R. Perioperative fluid and electrolyte management in pediatric patients. Indian J Anaesth 2004;48(5):355-64.
2. Imura K, Okada A. Perioperative nutrition and metabolism in pediatric patients. World J Surg 2000 Dec;24(12):1498-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11193714
3. Ward Platt MP, Tarbit MJ, Aynsley-Green A. The effects of anesthesia and surgery on metabolic homeostasis in infancy and childhood. J Pediatr Surg 1990 May;25(5):472-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2191106
4. Murat I, Dubois MC. Perioperative fluid therapy in pediatrics. Paediatr Anaesth 2008 May;18(5): 363-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18312509
5. ASA Task Force on preoperative fasting. Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures. Anesthesiology 1999 Mar;90(3):896-905. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10078693
6. Redfern N, Addison GM, Meakin G. Blood glucose in anaesthetised children: comparison of blood glucose concentrations in children fasted for morning and afternoon surgery. Anaesthesia 1986 Mar;41(3):272-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3963330
7. Leelanukrom R, Cunliffe M. Intraoperative fluid and glucose management in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2000;10(4):353-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10886690
8. Holliday M, Segar W. The maintenance need for water in parenteral fluid therapy. Pediatrics 1957 May;19(5):823-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13431307
9. Lindahl SG. Energy expenditure and fluid and electrolyte requirements in anesthetized infants and children. Anesthesiology 1988 Sep;69(3):377-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3415017
10. Bailey AG, McNaull PP, Jooste E, et al. Perioperative crystalloid and colloid fluid management in children: where are we and how did we get here? Anesth Analg 2010 Feb 1;110(2):375-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19955503
11. Furman EB, Roman DG, Lemmer LA, et al. Specific therapy in water, electrolyte and blood-volume replacement during pediatric surgery. Anesthesiology 1975 Feb;42(2):187-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1115368
12. Berry F. Practical aspects of fluid and electrolyte therapy. In: Berry F, ed. Anesthetic Management of Difficult and Routine Pediatric Patients. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1986: pp. 107-135.
13. Kearney R, Mack C, Entwistle L. Withholding oral fluids from children undergoing day surgery reduces vomiting. Paediatr Anaesth 1998;8(4):331-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9672932
14. Goodarzi M, Matar MM, Shafa M, et al. A prospective randomized blinded study of the effect of intravenous fluid therapy on postoperative nausea and vomiting in children undergoing strabismus surgery. Pediatr Anesth 2006 Jan;16(1):49-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16409529
15. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Intravenous fluid management for the acutely ill child. Curr Opin Pediatr 2011 Apr;23(2):186-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21415832
16. Yung M, Keeley S. Randomised controlled trial of intravenous maintenance fluids. J Paediatr Child Health 2009 Jan-Feb;45(1-2):9-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18036144
17. Moritz ML, Ayus JC. Prevention of hospital-acquired hyponatremia: a case for using isotonic saline. Pediatrics 2003 Feb;111(2): 227-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12563043
18. Duke T, Molyneux EM. Intravenous fluids for seriously ill children: time to reconsider. Lancet 2003 Oct 18;362(9392):1320-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14575980
19. Holliday MA, Ray PE, Friedman AL. Fluid therapy for children: facts, fashions and questions. Arch Dis Child 2007 Jun;92(6):546-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17175577

20. Greenbaum L. The pathophysiology of body fluids and fluid therapy. In: Kliegman R, Behrman R, Jenson H, Stanton B, eds. Kliegman: *Nelson textbook of pediatrics*. 18th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders Elsevier, 2007.
21. Messner AH, Barbita JA. Oral fluid intake following tonsillectomy. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol 1997 Feb 14;39(1):19-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9051436
22. Schreiner MS, Nicolson SC, Martin T, et al. Should children drink before discharge from day surgery? Anesthesiology 1992 Apr;76(4):528-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1550277
23. Radke OC, Biedler A, Kolodzie K, et al. The effect of postoperative fasting on vomiting in children and their assessment of pain. Paediatr Anaesth 2009 May;19(5):494-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19453581
24. Cheng W, Chow B, Tam PK. Electrogastrographic changes in children who undergo day-surgery anesthesia. J Pediatr Surg 1999 Sep;34(9):1336-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10507424
25. Mercan A, El-Kerdawy H, Bhavsaar B, et al. The effect of timing and temperature of oral fluids ingested after minor surgery in preschool children on vomiting: a prospective, randomized, clinical study. Paediatr Anaesth 2011 Oct;21(10):1066-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21668799

21. POST-OPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT IN CHILDREN: GENERAL INFORMATION

21.1 Introduction

Adequate pain control requires proper pain evaluation, accurate choice of drug and route of administration, and consideration of age, physical condition and type of surgery and anaesthesia (1). However, there is still no standardised algorithm for management of postoperative pain in children (2). The authors emphasise the need for a postoperative pain management protocol in children, and state that the frequency of pain assessment, use of parenteral opioids, introduction of regional anaesthesia, and application of rescue analgesics are far from what they should be (3).

The recent understanding of maturation of the pain system, pain assessment methods, clinical consequences of pain in neonates, and the traditional medical beliefs that neonates are incapable of experiencing pain have now been abandoned (4-8). Many studies have shown that deficiency or insufficiency in proper analgesia might be the cause of future behavioural and somatic sequelae (9-13). The current understanding fully depends on the belief that all children irrespective of age deserve adequate treatment.

21.2 Assessment of pain

Assessment of pain is the first step of pain management. Validated pain assessment tools are needed for this purpose and selecting the appropriate pain assessment technique is important. There are several pain assessment tools that have been developed according to the child's age, cultural background, mental status, communication skills and physiological reactions (14,15).

One of the most important topics in paediatric pain management is informing and involving the patient and parents during this process. Parents and patients can manage postoperative pain at home or in hospital if provided with the correct information. Parents and patients, if they are old enough, can actively take part in pain management, even in patient-family-controlled analgesia applications (16-21).

21.3 Drugs and route of adminstration

Pre-emptive analgesia is an important concept that aims to induce suppression of pain before neural hypersensitisation occurs (22), and local anaesthetics or non-steroidal analgesics are given intraoperatively to delay postoperative pain and decrease postoperative analgesic consumption. Analgesics must be titrated until an appropriate response is achieved. Opioids can be administered to children by the oral, mucosal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intramuscular or intravenous routes (18). The combination of opioids with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or local anaesthetics (balanced or multimodal analgesia) might be used to increase the quality of analgesia and decrease undesired effects related to opioids (23). The same combination of local anaesthetics, opioids, and non-opioid drugs used in adults can also be used in children with respect to their age, body weight and individual medical status.

Table 18: List of several drugs used in postoperative pain management in children (5,13,19,25-27)

Name	Route of administration	Dose	Side effects	General remarks	Caution
Non-narcotics					
Acetaminophen	Rectal Oral Intravenous	40 mg/kg loading, 20 mg/kg/dose 4 times/day 15-40 mg/kg, followed by 30 mg/kg/8 h Propacetamol (prodrug)	Nephrotoxicity, hepatotoxicity (neonates)	Most common used analgesic, Antipyretic effect Opioid sparing effect Wide safety range	Slow onset time and variable absorption via rectal route, dividing the vehicle not recommended. Total dose should not exceed 100 mg/kg for children; 75 mg/kg for infants; 60 mg/kg for term and preterm neonates > 32 weeks post-conceptual age; and 40 mg/kg for preterm neonates < 32 weeks post-conceptual age
Ibuprofen	Oral, rectal	4-10 mg/kg/dose 3-4 times/day		Better analgesic that paracetamol	Safety not established for infants < 6 months old
Diclofenac	Tablet, syrup, suppository	1-1.5 mg/kg 2-3 times/day	Nephrotoxicity, GI disturbances	Better than ibuprofen	> 6 years old
Ketorolac	Oral IV, IM	0.2-0.5 mg/kg every 6 h (48 h) Total dose < 120 mg/day		Opioid sparing effect	
Ketamine	Oral, rectal, IM, SC, IV and intraspinal	< 2 mg/kg (IM) < 1 mg/kg (IV, epidural)			
Metamizole, dipyrone	Oral IM drop	10-15 mg/kg/dose (max 40 mg/kg total) 10-15 mg/kg 1 drop/kg/dose, max 4 times	Risk of agranulocytosis, not clarified definitely	Very effective antipyretic	Not approved in some countries including USA, Sweden, Japan and Australia
Narcotics					
Opioids			Nausea, vomiting, dyspepsia, constipation, urinary retention, respiratory depression, drowsiness, euphoria		
Tramadol (weak opioid)	Oral, rectal, IV, IM (dose can be repeated 4-6 times/day)	2-3 mg/kg/dose (oral, drop) 1-2 mg/kg/dose (oral, tablet) 1.5-3 mg/kg/dose (rectal) 0.75-2 mg/kg/dose (IM) 2-2.5 mg/kg/dose (IV) 0.1-0.25 mg/kg/h (continuous)	nausea, vomiting, pruritus and rash	Does not inhibit prostaglandin synthesis	IM injection not recommended, Slow IV infusion, Be careful in patients under psychoactive medications and with seizures

Codeine	Oral	1 mg/kg, single dose	Respiratory depression not seen after single dose	Both antitussive and analgesic effect	
Morphine	IM, IV	6-12 months: 0.1 mg/kg (IM), 0.05 mg/kg (IV)		Most common used but not the most suitable opioid for pain relief in children	IM injection not recommended < 2 months old: be careful
Nalbuphine	IV	< 3 months old: 0.05 mg/kg/dose > 3 months old: 0.05-0.10 mg/kg/ dose (4-6 times/day)			
Piritramide	IV	0.05-0.10 mg/kg/dose (4-6 times/ day)			
Dextromethorphan	Oral, syrup	1 mg/kg			
Pethidine/ meperidine	IM, IV	1.5-2 mg/kg IM as premedicant 1 mg/kg IV analgesic	No advantage over morphine		
Fentanyl	IV	1-2 µg/kg	Not so popular		
Buprenorphine	IV	3-5 mg/kg			
Pentazocine	IV, IM	1 mg/kg IM or 0.5-0.75 mg/kg IV	In small infants, observe respiration after IV administration		
Regional (local) anaesthetics					
bupivacaine		Maximum single bolus dose: 2.5-3.0 mg/kg. Maximum infusion: 0.4-0.5 mg/ kg/h (10-20 mg/kg/day) in older infants and children, and 0.2-0.25 mg/kg/h (5-6 mg/kg/day) in neonates	Cardiotoxicity, convulsion		
Levobupivacaine	IV, IM	0.2-0.25% 1-2.5 mg/kg for single shot epidural intravenous continuous administration 0.2-0.4 mg/kg/h		Less toxic than bupivacaine	
Ropivacaine	IV,IM	0.2-0.25% 1-2.5 mg/kg for single shot epidural intravenous continuous administration 0.2-0.4 mg/kg/h		Less toxic than levobupivacaine	

The World Health Organization's "pain ladder" is a useful tool for the pain management strategy (24). A three-level strategy seems practical for clinical use. Postoperative management should be based on sufficient intraoperative pre-emptive analgesia with regional or caudal blockade followed by balanced analgesia. Paracetamol and NSAIDs are the drugs of choice at the first level. As they become insufficient to prevent pain, weak and strong opioids are added to oral drugs to achieve balanced analgesia. Every institute must build their own strategy for postoperative analgesia. A proposed strategy for postoperative analgesia may be as follows:

1. Intraoperative regional or caudal block
2. Paracetamol + NSAID
3. Paracetamol + NSAID + weak opioid (e.g. tramadol or codeine)
4. Paracetamol + NSAID + strong opioid (e.g. morphine, fentanyl, oxycodone or pethidine)

21.4 Circumcision

Circumcision without anaesthesia, irrespective of age, is not recommended and it needs proper pain management (28). Despite this, adequate pain management is still below expectations (29). Potential analgesic interventions during circumcision include use of dorsal penile nerve block (DPNB) or ring block, topical anaesthetics (e.g. lidocaine-prilocaine cream, or 4% liposomal lidocaine cream), a less painful clamp (e.g., Mogen clamp), a pacifier, sucrose, and swaddling, preferably in combination (30-35). Although DPNB and topical anaesthetics seem to have a similar postoperative analgesic affect, DPNB is still the most preferred method (33) (LE: 1A). Ultrasonographic guidance may improve the results, with an increase in procedural time (36,37). Caudal blockade methods have similar efficacy compared to DPNB. However, parents should be informed about the more frequent incidence of postoperative motor weakness and micturition problems (38-43).

21.5 Penile, inguinal and scrotal surgery

Caudal block is the most studied method for post-hypospadias surgery analgesia. Several agents with different doses, concentrations and adminstration techniques have been used with similar outcomes (44-58). Both single and combined use of these agents has been shown to be effective (46,48,53,54,56,57).

Penile blocks can be used for postoperative analgesia and have similar postoperative analgesic properties as caudal blocks (59). Two penile blocks at the beginning and conclusion of surgery seems better (60). Severe bladder spasms due to the presence of the bladder catheter may sometimes cause more problems than pain, which necessitates antimuscarinic medications.

For inguinoscrotal surgery, all anaesthetic methods, such as caudal blocks (61-65), nerve block (66,67), wound infiltration or instillation, as well as irrigation with local anaesthetics (68-70), have been shown to have adequate postoperative analgesic properties. Combinations may improve the results (71).

21.6 Bladder and kidney surgery

Continuous epidural infusion of local anaesthetics (72-74), as well as systemic (intravenous) application of analgesics (75), has been shown to be effective.

Ketorolac is an underutilised although effective agent that has been shown to decrease frequency and severity of bladder spasms, as well as the length of postoperative hospital stay and costs (76-81).

Open kidney surgery is particularly painful because all three muscle layers are cut during conventional loin incision. Dorsal lumbotomy incision may be a good alternative because of the shorter postoperative hospital stay and earlier return to oral intake and unrestricted daily activity (82).

Caudal blocks plus systemic analgesics (83), and continuous epidural analgesia have been shown to be effective in terms of decreased postoperative morphine requirement after renal surgery (84,85). However, when there is a relative contraindication to line insertion, a less experienced anaesthetist is available, or parents prefer it (86), non-invasive regimens composed of intraoperative and postoperative analgesics may be the choice. Particularly in this group of patients, stepwise analgesia protocols can be developed (87). For laparoscopic approaches, intraperitoneal spraying of local anaesthetic before incision of perirenal fascia may be beneficial (88).

Table 19: A simple pain management strategy for paediatric urological surgery

Intensity of surgery	First step	Second step	Third step
Mild (inguinal, scrotal, penile)	Paracetamol and wound infiltration with local anaesthetics	NSAIDs	Regional block/weak opioid or intravenous strong opioid with small increments as rescue analgesia (nalbuphine, fentanyl, meperidine, morphine etc.)
Moderate (lower abdominal)			Peripheral nerve block (single shot or continuous infusion)/opioid injection (IV PCA)
Severe (upper abdominal or lombotomy)			Epidural local/major peripheral nerve/plexus block/opioid injection (IV PCA)

IV PCA = intravenous patient-controlled analgesia.

21.7 References

1. Ivani G, Tonetti F. Postoperative analgesia in infants and children: new developments. Minerva Anestesiol 2004 May;70(5):399-403. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15181422
2. Karling M, Renström M, Ljungman G. Acute and postoperative pain in children: a Swedish nationwide survey. Acta Paediatr 2002;91(6):660-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12162598
3. Stamer UM, Mpasios N, Maier C, et al. Postoperative analgesia in children--current practice in Germany. Eur J Pain 2005 Oct;9(5):555-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16139184
4. Taylor BJ, Robbins JM, Gold JI, et al. Assessing postoperative pain in neonates: a multicenter observational study. Pediatrics 2006 Oct;118(4):e992-1000. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17015519
5. Everett LL. Pain management for pediatric ambulatory anesthesia. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 2002 Dec;15(6):609-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17019260
6. Simons SHP, van Dijk M, Anand KJS, et al. Do we still hurt newborn babies? A prospective study of procedural pain and analgesia in neonates. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2003 Nov;157(11):1058-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14609893
7. American Academy of Pediatrics; Canadian Paediatric Society. Prevention and management of pain and stress in the neonate. Pediatrics 2000 Feb;105(2):454-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654977
8. Anand KJS; International Evidence-Based Group for Neonatal Pain. Consensus statement for the prevention and management of pain in the newborn. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 2001 Feb;155(2): 173-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11177093
9. Taddio A, Katz J, Ilersich AL, et al. Effect of neonatal circumcision on pain response during subsequent routine vaccination. Lancet 1997 Mar 1;349(9052):599-603. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9057731
10. Grunau RE, Oberlander TF, Whitfield MF, et al. Demographic and therapeutic determinants of pain reactivity in very low birth weight neonates at 32 weeks' postconceptional age. Pediatrics 2001 Jan;107(1):105-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11134442
11. Peters JW, Schouw R, Anand KJ, et al. Does neonatal surgery lead to increased pain sensitivity in later childhood? Pain 2005 Apr;114(3):444-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15777869
12. Kain ZN, Mayes LC, Caldwell-Andrews AA, et al. Preoperative anxiety, postoperative pain, and behavioral recovery in young children undergoing surgery. Pediatrics 2006 Aug;118(2):651-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16882820
13. Bozkurt P. The analgesic efficacy and neuroendocrine response in paediatric patients treated with two analgesic techniques: using morphine-epidural and patient-controlled analgesia. Paed Anaesth 2002 Mar;12(3):248-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11903939

14. Young KD. Pediatric procedural pain. Ann Emerg Med 2005 Feb;45(2):160-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15671974
15. Ghai B, Makkar JK, Wig J. Postoperative pain assessment in preverbal children and children with cognitive impairment. Paediatr Anaesth 2008 Jun;18(6):462-77. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18363630
16. Kankkunen P, Pietilä AM, Vehviläinen-Julkunen K. Families' and children's postoperative pain--literature review. J Pediatr Nurs 2004 Apr;19(2):133-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15077212
17. Jonas DA. Parent's management of their child's pain in the home following day surgery. J Child Health Care 2003 Sep;7(3):150-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14516009
18. Schecter WP, Farmer D, Horn JK, et al. Special considerations in perioperative pain management: audiovisual distraction, geriatrics, pediatrics, and pregnancy. J Am Coll Surg 2005 Oct;201(4):612-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16183502
19. Gehdoo RP. Postoperative pain management in pediatric patients. Indian J. Anesth 2004 48(5): 406-14. http://www.ijaweb.org/temp/IndianJAnaesth485406-2247229_061432.pdf http://www.ijaweb.org/downloadpdf.asp?issn=0019-5049;year=2004;volume=48;issue=5;spage=406;epage=406;aulast=Gehdoo;type=0;type=2
20. Ellis JA, Martelli B, LaMontagne C, et al. Evaluation of a continuous epidural analgesia program for postoperative pain in children. Pain Manag Nurs 2007 Dec;8(4):146-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18036502
21. Birmingham PK, Wheeler M, Suresh S, et al. Patient-controlled epidural analgesia in children: can they do it? Anesth Analg 2003 Mar;96(3):686-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12598244
22. Woolf CJ, Chong MS. Preemptive analgesia-treating postoperative pain by preventing the establishment of central sensitization. Anesth Analg 1993 Aug;77(2):362-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8346839
23. Kehlet H, Dahl JB. The value of ''multimodal'' or ''balanced analgesia'' in postoperative pain treatment. Anesth Analg 1993 Nov;77(5):1048-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8105724
24. World Health Organisation. Cancer Pain Relief and Palliative Care in Children. Geneva: World Health Organization, 1998. http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?sesslan=1&codlan=1&codcol=15&codcch=459
25. Arana A, Morton NS, Hansen TG. Treatment with paracetamol in infants. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2001 Jan;45(1):20-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11152028
26. Messerer B, Gutmann A, Weinberg A, et al. Implementation of a standardized pain management in a pediatric surgery unit. Pediatr Surg Int 2010 Sep;26(9):879-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20625751
27. Verghese ST, Hannallah RS. Acute pain management in children. J Pain Res 2010 Jul 15;3:105-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21197314
28. Anand KJ, Johnston CC, Oberlander TF, et al. Analgesia and local anesthesia during invasive procedures in the neonate. Clin Ther 2005 Jun;27(6):844-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16117989
29. Yawman D, Howard CR, Auinger P, et al. Pain relief for neonatal circumcision: a follow-up of residency training practices. Ambul Pediatr 2006 Jul-Aug;6(4):210-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16843252
30. Taddio A, Ohlsson A, Einarson TR, et al. A systematic review of lidocaine-prilocaine cream (EMLA) in the treatment of acute pain in neonates. Pediatrics 1998 Feb;101(2):E1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9445511
31. Smith DP, Gjellum M. The efficacy of LMX versus EMLA for pain relief in boys undergoing office meatotomy. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 2):1760-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371808
32. Choi WY, Irwin MG, Hui TW, et al. EMLA cream versus dorsal penile nerve block for postcircumcision analgesia in children. Anesth Analg 2003 Feb;96(2):396-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12538184
33. Brady-Fryer B, Wiebe N, Lander JA. Pain relief for neonatal circumcision. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004 Oct 18;(4):CD004217. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15495086

34. Lehr VT, Cepeda E, Frattarelli DA, et al. Lidocaine 4% cream compared with lidocaine 2.5% and prilocaine 2.5% or dorsal penile block for circumcision. Am J Perinatol 2005 Jul;22(5):231-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16041631
35. Matsota P, Papageorgiou-Brousta M. Intraoperative and postoperative analgesia with subcutaneous ring block of the penis with levobupivacaine for circumcision in children. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2004 Jun;14(3):198-202. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15211412
36. Faraoni D, Gilbeau A, Lingier P, et al. Does ultrasound guidance improve the efficacy of dorsal penile nerve block in children? Paediatr Anaesth 2010 Oct;20(10):931-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20849498
37. Sandeman DJ, Reiner D, Dilley AV, et al. A retrospective audit of three different regional anaesthetic techniques for circumcision in children. Anaesth Intensive Care 2010 May;38(3):519-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20514962
38. Beyaz SG. Comparison of Postoperative Analgesic Efficacy of Caudal Block versus Dorsal Penile Nerve Block with Levobupivacaine for Circumcision in Children. Korean J Pain 2011 Mar;24(1):31-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21390176
39. Sharpe P, Klein JR, Thompson JP, et al. Analgesia for circumcision in a paediatric population: comparison of caudal bupivacaine alone with bupivacaine plus two doses of clonidine. Paediatr Anaesth 2001 Nov;11(6):695-700. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696146
40. Gauntlett I. A comparison between local anaesthetic dorsal nerve block and caudal bupivacaine with ketamine for paediatric circumcision. Paediatr Anaesth 2003 Jan;13(1):38-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12535037
41. Weksler N, Atias I, Klein M, et al. Is penile block better than caudal epidural block for postcircumcision analgesia? J Anesth 2005;19(1):36-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15674514
42. Margetts L, Carr A, McFadyen G, et al. A comparison of caudal bupivacaine and ketamine with penile block for paediatric circumcision. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2008 Dec;25(12):1009-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18652709
43. Cyna AM, Middleton P. Caudal epidural block versus other methods of postoperative pain relief for circumcision in boys. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 Oct 8;(4):CD003005. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843636
44. Abdulatif M, El-Sanabary M. Caudal neostigmine, bupivacaine, and their combination for postoperative pain management after hypospadias surgery in children. Anesth Analg 2002 Nov;95(5):1215-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12401596
45. Samuel M, Hampson-Evans D, Cunnington P. Prospective to a randomized double-blind controlled trial to assess efficacy of double caudal analgesia in hypospadias repair. J Pediatr Surg 2002 Feb;37(2):168-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11819193
46. Ozyuvaci E, Altan A, Yucel M, et al. Evaluation of adding preoperative or postoperative rectal paracetamol to caudal bupivacaine for postoperative analgesia in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2004 Aug;14(8):661-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15283825
47. Bhardwaj N, Yaddanapudi S, Ghai B, et al. Neostigmine does not prolong the duration of analgesia produced by caudal bupivacaine in children undergoing urethroplasty. J Postgrad Med 2007 Jul-Sep;53(3):161-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17699988
48. Ozbek H, Bilen A, Ozcengiz D, et al. The comparison of caudal ketamine, alfentanil and ketamine plus alfentanil administration for postoperative analgesia in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2002 Sep;12(7): 610-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12358657
49. De Negri P, Ivani G, Tirri T, et al. A comparison of epidural bupivacaine, levobupivacaine, and ropivacaine on postoperative analgesia and motor blockade. Anesth Analg 2004 Jul;99(1):45-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15281501
50. Thies KC, Driessen J, Gwan Kho H, et al. Longer than expected-duration of caudal analgesia with two different doses of levobupivacaine in children undergoing hypospadias repair. J Pediatr Urol 2010 Dec;6(6):585-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20171143

51. Hansen TG, Henneberg SW, Walther-Larsen S, et al. Caudal bupivacaine supplemented with caudal or intravenous clonidine in children undergoing hypospadias repair: a double-blind study. Br J Anaesth 2004 Feb;92(2):223-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14722172
52. Günes Y, Gündüz M, Unlügenç H, et al. Comparison of caudal vs intravenous tramadol administered either preoperatively or postoperatively for pain relief in boys. Paediatr Anaesth 2004 Apr;14(4):324-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15078378
53. Laiq N, Khan MN, Tahmeedullah, et al. Comparison of caudal bupivacaine and bupivacaine-tramadol for postoperative analgesia in children undergoing hypospadias surgery. J Coll Physicians Surg Pak 2009 Nov;19(11):678-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19889260
54. Apiliogullari S, Duman A, Gok F, et al. Efficacy of a low-dose spinal morphine with bupivacaine for postoperative analgesia in children undergoing hypospadias repair. Paediatr Anaesth 2009 Nov;19(11):1078-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19708911
55. Silvani P, Camporesi A, Agostino MR, et al. Caudal anesthesia in pediatrics: an update. Minerva Anestesiol 2006 Jun;72(6):453-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16682915
56. Gunduz M, Ozalevli M, Ozbek H, et al. Comparison of caudal ketamine with lidocaine or tramadol administration for postoperative analgesia of hypospadias surgery in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2006 Feb;16(2):158-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430412
57. Cho JE, Kim JY, Hong JY, et al. The addition of fentanyl to 1.5 mg/ml ropivacaine has no advantage for paediatric epidural analgesia. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2009 Sep;53(8):1084-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19572930
58. Al-Zaben KR, Qudaisat IY, Al-Ghanem SM, et al. Intraoperative administration of dexmedetomidine reduces the analgesic requirements for children undergoing hypospadius surgery. Eur J Anaesthesiol 2010 Mar;27(3):247-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19952754
59. Metzelder ML, Kuebler JF, Glueer S, et al. Penile block is associated with less urinary retention than caudal anesthesia in distal hypospadia repair in children. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):87-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19466428
60. Chhibber AK, Perkins FM, Rabinowitz R, et al. Penile block timing for postoperative analgesia of hypospadias repair in children. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 2):1156-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258161
61. Conroy JM, Othersen HB Jr, Dorman BH, et al. A comparison of wound instillation and caudal block for analgesia following pediatric inguinal herniorrhaphy. J Pediatr Surg 1993 Apr;28(4):565-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8483071
62. Breschan C, Jost R, Krumpholz R, et al. A prospective study comparing the analgesic efficacy of levobupivacaine, ropivacaine and bupivacaine in pediatric patients undergoing caudal blockade. Paediatr Anaesth 2005 Apr;15(4):301-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15787921
63. Taheri R, Shayeghi S, Razavi SS, et al. Efficacy of bupivacaine-neostigmine and bupivacaine-tramadol in caudal block in pediatric inguinal herniorrhaphy. Paediatr Anaesth 2010 Sep;20(9):866-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20716080
64. Akin A, Ocalan S, Esmaoglu A, et al. The effects of caudal or intravenous clonidine on postoperative analgesia produced by caudal levobupivacaine in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2010 Apr;20(4):350-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20158620
65. Hong JY, Han SW, Kim WO, et al. Effect of dexamethasone in combination with caudal analgesia on postoperative pain control in day-case paediatric orchiopexy. Br J Anaesth 2010 Oct;105(4):506-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20659915
66. Jagannathan N, Sohn L, Sawardekar A, et al. Unilateral groin surgery in children: will the addition of an ultrasound-guided ilioinguinal nerve block enhance the duration of analgesia of a single-shot caudal block? Paediatr Anaesth 2009 Sep;19(9):892-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19627532
67. Fredrickson MJ, Paine C, Hamill J. Improved analgesia with the ilioinguinal block compared to the transversus abdominis plane block after pediatric inguinal surgery: a prospective randomized trial. Paediatr Anaesth 2010 Nov;20(11):1022-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20964768

68. Shenfeld O, Eldar I, Lotan G, et al. Intraoperative irrigation with bupivacaine for analgesia after orchiopexy and herniorrhaphy in children. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):185-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966769
69. Machotta A, Risse A, Bercker S, et al. Comparison between instillation of bupivacaine versus caudal analgesia for postoperative analgesia following inguinal herniotomy in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2003 Jun;13(5):397-402.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12791112
70. Demiraran Y, Ilce Z, Kocaman B, et al. Does tramadol wound infiltration offer an advantage over bupivacaine for postoperative analgesia in children following herniotomy? Paediatr Anaesth 2006 Oct;16(10):1047-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16972834
71. Saeed A, Khan AR, Lee V, et al. Pain management for unilateral orchidopexy in children: an effective regimen. World J Surg 2009 Mar;33(3):603-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19115030
72. Cain MP, Husmann DA, McLaren RH, et al. Continuous epidural anesthesia after ureteroneocystostomy in children. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2 Pt 2):791-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609181
73. Merguerian PA, Sutters KA, Tang E, et al. Efficacy of continuous epidural analgesia versus single dose caudal analgesia in children after intravesical ureteroneocystostomy. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 2):1621-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371775
74. Tripi PA, Palmer JS, Thomas S, et al. Clonidine increases duration of bupivacaine caudal analgesia for ureteroneocystostomy: a double-blind prospective trial. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):1081-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094063
75. Hong JY, Kim WO, Koo BN, et al. Fentanyl-sparing effect of acetaminophen as a mixture of fentanyl in intravenous parent-/nurse-controlled analgesia after pediatric ureteroneocystostomy. Anesthesiology 2010 Sep;113(3):672-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20693884
76. Gonzalez A, Smith DP. Minimizing hospital length of stay in children undergoing ureteroneocystostomy. Urology 1998 Sep;52(3):501-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9730469
77. Chauhan RD, Idom CB, Noe HN. Safety of ketorolac in the pediatric population after ureteroneocystostomy. J Urol 2001 Nov;166(5):1873-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586252
78. Miller OF, Bloom TL, Smith LJ, et al. Early hospital discharge for intravesical ureteroneocystostomy. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2556-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992088
79. Park JM, Houck CS, Sethna NF, et al. Ketorolac suppresses postoperative bladder spasms after pediatric ureteral reimplantation. Anesth Analg 2000 Jul;91(1):11-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10866879
80. Jo YY, Hong JY, Choi EK, et al. Ketorolac or fentanyl continuous infusion for post-operative analgesia in children undergoing ureteroneocystostomy. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2011 Jan;55(1):54-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21083540
81. Routh JC, Graham DA, Nelson CP. Ketorolac is underutilized after ureteral reimplantation despite reduced hospital cost and reduced length of stay. Urology 2010 Jul;76(1):9-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20138342
82. Kumar R, Smith G. Dorsal lumbotomy incision for pediatric pyeloplasty--a good alternative. Pediatr Surg Int 1999;15(8):562-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10631734
83. Piedrahita YK, Palmer JS. Is one-day hospitalization after open pyeloplasty possible and safe? Urology 2006 Jan;67(1):181-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413360
84. Lönnqvist PA, Olsson GL. Paravertebral vs epidural block in children. Effects on postoperative morphine requirement after renal surgery. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 1994 May;38(4):346-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8067221
85. Berta E, Spanhel J, Smakal O, et al. Single injection paravertebral block for renal surgery in children. Paediatr Anaesth 2008 Jul;18(7):593-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18482238

86. Ben-Meir D, Livne PM, Katz J, et al. Continuous epidural versus nonepidural analgesia for post-pyeloplasty pain in children. J Urol 2009 Oct;182(4 Suppl):1841-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19692062
87. Dingemann J, Kuebler JF, Wolters M, et al. Perioperative analgesia strategies in fast-track pediatric surgery of the kidney and renal pelvis: lessons learned. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):215-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19565247
88. Freilich DA, Houck CS, Meier PM, et al. The effectiveness of aerosolized intraperitoneal bupivacaine in reducing postoperative pain in children undergoing robotic-assisted laparoscopic pyeloplasty.
J Pediatr Urol 2008 Oct;4(5):337-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18790415

22. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

AGS	adrenogenital syndrome
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone
AMH	anti-Müllerian hormone
ARM	anorectal malformation
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia
CIC	clean self-intermittent catheterisation
CNS	central nervous system
COPUM	congenital obstructive posterior urethral membrane
CRP	C-reactive protein
DDAVP	desmopressine
CT	computed tomography
DHTST	dihydrotestosterone
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid
EMG	electromyography
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
FSH	follicle stimulating hormone
GnRH	gonadotrophin-releasing hormone
hCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
IC	intermittent catheterisation
ICCS	International Children's Continence Society
IVU	intravenous urogram
LH	luteinizing hormone
LHRH	luteinizing hormone releasing hormone
LUTD	lower urinary tract dysfunction
LUT(S)	lower urinary tract (symptoms)
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NDSD	neurogenic detrusor-sphincter dysfunction
OAB	overactive bladder
PNL	percutaneous litholapaxy
RCT	randomised controlled trial
RN	reflux nephropathy
RNC	radionuclide cystography
RTA	renal tubular acidosis
SWL	(extracorporeal) shockwave lithotripsy
Tc-MAG3 (99m)	technetium-99m mercaptoacetyltriglycine (MAG3)
TIP	tubularised incised plate urethroplasty
TST	testosterone
UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
URS	ureterorenoscopy
US	ultrasound
UTIs	urinary tract infections
VCUG	voiding cystourethrography
VR	vesicorenal reflux
VUR	vesicoureteral reflux
VUS	voiding urosonography

Conflict of interest

All members of the Paediatric Urology Guidelines writing panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Urological Trauma

N. Djakovic, E. Plas, L. Martínez-Piñeiro, Th. Lynch, Y. Mor,
R.A. Santucci, E. Serafetinidis, L.N. Turkeri, M. Hohenfellner

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Background

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Group for Urological Trauma prepared this guidelines document to assist medical professionals in the management of urological trauma.

The Urological Trauma guidelines are based on a review of the literature, using on-line searches of MEDLINE and other source documents published between 2005 and 2008. A critical assessment of the findings was made, not involving a formal appraisal of the data. There is a paucity of high-powered randomised controlled trials in this area and considerable available data are based on retrospective studies. The panel recognises this limitation.

A level of evidence (LE) and/or grade of recommendation (GR) have been assigned where possible (1). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Publication history information: The Urological Trauma Guidelines were first published in 2003, with a partial update in 2006 followed by this full text update in 2009. Additionally, a quick reference guide is available. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the society website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

Levels of evidence and grade of guideline recommendations*

Table 1: Level of evidence

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

Table 2: Grade of recommendation

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**modified from Sackett et al. (1).*

1.2 Reference

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009.. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012].

2. RENAL TRAUMA

2.1 Background

Renal trauma occurs in approximately 1-5% of all trauma cases (1,2). The kidney is the most commonly injured genitourinary and abdominal organ. There is a 3:1 male to female ratio in kidney trauma patients (3-5). Renal trauma can be acutely life-threatening, but the majority of renal injuries can be managed conservatively. Advances in imaging and treatment strategies during the past 20 years have decreased the need for surgical intervention and increased renal preservation (6-8).

2.2 Mode of injury

Renal injuries are classified by their mechanism: blunt or penetrating. In rural settings, blunt trauma can account for the largest percentage (90-95%) (9), while in urban settings the percentage of penetrating injuries can increase to 20% (6) or higher.

Blunt trauma is usually caused by motor vehicle accidents, falls, vehicle-associated pedestrian accidents, contact sports, and assault. Traffic accidents are the major cause of almost half the blunt renal injuries (10). Renal injury in frontal and side-impact collisions appears to occur after direct impact from objects in the vehicle compartment. For frontal crashes, occupant acceleration into the seat belt or steering wheel seems to result in renal injuries. Side impact injuries occur when the vehicle side panel intrudes into the compartment, striking the occupant (11). A 20-year review of renal injuries following free falls found a rate of 16% (12).

Renal lacerations and renal vascular injuries make up only 10-15% of all blunt renal injuries. Isolated renal artery injury following blunt abdominal trauma is extremely rare, and accounts for less than 0.1% of all trauma patients (13).

Renal artery occlusion is associated with rapid deceleration injuries. In theory, the kidney is displaced causing renal artery traction; the resulting tear in the inelastic intima and subsequent haemorrhage into the vessel wall leads to thrombosis. Compression of the renal artery between the anterior abdominal wall and the vertebral bodies may result in thrombosis of the renal artery.

Gunshot and stab wounds represent the most common causes of penetrating injuries. Renal injuries from penetrating trauma tend to be more severe and less predictable than those from blunt trauma. Bullets, because of their higher kinetic energy, have the potential for greater parenchymal destruction and are most often associated with multiple-organ injuries (14).

In wartime, the kidney is the most commonly injured urogenital organ. Most are found to be associated with major abdominal injuries, and the rate of wartime nephrectomies is relatively high (25-33%) (15-17).

*2.2.1 **Injury classification***

Classifying renal injuries helps to standardise different groups of patients, select appropriate therapy, and predict results. A total of 26 classifications for renal injuries have been presented in the literature in the past 50 years (18), but the committee on organ injury scaling of the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma (AAST) has developed a renal-injury scaling system that is now widely used (19). Renal injuries are classified as grade 1 to 5 (Table 3). Abdominal computed tomography (CT) or direct renal exploration is used to classify injuries. Most recent publications in the field of renal trauma have adopted this classification. In a retrospective review, the AAST scaling system was determined as the most important variable predicting the need for kidney repair or removal (20,21). It also predicts for morbidity after blunt or penetrating injury, and for mortality after blunt injury (22).

Table 3: AAST renal injury grading scale (17)

Grade*	Description of injury
1	• Contusion or non-expanding subcapsular haematoma • No laceration
2	• Non-expanding peri-renal haematoma • Cortical laceration < 1 cm deep without extravasation
3	• Cortical laceration > 1 cm without urinary extravasation
4	• Laceration: through corticomedullary junction into collecting system or • Vascular: segmental renal artery or vein injury with contained haematoma, or partial vessel laceration, or vessel thrombosis
5	• Laceration: shattered kidney or • Vascular: renal pedicle or avulsion

**Advance one grade for bilateral injuries up to grade 3.*

2.3 Diagnosis: initial emergency assessment

Initial assessment of the trauma patient should include securing the airway, controlling external bleeding, and resuscitation of shock, as required. In many cases, physical examination is carried out during the stabilisation of the patient. When renal injury is suspected, further evaluation (CT scan, laparotomy) is required for a prompt diagnosis.

2.3.1 History and physical examination

A direct history is obtained from conscious patients. Witnesses and emergency personnel can provide valuable information about unconscious or seriously injured patients. Possible indicators of major renal injury include a rapid deceleration event (fall, high-speed motor vehicle accidents) or a direct blow to the flank. In assessing trauma patients after motor vehicle accidents, the history should include the vehicle's speed and whether the patient was a passenger or pedestrian.

In penetrating injuries, important information includes the size of the weapon in stabbings, and the type and calibre of weapon used in gunshot wounds, as high-velocity projectiles have the potential to cause more extensive damage.

The medical history should be as detailed as possible, as pre-existing organ dysfunction can have a negative effect on trauma patient outcome (23). In the early resuscitation phase, special consideration should be given to pre-existing renal disease (24). Another point of interest is the functioning renal mass of the trauma patient, as there are numerous case reports in the literature about complicated renal trauma in solitary kidneys (25).

Pre-existing renal abnormality makes renal injury more likely following trauma. Pre-existing renal pathology should be noted. Hydronephrosis due to ureteropelvic junction abnormality, renal calculi, cysts, and tumours are the most commonly reported entities that may complicate a minor renal injury (26). The overall percentage of these cases varies from 4% to 22% (27,28).

Haemodynamic stability is the primary criterion for the management of all renal injuries. Shock is defined as a systolic blood pressure of less than 90 mmHg found at any time during an adult patient's evaluation. Vital signs should be recorded throughout diagnostic evaluation.

Physical examination may reveal an obvious penetrating trauma from a stab wound to the lower thoracic back, flanks, and upper abdomen, or bullet entry or exit wounds in this area. In stab wounds, the extent of the entrance wound may not accurately reflect the depth of penetration. Blunt trauma to the back, flank, lower thorax, or upper abdomen may result in renal injury. The following findings on physical examination could indicate possible renal involvement:

- haematuria;
- flank pain;
- flank ecchymoses;
- flank abrasions;
- fractured ribs;
- abdominal distension;
- abdominal mass;
- abdominal tenderness.

2.3.2 Recommendations

	GR
Haemodynamic stability should be decided upon admission.	B
History should be taken from conscious patients, witnesses and rescue team personnel with regard to the time and setting of the incident.	C
Past renal surgery, and known pre-existing renal abnormalities (ureteropelvic junction obstruction, large cysts, lithiasis) should be recorded.	B
A thorough examination should be made of the thorax, abdomen, flanks, and back for penetrating wounds.	B
Findings on physical examination such as haematuria, flank pain, flank abrasions and ecchymoses, fractured ribs, abdominal tenderness, distension, or mass could indicate possible renal involvement.	B

2.3.3 Laboratory evaluation

The trauma patient is evaluated by a series of laboratory tests. Urinalysis, haematocrit, and baseline creatinine are the most important tests for evaluating renal trauma.

Urinalysis is considered the basic test in the evaluation of patients with suspected renal trauma. Haematuria

is the presence of an abnormal quantity of red blood cells in the urine and is usually the first indicator of renal injury. Microscopic haematuria in the trauma setting may be defined as greater than 5 red blood cells per high-power field (rbc/hpf), while gross haematuria is demonstrated by urine in which blood is readily visible.

Haematuria is a hallmark sign of renal injury, but is neither sensitive nor specific enough for differentiating minor and major injuries. It does not necessarily correlate with the degree of injury (29). Major renal injury, such as disruption of the ureteropelvic junction, renal pedicle injuries or segmental arterial thrombosis may occur without haematuria (30). In a study by Eastham *et al.*, 9% of patients with stab wounds and resultant proven renal injury did not manifest haematuria (31). Haematuria that is out of proportion to the history of trauma may suggest pre-existing renal pathology (32). A urine dipstick is an acceptably reliable and rapid test to evaluate haematuria. However, some studies have shown false-negative result rates ranging from 3-10% using the dipstick test for haematuria (33).

Serial haematocrit determination is a method of continuous evaluation of the trauma patient. Initial haematocrit in association with vital signs implies the need for emergency resuscitation. The decrease in haematocrit and the requirement for blood transfusions is an indirect sign of the rate of blood loss and, along with the patient's response to resuscitation, is valuable in the decision-making process.

As most trauma patients are evaluated within 1 hour of injury, creatinine measurement reflects renal function prior to the injury. An increased creatinine usually reflects pre-existing renal pathology.

2.3.4 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Urine from a patient with suspected renal injury should be inspected grossly and then by dipstick analysis.	B
Serial haematocrit measurement indicates blood loss. However, until evaluation is complete, it will not be clear whether it is due to renal trauma and/or associated injuries.	B
Creatinine measurement could highlight patients who had impaired renal function prior to injury.	C

2.3.5 ***Imaging: criteria for radiographic assessment in adults***

Decisions about radiographic imaging in cases of suspected renal trauma are based on the clinical findings and the mechanism of injury. Since the majority of renal injuries are not significant and resolve without any intervention, many attempts have been made to identify which patients could be spared the discomfort, radiation exposure, possible allergic reaction, time, and expense of a radiographic evaluation (34).

Some patients do not require radiographic evaluation following blunt renal trauma. Patients with microscopic haematuria and no shock after blunt trauma have a low likelihood of concealing significant renal injury (35). The indications for radiographic evaluation are gross haematuria, microscopic haematuria and shock, or the presence of major associated injuries (36). However, patients with a history of rapid deceleration injury with clinical indicators of renal trauma or associated injuries also need immediate imaging to rule out ureteral avulsion or renal pedicle injury (12).

Patients with penetrating trauma to the torso have a high incidence of significant renal injuries. If renal injury is clinically suspected on the basis of an entry or exit wound, renal imaging should be performed, regardless of the degree of haematuria (37).

2.3.5.1 Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography (US) is a popular imaging modality in the initial evaluation of abdominal trauma. It provides a quick, non-invasive, low-cost means of detecting peritoneal fluid collections without exposure to radiation (38). However, the usefulness of conventional US in the radiographic evaluation of renal trauma has been widely questioned. Its limitations stem from the difficulty in obtaining good acoustic windows on trauma patients who have sustained numerous associated injuries. The results are also highly dependent on the operator.

Ultrasound scans can detect renal lacerations but cannot definitely assess their depth and extent and do not provide functional information about renal excretion or urine leakage. Despite the drawbacks of the method, US scans can be conveniently used during the primary assessment of renal injuries. During the evaluation of blunt trauma patients, US scans were more sensitive and specific than standard intravenous pyelography (IVP) in minor renal trauma (39). In a study comparing the results of US scans and IVP, the sensitivity of US decreased as the severity of the trauma increased, while that of IVP remained high for all degrees of severity (40).

Another possible role for US may be for serially evaluating stable renal injuries for the resolution of urinomas and retroperitoneal haematomas (41). Ultrasound might be considered suitable for the routine follow-up of renal parenchymal lesions or haematomas in the intensive care unit. Contrast-enhanced sonography is more sensitive than conventional US in the detection of renal injuries. In haemodynamically stable patients, it is

a useful tool in the assessment of blunt injuries (42).

In conclusion, since US scans are used in the triage of patients with blunt abdominal trauma in many centres, they can be helpful in identifying which patients require a more aggressive radiological exploration to obtain a certain diagnosis (43,44). Ultrasound findings do not provide sufficient evidence for a definite answer on the severity of renal injuries.

2.3.5.2 Standard IVP

Standard IVP is no longer the study of choice for the evaluation of renal trauma. In some centres it may be the only study available, in which case IVP should establish the presence or absence of one or both of the kidneys, clearly define the renal parenchyma, and outline the collecting system. In order to stage renal trauma, the IVP should include nephrotomograms, delineate the renal contour, and visualise the excretion of contrast material from both kidneys into the renal pelvis and ureter. Non-visualisation, contour deformity, or extravasation of contrast implies a major renal injury and should prompt further radiological evaluation with CT or, less commonly, angiography if available.

The most significant findings on IVP are non-function and extravasation. Non-function is usually a sign of extensive trauma to the kidney, pedicle injury (vascular avulsion or thrombosis), or a severely shattered kidney. Extravasation of the contrast medium also implies a severe degree of trauma, involving the capsule, parenchyma, and collecting system. Other less reliable signs are delayed excretion, incomplete filling, calyceal distortion, and obscuring of the renal shadow. The sensitivity of IVP is high (> 92%) for all degrees of trauma severity (45).

2.3.5.3 One-shot intraoperative IVP

Unstable patients selected for immediate operative intervention (and thus unable to have a CT scan) should undergo one-shot IVP in the operating theatre. The technique consists of a bolus intravenous injection of 2 mL/kg of radiographic contrast followed by a single plain film taken after 10 minutes. The study is safe, efficient, and of high quality in the majority of cases. It provides important information for decision-making in the critical time of urgent laparotomy concerning the injured kidney, as well as the presence of a normal functioning kidney on the contralateral side (46).

While the majority of experts advocate its use, not all studies have shown one-shot IVP to be necessary. In cases of penetrating abdominal trauma, the positive predictive value of one-shot IVP was only 20% (80% of patients with normal one-shot IVP findings had renal injuries not detected by the IVP) (47). One-shot IVP is of no significant value in assessing penetrating abdominal trauma patients who undergo exploratory laparotomy for associated intra-abdominal injuries, and should be reserved only for patients with a flank wound or gross haematuria following penetrating trauma (48).

2.3.5.4 Computed tomography (CT)

Computed tomography is the gold standard method for the radiographic assessment of stable patients with renal trauma. CT is more sensitive and specific than IVP, ultrasonography or angiography. In a retrospective study, the positive rate during evaluation of 298 patients was 96% by CT, 91% by double-dose intravenous IVP and 79% by US (45).

Computed tomography more accurately defines the location of injuries, easily detects contusions and devitalised segments, visualises the entire retroperitoneum and any associated haematomas, and simultaneously provides a view of both the abdomen and pelvis. It demonstrates superior anatomical detail, including the depth and location of renal laceration and presence of associated abdominal injuries, and establishes the presence and location of the contralateral kidney (49). Computed tomography is particularly useful in evaluating traumatic injuries to kidneys with pre-existing abnormalities (50).

Intravenous contrast should be administered for renal evaluation. A lack of contrast enhancement of the injured kidney is a hallmark of renal pedicle injury. In cases where this typical finding is not demonstrated, central parahilar haematoma increases the possibility of renal pedicle injury. This sign should be considered even if the renal parenchyma is well enhanced (51).

Renal vein injury remains difficult to diagnose with any type of radiographic study. However, the presence on CT of a large haematoma, medial to the kidney and displacing the renal vasculature, should raise the suspicion of venous injury. Newer ‘spiral’ CT provides shorter scanning time and thus fewer artefacts in the examinations of patients who cannot co-operate adequately (52). Three-dimensional post-processing modalities allow assessment of the renal vascular pedicle by CT angiography and improve the demonstration of complex lacerations of the renal parenchyma. However, injury to the renal collecting system may be missed during routine spiral CT. In all cases of suspected renal trauma evaluated with spiral CT, repeat scans of the kidneys should be performed 10-15 minutes after contrast injection (53). Most blunt ureteral and ureteropelvic junction injuries can be identified if delayed excretory CT scans are performed (54). Computed tomography scanning is also safe as part of the diagnostic procedure for patients with gunshot wounds who are being

considered for non-operative management (55).

2.3.5.5 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

Although MRI is not used in the majority of renal trauma patients, Leppäniemi *et al*. investigated the use of high-field strength MRI (1.0 T) in the evaluation of blunt renal trauma (56). MRI scans were accurate in finding peri-renal haematomas, assessing the viability of renal fragments, and detecting pre-existing renal abnormalities, but failed to visualise urinary extravasation on initial examination. The authors concluded that MRI could replace CT in patients with iodine allergy and could be used for initial staging if CT were not available (56).

In a recent study comparing CT and MRI findings, the latter clearly revealed renal fracture with non-viable fragment, and was able to detect focal renal laceration not detected on CT due to peri-renal haematoma (57).

However, MRI is not the first choice in managing patients with trauma because it requires a longer imaging time, increases the cost, and limits access to patients when they are in the magnet during the examination. MRI is therefore useful in renal trauma only if CT is not available, in patients with iodine allergy, or in the very few cases where the findings on CT are equivocal.

2.3.5.6 Angiography

Computed tomography has largely replaced the use of angiography for staging renal injuries, as angiography is less specific, more time-consuming and more invasive. Angiography is, however, more specific for defining the exact location and degree of vascular injuries and may be preferable when planning selective embolisation for the management of persistent or delayed haemorrhage from branching renal vessels (50).

Angiography can define renal lacerations, extravasation, and pedicle injury. Additionally, it is the test of choice for evaluating renal venous injuries. The most common indication for arteriography is non-visualisation of a kidney on IVP after major blunt renal trauma when a CT is not available. Common causes for non-visualisation are:

- total avulsion of the renal vessels (usually presents with life-threatening bleeding);
- renal artery thrombosis;
- severe contusion causing major vascular spasm.

Angiography is also indicated in stable patients to assess pedicle injury if the findings on CT are unclear, and for those who are candidates for radiological control of haemorrhage (31).

2.3.5.7 Radionuclide scans

Radionuclide scans might be helpful for documenting renal blood flow in trauma patients with severe allergy to iodinated contrast material (50), but are not generally used or required.

2.3.6 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Blunt trauma patients with macroscopic or microscopic haematuria (at least 5 rbc/hpf) with hypotension (systolic blood pressure < 90 mmHg) should undergo radiographic evaluation.	B
Radiographic evaluation is also recommended for all patients with a history of rapid deceleration injury and/or significant associated injuries.	B
All patients with any degree of haematuria after penetrating abdominal or thoracic injury require urgent renal imaging.	B
Ultrasonography can be informative during the primary evaluation of polytrauma patients and for the follow-up of recuperating patients, although more data is required to suggest this modality universally.	C
A CT scan with enhancement of intravenous contrast material is the best imaging study for the diagnosis and staging of renal injuries in haemodynamically stable patients.	B
Unstable patients who require emergency surgical exploration should undergo a one-shot IVP with bolus intravenous injection of 2 mL/kg contrast.	C
Formal IVP, MRI, and radiographic scintigraphy are acceptable second-line alternatives for imaging renal trauma when CT is not available.	C
Angiography can be used for diagnosis and simultaneous selective embolisation of bleeding vessels.	B

2.4 Treatment

*2.4.1 **Indications for renal exploration***

The goal in managing patients with renal injuries is to minimise morbidity and to preserve renal function. The need for renal exploration can be predicted with accuracy with a nomogram, which uses the type of injury, transfusion requirements, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, and injury grade (58). However, the management of renal injury is usually influenced by the decision to explore or observe associated abdominal injuries (59).

A life-threatening haemodynamic instability due to renal haemorrhage is an absolute indication for renal exploration, irrespective of the mode of injury (60,61). Other indications include an expanding or pulsatile peri-renal haematoma identified at exploratory laparotomy performed for associated injuries (this finding heralds a grade 5 vascular injury and is quite rare). A one-shot intraoperative IVP can provide valuable information. Poor visualisation or any other abnormality of the injured kidney is an indication for exploration.

Grade 5 vascular renal injuries are, by definition, regarded as an absolute indication for exploration, although a single report has suggested that patients who are haemodynamically stable at presentation but with a grade 5 parenchymal injury (shattered kidney) after blunt trauma might be safely treated conservatively (62).

The management of major renal injuries with urinary extravasation and devitalised fragments is controversial. Since these injuries are very uncommon, published series report on small numbers of patients. In recent years, it seems to have been recognised that most major injuries heal with non-operative treatment (63). Moudouni *et al*. suggest that an initially conservative approach is feasible in stable patients with devitalised fragments (64). These injuries are, however, associated with an increased rate of complications and late surgery (65).

Persistent extravasation or urinoma are usually managed successfully with endourological techniques. Inconclusive renal imaging and a pre-existing renal abnormality or an incidentally diagnosed tumour could require surgery even after relatively minor renal injury (32).

*2.4.2 **Operative findings and reconstruction***

The overall exploration rate for blunt trauma is less than 10% (60), and may be even lower as more centres adopt a very conservative approach to the management of these patients (66). The goal of renal exploration following renal trauma is control of haemorrhage and renal salvage. Most experienced authors suggest the transperitoneal approach for surgery (67,68). Access to the renal vascular pedicle is then obtained through the posterior parietal peritoneum, which is incised over the aorta, just medial to the inferior mesenteric vein.

Temporary vascular occlusion before opening Gerota's fascia is a safe and effective method during exploration and renal reconstruction (69). It tends to lower blood loss and the nephrectomy rate, and appears not to increase post-operative azotaemia or mortality (70). Renal reconstruction is feasible in most cases. The overall rate of patients who have a nephrectomy during exploration is around 13%, usually in patients with penetrating injury, and higher rates of transfusion requirements, haemodynamic instability, injury severity scores, and mortality (71). Other intra-abdominal injuries also slightly increase the need for nephrectomy (72). Mortality is associated with the overall severity of the injury and is not often a consequence of the renal injury itself (73). In gunshot injuries caused by a high-velocity bullet, reconstruction can be difficult and nephrectomy is often required (14).

Renorrhaphy is the most common reconstructive technique. Partial nephrectomy is required when non-viable tissue is detected. Watertight closure of the collecting system, if open, might be desirable, although some experts merely close the parenchyma over the injured collecting system with good results. If the renal capsule is not preserved, an omental pedicle flap or peri-renal fat bolster may be used for coverage (74). In a review by Shekarriz and Stoller, the use of fibrin sealant in traumatic renal reconstruction proved to be helpful (75). Newly developed haemostatic agents that have proven useful in open and laparoscopic partial nephrectomy, might also be helpful, but are largely unproven in the trauma setting. In all cases, drainage of the ipsilateral retroperitoneum is recommended to provide an outlet for any temporary leakage of urine.

Renovascular injuries are uncommon. They are associated with extensive associated trauma and increased peri- and post-operative mortality and morbidity. Blunt renal artery injury is rare. Non-operative management should be considered as an acceptable therapeutic option (76).

Following blunt trauma, repair of grade 5 vascular injury is seldom if ever effective (77). Repair could be attempted in those very rare cases in which there is a solitary kidney or the patient has sustained bilateral injuries (78). In all other cases, nephrectomy appears to be the treatment of choice (79). In a recent review, it appears that nephrectomy for main renal artery injury has outcomes similar to those of vascular repair, and it does not worsen post-treatment renal function in the short term. Non-operative management for segmental renal artery injury results in excellent outcomes (80).

Angiography with selective renal embolisation for haemorrhage control is a reasonable alternative to laparotomy provided that no other indication for immediate surgery exists (81). Cure of haematuria after superselective transarterial embolisation is reported as high as 98% (82). Successful haemostasis by

embolisation is reported to be identical in blunt and penetrating injuries (83,84). The complication rate is minimal, and it has been proven effective for grade 4 injuries where conservative therapy failed (85). In our series, embolisation failed when applied to grade 5 injuries (85).

*2.4.3 **Non-operative management of renal injuries***

As the indications for renal exploration become clearer, non-operative management has become the treatment of choice for the majority of renal injuries. In stable patients, supportive care with bed-rest, hydration, and antibiotics is the preferred initial approach (7). Primary conservative management is associated with a lower rate of nephrectomy without any increase in the immediate or long-term morbidity (86). The failure of conservative therapy is low (1.1%) (6).

All grade 1 and 2 renal injuries can be managed non-operatively, whether due to blunt or penetrating trauma. Therapy of grade 3 injuries has been controversial, but recent studies support expectant treatment (87-89). Patients diagnosed with urinary extravasation in solitary injuries can be managed without major intervention and a resolution rate of > 90% (90). Persistent bleeding is the main indication for a reconstruction attempt (91).

The majority of patients with grade 4 and 5 renal injuries present with major associated injuries, and consequently experience high exploration and nephrectomy rates (92), although emerging data indicate that many of these patients can be managed safely with an expectant approach. Although almost all grade 4 patients with penetrating injury require renal exploration, only 20% of those with blunt trauma do (93). Isolated grade 4 renal injuries represent a unique situation to treat the patient based solely on the extent of the renal injury, thus non-operative management is used more frequently. Persistent bleeding represents the main indication for renal exploration and reconstruction. In all cases of severe renal injury, non-operative management should occur only after complete renal staging in haemodynamically stable patients (91).

Penetrating wounds have traditionally been approached surgically. However, stable patients should undergo complete staging to define the full extent of the injury. Renal gunshot injuries should be explored only if they involve the hilum or are accompanied by signs of continued bleeding, ureteral injuries, or renal pelvis lacerations (94).

Low-velocity gunshot and stab wounds of minor degree may be managed conservatively with an acceptably good outcome (95). Tissue damage from high-velocity gunshot injuries, on the other hand, might be more extensive and nephrectomy could be required. Non-operative management of renal gunshot wounds in selected stable patients is associated with a high rate of success (96-98).

If the site of penetration by stab wound is posterior to the anterior axillary line, 88% of such renal injuries can be managed non-operatively (99). Injuries to the flank are more likely to be grade 3, while injuries to the abdomen are more likely to be grade 1. A systematic approach based on clinical, laboratory, and radiological evaluation might minimise negative exploration without increasing morbidity from missed injury (61). Renal stab wounds producing major renal injuries (grade 3 or higher) are more unpredictable and are associated with a higher rate of delayed complications if treated expectantly (100).

*2.4.4 **Recommendations***

	GR
Following grade 1-4 blunt renal trauma, stable patients should be managed conservatively with bed-rest, prophylactic antibiotics, and continuous monitoring of vital signs until haematuria resolves.	B
Following grade 1-3 stab and low-velocity gunshot wounds, stable patients, after complete staging, should be selected for expectant management.	B
Indications for surgical management include: - haemodynamic instability; - exploration for associated injuries; - expanding or pulsatile peri-renal haematoma identified during laparotomy; - grade 5 injury.	
Incidental finding of pre-existing renal pathology requiring surgical therapy.	B
Renal reconstruction should be attempted in cases where the primary goal of controlling haemorrhage is achieved and a sufficient amount of renal parenchyma is viable.	B

*2.4.5 **Post-operative care and follow-up***

Patients who are successfully treated conservatively carry some risk of complications. This risk correlates with increasing grade. Repeat imaging 2-4 days after trauma minimises the risk of missed complications, especially in grade 3-5 blunt renal injuries (101). However, the utility of frequent CT scanning after injury has never been

satisfactorily proven. CT scans should always be performed on patients with fever, unexplained decreasing haematocrit, or significant flank pain.

Nuclear renal scans are useful for documenting and tracking functional recovery in patients following renal reconstruction before discharge from hospital (97). To detect many of the delayed complications, an excretory urogram is recommended within 3 months of major renal injury, although benefit to the patient has not yet been proven in the literature. Follow-up should involve physical examination, urinalysis, individualised radiological investigation, serial blood pressure measurement and serum determination of renal function (60, 64). Follow-up examinations should continue until healing is documented and laboratory findings have stabilised, although checking for latent renovascular hypertension may need to continue for years (102).

The literature is generally inadequate on the subject of the long-term consequences of trauma on renal tissue. It appears that on histopathological evaluation, renal tissue may appear dystrophic following some cases of conservative management of minor renal injuries (103).

2.4.6 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Repeat imaging is recommended for all hospitalised patients within 2-4 days of significant renal trauma (although no specific data exists). Repeat imaging is always recommended in cases of fever, flank pain, or falling haematocrit.	B
Nuclear scintigraphy before discharge from the hospital is useful for documenting functional recovery.	C
Within 3 months of major renal injury, patients' follow-up should involve: 1. physical examination; 2. urinalysis; 3. individualised radiological investigation; 4. serial blood pressure measurement; 5. serum determination of renal function.	C
Long-term follow-up should be decided on a case-by-case basis but should at the very least involve monitoring for renovascular hypertension.	C

2.4.7 ***Complications***

Early complications occur within the first month after injury and can be bleeding, infection, peri-nephric abscess, sepsis, urinary fistula, hypertension, urinary extravasation, and urinoma. Delayed complications include bleeding, hydronephrosis, calculus formation, chronic pyelonephritis, hypertension, arteriovenous fistula, hydronephrosis, and pseudoaneurysms.

Delayed retroperitoneal bleeding usually occurs within several weeks of an injury or procedure and may be life-threatening. Selective angiographic embolisation is the preferred treatment (104). Peri-nephric abscess formation is usually best managed by percutaneous drainage, although open drainage may sometimes be required (60). Percutaneous management of complications may pose less risk of renal loss than re-operation, which may lead to nephrectomy when infected tissues make reconstruction difficult.

Renal trauma is a rare cause of hypertension, mostly in young men. The frequency of post-traumatic hypertension is estimated to be less than 5% in all published series (105,106). Hypertension may occur acutely as a result of external compression from peri-renal haematoma (Page kidney), or chronically because of compressive scar formation (Goldblatt kidney). Hypertension is usually renin-dependent and associated with parenchymal injury. Renin-mediated hypertension may occur as a long-term complication; aetiologies include renal artery thrombosis, segmental arterial thrombosis, renal artery stenosis (Goldblatt kidney), devitalised fragments and arteriovenous fistulae. Arteriography is informative in cases of post-traumatic hypertension (107). Treatment is required if the hypertension persists, and could include medical management, excision of the ischaemic parenchymal segment, vascular reconstruction, or total nephrectomy (108).

Urinary extravasation after renal reconstruction often subsides without intervention as long as ureteral obstruction and infection are not present. Ureteral retrograde stenting may improve drainage and allow healing (109). Persistent urinary extravasation from an otherwise viable kidney after blunt trauma often responds to stent placement and/or percutaneous drainage as necessary (63).

Arteriovenous fistulae usually present with delayed onset of significant haematuria, most often after penetrating trauma. Percutaneous embolisation is often effective for symptomatic arteriovenous fistulae, but larger ones may require surgery (110).

The development of pseudoaneurysm is a rare complication following blunt renal trauma. In numerous case reports, transcatheter embolisation appears to be a reliable minimally invasive solution (111,112).

Acute renal colic from a retained missile has been reported, and can be managed endoscopically if

possible (113). Other unusual late complications, such as duodenal obstruction, may result from retroperitoneal haematoma following blunt renal trauma (114).

2.4.8 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Complications following renal trauma require a thorough radiographic evaluation.	B
Medical management and minimally invasive techniques should be the first choice for the management of complications.	C
Renal salvage should be the surgeon's aim for patients in whom surgical intervention is necessary.	C

2.4.9 ***Paediatric renal trauma***

Blunt renal trauma is the most common injury seen in children and accounts for more than 90% of renal injuries in the paediatric population (115,116). Children are more susceptible to renal trauma than adults. Differences in anatomy and physiology, as well as the higher incidence of pre-existing renal disease, make children more likely to sustain injury. The kidneys are lower in the abdomen, less well-protected by the lower ribs and muscles of the flank and abdomen, more mobile, have less protective peri-renal fat and are proportionately larger in the abdomen than in adults (117-119).

History and physical examination are very important factors in the evaluation of the paediatric patient with suspected renal trauma. Unlike adults, hypotension is an unreliable sign in children, as an outpouring of catecholamines can maintain blood pressure despite a significant volume of blood loss. Hypotension is less common in children, and significant injury can be present despite stable blood pressures (120). Another important difference from adults is that children with microscopic haematuria or normal urinalyses and stable vital signs may have sustained significant renal injury (121). Haematuria is an important clinical sign of paediatric renal injury and is directly related to the severity of that renal injury and the presence of associated injuries (122).

The radiographic evaluation of children with suspected renal trauma is still controversial. Stein *et al*. proposed that all paediatric patients with any degree of haematuria should be evaluated for renal trauma (123). In contrast, Morey *et al*. concluded that significant injuries are unlikely in the absence of gross or significant microscopic haematuria (> 50 rbc/hpf) (124). Nguyen and Das proposed a low threshold for renal imaging following renal trauma. The instances of its use should include patients with blunt abdominal trauma with any level of haematuria, patients with associated abdominal injury regardless of the findings of urinalysis, and patients with normal urinalyses but in whom the mechanism of injury has a high index of suspicion for renal trauma (i.e. rapid deceleration event, direct flank trauma, falls from a height) (125). After studying 720 paediatric trauma cases, Santucci *et al*. concluded that the decision for imaging based on the adult criteria of gross haematuria, shock and significant deceleration injury is appropriate (126).

Ultrasound is considered a reliable method of screening and following the course of renal injury in paediatric patients with blunt renal trauma in Europe, although it is used much less frequently in the USA (127, 128). Ultrasound is used in some centres, mostly in stable cases with abnormal urinalyses and/or findings suggestive of a major injury (129). The diagnostic accuracy of IVP is superior to that of US, and should be performed as an emergency procedure if CT scan is not available (130).

Computed tomography is the best imaging modality, however, and those with multiple injuries or suspected renal trauma should be evaluated by contrast-enhanced CT if possible (131,132). The use of MRI in paediatric patients with vesicoureteral reflux found that MRI at 1.5 T was better than dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) scans in detecting small renal parenchymal lesions (133), although MRI has little proven use in the acute management of the trauma patient.

Conservative treatment for grade 1-2 renal injuries is clearly defined, and these injuries should be managed expectantly (134). Non-operative management results in an excellent long-term outcome in the majority of cases (135). Non-operative management of high grade renal injuries is effective and is recommended for stable children, but requires close clinical observation, serial CT, and frequent reassessment of the patient's overall condition (136).

The length of hospital stay does not increase with worsening severity of renal injury, but is determined by the severity of non-renal injuries (137). Haemodynamic instability and a diagnosed grade 5 injury are the strongest indications for operative management (59,120,136). Stable patients with urinary extravasation can also be managed expectantly since most urinomas resolve spontaneously. In cases where there is persistent leakage, the placement of a ureteral stent or percutaneous drainage is feasible and curative in most cases. Early placement of a ureteral stent can be considered for paediatric patients with blunt renal trauma who demonstrate an absence of contrast material in the ipsilateral ureter, as clinical indications for stent placement will likely develop (138).

Major kidney trauma has significant consequences on the opposite side. Post-traumatic functional

evaluation by DMSA scintigraphy 8 days after major injury is a valid prognostic indicator of later function, but its clinical utility has never been established.

Children with renal injuries that fail with non-surgical therapy appear to do so in a median time of 4 hours, but the majority of patients fail within the first 24 hours (139). The failure rate of non-surgical management for renal injuries is 3% (140). Buckley and McAninch presented an algorithm for the management of paediatric renal injuries based on the 25 year experience of the San Francisco General Hospital, which is highly recommended (135) (Figure 1).

Mild renal injuries do not require follow-up imaging. Follow-up is only recommended for patients with major injuries as there is an increased risk of delayed complications and loss of renal function (139).

The majority of patients with severe renal injuries develop parenchymal scars. Radionuclide scans such as DMSA can be useful in the early diagnosis of scars and consequent hypertension (141).

2.4.10 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Indications for radiographic evaluation of children suspected of renal trauma include: 1. blunt and penetrating trauma patients with any level of haematuria; 2. patients with associated abdominal injury regardless of the findings of urinalysis; 3. patients with normal urinalysis who sustained a rapid deceleration event, direct flank trauma, or a fall from a height.	B
Ultrasonography is considered a reliable method of screening and monitoring blunt renal injuries by some researchers, but is not universally accepted.	B
CT scanning is the imaging study of choice for staging renal injuries.	B
Haemodynamic instability and a diagnosed grade 5 injury are absolute indications for surgical exploration.	B

2.4.11 ***Renal injury in the polytrauma patient***

Approximately 8-10% of blunt and penetrating abdominal injuries involve the kidneys. The incidence of associated injury in penetrating renal trauma ranges from 77-100%. Gunshot wounds are associated with organ injury more often than are stab wounds. The majority of patients with penetrating renal trauma have associated adjacent organ injuries that may complicate treatment. In the absence of an expanding haematoma with haemodynamic instability, associated multiorgan injuries do not increase the risk of nephrectomy (142).

Blunt and penetrating trauma equally contributed to combined renal and pancreatic injury, as reported by Rosen and McAninch (143). Renal preservation was achieved in most patients, and the complication rate of the series was 15% (143). A similar rate of complications (16%) was reported in patients with simultaneous colon and renal injury. In a report reviewing this combination of injuries over a period of 17 years, 58% of patients underwent an exploration, with nephrectomies performed in 16% of explorations (144).

Renal injuries seem to be rather rare in patients with blunt chest trauma. In a recent study of polytrauma patients, conservative management was safely attempted without increasing morbidity (145). In polytrauma patients undergoing partial or total nephrectomy, there is no increased mortality or renal failure rate (146).

2.4.12 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Polytrauma patients with associated renal injuries should be evaluated on the basis of the most threatening injury.	C
In cases where surgical intervention is chosen, all associated injuries should be evaluated simultaneously.	C
The decision for conservative management should consider all injuries independently.	C

2.5 Iatrogenic renal injuries

2.5.1 ***Iatrogenic vascular injuries***

Iatrogenic main renal artery injuries with perforation or rupture are rare. They are usually reported after renal artery angioplasty or stenting, and have an incidence of 1.6% (147). One case of an iatrogenic renal artery perforation as a complication of cardiac catheterisation has also been reported (148). Since most iatrogenic renal artery lesions occur during endovascular procedures, there are no reports on the clinical symptoms, but

only on the angiographic findings. Arteriovenous fistulae, pseudoaneurysms, arterial dissection, or contrast extravasation are the possible radiological findings in these traumatic vascular lesions.

Traditional therapy for renal perforation has been renal artery ligation followed by bypass grafting or nephrectomy, but nowadays the treatment for acute iatrogenic rupture of the main renal artery is balloon tamponade. However, in case of failure, the immediate availability of a stent graft is vital.

Patients with iatrogenic operative injuries are strikingly different from those with penetrating, blunt, or catheter-related vascular trauma. Renal vessels are vulnerable during oncological procedures. Factors that increase technical difficulty are previous operation, tumour recurrence, radiation exposure, and chronic inflammatory changes.

Renal vein injuries during elective abdominal operations represent a serious complication with significant morbidity. Most patients with operative venous injuries have partial lacerations that can be managed with relatively simple techniques, such as venorrhaphy. Patch angioplasty with autologous vein or polytetrafluoroethylene (ePTFE) graft may be required if venorrhaphy is not possible (149).

Some renal vascular injuries, such as pseudoaneurysms following nephron-sparing surgery, can be managed by transcatheter embolisation (150).

2.5.2 ***Renal transplantation***

The orthotopic kidney is protected from external force by muscles, Gerota's fascia, and peri-nephric fat. A renal graft is located in the lower pelvis in the iliac fossa and is therefore more susceptible to injury, especially from direct blows to the abdomen. The transplanted kidney, unlike the native kidney, is fixed in position by a thick fibrotic capsule that develops post-transplant. Also, the transplant kidney is not suspended by the renal vessels, so deceleration events that cause pedicle injury to a native kidney are less likely to affect a transplanted kidney (151). As transplant recipients return to more active lifestyles, including a significant risk of becoming a trauma victim, a renal graft is liable to be severely affected by trauma that might not cause any injury to a native kidney.

In transplant recipients it is very important to know patients' baseline renal function (152). The knowledge of an abnormal renal baseline may prevent unnecessary extensive diagnostic evaluation. Radiographic evaluation should proceed as for the native kidney. The increased risk for contrast nephrotoxicity can be minimised with adequate hydration.

A CT scan is the test of choice for a stable injured transplant recipient, as it will identify renal and associated intra-abdominal injuries and will also indirectly assess renal blood flow and function. A renal duplex examination can be also very helpful for identifying isolated trauma to the transplanted kidney and for identifying renal blood flow. Radionuclide scans might reveal urine leaks and are good for assessing overall blood flow and renal function, while angiography can assess blood flow and identify specific arterial injuries.

The surgical management of an injured transplanted kidney is complex. A very short vascular pedicle and ureter, dense scarring, and a fibrous capsule may prevent any attempt at the direct repair of the parenchymal, collecting system and vascular pedicle injuries. Grade 1-3 injuries can be managed non-operatively. Grade 4-5 injuries might require exploration with debridement and drainage. Major injuries could require a subcapsular nephrectomy. Renovascular injuries have a poor prognosis. Renal arteriography may be helpful with embolisation of the main artery to stop bleeding, or with more selective embolisation to salvage part of the kidney. When renal graft injury occurs, saving the patient's life is the first priority, but saving the graft is also very important to maintain renal function.

Iatrogenic vascular injuries of renal transplants can be managed by embolisation. Angiographic embolisation often fails, and is associated with a high complication rate and high eventual nephrectomy rate (153). On the other hand, transcatheter embolisation is highly effective for biopsy-related vascular injury in the transplanted kidney.

2.5.3 ***Percutaneous renal procedures***

Percutaneous nephrostomy is achieved in nearly all patients without major complications. Haematuria is common for a few days, but massive retroperitoneal haemorrhage is rare. Small subcapsular renal haematomas resolve spontaneously, while arteriovenous-calyceal fistulae are best managed by angiographic embolisation.

If a nephrostomy catheter is seen to transfix the renal pelvis, the possibility of injury to a large renal artery must be considered. The misplaced nephrostomy catheter should be withdrawn over a guidewire, and renal artery embolisation might enable rapid arrest of a life-threatening haemorrhage (154). In more complex cases, CT could be used to detect possible catheter malposition and successfully guide catheter repositioning into the renal collecting system (155).

Renal pelvis injuries can occur during percutaneous nephrostomy placement. Haemorrhage can be prevented by avoiding puncture in anticoagulated or coagulopathic patients, careful puncture on to target calyceals, and avoidance of medial punctures. A pelvic injury is less likely to happen if the dilator is not

advanced further than the calyx, the peelaway sheaths are handled with care, especially when advanced around the pelviureteric junction, and kinking of the guidewires is avoided (156).

Percutaneous renal biopsy is a relatively safe procedure. Haemorrhage, arteriovenous fistula and renal capsular artery pseudoaneurysm might occur. Arteriovenous fistula might present with severe hypertension and is managed by embolisation (157). A pseudoaneurysm should be suspected if the patient presents with flank pain and decreasing haematocrit without haematuria. Arteriography and transarterial embolisation is the appropriate therapy (158).

Percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL) is a popular procedure in which stones in the renal pelvis are removed via a nephroscope, often after ultrasonic or electrohydraulic disruption. The complications include haemorrhage, extravasation, and absorption of large volumes of irrigation fluid, fever, infection, colonic perforation, arteriovenous fistulae, and pneumothorax.

Extravasation of fluid is often due to a tear in the pelvicalyceal system. A close watch on irrigation fluid input and output is required for early recognition of the complication. Termination of the procedure if the renal pelvis is torn or ruptured is a safe choice. Apart from intraoperative evaluation of serum electrolytes, acid-base status and oxygenation, the monitoring of airway pressure is a good indicator of this complication. Metabolic acidosis, hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia, peritonism, and ileus are due to absorption of large volumes of irrigation fluids. Management of this complication requires close monitoring, placement of an abdominal or retroperitoneal drain, correction of acidosis and supportive measures (159).

The diagnosis of a colon injury during or after percutaneous renal surgery can be elusive because symptoms are often variable. An unrecognised or untreated colon injury can result in abscess formation, septicaemia, and/or nephrocolic or colocutaneous fistula. Surgical exploration is inevitable when the patient experiences haemorrhage, pneumoperitoneum, and peritonitis.

The majority of these cases can be successfully managed conservatively. The consistent application of proper techniques, avoidance of puncturing the kidney lateral to the posterior axillary line, and puncture of the upper pole calyx when feasible, will help prevent the injuries.

Vascular injuries with renal bleeding are quite frequent and can occur at any stage of the percutaneous procedure, requiring transfusion in 1-11% of cases. A high number of punctures and incorrect choice of puncture site (access that is too medial or direct puncture of the renal pelvis) have been suggested as the cause of vascular lesions after percutaneous procedures. Renal bleeding can arise from both venous and arterial lesions. Bleeding from venous vessels could be profuse at the end of a procedure, but is generally controlled by simple measures, such as placing the patient supine to reduce abdominal compression, positioning a nephrostomy catheter, and forcing diuresis through hydration and parenteral administration of mannitol after clamping of the nephrostomy catheter. In the case of major venous trauma with massive haemorrhage, patients with concomitant renal insufficiency can be treated without open exploration or angiographic embolisation using a Council balloon catheter (160).

Arterial lesions may induce acute or late post-operative bleeding. Severe acute bleeding usually arises from injury to the anterior or posterior segmental arteries. Delayed bleeding is usually caused by interlobar and lower pole artery lesions, often arteriovenous fistulae and post-traumatic aneurysms. Duplex US and CT angiography can diagnose vascular injuries.

Hyperselective renal embolisation is considered the most appropriate technique for the treatment of iatrogenic vascular lesions. It is essential to identify the precise site of the lesion so as to be as selective as possible and reduce the risk of renal dysfunction. Hyperselective catheterisation of the renal artery branches is achieved by means of either hydrophilic 5 French catheters or coaxial systems with low profile microcatheters (2.6 French). The use of an embolic agent helps in performing a distal and irreversible occlusion with complete haemostasis. A variety of embolic materials have been used; microcoils, homologous clots, detachable balloons, polyvinyl alcohol particles, gelfoam, silicone rubber, cotton pellets, and silk filaments. The choice of the embolic agent is dependent mainly on the blood flow entity at the level of the lesion, the vessel size and the operator's experience.

Finally, complications of endopyelotomy can be classified as major (vascular injury) and minor (infection, urinoma) (161). Preventive steps, along with proper patient selection, minimise the risk for these complications.

2.5.4 *Recommendations*

	GR
Iatrogenic rupture of the main renal artery should be treated with balloon tamponade and, in case of failure, with a stent graft.	C
Surgical venous injuries should be managed with venorrhaphy or patch angioplasty.	C
The transplanted kidney should be evaluated on the basis of renal function, type of injury and the patients' condition.	C
Hyperselective embolisation may control arterial bleeding during percutaneous procedures.	C

2.6 Suggestions for future research studies

Among the topics that would be useful subjects for future research studies are:

- blunt trauma grade 5 patients, as it appears that some of them may benefit from non-surgical management;
- the necessity and nature of follow-up imaging;
- the value of the administration of antibiotics in low-grade renal injuries selected for conservative management.

2.7 Algorithms

Figure 1 is an algorithm for the management of renal trauma in children. Figures 2 and 3 show the suggested treatment of blunt and penetrating renal injuries in adults.

Figure 1: Algorithm for the management of paediatric renal trauma (119)

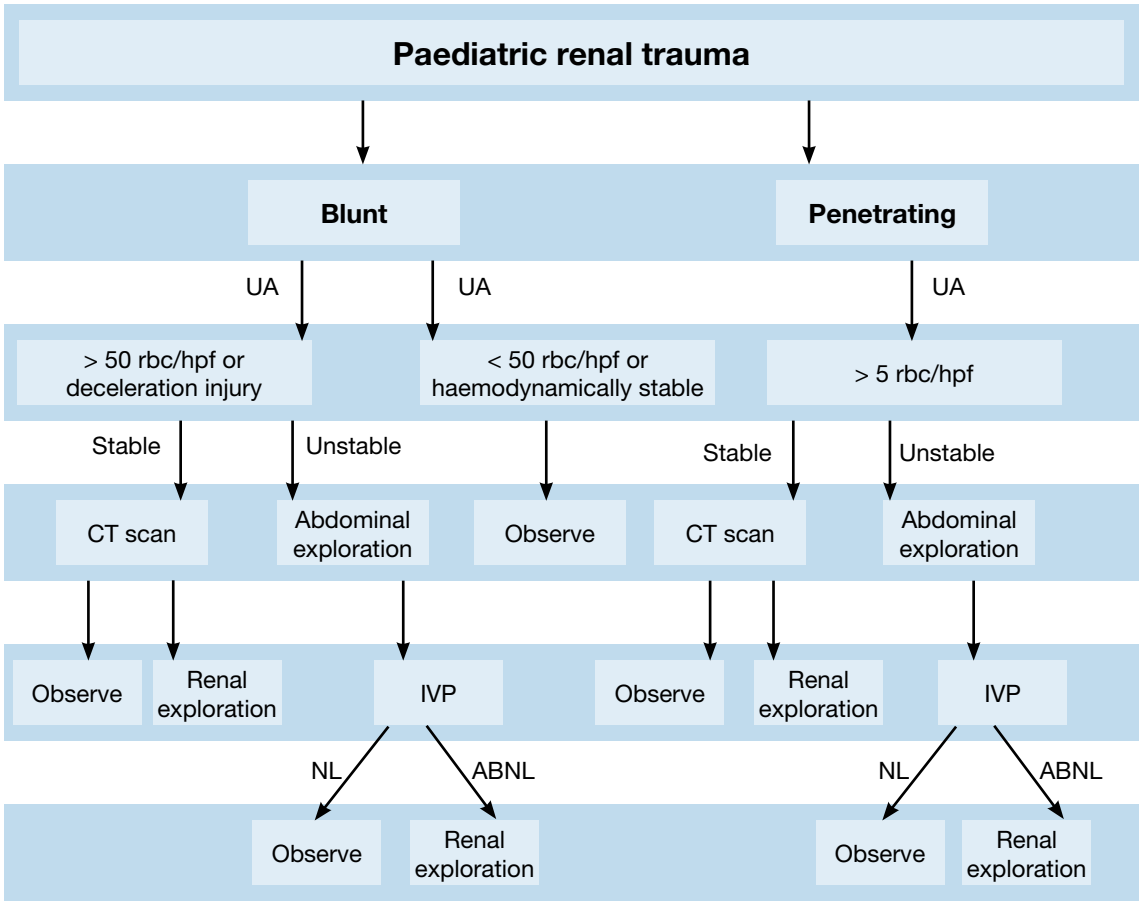
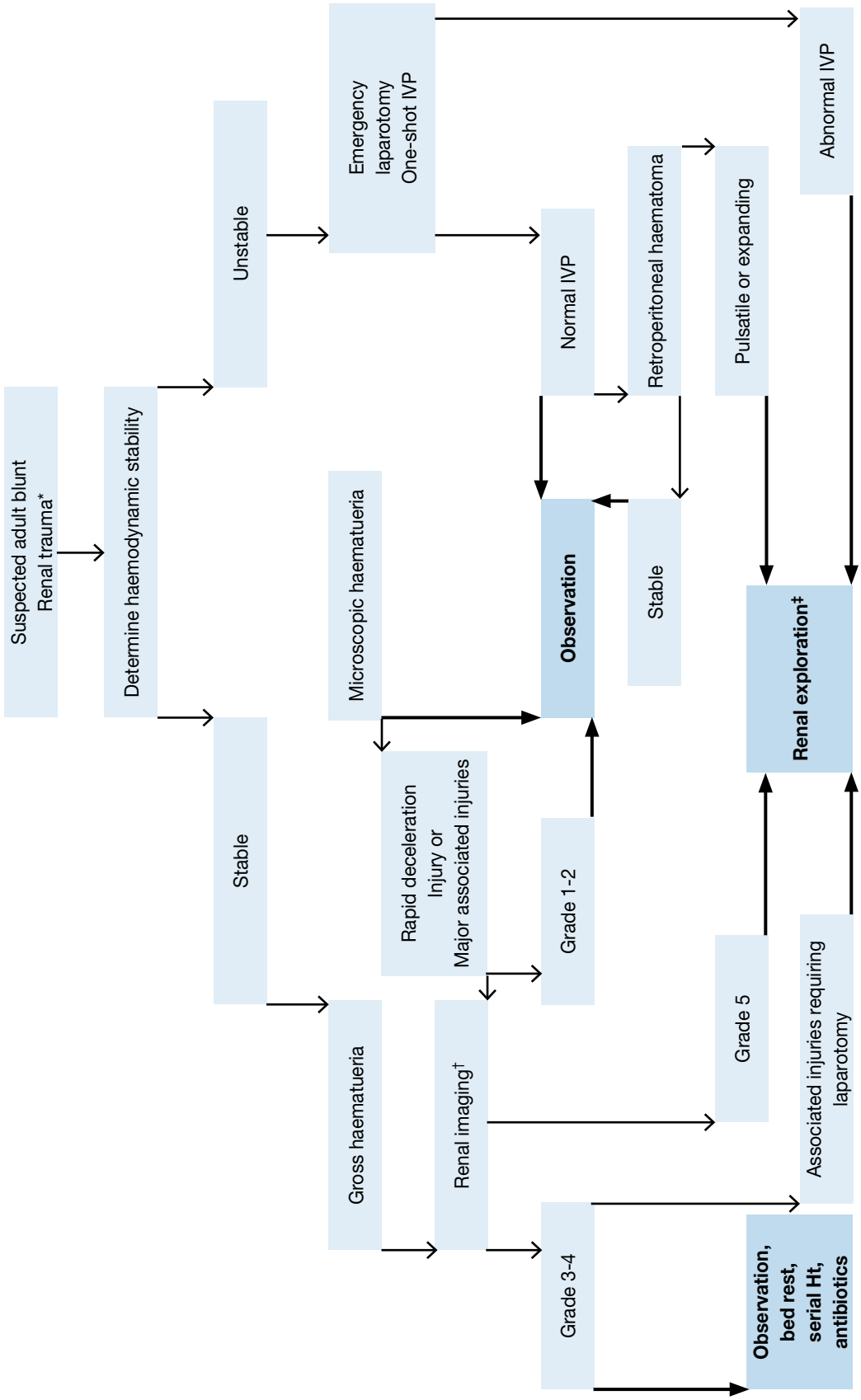


Figure 2: Evaluation of blunt renal trauma in adults

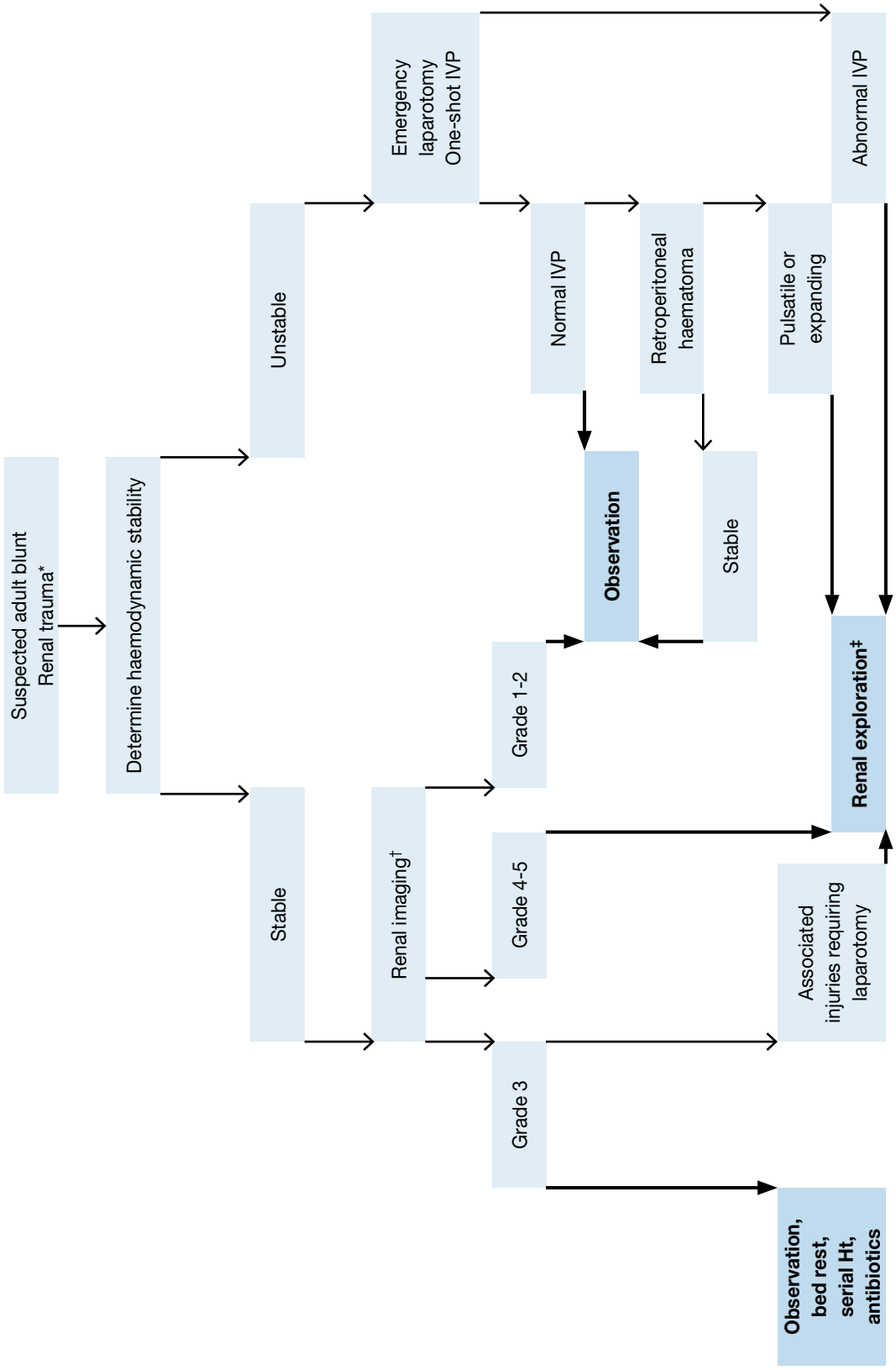


**Suspected renal trauma results from reported mechanism of injury and physical examination.*

† Renal imaging: CT scans are the gold standard for evaluating blunt and penetrating renal injuries in stable patients. In settings where the method is not available, the urologist should rely on other imaging modalities (IVP, angiography, radiographic scintigraphy, MRI).

‡ Renal exploration: Although renal salvage is a primary goal for the urologist, decisions concerning the viability of the organ and the type of reconstruction are made during the operation.

Figure 3: Evaluation of penetrating renal trauma in adults



**Suspected renal trauma results from reported mechanism of injury and physical examination.*

† Renal imaging: CT scans are the gold standard for evaluating blunt and penetrating renal injuries in stable patients. In settings where the method is not available, the urologist should rely on other imaging modalities (IVP, angiography, radiographic scintigraphy, MRI).

‡ Renal exploration: Although renal salvage is a primary goal for the urologist, decisions concerning the viability of the organ and the type of reconstruction are made during the operation.

2.8 References

1. Baverstock, R, Simons, R, McLoughlin, M. Severe blunt renal trauma: a 7-year retrospective review from a provincial trauma centre. Can J Urol 2001 Oct;8(5):1372-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11718633
2. Meng MV, Brandes SB, McAninch JW. Renal trauma: indications and techniques for surgical exploration. World J Urol 1999 Apr;17(2):71-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367364
3. Paparel P, N'Diaye A, Laumon B, et al. The epidemiology of trauma of the genitourinary system after traffic accidents: analysis of a register of over 43,000 victims. BJU Int 2006 Feb;97(2):338-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16430642
4. Kristjánsson A, Pedersen J. Management of blunt renal trauma. Br J Urol 1993 Nov;72(5Pt2):692-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8281396
5. Danuser H, Wille S, Zöscher G, et al. How to treat blunt kidney ruptures: primary open surgery or conservative treatment with deferred surgery when necessary? Eur Urol 2001 Jan;39(1):9-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11173932
6. Hurtuk M, Reed RL 2nd, Esposito TJ, et al. Trauma surgeons practice what they preach. The NTDB story on solid organ injury management. J Trauma 2006 Aug;61(2):243-54; discussion 254-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16917435
7. Santucci RA, Fisher MB. The literature increasingly supports expectant (conservative) management of renal trauma – a systematic review. J Trauma 2005 Aug;59(2):493-503. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16294101
8. Santucci RA, McAninch JW. Diagnosis and management of renal trauma: past, present, and future. J Am Coll Surg 2000 Oct;191(4):443-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11030250
9. Krieger JN, Algood CB, Mason JT, et al. Urological trauma in the Pacific Northwest: etiology, distribution, management and outcome. J Urol 1984 Jul;132(1):70-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6726964
10. Brophy RH, Gamradt SC, Barnes RP, et al. Kidney injuries in professional American football: implications for management of an athlete with 1 functioning kidney. Am J Sports Med 2008 Jan;36(1):85-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17986635
11. Kuan JK, Kaufman R, Wright JL, et al. Renal injury mechanisms of motor vehicle collisions: analysis of the crash injury research and engineering network data set. J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3Pt1):935-40; discussion 940. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17632156
12. Brandes SB, McAninch JW. Urban free falls and patterns of renal injury: a 20-year experience with 396 cases. J Trauma 1999 Oct;47(4):643-9; discussion 649-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10528597
13. Bruce LM, Croce MA, Santaniello JM, et al. Blunt renal artery injury: incidence, diagnosis, and management. Am Surg 2001 Jun;67(6):550-4; discussion 555-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11409803
14. Ersay A, Akgün Y. Experience with renal gunshot injuries in a rural setting. Urology 1999 Dec;54(6): 972-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604692
15. Abu-Zidan FM, Al-Tawheed A, Ali YM. Urologic injuries in the Gulf War. Int Urol Nephrol 1999;31(5):577-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755347
16. Tucak A, Lukacevic T, Kuvezdic H, et al. Urogenital wounds during the war in Croatia in 1991/1992. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):121-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966742
17. Paquette EL. Genitourinary trauma at a combat support hospital during Operation Iraqi Freedom: the impact of body armor. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2196-9; discussion 2199. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509316
18. Lent V. What classification is appropriate in renal trauma? Eur Urol 1996;30(3):327-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8931965
19. Moore EE, Shackford SR, Pachter HL, et al. Organ injury scaling: spleen, liver, and kidney. J Trauma 1989 Dec;29(12):1664-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2593197

20. Shariat SF, Roehrborn CG, Karakiewicz PI, et al. Evidence-based validation of the predictive value of the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma kidney injury scale. J Trauma 2007 Apr;62(4): 933-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17426551
21. Santucci RA, McAninch JW, Safir M, et al. Validation of the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma organ injury severity scale for the kidney. J Trauma 2001 Feb;50(2):195-200.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11242281
22. Kuan JK, Wright JL, Nathens AB, et al; American Association for the Surgery of Trauma. American Association for the Surgery of Trauma Organ Injury Scale for kidney injuries predicts nephrectomy, dialysis, and death in patients with blunt injury and nephrectomy for penetrating injuries. J Trauma 2006 Feb;60(2):351-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16508495
23. Sacco WJ, Copes WS, Bain LW Jr, et al. Effect of preinjury illness on trauma patient survival outcome. J Trauma 1993 Oct;35(4):538-42;discussion 542-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8411276
24. Cachecho R, Millham FH, Wedel SK. Management of the trauma patient with pre-existing renal disease. Crit Care Clin 1994 Jul;10(3):523-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7922736
25. Cózar JM, Cárcamo P, Hidalgo L, et al. [Management of injury of the solitary kidney]. Arch Esp Urol 1990 Jan-Feb;43(1):15-18. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2331159
26. Sebastià MC, Rodriguez-Dobao M, Quiroga S, et al. Renal trauma in occult ureteropelvic junction obstruction: CT findings. Eur Radiol 1999;9(4):611-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10354870
27. Bahloul A, Krid M, Trifa M, et al. [Contusions to the pathologic kidney. A retrospective study, apropos of 34 cases]. Ann Urol (Paris) 1997;31(5):253-8. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9480628
28. Giannopoulos A, Serafetinides E, Alamanis C, et al. [Urogenital lesions diagnosed incidentally during evaluation for blunt renal injuries]. Prog Urol 1999 Jun;9(3):464-9. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10434318
29. Buchberger W, Penz T, Wicke K, et al. [Diagnosis and staging of blunt kidney trauma. A comparison of urinalysis, i.v. urography, sonography and computed tomography]. Rofo 1993 Jun;158(6):507-12. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8507839
30. Carroll PR, McAninch JW, Klosterman P, et al. Renovascular trauma: risk assessment, surgical management, and outcome. J Trauma 1990 May;30(5):547-52; discussion 553-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342137
31. Eastham JA, Wilson TG, Larsen DW, et al. Angiographic embolization of renal stab wounds. J Urol 1992 Aug;148(2Pt1):268-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1635114
32. Schmidlin FR, Iselin CE, Naimi A, et al. The higher injury risk of abnormal kidneys in blunt renal trauma. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1998 Dec;32(6):388-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9925001
33. Chandhoke PS, McAninch JW. Detection and significance of microscopic hematuria in patients with blunt renal trauma. J Urol 1988 Jul;140(1):16-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3379684
34. Miller KS, McAninch JW. Radiographic assessment of renal trauma: our 15-year experience. J Urol 1995 Aug;154(2Pt1):352-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609096
35. Hardeman SW, Husmann DA, Chinn HK, et al. Blunt urinary tract trauma: identifying those patients who require radiological diagnostic studies. J Urol 1987 Jul;138(1):99-101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3599230
36. McAndrew JD, Corriere JN Jr. Radiographic evaluation of renal trauma: evaluation of 1103 consecutive patients. Br J Urol 1994 Apr;73(4):352-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8199819
37. Mee SL, McAninch JW. Indications for radiographic assessment in suspected renal trauma. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):187-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652848

38. Brown DF, Rosen CL, Wolfe RE. Renal ultrasonography. Emerg Med Clin North Am 1997 Nov;15(4): 877-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9391497
39. Arena F, Peracchia G, di Stefano C, et al. [The role of echotomography in minor renal traumatology]. Acta Biomed Ateneo Parmense 1997;68(3-4):53-7. [Article in Italian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10068351
40. Qin R, Shao G, Yu M. [The diagnosis and treatment of blunt renal trauma]. Zhonghua Wai Ke Za Zhi 1996 Aug;34(8):505-7. [Article in Chinese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9594202
41. Pollack HM, Wein AJ. Imaging of renal trauma. Radiology 1989 Aug;172(2):297-308.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2664858
42. Valentino M, Serra C, Zironi G, et al. Blunt abdominal trauma: emergency contrast-enhanced sonography for detection of solid organ injuries. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2006 May;186(5):1361-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16632732
43. McGahan JP, Richards JR, Jones CD, et al. Use of ultrasonography in the patient with acute renal trauma. J Ultrasound Med 1999 Mar;18(3):207-13; quiz 215-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10082355
44. Rosales A, Arango O, Coronado J, et al. The use of ultrasonography as the initial diagnostic exploration in blunt renal trauma. Urol Int 1992;48(2):134-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1585506
45. Qin R, Wang P, Qin W, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of renal trauma in 298 patients. Chin J Traumatol 2002 Feb;5(1):21-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11835751
46. Morey AF, McAninch JW, Tiller BK, et al. Single shot intraoperative excretory urography for the immediate evaluation of renal trauma. J Urol 1999 Apr;161(4):1088-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10081844
47. Patel VG, Walker ML. The role of 'one-shot' intravenous pyelogram in evaluation of penetrating abdominal trauma. Am Surg 1997 Apr;63(4):350-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9124757
48. Nagy KK, Brenneman FD, Krosner SM, et al. Routine preoperative 'one-shot' intravenous pyelography is not indicated in all patients with penetrating abdominal trauma. J Am Coll Surg 1997 Dec;185(6):530-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9404875
49. Steinberg DL, Jeffrey RB, Federle MP, et al. The computerized tomography appearance of renal pedicle injury. J Urol 1984 Dec;132(6):1163-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6502811
50. Kawashima A, Sandler CM, Corl FM, et al. Imaging of renal trauma: a comprehensive review. Radiographics 2001 May-Jun;21(3):557-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11353106
51. Shima H, Nosaka S, Hayakawa M, et al. [Diagnostic imaging of renal pedicle injury]. Nippon Igaku Hoshasen Gakkai Zasshi 1997 Jan;57(1):5-11. [Article in Japanese]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9038056
52. Vasile M, Bellin MF, Hélénon O, et al. Imaging evaluation of renal trauma. Abdom Imaging 2000 Jul-Aug;25(4):424-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10926198
53. Brown SL, Hoffman DM, Spirnak JP. Limitations of routine spiral computerized tomography in the evaluation of blunt renal trauma. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6Pt1):1979-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817304
54. Ortega SJ, Netto FS, Hamilton P, et al. CT scanning for diagnosing blunt ureteral and ureteropelvic junction injuries. BMC Urol 2008 Feb;8:3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18257927
55. Velmahos GC, Constantinou C, Tillou A, et al. Abdominal computed tomographic scan for patients with gunshot wounds to the abdomen selected for nonoperative management. J Trauma 2005 Nov;59(5):1155-60; discussion 1160-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16385294
56. Leppäniemi A, Lamminen A, Tervahartiala P, et al. MRI and CT in blunt renal trauma: an update. Semin Ultrasound CT MR 1997 Apr;18(2):129-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9163832

57. Ku JH, Jeon YS, Kim ME, et al. Is there a role for magnetic resonance imaging in renal trauma? Int J Urol 2001 Jun;8(6):261-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11389740
58. Shariat SF, Trinh QD, Morey AF, et al. Development of a highly accurate nomogram for prediction of the need for exploration in patients with renal trauma. J Trauma 2008 Jun;64(6):1451-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18545108
59. Husmann DA, Gilling PJ, Perry MO, et al. Major renal lacerations with a devitalized fragment following blunt abdominal trauma: a comparison between nonoperative (expectant) versus surgical management. J Urol 1993 Dec;150(6):1774-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8230501
60. McAninch JW, Carroll PR, Klosterman PW, et al. Renal reconstruction after injury. J Urol 1991 May;145(5):932-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2016804
61. Armenakas NA, Duckett CP, McAninch JW. Indications for nonoperative management of renal stab wounds. J Urol 1999 Mar;161(3):768-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022681
62. Altman AL, Haas C, Dinchman KH, et al. Selective nonoperative management of blunt grade 5 renal injury. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):27-30;discussion 30-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840417
63. Matthews LA, Smith EM, Spirnak JP. Nonoperative treatment of major blunt renal lacerations with urinary extravasation. J Urol 1997 Jun;157(6):2056-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146579
64. Moudouni SM, Hadj Slimen M, Manunta A, et al. Management of major blunt renal lacerations: is a nonoperative approach indicated? Eur Urol 2001 Oct;40(4):409-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11713395
65. Husmann DA, Morris JS. Attempted nonoperative management of blunt renal lacerations extending through the corticomedullary junction: the short-term and long-term sequelae. J Urol 1990 Apr;143(4): 682-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2313792
66. Hammer CC, Santucci RA. Effect of an institutional policy of nonoperative treatment of grades I to IV renal injuries. J Urol 2003 May;169(5):1751-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12686825
67. Robert M, Drianno N, Muir G, et al. Management of major blunt renal lacerations: surgical or nonoperative approach? Eur Urol 1996;30(3):335-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8931966
68. Nash PA, Bruce JE, McAninch JW. Nephrectomy for traumatic renal injuries. J Urol 1995 Mar; 153(3 Pt 1):609-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861494
69. Gonzalez RP, Falimirski M, Holevar MR, et al. Surgical management of renal trauma: is vascular control necessary? J Trauma 1999 Dec;47(6):1039-42; discussion 1042-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10608530
70. Atala A, Miller FB, Richardson JD, et al. Preliminary vascular control for renal trauma. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1991 May;172(5):386-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2028374
71. Davis KA, Reed RL 2nd, Santaniello J, et al. Predictors of the need for nephrectomy after renal trauma. J Trauma 2006 Jan;60(1):164-9; discussion 169-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16456451
72. Wright JL, Nathens AB, Rivara FP, et al. Renal and extrarenal predictors of nephrectomy from the national trauma data bank. J Urol 2006 Mar;175(3Pt1):970-5; discussion 975.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16469594
73. DiGiacomo JC, Rotondo MF, Kauder DR, et al. The role of nephrectomy in the acutely injured. Arch Surg 2001 Sep;136(9):1045-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11529828
74. McAninch JW, Dixon CM, Carroll PR. [The surgical treatment of renal trauma]. Vestn Khir Im I I Grek 1990 Nov;145(11):64-72. [Article in Russian]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1966179
75. Shekarriz B, Stoller ML. The use of fibrin sealant in urology. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1218-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832701

76. Sangthong B, Demetriades D, Martin M, et al. Management and hospital outcomes of blunt renal artery injuries: analysis of 517 patients from the National Trauma Data Bank. J Am Coll Surg 2006 Nov;203(5):612-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084321
77. Knudson MM, Harrison PB, Hoyt DB, et al. Outcome after major renovascular injuries: a Western trauma association multicenter report. J Trauma 2000 Dec;49(6):1116-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11130498
78. Tillou A, Romero J, Asensio JA, et al. Renal vascular injuries. Surg Clin North Am 2001 Dec;81(6): 417-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11766183
79. el Khader K, Bouchot O, Mhidia A, et al. [Injuries of the renal pedicle: is renal revascularization justified?]. Prog Urol 1998 Dec;8(6):995-1000. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9894257
80. Elliott SP, Olweny EO, McAninch JW. Renal arterial injuries: a single center analysis of management strategies and outcomes. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2451-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17937955
81. Hagiwara A, Sakaki S, Goto H, et al. The role of interventional radiology in the management of blunt renal injury: a practical protocol. J Trauma 2001 Sep;51(3):526-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11535904
82. Mohsen T, El-Assmy A, El-Diasty T. Long-term functional and morphological effects of transcatheter arterial embolization of traumatic renal vascular injury. BJU Int 2008 Feb;101(4):473-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17941919
83. Velmahos GC, Chahwan S, Falabella A, et al. Angiographic embolization for intraperitoneal and retroperitoneal injuries. World J Surg 2000 May;24(5):539-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10787073
84. Sofocleous CT, Hinrichs C, Hubbi B, et al. Angiographic findings and embolotherapy in renal arterial trauma. Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol 2005 Jan-Feb;28(1):39-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15602636
85. Breyer BN, McAninch JW, Elliott SP, et al. Minimally invasive endovascular techniques to treat acute renal hemorrhage. J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2248-52; discussion 2253.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423679
86. Schmidlin FR, Rohner S, Hadaya K, et al. [The conservative treatment of major kidney injuries]. Ann Urol (Paris) 1997;31(5):246-52. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9480627
87. el Khader K, Mhidia A, Ziade J, et al. [Conservative treatment of stage III kidney injuries]. Acta Urol Belg 1998 Dec;66(4):25-8. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10083630
88. Thall EH, Stone NN, Cheng DL, et al. Conservative management of penetrating and blunt Type III renal injuries. Br J Urol 1996 Apr;77(4):512-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8777609
89. Cheng DL, Lazan D, Stone N. Conservative treatment of type III renal trauma. J Trauma 1994 Apr;36(4):491-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8158708
90. Alsikafi NF, McAninch JW, Elliott SP, et al. Nonoperative management outcomes of isolated urinary extravasation following renal lacerations due to external trauma. J Urol 2006 Dec;176(6Pt1):2494-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085140
91. Buckley JC, McAninch JW. Selective management of isolated and nonisolated grade IV renal injuries. J Urol 2006 Dec;176(6Pt1):2498-502; discussion 2502.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17085141
92. Santucci RA, McAninch JM. Grade IV renal injuries: evaluation, treatment, and outcome. World J Surg 2001 Dec;25(12):1565-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11775193
93. Shariat SF, Jenkins A, Roehrborn CG, et al. Features and outcomes of patients with grade IV renal injury. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(6):728-33; discussion 733.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18435808
94. Velmahos GC, Demetriades D, Cornwell EE 3rd, et al. Selective management of renal gunshot wounds. Br J Surg 1998 Aug;85(8):1121-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9718011

95. Baniel J, Schein M. The management of penetrating trauma to the urinary tract. J Am Coll Surg 1994 Apr;178(4):417-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8149045
96. DuBose J, Inaba K, Teixeira PG, et al. Selective non-operative management of solid organ injury following abdominal gunshot wounds. Injury 2007 Sep;38(9):1084-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17544428
97. Wessells H, Deirmenjian J, McAninch JW. Preservation of renal function after reconstruction for trauma: quantitative assessment with radionuclide scintigraphy. J Urol 1997 May;157(5):1583-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9112481
98. Shefler A, Gremitzky A, Vainrib M, et al. [The role of nonoperative management of penetrating renal trauma]. Harefuah 2007 May;146(5):345-8, 406-7. [Article in Hebrew]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17674549
99. Bernath AS, Schutte H, Fernandez RR, et al. Stab wounds of the kidney: conservative management in flank penetration. J Urol 1983 Mar;129(3):468-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6834529
100. Wessells H, McAninch JW, Meyer A, et al. Criteria for nonoperative treatment of significant penetrating renal lacerations. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):24-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976207
101. Blankenship JC, Gavant ML, Cox CE, et al. Importance of delayed imaging for blunt renal trauma. World J Surg 2001 Dec;25(12):1561-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11775192
102. Dunfee BL, Lucey BC, Soto JA. Development of renal scars on CT after abdominal trauma: does grade of injury matter? AJR Am J Roentgenol 2008 May;190(5):1174-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18430828
103. Pruthi RS, Issa MM, Kabalin JN, et al. Renal masses presenting 25 and 50 years following blunt renal trauma. Urol Int 1998 Oct;61(1):43-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9792983
104. Heyns CF, van Vollenhoven P. Increasing role of angiography and segmental artery embolization in the management of renal stab wounds. J Urol 1992 May;147(5):1231-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1569655
105. Monstrey SJ, Beerthuizen GI, vander Werken C, et al. Renal trauma and hypertension. J Trauma 1989 Jan;29(1):65-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2911106
106. Lebech A, Strange-Vognsen HH. [Hypertension following blunt kidney injury]. Ugeskr Laeger 1990 Apr;152(14):994-7. [Article in Danish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2183457
107. Montgomery RC, Richardson JD, Harty JI. Posttraumatic renovascular hypertension after occult renal injury. J Trauma 1998 Jul;45(1):106-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9680021
108. Chedid A, Le Coz S, Rossignol P, et al. Blunt renal trauma-induced hypertension: prevalence, presentation, and outcome. Am J Hypertens 2006 May;19(5):500-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16647623
109. Haas CA, Reigle MD, Selzman AA, et al. Use of ureteral stents in the management of major renal trauma with urinary extravasation: is there a role? J Endourol 1998 Dec;12(6):545-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9895260
110. Wang KT, Hou CJ, Hsieh JJ, et al. Late development of renal arteriovenous fistula following gunshot trauma – a case report. Angiology 1998 May;49(5):415-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9591535
111. Franco de Castro A, Gibanel Garanto R, Real MI, et al. [Selective embolization of post-traumatic renal pseudoaneurysm in monorenal patient]. Actas Urol Esp 2001 Jan;25(1):64-6. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11284371
112. Miller DC, Forauer A, Faerber GJ. Successful angioembolization of renal artery pseudoaneurysms after blunt abdominal trauma. Urology 2002 Mar;59(3):444.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11880095
113. Harrington TG, Kandel LB. Renal colic following a gunshot wound to the abdomen: the birdshot calculus. J Urol 1997 Apr;157(4):1351-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120940
114. Park JK, Yang SO, Park SC. Duodenal obstruction by retroperitoneal hematoma induced by severe blunt renal trauma. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6Pt1):1993-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371904

115. McAleer IM, Kaplan GW, Scherz HC, et al. Genitourinary trauma in the pediatric patient. Urology 1993 Nov;42(5):563-7; discussion 567-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8236601
116. Morse TS: Renal injuries. Pediatr Clin North Am 1975 May;22(2):379-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1124221
117. Elshihabi I, Elshihabi S, Arar M. An overview of renal trauma. Curr Opin Pediatr 1998 Apr;10(2):162-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9608894
118. Brown SL, Elder JS, Spirnak JP. Are pediatric patients more susceptible to major renal injury from blunt trauma? A comparative study. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):138-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628634
119. Chopra P, St-Vil D, Yazbeck S. Blunt renal trauma-blessing in disguise? J Pediatr Surg 2002 May;37(5):779-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11987100
120. Quinlan DM, Gearhart JP. Blunt renal trauma in childhood. Features indicating severe injury. Br J Urol 1990 Nov;66(5):526-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2249124
121. Angus LD, Tachmes L, Kahn S, et al. Surgical management of pediatric renal trauma: an urban experience. Am Surg 1993 Jun;59(6):388-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8507066
122. Stalker HP, Kaufman RA, Stedje K. The significance of hematuria in children after blunt abdominal trauma. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1990 Mar;154(3):569-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2106223
123. Stein JP, Kaji DM, Eastham J, et al. Blunt renal trauma in the pediatric population: indications for radiographic evaluation. Urology 1994 Sep;44(3):406-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8073555
124. Morey AF, Bruce JE, McAninch JW. Efficacy of radiographic imaging in pediatric blunt renal trauma. J Urol 1996 Dec;156(6):2014-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911380
125. Nguyen MM, Das S. Pediatric renal trauma. Urology 2002 May;59(5):762-6; discussion 766-767.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992916
126. Santucci RA, Langenburg SE, Zachareas MJ. Traumatic hematuria in children can be evaluated as in adults. J Urol 2004 Feb;171(2Pt1):822-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14713834
127. Luks FI, Lemire A, St-Vil D, et al. Blunt abdominal trauma in children: the practical value of ultrasonography. J Trauma 1993 May;34(5):607-10; discussion 610-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8496996
128. Wessel LM, Jester I, Scholz S, et al. [Diagnostic and therapeutic consequences of kidney injuries in pediatric blunt abdominal trauma]. Urologe A 2000 Sep;39(5):425-31. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11045043
129. Perez-Brayfield MR, Gatti JM, Smith EA, et al. Blunt traumatic hematuria in children. Is a simplified algorithm justified? J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2543-6; discussion 2546-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992085
130. Mayor B, Gudinchet F, Wicky S, et al. Imaging evaluation of blunt renal trauma in children: diagnostic accuracy of intravenous pyelography and ultrasonography. Pediatr Radiol 1995;25(3):214-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7644308
131. Turnock RR, Sprigg A, Lloyd DA. Computed tomography in the management of blunt abdominal trauma in children. Br J Surg 1993 Aug;80(8):982-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8402096
132. Carpio F, Morey AF. Radiographic staging of renal injuries. World J Urol 1999 Apr;17(2):66-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367363
133. Takeda M, Katayama Y, Tsutsui T, et al. Value of dimercaptosuccinic acid single photon emission computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging in detecting renal injury in pediatric patients with vesicoureteral reflux. Comparison with dimercaptosuccinic acid planar scintigraphy and intravenous pyelography. Eur Urol 1994;25(4):320-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8056025
134. Levy JB, Baskin LS, Ewalt DH, et al. Nonoperative management of blunt pediatric major renal trauma. Urology 1993 Oct;42(4):418-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8212441

135. Buckley JC, McAninch JW. Pediatric renal injuries: management guidelines from a 25-year experience. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):687-90; discussion 690.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247762
136. Henderson CG, Sedberry-Ross S, Pickard R, et al. Management of high grade renal trauma: 20-year experience at a pediatric level I trauma center. J Urol 2007 Jul;178(1):246-50; discussion 250.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499798
137. Broghammer JA, Langenburg SE, Smith SJ, et al. Pediatric blunt renal trauma: its conservative management and patterns of associated injuries. Urology 2006 Apr;67(4):823-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16566992
138. Cannon GM Jr, Polsky EG, Smaldone MC, et al. Computerized tomography findings in pediatric renal trauma – indications for early intervention? J Urol 2008 Apr;179(4):1529-32; discussion 1532-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18295268
139. Nance ML, Holmes JH 4th, Wiebe DJ. Timeline to operative intervention for solid organ injuries in children. J Trauma 2006 Dec;61(6):1389-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17159681
140. Holmes JH 4th, Wiebe DJ, Tataria M, et al. The failure of nonoperative management in pediatric solid organ injury: a multi-institutional experience. J Trauma 2005 Dec;59(6):1309-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16394902
141. Surana R, Khan A, Fitzgerald RJ. Scarring following renal trauma in children. Br J Urol 1995 May;75(5): 663-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7613804
142. Kansas BT, Eddy MJ, Mydlo JH, et al. Incidence and management of penetrating renal trauma in patients with multiorgan injury: extended experience at an inner city trauma center. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4Pt1):1355-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371841
143. Rosen MA, McAninch JW. Management of combined renal and pancreatic trauma. J Urol 1994 Jul;152(1):22-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8201670
144. Wessells H, McAninch JW. Effect of colon injury on the management of simultaneous renal trauma. J Urol 1996 Jun;155(6):1852-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8618272
145. Sartorelli KH, Frumiento C, Rogers FB, et al. Nonoperative management of hepatic, splenic, and renal injuries in adults with multiple injuries. J Trauma 2000 Jul;49(1):56-61; discussion 61-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10912858
146. Cass AS, Luxenberg M, Gleich P, et al. Deaths from urologic injury due to external trauma. J Trauma 1987 Mar;27(3):319-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3560276
147. Morris CS, Bonnevie GJ, Najarian KE. Nonsurgical treatment of acute iatrogenic renal artery injuries occurring after renal artery angioplasty and stenting. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2001 Dec;177(6):1353-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11717082
148. Bates MC, Shamsham FM, Faulknier B, et al. Successful treatment of iatrogenic renal artery perforation with an autologous vein-covered stent. Catheter Cardiovasc Interv 2002 Sep;57(1):39-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12203925
149. Oderich GS, Panneton JM, Hofer J, et al. Iatrogenic operative injuries of abdominal and pelvic veins: a potentially lethal complication. J Vasc Surg 2004 May;39(5):931-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15111840
150. Taneja M, Tan KT. Renal vascular injuries following nephron-sparing surgery and their endovascular management. Singapore Med J 2008 Jan;49(1):63-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18204772
151. Barone GW, Sailors DM, Hudec WA, et al. Trauma management in solid organ transplant recipients. J Emerg Med 1997 Mar-Apr;15(2):169-76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9144057
152. Del Pizzo JJ, Jacobs SC, Sklar GN. Ureteroscopic evaluation in renal transplant recipients. J Endourol 1998 Apr;12(2):135-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9607439
153. Dorffner R, Thurnher S, Prokesch R, et al. Embolization of iatrogenic vascular injuries of renal transplants: immediate and follow-up results. Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol 1998 Mar-Apr;21(2):129-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9502679

154. Cowan NC, Traill ZC, Phillips AJ, et al. Direct percutaneous transrenal embolization for renal artery injury following percutaneous nephrostomy. Br J Radiol 1998 Nov;71(851):1199-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10434916
155. Jones CD, McGahan JP. Computed tomographic evaluation and guided correction of malpositioned nephrostomy catheters. Abdom Imaging 1999 Jul-Aug;24(4):422-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10390572
156. Lewis S, Patel U. Major complications after percutaneous nephrostomy – lessons from a department audit. Clin Radiol 2004 Feb;59(2):171-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14746788
157. Ozdemir S, Cekirge S, Kara A, et al. A rare complication of renal biopsy in a child with membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis. Int Urol Nephrol 1998;30(6):689-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10195861
158. Silberzweig JE, Tey S, Winston JA, et al. Percutaneous renal biopsy complicated by renal capsular artery pseudoaneurysm. Am J Kidney Dis 1998 Mar;31(3):533-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9506693
159. Ghai B, Dureja GP, Arvind P. Massive intraabdominal extravasation of fluid: a life threatening complication following percutaneous nephrolithotomy. Int Urol Nephrol 2003;35(3):315-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15160530
160. Gupta M, Bellman GC, Smith AD. Massive hemorrhage from renal vein injury during percutaneous renal surgery: endourological management. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):795-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072568
161. Bellman GC. Complications of endopyelotomy. J Endourol 1996 Apr;10(2):177-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8728685

3. URETERAL TRAUMA

3.1 Introduction

The ureter is the sole conduit for urinary transport between the kidney and the bladder. Thus, any ureteral injury can threaten the function of the ipsilateral kidney. This small, mobile, worm-like, peristalsing, urothelial-lined tube runs inferiorly from the renal pelvis in the retroperitoneal space. It lies anterior to the muscles of the posterior abdominal wall and lateral to the vertebral column, before descending into the bony ring of the pelvis to enter the bladder. Any external injury to the flank or back and any calamity within the bony pelvis therefore places the ureter at risk. Perhaps because of its protected location, its small size, and its mobility, trauma to the ureter is relatively rare and accounts for only 1% of all urinary tract trauma. Thus, there is a relatively small volume of published clinical experience upon which to base recommendations of management.

3.2 Aetiology

The largest and most contemporary review of ureteral trauma in the European literature is from Dobrowolski *et al*. in Poland (1). These authors retrospectively analysed the records of patients with upper urinary tract injuries presenting to 61 urology departments between 1995 and 1999. They identified 452 ureteral injuries. Of these, 340 (75%) were iatrogenic, 81 (18%) were from blunt trauma, and 31 (7%) were from penetrating trauma. Of the 340 iatrogenic injuries, 247 (73%) were gynaecological in origin, 46 (14%) were general surgical, and 47 (14%) were urological. It is therefore important to note that ureteral injury is much more likely to occur from activity within a hospital rather than from injuries sustained outside. Dobrowolski *et al*. estimate the frequency of ureteral injury during gynaecological pelvic surgical procedures to be 1.6 per 1000 (1). Of the total ureteral injuries identified, the injury was in the upper third in 60 cases (13%), in the middle third in 61 cases (13%), and in the lower third in 331 (74%). The median time to diagnosis was 3.3 h.

The most common diagnostic investigation was intravenous urography (IVU), which was used in 244 patients; retrograde ureteropyelography was used in 98 patients; and ureteral catheterisation was used in 125. The diagnosis was also established at open surgery in 104 patients. This snapshot of ureteral trauma in a modern European setting is similar to that seen in the USA (2).

3.3 Diagnosis

*3.3.1 **Clinical diagnosis***

There are no classic clinical symptoms and signs associated with acute ureteral trauma caused by external injury (3). In view of this, the diagnosis must be one of suspicion. Ureteral trauma should be suspected in all cases of penetrating abdominal injury, especially gunshot wounds, and also in cases of blunt deceleration

trauma, in which the kidney and renal pelvis can be torn away from the ureter. This deceleration injury is more likely to occur in children because of their hyperextensible vertebral column (4). Haematuria is also a poor indicator of injury, as it is present in only half of those with ureteral trauma (5).

It is possible for isolated ureteral injuries to be missed. Such patients tend to present with subsequent evidence of upper tract obstruction, urinary fistula formation and sepsis (6). After gynaecological pelvic surgery, any woman who complains of flank pain, develops vaginal leakage of urine or becomes septic should also be suspected of having injury to the ureter or bladder and should be investigated appropriately. At surgery, when the ureter is explored to exclude injury, the use of intravenous indigo carmine or methylene blue is to be recommended. This will help reveal the site of injury by leakage of blue-stained urine. This is especially important in partial tears.

*3.3.2 **Radiological diagnosis***

Ureteral injury may cause radiological signs of upper urinary tract obstruction but the sine qua non of ureteral injury is extravasation of radiological contrast material (3). This sign can be produced by the use of IVP, giving 2 mg of contrast material per kilogram of body weight. However, because of the increasing use of CT scanning in polytraumatised patients, the diagnosis is increasingly made with this modality.

If a high suspicion of ureteral injury exists and the CT scan is non-diagnostic, then a 'poor man's IVP' can be obtained by taking a plain kidney-ureter-bladder (KUB) film 30 minutes after intravenous injection of CT contrast medium. If this is also non-diagnostic and a suspicion of injury still exists, then retrograde pyelography should be undertaken as the gold standard investigation.

3.4 Classification

The AAST has classified ureteral injuries as shown in Table 4 (7).

Table 4: Classification of ureteral injury

Grade	Description of injury
I	Haematoma only
II	Laceration < 50% of circumference
III	Laceration > 50% of circumference
IV	Complete tear < 2 cm of devascularisation
V	Complete tear > 2 cm of devascularisation

3.5 Management

*3.5.1 **Partial injuries***

These can be defined as grade I to II lesions. Once recognised, they can be managed with ureteral stenting or by placement of a nephrostomy tube to divert urine (3). There is no prospective clinical trial comparing outcomes between these techniques. We believe that ureteral stenting is probably superior because a stent across the injury will allow secure drainage of the kidney, as well as providing canalisation and stabilisation of the injury. We believe that this will reduce the subsequent risk of stricture. The stent may be placed in an antegrade or retrograde fashion. In all cases, fluoroscopy and ureteropyelography with radio-opaque contrast should be used to guide stent placement.

The procedure should commence with the passage of a hydrophilic atraumatic guidewire across the damaged segment of ureter. Once across the site of the injury, an access catheter can be backloaded over the wire and passed across the injury. The hydrophilic wire can then be exchanged for a 0.038-inch wire, and the stent deployed. If this technique is utilised, a bladder catheter should be left in place for 2 days to limit stent reflux during voiding until mucosal healing has begun. The stent should be left in place for at least 3 weeks. The patient should have a follow-up dynamic renogram and IVP between 3 and 6 months, or sooner if lateralising flank pain develops. If there is evidence of stricture, then this should be managed by endo-urological or open surgical techniques, as appropriate.

If a grade II or III injury is encountered during immediate surgical exploration of an iatrogenic injury, then primary closure of the ureteral ends over a stent may be recommended, with placement of an external, non-suction drain adjacent to the injury.

3.5.2 Complete injuries

These are grade III to V injuries. Successful repair should utilise the principles outlined in Table 5.

Table 5: Principles of repair of complete injury

Debridement of ureteral ends to fresh tissue
Spatulation of ureteral ends
Placement of internal stent
Watertight closure of reconstructed ureter with absorbable suture
Placement of external, non-suction drain
Isolation of injury with peritoneum or omentum

The type of reconstructive repair procedure chosen by the surgeon depends on the nature and site of the injury (3). The options are depicted in Figure 4.

Figure 4: Diagram of the options for repair of complete injuries, based on the site of the injury

Upper third: Uretero-ureterostomy
Transuretero-ureterostomy
Ureterocalycostomy

Middle third: Uretero-ureterostomy
Transuretero-ureterostomy
Boari flap and reimplantation

Lower third: Direct reimplantation
Psoas hitch
Blandy cystoplasty

Complete: Ileal interposition
Autotransplantation

3.5.3 ***Sterile surgery***

3.5.3.1 Uretero-ureterostomy

Using the principles outlined above, the ureteral ends are debrided and freshened. The ends are spatulated. An internal double J-stent is inserted and the ends are closed over the stent using an interrupted 4/0 vicryl suture. An external, non-suction drain is placed at the site of the injury, and a catheter is left in the bladder. The bladder catheter can be removed after 2 days. The wound drain can be removed 2 days later if drainage is low. The stent should be removed after 6 weeks, and a follow-up renogram and IVP should be obtained after 3 months to assess the patency of the repair.

3.5.3.2 Ureterocalycostomy

In cases were the pelvi-ureteral junction has been destroyed, the lower pole of the affected kidney can be amputated to expose the lower pole infundibulum and calyces. The distal ureteral end can then be debrided and spatulated, and anastomosed to the lower pole calyx, over an internal stent, using an interrupted 4/0 vicryl suture. An external, non-suction drain is placed at the site of the injury and a catheter is left in the bladder. The bladder catheter can be removed after 2 days. The wound drain can be removed 2 days later if drainage is low. The stent should be removed after 6 weeks and a follow-up renogram and IVP should be obtained after 3 months to assess the patency of the repair.

3.5.3.3 Transuretero-ureterostomy

The distal end of the injured ureter is ligated with an absorbable suture. The proximal end is debrided and spatulated. This end is then transposed across the midline through a retroperitoneal window above the level of the inferior mesenteric artery. A 1.5 cm ureterotomy is made on the medial aspect of the contralateral ureter. A stent is placed from the ipsilateral kidney, through the anastomosis, and down the distal contralateral ureter into the bladder. A watertight anastomosis is fashioned using an interrupted 4/0 vicryl suture. An external, nonsuction drain is placed at the site of the injury, and a catheter is left in the bladder. The bladder catheter can be removed after 2 days. The wound drain can be removed 2 days later if drainage is low. The stent should be removed after 6 weeks, and a follow-up renogram and IVP should be obtained after 3 months to assess the patency of the repair.

3.5.3.4 Ureteroneocystostomy with Boari flap

The proximal ureteral end is debrided and spatulated. A traction suture is placed. The distal ureteral end is ligated with an absorbable suture. The bladder is filled with 200-300 ml of normal saline via a urethral catheter, and controlling stay sutures are placed on the bladder. The L-shaped flap is raised, its base being approximately four times wider than the width of the ureter to be implanted. The ureter is pulled through a submucosal tunnel in the flap and secured to the bladder mucosa using an interrupted 4/0 vicryl suture. Anchoring sutures can be placed at the serosal aspect of the ureter to secure it to the bladder. A stent is placed across the neo-ureterocystostomy, and a suprapubic catheter is placed in the bladder. The bladder is then closed in two layers with 2/0 vicryl sutures. An external, non-suction drain should be placed at the site of the reimplant; it can be removed after 2 days. The urethral catheter can be removed at the same time. The suprapubic catheter can be removed after a cystogram at 2 weeks, and the stent can be removed after 6 weeks. An IVP and renogram should be obtained 3 months thereafter to confirm the patency of the neocystostomy.

3.5.3.5 Ureterocystostomy and psoas hitch

The proximal ureteral end is debrided and spatulated. A traction suture is placed. The distal ureteral end is ligated with an absorbable suture. The fundus of the bladder is mobilised, and the contralateral superior vesical pedicle may be divided to improve fundal mobility. The bladder is filled with 200-300 ml of normal saline via a urethral catheter, and controlling stay sutures are placed. A cystotomy (Blandy) is performed perpendicular to the line of the ureter. Two fingers are placed inside the bladder to stretch it gently towards the ipsilateral psoas tendon. Three non-absorbable 2/0 sutures are placed between the bladder wall and the tendon, with care being taken to avoid the genitofemoral nerve.

Ureteroneocystostomy is then undertaken using either the Leadbetter-Politano or Lich-Gregoire techniques. A double J-stent is placed across the reimplant, and a suprapubic catheter is placed in the bladder. The bladder is then closed in two layers with 2/0 vicryl in the line of the ureter, thus providing extra length to the hitch. The anastomosis is thus under no tension. An external, non-suction drain should be placed at the site of the reimplant, and can be removed after 2 days. The urethral catheter can be removed at the same time. The suprapubic catheter can be removed after a cystogram at 2 weeks, and the stent can be removed after 6 weeks. An IVP and renogram should be obtained 3 months thereafter to confirm the patency of the neocystostomy.

3.5.3.6 Ileal interposition graft

In cases of long segment ureteral destruction, the ureter can be totally replaced using the distal ileum. This should be avoided in patients with coincidental gastrointestinal disease, such as Crohn's disease, and in patients with impaired renal function. A 25-cm length of ileum is taken out of bowel continuity about 20 cm proximal to the ileocaecal valve. Gastrointestinal continuity is restored with an ileo-ileal anastomosis using interrupted 3/0 seromuscular vicryl. The mesenteric is repaired using 2/0 vicryl. The ileal segment is placed in the isoperistaltic orientation between the renal pelvis and the bladder. Ileo-pelvic and cysto-ileal end-to-end anastomoses are fashioned using 2/0 vicryl. A nephrostomy tube should be inserted into the ipsilateral kidney to decompress the affected upper tract. A catheter should be placed in the bladder. External, non-suction drains should cover the proximal and distal anastomoses. Lastly, the reconstruction should be wrapped in omentum.

The wound drains can be removed after 2 days. A nephrostogram should be performed after 3 weeks; if no leakage is demonstrated, the nephrostomy can be clamped and then removed. Finally, the urinary catheter can be removed. Follow-up should include IVP and renography at 3 months, together with testing for the levels of serum creatinine, chloride, bicarbonate, and base excess, looking for evidence of hyperchloraemic metabolic acidosis.

3.5.3.7 Autotransplantation

If complete ureteral disruption should occur in the presence of coincidental gastrointestinal disease or impaired renal function, then autotransplantation of the affected renal unit can be undertaken. The renal artery and vein are divided long at the aorta and cava. The kidney is moved to the pelvis, and vascular continuity is restored using 5/0 prolene for the artery and 4/0 prolene for the vein. A Lich-Gregoire extravesical neoureterocystostomy can then be fashioned to re-establish urinary drainage. This need not be stented. A covering external, non-suction drain should be placed, and a catheter inserted in the bladder. The drain can be removed after 2 days, if dry, and the catheter removed after a cystogram at 2 weeks. Again, follow-up at 3 months with IVP and renogram is recommended.

3.5.3.8 Nephrectomy

There is one circumstance in which immediate nephrectomy should be undertaken. This is when ureteral injury complicates the repair of an abdominal aortic aneurysm or other vascular procedure in which a vascular prosthesis is to be implanted. We feel that immediate excision of the corrupted renal unit and its damaged ureter leads to less chance of urinary leak, urinoma, sepsis, and graft infection.

3.6 References

1. Dobrowolski Z, Kusionowicz J, Drewniak T, et al. Renal and ureteric trauma: diagnosis and management in Poland. BJU Int 2002 May;89(7):748-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11966637
2. Palmer LS, Rosenbaum RR, Gershbaum MD, et al. Penetrating ureteral trauma at an urban trauma center: 10-year experience. Urology 1999 Jul;54(1):34-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10414723
3. Armenakas NA. Ureteral trauma: surgical repair. Atlas Urol Clin North Am 1998;6:71-84.
4. Morey AF, Bruce JE, McAninch JW. Efficacy of radiographic imaging in pediatric blunt renal trauma. J Urol 1996 Dec;156(6):2014-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911380
5. Medina D, Lavery R, Ross SE, et al. Ureteral trauma: preoperative studies neither predict injury nor prevent missed injuries. J Am Coll Surg 1998 Jun;186(6):641-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9632150
6. McGinty DM, Mendez R. Traumatic ureteral injuries with delayed recognition. Urology 1997 Aug;10(2): 115-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/898448
7. Moore EE, Cogbill TH, Jurkovitch GJ, et al. Organ injury scaling. III: Chest wall, abdominal vascular, ureter, bladder, and urethra. J Trauma 1992 Sep;33(3):337-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1404499

4. BLADDER TRAUMA

4.1 Background

Among abdominal injuries that require surgical repair, 2% involve the bladder (1). Blunt or penetrating trauma account for 67-86% and 14-33% of bladder ruptures, respectively (2-4). Motor vehicle accidents are the most common cause (90%) of bladder rupture by blunt trauma (5-7). In the setting of blunt trauma, bladder rupture may be classified as either extraperitoneal with leakage of urine limited to the perivesical space, or intraperitoneal, in which the peritoneal surface has been disrupted, with concomitant urinary extravasation.

Bladder trauma: facts and figures

- 70-97% of patients with bladder injuries caused by blunt trauma have associated pelvic fractures (3,8,9).
- Pubic symphysis diastasis, sacroiliac diastasis, and sacral, iliac, and pubic rami fractures are significantly associated with bladder rupture, whereas isolated acetabular fractures are not (10,11).
- > 50% of the associated pelvic fractures are of the pubic ramus (12).
- Up to 30% of patients with pelvic fractures will have some degree of bladder injury (13).
- Major bladder injury occurs in only 5-10% of patients who have pelvic fracture(s) (7,14).
- > 85% of patients with pelvic fractures have associated injuries in other organ systems (8), with a mortality rate of 22-44% (12,13,15).
- Approximately 25% of intraperitoneal bladder ruptures occur in patients who do not have pelvic fracture(s) (7).

During a motor vehicle accident, traumatic forces can be transferred to the bladder by the seatbelt; injuries usually occur in patients with a full bladder. The degree of distension of the bladder with urine determines its shape and, to some degree, the injury it sustains. A fully distended bladder can be ruptured by a light blow; however, an empty bladder is seldom injured, except by crushing or penetrating wounds. Pelvic scars or pre-existing pelvic pathology can influence susceptibility to injury (16).

Combined intra- and extraperitoneal rupture may occur in 2-20% of cases (7,17-19). Simultaneous bladder and prostate-membranous urethra ruptures occur in 10-29% of male patients (10). Several studies investigating pelvic fractures and associated injuries in paediatric patients reported a lower incidence of urogenital injury (7-14%) (20-23), than in comparative adult series (7,13,14). In seven paediatric series (20-26), the average rate of bladder injury in patients with pelvic fractures was 4%. Motor vehicle accidents were the cause of the trauma in 97% of cases (26).

4.1.1 ***Iatrogenic trauma***

During lower abdominal operations, the bladder is the most frequently injured genitourinary organ (27). Most iatrogenic injuries occur during:

- open abdominal or pelvic surgery (85%);
- anterior vaginal surgery (9%);
- laparoscopy (6%).

The majority (92%) of these injuries are graded as III-IV, using the AAST scale (27). Most injuries occur during obstetric and gynaecological procedures (52-61%), followed by urological (12-39%) and general surgical (9-26%) interventions (27,28). Of the general surgical operations that result in iatrogenic injury to the bladder, most involve resection of bowel as a result of malignancy, diverticulitis, or inflammatory diseases (27,28).

Bladder injury occurs during gynaecological operations in 0.3-8.3% of cases (29-34). Concurrent anti-incontinence surgery significantly increases the risk of injury to the bladder (13% vs 3%; P= 0.049) (34). Most cases of urological iatrogenic trauma occur during vaginal operations and laparoscopy (27,28). The incidence of bladder wall perforation is generally low (1%) during transurethral resection of bladder tumours, and most (88%) can be managed by catheter drainage (35,36). Transurethral resection of the prostate is also associated with low injury rates (37).

Routine cystoscopy is an important adjunct to the major gynaecological procedures, and its omission may result in underestimation of iatrogenic bladder injury. An extensive review of the literature indicated that in studies not involving routine cystoscopy, the frequency of bladder injury varied from 0.2/1000 to 19.5/1000, with an overall frequency of 2.6/1000. Only 52% of bladder injuries were identified and managed intraoperatively (31). In studies involving routine cystoscopy, the frequency of bladder injury varied from 0.0/1000 to 29.2/1000, with an overall frequency of 10.4/1000. Up to 85% of unsuspected bladder injuries were identified with the use of cystoscopy and were managed successfully intraoperatively (31). Routine cystoscopy is recommended after any type of incontinence surgery as it enables identification of unsuspected bladder injury in 85% of patients (31,32,34,38).

Surgical procedures for the correction of stress urinary incontinence can also result in bladder trauma. The rate of bladder injury is below 3% in Burch colposuspension (39-41). Bladder injury is the most common complication of the tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) procedure, with an incidence of 2.0-11.5% (42-47) and up to 19% in patients with prior failed incontinence surgery (48).

The transobturator tape (TOT) procedure minimises the retropubic needle passage, and the incidence of bladder injury is expected to be low. Although during early experience with this technique rates of injury were similar to those associated with the TVT procedure (39), a recent meta-analysis indicated a lower incidence of bladder injuries (odds ratio: 0.12; 95% confidence interval: 0.05-0.33) with TOT procedures (49).

4.2 Classification

Table 6: Bladder injury scale[1]

Grade*	Description	
I	Hematoma	Contusion, intramural hematoma
	Laceration	Partial thickness
II	Laceration	Extraperitoneal bladder wall laceration < 2 cm
III	Laceration	Extraperitoneal (> 2 cm) or intraperitoneal (< 2 cm) bladder wall laceration
IV	Laceration	Intraperitoneal bladder wall laceration > 2 cm
V	Laceration	Intraperitoneal or extraperitoneal bladder wall laceration extending into the bladder neck or ureteral orifice (trigone)

**Advance one grade for multiple injuries up to grade III.*
[1] Adapted from the AAST.

4.3 Risk factors

Individuals who are driving under the influence of alcohol are likely to have a distended bladder and a motor vehicle accident. Driving after drinking alcohol is therefore a risk factor for bladder injury (19) (LE: 3).

Concurrent anti-incontinence surgery during gynaecological procedures results in a fourfold increased risk of bladder injury, and is therefore a risk factor for iatrogenic bladder trauma (34) (LE: 3).

4.4 Diagnosis

The most common signs and symptoms in patients with major bladder injuries are gross haematuria (82%) and abdominal tenderness (62%) (3). Other findings may include inability to void, bruises over the suprapubic region, and abdominal distension (6). Extravasation of urine may result in swelling in the perineum, scrotum, and thighs, as well as along the anterior abdominal wall within the potential space between the transversalis fascia and the parietal peritoneum.

*4.4.1 **Macroscopic (gross) haematuria***

Gross haematuria indicates urological trauma (LE: 3). Traumatic bladder rupture is strongly correlated with the combination of pelvic fracture and gross haematuria. Morey *et al*. reported gross haematuria in all their patients with bladder rupture, and 85% had pelvic fractures (50). Thus, the classic combination of pelvic fracture and gross haematuria constitutes an absolute indication for immediate cystography in patients who have blunt trauma (3,7,13,50) (LE: 3).

The presence of gross blood at the urethral meatus is diagnostic of a urethral injury (LE: 3). A Foley catheter should not be inserted before a retrograde urethrogram has been carried out to ensure urethral integrity (51). Although grossly clear urine in a trauma patient without a pelvic fracture virtually eliminates the possibility of bladder rupture, 2-10% of patients with bladder rupture may have only microhaematuria or no haematuria at all (5,51).

In a retrospective review of more than 8000 paediatric trauma patients, of those cases with pelvic fractures, only one patient (0.5%) had an extraperitoneal bladder rupture (26). Lower urogenital injury occurred in six patients (2.8%). The absence of gross haematuria ruled out serious injury in this cohort.

Based on this data, no further work-up was recommended in paediatric patients with pelvic fractures without gross haematuria. It is recommended that patients with gross haematuria, multiple associated injuries, or significant abnormalities found on physical examination should be further evaluated with retrograde urethrography and cystography (LE: 3).

*4.4.2 **Microscopic haematuria***

In the trauma patient with a pelvic ring fracture, microscopic haematuria might indicate bladder laceration, and further investigation is warranted (LE: 3). However, the exact quantity of blood in the urine that should trigger investigation is controversial.

- Morgan *et al*. reported that no ruptures were seen in patients with < 25 red blood cells/high-power field (rbc/hpf) (10).
- Werkman *et al*. (52) concluded that if cystography had been restricted to patients with > 35-50 rbc/hpf, no perforation would have been missed in their series.
- Fuhrman *et al*. (53) believe that cystography in blunt trauma should be restricted to patients with gross haematuria, which they defined as > 200 rbc/hpf. They also thought that a retrograde urethrogram should be carried out first.

Existing data do not support lower urinary tract imaging in all patients with pelvic fracture or microscopic haematuria alone. Hochberg and Stone (54) concluded that cystography might be safely reserved for those patients with pelvic fracture considered to be high risk for bladder injury (significant pubic arch involvement, gross haematuria and/or haemodynamic instability), as 90% of patients in their series with pelvic fracture did not have a bladder rupture.

These observations do not appear to be valid for paediatric trauma patients. Abou-Jaoude *et al*. (55) reported a threshold for radiological evaluation of ≥ 20 rbc/hpf would miss 25% of cases with bladder injury. In contrast with other reported series (26), they suggested that lower urogenital tract evaluation in paediatric trauma patients, especially in the presence of pelvic fractures, should be based as much on clinical judgment as on the presence of haematuria (55) (LE: 3).

4.4.3 ***Cystography***

Retrograde cystography is the standard diagnostic procedure in the evaluation of bladder trauma (7,13,56-58) (LE: 3). This is the most accurate radiological study to identify bladder rupture. When bladder filling and post-void images are obtained, cystography has an accuracy rate of 85-100% (5,7,59,60). Bladder rupture is usually diagnosed when the contrast is identified outside the bladder. Adequate distension of the urinary bladder is crucial to demonstrating perforation, especially in cases of penetrating trauma, as most instances of a false-negative retrograde cystography were found in this situation (56).

Cystography requires plain film, filled film, and post-drainage films (as a minimum) (LE: 3); half-filled film and obliques are optional. For the highest diagnostic accuracy, the bladder must be distended using instillation of at least 350 mL of contrast medium by gravity. Bladder injury may be identified only on the post-drainage film in approximately 10% of cases (7). False-negative findings may result from incorrectly performed studies with less than 250 mL of contrast instillation or omission of a post-drainage film (61) (LE: 3). Only a correctly performed cystography should be used to exclude bladder injury (7).

4.4.4 ***Excretory urography IVP***

An IVP is inadequate for evaluation of the bladder and urethra after trauma, not only because of dilution of the contrast material within the bladder, but also because resting intravesical pressure is simply too low to demonstrate a small tear (16,62). An IVP has a low accuracy (15-25%) (15), and clinical studies have indicated that IVP has an unacceptably high false-negative rate (64-84%), which precludes its use as a diagnostic tool in bladder injuries (52,59,63) (LE: 3).

4.4.5 ***Ultrasound (US)***

Although, the use of US in bladder rupture has been described (64), it is not routine for evaluation of bladder injury. Free peritoneal fluid in the presence of normal viscera, or failure to visualise the bladder after transurethral saline instillation, are highly suggestive of bladder rupture (66) (LE: 3). Practically, however, US is not definitive in bladder or urethral trauma and is almost never used.

4.4.6 ***Computed tomography (CT)***

Computed tomography is clearly the method of choice for the evaluation of patients with blunt or penetrating abdominal and/or pelvic trauma (LE: 3). However, routine CT is not reliable in the diagnosis of bladder rupture, even if an inserted urethral catheter is clamped. CT demonstrates intraperitoneal and extraperitoneal fluid, but cannot differentiate urine from ascites.

As with IVP, the bladder is usually inadequately distended to reveal extravasation through a bladder laceration or perforation during routine abdominal and pelvic studies. Thus, a negative study cannot be entirely trusted, and routine CT cannot exclude bladder injury (12,16,65).

In a review of the cystograms and CT scans (CT cystography) of 25 patients who underwent both investigations during the initial evaluation of blunt abdominal trauma, five patients were found to have bladder rupture, three of which were extraperitoneal and two intraperitoneal (66); all of the injuries were detected by both studies. It was concluded that delayed imaging or contrast instillation could provide the adequate bladder distention needed to demonstrate contrast extravasation from the injury site. Similarly, in a series of 316 patients, 44 cases were diagnosed with bladder ruptures (60). In patients who underwent a formal surgical repair, 82% had operative findings that exactly matched the CT cystography interpretation. Either retrograde cystography or CT cystography are diagnostic procedures of choice for suspected bladder injury (51).

Computed tomography cystography can be used in place of conventional cystography (overall sensitivity 95% and specificity 100%) (LE: 3), especially in patients undergoing CT scanning for other associated injuries (60). However, this procedure should be performed using retrograde filling of the bladder with a minimum of 350 mL of dilute contrast material (7,66,67).

In conclusion, CT cystographic features may lead to accurate classification of bladder injury and allow prompt, effective treatment without further radiation exposure and the additional cost of conventional cystography (70) (LE: 3).

4.4.7 *Angiography*

Angiography is seldom, if ever, indicated. It can be useful in identifying an occult source of bleeding and can guide its subsequent therapeutic embolisation (16).

4.4.8 *Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)*

It is extremely difficult to monitor a seriously injured patient in a strong magnetic field; MRI therefore has little place in the evaluation of acute bladder (16). The use of MRI has been described for later evaluation of urethral injury (69-71).

4.4.9 *Cystoscopy*

Mainly useful in iatrogenic trauma, routine cystoscopy identifies 85% of the unsuspected injuries to the bladder that would otherwise go unnoticed (31,34,39). Thus, it must be used as an adjunct to major gynaecological operations as well as surgical interventions for incontinence (LE: 3).

4.5 Treatment

The first priority in the treatment of bladder injuries is stabilisation of the patient and treatment of associated life-threatening injuries (LE: 3).

4.5.1 *Blunt trauma: extraperitoneal rupture*

Most patients with extraperitoneal rupture can be managed safely by catheter drainage alone, even in the presence of extensive retroperitoneal or scrotal extravasation (61) (LE: 3). Obstruction of the catheter by clots or tissue debris must be prevented for healing to occur. A success rate of 90% was reported with this approach in extraperitoneal rupture (5): 87% of the ruptures were healed in 10 days, and virtually all were healed in 3 weeks (57). However, bladder neck involvement (2), the presence of bone fragments in the bladder wall, or entrapment of the bladder wall will necessitate surgical intervention (19) (LE: 3).

4.5.2 *Blunt trauma: intraperitoneal rupture*

Intraperitoneal ruptures occurring after blunt trauma should always be managed by surgical exploration (LE: 3). This type of injury involves a high degree of force and, because of the severity of associated injuries, carries a high mortality (20-40%) (72). Lacerations are usually large in these cases, with the potential risk of peritonitis due to urine leakage if left untreated (61). Abdominal organs should be inspected for possible associated injuries and urinoma must be drained, if present.

4.5.3 *Penetrating injuries*

All bladder perforations resulting from penetrating trauma should undergo emergency exploration and repair (61) (LE: 3).

4.5.4. *Iatrogenic injuries*

Iatrogenic bladder perforations can occur during any pelvic, abdominal, or vaginal procedure (27). Prompt intraoperative recognition is extremely important to ensure a successful repair. Generally, suture repair is satisfactory, limiting unnecessary extravesical dissection (LE: 3). Most (> 95%) of urinary bladder injuries sustained during gynaecological operations are detected and can be managed during surgery (73). Repair can be performed either transvaginally or abdominally. Simple catheter drainage is sufficient in most cases of bladder perforation during transurethral resection of prostate or bladder tumours (36-38) (LE: 3).

4.6 Recommendations

4.6.1 *General*

	GR
Stabilisation of the patient is always the priority in cases with associated injuries.	B

4.6.2 *Diagnosis*

	GR
Immediate cystography is required in the presence of haematuria and pelvic fracture.	B
Diagnosis should be made with retrograde cystography with a minimum of 350 mL of gravity-filled contrast medium.	B
For cystography, the minimum requirement includes a plain film, filled film, and post-drainage film. Half-filled film and obliques are optional.	B
CT cystography can be used with equal efficacy if the patient is undergoing CT scanning for associated injuries.	B
Routine cystoscopy is recommended after major gynaecological operations and/or incontinence surgery.	B

4.6.3 *Treatment*

	GR
In the absence of bladder neck involvement and/or associated injuries that require surgical intervention, extraperitoneal bladder ruptures caused by blunt trauma are managed by catheter drainage alone.	B
Intraperitoneal bladder ruptures by blunt trauma, and any type of bladder injury by penetrating trauma, must be managed by emergency surgical exploration and repair.	B
The technique of surgical repair used depends on the surgeon's preference, but a two-layer closure with absorbable sutures achieves a safe repair of the bladder wall.	B

4.7 References

1. Carlin BI, Resnick MI. Indications and techniques for urologic evaluation of the trauma patient with suspected urologic injury. Semin Urol 1995 Feb;13(1):9-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7597359
2. Corriere JN Jr, Sandler CM. Management of the ruptured bladder: seven years of experience with 111 cases. J Trauma 1986 Sep;26(9):830-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3746959
3. Carroll PR, McAninch JW. Major bladder trauma: mechanisms of injury and a unified method of diagnosis and repair. J Urol 1984 Aug;132(2):254-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6737572
4. McConnell JD, Wilkerson MD, Peters PC. Rupture of the bladder. Urol Clin North Am 1982 Jun;9(2): 293-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7101594
5. Cass AS and Luxenberg M. Features of 164 bladder ruptures. J Urol 1987 Oct;138(4):743-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3656524
6. Sagalowsky AI, Peters PC. Genitourinary trauma. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughan ED Jr, Wein AJ (eds). *Campbell's Urology*, 7th ed. 1998, WB Saunders: Philadelphia, pp. 3085-3120.
7. Sandler CM, Goldman SM, Kawashima A. Lower urinary tract trauma. World J Urol 1998;16(1):69-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9542018
8. Flancbaum L, Morgan AS, Fleisher M, et al. Blunt bladder trauma: manifestation of severe injury. Urology 1988 Mar;31(3):220-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3347970
9. Castle WN, Richardson JR Jr, Walton BJ. Unsuspected intraperitoneal rupture of bladder presenting with abdominal free air. Urology 1986 Dec;28(6):521-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3787926
10. Morgan DE, Nallamala LK, Kenney PJ, et al. CT cystography: radiographic and clinical predictors of bladder rupture. Am J Roentgenol 2000 Jan;174(1):89-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10628460
11. Aihara R, Blansfield JS, Millham FH, et al. Fracture locations influence the likelihood of rectal and lower urinary tract injuries in patients sustaining pelvic fractures. J Trauma 2002 Feb;52(2):205-8; discussion 208-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11834976

12. Cass AS. Diagnostic studies in bladder rupture. Indications and techniques. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):267-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652855
13. Rehm CG, Mure AJ, O'Malley KF, et al. Blunt traumatic bladder rupture: the role of retrograde cystogram. Ann Emerg Med 1991 Aug;20(8):845-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1854066
14. Coppola PT, Coppola M. Emergency department evaluation and treatment of pelvic fractures. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2000 Feb;18(1):1-27, v.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10678158
15. Festini G, Gregorutti S, Reina G, et al. Isolated intraperitoneal bladder rupture in patients with alcohol intoxication and minor abdominal trauma. Ann Emerg Med 1991 Dec;20(12):1371-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1746742
16. Ben-Menachem Y, Coldwell DM, Young JW, et al. Hemorrhage associated with pelvic fractures: causes, diagnosis, and emergent management. Am J Roentgenol 1991 Nov;157(5):1005-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1927786
17. Cass AS. The multiple injured patient with bladder trauma. J Trauma 1984 Aug;24(8):731-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6471137
18. Taffet R. Management of pelvic fractures with concomitant urologic injuries. Orthop Clin North Am 1997 Jul;28(3):389-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9208831
19. Dreitlein DA, Suner S, Basler J. Genitourinary trauma. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2001 Aug;19(3): 569-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11554276
20. Reed MH. Pelvic fractures in children. J Can Assoc Radiol 1976 Dec;27(4):255-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/993239
21. Torode I, Zieg D. Pelvic fractures in children. J Pediatr Orthop 1985 Jan-Feb;5(1):76-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3980712
22. Musemeche CA, Fischer RP, Cotler HB, et al. Selective management of paediatric pelvic fractures: a conservative approach. J Pediatr Surg 1987 Jun;22(6):538-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3612446
23. Bond SJ, Gotschall CS, Eichelberger MR. Predictors of abdominal injury in children with pelvic fracture. J Trauma 1991 Aug;31(8):1169-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1875444
24. Reichard SA, Helikson MA, Shorter N, et al. Pelvic fractures in children – review of 120 patients with a new look at general management. J Pediatr Surg 1980 Dec;15(6):727-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7463272
25. Koraitim MM, Marzouk ME, Atta MA, et al. Risk factors and mechanism of urethral injury in pelvic fractures. Br J Urol 1996 Jun;77(6):876-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8705225
26. Tarman GJ, Kaplan GW, Lerman SL, et al. Lower genitourinary injury and pelvic fractures in paediatric patients. Urology 2002 Jan;59(1):123-6; discussion 126.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11796295
27. Armenakas NA, Pareek G, Fracchia JA. Iatrogenic bladder perforations: longterm followup of 65 patients. J Am Coll Surg 2004 Jan;198(1):78-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14698314
28. Dobrowolski ZF, Lipczyñski W, Drewniak T, et al. External and iatrogenic trauma of the urinary bladder: a survey in Poland. BJU Int 2002 May;89(7):755-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11966639
29. Ostrzenski A, Ostrzenska KM. Bladder injury during laparoscopic surgery. Obstet Gynecol Surv 1998 Mar;53(3):175-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9513988
30. Härkki-Sirén P, Sjöberg J, Tiitinen A. Urinary tract injuries after hysterectomy. Obstet Gynecol 1998 Jul;92(1):113-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9649105
31. Gilmour DT, Dwyer PL, Carey MP. Lower urinary tract injury during gynecologic surgery and its detection by intraoperative cystoscopy. Obstet Gynecol 1999 Nov;94(5Pt2):883-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10546778
32. Mendez LE. Iatrogenic injuries in gynecologic cancer surgery. Surg Clin North Am 2001 Aug;81(4): 897-923.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11551133

33. Mäkinen J, Johansson J, Tomas C, et al. Morbidity of 10 110 hysterectomies by type of approach. Hum Reprod 2001 Jul;16(7):1473-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11425832
34. Vakili B, Chesson RR, Kyle BL, et al. The incidence of urinary tract injury during hysterectomy: a prospective analysis based on universal cystoscopy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2005 May;192(5): 1599-604.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15902164
35. Skolarikos A, Chrisofos M, Ferakis N, et al. Does the management of bladder perforation during transurethral resection of superficial bladder tumors predispose to extravesical tumor recurrence? J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):1908-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879773
36. Murshidi MS. Intraperitoneal rupture of the urinary bladder during transurethral resection of transitional cell carcinoma. Acta Urol Belg 1988;56(1):68-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3364323
37. Donovan JL, Peters TJ, Neal DE, et al. A randomized trial comparing transurethral resection of the prostate, laser therapy and conservative treatment of men with symptoms associated with benign prostatic enlargement: The CLasP study. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):65-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840426
38. Minaglia S, Ozel B, Klutke C, et al. Bladder injury during transobturator sling. Urology 2004 Aug;64(2): 376-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302505
39. Dwyer PL, Carey MP, Rosamilia A. Suture injury to the urinary tract in urethral suspension procedures for stress incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1999;10(1):15-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10207762
40. Gill EJ, Elser DM, Bonidie MJ, et al. The routine use of cystoscopy with the Burch procedure. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2001 Aug;185(2):345-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11518889
41. Kenton K, Oldham L, Brubaker L. Open Burch urethropexy has a low rate of perioperative complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2002 Jul;187(1):107-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12114897
42. Olsson I, Kroon U. A three-year postoperative evaluation of tension-free vaginal tape. Gynecol Obstet Invest 1999;48(4):267-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10592431
43. Soulié M, Cuvillier X, Benaïssa A, et al. The tension-free transvaginal tape procedure in the treatment of female urinary stress incontinence: a French prospective multicentre study. Eur Urol 2001 Jun;39(6):709-14; discussion 715.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11464062
44. Tamussino KF, Hanzal E, Kölle D, et al. Tension-free vaginal tape operation: results of the Austrian registry. Obstet Gynecol 2001 Nov;98(5Pt1):732-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11704161
45. Meschia M, Pifarotti P, Bernasconi F, et al. Tension-Free vaginal tape: analysis of outcomes and complications in 404 stress incontinent women. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2001;12 Suppl 2:S24-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11450976
46. Agostini A, Bretelle F, Franchi F, et al. Immediate complications of tension-free vaginal tape (TVT): results of a French survey. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2006 Feb;124(2):237-9. Epub 2005.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16095800
47. Kuuva N, Nilsson CG. A nationwide analysis of complications associated with the tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) procedure. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2002 Jan;81(1):72-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11942891
48. Azam U, Frazer MI, Kozman EL, et al. The tension-free vaginal tape procedure in women with previous failed stress incontinence surgery. J Urol 2001 Aug;166(2):554-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458067
49. Latthe PM. Review of transobturator and retropubic tape procedures for stress urinary incontinence. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 2008 Aug;20(4):331-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18660683
50. Morey AF, Iverson AJ, Swan A, et al. Bladder rupture after blunt trauma: guidelines for diagnostic imaging. J Trauma 2001 Oct;51(4):683-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11586159

51. Schneider RE. Genitourinary trauma. Emerg Med Clin North Am 1993 Feb;11(1):137-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8432245
52. Werkman HA, Jansen C, Klein JP, et al. Urinary tract injuries in multiply-injured patients: a rational guideline for the initial assessment. Injury 1991 Nov;22(6):471-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1757139
53. Fuhrman GM, Simmons GT, et al. The single indication for cystography in blunt trauma. Am Surg 1993 Jun;59(6):335-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8507053
54. Hochberg E, Stone NN. Bladder rupture associated with pelvic fracture due to blunt trauma. Urology 1993 Jun;41(6):531-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8516988
55. Abou-Jaoude WA, Sugarman JM, Fallat ME, et al. Indicators of genitourinary tract injury or anomaly in cases of paediatric blunt trauma. J Pediatr Surg 1996 Jan;31(1):86-9;discussion 90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8632293
56. Baniel J, Schein M. The management of penetrating trauma to the urinary tract. J Am Coll Surg 1994 Apr;178(4):417-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8149045
57. Corriere JN Jr., Sandler CM. Management of extraperitoneal bladder rupture. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):275-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2711545
58. Stine RJ, Avila JA, Lemons MF, et al. Diagnostic and therapeutic urologic procedures. Emerg Med Clin North Am 1988 Aug;6(3):547-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3292227
59. Carroll PR, McAninch JW. Major bladder trauma: the accuracy of cystography. J Urol 1983 Nov; 130(5):887-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6632094
60. Deck AJ, Shaves S, Talner L, et al. Computerized tomography cystography for the diagnosis of traumatic bladder rupture. J Urol 2000 Jul;164(1):43-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10840421
61. Morey AF, Hernandez J, McAninch JW. Reconstructive surgery for trauma of the lower urinary tract. Urol Clin North Am 1999 Feb;26(1):49-60, viii.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10086050
62. Bonavita JA, Pollack HM. Trauma of the adult bladder and urethra. Semin Roentgenol 1983 Oct;18(4): 299-306.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6359436
63. MacMahon R, Hosking D, Ramsey EW. Management of blunt injury to the lower urinary tract. Can J Surg 1983 Sep;26(5):415-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6616359
64. Bigongiari LR, Zarnow H. Traumatic, inflammatory, neoplastic and miscellaneous lesions of the bladder. In: Land EK (ed.). *Medical Radiology of the Lower Urinary Tract*, 1994, Springer Verlag: Berlin, pp. 70-147.
65. Mee SL, McAninch JW, Federle MP. Computerized tomography in bladder rupture: diagnostic limitations. J Urol 1987 Feb;137(2):207-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3806805
66. Horstman WG, McClennan BL, Heiken JP. Comparison of computed tomography and conventional cystography for detection of traumatic bladder rupture. Urol Radiol 1991;12(4):188-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2042269
67. Lis LE, Cohen AJ. CT cystography in the evaluation of bladder trauma. J Comput Assist Tomogr 1990 May-Jun;14(3):386-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2335605
68. Vaccaro JP, Brody JM. CT cystography in the evaluation of major bladder trauma. Radiographics 2000 Sep-Oct;20(5):1373-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992026
69. Dixon CM, Hricak H, McAninch JW. Magnetic resonance imaging of traumatic posterior urethral defects and pelvic crush injuries. J Urol 1992 Oct;148(4):1162-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1404629
70. Armenakas NA, McAninch JW, Lue TF, et al. Posttraumatic impotence: magnetic resonance imaging and duplex ultrasound in diagnosis and management. J Urol 1993 May;149(5Pt2):1272-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8479013

71. Narumi Y, Hricak H, Armenakas NA, et al. MR imaging of traumatic posterior urethral injury. Radiology 1993 Aug;188(2):439-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8327694
72. Thomae KR, Kilambi NK, Poole GV. Method of urinary diversion in nonurethral traumatic bladder injuries: retrospective analysis of 70 cases. Am Surg 1998 Jan;64(1):77-80;discussion 80-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457042
73. Soong YK, Yu HT, Wang CJ, et al. Urinary tract injury in laparoscopic-assisted vaginal hysterectomy. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 2007 Sep-Oct;14(5):600-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17848321

5. URETHRAL TRAUMA

5.1 Anatomical and aetiological considerations

The male urethra is divided into the anterior and posterior sections by the urogenital diaphragm. The posterior urethra consists of the prostatic and the membranous urethra. The anterior urethra consists of the bulbar and penile urethra. Only the posterior urethra exists in the female; the anterior urethra corresponds to the labia minora, which results from persistent separation of the urethral folds on the ventral surfaces of the genital tubercle.

*5.1.1 **Posterior urethral injuries***

Road traffic accidents, falls, and crush injuries can cause pelvic fractures, which result in injuries to the posterior urethra. About two-thirds (70%) of pelvic fractures occur because of motor vehicle accidents. The incidence of pelvic fracture is 20% in survivors of motor accidents where fatalities have occurred. The incidence is nearly 50% in fatal pedestrian accidents. Twenty-five per cent of cases result from a fall from a height (1,2).

Altogether, blunt trauma accounts for more than 90% of urethral injuries (3). Overall, the male posterior urethra is injured in 4-19% and the female urethra in 0-6% of all pelvic fractures (2,4-12). The female urethra is rarely injured, except by contusion or laceration by bone fragments.

During crush or deceleration impact injury, the severe shearing forces necessary to fracture the pelvis are transmitted to the prostatomembranous junction, resulting in disruption of the prostate from its connection to the anterior urethra at the prostatic apex. Retrograde urethrography and MRI correlates to this location of the injury (13,14). Cadaveric studies suggest that in most cases the membranous urethra is torn distally to the urogenital diaphragm (15).

An accurate knowledge of the functional anatomy of the sphincter mechanism is essential to the success of posterior urethral surgery. Continence after anastomotic reconstruction of subprostatic pelvic fracture urethral distraction defects depends upon the function of the bladder neck and of the distal urethral sphincter mechanism, each of which is competent and independently capable of maintaining continence in the absence of the other (16).

Unstable pelvic fractures (8,11,17-21), bilateral ischiopubic rami fractures ('straddle fracture'), and symphysis pubis diastasis have the highest likelihood of injuring the posterior urethra. In particular, the combination of straddle fractures with diastasis of the sacroiliac joint has the highest risk of urethral injury; the odds ratio is about 7 times higher than for either straddle injuries or sacroiliac ('Malgaigne') fractures alone (Table 7) (2).

Table 7: Odds ratio of suffering urethral injury with different types of pelvic fracture

Type of fracture	Odds ratio
Single ramus	0.6
Ipsilateral rami	0.8
Malgaigne's (vertical shear)	3.4
Straddle	3.9
Straddle plus sacroiliac	24.0

Lower urinary tract injury has been reported in about 16% of patients with unilateral rami fractures and in 41% of patients with bilateral rami fractures (22). Anteroposterior compression injuries from frontal crushes produce more severe pelvic fractures, major retroperitoneal bleeding and more frequent injury to the lower urinary tract than do lateral crashes (23).

Prostatomembranous urethral injuries can vary from simple stretching (25%) to partial rupture (25%) or complete disruptions (50%) (2). The more severe injuries result in prostatourethral displacement, with progressive scar formation encompassing the rupture defect. The incidence of double injuries involving the urethra and the bladder ranges between 10% and 20% in males, and may be intraperitoneal (17-39%), extraperitoneal (56-78%), or both (2,7).

Urethral injuries, by themselves, are never life-threatening, except as a consequence of their close association with pelvic fractures and multiple organ injuries, which occur in about 27% of cases. Initially, the assessment and management of other associated injuries is usually more important than the assessment and management of the urethral injury (24).

The American Association for Surgery of Trauma has proposed the classification given in Table 8.

Table 8: Organ injury scaling III classification of urethral injuries (25)

Grade	Description	Appearance
I	Contusion	Blood at the urethral meatus; Normal urethrogram
II	Stretch injury	Elongation of the urethra without extravasation on urethrography
III	Partial disruption	Extravasation of contrast at injury site with contrast visualised in the bladder
IV	Complete disruption	Extravasation of contrast at injury site without visualisation in the bladder; < 2 cm of urethral separation
V	Complete disruption	Complete transection with > 2 cm urethral separation or extension into the prostate or vagina

New classifications provide an anatomical classification and a means of comparing treatment strategies and outcomes (26,27). The classification shown in Table 9 combines the best of previous classifications and has direct implications in clinical management.

Table 9: Classification of blunt anterior and posterior urethra

Grade	Description	Appearance
I	Stretch injury	Elongation of the urethra without extravasation on urethrography
II	Contusion	Blood at the urethral meatus No extravasation on urethrography
III	Partial disruption of anterior or posterior urethra	Extravasation of contrast at injury site with contrast visualised in the proximal urethra or bladder
IV	Complete disruption of anterior urethra	Extravasation of contrast at injury site without visualisation of proximal urethral or bladder
V	Complete disruption of posterior urethra	Extravasation of contrast at injury site without visualisation of bladder
VI	Complete or partial disruption of posterior urethra with associated tear of the bladder neck or vagina	

Clinical management is according to the injury grade:

- grade I no treatment required;
- grades II and III can be managed conservatively with suprapubic cystostomy or urethral catheterisation;
- grades IV and V will require open or endoscopic treatment, primary or delayed;
- grade VI requires primary open repair.

5.1.1.1 Urethral injuries in children

Urethral injuries in children are similar to those in adults. The only significant difference is that straddle pelvic fractures, Malgaigne's fractures or the association of straddle plus sacroiliac joint fracture is more common in children than in adults. In addition, posterior urethral injuries can involve the prostatic urethra and the bladder neck, as well as the membranous urethra. The tear is often in the prostatic urethra or at the bladder neck because of the rudimentary nature of the prostate, and is more likely to be a complete rupture (69% versus 42%). Urethral stretching is less common than in adults. The more proximal the injury, the greater the risk of incontinence, impotence, and stricture (2,24,28,29).

5.1.1.2 Urethral injuries in women

These are rare events since the female urethra is short and mobile, without any significant attachments to the pubic bone. They usually occur in children. They are often accompanied by severe pelvic fractures, where bony fragments of the fractured pelvis can lacerate the urethra. Urethral injuries in females frequently extend into the bladder neck or vagina, and often disrupt the normal continence mechanism (4,12). Injury to the female urethra is usually a partial tear of the anterior wall and is rarely a complete disruption of the proximal or distal urethra (29).

5.1.1.3 Penetrating injuries to the perineum

These can occur after external violence such as gunshot or stab wounds, or as iatrogenic injuries caused by endoscopic instruments or during surgery for vaginal repair. In developing countries, urethral and bladder neck damage occur quite often as a result of ischaemic injury during obstructed labour.

5.1.2 ***Anterior urethral injuries***

Anterior urethral injuries result from blunt trauma more frequently than from penetrating trauma (Table 10).

Table 10: Aetiology of anterior urethral injuries

Cause	Example
Blunt trauma	• Vehicular accidents • Fall astride (straddle) • Kicks in the perineum • Blows in the perineum from bicycle handlebars, tops of fences, etc.
Sexual intercourse	• Penile fractures • Urethral intraluminal stimulation
Penetrating trauma	• Gunshot wounds • Stab wounds • Dog bites • External impalement • Penile amputations
Constriction bands	• Paraplegia
Iatrogenic injuries	• Endoscopic instruments • Urethral catheters/dilators

5.1.2.1 Blunt trauma

Vehicular accidents, falls, or blows cause most anterior urethral injuries. In contrast to posterior urethral trauma, they are rarely associated with pelvic fractures. They are usually straddle-type injuries caused by blows of blunt objects against the perineum, such as bicycle handlebars or the top of a fence. In this type of accident, the relatively immobile bulbar urethra is trapped and compressed by a direct force on it against the inferior surface of the symphysis pubis. These injuries are more common in children than in adults (28).

5.1.2.2 Intercourse-related trauma

A less common cause of blunt anterior urethral trauma is penile fracture. This rupture of the corpus cavernosum usually occurs during intercourse. In these injuries, the urethra is involved in 20% of the cases (30). Intraluminal stimulation of the urethra with foreign objects has also been reported to cause anterior urethral trauma. Most are short and incomplete, and occur in the distal penile urethra.

Surgery is rarely indicated and depends on the degree and extent of injury to the urethra.

5.1.2.3 Penetrating trauma

Penetrating injuries to the anterior urethra usually result from gunshot wounds and involve the pendulous and bulbar urethral segments equally. These injuries are associated with penile and testicular injury. These can involve the rectum, which may result in pelvic abscesses and the formation of fistulae (31,32). Other less frequent causes of external anterior urethral injuries include stab wounds, penile amputation, and impalement.

5.1.2.4 Constriction band-related trauma

Individuals with paraplegia who use a constriction device for urinary incontinence and forget to release the band because of the lack of sensation can cause severe ischaemic injuries involving the penis and urethra.

5.1.2.5 Iatrogenic trauma

Iatrogenic urethral injuries caused by instruments are by far the most common cause of urethral trauma. Urethral ischaemic injuries related to cardiac bypass procedures are not infrequent and can result in long and fibrotic strictures. A separate section in this chapter discusses iatrognic trauma in more detail (see section 4.6).

5.2 Diagnosis: initial emergency assessment

*5.2.1 **Clinical assessment***

The initial management of urethral injury is resuscitation of the patient. In the absence of blood at the meatus or genital haematoma, a urological injury is very unlikely and is excluded by catheterisation. Maintain airway and respiratory function, secure the cervical spine if necessary, and address blood loss if present. This is particularly important in posterior urethral injuries because of their close association with pelvic fractures.

The next step includes taking a complete history and carrying out physical, laboratory, and radiographic evaluations in order to identify all injuries accurately. A diagnosis of acute urethral trauma should be suspected from the history. A pelvic fracture, or any external penile or perineal trauma, can be suggestive of urethral trauma (33,34).

For penetrating injuries, the type of weapon used, including the calibre of the bullet, is helpful in assessing potential tissue damage. In a conscious patient, a thorough voiding history should be obtained to establish the time of last urination, the force of the urinary stream, whether urination is painful and whether haematuria is present. The following clinical indicators of acute urethral trauma warrant a complete urethral evaluation.

5.2.1.1 Blood at the meatus

This is present in 37-93% of patients with posterior urethral injury, and in at least 75% of patients with anterior urethral trauma (35,36). When blood is present at the urethral meatus, do not attempt urethral instrumentation until the entire urethra is imaged. In an unstable patient, attempt to pass a urethral catheter, but if there is any difficulty, place a suprapubic catheter and perform a retrograde urethrogram when appropriate.

It is extremely unlikely that gentle passage of a urethral catheter will do any additional damage (37,38), although it has been suggested that this may convert a partial tear into one that is complete (39). There are no convincing data indicating a higher rate of infection or urethral stricture after a single attempt at catheterisation (3). Indeed, if a urethral injury is suspected, urethrography prior to attempted catheterisation is the most prudent approach.

5.2.1.2 Blood at the vaginal introitus

This is present in more than 80% of female patients with pelvic fractures and co-existing urethral injuries (4).

5.2.1.3 Haematuria

Although non-specific, haematuria on a first-voided specimen may indicate urethral injury. The amount of urethral bleeding correlates poorly with the severity of the injury, as a mucosal contusion or small partial tear may be accompanied by copious bleeding, while total transection of the urethra may result in little bleeding (40).

5.2.1.4 Pain on urination or inability to void

The inability to void suggests urethral disruption.

5.2.1.5 Haematoma or swelling

With anterior urethral trauma, the pattern of the haematoma can be useful in identifying the anatomical boundaries violated by the injury. Extravasation of blood or urine in a sleeve distribution along the penile shaft indicates that the injury is confined by Buck's fascia. Disruption of Buck's fascia results in a pattern of extravasation limited only by Colles' fascia, and can extend to the coracoclavicular fascia superiorly and the fascia lata inferiorly. This results in a characteristic butterfly pattern of bruising in the perineum. In female

patients with severe pelvic fractures, the presence of labial swelling may be an indicator of urethral injury. It can be caused by urinary extravasation and warrants immediate attention.

5.2.1.6 High-riding prostate

This is a relatively unreliable finding in the acute phase since the pelvic haematoma associated with pelvic fractures often precludes the adequate palpation of a small prostate, particularly in younger men (3). A boggy mass is usually palpated without recognition of a prostate gland (41). Rectal examination is more important as a tool to screen for rectal injuries, which can be associated with pelvic fractures. Blood on the examination finger is suggestive of a rectal injury. Assessment of concomitant genital injuries is mandatory in every case of external urethral trauma.

*5.2.2 **Radiographic examination***

Retrograde urethrography is the gold standard for evaluating urethral injury (5,29). A scout film should be performed first to assess the radiographic technique, and to detect pelvic fractures and foreign bodies, such as bullets. This is performed using a Foley catheter in the fossa navicularis, with the balloon inflated using 1-2 mL of saline to occlude the urethra. Then, 20-30 mL of contrast material is injected while films are taken in a 30° oblique position. When severe pelvic fractures and associated patient discomfort are present, the oblique position may not always be possible. The radiographic appearance of the urethra permits classification of the injury and facilitates the subsequent management.

If posterior urethral injury is suspected, a suprapubic catheter is inserted. Later on, a simultaneous cystogram and ascending urethrogram can be carried out to assess the site, severity and length of the urethral injury. This is usually done after 3 months if a delayed repair is considered.

When the proximal urethra is not visualised in a simultaneous cystogram and urethrogram, either MRI of the posterior urethra (42) or endoscopy through the suprapubic tract is used to define the anatomy of the posterior urethra. Since manipulation in the bladder can cause the bladder neck to open and give the false impression of incompetence, the endoscopic appearance of the bladder neck should be noted immediately on placing the scope into the bladder (43).

After assessing the endoscopic appearance of the bladder neck, the flexible endoscope can be advanced through the bladder neck into the posterior urethra to the level of obstruction. If there is a question about the length of the distraction, a simultaneous retrograde urethrogram can be performed while the endoscope is in the posterior urethra. The radiographic appearance of the bladder neck is important, but is not as reliable an indicator of continence as the endoscopic appearance is. Furthermore, there are patients who, despite evidence of an open or scarred bladder neck, will have acceptable continence after reconstruction. For this reason, the need for concomitant bladder neck surgery at the time of urethral reconstruction is debatable (43,44).

Ultrasonography is not a routine investigation in the initial assessment of urethral injuries but can be very useful in determining the position of pelvic haematomas, or the exact location of the bladder when a suprapubic catheter is indicated.

Computed tomography and MRI have no place in the initial assessment of urethral injuries. However, they are useful in defining distorted pelvic anatomy after severe injury and assessing associated injuries of penile crura, bladder, kidneys, and intra-abdominal organs (14,45).

*5.2.3 **Endoscopic examination***

Urethroscopy does not have any role in the initial diagnosis of urethral trauma in males. In females, however, where the short urethra precludes adequate retrograde urethrography, urethroscopy is an important adjunct to the physical examination for the identification and staging of urethral injuries (46).

5.3 Management

The management of urethral injuries remains controversial because of the variety of injury patterns, associated injuries and treatment options available. In addition, urethral injuries are relatively uncommon, hence the limited experience of most urologists worldwide and the absence of randomised prospective studies.

*5.3.1 **Anterior urethral injuries***

5.3.1.1 Blunt injuries

Partial tears can be managed with a suprapubic catheter or with urethral catheterisation (29,37,47). Suprapubic cystostomy has the advantage that it not only diverts the urine away from the site of injury, but also avoids urethral manipulation (48), as well as allowing for a simultaneous study to be carried out at a later date.

If the bladder is not easily palpable suprapubically, transabdominal sonography should be used to guide the placement of the catheter. The cystostomy tube is maintained for approximately 4 weeks to allow urethral healing. Voiding cystourethrography is then performed. Remove the suprapubic tube if normal voiding

can be re-established and neither contrast extravasation nor stricture is present.

The potential early complications of acute urethral injuries include strictures and infections.

Extravasated blood or urine from the urethral tear produces an inflammatory reaction that can progress to the formation of an abscess. The extent of the infection depends on the fascial planes violated (see section 4.2). The potential sequelae of these infections include urethrocutaneous fistulae, peri-urethral diverticulae and, rarely, necrotising fasciitis. Prompt urinary diversion coupled with the appropriate administration of antibiotics decreases the incidence of these complications.

After the patient has adequately recovered from any associated injuries, and the urethral injury has stabilised, the urethra can be thoroughly re-evaluated radiographically. When necessary, the appropriate reconstructive procedure is planned.

Blunt anterior urethral injuries are associated with spongiosal contusion, which makes it more difficult to evaluate the limits of urethral debridement in the acute phase. Acute or early urethroplasty is therefore not indicated, and the best management is simply suprapubic diversion.

Satisfactory urethral luminal recanalisation occurs in approximately 50% of partial anterior urethral disruptions (47,49). Short and flimsy strictures are managed with optical urethrotomy or urethral dilatation. Denser strictures require formal urethral reconstruction. Anastomotic urethroplasty is indicated in strictures of less than 1 cm in length.

Longer strictures of the anterior urethra should not be repaired by an end-to-end anastomosis, in order to avoid chordee. In these cases, flap urethroplasty is indicated. Almost all complete ruptures of the anterior urethra require anastomotic or patch urethroplasty at 3-6 months. The only exception to this is urethral injury associated with penile fracture; this usually results in partial urethral disruption and can be repaired at the time of cavernosal closure.

5.3.1.2 Open injuries

5.3.1.2.1 Male urethral injuries

Stab wounds, gunshot wounds and dog bites to the urethra often involve the penis and testes and often require immediate exploration. During surgery, the urethral injury can be surgically evaluated and repaired as needed. Urethral strictures form in fewer than 15% of these patients (50).

Primary urethral suturing involves direct visualisation of the severed urethral ends and creation of a watertight, tension-free repair. The patient should be in a supine position. Use a circumferential subcoronal incision to deglove the penis.

In complete disruptions, the corpus spongiosum is mobilised at the level of the injury and the urethral ends dissected distally and proximally. Urethral ends are spatulated, and end-to-end anastomosis is fashioned over a 14 French Foley catheter. Suture small lacerations with fine absorbable material. Careful overclosure of the corpus spongiosum and skin prevents the subsequent formation of fistulae (24). Keep urethral debridement to a minimum since the spongiosum is well vascularised and will usually heal well.

As with any surgery, give pre-operative antimicrobial prophylaxis. Some experts recommend the post-operative continuation of prophylactic antibiotics, but we are not aware of any data that prove that they help. After 10-14 days, obtain a peri-catheter retrograde urethrogram with the urethral catheter in situ. Provided there is no leakage at the anastomotic site, remove the urethral catheter. If there is leakage, leave the catheter in and repeat the cystourethrogram 1 week later.

If the urethra is so extensively disrupted that primary anastomosis is not feasible, then primary repair should be aborted. This occurs with defects of more than 1-1.5 cm in length. One should marsupialise the urethra preparatory to a two-stage urethral repair, and consider a suprapubic urinary diversion. Perform a delayed elective procedure a minimum of 3 months after injury. There is no role for acute placement of a graft or flap in the initial management of any urethral injury, since contamination or decreased blood supply can compromise such a repair (33).

5.3.1.2.2 Female urethral injuries

Most female urethral disruptions can be sutured primarily. These injuries often occur together with bladder ruptures. Frequently, if the bladder injury is going to be repaired primarily, the urethral disruption can be repaired at the same time. For proximal urethral injuries, urethral exposure is best obtained transvesically. Distal urethral injuries can be approached vaginally (29). Early repair of post-traumatic urethral fistulae can also be accomplished transvaginally (4,12).

5.3.2 ***Posterior urethral injuries***

It is important to distinguish between inflammatory or iatrogenic posterior urethral strictures and true pelvic fracture urethral distraction defects as the principles of their surgical management are entirely different. Urethral stricture indicates a narrowing of the urethral lumen. In urethral distraction defects, there is a gap between the two otherwise normal ends of the urethra. The dismembered ends of the urethra retract, and the

space between them fills with fibrous tissue. There is no urethral wall in the scarred space, and any lumen represents merely a fistulous tract between the urethral stumps. A further difference between inflammatory strictures and distraction defects is that the urethral stumps are usually not fibrotic and can be re-anastomosed without tension after distraction injury. Once anastomosed, they usually heal without stricture (51).

Erectile dysfunction occurs in 20-60% of patients after traumatic posterior urethral rupture (51-55). The most important determining factor associated with impotence is the severity of the initial injury. The incidence of erectile dysfunction being caused by the open surgical repair itself is 5% or less (51,56). Erectile dysfunction seems to be a direct result of the pelvic fracture plus urethral injury. King reported an incidence of 42% in cases of pelvic fracture and urethral injury, but only 5% when the urethra was not injured (53). Barbagli *et al*. reported an incidence of 60% in patients with posterior urethral injury, compared with 14% in patients with bulbar injury (57).

Factors that correlate with the development of impotence are age, defect length, and the type of fracture. Bilateral pubic rami fractures are the most frequent cause of impotence. Impotence is most commonly neurogenic, due to bilateral damage of the cavernous nerves at the prostatomembranous urethra behind the symphysis pubis (58,59). Associated vasculogenic erectile failure may occur in up to 80% of cases (60). Dixon *et al*. presented evidence that impotence may also be a consequence of avulsion of the corporus cavernosum from the ischium (14). In this series, five out of six patients with avulsion of the corpus cavernosum off the inferior pubic ramus, were impotent. Spontaneous return of potency may occur up to 2 years after injury (42). Gibson reported an incidence of improved sexual function after 18 months in 21% of patients (52).

5.3.2.1 Partial urethral rupture

Manage partial tears of the posterior urethra with a suprapubic or urethral catheter. Perform urethrography at 2-weekly intervals until healing has occurred (29,37). They may heal without significant scarring or obstruction if managed by diversion alone (48,61). Manage residual or subsequent stricture with urethral dilatation or optical urethrotomy if short and flimsy, and with anastomotic urethroplasty if dense or long (24,37).

5.3.2.2 Complete urethral rupture

Acute treatment options include:

- primary endoscopic realignment;
- immediate open urethroplasty (**which should be considered experimental** and rarely or never used in patients without associated rectal or bladder neck injury).

Delayed treatment options include:

- 'delayed primary urethroplasty' (which implies primary repair 2 weeks after injury and for **which there is a lack of supporting evidence in male patients**);
- delayed formal urethroplasty at 3 months after injury **(the most standard approach);**
- delayed endoscopic incision of the scar tissue between the urethral ends (so-called 'cut-to-the-light' or similar procedures).

5.3.2.3 Primary realignment

The management of complete posterior rupture of the urethra has changed in recent years. There is now more active orthopaedic management of pelvic fractures with immediate external and internal fixation. This has led to the option of early repair of urethral injuries (37).

In the absence of indications for immediate exploration, posterior urethral disruption can be managed in a delayed primary fashion. Primary realignment requires placement of a suprapubic tube at the time of initial injury, with repair undertaken when the patient is stable, usually within 7 days. At this time, patients are stable, and most pelvic bleeding has resolved. The aim of internal realignment is to correct severe distraction injuries rather than to prevent a stricture occurring, although it will also ensure that it is easily treated if it does occur (62).

Open realignment has been described (63), but it should be performed only in patients who undergo open abdominal or pelvic surgery for associated injuries or internal bone fixation. Haematomas that prevent adequate pelvic descent can be evacuated at this point in these cases.

Concomitant bladder neck or rectal injuries should usually be repaired immediately, and open or endoscopic urethral realignment over a catheter at the same time might be advisable. The reasons for immediate repair of bladder neck and rectal injury are:

1. Unrepaired bladder neck injury risks incontinence and infection of the pelvic fractures.
2. Unrepaired rectal injury carries the obvious risk of sepsis and fistula, and early exploration is indicated to evacuate contaminated haematomas and perform colostomy.
3. Urethral realignment over a stenting catheter is appropriate in such cases (29,40,64-66).

The overall condition of the patient and the extent of the associated injuries greatly affect the decision to proceed with primary realignment. Most patients with pelvic crush injuries have multiple organ injuries.

Associated lower extremity fractures can prevent placement in the lithotomy position, which may be required for primary realignment (although bedside flexible cystoscopy can be used). Head injuries increase the adverse risks of anaesthesia. If these conditions are controlled, such that a haemodynamically stable patient can safely undergo a lengthier anaesthesia and can be placed in the lithotomy position, endoscopic urethral realignment could be considered during the first 2 weeks after trauma.

The proposed benefits of primary alignment are:

1. A lower stricture rate than with suprapubic catheter placement alone (69% versus 10%) (6), which avoids a second operation for urethral reconstruction in about one-third of patients (3).
2. If scarring occurs, restoration of urethral continuity is simplified and may be accomplished by endoscopic procedures or dilatation.
3. If urethroplasty is required later, it is technically easier when the prostate and urethra are well aligned; the disadvantage might be a higher incidence of erectile dysfunction and incontinence when compared with delayed reconstruction (6,67).

The great variation of techniques used for primary realignment procedures confuses any comparison with delayed repair procedures (68-71). Primary realignment techniques include:

- simple passage of a catheter across the defect (70);
- catheter realignment using flexible/rigid endoscopes and biplanar fluoroscopy (72,73);
- use of interlocking sounds ('railroading') or magnetic catheters to place the catheter (71,74);
- pelvic haematoma evacuation and dissection of the prostatic apex (with or without suture anastomosis) over a catheter;
- catheter traction or perineal traction sutures to pull the prostate back to its normal location (75).

Realignment may be insufficient to join the margins of the severed urethra completely, and 1.5-4.0 cm defects have been observed even after catheter realignment (76). This finding agrees with experimental animal data, which show that when the urethra is transacted and an apparently good urethral junction is achieved by catheter traction, there is no evidence of epithelialisation of the mucosal gap, but rather that the intervening area is filled with fibrous tissue (77).

Traction on the catheter might not improve the healing of the urethra, and could in fact harm continence. Sustained traction on the Foley balloon catheter can damage the remaining sphincter mechanism at the bladder neck as a result of pressure necrosis (3,64). Series that use immediate urethral realignment with minimal traction without suture repair bolsters report the most favourable results (Table 11).

Endoscopic primary realignment fulfils these criteria and should be used when a primary procedure is contemplated. Open primary realignment in the absence of bladder neck injury or rectal injury has no place in the treatment of posterior urethral injuries because of its higher morbidity.

Table 11: Results of immediate realignment in complete urethral disruption (68,70,72,74,77-91)

Series	Ref.no.	No. of patients	Follow-up months (range)	Erectile dysfunction	Incontinence	Restricture rate
Gibson (1974)	77	35†	n/a	12 (34%)	1 (3%)	26 (74.3%)
Crassweller et al. (1977)	78	38	– (24-240)	19/42 (45%)	n/a	12 (31.6%)
Malek et al. (1977)‡	79	7	168 (96-264)	0	0	1 (14.3%)
Gelbard et al. (1989)	72	7	10.2 (2-24)	1/6 (16.7%)	0	2 (33%)
Cohen et al. (1991)	80	4	28 (17-35)	2 (50%)	0	2 (50%)
Melekos et al. (1992)	81	4	n/a	0	0	4 (100%)
Follis et al. (1992)	68	20	42 (1-360)	4 (20%)	2 (10%)	12 (60%)
El-Abd (1995)	82	44	n/a	35 (79.5%)	0	44 (100%)
Gheiler and Frontera (1997)	83	3	6 (5-9)	0	0	1 (33.3%)
Londergan et al. (1997)	84	4	20.2 (12-35)	1 (25%)	0	3 (75%)

Elliott and Barrett (1997)	85	53	126 (1->120)	11 (21%)	2 (3.8%)	36 (68%)
Porter et al. (1997)	70	10	10.9 (2-31)	1/7 (14%)	0	5 (50%)
Rehman et al. (1998)	86	3	– (11-26)	1 (16.7%)	0	2 (66.7%)
Sahin et al. (1998)	87	5	31 (21-53)	1 (20%)	1 (20%)	4 (80%)
Tahan et al. (1999)	88	13	29 -	3 (23%)	0	5 (38.5%)
Jepson et al. (1999)	89	8	50.4 (35-85)	3 (37.5%)	1 (12.5%)	5 (62.5%)
Asci et al. (1999)	90	20	39 (19-78)	4 (20%)	2 (10%)	9 (45%)
Ying-Hao et al. (2000)	91	4	56 (39-85)	0	0	1 (25%)
Moudouni et al. (2001)	92	23	68 (18-155)	4/29 (14%)	0	16 (69.5%)
Mouraviev et al. (2005)	74	57	< 24 (2-15)	19/57 (34%)	10/57 (10%)	28/57 (49%)
Total		362		130/368 (35.3%)[§]	19/362 (5.2%)	218/362 (60.2%)

**Stricture that requires internal urethrotomy, or open urethroplasty, or more than one dilatation;*
[†]5 patients with partial rupture;
[‡]children;
[§]some partial ruptures included.

This type of summary of the literature suggests that immediate realignment is associated with an impotence rate of approximately 35%, an incontinence rate of 5%, and a restricture rate of 60%.

5.3.2.4 Immediate open urethroplasty

Immediate open urethroplasty of posterior injuries is not indicated because of poor visualisation and the inability to assess accurately the degree of urethral disruption during the acute phase, characterised by extensive swelling and ecchymosis. The difficulty in identifying structures and planes hampers adequate mobilisation and subsequent surgical apposition (24). Incontinence and impotence rates are higher than with the other techniques described in these guidelines (impotence 56%, incontinence 21%, restricture 49%) (6,29,48,62,65,93,94).

However, in posterior urethral injuries associated with concomitant bladder neck or rectal injuries, immediate open exploration, repair and urethral realignment over a catheter is advisable (29,40,64-66). In children, similar results have been reported with delayed repair and immediate open urethroplasty (63).

5.3.2.5 Delayed primary urethroplasty

Delayed primary urethroplasty is mainly indicated in female urethral disruption, although no large series exists. It requires placement of a suprapubic tube at the time of initial injury, with repair undertaken when the patient is stable, usually within 7 days. Fewer than 50 cases have been reported, and most of these are individual case reports only (12).

Delayed primary repair tries to preserve as much urethral length as possible, and to avoid the urethra becoming embedded in dense scar tissue with consequent incontinence. Surgical exploration should be attempted via the retropubic route for proximal injuries, and the vaginal route for distal injuries (29).

5.3.2.6 Delayed urethroplasty

Delayed urethroplasty is the procedure of choice and the gold standard for the treatment of posterior urethral distraction defects.

Most posterior urethral distraction defects are short, and these can generally be resolved by a perineal approach anastomotic repair, provided that they are not associated with extensive haematoma-fibrosis and the bladder neck mechanism is occlusive and competent. After division of the bulbar urethra at the distal point of obliteration, mobilisation of a normal bulbar urethra to the base of the penis generally achieves 4-5 cm of elastic lengthening. This is usually sufficient to achieve a tension-free 2 cm spatulated overlap anastomosis, after bridging a gap of 2.0-2.5 cm without rerouting (24).

This technique has the advantage that associated injuries, damaged skin and tissues, and pelvic haematoma have resolved by the time it is performed. The only problem with this approach would be the length of time that the patient must have a suprapubic catheter in place before definitive treatment.

When the prostatobulbar gap is longer than 2-3 cm as a result of a high dislocation of the prostate, or when the available elongation of the mobilised urethra has been foreshortened by damage caused by a previous surgical procedure, additional procedures may be required. The following manoeuvres are carried out sequentially to gain sufficient anterior urethral mobility to bridge up to 8 cm of separation, and are referred to as the 'progressive perineal approach' (95):

- midline separation of the proximal corporal bodies;
- inferior pubectomy;
- supracorporal urethral rerouting.

In addition to its use as an initial therapy for posterior urethral distraction injuries, the progressive perineal approach can also be applied successfully to salvage procedures following failed repair.

There is a number of circumstances that might preclude successful perineal anastomotic repair as either initial or salvage therapy. These circumstances probably represent fewer than 5% of cases and are shown in Table 12 (96,97).

Table 12: Circumstances that might preclude successful perineal anastomotic repair as either initial or salvage therapy (96,97)

Circumstance	Alternative procedure
Distraction defects longer than 7-8 cm	A tubed interposition flap of penile or peri-neoscrotal skin can be used for reconstruction. This is seldom required and most patients that require the use of flap urethroplasties have previous failed repairs of posterior urethral rupture (see section 4.3.2.7).
Fistulae	These might require a combined abdominoperineal approach to secure adequate closure.
Synchronous anterior urethral stricture	The presence of anterior urethral stricture may compromise the blood supply to the bulbar urethra following division of the bulbar arteries, and these patients should be treated cautiously.
Urinary incontinence	The distal urethral sphincter mechanism could be defunctionalised by urethral distraction, so urinary continence may be maintained primarily by the proximal bladder neck sphincter. Concomitant bladder neck injury might increase incontinence, and could require an abdominoperineal procedure to allow simultaneous bladder neck and urethral reconstruction. The most common cause of bladder neck incompetence is the circumferential tethering of the uninjured bladder neck by scarring. In such cases, it is usually possible to restore functional competence of the bladder neck by mobilising it meticulously. This can be accomplished by removal of the dense haematoma-fibrosis anchoring the bladder neck to the pubis, anteriorly and laterally. Secondary rescarring is prevented by placement of a local omental flap (44, 98).

The results of various techniques are reviewed by Koraitim (66) in a personal series of 100 patients combined with a review of 771 patients from published reports. Immediate and early realignment (n = 326) was associated with rates of 53% for stricture, 5% for incontinence, and 36% for impotence. Of the patients successfully managed with immediate realignment, 42% needed subsequent instrumentation to attempt stabilisation of stricture. Urethroplasty was ultimately necessary in 33%.

Primary suturing (n = 37) was associated with rates of 49% for stricture, 21% for incontinence, and 56% for impotence. In comparison, inserting a suprapubic catheter before delayed repair (n = 508) was associated with rates of 97% for stricture, 4% for incontinence, and 19% for impotence.

The restricture rate after delayed anastomotic urethroplasty was less than 10% (28,38,43,51,55,99-102), and the risk of impotence caused by delayed urethroplasty was about 5% (37,51,55,56,65,103-105).

The gold standard remains delayed urethral repair at a minimum of 3 months after trauma, using a one-stage perineal approach.

The results obtained in children are similar to those in adults. The higher incidence of abdominal surgery simply reflects the greater propensity to damage of the bladder neck in children (105-106).

5.3.2.7 Reconstruction of failed repair of posterior urethral rupture

Restenosis after delayed urethral repair mostly occurs within 6 months. If the anastomosis has a normal calibre at 6 months, then it is extremely unlikely that the patient will develop further stricturing (38).

The principles of salvage repair are similar to those of the initial procedure. Progressive perineal anastomotic repair alone can be successful in 85% of salvage urethroplasties. If an anastomotic repair cannot be performed, a one-stage substitution urethroplasty using a pedicle island of penile skin might be possible

and could be more desirable than the final alternative, a two-stage scrotourethral inlay procedure or mesh split-thickness skin graft urethroplasty (63,107,108).

The main indications for a combined abdominoperineal surgical approach are:

- the presence of fistulous tracts to the bladder base, abdominal wall or rectum;
- peri-urethral epithelialised cavities;
- an ability to achieve the lithotomy position (97).

Restenosis to a luminal calibre of 12 French Foley catheter or smaller is required before a reduction in the urinary flow is perceived as abnormal (109). A wide calibre stricture may be observed or gently dilated. Optical urethrotomy is an alternative, particularly for a short, narrow stricture.

5.3.2.8 Delayed endoscopic optical incision

The principles of the procedure were described by Sachse in 1974 (109). A curved metal sound is passed through the suprapubic cystostomy into the blind-ended proximal urethra. The direct vision urethrotome is inserted into the urethra, and cuts are made towards the sound.

Blandy described a modification of this procedure: suprapubic passage of a cystoscope for transillumination of the thin perineal membrane and transurethral 'cutting-to-the-light' with an electrode (110). Today, the cut-to-the-light technique is sometimes carried out using C-arm fluoroscopy for stereotactic guidance. The urethral catheter is left in place for between 1 and 3 weeks, and the suprapubic drainage for an additional 2 weeks to confirm consistent voiding (111).

The results of several small series have been reported and are summarised in Table 13.

Table 13: Results of optical urethrotomy for traumatically obliterated pelvic urethra (82,112-116,118-123)

Series	Ref. no.	n	Follow-up months (range)	No. (%) requiring repeat urethrotomy	Erectile dysfunction
Gupta and Gill (1986)	112	10	15.1 (6-24)	10 (100%)	0
Chiouet et al. (1988)	113	8	43 (12-79)	7 (87.5%)	0
Marshall (1989)	114	10	n/a	10 (100%)	0
Barry (1989)	115	12	22 (1.5-85)	6 (50%)	0
DeVries and Anderson (1990)	116	4	< 4	1 (25%)	0
Kernohan et al. (1990)	118	7	35 (21-84)	7 (100%)	0
Yasuda et al. (1991)	119	17	44 (12-96)	7 (41.2%)	0
Quint and Stanisic (1993)	120	10	43 (7-108)	6 (60%)	0
El-Abd (1995)	82	284	n/a	272 (95.8%)	0
Goel et al. (1997)	121	13	17.7 (11-24)	10 (76.9%)	n/a
Levine and Wessells (2001)	122	6	60	6 (100%)	n/a
Dogra and Nabi (2002)*	123	61	30 (9-44)	11 (18%)	n/a
Total		445		354 (79.5%)	

**Laser urethrotomy*

The procedure is only indicated if the urethral defect is short, the bladder neck is competent and there is minimal displacement of the prostate and proximal bulbous urethra (116). Although immediate restoration of urethral continuity is commonly possible, failure is common. Urethral dilatation, optical urethrotomy, and transurethral resection of stricture will be needed in about 80% of patients. Most repeat urethrotomies are performed in the first year of follow-up.

It should be noted that after failure of the initial urethrotomy, alternative treatments should be

considered, as repeat urethrotomy achieves only temporary improvement (124). Urethral false passage and rectal perforation have been reported (112,116,119). Stents are not currently recommended for patients with strictures following pelvic trauma, as fibrotic tissue tends to grow though into the lumen of the stent (43,125-127).

5.4 Recommendations for treatment: algorithms

The optimal management of patients with prostatomembranous disruptions should not be thought of as delayed repair versus other types of treatment modalities. Each patient should be assessed and managed according to the initial clinical circumstances. It is impractical to suggest that all patients be managed by one single method because of the variability of each case and the severity of associated injuries. The intervention should be guided by the clinical circumstances. The following algorithms are suggested for the treatment of urethral injuries in males and females (Figures 5-7).

Figure 5: Management of posterior urethral injuries in men

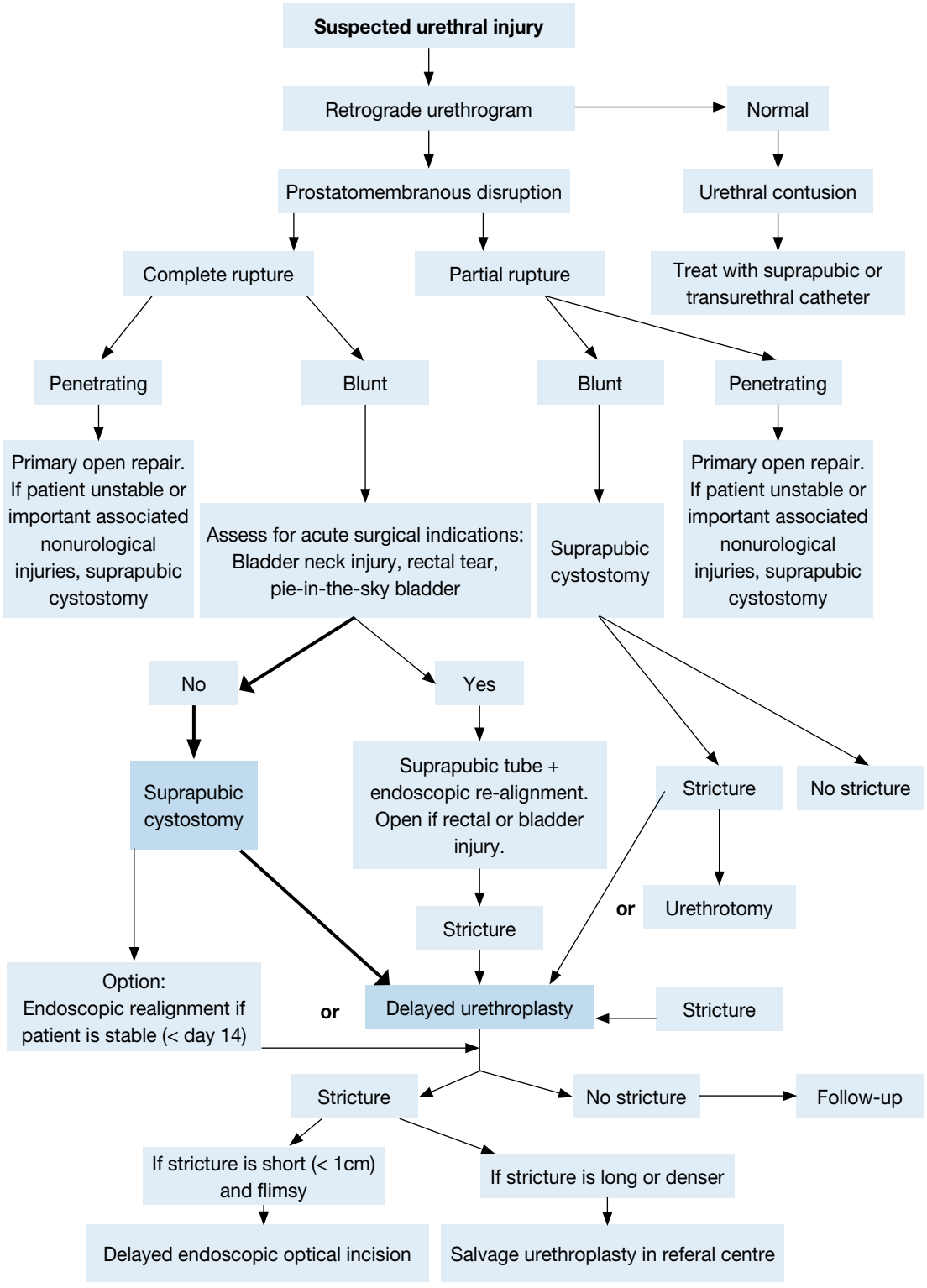


Figure 6: Management of anterior urethral injuries in men

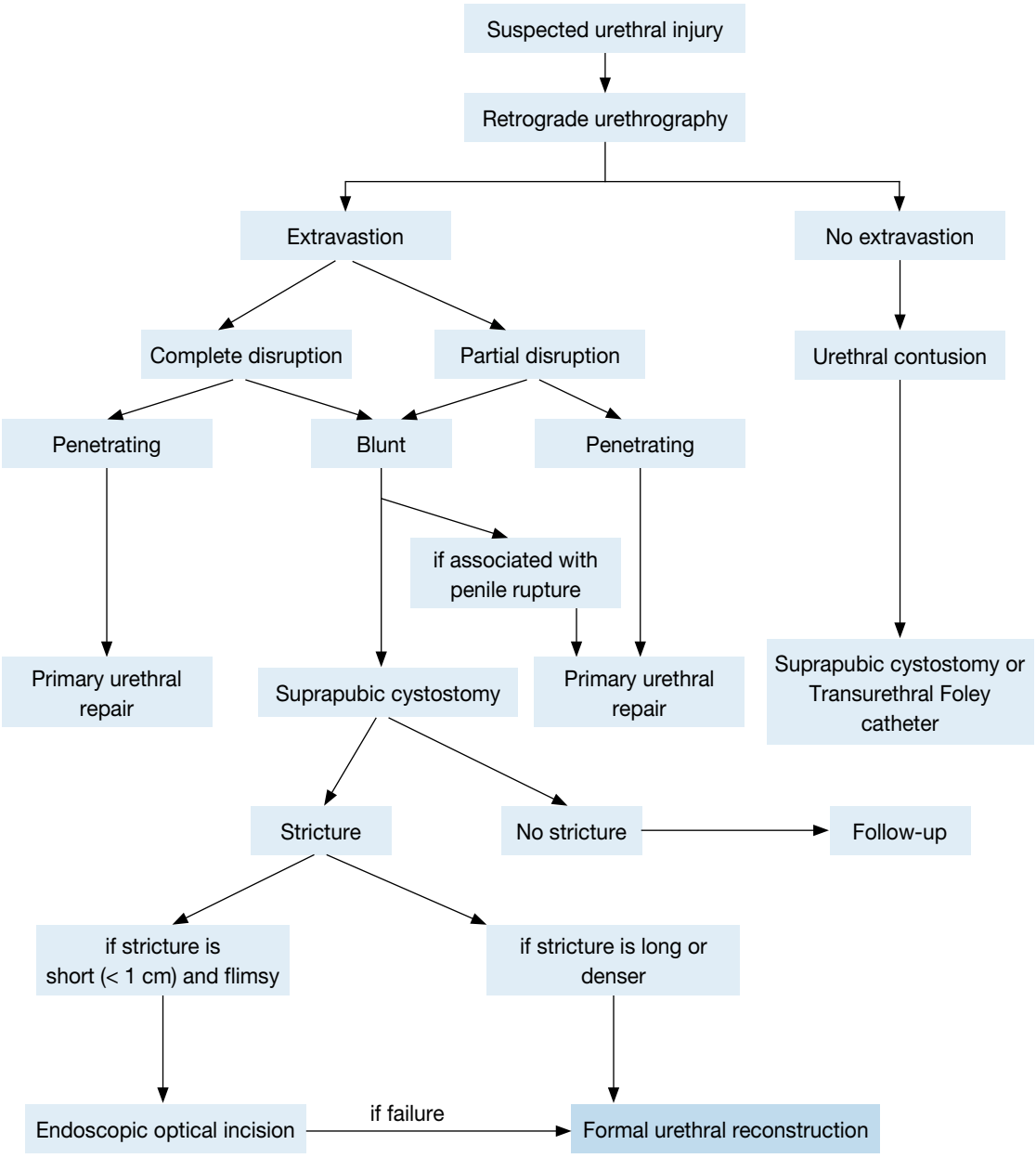
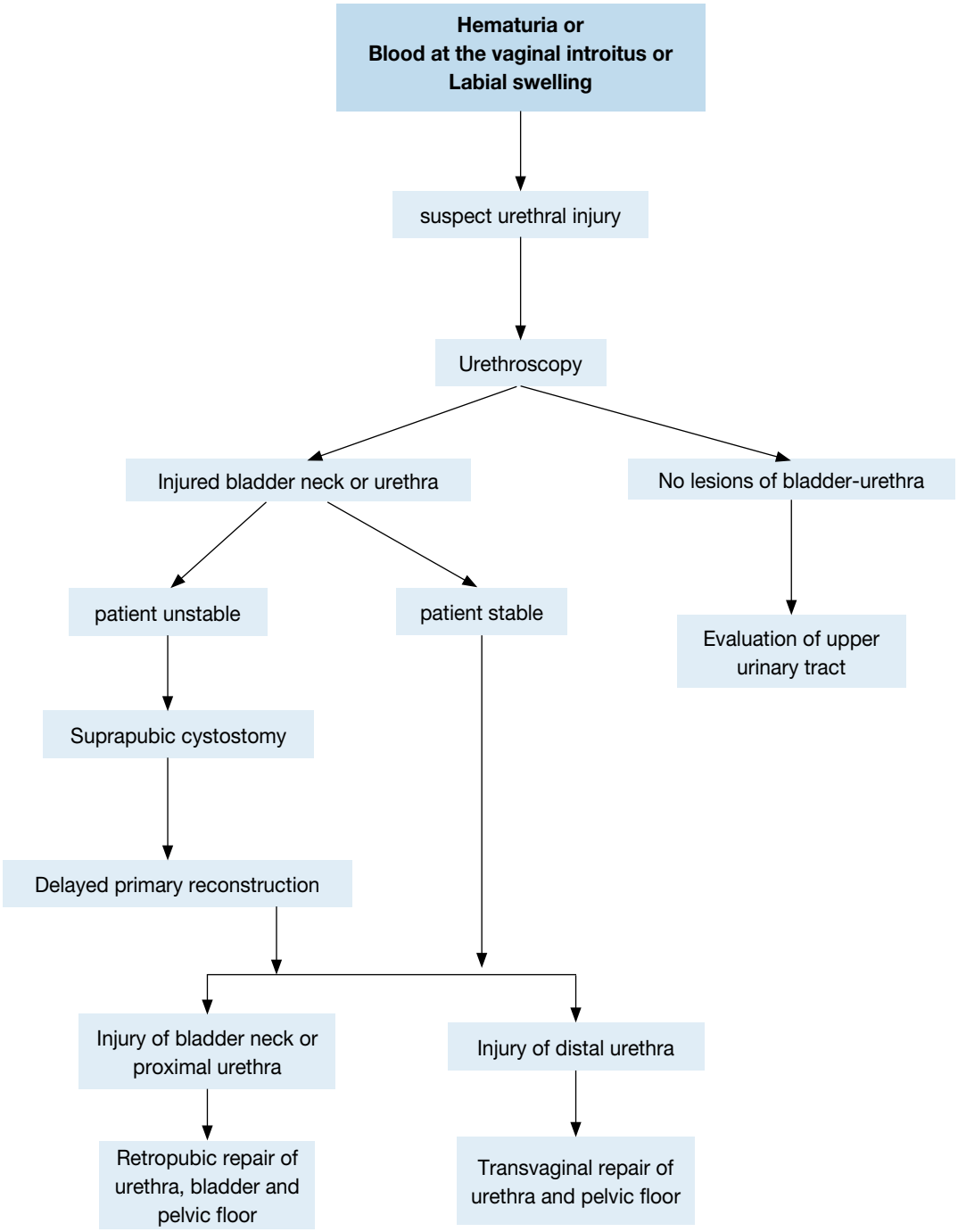


Figure 7: Management of urethral injuries in women



5.5 Iatrogenic urethral trauma

5.5.1 ***Introduction***

The most common form of iatrogenic urethral trauma is that caused by instruments. Most of the relevant urethral lesions caused by iatrogenic trauma are strictures. These strictures are of variable location and severity. They often require different management strategies (128,129).

5.5.2 ***Iatrogenic urethral trauma caused by catheterisation***

The majority of iatrogenic lesions are the result of improper or prolonged catheterisation. They are surprisingly common and account for 32% of urethral strictures. Of these, 52% affect the bulbar and/or prostatic urethra (129) (LE: 3).

Improper insertion of a urethral catheter is a preventable cause of urethral trauma in male patients (130) (LE: 4). The incidence of this type of urethral injury, especially weighed against the total number of urethral catheterisations performed in the same period of time, is difficult to evaluate, and there have been no statistical

data published on this matter so far. However, the risk to an individual patient of a urethral injury caused by improper catheterisation during a hospital stay has been estimated to be 3.2:1000 (129).

Prolonged catheterisation contributes to stricture formation (129). The anterior urethra is primarily affected. The bladder neck is rarely affected (131) (LE: 1b). Iatrogenic urethral injuries can be prevented by the implementation of educational programmes for medical practitioners that are designed to decrease the exposure of patients to catheter-related risk factors (such as prolonged catheterisation and improper catheterisation) (132) (LE: 2b).

*5.5.3 **Iatrogenic urethral trauma caused by transurethral surgery***

Transurethral procedures, especially transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP), are the second most common cause of iatrogenic urethral lesions. Electrical dispersion generated by unipolar electric current and direct urethral injury related to the diameter of the instruments used are factors (133) (LE: 1b). Risk factors include:

- large prostate volume;
- the presence of prostate cancer;
- inexperienced surgeon.

Another cause of stricture formation following transurethral procedures is the form of post-operative urinary drainage used. Urethral catheterisation following transurethral procedures such as TURP, and general post-operative urinary drainage with silicone Foley catheters, both result in a higher incidence of stricture development (134) (LE: 1b).

*5.5.4 **Iatrogenic urethral trauma related to surgical prostate cancer treatment***

A major source of iatrogenic urethral trauma is the treatment of prostate cancer. Urethral stricture after prostate cancer treatment can occur anywhere from the bladder neck to the meatus. The rate of bladder neck contracture after radical prostatectomy lies between 0.5% and 32%, varying according to the definition of stricture and individual practice (135,136) (LE: 2a).

The incidence of urethral stricture after multiple forms of prostate cancer therapy is determined from the CaPSURE database, a registry of men with biopsy-proven prostate cancer. The incidence varies from 1.1-8.4%, depending on the form of cancer treatment. The risk is highest after radical prostatectomy or brachytherapy plus external beam radiotherapy. Stricture formation after prostatectomy occurred within the first 24 months, whereas onset was delayed after radiation therapy. In a multivariate analysis, the type of primary treatment, age and obesity were found to be significant predictors for stricture development (135) (LE: 2b).

New surgical methods, such as robot-assisted prostatectomy can also cause iatrogenic trauma. In a recent study, bladder neck contracture was found in 2% of these patients. This correlates to the stricture rate found after conventional radical prostatectomy (137) (LE: 2b).

*5.5.5 **Iatrogenic urethral trauma related to radiotherapy for prostate cancer treatment***

Prostate brachytherapy (BT), external beam radiotherapy (EBRT), or a combination of the two are options for selected patients as the primary treatment for prostate cancer. Any of these options can cause urinary fistulas, with an incidence of 0.3-3% for patients after BT, and 0.0-0.6% of those treated with EBRT. Most fistulas will involve the rectum (138,139) (LE: 3).

*5.5.6 **Iatrogenic urethral trauma related to major abdominal surgery***

Iatrogenic injuries to the urethra can occur after abdominal and pelvic procedures. Pre-procedure bladder catheterisation must be performed to prevent or to reveal these complications (140) (LE: 2).

*5.5.7 **Symptoms of iatrogenic urethral injury***

The symptoms of urethral injury caused by improper catheterisation or use of instruments are:

- penile and/or perineal pain (100%);
- urethral bleeding (86%) (4) (LE: 2b).

Failure accurately to diagnose and treat urethral injuries may lead to significant long-term sequelae (141).

*5.5.8 **Diagnosis***

The diagnostic investigation of iatrogenic urethral trauma does not differ from that of other urethral injuries.

*5.5.9 **Treatment***

Temporary urethral stenting with an indwelling catheter is a good conventional therapeutic option for treating

acute false passage (142). The placement of a urethral catheter may be impossible, and endoscopic assistance or even placement of a suprapubic tube might be necessary (143) (LE: 3).

Iatrogenic prostatic urethral strictures after radical prostatectomy can be successfully treated by endoscopic management, either by incision or resection. Failure rates can be high, and repeat therapy might be necessary. The alternative is an indwelling catheter, urethral dilatation or open procedures. Open procedures might be required to salvage recurrent cases, but have increased morbidity (144) (LE: 2b).

Conservative treatment in patients with urethral lesions caused by radiotherapy is often ineffective. Major surgery or lifelong suprapubic diversion might ultimately be necessary (138,139) (LE: 3).

Table 14 details the most common causes of stricture, and Figures 8-10 show flow diagrams for the treatment of stricture after urethral injury due to improper insertion of a catheter, radical prostatectomy, and major abdominal surgery or radiotherapy, respectively.

Table 14 Aetiology of stricture

Causes of stricture
Improper catheterisation
Transurethral surgery
Prostate cancer surgery
Prostate cancer radiotherapy
Abdominal and pelvic surgery

5.5.10 Recommendations for treatment: algorithms

Figure 8: Flow diagram of treatment for iatrogenic urethral injury caused by improper insertion of a catheter

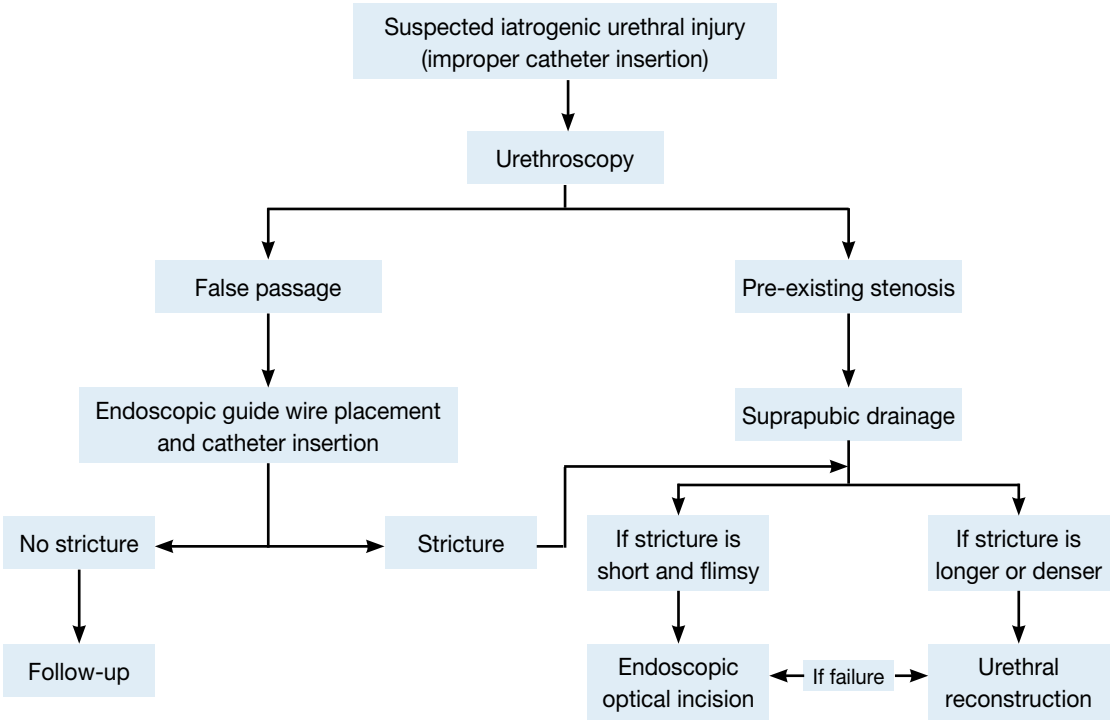


Figure 9: Flow diagram of treatment for stricture after radical prostatectomy

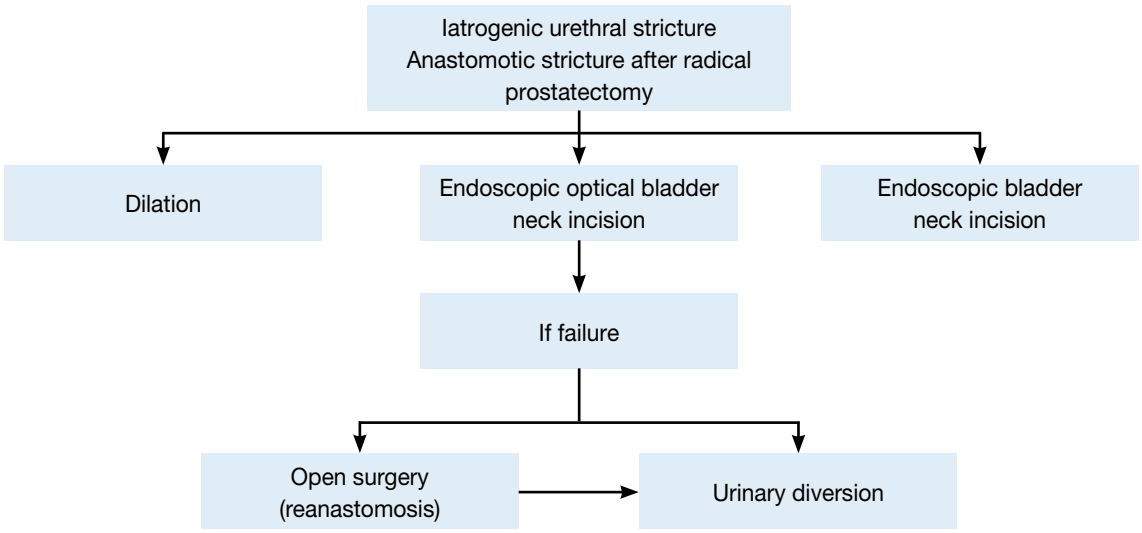
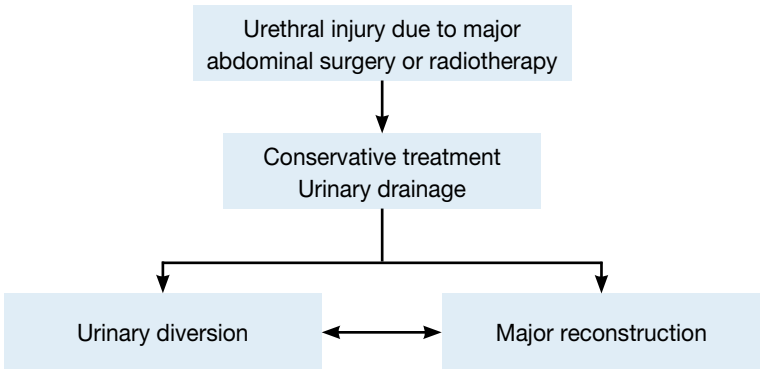


Figure 10: Flow diagram for treatment for stricture after major abdominal surgery or radiotherapy



5.5.11 ***Recommendations***

	GR
Avoid traumatic catheterisation.	A
Keep the length of time an indwelling catheter is present to a minimum.	B
Major abdominal and pelvic surgery should be undertaken with a catheter inserted.	B

5.6 References

1. Sevitt S. Fatal road accidents. Injuries, complications, and causes of death in 250 subjects. Br J Surg 1968 Jul;55(7):481-505. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5663432
2. Koraitim MM, Marzouk ME, Atta MA, et al. Risk factors and mechanism of urethral injury in pelvic fractures. Br J Urol 1996 Jun;77(6):876-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8705225
3. Dixon CM. Diagnosis and acute management of posterior urethral disruptions, In: McAninch JW (ed). *Traumatic and reconstructive urology*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1996, pp. 347-355.
4. Perry MO, Husmann DA. Urethral injuries in female subjects following pelvic fractures. J Urol 1992 Jan;147(1):139-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1729508
5. Colapinto V. Trauma to the pelvis: urethral injury. Clin Ortho Rel Res 1980;Sep(151):46-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7418323

6. Webster GD, Mathes GL, Selli C. Prostatomembranous urethral injuries: a review of the literature and a rational approach to their management. J Urol 1983 Nov;130(5):898-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6355512
7. Carlin BI, Resnick MI. Indications and techniques for urologic evaluation of the trauma patient with suspected urologic injury. Semin Urol 1995 Feb;13(1):9-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7597359
8. Palmer JK, Benson GS, Corriere JN Jr. Diagnosis and initial management of urological injuries associated with 200 consecutive pelvic fractures. J Urol 1983 Oct;130(4):712-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6887403
9. Lowe MA, Mason JT, Luna GK, et al. Risk factors for urethral injuries in men with traumatic pelvic fractures. J Urol 1988 Sep;140(3):506-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3411661
10. Clark SS, Prudencio RF. Lower urinary tract injuries associated with pelvic fractures. Diagnosis and management. Surg Clin North Am. 1972 Feb;52(1):183-201. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5013219
11. Pokorny M, Pontes JE, Pierce JM Jr. Urological injuries associated with pelvic trauma. J Urol 1979 Apr;121(4):455-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/439217
12. Hemal AK, Dorairajan LN, Gupta NP. Posttraumatic complete and partial loss of urethra with pelvic fracture in girls: an appraisal of management. J Urol 2000 Jan;163(1):282-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604377
13. Colapinto V, McCallum RW. Injury to the male posterior urethra in fractured pelvis: a new classification. J Urol 1977 Oct;118(4):575-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/916052
14. Dixon CM, Hricak H, McAninch JW. Magnetic resonance imaging of traumatic posterior urethral defects and pelvic crush injuries. J Urol 1992 Oct;148(4):1162-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1404629
15. Mouraviev VB, Santucci RA. Cadaveric anatomy of pelvic fracture urethral distraction injury: most injuries are distal to the external urinary sphincter. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):869-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711300
16. Turner-Warwick R. Observations on the treatment of traumatic urethral injuries and the value of the fenestrated urethral catheter. Br J Surg 1973 Oct;60(10):775-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4748381
17. Basta AM, Blackmore CC, Wessells H. Predicting urethral injury from pelvic fracture patterns in male patients with blunt trauma. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2): 571-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov./pubmed/17222635
18. Pennal GF, Tile M, Waddell JP, et al. Pelvic disruption: assessment and classification. Clin Orthop Relat Res.1980 Sep;(151):12-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7418295
19. Conolly WB, Hedberg EA. Observations on fractures of the pelvis. J Trauma 1969 Feb;9(2):104-111. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5763326
20. Flaherty JJ, Kelley R, Burnett B, et al. Relationship of pelvic bone fracture patterns to injuries of urethra and bladder. J Urol 1968 Mar;99(3):297-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5689611
21. Devine PC, Devine CJ Jr. Posterior urethral injuries associated with pelvic fractures. Urology 1982 Nov;20(5):467-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7147524
22. Zorn G. [Fractures of the pelvis with urethral injuries, their treatment and results.] Bruns Beitr Klin Chir 1960;201:147-55. [Article In German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13788802
23. Siegel JH, Dalal SA, Burgess AR, et al. Pattern of organ injuries in pelvic fracture: impact force implications for survival and death in motor vehicle injuries. Accid Anal Prev 1990 Oct;22(5):457-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2222708
24. Chapple CR, Png D. Contemporary management of urethral trauma and the post-traumatic stricture. Curr Opin Urol 1999 May;9(3):253-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10726100
25. Moore EE, Cogbill TH, Jurkovich GJ, et al. Organ injury scaling. III: Chest wall, abdominal vascular, ureter, bladder, and urethra. J Trauma 1992 Sep;33(3):337-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1404499

26. Goldman SM, Sandler CM, Corriere JN Jr, et al. Blunt urethral trauma: a unified, anatomical mechanical classification. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):85-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976222
27. Al-Rifaei M, Eid NI, Al-Rifaei A. Urethral injury secondary to pelvic fracture: anatomical and functional classification. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2001 Jun;35(3):205-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11487073
28. Koraitim MM. Posttraumatic posterior urethral strictures in children: a 20-year experience. J Urol 1997 Feb;157(2):641-5 . http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996388
29. Koraitim MM. Pelvic fracture urethral injuries: the unresolved controversy. J Urol 1999 May;161(5): 1433-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210368
30. Nicolaisen GS, Melamud A, Williams RD, et al. Rupture of the corpus cavernosum: surgical management. J Urol 1983 Nov;130(5):917-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6632099
31. Gomez RG, Castanheira AC, McAninch JW. Gunshot wounds to the male external genitalia. J Urol 1993 Oct;150(4):1147-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8371375
32. Pontes JE, Pierce JM Jr. Anterior urethral injuries: four years of experience at the Detroit General Hospital. J Urol 1978 Nov;120(5):563-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/568672
33. Armenakas NA, McAninch JW. Acute anterior urethral injuries: diagnosis and initial management. In: McAninch JW (ed). *Traumatic and reconstructive urology*. Philadelphia, PA:WB Saunders, 1996, pp. 543-550.
34. Armenakas NA, McAninch JW. A uniform approach to urethroplasty. Probl Urol 1994;8(2):254-68.
35. Lim PH, Chng HC. Initial management of acute urethral injuries. Br J Urol 1989 Aug;64(2):165-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2765784
36. McAninch JW. Traumatic injuries to the urethra. J Trauma 1981 Apr;21(4):291-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7218395
37. Venn SN, Mundy AR. Immediate management of major trauma to the urinary tract. Eur Urol 1998;33 (Curric Urol 3.1):1-8.
38. Mundy AR. Urethroplasty for posterior urethral strictures. Br J Urol 1996 Aug;78(2):243-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8813921
39. Corriere JN Jr, Harris JD. The management of urological injuries in blunt pelvic trauma. Radiol Clin North Am 1981 Mar;19(1):187-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7194489
40. Antoci JP, Schiff M Jr. Bladder and urethral injuries in patients with pelvic fractures. J Urol 1982 Jul;128(1):25-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7109063
41. Fallon B, Wendt JC, Hawtrey CE. Urological injury and assessment in patients with fractured pelvis. J Urol 1984 Apr;131(4):712-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6708187
42. Koraitim MM and Reda IS. Role of magnetic resonance imaging in assessment of posterior urethral distraction defects. Urology 2007 Sep;70:403-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov./pubmed/17905082
43. Jordan GH. Management of membranous urethral distraction injuries via the perineal approach. In: McAninch JW (ed). *Traumatic and reconstructive urology*. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders, 1996, pp. 393-409.
44. Iselin CE, Webster GD. The significance of the open bladder neck associated with pelvic fracture urethral distraction defects. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):347-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411036
45. Kane NM, Francis IR, Ellis JH. The value of CT in the detection of bladder and posterior urethral injuries. Am J Roentgenol 1989 Dec;153(6):1243-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2816642
46. McAninch JW. Urethral injuries in female subjects following pelvic fractures (editorial comment). J Urol 1992;147(1):143.
47. Jackson DH, Williams JL. Urethral injury: a retrospective study. Br J Urol 1974 Dec;46(6):665-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4451833

48. Glassberg KI, Tolete-Velcek F, Ashley R, et al. Partial tears of prostatomembranous urethra in children. Urology 1979 May;13(5):500-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/442372
49. Cass AS, Godec CJ. Urethral injury due to external trauma. Urology 1978 Jun;11(6):607-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/675928
50. Husmann DA, Boone TB, Wilson WT. Management of low velocity gunshot wounds to the anterior urethra: the role of primary repair versus urinary diversion alone. J Urol 1993 Jul;150(1):70-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8510278
51. Martínez-Piñeiro JA, Cárcamo P, García Matres MJ, et al. Excision and anastomotic repair for urethral stricture disease: experience with 150 cases. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):433-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412802
52. Gibson GR. Impotence following fractured pelvis and ruptured urethra. Br J Urol 1970 Feb;42(1):86-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5435706
53. King J. Impotence after fractures of the pelvis. J Bone Joint Surg Am 1975 Dec;57(8):1107-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1201996
54. Dhabuwala CB, Hamid S, Katsikas DM, et al. Impotence following delayed repair of prostatomembranous urethral disruption. J Urol 1990 Sep;144(3):677-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2388326
55. Corriere JN. 1-Stage delayed bulboprostatic anastomotic repair of posterior urethral rupture: 60 patients with 1-year followup. J Urol 2001 Feb;165(2):404-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176383
56. Webster GD. Impotence following delayed repair of prostatomembranous urethral disruption (editorial comment). J Urol 1990;144(3):678.
57. Barbagli G, Selli C, Stomaci N, et al. Urethral trauma: radiological aspects and treatment options. J Trauma 1987 Mar;27(3):256-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3560267
58. Mark SD, Keane TE, Vandemark RM, et al. Impotence following pelvic fracture urethral injury: incidence, aetiology and management. Br J Urol 1995 Jan;75(1):62-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7850299
59. Shenfeld OZ, Kiselgorf D, Gofrit ON, et al. The incidence and causes of erectile dysfunction after pelvic fractures associated with posterior urethral disruption. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2173-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771742
60. Armenakas NA, McAninch JW, Lue TF, et al. Posttraumatic impotence: magnetic resonance imaging and duplex ultrasound in diagnosis and management. J Urol 1993 May;149(5 Pt 2):1272-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8479013
61. Turner-Warwick R. Prevention of complications resulting from pelvic fracture urethral injuries – and from their surgical management. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):335-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652859
62. Mundy AR. The role of delayed primary repair in the acute management of pelvic fracture injuries of the urethra. Br J Urol 1991 Sep;68(3):273-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1913069
63. Onen A, Oztürk H, Kaya M, et al. Long-term outcome of posterior urethral rupture in boys: a comparison of different surgical modalities. Urology 2005 Jun;65(6):1202-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov./pubmed/15922424
64. Berman AT, Tom L. Traumatic separation of the pubic symphysis with associated fatal rectal tear: a case report and analysis of mechanism of injury. J Trauma 1974 Dec;14(12):1060-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4431071
65. Muhlbauer S, Bard RH. Early definitive urologic management of patient with crush pelvic trauma and deep perineal laceration. Urology 1980 Jan;15(1):56-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7352346
66. Koraitim MM. Pelvic fracture urethral injuries: evaluation of various methods of management. J Urol 1996 Oct;156(4):1288-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8808856
67. Coffield KS, Weems WL. Experience with management of posterior urethral injury associated with pelvic fracture. J Urol 1977 Jun;117(6):722-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/559782
68. Follis HW, Koch MO, McDougal WS. Immediate management of prostatomembranous urethral disruptions. J Urol 1992 May;147(5):1259-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1569663

69. Herschorn S, Thijssen A, Radomski SB. The value of immediate or early catheterization of the traumatized posterior urethra. J Urol 1992 Nov;148(5):1428-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433542
70. Porter JR, Takayama TK, Defalco AJ. Traumatic posterior urethral injury and early realignment using magnetic urethral catheters. J Urol 1997 Aug;158(2):425-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9224316
71. Guille F, Cipolla B, Leveque JM, et al. Early endoscopic realignment of complete traumatic rupture of the posterior urethra. Br J Urol 1991 Aug;68(2):178-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1884146
72. Gelbard MK, Heyman AM, Weintraub P. A technique for immediate realignment and catheterization of the disrupted prostatomembranous urethra. J Urol 1989 Jul;142(1):52-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2733109
73. Turner-Warwick R. Complex traumatic posterior urethral strictures. J Urol 1977 Oct;118(4):564-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/916051
74. Mouraviev VB, Coburn M, Santucci RA. The treatment of posterior urethral disruption associated with pelvic fractures: comparative experience of early realignment versus delayed urethroplasty. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):873-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711301
75. Ragde H, McInnes GF. Transpubic repair of the severed prostatomembranous urethra. J Urol 1969 Mar;101(3):335-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5765881
76. McRoberts JW, Ragde H. The severed canine posterior urethra: a study of two distinct methods of repair. J Urol 1970 Nov;104(5):724-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4922399
77. Gibson GR. Urological management and complications of fractured pelvis and ruptured urethra. J Urol 1974 Mar;111(3):353-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4813576
78. Crassweller PO, Farrow GA, Robson CJ, et al. Traumatic rupture of the supramembranous urethra. J Urol 1977 Nov;118(5):770-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/562426
79. Malek RS, O'Dea MJ, Kelalis PP. Management of ruptured posterior urethra in childhood. J Urol 1977 Jan;117(1):105-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/830957
80. Cohen JK, Berg G, Carl GH, et al. Primary endoscopic realignment following posterior urethral disruption. J Urol 1991 Dec;146(6):1548-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1942338
81. Melekos MD, Pantazakos A, Daouaher H, et al. Primary endourologic re-establishment of urethral continuity after disruption of prostatomembranous urethra. Urology 1992 Feb;39(2):135-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1736505
82. el-Abd SA. Endoscopic treatment of posttraumatic urethral obliteration: experience in 396 patients. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):67-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966794
83. Gheiler EL, Frontera JR. Immediate primary realignment of prostatomembranous urethral disruptions using endourologic techniques. Urology 1997 Apr;49(4):596-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9111631
84. Londergan TA, Gundersen LH, van Every MJ. Early fluoroscopic realignment for traumatic urethral injuries. Urology 1997 Jan;49(1):101-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9000194
85. Elliott DS, Barrett DM. Long-term followup and evaluation of primary realignment of posterior urethral disruptions. J Urol 1997 Mar;157(3):814-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9072573
86. Rehman J, Samadi D, Ricciardi R Jr, et al. Early endoscopic realignment as primary therapy for complete posterior urethral disruptions. J Endourol 1998 Jun;12(3):283-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9658304
87. Sahin H, Bircan MK, Akay AF, et al. Endoscopic treatment of complete posterior urethral obliteration. Acta Urol Belg 1998 Dec;66(4):21-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10083629
88. Tahan H, Randrianantenaina A, Michel F. [Treatment of complete rupture of the posterior urethra by endoscopic realignment] Prog Urol 1999 Jun;9(3):489-5. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10434323

89. Jepson BR, Boullier JA, Moore RG, et al. Traumatic posterior urethral injury and early primary endoscopic realignment: evaluation of long-term follow-up. Urology 1999 Jun;53(6):1205-10). http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10434323
90. Asci R, Sarikaya S, Büyükalpelli R, et al. Voiding and sexual dysfunctions after pelvic fracture urethral injuries treated with either initial cystostomy and delayed urethroplasty or immediate primary urethral realignment. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1999 Aug;33(4):228-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10515084
91. Ying-Hao S, Chuan-Liang X, Xu G, et al. Urethroscopic realignment of ruptured bulbar urethra. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1543-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025700
92. Moudouni SM, Patard JJ, Manunta A, et al. Early endoscopic realignment of post-traumatic posterior urethral disruption. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):628-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306365
93. Weems WL. Management of genitourinary injuries in patients with pelvic fractures. Ann Surg 1979 Jun;189(6):717-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/453943
94. Mark SD, Webster GD. Reconstruction of the failed repair of posterior urethral rupture, in McAninch JW (ed.). Traumatic and reconstructive urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1996, pp. 439-451.
95. Webster GD, Ramon J. Repair of pelvic fracture posterior urethral defects using an elaborated perineal approach: experience with 74 cases. J Urol 1991 Apr;145(4):744-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2005693
96. Webster GD, Ramon J, Kreder KJ. Salvage posterior urethroplasty after failed initial repair of pelvic fracture membranous urethral defects. J Urol 1990 Dec;144(6):1370-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2231930
97. MacDiarmid S, Rosario D, Chapple CR. The importance of accurate assessment and conservative management of the open bladder neck in patients with post-pelvic fracture membranous urethral distraction defects. Br J Urol 1995 Jan;75(1):65-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7850300
98. Mundy AR. Results and complications of urethroplasty and its future. Br J Urol 1993 Mar;71(3):322-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8477319
99. Santucci RA, Mario LA, McAninch JW. Anastomotic urethroplasty for bulbar urethral stricture: analysis of 168 patients. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1715-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912394
100. Zinman LM. The management of traumatic posterior urethral distraction defects. J Urol 1997 Feb; 157(2):511-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996344
101. Corriere JN Jr, Rudy DC, Benson GS. Voiding and erectile function after delayed one-stage repair of posterior urethral disruption in 50 men with fractured pelvis. J Trauma 1994 Oct;37(4):587-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7932889
102. Flynn BJ, Delvecchio FC, Webster GD. Perineal repair of pelvic fracture urethral distraction defects: experience in 120 patients during the last 10 years. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1877-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532797
103. Fiala R, Zátura F, Vrtal R. [Personal experience with treatment of posttraumatic urethral distraction defects.] Acta Chir Orthop Traumatol Cech 2001;68(2):99-104. [Article in Czech] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11706724
104. Koraitim MM. The lessons of 145 posttraumatic posterior urethral strictures treated in 17 years. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):63-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966793
105. Podestá ML. Use of the perineal and perineal-abdominal (transpubic) approach for delayed management of pelvic fracture urethral obliterative strictures in children: long-term outcome. J Urol 1998 Jul;160(1):160-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9628640
106. Hafez AT, El-Assmy A, Sarhan O, et al. Perineal anastomotic urethroplasty for managing post-traumatic urethral strictures in children: the long-term outcome. BJU Int. 2005 Feb;95(3):403-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15679803
107. Wadhwa SN, Chahal R, Hemal AK, et al. Management of obliterative posttraumatic posterior urethral strictures after failed initial urethroplasty. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1898-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598483

108. Cooperberg MR, McAninch JW, Alsikafi NF, et al.Urethral reconstruction for traumatic posterior urethral disruption: outcomes of a 25-year experience. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):2006-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov./pubmed/17869302
109. Sachse H. Zur behandlung der Harnrohrenstriktur: Die transuretrale schlitzung unter Sicht mit scharfem Schinitt. Fortschr Med 1974 Jan;92:12-15. [Article in German]
110. Blandy JP. Urethral stricture. Postgrad Med J 1980 Jun;56(656):383-418. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6997851
111. Lieberman SF, Barry JM. Retreat from transpubic urethroplasty for obliterated membranous urethral strictures. J Urol 1982 Aug;128(2):379-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7109114
112. Gupta NP, Gill IS. Core-through optical internal urethrotomy in management of impassable traumatic posterior urethral strictures. J Urol 1986 Nov;136(5):1018-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3773060
113. Chiou RK, Gonzalez R, Ortlip S, et al. Endoscopic treatment of posterior urethral obliteration: long-term followup and comparison with transpubic urethroplasty. J Urol 1988 Sep;140(3):508-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3411662
114. Marshall FF. Endoscopic reconstruction of traumatic urethral transections. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):313-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2711549
115. Barry JM. Visual urethrotomy in the management of the obliterated membranous urethra. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):319-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2711550
116. deVries CR, Anderson RU. Endoscopic urethroplasty: an improved technique. J Urol 1990 Jun;143(6): 1225-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342187
117. Leonard MP, Emtage J, Perez R, et al. Endoscopic management of urethral stricture: 'cut to the light' procedure. Urology 1990 Feb;35(2):117-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2305533
118. Kernohan RM, Anwar KK, Johnston SR. Complete urethral stricture of the membranous urethra: a different perspective. Br J Urol 1990 Jan;65(1):51-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2310932
119. Yasuda T, Yamanishi T, Isaka S, et al. Endoscopic re-establishment of membranous urethral disruption. J Urol 1991 May;145(5):977-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2016813
120. Quint HJ, Stanisic TH. Above and below delayed endoscopic treatment of traumatic posterior urethral disruptions. J Urol 1993 Mar;149(3):484-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8437251
121. Goel MC, Kumar M, Kapoor R. Endoscopic management of traumatic posterior urethral stricture: early results and followup. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):95-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976224
122. Levine J, Wessells H. Comparison of open and endoscopic treatment of posttraumatic posterior urethral strictures. World J Surg 2001 Dec;25(12):1597-601. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11775198
123. Dogra PN, Nabi G. Core-through urethrotomy using the neodynium: YAG laser for obliterative urethral strictures after traumatic urethral disruption and/or distraction defects: long-term outcome. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2Pt1):543-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792915
124. Pansadoro V, Emiliozzi P. Internal urethrotomy in the management of anterior urethral strictures: longterm followup. J Urol 1996 Jul;156(1):73-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648841
125. Williams G. Stents in the lower urinary tract. Am Urol Assoc Update Ser 1993;12:26.
126. Milroy EJ, Chapple C, Eldin A, et al. A new treatment for urethral strictures: a permanently implanted urethral stent. J Urol 1989 May;141(5):1120-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2709498
127. Baert L, Verhamme L, Van Poppel H, et al. Long-term consequences of urethral stents. J Urol 1993 Sep;150(3):853-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8345599
128. Jordan GH, Schlossberg SM. Surgery of the penis and urethra. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Vaughan ED Jr., Wein AJ (eds). Campbell's Urology. 8th ed. Philadephia, PA: WB Saunders, 2002; pp. 3886-3952.

129. Fenton AS, Morey AF, Aviles R, et al. Anterior urethral stricture: etiology and characteristics. Urology 2005 Jun;65(6):1055-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15913734
130. Buddha S. Complication of urethral catheterisation. Lancet 2005 Mar;365(9462):909.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15752537
131. Hammarsten J, Lindqvist K. Suprapubic catheter following transurethral resection of the prostate: a way to decrease the number of urethral strictures and improve the outcome of operations. J Urol 1992 Mar;147(3):648-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538447
132. Kashefi C, Messer K, Barden R, et al. Incidence and prevention of iatrogenic urethral injuries: J Urol 2008 Jun;179(6):2254-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18423712
133. Vicente J, Rosales A, Montlleó M, et al. Value of electrical dispersion as a cause of urethral stenosis after endoscopic surgery. Eur Urol 1992;21(4):280-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1459149
134. Hammarsten J, Lindqvist K, Sunzel H. Urethral strictures following transurethral resection of the prostate. The role of the catheter. Br J Urol 1989 Apr;63(4):397-400.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2713622
135. Elliott SP, Meng MV, Elkin EP, et al; CaPSURE investigators. Incidence of urethral stricture after primary treatment for prostate cancer: data from CaPSURE. J Urol 2007 Aug;178(2):529-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17570425
136. Park R, Martin S, Goldberg JD, et al. Anastomotic strictures following radical prostatectomy: insights into incidence, effectiveness of intervention, effect on continence, and factors predisposing to occurrence. Urology 2001 Apr;57(4):742-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11306394
137. Msezane LP, Reynolds WS, Gofrit ON, et al. Bladder neck contracture after robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy: evaluation of incidence and risk factors and impact on urinary function. J Endourol 2008 Jan;22(1):97-104.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18326071
138. Chrouser KL, Leibovich BC, Sweat SD, et al. Urinary fistulas following external radiation or permanent brachytherapy for the treatment of prostate cancer. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):1953-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879789
139. Marguet C, Raj GV, Brashears JH, et al. Rectourethral fistula after combination radiotherapy for prostate cancer. Urology 2007 May;69(5):898-901.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482930
140. Polat O, Gül O, Aksoy Y, et al. Iatrogenic injuries to ureter, bladder and urethra during abdominal and pelvic operations. Int Urol Nephrol 1997;29(1):13-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9203032
141. Hadjizacharia P, Inaba K, Teixeira PG, et al. Evaluation of immediate endoscopic realignment as a treatment modality for traumatic urethral injuries. J Trauma 2008 Jun;64(6):1443-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18545107
142. Gökalp A, Yildirim I, Aydur E, et al. How to manage acute urethral false passage due to intermittent catheterization in spinal cord injured patients who refused insertion of an indwelling catheter. J Urol 2003 Jan;169(1):203-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478136
143. Maheshwari PN, Shah HN. Immediate endoscopic management of complete iatrogenic anterior urethral injuries: a case series with long-term results. BMC Urol 2005 Nov;5:13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16281970
144. Pansadoro V, Emiliozzi P. Iatrogenic prostatic urethral strictures: classification and endoscopic treatment. Urology 1999 Apr;53(4):784-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10197857

6. GENITAL TRAUMA

6.1 Background

Traumatic injuries to the genitourinary tract are seen in 2-10% of patients admitted to hospitals (1-5). Of these injuries, between one-third and two-thirds of cases are associated with injuries to the external genitalia (1). The

incidence of genital trauma is higher in men than in women, not only because of anatomical differences but also due to increased exposure to violence, the performance of aggressive sports, and a higher incidence of motor vehicle accidents. In addition, an increase in domestic violence has led to an increase in gunshot and stab wounds over the last several years (6-9). Approximately 35% of all gunshot wounds are affiliated with genital injuries (10).

Genitourinary trauma is seen in all age groups, most frequently in males between 15-40 years. However, 5% of patients are less than 10 years old (10). Genitourinary trauma is commonly caused by blunt injuries (80%) but the risk of associated injuries to neighbouring organs (bladder, urethra, vagina, rectum, bowel) after blunt trauma is higher in females than in males.

Penetrating external genital trauma is seen in about 20% with 40-60% of all penetrating genitourinary lesions involving the external genitalia (11-13).

In men, blunt genital trauma frequently occurs unilaterally. Only 1% present as bilateral scrotal or testicular injuries (10). Penetrating scrotal injuries affect both testes in 30% of cases (10,14). In both genders, penetrating genital injuries occur with other associated injuries in 70% of patients.

The accurate diagnosis and treatment of patients with penetrating injuries are of utmost importance.

However, it is essential that physicians and nurses treating trauma patients are aware of an increased risk of hepatitis B and/or C infection in this cohort (7). Recently, a 38% infection rate with hepatitis B and/or C was reported in males with penetrating gunshot or stab wounds to the external genitalia (7). This was significantly higher compared to normal population, and exposes emergency staff to an increased risk.

6.2 Pathophysiology

Proper management of genital trauma requires information about the accident, involved persons, animals, vehicles, and weapons order to estimate the injury and potential risk of associated lesions.

6.2.1 ***Blunt trauma***

In males, a direct blow to the erect penis may cause penile fracture. Usually the penis slips out of the vagina and strikes against the symphysis pubis or perineum. This most frequently (60%) occurs during consensual intercourse (15). Penile fracture is caused by rupture of the cavernosal tunica albuginea, and may be associated with subcutaneous haematoma, and lesions of the corpus spongiosum or urethra in 10-22% (16,17).

Due to the thickness of the tunica albuginea in the flaccid state (approximately 2 mm), blunt trauma to the flaccid penis does not usually cause tearing of the tunica. In these cases, only subcutaneous haematoma with intact tunica albuginea may be seen.

Blunt trauma to the scrotum can cause testicular dislocation, testicular rupture and/or subcutaneous scrotal haematoma. Traumatic dislocation of the testicle occurs rarely. It is most common in victims of motor vehicle accidents or auto-pedestrian accidents (18-21). Bilateral dislocation of the testes has been reported in up to 25% of cases (21). It can be classified as:

1. Subcutaneous dislocation with epifascial displacement of the testis;
2. Internal dislocation; in these cases, the testis is positioned in the superficial external inguinal ring, inguinal canal or abdominal cavity.

Testicular rupture is found in approximately 50% of cases of direct blunt scrotal trauma (22). It may occur under intense, traumatic compression of the testis against the inferior pubic ramus or symphysis, resulting in a rupture of the tunica albuginea of the testis. Wasko and Goldstein estimated that a force of approximately 50 kg is necessary to cause testicular rupture (23).

In females, blunt trauma to the vulva is rarely reported. The incidence of traumatic vulvar haematomas after vaginal deliveries has been reported as 1 in 310 deliveries (24). The frequency in non-obstetric vulvar haematomas is even lower, with only individual cases reported (25). Although blunt trauma to the female external genitals is rarely reported, the presence of vulvar haematoma is closely related to an increased risk of associated vaginal, pelvic or abdominal injuries. Goldman *et al*. reported that blunt injuries of the vulva and vagina were associated with pelvic trauma in 30%, after consensual intercourse in 25%, sexual assault in 20%, and other blunt trauma in 15% (26).

6.2.2 ***Penetrating trauma***

Penetrating trauma to the external genitalia is frequently associated with complex injuries of other organs. In children, penetrating injuries are most frequently seen after straddle-type falls or laceration of genital skin due to falls on sharp objects (10, 27).

Increasing civilian violence has led to a rising incidence of stab and/or gunshot injuries associated with injuries of the genitourinary tract. The extent of injuries associated with guns is related to the calibre and velocity of the missile (8). Handguns or pistols range from 0.22 to 0.45 calibre and produce bullet velocities of

200-300 meters/second (m/s). In addition, “magnum” handguns have larger gunpowder loads, and transmit 20-60% more energy than standard handguns due to the higher velocity of the missile. Injuries by rifles cause even more extensive lesions. Rifles have a calibre ranging from 0.17 to 0.460, with bullet velocities up to 1000 m/s.

Missiles with a velocity of approximately 200-300 m/s are considered “low velocity”. These bullets only induce a ‘permanent cavity’. The energy transmitted to the tissue along the projectile path is much less than in high-velocity missiles, so that tissue destruction in low-velocity guns is less extensive (8). High-velocity missiles (velocity of 800-1000 m/s) have an explosive effect with high-energy transmission to the tissue causing a ‘temporary cavity’ in addition to the permanent cavity. Due to the high-energy released, gaseous tissue vaporisation induces extensive damage often associated with life-threatening injuries.

Gunshot wounds are classified as penetrating, perforating or avulsive. Penetrating injuries are caused by low-velocity missiles, with bullets often retained in the tissue and a small, ragged entry wound. Perforating gunshot wounds are frequently seen in low to high-velocity missiles. In these cases, the missile passes through the tissue with a small entry wound, but larger, exit one. Serious injuries are associated with avulsive gunshot wounds caused by high-velocity missiles, with a small entry wound comparable to the calibre but a large tissue defect at the exit wound.

In any penetrating trauma, tetanus vaccination is mandatory and should be given using active (tetanus toxoid booster) and passive immunisation (250 IE human tetanus immunoglobulin) if the patient’s last immunisation was given more than 5 years ago (28). For current recommendations for tetanus vaccination, see information from the Robert Koch Institute, Germany (http://www.rki.de/cln_116/nn_504558/DE/Content/Infekt/Impfen/ImpfungenAZ/Tetanus/Tetanus_ImpfenA-Z_ges.html [Articles in German]).

Although animal bites are common, bites injuring the external genital are rare. Wounds are usually minor, but have a risk of wound infection. The most common bacterial infection by a dog bite is *Pasturella Multicida*, which accounts for up to 50% of infections (28). Other commonly involved organisms are *Escherichia coli, Streptococcus viridans, Staphylococcus aureus, Eikenella corrodens, Capnocytophaga canimorsus, Veillonella parvula, Bacteroides* and *Fusobacterium spp*. (28-30).

The first choice of antibiotics is penicillin-amoxiclavulanic acid followed by doxycycline, cephalosporine or erythromycine for 10-14 days (31–33). After any animal bite, one has to consider the possibility of rabies infection. In cases where rabies is locally present, vaccination must be given to prevent life-threatening infection (34). Besides vaccination, local wound management is an essential part of post-exposure rabies prophylaxis. If rabies infection is suspected, vaccination should be considered in relation to the animal involved, specific nature of the wound and attack (provoked/unprovoked) and the appearance of the animal (aggressive, foam at the mouth). In high risk patients, vaccination with human rabies immunoglobulin and human diploid cell vaccine is recommended (34,35).

Genital bites from humans can rarely occur, but can also become infected. Wound infections in these cases may include *Streptococci, Staphylococcus aureus, Haemophilus spp., Bacteroides spp*. and other anaerobes. Transmission of viruses (e.g. hepatitis B, hepatitis C, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV]) following human bites is much less common but should be considered especially in risk groups. Since transmission of viral diseases may occur, risk assessment should be made and, if appropriate, hepatitis B vaccine/immunoglobulin and/or HIV post-exposure prophylaxis offered. For further details see Guidelines for the Management of Human Bite Injuries (36).

Wound management should include cleaning with warm running water or disinfectants. Debridement should be conservative, due to the regenerative capacity of genital skin (36). Antibiotic therapy may be considered only in cases with infected wounds using amoxiclavulanic acid as first line therapy, or, alternatively clindamycin.

6.3 Risk factors

There are certain sports with an increased risk for genital trauma. Off-road bicycling and motorbike riding, especially on bikes with a dominant petrol tank, accidents from in-line hockey skating and rugby footballers have been associated with blunt testicular trauma (37-40). Any kind of full contact sports, without the use of necessary protective aids, may be associated with genital trauma.

Besides these risk groups, self-mutilation of the external genitalia have also been reported in psychotic patients and transsexuals (29).

6.4 Diagnosis

Investigating genital trauma requires information concerning the accident and a thorough history and physical examination, if possible. Trauma to external genitalia at any age may be due to abusive assault. In these cases, the extraordinary emotional situation of the patient must be considered and the privacy of the patient respected. In suspicious cases, a sexual assault forensic exam is necessary. Swabs or vaginal smears should be taken for detection of spermatozoa (27) and local legal protocols followed closely. A thorough history and

examination (in some cases under anaesthesia), photodocumentation, and identification of forensic material may be important. Genital injury is seen frequently (42%) after sexual abuse, and must be considered when such injuries present at any age (41). In a recent report, only 38% of the forensic samples tested positive for an ejaculate and/or sperm. This may be due to delayed presentation or lack of vaginal/anal ejaculation (42-43).

In patients with gunshot wounds to the genitals several pieces of information will be useful: close or far range, calibre and type of weapon. Get a urinalysis. The presence or macro- and or microhaematuria requires a retrograde urethrogram in males (see above Chapter 4, Urethral trauma). In females, flexible or rigid cystoscopy has been recommended to exclude urethral and bladder injury (26,44). In women with genital injuries and blood at the vaginal introitus, further gynaecologic investigation to exclude vaginal injuries (44). The potential for significant injury should never be discounted in those patients who also may have blood in the vaginal vault from menstruation. Complete vaginal inspection with specula is mandatory. Depending on the nature of the injury, this may require sedation or general anaesthesia to be completed comfortably.

6.4.1 ***Blunt penile trauma***

6.4.1.1 Penile fracture

Penile fracture is associated with a sudden cracking or popping sound, pain and immediate detumescence. Local swelling of the penile shaft develops quickly, due to enlarging haematoma. Bleeding may spread along the fascial layers of the penile shaft and extend to the lower abdominal wall if Buck's fascia is also ruptured. The rupture of the tunica may be palpable if the hematoma is not too large. Physical exam and history usually confirm the diagnosis, but in rare cases imaging may be required.

Cavernosography or MRI (45-47) can identify lacerations of the tunica albuginea in unclear cases (48). In case of tunical laceration, surgical correction with suturing of the ruptured area is indicated.

6.4.2 ***Blunt testicular trauma***

Testicular rupture is associated with immediate pain, nausea, vomiting, and sometimes fainting. The hemiscrotum is tender, swollen, and eccymotic. The testis itself may be difficult to palpate. High-resolution, real-time ultrasonography with a high resolution probe (minimum 7.5MHz or higher) should be performed to determine intra- and/or extratesticular haematoma, testicular contusion, or rupture (49-57). In children, scrotal ultrasonography must be performed with a 10-12MHz probe.

The literature is contradictory as to the real usefulness of US over exam alone. Some studies report convincing results with accuracy of 94% (29,49,54,55). Others reported poor specificity (78%) and sensitivity (28%) for differentiation of testicular rupture or haematocele, and accuracy as low as 56% (52).

Colour Doppler-duplex ultrasonography may provide useful information when used to evaluate testicular perfusion. In case of inconclusive scrotal sonography, testicular CT or MRI may be helpful (58). However, these techniques did not specifically increase the detection of testicular rupture. It may be most prudent to surgically explore these equivocal patients. If imaging studies cannot definitively exclude testicular rupture, surgical exploration is indicated.

6.4.3 ***Blunt female trauma***

In females with blunt trauma to the external genitalia, imaging studies of the pelvis with US, CT, or MRI should be performed since additional injuries and extensive intrapelvic haematoma are frequently found (27,44).

6.4.4 ***Penetrating trauma***

In penetrating trauma of the external genital in men, urethrography should be performed in all patients (irrespective of urinalysis). Associated pelvic or abdominal trauma may also require an abdominal CT. CT cystography should be performed in pelvic injuries associate with microhaematuria. In females, the use of diagnostic laparoscopy for identification of intraperitoneal injuries has been reported prior to explorative laparotomy (27). This approach is only reasonable in haemodynamic stable patients, in whom CT cannot exclude presence of associated bowel injuries or significant intra-abdominal bleeding.

6.5 Treatment

6.5.1 ***Penile trauma***

6.5.1.1 Blunt trauma

Subcutaneous haematoma, without associated rupture of the cavernosal tunica albuginea does not require surgical intervention. In these cases, nonsteroidal analgesics and ice-packs are recommended (13).

Benign penile injuries can be distinguished from penile fracture, because fracture is always associated with rapid post-traumatic detumescence. In penile fracture, surgical intervention with closure of the tunica albuginea is recommended. Closure can be obtained by using either absorbable or non-absorbable sutures, with good long-term outcome and protection of potency. Post-operative complications were reported in 9%, including superficial wound infection and impotence in 1.3% (15,59). Conservative management of penile

fracture is not recommended. It increases complications such as penile abscess, missed urethral disruption, penile curvature, and persistent haematoma requiring delayed surgical intervention (59). Late complications after conservative management were fibrosis and angulations in 35% and impotence in up to 62% (15,59).

6.5.1.2 Penetrating trauma

In penetrating penile trauma, surgical exploration and conservative debridement of necrotic tissue is recommended in most severe injuries. Non-operative management is recommended in small superficial injuries with intact Buck's fascia (13). Even in extended injuries of the penis, primary alignment of the disrupted tissues may allow for acceptable healing because of the robust penile blood supply (29). In extended loss of penile shaft skin, split-thickness grafts can be placed, either acutely or after the wound bed has been prepared by several days of wet/dry dressing changes and infection is under control. McAninch *et al*. recommended the use of a skin graft thickness of at least 0.015 inch in order to reduce the risk of contraction (29).

6.5.2 ***Testicular trauma***

6.5.2.1 Blunt trauma

Blunt trauma to the scrotum can cause significant haematocele even without testicular rupture. Conservative management is recommended in haematoceles smaller than three times the size of the contralateral testis (6).

In large haematoceles, non-operative management often fails, and often requires delayed surgery (> 3 days). These patients suffer from a higher rate of orchiectomy than acutely-operated patients, even in non-ruptured testis (10,22,29,60,61).

Early surgical intervention resulted in > 90% preservation of the testis whereas delayed surgery necessitates orchiectomy in 45-55% (22). Additionally, non-operative management is associated with prolonged hospital stays. Large hematocoles should be treated surgically, irrespective of testicle contusion or rupture. At the very least, the blood-clot should be evacuated from the tunica vaginalis sac to relieve disability and hasten recovery. Patients initially treated nonoperatively may need delayed surgery if they develop infection or undue pain.

In testicular rupture, surgical exploration with excision of necrotic testicular tubules and closure of the tunica albuginea is indicated. This results in a high rate of testicular preservation and normal endocrine function. Traumatic dislocation of the testis is treated by manual replacement and secondary orchidopexy. If primary manual reposition cannot be performed, immediate orchidopexy is indicated.

6.5.2.2 Penetrating trauma

Penetrating injuries to the scrotum require surgical exploration with conservative debridement of non-viable tissue. Depending on the extent of the injury, primary reconstruction of testis and scrotum can be performed in most cases. In complete disruption of the spermatic cord, realignment without vaso-vasostomy may be considered if surgically feasible (62). Staged secondary microsurgical vaso-vasostomy can be performed after rehabilitation, although there are only a few cases reported (62). If there is extensive destruction of the tunica albuginea, mobilisation of a free tunica vaginalis flap can be performed for testicular closure. If the patient is unstable or reconstruction cannot be achieved, orchiectomy is indicated.

Prophylactic antibiotics are recommended by experts after scrotal penetrating trauma, although data to support this approach is lacking. Tetanus prophylaxis is mandatory. Postoperative complications were reported in 8% of patients who underwent testicular repair after penetrating trauma (13).

Extended laceration of scrotal skin requires surgical intervention for skin closure. Due to the elasticity of the scrotum, most defects can be primarily closed, even if the lacerated skin is only minimally attached to scrotum (29). Local wound management with extensive initial wound debridement and washout is important for scrotal convalescence.

6.5.3 ***Vulvar injuries***

Blunt trauma to the vulva is rare and commonly present as a large haematoma. However, in contrast to men, blunt vulvar or perineal trauma may be associated with voiding problems. Bladder catheterisation will usually be required. Vulvar haematomas usually do not require surgical intervention, although they can cause significant blood loss, even requiring red blood cell transfusions. Data are scarce (25-27,44), but in haemodynamically stable women, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medication and cold packs are used. In massive vulvar haematoma or haemodynamically unstable patients, surgical intervention, lavage and drainage is indicated (63).

Antibiotics are recommended by experts after major vulvar trauma, but data supporting this approach are lacking. It is important to emphasise that vulvar haematoma and/or blood at the vaginal introitus are an indication for vaginal exploration under sedation or general anaesthesia in order to identify possible associated vaginal and/or rectal injuries (44). In case of vulvar laceration, suturing after conservative debridement is indicated. If there are associated injuries to the vagina, these can be repaired immediately by primary suturing.

Additional injuries to the bladder, rectum or bowel may require laparotomy for closure. The rectal injuries may also require colostomy.

6.6 References

1. Brandes SB, Buckman RF, Chelsky MJ, et al. External genitalia gunshot wounds: a ten-year experience with fifty-six cases. J Trauma 1995 Aug;39(2):266-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7674395
2. Marekovic Z, Derezic D, Krhen I, et al. Urogenital war injuries. Mil Med 1997 May;162(5):346-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9155106
3. Salvatierra O Jr, Rigdon WO, Norris DM, et al. Vietnam experience with 252 urological war injuries. J Urol 1969 Apr;101(4):615-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5776049
4. Tucak A, Lukacevic T, Kuvezdic H, et al. Urogenital wounds during the war in Croatia in 1991/1992. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):121-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966742
5. Archbold JA, Barros d'sa AA, Morrison E. Genito-urinary tract injuries of civil hostilities. Br J Surg 1981 Sep;68(9):625-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7272689
6. Tiguert R, Harb JF, Hurley PM, et al. Management of shotgun injuries to the pelvis and lower genitourinary system. Urology 2000 Feb;55(2):193-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688077
7. Cline KJ, Mata JA, Venable DD, et al. Penetrating trauma to the male external genitalia. J Trauma 1998 May;44(3):492-4 . http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9529176
8. Jolly BB, Sharma SK, Vaidyanathan S, et al. Gunshot wounds of the male external genitalia. Urol Int 1994;53(2):92-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7801424
9. Bertini JE Jr, Corriere JN Jr. The etiology and management of genital injuries. J Trauma 1988 Aug;28(8):1278-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3411650
10. Monga M, Hellstrom WJ. Testicular Trauma. Adolesc Med 1996 Feb;7(1):141-148. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10359963
11. Selikowitz SM. Penetrating high-velocity genitourinary injuries. Part I. Statistics mechanism and renal wounds. Urology 1977 Apr;9(4):371-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/855062
12. Brandes SB, Buckmann RF, Chelsky MJ, et al. External genitalia gunshot wounds: a ten year experience with fifty-six cases. J Trauma 1995 Aug;39(2):266-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7674395
13. Phonsombat S, Master VA, McAninch JW. Penetrating external genitalia trauma: a 30-year single institution experience. J Urology 2008 Jul;180(1):192-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499189
14. Cass AS, Ferrara L, Wolpert J, et al. Bilateral testicular injury from external trauma. J Urol 1988 Dec; 140(6):1435-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3193512
15. Haas CA, Brown SL, Spirnak JP. Penile fracture and testicular rupture. World J Urol 1999 Apr;17(2): 101-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10367369
16. Nicolaisen GS, Melamud A, Williams RD, et al. Rupture of the corpus cavernosum: surgical management. J Urol 1983 Nov;130(5):917-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6632099
17. Tsang T, Demby AM. Penile fracture with urethral injury. J Urol 1992 Feb;147(2):466-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1732623
18. Lee JY, Cass AS, Streitz JM. Traumatic dislocation of testes and bladder rupture. Urology 1992 Dec;40(6):506-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1466102
19. Shefi S, Mor Y, Dotan ZA, et al. Traumatic testicular dislocation: a case report and review of published reports. Urology 1999 Oct;54(4):744. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10754145

20. Pollen JJ, Funckes C. Traumatic dislocation of the testes. J Trauma 1982 Mar;22(3):247-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7069812
21. Nagarajan VP, Pranikoff K, Imahori SC, et al. Traumatic dislocation of testis. Urology 1983 Nov; 22(5):521-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6649208
22. Cass AS, Luxenberg M. Testicular injuries. Urology 1991 Jun;37(6):528-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2038785
23. Wasko R, Goldstein AG. Traumatic rupture of the testicle. J Urol 1966 May;95(5):721-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5935538
24. Sotto LS, Collins RJ. Perigenital Hematomas; analysis of forty-seven consecutive cases. Obstet Gynecol 1958 Sep;13:259-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13578292
25. Propst AM, Thorp JM Jr. Traumatic vulvar hematomas: conservative versus surgical management. South Med J 1998 Feb;91(2):144-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9496865
26. Goldman HB, Idom CB Jr, Dmochowski RR. Traumatic injuries of the female external genitalia and their association with urological injuries. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):956-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474191
27. Okur H, Küçïkaydin M, Kazez A, et al. Genitourinary tract injuries in girls. Br J Urol 1996 Sep;78(3): 446-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8881959
28. Donovan JF, Kaplan WE. The therapy of genital trauma by dog bite. J Urol 1989 May;141(5):1163-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2651716
29. McAninch JW, Kahn RI, Jeffrey RB, et al. Major traumatic and septic genital injuries. J Trauma 1984 Apr;24(4):291-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6368854
30. Presutti RJ. Prevention and treatment of dog bites. Am Fam Physician 2001 Apr; 63(8):1567-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11327433
31. Lewis KT, Stiles M. Management of cat and dog bites. Am Fam Physician 1995 Aug;52(2):479-85, 489-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7625323
32. Presutti RJ. Bite wounds. Early treatment and prophylaxis against infectious complications. Postgrad Med 1997 Apr;101(4):243-4, 246-52, 254.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126216
33. Talan DA, Citron DM, Abrahamian FM, et al. Bacteriologic analysis of infected dog and cat bites. Emergency Medicine Animal Bite Infection Study Group. N Engl J Med 1999 Jan;340(2):85-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9887159
34. Dreesen DW, Hanlon CA. Current recommendations for the prophylaxis and treatment of rabies. Drugs 1998 Nov;56(5):801-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9829154
35. Anderson CR. Animal bites. Guidelines to current management. Postgrad Med 1992 Jul;92(1):134-6, 139-46,149.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1614928
36. Guidelines for the Management of Human Bite Injuries. Health Protection Agency North West 2007.
http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947350692
37. Frauscher F, Klauser A, Stenzl A, et al. US findings in the scrotum of extreme mountain bikers. Radiology 2001 May;219(2):427-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323467
38. de Peretti F, Cambas PM, Veneau B, et al. [Fuel tanks of motorcycles. Role in severe trauma of the pelvis.] Presse Med 1993 Jan;22(2):61-3. [Article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493205
39. Herrmann B, Crawford J. Genital injuries in prepubertal girls from inline skating accidents. Pediatrics 2002 Aug;110(2 Pt 1):e16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12165615
40. Lawson JS, Rotem T, Wilson SF. Catastrophic injuries to the eyes and testicles in footballers. Med J Aust 1995 Sep;163(5):242-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7565208
41. McGregor MJ, Du Mont J, Myhr TL. Sexual assault forensic medical examination: is evidence related to successful prosecution? Ann Emerg Med 2002 Jun;39(6):639-47.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12023707

42. Dardamissis E, Gee A, Kaczmarski E, et al on behalf of the North West Policy Group. Guidance for healthcare professionals on dealing with injuries where teeth break the skin. Health Care Protection Agency, October 2007. http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947350692
43. A national protocol for sexual assault medical forensic examinations adults/adolescents. U.S. Dept of Justice. Office on Violence Against Women, September 2004. http://www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/ovw/206554.pdf
44. Husmann DA. Editorial Comment. J Urol 1998;159:959.
45. Karadeniz T, Topsakal M, Ariman A, et al. Penile fracture: differential diagnosis, management and outcome. Br J Urol 1996 Feb;77(2):279-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8800899
46. Pretorius ES, Siegelman ES, Ramchandani P, et al. MR imaging of the penis. Radiographics 2001 Oct;21 Spec No:S283-98, discussion S298-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11598264
47. Fedel M, Venz S, Andreessen R, et al. The value of magnetic resonance imaging in the diagnosis of suspected penile fracture with atypical clinical findings. J Urol 1996 Jun;155(6):1924-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8618289
48. Uder M, Gohl D, Takahashi M, et al. MRI of penile fracture: diagnosis and therapeutic follow-up. Eur Radiol 2002 Jan;12(1):113-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11868085
49. Pavlica P, Barozzi L. Imaging of the acute scrotum. Eur Radiol 2001;11(2):220-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11218018
50. Micallef M, Ahmad I, Ramesh N, et al. Ultrasound features of blunt testicular injury. Injury 2001 Jan;32(1):23-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11164397
51. Patil MG, Onuora VC. The value of ultrasound in the evaluation of patients with blunt scrotal trauma. Injury 1994 Apr;25(3):177-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8168890
52. Corrales JG, Corbel L, Cipolla B, et al. Accuracy of ultrasound diagnosis after blunt testicular trauma. J Urol 1993 Dec;150(6):1834-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8080482
53. Mulhall JP, Gabram SG, Jacobs LM. Emergency management of blunt testicular trauma. Acad Emerg Med 1995 Jul;2(7):639-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8521212
54. Martinez-Piñeiro L Jr, Cerezo E, Cozar JM, et al. Value of testicular ultrasound in the evaluation of blunt scrotal trauma without haematocele. Br J Urol 1992 Mar;69(3):286-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1568102
55. Fournier GR Jr, Laing FC, McAninch JW. Scrotal ultrasonography and the management of testicular trauma. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):377-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652862
56. Kratzik C, Hainz A, Kuber W, et al. Has ultrasound influenced the therapy concept of blunt scrotal trauma? J Urol 1989 Nov;142(5):1243-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2681835
57. Andipa E, Liberopoulos K, Asvestis C. Magnetic resonance imaging and ultrasound evaluation of penile and testicular masses. World J Urol 2004 Nov;22(5):382-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15300391
58. Muglia V, Tucci S Jr, Elias J Jr, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging of scrotal diseases: when it makes the difference. Urology 2002 Mar;59(3):419-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11880084
59. Orvis BR, McAninch JW. Penile rupture. Urol Clin North Am 1989 May;16(2):369-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652861
60. Altarac S. Management of 53 cases of testicular trauma. Eur Urol 1994;25(2):119-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8137851
61. Cass AS, Luxenberg M. Value of early operation in blunt testicular contusion with hematocele. J Urol 1988 Apr;139(4):746-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3352037
62. Altarac S. A case of testicle replantation. J Urol 1993 Nov;150(5 Pt 1):1507-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8411440

63. Virgili A, Bianchi A, Mollica G, et al. Serious hematoma of the vulva from a bicycle accident. A case report. J Reprod Med 2000 Aug;45(8):662-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10986686

7. MASS CASUALTY EVENTS, TRIAGE AND DAMAGE CONTROL

7.1 Definition

A mass casualty event is one in which the number of injured people is significantly higher than the number of healthcare providers available (1). A mass casualty disaster does not therefore necessarily involve a large number of victims, but is related to the disproportion between the number of victims and the size of the medical team available (2,3). There is little published data on how best to handle these events.

7.2 Causes of mass casualty events

Potential mass casualty events include:

- the collapse of buildings or bridges;
- earthquakes;
- floods;
- tsunamis;
- train collisions;
- aircraft catastrophes;
- civilian terrorism.

Most mass injury caused by civilian terrorism is caused by explosions. The combined effects of blast, shrapnel, bomb projectiles, and burns result in multiple penetrating injuries involving several body systems and unpredictable degrees of damage.

7.3 Mechanisms of explosive injury

The mechanism of injury in explosions is divided into three phases:

- **Primary blast injury:** this is caused by the powerful shock wave that spreads from the site of the explosion. The most commonly injured organs are those containing air (lungs and ears), but any tissue can be damaged by the pressure wave passing through the body. Urogenital injuries as a direct result of primary blast have not been described in survivors of blast injuries.
- **Secondary blast injury:** this is produced by the debris and projectiles set in motion by the explosion. Penetrating injuries to the urogenital system, as to any organ, have been described.
- **Tertiary injury:** this occurs when the victim displaced by the blast wave hits a fixed object. An acceleration-deceleration mechanism produces severe injuries to organs, large blood vessels, and bones. Blunt renal, ureteral, and bladder injuries are induced by this mechanism.

The patterns and severity of injury after explosions differ according to the location of the event. Explosions in confined spaces (e.g. buildings or buses) are more devastating than those that occur in open spaces because of amplification of the blast wave by reflection, and structural collapse, which can cause further injury.

7.4 Triage

Triage after mass casualty events is difficult, controversial, and full of difficult ethical and moral questions. Disaster triage requires one to differentiate the few critically injured that can be saved by immediate intervention from the many with non-life-threatening injuries for whom treatment can be delayed.

Triage divides patients into four groups (4,5):

1. Patients with life-threatening injuries that require immediate intervention, presenting with **A**irway compromise, **B**reathing failure and/or **C**irculatory compromise from ongoing external haemorrhage.
2. Patients with severe but non-life-threatening injuries, in whom treatment can be acceptably delayed: major fractures, vascular injuries of the limbs and large soft tissue wounds.
3. ‘Walking wounded’ with minimal injuries.
4. Patients who are so severely injured that treatment would require allocation of resources and time that would deny other, more salvageable patients, timely care. These patients are given minimal or no treatment, and re-evaluated when resources become available. There is no absolute definition for this

group because triage is individualised according to the number and severity of casualties related to the available resources.

Triage contradicts the everyday principles of care, in which the goal is maximal and optimal care for every individual patient. Triage is necessary in mass casualty scenarios because of the need to provide effective treatment to the maximum number of salvageable patients within the limited resources.

7.4.1 ***Primary triage***

Primary triage begins when trained medical teams arrive at the event. It is concerned with the initial stabilisation and rapid evacuation of the prioritised victims to the nearest hospital.

7.4.2 ***Secondary triage***

Secondary triage begins at the medical facility that is receiving the mass casualties. The most experienced trauma surgeon who is not taking part in surgical or resuscitation procedures performs triage.

7.4.3 ***Re-triage***

Re-triage is performed frequently. After all the victims have undergone triage, the senior surgeon repeats triage and reclassifies patients as necessary.

Repeat triage is important. It avoids under-triage, which results in serious injury being missed, or over-triage, which results in some patients being assigned for immediate care when in fact they do not have critical injuries.

The surgeon in charge is responsible for directing specialty surgical consultants, including urologists, and assigning them responsibility for specific patients as dictated by the specific injuries.

7.5 Principles of 'damage control'

Damage control is a prioritised three-phase approach to patients with major injuries (6). The first phase consists of rapid control of haemorrhage, wound contamination, and faecal spillage using simple measures and temporary abdominal closure. The second phase is resuscitation in the intensive care unit (ICU), with the goal of restoring normal temperature, coagulation, perfusion, and oxygenation of tissues. Then, in the third stage, definitive surgery and abdominal wall closure is performed in stable patients.

Damage control is a life-saving strategy for patients with multiple injuries that has been adopted by trauma surgeons as a result of the observation that such patients often die from hypothermia, coagulopathy, and acidosis-induced physiological insults (7-9). In unstable patients, extensive and time-consuming reconstructive procedures could further destabilise the patient beyond recovery.

Identifying those critically injured patients who are candidates for damage control is difficult. The most senior trauma surgeon should make the decisions, in co-operation with other specialist surgeons.

Damage control principles have also been successfully adopted in the context of civilian mass casualty events, military field surgery, and initial treatment in rural areas with long-range transfers (9,10).

7.6 Urological aspects of 'damage control'

In events involving mass casualties, the principles of triage and damage control are the same. Damage control can theoretically lower the mortality rates by allowing a limited number of qualified personnel to treat more patients.

Urologists are frequently consulted in patients with multiple injuries, and should be familiar with the damage control approach. Damage control is well suited to urological trauma, and should result in more efficient interaction with the trauma team, improved patient survival and lower morbidity.

In fact, because urological surgery is often elective, management of urological trauma has traditionally consisted of temporary measures followed by definitive surgery later on, which meshes well with modern damage control principles (8). It is important to be aware of damage control opportunities, and to maximise the quality of care with creative improvisation.

7.6.1 ***The urological consultation in the emergency room during mass casualty events***

7.6.1.1 Responsibility and primary overall assessment

After primary assessment and triage by the surgeon in charge, a urological consultation might be required for patients triaged to groups 2 (severe but not immediately life-threatening injuries) and 3 ('walking wounded' with mild injuries). The urologist might even become primarily responsible for these patients if they are stable and have few other injuries.

It is important to remember that under-triage can happen during a mass casualty event. A complete re-assessment of the patient assigned must therefore be performed, paying attention to the whole body so as to detect previously unnoticed injuries. This assessment should be quick but comprehensive. Conduct a

rapid ABCDE survey (**A**irway, **B**reathing, **C**irculation, **D**isability or neurological status, **E**xposure) as dictated by advanced trauma life support (ATLS) principles (3). Urological care should begin only after the patient is cleared for the presence of other injuries.

7.6.1.2 Imaging

Evaluation of patients with penetrating and blunt abdominal or pelvic trauma usually includes imaging procedures such as contrast CT scans or retrograde cystourethrography (11,12). However, when mass casualty protocols are instituted, decisions on care must be made with a minimum of imaging procedures. In those situations, create a unidirectional flow of patients in order to avoid the bottleneck that usually occurs in imaging departments. The 'normal' pattern of sending patients for imaging and then returning them to the accident and emergency department for re-evaluation may not be feasible.

7.6.1.3 Primary management

Following initial primary evaluation, there are several possible scenarios:

1. Haemodynamically unstable patients with suspected intra-abdominal bleeding are transferred urgently to the operating theatre without any pre-operative imaging.
2. Stable patients with suspected renal injuries (penetrating trauma to the upper abdomen/flanks/lower chest, blunt abdominal trauma, and gross haematuria) should have delayed imaging once the protocols of mass casualties are cancelled, or when resources become available. These patients should be transferred to surgical wards and re-evaluated by the urologist as soon as possible.
3. Patients with suspected bladder or urethral injuries (pelvic fractures, high riding prostate on rectal examination, blood at the urethral meatus and/or inability to void) need to undergo imaging of the lower urinary tract, but this is not urgent as these injures are not considered life-threatening (13).
4. In cases of suspected urethral injuries, the 'minimal acceptable treatment' will be one gentle trial of catheterising the bladder or insertion of a suprapubic cystostomy, followed by transfer of the patient to the surgical ward for later evaluation (14).
5. Bladder injuries following blunt or penetrating trauma are usually associated with other severe injuries (15) and thus require a prioritising surgical approach. The first priority in this scenario is the treatment of the associated life-threatening injuries. Bladder drainage is a sufficient first measure, but should be followed by delayed evaluation aiming to obtain accurate diagnosis and to distinguish between intraperitoneal and extraperitoneal bladder rupture.
6. Blunt injuries of the external genitalia are often isolated and can be managed conservatively. On the other hand, penetrating injuries of the genitalia are often associated with injuries of adjacent abdominal organs and haemodynamic instability (7). In mass casualty scenarios, external genital injuries should be operated on only if they have resulted in major haemorrhage. Surgery can be performed in the operating theatre or in a well-equipped shock room in the accident and emergency department. Compression dressings, or clamping/ligation of bleeding vessels are highly efficient manoeuvres that require a minimum of time. When severe haemorrhage is not present, any further diagnostic steps can be postponed. The patient can be transferred to the surgical ward for later re-evaluation followed by delayed reconstruction.

Urological consultations during a mass casualty scenario should be performed according to the following principles:

1. Rule out under-triage by the surgeon in charge, and perform a rapid primary survey of every patient.
2. Avoid unnecessary imaging procedures such as CT scans and retrograde urethrography. These procedures should be performed later, after re-evaluation of the patient, and after mass casualty protocols have been suspended.
3. Treat unstable patients who are to have surgery using damage control principles.
4. Stable patients with suspected renal injuries should be transferred to the surgical ward without imaging procedures. Re-evaluate if there is any change in their haemodynamic status, or when possible as dictated by the constraints of the mass casualty event. Patients managed in this delayed fashion should be treated according to traditional trauma management protocols.
5. 'Minimal acceptable' procedures should be performed in order to transfer patients to the surgical wards, e.g. suprapubic drainage of the bladder when bladder or urethral injuries are suspected, clamping and ligation of bleeding vessels from wounds to the external genitalia, etc.

7.6.2 ***The urological consultation in the operating room during mass casualty events***

During emergency laparotomy, urologists are usually present in the operating theatre along with the general surgeons.

During mass casualty events, the principle of 'minimum acceptable intervention' for the 'maximum

salvageable outcome' applies. Procedures should be directed at the rapid control of active bleeding, and management of urinary extravasation by simple diversion measures. Complex and time-consuming reconstructive procedures should be delayed whenever possible.

7.6.2.1 Renal trauma

The ultimate goal of all renal exploration in the setting of major traumatic renal injury is to control life-threatening bleeding and to preserve the maximal amount of viable renal parenchyma (16).

Renal reconstruction might be too time-consuming in the context of an unstable, multiply injured patient, or in the scenario of mass casualties in which the operating theatre should not be occupied by time-consuming reconstructive procedures (17).

Whenever major active haemorrhage of renal origin can be ruled out, it is best not to explore the injured kidney, even if a secondary delayed laparotomy will eventually be needed (18).

In unstable patients, packing the renal fossa with laparotomy pads and transferring the patient to the surgical ICU is best. Later, a planned second-look laparotomy is better than time-consuming reconstruction (19). Alternatively, especially in briskly bleeding patients, speedy nephrectomy may be required.

Haemostatic techniques, many of which were developed for hepatic surgery and splenic trauma, can be used to control renal parenchymal bleeding (20):

- Mattress sutures through the parenchyma (renorrhaphy), similar to the sutures used in extensive hepatorrhaphy (7).
- Packing with dry folded laparotomy pads as described for peri-hepatic tamponade (7).
- Fibrin hemostatic agents, may be used to control bleeding.
- Absorbable mesh kidney bags maintain renal parenchymal fragments in contact with each other and ensure lasting haemostasis (21).
- Urinary extravasation may be ignored during the acute phase; acutely, urine leak will be drained by intraoperatively placed drains; defer ureteral stents or percutaneous nephrostomies.
- The abdomen is temporarily closed with towel clips or other measures.

Following urgent primary exploration, patients should be carefully monitored in an ICU. When they are sufficiently stable, begin radiological assessment of their injuries and plan their definitive operative management accordingly.

Delayed imaging is obtained by CT scan. If the extent of renal injury has not been clearly defined at the initial laparotomy (by choosing not to explore the retroperitoneal haematoma), a CT scan performed before the second laparotomy can help in decision-making. CT allows the existence and function of the contralateral kidney to be documented, the kidney injury to be graded according to traditional protocols, and a clinical plan to be created, which will then determine the selection of operative or non-operative management of the renal trauma, and whether nephrectomy or reconstruction is to be attempted.

In patients who are haemodynamically unstable after the initial acute damage control laparotomy, or in patients with deteriorating haemodynamic parameters (indicating ongoing or delayed bleeding), the management options are angiographic embolisation of the bleeding kidney or re-operation. This decision should be made according to several factors:

- The general status of the patient.
- The presence of associated injuries that have been treated according to damage control principles (bowel injuries, packed liver, or splenic injuries) and that need re-operation irrespective of the renal injury.
- The availability of angiography.

7.6.2.2 Ureteral injuries

Although excellent results can be achieved with acute ureteral reconstruction, the surgery is time-consuming and might not be appropriate in the mass casualty setting.

During mass casualty events, diagnostic procedures such as the intraoperative injection of indigo carmine, intraoperative IVP or retrograde ueretropyelography that are intended to evaluate ureteral injuries should be discouraged.

If a ureteral injury is suspected but not clearly identified, a drain may be left in place. If urine leaks, a nephrostomy tube can be placed post-operatively.

If a partial ureteral tear is identified (less than half circumference) and the ureter looks viable, a double J-stent may be inserted over a guide wire through the tear, and the tear quickly closed with interrupted absorbable stitches.

When complete ureteral injuries are identified, definitive repair should not be performed. Dissection of the

ureteral stumps should be avoided as it interferes with the blood supply. Instead:

- place a single J or 8 French feeding tube into the ureter;
- tie the distal end of the ureter over the tube;
- exteriorise it through a small stab incision;
- tie it to the skin.

The distal ureteral stump does not need to be ligated, and any unnecessary manipulation should be avoided.

Tying off the injured ureteral segment and inserting a percutaneous nephrostomy post-operatively (22,23) is a viable alternative, but is not the procedure of choice.

In rare, selected cases, nephrectomy is required to treat ureteral injury, but only in cases of severe associated injuries of the ipsilateral kidney (24).

Ureteral injuries are rarely life-threatening and should be addressed only after other injuries have been attended to. In an unstable patient, temporary measures to control urine spillage should be performed, for example:

- tying off of the injured ureteral segment and post-operative insertion of percutaneous nephrostomy (15,19);
- placement of a single J or feeding tube into the ureter, tying the distal end of the ureter over the tube and exteriorising it (15,19,23).

Intraoperative placement of a nephrostomy tube is time-consuming and should be avoided (15,19).

7.6.2.3 Bladder injury

Bladder injuries should be classified, when time and resources allow, as extraperitoneal or intraperitoneal. Extraperitoneal injuries can usually be managed with bladder drainage alone. Intraperitoneal injuries require surgical exploration and layered closure of the bladder wall (13). The degree to which penetrating bladder injury can be treated non-surgically is not known. However, non-surgical management of iatrogenic bladder injuries has been reported, and could be effective after penetrating injury (11,19).

7.6.2.3.1 Auxiliary damage control measures

Examples of auxiliary damage control measures that could be applicable include:

- the placement of externalised ureteral stents can provide external urinary drainage in extensive bladder rupture (19);
- packing or arteriography and selective embolisation can be applied in cases of bladder haemorrhage in patients who are unsuitable for urgent pelvic exploration (13,19);
- the placement of a pelvic suction drain for urinary evacuation (19).

7.6.2.4 Urethral injury

Urethral injury of any kind is never life-threatening per se, but the associated injuries might cause haemodynamic instability. The patient is usually seen by the urologist during an operation performed because of the other injuries. In this situation, no matter whether the urethral tear is posterior or anterior, partial or complete, drainage through a suprapubic or urethral catheter should be obtained without prior imaging.

7.6.2.5 Injury of the external genitalia

Traumatic injuries of the external genitalia are much more common in men than in women, probably because of the anatomical differences (11,25). Blunt injuries of the genitalia are usually isolated, and can be managed conservatively. Penetrating injuries of the genitalia are often associated with injuries of adjacent abdominal organs and related haemodynamic instability (12). In mass casualty events, both types of injury should be managed by watchful waiting. Urethral or testicular imaging and surgical exploration should be deferred.

7.6.2.5.1 Temporary damage control measures

Temporary damage control measure that might be applicable include:

- compression dressing of the penis;
- packing of penetrating testicular injuries;
- tampons for vulvar lacerations.

7.7 Summary

- Damage control surgery has become the standard approach in the management of unstable patients, and is especially useful in a mass trauma event.
- Medical teams should be well prepared ahead of time to deal with mass casualty events.
- All surgical sub-specialists involved in trauma management should be very familiar with the principles of triage and damage control.

7.8 References

1. Slater MS, Trunkey DD. Terrorism in America. An evolving threat. Arch Surg 1997 Oct;132(10): 1059-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9336502
2. Caro D. Major disasters. Lancet 1974 Nov:30;2(7892):1309-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4139541
3. Weighlt JA, Krantz BE, Ali J, et al. Advanced Trauma Life Support Student Course Manual. American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, 6th edn. Chicago, 1997.
4. Frykberg ER. Medical management of disasters and mass casualties from terrorist bombings: how can we cope? J Trauma 2002 Aug;53(2):201-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12169923
5. Jacobs LM Jr, Ramp JM, Breay JM. An emergency medical system approach to disaster planning. J Trauma 1979 Mar;19(3):157-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/458880
6. Rotondo MF, Schwab CW, McGonigal MD, et al. 'Damage control': an approach for improved survival in exsanguinating penetrating abdominal injury. J Trauma 1993 Sep;35(3):375-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8371295
7. Feliciano DV, Moore EE, Mattox KL. Trauma damage control. In: Mattox KL, Feliciano DV, Moore EE (eds). *Trauma*, 4th edn, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000, Chapter 39, pp. 907-931.
8. Hirshberg A, Mattox KL. 'Damage control' in trauma surgery. Br J Surg 1993 Dec;80(12):1501-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8298911
9. Rignault DP. Recent progress in surgery for the victims of disaster, terrorism, and war--Introduction. World J Surg. 1992 Sep-Oct;16(5):885-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1462624
10. Holcomb JB, Helling TS, Hirshberg A. Military, civilian and rural application of the damage control philosophy. Mil Med 2001 Jun;166(6):490-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11413725
11. Lynch TH, Martínez-Piñeiro L, Plas E, et al. EAU guidelines on urological trauma. Eur Urol. 2005 Jan;47(1):1-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15582243
12. Krieger JN, Algood CB, Mason JT, et al. Urological trauma in the Pacific Northwest: etiology, distribution, management and outcome. J Urol 1984 Jul;132(1):70-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6726964
13. Pansadoro A, Franco G, Laurenti C, et al. Conservative treatment of intraperitoneal bladder perforation during transurethral resection of bladder tumor. Urology 2002 Oct;60(4):682-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12385934
14. Peterson NE. Genitourinary trauma, in Mattox KL, Feliciano DV, Moore EE (eds). Trauma, 4th edn, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2000, Chapter 37, pp. 839-79.
15. McAninch JW, Santucci RA. Genitourinary trauma, In: Walsh PC., Retik AB, Darracott Vaughan E, Jr., Wein AJ (eds). In: *Campbell's Urology*, 8th edn. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders, 2002, Chapter 105, pp. 3707-3744.
16. Brandes SB, McAninch JW. Renal trauma: a practical guide to evaluation and management. Digital Urology Journal. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15349524
17. Brandes SB, McAninch JW. Reconstructive surgery for trauma of the upper urinary tract. Urol Clin North Am 1999 Feb;26(1):183-99. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10086060
18. Wessells H, McAninch JW, Meyer A, et al. Criteria for nonoperative treatment of significant penetrating renal lacerations. J Urol 1997 Jan;157(1):24-7. http://4www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976207
19. Coburn M. Damage control for urologic injuries. Surg Clin North Am 1997 Aug;77(4):821- 34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9291984
20. Shekarris B, Stoller ML. The use of fibrin sealant in urology. J Urol 2002 Mar;167(3):1218-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11832701
21. Chaabouni MN, Bittard M. [Application of peri-renal prosthesis (vicryl mesh) in the conservative treatment of multiple ruptured kidney fragments.] Ann Urol 1996;30(2):61-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8767808
22. Brandes S, Coburn M, Armenakas N, et al. Diagnosis and management of ureteric injury: an evidence-based analysis. BJU Int 2004 Aug;94(3):277-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15291852

23. Best CD, Petrone P, Buscarini M, et al. Traumatic ureteral injuries: a single institution experience validating the American Association for the Surgery of Trauma-Organ Injury Scale grading scale. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1202-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758748
24. Hirshberg A, Wall MJ Jr, Mattox KL. Planned reoperation for trauma: a two year experience with 124 consecutive patients. J Trauma 1994 Sep;37(3):365-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8083894
25. Van der Horst C, Martinez Portillio FJ, Seif C, et al. Male genital injury: diagnostics and treatment. BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):927-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142139

8. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

AAST	American Association for the Surgery of Trauma
ATLS	advanced trauma life support
BT	Transperineal, interstitial, permanent prostate brachytherapy
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
CT	computed tomography
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid
EBRT	External beam radiotherapy
ePTFE	polytetrafluoroethylene
GR	grade of recommendation
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
hpf	high-power field
ICU	intensive care unit
IVP	intravenous pyelography/pyelogram
IVU	intravenous urography
KUB	kidney-ureter-bladder
LE	level of evidence
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
m/s	metres per second
PCNL	percutaneous nephrolithotomy
rbc/hpf	red blood cells per high-power field
TOT	transobturator tape
TURP	Transurethral resection of the prostate
TVT	tension-free vaginal tape
US	Ultrasonography

Conflict of interest

All members of the Urological Trauma Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Pain Management

P. Bader (chair), G. De Meerleer, D. Echtle, V. Fonteyne, K. Livadas, A. Paez Borda, E.G. Papaioannou, J.H. Vranken

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 The Guideline

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Working Group for Pain Management have prepared this guidelines document to assist medical professionals in appraising the evidence-based management of pain in urological practice. These guidelines include general advice on pain assessment, with a focus on treatment strategies relating to common medical conditions and painful procedures. No attempts have been made to exhaustingly cover the topic of pain.

The multidisciplinary panel of experts responsible for this document include three urologists, two radiotherapists and two anaesthesiologists.

*1.1.1 **Methodology***

The recommendations provided in the current guidelines are based on systematic literature search using Medline, the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials, and reference lists in publications and review articles.

It has to be emphasised that the current guidelines contain information for the treatment of an individual patient according to a standardised general approach.

1.2 Publication history

The Pain Management Guidelines were first published in 2003, with a partial update in 2007, followed by a full text update in 2009. In 2010 two new topics were added, Section 5.6 “Peri-operative pain management in children” and Chapter 6 “Non-traumatic acute flank pain”. The quick reference guide was completely reworked. In the 2011 print all chapters were abridged. The current 2012 edition contains partial updates based on the available literature and two new topics were added, Section 3.4 “Denusomab” and Section 3.5 “Palliative care”. A quick reference document presenting the main findings of the General Pain Management guidelines is also available. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.3 Level of evidence and grade of guideline recommendations*

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of scientific evidence (Table 1) and guideline recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (1). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1)*

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence -

although a very important factor - has to be balanced against benefits and burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (2-4).
The EAU Guidelines Office do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (1)*

1.4 References

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
2. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
3. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
4. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence to recommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

2. BACKGROUND

2.1 Definition of pain

Pain is the most common symptom of any illness, and is defined by the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) as 'an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with either actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage' (1).

The alerting function of pain evokes protective responses, and is intended to keep tissue damage to a minimum. The capacity to experience pain has a protective role. If tissue damage is unavoidable, a cascade of changes occurs in the peripheral and central nervous system responsible for the perception of pain (2).

Acute pain - usually occurring in response to an identifiable noxious event with stimulation of the nociceptive system - has a time-limited course during which treatment, if necessary, is aimed at correcting the underlying pathological process. In contrast, maladaptive (pathological) pain offers no biological advantage because it is uncoupled from a noxious stimulus or tissue healing, and is usually persistent or recurrent. It may occur in response to damage to the nervous system. It is known as neuropathic pain, and is pain as a disease (3-5).

2.2 What is suffering?

Pain is a complex experience entailing physiological, sensory, affective, cognitive, and behavioural components. An individual's perception of the intensity of pain relates to the interactions of physical, psychological, cultural and spiritual factors (6).

Pain and suffering are closely identified, but are nevertheless distinct. Patients can experience severe pain without suffering (e.g. during childbirth), and suffering can include physical pain, but it is by no means limited to it. Patient distress also results from factors other than pain that add to suffering, such as anxiety, depression, nightmares, change in body perception, and changes in professional and social function.

The differences between pain and suffering are most pronounced in cancer pain patients. Cancer is one of the medical conditions patients fear most, because of the expectation that it will end in death, and that that death will be while in excruciating pain (7,8).

2.3 Nociception and innervation

Structure of the peripheral neural apparatus

Sensory information from the skin is transmitted to the central nervous system (dorsal horn of the spinal cord) via three different types of primary sensory neurones: Aβ-, Aδ-, and C-fibres.

These primary afferent neurones are responsible for transducing mechanical, chemical, and thermal information into electrical activity. Although all three classes can transmit non-nociceptive information, under physiological circumstances only C-fibres (dull pain) and Aδ-fibres (sharp pain) are capable of transmitting nociceptive information from the periphery to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. Thus, under normal circumstances, Aβ-fibres are responsive only to non-noxious mechanical stimuli, including touch, vibration and pressure (9-12). Nociceptive information for the viscera reaches the central nervous system along the sympathetic chains and pelvic parasympathetic chain. However, the density of visceral afferents is low compared with the skin, which can explain the poor localisation of noxious stimuli in the viscera (responsible for the diffuse nature of visceral pain) (13).

2.4 Neuropathic pain

Definition of neuropathic pain

Neuropathic pain is defined by the IASP as 'pain initiated or caused by a primary lesion or dysfunction of the nervous system' (2). While this definition has been useful in distinguishing some characteristics of neuropathic and nociceptive types of pain, a more precise definition has been developed (14): pain arising as a direct consequence of a lesion or disease affecting the somatosensory system. Where possible, neuropathic pain should be divided into peripheral or central neuropathic pain based on the anatomic location of the lesion or disease.

Both negative and positive sensory symptoms may be present. Positive signs include pain, paraesthesia, dysaesthesia, hyperalgesia, and allodynia. Negative signs involve sensory deficits (hypoaesthesia and hypoalgesia), weakness, and reflex changes. Clinically, patients may complain of spontaneous ongoing pain (stimulus-independent pain) that is burning, with intermittent shooting or electric shock-like (lancinating) sensations, and/or have pain hypersensitivity evoked in response to stimuli (stimulus-evoked pain) such as hyperalgesia and allodynia (15,16).

Mechanisms of neuropathic pain

A change in function, chemistry, and the structure of neurones (neural plasticity) leads to the production of the altered sensitivity characteristics of neuropathic pain. Peripheral sensitisation acts on the nociceptors, and central sensitisation takes place at various levels ranging from the dorsal horn to the brain. In addition, abnormal interactions between the sympathetic and sensory pathways contribute to mechanisms mediating neuropathic pain (17,18).

2.5 Innervation of the urogenital system

The differences between the mechanisms of nociception in the skin and viscera have been emphasised by studies of the response properties of visceral afferents from the urinary tract (19-21). (see also EAU Guidelines "Chronic Pelvic Pain", Chapter 2)

Ureter

The only sensation that can be evoked from the ureter is pain, whereas other organs such as the bladder can give rise to several sensations ranging from mild fullness to pain.

Ureteric afferents are thinly myelinated or unmyelinated, and respond to direct probing of a limited area of tissue. Two populations of afferents have been distinguished by Cervero and Jänig (22). The first responds to contractions of the ureter and is also excited by low levels of distension. The second group does not respond to peristaltic contractions of the ureter, but it is excited by distension with a wide range of thresholds (22).

Activation of muscarinic and adrenergic receptors increases the amplitude of urteral contractions. The sympathetic nerves modulate contraction by α-adrenoceptors and relaxation by α-adrenoceptors. The purinergic system is important in sensory/motor functions. Important non-adrenergic non-cholinergic transmitters are ATP, nitric oxid (NO) and serotonin, as well as the prostataglandins F2, E1 and E2 (23). Understanding ureteral function and physiology is the basis for developing new drugs, for example, in renal colic (23).

Urinary bladder

Two distinct groups of afferent fibres capable of signalling noxious stimuli have been identified in the urinary bladder. Most visceral afferents from the urinary bladder are unmyelinated fibres, although a population of

myelinated A-fibres is also present (18). The majority of visceral primary afferents from the bladder, urethra and reproductive and other pelvic organs encode for both noxious and non-noxious stimuli (19-21).

Graded distension of the healthy urinary bladder in humans initially gives rise to a sensation of fullness and eventually pain as volume increases and intravesical pressure exceeds 25-35 mmHg (19-21). In the inflamed bladder, the sensations during bladder emptying become unpleasant and painful. Nearly all afferents are small, myelinated or unmyelinated, and travel with sympathetic (hypogastric) or parasympathetic (pelvic) nerves.

Male reproductive organs
The sensory innervation of the testes (dog model) shows that more than 95% of the fibres of the superior spermatic nerve are unmyelinated, with the great majority having polymodal properties (i.e., responding to mechanical, chemical and thermal stimuli) (24). Myelinated and unmyelinated afferent fibres form a homogeneous group with polymodal receptors in testes and/or epididymis. Prostaglandins do not excite but sensitise the afferents to other stimuli (25).

2.6 Pain evaluation and measurement

*2.6.1 **Pain evaluation***

Health professionals should ask about pain, and the patient's self-report should be the primary source of assessment. Clinicians should assess pain with easily administered rating scales, and should document the efficacy of pain relief at regular intervals after starting or changing treatment.

Systematic evaluation of pain involves the following steps.

- Evaluate its severity.
- Take a detailed history of the pain, including an assessment of its intensity and character.
- Evaluate the psychological state of the patient, including an assessment of mood and coping responses.
- Perform a physical examination, emphasising the neurological examination.
- Perform an appropriate diagnostic work-up to determine the cause of the pain, which may include tumour markers.
- Perform radiological studies, scans, etc.
- Re-evaluate therapy.

The initial evaluation of pain should include a description of the pain using the PQRST characteristics:

P Palliative or provocative factors: 'What makes it less intense?'
Q Quality: 'What is it like?'
R Radiation: 'Does it spread anywhere else?'
S Severity: 'How severe is it?'
T Temporal factors: 'Is it there all the time, or does it come and go?'

Pain in patients with cancer is a complex phenomenon. Not all pains will be of malignant origin, they will often have more than one pain problem, and each pain must be individually assessed and evaluated. A key principle is constantly to re-evaluate pain and the effect and side-effects of analgesic therapy.

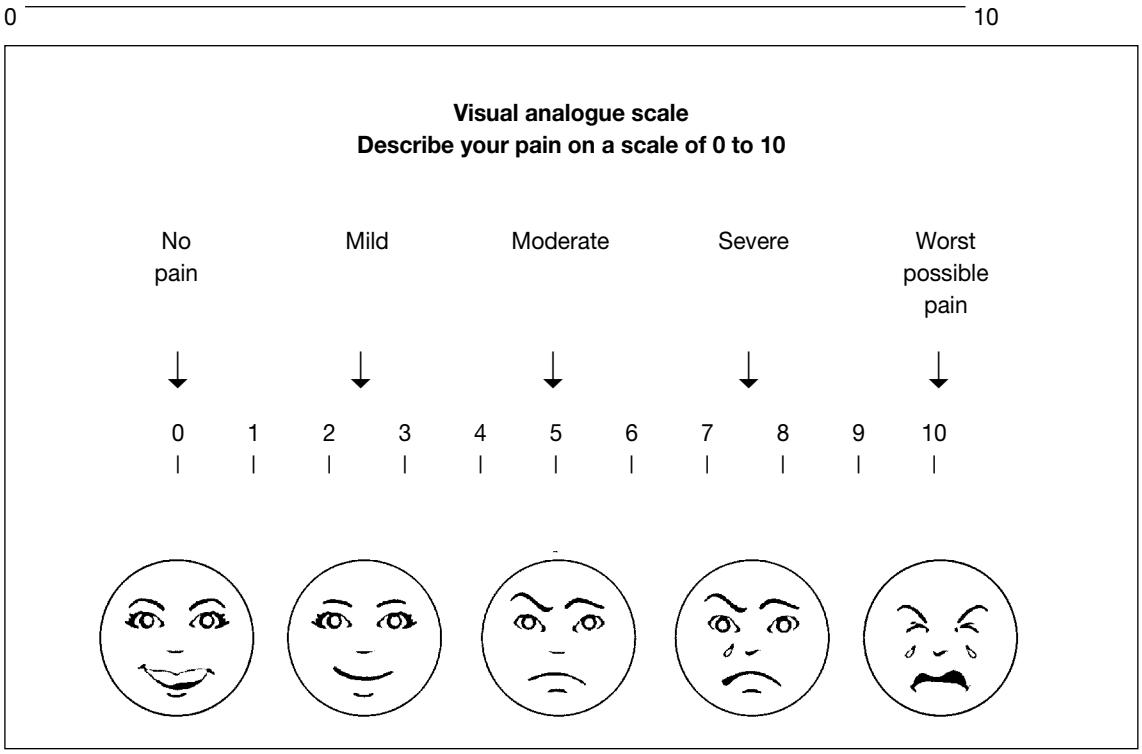
Pain in cancer patients could be caused by the cancer itself, be due to secondary muscular spasm, be secondary to cancer treatments, or have no relation to the cancer, e.g. arthritis.

In general, cancer pain consists of two broad diagnostic types: nociceptive and neuropathic pain. When evaluating pain, it is useful to try to determine whether the pain is one of these types or a mixture of the two. Nociceptive pain includes bone pain and soft tissue pain. Typically it is described as a dull, aching pain. This type of pain will be largely sensitive to non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and opioids. Neuropathic pain results from damage to the peripheral or central nervous system. It is usually described as a burning or sharp, shooting pain. Neuropathic pain is usually not particularly responsive to NSAIDs or opioids. Adjuvant analgesics such as anti-depressants and anti-convulsants should be used in the first instance.

*2.6.2 **Assessing pain intensity and quality of life (QoL)***

There are several rating scales available to assess pain. Rating pain using a visual analogue scale (VAS, Figure 1) or collection of VAS scales (such as the brief pain inventory) is an essential part of pain assessment. Its ease of use and analysis has resulted in its widespread adoption. It is, however, limited for the assessment of chronic pain.

Figure 1: Visual analogue scale



To study the effects of both physical and non-physical influences on patient well-being, an instrument must assess more dimensions than the intensity of pain or other physical symptoms. Several validated questionnaires to assess various QoL dimensions are available, including the Medical Outcomes Short-Form Health Survey Questionnaire 36 (SF-36), and the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Quality of Life Core Questionnaire (EORTC QLQ-C30) (26-30).

2.7 References

1. Merskey H, Bogduk N (eds). Classification of chronic pain: descriptions of chronic pain syndromes and definitions of pain terms. Seattle: IASP Press,1994.
2. Jacobson L, Mariano AJ. General considerations of chronic pain. In: Loeser JD, ed. Bonica's Management of Pain. Philadelphia: Lippincott Willimas & Wilkins, 2001, pp. 241-254.
3. Woolf CJ. Pain: moving from symptom control toward mechanism-specific pharmacologic management. Ann Intern Med 2004 Mar;140(6):441-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15023710
4. Scholtz J, Woolf CJ. Can we conquer pain? Nat Neurosci 2002 Nov;5 Suppl:1062-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12403987
5. Wiertelak EP, Smith KP, Furness L, et al. Acute and conditioned hyperalgesic responses to illness. Pain 1994 Feb;56(2):227-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8008412
6. Turk DC, Sist TC, Okifuji A, et al. Adaptation to metastatic cancer cancer pain, regional/local cancer pain and non-cancer pain: role of psychological and behavioral factors. Pain 1998 Feb;74(2-3):247-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9520239
7. Portenoy RK, Lesage P. Management of cancer pain. Lancet 1999 May;353(9165):1695-700. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10335806
8. Cassel EJ. The nature of suffering. N Eng J Med 1982 Mar;306(11):639-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7057823
9. Belemonte C, Cervero F. Neurobiology of Nociceptors. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996.
10. Julius D, Basbaum AI. Molecular mechanisms of nociception. Nature 2001 Sep;413(6852):203-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11557989
11. Willis WD, Westlund KN. Neuroanatomy of the pain system and of the pathways that modulate pain. J Clin Neurophysiol 1997 Jan;14(1):2-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9013357

12. Romanelli P, Esposito V. The functional anatomy of neuropathic pain. Neurosurg Clin NAm 2004 Jul;15(3):257-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15246335
13. Westlund KN. Visceral nociception. Curr Rev Pain 2000;4(6):478-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11060594
14. Treede RD, Jensen TS, Campbell JN, et al. Neuropathic pain: redefinition and a grading system for clinical and research purposes. Neurology. 2008 Apr 29;70(18):1630-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18003941
15. Chong MS, Bajwa ZH. Diagnosis and treatment of neuropathic pain. J Pain Symptom Manage 2003 May;25(5 Suppl):S4-S11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12694987
16. Rasmussen PV, Sindrup SH, Jensen TS, et al. Symptoms and signs in patients with suspected neuropathic pain. Pain 2004 Jul;110(1-2):461-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15275799
17. Millan MJ. The induction of pain: an integrative review. Prog Neurobiol 1999 Jan;57(1):1-164.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9987804
18. Besson JM. The neurobiology of pain. Lancet 1999 May;353(9164):1610-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10334274
19. Häbler HJ, Jänig W, Koltzenburg M. Activation of unmyelinated afferent fibres by mechanical stimuli and inflammation of the urinary bladder in the cat. J Physiol 1990 Jun;425:545-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2213588
20. Bahns E, Ernsberger U, Jänig W, et al. Functional characteristics of lumbar visceral afferent fibres from the urinary bladder and the urethra in the cat. Pflügers Arch 1986 Nov;407(5):510-18.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3786110
21. Bahns E, Halsband U, Jänig W. Responses of sacral visceral afferent fibres from the lower urinary tract, colon, and anus to mechanical stimulation. Pflügers Arch 1987 Oct;410(3):296-303.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3684516
22. Cervero F, Jänig W. Visceral nociceptors: A new world order?. Trends Neurosci. 1992;15(10):374-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1279857
23. Canda AE, Turna B, Cinar GM, Nazli O. Physiology and pharmacology of the human ureter: basis for current and futrue treatments. Urol Int. 2007;78(4):289-98
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17495484
24. Meyer RA, Campbell JN, Raja SN. Peripheral neural mechanisms of nociception In: Wall PD, Melzack R(eds). Textbook of Pain. 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingston, 1994, pp. 13-44.
25. Kumazawa T. Sensory innervation of reproductive organs. Prog Brain Res 1986;67:115-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3823468
26. Jensen MP. The validity and reliability of pain measures in adults with cancer. J Pain 2003 Feb;4(1): 2-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14622723
27. Rosier EM, Iadarola MJ, Coghill RC. Reproducibility of pain measurement and pain perception. Pain 2002 Jul;98(1-2):205-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12098633
28. Fosnocht DE, Chapman CR, Swanson ER, et al. Correlation of change in visual analog scale with pain relief in the ED. Am J Emerg Med 2005 Jan;23(1):55-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15672339
29. Graham B. Generic health instruments, visual analog scales, and the measurement of clinical phenomena. J Rheumatol 1999 May;26(5):1022-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10332963
30. Scott DL, Garrood T. Quality of life measures: use and abuse. Ballieres Best Pract Research Clinical Rheumatol 2000 Dec;14(4):663-87.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11092795

3. CANCER PAIN MANAGEMENT (GENERAL)

3.1 Classification of cancer pain

The physical causes of pain are either nociceptive or neuropathic. In cancer patients, nociceptive pain tends to be caused by invasion of the bone, soft tissues or viscera (e.g. bowel, bladder), and neuropathic pain by nerve

compression or infiltration.

Urogenital neoplasms frequently metastasise to bone (e.g. spine, pelvis, skull). Bone metastases are associated with pathological fractures, hypercalcaemia and neurological deficits, leading to substantial impairment of QoL. The release of algogenic substances in the tissue, microfractures and periosteal tension are the main mechanism for pain sensation (1).

Pain caused by bone metastasis is nociceptive, but can become neuropathic if the tumour invades or compresses a nerve, neural plexus or spinal cord. One-third of patients with tumour-related pain are affected by neuropathic pain components (2). Nociceptive pain is well localised. Initially it occurs on physical movement, but later might also occur at rest.

Neuropathic pain frequently has a constant 'burning' character. The efficacy of opioids may be diminished in neuropathic pain, making co-analgesia necessary (3). Patients with severe neuropathic pain are a special challenge. Psychological changes frequently occur, and specific therapeutic intervention may be necessary (4).

The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends a stepwise scheme for the treatment of cancer pain syndromes and neoplastic bone pain. Bisphosphonates and calcitonin are helpful for stabilising bone metabolism. Epidural and intrathecal opioids are sometimes useful in managing metastatic bone pain. Selected patients with neuropathic pain sometimes benefit from nerve destruction by intrathecal or epidural phenol (5).

3.1.1 ***References***

1. Mercadante S. Malignant bone pain: pathophysiology and treatment. Pain 1997 Jan;69(1-2):1-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9060007
2. Grond S, Zech D, Diefenbach C, et al. Assessment of cancer pain: a prospective evaluation of 2266 cancer patients referred to a pain service. Pain 1996 Jan;64(1):107-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8867252
3. Sindrup SH, Jensen TS. Efficacy of pharmacological treatments of neuropathic pain: an update and effect related to mechanism of drug action. Pain 1999 Dec;83(3):389-400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10568846
4. Mercadante S, Portenoy RK. Opioid poorly-responsive cancer pain. Part 3. Clinical strategies to Improve opioid responsiveness. J Pain Symptom Manage 2001 Apr;21(4):338-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11312049
5. Stevens RA, Stotz A. Neurolytic blocks for management of oncologic pain. Cancer Res Ther Control 1999;9:345-53.

3.2 General principles of cancer pain management

The four goals of care are:

- prolonging survival
- optimising comfort
- optimising function
- relieving pain.

Pain leads to a vicious cycle of sleeplessness, worry, despair, isolation, hopelessness, depression, and escalation of pain. The following hierarchy of general treatment principles is useful in guiding the selection of pain management choices.

1. Individualised treatment for each patient.
2. Causal therapy to be preferred over symptomatic therapy.
3. Local therapy to be preferred over systemic therapy.
4. Systemic therapy with increasing invasiveness (the WHO ladder).
5. Conformance with palliative guidelines.
6. Both psychological counselling and physical therapy from the very beginning.

The fundamental principle is the individualisation of therapy. Repeated evaluations allow the selection and administration of therapy to be individualised in order to achieve and maintain a favourable balance between pain relief and adverse effects.

The next steps in the hierarchy, especially points 2-4, necessitate a continuing risk-to-benefit assessment between therapeutic outcome versus tolerability and willingness to accept adverse effects.

The more invasive the therapy, the more difficult the decisions become. This is particularly true with palliative medicine, where the prospects of healing are limited and there is the problem of working against time.

If local therapy is not feasible or cannot be well tolerated, then symptomatic measures are appropriate, although local therapy is to be preferred over systemic treatment. In simple cases, measures such as drainage and stenting can make analgesic medication redundant, e.g. gastric probe, ureteral

stent, percutaneous nephrostomy, bladder catheter. Patients with recurrent subileus caused by peritoneal carcinomatosis are immediately relieved of their pain when they are given an artificial anus.

The indication is in direct relation to the severity of the disease and the operation, especially if the aim is palliative, although such cases are sometimes in particular need of invasive measures, not only to relieve pain in the terminal phase, but also to improve the general QoL, despite the potential for surgery to have a negative impact on patients' wellbeing. Examples include evisceration to prevent cloaca in cervical carcinoma, or implanting a prosthetic hip due to a pathological fracture originating in metastasised bladder or kidney cancer.

When dose escalation of a systemically administered opioid proves unsatisfactory, the following gradual strategy can be considered (LE: 4):

- Switch to another opioid.
- Intervene with an appropriate primary therapy or other non-invasive analgesic approach.
- Pursue psychological, rehabilitative and neurostimulatory techniques (e.g. transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation).
- Use invasive analgesic techniques after careful evaluation of the likelihood and duration of the analgesic benefit, the immediate risks, and the morbidity of the procedure (epidural infusion).
- Use neurodestructive procedures (chemical or surgical neurolysis, coeliac plexus blockade).
- Some patients with advanced cancer where comfort is the overriding goal can elect to be deeply sedated.

The importance of physiotherapy and psychological counselling cannot be emphasised too strongly.

3.3 Non-pharmacological therapies

3.3.1 ***Surgery***

Surgery may have a role in the relief of symptoms caused by specific problems, such as obstruction of a hollow viscus, unstable bony structures and compression of neural tissues or draining of symptomatic ascites (1-3). The potential benefits must be weighed against the risks of surgery, the anticipated length of hospitalisation and convalescence, and the predicted duration of benefit. Radical surgery to excise locally advanced disease in patients with no evidence of metastatic spread may be palliative, and potentially increase the survival of some patients (4) (LE: 2b).

3.3.1.1 References

1. Williams MR. The place of surgery in terminal care. In: Saunders C (ed) The management of terminal disease. London: Edward Arnold, 1984; pp. 148-153.
2. Boraas M. Palliative surgery. Semin Oncol 1985 Dec;12(4):368-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2417321
3. Sundaresan N, DiGiacinto GV. Antitumor and antinociceptive approaches to control cancer pain. Med Clin North Am 1987 Mar;71(2):329-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2881035
4. Temple WJ, Ketcham AS. Sacral resection for control of pelvic tumours. Am J Surg 1992 Apr;163(4):370-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1373043

3.3.2 ***Radionuclides***

3.3.2.1 Clinical background

Bone metastases are the most frequent source of pain during the evolution of cancers (1). Approximately 30% of patients with osseous metastases have pain that requires analgesia, interfering with QoL, causing anxiety, isolation, immobility, depression, and sleeplessness (1).
In single lesions, bone stability and pain reduction can be achieved by external beam radiotherapy (LE: 1b) (GR: A). About 80-90% of patients will experience durable pain relief, but many will develop further multiple painful metastases (1).

3.3.2.2 Radiopharmaceuticals: physical characteristics

- Strontium-89 chloride (^{89}Sr) emits a beta particle with a maximum energy of 1.46 MeV, a mean energy of 0.58 MeV, an average soft-tissue range of 2.4 mm and 0.01% abundant gamma emission with a 0.91 MeV photopeak. The physical half-life is 50.5 days (2,3).
- Samarium-153 lexidronam (^{153}Sm) emits a beta particle with a maximum energy of 0.81 MeV, a mean energy of 0.23 MeV, an average soft-tissue range of 0.6 mm and 28% abundant 0.103 MeV gamma emission with a 0.103 MeV photopeak. The physical half-life is 1.9 days (4).

- Renium-186 etidronate (^{186}Re) emits a beta particle with a maximum energy of 1.07 MeV, a mean energy of 0.349 MeV, an average soft-tissue range of 1.1 mm and a 9% abundant gamma emission with a 0.137 MeV photopeak. The physical half-life is 3.7 days (5).
- Therapy in this context means the intravenous administration of ^{89}Sr or ^{153}Sm (^{153}Sm ethylenediaminetetramethylenephosphonate [EDTMP]).

The most important radiopharmaceuticals are ^{89}Sr, ^{153}Sm and, to a lesser extent, ^{186}Re. There is no clear difference in treatment response between them (2), but, because of the differences in half-life, there is a difference in onset and duration of response, and in toxicity. For ^{153}Sm and ^{186}Re, the onset of response is rapid but duration is shorter (6,7). Note that ^{186}Re is no longer used in many European countries.

3.3.2.3 Indications and contraindications

^{89}Sr and ^{153}Sm are indicated for the treatment of bone pain resulting from skeletal metastases involving more than one site and associated with an osteoblastic response on bone scan but without spinal cord compression (1,8-15) (LE: 2, GR: B).

^{89}Sr and ^{153}Sm have no place in the management of acute or chronic spinal cord compression or in treating pathological fracture (1,8,11) (LE: 2, GR: B).

Some 60-80% of patients presenting with osteoblastic metastases benefit from ^{89}Sr and/or ^{153}Sm (1) (LE: 2). The choice between the two depends solely on practical considerations. ^{89}Sr and/or ^{153}Sm should be administered by a slow (^{89}Sr) or bolus (^{153}Sm) injection using an intravenous (iv) catheter. The recommended doses are 148 MBq (^{89}Sr) (16) and 37 MBq/kg (^{153}Sm) (1,16) (LE: 2).

About 10% of patients experience a temporary increase in bone pain (pain flare) (3,6,7,17), generally 2-4 days after ^{153}Sm, and 1-2 weeks after ^{89}Sr (acute side-effect) (1,4,8,11,12,15,18). Pain flare is associated with a good clinical response (LE: 2) (3,6,7,17), and sometimes requires a transient increase in analgesia. Pain reduction is unlikely to occur within the first week, and can occur as late as 1 month after injection. Analgesics should therefore be continued until bone pain improves (GR: B). Late side-effects include temporary myelosuppression (platelets, white blood cells). Recovery occurs 4-6 weeks later depending on bone marrow reserve. There is generally no significant effect on haemoglobin.

The patient can pose a radiation exposure risk for 2-4 days after ^{153}Sm, and 7-10 days after ^{89}Sr (4,8,11,13-15,18-23) (LE: 2). Information about radioprotection should be provided (GR: B).
If the pain responds to the initial treatment, administration of ^{153}Sm can be repeated at intervals of 8-12 weeks in the presence of recurrent pain (1,2,23) (LE: 2, GR: B). The response rate for second and subsequent treatments may be lower than for the first (1,8,12,23) (LE: 2).

3.3.2.4 Contraindications

Absolute contraindications:

- During or within 4 weeks of myelotoxic chemotherapy (all compounds except cisplatin), or within 12 weeks of hemibody external radiation therapy. The delay between these treatments and metabolic radiotherapy is necessary to avoid severe haematopoietic toxicity. However, treatment can be safely combined with limited local field external beam radiotherapy (LE: 3, GR: C).
- Known hypersensitivity to EDTMP or similar phosphonate compounds for ^{153}Sm (1).
- Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) < 30 mL/min (1,2).
- Pregnancy; continued breastfeeding (2).

Relative contraindications:

- Not recommended for women of child-bearing age (negative pregnancy test and contraception mandatory).
- In acute or chronic severe renal failure (GFR 30-60 mL/min), the dose administered should be adapted: if the GFR is > 60 mL/min, reduce the normal dosage by 25%; if the GFR is 30-60 mL/min, reduce the normal dosage by 50% (LE: 4). GFR should be measured if creatinine is > 20 mg/L.
- With a single painful lesion: external limited field radiotherapy should be performed (16,24) (LE: 1b).

Caution:

Caution must be used in the following circumstances.

- Risk of fracture.
- Nerve or spinal cord compression that requires other treatments in an emergency: external radiotherapy or surgery, or a combination of the two.
- Urinary incontinence: special recommendations including catheterisation before administration of the radionuclide. The catheter should remain in place for 4 days (^{89}Sr), 3 days (^{186}Re), and 24 hours (^{153}Sm), respectively (2) (GR: A).

- Compromised bone marrow reserve.
- White blood cell count of < 2500/µL (LE: 4) (preferably > 3500/µL according to European Association of Nuclear Medicine guidelines) (2).
- Platelets < 80,000/µL (LE: 4) (preferably > 100,000/µL according to the European Association of Nuclear Medicine guidelines) (2).
- Haemoglobin < 90 g/L (2).

3.3.2.5 References

1. Ackery D, Yardley J. Radionuclide-targeted therapy for the management of metastatic bone pain. Semin Oncol 1993 Jun;20(3)(Suppl 2):27-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7684862
2. Bodei L, Lam M, Chiesa C, et al. EANM procedure guidelines for treatment of refractory metastatic bone pain. Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging 2008 Oct;35(10):1934-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18649080
3. Taylor AR Jr. Strontium-89 for the palliation of bone pain due to metastatic disease. J Nucl Med 1994 Dec;35(12):2054. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7527458
4. Farhanghi M, Holmes RA, Volkert WA, et al. Samarium-153-EDTMP: pharmacokinetic, toxicity and pain response using an escalating dose schedule in treatment of metastatic bone cancer. J Nucl Med 1992 Aug;33(8):1451-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1378887
5. De Klerk JM, Zonnenberg BA, Blijham GH, et al. Treatment of metastatic bone pain using the bone seeking radiopharmaceutical Re-186-HEDP. Anticancer Res 1997 May;17:1773-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9179233
6. Finlay IG, Mason MD, Shelley M. Radioisotopes for the palliation of metastatic bone cancer: a systematic review; Lancet Oncol 2005 Jun;6(6):392-400. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925817
7. Lewington VJ. Bone-seeking radiopharmaceuticals. J Nucl Med 2005 Jan;46 Suppl 1:38S-47S. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15653650
8. Ahonen A, Joensuu H, Hiltunen J, et al. Samarium-153-EDTMP in bone metastases. J Nucl Biol Med 1994 Dec;38(4 Suppl1):123-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7543288
9. Collins C, Eary JF, Donaldson G, et al. Samarium-153 -EDTMP in bone metastases of hormone refractory prostate carcinoma: a phase I/II trial. J Nucl Med 1993 Nov;34(11):1839-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8229221
10. Crawford ED, Kozlowski JM, Debruyne FM, et al. The use of strontium 89 for palliation of pain from bone metastases associated with hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Urology 1994 Oct;44(4):481-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7524233
11. Giammarile F, Mognetti T, Resche I. Bone pain palliation with strontium-89 in cancer patients with bone metastases. Q J Nucl Med 2001 Mar;45(1):78-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11456379
12. Krishnamurthy GT, Krishnamurthy S. Radionuclides for metastatic bone pain palliation: a need for rational re-evaluation in the new millennium. J Nucl Med 2000 Apr;41(4):688-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10768570
13. Laing AH, Ackery DM, Bayly RJ, et al. Strontium-89 chloride for pain palliation in prostatic skeletal malignancy. Br J Radiol 1991 Sep;64(765):816-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1717094
14. Lee CK, Aeppli DM, Unger J, et al. Strontium-89 chloride (Metastron) for palliative treatment of bony metastases. The University of Minnesota experience. Am J Clin Oncol 1996 Apr;19(2):102-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8610630
15. Lewington VJ. Targeted radionuclide therapy for bone metastases. Eur J Nucl Med 1993 Jan;20(1): 66-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7678397
16. Porter AT, McEwan AJ, Powe JE, et al. Results of a randomized phase-III trial to evaluate the efficacy of strontium-89 adjuvant to local field external beam irradiation in the management of endocrine resistant metastatic prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1993 Apr;25(5):805-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8478230

17. Resche I, Chatal JF, Pecking A, et al. A dose-controlled study of ^{153}Sm-ethylenediaminetetramethylenephosphonate (EDTMP) in the treatment of patients with painful bone metastases. Eur J Cancer 1997 Sep;33:1583-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9389919
18. McEwan AJ, Porter AT, Venner PM, et al. An evaluation of the safety and efficacy of treatment with strontium-89 in patients who have previously received wide field radiotherapy. Antibody Immunoconjug Radiopharm 1990;3(2):91-8.
19. Eary JF, Collins C, Stabin M, et al. Samarium-153-EDTMP biodistribution and dosimetry estimation. J Nucl Med 1993 Jul;34(7):1031-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7686217
20. McEwan AJ, Amyotte GA, McGowan DG, et al. A retrospective analysis of the cost effectiveness of treatment with Metastron (^{89}Sr-Chloride) in patients with prostate cancer metastatic to bone. Nucl Med Commun 1994 Jul;15(7):499-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7970425
21. Nightengale B, Brune M, Blizzard SP, et al. Strontium chloride Sr 89 for treating pain from metastatic bone disease.Am J Health Syst Pharm 1995 Oct;52(20):2189-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8564588
22. Pons F, Herranz R, Garcia A, et al. Strontium-89 for palliation of pain from bone metastases in patients with prostate and breast cancer. Eur J Nucl Med 1997 Oct;24(10):1210-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9323260
23. Sartor O, Reid RH, Bushnell DL, et al. Safety and efficacy of repeat administration of samarium Sm-153 lexidronam to patients with metastatic bone pain. Cancer 2007 Feb;109(3):637-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17167764
24. Quilty PM, Kirk D, Bolger JJ, et al. A comparison of the palliative effects of strontium-89 and external beam radiotherapy in metastatic prostate cancer. Radiother Oncol 1994 Apr;31(1):33-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7518932

3.3.3 ***Radiotherapy for metastatic bone pain***

3.3.3.1 Clinical background

Radiotherapy alleviates metastatic bone pain in the majority of patients (1) (LE: 1a). Pain relief is obtained in 50-80% of patients, with complete pain relief at the treated site in up to 30% of patients (1,2) (LE: 1a). The onset of pain relief varies from a few days to 4 weeks (1) (LE: 2b). Re-irradiation should therefore not be considered sooner than 4-6 weeks after the initial radiotherapy. The median duration of pain relief reported by most studies is 3-6 months (1) (LE: 1a).

3.3.3.2 Mechanism of pain relief by radiotherapy

Tumour shrinkage and inhibition of the release of chemical pain mediators are the main mechanisms by which radiotherapy relieves pain. Tumour shrinkage is unlikely to account for early pain relief, which is hypothesised to involve early-reacting and sensitive cells, as well as the molecules that they produce. Obvious candidates are the inflammatory cells present in the bone metastasis microenvironment. Reduction of these cells by ionising radiation inhibits the release of chemical pain mediators, and is probably responsible for the rapid reaction seen in some patients. Another possible mechanism for the analgesic action of ionising irradiation includes its direct effect on osteoclast activity (3) (LE: 3).

3.3.3.3 Imaging

The detection of bone metastases is usually based on 99m technetium bone scintigraphy, which lacks diagnostic specificity (11) (LE: 3), but the addition of single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) to planar acquisition has been reported to improve its diagnostic accuracy (12-14) (LE: 2b). Regions of increased uptake need further investigation. Plain films have a false-negative rate of 10-17% (LE: 3). At least 50% erosion must be present for a change to be seen on plain films (15) (LE: 3). The combination of bone scintigraphy and plain films results in specificity of 64% and sensitivity of 63% (16) (LE: 3).

Because of the complex anatomy of the vertebrae, computed tomography (CT) is more useful than conventional radiography for evaluating the location of lesions and analysing bone destruction and condensation (17). When combined with myelography, excellent information about the bony anatomy and an accurate view of the compressed neural elements is provided (18-19) (LE: 3). However, CT myelography is invasive and time-intensive, and so, particularly when spinal cord compression is suspected, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is currently the gold standard for detection and therapeutic management (20-24) (LE: 2b), with sensitivity of 93% (25) (LE: 3) and specificity of 96% (25) (LE: 3).

3.3.3.4 Radiotherapy scheme

Single-fraction radiotherapy is as effective as multifraction radiotherapy in relieving metastatic bone pain (1, 4-8) (LE: 1a). However, the rates of retreatment and pathological fractures are higher after single-fraction radiotherapy (1,9) (LE: 1a).

Single-fraction radiotherapy is the treatment of choice for alleviating bone pain because of its greater convenience for patients (LE: 1a), as well as faster patient turnover for the radiotherapy unit (10) and lower costs (5,11) (LE: 3). The recommended dose is 8 Gy (LE: 1a) (1,4-8,12,13). Pain relief can be achieved in a significant number of patients with lower doses (LE: 1b), but some studies have indicated that 4 Gy is less effective than 8 Gy (1) (LE: 1b). A dose of 6 Gy gives similar results to 8 Gy but has been insufficiently studied (1) (LE: 1b). A dose of 8 Gy in combination with zoledronic acid is associated with a longer period without skeletal events, compared to 6 Gy with zoledronic acid (14).These lower doses should be borne in mind if a third retreatment is necessary, or if there is concern about radiation tolerance (1) (LE: 2b).

In cases of oligometastases (< 5), a case can be made for aggressive therapy, such as radiosurgery or high-dose radiotherapy to improve survival (LE: 3).

3.3.3.5 Spinal cord compression

Metastatic epidural spinal cord compression (MSCC) is a common, severe complication of malignancy. The most common symptom is back pain (83-95%), and weakness is present in 35-75%. The level of neurological function at the start of treatment determines the functional outcome (15). A delay in treatment, surgery or external radiotherapy is the most common cause of an unfavourable outcome. Magnetic resonance imaging is the best tool for diagnosing MSCC (16).

Corticosteroids reduce oedema and might have an oncolytic effect on certain tumours, such as lymphoma, breast cancer and leukaemia. However, the extent of the benefit obtained from corticosteroids and the optimal dosage are unclear. High-dose corticosteroids carry a significant risk of adverse affects. One randomised controlled trial of patients with carcinomatous MSCC has compared radiotherapy with or without dexamethasone, and showed significantly better functional outcome when dexamethasone was added (17) (LE: 1b).

Radiotherapy is generally the treatment of choice. Surgery is reserved for a selected group of patients who meet the criteria listed below.

To date, there is no standard radiotherapy regimen for MSCC. In general, a multifraction regimen (10 × 3 Gy) is preferable in these patients because it allows for a higher dose and thus greater reduction in tumour size. For patients whose chances of survival are estimated to be poor, a short course of radiotherapy is advised (e.g., 1 × 8 Gy (18) or 2 × 8 Gy (19) (LE: 1b). A small randomised trial, including patients with MSCC and a short life-expectancy (≤ 6 months), has compared a short-course (2 × 8 Gy) with a split-course (5 × 3 Gy followed by 3 × 5 Gy) radiotherapy regimen, and has concluded that there were no significant differences in functional outcome or toxicity (19).

Several uncontrolled surgical trials (20-22) and one meta-analysis (23) have indicated that direct decompressive surgery is superior to radiotherapy alone with regard to regaining ambulatory and sphincter function, and obtaining pain relief (LE: 1a). However, the decision to pursue surgery must be tempered by awareness of the attendant significant morbidity and mortality risks. Careful patient selection is of utmost importance; the criteria are shown in Table 3 (LE: 3).

Table 3: Criteria for selecting patients for primary therapy for spinal cord compression

Absolute criteria	**Surgery**	**Radiotherapy**
Operability	Medically operable	Medically inoperable
Duration of paraplegia	< 48 h	≥ 48 h
Life expectancy	> 3 months	< 3 months
Radiosensitivity		Highly sensitive
Relative criteria		
Diagnosis of primary tumour	Unknown	Known
Bone fragments with compression	Present	Absent
Number of foci of compression	1 focus	> 1 foci

A randomised prospective trial has demonstrated that patients treated with a combination of surgery followed by radiotherapy can remain ambulatory longer, and those who are not ambulatory at presentation have a better chance of regaining ambulatory function than those treated with radiotherapy alone (24) (LE: 1b).

3.3.3.6 Pathological fractures

In patients with impending pathological fractures (e.g., femoral lesion with an axial cortical involvement > 30 mm), a prophylactic orthopaedic procedure should be considered (25).

3.3.3.7 Side effects

Side effects are related to the total dose, fractionation size, and the localisation of the metastases. Acute grade 2-4 toxicity is more frequent after multifraction radiotherapy regimens. The incidence of late toxicity is low (9).

The side effects are mostly transient, lasting a few days and include:

1) pain flare (within 24 h and due to oedema). Pain flare is common after palliative radiotherapy for bone metastases, and patients should be counselled accordingly and given breakthrough opioids. Patients receiving single-fraction radiotherapy may be at higher risk than those receiving multifraction radiotherapy (26). A small phase II study has shown that 8 mg dexamethasone is effective for prophylaxis of radiotherapy-induced pain flare after palliative radiotherapy for bone metastases (LE: 3) (27).
2) symptoms depend on the treatment field and location and can include:
   - nausea (especially with larger fields)
   - diarrhoea
   - irritation of the throat and oesophagus.

3.3.3.8 References

1. Wu JS, Wong R, Johnston M, et al. Meta-analysis of dose-fractionation radiotherapy trials for the palliation of painful bone metastases. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2003 Mar 1;55(3):594-605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12573746
2. Chow E, Harris K, Fan G, et al. Palliative radiotherapy trials for bone metastases: A systematic review. J Clin Oncol 2007 Apr 10;25(11):1423-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17416863
3. Jeremic B. Single fraction external beam radiation therapy in the treatment of localized metastatic bone pain. A review. J Pain Symptom Manage 2001 Dec;22(6):1048-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11738168
4. Foro Arnalot P, Fontanals AV, Galceran JC, et al. Randomized clinical trial with two palliative radiotherapy regimens in painful bone metastases: 30 Gy in 10 fractions compared with 8 Gy in single fraction. Radiother Oncol 2008 Nov;89(2):150-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18556080
5. Sande TA, Ruenes R, Lund JA, et al. Long-term follow-up of cancer patients receiving radiotherapy for bone metastases: Results from a randomised multicentre trial. Radiother Oncol 2009 May;91(2):261-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19307034
6. Hamouda WE, Roshdy W, Teema M. Single versus conventional fractionated radiotherapy in the palliation of painful bone metastases. Gulf J Oncolog 2007 Jan;1(1):35-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20084712
7. Kaasa S, Brenne E, Lund JA, et al. Prospective randomised multicenter trial on single fraction radiotherapy (8 Gy x1) versus multiple fractions (3 Gy x10) in the treatment of painful bone metastases. Radiother Oncol 2006 Jun 79(3):278-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16793155
8. Lutz S, Berk L, Chang E, et al. Palliative radiotherapy for bone metastases: an ASTRO evidence-based guideline. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2011 Mar 15;79(4):965-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21277118
9. Hartsell W, Konski A, Scott C, et al. Randomized trial of short versus long-course radiotherapy for palliation of painful bone metastases. J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Jun 1;97(11):798-804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15928300
10. Ozsaran Z, Yalman, Anacak Y, et al. Palliative radiotherapy in bone metastases: Results of a randomized trial comparing three fractionation schedules. Journal of B.U.ON. (2001) 6:1 (43-48).
11. Van den Hout WB, van der Linden YM, Steenland E, et al. Single- versus multiple-fraction radiotherapy in patients with painful bone metastases: Cost-utility analysis based on a randomized trial. J Natl Cancer Inst 2003 Feb 5;95(3):222-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12569144

12. van der Linden YM, Steenland E, van Houwelingen HC, et al. Patients with a favourable prognosis are equally palliated with single and multiple fraction radiotherapy: Results on survival in the Dutch Bone Metastasis Study. Radiother Oncol 2006 Mar;78(3):245-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16545474
13. Badzio A, Senkus-Konefka E, Jereczek-Fossa BA, et al. 20 Gy in five fractions versus 8 Gy in one fraction in palliative radiotherapy of bone metastases. A multicenter randomized study. Nowotwory 2003;53(3):261-4.
14. Manas A, Casas F, Ciria JP, et al. Randomised study of single dose (8 Gy vs. 6 Gy) of analgesic radiotherapy plus zoledronic acid in patients with bone metastases. Clin Transl Oncol 2008 May;10(5):281-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18490245
15. Rades D, Fehlauer F, Hartmann A, et al. Reducing the overall treatment time for radiotherapy of metastatic spinal cord compression (MSCC): 3-year results of a prospective observational multi-center study. J Neurooncol 2004 Oct;70(1)77-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15527111
16. Jordan JE, Donaldson SS, Enzmann DR. Cost effectiveness and outcome assessment of magnetic resonance imaging in diagnosing cord compression. Cancer 1995 May;75(10):2979-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7736404
17. Sorensen PS, Helweg-Larsen S, Mouridsen H, et al. Effect of high-dose dexamethasone in carcinomatous metastatic spinal cord compression treated with radiotherapy: a randomized trial. Eur J Cancer 1994;30A(1):22-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8142159
18. Maranzano E, Trippa F, Casale M, et al. 8 Gy single-dose radiotherapy is effective in metastatic spinal cord compression: Results of a phase III randomized multicentre Italian trial. Radiother Oncol 2009 Nov;93(2):174-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19520448
19. Maranzano E, Bellavita R, Rossi R, et al. Short-course versus split-course radiotherapy in metastatic spinal cord compression: Results of a phase III, randomized, multicenter trial. J Clin Oncol 2005 May;23(15):3358-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15738534
20. Fourney DR, Abi-Said D, Lang FF, et al. Use of pedicle screw fixation management of malignant spinal disease: experience in 100 consecutive procedures. J Neurosurg 2001 Jan;94(1Suppl):25-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11147865
21. North RB, LaRocca VR, Schwartz J, et al. Surgical management of spinal metastases: analysis of prognostic factors during a 10-year experience. J Neurosurg 2005 May;2(5):564-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15945430
22. Wang JC, Boland P, Mitra N, et al. Single-stage posterolateral transpedicular approach for resection of epidural metastatic spine tumors involving the vertebral body with circumferential reconstruction: results in 140 patients. J Neurosurg 2004 Oct;1(3):287-98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15478367
23. Klimo P, Thompson CJ, Kestle JRW, et al. A meta-analysis of surgery versus conventional radiotherapy for the treatment of metastatic spinal epidural disease. Neuro Oncol 2005 Jan;7(1):64-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15701283
24. Patchell RA, Tibbs PA, Regine WF, et al. Direct decompressive surgical resection in the treatment of spinal cord compression caused by metastatic cancer: a randomised trial. Lancet 2005 Aug;366(9486):643-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16112300
25. Van Der Linden YM, Kroon HM, Dijkstra SP, et al. Simple radiographic parameter predicts fracturing in metastatic femoral bone lesions: Results from a randomised trial. Radiother Oncol 2003 Oct;69(1): 21-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14597353
26. Loblaw DA, Wu JSY, Kirkbride P, et al. Pain flare in patients with bone metastases after palliative radiotherapy. A nested randomized control trial. Support Care Cancer 2007 Apr;15(4):451-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17093912
27. Hird A, Zhang L, Holt T, et al. Dexamethasone for the Prophylaxis of Radiation-induced Pain Flare after Palliative Radiotherapy for Symptomatic Bone Metastases: a Phase II Study. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2009 May;21(4):329-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19232483

3.3.4 ***Psychological and adjunctive therapy***

3.3.4.1 Psychological therapies

The perception of pain and the suffering it causes derive from a combination of physical, emotional, spiritual, and social constructs. Psychological assessment and support are an integral and beneficial part of treating pain in cancer patients (1,2). There is evidence that highly emotional cancer patients, as detected through their own narratives, experience less pain than their less emotional counterparts (3).

Depression is the most prevalent psychiatric diagnosis in patients with cancer. Although there is no proof that psychotherapy is useful in non-cancer patients with depression, patients with incurable cancer can take advantage of this type of treatment (4). In this setting, structured psychotherapy seems to be more effective than antidepressant medication (5). Interestingly, effective psychological management results in a reduction in depressive complaints, inflammatory markers, pain, and fatigue in cancer patients (6).

Cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT), such as relaxation and distraction, can provide pain relief (7-9). As expected, protocols tailored to individual patient characteristics can result in higher satisfaction in terms of pain relief, mood improvement and general well-being. The possibility of delivering CBT by home visits, telephone, or through the internet seems promising (10-12). Virtual consultation and automated symptom monitoring for cancer patients with depression can exceed all expectations (13). It has also been suggested that CBT is particularly helpful for younger cancer patients (14).

Families can be exposed to poor functioning during palliative care and bereavement. Family-focused grief therapy based on communication, cohesiveness, conflict resolution, and shared grief is effective in protecting family members against the drama of disease and death (15). Other psychological interventions targeted to minimise caregiver emotional distress have not been effective (16).

3.3.4.1.1 References

1. Jackson KC, Lipman AG. Drug therapy for anxiety in palliative care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004;(1):CD004596. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14974072
2. Minton O, Stone P, Richardson A, et al. Drug therapy for the management of cancer related fatigue. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 Jan 23;(1):CD006704. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18254112
3. Cepeda MS, Chapman CR, Miranda N, et al. Emotional Disclosure Through Patient Narrative May Improve Pain and Well-Being: Results of a Randomized Controlled Trial in Patients with Cancer Pain. J Pain Symptom Manage 2008 Jun;35(6):623-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18359604
4. Akechi T, Okuyama T, Onishi J, et al. Psychotherapy for depression among incurable cancer patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 Apr 16;(2):CD005537. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425922
5. Ell K, Xie B, Quon B, et al. Randomized controlled trial of collaborative care management of depression among low-income patients with cancer. J Clin Oncol 2008 Sep;26(27):4488-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18802161
6. Thornton LM, Andersen BL, Schuler TA, et al. A psychological intervention reduces inflammatory markers by alleviating depressive symptoms: secondary analysis of a randomized controlled trial. Psychosom Med 2009 Sep;71(7):715-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19622708
7. Devine EC. Meta-analysis of the effect of psychoeducational interventions on pain in adults with cancer. Oncol Nurs Forum 2003 Jan-Feb;30(1):75-89. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12515986
8. Anderson KO, Cohen MZ, Mendoza TR, et al. Brief cognitive-behavioral audiotape interventions for cancer-related pain: Immediate but not long-term effectiveness. Cancer 2006 Jul;107(1):207-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16708359
9. Tsai PS, Chen PL, Lai YL, et al. Effects of electromyography biofeedback-assisted relaxation on pain in patients with advanced cancer in a palliative care unit. Cancer Nurs 2007 Sep-Oct;30(5):347-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17876179
10. Dalton JA, Keefe FJ, Carlson J, et al. Tailoring cognitive-behavioral treatment for cancer pain. Pain Manag Nurs 2004 Mar;5(1):3-18. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14999649

11. Osborn RL, Demoncada AC, Feuerstein M. Psychosocial interventions for depression, anxiety, and quality of life in cancer survivors: Meta-analyses. Int J Psychiatry Med 2006;36(1):13-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16927576
12. Sherwood P, Given BA, Given CW, et al. A cognitive behavioral intervention for symptom management in patients with advanced cancer. Oncol Nurs Forum 2005 Nov;32(6):1190-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16270114
13. Kroenke K, Theobald D, Wu J, et al. Effect of telecare management on pain and depression in patients with cancer: A randomized trial. JAMA 2010 Jul;304(2):163-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20628129
14. Doorenbos A, Given B, Given C, et al. Reducing symptom limitations: A cognitive behavioral intervention randomized trial. Psycho-Oncology 2005 Jul;14(7):574-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643674
15. Chan EKH, O'Neill I, McKenzie M, et al. What works for therapists conducting family meetings: Treatment integrity in family-focused grief Therapy during palliative care and bereavement. J Pain Symptom Manage 2004 Jun;27(6):502-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15165648
16. Kurtz ME, Kurtz JC, Given CW, et al. A randomized, controlled trial of a patient/caregiver symptom control intervention: Effects on depressive symptomatology of caregivers of cancer patients. J Pain Symptom Manage 2005 Aug;30(2):112-122. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16125026

3.3.4.2 Adjunctive therapy

A number of therapeutic strategies have been proposed as non-pharmacological adjunctives to medical and surgical procedures. To date, there is no conclusive evidence on the effect of reflexology and massage therapy (1-3). Nevertheless, certain manipulations (e.g., sciatic nerve press) seem to be effective for immediate pain relief in many oncological conditions (4). The notion that acupuncture may be effective for cancer patients is not methodologically supported by the currently available data (5). However, modest although significant improvements in depression and pain scales have been confirmed by well-conducted studies on acupuncture (6). Evidence from robust studies is still lacking on the effect of traditional Chinese medicine and complementary alternative medicine (7,8). Physical exercise (short walks) can positively affect the pain experience of prostate cancer patients (9). Similarly, moderate exercise positively affects cancer-related sleep disturbance (10).

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation might mitigate hyperalgesia in cancer patients. Unfortunately, reliable studies in this field are lacking (11).

Listening to music - an otherwise harmless activity - slightly reduces distress, pain intensity and opioid requirements in cancer patients (12,13).

3.3.4.2.1 References

1. Ernst E. Is reflexology an effective intervention? A systematic review of randomised controlled trials. Med J Aust 2009 Sep;191(5):263-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19740047
2. Ernst E. Massage therapy for cancer palliation and supportive care: A systematic review of randomised clinical trials. Supportive Care Cancer 2009 Apr;17(4):333-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19148685
3. Jane SW, Wilkie DJ, Gallucci BB, et al. Systematic review of massage intervention for adult patients with cancer: a methodological perspective. Cancer Nurs 2008 Nov-Dec;31(6):E24-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18987505
4. He J, Zhao T, Zhang W, et al. A new analgesic method, two-minute sciatic nerve press, for immediate pain relief: A randomized trial. BMC Anesthesiol 2008 Jan;8:1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18221518
5. Lee H, Schmidt K, Ernst E. Acupuncture for the relief of cancer-related pain: a systematic review. Eur J Pain 2005 Aug;9(4):437-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15979024
6. Mehling WE, Jacobs B, Acree M, et al. Symptom Management with Massage and Acupuncture in Postoperative Cancer Patients: A Randomized Controlled Trial. J Pain Symptom Manage 2007 Mar;33(3):258-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17349495

7. Bardia A, Barton DL, Prokop LJ, et al. Efficacy of complementary and alternative medicine therapies in relieving cancer pain: a systematic review. J Clin Oncol 2006 Dec 1;24(34):5457-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17135649
8. Manheimer E, Wieland S, Kimbrough E, et al. Evidence from the Cochrane Collaboration for traditional Chinese medicine therapies. J Altern Complement Med 2009 Sep;15(9):1001-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19757977
9. Griffith K, Wenzel J, Shang J, et al. Impact of a walking intervention on cardiorespiratory fitness, self-reported physical function, and pain in patients undergoing treatment for solid tumors. Cancer 2009 Oct;115(20):4874-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19637345
10. Tang MF, Liou TH, Lin CC. Improving sleep quality for cancer patients: benefits of a home-based exercise intervention. Support Care Cancer 2010 Oct;18(10):1329-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19834744
11. Robb K, Oxberry SG, Bennett MI, et al. A Cochrane systematic review of transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation for cancer pain. J Pain Symptom Manage 2009 Apr;37(4):746-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18790600
12. Cepeda MS, Carr DB, Lau J, et al. Music for pain relief. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Apr;2:CD004843. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16625614
13. Huang ST, Good M, Zauszniewski JA. The effectiveness of music in relieving pain in cancer patients: a randomized controlled trial. Int J Nurs Stud 2010 Nov;47(11):1354-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20403600

3.4 Pharmacotherapy

The successful treatment of cancer pain depends on the clinician's ability to assess the presenting problems, identify and evaluate pain syndromes, and formulate a plan for comprehensive continuing care. This requires familiarity with a range of therapeutic options and responsiveness to the changing needs of the patient. The treatment of pain must be part of the broader therapeutic agenda, in which tumour control, symptom palliation (physical and psychological), and functional rehabilitation are addressed concurrently.

3.4.1 ***Antibiotics***

Antibiotics may be analgesic when the source of the pain involves infection (e.g. pyonephrosis, abscess, osteitis pubis). In some cases, infection may be occult and confirmed only by the symptomatic relief provided by empirical treatment with these drugs (1) (LE: 2b).

3.4.1.1 Reference

1. Coyle N, Portenoy RK. Infection as a cause of rapidly increasing pain in cancer patients. J Pain Symptom Manage 1991 May;6(4):266-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2030303

3.4.2 ***Chemotherapy***

A successful effect on pain is generally related to tumour response. There is a strong clinical impression that tumour shrinkage is generally associated with relief of pain, although there are some reports of analgesic value even in the absence of significant tumour shrinkage (1) (LE: 1a).

3.4.2.1 Reference

1. Patt YZ, Peters RE, Chuang VP, et al. Palliation of pelvic recurrence of colorectal cancer with intraarterial 5-fluorouracil and mitomycin. Cancer 1985 Nov;56(9):2175-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2996749

3.4.3 ***Bisphosphonates***

Bisphosphonates are pyrophosphate analogues.

3.4.3.1 Mechanisms of action

- Inhibition of bone resorption: beginning 24-48 hours after administration, the target cells are the osteoclasts. There are three different mechanisms of inhibition of bone resorption corresponding to the three generations of bisphosphonates. There are four distinct effects on osteoclasts:
  - reduction of osteoclastic activity;
  - inhibition of osteoclast adhesion;
  - decrease in number of osteoclasts;

- induction of osteoclast apoptosis.
- Inhibition of crystallisation and mineralisation: clinically not relevant.
- Promotion of osteoblastic bone formation and production of osteoclast resorption inhibitor.
- Anti-angiogenic effect and effect on tumour cells.

3.4.3.2 Effects and side-effects

The main effects are:

- decrease of the risk of skeleton-related events, e.g. hormone-refractory prostate cancer with bone metastasis (1) (LE: 1b, GR: A);
- pain response in 60-85% of patients (1-3) (LE: 1b, GR: A).

The main side-effects are:

- flu-like symptoms (20-40%), bone pain, fever, fatigue, arthralgia and myalgia (all < 10%);
- hypocalcaemia (caution: rapid infusion - older patients with vitamin D deficiency);
- acute renal failure (rapid infusion); always check renal function (GFR);
- osteonecrosis of the jaw bones (only after iv therapy);
- gastrointestinal symptoms can occur after oral administration (2-10%).

Some remarks (all grade B recommendations):

- Recognise and treat dehydration before administration of bisphosphonates.
- Reduce the dose in the event of impaired renal function when using zoledronate (4) (LE: 2).
- Avoid simultaneous administration of aminoglycosides (5).
- Perform clinical examination of the patient's mouth and jaws; avoid oral/dental surgery during administration of iv bisphosphonates (6-10) (LE: 2).

3.4.3.3 Denosumab

Histological findings and analysis of bone turnover markers support the view that bone metatases from prostate cancer are characterised by an excess osteoclastic activity inducing bone destruction. This results in an increased risk of skeletal-related events (SREs), such as pathologic fractures, spinal cord compression, pain requiring radiotherapy or surgery, and hypercalcemia. To maintain skeletal integrity and prevent skeletal complications treatment with bisphosphonates are often initiated.

The receptor activator of NF-kB ligand (RANKL), mediates the formation, function, and survival of osteoclasts.

It is hypothesised that through RANKL, tumor cells induce osteoclast activation, which then mediates bone resorption and releases growth factors, resulting in a cycle of bone destruction and tumor proliferation. Denosumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody that specifically binds and neutralises RANKL, inhibiting osteoclastogenesis and decreasing osteoclastmediated bone destruction (11). Improvement in bone metastases free survival (4.2 months) and increased time to first bone metastasis (3.7 months) has been reported with denosumab in a phase III randomised placebo controled trial (12).

Another recently published phase 3 study, randomised men with castration-resistant prostate cancer and no previous exposure to iv bisphosphonate between 120 mg subcutaneous denosumab plus iv placebo, or 4 mg iv zoledronic acid plus subcutaneous placebo, every 4 weeks until the primary analysis cutoff date. Denosumab significantly delayed the time to first onstudy skeletal-related event by 18% compared with zoledronic acid, with a between-group difference of 3-6 months (13). Occurrences of adverse events and serious adverse events were similar between groups. More events of hypocalcaemia occurred in the denosumab group (121 [13%]) than in the zoledronic acid group (55 [6%]; p<0·0001). Osteonecrosis of the jaw was infrequent in both groups. The authors concluded that denosumab was better than zoledronic acid for prevention of skeletal-related events, and potentially represents a novel treatment option in men with bone metastases from castration-resistant prostate cancer (13). However, data on QoL are lacking.

A small randomised phase II trial evaluated the effect of denosumab after iv bispfhosphonates (14). However, actually there are insufficient data to support a routine switch from iv bisphosphonates to denosumab.

3.4.3.3 References

1. Saad H, Higano C, Sartor O, et al. The role of bisphosphonates in the treatment of prostate cancer: recommendations from an expert panel. Clin Genitourin Cancer 2006 Mar;4(4):257-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16729908
2. Heidenreich A, Hofmann R, Engelmann U. The use of bisphosphonates for the palliative treatment of painful bone metastasis due to hormone refractory prostate cancer. J Urol 2001 Jan;165(1):136-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11125382

3. Weinfurt K, Anstrom K, Castel L, et al. Effect of zoledronic acid on pain associated with bone metastasis in patients with prostate cancer. Ann Oncol 2006 Jun;17(6):986-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16533874
4. Chang J, Green L, Beitz J. Renal failure with the use of zoledronic acid. N Engl J Med 2003 Oct;349(17):1676-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14573746
5. Rogers M, Gordon S, Benford H. Cellular and molecular mechanisms of action of bisphosphonates. Cancer 2000 Jun;88(12):2961-78. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10898340
6. Picket F. Bisphosphonate-associated osteonecrosis of the jaw: a literature review and clinical practice guidelines. J Dent Hyg 2006 Summer;80(3):10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16953991
7. Ruggiero S, Mehrota B, Rosenberg T, et al. Osteonecrosis of the jaws associated with the use of bisphosphonates: a review of 63 cases. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 2004 May;62(5):527-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15122554
8. Schwartz H. Osteonecrosis and bisphosphonates: correlation versus causation. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 2004 Jun;62(6):763-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15181903
9. Tarassoff P, Csermak K. Avascular necrosis of the jaws: risk factors in metastatic cancer patients. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 2003 Oct;61(10):1238-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14586868
10. Van den Wyngaert T, Huizing M, Vermorken JB. Bisphosphonates and osteonecrosis of the jaw: cause and effect or a post hoc fallacy? Ann Oncol 2006 Aug;17(8):1197-204. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16873439
11. Body JJ, Lipton A, Gralow J, et al. Effects of Denosumab in Patients With Bone Metastases With and Without Previous Bisphosphonate Exposure. J Bone Miner Res 2010 Mar;25(3):440-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19653815
12. Smith MR, Saad R, Coleman R, et al. Denosumab and bone-metastases free survival in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: results of a phase III randomized, placebo contyrolled trial. Lancet 2011 Nov 15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22093187
13. Fizazi K, Carducci M, Smith M, et al.Denosumab versus zoledronic acid for treatment of bone metastases in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: a randomised, double-blind study. Lancet 2011 Mar 5;377(9768):813-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21353695
14. Fizazi K, Lipton A, Mariette X, et al. Randomized Phase II Trial of Denosumab in Patients With Bone Metastases From Prostate Cancer, Breast Cancer, or Other Neoplasms After Intravenous Bisphosphonates. J Clin Oncol 2009 Apr 1;27(10):1564-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19237632

*3.4.4 **Systemic analgesic pharmacotherapy - the analgesic ladder***

Analgesic pharmacotherapy is the mainstay of cancer pain management (1-3). Although concurrent use of other interventions is valuable in many patients, and essential in some, analgesic drugs are needed in almost every case. Based on clinical convention, analgesic drugs can be separated into three groups:

- non-opioid analgesics
- opioid analgesics
- adjuvant analgesics.

Emphasising that pain intensity should be the prime consideration (LE: 1a), the WHO has proposed a three-step approach to analgesic selection for cancer pain (1,3). Known as the analgesic ladder, when combined with appropriate dosing guidelines it can provide adequate relief in 70-90% of patients (4,5).

- **Step 1: non-opioid analgesic** Patients with mild to moderate cancer-related pain should be treated with a non-opioid analgesic.
- **Step 2: non-opioid analgesic + weak opioid** Patients who present with moderate to severe pain or who fail to achieve adequate relief after a trial of a non-opioid analgesia should be treated with a weak opioid (e.g. codeine or tramadol), typically by using a combination product containing a non-opioid (e.g. aspirin or paracetamol) and an opioid (e.g. codeine, tramadol or propoxyphene).
- **Step 3: non-opioid analgesic + strong opioid** Patients who present with severe pain or who fail to achieve adequate relief with step 2 drugs, should receive a strong opioid (e.g. morphine, fentanyl, oxycodone, methadon, buprenorphine, or hydromorphone).

3.4.4.1 Non-opioid analgesics

- Non-opioid analgesics are aspirin, paracetamol and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).
- Can be useful alone for mild to moderate pain (step 1 of the analgesic ladder).
- May be combined with opioids.
- Have a ceiling effect of analgesic efficacy.
- No tolerance or physical dependence.
- Inhibit the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase and block the synthesis of prostaglandins.
- Involvement of central mechanisms is also likely in paracetamol analgesia (6).
- Potential adverse effects (7): bleeding diathesis due to inhibition of platelet aggregation, gastroduodenopathy (including peptic ulcer disease) and renal impairment are the most common; less common adverse effects include confusion, precipitation of cardiac failure and exacerbation of hypertension. Particular caution must be used in elderly patients and those with blood-clotting disorders, predisposition to peptic ulceration, impaired renal function and concurrent corticosteroid therapy.
- Non-acetylated salicylates (choline magnesium trisalicylate and salsalate) are preferred in patients who have a predilection to bleeding; these drugs have less effect on platelet aggregation and no effect on bleeding time at the usual clinical doses.
- Rarely, paracetamol produces gastrointestinal toxicity, but with no adverse effect on platelet function. Hepatic toxicity is possible, however, and patients with chronic alcoholism and liver disease can develop severe hepatotoxicity at the usual therapeutic doses (8).

3.4.4.2 Opioid analgesics

Cancer pain of moderate or severe intensity should generally be treated with a systemically administered opioid analgesic (9). Classification is based on interaction with the various receptor subtypes:

- Agonist: most commonly used in clinical pain management, no ceiling effect.
- Agonist-antagonist (pentazocine, nalbuphine and butorphanol): ceiling effect for analgesia.

By convention, the relative potency of each of the commonly used opioids is based on a comparison with 10 mg of parenteral morphine. Equi-analgesic dose information provides guidelines for dose selection when the drug or route of administration is changed (10).

A trial of systemic opioid therapy should be administered to all cancer patients with moderate or severe pain (10-13). Patients who present with severe pain should be treated with a strong opioid from the outset. Patients with moderate pain are commonly treated with a combination drug containing paracetamol or aspirin plus codeine, tramadol, or propoxyphene, the dose of which can be increased until the maximum dose of the non-opioid co-analgesia is attained (e.g. 4000 mg paracetamol).

Factors to consider when selecting an opioid include:

- pain intensity
- patient age
- response to previous trials of opioid therapy
- co-existing disease
- influence of underlying illness, characteristics of the opioid and concurrent medications.

Routes of administration

Opioids should be administered by the least invasive and safest route that can provide adequate analgesia. In a survey of patients with advanced cancer, more than half required two or more routes of administration prior to death, and almost a quarter required three or more.

Non-invasive routes

- **Oral** routes are the preferred approach in routine practice. Alternative routes are necessary for patients who have impaired swallowing, gastrointestinal dysfunction, require a very rapid onset of analgesia, or cannot tolerate the oral route.
- **Rectal** suppositories containing oxycodone, hydromorphone, oxycodone and morphine in combination are available, and controlled-release morphine tablets can also be administered per rectum. The potency of rectally administered opioids is believed to approximate to oral dosing (14).
- **Transdermal** routes: fentanyl and buprenorphine have been demonstrated to be effective in postoperative and cancer pain (15). The fentanyl transdermal therapeutic system dosing interval is usually 72 h, but some patients require a 48 h schedule. There is some interindividual variability in fentanyl bioavailability by this route, which, combined with large differences in elimination pharmacokinetics, necessitates dose titration in most cases (16). The efficacy of transdermal fentanyl

is equal to morphine. The incidence of side-effects such as sedation and constipation are lower than for morphine (17,18) (LE: 1b).

- Transdermal patches able to deliver 12,25,50,75 and 100 mg/h are available. Multiple patches can be used simultaneously for patients who require higher doses. Current limitations of the transdermal delivery system include costs, and the need for an alternative short-acting opioid for breakthrough pain.
- Recently, buprenorphine has become available for transdermal administration. A high affinity partial μ-opioid agonist, it is in clinical use for the treatment of acute and chronic pain (19). Its analgesic effect is comparable with that of other opioids, and it shows no relevant analgesic ceiling effect throughout the therapeutic dose range (20). Unlike full μ-opioid agonists, buprenorphine's physiological and subjective effects, including respiratory depression and euphoria, reach a plateau at higher doses. This ceiling may limit the abuse potential, and might result in a wider safety margin (21).

- **Sublingual** absorption of any opioid is potentially clinically beneficial, but bioavailability is very poor with drugs that are not highly lipophilic, so the chances of an adequate response are low (22). Sublingual buprenorphine, a relatively lipophilic partial agonist, can provide adequate relief for mild to moderate cancer pain. Overall, this route has limited value due to the lack of formulations, poor absorption of most drugs, and the inability to deliver high doses or prevent swallowing of the dose. An oral transmucosal formulation of fentanyl (incorporated into a sugar base) is useful for the rapid relief of breakthrough pain (23,24). Fentanyl delivered by this means is more effective than oral morphine at relieving pain (LE: 2).

Recommendation	GR
Oral transmucosal administration of fentanyl should be used to provide rapid relief of breakthrough pain. The starting dose is 400 μg, or 200 μg in the elderly and those with a history of opioid sensitivity or underlying pulmonary disease.	B

Invasive routes

For patients undergoing a trial of systemic drug administration, a parenteral route must be considered when the oral route is not available. Repeated parenteral bolus injections, which can be administered iv, intramuscularly (im) or subcutaneously (sc), may be useful in some patients, but are often compromised by the occurrence of prominent bolus effects (toxicity at peak concentration and/or pain breakthrough at the trough). Repeated im injections are common, but are painful and offer no pharmacokinetic benefit; their use is not recommended (25).

- **Intravenous bolus** administration provides the most rapid onset and shortest duration of action. Time to peak effect correlates with the lipid solubility of the opioid, and ranges from 2-5 minutes for methadone, to 10-15 minutes for morphine (26). This approach is appropriate in two settings:
  - To provide parenteral opioids, usually transiently, to patients who already have venous access and are unable to tolerate oral opioids.
  - To treat very severe pain, for which iv doses can be repeated at an interval as brief as that determined by the time to peak effect until adequate relief is achieved.
- **Continuous parenteral infusions** is mainly used in patients who are unable to swallow, absorb opioids or otherwise tolerate the oral route, but is also employed in patients whose high opioid requirement renders oral treatment impractical (27). Long-term infusions can be administered iv or sc.
  - Ambulatory patients can easily receive a continuous sc infusion using a 27-gauge butterfly needle, which can be left in place for up to a week. A recent study demonstrated that the bioavailability of hydromorphone by this route is 78% (28), and clinical experience suggests that dosing can be identical to that for continuous iv infusion. A range of pumps is available to provide patient-controlled rescue doses (supplemental doses offered on an as-needed basis to treat pain that breaks through the regular schedule) as an adjunct to continuous basal infusion.
  - Opioids suitable for continuous sc infusion must be soluble, well absorbed and non-irritant. Extensive experience has been reported with hydromorphone, oxycodone and morphine (29). Methadone appears to be relatively irritating and is not preferred (30). To maintain the comfort of an infusion site, the sc infusion rate should not exceed 5 cc/h.
  - The infraclavicular and anterior chest sites provide the greatest freedom of movement for patients, but other sites can be used. A single infusion site can usually be maintained for 5-7 days.

Changing the route of administration

Switching between oral and parenteral routes should be guided by a knowledge of relative potency to avoid subsequent over- or underdosing. In calculating the equi-analgesic dose, the potencies of the iv, sc and im routes are considered equivalent. Perform changes slowly in steps, e.g. gradually reducing the parenteral dose and increasing the oral dose over a 2-3 day period (LE: 3).

Dosing

- **Around-the-clock dosing** Patients with continuous or frequent pain generally benefit from scheduled around-the-clock dosing, which provides continuous relief by preventing recurrence of the pain. This approach should be used only in patients with no previous opioid exposure. Patients should also be provided with a rescue dose. This combination offers gradual, safe and rational dose escalation that is applicable to all routes of opioid administration.
- **Controlled-release drug formulations** These preparations of oral opioids can lessen the inconvenience of around-the-clock administration of drugs with a short duration of action. Numerous studies have demonstrated the safety and efficacy of these preparations in cancer patients with pain (31,32).
- **As-needed (prn) dosing** This strategy is beneficial if rapid dose escalation is necessary or when beginning therapy with opioids with a long half-life (e.g. methadone or levorphanol). As-needed dosing may also be appropriate for patients who have rapidly decreasing analgesic requirements, or intermittent pains separated by pain-free intervals.
- **Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA)** This is a technique of parenteral drug administration in which the patient controls an infusion device that delivers a bolus of analgesic drug on demand according to parameters set by the physician. Long-term PCA in cancer patients is most commonly sc using an ambulatory infusion device. PCA is usually added to a basal infusion rate and acts, in effect, as a rescue dose.

Adverse effects and their management

- **Tolerance** There is great variation in the opioid dose required to manage pain (400-2000 mg of im morphine per 24 hours) (33). The induction of true analgesic tolerance that could compromise the utility of treatment can only be said to occur if a patient manifests the need for increasing opioid doses in the absence of other factors (e.g. progressive disease) that would be capable of explaining the increase in pain. Extensive clinical experience suggests that most patients who require dose escalation to manage increasing pain do have demonstrable disease progression (34). This suggests that true pharmacological tolerance to the analgesic effects of opioids is not a common clinical problem, and has two important implications:
  - Concern about tolerance should not impede the use of opioids early in the course of the disease.
  - Worsening pain in patients receiving a stable dose of opioids should not be attributed to tolerance, but be assessed as evidence of disease progression or, less commonly, increasing psychological distress.
- **Adverse drug interactions** There is potential for cumulative side-effects and serious toxicity to arise from combinations of drugs. The sedative effect of an opioid may add to that of other centrally acting drugs, such as anxiolytics, neuroleptics and antidepressants. Likewise, constipation produced by opioids is probably worsened by anticholinergic drugs.
- **Respiratory depression** This is the most serious adverse effect of opioid therapy, which can impair all phases of respiratory activity (rate, minute volume and tidal exchange). Clinically significant respiratory depression is always accompanied by other signs of central nervous system depression, including sedation and mental clouding. Repeated administration of opioid drugs appears to produce a rapid tolerance to their respiratory depressant effects, however, so these drugs can be used in the management of chronic cancer pain without significant risk of respiratory depression. When this does occur in patients on chronic opioid therapy, administration of the specific opioid antagonist naloxone usually improves ventilation.
- **Sedation** Tolerance to this effect usually develops within a period of days to weeks. Patients should be warned about it, to reduce anxiety and discourage activities that could be dangerous if sedation occurs (e.g. driving). Some patients have a persistent problem with sedation, particularly if other sedating drugs are also being taken or if there is co-morbidity such as dementia, metabolic encephalopathy or brain metastases.
- **Confusion and delirium** Confusion is a greatly feared effect of opioid drugs, and mild cognitive impairment is common (35). However, similar to sedation, pure opioid-induced encephalopathy appears to be transient in most patients, persisting from days to 1-2 weeks. Although persistent

confusion attributable to opioids alone does occur, it is usually related to the combined effect of the opioid and other factors, including electrolyte disorders, neoplastic involvement of the central nervous system, sepsis, vital organ failure and hypoxaemia (36). A stepwise approach to management often culminates in a trial of a neuroleptic drug. Haloperidol in low doses (0.5-1.0 mg orally or 0.25-0.5 mg iv or im) is most commonly recommended because of its efficacy and low incidence of cardiovascular and anticholinergic effects.

- **Constipation** This is the most common adverse effect of chronic opioid therapy (37-39), and laxative medication should be prescribed prophylactically. There are no controlled comparisons of the performance of the various laxatives in opioid-induced constipation. Combination therapy is frequently used, particularly co-administration of a softening agent (e.g. docusate) and a cathartic (e.g. senna, bisocodyl or phenolphthalein). The doses should be increased as necessary, and an osmotic laxative (e.g. magnesium sulphate) should be added if required. Chronic lactulose therapy is an alternative that some patients prefer, and the occasional patient is managed with intermittent colonic lavage using an oral bowel preparation.
- **Nausea and vomiting** Opioids may produce nausea and vomiting via both central and peripheral mechanisms. These drugs stimulate the medullary chemoreceptor trigger zone, increase vestibular sensitivity, and affect the gastrointestinal tract (increased gastric antral tone, diminished motility, delayed gastric emptying). The incidence of nausea and vomiting in ambulatory patients is estimated to be 10-40%, and 15-40%, respectively (40), with the effects greatest at the start of therapy. Metoclopramide is the most reasonable initial treatment. Tolerance typically develops within weeks. Routine prophylactic administration of an anti-emetic is not necessary. Serotonin antagonists (e.g. ondansetron) are not likely to be effective with opioid-induced symptoms as they do not eliminate apomorphine-induced vomiting and motion sickness, which appear to be appropriate models for opioid effects. Clinical trials are needed to confirm this.
- **Addiction and dependence** Confusion about physical dependence and addiction augments the fear of opioids and contributes substantially to the undertreatment of pain (41). Patients with chronic cancer pain have a so-called therapeutic dependence on their analgesic pharmacotherapy, which may or may not be associated with the development of physical dependence, but is seldom associated with addiction. The medical use of opioids is rarely associated with the development of addiction (42). There are no prospective studies in patients with chronic cancer pain, but extensive clinical experience affirms the low risk of addiction in this population (LE: 3). Healthcare providers, patients and families often require vigorous and repeated reassurance that the risk of addiction is small.

Adjuvant analgesics

Defined as a drug that has a primary indication other than pain but is analgesic in some conditions, these drugs may be combined with primary analgesics on any of the three steps of the analgesic ladder to improve the outcome for patients who cannot otherwise attain an acceptable balance between relief and side-effects. In the management of cancer pain, adjuvant analgesics are conventionally categorised as follows.

- **Corticosteroids** Widely used as adjuvant analgesics (43,44), this group has been demonstrated to have analgesic effects, to improve QoL significantly (45), and to have beneficial effects on appetite, nausea, mood and malaise in patients with cancer (46). The mechanism of analgesia may involve anti-oedemic and anti-inflammatory effects, plus a direct influence on the electrical activity in damaged nerves. (i.e. reduction of neuropathic pain). Patients with advanced cancer who experience pain and other symptoms may respond favourably to a relatively small dose of corticosteroids (e.g. dexamethasone 1-2 mg twice daily) (LE: 2a).
- **Benzodiazepines** These drugs have a small analgesic effect (47), and must be balanced by the potential for side-effects, including sedation and confusion. Benzodiazepines are generally used only if another indication exists, such as anxiety or insomnia (LE: 2b).

3.4.4.3 References

1. World Health Organization. Cancer pain relief and palliative Care. Report of a WHO expert committee. World Health Organization Technical Report Series, 804. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, 1990. http://apps.who.int/bookorders/anglais/detart1.jsp?sesslan=1&codlan=1&codcol=10&codcch=804
2. Foley KM. The treatment of cancer pain. N Eng J Med 1985 Jul;313(2):84-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2582259
3. World Health Organization. Cancer pain relief. World Health Organization. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, 1986.

4. Schug SA, Zech D, Dorr U. Cancer pain management according to WHO analgesic guidelines. J Pain Symptom Manage 1990 Feb;5(1):27-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2324558
5. Grond S, Zech D, Schug SA, et al. Validation of the World Health Organization guidelines for cancer pain relief during the last days and hours of life. J Pain Symptom Manage 1991 Oct;6(7):411-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1940485
6. Malmberg AB, Yaksh TL. Hyperalgesia mediated by spinal glutamate and substance P receptor blocked by spinal cyclooxygenase inhibition. Science 1992 Aug;92(5074):1276-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1381521
7. Brooks PM, Day RO. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs - differences and similarities. N Eng J Med 1991 Jun;324(24):1716-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2034249
8. Seeff LB, Cuccherini BA, Zimmerman HJ, et al. Acetaminophen hepatotoxicity in alcoholics. A therapeutic misadventure. Ann Intern Med 1986 March;104(3):399-404.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3511825
9. Hanks GW, Conno F, Cherny N, et al; Expert Working Group of the Research Network of the European Association for Palliative Care. Morphine and alternative opioids in cancer pain: the EAPC recommendations. Br J Cancer 2001 Mar;84(5):587-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11237376
10. Cherny NI, Thaler HT, Friedlander-Klar H, et al. Opioid responsiveness of cancer pain syndromes caused by neuropathic or nociceptive mechanisms: a combined analysis of controlled, single-dose studies. Neurology 1994 May;44(5):857-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7514771
11. Jadad AR, Carroll D, Glynn CJ, et al. Morphine responsiveness of chronic pain: double blind randomised crossover study with patient controlled analgesia. Lancet 1992 Jun;339(8806):1367-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1350803
12. McQuay HJ, Jadad AR, Carroll D, et al. Opioid sensitivity of chronic pain: a patient-controlled analgesia method. Anaesthesia 1992 Sep;47(9):757-67.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1415972
13. Eisenberg E, McNicol ED, Carr DB. Efficacy and safety of opioid agonists in the treatment of neuropathic pain of nonmalignant origin: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. JAMA 2005 Jun;293(24):3043-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15972567
14. Hanning CD. The rectal absorption of opioids. In: Benedetti C, Chapman C R, Giron G, eds. Opioid analgesia. Advances in pain research and therapy, vol 14. NY: Raven Press, 1990, pp. 259-269.
15. Calis KA, Kohler DR, Corso DM. Transdermally administered fentanyl for pain management. Clinical Pharm 1992 Jan;11(1):22-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1730176
16. Portenoy RK, Southam MA, Gupta SK, et al. Transdermal fentanyl for cancer pain. Repeated dose pharmacokinetics. Anesthesiology 1993 Jan;78(1):36-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8424569
17. Clark AJ, Ahmedzai SH, Allan LG, et al. Efficacy and safety of transdermal fentanyl and sustainedrelease oral morphine in patients with cancer and chronic noncancer pain. Curr Med Res Opin 2004 Sep;20(9):1419-28.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15383190
18. Ahmedzai S, Brooks D. Transdermal fentanyl versus sustained-release oral morphine in cancer pain: preference, efficacy, and quality of life. J Pain Symptom Manage 1997 May;13(5):254-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9185430
19. Koppert W, Ihmsen H, Körber N, et al. Different profiles of buprenorphine-induced analgesia and antihyperalgesia in a human pain model. Pain 2005 Nov;118 (1-2):15-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16154698
20. Sittl R. Transdermal buprenorphine in the treatment of chronic pain. Expert Rev Neurother 2005 May;5(3):315-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15938664
21. Johnson RE, Fudala PJ, Payne R. Buprenorphine: considerations for pain management. J Pain Symptom Manage 2005 Mar;29(3):297-326.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15781180
22. Weinberg DS, Inturrisi CE, Reidenberg B, et al. Sublingual absorption of selected opioid analgesics. Clin Pharmacol Ther 1988 Sep;44(3):335-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2458208

23. Coluzzi PH, Schwartzberg L, Conroy JD, et al. Breakthrough cancer pain: a randomized trial comparing oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) and morphine sulfate immediate release (MSIR). Pain 2001 Mar; 91(1-2):123-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11240084
24. Fine PG, Marcus M, DeBoer AJ, et al. An open label study of oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate (OTFC) for the treatment of breakthrough cancer pain. Pain 1991 May;45(2):149-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1876422
25. American Pain Society. Principles of analgesic use in the treatment of acute pain and chronic cancer pain. A concise guide to medical practice, 3rd edn. Skokie, IL: American Pain Society, 1992.
26. Chapman CR, Hill HF, Saeger L, et al. Profiles of opioid analgesia in humans after intravenous bolus administration: alfentanil, fentanyl and morphine compared on experimental pain. Pain 1990 Oct;43(1):47-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1980537
27. Storey P, Hill HH Jr , St Louis RH, et al. Subcutaneous infusions for control of cancer symptoms. J Pain Symptom Manage 1990 Feb;5(1):33-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1969887
28. Moulin DE, Kreeft JH, Murray-Parsons N, et al. Comparison of continuous subcutaneous and intravenous hydromorphone infusions for management of cancer pain. Lancet 1991 Feb;337(8739):465-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1704089
29. Moulin DE, Johnson NG, Murray-Parsons N, et al. Subcutaneous narcotic infusions for cancer pain: treatment outcome and guidelines for use. CMAJ 1992 Mar;146(6):891-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1371946
30. Bruera E, Fainsinger R, Moore M, et al. Local toxicity with subcutaneous methadone. Experience of two centers. Pain 1991 May;45(2):141-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1876420
31. Kaiko RF. Clinical protocol and role of controlled release morphine the surgical patient. In: Stanley TH, Ashburn MA, Fine PG, eds. *Anesthesiology in pain management*. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: Kluwer Academic, 1991, pp. 193-212.
32. Walsh TD, MacDonald N, Bruera E, et al. A controlled study of sustained-release morphine sulfate tablets in chronic pain from advanced cancer. Am J Clin Oncol 1992 Jun;15(3):268-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1590284
33. Coyle N, Adelhardt J, Foley KM, et al. Character of terminal illness in the advanced cancer patient: pain and other symptoms during last four weeks of life. J Pain Symptom Manage 1990 Apr;5(2):83-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2348092
34. Foley KM. Clinical tolerance to opioids. In: Basbaum AI, Bessom JM, eds. Towards a new pharmacotherapy of pain. Chichester, UK: Dahlem Konferenzen, John Wiley, 1991, pp. 181-204.
35. Bruera E, Macmillan K, Hanson J, et al. The cognitive effects of the administration of narcotic analgesics in patients with cancer pain. Pain 1989 Oct;39(1):13-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2812850
36. Breitbart W, Holland JC. Psychiatric complications of cancer. Curr Ther in Hematol Oncol 1988;3: 268-75.
37. Inturrisi CE. Management of cancer pain. Pharmacology and principles of management. Cancer 1989 Jun;63(11 Suppl):2308-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2566371
38. Walsh TD. Prevention of opioid side effects. J Pain Symptom Manage 1990 Dec;5(6):362-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1980127
39. Sykes NP. Oral naloxone in opioid- associated constipation. Lancet 1991 Jun;337(8755):1475.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1675336
40. Campora E, Merlini L, Pace M, et al. The incidence of narcotic induced emesis. J Pain Symptom Manage 1991 Oct;6(7):428-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1940487
41. Schuster CR. Does treatment of cancer pain with narcotics produce junkies?. In: Hill CS, Fields WS, eds. *Drug treatment of cancer pain in a drug oriented society*. Advances in pain research and therapy, vol 11. NY: Raven Press, 1989; pp. 1-3.
42. Chapman CR, Hill HF. Prolonged morphine self-administration and addiction liability. Evaluation of two theories in a bone marrow transplant unit. Cancer 1989 Apr;63(8):1636-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2466551

43. Walsh TD. Adjuvant analgesic therapy in cancer pain. In: Foley KM, Bonica JJ, Ventafridda V (eds). The Second International Conference on Cancer Pain. *Advances in pain research and therapy*, vol 16. New York, NY: Raven Press, 1990, pp. 155-168.
44. Della Cuna GR, Pellegrini A, Piazzi M. Effect of methylprednisolone sodium succinate on quality of life in preterminal cancer patients. A placebo controlled multicenter study. The Methylprednisolone Preterminal Cancer Study Group. Eur J Cancer Clin Oncol 1989 Dec;25(12):1817-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2698804
45. Tannock I, Gospodarowicz M, Meakin W, et al. Treatment of metastatic prostatic cancer with lowdose prednisone: evaluation of pain and quality of life as pragmatic indices of response. J Clin Oncol 1989 May;7(5):590-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2709088
46. Wilcox JC, Corr J, Shaw J, et al. Prednisolone as appetite stimulant in patients with cancer. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1984 Jan;288(6410):27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6418303
47. Fernandez F, Adams F, Holmes VF. Analgesic effect of alprazolam in patients with chronic, organic pain of malignant origin. J Clin Psychopharmacol 1987 Jun;7(3):167-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3597802

3.4.5 ***Treatment of neuropathic pain***

Numerous options are available for relieving neuropathic pain, including opioids, which give patients significant pain reduction with greater satisfaction than antidepressants (1,2). However, the potential complications of opioids mean that they are not always a satisfactory option (3). Beside opioids, effective therapies for managing neuropathic pain include antidepressants, anticonvulsants, topical treatments (lidocaine patch, capsaicin), N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonists, baclofen, local anaesthetics, and clonidine (4,5).

3.4.5.1 Antidepressants

There is clear evidence for the effectiveness of antidepressants in the treatment of neuropathic pain (5), which work primarily via interaction with pathways running through the spinal cord from serotoninergic and noradrenergic structures in the brain stem and mid-brain.

Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) such as amitriptyline, nortriptyline (metabolite of amitriptyline), imipramine, and desipramine (metabolite of imipramine) are often the first drugs selected to alleviate neuropathic pain (6,7) (LE: 1a). The mechanism of action is predominantly by blocking the reuptake of norepinephrine and serotonin (dual acting), together with a blockade of neuronal membrane ion channels (reducing neuronal influx of Ca2+ or Na+), and interaction with adenosine and NMDA receptors. However, treatment with these analgesics may be compromised (and outweighed) by their side-effects. TCAs must be used cautiously in patients with a history of cardiovascular disorders, glaucoma, and urine retention. In addition, combination therapy with monoamine-oxidase inhibitors could result in the development of serotonin syndrome.

Duloxetine enhances both serotonin and norepinephrine function in descending modulatory pathways. It has weak affinity for the dopamine transporter and insignificant affinity for several neurotransmitters, including muscarinic, histamine, glutamate, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) receptors. Duloxetine has demonstrated a significant pain-relieving effect with a generally favourable side-effect profile in painful diabetic neuropathy (7) (LE: 1b).

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) - sertraline, paroxetine, fluoxetine and citalopram - selectively inhibit the reuptake of serotonin. These antidepressants have a more favourable side-effect profile than TCAs, but their effectiveness in neuropathic pain is disputed in the literature (second-line pharmacological treatment).

Recommendations	GR
Amitriptyline and nortriptyline are the first line treatment for neuropathic pain; nortriptyline has fewer side-effects.	A
TCAs must be used cautiously in patients with a history of cardiovascular disorders, glaucoma, and urine retention.	
Duloxetine is the first-line treatment for neuropathic pain due to diabetic polyneuropathy.	A
Duloxetine may be tried as an analgesic in other neuropathic pain syndromes.	GCP

GCP = good clinical practice.

3.4.5.2 Anticonvulsant medication

The rationale for the use of anti-epileptic drugs in treating neuropathic pain is the reduction of neuronal hyperexcitability, one of the key processes in the development and maintenance of neuropathic pain (8). Different anticonvulsants have demonstrated pain relief by a blockade of neuronal membrane ion channels (reducing neuronal influx of Ca2+ or Na+), and effects on neurotransmitters (enhancement of GABA, inhibition of glutamate release) and/or neuromodulation systems (blocking the NMDA receptor) (9,10). Carbamazepine and phenytoin were initially used for the treatment of trigeminus neuralgia. Although both drugs reduce neuropathic pain, their attendant side-effects and complicated pharmacokinetic profile limit their use.

Despite the introduction of newer anticonvulsants with better side-effect profiles, carbamazepine remains the drug of choice for treating trigeminus neuralgia (11) (LE: 1a). However, oxcarbazepine (10-keto analogue of carbamazepine), a new anticonvulsant with a similar mechanism of action to that of carbamazepine but with a better side-effect profile, may replace carbamazepine for this (12).

Gabapentin and pregabalin are first-line treatments for neuropathic pain (reducing elements of central sensitisation), especially in post-zoster neuralgia and diabetic polyneuropathy (13-15) (LE: 1a). The combination of gabapentin with opioids seems to display synergistic effects in relieving neuropathic pain (16,17). Gabapentin has a favourable safety profile with minimal concern for drug interactions and no interference with hepatic enzymes. However, renal failure results in higher gabapentin concentrations and a longer elimination half-life, making dose adjustments necessary. Pregabalin (3-isobutyl GABA) is a structural analogue of gabapentin, but shows greater analgesic activity in rodent models of neuropathic pain than did gabapentin (18). Recent studies confirm the effectiveness of pregabalin in peripheral (including post-herpetic neuralgia and diabetic polyneuropathy) and central neuropathic pain (19).

Recommendation	GR
Gabapentin and pregabalin are first line treatments for neuropathic pain, especially if tricyclic antidepressants are contraindicated.	A

3.4.5.3 Topical analgesics

Neuropathic pain syndromes are typically associated with touch-evoked allodynia and hyperalgesia that impair patients' QoL. As well as treatment with anticonvulsants and antidepressants, a topical drug can be effective in treating ongoing pain and allodynia, supporting the idea that peripheral actions are of key importance in the initiation and maintenance of neuropathic pain.

Topical treatments for neuropathic pain include the 5% lidocaine patch, and capsaicin. The 5% lidocaine patch, a targeted peripheral analgesic, is effective in the treatment of post-herpetic neuralgia and a variety of other focal peripheral neuropathies (20,21) (first-line pharmacological treatment; LE: 1b). Once a day, up to three patches are applied to the painful skin, covering as much of the affected area as possible.

Capsaicin causes pain due to release of substance P from the nociceptive terminals, initiating nociceptive firing. An analgesic response follows because prolonged exposure to capsaicin desensitises the nociceptive terminals and elevates the pain threshold. Capsaicin (third-line pharmacological treatment) reduces pain in a variety of neuropathic pain conditions (including post-herpetic neuralgia, diabetic neuropathy and painful polyneuropathy). It is applied in a 0.075% concentration (22) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Topical lidocaine 5% should be used as an adjuvant in patients suffering from post-herpetic neuralgia.	A
Transdermal capsaicin may be used as an adjuvant in patients with neuropathic pain.	C

3.4.5.4 NMDA receptor antagonists

Within the dorsal horn, ionotropic glutamate receptors (NMDA, ⟨-amino-3-hydroxyl-5-methyl-4-

isoxazolepropionate [AMPA], kainate) and metabotropic glutamate receptors are all involved in neuropathic pain (23). However, the actions of excitatory amino acids (glutamate) on the NMDA receptor is considered a pivotal event in the phenomenon of wind-up and neuronal hyperexcitability (enhancement and prolongation of sensory transmission) that eventually leads to allodynia, and primary and secondary hyperalgesia.

Subanaesthetic doses of ketamine, and its active enantiomer S(+)-ketamine, given parenterally, neuraxially, nasally, transdermally or orally, alleviate pain post-operatively and in a variety of neuropathic pain syndromes, including central pain (24) (LE: 2b). However, ketamine may result in unwanted changes in mood, conscious perception, and intellectual performance, as well as psychomimetic side-effects (including visual and auditory hallucinations, dissociation and nightmares), limiting its use for neuropathic pain (25). It must therefore be reserved as a third-line option for when other standard analgesic treatments are exhausted (26,27).

Low dose systemic ketamine's primary role (bolus 0,25 mg/kg followed by a continuous administration between 0.1 - 0.4 mg/kg/h) is as an anti-hyperalgesic, anti-allodynic, or tolerance-protective compound in patients with severe acute pain, chronic or neuropathic pain, opioid tolerance, or those at risk for developing chronic post surgical pain (following laparotomy, thoractomy, breast surgery, and nephrectomy) (28,29).

In the acute setting ketamine is effective as a rescue analgesic (0.25 mg/kg, iv) for acute pain that is not, or poorly, responsive to opioids (30).

Despite improved and prolonged analgesia following caudal administration of ketamine in paediatric anaesthesia, there remains a controversy in the preclinical (animal) and clinical literature as to the safety and justifiability of this compound for neuraxial administration. In a case report as well as in an animal study, severe histological abnormalities indicating neurotoxicity were observed following neuraxial administration of ketamine (31,32).

Recommendation	**GR**
Ketamine is effective as an analgesic in neuropathic pain, but may be responsible for severe life-threatening side-effects and should be reserved for specialised pain clinics and as a last resort (third-line treatment).	B

3.4.5.5 Other drug treatments

Baclofen, a muscle relaxant, is analgesic due to its agonistic effect on the inhibitory GABAB receptors. Baclofen is efficacious in patients with trigeminal neuralgia, but not in those with other neuropathic pain conditions (33). However, this analgesic also has antispasticity properties and may induce analgesia by relieving muscle spasms, a frequent accompaniment of acute neuropathic pain. Baclofen can be considered a second-line agent for trigeminus neuralgia, or a third-line agent in neuropathic pain syndromes (LE: 3).

Clonidine, an α2-adrenoreceptor agonist, is available as a patch for transdermal administration and has been used in neuropathic pain states. When used topically, it seems to enhance the release of endogenous encephalin-like substances, but its use in the treatment of neuropathic pain is focused on intrathecal or epidural administration in combination with opioids and/or local anaesthetics. This delivery improves pain control because of a possible supra-additive effect during neuropathic pain treatment (34) (LE: 2b).

Summary: treatment of neuropathic pain

- **First-line agent:**
  - nortirptylinepregabalin, gabapentin;
  - duloxetine (first-line treatment in diabetic polyneuropathy only);
  - lidocaine 5% patch (first-line treatment in post-herpetic neuralgia only).
- **Second-line agent:**
  - opioids/tramadol (first-line treatment in patients with neuropathic cancer pain only).
- **Third-line agent:**
  - baclofen;
  - transdermal capsaicin 0.075%;
  - ketamine (an anaesthetic).

3.4.5.6 Invasive analgesic techniques

Studies suggest that 10-30% of patients with cancer pain do not achieve a satisfactory balance between relief and side-effects using systemic pharmacotherapy alone without unacceptable drug toxicity (35,36). Anaesthetic and neurosurgical techniques may reduce the need for systemically administered opioids, while achieving relief.

Peripheral nerve catheterisation in the management of cancer pain

Tumour infiltration or compression of a peripheral nerve or plexus can result in severe neuropathic pain resistant to pharmacological treatment. In these patients invasive analgesic techniques may be emphasised (37,38).

Recommendation	GR
Reversible regional anaesthetic techniques must be considered for the management of neuropathic pain.	GCP

GCP = good clinical practice.

Neurolytic blocks to control visceral cancer pain

Visceral cancer pain is mainly treated with NSAIDs and opioids, but neurolytic blockade can be used to optimise palliative treatment for cancer in the viscera.

Different neurolytic blockades have been described (39,40). A coeliac plexus block is indicated to treat pain secondary to malignancies of the retroperitoneum or upper abdomen (distal part of the stomach, pancreas, liver, gall bladder) (41) (LE: 1b). A superior hypogastric plexus block has proven utility for pelvic pain (rectum, vaginal fundus, bladder, prostate, testes, seminal vesicles, uterus and ovaries) due to a neoplasm that is refractory to pharmacological treatment (LE: 3) (42-44).

Neuraxial administration of opioids

The delivery of low-dose opioids near the sites of action in the spinal cord may decrease supraspinally mediated adverse effects. Compared with neuroablative therapies, spinal opioids have the advantage of preserving sensation, strength and sympathetic function (45,46). Contraindications include bleeding diathesis, profound leucopenia and sepsis. A temporary trial of spinal opioid therapy should be performed to assess the potential benefits of this approach before implantation of a permanent catheter.

The addition of a low concentration of a local anaesthetic, such as 0.125-0.25% (levo)bupivacaine, to an epidural/intrathecal opioid increases the analgesic effect without increasing toxicity (47,48). The potential morbidity of these procedures requires well-trained clinicians and long-term monitoring (LE: 2).

Recommendation	GR
Continuous intrathecal or epidural administration of morphine may be considered in patients with inadequate pain relief despite escalating doses with sequential strong opioids, or the development of side-effects (nausea, vomiting, constipation, drowsiness, sedation) limiting further dose increase.	B

Chemical rhizotomy

Chemical rhizotomy, produced by the instillation of a neurolytic solution into the epidural or intrathecal space, can be an effective method of pain control for patients with otherwise refractory localised pain syndromes (49,50). The technique is most commonly used in chest-wall pain due to tumour invasion of somatic and neural structures. Other indications include refractory upper limb, lower limb, pelvic or perineal pain (lower end block).

Because of the significant risk of increased disability through weakness, sphincter incompetence and loss of positional sense, chemical rhizotomy of lumbosacral nerve roots is best reserved for patients with limited function and pre-existing urinary diversion. Adverse effects can be related to the injection technique (spinal headache, mechanical neural damage, infection and arachnoiditis) or to the destruction of nonnociceptive nerve fibres (51) (LE: 4).

Recommendation	GR
Lower end block may be considered in patients with intractable perineal pain (bladder, rectum) that has responded insufficiently to more conservative therapy. This technique may only be performed in patients with loss of sphincter function (rectum and/or bladder).	C

Cordotomy

During cordotomy, the anterolateral spinothalamic tract is sectioned to produce contralateral loss of pain and temperature sensitivity. The patient with severe unilateral pain arising in the torso or lower extremity is most likely to benefit from this procedure. The percutaneous technique is generally preferred. Significant pain relief is achieved in more than 90% of patients during the period immediately following cordotomy (52). Of surviving patients, 50% have recurrent pain after 1 year. Repeated cordotomy can sometimes be effective. The neurological complications of cordotomy include paresis, ataxia and bladder dysfunction (53) (LE: 3).

3.4.5.7 References

1. Namaka M, Gramlich CR, Ruhlen D, et al. A treatment algorithm for neuropathic pain. Clin Ther 2004 Jul;26(7):951-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15336464
2. Ballantine JC, Mao J. Opioid therapy for chronic pain. N Engl J Med 2003 Nov;349(20):1943-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14614170
3. Rowbotham MC, Twilling L, Davies PS, et al. Oral opioid therapy for chronic peripheral and central neuropathic pain. N Engl J Med 2003 Mar;348(13):1223-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12660386
4. Dworkin RH, O'Connor AB, Backonja M, et al. Pharmacologic management of neuropathic pain: evidence-based recommendations. Pain 2007 Dec;132(3):237-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17920770
5. Dworkin RH, Backonja M, Rowbotham MC, et al. Advances in neuropathic pain: diagnosis, mechanisms, and treatment recommendations. Arch Neurol 2003 Nov;60(11):1524-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14623723
6. Kakuyama M, Fukuda K. The role of antidepressants in the treatment of chronic pain. Pain Rev 2000:7;119-128.
7. Sindrup SH, Otto M, Finnerup NB, et al. Antidepressants in the treatment of neuropathic pain. Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol 2005 Jun:96(6);399-409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15910402
8. Jensen TS. Anticonvulsants in neuropathic pain: rationale and clinical evidence. Eur J Pain 2002:6(Suppl.A);61-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11888243
9. Rogawski MA, Loscher W. The neurobiology of antiepileptic drugs for the treatment of nonepileptic conditions. Nat Med 2004 Jul:10(7);685-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15229516
10. Vinik A. Clinical review: use of antiepileptic drugs in the treatment of chronic painful diabetic neuropathy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2005 Aug:90(8);4936-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15899953
11. Collins SL, Moore RA, McQuay HJ, et al. Antidepressants and Anticonvulsants for Diabetic Neuropathy and Postherpetic Neuralgia: A Quantitative Systematic Review. J. Pain Symptom Manage 2000 Dec:20(6);449-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11131263
12. Guay DR. Oxcarbazepine, topiramate, levetiracetam, and zonisamide: potential use in neuropathic pain. Am J Geriatr Pharmacother 2003 Sep:1(1);18-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15555463
13. Spina E, Perugi G. Antiepileptic drugs: indications other than epilepsy. Epileptic Disord 2004 Jun:6(2);57-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15246950
14. Nicholson B. Gabapentin use in neuropathic pain syndromes. Acta Neurol Scand 2000 Jun:101(6);359-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10877151
15. Vranken JH, Dijkgraaf MG, Kruis MR, et al. Pregabalin in patients with central neuropathic pain: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of a flexible-dose regimen. Pain 2008 May: 136(1-2);150-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17703885
16. Gilron I, Bailey JM, Tu D, et al. Morphine, gabapentin, or their combination for neuropathic pain. N Eng J Med 2005 Mar:352(13);1324-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15800228
17. Bennett MI, Simpson KH. Gabapentin in the treatment of neuropathic pain. Palliat Med 2004 Jan:18(1);5-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14982201
18. Frampton JE, Foster RH. Pregabalin in the treatment of postherpetic neuralgia. Drugs 2005:65(1); 111-8; discussion 119-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15610058
19. Ryvlin P. Defining success in clinical trials - profiling pregabalin, the newest AED. Eur J Neurol 2005 Nov:12 Suppl 4;12-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16144536

20. Meier T, Wasner G, Faust M, et al. Efficacy of lidocaine patch 5% in the treatment of focal peripheral neuropathic pain syndromes: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Pain 2003 Nov:106(1-2);151-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14581122
21. Galer BS, Jensen MP, Ma T, et al. The lidocaine patch 5% effectively treats all neuropathic pain qualities: results of a randomized, double-blind, vehicle-controlled, 3-week efficacy study with use of the neuropathic pain scale. Clin J Pain 2002 Sep-Oct;18(5):297-301.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12218500
22. Sindrup SH, Jensen TS. Pharmacologic treatment of pain in polyneuropathy. Neurology 2000 Oct; 55(7):915-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061244
23. Fisher K, Coderre TJ, Hagen NA. Targeting the NMDA receptor for chronic pain management: preclinical animal studies, recent clinical experience and future research directions. J Pain Symptom Manage 2000 Nov:20(5);358-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11068158
24. Vranken JH, Dijkgraaf MG, Kruis MR, et al. Iontophoretic administration of S(+)-ketamine in patients with intractable central pain: a placebo-controlled trial. Pain 2005 Nov:118(1-2);224-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16202531
25. Fisher K, Hagen NA. Analgesic effect of oral ketamine in chronic neuropathic pain of spinal origin: a case report. J Pain Symptom Manage 1999 Jul:18(1);61-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10439575
26. Enarson MC, Hayes H, Woodroffe MA. Clinical experiences with oral ketamine. J Pain Symptom Manage 1999 May:17(5);384-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10355218
27. Hocking G, Cousins MJ. Ketamine in chronic pain: an evidence-based review. Anesth Analg 2003 Dec;97(6):1730-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14633551
28. Stubhaug A, Breivik H, Eide PK, et al. Mapping of punctuate hyperalgesia around a surgical incision demonstrates that ketamine is a powerful suppressor of central sensitization to pain following surgery. Acta Anaesthesiol.Scand. 1997 Oct;41(9):1124-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366932
29. Himmelseher S, Durieux ME. Ketamine for perioperative pain management. Anesthesiology 2005 Jan;102(1):211-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15618805
30. Weinbroum AA. A single small dose of postoperative ketamine provides rapid and sustained improvement in morphine analgesia in the presence of morphine-resistant pain. Anesth.Analg. 2003 Mar;96(3):789-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12598264
31. JH Vranken JH, Troost D, de Haan P, et al. Severe toxic damage to the rabbit spinal cord after intrathecal administration of preservative-free S(+)-ketamine. Anesthesiology 2006 Oct;105(4):813-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17006081
32. Vranken JH, Troost D, Wegener JT, et al. Neuropathological findings after continuous intrathecal administration of S(+)-ketamine for the management of neuropathic cancer pain. Pain 2005 Sep; 117(1-2):231-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16098665
33. Fromm GH, Terrence CF, Chatta AS. Baclofen in the treatment of trigeminus neuralgia: double blind study and long term follow up. Ann Neurol 1984 Mar:15(3);240-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6372646
34. Eisenach JC, De Kock M, Klimscha W. Alpha 2 adrenergic agonists for regional anesthesia: a clinical review of clonidine (1984-1995). Anesthesiology 1996 Sep:85(3);655-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8853097
35. Schug SA, Zech D, Dorr U. Cancer pain management according to WHO analgesic guidelines. J Pain Symptom Manage 1990 Feb;5(1):27-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2324558
36. Grond S, Zech D, Schug SA, et al. Validation of the World Health Organization guidelines for cancer pain relief during the last days and hours of life. J Pain Symptom Manage 1991 Oct;6(7):411-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1940485
37. Vranken JH, Zuurmond WW, de Lange JJ. Continuous brachial plexus lock as treatment for the Pancoast's syndrome. Clin J Pain 2000 Dec:16(4);327-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11153789

38. Bride (eds). *Neural Blockade in Clinical Anesthesia and Management of Pain*, 3rd ed. 1998, Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, pp. 373-394.
39. Eisenberg E, Carr DB, Chalmers TC. Neurolytic celiac plexus block for treatment of cancer pain: a meta-analysis. Anesth Analg 1995 Feb;80(2):290-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7818115
40. Plancarte R, de Leon-Casasola O, El-Helaly M, et al. Neurolytic superior hypogastric plexus block for chronic pelvic pain associated with cancer. Reg Anesth 1997 Nov-Dec;22(6):562-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9425974
41. Kawamata M, Ishitani K, Ishikawa K, et al. Comparison between celiac plexus block and morphine treatment on quality of life in patients with pancreatic cancer pain. Pain 1996 Mar;64(3):597-602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8783327
42. de Leon Casasola OA, Kent E, Lema MJ. Neurolytic superior hypogastric plexus block for chronic pelvic pain associated with cancer. Pain 1993 Aug;54(2):145-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8233527
43. Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, Kaufman HS, et al. Chemical splanchnicectomy in patients with unresectable pancreatic cancer. A prospective randomized trial. Ann Surg 1993 May;217(5):447-55; discussion 456-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7683868
44. Suleyman Ozyalcin N, Talu GK, Camlica H, et al. Efficacy of coeliac plexus and splanchnic nerve blockades in body and tail located pancreatic cancer pain. Eur J Pain 2004 Dec;8(6):539-45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15531222
45. Smith TJ, Staats PS, Deer T, et al; Implantable Drug Delivery Systems Study Group. Randomized clinical trial of an implantable drug delivery system compared with comprehensive medical management for refractory cancer pain: impact on pain, drug-related toxicity, and survival. J Clin Oncol 2002 Oct;20(19):4040-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12351602
46. Ballantyne JC, Carwood CM. Comparative efficacy of epidural, subarachnoid, and intracerebroventricular opioids in patients with pain due to cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Jan;(1):CD005178. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15654707
47. Deer TR, Caraway DL, Kim CK, et al. Clinical experience with intrathecal bupivacaine in combination with opioid for the treatment of chronic pain related to failed back surgery syndrome and metastatic cancer pain of the spine. Spine J 2002 Jul-Aug;2(4):274-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14589479
48. van Dongen RTM, Crul BJP, von Egmond J. Intrathecal coadministration of bupivacaine diminishes morphine dose progression during longterm intrathecal infusion in cancer patients. Clin J Pain 1999 Sep;15(3):166-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10524468
49. Candido K, Stevens RA. Intrathecal neurolytic blocks for the relief of cancer pain. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol 2003 Sep;17(3):407-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14529011
50. Slatkin NE, Rhiner M. Phenol saddle blocks for intractable pain at end of life: report of 19 four cases and literature review. Am J Hosp Palliat Care 2003 Jan-Feb;20(1):62-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12568439
51. Rodriguez-Bigas M, Petrelli NJ, Herrera L, et al. Intrathecal phenol rhizotomy for management of pain in recurrent unresectable carcinoma of the rectum. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1991 Jul;173(1):41-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1866669
52. Crul BJ, Blok LM, van Egmond J, et al. The present role of percutaneous cervical cordotomy for the treatment of cancer pain. J Headache Pain 2005 Feb;6(1):24-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16362188
53. Sanders M, Zuurmond W. Safety of unilateral and bilateral percutaneous cervical cordotomy in 80 terminally ill cancer patients. J Clin Oncol 1995 Jun;13(6):1509-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7751899

3.5 Quality of life

It seems beyond question that systematic assessment and objective pain evaluation can be of help for pain control in cancer patients (1-3). There is also proof of the strong relationship between pain, anxiety and depression, and health-related QoL in cancer patients (4,5). Anxiety is a common symptom in patients near the end of life. There is currently insufficient evidence on the role of drugs for treatment of anxiety associated with terminal illness, and it is therefore not possible to draw any conclusions about the effectiveness of

pharmacotherapy in this setting (6).

Cancer-related fatigue (CRF) is a significant problem. It can occur because of the side effects of treatment or the disease itself, and can have a significant impact on a person's ability to function. The causes of fatigue are not fully understood and so it is difficult to treat it appropriately. Trials of erythropoietin and darbopoetin (for anaemic patients on chemotherapy) and psychostimulants (amphetamines) provide evidence for improvement in CRF at a clinically meaningful level. There are no data to support the use of paroxetine or progestational steroids for the treatment of CRF. Methylphenidate is an obvious candidate for a large CRF study (7).

The proportion of people surviving and living with cancer is growing, which has led to increased awareness of the importance of QoL, including sexual function, to people with cancer. Sexual dysfunction is a potential long-term complication of cancer treatment. Following treatment for prostate cancer, there is evidence that transurethral alprostadil and vacuum constriction devices reduce sexual dysfunction, although negative effects are common. Vaginal lubricating creams are also effective, as are PDE5 inhibitors for sexual dysfunction secondary to prostate cancer treatment (8). Psychological **interventions** focused on **sexual dysfunction following cancer** can be considered as moderately effective (9).

Chronic constipation can be a serious problem for cancer patients taking opioids. In this setting, lactulose seems more effective than polyethylene glycol (10).

Palliative care / physical-psychological support / quality of life
Palliative care includes pain management as well as functional, psychosocial and spiritual support. Medical, psychological, physical, social, hospicial, and pastoral interdisciplinary services could be helpful at the end of life (11). Patients facing advance stages of prostate cancer frequently experience 'total pain', a mix of physical, psychological, spiritual and social suffering (12). Information about the illness and the process of care has been proved to reduce distress (13,14). Treatment should include both psychological and somatic symptoms (12). Moderate exercise seems to provide a certain benefit in the treatment of fatigue (15,16). Family caregivers and support groups are crucial components of the patient support system (11). Members of prostate cancer self-help groups provide each other with various types of help, usually nonprofessional and nonmaterial, for a particular shared, usually burdensome, characteristic (14). The help may take the form of providing and evaluating relevant information, relating personal experiences, listening to and accepting others' experiences, providing sympathetic understanding and establishing social networks. A supporting self-help group may also work to inform the public or engage in advocacy. All efforts aimed the improvement of the QoL (14).

3.6 Conclusions

The goal of analgesic therapy in cancer patients is to optimise analgesia with the minimum of side-effects. Current techniques can provide adequate relief for the large majority of patients. Most will need ongoing analgesic therapy, and requirements often change as the disease progresses. Patients with refractory pain should have access to specialists in pain management or palliative medicine who can provide an integrated multidisciplinary approach.

*3.6.1 **References***

1 Allard P, Maunsell E, Labbe J, et al. Educational interventions to improve cancer pain control: a systematic review. J Palliat Med 2001 Summer;4(2):191-203.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441627

2 Aubin M, Vezina L, Parent R, et al. Impact of an educational program on pain management in patients with cancer living at home. Oncol Nurs Forum 2006 Nov;33(6):1183-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17149401

3 Hilarius DL, Kloeg PH, Gundy CM, et al. Use of health-related quality-of-life assessments in daily clinical oncology nursing practice: a community hospital-based intervention study. Cancer 2008 Aug;113(3):628-37.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18543317

4 Brown LF, Kroenke K, Theobald DE, et al. The association of depression and anxiety with health-related quality of life in cancer patients with depression and/or pain. Psychooncology 2010 Jul;19(7):734-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19777535

5 Kroenke K, Theobald D, Wu J, et al. The association of depression and pain with health-related quality of life, disability, and health care use in cancer patients. J Pain Symptom Manage 2010 Sep;40(3): 327-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20580201

6 Jackson KC, Lipman AG. Drug therapy for anxiety in palliative care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2004;(1):CD004596.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14974072
7 Minton O, Stone P, Richardson A, et al. Drug therapy for the management of cancer related fatigue. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 ;(1):CD006704
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18254112
8 Iles CL, Candy B, Jones L, et al. Interventions for sexual dysfunction following treatments for cancer. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007;(4):CD005540
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943864
9 Brotto LA, Yule M, Breckon E. Psychological interventions for the sexual sequelae of cancer: a review of the literature. J Cancer Surviv. 2010 Dec;4(4):346-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20602188
10 Lee-Robichaud H, Thomas K, Morgan J, et al. Lactulose versus Polyethylene Glycol for Chronic Constipation. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2010 Jul;(7):CD007570.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20614462
11 Joon-Ha OK, Meyers FJ, Evans CP. Medical and surgical palliative care of patients with urological malignancies. J Urol. 2005 Oct;174(4 Pt 1):1177-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145365
12 Saunders C. The philosophy of terminal cancer care. Ann Acad Med Singapore. 1987 Jan;16(1):151-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3592584
13 Nanton V, Docherty A, Meystre C, et al. Finding a pathway: information and uncertainty along the prostate cancer patient journey. Br J Health Psychol. 2009 Sep;14(Pt 3):437-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18718111
14 Thaxton L, Emshoff JG, Guessous O. Prostate cancer support groups: a literature review. J Psychosoc Oncol 2005;23(1):25-40
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16492642
15 Velthuis MJ, Agasi-Idenburg SC, Aufdemkampe G, et al. The effect of physical exercise on cancer-related fatigue during cancer treatment: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol). 2010 Apr;22(3):208-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20110159
16 Segal RJ, Reid RD, Courneya KS, et al. Resistance Exercise in Men Receiving Androgen Deprivation Therapy for Prostate Cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2003 May 1;21(9):1653-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12721238

4. PAIN MANAGEMENT IN UROLOGICAL CANCERS

4.1 Pain management in prostate cancer patients

*4.1.1 **Clinical presentation***

Pain in both early and advanced prostate cancer (PCa) can be caused directly by the cancer (77%), be related to the treatment (19%), or be unrelated to either (3%) (1). Management must focus on symptomatic patients with locally advanced disease or metastases.

The overall incidence of chronic pain in PCa patients is about 30-50%, but as patients enter the terminal phase this rises to 90% (2). Pain may be directly attributable to tumour infiltration of and growth in three main areas: bone, nerve or a hollow viscus.

*4.1.2 **Pain due to local impairment***

4.1.2.1 Invasion of soft tissue or a hollow viscus

Pain caused by invasion of a hollow viscus is treated with surgery or minimally invasive procedures (e.g. catheter, stent or nephrostomy tube).

4.1.2.2 Bladder outlet obstruction

Continuous growth of the prostate can lead to an outlet obstruction. Lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) can occur, especially stranguria and an inability to void. Acute pain requires prompt relief. The best method is to insert a suprapubic catheter and treat the tumour according to the stage (3). If the outlet obstruction persists

transurethral palliative resection (TURP) is an option if no curative therapy can be offered.

4.1.2.3 Ureteric obstruction

Ureteric obstruction is most frequently caused by tumour compression or infiltration within the true pelvis (4-7). Less commonly, obstruction can be more proximal, associated with retroperitoneal metastases. In most cases, obstruction is primarily asymmetrical. Untreated progressive ureteric obstruction results in bilateral hydronephrosis and subsequent renal failure. It is good practice to drain symptomatic hydronephrosis at once, and to drain only one kidney (the less dilated and better appearing kidney or the one with the better function if known) in asymptomatic patients. A nephrostomy tube is superior to a double-J stent for drainage because the subsequent routine endoscopic replacement of the stent could be increasingly difficult in a continuously growing prostate gland, and a nephrostomy tube can be changed without anaesthesia.

4.1.2.4 Lymphoedema

Patients with a huge prostate mass and/or lymph node metastases in the pelvis frequently get lymphoedema of the legs. Physiatric techniques such as wraps, pressure stockings and pneumatic pumps can improve function and relieve pain and heaviness.

4.1.2.5 Ileus

Local obstruction of the rectum is a common occurrence in advanced PCa, and can lead to abdominal pain caused by obstructive ileus. Rarely, peritoneal involvement can also result in ileus. Surgery and/or rectal stenting must be performed for mechanical obstruction. Paralytic ileus due to tumour infiltration of a nerve plexus or secondary to analgesics may require laxatives for opioid-induced constipation to improve motility and reduce pain.

4.1.3 ***Pain due to metastases***

4.1.3.1 Bone metastases

- Bone metastases are the most common cause of chronic pain in patients with PCa (8,9) as a result of:
  - endosteal or periosteal nociceptor activation (mechanical distortion or release of chemical mediators)
  - tumour growth into adjacent soft tissues or nerves and
  - other complex mechanisms (9).
- Widespread bony metastases frequently cause multifocal pain. Patients with multiple bony metastases typically report pain in only a few sites.
- More than 25% of patients with bony metastases are pain-free (10).
- The factors that convert a painless lesion into a painful one are unknown.

The choice of treatment will depend on the site, histology and stage of the tumour, and on the patient's physical and emotional condition. Although tumour-cell specific therapies are being developed, most commonly used techniques damage normal tissues, with consequent side-effects. The pros and cons of the therapeutic options should be considered in each case, those with fewest side-effects being administered first. The options are:

- hormone therapy;
- radiotherapy;
- orthopaedic surgery;
- radioisotopes;
- bisphosphonates;
- calcitonin;
- chemotherapy;
- systemic analgesic pharmacotherapy (the analgesic ladder).

Other pain management tools such as nerve blocks are rarely used.

Hormone therapy

Huggins and Hodges (11) first noted the effect of exogenous oestrogen administration on prostatic carcinoma. Hormone changes may cause complex endocrine effects, such as pituitary inhibition of luteinising hormone (LH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and prolactin, as well as changes in endogenous corticosteroid hormone production (12). A variety of additive or ablative hormone manipulations have been employed, including oestrogen, anti-androgen (cyproterone, flutamide), oestrogen-mustine complex (estramustine), progestogens, aminoglutethimide, gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (GnRH) analogues, orchidectomy, adrenalectomy and hypophysectomy. Corticosteroids are also used for the palliation of pain, particularly that due to bone deposits.

Side-effects

Hormone therapy is generally much better tolerated than chemotherapy. It can cause a temporary exacerbation of pain (pain flare), which is generally predictive of a subsequent response (13). The side-effects are:

- GnRH analogues and orchidectomy:
  - loss of body hair
  - testicular atrophy
  - gynaecomastia
  - loss of libido
  - impotence
  - increased cardiovascular mortality rate in long term administration
  - psychological morbidity.
- anti-androgens:
  - gynaecomastia (more often if used alone than when used in combination with GnRH analogues)
  - hepatic impairment
  - less sexual dysfunction than with GnRH analogues.
- cyproterone acetate:
  - fewer side-effects than oestrogens
  - lower incidence of cardiovascular complications than with oestrogens.
- oestrogens:
  - loss of body hair
  - testicular atrophy
  - gynaecomastia
  - loss of libido
  - impotence.
- Long-term administration results in higher mortality from cardiac and cerebrovascular disease as compared to GnRH analogues.
- adrenalectomy:
  - major operative procedure.
- hypophysectomy:
  - small but significant mortality rate
  - hormone replacement is subsequently required for life.

Efficacy

In a collected series of protocols, pain relief has been estimated at between 35% (14) and 70% (15). The differences may be due to the selection of patients and problems in pain measurement. Well-differentiated prostatic carcinoma is more likely to respond to hormones than are poorly differentiated tumours. Manipulations that include replacement corticosteroid therapy or have additional corticoid effects seem to give higher response rates. Corticosteroids are also used for the palliation of pain, particularly in bone metastases.

Problems

To date, most patients with adenocarcinoma of the prostate present in early tumour stages and undergo radical surgery or radiotherapy. In cases of disease progression and symptoms, hormone therapy can be indicated with patients remaining asymptomatic for years. Pain is associated with a hormone-resistant tumour in progression, which necessitates alternative therapeutical options.

Radiotherapy

- The role of radiotherapy in the management of pain due to bone metastases is unquestionable.
- Radiotherapy techniques vary widely, from a large dose given as a single treatment to as many as 20 smaller treatments given over 4 weeks.
- Dose-time factors: the biological effect of the radiation depends not only on the total dose delivered, but also on the number of separate treatments and the total time over which the irradiation therapy is administered.
- Palliative doses are smaller than maximum tolerance doses.
- Bear in mind that radiological evidence of a deposit may considerably underestimate the extent of disease.

In metastatic adenocarcinoma of the prostate, radiotherapy is associated with palliation of pain from bony metastases and improved QoL. Radiation therapy is effective at treating painful sites, and might also be effective at reducing the propensity for adjuvantly treated disease to become symptomatic in most patients

(16). This effect does not appear to be significantly influenced by dose-time relationships or histology. The proportion of patients achieving complete pain relief approaches 80% (17) (see also Section 3.3.3).

Orthopaedic surgery
If more than 50% of the thickness of the cortex of a long bone is eroded by metastasis, prophylactic fixation rather than radiotherapy alone should be considered. Internal fixation should be followed by postoperative radiotherapy because there is a real danger of continued tumour growth and further structural weakness (18,19). Radiotherapy should not be withheld for fear of inhibiting bone healing and regrowth. There is good evidence that palliative doses of radiotherapy are associated with recalcification (20).

Radioisotopes
Widespread axial skeletal involvement in PCa has been successfully treated with systemically administered bone-seeking radioisotopes (see also Section 3.3.2). Commonly used radionuclides are strontium-89 chloride (^{89}Sr) and samarium-153-ethylenediaminetetramethylene phosphonic acid (^{153}Sm-EDTMP). The addition of ^{89}Sr as a single injection of 10.8 mCi (399.6 MBq) is an effective adjuvant therapy to local field radiotherapy, reducing disease progression, the requirement for further radiotherapy and analgesic support (16), and improving QoL. Some evidence suggests that radioisotopes could give complete relief from pain over 1-6 months, with no increase in analgesia, although adverse effects, specifically leucocytopenia and thrombocytopenia, have been experienced (21).

Bisphosphonates
Bisphosphonates are routine supportive care for patients with bone metastases, and in a meta-analysis of 8 randomised studies some improvement in pain control due to bone metastases could be demonstrated (22). Bisphosphonates act by inhibiting osteoclast activities. Recent studies showed no statistically significant difference between the bisphosphonate and control groups in terms of PCa death, disease progression, and radiological and PSA response, but they should be considered for treating refractory bone pain and preventing skeletal events in those with metastatic PCa (22).

Zoledronic acid is effective for treating the complications of bone metastasis. Its efficacy and safety have been established in three pivotal trials involving more than 3000 patients (23). Although they appear osteoblastic on radiographic imaging, most bone metastases are characterised by excess osteoclast volume and activity. Pathological osteoclast activation is associated with increased risk of skeletal complications. Zoledronic acid, a potent inhibitor of osteoclast activity, differentiation and survival, decreases the risk of skeletal complications in men with androgen-independent PCa and bone metastases. Other bisphosphonates, including pamidronate and clodronate, seem to be less effective (24).

Zoledronic acid administration for one year to patients with hormone-sensitive PCa and bone metastases who were on androgen-deprivation therapy was safe and prevented bone loss, as shown by significant increases in bone mineral density and sustained suppression of biochemical markers of bone turnover (25). Zoledronic acid (4 mg intravenously over 15 minutes every 3-4 weeks) decreased the frequency of skeleton-related events, delayed the time to the first occurance, and reduced pain (23). Visual analogue scale improvement is positively correlated with a decrease of C-telopeptide and bone phosphatase alkaline ($p < 0.05$) serum levels (26). Studies are needed to determine the optimal timing, schedule and duration of treatment in men with bone metastases, as well as other potential roles for bisphosphonates, e.g. prevention of bone metastases (see Section 3.4.3).

Calcitonin
Current evidence does not support the use of calcitonin to control pain arising from bone metastases (27).

Chemotherapy
In about 80% of men with metastatic PCa, primary androgen ablation leads to symptomatic improvement and a reduction in the serum levels of PSA. The disease eventually becomes refractory to hormone treatment, and systemic chemotherapy should be reserved for this patient group. Recent data have shown encouraging signs in overall survival, palliation of symptoms and improvements in QoL (28), particularly with docetaxel.

Trials using single-agent chemotherapy in advanced disease have shown poor results, but newer studies suggest multiagent chemotherapies may be more effective. A randomised trial showed that mitoxantrone plus low-dose prednisone relieved pain and improved QoL more frequently than did prednisolone alone.
Other studies have confirmed the symptomatic effect of this regimen, but none found improved survival.

A PSA-response rate and a reduction of pain were also reported with other combined chemotherapies (Table 4). Individualised therapy was necessary as side-effects were common and no regimen showed a survival benefit.

A major proportion of the morbidity and mortality related can be traced to the burden of bone metastases (29). Any effective hormone therapy or chemotherapy is generally suited to relieve metastatic pain, or to limit, at least. Over the last decade, several new agents for mCRPC targeting different mechanisms of progression have been applied successfully: docetaxel, cabazitaxel, sipuleucel-T, denosumab, and abiraterone acetate (30). Docetaxel is the standard first-line chemotherapeutic agent (31). Despite a survival benefit the prognosis remains limited. Second-line therapeutic options are limited. Results from recently completed trials show a statistically and clinically significant improvement in pain relief and overall survival with cabazitaxel compared with mitoxantrone. Cabazitaxel has been shown to be well tolerated and has been approved as second-line chemotherapy for mCRPC (31,32). In 2010 two further randomized trials were published which demonstrate a survival benefit in the second-line setting: sipuleucel-T (immunotherapy) and abiraterone acetate versus placebo (20). The identification of intracellular androgen synthesis by prostate cancer cells has led to the development of third generation drugs for the therapy of mCRPC. Inhibitors of androgen synthesis and more potent androgen receptor antagonists will relief pain and improve palliation. A significant reduction of tumor-associated pain and a survival advantage of 4.6 months compared to placebo following docetaxel-based chemotherapy has already been shown for abiraterone (phase III study) (32) (LE: 1b, GR: A).

Table 4: PSA-response rates to selected combined chemotherapy regimens

Chemotherapy agent	Plus	Response rate (%)
Ketoconazole	+ doxorubicin	55
Vinblastine	+ estramustine	54-61
Estramustine	+ etoposide	39-58
Mitoxantrone	+ prednisone	33
Paclitaxel	+ estramustine	53

In 2005, two studies demonstrated that docetaxel-based regimens have a very good symptomatic effect that is significantly better than that of the mitoxantrone-based approach (Table 5) (25,26). Additionally, for the first time, a significant survival benefit was shown for the docetaxel group (18.9 versus 16.5 months).

Table 5: Docetaxel-based chemotherapy versus mitoxantrone-based regimens

Chemotherapy	Plus	Frequency	Response rate (29)	
agent			Pain (%)	Quality of life (%)
Docetaxel	+ prednisone	Every 3 weeks	35	22
Docetaxel	+ prednisone	Weekly	31	23
Mitoxantrone	+ prednisone	Every 3 weeks	22	13

Although most of these regimens are associated with side-effects such as fatigue, mild myelosuppression and gastrointestinal irritation, they are generally well tolerated by most patients (33). The docetaxel-based regimens are now the standard of care for patients with advanced hormone-refractory PCa. Soft-tissue lesions could be influenced to a greater extent than bony metastases. Pain management by chemotherapy could be effective, although it is much more cost-intensive than the administration of opioids, and the survival advantage is limited.

4.1.4 Systemic analgesic pharmacotherapy (the analgesic ladder)

If the treatments described above provide insufficient pain relief, systemic analgesic pharmacotherapy should be administered (see Section 3.4.4). In most cases, the drug selection scheme proposed by the World Health Organization (WHO), the analgesic ladder, is recommended.

Short-term studies have shown that NSAIDs alone are effective in managing cancer pain, with side-effects similar to those with placebo. In about 50% of studies, increasing the dose of NSAIDs increased efficacy but not the incidence of side-effects. No large clinical difference has been demonstrated between combining an NSAID with an opioid versus either medication alone (34).

Tramadol extended-release tablets and dihydrocodeine extended-release tablets were effective for the management of chronic tumour pain associated with PCa with bone metastasis on step 2 of the WHO ladder, with the tramadol giving slightly better pain management and fewer side-effects, particularly constipation (35). The treatment of constipation in palliative care is based on experimental evidence, and uncertainty persists about its optimum management in this group of patients (36).

Oral morphine is an effective analgesic for cancer pain, with qualitative evidence showing that it compares well with other opioids. Morphine is the gold standard for moderate to severe cancer-related pain. Alternatives such as hydromorphone are now available, but no clinically significant difference has been shown compared to and other strong opioids such as morphine (37). Patients with inadequate pain control and intolerable opioid related toxicity/adverse effects may have to switch to an alternative opioid for symptomatic relief, although the evidence to support opioid switching is largely anecdotal, observational or from uncontrolled studies (38).

Breakthrough pain is a common and debilitating problem for patients with cancer. Evidence suggests that oral transmucosal fentanyl citrate is effective for breakthrough pain (39), giving more rapid relief than morphine (40).

4.1.5 ***Spinal cord compression***

Spinal cord compression can occur due to the collapse of a vertebral body or to pressure from an extradural tumour within the spinal canal. Prodromal pain is a feature in 96% of these patients. The overall incidence in PCa patients is less than 10% (42). Thoracic cord compression is the most common area (70%), and the incidence of multiple extradural sites can be as high as 18% (43). Definitive treatment with surgery (anterior decompression with spinal stabilisation) or radiotherapy should be considered. The symptom of local back pain sometimes disappears, despite an increase in motor deficits, because of the evolving sensory component of the paraplegia.

Corticosteroids (typically dexamethasone 16 mg daily) are of only temporary use in cord oedema. There is evidence that decompressive surgery benefits ambulant patients with poor prognostic factors for radiotherapy, and non-ambulant patients with a single area of compression, paraplegia of < 48 hours' duration, nonradiosensitive tumours and predicted survival of > 3 months. There is a significant risk of serious adverse effects from high-dose corticosteroids (44).

4.1.6 ***Hepatic invasion***

Hepatic invasion by secondary tumour is a common cause of severe hypochondrial pain, often radiating to the back and shoulder blade. The mechanism may be the stretching of nerve endings in the liver capsule, diaphragmatic irritation, or haemorrhage into a necrotic area of tumour. Liver pain can often be controlled by conventional titration of appropriate analgesics or with corticosteroids.
Whole-liver palliative radiotherapy can also be useful in carefully selected patients with refractory pain, giving far fewer side-effects than the alternatives of intra-arterial chemotherapy or hepatic artery embolisation. Hepatic irradiation can improve abdominal pain with little toxicity in more than half of patients (45). Doses should not exceed 30 Gy in 15 daily fractions or its equivalent if radiation hepatitis is to be avoided.

4.1.7 ***Pain due to cancer treatment***

4.1.7.1 Acute pain associated with hormonal therapy

Luteinising hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) tumour flare in PCa

Initiation of LHRH therapy for PCa produces a transient symptom flare in 5-25% of patients (46,47), presumably caused by an initial stimulation of LH release before suppression is achieved (47,48). The syndrome typically presents as an exacerbation of bone pain or urinary retention. Spinal cord compression and sudden death have also been reported (46). Symptom flare is usually observed within the first week of therapy, and lasts 1-3 weeks. Co-administration of an androgen antagonist at the start of LHRH agonist therapy can prevent this (49).

4.1.7.2 Chronic pain associated with hormonal therapy

Gynaecomastia

Chronic gynaecomastia and breast tenderness are common complications of anti-androgen therapies for PCa, the incidence varying between drugs. Frequently associated with diethylstilboestrol (50), it is less common with flutamide and cyproterone (51-53), and uncommon in patients receiving LHRH agonist therapy (54). In elderly patients, it must be distinguished from primary breast cancer or secondary cancer in the breast (54).

4.1.8 ***Conclusions***

Radio-, chemo- and hormone therapy are all valuable options for relieving cancer pain. The side-effects of

inappropriate anticancer treatments can be very distressing, and so the disadvantages of treatments must be balanced against the palliative benefits. In many patients, the best approach to pain relief is through interdisciplinary co-operation.

Surgery, radio-, chemo- and hormone therapy are mainly used as antitumour treatment in the relief of pain. The rational use of any of these treatments demands knowledge not only of tumour biology, but also of the mechanisms of action of these specific oncological techniques. The therapeutic aim should be clearly understood prior to starting treatment.

Radical treatment should be given if the disease is potentially curable, but the intent should be symptomatic or palliative if the tumour is advanced or widely disseminated (55). The importance of early intervention needs to be emphasised, and education is crucial: patients must be aware of the early signs and symptoms of metastatic disease, which does not necessarily involve pain.

*4.1.9 **Recommendations at a glance (stage M1) (56-61)***

ANTICANCER TREATMENT		
Recommendation	**LE**	**GR**
Hormonal therapy (orchiectomy, LHRH analogues, diethylstilboestrol equivalent)	1a	A
Total androgen blockade: flare prevention, second-line	2b	B
Intermittent androgen suppression experimental	3	B
Monotherapy with anti-androgen is an option	2	B
First-line treatment controls disease for 12-18 months, second-line individualised	1b	A
Supportive care		
Low-dose glucocorticoids	1b	A
Chemotherapy		
Mitoxantrone plus prednisolone	1b	B
Estramustine + vinblastine or etoposide or paclitaxel	2b	B
Docetaxel	1b	A
PAIN MANAGEMENT		
Recommendation	**LE**	**GR**
Pain assessment (localisation, type, severity, overall distress)		B
Pain due to painful or unstable bony metastases (single lesions)		
External beam irradiation	1b	A
Pain due to painful bony metastases (widespread)		
Radioisotopes (^{89}Sr or ^{153}Sm-EDTMP)	2	B
Pain due to painful metastases (many spots)		
Bisphosphonates	1b	A
Systemic pain management		
WHO analgesic ladder step 1: NSAID or paracetamol	1a	A
Opioid administration		
Dose titration	2	B
Access to breakthrough analgesia	1b	A
Tricyclic antidepressant and/or anticonvulsant in case of neuropathic pain	1a	A

*4.1.10 **References***

1. Foley KM. Pain syndromes in patients with cancer. In: Bonica JJ, Ventafridda V (eds). Advances in Pain Research and Therapy 2. New York, Raven Press, 1979, pp. 59-75.
2. Twycross RG, Lack SA. Symptom control in far advanced cancer: Pain relief. London: Pitman, 1983, p. 6.

3. Heidenreich A, Bolla M, Joniau S, et al; members of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office. Guidelines on Prostate Cancer. In: EAU Guidelines, edition presented at the 25th EAU Annual Congress 2010. ISBN 978-90-79754-70-0. http://www.uroweb.org/gls/pdf/Prostate%20Cancer%202010%20June%2017th.pdf
4. Fair WR. Urologic emergencies. In: DeVita VT, Hellman S, Rosengerg SA (eds). *Cancer Principles and Practice of Oncology*, 3rd ed. PA: Lippincott, 1989, pp. 2016-2028.
5. Greenfield A, Resnick MI. Genitourinary emergencies. Semin Oncol 1989 Dec;16(6):516-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2688111
6. Talner LB. Specific causes of obstruction. In: Pollack HM (ed.). Clinical Urography, vol. 2. PA: Saunders, 1990, pp. 1629-1751.
7. Cherny NI, Portenoy RK. Cancer Pain: Principles of Assessment and Syndromes. In: Wall PD, Melzack R(eds). Textbook of Pain, 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingston, 1994.
8. Banning A, Sjøgren P, Henriksen H. Pain causes in 200 patients referred to a multidisciplinary cancer pain clinic. Pain 1991 Apr;45(1):45-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1861877
9. Nielsen OS, Munro AJ, Tannock IF. Bone metastases: pathophysiology and management policy. J Clin Oncol 1991 Mar;9(3):509-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1705581
10. Wagner G. Frequency of pain in patients with cancer. Recent Results Cancer Res 1984;89:64-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6364273
11. Huggins C, Hodges VC. Studies on prostatic cancer. Cancer Research 1941;1:293-7.
12. Powles TJ, Smith IE, Coombes RC. Endocrine therapy. In: Halnan KE (ed.). Treatment of Cancer, London: Chapman & Hall, 1983, pp. 103-117.
13. Stoll BA. Hormonal therapy-pain relief and recalcification. In: Stoll BA, Parbhoo S (eds). Bone Metastasis: Monitoring and Treatment. NY: Raven Press, 1983, pp. 321-342.
14. Stoll BA. Breast and prostatic cancer: Methods and results of endocrine therapy. In: Stoll BA (ed.). Hormonal management of endocrine-related cancer. London: Lloyd-Luke, 1981, pp. 77-91, 148-57.
15. Pannuti F, Martoni A, Rossi AP, et al. The role of endocrine therapy for relief of pain due to advanced cancer. In: Bonica JJ, Ventafridda V (eds). Advances in Pain Research and Therapy 2. NY: Raven Press, 1979, pp. 145-165.
16. Porter AT, McEwan AJ, Powe JE, et al. Results of a randomized phase-III trial to evaluate the efficacy of strontium-89 adjuvant to local field external beam irradiation in the management of endocrine resistant metastatic prostate cancer. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1993 Apr;25(5):805-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8478230
17. Bates TD. Radiotherapy, chemotherapy and hormone therapy in the relief of cancer pain. In: Swerdlow M, Charlton JE (eds). Relief of Intractable Pain, 1989, Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 329-47.
18. [No authors listed] Pathological fractures due to bone metastases. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1981 Sep;283(6294):748. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6791732
19. Galasko CS. The management of skeletal metastases. J R Coll Surg Edinb 1980 May;25(3):144-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6452521
20. Ford HT, Yarnold JR. Radiation therapy - pain relief and recalcification. In: Stoll BA, Parbhoo S, eds. Bone Metastasis: Monitoring and Treatment. NY: Raven Press, 1983, pp. 343-54.
21. Roqué i Figuls M, Martinez-Zapata MJ, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Radioisotopes for metastatic bone pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2003, issue 4, art. no.: CD003347. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003347. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14583970
22. Wong RKS, Wiffen PJ. Bisphosphonates for the relief of pain secondary to bone metastases. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, issue 2, art. no.: CD002068. DOI: 10.1002/14651858. CD002068. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12076438
23. Smith MR. Zoledronic acid to prevent skeletal complications in cancer: corroborating the evidence. Cancer Treat Rev. 2005;31(Suppl.3):19-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16229955
24. Michaelson MD, Smith MR. Bisphosphonates for treatment and prevention of bone metastases. J Clin Oncol 2005 Nov;23(32):8219-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16278476

25. Polascik TJ, Given RW, Metzger C, et al. Open-label trial evaluating the safety and efficacy of zoledronic acid in preventing bone loss in patients with hormone-sensitive prostate cancer and bone metastases. Urology 2005 Nov;66(5):1054-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16286123
26. Fulfaro F, Leto G, Badalamenti G, et al. The use of zoledronic acid in patients with bone metastases from prostate carcinoma: effect on analgesic response and bone metabolism biomarkers. J Chemother 2005 Oct;17(5):555-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16323446
27. Martinez-Zapata MJ, Roqué M, Alonso-Coello P, et al. Calcitonin for metastatic bone pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006 Jul, issue 3: CD003223.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16856000
28. Shelley M, Harrison C, Coles B, et al. Chemotherapy for hormone-refractory prostate cancer. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2, 2008.
29. Aljumaily R, Mathew P. Optimal management of bone metastases in prostate cancer. Curr Oncol Rep. 2011 Jun;13(3):222-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21336561
30. Bishr M, Lattouf JB, Gannon PO, et al. Updates on therapeutic targets and agents in castration-resistant prostate cancer. Minerva Urol Nefrol. 2011 Jun;63(2):131-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21623331
31. Bahl A, Bellmunt J, Oudard S. Practical aspects of metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer management: patient case studies. BJU Int. 2012 Mar;109 Suppl 2:14-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22257100
32. de Bono JS, Oudard S, Ozguroglu M, et al. TROPIC Investigators: Prednisone plus cabazitaxel or mitoxantrone for metastatic castration-resistant prostate cancer progressing after docetaxel treatment: a randomised open-label trial. Lancet. 2010 Oct 2;376(9747):1147-54
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20888992
33. Kao SC, Hovey E, Marx G. Second-line therapy for castrate-resistant prostate cancer: a literature review. Asia Pac J Clin Oncol. 2011 Sep;7(3):212-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21884433
34. Olson KB, Pienta KJ. Pain management in patients with advanced prostate cancer. Oncology (Williston Park) 1999 Nov;13(11):1537-49; discussion 1549-50 passim.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10581602
35. McNicol ED, Strassels S, Goudas L, et al. NSAIDS or paracetamol, alone or combined with opioids, for cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2005 Jan, issue 2, art. no.: CD005180.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15654708
36. Oliva P, Carbonell R, Giron JA, et al. Extended-release oral opiates: tramadol versus dihydrocodeine in chronic tumor pain associated to prostate cancer. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews: EBM Reviews - Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (2008).
37. Miles CL, Fellowes D, Goodman ML, et al. Laxatives for the management of constipation in palliative care patients. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006 Oct, issue 4, art. no.: CD003448.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17054172
38. Quigley C. Hydromorphone for acute and chronic pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2002, issue 1, art. no.: CD003447.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869661
39. Quigley C. Opioid switching to improve pain relief and drug tolerability. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2004, issue 3, art. no.: CD004847.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15266542
40. Zeppetella G, Ribeiro MDC. Opioids for the management of breakthrough (episodic) pain in cancer patients. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2006 Jan, issue 1, art. no.: CD004311.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16437482
41. Wiffen PJ, McQuay HJ. Oral morphine for cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007 Oct, issue 4, art. no.: CD003868.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943804
42. Hoy AM, Lucas CF. Radiotherapy, chemotherapy and hormone therapy: treatment for pain. In: Wall PD, Melzack R (eds). Textbook of Pain, 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingston, 1994.
43. Kramer JA. Spinal cord compression in malignancy. Palliat Med 1992;6:202-11.
44. George R, Jeba J, Ramkumar G, et al. Interventions for the treatment of metastatic extradural spinal cord compression in adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2008 Oct, issue 4, art. no.: CD006716.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843728

45. Borgelt BB, Gelber R, Brady LW, et al. The palliation of hepatic metastases: results of the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group pilot study. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1981 May;7(5):587-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6168623
46. Thompson IM, Zeidman EJ, Rodriguez FR. Sudden death due to disease flare with luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone agonist therapy for carcinoma of the prostate. J Urol 1990 Dec;144(6): 1479-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2122011
47. Chrisp P, Sorkin EM, Leuprorelin. A review of its pharmacology and therapeutic use in prostatic disorders. Drugs and Aging 1991 Nov-Dec;1(6):487-509. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1794035
48. Goldspiel BR, Kohler DR. Goserelin acetate implant: a depot luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone analog for advanced prostate cancer. DICP 1991 Jul-Aug;25(7-8):796-804. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1835221
49. Crawford ED, Nabors W. Hormone therapy of advanced prostate cancer: where we stand today. Oncology (Williston Park)1991 Jan;5(1):21-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1828686
50. Eberlein TJ. Gynecomastia. In: Harris J R, Hellman S, Henderson I C, Kinne D, eds. Breast diseases, 2nd ed. PA: Lippincott, 1991, pp. 46-50.
51. Delaere KP, Van Thillo EL. Flutamide monotherapy as primary treatment in advanced prostatic carcinoma. Semin Oncol 1991 Oct;18(5Suppl.6):13-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1948117
52. Goldenberg SL, Bruchovsky N. Use of cyproterone acetate in prostate cancer. Urol Clin North Am 1991 Feb;18(1):111-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1825143
53. Neumann F, Kalmus J. Cyproterone acetate in the treatment of sexual disorders: pharmacological base and clinical experience. Exp Clin Endocrinol 1991;98(2):71-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1838080
54. Ramamurthy L, Cooper RA. Metastatic carcinoma to the male breast. Br J Radiol 1991 Mar;64(759): 277-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2021802
55. Cherny NI, Portenoy RK. Cancer pain: principles of assessment and syndromes. In: Wall PD, Melzack R(eds). Textbook of Pain, 3rd ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingston, 1994.
56. National Committee on Cancer Care Workgroup on Prostate Cancer. Treatment of metastatic prostate cancer (M1). In: Ministry of Health (Singapore): Prostate Cancer 2000, National Guideline Clearinghouse (withdrawn).
57. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN). Control of pain in patients with cancer. A national clinical guideline 2000. http://www.sign.ac.uk/guidelines/fulltext/44/index.html
58. American College of Radiology. ACR Appropriateness Criteria (tm) for bone metastases. In: American College of Radiology: ACR Appropriateness Criteria (tm) for metastatic bone disease, 1996 (revised 2003), National Guideline Clearinghouse. http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?doc_id=5911&nbr=003897&string=ACR+AND+appropriateness+AND+criteria
59. Cancer Care Ontario (CCO). Use of strontium-89 in patients with endocrine-refractory carcinoma of the prostate metastatic to bone, 1997 (updated online 2001), National Guideline Clearinghouse. http://www.cancercare.on.ca/pdf/pebc3-6f.pdf
60. Schröder FH. Hormonal therapy of prostate cancer. In: Walsh P, Retik AB, Darracott Vaughan E, Wein AJ, eds. Campell's Urology, 8th ed. 2002, Elsevier Science, vol. 4, pp. 3182-3208.
61. Eisenberger MA. Chemotherapy for hormone-resistant prostate cancer In: Walsh P, Retik AB, Darracott Vaughan E, Wein AJ (eds). Campell's Urology, 8th ed. 2002, Elsevier Science, vol. 4, pp. 3209-26.

4.2 Pain management in transitional cell carcinoma patients

*4.2.1 **Clinical presentation***

In more developed countries, urothelial cancer is the 5th most common cancer in men and the 13th in women (1). Transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) is the most frequent cancer of the bladder and upper urinary tract. It arises much more frequently in the bladder than in the collecting system (calices, renal pelvis and ureter).

From the perspective of pain, there are no differences between TCC and other histotypes of urothelial malignant tumour. In bladder carcinoma, pain can be present at an early stage as a burning pain (dysuria),

together with irritative symptoms (urgency and frequency), or late in advanced disease due to obstruction of the upper urinary tract, or local invasion of neighbouring tissues causing pelvic or metastatic organ invasion.

TCC of the renal collecting system represents 5-10% of all kidney tumours and 5% of all TCC of the urinary tract (2). TCC of the ureter accounts for only 3% of all TCC (3). In upper urinary tract TCC, pain is an initial symptom in 18-30% of cases (4,5).

*4.2.2 **Origin of tumour-related pain***

4.2.2.1 Bladder TCC

The main causes of tumour-related pain in bladder TCC are:

- obstruction of the upper urinary tract due to growth of bladder tumour close to the ureteral orifices.
- invasion of the surrounding areas by a locally advanced tumour (pelvic wall, nerve roots, other organs such as bowel, or rectum)
- bone metastases
- soft tissue metastases (seldom painful)

4.2.2.2 Upper urinary tract TCC

The main causes of tumour-related pain in the upper urinary tract TCC are:

- obstruction of the upper urinary tract (presenting symptom in around 30% of cases)
- acute obstruction due to blood clots
- invasion of the surrounding areas by a locally advanced tumour (posterior abdominal wall, nerve roots, paraspinous muscles, other organs such as bowel, spleen, or liver)
- bone metastases
- soft tissue metastases (seldom painful)

*4.2.3 **Pain due to local impairment***

4.2.3.1 Bladder TCC

Obstruction of the ureteral orifices by tumour infiltration may lead to hydronephrosis and consecutive flank pain due to ureteral distension (visceral pain). Transurethral resection of the tumour may be effective in eliminating ureteral obstruction, but in palliative situations, hydronephrosis is mainly treated by temporary or permanent ureteral stenting or percutaneous/open nephrostomy, similar to the treatment of obstruction caused by prostate cancer (6).

In locally advanced disease, symptoms are comparable with those caused by T4 prostate cancer. Infiltration of the contiguous soft tissue and neighbouring organs can cause acute burning pain by infiltration of the pelvic nerves (neuropathic pain), sometimes associated with paraesthesia irradiating to the lower limb, or motor deficit. If the tumour invades adjacent organs (small bowel or rectum), there can be obstruction, and visceral pain due to distension of hollow organs. Growing bladder tumour can cause complete bladder outlet obstruction, with hypogastric abdominal pain from bladder distension. Obstruction of the lymphatic vessels by lymphadenopathy can cause lymphoedema of the lower limbs with pain due to distension of muscle fascia (somatic pain) (6).

In infiltrating and advanced bladder cancer, radical or debulking cystectomy and urinary diversion have a positive impact on pain, by removing the neoplastic mass invading the surrounding tissues (see EAU Guidelines on Muscle Invasive Bladder Cancer, Chapter 8.1). Extended operations, including excision of involved bowel, are sometimes indicated. Palliative surgery may be necessary in occlusive intestinal syndromes (7). In a small retrospective study of patients with tumour infiltration of the rectum by locally recurrent prostate cancer, total exenteration resulted in significant pain reduction in all patients, and 79% were completely pain free (8). In a mixed group of cancer patients (colorectal, urinary or gynaecological) with different symptoms such as bleeding, fistula, or pelvic pain or obstruction, palliative pelvic exenteration improved QoL in 88% (9).

First-line chemotherapy strategies that are mainly based on platinum-containing regimens have some effect in 12-75% of patients with advanced disease (see EAU Guidelines on Muscle Invasive Bladder Cancer Guidelines, Chapter 12). It probably relieves pain by decreasing the neoplastic mass in respondent patients (10-14) (LE: 1a), but pain control was one of the study end points in only one small study (15).

In a phase III trial vinflunine, as new second line chemotherapy agent, proved to be very effective in disease control with 76%, but pain control was not an end point. Quality of life stayed unchanged during chemotherapy despite drug toxicity (16).

Radiotherapy can be effective in controlling pelvic pain and other symptoms such as frequency and haematuria due to local disease progression. In a large randomised study with 500 participants, two radiotherapy schedules (35 Gy in 10 fractions and 21 Gy in 3 fractions) were compared for symptomatic improvement of bladder-related symptoms. 68% of the participants achieved symptomatic improvement, 71% with 35 Gy radiotherapy and 64% with 21Gy. Acute bowel toxicity was noticed in one third of the patients. There was no significant difference between the 2 study arms (17) (LE 1a). Some smaller studies have shown comparable results with respect to improvement of QoL by local radiotherapy (18).
The effect of radiotherapy in controlling local symptoms of advanced bladder cancer needs to be balanced against the risk of inducing proctitis.

4.2.3.2 Upper urinary tract TCC

Transitional cell carcinoma (TCC) of the upper urinary tract often presents with microscopic or gross haematuria (70-80%), but flank pain also occurs in 20-40% of patients due to obstruction or lumbar mass (see EAU Guidelines on Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas, Chapter 3.4). A multi-institutional study with 654 patients has shown that local symptoms do not confer worse prognosis compared with patients with incidentally detected upper urinary tract TCC (19). Locally advanced primary tumours are usually managed by radical nephroureterectomy. Extended operations including excision of involved bowel, spleen or abdominal wall muscle are sometimes indicated.

With regard to chemotherapy, the same considerations are valid for upper urinary tract TCC as for bladder TCC (compare with EAU Guidelines on Upper Urinary Tract Urothelial Cell Carcinomas, Chapter 3.7.2). The standard chemotherapy regimens that provide moderately prolonged survival are MVAC (methotrexate, vinblastin, adriamycin, cisplatin) and gemcitabine/cisplatin as first-line drugs, as in bladder cancer (20). In a phase II study of 151 patients with locally advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer, 45 patients (29%) with upper urinary tract carcinoma were included, and vinflunine as second-line chemotherapy demonstrated moderate activity in these patients (21)

*4.2.4 **Pain due to metastases***

Haematogenous metastases to the bone are often found in advanced bladder or upper urinary tract TCC. No data are available in the literature concerning the specific effect of chemotherapy on bone metastases alone.

Radiotherapy has a palliative analgesic role in bone metastases (see Chapter 3.3.3) and pain reduction > 50% can be achieved in 50% of patients (22) (LE: 1b). All the data concerning radiotherapy or radionuclide therapy of bone metastases have been taken from series including different carcinomas such as prostate, breast or kidney cancer. There are no specific trials studying the effect of radiotherapy on painful bone metastases in bladder cancer. Single-fraction radiotherapy is as effective as multifraction radiotherapy in relieving metastatic bone pain (23,24) (LE: 1a). However, the rates of retreatment and pathological fractures are higher after single-fraction radiotherapy (23,24) (LE: 1a).

Radioisotope treatment (see Chapter 3.3.2) or hemi-body irradiation can be used in patients with multiple bone metastases (22). There are no specific studies of radioisotope therapy for bone metastasis in TCC.

Orthopaedic surgery can stabilise pathological fractures, as for those from prostate cancer (see Chapter 3.3.3.6).

*4.2.5 **Conclusion for symptomatic locally advanced or metastatic urothelial cancer***

- In locally advanced bladder cancer, palliative cystectomy or exenteration might be an option for symptom relief (LE 3; GR B)
- Chemotherapy in urothelial cell carcinoma is effective in terms of disease control (LE 1b, GR A)
- The effect on pain control and quality of life seems to be analogue (LE 2a)
- Radiotherapy reduces pain and symptoms of locally advanced bladder cancer (LE 1a, GR B), but this needs to be balanced against the risk of inducing proctitis
- Radiotherapy is effective in reducing pain due to bone metastases (LE 1b; GR A)

*4.2.6 **References***

1. Jemal A, Bray F, Center MM, et al. Global Cancer Statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 2011 Mar-Apr; 61(2): 69-90.
   http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21296855
2. Fraley EE. Cancer of the renal pelvis. In: Skinner DG, De Kernion JB, eds. Genitourinary Cancer. PA:W.B. Saunders, 1978, p. 134.

3. Huben RP, Mounzer AM, Murphy GP. Tumor grade and stage as prognostic variables in upper tract urothelial tumors. Cancer 1988 Nov;62(9):2016-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3167813
4. Roupret M, Zigeuner R, Palou J, et al. European guidelines for the diagnosis and management of upper urinary tract urothelial cell carcinomas: 2011 update. Eur Urol 2011 Apr; 59(4): 584-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21269756
5. Hall MC, Womack S, Sagalowsky A, et al. Prognostic factors, recurrence and survival in transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract: a 30.year experience in 252 patients. Urology 1998 Oct; 52(4): 594-601.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9763077
6. Ok JH, Meyers FJ, Evans CP. Medical and surgical palliative care of patients with urological malignancies. J Urol 2005 Oct;174(4, pt.1): 1177-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16145365
7. Mount BM, Scott JF. Palliative care of the patients with terminal cancer. In: Skinner DG, Lieskovsky G (eds). Diagnosis and Management of Genitourinary Cancer, 1988, W.B. Saunders, Philadelphia, pp.842-863.
8. Kamat AM, Huang SF, Bermejo CE, et al. Total pelvic exenteration: effetive palliation of perineal pain in patients with locally recurrent prostate cancer. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1868-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532795
9. Brophy PF, Hoffamnn JP, Eisenberg BL. The role of palliative pelvic exenteration. Am J Surg 1994 Apr;167(4):386-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7513967
10. Ricci S, Galli L, Chioni A, et al. Gemcitabine plus epirubicine in patients with advanced urothelial carcinoma who are not eligible for platinum-based regimens. Cancer 2002 Oct;95(7):1444-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12237912
11. Sternberg CN, Yagoda A, Scher HI, et al. Methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin and cisplatin for advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelium. Efficacy and patterns of response and relapse. Cancer 1989 Dec;64(12): 2448-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2819654
12. Loehrer PJ, Einhorn LH, Elson PJ, et al. A randomized comparison of cisplatin alone or in combination with methotrexate, vinblastine, and doxorubicin in patients with metastatic urothelial carcinoma: a cooperative group study. J Clin Oncol 1992 Jul;10(7):1066-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1607913
13. Logothetis C, Dexeus FH, Finn L, et al. A prospective randomized trial comparing MVAC and CISCA chemotherapy for patients with metastatic urothelial tumors. J Clin Oncol 1990 Jun;8(6):1050-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2189954
14. Von der Maase H, Hansen SW, Roberts JT, et al. Gemcitabine and cisplatin versus methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin in advanced or metastatic bladder cancer: results of a large, randomised, multinational, multicenter, Phase III study. J Clin Oncol 2000 Sep;18(17):3068-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11001674
15. Albers P, Siener R, Härtlien M, et al. Gemcitabine monotherapy as a second-line treatment in cisplatin-refractory transitional cell carcinoma - prognostic factors for response and improvement of quality of life. Onkologie 2002 Feb;25(1):47-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11893883
16. Bellmunt J, Theodore C, Demkov T, et al. Phase III trial of vinflunine plus best supportive care compared to best supportive care alone after platinum-containing regimen in patients with advanced transitional cell carcinoma of the urothelial tract. J Clin Oncol 2009 Sep 20;27(27):4454-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19687335
17. Duchesne GM, Bolger JJ, Griffiths GO, et al. A randomized trail of hypofractionated schedules of palliative radiotherapy in the management of bladder carcinoma: results od medical research council trial BA09. Int J Radiation Oncol Biol Phys 2000 May 1;47(2):379-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10802363
18. Fletcher A, Choudhury A, Alam N. Metastatic bladder cancer: a review of current management. ISRN Urol 2011;2011 :545241.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22084801
19. Raman JD, Shariat SF, Karakiewicz PI, et al. Does preoperative symptom classification impact prognosis in patients with clinically localized upper-tract urothelial carcinoma managed by radical nephroureterectomy ? Urol Oncol 2011 Nov;29(6):716-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20056458

20. Audenet F, Yates DR, Cussenot O, et al. The role of chemotherapy in the treatment of urothelial cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract (UUT-TCC). Urol Oncol 2010 Sep 28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20884249
21. Vaughn DJ, Srinivas S, Stadler WM, et al. Vinflunine in platinum-pretreated patients with locally advanced or metastatic urothelial carcinoma: results of a large phase 2 study. Cancer 2009 Sep 15;115(18):4110-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19536904
22. McQuay HJ, Collins S, Carroll D, et al. Radiotherapy for the palliation of painful bone metastases. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2000;(2):CD001793. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796822
23. Wu JS, Wong R, Johnston M, et al. Cancer Care Ontario Practice Guidelines Initiative Supportive Care Group. Meta-analysis of dose-fractionation radiotherapy trials for the palliation of painful bone metastases. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2003 Mar;55(3):594-605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12573746
24. Sze WM, Shelley M, Held I, et al. Palliation of metastatic bone pain: single fraction versus multifraction radiotherapy--a systematic review of randomised trials. Clin Oncol 2003 Sep;15(6): 345-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14524489

4.3. Pain management in renal cell carcinoma patients

*4.3.1 **Clinical presentation***

Renal cell carcinoma (RCC) is mainly diagnosed incidentally. There is no pain unless tumour invades adjacent areas or obstructs urine outflow due to haemorrhage and blood clot formation. Some 20-30% of patients present with metastases, and 30% of patients primarily presenting with a localised kidney tumour develop them during follow-up. RCC metastasises mainly to lung, bone, brain, liver and ipsilateral or contralateral adrenergic glands. Such patients have a maximal 2-year survival rate of 20%. Overall 50-60% of patients may need treatment for the symptoms of metastatic disease, mainly pain.

The main origins of tumour-related pain are:

- invasion of the surrounding areas by a locally advanced tumour (posterior abdominal wall, nerve roots, paraspinous muscles, other organs such as bowel, spleen, liver)
- obstruction of the upper urinary tract due to haemorrhage and subsequent formation of blood clots
- bone metastases
- soft tissue metastases (seldom painful).

*4.3.2 **Pain due to local impairment***

Patients with invasion of surrounding areas (e.g. the posterior abdominal wall, nerve roots, paraspinous muscles, other organs such as bowel, spleen, liver) by a locally advanced primary tumour without metastases usually present with pain. Surgical management is the only effective option for this type of tumour. Extended operations that include excision of involved bowel, spleen or abdominal wall muscle are sometimes indicated.

Adjuvant immunotherapy or radiotherapy is without proven benefit with regard to recurrence. Even in cases of metastatic disease, palliative nephrectomy is indicated for the control of severe symptoms such as haemorrhage, pain or paraneoplastic syndromes (GCP). The frequency with which each of these symptoms is controlled, however, is unclear and there are no data in the literature comparing efficacy of nephrectomy in palliative situations with other therapies such as angioinfarction of the tumour.

Standard pre-operative (30 Gy) or post-operative radiotherapy offers no survival benefit, and its role in delaying local progression is questionable (1). Radiotherapy of soft tissue has no proven benefit for pain and tumour control.

In metastatic disease, the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Genitourinary Group study 30947 demonstrated a significant increase in survival with palliative nephrectomy plus immunotherapy compared with immunotherapy (interferon-alpha) alone (median survival of 17 compared with 7 months) (2) (LE: 2b). There is no special effect on pain relief from immunotherapy.

Obstruction of the upper urinary tract due to haemorrhage and subsequent formation of blood clots is effectively treated by radical nephrectomy in non-metastatic tumour (GCP). If the patient is physically fit for surgery, this should be done to increase the QoL, e.g. palliative nephrectomy in cases of metastatic tumour (GCP).

There are no data in the literature about the efficacy of other therapies such as angioinfarction of the tumour with regard to haemorrhage and pain relief in palliative situations. WHO guidelines recommend analgesic therapy and/or palliative drainage of the urinary tract if patients are not fit for major surgery.

*4.3.3 **Pain due to metastases***

Patients with bone metastases have a significantly better life expectancy (30 months) than those with visceral metastases (11.6 months) (3).

Surgery is indicated for solitary bone metastases that can be resected completely, intractable bone pain, and impending or demonstrable pathological fracture. In bone metastases with extensive soft tissue involvement and severe pain, amputation of a limb is sometimes required to maintain quality of life. Surgery for bone metastases achieves a significant decrease in pain in 89-91% of patients (4-6) (LE: 2b/3). Additionally, surgery prevents pathological fractures and spinal compression, and there is a significant impact on survival.

Pre-operative embolisation of bone metastases or embolisation alone achieves good pain relief in hypervascular bone metastases (7,8) (LE: 3).

High dose radiation therapy for palliation of painful bony metastases has been shown to be effective in 50-75% of all renal cancer patients (9-11) (LE: 3), and in 67% with general bone metastases (12) (LE: 2b). There is no impact on survival. Small studies of radionuclide therapy (e.g. with 89Sr) have shown good pain relief in bony metastases from RCC (13) (LE: 3).

Standard pre-operative (30 Gy) or post-operative radiotherapy offers no survival benefit; its role in delaying local progression is questionable (1); there is no proven benefit for pain and tumour control for soft tissue metastases.

Bone metastases show poor response to immunotherapy, and there is no proven benefit in pain relief. Hormonal therapy and chemotherapy are even less effective, and have no room in pain control.

Immunotherapy alone achieved an overall response in 15-27% of patients (14). Immunotherapy in combination with chemotherapy (interleukin-2 + interferon-alpha + 5-fluorouracil) is the most effective therapy, achieving partial tumour response in up to 46% of patients and complete response in a maximal 15%, although these rates are mainly for lung/lymph node metastases (15).

Pain due to soft tissue metastases probably behaves analogous to tumour response, but there are no data on immunotherapy for pain control. Hormonal therapy has no proven benefit for survival or pain relief.

First-line chemotherapy (docetaxel), second line chemotherapy (microtubule inhibitor cabazitaxel), and third generation anti-androgen therapy (abiraterone acetate)

*4.3.4 **References***

1. Van de Werf-Messing B. Proceedings: carcinoma of the kidney. Cancer 1973 Nov;32(5):1056-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4757899
2. Mickisch GH, Garin A, van Poppel H, et al; European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Genitourinary Group. Radical nephrectomy plus interferon-alfabased immunotherapy compared with interferon alfa alone in metastatic renal-cell carcinoma: a randomised trial. Lancet 2001 Sep;358(9286):966-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11583750
3. Bohnenkamp B, Romberg W, Sonnentag W, et al. (Prognosis of metastatic renal cell carcinoma related to the pattern of metastasis [author's transl.]). J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1980 Jan;96(1):105-14. [Article in German.] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7358767
4. Smith EM, Kursh ED, Makley J, et al. Treatment of osseous metastases secondary to renal cell carcinoma. J Urol 1992 Sep;148(3):784-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1512825
5. Kollender Y, Bickels J, Price WM, et al. Metastatic renal cell carcinoma of bone: indications and technique of surgical intervention. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1505-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025692

6. Jackson RJ, Loh SC, Gokaslan ZL. Metastatic renal cell carcinoma of the spine: surgical treatment and results. J Neurosurg 2001 Jan;94(suppl.1):18-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11147860
7. Gorich J, Solymosi L, Hasan I, et al. [Embolization of bone metastases]. Radiologe 1995 Jan;35(1): 55-9. [article in German.]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7534427
8. Layalle I, Flandroy P, Trotteur G, et al. Arterial embolization of bone metastases: is it worthwhile?. J Belge Radiol 1998 Oct;81(5):223-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9880954
9. Halperin EC, Harisiadis L. The role of radiation therapy in the management of metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Cancer 1983 Feb;51(4):614-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6185207
10. Onufrey V, Mohiuddin M. Radiation therapy in the treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1985 Nov;11(11):2007-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2414257
11. Forman JD. The role of radiation therapy in the management of carcinoma of the kidney. Sem Urol 1989 Aug;7(3):195-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2481333
12. Chow E, Wong R, Hruby G, et al. Prospective patient-based assessment of effectiveness of palliative radiotherapy for bone metastases. Radiother Oncol 2001 Oct; 61(1):77-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11578732
13. Kloiber R, Molnar CP, Barnes M. Sr-89 therapy for metastatic bone disease: scintigraphic andradiographic follow-up. Radiology 1987 Jun;163(3):719-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3575721
14. Figlin RA. Renal cell carcinoma: management of advanced disease. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):381-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915408
15. Kankuri M, Pelliniemi TT, Pyrhonen S, et al. Feasibility of prolonged use of interferon-alpha in metastatic kidney carcinoma: a phase II study. Cancer 2001 Aug;92(4): 761-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11550145

4.4 Pain management in patients with adrenal carcinoma

Adrenal carcinoma is a rare disease and has a poor prognosis. Non-functional adrenal lesions of more than 5 cm in diameter should be removed because there is a high probability of malignancy (1).

*4.4.1 **Malignant phaeochromocytoma***

Phaeochromocytomas result from phaeochromocytes, which are the predominant cells of the adrenal medulla and are also found in the paraganglia near the aorta and in lesser numbers in the ganglia of the sympathetic nervous system (2). When correctly diagnosed and treated, the disease is curable, unless there are metastases.

Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have the highest sensitivity in detecting the tumour, achieving 94-100%. A 131J-metaiodobenzylguanidine (131J-MIBG) scan is positive in approximately 87% of cases (3).

Chemotherapy with cyclophosphamide, vincristine and dacarbazine has little effect on metastases (4) (LE: 2b), but therapeutic doses of 131J-MIBG (33 GBq = 900 mCi) may produce some results (5, 6) (LE: 2b). The hormone response rate is 50%. There are no data on pain relief with 131J-MIBG in metastatic phaeochromocytoma, but a response rate that is at least the same as for hormone levels should be expected.

Malignant phaeochromocytomas are considered radioresistant, although there are some cases in which radiation therapy induced partial remission (7) (LE: 3). There is no information about the efficacy of radiation concerning pain relief in cases of bone or soft tissue metastases.

*4.4.2 **Treatment of pain***

- Soft tissue and/or bone pain due to metastases are best treated by therapeutic doses of 131J-MIBG, if the phaeochromocytoma takes up this radionuclide (8) (LE: 2b). There is no literature concerning chemotherapy or radiotherapy and pain relief in metastatic phaeochromocytoma.
- Treat the pain symptomatically following the recommendations made in Section 3.4.

4.4.2.1 Adrenocortical carcinomas

Carcinoma of the adrenal cortex is highly malignant, with local and haematogenous metastasis, and 5-year

survival rates of 25-43% for all treatments. Patients with distant metastases have a mean survival of only 4 months (9). An autopsy study showed metastasis to lung (60%), liver (50%), lymph nodes (48%), bone (24%) and pleura/heart (10%) (10). These tumours often extend directly into adjacent structures, especially the kidney.

Chemotherapy is of low efficacy. The most effective drug is mitotane, an adrenolytic. The tumour-response rate is 25-35% (9,11) (LE: 2a). It remains to be proven whether chemotherapy prolongs survival. Radiation therapy has not been useful except for palliation and pain management (12) (LE: 2b).

4.4.2.2 Treatment of the pain depending on its origin

- Abdominal symptoms are typical on first presentation of the tumour. The treatment is surgical removal of the primary tumour, with attempts to remove the entire lesion even if resection of adjacent structures is necessary, as well as resection of local lymph nodes.
- Soft tissue and/or bone metastases causing local symptoms can be treated by radiotherapy (8,12). There are no data on chemotherapy or radiotherapy for pain relief in metastatic adrenocortical carcinomas.
- Treat the pain symptomatically following the recommendations given in Section 3.4.

4.4.3 ***References***

1. Cerfolio RJ, Vaughan ED Jr, Brennan TG Jr, et al. Accuracy of computed tomography in predicting adrenal tumor size. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1993 Apr;176(4):307-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8460403
2. Goldfien A. Phaeochromocytoma - diagnosis and management. Clin Endocr Metab 1991;10:606.
3. Lucon AM, Pereira MA, Mendonça BB, et al. Pheochromocytoma: Study of 50 cases. J Urol 1997 Apr;157(4):1208-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9120903
4. Schlumberger M, Gicquel C, Lumbroso J, et al. Malignant pheochromocytoma: clinical, biological, histologic and therapeutic data in a series of 20 patients with distant metastases. J Endocrinol Invest 1992 Oct;15(9):631-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1479146
5. Mornex R, Badet C, Peyrin L. Malignant pheochromocytoma: a series of 14 cases observed between 1966 and 1990. J Endocrinol Invest 1992 Oct;15(9):643-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1479147
6. Proye C, Vix M, Goropoulos A, et al. High incidence of malignant pheochromocytoma in a surgical unit: 26 cases out of 100 patients operated from 1971 to 1991. J Endocrinol Invest 1992 Oct;15(9):651-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1479148
7. Yu L, Fleckman AM, Chadha M, et al. Radiation therapy of metastatic pheochromocytoma: case report and review of the literature. Am J Clin Oncol 1996 Aug;19(4):389-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8677912
8. Kopf D, Goretzki PE, Lehnert H. Clinical management of malignant adrenal tumors. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2001;127(3):143-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11260859
9. Wooten MD, King DK. Adrenal cortical carcinoma. Epidemiology and treatment with mitotane and a review of the literature. Cancer 1993 Dec;72(11):3145-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8242539
10. Didolkar MS, Berscher RA, Elias EG, et al. Natural history of adrenal cortical carcinoma: a clinicopathologic study of 42 patients. Cancer 1981 May;47(9):2153-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7226109
11. Bukowski RM, Wolfe M, Levine HS, et al. Phase II trial of mitotane and cisplatin in patients with adrenal carcinoma: a Southwest Oncology Group study. J Clin Oncol 1993 Jan;11(1):161-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8418229
12. Percarpio B, Knowlton AH. Radiation therapy of adrenal cortical carcinoma. Acta Radiol Ther Phys Biol 1976 Aug;15(4):288-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/62490

4.5 Pain management in penile cancer patients

4.5.1 ***Clinical presentation***

Penile cancer is rare in Europe, with an annual incidence of 0.3-1.0 new cases per 100,000 men (1). It mostly affects men between the ages of 50 and 70 years, with only 19% of cases in those aged < 40 years and 7% in those < 30 years (2). The penile lesion itself usually alerts the patient to the presence of a penile cancer

but there is often a delay in seeking medical attention. Lymph node involvement is a critical component of treatment planning and prognosis. Up to 60% of the patients at the time of presentation have palpable inguinal lymphadenopathy, and up to 85% of them will be found to have metastatic disease (3). Pain can occur in both early and advanced penile cancer. In the early stages, acute pain is expressed mainly by voiding dysfunction (infravesical obstruction) due to invasion of the corpus spongiosum. In advanced disease, pain is also caused by enlarged inguinal or pelvic node metastases and lymphoedema of the scrotum and lower limbs. Azotemia can develop secondary to nodal obstruction of the ureters. Hypercalcemia was reported in 17-21% of patients in two series (4). This was attributed to the parathyroid-hormone-like substances secreted by bulky metastases that stimulate osteoclastic bone resorption.

4.5.2. ***Pain due to local impairment***

4.5.2.1 Soft tissue and hollow-viscus invasion

Bladder outlet and ureteric obstruction is managed in the same manner as that described in Section 4.1.2.2.

4.5.3 ***Lymphoedema***

Patients with a huge inguinal tumour mass, or scarred inguinal tissue after lymph node dissection, often show lymphoedema of the lower limbs. This is more frequent in cases involving both inguinal and iliac nodes.

Lymphoedema is treated with physiatric techniques (wraps, pressure stockings or pneumatic pumps), which can both improve function, and relieve pain and heaviness. Orthotics can immobilise and support painful or weakened structures, and assistive devices can benefit patients with pain on weight-bearing or ambulation.

4.5.4 ***Pain due to metastases***

Pain management begins with antitumour treatment; usually surgery that includes partial/total penectomy, and inguinal and pelvic lymphadenectomy, depending on the clinical stage of the disease. Advanced penile cancer has a poor prognosis and must be approached with a multimodal treatment regimen that includes neoadjuvant chemotherapy, radiotherapy, followed by surgical resection (6). The chemotherapy regimen that is so far most effective and well tolerated is paclitaxel, ifosfamide and cisplatin (TIP), although large randomised trials are lacking (5). The role of radiotherapy is mainly palliative because its use after chemotherapy might decrease the pain from fixed inguinal nodes, bone metastases, spinal cord compression and paraplegia (7). Treatment of hypercalcemia consists of administration of iv saline for volume expansion, furosemide to promote diuresis and bisphosphonates to prevent osteoclastic bone resorption. When tumour erosion into femoral vessels is suspected, emergency intervention with endoluminal vascular stents or transobturator bypass graft should be undertaken (8,9).

4.5.5 ***Conclusions***

Pain management related to advanced penile carcinoma should include a multimodality regimen that consists of cisplatin-based chemotherapy, radiotherapy and surgical resection. The goals of palliative care should be: alleviation of pain using systemic analgesic pharmacotherapy (WHO Ladder) if multimodality therapy is unsuccessful, wound care, treatment of hypercalcemia and tumor erosion of the large groin vessels.

4.5.6 ***References***

1. Bleeker MC, Heideman DA, Snijders PJ, et al. Penile cancer: epidemiology, pathogenesis and prevention. World J Urol. 2009 Apr;27(2):141-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18607597
2. Pow-Sang MR, Ferreira U, Pow-Sang JM, et al. Epidemiology and natural history of penile cancer. Urology. 2010 Aug;76(2 Suppl 1):S2-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20691882
3. Margulis V, Sagalowsky AI. Penile Cancer: Management of Regional Lymphatic Drainage. Urol Clin North Am. 2010 Aug;37(3):411-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20674696
4. Pettaway CA, Lynch DF, Davis JW. Tumors of the penis. In: Wein AJ,Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, et al,eds,Campbell-Walsh Urology, 9th Ed. Philadelphia:Saunders-Elsevier;2007,vol 1,pp 959-992.
5. Pagliaro LC, Williams DL, Daliani D, et al. et al. Neoadjuvant paclitaxel, ifosfamide, and cisplatin chemotherapy for metastatic penile cancer: a phase II study. J Clin Oncol. 2010 Aug 20;28(24):3851-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20625118
6. Pagliaro LC, Crook J. Multimodality therapy in penile cancer: when and which treatments? World J Urol. 2009 Apr;27(2):221-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18682961

7. Ravi R, Chaturvedi HK, Sastry DV. Role of radiation therapy in the treatment of carcinoma of the penis. Br J Urol. 1994 Nov;74(5):646-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7530129
8. Link RE, Soltes GD, Coburn M. Treatment of acute inguinal hemorrhage from metastatic penile carcinoma using an endovascular stent graft. J Urol. 2004 Nov;172(5 Pt 1):1878-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15540743
9. Ferreira U, Reis LO, Ikari LY, et al. Extra-anatomical transobturator bypass graft for femoral artery involvement by metastatic carcinoma of the penis: report of five patients. World J Urol. 2008 Oct;26(5):487-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18581120

4.6 Pain management in testicular cancer patients

*4.6.1 **Clinical presentation***

Testicular cancer generally affects men in the third or fourth decade of life. It is mainly diagnosed causally as an intrascrotal mass. Approximately 20% of patients present with scrotal or inguinal pain, which disappears after orchiectomy. Only 11% of patients complain of back or flank pain at first presentation (1). Primary advanced tumour with pain due to bone metastases is very rare, maximally 3% at first presentation. It should be treated causally by primary chemotherapy and adjuvant analgesics.

*4.6.2 **Pain due to local impairment***

Orchiectomy is an effective treatment for local pain due to scrotal masses.

*4.6.3 **Pain due to metastases***

- Back or flank pain due to retroperitoneal lymphadenopathy slowly disappears as chemotherapy causes the mass to decrease (LE: 2b) (see EAU Guidelines on Testicular Cancer). Temporary analgesia is advisable (see Section 3.4.4).
- Retroperitoneal lymph node metastases can also cause obstruction of the ureter, leading to a symptomatic hydronephrosis with back or flank pain and perhaps additional fever. The therapy of choice is the immediate treatment of the hydronephrosis by ureteral stenting or the insertion of a percutaneous nephrostomy.
- Bone pain due to bony metastases is very rare and occurs mainly in patients with primary advanced disease and relapse after chemotherapy (2,3). Treatment with chemotherapy or second-line chemotherapy may be possible (see EAU Guidelines on Testicular Cancer). There is no literature on radiotherapy in cases of relapse and limitation of further chemotherapy.
- Back pain and neurological symptoms due to spinal cord compression by vertebral metastases may require urgent surgery (4) (LE: 3).

*4.6.4 **References***

1. Hernes EH, Harstad K, Fosså SD. Changing incidence and delay of testicular cancer in southern Norway (1981-1992). Eur Urol 1996;30(3):349-57. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8931969
2. Hitchins RN, Philip PA, Wignall B, et al. Bone disease in testicular and extragonadal germ cell tumours. Br J Cancer 1988 Dec;58(6):793-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3224081
3. Merrick MV. Bone scintigraphy in testicular tumours. Br J Urol 1987 Aug;60(2):167-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3664206
4. Arnold PM, Morgan CJ, Morantz RA, et al. Metastatic testicular cancer presenting as spinal cord compression: report of two cases. Surg Neurol 2000 Jul;54(1):27-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11024504

4.7 Recommendations at a glance

Table 6: Efficacy of the therapeutic options in pain relief (expert opinion)

Origin of pain/therapeutic options	RCC	TCC	PCa	Penile cancer	Adrenergic cancer	Testicular cancer
Bone metastases						
Surgery	+++	?	+	?	?	+
Radiation	++	++	+++	?	+	?
Radionuclide	+	?	+++	?	++	-
Chemotherapy	-	?	+	?	-	
Immunotherapy	-	-	-	?	?	?
Hormone therapy	-	-	++	-	-	-
Analgesics	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++
Soft tissue infiltration						
Surgery	+++	+++	-	?	?	+
Radiation	-	+	++	?	+	?
Chemotherapy	+	++	+	?	++	+++
Immunotherapy	+	-	-	?	?	?
Hormone therapy	-	-	++	-	-	-
Analgesics	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++
Nerve compression/nerve infiltration						
Surgery	+++	+++	++	?	?	++
Radiation	+	+	++	?	+	?
Chemotherapy	+	++	+	?	?	+++
Immunotherapy	+	-	-	?	?	?
Hormone therapy	-	-	++	-	-	-
Analgesics	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++	+++

RCC = renal cell carcinoma; TCC = transitional cell carcinoma; PCa = prostate cancer;
? = no conclusive data on pain control; - = no pain control; + = low pain control;
++ = moderate pain control; +++ = good pain control.

5. POSTOPERATIVE PAIN MANAGEMENT

Key Words: Postoperative analgesia, postoperative pain, opioids, NSAIDs, coxibs, paracetamol, urological procedures, epidural, PCA, PCEA, ketamine, clonidine, local anaesthetics

5.1 Background

Postoperative pain is inevitable in surgical patients, and is associated with tissue damage, the presence of drains and tubes, or postoperative complications, or a combination of these (1,2).

Approximately 70% of surgical patients experience a certain degree (moderate, severe or extreme) of postoperative pain (3,4) (LE: 1a). This is usually underestimated and undertreated (1,3), leading to increased morbidity and mortality, mostly due to respiratory and thromboembolic complications, increased hospital stay, impaired QoL, and development of chronic pain (1,3,5-7) (LE: 1a).

5.2 Importance of effective postoperative pain management

The physiological consequences of postoperative pain are shown in Table 7. All of these can delay or impair postoperative recovery and increase the economic cost of surgery (longer hospitalisation) (13,14) (LE: 3). Inadequate postoperative pain control may also lead to development of chronic pain (15,16) (LE: 2b).

Table 7: Physiological consequences of postoperative pain

Condition	Consequences	Ref.	LE
Stress response to surgery	Tissue trauma results in release of mediators of inflammation and stress hormones Activation of this stress response leads to: - retention of water and sodium - increase in metabolic rate	8	2a
Respiratory complications	Shallow breathing Cough suppression Lobular collapse Retention of pulmonary secretions Infections	9	2b
Cardiovascular complications	Hypertension Tachycardia Increased myocardial work, - myocardial ischaemia - angina - infarction	10	2b
Thromboembolic complications	Reduced mobility due to inadequate pain management can lead to thromboembolic episodes	11	2a
Gastrointestinal complications	Gastric stasis Paralytic ileus mostly after open urological operations	12	2b
Musculoskeletal complications	Prolonged confinement to bed: - reduced mobility - muscle atrophy	13	3
Psychological complications	Perioperative pain may provoke fear and anxiety, which can lead to: - anger - resentment - hostility to medical and nursing personnel - insomnia	13, 14	3

5.2.1 ***Aims of effective postoperative pain management:***

- to improve patient comfort and satisfaction;
- to facilitate recovery and functional ability;
- to reduce morbidity;
- to promote rapid discharge from hospital (1-3) (LE: 1a).

Recommendation	GR
Postoperative pain should be treated adequately, to avoid complications and development of chronic pain.	B

5.3 Pre- and postoperative pain management methods

5.3.1 ***Preoperative patient preparation:***

- patient evaluation;
- adjustment or continuation of medication to avoid abstinence syndrome;
- premedication as part of multimodal analgesia;
- behavioural-cognitive interventions for patients and families to alleviate anxiety and fear of postoperative pain reduce post-opeative analgesic requirements and result in better pain management (1) (LE: 1a).

Recommendation	GR
Preoperative assessment and preparation of patients allow more effective pain management.	A

*5.3.2 **Pain assessment***

Careful pain assessment by the surgeon or the acute pain team before and after treatment can lead to more efficient pain control, and diminished morbidity and mortality (1,4) (LE: 2a). In the post-anaesthesia care unit, pain should be evaluated, treated and re-evaluated initially every 15 min and then every 1-2 h. After discharge to the surgical ward, pain should be assessed every 4-8 h before and after treatment (17,18).

Various rating scales have been described to measure postoperative pain, but their major disadvantage is that they are all subjective, making their results difficult to evaluate, especially in patients with communication difficulties (18).

Recommendation	GR
Adequate postoperative pain assessment can lead to more effective pain control and fewer complications.	B

*5.3.3 **Pre-emptive analgesia***

Pre-emptive or preventive analgesia is defined as the administration of analgesia before surgical incision to prevent central sensitisation from incision or inflammatory injury, to achieve optimal postoperative pain control (19). The results of clinical trials on its efficacy are controversial (19,20) (LE: 2b).

*5.3.4 **Systemic analgesic techniques***

5.3.4.1 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

These drugs act by inhibiting cyclo-oxygenase (COX) and the subsequent production of prostaglandins . The main advantages of NSAIDs are that they do not produce respiratory depression or sedation, and seem to decrease the need for opioids (21). However, their analgesic effect is not strong enough for the management of severe postoperative pain (22). For NSAID dosage and administration, see Table 12.

Intravenous (iv) administration of NSAIDs should start 30-60 min before the estimated end of surgery, and oral administration should start as soon as possible. Intramuscular administration of analgesic drugs for postoperative pain control is generally avoided because of variability of serum drug concentrations (23).

Their main adverse effects are (22):

- gastric irritation, ulcer formation, bleeding;
- renal impairment;
- bronchospasm, deterioration of asthma;
- platelet dysfunction, inhibition of thromboxane A2;
- perioperative bleeding;
- inhibition of bone healing and osteogenesis.

COX-2 selective inhibitors are associated with fewer gastrointestinal complications and better bone healing. In addition, they cause minimal platelet inhibition compared with non-selective COX inhibitors (24). However, COX-2 inhibitors are contraindicated for long-term use in patients with cardiovascular problems (25). The use of COX-2 inhibitors is approved only for short-term postoperative pain therapy.

Recommendations	GR
NSAIDs are often effective after minor or moderate surgery.	B
NSAIDs often decrease the need for opioids.	B
Avoid long-term use of COX inhibitors in patients with atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease.	B

5.3.4.2 Paracetamol

Paracetamol (acetaminophen) is a relatively safe and effective antipyretic and analgesic for mild to moderate postoperative pain. In cases of severe postoperative pain, co-administration of paracetamol with strong opioids seems to reduce the consumption of opioids (26) (LE: 2). Its exact mode of action is unclear, although it may act by centrally inhibiting COX production (27).

Dosage and routes of administration

- 1 g four times daily (orally, iv or rectally). Dose should be reduced to 1 g three times daily in patients with hepatic impairment.
- iv administration of paracetamol should start 30 min before the end of surgery, and oral administration as soon as possible.

Adverse effects

No significant adverse effects have been observed in patients receiving paracetamol for acute postoperative pain. Caution should be taken when it is administered to patients with chronic alcoholism or hepatic failure. A dose > 6 g/day can cause acute renal failure.

Combinations of paracetamol with opioids

Paracetamol in combination with an opioid provides adequate postoperative analgesia for mild to moderate pain without the adverse effects of strong opioids. For dosage and administration of paracetamol/opioid combinations, see Table 13.

Recommendations	GR
Paracetamol can be very useful for postoperative pain management because it reduces consumption of opioids.	B
Paracetamol can alleviate mild postoperative pain as a single therapy without major adverse effects.	B

5.3.4.3 Metamizole (dipyrone)

Metamizole is an effective antipyretic and analgesic drug used for mild to moderate postoperative pain and renal colic. Its use is prohibited in the USA and some European countries because of single reported cases of neutropenia and agranulocytosis. Elsewhere, it is considered to be a useful analgesic and antipyretic drug for moderate pain. Long-term use of metamizole is best avoided (28,29) (LE: 2b).

Dosage and route of administration

The dose is 500-1000 mg qds (orally, iv or rectally).

Adverse effects

Apart from single sporadic cases of neutropenia and agranulocytosis, metamizole can cause minor side effects such as nausea, mild hypotension, and allergic reactions. Allergic reactions and the rare complication of agranulocytosis have been described only after direct iv administration, therefore, iv metamizole should be administered as a drip (1 g in 100 mL normal saline).

5.3.4.4 Opioids

Opioids are the first-line treatment for severe acute postoperative pain. Correct dose titration can minimise their unwanted effects (30). Opioid dosage and administration can be found in Table 14 and 15.

5.3.4.5 Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA)

Systemic administration of opioids may follow the “as needed” schedule or “around-the-clock” dosing. The most effective mode is PCA (31,32) (LE: 1a) (Table 8).

Table 8: Typical PCA dosing schedule

Drug (concentration)	Bolus size	Lockout interval (min)	Continuous infusion
Morphine (1 mg/mL)	0.5-2.5 mg	5-10	0.01-0.03 mg/kg/h
Fentanyl (0.01 mg/mL)	10-20 µg	5-10	0.5-0.1 µg/kg/h
Pethidine (10 mg/mL)	5-25 mg	5-10	-

Recommendation	GR
Intravenous patient controlled analgesia provides superior postoperative analgesia, improving patient satisfaction and decreasing risk of respiratory complications.	A

Opioids adverse effects are:

- respiratory depression, apnoea;
- sedation;
- nausea, vomiting;
- pruritus;
- constipation;
- hypotension.

5.3.4.6 Adjuncts to postoperative analgesia

Adjuncts to postoperative analgesia in low doses, such as ketamine, α2 agonists (clonidine, dexmedetomidine) gabapentinoids (gabapentin or pregabalin) in appropriate doses and monitored care are beneficial in improving analgesic efficacy and reducing opioid-related side effects, with good safety and tolerability (33,34) (LE:1a, GR: A).

Low-dose ketamine is defined as a bolus dose < 2 mg/kg when given intramuscularly or less than 1 mg/kg when administered via the intravenous or epidural route. For continuous i.v. administration, low-dose ketamine is defined as a rate of ≤ 20 g/kg/min (35). Its use is contraindicated in patients with coronary disease, uncontrolled hypertension, congestive heart failure and arterial aneurysms. There are insufficient data to confirm the neurotoxicity of ketamine, even though some animal studies have shown some degree of neurodegeneration after continuous use (36) (LE:2b).

Clonidine when given preoperatively, or epidurally postoperatively (1mcg/kg) can reduce opioid requirements (37) (LE:1a, GR: A).

More clinical evidence on dexmedetomidine is necessary to confirm its definite role in acute postoperative pain control (38).

In 17 studies up to 2007, patients received a single preoperative dose of 300-1200 mg gabapentin, 30 min-2 h before surgery in the remaining studies, the drug was administered at a dose of 1200-1800 mg/day at 1-24 h before the procedure and continued for 10 days. Gabapentin, used before, as well as before and after surgery, decreases pain severity and the need for analgesic supplementation (39) (LE:1a, GR:A).

Perioperative pregabalin (300 mg/day) reduces opioid consumption and opioid-related adverse effects after surgery, however postoperative pain intensity is not reduced by pregabalin (40).

Single-injection caudal blocks with clonidine or ketamine are beneficial in paediatric patients (41).

5.3.5 ***Regional analgesic techniques***

5.3.5.1 Local anaesthetic agents

The most commonly used local anaesthetics are:

- bupivacaine
- l-bupivacaine
- ropivacaine.

Bupivacaine is considered to be cardiotoxic in high doses. l-Bupivacaine and ropivacaine appear to be safer, but the degree of motor blockage they provide is not as good as that of bupivacaine. Ropivacaine has the longest duration of action.

5.3.5.2 Epidural analgesia

Epidural analgesia provides excellent postoperative pain relief for extended periods after major surgery, and reduces postoperative complications and consumption of opioids (1,2) (LE: 1a) (Table 9).

Table 9: Typical epidural dosing schemes*

Drug	Single dose	Continuous infusion
Morphine	1-5 mg	0.1-1 mg/h
Fentanyl	50-100 µg	25-100 µg/h
Sufentanil	10-50 µg	10-20 µg/h
Pethidine	10-30 mg	10-60 mg/h

Bupivacaine 0.125% or ropivacaine 0.2% + fentanyl 2 µg/mL	10-15 mL	2-6 mL/h

**l-bupivacaine doses are equivalent to those of bupivacaine.*

5.3.5.3 Patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA)

PCEA has become very common because it allows individualisation of dosage, decreased drug use, and greater patient satisfaction. It also seems to provide better analgesia than intravenous PCA (42,43) (LE: 1a) (Table 10).

Table 10: Typical PCEA dosing schemes

Drug	Demand dose	Lockout interval (min)	Continuous rate
Morphine	100-200 µg	10-15	300-600 µg/h
Fentanyl	10-15 µg	6	80-120 µg/h
Pethidine	30 mg	30	-
Bupivacaine 0.125% + fentanyl 4 µg/mL	2 mL	10	4 mL/h
Ropivacaine 0.2% + fentanyl 5 µg/mL	2 mL	20	5 mL/h

Recommendation	GR
Epidural analgesia, especially PCEA, provides superior post-operative analgesia, reducing complications and improving patient satisfaction, and is therefore preferable to systemic techniques (2).	A

5.3.5.4 Neural blocks

Local anaesthetic blocks (intermittent and continuous) can be used after urological surgical operations to supplement postoperative analgesia (44) (LE: 2a) (Table 11).

Table 11: Examples of neural blocks

Procedure	Drug/dosage
Iliohypogastric or ilioinguinal nerve infiltration after hernia repair	10-20 mL bupivacaine or ropivacaine 0.25-0.5%
Intercostal nerve infiltration	5-10 mL bupivacaine or ropivacaine 0.25-0.5%
Continuous intrapleural infusion	10 mL/h bupivacaine or ropivacaine 0.1-0.2%

5.3.5.5 Wound infiltration

Intraoperative wound infiltration with local anaesthetic (usually 10-20 mL ropivacaine or 0.25-0.5% bupivacaine) can provide some postoperative analgesia and may reduce the requirement for systemic analgesia (45) (LE: 2b).

5.3.5.6 Continuous wound instillation

Continuous postoperative wound instillation of a local anaesthetic via a multi-hole catheter placed intraoperatively by the surgeon has been shown to provide satisfactory analgesia for moderate to severe postoperative pain, reducing consumption of systemic analgesics (46-48) (LE: 2b).

5.3.6 ***Multimodal analgesia***

The concept of multimodal (balanced) analgesia is that combining different doses and routes of administration of analgesics improves the effectiveness of pain relief after surgery and reduces the maximal dosage and adverse effects (49) (LE: 2b). It seems to be more effective when different drugs are administered via different routes than when different drugs are administered via a single route (1) (LE: 2b).

Recommendations	GR
Multimodal pain management should be used whenever possible because it helps to increase efficacy while minimising adverse effects.	B

*5.3.7 **Special populations***

5.3.7.1 Ambulatory surgical patients

A multimodal analgesic plan uses a combination of NSAIDs or paracetamol plus local anaesthetics used as peripheral nerve blocks, tissue infiltration, or wound instillation so as to avoid the use of opioids, which can prolong hospital stay (50,51, LE: 2a; 52, LE: 2b).

Recommendations	GR
For postoperative pain control in outpatients, multimodal analgesia with a combination of NSAIDs or paracetamol plus local anaesthetics should be used.	B
If possible, avoid opioids.	B

5.3.7.2 Geriatric patients

Pain perception appears to be reduced in geriatric patients, and requirement for analgesia generally decreases with increasing age (53,54). Geriatric patients can also suffer from emotional and cognitive impairment such as depression and dementia, which could affect adequate pain management (55). Postoperative delirium in elderly patients is a common complication and is often multifactorial. It may be associated with administration of pethidine (56). Multimodal postoperative analgesia may be the pain management technique of choice in elderly patients, as the drug doses required are lower. However, it is important to be vigilant for adverse reactions, because they tend to increase in number in the geriatric population (57) (LE: 2b). Epidural analgesia might diminish the risk of postoperative delirium and respiratory complications in elderly patients (58) (LE: 2b).

Recommendations	GR
Multimodal and epidural analgesia are preferable for postoperative pain management in elderly patients because these techniques are associated with fewer complications.	B

5.3.7.3 Obese patients

Obese patients appear to be at higher risk for certain postoperative complications, including respiratory, cardiovascular and thromboembolic episodes, and wound infections (59,60). Administration of opioids to obese patients is associated with sudden respiratory arrest, therefore, a combination of NSAIDs or paracetamol with an epidural local anaesthetic might be the safest analgesic solution (61,62) (LE: 2b).

If absolutely necessary, opioids should be used with caution under careful titration to avoid depression of the respiratory drive (62). Oxygen therapy should also be applied postoperatively to increase oxygen saturation (63).

Recommendations	GR
Postoperative use of opioids should be avoided in obese patients unless absolutely necessary.	B
An epidural local anaesthetic in combination with NSAIDs or paracetamol is preferable.	B

5.3.7.4 Drug- or alcohol-dependent patients

It has been proved that regional anaesthesia and analgesia are preferable to opioids in drug addicts. Moreover, clonidine is beneficial in those with withdrawal syndrome due to opioid or alcohol abstinence and postoperative delirium tremens (64) (LE:1a).

5.3.7.5 Other groups

Critically ill or cognitively impaired patients present special difficulties. Regional or multimodal analgesia might be more effective in such patients because drug doses are reduced and behavioural interventions and patient-controlled methods are unsuitable (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
There are no sufficient data to support a specific postoperative pain management plan for critically ill or cognitively impaired patients.	B

*5.3.8 **Postoperative pain management teams***

The importance of efficient postoperative pain management has led to the development of acute postoperative pain management teams, which generally consist of nursing and pharmacy personnel led by an anaesthesiologist. They have been shown to improve pain relief, decrease analgesic side effects, improve patient satisfaction, and decrease overall costs and morbidity rates (65-67) (LE: 2b). Improved pain control can lead to shorter hospitalisation and fewer unscheduled readmissions after day surgery (68) (LE: 3).

5.4 Specific pain treatment after different urological operations

*5.4.1 **Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL)***

ESWL is a minimally invasive treatment, during and after which 33-59% of patients do not need any analgesia (69-71) (LE: 2b). Post-treatment pain is unlikely to be severe and oral analgesics are usually sufficient.

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment (see Section 5.3.2)
- Intraoperatively: experience exists for alfentanil (0.5-1.0 mg/70 kg iv), given on demand during ESWL.

NSAIDs or midazolam given 30-45 min before treatment reduces the need for opioids during the procedure (LE: 2b). With diclofenac premedication (100 mg rectally), only 18% of patients needed pethidine during lithotripsy (72). After premedication with 5 mg midazolam orally, 70% of patients were completely free of pain during treatment, and if buprenorphine was added, this proportion rose to 87% (73). After premedication with midazolam (2 mg iv, 5 min before treatment), diclofenac or tramadol was safe and effective, with fewer side effects than fentanyl (74) (LE: 1b). Other effective regimes for intraoperative pain treatment are fentanyl (1 µg/kg iv [75]), sufentanil or remifentanil. These drugs are usually given by the anaesthesiologist because of the risk of respiratory depression, which was significantly lower (20% vs 53%) after the procedure if remifentanil was used instead of sufentanil (76,77) (LE: 1b).

- Postoperative: NSAIDs, metamizole, paracetamol, codeine and paracetamol combination or tramadol can all be used on an as needed or time-contingent basis. If pain is more severe or persistent, examination is generally necessary to exclude hydronephrosis or renal haematoma.

Recommendations	GR
Analgesics should be given on demand during and after ESWL because not all patients need pain relief.	B
Premedication with NSAIDs or midazolam often decreases the need for opioids during the procedure.	B
iv opioids and sedation can be used in combination during ESWL; dosage is limited by respiratory depression.	C

Post-ESWL, analgesics with a spasmolytic effect are preferable (C).

*5.4.2 **Endoscopic procedures***

5.4.2.1 Transurethral procedures

Transurethral operations are usually performed under spinal anaesthesia (epidural or subarachnoid block) with the patient awake or mildly sedated, and usually with analgesia for 4-6 h after surgery. Pain is generally caused by the indwelling catheter or the double-J (ureteral stent following ureterorenoscopy), which mimics overactive bladder syndrome. Drugs with an antimuscarinic effect have been proven to be useful in addition to the opioids (78) (LE: 1b).

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.
- Intraoperative: spinal (intrathecal or epidural) anaesthesia provides intraoperative analgesia and last for 4-6 h postoperatively.
- Postoperative: after 4-6 h, mild oral analgesics such as NSAIDs or paracetamol ± codeine, or stronger opioids; also orally. In the case of bladder discomfort from the indwelling catheter, metamizole (orally or iv), pethidine (iv) or piritramide (iv) is also effective. Antimuscarinic drugs such as oxybutynin (5 mg

orally three times daily) are useful and reduce the need for opioids (78) (LE: 1b).

Recommendations	GR
Postoperative analgesics with spasmolytic effect or mild opioids are preferable.	C
Antimuscarinic drugs could be helpful in reducing discomfort resulting from the indwelling catheter.	B
Antimuscarinic drugs may reduce the need for opioids.	B

5.4.2.2 Percutaneous endoscopic procedures

The analgesic plan is nearly the same as that for transurethral procedures. Local anaesthetic (e.g., 10 mL 0.5% bupivacaine) can be infiltrated locally into the skin incision. General anaesthesia is required for the procedure because of the uncomfortable decubitus (prone position) and the prolonged duration of the operation.

5.4.2.3 Laparoscopic procedures

These procedures are performed under general anaesthesia, therefore, patients cannot take oral medication for at least 4-6 h postoperatively, so parenteral analgesia should be used. Then, oral or systemic analgesia can be given, depending on bowel motility.

A particular problem after laparoscopic cholecystectomy is the development of shoulder pain as a result of diaphragmatic irritation following pneumoperitoneum. This seems to be dependent on the intra-abdominal pressure used during the procedure, because reduced CO2 insufflation reduces postoperative shoulder pain (79-81) (LE: 1b). The same could apply for some transabdominal urological laparoscopic interventions.

Analgesic plan

Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.

Intraoperative: iv opioids ± NSAIDs, paracetamol or metamizole administered by an anaesthesiologist. The infiltration of local anaesthetic into the port incisions reduces pain after laparoscopy (82).

Postoperative: administration of systemic opioids iv (im or sc), is very effective in the immediate postoperative period. NSAIDs (e.g., paracetamol and/or metamizole) and incisional local anaesthetics (multimodal concept) can be given to reduce the need for opioids (82,83).

Recommendations	GR
Low intra-abdominal pressure and good desufflation at the end of the procedure reduces postoperative pain.	A
NSAIDS are often sufficient for postoperative pain control.	B
NSAIDs decrease the need for opioids.	B

5.4.3 ***Open surgery***

5.4.3.1 Minor operations of the scrotum/penis and the inguinal approach

These two types of operations are relatively minor and nearly all patients can take oral analgesics afterwards. The operation is often performed as an ambulatory procedure under local anaesthesia, or with the aid of an ilioinguinal or iliohypogastric nerve block.

Recommendations	GR
For postoperative pain control, multimodal analgesia with a combination of NSAIDs or paracetamol plus local anaesthetics should be used.	B
If possible, avoid opioids for outpatients.	C

5.4.3.2 Transvaginal surgery

General, local or regional anaesthesia can be used for these operations.

Recommendations	GR
NSAIDS are often sufficiently effective after minor or moderate surgery.	B
NSAIDs decrease the need for opioids.	B

5.4.3.3 Perineal open surgery

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.
- Intraoperative: general anaesthesia is usually used, particularly for perineal radical prostatectomy, because of the uncomfortable exaggerated lithotomy position. Sometimes an intrathecal catheter (epidural) can be sited for intra- and postoperative pain control.
- Postoperative: continuous epidural infusion of a combination of opioids and local anaesthetic or PCA is usually used. When systemic opioids are required, it is advisable to use them in combination with NSAIDs so as to reduce their dose and side effects. When the patient is able to take oral analgesics, metamizole or paracetamol ± codeine can be used.

5.4.3.4 Transperitoneal laparotomy

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.
- Intraoperative: general anaesthetic and regional technique; sometimes an intrapleural catheter can be sited.
- Postoperative: continuous epidural infusion of a combination of opioids and local anaesthetic. Once the patient is able to take oral analgesics (depending on bowel motility) metamizole, paracetamol ± codeine or tramadol can be used. Multimodal concepts (combining NSAIDs with opioids, fast-track strategies, keeping abdominal and urinary drainage as short as possible) are useful in reducing the need for analgesia (84).

Recommendations	**GR**
The most effective method for systemic administration of opioids is PCA (see Section 5.3.4.5), which improves patient satisfaction and decreases the risk of respiratory complications.	A
Epidural analgesia, especially PCEA, provides superior postoperative analgesia, reducing complications and improving patient satisfaction, and is preferable to systemic techniques (see Sections 5.3.5.2 and 5.3.5.3).	A

5.4.3.5 Suprapubic/retropubic extraperitoneal laparotomy

Postoperatively, it is possible to use the oral route for analgesia earlier than after a transperitoneal procedure. Oral opioids, metamizole and/or paracetamol ± NSAIDs can be used.

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.
- Intraoperative: general anaesthetic and regional technique.
- Postoperative: continuous epidural infusion of a combination of opioids and local anaesthetic. Once the patient is able to take oral analgesics metamizole, paracetamol ± codeine, ± NSAIDs can be used.

5.4.3.6 Retroperitoneal approach - flank incision - thoracoabdominal approach

Analgesic plan

- Preoperative assessment: see Section 5.3.2.
- Intraoperative: general anaesthetic and regional technique; sometimes an intrapleural catheter can be inserted.
- Postoperative: continuous epidural infusion of a combination of opioids and local anaesthetic gives significantly better pain control compared with iv analgesics (85,86) . If epidural analgesia is not possible or refused, PCA should be provided. Once the patient is able to take oral analgesics (depending on bowel motility) paracetamol ± codeine or metamizole can be associated (to reduce the need for opioids) or used alone.

Recommendations	**GR**
Epidural analgesia, especially PCEA, provides superior postoperative analgesia, reducing complications and improving patient satisfaction and is therefore preferable to systemic techniques (see Sections 5.3.5.2 and 5.3.5.3.	A

5.5 Dosage and method of delivery of some important analgesics

5.5.1 ***NSAIDs***

Table 12: Dosage and delivery of NSAIDs

Drug	Daily dose	Route of administration
Conventional NSAIDs (non-selective COX inhibitors)		
Ketorolac	10-30 mg four times daily	Orally or iv
Ibuprofen	400 mg three times daily	Orally
Ketoprofen	50 mg four times daily	Orally or iv
Diclofenac	75 mg twice daily	Orally or iv
	50 mg three times daily	Orally or iv
	100 mg twice daily	Rectally
COX-2 selective inhibitors		
Meloxicam	15 mg once per day	Orally
Lornoxicam	4-8 mg twice daily	Orally or iv
Celecoxib	200 mg once per day	Orally
Parecoxib	40 mg once or twice daily	iv form only
Etoricoxib	90-120 mg once daily	Orally

Table 13: Dosage and delivery of paracetamol, metamizole and its combinations with opioids

Drug	Method of administration	Single dose (mg)	Maximal dose (mg/day)
Paracetamol	Orally	500-1000	4000 (50 mg/kg)
Paracetamol	iv	1000	4000 (50 mg/kg)
Metamizole	Orally	500-1000	4000
Metamizole	iv	1000-2500	5000

Paracetamol	Opioid	Times per day	Route of administration
Paracetamol 1 g	Codeine 60 mg	Four	Orally or rectally
Paracetamol 600-650 mg	Codeine 60 mg	Four	Orally or rectally
Paracetamol 500 mg	Codeine 30 mg	Four	Orally or rectally
Paracetamol 300 mg	Codeine 30 mg	Four	
Orally or rectally			
Paracetamol 650 mg	Dextropropoxyphene 65 mg	Four	Orally
Paracetamol 600-650 mg	Tramadol 75-100 mg	Four	Orally
Paracetamol 325 mg	Oxycodone 5 mg	Four	Orally

5.5.2 ***Opioids***

Table 14: Dose and delivery of opioids

Drug	Method of administration	Common single dose (mg)	Maximal dose (mg)
Tramadol	Orally	50	400-600
Tramadol	iv	50-100	400-600
Dihydrocodeine	Orally	60-120	240
Piritramid	sc/im	15-30	120

Pethidine	Orally	25-150	500
Pethidine	Rectally	100	500
Pethidine	sc/im	25-150	500
Pethidine	iv	25-100	500
Morphine*	Orally	Starting with 10	No maximal dose
Morphine*	Rectally	Starting with 10	No maximal dose
Morphine*	sc/im	Starting with 5	No maximal dose
Morphine*	iv	Starting with 2	No maximal dose
Morphine*	iv (PCA)	0.5-2.5 mg bolus 10-15 min lockout	No maximal dose

**Strong opioids have no real upper dose limit (except buprenorphine). The dose must be titrated in correlation with pain relief and depending on the individual strength of unwanted effects such as respiratory depression (see Section 5.3.4.4).*
**A simple way of calculating the daily dose of morphine for adults (20-75 years) is: 100 - patient's age = morphine per day in mg.*

Table 15: Common equi-analgesic doses for parenteral and oral administration of opioids*

Drug	Parenteral (mg)	Oral (mg)
Morphine	10	30
Fentanyl	0.1	-
Pethidine	75	300
Oxycodone	15	20-30
Dextropropoxyphene	-	50
Tramadol	37.5	150
Codeine	130	200

**All listed opioid doses are equivalent to parenteral morphine 10 mg. The intrathecal opioid dose is 1/100, and the epidural dose 1/10 of the dose required systemically.*

5.6 Perioperative pain management in children

*5.6.1 **Perioperative problems***

The main preoperative problems in children are fear of surgery, anxiety about separation from their parents, and the pain of procedures such as venipuncture. Contrary to the popular belief, the presence of parents during anaesthesia induction does not alleviate children's anxiety (87) (LE: 1a). The preoperative use of oral morphine sulphate, 0.1 mg/kg, can help to prevent crying in children and thereby reduce oxygen consumption and pulmonary vasoconstriction (Table 16). The prior application of EMLA (2.5% lidocaine and 2.5% prilocaine) cream helps to reduce the pain of venipuncture (88) (LE: 1a). Atropine, 0.01-0.02 mg/kg iv, im, orally or rectally, prevents bradycardia during anaesthesia induction.

Table 16: Premedication drugs in children

Drug	Dosing	Route of administration	Category
Ketamine	6 mg/kg	Oral, intranasal, im	NMDA antagonist
Midazolam	0.5 mg/kg	Oral, intranasal, rectally	Benzodiazepine
Dexmedetomidine	4 µg/kg	Oral, intranasal	α2-receptor agonist
Clonidine	4 µg/kg	Oral	α2-receptor agonist
Pentobarbital	4-6 mg/kg	im	Barbiturate
Chloral hydrate	50-100 mg/kg	Oral	Barbiturate
Methohexital	25-30 mg/kg	Rectally	Barbiturate

Recommendations	GR
EMLA local application alleviates significantly venipuncture pain in children.	A

*5.6.2 **Postoperative analgesia***

Postoperatively, paracetamol, NSAIDs, opioids and their combinations are used according to the severity of the surgical procedure (Table 17).

Table 17: Dosage of analgesics in children for postoperative analgesia

Drug	Dose	Route of administration	Severity of surgical procedure
Paracetamol	10-15 mg/kg every 4 h 20-30 mg/kg every 6 h	Oral Rectally	Minor Minor
Ibuprofen	10-15 mg/kg every 6 h	Oral, iv, rectally	Minor, medium
Naproxen	6-8 mg/kg every 8-12 h	Oral, iv, rectally	Minor, medium
Codeine	0.5-1 mg/kg every 3-4 h	Oral	Minor, medium
Morphine	0.1 mg/kg every 2-4 h Infusion: 0.03 mg/kg/h 0.3 mg/kg every 3-4 h	iv, sc Oral	Medium, major
Oxycodone	0.1-0.2 mg/kg every 3-4 h	Oral	Medium
Hydromorphone	0.04-0.08 mg/kg every 3-4 h	Oral	Medium
Tramadol	1 mg/kg every 4-6 h	iv	Medium, major
Pethidine	2-3 mg/kg every 3-4 h	iv	Medium, major

The postoperative use of COX-2 inhibitors in children is still controversial. PCA can be used safely in children older than 6 years. Nurse-controlled analgesia is effective in infants and children unable to use PCA (89).

Locoregional techniques such as wound infiltration, nerve blocks, and caudal and epidural analgesia are also successful (90,91). The most commonly drugs used are bupivacaine and ropivacaine (Table 18). Higher volumes of lower drug concentrations appear to be more effective than lower volumes of higher concentrations (92) (LE: 1a). The addition of opioids, ketamine or clonidine increases the duration of pain relief and reduces the need for rescue analgesia, thus providing more effective pain relief than local anaesthesia alone in caudal analgesia (93-95) (LE: 1a).

Table 18: Epidural dose of local anaesthesia

Drug	Bolus 0-12 months	Bolus > 1 year	Infusion for 0-12 months	Infusion > 1year
Bupivacaine	2 mg/kg	2.5 mg/kg	0.2 mg/kg/h	0.4 mg/kg/h
Ropivacaine	2.5 mg/kg	3.5 mg/kg	0.3 mg/kg/h	0.6 mg/kg/h

5.7 References

1. American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Acute Pain Management. Practice guidelines for acute pain management in the perioperative setting: an update report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Acute Pain Management. Anesthesiology 2004 Jun;100(6):1573-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15166580
2. Rosenquist RW, Rosenberg J; United States Veterans Administration. Postoperative pain guidelines. Reg Anesth Pain Med 2003 Jul-Aug;28(4):279-88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12945020
3. Neugebauer EA, Wilkinson RC, Kehlet H, et al; PROSPECT Working Group. PROSPECT: a practical method for formulating evidence-based expert recommendations for the management of postoperative pain. Surg Endosc 2007 Jul;21(7):1047-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17294309

4. Apfelbaum JL, Chen C, Mehta SS, et al. Postoperative pain experience: results from a national survey suggest postoperative pain continues to be undermanaged. Anesth Analg 2003 Aug;97(2):534-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12873949
5. Pavlin DJ, Chen C, Penaloza DA, et al. Pain as a factor complicating recovery and discharge after ambulatory surgery. Anesth Analg 2002 Sep;95(3):627-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12198050
6. Wu CL, Naqibuddin M, Rowlingson AJ, et al. The effect of pain on health-related quality of life in the immediate postoperative period. Anesth Analg 2003 Oct;97(4):1078-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14500161
7. Perkins FM, Kehlet H. Chronic pain as an outcome of surgery. A review of predictive factors. Anesthesiology 2000 Oct;93(4):1123-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11020770
8. Desborough JP. The stress response to trauma and surgery. Br J Anaesth 2000 Jul;85(1):109-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10927999
9. Sydow FW. The influence of anesthesia and postoperative analgesic management of lung function. Acta Chir Scand Suppl 1989;550:159-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2652967
10. Warltier DC, Pagel PS, Kersten JR. Approaches to the prevention of perioperative myocardial ischemia. Anesthesiology 2000 Jan;92(1):253-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10638923
11. Rosenfeld BA. Benefits of regional anesthesia on thromboembolic complications following surgery. Reg Anesth 1996 Nov-Dec;21(6 Suppl):9-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8956414
12. Livingston EH, Passaro EP Jr. Postoperative ileus. Dig Dis Sci 1990 Jan;35(1):121-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2403907
13. Wilmore DW, Kehlet H. Management of patients in fast track surgery. BMJ 2001 Feb;332:473-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11222424
14. Kehlet H, Holte K. Effect of postoperative analgesia on surgical outcome. Br J Anaesth 2001 Jul;87(1):62-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11460814
15. Perkins FM, Kehlet H. Chronic pain as an outcome of surgery. A review of predictive factors. Anesthesiology 2000 Oct;93(4):1123-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11020770
16. Macrae WA. Chronic pain after surgery. Br J Anaesth 2001 Jul;87(1):88-98. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11460816
17. Jensen MP, Karoly P. Self-report scales and procedures for assessing pain in adults. In Handbook of Pain Assessment. Turk DC and Melzack R, eds. NY: Guilford Press, 1992, pp. 135-151.
18. Herr K. Pain assessment in cognitively impaired older adults. Am J Nurs 2002 Dec;102(12):65-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12473932
19. Kissin I. Preemptive analgesia. Anesthesiology 2000 Oct;93(4):1138-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11020772
20. Kissin I. Preemptive analgesia. Why its effect is not always obvious. Anesthesiology 1996 May;84(5):1015-19. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8623993
21. White PF. The role of non-opioid analgesic techniques in the management of pain after ambulatory surgery. Anesth Analg 2002 Mar;94(3):577-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11867379
22. Souter AJ, Fredman B, White PF. Controversies in the perioperative use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Anesth analg 1994 Dec;79(6):1178-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7978444
23. Brose WG, Cohen SE. Oxyhemoglobin saturation following cesarean section in patients receiving epidural morphine, PCA, or IM meperidine analgesia. Anesthesiology 1989 Jun;70(6):948-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2729636
24. Fitzgerald GA. Cardiovascular pharmacology of nonselective nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and coxibs: clinical considerations. Am J Cardiol 2002 Mar;89(6A):26D-32D. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11909558
25. Bresalier RS, Sandler RS, Quan H, et al. Adenomatous Polyp Prevention on Vioxx (APPROVe) Trial Investigators. Cardiovascular events associated with rofecoxib in a colorectal adenoma chemoprevention trial. N Engl J Med 2005 Mar;352(11):1092-102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15713943

26. Schug SA, Sidebotham DA, Mc Guinnety M, et al. Acetaminophen as an adjunct to morphine by patient-controlled analgesia in the management of acute postoperative pain. Anesth Analg 1998 Aug;87(2):368-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9706932
27. Bannwarth B, Demotes-Mainard F, Schaeverbeke T, et al. Central analgesic effects of aspirin-like drugs. Fundam Clin Pharmacol 1995;9(1):1-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7768482
28. Maj S, Centkowski P. A prospective study of the incidence of agranulocytosis and aplastic anemia associated with the oral use of metamizole sodium in Poland. Med Sci Monit 2004 Sep;10(9):PI93-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15328493
29. Hedenmalm K, Spigset O. Agranulocytosis and other blood dyscrasias associated with dipyrone (metamizole). Eur J Clin Pharmacol 2002 Jul;58(4):265-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12136373
30. McQuay H, Moore A, Justins D. Treating acute pain in hospital. BMJ 1997 May;314(7093):1531-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9183203
31. Walder B, Schafer M, Henzi I, et al. Efficacy and safety of patient-controlled opioid analgesia for acute postoperative pain. A quantitative systematic review. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2001 Aug;45(7): 795-804.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11472277
32. Ballantyne JC, Carr DB, Chalmers TC, et al. Postoperative patientcontrolled analgesia: meta-analyses of initial randomized control trials. J Clin Anesth 1993 May-Jun;5(3):182-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8318237
33. Lui F, Ng KF. Adjuvant analgesics in acute pain. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2011 Feb;12(3):363-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21254945
34. Vadivelu N, Mitra S, Narayan D. Recent advances in postoperative pain management. Yale J Biol Med. 2010 Mar;83(1):11-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20351978
35. Subramaniam K, Subramaniam B, Steinbrook RA. Ketamine as adjuvant analgesic to opioids: a quantitative and qualitative systematic review. Anesth Analg. 2004 Aug;99(2):482-95
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15271729
36. Wang C, Slikker W Jr. Strategies and experimental models for evaluating anesthetics: effects on the developing nervous system.Anesth Analg. 2008 Jun;106(6):1643-58.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499593
37. Farmery AD, Wilson-MacDonald J. The analgesic effect of epidural clonidine after spinal surgery: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. Anesth Analg. 2009 Feb;108(2):631-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19151300
38. Chan AK, Cheung CW, Chong YK . Alpha-2 agonists in acute pain management. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2010 Dec;11(17):2849-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20707597
39. Clivatti J, Sakata RK, Issy AM. Review of the use of gabapentin in the control of postoperative pain. Rev Bras Anestesiol. 2009 Jan-Feb;59(1):87-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19374220
40. Zhang J, Ho KY, Wang Y. Br J Anaesth. Efficacy of pregabalin in acute postoperative pain: a meta-analysis. Br J Anaesth.2011 Apr;106(4):454-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21357616
41. Lonnqvist PA, Morton NS. Paediatric day-case anaesthesia and pain control. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2006 Dec;19(6):617-21
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17093365
42. Yardeni IZ, Shavit Y, Bessler H, et al. Comparison of postoperative pain management techniques on endocrine response to surgery: a randomised controlled trial. Int J Surg 2007 Aug;5(4):239-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17660130
43. Mann C, Pouzeratte Y, Boccara G, et al. Comparison of intravenous or epidural patient-controlled Analgesia in the elderly after major abdominal surgery. Anesthesiology 2000 Feb;92(2):433-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10691230
44. Liu SS, Salinas FV. Continuous plexus and peripheral nerve blocks for postoperative analgesia. Anesth Analg 2003 Jan;96(1):263-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12505964

45. Mulroy MF, Burgess FW, Emanuelsson BM. Ropivacaine 0.25% and 0.5%, but not 0.125% provide effective wound infiltration analgesia after outpatient hernia repair, but with sustained plasma drug levels. Reg Anesth Pain Med 1999 Mar-Apr;24(2):136-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204899
46. Bianconi M, Ferraro L, Ricci R, et al. The pharmacokinetics and efficacy of ropivacaine continuous wound instillation after spine fusion surgery. Anesth Analg 2004 Jan;98(1):166-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14693613
47. Gupta S, Maheshwari R, Dulara SC. Wound instillation with 0.25% bupivacaine as continuous infusion following hysterectomy. Middle East J Anesthesiol 2005 Oct;18(3):595-610.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16381265
48. Bianconi M, Ferraro L, Traina GC, et al. Pharmacokinetics and efficacy of ropivacaine continuous wound instillation after joint replacement surgery. Br J Anaesth 2003 Dec;91(6):830-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14633754
49. Kehlet H. Wilmore DW. Multimodal strategies to improve surgical outcome. Am J Surg 2002 Jun; 183(6):630-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12095591
50. Beauregard L, Pomp A, Choinière M. Severity and impact of pain after day-surgery. Can J Anesth 1998 Apr;45(4):304-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9597202
51. Rawal N, Hylander J, Nydahl PA, et al. Survey of postoperative analgesia following ambulatory surgery. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 1997 Sep;41(8):1017-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9311400
52. Crews JC. Multimodal pain management strategies for office-based and ambulatory procedures. JAMA 2002 Aug;288(5):629-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12150675
53. Gibson SJ, Helme RD. Age-related differences in pain perception and report. Clin Geriatr Med 2001 Aug;17(3):433-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11459714
54. Gloth FM 3rd. Geriatric pain. Factors that limit pain relief and increase complications. Geriatrics 2000 Oct;55(10):46-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11054950
55. Pickering G, Jourdan D, Eschalier A, et al. Impact of age, gender and cognitive functioning on pain perception. Gerontology 2002 Mar-Apr;48(2):112-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11867935
56. Marcantonio ER, Juarez G, Goldman L, et al. The relationship of postoperative delirium with psychoactive medications. JAMA 1994 Nov;272(19):1518-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966844
57. Gloth FM 3rd. Principles of perioperative pain management in older adults. Clin Geriatr Med 2001 Aug;17(3):553-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11459721
58. Lynch EP, Lazor MA, Gellis JE, et al. The impact of postoperative pain on the development of postoperative delirium. Anesth Analg 1998 Apr;86(4):781-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9539601
59. Adams JP, Murphy PG. Obesity in anaesthesia and intensive care. Br J Anaesth 2000 Jul;85(1): 91-108.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10927998
60. Choban PS, Flancbaum L. The impact of obesity on surgical outcomes: a review. J Am Coll Surg 1997 Dec;185(6):593-603.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9404886
61. Choi YK, Brolin RE, Wagner BK, et al. Efficacy and safety of patient-controlled analgesia for morbidly obese patients following gastric bypass surgery. Obes Surg 2000 Apr;10(2):154-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10782177
62. Cullen DJ. Obstructive sleep apnea and postoperative analgesia: a potentially dangerous combination. J Clin Anesth 2001 Mar;13(2):83-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11331164
63. Rosenberg J, Pedersen MH, Gebuhr P, et al. Effect of oxygen therapy on late postoperative episodic and constant hypoxemia. Br J Anaesth 1992 Jan;68(1):18-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1739560

64. Collins ED, Kleber HD, Whittington RA, Heitler NE..Anesthesia-assisted vs buprenorphine- or clonidine-assisted heroin detoxification and naltrexone induction: a randomized trial. JAMA. 2005 Aug 24;294(8):903-13
65. Rawal N. 10 years of acute pain services: achievements and challenges. Reg Anesth Pain Med 1999 Jan-Feb;24(1):68-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9952098
66. Stamer UM, Mpasios N, Stuber F, et al. A survey of acute pain services in Germany and a discussion of international survey data. Reg Anesth Pain Med 2002 Mar-Apr;27(2):125-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11915057
67. Miaskowski C, Crews J, Ready LB, et al. Anesthesia-based pain services improve the quality of postoperative pain management. Pain 1999 Mar;80(1-2):23-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204714
68. Fancourt-Smith PF, Hornstein J, Jenkins LC. Hospital admissions from the Surgical Day Case Centre of Vancouver General Hospital 1977-1987. Can J Anesth 1990 Sep;37(6):699-704.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2208546
69. Kraebber DM, SA Torres. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: review of the first 100 cases at the Kidney Stone Center of Southeast Georgia. South Med J 1988 Jan;81(1):48-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3336800
70. Liston TG, Montgomery BS, Bultitude MI, et al. Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy with the Storz Modulith SL20: the first 500 patients. Br J Urol 1992 May;69(5):465-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1623372
71. Voce S, Dal Pozzo C, Arnone S, et al. 'In situ' echo-guided extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy of ureteral stones. Methods and results with Dornier MPL 9000. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(4):469-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8159919
72. Tauzin-Fin P, Saumtally S, Houdek MC, et al. [Analgesia by sublingual buprenorphine in extracorporeal kidney lithotripsy]. Ann Fr Anesth Reanim 1993;12(3):260-4. [article in French]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8250363
73. Dawson C, Vale JA, Corry DA, et al. Choosing the correct pain relief for extracorporeal lithotripsy. Br J Urol 1994 Sep;74(3):302-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7953259
74. Ozcan S, Yilmaz E, Buyukkocak U, et al. Comparison of three analgesics for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2002;36(4):281-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12201921
75. Irwin MG, Campbell RC, Lun TS, et al. Patient maintained alfentanil target-controlled infusion for analgesia during extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy. Can J Anesth 1996 Sep;43(9):919-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8874909
76. Beloeil H, Corsia G, Coriat P, et al. Remifentanil compared with sufentanil during extra-corporeal shock wave lithotripsy with spontaneous ventilation: a double-blind, randomized study. Br J Anaesth 2002 Oct;89(4):567-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12393357
77. Medina HJ, Galvin EM, Dirkx M, et al. Remifentanil as a single drug for extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy: a comparison of infusion doses in terms of analgesic potency and side effects. Anesth Analg 2005 Aug;101(2):365-70, table of contents.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16037145
78. Tauzin-Fin P, Sesay M, Svartz L, et al. Sublingual oxybutynin reduces postoperative pain related to indwelling bladder catheter after radical retropubic prostatectomy. Br J Anaesth 2007 Oct;99(4):572-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17681969
79. Lindgren L, Koivusalo AM, Kellokumpu I. Conventional pneumoperitoneum compared with abdominal wall lift for laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Br J Anaesth 1995 Nov;75(5):567-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7577282
80. Sarli L, Costi R, Sansebastiano G, et al. Prospective randomized trial of low-pressure pneumoperitoneum for reduction of shoulder-tip pain following laparoscopy. Br J Surg 2000 Sep;87(9):1161-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10971421
81. Barczynski M, Herman RM. A prospective randomized trial on comparison of low-pressure (LP) and standard-pressure (SP) pneumoperitoneum for laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Surg Endosc 2003 Apr;17(4):533-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12582754

82. Bisgaard T. Analgesic treatment after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a critical assessment of the evidence. Anesthesiology 2006 Apr;104(4):835-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16571981
83. Neudecker J, Sauerland S, Neugebauer E, et al. The European Association for Endoscopic Surgery clinical practice guideline on the pneumoperitoneum for laparoscopic surgery. Surg Endosc 2002 Jul;16(7):1121-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12015619
84. Kehlet H, Wilmore DW. Multimodal strategies to improve surgical outcome. Am J Surg 2002 Jun;183(6):630-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12095591
85. Block BM, Liu SS, Rowlingson AJ, et al. Efficacy of postoperative epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis. JAMA 2003 Nov;290(18):2455-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14612482
86. Wu CL, Cohen SR, Richman JM, et al. Efficacy of postoperative patient-controlled and continuous infusion epidural analgesia versus intravenous patient-controlled analgesia with opioids: a metaanalysis. Anesthesiology 2005 Nov;103(5):1079-88; quiz 1109-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16249683
87. Chundamala J, Wright JG, Kemp SM. An evidence-based review of parental presence during anesthesia induction and parent/child anxiety. Can J Anaesth 2009 Jan;56(1):57-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19247779
88. Möller C, A lignocaine-prilocaine cream reduces venipuncture pain. Ups J Med Sci 1985;90(3):293-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3913095
89. Monitto CL, Greenberg RS, Kost-Byerly S, et al. The safety and efficacy of parent-/nurse-controlled analgesia in patients less than six years of age. Anesth Analg 2000 Sep;91(3):573-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10960379
90. Matsota P, Papageorgiou-Brousta M, Kostopanagiotou G. Wound infiltration with levobupivacaine: an alternative method of postoperative pain relief after inguinal hernia repair in children. Eur J Pediatr Surg 2007 Aug;17(4):270-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17806025
91. Merguerian PA, Sutters KA, Tang E, et al. Efficacy of continuous epidural analgesia versus single dose caudal analgesia in children after intravesical ureteroneocystostomy. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 2):1621-5; discussion 1625.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371775
92. Hong JY, Han SW, Kim WO, et al. A comparison of high volume/low concentration and low volume/high concentration ropivacaine in caudal analgesia for pediatric orchiopexy. Anesth Analg 2009 Oct;109(4):1073-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19762734
93. Akbas M, Titiz TA, Ertugrul F, et al. Comparison of the effect of ketamine added to bupivacaine and ropivacaine, on stress hormone levels and the duration of caudal analgesia. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 2005 Nov;49(10):1520-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16223400
94. Tripi PA, Palmer JS, Thomas S, et al. Clonidine increases duration of bupivacaine caudal analgesia for ureteroneocystostomy: a double-blind prospective trial. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):1081-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094063
95. Castillo-Zamora C, Castillo-Peralta LA, Nava-Ocampo AA. Dose minimization study of single-dose epidural morphine in patients undergoing hip surgery under regional anesthesia with bupivacaine. Paediatr Anaesth 2005 Jan;15(1):29-36.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15649160

6. NON-TRAUMATIC ACUTE FLANK PAIN

6.1 Background

Acute flank pain is a frequently occuring and complex medical problem. Ureterolithiasis is the most common non-traumatic cause. However, half of all renal colics are not caused by urolithiasis (1-3) (Table 32).

Table 32: Main urological and non-urological causes of flank pain

Urological causes	Non-urological causes
Renal or ureteral stones	Aortic aneurysm
Urinary tract infection (pyelonephritis, pyonephrosis, renal abscess)	Gallbladder disorder
Uretero-pelvic junction obstruction	Gastrointestinal disorders
Renal vascular disorders (renal infarction, renal vein thrombosis)	Pancreatic disease
Papillary necrosis	Gynaecological disorders
Intra- or peri-renal bleeding	Musculoskeletal disease
Testicular cord torsion.	

6.2 Initial diagnostic approach

*6.2.1 **Symptomatology***

History and physical examination, including body temperature, can be very helpful in the differential diagnosis of acute flank pain (4).

- **Acute renal colic** is indicated by pain of short duration (< 12 hours), nausea, vomiting, loin tenderness and haematuria (erythrocytes > 10,000/mm3) (4).
- Because the signs and symptoms can be very similar, **acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis** should be immediately differentiated from complicated renal colic:
  - concomitant fever (> 38°C) makes imaging obligatory (5). A radiological evaluation of the upper urinary tract should be offered to every patient presenting with flank pain and fever to rule out urinary tract obstruction irrespective of the accompanying symptoms, duration of the episode and urine macroscopic or microscopic findings.
  - imaging is also imperative in patients with acute flank pain and a solitary kidney (LE: 4).
- **Acute flank pain in patients with an increased risk for thromboembolic events should raise the** suspicion of **renal infarction** (6).
- Careful abdominal examination can reveal an abdominal **aortic aneurysm** (misdiagnosed in 30% of patients).
- **Renal vein thrombosis** (RVT) may often present with symptoms of acute flank pain, proteinuria, haematuria, hypotension and renal insufficiency.
- **Obstruction of the UPJ** can result in acute flank or abdominal pain after a high fluid volume intake, especially in paediatric patients.
- **Renal papillary necrosis** is not uncommon in the course of systemic diseases such as diabetes mellitus or analgesic nephropathy; the passage of sloughed papillae down the ureter may cause flank pain and haematuria.
- **Testicular torsion** should always be excluded in children with acute abdominal/flank pain.
- **Torsion of the appendix testis** can also result in abdominal pain or radiate to the flank.
- **Spontaneous bleeding** either within the kidney or to the retroperitoneum can be caused by kidney tumours (including angiomyolipomas), bleeding disorders or anticoagulation; acute flank pain is sometimes the presenting symptom.

Recommendation	GR
Febrile patients (> 38°C) with acute flank pain and/or with a solitary kidney need urgent imaging.	B

*6.2.2 **Laboratory evaluation***

All patients with acute flank pain require a urine test (red and white cells, bacteria or urine nitrite), blood cell count, and serum creatinine measurement. In addition, febrile patients with flank pain require C-reactive protein and urine culture. Pyelonephritis ± obstructive uropathy should be suspected when the white blood count exceeds 15,000/mm^3.

*6.2.3 **Diagnostic imaging***

6.2.3.1 Ultrasonography

Unenhanced helical computed tomography has high sensitivity and specificity for the evaluation of acute flank pain (7,8) (LE: 1a). Unenhanced helical computed tomography is superior because it detects ureteral stones with a sensitivity and specificity of 94-100%, regardless of stone size, location and chemical composition, and identifies extraurinary causes of flank pain in about one-third of all patients presenting with it. In addition, it does not need contrast agent, and is a time-saving technique (8,9) (LE: 1a).

6.2.3.2 Intravenous urography (IVU)

The use of US in the management of acute flank pain has been increasing. If the findings of pelvic and/or ureteral dilatation, stone visualisation and the absence of ureteral ejaculation are combined, sensitivity to ureteral dilatation can be 96% (7,10,11) (LE: 2a). Together with a plain abdominal radiograph, US can be accepted when computed tomography (CT) is not available (7,12-16) (LE: 1b).The disadvantages of US include inability to differentiate dilatation from true obstruction and the need for highly specialised personnel (12). Sensitivity varies from 58-96% in untrained staff in emergency rooms (15), but evidence suggests that, with even short training, non-specialists can be highly effective at excluding disorders such as abdominal aortic aneurysm, free abdominal fluids, gallstones and obstructive uropathy (15) (LE: 2b). US is the diagnostic imaging modality of choice during pregnancy.

6.2.3.3 Unenhanced helical CT (UHCT)

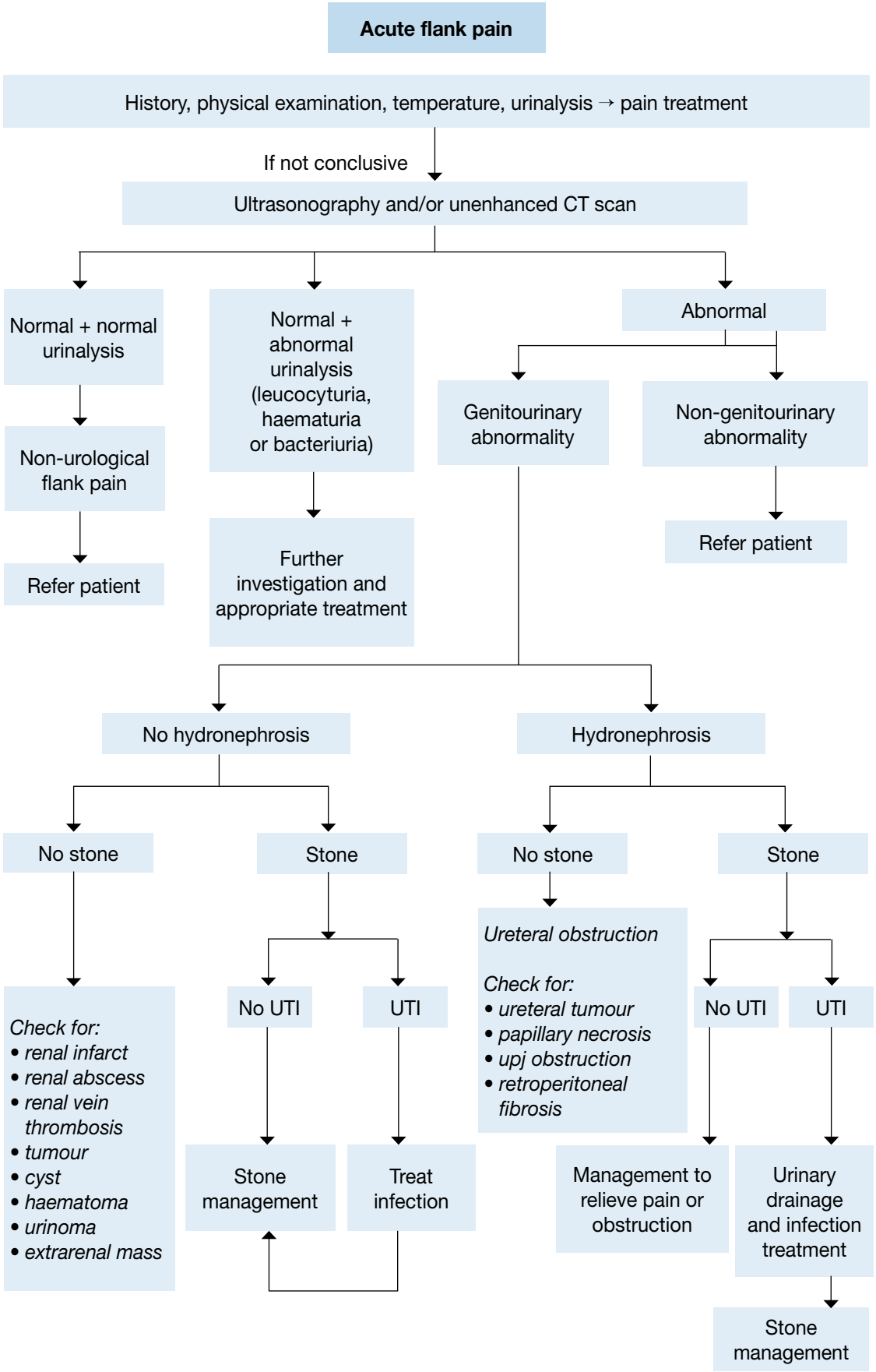
IVU reliably provides information on the anatomy of the urinary collecting system (ureteral and renal pelvic dilatation) in 80-90% of cases and can indentify ureteral calculi in 40-60% of cases.

Direct identification of ureteral calculi can be achieved in 40-60% of cases, whereas indirect signs (e.g. ureteral and renal pelvic dilatation) allows detection in 80-90% of cases. Drawback is that IVU results can be hampered by poor quality related to suboptimal bowel preparation, toxicity of contrast agents, allergic and anaphylactic reactions, and by significant radiation exposure. In emergency cases, IVU should be avoided due to the risk of fornix rupture.

UHCT or IVU should be considered in patients initially evaluated by other means who are still febrile after 72 h of treatment to rule out further complicating factors (renal, perinephric or prostatic abscesses) (8,9).

Table 33 shows comparative results of UHCT US and IVU in assessing acute flank pain and suspicion of ureterolithiasis (17-19). Figure 2 summarises the diagnostic approach to non-traumatic acute flank pain.

Figure 2: Diagnostic approach to non-traumatic acute flank pain



CT = computed tomography; UTI = urinary tract infection.

Recommendations	GR
Unenhanced helical computed tomography is the diagnostic imaging modality with the highest sensitivity and specificity for evaluation of non-traumatic acute flank pain.	A
Ultrasound can be an alternative to unenhanced helical computed tomography in the initial approach to non-traumatic acute flank pain.	A

Table 33: Comparative results of UHCT, US and IVU in assessment of acute flank pain and suspected ureterolithiasis (12)

Imaging modality	Performance	Ref. no.
UHCT	Sensitivity 100%, specificity 96%, accuracy 98%	17
Abdominal radiograph + US versus UHCT	UHCT: sensitivity and specificity of 100% US: sensitivity 100%, specificity 90%	18
Low-dose UHCT versus IVU	UHCT: sensitivity 97%, specificity 96% Low-dose UHCT is superior to IVU	19

6.3 Initial emergency treatment

*6.3.1 **Systemic analgesia***

Pain relief is usually the first, most urgent, therapeutic step (20,21):

- Intravenous (iv) non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (nsaids) are very effective in most cases, e.g. a bolus of diclofenac sodium, 75 mg (le: 1a) (21); a slow iv injection of ketorolac, 30 mg, 4 times daily, is equivalent to diclofenac in the treatment of renal colic (22).
- Tests have shown a single dose of dipyrone to be less effective than diclofenac, 75 mg (23) (le: 1a), but a slow iv infusion of dipyrone, 1 g or 2 g, is just as effective as diclofenac (24).
- In cases of unresponsiveness to diclofenac (25) (le: 1b), or contraindication of NSAIDs (24) (le: 1b), iv papaverine hydrochloride (120 mg) is a safe and effective alternative.
- Large-scale studies have shown that NSAIDs and opioids are both effective analgesics, but vomiting is more prevalent with opioids (particularly pethidine) (21).
- The combination of iv morphine + ketorolac seems superior to either drug alone, and appears to be associated with a decrease in the need for rescue doses of analgesia (26).
- Antimuscarinics are often used in acute renal colic; there is no evidence that hyoscine butylbromide reduces opioid requirements in this condition (26) (LE: 1b).

The origin of the pain should be immediately clarified in febrile patients and those with a solitary kidney.

Recommendation	GR
In patiens presenting with acute flank pain NSAIDs such as diclofenac (75 mg bolus) and dipyrone (1-2 g slow iv injection) are the drugs of first choice.	A

*6.3.2 **Local analgesia***

A number of manipulations have been tested in the field of acute renal colic.

- Local warming of the abdomen and lower back region seems to decrease pain in patients with acute renal colic (27) (LE: 1a).
- Trigger-point injection of lidocaine can provide effective pain relief in 50% of patients with renal colic (28); it is significantly better than iv butylscopolamine bromide + sulpyrine (28) (LE: 1a). There are no comparative studies with NSAIDs.

*6.3.3 **Supportive therapy***

Patients with acute flank pain often present with moderate to severe dehydration. Fever, vomiting and anorexia produce serious discomfort and should be treated from the outset. If possible, iv fluids should be generous (60 mL/h normal saline and 60 mL/h 5% glucose solution), but maintenance iv fluids (20 mL/h normal saline) can be as effective as forced hydration with regard to pain perception and analgesic use (29) (LE: 1b). No clear evidence supports using diuretics to treat acute ureteral colic (30). Metoclopramide chloride (0.5 mg/kg/24 h in three divided doses) can be effective in controlling nausea and vomiting irrespective of aetiology (infectious, obstructive, oncological).

*6.3.4 **Upper urinary tract decompression***

If pain relief cannot be achieved using medical therapy and there are signs of infection and impaired renal

function, upper urinary tract drainage should be undertaken. The main indications for stenting for urgent relief of obstruction include (31):

- urine infection with urinary tract obstruction
- urosepsis
- intractable pain and/or vomiting
- obstruction of a solitary or transplanted kidney
- bilateral obstructing stones
- ureteral calculus obstruction in pregnancy.

6.4 Aetiological treatment

*6.4.1 **Urolithiasis***

General concepts for treating urolithiasis have been defined in the EAU Guidelines on Urolithiasis (32).

*6.4.2 **Infectious conditions***

Infectious uncomplicated conditions (i.e. acute pyelonephritis in otherwise healthy individuals) should be treated with appropriate antibiotics and analgesics according to the EAU Guidelines on Urological Infections (33).

The first-line treatment of mild cases should be an oral fluoroquinolone (twice daily for 7 days) in areas with low rates of fluoroquinolone-resistant Escherichia coli. In areas with raised resistance rates, or in pregnancy, lactation or adolescence, a second- or third-generation oral cephalosporin is recommended. Pain can usually be controlled with oral NSAIDs (diclofenac 75 mg, three times daily, or dipyrone 500 mg three times daily) except in pregnant or lactating women.

*6.4.3 **Other conditions***

6.4.3.1 Uretero-pelvic junction obstruction

Uretero-pelvic junction obstruction obstruction can result in intermittent flank or abdominal pain. Symptoms may worsen during brisk diuresis (after consumption of caffeine or alcohol). Dismembered or non-dismembered pyeloplasty is standard. A ureteral stent can help to relieve pain in very symptomatic patients prior to definitive surgery. Outcomes are excellent, with resolution of the obstruction in 90-95% of cases, including newborns (34).

6.4.3.2 Papillary necrosis

Papillary necrosis commonly presents as painless macroscopic haematuria, but can be complicated by ureteral obstruction. As well as symptomatic treatment, treatment should be given for the underlying cause of papillary necrosis, such as interstitial nephritis, acute pyelonephritis, diabetes mellitus, analgesic abuse or sickle cell disease. Ureteral obstruction due to sloughed papillae can be successfully treated with ureteroscopy or temporary ureteral stenting (35).

6.4.3.3 Renal infarction

There is no specific treatment for acute renal infarction, but the underlying disease (atrial fibrillation, left ventricular thrombus or a hypercoagulable state) may require anticoagulation with iv heparin followed by warfarin to prevent future events (36).

6.4.3.4 RVT

RVT is often clinically silent, but can present with acute flank pain. Systemic anticoagulation with heparin to prevent further propagation of thrombus or other thromboembolic phenomena (37) is standard, but the successful use of fibrinolytic agents in selected patients without clinical contraindications has been reported (38). Thrombectomy or nephrectomy is reserved for cases refractory to medical therapy.

6.4.3.5 Intra- or peri-renal bleeding

Acute spontaneous intra- or peri-renal bleeding often results in acute flank pain. Spontaneous renal haemorrhage (Wunderlich's syndrome), is an unusual and life-threatening cause of acute abdomen. Nephrectomy is usually the only therapeutic alternative (39,40).

6.4.3.6 Testicular cord torsion

Testicular cord torsion can produce lower abdomen and flank pain; it should be treated surgically at once.

6.5 References

1. Chen MY, Zagoria RJ, Saunders HS, et al. Trends in the use of unenhanced helical CT for acute urinary colic. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1999 Dec;173(6):1447-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10584780
2. Dalrymple NC, Verga M, Anderson KR, et al. The value of unenhanced helical computerized tomography in the management of acute flank pain. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):735-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474137
3. Levine JA, Neitlich J, Verga M, et al. Ureteral calculi in patients with flank pain: correlation of plain radiography with unenhanced helical CT. Radiology 1997Jul;204(1):27-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9205218
4. Eskelinen M, Ikonen J, Lipponen P. Usefulness of history-taking, physical examination and diagnostic scoring in acute renal colic. Eur Urol 1998 Dec;34(6):467-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9831787
5. Pearle M. Management of the acute stone event. AUA Update Series 2008. Vol 27. Lesson 30. American Urological Association, Education and Research Inc, Linthicum, MD.
6. Roche-Nagle G, Rubin BB. Considerations in the diagnosis and therapy for acute loin pain. Am J Emerg Med 2009 Feb;27(2):254.e3-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19371555
7. Catalano O, Nunziata A, Altei F, et al. Suspected ureteral colic: primary helical CT versus selective helical CT after unenhanced radiography and sonography. AJR Am J Roentgenol 2002 Feb;178(2):379-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11804898
8. Worster A, Preyra I, Weaver B, et al. The accuracy of noncontrast helical computed tomography versus intravenous pyelography in the diagnosis of suspected acute urolithiasis: a meta-analysis. Ann Emerg Med 2002 Sep;40(3):280-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12192351
9. Katz DS, Scheer M, Lumerman JH, et al. Alternative or additional diagnoses on unenhanced helical computed tomography for suspected renal colic: experience with 1000 consecutive examinations. Urology 2000 Jul;56(1):53-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10869622
10. Heidenreich A, Desgrandschamps F, Terrier F. Modern approach of diagnosis and management of acute flank pain: review of all imaging modalities. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):351-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074804
11. Wang LJ, Ng CJ, Chen JC, et al. Diagnosis of acute flank pain caused by ureteral stones: value of combined direct and indirect signs on IVU and unenhanced helical CT. Eur Radiol 2004 Sep;14(9):1634-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15060838
12. ACR Appropriateness Criteria. Acute onset flank pain, suspicion of stone disease. American College of Radiology-Medical Specialty Society, 1995 (revised 2007). NGC:005991
13. Noble VE, Brown DF. Renal ultrasound. Emerg Med Clin North Am 2004 Aug;22(3):641-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15301843
14. Gaspari R, Horst K. Emergency ultrasound and urinalysis in the evaluation of flank pain. Acad Emerg Med 2005 Dec;12(12):1180-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16282510
15. Kartal M, Eray O, Erdogru T, et al. Prospective validation of a current algorithm including bedside US performed by emergency physicians for patients with acute flank pain suspected for renal colic. Emerg Med J 2006 May;23(5):341-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16627832
16. Pfister SA, Deckart A, Laschke S, et al. Unenhanced helical computed tomography vs intravenous urography in patients with acute flank pain: accuracy and economic impact in a randomized prospective trial. Eur Radiol 2003 Nov;13(11):2513-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12898174
17. Boulay I, Holtz P, Foley WD, et al. Ureteral calculi: diagnostic efficacy of helical CT and implications for treatment of patients. AJR Am J Roentgenol 1999 Jun;172(6):1485-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10350277
18. Ripollés T, Agramunt M, Errando J, et al. Suspected ureteral colic: plain film and sonography vs unenhanced helical CT. A prospective study in 66 patients. Eur Radiol 2004 Jan;14(1):129-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12819916

19. Liu W, Esler SJ, Kenny BJ, et al. Low-dose nonenhanced helical CT of renal colic: assessment of ureteric stone detection and measurement of effective dose equivalent. Radiology 2000 Apr;215(1): 51-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10751467
20. Tiselius H-G, Alken P, Buck C, et al. Guidelines on urolithiasis. Chapter 5. Treatment of patients with renal colic. In: EAU Guidelines. Edition presented at the 24th EAU Congress, Stockholm, 2009, pp. 21-2.
http://www.uroweb.org/nc/professional-resources/guidelines/online/
21. Holdgate A, Pollock T. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) versus opioids for acute renal colic. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Apr;18(2):CD004137.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15846699
22. Cohen E, Hafner R, Rotenberg Z, et al. Comparison of ketorolac and diclofenac in the treatment of renal colic. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1998 Aug;54(6):455-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9776434
23. Edwards JE, Meseguer F, Faura C, et al. Single dose dipyrone for acute renal colic pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002(4):CD003867.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519613
24. Collaborative Group of the Spanish Society of Clinical Pharmacology and García-Alonso F. Comparative study of the efficacy of dipyrone, diclofenac sodium and pethidine in acute renal colic. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 1991;40(6):543-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1884733
25. Snir N, Moskovitz B, Nativ O, et al. Papaverine hydrochloride for the treatment of renal colic: an old drug revisited. A prospective, randomized study. J Urol 2008 Aug;179(4):1411-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18289563
26. Yencilek F, Aktas C, Goktas C, et al. Role of papaverine hydrochlorideadministration in patients with intractable renal colic: randomized prospective trial. Urology 2008 Nov;72(5):987-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18789511
27. Kober A, Dobrovits M, Djavan B, et al. Local active warming: an effective treatment for pain, anxiety and nausea caused by renal colic. J Urol 2003 Sep;170(3):741-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913687
28. Iguchi M, Katoh Y, Koike H, et al. Randomized trial of trigger point injection for renal colic. Int J Urol 2002 Sep;9(9):475-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12410926
29. Springhart WP, Marguet CG, Sur RL, et al. Forced versus minimal intravenous hydration in the management of acute renal colic: a randomized trial. J Endourol 2006 Oct;20(10):713-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17094744
30. Worster A, Richards C. Fluids and diuretics for acute ureteric colic. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Jul;20;(3);CD004926.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034958
31. Tiselius H-G, Alken P, Buck C, et al. Guidelines on urolithiasis. Chapter 16. Internal stenting-when and why. In: EAU Guidelines. Edition presented at the 24th EAU Congress, Stockholm, 2009, pp. 93-5.
http://www.uroweb.org/nc/professional-resources/guidelines/online/
32. Tiselius H-G, Alken P, Buck C, et al. Guidelines on urolithiasis. Chapters 5-19. In: EAU Guidelines. Edition presented at the 24th EAU Congress, Stockholm, 2009, pp. 21-115.
http://www.uroweb.org/nc/professional-resources/guidelines/online/
33. Grabe M, Bishop MC, Bjerklund-Johansen TE, et al. Guidelines on urological Infections. Chapter 2. Uncomplicated urinary tract infections in adults. In: EAU Guidelines. Edition presented at the 24th EAU Congress, Stockholm, 2009, pp. 11-29.
http://www.uroweb.org/nc/professional-resources/guidelines/online/
34. Sutherland RW, Chung SK, Roth DR, et al. Pediatric pyeloplasty: outcome analysis based on patient age and surgical technique. Urology 1997 Dec;50(6):963-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9426731
35. Vijayaraghavan SB, Kandasamy SV, Mylsamy A, et al. Sonographic features of necrosed renal papillae causing hydronephrosis. J Ultrasound Med 2003 Sep;22(9):951-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14510267
36. Leong FT, Freeman LJ. Acute renal infarction. J R Soc Med 2005 Mar;98:121-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15738558
37. Markowitz G, Brignol F, Burns E, et al. Renal vein thrombosis treated with thrombolytic therapy: case report and brief review. Am J Kidney Dis 1995 May;25(5):801-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7747736

38. Kim HS, Fine DM, Atta MG. Catheter-directed thrombectomy and thrombolysis for acute renal vein thrombosis. J Vasc Interv Radiol 2006 May;17(5):815-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16687747
39. Albi G, del Campo L, Tagarro D. Wünderlich's syndrome: causes, diagnosis and radiological management. Clin Radiol 2002 Sep;57(9):840-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12384111
40. Quintero Rodríguez R, Arrabal Martín M, Camacho Martínez E, et al. [Conservative treatment of Wünderlich syndrome in a functional monorenal patient]. Actas Urol Esp 1993 May;17(5):325-8. [Article in Spanish]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8342432

7. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations.

AMPA	α-amino-3-hydroxyl-5-methyl-4-isoxazole-propionate
ATC	around-the-clock
CNS	central nervous system
COX	cyclo-oxygenase
CT	computed tomography
EDTMP	ethylenediaminetetramethylenephosphonate
EORTC	European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer
ESWL	extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy
GABA	gamma-aminobutyric acid
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GCP	good clinical practice
IASP	International Association for the Study of Pain
Im	intramuscular
iv	intravenous
IVU	intravenous urography
^{131}J-MIBG	131J-metaiodobenzylguanidine
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NMDA	N-methyl-D-aspartate
NRS	numerical rating scale
NSAIDs	non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
PACU	post-anaesthesia care unit
PCa	prostate cancer
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PCEA	patient-controlled epidural analgesia
prn	as needed
PRPE	perineal radical prostatectomy
RCC	renal cell carcinoma
RLND	retroperitoneal lymph node dissection
sc	subcutaneous
^{153}Sm	samarium-153
^{89}Sr	strontium-89
SRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography
TCA	tricyclic antidepressants
TCC	transitional cell carcinoma
TURB	transurethral resection of bladder tumour
TURP	transurethral resection of prostate
UHCT	unenhanced helical CT
VAS	visual analogue scale
VRS	verbal rating scale
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest

All members of the General Pain Management Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on
Chronic Pelvic Pain

D. Engeler (chairman), A.P. Baranowski, S. Elneil, J. Hughes,
E.J. Messelink, P. Oliveira, A. van Ophoven, A.C. de C. Williams

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 The Guideline

Chronic pelvic pain (CPP) is a prevalent condition which can present a major challenge to health care providers due to its complex aetiology and poor response to therapy.
Chronic pelvic pain is a multifactorial condition and therefore, quite often, poorly managed. Management requires knowledge of all pelvic organ systems and their association with other systems and conditions, including musculoskeletal, neurologic, urologic, gynaecologic and psychological aspects, promoting a multidisciplinary approach.
The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Working Group for Chronic Pelvic Pain prepared this guidelines document to assist urologists and medical professionals from associated specialties, such as gynaecologists, psychologists, gastroenterologists and sexologists, in assessing the evidence-based management of CPP and to incorporate evidence-based recommendations into their every-day clinical practice.

*1.1.1 **Panel composition***

The panel of experts responsible for this document include urologists, a neuro-urologist, consultants in pain medicine, a gynaecologist, a psychologist, a gastroenterologist and a sexologist.

*1.1.2 **Publication history***

The EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain were first published in 2003 (1) which formed the basis of a scientific publication in European Urology in 2004 (2). Also, in the 2003 edition the concept of Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndromes (CPPS) was introduced, which is now referred to as “pain as a disease process”.

Partial updates of the CPP guidelines were published in 2008 and formed the basis for another scientific publication in European Urology in the year 2010 (3,4).

For this 2012 update the panel focused on:

1. restructuring the text to emphasise the significance of holistic management of CPP;
2. addressing the changes in the management of CPPS based on the concept of pain as a disease process.

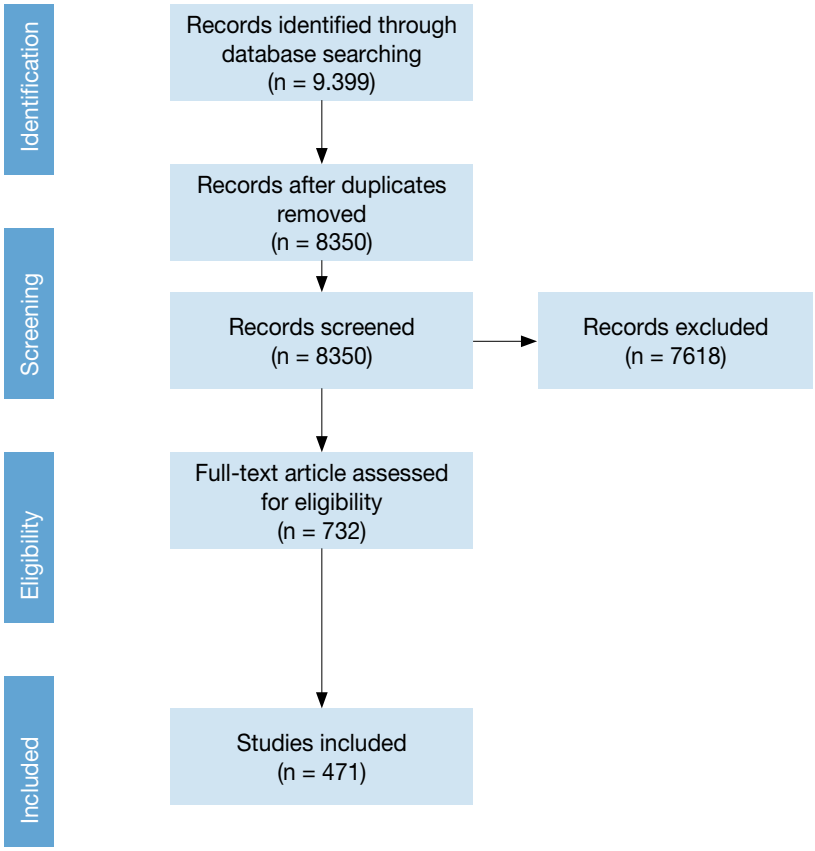
As a result, two new chapters have been added; Chapter 5 ‘Gastrointestinal aspects of chronic pelvic pain’ and Chapter 7 ‘Sexological aspects of chronic pelvic pain.

A quick reference document presenting the main findings of these CPP guidelines (pocket guidelines) is also available and has been updated. All texts, alongside scientific publications, can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the EAU website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

1.2 Methodology

The full text update is based on a systematic review of literature using the Embase and Medline databases, the Cochrane Central Register of controlled trials and the PsycInfo and Bandolier databases to identify the best evidence from RCTs, Level of Evidence 1 (LE1), according to the rating schedule adapted from the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (Table 1) [5]. Where no LE1 literature could be identified the search was moved down to the next lower level on the rating scale. Extensive use of free text ensured the sensitivity of the searches, resulting in a substantial body of literature to scan. Searches covered the period January 1995 and May 2011 and were restricted to English language publications.

Flowdiagram update procedure



*1.2.1 **Level of evidence and grade of guideline recommendations****

References used in the text have been assessed according to their level of evidence (Table 1), and recommendations have been graded (Table 2) according to the Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (5). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)*

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected Authorities

Modified from Sackett et al. (5)

It should be noted that when recommendations are graded, the link between the level of evidence and grade of recommendation is not directly linear. Availability of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) may not necessarily translate into a grade A recommendation where there are methodological limitations or disparity in published results.

Alternatively, absence of high level evidence does not necessarily preclude a grade A recommendation, if there is overwhelming clinical experience and consensus. In addition, there may be exceptional situations where corroborating studies cannot be performed, perhaps for ethical or other reasons and in this case unequivocal recommendations are considered helpful for the reader. The quality of the underlying scientific evidence - although a very important factor - has to be balanced against benefits and

burdens, values and preferences and cost when a grade is assigned (6-8).

The EAU Guidelines Office, do not perform cost assessments, nor can they address local/national preferences in a systematic fashion. But whenever this data is available, the expert panels will include the information.

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)*

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**Modified from Sackett et al. (5)*

*1.2.2 **Formal review***

A formal review was carried out prior to publication by a multidisciplinary team of international experts, covering the different fields of expertise described in these guidelines.

1.3 Acknowledgements

The expert panel should like to express their gratitude to professor Magnus Fall, former chairman and patriarch of the CPP panel who established the foundation of these guidelines, the current expert panel can now build on.

Prof. Jan Borovicka, gastro-enterologist at the Kantonsspital St. Gallen, Switzerland, authored Chapter 5 'Gastrointestinal aspects of chronic pelvic pain' of this document.

Dr. Yacov Reisman, urologist at the Amstelland Hospital in Amstelveen and sexologist at the Academic Medical Center in Amsterdam, the Netherlands, authored Chapter 7 'Sexological aspects of chronic pelvic pain'.

The CPP panel are most grateful for their assistance and willingness to lend their expertise to the EAU and their Guidelines Office. Their input greatly enhance these guidelines.

The support provided by research scientist Drs. J. Krabshuis has proved to be highly valuable in enhancing the methodological quality of this publication.

1.4 References

1. Fall M, Baranowksi AP, Fowler CJ, et al. EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain. http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/
2. Fall M, Baranowski AP, Fowler CJ, et al. EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain. Eur Urol 2004;46:681-689. http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/
3. Fall M, Baranowksi AP, Elneil S, et al. EAU Guidelines on Chronic Pelvic Pain 2010. http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/
4. Fall M, Baranowski AP, Elneil S, et al. EAU guidelines on chronic pelvic pain. Eur Urol. 2010 Jan;57(1):35-48 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733958
5. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]
6. Atkins D, Best D, Briss PA, et al; GRADE Working Group. Grading quality of evidence and strength of recommendations. BMJ 2004 Jun 19;328(7454):1490. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205295
7. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Vist GE, et al. GRADE: an emerging consensus on rating quality of evidenceand strength of recommendations. BMJ 2008;336(7650):924-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436948
8. Guyatt GH, Oxman AD, Kunz R, et al; GRADE Working Group. Going from evidence torecommendations. BMJ 2008 May 10;336(7652):1049-51. http://www.bmj.com/content/336/7652/1049.long

2. CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

2.1 Introduction to chronic urogenital pain syndromes

Over the years much of the focus for CPP has been on peripheral-end-organ mechanisms, such as inflammatory or infective conditions. However, both animal and clinical research have indicated that many of the mechanisms for the CPP syndromes are based within the central nervous system (CNS). Although a peripheral stimulus such as infection may initiate the start of a CPP condition, the condition may become self-perpetuating as a result of CNS modulation, independent of the original cause. As well as pain, these central mechanisms are associated with several other sensory, functional, behavioural and psychological phenomena. It is this collection of phenomena that forms the basis of the pain syndrome diagnosis and individual phenomena need to be addressed in their own right through multispecialty and multidisciplinary care.

Although ongoing peripheral organ pathology can produce persistent and chronic pain, the main focus of these guidelines is on CPP syndromes in which no peripheral ongoing pathology (such as infection or neoplastic disease) is detected. The main exception is when pain is due to peripheral nerve damage, which will be discussed in chapter 6.

2.2 Pain mechanisms - pain as a disease process

Chronic pelvic pain mechanisms may involve:

1. Ongoing acute pain mechanisms (1) (such as those associated with inflammation or infection) - which may involve somatic or visceral tissue.
2. Chronic pain mechanisms, which especially involve the CNS (2).
3. Emotional, cognitive, behavioural and sexual responses and mechanisms (3-6).These will be covered in chapter 8.

Table 3 illustrates some of the differences between the somatic and visceral pain mechanisms. They underlie some of the mechanisms that may produce the classical features of visceral pain; in particular, referred pain and hyperalgesia.

Table 3: comparison between visceral and somatic pain

	Visceral pain	**Somatic pain**
Effective painful stimuli	Stretching and distension, producing poorly localised pain.	Mechanical, thermal, chemical and electrical stimuli, producing well localised pain.
Summation	Widespread stimulation produces significantly magnified pain.	Widespread stimulation produces a modest increase in pain.
Autonomic involvement	Autonomic features (e.g., nausea and sweating) frequently present.	Autonomic features less frequent.
Referred pain	Pain perceived at a site distant to the cause of the pain is common.	Pain is relatively well localised but well recognised.
Referred hyperalgesia	Referred cutaneous and muscle hyperalgesia is common, as is involvement of other visceral organs.	Hyperalgesia tends to be localised.
Innervation	Low density, unmyelinated C fibres and thinly myelinated A∂ fibres.	Dense innervation with a wide range of nerve fibres.
Primary afferent physiology	Intensity coding. As stimulation increases afferent firing increases with an increase in sensation and ultimately pain.	Two fibre coding. Separate fibres for pain and normal sensation.
Silent afferents	50-90% of visceral afferents are silent until the time they are switched on. These fibres are very important in the central sensitisation process.	Silent afferents present, but form a lower percentage.

Central mechanisms	Play an important part in the hyperalgesia, viscero-visceral, viscero-muscular and musculo-visceral hyperalgesia. Sensations not normally perceived become perceived and non-noxious sensations become painful.	Responsible for the allodynia and hyperalgesia of chronic somatic pain.
Abnormalities of function	Central mechanisms associated with visceral pain may be responsible for organ dysfunction.	Somatic pain associated with somatic dysfunction, e.g., muscle spasm.
Central pathways and representation	As well as classical pathways, there is evidence for a separate dorsal horn pathway and central representation.	Classical pain pathways.

*2.2.1 **Ongoing peripheral visceral pain mechanisms as a cause of CPP***

In most cases of CPP, ongoing tissue trauma, inflammation or infection is not present (7-10). However, conditions that produce recurrent trauma, infection or ongoing inflammation may result in CPP in a small proportion of cases. It is for this reason that the early stages of assessment include looking for these pathologies (11). Once excluded, ongoing investigations for these causes are rarely helpful and indeed may be detrimental.

When acute pain mechanisms are activated by a nociceptive event, as well as direct activation of the peripheral nociceptor transducers, sensitisation of those transducers may also occur, thus magnifying the afferent signalling. Afferents that are not normally active may also become activated by the change, that is, there may be activation of the so-called silent afferents. Although these are mechanisms of acute pain, the increased afferent signalling is often a trigger for the chronic pain mechanisms that maintain the perception of pain in the absence of ongoing peripheral pathology (see below) (12,13).

There are a number of mechanisms by which the peripheral transducers may exhibit an increase in sensibility.

1. Modification of the peripheral tissue, which may result in the transducers being more exposed to peripheral stimulation.
2. There may be an increase in the chemicals that stimulates the receptors of the transducers (14).
3. There are many modifications in the receptors that result in them being more sensitive.

In general, the effect of 1 and 2 is to lower the threshold and the effect of 3 is to increase responsiveness to external stimuli.

Some of the chemicals responsible for the above changes may be released from those cells associated with inflammation, but the peripheral nervous system may also release chemicals in the form of positive and inhibitory loops (Table 4) (15).

Table 4: mechanisms in the periphery that effect nociceptor response to a nociceptive stimulus

Nerve growth factor (NGF)	May activate primary afferents directly, but also indirectly such as through bradykinin (16). The result is an increase in response of the primary afferents, with multiple action potentials being generated in response to a stimulus, as opposed to just one or two. The TrkA-NGF complex formed on the afferent neurons may also be transmitted centrally where it may alter gene expression. Such long-term gene modification may underlie some of the mechanisms of chronic NGF-induced hypersensitivity.
Adenosinetriphosphate (ATP)	Is thought to be released in increased amounts from certain viscera when stimulated by noxious stimuli. As well as this increased ATP producing an increased stimulation of its receptors, when inflammation is present, the ATP receptors have their properties changed so that there is an increased response per unit of ATP contributing to the nociceptor activation. ATP is thought to act on P2X3 purine receptors, which are found on visceral afferents and small-diameter dorsal root ganglion (DRG) neurons.
Substance P and other neurokinins (17)	Act on afferent tachykinin receptors, such as TRPV1, which is a transducer for noxious heat and protons, and are thought to play a primary role in inflammatory hyperalgesia.

Voltage-gated ion channels	E.g., tetrodotoxin-resistant sodium channel, NaV1.8 are also implicated in peripheral sensitisation. These channels open or close in response to changes in membrane potential. Changes in potassium and calcium voltage-gated channels may also underlie a part of the mechanism responsible for peripheral sensitisation.
Second messenger pathways	Within the primary afferents enable amplification of peripheral messages that they receive. In general, these pathways are balanced by others that are responsible for reducing any activation. During chronic pain, these mechanisms may become imbalanced.

*2.2.2 **Central sensitisation - spinal and higher mechanisms of visceral pain***

There are essentially three processes at the spinal cord level that are involved in central sensitisation (17). Changes in existing protein activity (post-translational processing) are the earliest (within minutes); however, changes in genetic transcription of proteins and even structural changes in neuron connectivity may also have roles to play. These latter changes may occur within days (18).

The chemicals involved in the early phase include several neurotransmitters such as glutamate, substance P, calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP), prostaglandin E2 and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) (15).

Increased levels of glutamate, due to recurrent afferent nociceptive fibre activity, remove the magnesium ion block of N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA). This allows calcium ions to enter the secondary afferents with enhanced depolarisation. Glutamate also binds to amino-methylene-phosphonic acid (AMPA), which may be another pathway by which it increases intracellular calcium. Other transmitters/modulators released centrally include: substance P, which acts on neural kinin receptors; PGE2, which binds to endogenous prostanoid receptors; and BDNF, which acts on tyrosine kinase B receptors and all of these may also increase intracellular calcium.

The calcium ions act to lower the threshold for second-order neuron firing, with increased signalling being transmitted to the higher centres. The second important feature of this increase in calcium ions is inpost-translational processing; this usually involves the addition of phosphate groups to amino acids by kinases. Phosphorylation can dramatically alter the properties of a protein, typically lowering the threshold at which channels open, but also, the channels remain open for longer. The result is that a stimulus produces a magnified evoked response in these neurons.

*2.2.3 **Spinal mechanisms and visceral hyperalgesia***

Central sensitisation (18) is responsible for a decrease in threshold and increase in response duration and magnitude of dorsal horn neurons. It is associated with an expansion of the receptive field. As a result, sensitisation increases signalling to the CNS and amplifies what we perceive from a peripheral stimulus. As an example, for cutaneous stimuli, light touch would not normally produce pain, however, when central sensitisation is present, light touch may be perceived as painful (allodynia). In visceral hyperalgesia (so called because the afferents are primarily small fibres), visceral stimuli that are normally subthreshold and not usually perceived may be perceived. For instance, with central sensitisation, stimuli that are normally subthreshold may result in a sensation of fullness and a need to void the bladder or to defecate. Stimuli normally perceived may be interpreted as pain and stimuli that are normally noxious may be magnified (true hyperalgesia) with an increased perception of pain. As a consequence, one can see that many of the symptoms of the bladder pain syndrome (BPS) (formally known as interstitial cystitis (IC) and irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) may be explained by central sensitisation. A similar explanation exists for the muscle pain of fibromyalgia.

*2.2.4 **Supraspinal modulation of pain perception***

It is important to appreciate that nociception is the process of transmitting to centres involved in perception information about a stimulus that has the potential to cause tissue damage. Pain is far more complex and involves activation of the nociceptive pathways but also the emotional response. Pain is defined by the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) as “an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage” (19). The brain may affect the modulation of pain pathways at the spinal cord level.

*2.2.5 **Higher centre modulation of spinal nociceptive pathways***

It is now well accepted that there are both descending pain-inhibitory and descending pain-facilitary pathways that originate from the brain (20).

The midbrain periaqueductal grey (PAG) plays an important part in spinal modulation. It receives inputs from centres associated with thought and emotion. Projections from the PAG (via several relay systems) to the dorsal horn can inhibit nociceptive messages from reaching conscious perception by spinal mechanisms. The PAG and its associated centres may also be involved in diffuse noxious inhibitory control (DNIC). DNIC is when a nociceptive stimulus in an area far from the receptive fields of a second nociceptive stimulus can prevent or reduce pain from that second area. This is thought to be the mechanism for the paradigm of counter-irritation.

Several neurotransmitters and neuromodulators are involved in descending pain-inhibitory pathways. The main contenders are the opioids, 5-hydroxytryptamine and noradrenaline.

The pathways and chemicals for the facilitary modulation are even less well understood, but the mechanisms are well accepted.

*2.2.6 **Neuromodulation and psychology***

Psychological processes of emotions, thought and behaviour involve networks rather than distinct centres. Some of these processes are sophisticated and others fundamental in evolutionary terms, and their interaction with pain processing is complex. As indicated above, many of the areas involved in relevant psychological processes interact with the PAG, and this is therefore one mechanism by which they may influence pain transmission at the spinal level.

At the spinal level, visceral nociception is dependent upon a system of intensity coding. In the viscera, primary afferents for normal sensations and nociception appear to be the same small fibres arriving at the spinal cord, and the difference between a normal and a noxious message depends upon the number of afferent signals transmitted to the dorsal horn (as opposed to the dual fibre, A/C fibre for nociception and A for light touch, seen in somatic tissue). It is thought that psychological modulation can alter intensity coding more easily than dual-fibre coding, and hence, pain perception.

Various psychological processes affect pain neuromodulation at the higher level. Inhibiting or facilitating both the nociceptive signal reaching the consciousness and appraisal and interpretation of that signal; they will also modulate the response to the nociceptive message and hence the pain experience. Further, descending pathways represent cognitive, emotional and behavioural states at spinal and peripheral levels.

Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (FMRI) has indicated that the psychological modulation of visceral pain probably involves multiple pathways. For instance, mood and attentional focus probably act through different areas of the brain when involved in reducing pain (21).

This psychological modulation may act to reduce nociception within a rapid time frame but may also result in long-term vulnerability to chronic visceral pain, through long-term potentiation. This involvement of higher centre learning may be at both a conscious and subconscious level, and is clearly significant in the supratentorial neuroprocessing of nociception and pain. Long-term potentiation (22) may also occur at any level within the nervous system, so that pathways for specific or combinations of stimuli may become established, resulting in an individual being vulnerable to perceiving sensations that would not normally be experienced as painful.

Stress is an intrinsic or extrinsic force that threatens the homeostasis of an organism and can be physical or psychological. Stress induces an adaptive response that involves the endocrine, autonomic nervous and immune systems, and these systems in turn appear to have feedback loops. Stress can modify the nervous system by long-term potentiation so that there are long-term actual or potential changes within these systems. It is this process that may be responsible for the effect of early life and significant adverse life events associated with chronic pain syndromes. It is through all of these factors that stress can play a significant role in nociceptive and pain neuromodulation, with the increased experience of pain as well as the more general effect that stress may have on coping resources (23). Significant adverse life events include, rape, sexual abuse, sexual trauma and sexual threat, such as during internment or torture. These events may produce long-term physical changes in the CNS (biological response), as well as having an effect on a patient's, emotional, cognitive, behavioural and sexual responses (24-26).

*2.2.7 **Autonomic nervous system***

The role of the autonomic nervous system in chronic pain is poorly understood, however, there is good evidence that damaged afferent fibres may develop a sensitivity to sympathetic stimulation, both at the site of injury and more centrally, particularly the dorsal horns. In visceral pain, the efferent output of the CNS may be

influenced by central changes (again, those changes may be throughout the neuraxis), and such modification of the efferent message may produce significant end-organ dysfunction. These functional abnormalities can have a significant effect on quality of life (QoL) and must be managed as appropriate.

2.2.8 ***Endocrine system***

The endocrine system is involved in visceral function. Significant life events, and in particular, early life events may alter the development of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and the chemicals released. Increased vulnerability to stress may occur following such events and is thought to be partly due to increased corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) gene expression. Upregulation of CRH has been implicated in several pain states such as rectal hypersensitivity to rectal distension. This model suggests an action of CRH on mast cells.

A range of stress-related illnesses have been suggested, with IBS and BPS being examples. There is also evidence accumulating to suggest that the sex hormones also modulate both nociception and pain perception.

2.2.9 ***Genetics and chronic pain***

An individual who has had one chronic pain syndrome is more likely to develop another. Family clusters of pain conditions are also observed and animals can be bred that are more prone to an apparent chronic pain state. A whole range of genetic variations have been described that may explain the pain in certain cases; many of these are to do with subtle changes in transmitters and their receptors. However, the picture is more complicated in that development, environment and social factors also influence the situation.

2.3 Clinical paradigms and CPP

2.3.1 ***Referred pain***

Referred pain is frequently observed and its identification is important for diagnosis and treatment. Referral is usually somatic to somatic, or visceral to somatic. However, there is no reason why pain cannot also be perceived within the area of an organ with the nociceptive signal having arisen from a somatic area. Referred pain may occur as a result of several mechanisms but the main theory is one of convergence-projection. In the convergence-projection theory, as an example, afferent fibres from the viscera and the somatic site of referred pain converge onto the same second order projection neurons. The higher centres receiving messages from these projection neurons are unable to separate the two possible sites for the origin of the nociceptive signal (9,13,27).

2.3.2 ***Referred pain to somatic tissues with hyperalgesia in the somatic tissues***

Hyperalgesia refers to an increased sensitivity to normally painful stimuli. In patients that have passed a renal stone, somatic muscle hyperalgesia is frequently present, even a year after expulsion of the stone. Pain to non-painful stimuli (allodynia) may also be present in certain individuals. Somatic tissue hyperaesthesia is associated with urinary and bilary colic, IBS, endometriosis, dysmenorrhoea, and recurrent bladder infection. Vulvar pain syndromes are examples of cutaneous allodynia that, in certain cases, may be associated with visceral pain syndromes, such as BPS. Referred pain with hyperalgesia is thought to be due to central sensitisation of the converging viscero-somatic neurones. Central sensitisation also stimulates efferent activity that could explain the trophic changes that are often found in the somatic tissues.

2.3.3 ***Muscles and pelvic pain***

In the urogenital pain syndromes muscle tenderness and trigger points may be implicated as a source of pain. Central mechanisms are of great importance in the pathogenesis of this muscle hyperalgesia. The muscles involved may be a part of the spinal, abdominal or pelvic complex of muscles. It is not unknown for adjacent muscles of the lower limbs and the thorax to become involved. Pain may be localised to the trigger points but is more often associated with classical referral patterns. As well as trigger points, inflammation of the attachments to the bones (enthesitis) and of the bursa (bursitis) may be found (28-30).

Certain postures affect the different muscles in different ways, and as a consequence, may exacerbate or reduce the pain. Stress has been implicated as both an initiator of pelvic myalgia and as a maintenance factor. As a result, negative sexual encounters may also have a precipitating effect (23).

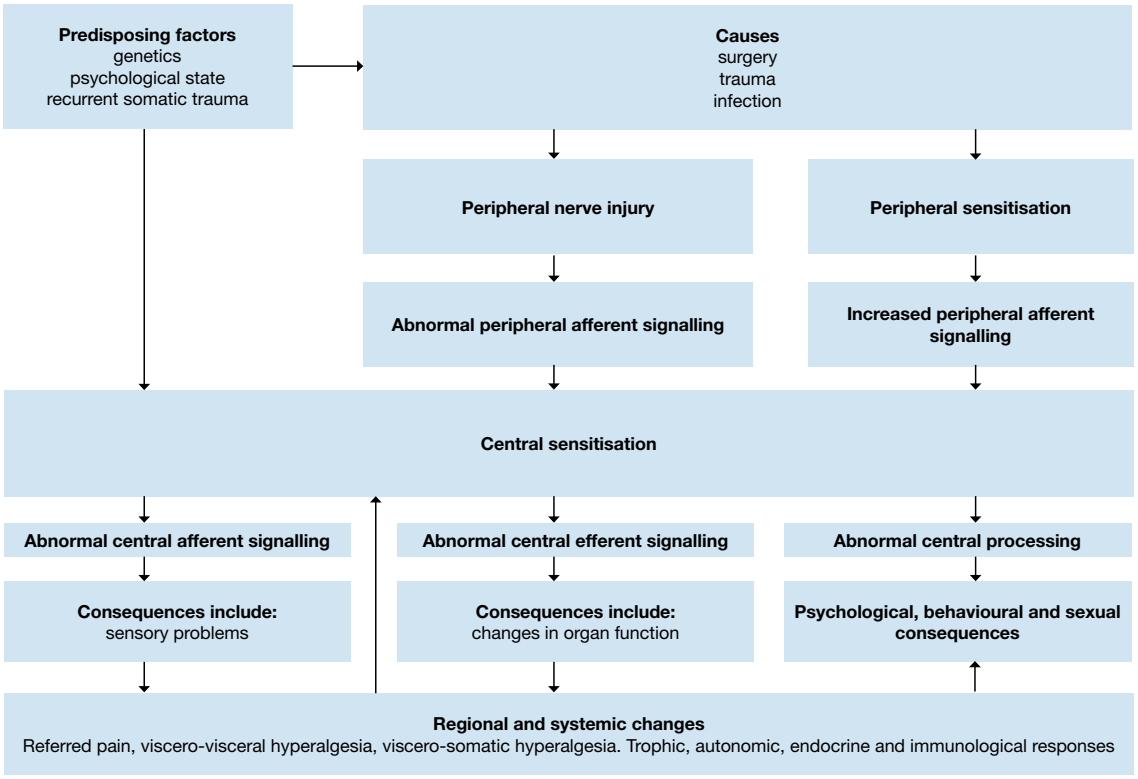
2.3.4 ***Visceral hyperalgesia***

The increased perception of stimuli in the viscera is known as visceral hyperalgesia, and the underlying mechanisms are thought to be responsible for IBS, BPS and dysmenorrhoea. The mechanisms involved are often acute afferent input (e.g., due to infection) followed by long-term central sensitisation.

2.3.5 *Viscero-visceral hyperalgesia*

Viscero-visceral hyperalgesia is thought to be due to two or more organs with converging sensory projections and central sensitisation. For instance, overlap of bladder and uterine afferents or uterine and colon afferents.

Figure 1: Predisposing factors, cause, central en peripheral mechanisms



2.4 Definitions of CPP terminology

2.4.1 *Classification*

Much debate over the classification of CPP has occurred, is ongoing and will continue in the future. Classification involves three aspects of defining a condition, phenotyping, terminology and taxonomy.

2.4.2 *Phenotyping*

Phenotyping is describing the condition. For example, chronic bladder pain may be associated with the presence of Hunner's ulcers and glomerulation on cystoscopy, whereas other bladder pain conditions may have a normal appearance on cystoscopy. These are two different phenotypes. The same is true for IBS, which may be subdivided into that with primarily diarrhoea or that with constipation. Phenotyping is based upon mechanisms when they are known (e.g., infection, ischaemic, autoimmune, or neuropathic). In the absence of well-defined mechanisms, describing the condition by its symptoms, signs and, where possible, by investigations, has been demonstrated to have clinical and research validity in many situations. When pain is the main symptom and pain as a disease process is considered the cause, the condition is often referred to as a pain syndrome - a well-defined collection of symptoms, signs and investigation results associated with pain mechanisms and pain perception as the primary complaint.

2.4.3 *Terminology*

Terminology is the words that are used within classification, both to name the phenotype and within the definition of the phenotype. Examples of names for phenotypes associated with the bladder include interstitial cystitis, painful bladder syndrome or BPS. The EAU, the International Society for the study of BPS (ESSIC), the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) and several other groups now prefer the term bladder pain syndrome. In the pain syndromes, the role of the nervous system in generating the sensations is thought to be pivotal, but the term syndrome is also holistic and takes into account the emotional, cognitive, behavioural, sexual and functional consequences of the chronic pain.

When defining the phenotype, the terminology used in that definition must also be clear and if necessary defined. One of the most important guiding principles is that spurious terminology should be avoided. Terms that end in "itis" in particular should be avoided unless infection and or inflammation is proven and considered

to be the cause of the pain (7). It must be appreciated that end-organ inflammation may be secondary and neurogenic in origin and not a primary cause of the pain.

*2.4.4 **Taxonomy***

Taxonomy places the phenotypes into a relationship hierarchy. The EAU approach subdivides CPP into conditions that are pain syndromes and those that are non-pain syndromes. The latter are conditions that have well-recognised pathology (e.g., infection, neuropathy or inflammation), whereas the former syndromes do not and pain as a disease process is the mechanism. Other terms for the non-pain syndromes include "classical conditions", "well-defined conditions" and "confusable diseases". Although the EAU approach deals primarily with urological conditions, this approach to classification can be applied to all conditions associated with pain perception within the pelvis; the classification has been developed to include non-urological pain and was accepted by the IASP for publication in January 2012.

2.5 Classification of CPP syndromes

*2.5.1 **Importance of classification***

It should be obvious to all that a condition cannot be treated unless it is defined. However, the reasons for classifying CPP go far beyond that.

Clues to the mechanism

As a result of systematic phenotypic and taxonomic classification, similarities and differences between conditions become clear. Drawing comparisons between the phenotypes of different disorders allows one to compare disorders such as bladder and bowel pain syndromes, thus facilitating research and treatment.

Guidelines for best treatment options

As conditions become better defined, more specific treatment approaches can be adopted. In particular, there will be a move away from treatments based upon spurious terms (e.g., antibiotics and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the "-itis" conditions). Generic treatments aimed at groups of conditions will be more commonplace and based upon research evidence.

Research platform

Only by clearly defining the phenotype being investigated can research be valued or applied in the clinical situation.

Patient needs

A diagnosis, or name, for a set of symptoms can provide patients with a sense of being understood, as well as hope for relief. It may therefore help in acceptance of the problem as chronic, resolution of unfounded fears about its implications (if not life-threatening), and engagement in therapeutic endeavours, as well as in self-management. However, it may also lead to accessing information of variable quality associated with the diagnosis or name, and the possibility of generating new concerns about long term consequences or about appropriateness of treatment.

Remuneration

In certain countries, having a defined condition is necessary for the patient to receive treatment for their condition.

*2.5.2 **IASP definitions***

Subdividing pain syndromes

There is much debate on the subdivisions of the pain syndromes within the hierarchical taxonomy. The EAU has led the way in this regard and the guiding principles are as follows (31):

1. The pain syndromes are defined by a process of exclusion. In particular, there should be no evidence of infection or inflammation. Investigations by end-organ specialists should thus be aimed at obtaining a differential diagnosis; repeated, unnecessary investigations are detrimental in the management of chronic pain syndromes.
2. A subdivision phenotype should only be used if there is adequate evidence to support its use. For instance, in non-specific, poorly localised pelvic pain without obvious pathology, only the term chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS) should be used. If the pain can be localised to an organ, then a more specific term, such as rectal pain syndrome, may be used. If the pain is localised to multiple organs, then the syndrome is a regional pain syndrome and the term CPPS should once again be considered. As well as defining the patient by a specific end-organ phenotype, there are several other more general descriptors that need to be considered. These are primarily psychological (e.g., cognitive

or emotional), sexual, behavioural and functional. Psychological and behavioural factors are well established to relate to QoL issues and prognosis. In North America a research programme, the MAPP program (Multi-disciplinary Approach to the study of chronic Pelvic Pain research) has been devised to investigate the importance of these factors and looks at all types of pelvic pain irrespective of the end organ where the pain is perceived. It also looks at systemic disorder associations, such as the co-ocurrence of fibromyalgia, facial pain, or autoimmune disorders.

3. In 2004 this expert panel introduced the concept of managing the polysymptomatic nature of CPP, since then others have developed their own schemes, such as Nickel's UPOINT (32), modified by Magri et al. (33). In the light of these and other publications, the symptom classification table has been updated (Table 5).

The debate in relation to subdividing the pain syndromes remains ongoing. As more information is collected suggesting that the CNS is involved, and indeed may be the main cause of many CPP conditions (e.g., bladder, genitalia, colorectal or myofascial), there is a general tendency to move away from end-organ nomenclature. Whether this is appropriate, only time and good research will tell. To enable such research, it is essential to have a framework of classification within which to work. Any hierarchical taxonomy must be flexible to allow change.

In table 5 the classification has been set up according to the axis system used by IASP. The panel used this table from their first edition and found it very useful for clinical purpose.

Table 5: EAU classification of chronic urogenital pain syndromes

Axis I Region		Axis II System	Axis III End organ as pain sundrome as identified from Hx, Ex and Ix		Axis IV Referral characteristics	Axis V Temporal characteristics	Axis VI Character	Axis VII Associated symptoms	Axis VIII Psychological symptoms
Chronic pelvic pain	Specific disease associated pelvic pain OR Pelvic pain syndrome	Urological	Prostate		Suprapubic Inguinal Urethral Penile/clitoral Perineal Rectal Back Buttocks Thighs	ONSET Acute Chronic ONGOING Sporadic Cyclical Continuous TIME Filling Emptying Immediate post Late post TRIGGER Provoked Spontaneous	Aching Burning Stabbing Electric	UROLOGICAL Frequency Nocturia Hesitance Dysfunctional flow Urge Incontinence GYNAECOLOGICAL Menstrual Menopause GASTROINTESTINAL Constipation Diarrhoea Bloatedness Urge Incontinence NEUROLOGICAL Dysaesthesia Hyperaesthesia Allodynia Hyperalegesie SEXUOLOGICAL Satisfaction Female dyspareunia Sexual avoidance Erectile dysfunction Medication MUSCLE Function impairment Fasciculation CUTANEOUS Trophic changes Sensory changes	ANXIETY About pain or putative cause of pain Catastrofic thinking about pain DEPRESSION Attributed to pain or impact of pain Attributed to other causes Unattributed PTSD SYMPTOMS Re-experiencing Avoidance
				Bladder					
				Scrotal Testicular Epididymal					
				Penile Urethral					
				Post-vasectomy					
		Gynaecological	Vulvar Vestibular Clitoral						
			Endometriosis associated						
			CPPS with cyclical exacerbations						
			Dysmenorrhoea						
		Gastrointestinal	Irritable blowel						
			Chronic anal						
			Intermittent chronic anal						
		Peripheral nervers	Pudendal pain syndrome						
		Sexological	Dyspareunia						
			Pelvic pain with sexual dysfunction						
		Psychological	Any pelvic organ						
		Musculo-skeletal	Pelvic floor muscle Abdominal muscle Spinal						
			Coccyx						

2.5.3 ***Pain syndromes***

The original EAU classification (31) was inspired by the IASP classification (19) and much work around what has become known as “pain as a disease” and its associated psychological, behavioural, sexual and functional correlates. After 10 years work developing the initial ideas an updated version was accepted by IASP Council for publication January 2012.

2.5.3.1 Definition of chronic pelvic pain (CPP)

Chronic pelvic pain is chronic or persistent pain perceived* in structures related to the pelvis of either men or women. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioral, sexual and emotional consequences as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel, pelvic floor or gynaecological dysfunction.

[*Perceived indicates that the patient and clinician, to the best of their ability from the history, examination and investigations (where appropriate) has localised the pain as being perceived in the specified anatomical pelvic area].

In the case of documented nociceptive pain that becomes chronic/persistent through time, pain must have been continuous or recurrent for at least 6 months. That is, it can be cyclical over a 6-month period, such as the cyclical pain of dysmenorrhoea. Six months is arbitrary, however, it was chosen because 3 months was not considered long enough if we include cyclical pain conditions. If non-acute and central sensitisation pain mechanisms are well documented, then the pain may be regarded as chronic, irrespective of the time period.

Cyclical pain is included in the classification and hence dysmenorrhoea needs to be considered as a chronic pain syndrome if it is persistent and associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences.

Chronic pelvic pain may be subdivided into conditions with well-defined classical pathology (such as infection or cancer) and those with no obvious pathology. For the purpose of this classification, the term “specific disease-associated pelvic pain” is proposed for the former, and “chronic pelvic pain syndrome” for the latter. The following classification only deals with CPPS.

2.5.3.2 Definition of chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS)

Chronic pelvic pain syndrome is the occurrence of CPP when there is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology that may account for the pain. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. CPPS is a subdivision of CPP.

2.5.3.2.1 Further subdivision of CPPS

Pain perception in CPPS may be focused within a single organ, more than one pelvic organ and even associated with systemic symptoms such as chronic fatigue syndrome, fibromyalgia or Sjögren’s syndrome. When the pain is localised to a single organ, some specialists may wish to consider using an end-organ term such as BPS (Table 6). The use of such a phrase with the terminology “syndrome” indicates that, although peripheral mechanisms may exist, CNS neuromodulation may be more important and systemic associations may occur. When the pain is localised to more than one organ site, the term CPPS should be used. Many, including some of the authors of this text, never subdivide by anatomy and prefer to refer to patients with pain perceived within the pelvis and no specific disease process as suffering from CPPS, subdivided by psychological and functional symptoms.

2.5.3.2.2 Psychological considerations for classification

Many CPPSs are associated with a range of concurrent negative psychological, behavioural and sexual consequences that must be described and assessed. Examples that need to be considered are depression, anxiety, fears about pain or its implications, unhelpful coping strategies, and distress in relationships. Both anxiety and depression can be significant important concomitant symptoms that are relevant to pain, disability and poor QoL. Catastrophic interpretation of pain has been shown to be a particularly salient variable, predicting patients’ report of pain, disability, and poor QoL, over and above psychosocial variables such as depression or behavioural factors such as self-reported sexual dysfunction. It is suggested that CPPS sometimes creates a sense of helplessness that can be reported as overwhelming, and may be associated with the refractory nature of the patients’ symptoms. It is important to note that many of these biopsychosocial consequences are common to other persistent pain problems but may show varying degrees of salience for any one individual suffering from CPPS. In all patients with CPPS, these consequences must be clearly described as part of the phenotype (where the term phenotype is used to indicate the observable

characteristics of the syndrome).

2.5.3.2.3 Functional considerations for classification

Functional disorders, for the purpose of this document, are pathologies that have arisen secondary to changes in the control mechanisms of an organ or system. That is they are disorders characterised by disturbance of function. As an example, slow colonic transit is a functional disorder of the bowel - the normal function of the bowel is not occurring as a result of changes in the mechanisms that produce defecation, and hence the bowel control is abnormal. The term is not used in the sense of a psychiatric functional disorder. Many CPPSs are associated with functional abnormalities at a local and even systemic level. These also need to be defined as a part of the phenotype.

Functional pain disorders may not express significant pathology in the organs that appear responsible for the primary symptoms, but they are associated with substantial neurobiological, physiological and sometimes anatomical changes in the CNS.

2.5.3.2.4 Multisystem subdivision

It is recognised that the end organ where the pain is perceived may not be the centre of pain generation. This classification is based upon the most effective accepted method of classifying and identifying different pain syndromes, that is, by site of presentation. It is argued that keeping the end organ name in the classification is inappropriate because, in most cases, there are multisystemic causes and effects, with the result that symptoms are perceived in several areas. This is an area in which discussions are ongoing, and despite there being strong arguments for both keeping and dispensing with end-organ classification, the authors have not taken the umbrella approach of referring to all pain perceived in the pelvis as CPPS.

2.5.3.2.5 Dyspareunia

Dyspareunia is defined as pain perceived within the pelvis associated with penetrative sex. It tells us nothing about the mechanism and may be applied to women and men. It is usually applied to penile penetration, but is often associated with pain during insertion of any object. It may apply to anal as well as vaginal intercourse. It is classically subdivided into superficial and deep.

2.5.3.2.6 Perineal pain syndrome

Perineal pain syndrome is a neuropathic-type pain that is perceived in the distribution area of the pudendal nerve, and may be associated with symptoms and signs of rectal, urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven obvious pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual and emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction.

Perineal pain syndrome should be distinguished from pudendal neuralgia, which is a specific disease associated with pelvic pain that is caused by nerve damage.

Table 6: Urologicalpain syndromes

Urological Pain Syndromes - Chapter 3	
Prostate pain syndrome	PPS is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain (which is convincingly reproduced by prostate palpation). There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. PPS is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. The term “chronic prostatitis” continues to be equated with that of PPS. In the author’s and others’ opinion, this is an inappropriate term, although it is recognised that it has a long history of use. The National Institutes of Health (NIH) consensus (34) includes infection (types I and II), which the authors feel should not be considered under PPS, but as specific disease-associated pelvic pain. The term prostadynia has also been used in the past but is no longer recommended by the expert panel. Please note that some of the authors of the IASP document disagree with this term and suggest that CPPS of the male is used instead of PPS, which has been agreed by the majority.
Bladder pain syndrome	BPS is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent pain perceived in the urinary bladder region, accompanied by at least one other symptom, such as pain worsening with bladder filling and day-time and/or night-time urinary frequency. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. BPS is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. BPS is believed to represent a heterogeneous spectrum of disorders. There may be specific types of inflammation as a feature in subsets of patients. Localisation of the pain can be difficult by examination, and consequently, another localising symptom is required. Cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsy may be indicated to define phenotypes. Recently, ESSIC has suggested a standardised scheme of subclassifications (11) to acknowledge differences and make it easier to compare various studies. Other terms that have been used include “interstitial cystitis”, “painful bladder syndrome”, and “PBS/IC” or “BPS/IC”; these terms are no longer recommended.
Scrotal pain syndrome	Scrotal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain localised within the organs of the scrotum, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Scrotal pain syndrome is a generic term and is used when the site of the pain is not clearly testicular or epididymal. The pain is not in the skin of the scrotum as such, but perceived within its contents, in a similar way to idiopathic chest pain.
Testicular pain syndrome	Testicular pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the testes, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Testicular pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Previous terms have included orchitis, orchialgia and orchiodynia. These terms are no longer recommended.
Epididymal pain syndrome	Epididymal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the epididymis, and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Epididymal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.

Penile pain syndrome	Penile pain syndrome is the occurrence of pain within the penis that is not primarily in the urethra, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Penile pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.
Urethral pain syndrome	Urethral pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the urethra, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Urethral pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Urethral pain syndrome may occur in men and women.
Postvasectomy scrotal pain syndrome	Postvasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is a scrotal pain syndrome that follows vasectomy. Postvasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Postvasectomy pain may be as frequent as 1% following vasectomy, possibly more frequent. The mechanisms are poorly understood and it is for that reason considered a special form of scrotal pain syndrome.
Gynaecological Pain Syndromes: external genitalia - Chapter 4	
Vulvar pain syndrome	Vulvar pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic vulvar pain. There is no proven infection or other local obvious pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Although pain perceived in the vulva was subsumed under sexual disorders in the DSM-IV-R manual for classifying psychiatric disorders, there is no scientific basis for this classification, and pain perceived in the vulva is best understood as a pain problem that usually has psychological consequences. There is no evidence for its classification as a psychiatric disorder. The International Society for the Study of Vulvovaginal Disease (ISSVD) has used the term vulvodynia, where we use the term vulvar pain syndrome. According to the ISSVD, vulvodynia is vulvar pain that is not accounted for by any physical findings. The ISSVD has defined vulvodynia as “vulvar discomfort, most often described as burning pain, occurring in the absence of relevant visible findings or a specific, clinically identifiable, neurologic disorder”. If physical findings are present, the patient is said to have vulvar pain due to a specified cause. The ISSVD has subdivided vulvodynia based on pain location and temporal characteristics of the pain (e.g., provoked or unprovoked). The following definitions are based on that approach.
Generalised vulvar pain syndrome	Generalised vulvar pain syndrome refers to a vulvar pain syndrome in which the pain/burning cannot be consistently and precisely localised by point-pressure mapping via probing with a cotton-tipped applicator or similar instrument. Rather, the pain is diffuse and affects all parts of the vulva. The vulvar vestibule (the part that lies between the labia minora into which the urethral meatus and vaginal introitus open) may be involved but the discomfort is not limited to the vestibule. This pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences. Previous terms have included “dysesthetic vulvodynia” and “essential vulvodynia”, but are no longer recommended.
Localised vulvar pain syndrome	Localised vulvar pain syndrome refers to pain that can be consistently and precisely localised by point-pressure mapping to one or more portions of the vulva. Clinically, the pain usually occurs as a result of provocation (touch, pressure or friction). Localised vulvar pain syndrome can be subdivided into vestibular pain syndrome and clitoral pain syndrome.
Vestibular pain syndrome	Refers to pain that can be localised by point-pressure mapping to the vestibule or is well perceived in the area of the vestibule.
Clitoral pain syndrome	Refers to pain that can be localised by point-pressure mapping to the clitoris or is well perceived in the area of the clitoris. Gynaecological system: internal pelvic pain syndromes - Chapter 4

Endometriosis-associated pain syndrome	Endometriosis-associated pain syndrome is chronic or recurrent pelvic pain in patients with laparoscopically confirmed endometriosis, and the term is used when the symptoms persist despite adequate endometriosis treatment. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Many patients have pain above and beyond the endometriotic lesions; this term is used to cover that group of patients. Endometriosis may be an incidental finding, is not always painful, and the degree of disease seen laparoscopically does not correlate with severity of symptoms. As with other patients, they often have more than one end organ involved. It has been suggested that this phenotype should be removed from the classification because the endometriosis may be irrelevant.
CPPS with cyclical exacerbations	CPPS with cyclical exacerbations covers the non-gynaecological organ pain that frequently shows cyclical exacerbations (e.g., IBS or BPS) as well as pain similar to that associated with endometriosis/adenomyosis but where no pathology is identified. This condition is different from dysmenorrhoea, in which pain is only present with menstruation.
Dysmenorrhoea	Dysmenorrhoea is pain with menstruation that is not associated with well-defined pathology. Dysmenorrhoea needs to be considered as a chronic pain syndrome if it is persistent and associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences.
Musculoskeletal System - Chapter 9	
Pelvic floor muscle pain syndrome	Pelvic floor muscle pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pelvic floor pain. There is no proven well-defined local pathology. It is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. This syndrome may be associated with overactivity of or trigger points within the pelvic floor muscles. Trigger points may also be found in several muscles, such as the abdominal, thigh and paraspinal muscles and even those not directly related to the pelvis.
Coccyx pain syndrome	Coccyx pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the region of the coccyx, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Coccyx pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. The term “coccydynia” was used but is no longer recommended.
Gastrointestinal Pelvic Pain Syndromes - Chapter 5	
Irritable bowel syndrome	IBS is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the bowel, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Bowel dysfunction is frequent. IBS is often associated with worry and preoccupation about bowel function, and negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract or gynaecological dysfunction. The above classification is based upon the Rome III Criteria (35): 3 months of continuous or recurring symptoms of abdominal pain or irritation that may be relieved with a bowel movement, may be coupled with a change in frequency, or may be related to a change in stool consistency. Two or more of the following are present at least 25% of the time: change in stool frequency (> 3 bowel movements per day or < 3 per week); noticeable difference in stool form (hard, loose, watery or poorly formed stools); passage of mucus in stools; bloating or feeling of abdominal distension; or altered stool passage (e.g., sensation of incomplete evacuation, straining, or urgency). Extra- intestinal symptoms include: nausea, fatigue, full sensation after even a small meal, and vomiting.

Chronic anal pain syndrome	Chronic anal pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the anus, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Chronic anal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction.
Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome	Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome refers to severe, brief, episodic pain that seems to arise in the rectum or anal canal and occurs at irregular intervals. This is unrelated to the need to or the process of defecation. It may be considered a subgroup of the chronic anal pain syndromes. It was previously known as "proctalgia fugax"; this term is no longer recommended.

2.6 Conclusions and recommendations: CPP and mechanisms

Conclusions	**LE**
CPPS mechanisms are well defined and involve mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain.	2
The mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain result in increased perception of afferent stimuli which may produce abnormal sensations as well as pain.	1
End organ function can also be altered by the mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain, so that symptoms of function can also occur.	1
CPP is associated with a high impact on QoL.	1
The diagnosis of a CPPS as a pain syndrome is essential as it encourages a holistic approach to management with multispecialty and multidisciplinary care.	2

Recommendations	**GR**
All of those involved in the management of CPP should have an understanding and training in CPPS pain mechanisms.	A
The early assessment of patients should involve not only investigations aimed at specific disease-associated pelvic pain but also to assess functional, emotional, behavioural, sexual and other quality of life issues, such as effect on work and socialisation.*	A
CPPS patients should be managed in a multispecialty and multidisciplinary environment with consideration of all their symptoms.	A
Future classification should involve consideration of all three recommendations above.	A

CPP = chronic pelvic pain; CPPS = chronic pelvic pain syndrome.
* Instruments for assessment *see* Chapter 8.

2.7 An algorithm for CPP diagnosis and treatment

The algorithm for diagnosing and treating CPP (Figure 2) has been developed to guide a physician through the process from diagnosis to management. A physician should follow the lines by answering the appropriate questions with yes or no. By doing this the clinician will end up at a box that refers to the chapter in this guideline that contains all the information needed.

Because CPP is pain perceived in structures related to the pelvis, it is necessary to approach diagnosis of a patient with CPP as a chronic pain patient. Confining the diagnosis to a specific organ may overlook multisystem functional abnormalities requiring individual treatment and general aspects of pain in planning investigation and treatment. This idea is easily recognised in the algorithm where the division in specific disease associated pain is made on one hand and pelvic pain syndrome on the other.

The algorithm also illustrates that we advocate early involvement of a multidisciplinary pain team. In practice, this should mean that well-known diseases, e.g. 'true' cystitis and endometriosis, will be diagnosed and treated early. If treating such conditions does not reduce symptoms, or such well-defined conditions are not found, then further investigation may be necessary, depending on where the pain is localised.

Every chapter of this guideline shows specific algorithms that assist the clinician in decision making. It should be noted, however, that over-investigation may be as harmful as not performing appropriate investigations. The EAU algorithms introduce the concept of the 'minimum investigations' required to exclude a well-defined condition.

Figure 2: an algorithm for diagnosing and managing CPP

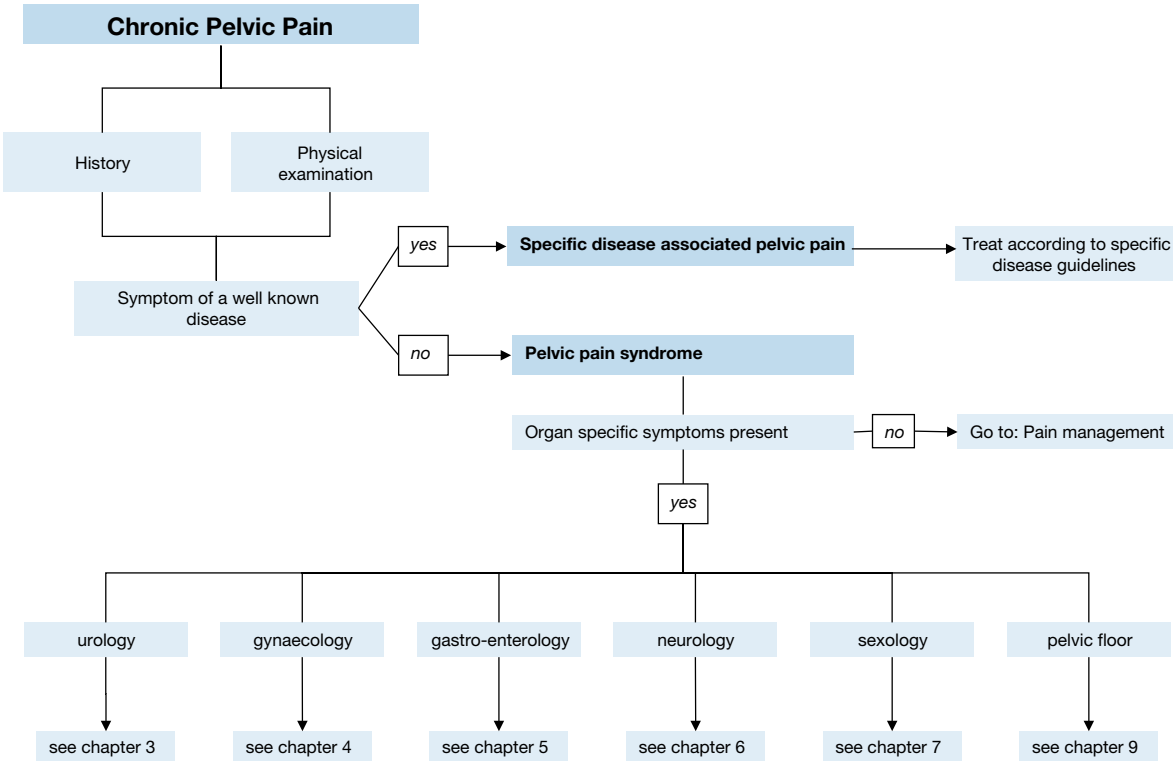


Figure 3: an algorithm for pain management

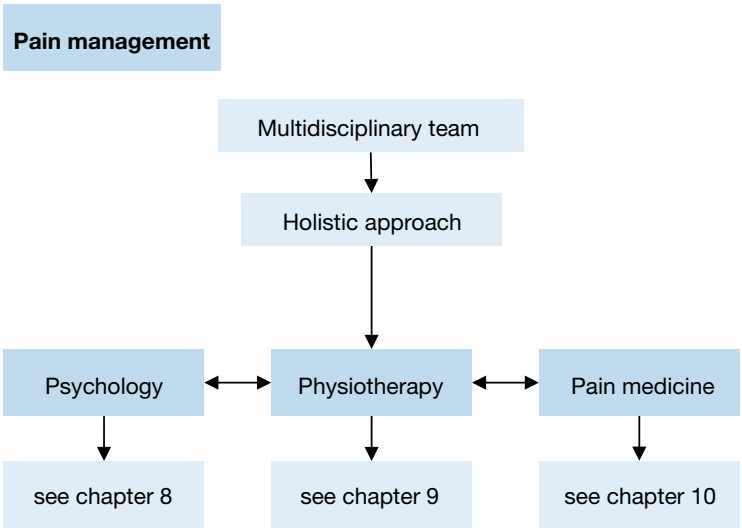


Figure 4: phenotyping and assessment algorithm for CPP

Phenotyping	Assessment
Urology	Urinary flow, micturition diary, cystoscopy, ultrasound, uroflowmetry
Psychology	History of negative experiences, important loss, coping mechanism, depression
Organ specific	Ask for gynaecological, gastro-intestinal, ano-rectal, sexological complaints Gynaecological examination, rectal examination
Infection	Semen culture and urine culture, vaginal swab, stool culture
Neurological	Ask for neurological complaints (sensory loss, dysaesthesia). Neurological testing during physical examination: sensory problems, sacral reflexes and muscular function
Tender muscle	Palpation of the pelvic floor muscles, the abdominal muscles and the gluteal muscles

2.8 References

1. Linley JE, Rose K, Ooi L, et al. Understanding inflammatory pain: ion channels contributing to acute and chronic nociception. Pflugers Arch. 2010 Apr;459(5):657-69 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20162302
2. McMahon SB, Dmitrieva N, Koltzenburg M, et al. Visceral pain. Br J Anaesth 75(2):132-144. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7577247
3. Bergeron S, Khalifé S, Glazer HI, et al. Surgical and behavioral treatments for vestibulodynia: two-and-one-half year follow-up and predictors of outcome. Obstet Gynecol. 2008 Jan;111(1):159-66. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18165405
4. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Wang Y, et al. Catastrophizing and pain-contingent rest predict patient adjustment in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Pain. 2006 Oct;7(10): 697-708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17018330
5. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Fitzgerald MP, et al. Sexual functioning, catastrophizing, depression, and pain, as predictors of quality of life in women with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2009 May;73(5):987-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394494
6. Nickel JC, Tripp DA, Pontari M, et al. Psychosocial phenotyping in women with interstitial cystitis/ painful bladder syndrome: a case control study. J Urol. 2010 Jan;183(1):167-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19913812
7. Abrams PA, Baranowski AP, Berger RE, et al. A new classification is needed for pelvic pain syndromes--are existing terminologies of spurious diagnostic authority bad for patients? J Urol. 2006 Jun;175(6):1989-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697782
8. Baranowski AP, Abrams P, Berger RE, et al. Urogenital pain--time to accept a new approach to phenotyping and, as a consequence, management. Eur Urol. 2008 Jan;53(1):33-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17961909
9. Baranowski AP, Abrams P, et al. (2008). Urogenital Pain in Clinical Practice. New York, Informa Healthcare.
10. Hanno P, Lin A, Nordling J, et al. Bladder Pain Syndrome Committee of the International Consultation on Incontinence. Neurourol Urodyn 29(1):191-198. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20025029
11. van de Merwe JP, Nordling J, Bouchelouche P, et al. Diagnostic criteria, classification, and nomenclature for painful bladder syndrome/interstitial cystitis: an ESSIC proposal. Eur Urol. 2008 Jan;53(1):60-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17900797

12. Wesselmann U, Baranowski AP, Börjesson M, et al. EMERGING THERAPIES AND NOVEL APPROACHES TO VISCERAL PAIN. Drug Discov Today Ther Strateg. 2009 Fall;6(3):89-95 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21243067
13. Giamberardino MA, Costantini R, Affaitati G, et al. Viscero-visceral hyperalgesia: characterization in different clinical models. Pain. Pain. 2010 Nov;151(2):307-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20638177
14. Pezet S, McMahon SB. Neurotrophins: mediators and modulators of pain. Annu Rev Neurosci. 2006;29:507-38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16776595
15. Cervero F, Laird JM. Understanding the signaling and transmission of visceral nociceptive events. J Neurobiol. 2004 Oct;61(1):45-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15362152
16. Petersen M, Segon von Banchet G, Heppelman B, et al. Nerve growth factor regulates the expression of bradykinin binding sites on adult sensory neurons via the neurotrophin receptor p75.Neuroscience. 1998 Mar;83(1):161-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9466406
17. McMahon SB, Jones NG. Plasticity of pain signaling: role of neurotrophic factors exemplified by acid-induced pain. J Neurobiol. 2004 Oct;61(1):72-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15362154
18. Nazif O, Teichman JM, Gebhart GF, et al. Neural upregulation in interstitial cystitis. Urology. 2007 Apr;69(4 Suppl):24-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17462476
19. Merskey H, Bogduk N. Classification of Chronic Pain. Seattle, IASP press.
20. Melzack R, Coderre TJ, Katz J, et al. Central neuroplasticity and pathological pain. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2001 Mar;933:157-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12000018
21. Fulbright RK, Troche CJ, Skudlarski P, et al. Functional MR imaging of regional brain activation associated with the affective experience of pain. AJR Am J Roentgenol. 2001 Nov;177(5):1205-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11641204
22. Rygh LJ, Tjølsen A, Hole K, et al. Cellular memory in spinal nociceptive circuitry. Scand J Psychol. 2002 Apr;43(2):153-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12004953
23. Savidge CJ, Slade P. Psychological aspects of chronic pelvic pain. J Psychosom Res. 1997 May;42(5):433-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9194016
24. Raphael KG, Widom CS, Lange G. Childhood victimization and pain in adulthood: a prospective investigation. Pain. 2001 May;92(1-2):283-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323150
25. Raphael KG. Childhood abuse and pain in adulthood: more than a modest relationship? Clin J Pain. 2005 Sep-Oct;21(5):371-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093741
26. Anda RF, Felitti VJ, Bremner JD, et al. The enduring effects of abuse and related adverse experiences in childhood. A convergence of evidence from neurobiology and epidemiology. Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci. 2006 Apr;256(3):174-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16311898
27. Vecchiet L, Vecchiet J, Giamberardino MA. Referred Muscle Pain: Clinical and Pathophysiologic Aspects. Curr Rev Pain. 1999;3(6):489-498. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10998708
28. Slocumb JC. Neurological factors in chronic pelvic pain: trigger points and the abdominal pelvic pain syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1984 Jul 1;149(5):536-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6234807
29. Taylor DC, Meyers WC, Moylan JA, et al. Abdominal musculature abnormalities as a cause of groin pain in athletes. Inguinal hernias and pubalgia. Am J Sports Med. 1991 May-Jun;19(3):239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1831010
30. Akermark C, Johansson C. Tenotomy of the adductor longus tendon in the treatment of chronic groin pain in athletes. Am J Sports Med. 1992 Nov-Dec;20(6):640-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1456357
31. Fall M, Baranowski AP, Fowler CJ, et al. EAU guidelines on chronic pelvic pain. Eur Urol. 2004 Dec;46(6):681-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15548433

32. Shoskes DA, Nickel JC, Dolinga R, et al. Clinical phenotyping of patients with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome and correlation with symptom severity.Urology. 2009 Mar;73(3):538-42; discussion 542-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19118880
33. Magri V, Wagenlehner F, Perletti G, et al. Use of the UPOINT chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome classification in European patient cohorts: sexual function domain improves correlations.J Urol. 2010 Dec;184(6):2339-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20952019
34. Krieger JN, Nyberg L Jr., Nickel JC. NIH consensus definition and classification of prostatitis. JAMA. 1999 Jul 21;282(3):236-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10422990
35. Longstreth GF, Thompson WG, Chey WD, et al. Functional bowel disorders. Gastroenterology. 2006 Apr;130(5):1480-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16678561

3. UROLOGICAL ASPECTS OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

3.1 Prostate pain syndrome (PPS)

*3.1.1 **Introduction***

Chronic pain in the region of the prostate has been linked to the term “prostatitis” in the past, although there is a proven bacterial infection in only 10% of the cases (1). The remaining 90% should be classified as PPS, based on the fact that there is no proven infection or other obvious pathology. If CPP cannot be clearly ascribed to the prostate or another organ of the pelvis, the condition is defined more generally as CPPS, as outlined in Chapter 2.

*3.1.2 **Definition***

Prostate pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain in the region of the prostate over at least 3 out of the past 6 months, which is convincingly reproduced by prostate palpation. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. PPS is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences (2), as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction (3,4). According to the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) classification, this correlates to CP/CPPS (Cat. III). Laboratory diagnosis goes along with sterile specimen cultures and either significant, or insignificant, white blood cell counts in prostate-specific specimens (i.e. semen, expressed prostatic secretions and urine collected after prostate massage) (5). At present, there are no clinically relevant diagnostic or therapeutic consequences arising from differentiating inflammatory from non-inflammatory PPS (according to NIH definition), therefore, they are considered here as one entity.

*3.1.3 **Pathogenesis***

Pain is the main symptom in PPS. As a common feature of chronic pain syndromes, no single aetiological explanation has been found. One explanation (6) is that the condition probably occurs in susceptible men exposed to one or more initiating factors, which may be single, repetitive or continuous. Several of these potential initiating factors have been proposed, including infectious, genetic, anatomical, neuromuscular, endocrine, immune (including autoimmune), or psychological mechanisms. These factors may then lead to a peripheral self-perpetuating immunological inflammatory state and/or neurogenic injury, creating acute and then chronic pain. Based on the peripheral and the CNS, sensitisation involving neuroplasticity may lead to a centralised neuropathic pain state (see Chapter 2) (6). This could also explain why tissue damage is not usually found in PPS. There is growing evidence for a neuropathic origin and association with CNS changes of pain in PPS. As outlined earlier, PPS patients have been shown to report higher visual analogue scale scores than controls to short bursts of noxious stimuli to the perineum but not to the anterior thigh (7). This implies an altered sensation in the perineum compared with healthy controls similar to other chronic pain syndromes.

*3.1.4 **Epidemiology***

There is only limited information on the true prevalence of PPS in the population. As a result of significant overlap of symptoms with other conditions (e.g. benign prostate syndrome and BPS), purely symptom-based case definitions may not reflect the true prevalence of PPS (8,9). Prostatitis was diagnosed in 8% of all visits

to urologists and 1% of all primary care physicians annually in the USA (10). In a systematic review of the literature, the population-based prevalence of prostatitis symptoms was found to be 8.2% (range: 2.2-9.7%) (11). In two recent studies not included in this review, prevalence was found to be 2.7% (4) and 2% (12) . A prospective Italian survey of visits to a urologist for a physician-assigned diagnosis of prostatitis revealed a prevalence of 12.8%. Among these, ~40% had clinical features of PPS (13). In a self-reported, population-based, cross sectional study of Finnish men aged 20-59 years, the overall lifetime prevalence of prostatitis was as high as 14.2% (14). The risk of prostatitis increased with age (men aged 50-59 years had a 3.1-fold greater risk than those aged 20-39 years). Usual clinical treatment in North American populations has been studied in two studies of sufficient quality. In the follow-up of a cohort of men with PPS-like symptoms based on the NIH Prostatitis Symptom Index (NIH-CPSI) pain and voiding domains, 63% still suffered from persistent symptoms, in contrast to 3% of controls with newly developing symptoms (15). Patients with more severe symptoms were more likely to report symptoms 1 year later. In addition, symptoms substantially improved for up to 6 months follow-up, but then remained unchanged (16).

3.1.5 ***Diagnosis***

Prostate pain syndrome is a symptomatic diagnosis, which is diagnosed from a history of pain perceived in the region of the prostate (convincingly reproduced by prostate palpation), and absence of other lower urinary tract pathology, for a minimum of 3 out of the past 6 months. This implies that specific disease-associated pelvic pain caused by bacterial infection, urogenital cancer, urinary tract disease, urethral stricture, and neurogenic disease of the bladder must be ruled out. A thorough history is an important first step in the evaluation of PPS. It should include type of pain and localisation. Pain is often reported in other pelvic areas outside the prostate such as perineum, rectum, penis, testicles and abdomen (17). In addition, associated lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS), sexual function, psychological, social and economic factors should be addressed. Determination of the severity of disease, its progression and treatment response can be assessed only by means of a validated symptom-scoring instrument. QoL should also be measured because it can be as poor as in acute myocardial infarction, unstable angina pectoris or Crohn's disease (19,20). In a study by Tripp et al. (2) more pain, pain-contingent rest, and urinary symptoms were associated with greater disability (also measured by self-report), and pain was predicted by depression and by catastrophising (helplessness subscale).

Demographic and social support variables were not associated with either pain or adjustment. Reliable, valid indexes of symptoms and QoL are the NIH-CPSI (17) and the International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS) (18). These subjective outcome measures are recommended for the basic evaluation and therapeutic monitoring of patients in urological practice and have been translated and validated for many European languages.

There is no single "gold standard" diagnostic test for PPS, therefore, procedures are on the one hand directed towards identification and exclusion of specific diseases associated with pelvic pain, and on the other hand may be used for phenotypic description. Physical examination including digital rectal examination should be carried out. Muscle tenderness and trigger points in the pelvic floor may be palpated. Measurement of resting urine by ultrasound should exclude incomplete voiding. Prostate-specific antigen testing does not help to diagnose PPS but can exclude prostate cancer in patients at risk.

Laboratory diagnosis has been classically based on the four-glass test for bacterial localisation (21) Besides sterile pre-massage urine (voided bladder urine-2), PPS shows < 10,000 cfu of uropathogenic bacteria in expressed prostatic secretions and insignificant numbers of leukocytes or bacterial growth in ejaculates. However, this test is too complex for use by practising urologists. Diagnostic efficiency may be enhanced cost-effectively by a simple screening procedure, that is, the two-glass test or pre-post-massage test (PPMT) (22). In an extensive analysis of both tests, PPMT was able to indicate the correct diagnosis in > 96% of patients (23). Overall, these tests help only a little in the diagnosis of PPS, because 8% of patients with suggested PPS have been found to have positive prostatic localisation cultures, similar to the percentage of asymptomatic (24).

In PPS, urodynamic studies should be considered in patients with significant LUTS. They may demonstrate decreased urinary flow rates, incomplete relaxation of the bladder neck and prostatic urethra, as well as abnormally high urethral closure pressure at rest. The external urethral sphincter may be dysfunctional (non-relaxing) during voiding (25). As for non-PPS cases, cystoscopy may be considered for further evaluation of micturition symptoms to exclude bladder outlet or urethral pathology, or if haematuria or infection has been found to exclude intravesical pathology.

A general algorithm for assessment and treatment of PPS is shown in Figure 5.

3.1.6 *Conclusions and recommendations: assessment/diagnosis PPS*

Conclusions	LE
PPS is associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.	2b
PPS has no known single aetiology.	3
Pain in PPS involves mechanisms of neuroplasticity and neuropathic pain.	2a
PPS has a high impact on QoL.	2b
Depression and catastrophic thinking are associated with more pain and poorer adjustment.	3
The prevalence of PPS-like symptoms is high in population-based studies (> 2%).	2b
There is significant overlap of symptoms with other conditions.	2b
Reliable instruments assessing symptom severity as well as phenotypic differences exist.	2b

Recommendations	GR
Specific diseases with similar symptoms must be excluded. It is therefore recommended to adapt diagnostic procedures to the patient and to aim at identifying them.	A
After primary exclusion of specific diseases, patients with symptoms according to the above definition should be diagnosed with prostate pain syndrome.	A
A validated symptom and quality of life scoring instrument, such as the NIH-CPSI, should be considered for initial assessment as well as for follow-up.	B
It is recommended to assess prostate pain syndrome associated negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as symptoms of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunctions.	B

3.1.7 *Treatment*

There is a large discrepancy in the treatment effects reported in case series and controlled trials that results from a large placebo effect or publication bias. As a result of the multifactorial origin of PPS, one reason for treatment failure in some large randomised placebo-controlled trials may be the heterogeneity of the patient population. Thus, one strategy for improving treatment effects may be stratification of patient phenotypes. A prospective series of phenotypically directed treatment for PPS has shown significant improvement of symptoms and QoL (26). Monotherapeutic strategies for the treatment of PPS may fail (27), therefore, most patients require multimodal treatment aimed at the main symptoms, and taking comorbidity into account. In the past 10 years, results from RCTs have led to advances in standard and novel treatment options.

3.1.7.1 *Alpha-blockers*

Positive results from RCTs of alpha-blockers, i.e. terazosin (28,29), alfuzosin (30) doxazosin (31,32) and tamsulosin (33) have led to widespread use of alpha-antagonists in the treatment of PPS in recent years. The effects of alpha-antagonists may include improved outflow performance by blocking the alpha-receptors of the bladder neck and prostate and by direct action on alpha1A/1D receptors in the CNS (33). In contrast, an earlier meta-analysis of nine trials (n = 734) did not show a beneficial effect on pain (34). Moreover, in accordance with an earlier negative report on tamsulosin (35), one adequately powered large placebo-controlled randomised trial of 12 weeks treatment with alfuzosin failed to show any significant difference in the outcome measures, with the exception of the score for ejaculation of the Male Sexual Health Questionnaire scores (showing significant improvement in the alfuzosin group compared to the placebo group, P= 0.04) (36). Regarding safety, this large trial reported similar adverse event rates in the treatment and placebo groups. The most recent in-depth systematic review and network meta-analysis of alpha-blockers (37) has shown significant improvement in symptoms, with standardised mean differences in total symptom, pain, voiding, and QoL scores of -1.7 [95% confidence interval (CI): -1.8 to -0.3], -1.1 (95% CI: -1.8 to -0.3), 1.4 (95% CI: -2.3 to -0.5), and -1.0 (95% CI: -1.8 to 0.2), respectively. In addition, they had a higher rate of favourable response compared to placebo (pooled relative risk of 1.6 (95% CI: 1.1-2.3). However, this finding was associated with publication bias for smaller studies. Overall, alpha-blockers seem to have moderate but significant beneficial effects. This probably is not the case for long-standing PPS patients (36). Future studies should show if longer duration of therapy or some sort of phenotypically directed (e.g. patients with PPS and relevant voiding dysfunction) treatment strategies will improve treatment outcomes.

3.1.7.2 Antibiotic therapy

Empirical antibiotic therapy is widely used because some patients have improved with antimicrobial therapy. Patients responding to antibiotics should be maintained on medication for 4-6 weeks or even longer. Unfortunately, culture, leukocyte and antibody status of prostate-specific specimens does not predict antibiotic response in patients with PPS (38), and prostate biopsy culture findings do not differ from those of healthy controls (39). The only randomised placebo-controlled trials of sufficient quality have been done for oral antibiotic treatment with ciprofloxacin (6 weeks) (35), levofloxacin (6 weeks) (40), and tetracycline hydrochloride (12 weeks) (41). These have been analysed in a recently published meta-analysis (37). Although direct meta-analysis has not shown significant differences in outcome measures, network meta-analysis has suggested significant effects in decreasing total symptom scores (-9.8; 95% CI: -15.1 to -4.6), pain scores (-4.4; 95% CI: -7.0 to -1.9), voiding scores (-2.8; 95% CI: -4.1 to -1.6), and QoL scores (-1.9; 95% CI: -3.6 to -0.2) compared with placebo. Overall, antibiotic treatment of PPS is based only on weak evidence. Combination therapy of antibiotics with alpha-blockers has shown even better outcomes in network meta-analysis. However, sample sizes of the studies were relatively small and treatment effects were only modest and most of the time below clinical significance. It may be speculated that patients profiting from treatment have had some unrecognised uropathogens. If antibiotics are used, other therapeutic options should be offered after one unsuccessful course of a quinolone or tetracycline antibiotic over 6 weeks.

3.1.7.3 Anti-inflammatory drugs

For non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, only two RCTs have been published. The first was for rofecoxib, which is no longer on the market; statistical significance over placebo was achieved in some of the outcome measures (42). In the second trial with celecoxib, pain subscore, QoL subscore, and total NIH-CPSI score were in favour of the treatment arm versus placebo, but effects were limited to the duration of therapy (43). A leukotriene antagonist, zafirlukast, has been evaluated in a small randomised placebo-controlled study of patients treated with concomitant doxycycline (44). This study was negative but had a lack of power. For corticosteroids, no significant benefits were shown in a low-power, placebo-controlled, randomised pilot study of a short course of oral prednisolone (45). In a recent meta-analysis, two studies of NSAIDs (40,43) and one with prednisolone (45) were pooled. Anti-inflammatory drugs were 80% more likely to have a favourable response than placebo (total n = 190, RR: 1.8; 95% CI: 1.2-2.6). Overall, a moderate treatment effect has been shown for anti-inflammatory drugs, but larger studies should be done for final confirmation, and long-term side effects have to be taken into account.

3.1.7.4 Opioids

Opioids produce modest pain relief in some patients with refractory PPS, although there are limited data on the long-term efficacy of opioids in non-cancer pain. Opioid treatment carries the risks of side effects, reduced QoL, addiction, opioid tolerance and opioid-induced hyperalgesia (46). Urologists should use opioids for PPS only in collaboration with pain clinics and with other treatments.

3.1.7.5 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors

After a few small pilot studies with 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors supported the view that finasteride may improve voiding and pain, the first placebo-controlled randomised trial published in a peer-reviewed journal did not support this, but the study did lack power (47). In another RCT, finasteride provided better amelioration of symptoms compared to saw palmetto over a 1-year period, but lacked a placebo-control arm (48). A 6-month placebo-controlled study showed a non-significant tendency towards better outcome in favour of finasteride, possibly because of a lack of statistical power (49). Based on these data, 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors cannot be recommended for use in PPS.

3.1.7.6 Allopurinol

An RCT of allopurinol was conducted based on the hypothesis that urine reflux intoprostatic ducts causes prostatic inflammation via high concentrations of purine and pyrimidine base-containing metabolites in prostatic secretions (50). However, positive results have not been considered sufficient for recommendation by reviewers of the Cochrane Database (51). In addition, a recent randomised placebo-controlled trial of allopurinol as an adjunct to ofloxacin has not shown any benefit (52).

3.1.7.7 Phytotherapy

Positive effects of phytotherapy have been documented. Although a validated symptom score was not used, an RCT of a pollen extract (Prostat/Poltit) showed significant symptom improvement (53). An adequately powered randomised placebo-controlled study of Cernilton, another pollen extract, showed clinically significant symptom improvement over a 12-week period in inflammatory PPS patients (NIH Cat. IIIA) (54). The effect was mainly based on a significant effect on pain. Quercetin, a polyphenolic bioflavonoid with documented

antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, improved NIH-CPSI scores significantly in a small RCT (55). In contrast, treatment with saw palmetto, most commonly used for benign prostatic hyperplasia, did not improve symptoms over a 1-year period (47). In a systematic review and meta-analysis, patients treated with phytotherapy were found to have significantly lower pain scores than those treated with placebo (37). In addition, overall response rate in network analysis was in favour of phytotherapy (RR: 1.6; 95% CI: 1.1-1.6).

3.1.7.8 Pentosan polysulphate

High-dose oral pentosan polysulphate (3 300 mg/day), as for BPS, is able to improve clinical global assessment and QoL significantly over placebo in men with PPS, suggesting a possible common aetiology (56).

3.1.7.9 Muscle relaxants

Muscle relaxants (diazepam, baclofen) are claimed to be helpful in sphincter dysfunction or pelvic floor/perineal muscle spasm, but there have been only a few prospective clinical trials to support these claims. In a recent RCT, a triple combination of a muscle relaxant (tiocolchicoside), an anti-inflammatory drug (ibuprofen) and an alpha-blocker (doxazosin) was effective in treatment-naïve patients, but not superior to an alpha-blocker alone (32).

3.1.7.10 Pregabalin

Pregabalin is an antiepileptic drug that has been approved for use in chronic postherpetic neuralgia, fibromyalgia, and diabetic neuropathy. In an adequately powered randomised placebo-controlled study, a 6-week course of pregabalin (n = 218) compared to placebo (n = 106) did not result in a significant reduction of NIH-CPSI total score by at least 6 points (57).

3.1.7.11 Botulinum toxin A (BTX-A)

Botulinum toxin A (BTX-A) may have pain-alleviating effects through non-neuromuscular action on afferent nociceptive pathways. Local treatment with periurethral injection of BTX-A (200 U) has been tested in a small pilot study with improvement in pain and changes in urethral pressure profile (58). A small randomised placebo-controlled study of perineal skeletal muscle injection (100 U) has been published recently (59). Some effect was found in the global response assessment and the NIH-CPSI pain subdomain score. However, patient number was too low (13 in the BTX-A group and 16 in the placebo group), and follow-up was too short to draw definitive conclusions.

3.1.7.12 Physical treatments

- *Electromagnetic therapy*. In a small, sham-controlled, double-blind study, 4 weeks electromagnetic therapy showed a significant, sustained effect over a 1-year period (60).
- *Microwave thermotherapy.* Significant symptomatic improvement has been reported from heat therapy, for example, transrectal and transurethral thermotherapy (61,62), but there was no sham-control.
- *Extracorporeal shock wave therapy.* A recent sham-controlled double-blind study of four times weekly perineal extracorporeal shock wave therapy (n = 30) showed significant improvement in pain, QoL, and voiding compared to the control group (n = 30) over 12 weeks (63). Confirmatory studies are awaited because of an absent placebo-effect, which is very unusual in PPS trials.
- *Electroacupuncture.* In a small three-arm randomised trial, electroacupuncture was superior to sham treatment and advice and exercise alone (64). In a recent prospective case series of 6 weeks of weekly electroacupuncture of 97 patients with PPS, 92% showed significant improvement in total NIH-CPSI score. Based on these studies, no definitive conclusion can be drawn.
- *Posterior tibial nerve stimulation.* One sham-controlled medium-sized study (n = 89) demonstrated significant improvement in total NIH-CPSI score and visual analogue scale for pain (65).
- *Myofascial physical therapy.* A randomised feasibility trial of myofascial physical therapy including PPS (n = 21) and patients with BPS showed a clinical benefit compared to global therapeutic massage (66). In the PPS group alone, there was no difference in the effect between the two treatment arms.

3.1.7.13 Surgical management

Surgical management, including transurethral incision of the bladder neck, radical transurethral resection of the prostate, or in particular, radical prostatectomy, has a very limited role and requires an additional, specific indication. In addition, the treatment effect of transurethral needle ablation of the prostate (TUNA) was only comparable to sham treatment in two small randomised trials (67,68).

3.1.7.14 Psychological treatment

It is of note that QoL decreases as symptoms increase. Given prediction of QoL by psychological problems

(depression and catastrophising in particular), this means that psychological status should also be targeted in treatment, and the development of a psychologically focused treatment for patients refractory to drug treatment has been noted by the authors of the summary findings from the NIH Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network studies (69). There are no RCTs of psychological treatment for men with CPP, but Tripp et al. (70) have completed a feasibility trial, which represents the only known account of psychological treatment. Their 8-h intervention improved pain, catastrophising, and QoL, but not depression or some urinary symptoms. Details concerning appropriate treatment content and delivery are contained in Chapter 8.

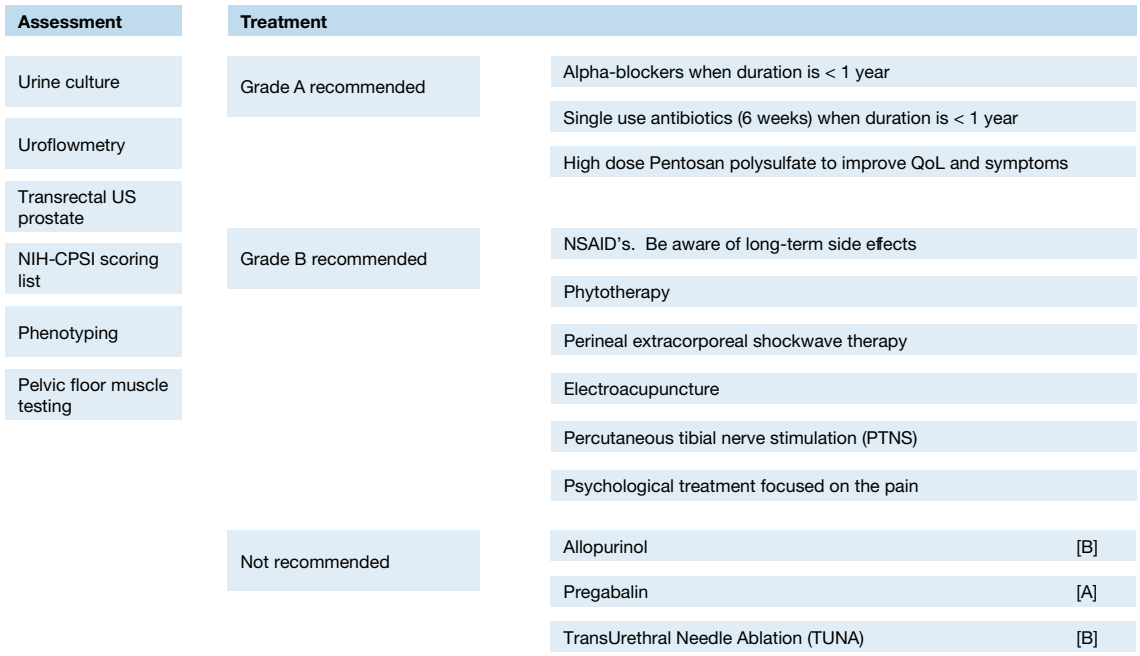
*3.1.8 **Conclusions and recommendations: treatment of PPS***

Conclusions	**LE**
Monotherapeutic treatment regimens in PPS may fail.	3
Phenotypically directed treatment may improve treatment success.	3
Alpha-blockers have moderate treatment effect regarding total, pain, voiding, and QoL scores in PPS.	1a
Antimicrobial therapy has a moderate effect on total, pain, voiding, and QoL scores in PPS.	1a
NSAIDs have moderate overall treatment effects on PPS.	1a
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of steroids in PPS.	2b
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of opioids in PPS.	4
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of 5-alpha-reductase inhibitors in PPS.	2b
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of allopurinol in PPS.	2b
Phytotherapy has some beneficial effect on pain and overall favourable treatment response in PPS.	1a
Pentosan polysulphate improves global assessment and QoL score in PPS.	1b
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of muscle relaxants in PPS.	2b
Pregabalin is not effective for the treatment of PPS.	1b
BTX-A injection into the pelvic floor may have a modest effect in PPS.	2b
There are only limited data on the effectiveness of electromagnetic therapy in PPS.	2b
There are only limited data on the effectiveness of microwave thermotherapy in PPS.	3
Perineal extracorporeal shock wave therapy probably is effective for the treatment of PPS.	1b
There are limited data on the effectiveness of electroacupuncture for the treatment of PPS.	2b
Posterior tibial nerve stimulation is probably effective for the treatment of PPS.	1b
There are insufficient data on the effectiveness of myofascial physical therapy for the treatment of PPS.	2b
There are limited data on lack of effectiveness of TUNA of the prostate for PPS.	2b
There are insufficient data supporting the use of other surgical treatments, such as transurethral incision of the bladder neck, transurethral resection of the prostate, or radical prostatectomy in patients with PPS.	3
Cognitive behavioural therapy designed for PPS may improve pain, and quality of life.	3

Recommendations	GR
Consider multimodal and phenotypically directed treatment options for PPS.	B
Alpha-blockers are recommended for patients with a duration of PPS < 1 year.	A
Single use of antimicrobial therapy (quinolones or tetracyclines) is recommended in treatment-naïve patients over a minimum of 6 weeks with a duration of PPS < 1 year.	A
NSAIDs are recommended for use in PPS, but long-term side effects have to be considered.	B
Allopurinol is not recommended for use in PPS.	B
Phytotherapy might be used in patients with PPS.	B
Consider high-dose pentosan polysulphate to improve symptoms and quality of life in PPS.	A
Pregabalin is not recommended for use in PPS.	A
Perineal extracorporeal shock wave therapy might be considered for the treatment of PPS.	B
Electroacupuncture might be considered for the treatment of PPS.	B
Posterior tibial nerve stimulation might be considered for the treatment of PPS.	B
TUNA of the prostate is not recommended for the treatment of PPS.	B
For PPS with significant psychological distress, psychological treatment focussed on PPS should be attempted.	B

PPS = prostate pain syndrome; TUNA = transurethral needle ablation.

Figure 5: assessment and treatment algorithm for PPS



3.1.9 ***References***

1. de la Rosette JJ, Hubregtse MR, Meuleman EJ, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of 409 patients with prostatitis syndromes. Urology 1993 Apr;41(4):301-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8470312
2. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Wang Y, et al. Catastrophizing and pain-contingent rest predict patient adjustment in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome.J Pain. 2006 Oct;7(10):697-708. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17018330
3. Walz J, Perotte P, Hutterer G, et al. Impact of chronic prostatitis-like symptoms on the quality of life in a large group of men. BJU Int. 2007 Dec;100(6):1307-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17941922
4. Marszalek M, Wehrberger C, Hochreiter W, et al. Symptoms suggestive of chronic pelvic pain syndrome in an urban population: prevalence and associations with lower urinary tract symptoms and erectile function. J Urol. 2007 May;177(5):1815-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437827

5. Nickel JC. Prostatitis: myths and realities. Urology. 1998 Mar;51(3):362-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9510337
6. Nickel JC, Baranowski AP, Pontari M, et al. Management of men diagnosed with chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome who have failed traditional management. Rev Urol. 2007;9(2) :63-72 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17592539
7. Yang CC, Lee JC, Kromm BG, et al. Pain sensitization in male chronic pelvic pain syndrome: why are symptoms so difficult to treat? J Urol. 2003 Sep;170(3):823-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913708
8. Barry MJ, Link CL, McNaughton-Collins MF, et al. Overlap of different urological symptom complexes in a racially and ethnically diverse, community-based population of men and women.BJU Int. 2008 Jan;101(1):45-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17868419
9. Roberts RO, Jacobson DJ, Girman CJ, et al. Low agreement between previous physician diagnosed prostatitis and national institutes of health chronic prostatitis symptom index pain measures.J Urol. 2004 Jan;171(1):279-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665894
10. Collins MM, Stafford RS, O'Leary MP, et al. How common is prostatitis? A national survey of physician visits.J Urol. 1998 Apr;159(4):1224-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9507840
11. Krieger JN, Lee SW, Jeon J, et al. Epidemiology of prostatitis. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2008 Feb;31 Suppl 1:S85-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18164907
12. Ferris JA, Pitts MK, Richters J, et al. National prevalence of urogenital pain and prostatitis-like symptoms in Australian men using the National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Symptoms Index.BJU Int. 2010 Feb;105(3):373-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19549116
13. Rizzo M, Marchetti F, Travaglini A, et al. Prevalence, diagnosis and treatment of prostatitis in Italy: A prospective urology outpatient practice study. BJU Int. 2003 Dec;92(9):955-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14632854
14. Mehik A, Hellström P, Lukkarinen O, et al. Epidemiology of prostatitis in Finnish men: a population-based cross-sectional study.BJU Int. 2000 Sep;86(4):443-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10971269
15. Nickel JC, Siemens DR, Nickel KR, et al. The patient with chronic epididymitis: Characterization of an enigmatic syndrome. J Urol. 2002 Apr;167(4):1701-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912391
16. Turner JUA, Ciol MA, Von Korff M, et al. Prognosis of patients with new prostatitis/pelvic pain syndrome episodes.J Urol. 2004 Aug;172(2):538-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247724
17. Litwin MS, McNaughton-Collins M, Fowler FJ Jr, et al. The National Institutes of Health chronic prostatitis symptom index: development and validation of a new outcome measure. Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):369-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411041
18. Mebust WK, Bosch R, Donovan J, et al. Symptom evaluation, quality of life and sexuality. In: Cockett ATK, Khoury S, Aso Y, et al. *Proceedings of the 2ndConsultation on Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia* (BPH), Paris. Channel Islands: Scientific Communication International Ltd, 1993, pp. 131-138.
19. Wenninger K, Heiman JR, Rothman I, et al. Sickness impact of chronic nonbacterial prostatitis and its correlates. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):965-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583619
20. McNaughton Collins M, Pontari MA, O'Leary MP, et al; Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. Quality of life is impaired in men with chronic prostatitis: the Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. J Gen Intern Med 2001 Oct;16(10):656-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11679032
21. Meares EM, Stamey TA. Bacteriologic localization patterns in bacterial prostatitis and urethritis. Invest Urol 1968 Mar;5(5):492-518. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4870505
22. Nickel JC. The Pre and Post Massage Test (PPMT): a simple screen for prostatitis. Tech Urol 1997 Spring;3(1):38-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9170224

23. Nickel JC, Shoskes D, Wang Y, et al. How does the pre-massage and postmassage 2-glass test compare to the Meares-Stamey 4-glass test in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome? J Urol 2006 Jul;176(1):119-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16753385
24. Nickel JC, Pontari M, Moon T, et al; Rofecoxib Prostatitis Investigator Team. A randomized, placebo controlled, multicenter study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of rofecoxib in the treatment of chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. J Urol 2003 Apr;169(4):1401-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629372
25. Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, Doggweiler R, et al. Neurourological insights into the etiology of genitourinary pain in men. J Urol. 1999 Mar;161(3):903-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022711
26. Shoskes DA, Nickel JC, Kattan MW. Phenotypically Directed Multimodal Therapy for Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: A Prospective Study Using UPOINT. Urology. 2010 Jun;75(6):1249-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20363491
27. Nickel JC, Narayan P, McKay J, et al. Treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome with tamsulosin: a randomized double blind trial. J Urol 2004 Apr;171(4):1594-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017228
28. Cheah PY, Liong ML, Yuen KH, et al. Terazosin therapy for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):592-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544314
29. Gül O, Eroglu M, Ozok U. Use of terazosine in patients with chronic pelvic pain syndrome and evaluation by prostatitis symptom score index. Int Urol Nephrol. 2001;32(3):433-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11583367
30. Mehik A, Alas P, Nickel JC, et al. Alfuzosin treatment for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, pilot study. Urology 2003 Sep;62(3):425-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12946740
31. Evliyaoglu Y, Burgut R. Lower urinary tract symptoms, pain and quality of life assessment in chronic non-bacterial prostatitis patients treated with alpha-blocking agent doxazosin; versus placebo. Int Urol Nephrol 2002;34(3):351-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12899226
32. Tugcu V, Tasci AI, Fazlioglu, Gurbuz G, Ozbek E, Sahin S, Kurtulus F, Cek M. A placebo-controlled comparison of the efficiency of triple- and monotherapy in category III B chronic pelvic pain syndrome (PPS). Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):1113-7; discussion 1118.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17084960
33. Nickel JC, Downey J, Pontari MA, et al. A randomized placebo-controlled multicentre study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of finasteride for male chronic pelvic pain syndrome (category IIIA chronic nonbacterial prostatitis). BJU Int 2004 May;93(7):991-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15142149
34. Yang G, Wei Q, Li H, et al. The effect of alpha-adrenergic antagonists in chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Androl 2006 Nov-Dec;27(6):847-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16870951
35. Alexander RB, Propert KJ, Schaeffer AJ, et al. Ciprofloxacin or tamsulosin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind trial. Ann Intern Med. 2004 Oct 19;141(8):581-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15492337
36. Nickel JC, Krieger JN, McNaughton-Collins M, et al; Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. Alfuzosin and symptoms of chronic prostatitis-chronic pelvic pain syndrome. N Engl J Med 2008 Dec 18;359(25):2663-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.gov/pubmed/19092152
37. Anothaisintawee, AttiaJ, Nickel JC, et al. Management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: A systematic review and network meta-analysis. JAMA. 2011 Jan 5;305(1):78-86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21205969
38. Nickel JC, Downey J, Johnston B, et al; Canadian Prostatitis Research Group. Predictors of patient response to antibiotic therapy for the chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective multicenter clinical trial. J Urol 2001 May;165(5):1539-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11342913

39. Lee JC, Muller CH, Rothman I, et al. Prostate biopsy culture findings of men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome do not differ from those of healthy controls. J Urol 2003 Feb;169(2):584-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544312
40. Nickel JC, Pontari M, Moon T, et al; Rofecoxib Prostatitis Investigator Team. A randomized, placebo controlled, multicenter study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of rofecoxib in the treatment of chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. J Urol 2003 Apr;169(4):1401-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629372
41. Zhou Z, Hong L, Shen X, et al. Detection of Nanobacteria Infection in Type III Prostatitis. Urology. 2008 Jun;71(6):1091-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18538692
42. Nickel JC, Downey J, Clark J, et al. Levofloxacin for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome in men: A randomized placebo-controlled multicenter trial. Urology. 2003 Oct;62(4):614-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14550427
43. Zhao WP, Zhang ZG, Li XD, et al. Celecoxib reduces symptoms in men with difficult chronic pelvic pain syndrome (Category IIIA). Braz J Med Biol Res. 2009 Oct;42(10):963-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19787151
44. Goldmeier D, Madden P, McKenna M, et al. Treatment of category III A prostatitis with zafirlukast: A randomized controlled feasibility study. Int J STD AIDS. 2005 Mar;16(3):196-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15829018
45. Bates SM, Hill VA, Anderson JB, et al. A prospective, randomized, double-blind trial to evaluate the role of a short reducing course of oral corticosteroid therapy in the treatment of chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome. BJU Int 2007 Feb;99(2):355-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17313424
46. Nickel JC. Opioids for chronic prostatitis and interstitial cystitis: lessons learned from the 11th World Congress on Pain. Urology 2006 Oct;68(4):697-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17070334
47. Leskinen M, Lukkarinen O, Marttila T. Effects of finasteride in patients with inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, pilot study. Urology 1999 Mar;53(3):502-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10096374
48. Kaplan SA, Volpe MA, Te AE. A prospective, 1-year trial using saw palmetto versus finasteride in the treatment of category III prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Urol 2004 Jan;171:284-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665895
49. Nickel JC, Downey J, Ardern D, et al. Failure of a monotherapy strategy for difficult chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome.
50. Persson BE, Ronquist G, Ekblom M. Ameliorative effect of allopurinol on nonbacterial prostatitis: a parallel double-blind controlled study. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):961-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583618
51. McNaughton CO, Wilt T. Allopurinol for chronic prostatitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(4):CD001041. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12519549
52. Ziaee AM, Akhavizadegan H, Karbakhsh M. Effect of allopurinol in chronic nonbacterial prostatitis: a double blind randomized clinical trial. Int Braz J Urol 2006 Mar-Apr;32(2):181-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16650295
53. Elist J. Effects of pollen extract preparation Prostat/Poltit on lower urinary tract symptoms in patients with chronic nonbacterial prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Urology 2006 Jan;67(1):60-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16413333
54. Wagenlehner FME, Schneider H, Ludwig M, et al. A Pollen Extract (Cernilton) in Patients with Inflammatory Chronic Prostatitis-Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: A Multicentre, Randomised, Prospective, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Phase 3 Study. Eur Urol. 2009 Sep;56(3):544-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19524353
55. Shoskes DA, Zeitlin SI, Shahed A, et al. Quercetin in men with category III chronic prostatitis: A preliminary prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Urology 1999 Dec;54(6):960-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604689
56. Nickel JC, Forrest JB, Tomera K, et al. Pentosan polysulfate sodium therapy for men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a multicenter, randomized, placebo controlled study. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1252-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758763

57. Pontari MA, Krieger JN, Litwin MS, et al. Pregabalin for the treatment of men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: A randomized controlled trial. Arch Intern Med. 2010 Sep 27;170(17):1586-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20876412
58. Zermann D, Ishigooka M, Schubert J. Perisphincteric injection of botulinum toxin type A. A treatment option for patients with chronic prostatic pain? Eur Urol. 2000 Oct;38(4):393-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025376
59. Gottsch HP, Yang CC, Berger RE. A pilot study of botulinum toxin A for male chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2010 Nov 9. Epub ahead of print. PubMed PMID:21062115. Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2011 Feb;45(1):72-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21062115
60. Rowe E, Smith C, Laverick L, et al. A prospective, randomized, placebo controlled, double-blind study of pelvic electromagnetic therapy for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain syndrome with 1 year of followup. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2044-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879822
61. Montorsi F, Guazzoni G, Bergamaschi F, et al. Is there role for transrectal microwave hyperthermia of the prostate in the treatment of abacterial prostatitis and prostatodynia? Prostate 1993;22(2):139-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8456052
62. Kastner C, Hochreiter W, Huidobro C, et al. Cooled transurethral microwave thermotherapy for intractable chronic prostatitis-results of a pilot study after 1 year. Urology 2004 Dec;64(6):1149-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15596188
63. Zimmermann R, Cumpanas A. Miclea F, et al. Extracorporeal Shock Wave Therapy for the Treatment of Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome in Males: A Randomised, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study. Eur Urol. 2009 Sep;56(3):418-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19372000
64. Lee SH, Lee BC. Electroacupuncture Relieves Pain in Men With Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: Three-arm Randomized Trial. Urology. 2009 May;73(5):1036-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394499
65. Kabay S, Kabay SC, Yucel M, et al. Efficiency of posterior tibial nerve stimulation in category IIIB chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain: A sham-controlled comparative study. Urol Int. 2009;83(1):33-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19641356
66. FitzGerald MP, Anderson RU, Potts J, et al. Randomized Multicenter Feasibility Trial of Myofascial Physical Therapy for the Treatment of Urological Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndromes. J Urol. 2009 Aug;182(2):570-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19535099
67. Leskinen MJ, Kilponen A, Lukkarinen O, et al. Transurethral needle ablation for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain syndrome (category III prostatitis): a randomized, sham-controlled study urology 2002 Aug;60(2):300-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12137830
68. Aaltomaa S, Ala-Opas M. The effect of transurethral needle ablation on symptoms of chronic pelvic pain syndrome--a pilot study. Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2001 Apr;35(2):127-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11411655
69. Nickel JC, Alexander RB, Anderson R, et al. Category III chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: insights from the National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network studies.Curr Urol Rep. 2008 Jul;9(4):320-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18765132
70. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Katz L. A feasibility trial of a cognitive-behavioural symptom management program for chronic pelvic pain for men with refractory chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome.Can Urol Assoc J. 2011 Oct;5(5):328-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22031613

3.2 Bladder pain syndrome (BPS)

*3.2.1 **Introduction***

Interstitial cystitis (IC) describes a chronic, distressing bladder condition (1). The so-called ulcer, which is a typical cystoscopic finding in 10-50% of IC patients, was first described by Guy Hunner at the beginning of the last century (2,3). Subsequent research (4-6) has shown that IC encompassed a heterogeneous spectrum of disorders, with different endoscopic and histopathological presentations, with inflammation an important feature in only a subset of patients. To embrace all patients suffering from bladder pain, the terms painful bladder syndrome (PBS) or BPS have been suggested as more accurate when referring to pain in the bladder region, while assuming IC with Hunner's lesion as a specific type of chronic inflammation of the bladder (7,8).

The term BPS was put forward by the International Society for the Study of BPS (ESSIC) and will be used in these guidelines. In accordance Classic IC (Hunner's lesion and inflammation) will be refered to as BPS type 3 C (See Chapter 2, section 2.4 'Definitions of CPP terminology').

*3.2.2 **Definition***

Although generally accepted, the NIDDK criteria provide only a minimum framework to establish the diagnosis and have been felt to be too restrictive for clinical use (9-12). Recently, the ESSIC has suggested a standardised scheme of diagnostic criteria (13) to make it easier to compare different studies. BPS was preferred as the general term to match the current taxonomy of chronic pain syndromes.

*3.2.3 **Diagnosis***

Bladder pain syndrome should be diagnosed on the basis of pain, pressure or discomfort associated with the urinary bladder, accompanied by at least one other symptom, such as daytime and/or night-time increased urinary frequency, the exclusion of confusable diseases as the cause of symptoms, and if indicated, cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsy (Table7) (8).

Table 7: ESSIC classification of types of BPS according to the results of cystoscopy with hydrodistension and biopsies (8)

		Cystoscopy with hydrodistension		
	Not done	**Normal**	**Glomerulations[a]**	**Hunner's lesion[b]**
Biopsy				
Not done	XX	1X	2X	3X
Normal	XA	1A	2A	3A
Inconclusive	XB	1B	2B	3B
Positive[c]	XC	1C	2C	3C

[a]*Cystoscopy: glomerulations grade 2-3*
[b]*Lesion per Fall's definition with/without glomerulations*
[c]*Histology showing inflammatory infiltrates and/or detrusor mastocytosis and/or granulation tissue and/or intrafascicular fibrosis.*

Beyond subtyping, recent work has indicated the need to phenotype BPS patients. The - Urinary, Psychosocial, Organ Specific, Inflammation, Neurological/Systemic, Tenderness - UPOINT phenotyping system classifies patients according to clinically relevant domains, facilitating the use and appraisal of multimodal therapies (14).

*3.2.4 **Pathogenesis***

Current thought implicates an initial unidentified insult to the bladder, triggering inflammatory, endocrine and neural phenomena (15-17). This may happen in patients with an underlying systemic defect. In fact, BPS is similar and frequently precedes, coexists or follows other so-called functional somatic syndromes (FSSs), occurring predominantly in women, with pain as the main symptom, no abnormal laboratory or anatomical findings, and exacerbated by stress, namely fibromyalgia (FM), IBS and chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) (17-19). At the bladder level, multiple aetiological or pathophysiological mechanisms have been and are still sought after.

No infection has as yet been implicated (20-25). BPS patients and controls have equal UTI frequency (18,26). Nevertheless, UTI and urgency are significantly more frequent during childhood and adolescence, in patients who later develop BPS in adulthood (27). Pancystitis, with associated perineural inflammatory infiltrates, is an essential part of BPS type 3 C (23), but is scant in non-ulcer BPS (6). There is a 10-fold increase in the mast cell count in bladder tissue from patients with BPS type 3 C compared with controls. Mast-cell-secreted mediators (28,29) can indeed induce symptoms and findings of BPS type 3 C (30). In non-ulcer BPS, however, the mast cell count is normal or only slightly increased (6,29,31,32).

Cystoscopic and biopsy findings in both ulcer and non-ulcer BPS are consistent with defects in the urothelial glycosaminoglycan (GAG) layer, which might expose the submucosal nerve filaments to noxious urine components (33-37). Furthermore, urinary uronate, and sulphated GAG levels are increased in patients with severe BPS (38). Uroplakin III-delta 4, caveolin-1, acid-sensing channels 2a and 3, muscarinic (M2-5)

and purinergic receptors (P2X2 and P2X1), bradykinin B1 receptor, and cannabinoid receptor CB1 are also upregulated and bladder urothelial sensitivity to carbachol enhanced in urothelial cells of BPS patients (39-41). In contrast, tight junction proteins zona occludens-1, junctional adherins molecule -1, and occludin genes are downregulated. Luminal nitric oxide (NO) urinary levels and inducible NO synthetase activity (iNOS) are increased in BPS patients (43). Urinary NO is significantly increased in ulcer patients and decreases with treatment, but not in non-ulcer BPS patients (44). iNOS-dependent NO production may have a role in urothelial dysfunction (44). Altogether, these data further point to increased urothelial permeability. Moreover, constituents of urine may exert a cytotoxic effect (45), especially in situations such as altered urothelial barrier or existence of unsialylated Tamm-Horsefall protein observed in BPS (46,47). Along with altered gene regulation, post translational epigenetic conditioning through micro RNA interference with messenger RNA transcription, may perpetuate the answer to agression mode, induced on urethelial cells by an initial insult (39,48).

Microvascular alterations are present in BPS. Despite unaltered number of microvessels, the ratio of mature to total vessels is significantly lower (49) and decreased bladder perfusion upon filling is observed in BPS patients (50). Adding to that, proangiogenic vascular endothelial growth factor and hypoxia inducible factor (HIF)-1 expression is increased in the urothelium of BPS patients (49,51).

Involvement of neurogenic inflammation as the trigger to a cascade of events in BPS has been confirmed by multiple observations documenting its occurrence, followed by neuroplasticity and neuronal sensitisation, both in the peripheral and CNS of BPS patients. Thus, bladder sensory nerve fibres can induce bladder wall events through neurogenic inflammation sparked by an initial insult, as well as pain regionalisation and centralisation. In fact, several data have shown enhanced bladder peripheral nerve density and increased peripheral neuromediator release, along with neurotrophin and nerve fibre receptor increases, especially in sensory and sympathetic nerves. Furthermore, besides cytokines from umbrella cells, activation of mast cells in close proximity to nerve terminals can be influenced by oestradiol as well as corticotrophin-releasing hormone (52-58). Regionalisation of pain is observed frequently in BPS patients (59). Moreover, autonomic responses and CNS processing of afferent stimuli are altered in patients with BPS (55,59,60).

Some of the clinical and histopathological characteristics are similar to autoimmune phenomena. However, only some BPS patients demonstrate autoantibodies, immune deposits or complement activation (61-68). Of note, differing T-cell infiltrates and B-cell nodules are seen in BPS type 3 C (69).

3.2.5 ***Epidemiology***

Reports of the prevalence of BPS have varied greatly, along with the diagnostic criteria and populations studied. Recent reports generally show higher figures than earlier ones, ranging from 0.06% to 30% (71-80) There is a female predominance of about 10:1 (4,71,81,82) but contrary to prior belief, possibly no difference in race or ethnicity (80-83). The relative proportions of classic and non-ulcer disease are unclear. Incidence in various studies has ranged from 5 to 50% (5,12,86,87).

Evidence that BPS may have a genetic component has been presented in several studies, but may contribute to less than one third of total variation in susceptibility for BPS, with the remainder being environmental (19,88-91).

BPS has significant economic costs. Direct annual costs in the USA have been estimated to be $750 million (92).

3.2.6 ***References***

1. Skene AJC. Diseases of the bladder and urethra in women. New York: William Wood 1887;167. http://www.archive.org/stream/diseasesofbladd00sken
2. Hunner GL. A rare type of bladder ulcer in women: report of cases. Boston Med Surg J 1915;172: 660-4.
3. Hunner G. Elusive ulcer of the bladder: further notes on a rare type of bladder ulcer with report of 25 cases. Am J Obstet 1918;78:374-95.
4. Hand JR. Interstitial cystitis: report of 223 cases (204 women and 19 men). J Urol. 1949 Feb;61(2): 291-310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18111850
5. Messing EM, Stamey TA. Interstitial cystitis: early diagnosis, pathology, and treatment. Urology 1978 Oct;12(4):381-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/213864

6. Fall M, Johansson SL, Aldenborg F. Chronic interstitial cystitis: a heterogeneous syndrome. J Urol 1987 Jan;137(1):35-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3795363
7. Abrams P, Cardozo L, Fall M, et al. The standardisation of terminology of lower urinary tract function: report from the Standardisation Subcommitte of the International Continence Society. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2002 Jul;187(1):116-26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12114899
8. van de Merwe JP, Nordling J, Bouchelouche P, et al. Diagnostic criteria, classification, and nomenclature for painful bladder syndrome/interstitial cystitis: an ESSIC poposal. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):60-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17900797
9. Gillenwater JY, Wein AJ. Summary of the National Institute of Arthritis, Diabetes, Digestive and Kidney Diseases Workshop on Interstitial Cystitis, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Maryland, August 28-29,1987. J Urol 1988 Jul;140(1):203-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3379688
10. Hanno PM, Landis JR, Matthews-Cook Y, et al. The diagnosis of interstitial cystitis revisited: lessons learned from the National Institutes of Health Interstitial Cystitis Database study. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):553-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915447
11. Erickson DR, Belchis DA, Dabbs DJ. Inflammatory cell types and clinical features of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 1):790-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258082
12. Peeker R, Fall M. Toward a precise definition of interstitial cystitis: further evidence of differences in classic and nonulcer disease. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2470-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992059
13. Nordling J, Anjum FH, Bade JJ, et al. Primary evaluation of patients suspected of having interstitial cystitis (IC). Eur Urol 2004 May;45(5):662-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15082211
14. Nickel JC, Shoskes D, Irvine-Bird K. Clinical phenotyping of women with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome: a key to classification and potentially improved management. J Urol. 2009 Jul;182(1):155-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19447429
15. Elbadawi A. Interstitial cystitis: a critique of current concepts with a new proposal for pathologic diagnosis and pathogenesis. Urology. 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):14-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9145999
16. Okragly AJ, Niles AL, Saban R, et al. Elevated tryptase, nerve growth factor,neurotrophin-3 and glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor levels in theurine of interstitial cystitis and bladder cancer patients. J Urol. 1999 Feb;161(2):438-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915421
17. Warren JW, Wesselmann U, Morozov V, et al. Numbers and types of non bladder syndromes as risk factors for interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2011 Feb;77(2):313-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21295246
18. Nickel JC, Shoskes DA, Irvine-Bird K. Prevalence and impact of bacteriuria and/or urinary tract infection in interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2010 Oct;76(4):799-803.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20573386
19. Talati A, Ponniah K, Strug LJ, et al. Panic disorder, social anxiety disorder, and a possible medical syndrome previously linked to chromosome 13.Biol Psychiatry. 2008 Mar 15;63(6):594-601.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17920564
20. Domingue GJ, Ghoniem GM, Bost KL, et al. Dormant microbes in interstitial cystitis. Erratum in: J Urol 1996;155:298. J Urol 1995 Apr;153(4):1321-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7869536
21. Lynes WL, Sellers RG, Dairiki Shortliffe LM. The evidence for occult bacterial infections as a cause for interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1989;141:268A (abstr 393).
22. Hukkanen V, Haarala M, Nurmi M, et al. Viruses and interstitial cystitis: adenovirus genomes cannot be demonstrated in urinary bladder biopsies. Urol Res 1996;24(4):235-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8873382
23. Fall M, Johansson SL, Vahlne A. A clinicopathological and virological study of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1985 May;133(5):771-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2985831

24. Duncan JL, Schaeffer AJ. Do infectious agents cause interstitial cystitis? Urology 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):48-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146001
25. Al-Hadithi HN, Williams H, Hart CA, et al. Absence of bacterial and viral DNA in bladder biopsies from patients with interstitial cystitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):151-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947607
26. Warren JW, Brown V, Jacobs S, et al. Urinary Tract Infection and Inflammation at Onset of Interstitial Cystitis/Painful bladder Syndrome. Urology. 2008 Jun;71(6):1085-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18538691
27. Peters KM, Killinger KA, Ibrahim IA. Childhood symptoms and events in women with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2009 Feb;73(2):258-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19036420
28. Agarwal M, Dixon RA. A study to detect Helicobacter pylori in fresh and archival specimens from patients with interstitial cystitis, using amplification methods. BJU Int 2003 Jun;91(9):814-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12780839
29. Peeker R, Enerback L, Fall M, et al. Recruitment, distribution and phenotypes of mast cells in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2000 Mar;163(3):1009-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10688040
30. Richter B, Roslind A, Hesse U, et al. YKL-40 and mast cells are associated with detrusor fibrosis in patients diagnosed with bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis according to the 2008 criteria of the European Society for the Study of Interstitial Cystitis.Histopathology. 2010 Sep;57(3):371-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20840668
31. Dundore PA, Schwartz AM, Semerjian H. Mast cell counts are not useful in the diagnosis of nonulcerative interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):885-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583599
32. Wyndaele JJ, Van Dyck J, Toussaint N. Cystoscopy and bladder biopsies in patients with bladder pain syndrome carried out following ESSIC guidelines. Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2009;43(6):471-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707951
33. Johansson SL, Fall M. Clinical features and spectrum of light microscopic changes in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1990 Jun;143(6):1118-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342171
34. Anderström CR, Fall M, Johansson SL. Scanning electron microscopic findings in interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1989 Mar;63(3):270-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2702424
35. Fellows GJ, Marshall DH. The permeability of human bladder epithelium to water and sodium. Invest Urol 1972 Jan;9(4):339-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5058772
36. Parsons CL, Mulholland SG. Successful therapy of interstitial cystitis with pentosanpolysulfate. J Urol 1987 Sep;138(3):513-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442417
37. Parsons CL, Lilly JD, Stein P. Epithelial dysfunction in nonbacterial cystitis (interstitial cystitis). J Urol 1991 Apr;145(4):732-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2005689
38. Lokeshwar VB, Selzer MG, Cerwinka WH, et al. Urinary uronate and sulfated glycosaminoglycan levels: markers for interstitial cystitis severity. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):344-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947687
39. Sánchez-Freire V, Blanchard MG, Burkhard FC, et al. Acid-Sensing Channels in Human Bladder: Expression, Function and Alterations During Bladder Pain Syndrome. J Urol. 2011 Oct;186(4):1509-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21855903
40. Gupta GN, Lu S, Gold MS, et al. Bladder Urothelial Cells From Patients With Interstitial Cystitis Have an Increased Sensitivity to Carbachol. Neurourol Urodyn. 2009;28(8):1022-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19283864
41. Lin XC, Zhang QH, Zhou P, et al. Caveolin-1 may participate in the pathogenesis of bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis. Urol Int. 2011;86(3):334-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21335944
42. Ehrén I, Hosseini A, Lundberg JO, et al. Nitric oxide: a useful gas in the detection of lower urinary tract inflammation. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):327-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411031

43. Logadottir YR, Ehren I, Fall M, et al. Intravesical nitric oxide production iscriminates between classic and nonulcer interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2004 Mar;171(3):1148-50; discussion 50-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767289
44. Birder LA, Wolf-Johnston A, Buffington CA, et al. Altered inducible nitricoxide hase expression and nitric oxide production in the bladder of cats with feline interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2005 Feb;173(2): 625-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15643277
45. Parsons CL, Bautista SL, Stein PC, et al. Cyto-injury factors in urine: a possible mechanism for the development of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2000 Oct;164(4):1381-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10992419
46. Hang L, Wullt B, Shen Z, et al. Cytokine repertoire of epithelial cells lining the human urinary tract. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):2185-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598567
47. Parsons CL, Stein P, Zupkas P, et al. Defective Tamm-Horsfall protein in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2665-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17945284
48. Sanchez Freire V, Burkhard FC, Kessler TM, et al. MicroRNAs may mediate the down-regulation of neurokinin-1 receptor in chronic bladder pain syndrome. Am J Pathol. 2010 Jan;176(1):288-303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008142
49. Kiuchi H, Tsujimura A, Takao T, et al. Increased vascular endothelial growth factor expression in patients with bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis: its association with pain severity and glomerulations. BJU Int. 2009 Sep;104(6):826-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19298410
50. Pontari MA, Hanno PM, Ruggieri MR. Comparison of bladder blood flow in patients with and without interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1999 Aug;162(2):330-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10411032
51. Lee JD, Lee MH. Increased Expression of Hypoxia-inducible Factor-1 and Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor Associated With Glomerulation Formation in Patients With Interstitial Cystitis. Urology. 2011 Oct;78(4):971.e11-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21813166
52. Abdel-Mageed AB, Ghoniem GM. Potential role of rel/nuclear factor-kappaB in the pathogenesis of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1998 Dec;160(6 Pt 1):2000-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9817309
53. Abdel-Mageed A, Ghoniem G, Human I, et al. Induction of proinflammatory cytokine gene expression by NF-kappaB in human bladder epithelial (T-24) cells: possible mechanism for interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1999;161(Suppl):28.
54. Hohenfellner M, Nunes L, Schmidt RA, et al. Interstitial cystitis: increased sympathetic innervation and related neuropeptide synthesis. J Urol 1992 Mar;147(3):587-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1538434
55. Twiss CO, Kilpatrick L, Triaca V, et al. Evidence for central hyperexitability in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(4):49.
56. Theoharides TC, Pang X, Letourneau R, et al. Interstitial cystitis: a neuroimmunoendocrine disorder. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1998 May;840:619-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9629289
57. Okragly AJ, Niles AL, Saban R, et al. Elevated tryptase, nerve growth factor, neurotrophin-3 and glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor levels in the urine of interstitial cystitis and bladder cancer patients. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):438-41; discussion 441-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915421
58. Boucher W, Kempuraj D, Michaelian M, et al. Corticotropin-releasing hormone-receptor 2 is required for acute stress-induced bladder vascular permeability and release of vascular endothelial growth factor. BJU Int. 2010 Nov;106(9):1394-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201838
59. Warren JW, Langenberg P, Greenberg P, et al. Sites of pain from interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. J Urol. 2008 Oct;180(4):1373-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18707715
60. Yilmaz U, Liu YW, Berger RE, et al. Autonomic nervous system changes in men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(6):2170-4; discussion 2174. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17509311

61. Elbadawi AE, Light JK. Distinctive ultrastructural pathology of nonulcerative interstitial cystitis: new observations and their potential significance in pathogenesis. Urol Int 1996;56(3):137-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8860736
62. Oravisto KJ, Alfthan OS, Jokinen EJ. Interstitial cystitis. Clinical and immunological findings. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1970;4(1):37-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5314306
63. Jokinen EJ, Alfthan OS, Oravisto KJ. Antitissue antibodies in interstitial cystitis. Clin Exp Immunol 1972 Jul;11(3):333-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4114472
64. Ochs RL, Stein TW Jr, Peebles CL, et al. Autoantibodies in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1994 Mar;151(3):587-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8308964
65. Tan EM. Antinuclear antibodies: diagnostic markers for autoimmune diseases and probes for cell biology. Adv Immunol 1989;44:93-151. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2646863
66. von Muhlen CA, Tan EM. Autoantibodies in the diagnosis of systemic rheumatic diseases. Semin Arthritis Rheum 1995 Apr;24(5):323-58. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7604300
67. Ochs RL. Autoantibodies and interstitial cystitis. Clin Lab Med 1997 Sep;17(3):571-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9316774
68. Mattila J. Vascular immunopathology in interstitial cystitis. Clin Immunol Immunopathol 1982 Jun;23(3):648-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6981479
69. Mattila J, Linder E. Immunoglobulin deposits in bladder epithelium and vessels in interstitial cystitis: possible relationship to circulating anti-intermediate filament autoantibodies. Clin Immunol Immunopathol 1984 Jul;32(1):81-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6733983
70. Harrington DS, Fall M, Johansson SL. Interstitial cystitis: bladder mucosa lymphocyte immunophenotyping and peripheral blood flow cytometry analysis. J Urol 1990 Oct;144(4):868-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2204728
71. Oravisto KJ. Epidemiology of interstitial cystitis. Ann Chir Gynaecol Fenn 1975;64(2):75-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1137336
72. Held PJ, Hanno PM, Wein AJ. In: Hanno PM, Staskin DR, Krane RJ, Wein AJ, eds. Interstitial Cystitis. Epidemiology of interstitial cystitis. London: Springer Verlag, 1990, pp. 29-48.
73. Bade JJ, Rijcken B, Mensink HJ. Interstitial cystitis in The Netherlands: prevalence, diagnostic criteria and therapeutic preferences. J Urol 1995 Dec;154(6):2035-7; discussion 2037-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500452
74. Jones CA, Harris MA, Nyberg L. Prevalence of interstitial cystitisin the United States, Proc Am Urol Ass J Urol 1994;151(Suppl):423A.
75. Curhan GC, Speizer FE, Hunter DJ, et al. Epidemiology of interstitial cystitis: a population based study. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):549-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915446
76. Leppilahti M, Sairanen J, Tammela TL, et al. Finnish Interstitial Cystitis-Pelvic Pain Syndrome Study Group. Prevalence of clinically confirmed interstitial cystitis in women: a population based study in Finland. J Urol 2005 Aug;174(2):581-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006902
77. Temml C, WehrbergerC, Riedl C, et al. Prevalence and correlates for interstitial cystitis symptoms in women participating in a health screening project. Eur Urol. 2007 Mar;51(3):803-8; discussion 809. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979286
78. Burkman RT.Chronic pelvic pain of bladder origin: epidemiology, pathogenesis and quality of life. J Reprod Med 2004 Mar;49(3 Suppl):225-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15088860
79. Roberts RO, Bergstralh EJ, Bass SE, et al. Incidence of physician-diagnosed interstitial cystitis in Olmsted County: a community-based study. BJU Int 2003 Feb;91(3):181-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12581000
80. Parsons CL, Tatsis V. Prevalence of interstitial cystitis in young women. Urology. 2004 Nov;64(5): 866-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533465
81. Greenberg E, Barnes R, Stewart S, et al. Transurethral resection of Hunner's ulcer. J Urol 1974 Jun;111(6):764-6.

http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4830879
82. Koziol JA. Epidemiology of interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):7-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284848
83. Berry SH, Elliott MN, Suttorp M, et al. Prevalence of symptoms of bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis among adult females in the United States. J Urol. 2011 Aug;186(2):540-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21683389
84. Barry MJ, Link CL, McNaughton-Collins MF, et al. Boston Area Community Health (BACH) Investigators. Overlap of different urological symptom complexes in a racially and ethnically diverse, community-based population of men and women. BJU Int. 2008 Jan;101(1):45-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17868419
85. Song Y, Zhang W, Xu B, et al. Prevalence and correlates of painful bladder syndrome symptoms in Fuzhou Chinese women. Neurourol Urodyn. 2009;28(1):22-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18671294
86. Parsons CL. Interstitial cystitis: clinical manifestations and diagnostic criteria in over 200 cases. Neurourol Urodynam 1990;9:241. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/nau.1930090302/abstract
87. Koziol JA, Adams HP, Frutos A. Discrimination between the ulcerous and the nonulcerous forms of interstitial cystitis by noninvasive findings. J Urol 1996 Jan;155(1):87-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490906
88. Parsons CL, Zupkas P, Parsons JK. Intravesical potassium sensitivity in patients with interstitial cystitis and urethral syndrome. Urology 2001 Mar;57(3):428-32; discussion 432-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248610
89. Warren J, Jackson T, Meyers D, et al. Fishbein/interstitial cystitis association (ICA) survey of interstitial cystitis among family members of ICA members: preliminary analysis. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1): 126-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378121
90. Warren JW, Keay SK, Meyers D, et al. Concordance of interstitial cystitis in monozygotic and dizygotic twin pairs. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):22-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378045
91. Altman D, Lundholm C, Milsom I, et al. The genetic and environmental contribution to the occurrence of bladder pain syndrome: an empirical approach in a nationwide population sample. Eur Urol. 2011 Feb;59(2):280-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056533
92. Clemens JQ, Meenan RT, Rosetti MC et al. Costs of interstitial cystitis in a managed care population. Urology. 2008 May;71(5):776-80 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18329077

3.2.7 ***Association with other diseases***

An association has been reported between BPS and non-bladder syndromes (NBSs) - IBS, FM, CFS, vulvodynia, depression, panic disorders, migraine, sicca syndrome, temporomandibular joint disorder, allergy, asthma, systemic lupus erythematosus, inflammatory bowel disease (1-7). Risk of BPS correlates with number of NBSs in each patient (8). Recent work showing non-ulcer BPS to have significantly more FM, migraine, temporomandibular joint disorder and depression than ulcer patients emphasises the need for subtyping (9).

3.2.8 ***Diagnosis***

The diagnosis of BPS is one of exclusion, using symptoms, examination, urine analysis, cystoscopy with hydrodistension, and biopsy (Figure 6).

The nature of the pain is the key symptom of the disease:

- Pain, pressure or discomfort perceived to be related to the bladder, increasing with increasing bladder content.
- It is located suprapubically, sometimes radiating to the groins, vagina, rectum or sacrum.
- Pain is relieved by voiding but soon returns (10-14).
- Pain is aggravated by food or drink (13).

The differences between the two BPS subtypes, BPS type 3 C and non-ulcer, include clinical presentation, age distribution (15), molecular features (16-22), which may be discriminated non-invasively (23), and response to treatment (24-27). BPS type 3 C is a highly damaging inflammation that often leads to a small-capacity fibrotic bladder or upper urinary tract outflow obstruction. This type of progression is not observed in non-ulcer disease (14,28). Endoscopically, BPS type 3 C displays reddened mucosal areas often associated with small vessels radiating towards a central scar, sometimes covered by a small clot or fibrin deposit - the

Hunner lesion (14). The scar ruptures with increasing bladder distension, producing a characteristic waterfall-type of bleeding. There is a strong association between BPS type 3 C and reduced bladder capacity under anaesthesia (14,29,30).

Cystoscopy
Non-ulcer disease displays a normal bladder mucosa at initial cystoscopy. The development of glomerulations after hydrodistension is considered to be a positive diagnostic sign. A recent report has shown that there is no difference in the cystoscopic appearance between patients with non-ulcer disease and women without bladder symptoms about to undergo tubal ligation (31). The observation of glomerulations may however not always be constant over time (32).

Some authors maintain that cystoscopy with hydrodistension provides little useful information in addition to the history and physical examination findings (33,34). In contrast, others have found a strong correlation between pain and cystoscopic findings in patients with untreated BPS, and this difference from the results of other studies may have been due to treatment effects (35). Glomerulations may be involved in the disease mechanism, because such findings are highly associated with overexpression of angiogenic growth factors in the bladder and neovascularisation (36). A recent pilot study has demonstrated feasibility of bladder distension and biopsy under local anaesthesia (37). ESSIC believes objective findings are important and that a standardised scheme of diagnostic criteria would help improve the uniformity and comparability of different studies (38).

Biopsies are helpful in establishing or supporting the clinical diagnosis of both classic and non-ulcer types of the disease (17, 38-41). Important differential diagnoses to exclude by histological examination are carcinoma in situ and tuberculous cystitis.

Potassium chloride bladder permeability test has been used in the diagnosis of BPS (41), but recent reports have suggested that it lacks discriminating power (42,43). A modified test using less concentrated solution has been suggested. This test, although painless in contrast to the original procedure, decreases the maximum cystometric volume in 90% of patients with BPS, but not in controls (44). Furthermore, it has been suggested that the potassium sensitivity test can help to predict the response to GAG treatment (45).

Symptom scores may help to describe symptoms in an individual patient and as outcome measures. The O'Leary-Sant Symptom Index, also known as the Interstitial Cystitis Symptom Index (ICSI) has recently been validated successfully in a large study (46).

Biological markers. It is an attractive idea to support or, even better, to confirm the clinical diagnosis using a biological marker. Finding a universally helpful one is hampered by heterogeneity within the diagnostic group of BPS. Antiproliferative factor, heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor, uroplakin III delta-4 mRNA, and YKL-40 have all presented as potential candidates (47-49). NO is interesting because of its ability to discriminate classic from non-ulcer disease with minimal invasiveness However all putative markers to date have yet to be validated (50).

3.2.9 ***BPS in children and males***
According to NIDDK criteria, children aged < 18 years is an exclusion criterion. However, occasional cases of BPS of both subtypes have been identified in patients under this age (51). There is increasing evidence that children aged 2-11 may also be affected, although prevalence figures are low (52). Thus, BPS cannot be excluded on the basis of age.
It has been argued that PPS and BPS are inter-related (53,54). However, differences in urinary markers suggest that BPS and PPS are different disorders with distinct pathophysiology (55).

3.2.10 *Conclusions and recommendations: assessment and diagnosis BPS*

Conclusions	LE
BPS has no known single aetiology.	3
Pain in BPS does not correlate with bladder cystoscopic or histologic findings.	2a
BPS Type 3 C is not surely distinguishable by non-invasive means.	2a
Ulcer non-ulcer disease ratios of BPS are highly variable between studies.	2a
The prevalence of BPS-like symptoms is high in population-based studies.	2a
BPS associated non bladder diseases are extremely prevalent, differ in BPS subtypes and correlate with BPS risk.	2a
BPS has a high impact on quality of life.	2a
There is significant overlap of symptoms with other conditions.	2a
Reliable instruments assessing symptom severity as well as phenotypical differences exist.	2a

Recommendations	GR
Specific diseases with similar symptoms have to be excluded. It is therefore recommended to adapt diagnostic procedures to each patient and aim at identifying them.	A
After primary exclusion of specific diseases, patients with symptoms according to the above definition should be diagnosed with BPS by subtype and phenotype.	A
A validated symptom and quality of life scoring instrument should be considered for initial assessment as well as for follow-up.	B
BPS associated non bladder diseases should be assessed systematically.	A
BPS associated negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences should be assessed.	A

BPS = Bladder pain syndrome.

3.2.11 *References*

1. Warren J, Jackson T, Meyers D, et al. Fishbein/interstitial cystitis association (ICA) survey of interstitial cystitis among family members of ICA members: preliminary analysis. Urology. 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):126-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378121
2. Warren JW, Howard FM, Cross RK, et al. Antecedent nonbladder syndromes in case-control study of interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2009 Jan;73(1):52-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18995888
3. Alagiri M, Chottiner S, Ratner V, et al. Interstitial cystitis: unexplained associations with other chronic disease and pain syndromes. Urology 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):52-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146002
4. Clauw DJ, Schmidt M, Radulovic D, et al. The relationship between fibromyalgia and interstitial cystitis. J Psychiatr Res 1997 Jan-Feb;31(1):125-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9201654
5. Erickson DR, Morgan KC, Ordille S, et al. Nonbladder related symptoms in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2001;166(2):557-61 Aug; discussion 561-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11458068
6. Weissman MM, Gross R, Fyer A, et al. Interstitial Cystitis and Panic Disorder - A Potential Genetic Syndrome. Arch Gen Psych 2004;61:273-9. http://archpsyc.ama-assn.org/cgi/content/abstract/61/3/273
7. Buffington CA. Comorbidity of interstitial cystitis with other unexplained clinical conditions. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1242-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371816
8. Warren JW, Wesselmann U, Morozov V, et al. Numbers and types of nonbladder syndromes as risk factors for interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2011 Feb;77(2):313-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21295246

9. Peters KM, Killinger KA, Mounayer MH, et al. Are ulcerative and nonulcerative interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome 2 distinct diseases? A study of coexisting conditions. Urology. 2011 Aug;78(2):301-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21703668
10. Bullock AD, Becich MJ, Klutke CG, et al. Experimental autoimmune cystitis: a potential murine model for ulcerative interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1992 Dec;148(6):1951-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1433651
11. Dodd LG, Tello J. Cytologic examination of urine from patients with interstitial cystitis. Acta Cytol 1998 Jul-Aug;42(4):923-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9684578
12. Erickson DR, Davies MF. Interstitial cystitis. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1998;9(3):174-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9745978
13. Warren JW, Brown J, Tracy JK, et al. Evidence-based criteria for pain of interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome in women. Urology. 2008 Mar;71(3):444-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18342184
14. Fall M, Johansson SL, Aldenborg F. Chronic interstitial cystitis: a heterogeneous syndrome. J Urol 1987 Jan;137(1):35-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3795363
15. Peeker R, Fall M. Toward a precise definition of interstitial cystitis: further evidence of differences in classic and nonulcer disease. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2470-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992059
16. Dundore PA, Schwartz AM, Semerjian H. Mast cell counts are not useful in the diagnosis of nonulcerative interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1996 Mar;155(3):885-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8583599
17. Johansson SL, Fall M. Clinical features and spectrum of light microscopic changes in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1990 Jun;143(6):1118-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2342171
18. Harrington DS, Fall M, Johansson SL. Interstitial cystitis: bladder mucosa lymphocyte immunophenotyping and peripheral blood flow cytometry analysis. J Urol 1990 Oct;144(4):868-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2204728
19. Peeker R, Aldenborg F, Haglid K, et al. Decreased levels of S-100 protein in non-cer interstitial cystitis. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1998 Dec;32(6):395-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9925003
20. Twiss CO, Kilpatrick L, Triaca V, et al. Evidence for central hyperexitability in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2007 Jun;177(4):49.
21. Koziol JA, Clark DC, Gittes RF, et al. The natural history of interstitial cystitis: a survey of 374 patients. J Urol 1993 Mar;149(3):465-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8437248
22. Enerbäck L, Fall M, Aldenborg F. Histamine and mucosal mast cells in interstitial cystitis. Agents Actions 1989 Apr;27(1-2):113-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2750582
23. oziol JA, Adams HP, Frutos A. Discrimination between the ulcerous and the nonulcerous forms of interstitial cystitis by noninvasive findings. J Urol 1996 Jan;155(1):87-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7490906
24. Hanno PM. Amitriptyline in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):89-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284851
25. Fall M, Lindström S. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation in classic and nonulcer interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):131-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284836
26. Peeker R, Haghsheno MA, Holmang S, et al. Intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin and dimethyl sulfoxide for treatment of classic and nonulcer interstitial cystitis: a prospective, randomized doubleblind study. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):1912-1915; discussion 1915-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061879
27. Fritjofsson A, Fall M, Juhlin R, et al. Treatment of ulcer and nonulcer interstitial cystitis with sodium pentosanpolysulfate: a multicenter trial. J Urol 1987 Sep;138(3):508-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442416
28. Lechevallier E. Interstitial cystitis. Prog Urol 1995 Feb;5(1):21-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7719356

29. Peeker R, Fall M. Toward a precise definition of interstitial cystitis: further evidence of differences in classic and nonulcer disease. J Urol 2002 Jun;167(6):2470-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992059
30. Messing E, Pauk D, Schaeffer A, et al. Associations among cystoscopic findings and symptoms and physical examination findings in women enrolled in the Interstitial Cystitis Data Base (ICDB) Study. Urology 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):81-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146006
31. Waxman JA, Sulak PJ, Kuehl TJ. Cystoscopic findings consistent with interstitial cystitis in normal women undergoing tubal ligation. J Urol 1998 Nov;160(5):1663-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9783927
32. Shear S, Mayer R. Development of glomerulations in younger women with interstitial cystitis. Urology.2006 Aug;68(2):253-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16904429
33. Ottem DP, Teichman JM. What is the value of cystoscopy with hydrodistension for interstitial cystitis? Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):494-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140064
34. Cole EE, Scarpero HM, Dmochowski RR. Are patient symptoms predictive of the diagnostic and/or therapeutic value of hydrodistention? Neurourol Urodyn 2005;24(7):638-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16208660
35. Lamale LM, Lutgendorf SK, Hoffman AN, et al. Symptoms and cystoscopic findings in patients with untreated interstitial cystitis. Urology 2006 Feb;67(2):242-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16442603
36. Tamaki M, Saito R, Ogawa O, et al. Possible mechanisms inducing glomerulations in interstitialcystitis: relationship between endoscopic findings and expression of angiogenic growth factors. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):945-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311005
37. Nordling J, Anjum FH, Bade JJ, et al. Primary evaluation of patients suspected of having interstitial cystitis (IC). Eur Urol 2004 May;45(5):662-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11992059
38. Aihara K, Hirayama A, Tanaka N, et al. Hydrodistension under local anesthesia for patients with suspected painful bladder syndrome/interstitial cystitis: safety, diagnostic potential and therapeutic efficacy. Int J Urol. 2009 Dec;16(12):947-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19817916
39. Johansson SL, Fall M. Pathology of interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):55-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284845
40. Geurts N, Van Dyck J, Wyndaele JJ. Bladder pain syndrome: do the different morphological and cystoscopic features correlate? Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2011 Feb;45(1):20-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20846081
41. Parsons CL, Greenberger M, Gabal L, et al. The role of urinary potassium in the pathogenesis and diagnosis of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1998 Jun;159(6):1862-6;discussion 1866-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598476
42. Chambers GK, Fenster HN, Cripps S, et al. An assessment of the use of intravesical potassium in the diagnosis of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):699-701.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458346
43. Grégoire M, Liandier F, Naud A, et al. Does the potassium stimulation test predict cystometric, cystoscopic outcome in interstitial cystitis? J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):556-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131308
44. Daha LK, Riedl CR, Hohlbrugger G, et al. Comparative assessment of maximal bladder capacity, 0.9%NaCl versus 0.2 M Kcl, for the diagnosis of interstitial cystitis: a prospective controlled study. J Urol 2003 Sep;170(3):807-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913704
45. Gupta SK, Pidcock L, Parr NJ. The potassium sensitivity test: a predictor of treatment response in interstitial cystitis. BJU Int 2005 Nov;96(7):1063-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16225529
46. Lubeck DP, Whitmore K, Sant GR, et al. Psychometric validation of the O'leary-Sant interstitial cystitis symptom index in a clinical trial of pentosan polysulfate sodium. Urology 2001 Jun; 57(6 Suppl 1): 62-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378052

47. Zeng Y, Wu XX, Homma Y, et al. Uroplakin III-delta4 messenger RNA as a promising marker to identify nonulcerative interstitial cystitis. J Urol. 2007 Oct;178(4 Pt 1):1322-7; discussion 1327. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17698128
48. Richter B, Roslind A, Hesse U, et al. YKL-40 and mast cells are associated with detrusor fibrosis in patients diagnosed with bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis according to the 2008 criteria of the European Society for the Study of Interstitial Cystitis. Histopathology. 2010 Sep;57(3):371-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20840668
49. Keay S, Kleinberg M, Zhang CO, et al. Bladder epithelial cells from patients with interstitial cystitis produce an inhibitor of heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor production. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):2112-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061938
50. Logadottir YR, Ehren I, Fall M, et al. Intravesical nitric oxide production iscriminates between classic and nonulcer interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2004 Mar;171(3):1148-50; discussion 50-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14767289
51. Close CE, Carr MC, Burns MW, et al. Interstitial cystitis in children. J Urol 1996 Aug;156(2 Pt 2):860-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683802
52. Mattox TF. Interstitial cystitis in adolescents and children: a review. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 2004Feb;17(1):7-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15010032
53. Miller JL, Rothman I, Bavendam TG, et al. Prostatodynia and interstitial cystitis: one and the same? Urology 1995 Apr;45(4):587-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7716839
54. Pontari MA. Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome and interstitial cystitis: are they related? Curr Urol Rep 2006 Jul;7(4):329-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16930505
55. Keay S, Zhang CO, Chai T, et al. Antiproliferative factor, heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor, and epidermal growth factor in men with interstitial cystitis versus chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology 2004 Jan;63(1):22-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14751340

3.2.12 ***Medical treatment***

Analgesics. Pain is often a dominant symptom, therefore, many patients try commonly used analgesics at some stage of the disease. However, pain relief is disappointing because the visceral pain experienced in BPS responds poorly to analgesic drugs. No systematic studies have been conducted on conventional analgesics. Short-term opioids may be indicated for breakthrough or exacerbated pain and periodic flare-ups. Long-term opioids may be considered after all other available therapeutic options have been exhausted. Urologists should obtain informed consent, arrange for regular follow-up, and be prepared to recognise opioid-induced side effects (1). BPS is a chronic disease, therefore, long-term opioids should be used only exceptionally and under close surveillance.

Corticosteroids. Reports on outcome with corticosteroid therapy have been both promising (2) and discouraging (3). Soucy et al. (4) have suggested a trial of prednisone (25 mg daily for 1-2 months, afterwards reduced to the minimum required for symptom relief) in patients with severe ulcerative BPS, which is otherwise unresponsive to conventional treatment. The side effects of steroids can be very serious, making it difficult to justify their use.

Antiallergics. Mast cells may play a role in BPS. Histamine is one of the substances released by mast cells. Histamine receptor antagonists have been used to block the H1 (5) as well as the H2 (6) receptor subtypes, with variable results.

Hydroxyzine is a histamine H1-receptor antagonist, which blocks neuronal activation of mast cells by inhibiting serotonin secretion from thalamic mast cells and neurons (7). Hydroxyzine hydrochloride (Atarax) is usually given, starting with 25 mg at bedtime, increasing to 50 mg/day, or if tolerated, 75 mg. The most common side effects are sedation and generalised weakness, which usually resolve after a period of treatment. In the first series using hydroxyzine, > 90% of patients showed improvement across the whole range of symptoms. Interestingly, improvement was noted in associated symptoms including migraine, IBS and allergies (5).

Although these initial results were supported by a further uncontrolled study (5,8), a prospective RCT of hydroxyzine or sodium pentosan polysulphate compared to placebo failed to show a statistically significant effect (9). However, the study was underpowered, which may be why it failed to demonstrate a statistically significant outcome for either drug compared to placebo. Combination therapy showed the highest response

rate of 40%, with a placebo response rate of 13%.

Amitriptyline. The tricyclic antidepressant amitriptyline has alleviated symptoms in BPS, probably via mechanisms such as blockade of acetylcholine receptors, inhibition of reuptake of released serotonin and noradrenalin, and blockade of histamine H1 receptors. It is also an anxiolytic agent (10). Several reports have indicated amelioration after oral amitriptyline (11-13). In a prospective RCT, 48 patients (14) were treated for 4 months with amitriptyline.

Drug dosages were escalated in 25-mg increments at 1-week intervals up to a maximum dosage of 100 mg. Amitriptyline significantly improved the mean symptom score, pain and urgency intensity, whereas frequency and functional bladder capacity improved but not significantly. In a subsequent, prospective, open-label study (15), a response rate of 64% with an overall mean dose of 55 mg was seen with long-term amitriptyline for 20 months. Patient overall satisfaction was good to excellent in 46%, with significant improvement in symptoms.

A therapeutic response was observed in all 28 patients fulfilling NIDDK criteria and those with a clinical diagnosis of BPS. Anticholinergic side effects (mouth dryness and weight gain) were common and considered to be a drawback of amitriptyline. A multicentre, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial comparing amitriptyline and placebo plus behavioural modification in 273 patients concluded that amitriptyline may be beneficial at ≥ 50 mg/daily (16). In clinical practice drowsiness is also a limiting factor with amitriptyline and a lower starting dose of 10mg is often suggested. Nortriptyline is sometimes considered in place of amitriptyline when drowsiness is the limiting factor.

Pentosan polysulphate sodium (Elmiron) has been evaluated in double-blind, placebo-controlled studies. Pentosan polysulphate sodium is thought to substitute for a defect in the GAG layer. Subjective improvement of pain, urgency, frequency, but not nocturia, has been reported in patients taking the drug compared to placebo (17,18). In an open multicentre study, pentosan polysulphate sodium had a more favourable effect in BPS type 3 C than in non-ulcer disease (19). The normal dose is 150-200 mg twice daily between meals. However, absorption is incomplete. An RCT has compared 300 mg pentosan polysulphate sodium with evaluated dosages of 600 and 900 mg in 380 BPS patients. Mean ICSI scores improved significantly for all dosages (20). However, treatment response was not dose-dependent but related more to treatment duration. At 32 weeks, about half of all patients were responders. Most adverse events were mild and resolved without intervention. In contrast, a prospective RCT comparing pentosan polysulphate sodium and hydroxyzine against placebo failed to demonstrate a statistically significant outcome for either drug, although the former approached statistical significance (P = 0.064) (9). Combination therapy showed the highest response rate of 40% compared to 13% with placebo. For patients with an initial minor response to pentosan polysulphate sodium, additional subcutaneous administration of heparin appeared to be helpful (21).

Antibiotics have a limited role in the treatment of BPS. A prospective pilot RCT of sequential oral antibiotics in 50 patients found that overall improvement occurred in 12/25 patients in the antibiotic group and 6/25 in the placebo group, whereas 10 and five patients reported an improvement in pain and urgency, respectively. Antibiotics alone or in combination may be associated with decreased symptoms in some patients, but do not represent a major advance in therapy for BPS (22).

Immunosuppressants. Azathioprine, 50-100 mg daily, was given to 38 patients, resulting in disappearance of pain in 22 and urinary frequency in 20 (23). Cyclosporin A (CyA) (24) and methotrexate (25) were initially evaluated in open studies, with a good effect on pain, but a limited effect on urgency and frequency.

More recent studies of CyA have reported promising results (26,27). In 23 patients, daily voiding, maximal bladder capacity, and voided volume improved significantly after 1 year of treatment. The effect was maintained throughout 5 years follow-up, with 20/23 patients reporting no bladder pain. However, symptoms recurred within a few months of discontinuing CyA.

In a subsequent randomised study (27), 64 patients fulfilling the NIH criteria were randomised to 1.5 mg/kg CyA twice daily or low-dose (3 100 mg) pentosan polysulphate sodium for 6 months. CyA was superior to pentosan polysulphate sodium in all clinical outcome parameters, with the frequency of micturition significantly reduced in CyA-treated patients, and clinical global response rates of 75% (CyA) and 19% (pentosan polysulphate sodium) (P < 0.001). However, there were more adverse events in the CyA arm (including induced hair growth, gingival pain and hyperplasia, paraesthesia in the extremities, abdominal pain, flushing, muscle pain and shaking), and only 29 patients completed the 6 months follow-up in both groups. During CyA therapy, careful follow-up is mandatory, including regular blood pressure measurement and serum creatinine.

Gabapentin is an antiepileptic drug, which is used as adjunctive treatment in painful disorders. Gabapentin

may reduce the use of concomitant therapeutics, such as opioids. Two patients with BPS showed improved functional capacity and received adequate pain control when gabapentin was added to their regimen (28). In an uncontrolled dose-escalation protocol with 21 chronic genitourinary pain patients (29), 10 improved with gabapentin at 6 months. The study included eight BPS patients, of whom, five responded to gabapentin.

Pregabalin is an alpha (2)-delta ligand that binds to and modulates voltage-gated calcium channels, exerting its intended effect to reduce neuropathic pain (30). Pregabalin is the second of only two medications that are US FDA-approved for the treatment of neuropathic pain associated with diabetic peripheral neuropathy; it is used for the treatment of postherpetic neuralgia. Studies on BPS are still lacking.

Suplatast tosilate (IPD-1151T) is an oral immunoregulator that suppresses helper-T-cell-mediated allergic processes. Fourteen women with BPS treated with suplatast tosilate reported significantly increased bladder capacity and decreased symptoms after 1 year of treatment. No major side effects occurred and therapeutic effects correlated with a reduction in blood eosinophils, IgE and urinary T cells (31). Comparative controlled data are unavailable.

Quercetin is a bioflavonoid that may be effective in male pelvic pain syndrome. It was first tested in a small open-label study of 29 patients, with hopeful results (32). Theoharides et al. (33) have studied the dietary supplement CystoProtek formulated from quercetin and the natural GAG components, chondroitin sulphate and sodium hyaluronate. In an uncontrolled study, symptoms were significantly improved in 37 BPS patients (NIH criteria), who had failed all forms of therapy and who took six capsules per day for 6 months. Larger controlled studies are warranted by this result.

3.2.12.1 References

1. Nickel JC. Opioids for chronic prostatitis and interstitial cystitis: lessons learned from the 11th World Congress on Pain. Urology 2006 Oct;68(4):697-701. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17070334
2. Badenoch AW. Chronic interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1971 Dec;43(6):718-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5159574
3. Pool TL. Interstitial cystitis: clinical considerations and treatment. Clin Obstet Gynecol 1967 Mar;10(1):185-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6021011
4. Soucy F, Grégoire M. Efficacy of prednisone for severe refractory ulcerative interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2005 Mar;173(3):841-3; discussion 843. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15711286
5. Theoharides TC. Hydroxyzine in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):113-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284834
6. Seshadri P, Emerson L, Morales A. Cimetidine in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. Urology 1994 Oct;44(4):614-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7941209
7. Theoharides TC. Hydroxyzine for interstitial cystitis. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1993 Feb;91(2):686-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8436783
8. Theoharides TC, Sant GR. Hydroxyzine therapy for interstitial cystitis. Urology 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):108-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146011
9. Sant GR, Propert KJ, Hanno PM, et al; Interstitial Cystitis Clinical Trials Group. A pilot clinical trial of oral pentosan polysulfate and oral hydroxyzine in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2003 Sep;170(3):810-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913705
10. Baldessarini RJ. Drugs and the treatment of psychiatric disorders. In: Gilman A, Gooman L, Rall T, eds. The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics. 7th ed. New York: Macmillan, 1985, pp. 387-445.
11. Hand JR. Interstitial cystitis: report of 223 cases (204 women and 19 men). J Urol. 1949 Feb;61(2):291-310. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18111850
12. Hanno PM, Buehler J, Wein AJ. Use of amitriptyline in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1989 Apr;141(4):846-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2926877
13. Kirkemo AK, Miles BJ, Peters JM. Use of amitriptyline in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1990;143 (Suppl):279A.

14. van Ophoven A, Pokupic S, Heinecke A, et al. A prospective, randomized, placebo controlled, doubleblind study of amitriptyline for the treatment of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):533-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247722
15. van Ophoven A, Hertle L. Long-term results of amitriptyline treatment for interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2005 Nov;174(5):1837-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16217303
16. Foster HE Jr, Hanno PM, Nickel JC, et al. Interstitial Cystitis Collaborative Research Network. Effect of amitriptyline on symptoms in treatment naïve patients with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome.J Urol. 2010 May;183(5):1853-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20303115
17. Mulholland SG, Hanno P, Parsons CL, et al. Pentosan polysulfate sodium for therapy of interstitial cystitis. A double-blind placebo-controlled clinical study. Urology 1990 Jun;35(6):552-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1693797
18. Hwang P, Auclair B, Beechinor D, et al. Efficacy of pentosan polysulfate in the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a meta-analysis. Urology 1997 Jul;50(1):39-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9218016
19. Fritjofsson A, Fall M, Juhlin R, et al. Treatment of ulcer and nonulcer interstitial cystitis with sodium pentosanpolysulfate: a multicenter trial. J Urol 1987 Sep;138(3):508-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2442416
20. Nickel JC, Barkin J, Forrest J, et al; Elmiron Study Group. Randomized, double-blind, dose-ranging study of pentosan polysulfate sodium for interstitial cystitis. Urology 2005 Apr;65(4):654-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15833501
21. van Ophoven A, Heinecke A, Hertle L. Safety and efficacy of concurrent application of oral pentosan polysulfate and subcutaneous low-dose heparin for patients with interstitial cystitis. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):707-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230121
22. Warren JW, Horne LM, Hebel JR, et al. Pilot study of sequential oral antibiotics for the treatment of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1685-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799160
23. Oravisto KJ, Alfthan OS. Treatment of interstitial cystitis with immunosuppression and chloroquine derivatives. Eur Urol 1976;2(2):82-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/971677
24. Forsell T, Ruutu M, Isoniemi H, et al. Cyclosporine in severe interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1996 May;155(5):1591-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8627830
25. Moran PA, Dwyer PL, Carey MP, et al. Oral methotrexate in the management of refractory interstitial cystitis. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 1999 Nov;39(4):468-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10687766
26. Sairanen J, Forsell T, Ruutu M. Long-term outcome of patients with interstitial cystitis treated with low dose cyclosporine A. J Urol 2004 Jun;171(6 Pt 1):2138-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15126772
27. Sairanen J, Tammela TL, Leppilahti M, et al. Cyclosporine A and pentosan polysulfate sodium for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a randomized comparative study. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2235-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280777
28. Hansen HC. Interstitial cystitis and the potential role of gabapentin. South Med J 2000 Feb;93(2): 238-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10701800
29. Sasaki K, Smith CP, Chuang YC, et al. Oral gabapentin (neurontin) treatment of refractory genitourinary tract pain. Tech Urol 2001 Mar;7(1):47-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11272678
30. Sonnett TE, Setter SM, Campbell RK. Pregabalin for the treatment of painful neuropathy. Expert RevNeurother 2006 Nov;6(11):1629-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144773
31. Ueda T, Tamaki M, Ogawa O, et al. Improvement of interstitial cystitis symptoms and problems that developed during treatment with oral IPD-1151T. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):1917-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061880
32. Katske F, Shoskes DA, Sender M, et al. Treatment of interstitial cystitis with a quercetin supplement. Tech Urol 2001 Mar;7(1):44-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11272677

33. Theoharides TC, Sant GR. A pilot open label study of Cystoprotek in interstitial cystitis. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 2005 Jan-Mar;18(1):183-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15698523

3.2.13 ***Intravesical treatment***

Intravesical application of medications establishes high concentrations at the target, with few systemic side effects. Disadvantages include the need for intermittent catheterisation, which can be painful in BPS patients, cost, and risk of infection.

Local anaesthetics. There are sporadic reports of successful treatment of BPS with intravesical lidocaine (1,2). Alkalisation of lidocaine before intravesical application improves pharmacokinetics (3). In an uncontrolled study, significant immediate symptom relief was reported in 94% of patients and sustained relief after 2 weeks in 80%, using instillations of combined heparin and alkalinised lidocaine [40,000 U heparin, 2% lidocaine (160 mg), and 3 mL 8.4% sodium bicarbonate] (4). One hundred and two adult patients (99 women) with a clinical diagnosis of BPS were randomised from 19 centres in the USA and Canada to receive a daily intravesical instillation of alkalinised lidocaine or placebo (double-blind), for 5 consecutive days. Treated patients had significant sustained symptom relief for up to 1 month (5).

Pentosan polysulphate sodium is a glycoprotein aimed at replenishing the GAG layer, which is applied intravesically due to poor bioavailability following oral administration. A double-blind placebo-controlled study (6) was performed in 20 patients, of whom 10 received intravesical pentosan polysulphate sodium (300 mg in 50 mL 0.9% saline) twice weekly for 3 months, and 10 received placebo.
At 3 months, four patients in the pentosan polysulphate sodium group and two in the placebo group achieved significant symptomatic relief. Bladder capacity showed a significant increase only in patients treated with pentosan polysulphate sodium. At 18 months, symptoms were relieved in eight patients, who were still receiving pentosan polysulphate sodium instillation, and in four patients not receiving the drug. In another study, a total of 41 women diagnosed with BPS were randomised to receive a combination of intravesical plus oral pentosan polysulphate sodium (21 in treatment group) or intravesical placebo plus oral pentosan polysulphate sodium (20 in placebo group) for 6 weeks. All subjects continued to receive oral pentosan polysulphate sodium for a further 12 weeks. At week 18, the treatment group showed significant improvement in all health-related QoL domains compared to baseline ($P \leq .01$), whereas the placebo group showed significant improvement in only three domains, ($P \leq .05$) compared to baseline (7).

Intravesical heparin has been proposed as a coating agent. In an open, prospective, uncontrolled trial (8), 48 BPS patients received instillations of 10,000 U in 10 mL sterile water three times weekly for 3 months. In over half of the patients, intravesical heparin controlled the symptoms, with continued improvement after 1 year of therapy. Kuo et al. (9) have reported another uncontrolled trial of intravesical heparin (25,000 U twice weekly for 3 months) in women with frequency-urgency syndrome and a positive potassium test. The study included 10 patients with BPS, of whom eight reported symptomatic improvement. Baykal et al. (10) have evaluated intravesical heparin plus dorsal tibial nerve stimulation in 10 refractory BPS patients. Voiding frequency, pain scores and maximum cystometric capacity were significantly better after 2 and 12 months compared to pretreatment values.

Hyaluronic acid (hyaluronan) is a natural proteoglycan aimed at repairing defects in the GAG layer. A response rate of 56% at week 4 and 71% at week 7 was reported in 25 patients treated with hyaluronic acid (11). After week 24, effectiveness decreased, but there was no significant toxicity. Nordling et al. (12) and Kallestrup (13) have reported a 3-year follow-up of a 3-month, prospective, non-randomised study evaluating the effect of intravesical hyaluronic acid on BPS symptoms. Of the 20 patients, 11 chose to continue treatment beyond the initial trial, and modest beneficial long-term effects were noted in about two-thirds of patients. Reduction in urinary frequency was less effective and mostly due to an improvement in night-time voids.

Another study (14) has demonstrated a similar favourable effect of hyaluronic acid on pain reduction. Forty-eight patients with typical symptoms and a positive potassium (0.4 M) sensitivity test were treated with weekly instillations of 40 mg hyaluronic acid for 10 weeks. Visual analogue scale scores showed symptom relief due to hyaluronic acid therapy, irrespective of bladder capacity. The improvement was particularly evident in patients with a reduction in $C_{max} < 30\%$ compared to patients with a reduction of < 30% with 0.2 M KCl solution ($P = 0.003$). Long-term effects were investigated in a study of 70 patients previously treated with hyaluronan. Of the 70 patients initially treated, 48 were available for evaluation. Of these, 50% reported complete remission with no further therapy. Another 41.7% of patients with symptom recurrence improved after retreatment (15).

Chondroitin sulphate. Intravesical chondroitin sulphate (16) demonstrated beneficial effects in patients with a positive potassium stimulation test, in two non-randomised, uncontrolled, open-label pilot studies. Steinhoff (17) treated 18 patients with 40 mL instilled intravesically once weekly for 4 weeks and then once monthly for 12 months. Thirteen of 18 patients were followed for the entire 13-month study. Twelve of these patients responded to treatment within 3-12 weeks. A total of 6/13 (46.2%) showed a good response, 2/13 (15.4%) had a fair response, 4/13 (30.8%) had a partial response, and 1/13 (7.7%) showed no response. In a second trial (18), 24 refractory patients with BPS were treated with high-dose (2.0%) chondroitin sulphate instillations twice weekly for 2 weeks, then weekly with 0.2% solution for 4 weeks, and monthly thereafter for 1 year. The average symptom improvement reported in 20 patients completing the trial was 73.1% (range: 50-95%). The time to optimum response was 4-6 months. A more concentrated 2.0% solution was needed in eight patients to maintain results.
Sixty-five patients with BPS were treated in a prospective, randomised, double-blind, inactive vehicle-controlled, 12-week study (6 weeks treatment, followed by 6 weeks follow-up). At the primary endpoint analysis (week 7), 22.6% of the vehicle control group were responders compared with 39.4% of the active therapy group, however, the difference was not significant, probably due to underpowering of the study (19,20).

Dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) is a chemical solvent and water-soluble liquid that penetrates cell membranes. It is claimed to have analgesic, anti-inflammatory, collagenolytic, and muscle relaxant effects. It is also a scavenger of the intracellular OH radical, which is believed to be an important trigger of the inflammatory process. It has been tested empirically and found to alleviate symptoms in BPS. DMSO is now a standard treatment. In a controlled crossover trial (21), 33 patients received instillations of 50% DMSO solution and placebo (saline). All patients received both regimens, which were administered intravesically every 2 weeks for two sessions of four treatments each. Subjective improvement was noted in 53% of patients receiving DMSO versus 18% receiving placebo, and objective improvement in 93% and 35%, respectively.

Other uncontrolled trials with DMSO have reported response rates of 50-70% for a period of 1-2 months (22). Rossberger et al. (23) have evaluated the discomfort and long-term effects of DMSO instillations in a total of 28 patients. Side effects were no more common or pronounced in patients with classic compared to non-ulcer disease. After DMSO instillations, a residual treatment effect lasting 16-72 months could be seen. DMSO is contraindicated during UTIs or shortly after bladder biopsy. It temporarily causes a garlic-like odour. There is a case report in which DMSO treatment may have caused pigmented eye lens deposits (24), therefore, ophthalmic review should be considered during treatment.

Bacillus Calmette Guérin (BCG). The tuberculosis BCG vaccine is used for its immunomodulatory properties in the intravesical treatment of superficial bladder carcinoma. In 1997, a small prospective, double-blind pilot study showed that intravesical BCG demonstrated a 60% response rate versus 27% in the placebo group in 30 patients who received six weekly instillations of Tice strain BCG or placebo (25). In a subsequent 24-33-month follow-up study, eight of the nine responders reported BPS symptom amelioration. BCG did not worsen symptoms in non-responders (26). However, these results are at variance with two controlled trials. In a prospective, double-blind crossover trial of BCG and DMSO (86), BCG treatment failed to demonstrate any benefit.
Another randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial of 260 refractory BPS patients (27) reported global response rates of 12% for placebo and 21% for BCG (P = 0.062). Small improvements were observed for all secondary outcomes (voiding diary, pain, urgency, symptom indexes, and adverse events), some of which were greater with BCG, but with only borderline statistical significance.
In a subsequent study (28), 156 non-responders from both groups were offered treatment with open-label BCG. The low response rate (18%) for BCG in this series and the results of the same group's (Interstitial Cystitis Clinical Trials Group; ICCTG) follow-up on the responders, which found no differences, have substantiated the argument against the routine use of BCG for BPS (29).

Vanilloids disrupt sensory neurons (30). Resiniferatoxin (RTX) is an ultrapotent analogue of the chilli pepper extract capsaicin, causing less pain on instillation and therefore no anaesthesia. Chen et al. (31) have investigated RTX tolerability (0.05 or 0.10 μM) in 22 BPS patients versus placebo. The most commonly reported adverse event was pain during instillation (RTX > 80.0%, placebo 25.0%) but no serious adverse events were reported. In a small RCT on 18 patients with hypersensitive bladder disorder and pain (32), RTX significantly reduced mean frequency, nocturia, and pain scores by about 50%. In another study of seven patients with detrusor hyper-reflexia, RTX improved urinary frequency, incontinence and bladder capacity (33). In a small open-label study with single-dose RTX in patients with frequency and urgency (34), RTX significantly improved LUTS, urodynamic parameters, and QoL for up to 6 months. These results are in contrast with an RCT in 163 BPS patients randomly assigned to receive a single intravesical dose of 50 mL of either placebo or RTX (0.01, 0.05 or 0.10 μM) (35). RTX resulted in a dose-dependent increase in instillation pain, but otherwise was well

tolerated. It did not improve overall symptoms, pain, urgency, frequency, nocturia, or average void volume during 12 weeks follow-up.

More favourable results have been reported from a prospective study on multiple intravesical instillations of RTX (36) (0.01 μM once weekly for 4 weeks). Among 12 patients (one drop-out for severe pain), the overall satisfaction rate was 58.3%, with several scales of symptom and QoL significantly improved after RTX treatment. There was no significant increase in functional bladder capacity or change in urodynamic parameters. A prospective, randomised, double-blind, crossover study was performed in 26 women, who received instillations with various pH values. There was no evidence that changes in urinary pH affected the pain associated with BPS (37).

3.2.13.1 References

1. Giannakopoulos X, Champilomatos P. Chronic interstitial cystitis. Successful treatment with intravesical lidocaine. Arch Ital Urol Nefrol Androl 1992 Dec;64(4):337-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1462157
2. Asklin B, Cassuto J. Intravesical lidocaine in severe interstitial cystitis. Case report. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1989;23(4):311-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2595329
3. Henry R, Patterson L, Avery N, et al. Absorption of alkalized intravesical lidocaine in normal and inflamed bladders: a simple method for improving bladder anaesthesia. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 1):1900-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371877
4. Parsons CL. Successful downregulation of bladder sensory nerves with combination of heparin and alkalinized lidocaine in patients with interstitial cystitis. Urology 2005 Jan;65(1):45-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15667861
5. Nickel JC, Moldwin R, Lee S, et al. Intravesical alkalinized lidocaine (PSD597) offers sustained relief from symptoms of interstitial cystitis and painful bladder syndrome. BJU Int. 2009 Apr;103(7):910-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19021619
6. Bade JJ, Laseur M, Nieuwenburg A, et al. A placebo-controlled study of intravesical pentosanpolysulphate for the treatment of interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1997 Feb;79(2):168-71.
7. Davis EL, El Khoudary SR, Talbott EO, et al. Safety and efficacy of the use of intravesical and oral pentosan polysulfate sodium for interstitial cystitis: a randomized double-blind clinical trial.J Urol. 2008 Jan;179(1):177-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18001798
8. Parsons CL, Housley T, Schmidt JD, et al. Treatment of interstitial cystitis with intravesical heparin. BrJ Urol 1994 May;73(5):504-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8012771
9. Kuo HC. Urodynamic results of intravesical heparin therapy for women with frequency urgency syndrome and interstitial cystitis. J Formos Med Assoc 2001 May;100(5):309-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11432309
10. Baykal K, Senkul T, Sen B, et al. Intravesical heparin and peripheral neuromodulation on interstitial cystitis. Urol Int 2005;74(4):361-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15897705
11. Morales A, Emerson L, Nickel JC, et al. Intravesical hyaluronic acid in the treatment of refractory interstitial cystitis. Urology. 1997 May;49(5A Suppl):111-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146012
12. Nordling J, Jørgensen S, Kallestrup E. Cystistat for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a 3-year followup study. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):123. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378112
13. Kallestrup EB, Jørgensen S, Nordling J, et al. Treatment of interstitial cystitis with Cystistat: a hyaluronic acid product. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2005;39(2):143-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16032779
14. Daha LK, Riedl CR, Lazar D, et al. Do cystometric findings predict the results of intravesical hyaluronic acid in women with interstitial cystitis? Eur Urol 2005 Mar;47(3):393-7; discussion 397. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15716206
15. Engelhardt PF, Morakis N, Daha LK, et al. Long-term results of intravesical hyaluronan therapy in bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2011 Apr;22(4): 401-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20938644

16. Palylyk-Colwell E. Chondroitin sulfate for interstitial cystitis. Issues Emerg Health Technol 2006 May(84);1-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16724430
17. Steinhoff G. The efficacy of chondroitin sulfate in treating interstitial cystitis. Can J Urol. 2002 Feb;9(1):1454-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11886599
18. Sorensen RB. Chondroitin sulphate in the treatment of interstitial cystitis and chronic inflammatory disease of the urinary bladder. Eur Urol 2003;Suppl 2:16-8.
19. Nickel JC, Egerdie B, Downey J, et al. A real-life multicentre clinical practice study to evaluate the efficacy and safety of intravesical chondroitin sulphate for the treatment of interstitial cystitis. BJU Int. 2009 Jan;103(1):56-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18778342
20. Nickel JC, Egerdie RB, Steinhoff G, et al. A multicenter, randomized, double-blind, parallel group pilot evaluation of the efficacy and safety of intravesical sodium chondroitin sulfate versus vehicle control in patients with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2010 Oct;76(4):804-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20494413
21. Perez-Marrero R, Emerson LE, Feltis JT. A controlled study of dimethyl sulfoxide in interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1988 Jul;140(1):36-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3288775
22. Sant GR, LaRock DR. Standard intravesical therapies for interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb;21(1):73-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284849
23. Rössberger J, Fall M, Peeker R. Critical appraisal of dimethyl sulfoxide treatment for interstitial cystitis:discomfort, side-effects and treatment outcome. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2005;39(1):73-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15764276
24. Rowley S, Baer R. Lens deposits associated with RIMSO-50 (dimethylsulphoxide). Eye 2001 Jun;15(Pt 3):332-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11450733
25. Peters K, Diokno A, Steinert B, et al. The efficacy Of intravesical Tice strain bacillus Calmette-Guerin in the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a double-blind, prospective, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 1997 Jun;157(6):2090-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9146587
26. Peters KM, Diokno AC, Steinert BW, et al. The efficacy of intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin in the treatment of interstitial cystitis: long-term followup. J Urol 1998 May;159(5):1483-6; discussion1486-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9554338
27. Mayer R, Propert KJ, Peters KM, et al. Interstitial Cystitis Clinical Trials Group. A randomized controlled trial of intravesical bacillus calmette-guerin for treatment refractory interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2005 Apr;173(4):1186-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15758738
28. Propert KJ, Mayer R, Nickel JC, et al. Interstitial Cystitis Clinical Trials Group. Did patients with interstitial cystitis who failed to respond to initial treatment with bacillus Calmette-Guerin or placebo in a randomized clinical trial benefit from a second course of open label bacillus Calmette-Guerin? J Urol 2007 Sep;178(3 Pt 1):886-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17631335
29. Propert KJ, Mayer R, Nickel JC, et al. Interstitial Cystitis Clinical Trials Group. Followup of patients with interstitial cystitis responsive to treatment with intravesical bacillus Calmette-Guerin or placebo. J Urol. 2008 Feb;179(2):552-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082224
30. Chancellor MB. RTX exotoxins. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):106-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378069
31. Chen TY, Corcos J, Camel M, et al. Prospective, randomized, double-blind study of safety and tolerability of intravesical resiniferatoxin (RTX) in interstitial cystitis (IC). Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2005 Jul-Aug;16(4):293-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15818465
32. Lazzeri M, Beneforti P, Spinelli M, et al. Intravesical resiniferatoxin for the treatment of hypersensitive disorder: a randomized placebo controlled study. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):676-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953124
33. Silva C, Avelino A, Souto-Moura C, et al. A light- and electron-microscopic histopathological study of human bladder mucosa after intravesical resiniferatoxin application. BJU Int 2001 Sep;88(4):355-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11564021

34. Apostolidis A, Gonzales GE, Fowler CJ. Effect of intravesical Resiniferatoxin (RTX) on lower urinary tract symptoms, urodynamic parameters, and quality of life of patients with urodynamic increased bladder sensation. Eur Urol 2006 Dec;50(6):1299-305. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16697519
35. Payne CK, Mosbaugh PG, Forrest JB, et al. ICOS RTX Study Group (Resiniferatoxin Treatment for Interstitial Cystitis). Intravesical resiniferatoxin for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled trial. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1590-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821499
36. Peng CH, Kuo HC. Multiple intravesical instillations of low-dose resiniferatoxin in the treatment of refractory interstitial cystitis. Urol Int 2007;78(1):78-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17192738
37. Nguan C, Franciosi LG, Butterfield NN, et al. A prospective, double-blind, randomized cross-over study evaluating changes in urinary pH for relieving the symptoms of interstitial cystitis. BJU Int 2005 Jan;95(1):91-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15638902

3.2.14 ***Interventional treatments***

Bladder distension. A frequently cited report by Bumpus *et al*. (1) claims that hydrodistension achieved symptom improvement in 100 patients over several months. However, the study did not define either patient population or symptoms and the methods used were inadequately described. Reports by Ormond (2) and Longacre (3) were just as vague during the 1930s. In 1957, an uncontrolled retrospective study was presented by Franksson (4), who treated 33 patients with repeated, up to 10-fold, distensions. Twelve patients had improved symptoms for up to 4 weeks, in 14 patients for up to 6 months, and in seven patients for up to 1 year. British studies from the 1970s have reported contradictory results. Dunn et al. (5) have claimed to have achieved complete absence of symptoms in 16/25 patients during a mean follow-up of 14 months using the Helmstein method (6), in which an intravesical balloon is distended at the level of systolic blood pressure for 3 h. Bladder rupture occurred in two cases. These results disagree with those of Badenoch (7), who failed to note any improvement in 44/56 patients after hydrodistension. Twenty years later, McCahy (8) rejected balloon hydrodistension because of inefficacy and a complication rate of 20%. In the recent literature, bladder necrosis following hydrodistension has been extremely rare (9).

In 2002, Glemain *et al*. (10) reported an uncontrolled study on 65 BPS patients treated by 3 h balloon hydrodistension. Treatment efficacy in the 33 retrospectively and 32 prospectively studied patients was 38% and 60% at 6 months, and 22% and 43% at 1 year, respectively. Results were superior for bladder capacities > 150 mL.

Ottem and Teichmann (2006) reported a retrospective study of 84 BPS patients (11), and 56% reported short-lived improvement from hydrodistension. Rose et al. have investigated bladder distension using electromotive drug administration (EMDA) (12,13), as an alternative to general anaesthesia. Among 11 patients, the distension capacity achieved by EMDA was nearly identical to that in the operating room and cystoscopic findings were similar. Yamada et al. (14) have reported on repeated hydrodistension in 52 BPS patients (NIH criteria). Under epidural anaesthesia, the bladder was repeatedly distended to maximal capacity and distension was repeated on the following day for 30 min. Five patients were classified as good responders, 30 as moderate and 17 as poor. Overall, hydrodistension was effective for ~70% of patients for > 3 months, without serious complications.

According to a study by Erickson et al. (15), the median symptom score for newly diagnosed patients decreased after distension, but only a few patients had at least 30% symptom improvement. Bladder distension altered levels of urine antiproliferative factor and heparin-binding epidermal-growth-factor-like growth factor towards normal. However, the mechanism of symptom relief after distension remains unknown.

In a retrospective review of 185 patients who underwent hydrodistension (16), results failed to identify any statistically significant differences in objective findings (anaesthetic capacity, glomerulations) following distension, or any therapeutic benefits, when patients were categorised according to presenting symptoms.

Although bladder hydrodistension is a common treatment for BPS, scientific justification is scarce. It represents a diagnostic tool, but has a limited therapeutic role.

EMDA enhances tissue penetration of ionised drugs by iontophoresis. When adapted for the bladder, EMDA uses a transurethral anode and a suprapubic skin cathode. EMDA is expensive and has been the subject of uncontrolled studies only.

Six BPS patients were treated with EMDA using lidocaine (1.5%) and 1:100,000 adrenaline in aqueous solution, while the bladder was dilated to maximum tolerance (17). Significant bladder enlargement was achieved and voiding symptoms and pain decreased. In four patients, the results were reported as durable.

Rosamilia et al. (18) treated 21 women using EMDA with lidocaine and dexamethasone, followed by bladder distension. A good response was seen in 85% of patients at 2 weeks, with 63% still responding at 2 months. Complete resolution of pain was achieved in 25% of patients reviewed at 6 months. Using a similar technique, Riedl et al. (19) noted complete resolution of bladder symptoms in 8/13 patients lasting 1-17 months. Partial or short-term improvement was observed in three patients. Two patients experienced aggravated pain for several days after therapy. A 66% increase in bladder capacity was observed. Upon symptom recurrence, treatments were repeated with equal efficacy in 11 patients.

Transurethral resection (TUR) coagulation and laser. Endourological ablation of bladder tissue aims to eliminate urothelial, mostly Hunner, lesions. In a case report, Kerr (20) has described TUR of a 1-cm ulcer in a woman who experienced symptom resolution for 1 year. Subsequently, Greenberg et al. (21) have reported 77 patients with Hunner ulcers treated over a 40-year period: 42 were managed conservatively, seven underwent fulguration, and 28 were treated by TUR in a non-randomised fashion. Fulguration improved symptoms in 5/7 patients. All patients experienced symptom recurrence in < 1 year and efficacy was not superior to non-surgical treatment.

In another series of 30 BPS type C patients (22), complete TUR of visible lesions resulted in an initial disappearance of pain in all patients and a decrease in frequency in 21. Relapse was noted in one-third of patients after 2-20 months, while the remaining two-thirds were still pain-free after 2-42 months. The same group recently has reported the largest series of patients with BPS type C treated by complete TUR of all visible ulcers (23). A total of 259 TURs were performed on 103 patients. Ninety-two patients experienced amelioration, with symptom relief lasting > 3 years in 40% of patients, and most of the remaining patients responded well to subsequent TUR.

Transurethral application of the (Nd-YAG) laser is suggested as an alternative to TUR for endoscopic treatment in BPS. Shanberg *et al.* (24) have treated five refractory BPS patients, four of whom demonstrated cessation of pain and frequency within several days. Follow-up at 3-15 months revealed no relapse, except for mild recurrent voiding symptoms. This series was extended to 76 patients treated at two institutions (25). Although 21 of 27 patients with Hunner ulcers noted symptom improvement, 12 experienced relapse within 18 months. In the group without ulcers, only 20 of 49 patients improved, of whom 10 required further therapy within 1 year.

In a later study, 24 patients with refractory BPS type C underwent ablative Nd-YAG laser ablation of Hunner's ulcers (26). All patients showed symptom improvement within a few days, without complications. At 23 months, mean pain and urgency scores, nocturia and voiding intervals improved significantly. However, relapse in 11 patients required up to four additional treatments. Controlled studies are still lacking. Endourological resection is not applicable to non-ulcer BPS.

Botulinum toxin A (BTX-A) may have an antinociceptive effect on bladder afferent pathways, producing both symptomatic and urodynamic improvements (27). Thirteen BPS patients were injected with 100-200 IU of BTX-A (abobotulinumtoxin A or onabotulinumtoxin A) into 20-30 sites submucosally in the trigone and floor of the bladder. Overall, nine (69%) patients noted subjective improvement, and ICSI scores improved by 70% ($P < 0.05$). There were significant decreases in daytime frequency, nocturia and pain, and a significant increase in first desire to void and maximal cystometric capacity. However, these results are in contrast with those in another study of BTX-A (onabotulinumtoxin A) in 10 patients with BPS (28). One hundred units were injected suburothelially into 20 sites in five patients, while 100 U were injected into the trigone in the remaining five. None of the patients became symptom-free; two showed only limited improvement in bladder capacity and pain score.

To ascertain effect of repeat injections a total of 13 patients were followed up for 2 years, while 58 injections were administered with a mean of 4.8 ± 0.8 injections per patient. The mean interval between two consecutive injections was 5.25 ± 0.75 months. At 1 and 4 months follow-up, 10 patients reported a subjective improvement. Mean VAS scores, mean daytime and night-time urinary frequency decreased significantly. The three non-responders to the first intravesical treatment session underwent further treatment 3 months later with satisfactory results. At 1 and 2 years follow-up, the beneficial effects persisted in all patients (29).

In an RCT, the difference between hydrodistension and hydrodistension plus intravesical BTX-A (onabotulinumtoxin A) was analysed. Of the 67 patients, 44 were divided in two groups: one received 200 U and the other 100 U, and cystoscopic hydrodistension was performed after 2 weeks. The remaining 23 patients received hydrodistension only. There was symptomatic improvement in all groups. However, in the hydrodistension group, 70% had returned to their previous symptoms after the first month, while in the BTX-A-treated groups, there was improvement of VAS, functional bladder capacity and cystometric bladder capacity at 3 months. At 12 and 24 months, the results in the active group were 55 and 30% versus 26 and 17% in the hydrodistension group (30).

Trigonal-only injection seems effective and long-lasting because 87% of patients (n = 23) reported improvement after a 3-month follow-up period in a study by Pinto *et al.* Over 50% referred continuity of the beneficial effect 9 months after the first treatment. When retreatment was needed, similar results were obtained. The authors concluded that this treatment is safe, effective and can be repeated (31).

Hyperbaric oxygen (HBO). In a prospective pilot study, six patients underwent 30 sessions of 100% HBO inhalation and were followed up for > 15 months. Four patients rated the therapeutic result as excellent or good, while two showed only short-term amelioration (32). In a subsequent double-blind, sham-controlled study (33), 3/14 patients on HBO and no control patients were identified as responders ($P < 0.05$). At 12 months, three patients (21.4%) still reported a treatment response. Hyperbaric oxygenation resulted in a decrease of baseline urgency and pain ($P < 0.05$). ICSI scores decreased from 26 to 20 points in patients on HBO, while sham treatment did not result in any improvement. These results suggest that HBO is a safe and feasible therapeutic approach, with moderate effects on a small subgroup of BPS patients. Disadvantages include high costs, limited availability of treatment sites and time-consuming treatment.

Neuromodulation. In the first prospective, single-blind, crossover trial of sacral nerve stimulation (SNS) versus pudendal nerve stimulation (PNS) for patients with BPS (n = 22), PNS gave an overall 59% improvement in symptoms, whereas SNS gave an overall 44% improvement ($P = 0.05$). Most patients who tested both a sacral and pudendal electrode chose PNS as the better site. Follow-up showed marked improvements in voiding variables and validated BPS symptom questionnaires. Over 90% of patients treated with neuromodulation stated that they would undergo implantation again (34).

Long-term results were verified in a retrospective study of 78 patients treated from 1994 to 2008. Permanent sacral neuromodulation implantation was performed in patients who showed at least 50% improvement in their symptoms with a temporary peripheral nerve evaluation test. Median follow-up was 61.5 ± 27.7 months. Good long-term success of sacral neuromodulation was seen in 72% of the patients. The explantation rate was 28%. The most frequent reason for explantation was poor outcome (54% of the failed patients). The revision rate was 50% (35).

In another observational, retrospective, case-controlled review (January 2002-March 2004), 34 female patients underwent permanent device implants . Mean pre-/postoperative pelvic pain and urgency/frequency scores were 21.61 ± 8.6/9.22 ± 6.6 ($P < 0.01$), and mean pre-/postoperative visual analogue pain scale (VAPS) scores were 6.5 ± 2.9/2.4 ± 1.1 ($P < 0.01$). Mean follow-up was 86 ± 9.8 months. Sacral neuromodulation showed adequate improvement for the symptoms of refractory BPS. Reoperation rate was 25% (36).

3.2.14.1 References

1. Bumpus HCJ. Interstitial cystitis: its treatment by overdistension of the bladder. Med Clin North Am 1930;13:1495-8.
2. Ormond JK. Interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1935;33:576-82.
3. Longacre JJ. The treatment of contracted bladder with controlled tidal irrigation. J Urol 1936;36:25-33.
4. Franksson C. Interstitial cystitis: a clinical study of fifty-nine cases. Acta Chir Scand 1957 May;113(1):51-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13443727
5. Dunn M, Ramsden PD, Roberts JB, et al. Interstitial cystitis, treated by prolonged bladder distension. Br J Urol 1977;49(7):641-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/597701
6. Helmstein K. Treatment of bladder carcinoma by a hydrostatic pressure technique. Report on 43 cases. Br J Urol 1972 Aug;44(4):434-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5070147
7. Badenoch AW. Chronic interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1971 Dec;43(6):718-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5159574
8. McCahy PJ, Styles RA. Prolonged bladder distension: experience in the treatment of detrusor overactivity and interstitial cystitis. Eur Urol 1995;28(4):325-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8575501
9. Zabihi N, Allee T, Maher MG, et al. Bladder necrosis following hydrodistention in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2007 Jan;177(1):149-52; discussion 152. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17162025
10. Glemain P, Rivière C, Lenormand L, et al. Prolonged hydrodistention of the bladder for symptomatic treatment of interstitial cystitis: efficacy at 6 months and 1 year. Eur Urol 2002 Jan;41(1):79-84. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11999471

11. Ottem DP, Teichman JM. What is the value of cystoscopy with hydrodistension for interstitial cystitis? Urology 2005 Sep;66(3):494-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16140064
12. Rose AE, Azevedo KJ, Payne CK. Office bladder distention with electromotive drug administration (EMDA) is equivalent to distention under general anesthesia (GA). BMC Urol 2005 Nov;5:14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16300684
13. Rose AE, Payne CK, Azevedo K. Pilot study of the feasibility of in-office bladder distention using electromotive drug adminstration (EMDA). Neurourol Urodyn 2005;24(3):254-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15747341
14. Yamada T, Murayama T, Andoh M. Adjuvant hydrodistension under epidural anesthesia for interstitial cystitis. Int J Urol 2003 Sep;10(9):463-8; discussion 469.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12941123
15. Erickson DR, Kunselman AR, Bentley CM, et al. Changes in urine markers and symptoms after bladder distention for interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2):556-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222633
16. Cole EE, Scarpero HM, Dmochowski RR. Are patient symptoms predictive of the diagnostic and/or therapeutic value of hydrodistention? Neurourol Urodyn 2005;24(7):638-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16208660
17. Gürpinar T, Wong HY, Griffith DP. Electromotive administration of intravesical lidocaine in patients with interstitial cystitis. J Endourol 1996 Oct;10(5):443-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8905491
18. Rosamilia A, Dwyer PL, Gibson J. Electromotive drug administration of lidocaine and dexamethasone followed by cystodistension in women with interstitial cystitis. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 1997;8(3):142-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9449586
19. Riedl CR, Knoll M, Plas E, et al. Electromotive drug administration and hydrodistention for the treatment of interstitial cystitis. J Endourol 1998 Jun;12(3):269-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9658301
20. Kerr WS Jr. Interstitial cystitis: treatment by transurethral resection. J Urol 1971 ay;105(5):664-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4397018
21. Fall M. Conservative management of chronic interstitial cystitis: transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation and transurethral resection. J Urol 1985 May;133(5):774-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3872946
22. Peeker R, Aldenborg F, Fall M. Complete transurethral resection of ulcers in classic interstitial cystitis. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000;11(5):290-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11052564
23. Greenberg E, Barnes R, Stewart S, et al. Transurethral resection of Hunner's ulcer. J Urol 1974 Jun;111(6):764-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4830879
24. Shanberg AM, Baghdassarian R, Tansey LA. Treatment of interstitial cystitis with the neodymium-YAG laser. J Urol 1985 Nov;134(5):885-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3840538
25. Malloy TR, Shanberg AM. Laser therapy for interstitial cystitis. Urol Clin North Am 1994 Feb; 21(1): 141-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8284837
26. Rofeim O, Hom D, Freid RM, et al. Use of the neodymium: yag laser for interstitial cystitis: a prospective study. J Urol 2001 Jul;166(1):134-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11435840
27. Smith CP, Radziszewski P, Borkowski A, et al. Botulinum toxin a has antinociceptive effects in treating interstitial cystitis. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):871-5; discussion 875.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533466
28. Kuo HC. Preliminary results of suburothelial injection of botulinum a toxin in the treatment of chronic interstitial cystitis. Urol Int 2005;75(2):170-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16123573
29. Giannantoni A, Mearini E, Del Zingaro M, et al.Two-year efficacy and safety of botulinum a toxin intravesical injections in patients affected by refractory painful bladder syndrome. Curr Drug Deliv. 2010 Jan;7(1):1-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19863481

30. Kuo HC, Chancellor MB. Comparison of intravesical botulinum toxin type A injections plus hydrodistention with hydrodistention alone for the treatment of refractory interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome.BJU Int. 2009 Sep;104(5):657-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19338543
31. Pinto R, Lopes T, Frias B, et al. Trigonal injection of botulinum toxin A in patients with refractory bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis. Eur Urol. 2010 Sep;58(3):360-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20227820
32. van Ophoven A, Rossbach G, Oberpenning F, et al. Hyperbaric oxygen for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: long-term results of a prospective pilot study. Eur Urol 2004 Jul;46(1):108-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183555
33. van Ophoven A, Rossbach G, Pajonk F, et al. Safety and efficacy of hyperbaric oxygen therapy for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: a randomized, sham controlled, double-blind trial. J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 1):1442-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952654
34. Peters KM, Feber KM, Bennett RC. A prospective, single-blind, randomized crossover trial of sacral vs pudendal nerve stimulation for interstitial cystitis. BJU Int. 2007 Oct;100(4):835-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17822464
35. Gajewski JB, Al-Zahrani AA. The long-term efficacy of sacral neuromodulation in the management of intractable cases of bladder pain syndrome: 14 years of experience in one centre. BJU Int. 2011 Apr;107(8):1258-64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20883483
36. Marinkovic SP, Gillen LM, Marinkovic CM. Minimum 6-year outcomes for interstitial cystitis treated with sacral neuromodulation. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2011 Apr;22(4):407-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20848271

3.2.15 ***Treatments of limited efficacy and absence of recent publications***

Cimetidine. The H2-blocker cimetidine has been reported to improve symptoms in BPS (1). Thirty-six patients were enrolled in a double-blind clinical study with oral cimetidine versus placebo for 3 months. Patients receiving cimetidine showed a significant improvement in symptom scores, pain and nocturia, although histologically, the bladder mucosa showed no qualitative changes in either group (2).

Prostaglandins. Misoprostol is a prostaglandin that regulates various immunological cascades. Twenty-five BPS patients received 600 µg/day misoprostol for 3 months, with responders treated for a further 6 months. At 3 months, 14 had significantly improved, with 12 showing a sustained response after a further 6 months. However, the incidence of adverse drug effects was 64% (3).

L-Arginine. Oral treatment with l-arginine, the substrate for NO synthase, has been reported to decrease BPS-related symptoms (4-6). NO has been shown to be elevated in patients with BPS (7). However, others could not demonstrate either symptomatic relief or change in NO production after treatment (8,9).

Anticholinergics. Oxybutynin is an anticholinergic drug used in overactive detrusor dysfunction. Intravesically administered oxybutynin was combined with bladder training in one study, with improvement of functional bladder capacity, volume at first sensation and cystometric bladder capacity (10). However, the effect on pain was not reported.

Duloxetine inhibits both serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake. In an observational study, 48 women were prospectively treated with duloxetine for 2 months following an up-titration protocol to the target dose of 2 40 mg/day duloxetine over 8 weeks (11). Duloxetine did not result in significant improvement of symptoms. Administration was safe, but tolerability was poor due to nausea. Based on these preliminary data, duloxetine cannot be recommended as a therapeutic approach for BPS.

Clorpactin is a detergent of hypochloric acid previously used to treat BPS (12-16). Due to high complication rates (14-17), clorpactin instillations can no longer be recommended.

3.2.15.1 References

1. Dasgupta P, Sharma SD, Womack C, et al. Cimetidine in painful bladder syndrome: a histopathological study. BJU Int 2001 Aug;88(3):183-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11488726

2. Thilagarajah R, Witherow RO, Walker MM. Oral cimetidine gives effective symptom relief in painful bladder disease: a prospective, randomized, double-blind placebo-controlled trial. BJU Int 2001 Feb;87(3):207-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11167643
3. Kelly JD, Young MR, Johnston SR, et al. Clinical response to an oral prostaglandin analogue in patients with interstitial cystitis. Eur Urol 1998;34(1):53-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9676414
4. Korting GE, Smith SD, Wheeler MA, et al. A randomized double-blind trial of oral Larginine for treatment of interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1999 Feb;161(2):558-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9915448
5. Wheeler MA, Smith SD, Saito N, et al. Effect of long-term oral L-arginine on the nitric oxide synthase pathway in the urine from patients with interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1997 Dec; 158(6):2045-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9366309
6. Smith SD, Wheeler MA, Foster HE Jr, et al. Improvement in interstitial cystitis symptom scores during treatment with oral L-arginine. J Urol 1997 Sep;158(3 Pt 1):703-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9258064
7. Lundberg JO, Ehren I, Jansson O, et al. Elevated nitric oxide in the urinary bladder in infectious and noninfectious cystitis. Urology 1996 Nov;48(5):700-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8911512
8. Ehren I, Lundberg JO, Adolfsson J, et al. Effects of L-arginine treatment on symptoms and bladder nitric oxide levels in patients with interstitial cystitis. Urology 1998 Dec;52(6):1026-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9836549
9. Cartledge JJ, Davies AM, Eardley I. A randomized double-blind placebo-controlled crossover trial of the efficacy of L-arginine in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. BJU Int 2000 Mar;85(4):421-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10691818
10. Barbalias GA, Liatsikos EN, Athanasopoulos A, et al. Interstitial cystitis: bladder training with intravesical oxybutynin. J Urol 2000 Jun;163(6):1818-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10799190
11. van Ophoven A, Hertle L. The dual serotonin and noradrenaline reuptake inhibitor duloxetine for the treatment of interstitial cystitis: results of an observational study. J Urol 2007 Feb;177(2):552-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17222632
12. O'Conor VJ. Clorpactin WCS-90 in the treatment of interstitial cystitis. Q Bull Northwest Univ Med Sch 1955;29(4):293-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13273619
13. Wishard WN Jr, Nourse MH, Mertz JH. Use of Clorpactin WCS 90 for relief of symptoms due to interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1957 Mar;77(3):420-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13417272
14. Messing EM, Freiha FS. Complication of Clorpactin WCS90 therapy for interstitial cystitis. Urology 1979 Apr;13(4):389-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/219578
15. Murnaghan GF, Saalfeld J, Farnworth RH. Interstitial cystitis - treatment with Clorpactin WCS 90. Br J Urol 1970 Dec;42(6):744.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5491939
16. von Heyden B, Schmid HP. [Intravesical therapy of interstitial cystitis.] Urologe A 2000 Nov;39(6): 542-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11138274
17. Hanno P. Interstitial cystitis and related diseases. In: Walsh PC, Retik AB, Stamey TA, Vaughan ED, eds. Campbell's Urology. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Co., 1998, pp. 648.

3.2.16 ***Non-pharmacological treatments***

Behavioural bladder training techniques are attractive for BPS patients with predominant symptoms of frequency/urgency but hardly any pain. Parsons *et al*. (1) included 21 selected BPS patients in a protocol that focused on progressively increasing micturition intervals. Fifteen patients reported a 50% decrease in urgency, frequency and nocturia, and there was a moderate increase in bladder capacity. Chaiken *et al*. (2) retrospectively analysed 42 patients, who had been instructed in diary keeping, timed voiding, controlled fluid intake, and pelvic floor muscle training. After 12 weeks, voiding intervals increased by a mean 93 min and daily micturition was reduced by an average of nine voids. Overall, 88% of the patients reported markedly improved or improved symptoms.

Diet. Dietary restrictions are among the many physical self-care strategies found among BPS patients (3).

In an analysis of the Interstitial Cystitis Data Base (ICDB) cohort study, special diets were among the five most commonly used therapies (4). Bade *et al*. (5) have found that BPS patients consume significantly fewer calories, less fat and coffee, but more fibre. Scientific data on a rationale for such diets are unavailable. The concentration of some metabolites and amino acids appears to be changed in BPS (6).

A study of the metabolism of the arylalkylamines (tryptophan, tyrosine, tyramine and phenylalanine) in 250 patients revealed an inability to synthesise normal amounts of serotonin and MHPG noradrenaline metabolite. In this study, dietary restriction of acid foods and arylalkylamines lessened the symptoms, but did not alter specific abnormalities in dopamine metabolism. In another, non-randomised, prospective study of BPS patients with nutrition-related exacerbations, calcium glycerophosphate was reported to ease food-related flares (7). The observed efficacy seems little better than would be expected with placebo.

Overall, dietary management is a common self-care strategy in BPS and offers a cost-effective therapeutic approach. Comprehensive instructions on how to identify individual trigger foods are given in the IC-Network Patient Handbook (8). However, scientific data are limited and dietary restriction alone does not produce complete symptomatic relief.

Acupuncture. In non-curable and agonising diseases like BPS, desperate patients often try complementary medicines, such as acupuncture. However, scientific evidence for such treatments is often poor, with contradictory results from a few low-evidence reports on acupuncture, with any effects appearing to be limited and temporary. A significant increase in capacity occurred after acupuncture in 52 women with 85% reporting an improvement in frequency, urgency and dysuria and symptoms (9). However, at follow-up at 1 and 3 years, these effects were no longer detectable and the authors concluded that repeated acupuncture was necessary to maintain beneficial effects (10).

In a non-randomised comparison in women with urethral syndrome, 128 treated by acupuncture and traditional Chinese medicine were compared with 52 treated by western medicine as controls. Efficacy rates and urodynamic parameters were significantly better in the acupuncture group (11). In contrast, in a prospective study on the effect of acupuncture in BPS (12), no differences in frequency, voided volumes or symptom scores were noted, and only one patient improved for a short period of time.

Hypnosis is a therapeutic adjunct in the management of cancer, surgical disease and chronic pain. Although used in urological patients (13,14), there are no scientific data on its effect on BPS symptoms.

Physiotherapy. General body exercise may be beneficial in some BPS patients (15). An uncontrolled trial of transvaginal manual therapy of the pelvic floor musculature (Thiele massage) in 21 BPS patients with high-tone dysfunction of the pelvic floor resulted in significant improvement on several assessment scales (16). Langford (17) has prospectively examined the role of specific levator ani trigger point injections in 18 women with CPP. Each trigger point was identified by intravaginal palpation and injected with 5 mL of a mixture of 10 mL 0.25% bupivacaine, 10 mL 2% lidocaine and 1 mL (40 mg) triamcinolone. Thirteen (72%) women improved with the first trigger point injection, with six (33%) women being completely pain-free.

Intravaginal electrical stimulation was applied to 24 women with CPP in the form of 10 30-min applications, two or three times weekly. Stimulation was effective in alleviating pain, as evaluated at the end of treatment and 2 weeks, 4 weeks and 7 months after completion of treatment ($P < 0.05$). There were significantly fewer complaints of dyspareunia following treatment ($P = 0.0005$) (18).

3.2.16.1 References

1. Parsons CL, Koprowski PF. Interstitial cystitis: successful management by increasing urinary voiding intervals. Urology 1991 Mar;37(3):207-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2000675
2. Chaiken DC, Blaivas JG, Blaivas ST. Behavioral therapy for the treatment of refractory interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1993 Jun;149(6):1445-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8501784
3. Webster DC, Brennan T. Use and effectiveness of physical self-care strategies for interstitial cystitis. Nurse Pract 1994 Oct;19(10):55-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7529390
4. Rovner E, Propert KJ, Brensinger C, et al. Treatments used in women with interstitial cystitis: the interstitial cystitis data base (ICDB) study experience. The Interstitial Cystitis Data Base Study Group. Urology 2000 Dec;56(6):940-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11113737

5. Bade JJ, Peeters JM, Mensink HJ. Is the diet of patients with interstitial cystitis related to their disease? Eur Urol 1997;32(2):179-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9286650
6. Gillespie L. Metabolic appraisal of the effects of dietary modification on hypersensitive bladder symptoms. Br J Urol 1993 Sep;72(3):293-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8220989
7. Bologna RA, Gomelsky A, Lukban JC, et al. The efficacy of calcium glycerophosphate in the prevention of food-related flares in interstitial cystitis. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):119-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378102
8. Osborne JH, Manhattan D, Laumnn B. IC and Diet. In: Osborne JH , ed. The Interstitial Cystitis Network Patient Handbook. Chapter 5. Santa Rosa, CA, USA: The Interstitial Cystitis Network, 1999;pp. 43-62 [access date February 2011].
9. Chang PL. Urodynamic studies in acupuncture for women with frequency, urgency and dysuria. J Urol 1988 Sep;140(3):563-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3411675
10. Chang PL, Wu CJ, Huang MH. Long-term outcome of acupuncture in women with frequency, urgency and dysuria. Am J Chin Med 1993;21(3-4):231-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8135166
11. Zheng H, Wang S, Shang J, et al. Study on acupuncture and moxibustion therapy for female urethral syndrome. J Tradit Chin Med 1998 Jun;18(2):122-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10437230
12. Geirsson G, Wang YH, Lindström S, et al. Traditional acupuncture and electrical stimulation of the posterior tibial nerve. A trial in chronic interstitial cystitis. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1993;27(1):67-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8493470
13. Lynch DF Jr. Empowering the patient: hypnosis in the management of cancer, surgical disease and chronic pain. Am J Clin Hypn 1999 Oct;42(2):122-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10624023
14. Barber J. Incorporating hypnosis in the management of chronic pain. In: Barber J, Adrian C, eds. Psychological Approaches in the Management of Pain. New York: Brunner/Mazel, 1982; pp. 60-83.
15. Karper WB. Exercise effects on interstitial cystitis: two case reports. Urol Nurs 2004 Jun;24(3):202-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311489
16. Oyama IA, Rejba A, Lukban JC, et al. Modified Thiele massage as therapeutic intervention for female patients with interstitial cystitis and high-tone pelvic floor dysfunction. Urology 2004 Nov;64(5):862-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15533464
17. Langford CF, Udvari Nagy S, Ghoniem GM. Levator ani trigger point injections: An underutilized treatment for chronic pelvic pain. Neurourol Urodyn 2007;26(1):59-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17195176
18. de Oliveira Bernardes N, Bahamondes L. Intravaginal electrical stimulation for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain. J Reprod Med 2005 Apr;50(4):267-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15916211

3.2.17 ***Surgical treatment***

When all efforts fail to relieve disabling symptoms, surgical removal of the diseased bladder is the ultimate option (1-4). Three major techniques of bladder resection are common:

- supratrigonal (i.e. trigone-sparing) cystectomy
- subtrigonal cystectomy
- radical cystectomy including excision of the urethra.

All techniques require substitution of the excised bladder tissue, mostly performed with bowel segments.

Techniques without bladder removal. As early as 1967, Turner-Warwick reported that mere bladder augmentation without removal of the diseased tissue was not appropriate (5). Sporadic reports that unresected BPS bladders cease to cause symptoms when excluded from the flow or urine are scarce (6,7).

Supratrigonal cystectomy with subsequent bladder augmentation represents the most favoured continence-preserving surgical technique. Various intestinal segments have been used for trigonal augmentation, including ileum (8-16), ileocaecum (15-22), right colon (8,16,23), and sigmoid (10,12,13,18,22). Substituting gastric segments (24,25) seems to be less helpful because the production of gastric acids may maintain dysuria and persistent pain.

The therapeutic success of supratrigonal cystectomy has been reported in many studies. In 1966, von Garrelts reported excellent results in 8/13 patients with a follow-up of 12-72 months (12). In 1977, Bruce et

al. achieved satisfactory relief of BPS symptoms by ileocystoplasty and colocystoplasty in eight patients (10). Dounis and Gow have reported seven BPS patients whose pain and frequency were considerably improved after supratrigonal cystectomy with ileocaecal augmentation (26).

In 1991, Kontturi et al. used segments of colon and sigmoid colon in 12 cases (22). All five patients augmented with sigmoid colon remained symptom-free over 4.7 years of follow-up. Two of seven cases augmented with colon required secondary cystectomy with formation of an ileal conduit. Nielsen et al. have reported a series of eight patients undergoing supratrigonal cystectomy with ileocaecocystoplasty.

Although symptoms resolved in two patients, treatment failure in another six necessitated secondary cystectomy and ileal conduit formation (17).

Linn *et al*. (27) have followed six BPS patients after supratrigonal cystectomy with ileocaecal augmentation for a period of 30 months, and have reported that all patients were symptom-free and voided spontaneously.

In 2002, Van Ophoven *et al*. (1) reported the long-term results of trigone-preserving cystectomy and consecutive orthotopic substitution enteroplasty in 18 women with BPS, using ileocaecal (n = 10) or ileal (n = 8) segments. At a mean follow-up of nearly 5 years, 14 patients were completely pain-free, 12 voided spontaneously, and 15 had complete resolution of dysuria. Ileocaecal bowel segments showed superior functional results, because in the group augmented with ileum, three patients required self-catheterisation and one a suprapubic catheter. Overall, surgery achieved a significant improvement in diurnal and nocturnal frequencies, functional bladder capacity and symptom scores, with only two treatment failures.

In more recent reports with longer follow-up, the debate on the outcome of BPS patients undergoing cystectomy continues and results vary greatly between different surgeons and patient populations.

Chakravarti (28) presented a retrospective review of 11 patients, who had undergone a trigone-preserving orthotopic substitution caecocystoplasty for intractable BPS Type 3 C and were followed up for a mean period of 9 years. All had symptomatic relief and an increase in bladder capacity to normal. There was no mortality and minimal postoperative morbidity, with two patients requiring intermittent self-catheterisation due to high residual volumes. No significant urinary reflux or metabolic complications were noted. However, two patients required cystectomy after 4 and 6 years, respectively, due to recurrent trigonal disease in one patient and urethrotrigonal hypersensitivity following intermittent self-catheterisation in the other. One patient developed an advanced adenocarcinoma in the caecal segment 7 years after the primary operation.

Blaivas *et al*. (29) have reported less favourable results. Long-term outcomes of augmentation enterocystoplasty or continent urinary diversion were analysed in 76 patients with benign urological disorders, including seven with a clinical diagnosis of BPS. The BPS patients all failed surgical treatment because of persistent pelvic pain and failure to achieve adequate bladder capacity, rather than because of incontinence. The authors currently consider BPS to be a contraindication for enterocystoplasty.

In contrast, Navalon *et al*. (30) have reported a 32-month follow-up of four women with refractory BPS who underwent supratrigonal cystectomy with orthotopic substitution ileocystoplasty. Suprapubic pain disappeared in all cases, as well as lower urinary tract symptoms, with good control of urinary frequency day and night in the immediate postoperative period. All patients reported high satisfaction with the outcome.

Subtrigonal cystectomy. Although less popular, subtrigonal cystectomy has also been reported (27,31-34). Subtrigonal resection has the potential of removing the trigone as a possible disease site, but at the cost of requiring ureteral reimplantation with associated risks of leakage, stricture, and reflux. Nurse *et al*. reported trigonal disease in 50% within their cohort (13/25) and blamed surgical failures on the trigone left in place (35).

In contrast, Linn *et al*. have indicated that the level of resection was not solely responsible for treatment success. While completely curing six patients by supratrigonal resection, there were three failures among 17 subtrigonal resections, and half of the successful subtrigonal resections required self-catheterisation to support voiding of the ileocaecal augmentate (27). A recent report on female sexuality after cystectomy and orthotopic ileal neobladder (36) describes eight patients. Pain was relieved in all eight, but only one regained a normal sexual life postoperatively.

Selecting patients and technique. BPS is benign and does not shorten life, so that operative procedures rank last in the therapeutic algorithm. However, severely refractory patients should not have to tolerate unsuccessful conservative treatments for several years when surgical options are available.

Detailed counselling and informed consent must precede any irreversible type of major surgery, which should only be undertaken by experienced surgeons. The choice of technique is influenced by the experience of the surgeon. The appropriate extent of tissue resection should be based on the endoscopic and histopathological findings. Some surgeons recommend preoperative cystoscopy and bladder capacity as a prognostic parameter for operative success (7). Responders and failures following orthotopic substitution differed in mean preoperative bladder capacity (200 vs. 525 mL, respectively) (17). These findings have been

supported by Peeker *et al*. (37), who found that patients with end-stage BPS Type 3 C had excellent results following ileocystoplasty, whereas patients with non-ulcer disease were not helped. These results have recently been confirmed by another study from the same institution.

A retrospective analysis of 47 patients fulfilling the NIH criteria, who underwent reconstructive surgery using various techniques during 1978-2003 (38), resulted in complete symptom resolution in 32/34 patients with classic Hunner-type disease, but only 3/13 patients with non-ulcer disease.

Cystectomy with formation of an ileal conduit stills ranks first in current US practice trends in surgical BPS therapy (39). For cosmetic reasons, however, techniques of continent diversion are preferred, particularly in younger patients. After orthotopic bladder augmentation, particularly when removing the trigone, voiding may be incomplete and require intermittent self-catheterisation. Patients considering these procedures should be advised and must be considered capable of performing, accepting and tolerating self-catheterisation.

For patients with BPS who develop recurrent pain in the augmented bladder or continent pouch after enterocystoplasty or continent urinary diversion, Elzawahri (40) has recommended retubularisation of a previously used bowel segment to form a urinary conduit.

For younger patients, it may be important to know that pregnancies with subsequent lower-segment Caesarean section after ileocystoplasty have been reported (41). Reconstructive surgery for refractory BPS is an appropriate last resort only for well-selected patients with refractory end-stage disease. The decision to embark on major reconstructive surgery should be preceded by a thorough preoperative evaluation, with an emphasis on assessment to determine the relevant disease location and subtype.

A summary of the treatment options for BPS, including LE and GR is given in the next section. Figure 6 and 7 are algorithms for the diagnosis and therapy of BPS based on the information discussed above.

3.2.18 ***Conclusions and recommendations: treatment of BPS***

Conclusions	**LE**
None of the present existing treatments have effect on all BPS subtypes or phenotypes.	4
Conventional analgesics have little efficacy. Opioids are effective in controlling BPS pain.	2b
Corticosteroids are not recommended as long-term treatment.	3
Hydroxyzine has limited efficacy shown in RCT and is effective in associated non bladder diseases.	1b
Limited data exist on effectiveness of cimetidine in BPS.	2b
Amitriptyline is effective in pain and related symptoms of BPS.	1b
Oral PPS is effective in pain and related symptoms of BPS.	1a
Oral PPS plus subcutaneous heparin is effective in pain and related symptoms of BPS especially in patients initially low responders to PPS alone.	1b
Only limited data exist on the effectiveness of antibiotics in the treatment of BPS.	2b
Insufficient data for the effectiveness of prostaglandins in BPS exist. Adverse effects are frequent.	3
Global response on cyclosporin A was superior to PPS, but associated with more adverse effects.	1b
Duloxetin has shown no effect and tolerability is poor.	2b
Oxybutynin has limited effect in BPS pain, but data are scant.	3
Only insufficient data exist for the effectiveness of gabapentin in BPS.	3
Only insufficient data exist for the effectiveness of suplatast tosilate in BPS.	3
Preliminary data showed effectiveness of quercetin alone and in multimodal uncontrolled studies.	3
Intravesical lidocaine plus sodium bicarbonate is effective in the short term.	1b
Intravesical PPS is effective based on limited data and may enhance effect of oral treatment.	1b
There are limited data on the effectiveness of intravesical heparin.	3
Intravesical hyaluronic acid may have long term effects in BPS patients with positive intravesical modified KCl test.	2b
Intravesical chondroitin sulphate may be effective according to non-randomised studies. Published RCTs are underpowered.	2b
Intravesical DMSO is effective in the treatment of BPS, but side effects have to be considered.	1b
Intravesical submucosal BTX-A injection plus hydrodistension has sustained and significantly improved effect over hydrodistension alone.	1b
Only limited data exist on the effectiveness of BTX-A injection into detrusor or trigone.	3

Data on effectiveness of intravesical vanilloids are contradictory. Largest of RCTs without efficacy.	1b
Intravesical Bacillus Calmette Guérin (BCG) is not effective in BPS.	1b
Intravesical clorpactin has insufficient data to support effectiveness and high complication rates.	3
There is only insufficient data to support effectiveness of bladder distension.	3
Scarce data indicate electromotive drug administration may have a beneficial effect in patient subsets.	3
Transurethral resection (Coagulation and laser) may be effective in BPS type 3 C.	3
Sacral neuromodulation may be effective in BPS.	3
Pudendal nerve stimulation is superior to sacral nerve stimulation for the treatment of BPS.	1b
Bladder training may be effective in patients with predominant urinary symptoms and little pain.	3
Manual and physical therapy may have limited effects.	3
Avoidance of some food and drink avoids pain triggering.	3
Acupuncture: data contradictory.	3
Psychological therapy may be effective in ameliorating coping with disease.	3
No definitive conclusion on the effectiveness of surgical organ removal for BPS can be drawn based on large variability results in reported series.	3

Recommendations	**GR**
Subtype and phenotype-oriented therapy for BPS is recommended.	A
Multimodal behavioural, physical and psychological techniques should always be considered alongside oral or invasive treatments for BPS.	A
Opioids might be used in BPS in disease flare-ups. Long term application solely if all treatments failed.	C
Corticosteroids are not recommended as long-term treatment.	C
Hydroxyzine is recommended for use in BPS.	A
Consider cimetidine as valid oral option before invasive treatments.	B
Amitriptyline is recommended for use in BPS.	A
Oral PPS is recommended for use in BPS.	A
Treatment with oral PPS plus subcutaneous heparin is recommended especially in low responders to PPS alone.	A
Antibiotics can be offered when infection is present or highly suspected.	C
Prostaglandins are not recommended. Insufficient data on BPS, adverse effects considerable.	C
Cyclosporin A might be used in PPS but adverse effects are significant and should be carefully considered.	B
Duloxetin is not recommended for BPS treatment.	C
Oxybutynin might be considered for the treatment of BPS.	C
Gabapentin might be considered in oral treatment of BPS.	C
Consider intravesical lidocain plus sodium bicarbonate prior to more invasive methods.	A
Consider intravesical PPS before more invasive treatment alone or combined with oral PPS.	A
Consider intravesical heparin before more invasive measures alone or in combination treatment.	C
Consider intravesical hyaluronic acid before more invasive measures.	B
Consider intravesical chondroitin sulphate before more invasive measures.	B
Consider intravesical DMSO before more invasive measures.	A
Consider intravesical bladder wall and trigonal injection of BTX-A if intravesical instillation therapies failed.	C
Consider submucosal injection of BTX-A plus hydrodistension if intravesical instillation therapies failed.	A
Intravesical therapy with Bacillus Calmette Guérin is not recommended in BPS.	A
Intravesical therapy with clorpactin is not recommended in BPS.	A
Intravesical therapy with vanilloids is not recommended in BPS.	C
Bladder distension is not recommendedas atreatment of BPS.	C
Electromotive drug administration might be considered before more invasive measures.	C
Consider transurethral resection (or coagulation or laser) of bladder lesions, but in BPS type 3C only	B

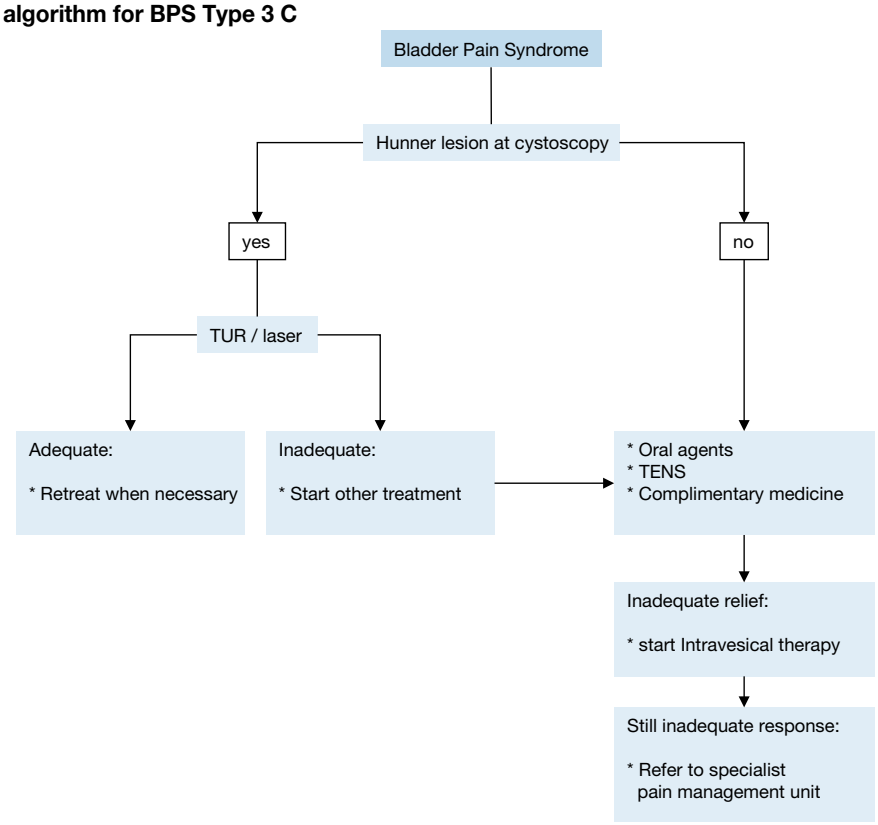
Neuromodulation might be considered before more invasive interventions.	B
Consider bladder training in patients with little pain.	B
Consider manual and physical therapy in first approach.	B
Consider in diet avoidance of triggering substances.	C
Accupuncture is not recommended.	C
Consider psychological therapy in multimodal approach.	B
All ablative organ surgery should be last resort for experienced and BPS knowledgeable surgeons only.	A

PPS = pentosanpolysulphate sodium; DMSO = dimethyl sulphoxide; BPS = bladder pain syndrome.

Figure 6: diagnosis and therapy of BPS

Assessment	Treatment	
Urine culture	Grade A recommended	Standard: Hydroxyzine, Amitriptyline, Pentosanpolysulphate
Uroflowmetry		Intravesical: PPS, DMSO, onabotulinum toxin A plus hydrodistension
Cystoscopy with hydrodistension		
Bladder biopsy	Grade B recommended	Oral: Cimetidine, cyclosporin A
Micturition diary		Intravesical: hyaluronic acid, chondroitin sulphate
Pelvic floor muscle testing		Electromotive drug administration for intravesical drugs
Phenotyping		Neuromodulation, bladder training, physical therapy
ICSI score list		Psychological therapy
	Not recommended	Bacillus Calmette Guerin
		Intravesical Chlorpactin
	Other comments	Data on surgical treatment are largely variable
		Coagulation and laser only for Hunner's lesions

Figure 7: algorithm for BPS Type 3 C



3.2.19 ***References***

1. van Ophoven A, Oberpenning F, Hertle L. Long-term results of trigone-preserving orthotopic substitution enterocystoplasty for interstitial cystitis. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):603-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792927
2. Loch A, Stein U. [Interstitial cystitis. New aspects in diagnosis and therapy]. Urologe A 2004 Sep;43(9):1135-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15322757
3. Oberpenning F, van Ophoven A, Hertle L. [Chronic interstitial cystitis.] Deutsches Ärzteblatt 2002, 99:204-8. [article in German]
4. Oberpenning F, Van Ophoven A, Hertle L. Interstitial cystitis: an update. Curr Opin Urol 2002 Jul;12(4):321-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072654
5. Warwick R, Ashkan M. The functional results of partial, subtotal and total cystoplasty with special reference to ureterocecocystoplasty, selective sphincterotomy and cystoplasty. Br J Urol 1967 Feb;39(1):3-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5336762
6. Messing EM, Stamey TA. Interstitial cystitis: early diagnosis, pathology, and treatment. Urology 1978 Oct;12(4):381-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/213864
7. Freiha FS, Faysal MH, Stamey TA. The surgical treatment of intractable interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1980 May;123(5):632-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7420547
8. Badenoch AW. Chronic interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1971 Dec;43(6):718-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5159574
9. Awad SA, Al-Zahrani HM, Gajewski JB, et al. Long-term results and complications of augmentation ileocystoplasty for idiopathic urge incontinence in women. Br J Urol 1998 Apr;81(4):569-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9598629
10. Bruce PT, Buckham GJ, Carden AB, et al. The surgical treatment of chronic interstitial cystitis. Med J Aust 1977 Apr;1(16):581-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/875802
11. Christmas TJ, Holmes SA, Hendry WF. Bladder replacement by ileocystoplasty: the final treatment for interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1996 Jul;78(1):69-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8795403
12. von Garrelts B. Interstitial cystitis: thirteen patients treated operatively with intestinal bladder substitutes. Acta Chir Scand 1966 Oct;132(4):436-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5972716
13. Guillonneau B, Toussaint B, Bouchot O, et al. [Treatment of interstitial cystitis with sub-trigonal cystectomy and enterocystoplasty.] Prog Urol 1993 Feb;3(1):27-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8485591
14. Koskela E, Kontturi M. Function of the intestinal substituted bladder. Scand J Urol Nephrol 1982;16(2):129-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7123162
15. Shirley SW, Mirelman S. Experiences with colocystoplasties, cecocystoplasties and ileocystoplasties in urologic surgery: 40 patients. J Urol 1978 Aug;120(2):165-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/671623
16. Webster GD, Maggio MI. The management of chronic interstitial cystitis by substitution cystoplasty. J Urol 1989 Feb;141(2):287-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2913346
17. Nielsen KK, Kromann-Andersen B, Steven K, et al. Failure of combined supratrigonal cystectomy and Mainz ileovcecocystoplasty in intractable interstitial cystitis: is histology and mast cell count a reliable predictor for the outcome of surgery? J Urol 1990 Aug;144(2 Pt 1):255-8; discussion 258-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2374189
18. Hradec EA. Bladder substitution: indications and results in 114 operations. J Urol 1965 Oct;94(4): 406-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/5320331
19. DeJuana CP, Everett JC Jr. Interstitial cystitis: experience and review of recent literature. Urology 1977 Oct;10(4):325-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/919117

20. Utz DC, Zincke H.The masquerade of bladder cancer in situ as interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1974 Feb;111(2):160-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4810754
21. Whitmore WF 3rd, Gittes RF. Reconstruction of the urinary tract by cecal and ileocecal cystoplasty:review of a 15-year experience. J Urol 1983 Mar;129(3):494-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6834531
22. Kontturi MJ, Hellström PA, Tammela TL, et al. Colocystoplasty for the treatment of severe interstitial cystitis. Urol Int 1991;46(1):50-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2024372
23. Seddon JM, Best L, Bruce AW. Intestinocystoplasty in treatment of interstitial cystitis. Urology 1977 Nov;10(5):431-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/919133
24. Leong CH. Use of the stomach for bladder replacement and urinary diversion. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 1978 Jul;60(4):283-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/666231
25. Singla A, Galloway N. Early experience with the use of gastric segment in lower urinary tract reconstruction in adult patient population. Urology 1997 Oct;50(4):630-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9338749
26. Dounis A, Gow JG. Bladder augmentation-a long-term review. Br J Urol 1979 Aug;51(4):264-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/466001
27. Linn JF, Hohenfellner M, Roth S, et al. Treatment of interstitial cystitis: comparison of subtrigonal and supratrigonal cystectomy combined with orthotopic bladder substitution. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3): 774-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474146
28. Chakravarti A, Ganta S, Somani B, et al. Caecocystoplasty for intractable interstitial cystitis: long-term results. Eur Urol 2004 Jul;46(1):114-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15183556
29. Blaivas JG, Weiss JP, Desai P, et al. Long-term followup of augmentation enterocystoplasty and continent diversion in patients with benign disease. J Urol 2005 May;173(5):1631-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821519
30. Navalón Verdejo P, Ordoño Domínguez F, De la Torre Abril L, et al. [Orthotopic bladder substitution in the treatment of interstitial cystitis.] Arch Esp Urol 2005 Sep;58(7):605-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16294782
31. Bejany DE, Politano VA. Ileocolic neobladder in the woman with interstitial cystitis and a small contracted bladder. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):42-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966787
32. Nurse DE, McCrae P, Stephenson TP, et al.The problems of substitution cystoplasty. Br J Urol 1988 May;61(5):423-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3395801
33. Lotenfoe RR, Christie J, Parsons A, et al. Absence of neuropathic pelvic pain and favorable psychological profile in the surgical selection of patients with disabling interstitial cystitis. J Urol 1995 Dec;155(6):2039-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7500453
34. Hughes OD, Kynaston HG, Jenkins BJ, et al. Substitution cystoplasty for intractable interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1995 Aug;76(2):172-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7663907
35. Nurse DE, Parry JR, Mundy AR. Problems in the surgical treatment of interstitial cystitis. Br J Urol 1991 Aug;68(2):153-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1822961
36. Volkmer BG, Gschwend JE, Herkommer K, et al. Cystectomy and orthotopic ileal neobladder: the impact on female sexuality. J Urol 2004 Dec;172(6 Pt 1):2353-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538266
37. Peeker R, Aldenborg F, Fall M. The treatment of interstitial cystitis with supratrigonal cystectomy and ileocystoplasty: difference in outcome between classic and nonulcer disease. J Urol 1998 May;159(5):1479-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9554337
38. Rössberger J, Fall M, Jonsson O, et al. Long-term results of reconstructive surgery in patients with bladder pain syndrome/interstitial cystitis: subtyping is imperative. Urology 2007 Oct;70(4):638-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17991529

39. Gershbaum D, Moldwin R. Practice trends for the management of interstitial cystitis. Urology 2001 Jun;57(6 Suppl 1):119.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11378100
40. Elzawahri A, Bissada NK, Herchorn S, et al. Urinary conduit formation using a retubularized bowel from continent urinary diversion or intestinal augmentations: ii. Does it have a role in patients with interstitial cystitis? J Urol 2004;171(4):1559-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017220
41. Shaikh A, Ahsan S, Zaidi Z. Pregnancy after augmentation cystoplasty. J Pak Med Assoc 2006;56(10):465-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17144396

3.3 Genital pain syndrome

3.3.1 ***Scrotal pain syndrome***

Scrotal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain localised within the organs of the scrotum, which may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Scrotal pain syndrome is a generic term and is used when the site of the pain is not clearly testicular or epididymal. The pain is not in the skin of the scrotum as such, but perceived within its contents, in a similar way to idiopathic chest pain.

3.3.2 ***Pathogenesis***

The pathogenesis of chronic scrotal pain is diverse and in most cases unknown. Pain in the scrotum can be divided into direct pain localised in the scrotum, or referred pain coming from another place or system in the body. The problem is that we cannot always make that division in clinical practice. Direct pain is located in the testes, epididymis, inguinal nerves or the vas deferens.

3.3.2.1 Testicular pain syndrome

Testicular pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the testes and may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Testicular pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Previous terms have included orchitis, orchalgia and orchiodynia. These terms are no longer recommended.

3.3.2.2 Epididymal pain syndrome

Epididymal pain syndrome is the occurrence of persistent or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the epididymis, which may be associated with symptoms suggestive of urinary tract or sexual dysfunction. There is no proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Epididymal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction.

Structural abnormalities of the epididymis can be visualised using ultrasound. Patients with multiple cysts may have pain caused by the compression that these cysts exert on the epididymis. Another local entity is chronic epididymitis (1). Chronic epididymis may be associated with signs of inflammation: inflammatory or obstructive chronic epididymitis (2).

3.3.2.3 Nerves

The ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves are the most prominent afferent nerves for the scrotum (3). The inguinal nerves are especially important. It is generally accepted that pain after inguinal surgery (hernia) is a consequence of damage to the nerves inside the spermatic cord (4). This is based on the anatomical knowledge that all nerves involved in testicular pain merge in the spermatic cord (5). This fact has consequences for the choice of treatment. The pudendal nerve supplies the skin of the perineum and the posterior side of the scrotum. Pain in this area is pathognomic for pudendal neuropathy.

3.3.2.4 Post-vasectomy pain syndrome

Post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is a scrotal pain syndrome that follows vasectomy. Post-vasectomy scrotal pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract and sexual dysfunction. Pathogenetically, it is thought that post-vasectomy pain is caused by the fact that the vas deferens is no longer patent. This may lead to congestion in the epididymis which in turn gives rise to pain because of dilatation

of hollow structures (6). Incidence of post-vasectomy pain is 2-20% among all men who have undergone a vasectomy (7). In men with post-vasectomy pain, only 2-6% have a VAS score > 5 (8). In a large cohort study of 625 men, the likelihood of scrotal pain after 6 months was 14.7%. The mean pain severity on a VAS score was 3.4/10. In the pain group, 0.9% had quite severe pain, noticeably affecting their daily life. In this cohort, different techniques were used to perform the vasectomy. The risk of scrotal pain was significantly lower in the no-scalpel vasectomy group, at 11.7% compared with 18.8% in the scalpel group (9).

3.3.2.5 Post-inguinal hernia repair

Chronic pain after inguinal hernia surgery is a well recognised phenomenon. An international working group has set up guidelines for prevention and management of postoperative chronic pain following inguinal hernia surgery. They have stated that the most important way of preventing pain is to identify and preserve all three inguinal nerves (10). Chronic scrotal pain is a complication of hernia repair, but in trials, it is seldom reported or it is put under the term chronic pain (not specified). In studies that have explicitly mentioned scrotal pain, there was a difference in incidence between laparoscopic and open hernia repair. In almost all studies, the frequency of scrotal pain was significantly higher in the laparoscopic than in the open group (4,11-13). In one particular study, there was no difference at 1 year but after 5 years, the open group had far fewer patients with scrotal pain (14).

3.3.2.6 Referred pain

Growing knowledge of pain mechanisms has taught us that pain felt in organ A can be caused by dysfunction of structure B. The best known referred pain is of myofascial origin, especially the trigger points (see Chapter 9). Problems inside the bladder or abdominal cavity can also give rise to pain in the scrotal area. When making a treatment plan for patients with scrotal pain, it is important to remember this phenomenon.

*3.3.3 **Diagnosis***

A physical examination is mandatory in patients with scrotal pain. Gentle palpation of each component of the scrotum is performed to search for masses and painful spots. A rectal examination is done to look for prostate abnormalities and to examine the pelvic floor muscles. Scrotal ultrasound has limited value in finding the cause of the pain. In > 80% of patients, ultrasound does not show abnormalities that have clinical implications (15,16). If physical examination is normal, ultrasound can be performed to reassure the patient that there is no pathology that needs therapy (mainly surgery). Ultrasound can be used to diagnose hydroceles, spermatoceles, cysts and varicoceles. When abnormalities such as cysts are seen, this may play a role in therapeutic decision making. In general practice, it seems that many urologists are performing ultrasound examination in almost all patients. Swiss urologists, for instance, perform it in 93% of cases (17).

*3.3.4 **Treatment***

Treatment of chronic scrotal pain is based on the principles of treating chronic pain syndromes, described throughout these guidelines. It is becoming increasingly clear that advances in the non-surgical management of testicular pain are mainly based on the emergence of pain relief as a specialty. Knowing this, it seems obvious that referring to a multidisciplinary pain team or pain centre should be considered in an early phase of the consultation (18). By doing this, surgery can be postponed or even avoided.

3.3.4.1 Conservative treatment

For conservative treatment, apart from pharmacotherapy, myofascial therapy by specialised physiotherapists should be considered. The pelvic floor muscles should be tested and will often be found overactive, which means that they contract when relaxation is needed. An overactive pelvic floor should be treated by physiotherapy (19-21). More specific myofascial trigger points are found in the pelvic floor, but also in the lower abdominal musculature. Treatment consists of applying pressure to the trigger point and stretching the muscle (22,23) (see Chapter 9).

3.3.4.2 Surgery

In a survey among Swiss urologists, it was found that 74% would do an epididymectomy, 7% an inguinal orchiectomy, and 6% a denervation (17). In the literature, there is consensus on postponing surgery until there is no other option. The only treatment that seems to be effective is microsurgical denervation. Epididymectomy is a choice in selected cases and orchiectomy is the last resort.

3.3.4.1.1 Microsurgical denervation

Considering the fact that all the nerves for the scrotal organs merge into the spermatic cord, it seems reasonable to cut all these nerves in patients with pain. All the studies that have been done were cohort studies but their success rates were high. The size of effect was so remarkable that it is recommended that randomised studies are performed to obtain better proof. The three cohort studies that are found were

consistent in the indication criteria, the diagnostic methods applied, and the surgical approach used. All had a follow-up of at least 20 months. They included patients with chronic scrotal pain who did not respond to conservative treatment. Ultrasound showed no abnormalities and a spermatic cord block showed pain relief of > 50%. The surgical approach is inguinal. The cord is transected in such a way that all identifiable arterial structures, including testicular, cremasteric, deferential arteries and lymphatic vessels are left intact. The surgery is performed under magnification by loupe or microscope. Complete relief of pain is achieved in 71-96% and partial relief in 9-17%. This means that 12-15% had no relief of pain after denervation. The complication of testicular atrophy was seen in 3-7% of the operated patients (24-26). There is no difference in success based on the cause of pain. The laparoscopic route for denervation seems feasible but the results are unclear (27).

3.3.4.1.2 Epididymectomy

There is to date no hard evidence available, but expert opinion is clear that orchiectomy should be reserved for patients who have undergone denervation but still have pain. Epididymectomy shows different results in various groups of patients. Epididymectomy shows the best results in patients with pain after vasectomy, or pain on palpation of the epididymis and when ultrasound shows multiple cysts. Patients with chronic epididymitis show bad results with epididymectomy.

The percentage of patients that are cured ranges from 50 to 92% (1,6,28-30). These results are also from cohort studies but the fact that assessment can help in predicting the chance of success makes further studies worthwhile. One study in our search has yielded different results, namely, that post-vasectomy patients fared worse and that ultrasound did not help in predicting the result of the operation. No reason was found for this result (9).

3.3.4.1.3 Orchiectomy

Orchiectomy is seen as the last resort in patients with intrascrotal pain, who do not respond to any other treatment. There have been no studies than can help in making a rational decision on whether to perform orchiectomy.

3.3.4.1.4 Vaso-vasostomy

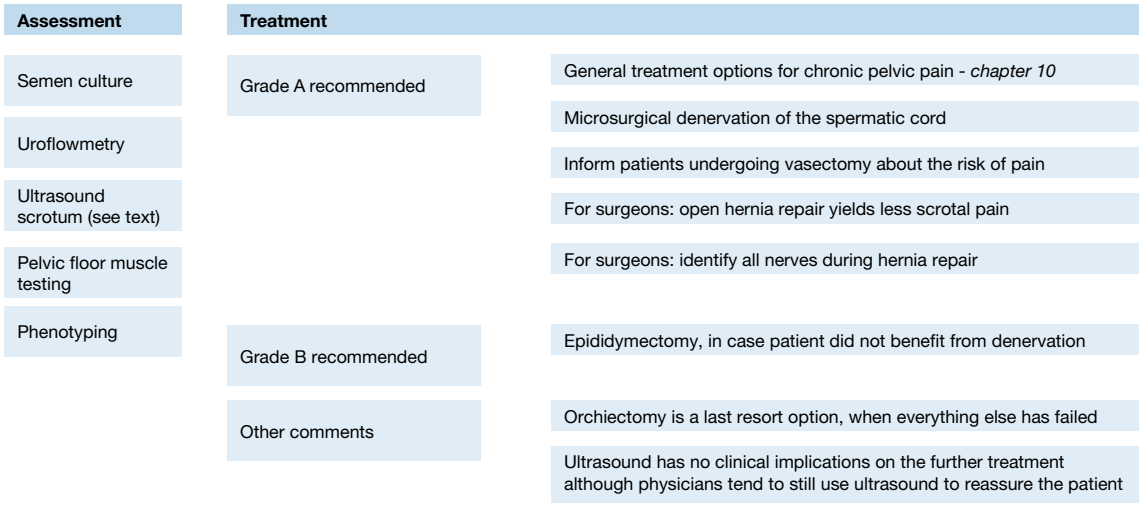
In post-vasectomy pain syndrome, a vaso-vasostomy might help to overcome the obstruction and thereby improve the pain. Some studies have shown good results but the quality of these studies was limited. Results are as high as 69-84% (31,32).

*3.3.5 **Conclusions and recommendations: scrotal pain syndrome***

Conclusions	**LE**
The nerves in the spermatic cord play an important role in scrotal pain.	2b
Ultrasound of the scrotal content is not of help in diagnostics nor treatment of scrotal pain.	2b
Post -vasectomy pain is seen in a substantial number of men undergoing vasectomy.	2b
Scrotal pain is more often noticed after laparoscopic then after open inguinal hernia repair.	1b
Microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord is an effective therapy for scrotal pain syndrome.	2b
Vaso-vasostomy is effective in post-vasectomy pain.	2b
Orchiectomy is the last resort in treating scrotal pain syndrome.	4

Recommendations	**GR**
We recommend to start with general treatment options for chronic pelvic pain (see chapter 10).	A
We recommend informing about the risk of post-vasectomy pain when counselling patients planned for vasectomy.	A
To reduce the risk of scrotal pain, we recommend open instead of laparoscopic inguinal hernia repair.	A
We recommend that during inguinal hernia repair all the nerves in the spermatic cord are identified.	A
For patients who are treated surgically, we recommend microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord.	A
For patients who do not benefit from denervation we recommend to perform epididymectomy.	B
We recommend that orchiectomy is reserved as last resort when every other treatment has failed.	C

Figure 8: assessment and treatment algorithm for scrotal pain syndrome



3.3.6 ***References***

1. Padmore DE, Norman RW, Millard OH. Analyses of indications for and outcomes of epididymectomy. . J Urol. 1996 Jul;156(1):95-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8648848
2. Nickel JC, Siemens DR, Nickel KR, et al. The patient with chronic epididymitis: characterization of an enigmatic syndrome. J Urol. 2002 Apr;167(4):1701-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912391
3. Rab M, Ebmer AJ, Dellon AL. Anatomic variability of the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerve:implications for the treatment of groin pain. Plast Reconstr Surg 2001 Nov;108(6):1618-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11711938
4. Eklund A, Montgomery A, Bergkvist L, et al. Chronic pain 5 years after randomized comparison of laparoscopic and Lichtenstein inguinal hernia repair. Br J Surg. 2010 Apr;97(4):600-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20186889
5. Heidenreich A, Olbert P, Engelmann UH. Management of chronic testalgia by microsurgical testicular denervation. Eur Urol. 2002 Apr;41(4):392-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074809
6. Sweeney P, Tan J, Butler MR, et al. Epididymectomy in the management of intrascrotal disease: a critical reappraisal. Br J Urol. 1998 May;81(5):753-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9634056
7. Nariculam J, Minhas S, Adeniyi A, et al. A review of the efficacy of surgical treatment for andpathological changes in patients with chronic scrotal pain. BJU Int 2007 May;99(5):1091-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17244279
8. Manikandan R, Srirangam SJ, Pearson E, et al. Early and late morbidity after vasectomy: a comparison of chronic scrotal pain at 1 and 10 years. BJU Int. 2004 Mar;93(4):571-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15008732
9. Leslie TA, Illing RO, Cranston DW, et al. The incidence of chronic scrotal pain after vasectomy: aprospective audit. BJU Int 2007 Dec;100(6):1330-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17850378
10. Alfieri S, Amid PK, Campanelli G, et al. International guidelines for prevention and management of post-operative chronic pain following inguinal hernia surgery. Hernia. 2011 Jun;15(3):239-49. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21365287
11. Andersson B, Hallén M, Leveau P, et al. Year: 2004. Laparoscopic extraperitoneal inguinal hernia repair versus open mesh repair: a prospective randomized controlled trialSurgery 5: 464-72 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12773973
12. Wright D, Paterson C, Scott N, et al. Five-year follow-up of patients undergoing laparoscopic or open groin hernia repair: A randomized controlled trial. Ann Surg. 2002 Mar;235(3):333-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11882754
13. Hallén M, Bergenfelz A, Westerdahl J. Laparoscopic extraperitoneal inguinal hernia repair versus open mesh repair: long-term follow-up of a randomized controlled trial.Surgery. 2008 Mar;143(3):313-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18291251
14. Grant AM, Scott NW, O'Dwyer PJ, et al. Five-year follow-up of a randomized trial to assess pain and numbness after laparoscopic or open repair of groin hernia.Br J Surg. 2004 Dec;91(12):1570-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15515112

15. van Haarst EP, van Andel G, Rijcken TH, et al. Value of diagnostic ultrasound in patients with chronicscrotal pain and normal findings on clinical examination. Urology 1999 Dec;54(6):1068-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10604710
16. Lau MW, Taylor PM, Payne SR. The indications for scrotal ultrasound. Br J Radiol. 1999 Sep;72(861):833-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10645188
17. Strebel RT, Leippold T, Luginbuehl T, et al. Chronic scrotal pain syndrome: management among urologists in Switzerland. Eur Urol. 2005 Jun;47(6):812-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15925078
18. Messelink EJ. The pelvic pain centre. World J Urol 2001 Jun;19(3):208-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11469609
19. Cornel EB, van Haarst EP, Schaarsberg RW, et al. The effect of biofeedback physical therapy in menwith Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome Type III. Eur Urol 2005 May;47(5):607-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15826751
20. Hetrick DC, Glazer H, Liu YW, et al. Pelvic floor electromyography in men with chronic pelvic painsyndrome: a case-control study. Neurourol Urodyn 2006;25(1):46-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16167354
21. Rowe E, Smith C, Laverick L, et al. A prospective, randomized, placebo controlled, double-blind studyof pelvic electromagnetic therapy for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain syndrome with 1 year offollowup. J Urol 2005 Jun;173(6):2044-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15879822
22. Anderson RU, Wise D, Sawyer T, et al. Integration of myofascial trigger point release and paradoxicalrelaxation training treatment of chronic pelvic pain in men. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):155-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947608
23. Srinivasan AK, Kaye JD, Moldwin R. Myofascial dysfunction associated with chronic pelvic floor pain: management strategies. Curr Pain Headache Rep 2007 Oct;11(5):359-64 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17894926
24. Strom KH, Levine LA. Microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord for chronic orchialgia: long-term results from a single center. J Urol. 2008 Sep;180(3):949-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18639271
25. Levine LA, Matkov TG. Microsurgical denervation of the spermatic cord as primary surgical treatment of chronic orchialgia. . J Urol. 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 1):1927-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371883
26. Heidenreich A, Olbert P, Engelmann UH. Management of chronic testalgia by microsurgical testiculardenervation. Eur Urol 2002 Apr;41(4):392-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12074809
27. Cadeddu JA, Bishoff JT, Chan DY, et al. Laparoscopic testicular denervation for chronic orchalgia. J Urol. 1999 Sep;162(3 Pt 1):733-5; discussion 735-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10458355
28. Granitsiotis P, Kirk D. Chronic testicular pain: an overview. Eur Urol 2004 Apr;45(4):430-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15041105
29. Sweeney CA, Oades GM, Fraser M, et al. Does surgery have a role in management of chronic intrascrotal pain? Urology. 2008 Jun;71(6):1099-102. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18436286
30. Calleary JG, Masood J, Hill JT. Chronic epididymitis: is epididymectomy a valid surgical treatment? Int J Androl. 2009 Oct;32(5):468-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18380787
31. Nangia AK, Myles JL, Thomas AJ Jr. Vasectomy reversal for the post-vasectomy pain syndrome: aclinical and histological evaluation. J Urol 2000 Dec;164(6):1939-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11061886
32. Myers SA, Mershon CE, Fuchs EF. Vasectomy reversal for treatment of the post-vasectomy pain syndrome. J Urol. 1997 Feb;157(2):518-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996346

3.4 Urethral pain syndrome

3.4.1 ***Definition***

Urethral pain syndrome is the occurrence of chronic or recurrent episodic pain perceived in the urethra, in the absence of proven infection or other obvious local pathology. Urethral pain syndrome is often associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual or emotional consequences, as well as with symptoms suggestive of lower urinary tract, sexual, bowel or gynaecological dysfunction. Urethral pain syndrome may occur in men and women.

3.4.2 ***Pathogenesis***

Based on the definition, there is no well-known pathogenetic mechanism responsible for urethral pain syndrome. There are no data available to answer the question: "how common is dysuria in the presence of negative rigorous investigation of the bladder and urethra?" Some suggestions have been proposed. The intimate relation of the urethra with the bladder (both covered with urothelium) makes it plausible that pathology seen in the bladder is also found in the urethra and causes the same symptoms. This is the case in classifying urethral pain syndrome as a form of BPS. It is obvious that what might cause pain in the bladder could be responsible for urethral pain. Mechanisms thought to be basic for BPS also apply to the urethra. This means that the specific testing with potassium is used to support the theory of epithelial leakage (1,2). Urethral syndrome is supposed to be the same as BPS in that the epithelium is leaking, thereby causing pain.

Another possible mechanism is the neuropathic hypersensitivity following urinary tract infection (3). Symptoms recorded in patients with urethral pain syndrome can also be classified as referred pain from other organs or from the myofascial system. Attention to the phenomenon of referred pain is important. See Chapter 9 for more on the myofascial origin of the pain.

The relationship with gynaecological and obstetric aspects is unclear. In a small group of patients with urethral pain, it has been found that grand multiparity and delivery without episiotomy were more often seen in patients with urethral syndrome, using univariate analysis (4).

3.4.3 ***Treatment***

There is no specific treatment that can be advised. Management should be multidisciplinary and multimodal (5). Laser therapy of the trigonal region may be a specific treatment. One trial comparing two forms of laser reported good results, but did not compare with sham treatment (6). The majority of publications on treatment of urethral pain syndrome have come from psychologists. In a 2007 review of treatment, Kaur and Arunkalaivanan have concluded that "treatment at its best" is by "behavioral therapy including biofeedback, meditation, bladder retraining, and hypnosis has been used with some success", but no reference is given, and no trials of these arose from the search. Baldoni *et al*. (7) have reported high rates of anxiety and depression, and worsening of symptoms related to stress in patients with urethral pain syndrome The only treatment trial found was by Baldoni *et al*. The psychological model that he used is not entirely clear: they have described how "in some cases" psychotherapy enables patients to recognise "the emotional implications" of their urinary problem, leading to both physical and psychological improvement. "Emotional implications" could mean either emotional consequences, consistent with a cognitive behavioural model of chronic pain in which those consequences, rather than the pain itself, are targeted to improve QoL, or it could mean implications for - exposure of - emotional conflict or similar psychological disorder, which is presumed to be the aetiology of the urethral pain.

Baldoni *et al*. recruited 36 female patients diagnosed with urethral syndrome in an Italian urology clinic after negative urography, cystoscopy and urine culture, and urodynamic examination. Thirteen women were randomly selected for psychotherapy, but the method was not blind or free of possible bias. Psychotherapy was 12-16 weekly 1-h sessions, with additional fortnightly group discussion, and focused on associations between urinary symptoms and emotion. Four patients were also prescribed low-dose antidepressants. The control group received usual care but no psychological treatment.

Assessment of symptoms at 6 months and four years after the end of treatment (with loss of two patients from each arm) showed substantial improvement in total urinary symptoms and additionally in pelvic pain, with 9/11 psychotherapy patients with normal levels of urinary function at 6 months, and 8/11 with normal levels at 4 years. Control patients were unchanged at both follow-up points. The trial had significant weaknesses; in particular, the non-blind assignment to treatment condition, the non-standardised measures, and, for the purposes of this review, the combination of all urinary symptoms so that treatment effects on pain were obscured. The authors have noted that the lack of any credible intervention with controls makes it difficult to conclude that it was the particular treatment, rather than the general provision of treatment, which brought about recorded improvement. However, the results can be taken as encouraging the trial of psychological methods, using orthodox outcome measures and more rigorous methodology.

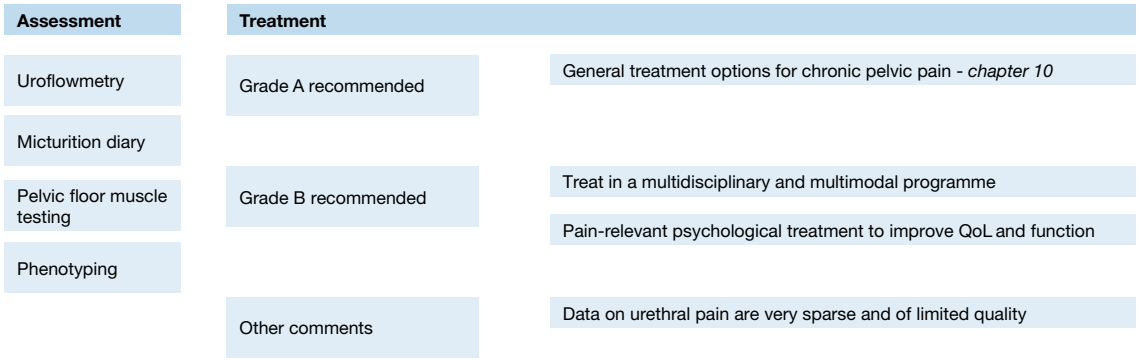
3.4.4 ***Conclusions and recommendations: urethral pain syndrome***

Conclusions	**LE**
Urethral pain syndrome may be a part of BPS.	2a
Urethral pain may be neuropathic hypersensitivity following urinary tract infection.	2b
There is no specific treatment for urethral pain syndrome.	4

In patients with significant distress associated with bladder or urethral symptoms, psychological treatment may be worth using to reduce distress and thereby improve function and quality of life.	4

Recommendations	GR
We recommend to start with general treatment options for chronic pelvic pain (see chapter 10).	A
We recommend that patients with urethral pain syndrome are treated in a multidisciplinary and multimodal programme.	B
When patients are distressed, we recommend referring them for pain-relevant psychological treatment to improve function and quality of life.	B

Figure 9: assessment and treatment algorithm for urethral pain syndrome



3.4.5 ***References***

1. Parsons CL, Zupkas P, Parsons JK. Intravesical potassium sensitivity in patients with interstitialcystitis and urethral syndrome. Urology 2001 Mar;57(3):428-32; discussion 432-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11248610
2. Parsons CL. The role of a leaky epithelium and potassium in the generation of bladder symptoms in interstitial cystitis/overactive bladder, urethral syndrome, prostatitis and gynaecological chronic pelvic pain. BJU Int. 2011 Feb;107(3):370-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21176078
3. Kaur H, Arunkalaivanan AS. Urethral pain syndrome and its management. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2007May;62(5):348-51; quiz 353-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17425813
4 Gürel H, Gürel SA, Atilla MK. Urethral syndrome and associated risk factors related to obstetrics and gynecology.Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 1999 Mar;83(1):5-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10221602
5. Yoon SM, Jung JK, Lee SB, et al. Treatment of female urethral syndrome refractory to antibiotics. Yonsei Med J. 2002 Oct;43(5):644-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12402379
6. Costantini E, Zucchi A, Del Zingaro M, et al. Treatment of urethral syndrome: a prospective randomized study with Nd:YAG laser. Urol Int. 2006;76(2):134-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16493214
7. Baldoni F, Baldaro B, Trombini G. Psychotherapeutic perspectives in urethral syndrome. Stress Medicine 1995; 11: 79-84.
8. Kaur H, Arunkalaivanan AS. Urethral pain syndrome and its management. Obstet Gynecol Surv. 2007 May;62(5):348-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17425813

4. GYNAECOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

4.1 Introduction

Chronis pelvic pain in urological and gynaecological practice is often complex and difficult to treat. The aim is to try and determine a remediable cause and treat it using the most effective available therapy. However, in 30% of cases, no cause is ever determined and this presents a therapeutic challenge to the attendant physician (1).

4.2 Clinical history

Taking a detailed medical history is essential to making a diagnosis. The nature, frequency and site of the pain, and its relationship to precipitating factors and the menstrual cycle, may provide vital clues to the aetiology. A detailed menstrual and sexual history, including any history of sexually transmitted diseases and vaginal discharge is mandatory. Discrete inquiry about previous sexual trauma may be appropriate.

4.3 Clinical examination

Abdominal and pelvic examination will exclude any gross pelvic pathology (tumours, scarring, and reduced uterine mobility), as well as demonstrating the site of tenderness if present. Abnormalities in muscle function should also be sought. Clinical pelvic examination should be a single digit examination if possible, but in most cases a gentle double digit examination is tolerable and sometimes necessary. The usual bimanual examination can generate severe pain so the examiner must proceed with caution. The examination of a woman with CPP can be very difficult, and many authors recommend that it should be directed to the determination of cutaneous allodynia along the dermatomes of the abdomen (T11-L1) and the perineum (S3). The degree of tenderness of the muscles and on the perineum (perineal body, levators and obturator internus) should be determined.

*4.3.1 **Investigations***

Vaginal and endocervical swabs to exclude infection are mandatory and cervical cytology screening is advisable. Pelvic imaging, using ultrasound scanning or magnetic resonance, can provide useful information about pelvic anatomy and pathology. Any areas of tenderness detected can provide information related to the possible presence of current or pre-existing visceral disease (2,3). Laparoscopy is perhaps the most useful invasive investigation to exclude gynaecological pathology (4,5) and to assist in the differential diagnosis of CPP in women (6). Often it is combined with cystoscopy (7,8) and/or proctoscopy to help identify the site of multi-compartment pain.

Psychological considerations around laparoscopy

There have been three diverse studies of laparoscopy. Elcombe et al. have shown, by comparing waiting time for laparoscopy, that there was a distinct and lasting improvement in pain consequent on laparoscopy, which was greater than the gradual improvement without further treatment before or after laparoscopy. Improvement was related to beliefs about pain and its meaning in terms of serious disease, and not to medical variables (9).

In another study, showing women a photograph of their pelvic contents taken during laparoscopy during post-laparoscopy feedback did not improve pain ratings or beliefs about pain more than feedback without a photograph (10).

Peters et al. compared standard clinical care of patients with CPP (where organic causes of pelvic pain were excluded first and diagnostic laparoscopy was routinely performed, before attention being given to other causes such as psychological disturbances) with a second group, where an integrated approach was chosen from the beginning (equal attention was given to somatic, psychological, dietary, environmental, and physiotherapeutic factors and laparoscopy was not routinely performed) (11). Both groups were similar with respect to clinical characteristics of the patients and the severity of their pain as assessed by various pain parameters. Evaluation of the pain 1 year after the institution of treatment revealed that the integrated approach improved pelvic pain significantly more often than the standard approach for three out of four pain parameters. Though laparoscopy played no important role in the treatment of pelvic pain it was found to be an essential tool to rule out any organic cause for the pain. Equal attention to both organic and other causative factors from the beginning of therapy is more likely to result in a reduction of pelvic pain than just using a standard approach (11). Pain and function improved somewhat more in the integrated group, but scoring was not standardised and hard to interpret.

4.4 Pain associated with well-defined conditions

4.4.1 ***Dysmenorrhoea***

Pain in association with menstruation may be primary or secondary. Primary dysmenorrhoea classically begins at the onset of ovulatory menstrual cycles and tends to decrease following childbirth (6). Secondary dysmenorrhoea suggests the development of a pathological process and it is essential to exclude endometriosis (5), adenomyosis (12) and pelvic infection.

Treatment

Reassurance and an explanation of the cause of dysmenorrhoea are usually helpful, together with the use of simple analgesics, followed by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (13), which are particularly helpful if they are started before the onset of each menstrual cycle. NSAIDs are effective in dysmenorrhoea, probably because of their effects on prostaglandin synthetase.

Suppression of ovulation using oral contraceptive tablets (either combined or progesterone only) or the use of a levo-norgestrol intra-uterine device reduces dysmenorrhoea dramatically in most cases and may be used as a therapeutic test. As a result of the chronic nature of the condition, potentially addictive analgesics should be avoided and multidisciplinary pain management strategies, including psychology should be engaged.

4.4.2 ***Infection***

In premenopausal women, a history of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) must be excluded. Swabs to exclude infections with organisms such as chlamydia and gonorrhoea, as well as vaginal and genital tract pathogens (14), should be taken. Patients' sexual contacts need to be traced in all cases with a positive culture. If there is any doubt about the diagnosis, laparoscopy may be helpful.

Pelvic inflammatory disease can cause the same clinical findings as endometriosis and can lead to a chronic pain state. Although PID often has a bacterial origin, viral infections such as primary herpes simplex infection need to be excluded because they also present with severe pelvic/vaginal/vulvar pain (15). They are usually associated with ulcerating lesions and inflammation, which may lead to urinary retention (16). Hospitalisation and opiates may be needed to achieve adequate analgesia.

Treatment

Treatment of infection depends on the causative organisms. Subclinical chlamydial infection may lead to tubal pathology, which can result in subfertility in the future. Thus, screening for this organism in sexually active young women is essential to prevent this complication. Standard broad-spectrum antibiotics targeting Gram-positive and negative organisms are normally recommended. Chronic PID is no longer common in developed countries, but still poses a significant problem for women in developing countries.

4.4.3 ***Endometriosis and adenomyosis***

The incidence of endometriosis is rising in the developed world. The precise aetiology is still a source of debate, but an association with nulliparity is well known.

A diagnosis is usually made when a history of secondary dysmenorrhoea and often dyspareunia exists. On examination, there is often tenderness in the lateral vaginal fornices, reduced uterine mobility, tenderness in the recto-vaginal septum, and on occasion, adnexal masses. Laparoscopy is the most useful diagnostic tool (17-19).

Endometriotic lesions affecting the urinary bladder or causing ureteric obstructions can occur, as well as lesions affecting the bowel, which may lead to rectal bleeding in association with menstruation.

Adenomyosis is associated with augmented pain during menses. It is diagnosed by an ultrasound scan of the uterus, which often shows cystic dilatation of the myometrium (20).

Treatment

As in primary dysmenorrhoea, analgesics and NSAIDs are helpful in easing pain at the time of menstruation. Hormone treatment with progestogens or the oral contraceptive pill may halt progress of endometriosis, but is not curative. A temporary respite may be obtained by using luteinising hormone releasing hormone analogues to create an artificial menopause, although the resulting oestrogen deficiency does have marked long-term side effects, such as reduced bone density and osteoporosis. Thus, these drugs are normally only used before surgery to improve surgical outcome and reduce surgical complications in patients with endometriosis. Surgery for endometriosis is challenging and the extensive removal of all endometriotic lesions is often thought to be essential. This is still considered to be controversial, as there is at least one RCT showing no benefit in pain relief in the removal of early endometriosis compared to sham surgery (21,22). Nevertheless, he best results are achieved laparoscopically, by highly trained and skilled laparoscopic surgeons, in specialist centres (19,23). A multidisciplinary team is required for the treatment of extensive disease, including a pain management team. The pain associated with endometriosis is often not proportionate to the extent of the condition and, even after

extensive removal of the lesions and suppression of the condition, the pain may continue. In this situation, multidisciplinary pain management strategies, including psychology, should be engaged.
In patients with adenomyosis, there is no curative surgery other than hysterectomy but patients can benefit from hormonal therapy (oral or levo-norgestrol containing intra-uterine devices) and analgesics as outlined above.

*4.4.4 **Gynaecological malignancy***

The spread of gynaecological malignancy of the cervix, uterine body or ovary will cause pelvic pain depending on the site of spread. Treatment is of the primary condition, but all physicians dealing with pelvic pain must be fully aware of the possibility of gynaecological malignancy.

*4.4.5 **Injuries related to childbirth***

Tissue trauma and soft tissue injuries occurring at the time of childbirth may lead to CPP related to the site of injury. Dyspareunia is a common problem leading to long-term difficulties with intercourse and female sexual dysfunction (24). This is often due to transient oestrogen deficiency, commonly seen in the postpartum period and during breastfeeding. Denervation of the pelvic floor with re-innervation may also lead to dysfunction and pain.

Treatment

Treatment with a short course of hormone replacement cream can be therapeutically beneficial. However, often reassurance that the situation will improve on the cessation of breastfeeding is also helpful.

*4.4.6 **Pain associated with pelvic organ prolapse and prolapse surgery***

Pelvic organ prolapse is often an asymptomatic condition, unless it is so marked that it causes back strain, vaginal pain and skin excoriation (25). Prolapse is often a disease of older women, and it is often associated with postmenopausal oestrogen deficiency, which may lead to pain associated with intercourse. Hormone replacement therapy is usually helpful in this circumstance. However, in severe cases associated with a "dragging pain", the only options are specially designed supportive plastic vaginal devices or surgery.
In the past few years, pelvic organ prolapse surgery has gained a new dimension. Most tissue surgery is now augmented by the use of non-absorbable mesh (usually in the form of "mesh kits") (26-28). Although they may have a role in supporting the vagina, they are also associated with several complications including bladder, bowel and vaginal trauma (27). In a subset of these patients, chronic pain may ensue, because mesh insertion may cause nerve and muscle irritation (23,24).

Clinical evaluation

It is essential that patients are fully evaluated clinically. They may also benefit from specialised imaging, using contrast mediums if necessary, to identify problematic areas. Most patients can be treated by mesh-excisional surgery (29,30), if appropriate, or multidisciplinary pain management strategies, including psychology, should surgery not be relevant.

4.5 Vaginal and vulvar pain syndromes

Pain in the vagina or the female external genital organs (the vulva, which includes the labia, clitoris, and entrance to the vagina) is most commonly due to infection or trauma. The latter is usually as a consequence of childbirth or surgery. Pain is usually a precedent to dyspareunia.
When the pain persists for > 6 months, it can be diagnosed as "vulvodynia" or "chronic vaginal/vulvar pain syndrome" with no known cause. It is still a poorly understood condition and often many doctors do not recognise it as a real pain syndrome. Many women feel isolated because it remains a difficult condition to treat.
There are two main subtypes of vulvodynia: generalised vulvodynia, where the pain occurs in different areas of the vulva at different times; and vulvar vestibulitis, where the pain is at the entrance of the vagina. In generalised vulvodynia, the pain may be constant or occur occasionally, but touch or pressure does not initiate it, although it may make the pain worse. In vulvar vestibulitis, the pain is described as a burning sensation that comes on only after touch or pressure, such as during intercourse.
The causes of vulvodynia are many and include:

- History of sexual abuse
- History of chronic antibiotic use
- Hypersensitivity to yeast infections, allergies to chemicals or other substances
- Abnormal inflammatory response (genetic and non-genetic) to infection and trauma,
- Nerve or muscle injury or irritation
- Hormonal changes

Although therapeutic options remain limited and require a multidisciplinary pain management approach, with

psychological and physiotherapy input, they can be treated effectively with physiotherapy, stretching exercises and even botulinum toxin, though in the case of the latter the evidence is variable.

Psychological treatment of chronic vulvar pain

There are few published accounts of psychological treatment for chronic vulvar pain, distinct from provoked vulvar pain (also known as vulvar vestibulitis, provoked vestibulodynia, or dyspareunia).

Three reviews in the past decade, all of provoked as well as chronic vulvar pain, have acknowledged the lack of understanding of aetiology and maintenance of this problem, and emphasise different components of what is known.

Damsted-Peterson et al. have described peripheral and central nervous system changes most consistent with models of chronic pain, as well as local inflammation and pelvic floor tension, and recommend multimodal treatment (31).

Lotery et al. have focused on local factors, and recommend education, support, and counselling, but provide no evidence to support these (32). Nanke & Rief have described interaction of physiological, psychological and interpersonal factors, and recommend biofeedback on the basis of uncontrolled studies (33).

The only RCT found has compared cognitive behavioural therapy (CBT), adapted for vulvar pain from a previously published model, with supportive psychotherapy, for a mixed population of women with provoked and chronic vulvar pain (34). CBT consists of behavioural therapy (for sexual problems, increasing general activity, and pain control), relaxation, and cognitive coping skills. Supportive psychotherapy, also for 10 one hour sessions, involves non-directive talking therapy by an accepting and reflective therapist. Follow-up to 1 year has shown that ~40% of patients with both conditions achieve at least 33% (clinically significant) pain relief, with improvement in sexual and emotional function; CBT shows superiority in some outcomes.

4.6 Summary

Pain in association with urinary and gastrointestinal symptoms must be considered carefully. For example, patients with bladder pain quite often present with dyspareunia due to bladder base tenderness, so though the dyspareunia may be the focus it is the bladder component that is the main problem. Similarly, in those with anal pain it may be the evacuatory dysfunction that is the main culprit. Conditions, such as pelvic congestion has been cited as a cause of pelvic pain of unknown aetiology, but this diagnosis is not universally recognised (15,16).

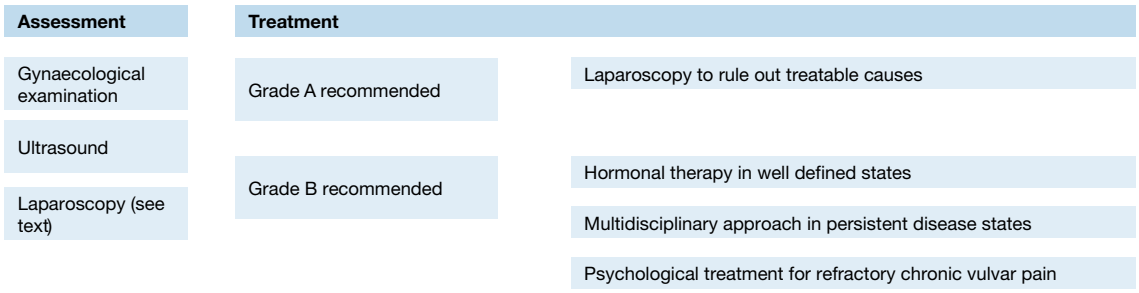
It is only when all the above conditions have been excluded that the physician may declare that the patient has 'unexplained' pelvic pain. Treating these patients remains a challenge for all physicians but quite clearly the best results are obtained from a multidisciplinary approach that considers all possible causes.

*4.6.1 **Conclusions and recommendations: gynaecological aspects of chronic pelvic pain***

Clinical state		**LE**
Clinical history and examination	Mandatory to making a diagnosis	2a
Investigations	Mandatory to making a diagnosis	2a
	Laparoscopy is well tolerated and does not appear to have negative psychological effects	1b
Pain associated with well-defined conditions	*Dysmenorrhoea: effective therapeutic options*	3
	Infection: effective therapeutic option	3
	Endometriosis: effective therapeutic options including medical and surgical care	1b
	Gynaecological malignancy: effective therapeutic options	3
	Injuries related to childbirth: effective therapeutic options	3
	Pain associated with pelvic organ prolapse: effective therapeutic options	3
Vaginal and vulvar pain syndrome	Diagnosis and therapeutic interventions	3
	Psychological treatment (CBT or supportive psychotherapy) can improve pain and sexual and emotional function	1b
Laparoscopy does not appear to have negative psychological effects		1b

Recommendations	GR
All women with pelvic pain should have a full gynaecological history and evaluation, and including laparoscopy is recommended to rule out a treatable cause (e.g. endometriosis).	A
Provide therapeutic options such as hormonal therapy or surgery in well-defined disease states.	B
Provide a multidisciplinary approach to pain management in persistent disease states.	B
Recommend psychological treatment for refractory chronic vulvar pain.	B
Use alternative therapies in the treatment of chronic gynaecological pelvic pain.	C

Figure 10: assessment and treatment gynaecological aspects in chronic pelvic pain



4.7 References

1. Newham AP, van der Spuy ZM, Nugent F. Laparoscopic findings in women with chronic pelvic pain. S Afr Med J. 1996 Sep;86(9 Suppl):1200-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9180785
2. Jarrell J, Giamberardino MA, Robert M. Bedside tests of viscera-somatic pain. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2011 (submitted).
3. Jarrell J. Demonstration of cutaneous allodynia in association with chronic pelvic pain. J Vis Exp. 2009 Jun 23;(28). http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19550406
4. Howard FM. The role of laparoscopy as a diagnostic tool in chronic pelvic pain. Baillieres Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2000 Jun;14(3):467-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962637
5. Jacobson TZ, Duffy JM, Barlow D, et al. Laparoscopic surgery for pelvic pain associated with endometriosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD001300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821276
6. Porpora MG, Gomel V. The role of laparoscopy in the management of pelvic pain in women of reproductive age. Fertil Steril. 1997 Nov;68(5):765-79. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9389799
7. Wyndaele JJ, Van Dyck, J, Toussaint N. Cystoscopy and bladder biopsies in patients with bladder pain syndrome carried out following ESSIC guidelines. Scand J Urol Nephrol. 2009;43(6):471-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19707951
8. Seracchioli R, Mannini D, Colombo FM, et al. Cystoscopy-assisted laparoscopic resection of extramucosal bladder endometriosis. J Endourol. 2002 Nov;16(9):663-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12490020
9. Elcombe S, Gath D, Day A. The psychological effects of laparoscopy on women with chronic pelvic pain. Psychol Med. 1997 Sep;27(5):1041-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9300510
10. Onwude JL, Thornton JG, Morley S, et al. A randomised trial of photographic reinforcement during postoperative counselling after diagnostic laparoscopy for pelvic pain. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2004 Jan 15;112(1):89-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14687747
11. Peters AA, van Dorst E, Jellis B, et al. A randomized clinical trial to compare two different approaches in women with chronic pelvic pain. Obstet Gynecol. 1991 May;77(5):740-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1826544
12. Wassong C, Shah B, Kanayama M, et al. Radiologic findings of pelvic venous congestion in an adolescent girl with angiographic confirmation and interventional treatment. Pediatr Radiol. 2011 Sep 13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21912968

13. Allen C, Hopewell S, Prentice A, et al. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for pain in women with endometriosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Apr 15;(2):CD004753. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370608
14. Ness RB, Soper DE, Holley RL, et al. Effectiveness of inpatient and outpatient treatment strategies for women with pelvic inflammatory disease: results from the Pelvic Inflammatory Disease Evaluation and Clinical Health (PEACH) Randomized Trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2002 May;186(5):929-37. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12015517
15. Corey L, Adams HG, Brown ZA, et al. Genital herpes simplex virus infections: clinical manifestations, course, and complications. Ann Intern Med. 1983 Jun;98(6):958-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6344712
16. Young H, Moyes A, McMillan A, et al. Screening for treponemal infection by a new enzyme immunoassay. Genitourin Med. 1989 Apr;65(2):72-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2666302
17. Fauconnier A, Chapron C, Dubuisson JB, et al. Relation between pain symptoms and the anatomic location of deep infiltrating endometriosis. Fertil Steril. 2002 Oct;78(4):719-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12372446
18. Vercellini P, Crosignani PG, Abbiati A, et al. The effect of surgery for symptomatic endometriosis: the other side of the story. Hum Reprod Update. 2009 Mar-Apr;15(2):177-88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19136455
19. Vercellini P, Crosignani PG, Somigliana E, et al. Medical treatment for rectovaginal endometriosis: what is the evidence? Hum Reprod. 2009 Oct;24(10):2504-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19574277
20. Kaminski P, Gajewska M, Wielgos M, et al. The usefulness of laparoscopy and hysteroscopy in the diagnostics and treatment of infertility. Neuro Endocrinol Lett. 2006 Dec;27(6):813-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17187014
21. Jarrell J, Mohindra R, Ross S, et al. Laparoscopy and reported pain among patients with endometriosis. J Obstet Gynaecol Can. 2005 May;27(5):477-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16100643
22. Jarrell J, Brant R, Leung W, et al. Women's Pain Experience Predicts Future Surgery for Pain Associated With Endometriosis. J Obstet Gynaecol Can. 2007 Dec;29(12):988-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18053384
23. Daniels J, Gray R, Hills RK, et al. Laparoscopic uterosacral nerve ablation for alleviating chronic pelvic pain: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2009 Sep 2;302(9):955-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19724042
24. Hay-Smith EJ. Therapeutic ultrasound for postpartum perineal pain and dyspareunia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2000;(2):CD000495. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10796210
25. Roovers JP, van der vaart CH, van der Blom JG, et al. A randomised controlled trial comparing abdominal and vaginal prolapse surgery: effects on urogenital function. BJOG. 2004 Jan;111(1):50-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14687052
26. Withagen MI, Vierhout ME, Hendriks JC, et al. Risk factors for exposure, pain, and dyspareunia after tension-free vaginal mesh procedure. Obstet Gynecol. 2011 Sep;118(3):629-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21860293
27. Niro J, Philippe AC, Jaffeux P, et al. [Postoperative pain after transvaginal repair of pelvic organ prolapse with or without mesh]. Gynecol Obstet Fertil. 2010 Nov;38(11):648-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21030280
28. Lin LL, Haessler Al, Ho MH, et al. Dyspareunia and chronic pelvic pain after polypropylene mesh augmentation for transvaginal repair of anterior vaginal wall prolapse. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2007 Jun;18(6):675-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16988779
29. Walid MS, Heaton RL. Laparoscopic apical mesh excision for deep dyspareunia caused by mesh banding in the vaginal apex. Arch Gynecol Obstet. 2009 Sep;280(3):347-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19127368
30. Margulies RU, Lewicky_Gaupp C, Fenner DE, et al. Complications requiring reoperation following vaginal mesh kit procedures for prolapse. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2008 Dec;199(6):678.e1-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18845282
31. Damstedt-Petersen C, Boyer SC, et al. Current perspectives in vulvodynia. Womens Health (Lond Engl). 2009 Jul;5(4):423-36. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19586434

32. Lotery HE, McClure N, Galask RP. Vulvodynia. Lancet. 2004 Mar 27;363(9414):1058-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15065562
33. Nanke A, R. W. (2004). Biofeedback in somatoform disorders and related syndromes. Current Opinion in Psychiatry 17: 133-138.
34. Masheb RM, Kerns RD, Lozano C, et al. A randomized clinical trial for women with vulvodynia: Cognitive-behavioral therapy vs. supportive psychotherapy. Pain. 2009 Jan;141(1-2):31-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19022580

5. GASTROINTESTINAL ASPECTS OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

5.1 Introduction

This chapter describes CPP perceived to be associated with the gastrointestinal tract, which is mainly due to functional disorders and cannot be explained by structural or specific well-defined diseases of the pelvis.

Some points to note:

- There may be a considerable overlap of the gastrointestinal with other pelvic pain syndromes.
- Defined gastrointestinal conditions with specific structural defects and diseases may coexist. Behavioural changes such as straining can lead to organic diseases such as rectal prolapse, solitary rectal ulcer syndrome, or pudendal nerve injury with consecutive faecal incontinence.
- Some structural gastrointestinal abnormalities (e.g., postpartum anal sphincter defects, or small rectoceles) are often observed in asymptomatic individuals and may be coincidental with the gastrointestinal pelvic pain syndrome.
- Different diseases can aggravate previously asymptomatic functional disorders which may become symptomatic such as faecal incontinence in patients with diarrhoea of different origins or anal fissure in patients with dyssynergic defecation.
- Finally, we need to consider that all functional disorders such as anorectal pain are defined on the basis of retrospectively evaluated longstanding symptoms, which ideally would have been registered prospectively with symptom diaries (1,2).

5.2 Clinical history

Functional anorectal disorders are diagnosed by symptoms, supplemented by objective findings. The predominant symptoms patients are interviewed about are discomfort or pain in relation to their bowel habits, daily activities, and eating. A precise history of dysfunctional voiding or defecation should be asked, ideally applying symptom questionnaires for urinary and anorectal symptoms (e.g., Rome III questionnaire for anorectal pain). Excessive straining at most defecations, anal digitations in dyssynergic defecation, and a sensation of anal blockage may be found in patients with chronic anal pain. History of anxiety and depression with impaired QoL is often encountered in anorectal functional disorders and should be evaluated.

*5.2.1 **Clinical examination and investigations***

At clinical examination, perianal dermatitis may be found as a sign of faecal incontinence or diarrhoea. Fissures may be easily overlooked and should be searched thoroughly in patients with anal pain. Rectal digital examination findings may show high or low anal sphincter resting pressure, a tender puborectalis muscle in patients with the levator ani syndrome, and occasionally increased perineal descent. The tenderness during posterior traction on the puborectalis muscle differentiates between “highly likely” and “possible” levator ani syndrome and is used in most studies as the main inclusion criterion. Dyssynergic (paradoxical) contraction of the pelvic muscles when instructed to strain during defecation is a frequent finding in patients with pelvic pain. Attention should be paid to anal or rectal prolapse at straining, and ideally during bimanual examination by the gynaecologist to diagnose an enterocele or cystocele.

*5.2.2 **Diagnostic assessment***

The Rome III criteria for diagnosis of functional anorectal diseases include symptoms for each specific functional disorder as listed below. The gastrointestinal diagnostic assessment should be performed in an interdisciplinary manner, preferably at a pelvic floor centre by a dedicated team and appropriate testing. The most frequently performed investigations are flexible rectosigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy, pelvic ultrasound, anorectal endosonography and anorectal manometry combined with anal EMG and balloon expulsion test.

Three-dimensional anorectal ultrasound has become an indispensable readily available tool for the specialised proctologist. Perineal ultrasound offers the advantage of sphincter imaging without insertion of the transducer into the rectum. MRI in conjunction with MR defecography has become the most valuable imaging technique to assess anorectal function dynamically. MRI studies outline simultaneously the anatomy of the pelvic floor and allow us to visualise different structural and functional pathologies, by applying dynamic sequences after filling of the rectum with a viscous contrast medium (e.g., ultrasound gel). The following pathologies can be visualised: pelvic floor descent, an abnormal anorectal angle while squeezing and straining, rectal intussusception, rectocele, enterocele and cystocele. However, limitations of MR defecography are the left lateral position and the limited space for the patient, which may reduce the ability to strain and hereby reduce the sensitivity of the method, underestimating the size of entero-and rectoceles as well as the amount of intussusception. Surgical consultations should be available for all patients, plus referral to an urogynaecologist or urologist when indicated. Biofeedback treatment, botulinum toxin injection, and percutaneous tibial nerve and sacral nerve stimulation should be available as a complementary therapeutic option to medical and surgical treatment.

5.3 Pain associated with well-defined conditions

5.3.1 ***Haemorrhoids***

CPP is rare in haemorrhoidal disease because endoscopic and surgical treatment is mostly effective in acute disease. The most frequent aetiology of pain without significant bleeding is thrombosed external haemorrhoids or an anal fissure. Haemorrhoidal pain on defecation associated with bleeding is usually due to prolapsed or ulceration of internal haemorrhoids. Anaemia from haemorrhoidal bleeding is rare but may arise in patients on anticoagulation therapy, or those with clotting disorders. Different treatments of haemorrhoids have been evaluated by two systematic Cochrane reviews. Excisional haemorrhoidectomy (EH) has been compared to the less-invasive technique of rubber band ligation (RBL), and has been shown to increase pain, with more complications and time off work. However, despite these disadvantages of EH, complete long-term cure of symptoms is increased by surgery, and minor complications are accepted by patients. RBL is the choice of treatment for grade II haemorrhoids, whereas EH should be reserved for grade III haemorrhoids or recurrence after RBL (3). New stapler techniques of haemorrhoidopexy are associated with a higher long-term risk of recurrence and prolapse compared to conventional EH. Further studies are needed (4).

5.3.2 ***Anal fissure***

Anal fissures are tears in the distal anal canal and induce pain during and after defecation. The pain can last for several minutes to hours. Persistence of symptoms beyond 6 weeks or visible transversal anal sphincter fibres define chronicity. Fissures located off the midline are often associated with specific diseases such as Crohn's disease or anal cancer. Internal anal sphincter spasms and ischaemia are associated with chronic fissures. Medical therapy with nitrates and calcium channel blockers resulting in sphincter relaxation is effective (5). Botulinum A toxin injection is indicated for fissures that are refractory to topical nitrates. Surgery with lateral internal sphincterotomy is the most studied procedure but carries the risk of postoperative faecal incontinence, and may be replaced by fissure excision combined with botulinum toxin or anal advancement flap.

5.3.3 ***Proctitis***

Abdominal and pelvic pain in patients with inflammatory bowel disease and proctitis are often difficult to interpret. Faecal calprotectin may help to differentiate between inflammation and functional pain, to spare steroids. Tricyclic antidepressants at low dose can be effective in this situation when acute exacerbation has been ruled out (6,7).

5.3.4 ***Constipation***

Constipation is usually not associated with CPP but is often associated and may induce increased pelvic discomfort and psychological distress. Dyssynergic defecation is the most common aetiology and responsible for 50% of causes of constipation. Dyssynergia describes an overactivity of pelvic floor muscles during defecation and the partial or complete inability to relax voluntarily pelvic floor muscles. Stool diaries and physiological testing followed by biofeedback treatment when indicated have been established as standard care in randomised controlled trials (8).

5.4 Chronic anal pain syndrome

5.4.1 ***Diagnostic criteria for chronic anal pain syndrome (chronic proctalgia) according to the Rome III criteria are as follows and must include all of the following:***

1. Chronic or recurrent rectal pain or aching.
2. Episodes last at least 20 min.
3. Exclusion of other causes of rectal pain such as ischaemia, inflammatory bowel disease, cryptitis,

intramuscular abscess and fissure, haemorrhoids, prostatitis, and coccygodynia.

These criteria should be fulfilled for the past 3 months with symptom onset at least 6 months before diagnosis (2).

The chronic anal pain syndrome includes the above diagnostic criteria and exhibits exquisite tenderness during posterior traction on the puborectalis muscle. This common and debilitating condition is frustrating to treat. Pathophysiology of pain is thought to be due to overactivity of the pelvic floor muscles. Chiarioni et al. have recently published an RCT demonstrating that biofeedback treatment was superior to electrogalvanic stimulation and massage for treatment of the levator ani syndrome. One hundred and fifty-seven patients who had at least weekly rectal pain were investigated, but only patients with tenderness on traction of the pelvic floor showed a significant treatment benefit. Eighty-seven percent of patients with tenderness of the puborectalis muscle (Rome II: Highly likely Levator Ani Syndrome) reported adequate relief after one month of biofeedback versus 45% for electrogalvanic stimulation, and 22% for massage. These results were maintained at 12 months with adequate relief after nine sessions of biofeedback in 58 % of the whole group (Rome II: Highly likely and Possible Levator Ani Syndrome), after galvanic stimulation in 27 % and massage in 21 % of patients. As previously described in dyssynergic defecation, the ability to expel a 50-ml water-filled balloon and to relax pelvic floor muscles after biofeedback treatment were predictive of a favourable therapeutic outcome (9). The pathophysiology of the chronic anal pain syndrome is therefore similar to that of dyssynergic defecation, and this favours the role of the pelvic floor muscles in the pathophysiology of both conditions. Other treatment modalities have been less successful.

*5.4.2 **Botulinum toxin in pelvic pain***

CPP associated with spasm of the levator ani muscles and treatment of the puborectalis and pubococcygeus muscle by botulinum toxin appears to be promising in some women, as shown in a pilot study (n = 12). The inclusion criteria were dependent only on vaginal manometry with overactivity of the pelvic floor muscles, defined as a vaginal resting pressure > 40 cm H_2O. Although dyspareunia and dysmenorrhoea improved, non-menstrual pelvic pain scores were not significantly ameliorated (10). In the following double-blinded, randomised, placebo-controlled trial, the same group defined pelvic floor myalgia according to the two criteria of tenderness on contraction and hypertension (> 40 cm H20) and included 60 women. In this larger study, non-menstrual pelvic pain was significantly improved compared to that treated with placebo (VAS score 51 vs. 22; P = 0.009). It was concluded therefore that botulinum toxin is effective for reducing pelvic-floor-muscle associated pain with acceptable adverse effects such as occasional urinary and faecal stress incontinence (11). However, recently, a small RCT failed to show any benefit of botulinum toxin, and sacral nerve stimulation has been reported to be somewhat beneficial in an uncontrolled study, showing improvement in less than half the patients (12,13).

*5.4.3 **Intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome (proctalgia fugax) consists of all the following diagnostic criteria, which should be fulfilled for 3 months and before 3 months:***

1. Recurrent episodes of pain localised to the anus or lower rectum
2. Episodes last from several seconds to minutes
3. There is no anorectal pain between episodes.

Stressful life events or anxiety may precede the onset of the intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome. The attacks may last from a few seconds to as long as 30 min. The pain may be cramping, aching or stabbing and may become unbearable. However, most patients do not report it to their physicians and pain attacks occur less than five times a year in 51% of patients. Due to the short duration of the episodes, medical treatment and prevention is often not feasible. Inhaled beta-2 adrenergic agonist salbutamol was effective in an RCT in patients with frequent symptoms and shortened pain duration (14). Other treatment options are topic diltiazem and botulinum toxin (15). However, there is still some controversy as regards the duration of pain of intermittent chronic and chronic anal pain syndrome and RCTs do often use different definitions extending the pain duration in order to better evaluate the study-drug action.

5.5 Summary

Chronic pelvic pain is an interdisciplinary entity needing multispecialty and multidisciplinary diagnostic assessment by gastroenterology, urology, gynaecology and pain teams as appropriate, with the input of physicians, psychologists and physiotherapists amongst others. Anorectal pain is investigated best by endoscopic and functional testing to rule out structural disease that can be treated specifically. CPP due to functional disorders remains a therapeutic challenge that may respond to biofeedback therapy, electrogalvanic syndrome and botulinum toxin in the case of levator ani syndrome and defecatory defects associated with pelvic pain.

5.5.1 *Conclusions and recommendations: anorectal pain syndrome*

Conclusions on functional anorectal pain.	**LE**
Tenderness on traction is the main criterion of the chronic anal pain syndrome.	1a
Biofeedback is the preferred treatment for the chronic anal pain syndrome.	1a
Electrogalvanic stimulation is less effective than biofeedback.	1b
Botulinum toxin is efficient in CPP with spasms.	1b
Sacral neurostimulation is effective in pelvic pain.	3
Inhaled salbutamol is effective in intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome.	3

Recommendations for functional anorectal pain	**GR**
Functional testing is recommended in patients with anorectal pain.	A
Biofeedback treatment is recommended in patients with pelvic pain and dyssynergic defecation.	A
Botulinum toxin in women with pelvic pain and electrogalvanic stimulation can be considered in the chronic anal pain syndrome.	B
Sacral neuromodulation is recommended in the chronic anal pain syndrome.	C
Inhaled salbutamol is recommended in the intermittent chronic anal pain syndrome.	C

Figure 11: assessment and treatment algorithm for anorectal pain syndrome

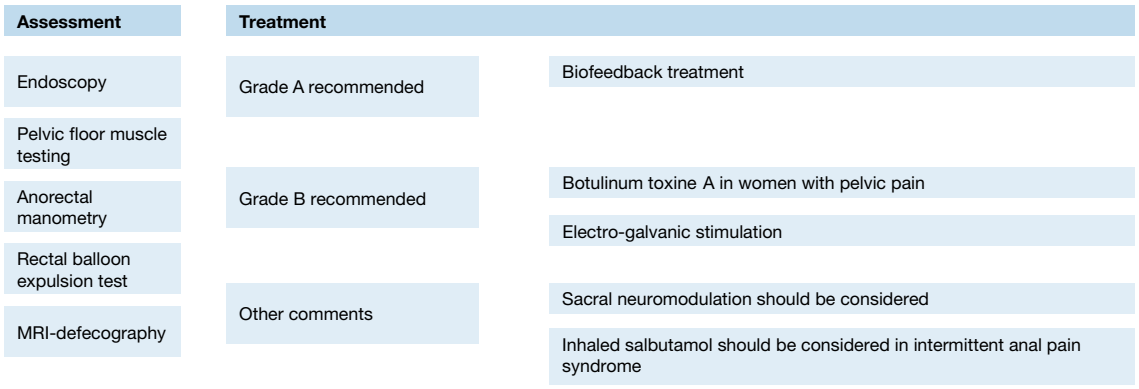
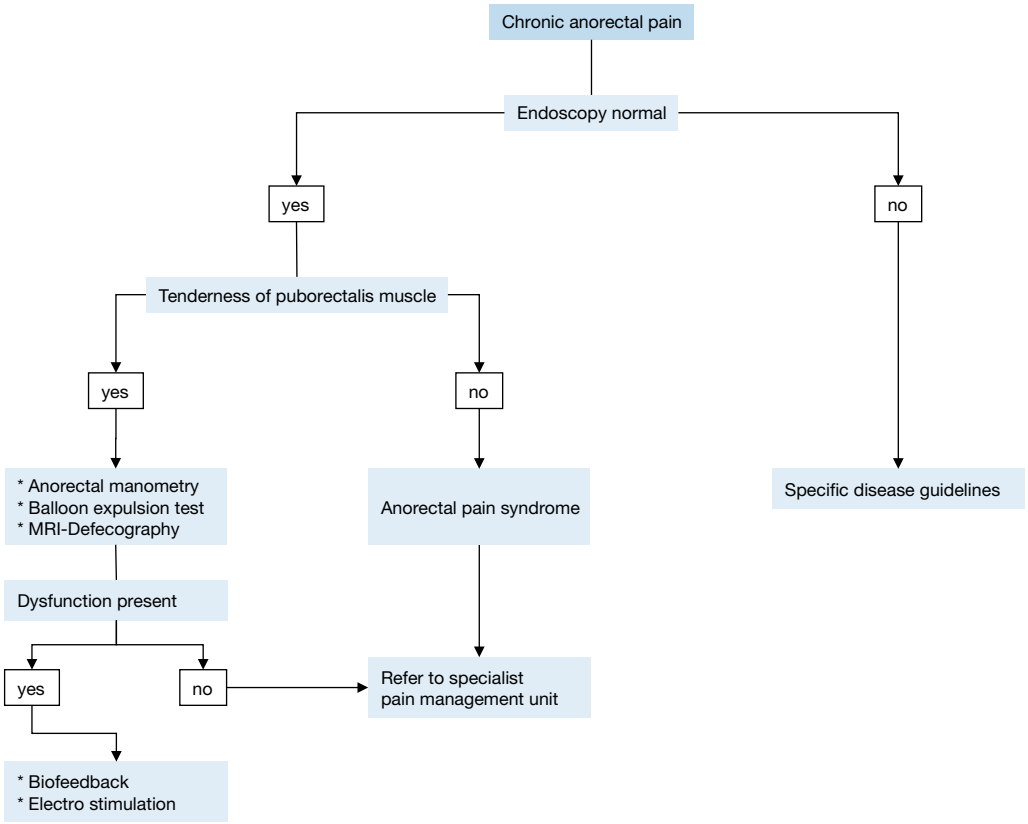


Figure 12: diagnosis algorithm for chronic anorectal pain



5.6 References

1. Whitehead WE, Bharucha AE. Diagnosis and treatment of pelvic floor disorders: what's new and what to do. Gastroenterology. 2010 Apr;138(4):1231-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20176023
2. Bharucha AE, Wald A, Enck P, et al. Functional anorectal disorders. Gastroenterology. 2006 Apr;130(5):1510-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16678564
3. Shanmugam V, Thaha MA, Rabindranath KS, et al. Rubber band ligation versus excisional haemorrhoidectomy for haemorrhoids. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2005 Jul 20;(3):CD005034. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16034963
4. Jayaraman S, Colquhoun PH, Malthaner RA. Stapled versus conventional surgery for hemorrhoids. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006 Oct 18;(4):CD005393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17054255
5. Nelson R. Non surgical therapy for anal fissure. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2003;(4):CD003431. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14583976
6. Keohane J, O'Mahony C, O'Mahony L, et al. Irritable bowel syndrome-type symptoms in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: a real association or reflection of occult inflammation? Am J Gastroenterol. 2010 Aug;105(8):1788. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20389294
7. Halpert A, Dalton CB, Diamant NE, et al. Clinical response to tricyclic antidepressants in functional bowel disorders is not related to dosage. Am J Gastroenterol. 2005;100:664–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15743366
8. Rao SS, Valestin J, Brown CK, et al. Long-term efficacy of biofeedback therapy for dyssynergic defecation: randomized controlled trial. Am J Gastroenterol. 2010 Apr;105(4):890-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20179692
9. Chiarioni G, Nardo A, Vantini I, et al. Biofeedback is superior to electrogalvanic stimulation and massage for treatment of levator ani syndrome. Gastroenterology. 2010 Apr;138(4):1321-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20044997

10. Jarvis Sk, Abbott JA, Lenart MB, et al. Pilot study of botulinum toxin type A in the treatment of chronic pelvic pain associated with spasm of the levator ani muscles. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol. 2004 Feb;44(1):46-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15089868
11. Abbott JA, Jarvis SK, Lyons SD, et al. Botulinum toxin type A for chronic pain and pelvic floor spasm in women: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol. 2006 Oct;108(4):915-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17012454
12. Rao SS, Paulson J, Mata M, et al. Clinical trial: effects of botulinum toxin on levator ani syndrome—a double-blind, placebo controlled study. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2009 May 1;29(9):985-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19222415
13. Falletto E, Masin A, Lolli P, et al. Is sacral nerve stimulation an effective treatment for chronic idiopathic anal pain? Dis Colon Rectum. 2009 Mar;52(3):456-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19333046
14. Eckardt VF, Dodt O, Kanzler G, et al. Treatment of proctalgia fugax with salbutamol inhalation. Am J Gastroenterol. 1996 Apr;91(4):686-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8677929
15. Atkin GK, Suliman A, Vaizey CJ. Patient characteristics and treatment outcome in functional anorectal pain. Dis Colon Rectum. 2011 Jul;54(7):870-5
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21654255

6. PERIPHERAL NERVE PAIN SYNDROMES

6.1 Neuropathic pain

Much has been written on the subject of peripheral neuropathic pain (1-4) including its diagnosis and treatment. There are some fundamental principles that are worth considering:

1. Nerve injury is associated with changes both within the peripheral nervoussystem (PNS) and the central neural axis including the higher centres. These changes serve to produce an increasing disparity between stimulus and response (Chapter 2).
2. In the PNS, nerve damage may produce a neuroma that can provide a source of ongoing afferent central activity. The neuroma may be discreet and palpable to touch or en-passage and not palpable. Neuromas are sensitive and respond to: compression (e.g., by the surrounding tissue or digital pressure), temperature change and adrenergic stimulation. Sympathetic nerve fibres can grow into neuromas as well as the associated dorsal root ganglia, which may result in sensitivity to body adrenaline changes such as through mood and environment with subsequent changes in pain.
3. Windup is a progressive increase in centrally elicited action potentials per unit peripheral stimulus. A severe acute insult or a chronic repeated stimulus may result in a transient windup phenomenon becoming permanent through immediate gene activation and neurochemical and structural neuronal changes within CNS. These long-term changes in central sensitisation are associated with dysfunction of the afferent sensory nervous system and perception, as well as efferent motor, vasomotor and pseudomotor activity within the pathways of the injured nerve (5).
4. These central changes may result in abnormal afferent processing for nerves other than those originally damaged, so that increased perception (pain, allodynia and hyperaesthesia) from an area greater than the expected pattern may occur. In the case of tissues with innervation that overlaps with an injured nerve, somatic and visceral hypersensitivity (e.g., sensory urge with increased frequency of voiding/evacuation) may be perceived from those tissues.

Essentially, what may be considered a simple nerve injury may be magnified by the CNS so that a whole region may be involved and a non-specific regional pain syndrome may arise. There is also a suggestion that involvement of both the peripheral and central nervous system in the control of the endocrine and immunological system may also become abnormal. Certainly, there is a complex interaction between nerve injury, emotional well being, disability and widespread pain. A proportion of patients go on to develop chronic fatigue syndrome, fibromyalgia and immunological disorders (6-8).

6.2 Anatomy

When considering pelvic pain mechanisms, nerves associated with the pelvis/genitalia are generally divided into thoraco-lumbar and sacral root afferents. The hypogastric plexus is mixed autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) and may contain afferents associated with pain.

6.2.1 The anterior groin nerves

The **iliohypogastric nerve** arises from L1 and its anterior branch supplies the skin above the pubis; its lateral cutaneous branch is distributed to the anterolateral part of the buttock.
The **ilioinguinal** nerve is smaller than the iliohypogastric nerve; it also arises from L1 and is distributed to the skin of the groin and mons pubis.
The **genitofemoral** nerve arises from L1 and L2. It passes through the psoas muscle, then down it to emerge through the deep inguinal ring. Its genital branch supplies the cremaster muscle and a part of the anterior and lateral scrotum. The femoral branch passes close to the external iliac artery, the deep circumflex iliac artery and the femoral artery to be distributed to the upper part of the femoral triangle. The two branches of the femoral branch may separate at any level, therefore, sensory phenomena associated with nerve damage depend upon the level of the lesion and individual variability.
The **lateral cutaneous** nerve of the thigh arises from L2 and L3 and eventually leaves the abdomen behind or through the inguinal ligament at a variable distance medial to the anterior superior iliac spine. In the thigh, it divides into an anterior branch that supplies the anterolateral skin of the thigh, approximately 10 cm down from the inguinal ligament to the knee. The posterior branch supplies the skin more laterally from the greater trochanter, down to the mid-thigh.
The **obturator nerve** arises from L2-L4, descends through the psoas muscle, runs around the pelvis in close proximity to the obturator internus muscle and obturator vessels, and leaves the pelvis via the obturator foramen. This nerve has significant motor innervation, and its cutaneous branch is distributed primarily to the skin on the medial aspect of the knee.

6.2.2 The posterior subgluteal triangle nerves

The posterior triangle area is the area defined superiorly by the upper border of the piriformis, inferiorly by the lower border of quadratus femoris, laterally by the greater trochanter and medially by and lateral border of the sacrum, the lateral borders of the sacrotuberal ligament and ischeal tuberosity. This region contains the sciatic nerve, posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (which branches into the posterior cutaneous perineal branch and the cluneal nerves), the nerve to the obturator internus muscle, and the pudendal nerve. These nerves pass deep to the piriformis muscle and superficial to the superiour gemellus and obturator internus muscles. Injury in this area may damage one or more of these nerves (Figure 13) (9-15).

6.2.3 Branches of the pudendal nerve

The **pudendal nerve** has its origins at the S2-S4 levels. S2 and S3 also contribute to the sciatic nerve and S4 to the coccygeal plexus and the annoccoccygeal nerves.
The pudendal nerve has three main branches: the **inferior anorectal nerve**, the **superficial perineal nerve** (which terminates as cutaneous branches in the perineum and posterior aspect of the scrotum), and the **deep perineal nerve**, which is distributed to the pelvic structures (innervating parts of the bladder, prostate and urethra). This branch terminates as the dorsal nerve of the penis/clitoris, which innervates the glans.
In addition to sensory branches, the pudendal nerve provides motor innervation to anal and urethral sphincters, as well as to the bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernous muscles (involved in the bulbocavernosal response, orgasm and ejaculation). Autonomic fibres also pass with the pudendal nerve and are derived from the presacral parasympathetic as well as sympathetic fibres via the hypogastric plexi.

6.2.4 Anatomical relations of the pudendal nerve (Figure 13)

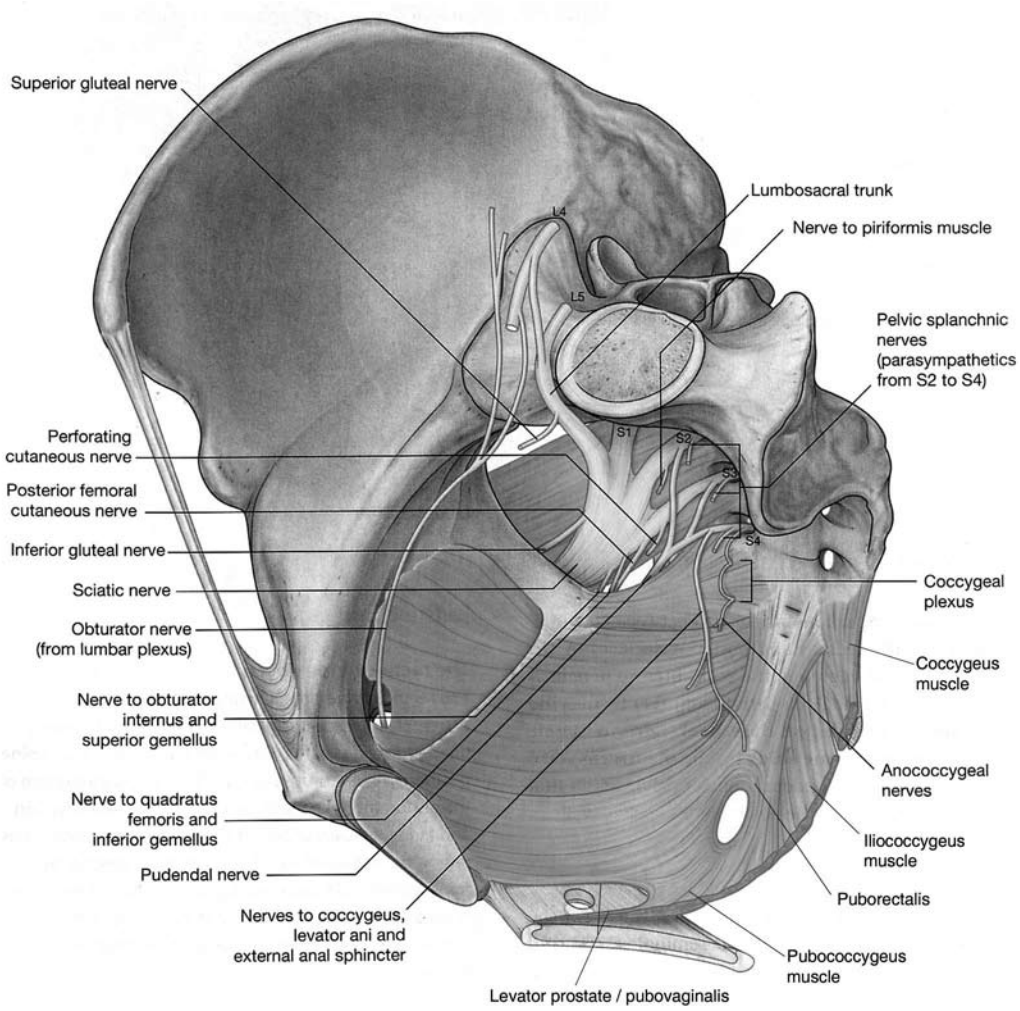
The anatomy may be variable, however, the three roots that form the pudendal nerve usually merge anterior to the sacrum and inferior to the piriformis muscle.
The pudendal nerve leaves the pelvis via the greater sciatic notch to enter the subgluteal region. In the posterior subgluteal triangle (the area bordered by the inferior edge of the piriformis muscle, the sarotuberous ligament medially and the upper border of the rectus femoris muscle inferiorly), the nerve emerges from under the inferior border of the piriformis muscle with its associated pudendal artery and veins; it is medial to the nerve innervating the obturator internus muscle, which is medial to the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (which divides into its cutaneous branch but also the inferior cluneal nerves and perineal nerves), which is medial to the sciatic nerve. These anatomical relations are important for neurotracing techniques used for nerve blocks and because symptoms in those nerve territories also help with diagnosis (16-20).

The pudendal nerve leaves the subgluteal region as it wraps around the superficial surface of the ischeal spine/sacrospinal ligament to re-enter the pelvis (9,10) via the lesser sciatic notch (between the more ventral sacrospinal ligament and the more dorsal sacrotuberal ligaments). This occurs 15% of the time at the enthesis of the spine and the ligament; 75% of the time, it is more medial, and 10% of the time, it wraps around the spine. The sacrotuberal ligament may have a sharp superior border, be wide, and as a result, close

to the spinosacral ligament, or be divided with the pudendal nerve passing through it. All of these features may predispose to nerve injury.
As the pudendal nerve re-enters the pelvis below the levator muscles, it runs within a fascial canal medial to the internal obturator muscle (Alcock's canal).

The inferior anorectal branch may never be a true branch of the pudendal nerve, and may have its origins directly from sacral the roots. As a consequence, pain associated with pudendal nerve injury may not involve the anorectal area. Similarly, pain may only be perceived in the anorectal area if the main pudendal nerve is not involved. In 11% of cases, the inferior anorectal nerve pierces the sacrospinal ligament, possibly increasing the risk of entrapment. Other variations of the anorectal branch exist with the nerve branching off from the main pudendal nerve at any point in the gluteal region or within the pelvis. In 56% of cases, the pudendal nerve is a single trunk as it re-enters the pelvis. Some people have two or three pudendal nerve trunks.

Figure 13: Anatomical relations of the pudendal nerve



Source: Drake, Vogel, & Mitchell: GRAY's ANATOMY FOR STUDENTS, 2004 Elsevier Inc.

6.2.5 ***Afferent nerves and the genitalia***

- The afferents from the skin of the genitals pass via a complex of multiple sensory nerves and this makes the anatomical diagnosis of nerve injury as a cause of pain difficult.
- The anterolateral part of the scrotum/labia majora has afferents associated with the genitofemoral nerve primarily; there may also be some involvement of the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves.
- The posterior scrotal/labia branches of the pudendal nerve transmit sensation from the posterior scrotum/labia majora.
- The penis shaft is innervated on its dorsal surface by the genitofemoral, ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves, and the ventral surface by the perineal branches of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve and cutaneous branches of the pudendal nerve.

- The glans penis/clitoris is associated with the dorsal nerve of the penis/clitoris, the terminal branch of the pudendal nerve.
- All the nerves that are associated with the scrotum may also receive afferents from the testes, although classically, the nerves from the testes are usually associated with the genitofemoral nerve (thoracolumbar as opposed to sacral roots).
- The superficial branches of the pudendal's superficial perineal nerve and the perineal branch of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve receive afferents from the perineal skin.
- Deeper afferents from the perineum and from some of the pelvic organs pass to the pudendal nerve via its deep perineal branch.

*6.2.6 **Afferents in the autonomic plexus***

The pelvic plexus is associated with both the parasympathetic and sympathetic nerves, and as well as afferents associated with these pathways, afferents may travel back to the sacral and thoracolumbar roots with these autonomic nerves. Sites for injury and possible intervention may thus include: the ganglion impar, superior hypogastric plexus, inferior hypogastric plexus, and lumbar sympathetic trunk, as well as more central spinal root areas.

6.3 Etiology of nerve damage

*6.3.1 **Anterior groin nerves - etiology of nerve damage***

The primary afferents of the anterior groin nerves enter the spinal cord at the thoracolumbar level (T10 to L3). Thoracolumbar spinal pathology and any pathology along the course of the nerve may result in neuropathic pain in the distribution of these nerves. As well as neoplastic disease, infection and trauma, surgical incisions and postoperative scarring may result in nerve injury (21-23).

*6.3.2 **Pudendal neuralgia - etiology of nerve damage***

Anatomical variations

Anatomical variations may predispose the patient to developing pudendal neuralgia over time or with repeated low-grade trauma (such as sitting for prolonged periods of time or cycling) (9,10).

The pudendal nerve may be damaged due to local anatomical variation at the level of:

1. The piriformis muscle. For example, as part of a piriformis syndrome: in some cases, the nerve may pass through the muscle and hence be trapped; or in other cases, muscle hypertrophy or spasm is implicated.
2. The sacrospinal/sacrotuberous ligaments, possibly accounting for 42% of cases.
3. Within Alcock's canal (medial to the obturator internus muscle, within the fascia of the muscle), possibly accounting for 26% of cases.
4. Multiple levels in 17% of cases.

The site of injury determines the site of perceived pain and the nature of associated symptoms (e.g., the more distal the damage, the less likely the anal region will be involved).

*6.3.3 **Surgery***

In orthopaedic hip surgery, pressure from the positioning of the patient, where the perineum is placed hard against the brace, can result in pudendal nerve damage (24,25). The surgery itself may also directly damage the nerve. Pelvic surgery such as sacrospinous colpopexy is clearly associated with pudendal nerve damage in some cases (26,27). In many types of surgery, including colorectal, urological and gynaecological, pudendal nerve injury may be implicated.

*6.3.4 **Trauma***

Fractures of the sacrum or pelvis may result in pudendal nerve/root damage and pain. Falls and trauma to the gluteal region may also produce pudendal nerve damage if associated with significant tissue injury or prolonged pressure.

*6.3.5 **Cancer***

Tumours in the presacral space must be considered. Tumours invading the pudendal nerve may occur and there may also be damage from surgery for pelvic cancer (13).

*6.3.6 **Birth Trauma***

This is more difficult to be certain about (12). The pudendal neuralgia of birth trauma is thought to resolve in most cases over a period of months. However, rarely, it appears to continue as painful neuropathy. Multiple pregnancy and births may predispose to stretch neuropathy in later life.

*6.3.7 **Elderly women***

Child birth (28) and repeated abdominal straining associated with chronic constipation (29) are thought to predispose elderly women to postmenopausal pelvic floor descent and stretching of the pudendal nerve with associated pain. Changes in the hormone status may also be a factor.
In the Urogenital Pain Management Centre, the commonest associations with pudendal neuralgia appear to be: history of pelvic surgery; prolonged sitting (especially young men working with computer technology); and postmenopausal older women. Trauma- and cancer-related pain is less frequent, cycling where as classical appears to be rarely seen.

6.4 Diagnosis for pudendal neuralgia

*6.4.1 **Differential diagnosis of other disorders***

Other forms of neuropathic pain (30,31).
As well as the pudendal nerve, there are several other nerves that may mimic the symptoms of pudendal neuralgia if they are damaged.

Inferior cluneal nerve. This is a branch of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve. This nerve is prone to injury in the ischial region. Cluneal nerve injury produces a sensation of pain perceived more laterally than that for pudendal neuralgia.
Sacral nerve roots. The S2-S4 nerve roots may be involved. This is an important differential diagnosis as tumours must be excluded.
Cauda equina syndrome. Lumbar spinal pathology involving the cauda equina may result in an intractable neuropathic pain.
Ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric and genitofemoral nerves. Injury to these nerves or their roots may occur from thoracolumbar pathology, abdominal posterior wall conditions, surgery, and entrapment in the groin. The pain may extend into the groin, anterior perineum and scrotum/labia majorum. If the femoral branch of the genitofemoral nerve is involved, pain may extend into the inner thigh.

Referred spinal pain
Pain from thoracolumbar pathology may refer to the groin. Spinal pain may become associated with muscle hyperalgesia and trigger points. The muscle associated pain may spread to involve a range of muscles, including the pelvic floor muscles with resultant pelvic pain.

Musculoskeletal disorders
Trigger points associated with localised tenderness and pain may be detected in the piriformis, obturator internus, levator ani, bulbocavernosal and ischeocavernosal muscles, as well as the gluteal, adductor, rectus abdominus and spinal muscles. All of these may refer the pain to or close to the pelvis.
Pathology of the joints (sacroiliac, pubic symphysis, hip and spinal) may also refer into the pelvis.
Coccyx pain syndrome, a painful coccyx may occur for a number of reasons (Chapter 2).

*6.4.2 **Clinical presentation of pudendal neuralgia***

6.4.2.1 Age

There is a wide age range, as one would expect with a condition that has so many potential causes. There is a suggestion that, the younger the patient, the better the prognosis. Essentially, the sooner the diagnosis is made, as with any compression nerve injury, the better the prognosis, and older patients may have a more protracted problem (32-34).

6.4.2.2 Sex

Six out of ten cases are observed in women.

6.4.2.3 History

A proportion of patients will be able to relate the onset of pain to an acute event such as surgery, sepsis or trauma, and occasionally, cycling for a prolonged period. Chronic injury is more frequent, such as associated with sitting for prolonged periods over time. Many will be idiopathic.

The pain is classically perceived in the perineum from anus to clitoris/penis. However, less-specific pain distribution may occur, and this may be due to anatomical variation, involvement of branches of the nerve rather that the main nerve, CNS central sensitisation, and consequently, the involvement of other organs and systems in a regional pain syndrome. Other nerves in the vicinity may also be involved, for example, inferior cluneal nerve and perineal branches of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve. The musculoskeletal system may become involved, confusing the pain picture as aches and pains develop in the muscles due to immobility

and disability, possibly magnified by the CNS changes.

Burning is the most predominant adjective used to describe the pain. Crushing and electric may also be used, indicating the two components - a constant pain often associated with acute sharp episodes. Many patients may have the feeling of a swelling or foreign body in the rectum or perineum, often described as a golf or tennis ball. The term pain has different meanings to patients and some would rather use the term discomfort or numbness.

Aggravating factors include any cause of pressure being applied, either directly to the nerve or indirectly to other tissue, resulting in pudendal traction. Allodynia is pain on light touch due to involvement of the CNS, and may make sexual contact and the wearing of clothes difficult. These patients often remain standing, and as a consequence, develop a wide range of other aches and pains. Soft seats are often less well tolerated, whereas sitting on a toilet seat is said to be much better tolerated. If unilateral, sitting on one buttock is common. The pain may be exacerbated by bowel or bladder evacuation.

6.4.2.4 Associated features

Pudendal nerve damage may be associated with a range of sensory phenomena. In the distribution of the nerve itself, as well as unprovoked pain; the patient may have paraesthesia (pins and needles); dysaesthesia (unpleasant sensory perceptions usually but not necessarily secondary to provocation, such as the sensation of running cold water); allodynia (pain on light touch); or hyperalgesia (increased pain perception following a painful stimulus, including hot and cold stimuli). Similar sensory abnormalities may be found outside of the area innervated by the damaged nerve, particularly for the visceral and muscle hyperalgesia.

The cutaneous sensory dysfunction may be associated with superficial dysparunia, but also irritation and pain associated with clothes brushing the skin. There may also be a lack of sensation and pain may occur in the presence of numbness. Visceral hypersensitivity may result in an urge to defecate or urinate. This is usually associated with voiding frequency, with small amounts urine being passed. Pain on visceral filling may occur. Anal pain and loss of motor control may result in poor bowel activity, with constipation and/or incontinence. Ejaculation and orgasm may also be painful or reduced.

Many of those suffering from pudendal neuralgia complain of fatigue and generalised muscle cramps, weakness and pain. Being unable to sit is a major disability, and over time, patients struggle to stand and they often become bedbound. The immobility produces generalised muscle wasting, and minimal activity hurts. As a consequence of the widespread pain and disability, patients often have emotional problems, and in particular, depression. Patients with CPP are also often anxious and have the tendency to catastrophise. Depression, catrostophising and disability are all poor prognostic markers.

Cutaneous colour may change due to changes in innervation but also because of neurogenic oedema. The patient may describe the area as swollen due to this oedema, but also to the lack of afferent perception.

6.4.2.5 Clinical examination

A full clinical examination of the spinal, muscular, nervous and urogenital systems is necessary to aid in diagnosis of pudendal neuralgia, especially to detect signs indicating another pathology. Often there is little to find in pudendal neuralgia and frequently findings are non-specific. The main pathognomonic features are the signs of nerve injury in the appropriate neurological distribution, for example, allodynia or numbness. Tenderness in response to pressure over the pudendal nerve may aid the clinical diagnosis. This may be elicited by per rectal or per vaginal examination and palpation in the region of the ischeal spine and/or Alcock's canal. Muscle tenderness and the presence of trigger points in the muscles may confuse the picture. Trigger points may be present in a range of muscles, both within the pelvis (levator ani and obturator internus muscles) or externally (e.g., the piriformis, adductors, rectus abdominus or paraspinal muscles).

6.4.2.6 Investigations

MRI scans of the pelvis are usually normal although some practitioners claim them to be useful (35,36). However, MRI scans of the pelvis and spine (mid thoracic to coccyx) are considered essential to help with the differential diagnosis of pudendal neuralgia. Electrophysiological studies may reveal signs of perineal denervation, increased pudendal nerve latency, or impaired bulbocavernosal reflex (25,34,37-39). However, for an abnormality to be detected, significant nerve damage is probably necessary. Pain may be associated with limited nerve damage, therefore, these investigations are often normal in patients thought to have pudendal neuralgia.

6.5 Management of pain associated with nerve damage

The approach to managing a patient with pain following nerve damage is similar irrespective of the nerve involved. There is a suggestion that early treatment has a better prognosis. The general principles are covered in chapter 10 of this document.

*6.5.1 **Pudendal neuralgia and injections***

The role of injections may be divided into two. First, an injection of local anaesthetic and steroid at the sight of nerve injury may produce a therapeutic action. The possible reasons for this are related to the fact that steroids may reduce any inflammation and swelling at the site of nerve irritation, but also because steroids may block sodium channels and reduce irritable firing from the nerve. The second possible benefit of local infiltration is diagnostic. We have already indicated that when the pudendal nerve is injured there are several sites where this may occur. Differential block of the pudendal nerve helps to provide information in relation to the site where the nerve may be trapped (16-20,35,40-44) .

Infiltration at the ischeal spine requires the use of a nerve stimulator/locator. Both motor (anal contraction) and sensory endpoints may be noted. The anatomical endpoint may be localised by fluoroscopy, computed tomography (CT) guidance, or the use of ultrasound. Ultrasound avoids any form of radiation, whereas CT guidance involves a significant amount of radiation. Currently, fluoroscopy is probably the imaging technique most frequently used because it is readily available to most anaesthetists that perform the block.

Currently, infiltration of the pudendal nerve within Alcock's canal is primarily undertaken with the use of CT. As well as injecting around the pudendal nerve, specific blocks of other nerves arising from the pelvis may be performed. Similarly, trigger point injections into tender areas within muscles may also be considered. Pulsed radiofrequency stimulation has also been suggested as a treatment (45).

*6.5.2 **Pudendal neuralgia and surgery***

Decompression of an entrapped or injured nerve is a routine approach and probably should apply to the pudendal nerve as it applies to all other nerves. There are several approaches and the approach of choice probably depends upon the nature of the pathology. The most traditional approach is the transgluteal approach; however, a transperineal approach may be an alternative, particularly if the nerve damage is thought to be related to previous pelvic surgery (11,14,33,35,46-48).

Currently, there has been only one prospective randomised study (11). This suggests that, if the patient has had the pain for < 6 years, 66% of patients will see some improvement with surgery (compared to 40% if the pain has been present for > 6 years). Surgery is by no means the answer for all patients. On talking to patients that have undergone surgery, providing the diagnosis was clear-cut, most patients are grateful to have undergone surgery but many still have symptoms that need management.

*6.5.3 **Pudendal neuralgia and neuromodulation***

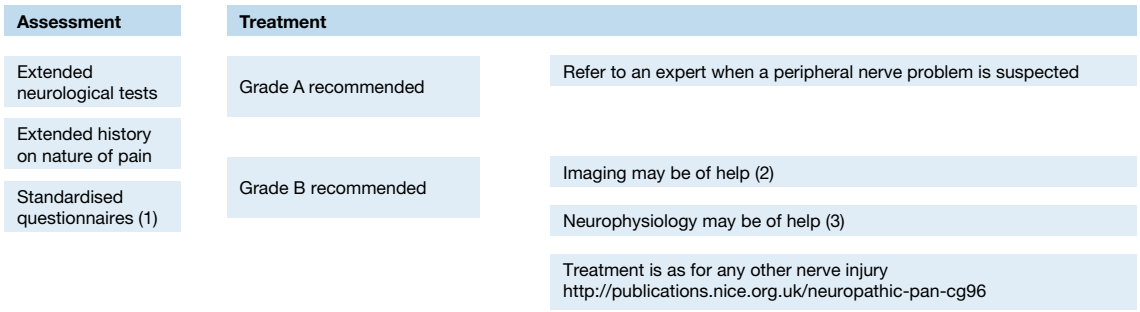
Pudendal neuralgia represents a peripheral nerve injury and as such should respond to neuromodulation by implanted pulse generators. However, it is important that the stimulation is perceived in the same site as the perceived pain. Spinal cord stimulation (SCS) may be effective for thoraco-lumbar afferents. However, it is difficult to obtain appropriate stimulation from SCS for the sacral nerves including pudendal. There is limited experience with sacral root stimulation and as a result stimulation for pudendal neuralgia should only be undertaken in specialised centres and in centres that can provide multidisciplinarycare (49-51).

6.6 Conclusions and recommendations: pudendal neuralgia

Conclusions	**LE**
Multiple sensory and functional disorders within the region of the pelvis/urogenital system may occur as a result of injury to one or more of many nerves. The anatomy is complex.	2
There is no single aetiology for the nerve damage and the symptoms and signs may be few or multiple.	1
Investigations are often normal.	2
The peripheral nerve pain syndromes are frequently associated with negative cognitive, behavioural, sexual, or emotional consequences.	1
There are multiple treatment options with varying levels of evidence.	1

Recommendations	GR
It is important to rule out confusable diseases.	A
If a Peripheral Nerve Pain Syndrome is suspected, early referral should occur to an expert in the field, working within a multidisciplinary team environment.	B
Imaging and neurophysiology may help with the diagnosis, but the gold standard investigation is an image and nerve locator guided local anaesthetic injection.	B
Neuropathic pain guidelines are well established. Standard approaches to management of neuropathic pain should be utalised.	A

Figure 14: assessment and treatment algorithm for peripheral nerve pain syndrome



1. Horowitz SH. The diagnostic workup of patients with neuropathic pain. Med Clin North Am. Jan 2007;91(1):21-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17164102
2. Kim S, Choi JY, Huh YM, et al. Role of magnetic resonance imaging in entrapment and compressive neuropathy - what,where, and how to see the peripheral nerves on the musculoskeletal magnetic resonance image: part 1. Overview and lower extremity. Eur Radiol. Jan 2007;17(1):139-149. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16572334
3. Labat JJ, Delavierre D, Sibert L, et al. [Electrophysiological studies of chronic pelvic and perineal pain]. Prog Urol. Vol 20. France: 2010 Elsevier Masson SAS; 2010:905-910. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056364

6.7 References

1. Treede RD, Jensen TS, Campbell JN, et al. Neuropathic pain: redefinition and a grading system for clinical and research purposes. Neurology. 2008 Apr 29;70(18):1630-5 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18003941
2. Jensen TS, Madsen CS, Finnerup NB. Pharmacology and treatment of neuropathic pains. Curr Opin Neurol. 2009 Oct;22(5):467-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19741531
3. Latremoliere A, Woolf CJ. Central sensitization: a generator of pain hypersensitivity by central neural plasticity. J Pain. 2009 Sep;10(9):895-926. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19712899
4. Jensen TS, Baron R, Haanpää, et al. A new definition of neuropathic pain. Pain. 2011 Oct;152(10):2204-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21764514
5. Goebel, A. (2011). Complex regional pain syndrome in adults. Rheumatology (Oxford). 2011 Oct;50(10):1739-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21712368
6. Goebel, A, Baranowski A, Maurer K, et al. Intravenous immunoglobulin treatment of the complex regional pain syndrome: a randomized trial. Ann Intern Med. 2010 Feb 2;152(3):152-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20124231
7. Nickel JC, Tripp DA, Pontari M, et al. Interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome and associated medical conditions with an emphasis on irritable bowel syndrome, fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome. J Urol. 2010 Oct;184(4):1358-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20719340
8. Warren JW, Wesselmann U, Morozov V, et al. Numbers and types of nonbladder syndromes as risk factors for interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome. Urology. 2011 Feb;77(2):313-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21295246
9. Antolak SJ Jr, Hough DM, Pawlina W. et al. Anatomical basis of chronic pelvic pain syndrome: the ischial spine and pudendal nerve entrapment. Med Hypotheses. 2002 Sep;59(3):349-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12208168
10. Mahakkanukrauh P, Surin P, Vaidhayakarn P. Anatomical study of the pudendal nerve adjacent to the sacrospinous ligament. Clin Anat. 2005 Apr;18(3):200-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15768420

11. Robert R, Labat JJ, Bensignor M, et al. Decompression and transposition of the pudendal nerve in pudendal neuralgia: a randomized controlled trial and long-term evaluation. Eur Urol. 2005 Mar;47(3):403-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15716208
12. Ashton-Miller JA, DeLancey JO. Functional anatomy of the female pelvic floor. Ann N Y Acad Sci. 2007 Apr;1101:266-96.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17416924
13. Moszkowicz D, Alsaid B, Bessede T, et al. Where does pelvic nerve injury occur during rectal surgery for cancer? Colorectal Dis. 2011 Dec;13(12):1326-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20718836
14. Robert R, Labat JJ, Khalfallah M, et al. [Pudendal nerve surgery in the management of chronic pelvic and perineal pain]. Prog Urol. 2010 Nov;20(12):1084-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056388
15. Filippiadis DK, Velonakis G, Mazioti A, et al. CT-guided percutaneous infiltration for the treatment of Alcock's neuralgia. Pain Physician. 2011 Mar-Apr;14(2):211-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21412375
16. Bolandard, F, Bazin JE. Nerve stimulator guided pudendal nerve blocks. Can J Anaesth. Canada. 52: 773; author reply 773-774.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16103396
17. Naja MZ, Al-Tannir MA, Maaliki H, et al. Nerve-stimulator-guided repeated pudendal nerve block for treatment of pudendal neuralgia. Eur J Anaesthesiol. 2006 May;23(5):442-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16573866
18. Wey PF, Lions C, Rimmelé T, et al. [Nerve stimulator guided pudendal nerve block for postoperative analgesia. An evaluation of professional practice]. Ann Fr Anesth Reanim. France. 26: 1087-1088.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17961968
19. Peng PW, Tumber PS. Ultrasound-guided interventional procedures for patients with chronic pelvic pain - a description of techniques and review of literature. Pain Physician. 2008 Mar-Apr;11(2):215-24.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18354713
20. Kim S, Song S, Paek O, et al. Nerve-stimulator-guided pudendal nerve block by pararectal approach. Colorectal Dis. 2011 Jul 13. doi: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2011.02720.x. [Epub ahead of print].
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21752174
21. Matejcik V. Anatomical variations of lumbosacral plexus. Surg Radiol Anat. 2010 Apr;32(4):409-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19696958
22. Hahn L. Treatment of ilioinguinal nerve entrapment - a randomized controlled trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 2011 Sep;90(9):955-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21615360
23. Klaassen Z, Marshall E, Tubbs RC, et al. Anatomy of the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves with observations of their spinal nerve contributions. Clin Anat. 2011 May;24(4):454-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21509811
24. Goldet R, Kerdraon J, Amarenco G. [Traction on the orthopedic table and pudendal nerve injury. Importance of electrophysiologic examination]. Rev Chir Orthop Reparatrice Appar Mot. 1998 Oct;84(6):523-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846326
25. Amarenco G, Ismael SS, Bayle B, et al. Electrophysiological analysis of pudendal neuropathy following traction. Muscle Nerve. 2001 Jan;24(1):116-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11150974
26. Alevizon SJ, Finan MA. Sacrospinous colpopexy: management of postoperative pudendal nerve entrapment. Obstet Gynecol. 1996 Oct;88(4 Pt 2):713-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8841264
27. Fisher HW, Lotze PM. Nerve injury locations during retropubic sling procedures. Int Urogynecol J. 2011 Apr;22(4):439-41.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21060989
28. Kapoor DS, Thakar R, Sultan AH. Combined urinary and faecal incontinence. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct. 2005 Jul-Aug;16(4):321-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15729476
29. Amarenco G, Kerdraon J, Lanoe Y. [Perineal neuropathy due to stretching and urinary incontinence. Physiopathology, diagnosis and therapeutic implications]. Ann Urol (Paris). 1990;24(6):463-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2176777

30. Darnis B, Robert R, Labat JJ, et al. Perineal pain and inferior cluneal nerves: anatomy and surgery. Surg Radiol Anat. 2008 May;30(3):177-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18305887
31. Labat JJ, Robert R, Delavierre D, et al. [Symptomatic approach to chronic neuropathic somatic pelvic and perineal pain]. Prog Urol. 2010 Nov;20(12):973-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056374
32. Robert R, Prat-Pradal D, Labat JJ, et al. Anatomic basis of chronic perineal pain: role of the pudendal nerve. Surg Radiol Anat. 1998;20(2):93-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9658526
33. Shafik A. Pudendal canal syndrome as a cause of vulvodynia and its treatment by pudendal nerve decompression. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 1998 Oct;80(2):215-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9846672
34. Labat JJ, Riant T, Robert R, et al. Diagnostic criteria for pudendal neuralgia by pudendal nerve entrapment (Nantes criteria). Neurourol Urodyn. 2008;27(4):306-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17828787
35. Filler AG. Diagnosis and treatment of pudendal nerve entrapment syndrome subtypes: imaging, injections, and minimal access surgery. Neurosurg Focus. 2009 Feb;26(2):E9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19323602
36. Insola A, Granata G, Padua L. Alcock canal syndrome due to obturator internus muscle fibrosis. Muscle Nerve. 2010 Sep;42(3):431-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20665515
37. Lee JC, Yang CC, Kromm BG, et al. Neurophysiologic testing in chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a pilot study. Urology. 2001 Aug;58(2):246-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489711
38. Lefaucheur JP, Labat JJ, Amarenco G, et al. What is the place of electroneuromyographic studies in the diagnosis and management of pudendal neuralgia related to entrapment syndrome? Neurophysiol Clin. 2007 Aug-Sep;37(4):223-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17996810
39. Labat JJ, Delavierre D, Sibert L, et al. [Electrophysiological studies of chronic pelvic and perineal pain]. Prog Urol. 2010 Nov;20(12):905-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056364
40. Thoumas, D, Leroi AM, Mauillon J, et al. Pudendal neuralgia: CT-guided pudendal nerve block technique. Abdom Imaging. 1999 May-Jun;24(3):309-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10227901
41. Kovacs P, Gruber H, Piegger J, et al. New, simple, ultrasound-guided infiltration of the pudendal nerve: ultrasonographic technique. Dis Colon Rectum. 2001 Sep;44(9):1381-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11584221
42. Antolak SJ Jr, Antolak CM. Therapeutic pudendal nerve blocks using corticosteroids cure pelvic pain after failure of sacral neuromodulation. Pain Med. 2009 Jan;10(1):186-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19222779
43. Rigaud J, Riant T, Delavierre D, et al. [Somatic nerve block in the management of chronic pelvic and perineal pain]. Prog Urol. 2010 Nov;20(12):1072-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21056387
44. Romanzi L. Techniques of pudendal nerve block. J Sex Med. 2010 May;7(5):1716-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20537059
45. Rhame EE, Levey KA, Ghraibo CG. Successful treatment of refractory pudendal neuralgia with pulsed radiofrequency. Pain Physician. 2009 May-Jun;12(3):633-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19461829
46. Bautrant E, de Bisschop E, Vaini-Elies V, et al. [Modern algorithm for treating pudendal neuralgia: 212 cases and 104 decompressions]. J Gynecol Obstet Biol Reprod (Paris). 2003 Dec;32(8 Pt 1):705-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15067894
47. Possover M, Baekelandt J, Flaskamp C, et al. Laparoscopic neurolysis of the sacral plexus and the sciatic nerve for extensive endometriosis of the pelvic wall. Minim Invasive Neurosurg. 2007 Feb;50(1):33-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17546541
48. Robert R, Labat JJ, Riant T, et al. Neurosurgical treatment of perineal neuralgias. Adv Tech Stand Neurosurg. 2007;32:41-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17907474

49. Mayer RD, Howard FM. Sacral nerve stimulation: neuromodulation for voiding dysfunction and pain. Neurotherapeutics. 2008 Jan;5(1):107-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18164489
50. Carmel M, Lebel M, Tu le M. Pudendal nerve neuromodulation with neurophysiology guidance: a potential treatment option for refractory chronic pelvi-perineal pain. Int Urogynecol J. 2010 May;21(5):613-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20012596
51. Marcelissen T, Van Kerrebroeck P, de Wachter S. Sacral neuromodulation as a treatment for neuropathic clitoral pain after abdominal hysterectomy. Int Urogynecol J. 2010 Oct;21(10):1305-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20386879

7. SEXOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

7.1 Introduction

In general human sexuality has three aspects – sexual function, sexual self-concept, and sexual relationships. Pain can affect self-esteem, ones ability to enjoy sex and relationships. Healthy sexuality is a positive and life-affirming part of being human. The capacity to experience optimal comfort and satisfaction in sexual expression also requires basic physical abilities. Essentially, these include intact sensory and motor processes, and the ability to move with ease.

Chronic pain may hinder the ability to move freely, and thus, may limit the positions one can get into to have sex. Second, chronic pain may affect the ability to respond sexually and conversely in CPP the sex act can be associated with pain that can be inhibiting. Research on male sexual dysfunction highlights the importance of considering partners and the impact that male sexual problems have on their partners. Sexual dysfunction occurs in an interpersonal context and has implications for both partners in a relationship. Chronic pain also impacts the sexual and interpersonal functioning of couples; declines in sexual activity and reduced relationship satisfaction have been noted among patients with chronic pain and their partners (1,2).
It is recommended that a biopsychosocial model of CPPS should be incorporated into future research, and that research considers the role that sexual and relationship variables may play in couples' adjustment.
The sexual-response cycle is divided into five phases: desire, arousal (excitement), plateau, orgasm and resolution. They're actually all part of a continuous process of sexual response. There is much variation among individuals, as well as between different sexual events and there are different models to describe the sexual responses (3).

During the sexual response cycle the different phases, are controlled by a different part of the brain and spinal cord. In each of these phases chronic pain and CPP in particular can cause disturbances (4).

- The Desire Phase begins in the "pleasure centers" of the brain and controls a person's sexual appetite or drive. Pain or even the fear of pain can decrease desire, making the person uninterested in sex. In some cases, however, having sex may actually help to relieve pain.
- The Arousal Phase is associated with the swelling of the blood vessels in a man's penis and in a woman's labia, vagina, and clitoris. This swelling causes an erection in the penis and in the clitoris and release of lubricating fluids. If a person experiences pain at the time of becoming excited, the excitement may be reversed, in man the penis will become limp and in woman the lubrication will stop, laeding to dryness.
- The Orgasm Phase describes a genital reflex controlled by the spinal cord, which causes the genital muscles to contract, involuntarily releasing sexual tension and swelling that build up during the excitement phase. In some cases, pain prevents people from reaching this phase.

7.2 General Considerations

Pelvic pain in women (5) and in men (6) is associated with significant sexual dysfunction. While chronic pain impacts all aspects of functioning, including work, family relationships, and social activities, the most frequent complaint cited by patients with CPP (CPP) is sexual dysfunction (7). Factors contributing to sexual dysfunction in patients with chronic pain are multifactorial and contextual (8), and may be related to comorbidity with depression (9,10), use of antidepressant medications (11), and relationship satisfaction (12), among many other factors. There are reports of increased rates of past sexual abuse which may have negative impact on sexual

function (13,14). CPP may have a higher association with sexual dysfunction than other types of chronic pain. CPP specifically involves areas intimately connected to sexuality, which may negatively impact one's body image and sexual self-esteem (15), and also affects both partners in the relationship (16).

7.3 Pelvic floor involvement in sexual function and dysfunction

The pelvic floor of the male appears to have some impact on sexual function, although its exact role is unclear. Erection is a neurovascular event in which the smooth and striated musculature of the corpora cavernosa and pelvic floor play a role in facilitating and maintaining the erection (24). In ejaculation and orgasm the rhythmic contraction of the bulbocavernous and ischiocavernous muscles is perceived as pleasurable. Ejaculation is controlled by the sympathetic nervous system and performed with help of the pelvic floor muscles. Controlling the pelvic floor muscles may delay the onset of ejaculation through an active relaxation of the pelvic floor muscles. This is a learned technique, which may be mastered using pelvic floor biofeedback. Pelvic floor exercise and biofeedback for the treatment of both erectile dysfunction (ED) and premature ejaculation (PE) have been reported on in the literature (25).

Early studies maintained that strong pelvic floor muscles in women, particularly the ischiocavernous muscle that attaches to the clitoral hood, were crucial for adequate genital arousal and attainment of orgasm (26), and that weak muscles may provide insufficient activity necessary for vaginal friction or blood flow, and inhibit orgasmic potential (27). It has also been proposed that sexual pleasure is enhanced for both partners by genital responses provided by contraction of the levator ani (28). It stands to reason, therefore, that better control over pelvic floor muscle contraction and relaxation could improve sexual function.

However, few studies are available to support this notion. In a Scandinavian randomised controlled study pelvic floor muscle training has been demonstrated to improve QoL and sexual function in women with urinary stress incontinence (28). In a Turkish study, improvement in sexual desire, performance during coitus, and achievement of orgasm were reported in women (N=42) who received pelvic floor muscle re-education (29).

The effectiveness of physical therapy in treating sexual pain disorders has been reported upon in the literature as well. Retrospective studies have reported on a success rate of 77% (30,31). Goetsch recently reported her findings that physical therapy may serve as important adjunct to surgery for "vulvar vestibulitis" (vulvar pain syndrome) (32).

7.4 CPP and sexual dysfunction of the male

In the BACH study, Hu et al. found that men who reported having experienced sexual, physical, or emotional abuse had increased odds (1.7 compared to 3.3) for symptoms suggestive of PPS. The authors suggested that clinicians may wish to screen for abuse in men presenting with symptoms suggestive of PPS. Conversely, clinicians may wish to inquire about pelvic pain in patients who have experienced abuse (33).

A key feature of PPS is chronic pain. Chronic pain and its treatment can impair our ability to express sexuality. In a study in England 73% of patients with chronic pain had some degree of sexual problems as result of the pain (8). These problems can occur because of several factors. Psychological factors like decrease in self-esteem, depression and anxiety can contribute to loss of libido. Physiological factors like fatigue, nausea and pain itself can cause sexual dysfunction. Pain medications (opioids, and the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, SSRI) can also decrease libido (34) and delay ejaculation.

The evaluation of the effects of PPS on sexual function should take into consideration the adverse effects of drug therapy of PPS on sexuality, as well as the more interesting direct interactions between the PPS symptoms and disorders of libido, erectile function and ejaculation.

The number of studies on the effects of CPP on sexual function is limited. Sexual dysfunction is often ignored because of a lack of standardised measurements. At the present, the most commonly used tool is the international index of erectile function (IIEF) questionnaire (35). Post-ejaculation pain is not mentioned in this questionnaire.

In the 1980s an association between PPS and sexual dysfunction was postulated (36). This study reported a high incidence of decreased libido in patients with PPS, and they also concluded that this syndrome should be viewed as a psychosomatic disorder. Where as psychology may play a role in the genesis of the pain, nowadays we would say there is little evidence to support PPS as being a psychiatric disorder, but rather a biopsychological disorder in certain cases. For more information on this issue see Chapter 3.1.

In 2 reviews the relation between PPS and health status, with influence on sexual activity, were addressed (37,38).

In a Chinese study of men with PPS 1768 males completed the questionnaires. The overall prevalence of sexual dysfunction was 49%. Erectile dysfunction (ED) is the most investigated sexual dysfunction in PPS patients. The reported prevalence of ED ranges from 15.1% to 48%, varying with the evaluation tools and populations (39,40). ED was prevalent in 27.4% of Italian men aged 25-50 (41), 15.2% among Turkish men

(significantly higher than control group) (17) and 43% among Finnish men with PPS (42). The prevalence of ED was found to be higher in young men with PPS than in the general population.

According to other studies men with pelvic pain had higher chance of suffering from ED (43,44). Recently, a significant correlation between "chronic prostatitis", PPS symptoms (measured by NIH-CPSI) and ED (measured by IIEF) was confirmed (45), while other studies using the same questionnaires were not able to confirm such a correlation (35,46). Some studies also report ejaculatory dysfunction, mainly premature ejaculation (6,30,39,40). According to the definition set up by the International Society for Sexual Medicine, PE is "a male sexual dysfunction characterised by ejaculation which always or nearly always occurs prior to or within about one minute of vaginal penetration, and inability to delay ejaculation on all or nearly all vaginal penetrations" (47). The reported prevalence of PE varies widely in PPS patients, but unlike ED the prevalence does not increase with age (40).

A study from Turkey concerning the interaction between PPS and premature ejaculation (PE) according to intravaginal ejaculation latency time showed that 77% of men with PPS suffered from PE (17). Screponi et al. (2001) reported the high incidence of prostatic inflammation symptoms in men with PE (48). PE associated with PPS is hypothesised to be caused by infection or inflammation, thus treatment with antibiotics should reduce PE symptoms. In 2 studies antibiotic treatment has been shown significantly increase in patients IELT (intravaginal ejaculation latency time). Despite these improvements, the mean IELT was still very low and questionable. Before these results can be recommended, further placebo controlled, studies are mandatory (49,50).

Furthermore, there are reports which highlight the appearance of ejaculatory pain in patients with PPS (51), while some studies suggested PPS symptoms improvement by increased ejaculatory frequency and sexual activity (52,53).

The presence of pelvic pain may increase the risk for erectile dysfunction independently of age (44). On the other hand, cross-sectional data suggest no improvement of LUTS by an increased frequency of ejaculation (38). In a study bridging the gap between LUTS and ED, Muller and Mulhall have speculated on the negative impact of PPS on QoL, leading to consecutive impairment of erectile function (54). Although mental distress and impaired QoL related to illness could contribute to sexual dysfunction observed in patients with PPS, the presence of erectile and ejaculatory disorders is more frequently related to symptoms and imaging suggestive of a more severe inflammatory condition (6). These arguments are important for the understanding of the close relationship between CPP symptoms, disturbed sexuality, impact on QoL, and psychological implications including depression (37-40,55).

Sexual dysfunction heightens anger, frustration and depression, all of which place a strain on the relationship and the partner. The female partners of men with sexual dysfunction and depression often present with similar symptoms including pain upon intercourse and depressive symptoms. Men with PPS have reported a high frequency of sexual relationship dissolution and psychological symptoms, such as depression and suicidal thinking (37,54). PPS patients reported greater sexual and relationship problems: 45% reported an increase in pain during or following intercourse, and many reported avoiding sexual relationships for fear of spreading an infection to their partner (56). On the other hand, Smith et al. found that men with PPS did not report significant decrease of sexual satisfaction compared to control. The results of the study suggested that while men with PPS and their partners may experience some sexual difficulties, PPS may not have a large negative impact on patients' intimate relationships (57). Aubin et al. found that men appeared open to the initiation of sex and assumed their partners were sexually satisfied (58).

There is a consensus that therapeutic strategies reducing symptoms, especially against pelvic pain, are of relevance in relation to changes of sexuality. On the other hand, having sex and intimacy can yield positive experiences that will reduce the pain. The central nervous system plays an important role in this mechanism.

7.5 CPP and sexual dysfunction of the female

CPP is a clinical condition that results from the complex interactions of physiological and psychological factors and has a direct impact on the social, marital, and professional lives of women. CPP leads to substantial impairment in QoL and several sexual dysfunctions (58-61).

It seems reasonable to expect that pain, extreme fatigueness , depressive mood and paindrugs will effect womens sexuality. Women with pain may report a variety of sexual problems ranging from decreased pleasure and frequency of intercourse, superficial or deep dyspareunia, and problems in reaching orgasm to a total aversion toward sexual intimacy of any kind. Ter Kuile et al. found in their study that women with CPP reported significantly more pain, depression, and anxiety symptoms and were physically more impaired than women in the control group. In comparison with controls, women with CPP reported significantly more sexual avoidance behavior, non-sensuality, and complaints of "vaginismus" (62).

CPP is more directly associated with sexual dysfunction than chronic pain at other sites. In one study of CPP patients' feelings and beliefs about their pain or illness, 40 out of 64 participants cited sexual

dysfunction as one of the chief problems the illness had caused, making it the most frequent complaint (20). Collett and colleagues (63) also found that patients with CPP reported more sexual problems than women with any other type of chronic pain problem.

The quality of intimate relationships is closely connected with sexual function (64). Satisfaction with the sexual relationship appears to be associated with higher marital functioning (65). In addition to its relationship with marital dissatisfaction, sexual dissatisfaction is related to sexual dysfunction. In cases in which one partner suffers from chronic pain, the ability of both partners to cope with the pain and the extent to which partners are supportive of the chronic pain sufferer have been found to be a predictor of sexual functioning (65).

In community-based studies in the UK (7), New Zealand (59) and Australia (66), a substantially larger proportion of the women with CPP reported dyspareunia (varying between 29% and 42%) than women without CPP (varying between 11% and 14%). Only a few studies have investigated sexual problems within clinical populations (63,67,68). The study of Veritt et al. show that all of the sexual function domains (desire, arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and pain) were significantly lower in women with CPP than in women without CPP (68). In line with the results of the community based studies, patients with CPP reported more sexual problems such as dyspareunia, problems with desire or arousal and lubrication than women without CPP (67-69).

One study of patients enrolled in chronic pain treatment programs in England has reported that 73% had pain-related sexual problems (8). Approximately two-thirds of patients in another study have reported reduced frequency in their sexual relations as a result of CPP (70).

One study demonstrated that CPP patients reported worse sexual function with regard to desire, arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and more frequent and severe pain with vaginal penetration than women without sexual dysfunction (19).

Maruta et al. interviewed 50 chronic pain sufferers and their spouses, of whom 78% of the pain sufferers and 84% of partners described deterioration, including cessation of their sex life (1). In another study, in patients with back pain, half reported decreased frequency of sex since the onset of chronic pain (8)

The female sexual function index (FSFI) has been developed as a brief, multidimensional self-report instrument for assessing the key dimensions of sexual function in women, which includes desire, subjective arousal, lubrication, orgasm, satisfaction, and pain. The study of Veritt FF et al. showed that when FSFI was used women with CPP reported worse sexual function in all subscales and total score than did women without CPP; the largest differences between women with CPP and without CPP were seen for the domains of pain and arousal; the correlations of FSFI corresponded well to each other; the total score and the subscales of the FSFI had high levels of internal consistency and test–retest reliability when assessed in a sample of women with CPP; and finally, that the FSFI showed good ability to discriminate between women with and without CPP (19).

Some studies report a significant association between sexual abuse before the age of 15 years and later CPP (13). It is suggested that there is increased frequency of sexual abuse or trauma history, anxiety and depression in women with CPP (71-75). While the study of Fry et al. with 164 women with CPP show that child sexual abuse did not apparently differ in prevalence from that in the general population, which must throw into question previous assertions about its widespread and general role in CPP.

7.6 Treatment of sexual dysfunctions and CPP

Couples often benefit from early referral for relationship and sexual counseling during their treatment course (76). Specific behavioral strategies for women who have urogenital complaints and female sexual dysfunction often include exploring alternatives to sexual intercourse (manual or oral pleasuring), different coital positions (female superior or side lying), and pacing, such as limiting thrusting to less than that that causes. Planning for the time of intercourse is important, and scheduling a clinic visit after intercourse might be useful to identify specific sites and causes of postcoital flares. Other behavioral changes involve pre- and postcoital voiding, application of ice packs to the genital or suprapubic area (76,77), and use of vaginal dilators before penile penetration. An alternative is to use natural dilators such as different fingers or sex toys. Hypoallergenic nonirritating lubricants can be used to reduce vulvar, urethra, and vaginal friction, and women with signs of vulvovaginal atrophy may benefit from introital application of minimally absorbed locally applied oestrogen cream (78). In patients with an overactive pelvic floor, referral for physical therapy, myofascial release, and internal pelvic floor muscle massage may offer relief (79).

7.7 In summary

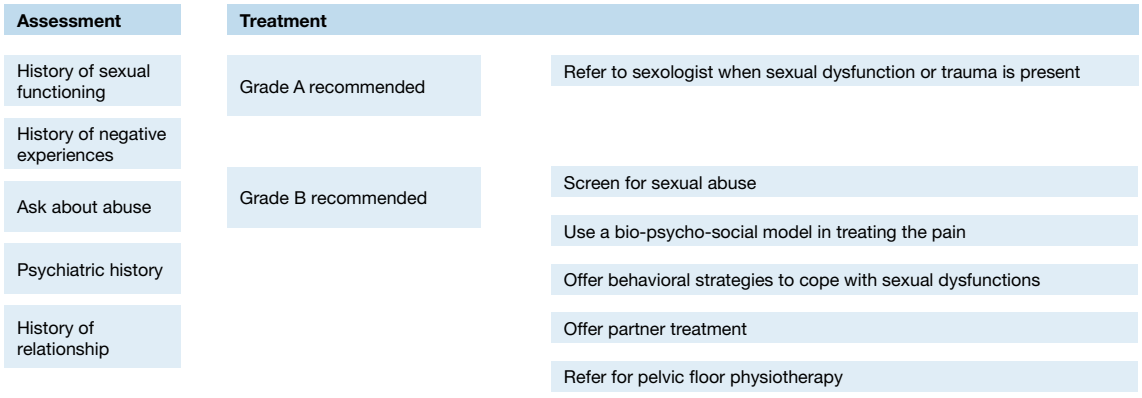
Problems with sexual functioning resulting from CPP have to be addressed and assessed by the health-care professional. The attention directed toward these patients must be focused not only on the disease but also on the woman as a whole. As treatment solely of the underlying disease is not acceptable, the care of these suffering women should also address the emotional, sexual, and social problems that the disease causes.

7.8 Conclusions and recommendations: sexological aspects in CPP

Conclusions	LE
Chronic pain can lead to decline in sexual activity and satisfaction and may reduce relationship satisfaction.	2a
Patients who reported having sexual, physical or emotional abuse show a higher rate of reporting symptoms of PPS.	2b
Sexual dysfunctions are prevalent in patient with PPS.	2b
In men with PPS the most prevalent sexual complains are erectile dysfunction and ejaculatory dysfunctions.	3
In females with CPPS all sexual function domains are lower. The most reported dysfunctions are sexual avoidance, dyspareunia and “vaginismus”.	2a
Vulvar Pain Syndrome is associated with BPS.	3
Women with BPS suffer significantly more from fear of pain, dyspareunia and less desire.	2a
Pelvic floor muscle function is involved in the excitement and orgasm phases of sexual response.	3
Chronic pain can cause disturbances in each of the sexual response cycle phases.	2b
Pelvic floor muscle physical therapy may offer relief of pain and reduction in sexual complains.	2b

Recommendations	GR
Clinicians may screen for abuse in patients presenting with symptoms suggestive for prostate pain syndrome without suggesting a causal relation with the pain.	B
The biopsychosocial model should be applied in the evaluation of the effect of prostate pain syndrome on the sexual function of the patient.	B
The biopsychosocial model should be incorporated in research in the role of chronic pelvic pain in sexual dysfunction.	B
Behavioral strategies should be offered to the patient and his/her partner to cope with sexual dysfunctions.	B
We recommend training of the pelvic floor muscles to improve quality of life and sexual function.	B

Figure 15: assessment and treatment algorithm for sexological aspects in chronic pelvic pain



7.9 References

1. Maruta T, Osborne D, Swanson DW et al. Chronic pain patients and spouses. Marital and sexual adjustment. Mayo Clin Proc 1981 May;56(5):307–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7230895
2. Flor H, Turk DC, Scholtz OB. Impact of chronic pain on the spouse: Marital, emotional and physical consequences. J Psychosom Res 1987;31(1):63–71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3820147
3. Human sexuality (5° ed). MASTERS William, JOHNSON Virginia, KOLODNY Robert. © 1995-2011 LAVOISIER S.A.S

4. Rosenbaum TY, Owens A. The role of pelvic floor physical therapy in the treatment of pelvic and genital pain-related sexual dysfunction. J Sex Med 2008 Mar;5(3):513–23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18304280
5. Randolph ME, Reddy DM. Sexual functioning in women with chronic pelvic pain: The impact of depression, support, and abuse. J Sex Res 2006 Feb;43(1):38–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16817066
6. Trinchieri A, Magri V, Cariani L et al. Prevalence of sexual dysfunction in men with chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2007 Jun;79(2):67–70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17695411
7. Zondervan KT, Yudkin PL, Vessey MP et al. The prevalence of chronic pelvic pain in women in the United Kingdom: A systematic review. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 1998 Jan;105(1):93–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9442169
8. Ambler N, Williams AC, Hill P et al. Sexual difficulties of chronic pain patients. Clin J Pain 2001 Jun;17(2):138–45. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11444715
9. Averill PM, Novy DM, Nelson DV et al. Correlates of depression in chronic pain patients: A comprehensive examination. Pain 1996 Apr;65(1):93–100. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8826495
10. Philipp M, Delini-Stula A, Baier D et al. Assessment of sexual dysfunction in depressed patients and reporting attitudes in routine daily practice: Results of the postmarketing observational studies with moclobemide, a reversible MAO-A inhibitor. Int J Psychiatry Clin Pract 1999;3:257–64.
11. Ferguson JM. The effects of antidepressants on sexual functioning in depressed patients: A review. J Clin Psychiatry 2001;62 Suppl 3:22–34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11229450
12. Coates R, Ferroni EA. Sexual dysfunction and marital disharmony as a consequence of chronic lumbar spinal pain. Sex Marital Ther 1991;6:65–9.
13. Lampe A, Solder E, Ennemoser A et al. Chronic pelvic pain and previous sexual abuse. Obstet Gynecol 2000 Dec;96(6):929–33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11084180
14. Rellini A, Meston CM. Sexual abuse and female sexual dysfunction: Clinical implications. Urodinamica 2004;14:80–3.
15. Heinberg LJ, Fisher BJ, Wesselmann U et al. Psychological factors in pelvic/urogenital pain: The influence of site of pain versus sex. Pain 2004 Mar;108(1-2):88–94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15109511
16. Smith KB, Tripp D, Pukall C et al. Predictors of sexual and relationship functioning in couples with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Sex Med 2007 May;4(3):734–44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17451490
17. Gonen M, Kalkan M, Cenker A et al. Prevalence of premature ejaculation in Turkish men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Androl 2005 Sep-Oct;26(5):601–3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16088036
18. Müller A, Mulhall JP. Sexual dysfunction in the patient with prostatitis. Curr Opin Urol 2005 Nov;15(6):404–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16205492
19. Verit FF, Verit A. Validation of the Female Sexual Function Index in women with chronic pelvic pain. J Sex Med 2007 Nov;4(6):1635–41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17888066
20. Fry RPW, Crisp AH, Beard RW. Patients' illness models in chronic pelvic pain. Psychother Psychosom 1991;55(2-4):158–63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1891563
21. Binik Y, Meana M, Berkly K et al. The sexual pain disorders: Is the pain sexual or the sex painful? Annu Rev Sex Res 1999;10:210–35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10895253
22. American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders. 4th edition-TR. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association; 2000.
23. Basson R, Leiblum S, Brotto L et al. Revised definitions of women's sexual dysfunction. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(1):40–8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422982
24. McMahon CG, Abdo C, Incrocci L et al. Disorders of orgasm and ejaculation in men. J Sex Med 2004 Jul;1(1):58–65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16422984

25. Piediferro G, Colpi EM, Castiglioni F, et al. Premature ejaculation. 3. Therapy. Arch Ital Urol Androl. 2004 Dec;76(4):192-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15693439
26. Graber B, Kline-Graber G. Female orgasm: Role of the pubococcygeus muscle. J Clin Psychiatry 1979 Aug;40(8):348–51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/468760
27. Shafik A. The role of the levator ani muscle in evacuation, sexual performance, and pelvic floor disorders. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2000 Dec;11(6):361–76.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11147745
28. Bo K, Talseth T, Vinsnes A. Randomized controlled trial on the effect of pelvic floor muscle training on quality of life and sexual problems in genuine stress incontinent women. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2000 Jul;79(7):598–603.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10929962
29. Beji NK, Yalcin O, Erkan HA. The effect of pelvic floor training on sexual function of treated patients. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2003 Oct;14(4):234–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14530833
30. Anderson, Wise D, Sawyer T et al. Sexual dysfunction in men with CP/CPPS: Improvement after trigger point release. Paradoxical relaxation training.J Urol 2006 Oct;176(4 Pt 1):1534–8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952676
31. Bergeron S, Brown C, Lord MJ et al. Physical therapy for vulvar vestibulitis syndrome: A retrospective study. J Sex Marital Ther 2002 May-June;28(3):183–92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11995597
32. Goetsch MF. Surgery combined with muscle therapy for dyspareunia from vulvar vestibulitis: An observational study. J Reprod Med 2007 Jul;52(7):597–603.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17847757
33. Hu JC, Link CL, McNaughton-Collins M et al. The Association of Abuse and Symptoms Suggestive of Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: Results from the Boston Area Community Health Survey. J Gen Intern Med 2007 Nov;22(11):1532–7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17763912
34. Fleming MP, Paice JA. Sexuality and chronic pain. Journal of Sex Education and Therapy 2001.26:204-214.
35. Rosen RC, Riley A, Wagner G et al. The international index of erectile function (IIEF): A multidimensional scale for assessment of erectile dysfunction. Urology 1997 Jun;49(6):822-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9187685
36. Keltikangas-Jarvinen L, Jarvinen H, Lehtonen T. Psychic disturbances in patients with chronic prostatis. Ann Clin Res. 1981 Feb;13(1):45-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7195683
37. Berghuis JP, Heiman JR, Rothman I et al. Psychological and physical factors involved in chronic idiopathic prostatitis. J Psychosom Res. 1996 Oct;41(4):313-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8971661
38. Jacobsen SJ, Jacobson DJ, Rohe DE et al. Frequency of sexual activity and prostatic health: fact or fairy tale? Urology. 2003 Feb;61(2):348-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12597946
39. Lee SW, Liong ML, Yuen KH et al. Adverse impact of sexual dysfunction in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology 2008 Jan;71(1):79-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18242370
40. Liang CZ, Zhang XJ, Hao ZY et al. Prevalence of sexual dysfunction in Chinese men with chronic prostatitis. BJU Int 2004 Sep;94(4):568-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15329114
41. Bartoletti R, Cai T, Mondaini N et al. Prevalence, incidence estimation, risk factors and characterization of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome in urological hospital outpatients in Italy: Results of a multicenter case-control observational study. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2411-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17937946
42. Mehik A, Hellstrom P, Sarpola A et al. Fears, sexual disturbances and personality features in men with prostatitis: A population-based cross-sectional study in Finland. BJU Int 2001 Jul;88(1):35-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11446842
43. Weidner W, Wagenlehner FM, Marconi M et al. Acute bacterial prostatitis and chronic prostatitis/ chronic pelvic pain syndrome: andrological implications. Andrologia. 2008 Apr;40(2):105-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18336460

44. O'Leary MP, Fowler FJ, Lenderking WR et al. A brief male sexual function inventory for urology. Urology. 1995 Nov;46(5):697-706.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7495124
45. Marszalek M, Wehrberger C, Temml C et al. Chronic Pelvic Pain and Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms in Both Sexes: Analysis of 2749 Participants of an Urban Health Screening Project. Eur Urol. 2009 Feb;55(2):499-507.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18395963
46. Qiu YC, Xie CY, Zeng XD et al. Investigation of sexual function in 623 patients with chronic prostatitis. Zhonghua Nan Ke Xue. 2007 Jun;13(6):524-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17615977
47. Burger B, Weidner W, Altwein JE. Prostate and sexuality: An overview. Eur Urol 1999;35(3):177-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10072617
48. McMahon CG, Althof SE, Waldinger MD et al. An evidence-based definition of lifelong premature ejaculation: Report of the International Society for Sexual Medicine (ISSM) ad hoc committee for the definition of premature ejaculation. J Sex Med 2008 Jul;5(7):1590-606.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18466262
49. Screponi E, Carosa E, Di Stasi SM et al. Prevalence of chronic prostatitis in men with premature ejaculation. Urology. 2001 Aug;58(2):198-202.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11489699
50. Hennenfent BR, Feliciano AE. Changes in white blood cell counts in men undergoing thrice-weekly prostatic massage, microbial diagnosis and antimicrobial therapy for genitourinary complaints. Br J Urol 1998 Mar;81(3):370-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9523654
51. El-Nashaar A, Shamloul R. Antibiotic treatment can delay ejaculation in patients with premature ejaculation and chronic bacterial prostatitis. J Sex Med 2007 Mar;4(2):491-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17367444
52. Ilie CP, Mischianu DL, Pemberton RJ. Painful ejaculation. BJU international 2007 Jun;99(6):1335-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17346279
53. Shoskes DA, Landis JR, Wang Y et al. Impact of post-ejaculatory pain in men with category III chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):542-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247725
54. Weidner W, Ludwig M, Miller J. Therapy in male accessory gland infection--what is fact, what is fiction? Andrologia. 1998;30 Suppl 1:87-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9629448
55. Muller A, Mulhall JP. Sexual dysfunction in the patient with prostatitis. Curr Opin Urol. 2005 Nov;15(6):404-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16205492
56. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Ross S et al. Prevalence, symptom impact and predictors of chronic prostatitis-like symptoms in Canadian males aged 16-19 years. BJU international 2009 Apr;103(8):1080-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19007369
57. Egan KJ, Krieger JL. Psychological problems in chronic prostatitis patients with pain. Clinical Journal of Pain 1994 Sep;10(3):218–26.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7833580
58. Alexander RB, Propert KJ, Schaeffer AJ et al. Ciprofloxacin or tamsulosin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind trial. Ann Intern Med. 2004 Oct 19;141(8):581-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15492337
59. Gunter J. Chronic pelvic pain: An integrated approach to diagnosis and treatment. Obstet Gynecol Surv 2003 Sep;58(9):615–23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12972837
60. Grace V, Zondervan K. Chronic pelvic pain in women in New Zealand: Comparative well-being, comorbidity, and impact on work and other activities. Health Care Women Int 2006 Aug;27(7):585–99.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16844672
61. Latthe P, Latthe M, Say L, Gulmezoglu M et al. WHO systematic review of prevalence of chronic pelvic pain: A neglected reproductive health morbidity. BMC Public health 2006 Jul 6;6:177.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824213
62. Pearce C, Curtis M. A multidisciplinary approach to self care in chronic pelvic pain. Br J Nurs 2007 Jan 25-Feb 7;16(2):82–5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17353816

63. ter Kuile MM, Weijenborg PTM, Spinhoven P. Sexual functioning in women with chronic pelvic pain: The role of anxiety and depression. J Sex Med 2010 May;7(5):1901–10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19678881
64. Collett BJ, Cordle CJ, Stewart CR et al. A comparative study of women with chronic pelvic pain, chronic nonpelvic pain and those with no history of pain attending general practitioners. Br J Obstet Gynecol 1998 Jan;105(1):87–92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9442168
65. McCabe MP, Jupp JJ. Intercorrelations among general arousability, emerging and current sexual desire, and severity of sexual dysfunction in women. Psychol Rep. 1989 Aug;65(1):147-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2780925
66. Flor H, Kerns RD, Turk DC. The role of spouse reinforcement, perceived pain, and activity levels of chronic pain patients. J Psychosoma Res 1987;31(2):251-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3585827
67. Pitts MK, Ferris JA, Smith AM et al. Prevalence and correlates of three types of pelvic pain in a nationally representative sample of Australian women. Med J Aust 2008 Aug 4;189(3):138–43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18673099
68. Florido J, Perez-Lucas R, Navarrete L. Sexual behavior and findings on laparoscopy or laparotomy in women with severe chronic pelvic pain. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 2008 Aug;139(2):233–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18403089
69. Verit FF, Verit A, Yeni E. The prevalence of sexual dysfunction and associated risk factors in women with chronic pelvic pain: A cross-sectional study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 2006 Aug;274(5):297–302. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16705463
70. Phillips NA. The clinical evaluation of dyspareunia. Int J Impot Res 1998 May;10 Suppl 2:S117–20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9647973
71. Paice J. Sexuality and chronic pain. Am J Nurs 2003 Jan;103(1):87–9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544064
72. Roelofs K, Spinhoven P. Trauma and medically unexplained symptoms towards an integration of cognitive and neurobiological accounts. Clin Psychol Rev 2007 Oct;27(7):798–820. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17728032
73. McGowan LPA, Clark-Carter DD, Pitts MK. Chronic pelvic pain: A meta-analytic review. Psychol Health 1998;13:937–51.
74. Leonard LM, Follette VM. Sexual functioning in women reporting a history of child abuse. Review of the empirical literature and clinical implications. Annu Rev Sex Res 2002;13:346–88. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12836736
75. Angst J. Sexual problems in healthy and depressed persons. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 1998 Jul;13 Suppl 6:S1–4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728667
76. Peters KM, Killinger KA, Carrico DJ et al. Sexual function and sexual distress in women with interstitial cystitis: A case-control study. Urology 2007 Sep;70(3):543–7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17905112
77. Kellogg-Spadt S, Whitmore KE. Role of the female urologist/urogynecologist. In: Goldstein I, Meston CM, Davis SR, Traish AM, eds. Women's sexual function and dysfunction: Study, diagnosis and treatment. Vol. 17. London: Taylor and Francis; 2006:708–14.
78. Webster DC, Brennan T. Use and effectiveness of sexual self-care strategies for interstitial cystitis. Urol Nurs 1995 Mar;15(1):14–22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7792618
79. Hayes RD, Bennett CM, Fairley CK et al. What can prevalence studies tell us about female sexual difficulty and dysfunction? J Sex Med 2006 Jul;3(4):589–95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16839314

8. PSYCHOLOGICAL ASPECTS OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

This chapter first addresses general issues concerning the psychological contribution to pelvic pain and its presenting problems, and assessment and treatment, and then it describes the same areas in relation to CPP in women. This is by far the area with the greatest psychological contribution to pelvic and urogenital pain, and exemplifies many of the problems raised in the first part of the chapter.

8.1 Understanding the psychological components of pain

*8.1.1 **Neurophysiology of pain***

Models that integrate the psychological factors consistently found to be relevant in the maintenance of persistent pelvic and urogenital pain with current neurobiological understanding of pain are few but of high quality. Symptom-related anxiety and central pain amplification may be measurably linked, as in IBS (1). Bajaj et al. (2) have demonstrated central sensitisation in symptomatic endometriosis, and this model is more extensively dealt with in Chapter 4. The various mechanisms of facilitation, amplification, and failure of inhibition, mean that there should be no expectation of a simple relationship between physical findings, pain experienced, and resulting distress and restriction of activities. Difficulty disengaging even from expected painful stimuli, undergone voluntarily and within tolerable levels, is characteristic in people struggling with chronic pain (3). However, difficult as it is to relieve chronic pain, the pain system is plastic and treatment attempts are not entirely unsuccessful.

*8.1.2 **Sexual abuse and trauma***

Many studies have reported high rates of childhood sexual abuse in adults with persistent pain, usually in hospital care samples, and particularly by women with pelvic pain (4). However, all these studies are retrospective, and there appears to be a relationship between poor study quality and likelihood of reporting this association (5). The only prospective investigation into the relationship between childhood sexual abuse, physical abuse, or neglect, and “medically unexplained pain”, including pelvic pain, used court records concerning sexual abuse before the age of 11 years to establish a definite history, comparing those with such a history with demographically matched classmates (6). The conclusions of this study were that physically and sexually abused individuals were not at risk for increased pain symptoms, although those individuals with pain problems as adults were more likely to report earlier sexual or physical abuse or neglect; however, this did not correspond with the established early history of abuse.

The correlation between childhood victimisation and pain symptoms is less straightforward than previously thought, and may be more about retrospective explanatory frameworks used by women for pain for which no major pathology is found than about occurrence or extent of abuse. In particular, findings of depression and/or post-traumatic stress disorder in adult women reporting childhood sexual abuse are common, with or without pain. Disentangling the influences and inferences requires prospective studies or careful comparisons rather than, as in many published studies, comparing women with a history of sexual abuse and CPP with women without either (7). No studies have been found about sexual or physical abuse in childhood and pelvic pain in men, although it is evident that they suffer other adverse effects on psychological and physical health (8,9).

*8.1.3 **Interpreting psychological differences***

An important review (7) of CPP in women identifies as problematic the notion that women without physical findings to which pain can be causally attributed differ in psychological characteristics from women with physical findings. They have critically examined the methodologies of studies purporting to show such differences, and the bias introduced by sampling and by unsuitable measures. They argue for better methodology in replication of these studies, particularly those sampling life events, and for greater use of idiographic methods.

In summary, women with pelvic pain often have other ‘medically unexplained’ symptoms, and current or lifetime anxiety and depression disorder; they may have a history of physical or sexual abuse in childhood but the significance of this for pelvic pain is unclear. Studies that invoke ‘medically unexplained’ or ‘psychosomatic’ or ‘somatoform’ disorders do not engage with current understanding of pain, such as viscerovisceral cross sensitisation in relation to multiple pain sites (10), referring instead to a dualistic model in which absence of physical findings is taken to indicate psychological origins of the complaint of pain (11,12). At the extreme, pain is overshadowed by diagnosis as a sexual problem (‘dyspareunia’) when pain is in fact the central problem and not contingent only on sexual activity (13).

8.2 Psychological assessment of pain

The report of anxiety, depression and sexual problems is sufficiently common for these to be important in assessment and in planning treatment. Distress, described in the patient's terms or within a psychodiagnostic framework, is best understood in the context of pain and the meaning of pain to the individual.

Anxiety probably refers to fears of missed pathology as the cause of pain (cancer being foremost among these) and to uncertainties about the possibilities of treatment and the likely prognosis if treated or untreated. A question such as that suggested by Howard (14), "What do you believe or fear is the cause of your pain?" is more suitable than a general anxiety questionnaire.

Depression is also commonly found in men and women with persistent pelvic pain (15). In a study comparing men and women with low back pain, and women with pelvic pain and men with urogenital pain (16), it was found that, when differences in age and pain duration and severity were taken into account, there were no differences in depression according to pain site, and pain site predicted disability.

However, there is a risk when using diagnostic or standard assessment instruments of attributing pain-related problems to neurovegetative signs of depression (17,18). As Stones et al. (19) has cautioned: "Psychological distress may be a consequence and not a cause of persistent pain: while identification of depression is important as part of treatment, caution is required before attribution of causality" (p416).

Pain ratings themselves may be predicted by cognitive and emotional variables (20). Furthermore, target outcomes of pain severity, distress and disability co-vary only partly, and improvement in one does not necessarily imply improvement in the others. Therefore, it is particularly important when the primary outcome is pain to anchor its meaning in a study such as that by Gerlinger et al. (21), who determined clinically important differences in pain in relation to overall satisfaction with treatment.

There are many measures of restricted function, or disability, most suited to musculosketal pain and mobility problems rather than the difficulties of the individual with pelvic or urogenital pain. Some include one or more items related to sexual activity, but there has perhaps been an over-emphasis on the effects of pain on sexual performance, although the overall relationship may be more important (22).

In the Cochrane review of pelvic pain in women (23), the outcomes of pharmacotherapy, surgery and physical therapy trials consist of pain scores (patient-rated and physican-estimated); functional measures such as urinary peak flow rate (for persistent pelvic pain in men); examination findings such as pelvic tenderness (women); and uptake of further treatment following the trial treatment. A few trials have included QoL, but none has measured mood change. This indicates a general but mistaken assumption that improvement in pain leads to resolution of other problems. Furthermore, if all treatments sampled the same domains of pain in their evaluation, comparison across treatments, by medical personnel and patients, would be more easily achieved (24). Suggested instruments for assessment in each of these domains can be found in the consensus paper by Turk et al (25).

8.3 Psychological issues in the treatment of pain

Provision of information that is personalised and responsive to the presenting problem and the concerns of the patient, conveying belief and concern, is a powerful way to allay anxiety (26). It can be helpful to provide additional written information or direct the patient to reliable sources. Many practitioners rely on locally produced material or pharmaceutical products of variable quality, although they endorse the need for independent materials for patients (27).

Ideally, treatment arises from general principles and practice in the field of chronic pain, with specific study of the population of concern and design of appropriate treatment trials (28). The field of pelvic pain shows a curious phenomenon whereby few of the mainstream psychologically based treatments are subjected to trials and published, but instead there are often rather idiosyncratic versions of treatment components, or combinations of interventions, published in single, often underpowered trials. It is hard to conclude anything from these, as is seen in the psychological treatment section of several other chapters.

Psychological interventions may be directed at the pain itself, with the intended outcome of reducing pain and its consequent impact on life, or adjustment to pain, with improved mood and function and reduced health care use, with or without pain reduction. The major psychologically based treatment that improves adjustment, which is aimed more at reducing distress and disability than pain, is cognitive behavioural therapy, for which there has been > 10 systematic reviews (29), although its effects may be small and maintenance in the longer term is uncertain. For less disabled and distressed patients, this can be delivered in part over the internet (30). A systematic review of short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy (31) has reported similar improvements in "somatic disorders", which often includes pelvic pain, although it was not among the trials reviewed. Pain-focused interventions, again with no trials in pelvic pain, have been subjected to systematic review, including hypnotherapy (32) and autogenic training (33).

However, all these systematic reviews suffer from heterogeneity among the trials, shortcomings in trial methodology, and little longer-term follow-up to establish maintenance of treatment gains. The crucial question, of what works best for whom, is unanswered and possibly unanswerable given the complexity of

variables, outcomes, and the difficulties in standardising treatments.

8.4 Female pelvic pain

8.4.1 ***Psychological risk factors in development and maintenance of pelvic pain***

A thorough review from nearly 15 years ago (34) argues against division of aetiology into organic versus psychogenic, and concludes that, given the methodological problems of many studies, the evidence for sexual abuse as a risk factor is uncertain. A large review and meta-analysis of risk factors, including physical pathology, psychological distress, and sexual abuse (35) drew mainly on retrospective studies, which introduced various biases.Pelvic pain and distress may be variously related, each as the consequence of the other, or arising independently.

The only systematic review (5) of risk factors for chronic non-cyclical pelvic pain in women included the following as well as medical variables: sexual or physical abuse (ORs from 1.51 to 3.49); psychological problems such as anxiety (OR: 2.28, 95% CI: 1.41- 3.70) and depression (OR: 2.69, 95% CI: 1.86-3.88); hysteria, i.e., multiple somatic problems (OR: 4.83, 95% CI: 2.50-9.33); and psychosomatic symptoms (OR: 8.01, 95% CI: 5.16-12.44). The terms hysteria and psychosomatic symptoms can best be understood as multiple somatic symptoms not associated with or indicative of any serious disease process, and personality variables are not reliably associated with pelvic pain in women. Although some of these risk factors are doubtless interrelated - history of sexual abuse and depression, for instance - such effects cannot be disentangled from the studies available.

Issues of early trauma such as childhood sexual or physical abuse as a risk factor are addressed in more detail earlier in this chapter, but it is important to say that better quality studies, including one prospective study using court records of childhood abuse (6), have reported a weaker or no relationship, or not one which is specific to pelvic pain (5, 36-38). However, another systematic review (9) has concluded that there is some evidence for a specific relationship between rape and CPP (and also with fibromyalgia and functional gastrointestinal disorders). It is also important to recognise the possible role of recent sexual assault on the presentation of pelvic pain (4,39).

There have been fewer studies of maintenance of or recovery from pelvic pain in relation to psychological factors. Weijenborg et al. (40) have found that, in 25% of women treated surgically, recovery from pelvic pain over a mean 3 years follow-up was not predicted by pain variables at baseline, nor by a general measure of psychological distress or sociodemographic variables, or reports of childhood sexual abuse.

Studies that have described pelvic pain as medically unexplained or psychosomatic, due to the lack of physical findings, have been discarded. This is because such a distinction is unhelpful and is not informed by our understanding of pain mechanisms (11). When diagnostic investigations are used to assign symptoms to physical and mental origins, with no suggested connection between them, and with interest only in the former type of symptoms, explanations are often experienced by women as scepticism about the reality or severity of the pain (41). This can undermine the therapeutic relationship between the patient and the doctor (42). Ehlert et al. (43) have found that women with pelvic pain with and without laparoscopic findings do not differ from one another; only from pain-free controls, as anticipated by Savidge & Slade (7). Distress, described in the patient's terms or within a psychodiagnostic framework, is best understood in the context of pain and the meaning of pain to the individual (7). In a large primary care study, Zondervan et al. (44) have noted the tendency to attribute pelvic pain without obvious pathology to a psychological cause, and that it is increasingly recognised as unhelpful; depression and anxiety are common in any chronic pain, not pelvic pain alone. They have found that restriction by pain does not distinguish between women who do and do not seek healthcare, and that there may be an anxiety-related cause of the pain in both groups.

8.4.2 ***Psychological assessment of pelvic pain***

Anxiety and post-traumatic stress symptoms are common in some women with CPP (44,45), and may account for substantial variance in health status and treatment use. Negative investigative findings do not necessarily resolve women's anxieties about what might be causing pain (26). Depression may be related to pain in various ways, as described above. Until measures are available that are adequately standardised in patients with pain, anxiety and distress may be best assessed by questions about concerns about the cause of pain, its implications, and its consequences for everyday life (46).

Reference to the studies of the IMMPACT group (24) is recommended for guidance on outcome measures suitable for pain trials.

8.4.3 ***Psychological factors in treatment of persistent pelvic pain***

Untreated, there is a significant rate of symptom improvement. In one study, 25% of patients reported recovery (nearly half with total recovery) over a 3-4-year period, and neither pain nor distress at baseline, nor intervention received, was found to be associated with recovery (40). This recovery rate should be borne in mind when

interpreting results of treatment trials.

There is one Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of treatments for pelvic pain, excluding that due to endometriosis, IBS, and chronic PID (47). All treatments were included (although the update protocols split surgical from non-surgical (48), and outcomes were mainly pain scores, QoL, and resource use, including healthcare resources. The 14 treatment trials included counselling, psychoeducation, reassurance, and emotional disclosure, as well as a multicomponent pain management programme. The authors concluded in favour of educational counselling combined with ultrasound scanning, which improved pain and mood; and a multidisciplinary rehabilitative approach including surgery, pharmacotherapy, physiotherapy, and psychosocial intervention, which improved function but not pain. Emotional disclosure (a stress reduction method) through writing brought about a small improvement in some pain scores.

Several other reviews make positive comments on psychological involvement (49), and recommend addressing psychological concerns from the outset rather than after other treatment has failed. Psychological interventions may be directed (1) at the pain itself, with the intended outcome of reducing pain and its consequent impact on life, or (2) at adjustment to pain, with improved mood and function and reduced health care use, with or without pain reduction.

In the first category are relaxation and biofeedback methods of controlling and decreasing pain by reducing muscle tension, and this is applied in mainly uncontrolled trials to pelvic floor retraining both in men and women. The only RCT (50) applied a specific type of cognitively enhanced physical therapy to overall muscle tension, but not to the pelvic floor, combined with normal gynaecological treatment compared with gynaecological treatment alone. Pain was reduced by 50% and motor function improved in various aspects by 10 h of physical therapy, with particular attention to tension and relaxation and to the thoughts and emotions that interfere with balanced posture and movement.

In the second category, multicomponent pain management, involving education, physical retraining, behavioural change, and increasing activity, relaxation and cognitive therapy, is often applied to mixed groups of chronic pain patients, including those with pelvic pain. A systematic review and meta-analysis (51) which shows a good outcome for mixed chronic pain or back pain groups across pain experience, mood, coping, and activity, cannot with confidence be extrapolated to women with pelvic pain alone. The only RCTs in CPP used elements of this approach in combination with medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA) or placebo (52). Combination of MPA and psychological therapy outperformed other treatment methods in the long term, with nearly three quarters of women reporting > 50% pain relief.

Several single treatments with benefits in other chronic pain or chronic health problems have been tried in pelvic pain. Norman et al. (53) have compared emotional disclosure by writing about pain with writing about positive events as a control. The differences were small but in favour of emotional disclosure on one measure of pain appraisal, particularly in women with more distress at baseline. Given the extent of problems associated with pelvic pain, this intervention on its own is unlikely to produce much change, but could be combined with other components described above.

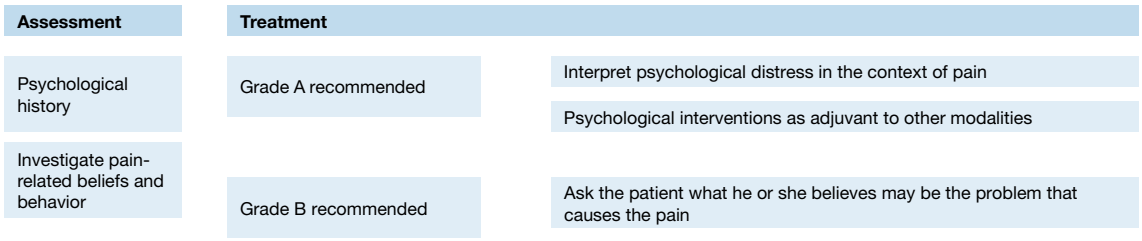
In a different intervention, Fenton et al. (54) have conducted a small RCT of transcranial direct current stimulation compared to sham stimulation. Pain reduction was greater in the treatment group, in the first week only, as was reduction in disability.

8.5 Conclusions and recommendations: psychological aspects of CPP

Conclusions	LE
There is no evidence that distress generates complaints of pelvic pain, or that multiple symptoms suggest unreality of pain.	2b
Current or recent sexual abuse should be assessed as possible contributory factors in pelvic pain.	2a
Psychological intervention in general can produce benefits in pain, mood, and quality of life, depending on its content and focus.	1a
Psychologically informed physical therapy can improve pain and function.	1b
Combined exercise and cognitive behavioural therapy with medroxyprogesterone acetate can reduce pain in a majority of women with pelvic pain.	1b
Transcranial direct current stimulation may reduce pain in the short term.	1b

Recommendations	GR
Psychological distress is common in pelvic pain in women but should be interpreted in the context of pain.	A
We recommend asking the patient what she thinks may be wrong to cause pain, to allow the opportunity to inform and reassure as appropriate.	B
We recommend trying psychological interventions in combination with medical and surgical treatment, or alone.	A

Figure 16: assessment and treatment algorithm for psychological aspects of chronic pelvic pain



8.6 References

1. Berman SM, Naliboff BD, Suyenobu B, et al. Reduced brainstem inhibition during anticipated visceral pain correlates with enhanced brain response to the visceral stimulus in women with irritable bowel syndrome. J Neurosci. 2008 Jan 9;28(2):349-59. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18184777
2. Bajaj P, Bajaj P, Madsen H, et al. Endometriosis is associated with central sensitisation: a psychophysical controlled study. J Pain. 2003 Sep;4(7):372-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14622679
3. Eccleston C, Crombez G. Worry and chronic pain: a misdirected problem solving model. Pain. 2007 Dec 5;132(3):233-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17961924
4. Hilden M, Schei B, Swahnberg K, et al. A history of sexual abuse and health: a Nordic multicentre study. BJOG. 2004 Oct;111(10):1121-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15383115
5. Latthe P, Mignini L, Gray R, et al. Factors predisposing women to chronic pelvic pain: systematic review. BMJ. 2006 Apr 1;332(7544):749-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16484239
6. Raphael KG, Widom CS, Lange G. Childhood victimization and pain in adulthood: a prospective investigation. Pain. 2001 May;92(1-2):283-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323150
7. Savidge CJ, Slade P. Psychological aspects of chronic pelvic pain. Journal of J Psychosom Res. 1997 May;42(5):433-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9194016
8. Leserman J. Sexual abuse history: prevalence, health effects, mediators, and psychological treatment. Psychosom Med. 2005 Nov-Dec;67(6):906-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16314595
9. Paras ML, Murad MH, Chen LP, et al. Sexual abuse and lifetime diagnosis of somatic disorders. A systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA. 2009 Aug 5;302(5):550-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19654389
10. Malykhina AP. Neural mechanisms of pelvic organ cross-sensitisation. Neuroscience. 2007 Nov 9;149(3):660-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17920206
11. Grace VM. Pitfalls of the medical paradigm in chronic pelvic pain. Baillieres Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2000 Jun;14(3):525-39. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962640
12. Sharpe M, Carson A. 'Unexplained' somatic symptoms, functional syndromes, and somatization: do we need a paradigm shift? Ann Intern Med. 2001 May 1;134(9 Pt 2):926-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11346330
13. Binik YM. The DSM diagnostic criteria for dyspareunia. Arch Sex Behav. 2010 Apr;39(2):292-303. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19830537

14. Howard FM. Chronic pelvic pain. Obstet Gynecol. 2003 Mar;101(3):594-611.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12636968
15. Fitzgerald MP, Link CL, Litman HJ, et al. Beyond the lower urinary tract: the association of urologic and sexual symptoms with common illnesses. Eur Urol. 2007 Aug;52(2):407-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382458
16. Heinberg LJ, Fisher BJ, Wesselman U, et al. Psychological factors in pelvic/urogenital pain: the influence of site of pain versus sex. Pain. 2004 Mar;108(1-2):88-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15109511
17. Pincus T, Williams A. Models and measurements of depression in chronic pain. J Psychosom Res 1999;47:211-219.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10576470
18. Lorencatto C, Petta CA, Navarro MJ, et al. Depression in women with endometriosis with and without chronic pelvic pain. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 2006;85(1):88-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16521687
19. Stones RW, Selfe SA, Fransman S, et al. Psychosocial and economic impact of chronic pelvic pain. Baillieres Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2000 Jun;14(3):415-31.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962635
20. Tripp DA, Nickel JC, Wang Y, et al. Catastrophizing and pain-contingent rest predict patient adjustment in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Pain 2006 Oct;7 (10): 697-708.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17018330
21. Gerlinger C, Schumacher U, Faustman T, et al. Defining a minimally clinically important difference for endometriosis-associated pelvic pain measured on a visual analog scale: analyses of two placebo-controlled, randomized trials. Health Qual Life Outcomes. 2010 Nov 24;8:138.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21106059
22. Smith KB, Pukall CF. A systematic review of relationship adjustment and sexual satisfaction among women with provoked vestibulodynia. J Sex Res. 2011 Mar;48(2-3):166-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21409713
23. Stones W, Cheong YC, Howard FM. Interventions for treating chronic pelvic pain in women (review). Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2000;(4):CD000387.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034686
24. Dworkin RH, Turk DC, Farrar JT, et al. Core outcome measures for chronic pain clinical trials: IMMPACT recommendations. Pain. 2005 Jan;113(1-2):9-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15621359
25. Turk DC, Dworkin RH, Allen RR, et al. Core outcome domains for chronic pain clinical trials: IMMPACT recommendations. Pain. 2003 Dec;106(3):337-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14659516.
26. McGowan L, Luker K, Creed F, et al. 'How do you explain a pain that can't be seen?': The narratives of women with chronic pelvic pain and their disengagement with the diagnostic cycle. Br J Health Psychol. 2007 May;12(Pt 2):261-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17456285
27. EAU Survey: What do you tell your patients?
http://www.uroweb.org/news/?act=showfull&aid=246
28. Nickel JC, Tripp D, Teal V, et al. Interstitial Cystitis Collaborative Trials Group. Journal of Urology 2007; 177: 1832-1836.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17437831
29. Eccleston C, Williams AC, Morley S. Psychological therapies for the management of chronic pain (excluding headache) in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Apr 15;(2):CD007407.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370688
30. Macea DD, Gajos K, Daglia Calil YA, et al. The efficacy of web-based cognitive behavioral interventions for chronic pain: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Pain 2010;11: 917-929.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20650691
31. Abbass A, Kisely S, Kroenke K. Short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy for somatic disorders. Psychother Psychosom. 2009;78(5):265-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19602915
32. Flammer E, Alladin A. The efficacy of hypnotherapy in the treatment of psychosomatic disorders: meta-analytical evidence. Int J Clin Exp Hypn. 2007 Jul;55(3):251-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17558717

33. Stetter F, Kupper S. Autogenic training: a meta-analysis of clinical outcome studies. Appl Psychophysiol Biofeedback. 2002 Mar;27(1):45-98.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12001885
34. Fry RP, Crisp AH, Beard RW. Sociopsychological factors in chronic pelvic pain: a review. J Psychosom Res. 1997 Jan;42(1):1-15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9055210
35. Zondervan K, Barlow DH. Epidemiology of chronic pelvic pain. Baillieres Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol. 2000 Jun;14(3):403-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10962634
36. Raphael KG, Chandler HK, Ciccone DS. Is childhood abuse a risk factor for chronic pain in adulthood? Curr Pain Headache Rep. 2004 Apr;8(2):99-110.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14980144
37. Davis MA, Luecken LJ, Zautra AJ. Are reports of childhood abuse related to the experience of chronic pain in adulthood? A meta-analytic review of the literature. Clin J Pain. 2005 Sep-Oct;21(5):398-405.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16093745
38. Maniglio R. The impact of child sexual abuse on health: a systematic review of reviews. Clin Psychol Rev. 2009 Nov;29(7):647-57.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19733950
39. Campbell R, Lichty LF, Sturza M, et al. Gynecological health impact of sexual assault. Res Nurs Health. 2006 Oct;29(5):399-413.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16977640
40. Weijenborg PT, Greeven A, Dekker FW, et al. Clinical course of chronic pelvic pain in women. Pain. 2007 Nov;132 Suppl 1:S117-23.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17689866
41. Savidge CJ, Slade P, Steward P, et al. Women's perspectives on their experiences of chronic pelvic pain and medical care. J Health Psychol. 1998 Jan;3(1):103-16..
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22021346
42. Price J, Farmer G, Harris J, et al. Attitudes of women with chronic pelvic pain to the gynaecological consultation: a qualitative study. BJOG. 2006 Apr;113(4):446-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16489938
43. Ehlert U, Heim C, Hellhammer DH. Chronic pelvic pain as somatoform disorder. Psychother Psychosom. 1999 Mar-Apr;68(2):87-94.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10026460
44. Zondervan KT, Yudkin PL, Vessey MP, et al. The community prevalence of chronic pelvic pain in women and associated illness behaviour. Br J Gen Pract. 2001 Jul;51(468):541-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11462313
45. Meltzer-Brody S, Leserman J, Zolnoun D, et al. Trauma and posttraumatic stress disorder in women with chronic pelvic pain. Obstet Gynecol. 2007 Apr;109(4):902-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17400852
46. Allaire C, Taenzer P. History-taking, physical examination and psychological assessment. In: Jarrell JF, Vilos GJ (editors) Consensus guidelines for the management of chronic pelvic pain. J Obstet Gynaecol Can. 2005 Sep;27(9):869-910.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19830953
47. Stones RW, Mountfield J. Interventions for treating chronic pelvic pain in women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2000;(4):CD000387.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11034686
48. Cheong YC, Smotra G, Farquhar C. Non surgical interventions for the management of chronic pelvic pain. Protocol. Cochrane Library 2010; issue 11.
http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/14651858.CD008797/abstract
49. Bordman R, Jackson B. Below the belt. Approach to chronic pelvic pain. Can Fam Physician. 2006 Dec;52(12):1556-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17279236
50. Haugstad GK, Haugstad TS, Kirste UM, et al. Mensendieck somatocognitive therapy as treatment approach to chronic pelvic pain: Results of a randomized controlled intervention study. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2006 May;194(5):1303-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16647914
51. Morley SJ, Eccleston C, Williams ACdeC. Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials of cognitive behaviour therapy and behaviour therapy for chronic pain in adults, excluding headache. Pain. 1999 Mar;80(1-2):1-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10204712

52. Farquhar CM, Rogers V, Franks S, et al. A randomized controlled trial of medroxyprogesterone acetate and psychotherapy for the treatment of pelvic congestion. Br J Obstet Gynaecol. 1989 Oct;96(10):1153-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2531611
53. Norman SA, Lumley MA, Dooley JA, et al. For whom does it work? Moderators of the effects of written emotional disclosure in a randomized trial among women with chronic pelvic pain. Psychosom Med. 2004 Mar-Apr;66(2):174-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15039501
54. Fenton BW, Palmieri PA, Boggio P, et al. A preliminary study of transcranial direct current stimulation for the treatment of refractory pelvic pain. Brain Stimul. 2009 Apr;2(2):103-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20633407

9. PELVIC FLOOR FUNCTION AND CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

9.1 Introduction

The pelvic floor is made up of muscles and fascia. The muscles usually function as a composite, although the anterior and posterior components may act in isolation. The pelvic floor has three functions: support, contraction and relaxation.

9.2 Function

In its resting state, the pelvic floor supports the bladder and the urethra in the anterior compartment, the uterus and the vagina in the middle compartment, and the rectum and the anus in the posterior compartment. The integrity of the support function depends on the anatomical position of the muscles, on the resting tone and on the integrity of the fascia. When intra-abdominal pressure rises, the pelvic floor muscles must respond with a contraction occurring simultaneously or before the pressure rise. The latter is termed an anticipatory response or feed-forward loop. Contraction of the pelvic floor muscles results in inward movement of the perineum and upward movement of the pelvic organs. In many situations, other muscles such as the abdominal, adductor and gluteal muscles also contract. There are two types of contraction that can be distinguished: a voluntary contraction, resulting from impulses arising in the cerebral cortex, and a reflex contraction. These contractions not only maintain support of the pelvic organs, they close the urethra, anus and vagina, thus avoiding loss of urine or stools. Contractions also form a defence against introduction of foreign objects into the anus or vagina, and in women, they can protect against sexual penetration. Additionally, detrusor muscle inhibition occurs in parallel with pelvic floor muscle contraction. Pelvic floor muscle contractions play an important role in sexual function. During the arousal phase, pelvic floor muscle contractions are used to increase vasocongestion. During the final phase of the sexual response cycle, a series of involuntary contractions is associated with the physical sensations of orgasm. Pelvic floor muscle relaxation results in a decrease or termination of the squeezing of the urethra, vagina and anus. The perineum and the pelvic organs return to their anatomical resting position. Relaxation of the pelvic floor muscles is needed for voiding, defecation and for sexual intercourse. The muscles of the pelvic floor are integrated in the total muscular girdle of the pelvis, yielding the stability needed for bearing the trunk. Instability in its turn leads to compensatory pelvic floor muscle (over) activity.

9.3 Dysfunction

Pelvic floor dysfunction should be classified according to “The standardisation of terminology of pelvic floor muscle function and dysfunction” (1). This is an international multidisciplinary report from the International Continence Society. By palpation of the pelvic floor muscles, the contraction and relaxation are qualified. Voluntary contraction can be absent, weak, normal or strong, and voluntary relaxation can be absent, partial or complete. Involuntary contraction and relaxation is absent or present.
Based on these signs, pelvic floor muscles can be classified as follows:

- non-contracting pelvic floor
- non-relaxing pelvic floor
- non-contracting, non-relaxing pelvic floor.

Based on symptoms and signs, the following conditions are possible:

- normal pelvic floor muscles

- overactive pelvic floor muscles
- underactive pelvic floor muscles
- non-functioning pelvic floor muscles.

Normal pelvic floor muscles relax during urination and contract during coughing. Overactive pelvic floor muscles do not relax during micturition, defecation or during sex and cause dysfunctional voiding, overactive bladder, constipation and dyspareunia (2). Underactive pelvic floor muscles do not contract sufficiently to keep the patient dry. Non-functioning pelvic floor muscles do not show any activity whatsoever and can cause every type of pelvic organ dysfunction.

Overactivity tends to develop over a protracted period, with many causes. A psychological mechanism that is thought to play a role is that contraction of the pelvic floor muscles closes some of the exits of the body (anus and vagina), and helps to keep urine and stool inside. It gives women a defence mechanism against unwanted vaginal penetration of any type. The pelvic floor muscles also help to postpone micturition, which can be of benefit in a social or working environment. In summary, the pelvic floor muscles assist in adaptation to different situations in life.

9.4 Pelvic floor muscles and myofascial pain

Chronic pelvic pain can simply be a form of myalgia, due to misuse of muscles, in this case, the pelvic floor muscles. Studies in the field of chronic prostatitis support the idea that patients with CPP have more muscle spasm and increased muscle tone and pain when palpating the pelvic floor muscles (3). Muscle relaxation can diminish spasm and pain (4). Repeated or chronic muscular overload can activate trigger points in the muscle. A report from the Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study showed that 51% of patients with prostatitis and only 7% of controls had any muscle tenderness. Tenderness in the pelvic floor muscles was only found in the CPP group (5).

*9.4.1 **Muscular aspects***

The relationship between muscular dysfunction (especially overactivity) and pelvic pain has been found in several studies. Rectal pain treated with pelvic floor muscle therapy is only relieved when patients learn to relax their pelvic floor muscles (6). The vast majority (92.2%) of men visiting a tertiary centre for pelvic pain had dysfunction of the pelvic floor muscles. This finding was true regardless of evidence of inflammation (prostatitis or cystitis) (7). This relationship has been found in chronic prostatitis (8), BPS (9) and vulvar pain (10). Dysfunction of the pelvic floor directly affects function of the pelvic viscera and vice versa. Both systems can act as the primary signal to the spinal cord, with a cascade of reactions ascending to the central nervous system as a result. The muscle itself ends up with a diminished length, leading to restrictions even when it is in a relaxed state.

*9.4.2 **Neurological aspects***

In 1999, the first ideas about the neurological aspects of the pelvic floor muscles in relation to CPP were published. The probability of central nervous system breakdown in the regulation of pelvic floor function was suggested as a mechanism for development of CPP. Of the patients presenting with pelvic pain, 88% had poor to absent pelvic floor function (11). Basic studies on the role of neurogenic inflammation have also elucidated some important phenomena. Irritation of the prostate, bladder and pelvic floor muscles results in expression of C-fos-positive cells in the CNS. There appears to be convergence of afferent information onto central pathways. Once the central changes have become established, they become independent of the peripheral input that initiated them (12).

*9.4.3 **Myofascial trigger points***

Repeated or chronic muscular overload can activate trigger points in the muscle. Trigger points are defined as hyperirritable spots within a taut band. Other criteria for trigger points are: recognition of the pain as ‘familiar’, and pain on stretching the muscle. Apart from pain, trigger points prevent full lengthening of the muscle, thereby restricting the range of movement. Pain as a result of these trigger points is aggravated by specific movements and alleviated by certain positions. Positions and movements in which the shortened muscle is stretched are painful. Patients know which activities and postures influence pain. Trigger points can be located within the pelvic floor muscles and in adjacent muscles such as the abdominal, gluteal and ileopsoas muscles. Pain is aggravated by pressure on the trigger point (e.g., pain related to sexual intercourse). Pain also worsens after sustained or repeated contractions (e.g., pain related to voiding or defecation).

9.5 Diagnostics of pelvic floor muscle function

Diagnosing pelvic floor muscle function in patients with CPP starts by taking a complete functional history of the pelvic organ function. The following items certainly should be addressed: lower urinary tract function,

anorectal function, sexual function, gynaecological items, presence of pain and psycho-social aspects.

9.5.1 ***Physical examination***

After taking a history, physical examination should be done. Special attention must be paid to the abdominal, inguinal and genital areas, but also to the pelvic alignment. The patient should be asked to point at the location of maximal pain and at the secondary pain points. Palpation of the abdomen with special attention to the muscles may yield pain points that are important for making a treatment plan. A vaginal or rectal examination should be performed to assess the function of the pelvic floor muscles, according to the ICS report. This assessment has been tested and shows satisfactory face validity and intra-observer reliability. It can therefore be considered suitable for use in clinical practice (13). Rectal examination is a good way to test the pelvic floor muscle function in men (14).

9.5.2 ***Electromyography and pressure measurement (EMG)***

Additional examination can be done using electromyography. This is preferably done using an intravaginal or intra-anal probe. This measures the electrical activity of the pelvic floor muscles as a group. It does not reveal anything about the efficacy of the contraction or relaxation. There is good correlation between digital palpation and intravaginal surface EMG (15). To measure the effect pelvic floor muscle contraction, a pressure probe can be used. The measurement of anal pressure is reliable (16), Performance of EMG in different positions gives more insight into the properties of the pelvic floor. EMG is one of the most used input methods for biofeedback. Intraluminal pressure can also be used for this purpose.

9.5.3 ***Imaging***

Anatomical imaging of the pelvic floor muscles can be done using MRI. It is still debatable whether MRI can be of help in diagnosing pudendal entrapment. Functional imaging can be done using techniques such as video-urodynamics (pelvic floor muscles in relation to bladder function) or defecography (pelvic floor muscles in relation to defecation). The reason for this is to exclude disease-specific pain. Repeated imaging studies may be detrimental for the patient because they emphasise somatic causes of the pain.

9.5.4 ***Myofascial trigger points***

There is no accepted reference standard for the diagnosis of trigger points. Data on the reliability of physical examination are conflicting. Reliability is relatively good for tenderness and for recognisable referred pain. It is lower for taut band recognition and local twitch response. The reliability improves when examination is done by experts, who are specially trained in diagnosing trigger points. Other techniques are used for diagnosing trigger points but none has become a standard.Among these are imaging techniques and EMG (17).

In a cohort study of 72 men with CPP, the relationship between the locations of the trigger point and the referred pain was examined. Ninety percent of the patients showed tenderness in the puborectalis muscle and 55% in the abdominal wall muscles. Of the patients in whom trigger points were found in the puborectalis, 93% reported pain in the penis and 57% in the suprapubic region. Patients with trigger points in the abdominal muscles reported pain in the penis (74%), perineum (65%) and rectum (46%) (18).

9.6 Treatment of pelvic floor muscle pain

Treating pelvic floor overactivity and myofascial trigger points should be considered in the management of CPP. Treatment should be done by specialised physiotherapists who are trained not only in the musculoskeletal aspects of pain, but also in the psychological mechanisms and the role of the CNS in chronic pain.

9.6.1 ***Pelvic floor muscle exercise***

For patients with CPP and dysfunction of the pelvic floor muscles, it is very helpful to learn how to relax the muscles when the pain starts. By doing this, the circle of pain-spasm-pain can be interrupted. In the case of shortened muscles, relaxation alone is not enough. Stretching of the muscle is mandatory to regain length and function. Studies on physical therapy for pelvic floor pain syndrome have been sparse. A single blinded RCT with myofascial physical therapy and general massage was carried out in patients with prostate or bladder pain. The global response rate to treatment with massage was significantly better in the prostate than in the bladder pain group (57% vs. 21%). In the prostate pain group, there was no difference between the two treatment arms. In the bladder pain group, myofascial treatment did significantly better than the massage. Massage only improved complaints in the prostate pain group. The fact that the prostate pain group consisted of only men is mentioned as a possible confounding factor (19).

9.6.2 ***Biofeedback and electrostimulation***

Biofeedback can be helpful in the treatment of pelvic floor pain in the process of recognising the action of

the muscles. Visualising the action of the pelvic floor muscles by using biofeedback is an eye opener to many patients. Biofeedback should always be used in consultation with the patient. Special care should be taken when there is a history of negative physical or sexual experiences. The numbers of patients in most studies concerning biofeedback have been small but the results are promising. In a cohort study, 31 patients with CPP syndrome participating in a pelvic floor biofeedback re-education programme were followed. The mean chronic prostatitis symptom index decreased from 23.6 to 11.4. They also measured the pelvic floor muscle activity by EMG using an anal probe. The resting amplitude was taken as a parameter for the ability to relax the pelvic floor muscles. This parameter was 4.9 μV at the start and 1.7 μV at the end of the treatment, so the relaxation improved markedly. There was also a correlation between the decline in EMG values and improvement in prostatitis symptom score (20).

In a study among patients with levator ani syndrome, biofeedback was found to be the most effective therapy. Other modalities used were electrostimulation and massage. Adequate relief was reported by 87% in the biofeedback group, 45% for electrostimulation, and 22% for massage (6). A review on biofeedback in pelvic floor dysfunction has shown that biofeedback is better than placebo or sham treatment. An odds ratio of 5.8 favouring biofeedback has been calculated based on three studies (21).

*9.6.3 **Myofascial trigger point release***

The treatment of myofascial trigger points has different options. There are three groups of treatment: (1) manual therapy: pressure and release, compression, spray and stretch; (2) dry needling: putting a solid filiform needle directly in the trigger point, repeatedly and in an up and down pecking motion; and (3) wet needling: injection of lidocaine or botulinum toxin into the trigger point. The evidence for all the different treatments is weak. In most studies, no significant difference between these techniques has been found. One problem is that most of the studies were small and heterogeneous with regard to the patients and methods. This is especially true for comparing any technique with sham or placebo treatment. For manual therapy, central trigger points are treated by stretching the muscle because this inactivates it. Trigger points lying in the attachment of the muscle to the bone are treated using direct manual therapy. Other well-known techniques such as biofeedback and neuromuscular stimulation have been used in the treatment of trigger points. There is no evidence that manual techniques are more effective than no treatment (22). In most studies of dry needling, it has been compared with wet needling. Different systematic reviews have come to the conclusion that, although there is an effect of needling on pain, it is neither supported nor refuted that this effect is better than placebo (23). Other reviews have concluded that the same is true for the difference between dry and wet needling (24,25).

*9.6.4 **Botulinum A toxin***

Botulinum A toxin (BTX-A) is an inhibitor of acetylcholine release at the neuromuscular junction and has a paralysing effect on striated muscles. BTX-A has been injected into trigger points. It is more expensive than lidocaine and has not been proven to be more effective (26). Reviews do not support the injection of BTX-A into trigger points (27).

Pelvic floor muscle overactivity plays a role in CPP. BTX-A, as a muscle relaxant, can be used to reduce the resting pressure in the pelvic floor muscles. In women with high resting pressure in the pelvic floor muscles, it has been found that BTX-A lowers this pressure significantly. The magnitude of reduction was significantly higher than that in the placebo group. On the pain score (VAS), no intergroup differences were found in this relatively small randomised study (28). BTX-A can also be injected at the sphincter level to improve urination or defecation. Relaxation of the urethral sphincter alleviates the bladder problems and secondarily the spasm. In a cohort study of 13 patients with CPP, BTX-A was injected into the external urethral sphincter. Subjectively, 11 patients reported a substantial change in pain symptoms, from 7.2 to 1.6 on a visual analogue scale (29).

*9.6.5 **Pain management***

The physiotherapist is part of the pain management team, together with the pain doctor and the psychologist. The therapeutic options for physiotherapists may not be the same in every country. Physiotherapists can either specifically treat the pathology of the pelvic floor muscles, or more generally treat myofascial pain if it is part of the pelvic pain syndrome.

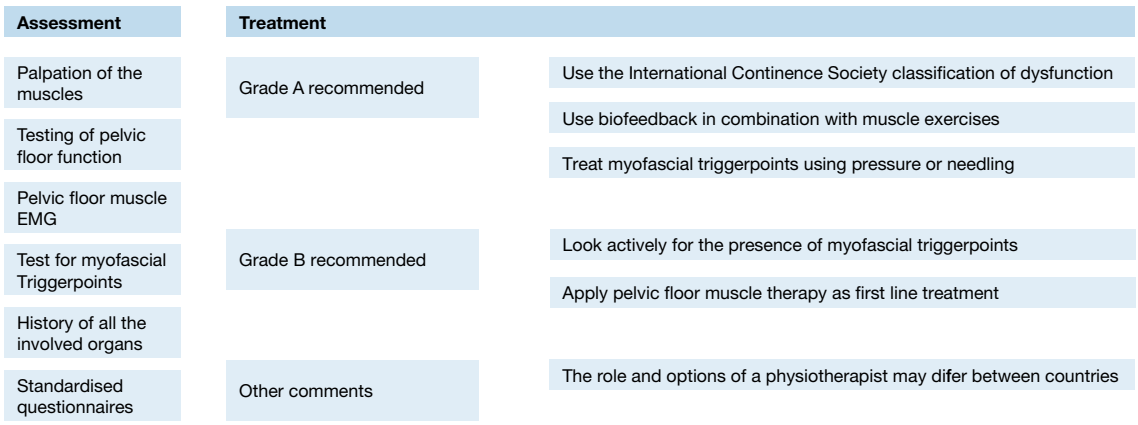
9.7 Conclusions and recommendations: pelvic floor function

Conclusions	**LE**
The ICS classification is suitable for clinical practice.	2a
Overactivity of the pelvic floor muscles is related to chronic pelvic pain, prostate, bladder and vulvar pain.	2a

The overactivity of the pelvic floor muscles is an input to the central nervous system causing central sensitisation.	2b
There is no accepted standard for diagnosing myofascial trigger points.	2a
There is a relation between the location of trigger point and the region where the pain is perceived.	3
Myofascial treatment is effective in prostate- and bladder pain syndrome.	1b
Biofeedback improves the outcome of myofascial therapy for pelvic floor dysfunction.	1a
Trigger point release is effective in treating muscle and referred pain, but there is no preference from one method over another.	1a

Recommendations	**GR**
We recommend the use of the ICS classification on pelvic floor muscle function and dysfunction.	A
In patients with chronic pelvic pain syndrome we suggest to actively look for the presence of myofascial trigger points.	B
In patients with chronic pelvic pain syndrome we suggest to apply pelvic floor muscle treatment as first line treatment.	B
In patients with an overactive pelvic floor we recommend biofeedback as therapy adjuvant to muscle exercises.	A
When myofascial trigger points are found we recommend treatment by pressure or needling.	A

Figure 17: assessment and treatment pelvic floor function



9.8 References

1. Messelink EJ, Benson T, Berghmans B et al. Standardisation of terminology of pelvic floor muscle function and dysfunction: report from the pelvic floor clinical assessment group of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn. 2005;24(4):374-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15977259
2. Messelink EJ. The overactive bladder and the role of the pelvic floor muscles. BJU Int 1999 Mar;83Suppl 2:31-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10210602
3. Hetric DC, Ciol MA, Rothman I, et al. Musculoskeletal dysfunction in men with chronic pelvic pain syndroime type III: a case-control study. J Urol. 2003 Sep;170(3):828-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12913709
4. Clemens JQ, Nadler RB, Schaeffer AJ, et al. Biofeedback, pelvic floor re-education, and bladder training for male chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Urology. 2000 Dec 20;56(6):951-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11113739
5. Shoskes DA, Berger R, Elmi A.,et al. Muscle tenderness in Men with Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain syndrome: The Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study. J Urol. 2008 Feb;179(2):556-60 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082223
6. Chiarioni G, Nardo A, Vantini I, et al. Biofeedback Is Superior to Electrogalvanic Stimulation and Massage for Treatment of Levator Ani Syndrome. Gastroenterology. 2010 Apr;138(4):1321-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20044997

7. Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, Doggweiler R, Schmidt RA. Chronic prostatitis: a myofascial pain syndrome? Infect Urol 1999;12:84-6.
8. Shoskes DA, Berger R, Elmi A, et al. Muscle tenderness in Men with Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain syndrome: The Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study. J Urol. 2008 Feb;179(2):556-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18082223
9. Peters KM. Prevalence of Pelvic floor dysfunction in patients with Interstitial Cystitis. Urology. 2007 Jul;70(1):16-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17656199
10. Reissing ED, Brown C, Lord MJ, et al. Pelvic floor muscle functioning in women with vulvar vestibulitis syndrome. J Psychosom Obstet Gynaecol. 2005 Jun;26(2):107-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16050536
11. Zermann DH, Ishigooka M, Doggweiler R, et al. Neurourological insights into the etiology of genitourinary pain in men. J Urol. 1999 Mar;161(3):903-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10022711
12. Ishigooka M, Zermann DH, Doggweiler, et al. Similarity of distributions of spinal C-fos and plasma extravasation after acute chemical irritation of the bladder and the prostate. J Urol. 2000 Nov;164(5):1751-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025764
13. Slieker-ten Hove MC, Pool-Goudzwaard AL, Eijkemans MJ, et al. Face validity and reliability of the first digital assessment scheme of pelvic floor muscle function conform the new standardized terminology of the International Continence Society. Neurourol Urodyn. 2009;28(4):295-300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19090583
14. Wydaele JJ, Van Eetvelde B. Reproducibility of digital testing of the pelvic floor muscles in men. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 1996 Nov;77(11):1179-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8931532
15. Romanzi LJ, Polaneczky M, Glazer HI. Simple test of pelvic muscle contraction during pelvic examination: correlation to surface electromyography. Neurourol Urodyn. 1999;18(6):603-12 http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10529708
16. Dorey G, Swinkels A. Test Retest Reliability of Anal Pressure Measurements in Men with Erectile Dysfunction. Urol Nurs. 2003 Jun;23(3):204-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12861738
17. Lucas N, Macaskill P, Irwig L, et al. Reliability of physical examination for diagnosis of myofascial trigger points: a systematic review of the literature. Clin J Pain. 2009 Jan;25(1):80-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19158550
18. Anderson RU, Sawyer T, Wise D, et al. Painful myofascial trigger points and pain sites in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. J Urol. 2009 Dec;182(6):2753-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837420
19. FitzGerald MP, Anderson RU, Potts J, et al. Randomized multicenter feasibility trial of myofascial physical therapy for the treatment of urological chronic pelvic pain syndromes. J Urol. 2009 Aug;182(2):570-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19535099
20. Cornel EB, van Haarst EP, Schaarserg RW, et al. The effect of biofeedback physical therapy in men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome type III. Eur Urol. 2005 May;47(5):607-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15826751
21. Koh CE, Young CJ, Young JM, et al. Systematic review of randomized controlled trials of the effectiveness of biofeedback for pelvic floor dysfunction. Br J Surg. 2008 Sep;95(9):1079-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18655219
22. de las Penas CF, Sohrbeck Campo M, Fernandez Carnero J, et al. Manual therapies in myofascial trigger point treatment: a systematic review.
23. Tough EA, White AR, Cummings TM, et al. Acupuncture and dry needling in the management of myofascial trigger point pain: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Eur J Pain. 2009 Jan;13(1):3-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18395479
24. Cummings TM, White AR. Needling therapies in the management of myofascial trigger point pain: a systematic review. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 2001 Jul;82(7):986-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11441390
25. Scott NA, Guo B, Barton PM, et al. Trigger point injections for chronic non-malignant musculoskeletal pain: a systematic review. Pain Med. 2009 Jan;10(1):54-69. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18992040

26. Kamanli A, Kaya A, Ardicoglu O, et al. Comparison of lidocaine injection, botulinum toxin injection, and dry needling to trigger points in myofascial pain syndrome. Rheumatol Int. 2005 Oct;25(8):604-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15372199
27. Ho KY, Tan KH. Botulinum toxin A for myofascial trigger point injection: a qualitative systematic review. Eur J Pain. 2007 Jul;11(5):519-27. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17071119
28. Abbott JA, Jarvis SK, Lyons SD, et al. Botulinum toxin type A for chronic pain and pelvic floor spasm in women: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol. 2006 Oct;108(4):915-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17012454
29. Zermann D, Ishigooka M, Schubert J, et al. Perisphincteric injection of botulinum toxin type A. A treatment option for patients with chronic prostatic pain? Eur Urol. 2000 Oct;38(4):393-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025376

10. GENERAL TREATMENT OF CHRONIC PELVIC PAIN

10.1 Introduction

Chronic pelvic pain (CPP) is well defined and involves multiple mechanisms as described in previous chapters. The management requires a holistic approach with biological, psychological and social components. This chapter looks solely at general treatments and should be used as part of a management plan including the interventions suggested in the specific chapters above.

Despite the developments in basic science, there has not been the same in pharmacological intervention. It is recognised that there are often central mechanisms involved in CPP. This chapter looks at general treatments for pain (both peripheral and central) and not the specific treatments mentioned in the chapters 2 and 6.

Despite the frequency of CPP, relatively few studies have specifically looked at the medications used in CPP patients (1). As a result, a wider look at the literature has been undertaken, including the agents used for central and neuropathic pain. Further specific research is required in this group of patients.

The agents concerned are divided for ease of description. Combinations often provide a greater benefit than individual agents. They may also allow lower dosages of each agent and thus minimise the side effects.

The aim of using these drugs is to allow patients to improve their QoL. This is best measured by assessing their function as well as pain severity. If the addition of these agents does not allow this, then they should be withdrawn. Unfortunately, the failure of one agent to provide benefit does not mean that there is an alternative. If the benefit is limited by side effects, then the lowest effective dose should be found (by dose titration). In some circumstances, patients can tolerate a higher level of pain and have fewer side effects.

If the use of simple analgesics fails to provide adequate benefit, then one should consider using the neuropathic agents, and if there is no improvement, consider involving a specialist pain management centre with an interest in pelvic pain.

10.2 Simple analgesics

Paracetamol (acetaminophen)

Paracetamol is a well-tolerated analgesic in a class of its own. This is an antipyretic analgesic with a central mechanism of action(2). It is often available over the counter without prescription. There is evidence that paracetamol is beneficial in managing somatic and arthritic pain. (3-5). There is little evidence for its use in CPP but it should be considered if it has not already been tried.

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs)

This is a group of agents that include salicylic acid. They have had significant publicity over recent years. They are anti-inflammatory, antipyretic analgesics that act by inhibiting the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase (COX). They have a peripheral effect, hence their use in painful conditions involving peripheral or inflammatory mechanisms.

They are commonly used for pelvic pain because many are available over the counter and are usually well

tolerated. The evidence for their benefit is often weak or non-existent. It should be remembered that they do have side effects, which may be significant. There is no good evidence to suggest one NSAID over another for pelvic pain.

For pelvic pain in which inflammatory processes are considered to be involved, such as dysmenorrhoea (6), NSAIDs are more effective than placebo and paracetamol, but with a higher incidence of side effects. For pelvic pain in which central mechanisms may be incriminated, such as endometriosis (7), then the evidence is lacking for NSAIDs despite their common use.

Guidelines for use of NSAIDs and COX-2 selective agents have been developed. They have more side effects than paracetamol, including indigestion, headaches and drowsiness.

At a practical level, NSAIDs could be considered as analgesics for patients with pelvic pain. They should be tried (having regard for the cautions and contraindications for use) and the patient reviewed for improvement in function as well as analgesia. If this is not achieved, or there are side effects, then the NSAID should be stopped.

Neuropathic analgesics
This is a group of agents that are not simple analgesics but are used to modulate neuropathic or centrally mediated pain. There are several classes used with a recognised benefit in pain medicine. They are taken on a regular basis rather than as required. They all have side effects that limit their use in some patients.

In the UK, the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) has reviewed the pharmacological management of neuropathic pain (8). There is further guidance in progress for the management of neuropathic pain in the non-specialist setting.

Not all the agents have a licence for use in pain management but there is a history and evidence to demonstrate their benefit. The evidence for treatment of CPP is lacking but is present for other painful conditions. For this chapter, most of the evidence is from non-pelvic pain sources.

The general method for using these agents is by titrating the dose against benefit and side effects. The aim is for patients to have an improvement in their QoL, and is often best assessed by alterations in their function. Side effects frequently limit the use of these agents.

It is common to use these agents in combinations but studies comparing different agents against each other or in combination are lacking.

*10.2.1 **Antidepressants***

10.2.1.1 Tricyclic antidepressants

This is a group of drugs with multiple mechanisms of action. They have a long history of use in pain medicine and have been subjected to a Cochrane review (9). This suggests that they are effective for neuropathic pain with numbers needed to treat (NNT) of approximately three.

Amitriptyline is the most commonly used member of this group at doses from 10 to 75 mg/day (sometimes rising to 150 mg/day). This is titrated against benefit or side effects and taken at night (8). Nortriptyline and imipramine are often used as alternatives.

10.2.1.2 Other antidepressants

Venlafaxine is a serotonin and noradrenalin reuptake inhibiter (SNRI). It does not have a license for managing neuropathic pain but there is evidence of its benefit in chronic pain (8). There are cautions particularly in patients with heart disease. This is a drug best used by those familiar with its use.

Duloxetine is a newer SNRI antidepressant. It is used for depression, urinary stress incontinence and neuropathic pain. There is moderately strong evidence for a benefit in diabetic neuropathy and fibromyalgia at a dose of 60 mg/day (10). Side effects are common and may result in its discontinuation.

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are antidepressants with fewer side effects. They are effective for depression but there have been insufficient studies to demonstrate their benefit in pelvic or neuropathic pain (9,11,12).

10.2.2 ***Anticonvulsants***

This group of drugs are commonly used in the management of neuropathic pain. There have been general studies as well as some looking more particularly at pelvic pain. Individual agents have been systematically reviewed. Their use is suggested in the NICE Neuropathic Guidelines (8).

Carbamazepine has a long history of use in neuropathic pain. Evidence exists for its benefit (13). It should be remembered that the trials have tended to be of short duration, showing only moderate benefit. There are side effects; some of which may be serious. With more recently developed agents becoming available, with fewer serious side effects, carbamazepine is no longer a first-choice agent.
Gabapentin is commonly used for neuropathic pain and has been systematically reviewed (14). It provides good quality relief with NNT of approximately six. This is a more conservative estimate than in previous reports. Side effects are common, notably drowsiness, dizziness and peripheral oedema. These effects do limit compliance but are often tolerated by patients. The doses involved were all greater than 1.2 g/day. For upper dose levels, reference should be made to local formularies, and many clinicians do not routinely exceed 2.4g/day in divided doses (most commonly three times daily).
One study of women with CPP has suggested that gabapentin alone or in combination with amitriptyline provides better analgesia then amitriptyline alone (15).

Pregabalin is another commonly used neuromodulator. There is good evidence for its efficacy in some neuropathic conditions but the NNT varies depending on the condition (16). The dose for benefit is in the range of 300 to 600 mg/day. The same systematic review has found that doses less than 150 mg/day are unlikely to provide benefit. As with gabapentin, side effects are relatively common and may not be tolerated by patients.

Other anticonvulsants are available but not commonly used for managing pain.

10.2.3 ***Other agents***

Other agents can be used in the management of neuropathic pain but are best limited to those that are specialists in the management of pain and familiar with their use. They tend to be considered after the standard options have been exhausted. As with all good pain management, they are used as part of a comprehensive management plan.

Topical capsaicin has been used for neuropathic pain either by repeated low-dose (0.075%) administration or more recently as a single high dose (8%). Topical application (usually to an area of hyperaesthesia or allodynia) is more inconvenient than for other medications, and capsaicin does cause initial heat on application. Skin sensitivity is a limiting factor and may not be well tolerated. A systematic review has suggested there may be benefit in some patients (17). Care should be taken to ensure that unused cream or that washed off the hands following application is not inadvertently transferred to other areas of skin or mucous membranes.

Antipsychotics have been used and despite limited research, a systematic review has suggested that further research should be undertaken on the atypical antipsychotics, which have fewer side effects and are better tolerated than the older antipsychotics (18).

10.3 Opioids

Opioids are used for chronic non-malignant pain and may be beneficial for a small number of patients. Often patients will stop taking oral opioids due to side effects or insufficient analgesia(19).

They should only be used in conjunction with a management plan and with consultation between clinicians experienced in their use. It is suggested that a pain management unit should be involved along with the patient and their primary care physician.

There are well established guidelines for the use of opioids in pain management as well as considering the potential risks (20). There is also information available on line for patients (21,22).

Opioid rotation is used in palliative care and to some extent in non-cancer pain. The evidence is clinical, largely anecdotal, or from small trials and is not convincing (23). The rational is that if a patient has significant side effects and inadequate analgesia to one opioid then swapping to another agent may be better tolerated.

There are several agents available in the group. They can be divided into weak (e.g., codeine, dihydrocodeine and tramadol) or strong opioids (e.g., morphine, oxycodone, fentanyl and hydromorphone).

Oral administration is preferable, but if poorly tolerated, a percutaneous (patch) route may have advantages. More invasive approaches are less commonly used and within the realms of specialist units.
Side effects are common and require active management. This is particularly true of constipation with some interesting developments on methods for managing it.

There is a growing understanding of opioid-induced hyperalgesia (24); a situation in which patients taking opioids, paradoxically, become more sensitive to painful stimuli. This is another reason for these drugs to be used in a controlled fashion for long-term management of non-malignant pain.

*10.4.1 **Recommendations for use of opioids in chronic/non-acute urogenital pain***

Recommendations
All other reasonable treatments must have been tried and failed.
The decision to instigate long-term opioid therapy should be made by an appropriately trained specialist in consultation with another physician (including the patients and their family doctor).
Where there is a history or suspicion of drug abuse, a psychiatrist or psychologist with an interest in pain management and drug addiction should be involved.
The patient should undergo a trial of opioids.
The dose required needs to be calculated by careful titration.
The patient should be made aware (and possibly give written consent): • That opioids are strong drugs and associated with addiction and dependency. • Opioids will normally only be prescribed from one source (preferably the family doctor). • The drugs will be prescribed for fixed periods of time and a new prescription will not be available until the end of that period. • The patient may be subjected to spot urine and possibly blood checks to ensure that the drug is being taken as prescribed, and that non-prescribed drugs are not being taken. • Inappropriate aggressive behaviour associated with demanding the drug will not be accepted. • Hospital specialist review will normally occur at least once a year. • The patient may be requested to attend a psychiatric/psychological review. Failure to comply with the above may result in the patient being referred to a drug dependency agency and the use of therapeutic, analgesic opioids being stopped.
Morphine is the first-line drug, unless there are contraindications to morphine or special indications for another drug. • The drug should be prescribed in a slow-release/modified release form. • Short-acting preparations are undesirable and should be avoided where possible. • Parenteral dosing is undesirable and should be avoided where possible.

*10.4.2 **Morphine***

There is no compelling evidence that one opioid is better than another. Morphine is the traditional gold standard and the opioid with which many physicians are most familiar. The aim is to use a slow or sustained release preparation starting with a low dose and titrating the dose every 3 days to 1 week against improvement in both function and pain. Side effects should also be monitored and managed accordingly. Particular attention should be paid to the management of constipation.

*10.4.3 **Other opioid agents***

There are a variety of agents available and some are mentioned below, giving an idea of the options available.

Transdermal fentanyl may be considered when oral preparations are restricted (e.g., iliostomy). It may also be beneficial when there are intolerable side effects from other opioids.

Methadone has a long record of use as an opioid. There is a theoretical advantage of benefit with its N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDA) antagonist activity. This may be particularly relevant in neuropathic pain (25).

Oxycodone may have greater efficacy than morphine in some situations, such as hyperalgesic states including visceral pain (26).

Analgesics with a dual mode of action may have a role in the management of chronic pain. Tramadol is an established analgesic with dual effects on opioid receptors and serotonin release. More recently, a new agent,

tapentadol, has been released with opioid action and noradrenalin reuptake inhibition. It is too early to assess its real value in the armamentarium for pain management.

10.5 Nerve blocks

Nerve blocks for pain management are usually carried out by specialists in pain medicine and as part of a broader management plan (27). They may have a diagnostic or therapeutic role.

Textbooks have been written on the subject and practioners using them should be trained in appropriate patient selection, indications, risks and benefits. Many such interventions also require understanding and expertise in using imaging techniques to perform the blocks accurately.

Diagnostic blocks can be difficult to interpret due to the complex nature of the mechanisms underlying the painful condition or syndrome. Sustained but limited benefit may lead to more permanent procedures (e.g., neurolytic block or radiofrequency procedures). Neurolytic blocks in particular should only be considered by practioners experienced in their use and with the full understanding of the patient because complications can be disastrous.

There is a weak evidence base for these interventions for chronic non-malignant pain.

10.6 Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS)

Despite the popularity of TENS and the number of trials undertaken, a systematic review has been unable to provide an evidence base for this technique (28). It is clear that further more rigorous trials should be undertaken to provide some clarity for a commonly used intervention.

10.7 Neuromodulation in pelvic pain syndromes

The role of neuromodulation in the management of pelvic pain should only be considered by specialists in pelvic pain management. These techniques are only used as part of a broader management plan and require regular follow-up.

The research base is developing and the techniques broadening [e.g., spinal cord stimulation (SCS), sacral root stimulation, dorsal root ganglion stimulation or peripheral nerve stimulation]. These are expensive interventions and thus many of the patients involved are refractory to other therapies. It is thus inappropriate to provide a detailed review of these techniques for this publication.

In the UK, guidance has been published for SCS in neuropathic pain (29). This emphasises the comments above. This guidance suggests a trial period of stimulation before full implementation.

Neuromodulation is still finding its role in pelvic pain management. There has been growing evidence in small case series or pilot studies but more detailed research is required (30). Its role in overactive bladder and faecal incontinence is more robust but is limited for pain.

10.8 Summary

CPP is a common complaint that is well defined and involves multiple mechanisms. Some of the conditions have clear management pathways but many do not. In these CPP syndromes, a holistic multidisciplinary team approach is required with active patient involvement.

This chapter focuses on general treatment of CPP, mainly drug therapy, and comments on other more invasive techniques. The latter are used in combination with other modalities. Many are aimed at management of neuropathic pain or conditions in which central mechanisms are implicated.

At this stage in management, the involvement of trained clinicians with expertise in chronic pain management should be considered. Centres with a particular interest in pelvic pain do exist and involve clinicians from several specialties along with other health care professionals (e.g., physiotherapy, psychology, nursing and occupational therapy).

With any of the agents above, the aim is to assess pain relief, improvement in function, and side effects. This should be done regularly while titrating and optimising drug dose. If there is no benefit, then the drug should be withdrawn.

Neuropathic agents are frequently used and often in combination. There is significant inter-patient variability in

effect. Use is often limited by side effects that may be worse than any pain reduction.

Opioid drugs are used in this group of patients. Their role is limited and they should only be started in consultation with all parties involved (including the patient's family practitioner). National guidelines exist and should be followed. There is growing understanding of the limitations of opioid use, and more recently, the paradoxical situation of opioid-induced hyperalgesia.

10.9 Recommendations for the medical treatment of CPP

Agent	Pain Type	LE	GR	Comment
Paracetamol	Somatic pain	1a	A	Evidence based on arthritic pain with good benefit
NSAIDs	Pelvic pain with inflammatory process (e.g. dysmenorrhoea)	1a	A	Good evidence for their use
	Central mechanisms (e.g. endometriosis)	1a	A	No good evidence for their use
Antidepressants including tricyclic antidepressants, venlafaxine and duloxetine	Neuropathic pain	1a	A	Effective. No specific evidence for CPP.
Anticonvulsants gabapentin, pregabalin	Neuropathic pain, fibromyalgia	1a	A	Effective
Gabapentin	Women with CPP	2b	B	Effective
Topical capsaicin	Neuropathic pain	1a	A	Some evidence of benefit
Opioids	Chronic non-malignant pain	1a	A	Beneficial in a small number of patients
Nerve blocks		3	C	Have a role as part of a broad management plan
TENS		1a	A	No good evidence of benefit
Neuromodulation	Pelvic pain	3	C	Role developing with increasing research.

Figure 18: algorithm for the use of neuropathic analgesics

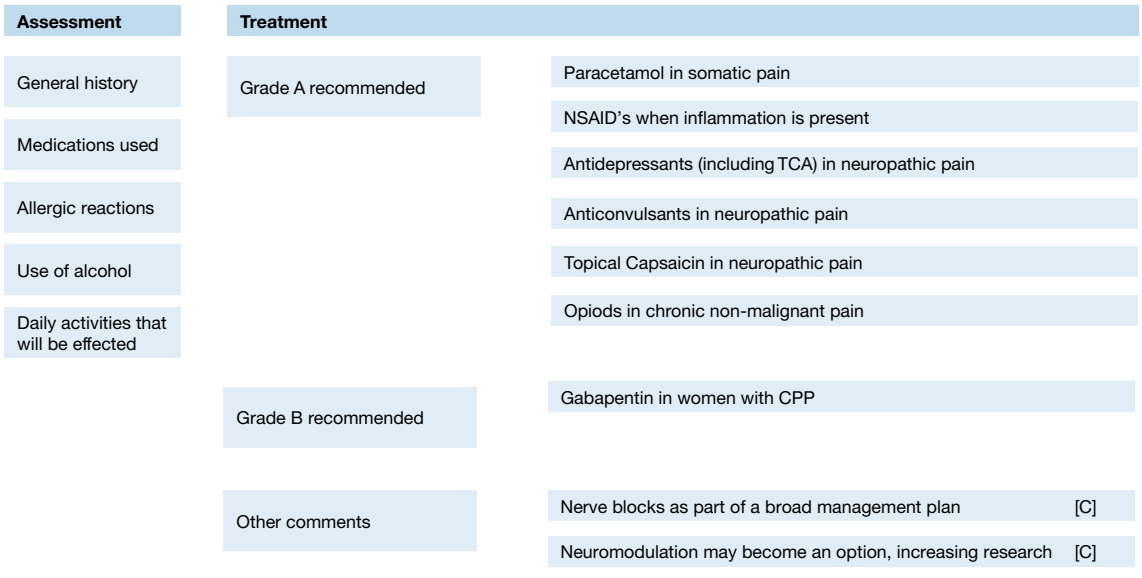
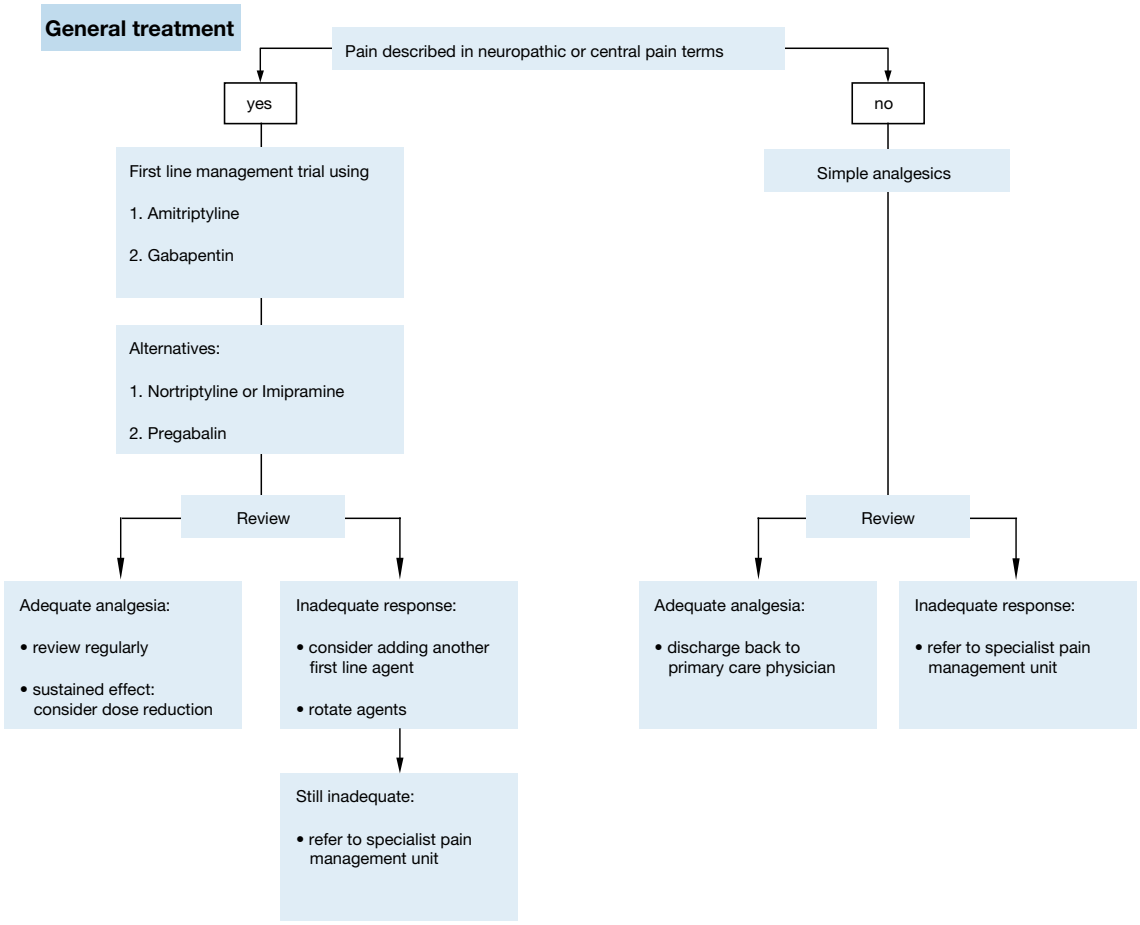


Figure 19: treatment algorithm for general treatment



10.10 References

1 Stones W, Cheong Ying C, Howard Fred M, et al. Interventions for treating chronic pelvic pain in women. Cochrane database of systematic reviews [serial on the Internet]. 2005; (2) http://www.mrw.interscience.wiley.com/cochrane/clsysrev/articles/CD000387/frame.html.

2 Remy C, Marret E, Bonnet F. State of the art of paracetamol in acute pain therapy.Curr Opin Anaesthesiol. 2006 Oct;19(5):562-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16960492

3 Roelofs PD, Deyo RA, Koes BW, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for low back pain. Spine (Phila Pa 1976). 2008 Jul 15;33(16):1766-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18580547

4 Towheed T, Maxwell L, Judd MG, et al. Acetaminophen for osteoarthritis. Cochrane Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2006 Jan 25;(1):CD004257. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16437479

5 Altman RD, Zinsenheim JR, Temple AR, et al. Three-month efficacy and safety of acetaminophen extended-release for osteoarthritis pain of the hip or knee: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. Osteoarthritis Cartilage. 2007 Apr;15(4):454-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17142063

6. Marjoribanks J, Proctor M, Farquhar C, et al. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for dysmenorrhoea. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010 Jan 20;(1):CD001751. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20091521

7. Allen C, Hopewell S, Prentice A, et al. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for pain in women with endometriosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Apr 15;(2):CD004753. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370608

8. NICE clinical guideline 96. Neuropathic pain. The pharmacological management of neuropathic pain in adults in non-specialist settings. http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG96

9. Saarto T, Wiffen PJ. Antidepressants for neuropathic pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007 Oct 17;(4):CD005454. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943857
10. Lunn MP, Hughes RA, Wiffen PJ. Duloxetine for treating painful neuropathy or chronic pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD007115. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821395
11. Lee RA, West RM, Wilson JD. The response to sertraline in men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome. Sex Transm Infect. 2005 Apr;81(2):147-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15800093
12. Engel CC Jr, Walker EA, Engel AL, et al. A randomized, double-blind crossover trial of sertraline in women with chronic pelvic pain. J Psychosom Res. 1998 Feb;44(2):203-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9532549
13. Wiffen PJ, Derry S, Moore RA, et al. Carbamazepine for acute and chronic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011 Jan 19;(1):CD005451. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21249671
14. Moore RA, Wiffen PJ, Derry S, et al. Gabapentin for chronic neuropathic pain and fibromyalgia in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011 Mar 16;(3):CD007938. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21412914
15. Sator-Katzenschlager SM, Scharbert G, Kress HG, et al. Chronic pelvic pain treated with gabapentin and amitriptyline: a randomized controlled pilot study. Wien Klin Wochenschr. 2005 Nov;117(21-22): 761-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16416358
16. Moore RA, Straube S, Wiffen PJ et al. Pregabalin for acute and chronic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Jul 8;(3):CD007076. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19588419
17. Derry S, Lloyd R, Moore RA, et al. Topical capsaicin for chronic neuropathic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009 Oct 7;(4):CD007393. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19821411
18. Seidel S, Aigner M, Ossege M, et al. Antipsychotics for acute and chronic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2008 Oct 8;(4):CD004844. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843669
19. Noble M, Treadwell JR, Tregear SJ, et al. Long-term opioid management for chronic noncancer pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2010 Jan 20;(1):CD006605. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20091598
20. The British Pain Society. Opioids for persistent pain: Good practice. 2010. http://www.britishpainsociety.org/book_opioid_main.pdf
21. The British Pain Society. Opioids for persistent pain: Information for patients. 2010. http://www.britishpainsociety.org/pub_patient.htm
22. The British Pain Society. Pain and problem drug use: Information for patients. 2007. http://www.britishpainsociety.org/pub_patient.htm
23. Quigley C. Opioid switching to improve pain relief and drug tolerability. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2004;(3):CD004847. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15266542
24. Lee M, Silverman SM, Hansen H, et al. A comprehensive review of opioid-induced hyperalgesia. Pain Physician. 2011 Mar-Apr;14(2):145-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21412369
25. Sotgiu ML, Valente M, Storchi R, et al. Cooperative N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonism and mu-opioid receptor agonism mediate the methadone inhibition of the spinal neuron pain-related hyperactivity in a rat model of neuropathic pain. Pharmacol Res 2009 Oct;60(4):284-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19717013
26. Olesen AE, Staahl C, Arendt-Nielsen L, et al. Different effects of morphine and oxycodone in experimentally evoked hyperalgesia: a human translational study. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2010 Aug;70(2):189-200. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20653672
27. Baranowski AP, Fall M, Abrams P. Urogenital Pain in Clinical Practice: Taylor and Francis; 2007.
28. Nnoaham KE, Kumbang J. Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) for chronic pain. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2008 Jul 16;(3):CD003222. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18646088

29. NICE technology appraisal guidance 159. Spinal cord stimulation for chronic pain of neuropathic or ischaemic origin.
http://guidance.nice.org.uk/TA159
30. Fariello JY, Whitmore K. Sacral neuromodulation stimulation for IC/PBS, chronic pelvic pain, and sexual dysfunction. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 2010 Dec;21(12):1553-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20972541

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

AMPA	amino-methylene-phosphonic acid
ATP	Adenosinetriphosphate
BCG	Bacillus Calmette Guérin
BDNF	brain-derived neurotrophic factor
BPS	bladder pain syndrome
BTX-A	Botulinum toxin A
CBT	cognitive behavioural therapy
CFS	chronic fatigue syndrome
CHRP	calcitonin gene-related peptide
CI	confidence interval
CNS	central nervous system
CPP	chronic pelvic pain
CPPS	chronic pelvic pain syndrome
CRH	corticotrophin-releasing hormone
CyA	Cyclosporin A
DMSO	Dimethyl sulphoxide
DNIC	diffuse noxious inhibitory control
DRG	dorsal root ganglion
EH	excisional haemorrhoidectomy
ESSIC	European Society for the Study of BPS
FM	fibromyalgia
FSS	functional somatic syndrome
GAG	glycosaminoglycan
HBO	Hyperbaric oxygen
HIF	hypoxia inducible factor
IASP	Association for the Study of Pain
IBS	irritable bowel syndrome
ICDB	Interstitial Cystitis Data Base
ICSI	Interstitial Cystitis Symptom Index
IPPS	International Prostate Symptom Score
ISSVD	Society for the Study of Vulvovaginal Disease
LUTS	lower urinary tract symptoms
MAPP	Multi-disciplinary Approach to the study of chronic Pelvic Pain research
MPA	medroxyprogesterone acetate
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NBS	non-bladder syndromes
NGF	nerve growth factor
NIDDK	National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
NIH	National Institutes of Health
NIH-CPSI	NIH Prostatitis Symptom Index
NMDA	N-methyl-D-aspartate
NO	nitric oxide
PAG	periaqueductal grey
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PNS	pudendal nerve stimulation
PNS	peripheral nervous system
PPMT	pre-post-massage test
PPS	prostate pain syndrome
QoL	quality of life
RBL	rubber band ligation
RCT	randomised controlled trial
RTX	Resiniferatoxin
RUR	transurethral resection
TUNA	transurethral needle ablation
VAPS	visual analogue pain scale

Conflict of interest

All members of the Chronic Pelvic Pain Guidelines panel have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on Renal Transplantation

G. Karam, T. Kälble, A. Alcaraz, F.T. Aki,
K. Budde, U. Humke, F. Kleinclauss,
G. Nicita, J.O. Olsburgh, C. Süsal

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Most renal transplantation centres in Europe were founded by urologists. However, many of them are becoming part of transplant centres run by general transplant surgeons. This is the main reason why it is important to present current knowledge about renal transplantation in these European Association of Urology (EAU) guidelines.

As renal transplantation is very much an interdisciplinary field, the Guidelines Group contains not only urologists but also an immunologist (Prof. Dr. Süsal) and a nephrologist (Prof. Dr. Budde). Besides medical and technical aspects, the Guidelines Group has also considered ethical, social, and political aspects. This was necessary because of the still-increasing gap between 'supply' and 'demand' for kidney transplants, and the large differences in organ donation rates between European countries, suggesting European countries can learn from each other on how to increase organ donation rates.

Methodology

There are few prospective randomised studies for most sections of the Guidelines, and sometimes none. Thus, the grades of recommendation, which are evidence-based, seldom exceed grade C (see Table 2). Instead, the Guidelines are well supported by a wealth of clinical experience based on several decades of work in renal transplantation, as in, for example, technical aspects of transplantation and explantation.

A level of evidence (LE) and/or grade of recommendation (GR) have been assigned where possible (1). The aim of grading recommendations is to provide transparency between the underlying evidence and the recommendation given.

Publication:

The EAU Guidelines on Renal Transplantation were first published in 2003, with a partial update in 2004 followed by this full text update in 2009. Additionally, a quick reference guide is available. All texts can be viewed and downloaded for personal use at the society website: http://www.uroweb.org/guidelines/online-guidelines/.

Levels of evidence and grade of guideline recommendations*

Table 1: Level of evidence

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected authorities

Table 2: Grade of recommendation

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality

**modified from Sackett et al. (1)*

1.1 Reference

1. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [Access date January 2012]

2. KIDNEY DONATION

2.1 Ethical issues in transplantation

*2.1.1 **Primary ethical principles***

A number of primary principles are widely accepted as forming the bedrock of medical ethics (1-3). Conflict in an individual case often arises in trying to adhere to all these principles at the same time.

2.1.1.1 Beneficence: doing good, avoiding harm, autonomy, fairness

A central tenet of medical ethics is the obligation to strive at all times to do good for the patient. Although no physical good will accrue to a donor, it is generally accepted that the psychosocial benefits to the living donor justify the risks involved (4).

Making sure that there is an appropriate balance between benefit and harm is an important clinical judgment. A high standard of donor assessment and risk limitation is therefore of paramount importance before living kidney donation can take place (5).

Individuals are said to have 'decision-making capacity' if they can understand relevant information, consider its implications, and come to a communicable decision. A donor's decision to donate should be respected.

The principle of justice is very important in kidney distribution, where demand far outstrips supply. This means there must be a ranking system for allocating organs in an order of priority that can be morally justified. In transplantation, scarce resources usually have to be carefully allocated to recipients chosen from a larger pool of the population.

*2.1.2 **Deceased donor organ donation***

There has been an increase in living-donor organ procurement in recent years. Most organs still come from deceased donors, brain-dead donors, and from the non-heart-beating donor (NHBD) procurement programme, which is now used by several transplant centres. However, this resource base is shrinking. Together with an ever-increasing rise in potential recipients, this causes considerable pressure on the transplantation programme.

2.1.2.1 Deceased organ donor

In most countries, obtaining consent to proceed with organ donation is a major challenge. The process of gaining formal consent from relatives or from the patient during life can be defined as 'opting in' to a donor scheme. Unless consent is expressly given, the presumption is that consent is withheld. In some European countries, the opposite situation applies. Consent is presumed unless the patient has specifically opted out before death. This type of legislation can increase organ donation. For example, in Spain, this approach has produced a national network of medical teams dedicated to obtaining the maximum number of donors and greatly increasing organ transplantation (6).

2.1.2.2 Allocation of deceased donor organs

Who 'owns' deceased donor organs and who makes the decision regarding allocation are both issues needing clarification (7-9). However, there is a general presumption that the State holds the responsibility for allocation or disposal of donated organs, which is then delegated to the appropriate transplant team (10). It is considered unacceptable that deceased donor donation and allocation should depend upon the personal attributes of the recipient, e.g. race, religion or wealth. In kidney transplantation, the European healthcare systems attempt to maximise benefits by distributing kidneys on the basis of HLA matching. Potential recipients are allocated points for waiting time, matchability and sensitisation. Kidney distribution systems should be transparent and regularly audited.

*2.1.3 **Living-organ donors***

The ethical approach to organ donation is guided mainly by those rules that seek to be charitable. Living-donor transplant has been regarded as a regrettable necessity because of the success of living-donor transplant (as judged by graft and patient survival) and the scarcity of deceased donor organs (11). The chronic shortage of deceased donor organs has led to a more general acceptance of living-donor transplants. The physical and psychosocial well-being of the donor are of primary importance. Each donor should have an advocate (i.e. a psychiatrist and nephrologist from the donor evaluation team) to provide unbiased advice on the donation process and there should be separation of the recipient and donor teams.

Kidneys can be accepted from related and unrelated donors, including spouses, friends and acquaintances, or altruistic donors (anonymous donors) or paired kidney donation (see Section 2.3.3.1). The donor must be given a psychosocial evaluation by a mental health professional, who has no relationship with the recipient, to assess

the donor's ability to make the decision. The donor's confidentiality must be protected and the evaluation must be carried out in the absence of the recipient. If a translator is necessary, the translator must be unknown to both the recipient and donor. The donor should be told about the benefits to the recipient's health (physical and mental) and the risks to the donor's health (physical and mental).

The donor's motivation should be assessed. Coercion and secondary gain (monetary or other personal gain) should be excluded. Outcomes should be discussed: psychological benefits after a successful transplantation (increased self-esteem), and resentment or depression after an unsuccessful transplantation.

Recommendations
It is the right of individuals to donate as well as to receive an organ.
Commercially motivated renal transplantation is unacceptable. It has been widely prohibited by law and is strongly opposed by the International Society of Transplantation.
With the increasing success of living-donor transplants, as judged by graft and patient survival, and with the scarcity of deceased donor organs, living-donor transplants should be encouraged. The appeal of using living donors in renal transplantation is partly due to the ongoing shortage of deceased donors.
The altruistic living donor must give informed consent, which can only be obtained if he or she has a proper understanding of the risks involved.
A patient should be treated as an 'end', and not as a 'means'. Respect for dignity, integrity and authenticity of the person are basic human rights.
Living unrelated donors should only be accepted after the local ethical committee has given permission according to the rules of the country in which the donation is taking place.

Because ethical values cannot be measured using the 'scientific' basis of levels of evidence, grades of recommendation are not given.

2.1.4 ***References***

1. Gillon R (ed). *Philosophical medical ethics*. Chichester: John Wiley, 1993.
2. Boyd KM, Higgs R, Pinching AJ, eds. *The new dictionary of medical ethics*. London: BMJ Publishing, 1997.
3. General Medical Council. *Good medical practice*. 2nd edn. London: GMC, 1998.
4. de Graaf Olson W, Bogett-Dumlao A. Living donors' perception of their quality of health after donation. Prog Transplant 2001 Jun;11(2):108-15. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11871045
5. Reimer J, Rensing A, Haasen C, et al. The impact of living-related kidney transplantation on the donor's life. Transplantation 2006 May;81(9):1268-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699453
6. Matesanz R, Miranda B. A decade of continuous improvement in cadaveric organ donation: the Spanish model. J Nephrol 2002 Jan-Feb;15(1):22-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11936422
7. Andrews LB. My body, my property. Hastings Cent Rep 1986 Oct;16(5):28-38. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3771198
8. Kreis H. The question of organ procurement: beyond charity. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2005 Jul;20(7):1303-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15919689
9. Spital A, Taylor JS. Routine recovery of cadaveric organs for transplantation: consistent, fair, and lifesaving. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2007 Mar;2(2):300-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17699428
10. Dossetor JB. Ethics in Transplantation. In: Morris P Jr (ed). *Kidney transplantation*. 4th edn. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1994, pp 524-531.
11. Sells RA, Johnson R, Hutchinson I. Recommendations on the use of living kidney donors in the United Kingdom. British Transplantation Society. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1986 Jul;293(6541):257-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3089478

2.2 Policies to increase the supply and use of deceased donors

Generally, the gap between the supply and demand of kidneys has tended to stabilise in countries with a donation rate greater than 40 kidneys per million population (pmp), but has increased in countries with a lower donation rate. This is in spite of the trend for donation rates to increase (or stabilise) in Europe since 2001. Table 3 lists recent kidney transplant rates in different European countries (1).

Table 3: Kidney transplant rates in 2010 (1)

Country	Deceased donor kidneys (pmp)	Living-donor kidney (pmp)	Total kidneys (pmp)
Austria (ET)*	38.1	6.9	45
Belgium (ET)* (2008)	38.6	4.2	42.8
Bulgaria	5.14	1.71	6.85
Croatia (ET)*	49.8	4.51	54.31
Cyprus (2008)	34	49	83
Czech Republic	31.1	1.6	32.7
Denmark (ST)**	23	18.1	41.1
Estonia	26.1	3	29.1
Finland (ST)**	30.7	2.06	32.76
France (2007)	42.03	3.5	45.8
Georgia (2008)	0	1.5	1.5
Germany (ET)*	27.8	8.1	35.9
Greece (2009)	10.6	3.0	13.0
Hungary	26.4	4.19	30.59
Iceland (ST)**	No data	15.74	15.74
Ireland (2007)	32.6	1.2	33.8
Italy	25.1	3	28.1
Latvia	27.8	0.9	28.7
Lithuania	19.1	2.4	21.5
Luxembourg (ET)*	12.05	No data	12.05
Malta (2009)	15	12.5	27.5
Moldova (2007)	0	0.6	0.6
Netherlands (ET)*	22.7	28.5	51.2
Norway (ST)**	36.9	16.9	53.8
Poland	24.85	1.3	26.15
Portugal	49.1	4.8	53.9
Romania	5.68	4	9.68
Slovak Republic (08)	27.4	3.6	31
Slovenia (ET)*	30.5	0	30.5
Spain (2009)	45.2	5	48.2
Sweden (ST)**	21.6	17.9	39.5
Switzerland	23.1	14.7	37.8
Ukraine (2009)	0.5	1.9	2.4
United Kingdom	23	16.6	39.6

pmp = per million population.
* ET = Country member of the Eurotransplant.
** ST = Country member of the Scandia Transplant.

The data suggest that a donation rate of 40 pmp per year should be achievable by any single country in Europe, especially with so many sociocultural similarities. However, the act of donation is complex, depending on many factors and interactions, few of which have been proven useful individually or are generally applicable throughout the European Union. Although it is relatively easy to set a minimum standard for organ donation, it is more difficult to recommend specific, donor-promoting activities for individual countries and professional organisations. However, a few options are described below.

*2.2.1 **Donor cards***

Some countries such as the UK require donors to ‘opt in’. Others, such as Belgium and Denmark, ‘presume consent‘ and allow individuals who do not want to be donors to ‘opt out’.

Many countries have publicity schemes encouraging the general population to carry donor cards or register their wish to donate (opting-in) on a computerised donor register. This helps to reduce the risk of donation being refused by the family. In the UK, 15.1 million individuals are registered on the ‘opting in’ computer, while 5-10% of the population prefer to carry donor cards (2). However, the efficiency of this ‘opt-in’ system in creating donors is lower than in countries with a presumed consent. Opt-in systems require continuous publicity to increase the number of opted-in donors and transplant centres. Intensive

care physicians and transplant co-ordinators also need to access the register routinely to identify potential deceased donors.

Recommendation	GR
In all countries without presumed consent law, efforts should be increased to recruit donors through an opting-in register or by carrying donor cards.	C

*2.2.2 **Improved organisation and resources***

Services must be better organised and resourced to increase deceased donor donation. The ability to achieve more than 25 donors pmp increases with the number of intensive care beds. High-donating countries with better-resourced intensive care units (e.g. Spain, France, Belgium) have increased the number of staff responsible for donation (transplant coordinators) and given them proper financial support. Successful education programmes, such as European Donor Hospital Education Programme (EDHEP) (3) or institutional audits, such as Donor Action, have increased and maintained the awareness of intensive care physicians for the need for deceased donor donation and supported them in approaching donor families to discuss donation. Transplant coordinators are responsible for liaising with coroners and public relations, particularly avoiding adverse publicity.

Recommendation	GR
Professional organisations within countries should, where necessary, put pressure on government health departments to maintain enough intensive care beds, create a cadre of national transplant coordinators, and fund and deploy educational programmes for intensive care physicians.	C

*2.2.3 **'Opting-out' legislation***

The introduction of opting-out legislation results in increased rates of deceased donor donation. All European countries with more than 30 kidney donors pmp per annum (see Table 3) have opting-out legislation. Adverse publicity results in a 'soft' presumed consent in most countries, which also takes the family's views into account. Countries with informed consent do not usually perform as well, with the USA producing the highest kidney donation rate of 24 donors pmp through the United Network for Organ Sharing/The Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (UNOS/OPT) (4,5).

Recommendation
A recommendation cannot be made about something as fundamental as changing the law on deceased donor donation. However, presumed consent with an opting-out law is desirable.

*2.2.4 **Non-heart-beating donor (NHBD)***

Non-heart-beating donors provide an important opportunity to decrease the deceased donor shortage of kidneys, even though NHBD kidneys are suboptimal organs due to the increased risk of delayed graft function and primary non-function. However, the long-term viability of NHBD kidneys in strictly selected donors has been improved by the use of a continuous perfusion machine on the cadaver before harvesting (6).

A continuous perfusion machine can be used to assess NBHD kidney viability. Flow measurements and urinary enzyme excretion (7) are predictors of viability. Presumed consent legislation would allow many more NHBD kidneys because rapid intra-arterial cold perfusion of a recently deceased person would normally be allowed before family members arrive at the hospital. However, under informed consent law, perfusion of a cadaver without relatives' permission is an unwarranted assault. In contrast, under presumed consent, a coroner is able to give permission for perfusion without requiring the relatives' consent, so allowing the use of NHBDs to be expanded significantly.

Recommendations	GR
The use of NHBDs should be expanded significantly.	B
Transplant staff should create policies for recently dead admissions to casualty departments to be used as NHBDs.	B
Local coroners should be consulted regarding the legal implications.	B

*2.2.5 **Elderly donors***

The use of kidneys from elderly donors (> 60 years) is increasing. In countries such as Spain, it represents 40% of total kidney transplants. Long-term survival of kidneys is similar to the transplants performed with non-expanded criteria donors (8). After 6 months' post transplant, patients who have been transplanted have a better survival rate than patients remaining on dialysis. Kidney transplants from donors older than 70 years

carry a higher risk of graft loss and mortality, especially when transplanted to recipients under 60 years (9).

Recommendations	GR
The use of carefully selected donors over 60 years of age should be maintained and encouraged as a continuing source of deceased donor kidneys.	B
Donors over 70 should be evaluated on an individual basis, taking into account that better results are obtained when transplanted to patients older than 60 years.	B

2.2.6 ***References***

1. Transplant Procurement Management. Family approach for organ donation. www.tpm.org
2. NHS Organ Donor Register. http://www.uktransplant.org.uk/ukt/statistics/statistics.jsp
3. Blok GA, van Dalen J, Jager KJ, et al. The European Donor Hospital Education Programme (EDHEP): addressing the training needs of doctors and nurses who break bad news, care for the bereaved, and request donation. Transpl Int 1999;12(3):161-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10429952
4. United Network for Organ Sharing. http://www.unos.org
5. The Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network. http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov
6. Bagul A, Hosgood SA, Kaushik M, et al. Experimental renal preservation by normothermic resuscitation perfusion with autologous blood. Br J Surg 2008 Jan;95(1):111-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17696214
7. Balupuri S, Buckley P, Snowden C, et al. The trouble with kidneys derived from the non heart-beating donor: a single centre 10-year experience. Transplantation 2000 Mar;69(5):842-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10755537
8. Merion RM, Ashby VB, Wolfe RA, et al. Deceased-donor characteristics and the survival benefit of kidney transplantation. JAMA 2005 Dec;294(21):2726-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16333008
9. Chavalitdhamrong D, Gill J, Takemoto S, et al. Patient and graft outcomes from deceased kidney donors age 70 years and older: an analysis of the Organ Procurement Transplant Network/United Network of Organ Sharing database. Transplantation 2008 Jun;85(11):1573-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18551062

2.3 Policies to enhance living donation

Kidney transplants from living donors offer a better graft and patient survival than those from deceased donors (1). Two major recent developments have led to the increased acceptance of living kidney donation:

- Kidney transplant results have improved so that more patients with end stage renal disease (ESRD) have opted for transplant rather than dialysis;
- As the number of deceased donor kidneys has not increased, the number of living donors has increased.

It is also likely that laparoscopic donor nephrectomy (less time off work, shorter hospital stay) has helped recruit living donors.

The USA have greatly improved the supply of kidney transplants by recruiting more than 50% of total donations from consanguineous and non-consanguineous donors (i.e. living unrelated donors, which comprise 40% of transplants from living donors) (2,3). In contrast, in Europe, living-donor transplants comprise only 15% of transplantations. However, there is a clear trend for an increase in the living-donor rate, especially in the Scandinavian countries, The Netherlands, and Cyprus (see Table 3). Living-donor rates can be improved at different stages in the referral process and in more general ways (Table 4).

Table 4: Ways of improving the living donation rate

During referral process
Nephrologists, at non-transplanting as well as transplanting centres, should be encouraged to discuss openly living donation with families of patients suffering from endstage renal disease, preferably before the patient begins dialysis. This results in pre-dialysis transplantation, increased transplant rates and better use of dialysis resources.
Counselling (e.g. by senior nurse practitioners or living-donor co-ordinators) should be available to discuss screening tests, provide information packs, and arrange reimbursement of necessary donor expenses allowed in law.
If legally permitted, living unrelated donors should be encouraged.
More general methods
Medical methods, such as laparoscopic harvesting, paired kidney exchange, transplantation of grafts with anatomical abnormalities (vascular, urinary tract fusion), reversal of a positive cross-match by treatment with plasmapheresis, and intravenous immunoglobulin administration.
Ethical methods, such as showing appreciation for organ donation.
Organisational methods, such as medical leave for organ donation and reimbursement of all costs to the donor.

Recommendations	**GR**
Living donation in Europe should be encouraged. There is a widening gap between donation and demand for kidney transplants, with not enough deceased donors. There is, however, an increase in living donors. In the USA, the number of kidneys from living donors is nearly the number of kidneys from deceased donors.	C
Organ donation should be considered a charitable gift. Society can express gratitude to organ donors for their gift as with charitable contributions, without jeopardising its altruistic basis (e.g. 'Medal of Honor', limited reimbursement, medical leave, priority access to organ for transplant, donor insurance).	C
All nephrologists who care for ESRD patients should explore the living donor option with the family when a patient first presents with ESRD.	

ESRD = endstage renal disease.

*2.3.1 **Medical methods to increase number of living donations***

2.3.1.1 Acceptance of grafts with anatomical anomalies

The use of grafts with anatomical anomalies is considered a relative contraindication by most experienced transplantation centres because of the shortage of living donors. Anatomical anomalies include renal cysts, uretero-pelvic junction obstruction, solitary stones > 1 cm, duplex ureteral system, and multiple arteries and veins. However, retrospective reports have suggested that grafts with multiple renal artery or vein anomalies, such as circumaortic or retroaortic renal vein, do not carry an increased risk of complications in experienced hands (4).

If the donor has a good immunological correspondence with the recipient, but an abnormal kidney, which is the only kidney available, and if the recipient on haemodialysis has a poor status, the abnormal kidney should be transplanted leaving the donor with the best one.

A laparoscopic right kidney donor nephrectomy is as safe as a left nephrectomy. A recent prospective trial showed no differences in complication rates and graft survival between left- and right-sided donor nephrectomy (5).

Recommendations	**GR**
Multiple renal artery or grafts with anatomical anomalies are not absolute contraindications. Decisions should be made on an individual basis.	C
Laparoscopic right kidney nephrectomy is as safe as left kidney nephrectomy in terms of complications and graft survival.	A

2.3.1.2 Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy (LLDN)

Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy (LLDN) is an alternative surgical method that has increased the rate of living donations. It is becoming the preferred technique for living-donor renal transplantation. In the USA, laparoscopic donor nephrectomies are more common than open surgery donor nephrectomies. In Europe, although the number of nephrectomies are increasing, fewer laparoscopic nephrectomies are performed than open procedures (6).

There is a good evidence base for LLDN, including three systematic reviews, which have compared its safety and efficacy to the 'gold standard' of open donor nephrectomy, at least seven randomised control trials (LE: 1-2), five prospective non-randomised studies (LE: 2) and several retrospective studies (7-9). Compared to open live donor nephrectomy (OLDN), LLDN shows similar rates for graft function, rejection rate, urological complications, and patient and graft survival. However, measures for analgesic requirements, pain, hospital stay, and time to return to work are significantly better for a laparoscopic procedure.

In terms of donor safety, the historical mortality rate is 0.03% with open donor nephrectomy, a rate that remains unchanged by the introduction of LLDN (10,11). The data about potential mortality should be included in all informed consent. In addition, LLDN does not affect the long-term risk of developing ESRD (12). However, the laparoscopic approach takes longer and requires additional resources. Nevertheless, the shorter hospital stay and a more rapid return to work may compensate for the initial higher costs. In addition, the number of live kidney donations has increased by more than 100% in many institutions since the introduction of the laparoscopic approach.

Overall, laparoscopic nephrectomy offers donors less post-operative pain, shorter convalescence and better cosmetic results compared to traditional open donation. In experienced hands, this procedure is accomplished without increased risk to the donor's safety or allograft function. As with OLDN, LLDN should be considered the gold standard of treatment.

Recently introduced, LESS transumbilical nephrectomy allows the surgeon to work through the umbilicus using a multientry port. The same incision is then used for kidney withdrawal. Increasing experience in selected centres suggest that it is a promising technique with better cosmetic results. NOTES-assisted transvaginal nephrectomy is a technique that also allows avoiding the extraction abdominal scar. Both LESS transumbilical nephrectomy and NOTES-assisted transvaginal nephrectomy are experimental and should be used only in highly specialised centres (13).

Table 5: Laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy: advantages and disadvantages

Advantages	**Disadvantages**
Less post-operative pain	Graft loss or damage during 'learning curve'
Minimal surgical scarring	Pneumoperitoneum may compromise renal blood flow
Rapid return to full activities	Longer operative time and work (about 4 weeks)
Shorter hospital stay	
Magnified view of renal vessels	

Recommendations	**GR**
Laparoscopic nephrectomy offers equal urological complications, graft function and graft survival to open nephrectomy, with less post-operative morbidity, shorter convalescence, and better cosmetic results.	A
Laparoscopic nephrectomy increases the number of individuals willing to donate. It should be used only by appropriately trained and experienced surgeons.	C

2.3.1.3 References

1. Knight RJ, Burrows L, Bodian C. The influence of acute refection on long-term renal allograft survival: a comparison of living and cadaveric donor transplantation. Transplantation 2001 Jul;72(1):69-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11468537
2. United Network for Organ Sharing. http://www.unos.org
3. The Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network. http://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov
4. Hsu TH, Su LM, Ratner LE, et al. Impact of renal artery multiplicity on outcomes of renal donors and recipients in laparoscopic donor nephrectomy. Urology 2003 Feb;61(2):323-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12597939

5. Minnee RC, Bemelman WA, Maartense S, et al. left or right kidney in hand-assisted donor nephrectomy? A randomised controlled trial. Transplantation 2008 Jan;85(2):203-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18212624
6. Kok NH, Weimar W, Alwayn IP, et al. The current practice of live donor nephrectomy in Europe. Transplantation 2006 Oct;82(7):892-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17038903
7. Shokeir AA. Open versus laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy: a focus on the safety of donors and the need for a donor registry. J Urol 2007 Nov;178(5):1860-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17868736
8. Tooher RL, Rao MM, Scott DF, et al. A systematic review of laparoscopic live-donor nephrectomy. Transplantation 2004 Aug;78(3):404-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316369
9. Giessing M. Laparoscopic living-donor nephrectomy. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2004 Jul;19(Suppl 4): iv36-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15240847
10. Matas AJ, Bartlett ST, Leichtman AB, et al. Morbidity and mortality after living kidney donation, 1999-2001: Survey of United States Transplant Centers. Am J Transplant 2003 Jul;3(7):830-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12814474
11. Hadjianastassious VG, Johnson RJ, Rudge CJ, et al. 2509 living donor nephrectomies, morbidity and mortality, including the UK introduction of laparoscopic donor surgery. Am J Transplant 2007 Nov;7(11):2532-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17868058
12. Fehrman-Ekholm I, Dunér F, Brink B, et al. No evidence of accelerated loss of kidney function in living kidney donors: results from a cross-sectional follow-up. Transplantation 2001 Aug;72(3):444-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11502974
13. Alcaraz A, Musquera M, Peri Ll, et al. Feasibility of transvaginal natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery-assisted living donor nephrectomy: is kidney vaginal delivery the approach of the future? Eur Urol 2011 Jun;59(6):1019-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21458151

2.3.1.4 ABO-incompatible donors

ABO incompatibility was once a contraindication for renal transplantation, but this is no longer the case because of new techniques (antibody adsorption columns) (1) and new immunosuppressive tools (e.g. anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody, rituximab) (2). This has increased the opportunities for organ donation. Successful transplantation case studies have been reported in living donors against a blood group barrier, with retrospective studies showing similar outcomes to those of blood-group-compatible transplants (3,4). Limitations of the current reports are the small patient numbers, relatively short follow-up periods and differences in treatment protocols (5,6). Further investigation is ongoing (7-10). Current reports indicate that ABO-incompatible transplantation require a more intense and more costly immunosuppressive therapy (11-13) (LE: 3).

Until more long-term data are available, and key issues of the treatment protocol are solved, this procedure remains experimental and should only be performed as part of a scientific trial. Patients should be counselled on the potential risks (more intense immunosuppression, lack of long-term outcome data) and benefits (immediate availability of a living donor). Other transplantation methods should be considered, such as cross-over transplantation, which allows timely transplantation using standard immunosuppressive protocols (LE: 3).

Recommendations	**GR**
ABO-incompatible transplantation is a promising procedure undergoing clinical evaluation.	C
Due to its experimental nature, it should be performed in experienced centres under scientific documentation.	C
Patients should be counselled about potential risks and alternatives.	C

2.3.1.5 Cross-match-positive living-donor kidney transplants

This was previously thought to be a contraindication. However, several pilot studies (11-14) have reported successful transplantation with acceptable short-term results, using extensive antibody elimination strategies (e.g. plasmapheresis), intravenous application of immunoglobulins, and a more intense immunosuppression with antibody induction and the use of B-cell depleting agents (e.g. anti-CD20 antibody rituximab) (LE: 3).

Due to a lack of standardised treatment protocols and the lack of long-term results from larger

cohorts, this procedure remains experimental and should only be performed as part of a scientific trial. Patients should be counselled adequately on the potential risks. Alternative ways for transplanting highly immunised patients (e.g. Eurotransplant Acceptable Missmatch programme, cross-over transplantation) should be considered to allow a timely transplantation of these patients with standard immunosuppressive protocols (15) (LE: 4).

Recommendation	GR
Transplantation of cross-match positive living donors is an experimental procedure, which should only be performed in scientific trials. Patients should be counselled about risks and potential alternatives.	C

2.3.1.6 Living unrelated kidney donation

In many countries in Europe, altruistic non-consanguineous kidney donation is allowed legally, provided checks are made for altruistic motivation and financial gain excluded (15,16). The results are comparable to related living donation (LE: 3).

Recommendation	GR
Living related and unrelated donation should be encouraged within national laws.	B

2.3.1.7 'Non-directed' living-donor transplantation

'Non-directed' living-donor transplantation between an altruistic donor and a recipient unknown to the donor is being performed in a few centres worldwide (17-19). Although controversial, there seem to be no moral or social reasons to exclude such truly altruistic donors (16,20). However, there are ethical and legal concerns about this type of donation (21), which at the moment make it difficult to recommend in these guidelines.

2.3.1.8 Payment to living donors from a central organisation

Although paying living donors to donate organs from a central organisation would be a potential way of increasing organ availability in an era of organ shortage (22), it is generally agreed that the payment of living donors to donate organs is ethically unjustifiable (23,24). It is strongly recommended that all organ donors have adequate lifelong access to medical care for the prevention of renal failure and potential side effects of organ donation (15,16).

The cornerstone of clinical transplantation has been the altruistic donation of kidneys from living relatives. The gift of a transplant is priceless and societies that support transplantation have generally refused to give a monetary value to a transplantable organ or tissue. In Europe, it is illegal to make a payment for living related organs and The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that the body and its parts cannot be the subject of commercial transactions, and all giving and receiving of payments should be prohibited (24) (LE: 4).

Recommendations	GR
Legislation in every European country forbids payment for organs.	C
Donation of an organ should remain a gift of live without any financial impetus.	C

2.1.3.9 References

1. Kumlien G, Ullström L, Losvall A, et al. Clinical experience with a new apheresis filter that specifically depletes ABO blood group antibodies. Transfusion 2006 Sep;46(9):1568-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16965585
2. Becker YT, Samaniego-Picota M, Sollinger HW. The emerging role of rituximab in organ transplantation. Transpl Int 2006 Aug;19(8):621-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16827678
3. Ichimaru N, Takahara S. Japan's experience with living-donor kidney transplantation across ABO barriers. Nat Clin Pract Nephrol 2008 Dec;4(12):682-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18941430
4. Genberg H, Kumlien G, Wennberg L, et al. ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation using antigenspecific immunoadsorption and rituximab: a 3-year follow-up. Transplantation 2008 Jun;85(12):1745-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18580466

5. Thielke J, Kaplan B, Benedetti E. The role of ABO-incompatible living donors in kidney transplantation: state of the art. Semin Nephrol 2007 Jul;27(4):408-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17616273
6. Gloor JM, Stegall MD. ABO incompatible kidney transplantation. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2007 Nov;16(6):529-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18089966
7. Wilpert J, Geyer M, Pisarski P, et al. On-demand strategy as an alternative to conventionally scheduled post-transplant immunoadsorptions after ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 Oct;22(10):3048-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17623716
8. Tydén G, Donauer J, Wadström J, et al. Implementation of a protocol for ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation--a three-center experience with 60 consecutive transplantations. Transplantation 2007 May 15;83(9):1153-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17496528
9. Wilpert J, Geyer M, Teschner S, et al. ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation-proposal of an intensified apheresis strategy for patients with high initial isoagglutinine titers.
J Clin Apher 2007;22(6):314-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18095303
10. Tanabe K. Double-filtration plasmapheresis. Transplantation 2007;84(12 Suppl):S30-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18162985
11. Grim SA, Pham T, Thielke J, et al. Infectious complications associated with the use of rituximab for ABO-incompatible and positive cross-match renal transplant recipients.
Clin Transplant 2007 Sep-Oct;21(5):628-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17845637
12. Warren DS, Zachary AA, Sonnenday CJ, et al. Successful renal transplantation across simultaneous ABO incompatible and positive crossmatch barriers. Am J Transplant 2004 Apr;4(4):561-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15023148
13. Dean PG, Gloor JM, Stegall MD. Conquering absolute contraindications to transplantation: positive-crossmatch and ABO-incompatible kidney transplantation. Surgery 2005 Mar;137(3):269-73.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15746773
14. West-Thielke P, Herren H, Thielke J, et al. Results of positive cross-match transplantation in African American renal transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2008 Feb;8(2):348-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18190659
15. Delmonico F; Council of the Transplantation Society. A Report of the Amsterdam Forum On the Care of the Live Kidney Donor: Data and Medical Guidelines.
Transplantation 2005 Mar;79(6 Suppl):S53-S66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15785361
16. Ethics Committee of the Transplantation Society. The consensus statement of the Amsterdam Forum on the Care of the Live Kidney Donor. Transplantation 2004 Aug;78(4):491-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15446304
17. Lennerling A, Fehrman-Ekholm I, Nordén G. Nondirected living kidney donation: experiences in a Swedish Transplant Centre. Clin Transplant 2008 May-Jun;22(3):304-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499902
18. Segev DL, Montgomery RA. Regional and racial disparities in the use of live non-directed kidney donors. Am J Transplant 2008 May;8(5):1051-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18416741
19. Jendrisak MD, Hong B, Shenoy S, et al. Altruistic living donors: evaluation for nondirected kidney or liver donation. Am J Transplant 2006 Jan;6(1):115-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16433765
20. Mueller PS, Case EJ, Hook CC. Responding to offers of altruistic living unrelated kidney donation by group associations: an ethical analysis. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Jul;22(3):200-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631879
21. Hilhorst MT, Kranenburg LW, Zuidema W, et al. Altruistic living kidney donation challenges psychosocial research and policy: a response to previous articles.
Transplantation 2005 Jun;79(11):1470-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15940033
22. Delmonico FL, Dew MA. Living donor kidney transplantation in a global environment.
Kidney Int 2007 Apr;71(7):608-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17290291

23. International Summit on Transplant Tourism and Organ Trafficking. The Declaration of Istanbul on organ trafficking and transplant tourism. Kidney Int 2008 Oct;74(7):854-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18810784
24. World Health Assembly Resolution 57.18. Human organ and tissue transplantation, 22 May 2004. http://www.who.int/gb/ebwha/pdf_files/WHA57/A57_R18-en.pdf

*2.3.2 **Ethical ways of showing appreciation for organ donation***

2.3.2.1 Donor 'medal of honour'

Organ procurement organisations could have ceremonies which recognise and honour organ donation. A donor 'medal of honour', given by a top official of a country, would effectively express appreciation and gratitude on behalf of the whole community to the living donors and families of deceased donors (1,2). Policymakers, ethicists and the transplant community cannot agree on whether giving benefits to the families of organ donors would increase organ availability (3) (LE: 4). Because of the lack of evidence, no general recommendation can be made on whether or not to provide incentives for living donors or families of deceased donors.

*2.3.3 **Organisational ways to encourage organ donation***

2.3.3.1 Cross-over transplantation or paired organ exchange

A cross-over renal transplantation or a paired kidney exchange transplant is an exchange between two or more couples, who are prevented by ABO incompatibility or positive cross-match from donating their kidneys to their preferred recipients. The problem may be solved by exchanging the living donor kidneys between pairs of couples to achieve a cross-match negative or ABO-compatible combination.

The inclusion criteria should favour the exchange of equivalent kidneys in size and age. A programme of cross-over kidney transplantation allows an exchange of organs between two living donors (4), or in some countries, from one living donor and one deceased donor (5). By using paired kidney exchange, the recipients are able to benefit from living donation. Paired kidney exchange also reduces the duration of dialysis before transplantation and expands the pool of living donors (6). Graft survival rates of paired kidney exchange are similar to directed, compatible live donor transplants (7) (LE: 3).

Recommendation	**GR**
Paired kidney exchange and cross-over renal transplantation if permitted by national law is a way of increasing the number of kidney transplants.	C

2.3.3.2 Medical leave for organ donation

No-one should have to incur a personal expense for donating an organ (8). Many countries legally provide 30-days' paid medical leave to all employees who donate an organ for transplantation (9). The American Society of Transplantation has recommended living donors should be given leave from employment similar to parental leave granted for a new baby (LE: 3).

Recommendations	**GR**
The health and well-being of living donors should be monitored in a follow-up register to document any long-term medical problems due to donation.	B
There should be a national insurance plan that provides life and disability insurance for all living donors.	B

2.3.4 References

1. H.R. 708. Gift of life Congressional Medal Act of 2001 (U.S. Rep. P. Srak, Calif.).
2. S. 235. Gift of life Congressional Medal Act of 2001 (U.S. Sen. W. Frist, Tenn.).
3. Bryce CL, Siminoff LA, Ubel PA, et al. Do incentives matter? Providing benefits to families of organ donors. Am J Transplant 2005 Dec;5(12):2999-3008. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16303016
4. Ross LF, Rubin DT, Siegler M, et al. Ethics of a paired-kidney-exchange-program. N Engl J Med 1997 Jun;336(24):1752-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9180096
5. Delmonico FL, Morrissey PE, Lipkowitz GS, et al. Donor kidney exchanges. Am J Transplant 2004 Oct;4(10):1628-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15367217

6. de Klerk M, Witvliet MD, Haase-Kromwijk BJ, et al. A highly efficient living donor kidney exchange program for both blood type and crossmatch incompatible donor-recipient combinations. Transplantation 2006 Dec;82(12):1616-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17198246
7. Montgomery RA, Zachary AA, Ratner LE, et al. Clinical results from transplanting incompatible live kidney donor/recipient pairs using kidney paired donation. JAMA 2005 Oct;294(13):1655-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16204665
8. Abecassis M, Adams M, Adams P, et al; The Live Organ Donor Consensus Group. Consensus statement on the live organ donor. JAMA 2000 Dec;284(22):2919-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11187711
9. Organ Donor Leave Act, H.R. 457, Pub. L. No. 106-56. http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-106publ56/pdf/PLAW-106publ56.pdf

2.4 Kidney donor selection and refusal criteria

*2.4.1 **Introduction***

A diagnosis of brain death is required in a comatose subject who may potentially be a deceased organ donor. The potential donor must be evaluated for any transmissible pathological condition and the quality of any organ(s) being considered for transplantation.

The short-term results of transplants with kidneys from donors over 65 years old are almost similar to those with younger organs. However, long-term graft survival is lower (1). In addition, the main physiological risk factor in 'older' kidneys is a prolonged cold ischaemia time (2,3). In keeping with these observations, the modern definition of a suitable donor places less emphasis on age and more on the physical condition of the donor, especially of the organ to be donated. The aim is to reduce the possibility of discarding usable organs. Thus, there are now no absolute age limits to donation. However, a short ischaemia time is mandatory, as well as careful donor selection, particularly because older donors have more co-morbidity. There is a similar trend towards extending the upper age donation limit in living donors to over 55 years old (4).

*2.4.2 **Infections***

The potential donor must be checked for infectious diseases (Table 6):

Table 6: Infections to be checked for in potential donor

Human immunodeficiency virus-1, -2 (HIV-1, HIV-2)
Hepatis C (HCV)
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), anti-HBc; acute hepatitis (liver enzymes)
Cytomegalovirus (CMV)
Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), only in paediatric recipients
Active syphilis
Viral infection, sepsis, tuberculosis, infections of unknown aetiology
Family history of (or clinical signs that may be caused by) Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease

There is a high risk of HIV transmission from potential donors with suspected intravenous drug abuse. In addition, serology tests during the incubation period of HIV (2 months) or hepatitis (up to 6 months) may be negative, while large amounts of fluids administered during a resuscitation attempt can result in a normal serology due to dilution effects (5). Serological tests must therefore be repeated and additional tests done (e.g. polymerase chain reaction) to rule out infection.

*2.4.3 **Special exceptions for infections***

Different circumstances apply when an organ recipient is already infected with HIV or hepatitis (Table 7).

Table 7: Exceptions for organ recipients who already have infections

HCV-positive donor
In an HCV-positive recipient, transplant is allowed following informed consent.
In an HCV-negative recipient, there is a high risk of disease transmission. However, transplant may be possible in emergency situations following informed consent.
HBsAg-positive donor

In an HBsAg-positive recipient (if HDV antigen is negative), transplant is allowed after informed consent.
In an HBsAg-negative recipient with high anti-HBs antibody titre and HBc positivity, transplant is allowed after informed consent.
In an HBsAg-negative recipient with intermediate/high anti-HBs antibody titre alone (Hbc-antibody negative), transplantation may carry a higher risk but is allowed after informed consent.
In an HBsAg-negative recipient with undetectable anti-Hbs antibody, transplant is allowed only in a life-saving situation, when HDV antigen is negative and following informed consent.
HBc-antibody-positive donor
In liver transplantation, there is a high risk (50%) of transmitting hepatitis B from an anti-HBc antibody-positive donor to the recipient. In this situation, liver transplantation is allowed after informed consent. Kidneys, heart and lungs carry a low, but not absent, risk of hepatitis B transmission, so kidney transplant is allowed in an HBsAg-positive recipient, or an HBsAg-negative recipient with anti-HBs antibody titre ≥10 mIU/mL, following informed consent.
In an HBsAg-negative recipient with no anti-HBsAg antibody, only life-saving transplants are allowed, after informed consent.

*2.4.4 **Malignant tumours***

A previous history of malignancy is not usually a contraindication for organ donation. However, there are some absolute contraindications that make a donor unsuitable for transplant. These are active cancer or a history of metastatic cancer (with a few exceptions, such as testicular cancer) and cancers with high recurrence rates, such as advanced breast carcinoma, melanoma, leukaemia, or lymphoma. In addition, when a potential donor has experienced a brain haemorrhage of unknown aetiology, metastasis must be excluded as a cause of intracranial bleeding. For example, the serum level of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) must be measured to exclude chorioncarcinoma in female donors.

With other cancers, if less than 10 years has elapsed since completion of treatment, a careful risk-benefit assessment must be done of the risk of disease transmission versus mortality on the waiting list. The donor shortage has led to many transplant programmes accepting donors after only 5 years' absence of recurrent malignancy. So far, only a low incidence of donor-transmitted malignancies has been observed (6). Successful renal transplants have been performed with kidneys affected by small, low-grade renal carcinomas that were completely excised. Recipients of organs from donors with a history of malignancy must be informed and carefully monitored (7).

*2.4.5 **Special exceptions for malignant tumours***

For special exceptions in malignant tumours, see Section 8.1.

*2.4.6 **Vascular conditions and renal function***

Important risk factors for organ failure are a prolonged history of diabetes mellitus or serious hypertension with retinal vascular damage. Factors for excluding potential donors or for considering a donor as a single- rather than a multi-organ donor include:

- previous myocardial infarction;
- coronary bypass and angina;
- severe systemic vascular disease;;
- events of long-lasting hypotension;
- oliguria;
- long-lasting intensive care stay.

A donor's renal function should be evaluated at admission using creatinine clearance (Cockcroft-Gault formula), which corrects the serum creatinine value for age, body weight, and sex (8). The urinary tract can also be assessed by 24-h proteinuria and ultrasound kidney imaging, particularly in elderly donors. In many transplant centres, a calculated creatinine clearance level of 50 mL/min is at the lower range for kidneys usable for two recipients, independent of the histology of the organ, but according to the history of the donor, while other centres evaluate glomerular sclerosis and arteriolar sclerosis from renal biopsy (9).

Acute renal failure is not itself a contraindication. The kidneys may be used after careful assessment (LE: 3).

*2.4.7 **Marginal donors***

The following criteria need to be considered in a marginal organ (10) (LE: 3):

- Age over 70 years without other risk factors.
- Age between 60 and 70 years, with a history of diabetes mellitus, hypertension, clinical proteinuria up

to 1 g/24 h, or retinal vascular changes.

- Calculated creatinine clearance of 50 mL/min – the organs are still valuable for a single graft.
- Calculated creatinine clearance < 50 mL/min – the organs should be used as dual graft or discarded if histologically abnormal.
- Approximately 5-20% of glomerulosclerosis at biopsy with at least 25 glomeruli taken from both kidneys – the organs are still valuable for a single or double graft.
- More than 20% glomerulosclerosis – an individual decision has to be made based on renal function.

The true clinical meaning of each criterion is unknown because none of them have been rigorously validated and opinions differ over their individual value, as for example with pre-transplant renal biopsy (11,12).

*2.4.8 **One graft or two grafts per recipient***

The rationale for dual marginal kidney transplantation is based on two conflicting concepts. Firstly, kidneys with a small nephron mass undergo hyperfiltration and glomerular hypertension, which causes progressive glomerulosclerosis (13). A single marginal kidney has a reduced renal mass and a suboptimal number of nephrons, which are further reduced by cold ischaemia time, transplant trauma, and the potential nephrotoxicity of immunosuppressive therapy. Simultaneous transplantation of both kidneys to the same recipient may increase nephron mass and prevent kidney damage.

Secondly, marginal kidneys have a functional reserve only verifiable after transplantation. In addition, the glomerular filtration rate of a transplanted kidney often increases post transplant (14-16). Dual transplantation is redundant because it shortens the organ pool.

These two opposing concepts would seem to suggest that kidneys judged unsuitable based on function or histology should either both be transplanted into a single recipient or both be discarded (17). However, a prospective multicentre study (18) concluded that double-kidney transplants are safe, well tolerated, and result in no more surgical complications than single-graft operations.

To date, the surgical technique for dual renal grafting has not been standardised (19,20) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	**GR**
Any brain death comatose subject should be considered a potential organ donor, without age limits.	C
Consensus for organ harvesting should be obtained from relatives or significant others according to local law and policies. Authorisation for explantation by the donor's close relatives is always recommended, even if local legislation on organ donation presumes consent: - Contact between relatives and a well-trained, sensitive professional is very important in establishing favourable public opinion on organ donation. - Individuals who objected to donation during life must always be excluded.	
Any donor organ affected by a potentially transmittable pathology (infections, neoplasias) must be carefully evaluated considering the risk-benefit ratio for the recipient.	B
A good-quality organ must be guaranteed to the recipient and every transplant centre must establish its own guidelines on organ acceptability. Organs from marginal donors can only be used after thorough assessment. The recipients need to be informed and must confirm their acceptance.	C

*2.4.9 **References***

1. Alexander JW, Bennett LE, Breen TJ. Effect of donor age on outcome of kidney transplantation. A two-year analysis of transplants reported to the United Network for Organ Sharing Registry. Transplantation 1994 Mar;57(6):871-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8154034
2. Wyner LM, McElroy JB, Hodge EE, et al. Use of kidneys from older cadaver donors for renal transplantation. Urology 1993 Feb;41(2):107-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8497979
3. Cicciarelli J, Iwaki Y, Mendez R. The influence of donor age on kidney graft survival in the 1990s. Clin Transpl 1999:335-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11038652
4. Kerr SR, Gillingham KJ, Johnson EM, et al. Living donors > 55 years: to use or not to use? Transplantation 1999 Apr;67(7):999-1004. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10221484
5. Scheinkestel CD, Tuxen DV, Cooper DJ, et al. Medical management of the (potential) organ donor. Anaesth Intensive Care 1995 Feb;23(1):51-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7778748

6. Taioli E, Mattucci DA, Palmieri S, et al. A population-based study of cancer incidence in solid organ transplants from donors at various risk of neoplasia. Transplantation 2007 Jan;83(1):13-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17220783
7. Penn I. Precautions to be taken to prevent transmission of neoplastic diseases in the grafting process. In: *Organ and Tissue Transplantation in the European Union*. London: Graham and Trotman, 1994: 33-41.
8. Cockcroft DW, Gault MH. Prediction of creatinine clearance from serum creatinine. Nephron 1976; 16(1):31-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1244564
9. Karpinski J, Lajoie G, Cattran D, et al. Outcome of kidney transplantation from high-risk donors is determined by both structure and function. Transplantation 1999 Apr;67(8):1162-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10232568
10. European best practice guidelines for renal transplantation (part 1). Transplantation Section II: Evaluation and selection of donors. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2000;15(Suppl 7):39-51. http://www.ndteducational.org/images/Renal%20Transplantation%201%20Section%20II.pdf
11. Andrés A, Herrero JC, Morales E, et al. The double or single renal graft depending on the percentage of glomerulosclerosis in the preimplant biopsy reduces the number of discarded kidneys from donors older than 60 years. Transplant Proc 1999 Sep;31(6):2285-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10500580
12. Pokorná E, Vitko S, Chadimová M, et al. Proportion of glomerulosclerosis in procurement wedge renal biopsy cannot alone discriminate for acceptance of marginal donors. Transplantation 2000 Jan;69(1):36-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10653377
13. Brenner BM, Cohen RA, Milford EL. In renal transplantation, one size may not fit all. J Am Soc Nephrol 1992 Aug;3(2):162-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1391717
14. Halloran PF, Melk A, Barth C. Rethinking chronic allograft nephropathy: the concept of accelerated senescence. J Am Soc Nephrol 1999 Jan;10(1):167-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9890324
15. Berardinelli L, Beretta C, Raiteri M, et al. Long-term results of 211 single necrokidney transplantations from extreme-age donors: why dual allograft? Transplant Proc 2001 Nov-Dec;33(7-8):3774-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11750606
16. Beckurts UT, Stippel D, Pollok M, et al. Single-centre experience with the 'old for old' program for renal transplantation. Transplant Proc 2001 Nov-Dec;33(7-8):3779-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11750608
17. Alfrey EJ, Lee CM, Scandling JD, et al. Expanded criteria for donor kidneys: an update on outcome in single versus dual kidney transplants. Transplant Proc 1997 Dec;29(8):3671-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9414884
18. Remuzzi G, Grinyò J, Ruggenenti P, et al. Early experience with dual kidney transplantation in adults using expanded donor criteria. Double Kidney Transplant Group (DKG). J Am Soc Nephrol 1999 Dec;10(12):2591-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10589699
19. Dietl KH, Wolters H, Marschall B, et al. Cadaveric 'two-in-one' kidney transplantation from marginal donors: experience of 26 cases after 3 years. Transplantation 2000 Sep;70(5):790-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11003359
20. Lu AD, Carter JT, Weinstein RJ, et al. Excellent outcome in recipients of dual kidney transplants: a report of the first 50 dual kidney transplants at Stanford University. Arch Surg 1999 Sep;134(9):971-5, discussion 975-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10487592

2.5 Explantation technique

*2.5.1 **Technique of deceased donor organ recovery***

Each solid organ should be procured as quickly as possible to minimise ischaemic injury. Removal of the heart, lungs, liver, and pancreas (Table 8) usually takes place before kidney retrieval (Table 9) (1-10) (LE: 3). Continuous machine perfusion reduces injuries due to ischaemia or reperfusion and improves the immediate post-operative graft outcome (8-10) (LE: 3).

Table 8: Important considerations during removal of heart, lungs, liver, and pancreas

Infuse 3L of University of Wisconsin (UW) solution into the aorta before organ recovery.
Open Gerota's fascia to expose the kidneys for surface cooling. While the heart is being removed and the cold perfusate is being infused, place ice slush into the abdominal cavity to provide surface cooling for the liver, kidneys, and pancreas.
After the heart is removed and the liver is to be retrieved, careful attention should be given to ensure the following: • Do not extend the aortic cannula beyond the ostia of the renal arteries. This will avoid the risk of inadequate flushing of the kidneys, leading to unnecessary and harmful warm ischaemia. • If the superior mesenteric artery is not being taken along the coeliac artery for the liver, the upper portion of the remaining aorta can be reclamped to allow continued perfusion of the kidneys and cooling during removal of the liver. • If the superior mesenteric artery is taken with the liver and removed, it may not be possible to place a curved forceps in a tangential manner on the remaining segment of aorta. Although this would allow continued flushing of the kidneys, there is a risk of occluding the renal artery orifices, especially on the right side.
During transection of the vena cava between the liver and the kidneys, take care to avoid injury to the right renal vein. The right renal vein can often extend superiorly before entering the vena cava and may be accidentally transected. Because a segment of infrahepatic vena cava is needed in liver transplantation, the kidney retrieval team must be instructed to leave an optimal amount of venal caval cuff to go with the liver to prevent injury to the right renal vein.
The pancreas, if being retrieved, should be removed before the kidney. Again, injury to the left renal artery or vein can occur while the pancreas is dissected. Often the pancreas, and occasionally the kidneys, are recovered en bloc with the liver and then separated on the back table.
It is unnecessary to perform extensive kidney mobilisation prior to kidney removal, especially in multiple organ recovery. Such retroperitoneal dissection may cause accidental injury to aberrant renal arteries, so causing incomplete perfusion and warm ischaemia of the kidneys (2-4) (LE: 2a).

Table 9: Important considerations in kidney retrieval

Dissection is carried cephalad and kept as far posterior as possible; the line of dissection is maintained at the level of the paraspinal muscles. Gerota's fascia is kept attached to the kidneys. At the superior poles of the kidneys, the adrenal glands are left intact attached to the kidneys. The kidneys are removed en bloc without identification of the hilar structures.
On the back table, care must be taken to identify aberrant renal arteries, which may originate from the iliac arteries or distal or superior aorta. The aortic segment is left intact. The ureters are examined for length, numbers, and size.
It is useful to rewash each kidney until the effluent is free of blood before packaging.
If the liver is not to be recovered, a double balloon perfusion cannula can be placed in the aorta for selective renal perfusion and a venting catheter is inserted into the lower vena cava to allow venous blood to be washed out.
Dissection of the kidneys can then proceed with mobilisation of the right colon, exposing the right kidney, the inferior vena cava, and lower aorta. Identification and ligation of the inferior mesenteric artery and vein are performed, and the splanchnic nerves are divided, allowing mobilisation of the left mesocolon and exposure of the left kidney. The coeliac axis is identified, ligated and divided.
Mass clamping of the hepatoduodenal ligament can be performed to minimise flushing of the liver. In a donor < 3-4 years, the surgeon must make sure the aortic cannula does not occlude the renal artery orifices.

Improvements in techniques for harvesting organs from non-heart-beating donors (NBHDs) has allowed the use of organs that would otherwise not have been considered for transplantation. Reports of the satisfactory function of organs retrieved in this manner have been followed by the development of adequate methods of aortic infusion techniques (11-13). Non-heart-beating donors accounted for 11,06% in EUROTRANSPLANT and for 6,5% in USA (12-18).

With the development of multiple organ recovery techniques (19), good co-ordination and co-operation between the various surgical teams involved are essential for the successful retrieval of

transplantable organs (2,19-21). Logistics and programming of organ explantation should routinely be done by the local transplant coordinator.

Recommendations	GR
Kidneys are the last organs to be recovered in multiple organ recovery. Appropriate placement of the aortic cannula for the cold 'in-situ' flush is essential.	C
After retrieval of the thoracic organs and liver, and if the pancreas is to be removed, the liver and pancreas should be recovered en bloc and separated on the back table.	B
In multiple organ recovery, it is essential there is good co-ordination and co-operation between the surgical teams.	C

*2.5.2 **The living donor***

At present, 20% in EUROTRANSPLANT and 40% in USA of all kidney transplants are performed with living donors (14,16) (LE: 2a). In countries with low deceased donor rates, over 75% of kidney transplants are with living donors (22).

Most living donors are family members, but there is an increasing number of genetically unrelated donors, who are 'emotionally related', such as spouses or friends. In 2005, in EUROTRANSPLANT, nearly 50% of living donors were not genetically related (42.2%). In the USA, 37.2% were unrelated living donors (14,16) (LE: 2a).

Ethical guidelines mandate that the living donors have not been coerced and not been paid for their donation. Living donation should be considered a gift of extraordinary value and should be facilitated wherever a suitable donor is available (Table 10) (23-26) (LE: 2b).

Table 10: Advantages of living donation

Better results (both long- and short-term) compared to deceased donor grafts
Consistent early function and easier management
Avoidance of long waiting time for transplantation
Less aggressive immunosuppressive regimens
Emotional gain to donor
Global increase of the kidney transplant rate

2.5.2.1 Evaluation

Evaluation of a potential donor may be performed by an independent physician and consists of a complete history and physical examination, routine laboratory testing, and serological evaluation for EBV, herpes virus, CMV, HIV, HCV, and hepatitis B virus (HBV). Routine evaluation should also include urinalysis and culture, together with 24-h urine collection for creatinine clearance and protein excretion. A borderline hypertensive blood pressure should be measured on at least three, and as many as 10, separate occasions.
Renal angiography is indicated only if spiral computed tomography (CT) scan with three-dimensional reconstruction or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) angiography with reconstruction are not available.

Donors are unsuitable for a variety of reasons (Table 11). Potential donors for siblings with diabetes should routinely undergo a 5-h glucose tolerance test and the 24-h urine specimen must be free of proteinuria. Unexplained microscopic haematuria may indicate underlying renal disease. A history of thromboembolism or thrombophlebitis places a potential donor at increased risk of pulmonary embolism and contraindicates donation, as does advanced heart disease or a history of malignant neoplasia. Obesity is a relative contraindication for any potential donor > 30% above ideal body weight.

Table 11: Exclusion criteria for living donors

Absolute contraindications
Age < 18 years
Uncontrolled hypertension
Diabetes mellitus
Proteinuria (> 300 mg/24 h)
Abnormal GFR for age

Microscopic haematuria
High risk of thromboembolism
Medically significant illness (chronic lung disease, recent malignant tumour, heart disease)
History of bilateral kidney stones
HIV positive
Relative contraindications
Active chronic infection (e.g. tuberculosis, hepatitis B/C, parasites)
Obesity
Psychiatric disorders

GFR = glomerular filtration rate; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus.

Patients with psychiatric disorders should be fully evaluated by a psychiatrist to establish that the donor understands and agrees to the procedure.

2.5.2.2 Choice of kidney

If examination of the donor's vascular supply and drainage system reveals an abnormality, it must be decided whether the risks imposed on the donor or the recipient are too great. When one kidney is smaller or has a minor abnormality, the donor should always be left with the 'better' kidney.

2.5.2.3 Pre-operative management

Pre-operative assessment by the anaesthesiologist and the pain management team is mandatory.

2.5.2.4 Surgical alternatives in live-donor nephrectomy

There are several ways of harvesting kidneys from living donors (Table 12) (11-13,21,27-35). The method chosen will depend on the surgeon's experience and preferred choice of operation.

Table 12: Approaches for harvesting kidneys from living donors

Approach	Description
Classic transperitoneal	Through a midline or through a left or right subcostal incision.
Sub- or supra-costal extraperitoneal	Can be either left- or right-sided.
Dorsal lumbar	Perform incision either underneath the 12th rib, resecting the 12th rib, or above the 12th rib (extraperitoneal, extrapleural).
Laparoscopic	Can be transperitoneal or retroperitoneoscopic. The transperitoneal approach is more common in the USA and Scandinavia.

The operative stages are similar to those in transperitoneal nephrectomy performed for malignant or benign conditions of the kidney. In 2.3% of cases, concomitant splenectomy is needed (11-13,21,28-35), due to injuries of the spleen that occur during colon dissection. In addition, the transperitoneal approach is accompanied by a significantly higher rate of intestinal complications, such as ileus (functional or even obstructive).

Removal of the left kidney from a living donor is recommended because of the longer length of the left renal vein (36-38).

Before starting the incision, the donor's diuresis is increased, usually by giving mannitol, 25 g. Arterial spasm may be prevented with externally applied papaverine (39).

Laparoscopic kidney removal (Table 13) is a less traumatic technique, entails less pain, a shorter hospital stay and may encourage more people to consider donation.

Table 13: Special considerations during a laparoscopic procedure

Patient's preparation	During organ harvesting, especially during dissection of the renal pedicle, the patient requires appropriate fluids and a mannitol infusion to maximise renal function during surgery and after transplantation (15-17,40,41).
Patient's position on the operative table	Place the patient on the operative table in a left or right position with the kidney bridge. The left kidney is preferred for laparoscopic removal because it has a longer renal vein. On the right side, the liver may make dissection difficult in a transperitoneal approach.

Transperitoneal laparoscopic approach	The transperitoneal approach offers more working space. The kidney is approached by dissecting the colon and peritoneum on different lengths. The approach to the renal artery is more complicated due to its position behind the renal vein. However, after detachment from vascular connections, the kidney can be more easily extracted through a lower umbilical incision.
Retroperitoneoscopic approach	The retroperitoneal approach allows an easy, initial identification of the renal artery and a direct approach to the branches of renal vein. Its main drawback is the limited space for manoeuvre, which also makes it difficult to use endobags for a quick kidney extraction.

2.5.2.5 Post-operative care

Adequate post-operative analgesia is crucial in preventing post-operative complications, such as atelectasis and pneumonia (20,21). Antibiotic prophylaxis should also be given. Subcutaneous heparin, the continuous use of leg stockings and sequential compression devices should be prescribed to prevent deep venous thrombosis of the lower limbs. Most patients tolerate oral feeding by post-operative day 2 or 3, and the donor can be discharged between post-operative days 2 to 6. Renal function should be assessed periodically after operation. Although donors experience a 25% increase in serum creatinine level, the creatinine level should return to near baseline within 3 months.

There are no convincing data to suggest that living donors are at increased long-term risk because of kidney donation. Nevertheless, ongoing periodic long-term follow-up evaluation is recommended for donors. This can be performed by the donor's personal physician (14-17,40-43) (LE: 2a).

Recommendations	**GR**
The use of living donors has been associated with higher success rates than seen with deceased donor donation. Living donation allows some patients to avoid long waiting times and even dialysis.	B
An independent assessment of the donor's renal function by a nephrologist or a specialised team is mandatory in all cases.	B
It is advisable to obtain a psychiatric or independent medical evaluation of the donor's motivation, fitness, and their ability to understand the risks of the operation.	B
It is the surgeon's responsibility to ensure that the donor is medically, as well as psychologically, suitable for the procedure; the donated organ is healthy; and the expectation of success in the recipient is reasonable.	B
The donor should always be left with the 'better' kidney. Kidney removal through a transperitoneal approach has a higher number of splenic and intestinal complications compared with other surgical alternatives.	B
Open-donor nephrectomy should be performed by an extraperitoneal approach through a subcostal or dorsal lumbotomy incision.	B
Laparoscopic donor nephrectomy (either trans- or retro-peritoneal) should only be performed by those trained in the procedure.	B
Hand-assisted laparoscopic donor nephrectomy minimises warm ischaemia time compared to classic laparoscopic procedures.	B

2.5.3 ***References***

1. Brasile L, Stubenitsky BM, Booster MH, et al. Overcoming severe renal ischemia: the role of ex vivo warm perfusion. Transplantation 2002 May;73(6):897-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11923688
2. Boggi U, Vistoli F, Del Chiaro M, et al. A simplified technique for the en bloc procurement of abdominal organs that is suitable for pancreas and small-bowel transplantation. Surgery 2004 Jun;135(6):629-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15179369
3. Dalle Valle R, Capocasale E, Mazzoni MP, et al. Pancreas procurement technique. Lessons learned from an initial experience. Acta Biomed 2006 Dec;77(3):152-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17312985

4. Frilling A. [Standards of visceral organ procurement.] Zentralbl Chir 2003 Oct;128(10):804-15. [Article in German]
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14763454
5. Hauet T, Han Z, Doucet C, et al. A modified University of Wisconsin preservation solution with high-Na+ low-K+ content reduces reperfusion injury of the pig kidney graft. Transplantation 2003 Jul;76(1):18-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12865781
6. Nunes P, Mota A, Figueiredo A, et al. Efficacy of renal preservation: comparative study of Celsior and University of Wisconsin solutions. Transplant Proc 2007 Oct;39(8):2478-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17954152
7. Opelz G, Döhler B. Multicenter analysis of kidney preservation. Transplantation 2007 Feb;83(3): 247-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17297393
8. Balupuri S, Strong A, Hoernich N, et al. Machine perfusion for kidneys: how to do it at minimal cost. Transpl Int 2001;14(2):103-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11370162
9. Kwiatkowski A, Wszola M, Kosieradzki M, et al. Machine perfusion preservation improves renal allograft survival. Am J Transplant 2007 Aug;7(8):1942-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17617857
10. Maathuis MH, Manekeller S, van der Plaats A, et al. Improved kidney graft function after preservation using a novel hypothermic machine perfusion device. Ann Surg 2007 Dec;246(6):982-8; discussion 989-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18043100
11. Sanni AO, Wilson CH, Wyrley-Birch H, et al. Non-heart-beating kidney transplantation: 6-year outcomes. Transplant Proc 2006 Dec;38(10):3396-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17175282
12. Snoeijs MG, Dekkers AJ, Buurman WA, et al. In situ preservation of kidneys from donors after cardiac death: results and complications. Ann Surg 2007 Nov;246(5):844-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17968178
13. Gok MA, Bhatti AA, Asher J, et al. The effect of inadequate in situ perfusion in the non heart-beating donor. Transpl Int 2005 Oct;18(10):1142-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16162100
14. Oosterlee A, Rahmel A, van Zwet W (eds). Annual report 2005. Eurotransplant International Foundation, Leiden: 2005.
http://www.eurotransplant.org/cms/mediaobject.php?file=ar_2005.pdf
15. Dittrich S, Groneberg DA, von Loeper J, et al. Influence of cold storage on renal ischemia reperfusion injury after non-heart-beating donor explantation. Nephron Exp Nephrol 2004;96(3):e97-102.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15056986
16. Malaise J, Van Deynse D, Dumont V, et al. Non-heart-beating donor, 10-year experience in a Belgian transplant center. Transplant Proc 2007 Oct;39(8):2578-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17954180
17. Kootstra G, Daemen JH, Oomen AP. Categories of non-heart beating donors. Transplant Proc 1995 Oct;27(5):2893-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7482956
18. Gok MA, Asher JF, Shenton BK, et al. Graft function after kidney transplantation from non-heartbeating donors according to Maastricht category. J Urol 2004 Dec;172(6 Pt 1):2331-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15538260
19. Spital A, Jacobs CL. The beauty of the gift: the wonder of living organ donation. Clin Transplant 2007 Jul-Aug;21(4):435-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17645701
20. Lucan M (ed). [Textbook of surgical urologic techniques.] Bucharest: Infomedica, 2001:528-36. [Article in Romanian]
21. Signori S, Boggi U, Vistoli F, et al. Regional procurement team for abdominal organs. Transplant Proc 2004 Apr;36(3):435-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15110547
22. Lucan M. Five years of single-center experience with paired kidney exchange transplantation. Transplant Proc 2007 Jun;39(5):1371-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17580142

23. Abouna GM. Ethical issues in organ and tissue transplantation. Exp Clin Transplant 2003 Dec;1(2): 125-38.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15859919
24. Banasik M. Living donor transplantation–the real gift of life. Procurement and the ethical assessment. Ann Transplant 2006;11(1):4-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17025022
25. Kuss R, Bourget P. *An illustrated history of organ transplantation: the great adventure of the century*. Rueil-Malmaison, France: Laboratoires Sandoz, 1992.
26. Moritsugu KP. Organ donation: the gift of life. J Am Diet Assoc 2007 Jan;107(1):15.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17197259
27. Simforoosh N, Bassiri A, Ziaee SA, et al. Laparoscopic versus open live donor nephrectomy: the first randomized clinical trial. Transplant Proc 2003 Nov;35(7):2553-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14612012
28. Brown SL, Biehl TR, Rawlins MC, et al. Laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy: a comparison of the conventional open approach. J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):766-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176463
29. Buell JF, Edye M, Johnson M, et al. Are concerns over right laparoscopic donor nephrectomy unwarranted? Ann Surg 2001 May;233(5):645-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11323503
30. El-Galley R, Hood N, Young CJ, et al. Donor nephrectomy: a comparison of techniques and results of open, hand assisted and full laparoscopic nephrectomy. J Urol 2004 Jan;171(1):40-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14665839
31. Ng CS, Abreu SC, Abou El-Fettouh HI, et al. Right retroperitoneal versus left transperitoneal laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy. Urology 2004 May;63(5):857-61.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134965
32. Handschin AE, Weber M, Demartines N, et al. Laparoscopic donor nephrectomy. Br J Surg 2003 Nov;90(11):1323-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14598409
33. Ratner LE, Montgomery RA, and Kavoussi LR. Laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy: a review of the first 5 years. Urol Clin North Am 2001 Nov;28(4):709-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11791488
34. Ruiz-Deya G, Cheng S, Palmer E, et al. Open donor, laparoscopic donor and hand assisted laparoscopic donor nephrectomy: a comparison of outcomes. J Urol 2001 Oct;166(4); discussion 1273-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547056
35. Dalla Valle R, Mazzoni MP, Capocasale E, et al. Laparoscopic donor nephrectomy: short learning curve. Transplant Proc 2006 May;38(4):1001-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16757244
36. Berardinelli L. Technical problems in living donor transplantation. Transplant Proc 2005 Jul-Aug; 37(6):2449-50.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16182704
37. Desai MR, Ganpule AP, Gupta R, et al. Outcome of renal transplantation with multiple versus single renal arteries after laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy: a comparative study. Urology 2007 May;69(5):824-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17482914
38. Ruszat R, Wyler SF, Wolff T, et al. Reluctance over right-sided retroperitoneoscopic living donor nephrectomy: justified or not? Transplant Proc 2007 Jun;39(5):1381-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17580144
39. Sasaki TM, Finelli F, Bugarin E, et al. Is laparoscopic donor nephrectomy the new criterion standard? Arch Surg 2000 Aug;135(8):943-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10922257
40. Azar SA, Nakhjavani MR, Tarzamni MK, et al. Is living kidney donation really safe? Transplant Proc 2007 May;39(4):822-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17524822
41. Hazebroek EJ, Gommers D, Schreve MA, et al. Impact of intraoperative donor management on short-term renal function after laparoscopic donor nephrectomy. Ann Surg 2002 Jul;236(1):127-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131095
42. Goldfarb DA, Matin SF, Braun WE, et al. Renal outcome 25 years after donor nephrectomy. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2043-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696703

43. Gres P, Avances C, Iborra F, et al. Long-term morbidity of living donor kidney harvesting. Prog Urol 2007 Apr;17(2):194-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17489317

2.6 Organ preservation

2.6.1 Kidney storage solutions

There is no agreement on which of the mechanisms listed in Table 14 is most important for post-ischaemic renal graft function (1-6). No storage solution combines all mechanisms. Previously, Euro-Collins was widely used, but is no longer recommended. Today, Celsior-solution, UW-, and HTK- (histidine-tryptophane-ketoglutarate) solution are equally effective and are standard for multi-organ or single kidney harvesting procedures (7-10) (LE: 1b). For living donors, in whom a long cold ischaemia time is not expected, perfusion with crystalloid solution (e.g. Ringer-lactate) is sufficient.

Table 14: Aims of modern kidney storage solutions*

Control of cell-swelling during hypothermic ischaemia
Maintenance of intra- and extra-cellular electrolyte gradient during ischaemia
Buffering acidosis
Providing energy reserve
Minimising oxidative reperfusion injury

**From references 1-6.*

2.6.2 Methods of kidney preservation

There are two methods of kidney preservation:

- Initial flushing with cold preservation solution followed by ice storage.
- Continuous pulsatile hypothermic machine-perfusion (clinical relevance for non heart-beating donors and marginal donors).

2.6.3 Duration of organ preservation

The duration of cold ischaemia should be as short as possible. Kidneys from the elderly (> 55 years) and marginal donors are more sensitive to ischaemia than young kidneys (LE: 1b). Organ preservation relies mainly on hypothermia, which lowers the metabolic rate, conserves stores of adenosine triphosphate, and prevents formation of oxygen-free radicals during the reperfusion phase.

Recommendations	GR
UW-solution and HTK-solution are standard storage solutions and equally effective for both multiorgan-donors and kidney-only donors.	A
Celsior-solution seems to be equally effective.	B
Keep cold and warm ischaemia times as short as possible for any renal transplant.	A

2.6.4 References

1. Belzer FO, Ashby BS, Dunphy JE. 24-hour and 72-hour preservation of canine kidneys. Lancet 1967 Sep;2(7515):536-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4166894
2. Collins GM, Bravo-Shugarman M, Terasaki PI. Kidney preservation for transportation. Initial perfusion and 30 hours' ice storage. Lancet 1969 Dec;2(7632):1219-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4187813
3. Cofer JB, Klintmalm GB, Morris CV, et al. A prospective randomized trial between Euro-Collins and University of Wisconsin solutions as the initial flush in hepatic allograft procurement. Transplantation 1992 May;53(5):995-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1585493
4. Opelz G, Terasaki PI. Advantage of cold storage over machine perfusion for preservation of cadaver kidneys. Transplantation 1982 Jan;33(1):64-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7039024
5. Buhl MR, Jörgensen S. Breakdown of 5'-adenine nucleotides in ischaemic renal cortex estimated by oxypurine excretion during perfusion. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 1975 May;35(3):211-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1153918

6. Lam FT, Mavor AI, Potts DJ, et al. Improved 72-hour renal preservation with phosphate-buffered sucrose. Transplantation 1989 May;47(5):767-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2655211
7. Agarwal A, Murdock P, Fridell JA. Comparison of histidine-tryptophan ketoglutarate solution and University of Wisconsin solution in prolonged cold preservation of kidney allografts. Transplantation 2006 Feb;81(3):480-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16477239
8. Booster MH, van der Vusse GJ, Wijnen RM, et al. University of Wisconsin solution is superior to histidine tryptophanketoglutarate for preservation of ischemically damaged kidneys. Transplantation 1994 Nov;58(9):979-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7974736
9. De Boer J, De Meester J, Smits JM, et al. Eurotransplant randomized multicenter kidney graft preservation study comparing HTK with UW and Euro-Collins. Transpl Int 1999;12(6):447-53.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10654357
10. Mühlbacher F, Langer F, Mittermayer C. Preservation solutions for transplantation. Transplant Proc 1999 Aug;31(5):2069-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10455972

3. KIDNEY RECIPIENT

Kidney transplantation prolongs life, reduces morbidity, improves quality of life, enables social and medical rehabilitation, and reduces the costs associated with the medical care of patients with ESRD.
Kidney transplantation is a surgical procedure, with inherent risks due to anaesthesia and the surgical procedure itself. In addition, the need for continuous immunosuppressive therapy may lead to immunosuppression-related side-effects.

The pre-transplant evaluation evaluates potential contraindications and risk factors for transplantation (e.g. malignancy, ongoing infection) (LE: 2b).

Recommendation	GR
Careful pre-operative work-up of all transplant candidates is mandatory to improve organ and patient survival in the post-transplant period. The work-up should be repeated regularly.	B

3.1 Pre-transplant therapy

3.1.1 ***Abnormal urogenital tract***

In patients, whose ESRD is caused by either a congenital (i.e. posterior urethral valve, spina bifida, prune belly syndrome, vesico-renal reflux, bladder exstrophy, VATER syndrome) or an acquired malformation (shrunken or neurogenic bladder) of the lower urinary tract, the abnormality should be corrected before transplantation (1-4).

Avoid ureteral implantation in a fibrotic, thickened bladder wall (e.g. following an urethral valve) because of the high risk of surgical complications and/or graft loss (1). In low-compliance bladders, pharmacological therapy (e.g. parasympathicolysis), with or without intermittent self-catheterisation, is necessary. If these methods fail, bladder augmentation is recommended. If catheterisation is not possible, supravesical urinary diversion is crucial.

Anatomical or functional urological disorders do not seem to change the outcome of renal transplantation (LE: 3).

3.1.2 ***Urinary diversion***

In patients with sphincter insufficiency (e.g. neurogenic bladder) or absent bladder, supravesical urinary diversions must be performed, such as conduits or continent catheterisable pouches. Artificial sphincters may be an alternative. In low-compliance bladders with intact sphincters, both bladder augmentation and continent pouches are successful alternatives (4-9).

Most urologists prefer to perform a supravesical urinary diversion at least 10-12 weeks before transplantation (6, 8). Bladder augmentation or conduit is possible following transplantation (6). Patients with conduits, augmented or abnormal bladders have an increased risk of urinary infection (1,4-6).

Results can be similar to those in the general population (7,9-12) (LE: 3).

3.1.3 Indications for pre-transplant nephrectomy

Depending on the indication (Table 15), nephrectomy can be done by either an open or laparoscopic approach (LE: 3-4).

Table 15: Indications for pre-transplant nephrectomy

Autosomal-dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD)
Unilateral or bilateral nephrectomy is necessary if there is not enough space for the transplant kidney, or if there are complications, such as cyst infection, cyst rupture with/without haematuria, pain, or abdominal girth
Nephrectomy can be done before transplantation or simultaneously with similar complication rates and outcomes (2,13,14)
Medically refractory hypertension
Bilateral nephrectomy usually results in less antihypertensive medications (15). It has become rare due to improved control of hypertension with better dialysis and drugs
Chronically infected kidneys
Suspected renal or urothelial cancer
Urolithiasis
No strong evidence for removal of native kidneys in urolithiasis
Nephrectomy is necessary if there is a possible risk of infection due to stones

Recommendations	**GR**
In abnormal urogenital tract, meticulous pre-transplant work-up is necessary, with urodynamics being the key investigation.	B/C
If pharmacological therapy or intermittent catheterisation fails or is not possible, urinary diversion is necessary using catheterisable pouches, conduits or cystoplasties.	B/C
ADPKD with insufficient space or complications, chronic infections, or kidneys with suspected tumour growth have to be removed either pre-operatively or concomitant with transplantation.	B/C

ADPKD = autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease

3.1.4 References

1. Adams J, Mehls O, Wiesel M. Pediatric renal transplantation and the dysfunctional bladder. Transplant Int 2004 Nov;17(10):596-602. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15517166
2. Fuller TF, Brennan TV, Feng S, et al. End stage polycystic kidney disease: indications and timing of native nephrectomy relative to kidney transplantation. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2284-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280813
3. Fusaro F, Zanon GF, Ferreli AM, et al. Renal transplantation in prune-belly syndrome. Transpl Int 2004 Oct;17(9):549-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15517165
4. Hamdi M, Mohan P, Little DM, et al. Successful renal transplantation in children with spina bifida: long term single center experience. Pediat Transplant 2004 Apr;8(2):167-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15049797
5. Hatch DA, Koyle MA, Baskin LS, et al. Kidney transplantation in children with urinary diversion or bladder augmentation. J Urol 2001 Jun;165(6 Pt 2):2265-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11371960
6. Koo HP, Bunchman TE, Flynn JT, et al. Renal transplantation in children with severe lower urinary tract dysfunction. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):240-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037414
7. Mendizabal S, Estornell F, Zamora I, et al. Renal transplantation in children with severe bladder dysfunction. J Urol 2005 Jan;173(1):226-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592081
8. Power RE, O'Malley KJ, Little DM, et al. Long-term followup of cadaveric renal transplantation in patients with spina bifida. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):477-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792900

9. Rigamonti W, Capizzi A, Zacchello G, et al. Kidney transplantation into bladder augmentation or urinary diversion: long-term results. Transplantation 2005 Nov;80(10):1435-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16340788
10. Luke PP, Herz DB, Bellinger MF, et al. Long-term results of pediatric renal transplantation into a dysfunctional lower urinary tract. Transplantation 2003 Dec;76(11):1578-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14702527
11. Nahas WC, Mazzucchi E, Arap MA, et al. Augmentation cystoplasty in renal transplantation: a good and safe option-experience with 25 cases. Urology 2002 Nov;60(5):770-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12429293
12. Ozcan O, Tekgul S, Duzova A, et al. How does the presence of urologic problems change the outcome of kidney transplantation in the pediatric age group. Transplant Proc 2006 Mar;38(2):552-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16549172
13. Glassman DT, Nipkow L, Bartlett ST, et al. Bilateral nephrectomy with concomitant renal graft transplantation for autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. J Urol 2000 Sep;164(3 Pt 1):661-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10953121
14. Rozanski J, Kozlowska I, Myslak M, et al. Pretransplant nephrectomy in patients with autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. Transplant Proc 2005 Mar;37(2):666-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15848495
15. Power RE, Calleary JG, Hickey DP. Pre-transplant bilateral native nephrectomy for medically refractory hypertension. Ir Med J 2001 Jul-Aug;94(7):214-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11693214

3.2 Selection and refusal criteria

3.2.1 ***Contraindications***

3.2.1.1 Malignancy

Active malignancy is a contraindication for transplantation because immunosuppressive therapy may aggravate underlying malignancy, jeopardising the patient's life and long-term success of the transplant (1-3). Patients with a history of malignancy should be cured (see Chapter 8 - Malignancy).

3.2.1.2 Infection

Infections can be a major cause of morbidity and mortality in transplanted patients, especially under intense immunosuppressive therapy. As part of the pre-transplant work-up, carry out screening for infections to exclude any active infections, which might jeopardise the immediate outcome post transplant (1-3). In contrast, chronic infection does not cause an immediate post-operative risk. If chronic infection is detected, counsel the patient and treat it before transplantation or take prophylactic measures after transplantation. Screening for infections also documents the recipient's infectious status in case of disease transmission from the donor. In cases of previous negative serology for CMV, HBV, HCV, and HIV recipients, serology should be repeated at the time of transplantation. A record of the viral status before transplantation enables graft transmission of disease to be firmly excluded. Finally, the recipient's infectious status may have implications for the allocation of organs (LE: 3).

If the patient's history or physical examination suggests an underlying infection, a thorough examination should be instituted, which may involve physicians from other subspecialties, such as an ear, nose, and throat specialist; dentist; dermatologist; urologist; and gynaecologist, to firmly rule out infectious foci (1-3) (LE: 3).

Important infections screened prior to transplantation are HBV, HCV, HIV, tuberculosis (TB), CMV, and Treponema pallidum (1-3). Testing of HBV and HCV serology is particularly important, because viral hepatitis is the major cause of liver disease after renal transplantation and contributes to post-transplant morbidity and mortality (4-6) (LE: 3). A liver biopsy may be needed to assess disease status in patients positive for HBV or HCV before transplantation. Consider antiviral therapy before transplantation according to current guidelines (7-9) (LE: 3).

The serological CMV status of all recipients should be determined (1-3) (LE: 3). Current immunosuppressive regimens are associated with a high incidence of potentially life-threatening CMV disease (4,10) that is, however, preventable with the appropriate prophylactic strategy (LE: 1a).

Human immunodeficiency virus screening is recommended because active HIV disease is a contraindication for transplantation (1-3). However, retrospective studies show that renal transplantation can be successful in well-controlled (no detectable viral load) and treated HIV-positive recipients (3) (LE: 3).

A history of TB is important because adequate preventive measures (e.g. isoniasid prophylaxis; 11,12) will avoid reactivation of TB under heavy post-transplant immunosuppression (LE: 1a). Screening for TB requires a careful history and chest x-ray (1-3) (LE: 3).

Screening for T. pallidum has been previously recommended (1,2). However, due to the low

incidence of disease, it is not strongly recommended for all potential transplant candidates. A Treponema haemaglutination (TPHA)-test may be performed in populations with a higher risk for disease (LE: 3).

Screening for Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) has been suggested in children and young adults (13), because of their higher risk for the development of EBV-related lymphoproliferative disease. General EBV screening is not recommended (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Active infection, which may exacerbate after transplantation causing life-threatening infection, is a contraindication to transplantation.	B
Carry out screening for viral and bacterial diseases in all transplant candidates. Screen all patients for HBV, HCV, HIV, CMV, and TB (history and chest x-ray).	B
Routine screening examination of all patients in all subspecialties is not necessary.	B

3.2.1.3 Other contraindications for transplantation

Transplantation should be offered to patients with potential for long-term survival of the graft because of the scarcity of organs, the complexity of the transplant procedure, and increased mortality associated with the transplant procedure itself.

A short life expectancy and conditions that interfere with compliance (e.g. severe psychiatric disease) are not acceptable risks for long-term success of transplantation. If there is non-compliance, a careful psychological examination should try to identify the underlying cause (14) and if possible institute an adequate treatment (15). Non-compliance is not a lifelong determinant of a personality and re-evaluation may be needed.

Recommendation	GR
In severe co-morbidity or non-compliance, a thorough and individual assessment should be performed.	C

3.2.2 ***Co-morbidity***

Due to the inherent risks of the surgical procedure, anaesthesia, and post transplant immunosuppressive therapy, a careful evaluation of potential transplant recipients is very important, particularly a cardiovascular work-up to reduce early graft failure due to technical problems and to improve patient survival in the post-transplant period (1-3).

3.2.2.1 Cardiac disease

Death with a functioning kidney allograft occurs frequently in kidney-transplanted patients, with cardiac death being the most important cause (16). Nevertheless, uraemic patients with cardiovascular disease are more likely to survive with a renal transplant compared to dialysis (17,18). However, patients with cardiac disease have a higher peri-operative risk (19,20). All candidates should therefore be given a careful history and physical examination for cardiac disease, including an electrocardiogram and chest x-ray (21) (LE: 3).

An additional, extensive cardiac work-up is recommended for patients with a history of coronary heart disease, severe peripheral artery disease, or a history of stroke or severe occlusive cerebrovascular disease, and a long history of renal insufficiency/dialysis (22,23), as well as for elderly and/or diabetic patients (22,24,25) (LE: 3).

The work-up includes (22,23):

- Echocardiography to detect valvular disease, cardiomyopathy, and systolic and/or diastolic left ventricular dysfunction (26).
- Exercise electrocardiogram and/or exercise thallium scintigraphy or stress echocardiography in patients with a low exercise capacity (22,23).
- Coronary angiography in every suspicious case, especially in dialysis patients who are elderly and/or diabetic, or in patients with a long history of renal disease (27).

Revascularisation, either surgical or by coronary angioplasty, should be performed in every suitable transplant candidate (18,24) before transplantation (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Pre-transplant work-up should focus on the presence of cardiac disease.	B
In patients with a high risk of cardiac disease, an extensive work-up is strongly recommended to firmly rule out coronary artery disease.	B
Perform any revascularisation before transplantation.	B

3.2.2.2 Peripheral artery disease, cerebral occlusive vascular disease

Peripheral artery disease is common in uraemic patients (28). In potential kidney transplant recipients, very severe pelvic vessel disease may prohibit transplantation, be a significant cause of technical graft failure, and may enhance the risk of amputation. Cerebral vascular occlusion may lead to post-operative morbidity and mortality (29,30).

Evaluate the patient carefully for signs and symptoms of vascular occlusive disease. Pelvic radiography should be done routinely before transplantation (31,32). If there is vascular calcification, signs and symptoms or risk factors (e.g. age, diabetes, length of time on dialysis) of vascular occlusive disease, perform a thorough work-up, including duplex ultrasonography of the peripheral and cerebral arteries (33), and/or non-contrast enhanced abdominal-pelvic CT scan. In selected patients, angiography and pre-transplant arterial repair can be indicated. Avoid contrast-enhanced MRI because of the risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis (34) (LE: 3).

Recommendation	GR
During pre-transplant work-up, special attention should be paid to iliacal, peripheral, and cerebrovascular disease. Appropriate diagnostic and therapeutic measures are recommended.	C

3.2.2.3 Diabetes mellitus

Patients with diabetes mellitus have an increased mortality and reduced long-term graft outcome compared to non-diabetic patients following kidney transplantation (35). Nevertheless, diabetes mellitus itself is not a contraindication for kidney transplant (1-3). Furthermore, a kidney-only transplant or a combined kidney-pancreas transplant will reduce the long-term morbidity and mortality of uraemic diabetic patients compared to dialysis (36,37) (LE: 3).

Thus, kidney transplantation should be considered in every diabetic uraemic patient who has no other severe contraindication, especially cardiovascular disease. In patients with diabetes type I, a combined kidney-pancreas transplant is preferred because it improves blood glucose control and slows progression of cardiovascular disease (38,39) (LE: 3).

Because there is an exceptionally high incidence of cardiovascular disease in diabetic dialysis patients (21-23), it is usually necessary to exclude patients with a high vascular risk using peripheral angiography or non-invasive imaging procedures (e.g. CT scan) (27). Bladder neuropathy is a common complication in diabetic patients (40) and a urological clinical work-up should be performed. In selected patients, an urodynamic examination is needed (LE: 3).

Recommendation	GR
Patients with diabetes mellitus should be transplanted. They require an extensive pre-transplant work-up.	B

3.2.2.4 Obesity

Overweight patients have a higher incidence of surgical and non-surgical complications (41,42). Weight is a traditional risk factor for diabetes, hypertension, and cardiovascular disease. However, renal transplantation provides a better survival and better quality of life in overweight dialysis patients (43,44) (LE: 3). There is not enough evidence to recommend exclusion based on body mass index (BMI).

Recommendation	GR
Obesity itself is not a contraindication for transplantation. However, a thorough pre-transplant evaluation and attempt to reduce weight are recommended.	C

3.2.2.5 Coagulopathies

Coagulation disorders have a negative impact on post-transplant graft survival, leading to early graft thrombosis or post-transplant thrombotic complications (45,46). Early post-transplant anticoagulation may

prevent thrombosis and early graft loss (47,48). As a consequence, a pre-transplant work-up should include the diagnosis of coagulopathies, especially in patients with recurrent shunt thrombosis or with a history of thrombotic events. In these patients, a careful pre-transplant assessment is mandatory, including ATIII, protein C, activated protein C resistance (Factor V Leiden), protein S, and anti-phospholipid antibodies (LE: 3).

Patients on anticoagulant treatment, e.g. warfarin, acetylsalicylic acid, clopidogrel, are not excluded from transplantation. During surgery, special precautions for anticoagulant use are needed.

Recommendation	GR
A careful examination of coagulopathies in patients at risk in order to prevent early post-transplant thrombotic events is recommended.	C

3.2.2.6 Other diseases with potential influence on post-transplant outcome

Some conditions or diseases may follow an aggravated clinical course after transplantation due to immunosuppressive therapy and/or may place the transplanted kidney at a higher risk for complications (1-3). Important examples are diverticulosis, with or without previous episodes of diverticulitis, cholecystolithiasis, and hyperparathyroidism. Decisions for pre-transplant treatment should be made by a multidisciplinary team on an individual basis with appropriate patient counselling (LE: 4).

Mental retardation and psychiatric diseases are not necessarily contraindications for transplantation (1-3). If the patient is able to understand the procedure and can adhere to the procedures and medication required, such patients are eligible for transplantation (LE: 4).

Recommendation	GR
Diseases that might influence post-transplant course should be identified during pre-transplant work-up and if possible treated before transplantation.	C

*3.2.3 **Age***

Although there is no controversy about the fact that a kidney transplant offers improved survival and quality of life in younger patients with ESRD, an ongoing debate exists about kidney transplants in the elderly.

Reduced mortality in patients over 65 years of age has been shown in transplanted patients compared to patients on the waiting list (35,36) and reasonable outcomes have been reported for elderly transplant recipients (49,50) (LE: 3). However, a prolonged waiting time in this patient subgroup significantly decreases the beneficial clinical outcome and socio-economic advantages of transplantation (51,52). Every effort should be taken to reduce waiting times in the elderly (> 65 years). Elderly transplant patients should be enrolled in special programmes such as the Eurotransplant (ET) Senior programme (50), as well as applying for living-donor transplantation (LE: 3).

In elderly dialysis patients selected for kidney transplantation, special attention must be paid to concomitant cardiovascular disease and possible pre-existing cancer (53). Patients should be informed about the potential hazards of transplantation, including a high fatality rate in the first year after transplantation (and infection during the first year post-transplant (49,50,53-56) (LE: 3). If there are any signs of age-related dementia, a psychological evaluation should be instituted.

Recommendation	GR
Although age itself is not a contraindication for transplantation, a thorough pre-transplant evaluation is needed. A careful risk-benefit evaluation must be performed and the patient should be counselled on the increased risks associated with age.	B

*3.2.4 **Recurrence risk (original renal disease)***

An histological recurrence of original renal disease is common in a transplanted kidney. Despite high recurrence rates in some diseases, overall graft loss due to recurrence is less than 10% after 10 years (57,58). Higher recurrence rates have occurred in living related donors and living donation should therefore be critically discussed, especially in diseases with early and very high recurrence rates (LE: 3).

Some rare renal diseases with a high recurrence rate, which can lead to an immediate graft loss, are contraindications for transplant. They include light-chain deposit disease (LCDD), primary oxalosis, and anti-glomerular basement (anti-GBM) antibodies (1-3). However, transplants may still be possible in some circumstances:

- Patients with anti-GBM disease can be given a transplant after disappearance of anti-GBM antibodies (1-3) (LE: 3).

- In patients with primary oxalosis, combined liver-kidney transplantation is recommended (1-3) (LE: 3).
- In patients with amyloidosis or LCDD, no treatment guidelines exist. In this very rare group of patients, case reports and small case series describe successful chemotherapy or autologous stem cell transplantation, with or without kidney transplantation (59-61) (LE: 3).

In patients with systemic diseases (e.g. lupus, vasculitis, haemolytic uraemic syndrome), the underlying disease should be treated and the patient should be in remission before transplantation (1-3) (LE: 3).
For most patients with glomerulonephritis, no special precautions are recommended (1-3). Focal and segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS) may recur early after transplantation (62,63) and may be treated with plasmapheresis and/or with anti-CD20 antibody (rituximab) (64,65). When a previous graft has been lost because of recurrent glomerulonephritis, especially FSGS, the patient must be counselled on the higher risk of graft failure in a second transplant. However, successful long-term outcomes have occurred in these patients (62,63) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	**GR**
Recurrence of the original disease is common, but graft loss due to recurrence is infrequent.	C
Only a few rare diseases with a high recurrence rate leading to early graft loss are a contraindication for renal transplant.	C
Patients with the risk of recurrent diseases should be counselled before transplantation, especially before living related kidney transplant.	C

*3.2.5 **Patients with a previous transplant***

Assess patients with a previous graft loss carefully for malignancy, cardiovascular disease (1-3), and for increased immunological risk because of the development of antibodies against the first graft (66). Gradually discontinue immunosuppression following graft failure, as continuous immunosuppressive therapy has a higher risk of complications under renal replacement therapy (67,68) (LE: 3). If the graft becomes symptomatic, perform graft nephrectomy immediately (69). Graft embolisation (70) may be an alternative. However, prophylactic transplantectomy does not seem to be beneficial (71-73). Take appropriate measures to avoid repeated alloantigen mismatches (LE: 3).

Patients with a previous non-renal organ transplant, who develop ESRD (74,75), also benefit from renal transplantation, as there is a high risk of severe complications with a combination of ESRD and continuous immunosuppressive therapy (76) (LE: 3). Work-up should pay special attention to malignancy, cardiovascular disease, potential immunisation, and potential graft dysfunction of the previously transplanted organ, which may therefore require a combined transplant procedure (LE: 3).

Recommendation
Pre-transplant work-up for patients with retransplantation or previous non-renal transplantation should focus on the immunological risk, including a thorough analysis for the presence of anti-HLA antibodies.

*3.2.6 **References***

1. EBPG (European Expert Group on Renal Transplantation); European Renal Association (ERA-EDTA); European Society for Organ Transplantation (ESOT). European Best Practice Guidelines for Renal Transplantation (part 1). Nephrol Dial Transplant 2000;15(Suppl 7):1-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11286185
2. Kasiske BL, Cangro CB, Hariharan S, et al; American Society of Transplantation. The evaluation of renal transplantation candidates: clinical practice guidelines. Am J Transplant 2001;1(Suppl 2):3-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12108435
3. Knoll G, Cockfield S, Blydt-Hansen T, et al; Kidney Transplant Working Group of the Canadian Society of Transplantation. Canadian Society of Transplantation consensus guidelines on eligibility for kidney transplantation. CMAJ 2005 Nov;173(10):1181-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16275969
4. Kotton CN, Fishman JA. Viral infection in the renal transplant recipient. J Am Soc Nephrol 2005 Jun;16(6):1758-74. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15829710
5. Viral hepatitis guidelines in hemodialysis and transplantation. Am J Transplant 2004 Nov;4(Suppl 10): 72-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15504218

6. Barclay S, Pol S, Mutimer D, et al. The management of chronic hepatitis B in the immunocompromised patient: recommendations from a single topic meeting. J Clin Virol 2008 Apr;41(4):243-54. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18203658
7. Broumand B, Hakemi MS, Sabet MS. Impact of hepatitis C virus infection on short-term outcomes in renal transplantation. Exp Clin Transplant 2004 Dec;2(2):242-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15859935
8. Fabrizi F, Marzano A, Messa P, et al. Hepatitis B virus infection in the dialysis population: current perspectives. Int J Artif Organs 2008 May;31(5):386-94. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18609511
9. Okoh EJ, Bucci JR, Simon JF, et al. HCV in patients with end-stage renal disease. Am J Gastroenterol 2008 Aug;103(8):2123-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18796105
10. Snydman DR. The case for cytomegalovirus prophylaxis in solid organ transplantation. Rev Med Virol 2006 Sep-Oct;16(5):289-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16888821
11. Naqvi R, Akhtar S, Noor H, et al. Efficacy of isoniazid prophylaxis in renal allograft recipients. Transplant Proc 2006 Sep;38(7):2057-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16979998
12. Vikrant S, Agarwal SK, Gupta S, et al. Prospective randomized control trial of isoniazid chemoprophylaxis during renal replacement therapy. Transpl Infect Dis 2005 Sep-Dec;7(3-4):99-108. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16390397
13. Okano M, Gross TG. Advanced therapeutic and prophylactic strategies for Epstein-Barr virus infection in immunocompromised patients. Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther 2007 Jun;5(3):403-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17547505
14. Dobbels F, Van Damme-Lombaert R, Vanhaecke J, et al. Growing pains: non-adherence with the immunosuppressive regimen in adolescent transplant recipients. Pediatr Transplant 2005 Jun;9(3): 381-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15910397
15. Baines LS, Zawada ET Jr, Jindal RM. Psychosocial profiling: a holistic management tool for non-compliance. Clin Transplant 2005 Feb;19(1):38-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15659132
16. Chang SH, Russ GR, Chadban SJ, et al. Trends in kidney transplantation in Australia and New Zealand, 1993-2004. Transplantation 2007 Sep;84(5):611-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17876274
17. Meier-Kriesche HU, Schold JD, Srinivas TR, et al. Kidney transplantation halts cardiovascular disease progression in patients with end-stage renal disease. Am J Transplant 2004 Oct;4(10):1662-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15367222
18. Jeloka TK, Ross H, Smith R, et al. Renal transplant outcome in high-cardiovascular risk recipients. Clin Transplant 2007 Sep-Oct;21(5):609-14. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17845634
19. Lentine KL, Brennan DC, Schnitzler MA. Incidence and predictors of myocardial infarction after kidney transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2005 Feb;16(2):496-506. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15615820
20. Kasiske BL, Maclean JR, Snyder JJ. Acute myocardial infarction and kidney transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2006 Mar;17(3):900-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481414
21. Woo YM, McLean D, Kavanagh D, et al.The influence of pre-operative electrocardiographic abnormalities and cardiovascular risk factors on patient and graft survival following renal transplantation. J Nephrol 2002 Jul-Aug;15(4):380-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12243367
22. Pilmore H. Cardiac assessment for renal transplantation. Am J Transplant 2006 Apr;6(4):659-65. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16539621
23. Kasiske BL, Malik MA, Herzog CA. Risk-stratified screening for ischemic heart disease in kidney transplant candidates. Transplantation 2005 Sep;80(6):815-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16210970
24. Lentine KL, Schnitzler MA, Brennan DC, et al. Cardiac evaluation before kidney transplantation: a practice patterns analysis in Medicare-insured dialysis patients. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Jul;3(4):1115-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18417743

25. Ohtake T, Kobayashi S, Moriya H, et al. High prevalence of occult coronary artery stenosis in patients with chronic kidney disease at the initiation of renal replacement therapy: an angiographic examination. J Am Soc Nephrol 2005 Apr;16(4):1141-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15743997
26. Sharma R, Chemla E, Tome M, et al. Echocardiography-based score to predict outcome after renal transplantation. Heart 2007 Apr;93(4):464-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16980518
27. Witczak BJ, Hartmann A, Jenssen T, et al. Routine coronary angiography in diabetic nephropathy patients before transplantation. Am J Transplant 2006 Oct;6(10):2403-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952302
28. Snyder JJ, Kasiske BL, Maclean R. Peripheral arterial disease and renal transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2006 Jul;17(7):2056-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16775031
29. Oliveras A, Roquer J, Puig JM, et al. Stroke in renal transplant recipients: epidemiology, predictive risk factors and outcome. Clin Transplant 2003 Feb;17(1):1-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12588314
30. Lentine KL, Rocca Rey LA, Kolli S, et al. Variations in the risk for cerebrovascular events after kidney transplant compared with experience on the waiting list and after graft failure. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Jul;3(4):1090-101.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18385393
31. Zeier M, Ritz E. Preparation of the dialysis patient for transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2002 Apr;17(4):552-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11917044
32. Fritsche L, Budde K, Neumayer HH. Evaluating candidates for kidney transplantation: some recommendations still lack convincing clinical evidence. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2003 Mar;18(3): 621-2.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12584294
33. Aull-Watschinger S, Konstantin H, Demetriou D, et al. Pre-transplant predictors of cerebrovascular events after kidney transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Apr;23(4):1429-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18045824
34. Bhave G, Lewis JB, Chang SS. Association of gadolinium based magnetic resonance imaging contrast agents and nephrogenic systemic fibrosis. J Urol 2008 Sep;180(3):830-5; discussion 835.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18635232
35. Wolfe RA, Ashby VB, Milford EL, et al. Comparison of mortality in all patients on dialysis, patients on dialysis awaiting transplantation, and recipients of a first cadaveric transplant. N Engl J Med 1999 Dec;341(23):1725-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10580071
36. Merion RM, Ashby VB, Wolfe RA, et al. Deceased-donor characteristics and the survival benefit of kidney transplantation. JAMA 2005 Dec;294(21):2726-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16333008
37. Luan FL, Miles CD, Cibrik DM, et al. Impact of simultaneous pancreas and kidney transplantation on cardiovascular risk factors in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Transplantation 2007 Aug;84(4):541-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17713440
38. Reddy KS, Stablein D, Taranto S, et al. Long-term survival following simultaneous kidney-pancreas transplantation versus kidney transplantation alone in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus and renal failure. Am J Kidney Dis 2003 Feb;41(2):464-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12552511
39. Becker BN, Odorico JS, Becker YT, et al. Simultaneous pancreas-kidney and pancreas transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2001 Nov;12(11):2517-27.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11675431
40. Fedele D. Therapy insight: sexual and bladder dysfunction associated with diabetes mellitus. Nat Clin Pract Urol 2005 Jun;2(6):282-90.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16474810
41. Gore JL, Pham PT, Danovitch GM, et al. Obesity and outcome following renal transplantation. Am J Transplant 2006 Feb;6(2):357-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426321
42. Pelletier SJ, Maraschio MA, Schaubel DE, et al. Survival benefit of kidney and liver transplantation for obese patients on the waiting list. Clin Transpl 2003:77-88.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15387099

43. Schold JD, Srinivas TR, Guerra G, et al. A 'weight-listing' paradox for candidates of renal transplantation? Am J Transplant 2007 Mar;7(3):550-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17173655
44. Schnitzler MA, Salvalaggio PR, Axelrod DA, et al. Lack of interventional studies in renal transplant candidates with elevated cardiovascular risk. Am J Transplant 2007 Mar;7(3):493-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17250551
45. Heidenreich S, Junker R, Wolters H, et al. Outcome of kidney transplantation in patients with inherited thrombophilia: data of a prospective study. J Am Soc Nephrol 2003 Jan;14(1):234-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12506156
46. Kranz B, Vester U, Nadalin S, et al. Outcome after kidney transplantation in children with thrombotic risk factors. Pediatr Transplant 2006 Nov;10(7):788-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17032424
47. Irish A. Hypercoagulability in renal transplant recipients. Identifying patients at risk of renal allograft thrombosis and evaluating strategies for prevention. Am J Cardiovasc Drugs 2004;4(3):139-49.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15134466
48. Friedman GS, Meier-Kriesche HU, Kaplan B, et al. Hypercoagulable states in renal transplant candidates: impact of anticoagulation upon incidence of renal allograft thrombosis. Transplantation 2001 Sep;72(6):1073-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11579303
49. Rao PS, Merion RM, Ashby VB, et al. Renal transplantation in elderly patients older than 70 years of age: results from the Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients. Transplantation 2007 Apr;83(8):1069-74.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17452897
50. Frei U, Noeldeke J, Machold-Fabrizii V, et al. Prospective age-matching in elderly kidney transplant recipients–a 5-year analysis of the Eurotransplant Senior Program. Am J Transplant 2008 Jan;8(1): 50-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17973969
51. Meier-Kriesche HU, Kaplan B. Waiting time on dialysis as the strongest modifiable risk factor for renal transplant outcomes: a paired donor kidney analysis. Transplantation 2002 Nov;74(10):1377-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12451234
52. Schold JD, Meier-Kriesche HU. Which renal transplant candidates should accept marginal kidneys in exchange for a shorter waiting time on dialysis? Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2006 May;1(3):532-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17699256
53. de Fijter JW. An old virtue to improve senior programs. Transpl Int 2009 Mar;22(3):259-68.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18954372
54. Giessing M, Budde K, Fritsche L, et al. 'Old-for-old' cadaveric renal transplantation: surgical findings, perioperative complications and outcome. Eur Urol 2003 Dec;44(6):701-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14644123
55. Bentas W, Jones J, Karaoguz A, et al. Renal transplantation in the elderly: surgical complications and outcome with special emphasis on the Eurotransplant Senior Programme. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Jun;23(6):2043-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18203840
56. Bodingbauer M, Pakrah B, Steininger R, et al. The advantage of allocating kidneys from old cadaveric donors to old recipients: a single-center experience. Clin Transplant 2006 Jul-Aug;20(4):471-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16842524
57. Briganti EM, Russ GR, McNeil JJ, et al. Risk of renal allograft loss from recurrent glomerulonephritis. N Engl J Med 2002 Jul;347(2):103-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12110738
58. Golgert WA, Appel GB, Hariharan S. Recurrent glomerulonephritis after renal transplantation: an unsolved problem. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 May;3(3):800-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18272827
59. Leung N, Griffin MD, Dispenzieri A, et al. Living donor kidney and autologous stem cell transplantation for primary systemic amyloidosis (AL) with predominant renal involvement. Am J Transplant 2005 Jul;5(7):1660-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15943624
60. Bergesio F, Ciciani AM, Manganaro M, et al; Immunopathology Group of the Italian Society of Nephrology. Renal involvement in systemic amyloidosis: an Italian collaborative study on survival and renal outcome. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Mar;23(3):941-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17951308

61. Lorenz EC, Gertz MA, Fervenza FC, et al. Long-term outcome of autologous stem cell transplantation in light chain deposition disease. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Jun;23(6):2052-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18178602
62. Vincenti F, Ghiggeri GM. New insights into the pathogenesis and the therapy of recurrent focal glomerulosclerosis. Am J Transplant 2005 Jun;5(6):1179-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15888021
63. Fine RN. Recurrence of nephrotic syndrome/focal segmental glomerulosclerosis following renal transplantation in children. Pediatr Nephrol 2007 Apr;22(4):496-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17186280
64. Bayrakci US, Baskin E, Sakalli H, et al. Rituximab for post-transplant recurrences of FSGS. Pediatr Transplant 2009 Mar;13(2):240-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18822107
65. Yabu JM, Ho B, Scandling JD, et al. Rituximab failed to improve nephrotic syndrome in renal transplant patients with recurrent focal segmental glomerulosclerosis. Am J Transplant 2008 Jan;8(1): 222-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17979998
66. Arnold ML, Dechant M, Doxiadis II, et al. Prevalence and specificity of immunoglobulin G and immunoglobulin A non-complement-binding anti-HLA alloantibodies in retransplant candidates. Tissue Antigens 2008 Jul;72(1):60-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18588575
67. Smak Gregoor PJ, Zietse R, van Saase JL, et al. Immunosuppression should be stopped in patients with renal allograft failure. Clin Transplant 2001 Dec;15(6):397-401. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11737116
68. Marcén R, Teruel JL. Patient outcomes after kidney allograft loss. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Jan;22(1):62-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631859
69. Secin FP, Rovegno AR, del Rosario Brunet M, et al. Cumulative incidence, indications, morbidity and mortality of transplant nephrectomy and the most appropriate time for graft removal: only nonfunctioning transplants that cause intractable complications should be excised. J Urol 2003 Apr;169(4):1242-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12629335
70. Delgado P, Diaz F, Gonzalez A, et al. Intolerance syndrome in failed renal allografts: incidence and efficacy of percutaneous embolization. Am J Kidney Dis 2005 Aug;46(2):339-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16112054
71. Perl J, Bargman JM, Davies SJ, et al. Clinical outcomes after failed renal transplantation-does dialysis modality matter? Semin Dial 2008 May-Jun;21(3):239-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18533967
72. Bennett WM. The failed renal transplant: in or out? Semin Dial 2005 May-Jun;18(3):188-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15934960
73. Langone AJ, Chuang P. The management of the failed renal allograft: an enigma with potential consequences. Semin Dial 2005 May-Jun;18(3):185-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15934959
74. Ojo AO, Held PJ, Port FK, et al. Chronic renal failure after transplantation of a nonrenal organ. N Engl J Med 2003 Sep;349(10):931-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12954741
75. Stratta P, Canavese C, Quaglia M, et al. Posttransplantation chronic renal damage in nonrenal transplant recipients. Kidney Int 2005 Oct;68(4):1453-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16164622
76. Ojo AO. Renal disease in recipients of nonrenal solid organ transplantation. Semin Nephrol 2007 Jul;27(4):498-507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17616280

3.3 Transplantation in pregnancy

*3.3.1 **Planning pregnancy***

Chronic renal failure is often associated with sexual dysfunction and infertility. After kidney transplantation, sex life and fertility are improved (1). Both male and female patients should be counselled about the possibility of pregnancy. Ideally, pregnancy should be planned at a time of good general and graft health, usually not earlier or later than 1-2 years after transplant (2). In pregnancy occurring some years after transplantation, there is a risk that some chronic rejection and/or some deterioration of renal function may have developed.

If graft function and immunosuppressive therapy are stable, and there is no sign of rejection,

hypertension, proteinuria, hydronephrosis, or chronic infection, there is no significant difference in outcome between early, recommended, or late pregnancies (3) (LE: 2a). Hydronephrosis makes pregnancy riskier because of the increased possibility of infection and lithiasis, which may also worsen in the last trimester. Early detection of pregnancy is important so that monitoring and adjustment of immunosuppressive therapy can begin as soon as possible.

Recommendations	GR
Pregnancy should be planned at a time of good general and graft health, when renal function and immunosuppressive therapy are stable and there is no sign of rejection, hypertension, proteinuria, hydronephrosis, or chronic infection.	B
The second post-transplant year is the ideal period.	B

*3.3.2 **Graft survival***

Recently, the pregnancy rate in the kidney-transplanted population has increased from 2% to 5%. Successful gestations are common in female organ transplant recipients (4) (Table 16).

Table 16: Factors that may affect a kidney graft during pregnancy

Haemodynamic changes
Hypertension
Impairment of renal function (5-10) (LE: 2a)
Rejection (11)
Urinary tract infections

Pregnancies in transplanted women are often unproblematic, but these patients should always be considered high risk and require shared care by an obstetrician, nephrologist, and a urologist.

Recommendations	GR
After kidney transplantation pregnancy is possible and well tolerated for most patients with normal graft function.	B
However, pregnant transplanted women always must be considered at high risk and their care requires the co-operation of the obstetrician, nephrologist, and urologist.	B

*3.3.3 **Care during pregnancy***

The care of a pregnant transplanted patient should focus on the risk factors mentioned in Table 16. This includes checking for bacterial urinary tract infection with monthly urine cultures and always treating bacteriuria, whether symptomatic or asymptomatic. Antibiotics agents should be chosen from the penicillin and cephalosporine families to avoid fetal and renal toxicity. Every urological endoscopy requires antibiotic protection. Viral infections may be transmitted to offspring. If this is CMV, the baby may be mentally retarded. Amniotic culture will reveal any fetal infections (12).

Recommendation	GR
Care during pregnancy should focus on control of proteinuria, hypertension (pre-eclampsia affects 30% of patients), renal function, rejection, and infection.	B

*3.3.4 **Immunosuppressive treatment***

The common immunosuppressive treatment used during pregnancy is cyclosporine, with or without azathioprine and prednisone (6,13). These drugs pass the placental barrier but apparently do not increase the risk of teratogenicity. Blood cyclosporine levels may change, and usually decrease, especially during the third trimester because of increased volume distribution and pharmacokinetic changes. Its dosage should usually be augmented. Recent papers suggest that the new drug tacrolimus (14,15) (LE: 3, 2b) used in kidney, heart, and liver transplantation might also be safe. There are only sporadic reports on the effects of mycophenolate mofetil (MMF), which, like sirolimus, is contraindicated due to teratogenicity (16).

Recommendations	GR
Cyclosporine and tacrolimus do not seem to increase the risk of teratogenicity and they are currently used with or without steroids and azathioprine.	B
Treatment with mycophenolate (mycophenolate mofetil or mycophenolate sodium) or m-TOR inhibitors (sirolimus or everolimus) is not recommended.	B

3.3.5 ***Follow-up***

Rates of spontaneous (14%) or therapeutic (20%) abortions in transplanted women are similar to those in the general population. Although a vaginal delivery is not mechanically impaired by an abdominal graft, pre-term delivery and a high rate (50%) of Caesarean sections are observed, due to a high incidence of prematurity (uncontrolled hypertension, fetal distress, rupture of membranes weakened by steroid use). About 20% of babies have a low birthweight (mean birthweight 2.5 kg ± 0.67 vs normal birthweight 3.5 kg ± 0.53) (17,18), but congenital abnormalities are no higher than in the general population. Breastfeeding is not suggested because of the baby's risk of ingesting immunosuppressive agents. A close follow-up of the mother in the first three post-partum months is recommended, including weekly renal function tests. Delay vaccinations until the infant is 6 months old.

There are few data on the growth, long-term outcome, or adult life of children born from kidney-transplanted mothers. Offspring are often born prematurely and have a reduced birthweight. Long-term studies on fetal exposure to immunosuppressive therapy have only recently begun. No other important data exist at present. Children of fathers in immunosuppressive treatment following kidney transplantation are clinically not different from those of the general population. They are aborted less often than foetuses of kidney-transplanted mothers. However, if the father is affected by hereditary disease, there is a higher risk of transmission.

Recommendations	GR
If there is no premature condition or fetal distress, vaginal delivery can be considered.	B
Breastfeeding is not recommended because of the potential risk of ingesting immunosuppressive agents.	B

3.3.6 ***References***

1. Pezeshki M, Taherian AA, Gharavy M, et al. Menstrual characteristics and pregnancy in women after renal transplantation. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 2004 May;85(2):119-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15099772
2. Bar J, Ben-Rafael Z, Padoa A, et al. Prediction of pregnancy outcome in subgroups of women with renal disease. Clin Nephrol 2000 Jun;53(6):437-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10879663
3. Stratta P, Canavese C, Giacchino F, et al. Pregnancy in kidney transplantation: satisfactory outcomes and harsh realities. J Nephrol 2003 Nov-Dec;16(6):792-806. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14736006
4. Tan PK, Tan A, Koon TH, et al. Effect of pregnancy on renal graft function and maternal survival in renal transplant recipients. Transplant Proc 2002 Jun;34(4):1161-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072304
5. Hou S. Pregnancy in chronic renal insufficiency and end-stage renal disease. Am J Kidney Dis 1999 Feb;33(2):235-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10023634
6. Fischer T, Neumayer HH, Fischer R, et al. Effect of pregnancy on long-term kidney function in renal transplant recipients treated with cyclosporine and with azathioprine. Am J Transplant 2005 Nov;5(11):2732-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16212634
7. Ehrich JH, Loirat C, Davison JM, et al. Repeated successful pregnancies after kidney transplantation in 102 women (Report by the EDTA Registry). Nephrol Dial Transplant 1996 Jul;11(7):1314-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8672028
8. Sturgiss SN, Davison JM. Effect of pregnancy on long-term function of renal allograft: an update. Am J Kidney Dis 1995 Jul;26(1):54-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7611268
9. First Mr, Combs CA, Weislttel P, et al. Lack of effect of pregnancy on renal allograft survival or function. Transplantation 1995 Feb;59(4):472-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7878748

10. Rahamimov R, Ben-Haroush A, Wittemberg C, et al. Pregnancy in renal transplant recipients: long-term effect on patient and graft survival. A single center experience. Transplantation 2006 Mar;81(5):660-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16534465
11. EBPG Expert Group on Renal Transplantation. European best practice guidelines for renal transplantation. Section IV: Long term management of the transplant recipient. IV.10. Pregnancy in renal transplant recipients. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2002;17(Suppl 4):50-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12091650
12. Hagay ZJ, Biran G, Ornoy A, et al. Congenital cytomegalovirus infection: along-standing problem still seeking a solution. Am J Obstet Gynecol 1996 Jan;174(1 Pt 1):241-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8572014
13. Armenti VT, Moritz MJ, Davison JM. Drug safety issues in pregnancy following transplantation and immunosuppression: effects and outcomes. Drug Saf 1998 Sep;19(3):219-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9747668
14. Kainz A, Harabacz I, Cowlrick IS, et al. Review of the course and outcome of 100 pregnancies in 84 women treated with tacrolimus. Transplantation 2000 Dec;70(12):1718-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11152103
15. Jain A, Venkataramanan R, Fung JJ, et al. Pregnancy after liver transplantation under tacrolimus. Transplantation 1997 Aug;64(4):559-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9293865
16. Sifontis NM, Coscia LA, Costantinescu S, et al. Pregnancy outcomes in solid organ transplant recipients with exposure to micophenolate mofetil or sirolimus. Transplantation 2006 Dec;82(12): 1698-702.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17198262
17. Davison JM, Milne JE. Pregnancy and renal transplantation. Br J Urol 1997 Jul;80(Suppl 1):29-32.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9240221
18. Sgro MD, Barozzino T, Mirghani HM, et al. Pregnancy outcome post renal transplantation. Teratology 2002 Jan;65(1):5-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11835226

4. TRANSPLANTATION TECHNIQUES

4.1 Transplant preparation and transplant techniques in adults

Transplant preparation is a crucial step in the transplantation process and should not be neglected. Key points of transplant preparation are listed in Table 17. The transplant procedure in adults, with special considerations, is detailed in Table 18.

Table 17: Transplant preparation

Kidney
Place the kidney on a sterile iced bed
Check for the absence of renal tumours
Tie all that is cut near the hilus (lymphostasis)
Vein
The right kidney should be removed, together with the infra renal vena cava for lengthening the renal vein on
the back table (1)
Artery
Preserve the aortic patch and check the intima of the renal ostium
In severe atheroma in the ostium, remove the aortic patch
In multiple arteries, back table reconstruction could be necessary (2,3)
Ureter
Preserve peri-pyelic and proximal peri-ureteral fat in the ‘golden triangle’
Check for double ureter

Transplant biopsies
Systematic in some centres because it can be very important to follow the long-term histological modifications of the transplant

Table 18: Transplant technique

Transplant technique in adults
Approach
Extra peritoneal approach of one iliac fossa
Transplantation is possible either into the contralateral or ipsilateral iliac fossa
Lymphostasis with clips or ligatures to avoid lymphocele is mandatory
Total mobilisation of the external iliac vein may avoid traction on the venous anastomosis (sometimes ligation of the internal iliac vein is necessary particularly for right transplant with a short vein)
Minimal dissection of the iliac artery
Vascular anastomosis
Generally external iliac vessels are used; avoid atheromatous plaques
Choose the sites of vascular anastomosis according to the length of each vessel to avoid plication or traction
Both anastomoses are performed with two halves of running non-absorbable monofil 6x0 or 5x0 sutures
Internal iliac artery should not be used except in specific situations
An orthotopic kidney transplant is possible to both the left and right iliac fossa (4)
Ureteral anastomosis
Extravesical implantation at the antero-lateral surface of the bladder is the method of choice. Suture the ureter to the bladder mucosa using two halves of running absorbable 6x0 or 5x0 sutures. This technique gives better results than open implantation to the bladder (5,6)
A double-J stent may be placed to protect the anastomosis, particularly in cases of tricky anastomoses.
Prophylactic double-J stenting prevents major urinary complications (7,8) ((LE; 1a)
The uretero-ureteral anastomosis is an alternative to a very short or poorly vascularised transplant ureter. It is also used for a third transplant or in children (9). A JJ-stent is absolutely necessary in these cases (LE: 3).
Intravesical implantation is an alternative in experienced hands (low rate ureteral complications). There is no data discussing placement of a double-J stent in intravescial implantation
Special considerations
Kidneys taken from children weighing < 15 kg
In adults, en-bloc transplantation should be performed, including the aorta and the inferior vena cava
The two ureters are anastomosed in double pant using the extra-vesical technique
Vascular problems in the recipient
If the iliac arteries do not allow clamping, endarterectomy or a simultaneous vascular prosthesis has to be performed (10)
If a prosthetic replacement has been previously carried out, implant the renal artery into the prosthesis using a punch perforator (11)
If iliac vein and/or vena cava are thrombosed, native renal vein or superior mesenteric vein can be used. However, in most cases, transplantation must be stopped
Postoperative heparinisation is not routinely indicated in non-risky live-donor renal transplantation (12) (LE; 1b)
Paediatric recipient
Large kidneys must be placed in a higher position towards the lumbar fossa, using the aorta or the right common iliac artery and the inferior vena cava
Iliac fossa is an option for young recipients (13,14) (LE: 3)

Recommendations	GR
It is essential not to neglect transplant preparation. This is a crucial step in the transplantation process.	C
Take care with lymphostasis into the recipient and during the graft preparation.	C

Vascular anastomosis sites should take into account the differences in vessel length.	C
JJ-stent may be used routinely.	C
Check the arterial and venous status before transplant.	C
Iliac fossa may be an alternative in children less than 20 kg provided the graft is small enough.	C

4.2 Early complications

*4.2.1 **General complications***

4.2.1.1 Wall abscesses (5%)

These are more common when the recipients are obese or old. Risk factors include diabetes, haematoma, urine lake posttransplant, obesity, rejection, or over-immunosuppression (15,16). Abscesses can be prevented by minimising electrocoagulation and using subcutaneous aspirational drainage in obese patients. A superficial abscess can be treated with a simple opening of the wound, while a deep abscess requires surgical drainage. It is important to look for urinary fistulae (LE; 3)

4.2.1.2 Haemorrhage

Risk factors include acetylsalicylic acid, poorly prepared transplant hilus, multiple renal arteries, renal biopsies and hyper-acute rejection (HAR) (17-19). A large haematoma or active bleeding requires surgical drainage. Following drainage, the uretero-vesical anastomosis must be checked and a JJ-stent may be inserted.

4.2.1.3 Haematuria

After transplant biopsy, look for arterio-venous fistula (AVF) (20). Selective percutaneous embolisation is necessary for large AVF and for recurring haematuria. Clotting may cause ureteral obstruction, increasing the risk of haematuria. Dialysis may be necessary if ureteral stenting or percutaneous nephrostomy are ineffective.

4.2.1.4 Incisional hernia (3-5%)

Risk factors include age, obesity, diabetes, haematoma, rejection, reoperation through transplant incision and finally m-TOR inhibitors (LE; 3). Treat in a similar way to a 'classical' incisional hernia with or without synthetic mesh (15,16,21,22).

*4.2.2 **Urinary fistulae***

Urinary fistulae are the most common early complication. They occur in 3-5% of cases in which a double J-stent has not been used (24-25). They can occur on the ureter, bladder, or parenchyma. The most frequent cause is ischaemic necrosis of the ureter (24,26).

4.2.2.1 Management

If it is possible to localise the fistula, it is worth trying nephrostomy and/or a vesical catheter and double J-stent. Stented re-implantation is possible if necrosis is very distal and the ureter is long enough. Otherwise, uretero-ureteral anastomosis is performed using the patient's original ureter (27). Vesical fistulae can be treated by suprapubic or transurethral catheter. Calyceal fistulae may be treated by JJ-stent and vesical catheter. In most cases, polar nephrectomy and omental plasty are necessary (28).

Recommendations	**GR**
Use a short ureter and keep the peri-ureteral fat around the hilus (29).	C
Avoid ligature of polar artery because of the risk of parenchymal and ureteral necrosis.	C
Prophylactic use of JJ-stent prevents major urinary complications (8).	A

*4.2.3 **Arterial thrombosis***

The incidence of arterial thrombosis is 0.5% in the first post-operative week. Risk factors include atherosclerosis, unidentified intimal rupture, poor suture technique, kinking if the artery is longer than the vein or the anastomosis is incorrectly sited, multiple arteries (30), and paediatric transplants (31-33). It should be suspected if there is primary non-function or sudden anuria. It is diagnosed by Doppler or technetium scan and confirmed by CT scan.

4.2.3.1 Treatment

Surgery is always necessary. A radiological endovascular may be carried out successfully within the first 12 h. However, tolerance to warm ischaemia is poor and most transplants have to be removed.

Recommendations	GR
Importance of procurement technique quality.	C
Preserve when possible the aortic patch; otherwise, use a punch perforator to create a large arterial opening.	C
Look for a possible intimal rupture before performing anastomosis.	C
Avoid plication of the artery.	C
Sudden anuria should lead to Doppler,	C

*4.2.4 **Venous thrombosis***

Venous thrombosis is rare, occurring in 0.5% of kidney transplants in adults and in 2.5% in paediatric patients (33,34). It is suspected by primary non-function, haematuria, or anuria and is diagnosed by Doppler or technetium scan. Salvage thrombectomy has a very poor success rate and transplantectomy is often necessary.

Recommendations	GR
Lengthen the right renal vein with the infra renal vena cava.	C
Carry out a large venous anastomosis.	C
Avoid post-operative drop in blood pressure.	C
If there is a history of thrombosis., check for hypercoagulation or Leiden factor V mutation.	C
Sudden anuria should lead to Doppler.	C

4.3 Late complications

*4.3.1 **Ureteral stenosis***

The renal calyces and pelvis are dilated and there is often an elevated creatinine level. These stenoses occur in 5% (range, 2-7.5%) of transplants (35-37). They can present late between 1 and 10 years' post transplant (38). There are three causes of ureteral dilatation:

- vesical high pressure with thickened bladder wall or urinary retention, which is treated by bladder drainage;
- vesicorenal reflux, which is not an obstruction;
- ureterovesical stenosis due to scar formation and/or poor surgical technique. These comprise 80% of ureteral stenoses. Most occur during the first year post transplant, although the risk of occurrence increases with time to 9% of transplant patients at 10 years.

Risk factors include multiple arteries, donor's age, cold ischemia time, delayed graft function, and CMV infection (35).
Initial treatment involves percutaneous drainage and checking renal function to see if it has improved. Imaging should then be done to determine the level of stenosis, degree, and length. Further treatment depends on the level of stenosis, degree, and delay of occurrence. This can be endoscopic, either transurethral or percutaneous. The outcome of dilatation is better when the stenosis is early, distal, and short (39-43). Treatment can also be with open surgery using a uretero-ureteral anastomosis to the patient's ureter or a vesicopyelostomy.

Recommendations
Use a short and well-vascularised ureter, surrounded by peri-ureteral fat.
Preserve peri-pyelic and proximal peri-ureteral fat in the 'golden triangle'.
Do not narrow the anastomosis and the antireflux tunnel.
Yearly routine echography.

*4.3.2 **Reflux and acute pyelonephritis***

Acute pyelonephritis is a rare complication (44,45). Reflux in the renal cavity is more common (46). Reflux is found in up to 30% of cases after Leadbetter and in 80% after Lich-Gregoire if the submucosal tunnel is short and in 10% if the tunnel is long. In lower urinary tract infections, the risk of acute pyelonephritis is 80% with reflux and 10% without reflux. Every reflux complicated by acute pyelonephritis should be treated with an endoscopic injection. This has a success rate of 30-78% (47,48). If this fails, try using a uretero-ureteral anastomosis if the native ureter is not refluxive, or a ureterovesical re-implantation with a long tunnel if the original ureter is refluxive or non-usable.

Recommendations
The anti-reflux tunnel for the uretero-vesical anastomosis should be 3-4 cm long.
Avoid lower urinary tract infections.
Endoscopic treatment might be the first option for the treatment of symptomatic reflux.

*4.3.3 **Kidney stones***

Kidney stones may be transplanted with the kidney or may be acquired. The incidence is less than 1% of transplants (49,50). The stones manifest themselves by haematuria, infection, or obstruction. Diagnosis may require non-injected CT scan. Some stones are eliminated spontaneously, but if stones do need to be removed, there are several options (51):

- The first step should be to try a JJ-catheter or echo-guided percutaneous nephrostomy.
- Calyceal and smaller renal stones should be treated by extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL).
- Larger stones should be removed by percutaneous (52) or open nephrolithotomy.
- Ureterolithiasis should be treated by ESWL (53) or by ureteroscopy (54).

Recommendations
Treat hyperparathyroidism in the recipient.
Use absorbable threads for the urinary anastomosis.
Treat urinary obstructions and infections.
Check calciuria.

*4.3.4 **Transplant Renal Artery Stenosis***

Transplant Renal Artery Stenosis (TRAS) has an incidence of 10% (range, 1-23%). TRAS risk factors are donor and recipient age, expanded criteria donor, delayed graft function, ischemic heart disease and induction immunosuppression (55). It is suspected when existing arterial hypertension becomes refractory to medical treatment and/or there is an increase in serum creatinine without hydronephrosis (56,57). It is diagnosed by Doppler sonography showing high velocity > 2m/s.

Treatment options include medical treatment and renal function follow-up, with interventional treatment indicated if the stenosis is > 70% (58). Transluminal dilatations, with or without stenting, give poorer results (70%) than surgery, but their simplicity makes them the first-line treatment for aligned and distal stenosis (34,59).

Open surgery is reserved for plication or anastomotic stenosis, failure of percutaneous dilatation, and involves resection with direct implantation. Repair with the saphenous vein must be avoided.

Recommendations
Use aortic patch from the donor.
Examine the artery intima, fix it or re-cut the artery when necessary.
Keep a long left renal vein, and lengthen the right one with the vena cava.
Avoid too tight anastomoses.

*4.3.5 **Arteriovenous fistulae and pseudo aneurysms after renal biopsy***

Arteriovenous fistulae are seen in 10% (range, 7-17%) of cases and are suggested by repeated haematuria (60,61). Diagnosis is by Doppler ultrasound and is confirmed by MRI or by angiography. Angiography is also the first step in treatment. Fistulae may regress spontaneously (20), but when persistent haematuria or when diameter > 15 mm, selective embolisation should be used. Pseudo aneurysms are often due to mycotic infection (62) and can be fatal.

Recommendation	GR
Avoid very deep biopsy reaching the renal hilum.	C

*4.3.6 **Lymphocele***

Lymphocele comprises 1-20% of complications. It occurs secondary to insufficient lymphostasis of the iliac vessels and/or of the transplant kidney. Obesity and the use of some immunosuppressant agents such as m-TOR inhibitors are associated with a higher risk of lymphocele (63-65). Generally, it is asymptomatic, but there may be pain caused by ureter compression or infection. No treatment is necessary for mild lymphocele or if there is no compression of the iliac vessels or the transplant ureter. Otherwise, laparoscopic marsupialisation

is the treatment of choice. Open surgery is indicated when laparoscopy (66) is not available or dangerous (67).

Recommendation	GR
Strict lymphostasis should be maintained by clips or ligatures of the lymphatic vessels of the transplant and during dissection of the iliac vessels.	C

4.4 References

1. Barry JM, Fuchs EF. Right renal vein extension in cadaver kidney transplantation. Arch Surg 1978 Mar;113(3):300. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/346002
2. Brekke IB. Management of multiple renal transplant arteries. Transpl Int 1990 Dec;3(4):241. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2076175
3. Bakirtas H, Guvence N, Eroglu M, et al. Surgical approach to cases with multiple renal arteries in renal transplantation. Urol Int 2006;76(2):169-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16493221
4. Musquera M, Peri LL, Alvarez-Vijande R, et al. Orthotopic kidney transplantation: an alternative surgical technique in selected patients. Eur Urol 2010 Dec;58(6):927-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20888120
5. Thrasher JB, Temple DR, Spees EK. Extravesical versus Leadbetter-Politano ureteroneocystostomy: a comparison of urological complications in 320 renal transplants. J Urol 1990 Nov;144(5):1105-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2231880
6. Butterworth PC, Horsburgh T, Veitch PS, et al. Urological complications in renal transplantation: impact of a change of technique. Br J Urol 1997 Apr;79(4):499-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9126075
7. Wilson C, Bathi A, Rix D, et al. Routine Intraoperative stenting for renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 2005 Oct;80(7):877-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16249733
8. Wilson C, Bathi A, Rix D, et al. Routine Intraoperative stenting for renal transplant recipients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Oct;(4):CD004925. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16235385
9. Lapointe SP, Charbit M, Jan D, et al. Urological complications after renal transplantation using ureteroureteral anastomosis in children. J Urol 2001 Sep;166(3):1046-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11490295
10. Pampaloni F, Sanchez LJ, Bencini L, et al. Simultaneous aortoiliac reconstruction and renal transplantation: is it safe? Chir Ital 2002 Jan-Feb;54(1):115-20. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11942002
11. George P, Tan HP, Beebe H, et al. Successful renal transplantation after endovascular bifurcated stent graft repair of an abdominal aortic aneurysm. Transplantation 2001 Aug;72(3):533-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11502990
12. Osman Y, Kamal M, Soliman S, et al. Necessity of routine postoperative heparinization in non-risky live donor renal transplantation: results of a prospective randomized trial. Urology 2007 Apr;69(4):647-651. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17445644
13. Furness PD 3rd, Houston JB, Grampsas SA, et al. Extraperitoneal placement of renal allografts in children weighing less than 15 kg. J Urol 2001 Sep;166(3):1042-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11490294
14. Humar A, Arrazola L, Mauer M, et al. Kidney transplantation in young children: should there be a minimum age? Pediatr Nephrol 2001 Dec;16(12):941-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11793077
15. Dean PG, Lund WJ, Larson TS, et al. Wound-healing complications after kidney transplantation: a prospective, randomized comparison of sirolimus and tacrolimus. Transplantation 2004 May;77(10):1555-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15239621
16. Humar A, Ramcharan T, Denny R, et al. Are wound complications after a kidney transplant more common with modern immunosuppression? Transplantation 2001 Dec;72(12):1920-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11773889
17. Azar GJ, Zarifian AA, Frentz GD, et al. Renal allograft rupture: a clinical review. Clin Transplant 1996 Dec;10(6 Pt 2):635-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8996757

18. Osman Y, Shokeir A, Ali-el-Dein B, et al. Vascular complications after live donor renal transplantation: study of risk factors and effects on graft and patient survival. J Urol 2003 Mar;169(3):859-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12576799
19. Schwarz A, Gwinner W, Hiss M, et al. Safety and adequacy of renal transplant protocol biopsies. Am J Transplant 2005 Aug;5(8):1992-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15996250
20. Brandenburg VM, Frank RD, Riehl J. Color-coded duplex sonography study of arteriovenous fistulae and pseudoaneurysms complicating percutaneous renal allograft biopsy. Clin Nephrol 2002 Dec;58(6): 398-404. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12508960
21. Flechner SM, Zhou L, Derweesh I, et al. The impact of sirolimus, mycophenolate mofetil, cyclosporine, azathioprine, and steroids on wound healing in 513 kidney-transplant recipients. Transplantation 2003 Dec;76(12):1729-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14688524
22. Rogers CC, Hanaway M, Alloway RR. Corticosteroid avoidance ameliorates lymphocele formation and wound healing complications associated with sirolimus therapy. Transplant Proc 2005 Mar;37(2):795-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15848534
23. Gögüs C, Yaman O, Soygür T, et al. Urological complications in renal transplantation: long-term follow-up of the Woodruff ureteroneocystostomy procedure in 433 patients. Urol Int 2002;69(2):99-101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187037
24. Karam G, Maillet F, Parant S, et al. Ureteral necrosis after kidney transplantation: risk factors and impact on graft and patient survival. Transplantation 2004 Sep;78(5):725-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371676
25. Secin FP, Rovegno AR, Marrugat RE, et al. Comparing Taguchi and Lich-Gregoir ureterovesical reimplantation techniques for kidney transplants. J Urol 2002 Sep;168(3):926-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187192
26. Shaul DB, Xie HW, Shimada H, et al. Venous ischemia as a cause of ureteral necrosis in transplanted ureters. J Pediatr Surg 1999 Nov;34(11):1725-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591580
27. Li Marzi V, Filocamo MT, Dattolo E, et al. The treatment of fistulae and ureteral stenosis after kidney transplantation. Transplant Proc 2005 Jul-Aug;37(6):2516-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16182729
28. Gutiérrez-Calzada JL, Ramos-Titos J, González-Bonilla JA, et al. Caliceal fistula formation following renal transplantation: management with partial nephrectomy and ureteral replacement. J Urol 1995 Mar;153(3 Pt 1):612-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7861495
29. Salvatierra O Jr, Olcott C 4th, Amend WJ Jr, et al. Urological complications of renal transplantation can be prevented or controlled. J Urol 1977 Apr;177(4):421-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/321807
30. Lechevallier E, Bretheau D, Berland Y, et al. [Outcome of kidney transplants with multiple arteries]. Prog Urol 1995 Jun;5(3): 370-6. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7670512
31. Adams J, Güdemann C, Tönshoff B, et al. Renal transplantation in small children--a comparison between surgical procedures. Eur Urol 2001 Nov;40(5):552-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11752865
32. Irish AB, Green FR, Gray DW, et al. The factor V Leiden (R506Q) mutation and risk of thrombosis in renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 1997 Aug;64(4):604-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9293873
33. Ismail H, Kalicinski P, Drewniak T, et al. Primary vascular thrombosis after renal transplantation in children. Pediatr Transplant 1997 Aug;1(1):43-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10084786
34. Duckett T, Bretan PN Jr, Cochran ST, et al. Noninvasive radiological diagnosis of renal vein thrombosis in renal transplantation. J Urol 1991 Aug;146(2)403-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1856941
35. Karam G, Hétet JR, Maillet F, et al. Late ureteral stenosis following renal transplantation: risk factors and impact on patient and graft survival. Am J Transplant 2006 Feb;6(2):352-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16426320

36. Schwartz BF, Chatham JR, Bretan P, et al. Treatment of refractory kidney transplant ureteral strictures using balloon cautery endoureterotomy. Urology 2001 Oct;58(4):536-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11597533
37. Giessing M. Transplant Ureter strictures following renal transplantation: surgical options. Transplant Proc 2011 Jan-Feb;43(1):383-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21335227
38. Faenza A, Nardo B, Catena F, et al. Ureteral stenosis after kidney transplantation. A study on 869 consecutive transplants. Transpl Int 1999;12(5):334-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10551998
39. Bhagat VJ, Gordon RL, Osorio RW, et al. Ureteral obstructions and leaks after renal transplantation: outcome of percutaneous antegrade ureteral stent placement in 44 patients. Radiology 1998 Oct;209(1):159-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9769827
40. Conrad S, Schneider AW, Tenschert W, et al. Endo-urological cold-knife incision for ureteral stenosis after renal transplantation. J Urol 1994 Sep;152(3):906-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8051750
41. Dugardin F, Rigaud J, Drapier E, et al. [Endoscopic incision of uretero-vesical junction after renal transplantation]. Prog Urol 2003 Jun;13(3):523-6. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12940212
42. Faenza A, Nardo B, Catena F, et al. Ureteral stenosis after kidney transplantation: interventional radiology or surgery? Transplant Proc 2001 Feb-Mar;33(1-2):2045-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11267618
43. Kristo B, Phelan MW, Gritsch HA, et al. Treatment of renal transplant ureterovesical anastomotic strictures using antegrade balloon dilation with or without holmium:YAG laser endoureterotomy. Urology 2003 Nov;62(5):831-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14624903
44. Ranchin B, Chapuis F, Dawhara M, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux after kidney transplantation in children. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2000 Nov;15(11):1852-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11071977
45. Vianello A, Pignata G, Caldato C, et al. Vesicoureteral reflux after kidney transplantation: clinical significance in the medium to long-term. Clin Nephrol 1997 Jun;47(6):356-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9202864
46. Ohba K, Matsuo M, Noguchi M, et al. Clinicopathological study of vesicoureteral reflux (VUR)-associated pyelonephritis in renal transplantation. Clin Transplant 2004;18(Suppl 11):34-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15191371
47. Mallet R, Game X, Mouzin M, et al. [Symptomatic vesicoureteral reflux in kidney transplantation: results of endoscopic injections of teflon and predictive factors for success]. Prog Urol 2003 Sep;13(4):598-601. [Article in French] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14650289
48. Pichler R, Buttazoni A, Rehder P, et al. Endoscopic application of dextranomer/hyaluronic acid copolymer n the treatment of vesico-ureteric reflux after renal transplantation BJU Int 2010 Jun;107(12):1967-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21059169
49. Abbott KC, Schenkman N, Swanson SJ, et al. Hospitalized nephrolithiasis after renal transplantation in the United States. Am J Transplant 2003 Apr;3(4):465-70. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12694070
50. Crook TJ, Keoghane SR. Renal transplant lithiasis: rare but time-consuming. BJU Int 2005 May;95(7):931-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15839905
51. Challacombe B, Dasgupta P, Tiptaft R, et al. Multimodal management of urolithiasis in renal transplantation. BJU Int 2005 Aug;96(3):385-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16042735
52. Francesca F, Felipetto R, Mosca F, et al. Percutaneous nephrolithotomy of transplanted kidney. J Endourol 2002 May;16(4):225-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12042104
53. Klingler HC, Kramer G, Lodde M, et al. Urolithiasis in allograft kidneys. Urology 2002 Mar;59(3):344-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11880067
54. Henderson A, Gujral S, Mitchelmore AE, et al. Endo-urological techniques in the management of stent complications in the renal transplant patient. Transplant Int 2002 Dec;15(12):664-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12478416

55. Seratnahaei A, Shah A, Bodiwala K, et al. Management of transplant renal artery stenosis. Angiology 2011 Apr;62(3):219-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20682611
56. Akbar SA, Jafri SZ, Amendola MA, et al. Complications of renal transplantation. Radiographics 2005 Sep-Oct;25(5):1335-56. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16160115
57. Bruno S, Remuzzi G, Ruggenenti P. Transplant renal artery stenosis. J Am Soc Nephrol 2004 Jan;15(1):134-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14694165
58. Spinosa DJ, Isaacs RB, Matsumoto AH, et al. Angiographic evaluation and treatment of transplant renal artery stenosis. Curr Opin Urol 2001 Mar;11(2):197-205. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224752
59. Ghanzafar A, Tavakoli A, Augusine T et al. Management of transplant renal artery stenosis and its impact on long term allografts survival : a single center experience. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2011 Jan;26(1):336-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20601365
60. Ladinsky GA, Goral S. Macroscopic hematuria in a kidney transplant recipient: a rare cause. Am J Kidney Dis 2006 Jan;47(1):e3-e7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16377377
61. Taghavi M, Shojaee Fard A, Mehrsai R, et al. Late onset anastomotic pseudoaneurysm of renal allograft artery: case report, diagnosis, and treatment. Transplant Proc 2005 Dec;37(10):4297-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16387101
62. Laouad I, Buchler M, Noel C, et al. Renal artery aneurysm secondary to Candida albicans in four kidney allograft recipients. Transplant Proc 2005 Jul-Aug;37(6):2834-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16182825
63. Goel M, Flechner SM, Zhou L, et al. The influence of various maintenance immunosuppressive drugs on lymphocele formation and treatment after kidney transplantation. J Urol 2004 May;171(5):1788-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15076277
64. Valente JF, Hricik D, Weigel K, et al. Comparison of sirolimus vs. mycophenolate mofetil on surgical complications and wound healing in adult kidney transplantation. Am J Transplant 2003 Sep;3(9):1128-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12919093
65. Vitko S, Margreiter R, Weimar W, et al; RAD B201 Study Group. Three-year efficacy and safety results from a study of everolimus versus mycophenolate mofetil in de novo renal transplant patients. Am J Transplant 2005 Oct;5(10):2521-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16162203
66. Schips L, Lipsky K, Hebel P, et al. Laparoscopic fenestration of lymphoceles after kidney transplantation with diaphanoscopic guidance. Urology 2005 Jul;66(1):185-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15992897
67. Fuller TF, Kang SM, Hirose R, et al. Management of lymphoceles after renal transplantation: laparoscopic versus open drainage. J Urol 2003 Jun;169(6):2022-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12771709

4.5 Kidney transplantation in abnormal urogenital tract

The following points should be considered when performing kidney transplantation in the abnormal urogenital tract:

- The technique used to implant transplant ureters in augmentations or conduits is the same as the method used with a patient's own ureter, e.g. following cystectomy for bladder cancer (Bricker, Wallace) patients.
- In patient with ileal conduits, kidney transplant may be placed upside down to avoid ureter loops
- In bladder augmentations or continent pouches, ureters are implanted by tunnel technique (Goodwin-Hohenfellner), or extravesically (favoured in most patients), e.g. using Lich Gregoir or Leadbetter methods (1-3).
- In ureterocystoplasty, it is feasible to perform uretero-ureterostomy with one of the patient's own ureters (1,4).
- In patients with continent ileocoecal pouches with umbilical stoma or ileocystoplasties/ileal neobladders, transplant kidneys must be placed on the contralateral left side with the transplant ureters, crossing the abdomen subsigmoidally (2,3,5) (LE: 3-4).

4.5.1 ***References***

1. Koo HP, Bunchman TE, Flynn JT, et al. Renal transplantation in children with severe lower urinary tract dysfunction. J Urol 1999 Jan;161(1):240-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10037414
2. Riedmiller H, Gerharz EW, Köhl U, et al. Continent urinary diversion in preparation for renal transplantation: a staged approach. Transplantation 2000 Dec;70(12):1713-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11152102
3. Sullivan ME, Reynard JM, Cranston DW. Renal transplantation into the abnormal lower urinary tract, BJU Int 2003 Sep;92(5):510-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12930409
4. Nahas WC, Mazzucchi E, Arap MA, et al. Augmentation cystoplasty in renal transplantation: a good and safe option-experience with 25 cases. Urology 2002 Nov;60(5):770-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12429293
5. Mendizábal S, Estornell F, Zamora I, et al. Renal transplantation in children with severe bladder dysfunction. J Urol 2005;173(1):226-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15592081

5. MATCHING OF DONORS AND RECIPIENTS

Recommendations	GR
The ABO blood group and the HLA-A, -B, and -DR phenotypes should be determined for all candidates awaiting kidney transplantation.	B
To avoid hyper-acute rejection, a lymphocyte cross-match test must be performed before each kidney and combined kidney/pancreas transplantation.	B

5.1 Histocompatibility (HLA) matching

Histocompatibility (HLA) matching is still very important in kidney transplantation because transplant outcome correlates with the number of HLA mismatches (1,2). HLA incompatibility can result in proliferation and activation of the recipient's CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells with concomitant activation of B-cell allo-antibody production. This leads to cellular and humoral graft rejection.

Histocompatibility antigens show remarkable polymorphism. Matching should concentrate on HLA antigens, which impact on rejection rates. The HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-DR phenotypes should be determined in all potential recipients and donors. Kidneys from deceased donors should preferentially be allocated to potential recipients with the lowest number of HLA mismatches. This is also true for living-donor transplantation, although HLA-compatibility is less important in living- than in deceased-donor kidney transplantation (3). In living-donor transplantation, other risk factors for graft rejection, e.g. cold ischaemia time, brain death, and donor's age, can be minimised.

5.1.1 ***Practical aspects of HLA-testing***

Laboratories that provide HLA-testing and cross-matching for a transplant centre must have a valid accreditation to ensure accuracy and reliability. They must follow the standards of national and international organisations, such as the European Federation for Immunogenetics. Other practical considerations include (4,5):

- Obtain cells for HLA-typing from the recipient's peripheral blood using an appropriate anticoagulant, e.g. ammonium heparin, ethylene diamine tetra-acetic acid (EDTA) or acid-citrate-dextrose (ACD). Most HLA laboratories use 20 mL heparinised peripheral blood for serological HLA typing and 10 mL EDTA peripheral blood for molecular typing.
- Type donors using lymphocytes from lymph nodes, spleen, or peripheral blood.
- Use a comprehensive set of reagents capable of detecting all commonly occurring HLA antigens in the relevant ethnic group.
- For HLA-A and HLA-B specificities, serological or molecular typing is accepted. For HLA-DR, only molecular typing is accepted. For reporting HLA antigens, the latest WHO nomenclature should be used (6).
- Use family typing or DNA typing to detect possible homozygosity if the phenotype of a potential recipient shows fewer than six HLA-A, -B, -DR antigens.

5.2 Cross-matching

To avoid hper-acute rejection (HAR), a cross-match test must be performed before each kidney and combined kidney/pancreas transplantation. Patients at risk are those who have HLA-specific allo-antibodies or have had an allo-immunising event, such as pregnancy, blood transfusion, or a previous transplantation.

The cross-match test detects preformed allo-antibodies in the recipient's serum directed against lymphocytes of the potential donor. Routinely, a complement-dependent lymphocytotoxicity (CDC) assay is used. Cross-matches must be carried out using unseparated lymphocytes or T-enriched lymphocytes of the potential donor. B-cell cross-matches must be performed if required by the relevant transplantation programmes. T-lymphocytes express only HLA class I antigens. As B-lymphocytes express, besides HLA class I antigens also HLA class II antigens on their surface, a B-cell cross-match is considered to be more sensitive than a cross-match with T-lymphocytes. Spleen contains more B-lymphocytes than peripheral blood. A cross-match with unseparated lymphocytes from spleen is therefore more sensitive than a cross-match with unseparated lymphocytes from peripheral blood. A positive T-cell cross-match is generally a contraindication to transplantation. A positive B-cell cross-match result can occur for different reasons, including anti-HLA class I/II antibodies or allo-antibodies, immune complexes, therapy with anti-B-cell agents (rituximab, alemtuzumab), and non-HLA allo-antibodies (not shown yet). For a positive B-cell cross-match, individual decisions should be made based on the recipient's antibody status and immunological history. Sera obtained 14 days after a potentially sensitising event should be included in a final cross-match.

Be aware of false-positive cross-match results, especially in autoimmune diseases, which often exhibit clinically irrelevant IgM auto-antibodies. Inactivation of IgM antibodies by serum treatment with dithiothreitol (DTT) can minimise false-positive cross-match results. However, be aware that IgM-anti-HLA allo-antibodies are also DTT-sensitive. Anti-HLA allo-antibodies of the IgM isotype are rare and a positive cross-match result due to IgM-anti-HLA is currently considered as potentially relevant.

Flow cytometry cross-match may be used in presensitised recipients at high risk of antibody-mediated graft rejection. However, the great sensitivity of flow cytometric cross-match may exclude unnecessarily a high number of patients from transplantation (1,7). An enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, ELISA) cross-match test, which uses solid-phase technology to detect donor-specific anti-HLA antibodies, is being evaluated.

5.3 Pre-existing HLA-specific antibodies

Sera from potential organ recipients should be screened for HLA-specific antibodies every 3 months or as stipulated by the national and/or international organ exchange organisations.
Screening for HLA-specific antibodies should be carried out at 2 and 4 weeks after every immunising event, e.g. blood transfusion, transplantation, pregnancy, and graft explantation.

The results of HLA-antibody testing in a recipient's serum are expressed as the percentage of panel reactive antibodies (%PRA) and as the HLA specificity against which these antibodies react. To detect antibodies to HLA class II antigens, a technique must be used that distinguishes them from antibodies to HLA class I antigens. In the standard CDC assay, the panel of lymphocytes used cover most of the common HLA-alleles in the donor population and should optimally contain at least 50 different HLA-typed cells.

As the assay is not sufficiently sensitive, clinically relevant anti-HLA class I and class II antibodies may go undetected in the traditional microlymphocytotoxicity assay (8). Non-complement fixing antibodies are not detected at all. More specific and sensitive solid-phase techniques have been developed, such as flow cytometry and ELISA, which use solubilised or recombinant HLA molecules instead of lymphocytes. Preformed non-HLA allo-antibodies may also influence graft outcome (9). Solid-phase assays are strictly HLA-specific and cannot detect non-HLA antibodies. It is not clear whether clinically relevant non-HLA antibodies are expressed on B-lymphocytes and can therefore be recognised by lymphocytotoxicity testing. No antibody screening methods can reliably detect all clinically relevant allo-antibodies, and a combination or alternate use of lymphocytotoxic and solid-phase antibody screening methods is therefore recommended (6).

Presensitised patients with high PRA have two major disadvantages:

- Due to an often positive cross-match, they generally wait longer for an organ than non-sensitised patients;
- Overlooked antibodies or higher alloreactivity in the cross-match may adversely affect the graft outcome.

*5.3.1 **Eurotransplant Acceptable Mismatch (AM) programme***

Special efforts, such as the acceptable mismatch (AM) programme of Eurotransplant, have achieved successful transplantation in highly sensitised patients (PRA ≥ 85%) (10). A careful analysis of HLA antibody specificities is carried out to avoid unacceptable HLA antigens and to determine acceptable HLA antigens in potential donors, who are expected to give a negative cross-match result. Patients accepted for the AM programme of

Eurotransplant are given high priority during organ allocation if the donor cross-match test is negative.

5.4 ABO compatibility

Compatibility for ABO blood group antigens is of critical importance in kidney transplantation. Since blood group antigens can behave as strong transplant antigens (i.e. expression on renal vascular endothelium), incompatibility in the ABO antigen system between donor and recipient can cause early HAR and must be avoided. However, with the introduction of antibody elimination methods and anti-B cell agents, increasing numbers of centres are performing successful ABO-incompatible transplantations, even without splenectomy (11).

Despite an elevated risk of post-transplant haemolytic disease due to resting donor B-cells in the graft, the kidneys of potential donors with blood group O can theoretically be transplanted in A, B, or AB recipients. To avoid an increasing imbalance between demand and supply in deceased-donor kidney transplantation in O recipients, ABO identity is demanded by several organ allocation organisations with a few exceptions, e.g. as in zero HLA-A+B+DR-mismatch kidneys. In living-donor transplantation, ABO compatibility is as acceptable as ABO identity.

5.5 References

1. CTS Collaborative Transplant Study. http://ctstransplant.org/public/publications/329.html [access date January 2012].
2. UNOS United Network for Organ Sharing. http://www.unos.org [access date January 2012]
3. Terasaki PI, Cecka JM, Gjertson DW, et al. High survival rates of kidney transplants from spousal and living unrelated donors. N Engl J Med 1995 Aug;333(6):333-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609748
4. EFI European Federation for Immunogenetics. Standards for histocompatibility testing. http://www.efiweb.eu/ [access date January 2012]
5. The British Transplantation Society. Towards standards for organ and tissue transplantation in the United Kingdom http://www.bts.org.uk/Forms/Towards%20standards.pdf [access date January 2010]
6. The Anthony Nolan Trust. Nomenclature for factors of the HLA system, monthly updates 2006-2008. http://hla.alleles.org/ [access date January 2012]
7. Christiaans MH, Overhof R, ten Haaft A, et al. No advantage of flow cytometry crossmatch over complement-dependent cytotoxicity in immunologically well-documented renal allograft recipients. Transplantation 1996 Nov;62(9):1341-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8932282
8. Süsal C, Opelz G. Kidney graft failure and presensitization against HLA class I and class II antigens. Transplantation 2002 Apr;73(8):1269-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11981420
9. Opelz G; Collaborative Transplant Study. Non-HLA transplantation immunity revealed by lymphocytotoxic antibodies. Lancet 2005 May;365(9470):1570-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15866311
10. De Meester J, Doxiadis II, Persijn GG, et al. Renal transplantation of highly sensitised patients via prioritised renal allocation programs. Shorter waiting time and above-average graft survival. Nephron 2002 Sep; 92(1):111-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12187093
11. Segev DL, Simpkins CE, Warren DS, et al. ABO incompatible high-titer renal transplantation without splenectomy or anti-CD20 treatment. Am J Transplant 2005 Oct;5(10):2570-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16162210

6. IMMUNOSUPPRESSION AFTER KIDNEY TRANSPLANTATION

6.1 Introduction

The principle underlying successful immunosuppression is ‘the balance of survival’. Practitioners must prescribe a dosage of drug high enough to suppress rejection without endangering the recipient’s health. Increased understanding of immune rejection has led to the development of safe modern immunosuppressives

(1), which suppress sensitised lymphocyte activity against a transplant. Immunosuppression is particularly important during the initial post-transplant period when there is a high incidence of early post-transplant rejection.

In later post-operative stages, 'graft adaptation' occurs, resulting in the very low rejection rates seen in maintenance patients. Rejection prophylaxis should therefore be reduced over time by steroid tapering and gradual lowering of calcineurin inhibitor (CNI) (2,3) (LE: 1b).

Non-specific side-effects of immunosuppression include a higher risk of malignancy and infection, particularly opportunistic infections (1-3). All immunosuppressants also have dose-dependant specific side-effects. Current immunosuppressive protocols aim to reduce drug-specific side-effects using a synergistic regimen (4). A truly synergistic regimen allows profound dose reductions of immunosuppressive drugs, so reducing side-effects, while still maintaining efficacy due to the synergistic effects of the immunosuppressants (LE: 1b).

Current standard initial immunosuppression provides excellent efficacy with good tolerability (5,6). It is given to most patients and consists of:

- CNIs (cyclosporine or tacrolimus);
- Mycophenolate (MMF or enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium, EC-MPS);
- Steroids (prednisolone or methylprednisolone);
- With or without induction therapy.

This multidrug regimen reflects today the standard of care for the majority of transplant recipients worldwide (5,6) (LE: 1b).

This standard regimen is likely to change as new immunosuppressive drugs and new treatment regimens are developed (7). In addition, any initial drug regimen will need to be tailored to the individual needs of a patient as suggested by the appearance of side-effects, lack of efficacy or protocol-driven requirements (3,4,6).

6.2 Primary immunosuppressive prophylaxis

*6.2.1 **Calcineurin inhibitors (CNIs)***

Both cyclosporine and tacrolimus have significant side-effects that are hazardous to the graft and patient (1-3) (8,9). Most importantly, both are nephrotoxic (10,11) (LE: 1a), and long-term use is a major cause of chronic allograft dysfunction, eventually leading to graft loss or severe chronic kidney disease in recipients of non-renal organs (12).

6.2.1.1 Cyclosporine A

Cyclosporine A micro-emulsion (CsA-ME; Neoral) has a better pharmacokinetic profile and appears to be more acceptable to patients compared to the previous formulation (Sandimmune) (1,6,13,14). More importantly, the area under the absorption curve is higher with CsA-ME than with Sandimmune, enabling a reduction in the dosage of cyclosporine without affecting efficacy (8). CsA-ME treatment is also associated with a reduced rejection rate 1 year post transplant (8) (LE: 1b).

Although CsA-ME has proven efficacy and safety, it is a 'critical-dose' drug, so that any deviations from exposure can lead to severe toxicity or failure of efficacy (13,14). The demonstration of bioequivalence in healthy volunteers according to standard criteria is not sufficient evidence to support treatment of all renal allograft recipients with generic formulations of cyclosporine. Until more data are available, the patient and physician prescibing generic cyclosporine formulations must be aware of potential differences in exposure, maximal drug concentration, variability and food effects (15,16). Precautions (e.g. close surveillance and determination of drug levels) should be instituted after conversion from one cyclosporine formulation to another (13,14) (LE: 2a).

Pharmaceutical companies and researchers are asked to provide sufficient data on key pharmacokinetic parameters in target populations, including de-novo transplanted patients. Drug agencies should institute more stringent criteria for 'critical dose' drugs requesting approval (LE: 4).

Cyclosporine causes hypercholesterolaemia, hypertension, gum hypertrophy, constipation, hirsutism, and acne (1-3,8,10) (LE: 1a). Therapeutic drug monitoring is mandatory (17,18) (LE: 3) because of its narrow therapeutic window and the potential for drug-to-drug interaction. The drug level at 2 hours after intake (C2) may correlate better with exposure with retrospective studies suggesting a better correlation for C2 levels with outcome parameters (17,18) (LE: 3). However, no prospective comparative studies have been undertaken, and C2 levels alone may not adequately reflect cyclosporine exposure in the early post-transplant period (17,18) (LE: 2b). Furthermore, the determination of C2 levels may cause logistical problems. Most importantly, similar overall outcomes were achieved with conventional monitoring strategies. In summary, both cyclosporine-monitoring strategies are useful for assessing cyclosporine exposure. The additional measurement of a trough

level in C2-monitored patients or of a C2 level in trough-level monitored patients may provide a more accurate assessment of drug exposure (18) (LE: 4).

6.2.1.2 Tacrolimus

Tacrolimus is a more powerful immunosuppressive than cyclosporine, as indicated by its more potent prophylaxis of transplant rejection. However, its use is associated with diabetes, neurological side-effects (tremor, headache), hair loss, gastrointestinal side-effects (e.g. diarrhoea, nausea, vomiting), and hypomagnesemia (1-3,8,10) (LE: 1a). In combination with a mycophenolate, it may also more often cause over-immunosuppression, namely polyoma nephritis (19) (LE: 1b).

A new modified-release formulation (Advagraf), which allows once-daily dosing of tacrolimus (20,21), has been approved in Europe, though not yet in the USA. Advagraf fulfils standard bioequivalence criteria, although it results in slightly lower exposure, lower peak levels and lower trough levels, which therefore require a higher dosage to maintain exposure (20-23) (LE: 1b). Too low a level of exposure may be critical, especially early after transplantation.

Both tacrolimus formulations provide effective rejection prophylaxis and overall similar outcomes compared to cyclosporine (22) (LE: 1b). Because of its narrow therapeutic window and the potential for drug-to-drug interaction, tacrolimus should be monitored using trough levels, which provide a reasonable estimate for exposure (20,21) (LE: 3).

6.2.1.3 Summary

Meta-analysis of tacrolimus and cyclosporine has demonstrated similar outcomes with respect to overall patient and graft survival (8) (LE: 1a). Some analyses have shown that tacrolimus provided better rejection prophylaxis and was associated with slightly better graft survival, when censored for death in some analyses. Renal function was favourable for tacrolimus-treated patients, but did not reach statistical significance in most analyses. Several more recent trials have confirmed that rejection prophylaxis is better with tacrolimus (22,24,25), but failed to show any benefit with respect to patient and graft survival. Thus, in summary, both Calcineurin-inhibitors (CNIs) can be used for the effective prevention of acute rejection (LE: 1a).

In case of specific side effects of a CNI (e.g. hirsutism, alopecia, gingival hyperplasia, diabetes, polyoma nephropathy) conversion to the other CNI can be a successful strategy to reduce side effects (26,27) (LE: 1b). Due to differences in the efficacy and safety profile, the choice of CNI should include the individual risks and benefits for each patient (LE: 4).

Despite their side-effects, CNIs have been a cornerstone of modern immunosuppresive regimens for more than 20 years because they have resulted in an exemplary improvement in kidney graft survival. This has led to success in pancreas, heart, liver, and lung transplantation (1) (LE: 1a). Future protocols aim to minimise or even eliminate CNIs. However, until such strategies provide superior outcomes, CNIs remain the standard of care in the initial post-operative period (2,3) (LE: 1b). For severe CNI-related side-effects, CNI withdrawal, replacement, or profound reduction may be needed (10) (LE: 2b). Special attention should be paid to maintenance patients, which may need less CNIs than previously thought (26,28) (LE: 1b).

Recommendations	**GR**
Rejection prophylaxis with Calcineurin-inhibitors represents current best practice pending publication of long-term results using newer agents.	A
The choice of Calcineurin-inhibitors depends on the immunological risk, recipient characteristics, concomitant immunosuppression, and socio-economic factors.	A
Blood-level monitoring of both cyclosporine and tacrolimus is mandatory to prevent under-immunosuppression (enhanced risk of rejection) and excessively high blood levels (resulting in a high risk of chronic side-effects, particularly nephrotoxicity).	A

*6.2.2 **Mycophenolates***

The mycophenolates, MMF and EC-MPS, are based on mycophenalic acid (MPA), which inhibits inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase. This is the rate-limiting step for the synthesis of guanosine monophosphate in the de-novo purine pathway. As the function and proliferation of lymphocytes is more dependent on de-novo purine nucleotide synthesis compared to other cell types, inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors may provide a more specific lymphocyte-targeted immunosuppression (1). Mycophenolic acid is not nephrotoxic; however, it inhibits bone marrow function and may cause gastrointestinal side-effects particularly diarrhoea (29,30). Both MPA formulations are equally effective with an almost identical safety profile (29) (LE: 1b), though some prospective studies suggest a better gastrointestinal side-effect profile for EC-MPS in patients who have suffered from MMF-related gastrointestinal complaints, although firm evidence from prospective randomised studies is lacking (31,32) (LE: 2a).

The co-administration of mycophenolate with prednisolone and CNI has resulted in a profound reduction of biopsy-proven rejections (33) (LE: 1b). A retrospective study Mycophenolate mofetil decreased the relative rate for chronic allograft rejection by 27% versus azathioprine, an effect independent of the reduction of acute cellular rejection in patients receiving MMF (33) (LE: 3). Recent retrospective studies have suggested that MPA dose reductions are associated with inferior outcomes (31) (LE: 3).

Other side-effects include the potential for over-immunosuppression, especially a higher incidence of CMV infections and severe CMV disease, and a higher incidence of polyoma nephropathy, especially when mycophenolate is combined with tacrolimus (1-3) (LE: 1b). Standard doses in combination with cyclosporine are MMF 1 g bid or EC-MPS 720 mg bid (LE: 1b), although higher initial doses have been suggested, recently (34,35) (LE: 2b). MPA is not formally approved for use with tacrolimus, though this is the most frequently used drug combination in many countries worldwide (5). Despite its frequent use with tacrolimus, there is insufficient evidence to support the optimal dosage for this combination (34,35). Tacrolimus has no influence on MPA exposure and leads to approximately 30% higher MPA exposure compared to cyclosporine (34,35) (LE: 2a). Most transplant centres use the same starting dose compared to cyclosporine-treated patients (35) (LE: 2b), however dose reductions are frequent, especially because of gastrointestinal side-effects (35). After 6-12 months, most patients are treated with a daily dose of MMF, 1000-1500 mg, or EC-MPS, 720-1080 mg (22,24,25). Due to the high incidence of side effects, some centers perform a protocol-driven MPA dose reduction in tacrolimus treated patients (34,35) (LE: 3).

Regular monitoring for polyoma is recommended in patients given MPA combined with tacrolimus (36,37) (LE: 3).

Due to a higher incidence of CMV disease with MPA, either CMV prophylaxis or a pre-emptive strategy with regular screening for CMV viraemia should be instituted (37-40) (LE: 1a). CMV prophylaxis with antiviral medications (e.g. valganciclovir) should be used routinely in CMV positive recipients and in CMV negative recipients of CMV positive organ transplants, because prophylaxis recently has been shown to reduce CMV disease, CMV-associated mortality in solid organ transplant recipients (40), and leads to better long-term graft survival in kidney allograft recipients (38) (LE: 1a).

The benefit for MPA drug monitoring is uncertain and currently not recommended for the majority of patients (34,35,41-44) (LE: 1b).

In maintenance patients, the potency of MPA can be used for successful steroid withdrawal in most patients (45,46) (LE: 1a) or for substantial dose reductions of nephrotoxic CNIs, which may lead to better renal function (2,3,28,47) (LE: 1b). Although there have been several studies of the potential for CNI-free protocols with MPA and steroids, complete CNI avoidance or withdrawal over the first 3 years has been associated with a substantially increased rejection risk and even worse outcomes in prospective randomised studies (47-49) (LE: 1b). In contrast, CNI withdrawal under MPA and steroids appeared to be safe in long-term maintenance patients beyond 5 years' post-transplant and resulted in improved renal function (50,51) (LE: 1b). It is under investigation whether or not early CNI withdrawal under combination therapy of MPA, steroids and m-TOR inhibitors is safe and efficacious.

Recommendations	**GR**
Mycophenolates are the current standard of care. The standard dose of MMF combined with cyclosporine is 1 g bid or EC-MPS 720 mg bid.	A
Combination therapy of mycophenolates with tacrolimus is not formally approved. Optimal mycophenolate dosing is not yet clear, as tacrolimus-treated patients develop higher MPA exposure compared to cyclosporine-treated patients. The standard starting dose of MMF combined with tacrolimus is MMF 1 g bid or EC-MPS 720 mg bid. This dosage, which is applied in most centres, is often reduced resulting in 30-50% lower doses at 1 year.	A
Mycophenolate drug monitoring cannot be recommended for all patients due to limited evidence supporting its benefit.	A

6.2.3 ***Azathioprine***

Mycophenolate is now routinely used as a primary therapy in place of azathioprine in most units worldwide. In comparison to azathioprione, MPA reduced rejection rates significantly in prospective randomised trials (1,5,6,28,29) (LE: 1b). Although a recent, large, prospective study found that azathioprine may give acceptable results in a low-risk population (52) (LE: 1b), azathioprine is usually reserved for patients who cannot tolerate MPA (5,6). When added to dual therapy with cyclosporine and steroids, a meta-analysis found no significant benefit for azathioprine with respect to major outcome parameters (53) (LE: 1a).

Recommendations	GR
Azathioprine may be used in a low-risk population as initial immunosuppression, especially for those intolerant to MPA formulations.	A
There is no firm evidence for the efficacy of azathiprine in combination therapy with CNIs and steroids.	A

*6.2.4 **Steroids***

Steroids have a large number of side-effects (1-3,45,54), especially with long-term use. Most practitioners still consider prednisolone to be a fundamental adjunct to primary immunosuppression (5), even though successful prednisolone withdrawal has been achieved in the vast majority of patients in many prospective, randomised trials (45,46,55,56) (LE: 1a). These trials suggest the risk of steroid withdrawal depends on the use of concomitant immunosuppressive medication, immunological risk, ethnicity, and time after transplantation. Although the risk of rejection diminishes over time, potential benefits may be less prominent after a prolonged steroid treatment peroid. (1-3,45,54,57) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Initial steroid therapy remains the standard in perioperative and early posttransplant period.	A
There is increasing evidence that steroids may be safely stopped in most patients after 3-12 months on combination therapy with Calcineurin-inhibitors and myco phenalic acid.	A
Steroid-free long-term therapy is inherently associated with a reduction of steroid-induced side effects.	A

*6.2.5 **Inhibitors of the mammalian target of rapamycin (m-TOR)***

The immunosuppressants, sirolimus and everolimus, inhibit the mammalian target of rapamycin (m-TOR) and suppress lymphocyte proliferation and differentiation. They inhibit both calcium-dependent and calcium-independent pathways and block cytokine signals for T-cell proliferation. Similar effects are seen on B-cells, endothelial cells, fibroblasts, and tumour cells (1-3,57-60). m-TOR inhibitors are as effective as MPA when combined with CNIs in preventing rejection (57-60) (LE: 1b).

6.2.5.1 Side-effects

m-TOR inhibitors exhibit dose-dependent bone marrow toxicity. Other potential side-effects include hyperlipidaemia, oedema, development of lymphoceles, wound-healing problems, pneumonitis, proteinuria, and impaired fertility (57-60) (LE: 1b). When combined with CNIs, pneumocystis prophylaxis is mandated, e.g. low-dose cotrimoxazole (57-60) (LE: 3). Most importantly, combination therapy with CNIs aggravate CNI-induced nephrotoxicity, although m-TOR inhibitors themself are non-nephrotoxic (57-60) (LE: 1b). Several studies suggest less favourable outcomes for this combination, especially if CNIs are maintained at standard dosages (57-61) (LE: 3). Calcineurin-inhibitors dosage should therefore be substantially reduced in combination therapy with m-TOR inhibitors, which seems to have no impact on effcacy, due to the highly synergisitic potential of this combination therapy (57-60) (LE: 1b).

6.2.5.2 Comparison of pharmacokinetics and licensed use

To date, no prospective comparative studies have been carried out on sirolimus and everolimus. Both m-TOR inhibitors have an almost identical side-effect profile and mainly differ in their pharmacokinetic properties (57-60). Sirolimus has a half-life of about 60 h, is given once a day and is licensed for prophylaxis of kidney recipients only. Everolimus has a half-life of about 24 h, is licensed for kidney and heart recipients and is given twice a day. Everolimus is licenced for use with cyclosporine (57-60) (LE: 1b) and can be given simultaneously with cyclosporine, while sirolimus should be given 4 h after cyclosporine (57-60). Sirolimus is also licensed in combination therapy with steroids for cyclosporine withdrawal from combination therapy with cyclosporine (57-60) (LE: 1b).

Therapeutic monitoring of trough levels is recommended because of the narrow therapeutic window and the risk of drug-to-drug interactions (57-60) (LE: 3).

6.2.5.3 Conversion from CNIs to m-TOR inhibitors

Despite an encouraging earlier metaanalysis (60), recent studies suggest m-TOR inhibitors cannot replace CNIs in the initial phase after transplantation due to lower efficacy and a less favourable side-effect profile, particularly wound healing problems and lymphoceles (2,3,24,57-60) (LE: 1a). Other research suggests that m-TOR inhibitors can safely replace CNI at later stages, e.g. 3 months after transplantation, with improvements in renal function (2,3,57-60,62) (LE: 1a). However, especially early after transplantation, there is a slightly

increased risk of rejection, which may be offset by the benefit of the non-nephrotoxic immunosuppression. Despite higher rejection rates, one study showed better long-term survival, better renal function and fewer malignancies under dual therapy with sirolimus and steroids compared to the more nephrotoxic therapy with cyclosporine, steroids and sirolimus. (2,3,57-60,62) (LE: 1b).

Proteinuria and poor renal function are associated with inferior outcomes. Conversion from CNI is not advisable in patients with proteinuria > 800 mg/day (57-60,63-65) (LE: 1b). A cautious and individual approach should be followed in patients with GFR < 30 mL/min (57-60,63-65) (LE: 3).

Due to an antiproliferative effect and a lower incidence of malignancy in sirolimus-treated patients, conversion from CNIs to m-TOR inhibitors may be beneficial for patients, who develop malignancy after transplantation, or who are at a high risk for the development of post-transplant malignancy (57-60,66) (LE: 3). However, no controlled trials have reported better outcomes after conversion. To date, only a few data on long-term follow-up of m-TOR-treated patients have been reported. Emerging side-effects including proteinuria (66,67) and infertility (68) warrant an individual and cautious approach (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Acute rejection can be effectively prevented by m-TOR inhibitors, such as sirolimus and everolimus, in combination with CNIs. This combination regimen is associated with enhanced nephrotoxicity and inferior outcomes. CNI dosage must be significantly reduced to prevent aggravated nephrotoxicity.	A
Initial CNI-free combination therapy of m-TOR inhibitors with MPA and steroids is not sufficient to effectively prevent acute rejection compared to a standard regimen.	A
Use of m-TOR inhibitors is associated with impaired wound healing. Prophylactic surgical measures must be implemented if patients receive m-TOR inhibitors during the peri-operative period.	A
m-TOR inhibitors can safely replace CNIs beyond the early post-transplant period. They are a valid alternative to CNIs when there are severe CNI related side-effects, e.g. nephrotoxicity.	A
Blood levels of both sirolimus and everolimus must be measured at regular intervals.	A

CNI = Calcineurin-inhibitors

*6.2.6 **T-cell depleting induction therapy***

Prophylactic immunosuppression in many countries, particularly the USA, featured the emergence of 'induction' treatments, using biological T-cell depleting agents. These include anti-thymocyte globulin (ATG), OKT3 and more recently an anti-CD52 antibody (Campath1-H) after renal transplantation (1,5).
Some centres use these agents to provide effective rejection prophylaxis while initiating CNIs after recovery of the graft from ischaemic injury, although evidence supporting this hypothesis is lacking (69,70) (LE: 1b). Graft rejection rates are initially lower with induction treatment (69-71); however, some studies suggest an increased rejection rate after cessation of lymphocyte depletion (70,72). There is no evidence of better long-term graft survival in patients receiving induction therapy versus those who have not (70,73-75) (LE: 3). In contrast, it is well documented that induction therapies with T-cell depleting agents carry an increased risk of post-operative opportunistic infections and cancer, especially post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease (70,73-75) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Potential life-threatening side-effects of T-cell depleting biological induction therapy include a higher incidence of severe opportunistic infections and malignancy, particularly post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease.	B
Use of T-cell depleting antibodies has not been associated with improved outcomes in the overall population.	B
T-cell depleting antibodies should not be routinely used in a low-risk first-transplant recipient.	B
If such induction therapy is used, the increased risks of infection and cancer must be explained to the patient before staring therapy.	B

*6.2.7 **Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies***

Two high-affinity anti-interleukin-2 (IL-2) receptor monoclonal antibodies (daclizumab and basiliximab) are approved for rejection prophylaxis following organ transplantation (1,70,76-78). These agents are given in a short course during the post-transplantation period, are safe, and have been shown in randomised controlled trials to reduce the prevalence of acute cellular rejection by approximately 40% (70,78) (LE: 1a). Both antibodies appear to be equally efficacious, though no formal comparative study was performed.

A meta-analysis has confirmed the efficacy, although no positive effect on patient or graft survival could be demonstrated (78) (LE: 1a) although large retrospective cohort studies and a recent large prospective

study suggest such a benefit (24,70,73,75). The effect of these antibodies in combination with tacrolimus and/or mycophenolate was not investigated in the meta-analysis. Several recently published large controlled trials support the efficacy and safety of quadruple therapy with these agents (6,22,24,25,49,55,56,70) (LE: 1b). Interleukin-2 receptor antibodies may allow early steroid withdrawal (55,56) (LE: 1b), although higher rejection rates were described. Most importantly, IL-2 receptor antibodies allow a substantial reduction in CNIs, while maintaining excellent efficacy and renal function. (2,3,6,24,47) (LE: 1b).

Recommendations	GR
Use of IL-2R antibodies for preventing rejection is efficacious and safe, and effectively reduces the rate of acute rejection, enabling CNI- and steroid sparing regimens.	A
Formal evidence for improved patient and graft outcome is lacking, although recent large clinical trials suggest such a benefit.	A

6.2.8 ***References***

1. Halloran PF. Immunosuppressive drugs for kidney transplantation. N Engl J Med 2004 Dec;351(26):2715-29. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15616206
2. Augustine JJ, Hricik DE. Minimization of immunosuppression in kidney transplantation. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2007 Nov;16(6):535-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18089967
3. Srinivas TR, Meier-Kriesche HU. Minimizing immunosuppression, an alternative approach to reducing side effects: objectives and interim result. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3(Suppl 2):S101-16. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308998
4. Budde K, Glander P. Pharmacokinetic principles of immunosuppressive drugs. Ann Transplant 2008;13(3):5-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18806727
5. Andreoni KA, Brayman KL, Guidinger MK, et al. Kidney and pancreas transplantation in the United States, 1996-2005. Am J Transplant 2007;7(5 Pt 2):1359-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17428285
6. Knoll G. Trends in kidney transplantation over the past decade. Drugs 2008;68(Suppl 1):3-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18442296
7. Vincenti F, Kirk AD. What's next in the pipeline. Am J Transplant 2008 Oct;8(10):1972-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18828764
8. Webster AC, Woodroffe RC, Taylor RS, et al. Tacrolimus versus ciclosporin as primary immunosuppression for kidney transplant recipients: meta-analysis and meta-regression of randomised trial data. BMJ 2005 Oct;331(7520):810. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16157605
9. Webster AC, Lee VW, Chapman JR, et al. Target of rapamycin inhibitors (sirolimus and everolimus) for primary immunosuppression of kidney transplant recipients: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. Transplantation 2006 May;81(9):1234-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699448
10. Giessing M, Fuller TF, Tuellmann M, et al. Steroid- and calcineurin inhibitor free immunosuppression in kidney transplantation: state of the art and future developments. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):325-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17333201
11. Jevnikar AM, Mannon RB. Late kidney allograft loss: what we know about it, and what we can do about it. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3 Suppl 2:S56-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309004
12. Ojo AO. Renal disease in recipients of nonrenal solid organ transplantation. Semin Nephrol 2007 Jul;27(4):498-507. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17616280
13. Johnston A, Belitsky P, Frei U, et al. Potential clinical implications of substitution of generic cyclosporine formulations for cyclosporine microemulsion (Neoral) in transplant recipients. Eur J Clin Pharmacol 2004 Aug;60(6):389-95. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15205865
14. Cattaneo D, Perico N, Remuzzi G. Generic cyclosporine formulations: more open questions than answers. Transpl Int 2005 Apr;18(4):371-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15773953

15. Qazi YA, Forrest A, Tornatore K, et al. The clinical impact of 1:1 conversion from Neoral to a generic cyclosporine (Gengraf) in renal transplant recipients with stable graft function. Clin Transplant 2006 May-Jun;20(3):313-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16824147
16. Kees F, Bucher M, Schweda F, et al. Comparative bioavailability of the microemulsion formulation of cyclosporine (Neoral) with a generic dispersion formulation (Cicloral) in young healthy male volunteers. Ther Drug Monit 2006 Jun;28(3):312-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16778713
17. Knight SR, Morris PJ. The clinical benefits of cyclosporine C2-level monitoring: a systematic review. Transplantation 2007 Jun;83(12):1525-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17589331
18. Nashan B, Bock A, Bosmans JL, et al. Use of Neoral C monitoring: a European consensus. Transpl Int 2005 Jul;18(7):768-78.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15948854
19. Chadban S, Morris R, Hirsch HH, et al. Immunosuppression in renal transplantation: some aspects for the modern era. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Oct;22(4):241-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18657962
20. Cross SA, Perry CM. Tacrolimus once-daily formulation: in the prophylaxis of transplant rejection in renal or liver allograft recipients. Drugs 2007;67(13):1931-43.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17722962
21. First RM. First clinical experience with the new once-daily formulation of tacrolimus. Ther Drug Monit 2008 Apr;30(2):159-66.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18367975
22. Silva HT Jr, Yang HC, Abouljoud M, et al. One-year results with extended-release tacrolimus/MMF, tacrolimus/MMF and cyclosporine/MMF in de novo kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2007 Mar;7(3):595-608.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17217442
23. Alloway R, Steinberg S, Khalil K, et al. Two years postconversion from a prograf-based regimen to a once-daily tacrolimus extended-release formulation in stable kidney transplant recipients. Transplantation 2007 Jun;83(12):1648-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17589351
24. Ekberg H, Tedesco-Silva H, Demirbas A, et al; ELITE-Symphony Study. Reduced exposure to calcineurin inhibitors in renal transplantation. N Engl J Med 2007 Dec 20;357(25):2562-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18094377
25. Vincenti F, Friman S, Scheuermann E, et al; DIRECT (Diabetes Incidence after Renal Transplantation: Neoral C Monitoring Versus Tacrolimus) Investigators. Results of an international, randomized trial comparing glucose metabolism disorders and outcome with cyclosporine versus tacrolimus. Am J Transplant 2007 Jun;7(6):1506-14.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17359512
26. Bolin P Jr, Shihab FS, Mulloy L; OPTIMA Study Group. Optimizing tacrolimus therapy in the maintenance of renal allografts: 12-month results. Transplantation 2008 Jul;86(1):88-95.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18622283
27. Ghisdal L, Bouchta NB, Broeders N, v. Conversion from tacrolimus to cyclosporine A for new-onset diabetes after transplantation: a single-centre experience in renal transplanted patients and review of the literature. Transpl Int 2008 Feb;21(2):146-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17971033
28. Frimat L, Cassuto-Viguier E, Charpentier B, et al. Impact of cyclosporine reduction with MMF: a randomized trial in chronic allograft dysfunction. The ‘reference’ study. Am J Transplant 2006 Nov;6(11):2725-34.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17049060
29. Budde K, Glander P, Diekmann F, et al. Review of the immunosuppressant enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2004 Jun;5(6):1333-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15163278
30. Srinivas TR, Kaplan B, Meier-Kriesche HU. Mycophenolate mofetil in solid-organ transplantation. Expert Opin Pharmacother 2003 Dec;4(12):2325-45.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14640931
31. Bunnapradist S, Ambühl PM. Impact of gastrointestinal-related side effects on mycophenolate mofetil dosing and potential therapeutic strategies. Clin Transplant 2008 Nov-Dec;22(6):815-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18798850

32. Filler G, Buffo I. Safety considerations with mycophenolate sodium. Expert Opin Drug Saf 2007 Jul;6(4):445-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17688388
33. Srinivas TR, Kaplan B, Schold JD, et al. The impact of mycophenolate mofetil on long-term outcomes in kidney transplantation. Transplantation 2005 Oct;80(2 Suppl):S211-20.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16251854
34. van Gelder T, Le Meur Y, Shaw LM, et al. Therapeutic drug monitoring of mycophenolate mofetil in transplantation. Ther Drug Monit 2006 Apr;28(2):145-54.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16628123
35. Jeong H, Kaplan B. Therapeutic monitoring of mycophenolate mofetil. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2007 Jan;2(1):184-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17699403
36. Dall A, Hariharan S. BK virus nephritis after renal transplantation. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3 Suppl 2:S68-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309005
37. Egli A, Binggeli S, Bodaghi S, et al. Cytomegalovirus and polyomavirus BK posttransplant. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 Sep;22 Suppl 8:viii72-viii82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17890268
38. Kliem V, Fricke L, Wollbrink T, et al. Improvement in long-term renal graft survival due to CMV prophylaxis with oral ganciclovir: results of a randomized clinical trial. Am J Transplant 2008 May;8(5):975-83.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18261177
39. Hodson EM, Jones CA, Strippoli GF, et al. Immunoglobulins, vaccines or interferon for preventing cytomegalovirus disease in solid organ transplant recipients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Apr;(2):CD005129.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17443573
40. Hodson EM, Barclay PG, Craig JC, et al. Antiviral medications for preventing cytomegalovirus disease in solid organ transplant recipients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2005 Oct;(2):CD003774.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16235341
41. Arns W, Cibrik DM, Walker RG, et al. Therapeutic drug monitoring of mycophenolic acid in solid organ transplant patients treated with mycophenolate mofetil: review of the literature. Transplantation 2006 Oct;82(8):1004-12.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17060847
42. Knight SR, Morris PJ. Does the evidence support the use of mycophenolate mofetil therapeutic drug monitoring in clinical practice? A systematic review. Transplantation 2008 Jun;85(12):1675-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18580456
43. Oremus M, Zeidler J, Ensom MH, et al. Utility of monitoring mycophenolic acid in solid organ transplant patients. Evid Rep Technol Assess (Full Rep) 2008 Feb;(164):1-131.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18457479
44. van Gelder T, Silva HT, de Fijter JW, et al. Comparing mycophenolate mofetil regimens for de novo renal transplant recipients: the fixed-dose concentration-controlled trial. Transplantation 2008 Oct;86(8):1043-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18946341
45. Pascual J, Quereda C, Zamora J, et al; Spanish Group for Evidence-Based Medicine in Renal Transplantation. Updated metaanalysis of steroid withdrawal in renal transplant patients on calcineurin inhibitor and mycophenolate mofetil. Transplant Proc 2005 Nov;37(9):3746-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16386525
46. Pascual J, Quereda C, Zamora J, et al; Spanish Group for Evidence-Based Medicine in Renal Transplantation. Steroid withdrawal in renal transplant patients on triple therapy with a calcineurin inhibitor and mycophenolate mofetil: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. Transplantation 2004 Nov;78(10):1548-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15599321
47. Ekberg H. Calcineurin inhibitor sparing in renal transplantation. Transplantation 2008 Sep;86(6):761-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18813097
48. Abramowicz D, Del Carmen Rial M, Vitko S, et al; Cyclosporine Withdrawal Study Group. Cyclosporine withdrawal from a mycophenolate mofetil-containing immunosuppressive regimen: results of a five-year, prospective, randomized study. J Am Soc Nephrol 2005 Jul;16(7):2234-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15917338

49. Ekberg H, Grinyó J, Nashan B, et al. Cyclosporine sparing with mycophenolate mofetil, daclizumab and corticosteroids in renal allograft recipients: the CAESAR Study. Am J Transplant 2007 Mar;7(3):560-70.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17229079
50. Suwelack B, Gerhardt U, Hohage H. Withdrawal of cyclosporine or tacrolimus after addition of mycophenolate mofetil in patients with chronic allograft nephropathy. Am J Transplant 2004 Apr;4(4):655-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15023160
51. Dudley C, Pohanka E, Riad H, et al; Mycophenolate Mofetil Creeping Creatinine Study Group. Mycophenolate mofetil substitution for cyclosporine a in renal transplant recipients with chronic progressive allograft dysfunction: the 'creeping creatinine' study. Transplantation 2005 Feb;79(4): 466-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15729174
52. Remuzzi G, Cravedi P, Costantini M, et al. Mycophenolate mofetil versus azathioprine for prevention of chronic allograft dysfunction in renal transplantation: the MYSS follow-up randomized, controlled clinical trial. J Am Soc Nephrol 2007 Jun;18(6):1973-85.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17460145
53. Kunz R, Neumayer HH. Maintenance therapy with triple versus double immunosuppressive regimen in renal transplantation: a meta-analysis. Transplantation. 1997 Feb;63(3):386-92.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9039928
54. Rike AH, Mogilishetty G, Alloway RR, et al. Cardiovascular risk, cardiovascular events, and metabolic syndrome in renal transplantation: comparison of early steroid withdrawal and chronic steroids. Clin Transplant 2008 Mar-Apr;22(2):229-35.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18339144
55. Woodle ES, First MR, Pirsch J, et al; Astellas Corticosteroid Withdrawal Study Group. A prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled multicenter trial comparing early (7 day) corticosteroid cessation versus long-term, low-dose corticosteroid therapy. Ann Surg 2008 Oct;248(4):564-77.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18936569
56. Vincenti F, Schena FP, Paraskevas S, et al; FREEDOM Study Group. A randomized, multicenter study of steroid avoidance, early steroid withdrawal or standard steroid therapy in kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2008 Feb;8(2):307-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18211506
57. Kuypers DR. Benefit-risk assessment of sirolimus in renal transplantation. Drug Saf 2005;28(2):153-81.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15691225
58. Augustine JJ, Bodziak KA, Hricik DE. Use of sirolimus in solid organ transplantation. Drugs 2007;67(3):369-91.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17335296
59. Sánchez-Fructuoso AI. Everolimus: an update on the mechanism of action, pharmacokinetics and recent clinical trials. Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol 2008 Jun;4(6):807-19.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18611120
60. Webster AC, Lee VW, Chapman JR, et al. Target of rapamycin inhibitors (sirolimus and everolimus) for primary immunosuppression of kidney transplant recipients: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. Transplantation 2006 May;81(9):1234-48.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699448
61. Meier-Kriesche HU, Schold JD, Srinivas TR, et al. Sirolimus in combination with tacrolimus is associated with worse renal allograft survival compared to mycophenolate mofetil combined with tacrolimus. Am J Transplant 2005 Sep;5(9):2273-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16095509
62. Mulay AV, Cockfield S, Stryker R, et al. Conversion from calcineurin inhibitors to sirolimus for chronic renal allograft dysfunction: a systematic review of the evidence. Transplantation 2006 Nov;82(9): 1153-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17102766
63. Abramowicz D, Hadaya K, Hazzan M, et al. Conversion to sirolimus for chronic renal allograft dysfunction: risk factors for graft loss and severe side effects. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Nov;23(11):3727-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18567692
64. Morath C, Arns W, Schwenger V, et al. Sirolimus in renal transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 Sep;22 Suppl 8:viii61-viii65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17890266

65. Diekmann F, Budde K, Slowinski T, et al. Conversion to sirolimus for chronic allograft dysfunction: long-term results confirm predictive value of proteinuria. Transpl Int 2008 Feb;21(2):152-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18005087
66. Campistol JM, Albanell J, Arns W, et al. Use of proliferation signal inhibitors in the management of post-transplant malignancies–clinical guidance. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 May;22 Suppl 1:i36-i41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17456617
67. Letavernier E, Legendre C. mTOR inhibitors-induced proteinuria: mechanisms, significance, and management. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Apr;22(2):125-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631865
68. Huyghe E, Zairi A, Nohra J, et al. Gonadal impact of target of rapamycin inhibitors (sirolimus and everolimus) in male patients: an overview. Transpl Int 2007 Apr;20(4):305-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17326771
69. Mourad G, Garrigue V, Squifflet JP, et al. Induction vs. Noninduction in renal transplant recipients with tacrolimus-based immunosuppression. Transplantation 2001 Sep;72(6):1050-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11579299
70. Nashan B. Antibody induction therapy in renal transplant patients receiving calcineurin-inhibitor immunosuppressive regimens: a comparative review. BioDrugs 2005;19(1):39-46. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15691216
71. Mehrabi A, Mood ZhA, Sadeghi M, et al. Thymoglobulin and ischemia reperfusion injury in kidney and liver transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 Sep;22 Suppl 8:viii54-viii60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17890265
72. Abramowicz D, Wissing M. Induction protocols: yesterday, today, and tomorrow. Transplant Proc 1999 Feb-Mar;31(1-2):1100-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10083491
73. Cherikh WS, Kauffman HM, McBride MA, et al. Association of the type of induction immunosuppression with posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorder, graft survival, and patient survival after primary kidney transplantation. Transplantation 2003 Nov;76(9):1289-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14627905
74. Meier-Kriesche HU, Arndorfer JA, Kaplan B. Association of antibody induction with short- and long-term cause-specific mortality in renal transplant recipients. J Am Soc Nephrol 2002 Mar;13(3):769-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11856783
75. Opelz G, Naujokat C, Daniel V, et al. Disassociation between risk of graft loss and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma with induction agents in renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 2006 May;81(9): 1227-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699447
76. Mottershead M, Neuberger J. Daclizumab. Expert Opin Biol Ther 2007 Oct;7(10):1583-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17916050
77. Ramirez CB, Marino IR. The role of basiliximab induction therapy in organ transplantation. Expert Opin Biol Ther 2007 Jan;7(1):137-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17150025
78. Webster AC, Playford EG, Higgins G, et al. Interleukin 2 receptor antagonists for renal transplant recipients: a meta-analysis of randomized trials. Transplantation 2004 Jan;77(2):166-76. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14742976

7. IMMUNOLOGICAL COMPLICATIONS

7.1 Introduction

Immunological rejection is a common cause of early and late transplant dysfunction (1,2). There is great variation in the timing and severity of rejection episodes and how they respond to treatment (Table 19). There are several main types of immunological reaction (Table 20).

Table 19: Determining factors in rejection episodes and response to treatment (1-5)

Degree of sensitisation to HLA, measured by the panel-reactive antibody (PRA) and specific anti-HLA antibodies
Degree of HLA-mismatch, particularly in sensitised recipients (1)

History of previous rejection episodes
Previous transplantations, especially when graft loss has occurred due to acute rejection
Non-compliance with immunosuppressive treatment
Some virus infections, e.g. CMV

CMV = cytomegalovirus.

Table 20: Main types of rejection (1-7)

Hyper-acute rejection (HAR)
Antibody-mediated rejection is caused by pre-formed anti-HLA or anti-AB (blood group) antibodies
Now rare due to donor-recipient ABO matching and routine pre-transplant cross-matching between donor cells and recipient serum
Acute cellular rejection (ACR)
Much more common than HAR, occurring in 10-40% of transplants
Usually occurs from 5 days' post transplant
Most likely within the first 3 months, though may occur after this time
Usually responds well to steroid bolus treatment
Acute humoral rejection (AHR)
Much less frequent than ACR, occurring in 5-20% of transplants
Most likely within the first 3 months' post transplant
Presence of certain histological features and/or positive C4d immunostaining and/or anti-HLA antibodies
Worse prognosis than ACR because more difficult to treat
Chronic allograft rejection (CAR)
Rare, slowly progressive, immunological process
Certain non-specific histological features and/or anti-HLA antibodies
Requires clear strong evidence for a solely chronic immunological process

The gold standard for the diagnosis of ACR, AHR and CAR is transplant biopsy (1,2) (*see below*), which may demonstrate a mixed histological picture in many cases. The Banff criteria (6,7) are uniform criteria applied to biopsy, which are updated regularly and are the basis for deciding prognosis and treatment (8) (LE: 3).

The term 'IF/TA' replaces the previously used terms 'chronic allograft nephropathy'. This term was used to refer to chronic destruction of the graft associated with fibrosis and arteriosclerosis in renal biopsy and of uncertain aetiology. IF/TA is the common histological manifestation of some damage to the graft, where it is not possible to make a specific diagnosis of the underlying cause (6-9). IF/TA is probably the commonest histological feature in failed grafts and is present to some degree in the vast majority of grafts up to 10 years' post transplant (9).

'Chronic allograft dysfunction' is the term used to refer to the chronic deterioration of graft function without histological evidence (LE: 4).

7.2 Hyper-acute rejection (HAR)

Hyper-acute rejection (HAR) is the most dramatic and destructive immunological attack on the graft (1-5). It results from circulating, complement-fixing IgG antibody, specifically reactive against incompatible donor antigen, which engages with and destroys the vascular endothelium. It occurs in most ABO-incompatible grafts due to the presence of pre-existing IgM iso-antibodies against blood group antigens. In ABO-matched grafts, HAR is mediated by anti-donor HLA IgG antibodies (1-5) (LE: 3).

With the development of the cross-match test, HAR has become an extremely uncommon complication. The complement-dependent cytotoxicity test (CDC) is now universally employed in all transplant centres. Recently, newer techniques have been developed, allowing a more sensitive detection of specific anti-HLA antibodies (4,5) (see Chapter 5). However, validation of these techniques is ongoing. If such diagnostic tests demonstrate the possibility of specific anti-HLA antibodies in the presence of a negative CDC cross-match, an individual decision has to be made whether to transplant or not (LE: 4).

Hyper-acute rejection is a rare complication usually seen at the time of surgery. Within minutes or hours of vascularisation, the kidney becomes mottled and then dark and flabby. Histology reveals generalised infarction of the graft (4). Delayed HAR may occur within a week of the transplant, and may be recognised by

acute anuria, fever, and a swollen graft. Hyper-acute rejection is treated by graft nephrectomy.

*7.2.1 **Prevention***

Hyper-acute rejection can be prevented by the avoidance of an ABO-incompatible renal transplant and by performing a regular CDC cross-match before transplantation (LE: 3). All patients registered for renal transplantation should have their serum screened for anti-HLA antibodies, which are particularly common after pregnancy, previous transplant, transplant rejection, and blood transfusions (4,5,10) (LE: 3). Highly sensitised patients (> 50% PRA) should be considered for prioritisation in a points-based matching algorithm (10) (LE: 3).

In a national kidney-sharing programme, identification of the specificity of anti-HLA antibodies in highly sensitised patients and cross-matching allows the detection of acceptable and unacceptable antigens present in the donor (10). This information can be highlighted with the patient's details on the transplant registry database, so preventing the unnecessary transport of kidneys to recipients with high antibody sensitivity (10) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
All recipients and donors must be tested for blood group antigens and blood group incompatibility must be avoided, except intentional living-donor ABO-incompatible transplantation.	B
All centres practising renal transplantation should have access to elective serological profiling of all potential, and actual, waiting-list recipients to define the percentage and specificity of PRA and their isotypes, IgG or IgM.	B
The laboratory service should provide a 24-h donor-recipient cross-matching service to be able to quickly inform a surgeon of the CDC cross-match result before a deceased donor renal transplant (within 5 h).	B

PRA = panel-reactive antibody; CDC = complement-dependent cytotoxicity (testing).

7.3 Acute allograft rejection

Acute allograft rejection can be classified into either T-cell mediated (acute cellular rejection, ACR) or antibody-mediated (acute humoral rejection, AHR) according to the most recent Banff criteria (1-7). Tubulo-interstitial infiltrate of T-cells, macrophages, and to a lesser extent, neutrophils invading the tubular epithelium is a hallmark of T-cell mediated ACR.

Humoral rejection commonly accompanies ACR and causes the same clinical signs. As in ACR, the diagnosis of AHR becomes apparent on renal allograft biopsy. It can be categorised into capillary or arterial antibody-mediated rejection. During post-operative humoral rejection, antibodies are formed against donor antigen on the endothelium. In 20-25% of cases, these antibodies may be detected in the serum during rejection (4, 5). Acute humoral rejection is under-diagnosed (11,12). On biopsy, the appearance may be of oedema and haemorrhage with focal necrosis. The C4d fraction of complement in renal biopsy is required for diagnosis according to the current Banff criteria (6,7,11,12). Not surprisingly, the prognosis is poorer than when ACR occurs alone (4,5,11,12) (LE: 3).

Because it is impossible to differentiate acute rejection solely on clinical indicators from other causes of renal dysfunction (e.g. acute tubular necrosis or CNI nephrotoxicity), a biopsy is necessary to correctly diagnose and treat the patient (1-6) (LE: 3). If possible, all rejections must be verified by renal biopsy and graded according to the most recent Banff criteria, except when contraindications for a renal biopsy are present (6-8) (LE: 3). Renal transplant biopsy should be conducted preferably under ultrasound control, using an automated needle biopsy system (e.g. tru-cut, biopsy gun) (13) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Renal transplant practitioners must be continuously aware of the possibility of acute rejection, particularly during the first 6 months after renal transplant.	B
During hospitalisation, regular blood and urine samples should be taken for renal and haematological studies in addition to regular ultrasound examinations.	B
Rejection should be strongly suspected in any patient who suffers fever, graft tenderness, or reduced urine output. In case of suspected acute rejection, other potential causes of graft dysfunction need to be ruled out immediately.	B
All patients with suspected acute rejection episodes should undergo renal biopsy, which should be graded according to the most recent Banff criteria. Only if contraindications to renal biopsy are present, can 'blind' steroid bolus therapy be initiated. Steroid treatment for rejection may start before biopsy is performed.	B

There should be routine access to ultrasound-guided biopsy of the transplant and sufficient expertise in the hospital pathology department to allow a clear-cut diagnosis of rejection or other type of allograft dysfunction.	B
Staff and facilities on renal transplant units should be sufficiently equipped to admit a patient with acute rejection immediately to allow rapid diagnosis and treatment.	B
Patients who suffer acute cellular rejection should be tested as soon as possible for anti-HLA IgG antibodies reactive with the graft.	B

7.3.1 ***Treatment of T-cell mediated acute rejection***

As only a few randomised trials have investigated different treatment options for this clinical problem, therapy is mainly based on empirical experience than on clinical evidence (1-4,14). Parenteral methylprednisolone (500 mg to 1 g) should be given intravenously as one pulse per day for 3 days (1-4) (LE: 3). Anuria or a steep rise in the serum creatinine may indicate steroid-refractory rejection and the need for another 3-day course of pulsed methylprednisolone therapy (1-4) (LE: 3). In addition, baseline immunosuppression should be re-evaluated to ensure adequate drug exposure (1-4) (LE: 3).

In severe rejection, a conversion from cyclosporine to tacrolimus should be considered (1-4) (LE: 3). T-cell depleting biological agents, such as anti lymphocyte globulin (ALG) or anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody (OKT3), may be considered in severe steroid-refractory cases (1-4,14) (LE: 1a). If biological agents are used, other immunological suppression should be reduced or stopped and daily T-cell monitoring should be done to minimise the dose of the biological agent (15,16) (LE: 4). Before immunosuppression is intensified, especially before the use of T-cell depleting agents, the prognosis of the graft should be critically assessed against the risks of the aggravated immunosuppression. The patient should be counselled adequately (LE: 4).

Recommendations	**GR**
Treatment with steroid bolus therapy is recommended.	B
In severe or steroid-resistant rejection, consider intensified immunosuppression, including high-dose steroid treatment, conversion to tacrolimus, and T-cell depleting agents.	B

7.3.2 ***Treatment of acute humoral rejection (AHR)***

Acute humoral rejection is treated in a similar way as T-cell mediated rejection (4,17) (LE: 3). Treatment relies on retrospective studies and empirical treatment guidelines. Treatment with a steroid bolus (at least 3 days of 500 mg/day) and conversion to tacrolimus therapy with trough levels > 10 ng/mL are common (4,17) (LE: 3). Although T-cell depleting agents appear to have limited value, there are several retrospective case series and a small prospective trial in children and adolescents describing the successful use of the anti-CD20 antibody, rituximab (4,17,18) (LE: 1b). However, no further prospective trials have been published and neither the dose, side-effects nor efficacy parameters have been evaluated in a larger cohort with adequate follow-up. Most centres also try to remove antibodies using plasmapheresis or immunoadsorption columns. Retrospective and prospective case series clearly suggest efficacy (4,17,19) (LE: 1b), although details of the procedures vary widely.

Some centres advocate intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG)(20), which may modulate and/or suppress antibody production (4,17,20) (LE: 3). Dosages vary widely from 0.2-2.0 g/kg bodyweight. No comparative studies have been published. Several regimens have proven efficacious in AHR. However, the lack of firm evidence does not permit evidence-based recommendations for treatment, except for a beneficial effect of early antibody removal.

Recommendations	**GR**
Treatment of acute hormonal injection should include early antibody elimination.	B
In addition, steroid bolus therapy, conversion to tacrolimus, T-cell depleting agents and intravenous immunoglobulin treatment are used frequently.	B
Anti-CD20 (rituximab) may be efficacious. However, firm evidence on efficacy and side-effects are lacking.	B

7.4 Chronic allograft dysfunction/interstitial fibrosis and tubular atrophy (IF/TA)

Many patients lose their grafts due to chronic allograft dysfunction (9). Histology will usually reveal a chronic process of IF/TA. An unknown, but rather small number of these patients will have ‘true’ immunological CAR (1,2). IF/TA takes months or years to develop and is heralded by proteinuria and hypertension, with a simultaneous or delayed rise in serum creatinine level over months (9). It is likely that IF/TA is more common

in patients who have had early attacks of ACR, which is a good reason for preventing acute cellular rejection. The main differential diagnoses are chronic nephrotoxicity, which is common in patients receiving CNIs, and pre-existing and/or aggravated chronic kidney damage from a marginal donor kidney (9). Histological features on biopsy are fibrosis, cortical atrophy, concentric intimal fibroplasia of larger arteries with capillary dilatation, arteriolar hyalinosis, and thickened split basement membranes. (LE: 3).

7.4.1 ***Diagnosis and treatment***

Diagnosis is by renal biopsy (5,6). In patients diagnosed early, particularly if there is evidence for CNI toxicity, disease progression may be slowed by conversion to a CNI-free regimen (22-24) (LE: 1a). Conversion to m-TOR inhibitors is safe. Favourable outcomes have been observed without significant proteinuria (< 800 mg/day) (24,25) (LE: 1a). Alternatively, successful conversion to a MPA-based regimen has been described, especially in patients beyond the first 3 years' post transplant (22,23) LE: 1b). If there is intolerance to m-TOR inhibitors or MPA, conversion to an azathioprine-based regimen may be successful, though the higher risk of rejection warrants close surveillance (26) (LE: 1a). If the risk of rejection seems too high, another option is substantial reduction of CNI under the protection of MPA (21,27) (LE: 1b). In patients with proteinuria, intervention with an ACE inhibitor, or angiotensin II receptor blocker (28) may slow down renal decompensation (LE: 3). Other supportive measures include the treatment of hypertension, hyperlipidaemia, diabetes, anaemia, acidosis, and bone disease (29-34) (LE: 3). However, ultimately, the patient will require another transplant (if fit enough to go on the transplant waiting list) or dialysis therapy.

Recommendations	**GR**
During the years of follow-up after renal transplantation, regularly monitor serum creatinine, creatinine clearance, blood pressure, and urinary protein excretion.	A
Changes in these parameters over time should trigger hospital admission for renal biopsy and further diagnostic work-up including a search for infectious causes and anti-HLA antibodies. An ultrasound of the graft should rule out obstruction and renal artery stenosis.	
If a specific cause for deteriorating renal function can be identified, appropriate treatment should be instituted.	A
If unspecific IF/TA is confirmed, begin appropriate medical treatment (e.g. control of hypertension, proteinuria).	A
Supportive measures should aim to adequately treat the consequences of chronic kidney disease (e.g. anaemia, acidosis, bone disease) and cardiovascular risk factors (e.g. hyperlipidaemia, diabetes).	
In patients with IF/TA under current CNI therapy and/or with histological signs suggestive for CNI toxicity (e.g. arteriolar hyalinosis, striped fibrosis) without significant proteinuria (< 800 mg/day), conversion to an m-TOR inhibitor or substantial CNI reduction under MPA protection may be indicated. In chronic maintenance patients beyond 5 years, post-transplant CNI withdrawal under MPA and steroids is another safe option.	A

7.5 References

1. Cornell LD, Smith RN, Colvin RB. Kidney transplantation: mechanisms of rejection and acceptance. Annu Rev Pathol 2008;3:189-220. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18039144
2. Tomasoni S, Remuzzi G, Benigni A. Allograft rejection: acute and chronic studies. Contrib Nephrol 2008;159:122-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18391589
3. Kuypers DR. Immunosuppressive drug therapy and subclinical acute renal allograft rejection: impact and effect. Transplantation 2008 Apr;85(7 Suppl):S25-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18401259
4. Gloor J, Cosio F, Lager DJ, et al. The spectrum of antibody-mediated renal allograft injury: implications for treatment. Am J Transplant 2008 Jul;8(7):1367-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18510643
5. Terasaki PI, Cai J. Human leukocyte antigen antibodies and chronic rejection: from association to causation. Transplantation 2008 Aug;86(3):377-83. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18698239
6. Solez K, Colvin RB, Racusen LC, et al. Banff '05 Meeting Report: differential diagnosis of chronic allograft injury and elimination of chronic allograft nephropathy ('CAN'). Am J Transplant 2007 Mar;7(3):518-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17352710

7. Solez K, Colvin RB, Racusen LC, et al. Banff 07 classification of renal allograft pathology: updates and future directions. Am J Transplant 2008 Apr;8(4):753-60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18294345
8. Mengel M, Sis B, Halloran PF. SWOT analysis of Banff: strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats of the international Banff consensus process and classification system for renal allograft pathology. Am J Transplant 2007 Oct;7(10):2221-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17848174
9. Najafian B, Kasiske BL. Chronic allograft nephropathy. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2008 Mar;17(2): 149-55.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18277147
10. Doxiadis II, Duquesnoy RJ, Claas FH. Extending options for highly sensitized patients to receive a suitable kidney graft. Curr Opin Immunol 2005 Oct;17(5):536-40.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16084709
11. Sis B, Campbell PM, Mueller T, et al. Transplant glomerulopathy, late antibody-mediated rejection and the ABCD tetrad in kidney allograft biopsies for cause. Am J Transplant 2007 Jul;7(7):1743-52.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17564636
12. Colvin RB. Antibody-mediated renal allograft rejection: diagnosis and pathogenesis. J Am Soc Nephrol 2007 Apr;18(4):1046-56.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17360947
13. Schwarz A, Gwinner W, Hiss M, et al. Safety and adequacy of renal transplant protocol biopsies. Am J Transplant 2005 Aug;5(8):1992-6.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15996250
14. Webster AC, Pankhurst T, Rinaldi F, et al. Monoclonal and polyclonal antibody therapy for treating acute rejection in kidney transplant recipients: a systematic review of randomized trial data. Transplantation 2006 Apr;81(7):953-65.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16612264
15. Nashan B. Antibody induction therapy in renal transplant patients receiving calcineurin-inhibitor immunosuppressive regimens: a comparative review. BioDrugs 2005;19(1):39-46.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15691216
16. Mehrabi A, Mood ZhA, Sadeghi M, et al. Thymoglobulin and ischemia reperfusion injury in kidney and liver transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2007 Sep;22 Suppl 8:viii54-viii60.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17890265
17. Venetz JP, Pascual M. New treatments for acute humoral rejection of kidney allografts. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 2007 May;16(5):625-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17461736
18. Zarkhin V, Li L, Kambham N, et al. A randomized, prospective trial of rituximab for acute rejection in pediatric renal transplantation. Am J Transplant 2008 Dec;8(12):2607-17.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18808404
19. Böhmig GA, Wahrmann M, Regele H, et al. Immunoadsorption in severe C4d-positive acute kidney allograft rejection: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Transplant 2007 Jan;7(1):117-21.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17109725
20. Glotz D, Antoine C, Julia P, et al. Intravenous immunoglobulins and transplantation for patients with anti-HLA antibodies. Transpl Int 2004 Jan;17(1):1-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14685653
21. Srinivas TR, Meier-Kriesche HU. Minimizing immunosuppression, an alternative approach to reducing side effects: objectives and interim result. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3 Suppl 2:S101-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308998
22. Suwelack B, Gerhardt U, Hohage H. Withdrawal of cyclosporine or tacrolimus after addition of mycophenolate mofetil in patients with chronic allograft nephropathy. Am J Transplant 2004 Apr;4(4): 655-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15023160
23. Dudley C, Pohanka E, Riad H, et al; Mycophenolate Mofetil Creeping Creatinine Study Group. Mycophenolate mofetil substitution for cyclosporine A in renal transplant recipients with chronic progressive allograft dysfunction: the 'creeping creatinine' study. Transplantation 2005 Feb;79(4): 466-75.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15729174
24. Mulay AV, Cockfield S, Stryker R, et al. Conversion from calcineurin inhibitors to sirolimus for chronic renal allograft dysfunction: a systematic review of the evidence. Transplantation 2006 Nov;82(9): 1153-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17102766

25. Diekmann F, Budde K, Slowinski T, et al. Conversion to sirolimus for chronic allograft dysfunction: long-term results confirm predictive value of proteinuria. Transpl Int 2008 Feb;21(2):152-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18005087
26. Kasiske BL, Chakkera HA, Louis TA, et al. A meta-analysis of immunosuppression withdrawal trials in renal transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2000 Oct;11(10):1910-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11004223
27. Frimat L, Cassuto-Viguier E, Charpentier B, et al. Impact of cyclosporine reduction with MMF: a randomized trial in chronic allograft dysfunction. The 'reference' study. Am J Transplant 2006 Nov;6(11):2725-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17049060
28. Barama AA. Mechanisms and management of proteinuria in kidney transplant patients. Drugs 2008;68 Suppl 1:33-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18442299
29. Shirali AC, Bia MJ. Management of cardiovascular disease in renal transplant recipients. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3(2):491-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18287250
30. Ambühl PM. Posttransplant metabolic acidosis: a neglected factor in renal transplantation? Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2007 Jul;16(4):379-87. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17565282
31. Winkelmayer WC, Chandraker A. Posttransplantation anemia: management and rationale. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3 Suppl 2:S49-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309003
32. Bia M. Evaluation and management of bone disease and fractures post transplant. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Jan;22(1):52-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631858
33. Bloom RD, Crutchlow MF. New-onset diabetes mellitus in the kidney recipient: diagnosis and management strategies. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3 Suppl 2:S38-48. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18309002
34. Kasiske B, Cosio FG, Beto J, et al; National Kidney Foundation. Clinical practice guidelines for managing dyslipidemias in kidney transplant patients: a report from the Managing Dyslipidemias in Chronic Kidney Disease Work Group of the National Kidney Foundation Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative. Am J Transplant 2004;4 Suppl 7:13-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15027968

8. MALIGNANCY

There are three situations in which malignancy occurs in kidney transplant recipients:
- transmitted malignancy by the donor;
- known or latent prior malignancy in the recipients;
- 'de-novo' malignancies developed in the recipient after transplantation.

8.1 Transmission of a donor neoplasia to the recipient

The risk of a donor disease transmission is estimated at 0.2% (1) with increased use of older donors and marginal kidneys. Donors can be divided into three groups according to the risk of transmission of cancer:
- donors without cancer;
- donors with a per-operative diagnosis of cancer;
- donors with a history of cancer.

However, even in the first situation, there remains a very small risk that donors may carry an infraclinical tumour, particularly of the prostate (2).

Pre-operative suspicion of cancer was reported in 337 (4.4%) out of 7608 donors (3). Among them, there were 131 donors suitable for donation, who donated a total of 241 organs without any donor-related tumour transmission to the recipients. In 1069 donors with a history of cancer and no tumour transmission, the most common cancers were non-melanoma skin cancer (31%), central nervous system (CNS) tumours (25%), and uterine and cervical cancers (13%) (4). Melanoma and choriocarcinoma are the most aggressive donor-transmitted malignancies (5).

Individuals with active cancer or a history of metastatic cancer or who have had cancers with a high

risk of recurrence (e.g. medulloblastoma and glioblastoma multiform) should not be donors (6). Occasionally, brain metastasis may masquerade as a primary brain tumour or cerebral haemorrhage and must be excluded as it is a contraindication for donation.

However, a prior history of neoplasia is no longer an absolute contraindication for organ donation. Non-melanoma low-grade skin cancer and selected CNS tumours that have not undergone surgical manipulation may also be acceptable. The following tumours are not contraindications to donation:

- basal cell carcinoma;
- non-metastatic spinocellular carcinoma of the skin;
- cervical carcinoma *in situ;*
- carcinoma in situ of the vocal cords.

There is no consensus on donors with transitional cell carcinoma of the bladder at the TaG1 Tumour Node Metastasis (TNM) stage. Screening for prostate cancer is different from country to country and is suggested only when there are reasons for such a test.

Donors affected by certain low-grade (grades 1 and 2) brain tumours (Table 21) are suitable for kidney donation. Individuals affected by brain tumours of any grade who have undergone ventriculo-peritoneal shunting must be excluded because of the high risk of systemic dissemination of tumour cells through the shunt (LE: 3).

Table 21: Low-grade brain tumours that do not exclude organ donation

Low-grade astrocytoma
Pituitary adenomas
Epidermoid cysts
Colloid cysts of the third ventricle
Pilocytic astrocytoma, ependymoma
Low-grade oligodendroglioma (Schmidt A and B)
Choroid plexus papilloma
Ganglionic cell tumour (ganglioma, gangliocytoma)
Benign meningioma
Craniopharyngioma
Haemangioblastoma (not associated with Von Hippel Lindau syndrome)
Acoustic Schwannoma
Pineocytoma
Well-differentiated teratoma

When a kidney has been transplanted from a donor with a post-transplant diagnosis of cancer, graft nephrectomy and suspension of immunosuppression are not always necessary. The risks and benefits should be discussed with the recipient.

Due to a low risk of recurrence, kidneys with small renal cell carcinoma (RCC) can be considered for local excision and transplant after the recipient has given informed consent. The risk of RCC transmission to the contralateral kidney and/or to other organs is even lower; again, the patient's informed consent is necessary (LE: 4).

Recommendations	**GR**
Donors with active cancer or history of metastatic cancer and cancers with a high risk of recurrence should not be considered as possible donors.	C
A prior history of neoplasia is no longer an absolute contraindication for organ donation.	C

8.2 Prior malignancy in the recipient

Any active tumour in the recipient is an absolute contraindication for kidney transplantation because of the risk of dissemination and fatal outcome. However, a previous history of cancer does not automatically exclude transplantation. It can be difficult to decide who should be considered as suitable for transplantation and particularly 'when'. So far, clinical decision has been mainly based on the Cincinnati Registry, which essentially

considers the type of tumour and the delay between its treatment and kidney transplantation. However, a better approach would be based on type of tumour, TNM stages, and the risk of recurrence after treatment.

For most tumours, the waiting time for transplantation is 2 years on the Registry. However, a 2-year waiting period would eliminate only 13% of colorectal recurrences, 19% of breast cancer recurrences, and 40% of prostatic cancer recurrences (7,8). In contrast, a 5-year waiting period would eliminate most recurrences, but this is not practical in the elderly (9) and unnecessary for most tumours. There is therefore not enough evidence to support a fixed waiting period before transplantation.

Recipients who have tumours with a low recurrence rate can be considered for immediate transplantation after successful treatment of the tumour (e.g. incidental RCC, non-melanoma skin cancer, and *in-situ* uterine/cervical cancer). In the remaining cases, because of the risk of dormant metastases, the waiting period should be individualised according to the type and TNM stage and grade of the tumour, age and recipient's general condition. Patients on the waiting list and after transplantation must be evaluated regularly to detect recurrence (LE: 4).

Modification of immunosuppression may be considered in these patients following a recent report that the use of m-TOR inhibitors is associated with a reduced incidence of malignancy (10), as is similarly a reduction in immunosuppressive therapy.

Recommendations	GR
Any active tumour in the recipient is an absolute contraindication for kidney transplantation because of the risk of dissemination and fatal outcome.	C
The waiting period before transplant in recipients with a history of malignancy depends on the type, TNM stage and grade of the tumour, and recipient's age and general health.	C
Recipients with tumours that have a low recurrence rate can be considered for immediate transplantation after successful treatment.	C
Close follow-up is mandatory particularly after transplantation.	C

TNM = Tumour Node Metastasis

Patients with ESRD on the waiting list for kidney transplantation will be ageing, and thus carry a higher, potential risk of latent neoplasia being activated following kidney transplantation. Candidates for kidney transplantation, particularly > 50 years old, should be screened for the presence of a pre-existing cancer (Table 22).

Table 22: Screening of potential recipients for malignancy

Exhaustive history and physical examination, including a dermatological examination
Gynaecological examination: vaginal cytology and colposcopy, regardless of age
Mammography in women over 40 years old or with a family history of breast cancer
Prostate examination: prostate-specific antigen (PSA) levels and digital rectal examination (DRE) in men aged over 50 years
Faecal occult blood testing or colonoscopy according to current guidelines
Chest x-ray
Abdominal ultrasound to exclude renal cell carcinoma or other abdominal tumour

8.3 'De-novo' tumours in the recipient

The risk of cancer after kidney transplantation is several times higher than in the general population (11,12). Post-transplantation cancer is one of the most common long-term causes of death; with up to 35% of heart transplant recipients dying of cancer (13). Most malignancy affects the skin (40%) or the lymphatic system (11%). Several factors contribute to the high prevalence of cancers in transplant recipients (Table 23). Annual screening is mandatory to detect a new cancer or co-morbidity.

Table 23: Factors increasing risk of de-novo tumour in recipient

Sun exposure: skin cancer
Analgesic abuse: urothelial cancer
Acquired multicystic renal disease: renal cancer
Immunosuppressants, e.g. CNIs and lymphocyte-depleting antibodies
Viral infections, e.g. EBV, herpes 8 virus, human papillomavirus, HBV, HCV, HEV

8.3.1 *Skin cancer and Kaposi's sarcoma*

The risk of skin cancer increases with age (> 50 years) (14), cyclosporine (10), and duration of immunosuppression. Its incidence rises with time to 5% at 5 years, 16% at 10 years, and 52% at 20 years' post transplant (15). Skin cancer represents 40-60% of post-transplantation tumours, with up to 50% of all skin cancers being squamous cell. The male-to-female ratio is 4.8 to 1.3 (16). It is closely linked to sun and ultraviolet exposure, the presence of HLA-B27 antigen and the degree of immunosuppression. Skin cancer often recurs, particularly in heart and kidney recipients (17). An annual dermatological examination and use of total sun block are recommended (18,19) (LE: 2a).

The prevalence of Kaposi's sarcoma ranges from 0.5% to 4%, depending on the country (20). It is associated with HHV8 positive serology. Screening for HHV8 in high-risk patients (Mediterranean countries) and prophylactic measures may be considered (21) (LE: 3). The use of m-TOR inhibitors may be preferrable over CNIs, which seem to promote the appearance of Kaposi´s sarcoma (19) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Oral and written information on the risk of skin cancer and protective measures should be given.	C
Dermatological examination before, and at least annually after, transplantation is mandatory.	C
The use of m-TOR inhibitors instead of Calcineurin-inhibitors is advised in patients with Kaposi's sarcoma or a history of Kaposi's sarcoma.	C

8.3.2 *Lymphatic disease*

Post-transplantation lymphoproliferative disease (PTLD) is a life-threatening complication because of extra-nodal dissemination and a poor outcome (12,22). The incidence (1-5%) has increased since the introduction of cyclosporine (23) and the induction regimen by ALG and OKT3 with a SIR (standardized incidence ratio) between 9 and 29 (24). The disease usually occurs within the first year after transplantation and is characterised by non-Hodgkin's lymphomas and EBV-infected B-lymphocytes. Treatment involves reduction or even suspension of immunosuppressive therapy, with a remission rate of 50-68%. Anti-CD20 antibody therapy, with or without chemotherapy, and antiviral drugs (acyclovir, ganciclovir) may be helpful (25,26) (LE: 3).

Recommendations	GR
Use of induction therapy with T-cell depleting agents should be restricted whenever possible.	C
Clinical examination every 3 months during the first post-transplant year is advised for young recipients and for patients who have received T-cell depleting agents.	C

8.3.3 *Gynaecological cancers*

Cervical cancer is 3 to 16 times more common in transplanted females compared to the general population. In 70% of cases, it will be *in-situ* carcinoma or cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN).

Cervical cancer appears to be arising from infection of the cervix with sexually transmitted oncogenic strains of human papillomavirus (HPV). Increased risk of cervical cancer in transplant recipients is due to re-activation of latent HPV in the immunosuppressed recipient. The prevalence of HPV in the cervix of transplanted females is almost 45%, though this figure is currently decreasing, as is also CIN prevalence (27). Data on successful HPV immunization are not available, but young female transplant recipients may benefit from HPV immunisation.

Annual colposcopy and cytology are required. Mammography and gynaecological ultrasound should be periodically performed, although formal evidence for this preventive strategy is lacking (28) (LE: 4).

8.3.4 *Prostate cancer*

The prevalence of clinical prostatic adenocarcinoma in the male transplanted population is 0.3% to 1.8%. Prevalence increases with the age of the recipient and can reach 5.8% if PSA screening is performed in all males. All recipients over 50 years old should have an annual PSA test and DRE. Prostate serum antigen levels are not modified by kidney transplantation and most prostate cancers detected in transplanted patients are clinically localised (84%) at diagnosis (29) (LE: 4).

8.3.5 *Bowel cancer*

The association of colon cancer with kidney transplantation is much more controversial than for other cancers, even though an increased risk factor of 2.6 has been reported at 10 years' post transplant. However, it is difficult to advise on the most appropriate method of follow-up and its frequency. An annual faecal blood test is acceptable and cost-effective, but not performed routinely worldwide. Colonoscopy every 5 years is also acceptable in the absence of other factors implying a high risk of colon cancer, despite the absence of data on

screening in this population. A risk factor is the re-activation of CMV and EBV infections (28) (LE: 4).

8.3.6 ***Urothelial tumours***

The incidence of urothelial tumours is three times higher than in the general population (29). Tumours are usually transitional cell neoplasia, though the incidences of bladder adenocarcinoma and nephrogenic adenoma have both increased. Urinary cytology is routinely performed in patients with microhaematuria, analgesic nephropathy, or a prior history of urothelial cancer, despite its poor sensitivity of 30%. Recipients with gross haematuria should undergo a detailed study of the whole urinary system, bladder, ureters, and kidneys.

8.3.7 ***Renal tumours***

Renal cell carcinoma usually occurs in the patient's own kidneys, but can also present in the graft. The prevalence ranges between 0.5% and 3.9%, which is 10 to 100 times greter than in the general population (29). The main risk factor is the presence of acquired chronic kidney disease (ACKD). Other risk factors include previous history of RCC, Von Hippel Landau disease, and (perhaps) polycystic kidneys. The main histological patterns are RCC and tubulopapillary carcinoma (30).

Annual ultrasound of the patient's native kidneys and the graft is recommended (28,29) (LE: 4). Any renal solid tumour should be treated with retroperitoneoscopic or laparoscopic nephrectomy (LE: 4).

8.3.8 ***Chest x-ray***

An annual chest x-ray is recommended in order to detect lung cancer and cardiothorarcic abnormalities (28) (LE: 4).

Recommendations	**GR**
The risk of cancer is several times greater in transplanted patients than in the general population and is the main concern of the medical team in the long-term follow-up of all organ recipients.	B/C
Screening should be carried out annually for cancers of the skin, lymphatic system and native kidneys. For all other organs, screening should be the same as in the general population.	B/C

8.4 References

1. Birkeland SA, Storm HH. Risk for tumor and other disease transmission by transplantation: a population-based study of unrecognized malignancies and other diseases in organ donors. Transplantation 2002 Nov;74(10):1409-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12451241
2. Yin M, Bastacky S, Chandran U, et al. Prevalence of incidental prostate cancer in the general population: a study of healthy organ donors. J Urol 2008 Mar;179(3):892-5; discussion 895. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18207193
3. Zucchini N, Fiorentino M, D'Errico Grigioni A, et al; Italian Transplant Research Network. The Italian multiorgan donor cancer screening protocol: 2002-2005 experience. Transplantation 2008 Apr;85 (8 Suppl):S57-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18425038
4. Kauffman HM, Cherikh WS, McBride MA, et al. Deceased donors with a past history of malignancy: an organ procurement and transplantation network/united network for organ sharing update. Transplantation 2007 Jul;84(2):272-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17667822
5. Buell JF, Trofe J, Hanaway MJ, et al. Transmission of donor cancer into cardiothoracic transplant recipients. Surgery 2001 Oct;130(4):660-6; discussion 666-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11602897
6. Kauffman HM, McBride MA, Cherikh WS, et al. Transplant tumor registry: donors with central nervous system tumors 1. Transplantation 2002 Feb;73(4):579-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11889434
7. Penn I. Primary kidney tumors before and after renal transplantation. Transplantation 1995 Feb;59(4): 480-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7878750
8. Trivedi MH, Agrawal S, Muscato MS, et al. High grade, synchronous colon cancers after renal transplantation: were immunosuppressive drugs to blame? Am J Gastroenterol 1999 Nov;94(11): 3359-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10566744

9. Solá R, Rodríguez S, Guirado L et al. Renal transplant for recipients over 60 years old. Transplantation 2000 Jun;69(11):2460-1.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10868662
10. Campistol JM, Eris J, Oberbauer R, et al. Sirolimus therapy after early cyclosporine withdrawal reduces the risk for cancer in adult renal transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2006 Feb;17(2):581-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16434506
11. Villeneuve PJ, Schaubel DE, Fenton SS, et al. Cancer incidence among Canadian kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 2007 Apr;7(4):941-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17331115
12. Kasiske BL, Snyder JJ, Gilbertson DT, et al. Cancer after kidney transplantation in the United States. Am J Transplant 2004 Jun;4(6):905-13.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15147424
13. Roussel JC, Baron O, Perigaud C, et al. Outcome of heart transplants 15 to 20 years ago: graft survival, post-transplant morbidity, and risk factors for mortality. J Heart Lung Transplant 2008 May;27(5):486-93.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18442713
14. Naldi L, Fortina AB, Lovati S, et al. Risk of nonmelanoma skin cancer in Italian organ transplant recipients. A registry-based study. Transplantation 2000 Nov;70(10):1479-84.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11118094
15. Bordea C, Wojnarowska F, Millard PR, et al. Skin cancers in renal-transplant recipients occur more frequently than previously recognized in a temperate climate. Transplantation 2004 Feb;77(4):574-79.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15084938
16. Kanitakis J, Alhaj-Ibrahim L, Euvrard S, et al. Basal cell carcinomas developing in solid organ transplant recipients: clinicopathologic study of 176 cases. Arch Dermatol 2003 Sep;139(9):1133-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12975154
17. Euvrard S, Kanitakis J, Decullier E, et al. Subsequent skin cancers in kidney and heart transplant recipients after the first squamous cell carcinoma. Transplantation 2006 Apr;81(8):1093-100.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16641592
18. Ulrich C, Kanitakis J, Stockfleth E, et al. Skin cancer in organ transplant recipients--where do we stand today? Am J Transplant 2008 Nov;8(11):2192-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18782290
19. Ulrich C, Degen A, Patel MJ, et al. Sunscreens in organ transplant patients. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2008 Jun;23(6):1805-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18492979
20. Munoz P, Alvarez P, de Ory F, et al. Incidence and clinical characteristics of Kaposi sarcoma after solid organ transplantation in Spain: importance of seroconversion against HHV-8. Medicine (Baltimore) 2002 Jul;81(4):293-304.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12169884
21. Cattani P, Capuano M, Graffeo R, et al. Kaposi's sarcoma associated with previous human herpesvirus 8 infection in kidney transplant recipients. J Clin Microbiol 2001 Feb;39(2):506-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11158097
22. Opelz G, Döhler B. Lymphomas after solid organ transplantation: a collaborative transplant study report. Am J Transplant 2004 Feb;4(2):222-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14974943
23. Sheil AG, Disney AP, Mathew TH, et al. De novo malignancy emerges as a major cause of morbidity and late failure in renal transplantation. Transplant Proc 1993 Feb;25(1 Pt 2):1383-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8442150
24. Opelz G, Naujokat C, Daniel V, et al. Disassociation between risk of graft loss and risk of non-Hodgkin lymphoma with induction agents in renal transplant recipients. Transplantation 2006 May;81(9): 1227-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16699447
25. Lee JJ, Lam MS, Rosenberg A. Role of chemotherapy and rituximab for treatment of posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorder in solid organ transplantation. Ann Pharmacother 2007 Oct;41(10): 1648-59.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17848421
26. Vasudev B, Hariharan S. Cancer after renal transplantation. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 2007 Nov;16(6):523-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18089965

27. Nordin P, Hansson BG, Hansson C, et al. Human papilloma virus in skin, mouth and uterine cervix in female renal transplant recipients with or without a history of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma. Acta Derm Venereol 2007;87(3):219-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17533486
28. Kasiske BL, Vasquez MA, Harmon WE, et al. Recommendations for the outpatient surveillance of renal transplant recipients. American Society of Transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2000 Oct:11 Suppl 15;S1–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11044969
29. Muruve NA, Shoskes DA. Genitourinary malignancies in solid organ transplant recipients. Transplantation 2005 Sep;80(6):709-16.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16210955
30. Wong G, Chapman JR. Cancers after renal transplantation. Transplant Rev (Orlando). 2008 Apr;22(2):141-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631867

9. ANNUAL SCREENING

The risk of cancer and cardiac disease is several-fold higher in transplanted patients than in the general population (1,2). Cancer is a cause of significant morbidity and mortality in the transplanted population (1). Cardiovascular disease is the most frequent cause of death in renal allograft recipients (2,3) (LE: 3).

9.1 Recommendations for annual screening

The following recommendations can be made for annual screening of a transplant recipient. They include:

- Lifelong regular post-transplant follow-up by an experienced and trained transplant specialist is strongly recommended at least every 6-12 months;
- More frequent follow-up visits (e.g. every 4-8 weeks) for renal function and immunosuppression and side-effects by a physician;
- Annual screening should include a dermatological examination, tumour screening (including a nodal examination, faecal occult screening, chest x-ray, gynaecological and urological examination), and an abdominal ultrasound, including ultrasound of the native and transplanted kidney);
- Special attention during post-transplant care should also focus on proteinuria, recurrence of original disease;
- posttransplant care should aim to detect cardiac disease and cardiovascular risk factors. Cardiac exam and cardiac history should be taken, and if appropriate further diagnostic tests should be prompted to exclude the progression of cardiac disease;
- Blood pressure, blood glucose and blood lipids should be determined at appropriate intervals, and adequate measures to control this risk factors should be instituted;
- The physician should also focus on the adequate prophylaxis, detetction and treatment of concomitant diseases (e.g. bone disease, anemia) and infections.

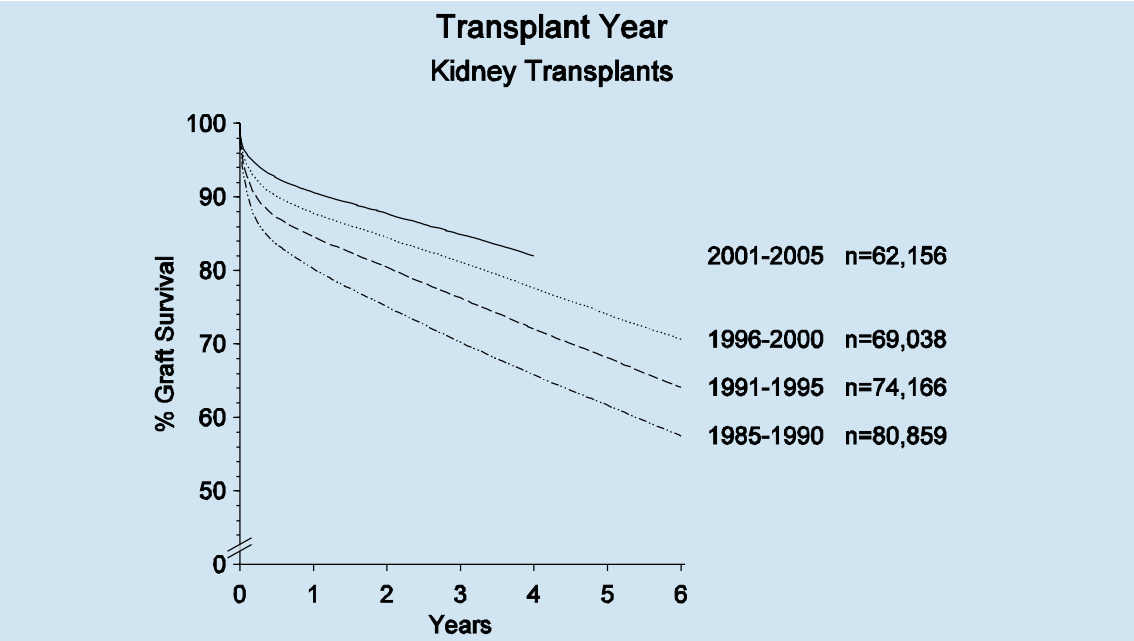
9.2 References

1. Shirali AC, Bia MJ. Management of cardiovascular disease in renal transplant recipients. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 2008 Mar;3(2):491-504.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18287250
2. Wong G, Chapman JR. Cancers after renal transplantation. Transplant Rev (Orlando) 2008 Apr;22(2): 141-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18631867
3. Kasiske BL, Vasquez MA, Harmon WE, et al. Recommendations for the outpatient surveillance of renal transplant recipients. American Society of Transplantation. J Am Soc Nephrol 2000 Oct;11 Suppl 15:S1–86.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11044969

10. GRAFT AND PATIENT SURVIVAL

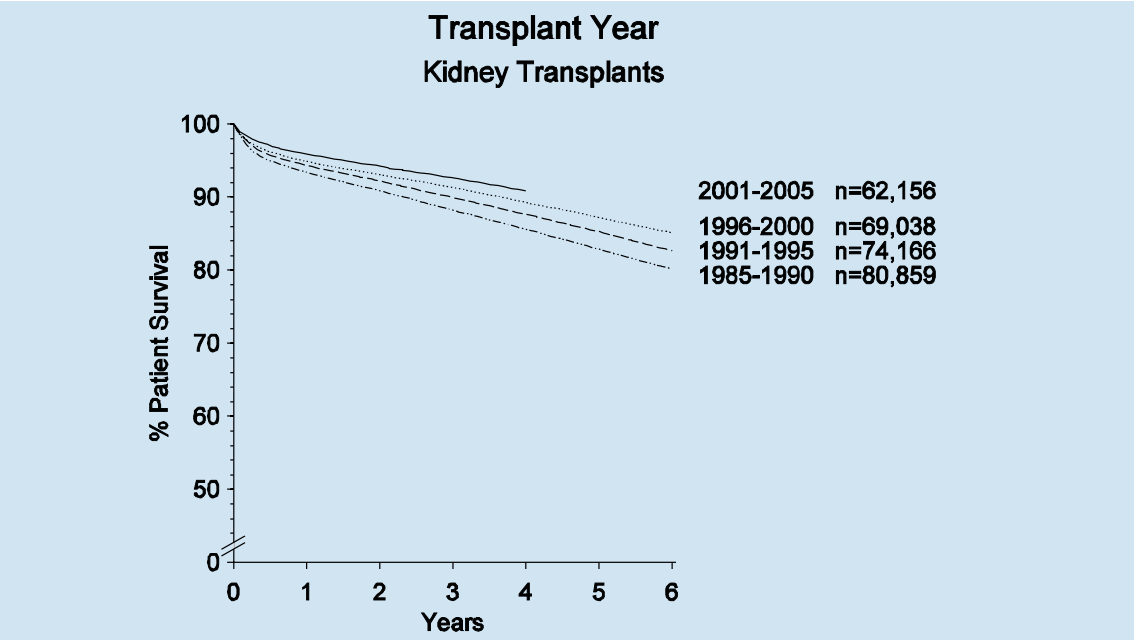
Recommendations	LE	GR
Graft survival following unselected kidney transplantation should be at least 85% after 1 year and 70% after 5 years (1,2) (Figure 1).	3	B
Patient survival following unselected kidney transplantation should be at least 90% after 1 year and 85% after 5 years (1,2) (Figure 2).	3	B

Figure 1: Improvement of graft survival following kidney transplantation during the last two decades



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Figure 2: Improvement of patient survival following kidney transplantation during the last two decades



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

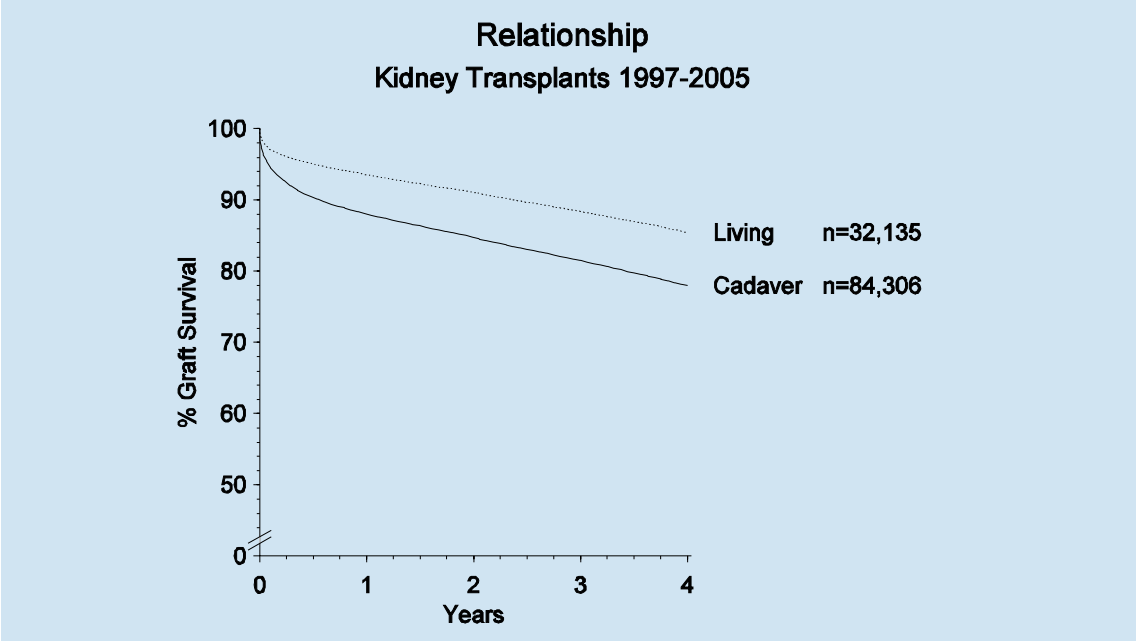
This general outcome following kidney transplantation depends on several criteria that are discussed below:

10.1 Deceased and living donors

10.1.1 Graft survival

Graft survival after living-donor kidney transplantation is generally better than after deceased-donor kidney transplantation (Figure 3). A better selection of donors, absence of brain death and a shorter cold ischaemia time are the most likely explanations.

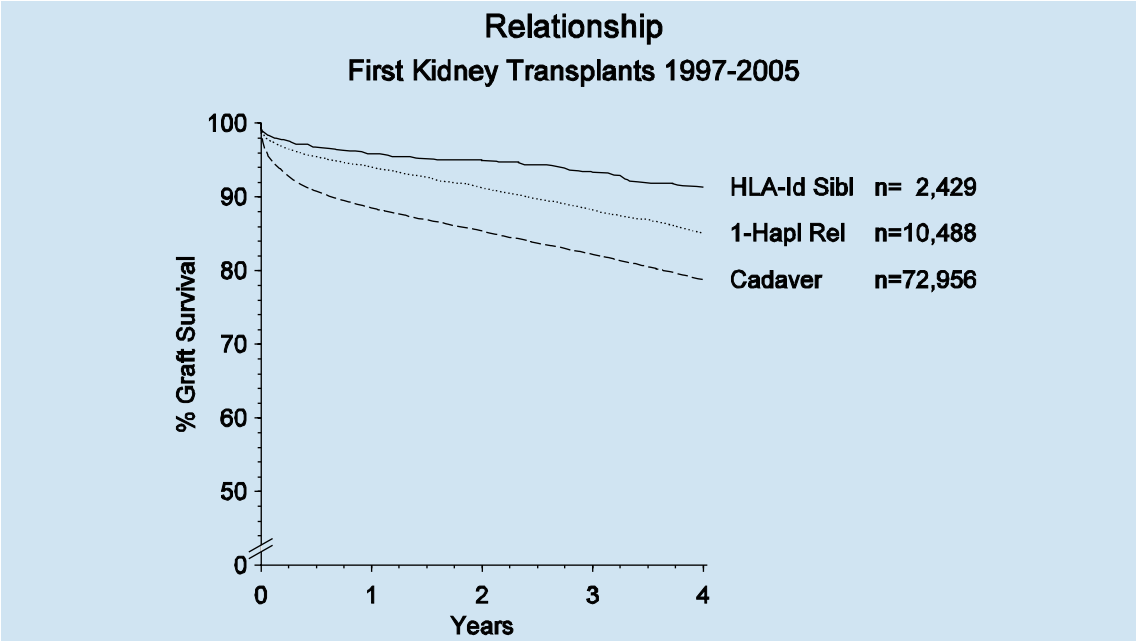
Figure 3: Graft survival following deceased- and living-donor kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

The 1-year graft survival of living-donor kidney is in mean 97% for HLA-identical siblings and 95% for 1-haplotype-identical related donors compared to 88% for deceased-donor kidneys (Figure 4). The 3-year graft survival of living-donor kidney is in mean 95% for HLA-identical siblings and 90% for 1-haplotype-identical related donors compared to 83% for deceased- donor kidneys (Figure 4).

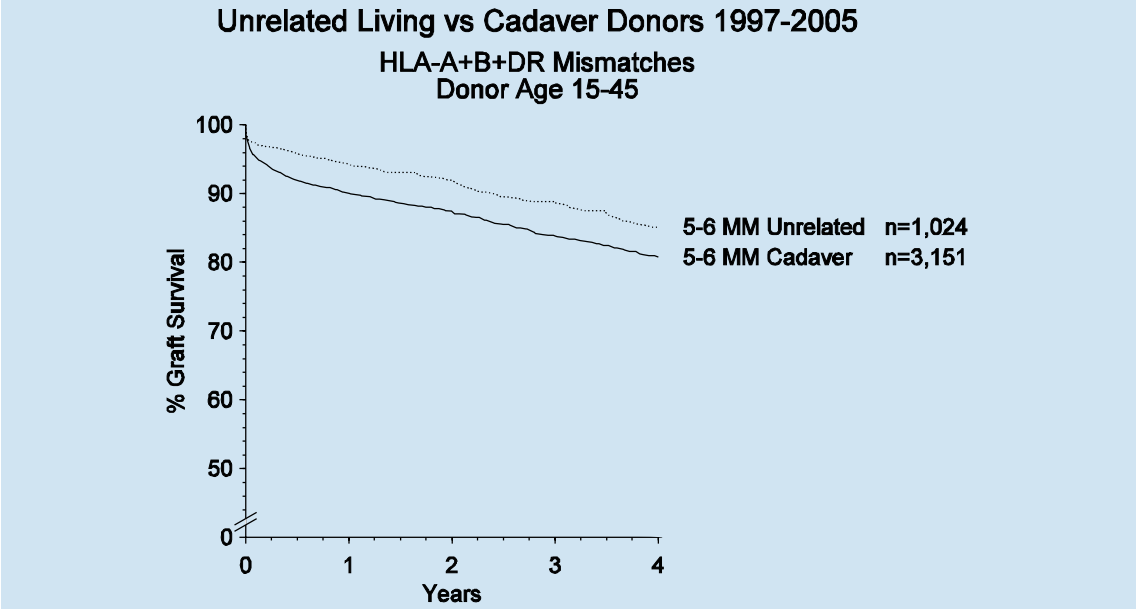
Figure 4: Graft survival following deceased- and living-donor kidney transplantation.



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Excellent graft outcomes have been reported in unrelated living-donor transplantation, even if the donor-recipient pairs were poorly HLA-matched (3). CTS data show that poorly matched kidneys from unrelated living donors demonstrate a much better outcome than poorly matched kidneys from deceased donors. However, this difference almost disappears in donors aged between 15 and 45 years old (Figure 5). This suggests that a good outcome in unrelated living-donor transplantation may mainly be due to optimal selection of donors and absence of brain death.

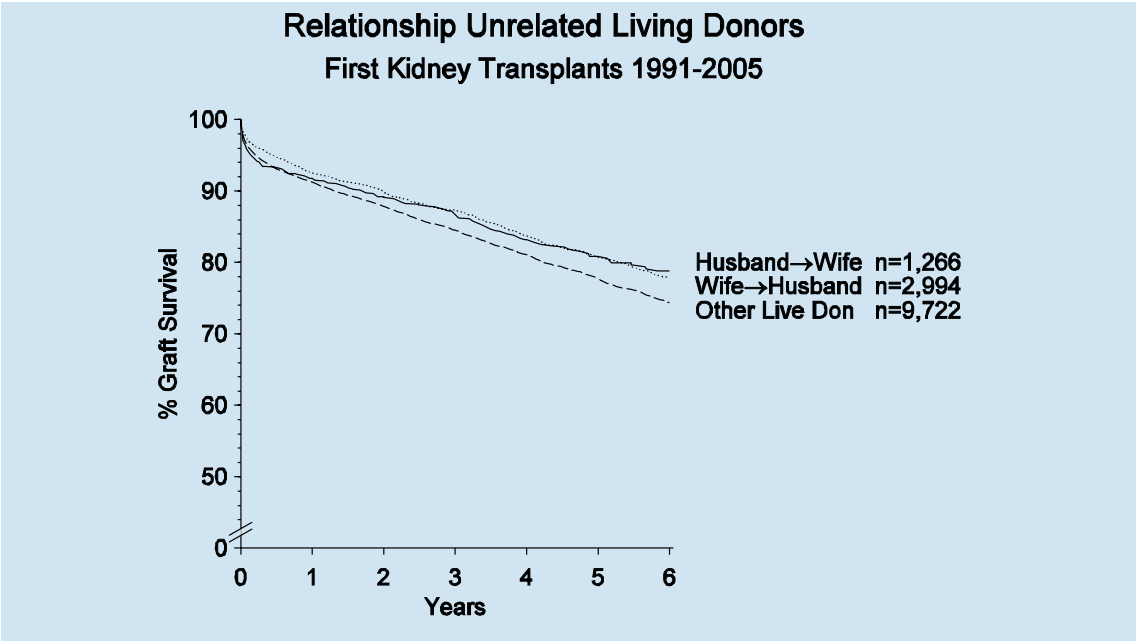
Figure 5: Graft survival in poorly HLA-matched deceased-donor and unrelated living-donor kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Husband-to-wife and wife-to-husband transplantations performed between 1991 and 2005 show virtually identical results with a 3-year graft survival of 87% (Figure 6). If a wife recipient has been pregnant, the outcome may be worse (3).

Figure 6: Graft survival in living unrelated kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

10.1.2 ***Patient survival***

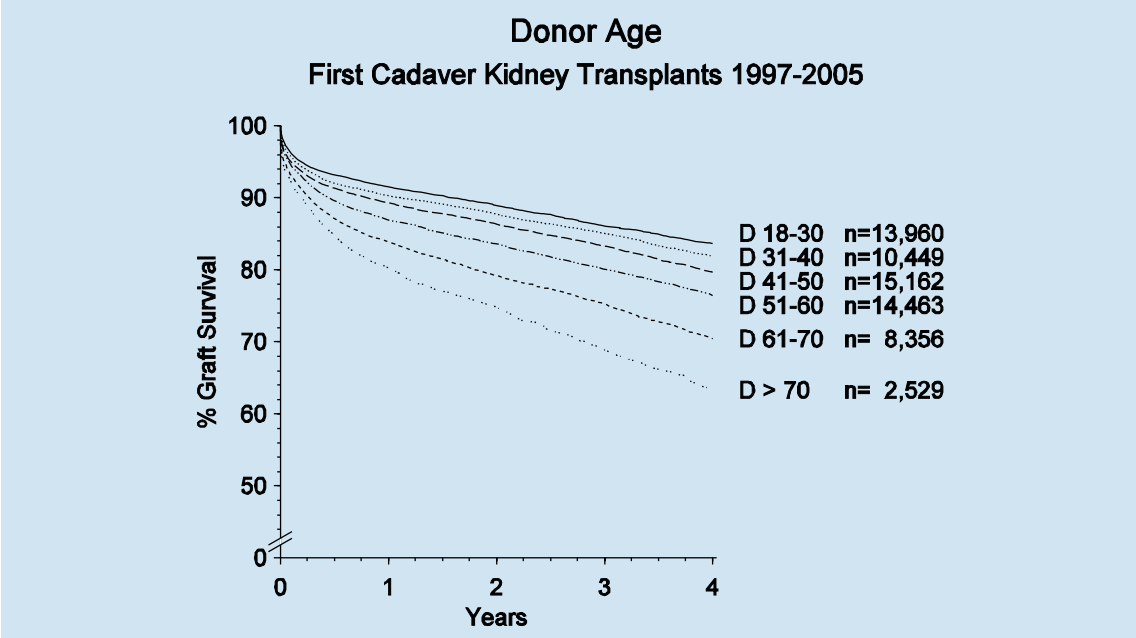
Nowadays, patient survival following living-donor kidney transplantation is about 98% after 1 year and 90% after 5 years. This is better than patient survival following deceased donor kidney transplantation with a 1-year survival rate of 95% and a 5-year survival rate of about 80% (1,2).

10.2 Age of donor and recipient

10.2.1 ***Donor's age***

The donor's age has a highly significant influence on the outcome of kidney transplantation in deceased-donor transplantation. With increasing age of donor (except in paediatric transplantation), there is a worsening of initial function, long-term function and survival rate. The 3-year graft-survival rate of a deceased-donor transplant is up to 20% higher for donors aged 18-30 years than for donors older than 70 years (Figure 7) (1,2,4).

Figure 7: Impact of donor's age on graft survival in deceased-donor kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Other than in deceased-donor transplantation, donor's age appears to influence graft outcome only marginally in living-donor transplantation (4). The most likely interpretation of this difference is that living donors are selected for organ donation based on their general status of health whereas such selection is not made in the case of deceased donor transplantation. Furthermore, it is likely that the process of brain death, which is associated with the release of cytokines, chemokines, etc., further contributes to the lower success of grafts from elderly deceased donors.

10.2.2 ***Recipient's age***

The recipient's age has an important impact on transplant outcome (5). Five-year graft survival in recipients aged 18-34 years is 72% versus 59% in recipients more than 65 years old (2). Nevertheless, the transplantation of kidneys from old donors to old recipients is feasible with acceptable success rates (6). The importance of HLA-matching is not clear in this 'old for old' group.

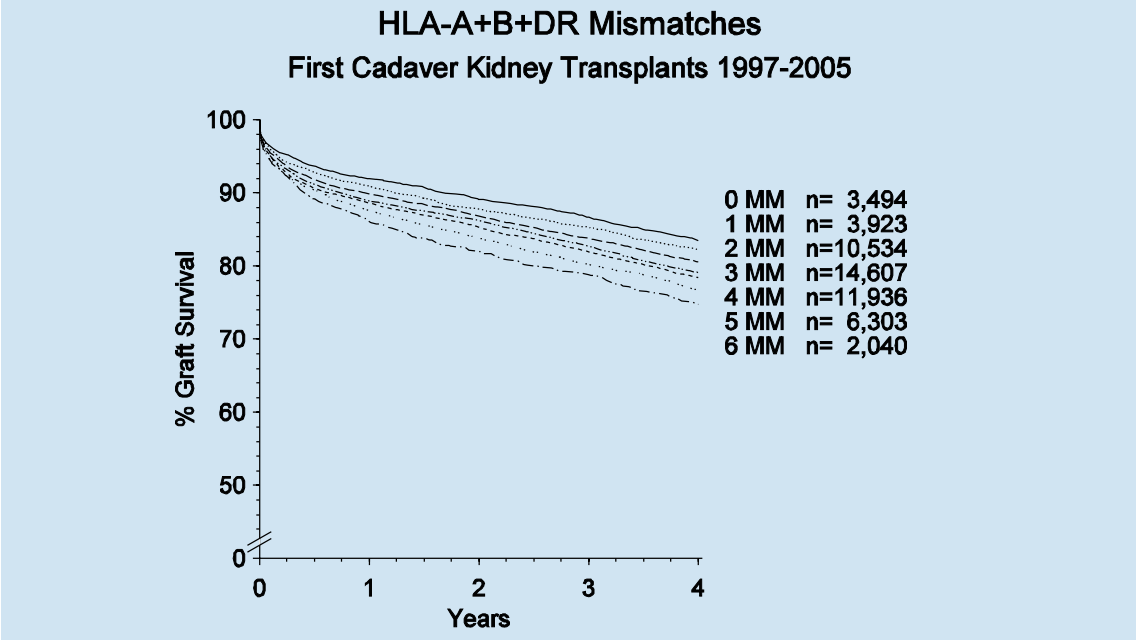
10.3 HLA-matching

Despite impressive improvements in graft success rates in recent years (Figure 1), the 'relative' impact of HLA compatibility on graft outcome has not changed. Between 1995 and 2004, the relative risk for graft loss was 0.77 for 0-1 HLA-A+B+DR mismatches and 1.17 for 5-6 HLA-A+B+DR mismatches. These relative risk values were almost identical with the 0.76 and 1.16 values calculated for 0-1 and 5-6 mismatches, respectively, for transplantations between 1985 and 1994 (7,8).

According to UNOS, in patients transplanted between 1997 and 2005, recipients of 0 HLA-A+B+DR mismatched deceased-donor kidneys showed an 11% lower 5-year graft survival than recipients of 6 mismatched kidney transplants which is similar to the CTS data (Figure 8). Also similar to the findings in the

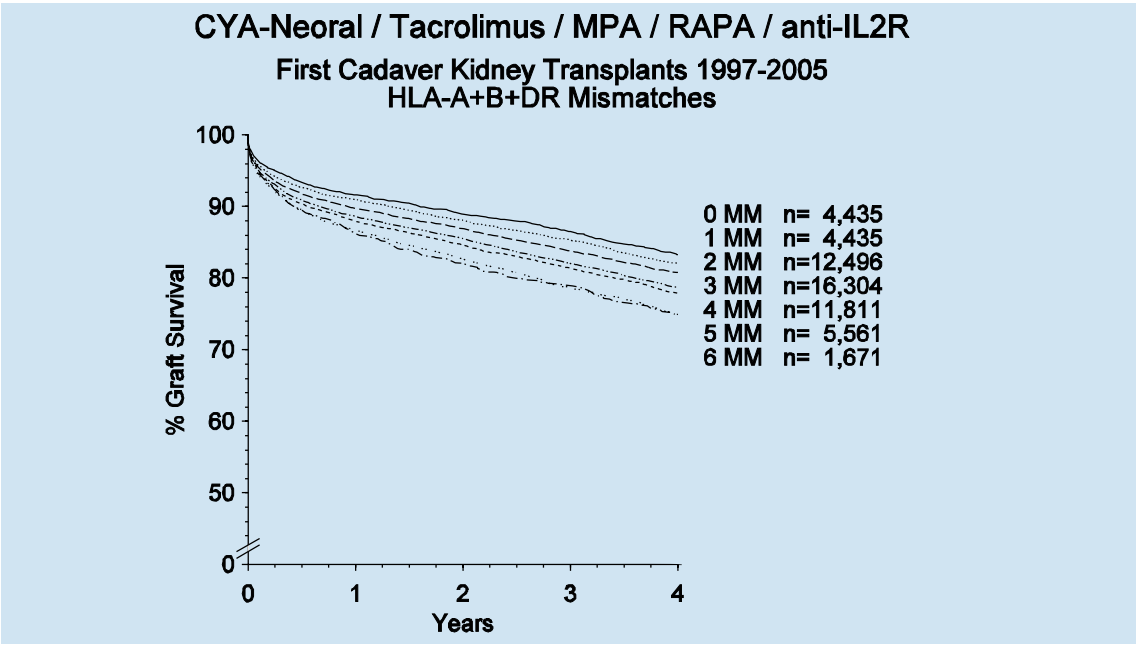
CTS database, UNOS data confirm that graft outcome gradually worsens with every additional mismatch (2). HLA matching is still important even with 'modern' immunosuppressive agents such as tacrolimus, MMF, rapamycin, or IL-2 receptor antibodies (Figure 9). It is still debatable whether HLA-DR compatibility influences graft outcome more than compatibility for HLA-A+B.

Figure 8: Impact of HLA compatibility on deceased-donor kidney graft survival



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Figure 9: Impact of HLA compatibility on kidney graft survival under 'modern-day' immunosuppression

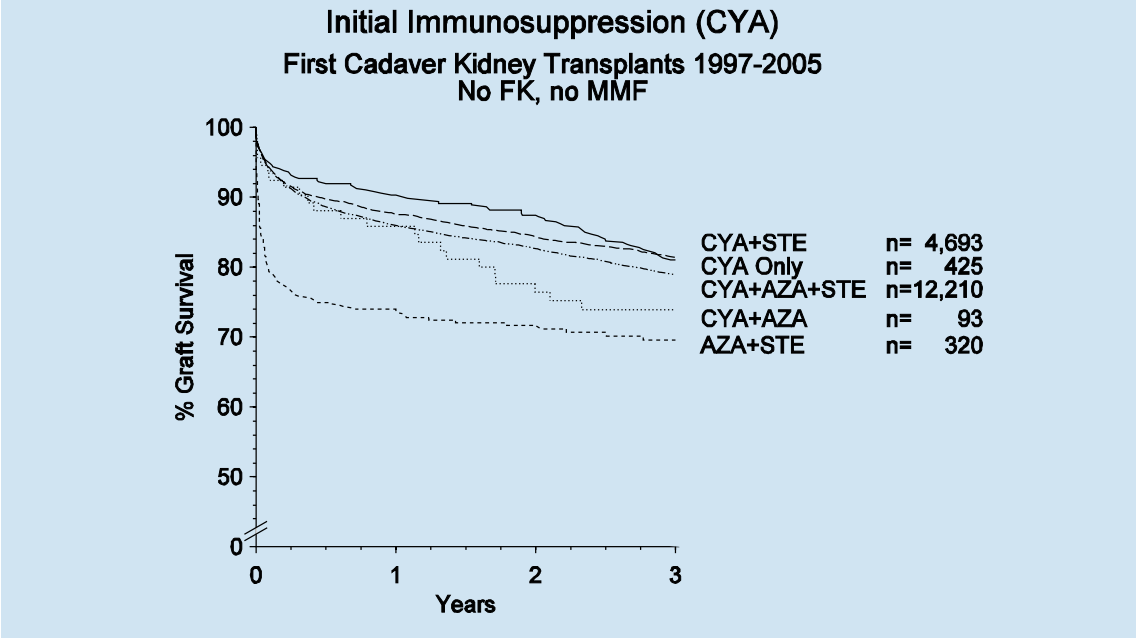


Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.
CYA = cyclosporine A; MPA = mycophenolate mofetil; RAPA = rapamycin.

10.4 Immunosuppression

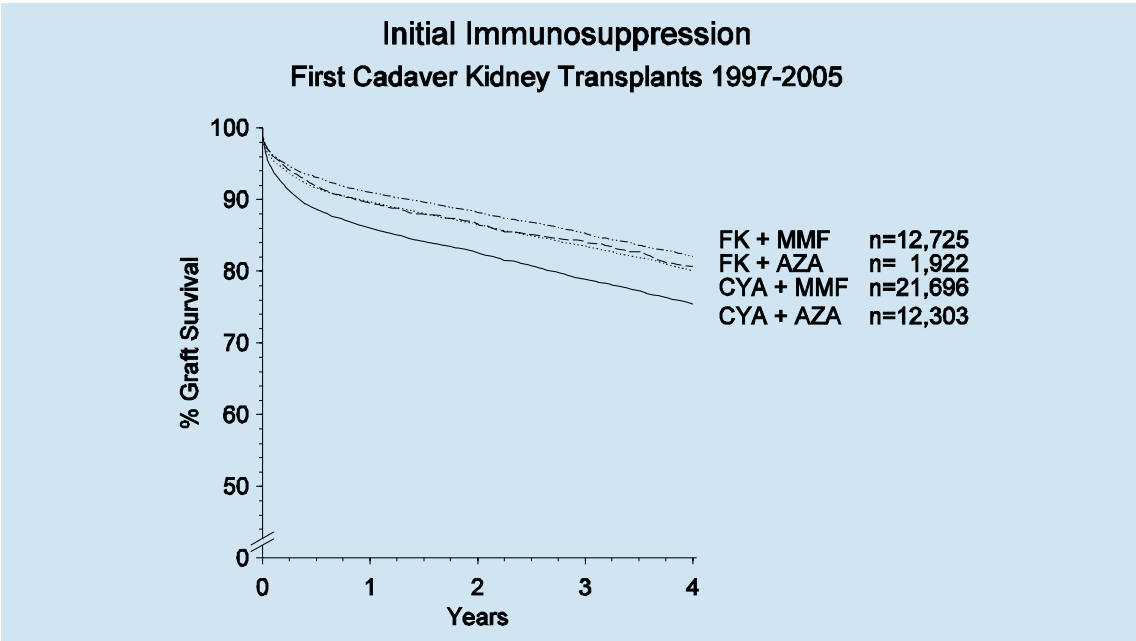
Data from the CTS study clearly demonstrates the advantage of cyclosporine A-based immunosuppression. Graft-survival rates are about 15% superior to survival rates following immunosuppression without cyclosporine A (Figure 10). However, different combinations of 'modern' immunosuppressive drugs do not appear to result in major differences in graft outcome (Figure 11).

Figure 10: Influence of cyclosporine A-based immunosuppression on kidney graft survival in first transplant recipients



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.
FK: FK506; MMF: mycophenolate mofetil; CYA = cyclosporine A; AZA = azathioprine; STE = steroids.

Figure 11: Influence of different immunosuppressive agent combinations on graft survival following kidney transplantation

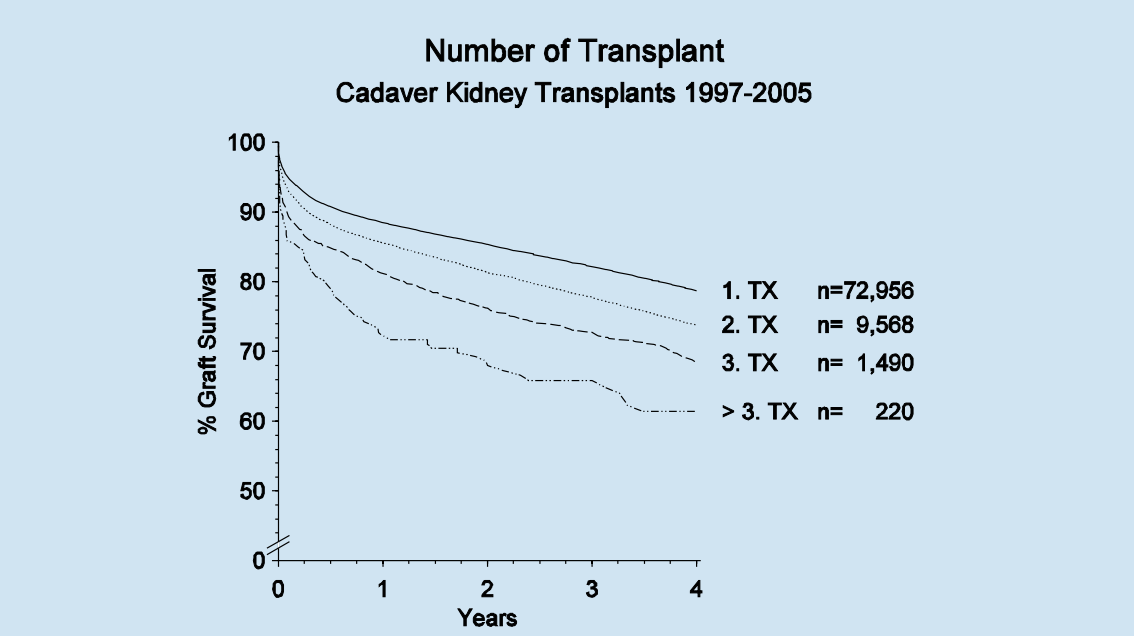


Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.
CYA = cyclosporine A; FK: FK506; AZA = azathioprine; MMF: mycophenolate mofetil.

10.5 Number of transplantations

The 4-year graft survival rate decreases by about 5% from the first to second and second to third transplantation. The 4-year graft survival rate for the first deceased-donor transplantation is 80% versus 75% for the second, 70% for the third, and 63% for the fourth or more transplants (Figure 12). For living donors, the worsening of graft function between first and second transplantation is less marked (about 2%) (1).

Figure 12: Number of transplantations and kidney graft survival

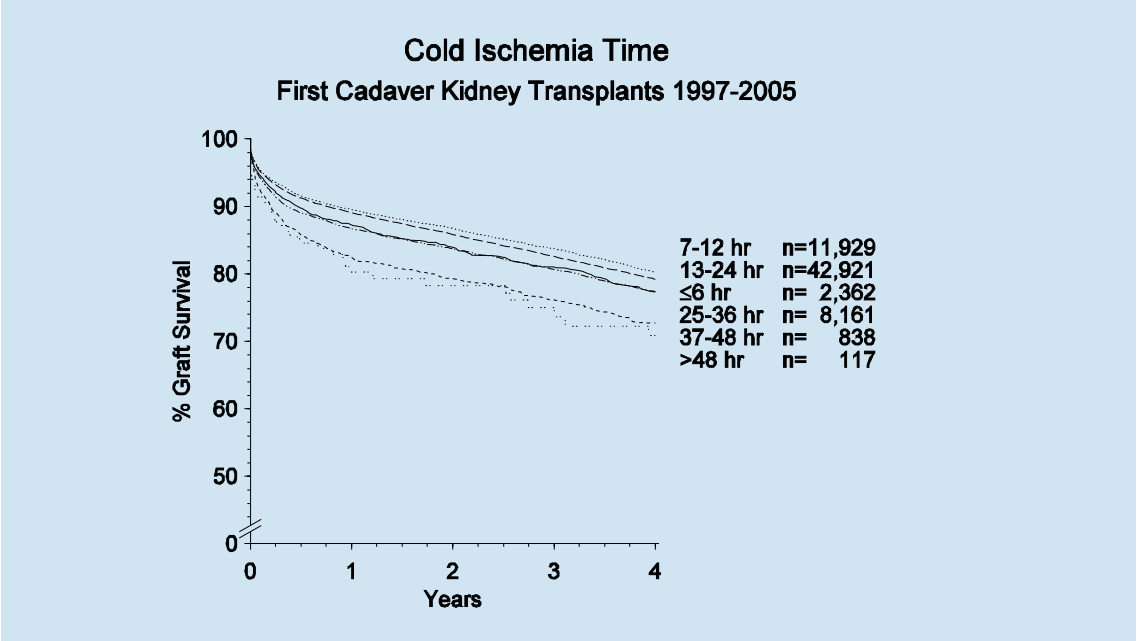


Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

10.6 Cold ischaemia time

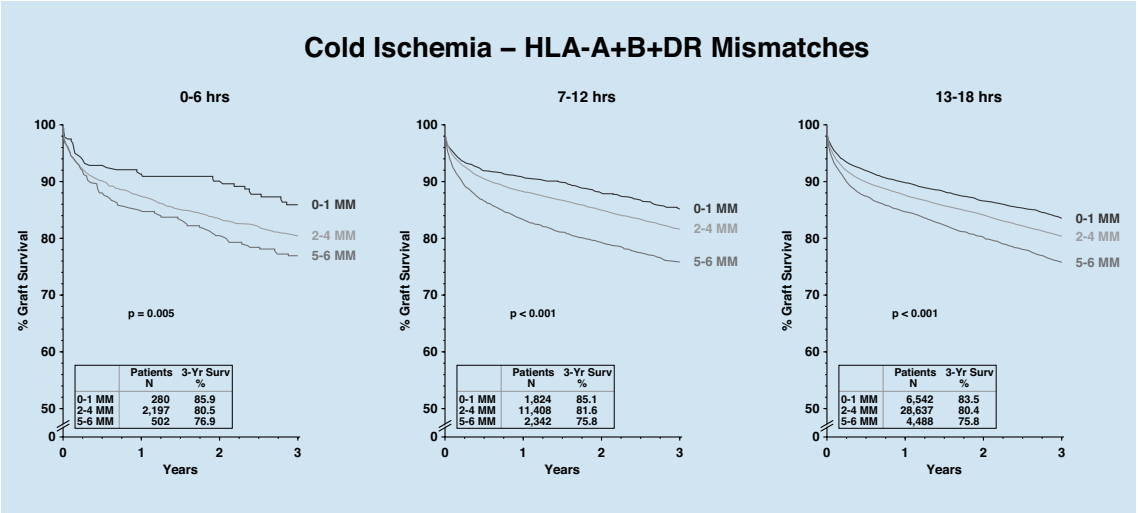
The success of unrelated living-donor kidney transplantation suggests that short cold ischaemia time plays an important role in kidney transplantation. However, according to CTS data, graft survival is influenced only marginally by ischaemia times up to 24 h (Figure 13) and that HLA matching has a significant effect on outcome, even with a short ischaemic preservation time (Figure 14). Compared to other preservation solutions, UW-solution was associated with significantly better outcome in the CTS study with ischaemia > 24 h (7).

Figure 13: Impact of cold ischaemia time on graft survival in deceased-donor kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

Figure 14: HLA-match dependent impact of cold ischaemia time on graft survival in deceased-donor kidney transplantations performed between 1990 and 2005

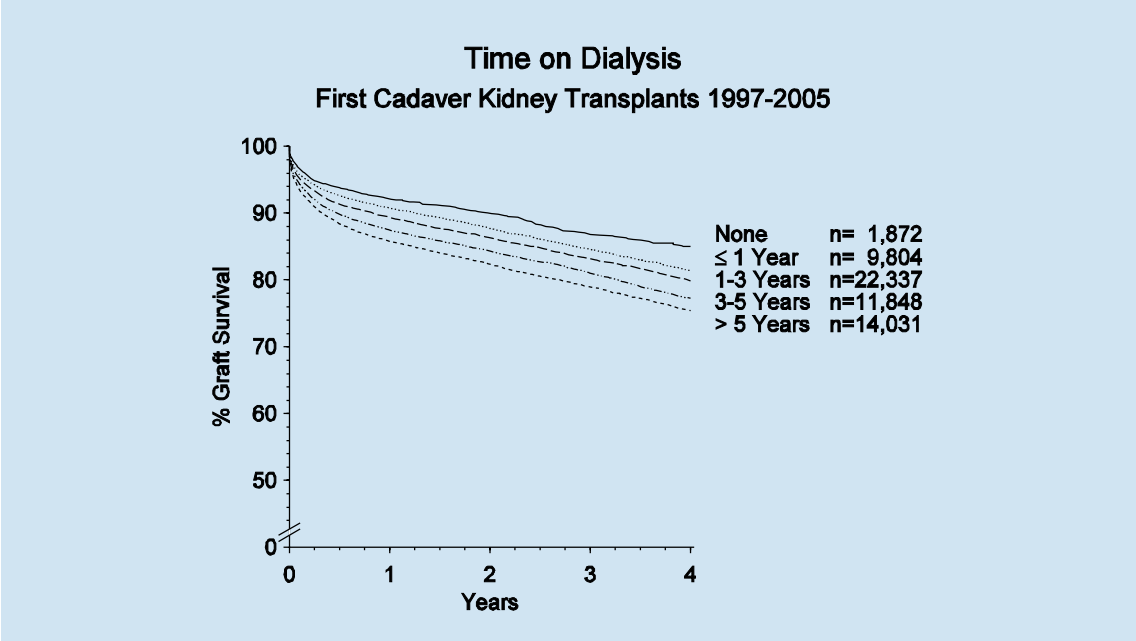


Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

10.7 Time on dialysis

According to CTS data, graft outcome is best if the patient never received dialysis and diminishes with every additional year of dialysis treatment (Figure 15). These findings are in agreement with data from reports that underline the importance of pre-emptive transplantation (9).

Figure 15: Impact of time on dialysis on graft survival in deceased-donor kidney transplantation



Reproduced from CTS Collaborative Transplant Study by kind permission of Prof. Dr. G. Opelz, Heidelberg, Germany.

10.8 References

1. CTS Collaborative Transplant Study. http://ctstransplant.org [accessed January 2012]
2. UNOS United Network for Organ Sharing. http://www.unos.org/ [accessed January 2012]
3. Terasaki PI, Cecka JM, Gjertson DW, et al. High survival rates of kidney transplants from spousal and living unrelated donors. N Engl J Med 1995 Aug;333(6):333-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7609748
4. CTS Collaborative Transplant Study Newsletter 1:2005. http://www.ctstransplant.org/public/newsletters.shtml#2005 [accessed January 2010]
5. Morris J, Johnson RJ, Fuggle S, et al. Analysis of factors that affect outcome of primary cadaveric renal transplantation in the UK. Lancet 1999 Oct;354(9185):1147-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10513707
6. Cohen B, Smits JM, Haase B, et al. Expanding the donor pool to increase renal transplantation. Nephrol Dial Transplant 2005 Jan;20(1):34-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15522904
7. Opelz G, Döhler B. Multicenter analysis of kidney preservation. Transplantation 2007 Feb;83(3): 247-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17297393
8. Opelz G, Döhler B. Effect of human leukocyte antigen compatibility on kidney graft survival: comparative analysis of two decades. Transplantation 2007 Jul;84(2):137-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17667803
9. Maier-Kriesche HU, Schold JD. The impact of pretransplant dialysis on outcomes in renal transplantation. Semin Dial 2005 Nov-Dec;18(6):499-504. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16398713

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list may not include the most commonly known abbreviations

ABO	blood group system consisting of groups A, AB, B and O
ACD	acid-citrate-dextrose
ACKD	acquired cystic kidney disease
ACR	acute cellular rejection
ADPKD	autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease
AHR	acute humoral rejection
ALG	anti-lymphocyte globulin
AM	acceptable mismatch
Anti-GBM	anti-glomerular basement
ATG	anti-thymocyte globulin
AVF	arterio-venous fistula
AZA	azathioprine
BMI	body mass index
CAR	chronic allograft rejection
CDC	complement-dependent cytotoxicity test
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CNIs	Calcineurin-inhibitors
CsA-ME	cyclosporine A micro-emulsion
CT	computed tomography
CTS	Collaborative Transplant Study
CYA	cyclosporine A
DTT	dithiothreitol (test)
DRE	digital rectal examination
EAU	European Association of Urology
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus
EC	EuroCollins (solution)
EC-MPS	enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium
EDTA	ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid
EDHEP	European Donor Hospital Education Program
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
ESRD	end stage renal disease
ESWL	extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy
ET	Eurotransplant
FSGS	focal and segmental glomerulosclerosis
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GR	grade of recommendation
HAR	hyper-acute rejection
HbA1C	glycosylated haemoglobin
HBcAb	hepatitis B core antibody
HBsAg	hepatitis B surface antigen
HBV	hepatitis B virus
hCG	human chorionic gonadotrophin
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLA	human leukocyte antigen, histocompatibility antigen
HTK	histidine-tryptophan-ketoglutarates
IF	interstitial fibrosis
IL-2	interleukin-2
IMPDH	inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (inhibitors)
IVIG	intravenous immunoglobulin
LCDD	light-chain deposit disease
LE	level of evidence
LLDN	laparoscopic live donor nephrectomy
MMF	mycophenolate mofetil
MPA	mycophenalic acid
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NHBD	non-heartbeating donor

OKT3	anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody
OLDN	open live donor nephrectomy
PRA	panel-reactive antibody
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
PTLD	post-transplantation lymphoproliferative disease
RAPA	rapamycin
RCC	renal cell carcinoma
ST	Scandia Transplant
STE	steroids
TA	tubular atrophy
TB	Tuberculosis
TNM	Tumour Node Metastasis
TRAS	Transparant Renal Artery Stenosis
UNOS/OPT	United Network for Organ Sharing/The Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network
UW	University of Wisconsin (solution)
VATER	Vertebrae, Anus, Trachea, Esophagus, and Renal
WHO	World Health Organization

Conflict of interest
All members of the Renal Transplantation Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Lasers and Technologies

T.R. Hermann, E.N. Liatsikos, U. Nagele,
O. Traxer, A.S. Merseburger (chairman)

European
Association
of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

The European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office have set up a Guidelines Working Panel to analyse the scientific evidence published in the world literature on lasers in urological practice. The working panel consists of experts who, through these guidelines, present the findings of their analysis, together with recommendations for the application of laser techniques in urology. The guidelines also include information on the characteristics of lasers, which the panel believes will be very helpful to clinicians.

The aim of this document is to provide information on technical considerations and supplement the information in other EAU organ-specific guidelines documents, rather than be in competition.

These guidelines on the use of lasers and novel technologies in urology provide information to clinical practitioners on physical background, physiological and technical aspects, as well as present the first clinical results from these new and evolving technologies. Emphasis is given on interaction between technical tools and human tissue, surgical aspects and abilities, advantages and disadvantages of new tools, including operator convenience. In this document the panel focused on lasers, with the intention to expand further in the years to come.

The application of lasers in treating urological disorders is a swiftly developing area, with laser technology currently used for a variety of urological procedures. In some therapeutic areas, lasers have become the primary method of treatment and standard of care.

As with many other surgical or interventional procedures, there is a lack of high-quality publications. But particularly in the field of lasers, where technological advances are occurring so rapidly, many technologies will never be in use long enough for long-term study. This is obviously a challenge for anyone attempting to establish an evidence-based discussion of this topic, and the panel are very aware that these guidelines will require re-evaluating and updating within a short time frame. It must be emphasised that clinical guidelines present the best evidence available to the experts but following guideline recommendations will not necessarily result in the best outcome. Guidelines can never replace clinical expertise when making treatment decisions for individual patients, but rather help to focus decisions - also taking personal values and preferences and individual circumstances of patients into account.

1.1 Safety

Safety is very important when using lasers. All intra-operative personnel should wear proper eye protection to avoid corneal or retinal damage. This is particularly important with neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) lasers, which penetrate deeply and can burn the retina faster than the blink reflex can protect it. Although holmium:YAG (Ho:YAG) lasers do not penetrate as deeply, they can cause corneal defects if aimed at the unprotected eye. For all lasers, adequate draping should be used to cover external areas, with wet towels draped over cutaneous lesions. Ideally, reflective surfaces (e.g. metal instruments) should be kept away from the field of treatment; however, if this is not possible, the field of treatment should be draped with wet drapes. Furthermore, it is very dangerous to use a laser if oxygen is in use anywhere near the operative field, as this may result in a laser fire and significant burns (1).

1.2 Methodology

The primary objective of this structured presentation of the current evidence base in this area is to assist clinicians in making informed choices regarding the use of lasers in their practice.

A secondary objective was to apply EAU guidelines methodology to this area where there is limited evidence available.

1.2.1 Data identification

Structured literature searches using an expert consultant were designed for each section of this document. Searches were carried out in the Cochrane Library database of Systematic Reviews, the Cochrane Library of Controlled Clinical Trials, and Medline and Embase on the Dialog-Datastar platform. The controlled terminology of the respective databases was used and both MesH and EMTREE were analysed for relevant entry terms.

The search strategies covered the last 25 years for Medline and for Embase (1974). A total number of 436 papers were identified, of which one was a Cochrane review (laser prostatectomy for benign prostatic obstruction (BPO) (2). A separate literature search for cost-effectiveness was carried out and yielded seven unique publications.

*1.2.2 **Publication history***

A scientific paper is now available based on this document (4). This resulted in minor changes to this published version of the Guidelines on Laser Technologies.

*1.2.3 **Quality assessment of the evidence***

The expert panel extracted relevant data from individual publications, the key findings of which are presented in tables throughout the document. Papers were assigned a level of evidence and recommendations have been graded following the listings in Tables 1 and 2.

Table 1: Level of evidence (LE)

Level	Type of evidence
1a	Evidence obtained from meta-analysis of randomised trials.
1b	Evidence obtained from at least one randomised trial.
2a	Evidence obtained from one well-designed controlled study without randomisation.
2b	Evidence obtained from at least one other type of well-designed quasi-experimental study.
3	Evidence obtained from well-designed non-experimental studies, such as comparative studies, correlation studies and case reports.
4	Evidence obtained from expert committee reports or opinions or clinical experience of respected Authorities.

Modified from Sackett et al. (3)

Table 2: Grade of recommendation (GR)

Grade	Nature of recommendations
A	Based on clinical studies of good quality and consistency addressing the specific recommendations and including at least one randomised trial.
B	Based on well-conducted clinical studies, but without randomised clinical trials.
C	Made despite the absence of directly applicable clinical studies of good quality.

Modified from Sackett et al. (3)

1.3 References

1. Handa KK, Bhalla AP, Arora A. Fire during the use of Nd-Yag laser. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol 2001 Sep 28;60(3):239-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11551615
2. Hoffman RM, MacDonald R, Wilt TJ. Laser prostatectomy for benign prostatic obstruction. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009;(1):CD001987. http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/o/cochrane/clsysrev/articles/CD001987/frame.html
3. Oxford Centre for Evidence-based Medicine Levels of Evidence (May 2009). Produced by Bob Phillips, Chris Ball, Dave Sackett, Doug Badenoch, Sharon Straus, Brian Haynes, Martin Dawes since November 1998. Updated by Jeremy Howick March 2009. http://www.cebm.net/index.aspx?o=1025 [accessed January 2012]
4. Herrmann TW, Liatsikos E, Nagele U, et al; EAU Guidelines Panel on Laser Technologies. EAU Guidelines on Laser Technologies. Eur Urol 2012 prior to print. DOI 10.1016/j.eururo.2012.01.010.

2. LASER-BASED TREATMENTS FOR BLADDER OUTLET OBSTRUCTION (BOO) AND BENIGN PROSTATIC ENLARGEMENT (BPE)

2.1 Introduction

Benign prostate obstruction (BPO) and enlargement (BPE) can be treated with a range of laser treatments using different laser systems and applications. The different systems produce different qualitative and quantitative

effects in tissue, such as coagulation, vaporisation or resection and enucleation via incision (Table 3). Laser treatment is considered to be an alternative treatment to transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP). It must therefore achieve the same improvement in symptoms and quality of life (QoL) as TURP. It must also improve all urodynamic parameters, such as maximal urinary flow rate (Q_{max}), post-void residual urine volume (PVR) and maximal detrusor pressure (Pdetmax) with less morbidity and shorter hospitalisation than with TURP.

This section focuses on contemporary laser treatments for the management of BPE or BPO.

2.2 Physical principles of laser action

LASER is an acronym that stands for Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Laser radiation is simply the directed light of a narrow bandwidth. This is synonymous to a single colour and applies to all regions of the invisible and visible electromagnetic spectrum (1).

2.2.1 ***Reflection***

When the laser beam encounters tissue, a percentage of the beam is reflected by the boundary layer and may therefore heat and damage surrounding tissue. Reflection mainly depends on the optical properties of the tissue and the irrigant surrounding it. Because reflection is not very much affected by wavelength, it can be ignored when evaluating a laser wavelength for surgical purposes.

2.2.2 ***Scattering***

The heterogeneous composition of tissue causes an intruding laser beam to scatter. Scattering diverts part of the laser beam away from its intended direction and therefore its intended purpose. The amount of scattering depends on the size of the particles and the wavelength of the laser. Shorter wavelengths are scattered to a much higher degree than longer wavelengths, i.e. blue laser radiation is scattered more than green, green more than red, and red more than infrared.

2.2.3 ***Absorption***

Absorption is the most important process of light interaction, though it is not the only process. Intensity of the laser beam decreases exponentially as the absorbing medium increases in density. Absorbed laser radiation is converted into heat, causing a local rise in temperature. Depending on the amount of heat produced, tissue will coagulate or even vaporise. Heat is more likely to be generated next to the tissue surface than further below because of the exponential decrease in beam intensity as it passes into the tissue and the immediate action of the absorption process.

However, absorption can only occur in the presence of a chromophore. Chromophores are chemical groups capable of absorbing light at a particular frequency and thereby imparting colour to a molecule. Examples of body chromophores are melanin, blood and water. Figure 1 shows the wavelength dependence and absorption length of a laser beam. The absorption length defines the optical pathway, along which 63% of incident laser energy is absorbed.

2.2.4 ***Extinction length***

The *extinction length* defines the depth of tissue up to which 90% of the incident laser beam is absorbed and converted into heat. An extinction length is equal to 2.3 absorption lengths. Haemoglobin and water are widely used as chromophores for surgical lasers (Figure 1).

For a short time after absorption of a circular laser beam, the generated heat is confined in a cylindrical-shaped volume, which has the height of the laser beam's extinction length and the approximate diameter of the laser fibre. The density of the absorbed energy determines the effect of the laser on tissue.

It is important to match the achieved effect along the extinction length with the intended surgical effect. At the same power wattage, a laser wavelength with a long extinction length may create a deep necrosis, whereas a laser wavelength with a much shorter extinction length will produce an increase in temperature above boiling point and immediate vaporisation of tissue.

Table 3: Lasers: crystals, abbreviations, wavelength, techniques and acronyms

Active crystal	Abbreviation	Wavelength (nm)	Technique	Acronym
Holmium	Ho:YAG	2140	Holmium laser ablation	HoLAP
			Holmium laser resection of prostate	HoLRP
			Holmium laser enucleation of prostate	HoLEP
Neodym	Nd:YAG	1064	Visual laser ablation of prostate	VLAP
			Contact laser ablation of prostate	CLAP
			Interstitial laser coagulation (of prostate)	ILC
Kalium titanyl phosphate	KTP:Nd:YAG (SHG)	532	Photoselective vaporisation of prostate	PVP
Lithium borat	LBO:Nd:YAG (SHG)	532	Photoselective vaporisation	PVP
Thulium	Tm:YAG	2013	Thullium laser vaporisation of prostate	ThuVAP
			Thulium laser vaporesection of prostate	ThuVARP
			Thulium laser vapoenucleation of prostate	ThuVEP
			Thulium laser enucleation of prostate	ThuLEP
Diode lasers	-	830	Interstitial laser coagulation of prostate	ILC
		940	Vaporisation	-
		980	Vaporisation	-
		1318	Vaporisation	-
		1470	Vaporisation	-

2.3 Historical use of lasers

*2.3.1 **Nd:YAG laser***

The Nd:YAG laser has a wavelength of 1.064 nm. It has a long extinction length and penetrates tissue by approximately 4-18 mm, making it suitable for haemostasis and tissue coagulation. At that time it appeared to be ideal for the treatment of benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH) (2). Since 1985, many Nd:YAG laser-driven transurethral treatments have been described for both BPE and BPO (3).

*2.3.2 **Nd:YAG laser-based techniques***

Several Nd:YAG approaches have been extensively studied, including: visual laser ablation of the prostate (VLAP) (4); contact laser ablation of the prostate (CLAP) (5); interstitial laser coagulation (ILC) (6), and Nd:YAG laser hybrid techniques (7).

However, all these techniques have been superseded by the advent of newer laser-based techniques (8). As these techniques are no longer contemporary, they will not be discussed further in these guidelines. However, they are discussed in the EAU guidelines on the conservative treatment of non-neurogenic male lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) (9).

2.4 References

1. Teichmann HO, Herrmann TR, Bach T. Technical aspects of lasers. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3): 221-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17534625
2. Kuntz RM. Laser treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):241-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17530259
3. Shanberg AM, Lee IS, Tansey LA, et al. Extensive neodymium-YAG photoirradiation of the prostate in men with obstructive prostatism. Urology 1994 Apr;43(4):467-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7512297
4. Cowles RS 3rd, Kabalin JN, Childs S, et al. A prospective randomised comparison of transurethral resection to visual laser ablation of the prostate for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 1995 Aug;46(2):155-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7542818

5. McAllister WJ, Absalom MJ, Mir K, et al. Does endoscopic laser ablation of the prostate stand the test of time? Five-year results from a multicentre randomised controlled trial of endoscopic laser ablation against transurethral resection of the prostate. BJU Int 2000 Mar;85(4):437-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10691822
6. Nørby B, Nielsen HV, Frimodt-Møller PC. Transurethral interstitial laser coagulation of the prostate and transurethral microwave thermotherapy vs transurethral resection or incision of the prostate: results of a randomised, controlled study in patients with symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 2002 Dec;90(9):853-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12460345
7. Tuhkanen K, Heino A, Ala-Opas M. Two-year follow-up results of a prospective randomised trial comparing hybrid laser prostatectomy with TURP in the treatment of big benign prostates. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2001 Jun;35(3):200-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11487072
8. Muschter R. [Laser therapy for benign prostate hyperplasia]. Aktuelle Urol 2008 Sep;39(5):359-68. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18798125
9. M. Oelke, A. Bachmann, A. Descazeaud, et al; members of the European Association of Urology (EAU) Guidelines Office. Guidelines on Conservative treatment of non-neurogenic male LUTS. In: EAU Guidelines, edition presented at the 25th EAU Annual Congress, Barcelona 2010. ISBN 978-90-79754-70-0. http://www.uroweb.org/gls/pdf/BPH%202010.pdf

3. CONTEMPORARY LASER SYSTEMS

3.1 Introduction

Following the first generation of laser-based treatments for BOO and BPE, four (groups of) laser systems are currently used:

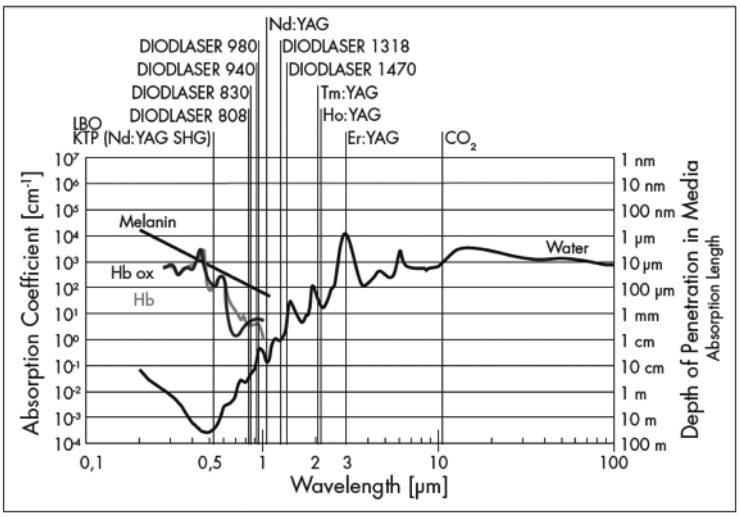
- KTP (kalium titanyl phosphate, KTP:Nd:YAG [SHG]) and LBO (lithium borat, LBO:Nd:YAG [SHG]) lasers;
- Diode lasers (various);
- Holmium (Ho):YAG (yttrium-aluminum-garnet) lasers;
- Thulium (Tm):YAG (yttrium-aluminum-garnet) lasers.

All the above-mentioned contemporary (and historical) laser therapies for the treatment of BOO and BPE use physiological sodium 0.9% solution for irrigation. This eliminates the risk of hypotonic hypervolaemic transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) syndrome, which occured in 1.4% of patients in large TURP reported series (1). A second advantage (that applies to all endoscopic minimal invasive therapies for the prostate) is the avoidance of secondary wound healing skin disorders, which occured in 5.5% of the patients in a major series of open prostatectomy (OP) (2).

3.2 KTP (kalium titanyl phosphate, KTP:Nd:YAG [SHG] and LBO (lithium borat, LBO:Nd:YAG [SHG]) lasers

The KTP and LBO lasers are both derived from the Nd:YAG laser. The addition of a KTP or LBO crystal to the laser resonator converts the Nd:YAG wavelength from 1064 nm to 532 nm. This is a green wavelength, which is strongly absorbed by oxyhaemoglobin. The resultant laser has a short extinction length and penetrates vascular tissue by only a few micrometres. In red, well-circulated tissue, the density of absorbed power is high and immediately raises the tissue temperature above the boiling point (Figure 1). This causes tissue to vaporise, leaving behind a coagulated seam where the increased tissue temperature has resulted in haemostasis (3). In this seam, haemoglobin is bleached but not vaporised. The applied laser energy must travel through the coagulated seam, where the laser beam experiences mainly scattering. The lack of absorption in coagulated tissue impairs its removal, while the scattering of the green wavelength reduces the laser beam's intensity, impairing its vaporising effect on the next tissue layer (4).

Figure 1: Wavelength of different laser types, depth of penetration in media and absorption coefficient



Er:YAG = Erbium: yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser; Ho:YAG = Holmium: yttrium aluminium garnet; KTP = potassium titanyl-phosphate; LBO = lithium triborate; Nd:YAG = Neodymium-doped: yttrium aluminium garnet; Tm:YAG = Thulium: yttrium aluminium garnet.

3.2.1 ***Physical properties***

All new lasers are extensively studied in preclinical trials in comparison with the most common vaporising laser, i.e. an 80 W KTP or 120 W LBO laser. The specific heat capacities of renal (3.89 kJ/kg/°K) and prostatic tissues (3.80 kJ/kg/°K) are almost equivalent, so making the isolated, blood-perfused, porcine kidney a very useful model for the study of laser procedures (5).

Animal models have been very useful in evaluating laser characteristics, including tissue ablation rate, efficacy of ablation in correlation to the power setting (output power efficiency), haemostatic properties, and the extent of morphological tissue necrosis. Table 4 provides a comparison of different lasers and their individual characteristics derived from a series of ex-vivo comparison studies in a porcine, perfused kidney model. The data has been given as a statistical mean or interval, according to the original publication.

3.2.1.1 Ablation capacity

The tissue ablation rate achieved with KTP and LBO lasers increases with increasing output power. In comparison to the Tm:YAG laser (70 W) KTP laser, the tissue ablation rate reached 3.99 g/10 min (80 W KTP) and 6.56 g/10 min (70 W Tm:YG) ($p < 0.05$). When compared to TURP, both laser devices produced significantly lower rates of tissue removal (8.28 g/10 min) (6). However, the LBO laser, with its tissue ablation rate of 7.01 g/10 min laser ablation at 120 W offered a significantly higher ablation capacity compared with KTP laser at 80 W ($p < 0.005$) (7).

3.2.1.2 Bleeding rate

The KTP laser shows excellent haemostatic potential, with a bleeding rate for the 80 W KTP laser of 0.21 g/min compared with 0.16 g/min for the continuous wave (cw) 70 W Tm:YAG laser. In contrast, TURP is associated with a much higher bleeding rate of 20.14 g/min ($p < 0.05$) (6). The bleeding rate for the 120 W LBO laser was also higher at 0.65 g/min when compared to 80 W KTP with 0.21g/min, respectively ($p < 0.05$) (7).

3.2.1.3 Coagulation zone

In the porcine perfused kidney tissue ablation model, the KTP laser ($p = 0.05$) showed a 2.5-fold deeper coagulation zone (666.9 µm) than the cw Tm:YAG (264.7 µm) laser and TURP (287.1 µm). Tissue ablation resulted in a dense coagulation zone at the tissue surface (6). The corresponding depths of the coagulation zones at 120 W LBO laser and 80 W KTP laser were 835 µm and 667 µm ($p < 0.05$), respectively (7).

Table 4: Ex-vivo study on ablative capacity, haemostatic properties and coagulation zone due to tissue penetration in porcine perfused kidney model

Study	Bach et al. 2010 (8)		Heinrich et al. 2010 (7)		Wendt-Nordahl et al. 2008 (6)		
Laser Type	Tm:YAG		KTP	LBO	Tm:YAG	KTP	HF (TURP)
Wavelength (nm)	2013	2013	532	532	2013	532	
Power setting (W)	70	120	80	120	70	80	160
Tissue ablation rate (g/10 min)	9.80	16.41	3.99	7.01	6.56 ± 0.69	3.99 ± 0.48	8.28 ± 0.38
Bleeding rate (g/min)	0.11	0.15	0.21	0.65	0.16 ± 0.07	0.21 ± 0.07	20.14 ± 2.03
Coagulation zone (mm)	0.36	0.40	0.667	0.835	0.2647	0.669	0.287

KTP kalium titanyl phosphate; LBO lithium borate;Tm Thulium:YAG Laser.

*3.2.2 **Surgical technique of KTP/LBO lasers***

Both KTP and LBO lasers operate at a wavelength at which absorption in water is minimal. In the absence of an haemoglobin molecule, the extinction length increases dramatically and the beam penetrates deeply into irrigant and/or tissue. This technique is described as the photoselective vaporisation of prostate (PVP) (9). In addition, side-firing fibres are used in PVP to ensure that the surgeon has better, direct, visual control of the point at which the laser beam strikes the tissue.

Laser energy is directed towards prostatic tissue using a 70° 600 µm side-firing probe. Under direct vision, vaporisation is performed with a fibre-sweeping technique, starting at the bladder neck and continuing with the lateral lobes and the apex. The prostate gland is vaporised from inside the gland to its outer layers. This also occurs with TURP, but in contrast to TURP, no tissue remains for histopathological evaluation (10).

Since 2006, a LBO laser with a power of 120 W and collimated beam has been available (7,11).

As with all lasers, surgeon must wear safety goggles. These goggles must include a coloured filter in the KTP/ LBO laser setting.

*3.2.3 **Urodynamic results and symptom reduction***

In 1998, Malek et al. (12) showed that the 60 W KTP laser was both feasible and safe. Since then, most laser therapy trials prior to 2010 have used the 80 W KTP laser. There has been only limited data on the higher-powered 120-W LBO laser. Almost 10 years after the clinical introduction of 532-nm lasers, two randomised controlled trials (RCT) were published comparing 80 W KTP with TURP with follow-up periods up to 12 months (13,14). One of the trials compared 80 W KTP with OP (15), while the other trial compared 120 W LBO laser with TURP (16) (Table 5).

One RCT showed equivalent results to TURP (12) at 1-year follow-up, while another, non-randomised, two-centre study reported equivocal results (17). In contrast, a second RCT clearly showed that TURP resulted in greater urodynamic improvement (Q_{max}) than the KTP PVP laser (14). Another study comparing KTP PVP with OP showed equivalence in Q_{max} improvement, PVR and symptom score reduction at 18-month follow-up (15). Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), as a surrogate marker of tissue removal, decreased by 68.2% with OP and 61.2% with KTP PVP (15). However, other studies have reported much lower rates for PSA reduction using KTP PVP, including 45% reduction (18), 41.7% (19) and 37% (20).

Kalium titanyl phosphate PVP showed a higher retreatment rate in larger prostates > 80 ml within a 12 month follow-up (21). The study comparing LBO PVP treatment with TURP showed equivalence in Q_{max} improvement, PVR and symptom score reduction at 36-month follow-up (16). PVP demonstrated reduced detrusor pressure at maximum flow (Pdetqmax) (22) at 1-year follow-up. In addition, prospective, non-randomised trials have demonstrated the safety and efficiency of LBO PVP laser in patients receiving ongoing oral anticoagulation (23), in patients with retention (24), or with prostates > 80 mL (21).

In studies comparing TURP with KTP PVP, OT time was significantly shorter in prostates larger than 80 ml by 30 to 50 min (17). This difference comes down to 9 min with the LBO PVP (120 Watt) (16).

Table 5: KTP and LBO lasers: improvement in urodynamic parameters, symptom score and PSA reduction

Reference	Laser source (power)	Follow-up (mo)	Patients (n)	Mean prostate size (mL)	PSA reduc-tion (%)	Change in symptoms (%)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s) (%)	PVR change (%)	LE
Bouchier-Haydes et al. 2006 (13)	KTP PVP	12	38	42.4	n.a.	49.83	+12.1 (167)	81.63	1b
	TURP		38	33.2	n.a.	50.23	+9.2 (149)	68.90	
Horasanli et al. 2008 (14)	KTP PVP	6	39	86.1	31.8	30.68	+5.8 (157)	87.05	1b
	TURP		37	88	44.6	68.31	+13.8 (225)	73.98	
Tasci et al. 2008 (17)	KTP PVP	24	40	108.4	56.8	82.66	+13.5 (307.7)	83.69	2a
	TURP		41	104.2	78.7	83.33	+12.8 (306.4)	84.91	
Skolarikos et al. 2008 (15)	KTP PVP	18	65	93	61.2	50	+7.4 (186)	84.53	1b
	OP		60	96	68.2	59.52	+7.0 (187.5)	86.51	
Al-Ansari et al. 2010 (16)	LBO	36	60	61.8	38.4	60.29	+9.6 (239)	78.9	1b
	TURP		60	60.3	62.5	65.9	+13.6 (312.5)	80.2	

KTP = potassium titanyl-phosphate laser; LBO = lithium triborate; OP = open prostatectomy; PVP = photoselective vaporisation of the prostate; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

3.2.4 ***Risk and complications, durability of results***

3.2.4.1 Intra-operative complications

Several studies have proven the intra-operative safety of PVP with KTP and LBO lasers, including prospective studies (25-27) and RCTs in comparison to TURP (13,14,28,29) or OP (15). Furthermore, safety was demonstrated in subgroup analyses of patients with large prostates (30,31), receiving anticoagulant therapy (31,24), or in retention (31,24).

An RCT comparing 80 W KTP PVP with TURP demonstrated significantly less blood loss in KTP PVP (0.45 g/dL) versus TURP (1.46 g/dL, $p < 0.005$), resulting in a blood transfusion rate in TURP (13). Another RCT of 80 W KTP PVP compared with TURP supported these findings with a blood transfusion rate of 8.1% for TURP (14). In an RCT comparing LBO PVP to OP, the transfusion rate was 0% following KTP PVP, but 13.3% for OP (15). A total of 7.69% of patients in the KTP PVP group required intra-operative conversion to TURP for the control of bleeding, most probably due to capsule perforation (15). A study comparing LBO PVP laser therapy with TURP reported a blood transfusion rate of 20%, a capsule perforation rate of 16.7%, and a TURP syndrome of 5% for the TURP treatment arm, but none of these complications were reported for LBO PVP (16).

These findings are supported by a number of studies (not including RCTs). A major multicentre study of 500 patients comparing PVP to TURP reported an intra-operative bleeding rate in 3.6%, capsule perforation in 0.2% and conversion to TURP due to bleeding, prostate size or fibre defect in 5.2% of patients. No blood transfusions were necessary. The highest rate of intra-operative bleeding occurred in a subgroup of patients with prostates > 80 mL (5.7% of subgroup) (25). One non-RCT study of LBO PVP reported an intra-operative bleeding rate of 2.6%, capsule perforation of 1% and blood transfusion rate of 0.4% (27). In another non-RCT on LBO PVP, various subgroups of patients were compared, including patients not in retention with patients in retention, patients taking anticoagulant therapy versus patients not taking anticoagulants, and prostate size < 80 mL versus > 80 mL. Intra-operative bleeding which required conversion to TURP occurred in 1.5-3.8% (> 80 mL). Capsule perforation occurred in 0.8-1.5% of patients taking anticoagulants (31). These findings have been supported by studies from other authors in the same patient subgroups (23,24,30,32).

3.2.4.2 Early post-operative complications

An RCT that compared KTP PVP to TURP in patients with prostates > 70 mL found a significantly higher rate of urinary retention after KTP PVP (15.3 vs 2.7%, $p < 0.05$). Reinterventions were necessary in 17.6% of patients following KTP PVP versus 0% for TURP (14). Another RCT reported 0% and 16.7% clot retention in KTP PVP and TURP, respectively, while transient urinary retention with recatheterisation occurred in 5% of both groups.

Urinary tract infection (UTI) occurred in 3.3% and 5% of KTP PVP and TURP, respectively, while re-admissions were necessary in 1.6% and 5%, respectively (13).

An RCT comparing KTP PVP with OP for prostatic adenomas > 80 mL showed no statistical significant difference in the incidence of post-operative complications. Prolonged dysuria was noted in 7.6% of KTP PVP and 11.6% of OP patients, while UTIs were reported in 21.5% of KTP PVP versus 27% of OP patients (15). In an RCT comparing LBO PVP with TURP, clot retention occurred in 10% of TURP-treated patients compared with none in the LBO PVP group. In the same study, dysuria within 30 days following surgery was reported in 31.7% of TURP and 93.3% of LBO PVP. In contrast, a non-RCT study on LBO PVP reported dysuria in 7.5-14.6 % in all patient subgroups (31).

The above findings are supported by the data of a major study of 500 patients (25). Following PVP using the KTP laser, haematuria was reported in 9.8%, blood transfusion in 0.4%, revision in 0.6%, acute renal failure in 0.6%, urosepsis in 0.4%, dysuria in 14.8%, transient urge incontinence in 2.4%, and UTI in 6.8% (25).

Haematuria was significantly more common in patients taking anticoagulation treatment (17.2 vs 5.4%, $p = 0.001$) (23) or with prostates > 80 mL (17.2 vs 9.8%, $p < 0.05$) (25). Patients with prostates < 40 mL had a significantly higher rate of dysuria than the overall study population (24.3 vs 14.8%, $p < 0.01$) (25).

3.2.4.3 Late complications and durability of results

The longest follow-up of an RCT in evaluating the longevity and long-term morbidity of KTP PVP and LBO PVP is the study of Al-Ansari comparing LBO PVP to TURP with a follow-up of 36 months (16). Longer follow-up of 60 months is presented by a non-randomised study of Hai. Retreatment with PVP due to recurrent adenoma occurred in 7.7% of 246 patients, three (1.2%) underwent incision of the bladder neck resulting in an overall retreatment rate of 8.9% (33).

In an RCT with a 6-month follow-up, 8.1% in the TURP group and 5.1% in the KTP PVP group underwent internal urethrotomy in response to a urethral stricture. Reintervention was required in 17.9% of patients treated with KTP PVP because coagulated tissue was significantly obstructing the bladder outlet. Retrograde ejaculation rates were similar in both groups (56.7% TURP and 49.9% KTP PVP) (14). Another RCT with a 12-month follow-up reported submeatal/urethral strictures or bladder-neck stenosis in 13.3% of TURP patients and 8.3% of KTP PVP patients (13). In an RCT of KTP PVP versus OP, and an 18-month follow-up, the reoperation rates due to urethral stricture were 3.1% versus 1.6%, bladder neck contracture (0% vs 3.3%), or need for apical resection (1.5%), with a total of 4.6% of KTP PVP and 5% OP, respectively (15). Comparing LBO PVP with TURP reported a significantly lower retreatment rate of 1.8% for LBO PVP versus 11% for TURP. Bladder neck contractures were incised in 3.6% and 7.4%, respectively.

These findings are supported by a large case series RCT for KTP PVP, with a global retreatment rate of 14.8% due to recurrent or persisting adenoma tissue (6.8%), bladder neck strictures (3.6%), or urethral strictures (4.4%) (32). The limitation of this study lies in the number of patients available at 5-year follow-up (27/500) (25). Anticoagulation and urinary retention at the time of surgery have no significant influence on the rate of long-term complications (23,24).

It is possible that KTP PVP has reduced efficacy in patients with larger prostates. According to a prospective, multicentre study, PVP efficacy was lower in patients with larger prostates and PSA levels > 6.1 ng/mL (34), but this finding has not been supported by other studies (25,30). Bladder neck strictures seem to occur more often in patients with prostate glands < 40 mL (7.8 vs 3.6%, $p < 0.05$) (25).

There is evidence from RCTs that persistent urinary stress incontinence is rare. Incontinence varies from 1.4% for KTP PVP (34) to 0.7% for LBO PVP (27).

There is limited data on sexual function following PVP. After a 24-month follow-up, overall sexual function in men undergoing KTP PVP was found to be maintained. In those IIEF-5 (International Index of Erectile Function-5) > 19, the pre-operative median value was significantly decreased from 22 to 16.7 ($p < 0.05$) (36). In an RCT of LBO PVP compared with TURP, none of the 82 patients in follow-up for 36 months presented with erectile dysfunction, and there was a comparable rate of retrograde ejaculation (PVP 49.9% vs TURP 56.7%, $p = 0.21$) (14). Another study, comparing KTP PVP and OP, reported no change in erectile function post-operatively (15). In a case series of LBO PVP, erectile function remained stable or improved in patients with mild or mild-to-moderate erectile dysfunction (37-39).

3.2.5 *Conclusions and recommendations for the use of KTP and LBO lasers*

Conclusions	LE
In patients with small to moderate-sized prostates, TURP remains the standard of care.	1a
KTP PVP and LBO PVP are safe and effective in the treatment of BOO and BPE in patients with a small or medium prostate gland.	1b
Over a follow-up of 3-5 years, re-treatment rates appear comparable to those with TURP.	1b (at 3 yr) 4 (at 5 yr)
KTP PVP and LBO PVP are safe and effective for patients receiving anticoagulation medication or patients in retention.	4

Recommendations	GR
KTP/LBO PVP is a treatment alternative for patients with BOO and BPE for small and medium glands.	A
KTP/LBO PVP can be offered as an alternative to TURP for patients with refractory urinary retention.	B
KTP/LBO PVP can be offered to patients using anticoagulant medication.	B
KTP/LBO PVP is a safe method for volume reduction in large size prostate glands.	A

BOO = bladder outlet obstruction; BPE = benign prostatic enlargement; KTP = potassium titanyl-phosphate laser; LBO = lithium triborate; PVP = photoselective vaporisation of the prostate; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

3.2.6 *References*

1. Reich O, Gratzke C, Bachmann A, et al; Urology Section of the Bavarian Working Group for Quality Assurance. Morbidity, mortality and early outcome of transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective multicenter evaluation of 10,654 patients. J Urol 2008 Jul;180(1):246-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18499179
2. Adam C, Hofstetter A, Deubner J, et al. Retropubic transvesical prostatectomy for significant prostatic enlargement must remain a standard part of urology training. Scan J Urol Nephrol 2004;38(6):472-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15841780
3. Kuntzman RS, Malek RS, Barrett DM. High-power potassium titanyl phosphate laser vaporization prostatectomy. Mayo Clin Proc 1998 Aug;73(8):798-801. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9703311
4. Teichmann HO, Herrmann TR, Bach T. Technical aspects of lasers in urology. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):221-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17534625
5. Cooper TE, Trezek GJ. A probe technique for determining the thermal conductivity of tissue. J Heat Transfer 1972;94(2):133. http://asmedl.org
6. Wendt-Nordahl G, Huckele S, Honeck P, et al. Systemic evaluation of recently introduced 2-microm continuous-wave thulium laser for vaporesection of the prostate. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):1041-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18377234
7. Heinrich E, Wendt-Nordahl G, Honeck P, et al. 120 W lithium triborate laser for photoselective vaporization of the prostate: comparison with 80 W potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser in an ex-vivo model. J Endourol 2010 Jan;24(1):75-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19958155
8. Bach T, Huck N, Wezel F, et al. 70 vs 120 W thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet 2 microm continuouswave laser for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: a systematic ex-vivo evaluation. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(3):368-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912204
9. McAllister WJ, Gilling PJ. Vaporization of the prostate. Curr Opin Urol 2004 Jan;14(1):31-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15091047
10. Heinrich E, Schiefelbein F, Schoen G. Technique and short-term outcome of green light laser (KTP, 80W) vaporisation of the prostate. Eur Urol 2007;52(6):1632-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17689002
11. Reich O. Greenlight: from potassium-titanyl-phosphate to lithium triborate or from good to better? Curr Opin Urol 2011 Jan;21(1):27-30. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21045703

12. Malek RS, Barrett DM, Kuntzman RS. High-power potassium-titanyl-phosphate (KTP/532) laser vaporization prostatectomy: 24 hours later. Urology 1998 Feb;51(2):254-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9495707
13. Bouchier-Hayes DM, Anderson P, Van Appledorn S, et al. KTP laser versus transurethral resection: early results of a randomised trial. J Endourol 2006 Aug;20(8):580-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16903819
14. Horasanli K, Silay MS, Altay B, et al. Photoselective potassium titanyl phosphate (KTP) laser vaporization versus transurethral resection of the prostate for prostates larger than 70 mL: a short-term prospective randomised trial. Urology 2008 Feb;71(2):247-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308094
15. Skolarikos A, Papachristou C, Athanasiadis G, et al. Eighteen-month results of a randomised prospective study comparing transurethral photoselective vaporization with transvesical open enucleation for prostatic adenomas greater than 80 cc. J Endourol 2008 Oct; 22(10):2333-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18837655
16. Al-Ansari A, Younes N, Sampige VP, et al. GreenLight HPS 120-W laser vaporization versus transurethral resection of the prostate for treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: a randomised clinical trial with midterm follow-up. Eur Urol 2010 Sep;58(3):349-55. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20605316
17. Tasci AI, Tugcu V, Sahin S, et al. Rapid communication: Photoselective vaporization of the prostate versus transurethral resection of the prostate for the large prostate: a prospective nonrandomised bicenter trial with 2-year follow-up. J Endourol 2008 Feb;22(2):347-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18257671
18. van Iersel MP, Thomas CM, Witjes WP, et al. Clinical implications of the rise and fall of prostate specific antigen after laser prostatectomy. Br J Urol 1996 Nov;78(5):742-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8976771
19. Hai MA, Malek RS. Photoselective vaporization of the prostate: Initial experience with a new 80 W KTP laser for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Endourol 2003 Mar;17(2):93-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12689402
20. Te AE, Malloy TR, Stein BS, et al. Photoselective vaporization of the prostate for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: 12-month results from the first United States multicenter prospective trial. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1404-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371855
21. Pfitzenmaier J, Gilfrich C, Pritsch M, et al. Vaporization of prostates of > or =80 mL using a potassium-titanyl- phosphate laser: midterm-results and comparison with prostates of <80 mL. BJU Int 2008 Aug;102(3):322-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18422772
22. Hamann MF, Naumann CM, Seif C, et al. Functional outcome following photoselective vaporisation of the prostate (PVP): urodynamic findings within 12 months follow-up. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):902-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18502565
23. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Forster T, et al. Safety and effectiveness of photoselective vaporization ot the prostate (PVP) in patients on ongoing oral anticoagulation. Eur Urol 2007 Apr;51(4):1031-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16945475
24. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Seifert HH, et al. Photoselective vaporization ot the prostate: subgroup analysis of men with refractory urinary retention. Eur Urol 2006 Nov;50(5):1040-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16481099
25. Ruszat R, Seitz M, Wyler SF, et al. GreenLight laser vaporization of the prostate: single-center experience and long-term results after 500 procedures. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):893-901. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18486311
26. Spaliviero M, Araki M, Culkin DJ, et al. Incidence, management, and prevention of perioperative complications of GreenLight HPS laser photoselective vaporization prostatectomy: experience in the first 70 patients. J Endourol 2009 Mar;23(3):495-502. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19265468
27. Choi B, Tabatabaei S, Bachmann A, et al. GreenLight HPS 120-W laser for benign prostatic hyperplasia: comparative complications and technical recommendations. Eur Urol 2008 Suppl 7(4):384-392. http://www.europeanurology.com/article/S1569-9056(08)00028-6/fulltext
28. Ruszat R, Wyler S, Seitz M, et al. Comparison of Potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser vaporization of the prostate and transurethral resection of the prostate: update of a prospective non-randomised two-centre study. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(10):1432-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18671785

29. Tugcu V, Tasci AI, Sahin S, et al. Comparison of photoselective vaporization of the prostate and transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective nonrandomised bicenter trial with 2-year followup. J Endourol 2008 Jul;22(7):1519-25.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18613777
30. Rajbabu K, Chandrasekara SK, Barber NJ, et al. Photoselective vaporization of the prostate with the potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser in men with prostates of >100 mL. BJU Int 2007 Sep;100(3):593-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17511771
31. Woo H, Reich O, Bachmann A, et al. Outcome of the GreenLight HPS 120-W laser therapy in specific patient populations: those in retention, on anticoagulants, and with large prostates (>80 ml).
Eur Urol Suppl 7(4):378-383.
http://www.europeanurology.com/article/S1569-9056(08)00027-4/fulltext
32. Rieken M, Ebinger Mundorff N, Bonkat G, et al. Complications of laser prostatectomy: a review of recent data. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):53-62.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20052586
33. Hai MA. Photoselective vaporization of prostate: five-year outcomes of entire clinic patient population. Urology 2009 Apr;73(4):807-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19200589
34. Te AE, Malloy TR, Stein BS, et al. Impact of prostate-specific antigen level and prostate volume as predictors of efficacy in photoselective vaporization prostatectomy: analysis and results of an ongoing prospective multicentre study at 3 years. BJU Int 2006 Jun;97(6):1229-33.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16686717
35. Te AE, Malloy TR, Stein BS, et al. Photoselective vaporization of the prostate for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: 12-month results from the first United States multicenter prospective trial. J Urol 2004 Oct;172(4 Pt 1):1404-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15371855
36. Bruyère F, Puichaud A, Pereira H, et al. Influence of photoselective vaporization of the prostate on sexual function: results of a prospective analysis of 149 patients with long-term follow-up. Eur Urol 2010 Aug;58(2):207-11.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20466480
37. Spaliviero M, Strom KH, Gu X, et al. Does Greenlight HPS™ laser photoselective vaporization prostatectomy affect sexual function? J Endourol 2010 Dec;24(12):2051-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20964486
38. Kavoussi PK, Hermans MR. Maintenance of erectile function after photoselective vaporization of the prostate for obstructive benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Sex Med 2008 Nov;5(11):2669-71.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18785895
39. Paick JS, Um JM, Kim SW, et al. Influence of highpower potassium-titanyl-phosphate photoselective vaporization of the prostate on erectile function: a short-term follow-up study.
J Sex Med 2007 Nov;4(6):1701-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17672845

3.3 Diode lasers

*3.3.1 **General aspects***

The term diode laser refers to the method of laser beam generation.

Laser light can be generated by a resonator or a diode. The main advantages of diode lasers compared with Nd:YAG lasers are a smaller box size and a much higher wall-plug efficiency (i.e. how much of the mains supply is converted into laser power). These differences arise out of the technical principles behind the generation of laser radiation and energy. Depending on the type of laser generator, the efficiency of diode lasers is more than one order of magnitude better. Furthermore, the thermal power loss of diode lasers is much less and therefore they can be operated from a standard wall mounted power outlet.

Diode lasers in the wavelength range of 808-980 nm experience a similar absorption in water and generate a similar tissue effect to the Nd:YAG laser (1,2). Other diode lasers have wavelengths of 1318 and 1470 nm (3). The 830 nm (Indigo) diode laser has been extensively used in interstitial laser coagulation (ILC) (4).

Various types of diode lasers operating at wavelengths of 940, 980 or 1470 nm are available for the application in diode-laser prostatectomy. Currently, there are only a few studies investigating the clinical applications of diode lasers and the maximum follow-up is 1 year.

3.3.2 ***Physical properties***

3.3.2.1 *Ablation capacity*

In the porcine perfused kidney model, the 1318 nm diode laser achieved the highest ablation rate (12.43 g/10 min, 100 W) when compared to the 1470 nm diode laser (5.27 g/10 min, 80 W), the 980 nm diode laser (8.99g/10 min, 200 W), or the 120 W LBO laser (7.01 g/10 min, 120 W). The same result was achieved when the output power efficiency (g/W/10 min) was calculated (3). The 980 nm and 1.470 nm diode lasers showed no statistical difference when compared with the LBO laser (3). The 940 nm diode laser also showed a large ablation capacity when tested in canine prostate (15.17 g/10 min) (5). In a further study, the 980 nm diode laser showed increased tissue ablation rates in the continuous-wave (cw) mode, with increasing output power levels reaching 7 g/10 min at 120 W while the KTP laser displayed a significantly lower ablation capacity. Compared with TURP, both laser devices resulted in significantly lower tissue removal (6) (Table 6).

3.3.2.2 *Bleeding rate*

In a perfused ex-vivo porcine kidney, the haemostatic properties, calculated by bleeding rate, of the 980 nm (0.35 g/min), the 1318 nm (0.27 g/min) and the 1470 nm (0.24 g/min) diode lasers were significantly better than for the LBO laser (0.65 g/min) (3). For the 940 nm diode laser, 60 W resulted in a bleeding rate of 0.21 g/min (5).

3.3.2.3 *Coagulation zone*

The 980 nm (4.62 mm), 1318 nm (4.18 mm) and the 1470 nm (1.30 mm) diode laser showed significantly deeper necrotic zones compared to the LBO laser (0.84 mm) (3). The 980 nm diode laser was shown to achieve a mean coagulation zone of 8.43 mm, 9.15 mm and 9.58 mm in a porcine, perfused kidney model at 60, 90, and 120 W output powers, respectively. Compared with 80 W KTP, the coagulation capacity in the porcine kidney model for diode lasers was 7.7 to 8.7 times deeper ($p < 0.0001$). A shift towards the pulsed emitting mode did not change these results ($p < 0.001$) (6). These results are within the range of the Nd:YAG laser (2).

In a further in-vivo study, the 1470 nm diode laser achieved a coagulation zone of 2.30 mm at 100 W (7). The diode laser had an up to 2.7 times deeper coagulation capacity than KTP ($p < 0.005$). The 940 nm diode laser was studied in a porcine perfused kidney model. The coagulation depth measured 0.86 (10 W) up to 9.54 mm (60 W). In the same study, the coagulation depth in a canine prostate model was limited to 4 mm (200 W continuous wave mode) (7).

Table 6: Physical properties of diode laser in an ex-vivo porcine perfused kidney

Study	**Wezel et al. 2010 (3)**				**Seitz et al. 2009 (5)**			**Seitz et al. 2009 (7)**	
Laser Type	Diode			LBO	Diode	Diode	KTP	Diode	
Wavelength (nm)	1318	1470	980	532	1470	1470	532	940	940
Power setting (W)	100	80	200	120	50	100	80	200	60
Fibre confirmation	bare fibre	side fire	side fire	side fire	side fire	side fire	side fire	side fire	side fire
Animal model	ppk	ppk	ppk	ppk	ppk	bp	ppk	cp	ppk
Tissue ablation rate (g/10 min)	12.34*	5.27§	8.99§	7.0	n.a.	4.0&	n.a.	15.168	n.a.
Output power efficacy (g/W/10 min)	0.124	0.066§	0.045§	0.058	n.a.	[0.038; 0.042]i	n.a.	0.07584	n.a.
Bleeding rate (g/min)	0.35$	0.24*	0.27*	0.65	0.17	n.a.	0.19	n.a.	0.21
Tissue necrosis (mm)	4.62*	1.3§	4.18*	0.84	3.39t	2.30t	1.27	4.25	n.a.

§ Statistically not significant compared with LBO laser
* $p < 0.001$ compared to LBO laser;
$ $p = 0.0066$ compared to LBO laser;
& mean [3.8-4.2];
i mean [0.038-0.042];
t statistically significant compared to KTP laser, $p < 0.001$.
bp = beagle prostate; cp = canine prostate; n.a. = not applicable.

3.3.3 *Diode laser techniques*

Diode lasers work at a wavelength at which absorption in water is low. As with KTO and LBO lasers, procedures executed with diode lasers use side-firing techniques to ensure better direct visual control of the surgeon on the point of impact of the laser beam on the tissue (1). Reported techniques are vaporizing techniques (8-12). Because laser penetration levels are deeper and the coagulation zone is wider (3,7,13), some authors have suggested power should be reduced when treating the apex with the underlying sphincter region (10,11).

3.3.4 *Clinical results*

3.3.4.1 *Urodynamic parameters, symptom score reduction, PSA reduction*

Clinical data is limited to short-term follow-up (maximum follow-up 1 year) and comprises case-control studies or cohort studies (randomised cohort trials) (9-12,14). Two trials compared diode laser treatment with LBO laser systems as a standard treatment arm (9,14). The most substantial data is for the 980 nm diode laser (9-11,14).

At the end of the follow-up period, there was a significant improvement in urodynamic parameters (peak urinary flow [Q_{max}], PVR) (Table 7). There was a reduction in PSA levels, as a surrogate parameter marker for a reduction in prostatic tissue, in the range of 30% (11) and 58% (10). However, an RCT, as well as a non-RCT, did not show significant differences in improved urodynamic parameters and symptom score reduction (Table 7).

Table 7: Results of diode lasers with regard to improvement of urodynamic parameters, symptom score and PSA reduction

Reference	Laser source (power, W)	Follow-up	Patients (n)	Mean prostate size (mL)	PSA reduction (%)	Change in symptoms (%)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s) (%)	PVR change (%)	LE
Seitz et al. 2007 (12)	1470 (50 W)	12	10	47.8	-42	-69.32	13.5 (251.68)	-88.93	3b
Chen et al. 2010 (10)	980 (200/ 150W)	6	55	66.3	-58.82	-75.62	13.7 (349.01)	-87.74	3b
Erol et al. 2009 (11)	980 (132/80 W)	6	47	51.4	-30.31	-54.99	9.4 (205.97)	-58.11	3b
Ruszat et al. 2009 (9)	980 (n.a.)	6	55	64.7	-58.13	-75.93	5.1 (147.66)	-85.55	3b
	LBO PVP		65	67.4	-45	-57.89	11.3 (191)	-80.64	
Chiang et al. 2010 (14)	980 (200 W)	12	55	66.3	-42.19	-84.26	14 (425.58)	-86.37	1b
	LBO PVP		84	60.3	-58.82	-83.08	11.2 (303.64)	-85.40	

PSA = prostate-specific antigen; Q_{max} = peak (maximal) urinary flow rate; PVR = postvoid residual urine volume; LE = level of evidence; LBO PVP = LBO photoselective vaporisation.

3.3.5 *Risk and complications, durability of results*

3.3.5.1 *Intra-operative complications*

Published available studies of 980 nm (9-11,14-17) and 1470 nm (12) diode lasers are all case series or case control series or comparative studies. The studies have indicated a high level of intra-operative safety. In the RCT, which compares the safety and efficacy of the 980 nm diode laser versus the 120 W LBO laser, the rate of intra-operative bleeding was significantly lower in the diode laser group (0% vs 13%). Anticoagulant medication was being taken by 23.6% of patients receiving diode laser treatment and 25.0% of patients in the LBO PVP group (9).

These findings are supported by a non-RCT, which found almost the same results (0% vs 11.9%). In this study (14) 52% of patients in the laser diode treatment arm and 43% in the LBP PVP treatment arm were on anticoagulant medication (14). This study is supported by preclinical studies on the novel laser energy sources, showing almost equal haemostatic potential and coagulation features to the Nd:YAG laser (6). Furthermore, one comparative non-RCT reported no capsule perforation with the 980 nm diode laser. The necessity for

conversion to TURP was reported in 4% (980 nm diode) and 8% (LBO PVP) of patients (9).

3.3.5.2 Early post-operative complications

Although there is only a limited amount of data, several conclusions can still be made. The incidence of early post-operative complications reported is low. No post-operative blood transfusions occurred.

In a comparison of the 980 nm diode laser to LBO PVP, a non-RCT showed the following complications: post-operative haematuria in 20% versus 19%, transient incontinence in 14.5% versus 2.4% ($p < 0.05$), transient urgency in 34.5% versus 16.7% ($p < 0.05$), scrotal oedema 3.6% versus 0%, anal pain 3.6% versus 0%, and epididymitis 1.2% versus 9.1% (14).

A comparative study reported dysuria in 24% (980 nm diode laser) versus 18% (LBO PVP), urinary incontinence 7% versus 0% and a blood transfusion rate of 0% versus 2% (14). The recatheterisation rate was between 4.3% (11) and 20% (9).

3.3.5.3 ***Late complications***

Diode laser vaporisation of the prostate seems to carry a high rate of late complications. In a case series, 32.1% of patients needed reoperation within a follow-up of 12 months after 980 nm diode treatment due to obstructive necrotic tissue or bladder neck stricture (15).

This finding is supported by an RCT comparing the 980 nm diode laser with LBO: 9.1% versus 3.6%, respectively, of patients required reoperation with TURP due to bladder neck obstruction; 5.5% versus 2,4% developed urethral strictures; and 1.8% versus 0% developed urethral stone formation (14).

Another study, which compared diode laser to LBO PVP found higher rates of bladder neck stricture (14.5% vs 1.6%, $p < 0.01$), higher retreatment rates (18.2% vs 1.6%, $p < 0.01$) and persistence of stress urinary incontinence (9.1% vs 0%; $p < 0.05$) (9).

However, other reports have shown only transient combined urge and stress incontinence in 4.3% of patients for 2 weeks (11). This discrepancy has been a controversial issue conducted via scientific communication within the urological community (16). A further case series has reported sloughed-off tissue in 14.5% in cystoscopic intervention and a reoperation rate with TURP in 7.3% of patients. Urinary stress incontinence remained in 1.8% of patients during a 6-month follow-up period (10). Furthermore, in 20% of patients, a repeat of TURP was necessary within a 1-year follow-up after treatment with a 1.470 nm diode laser (12).

3.3.5.4 Practical considerations

In view of the available data on the use of the diode laser, it should not be a standard treatment option for BPE. The literature show a retreatment rate of up to 35%. Transitory and permanent incontinence seem to be higher than for alternative treatments. This treatment may offer a high inter-operative control of bleeding for patients on anticoagulative drugs.

3.3.5.5 Recommendation for prostate treatment with diode lasers

Recommendation	LE	GR
In patients presenting with BOO and BPE and who have bleeding disorders or are receiving anticoagulants, diode laser treatment is an alternative.	1b	C

BOO = bladder outlet obstruction; BPE = benign prostatic enlargement

3.4 Holmium (Ho:YAG) laser

3.4.1 ***General aspects***

The crystalline matrix for the holmium laser is yttrium-aluminium-garnet (YAG). In order to prevent excessive heating inside the crystal, chromium, thulium and holmium are mixed with the YAG melt from the crystal. Excitation energy is virtually handed to the holmium via a cascade from chromium over thulium. However, heat accumulation within the laser crystals restricts the holmium laser under flash lamp excitation at room temperature to pulsed operation at moderate repetition rates. Holmium laser radiation has a short extinction length in tissue due to strong absorption of the water molecule around 2140 nm (Figure 1). At this wavelength, the depth of penetration is approximately 400 µm. The density of absorbed power in irrigant and/or in tissue is high and results in an immediate increase of temperature above the boiling point.

In a typical endourological setting, the onset of vaporisation is in the irrigant next to the fibre tip, where a steam bubble is generated with each laser pulse. The diameter of the bubble depends on the energy of the laser pulse

and is a few millimetres wide. The duration of this steam bubble is similar to duration of the laser pulse, which is about 500 µs (18). This duration is too short for human perception and therefore invisible.

In holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP), the steam bubbles separate tissue layers by tearing the tissue apart (19). In soft tissue surgery, tissue vaporisation is dominated by the way in which the steam bubble tears tissue and laser radiation is absorbed in tissue. This explains the white fibrous appearance of the surgical sites during holmium laser surgery on soft tissue under irrigation. The tissue effect is rapid and haemostasis of the holmium laser is excellent.

Common pulse energy settings for holmium lasers are in the range of 2 J. Depending on the flash lamp driver technology installed, the laser pulse duration may be between 150 µs and 1 ms. About 100 µs is required for heat to diffuse out of a short cylinder established by the fibre diameter and the extinction length (thermal relaxation time). The heat generated during the absorption process accumulates during the duration of the laser pulse at the point of impact, until heat conduction levels out the temperature profile.

In laser lithotripsy, some laser radiation is absorbed inside the stone generating an immediate build-up of steam pressure, which causes fragmentation. A laser pulse duration that is shorter or of the order of the thermal relaxation time confines the absorbed energy within the above-mentioned cylinder. The shorter the laser pulse duration at a given pulse energy, the higher the pulse peak power will be and the more effective is stone fragmentation (20).

3.4.2 ***Physical properties***

General physical properties have been covered in section 3.4.1. Ho:YAG lasers have not been investigated to that extend like KTP, LBO, Tm:YAG and various diode lasers. Therefore, very limited data on these aspects is available so far.

3.4.3 ***Holmium laser techniques***

All holmium laser techniques are based on vaporisation. The energy is delivered to the prostate through an end-firing laser fibre with a diameter of about 500-600 µm. Holmium laser techniques evolved from holmium laser ablation of the prostate (HoLAP) (21) to holmium laser resecting techniques (HoLRP) (22) and, finally with the introduction of the tissue morcelator, to the holmium laser enuclation technique (HoLEP) (23). A later modification combined HoLEP with electrocautery resection of the enucleated lobe, while still attached at the bladder neck (24). As for physical characteristics, the vaporising effect of holmium laser-emitted energy is limited (15%) compared to other lasers.

3.4.4 ***Holmium laser vaporisation (ablation) of the prostate (HoLAP)***

Today, HoLAP procedure is carried out using a side-firing fibre in close contact with the surface in a sweeping fashion like PVP. The energy absorbed by the water molecule means that this technique would be safe, even if performed with bare fibre. In this manner, prostatic tissue is ablated and a cavity created similar to TURP. The strong absorption of holmium laser energy by water (Figure 1) results in a sufficiently high energy density to vaporise prostatic tissue, so creating tissue ablation without deep coagulation.

There are little data on HoLAP treatment of the prostate. A single RCT has compared 60 W and 80 W HoLAP versus TURP in 36 patients (25). Q_{max} improvement was equivocal at 3, 6, and 12 months after the operation, while prostate volume was reduced by 39% (HoLAP) and 47% (TURP), respectively. However, no RCT exists for the new high-power, 100 W HoLAP versus TURP or OP. One RCT comparing 100 W HoLAP with KTP reported results from a short- and intermediate-term follow-up (Table 8). Anticoagulant medication was being taken by 12.2% of patients treated with HoLAP and 15.3% treated with TURP. No difference was found except for operation time, which was 1.5-fold greater than that for TURP (26,27).

3.4.5 ***Holmium laser resection of the prostate***

In contrast to HoLAP vaporisation, the HoLRP procedure uses vaporisation only to cut small pieces out of the prostate. This results in multiple small prostate chips falling into the bladder before being removed with a syringe at the end of the operation, similar to TURP.

Because the technological emphasis has been on HoLEP, the clinical application of HoLRP and HoLAP declined. Thus, most of the clinical data available in holmium-based literature discusses HoLEP.

The HoLRP technique is limited to small prostates. Resection time of larger prostates would take almost double the time of HoLEP, making HoLRP less suitable for treatment of BPE/BOO. One RCT compared TURP

with HoLRP in 120 patients with BOO. The patients had prostates < 100 mL in volume. The study published results at three time-points in the follow-up period (28-30). Resection time was almost doubled for HoLRP when compared to TURP (42.1 versus 25.8 minutes, p < 0.005). The mean catheter time was significantly shorter (20.0 versus 37.2 hours, p < 0.005). Symptomatic and urodynamic improvement were equivalent in the two groups. However, at 12 and 18 months after the operation, HoLRP showed superior results to TURP (25.2 versus 20.4 mL/s, respectively, at 12 months, and 25.1 versus 19.2 mL/s at 18 months). The superiority of HoLRP vanished at 24 months, until the end of the study at 48 months after the operation. The Q_{max} of patients treated by HoLRP or TURP was 22.2 versus 18.5 mL/s, respectively. This data is inconclusive because it is not possible to determine whether HoLRP is better or worse than standard treatment. However, the results favoured HoLRP with regard to quality of life, hospitalisation time and catheterisation time. Patients with large median lobes and patients in urinary retention can be safely treated (31,32).

*3.4.6 **Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate***

Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP) is based on the same physical principle as HoLRP. However, during the HoLEP procedure, the surgical capsule of the prostate is exposed by incision and vaporisation of the periurethral prostatic tissue. After identifying the plane at the surgical capsule, the prostatic adenoma is separated from the capsule by disruption of the adenoma from the capsule, similarly to OP. Disruption is achieved by the pulsating steam bubble caused in front of the fibre by the pulsed laser energy emitting mode of Ho:YAG lasers. The introduction of HoLEP resulted in a significant improvement in the technique. The entire lobes are enucleated, moved into the bladder and morcellated (23), or fragmented with the TUR-sling at the bladder neck (mushroom technique) (24).

Several RCTs have compared HoLEP with TURP and OP, with the main findings given in Table 8.

A meta-analysis observed a tendency towards HoLEP for an improved symptom score during the entire follow-up period of up to 30 months, with larger mean changes in post-operative measurements. However, the differences in the individual studies were not statistically significant (weighted mean difference –0.82, 95% CI: –1.76-0.12; p=0.09). In the same meta-analysis, the same result was found for Q_{max} at 12-month follow-up. Compared with TURP, significantly higher Q_{max} rates were reported for HoLEP (weighted mean difference 1.48 mL/s, 95% CI: 0.58-2.40; p=0.002) (33).

In another meta-analysis, HoLEP was superior (pooled estimates) to TURP with regard to catheterisation time (17.7-31.0 h vs 43.4-57.8 h, respectively; p< 0·001), hospital stay (27.6-59.0 vs 48.3-85.5 days; p=0.001). In contrast, TURP was superior (pooled estimates of the difference) to HoLEP with regards to the duration of operation (33.1-73.8 vs 62.1-94.6 h respectively; p=0·001) (34).

Beside the evaluated RCTs, other non-RCT studies demonstrated that HoLEP has a low morbidity and is also effective in patients with urinary retention (35,36). One RCT compared changes in the urodynamic parameters of HoLEP versus TURP using computer urodynamic investigation (37). Pressure-flow studies before surgery and 6 months after the operation indicated that Pdetqmax after HoLEP (76.2 vs 20.8 cm H_2O) decreased significantly more compared to TURP (70 vs 40.7 cm H_2O; p < 0.001). Furthermore, the Schaefer BOO grade before and 6 months after the operation decreased significantly more after HoLEP (3.5 vs 0.2) compared to TURP (3.7 to 1.2; p < 0.001).

In recent years, a considerable number of studies regarding intermediate and long-term outcome of HoLEP alone in comparison to TURP or OP have been published. Gilling et al. (38) reported long-term data with a mean follow-up of 6.1 years showing that HoLEP results are durable and most patients remain satisfied. In prostates > 100 mL, HoLEP proved to be as effective as OP, regarding improvement in micturition with equally low re-operation rates at 5-year follow-up (39).

Table 8: Results of HoLAP, HoLRP and HoLEP with regard to improvement in urodynamic parameters, symptom score and PSA reduction

Ref.	Laser source/ Technique	Follow-up (mo)	Patients (n)	Mean prostate size (mL)	PSA reduction (%)	Change in symptoms (%)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s) (%)	PVR change (%)	LE
Mottet et al. 1999 (25)	HoLAP	12	23	39	n.a.	-70	11.1 (226)	n.a.	1b
	TURP		13	34	n.a.	-80	9.6 (229)	n.a.	
Elmansy et al. 2010 (26)	HoLAP	36	46	33.1	-0.40	-71	11 (264)	-0.81	1b
	KTP		42	37.3	-0.28	-64	12.10 (289)	-0.80	
Westenberg et al. 2004 (30)	HoLRP	48	61	44.3	n.a	-76	13.6 (253)	n.a.	1b
	TURP		59	44.6	n.a.	-75	9.4 (203)	n.a.	
Kuntz et al. 2004 (40)	HoLEP	18	60	114.6	n.a.	-90	23.60 (721)	-97	1b
	TURP		60	113	n.a.	-90	24.40 (778)	-98	
Kuntz et al. 2004 (41)	HoLEP	12	100	53.5	n.a.	-92	23 (569)	-98	1b
	TURP		100	49.9	n.a.	-82	21.80 (469)	-88	
Briganti et al. 2006 (42)	HoLEP	24	60	73.30	n.a.	-83	n.a.	n.a.	1b
	TURP		60	58.20	n.a.	-83	n.a.	n.a.	
Gupta et al. 2006 (43)	HoLEP	12	18	57.9	n.a.	-78	19.20 (527)	-83	1b
	TURP		16	59.8	n.a.	-76	19.95 (487)	-77	
Naspro et al. 2006 (44)	HoLEP	24	41	113.27	n.a.	-61	11.36 (245)	n.a.	1b
	TURP		39	124.21	n.a.	-63	11.79 (242)	n.a.	
Wilson et al. 2006 (45)	HoLEP	24	31	77.8	n.a.	-77	12.6 (250)	n.a.	1b
	TURP		30	77.0	n.a.	-78	11.0 (233)	n.a	
Montorsi et al. 2008 (46)	HoLEP	12	52	70.3	n.a.	-81	16.9 (306)	n.a.	1b
	TURP		48	56.2	n.a.	-82	17.20 (326)	n.a.	
Gilling et al. 2008 (38)	HoLEP	72	71	58.5	n.a.	-67	10.9 (235)	n.a.	3a
Kuntz et al. 2008 (39)	HoLEP	60	60	114.6	n.a.	-86	20.5 (639)	-96	1b
	OP		60	113	n.a.	-86	20.8 (678)	-98	

PSA = prostate-specific antigen; Q_{max} = peak (maximal) urinary flow rate ; PVR = postvoid residual urine volume; LE = level of evidence; HoLAP = holmium laser vaporisation (ablation) of the prostate; TURP = transurethral resection of prostate; n.a. = not applicable; HoLRP = holmium laser resection of the prostate; HoLEP = holmium laser enucleation of the prostate; OP = open prostatectomy.

*3.4.7 **Risk and complications, durability of results***

The published literature describing Ho:YAG treatment of the prostate is dominated by discussion of HoLEP with few publications for HoLAP and very few for HoLRP. The introduction of KTP resulted in less interest in Ho:YAg as a solely vaporising laser. However, the recent availability of 100 W Ho:YAG laser devices has led to a renewed interest in HoLAP because of the popularity of vaporising using a side-fire technique (26,27).

*3.4.8 **Intra-operative complications***

3.4.8.1 HoLAP

An RCT comparing HoLAP with KTP PVP reported no intra-operative bleeding in the HoLAP-treated group, while three KTP PVP-patients required intra-operative conversion to TURP electrocauterisation (27). Another RCT comparing HoLAP versus TURP did not report any intra-operative complications (25).

3.4.8.2 HoLRP

The RCTs available for HoLRP (28-30) tend to focus on the outcome for improved symptom score and urodynamic parameters. Intra-operative complications for HoLRP are not specifically displayed. In comparison, the TURP treatment arm in these studies showed a blood transfusion rate of 6.7%. Furthermore, the available case series do not focus on intra-operative complications (31,32,47).

3.4.8.3 HoLEP

The safety and low intra-operative morbidity of HoLEP has been proven in seven RCTs (40-46).

Several reviews (48) and two meta-analyses (33,34) have investigated the safety and peri-operative mobidity of HoLEP. One meta-analysis found a lower rate of blood transfusion after holmium laser enucleation (relative risk 0.27, 95% CI: 0.07-0.95; p=0.04) compared with TURP (33); a finding supported by a second meta-analysis (34). In addition, a second meta-analysis showed that HoLEP reduced catheterisation time and duration of hospital stay, although TURP resulted in a shorter total operation time (34).

In a review of studies published from 2003 until 2006, 1,847 patients were identified who had been treated with HoLEP. The blood transfusion rate was 1% and peri-operative mortality was 0.05%. A further review showed a capsular perforation rate ranging from 0.3% (49) to 10% (50). The perforations were mainly classified as small capsular lacerations and the patients' course was not affected. Superficial mucosal laceration with the morcellation device was reported ranging from 0.5% (50) to 18.2% (46). The rate of superficial ureteric orifice injury that did not require insertion of a ureteral stent or nephrostomy ranged from 1.0% (51) to 2.1% (52). The incidence of incomplete morcellation ranged from 1.9% (52) to 3.7% (54) in all cases. Cardiac adverse events were reported in up to 1.2% of patients (52).

The experience of the surgeon was the most important factor affecting the overall occurrence of complications (55,56) and intra-operative complications. In trained hands, prostate size had no statistically significant influence on complications (57). The likelihood of capsular perforations increased with smaller prostates, while injury of the ureteric orifice occurred more often during resection of large and endovesically growing median lobes (52,55).

Two meta-analyses have demonstrated that in comparison to TURP and OP, patients undergoing HoLEP have a shorter catheterisation time and hospital stay, reduced blood loss and a smaller likelihood of blood transfusions, but comparable functional outcomes (33,34).

*3.4.9 **Early post-operative complications***

3.4.9.1 HoLAP

An RCT comparing HoLAP with TURP reported that 20% of patients had mild urgency or burning after catheter removal. These problems did not resolve until the first month (25). Another study, comparing HoLAP with KTP PVP, did not specifically address peri-operative complications. However, seven patients (12.2%) in the HoLAP group and six (11.5%) in the KTP PVP group required recatheterisation (26,27). Dysuria and irritative symptoms following surgery resolved before the first post-operative visit at 1 month (25).

3.4.9.2 HoLRP

An RCT comparing HoLRP to TURP has reported the rate for UTIs as 4.9% versus 8.4%, respectively. There are no other broad assessments of peri-operative complications (30).

3.4.9.3 HoLEP

Peri-operative complications within the first months after HoLEP have been assessed by several RCTs, case

series, comparative studies and meta-analyses (34,41,48). In an RCT comparing HoLEP and OP for patients with prostates > 70 g, transitory urge incontinence was equally observed in 34.1% (HoLEP) and 38.6% (OP) of patients at 3 months' follow-up, whereas dysuria was significantly more frequent in the HoLEP group (68.2 vs 41.0%, p < 0.001) (44). In contrast, the reported rate of transitory urge incontinence showed no significant difference in a multicentre RCT comparing HoLEP and TURP. Dysuria occurred significantly more often in patients after HoLEP (58.9 vs 29.5%, p = 0.0002) (46). Haemorrhage requiring coagulation is reported in 0-6% (58) and clot retention in 0% (59) to 3.6% (60).

3.4.10 ***Late complications***

3.4.10.1 HoLAP

An RCT comparing HoLAP with TURP found one patient with stress urinary incontince and one patient had opted out of the study at 6 months' follow-up. Two patients in the TURP group were treated for bladder neck contracture at 2 and 6 months by cold-knife incision. No significant difference was found in the potency and antegrade ejaculation rate between the two groups. The potency rate after 1 year was 90% for the laser group and 100% for the TURP group. The antegrade ejaculation rate was 50% in both groups (25). The retreatment rate at 7 years' follow-up was 15% (61).

An RCT comparing HoLAP versus KTP PVP found comparable complication rates at follow-up after 36 months. The overall retreatment rate was 15.8% for HoLAP and 19.3% for PVP. Urethral stricture rate was 3.5% and 5.8%, respectively. Bladder neck contracture occured in 5.3% versus 7.7%, respectively. The re-operation was reported to be 7% for HoLAP-treated patients versus 5.8% for KTP PVP (26,27).

One patient (1.8%) with HoLAP versus two patients (3.8%) with PVP had urgency and urge incontinence that did not resolve with anticholinergic therapy at the last follow-up. There was no significant difference in post-operative complications between the two groups. The overall retreatment rate was 15.8% for HoLAP versus 19.3% for PVP.

Retrograde ejaculation of sexually active patients was reported in 36.3% of the HoLAP group compared with 43.3% of the KTP PVP group. Between the two groups, no significant difference between pre-operative and post-operative sexual function in terms of orgasmic function, sexual desire, or intercourse or overall satisfaction was reported (26).

3.4.10.2 HoLRP

One RCT reported no difference between HoLRP and TURP in terms of urodynamic parameters, potency, continence, symptoms scores and major morbidity at 48 months. Complication rates were comparable. Peristing *de novo* urine leakage was reported to be 3.3% in the HoLRP group versus 1.7% in the TURP group. The overall retreatment rate was 8.2% for HoLRP versus 11.8% for TURP. 1.7% in the TURP arm needed artificial sphicter implantation. Urethral stricture rate was 9.8% versus 10.1%, respectively. Bladder neck incision for bladder neck contracture occurred in 4.9% versus 5.1%, respectively (30). Pre-operatively 50% of HoLRP versus 70% of TURP were potent, at the 4-year follow-up (53% of HoLRP versus of 60% TURP patient had sufficient erection for intercourse. A decrease in erectile quality was reported in 8% of the HoLRP and 17% of the TURP groups. However, 10% of the HoLRP group and 7% of the TURP group reported an improvement of erections (30).

3.4.10.3 HoLEP

In a meta-analysis, no statistically significant differences were noted between HoLEP and TURP for urethral stricture (2.6 versus 4,4%; p = 0.944), stress incontinence (1.5 versus 1.5%; p = 0.980), blood transfusion (0 versus 2.2%; p = 0.14) and reintervention (4.3 versus 8.8%; p = 0.059). No obvious publication bias was noted (p = 0.170, Egger's test) (34).

A further meta-analysis evaluated the risk of erectile dysfunction after HOLEP compared to standard treatment. Erectile dysfunction rates showed were similar to TURP (33). In the same meta-analysis the rate of strictures during follow-up after holmium laser enucleation was similar to those after transurethral resection (33).

Numerous trials involving the long-term outcome of HoLEP have been published and have confirmed the long-term and significant improvement in voiding parameters and the low complication rate. In a 6-year follow-up analysis of 38 patients treated with HoLEP, urge incontinence was reported in three of 38 (7.9%) patients, mixed incontinence in 10.5% and stress incontinence in 2.6%. Re-operation was necessary in 1.4% after 5 years and one patient 1.4% underwent urethrotomy at 6 months (38,61)

Comparable long-term results were reported from other studies with a re-operation rate of 4.2% due to residual adenoma, urethral strictures (1.7%), meatal stenosis (0.8%) and bladder neck contracture (0.8%), resulting in a 5-year surgical retreatment rate of 8%. The earlier group of patients showed a higher retreatment rate (8 vs 1.4%) (62). Another study observed a re-operation rate of 2.7% during a 36-month follow-up. In the group of patients with prostates < 50 mL, the incidences of urethral stenosis and bladder neck contracture were significantly higher (63).

Re-operation rates in a RCT comparing HoLEP with TURP were comparable at 3-year follow-up with a rate of 7.2 and 6.6%, respectively (64). These data are confirmed by other prospective trials comparing HoLEP to TURP (43). In an RCT comparing HoLEP versus OP, the re-operation rate at 5-year follow-up was 5% for HoLEP and 6.7% for OP-treated patients (39).

Studies focussing on sexual function after HoLEP are rare. Due to retrograde ejaculation HoLEP and TURP significantly lowered the IIEF orgasmic function domain in one RCT. Similar results were observed in the comparison of HoLEP and OP, with no significant reduction of erectile function compared with baseline (39). Patients after HoLEP and TURP reported retograde ejaculation in 75% and 62%, respectively (45,61).

3.4.11 ***Practical considerations***

Although the literature has mainly focused on HoLEP, both HoLAP and HoLRP are suitable as alternatives for vaporising (HoLAP) or resecting (HoLRP) approaches in the treatment of BOO and BPE. One issue for both techniques that needs to be considered is the longer ablation or resection time. HoLEP is the most studied novel minimal therapy approach and is a real alternative to TURP for medium- and large-sized prostates for OP. However, the excellent early results obtained with HoLEP, as the prototype for transurethral laser enucleation, have not been matched by the wider use of this technique.

3.4.12 ***Recommendations for holmium (Ho:YAG) laser treatment***

Recommendations	LE	GR
HoLAP can be offered to patients with BOO or BPE with small- to medium-sized prostates.	1b	A
HoLRP can be offered to patients with BOO or BPE with small- to medium-sized glands.	1b	A
HoLEP can be offered to any patient with BOO and BPE.	1a	A
HoLEP can be offered to patients in chronic urinary retention.	2b	B
HoLEP can be offered to patients on anticoagulant or antiplatelet medication.	2b	B

BOO = bladder outlet obstruction; BPE = benign prostatic enlargement

3.4.13 ***References***

1. Orihuela E, Pow-Sang M, Johnson S, et al. Comparison of the extent of Nd:YAG and diode (810 nm) induced thermal coagulation of human prostate: a histopathological analysis of acute response. In: Rox Anderson R (ed) Proceedings of SPIE, vol. 2395 in lasers in surgery. Advanced Characterization, Therapeutics, and Systems V, pp. 47-54.
2. Eichler J, GonÁalves O. A review of different lasers in endonasal surgery. Ar-, KTP-, dye-, diode-, Nd-, Ho- CO2-laser. Med Laser Appl 2002;17:190-200.
3. Wezel F, Wendt-Nordahl G, Huck N, et al. New alternatives for laser vaporization of the prostate: experimental evaluation of a 980-, 1,318- and 1,470-nm diode laser device. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):181-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20035427
4. Costello AJ, Agarwal DK, Crowe HR, et al. Evaluation of interstitial diode laser therapy for treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Tech Urol 1999 Dec;5(4):202-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10591259
5. Seitz M, Ruszat R, Bayer T, et al. Ex vivo and in vivo investigations of the novel 1,470 nm diode laser for potential treatment of benign prostatic enlargement. Lasers Med Sci 2009 May;24(3):419-24. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18685885
6. Wendt-Nordahl G, Huckele S, Honeck P, et al. 980-nm diode laser: a novel laser technology for vaporization of the prostate. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1723-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17611013
7. Seitz M, Bayer T, Ruszat R, et al. Preliminary evaluation of a novel side-fire diode laser emitting light at 940 nm, for the potential treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: ex-vivo and in-vivo investigations. BJU Int 2009 Mar;103(6):770-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18990158

8. Leonardi R. Preliminary results on selective light vaporization with the side-firing 980 nm diode laser in benign prostatic hyperplasia: an ejaculation sparing technique.
Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis 2009;12(3):277-80.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19322136
9. Ruszat R, Seitz M, Wyler SF, et al. Prospective single-centre comparison of 120-W diode-pumped solid-state high-intensity system laser vaporization of the prostate and 200-W high-intensive diode laser ablation of the prostate for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia. BJU Int 2009 Sep;104(6):820-5.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19239441
10. Chen CH, Chiang PH, Chuang YC, et al. Preliminary results of prostate vaporization in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia by using a 200-W high-intensity diode laser. Urology 2010 Mar;75(3): 658-63.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20035978
11. Erol A, Cam K, Tekin A, et al. High power diode laser vaporization of the prostate: preliminary results for benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2009 Sep;182(3):1078-82.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19616811
12. Seitz M, Sroka R, Gratzke C, et al. The diode laser: a novel side-firing approach for laser vaporisation of the human prostate--immediate efficacy and 1-year follow-up. Eur Urol 2007 Dec;52(6):1717-22.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17628326
13. Seitz M, Reich O, Gratzke C, et al. High-power diode laser at 980 nm for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: ex vivo investigations on porcine kidneys and human cadaver prostates.
Lasers Med Sci 2009 Mar;24(2):172-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18270761
14. Chiang PH, Chen CH, Kang CH, et al. GreenLight HPS laser 120-W versus diode laser 200-W vaporization of the prostate: comparative clinical experience. Lasers Surg Med 2010 Sep;42(7):624-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20806388
15. Rieken M, Wyler S, Müller G, et al. Laser vaporization of the prostate: intermediate-term follow-up with the 200 W high-intensity diode (HiDi) laser system. Eur Urol Suppl 8(4):269 Abstract #589.
16. Rieken M, Bachmann A, Reich O. Re: High power diode laser vaporization of the prostate: preliminary results for benign prostatic hyperplasia. A. Erol, K. Cam, A. Tekin, O. Memik, S. Coban And Y. Ozer J Urol 2009;182: 078-82. J Urol 2010 Feb;183(2):828-9; author reply 829-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20022612
17. Rieken M, Kang HW, Koullick E, et al A. Laser vaporization of the prostate in vivo: Experience with the 150-W 980-nm diode laser in living canines. Lasers Surg Med 2010;42(8):736-42.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20882516
18. Yarborough JM. Taking the confusion out of matching medical lasers. Lasers and Laser Systems. Medical Lasers. The photonics design and application handbook, pp H287-H290.
19. Kuntz RM. Laser treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):241-7.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17530259
20. Teichman JM. Laser lithotripsy. Curr Opin Urol 2002 Jul;12(4):305-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12072651
21. Gilling PJ, Cass CB, Malcolm AR, et al. Combination holmium and Nd:YAG laser ablation of the prostate: initial clinical experience. J Endourol 1995 Apr;9(2):151-3.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7633476
22. Gilling PJ, Cass CB, Cresswell MD, et al. Holmium laser resection of the prostate: preliminary results of a new method for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia. Urology 1996 Jan;47(1):48-51.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8560662
23. Fraundorfer MR, Gilling PJ. Holmium:YAG laser enucleation of the prostate combined with mechanical morcellation: preliminary results. Eur Urol 1998;33(1):69-72.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9471043
24. Hochreiter WW, Thalmann GN, Burkhard FC, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate combined with electrocautery resection: the mushroom technique. J Urol 2002 Oct;168(4 Pt 1): 1470-4.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12352420
25. Mottet N, Anidjar M, Bourdon O, et al. Randomised comparison of transurethral electroresection and holmium: YAG laser vaporization for symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Endourol 1999 Mar;13(2):127-30.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10213108
26. Elmansy HM, Elzayat E, Elhilali MM. Holmium laser ablation versus photoselective vaporization of prostate less than 60 cc: long-term results of a randomised trial. J Urol 2010 Nov;184(5):2023-8.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20850828

27. Elzayat EA, Al-Mandil MS, Khalaf I, et al. Holmium laser ablation of the prostate versus photoselective vaporization of prostate 60 cc or less: short-term results of a prospective randomised trial. J Urol 2009 Jul;182(1):133-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19447438
28. Gilling PJ, Fraundorfer MR, Kabalin JB. Holmium: YAG laser resection of the prostate (HoLRP) versus transurethral electrocautery resection of the prostate (TURP): a prospective randomised, urodynamic-based clinical trial. J Urol 1997;157:149A.
29. Gilling PJ, Kennett KM, Fraundorfer MR. Holmium laser resection v transurethral resection of the prostate: results of a randomised trial with 2 years of follow-up. J Endourol 2000 Nov;14(9):757-60. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11110572
30. Westenberg A, Gilling P, Kennett K, et al. Holmium laser resection of the prostate versus transurethral resection of the prostate: results of a randomised trial with 4-year minimum long-term followup. J Urol 2004 Aug;172(2):616-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15247745
31. Kabalin JN, Mackey MJ, Cresswell MD, et al. Holmium:YAG laser resection of the prostate (HoLRP) for patients in urinary retention. J Endourol 1997 Aug;11(4):291-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9376851
32. Anderson CB, Helfand BT, McVary KT. Holmium laser prostatic resection for patients presenting with acute urinary retention. BJU Int 2008 Dec;102(11):1623-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18710443
33. Lourenco T, Pickard R, Vale L, et al. Benign Prostatic Enlargement team. Alternative approaches to endoscopic ablation for benign enlargement of the prostate: systematic review of randomised controlled trials BMJ 2008 Jun;337:a449. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18595932
34. Tan A, Liao C, Mo Z, et al. Meta-analysis of holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate for Symptomatic prostatic obstruction Br J Surg 2007 Oct;94(10):1201-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17729384
35. Elzayat EA, Habib EI, Elhilali MM. Holmium laser enucleation of prostate for patients in urinary retention. Urology 2005 Oct;66(4):789-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16230139
36. Peterson MD, Matlaga BR, Kim SC, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate for men with urinary retention. J Urol 2005 Sep;174(3):998-1001. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16094022
37. Tan AH, Gilling PJ, Kennett KM, et al. A randomised trial comparing holmium laser enucleation of the prostate with transurethral resection of the prostate for the treatment of bladder outlet obstruction secondary to benign prostatic hyperplasia in large glands (40 to 200 grams). J Urol 2003 Oct;170 (4 Pt 1):1270-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14501739
38. Gilling PJ, Aho TF, Frampton CF, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: results at 6 years. Eur Urol 2008 Apr;53(4):744-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17475395
39. Kuntz RM, Lehrich K, Ahyai SA. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus open prostatectomy for prostates greater than 100 grams: 5-year follow-up results of a randomised clinical trial. Eur Urol 2008 Jan;53(1):160-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17869409
40. Kuntz RM, Lehrich K, Ahyai S. Transurethral holmium laser enucleation of the prostate compared with transvesical open prostatectomy: 18-month follow-up of a randomised trial. J Endourol 2004 Mar;18(2):189-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072629
41. Kuntz RM, Ahyai S, Lehrich K, et al. Transurethral holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus transurethral electrocautery resection of the prostate: a randomised prospec-tive trial in 200 patients. J Urol 2004 Sep;172(3):1012-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15311026
42. Briganti A, Naspro R, Gallina A, et al. Impact on sexual function of holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate: results of a prospective, 2-center, randomised trial. J Urol 2006 May;175(5):1817-21. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16600770

43. Gupta N, Sivaramakrishna, Kumar R, et al. Comparison of standard transurethral resection, transurethral vapour resection and holmium laser enucleation of the prostate for managing benign prostatic hyperplasia of >40 g. BJU Int 2006 Jan;97(1):85-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16336334
44. Naspro R, Suardi N, Salonia A, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate versus open prostatectomy for prostates >70 g: 24-month follow-up. Eur Urol 2006 Sep;50(3):563-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16713070
45. Wilson LC, Gilling PJ, Williams A, et al. A randomised trial comparing holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection in the treatment of prostates larger than 40 grams: results at 2 years. Eur Urol 2006 Sep;50(3):569-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16704894
46. Montorsi F, Naspro R, Salonia A, et al. Holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate: results from a 2-center prospective randomised trial in patients with obstructive benign prostatic hyperplasia. J Urol 2008 May;179(5 Suppl):S87-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18405765
47. Gilling PJ, Cass CB, Malcolm A, et al. Holmium laser resection of the prostate (HoLRP) versus neodymium: YAG visual laser ablation of the prostate (VLAP): a randomised prospective comparison of two techniques for laser prostatectomy. Urology 1998 Apr;51(4):573-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9586609
48. Kuntz R. Current role of lasers in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). Eur Urol 2006 Jun;49(6):961-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16632179
49. Moody JA, Lingeman JE. Holmium laser enucleation for prostate adenoma greater than 100 gm: comparison to open prostatectomy. J Urol 2001 Feb;165(2):459-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176396
50. Elzayat EA, Habib EI, Elhilali MM. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: a size-independent new 'gold standard'. Urology 2005 Nov;66(5 Suppl):108-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16194716
51. Kuntz RM, Lehrich K, Ahyai S. Does perioperative outcome of transurethral holmium laser enucleation of the prostate depend on prostate size? J Endourol 2004 Mar;18(2):183-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15072628
52. Shah HN, Mahajan AP, Hegde SS, et al. Perioperative complications of holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: experience in the first 280 patients, and a review of literature. BJU Int 2007 Jul;100(1):94-101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17419697
53. Kuo RL, Paterson RF, Siqueira TM Jr, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate: morbidity in a series of 206 patients. Urology 2003 Jul; 62(1):59-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837423
54. Kuo RL, Kim SC, Lingeman JE, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of prostate (HoLEP): the Methodist Hospital experience with greater than 75 gram enucleations. J Urol 2003 Jul;170(1):149-52. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12796668
55. Placer J, Gelabert-Mas A, Vallmanya F, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of prostate: outcome and complications of self-taught learning curve. Urology 2009 May;73(5):1042-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19394500
56. Suardi N, Gallina A, Salonia A, et al. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate and holmium laser ablation of the prostate: indications and outcome. Curr Opin Urol 2009 Jan;19(1):38-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19057214
57. Shah HN, Sodha HS, Kharodawala SJ, et al. Influence of prostate size on the outcome of holmium laser enucleation of the prostate. BJU Int 2008 Jun;101(12):1536-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18218057
58. Seki N, Mochida O, Kinukawa N, et al. Holmium laser enucleation for prostatic adenoma: analysis of learning curve over the course of 70 consecutive cases. J Urol 2003 Nov;170(5):1847-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14532790
59. Aho TF, Gilling PJ, Kennett KM, et al. Holmium laser bladder neck incision versus holmium enucleation of the prostate as outpatient procedures for prostates less than 40 grams: a randomised trial. J Urol 2005 Jul;174(1):210-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15947629
60. Elzayat E, Habib E, Elhilali M. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate in patients on anticoagulant therapy or with bleeding disorders. J Urol 2006 Apr;175(4):1428-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16516015

61. Rieken M, Ebinger Mundorff N, Bonkat G, et al. Complications of laser prostatectomy: a review of recent data. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):53-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20052586
62. Elzayat EA, Elhilali EM. Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP): long-term results, reoperation rate, and possible impact of the learning curve. Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5):1465-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17498867
63. Vavassori I, Valenti S, Naspro R, et al. Three-year outcome following holmium laser enucleation of the prostate combined with mechanical morcellation in 330 consecutive patients. Eur Urol 2008 Mar;53(3):599-604. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17997021
64. Ahyai SA, Lehrich K, Kuntz RM. Holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate: 3-year follow-up results of a randomised clinical trial. Eur Urol 2007 Nov;52(5):1456-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499427

3.5 Thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet (Tm:YAG) laser

Laser energy is emitted at a wavelength of about 2000 nm in a continuous-wave fashion (1-4). In contrast to the flash-lamp excitation of the holmium laser, thulium ions are directly excited by high- power laser diodes. Although a thulium laser has the same absorption characteristics as a holmium laser in water and tissue, it has superior properties in soft tissue surgery because of the continuous-wave output. Due to the slightly shorter wavelength, the depth of penetration is decreased to 250 µm. The wavelength is close to the absorption peak of water and, together with the short penetration depth, this results in a high-energy density leading to rapid vaporisation of water and tissue. Instead of the tearing action on tissue caused by the pulsed emission of Ho:YAG, the continuous-wave output of Tm:YAG allows smooth incision and vaporisation of tissue with excellent haemostasis. The ubiquity of the water molecule as the target chromophore provides constant conditions for the laser tissue chromophore and therefore tissue interaction. Water retains its absorption properties when heated by the laser beam up to the boiling point, which marks the onset of tissue vaporisation.

The tissue left behind after each laser pass is covered by a coagulated seam of tissue, which provides haemostasis. It still contains sufficient water for efficient absorption of the following laser pass. Thus the laser tissue effect remains unchanged and effective throughout the entire surgical procedure. In contrast to the pulsed emission mode of Ho:YAG, the continuous emission does not allow lithotripsy.

*3.5.1 **Physical properties***

To date, one clinical paper has reported data on vaporisation efficacy using the Tm:YAG 2013 nm (2 µm) continuous-wave (cw) laser. There is one publication each for the 70 W and 120 W Tm:YAG 2-µm cw laser devices in an identical, experimental, organ perfused, porcine kidney model.

3.5.1.1 Ablation capacity

The tissue ablation rate increases with increasing output power. In comparison to the KTP laser, the tissue ablation rate reached (mean) 6.56 g/10 min (70 W Tm:YAG) and 3.99 g/10 min (80 W KTP) ($p > 0.05$). When compared to TURP, both laser devices produced significantly lower rates of tissue removal (8.28 g/10min) (5).

The ablative potential of Thu:YAG lasers was confirmed in a further study. At 70 W, 3.03 g/10 min were ablated using the 550 µm bare fibre. At 120 W, the amount of ablated tissue increased to 16.41 g/10 min using the 550 µm bare fibre. These rates were reduced when using a larger fibre core diameter (800 µm), as energy density is a function of core diameter (6).

3.5.1.2 Bleeding rate

The thulium laser has good haemostatic potential. In the same model, the bleeding rate for the cw 70 W Thulium laser reached 0.16 ± 0.07 g/min, compared to 0.21 ± 0.07 g/min for the 80 W KTP laser. In contrast, TURP showed a significantly increased bleeding rate of 20.14 g/min ($p < 0.05$) (5). The results were unaffected by increasing the energy output and core diameter (6).

3.5.1.3 Coagulation zone

In the kidney perfused tissue ablation model, continuous-wave thulium showed the shallowest coagulation depth. Histological examination revealed that tissue ablation resulted in a dense coagulation zone at the tissue surface. The corresponding depth of the coagulation zone was 264.7 ± 41.3 µm for the continuous-wave thulium laser, which is almost as deep as that achieved with TURP (287.1 ± 27.5 µm), but less than the 2.5-fold deeper coagulation zone (0.6669 mm) of the KTP laser ($p < 0.05$) (Table 4) (5). With increased power output and increased fibre diameter, the extent of coagulation and the necrotic tissue zone remained stable (6).

Tissue ablation increased with increasing power and was superior to that achieved with the 80 W KTP laser. Furthermore, the bleeding rate was for the cw 70 W Thulium laser reached 0.16 ± 0.07 g/min, compared to 0.21 ± 0.07 g/min for the 80 W KTP laser, though considerably lower than with monopolar TURP (5). In contrast to the 120 W LBO laser (7), the bleeding rate remained stable for the 120 W Tm:YAG laser with an increase in ablation rate. In addition, the study demonstrated shallow penetration and an energy-independent zone of tissue necrosis of 0.4 mm (6).

3.5.2 ***Thulium laser techniques***

Four different technical approaches have been described so far:
1) Tm:YAG vaporisation of the prostate (ThuVaR);
2) Tm:YAG vaporesection (ThuVARP);
3) Tm:YAG vapoenucleation (ThuVEP);
4) Tm:YAG laser enucleation of the prostate (ThuLEP) (8).

As the data from prospective RCTs is very sparse, these techniques cannot be assessed to levels of evidence. But, a number of studies, including two RCTs and one non-RCT have been published so far. The evidence of these studies will be discussed below.

3.5.2.1 Thulium laser vaporisation of the prostate

ThuVaR is a solely vaporising technique. Because the beam is fully absorbed in water, there is no necessity for side-fire application, as with KTP or LBO. A multicentre, non-randomised, case series study has reported clinical data of pure vaporisation of the prostate in 99 patients with small prostates (< 35 mL). As the results are presented alongside the results for patients with larger prostates (> 35 mL), the clinical data cannot be separated. The improvement of urodynamic parameters in the whole group of patients (n = 200) shows clinically efficient vaporisation or vaporesection in 12 months of follow-up (Table 9). These findings reflect the results of two preclinical trials in an organ-perfused model investigating the physical properties of Tm:YAG.

In comparison with a KTP laser, the 70 W Tm:YAG laser showed a larger ablation capacity, reduced bleeding rate and shallower coagulation zone (5). The 70 W Tm:YAG and the novel 120 W KTP showed a similar bleeding rate and coagulation properties (6), in contrast to 120 W LBO, which showed a higher bleeding rate and slight increase in coagulation zone (7). Higher energy resulted in a marked increase of ablation capacity in both Tm:YAG and LBO lasers (Table 4).

Twelve patients on anticoagulant drugs have been treated safely with ThUVAP/ThuVARP (9). The operation time was between 25 and 140 minutes, with catheterisation for 16 hours and no transfusion required (10). No urethral stricture or bladder neck sclerosis was reported. However, seven patients received insufficient vaporisation and required retreatment, while four patients had urinary retention after catheter removal. Six per cent of ThuVAP patients demonstrated irritative voiding symptoms post-operatively, which resolved in 1-3 months.

3.5.2.2 Thulium laser resection of the prostate (ThuVARP)

ThuVARP is a technique that resects the prostate in TUR-like tissue chips. Although Thu:YAG is similar to the Ho:YAG with regard to its shallow tissue and water penetration and haemostasis, vaporisation capacity is significantly increased by the continuous-wave emitting mode. Therefore, tissue ablation is not only achieved by resection, but also by simultaneous vaporisation.

The largest number of thulium-associated publications have been published on ThuVARP. One RCT, one non-randomised controlled study and three prospective studies have been published since 2007. In total, 730 patients have been included in these trials, which have all been reported in peer-reviewed journals.

One RCT (11) and one non-RCT (12) compared ThuVARP with monopolar TURP. The two procedures showed similar clinical outcomes and an improvement in urodynamic parameters with reduced morbidity. The Tm:YAG-treated patient group showed reduced bleeding with lower transfusion rates and shorter catheter and hospitalisation times compared to the TURP-treated patient group (11,12). All other studies (13-16) showed clinical and urodynamic results in the range of the above studies with durable improvement in voiding function (Table 9), up to an 18-month follow-up. Post-operative PSA levels as a surrogate parameter for volume reduction declined by 56% (16) and 69.4% (15).

3.5.2.3 Thulium laser vapoenucleation of the prostate (ThuVEP)

The evolution in Tm:YAG prostate surgery has virtually followed the same path as for Ho:YAG surgery. ThuVEP

was introduced in 2008 for patients with larger prostates (10). Published data in peer-reviewed journals is sparse (1-3,17,18).

The clinical efficacy of ThuVEP versus HoLEP was studied in one prospective RCT (17) and ThuVEP alone was studied in three prospective non-RCTs (1,2,18) Efficient tissue reduction and consistent improvement in clinical symptoms was observed within the follow-up period of up to 18 months (1,2,18). Blood loss was reduced in the Tm:YAG group, when compared to HoLEP, with equi-effective de-obstruction within a short follow-up interval of 3 months (17). In patients with refractory urinary retention (RUR), no differences with regards to improvement of urodynamic parameters and peri-operative complications were recorded, except for a higher rate of UTIs (15.5 vs 4.6) in patients with RUR (4). ThuVEP was safely applied to 96 high-risk patients, of whom 16 were on anticoagulant drugs. Within the whole study group, six patients developed UTI, three of whom required either post-operative transfusion or second-look surgery due to clot retention, or had insufficient voiding function (13). Post-operative PSA levels, as a surrogate parameter for volume reduction, declined by 56.1 (11) to 69.4% (10) for ThuVARP and 88% for ThuVEP (18).

3.5.2.4 Thulium laser enucleation of the prostate (ThuLEP)

ThuLEP is a transurethral technique with widely blunt dissection of the adenoma, such as OP. Permanent incisions are made at the apex and the bladder neck, the nutrifying vessels from the peripheral to the transition zone are punctiformly coagulated, leaving the capsule widely untouched. Except for a description of the technique, no clinical data has been reported so far (19).

Table 9: Results of ThuVAP, ThuVARP, ThuVEP for improvement in urodynamic parameters

Trial	Laser source/ Technique	Follow-up	N	Mean prostate size (mL)	PSA reduc-tion (%)	Change in symp-toms (%)	Change in Q_{max} (mL/s) (%)	PVR change (%)	LE
Mattioli et al. 2008 (2)	ThuVAP	12	99	45*	n.a.	-67*	14.8 (289)*	-88.9*	4
	ThuVARP		101						
Xia et al. 2008 (6)	ThuVARP	12	52	59.2	n.a.	-84	15.7 (296)	-94.4	1b
	TURP		48	55.1	n.a.	-81	15.8 (290)	-92.8	
Fu et al. 2009 (7)	ThuVARP	12	58	49.8	n.a.	-85.4	14.9 (329)	-84.3	2b
	TURP		42	48.2	n.a.	-81.1	15.5 (312)	-84.8	
Bach et al. 2007 (8) 2009 (9)	ThuVARP	18	54	30.3	n.a.	-67	12.8 (258]	-86	2b
Fu et al. 2008 [10]	ThuVARP	12	72	65.8	-69.4	-72.6	15.1 (364)	-65.7	2b
Szlauer et al. 2009 [11]	ThuVARP	9	56	50.0	-56.1	-56	13.8 (270)	-62.4	2b
Shao et al. 2009 (13)	ThuVEP	6	52	40.3	- 40.8	-70	14.9 (350)	- 80	1b
	HoLEP		46	37.3	- 35.7	-60	15.5 (330)	- 80	
Bach et al. 2010 (12,14)	ThuVEP	18	88	61.3	n.a.	-63	15.7 (664)	-72.4	2b
Bach et al. 2011 (18)	ThuVEP	12	90	108.59	- 88	-79.7	18.7 (326)	-90.8	

* for both groups.

PSA = prostate specific antigen; PVR = postvoid residual urine volume; LE = level of evidence; ThuVAP = thulium laser vaporisation of the prostate; ThuVARP = Tm:YAG vaporesection; ThuVEP = Tm:YAG vapoenucleation; TURP = transurethral resection of the prostate.

3.5.3 ***Risk and complications, durability of results***

Several case series studies and two RCTs (11,17) have proven the intra-operative safety of Tm:YAG surgery of the prostate, as well as in subgroups of patients with large prostates (1,10), on anticoagulation therapy (3,9), or in retention (2).

3.5.3.1 Intra-operative complications

The rate of intra-operative complications occurring during ThuVARP or ThuVEP is low. There is no report on the occurrence of TURP syndrome. Intra- or early post-operative bleeding was reported in 3.4% of patients undergoing enucleation of the prostate and the rate of blood transfusions varied from 0% (17) to 2.2% (2) for ThuVEP. Transfusions are not reported during or after vaporesection of the prostate, whereas in a level 1b, prospective, randomised trial, blood transfusion was necessary in 4% (11) and 9.5% (12), respectively with TURP, while TURP syndrome occurred in 2.1% of patients (11).

3.5.3.2 Early post-operative complications

In the early post-operative course after THUVEP, symptomatic UTI occurred in 6.8% (10), in 2.2% a secondlook procedure during hospitalisation was necessary. In 1.1% of patients recatheterisation was necessary (10). Comparing the complications of patients with pre-operative urinary retention and indwelling catheter prior to enucleation of the prostate with catheter-naïve patients, a significantly higher rate of post-operative haematuria (3.1% vs 1.4%) and UTI (15.4% vs 4.2%) was observed in patients with pre-operative urinary retention (2).

The 3.9% rate of UTIs after ThuVARP was significantly lower than the 8.3% UTI rate after TURP (11), while similar UTI rates (6.9% vs 7.1%) were reported by another study.

Transitory early urge incontinence occurred less often than after TURP (23.1 vs 31.3%) (11). No difference was seen in the occurrence of mild-to-moderate dysuria for ThuVARP in 8.6% versus 7.1% for TURP, respectively. Irritative symptoms occurred in 26.2% and 29.3%, respectively (12).

3.5.3.3 Late complications and retreatment rate

In the current literature, data with a follow-up of 18 months after ThuVARP and ThuVEP are available. Within the 18 months follow-up after ThuVARP, no re-operation or recatheterisations occurred (14). *De novo* erectile dysfunction was not reported. A total of 55% of patients reported retrograde ejaculation after ThuVARP compared to 65% after TURP (11). Another study did not show a significant difference for retrograde ejacuation (44.2% vs 44.7%) (12). No bladder neck stricture occurred. Occurrence of urethral stricture was significantly lower in TuVARP, when compared to TURP (1.9% vs 6.5%, respectively) (11,12).

Within a follow-up of 18 months after ThuVEP, 2.2% of patients needed retreatment using ThuVARP. One patient (1.1%) required transient recatheterisation, while one patient developed a urethral stricture, requiring urethrotomia interna (1%) (1).

Transient recatheterisation was necessary in 5.6% of patients with an indwelling catheter prior to enucleation. The re-operation rate showed no difference between patients with and without an indwelling catheter prior to enucleation (2.8 vs 3.1%) within a 12-month follow-up period (14).

Despite the encouraging results, a follow-up period of 18 months is a relatively short time upon which to make final conclusions.

3.5.4 ***Conclusions and recommendations for use of Thulium:YAG lasers***

Conclusions	**LE**
ThuVARP showed equivalent effectivity when compared to TURP in one RCT and one non-randomised prospective controlled trial with small and medium volume glands. Tm:YAG treated patient showed shorter catheterisation time and shorter hospitalisation time. Adverse events were significantly lower than in TURP (intra-operative and post-operative bleeding).	1b
Currently, only one RCT with a short follow-up has compared ThuVEP to HoLEP. Nevertheless, three prospective cohort studies with a follow-up of 18 months demonstrated efficacy for ThUVEP, as well as low perioperative complications and retreatment rates.	1b
Study data are awaited comparing ThuVEP and ThuLEP to HoLEP. HoLEP is the most extensively studied transurethral enucleation technique to date and long-term anatomical data are of particular interest.	4

Recommendations	LE	GR
ThuVARP is an alternative to TURP for small- and medium-sized prostates.	1b	A
ThuVARP and ThuVEP are suitable for patients at risk of bleeding or taking anticoagulant medication.	3b	C
ThuVEP can be offered as an alternative to TURP, to HoLEP and OP for large size prostates.	1b, 2b	B

3.5.5 ***References***

1. Bach T, Netsch C, Haecker A, et al. Thulium:YAG laser enucleation (VapoEnucleation) of the prostate: safety and durability during intermediate-term follow-up. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):39-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19669645
2. Bach T, Herrmann TR, Haecker A, et al. Thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet laser prostatectomy in men with refractory urinary retention. BJU Int 2009 Aug;104(3):361-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19220261
3. Bach T, Herrmann TRW, Netsch C, et al. Vapoenucleation of the prostate using the Thulium:YAG 2 micron cw laser in high-risk patients. J Urol Suppl 2010 Apr;183(4);745-6.
4. Harrer K, Wezel F, Netsch C, et al. Efficacy of Thulium:YAG 2 µ cw Vapoenucleation in patients with prostate volume >100ml. J Urol Suppl 2010 Apr;183(4):745-6.
5. Wendt-Nordahl G, Huckele S, Honeck P, et al. Systemic evaluation of recently introduced 2-µm continuous-wave thulium laser for vaporesection of the prostate. J Endourol 2008 May;22(5):1041-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18377234
6. Bach T, Huck N, Wezel F, et al. 70 vs 120 W thulium:yttrium-aluminium-garnet 2 µm continuous-wave laser for the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia: a systemic ex-vivo evaluation. BJU Int 2010 Aug;106(3):368-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19912204
7. Heinrich E, Wendt-Nordahl G, Honeck P, et al. 120 W lithium triborate laser for photoselective vaporization of the prostate: comparison with 80 W potassium-titanyl-phosphate laser in an ex-vivo model. J Endourol 2010 Jan;24(1):75-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19958155
8. Bach T, Xia SJ, Fu WJ, et al. Thulium:YAG 2 µm cw laser prostatectomy - Where do we stand ? - World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):163-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20204378
9. Mattioli S, Muñoz R, Recasens R, et al. Treatment of benign prostatic hypertrophy with the Revolix laser. Arch Esp Urol 2008 Nov;61(9):1037-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19140585
10. Bach T, Wendt-Nordahl G, Michel MS, et al. Feasibility and efficacy of Thulium:YAG laser enucleation (VapoEnucleation) of the prostate. World J Urol 2009 Aug;27(4):541-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19184038
11. Xia SJ, Zhuo J, Sun XW, et al. Thulium laser versus standard transurethral resection of the prostate: a randomised prospective trial. Eur Urol 2008 Feb;53(2):382-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17566639
12. Fu WJ, Zhang X, Yang Y, et al. Comparison of 2-µm continuous wave laser vaporesection of the prostate and transurethral resection of the prostate: a prospective nonrandomised trial with 1-year follow-up. Urology 2010 Jan;75(1):194-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19819535
13. Bach T, Herrmann TR, Ganzer R, et al. RevoLix vaporesection of the prostate: initial results of 54 patients with a one-year follow-up. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):257-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17530258
14. Bach T, Herrmann TR, Ganzer R, et al. [Thulum:YAG vaporesection of the prostate. First results]. Urologe A 2009 May;48(5):529-34. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19183928
15. Fu WJ, Hong BF, Yang Y, et al. Vaporesection for managing benign prostatic hyperplasia using a 2-µm continuous -wave laser: a prospective trial with 1-year follow-up. BJU Int 2009 Feb;103(3):352-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18778340
16. Szlauer R, Götschl R, Razmaria A, et al. Endoscopic vaporesection of the prostate using the continuous-wave 2-µm thulium laser: Outcome and demonstration of the surgical technique. Eur Urol 2009 Feb;55(2):368-75. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19022557

17. Shao Q, Zhang FB, Shang DH, et al. [Comparison of holmium and thulium laser in transurethral enucleation of the prostate]. Zhonghua Nan Ke Xue 2009 Apr;15(4):346-9. [Article in Chinese] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19472910
18. Bach T, Netsch C, Pohlmann L, et al. Thulium:YAG Vapoenucleation in Large Volume Prostates. J Urol 2011 Dec;186(6):2323-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22014812
19. Herrmann TR, Bach T, Imkamp F, et al. Thulium laser enucleation of the prostate (ThuLEP): transurethral anatomical prostatectomy with laser support. Introduction of a novel technique for the treatment of benign prostatic obstruction. World J Urol 2010 Feb;28(1):45-51. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20063164

4. APPLICATION OF LASER DEVICES FOR THE TREATMENT OF BLADDER CANCER PATHOLOGIES

4.1 Introduction

The use of laser devices in urology was first reported by Staehler et al. in 1978 (1) who described the successful destruction of urinary bladder tumours with a Nd:YAG-laser.

There are only retrospective analyses concerning laser ablation of bladder cancer, mostly single-institution studies with small patient numbers (LE: 3/4). In 2001, there were the first reports of bladder tumours being resected en bloc using the holmium laser (2), while in 2008, there was the first report of a bladder malignancy being resected by thulium laser (3).

4.2 Clinical application and results

Although various lasers have been used to treat bladder tumours, there has been no prospective comparison of the different devices (4). Some studies have compared TUR of the bladder (TURB) with laser treatment in non-controlled, retrospective analyses (5-7). Most studies compared laser therapy to standard TURB procedures. No indwelling catheter was used. Some studies reported carrying out the procedure under local anaesthesia in an ambulant setting (8-11). Although there have been some reports of adjacent bowel injury when using lasers with a deep penetration, the bladder wall remained intact (12,13). Major studies are represented in Table 10. The use of lasers to treat bladder tumours in non-muscle invasive disease has the major drawback of a lack of tissue for histopathological evaluation if only laser vaporisation is used.

Total complication rates were reported ranging from as low as 5.1% up to 43%. Data regarding the morbidity and complications of TURB describe the rate of UTIs as up to 24%, bleeding (2.8-8%), haemorrhage requiring transfusion (0.9-13%) and bladder perforation (1.3-5%) (14-18). The use of holmium laser for en bloc resections may help to evaluate pathological stage and grades in primary bladder tumours for evaluating the pathological stage and grade (8,10,19). At this time, there is not enough data to predict progression rates, but based on currently available data, recurrence rates after holmium laser application in bladder cancer appear similar, or lower, compared with TURB (11). The effect of lower scattering leading to a decrease in local and out-of-field recurrence rates is under debate (20). Overall recurrence rates, however, seem to be comparable to TURB.

According to current data, the optimal indication for laser excision of a bladder tumour is a relatively small tumour located at the trigonum, lateral bladder wall, or bladder neck. It has been suggested that the oncological outcome following laser treatment is comparable to TUR. However, at present, there are no larger studies able to provide reliable long-term equivalence.

In experienced hands, laser treatment of bladder pathologies, e.g. tumours, diverticles, and ureteroceles, provides an alternative to conventional TUR surgery in well-selected patients.

Table 10: Applications of laser devices for the treatment of bladder cancer pathologies

Ref.	Study design	LE	Patients (n)	Surgical technique	Operation time (min)	Compli-cations	Follow-up (mo)	Recurrence (%)		
								Local	Out of field	Overall
Ho:YAG (holmium) laser										
Das et al. 1998 (5)	Prospective	3	23	Photoablation + biopsy	18.6	1 recather-isation	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
Saito 2001 (2)	Retrospective	3	35	En bloc + biopsy	n.a.	None	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
Soler-Martinez et al. 2007 (19)	Prospective	3	36	Biopsy + photoablation	14 (5-17)	None	3, 6, 12	n.a.	n.a.	14, 22, 25
Zhu et al. 2008 (10)	Prospective	2	101	En bloc	30.7 (±16.1)	1 perfora-ted bladder	34 (18, 43)	n.a.	n.a.	n.a.
Xishuang et al. 2009 (11)	Prospective	2	64	En bloc	16.5 (±3.8)	1 urethral stricture	24	n.a.	n.a.	LR 15 IR 34.6 HR 31.7
Zhong et al. 2010 (21)	Retrospective	3	25	En bloc	21.5 (±12.5)	None	12, 24	n.a.	n.a.	12.5, 26, 6
Tm:YAG (thulium)										
Gao et al. 2008 (3)	Prospective	3	32	En bloc	25 (15-35)	None	3, 6, 12	3, 7, 11	6, 17, 21	9, 22, 28
Zhong et al. 2010 (21)	Retrospective	3	34	En bloc	29.1 (±16.5)	None	12, 24	n.a.	n.a.	17.6, 29.9
Yang et al. 2009 (7)	Prospective	3	9	En bloc	7 (5-15)	1 perfora-ted bladder	7.5 [6,9]*	0	n.a.	-

LE = level of evidence; n.a. = not applicable.

4.3 Conclusions and recommendation for laser treatment of bladder cancer

Conclusions	LE
The use of lasers is feasible for resection, coagulation and enucleation of non-muscle invasive bladder tumours.	3
Transurethral resection of the bladder remains the gold standard.	1a
In laser coagulation of tumours, no tissue for pathological staging is obtained.	
Long-term recurrence and progression rates are unknown for this novel technique.	
Currently, no data are available to indicate superiority of one device over another in bladder pathology.	
Complications are generally directly related to the laser's wavelength (penetration depth) and surgical technique.	

Recommendation	GR
Laser treatment for bladder cancer should only be used in a clinical trial setting or for patients who, due to co-morbidities or other complications, are not fit for conventional treatment.	C

4.4 References

1. Staehler G, Schmiedt E, Hofstetter A. [Destruction of bladder neoplasms by means of transurethral neodym-YAG-laser coagulation]. Helv Chir Acta 1978 Jul;45(3):307-11. [Article in German] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/568126
2. Saito S. Transurethral en bloc resection of bladder tumors. J Urol 2001 Dec;166(6):2148-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11696724
3. Gao X, Ren S, Xu C, et al. Thulium laser resection via a flexible cystoscope for recurrent non-muscleinvasive bladder cancer: initial clinical experience. BJU Int 2008 Nov;102(9):1115-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18565172
4. Johnson DE. Use of the holmium:YAG (Ho:YAG) laser for treatment of superficial bladder carcinoma. Lasers Surg Med 1994;14(3):213-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8208047
5. Das A, Gilling P, Fraundorfer M. Holmium laser resection of bladder tumors (HoLRBT). Tech Urol 1998 Mar;4(1):12-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9568769
6. Razvi HA, Chun SS, Denstedt JD, et al. Soft-tissue applications of the holmium:YAG laser in urology. J Endourol 1995 Oct;9(5):387-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8580938
7. Yang Y, Wei ZT, Zhang X, et al. Transurethral partial cystectomy with continueous wave laser for bladder carcinoma. J Urol 2009 Jul:182(1):66-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19450852
8. Syed HA, Biyani CS, Bryan N, et al. Holmium:YAG laser treatment of recurrent superficial bladder carcinoma: initial clinical experience. J Endourol 2001 Aug;15(6):625-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11552789
9. Muraro GB, Grifoni R, Spazzafumo L. Endoscopic therapy of superficial bladder cancer in high-risk patients: Holmium laser versus transurethral resection. Surg Technol Int 2005;14:222-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16525976
10. Zhu Y, Jiang X, Zhang J, et al. Safety and efficacy of holmium laser resection for primary nonmuscleinvasive bladder cancer versus transurethral electroresection: single-center experience. Urology 2008 Sep;72(3):608-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18649930
11. Xishuang S, Deyong Y, Xiangyu C, et al. Comparing the safety and efficiency of conventional monopolar, plasmakinetic, and holmium laser transurethral resection of primary non-muscle invasive bladder cancer. J Endourol 2010 Jan;24(1):69-73. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19954353
12. Jønler M, Lund L, Bisballe S. Holmium:YAG laser vaporization of recurrent papillary tumours of the bladder under local anaesthesia. BJU Int 2004 Aug;94(3):322-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15291860
13. Hossain MZ, Khan SA, Salam MA, et al. Holmium YAG laser treatment of superficial bladder carcinoma. Mymensingh Med J 2005 Jan;14(1):13-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15695945
14. Dick A, Barnes R, Hadley H, et al. Complications of transurethral resection of bladder tumors: prevention, recognition and treatment. J Urol 1980 Dec;124(6):810-1. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7192324
15. Pycha A, Lodde M, Lusuardi L, et al. Teaching transurethral resection of the bladder: still a challenge? Urology 2003 Jul;62(1):46-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12837420
16. Collado A, Chéchile GE, Salvador J, et al. Early complications of endoscopic treatment for superficial bladder tumors. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1529-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025697
17. Kondás J, Szentgyörgyi E. Transurethral resection of 1250 bladder tumours. Int Urol Nephrol 1992;24(1):35-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1378046
18. Nieder AM, Meinbach DS, Kim SS, et al. Transurethral bladder tumor resection: intraoperative and postoperative complications in a residency setting. J Urol 2005 Dec;174(6):2307-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16280830
19. Soler-Martínez J, Vozmediano-Chicharro R, Morales-Jiménez P, et al. Holmium laser treatment for low grade, low stage, noninvasive bladder cancer with local anesthesia and early instillation of mitomycin C. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2337-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17936805

20. Wilby D, Thomas K, Ray E, et al. Bladder cancer: new TUR techniques. World J Urol 2009 Jun;27(3):309-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19259684
21. Zhong C, Guo S, Tang Y, et al. Clinical observation on 2 micron laser for non-muscle-invasive bladder tumor treatment: single-center experience. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):157-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20306053

5. APPLICATIONS OF LASERS IN LAPAROSCOPY/ ENDOSCOPY

5.1 Laser-assisted partial nephrectomy

*5.1.1 **Introduction***

The need for hilar clamping in case of laparoscopic partial nephrectomy (PN) is currently necessary to create a bloodless field for renal excision. However, hilar clamping increases the complexity of the operation because of the time constraint and the significant risk for increased times of warm renal ischaemia and subsequent post-operative compromise of renal function. Laser technology presents a promising alternative to achieve tumour excision, pelvicaliceal water tightness and renal haemostasis in a time-sensitive manner, with or without hilar occlusion.

*5.1.2 **Clinical application and results***

Several experimental studies have demonstrated the efficiency of laser-assisted partial nephrectomy in various experimental set-ups. However, up to date only eight small series concerning clinically tested laser-assisted PN have been published, of which only two series were performed laparoscopically (one conventional and one robotic) (Table 11) (1-8) (LE: 3). Consequently, the evidence is considered poor and further investigation is necessary in order to establish the method as a routine alternative for nephron-sparing surgery.

Early experience with laser technology in renal surgery can be traced back in 1982. Preliminary results with the use of carbon dioxide laser for renal ablation were promising, demonstrating a reduction in blood loss, shortening of operative time and preserving of functional integrity in remaining renal tissue (1,2). In 1986, the first series of PN without the need for hilar clamping was reported. Malloy et al. employed the Nd:YAG laser in the treatment of three elderly patients with renal cell carcinoma in a solitary kidney. The Nd:YAG laser was used together with standard open surgical techniques for tumour extraction. No occlusion of the renal artery was needed and the oncological outcome was considered perfect in all three cases (3) (LE: 3).

Initial experience with the use of contact Nd:YAG laser resection in PN was first described in 1993. In a series of six resections, surgeons occluded the renal artery to ensure good intra-operative haemostasis. Cutting properties of the laser were considered more accurate, while energy levels could be reduced causing less damage to the remaining parenchyma. Oncological outcome was considered perfect (4) (LE: 3). Additionally, the combination of both the KTP laser (for cutting) and the YAG laser (for coagulation of large vessels) allowed fast removal of kidney tissue, with minimal blood loss and minimal loss of renal parenchyma in as small a series of three paediatric cases of bilateral Wilms' tumours (5).

The safety and feasibility of laser PN without the need for hilar occlusion was further supported in another small series of patients treated in an open fashion. A total of five patients with renal tumours up to 3.8 cm in size were subjected to open PN. A 2.0-μm continuous wave laser (RevoLix) by LISA laser, which is a diode-pumped solid-state laser emitting a wavelength of 2013 nm and penetrating tissue to a depth of about 0.5 mm was used. In all cases, no peri-operative haemorrhage was noted and no sutures or other means of haemostasis were needed. No post-operative massive bleeding or significant creatinine level alteration were noted. In accordance with the authors, efficient and safe vascular coagulation was possible up to a vessel diameter of 1.5 mm. The laser technique should only be used in peripheral renal tumours (6) (LE: 3).

Successful accomplishment of laparoscopic PN (LPN) without the need for hilar occlusion in three human cases using the Ho:YAG laser was first reported in 2002. The indications for LPN were a complicated renal cyst and a 2.5-cm renal-cell carcinoma in two adult patients and a non-functioning lower pole in a duplicated collecting system in an 8-year-old child. Energy settings used were 2 J/pulse at 60 pulses/sec and 0.8 J/pulse at 40 pulses/sec. Despite the fact that haemostasis was considered adequate, fibrin glue was applied in two

cases and oxidised cellulose in one case to reinforce the tissue against delayed bleeding. No complications were encountered and all patients left the hospital within 3 days.

The two major disadvantages of the technique were increased smoke accumulation during laser activation and significant splashing of blood onto the camera lens during resection, which occasionally impaired visibility (7) (LE: 3).

More recently, preliminary experience with laser robotic partial nephrectomy without hilar clamping was reported in two patients. KTP laser robotic partial nephrectomy was performed with a purpose-built, prototype, robotic, laser delivery instrument. A Greenlight HPS® laser unit was used at settings up to 50 W. In one patient, hilar clamping was necessitated during the procedure because of bleeding from a large central segmental vessel. The depth of thermal injury was estimated to be approximately 1 mm. No major complications were reported (8) (LE: 3).

Table 11: Clinical experience with laser-assisted partial nephrectomy

Reference	Patients (n)	Treatment	Laser beam	Hilar clamping	Comments or adverse effects	LE
Barzilay et al. 1982 (1)	4	Partial nephrectomy (3), bivalving of kidney (1)	CO_2 laser beam	Yes	Open	3
Rosemberg 1985 (2)	3	Partial nephrectomy	CO_2 laser beam	Yes	Open	3
Malloy et al. 1986 (3)	3	Partial nephrectomy	Nd:YAG laser	No	Open	3
Korhonen et al. 1993 (4)	5	Partial nephrectomy	Nd:YAG laser	Yes	Open	3
Merguerian et al. 1994 (5)	3	Partial nephrectomy	Nd:YAG laser and KTP laser	Yes	Open	3
Gruschwitz et al. 2008 (6)	5	Partial nephrectomy	2.0-µm continuous wave laser	No	Open	3
Lotan et al. 2002 (7)	3	Partial nephrectomy	Ho:YAG laser	No	Laparoscopic/ smoke accumulation and splashing of blood on camera	3
Hodgson et al. 2008 (8)	2	Partial nephrectomy	KTP laser	No	Robotic / hilar clamping was necessitated in one occasion	3

Ho:YAG = Holmium: yttrium aluminium garnet; KTP = potassium titanyl-phosphate laser; Nd:YAG = neodymium-doped yttrium aluminium garnet.

*5.1.3 **Conclusions about laser-assisted partial nephrectomy***

Conclusions	LE
Current data on nephron-sparing surgery using laser energy as an ablative method remain inconclusive.	
Preliminary results indicate that laser-assisted laparoscopic PN without the need for hilar clamping is feasible.	3
No major complication has been reported in humans.	3
Laser-assisted PN is a promising alternative in renal surgery, which is worth further evaluation in clinical trials.	

5.2 Laser-assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy (LNSRP)

Experimental and preliminary clinical data have highlighted promising future applications of laser technology in laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy (LNSRP) (Table 12). After examining the suitability of the technique in an experimental set-up of radical prostatectomy in dogs, Gianduzzo et al. performed a 532 nm KTP laser robotic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy in 10 patients using the AuraXP laser unit, delivering 12W through a 300-µm Endostat® fibre. The ability of KTP laser to be selectively absorbed by haemoglobin allows fine dissection, haemostasis and minimal tissue injury at the same time. However, in the current series, additional haemostasis using diathermy, suture or clips was required on several occasions for each case. Complications were one urine leak and one drain-site infection. Long-term potency outcomes were not demonstrated.

This is the first clinical evaluation of KTP laser as an ablative method in nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy (9) (LE: 3). In accordance with the author, the main disadvantage of the technique is the requirement for a filter for the KTP green light emission to prevent interference with the camera system, and the wearing of tinted safety glasses, both of which significantly detract from the laparoscopic view. Experimental data on dogs verify that the ability of KTP laser to preserve cavernous nerve function is comparable to the athermal techniques (sharp dissection and clip placement) (10). However, further clinical assessment is needed to determine the value of this technique.

Promising results in matters of LNSRP using Nd:YAG laser dissection have been reported as well. In a preliminary feasibility study enrolling five patients with clinically localised adenocarcinoma of the prostate neurovascular bundle (NVB) preservation was evaluated. The 1064 nm Nd:YAG laser was used and a continuous-wave mode applied in direct tissue contact at a 8-W power setting was suggested as the appropriate setup for most of the cases. Minimal blood loss, rapid dissection and minimal adjacent tissue injury estimated to be at 687µm (mean) were noted. As the NVBs were excised at the end of the operation for histological analysis erectile functional data could not be assessed, which is a limitation of the current study (9) (LE 3).

Table 12: Clinical experience with laser-assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy

References	Patients (n)	Treatment	Laser beam	Comments or adverse effects	LE
Gianduzzo et al. 2007 (9)	5	LNSRP	1064 nm Nd:YAG laser	Laparoscopic	3

LNSRP = Laser-assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy; Nd:YAG = neodymium-doped yttrium aluminium garnet.

*5.2.1 **Conclusions about laser-assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy***

Conclusions	LE
Data are sparse and safe conclusions cannot be drawn yet.	
Preliminary results indicate that laser-assisted LNSRP is feasible and could possibly enhance neuro-vascular bundle preservation.	3
Laser-assisted LNSRP remains experimental.	

6. RENAL TUMOUR LASER INTERSTITIAL ABLATION

The current consensus for small renal tumours supports thermal coagulation as an alternative treatment option, but only in selected cases of patients with co-morbidities that make them unsuitable candidates for partial nephrectomy (11).

Clinical experience with renal tumour laser interstitial ablation is still limited (Table 13). Renal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)-guided percutaneous laser thermal ablation (LTA) was first introduced by de Jode and used in a preliminary feasibility study, treating three patients with inoperable renal tumours using a Nd:YAG

laser delivered percutaneously to the renal tumour through a water-cooled interstitial fibre. MRI was used to both guide laser placement and monitor treatment in real time. Tissue necrosis within the targeted tissue was confirmed (12) (LE: 3).

Dick et al. evaluated the safety and feasibility of the technique in a series of nine patients with inoperable renal tumours. The operation took place under local sedation and opiate analgesia alone in 6 out of 9 patients, with the rest under general anaesthesia. A water-cooled 600 µm interstitial fibre was used to deliver 1064 µm Nd:YAG laser energy to the tumour. Laser energy was applied at 25 W for 10-30 minutes per treatment session. In all patients, the percentage enhancement of the tumour significantly decreased after LTA at the mean follow-up period of 16.9 months after the procedure. No subsequent infiltration of tumour into surrounding structures, e.g. peripheral fat and the renal vein, was noted. Reported complications were two cases of peripheral haematoma (resolving with conservative management) and one case of bradycardia (responded rapidly to atropine) (13) (LE: 3).

Table 13: Clinical experience with renal tumour laser interstitial ablation is still limited

Reference	Patients (n)	Disease	Laser beam	Comments	LE
de Jode et al. 1999 (12)	3	Inoperable renal tumours	Nd:YAG laser	Percutaneously or MRI-guided	3
Dick et al. 2002 (13)	9	Inoperable renal tumours	Nd:YAG laser	Percutaneously or MRI-guided	3

6.1 Conclusions and recommendation for laser treatment of small renal masses

Conclusions	LE
Data are poor and safe conclusions cannot be drawn yet regarding oncological outcome and safety.	**4**
Renal tumour interstitial laser ablation remains experimental.	**4**

Recommendation	GR
Laser-assisted laparoscopic PN, laser-assisted LNSRP and renal tumour laser interstitial coagulation are still experimental and should only be used in a clinical trial setting.	C

6.2 References

1. Barzilay B, Lijovetzky G, Shapiro A, et al. The clinical use of CO2 laser beam in the surgery of kidney parenchyma. Lasers Surg Med 1982;2(1):81-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6810046
2. Rosemberg SK. Clinical experience with carbon dioxide laser in renal surgery. Urology 1985 Feb;25(2):115-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3918370
3. Malloy TR, Schultz RE, Wein AJ, et al. Renal preservation utilizing neodymium:YAG laser. Urology 1986 Feb;27(2):99-103. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3753808
4. Korhonen AK, Talja M, Karlsson H, et al. Contact Nd:YAG laser and regional renal hypothermia in partial nephrectomy. Ann Chir Gynaecol Suppl 1993;206:59-62. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8291872
5. Merguerian PA, Seremetis G. Laser-assisted partial nephrectomy in children. J Pediatr Surg 1994 Jul;29(7):934-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7931974
6. Gruschwitz T, Stein R, Schubert J, et al. Laser-supported partial nephrectomy for renal cell carcinoma. Urology 2008 Feb;71(2):334-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18308114
7. Lotan Y, Gettman MT, Ogan K, et al. Clinical use of the holmium: YAG laser in laparoscopic partial nephrectomy. J Endourol 2002 Jun;16(5):289-92. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12184078

8. Hodgson D, Karamanolakis K. Rajbabu, et al. Appraisal of a novel procedure: potassium titanyl phosphate (ktp) laser laparoscopic partial nephrectomy. Abstracts of the Engineering and Urology Society, May 19, 2007, Anaheim, California. J Endourol 2008 Jan;22(1):159-212. Abstract #116. http://www.liebertonline.com/doi/abs/10.1089/end.2007.9935
9. Gianduzzo TR, Chang CM, El-Shazly M, et al. Laser nerve-sparing laparoscopic radical prostatectomy: a feasibility study. BJU Int 2007 Apr;99(4):875-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17244283
10. Gianduzzo TR, Colombo JR Jr, Haber GP, et al. KTP Laser Nerve Sparing Radical Prostatectomy: Comparison of Ultrasonic a Cold Scissor Dissection on Cavernous Nerve Function. J Urol 2009;181(6):2760-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19375744
11. Lovisolo JA, Legramandi CP, Fonte A. Thermal ablation of small renal tumors--present status. ScientificWorldJournal 2007 Feb 9;7:756-67. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17619758
12. de Jode MG, Vale JA, Gedroyc WM. MR-guided laser thermoablation of inoperable renal tumours in an open-configuration interventional MR scanner: preliminary clinical experience in three cases. J Magn Reson Imaging 1999;10(4):545-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10508321
13. Dick EA, Joarder R, de Jode MG, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging-guided laser thermal ablation of renal tumours. BJU Int 2002; 90(9):814-822. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12460338

7. RETROGRADE LASER ENDOURETEROTOMY

7.1 Introduction

Endoureterotomy is often first-line treatment for benign ureteral strictures. Since its introduction in 1997, retrograde laser endoureterotomy has become a popular tool for this procedure (1). Publications concerning the approach are based on retrospective analysis, i.e. single-institution studies resulting in levels 3 and 4 evidence (1-12) (Table 14).

7.2 Clinical application and results

Success rates of laser endoureterotomy are not uniformly evident. Large variations in success rates variations between published literature most probably arise because benign ureteral strictures are comprised of several different entities, each possibly responding differently to laser endoureterotomy [Gdor 2008]. Nevertheless, large retrospective studies are lacking to elucidate which strictures respond well and which do not (LE: 4). Non-ischaemic (e.g. iatrogenic) benign ureteral strictures after calculi management or abdominal surgery are reported to respond well to laser endoureterotomy, with a reported success rate between 68.4% and 91% (LE: 3). Stricture length is probably the most important predictor of outcome. Long ureteric strictures (> 2 cm) tend to be associated with poorer success rates (LE: 3). Stricture duration, ipsilateral renal function, stone impaction and stricture localisation (upper, middle or lower) have been also suggested to affect the outcome, though published results are controversial (LE: 3). Patients with ureteroenteric and malignant strictures do not respond well to laser endoureterotomy. Success rates in these cases are reported to be less than 60% (LE: 3).

The outcome of retrograde laser endoureterotomy compared to open surgical revision is slightly inferior (LE: 2b). However, due to the minimally invasive nature of the technique, laser endoureterotomy is associated with less morbidity and should be considered a first-line treatment option (LE: 3). When compared with other well-substantiated, endourological methods (e.g. hot-wire balloon catheter, endoincision with electrocautery or cold knife), laser endoureterotomy has been reported to have the same or superior long-term results (9). However, currently, there are no larger studies available presenting reliable long-term equivalence.

Holmium:YAG laser appears the only well tested-treatment modality (LE: 4). Currently, other laser energy sources are under evaluation which should still be considered experimental.

Since large studies are lacking and long-term studies are rare, the median time to failure has not yet been elucidated. Stricture recurrence as long as 18 months post-operatively has been reported. Yet, recurrence is most likely to be evident within the first 3 months (LE: 3). Balloon dilation after laser incision and post-operative placement of a ureteral stent for the duration of between 4 weeks to 6 months are common practices that

appear to aid long-term effectiveness (LE: 4). However, there remains a lack of studies comparing treatment failure with or without balloon dilation and post-operative ureteral stenting.

Table 14: Clinical experience with retrograde laser endoureterotomy

Reference	Patients (n)	Disease	Success rate	Mean follow-up (mo)	Comments
Lin et al. 2009 (2)	19	Benign ureteral strictures	52.6%	40.2	Stricture length and severity of hydronephrosis correlated with successful outcome
Gnessin et al. 2009 (3)	35	Benign ureteral strictures	82% symptomatic, 78.7% radiographic	27	Success rate was higher for nonischemic strictures (100% vs 64.7%, p = 0.027). Most failures occur within less than 9 months after surgery
Fu et al. 2009 (4)	18	Benign ureteral strictures, 6 cases complicated with ureteral calculus	88.8%	10.7	Post-operatively, an orthopaedic ureteral stent was left in place for 3-6 months
Corcoran et al. 2009 (5)	9	Benign ureteral strictures (20% idiopathic, 80% after calculi management or abdominal surgery)	85%	25.2	Laser urethrotomy was followed by balloon dilation in most cases
Gdor et al. 2008 (6)	13	Ureteral strictures associated with ureteral calculi (impacted ureteral calculi in 4)	62%	21	In case of impacted ureteral calculi, success rate was 56%. Without a history of impacted calculi, success rate was 75%
Hibi et al. 2007 (7)	20		80%	60.5	All failures occurred within 18 months
Lane et al. 2006 (8)	19	Non-obliterative iatrogenic ureteral strictures	68.4%	36	Failure was uniformly evident within the first 3 months
Razdan et al. 2005 (9)	17	Ureteral strictures of varying causes		40,8	
Kourambas 2001 (10)	7	Ureteral strictures	91%	3	
Singal et al. 1997 (1)	22	Ureteral strictures from a variety of causes and including ureteroenteric anastomoses	76%	9	Failure was uniformly evident within the first 3 months
Watterson et al. 2002 (11)	23	Ureterointestinal strictures	56%	36	Some recurrences occurred 16 months or longer postoperatively
Laven et al. 2001 (12)	19	Ureterointestinal strictures	57%	20.5	

7.3 Conclusions and recommendations for retrograde laser endoureterotomy

Conclusions	LE
Retrograde laser endoureterotomy is a feasible and safe treatment option for ureteral strictures.	3
Open surgical revision remains the gold standard.	1a
Ureteral strictures of different aetiologies appear to respond differently to treatment.	2b
In selected cases, success rate can reach 90%.	
Ureteroenteric anastomosis strictures respond poorly to laser endoureterotomy.	3
Late stricture recurrence should be expected until as long as 18 months post-operatively.	3

Recommendations	GR
Retrograde endoureterotomy should be considered a first-line treatment option for ureteral strictures.	C
Longer follow-up is needed.	C

7.4 References

1. Singal RK, Denstedt JD, Razvi HA, et al. Holmium:YAG laser endoureterotomy for treatment of ureteral stricture. Urology 1997 Dec;50(6):875-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9426717
2. Lin CM, Tsai TH, Lin TC, et al. Holmium: yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser endoureterotomy for benign ureteral strictures: a single-centre experience. Acta Chir Belg 2009 Nov-Dec;109(6):746-50. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20184060
3. Gnessin E, Yossepowitch O, Holland R, et al. Holmium laser endoureterotomy for benign ureteral stricture: a single center experience. J Urol 2009 Dec;182(6):2775-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19837432
4. Fu YM, Ni SB, Chen QY, et al. [Treatment of ureteral obstruction by holmium: YAG laser endoureterotomy: a report of 18 cases]. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi 2009 Feb 10;89(5):335-7. [Article in Chinese] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19563713
5. Corcoran AT, Smaldone MC, Ricchiuti DD, et al. Management of benign ureteral strictures in the endoscopic era. J Endourol 2009 Nov;23(11):1909-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19811059
6. Gdor Y, Gabr AH, Faerber GJ, et al. Success of laser endoureterotomy of ureteral strictures associated with ureteral stones is related to stone impaction. J Endourol 2008 Nov;22(11):2507-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19046090
7. Hibi H, Ohori T, Taki T, et al. Long-term results of endoureterotomy using a holmium laser. Int J Urol 2007 Sep;14(9):872-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17760762
8. Lane BR, Desai MM, Hegarty NJ, et al. Long-term efficacy of holmium laser endoureterotomy for benign ureteral strictures. Urology 2006 May;67(5):894-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16698348
9. Razdan S, Silberstein IK, Bagley DH. Ureteroscopic endoureterotomy. BJU Int 2005 Mar;95 Suppl 2:94-101. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15720342
10. Kourambas J, Delvecchio FC, Preminger GM. Low-power holmium laser for the management of urinary tract calculi, structures, and tumors. J Endourol 2001 Jun;15(5):529-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11465334
11. Watterson JD, Sofer M, Wollin TA, et al. Holmium: YAG laser endoureterotomy for ureterointestinal strictures. J Urol 2002 Apr;167(4):1692-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11912389
12. Laven BA, O'Connor RC, Steinberg GD, et al. Long-term results of antegrade endoureterotomy using the holmium laser in patients with ureterointestinal strictures. Urology 2001 Dec;58(6):924-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11744460

8. RETROGRADE LASER ENDOPYELOTOMY FOR URETEROPELVIC JUNCTION OBSTRUCTION (UPJO)

8.1 Introduction

Initial experience with laser endopyelotomy for the treatment of ureteropelvic junction obstruction (UPJO) can be traced back to the early 1990s (1). Since then, laser retrograde endopyelotomy has been a well-established method for the treatment of primary or secondary ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) strictures. Publications concerning retrograde laser endopyelotomy are mostly based on retrospective analysis, i.e. single-institution studies resulting in level 3 and 4 evidence data (Table 15) (2-19).

8.2 Clinical application and results

The optimal indication for laser endopyelotomy is a short (< 2 cm) UPJO of intrinsic aetiology in the absence of a very large pelvis, high insertion of the ureter, renal split function below 20%, and ipsilateral renal calculi (LE: 4). When particular inclusion criteria are selected, success rates are reported to be around 80% or even higher in more selected cases in the hands of an experienced urologist (LE: 4). Inferior success rates have been reported in cases of extrinsic cause of UPJO and severe hydronephrosis and in poor renal function (16,17).

The outcome of retrograde laser endopyelotomy compared to open pyeloplasty is slightly inferior (LE: 2b). However, due to the minimally invasive nature of the technique, laser endopyelotomy is associated with minimum blood loss, reduced hospital stay and less post-operative pain and should be one of the first-line treatment options (7) (LE: 2b). In addition, a failed endopyelotomy is not a contraindication for secondary open or laparoscopic pyeloplasty. When compared with other well-substantiated, endourological methods (e.g. hotwire balloon catheter, endoincision with electrocautery or cold knife), laser endopyelotomy is reported to have a similar or higher success rate and a lower rate of complications (8) (LE: 3). However, there are as yet no larger studies to provide reliable long-term equivalence.

The Ho:YAG laser appears to be the only well-tested treatment modality (LE: 4), with other laser energy sources under evaluation and still experimental. Complication rates associated with retrograde laser endopyelotomy have been reported as 12.5%, although the complications referred to are usually minor. Rarely do more serious measures, such as conversion to open surgery, need to be taken (LE: 3).

Despite the fact that long-term studies are rare, the median time to failure is reported to be as high as 7.7 months post-operatively (6). Post-operative placement of ureteral catheters, such as JJ stents for several weeks, is a common practice, despite the lack of studies comparing treatment failure with or without post-operative ureteral stenting.

Table 15: Clinical experience with retrograde laser endopyelotomy for ureteropelvic junction obstruction

Reference	Patients (n)	Disease	Success rate	Mean follow- up (mo)	Comments
Acher et al. 2009 (2)	15	Failed pyeloplasty	100%	6	No complications reported
Stilling et al. 2009 (3)	44	Primary (n=37) and secondary (n=7) UPJO	Symptom relief complete 66%; improved 23%	27.5	Strict inclusion criteria
Savoie et al. 2009 (4)	27	Primary (n=16) and secondary (n=11) UPJO	70%	35	Median time to failure: 2.7 months
Braga et al. 2007 (5)	10	Failed pyeloplasty in children	60% radiographic relief	47	Age < 4 years and narrowed ureteral segment greater than 10 mm were associated with a poor outcome

Doo et al. 2007 (6)	47	UPJO	67.5%	37.3	Median time to failure: 7.7 months
Rassweiler et al. 2007 (7)	113	Extrinsic as well as intrinsic UPJO	72.6% (85.7% intrinsic vs 51.4% extrinsic)	63 months	Complication rate of 5.3%
Ponsky et al. 2006 (8)	37	Primary and secondary UPJO	74.2%	75.6	No major complications reported
Geavlete et al. 2007 (9)	30	Failed pyeloplasty (n=17); failed endopyelotomy (n=13)	83.3% (at 18 months)	31	
el-Nahas et al. 2006 (10)	20	Primary and secondary UPJO	85%	29.9	10% complication rate
Minervini at al. 2005 (11)	30	UPJO	80% (at 10 months)	24	12.5% complication rate
Seveso et al. 2005 (12)	16	Primary (n=10) and secondary (n=6) UPJO	81%	18	One case of intra-operative haemorrhage
Matin et al. 2003 (13)	46	Primary (n=40) and secondary (n=6) UPJO	65.4% symptomatic and 73.1% radiographic	23.2	No intra-operative complications; 11.1% post-operative complications
Hibi et al. 2002 (14)	5	UPJO	80%	12.8	
Giddens et al. 2000 (15)	23	Primary and secondary UPJO	83%	10	Repeat laser incision successful in 50% of primary failures
Biyani et al. 2000 (16)	22	Primary (n=16) and secondary (n=4) UPJO	75%	34	Success rate tends to be poor in patients with poor renal function
Renner et al. 1998 (17)	34	Primary (n=27) and secondary (n=7) UPJO	85%	18	Minor complications in 15%
Conlin et al. 1998 (18)	21	UPJO	81%	12	
Biyani et al. 1997 (19)	8	Primary (n=5) and secondary (n=3) UPJO	87.5%	12.4	

UPJO = ureteropelvic junction obstruction.

8.3 Conclusions and recommendations for laser treatment for UPJO

Conclusions	**LE**
Retrograde laser endopyelotomy is a feasible and safe treatment option for the treatment of uteropelvic junction obstruction.	3
Open or laparoscopic pyeloplasty remains the gold standard.	1a
In selected cases, success rate can reach 90%.	
Treatment morbidity is minimal and major complications are rare.	3
Treatment failure may occur up to 1 year post-operatively.	3

Recommendations	GR
Retrograde laser endopyelotomy could be one of the first-line treatment options.	C
Follow-up should be prolonged for at least 1 year post-operatively.	C
Open or laparoscopic pyeloplasty remain options in cases in which minimally invasive measures fail.	C
Ensure identification of crossing vessels which is of particular relevance in reducing bleeding complications.	B
Ureteric stent placement before the procedure is an option that may affect the post-operative success rate.	C

8.4 References

1. Biyani CS, Cornford PA, Powell CS. Retrograde endoureteropyelotomy with the holmium:YAG laser. Initial experience. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):471-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412808
2. Acher PL, Nair R, Abburaju JS, et al. Ureteroscopic holmium laser endopyelotomy for ureteropelvic junction stenosis after pyeloplasty. J Endourol 2009 Jun;23(6):899-902. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19459754
3. Stilling NM, Jung H, Nørby B, et al. Retrograde ureteroscopic holmium laser endopyelotomy in a selected population of patients with ureteropelvic junction obstruction. Scand J Urol Nephrol 2009;43(1):68-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18949631
4. Savoie PH, Lechevallier E, Crochet P, et al. Retrograde endopyelotomy using Holmium-Yag laser for uretero-pelvic junction obstruction. Prog Urol 2009 Jan;19(1):27-32. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135639
5. Braga LH, Lorenzo AJ, Skeldon S, et al. Failed pyeloplasty in children: comparative analysis of retrograde endopyelotomy versus redo pyeloplasty. J Urol 2007 Dec;178(6):2571-5; discussion 2575. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17945304
6. Doo CK, Hong B, Park T, et al. Long-term outcome of endopyelotomy for the treatment of ureteropelvic junction obstruction: how long should patients be followed up? J Endourol 2007 Feb;21(2):158-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17338613
7. Rassweiler JJ, Subotic S, Feist-Schwenk M, et al. Minimally invasive treatment of ureteropelvic junction obstruction: long-term experience with an algorithm for laser endopyelotomy and laparoscopic retroperitoneal pyeloplasty. J Urol 2007 Mar;177(3):1000-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17296396
8. Ponsky LE, Streem SB. Retrograde endopyelotomy: a comparative study of hot-wire balloon and ureteroscopic laser. J Endourol 2006 Oct;20(10):823-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17094762
9. Geavlete P, Georgescu D, Mirciulescu V, et al. Ureteroscopic laser approach in recurrent ureteropelvic junction stenosis. Eur Urol 2007 Jun;51(6):1542-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17005317
10. el-Nahas AR, Shoma AM, Eraky I, et al. Prospective, randomised comparison of ureteroscopic endopyelotomy using holmium:YAG laser and balloon catheter. J Urol 2006 Feb;175(2):614-8; discussion 618. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16407007
11. Minervini A, Davenport K, Keeley FX Jr, et al. Antegrade versus retrograde endopyelotomy for pelviureteric junction (PUJ) obstruction. Eur Urol 2006 Mar;49(3):536-42; discussion 542-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16457941
12. Seveso M, Giusti G, Taverna G, et al. Retrograde endopyelotomy using the holmium laser: technical aspects and functional results. Arch Ital Urol Androl 2005 Mar;77(1):10-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15906782
13. Matin SF, Yost A, Streem SB. Ureteroscopic laser endopyelotomy: a single-center experience. J Endourol 2003 Aug;17(6):401-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12965067
14. Hibi H, Yamada Y, Mizumoto H, et al. Retrograde ureteroscopic endopyelotomy using the holmium:YAG laser. Int J Urol 2002 Feb;9(2):77-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12028295

15. Giddens JL, Grasso M. Retrograde ureteroscopic endopyelotomy using the holmium:YAG laser. J Urol 2000 Nov;164(5):1509-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11025693
16. Biyani CS, Cornford PA, Powell CS. Ureteroscopic endopyelotomy with the Holmium:YAG laser: mid-term results. Eur Urol 2000 Aug;38(2):139-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10895003
17. Renner C, Frede T, Seemann O, et al. Laser endopyelotomy: minimally invasive therapy of ureteropelvic junction stenosis. J Endourol 1998 Dec;12(6):537-44. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9895259
18. Conlin MJ, Bagley DH. Ureteroscopic endopyelotomy at a single setting. J Urol 1998 Mar;159(3):727-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9474135
19. Biyani CS, Cornford PA, Powell CS. Retrograde endoureteropyelotomy with the holmium:YAG laser. Initial experience. Eur Urol 1997;32(4):471-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9412808

9. TRANSURETHRAL LASER URETHROTOMY

9.1 Introduction

The introduction of transurethral laser urethrotomy using the Nd:YAG laser can be traced back to 1979 (1). Since then, laser urethrotomy has become a common urological practice worldwide in the management of urethral strictures. Publications concerning this approach are based on retrospective analysis, i.e. single-institution studies leading to level 3 or 4 evidence data (2-19) (Table 16).

9.2 Clinical application and results

Success rates of laser urethrotomy for urethral strictures are reported to be as high as 100% in selected cases (LE: 3). Short segment urethral strictures tend to respond excellently to this treatment modality (LE: 3). However, long (> 1.5 cm) or recurrent urethral strictures are reported to demonstrate inferior results (LE: 3). Periodic urethral dilatation is usually enough for the management of treatment failure (LE: 3).

The types of lasers tested on laser urethrotomy are the Nd:YAG, the KTP, the argon, the Ho:YAG and the diode laser. No superiority of one type of lasers has been demonstrated (LE: 3). There is a lack of large multicentre studies comparing the success rate of laser endourethrotomy with conventional optical urethrotomy. Currently, the midterm effectiveness of both treatment options is considered equal (LE: 3). However, in a randomised control study comparing the effectiveness of Nd:YAG laser with conventional cold-knife optical urethrotomy in the treatment of varying length urethral strictures (0.3-2.4 cm), laser treatment significantly decreased the probability of therapeutic failure and recurrence of strictures (20) (LE: 3).

Table 16: Clinical experience with transurethral laser urethrotomy

Reference	Patients (n)	Disease	Success rate %	Mean follow-up (mo)	Comments
Guo et al. 2010 (2)	238	Urethral strictures	81.9%	6	2-micron thulium laser
Guo et al. 2008 (3)	198	Urethral strictures (n = 179) or atresia (n = 13)	81.7%	6	2 micron thulium laser
Xiao et al. 2008 (4)	34	Urethral strictures	94.7%	3-18	Holmium laser: 4 received urethral dilation and 2 underwent a second holmium laser urethrotomy

Eltahawy et al. 2008 (5)	24	Anastomotic stenosis following radical prostatectomy, 79% recurrent-resistant to other treatment modalities	83%	24	Holmium laser + steroid injection
Futao et al. 2006 (6)	28	Paediatric patients with urethral strictures (n=25) and urethral atresias (n=3)	89.3%	(2-48)	Ho:YAG
Hossain et al. 2004 (7)	30	Short segment anterior urethral stricture	90%	6	Ho:YAG
Dogra et al. 2004 (8)	29	Urethral stricture (< 2.5 cm)	65.51% excellent, 31.03% acceptable	15	Ho:YAG
Gürdal et al. 2003 (9)	21	Recurrent benign urethral strictures 5-20 mm in length	52%	24	Nd:YAG
Dogra et al. 2003 (10)	61	Obliterative post-traumatic urethral strictures in children	100%	24	Nd-YAG
Matsuoka et al. 2002 (11)	31	Ureteral stricture of varying lengths	74%		Ho:YAG
Dogra et al. 2002 (12)	65	Post-traumatic urethral strictures	95.3%	9-44	Nd- YAG
Kamal 2001 (13)	22	Urethral strictures (8 recurrent)	54% (78.5% in non recurrent strictures)	26.7	Diode laser
Schmidlin et al. 1997 (14)	20	Anterior urethral strictures	81%	6	KTP
Becker et al. 1995 (15)	900	Urethral strictures (most iatrogenic)	30%	15.2	Argon
Faerber et al. 1994 (16)	12	Paediatric urethral strictures	83%	12	Nd-YAG
Turek et al. 1992 (17)	37	Benign urethral strictures	59% complete, 20.5% partial success	9.7	KTP
Vicente et al. 1990 (18)	15	Benign urethral strictures	73.3%	12	Cold knife + Nd:YAG laser
Bloiso et al. 1988 (19)	115	31 short strictures 36 bladder neck 48 complicated	96.7% (short strictures); 100% (bladder neck); 22.91% (complicated)	10 (short strictures); 7 (bladder neck); 14 (complicated)	Nd:YAG

Ho:YAG = Holmium: yttrium aluminium garnet; KTP = potassium titanyl-phosphate laser; Nd:YAG = neodymium-doped yttrium aluminium garnet

9.3 Conclusions and recommendations for transurethral laser urethrotomy

Conclusions	**LE**
Transurethral laser urethrotomy is a feasible and safe treatment option for the treatment of urethral strictures.	3
Cold-knife optical urethrotomy remains the gold standard.	1a
Success rates as high as 100% are reported in selected cases	3
Treatment morbidity is minimal and major complications are rare.	3

Recommendations	GR
Transurethral laser urethrotomy could be one of the first-line treatment options for benign urethral strictures.	C

9.4 References

1. Bülow H, Bülow U, Frohmüller HG. Transurethral laser urethrotomy in man: preliminary report. First report: J Urol 1979 Mar;121(3):286-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/430619
2. Guo FF, Lu H, Wang GJ, et al. Transurethral 2-microm laser in the treatment of urethral stricture. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):173-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19649639
3. Guo FF, Lu H, Wang GJ, et al. [Efficacy of transurethral 2 microm laser urethrotomy in the treatment of urethral stricture and atresia]. Zhonghua Yi Xue Za Zhi. 2008 May 13;88(18):1270-2. [Article in Chinese] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18844102
4. Xiao J, Wu B, Chen LW, et al. [Holmium laser urethrotomy for male urethral stricture]. Zhonghua Nan Ke Xue 2008 Aug;14(8):734-6. [Article in Chinese] http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18817349
5. Eltahawy E, Gur U, Virasoro R, et al. Management of recurrent anastomotic stenosis following radical prostatectomy using holmium laser and steroid injection. BJU Int 2008 Sep;102(7):796-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18671784
6. Futao S, Wentong Z, Yan Z, et al. Application of endoscopic Ho:YAG laser incision technique treating urethral strictures and urethral atresias in pediatric patients. Pediatr Surg Int 2006 Jun;22(6):514-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16736220
7. Hossain AZ, Khan SA, Hossain S, et al. Holmium laser urethrotomy for urethral stricture. Bangladesh Med Res Counc Bull 2004 Aug;30(2):78-80. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15813486
8. Dogra PN, Ansari MS, Gupta NP, et al. Holmium laser core-through urethrotomy for traumatic obliterative strictures of urethra: initial experience. Urology 2004 Aug;64(2):232-5; discussion 235-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15302467
9. Gürdal M, Tekin A, Yücebas E, et al. Contact neodymium:YAG laser ablation of recurrent urethral strictures using a side-firing fiber. J Endourol 2003 Nov;17(9):791-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14642045
10. Dogra PN, Nabi G. Nd-YAG laser core-through urethrotomy in obliterative posttraumatic urethral strictures in children. Pediatr Surg Int 2003 Nov;19(9-10):652-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14579073
11. Matsuoka K, Inoue M, Iida S, et al. Endoscopic antegrade laser incision in the treatment of urethral stricture. Urology 2002 Dec;60(6):968-72. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12475651
12. Dogra PN, Nabi G. Core-through urethrotomy using the neodymium: YAG laser for obliterative urethral strictures after traumatic urethral disruption and/or distraction defects: long-term outcome. J Urol 2002 Feb;167(2 Pt 1):543-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11792915
13. Kamal BA. The use of the diode laser for treating urethral strictures. BJU Int 2001 Jun;87(9):831-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11412221
14. Schmidlin F, Oswald M, Iselin C, et al. Vaporization of urethral stenosis using the KTP 532 laser. Ann Urol (Paris) 1997;31(1):38-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9157820
15. Becker HC, Miller J, Nöske HD, et al. Transurethral laser urethrotomy with argon laser: experience with 900 urethrotomies in 450 patients from 1978 to 1993. Urol Int 1995;55(3):150-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8540160
16. Faerber GJ, Park JM, Bloom DA. Treatment of pediatric urethral stricture disease with the neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser. Urology 1994 Aug;44(2):264-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8048204
17. Turek PJ, Malloy TR, Cendron M, et al. KTP-532 laser ablation of urethral strictures. Urology 1992 Oct;40(4):330-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1413350
18. Vicente J, Salvador J, Caffaratti J. Endoscopic urethrotomy versus urethrotomy plus Nd-YAG laser in the treatment of urethral stricture. Eur Urol 1990;18(3):166-8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2261927

19. Bloiso G, Warner R, Cohen M. Treatment of urethral diseases with neodymium:YAG laser. Urology 1988 Aug;32(2):106-10.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3400132
20. Jabłonowski Z, Kedzierski R, Miekos E, et al. Comparison of neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet laser treatment with cold knife endoscopic incision of urethral strictures in male patients. Photomed Laser Surg 2010 Apr;28(2):239-44.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20201661

10. LASER CLINICAL APLICATIONS IN UPPER URINARY TRACT STONES AND TUMOURS

10.1 Introduction

The entire upper urinary tract can be accessed and explored with flexible endoscopes. (1-3) Miniaturisation especially with laser fibres became an armamentarium in the endourological field. In Ho:YAG lasers, energy is delivered most commonly in a pulsatile manner, using a thermomechanical action. Absorption depth in tissue is about 1-2 mm, as long as it is used in a water-based medium. This specific light energy provides good homeostasis when used in a pulsed mode of 250-millisecond duration and at low pulse rate. At higher pulse rates, it may also be used for incisions. The frequency-doubled, double-pulse Nd:YAG (FREDDY) laser is a short-pulsed, double-frequency solid-state laser with wavelengths of 532 and 1064 nm. Although FREDDY laser is effective for lithotripsy, it is does not have a soft-tissue application (e.g. tumours). The erbium laser (Er:YAG) laser may be superior to the Ho:YAG laser for precise ablation of strictures with minimal peripheral thermal damage and for more efficient laser lithotripsy (4). Er:YAG laser cuts urethral and ureteral tissues more precisely than Ho:YAG laser and produces less peripheral thermal damage. With any laser, all intra-operative personnel should wear proper eye protection to avoid corneal or retinal damage. This especially is true with Nd:YAG (FREDDY), which penetrates deeply and can burn the retina faster than the blink reflex can protect it. Ho:YAG, which does not penetrate as deeply, but it may cause corneal defects if aimed at the unprotected eye. An adequate draping should be used around external areas. Wet towels should be draped around cutaneous lesions. Reflective surfaces (e.g., metal instruments) should be kept away from the field if possible and, if not possible, should be draped with wet drapes. Furthermore, using laser where oxygen is in use anywhere near the operative field is dangerous. This can result in a laser fire and cause significant burns.

10.2 Upper urinary tract stones

Endoscopic intracorporeal laser lithotripsy is widely used as a treatment for upper urinary tract stone (5-7). Lasers are ideally suited for retrograde intra-renal surgery or percutaneous approach (8).

Flexible quartz fibres deliver laser energy to fragment all types of stones. That energy is delivered in a pulsatile fashion through low-water density quartz fibres. In water, a vaporisation bubble surrounds the fibre tip. This bubble actually destabilises stones, creating fine dust and small fragments. Accurate fibre contact against a calculus is the primary safety factor. Successful stone fragmentation is achieved in on average > 90% of cases (6). Stone fragmentation with Ho: YAG laser further minimises ureteral wall trauma; provided that, the distance between the tip of the fibre and ureter is greater than one mm. the risk of ureteral perforation during laser lithotripsy is negligible since the depth of thermal injury is 0.5 to 1 mm. Ho:YAG laser is fully absorbed within the first few millimetres of tissue; therefore, when applied in water or saline irrigant, minimal risk of surrounding thermal injury exists as compared to Nd:YAG (9,10). Ho:YAG has a minimal fragment migration and retrograde propulsion when low settings compared to Nd:YAG (9).

Hard stones in difficult locations (e.g., lower pole caliceal calculi, stone bearing caliceal stone) can be treated using a thin, 150 to 200-µm, that is easily deflected.

Moreover, the type of eye protection used for Ho:YAG does not affect colour perception. Nd:YAG laser combines of solid and dye lasers. In vitro studies (11), It has been compared with Ho:YAG lasers across several parameters relating to stone treatment; fragmentation was significantly better with Nd:YAG laser than with Ho:YAG laser. Nevertheless, in 2006, a study reported Nd:YAG laser provided suspect fragmentation of calcium oxalate monohydrate stones and ineffective fragmentation of cystine stones (12). In addition to that, stone retropulsion was significantly greater (9,11,13). Alexandrite laser has been used, it is safe and effective, although it is rarely use in recent clinical practice. (14).

All of the initial laser lithotrities (pulsed dye, Q-switched YAG and alexandrite) fragmented stones through the generation of a shock wave. Those waves disrupt the stone along fracture lines.

The Holmium laser works through a photo-thermal mechanism, which involves the direct absorption of the laser energy by the stone. The absence of strong wave in Holmium laser avoids the retropulsion phenomenon (15). Nevertheless, it is still strong enough to create stone dust and thereby facilitate stone fragmentation with smaller fragments than those produced by pulsed lasers or other devices. Residual fragments place patients at higher risk for recurrent stone formation or growth (16). Holmium laser energy is absorbed by all stone compositions; this laser can be used to fragment all stone types (17). Cyanide production was reported as a side effect of uric acid stones fragmentation (18).

10.2.1 ***Conclusions***

	LE
Pulsed lasers are an effective and safe treatment for UUT stones, using endoscopes.	
Lasers present a safe option for defragmenting stones in the upper urinary tract.	1

10.3 Upper urinary tract urothelial tumours

The aim of the conservative management of upper tract urothelial tumours (UUT-UT) is to preserve renal function (19-21). This may be considered imperative or absolutely indicated in patients with a solitary anatomic kidney, solitary functioning kidney or limited renal function.

The development of sophisticated endourologic techniques for the treatment of benign urologic disease has translated to the treatment of malignant neoplasms, with the use of flexible ureteroscope and laser ablation becoming common place in urologic practice (19-23). Further, the cancer-control efficacy of this management approach has been established (20,21).

Even though nephro-ureterectomy is the gold standard; the current literature supports the use of lasers in patients with UUT-UT; however, meticulous and long-term follow up is needed (23,25). Ho:YAG and Nd:YAG lasers are presently the most commonly used lasers. The laser combining of both is convenient and effective but Ho:YAG can be used alone, preferentially with the variable pulse duration. Nd:YAG laser energy is used to coagulate with a thermal effect that extends deeper than other lasers. Holmium is more precise, with less of a coagulative effect. Laser therapy for tumour ablation is safe in patients with bleeding diathesis (25). In contrast to tumour ablation (Holmium/Thulium), in case of tumour vaporisation no pathology specimen will be available (Nd:YAG/ Holmium/Thulium). Therefore multiple prior biopsy samples to determine depth of invasion should be obtained. Appropriate staging of the tumour (CT/biopsy) is important to allow selection of patients for nephron-sparing surgery. There are reports on percutaneous laser treatment of TCC of the kidney and this technique has been recognised in urological practice (26-28).

A true drawback with the Nd:YAG laser is that the area of destruction is deep and not fully visualised. Within the renal pelvis, the energy choice depends mainly upon the size of the lesion. Larger vascular tumours (> 1 cm) can be coagulated initially with the Nd:YAG and then ablated and cleared with the Holmium when a combination laser is available. Lower Holmium energy tends to maximise the coagulative effect and minimise the risk of bleeding (e.g. 0.5 to 0.6 joules and 5 hertz). The stricture rate in larger series has ranged from 5% to 13.7% (29). Because of the miniaturisation of instruments and development of laser fibres, the incidence of stricture rate is considered lower. Moreover, the stricture rate is considered lower due to minimal fibrotic reaction after laser use in comparison with electrocautery devices. To avoid urothelial damage and possible stricture, all endoscopic laser modalities should be used under direct vision, through the working channel of an endoscope.

10.4 Conclusion and recommendations for laser treatment of UUT urothelial tumours

Conclusion	**LE**
Nephro-ureterectomy is still the gold standard for UUT urothelial tumours	1a

Recommendations	**GR**
Laser ablation of small low-grade upper tract transitional cell carcinoma with close follow-up can be a safe alternative treatment to nephroureterectomy in patients with normal contralateral kidneys	B
Endoscopic conservative treatment can be the preferred treatment in high-risk patients, as well as those with bilateral disease, solitary kidney or reduced renal function	C

10.5 References

1. Johnson DE, Cromeens DM, Price RE. Use of the holmium: YAG laser in urology. Lasers Surg Med 1992;12(4):353-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1386643
2. Larizgoitia I, Pons JM. A systematic review of the clinical efficacy and effectiveness of the holmium: YAG laser in urology. BJU Int 1999 Jul;84(1);1-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10444114
3. Marks AJ, Teichman JM. Lasers in clinical urology: state of the art and new horizons. World J Urol 2007 Jun;25(3):227-33. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17393172
4. Teichman JM, Chan KF, Cecconi PP, et al. Erbium: YAG versus holmium:YAG lithotripsy. J Urol 2001 Mar;165(3):876-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11176490
5. Weizer AZ, Springhart WP, Ekeruo WO, et al. Ureteroscopic management of renal calculi in anomalous kidneys. Urology 2005;65(2):265-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15708035
6. Sofer M, Watterson JD, Wollin TA, et al. Holmium: YAG laser lithotripsy for upper urinary tract calculi in 598 patients. J Urol 2002 Jan;167(1):31-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11743269
7. Jiang H, Wu Z, Ding Q, et al. Ureteroscopic treatment of ureteral calculi with holmium: YAG laser lithotripsy. J Endourol 2007 Feb;21(2):151-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17338611
8. Sun Y, Gao X, Zhou T, et al. 70 W holmium: yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser in percutaneous nephrolithotomy for staghorn calculi. J Endourol 2009 Oct;23(10):1687-91. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19732015
9. Yates J, Zabbo A, Pareek G. A comparison of the FREDDY and holmium lasers during ureteroscopic lithotripsy. Lasers Surg Med 2007 Sep; 39(8):637-40. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17886276
10. Santa-Cruz RW, Leveillee RJ, Krongrad A. Ex vivo comparison of four lithotripters commonly used in the ureter: what does it take to perforate? J Endourol 1998 Oct;12(5):417-22. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9847062
11. Marguet CG, Sung JC, Springhart WP, et al. In vitro comparison of stone retropulsion and fragmentation of the frequency doubled, double pulse nd:yag laser and the holmium:yag laser. J Urol May 2005;173(5):1797-800. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15821590
12. Dubosq F, Pasqui F, Girard F, et al. Endoscopic lithotripsy and the FREDDY laser: initial experience. J Endourol 2006 May;20(5):296-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16724897
13. Fuh E, Haleblian GE, Norris RD, et al. The effect of frequency doubled double pulse Nd:YAG laser fiber proximity to the target stone on transient cavitation and acoustic emission. J Urol 2007 Apr;177(4):1542-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17382775
14. Denstedt JD, Chun SS, Miller MD, et al. Intracorporeal lithotripsy with the Alexandrite laser. Lasers Surg Med 1997;20(4):433-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9142683
15. Teichman JM, Vassar GJ, Bishoff JT, et al. Holmium:YAG lithotripsy yields smaller fragments than lithoclast, pulsed dye laser or electrohydraulic lithotripsy. J Urol 1998 Jan;159(1):17-23. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9400428
16. Fine JK, Pak CY, Preminger GM. Effect of medical management and residual fragments on recurrent stone formation following shock wave lithotripsy. J Urol 1995 Jan;153(1):27-32; discussion 32-3. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7966783
17. Grasso M, Chalik Y. Principles and applications of laser lithotripsy: experience with the holmium laser lithotrite. J Clin Laser Med Surg 1998 Feb;16(1):3-7. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728123
18. Zagone RL, Waldmann TM, Conlin MJ. Fragmentation of uric acid calculi with the holmium:YAG laser produces cyanide. Lasers Surg Med 2002;31(4):230-2. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12355566
19. Lam JS, Gupta M. Ureteroscopic management of upper tract transitional cell carcinoma. Urol Clin North Am 2004 Feb;31(1):115-28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15040408

20. Elliot DS, Blute ML, Patterson DE, et al. Long-term follow-up of endoscopically treated upper tract transitional cell carcinoma. Urology 1996 Jun;47(6):819-25. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8677570
21. Engelmyer EI, Belis JA. Long-term ureteroscopic management of low-grade transitional cell carcinoma of the upper urinary tract. Techn Urol 1996 Summer;2(2):113-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9118407
22. Martinez-Piñeiro JA, Matres-Garcia MJ, Martinez-Piñeiro L. Endourological treatment of upper tract urothelial carcinomas: analysis of a series of 59 tumors. J Urol 1996 Aug;156(2 Pt 1):377-85. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8683683
23. Grasso M, Fraiman M, Levine M. Ureteropyeloscopic diagnosis and treatment of upper urinary tract urothelial malignancies. Urology 1999 Aug;54(2):240-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10443718
24. Gaboardi F, Bozzola A, Dotti E, et al. Conservative treatment of upper urinary tract tumors with Nd:YAG laser. J Endourol 1994 Feb;8(1):37-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8186782
25. Watterson JD, Girvan AR, Cook AJ, et al. Safety and efficacy of holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy in patients with bleeding diatheses. J Urol 2002 Aug;168(2):442-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12131284
26. Cinman NM, Andonian S, Smith AD. Lasers in percutaneous renal procedures. World J Urol 2010 Apr;28(2):135-42. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19488759
27. Chew BH, Pautler SE, Denstedt JD. Percutaneous management of upper-tract transitional cell carcinoma. J Endourol 2005 Jul-Aug;19(6):658-63. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16053354
28. Palou J, Piovesan LF, Huguet J, et al. Percutaneous nephroscopic management of upper urinary tract transitional cell carcinoma: recurrence and long-term followup. J Urol 2004 Jul; 172(1):66-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15201739
29. Chen GL, Bagley DH. Ureteroscopic surgery for upper tract transitional cell carcinoma: complications and management. J Endourol 2001 May;15(4):399-404; discussion 409. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11394452

11. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

(This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations)

BPE	benign prostatic enlargement
BOO	bladder outlet obstruction
BPO	benign prostatic obstruction
CW	continuous wave
EAU	European Association of Urology
Er:YAG	erbium: yttrium-aluminum-garnet laser
GR	grade of recommendation
HoLAP	Holmium laser ablation of the prostate
HoLEP	Holmium laser enucleation of the prostate
HoLRP	Holmium laser resection of the prostate
Ho:YAG	Holmium: yttrium aluminium garnet
IIEF-5	international index of erectile function (abbreviated version)
KTP	laser potassium titanyl-phosphate laser
LBO	lithium triborate
LE	level of evidence
LNSRP	Laser-assisted laparoscopic nerve-sparing radical prostatectomy
LPN	laparoscopic partial nephrectomy
LTA	laser thermal ablation
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
Nd:YAG	neodymium-doped yttrium aluminium garnet
Nd:YAG (FREDDY)	frequency-doubled, double-pulse laser
Nd:YAG laser (LBO)	Lithium borat modulated Nd:YAG laser
NVB	prostate nevrovascular bundle
OP	open prostatectomy
PN	partial nephrectomy
PSA	prostate specific antigen
PVP	photoselective vaporisation of the prostate
PVR	postvoid residual urine
Q_{max}	urinary peak flow
QoL	Quality of Life
Tm:YAG laser	Thulium:Yttrium-Aluminium-Garnet laser
ThuVAP	Thulium laser vaporisation of the prostate
ThuVaR	Tm:YAG Vaporisation of the prostate
ThuVARP	Tm:YAG Vaporesection
ThuVEP	Tm:YAG Vapoenucleation
ThuLEP	Tm:YAG laser enucleation of the prostate
TUR	transurethral resection
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
TURB	TUR of the bladder
UPJO	ureteropelvic junction obstruction
UTI	urinary tract infection

Conflict of interest

All members of the New Technologies Guidelines working group have provided disclosure statements on all relationships that they have and that might be perceived to be a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.

Guidelines on

Reporting and Grading of Complications after Urologic Surgical Procedures

D. Mitropoulos, W. Artibani, M. Graefen, M. Remzi,
M. Rouprêt, M.C. Truss

European Association of Urology

TABLE OF CONTENTS PAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

Evidence of variations in clinical practice, together with rising costs associated with constrained resources in most health care systems over the past decade, has triggered growing interest in evaluating the quality of our surgical work (1-3). At present, the main methods of assessing surgical results for audit and quality assurance remain mortality and morbidity (4-6). Thus measurement of morbidity requires an accurate definition of a surgical complication. Although the incidence of postoperative complications is still the most frequently used surrogate marker of quality in surgery (1,3,7), the direct cause-and-effect relationship between surgery and complications is often difficult to assess. This uncertainty carries a risk of underreporting surgical complications, with substantial consequences.

Most published articles focus only on positive outcomes (e.g. trifecta in prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy) (8). There is a need to compare complications for each specific approach in a systematic, objective, and reproducible way. As yet, no definitions for complications or guidelines for reporting surgical outcomes have been universally accepted. Reporting and grading of complications in a structured fashion is only one aspect of the quality of outcome reporting. In 2002, Martin et al. proposed 10 criteria that should be met when reporting complications following surgery (9) (Table 1). Clavien and Dindo proposed a system for grading the severity of postoperative complications (10) that was subsequently revised and validated (11) (Table 2).

Table 1: Martin et al. criteria of accurate and comprehensive reporting of surgical complications (9)

Criteria	Requirement
Method of accruing data defined	Prospective or retrospective accrual of data are indicated
Duration of follow-up indicated	Report clarifies the time period of postoperative accrual of complications such as 30 days or same hospitalisation
Outpatient information included	Study indicates that complications first identified following discharge are included in the analysis
Definition of complications provided	Article defines at least one complication with specific inclusion criteria
Mortality rate and causes of death listed	The number of patients who died in the postoperative period of study are recorded together with cause of death
Morbidity rate and total complications indicated	The number of patients with any complication and the total number of complications are recorded
Procedure-specific complications included	
Severity grade utilised	Any grading system designed to clarify severity of complications including major and minor is reported
Length-of-stay data	Median or mean length of stay indicated in the study
Risk factors included in the analysis	Evidence of risk stratification and method used indicated by study

Table 2: Clavien-Dindo grading system for the classification of surgical complications (11)

Grades	Definitions
Grade I	Any deviation from the normal postoperative course without the need for pharmacological treatment or surgical, endoscopic and radiological interventions. Acceptable therapeutic regimens are: drugs such as antiemetics, antipyretics, analgesics, diuretics and electrolytes, and physiotherapy. This grade also includes wound infections opened at the bedside.
Grade II	Requiring pharmacological treatment with drugs other than those allowed for grade I complications. Blood transfusions and total parenteral nutrition are also included.
Grade III	Requiring surgical, endoscopic or radiological intervention
Grade III-a	Intervention not under general anaesthesia
Grade III-b	Intervention under general anaesthesia
Grade IV	Life-threatening complication (including CNS complications: brain haemorrhage, ischaemic stroke, subarachnoid bleeding, but excluding transient ischaemic attacks) requiring IC/ICU management
Grade IV-a	Single organ dysfunction (including dialysis)
Grade IV-b	Multi-organ dysfunction

Grade V	Death of a patient
Suffix “d”	If the patient suffers from a complication at the time of discharge the suffix “d” (for disability) is added to the respective grade of complication. This label indicates the need for a follow-up to evaluate the complication fully.

Despite these proposals, no current standard guidelines or criteria exist for reporting surgical complications in the area of urology. It appears important that the urologic community create universally accepted criteria for reporting surgical morbidity and outcomes to establish the efficacy of surgical techniques and improve the quality of patient care (12). Adopting an integrated method of characterising and reporting surgical morbidity has the potential to improve patient care on many levels:

- It enables better characterisation of surgical morbidity associated with various surgical techniques.
- It allows comparison of different surgical techniques, which is important due to the relative lack (≤ 1%) of randomised trials in the urologic literature.
- It allows the physician to portray more accurately to patients the risks of a procedure versus other surgical or medical options.
- It allows better sequencing of multimodality approaches.
- It allows earlier recognition of the pattern of complications, thereby allowing for pre-emptive changes in care in an effort to decline the incidence.
- It allows better comparisons between individual surgeons or between institutional experiences.
- It allows identification of quality-of-care measures for benchmarking.

The aim of our work was to review the available reporting systems used for urologic surgical complications, to establish a possible change in attitude towards reporting of complications using standardised systems, to assess systematically the Clavien-Dindo system (currently widely used for the reporting of complications related to urologic surgical interventions), to identify shortcomings in reporting complications, and to present recommendations for the development and implementation of future reporting systems that focus on patient-centred outcomes. The panel did not take intraoperative complications into consideration, which may be addressed in a follow-up project.

1.1 Publication history

This article presents a republication of a scientific paper published in European Urology, the EAU scientific journal (13). Prior to publication, the paper has been subjected to double blind peer review.

In the course of 2012 the authors aim to assess the usage and reproducibility of the proposed model for reporting of complications. These findings will be published upon completion of the assessment.

2. EVIDENCE ACQUISITION

Standardised systems for reporting and classification of surgical complications were identified through a systematic review of the literature. To establish a possible change in attitude towards reporting of complications related to urologic procedures and assessment of the Clavien-Dindo system in urology, two different strategies were used. For the first objective (reporting trends), papers reporting complications after urologic surgery published in European Urology, Journal of Urology, Urology, BJU International, and World Journal of Urology in 1999-2000 and 2009-2010 were reviewed. Selection criteria were the top five general urology journals (from major urologic societies) based on impact factor (IF) and English-language publications. The panel recognised that IF as a quality indicator was debatable but considered that it would have had no impact on the validity of the outcome of this review. Promising articles were identified initially through the tables of contents of the respective journals. All selected papers were full-text retrieved and assessed; papers not reporting complications and reviews were excluded from the analysis. Analysis was done based on a structured form, which was similar for each article and for each journal (Form 1).

Data identification for the second objective (systematic assessment of the Clavien-Dindo system currently used for reporting of complications related to urologic surgical interventions) involved a Medline/Embase search using *Clavien, urology*, and *complications* as keywords. This search produced 63 eligible papers reporting complications using the Clavien-Dindo system. A second search using the search engines of individual urologic journals and publishers that may identify Clavien or Dindo and urology within the full text of a paper produced

141 more papers. Thus the total number of eligible papers was 204. All selected papers were full-text retrieved for analysis, which was done based on a structured form (Form 2). All papers were evaluated by two authors independently, and in case of disagreement, the paper was presented to all members to reach consensus.

Form 1: Data extraction form to assess reporting of complications after urological procedures using the Clavien-Dindo system

Study title: .....

Published in:
☐ European Urology ☐ Journal of Urology ☐ BJU International ☐ Urology
☐ World Journal of Urology

Year of publication:
☐ 1999/2000 ☐ 2009/2010 Volume ..... page ..... to .....

The study is a:
☐ Case series ☐ Controlled study without randomisation Prospective, randomised trial
☐ Meta-analysis

Level of evidence (Oxford criteria, EAU modification):
☐ 1a ☐ 1b ☐ 2a ☐ 2b ☐ 3

The study reports complications after (define the procedure)**:**

.....

Did the authors use standardised criteria?
☐ Yes ☐ No

In case standardised criteria were used, they were:
☐ Predefined by authors ☐ Clavien-Dindo system

No of Martin criteria met:
☐ 0-2 ☐ 3/4 ☐ 5/6 ☐ 7/8 ☐ 9/10

Form 2: Data extraction form to assess reporting of complications after urological procedures using the Clavien-Dindo system

Study title: .....

Published in: .....

Year of publication: ..... Volume: ..... Page ..... to .....

The study is a:
☐ Case series ☐ Controlled study without randomisation ☐ Prospective, randomised trial
☐ Meta-analysis

Level of evidence (Oxford criteria, EAU modification):
☐ 1a ☐ 1b ☐ 2a ☐ 2b ☐ 3

No of Martin criteria met (0-10): .....

The study reports complications after (define)**:** .....

In your opinion, was the Clavien-Dindo system used correctly?
☐ Yes ☐ No

If **NO**, why not: .....
.....

3. EVIDENCE SYNTHESIS

3.1 Systems used to report surgical complications

The systematic review of the literature for standardised systems used for reporting and classification of surgical complications revealed five standardised systems (Table 3).

Table 3: Available classification systems for reporting of complications

Classification	Clinical validation	Simplicity	Severity grading
Clavien-Dindo	Yes	Easy	I-V
MSKCC	Yes	Easy	5
Accordion contracted extended	No	Easy	 4 6
NSQIP	Yes	Complex	Major/minor
NCT-CTC	Yes	Complex	5

MSKCC = Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Centre classification - modification of the original T92 Clavien classification (9,14); NSQIP = National Surgical Quality Improvement Programme (3); NCT-CTC = National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria (17).

In 1992, Clavien et al. proposed a classification for complications of surgery and introduced a severity grading system called T92 (10), which was based on the main criterion of the intervention needed to resolve the complication. Four grades containing five levels of complications were described. In 2004, Dindo et al. introduced a modification of the T92 classification using five grades containing seven levels (Table 2) (11). This modification was performed to add further precision and to characterise whether an intervention due to the complication led to general anaesthesia, intensive care unit admission, or organ failure, and again, it was based on the type of therapy required to treat the complication. This modified classification, which is known as the Clavien-Dindo system, was validated and tested for interobserver variation in 10 centres around the world (14). The Clavien-Dindo system is widely used, with an exponential increase in recent years, especially in general surgery but also in urology (see Fig. 3 and 4). A few authors have adapted both systems to analyse specific procedures such as living donor liver and kidney transplantation, which has led to confusion (14).

A less extensive modification of the T92 system was made by Martin et al. (9), and (15) and is referred to as the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Centre (MSKCC) severity grading system; conceptually, it is very similar to T92 but differs in numbering (for details see Table 1 in Strasberg et al. [16]).

The Accordion classification was introduced in 2009 and represents a flexible system that can be used in studies of different size and complexity (17) (Table 4). It is available on an open Web site (http://www.accordionclassification.wustl.edu).

Table 4: Accordion severity classification of postoperative complications: contracted and expanded classification (17)

Contracted classification	Expanded classification
1. Mild complication Requires only minor invasive procedures that can be done at the bedside, such as insertion of intravenous lines, urinary catheters and nasogastric tubes, and drainage of wound infections. Physiotherapy and the following drugs are allowed: antiemetics, antipyretics, analgesics, diuretics and electrolytes.	1. Mild complication Requires only minor invasive procedures that can be done at the bedside, such as insertion of intravenous lines, urinary catheters and nasogastric tubes, and drainage of wound infections. Physiotherapy and the following drugs are allowed: antiemetics, antipyretics, analgesics, diuretics and electrolytes.
2. Moderate complication Requires pharmacological treatment with drugs other than those allowed for minor complications, for example, antibiotics. Blood transfusions and total parenteral nutrition are also included.	2. Moderate complication Requires pharmacological treatment with drugs other than those allowed for minor complications, for example, antibiotics. Blood transfusions and total parenteral nutrition are also included.
3. Severe complication All complications requiring endoscopic or interventional radiology or re-operation, as well as complications resulting in failure of one or more organ systems.	3. Severe: invasive procedure without general anaesthesia Requires management by an endoscopic, interventional procedure or re-operation* without general anaesthesia
4. Death Postoperative death	4. Severe: operation under general anaesthesia Requires management by an operation under general anaesthesia
	5. Severe: organ system failure†
	6. Death Postoperative death

**An example would be wound re-exploration under conscious sedation and/or local anaesthetic.*
†Such complications would normally be managed in an increased acuity setting but in some cases patients with complications of lower severity might also be admitted to an ICU.

The National Surgical Quality Improvement Program was established in 1994 within the US Veterans Administration (VA) health care system, with the aim of identifying and reporting adverse events as one prerequisite for process improvement in health care (3). The system is validated, outcome based, and uses data adjusted for patient preoperative risk. It allows comparison of the performance of different hospitals performing major surgery by the ratio of observed to expected (O/E) adverse events. Statistically low (O/E < 1) or high (O/E > 1) outliers are then identified to support continuous quality improvement activities. The annual use of this system has contributed to the improvement of the standard of surgical care and to lower 30-d mortality and morbidity rates for major noncardiac surgery within the VA.

The National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria (NCI-CTC) system (17) was first created in 1983, aimed at the recognition and grading of adverse effects of chemotherapy in cancer patients. The system was updated and expanded in 1998 (CTC v2.0), including acute effects of radiotherapy and limited criteria applicable to surgery. In 2003, Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events (CTCAE v3.0) was introduced for application to all possible modalities and is organised by organ system categories (all organs are included), with 370 different criteria. An adverse event is defined as any new finding or undesirable event that may not be attributed to treatment. Grading criteria are shown in Table 5. Late and acute effects criteria are merged into a single uniform system and applied without a predetermined time-based designation. The previously used "90-day rule" is not advised currently because each study is unique. The new CTC system was designed to be applied to all possible modalities, and it is organised by organ system categories (all organs are included) with 370 different criteria. The unexpected serious and life-threatening (grades 3 and 4) consequences of surgery are the focus of immediate surgical reporting. CTCAE v3.0 is available on the Cancer Therapy Evaluation Program Web site (www.ctep.info.nih.gov).

Table 5: National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria grading system for the adverse effects of cancer treatment (17)

Grade	Definition of effects
Grade 1	Minimal and usually asymptomatic that do not interfere with functional endpoints (interventions or medications are generally not indicated for these minor effects).
Grade 2	Moderate, are usually symptomatic. Interventions such as local treatment or medications may be indicated (they may interfere with specific functions but not enough to impair activities of daily living).
Grade 3	Severe and very undesirable. There are usually multiple, disruptive symptoms (more serious interventions, including surgery or hospitalisation, may be indicated).
Grade 4	Potentially life threatening, catastrophic, disabling, or result in loss of organ, organ function, or limb.

Most recently, the International Urogynecological Association (IUGA) and the International Continence Society (ICS) have established a joint working group on terminology for complications related to the insertion of prostheses and grafts in female pelvic floor surgery (18). The document proposes definitions of specific complications, distinguishing local complications, complications to surrounding organs, and systemic complications. New terms have been proposed and defined in detail such as contraction, prominence, separation, exposure, extrusion, perforation, dehiscence, and sinus tract formation. The classification is based on category, time, and site of complications, with the aim of summarising any of a large range of possible clinical scenarios into a code using as few as three numerals and three (or four) letters. Lowercase letters can be added, describing the presence and the type of pain. The ICS-IUGA classification appears at first sight to be complex and not immediately mastered, as outlined by the proponents. The main goal is to establish common language and to promote a homogeneous registry to improve the quality of pelvic floor surgical procedures using prostheses and grafts.

3.2 Attitude of urologists towards reporting complications

A total of 874 eligible papers of 1261 retrieved publications were included in the final analysis. The type of studies reporting complications did not vary between the two time frames selected (1999-2000 vs 2009-2010) ($p > 0.1$). Most of the papers identified were case studies (Fig. 1). However, a shift could be seen in the number of studies using most of the Martin criteria (Fig. 2), as well as in the number of studies using either standardised criteria or the Clavien-Dindo system to report complications (Fig. 3).

Fig. 1: Comparative distribution of papers reporting complications after urologic procedures by study type and time frame

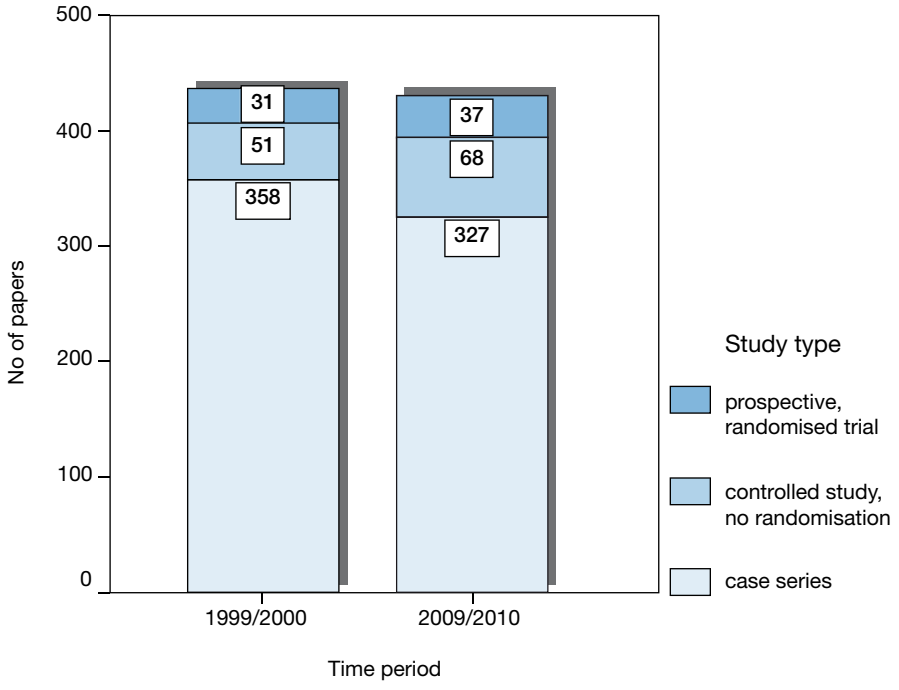


Fig. 2: Comparative distribution of papers reporting complications after urologic procedures by number of Martin criteria met and time frame

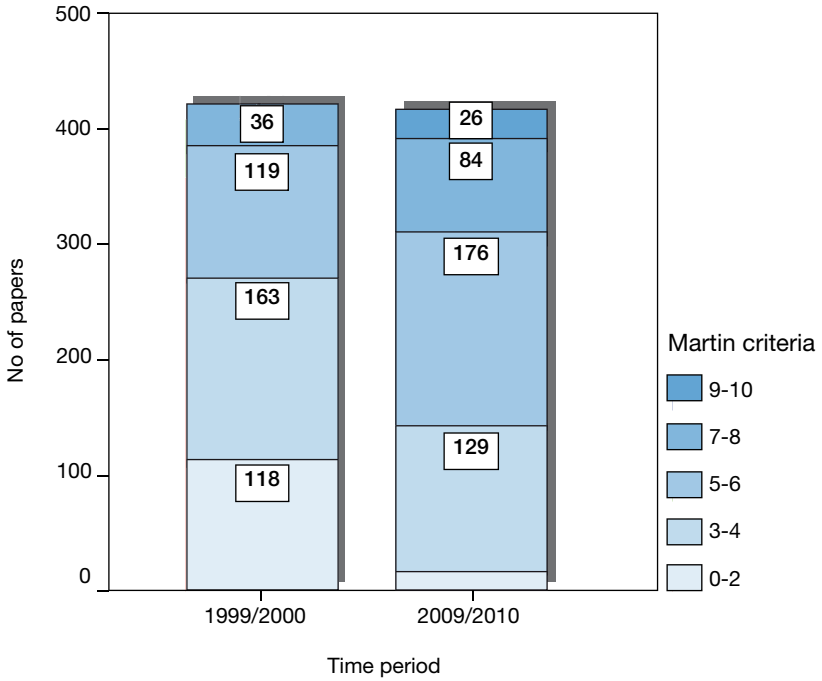
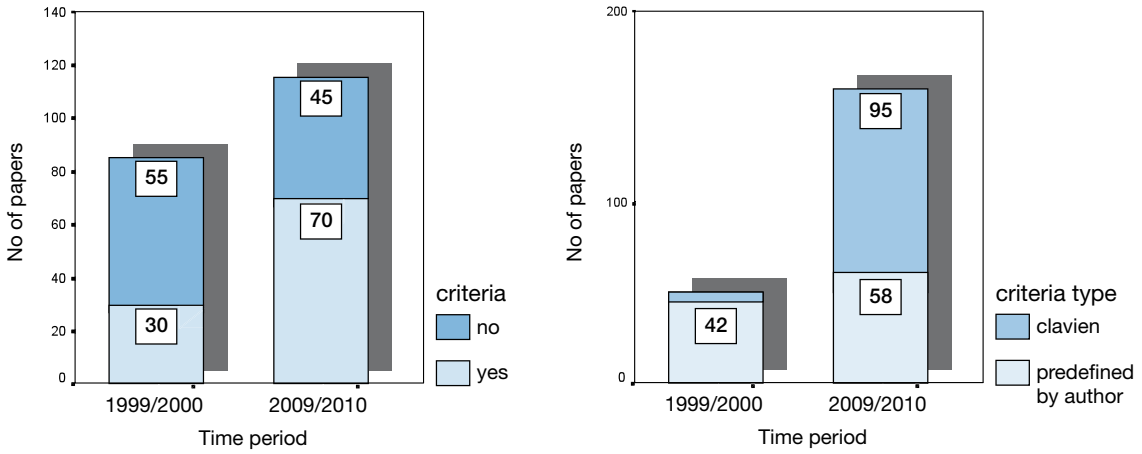


Fig. 3: Comparative distribution of papers reporting complications after urologic procedures by time frame and whether standardised criteria were used (left), and in case they were, whether the Clavien-Dindo system was used (right)



3.3 Assessment of the Clavien-Dindo system for reporting complications after urologic procedures

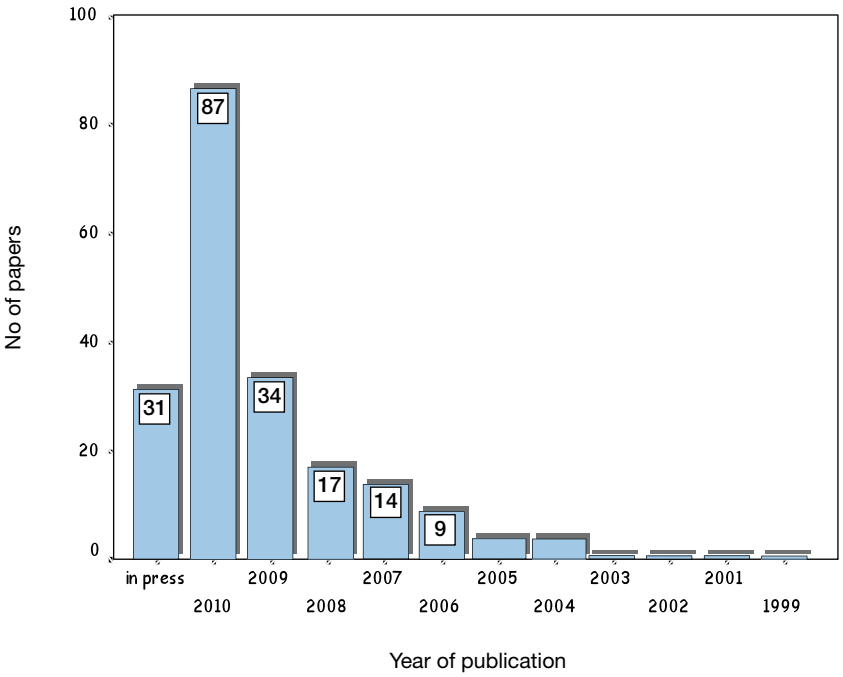
The literature search identified 204 papers published in:

- Urology 38
- Journal of Urology 37
- Journal of Endourology 35
- European Urology 34
- BJU International 19
- World Journal of Urology 15
- and several others 26

The number of papers using the Clavien-Dindo system to report complications after urologic surgical interventions showed an exponential increase (Fig. 4). Most of the studies identified were, again, case series, and 77.9% of the studies fulfilled ≥ 7 of the Martin criteria (range: 3-10; mean: 7.5; standard deviation: 1.5). The

vast majority of papers referred to novel technologies (laparoscopy/robot-assisted procedures), whereas only 13.2% of papers discussed open procedures. The Clavien-Dindo system was not properly used in 72 papers (35.3%): Eight times it was also used to report/grade intraoperative complications; six times the authors used their own modification of the Clavien-Dindo system; in 27 studies, the authors grouped complications into major (Clavien-Dindo ≥ 3) and minor without mentioning specific complications; and in 31 papers, the authors did not assign a grade to the complications reported.

Fig. 4: Distribution of studies using the Clavien-Dindo system to report complications after urologic procedures



3.4 Discussion

The definition of surgical complications still lacks standardisation, which hampers the interpretation of surgical performance and quality assessment (5,7,19). Although many surgeons would argue that their subjective intuition is an appropriate guide to defining what a complication might be, the value of the surgeon's intuition is unreliable in many situations because it lacks objective criteria and depends heavily on the experience of the individual clinician (4,7,20). Second, a surgical complication is not a fixed reality. Instead, it depends on the surgeon's level of skill, the surgeon's learning curve for the procedure, the patient's comorbidity and risk factors, and the facilities available. A surgical complication in a Western country may not be perceived or subjectively weighted as a surgical complication in rural or less developed countries. Similarly, a complication in 2011 may be seen as obsolete within in a few years' time, with a better understanding of the pathophysiology of the underlying malady. As surgical techniques and equipment improve, what were once inevitable negative outcomes may acquire the status of mere surgical complications (2,5,7). Finally, and paradoxically, the higher the expectation of the surgeon and patient, the more potential surgical complications occur (21,22). The clinical relevance of reporting surgical complications is primarily related to the fact that the dissemination of technology is very rapid, with current grades of recommendations based on the level of evidence in their corresponding studies. However, in the surgical field, randomised controlled trials with high levels of evidence are uncommon, and this limitation naturally leads to a low number of recommendations. We have to keep in mind that the guidelines can only rely on the surgical evidence. Thus there is a real discrepancy between the reality of daily surgical practice and the relevance of the low-grade recommendations produced in this area. However, the scientific quality of an article is not only related to its level of evidence. The use of more rigorous methodology and the consensus-related complications of surgical techniques will probably improve the quality of the surgical scientific literature. It is likely that this improvement will renew interest in daily clinical practice in the minds of surgeons. In addition, it will allow recommendations that avoid complications, clearly the most relevant issue in improving patient care.

In defining surgical complications, subjectivity cannot always be avoided, but it should be reduced as much as possible (4). Additionally, different audiences (e.g. patients, nurses, health care providers, and third-party payers) and different surgical communities (e.g. urologists, orthopaedists, and vascular surgeons) view, define,

and perceive complications differently. Currently, no generally accepted standards or definitions exist with regard to the severity of surgical complications. Clavien-Dindo recommended the following definitions of surgical outcomes:

1. Surgical complication: Any deviation from the ideal postoperative course that is not inherent in the procedure and does not comprise a failure to cure;
2. Failure to cure: Diseases or conditions that remained unchanged after surgery;
3. Sequelae: Conditions that are inherent in a procedure and thus would inevitably occur such as scar formation or the inability to walk after an amputation.

Based on the review of the current literature, and with reference to the Accordion Severity Grading System (16), an appropriate definition of a complication is a combination of the following items: an event unrelated to the purposes of the procedure, an unintended result of the procedure, an event occurring in temporal proximity to the procedure, something causing a deviation from the ideal postoperative course, an event that induces a change in management, or something that is morbid (i.e. causes suffering directly by causing pain or indirectly by subjecting the patient to additional interventions).

In contrast to a complication, the sequelae of a procedure should be defined as an after-effect of that procedure. The risk of sequelae is inherent in the procedure (e.g. diabetes after pancreatic resection, rejection after transplantation, limp after amputation, dyspnoea after pneumonectomy, or impairment of renal function after tumour nephrectomy). Failure to cure should be defined as failure to attain or maintain the purpose of the procedure (e.g. failure to remove all stones during ureteroscopy or percutaneous stone surgery, tumour recurrence, stricture recurrence, or recurrence of patency when the purpose of the procedure is to occlude). Sequelae of procedures and failures to cure should be reported but presented separately from complications (14).

However, a complication that results in lasting disability is considered a sequela of a complication. Stroke or acute renal failure (ARF) occurring after a procedure is considered a complication and should be reported as such. However, long-term aphasia resulting from stroke or chronic renal failure after ARF is considered a sequela of that complication. Therefore, it should be reported in a special section devoted specifically to long-term disability.

Patients and their treating physicians do not necessarily mean the same thing when they use the term complication. Several studies have shown substantial discrepancies in the reporting of adverse events and sequelae of a treatment when the estimations of patients and physicians are compared (22). The usual information on potential complications that patients can obtain before a surgical procedure can be taken from the available literature, the specific information given by the treating centre (i.e. home page or patient information brochures), or from direct discussion with the treating surgeon. This information has the potential to be biased from the definition of what is considered a complication, and a standardised system that is not only used for complication reports in the literature but also for patient counselling is important for a realistic estimation of outcomes. In the present literature, patients often report a higher frequency and severity of adverse events compared with that reported by their physicians (23). However, in a recent randomised study, Steinsvik et al. showed that several adverse events, such as bowel problems, were overrated by the physician (24). Overrating and especially underrating of complications by the treating physician leads to confusion and a discrepancy between patient expectation and reality.

Schroeck et al. evaluated variables associated with satisfaction and regret after open and robotic radical prostatectomy (21). Patients who underwent robotic-assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy were more likely to be regretful and dissatisfied, which was not necessarily interpreted as caused by a worse outcome but potentially caused by the higher expectation associated with an innovative procedure. The authors therefore suggested that urologists should carefully portray the risks and benefits of new technologies during preoperative counselling to minimise regret and maximise satisfaction.

Theses examples support the notion that realistic counselling is crucial for the patient's decision-making process and for satisfaction with the achieved result. However, a standardised reporting system for surgical complications can only try to standardise the reporting of the intraoperative and perioperative morbidity of the procedure itself. Short-, mid- or long-term sequelae of a surgical procedure, such as erectile dysfunction or urinary incontinence following radical prostatectomy, are not covered by this classification and need to be reported with other validated tools.

Standardised classification and severity grading of surgical complications is essential for proper interpretation

of surgical outcome data, for comparing the surgical outcomes between institutions or individual surgeons, and for comparing techniques in case randomised trials are either lacking or difficult to perform (i.e. comparison of minimally invasive techniques with open surgery). The urologic community seems to conform to the current demands because recent studies have more often used standardised criteria to report complications (48.3% vs. 35.3%) (Fig. 3). In urologic oncology reports published from January 1995 to December 2005, the corresponding percentage was 33%, with only 19% (6% of the total) using a numerical complication severity grading system (12). The Clavien-Dindo system has gained wide acceptance both in general surgery (14) and the urologic community (Fig. 3, and Fig. 4). Clinical databases designed and controlled by physicians may underreport complications (25). Similarly, a disadvantage of the Clavien-Dindo system is its unreliability when recording is performed by residents, although, when captured, grading of complications was correct in 97% of the cases. Consequently, the authors have proposed that dedicated personnel should evaluate surgical outcomes (2). Special attention should also be paid to proper use of the Clavien-Dindo system because it has not been designed/validated to grade intraoperative complications, and any modifications and revisions can be confusing (14).

Classification and severity grading of surgical complications is an important, albeit not the only criterion of quality when reporting surgical outcome. Approximately 40% of general surgery series and trials and 23% of studies reporting surgical complications in urologic oncology (2) fulfil seven or more Martin criteria. Interestingly, 77.9% of the papers that used the Clavien-Dindo system to report complications after urologic procedures fulfilled seven or more criteria, a fact implying that its use contributes to higher quality reports.

Besides the efficiency of an individual surgeon and the function of an institution, surgical care outcomes also depend on the patient's preoperative risk factors (26). Thus they should always be defined and used in the analysis and report. A substantial proportion of postoperative complications occur after hospital discharge (27); extension of the length of postoperative observation may therefore be necessary. Other quality-of-care indicators are readmissions and reoperations (28) and should be included in both preliminary and final reports.

4. CONCLUSIONS

There is an urgent need for uniform reporting of complications after urologic procedures, which will aid all those involved in patient care and scientific publishing (authors, reviewers, and editors). Urologists have considerably changed their attitude towards using standardised criteria when reporting complications, and there has been an exponential increase of the number of papers using the Clavien-Dindo system. However, a certain number of papers (35.3%) did not use it properly. When reporting the outcomes of urologic procedures, the committee proposes the following:

- Define your complications.
- Preferentially use a standardised system; the Clavien-Dindo grading system is highly recommended.
- When using the Clavien-Dindo system, provide a table of all complications and corresponding grades or list the complications by grade.
- Use the NCI-CTC system in multimodality treatment.
- Improve reporting of complications by following the revised quality criteria (Table 6).
- Define the method of accruing data: retrospective/prospective; through chart review/telephone interview/face-to-face interview/other.
- Define who collected the data: medical doctor/nurse/data manager/other, and whether he or she was involved in the treatment.
- Indicate the duration of follow-up: 30, 60, 90, or >90 d.
- Include outpatient information.
- Include mortality data and causes of death.
- Include definitions of complications.
- Define procedure-specific complications.
- Use a severity grading system (avoiding the distinction minor/major); the Clavien-Dindo system is recommended.
- Include risk factors: American Society of Anaesthesiologists score, Charlson score, Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group, other.
- Include readmissions and causes.
- Include reoperations, types and causes
- Include the percentage of patients lost to follow-up.

- Finally, editors of urologic journals should demand the use of a standardised system to report complications after urologic surgery.

Table 6: Quality criteria for accurate and comprehensive reporting of surgical outcome

1. Define the method of accruing data:
   retrospective _ prospective _ , through:
   chart review _ telephone interview _ face to face interview _ other _
2. Define who collected the data:
   medical doctor _ nurse _ data manager _ other _
   and whether he/she was involved in the treatment: yes _ no _
3. Indicate the duration of follow-up:
   30 days _ 60 days _ 90 days _ > 90 days _
4. Include outpatient information
5. Include mortality data and causes of death
6. Include definitions of complications
7. Define procedure-specific complications
8. Report intraoperative and postoperative complications separately
9. Use a severity grading system for postoperative complications (avoiding the distinction minor/major) - Clavien-Dindo system is recommended
10. Postoperative complications should be presented in a table either by grade or by complication type (specific grades should always be provided; grouping is not accepted)
11. Include risk factors

ASA score _ Charlson score _ ECOG _ other _

12. Include readmissions and causes
13. Include re-operations, types and causes
14. Include the percentage of patients lost to follow-up

5. REFERENCES

1. Bertges DJ, Shackford SR, Cloud AK, et al. Toward optimal recording of surgical complications: concurrent tracking compared to the discharge data set. Surgery 2007 Jan;141(1):19-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17188164
2. Dindo D, Hahnloser D, Clavien PA. Quality assessment in surgery: riding a lame horse. Ann Surg 2010 Apr;251(4):766-71. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20224375
3. Fink AS, Campbell DA Jr, Mentzer RM, et al. The National Surgical Quality Improvement Program in non-veterans administration hospitals: initial demonstration of feasibility. Ann Surg 2002 Sep;236(3):344-53. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12192321
4. Clavien PA, Dindo D. Surgeon's intuition: is it enough to assess patients' surgical risk? World J Surg 2007 Oct;31(10):1909-11. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17661189
5. Sokol DK, Wilson J. What is a surgical complication? World J Surg 2008 Jun;32(6):942-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18266027
6. Veen MR, Lardenoye JW, Kastelein GW, et al. Recording and classification of complications in a surgical practice. Eur J Surg 1999 May;165(5):421-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10391156
7. Dindo D, Clavien PA. What is a surgical complication? World J Surg 2008 Jun;32(6):939-41. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18414942
8. Xylinas E, Durand X, Ploussard G, et al. Evaluation of combined oncologic and functional outcomes after robotic-assisted laparoscopic extraperitoneal radical prostatectomy. Trifecta rate of achieving continence, potency and cancer control. Urol Oncol 2011;June 28. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21719321
9. Martin RC 2nd, Brennan MF, Jaques DP. Quality of complication reporting in the surgical literature. Ann Surg 2002 Jun;235(6):803-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12035036

10. Clavien PA, Sanabria JR, Strasberg SM. Proposed classification of complications of surgery with examples of utility in cholecystectomy. Surgery 1992 May;111(5):518-26. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1598671
11. Dindo D, Demartines N, Clavien PA. Classification of surgical complications: a new proposal with evaluation in a cohort of 6336 patients and results of a survey. Ann Surg 2004 Aug;240(2):205-13. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15273542
12. Donat SM. Standards for surgical complication reporting in urologic oncology: time for a change. Urology 2007 Feb;69(2):221-5. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17320654
13. Mitropoulos D, Artibani W, Graefen M, et al. Reporting and Grading of Complications After Urologic Surgical Procedures: An ad hoc EAU Guidelines Panel Assessment and Recommendations. Eur Urol 2012 Feb;61(2):341-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22074761
14. Clavien PA, Barkun J, de Oliveira ML, et al. The Clavien-Dindo classification of surgical complications: Five-year experience. Ann Surg 2009 Aug;250(2):187-96. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19638912
15. Kooby DA, Fong Y, Suriawinata A, et al. Impact of steatosis on perioperative outcome following hepatic resection. J Gastrointest Surg 2003 Dec;7(8):1034-43. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14675713
16. Strasberg SM, Linehan DC, Hawkins WG. The Accordion severity grading system of surgical complications. Ann Surg 2009 Aug;250(2):177-86. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19638919
17. Trotti A, Colevas D, Setser A, et al. CTCAE v3.0: developpment of a comprehensive gradingsystem for the adverse effects of cancer treatment. Semin Rad Oncol 2003 Jul;13(3):176-81. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12903007
18. Haylen BT, Freeman RM, Swift SE, et al. International Urogynecological Association (IUGA)/ International Continence Society (ICS) joint terminology and classification of the complications related directly to the insertion of prostheses (meshes, implant tapes) and grafts in female pelvic floor. Neurourol Urodyn 2011 Jan;30(1):2-12. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21181958
19. Bruce J, Russell EM, Mollison J, et al. The measurement and monitoring of surgical adverse events. Health Technol Assess 2001;5(22):1-194. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11532239
20. Graefen M. The modified Clavien system: a plea for a standardized reporting system for surgical complications. Eur Urol 2010 Mar;57(3):387-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20022421
21. Schroeck FR, Krupski TL, Sun L, et al. Satisfaction and regret after open retropubic or robot-assisted laparoscopic radical prostatectomy. Eur Urol 2008 Oct;54(4):785-93. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18585849
22. Sanda MG, Dunn RL, Michalski J, et al. Quality of life and satisfaction with outcome among prostate-cancer survivors. N Engl J Med 2008 Mar;358(12):1250-61. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18354103
23. Litwin MS, Hays RD, Fink A, et al. Quality-of-life outcomes in men treated for localized prostate cancer. JAMA. 1995 Jan;273(2):129-35. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7799493
24. Steinsvik EA, Fosså SD, Axcrona K, et al. Do perceptions of adverse events differ between patients and physicians? Findings from a randomized, controlled trial of radical treatment for prostate cancer. J Urol 2010 Aug;184(2):525-31. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20620412
25. Gunnarsson U, Seligsolin E, Jestin P, et al. Registration and validity of surgical complications in colorectal cancer registry. Br J Surg 2003 Apr; 90(4):454-9. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12673748
26. Rodkey GV, Itani KMF. Evaluation of healthcare quality: a tale of three giants. Am J Surg 2009 Nov;198(5 suppl): S3-S8. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19874932
27. Bilimoria KY, Cohen ME, Igraham AM, et al. Effect of postdischarge morbidity and mortality on comparisons of hospital surgical quality. Ann Surg 2010 Jul;252(1):183-90. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20531000

28. Morris AM, Baldwin LM, Matthews B, et al. Reoperation as a quality indicator in colorectal surgery: a population-based analysis. Ann Surg 2007 Jan;245(1):73-9.
http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17197968

6. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE TEXT

This list is not comprehensive for the most common abbreviations

ARF	acute renal failure
ASA	American Society of Anesthesiologists
CNS	central nervous system
CTC AE	Common Terminology criteria for Adverse Events
EAU	European Association of Urology
ECOG	Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group
IC(U)	intensive care (unit)
ICS	International Continence Society
IF	impact factor
IUGA	International Urogynecological Association
MSKCC	Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Centre classification
NSQIP	National Surgical Quality Improvement Programme
NCT-CTC	National Cancer Institute Common Toxicity Criteria
O/E	ratio of observed versus expected
VA	US Veterans Administration

Conflict of interest

All members of the ad hoc EAU Guidelines working group on Reporting and Grading Complications after Urologic Surgical Procedures have provided disclosure statements of all relationships which they have and which may be perceived as a potential source of conflict of interest. This information is kept on file in the European Association of Urology Central Office database. This guidelines document was developed with the financial support of the European Association of Urology. No external sources of funding and support have been involved. The EAU is a non-profit organisation and funding is limited to administrative assistance and travel and meeting expenses. No honoraria or other reimbursements have been provided.